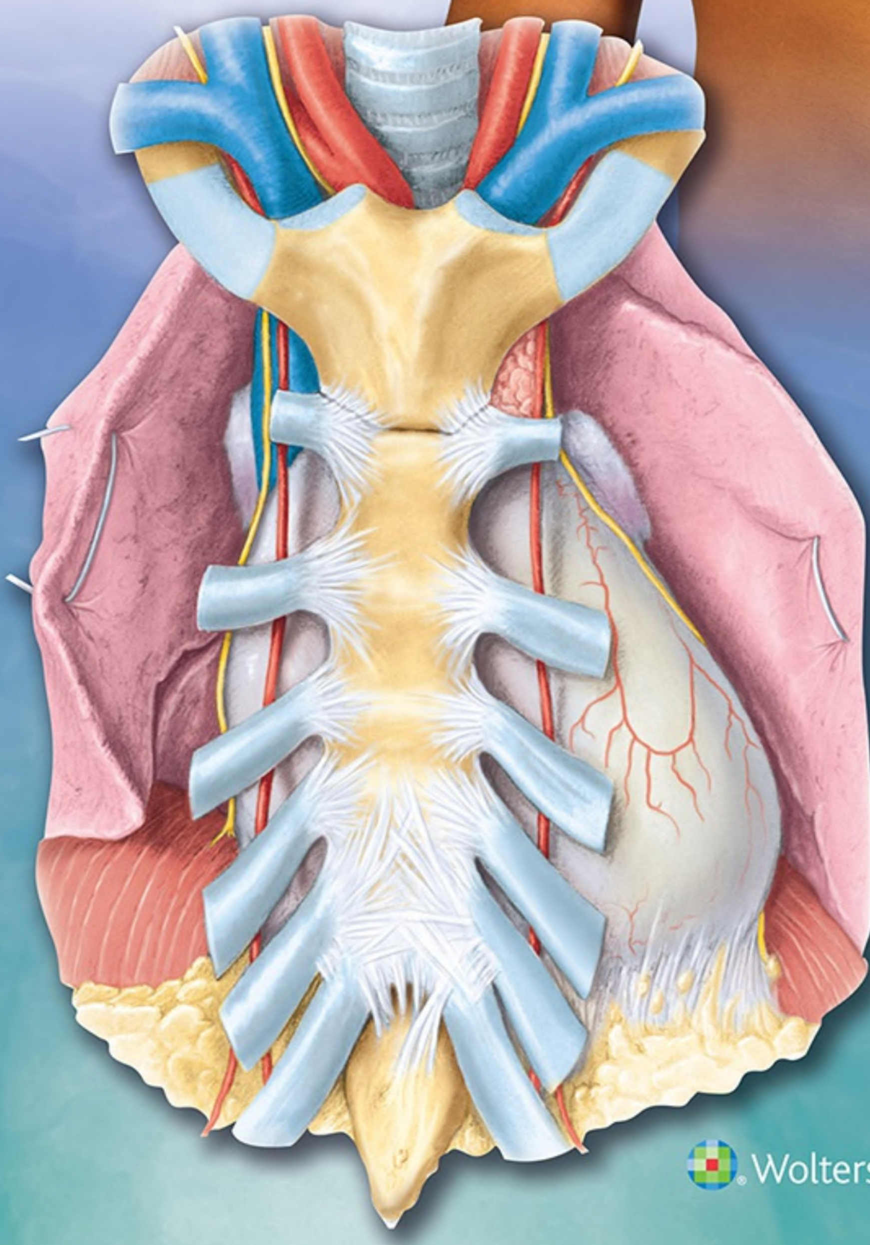
MOORE'S Clinically Oriented Anatomy

NINTH EDITION



ARTHUR F. DALLEY

ANNE M. R. AGUR

Wolters Kluwer

MOORE'S
Clinically Oriented Anatomy

NINTH EDITION

Arthur F. Dalley II, PhD, FAAA
Professor Emeritus, Department of Cell and Developmental Biology
Former Director, Medical Gross Anatomy
Co-Director, Brain, Behavior, and Movement
Former Adjunct Professor, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery and Rehabilitation
Vanderbilt University School of Medicine
Former Adjunct Professor of Anatomy
Belmont University School of Physical Therapy
Nashville, Tennessee

Anne M. R. Agur, BSc (OT), MSc, PhD, FAAA
Professor, Division of Anatomy, Department of Surgery, Faculty of Medicine
Division of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, Department of Medicine
Department of Physical Therapy, Department of Occupational Science & Occupational Therapy
Division of Biomedical Communications, Institute of Medical Science
Rehabilitation Sciences Institute, Graduate Department of Dentistry
University of Toronto
Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Wolters Kluwer

Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Acquisitions Editor: Crystal Taylor
Freelance Development Editor: Greg Nicholl
Editorial Coordinator: Sean Hanrahan
Editorial Assistant: Parisa Saranj
Marketing Manager: Phyllis Hitner
Senior Production Project Manager: Sadie Buckallew
Design Coordinator: Stephen Druding
Art Director: Jennifer Clements
Artists: Imagineeringart.com, Inc.; Dragonfly Media Group
Manufacturing Coordinator: Margie Orzech
Prepress Vendor: Absolute Service, Inc.

Ninth Edition

Eighth edition translations:
Greek, Broken Hill
Korean, Bioscience Publishing Co., Ltd.
Portuguese, Editora Guanabara Koogan
Russian, Bombora Publishers (Eksmo Non-Fiction)
Spanish, Wolters Kluwer Health Spanish Language Program
Turkish, Nobel Tip Kitabevleri

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Mexico

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Dalley, Arthur F., II, author. | Agur, A. M. R., author. | Moore, Keith L. Clinically oriented anatomy.
Title: Moore's clinically oriented anatomy / Arthur F. Dalley II, Anne M.R. Agur.
Other titles: Clinically oriented anatomy
Description: Ninth edition. | Philadelphia : Wolters Kluwer, [2023] | Preceded by Clinically oriented anatomy / Keith L. Moore, Arthur F. Dalley II, Anne M. R. Agur. Eighth edition. [2018]. | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2021031406 (print) | LCCN 2021031407 (ebook) | ISBN 9781975154066 (paperback) | ISBN 9781975154080 (epub)
Subjects: MESH: Anatomy
Classification: LCC QM23.2 (print) | LCC QM23.2 (ebook) | NLM QS 4 | DDC 611—dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2021031406
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2021031407

In Loving Memory of My Bride of 50 years, Muriel

Devoted mother and grandmother

And to Our Family

Tristan, Lana, Elijah, Finley, Sawyer, and Dashiell
Denver, Samantha, and Olin
Skyler, Sara, Dawson, Willa, and Foster
with great appreciation for their support, humor, and patience • **(AFD)**

To Enno and Our Family

To my husband, Enno, and to my family, Erik, Amy, Kristina, and Christian,
for their support and encouragement • **(AMRA)**

To Our Students

We hope you will enjoy reading this book, increase your understanding of clinically oriented anatomy, pass your exams, and be excited and well prepared for your careers in patient care, research, and teaching. You will remember some of what you hear, much of what you read, more of what you see, and almost all of what you experience and understand.

To Professors

May our book be a helpful resource for you. We appreciate the numerous constructive comments we have received over the years from you. Your remarks have been invaluable to us in improving this edition.

To Anatomical Donors

With sincere appreciation to all those who donate their bodies for anatomical study and research, without whom anatomical textbooks and atlases and anatomical study in general would not be possible

Dr. Keith Leon Moore (1925–2019)

by Dr. Arthur F. Dalley II and Dr. Anne M. R. Agur

Dr. Keith Leon Moore
BA, MSc, PhD, Hon. DSc (OSU), Hon. DSc (WU)
FIAC, FRSM, FAAA

One of the most world-renowned anatomists of our time, Dr. Keith Leon Moore, passed away at age 94 on November 25, 2019. Keith was the founding author of Clinically Oriented Anatomy (COA) in 1980 and founding co-author, with Anne Agur, of Essential Clinical Anatomy (ECA) in 1996, both in the vanguard of Clinically Oriented Anatomy textbooks. Keith was the sole author for the first three editions of COA, bringing on Arthur Dalley as co-author starting with the fourth edition and Anne starting with the sixth edition. Keith and Anne brought me on as co-author for ECA starting with the fourth edition. Keith mentored Anne and me well, with COA now in its ninth edition, and ECA in its sixth. The retitling of COA and ECA as “Moore’s” pays tribute to Keith’s foundational work on the books and the legacy they represent. Keith was also the author/co-author of four clinically oriented embryology texts.

Anne Agur, Art Dalley, and Keith Moore


Keith and Marion Moore

Dr. Moore was born in Brantford, Canada, on October 5, 1925. Keith joined the Canadian Navy during World War II. He was a Sick Birth Attendant on Vancouver Island and was trained as a radiology technician. When the war was over, he went to the Western University, where he received his BA, MSc, and PhD degrees. Keith married Marion McDermid in 1949, and together they had five children and nine grandchildren. Marion was the typist, offering the “initial critique” for the first three editions of COA.

In 1956, Keith accepted the position of assistant professor at the University of Manitoba in Winnipeg. In 1965, he was promoted to the Head of Anatomy. In 1976, he became the chair of anatomy and then the associate dean of the Basic Medical Sciences at the University of Toronto. After retirement in 1991, Keith continued to work on his textbooks, give guest lectures, and attend anatomy meetings for more than two decades.

Keith was the recipient of many prestigious awards and recognitions. He received the highest awards for excellence in human anatomy education at the medical, dental, graduate, and undergraduate levels—and for his remarkable record of textbook publications in Clinically Oriented Anatomy and Embryology—from both the American Association of Anatomists (Henry Gray Distinguished Educator Award, 2007) and the American Association of Clinical Anatomists (AACA Honored Member Award, 1994). In 2012, Dr. Moore received honorary Doctor of Science degrees from The Ohio State University and the University of Western Ontario, the Queen Elizabeth II Diamond Jubilee Medal honoring significant contributions and achievements by Canadians, and the R. Benton Adkins, Jr., Distinguished Service Award for his outstanding record of service to the AACA.

Arthur F. Dalley II
PhD, FAAA

Anne M. R. Agur
BSc (OT), MSc, PhD, FAAA

Anne and I are saddened by the loss of our mentor, co-author, and friend. Keith will continue to have an impact on the education of currently training, practicing, and future health care professionals around the world. Dr. Keith Leon Moore was truly an anatomy/embryology legend that will be greatly missed by us and all those in the anatomical community.

Preface

A third of a century has passed since the first edition of Clinically Oriented Anatomy appeared on bookstore shelves. Although the factual basis of anatomy is remarkable among basic sciences for its longevity and consistency, this book has evolved markedly since its inception. This is a reflection of changes in the clinical application of anatomy, new imaging technologies that reveal living anatomy in new ways, and improvements in graphic and publication technology that enable superior demonstration of this information. Efforts continue to make this book even more student friendly and authoritative. The ninth edition has been thoroughly reviewed by students, anatomists, and clinicians for accuracy and relevance and revised with significant new changes and updates.

KEY FEATURES

Clinically Oriented Anatomy has been widely acclaimed for the relevance of its clinical correlations. As in previous editions, the ninth edition places clinical emphasis on anatomy that is important in physical diagnosis for primary care, interpretation of diagnostic imaging, and understanding the anatomical basis of emergency medicine and general surgery. Special attention has been directed toward assisting students in learning the anatomy they will need to know in the 21st century, and to this end, new features have been added and existing features updated.

EXTENSIVE ART PROGRAM

Revision of the art program that began with the seventh edition continues into the ninth edition. Most illustrations were revised for the seventh edition, improving accuracy and consistency and giving classical art derived from Grant's Atlas of Anatomy a fresh, vital, new appearance. The ninth edition includes further updates to figures and labeling to maximize clarity and efficiency. The figures of muscles accompanying the tables have been extensively revised for the ninth edition, and overviews of arteries, with pulse points, and innervation of limbs have been added. Efforts started with the fourth edition continue to ensure that all the anatomy presented and

covered in the text are also illustrated. The text and illustrations were developed to work together for optimum pedagogical effect, aiding the learning process, and markedly reducing the amount of searching required to find structures. The great majority of the clinical conditions are supported by photographs and/or color illustrations; multipart illustrations often combine dissections, line art, and medical images; and tables are accompanied by illustrations to aid the student's understanding of the structures efficiently described.

CLINICAL BLUE BOXES

Widely known as "blue boxes," the highlighted clinical correlations are now titled "Clinical Blue Boxes." They have evolved with changes in practice and many of them are supported by photographs and/or dynamic color illustrations to help with understanding the practical value of anatomy. In this edition, the clinical boxes have undergone extensive review and revision and reflect many recent medical advances. Topics in the Clinical Blue Boxes are classified by the following icons to indicate the type of clinical information covered:

Anatomical variations feature anatomical variations that may be encountered in the dissection lab or in practice, emphasizing the clinical importance of awareness of such variations.

Life cycle boxes emphasize prenatal developmental factors that affect postnatal anatomy and anatomical phenomena specifically associated with stages of life—childhood, adolescence, adult, and advanced age.

Trauma boxes feature the effects of traumatic events—such as fractures of bones or dislocations of joints—on normal anatomy and the clinical manifestations and dysfunction resulting from such injuries.

Diagnostic procedures discuss the anatomical features and observations that play a role in physical diagnosis.

Surgical procedures address such topics as the anatomical basis of surgical procedures, such as the planning of incisions, and the anatomical basis of regional anesthesia.

Pathology boxes cover the effects of disease on normal anatomy, such as cancer of the breast, and anatomical structures or principles involved in the confinement or dissemination of disease within the body.

THE BOTTOM LINE SUMMARIES

Frequent "The Bottom Line" boxes summarize the preceding information, ensuring that primary concepts do not become lost in the many details necessary for thorough understanding. These summaries provide a convenient means of ongoing review and underscore the "big picture" point of view.

ANATOMY DESCRIBED IN A PRACTICAL, FUNCTIONAL CONTEXT

A more realistic approach to the musculoskeletal system emphasizes the action and use of muscles and muscle groups in daily activities, emphasizing gait and grip. The eccentric contraction of muscles, which accounts for much of their activity, is now discussed along with the concentric contraction that is typically the sole focus in anatomy texts. This perspective is important to most health professionals, including the growing number of physical and occupational therapy students using this book.

SURFACE ANATOMY AND MEDICAL IMAGING

Surface anatomy and medical imaging, formerly presented separately, are integrated into the chapter, presented at the time each region is being discussed, clearly demonstrating anatomy's relationship to physical examination and diagnosis. Both natural views of unobstructed surface anatomy and illustrations superimposing anatomical structures on surface anatomy photographs are components of each regional chapter. Medical images, focusing on normal anatomy, include plain and contrast radiographic, MRI, CT, and ultrasonography studies, often with correlative line art as well as explanatory text, to help prepare future professionals who need to be familiar with diagnostic images.

VIDEOS, CASE STUDIES, AND BOARD REVIEW-STYLE QUESTIONS

Clinical Blue Box videos, case studies, and interactive multiple-choice questions are available to students online. These resources provide a convenient and comprehensive means of review and self-testing.

TERMINOLOGY

The terminology fully adheres to Terminologia Anatomica: International Anatomical Nomenclature (1998), generated by the Federative International Program on Anatomical Terminology (FIPAT) and approved by the International Federation of Associations of Anatomists (IFAA). Although the official English-equivalent terms are used throughout the book, when new terms are introduced, the Latin form, used in Europe, Asia, and other parts of the world, is often provided. The roots and derivations of terms are provided to help students understand meaning and increase retention. Eponyms, although not endorsed by the IFAA, appear in parentheses in this edition—for example, sternal angle (angle of Louis)—to assist students who will hear eponymous terms during their clinical studies. The terminology is available online at http://www.unifr.ch/ifaa.

RETAINED AND IMPROVED FEATURES

Students and faculty have told us what they want and expect from Clinically Oriented Anatomy, and we listened:

- A comprehensive text enabling students to fill in the blanks, as time allotted for lectures continues to decrease, laboratory guides and curricula become exclusively instructional, and multiauthored lecture notes develop inconsistencies in comprehension, fact, and format
- A resource capable of supporting areas of special interest and emphasis within specific anatomy courses that serves the anatomy needs of students during both the basic science and the clinical phases of their studies
- Updated organization of the chapters to match that of Grant's Atlas of Anatomy and Grant's Dissector
- A thorough introductory chapter (Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts) that covers important systemic information and concepts basic to the understanding of the anatomy presented in the subsequent regional chapters. Students from many countries and backgrounds have written to express their views of this book—gratifyingly, most are congratulatory. Health professional students have more diverse backgrounds and experiences than ever before. Curricular constraints often result in unjustified assumptions concerning the prerequisite information necessary for many students to understand the presented material. The introductory chapter includes efficient summaries of functional systemic anatomy. Students' comments specifically emphasized the need for a systemic description of the nervous system and the peripheral autonomic nervous system (ANS) in particular. Clinically Oriented Anatomy was the first anatomy textbook to acknowledge and describe the structure and function of the enteric nervous system and its unique role in the innervation of the digestive tract.
- In this ninth edition, a section on Sex and Gender has been added to Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts as well as a Clinical Box on Gender Transitioning in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum.
- Routine facts (such as muscle attachments, innervations, and actions) presented in tables organized to demonstrate shared qualities and illustrated to demonstrate the provided information. Clinically Oriented Anatomy provides more tables than any other anatomy textbook.
- Illustrated clinical correlations that not only describe but also show anatomy as it is applied clinically
- Illustrations that reflect the diversity of both those using the textbook and the patients they will be treating
- Illustrations that facilitate orientation. Many orientation figures have been added, along with arrows to indicate the locations of the inset figures (areas shown in close-up views) and viewing sequences. Labels have been placed to minimize the distance between label and object, with leader lines running the most direct course possible.
- Equitable focus on female as well as male anatomy. Traditionally, texts have been thorough

regarding the presentation of the male phallus and insufficient on treatment of the female external genitalia, implying that the clitoris is merely a much smaller version of the penis. This edition provides a thorough presentation of the anatomy of the clitoris, showing that its anatomy is distinct and clearly not a miniature version of the penis.

- **Boldface type** indicates the main entries of anatomical terms, when they are introduced and defined. In the index, the page numbers of these main entries also appear in boldface type, so that the main entries can be easily located. Boldface type is also used to introduce clinical terms in the clinical blue boxes.
- Italic type indicates anatomical terms important to the topic and region of study or labeled in an illustration that is being referenced.
- Useful content outlines appear at the beginning of every chapter.

COMMITMENT TO EDUCATING STUDENTS

This book is written for health science students, keeping in mind those who may not have had a previous acquaintance with anatomy. We have tried to present the material in an interesting way so that it can be easily integrated with what will be taught in more detail in other disciplines such as physical diagnosis, medical rehabilitation, and surgery. We hope this text will serve two purposes: to educate and to excite. If students develop enthusiasm for clinical anatomy, the goals of this book will have been fulfilled.

Arthur F. Dalley II

Anne M. R. Agur

Acknowledgments

We would like to acknowledge the following experts who reviewed and suggested updates for the clinical content in the Clinical Blue Boxes:

- Hassan Amarilli, MBBS, MS (Surgery), FUICC, Professor and Chair, Department of Anatomy, American University of Antigua College of Medicine, Coolidge, Antigua
- Esteban Cheng-Ching, MD, Neuro-interventional Specialist, Miami Valley Hospital, Premier Health Specialists; Assistant Professor, Department of Neurology, Boonshoft School of Medicine, Wright State University, Dayton, OH
- Warwick Gorman, Anatomist, Physiotherapist, Tutor, and Lecturer, RMIT University, La Trobe University, Melbourne, Victoria, Australia, provided an extensive review and critique of the entire eighth edition of COA that was very useful in preparing the ninth edition.
- Cheryl Iglesia, MD, Director, Female Pelvic Medicine and Reconstructive Surgery (FPMRS), MedStar Washington Hospital Center; Professor, Obstetrics and Gynecology and Urology, Georgetown University School of Medicine, Washington, DC
- Elaine Lonnemann, PT, DPT, OCS, FAAOMPT, Associate Professor, Bellarmine University, Louisville, KY
- Lisa M. Murray, MS, ACSM Certified Exercise Physiologist, Program Coordinator Kinesiology, Nutrition, Health/Wellness and Physical Education, Pierce College, Fort Steilacoom, WA
- Carol Scott-Conner, EH, MD, PhD, MBA, FACS, Professor Emeritus, Department of Surgery, University of Iowa Roy J. and Lucille A. Carver College of Medicine, Iowa City, IA, reviewed many of the Clinical Blue Boxes for the ninth edition

Special thanks to Kristina Agur for her assistance in revision of figure legends.

We wish to thank the following colleagues who were invited by the publisher to assist with the development of the ninth edition through their critical analysis:

- John P. Bastin, DMSc, PA-C, EM-CAC, Florida State University College of Medicine, School of Physician Assistant Practice, Tallahassee, FL
- N. Beth Collier, DPT, Mercer University, Atlanta, GA

- Kate Drabinski, PhD, Lecturer, Gender and Women's Studies, University of Maryland, Baltimore County, MD
- Maria X. Leighton, MD, F. Edward Hébert School of Medicine, Uniformed Services, University of the Health Sciences, Bethesda, MD
- Elsayed Emad Ahmed Nosair, College of Medicine, University of Sharjah, Sharjah, United Arab of Emirates
- Geoffroy Noel, PhD, School of Medicine, University of California, San Diego, CA
- David Resuehr, PhD, MSc, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL
- Sheryl L. Sanders, PhD, Pacific University, Hillsboro, OR

Several students were also invited by the publisher to review the textbook:

- Jayant Bhandari, Poznan University of Medical Sciences, Poland
- Emily Franzen, Des Moines University College of Osteopathic Medicine, IA

In addition to reviewers, many people—some of them unknowingly—helped us by perusing, discussing, or contributing to parts of the manuscript and/or providing constructive criticism of the text and illustrations in this and previous editions. Those indicated as deceased continue to be honored here, not only for their contributions to Clinically Oriented Anatomy but also for their major contributions to anatomical knowledge. All anatomists are in their debt—we stand on the shoulders of giants.

- Dr. Peter Abrahams, Professor of Clinical Anatomy, Medical Teaching Centre, Institute of Clinical Education, Warwick Medical School, University of Warwick, Coventry, United Kingdom
- Dr. Robert D. Acland (deceased), Professor of Surgery/Microsurgery, Division of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery, University of Louisville, Louisville, KY
- Dr. Jeffrey E. Alfonsi, Assistant Professor, Department of Medicine, Schulich School of Medicine & Dentistry, Western University, London, Ontario, Canada
- Dr. Edna Becker, Associate Professor of Medical Imaging (retired), University of Toronto Faculty of Medicine, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
- Dr. Robert T. Binhammer, Emeritus Professor of Genetics, Cell Biology and Anatomy, University of Nebraska Medical Center, who voluntarily read every page of Clinically Oriented Anatomy and provided an extensive review and critique that was very useful
- Dr. Donald R. Cahill (deceased), Professor and former Chair, Department of Anatomy, Mayo Medical School; former Editor-in-Chief of Clinical Anatomy, Rochester, MN
- Dr. Joan Campbell, Assistant Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto Faculty of Medicine, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
- Dr. Stephen W. Carmichael, Professor Emeritus and former Chair. Department of Anatomy, Mayo Medical School, former Editor-in-Chief of Clinical Anatomy, Rochester, MN
- Dr. Yasmin Carter, Associate Professor, Department of Radiology, University of Massachusetts Medical School, Worcester, MA
- Dr. Chandrasat (Sagar) Dugani, Internal Medicine, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN
- Dr. Ralph Ger (deceased), Professor of Anatomy and Structural Biology, Albert Einstein

College of Medicine, Bronx, NY
- Dr. Paul Gobee, Assistant Professor, Developer Anatomical E-Learning, Department of Anatomy & Embryology, Leiden University Medical Center, Leiden, Netherlands
- Warwick Gorman, Anatomist, Physiotherapist, Tutor, and Lecturer, RMIT University, La Trobe University, Melbourne, Victoria, Australia
- Dr. Douglas J. Gould, Professor of Neuroscience and Chair, Department of Biomedical Sciences, Oakland University William Beaumont School of Medicine, Editor in Chief of Medical Science Educator, Rochester, MI
- Dr. Daniel O. Graney, Professor Emeritus of Biological Structure, University of Washington School of Medicine, Seattle, WA
- Dr. David G. Greathouse, Director of Clinical Electrophysiological Services, Texas Physical Therapy Specialists, New Braunfels, TX; former Professor, Chair, and Associate Dean, Belmont University School of Physical Therapy, Nashville, TN
- Dr. Scott L. Hagan, Internal Medicine, University of Washington Medical Center Specialties, Seattle, WA; former Medical Student, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, TN
- Dr. Masoom Haider, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto Faculty of Medicine, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
- Dr. John S. Halle, Professor and former Chair, Belmont University School of Physical Therapy (retired), Nashville, TN
- Dr. Jennifer L. Halpern, Assistant Professor, Orthopedic Surgery and Rehabilitation—Oncology, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, TN
- Dr. June Harris, Professor of Anatomy, Faculty of Medicine, Memorial University of Newfoundland and Labrador Health Sciences Centre, St. John’s, Newfoundland, Canada
- Mitchell T. Hayes, Resident Physician of Urology, Oregon Health & Sciences University, Portland, OR; former Medical Student, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, TN
- Dr. Nicole Herring, Assistant Professor, Anatomical Sciences and Neurobiology, Director, Fresh Tissue Facility, University of Louisville School of Medicine, Louisville, KY
- Dr. Walter Kuchareczyk, Professor and Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Resonance Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
- Dr. Randy Kulesza, Professor of Anatomy and Neuroscience, Lake Erie College of Osteopathic Medicine, Erie, PA
- Dr. Nirusha Lachman, Professor and Chair, Department of Anatomy, Mayo Medical School, Rochester, MN
- Dr. Michael von Lüdinghausen, University Professor (retired), Anatomy Institute, University of Würzburg, Würzburg, Germany
- Dr. Shirley McCarthy, Director of MRI, Department of Diagnostic Radiology, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT
- Dr. Lillian Nanney, Professor of Plastic Surgery and Cell and Developmental Biology (retired), Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, TN

- Dr. Todd R. Olson, Professor Emeritus of Anatomy and Structural Biology, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, NY
- Dr. Wojciech Pawlina, Professor of Obstetrics and Gynecology, and former Chair, Department of Anatomy, Mayo Medical School, former Editor in Chief of Anatomical Sciences Education, Rochester, MN
- Dr. T. V. N. Persaud, Professor Emeritus of Human Anatomy and Cell Science, Faculties of Medicine and Dentistry, University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada; Professor of Anatomy and Embryology, St. George's University, Granada, West Indies
- Dr. Cathleen C. Pettepher, Professor of Biochemistry and Assistant Dean for Assessment, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, TN
- Dr. Nina Piililä, Head of Orthodontics, University of Helsinki, Tampere, Finland
- Jessica Pin, BS, Activist for women and female perineal anatomy, San Francisco, CA
- Dr. Thomas H. Quinn, Professor Emeritus and Program Director, Master's Degree in Clinical Anatomy, Creighton University School of Medicine, Omaha, NE
- Dr. Christopher Ramnanan, Associate Professor, Department of Innovation in Medical Education, Division of Clinical and Functional Anatomy, University of Ottawa Faculty of Medicine, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
- Dr. David Resuehr, Associate Professor, Department of Cellular, Developmental and Integrative Biology, University of Alabama at Birmingham School of Medicine, Birmingham, AL
- Dr. Tatsuo Sato, Professor and Head (retired), Second Department of Anatomy, Tokyo Medical and Dental University Faculty of Medicine, Tokyo, Japan
- Carol Scott-Conner, Professor Emeritus, Department of Surgery, University of Iowa Roy J. and Lucille A. Carver College of Medicine, Iowa City, IA
- Dr. Ryan Splittgerber, Associate Professor, Department of Surgery Education, Vanderbilt University Medical Center and School of Medicine, Nashville, TN

Artwork plays a major role in facilitating learning. We extend our sincere gratitude and appreciation for the skills, talents, and timely work of our medical illustrators. Wynne Auyeung and Natalie Intven from Imagineering did a superb job of managing a team of talented artists to revise most illustrations in the seventh edition for a more consistent, vibrant art program. Wolters Kluwer Director for Art and Digital Content Jennifer Clements has been instrumental to the updating of artistic detail and efficient and accurate labeling in this and the two previous editions. Rob Duckwall from Dragonfly Media Group revised many of the illustrations for the ninth edition. Photographs taken during a major surface anatomy photography project for the fifth edition continue to be a tremendous asset. We are indebted to Joel A. Vilensky, PhD, and Edward C. Weber, MD, for providing the many new medical images that appear in the ninth edition. E. Anne Rayner, Senior Photographer, Vanderbilt Medical Art Group, did an excellent job photographing the surface anatomy models, working in association with authors Arthur Dalley and Anne Agur. We greatly appreciate the contribution the models made to the quality of both the previous and the current edition. Although the number of illustrations from Grant's Atlas of Anatomy continues to be reduced and replaced by new art, we gratefully acknowledge

the excellence of Professor J. C. B. Grant's dissections and the excellent art rendered by the following: Dorothy Foster Chubb, Elizabeth Blackstock, Nancy Joy, Nina Kilpatrick, David Mazierski, Stephen Mader, Bart Vallecoccia, Sari O'Sullivan, Kam Yu, Caitlin Duckwall, and Valerie Oxorn.

Many thanks also go to those at Wolters Kluwer who participated in the development of this edition, including Crystal Taylor, Senior Acquisitions Editor; Jennifer Clements, Director for Art and Digital Content; and Greg Nicholl, Freelance Development Editor. Finally, thanks are due to the sales and marketing division, which has played a key role in the continued success of this book.

Arthur F. Dalley II

Anne M. R. Agur

Abbreviations

a., aa.	artery, arteries
abd.	abdomen, abductor
acc.	accessory
ACL	anterior cruciate ligament
add.	adductor
ANS	autonomic nervous system
ant.	anterior
ASIS	anterior superior iliac spine
AV	atrioventricular
C	cervical
CCA	common carotid artery
CN	cranial nerve
CNS	central nervous system
Co	coccygeal
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid
ECA	external carotid artery
e.g.	for example
EJV	external jugular vein
ENS	enteric nervous system
et al.	and others
ext.	extensor, external
flex.	flexor
Fr.	French
G.	Greek
GI	gastrointestinal
ICA	internal carotid artery
i.e.	that is
IJV	internal jugular vein

inf.	inferior
int.	internal
IVC	internal vena cava
l.	left
L	liter, lumbar
L.	Latin
LA	left atrium
lat.	lateral
LCA	left coronary artery
lev.	levator
LLQ	left lower quadrant
LRV	left renal vein
LUQ	left upper quadrant
LV	left ventricle
m., mm.	muscle, muscles
med.	medial
PCL	posterior cruciate ligament
PNS	peripheral nervous system
post.	posterior
PSIS	posterior superior iliac spine
PSNS	parasympathetic nervous system
PV	hepatic portal vein
r.	right
RA	right atrium
RCA	right coronary artery
RLQ	right lower quadrant
RUQ	right upper quadrant
RV	right ventricle
S	sacral
SA	sinu-atrial
SCM	sternocleidomastoid
SNS	sensory nervous system
sp.	spinal
SPNS	sympathetic nervous system
sup.	superior
supf.	superficial
SV	sinoventricular
SVC	superior vena cava
T	thoracic
TA	Terminologia Anatomica
TMJ	temporomandibular joint

v., vv.	vein, veins
vs.	versus
yo	years old

Contents

2 BACK

3 UPPER LIMB

4 THORAX

ABDOMEN

6 PELVIS AND PERINEUM

7 LOWER LIMB

8 HEAD

List of Clinical Blue Boxes

1 OVERVIEW AND BASIC CONCEPTS

Anatomical Variations. Clinically Significant Variations and Birth Defects

Integumentary System. Skin Color Signs in Physical Diagnosis; Skin Incisions and Scarring; Stretch Marks in Skin; Skin Injuries and Wounds

Fascias. Fascial Planes and Surgery

Bones. Accessory (Supernumerary) Bones; Heterotopic Bones; Trauma to Bone and Bone Changes; Osteoporosis; Sternal Puncture; Bone Growth and Assessment of Bone Age; Effects of Disease, Diet, and Trauma on Bone Growth; Displacement and Separation of Epiphyses; Avascular Necrosis

Joints. Joints of Newborn Cranium; Degenerative Joint Disease; Arthroscopy

Skeletal Muscles. Muscle Testing; Muscle Dysfunction and Paralysis; Absence of Muscle Tone; Muscle Soreness and “Pulled” Muscles; Growth and Regeneration of Skeletal Muscle

Cardiac and Smooth Muscle. Hypertrophy of Myocardium and Myocardial Infarction; Hypertrophy and Hyperplasia of Smooth Muscle

Cardiovascular System. Arteriosclerosis: Ischemia and Infarction; Varicose Veins

Lymphoid System. Spread of Cancer; Lymphangitis, Lymphadenitis, and Lymphedema

Central and Peripheral Nervous Systems. Damage to CNS; Rhizotomy; Nerve Degeneration and Ischemia of Nerves

2 BACK

Vertebrae. Vertebral Body Osteoporosis; Cervical Ribs; Laminectomy; Fracture and Dislocation

of Atlas; Fracture and Dislocation of Axis; Dislocation of Cervical Vertebrae; Lumbar Spinal Stenosis; Caudal Epidural Anesthesia; Injury of Coccyx; Abnormal Fusion of Vertebrae; Effect of Aging on Vertebrae; Anomalies of Vertebrae

Vertebral Column. Aging of Intervertebral Discs; Back Pain; Herniation of Nucleus Pulposus (Herniation of IV Disc); Spinal Fusion and Intervertebral Disc Replacement; Injury and Disease of Zygapophysial Joints; Fractures and Dislocations of Vertebrae; Fracture of Dens of Axis; Rupture of Transverse Ligament of Atlas; Rupture of Alar Ligaments; Abnormal Curvatures of Vertebral Column

Muscles of Back. Back Strains, Sprains, and Spasms

Contents of Vertebral Canal. Compression of Lumbar Spinal Nerve Roots; Myelography; Development of Meninges and Subarachnoid Space; Lumbar Spinal Puncture; Spinal Anesthesia; Epidural Anesthesia (Blocks); Ischemia of Spinal Cord; Spinal Cord Injuries

3 UPPER LIMB

Bones of Upper Limb. Fracture of Clavicle; Ossification of Clavicle; Fracture of Scapula; Fractures of Humerus; Fractures of Radius and Ulna; Fracture of Scaphoid; Fracture of Hamate; Fracture of Metacarpals; Fracture of Phalanges

Pectoral, Scapular, and Deltoid Regions. Congenital Absence of a Body Part, Organ, or Tissue (Agenesis); Injury of Long Thoracic Nerve and Paralysis of Serratus Anterior; Triangle of Auscultation; Injury of Spinal Accessory Nerve (CN XI); Injury of Thoracodorsal Nerve; Injury to Dorsal Scapular Nerve; Injury to Axillary Nerve; Fracture–Dislocation of Proximal Humeral Epiphysis; Rotator Cuff Injuries

Axilla. Arterial Anastomoses Around Scapula; Compression of Axillary Artery; Aneurysm of Axillary Artery; Injuries to Axillary Vein; Axillary Vein in Subclavian Vein Puncture; Infection of Axillary Lymph Nodes; Dissection of Axillary Lymph Nodes; Variations of Brachial Plexus; Brachial Plexus Injuries; Brachial Plexus Block

Arm and Cubital Fossa. Bicipital Myotatic Reflex; Biceps Tendinitis/Tendinosis; Dislocation of Tendon of Long Head of Biceps Brachii; Rupture of Tendon of Long Head of Biceps Brachii; Interruption of Blood Flow in Brachial Artery; Nerve Injury in Fracture of Humeral Shaft; Injury to Musculocutaneous Nerve; Injury to Radial Nerve in Arm; Venipuncture in Cubital Fossa

Forearm. Elbow Tendinitis/Tendinosis or Lateral Epicondylitis; Mallet or Baseball Finger; Fracture of Olecranon; Synovial Cyst of Wrist; High Division of Brachial Artery; Superficial Ulnar Artery; Measuring Pulse Rate; Variations in Origin of Radial Artery; Median Nerve Injury; Pronator Syndrome; Communications Between Median and Ulnar Nerves; Injury of Ulnar Nerve at Elbow and in Forearm; Cubital Tunnel Syndrome; Injury of Radial Nerve in Forearm (Superficial or Deep Branches)

Hand. Dupuytren Contracture of Palmar Fascia; Hand Infections; Tenosynovitis; Laceration of Palmar Arches; Ischemia of Digits (Fingers); Lesions of Median Nerve; Carpal Tunnel Syndrome; Trauma to Median Nerve; Ulnar Canal Syndrome; Handlebar Neuropathy; Radial Nerve Injury in Arm and Hand Disability; Dermatoglyphics; Palmar Wounds and Surgical Incisions

Joints of Upper Limb. Dislocation of Sternoclavicular Joint; Ankylosis of Sternoclavicular Joint; Dislocation of Acromioclavicular Joint; Calcific Tendinitis of Shoulder; Rotator Cuff Injuries; Dislocation of Glenohumeral Joint; Glenoid Labrum Tears; Adhesive Capsulitis of Glenohumeral Joint; Bursitis of Elbow; Avulsion of Medial Epicondyle; Ulnar Collateral Ligament Reconstruction; Dislocation of Elbow Joint; Subluxation and Dislocation of Radial Head; Wrist Fractures and Dislocations; Bull Rider's Thumb; Skier's Thumb

4 THORAX

Thoracic Wall. Chest Pain; Rib Fractures; Flail Chest; Thoracotomy, Intercostal Space Incisions, and Rib Excision; Supernumerary Ribs; Protective Function and Aging of Costal Cartilages; Ossified Xiphoid Process; Sternal Fractures; Median Sternotomy; Sternal Biopsy; Sternal Anomalies; Thoracic Outlet Syndrome; Dislocation of Ribs; Separation of Ribs; Paralysis of Diaphragm

Muscles and Neurovasculature of Thoracic Wall. Dyspnea: Difficult Breathing; Extrapleural Intrathoracic Surgical Access; Herpes Zoster Infection of Spinal Ganglia; Intercostal Nerve Block

Breasts. Changes in Breasts; Breast Quadrants; Carcinoma of Breast; Visualizing Breast Structure and Pathology; Surgical Incisions of Breast and Surgical Removal of Breast Pathology; Polymastia, Polythelia, and Amastia; Breast Cancer in Men; Gynecomastia

Pleurae, Lungs, and Tracheobronchial Tree. Injuries of Cervical Pleura and Apex of Lung; Injury to Other Parts of Pleurae; Pulmonary Collapse; Pneumothorax, Hydrothorax, and Hemothorax; Thoracentesis; Insertion of a Chest Tube; Pleurectomy and Pleurodesis; Thoracoscopy; Pleuritis (Pleurisy); Variations in Lobes of Lung; Appearance of Lungs and Inhalation of Carbon Particles and Irritants; Pulmonary Embolism; Lung Cancer and Mediastinal Nerves; Auscultation of Lungs and Percussion of Thorax; Aspiration of Foreign Bodies; Bronchoscopy; Lymphatic Drainage and Pleural Adhesion; Segmental Atelectasis; Lung Resections; Hemoptysis; Bronchogenic Carcinoma; Pleural Pain; Chest X-Ray

Mediastinum Overview and Pericardium. Somatic Innervation of Pericardium by Phrenic Nerves; Levels of Viscera Relative to Mediastinal Divisions; Mediastinoscopy and Mediastinal Biopsies; Widening of Mediastinum; Surgical Significance of Transverse Pericardial Sinus; Exposure of Venae Cavae; Pericarditis, Pericardial Rub, and Pericardial Effusion; Cardiac Tamponade; Pericardiocentesis; Positional Abnormalities of Heart

Heart. Percussion of Heart; Surface Projection and Auscultation of Heart Valves; Cardiac Catheterization; Embryology of Right Atrium; Septal Defects; Atrial Septal Defects; Ventricular Septal Defects; Basis for Naming Cusps and Sinuses of Aortic and Pulmonary Valves; Stroke or Cerebrovascular Accident Valvular Heart Disease; Mitral Valve Insufficiency (Mitral Valve Prolapse); Pulmonary Valve Stenosis; Pulmonary Valve Incompetence; Aortic Valve Stenosis; Aortic Valve Insufficiency; Echocardiography; Coronary Angiography; Coronary Artery Disease or Coronary Heart Disease; Myocardial Infarction; Coronary Atherosclerosis; Slowly Progressive Coronary Artery Disease; Angina Pectoris; Coronary Bypass Graft; Coronary Angioplasty; Collateral Circulation via the Smallest Cardiac Veins; Electrocardiography; Coronary Occlusion and Conducting System of Heart; Artificial Cardiac Pacemaker; Restarting Heart; Fibrillation of Heart; Defibrillation of Heart; Cardiac Referred Pain

Superior, Posterior, and Anterior Mediastinum. Variations of Great Arteries; Variations in Branching of Arch of Aorta; Anomalies of Aortic Branches and Aortic Arch; Aneurysm of Ascending Aorta; Coarctation of Aorta; Injury to Recurrent Laryngeal Nerves; Blockage of Esophagus; Laceration of Thoracic Duct; Variations of Thoracic Duct; Alternate Venous Routes to Heart; Age Changes in Thymus; Radiography of Mediastinum; CT and MRI of Mediastinum

5 ABDOMEN

Fascia and Muscles of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall. Clinical Significance of Fascia and Fascial Spaces of Abdominal Wall; Protuberance of Abdomen; Abdominal Hernias

Neurovasculature of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall. Palpation of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall; Superficial Abdominal Reflexes; Injury to Nerves of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall; Abdominal Surgical Incisions; Longitudinal Incisions; Oblique and Transverse Incisions; High-Risk Incisions; Incisional Hernia; Minimally Invasive (Endoscopic) Surgery; Reversal of Venous Flow and Collateral Pathways of Superficial Abdominal Veins

Internal Surface of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall and Inguinal Region. Undescended (Cryptorchid) Testis; Postnatal Patency of Umbilical Vein; Metastasis of Uterine Cancer to Labium Majus

Spermatic Cord, Scrotum, and Testes. Inguinal Hernias; Cremasteric Reflex; Cysts and Hernias of the Processus Vaginalis; Hydrocele of Spermatic Cord and/or Testis; Hematocele of Testis; Torsion of Spermatic Cord; Anesthetizing Scrotum; Spermatocele and Epididymal Cyst; Vestigial Remnants of Embryonic Genital Ducts; Varicocele; Cancer of Testis and Scrotum

Peritoneum and Peritoneal Cavity. Patency and Blockage of Uterine Tubes; Peritoneum and Surgical Procedures; Peritonitis and Ascites; Peritoneal Adhesions and Adhesiotomy; Abdominal Paracentesis; Peritoneal Dialysis; Functions of Greater Omentum; Abscess Formation; Spread of Pathological Fluids; Flow of Ascitic Fluid and Pus; Fluid in Omental Bursa; Internal Hernia Through Omental Foramen; Temporary Control of Hemorrhage from Cystic Artery

Esophagus and Stomach. Esophageal Varices; Pyrosis; Bariatric Surgery; Displacement of Stomach; Hiatal Hernia; Pylorospasm; Congenital Hypertrophic Pyloric Stenosis; Carcinoma of Stomach; Gastrectomy and Lymph Node Resection; Gastric Ulcers, Peptic Ulcers, Helicobacter pylori, and Vagotomy; Visceral Referred Pain

Small and Large Intestine. Duodenal Ulcers; Developmental Changes in Mesoduodenum; Paraduodenal Hernias; Brief Review of Embryological Rotation of Midgut; Navigating Small Intestine; Ischemia of Intestine; Ileal Diverticulum; Position of Appendix; Appendicitis; Appendectomy; Mobile Ascending Colon; Colitis, Colectomy, Ileostomy, and Colostomy; Colonoscopy, Sigmoidoscopy, and Colorectal Cancer; Diverticulosis; Volvulus of Sigmoid Colon

Spleen and Pancreas. Rupture of Spleen; Splenectomy and Splenomegaly; Accessory Spleen(s) and Splenosis; Splenic Needle Biopsy and Splenoportography; Blockage of Hepatopancreatic Ampulla and Pancreatitis; Cholangiopancreatography; Accessory Pancreatic Tissue; Rupture of Pancreas; Subtotal Pancreatectomy; Pancreatic Cancer

Liver, Biliary Ducts, and Gallbladder. Palpation of Liver; Subphrenic Abscesses; Hepatic Lobectomies and Segmentectomy; Rupture of Liver; Aberrant Hepatic Arteries; Variations in Relationships of Hepatic Arteries; Hepatomegaly; Cirrhosis of Liver; Liver Biopsy; Mobile Gallbladder; Variations in Cystic and Hepatic Ducts; Accessory Hepatic Ducts; Gallstones; Gallstones in Duodenum; Cholecystectomy; Portal Hypertension; Portosystemic Shunts

Kidneys, Ureters, and Suprarenal Glands. Palpation of Kidneys; Perinephric Abscess; Nephroptosis; Renal Transplantation; Renal Cysts; Pain in Pararenal Region; Accessory Renal Vessels; Renal Vein Entrapment Syndrome; Congenital Anomalies of Kidneys and Ureters; Renal and Ureteric Calculi

Diaphragm. Hiccups; Section of a Phrenic Nerve; Referred Pain from Diaphragm; Rupture of Diaphragm and Herniation of Viscera; Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia

Posterior Abdominal Wall. Psoas Abscess; Posterior Abdominal Pain; Pulsations of Aorta and Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm; Collateral Routes for Abdominopelvic Venous Blood

6 PELVIS AND PERINEUM

Pelvic Girdle. Variations in Male and Female Pelves; Pelvic Diameters (Conjugates); Pelvic Fractures; Relaxation of Pelvic Ligaments and Increased Joint Mobility in Late Pregnancy; Spondylolysis and Spondylolisthesis

Pelvic Cavity. Injury to Pelvic Floor

Neurovascular Structures of Pelvis. Iatrogenic Injury of Ureters; Injury During Ligation of Uterine Artery; Injury During Ligation of Ovarian Artery; Ligation of Internal Iliac Artery and Collateral Circulation in Pelvis; Injury to Pelvic Nerves

Urinary Organs and Rectum. Iatrogenic Compromise of Ureteric Blood Supply; Ureteric Calculi; Cystocele, Urethrocele, and Urinary Incontinence; Suprapubic Cystostomy; Rupture of Bladder; Cystoscopy; Clinically Significant Differences Between Male and Female Urethrae; Rectal Examination; Resection of Rectum

Male Internal Genital Organs. Male Sterilization; Abscesses in Seminal Glands; Hypertrophy of Prostate

Female Internal Genital Organs. Infections of Female Genital Tract; Patency of Uterine Tubes; Hysterosalpingography; Endoscopy; Female Sterilization; Tubal Sterilization; Hysteroscopic Sterilization; Ectopic Tubal Pregnancy; Remnants of Embryonic Ducts; Bicornuate Uterus; Disposition of Uterus; Manual Examination of Uterus; Lifetime Changes in Anatomy of Uterus; Cervical Cancer Screening; Hysterectomy; Distension of Vagina; Digital Pelvic Examination; Vaginal Fistulae; Culdocentesis; Laparoscopic Examination of Pelvic Viscera; Anesthesia for Childbirth

Perineum. Gender Transitioning; Pelvic Organ Prolapse; Episiotomy; Rupture of Urethra in Males and Extravasation of Urine; Starvation and Rectal Prolapse; Pectinate Line: A Clinically Important Landmark; Anal Fissures; Ischio-Anal and Peri-Anal Abscesses; Hemorrhoids; Anorectal Incontinence

Male Urogenital Triangle. Urethral Catheterization; Distension of Scrotum; Palpation of Testes; Hypospadias; Phimosis, Paraphimosis, and Circumcision; Impotence and Erectile Dysfunction

Female Urogenital Triangle. Female Genital Cutting; Vulvar Trauma; Infection of Greater Vestibular Glands; Pudendal and Ilio-Inguinal Nerve Blocks; Exercises for Strengthening of Female Perineal Muscles; Vaginismus

7 LOWER LIMB

Bones of Lower Limb. Lower Limb Injuries; Injuries of Hip Bone; Coxa Vara and Coxa Valga; Dislocated Epiphysis of Femoral Head; Femoral Fractures; Tibial Fractures; Fractures Involving Epiphysial Plates; Fibular Fractures; Bone Grafts; Intraosseous Infusion; Calcaneal Fractures; Fractures of Talar Neck; Fractures of Metatarsals; Os Trigonum; Fracture of Sesamoid Bones

Overview of Vessels and Nerves of Lower Limb. Compartment Syndromes and Fasciotomy; Varicose Veins, Thrombosis, and Thrombophlebitis; Saphenous Vein Grafts; Saphenous Cutdown and Saphenous Nerve Injury; Enlarged Inguinal Lymph Nodes; Regional Nerve Blocks of Lower Limbs; Abnormalities of Sensory Function

Anterior and Medial Regions of Thigh. Hip and Thigh Contusions; Psoas Abscess; Paralysis of Quadriceps; Chondromalacia Patellae; Patellar Fractures; Abnormal Ossification of Patella; Patellar Tendon Reflex; Transplantation of Gracilis; Groin Pull; Injury to Adductor Longus;

Palpation, Compression, and Cannulation of Femoral Artery; Laceration of Femoral Artery; Potentially Lethal Misnomer; Saphenous Varix; Location of Femoral Vein; Cannulation of Femoral Vein; Femoral Hernias; Replaced or Accessory Obturator Artery

Gluteal and Posterior Thigh Regions. Trochanteric Bursitis; Ischial Bursitis; Hamstring Injuries; Injury to Superior Gluteal Nerve; Regional Anesthesia of Sciatic Nerve; Injury to Sciatic Nerve; Intragluteal Injections

Popliteal Fossa and Leg. Popliteal Abscess and Tumor; Popliteal Pulse; Popliteal Aneurysm and Hemorrhage; Injury to Tibial Nerve; Containment and Spread of Compartmental Infections in Leg; Tibialis Anterior Strain (Shin Splints); Fibularis Muscles and Evolution of Human Foot; Injury to Common Fibular Nerve and Footdrop; Deep Fibular Nerve Entrapment; Superficial Fibular Nerve Entrapment; Fabella in Gastrocnemius; Calcaneal Tendinitis; Ruptured Calcaneal Tendon; Calcaneal Tendon Reflex; Absence of Plantarflexion; Gastrocnemius Strain; Calcaneal Bursitis; Venous Return from Leg; Accessory Soleus; Posterior Tibial Pulse

Foot. Plantar Fasciitis; Infections of Foot; Contusion of Extensor Digitorum Brevis; Sural Nerve Grafts; Regional Anesthesia of Superficial Fibular Nerve; Plantar Reflex; Medial Plantar Nerve Entrapment; Palpation of Dorsalis Pedis Pulse; Hemorrhaging Wounds of Sole of Foot; Lymphadenopathy

Joints of Lower Limb. Bipedalism and Congruity of Articular Surfaces of Hip Joint; Fractures of Femoral Neck; Surgical Hip Replacement; Necrosis of Femoral Head in Children; Dislocation of Hip Joint; Genu Valgum and Genu Varum; Patellar Dislocation; Patellofemoral Syndrome; Knee Joint Injuries; Arthroscopy of Knee Joint; Aspiration of Knee Joint; Bursitis in Knee Region; Popliteal Cysts; Knee Replacement; Ankle Injuries; Tibial Nerve Entrapment; Hallux Valgus; Hammer Toe; Claw Toes; Pes Planus (Flat Feet); Clubfoot (Talipes Equinovarus)

8 HEAD

Cranium. Head Injuries; Headaches and Facial Pain; Injury to Superciliary Arches; Malar Flush; Fractures of Maxillae and Associated Bones; Fractures of Mandible; Resorption of Alveolar Bone; Fractures of Calvaria; Surgical Access to Cranial Cavity: Bone Flaps; Development of Cranium; Age Changes in Face; Obliteration of Cranial Sutures; Age Changes in Cranium; Craniosynostosis and Cranial Malformations

Face and Scalp. Facial Lacerations and Incisions; Scalp Injuries; Scalp Wounds; Scalp Infections; Sebaceous Cysts; Cephalohematoma; Flaring of Nostrils; Paralysis of Facial Muscles; Infra-Orbital Nerve Block; Mental Nerve Blocks; Buccal Nerve Block; Trigeminal Neuralgia; Lesions of Trigeminal Nerve; Herpes Zoster Infection of Trigeminal Ganglion; Testing Sensory Function of CN V; Injuries to Facial Nerve; Compression of Facial Artery; Pulses of Arteries of Face and Scalp; Stenosis of Internal Carotid Artery; Scalp Lacerations; Squamous Cell Carcinoma of Lip

Cranial Meninges. Fracture of Pterion; Thrombophlebitis of Facial Vein; Blunt Trauma to Head; Tentorial Herniation; Bulging of Diaphragma Sellae; Occlusion of Cerebral Veins and Dural Venous Sinuses; Metastasis of Tumor Cells to Dural Venous Sinuses; Fractures of Cranial Base; Dural Origin of Headaches; Leptomeningitis; Head Injuries and Intracranial Hemorrhage

Brain. Cerebral Injuries; Cisternal Puncture; Hydrocephalus; Leakage of Cerebrospinal Fluid; Reduced Blood Supply to the Brainstem; Anastomoses of Cerebral Arteries and Cerebral Embolism; Variations of Cerebral Arterial Circle; Strokes; Brain Infarction; Transient Ischemic Attacks

Orbits, Eyeball, and Accessory Visual Structures. Fractures of Orbit; Orbital Tumors; Injury to Nerves Supplying Eyelids; Inflammation of Palpebral Glands; Hyperemia of Conjunctiva; Subconjunctival Hemorrhages; Development of Retina; Retinal Detachment; Pupillary Light Reflex; Ophthalmoscopy; Papilledema; Presbyopia and Cataracts; Coloboma of Iris; Glaucoma; Hemorrhage into Anterior Chamber; Artificial Eye; Corneal Reflex; Corneal Abrasions and Lacerations; Corneal Ulcers and Transplants; Horner Syndrome; Paralysis of Extra-Ocular Muscles/Palsies of Orbital Nerves; Oculomotor Nerve Palsy; Abducent Nerve Palsy; Blockage of Central Retinal Artery; Blockage of Central Retinal Vein

Parotid and Temporal Regions, Infratemporal Fossa, and Temporomandibular Joint. Parotidectomy; Infection of Parotid Gland; Abscess in Parotid Gland; Sialography of Parotid Duct; Blockage of Parotid Duct; Accessory Parotid Gland; Mandibular Nerve Block; Inferior Alveolar Nerve Block; Dislocation of Temporomandibular Joint (TMJ); Arthritis of TMJ

Oral Region. Cleft Lip; Cyanosis of Lips; Large Labial Frenulum; Gingivitis; Dental Caries, Pulpitis, and Tooth Abscesses; Supernumerary Teeth (Hyperdontia); Extraction of Teeth; Dental Implants; Nasopalatine Block; Greater Palatine Block; Cleft Palate; Gag Reflex; Paralysis of Genioglossus; Injury to Hypoglossal Nerve; Sublingual Absorption of Drugs; Lingual Carcinoma; Lingual Frenectomy; Excision of Submandibular Gland and Removal of a Calculus; Sialography of Submandibular Ducts

Pterygopalatine Fossa. Transantral Approach to Pterygopalatine Fossa

Nose. Nasal Fractures; Deviation of Nasal Septum; Rhinitis; Epistaxis; Sinusitis; Infection of Ethmoidal Cells; Infection of Maxillary Sinuses; Relationship of Teeth to Maxillary Sinus; Transillumination of Sinuses

Ear. External Ear Injury; Otoscopic Examination; Acute Otitis Externa; Otitis Media; Perforation of Tympanic Membrane; Mastoiditis; Blockage of Pharyngotympanic Tube; Paralysis of Stapedius; Motion Sickness; Dizziness and Hearing Loss: Ménière Syndrome; High-Tone Deafness; Otic Barotrauma

9 NECK

Bones of Neck. Cervical Pain; Injuries of Cervical Vertebral Column; Fracture of Hyoid Bone

Cervical Fascia. Paralysis of Platysma; Spread of Infections in Neck

Superficial Structures of Neck: Cervical Regions. Congenital Torticollis; Spasmodic Torticollis; Subclavian Vein Puncture; Right Cardiac Catheterization; Prominence of External Jugular Vein; Severance of External Jugular Vein; Lesions of Spinal Accessory Nerve (CN XI); Severance of Phrenic Nerve, Phrenic Nerve Block, and Phrenic Nerve Crush; Nerve Blocks in Lateral Cervical Region; Injury to Suprascapular Nerve; Ligation of External Carotid Artery; Surgical Dissection of Carotid Triangle; Carotid Occlusion and Endarterectomy; Carotid Pulse; Carotid Sinus Hypersensitivity; Role of Carotid Bodies; Internal Jugular Pulse; Internal Jugular Vein Puncture

Deep Structures of Neck. Cervicothoracic Ganglion Block; Lesion of Cervical Sympathetic Trunk

Viscera and Lymphatics of Neck. Thyroid Ima Artery; Thyroglossal Duct Cysts; Aberrant Thyroid Gland; Accessory Thyroid Glandular Tissue; Pyramidal Lobe of Thyroid Gland; Enlargement of Thyroid Gland; Thyroidectomy; Injury to Recurrent Laryngeal Nerves; Inadvertent Removal of Parathyroid Glands; Fractures of Laryngeal Skeleton; Laryngoscopy; Valsalva Maneuver; Aspiration of Foreign Bodies and Heimlich Maneuver; Cricothyrotomy; Tracheostomy; Injury to Laryngeal Nerves; Superior Laryngeal Nerve Block; Cancer of Larynx; Age Changes in Larynx; Foreign Bodies in Laryngopharynx; Tonsillectomy; Adenoiditis; Branchial Fistula; Branchial Sinuses and Cysts; Esophageal Injuries; Tracheo-Esophageal Fistula; Esophageal Cancer; Zones of Penetrating Neck Trauma; Radical Neck Dissections

10 SUMMARY OF CRANIAL NERVES

Cranial Nerves. Cranial Nerve Injuries; Olfactory Nerve (CN I): Anosmia: Loss of Smell; Olfactory Hallucinations; Optic Nerve (CN II): Demyelinating Diseases and Optic Nerves; Optic Neuritis; Visual Field Defects; Oculomotor Nerve (CN III): Injury to Oculomotor Nerve; Compression of Oculomotor Nerve; Aneurysm of Posterior Cerebral or Superior Cerebellar Artery; Trochlear Nerve (CN IV); Trigeminal Nerve (CN V): Injury to Trigeminal Nerve; Dental Anesthesia; Abducent Nerve (CN VI); Facial Nerve (CN VII); Vestibulocochlear Nerve (CN VIII): Injuries to Vestibulocochlear Nerve; Deafness; Acoustic Neuroma; Trauma and Vertigo; Glossopharyngeal Nerve (CN IX): Lesions of Glossopharyngeal Nerve; Glossopharyngeal Neuralgia; Vagus Nerve (CN X); Spinal Accessory Nerve (CN XI); Hypoglossal Nerve (CN XII)

List of Tables

1 OVERVIEW AND BASIC CONCEPTS

2 BACK

3 UPPER LIMB

4 THORAX

5 ABDOMEN

6 PELVIS AND PERINEUM

7 LOWER LIMB

8 HEAD

9 NECK

10 SUMMARY OF CRANIAL NERVES

Figure Credits

All sources are from Wolters Kluwer unless otherwise noted.

1 OVERVIEW AND BASIC CONCEPTS

Fig. 1.20 Based on Hamill JH, Knutzen KM, Derrick TR. Biomechanical Basis of Human Movement, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2015.
Fig. 1.22C Based on Silverthorn DU. Human Physiology, 4th ed. Tappan, NJ: Pearson Education, 2007:459.
Fig. 1.23B&C Cormack DH. Essential Histology, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.
Fig. 1.35C Courtesy of Dr. Bradley R. Smith, Center for In Vivo Microscopy, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC. From Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Shiota K. Color Atlas of Clinical Embryology, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders, 2000.
Fig. 1.49 Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 1.50 Daffner RH, Hartman MS. Clinical Radiology: The Essentials, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2014.
Fig. 1.52 Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 1.53C Courtesy of D. Armstrong, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 1.54C Courtesy of J. Lai, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 1.55 Castillo M. Neuroradiology Companion: Methods, Guidelines, and Imaging Fundamentals, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2012.
Fig. B1.1 Reprinted with permission from van de Graaff K. Human Anatomy, 4th ed. Dubuque, IA: Wm. C. Brown, 1995.
Fig. B1.2 (illustration) Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT). **(photo)** Shutterstock (ElRoi).

Fig. B1.4 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B1.5 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B1.6 Courtesy of D. Armstrong, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B1.9 Based on Willis MC. Medical Terminology: The Language of Health Care, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B1.10 Reprinted with permission from Hoffmann-La Roche. Roche Lexikon Medizin, 4th ed. Munich, Germany: Urban & Schwarzenberg, 1998.

2 BACK

Fig. 2.2C Based on Olson TR, Pawlina W. A.D.A.M. Student Atlas of Anatomy. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
Fig. 2.6 Based on Dauber W, Kramer S (trans.), Spitzer G (illus.). Pocket Atlas of Human Anatomy, 5th rev. ed. Stuttgart, Germany: Georg Thieme Verlag, 2007.
Fig. 2.7C Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 2.8E Courtesy of D. Salonen, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 2.9C Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 2.9D Becker RF, Wilson JW, Gehweiler JA. The Anatomical Basis of Medical Practice. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1971.
Fig. 2.11C Courtesy of D. Armstrong, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 2.11E Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 2.12D Courtesy of Dr. E. Becker, Associate Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 2.31 Based on Köpf-Maier P. Wolf-Heidegger's Atlas of Human Anatomy, 6th ed. Basel, Switzerland: Karger AG, 2005.
Fig. 2.35 Based on Olson TR, Pawlina W. A.D.A.M. Student Atlas of Anatomy. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
Fig. 2.36 Based on Olson TR, Pawlina W. A.D.A.M. Student Atlas of Anatomy. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
Fig. B2.1 Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology (Vol. 2), 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B2.4D&E Cervical Spine Research Society, Clark CR (ed). The Cervical Spine, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.
Fig. B2.5D Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology (Vol. 2), 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B2.6E Cervical Spine Research Society, Clark CR (ed). The Cervical Spine, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.
Fig. B2.6F&G Lee JKT, Sagel SS, Stanley RJ, Heiken JP. Computed Body Tomography with

MRI Correlation, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B2.11 Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2016.
Fig. B2.12A (MRI) @LUHS2008. Loyola University Health System, Maywood, IL.
Fig. B2.13 Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B2.16 Image supplied by Dimitrios Papadopoulos MD, PhD, Hermes-Healthcare Founder, CEO, from Organ LW, Papadopoulos D, Pérez J. Radiofrequency Neurotomy of Lumbar Medial Branch Nerves. Ontario, Canada: Diros/Owl Monographs, 2013. https://dirostech.com/techniques-procedures/#!
Fig. B2.17C Cervical Spine Research Society, Clark CR (ed). The Cervical Spine, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.
Fig. B2.18A Based on Drake RL, Vogl AW, Michell AWM. Gray's Anatomy for Students, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone, 2004.
Fig. B2.18B Courtesy of Dr. E. Becker, Associate Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig B2.18C Reproduced with permission from Zubin Irani, MD, published by Medscape Drugs & Diseases (https://emedicine.medscape.com/), Spondylolisthesis Imaging, 2018, available at: https://emedicine.medscape.com/article/396016-overview.
Fig. B2.19 Cervical Spine Research Society, Clark CR (ed). The Cervical Spine, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.
Fig. B2.20B GE Healthcare, www.medcyclo.com.
Fig. B2.20C Dean D, Herbener TE. Cross-Sectional Human Anatomy. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.
Fig. B2.20D&E Published with permission from LearningRadiology.com™. Copyright © All Rights Reserved 2017.
Fig. B2.21C Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology (Vol. 1), 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B2.22F Dr. P. Marazzi/Science Photo Library.
Fig. B2.22G (photo) Medical Photo NHS Lothian/Science Photo Library
Fig. B2.22G (radiographs) Salter RB. Textbook of Disorders and Injuries of the Musculoskeletal System, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1998.
Fig. B2.23 Modified from White AA, Panjabi MM. Clinical Biomechanics of the Spine. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, 1978.
Fig. B2.24 Modified from Finneson BE. Low Back Pain, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, 1980.

3 UPPER LIMB

Fig. 3.9C–E Courtesy of Dr. D. Armstrong, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.

Fig. 3.15D&E Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. 3.18 Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 3.41C Courtesy of Dr. D. Armstrong, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.49C Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor of Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Resonance Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.58A Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.85 Courtesy of Dr. D. Armstrong, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.94C Modified from Hamill J, Knutzen KM, Derrick TR. Biomechanical Basis of Human Movement, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2015.
Fig. 3.95B Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.97C Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, and Clinical Director of Tri-Hospital Resonance Centre, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.99B&D Courtesy of Dr. E. Becker, Associate Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.104 Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 3.105B&C Based on Hall-Craggs ECB. Anatomy as a Basis for Clinical Medicine, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1995.
Fig. 3.108A&B Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig 3.109A Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.109C Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, and Clinical Director of Tri-Hospital Resonance Centre, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 3.111B Grant JC, Basmajian JV, Slonecker CE. Grant's Method of Anatomy: A Clinical Problem-Solving Approach, 11th ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1989.
Fig. B3.4B Thorne CH, Chung KC, Gosain AK, Gurtner GC, Mehrara BJ, Rubin JP, Spear SL. Grabb and Smith's Plastic Surgery, 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2014.
Fig. B3.5 From Al-Qattan MM, Kozin SH. Update on embryology of the upper limb. J Hand Surg Am 38(9):1835-1844, 2013, in Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2016.
Fig. B3.6 Louis ED, Mayer SA, Rowland LP. Merritt's Neurology, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2016.
Fig. B3.10A Meschan I. An Atlas of Anatomy Basic to Radiology. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders, 1975.
Fig. B3.10B Salter RB. Textbook of Disorders and Injuries of the Musculoskeletal System, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1998.

Fig. B3.14 Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 12th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2017.
Fig. B3.15 Based on Anderson MK, Hall SJ, Martin M. Foundations of Athletic Training, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B3.21B Greenspan A, Beltran J. Orthopedic Imaging: A Practical Approach, 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. B3.32D Courtesy of D. Salonen, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B3.33D xray2000.co.uk.
Fig. B3.37 Modified from Salter RB. Textbook of Disorders and Injuries of the Musculoskeletal System, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1998.
Fig. B3.39A Shutterstock (Michael Mitchell).
Fig. B3.40 Modified from Salter RB. Textbook of Disorders and Injuries of the Musculoskeletal System, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1998.
Fig. B3.42C Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology (Vol. 2), 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.

4 THORAX

Fig. 4.24C Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Michael Schenk, Jackson, MS).
Fig. 4.30A Dean D, Herbener TE. Cross-Sectional Anatomy. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
Fig. 4.50 Adapted with permission from Torrent-Guasp F, Buckberg GD, Clemente C, et al. The structure and function of the helical heart and its buttress wrapping. I. The normal macroscopic structure of the heart. Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 2001;13(4):301-319.
Fig. 4.57C Courtesy of I. Vershuur, Joint Department of Medical Imaging, UHN/Mount Sinai Hospital, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 4.59D Courtesy of I. Vershuur, Joint Department of Medical Imaging, UHN/Mount Sinai Hospital, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B4.6B Evans RJ, Evans MK, Brown YMR., Canadian Maternity, Newborn & Women's Health Nursing, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2015.
Fig. B4.7 Based on Hall-Craggs ECB. Anatomy as a Basis of Clinical Medicine, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1995.
Fig. B4.8 With permission from Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2016.
Fig. B4.10 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B4.12A Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Mikki Senkarik, San Antonio, TX).
Fig. B4.12B Olympus America, Inc., Melville, NY.

Fig. B4.13C Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B4.13D Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2013.
Fig. B4.13E&F Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B4.14 Farrell TA. Radiology 101: The Basics and Fundamentals of Imaging, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. B4.15 (illustration) Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B4.15 (photographs) Feinsilver SH, Fein A. Textbook of Bronchoscopy. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1995.
Fig. B4.19 Adapted with permission from Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2016.
Fig. B4.22 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B4.25B Modified from Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B4.26A–E With permission from Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2016.
Fig. B4.27A&B Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B4.30A Siemens Medical Solutions USA, Inc.
Fig. B4.30B Shutterstock (Vadim Zakharishchev).
Fig. B4.31A&B Courtesy of I. Morrow, University of Manitoba, Canada.
Fig. B4.33 Based on Anatomical Chart Company. Cardiovascular Disease. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2017.
Fig. B4.35 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B4.36B Lippincott's Nursing Procedures and Skills, 2007.
Fig. B4.39A Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B4.41 Dean D, Herbener TE. Cross-Sectional Human Anatomy. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
Fig. B4.43A Courtesy of Dr. M. A. Haider, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B4.44B–F Madden ME. Introduction to Sectional Anatomy, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
Fig. B4.45A–C Courtesy of Dr. M. A. Haider, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B4.46 Dean D, Herbener TE. Cross-Sectional Human Anatomy. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
Fig. B4.47 Dean D, Herbener TE. Cross-Sectional Human Anatomy. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.

5 ABDOMEN

Fig. 5.10B Scott-Conner CEH. Scott-Conner & Dawson: Essential Operative Techniques and Anatomy, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2014.
Fig. 5.12B Scott-Conner CEH. Scott-Conner & Dawson: Essential Operative Techniques and Anatomy, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2014.
Fig. 5.18 Based on Sauerland EK. Grant's Dissector, 12th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1999.
Fig. 5.33B Cormack DH. Clinically Integrated Histology. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1998.
Fig. 5.34 Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.36B Based on Grant JCB. Grant's Method of Anatomy: By Regions, Descriptive and Deductive, 9th ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1975.
Fig. 5.37C&E Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.43C Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. 5.47 Based on McConnell TH, Hull KL. Human Form, Human Function: Essentials of Anatomy and Physiology. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2011.
Fig. 5.48B Based on Sauerland EK. Grant's Dissector, 12th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1999.
Fig. 5.49C Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.52B Courtesy of Dr. C. S. Ho, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.52C Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.55A Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.55B Courtesy of Dr. D. K. Sniderman, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.57A&B Based on Grant JCB. Grant's Method of Anatomy: By Regions, Descriptive and Deductive, 9th ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1975.
Fig. 5.58E Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006
(artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. 5.60A Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.62 Based on Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. 5.63B Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, and Clinical Director of Tri-Hospital Resonance Centre, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.

Fig. 5.64E Based on Sauerland EK. Grant's Dissector, 12th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1999.
Fig. 5.66B Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.67B–E Reprinted with permission from Karaliotas C, Broelsch CE, Habib NA. Liver and Biliary Tract Surgery: Embryological Anatomy to 3D-Imaging and Transplant Innovations. Vienna, Austria: Springer-Verlag/Wien, 2006.
Fig. 5.75B Courtesy of Dr. M. A. Haider, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.81 Courtesy of Dr. John Campbell, Department of Medical Imaging, Sunnybrook Medical Centre, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.82A Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.85B Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.90B Adapted from Silverthorn DU. Human Physiology: An Integrated Approach, 4th ed. San Francisco, CA: Pearson/Benjamin Cummings, 2007.
Fig. 5.91 Based on Rosse C, Gaddum-Rosse P. Hollinshead's Textbook of Anatomy, 5th ed. Philadelphia. PA: Lippincott-Raven, 1997.
Fig. 5.102 (radiographs) Courtesy of Dr. A. M. Arenson, Assistant Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.103 Courtesy of Dr. M. A. Haider, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.104 (radiographs) Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, and Clinical Director of Tri-Hospital Resonance Centre, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 5.105A&B Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, and Clinical Director of Tri-Hospital Resonance Centre, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B5.2 European Society of Radiation (www.myESR.org).
Fig. B5.3A–C Based on Gest T. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. B5.3E Scott-Conner CEH. Scott-Conner & Dawson: Essential Operative Techniques and Anatomy, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2014.
Fig. B5.7 (photograph) Courtesy of Mission Hospital, Mission Viejo, CA.
Fig. B5.7 (radiograph) Courtesy of G. B. Haber, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B5.8 (inset) Brant WE, Helms CA. Fundamentals of Diagnostic Radiology, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Williams & Wilkins, 1999.
Fig. B5.9 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B5.11 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B5.12 Based on Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B5.15B Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott

Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy).
Fig. B5.15C Scott-Conner CEH. Scott-Conner & Dawson: Essential Operative Techniques and Anatomy, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2014.
Fig. B5.16 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B5.17A Lippincott Advisor.
Fig. B5.17B Courtesy of Schiller KFR, et al. Colour Atlas of Endoscopy. London, United Kingdom: Chapman and Hall/Springer Science and Business Media, 1986.
Fig. B5.17C Courtesy of Olympus America, Inc.
Fig. B5.17D Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B5.18 Based on Cohen BJ, DePetris A. Medical Terminology: An Illustrated Guide, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2017.
Fig. B5.19A Based on Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B5.19B Hoffman-La Roche. Roche Lexikon Medizin, 3rd ed. Munich, Germany: Urban & Schwarzenberg, 1990.
Fig. B5.21 Courtesy of G. B. Haber, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B5.22 Based on Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B5.23B Courtesy of Dr. A. M. Arenson, Assistant Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B5.27B Strayer DS, Saffitz JE. Rubin's Pathology: Mechanisms of Human Disease, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. B5.30 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B5.31B (inset) Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B5.32 Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 12th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2017.
Fig. B5.35B (radiograph) Courtesy of M. Asch, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B5.36 Stedman's Medical Dictionary for Health Professionals and Nursing, 5th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005.
Fig. B5.37A Reprinted with permission from Moore KL, Persaud TVN. Before We Are Born, 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier/Saunders, 2008, and courtesy of Dr. Nathan E. Wiseman, Professor of Surgery, Children's Hospital, University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada.
Fig. B5.37B Reprinted with permission from Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2016, and courtesy of Dr. Prem S. Sahni, formerly of Department of Radiology, Children's Hospital, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada.

Fig. B5.38 Reprinted with permission from Medscape Gastroenterology 6(1), 2004. http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/474658 2004, Medscape.
Fig. B5.39 Based on Hardin DM Jr: Acute appendicitis: Review and update. Am Fam Physician 1999; 60(7):2027–2034; Fig. 1B © Floyd E. Hosmer.
Fig. B5.40B Eckert P, Häring S, Satter P, Zwank L. Fibrinklebung, Indikation und Anwendung. Munich, Germany: Urban & Schwarzenberg, 1986.
Fig. B5.40D Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Table B5.1 (figure) Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020; Plates 5.12B and 5.13B, C.

6 PELVIS AND PERINEUM

Fig. 6.2B Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig 6.5B&C Courtesy of Dr. E. Becker, Department of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 6.7B Courtesy of Dr. E. L. Lansdown, Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 6.14B Based on DeLancey JO. Structural support of the urethra as it relates to stress urinary incontinence: The hammock hypothesis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1994;170(6):1713–1720.
Fig. 6.38A (left) Based on Dauber W, Kramer S (trans.), Spitzer G (illus.). Pocket Atlas of Human Anatomy, 5th rev. ed. Stuttgart, Germany: Georg Thieme Verlag, 2007.
Fig. 6.38B (ultrasound) Courtesy of Dr. A. M. Arenson, Assistant Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 6.40 (ultrasound) Courtesy of Dr. A. M. Arenson, Assistant Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 6.44A Courtesy of Dr. Donald R. Cahill, Department of Anatomy, Mayo Medical School, Rochester, MN.
Fig. 6.44B Courtesy of Dr. A. M. Arenson, Assistant Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 6.51B Based on Clemente CD. Anatomy: A Regional Atlas of the Human Body, 6th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2011.
Fig. 6.61E Based on Das Lexikon der Gesundheit. Munich, Germany: Urban & Schwarzenberg Verlag, 1996 (artist: Jonathan Dimes).
Fig. 6.62C Courtesy of Dr. Donald R. Cahill, Department of Anatomy, Mayo Medical School, Rochester, MN.
Fig. 6.72B–E Courtesy of Dr. M. A. Haider, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 6.73B&D Courtesy of Dr. Shirley McCarthy, Department of Diagnostic Radiology, Yale University and Yale-New Haven Hospital, New Haven, CT.

Fig. 6.74B&D Courtesy of Dr. M. A. Haider, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B6.2B Based on Hall-Craggs ECB. Anatomy as the Basis of Clinical Medicine, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1995.
Fig. B6.4C Courtesy of Dr. E. Becker, Department of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B6.6 Courtesy of Dr. D. Sniderman, Associate Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B6.7A&B Published with permission from LearningRadiology.com™. Copyright © All Rights Reserved 2017.
Fig. B6.9 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B6.10 Based on Hartwig W. Fundamental Anatomy. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2008.
Fig. B6.11 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B6.16A Klein JS, Brant WE, Helms CA, Vinson EN. Brant and Helms' Fundamentals of Diagnostic Radiology, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2019.
Fig. B6.16B Baggish MS, Valle RF, Guedj H. Hysteroscopy: Visual Perspectives of Uterine Anatomy, Physiology and Pathology, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.
Fig. B6.17A–G Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B6.18A&B Based on Fuller J, Schaller-Ayers J. Health Assessment: A Nursing Approach, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
Fig. B6.20A&C Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B6.22 Based on Beckmann CRB, Ling FW, Laube DW, et al. Obstetrics and Gynecology, 4th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2002.
Fig. B6.23 Based on Fuller J, Schaller-Ayers J. Health Assessment: A Nursing Approach, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
Fig. B6.24 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B6.28 Based on Beckmann CRB, Ling FW, Laube DW, et al. Obstetrics and Gynecology, 4th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2002.
Fig. B6.29A Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B6.32 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B6.33A Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 27th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B6.33B Edwards L, Lynch PJ (eds). Genital Dermatology Atlas and Manual, 3rd ed.

Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2018.

7 LOWER LIMB

Fig. 7.5A Flynn JM, Skaggs DL, Waters PM. Rockwood and Wilkins' Fractures in Children, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer Health, 2015.
Fig. 7.23 Based on Rose J, Gamble JG. Human Walking, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. 7.25C Based on Melloni JL. Melloni's Illustrated Review of Human Anatomy: By Structures—Arteries, Bones, Muscles, Nerves, Veins. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1988.
Fig. 7.44C Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Chair of Medical Imaging, Faculty of Medicine, University of Toronto, and Clinical Director of the Tri-Hospital Resonance Centre, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 7.56C The Visible Human Project. National Library of Medicine; Visible Man 2551.
Fig. 7.62 Courtesy of Dr. K. Sniderman, Associate Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 7.83A&B Based on Kapandji IA. The Physiology of the Joints (Vol. 2): Lower Limb, 5th ed. Edinburgh, United Kingdom: Churchill Livingstone, 1987.
Fig. 7.84B U.S. National Library of Medicine Visible Human Project®: http://www.nlm.nih.gov/research/visible/visible_human.html.
Fig. 7.87B Weir J, Abrahams PH. Imaging Atlas of Human Anatomy, 3rd ed. Edinburgh, United Kingdom: Mosby, 2003.
Fig. 7.92B Courtesy of P. Bobechko, University of Toronto, Canada.
Fig. 7.94C Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor and Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Resonance Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 7.96 Based on Olson TR, Pawlina W. A.D.A.M. Student Atlas of Anatomy. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
Fig. 7.99A Courtesy of Dr. P. Bobechko and Dr. E. Becker, Department of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 7.100A Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor and Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Resonance Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 7.103A Farrell TA. Radiology 101: The Basics and Fundamentals of Imaging, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. B7.1A Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology (Vol. 1), 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B7.1B Brunner LC, Eshilian-Oates L, Kuo TY. Hip fractures in adults. Am Fam Physician 2003;67(3):537-542.

Fig. B7.1D Rossi F, Dragoni S. Acute avulsion fractures of the pelvis in adolescent competitive athletes. Skel Radiol 2001;30(3):127-131.
Fig. B7.3B Pope TL, Harris JH. Harris & Harris' The Radiology of Emergency Medicine, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2013.
Fig. B7.3D Sherman S, Cico SJ, Nordquist E, Ross C, Wang E. Atlas of Clinical Emergency Medicine. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2016.
Fig. B7.3F Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B7.4B Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B7.4E Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B7.5 ©eMedicine.com, 2008.
Fig. B7.9D Hatch RL, Alsobrook JA, Clugston JR. Diagnosis and management of metatarsal fractures. Am Fam Physician 2007;76(6):817-826.
Fig. B7.9E Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology (Vol. 1), 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B7.10 (radiograph) Davies MB. The os trigonum syndrome. Foot 2004;14(3):119-123.
Fig. B7.11 Doda N, Peh WCG. Woman with possible right toe fracture. Asia Pacific J Fam Med 2006;5(3):50.
Fig. B7.12A–D Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B7.13 Published with permission from LearningRadiology.com™. Copyright © All Rights Reserved 2007.
Fig. B7.14B Kavanagh EC, Zoga A, Omar I, et al. MRI findings in bipartite patella. Skeletal Radiol 2007;36:209-214, Figure 1a.
Fig. B7.15 Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B7.22 Courtesy of Dr. P. Bobechko, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B7.23 Based on Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B7.26 Based on Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B7.27 (radiograph) www.xray2000.co.uk
Fig. B7.28 Modified from Egol KA, Bazylewicz SC. The Orthopaedic Manual: From the Office to the OR. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2018.
Fig. B7.29 Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Yochum and Rowe's Essentials of Skeletal Radiology, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
Fig. B7.31A Drawings based on Willis MC. Medical Terminology: A Programmed Learning Approach to the Language of Health Care. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2002.

Fig. B7.31B Daffner RH, Hartman MS. Clinical Radiology: The Essentials, 4th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2014.
Fig. B7.33A–C Modified from Palastanga N, Field D, Soames R. Anatomy and Human Movement: Structure and Function, 4th ed. Oxford, England: Butterworth-Heinemann, 2002.
Fig. B7.33D Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.
Fig. B7.35 Based on Hoffmann-La Roche. Roche Lexikon Medizin, 4th ed. Munich, Germany: Urban & Schwarzenberg, 1998.
Fig. B7.36A&B Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.

8 HEAD

Fig. 8.5 Courtesy of Dr. E. Becker, Associate Professor of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.16 Based on Tank PW, Gest TR. Atlas of Anatomy. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2008.
Fig. 8.25 Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.26A&B Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.28A Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.31C Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.41A&B Courtesy of Dr. D. Armstrong, Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.44A Based on Hall-Craggs ECB. Anatomy as a Basis for Clinical Medicine, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1995.
Fig. 8.45B Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor and Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.46A Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.52A Welch Allyn, Inc., Skaneateles Falls, NY.
Fig. 8.52B&C Courtesy of J. Spilkin, OD, University Optometric Clinic, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.53 Based on van de Graaff K. Human Anatomy, 4th ed. Dubuque, IA: Wm. C. Brown, 1995.
Fig. 8.56 Based on Hall-Craggs ECB. Anatomy as a Basis for Clinical Medicine, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1995.

Fig. 8.57A&B Based on Melloni JL. Melloni's Illustrated Review of Human Anatomy: By Structures—Arteries, Bones, Muscles, Nerves, Veins. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1988.
Fig. 8.59A–D Based on Girard LJ. Anatomy of the Human Eye. Part II: The Extra-ocular Muscles. Houston, TX: Baylor College of Medicine, 1970.
Fig. 8.62 Based on Melloni JL, Dox I, Melloni PH, Melloni JB. Melloni's Illustrated Review of Human Anatomy: By Structures—Arteries, Bones, Muscles, Nerves, Veins. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1988.
Fig. 8.71C&D Berquist TH. MRI of the Musculoskeletal System, 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2013.
Fig. 8.73 Based on Paff GH. Anatomy of the Head and Neck. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders, 1973.
Fig. 8.80 Courtesy of Dr. B. Liebgott, Professor, Division of Anatomy, Department of Surgery, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.82C Courtesy of M. J. Pharaoh, Associate Professor of Dental Radiology, Faculty of Dentistry, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.84B Courtesy of M. J. Pharaoh, Associate Professor of Dental Radiology, Faculty of Dentistry, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.87A Courtesy of Dr. B. Liebgott, Professor, Division of Anatomy, Department of Surgery, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.90B Based on Gest TR. Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.91 Courtesy of Dr. B. Liebgott, Professor, Division of Anatomy, Department of Surgery, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.92A&C Based on Gest TR. Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.93 Based on Gest TR. Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.100 Based on Paff GH. Anatomy of the Head and Neck. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders, 1973.
Fig. 8.102B&C Based on Hall-Craggs ECB. Anatomy as the Basis of Clinical Medicine, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1995.
Fig. 8.106B Courtesy of Dr. E. Becker, Department of Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.110B Courtesy of Dr. D. Armstrong, Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 8.114A&B Based on Gest TR. Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 8.122 Seeley RR, Stephens TD, Tate P. Anatomy & Physiology, 6th ed. Boston, MA: McGraw-Hill, 2003.
Fig. B8.4B Courtesy of Trauma.org.
Fig. B8.9 Courtesy of Dr. D. Armstrong, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.

Fig. B8.12 Shutterstock (Zay Nyi Nyi).
Fig. B8.14A John Watney/Science Source.
Fig. B8.14B Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B8.16 Skin Cancer Foundation.
Fig. B8.20B Louis ED, Mayer SA, Rowland LP. Merritt's Neurology, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2016.
Fig. B8.21A Visuals Unlimited.
Fig. B8.21B Courtesy of Dr. Gerald S. Smyser, Altru Health System, Grand Forks, ND.
Fig. B8.24 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B8.25 Mann IC. The Development of the Human Eye. New York, NY: Grune & Stratton, 1964.
Fig. B8.26 Welch Allyn, Inc., Skaneateles Falls, NY.
Fig. B8.27 Based on Willis MC. Medical Terminology: The Language of Health Care. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1996.
Fig. B8.28A&B Digital Reference of Ophthalmology, Edward S. Harkness Eye Institute, Department of Ophthalmology of Columbia University.
Fig. B8.29 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B8.30 Mehrle G. Augenheilkunde für Krankenpflegeberufe, 5th ed. Munich, Germany: Urban & Schwarzenberg, 1991.
Fig. B8.31 Tasman W, Jaeger EA. The Wills Eye Hospital Atlas of Clinical Ophthalmology, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.
Fig. B8.33 Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2016.
Fig. B8.34A–D Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).
Fig. B8.34E Courtesy of Dr. Paul Kin, Family and Cosmetic Dentistry, Barrie, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B8.35B Courtesy of Dr. Paul Kin, Family and Cosmetic Dentistry, Barrie, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. B8.38 Courtesy of Dr. John Mulliken, Children's Hospital, Boston, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA.
Fig. B8.40 Courtesy of the University of Rocheseter and Per-Lennart Westesson, MD, DDS, PhD.
Fig. B8.41A&B Courtesy of Dr. Joseph B. Jacobs, NYU Medical Center, New York.
Fig. B8.42 Based on Turner JS. An overview of the head and neck. In: Walker HK, Hall WD, Hurst JW (eds). Clinical Methods: The History, Physical and Laboratory Examinations, 3rd ed. Boston, MA: Butterworths, 1990.
Fig. B8.43 Hall-Craggs ECB. Anatomy as the Basis of Clinical Medicine, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1995.
Fig. B8.44 Bechara Y. Ghorayeb, MD, Houston, TX.

Fig. B8.45 Welch Allyn, Inc., Skaneateles Falls, NY.
Fig. B8.46 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006 (artist: Neil O. Hardy, Westport, CT).

9 NECK

Fig. 9.1 Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 9.2C Courtesy of Dr. J. Heslin, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 9.4A&B Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 9.13 Based on Detton AJ. Grant's Dissector, 17th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. 9.21 Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 9.25A Based on Detton AJ. Grant's Dissector, 17th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. 9.27D Courtesy of Dr. M. Keller, Medical Imaging, University of Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 9.27E Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor and Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Resonance Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 9.32 Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor and Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Resonance Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 9.33C Based on Dauber W, Kramer S (trans.), Spitzer G (illus.). Pocket Atlas of Human Anatomy, 5th rev. ed. Stuttgart: Thieme, 2007.
Fig. 9.36B,D,&E Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor and Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Resonance Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 9.42B Courtesy of Dr. W. Kucharczyk, Professor and Neuroradiologist Senior Scientist, Department of Medical Resonance Imaging, University Health Network, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Fig. 9.44A Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. 9.45A Liebgott B. The Anatomical Basis of Dentistry. Philadelphia, PA: Mosby, 1982.
Fig. 9.47B Based on Gest TR. Lippincott Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.
Fig. B9.1 Akron Children's Hospital.
Fig. B9.3 Based on Siemens Medical Solutions USA, Inc.

Fig. B9.6 Sadler TW. Langman's Medical Embryology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2019.
Fig. B9.7 Leung AKC, Wong AL, Robson WLLM. Ectopic thyroid gland simulating a thyroglossal duct cyst. Can J Surg 1995;38(1):87-89. ©1995 Canadian Medical Association.
Fig. B9.9 Klima G. Schilddrüsen-Sonographie. Munich, Germany: Urban & Schwarzenberg, 1989.
Fig. B9.11B Rohen JW, Yokochi C, Lütjen-Drecoll E. Photographic Atlas of Anatomy, 9th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Fig. B9.12 Based on Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th ed., Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006.

10 SUMMARY OF CRANIAL NERVES

Fig. B10.3A Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Fig. B10.3B Weber J, Kelley JH. Health Assessment in Nursing, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer Health, 2010.
Fig. B10.4 Modified from Campbell WW, Barohn RJ. DeJong's The Neurologic Examination, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.

References and Suggested Reading

CHAPTER 1 Overview and Basic Concepts

Bergman RA. Illustrated Encyclopedia of Human Anatomic Variation. https://www.anatomyatlases.org/AnatomicVariants/AnatomyHP.shtml. Published 1996; Updated 2015.

Ellis H, Mahadevan V. Clinical Anatomy: Applied Anatomy for Students and Junior Doctors, 14th ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2019.

Federative Committee on Anatomical Terminology (FCAT). Terminologia Anatomica: International Anatomical Terminology. Stuttgart, Germany: Thieme, 1998.

Foerster O. The dermatomes in man. Brain 1933;56(1):1-39.

Keegan JJ, Garrett FD. The segmental distribution of the cutaneous nerves in the limbs of man. Anat Rec 1948;102(4):409-437.

Kumar V, Abbas AK, Aster JC. Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.

Maklad A, Quinn T, Fritsch B. Intracranial distribution of the sympathetic system in mice: DiI tracing and immunocytochemical labeling. Anat Rec 2001;263(1):99-111.

Marieb EN, Hoehn K. Human Anatomy and Physiology, 11th ed. Hoboken, NY: Pearson, 2019.

Mihailoff GA, Haines DE. The cell biology of neurons and glia. In: Haines DE, Mihailoff GA (eds). Fundamental Neuroscience for Basic and Clinical Applications, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2018.

Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier/Saunders, 2020.

Pawlina W. Histology. A Text and Atlas, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020.

Salter RB. Textbook of Disorders and Injuries of the Musculoskeletal System, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1998.

Swartz MH. Textbook of Physical Diagnosis: History and Examination, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2021.

Tubbs RS, Shoja MM, Loukas M. Bergman's Comprehensive Encyclopedia of Human Anatomic Variation. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2016.

CHAPTER 2 Back

Bogduk N. Clinical and Radiological Anatomy of the Lumbar Spine, 5th ed. London, England: Churchill Livingstone/Elsevier, 2012.

Bogduk N, Macintosh JE. The applied anatomy of the thoracolumbar fascia. Spine 1984;9(2):164-170.

Buxton DF, Peck D. Neuromuscular spindles relative to joint movement complexities. Clin Anat 1989;2(4):211-224.

Crockard HA, Heilman AE, Stevens JM. Progressive myelopathy secondary to odontoid fractures: Clinical, radiological, and surgical features. J Neurosurg 1993;78(4):579-586.

Duray SM, Morter HB, Smith FJ. Morphological variation in cervical spinous processes: Potential applications in the forensic identification of race from the skeleton. J Forensic Sci 1999;44(5):937-944.

Dvorak J, Schneider E, Saldinger P, Rahn B. Biomechanics of the craniocervical region: The alar and transverse ligaments. J Orthop Res 1988;6(3):452-461.

Greer M. Cerebral and spinal malformations. In Rowland LP, Pedley TA, eds. Merritt's Textbook of Neurology, 12th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.

Haines DE, Mihailoff GA. Fundamental Neuroscience for Basic and Clinical Applications, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2018.

Mercer S, Bogduk N. The ligaments and annulus fibrosus of human adult cervical intervertebral discs. Spine 1999;24(7):619-628.

Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier/Saunders, 2020.

O'Rahilly R. Gardner-Gray-O'Rahilly Anatomy: A Regional Study of Human Structure, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders, 1986.

Standring S (ed). Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice, 42nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2021.

Steel HH. Anatomical and mechanical considerations of the atlanto-axial articulation. In Proceedings of the American Orthopaedic Association. J Bone Joint Surg Am. 1968;50:1481-2.

Swartz MH. Textbook of Physical Diagnosis: History and Examination, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2021.

Vilensky JA, Baltes M, Weikel L, Fortin JD, Fourie LJ. Serratus posterior muscles: Anatomy, clinical relevance, and function. Clin Anat 2001;14(4):237-241.

Yochum TR, Rowe LJ. Essentials of Skeletal Radiology, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.

CHAPTER 3 Upper Limb

Bergman RA. Illustrated Encyclopedia of Human Anatomic Variation. https://www.anatomyatlases.org/AnatomicVariants/AnatomyHP.shtml. Published 1996; Updated 2015.

Foerster O. The dermatomes in man. Brain 1933;56(1):1-39.

Hamill J, Knutzen KM, Derrick TR. Biomechanical Basis of Human Movement, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.

Higgins DMO, Liao L, Winfree CJ. Traumatic cranial and peripheral nerve injury. In Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.

Keegan JJ, Garrett FD. The segmental distribution of the cutaneous nerves in the limbs of man. Anat Rec 1948;102(4):409-437.

Olson TR, Ger R, Abrahams PH. Ger's Essentials of Clinical Anatomy, 3rd ed. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 2009.

CHAPTER 4 Thorax

Bergman RA. Illustrated Encyclopedia of Human Anatomic Variation. https://www.anatomyatlases.org/AnatomicVariants/AnatomyHP.shtml. Published 1996; Updated 2015.

Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA, Wolters Kluwer, 2021.

Brannagan TH, Tanji K. Acquired peripheral neuropathies. In Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.

Goroll AH, Mulley AG. Primary Care Medicine: Office Evaluation and Management of the Adult Patient, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.

Kaufman JA, Jones TB. Viscerosensory pathways. In DE Haines and GA Mihailoff (eds.). Fundamental Neuroscience for Basic and Clinical Applications, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2018.

Kumar V, Abbas AK, Aster JC. Robbins & Cotran Pathological Basis of Disease, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.

LoCicero J, Feins RH, Colson YL, Rocco G. Shields' General Thoracic Surgery [Vol. 1], 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2019.

Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier/Saunders, 2020.

Resnik R, Lockwood CJ, Moore TR, Greene MF, Copel JA, Silver RM. Creasy and Resnik's Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Principles and Practice, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2019.

Slaby FJ, McCune SK, Summers RW. Gross Anatomy in the Practice of Medicine. Philadelphia, PA: Lea & Febiger, 1994.

Standring S (ed). Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice, 42nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2021.

Swartz MH. Textbook of Physical Diagnosis: History and Examination, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2021.

Torrent-Guasp F, Buckberg GD, Clemente C, Cox JL, Coghlan HC, Gharib M. The structure and function of the helical heart and its buttress wrapping. I. The normal macroscopic structure of the heart. Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 2001;13(4):301-319.

Vilensky JA, Baltes M, Weikel L, Fortin JD, Fourie LJ. Serratus posterior muscles: Anatomy, clinical relevance, and function. Clin Anat 2001;14(4):237-241.

Walls RM, Hockberger RS, Gausche-Hill M. Rosen's Emergency Medicine: Concepts and Clinical Practice, 9th ed. Philadelphia, PA Elsevier, 2018.

Wilson-Pauwels L, Stewart PA, Akesson EJ. Autonomic Nerves: Basic Science, Clinical Aspects, Case Studies. Hamilton, Ontario, Canada: B. C. Decker, 1997.

CHAPTER 5 Abdomen

Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant's Atlas of Anatomy, 15th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.

Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer Health, 2021.

Cantlie J. On a new arrangement of the right and left lobes of the liver. J Anat Physiol (Land) 1898;32:iv.

Cheng YF, Huang TL, Chen CL, Chen TY, Huang CC, Ko SF, Yang BY, Lee TY. Variations of the middle and inferior right hepatic vein: Application in hepatectomy. J Clin Ultrasound 1997;25(4):175-182.

Daseler EH, Anson BJ, Hambley WC, Reimann AF. The cystic artery and constituents of the hepatic pedicle; A study of 500 specimens. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1947;85(1):47–63.

Ellis H, Mahadevan V. Clinical Anatomy: Applied Anatomy for Students and Junior Doctors, 14th ed. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley-Blackwell, 2019.

Fruchaud H. Anatomie chirurgicales des hernies de I'aine. Paris, France: Doin, 1956 [Cited in Skandalakis LJ, Gadacz TR, Mansberger AR Jr, Mitchell WE Jr, Colborn CL, Skandalakis JE. Modern Hernia Repair: The Embryological and Anatomical Basis of Surgery. London, United Kingdom: Parthenon, 1996].

Kliegman RM, St. Geme JW III, Blum NJ, Shah SS, Tasker RC, Wilson KM (eds). Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics, 21st ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.

Kumar V, Abbas AK, Aster JC. Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.

Magee DF, Dalley AF. Digestion and the Structure and Function of the Gut. (Karger Continuing Education Series, Vol. 8.) Basel, Switzerland: Karger, 1986.

Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.

Skandalakis LJ (ed.). Surgical Anatomy and Technique: A Pocket Manual, 5th ed. New York, NY: Springer, 2021.

Skandalakis LJ, Gadacz TR, Mansberger AR Jr, Mitchell WE Jr, Colborn GL, Skandalakis JE. Modern Hernia Repair: The Embryological and Anatomical Basis of Surgery. London, United Kingdom: Parthenon, 1996.

Standring S (ed). Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice, 42nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2021.

Swartz MH. Textbook of Physical Diagnosis: History and Examination, 8th ed. Philadelphia,

PA: Elsevier, 2021.
Townsend CM, Beauchamp RD, Evers BM, Mattox KL. Sabiston Textbook of Surgery: The Biological Basis of Modern Surgical Practice, 21st ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2022.

CHAPTER 6 Pelvis and Perineum

Ashton-Miller JA, DeLancey JOL. Functional anatomy of the female pelvic floor. Ann N Y Acad Sci 2007;11001:266-296.
DeLancey JOL. Anatomic aspects of vaginal eversion after hysterectomy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1992;166(6 Pt 1):1717-1728.
Di Marino V, Lepidi H. Chapter 5: Structure of the bulbo-clitoral organ. In: Anatomic Study of the Clitoris and the Bulbo-Clitoral Organ. Zurich, Switzerland: Springer International Publishing, 2014.
Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, Hamid CA, Corton MM, Schaffer JI. Chapter 30: Cervical cancer. In: Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill Education, 2020.
Huseynov A, Zollikofer CPE, Coudyzer W, Gascho D, Kellenberger C, Hinzpeter R, Ponce de León MS. Developmental evidence for obstetric adaptation of the human female pelvis. PNAS 2016;113(19):5227-5232.
Kelling JA, Erickson CR, Pin J, Pin PG. Anatomical dissection of the dorsal nerve of the clitoris. Aesthet Surg J 2020;40(5):541-547.
Krebs H. Premalignant lesions of the cervix. In: Copeland LJ (ed.). Textbook of Gynecology, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders, 2000.
Landon MB, Galan HL, Jauniaux ERM, Driscoll DA, Berghella V, Grobman WA, Kilpatrick SJ, Cahill AG. Gabbe's Obstetrics: Normal and Problem Pregnancies, 8th ed. Elsevier, 2021.
Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.
Myers RP, Cahill DR, Devine RM, King BF. Anatomy of radical prostatectomy as defined by magnetic resonance imaging. J Urol 1998;159(6):2148-2158.
Oelrich TM. The striated urogenital sphincter muscle in the female. Anat Rec 1983;205(2):223-232.
Oelrich TM. The urethral sphincter muscle in the male. Am J Anat 1980;158(2):229-246.
Wendell-Smith CP. Muscles and fasciae of the pelvis. In: Williams PL, Bannister LH, Berry MM, Collins P, Dussek JE, Fergusson MWJ (eds). Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Medicine and Surgery, 38th ed. New York, NY: Churchill-Livingstone, 1995.

CHAPTER 7 Lower Limb

Anderson MK, Parr GP. Fundamentals of Sports Injury Management, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2011.
Benninger B. Novel femoral artery terminology: Integrating anatomy and clinical procedures leading to standardized intuitive nomenclature. Clin Anat 2014;27(7):1085-1088.

Foerster O. The dermatomes in man. Brain 1993;56(1):1-39.
Hamill J, Knutzen KM, Derrick TR. Biomechanical Basis of Human Movement, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Keegan JJ, Garrett FD. The segmental distribution of the cutaneous nerves in the limbs of man. Anat Rec 1948;102(4):409-437.
Markhede G, Stener G. Function after removal of various hip and thigh muscles for extirpation of tumors. Acta Orthop Scand 1981;52(4):373-395.
Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG: The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 10th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier/Saunders, 2016.
Salter RB. Textbook of Disorders and Injuries of the Musculoskeletal System, 3rd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1998.
Soames R, Palastanga N. Anatomy and Human Movement: Structure and Function, 7th ed. Edinburgh, United Kingdom: Elsevier, 2019.
Soderberg GL. Kinesiology: Application to Pathological Motion, 2nd ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins, 1997.

CHAPTER 8 Head

Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Corbett JJ, Haines DE. The ventricles, choroid plexus, and cerebrospinal fluid. In: Haines DE, Mihailoff GA (eds.). Fundamental Neuroscience for Basic and Clinical Applications, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2018.
Elkind MSV. Global burden of neurologic disease. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Esenwa CC, Mayer SA. Acute ischemic stroke. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Fernandez-Valencia R, Gomez Pellico L. Functional anatomy of the human saccus lacrimalis. Acta Anat (Basel) 1990;139(1):54-59.
Frontera JA, Organek N. Cerebral venous and sinus thrombosis. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Haines DE, Harkey HL, Al-Mefty O. The "subdural" space: a new look at an outdated concept. Neurosurgery 1993;32(1):111-120.
Haines DE, Mihailoff GA. Fundamental Neuroscience for Basic and Clinical Applications, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2018.
Higgins DMO, Liao L, Winfree CJ. Traumatic cranial and peripheral nerve injury. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Kiernan JA, Rajakumar N. Barr's The Human Nervous System: An Anatomical Viewpoint, 10th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2014.
Kliegman RM, Stanton BMD, St. Geme JW III, Blum NJ, Shah SS, Tasker RC, Wilson KM (eds). Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics, 21st ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.

Lipton RB. Headache and pain syndromes. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM. Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Mayer SA. Brain edema and increased intracranial pressure. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.
Murkerji SS, Martinez-Lage M, Thakur KT. Viral infections. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Omran SS, Gutierrez J. Transient ischemic attack. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Roos KL. Acute bacterial meningitis. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Standring S (ed). Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Medicine and Surgery, 42nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2021.
Storper IS. Ménière syndrome, benign paroxysmal positional vertigo, and vestibular neuritis. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.

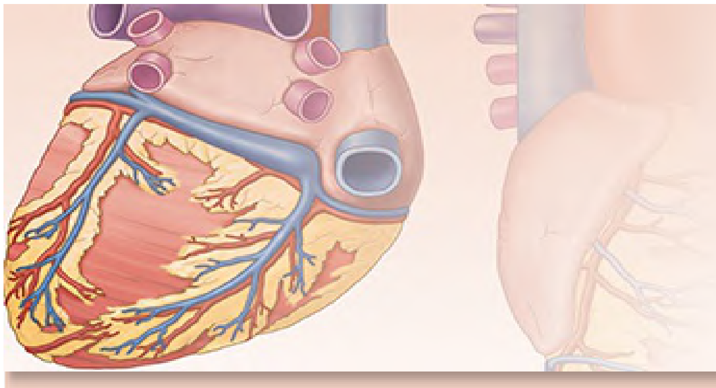
CHAPTER 9 Neck

Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant's Atlas of Anatomy, 15th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2021.
Bickley LS. Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking, 13th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer Health, 2021.
Bobanga I, McHenry CR. The parathyroid glands. In: Townsend CM, Beauchamp RD, Evers BM, Mattox KL. Sabiston Textbook of Surgery: The Biological Basis of Modern Surgical Practice, 21st ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2022.
Ezenkwele UA, Long CM. Esophageal rupture and tears in emergency medicine. Medscape. October 13, 2016. https://emedicine.medscape.com/article/775165-overview
Jinnah HA. The dystonias. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Kliegman RM, St. Geme JW III, Blum NJ, Shah SS, Tasker RC, Wilson KM (eds). Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics, 21st ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.
Lachman N, Acland RD, Rosse C. Anatomical evidence for the absence of a morphologically distinct cranial root of the accessory nerve in man. Clin Anat 2002;15(1):4-10.
Leung AK, Wong AL, Robson WL. Ectopic thyroid gland simulating a thyroglossal duct cyst: a case report. Can J Surg 1995;38(1):87-89.
Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.
Shih T. Syncope. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Noble JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed.

Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Singh B, Ramsaroop L. Upper limb sympathectomy: a historical reappraisal of the surgical anatomy. Clin Anat 2007;20(8):863-867.
Skandalakis LJ (ed.). Surgical Anatomy and Technique: A Pocket Manual, 5th ed. New York, NY: Springer, 2021.
Weiglein AH, Morrigl B, Schalk C, Künzel KH, Müller U. Arteries in the posterior cervical triangle in man. Clin Anat 2005;18(8):533-557.

CHAPTER 10 Summary of Cranial Nerves

Cioroiu CM, Brannagan TH. Bell's palsy and cranial neuropathies. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
D'Amico RS, Sisti MB. Acoustic neuroma and other skull base tumors. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Davies AE, Kidd D, Stone SP, MacMahon J. Pharyngeal sensation and gag reflex in healthy subjects. Lancet 1995;345(8948):487-488.
Haines DE, Mihailoff GA. Fundamental Neuroscience for Basic and Clinical Applications, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2018.
Higgins DMO, Liao L, Winfree CJ. Traumatic cranial and peripheral nerve injury. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Lachman N, Acland RD, Rosse C. Anatomical evidence for the absence of a morphologically distinct cranial root of the accessory nerve in man. Clin Anat 2002;15(1):4-10.
Mathew PG, Bajwa ZH. Facial pain disorders and painful cranial neuralgias. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2020.
Moss HE. Visual disturbances. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Roberts JK. Dizziness, vertigo, and hearing loss. In: Louis ED, Mayer SA, Nobel JM (eds). Merritt's Neurology, 14th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2022.
Simpson KL. Olfaction and taste. In: Haines DE, Mihailoff GA (eds). Fundamental Neuroscience for Basic and Clinical Applications, 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2018.
Swartz MH. Textbook of Physical Diagnosis: History and Examination, 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2021.



1

Overview and Basic Concepts

CLINICAL BOX KEY

APPROACHES TO STUDYING ANATOMY

Anatomy is the setting (structure) in which the events (functions) of life occur. This book deals mainly with functional human gross anatomy—the examination of structures of the human body that can be seen without a microscope. The three main approaches to studying anatomy are regional, systemic, and clinical (or applied), reflecting the body's organization and the priorities and purposes for studying it.

Regional Anatomy

Regional anatomy (topographical anatomy) considers the organization of the human body as major parts or segments (Fig. 1.1): a main body, consisting of the head, neck, and trunk (subdivided into thorax, abdomen, back, and pelvis/perineum), and paired upper limbs and lower limbs. All the major parts may be further subdivided into areas and regions. Regional anatomy is the method of studying the body's structure by focusing attention on a specific part (e.g., the head), area (the face), or region (the orbital or eye region); examining the arrangement and relationships of the various systemic structures (muscles, nerves, arteries, etc.) within it; and then usually continuing to study adjacent regions in an ordered sequence.

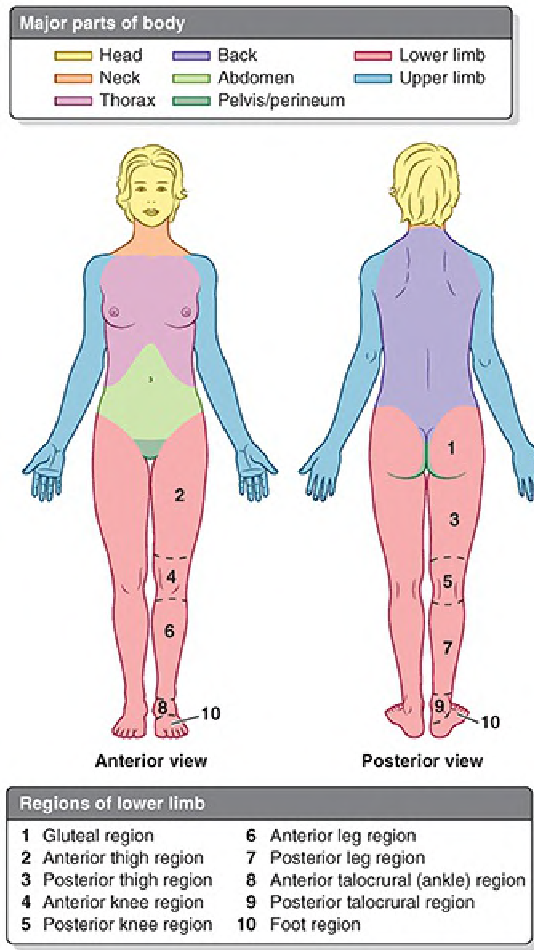


FIGURE 1.1. Major parts of body and regions of lower limb. Anatomy is described relative to the anatomical position illustrated here.

This book follows a regional approach, and each chapter addresses the anatomy of a major part of the body. This is the approach usually followed in anatomy courses that have a laboratory component involving dissection. When studying anatomy by this approach, it is important to routinely put the regional anatomy into the context of that of adjacent regions, of parts, and of the body as a whole.

Regional anatomy also recognizes the body's organization by layers: skin, subcutaneous tissue, and deep fascia covering the deeper structures of muscles, skeleton, and cavities, which contain viscera (internal organs). Many of these deeper structures are partially evident beneath the body's outer covering and may be studied and examined in living individuals via surface anatomy.

Surface anatomy is an essential part of the study of regional anatomy. It is integrated into each chapter of this book in "surface anatomy sections" that provide knowledge of what lies under the skin and what structures are perceptible to touch (palpable) in the living body at rest and in action. We can learn much by observing the external form and surface of the body and by observing or feeling the superficial aspects of structures beneath its surface. The aim of this method is to visualize (recall distinct mental images of) structures that confer contour to the

surface or are palpable beneath it and, in clinical practice, to distinguish any unusual or abnormal findings. In short, surface anatomy requires a thorough understanding of the anatomy of the structures beneath the surface. In people with stab wounds, for example, a physician must be able to visualize the deep structures that may be injured. Knowledge of surface anatomy can also decrease the need to memorize facts because the body is always available to observe and palpate.

Physical examination is the clinical application of surface anatomy. Palpation is a clinical technique, used with observation and listening for examining the body. Palpation of arterial pulses, for instance, is part of a physical examination.

Radiographic and sectional imaging (radiographic anatomy) provides useful information about normal structures in living individuals, demonstrating the effect of muscle tone, body fluids and pressures, and gravity that cadaveric study does not. Diagnostic radiology reveals the effects of trauma, pathology, and aging on normal structures. In this book, most radiographic and many sectional images are integrated into the chapters where appropriate. The medical imaging sections at the end of each chapter provide an introduction to the techniques of radiographic and sectional imaging and include series of sectional images that apply to the chapter. Endoscopic techniques (using a flexible fiber-optic device inserted into one of the body's orifices or through a small surgical incision ["portal"] to examine internal structures, such as the interior of the stomach) also demonstrate living anatomy. The detailed and thorough learning of the three-dimensional anatomy of deep structures and their relationships is best accomplished initially by dissection. In clinical practice, surface anatomy, radiographic and sectional images, endoscopy, and your experience from studying anatomy will combine to provide you with knowledge of your patient's anatomy.

The computer is a useful adjunct in teaching regional anatomy because it facilitates learning by allowing interactivity and manipulation of two- and three-dimensional graphic models. **Prosections**, carefully prepared dissections for the demonstration of anatomical structures, are also useful. However, learning is most efficient and retention is highest when didactic study is combined with the experience of firsthand dissection—that is, learning by doing. During **dissection**, you observe, palpate, move, and sequentially reveal parts of the body. In 1770, Dr. William Hunter, a distinguished Scottish anatomist and obstetrician, stated: "Dissection alone teaches us where we may cut or inspect the living body with freedom and dispatch."

Systemic Anatomy

Systemic anatomy is the study of the body's organ systems that work together to carry out complex functions. The basic systems and the field of study or treatment of each (italics in parentheses) are as follows:

- The **integumentary system** (dermatology) consists of the skin (L. integumentum, a covering) and its appendages—hairs, nails, and sweat glands, for example—and the subcutaneous tissue just beneath it. The skin, an extensive sensory organ, forms the body's outer, protective covering and container.
- The **skeletal system** (osteology) consists of bones and cartilage; it provides our basic shape

and support for the body and is what the muscular system acts on to produce movement. It also protects vital organs such as the heart, lungs, and pelvic organs.

- The **articular system** (arthrology) consists of joints and their associated ligaments, connecting the bony parts of the skeletal system and providing the sites at which movements occur.
- The **muscular system** (myology) consists of skeletal muscles that act (contract) to move or position parts of the body (e.g., the bones that articulate at joints), or smooth and cardiac muscle that propels, expels, or controls the flow of fluids and contained substance.
- The **nervous system** (neurology) consists of the central nervous system (brain and spinal cord) and the peripheral nervous system (nerves and ganglia, together with their motor and sensory endings). The nervous system controls and coordinates the functions of the organ systems, enabling the body's responses to and activities within its environment. The sense organs, including the olfactory organ (sense of smell), eye or visual system (ophthalmology), ear (sense of hearing and balance—otology), and gustatory organ (sense of taste), are often considered with the nervous system in systemic anatomy.
- The **circulatory system** (angiology) consists of the cardiovascular and lymphatic systems, which function in parallel to transport the body's fluids.
  - The **cardiovascular system** (cardiology) consists of the heart and blood vessels that propel and conduct blood through the body, delivering oxygen, nutrients, and hormones to cells and removing their waste products.
  - The **lymphatic system** is a network of lymphatic vessels that withdraws excess tissue fluid (lymph) from the body's interstitial (intercellular) fluid compartment, filters it through lymph nodes, and returns it to the bloodstream.
- The **alimentary** or **digestive system** (gastroenterology) consists of the digestive tract from the mouth to the anus, with all its associated organs and glands that function in ingestion, mastication (chewing), deglutition (swallowing), digestion, and absorption of food and the elimination of the solid waste (feces) remaining after the nutrients have been absorbed.
- The **respiratory system** (pulmonology) consists of the air passages and lungs that supply oxygen to the blood for cellular respiration and eliminate carbon dioxide from it. The diaphragm and larynx control the flow of air through the system, which may also produce tone in the larynx that is further modified by the tongue, teeth, and lips into speech.
- The **urinary system** (urology) consists of the kidneys, ureters, urinary bladder, and urethra, which filter blood and subsequently produce, transport, store, and intermittently excrete urine (liquid waste).
- The **genital (reproductive) system** (gynecology for females; andrology for males) consists of the gonads (ovaries and testes) that produce oocytes (eggs) and sperms, the ducts that transport them, and the genitalia that enable their union. After conception, the female reproductive tract nourishes and delivers the fetus.
- The **endocrine system** (endocrinology) consists of specialized structures that secrete hormones, including discrete ductless endocrine glands (such as the thyroid gland), isolated and clustered cells of the gut and blood vessel walls, and specialized nerve endings.

Hormones are organic molecules that are carried by the circulatory system to distant effector cells in all parts of the body. The influence of the endocrine system is thus as broadly distributed as that of the nervous system. Hormones influence metabolism and other processes, such as the menstrual cycle, pregnancy, and parturition (childbirth).

None of the systems functions in isolation. The passive skeletal and articular systems and the active muscular system collectively constitute a super system, the **locomotor system** or **apparatus** (orthopedics), because they must work together to produce locomotion of the body. Although the structures directly responsible for locomotion are the muscles, bones, joints, and ligaments of the limbs, other systems are indirectly involved as well. The brain and nerves of the nervous system stimulate them to act; the arteries and veins of the circulatory system supply oxygen and nutrients to and remove waste from these structures; and the sensory organs (especially vision and equilibrium) play important roles in directing their activities in a gravitational environment.

In this chapter, an overview of several systems significant to all parts and regions of the body is provided before Chapters 2 through 9 cover regional anatomy in detail. Chapter 10 also presents systemic anatomy in reviewing the cranial nerves.

Clinical Anatomy

Clinical anatomy (applied anatomy) emphasizes aspects of bodily structure and function important in the practice of medicine, dentistry, and the allied health sciences. It incorporates the regional and systemic approaches to studying anatomy and stresses clinical application.

Clinical anatomy often involves inverting or reversing the thought process typically followed when studying regional or systemic anatomy. For example, instead of thinking, "The action of this muscle is to . . . ," clinical anatomy asks, "How would the absence of this muscle's activity be manifest?" Instead of noting, "The . . . nerve provides innervation to this area of skin," clinical anatomy asks, "Numbness in this area indicates a lesion of which nerve?"

Clinical anatomy is exciting to learn because of its role in solving clinical problems. The Clinical Boxes (popularly called "blue boxes," appearing on a blue background) throughout this book describe practical applications of anatomy. Case studies, demonstrating the application of anatomy in clinical practice, are integral parts of the clinical approach to studying anatomy.

SEX AND GENDER

Sex, male or female, is assigned genetically. Females have 46 chromosomes that include two X chromosomes, and males have 46 chromosomes that include both an X and a Y chromosome. There are also uncommon genetically based conditions where the number of chromosomes varies, such as Klinefelter syndrome, which includes 47 chromosomes (XXY) and Jacob syndrome, which includes 47 chromosomes (XYY).

Gender identity is an individual's intrinsic sense of their own gender, which may or may not be consistent with the sex assigned chromosomally (or genetic sex). Gender is not binary but

rather a spectrum that may be expressed through appearance, personality, behaviors, and relationships or not be outwardly expressed at all.

The difference between sex and gender is important for clinical practice in order to be able to understand and form a trusting relationship with patients. Clinically, gender dysphoria is the significant distress an individual may undergo due to a mismatch between their gender identity and their genetic sex. While some children see their anatomy as having a different meaning to the way society sees it, many individuals may not express related feelings and behaviors until puberty or much later.

ANATOMICOMEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

Anatomical terminology introduces and makes up a large part of medical terminology. To be understood, you must express yourself clearly, using the proper terms in the correct way. Although you are familiar with common, colloquial terms for parts and regions of the body, you must learn the international anatomical terminology (e.g., axillary fossa instead of armpit and clavicle instead of collarbone) that enables precise communication among health care professionals and scientists worldwide. Health professionals must also know the common and colloquial terms people are likely to use when they describe their complaints. Furthermore, you must be able to use terms people will understand when explaining their medical problems to them.

The terminology in this book conforms to the new International Anatomical Terminology. Terminologia Anatomica (TA) and Terminologia Embryologica (TE) list terms both in Latin and as English equivalents (e.g., the common shoulder muscle is musculus deltoideus in Latin and deltoid in English). Most terms in this book are English equivalents. Official terms are available at the International Federation of Associations of Anatomists website (https://www4.unifr.ch/ifaa). Unfortunately, the terminology commonly used in the clinical arena may differ from the official terminology. Because this discrepancy may be a source of confusion, this text clarifies commonly confused terms by placing the unofficial designations in parentheses when the terms are first used—for example, pharyngotympanic tube (auditory tube, eustachian tube) and internal thoracic artery (internal mammary artery). Eponyms, terms incorporating the names of people, do not conform to an international standard, provide no information about the type or location of the structures involved, and are frequently historically inaccurate in terms of identifying the original person to describe a structure or assign its function. Notwithstanding, commonly used eponyms appear in parentheses throughout the book when these terms are first introduced—such as sternal angle (angle of Louis)—since you will surely encounter them in your clinical years.

Structure of terms. Anatomy is a descriptive science and provides names for the many structures and processes of the body. Because most terms are derived from Latin and Greek, medical language may seem difficult at first; however, as you learn the origin of terms, the words will make sense.

Many terms provide information about a structure's shape, size, location, or function or about

the resemblance of one structure to another. For example, some muscles have descriptive names to indicate their main characteristics. The deltoid muscle, which covers the point of the shoulder, is triangular, like the symbol for delta, the fourth letter of the Greek alphabet. The suffix -oid means “like”; therefore, deltoid means like delta. Biceps means two-headed and triceps means three-headed. Some muscles are named according to their shape—the piriformis muscle, for example, is pear shaped (L. pirum, pear + L. forma, shape or form). Other muscles are named according to their location. The temporalis muscle is in the temporal region (temple) of the cranium (skull). In some cases, actions are used to describe muscles—for example, the levator scapulae elevates the scapula (L. for shoulder blade). If you learn the derivations of anatomical terms and consider them as you read and dissect, it will be easier to remember them.

Abbreviations. Abbreviations of terms are used for brevity in medical histories and in this and other books, such as in tables of muscles, arteries, and nerves. Clinical abbreviations are used in discussions and descriptions of signs and symptoms. Learning to use these abbreviations also speeds note taking. Common anatomical and clinical abbreviations are provided in this text when the corresponding term is introduced—for example, temporomandibular joint (TMJ). Lists of common medical abbreviations can be found online.

Anatomical Position

All anatomical descriptions are expressed in relation to one consistent position, ensuring that descriptions are not ambiguous (Figs. 1.1 and 1.2). One must visualize this position in the mind when describing patients (or cadavers), whether they are lying on their sides, **supine** (recumbent, lying on the back, face upward), or **prone** (lying on the abdomen, face downward). The **anatomical position** refers to the body position as if the person were standing upright with the:

- Head, gaze (eyes), and toes directed anteriorly (forward)
- Arms adjacent to the sides with the palms facing anteriorly
- Lower limbs close together with the feet parallel

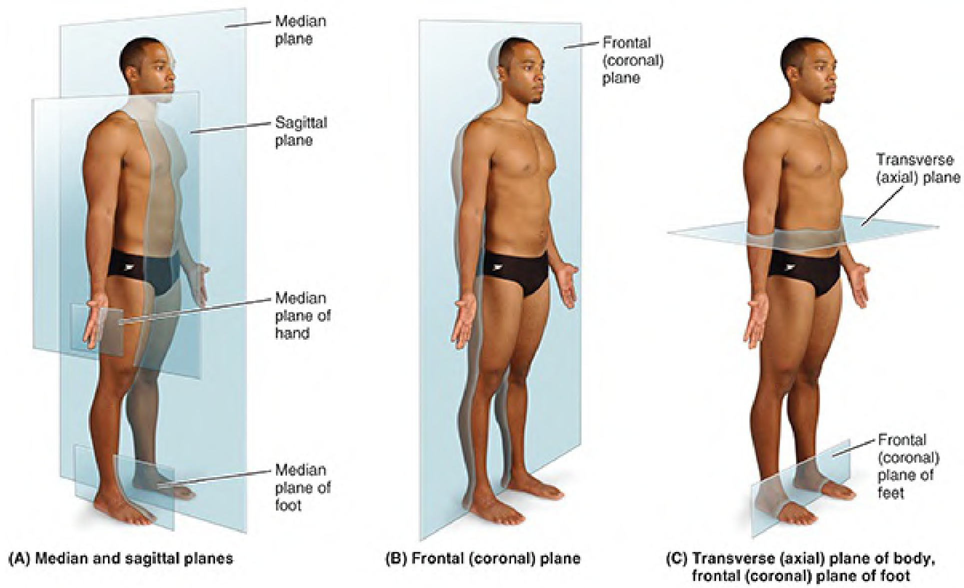


FIGURE 1.2. Anatomical position and anatomical planes. The main planes of the body.

This position is adopted globally for anatomicomedical descriptions. By using this position and appropriate terminology, you can relate any part of the body precisely to any other part. It should also be kept in mind, however, that gravity causes a downward shift of internal organs (viscera) when the upright position is assumed. Since people are typically examined in the supine position, it is often necessary to describe the position of the affected organs when supine, making specific note of this exception to the anatomical position.

Anatomical Planes

Anatomical descriptions are based on four imaginary planes (median, sagittal, frontal, and transverse) that intersect the body in the anatomical position (Fig. 1.2):

- The **median plane** (median sagittal plane) is the vertical anteroposterior plane passing longitudinally through the midlines of the head, neck, and trunk where it intersects the surface of the body, dividing it into right and left halves (Fig. 1.2A). Midline is often erroneously used as a synonym for the median plane.
- **Sagittal planes** are vertical planes passing through the body parallel to the median plane. “Parasagittal” is commonly used but is unnecessary because any plane parallel to and on either side of the median plane is sagittal by definition. However, a plane parallel and near to the median plane may be referred to as a paramedian plane.
- **Frontal (coronal) planes** are vertical planes passing through the body at right angles to the median plane, dividing the body into anterior (front) and posterior (back) parts (Fig. 1.2B, C).
- **Transverse planes** are horizontal planes passing through the body at right angles to the median and frontal planes, dividing the body into superior (upper) and inferior (lower) parts (Fig. 1.2C). Radiologists refer to transverse planes as transaxial, which is commonly shortened to axial planes.

Since the number of sagittal, frontal, and transverse planes is unlimited, a reference point (usually a visible or palpable landmark or vertebral level) is necessary to identify the location or level of the plane, such as a "transverse plane through the umbilicus." Sections of the head, neck, and trunk in precise frontal and transverse planes are symmetrical, passing through both the right and left members of paired structures, allowing some comparison.

The main use of anatomical planes is to describe sections (Fig. 1.3):

- **Longitudinal sections** run lengthwise or parallel to the long axis of the body or of any of its parts, and the term applies regardless of the position of the body (Fig. 1.3A). Although median, sagittal, and frontal planes are the standard (most commonly used) longitudinal sections, there is a 180° range of possible longitudinal sections.
- **Transverse sections**, or cross sections, are slices of the body or its parts that are cut at right angles to the longitudinal axis of the body or of any of its parts (Fig. 1.3B). Because the long axis of the foot runs horizontally, a transverse section of the foot lies in the frontal plane (Fig. 1.2C).
- **Oblique sections** are slices of the body or any of its parts that are not cut along the previously listed anatomical planes (Fig. 1.3C). In practice, many radiographic images and anatomical sections do not lie precisely in sagittal, frontal, or transverse planes; often, they are slightly oblique.

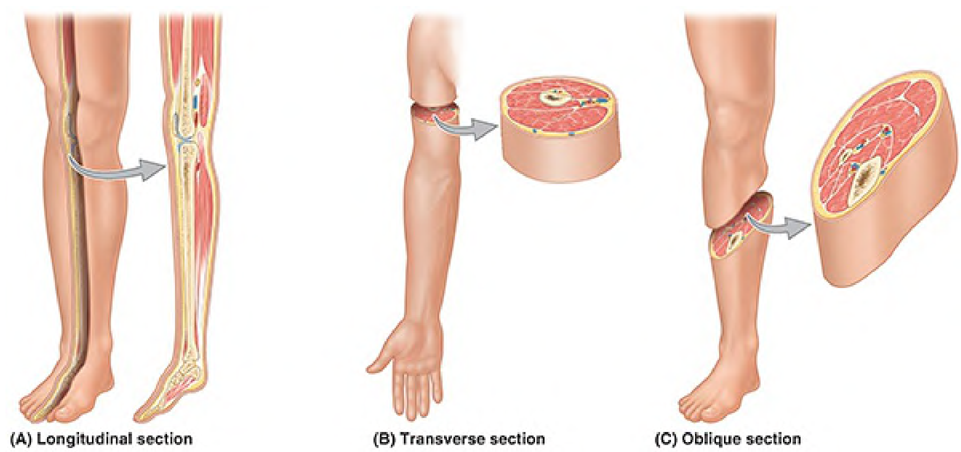


FIGURE 1.3. Sections of limbs. Sections may be obtained by anatomical sectioning or medical imaging techniques.

Anatomists create sections of the body and its parts anatomically, and clinicians create them by planar imaging technologies, such as computed tomography (CT), to describe and display internal structures.

Terms of Relationship and Comparison

Various adjectives, arranged as pairs of opposites, describe the relationship of parts of the body or compare the position of two structures relative to each other (Fig. 1.4). Some of these terms are specific for comparisons made in the anatomical position, or with reference to the anatomical planes:

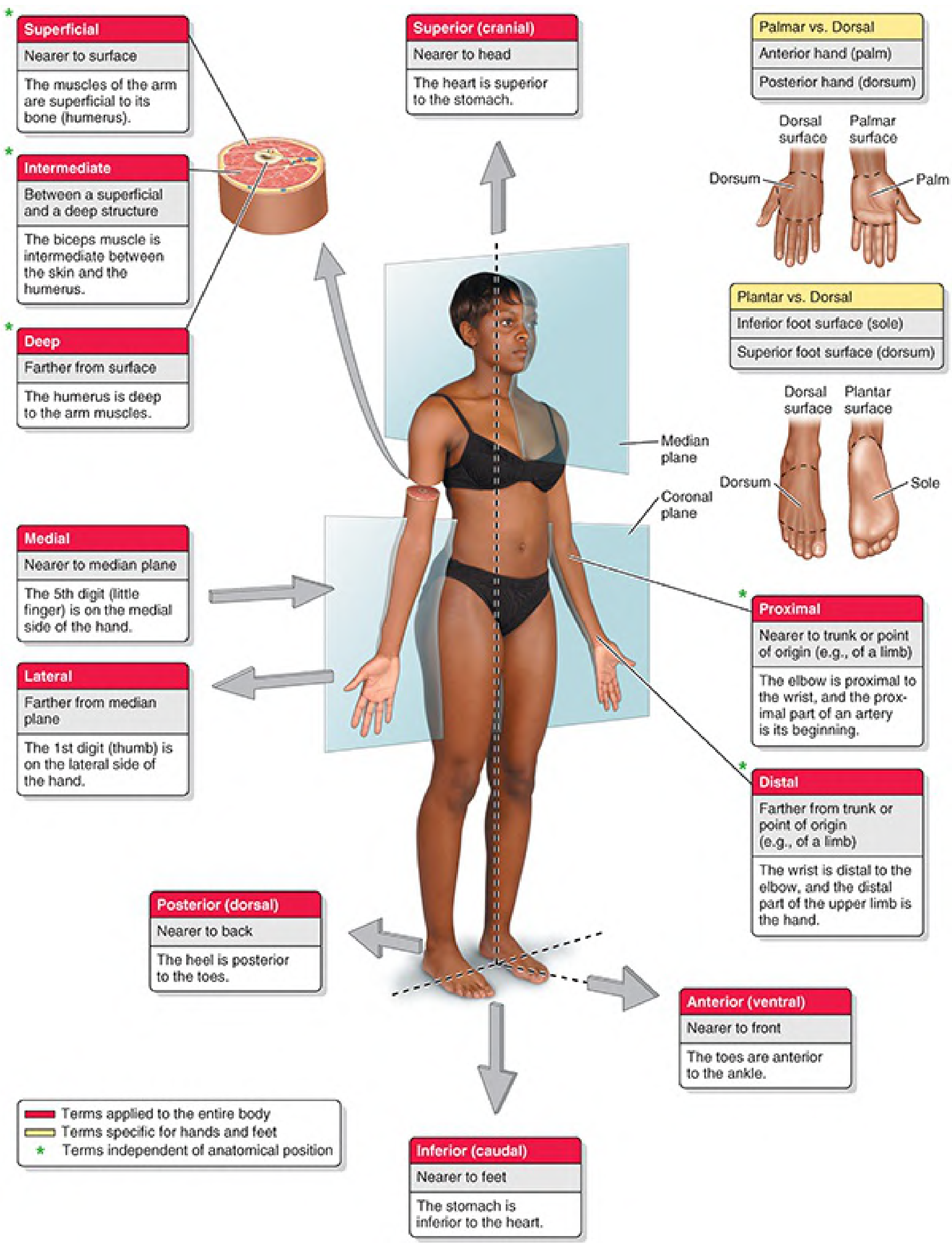


FIGURE 1.4. **Anatomical position and terms of relationship and comparison.** These terms describe the position of one structure relative to another.

Superior refers to a structure that is nearer the **vertex**, the topmost point of the cranium (Mediev. L., skull). **Cranial** relates to the cranium and is a useful directional term, meaning toward the head or cranium. **Inferior** refers to a structure that is situated nearer the sole of the foot. **Caudal** (L. cauda, tail) is a useful directional term that means toward the feet or tail region, represented in humans by the coccyx (tail bone), the small bone at the inferior (caudal) end of the vertebral column.

Posterior (dorsal) denotes the back surface of the body or nearer to the back. **Anterior** (ventral) denotes the front surface of the body. **Rostral** is often used instead of anterior when describing parts of the brain; it means toward the rostrum (L., beak); however, in humans, it

denotes nearer the anterior part of the head (e.g., the frontal lobe of the brain is rostral to the cerebellum).

Medial is used to indicate that a structure is nearer to the median plane of the body. For example, the 5th digit of the hand (little finger) is medial to the other digits. Conversely, **lateral** stipulates that a structure is farther away from the median plane. The 1st digit of the hand (thumb) is lateral to the other digits.

Dorsum usually refers to the superior aspect of any part that protrudes anteriorly from the body, such as the dorsum of the tongue, nose, penis, or foot. It is also used to describe the posterior surface of the hand, opposite the palm. Because the term dorsum may refer to both superior and posterior surfaces in humans, the term is easier to understand if one thinks of a quadrupedal plantigrade animal that walks on its palms and soles, such as a bear. The sole is the inferior aspect or bottom of the foot, opposite the dorsum, much of which is in contact with the ground when standing barefoot. The surface of the hands, the feet, and the digits of both corresponding to the dorsum is the **dorsal surface**, the surface of the hand and fingers corresponding to the palm is the **palmar surface**, and the surface of the foot and toes corresponding to the sole is the **plantar surface**.

Combined terms describe intermediate positional arrangements: **Inferomedial** means nearer to the feet and median plane—for example, the anterior parts of the ribs run inferomedially; **superolateral** means nearer to the head and farther from the median plane.

Other terms of relationship and comparisons are independent of the anatomical position or the anatomical planes, relating primarily to the body's surface or its central core:

- **Superficial**, **intermediate**, and **deep** describe the position of structures relative to the surface of the body or the relationship of one structure to another underlying or overlying structure.
- **External** means outside of or farther from the center of an organ or cavity, while **internal** means inside or closer to the center, independent of direction.
- **Proximal** and **distal** are used when contrasting positions nearer to or farther from the attachment of a limb or the central aspect of a linear structure, respectively.

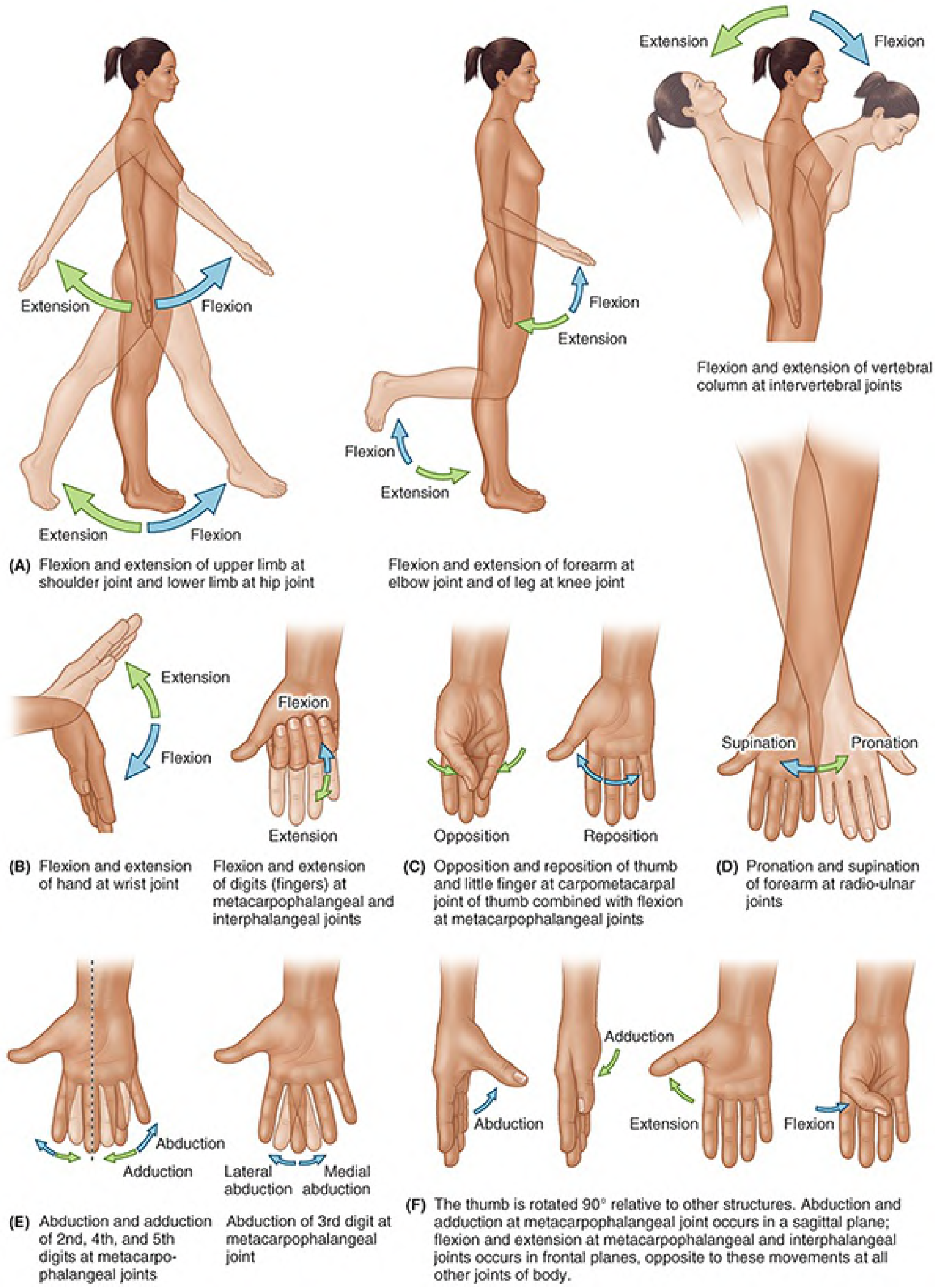
Terms of Laterality

Paired structures having right and left members (e.g., the kidneys) are **bilateral**, whereas those occurring on one side only (e.g., the spleen) are **unilateral**. Designating whether you are referring specifically to the right or left member of bilateral structures can be critical and is a good habit to begin at the outset of one's training to become a health professional. Something occurring on the same side of the body as another structure is **ipsilateral**; the right thumb and right great (big) toe are ipsilateral, for example. **Contralateral** means occurring on the opposite side of the body relative to another structure; the right hand is contralateral to the left hand.

Terms of Movement

Various terms describe movements of the limbs and other parts of the body (Fig. 1.5). Most

movements are defined in relationship to the anatomical position, with movements occurring within, and around axes aligned with, specific anatomical planes. While most movements occur at joints where two or more bones or cartilages articulate with one another, several nonarticulated structures exhibit movement (e.g., tongue, lips, eyelids, and hyoid bone in the neck). It is often advantageous to consider movements in antagonistic (opposing) pairs.



(A) Flexion and extension of upper limb at shoulder joint and lower limb at hip joint

Flexion and extension of forearm at elbow joint and of leg at knee joint

Flexion and extension of vertebral column at intervertebral joints

(B) Flexion and extension of hand at wrist joint

Flexion and extension of digits (fingers) at metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints

(C) Opposition and reposition of thumb and little finger at carpometacarpal joint of thumb combined with flexion at metacarpophalangeal joints

(D) Pronation and supination of forearm at radio-ulnar joints

(E) Abduction and adduction of 2nd, 4th, and 5th digits at metacarpo-phalangeal joints

Abduction of 3rd digit at metacarpophalangeal joint

(F) The thumb is rotated 90° relative to other structures. Abduction and adduction at metacarpophalangeal joint occurs in a sagittal plane; flexion and extension at metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints occurs in frontal planes, opposite to these movements at all other joints of body.

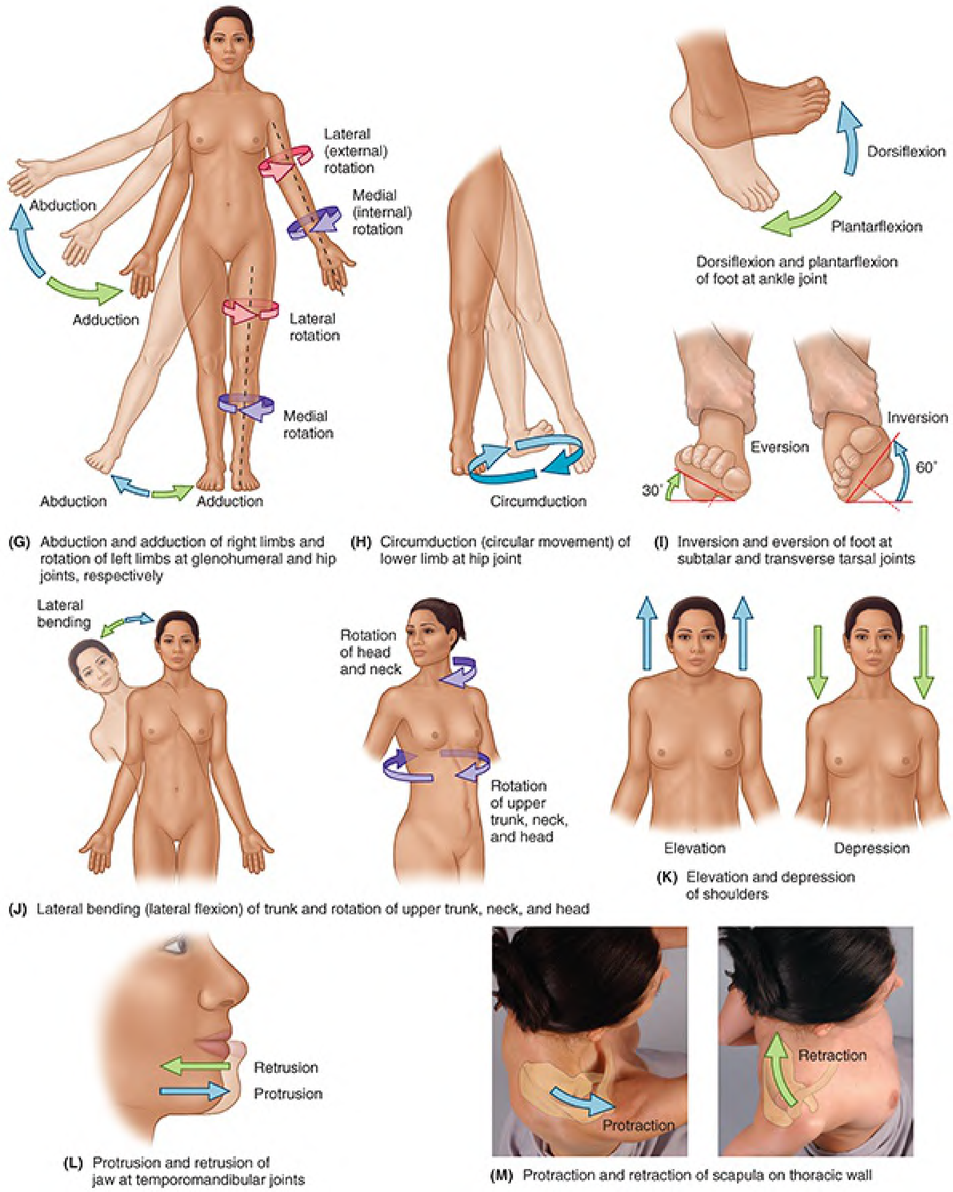


FIGURE 1.5. Terms of movement. A–M. Terms describing movements of the limbs and other parts of the body. Most movements take place at joints, where two or more bones or cartilages articulate with one another.

Flexion and extension movements generally occur in sagittal planes around a transverse axis (Fig. 1.5A, B). **Flexion** indicates bending or decreasing the angle between the bones or parts of the body. For joints above the knee, flexion involves movement in an anterior direction. **Extension** indicates straightening or increasing the angle between the bones or parts of the body. Extension usually occurs in a posterior direction. The knee joint, rotated 180° to more superior joints, is exceptional in that flexion of the knee involves posterior movement and extension involves anterior movement. **Dorsiflexion** describes flexion at the ankle joint, as occurs when walking uphill or lifting the front of the foot and toes off the ground (Fig. 1.5I). **Plantarflexion** bends the foot and toes toward the ground, as when standing on your toes. Extension of a limb or part beyond the normal limit—**hyperextension** (overextension)—can cause injury, such as

"whiplash" (i.e., hyperextension of the neck during a rear-end automobile collision).

Abduction and adduction movements generally occur in a frontal plane around an anteroposterior axis (Fig. 1.5E, G). Except for the digits, **abduction** means moving away from the median plane (e.g., when moving an upper limb laterally away from the side of the body) and **adduction** means moving toward it. In abduction of the digits (fingers or toes), the term means spreading them apart—moving the other fingers away from the neutrally positioned 3rd (middle) finger or moving the other toes away from the neutrally positioned 2nd toe. The 3rd finger and 2nd toe medially or laterally abduct away from the neutral position. Adduction of the digits is the opposite—bringing the spread fingers or toes together, toward the neutrally positioned 3rd finger or 2nd toe. Right and left **lateral flexion** (lateral bending) are special forms of abduction for only the neck and trunk (Fig. 1.5J). The face and upper trunk are directed anteriorly as the head and/or shoulders tilt to the right or left side, causing the midline of the body itself to become bent sideways. This is a compound movement occurring between many adjacent vertebrae.

As you can see by noticing the way the thumbnail faces (laterally instead of posteriorly in the anatomical position), the thumb is rotated 90° relative to the other digits (Fig. 1.5F). Therefore, the thumb flexes and extends in the frontal plane and abducts and adducts in the sagittal plane.

Circumduction is a circular movement that involves sequential flexion, abduction, extension, and adduction (or in the opposite order) in such a way that the distal end of the part moves in a circle (Fig. 1.5H). Circumduction can occur at any joint at which all the above-mentioned movements are possible (e.g., the shoulder and hip joints).

Rotation involves turning or revolving a part of the body around its longitudinal axis, such as turning one's head to face sideways (Fig. 1.5J). **Medial rotation** (internal rotation) brings the anterior surface of a limb closer to the median plane, whereas **lateral rotation** (external rotation) takes the anterior surface away from the median plane (Fig. 1.5G).

Pronation and supination are the rotational movements of the forearm and hand that swing the distal end of the radius (the lateral long bone of the forearm) medially and laterally around and across the anterior aspect of the ulna (the other long bone of the forearm) while the proximal end of the radius rotates in place (Fig. 1.5D). **Pronation** rotates the radius medially so that the palm of the hand faces posteriorly and its dorsum faces anteriorly. When the elbow joint is flexed, pronation moves the hand so that the palm faces inferiorly (e.g., placing the palms flat on a table). **Supination** is the opposite rotational movement, rotating the radius laterally and uncrossing it from the ulna, returning the pronated forearm to the anatomical position. When the elbow joint is flexed, supination moves the hand so that the palm faces superiorly. (Memory device: You can hold soup in the palm of your hand when the flexed forearm is supinated but are prone [likely] to spill it if the forearm is then pronated!)

Eversion moves the sole of the foot away from the median plane, turning the sole laterally (Fig. 1.5I). When the foot is fully everted, it is also dorsiflexed. **Inversion** moves the sole of the foot toward the median plane (facing the sole medially). When the foot is fully inverted, it is also plantarflexed. Pronation of the foot actually refers to a combination of eversion and abduction that results in lowering of the medial margin of the foot (the feet of an individual with flat feet are pronated), and supination of the foot generally implies movements resulting in raising the

medial margin of the foot, a combination of inversion and adduction.

Opposition is the movement by which the pad of the 1st digit (thumb) is brought to another digit pad (Fig. 1.5C). This movement is used to pinch, button a shirt, and lift a teacup by the handle. **Reposition** describes the movement of the 1st digit from the position of opposition back to its anatomical position.

Protrusion is a movement anteriorly (forward) as in protruding the mandible (chin), lips, or tongue (Fig. 1.5L). **Retrusion** is a movement posteriorly (backward), as in retruding the mandible, lips, or tongue. The similar terms **protraction** and **retraction** are used most commonly for anterolateral and posteromedial movements of the scapula on the thoracic wall, causing the shoulder region to move anteriorly and posteriorly (Fig. 1.5M).

Elevation raises or moves a part superiorly, as in elevating the shoulders when shrugging, the upper eyelid when opening the eye, or the tongue when pushing it up against the palate (roof of mouth) (Fig. 1.5K). **Depression** lowers or moves a part inferiorly, as in depressing the shoulders when standing at ease, the upper eyelid when closing the eye, or pulling the tongue away from the palate.

ANATOMICAL VARIATIONS

Structural variation occurs to differing degrees of severity ranging from normal to incompatible with life. **Anatomical variation** usually has no effect on normal function. Anatomical variations are often discovered during imaging or surgical procedures, at autopsy, or during anatomical study in individuals who had no awareness of or adverse effects from the variation. A **congenital anomaly** or **birth defect** is a variation often evident at birth or soon afterward due to aberrant form or function. Birth defects also can range from mild to severe. Although many birth defects can be treated, others are fatal. It is important to know how such variations and anomalies may influence physical examinations, diagnosis, and treatment.

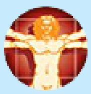
Anatomy textbooks describe (initially, at least) the structure of the body as it is most often observed in people, that is, the most common pattern. However, occasionally, a particular structure demonstrates so much variation within the normal range that the most common pattern is found less than half the time! Beginning students are frequently frustrated because the bodies they are examining or dissecting do not conform to the atlas or text they are using (https://www.anatomyatlases.org; Tubbs et al., 2016). Often, students ignore the variations or inadvertently damage them by attempting to produce conformity. However, you should expect anatomical variations when you dissect or inspect prosected specimens.

In a random group of people, individuals obviously differ superficially from each other in physical appearance. The bones of the skeleton vary not only in size but more subtly in their basic shape and in lesser details of surface structure. A wide variation is found in the size, shape, and form of the attachments of muscles. Similarly, considerable variation exists in the patterns of branching of neurovascular structures (veins, arteries, and nerves). Veins demonstrate the greatest degree of variation and nerves the least. Individual variation must be considered in physical examination, diagnosis, and treatment.

CLINICAL BOX

ANATOMICAL VARIATIONS

Clinically Significant Variations and Birth Defects



Most descriptions in this text assume a normal range of variation. However, the frequency of variation often differs among human groups, and variations collected in one population may not apply to members of another population. Some variations, such as those occurring in the origin and course of the cystic artery to the gallbladder, are clinically significant (see Chapter 5, Abdomen). Being aware of these variations is essential in medical practice, particularly surgery. Clinically significant variations are described in clinical correlation (blue) boxes identified with an Anatomical Variation icon (at left above).

Humans exhibit considerable genetic variation beyond sexual and racial differences, such as polydactyly (extra digits) or dextrocardia (heart on left). Approximately 3% of newborns show one or more significant birth defects (Moore et al., 2020). Other defects (e.g., atresia or blockage of the intestine) are not detected until symptoms occur. Discovering anatomical variations in cadavers is actually one of the many benefits of firsthand dissection because it enables students to develop an awareness of the occurrence of variations and a sense of their frequency.

INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

Because the **skin** (L. integumentum, a covering) is readily accessible and is one of the best indicators of general health, careful observation of it is important in physical examinations. It is considered in the differential diagnosis of almost every disease. The skin provides:

- Protection of the body from environmental effects, such as abrasions, fluid loss, harmful substances, ultraviolet radiation, and invading microorganisms
- Containment for the body’s structures (e.g., tissues and organs) and vital substances (especially extracellular fluids), preventing dehydration, which may be severe when extensive skin injuries (e.g., burns) are experienced
- Thermal regulation through the evaporation of sweat and/or the dilation or constriction of superficial blood vessels
- Sensation (e.g., pain) by way of superficial nerves and their sensory endings
- Synthesis and storage of vitamin D

The skin, the body’s largest organ, consists of the epidermis, a superficial cellular layer, and the dermis, a deep connective tissue layer (Fig. 1.6).

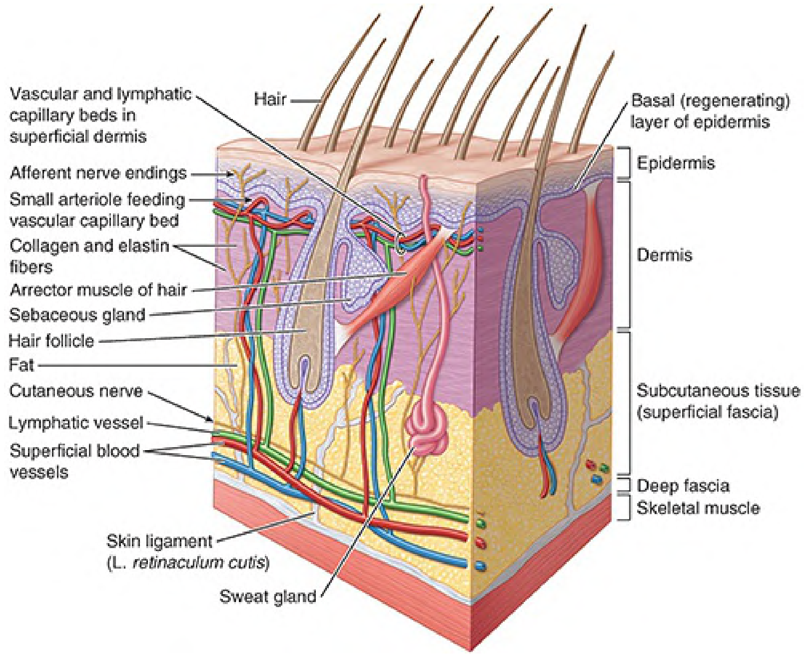


FIGURE 1.6. Skin. Layers of the skin and some of its specialized structures.

The **epidermis** is a keratinized epithelium—that is, it has a tough, horny superficial layer that provides a protective outer surface overlying its regenerative and pigmented deep or basal layer. The epidermis has no blood vessels or lymphatics. The avascular epidermis is nourished by the underlying vascularized dermis. The dermis is supplied by arteries that enter its deep surface to form a cutaneous plexus of anastomosing arteries. The skin is also supplied with afferent nerve endings that are sensitive to touch, irritation (pain), and temperature. Most nerve terminals are in the dermis, but a few penetrate the epidermis.

The **dermis** is a dense layer of interlacing collagen and elastic fibers. These fibers provide skin tone and account for the strength and toughness of skin. The dermis of animals is removed and tanned to produce leather. Although the bundles of collagen fibers in the dermis run in all directions to produce a tough felt-like tissue, in any specific location most fibers run in the same direction. The predominant pattern of collagen fibers determines the characteristic tension and wrinkle lines in the skin.

The **tension lines** (also called cleavage lines or Langer lines) tend to spiral longitudinally in the limbs and run transversely in the neck and trunk (Fig. 1.7). Tension lines at the elbows, knees, ankles, and wrists are parallel to the transverse creases that appear when the limbs are flexed. The elastic fibers of the dermis deteriorate with age and are not replaced; consequently, in older people, the skin wrinkles and sags as it loses its elasticity.

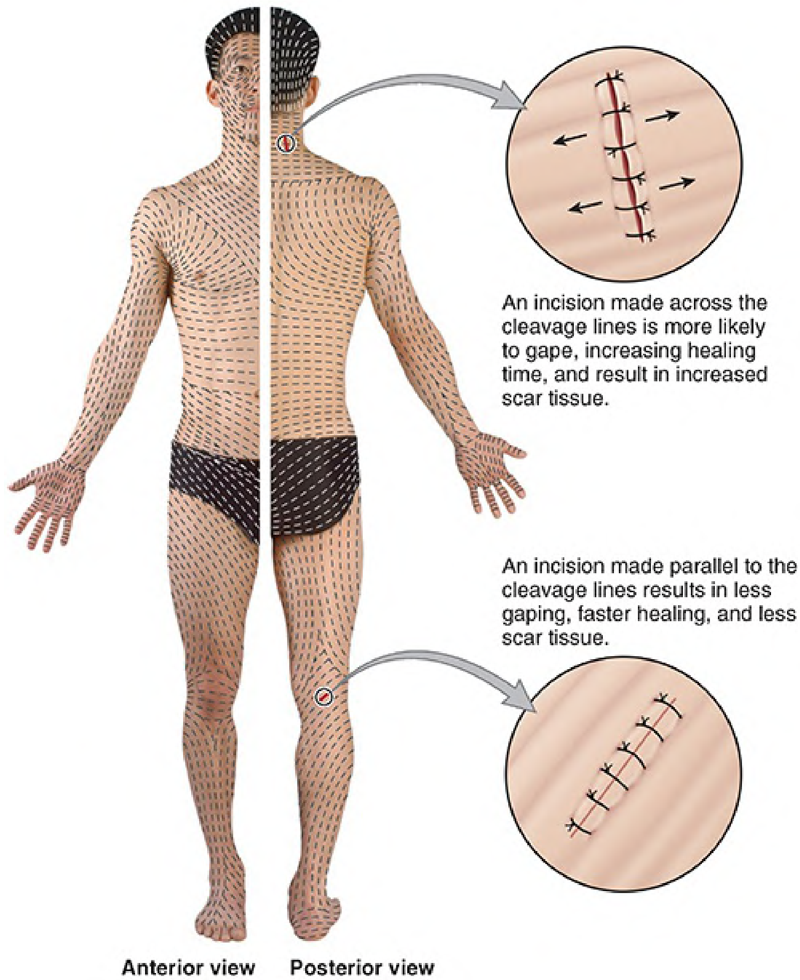


FIGURE 1.7. Tension lines of skin. The dashed lines indicate the predominant direction of the collagen fibers of the dermis.

The skin also contains many specialized structures (Fig. 1.6). The deep layer of the dermis contains hair follicles, with associated smooth arrector muscles and sebaceous glands. Contraction of the **arrector muscles of hairs** (L. musculi arrector pili) erects the hairs, causing goose bumps. Hair follicles are generally slanted to one side, and several sebaceous glands lie on the side the hair is directed toward ("points to") as it emerges from the skin. Thus, contraction of the arrector muscles causes the hairs to stand up straighter, thereby compressing the sebaceous glands and helping them secrete their oily product onto the skin surface. The evaporation of the watery secretion (sweat) of the sweat glands from the skin provides a thermoregulatory mechanism for heat loss (cooling). Also involved in the loss or retention of body heat are the small arteries (arterioles) within the dermis. They dilate to fill superficial capillary beds to radiate heat (skin appears red) or constrict to minimize surface heat loss (skin, especially of the lips and fingertips, appears blue). Other skin structures or derivatives include the nails (fingernails, toenails), the mammary glands, and the enamel of teeth.

Located between the overlying skin (dermis) and underlying deep fascia, the **subcutaneous tissue** (superficial fascia) is composed mostly of loose connective tissue and stored fat and

contains sweat glands, superficial blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and cutaneous nerves (Fig. 1.6). The neurovascular structures of the integument (cutaneous nerves, superficial vessels) course in the subcutaneous tissue, distributing only their terminal branches to the skin.

The subcutaneous tissue provides for most of the body's fat storage, so its thickness varies greatly, depending on the person's nutritional state. In addition, the distribution of subcutaneous tissue varies considerably in different sites in the same individual. Compare, for example, the relative abundance of subcutaneous tissue evident by the thickness of the fold of skin that can be pinched at the waist or thighs with the anteromedial part of the leg (the shin, the anterior border of the tibia) or the back of the hand, the latter two being nearly devoid of subcutaneous tissue. Also consider the distribution of subcutaneous tissue and fat between the sexes: In mature females, it tends to accumulate in the breasts and thighs, whereas in males, subcutaneous fat accumulates especially in the lower abdominal wall.

Subcutaneous tissue participates in thermoregulation, functioning as insulation, retaining heat in the body's core. It also provides padding that protects the skin from compression by bony prominences, such as those in the buttocks.

Skin ligaments (L. retinacula cutis), numerous small fibrous bands, extend through the subcutaneous tissue and attach the deep surface of the dermis to the underlying deep fascia (Fig. 1.6). The length and density of these ligaments determine the mobility of the skin over deep structures. Where skin ligaments are longer and sparse, the skin is more mobile, such as on the back of the hand (Fig. 1.8A, B). Where ligaments are short and abundant, the skin is firmly attached to the underlying deep fascia, such as in the palms and soles (Fig. 1.8C). In dissection, removal of skin where the skin ligaments are short and abundant requires use of a sharp scalpel. The skin ligaments are long but particularly well developed in the breasts, where they form weight-bearing suspensory ligaments (see Chapter 4, Thorax).

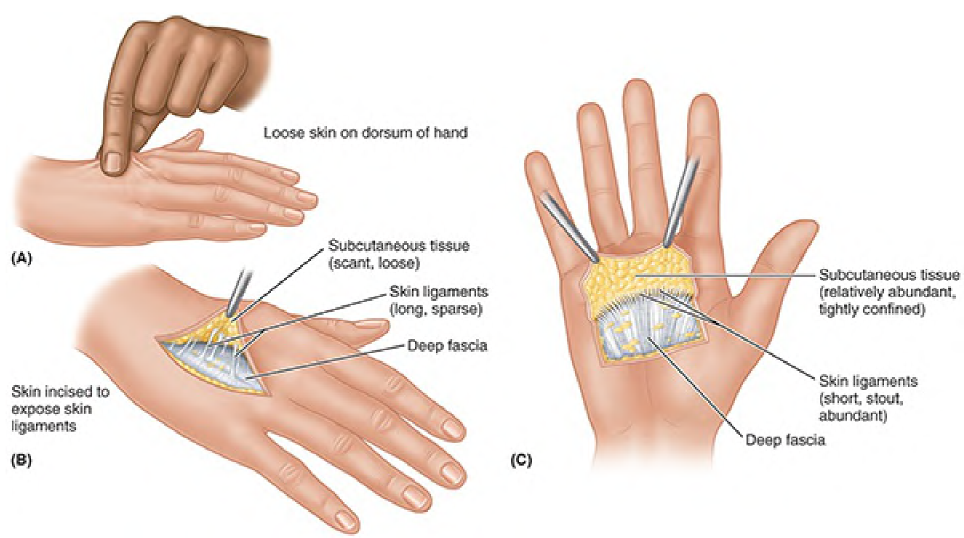


FIGURE 1.8. Skin ligaments in subcutaneous tissue. A. Estimating thickness of subcutaneous tissue. The thickness of subcutaneous tissue can be estimated as being approximately half that of a pinched fold of skin (i.e., a fold of skin includes a double thickness of subcutaneous tissue). The dorsum of the hand has relatively little subcutaneous tissue. **B.** Long, relatively sparse skin ligaments. Such ligaments allow the mobility of the skin demonstrated in part **A**. **C.** Short, abundant skin ligaments. The skin of the palm (like that of the sole) is firmly attached to the underlying deep fascia by relatively

short, dense skin ligaments.

CLINICAL BOX

INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

Skin Color Signs in Physical Diagnosis

Blood flow through the superficial capillary beds of the dermis (Fig. 1.6) affects the color of skin and can provide important clues for diagnosing certain clinical conditions. When the blood is not carrying enough oxygen from the lungs, such as in a person who has stopped breathing or whose circulation is unable to send adequate amount of blood through the lungs, the skin can appear bluish (cyanotic). Cyanosis occurs because the oxygen-carrying hemoglobin of blood appears bright red when carrying oxygen (as it does in arteries and usually does in capillaries) and appears deep, purplish blue when depleted of oxygen, as it does in veins. Cyanosis is especially evident where skin is thin, such as the lips, eyelids, and deep to the transparent nails. Skin injury, exposure to excess heat, infection, inflammation, or allergic reactions may cause the superficial capillary beds to become engorged, making the skin look abnormally red, a sign called erythema. In certain liver disorders, a yellow pigment called bilirubin builds up in the blood, giving a yellow appearance to the whites of the eyes and skin, a condition called jaundice. Skin color changes are most readily observed in people with light-colored skin and may be difficult to discern in people with dark skin, in which case examination of the delicate underside of the tongue may be helpful.

Skin Incisions and Scarring

The skin is always under tension. In general, lacerations or incisions that parallel the tension lines usually heal well with little scarring because there is minimal disruption of collagen fibers (Fig. 1.7, lower inset). The uninterrupted fibers tend to retain the cut edges in place. However, a laceration or incision across the tension lines disrupts more collagen fibers. The disrupted lines of force cause the wound to gape (Fig. 1.7, upper inset), and it may heal with excessive (keloid) scarring. When other considerations, such as adequate exposure and access or avoidance of nerves, are not of greater importance, surgeons attempting to minimize scarring for cosmetic reasons may use surgical incisions that parallel the tension lines.

Stretch Marks in Skin

The collagen and elastic fibers in the dermis form a tough, flexible meshwork of tissue.

Because the skin can distend considerably, a relatively small incision can be made during surgery compared with the much larger incision required to attempt the same procedure in an embalmed cadaver, which no longer exhibits elasticity. The skin can stretch and grow to accommodate gradual increases in size. However, marked and relatively fast size increases, such as the abdominal enlargement and weight gain accompanying pregnancy, can stretch the skin too much, damaging the collagen fibers in the dermis (Fig. B1.1). During pregnancy, stretch marks (L. striae gravidarum)—bands of thin wrinkled skin, initially red but later becoming purple or white—may appear on the abdomen, buttocks, thighs, and breasts. Stretch marks also form outside of pregnancy (L. striae cutis distensae) in obese individuals and in certain diseases (e.g., hypercortisolism or Cushing syndrome); they occur along with distension and loosening of the deep fascia due to protein breakdown leading to reduced cohesion between the collagen fibers. Stretch marks generally fade after pregnancy and weight loss, but they never disappear completely.

FIGURE B1.1. Stretch marks.

Skin Injuries and Wounds

Lacerations. Accidental cuts and skin tears are superficial or deep. Superficial lacerations penetrate the epidermis and perhaps the superficial layer of the dermis; they bleed but do not interrupt the continuity of the dermis. Deep lacerations penetrate the deep layer of the dermis, extending into the subcutaneous tissue or beyond; they gape and require approximation of the cut edges of the dermis (by suturing, or stitches) to minimize scarring.

Burns. Burns are caused by thermal trauma, ultraviolet or ionizing radiation, or chemical agents. Burns are classified, in increasing order of severity, based on the depth of skin injury and the need for surgical intervention. The current classification system does not use numerical designations except for fourth-degree burns (the most severe) (Fig. B1.2):

- Superficial burn (e.g., sunburn): Damage is limited to the epidermis; symptoms are erythema (hot red skin), pain, and edema (swelling); desquamation (peeling) of the superficial layer usually occurs several days later, but the layer is quickly replaced from the basal layer of the epidermis without significant scarring.
- Partial-thickness burn: Epidermis and superficial dermis are damaged with blistering (superficial partial thickness) or loss (deep partial thickness); nerve endings are damaged, making this variety the most painful; except for their most superficial parts, the sweat

glands and hair follicles are not damaged and can provide the source of replacement cells for the basal layer of the epidermis along with cells from the edges of the wound; healing occurs slowly (3 weeks to several months), leaving scarring and some contracture, but it is usually complete.

- Full-thickness burn: The entire thickness of the skin is damaged and often the subcutaneous tissue; there is marked edema and the burned area is numb since sensory endings are destroyed; minor degree of healing may occur at the edges, but the open, ulcerated portions require skin grafting: Dead material (eschar) is removed and replaced (grafted) over the burned area with skin harvested (taken) from a nonburned location (autograft) or using skin from human cadavers or pigs or cultured or artificial skin.
- Fourth-degree burn: Damage extends through the entire thickness of the skin into underlying fascia, muscle, or bone; these injuries are life threatening.

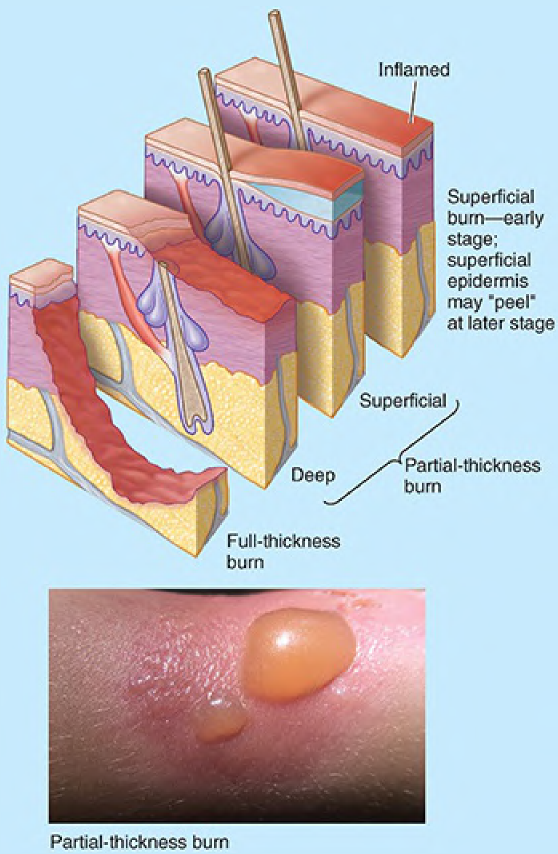


FIGURE B1.2. **Skin burns.**

Burns are classified as severe if they cover 20% or more of the total body surface area (excluding superficial burns like sunburn), are complicated by trauma or inhalation injury, or are caused by chemicals or high-voltage electricity. One way to estimate the surface area affected by a burn in an adult is to apply the "rule of nines," in which the body is divided into areas that are approximately 9% or multiples of 9% of the total body surface (Fig. B1.3). Three factors that increase the risk of death from burn injury are (1) age older than

60 years, (2) partial-thickness and full-thickness burns of over 40% body surface area, and (3) the presence of inhalation injury.

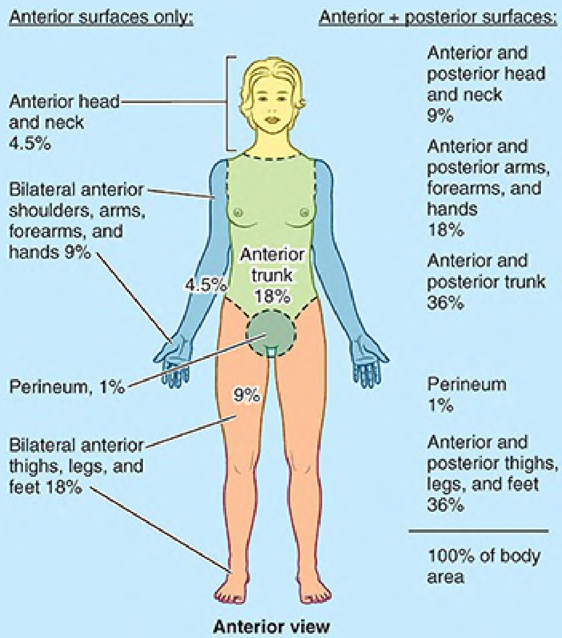


FIGURE B1.3. Estimating body surface area.

FASCIAS, FASCIAL COMPARTMENTS, BURSAE, AND POTENTIAL SPACES

Fascias (L. fasciae) constitute the wrapping, packing, and insulating materials of the deep structures of the body. Underlying the subcutaneous tissue (superficial fascia) almost everywhere is the deep fascia (Fig. 1.9). The **deep fascia** is a dense, organized connective tissue layer, devoid of fat, that covers most of the body parallel to (deep to) the skin and subcutaneous tissue. Extensions from its internal surface invest deeper structures, such as individual muscles (when it may also be called epimysium—see Fig. 1.21) and neurovascular bundles, as **investing fascia**. Its thickness varies widely. For example, in most of the face, distinct layers of deep fascia are absent.

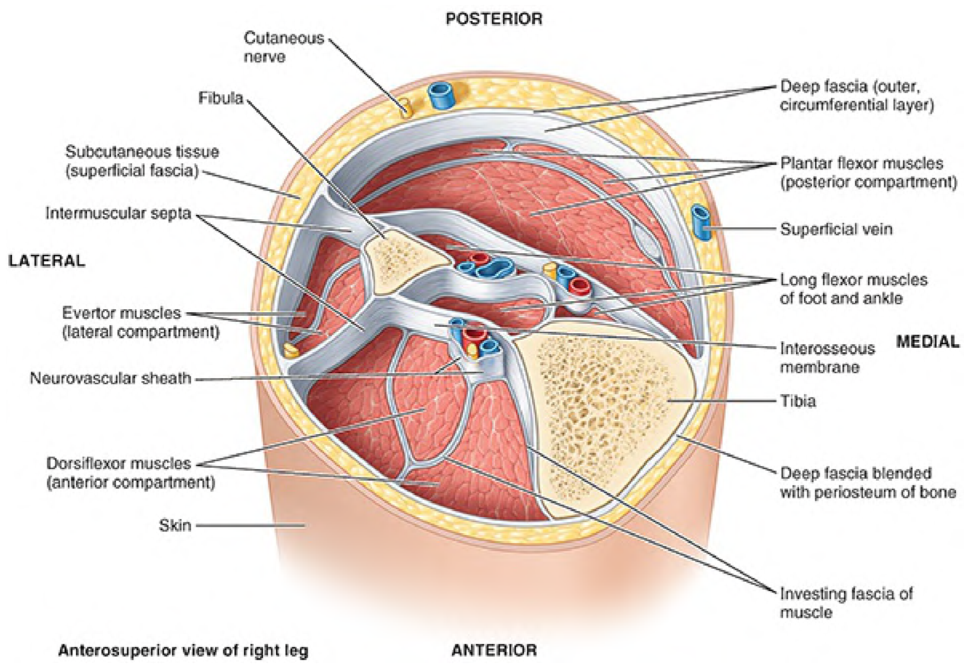


FIGURE 1.9. **Excavated section of leg.** The deep fascia and fascial formations are demonstrated.

In the limbs, groups of muscles with similar functions, usually sharing the same nerve supply, are located in **fascial compartments**. These compartments are separated by thick sheets of deep fascia, called **intermuscular septa**, that extend centrally from the surrounding fascial sleeve to attach to bones. These compartments may contain or direct the spread of an infection or a tumor.

In a few places, the deep fascia gives attachment (origin) to the underlying muscles (although it is not usually included in lists or tables of origins and insertions); but in most places, the muscles are free to contract and glide deep to it. However, the deep fascia itself never passes freely over bone; where deep fascia contacts bone, it blends firmly with the periosteum (bone covering). The relatively unyielding deep fascia investing muscles, and especially that surrounding the fascial compartments in the limbs, limits the outward expansion of the bellies of contracting skeletal muscles. Blood is thus pushed out as the veins of the muscles and compartments are compressed. Valves within the veins allow the blood to flow only in one direction (toward the heart), preventing the backflow that might occur as the muscles relax. Thus, deep fascia, contracting muscles, and venous valves work together as a musculovenous pump to return blood to the heart, especially in the lower limbs where blood must move against the pull of gravity (see Fig. 1.26).

Near certain joints (e.g., wrist and ankle), the deep fascia becomes markedly thickened, forming a **retinaculum** (plural = retinacula) to hold tendons in place where they cross the joint during flexion and extension, preventing them from taking a shortcut, or bow stringing, across the angle created (see Fig. 1.19).

Subserous fascia, with varying amounts of fatty tissue, lies between the internal surfaces of the musculoskeletal walls and the serous membranes lining the body cavities. These are the endothoracic, endoabdominal, and endopelvic fascias; the latter two may be referred to collectively as extraperitoneal fascia.

Bursae (singular = bursa; Mediev. L., a purse) are closed sacs or envelopes of **serous membrane** (a delicate connective tissue membrane capable of secreting fluid to lubricate a smooth internal surface). Bursae are normally collapsed. Unlike three-dimensional realized or actual spaces, these potential spaces have no depth; their walls are apposed with only a thin film of lubricating fluid between them that is secreted by the enclosing membranes. When the wall is interrupted at any point, or when a fluid is secreted or formed within them in excess, they become realized spaces; however, this condition is abnormal or pathological.

Usually occurring in locations subject to friction, bursae enable one structure to move more freely over another. **Subcutaneous bursae** occur in the subcutaneous tissue between the skin and bony prominences, such as at the elbow or knee; **subfascial bursae** lie beneath deep fascia; and **subtendinous bursae** facilitate the movement of tendons over bone. **Synovial tendon sheaths** are a specialized type of elongated bursae that wrap around tendons, usually enclosing them as they traverse osseofibrous tunnels that anchor the tendons in place (Fig. 1.10A).

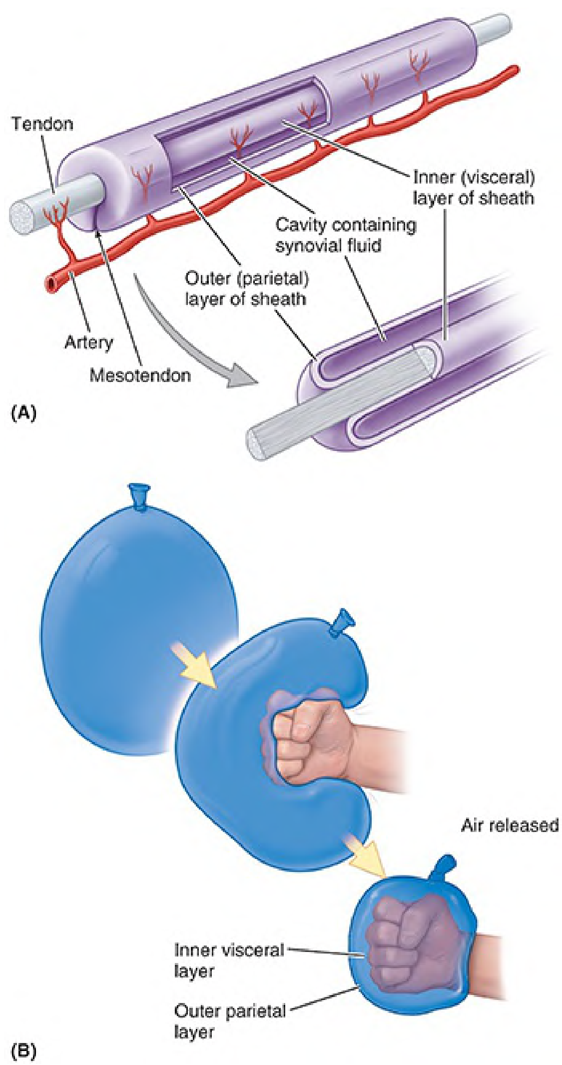


FIGURE 1.10. Synovial tendon sheaths and bursal sacs. A. Synovial tendon sheaths. Longitudinal bursae surround tendons as they pass deep to retinacula or through fibrous digital sheaths. **B.** Bursal sacs. Several structures, such as the heart, lungs, abdominal viscera, and tendons, are enclosed much like this collapsed balloon encloses the fist. A thin film of

lubricating fluid between the parietal and visceral layers confers mobility to the structure surrounded by the bursa within a confined compartment. The transitional folds of synovial membrane between the continuous parietal and visceral layers surrounding the connecting stalks (the wrist in this example) and/or neurovascular structures serving the surrounded mass are called mesenteries. In the case of a synovial tendon sheath, the mesentery is called a mesotendon.

Bursae occasionally communicate with the synovial cavities of joints. Because they are formed by delicate, transparent serous membranes and are collapsed, bursae are not easily noticed or dissected in the laboratory. It is possible to display bursae by injecting and distending them with colored fluid.

Collapsed bursal sacs surround many important organs (e.g., the heart, lungs, and abdominal viscera) and structures (e.g., portions of tendons). This configuration is much like wrapping a large but empty balloon around a structure, such as a fist (Fig. 1.10B). The object is surrounded by the two layers of the empty balloon but is not inside the balloon; the balloon itself remains empty. For an even more exact comparison, the balloon should first be filled with water and then emptied, leaving the empty balloon wet inside. In exactly this way, the heart is surrounded by—but is not inside—the pericardial sac. Each lung is surrounded by—but is not inside—a pleural sac, and the abdominal viscera are surrounded by—but are not inside—the peritoneal sac. In such cases, the inner layer of the balloon or serous sac (the one adjacent to the fist, viscus, or viscera) is called the **visceral layer**; the outer layer of the balloon (or the one in contact with the body wall) is called the **parietal layer**. Such a surrounding double layer of membranes, moistened on their apposed surfaces, confers freedom of movement on the surrounded structure when it is contained within a confined space, such as the heart within its surrounding fibrous sac (pericardium) or flexor tendons within the fibrous tunnels that hold the tendons against the bones of the fingers.

CLINICAL BOX

FASCIAS

Fascial Planes and Surgery

In living people, fascial planes (interfascial and intrafascial) are potential spaces between adjacent fascias or fascia-lined structures or within loose areolar fascias, such as the subserous fascias. Surgeons take advantage of these interfascial planes, separating structures to create spaces that allow movement and access to deeply placed structures. In some procedures, surgeons use extrapleural or extraperitoneal fascial planes, which allow them to operate outside the membranes lining the body cavities, minimizing the potential for contamination, the spread of infection, and consequent formation of adhesions (adherences) within the cavities. Unfortunately, these planes are often fused and difficult to establish or appreciate in embalmed cadavers.

The Bottom Line: Integument, Fascia, and Anatomical Spaces

Integumentary system: The integumentary system (the skin) consists of the epidermis, dermis, and specialized structures (hair follicles, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands). The skin: ■ plays important roles in protection, containment, heat regulation, and sensation; ■ synthesizes and stores vitamin D; and ■ features tension lines, relating to the predominant direction of collagen fibers in the skin, that have implications for surgery and wound healing. ■ Subcutaneous tissue, located beneath the dermis, contains most of the body's fat stores.

Fascias and bursae: Deep fascia is an organized connective tissue layer that completely envelops the body beneath the subcutaneous tissue underlying the skin. Extensions and modifications of the deep fascia: ■ divide muscles into groups (intermuscular septa), ■ invest individual muscles and neurovascular bundles (investing fascia), ■ lie between musculoskeletal walls and the serous membranes lining body cavities (subserous fascia), and ■ hold tendons in place during joint movements (retinacula). ■ Bursae are closed sacs formed of serous membrane that occur in locations subject to friction; they enable one structure to move freely over another.

SKELETAL SYSTEM

The skeletal system may be divided into two functional parts (Fig. 1.11):

- The **axial skeleton** consists of the bones of the head (cranium or skull), neck (hyoid bone and cervical vertebrae), and trunk (ribs, sternum, vertebrae, and sacrum).
- The **appendicular skeleton** consists of the bones of the limbs, including those forming the pectoral (shoulder) and pelvic girdles.

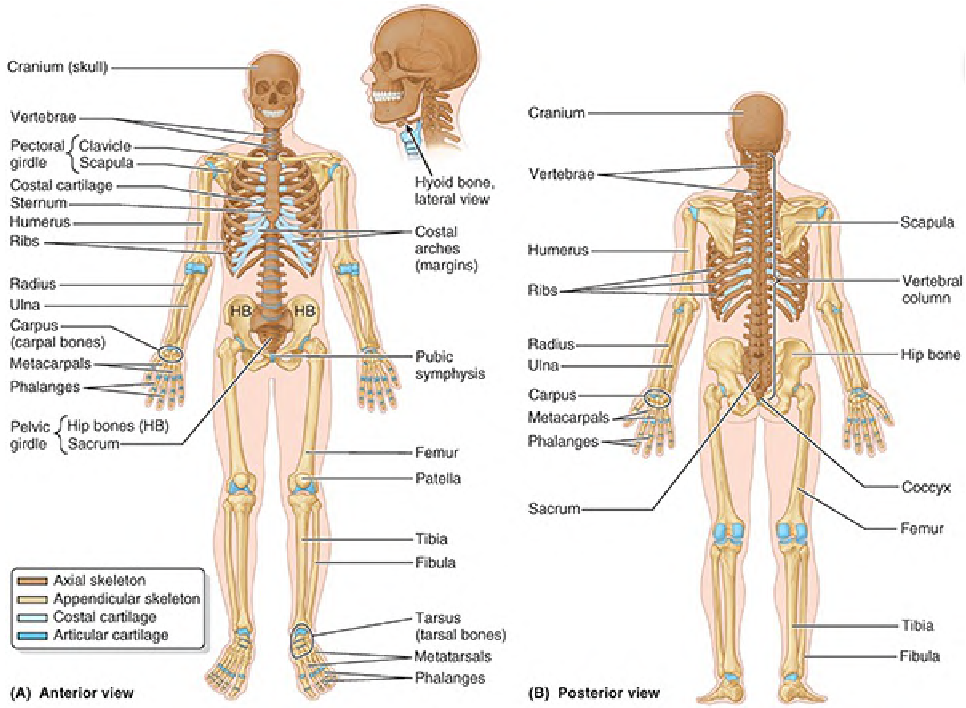


FIGURE 1.11. Skeletal system.

Cartilage and Bones

The skeleton is composed of cartilages and bones. **Cartilage** is a resilient, semirigid form of connective tissue that forms parts of the skeleton where more flexibility is required—for example, where the costal cartilages attach the ribs to the sternum. Also, the **articulating surfaces** (bearing surfaces) of bones participating in a synovial joint are capped with **articular cartilage** that provides smooth, low-friction, gliding surfaces for free movement (see Fig. 1.16A). Blood vessels do not enter cartilage (i.e., it is avascular); consequently, its cells obtain oxygen and nutrients by diffusion. The proportion of bone and cartilage in the skeleton changes as the body grows; the younger a person is, the more cartilage he or she has. The bones of a newborn are soft and flexible because they are mostly composed of cartilage.

Bone, a living tissue, is a highly specialized, hard form of connective tissue that makes up most of the skeleton. Bones of the adult skeleton provide:

- Support for the body and its vital cavities; it is the chief supporting tissue of the body
- Protection for vital structures (e.g., the heart)
- The mechanical basis for movement (leverage)
- Storage for salts (e.g., calcium)
- A continuous supply of new blood cells (produced by the marrow in the medullary cavity of many bones)

A fibrous connective tissue covering surrounds each skeletal element like a sleeve, except where articular cartilage occurs; that surrounding bones is **periosteum** (see Fig. 1.15), whereas

that around cartilage is **perichondrium**. The periosteum and perichondrium nourish the external aspects of the skeletal tissue. They are capable of laying down more cartilage or bone (particularly during fracture healing) and provide the interface for attachment of tendons and ligaments.

The two types of bone are **compact bone** and **spongy** (trabecular) **bone**. They are distinguished by the relative amount of solid matter and by the number and size of the spaces they contain (Fig. 1.12). All bones have a superficial thin layer of compact bone around a central mass of spongy bone, except where the latter is replaced by a medullary (marrow) cavity. Within the medullary cavity of adult bones, and between the **spicules** (trabeculae) of spongy bone, yellow (fatty) or red (blood cell and platelet forming) bone marrow—or a combination of both—is found.

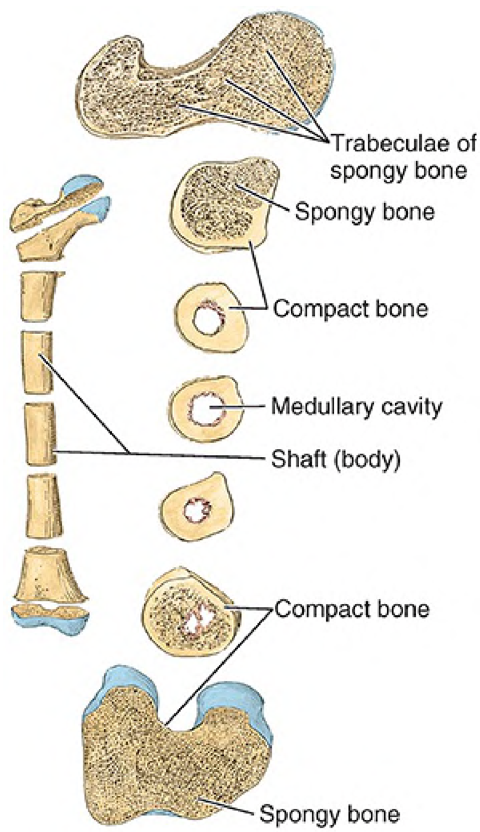


FIGURE 1.12. Transverse sections of femur. The shaft of a living bone is a tube of compact bone that surrounds a medullary cavity.

The architecture and proportion of compact and spongy bone vary according to function. Compact bone provides strength for weight bearing. In long bones designed for rigidity and attachment of muscles and ligaments, the amount of compact bone is greatest near the middle of the shaft where the bones are liable to buckle. In addition, long bones have elevations (e.g., ridges, crests, and tubercles) that serve as buttresses (supports) where large muscles attach. Living bones have some elasticity (flexibility) and great rigidity (hardness).

Classification of Bones

Bones are classified according to their shape.

- **Long bones** are tubular (e.g., the humerus in the arm).
- **Short bones** are cuboidal and are found only in the tarsus (ankle) and carpus (wrist).
- **Flat bones** usually serve protective functions (e.g., the flat bones of the cranium protect the brain).
- **Irregular bones** have various shapes other than long, short, or flat (e.g., bones of the face).
- **Sesamoid bones** (e.g., the patella or knee cap) develop in certain tendons and are found where tendons cross the ends of long bones in the limbs; they protect the tendons from excessive wear and often change the angle of the tendons as they pass to their attachments.

Bone Markings and Formations

Bone markings appear wherever tendons, ligaments, and fascias are attached or where arteries lie adjacent to or enter bones. Other formations occur in relation to the passage of a tendon (often to direct the tendon or improve its leverage) or to control the type of movement occurring at a joint. Some of the various markings and features of bones are (Fig. 1.13):

- Body: the principal mass of a bone; with long bones, the shaft of the bone; with vertebrae, the anterior, weight-bearing portions between interventricular discs
- Capitulum: small, round, articular head (e.g., capitulum of the humerus)
- Condyle: rounded, knuckle-like articular area, often occurring in pairs (e.g., the lateral and medial femoral condyles)
- Crest: ridge of bone (e.g., the iliac crest)
- Epicondyle: eminence superior or adjacent to a condyle (e.g., lateral epicondyle of the humerus)
- Facet: smooth flat area, usually covered with cartilage, where a bone articulates with another bone (e.g., superior costal facet on the body of a vertebra for articulation with a rib)
- Foramen: passage through a bone (e.g., obturator foramen)
- Fossa: hollow or depressed area (e.g., infraspinous fossa of the scapula)
- Groove: elongated depression or furrow (e.g., radial groove of the humerus)
- Head (L. caput): large, round articular end (e.g., head of the humerus)
- Line: linear elevation, sometimes called a ridge (e.g., soleal line of the tibia).
- Malleolus: rounded process (e.g., lateral malleolus of the fibula)
- Neck: relatively narrow portion adjacent to the head
- Notch: indentation at the edge of a bone (e.g., greater sciatic notch)
- Process: an extension or projection serving a particular purpose, having a characteristic shape, or extending in a particular direction (e.g., articular process, spinous process, or transverse process of a vertebra)
- Protuberance: a bulge or projection of bone (e.g., external occipital protuberance)
- Shaft: the diaphysis, or body, of a long bone

- Spine: thorn-like process (e.g., the spine of the scapula)
- Trochanter: large blunt elevation (e.g., greater trochanter of the femur)
- Trochlea: spool-like articular process or process that acts as a pulley (e.g., trochlea of the humerus)
- Tubercle: small raised eminence (e.g., greater tubercle of the humerus)
- Tuberosity: large rounded elevation (e.g., ischial tuberosity)

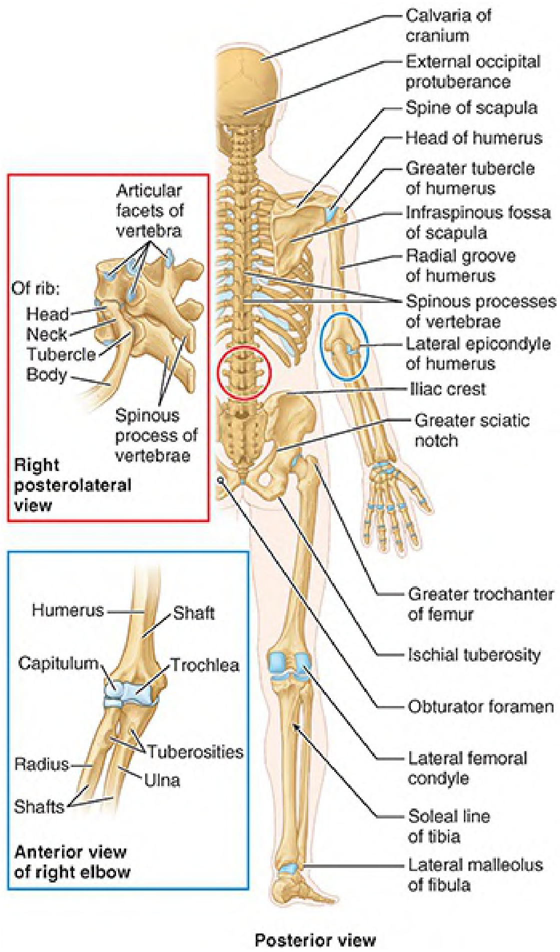


FIGURE 1.13. Bone markings and formations. Markings appear on bones wherever tendons, ligaments, and fascia attach. Other formations relate to joints, the passage of tendons, and the provision of increased leverage.

Bone Development

Most bones take many years to grow and mature. The humerus (arm bone), for example, begins to ossify at the end of the embryonic period (8 weeks); however, ossification is not complete until age 20. All bones derive from mesenchyme (embryonic connective tissue) by two different processes: intramembranous ossification (directly from mesenchyme) and endochondral ossification (from cartilage derived from mesenchyme). The histology (microscopic structure) of a bone is the same by either process (Pawlina, 2020). The two processes of bone development proceed as follows:

- In **intramembranous ossification** (membranous bone formation), mesenchymal models of bones form during the embryonic period, and direct ossification of the mesenchyme begins in the fetal period.
- In **endochondral ossification** (cartilaginous bone formation), cartilage models of the bones form from mesenchyme during the fetal period, and bone subsequently replaces most of the cartilage.

A brief description of endochondral ossification helps explain how long bones grow (Fig. 1.14). The mesenchymal cells condense and differentiate into chondroblasts, dividing cells in growing cartilage tissue, thereby forming a cartilaginous bone model. In the midregion of the model, the cartilage calcifies (becomes impregnated with calcium salts), and periosteal capillaries (capillaries from the fibrous sheath surrounding the model) grow into the calcified cartilage of the bone model and supply its interior. These blood vessels, together with associated osteogenic (bone-forming) cells, form a periosteal bud (Fig. 1.14A). The capillaries initiate the **primary ossification center**, so named because the bone tissue it forms replaces most of the cartilage in the main body of the bone model. The shaft of a bone ossified from the primary ossification center is the **diaphysis**, which grows as the bone develops.

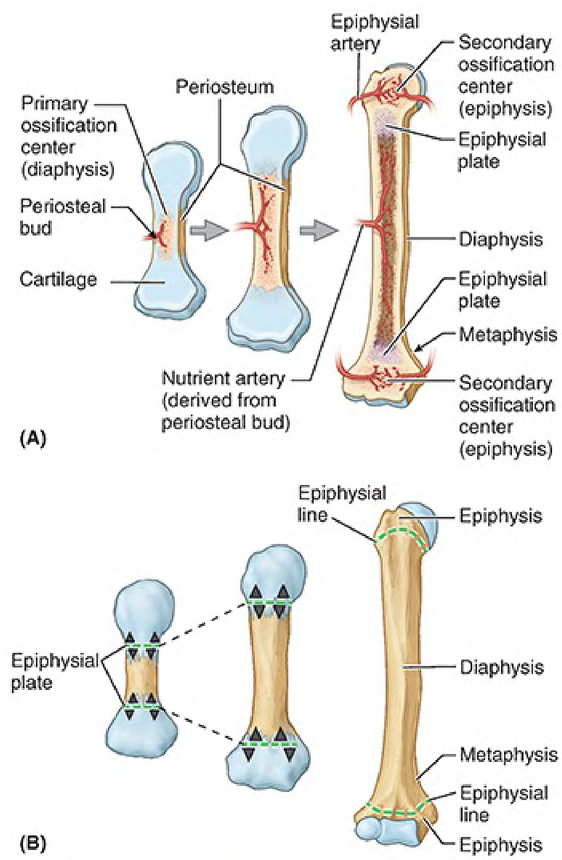


FIGURE 1.14. Development and growth of a long bone. A. Ossification centers. The formation of primary and secondary ossification centers is shown. **B.** Growth of long bones. Growth in length occurs on both sides of the cartilaginous epiphysial plates (arrowheads). The bone formed from the primary center in the diaphysis does not fuse with that formed from the secondary centers in the epiphyses until the bone reaches its adult size. When growth ceases, the depleted epiphysial plate is replaced by a synostosis (bone-to-bone fusion), observed as an epiphysial line in radiographs

and sectioned bone.

Most **secondary ossification centers** appear in other parts of the developing bone after birth; the parts of a bone ossified from these centers are **epiphyses**. The chondrocytes in the middle of the epiphysis hypertrophy, and the bone matrix (extracellular substance) between them calcifies. Epiphysial arteries grow into the developing cavities with associated osteogenic cells. The flared part of the diaphysis nearest the epiphysis is the **metaphysis**. For growth to continue, the bone formed from the primary center in the diaphysis does not fuse with that formed from the secondary centers in the epiphyses until the bone reaches its adult size. Thus, during growth of a long bone, cartilaginous **epiphysial plates** intervene between the diaphysis and epiphyses (Fig. 1.14B). These growth plates are eventually replaced by bone at each of its two sides, diaphysial and epiphysial. When this occurs, bone growth ceases and the diaphysis fuses with the epiphyses. The seam formed during this fusion process (synostosis) is particularly dense and is recognizable in sectioned bone or radiographs as an **epiphysial line** (Fig. 1.15). The epiphysial fusion of bones occurs progressively from puberty to maturity. Ossification of short bones is similar to that of the primary ossification center of long bones, and only one short bone, the calcaneus (heel bone), develops a secondary ossification center.

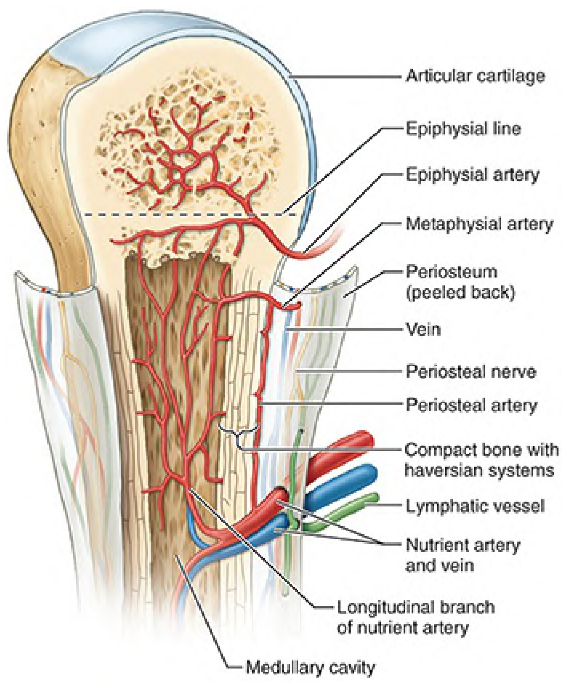


FIGURE 1.15. Vasculature and innervation of a long bone.

Vasculature and Innervation of Bones

Bones are richly supplied with blood vessels. Most apparent are the **nutrient arteries** (one or more per bone) that arise as independent branches of adjacent arteries outside the periosteum and pass obliquely through the compact bone of the shaft of a long bone via **nutrient foramina**. The nutrient artery divides in the medullary cavity into longitudinal branches that proceed toward

each end, supplying the bone marrow, spongy bone, and deeper portions of the compact bone (Fig. 1.15). However, many small branches from the periosteal arteries of the periosteum are responsible for nourishment of most of the compact bone. Consequently, a bone from which the periosteum has been removed dies.

Blood reaches the osteocytes (bone cells) in the compact bone by means of **haversian systems** or osteons (microscopic canal systems) that house small blood vessels. The ends of the bones are supplied by metaphyseal and epiphysial arteries that arise mainly from the arteries that supply the joints. In the limbs, these arteries are typically part of a peri-articular arterial plexus, which surrounds the joint, ensuring blood flow distal to the joint regardless of the position assumed by the joint.

Veins accompany arteries through the nutrient foramina. Many large veins also leave through foramina near the articular ends of the bones. Bones containing red bone marrow have numerous large veins. Lymphatic vessels are also abundant in the periosteum.

Nerves accompany blood vessels supplying bones. The periosteum is richly supplied with sensory nerves—**periosteal nerves**—that carry pain fibers. The periosteum is especially sensitive to tearing or tension, which explains the acute pain from bone fractures. Bone itself is relatively sparsely supplied with sensory endings. Within bones, **vasomotor nerves** cause constriction or dilation of blood vessels, regulating blood flow through the bone marrow.

CLINICAL BOX

BONES

Accessory (Supernumerary) Bones

Accessory (supernumerary) bones develop when additional ossification centers appear and form extra bones. Many bones develop from several centers of ossification, and the separate parts normally fuse. Sometimes one of these centers fails to fuse with the main bone, giving the appearance of an extra bone. Careful study shows that the apparent extra bone is a missing part of the main bone. Circumscribed areas of bone are often seen along the sutures of the cranium where the flat bones abut, particularly those related to the parietal bone (see Chapter 8, Head). These small, irregular, worm-like bones are sutural bones (wormian bones). It is important to know that accessory bones are common in the foot to avoid mistaking them for bone fragments in radiographs and other medical images.

Heterotopic Bones

Bones sometimes form in soft tissues where they are not normally present (e.g., in scars). Horse riders often develop heterotopic bones in their thighs (rider's bones),

probably because of chronic muscle strain resulting in small hemorrhagic (bloody) areas that undergo calcification and eventual ossification.

Trauma to Bone and Bone Changes

Bones are living organs that cause pain when injured, bleed when fractured, remodel in relationship to stresses placed on them, and change with age. Like other organs, bones have blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves, and they may become diseased. Unused bones, such as in a paralyzed limb, atrophy (decrease in size). Bone may be absorbed, which occurs in the mandible when teeth are extracted. Bones hypertrophy (enlarge) when they support increased weight for a long period.

Trauma to a bone may break it. For the fracture to heal properly, the broken ends must be brought together, approximating their normal position. This is called reduction of a fracture. During bone healing, the surrounding fibroblasts (connective tissue cells) proliferate and secrete collagen, which forms a collar of callus to hold the bones together (Fig. B1.4). Bone remodeling occurs in the fracture area, and the callus calcifies. Eventually, the callus is resorbed and replaced by bone. After several months, little evidence of the fracture remains, especially in young people. Fractures are more common in children than in adults because of the combination of their slender, growing bones and carefree activities. Fortunately, many of these breaks are greenstick fractures (incomplete breaks caused by bending of the bones). Fractures in growing bones heal faster than those in adult bones.

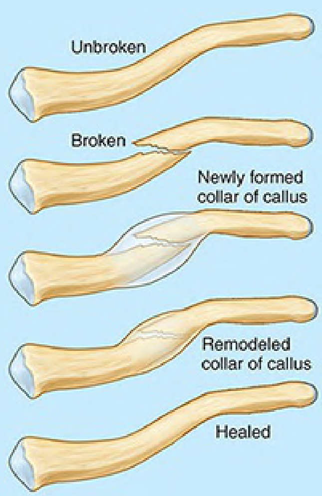


FIGURE B1.4. Bone fracture healing.

Osteoporosis

During the aging process, the organic and inorganic components of bone both decrease, often resulting in osteoporosis, a reduction in the quantity of bone, or atrophy of skeletal tissue (Fig. B1.5). Hence, the bones become brittle, lose their elasticity, and fracture easily. Bone scanning is an imaging method used to assess normal

and diminished bone mass (see “Medical Imaging Techniques” at the end of this chapter).

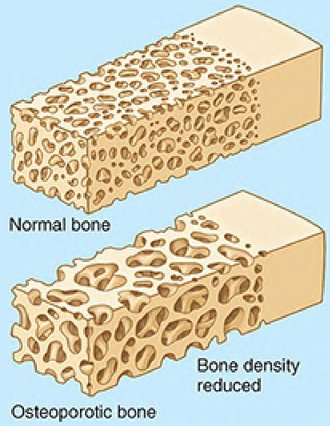


FIGURE B1.5. Osteoporosis.

Sternal Puncture

Examination of bone marrow provides valuable information for evaluating hematological (blood) diseases. Because it lies just beneath the skin (i.e., is subcutaneous) and is easily accessible, the sternum (breast bone) is a commonly used site for harvesting bone marrow. During a sternal puncture, a wide-bore (large-diameter) needle is inserted through the thin cortical bone into the spongy bone. A sample of red bone marrow is aspirated with a syringe for laboratory examination. Bone marrow transplantation is sometimes performed in the treatment of leukemia. If vascular collapse has occurred in a patient in shock, fluids may be rapidly infused by needle into the bone marrow of the tibia (preferred) or the sternum.

Bone Growth and Assessment of Bone Age

Knowledge of the sites where ossification centers occur, the times of their appearance, the rates at which they grow, and the times of fusion of the sites (times when synostosis occurs) is important in clinical medicine, forensic science, and anthropology. A general index of growth during infancy, childhood, and adolescence is indicated by bone age, as determined from radiographs, usually of the hands (Fig. B1.6). The age of a young person can be determined by studying the ossification centers in the bones. The main criteria are (1) the appearance of calcified material in ossification centers, such as the diaphysis and/or epiphyses of long bones, and (2) the narrowing and disappearance of the radiolucent (dark) line representing the epiphysial plate (absence of this line indicates that epiphysial fusion has occurred; fusion occurs at specific times for each epiphysis). The fusion of epiphyses with the diaphysis occurs 1 to 2 years earlier in females than in males. Determining bone age can be helpful in predicting adult height in early- or late-maturing adolescents. Assessment of bone age also helps establish the approximate age of human skeletal remains in medicolegal cases.

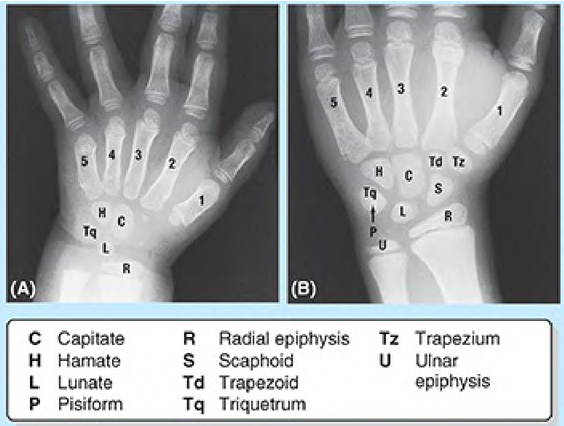


FIGURE B1.6. Anterior radiographs. Right hand of a 2.5-year-old (**A**) and an 11-year-old (**B**).

Effects of Disease, Diet, and Trauma on Bone Growth

Some diseases produce early epiphysial fusion (ossification time) compared with what is normal for the person's chronological age; other diseases result in delayed fusion. The growing skeleton is sensitive to relatively slight and transient illnesses and to periods of malnutrition. Proliferation of cartilage at the metaphyses slows down during starvation and illness, but the degeneration of cartilage cells in the columns continues, producing a dense line of provisional calcification. These lines later become bone with thickened trabeculae, or lines of arrested growth. Fractures involving the epiphyses may cause stunting of bone growth.

Displacement and Separation of Epiphyses

Without knowledge of bone growth and the appearance of bones in radiographic and other diagnostic images at various ages, a displaced epiphysial plate could be mistaken for a fracture, and separation of an epiphysis could be interpreted as a displaced piece of a fractured bone. Knowing the patient's age and the location of epiphyses can prevent these anatomical errors. The edges of the diaphysis and epiphysis are smoothly curved in the region of the epiphysial plate. Bone fractures always leave a sharp, often uneven edge of bone. An injury that causes a fracture in an adult usually causes the displacement of an epiphysis in a child.

Avascular Necrosis

Loss of arterial supply to an epiphysis or other parts of a bone results in the death of bone tissue—avascular necrosis (G. nekrosis, deadness). After every fracture, small areas of adjacent bone undergo necrosis. In some fractures, avascular necrosis of a large fragment of bone may occur. A number of clinical disorders of epiphyses in children result from avascular necrosis of unknown etiology (cause). These disorders are referred to

as osteochondroses.

Joints

Joints (articulations) are unions or junctions between two or more bones or rigid parts of the skeleton. Joints exhibit a variety of forms and functions. Some joints have no movement, such as the epiphysial plates between the epiphysis and diaphysis of a growing long bone; others allow only slight movement, such as teeth within their sockets; and some are freely movable, such as the glenohumeral (shoulder) joint.

CLASSIFICATION OF JOINTS

Three classes of joints are described, based on the manner or type of material by which the articulating bones are united (Fig. 1.16):

1. The articulating bones of **synovial joints** are united by a **joint** (articular) **capsule** (composed of an outer fibrous layer lined by a serous **synovial membrane**) spanning and enclosing a joint or articular cavity. The **joint cavity** of a synovial joint, like the knee, is a potential space that contains a small amount of lubricating **synovial fluid**, secreted by the synovial membrane. Inside the capsule, articular cartilage covers the articulating surfaces of the bones; all other internal surfaces are covered by synovial membrane. The bones in Figure 1.16A, normally closely apposed, have been pulled apart for demonstration, and the joint capsule has been inflated. Consequently, the normally potential joint cavity is exaggerated. The periosteum investing the participating bones external to the joint blends with the fibrous layer of the joint capsule.
2. The articulating bones of **fibrous joints** are united by fibrous tissue. The amount of movement occurring at a fibrous joint depends in most cases on the length of the fibers uniting the articulating bones. The sutures of the cranium are examples of fibrous joints (Fig. 1.16B). These bones are held close together, either interlocking along a wavy line or overlapping. A **syndesmosis** type of fibrous joint unites the bones with a sheet of fibrous tissue, either a ligament or a fibrous membrane. Consequently, this type of joint is partially movable. The interosseous membrane in the forearm is a sheet of fibrous tissue that joins the radius and ulna in a syndesmosis. A **dento-alveolar syndesmosis** (gomphosis or socket) is a fibrous joint in which a peg-like process fits into a socket, forming an articulation between the root of the tooth and the alveolar process of the jaw. Mobility of this joint (a loose tooth) indicates a pathological state affecting the supporting tissues of the tooth. However, microscopic movements here give us information (via the sense of proprioception) about how hard we are biting or clenching our teeth and whether we have a particle stuck between our teeth.
3. The articulating structures of **cartilaginous joints** are united by hyaline cartilage or fibrocartilage. In **primary cartilaginous joints**, or synchondroses, the bones are united by hyaline cartilage, which permits slight bending during early life. Primary cartilaginous joints

are usually temporary unions, such as those present during the development of a long bone (Figs. 1.14 and 1.16C), where the bony epiphysis and the shaft are joined by an epiphysial plate. Primary cartilaginous joints permit growth in the length of a bone. When full growth is achieved, the epiphysial plate converts to bone and the epiphyses fuse with the diaphysis. **Secondary cartilaginous joints**, or symphyses, are strong, slightly movable joints united by fibrocartilage. The fibrocartilaginous intervertebral discs (Fig. 1.16C) between the vertebrae consist of binding connective tissue that joins the vertebrae together. Cumulatively, these joints provide strength and shock absorption as well as considerable flexibility to the vertebral column (spine).

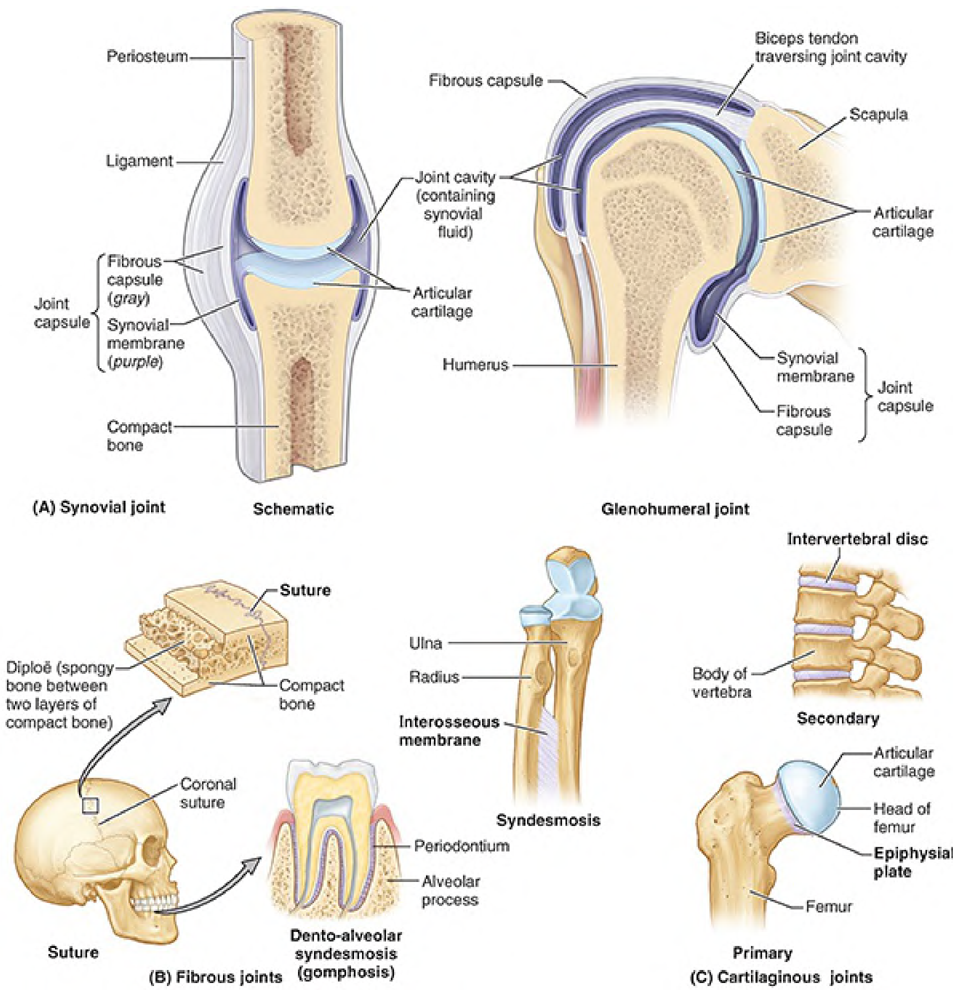


FIGURE 1.16. Classes of joints with examples. A. Synovial (freely moveable) joints. A schematic model and the more complex shoulder joint are shown. **B.** Fibrous joints. Three types of this class are shown. **C.** Cartilaginous joints. Primary and secondary cartilaginous joints are shown.

Synovial joints, the most common type of joint, provide free movement between the bones they join; they are joints of locomotion, typical of nearly all limb joints. Synovial joints are usually reinforced by **accessory ligaments** that are either separate (extrinsic) or are a thickening of a portion of the joint capsule (intrinsic). Some synovial joints have other distinguishing features, such as a fibrocartilaginous articular disc or meniscus, which are present when the

articulating surfaces of the bones are incongruous (Fig. 1.16A).

The six major types of synovial joints are classified according to the shape of the articulating surfaces and/or the type of movement they permit (Fig. 1.17):

1. **Plane joints** permit gliding or sliding movements in the plane of the articular surfaces. The opposed surfaces of the bones are flat or almost flat, with movement limited by their tight joint capsules. Plane joints are numerous and are nearly always small. An example is the acromioclavicular joint between the acromion of the scapula and the clavicle.
2. **Hinge joints** permit flexion and extension only, movements that occur in one plane (sagittal) around a single axis that runs transversely; thus, hinge joints are uniaxial joints. The joint capsule of these joints is thin and lax anteriorly and posteriorly where movement occurs; however, the bones are joined by strong, laterally placed collateral ligaments. The elbow joint is a hinge joint.
3. **Saddle joints** permit abduction and adduction as well as flexion and extension, movements occurring around two axes at right angles to each other; thus, saddle joints are biaxial joints that allow movement in two planes, sagittal and frontal. The performance of these movements in a circular sequence (circumduction) is also possible. The opposing articular surfaces are shaped like a saddle (i.e., they are reciprocally concave and convex). The carpometacarpal joint at the base of the 1st digit (thumb) is a saddle joint.
4. **Condyloid joints** permit flexion and extension as well as abduction and adduction; thus, condyloid joints are also biaxial. However, movement in one plane (sagittal) is usually greater (freer) than in the other. Circumduction, more restricted than that of saddle joints, is also possible. The metacarpophalangeal joints (knuckle joints) are condyloid joints.
5. **Ball and socket joints** allow movement in multiple axes and planes: flexion and extension, abduction and adduction, medial and lateral rotation, and circumduction; thus, ball and socket joints are multiaxial joints. In these highly mobile joints, the spheroidal surface of one bone moves within the socket of another. The hip joint is a ball and socket joint in which the spherical head of the femur rotates within the socket formed by the acetabulum of the hip bone.
6. **Pivot joints** permit rotation around a central axis; thus, they are uniaxial. In these joints, a rounded process of bone rotates within a sleeve or ring. The median atlanto-axial joint is a pivot joint in which the atlas (C1 vertebra) rotates around a finger-like process, the dens of the axis (C2 vertebra), during rotation of the head.

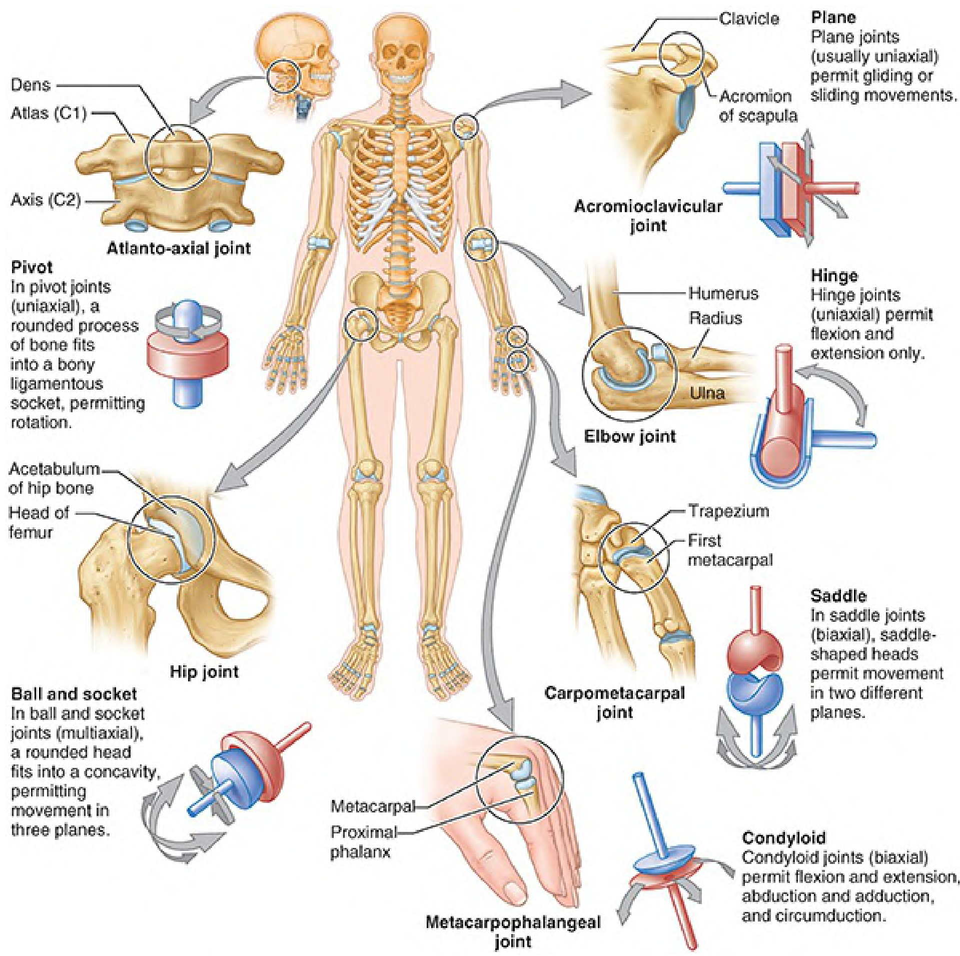


FIGURE 1.17. Six types of synovial joints. Synovial joints are classified according to the shape of their articulating surfaces and/or the type of movement they permit.

JOINT VASCULATURE AND INNERVATION

Joints receive blood from **articular arteries** that arise from the vessels around the joint. The arteries often anastomose (communicate) to form networks (peri-articular arterial anastomoses) to ensure a blood supply to and across the joint in the various positions assumed by the joint. **Articular veins** are communicating veins that accompany arteries (L. venae comitantes) and, like the arteries, are located in the joint capsule, mostly in the synovial membrane.

Joints have a rich nerve supply provided by articular nerves with sensory nerve endings in the joint capsule. In the distal parts of the limbs (hands and feet), the articular nerves are branches of the cutaneous nerves supplying the overlying skin. However, most articular nerves are branches of nerves that supply the muscles that cross and therefore move the joint. The **Hilton "law"**[1] (more a "rule of thumb") indicates that the nerves supplying a joint also supply the muscles moving the joint and, added later, the skin covering their distal attachments (Ellis & Mahadevan, 2019).

Articular nerves transmit sensory impulses from the joint that contribute to the sense of **proprioception**, which provides an awareness of movement and position of the parts of the

body. The synovial membrane is relatively insensitive. Pain fibers are numerous in the fibrous layer of the joint capsule and the accessory ligaments, causing considerable pain when the joint is injured. The sensory nerve endings respond to the twisting and stretching that occurs during sports activities.

CLINICAL BOX

JOINTS

Joints of Newborn Cranium

The bones of the calvaria (skullcap) of a newborn infant's cranium do not make full contact with each other (Fig. B1.7). At these sites, the sutures form wide areas of fibrous tissue called fontanelles. The anterior fontanelle is the most prominent; laypeople call it the "soft spot." The fontanelles in a newborn are often felt as ridges because of the overlapping of the cranial bones by molding of the calvaria as it passes through the birth canal. Normally, the anterior fontanelle is flat. A bulging fontanelle may indicate increased intracranial pressure; however, the fontanelle normally bulges during crying. Pulsations of the fontanelle reflect the pulse of cerebral arteries. A depressed fontanelle may be observed when the neonate is dehydrated (Swartz, 2021).

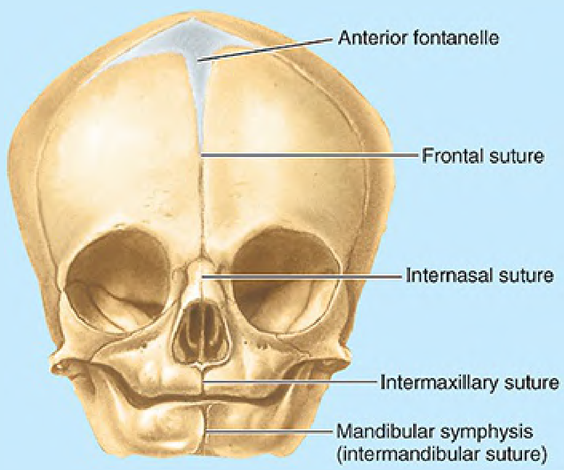


FIGURE B1.7. Neonatal (newborn) cranium.

Degenerative Joint Disease

Synovial joints are well designed to withstand wear, but heavy use over several years can cause degenerative changes. Some destruction is inevitable during such activities as jogging, which wears away the articular cartilages and sometimes erodes the underlying articulating surfaces of the bones. The normal aging of articular cartilage begins early in adult life and progresses slowly thereafter, occurring on the ends of

the articulating bones, particularly those of the hip, knee, vertebral column, and hands (Salter, 1998). These irreversible degenerative changes in joints result in the articular cartilage becoming a less effective shock absorber and lubricated surface. As a result, the articulation becomes increasingly vulnerable to the repeated friction that occurs during joint movements. In some people, these changes do not produce significant symptoms; in others, they cause considerable pain.

Degenerative joint disease or osteoarthritis is often accompanied by stiffness, discomfort, and pain. Osteoarthritis is common in older people and usually affects joints that support the weight of their bodies (e.g., the hips and knees). Most substances in the bloodstream, normal or pathological, easily enter the joint cavity. Similarly, traumatic infection of a joint may be followed by arthritis, inflammation of a joint, and septicemia, blood poisoning.

Arthroscopy

The cavity of a synovial joint can be examined by inserting a cannula and an arthroscope (a small telescope) into it. This surgical procedure—arthroscopy—enables orthopedic surgeons to examine joints for abnormalities, such as torn menisci (partial articular discs of the knee joint). Some surgical procedures can also be performed during arthroscopy (e.g., by inserting instruments through small puncture incisions). Because the opening in the joint capsule for inserting the arthroscope is small, healing is more rapid after this procedure than after traditional joint surgery.

The Bottom Line: Skeletal System

Cartilage and bones: The skeletal system can be divided into the axial (bones of the head, neck, and trunk) and appendicular skeletons (bones of the limbs). The skeleton itself is composed of several types of tissue: ■ cartilage, a semirigid connective tissue; ■ bone, a hard form of connective tissue that provides support, protection, movement, storage (of certain electrolytes), and synthesis of blood cells; and ■ periosteum, which surrounds bones, and perichondrium, which surrounds cartilage, provide nourishment for these tissues and are the sites of new cartilage and bone formation. ■ Two types of bone, spongy and compact, are distinguished by the amount of solid matter and the size and number of spaces they contain. ■ Bones can be classified as long, short, flat, irregular, or sesamoid. ■ Standard terms for specific bone markings and features are used when describing the structure of individual bones. ■ Most bones take many years to grow. Bones grow through the processes of intramembranous ossification, in which mesenchymal bone models are formed during the embryonic and prenatal periods, and endochondral ossification, in which cartilage models are formed during the fetal period,

with bone subsequently replacing most of the cartilage after birth.

Joints: A joint is a union between two or more bones or rigid parts of the skeleton. Three general types of joints are recognized: fibrous, cartilaginous, and synovial. Freely moveable synovial joints ■ are the most common type; ■ can be classified into plane, hinge, saddle, condyloid, ball and socket, and pivot; ■ receive their blood supply from articular arteries that often form networks; ■ are drained by articular veins originating in the synovial membrane; and ■ are richly innervated by articular nerves that transmit the sensation of proprioception, an awareness of movement and position of parts of the body.

MUSCLE TISSUE AND MUSCULAR SYSTEM

The muscular system consists of all the muscles of the body. Voluntary skeletal muscles constitute the great majority of the named muscles. All skeletal muscles are composed of one specific type of muscle tissue. However, other types of muscle tissue constitute a few named muscles (e.g., the ciliary and detrusor muscles and the arrector muscles of hairs) and form important components of the organs of other systems, including the cardiovascular, alimentary, genitourinary, integumentary, and visual systems.

Types of Muscle (Muscle Tissue)

Muscle cells, often called muscle fibers because they are long and narrow when relaxed, are specialized contractile cells. They are organized into tissues that move body parts or temporarily alter the shape (reduce the circumference of all or part) of internal organs. Associated connective tissue conveys nerve fibers and capillaries to the muscle cells as it binds them into bundles or fascicles. Three types of muscle are described based on distinct characteristics relating to

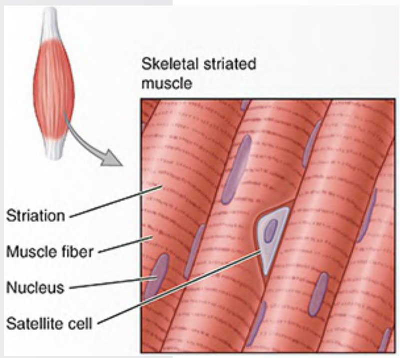
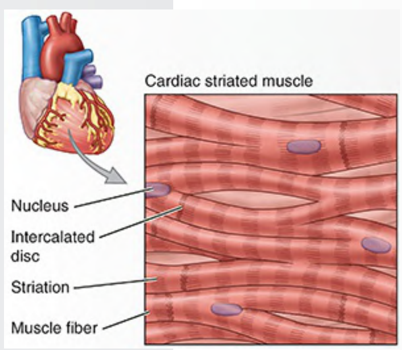
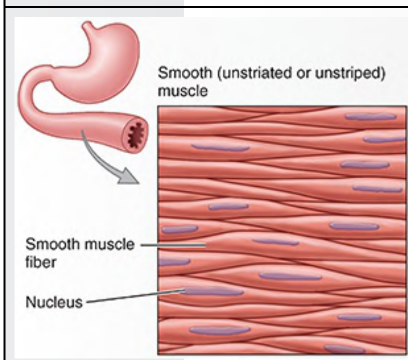
- whether it is normally willfully controlled (voluntary vs. involuntary)
- whether it appears striped or unstriped when viewed under a microscope (striated vs. smooth or unstriated)
- whether it is located in the body wall (soma) and limbs or makes up the hollow organs (viscera, e.g., the heart) of the body cavities or blood vessels (somatic vs. visceral)

There are three muscle types (Table 1.1):

1. **Skeletal striated muscle** is voluntary somatic muscle that makes up the gross skeletal muscles that compose the muscular system, moving or stabilizing bones and other structures (e.g., the eyeballs).
2. **Cardiac striated muscle** is involuntary visceral muscle that forms most of the walls of the heart and adjacent parts of the great vessels, such as the aorta, and pumps blood.
3. **Smooth muscle** (unstriated muscle) is involuntary visceral muscle that forms part of the walls of most vessels and hollow organs (viscera), moving substances through them by coordinated

sequential contractions (pulsations or peristaltic contractions).

TABLE 1.1. TYPES OF MUSCLE (MUSCLE TISSUE)

Muscle Type	Location	Appearance of Cells	Type of Activity	Stimulation
	Composes gross, named muscles (e.g., biceps of the arm) attached to skeleton and fascia of limbs, body wall, and head/neck	Large, very long, unbranched, cylindrical fibers with transverse striations (stripes) arranged in parallel bundles; multiple, peripherally located nuclei	Intermittent (phasic) contraction above a baseline tonus; acts primarily to produce movement (isotonic contraction) through shortening (concentric contraction) or controlled lengthening (eccentric contraction), or to maintain position against gravity or other resisting force without movement (isometric contraction)	Voluntary (or reflexive) by somatic nervous system
	Muscle of the heart (myocardium) and adjacent portions of great vessels (aorta, vena cava)	Branching and anastomosing shorter fibers with transverse striations (stripes) running parallel and connected end to end by complex junctions (intercalated discs); single, central nucleus	Strong, quick, continuous rhythmic contraction; acts to pump blood from the heart	Involuntary; intrinsically (myogenically) stimulated and propagated; rate and strength of contraction modified by the autonomic nervous system
	Walls of hollow viscera and blood vessels, iris, and ciliary body of the eye; attached to hair follicles of the skin (arrector muscle of hair)	Single or agglomerated; small, spindle-shaped fibers without striations; single central nucleus	Weak, slow, rhythmic, or sustained tonic contraction; acts mainly to propel substances (peristalsis, vascular pulsation) and to restrict flow (vasoconstriction and sphincteric activity)	Involuntary by autonomic or enteric nervous systems

Skeletal Muscles

FORM, FEATURES, AND NAMING OF MUSCLES

All skeletal muscles, commonly referred to simply as “muscles,” have fleshy, reddish, contractile portions (one or more heads or bellies) composed of skeletal striated muscle. Some muscles are fleshy throughout, but most also have white noncontractile portions (tendons), composed mainly of organized collagen bundles, that provide a means of attachment (Fig. 1.18).

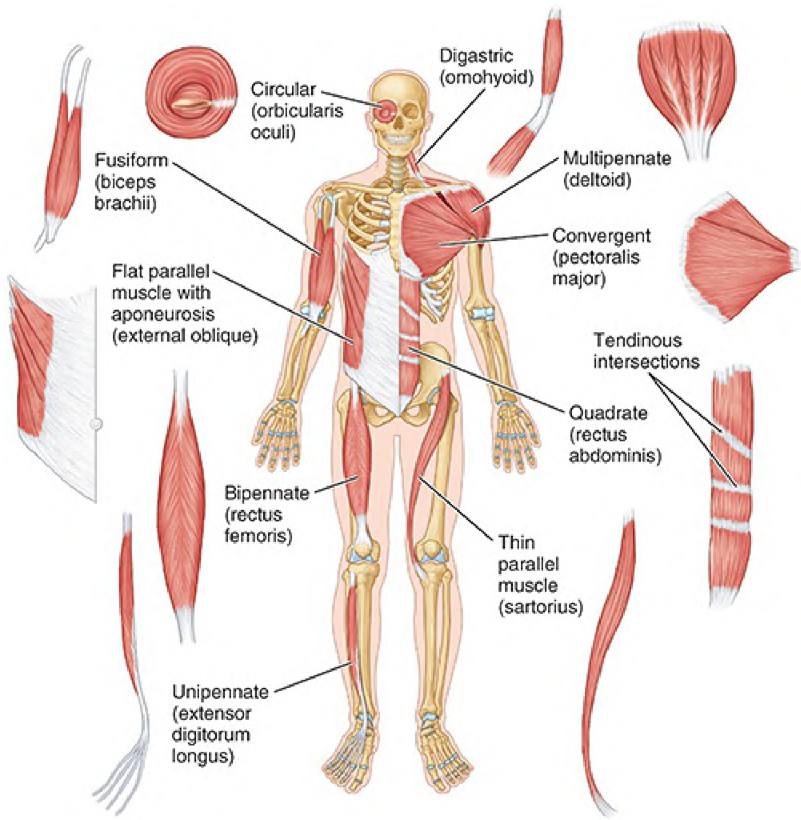


FIGURE 1.18. Architecture and shape of skeletal muscles. The architecture and shape of a skeletal muscle depend on the arrangement of its fibers.

When referring to the length of a muscle, both the belly and the tendons are included. In other words, a muscle’s length is the distance between its attachments. Most skeletal muscles are attached directly or indirectly to bones, cartilages, ligaments, or fascias or to some combination of these structures. Some muscles are attached to organs (e.g., the eyeball), skin (such as facial muscles), and mucous membranes (intrinsic tongue muscles). Muscles are organs of locomotion (movement), but they also provide static support, give form to the body, and provide heat. Figure 1.19 identifies the skeletal muscles that lie most superficially. The deep muscles are identified when each region is studied.

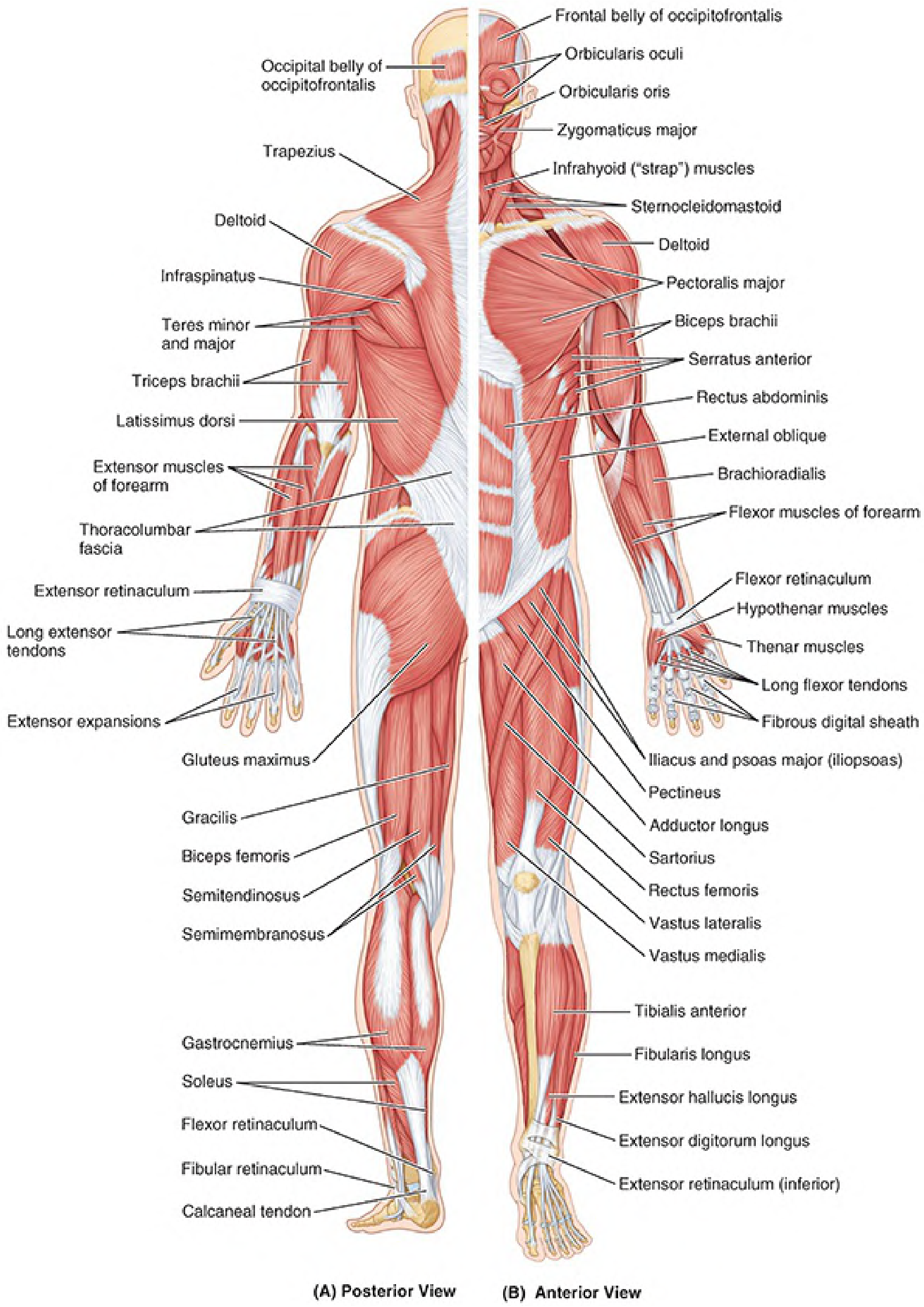


FIGURE 1.19. Superficial skeletal muscles. Most of the muscles shown move the skeleton for locomotion, but some muscles—especially those of the head—move other structures (e.g., the eyeballs, scalp, eyelids, skin of face, and tongue). The sheath of the left rectus abdominis, formed by aponeuroses of the flat abdominal muscles, has been removed to reveal the muscle. Retinacula are deep fascial thickenings that tether tendons to underlying bones as they cross joints.

The architecture and shape of muscles vary (Fig. 1.18). The tendons of some muscles form flat sheets, or **aponeuroses**, that anchor the muscle to the skeleton (usually a ridge or a series of spinous processes) and/or to deep fascia (such as the latissimus dorsi muscle of the back) or to the aponeurosis of another muscle (such as the oblique muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall). Most muscles are named on the basis of their function or the bones to which they are

attached. The abductor digiti minimi muscle, for example, abducts the little finger. The sternocleidomastoid muscle (G. kleidos, bolt or bar, referring to the clavicle) attaches inferiorly to the sternum and clavicle and superiorly to the mastoid process of the temporal bone of the cranium. Other muscles are named on the basis of their position (medial, lateral, anterior, posterior) or length (brevis, short; longus, long). Muscles may be described or classified according to their shape, for which a muscle may also be named:

- **Flat muscles** have parallel fibers often with an aponeurosis—for example, the external oblique (broad flat muscle). The sartorius is a narrow flat muscle with parallel fibers.
- **Pennate muscles** are feather-like (L. pennatus, feather) in the arrangement of their fascicles and may be unipennate, bipennate, or multipennate—for example, extensor digitorum longus (unipennate), rectus femoris (bipennate), and deltoid (multipennate).
- **Fusiform muscles** are spindle shaped with a round, thick belly (or bellies) and tapered ends—for example, biceps brachii.
- **Convergent muscles** arise from a broad area and converge to form a single tendon—for example, pectoralis major.
- **Quadrate muscles** have four equal sides (L. quadratus, square)—for example, the rectus abdominis, between its tendinous intersections.
- **Circular** or **sphincteral muscles** surround a body opening or orifice, constricting it when contracted—for example, orbicularis oculi (closes the eyelids).
- **Multiheaded** or **multibellied muscles** have more than one head of attachment or more than one contractile belly, respectively. Biceps muscles have two heads of attachment (e.g., biceps brachii), triceps muscles have three heads (e.g., triceps brachii), and the digastric and gastrocnemius muscles have two bellies. (Those of the former are arranged in tandem; those of the latter lie parallel.)

CONTRACTION OF MUSCLES

Skeletal muscles function by contracting; they pull and never push. However, certain phenomena—such as “popping of the ears” to equalize air pressure and the musculovenous pump (see Fig. 1.26)—take advantage of the expansion of muscle bellies during contraction. When a muscle contracts and shortens, one of its attachments usually remains fixed while the other (more mobile) attachment is pulled toward it, often resulting in movement. Attachments of muscles are commonly described as the origin and insertion; the **origin** is usually the proximal end of the muscle, which remains fixed during muscular contraction, and the **insertion** is usually the distal end of the muscle, which is movable. However, this is not always the case. Some muscles can act in both directions under different circumstances. For example, when doing push-ups, the distal end of the upper limb (the hand) is fixed (on the floor), and the proximal end of the limb and the trunk (of the body) are being moved. Therefore, this book usually uses the terms proximal and distal or medial and lateral when describing most muscle attachments. Note that if the attachments of a muscle are known, the action of the muscle can usually be deduced (rather than memorized). When studying muscle attachments, act out the action; you are more likely to learn things you have experienced.

Reflexive Contraction. Although skeletal muscles are also referred to as voluntary muscles, certain aspects of their activity are automatic (**reflexive**) and therefore not voluntarily controlled. Examples are the respiratory movements of the diaphragm, controlled most of the time by reflexes stimulated by the levels of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the blood (although we can willfully control it within limits), and the myotatic reflex, which results in movement after a muscle stretch produced by tapping a tendon with a reflex hammer.

Tonic Contraction. Even when "relaxed," the muscles of a conscious individual are almost always slightly contracted. This slight contraction, called **tonic contraction** or **muscle tone** (tonus), does not produce movement or active resistance (as phasic contraction does) but gives the muscle a certain firmness, assisting the stability of joints and the maintenance of posture, while keeping the muscle ready to respond to appropriate stimuli. Muscle tone is usually absent only when unconscious (as during deep sleep or under general anesthesia) or after a nerve lesion resulting in paralysis.

Phasic Contraction. There are two main types of **phasic** (active) **muscle contractions**: (1) **isotonic contractions**, in which the muscle changes length in relationship to the production of movement, and (2) **isometric contractions**, in which muscle length remains the same—no movement occurs, but the force (muscle tension) is increased above tonic levels to resist gravity or other antagonistic force (Fig. 1.20). The latter type of contraction is important in maintaining upright posture and when muscles act as fixators or shunt muscles as described below.

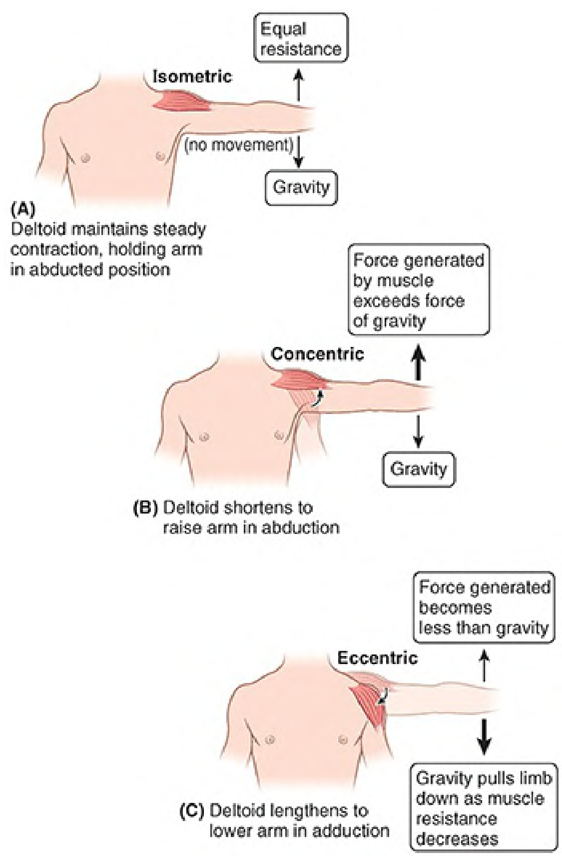


FIGURE 1.20. **Types of skeletal muscle contraction. A.** Isometric contraction. The position of the joint is sustained

without producing movement. **B and C.** Isotonic contractions. Muscles change in length, resulting in movement. Concentric contraction (**B**) shortens muscle length, while eccentric contraction (**C**) actively increases muscle length.

There are two types of isotonic contractions. The type we most commonly think of is **concentric contraction**, in which movement occurs as a result of the muscle shortening—for example, when lifting a cup, pushing a door, or striking a blow. The ability to apply exceptional force by means of concentric contraction often is what distinguishes an athlete from an amateur. The other type of isotonic contraction is **eccentric contraction**, in which a contracting muscle lengthens—that is, it undergoes a controlled and gradual lengthening while continually exerting a (diminishing) force, like playing out a rope. Although people are generally not as aware of them, eccentric contractions are as important as concentric contractions for coordinated, functional movements such as walking, running, and setting objects (or one's self) down.

Often, when the main muscle of a particular movement (the prime mover) is undergoing a concentric contraction, its antagonist is undergoing a coordinated eccentric contraction. In walking, we contract concentrically to pull our center of gravity forward, and then as it passes ahead of the limb, we contract eccentrically to prevent a lurching during the transfer of weight to the other limb. Eccentric contractions require less metabolic energy at the same load but, with a maximal contraction, are capable of generating much higher tension levels than concentric contractions—as much as 50% higher (Marieb & Hoehn, 2019).

Whereas the structural unit of a muscle is a skeletal striated muscle fiber, the functional unit of a muscle is a **motor unit**, consisting of a motor neuron and the muscle fibers it controls (Fig. 1.21). When a motor neuron in the spinal cord is stimulated, it initiates an impulse that causes all the muscle fibers supplied by that motor unit to contract simultaneously. The number of muscle fibers in a motor unit varies from one to several hundred. The number of fibers varies according to the size and function of the muscle. Large motor units, in which one neuron supplies several hundred muscle fibers, are in the large trunk and thigh muscles. In smaller eye and hand muscles, where precision movements are required, the motor units include only a few muscle fibers. Movement (phasic contraction) results from the activation of an increasing number of motor units, above the level required to maintain muscle tone.

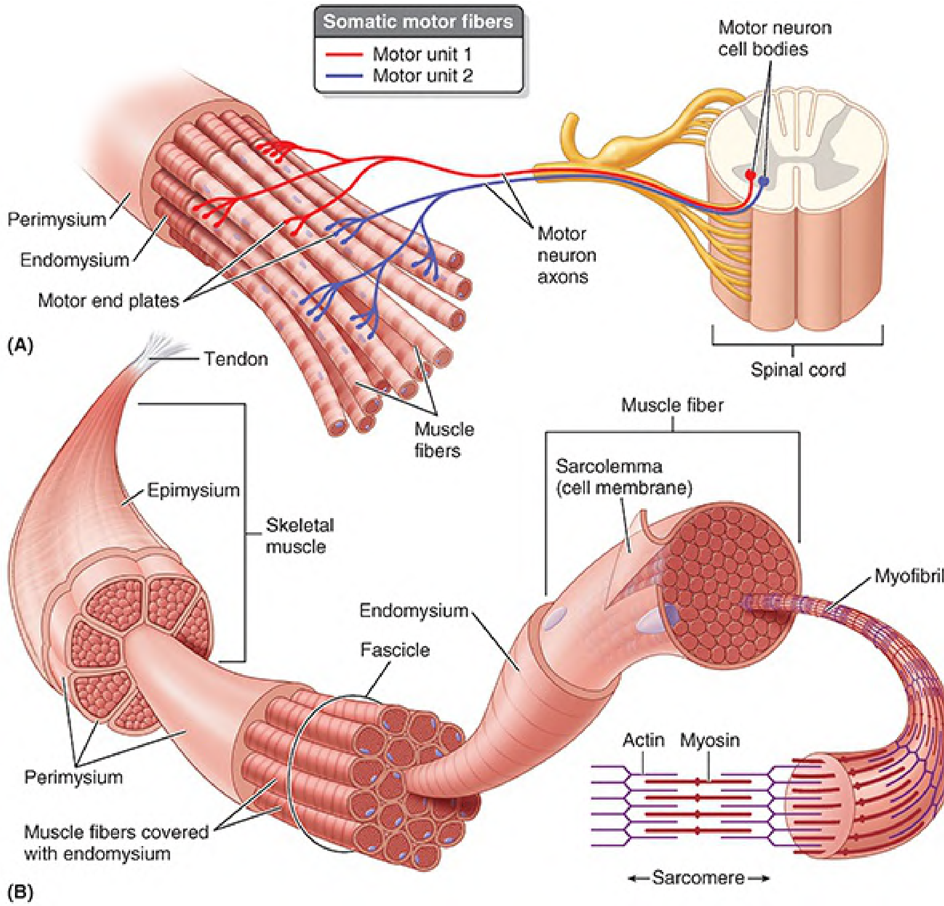


FIGURE 1.21. **Structure of skeletal muscle and motor units. A.** Motor unit. A motor unit consists of a single motor neuron and the muscle fibers innervated by it. **B.** Skeletal muscle structure. Epimysium is the same as investing fascia. Actin (thin) and myosin (thick) filaments are contractile elements in the muscle fibers.

FUNCTIONS OF MUSCLES

Muscles serve specific functions in moving and positioning the body:

- A **prime mover** (agonist) is the main muscle responsible for producing a specific movement of the body. It contracts concentrically to produce the desired movement, doing most of the work (expending most of the energy) required. In most movements, there is a single prime mover, but some movements involve two prime movers working in equal measure.
- A **fixator** steadies the proximal parts of a limb through isometric contraction while movements are occurring in distal parts.
- A **synergist** complements the action of a prime mover. It may directly assist a prime mover, providing a weaker or less mechanically advantaged component of the same movement, or it may assist indirectly, by serving as a fixator of an intervening joint when a prime mover passes over more than one joint, for example. It is not unusual to have several synergists assisting a prime mover in a particular movement.
- An **antagonist** is a muscle that opposes the action of another muscle. A primary antagonist directly opposes the prime mover, but synergists may also be opposed by secondary

antagonists. As the active movers concentrically contract to produce a movement, antagonists eccentrically contract, relaxing progressively in coordination to produce a smooth movement.

The same muscle may act as a prime mover, antagonist, synergist, or fixator under different conditions. Note also that the actual prime mover in a given position may be gravity. In such cases, a paradoxical situation may exist in which the prime mover usually described as being responsible for the movement is inactive (passive), while the controlled relaxation (eccentric contraction) of the antigravity antagonist(s) is the active (energy requiring) component in the movement. An example is lowering (adducting) the upper limbs from the abducted position (stretched out laterally at 90° to the trunk) when standing erect (see Fig. 1.20C). The prime mover (adductor) is gravity; the muscles described as the prime movers for this movement (pectoralis major and latissimus dorsi) are inactive or passive; and the muscle being actively innervated (contracting eccentrically) is the deltoid (an abductor, typically described as the antagonist for this movement).

When a muscle's pull is exerted along a line that parallels the axis of the bones to which it is attached, it is at a disadvantage for producing movement. Instead it acts to maintain contact between the articular surfaces of the joint it crosses (i.e., it resists dislocating forces); this type of muscle is a **shunt muscle**. For example, when the arms are at one's sides, the deltoid functions as a shunt muscle. The more oblique a muscle's line of pull is oriented to the bone it moves (i.e., the less parallel the line of pull is to the long axis of the bone, for example, the biceps brachii when the elbow is flexed), the more capable it is of rapid and effective movement; this type of muscle is a **spurt muscle**. The deltoid becomes increasingly effective as a spurt muscle after other muscles have initiated abduction of the arm.

NERVES AND ARTERIES TO MUSCLES

Variation in the nerve supply of muscles is rare; it is a nearly constant relationship. In the limb, muscles of similar actions are generally contained within a common fascial compartment and share innervation by the same nerves (see Fig. 1.9); therefore, you should learn the innervation of limb muscles in terms of the functional groups, making it necessary to memorize only the exceptions. Nerves supplying skeletal muscles (**motor nerves**) usually enter the fleshy portion of the muscle (vs. the tendon), almost always from the deep aspect (so the nerve is protected by the muscle it supplies). The few exceptions are pointed out later in the text. When a nerve pierces a muscle, by passing through its fleshy portion or between its two heads of attachment, it usually supplies that muscle. Exceptions are the sensory branches that innervate the skin of the back after penetrating the superficial muscles of the back.

The blood supply of muscles is not as constant as the nerve supply and is usually multiple. Arteries generally supply the structures they contact. Thus, you should learn the course of the arteries and deduce that a muscle is supplied by all the arteries in its vicinity.

CLINICAL BOX

SKELETAL MUSCLES

Muscle Testing

Muscle testing helps examiners diagnose nerve injuries. There are two common testing methods:

- The person performs movements that resist those of the examiner. For example, the person keeps the forearm flexed while the examiner attempts to extend it. This technique enables the examiner to gauge the power of the person's movements.
- The examiner performs movements that resist those of the person. When testing flexion of the forearm, the examiner asks the person to flex his or her forearm while the examiner resists the efforts. Usually, muscles are tested in bilateral pairs for comparison.

Electromyography (EMG), the electrical recording of muscles, is another method for testing muscle action. The examiner places surface electrodes over a muscle, asks the person to perform certain movements, and then amplifies and records the differences in electrical action potentials of the muscles. A normal resting muscle shows only a baseline activity (muscle tone), which disappears only during deep sleep, during paralysis, and when under anesthesia. Contracting muscles demonstrate variable peaks of phasic activity. EMG makes it possible to analyze the activity of an individual muscle during different movements. EMG may also be part of the treatment program for restoring the action of muscles.

Muscle Dysfunction and Paralysis

Wasting (atrophy) of muscle may result from a primary disorder of the muscle or from a lesion of the nerve that supplies it. Muscular atrophy may also be caused by immobilization of a limb, such as with a cast.

From the clinical perspective, it is important not only to think in terms of the action normally produced by a given muscle but also to consider what loss of function would occur if the muscle failed to function (paralysis). How would the dysfunction of a given muscle or muscle group be manifest (i.e., what are the visible signs)?

Absence of Muscle Tone

Resting muscle tone, although a gentle force, can have important effects: The tonus of muscles in the lips helps keep the teeth aligned, for instance. When this gentle but constant pressure is absent (due to paralysis or a short lip that leaves the teeth exposed), teeth migrate, becoming everted ("buck teeth").

The absence of muscle tone in an unconscious patient (e.g., under a general anesthetic) combined with the absence of normal protective reflexes may allow joints to be dislocated

as the patient is being lifted or positioned. When a muscle is denervated (loses its nerve supply), it becomes paralyzed (flaccid, lacking both its tonus and its ability to contract phasically on demand or reflexively). In the absence of a muscle's normal tonus, that of opposing (antagonist) muscle(s) may cause a limb to assume an abnormal resting position. In addition, the denervated muscle will become fibrotic and lose its elasticity, also contributing to the abnormal position at rest.

Muscle Soreness and "Pulled" Muscles

Eccentric contractions that are either excessive or associated with a novel task are often the cause of delayed-onset muscle soreness. Thus, walking down many flights of stairs would actually result in more soreness, owing to the eccentric contractions, than walking up the same flights of stairs. The muscle stretching that occurs during the lengthening type of eccentric contraction appears to be more likely to produce microtears in the muscles and/or periosteal irritation than that associated with concentric contraction (shortening of the muscle belly).

Skeletal muscles are limited in their ability to lengthen. Usually, muscles cannot elongate beyond one third of their resting length without sustaining damage. This is reflected in their attachments to the skeleton, which usually do not permit excessive lengthening. An exception is the hamstring muscles of the posterior thigh. When the knee is extended, the hamstrings typically reach their maximum length before the hip is fully flexed (i.e., flexion at the hip is limited by the hamstring's ability to elongate). Undoubtedly, this, as well as forces related to their eccentric contraction, explains why hamstring muscles are "pulled" (sustain tears) more commonly than other muscles (Fig. B1.8).

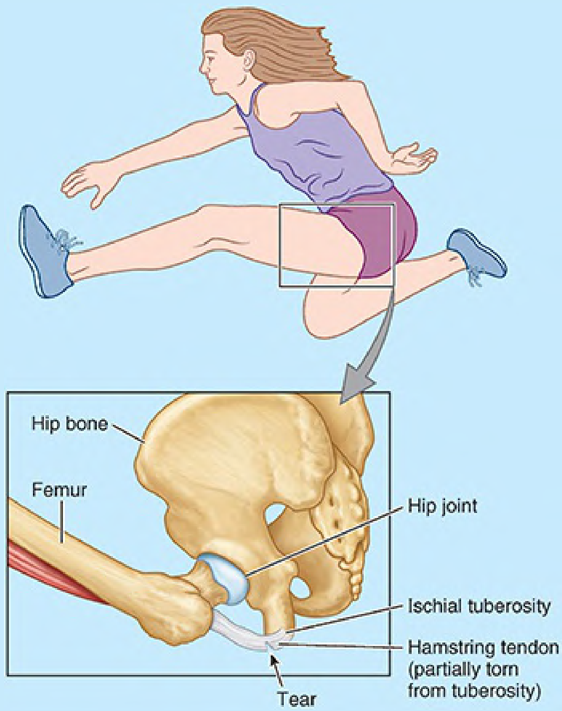


FIGURE B1.8. **Tear of hamstring tendon.**

Growth and Regeneration of Skeletal Muscle

Skeletal striated muscle fibers cannot divide, but they can be replaced individually by new muscle fibers derived from satellite cells of skeletal muscle (see skeletal muscle figure, Table 1.1). Satellite cells represent a potential source of myoblasts, precursors of muscle cells, which are capable of fusing with each other to form new skeletal muscle fibers if required (Pawlina, 2020). The number of new fibers that can be produced is insufficient to compensate for major muscle degeneration or trauma. Instead of regenerating effectively, the new skeletal muscle is composed of a disorganized mixture of muscle fibers and fibrous scar tissue. Skeletal muscles are able to grow larger in response to frequent strenuous exercise, such as body building. This growth results from hypertrophy of existing fibers, not from the addition of new muscle fibers. Hypertrophy lengthens and increases the myofibrils within the muscle fibers (see Fig. 1.21), thereby increasing the amount of work the muscle can perform.

Cardiac Striated Muscle

Cardiac striated muscle forms the muscular wall of the heart, the myocardium. Some cardiac muscle is also present in the walls of the aorta, pulmonary vein, and superior vena cava. Cardiac striated muscle contractions are not under voluntary control. Heart rate is regulated intrinsically by a pacemaker, an impulse-conducting system composed of specialized cardiac muscle fibers;

they, in turn, are influenced by the autonomic nervous system (ANS) (discussed later in this chapter). Cardiac striated muscle has a distinctly striped appearance under microscopy (Table 1.1). Both types of striated muscle—skeletal and cardiac—are further characterized by the immediacy, rapidity, and strength of their contractions. Note: Even though the trait applies to both skeletal and cardiac striated muscle, in common usage, the terms striated and striped are used to designate voluntary skeletal striated muscle.

As demonstrated in Table 1.1, cardiac striated muscle is distinct from skeletal striated muscle in its location, appearance, type of activity, and means of stimulation. To support its continuous level of high activity, the blood supply to cardiac striated muscle is twice as rich as that to skeletal striated muscle.

Smooth Muscle

Smooth muscle, named for the absence of striations in the appearance of the muscle fibers under microscopy, forms a large part of the middle coat or layer (tunica media) of the walls of blood vessels (above the capillary level) (see Fig. 1.23; Table 1.1). Consequently, it occurs in all vascularized tissue. It also makes up the muscular parts of the walls of the alimentary tract and ducts. Smooth muscle is found in skin, forming the arrector muscles of hairs associated with hair follicles (see Fig. 1.6), and in the eyeball, where it controls lens thickness and pupil size.

Like cardiac striated muscle, smooth muscle is involuntary muscle; however, it is directly innervated by the ANS. Its contraction can also be initiated by hormonal stimulation or by local stimuli, such as stretching. Smooth muscle responds more slowly than striated muscle and with a delayed and more leisurely contraction. It can undergo partial contraction for long periods and has a much greater ability than striated muscle to elongate without suffering paralyzing injury. Both of these factors are important in regulating the size of sphincters and the caliber of the lumina (interior spaces) of tubular structures (e.g., blood vessels or intestines). In the walls of the alimentary tract, uterine tubes, and ureters, smooth muscle cells are responsible for peristalsis, rhythmic contractions that propel the contents along these tubular structures.

CLINICAL BOX

CARDIAC AND SMOOTH MUSCLE

Hypertrophy of Myocardium and Myocardial Infarction

In compensatory hypertrophy, the myocardium responds to increased demands by increasing the size of its fibers. When cardiac striated muscle fibers are damaged by loss of their blood supply during a heart attack, the tissue becomes necrotic (dies) and the fibrous scar tissue that develops forms a myocardial infarct (MI), an area of myocardial necrosis (pathological death of cardiac tissue). Muscle cells that degenerate are

not replaced because cardiac muscle cells do not divide. Cardiac progenitor (stem) cells have been identified in the heart, but their potential to significantly generate cardiac muscle fibers in the manner of the satellite cells of skeletal muscle has not been established.

Hypertrophy and Hyperplasia of Smooth Muscle

Smooth muscle cells undergo compensatory hypertrophy in response to increased demands. Smooth muscle cells in the uterine wall during pregnancy increase not only in size but also in number (hyperplasia) because these cells retain the capacity for cell division. In addition, new smooth muscle cells can develop from incompletely differentiated cells (pericytes) that are located along small blood vessels (Pawlina, 2020).

The Bottom Line: Muscle Tissue and Muscular System

Skeletal muscles: Muscles are categorized as skeletal striated, cardiac striated, or smooth. ■ Skeletal muscles are further classified according to their shape as flat, pennate, fusiform, quadrate, circular or sphincteral, and multiheaded or multibellied. ■ Skeletal muscle functions by contracting, enabling automatic (reflexive) movements, maintaining muscle tone (tonic contraction), and providing for phasic (active) contraction with (isotonic) or without (isometric) change in muscle length. ■ Isotonic movements are either concentric (producing movement by shortening) or eccentric (allowing movement by controlled relaxation). ■ Prime movers are the muscles primarily responsible for particular movements. ■ Fixators “fix” a part of a limb while another part of the limb is moving. ■ Synergists augment the action of prime movers. ■ Antagonists oppose the actions of another muscle.

Cardiac and smooth muscle: Cardiac muscle is a striated muscle type found in the walls of the heart, or myocardium, as well as in some major blood vessels. ■ Contraction of cardiac muscle is not under voluntary control but is instead activated by specialized cardiac muscle fibers forming the pacemaker, the activity of which is regulated by the autonomic nervous system (ANS). ■ Smooth muscle does not have striations. It occurs in most vascular tissues and in the walls of the alimentary tract and other organs. ■ Smooth muscle is directly innervated by the ANS and thus is not under voluntary control.

CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

The **circulatory system** transports fluids throughout the body; it consists of the cardiovascular

and lymphatic systems. The heart and blood vessels make up the blood transportation network, the cardiovascular system. Through this system, the heart pumps blood through the body's vast system of blood vessels. The blood carries nutrients, oxygen, and waste products to and from the cells.

Vascular Circuits

The heart consists of two muscular pumps that, although adjacently located, act in series, dividing the circulation into two components: the pulmonary and systemic circulations or circuits (Fig. 1.22A, B). The right ventricle of the heart propels low-oxygen blood returning from the systemic circulation into the lungs via the pulmonary arteries. Carbon dioxide is exchanged for oxygen in the capillaries of the lungs, and then the oxygen-rich blood is returned via the pulmonary veins of the lungs to the heart's left atrium. This circuit, from the right ventricle through the lungs to the left atrium, is the **pulmonary circulation**. The left ventricle propels the oxygen-rich blood returned to the heart from the pulmonary circulation through **systemic arteries** (the aorta and its branches), exchanging oxygen and nutrients for carbon dioxide in the remainder of the body's capillaries. Low-oxygen blood returns to the heart's right atrium via **systemic veins** (tributaries of the superior and inferior vena cavae). This circuit, from left ventricle to right atrium, is the **systemic circulation**.

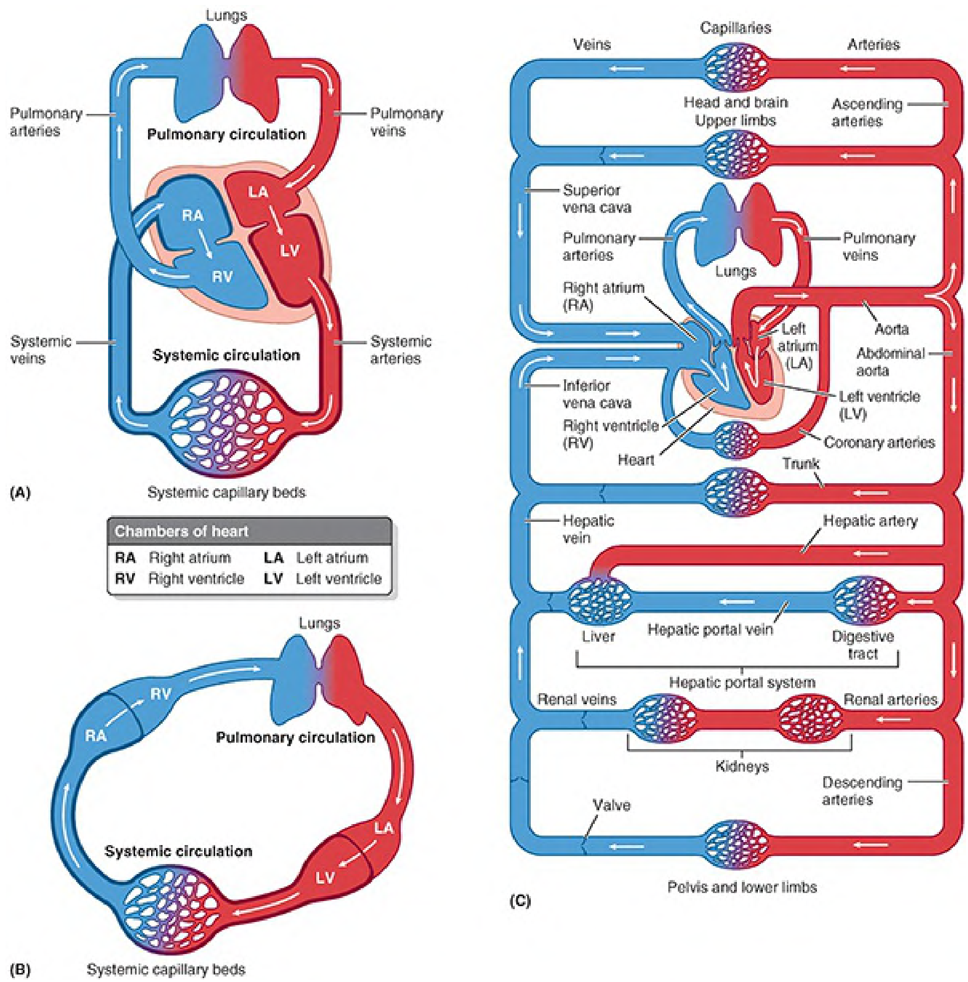


FIGURE 1.22. **Circulation. A.** Schematic of the anatomical arrangement of the two muscular pumps (right and left heart) serving the pulmonary and systemic circulations. **B.** Schematic of the body's circulation, with the right and left heart depicted as two pumps in series. The pulmonary and systemic circulations are actually serial components of one continuous loop. **C.** A more detailed schematic demonstrating that the systemic circulation actually consists of many parallel circuits serving the various organs and regions of the body.

The systemic circulation actually consists of many parallel circuits serving the various regions and/or organ systems of the body (Fig. 1.22C).

Blood Vessels

There are three types of blood vessels: arteries, veins, and capillaries (Fig. 1.23). Blood under high pressure leaves the heart and is distributed to the body by a branching system of thick-walled arteries. The final distributing vessels, arterioles, deliver oxygen-rich blood to capillaries. Capillaries form a capillary bed, where the interchange of oxygen, nutrients, waste products, and other substances with the extracellular fluid occurs. Blood from the capillary bed passes into thin-walled venules, which resemble wide capillaries. Venules drain into small veins that open into larger veins. The largest veins, the superior and inferior venae cavae, return low-oxygen blood to the heart.

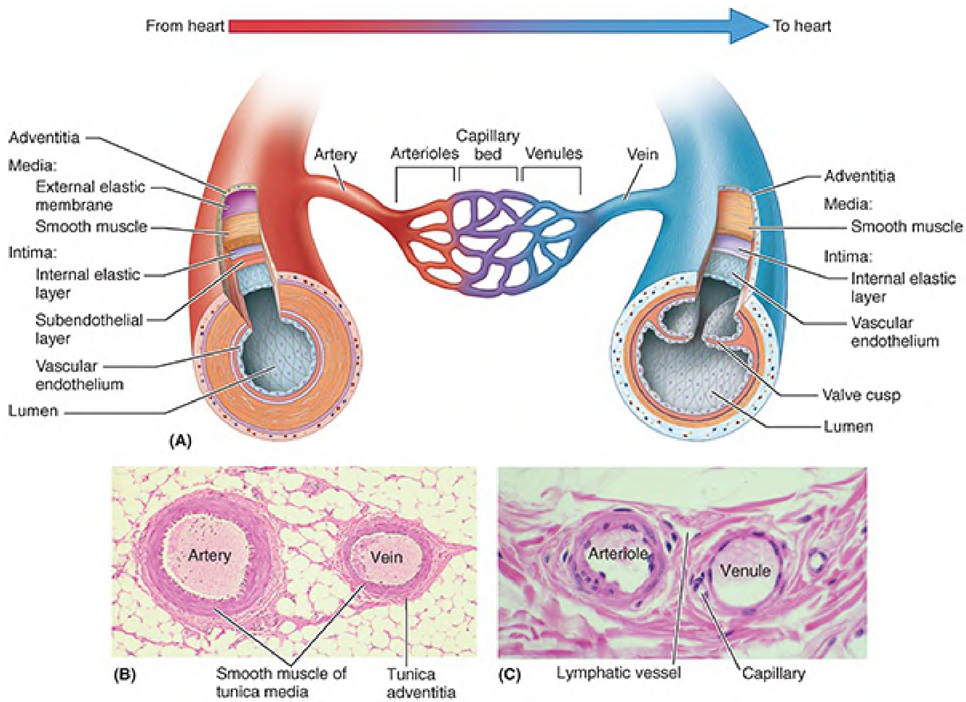


FIGURE 1.23. **Blood vessel structure. A.** The walls of most blood vessels have three concentric layers of tissue, called tunics (L. tunicae, coats). With less muscle, veins are thinner walled than their companion arteries and have wide lumens (L. luminae) that usually appear flattened in tissue sections. **B.** Muscular artery and vein (low power). **C.** Arteriole and venule (high power).

Most vessels of the circulatory system have three coats, or tunics:

- **Tunica intima**, an inner lining consisting of a single layer of extremely flattened epithelial cells, the **endothelium**, supported by delicate connective tissue. Capillaries consist only of this tunic, with blood capillaries also having a supporting basement membrane.
- **Tunica media**, a middle layer consisting primarily of smooth muscle
- **Tunica adventitia**, an outer connective tissue layer or sheath

The tunica media is the most variable coat. Arteries, veins, and lymphatic ducts are distinguished by the thickness of this layer relative to the size of the lumen, its organization, and, in the case of arteries, the presence of variable amounts of elastic fibers.

ARTERIES

Arteries are blood vessels that carry blood under relatively high pressure (compared to the corresponding veins) from the heart and distribute it to the body (Fig. 1.24A). The blood passes through arteries of decreasing caliber. The different types of arteries are distinguished from each other on the basis of overall size, relative amounts of elastic tissue or muscle in the tunica media (Fig. 1.23), the thickness of the wall relative to the lumen, and function. Artery size and type are a continuum—that is, there is a gradual change in morphological characteristics from one type to another. There are three types of arteries:

- **Large elastic arteries** (conducting arteries) have many elastic layers (sheets of elastic fibers)

in their walls. These large arteries initially receive the cardiac output. Their elasticity enables them to expand when they receive the cardiac output from the ventricles, minimizing the pressure change, and return to normal size between ventricular contractions, as they continue to push the blood into the medium arteries downstream. This maintains the blood pressure in the arterial system between cardiac contractions (at a time when ventricular pressure falls to zero). Overall, this minimizes the ebb in blood pressure as the heart contracts and relaxes. Examples of large elastic arteries are the aorta, the arteries that originate from the arch of the aorta (brachiocephalic trunk, subclavian and carotid arteries), and the pulmonary trunk and arteries (Fig. 1.24A).

- **Medium muscular arteries** (distributing arteries) have walls that consist chiefly of circularly disposed smooth muscle fibers. Their ability to decrease their diameter (vasoconstrict) regulates the flow of blood to different parts of the body as required by circumstance (e.g., activity, thermoregulation). Pulsatile contractions of their muscular walls (regardless of lumen caliber) temporarily and rhythmically constrict their lumina in progressive sequence, propelling and distributing blood to various parts of the body. Most of the named arteries, including those observed in the body wall and limbs during dissection such as the brachial or femoral arteries, are medium muscular arteries.
- **Small arteries** and **arterioles** have relatively narrow lumina and thick muscular walls. The degree of filling of the capillary beds and level of arterial pressure within the vascular system are regulated mainly by the degree of tonus (firmness) in the smooth muscle of the arteriolar walls. If the tonus is above normal, hypertension (high blood pressure) results. Small arteries are usually not named or specifically identified during dissection, and arterioles can be observed only under magnification.

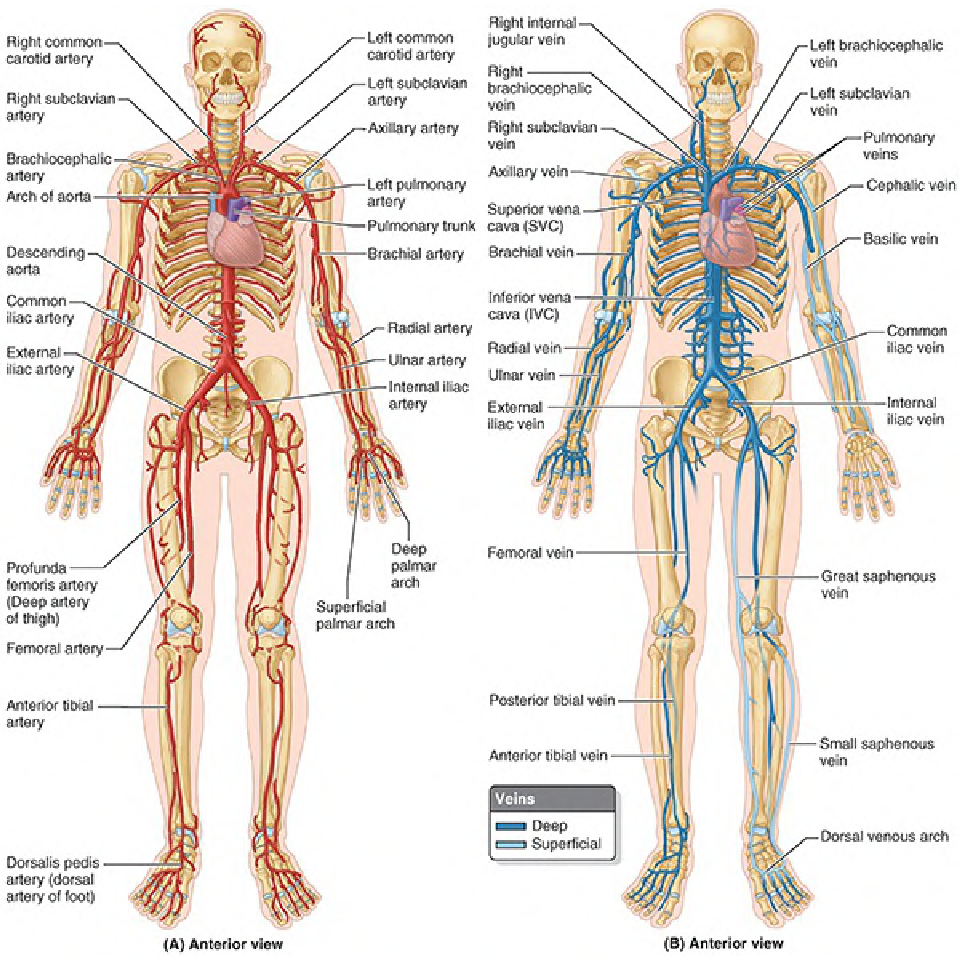


FIGURE 1.24. **Systemic portion of cardiovascular system. A.** Systemic arteries. Systemic arteries carry oxygen-rich blood from the heart to the systemic capillary beds. **B.** Systemic veins. Systemic veins return oxygen-depleted blood from the systemic capillary beds to the heart. Although commonly depicted and considered as single vessels, as shown here, the deep veins of the limbs usually occur as pairs of accompanying veins. Together, systemic arteries, veins, and capillary beds constitute the systemic circulation.

Anastomoses (communications) between multiple branches of an artery provide numerous potential detours for blood flow in case the usual pathway is obstructed by compression due to the position of a joint, pathology, or surgical ligation. If a main channel is occluded, the smaller alternate channels can usually increase in size over a period of time, providing **a collateral circulation** or alternate pathway that ensures the blood supply to structures distal to the blockage. However, collateral pathways require time to open adequately; they are usually insufficient to compensate for sudden occlusion or ligation.

There are areas, however, where collateral circulation does not exist or is inadequate to replace the main channel. Arteries that do not anastomose with adjacent arteries are **true** (anatomical) **terminal arteries** (end arteries). Occlusion of an end artery interrupts the blood supply to the structure or segment of an organ it supplies. True terminal arteries supply the retina, for example, where occlusion will result in blindness. While not true terminal arteries, functional terminal arteries (arteries with ineffectual anastomoses) supply segments of the brain, liver, kidneys, spleen, and intestines; they may also exist in the heart.

VEINS

Veins generally return low-oxygen blood from the capillary beds to the heart, which gives the veins a dark blue appearance (Fig. 1.24B). The large pulmonary veins are atypical in that they carry oxygen-rich blood from the lungs to the heart. Because of the lower blood pressure in the venous system, the walls (specifically, the tunica media) of veins are thinner than those of their companion arteries (Fig. 1.23). Normally, veins do not pulsate and do not squirt or spurt blood when severed. There are three sizes of veins:

- **Venules** are the smallest veins. Venules drain capillary beds and join similar vessels to form small veins. Magnification is required to observe venules. Small veins are the tributaries of larger veins that unite to form **venous plexuses** (networks of veins), such as the dorsal venous arch of the foot (Fig. 1.24B). Small veins are unnamed.
- **Medium veins** drain venous plexuses and accompany medium arteries. In the limbs, and in some other locations where the flow of blood is opposed by the pull of gravity, the medium veins have valves. **Venous valves** are cusps (passive flaps) of endothelium with cup-like **valvular sinuses** that fill from above. When they are full, the valve cusps occlude the lumen of the vein, thereby preventing reflux of blood distally, making flow unidirectional (toward the heart but not in the reverse direction; see Fig. 1.26). The valvular mechanism also breaks columns of blood in the veins into shorter segments, reducing back pressure. Both effects make it easier for the musculovenous pump to overcome the force of gravity to return blood to the heart. Examples of medium veins include the named superficial veins (cephalic and basilic veins of the upper limbs and great and small saphenous veins of the lower limbs) and the accompanying veins that are named according to the artery they accompany (Fig. 1.24B).
- **Large veins** are characterized by wide bundles of longitudinal smooth muscle and a well-developed tunica adventitia. An example is the superior vena cava.

Veins are more abundant than arteries. Although their walls are thinner, their diameters are usually larger than those of the corresponding artery. The thin walls allow veins to have a large capacity for expansion and do so when blood return to the heart is impeded by compression or internal pressures (e.g., after taking a large breath and holding it; this is called the Valsalva maneuver).

Since the arteries and veins make up a circuit, it might be expected that half the blood volume would be in the arteries and half in the veins. Because of the veins' larger diameter and ability to expand, typically, only 20% of the blood occupies arteries, whereas 80% is in the veins.

Although often depicted as single vessels in illustrations for simplicity, veins tend to be double or multiple. Those that accompany deep arteries—**accompanying veins** (L. venae comitantes)—surround them in an irregular branching network (Fig. 1.25). This arrangement serves as a countercurrent heat exchanger, the warm arterial blood warming the cooler venous blood as it returns to the heart from a cold limb. The accompanying veins occupy a relatively unyielding fascial **vascular sheath** with the artery they accompany. As a result, they are stretched and flattened as the artery expands during contraction of the heart, which aids in driving venous blood toward the heart—an arteriovenous pump.

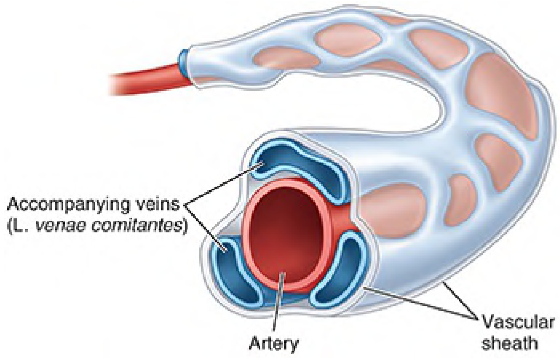


FIGURE 1.25. Accompanying veins. Although most veins of the trunk occur as large single vessels, veins in the limbs occur as two or more smaller vessels that accompany an artery in a common vascular sheath.

Systemic veins are more variable than arteries, and venous anastomoses—natural communications, direct or indirect, between two veins—occur more often between them. The outward expansion of the bellies of contracting skeletal muscles in the limbs, limited by the surrounding deep fascia, compresses the **deep veins** within and around the skeletal muscle inside the deep fascia, "milking" the blood superiorly toward the heart; another (musculovenous) type of venous pump (Fig. 1.26). The valves of the veins break up the columns of blood, thus relieving the more dependent parts of excessive pressure, allowing venous blood to flow only toward the heart. The venous congestion that hot and tired feet experience at the end of a busy day is relieved by resting the feet on a footstool that is higher than the trunk (of the body). This position of the feet also helps the veins return blood to the heart.

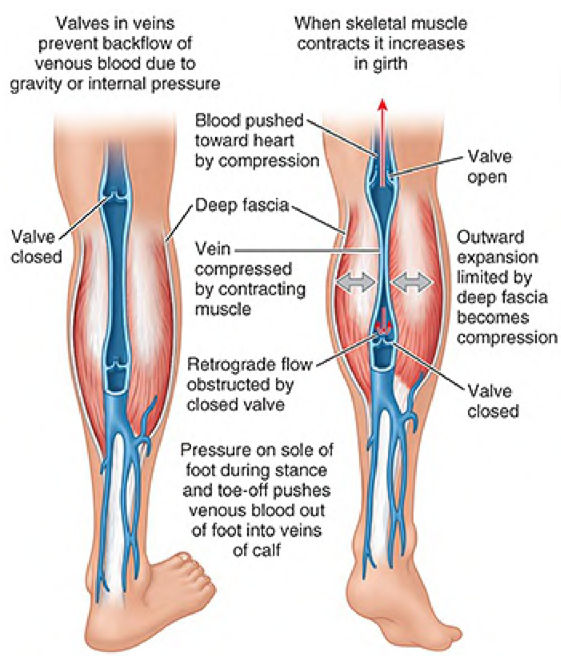


FIGURE 1.26. Musculovenous pump. Muscular contractions in the limbs function with the venous valves to move blood toward the heart. The outward expansion of the bellies of contracting muscles is limited by deep fascia and becomes a compressive force, propelling the blood against gravity.

Superficial veins of the limbs are external to the deep fascia and so are not affected by

muscle contraction. Multiple **perforating veins** along their course penetrate the deep fascia, continuously shunting blood to the deep veins to assist the return of blood to the heart.

BLOOD CAPILLARIES

For the oxygen and nutrients carried by the arteries to benefit the cells that make up the tissues of the body, they must leave the transporting vessels and enter the extravascular space between the cells, the extracellular (intercellular) space in which the cells live. **Capillaries** are simple endothelial tubes connecting the arterial and venous sides of the circulation that allow the exchange of materials with the interstitial or **extracellular fluid** (ECF). Capillaries are generally arranged in **capillary beds**, networks that connect the arterioles and venules (Fig. 1.23). The blood enters the capillary beds through arterioles that control the flow and is drained from them by venules.

As the hydrostatic pressure in the arterioles forces blood into and through the capillary bed, it also forces fluid containing oxygen, nutrients, and other cellular materials out of the blood at the arterial end of the capillary bed (upstream) into the extracellular spaces, allowing exchange with cells of the surrounding tissue. Capillary walls are relatively impermeable, however, to plasma proteins. Downstream, at the venous end of the capillary bed, most of this ECF—now containing waste products and carbon dioxide—is reabsorbed into the blood as a result of the osmotic pressure from the higher concentrations of proteins within the capillary. (Although firmly established, this principle is referred to as the Starling hypothesis.)

In some regions, such as in the fingers, there are direct connections between the small arterioles and venules proximal to the capillary beds they supply and drain. The sites of such communications—**arteriolovenular** (arteriovenous) **anastomoses** (AVAs)—permit blood to pass directly from the arterial to the venous side of the circulation without passing through capillaries. Arteriovenous (AV) shunts are numerous in the skin, where they have an important role in conserving body heat.

In some situations, blood passes through two capillary beds before returning to the heart; a venous system linking two capillary beds constitutes a **portal venous system**. The venous system by which nutrient-rich blood passes from the capillary beds of the alimentary tract to the capillary beds or sinusoids of the liver—the hepatic portal system—is the major example (Fig. 1.22C).

CLINICAL BOX

CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Arteriosclerosis: Ischemia and Infarction

The most common acquired disease of arteries—and a common finding in cadaver dissection—is arteriosclerosis (hardening of the arteries), a group of diseases

characterized by thickening and loss of elasticity of the arterial walls. A common form, atherosclerosis, is associated with the buildup of fat (mainly cholesterol) in the arterial walls. A calcium deposit forms an atheromatous plaque (atheroma)—well-demarcated, hardened yellow areas or swellings on the intimal surfaces of arteries (Fig. B1.9A). The consequent arterial narrowing and surface irregularity may result in thrombosis (formation of a local intravascular clot, or thrombus), which may occlude the artery or be flushed into the bloodstream and block smaller vessels distally as an embolus (a plug occluding a vessel) (Fig. B1.9B). The consequences of atherosclerosis include ischemia (reduction of blood supply to an organ or region) and infarction (local death, or necrosis, of an area of tissue or an organ resulting from reduced blood supply). These consequences are particularly significant in regard to the heart (ischemic heart disease and myocardial infarction [MI] or heart attack), brain (stroke), and distal parts of limbs (gangrene/necrosis).

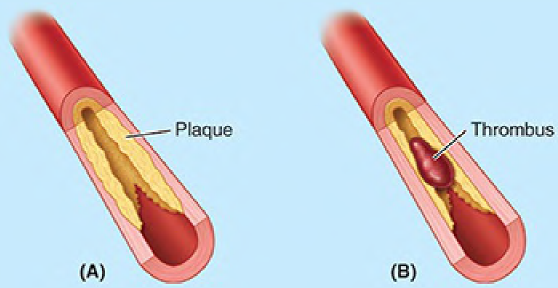


FIGURE B1.9. Atherosclerosis.

Varicose Veins

When the walls of veins lose their elasticity, they become weak. A weakened vein dilates under the pressure of supporting a column of blood against gravity. This results in varicose veins—abnormally swollen, twisted veins—most often seen in the legs (Fig. B1.10). Varicose veins have a caliber greater than normal, and their valve cusps do not meet or have been destroyed by inflammation. Varicose veins have incompetent valves; thus, the column of blood ascending toward the heart is unbroken, placing increased pressure on the weakened walls, further exacerbating the varicosity problem. Varicose veins also occur in the presence of degenerated deep fascia. Incompetent fascia is incapable of containing the expansion of contracting muscles; thus, the (musculofascial) musculovenous pump is ineffective.

FIGURE B1.10. Varicose veins.

LYMPHOID SYSTEM

Although widely distributed throughout most of the body, most of the lymphoid (lymphatic) system is not apparent in the cadaver, yet it is essential to survival. Knowledge of the anatomy of the lymphoid system is important for clinicians. The Starling hypothesis (see “Blood Capillaries” in this chapter) explains how most of the fluid and electrolytes entering the extracellular spaces from the blood capillaries is also reabsorbed by them. However, as much as 3 L each day fails to be reabsorbed by the blood capillaries. Furthermore, some plasma protein leaks into the extracellular spaces, and material originating from the tissue cells that cannot pass through the walls of blood capillaries, such as cytoplasm from disintegrating cells, continually enters the space in which the cells live. If this material were to accumulate in the extracellular spaces, a reverse osmosis would occur, bringing even more fluid and resulting in **edema** (an excess of interstitial fluid, manifest as swelling). However, the amount of interstitial fluid remains fairly constant under normal conditions, and proteins and cellular debris normally do not accumulate in the extracellular spaces because of the lymphoid system.

The **lymphoid system** thus constitutes a sort of “overflow” system that provides for the drainage of surplus tissue fluid and leaked plasma proteins to the bloodstream, as well as for the removal of debris from cellular decomposition and infection. The important components of the lymphoid system (Fig. 1.27) are as follows:

- **Lymphatic plexuses**, networks of **lymphatic capillaries** that originate blindly in the extracellular (intercellular) spaces of most tissues. Because they are formed of a highly attenuated endothelium lacking a basement membrane, along with surplus tissue fluid, plasma proteins, bacteria, cellular debris, and even whole cells (especially lymphocytes) can readily enter lymphatic capillaries.

- **Lymphatic vessels** (lymphatics), thin-walled vessels with abundant lymphatic valves that comprise a nearly body-wide network to drain lymph from the lymphatic capillaries. In living individuals, the vessels bulge where each of the closely spaced valves occur, giving lymphatics a beaded appearance. **Lymphatic trunks** are large collecting vessels that receive lymph from multiple lymphatic vessels. Lymphatic capillaries and vessels occur almost everywhere blood capillaries are found, except, for example, teeth, bone, bone marrow, and the entire central nervous system. (Excess tissue fluid of the CNS drains into the cerebrospinal fluid.)
- **Lymph** (L. lympha, clear water), the tissue fluid that enters lymph capillaries and is conveyed by lymphatic vessels. Usually clear, watery, and slightly yellow, lymph is similar in composition to blood plasma.
- **Lymph nodes**, small masses of lymphatic tissue located along the course of lymphatic vessels through which lymph is filtered on its way to the venous system (Fig. 1.27B)
- **Lymphocytes**, circulating cells of the immune system that react against foreign materials
- **Lymphoid organs**, parts of the body that produce lymphocytes, such as the thymus, red bone marrow, spleen, tonsils, and the solitary and aggregated lymphoid nodules in the walls of the alimentary tract and appendix

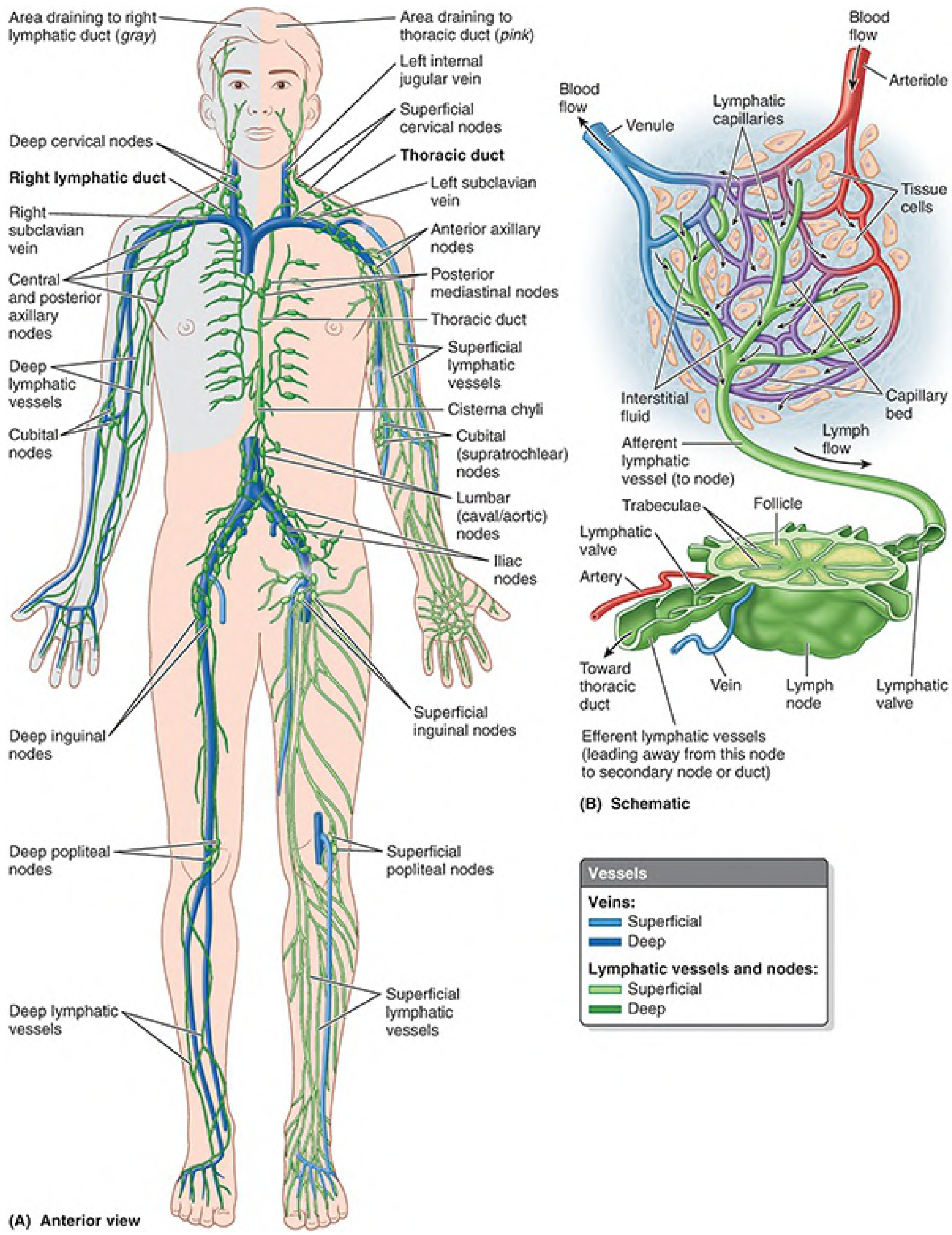


FIGURE 1.27. Lymphoid system. A. Pattern of lymphatic drainage. Except for the right superior quadrant of the body (pink), lymph ultimately drains into the left venous angle via the thoracic duct. The right superior quadrant drains to the right venous angle, usually via a right lymphatic duct. Lymph typically passes through several sets of lymph nodes, in a generally predictable order, before it enters the venous system. **B.** Schematic of lymph flow from extracellular spaces through a lymph node. Small black arrows indicate the flow (leaking) of interstitial fluid out of blood capillaries and (absorption) into the lymphatic capillaries.

Superficial lymphatic vessels, more numerous than veins in the subcutaneous tissue and anastomosing freely, converge toward and follow the venous drainage. These vessels eventually drain into **deep lymphatic vessels** that accompany the arteries and also receive the drainage of internal organs. It is likely that the deep lymphatic vessels are also compressed by the arteries they accompany, milking the lymph along these valved vessels in the same manner described earlier for accompanying veins. Both superficial and deep lymphatic vessels traverse lymph

nodes (usually several sets) as they course proximally, becoming larger as they merge with vessels draining adjacent regions. Large lymphatic vessels enter large collecting vessels, called lymphatic trunks, which unite to form either the right lymphatic duct or the thoracic duct (Fig. 1.27A):

- The right lymphatic duct drains lymph from the body's right upper quadrant (right side of the head, neck, and thorax plus the right upper limb). At the root of the neck, it enters the junction of the right internal jugular and right subclavian veins, the **right venous angle**.
- The thoracic duct drains lymph from the remainder of the body. The lymphatic trunks draining the lower half of the body merge in the abdomen, sometimes forming a dilated collecting sac, the cisterna chyli. From this sac (if present), or from the merger of the trunks, the thoracic duct ascends into and then through the thorax to enter the **left venous angle** (junction of left internal jugular and left subclavian veins).

Although this is the typical drainage pattern of most lymph, lymphatic vessels communicate with veins freely in many parts of the body. Consequently, ligation of a lymphatic trunk or even the thoracic duct itself may have only a transient effect as a new pattern of drainage is established through more peripheral lymphaticovenous—and later interlymphatic—anastomoses.

Additional functions of the lymphoid system include the following:

- Absorption and transport of dietary fat. Special lymphatic capillaries, called lacteals (L. lacteus, milk), receive all lipid and lipid-soluble vitamins absorbed by the intestine. Visceral lymphatics then convey the milky fluid, chyle (G. chylos, juice), to the thoracic duct and into the venous system.
- Formation of a defense mechanism for the body. When foreign protein drains from an infected area, antibodies specific to the protein are produced by immunologically competent cells and/or lymphocytes and dispatched to the infected area.

CLINICAL BOX

LYMPHOID SYSTEM

Spread of Cancer

Cancer invades the body by contiguous spread (direct growth into adjacent tissue) or by metastasis (the dissemination of tumor cells to sites distant from the original or primary tumor). Metastasis occurs three ways:

1. Direct seeding of serous membranes of body cavities
2. Lymphogenous spread (via lymphatic vessels)
3. Hematogenous spread (via blood vessels)

It is surprising that often even a thin fascial sheet or serous membrane deflects tumor invasion. However, once a malignancy penetrates into a potential space, the direct seeding of cavities—that is, of its serous membranes—is likely.

Lymphogenous spread of cancer is the most common route for the initial dissemination of carcinomas (epithelial tumors), the most common type of cancer. Cells loosened from the primary cancer site enter and travel via lymphatics. The lymph-borne cells are filtered through and trapped by lymph nodes, which thus become secondary (metastatic) cancer sites.

The pattern of cancerous lymph node involvement follows the natural routes of lymph drainage. Thus, when removing a potentially metastatic tumor, surgeons stage the metastasis (determine the degree to which cancer has spread) by removing and examining lymph nodes that receive lymph from the organ or region in the order the lymph normally passes through them. Therefore, it is important for physicians to literally know the lymphatic drainage "backward and forward"—that is, (1) to know what nodes are likely to be affected when a tumor is identified in a certain site or organ (and the order in which they receive lymph) and (2) to be able to determine likely sites of primary cancer sites (sources of metastasis) when an enlarged node is detected. Cancerous nodes enlarge as the tumor cells within them increase; however, unlike swollen infected nodes, cancerous nodes are not usually painful when compressed. Sometimes an enlarged lymph node is the first sign of cancer.

Hematogenous spread of cancer is the most common route for the metastasis of the less common (but more aggressively malignant) sarcomas (connective tissue cancers). Because veins are more abundant and have thinner walls that offer less resistance, metastasis occurs more often by venous than arterial routes. Since the blood-borne cells follow venous flow, the liver and lungs are the most common sites of secondary sarcomas.

Typically, the treatment or removal of a primary tumor is not difficult, but the treatment or removal of all the affected lymph nodes or other secondary (metastatic) tumors may be impossible (Kumar et al., 2020).

Lymphangitis, Lymphadenitis, and Lymphedema

Lymphangitis and lymphadenitis are secondary inflammations of lymphatic vessels and lymph nodes, respectively. These conditions may occur when the lymphoid system is involved in chemical or bacterial transport after severe injury or infection. The lymphatic vessels, not normally evident, may become apparent as red streaks in the skin, and the nodes become painfully enlarged. This condition is potentially dangerous because the uncontained infection may lead to septicemia (blood poisoning). Lymphedema, a localized type of edema, occurs when lymph does not drain from an area of the body. For instance, if cancerous lymph nodes are surgically removed from the axilla (compartment superior to the armpit), lymphedema of the limb may occur. Solid cell growths may permeate lymphatic vessels and form minute cellular emboli (plugs), which may break free

and pass to regional lymph nodes. In this way, further lymphogenous spread to other tissues and organs may occur.

The Bottom Line: Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems

Cardiovascular system: The cardiovascular system consists of the heart and blood vessels—the arteries, veins, and capillaries. ■ Arteries and veins (and lymphatics) have three coats or tunics—tunica intima, tunica media, and tunica adventitia. ■ Arteries have both elastic and muscle fibers in their walls, which allow them to propel blood throughout the cardiovascular system. ■ Veins have thinner walls than arteries and are distinguished by valves, which prevent backflow of blood. ■ As simple endothelial tubes, capillaries are the smallest blood vessels and provide the linkage between the smallest arteries (arterioles) and veins (venules).

Lymphoid system: The lymphoid system drains surplus fluid from the extracellular spaces to the bloodstream. ■ The lymphoid system also constitutes a major part of the body's defense system. ■ Important components of the lymphoid system are networks of lymphatic capillaries, the lymphatic plexuses, lymphatic vessels, lymph, lymph nodes, lymphocytes, and the lymphoid organs. ■ The lymphoid system provides a (relatively) predictable route for the spread of certain types of cancerous cells throughout the body. ■ Inflammation of lymphatic vessels and/or enlargement of lymph nodes is an important indicator of possible injury, infection, or disease (e.g., cancer).

NERVOUS SYSTEM

The nervous system enables the body to react to continuous changes in its internal and external environments. It also controls and integrates the various activities of the body, such as circulation and respiration. For descriptive purposes, the nervous system is divided

- Structurally into the central nervous system (CNS), consisting of the brain and spinal cord, and the peripheral nervous system (PNS), the remainder of the nervous system outside of the CNS
- Functionally into the somatic nervous system (SNS) and the autonomic nervous system (ANS)

Nervous tissue consists of two main cell types: neurons (nerve cells) and neuroglia (glial cells), which support the neurons:

- **Neurons** are the structural and functional units of the nervous system specialized for rapid

communication (Figs. 1.28 and 1.29). A neuron is composed of a **cell body** with processes (extensions) called **dendrites** and an **axon**, which carry impulses to and away from the cell body, respectively. Myelin, layers of lipid, and protein substances form a myelin sheath around some axons, greatly increasing the velocity of impulse conduction. Two types of neurons constitute the majority of neurons composing the nervous system (and the peripheral nervous system in particular) (Fig. 1.28):

1. **Multipolar motor neurons** have two or more dendrites and a single axon that may have one or more collateral branches. They are the most common type of neuron in the nervous system (CNS and PNS). All of the motor neurons that control skeletal muscle and those comprising the ANS are multipolar neurons.
2. **Pseudounipolar sensory neurons** have a short, apparently single (but actually double) process extending from the cell body. This common process separates into a peripheral process, conducting impulses from the receptor organ (e.g., touch, pain, or temperature sensors in the skin) toward the cell body, and a central process that continues from the cell body into the CNS. The cell bodies of pseudounipolar neurons are located outside the CNS in sensory ganglia and are thus part of the PNS. Neurons communicate with each other at synapses, points of contact between neurons (Fig. 1.29). The communication occurs by means of neurotransmitters, chemical agents released or secreted by one neuron, which may excite or inhibit another neuron, continuing or terminating the relay of impulses or the response to them.

- **Neuroglia** (glial cells or glia), approximately five times as abundant as neurons, are nonneuronal, nonexcitable cells that form a major component of nervous tissue, supporting, insulating, and nourishing the neurons. In the CNS, neuroglia include oligodendroglia, astrocytes, ependymal cells, and microglia (small glial cells). In the PNS, neuroglia include satellite cells around the neurons in the spinal (posterior root) and autonomic ganglia and Schwann (neurolemma) cells (Figs. 1.28 and 1.29).

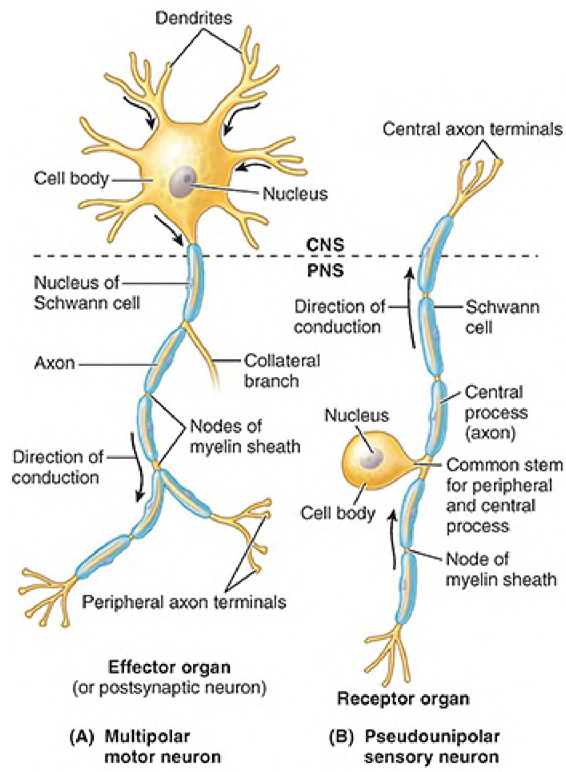


FIGURE 1.28. Neurons. The most common types of neurons are shown. **A.** Multipolar motor neurons. All of the motor neurons that control skeletal muscle and those comprising the ANS are multipolar neurons. **B.** Pseudounipolar neurons. Except for some of the special senses (e.g., olfaction and vision), all sensory neurons of the PNS are pseudounipolar neurons with cell bodies located in sensory ganglia.

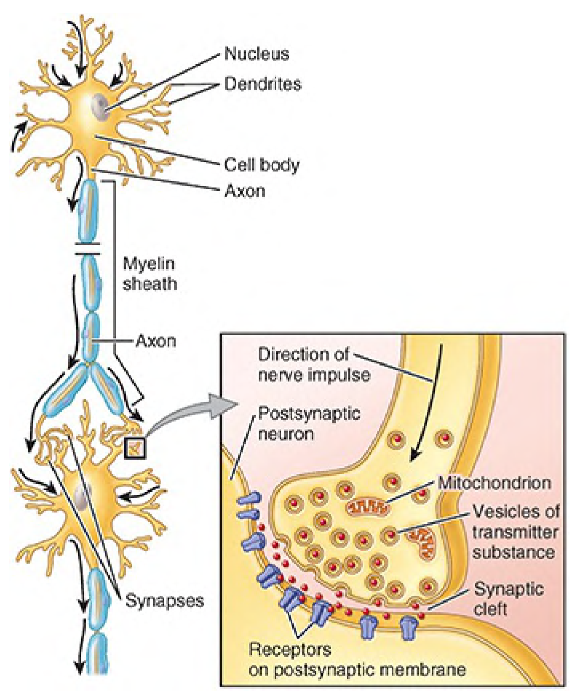


FIGURE 1.29. Multipolar motor neurons synapsing. A neuron influences other neurons at synapses. Inset: Detailed structure of an axodendritic synapse. Neurotransmitters diffuse across the synaptic cleft between the two cells and become bound to receptors.

Central Nervous System

The **central nervous system** (CNS) consists of the brain and spinal cord (Fig. 1.30). The principal roles of the CNS are to integrate and coordinate incoming and outgoing neural signals and to carry out higher mental functions, such as thinking and learning.

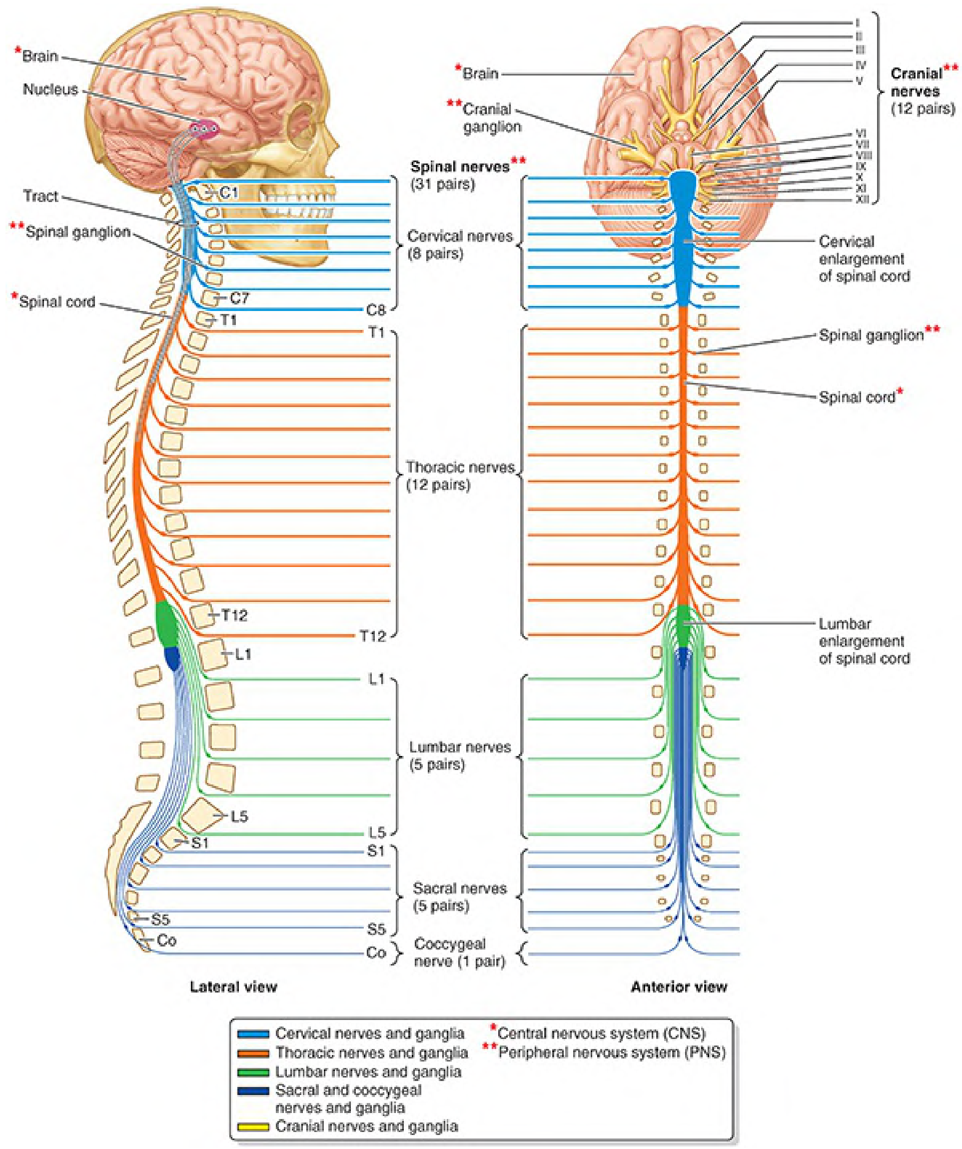


FIGURE 1.30. Basic organization of nervous system. The CNS consists of the brain and spinal cord. The PNS consists of nerves and ganglia. Nerves are either cranial nerves or spinal (segmental) nerves or derivatives of them. Except in the cervical region, each spinal nerve bears the same letter–numeral designation as the vertebra forming the superior boundary of its exit from the vertebral column. In the cervical region, each spinal nerve bears the same letter–numeral designation as the vertebra forming its inferior boundary. Spinal nerve C8 exits between vertebrae C7 and T1. The cervical and lumbar enlargements of the spinal cord occur in relationship to the innervation of the limbs.

A **nucleus** is a collection of nerve cell bodies in the CNS. A bundle of nerve fibers (axons) within the CNS connecting neighboring or distant nuclei of the cerebral cortex is a **tract**. The brain and spinal cord are composed of gray matter and white matter. The nerve cell bodies lie

within and constitute the **gray matter**; the interconnecting fiber tract systems form the **white matter** (Fig. 1.31). In transverse sections of the spinal cord, the gray matter appears roughly as an H-shaped area embedded in a matrix of white matter. The struts (supports) of the H are **horns**; hence, there are right and left posterior (dorsal) and anterior (ventral) gray horns.

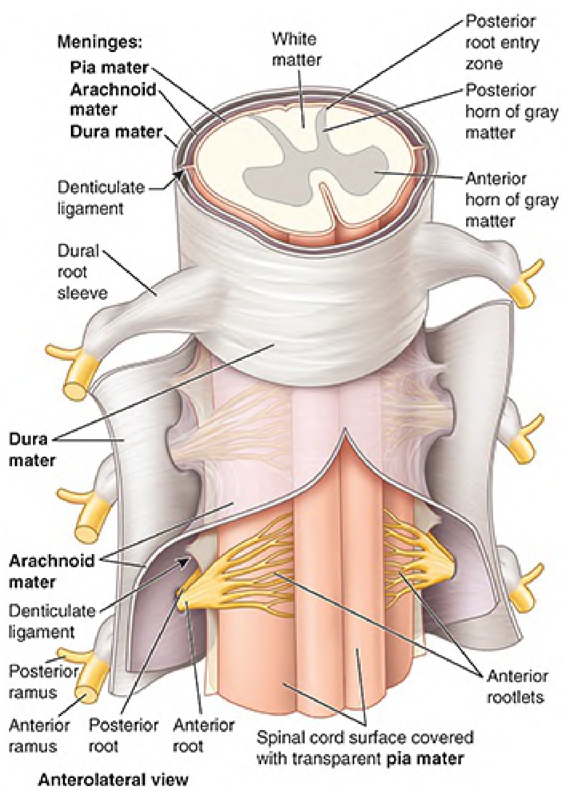


FIGURE 1.31. Spinal cord and spinal meninges. The dura mater and arachnoid mater are incised and reflected to show the posterior and anterior roots and the denticulate ligament (a bilateral, longitudinal, toothed thickening of the pia mater that anchors the cord in the center of the vertebral canal). The spinal cord is sectioned to show its horns of gray matter. The meninges extend along the nerve roots and then blend with the epineurium at the point where the posterior and anterior roots join, forming the dural root sleeves that enclose the sensory (posterior root) ganglia.

Three membranous layers—pia mater, arachnoid mater, and dura mater—collectively constitute the meninges. The meninges and the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) surround and protect the CNS. The brain and spinal cord are intimately covered on their outer surface by the innermost meningeal layer, a delicate, transparent covering, the pia mater. The CSF is located between the pia mater and the arachnoid mater. External to the pia mater and arachnoid mater is the thick, tough dura mater. The dura mater of the brain is intimately related to the internal aspect of the bone of the surrounding neurocranium (braincase); the dura mater of the spinal cord is separated from the surrounding bone of the vertebral column by a fat-filled epidural space.

Peripheral Nervous System

The **peripheral nervous system** (PNS) consists of nerve fibers and cell bodies outside the CNS that conduct impulses to or away from the CNS (Fig. 1.30). The PNS is organized into nerves

that connect the CNS with peripheral structures.

A **nerve fiber** consists of an axon, its neurolemma (G. neuron, nerve + G. lemma, husk), and surrounding endoneurial connective tissue (Fig. 1.32). The **neurolemma** consists of the cell membranes of Schwann cells that immediately surround the axon, separating it from other axons. In the PNS, the neurolemma may take two forms, creating two classes of nerve fibers:

1. The neurolemma of myelinated nerve fibers consists of Schwann cells specific to an individual axon, organized into a continuous series of enwrapping cells that form myelin.
2. The neurolemma of unmyelinated nerve fibers is composed of Schwann cells that do not make up such an apparent series; multiple axons are separately embedded within the cytoplasm of each cell. These Schwann cells do not produce myelin. Most fibers in cutaneous nerves (nerves supplying sensation to the skin) are unmyelinated.

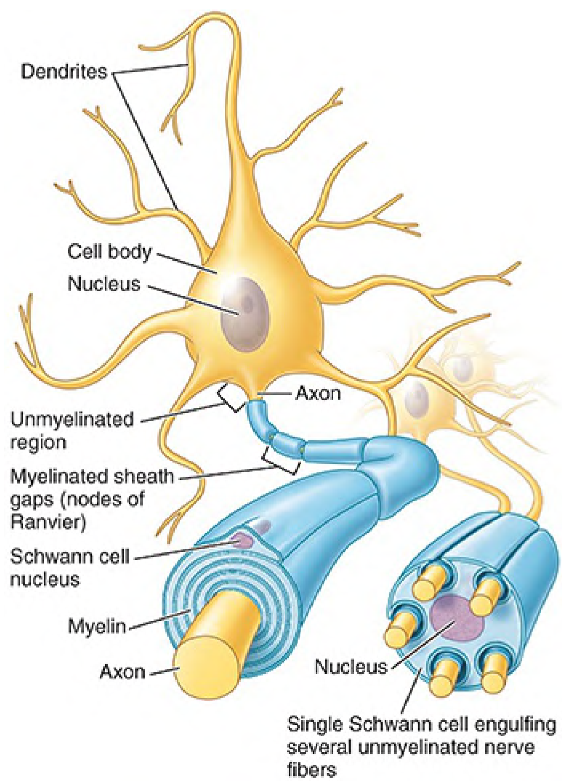


FIGURE 1.32. Myelinated and unmyelinated nerve fibers. Myelinated nerve fibers have a sheath composed of a continuous series of neurilemma (Schwann) cells that surround the axon and form a series of myelin segments. Multiple unmyelinated nerve fibers are individually embedded in a single neurolemma cell that does not produce myelin.

A **nerve** consists of the following components:

- A bundle of nerve fibers outside the CNS (or a “bundle of bundled fibers,” or fascicles, in the case of a larger nerve)
- The connective tissue coverings that surround and bind the nerve fibers and fascicles together
- The blood vessels (vasa nervorum) that nourish the nerve fibers and their coverings (Fig. 1.33)

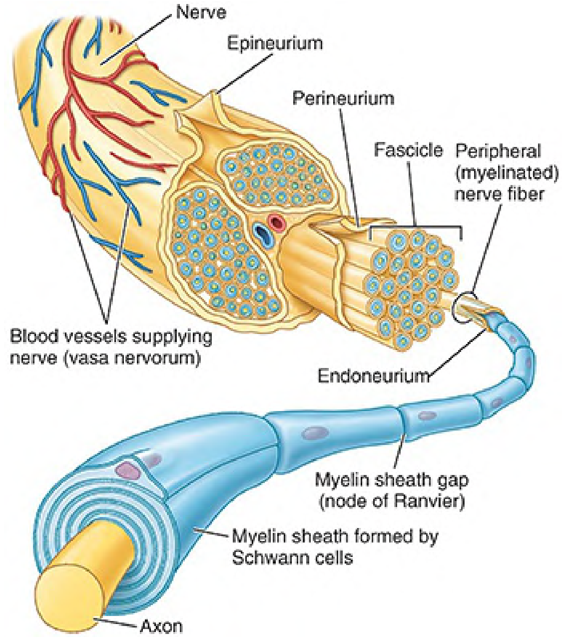


FIGURE 1.33. Arrangement and ensheathment of myelinated nerve fibers. Nerves consist of the bundles of nerve fibers, the layers of connective tissue binding them together, and the blood vessels (vasa nervorum) that serve them. All but the smallest nerves are arranged in bundles called fascicles.

Nerves are fairly strong and resilient because the nerve fibers are supported and protected by three connective tissue coverings:

1. **Endoneurium**, delicate connective tissue immediately surrounding the neurilemma cells and axons
2. **Perineurium**, a layer of dense connective tissue that encloses a fascicle of nerve fibers, providing an effective barrier against penetration of the nerve fibers by foreign substances
3. **Epineurium**, a thick connective tissue sheath that surrounds and encloses a bundle of fascicles, forming the outermost covering of the nerve; it includes fatty tissue, blood vessels, and lymphatics

Nerves are organized much like a telephone cable: The axons are like individual wires insulated by the neurolemma and endoneurium; the insulated wires are bundled by the perineurium, and the bundles are surrounded by the epineurium forming the cable’s outer wrapping (Fig. 1.33). It is important to distinguish between nerve fibers and nerves, which are sometimes depicted diagrammatically as being one and the same.

A collection of neuron cell bodies outside the CNS constitutes a **ganglion**. There are both motor (autonomic) and sensory ganglia.

TYPES OF NERVES

The PNS is anatomically and operationally continuous with the CNS (Fig. 1.30). Its **afferent (sensory) fibers** convey neural impulses to the CNS from the sense organs (e.g., the eyes) and from sensory receptors in various parts of the body (e.g., in the skin). Its **efferent (motor) fibers** convey neural impulses from the CNS to effector organs (muscles and glands).

Nerves are either cranial nerves or spinal nerves, or derivatives of them (Fig. 1.30):

- **Cranial nerves** exit the cranial cavity through foramina (openings) in the cranium (G. kranion, skull) and are identified by a descriptive name (e.g., "trochlear nerve") or a Roman numeral (e.g., "CN IV"). Only 11 of the 12 pairs of cranial nerves arise from the brain; the other pair (CN XI) arises from the superior part of the spinal cord.
- **Spinal (segmental) nerves** exit the vertebral column (spine) through intervertebral foramina. Spinal nerves arise in bilateral pairs from a specific segment of the spinal cord. The 31 spinal cord segments and the 31 pairs of nerves arising from them are identified by a letter and number (e.g., "T4") designating the region of the spinal cord and their superior-to-inferior order (C, cervical; T, thoracic; L, lumbar; S, sacral; Co, coccygeal).

Spinal Nerves. Spinal nerves initially arise from the spinal cord as **rootlets** (a detail commonly omitted from diagrams for the sake of simplicity); the rootlets converge to form two nerve roots (Fig. 1.34):

1. An **anterior (ventral) nerve root**, consisting of motor (efferent) fibers passing from nerve cell bodies in the anterior and lateral horns of spinal cord gray matter to effector organs located peripherally
2. A **posterior (dorsal) nerve root**, consisting of sensory (afferent) fibers from cell bodies in the spinal (sensory) or posterior (dorsal) root ganglion (commonly abbreviated in clinical use as "DRG") that extend peripherally to sensory endings and centrally to the posterior horn of spinal cord gray matter

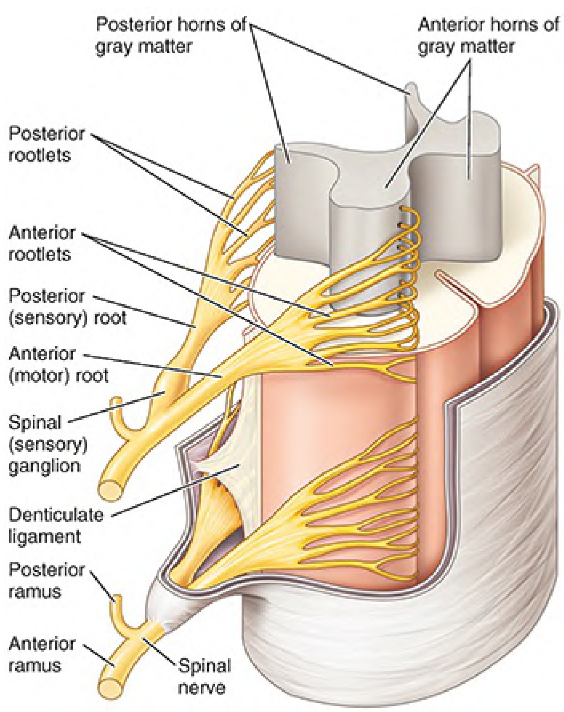


FIGURE 1.34. **Spinal cord gray matter, spinal roots, and spinal nerves.** The meninges are incised and reflected to show the H-shaped gray matter in the spinal cord and the posterior and anterior rootlets and roots of two spinal nerves. The posterior and anterior rootlets enter and leave the posterior and anterior gray horns, respectively. The posterior and anterior

nerve roots unite distal to the spinal ganglion to form a mixed spinal nerve, which immediately divides into posterior and anterior rami.

The posterior and anterior nerve roots unite, within or just proximal to the intervertebral foramen, to form a mixed (both motor and sensory) spinal nerve, which immediately divides into two rami (L., branches): a posterior (dorsal) ramus and an anterior (ventral) ramus. As branches of the mixed spinal nerve, the posterior and anterior rami carry both motor and sensory fibers, as do all their subsequent branches. The terms motor nerve and sensory nerve are almost always relative terms, referring to the majority of fiber types conveyed by that nerve. Nerves supplying muscles of the trunk or limbs (motor nerves) also contain about 40% sensory fibers, which convey pain and proprioceptive information. Conversely, cutaneous (sensory) nerves contain motor fibers, which serve sweat glands and the smooth muscle of blood vessels and hair follicles.

The relationship between nerves and skin and muscle is established during their initial development. The segmental structure and organization of humans is not as evident, certainly, as it is among the annelids, but it is quite evident during a period of development known as the somite period. After this early embryonic period, our segmental structure is most evident in the skeleton (vertebrae and ribs) and nerves and muscles of the thoracic region.

During the somite period (Fig. 1.35), the tissue that will give rise to muscle, bones, and other connective tissue—including the dermis of skin—takes on the appearance of a bilateral row of biscuit-like formations flanking our primitive spinal cord (neural tube). These formations are called **somites**:

- The medial sides of the somites become **sclerotomes**, cells of which exit the somite and migrate medially (Fig. 1.35A).
  - Ventrally migrating sclerotomal cells surround the notochord, forming the beginnings of the bodies of vertebrae.
  - Dorsally migrating sclerotomal cells surround the neural tube forming the beginnings of the neural arch of the vertebrae.
- The lateral aspect of the somites (**dermatomyotomes**) gives rise to the skeletal muscles and dermis of the skin.
  - Cells of the dermatomyotome that migrate posteriorly give rise to the intrinsic or epaxial (deep) muscles of the back and overlying dermis (Fig. 1.35B, C).
  - Cells that migrate anteriorly give rise to the hypaxial muscles of the anterolateral trunk and limbs and associated dermis.
- Nerves develop in bilateral pairs that serve the dermis- and muscle-forming tissue of the adjacent somites (Fig. 1.35A).
  - Motor neurons developing within the anterior neural tube send processes peripherally into the posterior and anterior regions of the dermatomyotome.
  - Sensory neurons developing within the neural crests send peripheral processes into these regions of the dermatomyotome and central processes into the posterior neural tube.
  - Somatic sensory and motor nerve fibers that are organized segmentally along the neural tube become parts of all spinal nerves and some cranial nerves.

- The clusters of sensory cell bodies derived from the neural crest, located outside the CNS, form sensory ganglia.
- The relationship between the nerves and the tissue derived from the dermatomyotome remains throughout life:
  - The unilateral area of skin supplied by a single (right or left member of a pair of) spinal nerves is called a **dermatome**.
  - The unilateral mass of muscle supplied by a single spinal nerve is called a **myotome**.

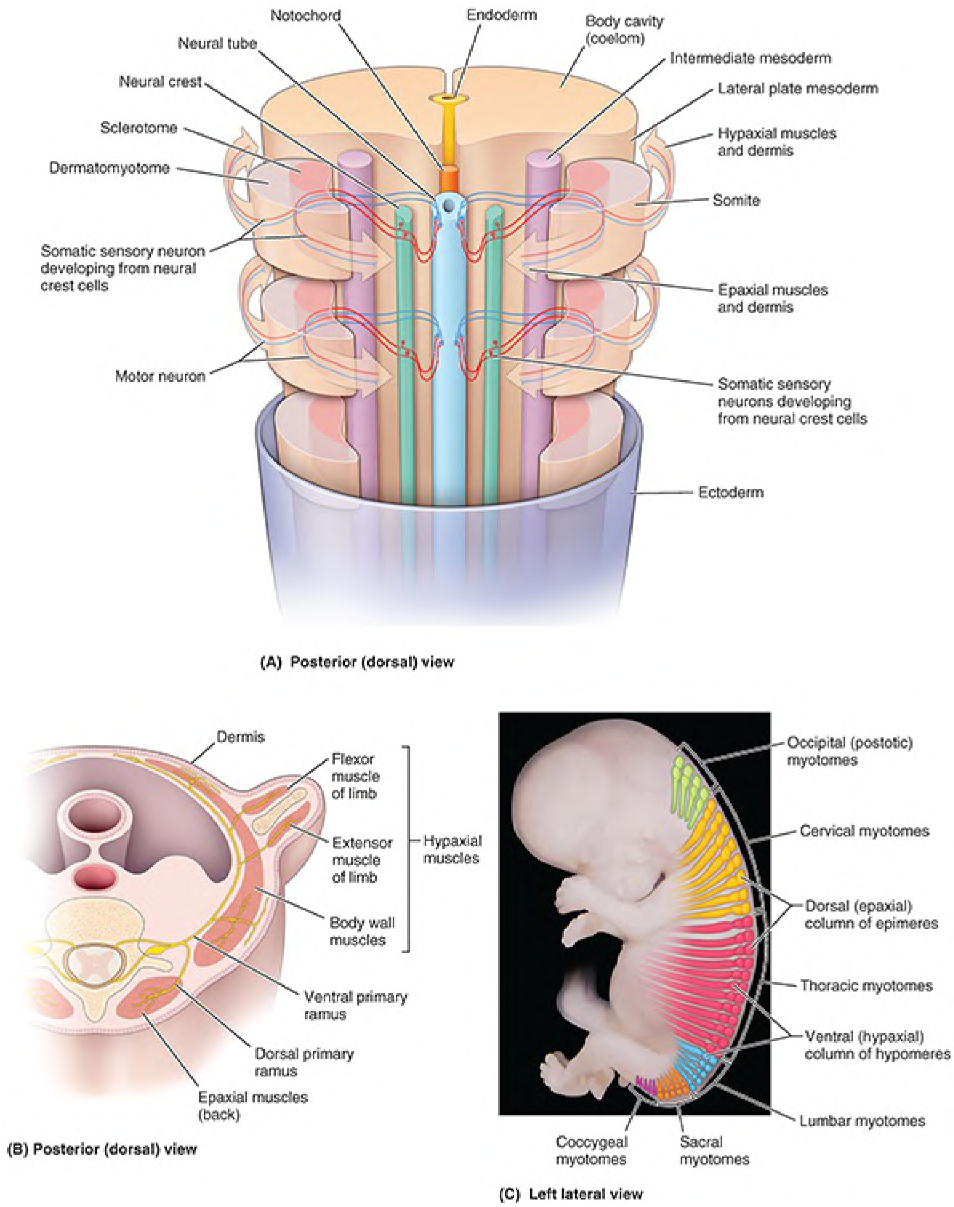


FIGURE 1.35. Dermatomes and myotomes. Schematic representation of the development of dermatomes (the unilateral area of skin) and myotomes (the unilateral portion of skeletal muscle) receiving innervation from single spinal (segmental) nerves. **A.** Formation of dermatomyotomes and initiation of epaxial and hypaxial growth during the mid-somite stage (25–28 days). **B.** Distribution of epaxial and hypaxial muscle and dermis in early limb bud stage (approximately 5 weeks). **C.** Segmental distribution of myotomes at 6 weeks. Fusion of myotomes extending into the limbs produces skeletal muscles with multisegmental innervation.

Throughout life, severing a spinal nerve will denervate the area of skin and mass of muscle it originally supplied.

From clinical studies of lesions of the posterior roots or spinal nerves, dermatome maps have been devised to indicate the typical pattern of innervation of the skin by specific spinal nerves (Fig. 1.36). However, a lesion of a single posterior root or spinal nerve would rarely result in numbness of the area of skin demarcated for that nerve in these maps because the fibers conveyed by adjacent spinal nerves overlap almost completely as they are distributed to the skin, providing a type of double coverage. The lines indicating dermatomes on dermatome maps would thus be better represented by smudges or gradations of color. Generally, at least two adjacent spinal nerves or posterior roots (as shown in Fig. 1.44B) must be interrupted to produce a discernible area of numbness.

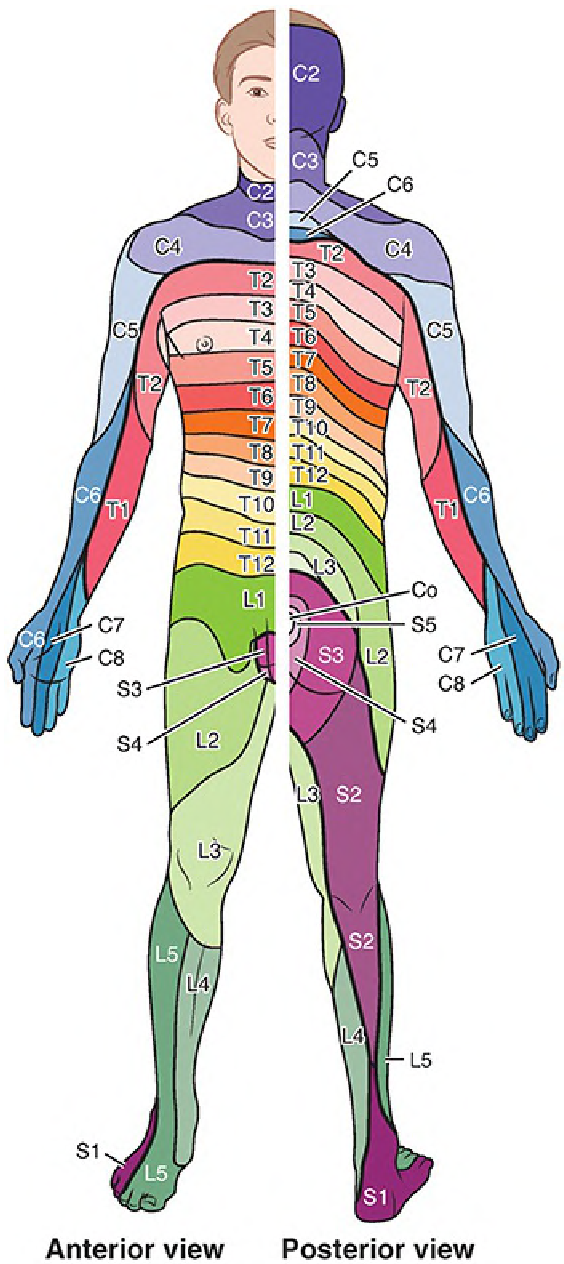


FIGURE 1.36. Dermatomes (segmental cutaneous innervation). Dermatome maps of the body are based on an accumulation of clinical findings following spinal nerve injuries. This map is based on the studies of Foerster (1933) and reflects both anatomical (actual) distribution or segmental innervation and clinical experience. Another popular but more schematic map is that of Keegan and Garrett (1948), which is appealing for its regular, more easily extrapolated pattern. Spinal nerve C1 lacks a significant afferent component and does not supply the skin; therefore, no C1 dermatome is depicted. Note that in the Foerster map, C5–T1 and L3–S1 are distributed almost entirely in the limbs (i.e., have little or no representation on the trunk).

As they emerge from the intervertebral foramina, spinal nerves are divided into two rami (Fig. 1.37; see Fig. 1.44B):

1. **Posterior (primary) rami of spinal nerves** supply nerve fibers to the synovial joints of the vertebral column, deep (epaxial) muscles of the back, and the overlying skin in a segmental

pattern. As a general rule, the posterior rami remain separate from each other (do not merge to form major somatic nerve plexuses).

2. **Anterior (primary) rami of spinal nerves** supply nerve fibers to the much larger remaining area, consisting of the skin and hypaxial muscles of the anterior and lateral regions of the trunk and the upper and lower limbs. The anterior rami that are distributed exclusively to the trunk generally remain separate from each other, also innervating muscles and skin in a segmental pattern (Figs. 1.38 and 1.39; see Fig. 1.44B). However, primarily in relationship to the innervation of the limbs, the majority of anterior rami merge with one or more adjacent anterior rami, forming the major somatic nerve plexuses (networks) in which their fibers intermingle and from which a new set of multisegmental peripheral nerves emerges (Figs. 1.39 and 1.40A, B). The anterior rami of spinal nerves participating in plexus formation contribute fibers to multiple peripheral nerves arising from the plexus (Fig. 1.40A); conversely, most peripheral nerves arising from the plexus contain fibers from multiple spinal nerves (Fig. 1.40B).

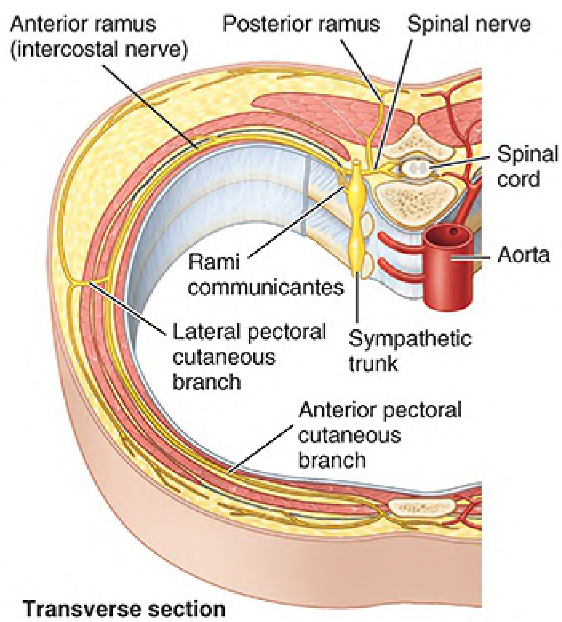


FIGURE 1.37. Distribution of spinal nerves. Almost as soon as they are formed by the merging of posterior and anterior roots, spinal nerves divide into anterior and posterior (primary) rami. Posterior rami are distributed to the synovial joints of the vertebral column, deep muscles of the back, and the overlying skin. The remaining anterolateral body wall, including the limbs, is supplied by anterior rami. Posterior rami and the anterior rami of spinal nerves T2–T12 generally do not merge with the rami of adjacent spinal nerves to form plexuses.

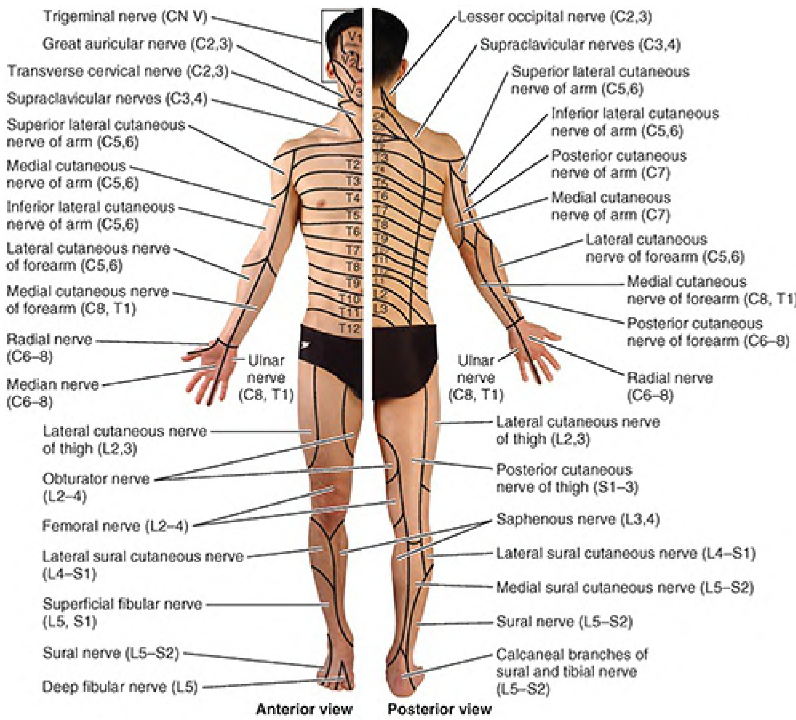


FIGURE 1.38. Distribution of peripheral cutaneous nerves. Maps of the cutaneous distribution of peripheral nerves are based on dissection and supported by clinical findings.

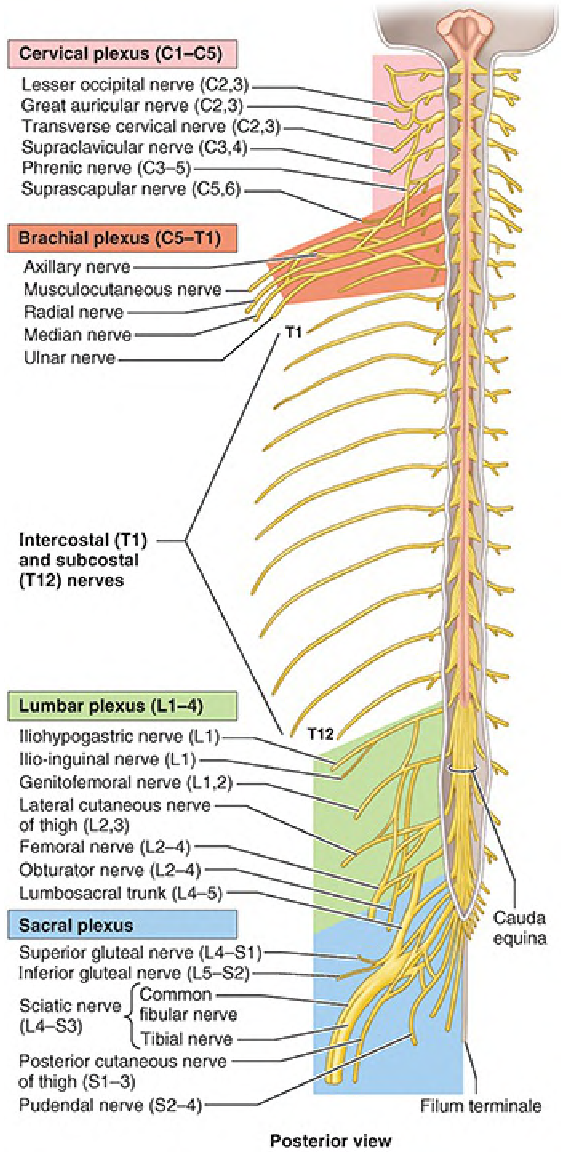


FIGURE 1.39. Anterior rami of spinal nerves and role in plexus formation. Although the posterior rami (not shown) generally remain separate from each other and follow a distinctly segmental pattern of distribution, most anterior rami (20 of 31 pairs) participate in the formation of plexuses, which are primarily involved in the innervation of the limbs. The anterior rami that are distributed only to the trunk generally remain separate, however, and follow a segmental distribution similar to that of the posterior rami.

Although the spinal nerves lose their identity as they split and merge in the plexus, the fibers arising from a specific spinal cord segment and conveyed from it by a single spinal nerve are ultimately distributed to one segmental dermatome, although they may reach it by means of a multisegmental peripheral nerve arising from the plexus that also conveys fibers to all or parts of other adjacent dermatomes (Fig. 1.40C).

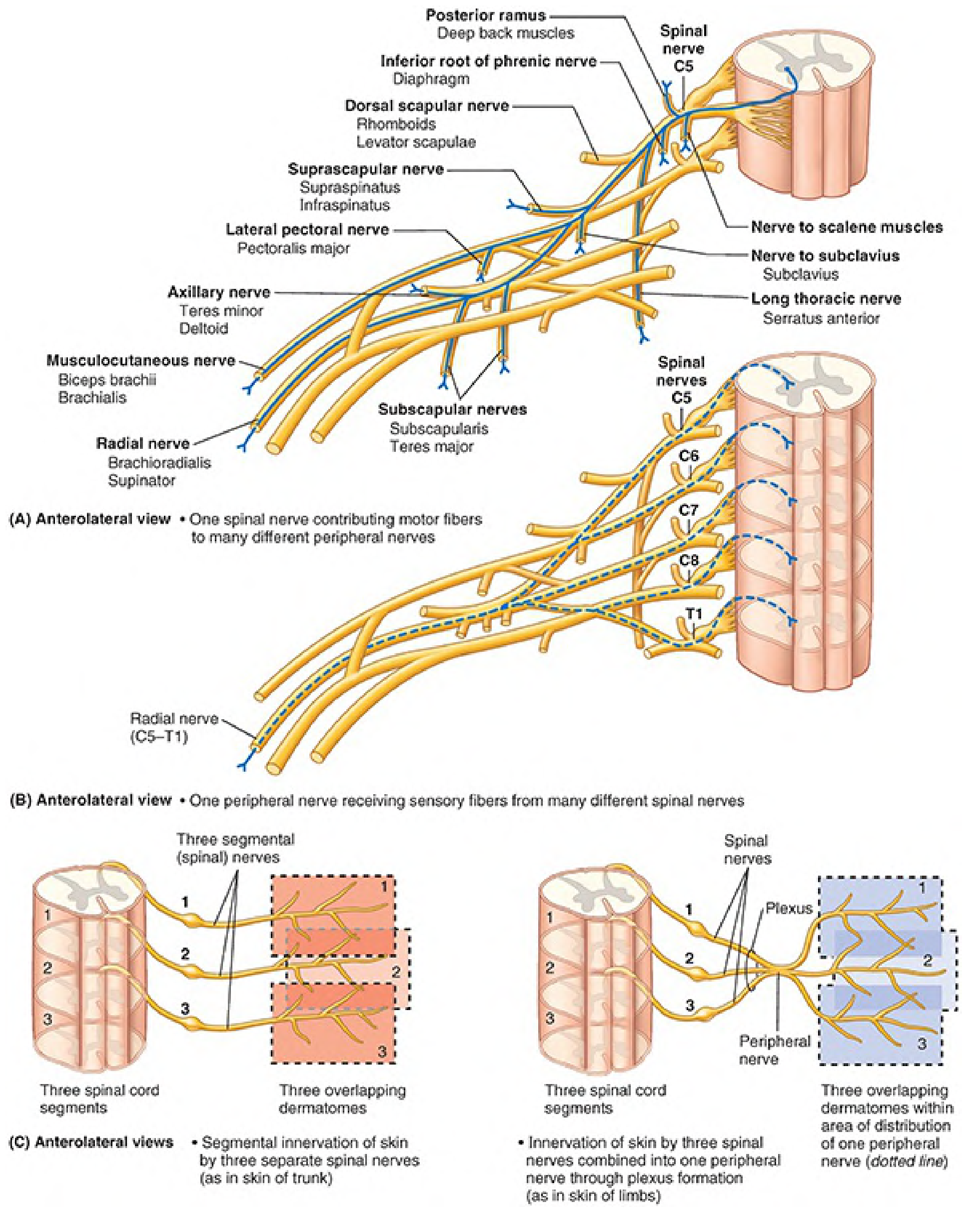


FIGURE 1.40. Plexus formation. Adjacent anterior rami merge to form plexuses in which their fibers are exchanged and redistributed, forming a new set of multisegmental peripheral (named) nerves. **A.** The fibers of a single spinal nerve entering the plexus are distributed to multiple branches of the plexus. **B.** The peripheral nerves derived from the plexus contain fibers from multiple spinal nerves. **C.** Although segmental nerves merge and lose their identity when plexus formation results in multisegmental peripheral nerves, the segmental (dermatomal) pattern of nerve fiber distribution remains.

It is therefore important to distinguish between the distribution of the fibers carried by spinal nerves (segmental innervation or distribution—i.e., dermatomes and myotomes labeled with a letter and a number, such as “T4”) and of the fibers carried by branches of a plexus (peripheral nerve innervation or distribution, labeled with the names of peripheral nerves, such as “the median nerve”) (Figs. 1.36 and 1.38). Mapping segmental innervation (dermatomes, determined by clinical experience) and mapping the distribution of peripheral nerves (determined by dissecting the branches of a named nerve distally) produce entirely different maps, except for

most of the trunk where, in the absence of plexus formation, segmental and peripheral distributions are the same. The overlapping in the cutaneous distribution of nerve fibers conveyed by adjacent spinal nerves also occurs in the cutaneous distribution of nerve fibers conveyed by adjacent peripheral nerves.

Cranial Nerves. As they arise from the CNS, some cranial nerves convey only sensory fibers, some only motor fibers, and some carry a mixture of both types of fibers (Fig. 1.41). Communication occurs between cranial nerves and between cranial nerves and upper cervical (spinal) nerves; thus, a nerve that initially conveys only motor fibers may receive sensory fibers distally in its course, and vice versa. Except for the first two (those involved in the senses of smell and sight), cranial nerves that convey sensory fibers into the brain bear sensory ganglia (similar to spinal or posterior root ganglia), where the cell bodies of the pseudounipolar fibers are located. Although, by definition, the term dermatome applies only to spinal nerves, similar areas of skin supplied by single cranial nerves can be identified and mapped. Unlike dermatomes, however, there is little overlap in the innervation of zones of skin supplied by cranial nerves.

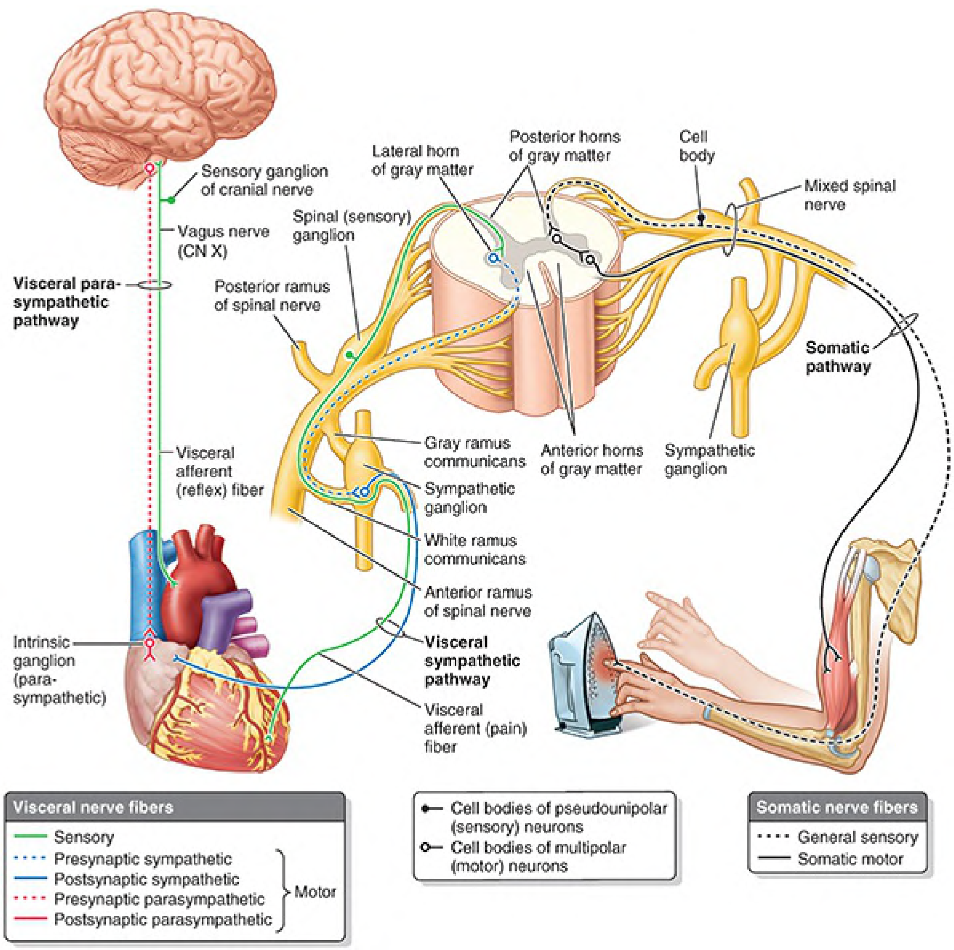


FIGURE 1.41. Somatic and visceral innervation via spinal, splanchnic, and cranial nerves. The somatic motor system permits voluntary and reflexive movement caused by contraction of skeletal muscles, such as occurs when one touches a hot iron.

SOMATIC AND VISCERAL FIBERS

The types of fibers conveyed by cranial or spinal nerves are as follows (Fig. 1.41):

- Somatic fibers
  - **General sensory fibers** (general somatic afferent [GSA] fibers) transmit sensations from the body to the CNS; they may be exteroceptive sensations from the skin (pain, temperature, touch, and pressure) or pain and **proprioceptive sensations** from muscles, tendons, and joints. Proprioceptive sensations are usually subconscious, providing information regarding joint position and the tension of tendons and muscles. This information is combined with input from the vestibular apparatus of the internal ear, resulting in awareness of the orientation of the body and limbs in space, independent of visual input.
  - **Somatic motor fibers** (general somatic efferent [GSE] fibers) transmit impulses to skeletal (voluntary) muscles.
- Visceral fibers
  - **Visceral sensory fibers** (general visceral afferent [GVA] fibers) transmit pain or subconscious visceral **reflex sensations** (information concerning distension, blood gas, and blood pressure levels, for example) from hollow organs and blood vessels to the CNS.
  - **Visceral motor fibers** (general visceral efferent [GVE] fibers) transmit impulses to smooth (involuntary) muscle, modified cardiac muscle, and glandular tissues. Two varieties of fibers, presynaptic and postsynaptic, work together to conduct impulses from the CNS to smooth muscle or glands.

Both types of sensory fibers—visceral sensory and general sensory—are processes of pseudounipolar neurons with cell bodies located outside of the CNS in spinal or cranial sensory ganglia (Figs. 1.41 and 1.42). The motor fibers of nerves are axons of multipolar neurons. The cell bodies of somatic motor and presynaptic visceral motor neurons are located in the gray matter of the spinal cord. Cell bodies of postsynaptic motor neurons are located outside the CNS in autonomic ganglia.

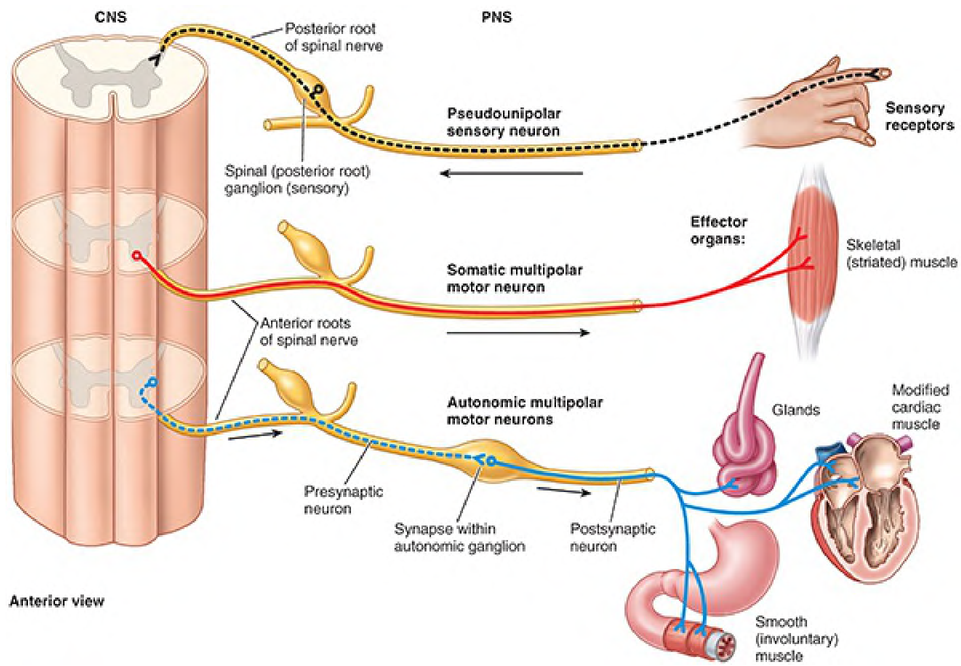


FIGURE 1.42. Neurons of PNS. Note the types of neurons involved in the somatic and visceral nervous systems, the general location of their cell bodies in relation to the CNS, and their receptors or effector organs.

In addition to the fiber types listed above, some cranial nerves also convey **special sensory fibers** for the special senses (smell, sight, hearing, balance, and taste). On the basis of the embryologic/phylogenetic derivation of certain muscles of the head and neck, some motor fibers conveyed by cranial nerves to striated muscle have traditionally been classified as "special visceral"; however, since the designation is confusing and not applied clinically, that term will not be used here. These fibers are occasionally designated as branchial motor, referring to muscle tissue derived from the pharyngeal arches in the embryo.

CLINICAL BOX

CENTRAL AND PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEMS

Damage to CNS

When the brain or spinal cord is damaged, the injured axons do not recover in most circumstances. Their proximal stumps begin to regenerate, sending sprouts into the area of the lesion; however, this growth is blocked by astrocyte proliferation at the injury site, and the axonal sprouts are soon retracted. As a result, permanent disability follows destruction of a tract in the CNS.

Rhizotomy

The posterior and anterior roots are the only sites where the motor and sensory fibers of spinal nerve are segregated. Therefore, only at these locations can the surgeon selectively section either functional element for the relief of intractable pain or spastic paralysis (rhizotomy).

Nerve Degeneration and Ischemia of Nerves

Although new findings are emerging, as a rule, neurons do not proliferate in the adult nervous system, except in a few specific areas (e.g., those related to the sense of smell in the olfactory epithelium and the hippocampus). Therefore, neurons destroyed through disease or trauma are not replaced (Mihailoff & Haines, 2018). When nerves are stretched, crushed, or severed, their axons degenerate mainly distal to the lesion because they depend on their nerve cell bodies for survival. If the axons are damaged but the cell bodies are intact, regeneration and return of function may occur. The chance of survival is best when a nerve is compressed. Pressure on a nerve commonly causes paresthesia, the pins-and-needles sensation that occurs when one sits too long with the legs crossed, for example.

A crushing nerve injury damages or kills the axons distal to the injury site; however, the nerve cell bodies usually survive, and the nerve's connective tissue coverings remain intact. No surgical repair is needed for this type of nerve injury because the intact connective tissue coverings guide the growing axons to their destinations. Regeneration is less likely to occur in a severed nerve. Sprouting occurs at the proximal ends of the axons, but the growing axons may not reach their distal targets. A cutting nerve injury requires surgical intervention because regeneration of the axon requires apposition of the cut ends by sutures through the epineurium. The individual nerve bundles are realigned as accurately as possible. Anterograde (wallerian) degeneration is the degeneration of axons detached from their cell bodies. The degenerative process involves the axon and its myelin sheath, even though this sheath is not part of the injured neuron.

Compromising a nerve's blood supply for a long period by compression of the vasa nervorum (see Fig. 1.33) can also cause nerve degeneration. Prolonged ischemia (inadequate blood supply) of a nerve may result in damage no less severe than that produced by crushing or even cutting the nerve. The Saturday night syndrome, named after an intoxicated individual who "passes out" with a limb dangling across the arm of a chair or the edge of a bed, is an example of a more serious, often permanent, paresthesia. This condition can also result from the sustained use of a tourniquet during a surgical procedure. If the ischemia is not too prolonged, temporary numbness or paresthesia results. Transient paresthesias are familiar to anyone who has had an injection of anesthetic for dental repairs.

Somatic Nervous System

The somatic nervous system, composed of somatic parts of the CNS and PNS, provides sensory

and motor innervation to all parts of the body (G. soma), except the viscera in the body cavities, smooth muscle, and glands (Figs. 1.41 and 1.42). The somatic sensory system transmits sensations of touch, pain, temperature, and position from sensory receptors. Most of these sensations reach conscious levels (i.e., we are aware of them). The somatic motor system innervates only skeletal muscle, stimulating voluntary and reflexive movement by causing the muscle to contract, as occurs in response to touching a hot iron.

Autonomic Nervous System

The **autonomic nervous system (ANS)**, classically described as the visceral nervous system or visceral motor system (Figs. 1.41 and 1.42), consists of motor fibers that stimulate smooth (involuntary) muscle, modified cardiac muscle (the intrinsic stimulating and conducting tissue of the heart), and glandular (secretory) cells. However, the visceral efferent fibers of the ANS are accompanied by visceral afferent fibers. As the afferent component of autonomic reflexes and in conducting visceral pain impulses, these visceral afferent fibers also play a role in the regulation of visceral function.

The efferent nerve fibers and ganglia of the ANS are organized into two systems or divisions: the sympathetic (thoracolumbar) division and the parasympathetic (craniosacral) division. Unlike sensory and somatic motor innervation, in which the passage of impulses between the CNS and the sensory ending or effector organ involves a single neuron, in both divisions of the ANS, conduction of impulses from the CNS to the effector organ involves a series of two multipolar neurons (Fig. 1.42). The nerve cell body of the first **presynaptic (preganglionic) neuron** is located in the gray matter of the CNS. Its fiber (axon) synapses only on the cell body of a **postsynaptic (postganglionic) neuron**, the second neuron in the series. The cell bodies of these second neurons are located outside the CNS in autonomic ganglia, with fibers terminating on the effector organ (smooth muscle, modified cardiac muscle, or glands).

The anatomical distinction between the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions of the ANS is based primarily on

1. the location of the presynaptic cell bodies
2. which nerves conduct the presynaptic fibers from the CNS

A functional distinction of pharmacological importance for medical practice is that the postsynaptic neurons of the two divisions generally liberate different neurotransmitter substances: norepinephrine by the sympathetic division (except in the case of sweat glands) and acetylcholine by the parasympathetic division.

SYMPATHETIC (THORACOLUMBAR) DIVISION OF AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

The cell bodies of the presynaptic neurons of the sympathetic division of the ANS are found in only one location: the **intermediolateral cell columns** (IMLs) or nuclei of the spinal cord (Fig. 1.43). The paired (right and left) IMLs are a part of the gray matter of the thoracic (T1–12) and

the upper lumbar (L1–L2 or 3) segments of the spinal cord (hence the alternate name “thoracolumbar” for the division). In transverse sections of this part of the spinal cord, the IMLs appear as small lateral horns of the H-shaped gray matter, looking somewhat like an extension of the cross-bar of the H between the posterior and the anterior horns. The IMLs are organized somatotopically (i.e., arranged like the body, the cell bodies involved with innervation of the head located superiorly, and those involved with innervation of the pelvic viscera and lower limbs located inferiorly). Thus, it is possible to deduce the location of the presynaptic sympathetic cell bodies involved in innervation of a specific part of the body.

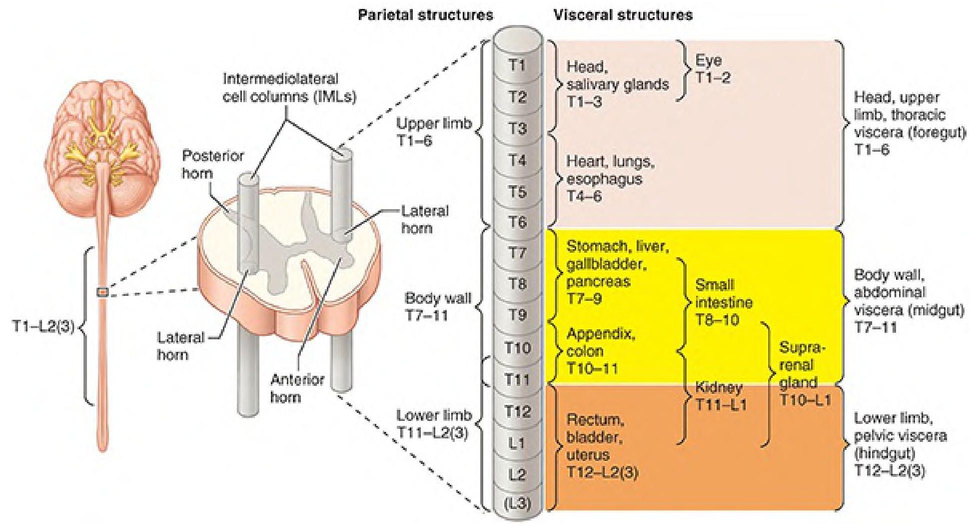


FIGURE 1.43. Intermediolateral cell columns. Each IML or nucleus constitutes the lateral horn of gray matter of spinal cord segments T1–L2 or L3 and consists of the cell bodies of the presynaptic neurons of the sympathetic nervous system, which are somatotopically arranged.

The cell bodies of postsynaptic neurons of the sympathetic nervous system occur in two locations, the paravertebral and prevertebral ganglia (Fig. 1.44):

- **Paravertebral ganglia** are linked to form right and left sympathetic trunks (chains) on each side of the vertebral column and extend essentially the length of this column. The superior paravertebral ganglion (the superior cervical ganglion of each sympathetic trunk) lies at the base of the cranium. The ganglion impar forms inferiorly where the two trunks unite at the level of the coccyx.
- **Prevertebral ganglia** are in the plexuses that surround the origins of the main branches of the abdominal aorta (for which they are named), such as the two large celiac ganglia that surround the origin of the celiac trunk (a major artery arising from the aorta).

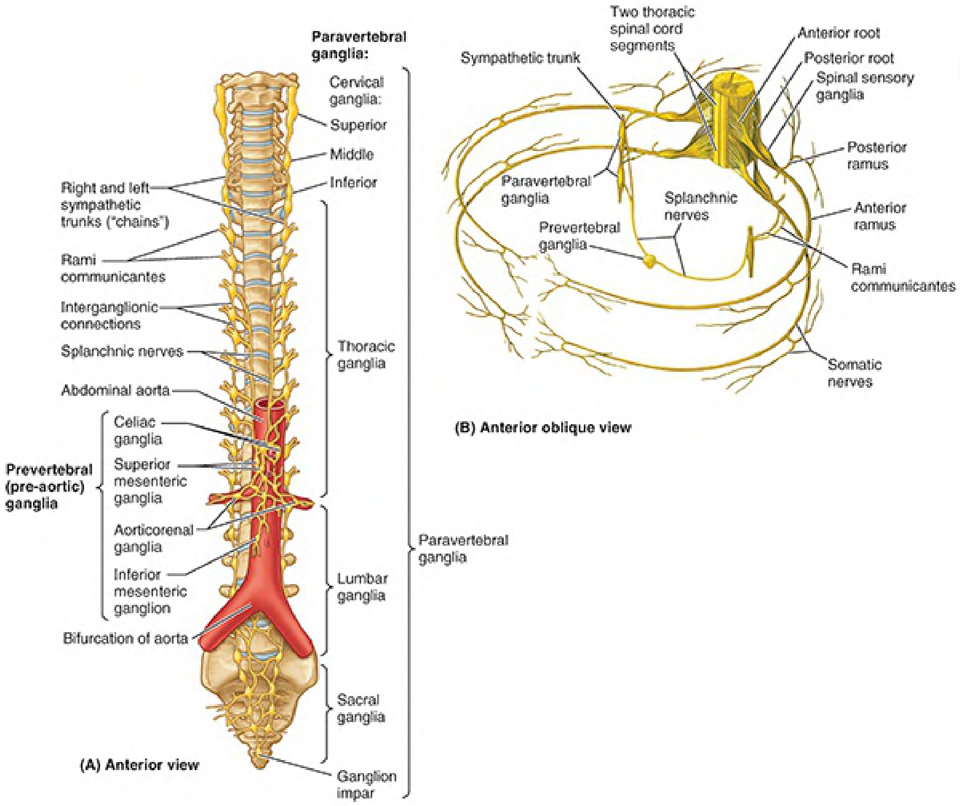


FIGURE 1.44. Ganglia of sympathetic nervous system. In the sympathetic nervous system, cell bodies of postsynaptic neurons occur either in the paravertebral ganglia of the sympathetic trunks or in the prevertebral ganglia that occur mainly in relationship to the origins of the main branches of the abdominal aorta. Prevertebral ganglia are specifically involved in the innervation of abdominopelvic viscera. The cell bodies of postsynaptic neurons distributed to the remainder of the body occur in the paravertebral ganglia. **A.** Sympathetic ganglia in relationship to vertebral column. **B.** Sympathetic ganglia of two adjacent thoracic spinal cord and spinal nerve levels.

Because they are motor fibers, the axons of presynaptic neurons leave the spinal cord through anterior roots and enter the anterior rami of spinal nerves T1–L2 or L3 (Figs. 1.45 and 1.46). Almost immediately after entering, all the presynaptic sympathetic fibers leave the anterior rami of these spinal nerves and pass to the sympathetic trunks through **white rami communicantes** (communicating branches). Within the sympathetic trunks, presynaptic fibers follow one of four possible courses:

1. Ascend in the sympathetic trunk to synapse with a postsynaptic neuron of a higher paravertebral ganglion
2. Descend in the sympathetic trunk to synapse with a postsynaptic neuron of a lower paravertebral ganglion
3. Enter and synapse immediately with a postsynaptic neuron of the paravertebral ganglion at that level
4. Pass through the sympathetic trunk without synapsing, continuing through an abdominopelvic splanchnic nerve (a branch of the trunk involved in innervating abdominopelvic viscera) to reach the prevertebral ganglia

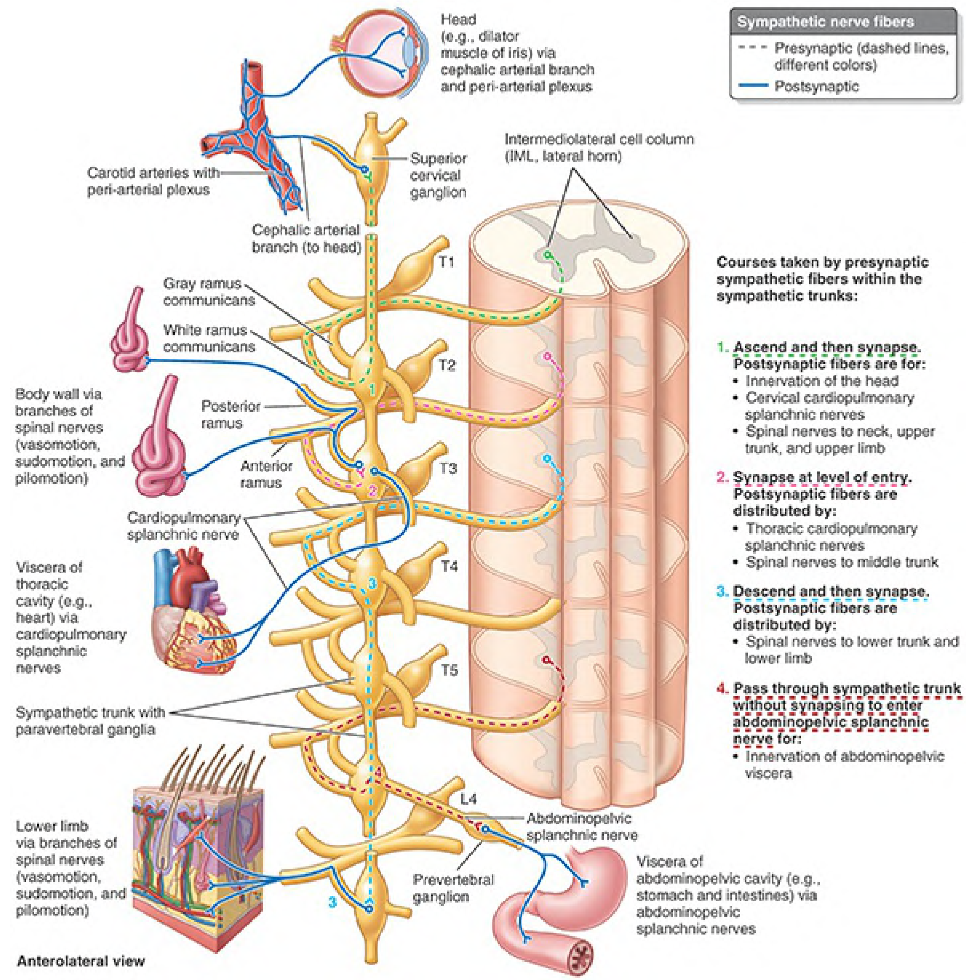


FIGURE 1.45. Courses taken by sympathetic motor fibers. All presynaptic fibers follow the same course until they reach the sympathetic trunks. In the trunks, they follow one of four possible courses. Fibers involved in providing sympathetic innervation to the body wall and limbs or viscera above the level of the diaphragm follow paths 1–3 to synapse in the paravertebral ganglia of the sympathetic trunks. Fibers involved in innervating abdominopelvic viscera follow path 4 to prevertebral ganglion via abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves.

Presynaptic sympathetic fibers that provide autonomic innervation within the head, neck, body wall, limbs, and thoracic cavity follow one of the first three courses, synapsing within the paravertebral ganglia. Presynaptic sympathetic fibers innervating viscera within the abdominopelvic cavity follow the fourth course.

Postsynaptic sympathetic fibers greatly outnumber the presynaptic fibers; each presynaptic sympathetic fiber synapses with 30 or more postsynaptic fibers. Those postsynaptic sympathetic fibers, destined for distribution within the neck, body wall, and limbs, pass from the paravertebral ganglia of the sympathetic trunks to adjacent anterior rami of spinal nerves through **gray rami communicantes** (Fig. 1.46). By this means, they enter all branches of all 31 pairs of spinal nerves, including the posterior rami.

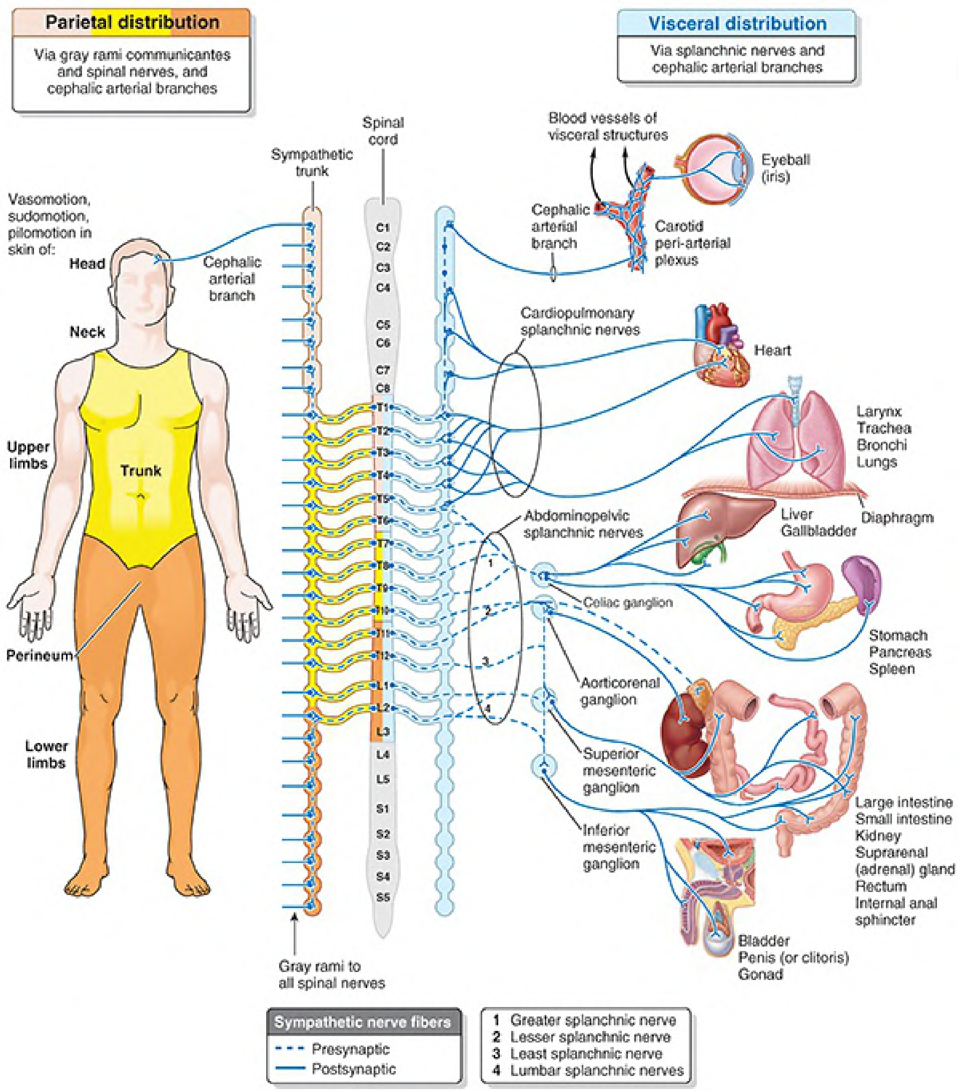


FIGURE 1.46. Sympathetic (thoracolumbar) division of ANS. Peripheral sympathetic innervation begins in the central spinal cord (IML T1–L2–L3) and spreads out via the sympathetic trunk, spinal nerves, and cephalic arterial rami to reach all vascularized parts of the body. Postsynaptic sympathetic fibers exit from the sympathetic trunks by different means, depending on their destination: Those destined for parietal distribution within the neck, body wall, and limbs pass from the sympathetic trunks to adjacent anterior rami of all spinal nerves through gray communicating branches (L. rami communicantes) and subsequently to all branches of all spinal nerves; those destined for the head pass from cervical ganglia by means of cephalic arterial rami to form a carotid periarterial plexus; and those destined for viscera of the thoracic cavity (e.g., the heart) pass through cardiopulmonary splanchnic nerves. Presynaptic sympathetic fibers involved in the innervation of viscera of the abdominopelvic cavity (e.g., the stomach) pass through the sympathetic trunks to the prevertebral ganglia by means of abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves. Postsynaptic fibers from the prevertebral ganglia form periarterial plexuses, which follow branches of the abdominal aorta to reach their destination.

The postsynaptic sympathetic fibers stimulate contraction of the blood vessels (vasomotion) and arrector muscles associated with hairs (pilomotion, resulting in “goose bumps”) and to cause sweating (sudomotion). Postsynaptic sympathetic fibers that perform these functions in the head (plus innervation of the dilator muscle of the iris—dilator pupillae) all have their cell bodies in the superior cervical ganglion at the superior end of the sympathetic trunk. They pass from the ganglion by means of a **cephalic arterial ramus** (branch) to form peri-arterial plexuses of

nerves, which follow the branches of the carotid arteries, or they may pass directly to nearby cranial nerves, to reach their destination in the head (Maklad et al., 2001).

Splanchnic nerves convey visceral efferent (autonomic) and afferent fibers to and from the viscera of the body cavities. Postsynaptic sympathetic fibers destined for the viscera of the thoracic cavity (e.g., the heart, lungs, and esophagus) pass through **cardiopulmonary splanchnic nerves** to enter the cardiac, pulmonary, and esophageal plexuses (Figs. 1.45 and 1.46). The presynaptic sympathetic fibers involved in the innervation of viscera of the abdominopelvic cavity (e.g., the stomach and intestines) pass to the prevertebral ganglia through **abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves** (including the greater, lesser, least thoracic, and lumbar splanchnic nerves) (Figs. 1.45, 1.46, and 1.47). All presynaptic sympathetic fibers of the abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves, except those involved in innervating the suprarenal (adrenal) glands, synapse in prevertebral ganglia. The postsynaptic fibers from the prevertebral ganglia form periarterial plexuses, which follow branches of the abdominal aorta to reach their destination.

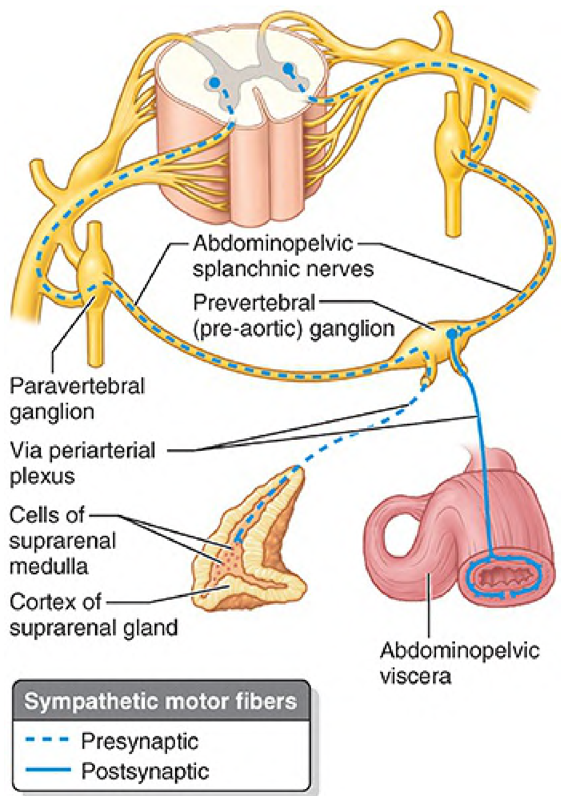


FIGURE 1.47. Sympathetic supply to medulla of suprarenal (adrenal) gland. The sympathetic supply to the suprarenal gland is exceptional. The secretory cells of the medulla are postsynaptic sympathetic neurons that lack axons or dendrites. Consequently, the suprarenal medulla is supplied directly by presynaptic sympathetic neurons. The neurotransmitters produced by medullary cells are released into the bloodstream to produce a widespread sympathetic response.

Some presynaptic sympathetic fibers pass through the celiac prevertebral ganglia without synapsing, continuing to terminate directly on cells of the medulla of the suprarenal gland (Fig. 1.47). The suprarenal medullary cells function as a special type of postsynaptic neuron that,

instead of releasing their neurotransmitter substance onto the cells of a specific effector organ, release it into the bloodstream to circulate throughout the body, producing a widespread sympathetic response. Thus, the sympathetic innervation of this gland is exceptional.

As described earlier, postsynaptic sympathetic fibers are components of virtually all branches of all spinal nerves. By this means and via periarterial plexuses, they extend to and innervate all the body's blood vessels (the sympathetic system's primary function) as well as sweat glands, arrector muscles of hairs, and visceral structures. Thus, the sympathetic nervous system reaches virtually all parts of the body, with the rare exception of such avascular tissues as cartilage and nails. Because the two sets of sympathetic ganglia (paravertebral and prevertebral) are centrally placed in the body and are close to the midline (hence relatively close to the spinal cord), in this division, the presynaptic fibers are relatively short, whereas the postsynaptic fibers are relatively long, having to extend to all parts of the body.

PARASYMPATHETIC (CRANIOSACRAL) DIVISION OF AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

Presynaptic parasympathetic nerve cell bodies are located in two sites within the CNS, and their fibers exit by two routes. This arrangement accounts for the alternate name "craniosacral" for the parasympathetic division of the ANS (Fig. 1.48):

- In the gray matter of the brainstem, the fibers exit the CNS within cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X; these fibers constitute the **cranial parasympathetic outflow**.
- In the gray matter of the sacral segments of the spinal cord (S2–S4), the fibers exit the CNS through the anterior roots of sacral spinal nerves S2–S4 and the pelvic splanchnic nerves that arise from their anterior rami; these fibers constitute the **sacral parasympathetic outflow**.

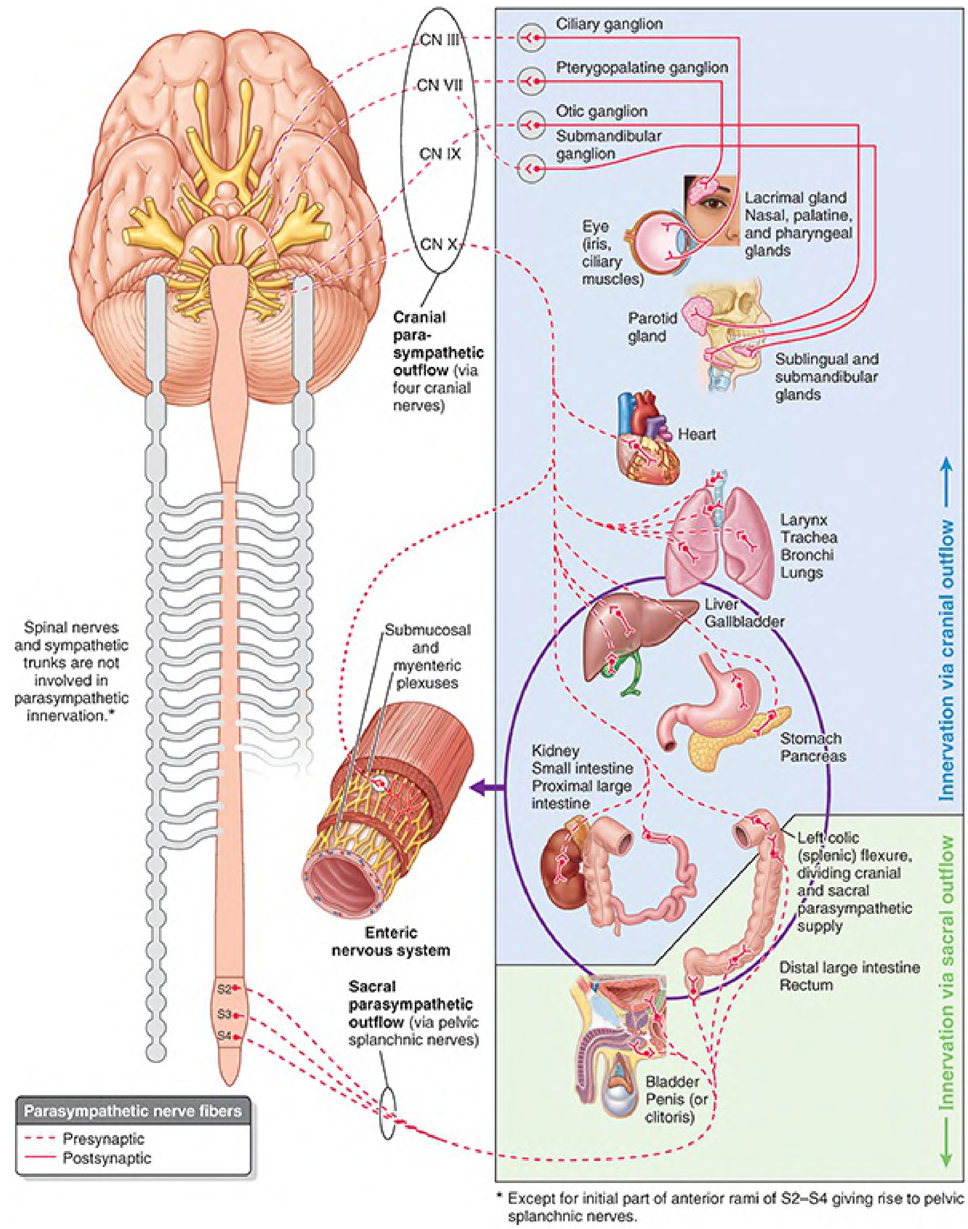


FIGURE 1.48. Parasympathetic (craniosacral) division of ANS. Presynaptic parasympathetic nerve cell bodies are located in opposite ends of the CNS, and their fibers exit by two different routes: (1) in the gray matter of the brainstem, with fibers exiting the CNS within cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X, and (2) in the gray matter of the sacral (S2–S4) segments of the spinal cord, with fibers exiting the CNS via the anterior roots of spinal nerves S2–S4 and the pelvic splanchnic nerves that arise from their anterior rami. The cranial outflow provides parasympathetic innervation of the head, neck, and most of the trunk; the sacral outflow provides the parasympathetic innervation of the terminal GI tract and pelvic viscera. The postsynaptic parasympathetic neurons of the abdominal GI tract are components of the enteric nervous system.

Not surprisingly, the cranial outflow provides parasympathetic innervation of the head, and the sacral outflow provides the parasympathetic innervation of the pelvic viscera. However, in terms of the innervation of thoracic and abdominal viscera, the cranial outflow through the vagus nerve (CN X) is dominant. It provides innervation to all thoracic viscera and most of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract from the esophagus through most of the large intestine (to its left colic

flexure).

The sacral outflow to the GI tract supplies only the descending and sigmoid colon and rectum.

Regardless of the extensive influence of its cranial outflow, the parasympathetic system is much more restricted than the sympathetic system in its distribution. The parasympathetic system distributes only to the head, visceral cavities of the trunk, and erectile tissues of the external genitalia. With the exception of the latter, it does not reach the body wall or limbs, and except for the initial parts of the anterior rami of spinal nerves S2–S4, its fibers are not components of spinal nerves or their branches.

Four discrete pairs of parasympathetic ganglia occur in the head. Elsewhere, presynaptic parasympathetic fibers synapse with postsynaptic cell bodies, which occur singly in or on the wall of the target organ (**intrinsic** or **enteric ganglia**). Consequently, in this division, most presynaptic fibers are very long, extending from the CNS to the effector organ, whereas the postsynaptic fibers are very short, running from a ganglion located near or embedded in the effector organ.

ENTERIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

The motor neurons that have been identified as the postsynaptic parasympathetic neurons of the GI tract are now known to play a much more sophisticated role than merely receiving and passing on input from presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to smooth muscles and glands. These motor neurons are major components of the enteric nervous system (ENS), increasingly identified as a third component of the visceral motor system or even a "second brain" due to its complexity, integrative function, and ability to function autonomously, without connection to the CNS via the other divisions of the ANS or extrinsic visceral afferents.

The ENS consists of two interconnected plexuses within the walls of the GI tract: the myenteric plexus of the wall musculature and the submucosal plexus, deep to and serving the gut lining or mucosa (Fig. 1.48, inset). In addition to the motor neurons, which are extensively interconnected both directly and via interneurons, the plexus includes intrinsic primary afferent neurons that receive local input and stimulate the motor neurons, forming local reflex circuitry that is intrinsically integrates exocrine and endocrine secretion, vasomotion, micromotility, and immune activity of the gut. This local activity is only modulated by the input from the extrinsic parasympathetic and sympathetic fibers. More detailed information about the enteric nervous system is provided in Chapter 5, Abdomen.

FUNCTIONS OF DIVISIONS OF AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

Although both sympathetic and parasympathetic systems innervate involuntary (and often affect the same) structures, they have different, usually contrasting yet coordinated, effects (Figs. 1.46 and 1.48). In general, the sympathetic system is a catabolic (energy-expending) system that enables the body to deal with stresses, such as when preparing the body for the fight-or-flight response. The parasympathetic system is primarily a homeostatic or anabolic (energy-conserving) system, promoting the quiet and orderly processes of the body, such as those that allow the body to feed and assimilate. Table 1.2 summarizes the specific functions of the ANS

and its divisions.

TABLE 1.2. FUNCTIONS OF AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM (ANS)

Organ, Tract, or System		Effect of Sympathetic Stimulation[a]	Effect of Parasympathetic Stimulation[b]
Eyes	Pupil Ciliary body	Dilates pupil (admits more light for increased acuity at a distance)	Constricts pupil (protects pupil from excessively bright light) Contracts ciliary muscle, allowing lens to thicken for near vision (accommodation)
Skin	Arrector muscles of hair Peripheral blood vessels Sweat glands	Causes hairs to stand on end ("gooseflesh" or "goose bumps") Vasoconstricts (blanching of skin, lips, and turning fingertips blue) Promotes sweating[d]	No effect (does not reach)[c] No effect (does not reach)[c] No effect (does not reach)[c]
Other glands	Lacrimal glands Salivary glands	Slightly decreases secretion[e] Secretion decreases, becomes thicker, more viscouse	Promotes secretion Promotes abundant, watery secretion
Heart		Increases the rate and strength of contraction; dilates coronary vessels[e]	Decreases the rate and strength of contraction (conserving energy); promotes constriction of coronary vessels in relation to reduced demand
Lungs		Inhibits effect of parasympathetic system, resulting in bronchodilation and reduced secretion, allowing for maximum air exchange	Constricts bronchi (conserving energy) and promotes bronchial secretion
Digestive tract		Inhibits peristalsis and constricts blood vessels to digestive tract so that blood is available to skeletal muscle; contracts internal anal sphincter to aid fecal continence	Promotes peristalsis and secretion of digestive juices Contracts the rectum, inhibits the internal anal sphincter to cause defecation
Liver and gallbladder		Promotes breakdown of glycogen to glucose (for increased energy)	Promotes building/conservation of glycogen; increases secretion of bile
Urinary tract		Vasoconstriction of renal vessels slows urine formation; internal sphincter of bladder contracts to maintain urinary continence and to prevent retrograde ejaculation	Inhibits contraction of the internal sphincter of the bladder, contracts detrusor muscle of the bladder wall causing urination
Genital system		Causes ejaculation and vasoconstriction resulting in remission of erection	Produces engorgement (erection) of erectile tissues of the external genitals
Suprarenal medulla		Release of adrenaline into blood	No effect (does not innervate)

[a]In general, the effects of sympathetic stimulation are catabolic, preparing body for the fight-or-flight response.

[b]In general, the effects of parasympathetic stimulation are anabolic, promoting normal function and conserving energy.

[c]The parasympathetic system is restricted in its distribution to the head, neck, and body cavities (except for erectile tissues of genitalia); otherwise, parasympathetic fibers are never found in the body wall and limbs. Sympathetic fibers, by comparison, are

distributed to all vascularized portions of the body.

[d]With the exception of the sweat glands, glandular secretion is parasympathetically stimulated.

[e]With the exception of the coronary arteries, vasoconstriction is sympathetically stimulated; the effects of sympathetic stimulation on glands (other than sweat glands) are the indirect effects of vasoconstriction.

The primary function of the sympathetic system is to regulate blood vessels. This is accomplished by several means having different effects. Blood vessels throughout the body are tonically innervated by sympathetic nerves, maintaining a resting state of moderate vasoconstriction. In most vascular beds, an increase in sympathetic signals causes increased vasoconstriction, and a decrease in the rate of sympathetic signals allows vasodilation. However, in certain regions of the body, sympathetic signals are vasodilatory (i.e., sympathetic transmitter substances inhibit active vasoconstriction, allowing the blood vessels to be passively dilated by the blood pressure). In the coronary vessels, the vessels of skeletal muscles, and the external genitalia, sympathetic stimulation results in vasodilation.

VISCERAL SENSATION

Visceral afferent fibers have important relationships to the ANS, both anatomically and functionally. We are usually unaware of the sensory input of these fibers, which provides information about the condition of the body's internal environment. This information is integrated in the CNS, often triggering visceral or somatic reflexes or both. Visceral reflexes regulate blood pressure and chemistry by altering such functions as heart and respiratory rates and vascular resistance.

Visceral sensation that reaches a conscious level is generally perceived as pain that is either poorly localized or felt as cramps or that may convey a feeling of hunger, fullness, or nausea. Surgeons operating on patients who are under local anesthesia may handle, cut, clamp, or even burn (cauterize) visceral organs without evoking conscious sensation. However, adequate stimulation, such as the following, may elicit visceral pain:

- Sudden distension
- Spasms or strong contractions
- Chemical irritants
- Mechanical stimulation, especially when the organ is active
- Pathological conditions (especially ischemia) that lower the normal thresholds of stimulation

Normal activity usually produces no sensation, but it may do so when the blood supply is inadequate (ischemia). Most visceral reflex (unconscious) sensation and some pain travel in visceral afferent fibers that accompany the parasympathetic fibers retrograde (backward). Most visceral pain impulses (from the heart and most organs of the peritoneal cavity) travel centrally along visceral afferent fibers accompanying sympathetic fibers.

The Bottom Line: The Nervous System

Central and peripheral nervous systems: The nervous system can be functionally divided into the central nervous system (CNS), which consists of the brain and spinal cord, and the peripheral nervous system (PNS), which consists of the nerve fibers and their nerve cell bodies that reside outside the CNS. ■ Neurons are the functional units of the nervous system. They are composed of a cell body, dendrites, and axons. ■ The neuronal axons (nerve fibers) transmit impulses to other neurons or to a target organ or muscle or, in the case of sensory nerves, transmit impulses to the CNS from peripheral sensory organs. ■ Neuroglia are nonneuronal, supporting cells of the nervous system. ■ Within the CNS, a collection of nerve cell bodies is called a nucleus; in the PNS, nerve cell body aggregations (or even solitary nerve cell bodies) constitute a ganglion. ■ In the CNS, a bundle of nerve fibers that connect the nuclei is called a tract; in the PNS, a bundle of nerve fibers, the connective tissue holding it together, and the blood vessels serving it (vasa nervorum) constitute a nerve. ■ Nerves exiting the cranium are cranial nerves; those exiting the vertebral column (spine) are spinal nerves. ■ Although some cranial nerves convey a single type of fiber, most nerves convey a variety of visceral or somatic and sensory or motor fibers.

Autonomic nervous system (ANS): The autonomic nervous system is a subdivision of the motor nervous system that controls functions of the body not under conscious control. ■ Two neurons, a presynaptic and a postsynaptic fiber, connect the CNS with an end organ, consisting of smooth muscle, gland, or modified cardiac muscle. ■ Based on the location of the cell body of the presynaptic fibers, the ANS can be subdivided into two divisions: the sympathetic and parasympathetic. ■ Presynaptic cell bodies of the sympathetic division are found only in the intermediolateral cell columns of gray matter in the thoracolumbar spinal cord, which are organized somatotopically. ■ The presynaptic sympathetic nerve fibers terminate in sympathetic ganglia formed of the cell bodies of postsynaptic sympathetic neurons. ■ Sympathetic ganglia are in the sympathetic trunks (paravertebral ganglia) or around the roots of the major branches of the abdominal aorta (prevertebral ganglia). ■ Cell bodies of the presynaptic neurons of the parasympathetic division are in the gray matter of the brainstem and sacral segments of the spinal cord. ■ Cell bodies of postsynaptic parasympathetic neurons of the trunk are located in or on the structure being innervated, whereas those in the head are organized into discrete ganglia. ■ The sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions usually have opposite but coordinated effects. ■ The sympathetic system primarily regulates blood vessels and facilitates emergency (flight-or-fight) responses. ■ The parasympathetic system—distributed only to the viscera of the head, neck, and cavities of the trunk and the erectile tissues of the genitalia—is primarily concerned with body conservation, often reversing the effects of

sympathetic stimulation. ■ Because of its unique structure and ability to function autonomously, the enteric nervous system, which includes postsynaptic parasympathetic and other neurons that serve the GI tract, is increasingly considered as a separate component of the visceral nervous system. ■ Most nerves distributing autonomic nerve fibers to the body cavities also convey visceral sensory nerve fibers from the viscera that conduct impulses for pain or reflexes.

MEDICAL IMAGING TECHNIQUES

Radiologic anatomy is the study of the structure and function of the body using medical imaging techniques. It is an important part of clinical anatomy and is the anatomical basis of radiology, the branch of medical science dealing with the use of radiant energy in the diagnosis and treatment of disease. Being able to identify normal structures on radiographs (X-rays) makes it easier to recognize the changes caused by disease and injury. Familiarity with medical imaging techniques commonly used in clinical settings enables one to recognize congenital anomalies, tumors, and fractures. The most commonly used medical imaging techniques are as follows:

- Conventional radiography (X-ray images)
- Computerized tomography (CT)
- Ultrasonography (US)
- Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
- Nuclear medicine imaging

Although the techniques differ, each is based on the receipt of attenuated beams of energy that have been passed through, reflected off of, or generated by the body's tissues. Medical imaging techniques permit the observation of anatomical structures in living people and the study of their movements in normal and abnormal activities (e.g., the heart and stomach).

Conventional Radiography

Conventional radiographic studies, in which special techniques such as contrast media have not been used, are referred to clinically as plain film studies (Fig. 1.49), although today most images are produced and viewed digitally on monitors instead of film. In a radiologic examination, a highly penetrating beam of X-rays transilluminates the patient, showing tissues of differing densities of mass within the body as images of differing intensities (areas of relative light and dark) on the film or monitor (Fig. 1.50). A tissue or organ that is relatively dense in mass (e.g., compact bone) absorbs or reflects more X-rays than does a less dense tissue (e.g., spongy bone). Consequently, a dense tissue or organ produces a somewhat transparent area on the X-ray film or bright area on a monitor because fewer X-rays reach the film or detector. A dense substance is radiopaque, whereas a substance of less density is radiolucent.

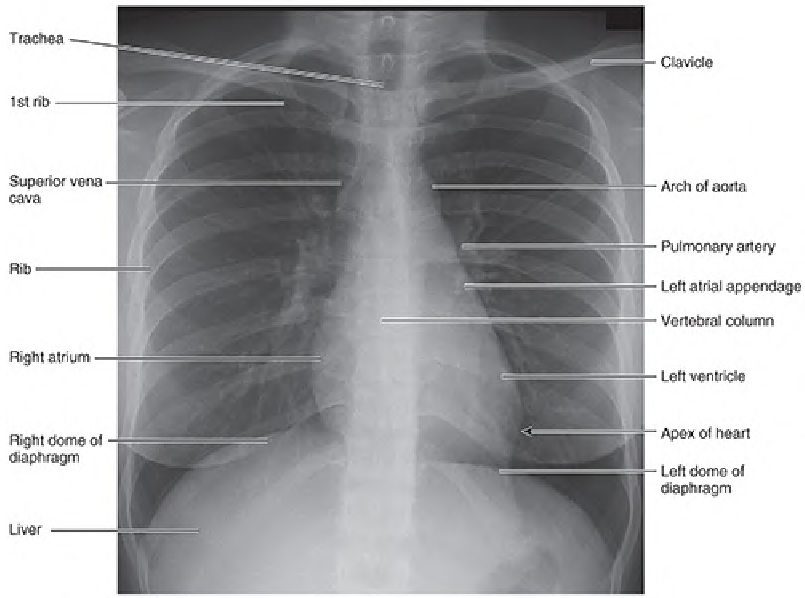


FIGURE 1.49. Anterior radiograph of thorax. This image demonstrates bone densities (light) of skeletal structures, air densities (dark) of lungs and trachea, and soft tissue densities (intermediate) of the great vessels and heart and domes of the diaphragm. Note that the right dome of the diaphragm is higher, above the liver, and the left dome is lower, inferior to the apex of the heart.

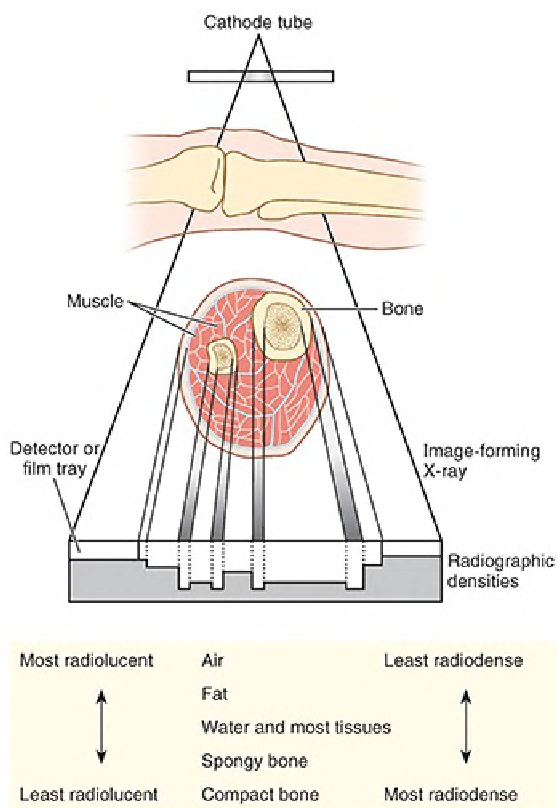


FIGURE 1.50. Principles of X-ray image formation. Portions of the beam of X-rays traversing the body become attenuated to varying degrees based on tissue thickness and density. The beam is diminished by structures that absorb or reflect it, causing less reaction on the film or by the detector compared with areas that allow the beam to pass relatively uninterrupted.

Many of the same principles that apply to making a shadow apply to conventional radiography. When making a shadow of your hand on a wall, the closer your hand is to the wall, the sharper the shadow produced. The farther your hand is from the wall (and therefore the closer to the light source), the more the shadow is magnified. Radiographs are made with the part of the patient's body being studied close to the X-ray film or detector to maximize the clarity of the image and minimize magnification artifacts. In spite of whether the X-ray beam traversed the body from posterior to anterior (PA projection; Fig. 1.51A) or from anterior to posterior (AP projection), most radiographs of the body are viewed as if the patient is facing you (an anteroposterior [AP] view) and are simply referred to as "Anterior Views." As shown in Figure 1.49, the chest radiograph is shown with the patient's right to the viewer's left. For wrists, hands, and feet, radiographs are viewed as if you are looking at your own wrists, hands, or feet. For lateral radiographs, radiopaque letters (R or L) are used to indicate the side placed closest to the film or detector, and the image is viewed from the same direction that the beam was projected (Fig. 1.51B).

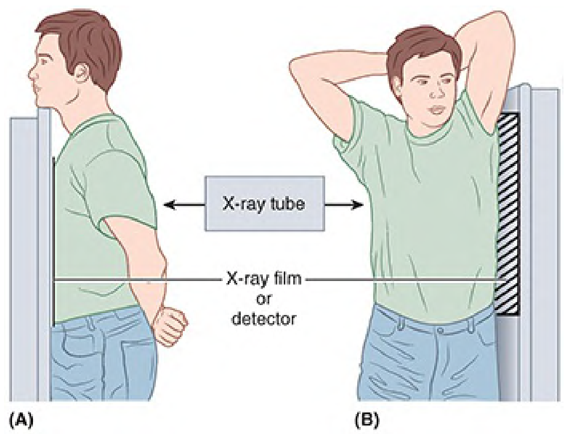


FIGURE 1.51. **Orientation of patient's thorax during radiography. A.** When taking an anterior radiograph, the X-rays from the X-ray tube pass through the thorax from the back to reach the X-ray film or detector anterior to the person. **B.** When taking a lateral projection, the X-rays pass through the thorax from the side to reach the X-ray film adjacent to the person's other side.

The introduction of contrast media (radiopaque fluids such as iodine compounds or barium) allows the study of various luminal or vascular organs and potential or actual spaces—such as the digestive tract, blood vessels, kidneys, synovial cavities, and the subarachnoid space—that are not visible in plain films (Fig. 1.52). Most radiologic examinations are performed in at least two projections at right angles to each other. Because each radiograph presents a two-dimensional representation of a three-dimensional structure, structures sequentially penetrated by the X-ray beam overlap each other. Thus, more than one view is usually necessary to detect and localize an abnormality accurately.

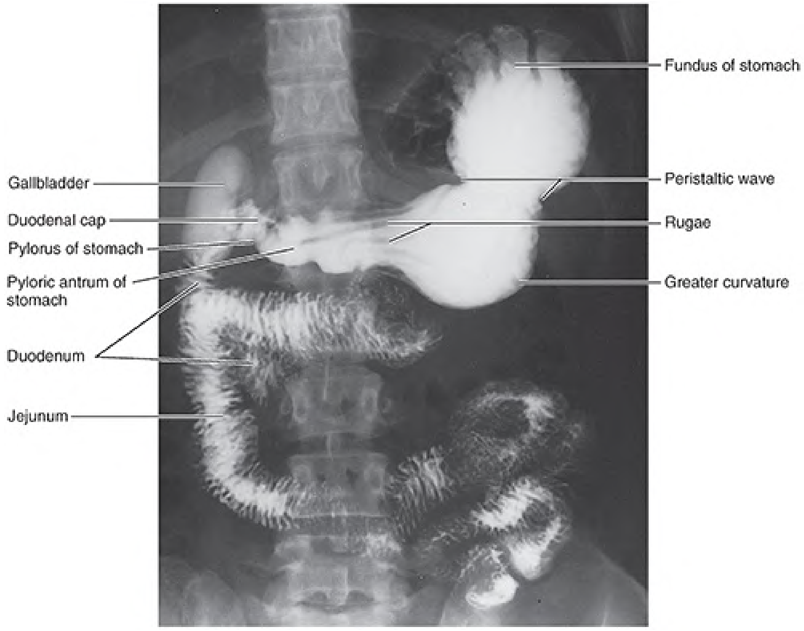


FIGURE 1.52. Radiograph of stomach, small intestine, and gallbladder. Observe the gastric folds, or rugae (longitudinal folds of the mucous membrane). Also note the peristaltic wave that is moving the gastric contents toward the duodenum, which is closely related to the gallbladder.

Computed Tomography

In computed tomography (CT), the scans show radiographic images of the body that resemble transverse anatomical sections (Fig. 1.53). In this technique, a beam of X-rays passes through the body as the X-ray tube and detector rotate around the axis of the body. Multiple overlapping radial energy absorptions are measured, recorded, and compared by a computer to determine the radiodensity of each volumetric pixel (voxel) of the chosen body plane. The radiodensity of (amount of radiation absorbed by) each voxel is determined by factors that include the amount of air, water, fat, or bone in that element. The computer maps the voxels into a planar image (slice) that is displayed on a monitor or printout. CT images relate well to conventional radiographs, in that areas of great absorption (e.g., bone) are relatively transparent (white) and those with little absorption are black (Fig. 1.53). Axial CT and MRI images are always viewed as if one is standing at a supine patient's feet—that is, from an inferior view. Coronal CT and MR images are viewed if the patient is facing you. Sagittal CT and MRI are usually viewed as if you are standing at the patient's left side.

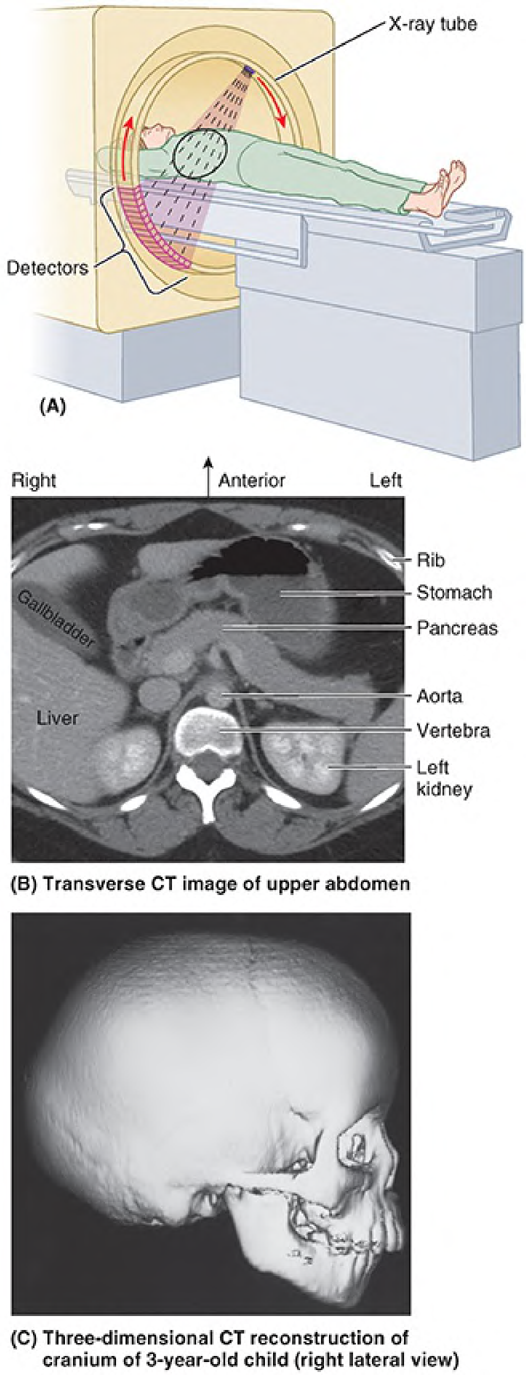


FIGURE 1.53. **Technique for producing CT scan. A.** The X-ray tube rotates around the person in the CT scanner and sends a fan-shaped beam of X-rays through the upper abdomen from a variety of angles. X-ray detectors on the opposite side of the body measure the amount of radiation that passes through a horizontal section. **B.** A computer reconstructs the images from several scans, and a CT scan is produced. The scan is oriented so it appears the way an examiner would view it when standing at the foot of the bed and looking toward a supine person's head. **C.** As well as 2D "slices," scans can be compiled by the computer to generate a 3D reconstructed image.

Ultrasonography

Ultrasonography (US) is a technique that visualizes superficial or deep structures in the body by

recording pulses of ultrasonic waves reflecting off the tissues (Fig. 1.54). US has the advantage of a lower cost than CT and MRI, and the machine is portable. The technique can be performed virtually anywhere, including the clinic examination room or bedside or on the operating table. A transducer in contact with the skin generates high-frequency sound waves that pass through the body and reflect off tissue interfaces between tissues of differing characteristics, such as soft tissue and bone. Echoes from the body reflect into the transducer and convert to electrical energy. The electrical signals are recorded and displayed on a monitor as a cross-sectional image, which can be viewed in real time or as a single image.

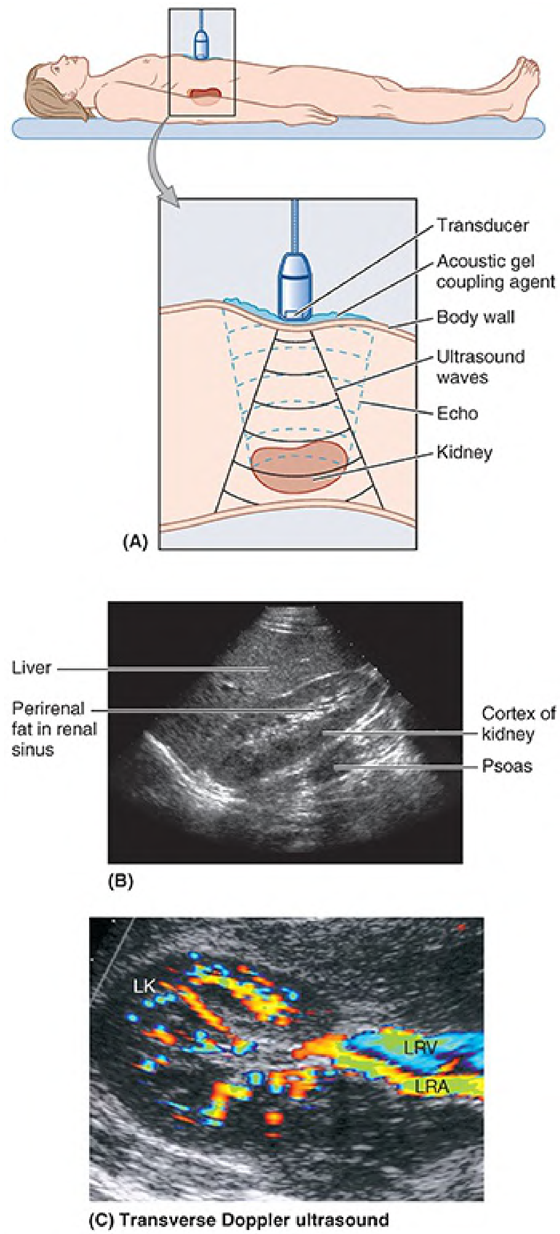


FIGURE 1.54. Technique for producing ultrasound image of upper abdomen. A. The image results from the echo of ultrasound waves from abdominal structures of different densities. **B.** The image of the right kidney is displayed on a monitor. **C.** Doppler US shows blood flow to and away from the kidney. LK, left kidney; LRA, left renal artery; LRV, left renal vein.

A major advantage of US is its ability to produce real-time images, demonstrating motion of structures and flow within blood vessels. In Doppler ultrasonography, the shifts in frequency between emitted ultrasonic waves and their echoes are used to measure the velocities of moving objects. This technique is based on the principle of the Doppler effect. Blood flow through vessels is displayed in color, superimposed on the two-dimensional cross-sectional image.

Scanning of the pelvic viscera from the surface of the abdomen requires a fully distended bladder. The urine serves as an “acoustical window,” transmitting sound waves to and from the posteriorly placed pelvic viscera with minimal attenuation. The distended bladder also displaces gas-filled intestinal loops out of the pelvis. Transvaginal sonography permits the positioning of the transducer closer to the organ of interest (e.g., the ovary) and avoids fat and gas, which absorb or reflect sound waves. Bone reflects nearly all ultrasound waves, whereas air conducts them poorly. Consequently, US is not generally used for examining the CNS and aerated lungs of adults.

The appeal of ultrasonography in obstetrics is that it is a noninvasive procedure that does not use radiation; it can yield useful information about the pregnancy, such as determining whether it is intra-uterine or extra-uterine (ectopic) and whether the embryo or fetus is living. It has also become a standard method of evaluating the growth and development of the embryo and fetus.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) provides images of the body similar to those of CT scans, but MRI is better for tissue differentiation. MRI studies closely resemble anatomical sections, especially of the brain (Fig. 1.55). The person is placed in a scanner with a strong magnetic field, and the body is pulsed with radio waves. Signals subsequently emitted from the patient’s tissues are stored in a computer and reconstructed into various images of the body. The appearance of tissues on the generated images can be varied by controlling how radiofrequency pulses are sent and received.

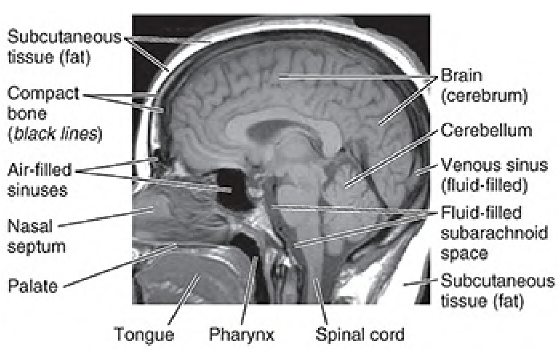


FIGURE 1.55. Median MRI of head. Many details of the CNS and structures in the nasal and oral cavities and upper neck are seen in this study. The black low-signal areas superior to the anterior and posterior aspects of the nasal cavity are the air-filled frontal and sphenoidal sinuses.

Free protons in the tissues that become aligned by the surrounding magnetic field are excited (flipped) with a radio wave pulse. As the protons flip back, minute but measurable energy signals

are emitted. Tissues that are high in proton density, such as fat and water, emit more signals than tissues that are low in proton density. The tissue signal is based primarily on three properties of protons in a particular region of the body. These are referred to as T1 and T2 relaxation (producing T1- and T2-weighted images) and proton density. Although liquids have a high density of free protons, the excited free protons in moving fluids such as blood tend to move out of the field before they flip and give off their signal and are replaced by unexcited protons. Consequently, moving fluids appear black in T1-weighted images.

Computers associated with MRI scanners have the capacity to reconstruct tissues in any plane from the data acquired: transverse, median, sagittal, frontal, and even arbitrary oblique planes. The data may also be used to generate three-dimensional reconstructions. MRI scanners produce good images of soft tissues without the use of ionizing radiation. Motion made by the patient during long scanning sessions created problems for early-generation scanners, but fast scanners now in use can be gated or paced to visualize moving structures, such as the heart and blood flow, in real time.

Nuclear Medicine Imaging

Nuclear medicine imaging techniques provide information about the distribution or concentration of trace amounts of radioactive substances introduced into the body. Nuclear medicine scans show images of specific organs after intravenous (IV) injection of a small dose of radioactive material. The radionuclide is tagged to a compound that is selectively taken up by an organ, such as technetium-99m methylene diphosphonate (^{99m}Tc-MDP) for bone scanning (Fig. 1.56).

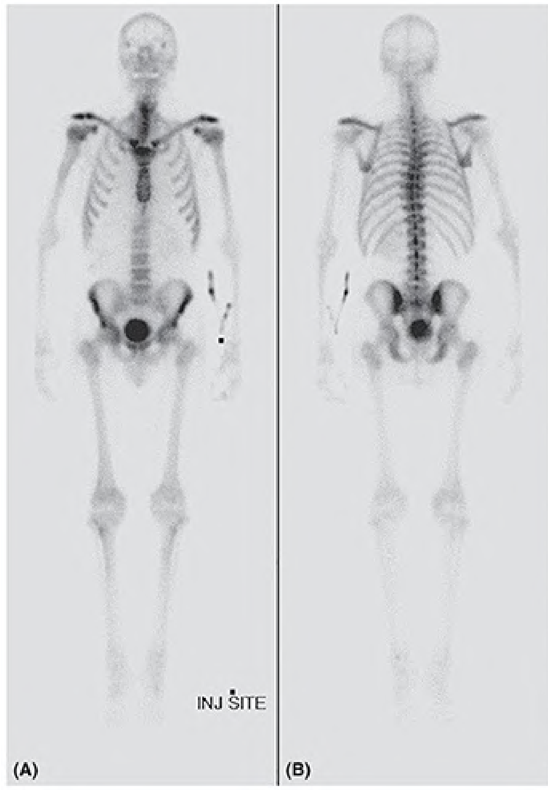


FIGURE 1.56. **Anterior (A) and posterior (B) whole body views, radionuclide bone scan (planar scintigraphy).** These nuclear medicine images can be viewed as a whole or in cross section. A radiopharmaceutical agent has been intravenously injected into veins of the left forearm, where some of the agent has adhered to the venous walls.

Positron emission tomography (PET) scanning uses cyclotron-produced isotopes of extremely short half-life that emit positrons. PET scanning is used to evaluate the physiologic function of organs, such as the brain, on a dynamic basis. Areas of increased brain activity will show selective uptake of the injected isotope. Images can be viewed as the whole organ or in cross sections. Single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) scans are similar but use longer-lasting tracers. They are less costly but require more time and have lower resolution.

---

[1] John Hilton (1805–1878), surgeon at Guy's Hospital, London.

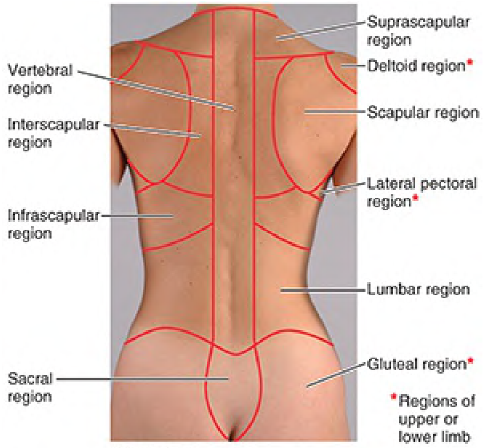
2 Back

CLINICAL BOX KEY

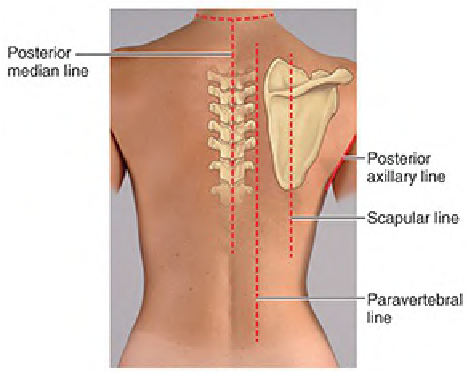
Anatomical Variations | Diagnostic Procedures | Life Cycle | Surgical Procedures | Trauma | Pathology

OVERVIEW OF BACK AND VERTEBRAL COLUMN

The **back** (L. dorsum) is formed by the posterior part of the trunk (torso), inferior to the neck and superior to the buttocks (gluteal region) (Fig. 2.1A–C). Deeply, the central portion of the upper back forms the posterior wall of the thoracic cavity (posterior thoracic wall), while the lower back is the posterior wall of the abdominal cavity (posterior abdominal wall). Consequently, the back is an important area for the assessment of thoraco-abdominal functions, and it is necessary to be specific in locating findings. Based on the presence of underlying bones, the back is anatomically divided into five bilateral regions (right and left **lumbar**, **scapular**, **and supra-**, **inter-**, and **infra-scapular regions**) and two unpaired median regions (**vertebral** and **sacral regions**) (Fig. 2.1A). The scapulae (shoulder blades), although located in the back, are components of the superior appendicular skeleton. The anatomy of the scapulae and associated regions are considered in depth with the upper limb (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb), while the lower lateral (lumbar or loin) regions of the trunk are considered with the anterolateral abdominal wall (see Chapter 5, Abdomen). The current chapter focuses largely on the vertebral and sacral regions. The vertebral column and scapulae are the basis for the extrapolation of vertical lines of reference (Fig. 2.1B).



(A) Posterior view



(B) Posterior view

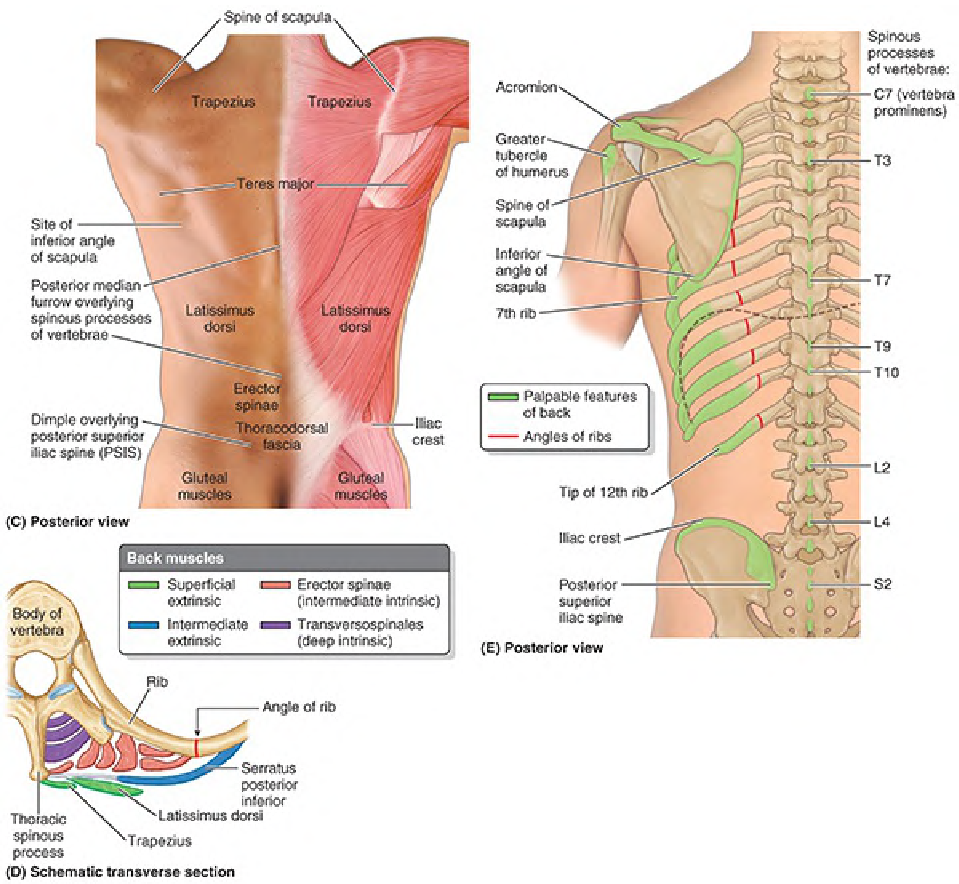


FIGURE 2.1. **Anatomy of back. A.** Regions of back. **B.** Reference lines of back. **C.** Surface anatomy of back. In lean individuals with well-developed musculature, extrinsic back muscles serving the upper limb are apparent. **D.** Layered arrangement of extrinsic and intrinsic muscles of back. Intrinsic back muscles lie medial to the angles of the ribs. **E.** Skeleton of back. A central column of vertebrae and intervertebral discs flanked by the posterior portions of ribs comprise the axial skeleton of the back. Features normally palpable are highlighted in green. Although located in the back, scapulae are parts of the superior appendicular skeleton.

Deep to the skin and fascia, the back is covered with a layer of upper limb (extrinsic back) muscles, primarily concerned with positioning and moving the upper limbs (Fig. 2.1C, D). Deep to this layer, medial to the angles of the ribs, are “true” back muscles, specifically concerned with moving or maintaining the position of the axial skeleton (posture).

The skeleton of the back is formed by the posterior portions of the ribs (medial to the angles of the ribs) and the vertebrae and intervertebral (IV) discs that collectively comprise the **vertebral column**, often called the spine or “backbone” (Figs. 2.1E and 2.2A–D). The vertebral column is the skeleton of the neck and back that is the main part of the axial skeleton (i.e., articulated bones of the cranium, vertebral column, ribs, and sternum) (Fig. 2.2D). The segmental ordering of vertebrae and ribs and their palpable features is used during physical examination to estimate the level of significant internal structures (Fig. 2.1E; Table 2.1). The vertebral column extends from the cranium (skull) to the apex of the coccyx. In adults, it is 72–75 cm long, of which approximately one quarter is formed by the IV discs that separate and bind the vertebrae together. Because most of the weight is anterior to the column, the column is supported posteriorly by numerous and powerful muscles attached to strong levers (spinous and

transverse processes) (Figs. 2.1D and 2.3). The vertebral column

- houses and protects the spinal cord and spinal nerves as they arise from the spinal cord and exit from the vertebral column,
- supports the weight of the body superior to the level of the pelvis (Figs. 2.1E and 2.2D),
- provides a partly rigid and flexible axis for the body and an extended base on which the head is placed and pivots, and
- plays an important role in posture and locomotion (the movement from one place to another).

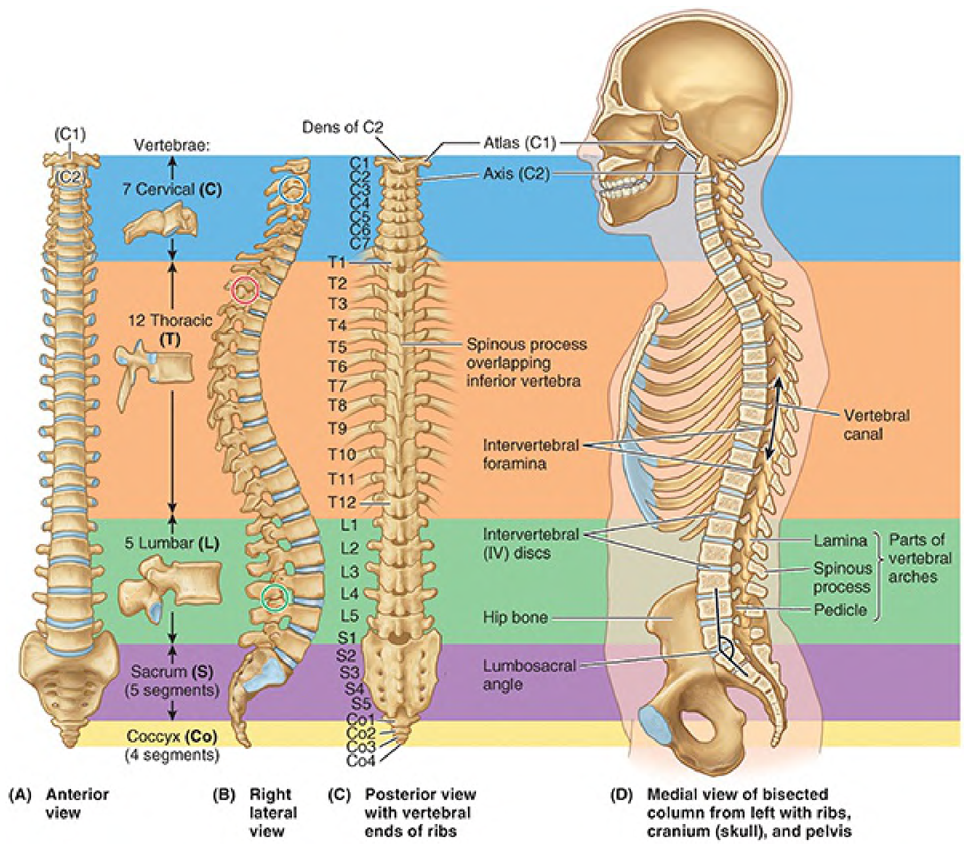


FIGURE 2.2. Vertebral column and its five regions. A and B. Anterior and lateral aspects of vertebral column with isolated vertebra typical of each of three mobile regions. The continuous, weight-bearing column of vertebral bodies and IV discs increases in size as the column descends. Zygapophysial (facet) joints representative of each region are circled. **C.** Posterior view with vertebral ends of ribs. This represents more fully the skeleton of the back. **D.** Bisected vertebral column in context of axial skeleton and pelvis, demonstrating vertebral canal. The intervertebral (IV) foramina (also seen in part **B**) are openings in the lateral wall of the vertebral canal through which spinal nerves exit.

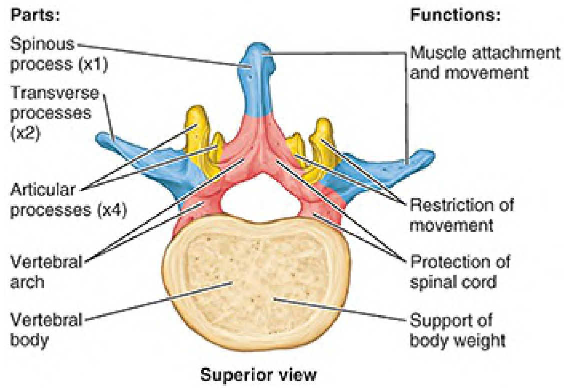


FIGURE 2.3. **Functional components of a typical vertebra, represented by 2nd lumbar vertebra.** Components include the vertebral body (bone color), a vertebral arch (red), and seven processes: three for muscle attachment and leverage (blue) and four that participate in synovial joints with adjacent vertebrae (yellow).

TABLE 2.1. RELATIONSHIPS OF PALPABLE LANDMARKS OF BACK TO SIGNIFICANT DEEP STRUCTURES

Palpable Landmark	Spinous Process	Significant Deep Structure (Approximations)
Vertebra prominens	**C7**	Apex of lungs, thyroid isthmus
Spine of scapula	**T3**	Formation of superior vena cava
	T4	T4–T5 IV disc; transverse thoracic plane (intersects: sternal angle, aortic arch, bifurcation of trachea, arch of azygos vein)
Inferior angle of scapula	**T7**	Level of nipple on anterior thoracic wall
	T9–T10	Central tendon of diaphragm; base of lungs
Tips of 12th rib	**L2**	Inferior end of spinal cord
Iliac crest	**L4**	Bifurcation of aorta; commonly lumbar puncture performed between laminae of 4th and 5th lumbar vertebrae
Dimple overlying posterior superior iliac spine (PSIS)	**S2**	Inferior extent of dural sac/subarachnoid space

VERTEBRAE

The vertebral column in an adult typically consists of 33 vertebrae arranged in five regions: 7 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral, and 4 coccygeal (Fig. 2.2A–D). Significant motion occurs only between the 25 superior vertebrae. Of the 9 inferior vertebrae, the 5 sacral vertebrae are fused in adults to form the sacrum, and after approximately age 30, the 4 coccygeal vertebrae fuse to form the coccyx. The lumbosacral angle occurs at the junction of the long axes of the lumbar region of the vertebral column and sacrum (Fig. 2.2D). The vertebrae gradually become larger as the column descends to the sacrum and then become progressively smaller toward the apex of the coccyx (Fig. 2.2A–D). The change in size is related to the fact that successive vertebrae bear increasing amounts of the body's weight as the column descends. The vertebrae

reach maximum size immediately superior to the sacrum, which transfers the weight to the pelvic girdle at the sacro-iliac joints.

The vertebral column is flexible because it consists of many relatively small bones, called **vertebrae** (singular = **vertebra**), that are separated by resilient IV discs (Fig. 2.2D). The 25 cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and first sacral vertebrae also articulate at synovial zygapophysial (facet) joints (see Fig. 2.5C), which facilitate and control the vertebral column's flexibility. Although the movement between two adjacent vertebrae is small, in aggregate, the vertebrae and IV discs uniting them form a remarkably flexible yet rigid column that protects the spinal cord it surrounds.

Structure and Function of Vertebrae

Vertebrae vary in size and other characteristics from one region of the vertebral column to another and to a lesser degree within each region; however, their basic structure is the same. A **typical vertebra** (Fig. 2.3) consists of a vertebral body, a vertebral arch, and seven processes.[1]

The **vertebral body** is the more massive, roughly cylindrical, anterior part of the bone that gives strength to the column and supports body weight. The size of the bodies increases as the column descends, most markedly from T4 inferiorly, as each bears progressively greater body weight.

The vertebral body consists of vascular, trabecular (spongy, cancellous) bone enclosed by a thin external layer of compact bone (Fig. 2.4). The trabecular bone is a meshwork of mostly tall vertical trabeculae intersecting with short, horizontal trabeculae. The spaces between the trabeculae are occupied by red bone marrow that is among the most actively hematopoietic (blood-forming) tissues of the mature individual. One or more large foramina in the posterior surface of the vertebral body accommodate basivertebral veins that drain the marrow (see Fig. 2.30).

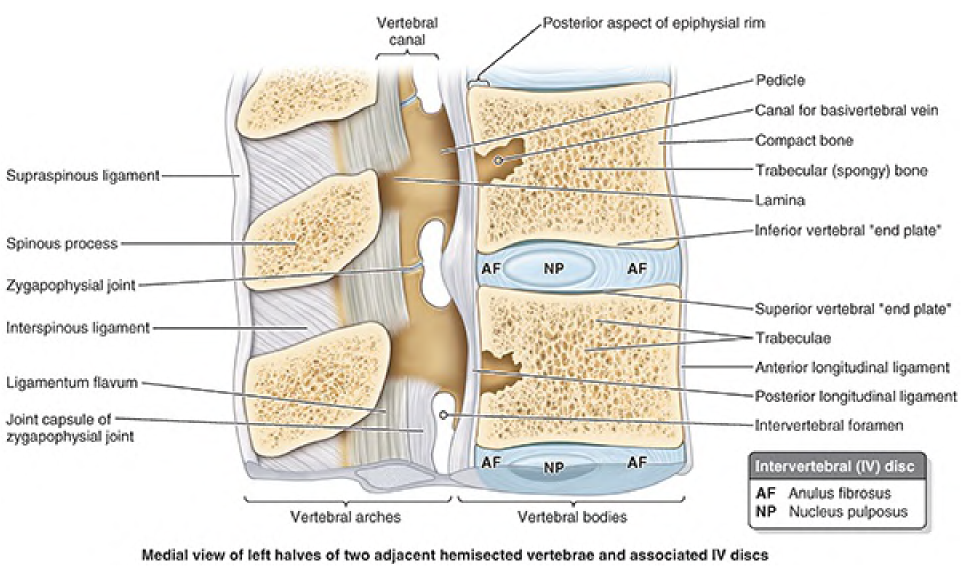


FIGURE 2.4. **Internal aspects of vertebral bodies and vertebral canal.** The bodies consist largely of trabecular (spongy) bone—with tall, vertical supporting trabeculae linked by short horizontal trabeculae—covered by a relatively thin

layer of compact bone. Hyaline cartilage "end plates" cover the superior and inferior surfaces of the bodies, surrounded by smooth bony epiphysial rims. The posterior longitudinal ligament, covering the posterior aspect of the bodies and linking the IV discs, forms the anterior wall of the vertebral canal. Lateral and posterior walls of the vertebral canal are formed by vertebral arches (pedicles and laminae) alternating with IV foramina and ligamenta flava.

During life, most of the superior and inferior surfaces of the vertebral body are covered with discs of hyaline cartilage (vertebral end plates), which are remnants of the cartilaginous model from which the bone develops. In dried laboratory and museum skeletal specimens, this cartilage is absent, and the exposed bone appears spongy, except at the periphery where an **epiphysial rim** or ring of smooth bone, derived from an anular epiphysis, is fused to the body (Fig. 2.5A).

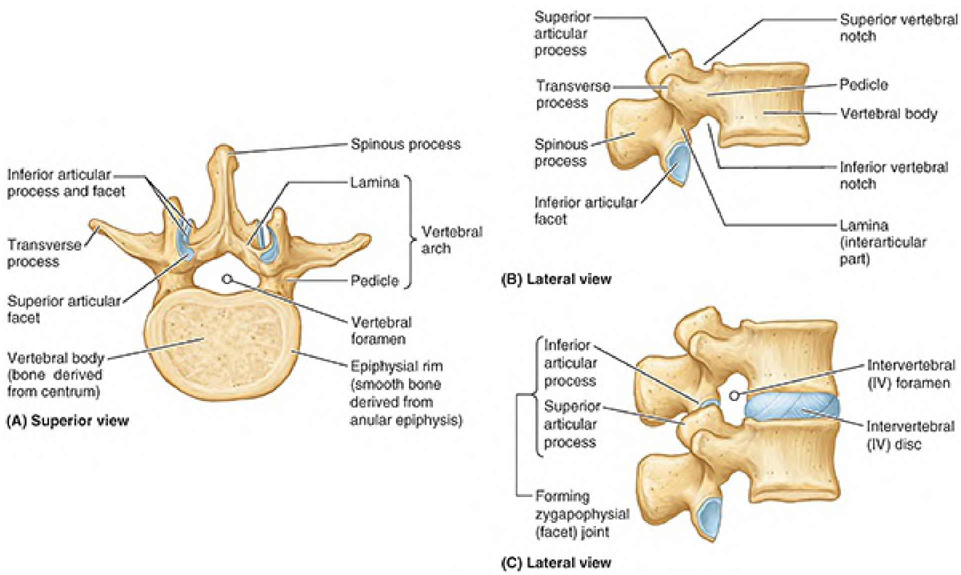


FIGURE 2.5. Features of a typical vertebra, represented by 2nd lumbar vertebra. A and B. Bony formations. The vertebral foramen is bounded by the vertebral arch and body. A small superior vertebral notch and a larger inferior vertebral notch flank the pedicle. **C.** Intervertebral foramen. The superior and inferior notches of adjacent vertebrae plus the IV disc that unites the vertebrae form the IV foramen for passage of a spinal nerve and its accompanying vessels. **A–C.** Each articular process has an articular facet where contact occurs with the articular facets of adjacent vertebrae.

In addition to serving as growth zones, the anular epiphyses and their cartilaginous remnants provide some protection to the vertebral bodies and permit some diffusion of fluid between the IV disc and blood vessels (capillaries) in the vertebral body (see Figs. 2.29 and 2.30). The superior and inferior epiphyses usually unite with the **centrum**, the primary ossification center for the central mass of the vertebral body (Fig. 2.5A), early in adult life (at approximately age 25) (see Fig. 2.14).

The **vertebral arch** is posterior to the vertebral body and consists of two (right and left) pedicles and laminae (Figs. 2.3 and 2.5A). The **pedicles** are short, stout cylindrical processes that project posteriorly from the vertebral body to meet two broad, flat plates of bone, called **laminae**, which unite in the midline. The vertebral arch and the posterior surface of the vertebral body form the walls of the **vertebral foramen**. The succession of vertebral foramina in the articulated vertebral column forms the **vertebral canal** (spinal canal) (Figs. 2.2D and 2.4). The canal contains the spinal cord and roots of the spinal nerves, along with the membranes

(meninges), fat, and vessels that surround and serve them (see the Clinical Box "Laminectomy" in this chapter).

The **vertebral notches** are indentations observed in lateral views of the vertebrae superior and inferior to each pedicle between the superior and inferior articular processes posteriorly and the corresponding projections of the body anteriorly (Fig. 2.5B). The **superior** and **inferior vertebral notches** of adjacent vertebrae and the IV discs connecting them form **intervertebral foramina** (Figs. 2.2D and 2.5C) through which the spinal nerves emerge from the vertebral column (see Fig. 2.32). In addition, the spinal (posterior root) ganglia are located in these foramina.

Seven processes arise from the vertebral arch of a typical vertebra (Figs. 2.3 and 2.5A):

- One median **spinous process** projects posteriorly (and usually inferiorly, typically overlapping the vertebra below) from the vertebral arch at the junction of the laminae.
- Two **transverse processes** project posterolaterally from the junctions of the pedicles and laminae.
- Four **articular processes** (G. zygapophyses)—two **superior** and two **inferior**—also arise from the junctions of the pedicles and laminae, each bearing an **articular surface** (**facet**).

The spinous and transverse processes provide attachment for deep back muscles and serve as levers, facilitating the muscles that fix or change the position of the vertebrae.

The articular processes are in apposition with corresponding processes of vertebrae adjacent (superior and inferior) to them, forming zygapophysial (facet) joints (Figs. 2.2B and 2.5C). Through their participation in these joints, these processes determine the types of movement permitted and restricted between the adjacent vertebrae of each region.

The articular processes also assist in keeping adjacent vertebrae aligned, particularly preventing one vertebra from slipping anteriorly on the vertebra below. Generally, the articular processes bear weight only temporarily, as when one rises from the flexed position, and unilaterally, when the cervical vertebrae are laterally flexed to their limit. However, the inferior articular processes of the L5 vertebra bear weight even in the erect posture.

Regional Characteristics of Vertebrae

Each of the 33 vertebrae is unique; however, most of the vertebrae demonstrate characteristic features identifying them as belonging to one of the five regions of the vertebral column (e.g., vertebrae having foramina in their transverse processes are cervical vertebrae) (Fig. 2.6). In addition, certain individual vertebrae have distinguishing features; the C7 vertebra, for example, has the longest spinous process. It forms a prominence under the skin at the back of the neck, especially when the neck is flexed (see Fig. 2.10A).

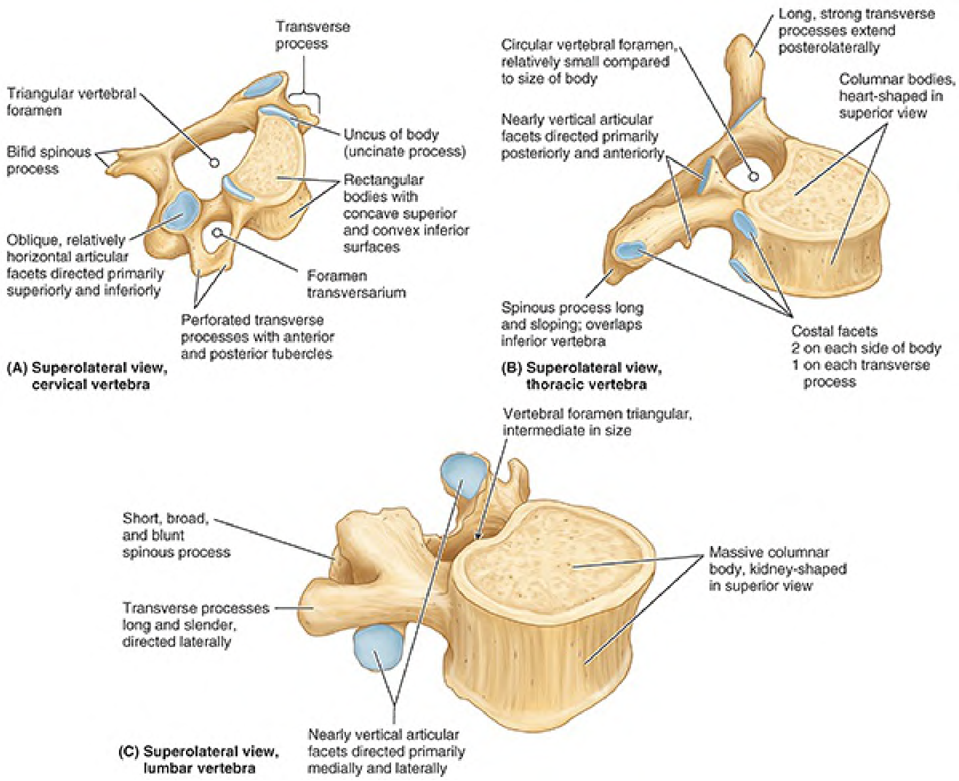


FIGURE 2.6. **Comparison of typical presacral vertebrae.** As the vertebral column descends, bodies increase in size in relationship to increased weight bearing. The size of the vertebral canal changes in relationship to the diameter of the spinal cord.

In each region, the **articular facets** are oriented on the articular processes of the vertebrae in a characteristic direction that determines the type of movement permitted between the adjacent vertebrae and, in aggregate, for the region. For example, the articular facets of thoracic vertebrae are nearly vertical and together define an arc centered in the IV disc. This arrangement permits rotation and lateral flexion of the vertebral column in this region (see Fig. 2.9). Regional variations in the size and shape of the vertebral canal accommodate the varying thickness of the spinal cord (Fig. 2.2D).

CERVICAL VERTEBRAE

Cervical vertebrae form the skeleton of the neck (Figs. 2.2 and 2.7). The smallest of the 24 movable vertebrae, the cervical vertebrae are located between the cranium and thoracic vertebrae. Their smaller size reflects the fact that they bear less weight than do the larger inferior vertebrae. Although the cervical IV discs are thinner than those of inferior regions, they are relatively thick compared to the size of the vertebral bodies they connect. The relative thickness of the IV discs, the nearly horizontal orientation of the articular facets, and the small amount of surrounding body mass give the cervical region the greatest range and variety of movement of all the vertebral regions.

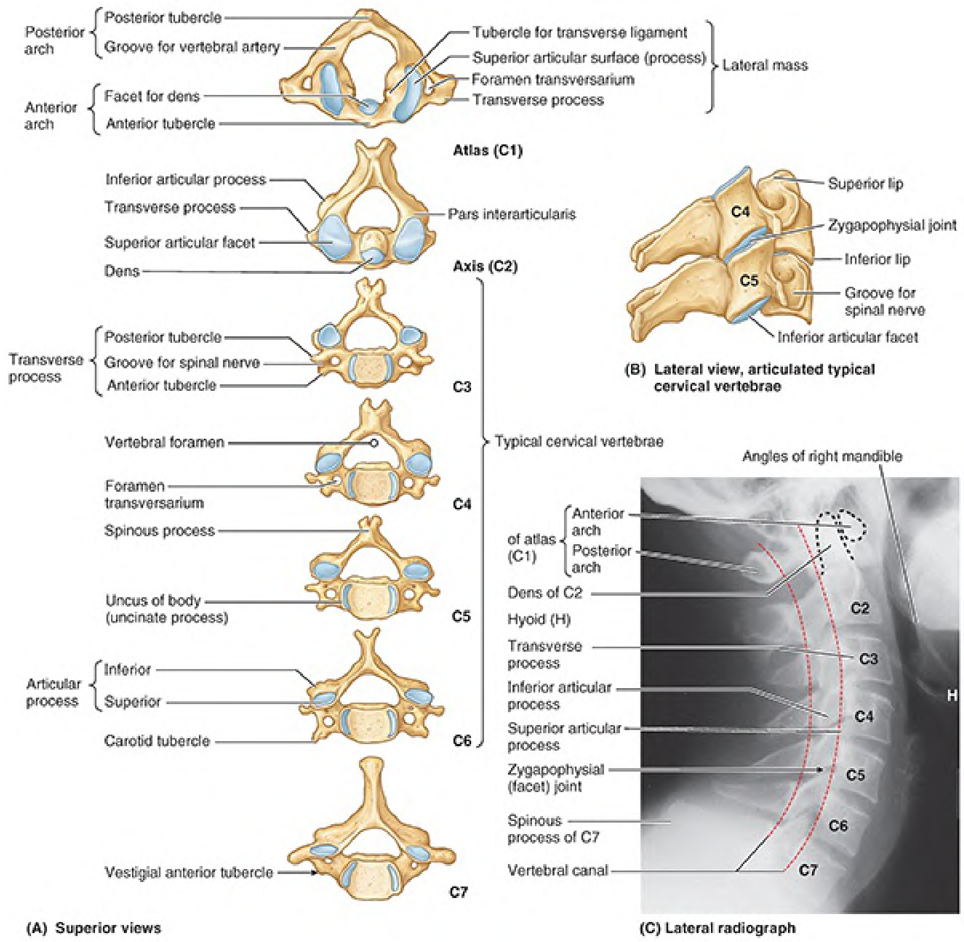


FIGURE 2.7. Cervical vertebrae. A. Comparison of cervical vertebrae. C1, C2, and C3 vertebrae are atypical. **B.** Articulation of cervical vertebrae. The superior and inferior surfaces of the bodies of the cervical vertebrae are reciprocally convex and concave. Combined with the oblique orientation of the articular facets, this facilitates flexion and extension as well as lateral flexion. **C.** Alignment of cervical vertebrae. The anterior arch of the atlas lies anterior to the continuous curved line formed by the anterior surfaces of the C2–C7 vertebral bodies.

The distinctive features of cervical vertebrae are illustrated in Figures 2.6A and 2.7 and described in Table 2.2. The most distinctive feature of each cervical vertebra is the oval **foramen transversarium** (transverse foramen) in the transverse process. The vertebral arteries and their accompanying veins pass through the transverse foramina, except those in C7, which transmit only small accessory veins. Thus, the foramina are smaller in C7 than those in other cervical vertebrae are, and occasionally they are absent.

TABLE 2.2. CERVICAL VERTEBRAE[a]

Part	Characteristics
Vertebral body	Small and wider from side to side than anteroposteriorly; superior surface concave with uncus of body (uncinate process); inferior surface convex
Vertebral foramen	Large and triangular
Transverse processes	Foramina transversarii and anterior and posterior tubercles; vertebral arteries and accompanying venous and sympathetic plexuses pass through foramina transversarii of all cervical vertebrae

	except C7, which transmits only small accessory vertebral veins
Articular processes	Superior facets directed superoposteriorly; inferior facets directed infero-anteriorly; obliquely placed facets are most nearly horizontal in this region
Spinous processes	Short (C3–C5) and bifid (C3–C6)[b]; process of C6 long, that of C7 is longer (thus, C7 is called "vertebra prominens")

[a]The C1, C2, and C7 vertebrae are atypical.

[b]Especially so in male Caucasians.

The transverse processes of cervical vertebrae end laterally in two projections: an **anterior tubercle** and a **posterior tubercle**. The tubercles provide attachment for a laterally placed group of cervical muscles (levator scapulae and scalenes). The anterior rami of the cervical spinal nerves course initially on the transverse processes in **grooves for spinal nerves** between the tubercles (Fig. 2.7A, B). The anterior tubercles of vertebra C6 are called **carotid tubercles** because the common carotid arteries may be compressed here, in the groove between the tubercle and body, to control bleeding from these vessels. Bleeding may continue because of the carotid's multiple anastomoses of distal branches with adjacent and contralateral branches, but at a slower rate.

Vertebrae C3–C7 are typical cervical vertebrae (Figs. 2.6A and 2.7A; Table 2.2). They have large vertebral foramina to accommodate the cervical enlargement of the spinal cord as a consequence of this region's role in the innervation of the upper limbs. The superior borders of the transversely elongated bodies of the cervical vertebrae are elevated posteriorly and especially laterally, but they are depressed anteriorly, resembling somewhat a sculpted seat.

The inferior border of the body of the superiorly placed vertebra is reciprocally shaped. The adjacent cervical vertebrae articulate in a way that permits free flexion and extension and some lateral flexion but restricted rotation. The planar, nearly horizontal articular facets of the articular processes are also favorable for these movements. The elevated superolateral margin is the **uncus of the body** (uncinate process) (Figs. 2.6A and 2.7A).

The spinous processes of the C3–C6 vertebrae are short and usually bifid in white people, especially males, but usually not as commonly in people of African descent or in females (Duray et al., 1999). C7 is a prominent vertebra that is characterized by a long spinous process. Because of this prominent process, C7 is called the **vertebra prominens**. Run your finger along the midline of the posterior aspect of your neck until you feel the prominent C7 spinous process. It is the most prominent spinous process in 70% of people (see Fig. 2.10A).

The two superiormost cervical vertebrae are atypical. **Vertebra C1**, also called the **atlas**, is unique in that it has neither a body nor a spinous process (Figs. 2.7A and 2.8B). This ring-shaped bone has paired lateral masses that serve the place of a body by bearing the weight of the globe-like cranium in a manner similar to the way that Atlas of Greek mythology bore the weight of the world on his shoulders (Fig. 2.8E). The transverse processes of the atlas arise from the **lateral masses**, causing them to be more laterally placed than those of the inferior vertebrae. This feature makes the atlas the widest of the cervical vertebrae, thus providing increased leverage for attached muscles.

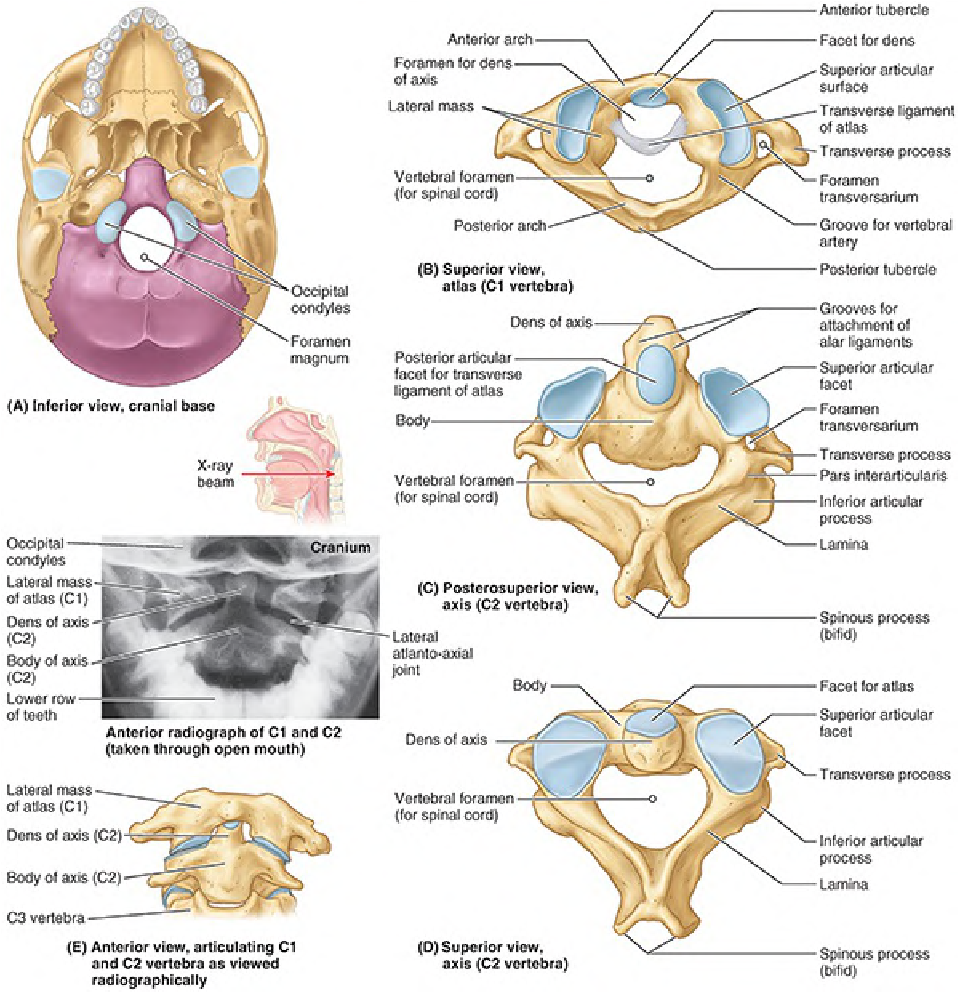


FIGURE 2.8. **Cranial base and C1 and C2 vertebrae. A.** Occipital condyles of cranium. The occipital condyles articulate with the superior articular facets of the atlas (vertebra C1). **B.** Arches and lateral masses of atlas. The atlas, on which the cranium rests, has neither a spinous process nor a body. It consists of two lateral masses connected by anterior and posterior arches. **C and D.** Dens (odontoid process) of axis. The tooth-like dens characterizes the axis (vertebra C2) and provides a pivot around which the atlas turns and carries the cranium. It articulates anteriorly with the anterior arch of the atlas ("facet for dens of the axis," in part **B**) and posteriorly with the transverse ligament of the atlas (see part **B**). **E.** Radiograph and articulated atlas and axis showing the dens projecting superiorly from the body of the axis between the lateral masses of the atlas. Since the atlas and axis lie posterior to the mandible (Fig. 2.7C), anterior radiographs must be taken through the open mouth.

The kidney-shaped, concave **superior articular surfaces of the lateral masses** articulate with two large cranial protuberances, the **occipital condyles**, at the sides of the foramen magnum (Fig. 2.8A). **Anterior** and **posterior arches of the atlas**, each of which bears a tubercle in the center of its external aspect, extend between the lateral masses, forming a complete ring (Fig. 2.8B). The posterior arch, which corresponds to the lamina of a typical vertebra, has a wide **groove for the vertebral artery** on its superior surface. The C1 nerve also runs in this groove.

Vertebra C2, also called the **axis**, is the strongest of the cervical vertebrae (Figs. 2.7A and 2.8C). C1, carrying the cranium, rotates on C2 (e.g., when a person turns the head to indicate "no"). The axis has two large, flat bearing surfaces, the superior articular facets, on which the atlas rotates. The distinguishing feature of C2 is the blunt tooth-like **dens of the axis** (odontoid

process), which projects superiorly from its body. The atlas encircles both the dens (G. tooth) and the spinal cord inside its coverings (meninges). The dens lies anterior to the spinal cord and serves as the pivot about which the rotation of the head occurs.

The dens is held in position against the posterior aspect of the anterior arch of the atlas by the **transverse ligament of the atlas** (Fig. 2.8B). This ligament extends from one lateral mass of the atlas to the other, passing between the dens and spinal cord, forming the posterior wall of the "socket" that receives the dens. Thus, it prevents posterior (horizontal) displacement of the dens and anterior displacement of the atlas. Either displacement would compromise the portion of the vertebral foramen of C1 that gives passage to the spinal cord. C2 has a large bifid spinous process (Fig. 2.8C, D) that can be felt deep in the nuchal groove, the superficial vertical groove at the back of the neck.

THORACIC VERTEBRAE

The **thoracic vertebrae** are in the upper back and provide attachment for the ribs (see Fig. 2.2). Thus, the primary characteristic features of thoracic vertebrae are the **costal facets** for articulation with ribs. The costal facets and other characteristic features of thoracic vertebrae are illustrated in Figures 2.6B and 2.9 and listed in Table 2.3.

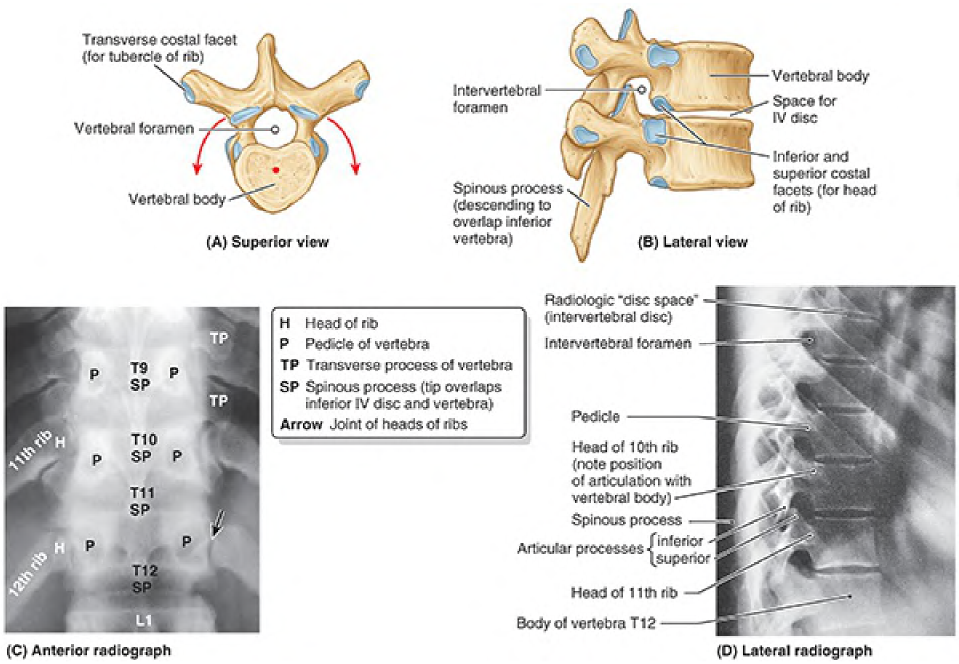


FIGURE 2.9. **Thoracic vertebrae. A.** Isolated typical vertebrae. **B.** Articulated typical vertebrae. **C.** In anterior radiographs, articulating ribs obscure lateral features of the vertebrae. **D.** In lateral radiographs, articulating ribs obscure the vertebral arch components of the vertebrae, but the uniform vertebral bodies and radiographic "disc spaces" between them (caused by the radiolucency of the IV discs) are apparent.

TABLE 2.3. THORACIC VERTEBRAE

Part	Characteristics
Vertebral body	Heart shaped; two or four costal facets for articulation with heads of the ribs

Vertebral foramen	Circular and smaller than those of cervical and lumbar vertebrae (admits the distal part of a medium-size index finger)
Transverse processes	Long and strong and extend posterolaterally; length diminishes from T1 to T12 (T1–T10 have facets for articulation with tubercle of the rib)
Articular processes	Nearly vertical articular facets; superior facets directed posteriorly and slightly laterally; inferior facets directed anteriorly and slightly medially; planes of facets lie on an arc centered in the vertebral body
Spinous processes	Long; slope posteroinferiorly; tips extend to level of vertebral body below

The middle four thoracic vertebrae (T5–T8) demonstrate all the features typical of thoracic vertebrae. The articular processes extend vertically with paired, nearly coronally oriented articular facets that define an arc centered in the IV disc. This arc permits rotation and some lateral flexion of the vertebral column in this region. In fact, the greatest degree of rotation is permitted here (Fig. 2.9A). Attachment of the rib cage, combined with the vertical orientation of articular facets and overlapping spinous processes, limits flexion and extension as well as lateral flexion.

The T1–T4 vertebrae share some features of cervical vertebrae. T1 is atypical of thoracic vertebrae in that it has a long, almost horizontal spinous process that may be nearly as prominent as that of the vertebra prominens (Fig. 2.10A). T1 also has a complete costal facet on the superior edge of its body for the 1st rib and a demifacet on its inferior edge that contributes to the articular surface for the 2nd rib.

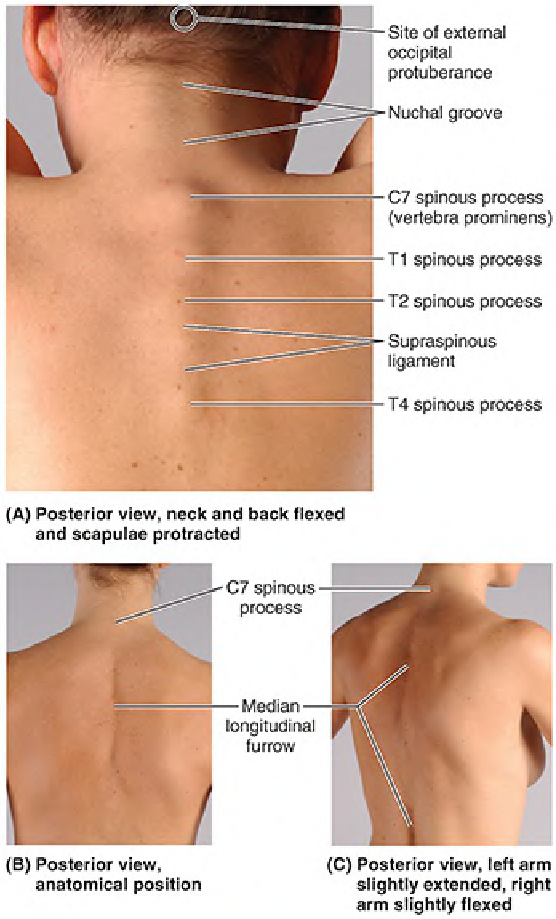


FIGURE 2.10. **Surface anatomy of cervical and thoracic vertebrae.** Except for the spinous process of the C7 vertebra (vertebra prominens), the visibility of the spinous processes depends on the abundance of subcutaneous tissue and the position of the back, neck, and upper limbs (especially protraction/retraction of scapulae). However, the spinous and thoracic transverse processes can usually be palpated in the midvertebral and paravertebral lines.

The T9–T12 vertebrae have some features of the lumbar vertebrae (e.g., tubercles are similar to the accessory processes). Mammillary processes (small tubercles) also occur on vertebra T12. However, most of the transition in characteristics of vertebrae from the thoracic to the lumbar region occurs over the length of a single vertebra: vertebra T12. Generally, its superior half is thoracic in character, having costal facets and articular processes that permit primarily rotatory movement, whereas its inferior half is lumbar in character, devoid of costal facets and having articular processes that permit only flexion and extension. Consequently, vertebra T12 is subject to transitional stresses that cause it to be the most commonly fractured vertebra.

SURFACE ANATOMY OF CERVICAL AND THORACIC VERTEBRAE

Several of the spinous processes can usually be observed, especially when the back is flexed and the scapulae are protracted (Fig. 2.10A). Most of them can be palpated—even in an obese patient—because fat does not normally accumulate in the midline.

The tip of the C7 spinous process is the most evident superficially. Often, when the patient stands erect, it is the only spinous process visible (Fig. 2.10B); hence the name vertebra

prominens. The spinous process of C2 can be felt deeply in the midline, inferior to the external occipital protuberance, a median projection located at the junction of the head and neck. C1 has no spinous process, and its small posterior tubercle is neither visible nor palpable.

The short bifid spinous processes of the C3–C5 vertebrae may be felt in the **nuchal groove** between the neck muscles, but they are not easy to palpate because the cervical lordosis, which is concave posteriorly, places them deep to the surface from which they are separated by the nuchal ligament. However, because it is considerably longer, the bifid spinous process of C6 vertebra is easily felt superior to the visible tip of the C7 process (vertebra prominens) when the neck is flexed (Fig. 2.10A).

When the neck and back are flexed, the spinous processes of the upper thoracic vertebra may also be seen. If the individual is especially lean, a continuous ridge appears linking their tips—the supraspinous ligament (Fig. 2.10C).

Although C7 is most commonly the most superior spinal process that is visible and readily palpable, the spinous process of T1 sometimes is more prominent. The spinous processes of the other thoracic vertebrae may be obvious in thin people and in others can be identified by superior to inferior palpation beginning at the C7 spinous process. The tips of the thoracic spinous processes do not indicate the level of the corresponding vertebral bodies because they overlap (lie at the level of) the vertebra below (see Figs. 2.2D and 2.9B, C).

When the back is not being flexed or the scapulae are not protracted, the tips of the thoracic spinous processes lie deep to a **median longitudinal furrow** (Fig. 2.10B, C). The tips of the spinous processes are normally in line with each other, even if the collective line wanders slightly from the midline. A sudden shift in the alignment of adjacent spinous processes may be the result of a unilateral dislocation of a zygapophysial joint; however, slight irregular misalignments may also result from a fracture of the spinous process. The short 12th rib, the lateral end of which can be palpated in the posterior axillary line, can be used to confirm identity of the T12 spinous process.

The transverse processes of C1 may be felt laterally by deep palpation between the mastoid processes (prominences of the temporal bones posterior to the ears) and the angles of the jaws. The carotid tubercle, the anterior tubercle of the transverse process of C6 vertebra, may be large enough to be palpable; the carotid artery lies anterior to it. In lean, moderately muscled individuals, the transverse processes of thoracic vertebrae can be palpated on each side of the spinous processes in the thoracic region and the ribs can be palpated lateral to the angle, at least in the lower back (inferior to the scapula) (see Fig. 2.1E).

LUMBAR VERTEBRAE

Lumbar vertebrae are in the lower back between the thorax and sacrum (see Fig. 2.2). Characteristic features of lumbar vertebrae are illustrated in Figures 2.6C and 2.11 and described in Table 2.4. Because the weight they support increases toward the inferior end of the vertebral column, lumbar vertebrae have massive bodies, accounting for much of the thickness of the lower trunk in the median plane. Their articular processes extend vertically, with articular facets sagittally oriented initially (beginning abruptly with the T12–L1 joints), but becoming more

coronally oriented as the column descends.

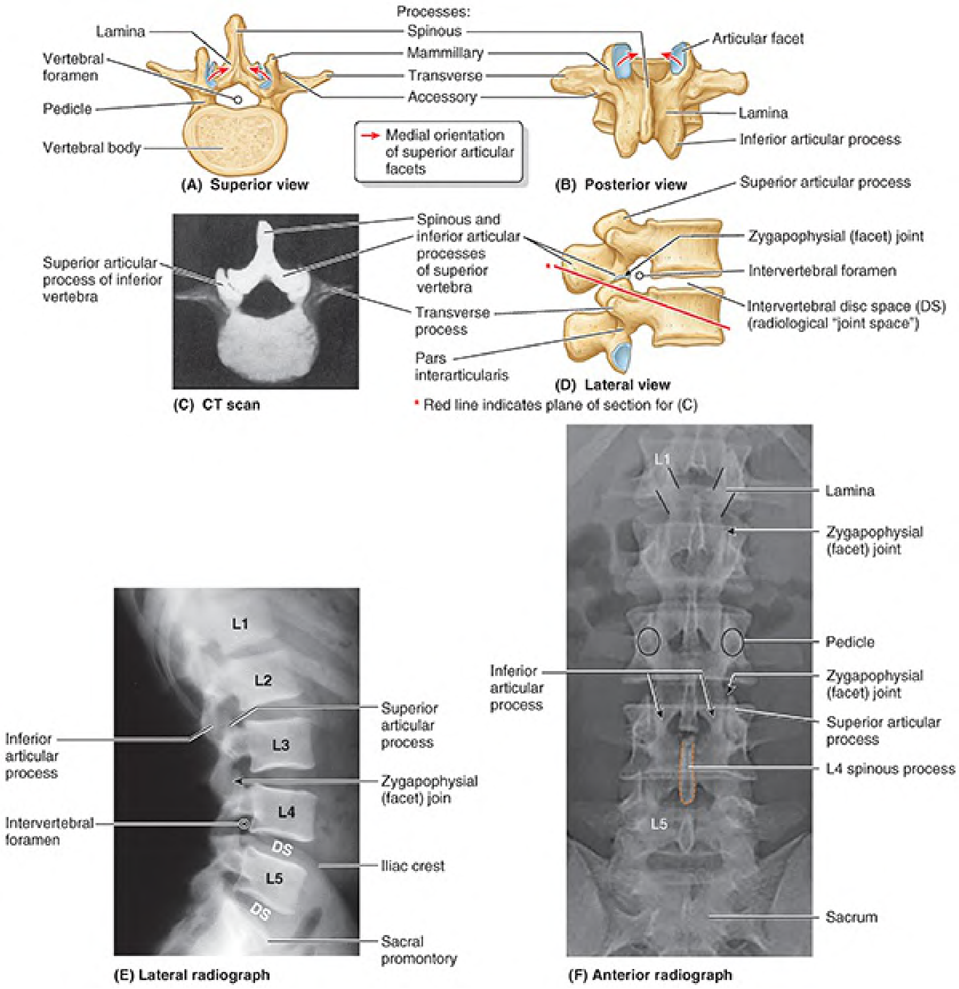


FIGURE 2.11. **Lumbar vertebrae. A–C.** Isolated lumbar vertebrae. **D–F.** Articulated typical lumbar vertebrae. **E.** Lateral radiograph of lumbar vertebrae. The wedge shape of the lumbar vertebrae and especially the lumbar IV discs is evident. In lateral radiographs, the vertebral canal is primarily evident in the radiolucency of the IV foramina. **F.** Anterior radiograph. The vertebral canal is visible as a columnar shadow (between arrowheads).

TABLE 2.4. LUMBAR VERTEBRAE

Part	Characteristics
Vertebral body	Massive; kidney shaped when viewed superiorly
Vertebral foramen	Triangular; larger than in thoracic vertebrae and smaller than in cervical vertebrae
Transverse processes	Long and slender; accessory process on posterior surface of the base of each process
Articular processes	Nearly vertical facets; superior facets directed posteromedially (or medially); inferior facets directed anterolaterally (or laterally); mammillary process on posterior surface of each superior articular process
Spinous processes	Short and sturdy; thick, broad, and hatchet shaped

The L5–S1 facets are distinctly coronal in orientation. In the more sagittally oriented superior

joints, the laterally facing facets of the inferior articular processes of the vertebra above are “gripped” by the medially facing facets of the superior processes of the vertebra below, in a manner that facilitates flexion and extension and allows lateral flexion but prohibits rotation (Fig. 2.11A, B, D, E).

The transverse processes project somewhat posterosuperiorly as well as laterally. On the posterior surface of the base of each transverse process is a small **accessory process**, which provides an attachment for the intertransversarii muscles. On the posterior surface of the superior articular processes are small tubercles, the **mammillary processes**, which give attachment to both the multifidus and intertransversarii muscles of the back.

Vertebra L5, distinguished by its massive body and transverse processes, is the largest of all movable vertebrae. It carries the weight of the complete upper body. The L5 body is markedly taller anteriorly; therefore, it is largely responsible for the lumbosacral angle between the long axis of the lumbar region of the vertebral column and that of the sacrum (see Fig. 2.2D). Body weight is transmitted from L5 vertebra to the base of the sacrum, formed by the superior surface of S1 vertebra (Fig. 2.12A).

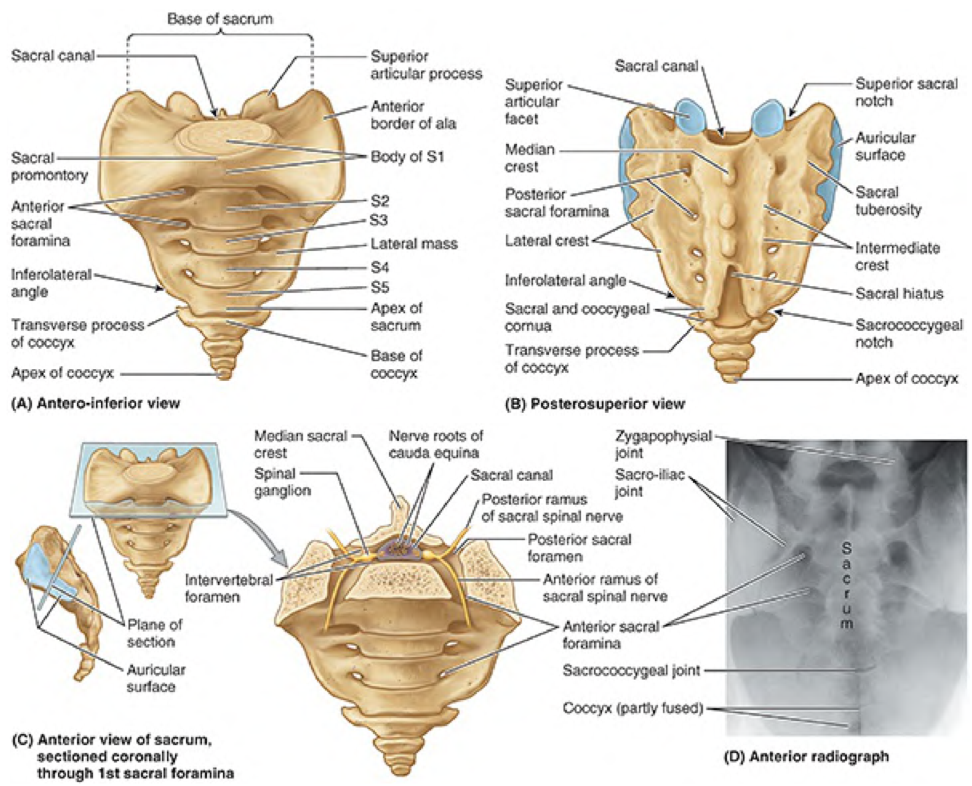


FIGURE 2.12. Sacrum and coccyx. A. Base and pelvic surface of sacrum and coccyx. **B.** Dorsal surface of sacrum and coccyx. **C.** Anatomical position of sacrum. Lateral and anterior orientation drawings of the sacrum in its anatomical position demonstrate the essentially frontal plane and level at which the sacrum has been sectioned to reveal the sacral canal containing the cauda equina. Spinal ganglia lie within the IV foramina, as they do at superior vertebral levels. However, the sacral posterior and anterior rami of the spinal nerves exit via posterior and anterior (pelvic) sacral foramina, respectively. The lateral orientation drawing demonstrates the auricular surface that joins the ilium to form the synovial part of the sacro-iliac joint. In the anatomical position, the S1–S3 vertebrae lie in an essentially transverse plane, forming a roof for the posterior pelvic cavity. **D.** Radiographic appearance of sacro-iliac joint. In anterior radiographs, the oblique plane of the auricular surfaces creates two lines indicating each sacro-iliac joint. The lateral line is the anterior aspect of

the joint, and the medial line is the posterior aspect.

SACRUM

The wedged-shaped **sacrum** (L. sacred bone) is usually composed of five fused sacral vertebrae in adults (Fig. 2.12). It is located between the hip bones and forms the roof and posterosuperior wall of the posterior half of the pelvic cavity. The triangular shape of the sacrum results from the rapid decrease in the size of the inferior lateral masses of the sacral vertebrae during development. The inferior half of the sacrum is not weight bearing; therefore, its bulk is diminished considerably. The sacrum provides strength and stability to the pelvis and transmits the weight of the body to the pelvic girdle, the bony ring formed by the hip bones and sacrum, to which the lower limbs are attached (see Fig. 7.3 in Chapter 7, Lower Limb).

The **sacral canal** is the continuation of the vertebral canal in the sacrum (Fig. 2.12B, C). It contains the bundle of spinal nerve roots arising inferior to the L1 vertebra, known as the cauda equina (L. horsetail), that descend past the termination of the spinal cord. On the pelvic and posterior surfaces of the sacrum between its vertebral components are typically four pairs of **sacral foramina** for the exit of the posterior and anterior rami of the spinal nerves (Fig. 2.12A–D). The anterior (pelvic) sacral foramina are larger than the posterior (dorsal) ones.

The **base of the sacrum** is formed by the superior surface of the S1 vertebra (Fig. 2.12A). Its superior articular processes articulate with the inferior articular processes of the L5 vertebra. The anterior projecting edge of the body of the S1 vertebra is the **sacral promontory** (L. mountain ridge), an important obstetrical landmark (see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum). The **apex of the sacrum**, its tapering inferior end, has an oval facet for articulation with the coccyx.

The sacrum supports the vertebral column and forms the posterior part of the bony pelvis. The sacrum is tilted so that it articulates with the L5 vertebra at the **lumbosacral angle** (see Fig. 2.2D), which varies from 130° to 160°. The sacrum is often wider in proportion to length in the female than in the male, but the body of the S1 vertebra is usually larger in males (see Fig. 6.3 and Table 6.1 in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum).

The **pelvic surface of the sacrum** is smooth and concave (Fig. 2.12A, C). Four transverse lines on this surface of sacra from adults indicate where fusion of the sacral vertebrae occurred. During childhood, the individual sacral vertebrae are connected by hyaline cartilage and separated by IV discs. Fusion of the sacral vertebrae starts after age 20; however, most of the IV discs remain unossified up to or beyond middle life.

The dorsal surface of the sacrum is rough, convex, and marked by five prominent longitudinal ridges (Fig. 2.12B). The central ridge, the **median sacral crest**, represents the fused rudimentary spinous processes of the superior three or four sacral vertebra; S5 does not have a spinous process. The **intermediate sacral crests** represent the fused articular processes, and the **lateral sacral crests** are the tips of the transverse processes of the fused sacral vertebrae.

The clinically important features of the dorsal surface of the sacrum are the inverted U-shaped sacral hiatus and the sacral cornua (L. horns). The **sacral hiatus** results from the absence of the laminae and spinous process of S5 and sometimes S4. The sacral hiatus leads into the sacral canal. Its depth varies, depending on how much of the spinous process and laminae of S4 are

present. The **sacral cornua**, representing the inferior articular processes of S5 vertebra, project inferiorly on each side of the sacral hiatus and are a helpful guide to its location.

The superior part of the **lateral surface of the sacrum** looks somewhat like an auricle (L. external ear). Because of its shape, this area is called the **auricular surface** (Fig. 2.12B, C). It is the site of the synovial part of the sacro-iliac joint between the sacrum and ilium. During life, the auricular surface is covered with hyaline cartilage.

COCCYX

The **coccyx** (tailbone) is a small triangular bone that is usually formed by fusion of the four rudimentary coccygeal vertebrae, although in some people, there may be one less or one more (Fig. 2.12A–D). **Coccygeal vertebra 1** (**vertebra Co1**) may remain separate from the fused group. The coccyx is the remnant of the skeleton of the embryonic tail-like caudal eminence, which is present in human embryos from the end of the 4th week until the beginning of the 8th week (Moore et al., 2020). The pelvic surface of the coccyx is concave and relatively smooth, and the posterior surface has rudimentary articular processes. Co1 is the largest and broadest of all the coccygeal vertebrae. Its short transverse processes are connected to the sacrum. Its rudimentary articular processes form **coccygeal cornua**, which articulate with the sacral cornua. The last three coccygeal vertebrae often fuse during middle life, forming a beak-like coccyx; this accounts for its name (G. coccyx, cuckoo). With increasing age, Co1 often fuses with the sacrum, and the remaining coccygeal vertebrae usually fuse to form a single bone.

The coccyx does not participate with the other vertebrae in support of the body weight when standing; however, when sitting, it may flex anteriorly somewhat, indicating that it is receiving some weight. The coccyx provides attachments for parts of the gluteus maximus and coccygeus muscles and the anococcygeal ligament, the median fibrous band of the pubococcygeus muscles (see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum).

SURFACE ANATOMY OF LUMBAR VERTEBRAE, SACRUM, AND COCCYX

The spinous processes of the lumbar vertebrae are large and easy to observe when the trunk is flexed (Fig. 2.13A). They can also be palpated in the posterior median furrow (Fig. 2.13B, C). The L2 spinous process provides an estimate of the position of the inferior end of the spinal cord. A horizontal line joining the highest points of the iliac crests passes through the tip of the L4 spinous process and the L4–L5 IV disc. This is a useful landmark when performing a lumbar puncture to obtain a sample of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) (see the Clinical Box “Lumbar Spinal Puncture” in this chapter).

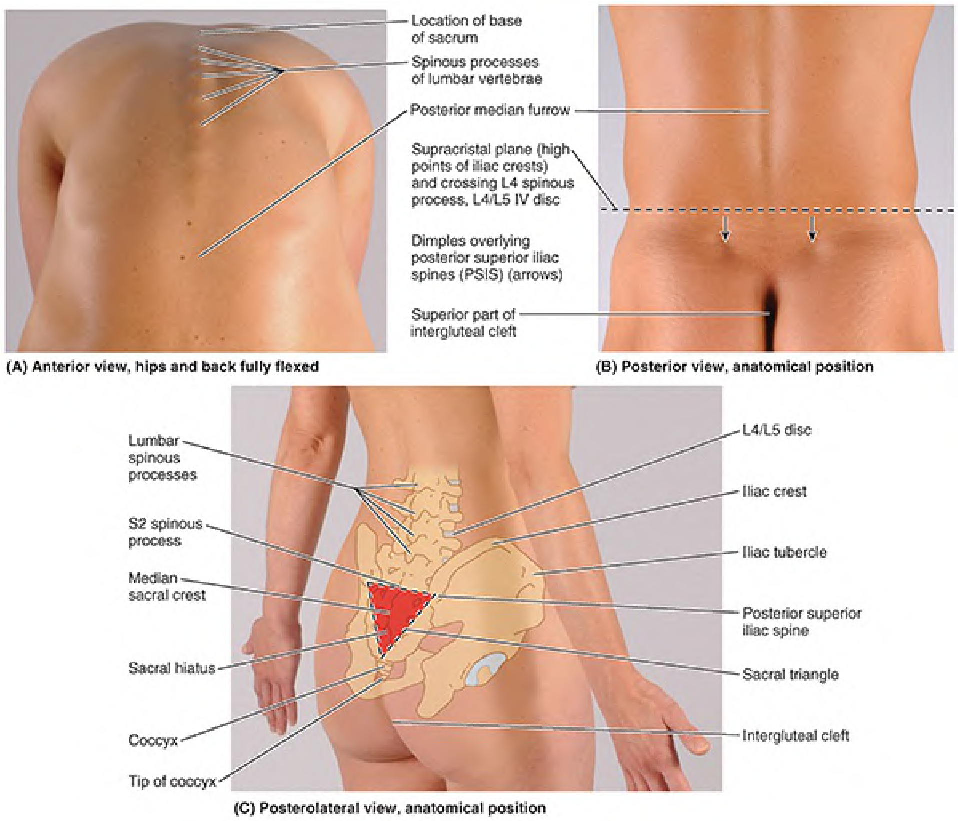


FIGURE 2.13. Surface anatomy of lumbar vertebrae, sacrum, and coccyx.

The S2 spinous process lies at the middle of a line drawn between the posterior superior iliac spines, indicated by the skin dimples (Fig. 2.13B). The dimples are formed by the attachment of skin and deep fascia to these spines. This level indicates the inferior extent of the subarachnoid space (lumbar cistern). The median sacral crest can be felt inferior to the L5 spinous process. The **sacral triangle** outlining the sacrum is formed by the lines joining the two posterior superior iliac spines and the superior part of the **intergluteal** (natal) **cleft** between the buttocks. The triangle is a common area of pain resulting from low back sprains. The sacral hiatus can be palpated at the inferior end of the sacrum located in the superior part of the intergluteal cleft.

The transverse processes of thoracic and lumbar vertebrae are covered with thick muscles and may or may not be palpable. The coccyx can be palpated in the intergluteal cleft, inferior to the apex of the sacral triangle. The **apex of the coccyx** can be palpated approximately 2.5 cm posterosuperior to the anus. Clinically, the coccyx is examined with a gloved finger in the anal canal.

Ossification of Vertebrae

Vertebrae begin to develop during the embryonic period as mesenchymal condensations around the notochord. Later, these mesenchymal bone models chondrify and cartilaginous vertebrae form. Typically, vertebrae begin to ossify toward the end of the embryonic period (8th week). Three **primary ossification centers** develop in each cartilaginous vertebra: an endochondral

centrum, which will eventually constitute most of the body of the vertebra, and two perichondral centers, one in each half of the **neural arch** (Fig. 2.14B, D, G, J, M).

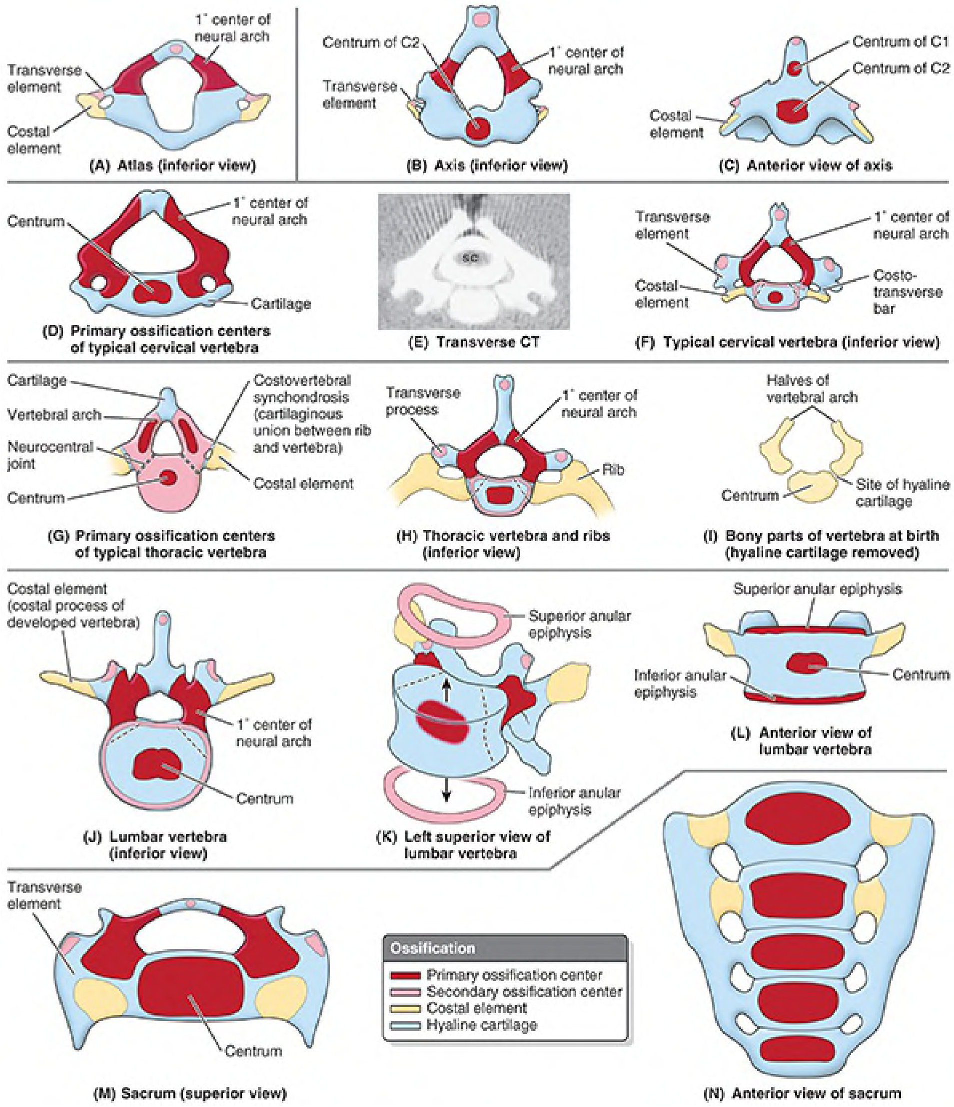


FIGURE 2.14. Ossification of vertebrae. A. Atlas. Vertebra C1 lacks a centrum. **B and C.** Axis. Vertebra C2 has two centra, one of which forms most of the dens. **D–F.** Development of "typical" cervical vertebrae. **D.** Primary ossification centers within hyaline cartilage of cervical vertebra. **E.** CT scan of vertebra shown in part **D** (SC, spinal cord). **F.** Primary and secondary ossification centers. **G–I.** Development of thoracic vertebrae. **G.** Three primary ossification centers in a cartilaginous vertebra of a 7-week-old embryo. Observe the joints present at this stage. **H.** Primary and secondary ossification centers with ribs developed from costal elements. **I.** Bony parts of a thoracic vertebra after skeletonization (cartilage removed). **J–L.** Development of lumbar vertebrae. **J.** Primary and secondary ossification centers. **K.** Anular epiphyses separated from the body. **L.** Anular epiphyses in place. **M and N.** Development of sacrum. Note that the ossification and fusion of sacral vertebrae may not be completed until age 35.

Ossification continues throughout the fetal period. At birth, typical vertebrae and the superiormost sacral vertebrae consist of three bony parts united by hyaline cartilage. The inferior sacral vertebrae and all the coccygeal vertebrae are still entirely cartilaginous; they ossify during infancy. The halves of the neural arches articulate at **neurocentral joints**, which are primary

cartilaginous joints (Fig. 2.14G). The halves of the neural/vertebral arch begin to fuse with each other posterior to the vertebral canal during the 1st year, beginning in the lumbar region and then in the thoracic and cervical regions. The neural arches begin fusing with the centra in the upper cervical region around the end of the 3rd year, but usually, the process is not completed in the lower lumbar region until after the 6th year (Moore et al., 2020).

Five **secondary ossification centers** develop during puberty in each typical vertebra: one at the tip of the spinous process; one at the tip of each transverse process; and two anular epiphyses (ring epiphyses), one on the superior and one on the inferior edges of each vertebral body (i.e., around the margins of the superior and inferior surfaces of the vertebral body) (Fig. 2.14F, I–L).

The hyaline **anular epiphyses**, to which the IV discs attach, are sometimes referred to as epiphysial growth plates and form the zone from which the vertebral body grows in height. When growth ceases early in the adult period, the epiphyses usually unite with the vertebral body. This union results in the characteristic smooth raised margin, the **epiphysial rim**, around the edges of the superior and inferior surfaces of the body of the adult vertebra (see Figs. 2.4 and 2.5A). All secondary ossification centers have usually united with the vertebrae by age 25; however, the ages at which specific unions occur vary.

Exceptions to the typical pattern of ossification occur in vertebrae C1, C2, and C7 (Fig. 2.14A–C) and in the sacrum (Fig. 2.14M, N) and coccyx. In addition, at all levels, primordial "ribs" (**costal elements**) appear in association with the secondary ossification centers of the transverse processes (**transverse elements**). The costal elements normally develop into ribs only in the thoracic region; they become part of the transverse process or its equivalent at other levels.

In the cervical region, the costal element normally remains diminutive as part of the transverse process. Foramina transversarii develop as gaps between the two lateral ossification centers, medial to a linking **costotransverse bar**, which forms the lateral boundary of the foramina (Fig. 2.14A–F). In addition, because of the cervical transverse processes being formed from the two developmental elements, the transverse processes of cervical vertebrae end laterally in an anterior tubercle (from the costal element) and a posterior tubercle (from the transverse element). The atypical morphology of vertebrae C1 and C2 is also established during development. The centrum of C1 becomes fused to that of C2 and loses its peripheral connection to the remainder of C1, thus forming the dens (Fig. 2.14C). Since these first two centra are fused and are now part of C2, no IV disc is formed between C1 and C2 to connect them. The part of the body that remains with C1 is represented by the anterior arch and tubercle of C1.

In the thoracic region, the costal elements separate from the developing vertebrae and elongate into ribs, and the transverse elements alone form the transverse processes (Fig. 2.14I).

All but the base of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae develop from the costal element (Fig. 2.14J). This projecting bar of the mature bone is therefore called the **costal process**. The transverse elements of the lumbar vertebrae form the mammillary processes.

The ala and auricular surfaces of the sacrum are formed by the fusion of the transverse and costal elements.

Variations in Vertebrae

Most people have 33 vertebrae, but developmental errors may result in 32 or 34 vertebrae (Fig. 2.15). Estimates of the frequency of abnormal numbers of vertebrae superior to the sacrum (the normal number is 24) range between 5% and 12%. Variations in vertebrae are affected by race, gender, and developmental factors (genetic and environmental). An increased number of vertebrae occur more often in males and a reduced number occurs more frequently in females. Some races show more variation in the number of vertebrae. Variations in the number of vertebrae may be clinically important. An increased length of the presacral region of the vertebral column increases the strain on the inferior part of the lumbar region of the column owing to the increased leverage. However, most numerical variations are detected incidentally during diagnostic medical imaging studies being performed for other reasons and during dissections and autopsies of persons with no history of back problems.

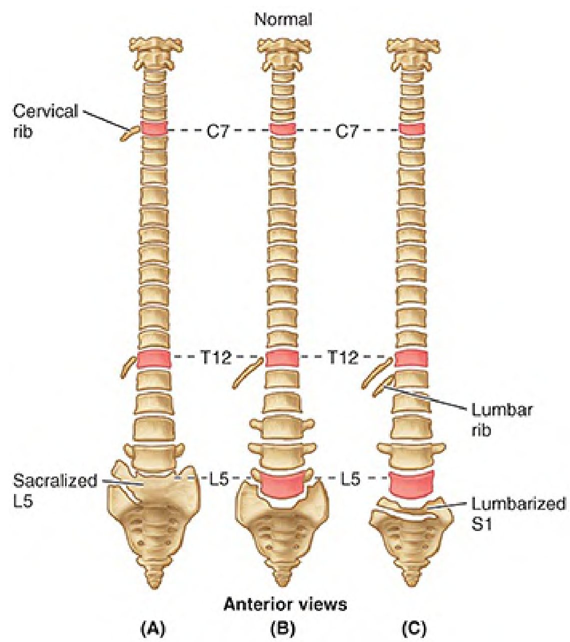


FIGURE 2.15. Variations in vertebrae and their relationship to ribs. A. "Cranial shift." In this case, there are 13 ribs, including a cervical rib articulating with vertebra C7 and a diminished 12th rib articulating with vertebra T12. Vertebra L5 is shown partially incorporated into the sacrum, but such "sacralization" can also be complete. The lowest sacral segment (S5) is partially segmented. **B.** Common arrangement of vertebrae and position of 1st and 12th ribs. **C.** "Caudal shift." Here the 12th rib is increased in size, and there is a small lumbar rib. The transverse process of vertebra L4 is increased in size, whereas that of vertebra L5 is greatly reduced. The first sacral segment is shown partially separated from the rest of the sacrum, but such "lumbarization" can also be complete. The 1st coccygeal segment is incorporated into the sacrum—that is, it is "sacralized."

Caution is necessary when describing an injury (e.g., when reporting the site of a vertebral fracture). When counting the vertebrae, begin at the base of the neck. The number of cervical vertebrae (seven) is remarkably constant (and not just in humans, but among vertebrates—even giraffes and snakes have seven cervical vertebrae). When considering a numerical variation, the thoracic and lumbar regions must be considered together because people having more than five lumbar vertebrae often have a compensatory decrease in the number of thoracic vertebrae (O'Rahilly, 1986).

Variations in vertebrae also involve the relationship between the vertebrae and ribs, and the number of vertebrae that fuse to form the sacrum (Fig. 2.15). The relationship of presacral vertebrae to ribs and/or sacrum may occur higher (cranial shift) or lower (caudal shift) than normal. Note, however, that a C7 vertebra articulating with a rudimentary cervical rib(s) is still considered a cervical vertebra. The same is true for lumbar vertebrae and lumbar ribs. Likewise, an L5 vertebra fused to the sacrum is referred to as a "sacralized 5th lumbar vertebra" (see the Clinical Box "Abnormal Fusion of Vertebrae" in this chapter).

CLINICAL BOX

VERTEBRAE

Vertebral Body Osteoporosis

Vertebral body osteoporosis is a common metabolic bone disease that is often detected during routine radiographic studies. Osteoporosis results from a net demineralization of the bones caused by a disruption of the normal balance of calcium deposition and resorption. As a result, the quality of bone is reduced and atrophy of skeletal tissue occurs. Although osteoporosis affects the entire skeleton, the most affected areas are the neck of the femur, the bodies of vertebrae, the metacarpals (bones of the hand), and the radius. These bones become weakened and brittle and are subject to fracture.

Radiographs taken during early to moderate osteoporosis demonstrate demineralization, which is evident as diminished radiodensity of the trabecular (spongy) bone of the vertebral bodies, causing the thinned cortical bone to appear relatively prominent (Fig. B2.1B). Osteoporosis especially affects the horizontal trabeculae of the trabecular bone of the vertebral body (compare Figs. 2.4 and B2.10A). Consequently, vertical striping may become apparent, reflecting the loss of the horizontal supporting trabeculae and thickening of the vertical struts (Fig. B2.1A). Radiographs in later stages may reveal vertebral collapse (compression fractures) and increased thoracic kyphosis (Fig. B2.1C; see Fig. B2.22B, F). Vertebral body osteoporosis occurs in all vertebrae but is most common in thoracic vertebrae and is an especially common finding in postmenopausal females.

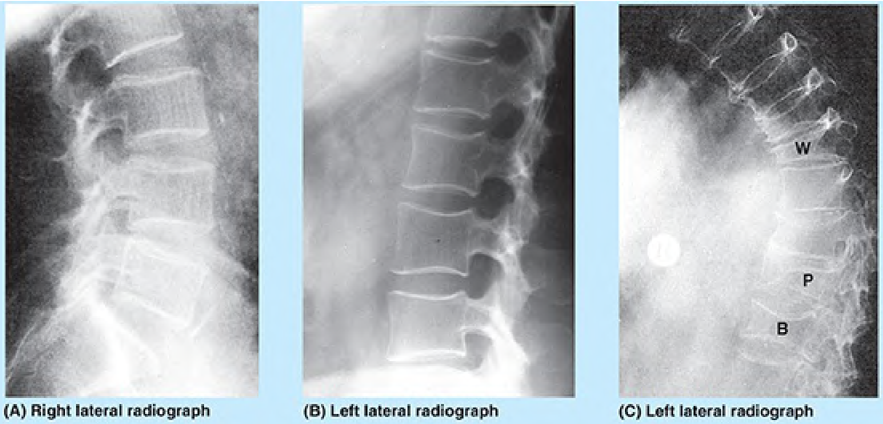


FIGURE B2.1. Effects of osteoporosis on vertebral column. A. Early to moderate osteoporosis. This phase is characterized by vertical striation in the vertebral bodies. **B.** Later osteoporosis. Now the striated pattern is lost as the continued loss of trabecular bone produces uniform radiolucency (less white, more "transparent"). In contrast, the cortical bone, while thinned, appears relatively prominent. **C.** Late osteoporosis in thoracic region of vertebral column. There is excessive thoracic kyphosis, a result of the collapse of the vertebral bodies, which have become wedge shaped (W), planar (P), and biconcave (B).

Cervical Ribs

A cervical rib is a relatively common anomaly. In 1–2% of people, the developmental costal element of C7, which normally becomes a small part of the transverse process that lies anterior to the foramen transversarium (see Fig. 2.7A), becomes abnormally enlarged (Fig. B2.2). This structure may vary in size from a small protuberance to a complete rib that occurs bilaterally about 60% of the time.

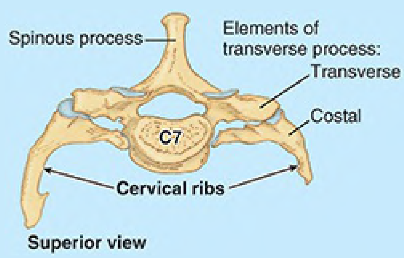
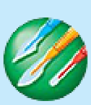


FIGURE B2.2. Cervical ribs.

The supernumerary (extra) rib or a fibrous connection extending from its tip to the first thoracic rib may elevate and place pressure on structures that emerge from the superior thoracic aperture, notably the subclavian artery or inferior trunk of the brachial plexus, and may cause thoracic outlet syndrome.

Laminectomy



The surgical excision of one or more spinous processes and the adjacent supporting vertebral laminae in a particular region of the vertebral column is called a laminectomy (1 in Fig. B2.3A). The term is also commonly used to denote removal of most of the vertebral arch by transecting the pedicles (2 in Fig. B2.3A).

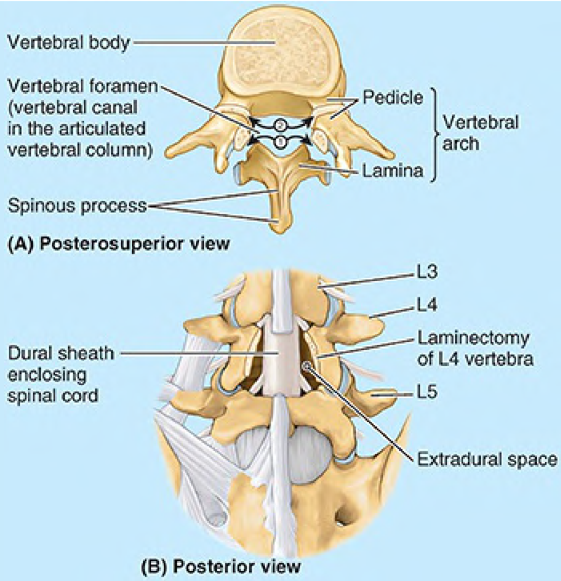


FIGURE B2.3. **Laminectomy. A.** Sites at which laminectomies are performed. **B.** Postlaminectomy.

Laminectomies are performed surgically (or anatomically in the dissection laboratory) to gain access to the vertebral canal, providing posterior exposure of the spinal cord (if performed above the L2 level) and/or the roots of specific spinal nerves. Surgical laminectomy is often performed to relieve pressure on the spinal cord or nerve roots caused by a tumor, herniated IV disc, or bony hypertrophy (excess growth).

Fracture and Dislocation of Atlas

The atlas (vertebra C1) is a bony ring, with two wedge-shaped lateral masses, connected by relatively thin anterior and posterior arches and a transverse ligament (see Fig. 2.8B). Because the taller side of the lateral mass is directed laterally, vertical forces (e.g., striking the bottom of a pool in a diving accident) compressing the lateral masses between the occipital condyles and the axis drive them apart, fracturing one or both of the anterior or posterior arches (Fig. B2.4A, B).

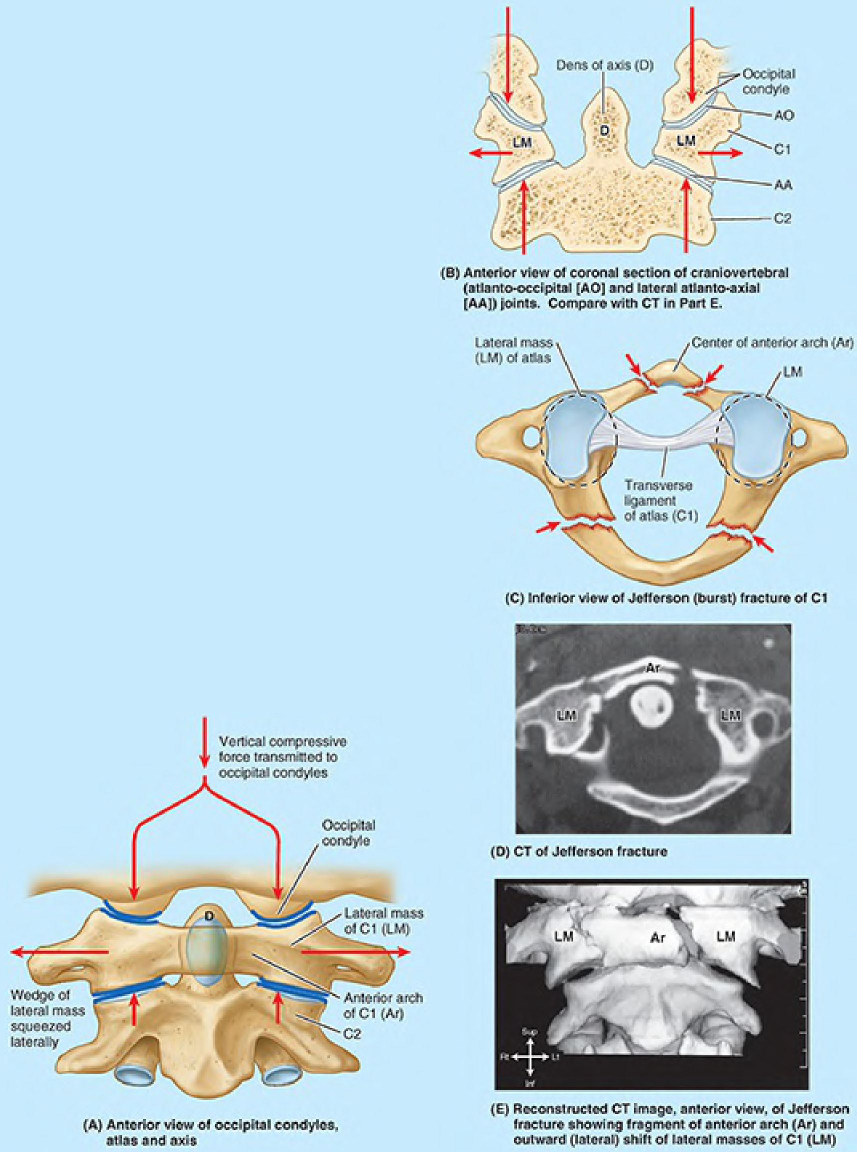


FIGURE B2.4. Jefferson fracture of atlas.

If the force is sufficient, rupture of the transverse ligament that links them will also occur (Fig. B2.4C). The resulting Jefferson or burst fracture (Fig. B2.4C–E) in itself does not necessarily result in spinal cord injury because the dimensions of the bony ring actually increase. Spinal cord injury is more likely, however, if the transverse ligament has also been ruptured (see the Clinical Box "Rupture of Transverse Ligament of Atlas" in this chapter) indicated radiographically by widely spread lateral masses.

Fracture and Dislocation of Axis

Fractures of the vertebral arch of the axis (vertebra C2) are one of the most common injuries of the cervical vertebrae (up to 40%) (Yochum & Rowe, 2004). Usually the

fracture occurs in the bony column formed by the superior and inferior articular processes of the axis, the pars interarticularis (see Fig. 2.8C). A fracture in this location, called a traumatic spondylolysis of C2 (Fig. B2.5A, B, D), usually occurs because of hyperextension of the head on the neck rather than the combined hyperextension of the head and neck that may result in whiplash injury. Whiplash injury generally produces strains of muscles and/or ligaments instead of fractures. While whiplash is painful and debilitating in the short term, it is unlike vertebral fracture, which is potentially life-changing.

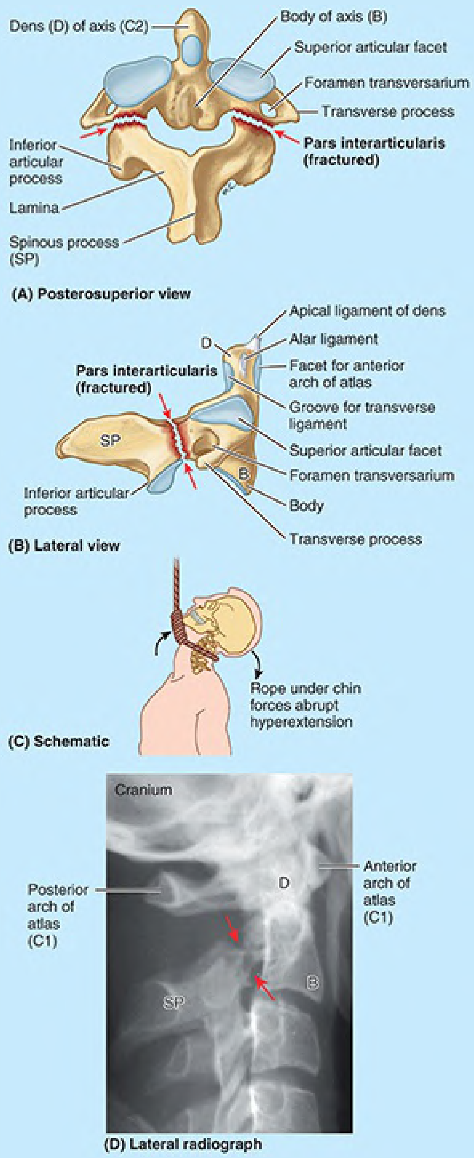


FIGURE B2.5. Hangman's fracture and dislocation of axis. A and B. The pars interarticularis of the C2 vertebra is fractured (arrows). **C.** The position of the hangman's noose knot produces hyperextension during hanging (arrows). **D.** Radiograph demonstrating a hangman's fracture (arrows).

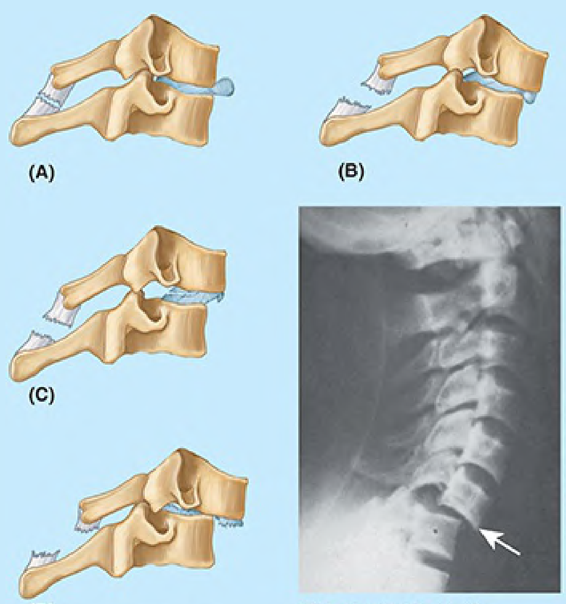
Such hyperextension of the head was used to execute criminals by hanging, in which the knot was placed under the chin before the body suddenly dropped its length through the gallows floor (Fig. B2.5C); thus, this fracture is called a hangman's fracture.

In more severe injuries, the body of the C2 vertebra is displaced anteriorly with respect to the body of the C3 vertebra. With or without such subluxation (incomplete dislocation) of the axis, injury of the spinal cord and/or of the brainstem is likely, sometimes resulting in quadriplegia (paralysis of all four limbs) or death.

Fractures of the dens are also common axis injuries (40–50%), which may result from a horizontal blow to the head, or as a complication of osteopenia (pathological loss of bone mass) (see the Clinical Box “Fracture of Dens of Axis” in this chapter).

Dislocation of Cervical Vertebrae

Because of their more horizontally oriented articular facets, the cervical vertebrae are less tightly interlocked than other vertebrae. The cervical vertebrae, “stacked like coins,” can be dislocated in neck injuries with less force than is required to fracture them (Fig. B2.6A–F). Because of the large vertebral canal in the cervical region, slight dislocation can occur here without damaging the spinal cord (Fig. B2.6B). Severe dislocations, or dislocations combined with fractures (fracture–dislocations), injure the spinal cord. If the dislocation does not result in “facet jumping” with locking of the displaced articular processes (Fig. B2.6F, G), the cervical vertebrae may self-reduce (slip back into place) so that a radiograph may not indicate that the cord has been injured. An MRI, however, may reveal the resulting soft tissue damage (Fig. B2.6F).



(D) A–D Lateral views
(E) Lateral radiograph, dislocation at C6–C7

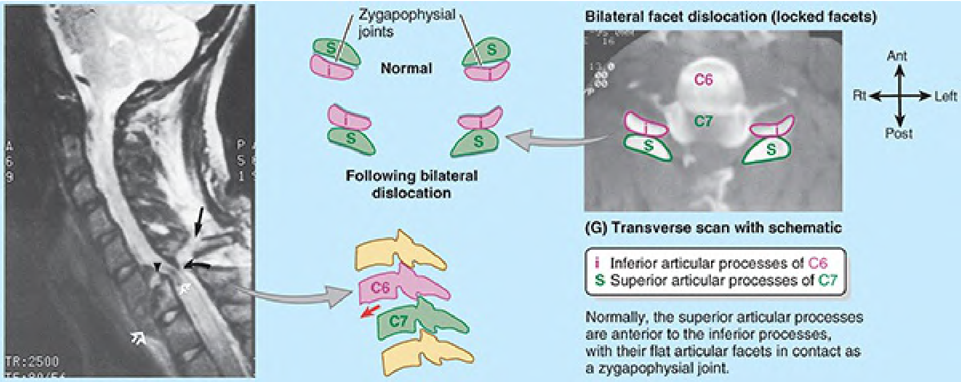


FIGURE B2.6. **A–E. Dislocations of cervical vertebrae**. **A–D.** Four stages of injury are shown. **A.** Stage I: flexion sprain. **B.** Stage II: anterior subluxation with 25% anterior translation. **C.** Stage III: 50% translation. **D.** Stage IV: complete dislocation. **E.** Radiograph of a stage III dislocation with 50% translation (arrow). **F.** MRI of a stage IV dislocation with cord injury. The body of C7 is fractured (open white arrowheads). The ligamentum flavum is disrupted (curved black arrow), and the spinous process is avulsed (straight black arrow). **G.** CT of same individual shown in part **F**. The articular processes of the C6 and C7 vertebrae are reversed due to "facet jumping."

Lumbar Spinal Stenosis

Lumbar spinal stenosis describes a stenotic (narrow) vertebral foramen in one or more lumbar vertebrae (Fig. B2.7B). This condition may be a hereditary anomaly that can make a person more vulnerable to age-related degenerative changes such as IV disc bulging. Lumbar spinal nerves increase in size as the vertebral column descends, but paradoxically, the IV foramina decrease in size. Narrowing is usually maximal at the level of the IV discs. However, stenosis of a lumbar vertebral foramen alone may cause compression of one or more spinal nerve roots occupying the inferior vertebral canal (see Fig. 2.2D). Surgical treatment of lumbar stenosis may consist of decompressive laminectomy (see the Clinical Box "Laminectomy"). When IV disc protrusion occurs in a patient with spinal stenosis (Fig. B2.7B), it further compromises a vertebral canal that is already limited, as does arthritic proliferation and ligamentous degeneration.

(A) Normal vertebral foramen (B) Stenotic vertebral foramen

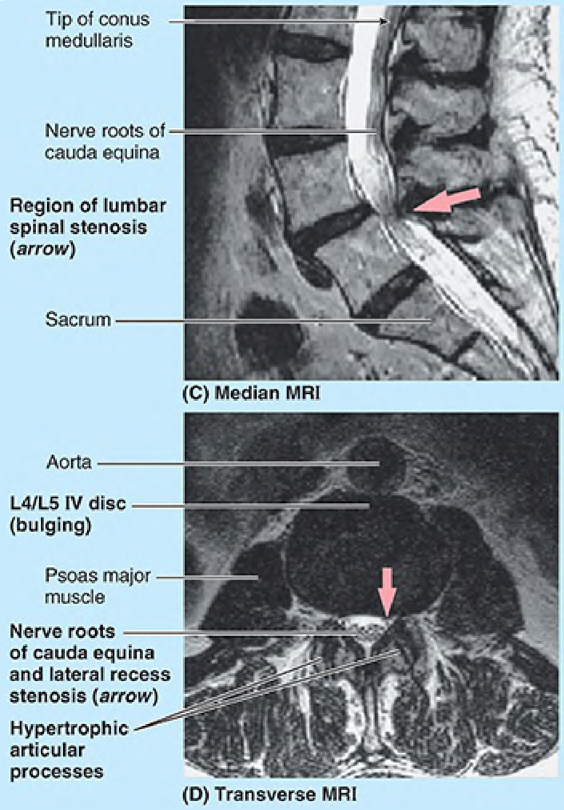


FIGURE B2.7. Lumbar spinal stenosis. A and B. Normal (**A**) and stenotic (**B**) vertebral foramina (asterisks) are compared. **C and D.** Lumbar MRIs demonstrate a high-grade stenosis caused by hypertrophic articular processes and ligamenta flava and moderate peripheral bulging of the L4–L5 IV disc.

Caudal Epidural Anesthesia

In living persons, the sacral hiatus is closed by the membranous sacrococcygeal ligament (Fig. B2.8A), which is pierced by the filum terminale (a connective tissue strand extending from the tip of the spinal cord to the coccyx) (Fig. B2.8C). Deep (superior) to the ligament, the epidural space of the sacral canal is filled with fatty connective tissue (Fig. B2.8B). In caudal epidural anesthesia or analgesia, anesthetic or analgesic agents are injected into the fat of the sacral canal that surrounds the proximal portions of the sacral nerves. This can be accomplished by several routes, including the sacral hiatus (Fig. B2.8B, C). Because the sacral hiatus is located between the sacral cornua and inferior to the S4 spinous process or median sacral crest, these palpable bony landmarks are important for locating the hiatus (Fig. B2.8A). The agent spreads superiorly and extradurally, where it acts on the S2–Co1 spinal nerves of the cauda equina. The height to which the agent ascends is controlled by the amount injected and the position of the patient. Sensation is lost inferior to the epidural block. Anesthetic and analgesic agents can also be injected through the posterior sacral foramina into the sacral canal around the spinal nerve roots (transsacral epidural anesthesia) (Fig. B2.8B). Epidural anesthesia during childbirth is discussed in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum.

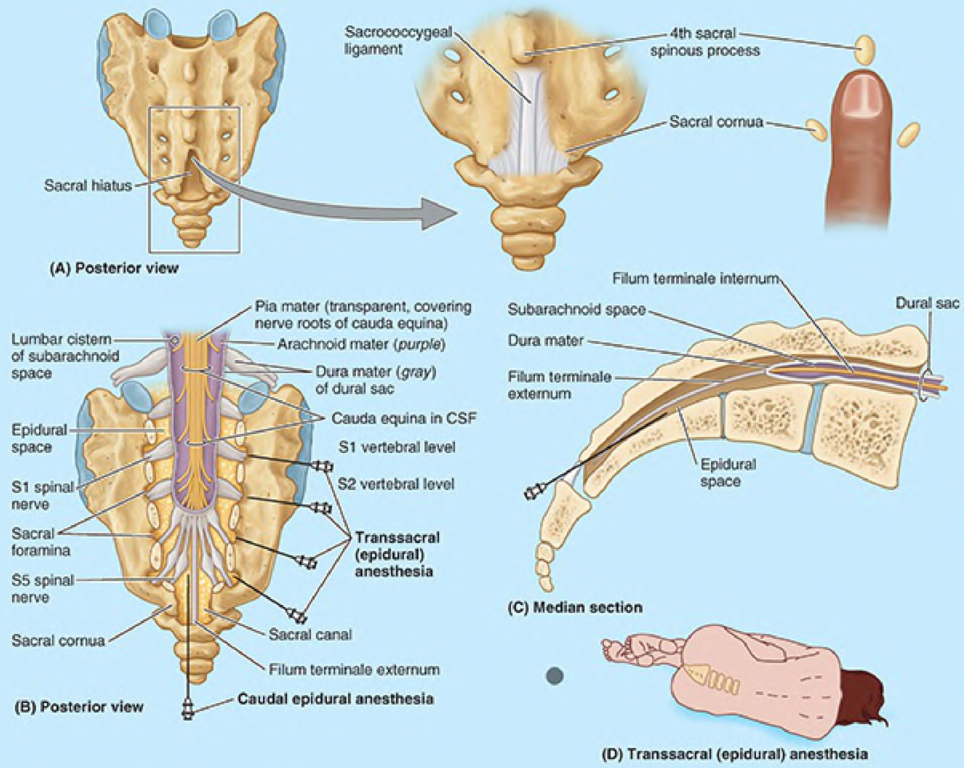


FIGURE B2.8. **Epidural anesthesia. A.** Palpation of sacrococcygeal ligament. **B and C.** Sacrum cut to show needle position. **D.** Position of patient.

Injury of Coccyx

An abrupt fall onto the buttocks may cause a painful subperiosteal bruising or fracture of the coccyx, or a fracture–dislocation of the sacrococcygeal joint. Displacement is common, and surgical removal of the fractured bone may be required to relieve pain. An especially difficult childbirth occasionally injures the mother's coccyx. A troublesome syndrome, coccygodynia (or coccydynia), often follows coccygeal trauma; pain relief is commonly difficult.

Abnormal Fusion of Vertebrae

In approximately 5% of people, L5 is partly or completely incorporated into the sacrum. These conditions are known as hemisacralization and sacralization of the L5 vertebra, respectively (Fig. B2.9A). In others, S1 is more or less separated from the sacrum and is partly or completely fused with L5 vertebra, which is called lumbarization of the S1 vertebra (Fig. B2.9B). When L5 is sacralized, the L5–S1 level is strong and the L4–L5 level degenerates, often producing painful symptoms.

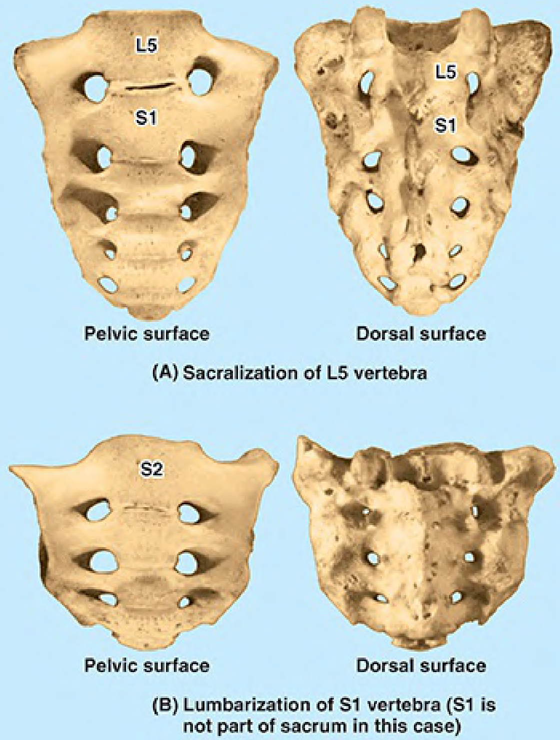
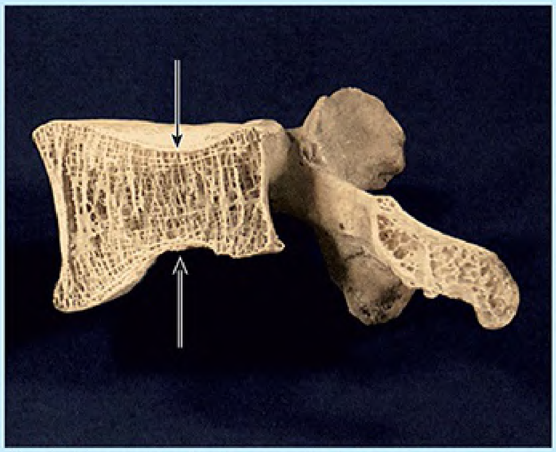


FIGURE B2.9. Abnormal fusion of vertebrae.

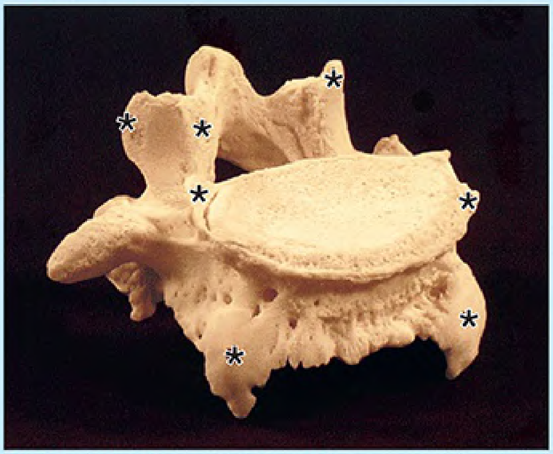
Effect of Aging on Vertebrae

Between birth and age 5, the body of a typical lumbar vertebra increases in height threefold (from 5–6 mm to 15–18 mm), and between ages 5 and 13, it increases another 45–50%. Longitudinal growth continues throughout adolescence, but the rate decreases and is completed between ages 18 and 25.

During middle and older age, there is an overall decrease in bone density and strength, particularly centrally within the vertebral body. Consequently, the articular surfaces gradually bow inward so that both the superior and inferior surfaces of the vertebrae become increasingly concave (Fig. B2.10A), and the IV discs become increasingly convex. The bone loss and consequent change in shape of the vertebral bodies may account in part for the slight loss in height that occurs with aging. The development of these concavities may cause an apparent narrowing of the intervertebral “space” on radiographs based on the distance between the margins of the vertebral bodies; however, this should not be interpreted as a loss of IV disc thickness.



(A) Median section, lumbar vertebra (*arrows*, increased concavities)



(B) Anterolateral view, lumbar vertebra *osteophytes

FIGURE B2.10. Effects of aging on vertebrae.

Aging of the IV discs combined with the changing shape of the vertebrae results in an increase in compressive forces at the periphery of the vertebral bodies, where the discs attach. In response, osteophytes (bony spurs) commonly develop around the margins of the vertebral body (along the attachments of the fibers of the outer part of the disc), especially anteriorly and posteriorly (Fig. B2.10B). Similarly, as altered mechanics place greater stresses on the zygapophysial joints, osteophytes develop along the attachments of the joint capsules and accessory ligaments, especially those of the superior articular process, whereas extensions of the articular cartilage develop around the articular facets of the inferior processes.

This bony or cartilaginous growth during advanced age has traditionally been viewed as a disease process (spondylosis in the case of the vertebral bodies and osteoarthrosis in the case of the zygapophysial joints), but it may be more realistic to view it as an expected morphological change with age, representing normal anatomy for a particular age range.

Correlation of these findings with pain is often difficult. Some people with these manifestations present with pain, others demonstrate the same age-related changes but have

no pain, and still others exhibit little morphological change but complain of the same types of pain as those with evident change. In view of this and the typical occurrence of these findings, some clinicians have suggested that such age-related changes should not be considered pathological but as the normal anatomy of aging (Bogduk, 2012).

Anomalies of Vertebrae

Sometimes the epiphysis of a transverse process fails to fuse. Therefore, caution must be exercised so that a persistent epiphysis is not mistaken for a vertebral fracture in a radiograph or computed tomographic (CT) scan.

A common birth defect of the vertebral column is spina bifida occulta, in which the neural arches of L5 and/or S1 fail to develop normally and fuse posterior to the vertebral canal. This bony defect, present in up to 24% of the population (Greer, 2010), usually occurs in the vertebral arch of L5 and/or S1. In a minor form of spina bifida, the only evidence of its presence may be a small dimple with a tuft of hair arising from the lower back. The defect is concealed by the overlying skin. Most infants with this minor type of spina bifida have back problems (Moore et al., 2020). When examining a neonate, adjacent vertebrae should be palpated in sequence to be certain the vertebral arches are intact and continuous from the cervical to the sacral regions.

In severe types of spina bifida, spina bifida cystica, one or more vertebral arches may fail to develop completely. Spina bifida cystica is associated with herniation of the meninges (meningocele, a spina bifida associated with a meningeal cyst) and/or the spinal cord (meningomyelocele) (Fig. B2.11). Neurological symptoms are usually present in severe cases of meningomyelocele (e.g., paralysis of the limbs and disturbances in bladder and bowel control). Severe forms of spina bifida result from neural tube defects, such as the defective closure of the neural tube during the 4th week of embryonic development (Moore et al., 2020).

FIGURE B2.11. **An infant with spina bifida cystica with meningomyelocele in lumbar region.**

The Bottom Line: Vertebrae

Typical vertebrae: Vertebrae consist of vertebral bodies, which bear weight and increase in size proportionately, and vertebral arches, which collectively house and protect the spinal cord and the roots of the spinal nerves. ■ Processes extending from the vertebral arch provide attachment and leverage for muscles, or direct movements between vertebrae.

Regional characteristics of vertebrae: The chief regional characteristics of vertebrae are ■ foramina transversarii for cervical vertebrae, ■ costal facets for thoracic vertebrae, ■ the absence of foramina transversarii and costal facets for lumbar vertebrae, ■ the fusion of adjacent sacral vertebrae, and ■ the rudimentary nature of coccygeal vertebrae.

Ossification of vertebrae: Vertebrae typically ossify from three primary ossification centers within a cartilaginous model: a centrum that will form most of the body and a center in each half of the neural arch. ■ Thus, by the time of birth, most vertebrae consist of three bony parts united by hyaline cartilage. ■ Fusion occurs during the first 6 years in a centrifugal pattern from the lumbar region. ■ During puberty, five secondary ossification centers appear: three related to the spinous and transverse processes and two anular epiphyses around the superior and inferior margins of the vertebral body. ■ Costal elements formed in association with the ossification center of the transverse process usually form ribs only in the thoracic region. They form components of the transverse processes or their equivalents in other regions. ■ Knowledge of the pattern of ossification of vertebrae allows understanding of the normal structure of typical and atypical vertebrae as well as variations and malformations.

VERTEBRAL COLUMN

The **vertebral column** (spine) is an aggregate structure, normally made up of 33 vertebrae and the components that unite them into a single structural, functional entity—the "axis" of the axial skeleton (see Fig. 2.2). Because it provides the semirigid, central "core" about which movements of the trunk occur, "soft" or hollow structures that run a longitudinal course are subject to damage or kinking (e.g., the spinal cord, descending aorta, venae cavae, thoracic duct, and esophagus). Thus, they lie in close proximity to the vertebral axis, where they receive its semirigid support and torsional stresses on them are minimized.

Joints of Vertebral Column

The joints of the vertebral column include the following:

- Joints of the vertebral bodies
- Joints of the vertebral arches
- Craniovertebral (atlanto-axial and atlanto-occipital) joints

- Costovertebral joints (see Chapter 4, Thorax)
- Sacro-iliac joints (see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum)

JOINTS OF VERTEBRAL BODIES

The joints of the vertebral bodies are symphyses (secondary cartilaginous joints) designed for weight bearing and strength. The articulating surfaces of adjacent vertebrae are connected by IV discs and ligaments (Figs. 2.16 and 2.17).

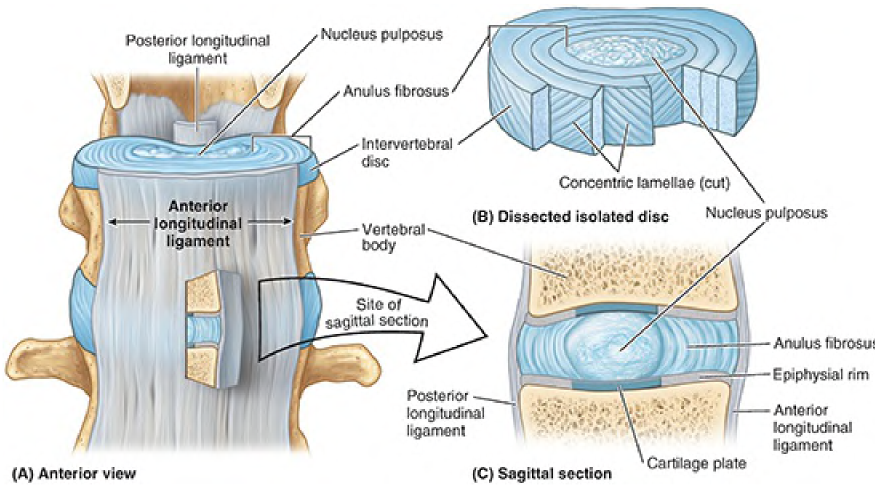


FIGURE 2.16. Structure of IV discs. A. Portion of dissected lumbar region with sagittal slice shown in part **C** being extracted. **B.** Intervertebral disc dissected to demonstrate lamellae. **C.** Sagittal section from part **A** showing eccentric placement of nucleus within disc.

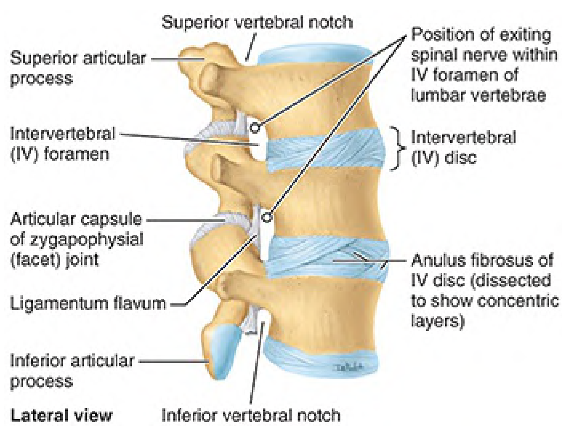


FIGURE 2.17. Lumbar vertebrae and IV discs. Superior lumbar region showing the lamellated structure of the anuli fibrosi of the discs and the structures involved in formation of IV foramina. Except in the cervical region, the disc forms the inferior half of the anterior boundary of an IV foramen as shown. Thus, herniation of the disc is less likely to affect the spinal nerve that exit from the superior part of that foramen, bounded by bone.

Intervertebral (IV) discs provide strong attachments between the vertebral bodies, uniting them into a continuous semirigid column and forming the inferior half of the anterior border of the IV foramen. In aggregate, the discs account for 20–25% of the length (height) of the vertebral column (see Fig. 2.2). As well as permitting movement between adjacent vertebrae, their resilient deformability allows them to serve as shock absorbers. Each IV disc consists of an anulus

fibrosus, an outer fibrous part, composed of concentric lamellae of fibrocartilage, and a gelatinous central mass, the nucleus pulposus.

The **anulus fibrosus** (L. anus, a ring) is a bulging fibrous ring consisting of concentric lamellae (layers) of fibrocartilage forming the circumference of the IV disc (Figs. 2.16 and 2.17). The anuli insert into the smooth, rounded epiphysial rims on the articular surfaces of the vertebral bodies formed by the fused anular epiphyses (see Figs. 2.5A and 2.14K, L). The fibers forming each lamella run obliquely from one vertebra to another, about 30° or more from vertical. The fibers of adjacent lamellae cross each other obliquely in opposite directions at angles of more than 60° (Figs. 2.16B and 2.17). This arrangement allows limited rotation between adjacent vertebrae, while providing a strong bond between them. The anulus is thinner posteriorly and may be incomplete posteriorly in the adult in the cervical region (Mercer & Bogduk, 1999). The anulus becomes decreasingly vascularized centrally, and only the outer third of the anulus receives sensory innervation.

The **nucleus pulposus** (L. pulpa, fleshy) is the core of the IV disc (Figs. 2.16 and 2.18A). At birth, these pulpy nuclei are about 88% water and are initially more cartilaginous than fibrous. Their semifluid nature is responsible for much of the flexibility and resilience of the IV disc and of the vertebral column as a whole.

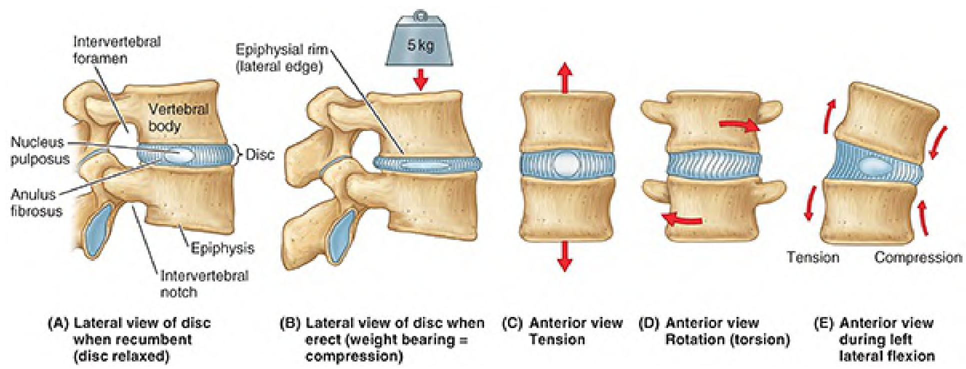


FIGURE 2.18. **Structure and function of IV discs. A.** Non–weight-bearing vertebral motion unit. The fibrogelatinous nucleus pulposus occupies an eccentric position in the central portion of the disc and acts as a fulcrum and cushion or shock-absorbing mechanism. **B–E.** IV disc dynamics. Load and movement change the shape of the nucleus pulposus. **B.** Compression. The pulpy nucleus flattens and the anulus bulges when weight is applied, as occurs during standing and more so during lifting. **C.** Tension. When hanging by upper limbs, the disc is stretched vertically by the weight of the lower body and the nucleus rounds up. **D.** Torsion. Rotational movements exert a twisting force on the annulus, compressing the nucleus. **E.** Combined tension and compression. During flexion and extension movements, the nucleus pulposus serves as a fulcrum. The anulus is simultaneously placed under compression on one side and tension on the other.

Vertical forces deform the IV discs, which thus serve as shock absorbers. The nuclei become broader when compressed and thinner when tensed or stretched (as when hanging or suspended) (Fig. 2.18B, C). Compression and tension occur simultaneously in the same disc during anterior and lateral flexion and extension of the vertebral column (Fig. 2.18E.). During these movements, as well as during rotation (Fig. 2.18D), the turgid nucleus acts as a semifluid fulcrum. Because the lamellae of the anulus fibrosus are thinner and less numerous posteriorly than they are anteriorly or laterally, the nucleus pulposus is not centered in the disc but is positioned between the center and posterior aspect of the disc (Fig. 2.16). The nucleus pulposus is avascular; it

receives its nourishment by diffusion from blood vessels at the periphery of the anulus fibrosus and vertebral body.

There is no IV disc between C1 and C2 vertebrae; the most inferior functional disc is between L5 and S1 vertebrae. The discs vary in thickness in different regions. The thickness of the discs increases as the vertebral column descends. However, their thickness relative to the size of the bodies they connect is most clearly related to the range of movement, and relative thickness is greatest in the cervical and lumbar regions. Their thickness is most uniform in the thoracic region. The discs are thicker anteriorly in the cervical and lumbar regions, their varying shapes producing the secondary curvatures of the vertebral column (see Figs. 2.2B, 2.27, and 2.28).

Uncovertebral "joints" or **clefts** (of Luschka) commonly develop between the unci of the bodies of C3 or C4–C6 or C7 vertebrae and the beveled inferolateral surfaces of the vertebral bodies superior to them after 10 years of age (Fig. 2.19). The joints are at the lateral and posterolateral margins of the IV discs. The articulating surfaces of these joint-like structures are covered with cartilage moistened by fluid contained within an interposed potential space, or "capsule." They are considered synovial joints by some; others consider them to be degenerative spaces (clefts) in the discs occupied by extracellular fluid. The uncovertebral "joints" are frequent sites of bone spur formation in later years, which may cause neck pain.

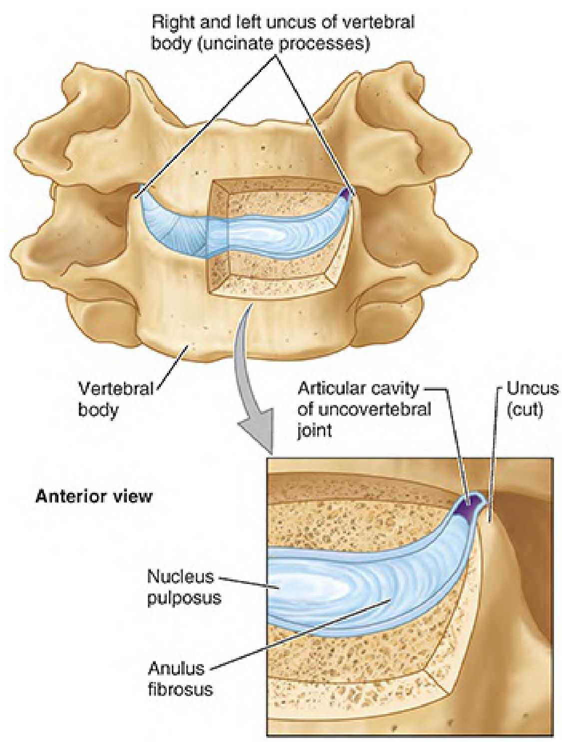


FIGURE 2.19. Uncovertebral joints. These small, synovial joint-like structures are between the unci of the bodies of the lower vertebrae and the beveled surfaces of the vertebral bodies superior to them. These joints are at the posterolateral margins of the IV discs.

The **anterior longitudinal ligament** is a strong, broad fibrous band that covers and connects the anterolateral aspects of the vertebral bodies and IV discs (Fig. 2.20). The ligament extends longitudinally from the pelvic surface of the sacrum to the anterior tubercle of vertebra C1 and

the occipital bone anterior to the foramen magnum are the superiormost parts, the anterior atlanto-axial and atlanto-occipital ligaments. Although thickest on the anterior aspect of the vertebral bodies (illustrations often depict only this portion), the anterior longitudinal ligament also covers the lateral aspects of the bodies to the IV foramen. This ligament prevents hyperextension of the vertebral column, maintaining stability of the joints between the vertebral bodies. The anterior longitudinal ligament is the only ligament that limits extension; all other IV ligaments limit forms of flexion.

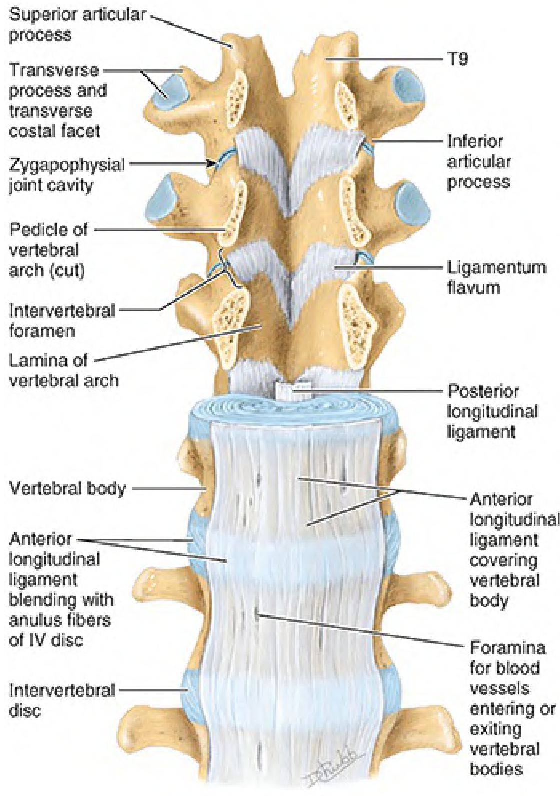


FIGURE 2.20. Relationship of ligaments to vertebrae and IV discs. The inferior thoracic (T9–T12) and superior lumbar (L1–L2) vertebrae, with associated discs and ligaments, are shown. The pedicles of the T9–T11 vertebrae have been sawn through and their bodies and intervening discs removed to provide an anterior view of the posterior wall of the vertebral canal. Between the adjacent left or right pedicles, the inferior and superior articular processes and the zygapophysial joints between them (from which joint capsules have been removed) and the lateral-most extent of the ligamenta flava form the posterior boundaries of IV foramina. The anterior longitudinal ligament is broad, whereas the posterior longitudinal ligament is narrow.

The **posterior longitudinal ligament** is a much narrower, somewhat weaker band than the anterior longitudinal ligament (Figs. 2.20 and 2.21B). The posterior longitudinal ligament runs within the vertebral canal along the posterior aspect of the vertebral bodies. It is attached mainly to the IV discs and less so to the posterior aspects of the vertebral bodies from C2 to the sacrum, often bridging fat and vessels between the ligament and the bony surface. This ligament weakly resists hyperflexion of the vertebral column and helps prevent or redirect posterior herniation of the nucleus pulposus. It is well provided with nociceptive (pain) nerve endings.

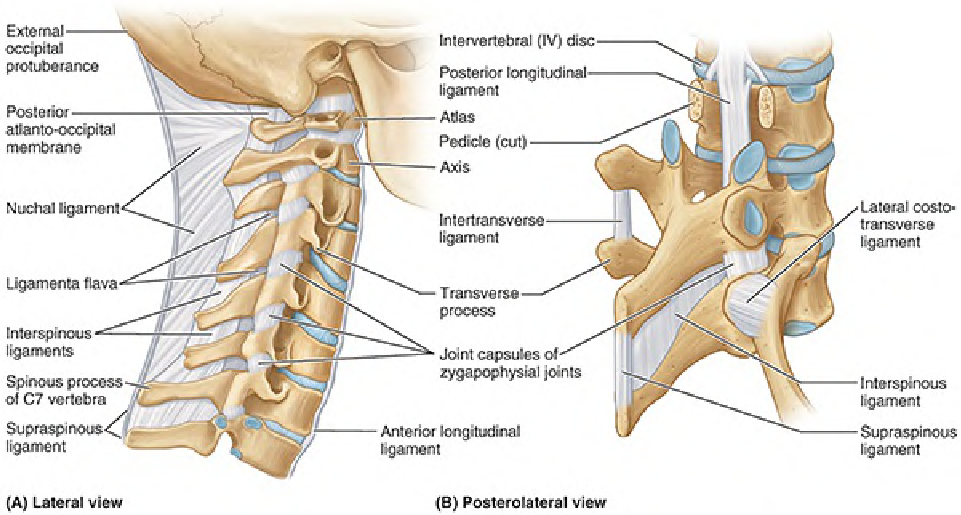


FIGURE 2.21. Joints and ligaments of vertebral column. A. Ligaments in cervical region. Superior to the prominent spinous process of C7 (vertebra prominens), the spinous processes are deeply placed and attached to an overlying nuchal ligament. **B.** Ligaments in thoracic region. The pedicles of the superior two vertebrae have been sawn through and the vertebral arches removed to reveal the posterior longitudinal ligament. Intertransverse, supraspinous, and interspinous ligaments are demonstrated in association with the vertebrae with intact vertebral arches.

JOINTS OF VERTEBRAL ARCHES

The joints of the vertebral arches are the **zygapophysial joints** (**facet joints**). These articulations are plane synovial joints between the superior and inferior articular processes (G. zygapophyses) of adjacent vertebrae (Figs. 2.17 and 2.20). Each joint is surrounded by a thin joint capsule. Those in the cervical region are especially thin and loose, reflecting the wide range of movement (Fig. 2.21). The joint capsule is attached to the margins of the articular surfaces of the articular processes of adjacent vertebrae. Accessory ligaments unite the laminae, transverse processes, and spinous processes and help stabilize the joints.

The zygapophysial joints permit gliding movements between the articular processes; the shape and disposition of the articular surfaces determine the types of movement possible. The range (amount) of movement is determined by the size of the IV disc relative to that of the vertebral body. In the cervical and lumbar regions, these joints bear some weight, sharing this function with the IV discs, particularly during lateral flexion.

The zygapophysial joints are innervated by articular branches that arise from the medial branches of the posterior rami of spinal nerves (Fig. 2.22). As these nerves pass posteroinferiorly, they lie in grooves on the posterior surfaces of the medial parts of the transverse processes. Each articular branch supplies two adjacent joints; therefore, each joint is supplied by two nerves.

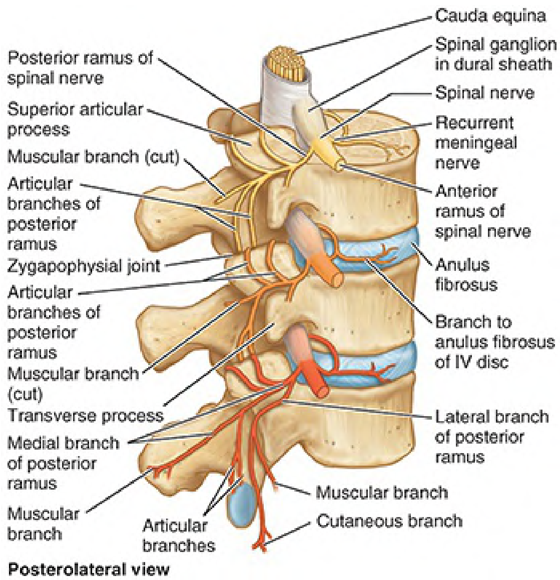


FIGURE 2.22. Innervation of zygapophysial joints. The posterior rami arise from the spinal nerves outside the IV foramen and divide into medial and lateral branches. The medial branch gives rise to articular branches that are distributed to the zygapophysial joint at that level and to the joint one level inferior to its exit. Thus, each zygapophysial joint receives articular rami from the medial branch of the posterior rami of two adjacent spinal nerves. The medial branches of both posterior rami have to be ablated to denervate a zygapophysial joint.

ACCESSORY LIGAMENTS OF INTERVERTEBRAL JOINTS

The laminae of adjacent vertebral arches are joined by broad, pale yellow bands of elastic tissue, the **ligamenta flava** (L. flavus, yellow). These ligaments extend almost vertically from the lamina above to the lamina below, those of opposite sides meeting and blending in the midline (Figs. 2.17 and 2.20). The flaval ligaments bind the lamina of the adjoining vertebrae together, forming alternating sections of the posterior wall of the vertebral canal. The ligamenta flava are long, thin, and broad in the cervical region, thicker in the thoracic region, and thickest in the lumbar region. These ligaments resist separation of the vertebral lamina by limiting abrupt flexion of the vertebral column and thereby prevent injury to the IV discs. The strong, elastic yellow ligaments help preserve the normal curvatures of the vertebral column and assist with straightening of the column after flexing.

Adjoining spinous processes are united by weak, often membranous interspinous ligaments and strong fibrous supraspinous ligaments (Fig. 2.21A, B). The thin **interspinous ligaments** connect adjoining spinous processes, attaching from the root to the apex of each process. The cord-like band forming the **supraspinous ligaments** connects the tips of the spinous processes from C7 to the sacrum and merge superiorly with the nuchal ligament at the back of the neck (Fr. nuque, back of the neck) (Fig. 2.21A). Unlike the interspinous and supraspinous ligaments, the strong, broad **nuchal ligament** (L. ligamentum nuchae) is composed of thickened fibroelastic tissue. It extends as a median band from the external occipital protuberance and posterior border of the foramen magnum to the spinous processes of the cervical vertebrae. Because of the shortness and depth of the C3–C5 spinous processes, the nuchal ligament provides attachment for muscles that attach to the spinous processes of vertebrae at other levels. The **intertransverse**

ligaments, connecting adjacent transverse processes, consist of scattered fibers in the cervical region and fibrous cords in the thoracic region (Fig. 2.21B). In the lumbar region, these ligaments are thin and membranous.

CRANIOVERTEBRAL JOINTS

There are two sets of craniovertebral joints, the atlanto-occipital joints, formed between the atlas (C1 vertebra) and the occipital bone of the cranium, and the atlanto-axial joints, formed between the atlas and axis (C2 vertebra) (Fig. 2.23). The Greek word atlanto refers to the atlas (C1 vertebra). The craniovertebral joints are synovial joints that have no IV discs. Their design gives a wider range of movement than in the rest of the vertebral column. The articulations involve the occipital condyles, atlas, and axis.

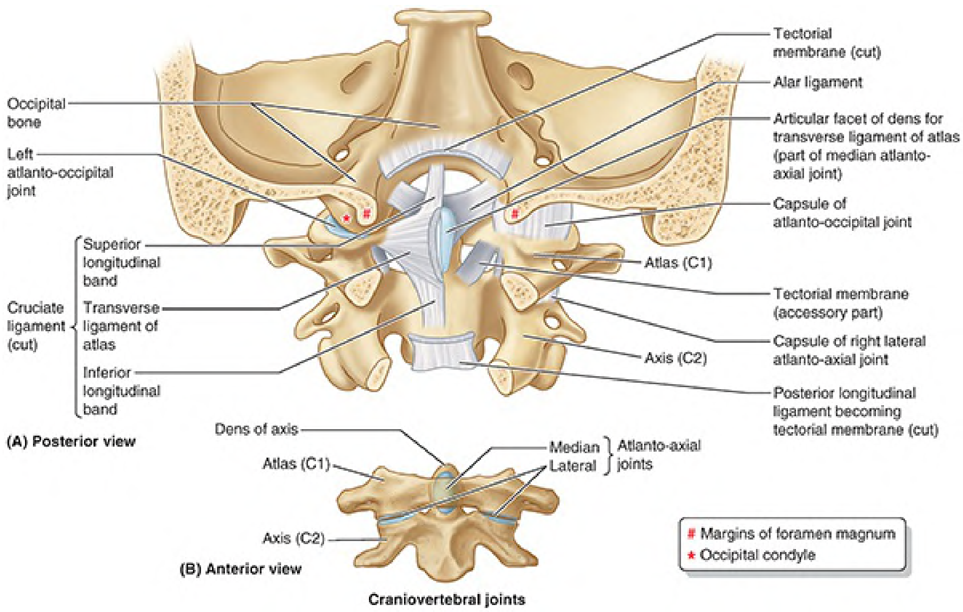


FIGURE 2.23. Capsules, ligaments, and tectorial membrane of craniovertebral joints. A. Ligaments of atlanto-occipital and atlanto-axial joints. The tectorial membrane and the right side of the cruciate ligament of the atlas have been removed to show the attachment of the right alar ligament to the dens of C2 (axis). **B.** Median and lateral atlanto-axial joints. Sliding movements in opposite directions occur at the lateral atlanto-axial joints as the atlas rotates around the dens.

Atlanto-Occipital Joints. The articulations are between the superior articular surfaces of the lateral masses of the atlas and the occipital condyles (Fig. 2.23; see Fig. 2.8A, B). These joints permit nodding of the head, such as the flexion and extension of the head occurring when indicating approval (the "yes" movement). These joints also permit sideways tilting of the head. The main movement is flexion, with a little lateral flexion and rotation. They are synovial joints of the condyloid type and have thin, loose joint capsules.

The cranium and C1 are also connected by **anterior** and **posterior atlanto-occipital membranes**, which extend from the anterior and posterior arches of C1 to the anterior and posterior margins of the foramen magnum (Figs. 2.24A and 2.25). The anterior membranes are composed of broad, densely woven fibers (especially centrally where they are continuous with the anterior longitudinal ligament). The posterior membranes are broad but relatively weak. The

atlanto-occipital membranes help prevent excessive movement of the atlanto-occipital joints.

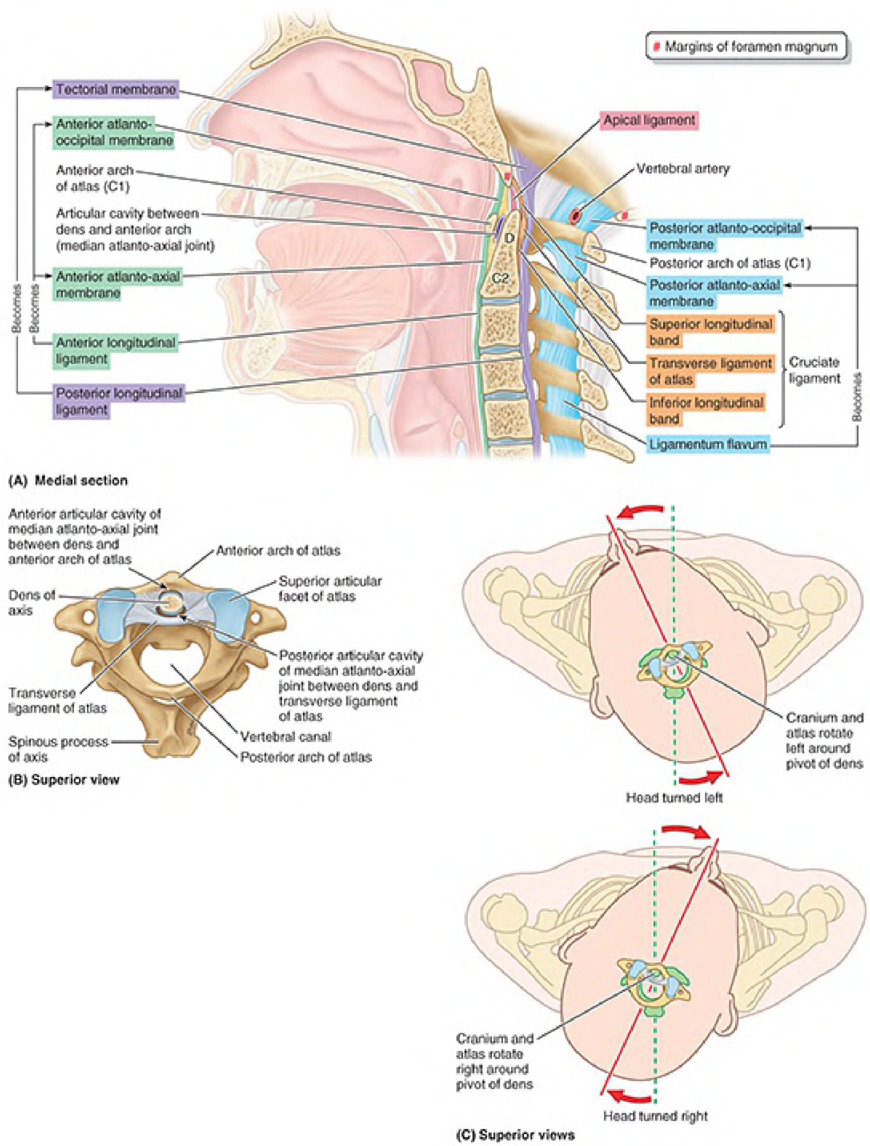


FIGURE 2.24. Structure and function of median atlanto-axial joint. A. Continuity of craniovertebral membranes. A median section of the craniovertebral region shows membranes related to the craniovertebral joints and their continuities with the ligamenta flava and longitudinal ligaments of the remainder of the vertebral column. **B.** Superior view of articulated atlas and axis. The median atlanto-axial joint consists of articular facets on the anterior and posterior surfaces of the dens of the axis articulating with the anterior arch and transverse ligament of the atlas, respectively, forming a peg within an osseoligamentous socket. **C.** Motion at atlanto-axial joints. During rotation of the head, the cranium and atlas rotate as a unit around the pivot of the dens of the axis when the head is turned side to side (the "no" movement).

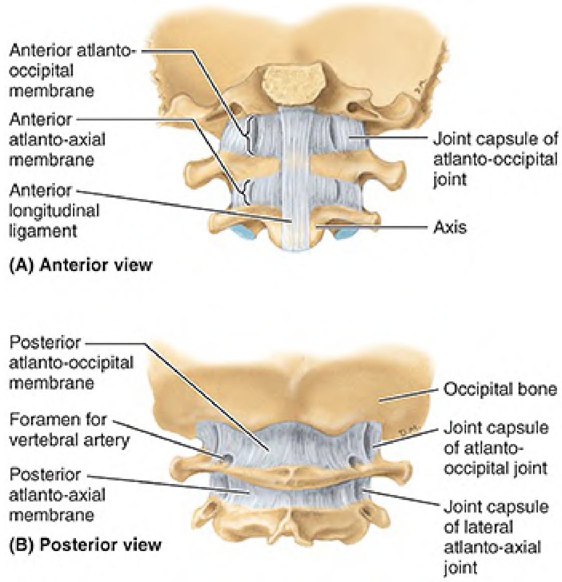


FIGURE 2.25. **Membranes of craniovertebral joints. A.** Anterior membranes and ligaments. Only the thicker, most anterior part of the anterior longitudinal ligament is included here to demonstrate its superior continuation as the anterior atlanto-axial membrane and anterior atlanto-occipital membrane. Laterally, the membranes blend with the joint capsules of the lateral atlanto-axial and atlanto-occipital joints. **B.** Posterior membranes. The posterior atlanto-occipital and atlanto-axial membranes span the gaps between the posterior arch of the atlas (C1) and the occipital bone (posterior margin of the foramen magnum) superiorly, and the laminae of the axis (C2) inferiorly. The vertebral arteries penetrate the atlanto-occipital membrane before traversing the foramen magnum.

Atlanto-Axial Joints. There are three atlanto-axial articulations (Figs. 2.23A, B): two (right and left) **lateral atlanto-axial joints** (between the inferior facets of the lateral masses of C1 and the superior facets of C2) and one **median atlanto-axial joint** (between the dens of C2 and the anterior arch of the atlas). The lateral atlanto-axial joints are gliding-type synovial joints, whereas the median atlanto-axial joint is a pivot joint.

Movement at all three atlanto-axial joints permits the head to be turned from side to side (Fig. 2.24C), as occurs when rotating the head to indicate disapproval (the "no" movement). During this movement, the cranium and C1 rotate on C2 as a unit. During rotation of the head, the dens of C2 is the axis or pivot that is held in a socket or collar formed anteriorly by the anterior arch of the atlas and posteriorly by the transverse ligament of the atlas (Figs. 2.23 and 2.24A–C; see illustration in Table 2.12); this strong band extends between the tubercles on the medial aspects of the lateral masses of C1 vertebrae.

Vertically oriented but much weaker superior and inferior longitudinal bands pass from the transverse ligament of the atlas to the occipital bone superiorly and to the body of C2 inferiorly. The **cruciate ligament of the atlas**, so named because of its resemblance to a cross, consists of the transverse ligament of the atlas plus the longitudinal bands (Fig. 2.23A).

The **alar ligaments** extend from the sides of the dens of the axis to the lateral margins of the foramen magnum. These short, rounded cords, approximately 0.5 cm in diameter, attach the cranium to the C1 vertebra and act as check ligaments in preventing excessive rotation at the joints.

The **tectorial membrane** (Figs. 2.23A and 2.24A) is the strong superior continuation of the

posterior longitudinal ligament that broadens and passes posteriorly over the median atlanto-axial joint and its ligaments. It runs superiorly from the body of C2 through the foramen magnum to attach to the central part of the floor of the cranial cavity, formed by the internal surface of the occipital bone.

Movements of Vertebral Column

The range of movement of the vertebral column varies according to the region and the individual. Contortionists, who begin their training during early childhood, become capable of extraordinary movements. The normal range of movement possible in healthy young adults is typically reduced by 50% or more as they age.

The mobility of the vertebral column results primarily from the compressibility and elasticity of the IV discs. The vertebral column is capable of flexion, extension, lateral flexion and extension, and rotation (torsion) (Fig. 2.26). Bending of the vertebral column to the right or left from the neutral (erect) position is lateral flexion; returning to the erect posture from a position of lateral flexion is lateral extension.

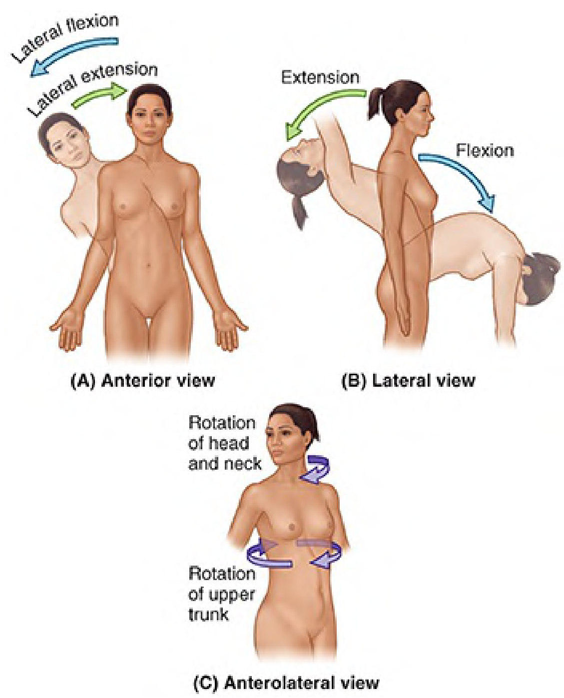


FIGURE 2.26. **Movements of vertebral column. A.** Lateral flexion and extension. This movement is either to the right or left in a frontal plane, also occurs mostly in the cervical and lumbar regions. **B.** Flexion and extension. Both movements occur in the median plane, primarily in the cervical and lumbar regions. **C.** Rotation. This movement occurs around a longitudinal axis, primarily at the craniovertebral joints (augmented by the cervical zygapophysial joints) and the thoracic region.

The range of movement of the vertebral column is limited by the

- thickness, elasticity, and compressibility of the IV discs
- shape and orientation of the zygapophysial joints

- tension of the joint capsules of the zygapophysial joints
- resistance of the back muscles and ligaments (e.g., the ligamenta flava and posterior longitudinal ligament)
- attachment to the thoracic (rib) cage
- bulk of surrounding tissue

Movements are not produced exclusively by the back muscles. They are assisted by gravity and the action of the anterolateral abdominal muscles. Movements between adjacent vertebrae occur at the resilient nuclei pulposi of the IV discs (serving as the axis of movement) and at the zygapophysial joints (see Figs. 2.17 and 2.18).

The orientation of the latter joints permits some movements and restricts others. With the exception perhaps of C1–C2, movement never occurs at a single segment of the column. Although movements between adjacent vertebrae are relatively small, especially in the thoracic region, the summation of all the small movements produces a considerable range of movement of the vertebral column as a whole (e.g., when flexing to touch the floor; Fig. 2.26B). Movements of the vertebral column are freer in the cervical and lumbar regions than elsewhere. Flexion, extension, lateral flexion, and rotation of the neck are especially free because the

- IV discs, although thin relative to most other discs, are thick relative to the size of the vertebral bodies at this level.
- Articular surfaces of the zygapophysial joints are relatively large, and the joint planes are almost horizontal.
- Joint capsules of the zygapophysial joints are loose.
- Neck is relatively slender (with less surrounding soft tissue bulk compared with the trunk).

Flexion of the vertebral column is greatest in the cervical region. The sagittally oriented joint planes of the lumbar region are conducive to flexion and extension. Extension of the vertebral column is most marked in the lumbar region and is usually more extensive than flexion. However, the interlocking articular processes here prevent rotation (see Fig. 2.11A–D). The lumbar region, like the cervical region, has IV discs that are large relative to the size of the vertebral bodies. Lateral flexion of the vertebral column is greatest in the cervical and lumbar regions (Fig. 2.26A).

The thoracic region, in contrast, has IV discs that are thin relative to the size of the vertebral bodies. Relative stability is also conferred on this part of the vertebral column through its connection to the sternum by the ribs and costal cartilages. The joint planes here lie on an arc that is centered on the vertebral body, permitting rotation in the thoracic region (see Fig. 2.9A). This rotation of the upper trunk, in combination with the rotation permitted in the cervical region and that at the atlanto-axial joints, enables torsion of the axial skeleton that occurs as one looks back over the shoulder (Fig. 2.26C). However, flexion is limited in the thoracic region, including lateral flexion.

Curvatures of Vertebral Column

The vertebral column in adults has four curvatures that occur in the cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral regions (Fig. 2.27). The **thoracic** and **sacral kyphoses** (singular = **kyphosis**) are concave anteriorly, whereas the **cervical** and **lumbar lordoses** (singular = **lordosis**) are concave posteriorly. When the posterior surface of the trunk is observed, especially in a lateral view, the normal curvatures of the vertebral column are especially apparent (Fig. 2.28).

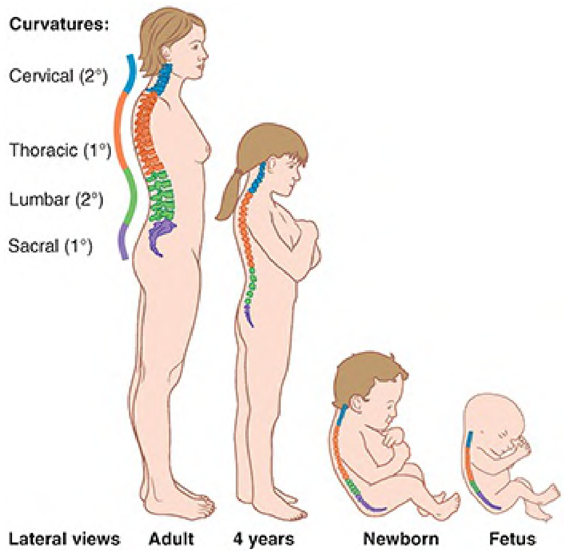


FIGURE 2.27. Curvatures of vertebral column. The four curvatures of the adult vertebral column—cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral—are contrasted with the C-shaped curvature of the column during fetal life, when only the primary (1°) curvatures exist. The secondary (2°) curvatures develop during infancy and childhood.

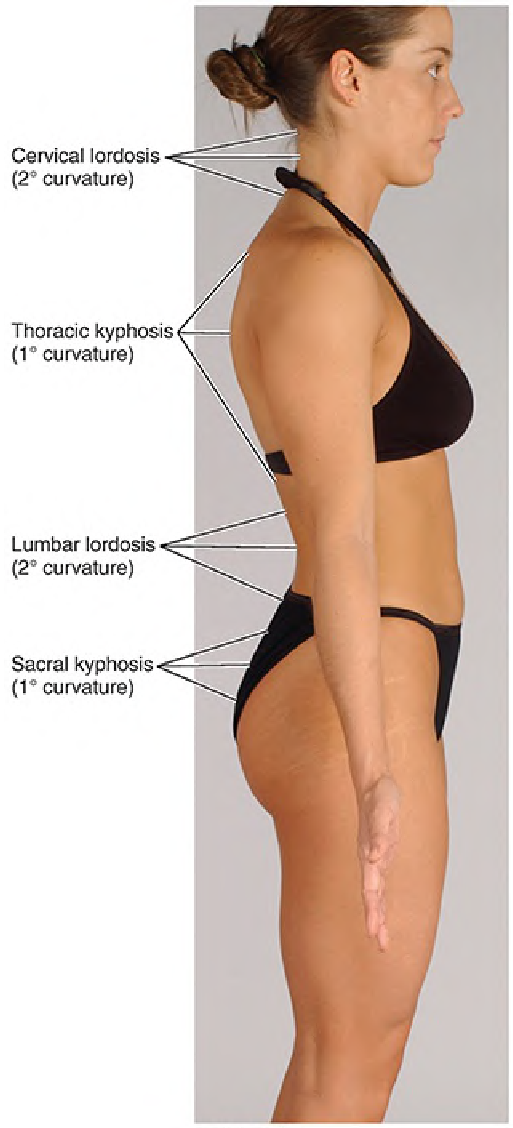


FIGURE 2.28. Surface anatomy of curvatures of vertebral column.

The thoracic and sacral kyphoses are **primary curvatures** that develop during the fetal period in relationship to the (flexed) fetal position (Moore et al., 2020). Compare the curvatures in Figure 2.27 noting that the primary curvatures are in the same direction as the main curvatures of the fetal vertebral column. The primary curvatures are retained throughout life because of differences in height between the anterior and posterior parts of the vertebrae.

The cervical and lumbar lordoses are **secondary curvatures** that result from extension from the flexed fetal position. They begin to appear during the late fetal period but do not become obvious until infancy (roughly, the 1st year). Secondary curvatures are maintained primarily by differences in thickness between the anterior and posterior parts of the IV discs.

The cervical lordosis becomes fully evident when an infant begins to raise (extend) the head while prone and to hold the head erect while sitting. The lumbar lordosis becomes apparent when toddlers (children learning to walk) begin to assume the upright posture, standing and walking.

This curvature, generally more pronounced in females, ends at the lumbosacral angle formed at the junction of L5 vertebra with the sacrum (see Fig. 2.2D). The sacral kyphosis also differs in males and females, with that of the female reduced so that the coccyx protrudes less into the pelvic outlet (see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum).

The curvatures of the vertebral column provide additional flexibility (shock-absorbing resilience), further augmenting that provided by the IV discs. When the load borne by the vertebral column is markedly increased (e.g., carrying a heavy backpack), both the IV discs and the flexible curvatures are compressed (i.e., the curvatures tend to increase).

The flexibility provided by the IV discs is passive and limited primarily by the zygapophysial joints and longitudinal ligaments, whereas that provided by the curvatures is actively (dynamically) resisted by the contraction of muscle groups antagonistic to the movement (e.g., the long extensors of the back resist excessive thoracic kyphosis, and the abdominal flexors resist excessive lumbar lordosis).

Carrying additional weight anterior to the body's normal gravitational axis (e.g., abnormally large breasts, a pendulous abdomen in obesity or the enlarged abdomen due to the gravid uterus during late pregnancy, or carrying a young child) also tends to increase these curvatures. The muscles that provide resistance to the increase in curvature often ache when the weight is borne for extended periods.

When sitting, especially in the absence of back support for long periods, one usually "cycles" between back flexion (slumping) and extension (sitting up straight) to minimize stiffness and fatigue. This allows alternation between the active support provided by the extensor muscles of the back and the passive resistance to flexion provided by ligaments.

Vasculature of Vertebral Column

Vertebrae are supplied by periosteal and equatorial branches of the major cervical and segmental arteries and their spinal branches (Fig. 2.29). Parent arteries of periosteal, equatorial, and spinal branches occur at all levels of the vertebral column, in close association with it, and include the following arteries (described in detail in other chapters):

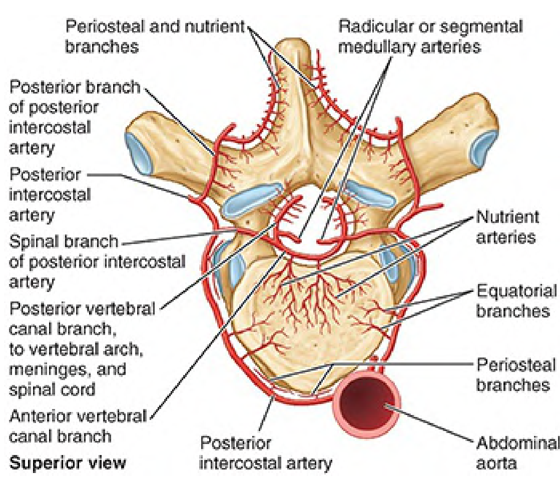


FIGURE 2.29. Blood supply of vertebrae. Typical vertebrae are supplied by segmental arteries—here posterior

intercostal arteries. In the thoracic and lumbar regions, each vertebra is encircled on three sides by paired posterior intercostal or lumbar arteries that arise from the aorta. These segmental arteries supply equatorial branches to the vertebral body, and posterior branches supply the vertebral arch structures and the back muscles. Spinal branches enter the vertebral canal through the IV foramina to supply the bones, periosteum, ligaments, and meninges that bound the epidural space and radicular or segmental medullary arteries that supply nervous tissue (spinal nerve roots and spinal cord).

- Vertebral and ascending cervical arteries in the neck (see Chapter 9, Neck)
- The major segmental arteries of the trunk:
  - Posterior intercostal arteries in the thoracic region (Fig. 2.29)
  - Subcostal and lumbar arteries in the abdomen (see Chapter 5, Abdomen)
  - Iliolumbar and lateral and medial sacral arteries in the pelvis (see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum)

Periosteal and **equatorial branches** arise from these arteries as they cross the external (anterolateral) surfaces of the vertebrae. Spinal branches enter the IV foramina and divide. Smaller **anterior** and **posterior vertebral canal branches** pass to the vertebral body and vertebral arch, respectively, and give rise to ascending and descending branches that anastomose with the spinal canal branches of adjacent levels (Fig. 2.29). Anterior vertebral canal branches send nutrient arteries anteriorly into the vertebral bodies that supply most of the red marrow of the central vertebral body (Bogduk, 2012). The larger branches of the spinal branches continue as terminal radicular or segmental medullary arteries distributed to the posterior and anterior roots of the spinal nerves and their coverings and to the spinal cord, respectively (see "Vasculature of Spinal Cord and Spinal Nerve Roots" in this chapter).

Spinal veins form venous plexuses along the vertebral column, both inside and outside the vertebral canal. These plexuses are the **internal vertebral venous plexuses** (epidural venous plexuses) and **external vertebral venous plexuses**, respectively (Fig. 2.30). These plexuses communicate through the intervertebral foramina. Both plexuses are densest anteriorly and posteriorly and relatively sparse laterally. The large, tortuous **basivertebral veins** form within the vertebral bodies. They emerge from foramina on the surfaces of the vertebral bodies (mostly the posterior aspect) and drain into the anterior external and especially the anterior internal vertebral venous plexuses, which may form large longitudinal sinuses. The **intervertebral veins** receive veins from the spinal cord and vertebral venous plexuses as they accompany the spinal nerves through the IV foramina to drain into the vertebral veins of the neck and segmental (intercostal, lumbar, and sacral) veins of the trunk (Figs. 2.30A and 2.31).

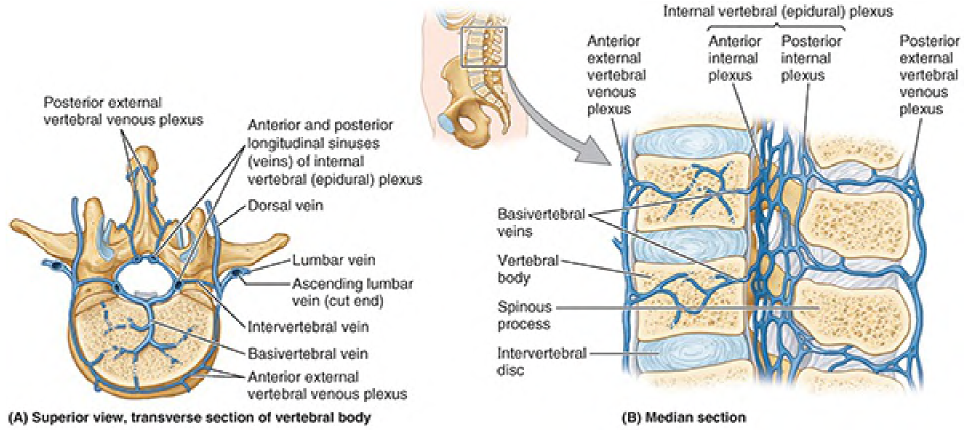


FIGURE 2.30. Venous drainage of vertebral column. A. Pattern of drainage. The venous drainage parallels the arterial supply and enters the external and internal vertebral venous plexuses. There is also anterolateral drainage from the external aspects of the vertebrae into segmental veins. **B.** Nature of veins. The dense plexus of thin-walled vessels within the vertebral canal, the internal vertebral venous plexuses, consists of valveless anastomoses between anterior and posterior longitudinal venous sinuses.

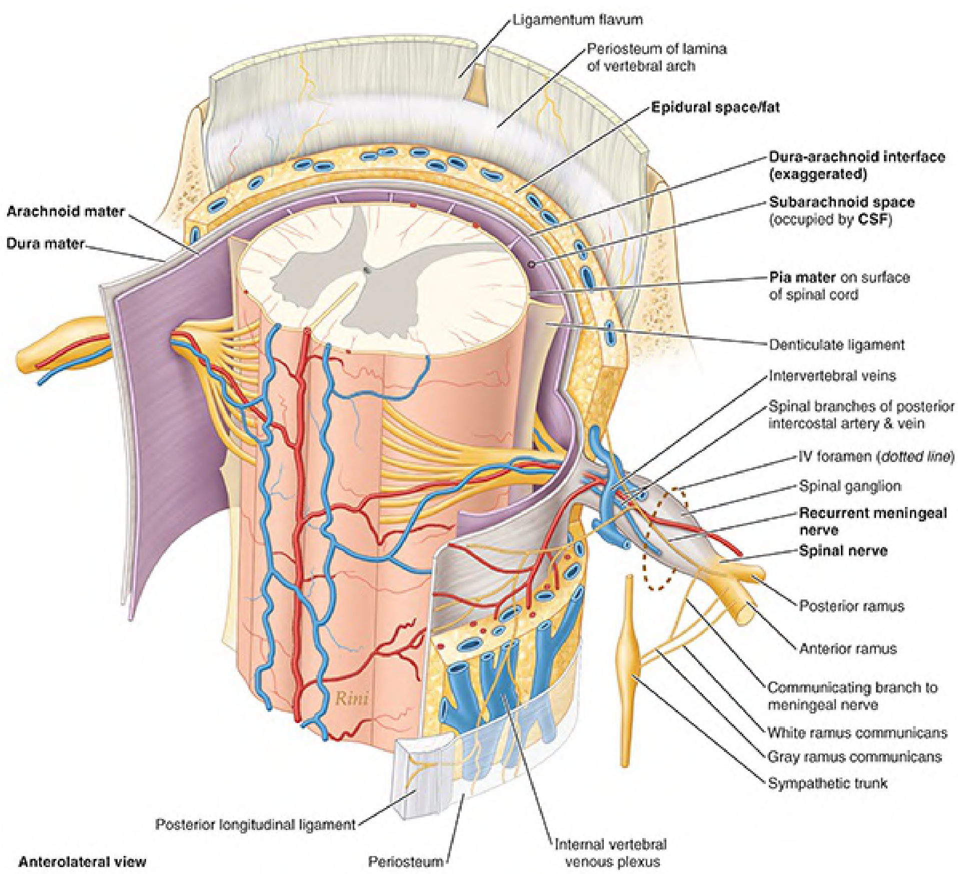


FIGURE 2.31. Innervation of periosteum and ligaments of vertebral column and of meninges. Except for the zygapophysial joints and external elements of the vertebral arch, the fibroskeletal structures of the vertebral column (and the meninges) are supplied by the (recurrent) meningeal nerves. Although usually omitted from diagrams and illustrations of spinal nerves, these fine nerves are the first branches to arise from all 31 pairs of spinal nerves and are the nerves that initially convey localized pain sensation from the back produced by acute herniation of an IV disc or from sprains, contusions, fractures, or tumors of the vertebral column itself.

Nerves of Vertebral Column

Other than the zygapophysial joints (innervated by articular branches of the medial branches of the posterior rami, as described with these joints), the vertebral column is innervated by (**recurrent**) **meningeal branches of the spinal nerves** (Figs. 2.31 and 2.32). These small branches are the only branches to arise from the mixed spinal nerve, arising immediately after it is formed and before its division into anterior and posterior rami or from the anterior ramus immediately after its formation.

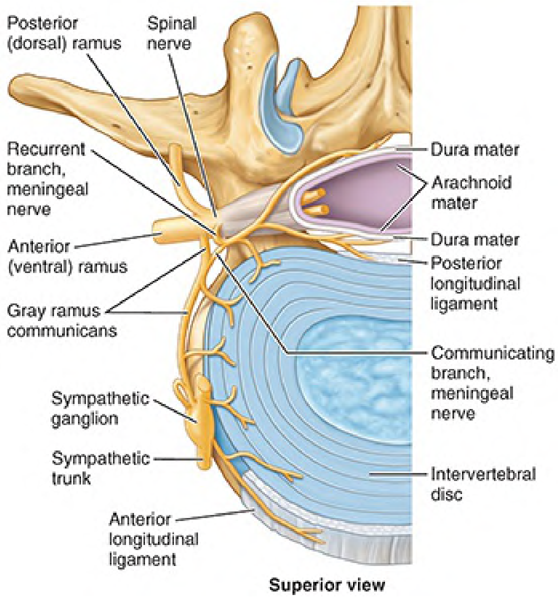


FIGURE 2.32. Innervation of periosteum and ligaments of vertebral column and meninges.

Two to four of these fine meningeal branches arise on each side at all vertebral levels. Close to their origin, the meningeal branches receive communicating branches from the nearby gray rami communicantes. As the spinal nerves exit the IV foramina, most of the meningeal branches run back through the foramina into the vertebral canal (hence the alternate term recurrent meningeal nerves). However, some branches remain outside the canal and are distributed to the anterolateral aspect of the vertebral bodies and IV discs. They also supply the periosteum and especially the anuli fibrosi and anterior longitudinal ligament. Inside the vertebral canal, transverse, ascending, and descending branches distribute nerve fibers to the following structures:

- Periosteum (covering the surface of the posterior vertebral bodies, pedicles, and laminae)
- Ligamenta flava
- Anuli fibrosi of the posterior and posterolateral aspect of the IV discs
- Posterior longitudinal ligament
- Spinal dura mater
- Blood vessels within the vertebral canal

Nerve fibers to the periosteum, anuli fibrosi, and ligaments supply pain receptors. Those to the

anuli fibrosi and ligaments also supply receptors for proprioception (the sense of one's position). Sympathetic fibers to the blood vessels stimulate vasoconstriction.

CLINICAL BOX

VERTEBRAL COLUMN

Aging of Intervertebral Discs

With advancing age, the nuclei pulposi dehydrate and lose elastin and proteoglycans while gaining collagen. As a result, the IV discs lose their turgor (fullness), becoming stiffer and more resistant to deformation. As the nucleus dehydrates, the two parts of the disc appear to merge as the distinction between them becomes increasingly diminished. With advancing age, the nucleus becomes dry and granular, and it may disappear altogether as a distinct formation. As these changes occur, the anulus fibrosis assumes an increasingly greater share of the vertical load and the stresses and strains that come with it. The lamellae of the anulus thicken and often develop fissures and cavities.

Although the margins of adjacent vertebral bodies may approach more closely as the superior and inferior surfaces of the body become shallow concavities (the most probable reason for slight loss of height with aging), it has been shown that the intervertebral discs increase in size with age. Not only do they become increasing convex but also, between the ages of 20 and 70, their anteroposterior (AP) diameter increases about 10% in females and 2% in males. The thickness (height) increases centrally about 10% in both sexes. Overt or marked disc narrowing, especially when it is greater than that of more superiorly located discs, suggests pathology (degenerative disc disease), not normal aging (Bogduk, 2012).

Back Pain

Back pain in general, and lower back pain (LBP) in particular, is an immense health problem, second only to the common cold as a reason people visit their doctors. In terms of health factors causing lost workdays, backache is second only to headache. The anatomical bases for the pain, especially the nerves initially involved in sensing and carrying pain from the vertebral column itself, are rarely described.

Five categories of structures receive innervation in the back and can be sources of pain:

1. Fibroskeletal structures: periosteum, ligaments, and anuli fibrosi of IV discs
2. Meninges: coverings of the spinal cord
3. Synovial joints: capsules of the zygapophysial joints
4. Muscles: intrinsic muscles of the back
5. Nervous tissue: spinal nerves or nerve roots exiting the IV foramina

Of these, the first two categories are innervated by (recurrent) meningeal branches of the spinal nerves, and the next two are innervated by posterior rami (articular and muscular branches). Pain from nervous tissue—that is, caused by compression or irritation of spinal nerves or nerve roots—is typically referred pain, perceived as coming from the cutaneous or subcutaneous area (dermatome) supplied by that nerve (see the Clinical Box "Herniation of Nucleus Pulposus [Herniation of IV Disc]"), but it may be accompanied by localized pain.

Pain related to the meninges is relatively rare and is discussed later in this chapter.

Localized lower back pain (LBP) (perceived as coming from the back) is generally muscular, joint, or fibroskeletal pain. Muscular pain is usually related to reflexive cramping (spasms) producing ischemia, often secondarily as a result of guarding (contraction of muscles in anticipation of pain). Zygapophysial joint pain is generally associated with aging (osteoarthritis) or disease (rheumatoid arthritis) of the joints. Pain from vertebral fractures and dislocations is no different than that from other bones and joints: The sharp pain following a fracture is mostly periosteal (membrane covering the bone) in origin, whereas pain from dislocations is ligamentous (relating to the structure of the ligament). The acute localized pain associated with an IV disc herniation undoubtedly emanates from the disrupted posterolateral anulus fibrosis and impingement on the posterior longitudinal ligament. Pain in all of these latter instances is conveyed initially by the meningeal branches of the spinal nerves (see Figs. 2.31 and 2.32).

Herniation of Nucleus Pulposus (Herniation of IV Disc)

Herniation (protrusion) of the gelatinous nucleus pulposus into or through the anulus fibrosus is a well-recognized cause of lower back pain (LBP) and lower limb pain (Fig. B2.12). However, there are many other causes of LBP; furthermore, herniations are often coincidental findings in asymptomatic individuals.

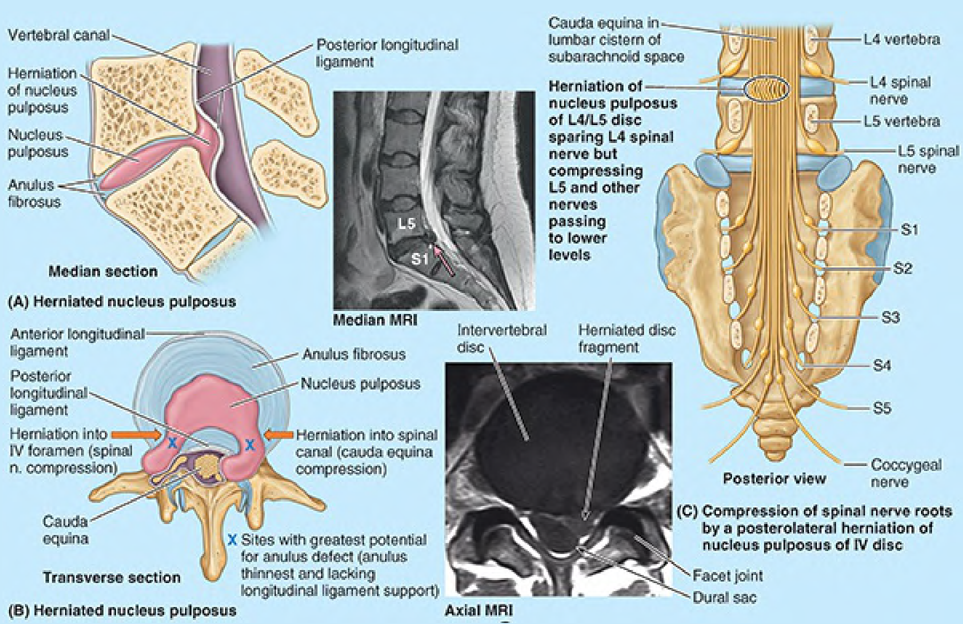


FIGURE B2.12. Herniation of nucleus pulposus. A–C. Demonstration of hernia affecting dural sac and cauda equina in median (**A**), transverse (**B**), and posterior (**C**) views. The arrows in the MRIs indicate herniations.

The IV discs in young persons are strong—usually so strong that the vertebrae often fracture during a fall before the discs rupture. Furthermore, the water content of their nuclei pulposi is high (approaching 90%), giving them great turgor (fullness). However, violent hyperflexion of the vertebral column may rupture an IV disc and fracture the adjacent vertebral bodies.

Flexion of the vertebral column produces compression anteriorly and stretching or tension posteriorly, squeezing the nucleus pulposus further posteriorly toward the thinnest part of the anulus fibrosus. If the anulus fibrosus has degenerated, the nucleus pulposus may herniate into the vertebral canal and compress the spinal cord or the nerve roots of the cauda equina (Fig. B2.12A–C). A herniated IV disc is inappropriately called a "slipped disc" by some people.

Herniations of the nucleus pulposus usually extend posterolaterally, where the anulus fibrosus is relatively thin and does not receive support from either the posterior or the anterior longitudinal ligaments (Fig. 2.12B). A posterolateral herniated IV disc is more likely to be symptomatic because of the proximity of the spinal nerve roots. The nucleus pulposus itself is insensitive. The localized back pain of a herniated disc, which is usually acute pain, results from pressure on the longitudinal ligaments and periphery of the anulus fibrosus and from local inflammation caused by chemical irritation by substances from the ruptured nucleus pulposus. Chronic pain resulting from compression of the spinal nerve roots by the herniated disc is usually referred radiating pain, perceived as coming from the area (dermatome) supplied by that nerve. Because the IV discs are largest in the lumbar and lumbosacral regions, where movements are consequently greater, posterolateral herniations of the nucleus pulposus are most common here.

Approximately 95% of lumbar disc protrusions occur at the L4–L5 or L5–S1 levels. The marked decrease in the radiographic intervertebral space (i.e., in disc height) that may occur as a result of acute herniation of a nucleus pulposus may also result in narrowing of the IV foramina, perhaps exacerbating the compression of the spinal nerve roots, especially if hypertrophy of the surrounding bone has also occurred. Because the nucleus becomes increasingly dehydrated and fibrous, or even granular or solid with aging, a diagnosis of acute herniation in advanced years is regarded with suspicion. It is more likely that the nerve roots are being compressed by increased ossification of the IV foramen as they exit.

Acute middle and low back pain may be caused by a mild posterolateral protrusion of a lumbar IV disc at the L5–S1 level that affects nociceptive (pain) endings in the region, such as those associated with the posterior longitudinal ligament. The clinical picture varies considerably, but pain of acute onset in the lower back is a common presenting symptom. Because muscle spasm is associated with low back pain, the lumbar region of the vertebral column becomes tense and increasingly cramped as relative ischemia (local loss of blood supply) occurs, causing painful movement.

Sciatica, pain radiating from the lower back into the buttock and down the posterior or

lateral aspect of the thigh into the leg, is often caused by a herniated lumbar IV disc that compresses and compromises the L5 or S1 component of the sciatic nerve (Fig. B2.12C). The IV foramina in the lumbar region decrease in size, and the lumbar nerves increase in size, as the vertebral column descends. This may explain why sciatica is so common. Bone spurs (osteophytes) developing around the zygapophysial joints, or the posterolateral margins during aging, may narrow the foramina even more, causing shooting pains down the lower limbs. The straight leg test, also called Lasègue sign, is performed to determine if a patient with LBP has a herniated IV disc. The patient's hip is passively flexed by the examiner with the knee in full extension (Fig. B2.13). This maneuver will cause traction on the nerve roots forming the sciatic nerve and in the case of a herniated disc in the lumbar region will reproduce the pain.

FIGURE B2.13. **Straight leg test.**

IV discs may also be damaged by violent rotation (e.g., during an erratic golf swing) or flexing of the vertebral column. The general rule is that when an IV disc protrudes, it usually compresses the nerve root numbered one inferior to the herniated disc; for example, the L5 nerve is compressed by an L4–L5 IV disc herniation (Fig. B2.12C). In the thoracic and lumbar regions, the IV disc forms the inferior half of the anterior border of the IV foramen and that the superior half is formed by the bone of the body of the superior vertebra (see Figs. 2.2 and 2.17).

The spinal nerve roots descend to the IV foramen from which the spinal nerve formed by their merging will exit. The nerve that exits a given IV foramen passes through the superior bony half of the foramen and thus lies above and is not affected by a herniating disc at that level. However, the nerve roots passing to the IV foramen immediately and farther below pass directly across the area of herniation. Symptom-producing IV disc protrusions occur in the cervical region, almost as often as in the lumbar region.

Chronic or sudden forcible hyperflexion of the cervical region, as might occur during a head-on collision or during illegal head blocking in football (Fig. B2.14), for example, may rupture the IV disc posteriorly without fracturing the vertebral body. In this region, the IV discs are centrally placed in the anterior border of the IV foramen, and a herniated disc compresses the nerve actually exiting at that level (rather than the level below as in the lumbar region).

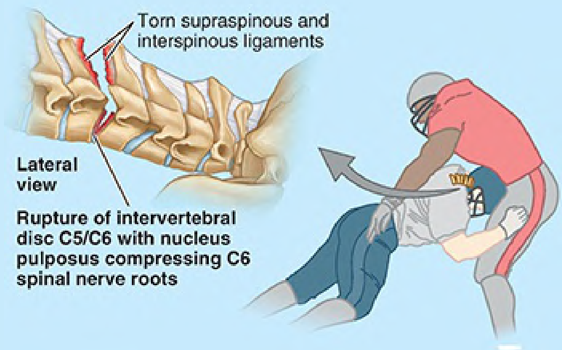


FIGURE B2.14. Flexion injury of cervical vertebrae.

However, recall that cervical spinal nerves exit superior to the vertebra of the same number, so the numerical relationship of herniating disc to nerve affected is the same (e.g., the cervical IV discs most commonly ruptured are those between C5–C6 and C6–C7, compressing spinal nerve roots C6 and C7, respectively). Cervical IV disc protrusions result in pain in the neck, shoulder, arm, and hand. Any sport or activity in which movement causes downward or twisting pressure on the neck or lower back may produce herniation of a nucleus pulposus.

Spinal Fusion and Intervertebral Disc Replacement

Degenerative disc disease that results in a markedly diminished IV disc space (Fig. B2.15A) often produces spinal stenosis (narrowing of the vertebral canal or an intervertebral foramen producing neuropathy) that may be treated surgically by laminectomy with or without spinal fusion. The laminectomy decompresses involved nerves (see the Clinical Box "Laminectomy" earlier in this chapter), while spinal fusion (arthrodesis) eliminates movement between two or more motion segments (IV joints) of the back that may produce additional compression. Using bone obtained from the pelvic bone or a bone bank, a bridge (graft) is constructed between adjacent vertebrae (Fig. B2.15B). The graft will eventually be replaced by new bone that unites the adjacent vertebral bodies (Fig. B2.15C). Usually metal implants ("rods") are placed to hold the vertebrae in place while the new bone grows. This surgery is more effective in relieving numbness, pain, or weakness in the lower limbs than in relieving back pain per se. The compromised range of motion may increase stress on adjacent segments, especially when multiple segments are fused, eventually inducing more pathology.

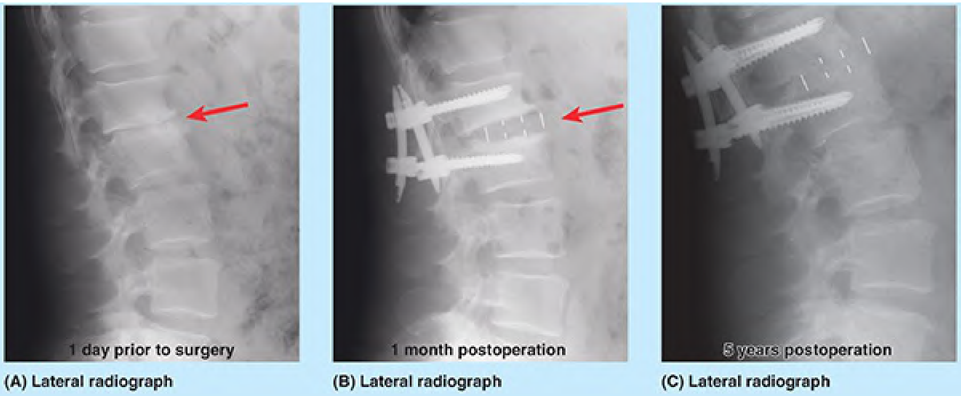


FIGURE B2.15. Disc degeneration treated by disc replacement and spinal fusion. A. Degeneration of L1–L2 IV disc (arrow) compromising IV foramen, L1 nerve; pain radiating to inguinal region. **B.** Disc space restored with bridge (arrow) indicated by vertical radiopaque markers. **C.** Fusion of L1 and L2 vertebrae by replacement of bridge with new bone.

Artificial disc replacement has been developed as an alternative to fusion when one or two segments are involved. A prosthetic disc restores disc space lost to marked disc degeneration, relieving stenosis, while still allowing motion to occur. Another possible benefit is the prevention of premature breakdown of adjacent segments.

Injury and Disease of Zygapophysial Joints

The zygapophysial joints are of clinical interest because they are close to the IV foramina through which the spinal nerves emerge from the vertebral canal. When these joints are injured or develop osteophytes (osteoarthritis), the spinal nerves are often affected (see Fig. B2.10B). This causes pain along the distribution patterns of the dermatomes and spasm in the muscles derived from the associated myotomes. A myotome consists of all muscles or parts of muscles receiving innervation from one spinal nerve.

Denervation of lumbar zygapophysial joints is a procedure used for treatment of back pain caused by disease of these joints. The nerves are sectioned near the joints or are destroyed by radiofrequency percutaneous rhizolysis (G. rhiza, root + G. lysis, dissolution) or neurotomy (Fig. B2.16). The denervation is directed at the articular branches of two adjacent posterior rami of the spinal nerves because each joint receives innervation from both the nerve exiting at that level and the superjacent nerve (see Fig. 2.22).

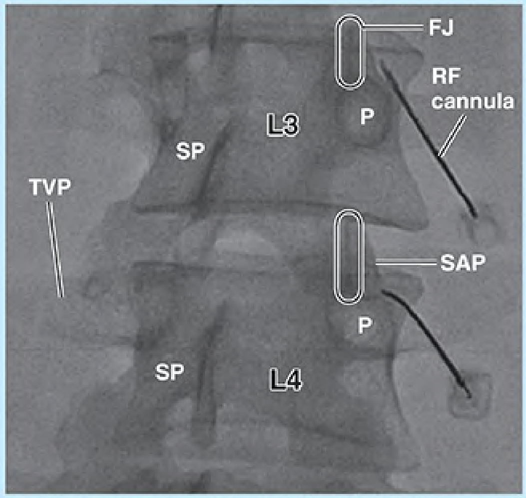


FIGURE B2.16. Radiofrequency neurotomy of medial branch nerves L3, L4. FJ, facet joint; P, pedicle; RF, radiofrequency; SAP, superior articular process; SP, spinous process; TVP, transverse process.

Fractures and Dislocations of Vertebrae

Although the construction of the vertebral column permits a considerable amount of movement as well as support and protection, excessive or sudden violent movement or movement of a type not permitted in a specific region is likely to result in fractures, dislocations, and fracture–dislocations of the vertebral column.

Sudden forceful flexion, as occurs in automobile accidents or from a violent blow to the back of the head, commonly produces a crush or compression fracture of the body of one or more vertebrae. If violent anterior movement of the vertebra occurs in combination with compression, a vertebra may be displaced anteriorly on the vertebra inferior to it (e.g., dislocation of C6 or C7 vertebrae) (see the Clinical Box "Dislocation of Cervical Vertebrae" in this chapter). Usually this displacement dislocates and fractures the articular facets between the two vertebrae and ruptures the interspinous ligaments. Irreparable injuries to the spinal cord accompany most severe flexion injuries of the vertebral column.

Sudden, forceful extension of the neck can also injure the vertebral column and spinal cord. Head butting or illegal face blocking in football may lead to a hyperextension injury of the neck (Fig. B2.17A). Such violent hyperextension is most likely to injure posterior parts of the vertebrae, fracturing by crush or compression of the vertebral arches and their processes. Fractures of cervical vertebrae may radiate pain to the back of the neck and scapular region because the same spinal sensory ganglia and spinal cord segments receiving pain impulses from the vertebrae are also involved in supplying neck muscles.

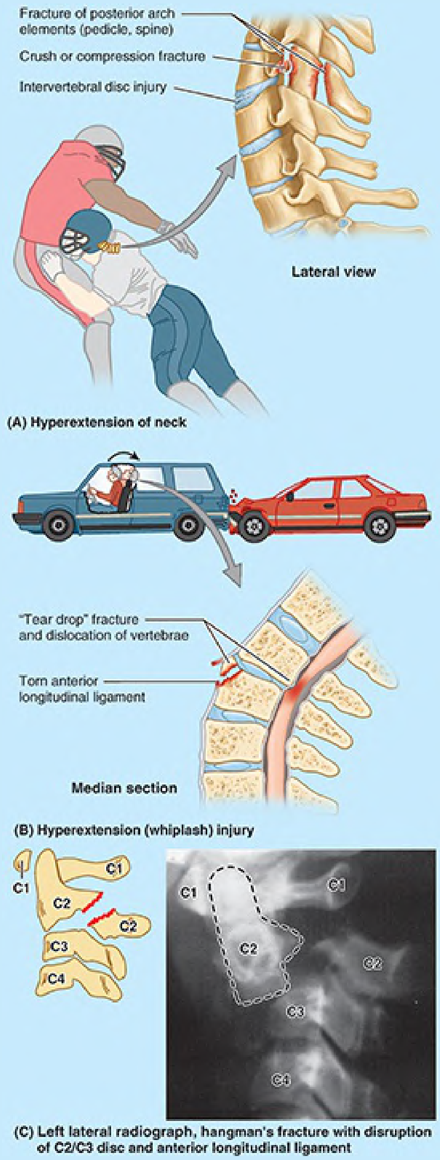


FIGURE B2.17. Extension injuries of cervical vertebrae.

Severe hyperextension of the neck ("whiplash" injury) also occurs during rear-end motor vehicle collisions (Fig. B2.17B), especially when the head restraint (head rest) is too low. In these types of hyperextension injuries, the anterior longitudinal ligament is severely stretched and may be torn.

Hyperflexion injury of the vertebral column may also occur as the head "rebounds" after the hyperextension, snapping the head forward onto the thorax. "Facet jumping" or locking of the cervical vertebrae may occur because of dislocation of the vertebral arches (see the Clinical Box "Dislocation of Cervical Vertebrae" in this chapter). Severe hyperextension of the head on the upper neck may, in addition to producing a cervical spondylolysis or hangman's fracture (see the Clinical Box "Fracture and Dislocation of Axis" in this chapter), rupture the anterior longitudinal ligament and the adjacent anulus fibrosus of the

C2–C3 IV disc. If this injury occurs, the cranium, C1, and the anterior portion (dens and body) of C2 are separated from the rest of the axial skeleton (Fig. B2.17C), and the spinal cord is usually severed. Persons with this severe injury seldom survive. Football, diving, falls (e.g., from a horse), and motor vehicle collisions cause most fractures of the cervical region of the vertebral column. Symptoms range from vague aches to progressive loss of motor and sensory functions.

The transition from the relatively inflexible thoracic region to the much more mobile lumbar region occurs abruptly. Consequently, vertebrae T11 and especially T12 (which participates in rotatory movements superiorly but only flexion and extension movements inferiorly) are the most commonly fractured noncervical vertebrae.

Dislocation of vertebrae in the thoracic and lumbar regions is uncommon because of the interlocking of their articular processes. However, when spondylolysis—fracture of the column of bones connecting the superior and inferior articular processes (the pars interarticularis or interarticular part)—occurs, the interlocking mechanism is broken (Fig. B2.18A–C). Subsequently, dislocation between adjacent vertebrae, known as spondylolisthesis, may occur. Failure or fracture of the interarticular parts of the vertebral laminae of L5 (spondylolysis of L5) especially may result in spondylolisthesis of the L5 vertebral body relative to the sacrum (S1 vertebra) due to the downward tilt of the L5/S1 IV joint (Fig. B2.19). Spondylolysis of L5, or susceptibility to it, probably results from a failure of the centrum of L5 to unite adequately with the neural arches at the neurocentral joint during development (see "Ossification of Vertebrae" in this chapter). Spondylolisthesis at the L5–S1 IV joint may (but does not necessarily) result in pressure on the spinal nerves of the cauda equina as they pass into the superior part of the sacrum, causing lower back and lower limb pain.

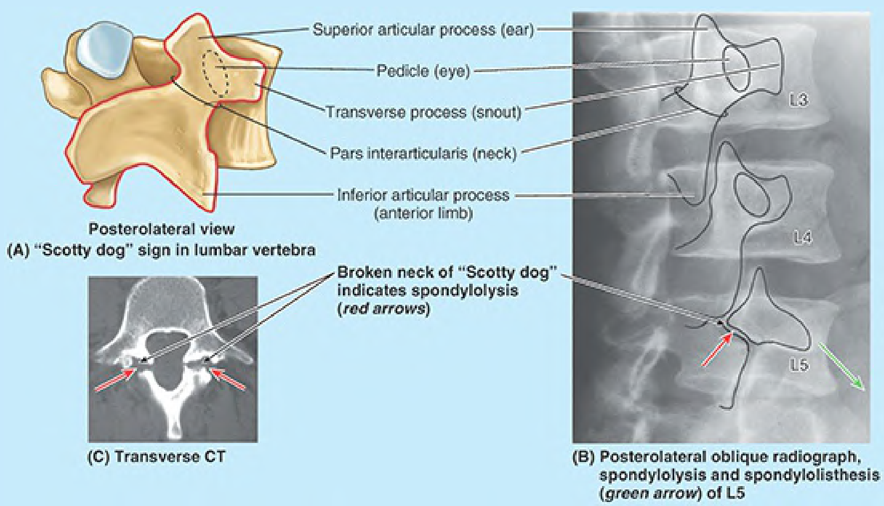


FIGURE B2.18. **Spondylolysis.**

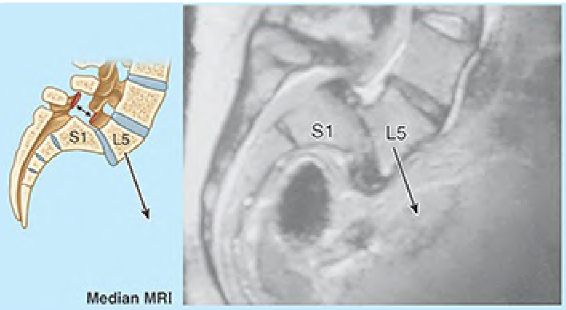


FIGURE B2.19. **Spondylolisthesis (arrows) secondary to spondylolysis of L5 vertebra.**

Fracture of Dens of Axis

The transverse ligament of the atlas is stronger than the dens of the C2 vertebra. Fractures of the dens make up about 40% of fractures of the axis. The most common dens fracture occurs at its base—that is, at its junction with the body of the axis (Fig. B2.20A). Often these fractures are unstable (do not reunite) because the transverse ligament of the atlas becomes interposed between fragments (Crockard et al., 1993) and because the separated fragment (the dens) no longer has a blood supply, which results in avascular necrosis (G., death). Almost as common are fractures of the vertebral body inferior to the base of the dens (Fig. B2.20B–E). This type of fracture heals more readily because the fragments retain their blood supply. Other fractures of the dens result from abnormal ossification patterns.

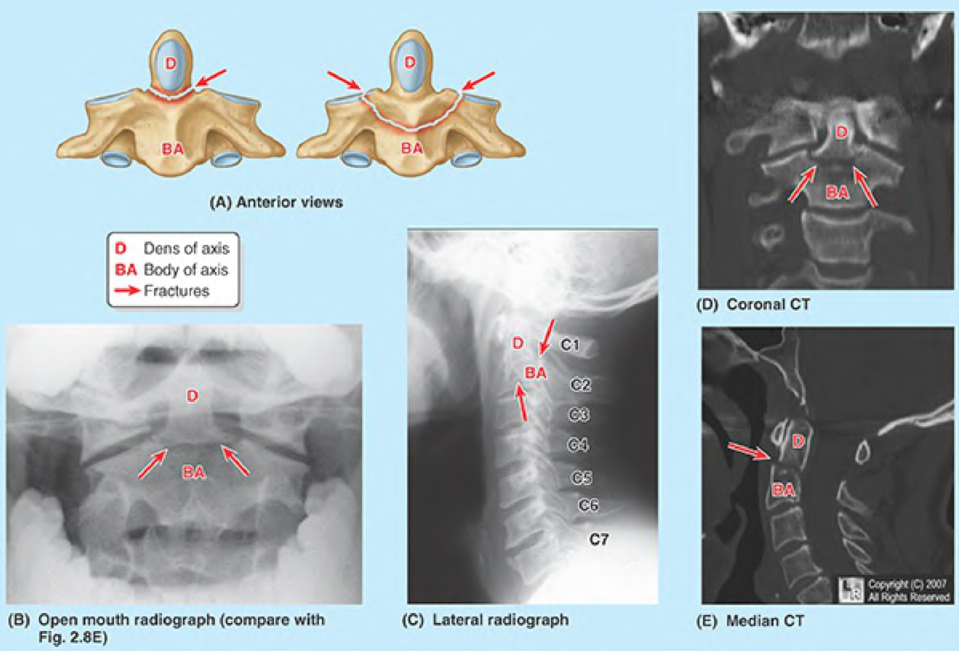


FIGURE B2.20. **Fractures of dens of axis (C2).**

Rupture of Transverse Ligament of Atlas

When the transverse ligament of the atlas ruptures, the dens of the axis is set free, result in atlanto-axial subluxation—incomplete dislocation of the median atlanto-axial joint (Fig. B2.21A). Pathological softening of the transverse and adjacent ligaments, usually resulting from disorders of connective tissue, may also cause atlanto-axial subluxation (Bogduk & Macintosh, 1984); 20% of people with Down syndrome exhibit laxity or agenesis of this ligament. Dislocation owing to transverse ligament rupture or agenesis is more likely to cause spinal cord compression than that resulting from fracture of the dens (Fig. B2.21B). In this fracture, the dens fragment is held in place against the anterior arch of the atlas by the transverse ligament, and the dens and atlas move as a unit.

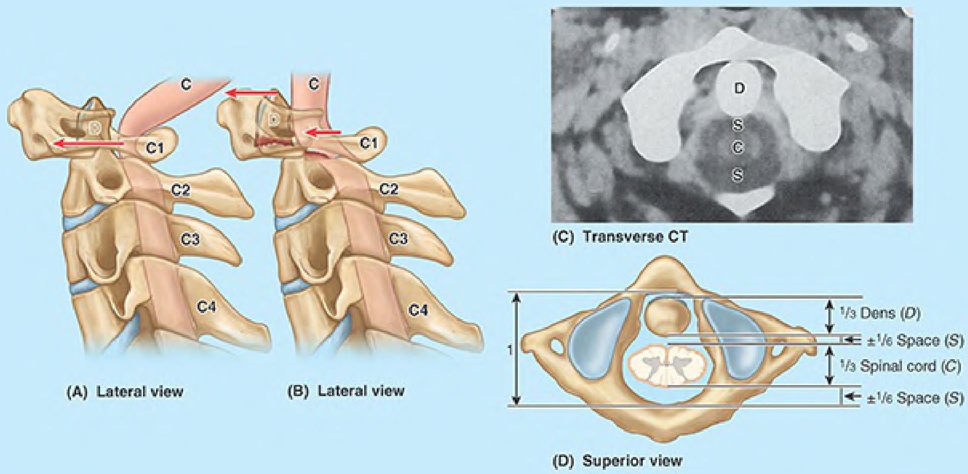


FIGURE B2.21. Median atlanto-axial joint trauma: rupture of transverse ligament of atlas or fracture of den. A. Subluxation of the median atlanto-axial joint results from rupture of the transverse ligament. The atlas moves, but the dens is fixed. **B.** Fracture of the dens shows that the dens and atlas move together as a unit because the transverse ligament holds the dens to the anterior arch of the atlas. **C and D.** Normal median atlanto-axial joint and demonstrating Steele's Rule of Thirds.

In the absence of a competent ligament, the upper cervical region of the spinal cord may be compressed between the approximated posterior arch of the atlas and the dens (Fig. B2.21A), causing paralysis of all four limbs (quadriplegia), or into the medulla of the brainstem, resulting in death. Steel's Rule of Thirds (Steel, 1968): Approximately one third of the atlas ring is occupied by the dens, one third by the spinal cord, and the remaining third by the fluid-filled space (see Fig. 2.48, CSF in subarachnoid space) and tissues surrounding the cord (Fig. B2.21C, D). This explains why some people with anterior displacement of the atlas may be relatively asymptomatic until a large degree of movement (greater than one third of the diameter of the atlas ring) occurs. Sometimes inflammation in the craniovertebral area may produce softening of the ligaments of the craniovertebral joints and cause dislocation of the atlanto-axial joints. Sudden movement of a patient from a bed to a chair, for example, may produce posterior displacement of the dens of the axis and injury to the spinal cord.

Rupture of Alar Ligaments

The alar ligaments are weaker than the transverse ligament of the atlas. Consequently, combined flexion and rotation of the head may tear one or both alar ligaments. Rupture of an alar ligament results in an increase of approximately 30% in the range of movement to the contralateral side (Dvorak et al., 1988).

Abnormal Curvatures of Vertebral Column

To detect an abnormal curvature of the vertebral column, have the individual stand in the anatomical position. Inspect the profile of the vertebral column from the person's side (Fig. B2.22A–C) and then from the posterior aspect (Fig. B2.22D). With the person bending over, observe the ability to flex directly forward and whether the back is level once the flexed position is assumed (Fig. B2.22E).

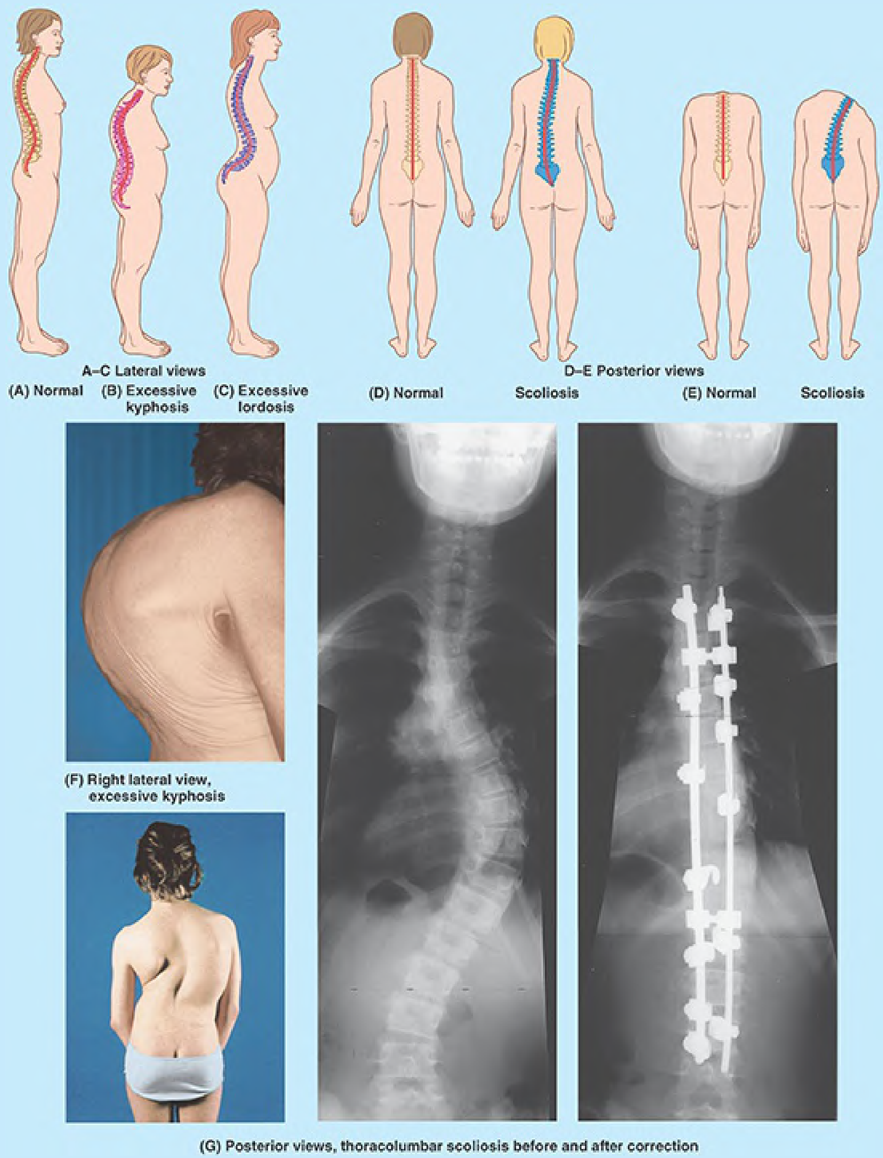


FIGURE B2.22. Abnormal curvatures of vertebral column.

Abnormal curvatures in some people result from developmental anomalies; in others, the curvatures result from pathological processes. The most prevalent metabolic disease of bone occurring in the elderly people, especially in women, is osteoporosis (atrophy of skeletal tissue).

Excessive thoracic kyphosis (clinically shortened to kyphosis, although this term actually applies to the normal curvature, and colloquially known as humpback or hunchback) is characterized by an abnormal increase in the thoracic curvature; the vertebral column curves posteriorly (Fig. B2.22B, F). This abnormality can result from erosion (due to osteoporosis) of the anterior part of one or more vertebrae. Dowager hump is a colloquial name for excessive thoracic kyphosis in older women resulting from osteoporosis. However, this type of kyphosis also occurs in elderly men (Swartz, 2021).

Osteoporosis especially affects the horizontal trabeculae of the trabecular bone of the vertebral body (see Figs. B1.6 and B2.10A). The remaining, unsupported vertical trabeculae are less able to resist compression and sustain compression fractures, resulting in short and wedge-shaped thoracic vertebrae. Progressive erosion and collapse of vertebrae also result in an overall loss of height. The excessive kyphosis leads to an increase in the AP diameter of the thorax and a significant reduction in dynamic pulmonary capacity.

Excessive lumbar lordosis (clinically shortened to lordosis, although once again, this term actually describes the normal curvature; colloquially, excessive lumbar lordosis is known as hollow back or sway back) is characterized by an anterior tilting of the pelvis (the pelvis—including the sacrum—is rotated antero-inferiorly—nutation), with increased extension of the lumbar vertebrae, producing an abnormal increase in the lumbar lordosis (Fig. B2.22C).

This abnormal extension deformity is often associated with weakened trunk musculature, especially the anterolateral abdominal muscles. To compensate for alterations to their normal line of gravity, women develop a temporary excessive lumbar lordosis during late pregnancy. This lordotic curvature may cause lower back pain, but the discomfort normally disappears soon after childbirth.

Obesity in both sexes can also cause excessive lumbar lordosis and lower back pain because of the increased weight of the abdominal contents (e.g., "potbelly") anterior to the normal line of gravity. Loss of weight and exercise of the anterolateral abdominal muscles facilitate correction of this type of excessive lordosis.

Scoliosis (G., crookedness or curved back) is characterized by an abnormal lateral curvature that is accompanied by rotation of the vertebrae (Fig. B2.22D, E, G). The spinous processes turn toward the cavity of the abnormal curvature, and when the individual bends over, the ribs rotate posteriorly (protrude) on the side of the increased convexity.

Deformities of the vertebral column, such as failure of half of a vertebra to develop (hemivertebra), are causes of structural scoliosis. Sometimes a structural scolioses is combined with excessive thoracic kyphosis—kyphoscoliosis—in which an abnormal AP diameter produces a severe restriction of the thorax and lung expansion (Swartz, 2021). Approximately 80% of all structural scolioses are idiopathic (a disease of unknown cause), occurring without other associated health conditions or an identifiable cause. Idiopathic scoliosis first develops in females between the ages of 10 and 14 and in males between the ages of 12 and 15. It is most common and severe among females.

Problems extrinsic to a structurally normal vertebral column, such as asymmetrical weakness of the intrinsic back muscles (myopathic scoliosis), or a difference in the length of the lower limbs with a compensatory pelvic tilt, may lead to a functional scoliosis. When a person is standing, an obvious inclination or listing to one side may be a sign of scoliosis that is secondary to a herniated IV disc. Habit scoliosis is supposedly caused by habitual standing or sitting in an improper position. When the scoliosis is entirely postural, it disappears during maximum flexion of the vertebral column. Functional scolioses do not persist once the underlying problem has been effectively treated.

The Bottom Line: Vertebral Column

Joints of vertebral column: Vertebrae are joined to form a semirigid column by IV discs and zygapophysial joints. ■ The relative thickness of the discs determines the degree of mobility. ■ The disposition of the zygapophysial joints controls the type of movement between adjacent vertebrae. ■ The anterior longitudinal ligament resists hyperextension; all other ligaments resist forms of flexion. ■ The atlanto-occipital joints enable the "yes" (nodding) movement of the head. ■ The atlanto-axial joints enable the "no" (rotational) movement of the head. Alar ligaments limit rotation.

Movements of vertebral column: The cervical and lumbar regions are most mobile (and consequently most vulnerable to injury). ■ Flexion and extension occur primarily in the cervical and lumbar regions. ■ Rotation occurs in the cervical and thoracic regions.

Curvatures of vertebral column: Primary curvatures (thoracic and sacral kyphoses) are developmental; secondary curvatures (cervical and lumbar lordoses) are acquired in relation to the erect human posture. ■ The curvatures provide shock-absorbing resilience and flexibility to the axial skeleton. ■ Extensors of the back and abdominal flexors provide dynamic support to maintain the curvatures.

Vasculatures of vertebral column: Spinal branches of the major cervical and segmental arteries supply the vertebral column. ■ Internal and external vertebral venous plexuses collect blood from the vertebrae and drain, in turn, into the vertebral veins of the neck and the segmental veins of the trunk.

Nerves of vertebral column: Zygapophysial joints are innervated by medial branches of adjacent posterior rami; (recurrent) meningeal branches of spinal nerves supply most bone (periosteum), IV discs, and ligaments as well as the meninges (coverings) of the spinal cord. ■ These two (groups of) nerves convey all localized pain from the vertebral column.

MUSCLES OF BACK

Most body weight lies anterior to the vertebral column, especially in obese people; consequently, the many strong muscles attached to the spinous and transverse processes of the vertebrae are necessary to support and move the column.

There are two major groups of muscles in the back. The **extrinsic back muscles** include superficial and intermediate muscles that produce and control limb and respiratory movements, respectively. The intrinsic (deep) back muscles include muscles that specifically act on the vertebral column, producing its movements and maintaining posture.

Extrinsic Back Muscles

The **superficial extrinsic back muscles** (trapezius, latissimus dorsi, levator scapulae, and rhomboids) are posterior axio-appendicular muscles that connect the axial skeleton (vertebral column) with the superior appendicular skeleton (pectoral girdle and humerus) and produce and control limb movements (Fig. 2.33A; see Table 3.4). Although located in the back region, for the most part these muscles receive their nerve supply from the anterior rami of cervical nerves and act on the upper limb. The trapezius receives its motor fibers from a cranial nerve, the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI).

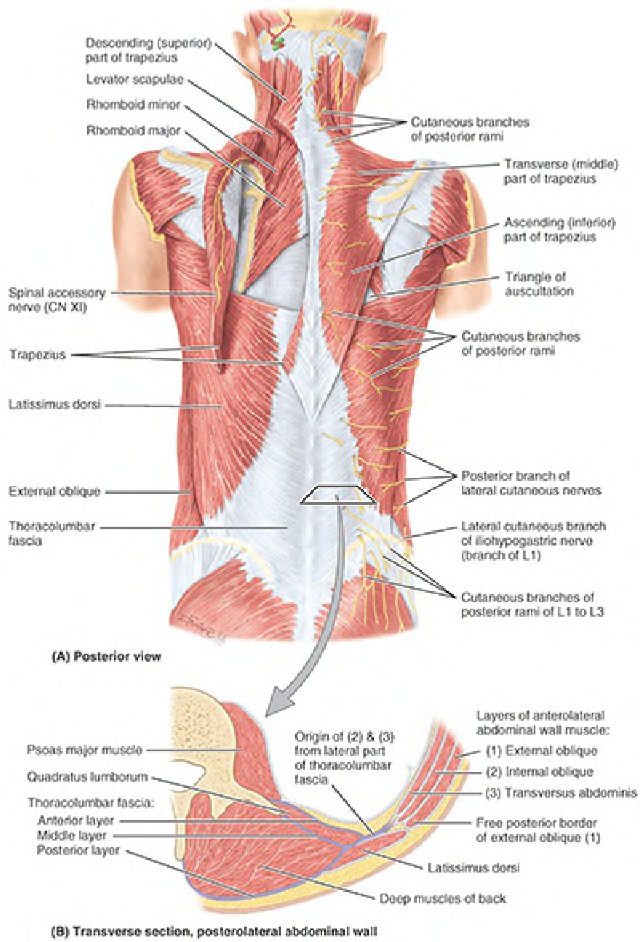


FIGURE 2.33. Muscles of back. A. The superficial extrinsic muscles. The trapezius is reflected on the left to show the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI), coursing on its deep surface, and the levator scapulae and rhomboid muscles. **B.** This transverse section of part of the back shows the location of the intrinsic back muscles and the layers of fascia associated with them (thoracolumbar fascia, purple).

The **intermediate extrinsic back muscles** (serratus posterior) are thin, weak muscles, commonly designated as superficial respiratory muscles, but are more likely proprioceptive rather than motor in function (Vilensky et al., 2001). They are described with muscles of the thoracic wall (see Chapter 4, Thorax). The **serratus posterior superior** lies deep to the rhomboid muscles, and the **serratus posterior inferior** lies deep to the latissimus dorsi. Both

serratus muscles are innervated by intercostal nerves, the superior by the first four intercostals and the inferior by the last four.

Intrinsic Back Muscles

The **intrinsic back muscles** (muscles of back proper, deep back muscles) are innervated by the posterior rami of spinal nerves and act to maintain posture and control movements of the vertebral column (Figs. 2.33B and 2.34). These muscles, which extend from the pelvis to the cranium, are enclosed by deep fascia that attaches medially to the nuchal ligament (Figs. 2.34 and 2.35), the tips of the spinous processes of the vertebrae, the supraspinous ligament, and the median crest of the sacrum. The fascia attaches laterally to the cervical and lumbar transverse processes and the angles of the ribs. The thoracic and lumbar parts of the deep fascia constitute the thoracolumbar fascia (Fig. 2.33). It extends laterally from the spinous processes and forms a thin covering over the intrinsic back muscles in the thoracic region and a strong thick covering for muscles in the lumbar region. The intrinsic back muscles are grouped into superficial, intermediate, and deep layers according to their relationship to the surface.

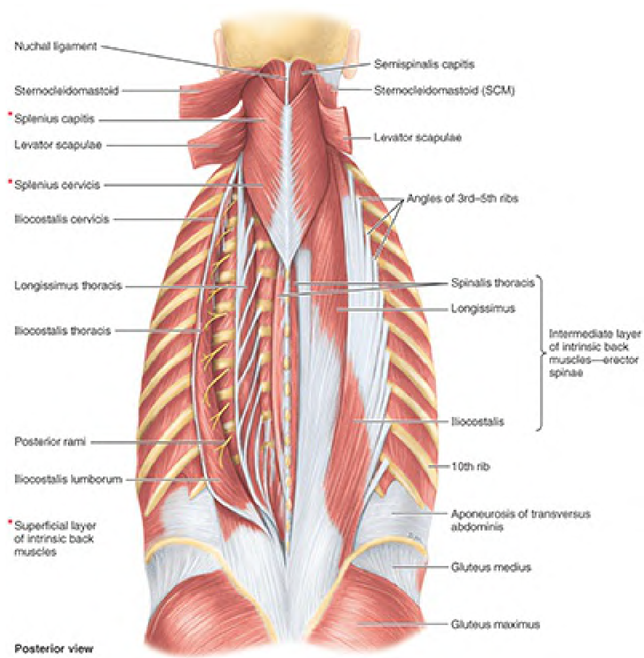


FIGURE 2.34. Superficial and intermediate layers of intrinsic back muscles: splenius and erector spinae. The sternocleidomastoid (SCM) and levator scapulae muscles are reflected to reveal the splenius capitis and splenius cervicis muscles. On the right side, the erector spinae is undisturbed (in situ) and shows the three columns of this massive muscle. On the left side, the spinalis muscle, the thinnest and most medial of the erector spinae columns, is displayed as a separate muscle by reflecting the longissimus and iliocostalis columns of the erector spinae. As they ascend, the direction of fibers is different in the three main groups of muscles: The superficial (splenius) muscles run from medial to lateral, the intermediate (erector spinae) muscles run mostly vertically, and the deep (transversospinalis) muscles run mainly from lateral to medial (see Fig. 2.37).

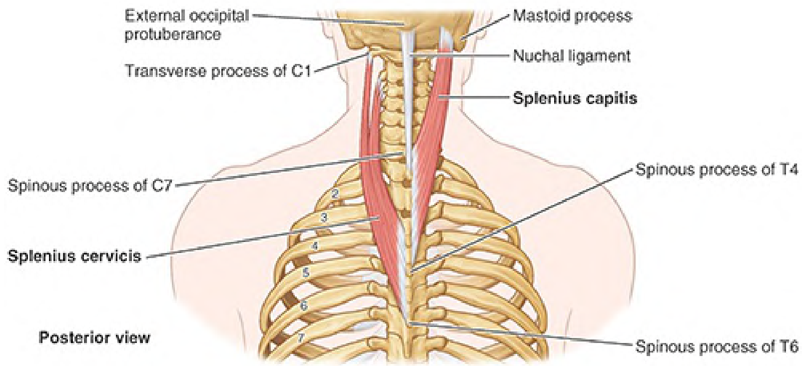


FIGURE 2.35. Superficial layer of intrinsic back muscles (splenius muscles). (These superiorly located muscles do not appear in Fig. 2.36D.)

SUPERFICIAL LAYER

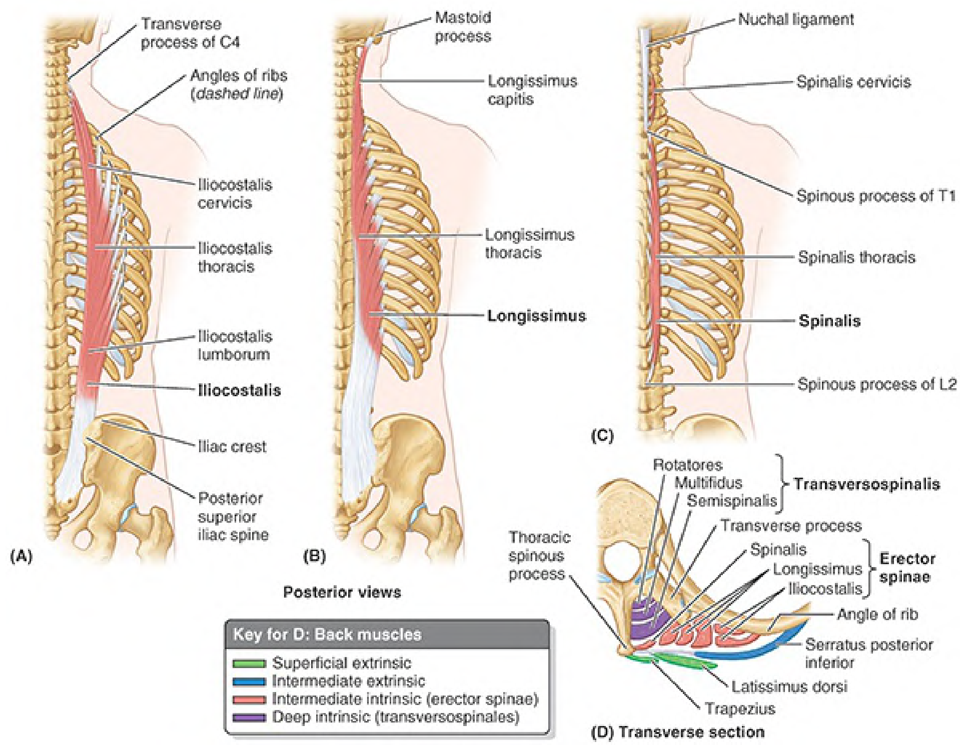


FIGURE 2.36. Intermediate layer of intrinsic back muscles (erector spinae muscles).

The **splenius muscles** (L. musculi splenii) are thick and flat and lie on the lateral and posterior aspects of the neck, covering the vertical muscles somewhat like a bandage, which explains their name (L. splenion, bandage) (Figs. 2.34 and 2.35). The splenius muscles arise from the midline and extend superolaterally to the cervical vertebrae (**splenius cervicis**) and cranium (**splenius capitis**). The splenius muscles cover and hold the deep neck muscles in position. The superficial layer of intrinsic muscles is illustrated separately in Figure 2.35, and information on their attachments, nerve supply, and actions is provided in Table 2.5.

TABLE 2.5. SUPERFICIAL LAYER OF INTRINSIC BACK MUSCLES

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Nerve Supply	Main Action(s)
Splenius	Nuchal ligament and spinous processes of C7–T6 vertebrae	Splenius capitis: Fibers run superolaterally to mastoid process of temporal bone and lateral third of superior nuchal line of occipital bone. Splenius cervicis: tubercles of transverse processes of C1–C3 or C4 vertebrae	Posterior rami of spinal nerves	Acting unilaterally: laterally flexes the neck and rotates the head to side of active muscles Acting bilaterally: extend the head and neck

INTERMEDIATE LAYER

The massive **erector spinae muscles** lie in a "groove" on each side of the vertebral column between the spinous processes centrally and the angles of the ribs laterally (Fig. 2.34). The erector spinae are the chief extensors of the vertebral column and are divided into three columns: The **iliocostalis** forms the lateral column, the **longissimus** forms the intermediate column, and the **spinalis** forms the medial column. Each column is divided regionally into three parts according to the superior attachments (e.g., iliocostalis lumborum, iliocostalis thoracis, and iliocostalis cervicis). The common origin of the three erector spinae columns is through a broad tendon that attaches inferiorly to the posterior part of the iliac crest, the posterior aspect of the sacrum, the sacro-iliac ligaments, and the sacral and inferior lumbar spinous processes.

The erector spinae are often referred to as the "long muscles" of the back. In general, they are dynamic (motion-producing) muscles, acting bilaterally to extend (straighten) the flexed trunk. The muscles of the intermediate layer of intrinsic muscles are illustrated in isolation in Figure 2.36, and information on their attachments, nerve supply, and actions is provided in Table 2.6.

TABLE 2.6. INTERMEDIATE LAYER OF INTRINSIC BACK MUSCLES

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Nerve Supply	Main Action(s)
Erector spinae Iliocostalis	Arises by a broad tendon from the posterior part of the iliac crest, posterior surface of the sacrum, sacro-iliac ligaments, sacral and inferior lumbar spinous processes, and supraspinous ligament	Iliocostalis: lumborum, thoracis, cervicis; fibers run superiorly to angles of lower ribs and cervical transverse processes.	Posterior rami of spinal nerves	Acting bilaterally: extend vertebral column and head; as back is flexed, control movement via eccentric contraction Acting unilaterally: laterally flexes vertebral column
Longissimus		Longissimus: thoracis, cervicis, capitis; fibers run superiorly to ribs between tubercles and angles to transverse processes in thoracic and cervical regions and to mastoid process of temporal bone.		
Spinalis		Spinalis: thoracis, cervicis, capitis; fibers run superiorly to spinous processes in the upper thoracic region and to cranium.		

DEEP LAYER

Deep to the erector spinae is an obliquely disposed group of much shorter muscles, the

transversospinalis muscle group, consisting of the semispinalis, multifidus, and rotatores. These muscles mainly originate from transverse processes of vertebrae and pass to spinous processes of more superior vertebrae. They occupy the "gutter" between the transverse and the spinous processes and are attached to these processes, the laminae between them, and the ligaments linking them together (Fig. 2.37).

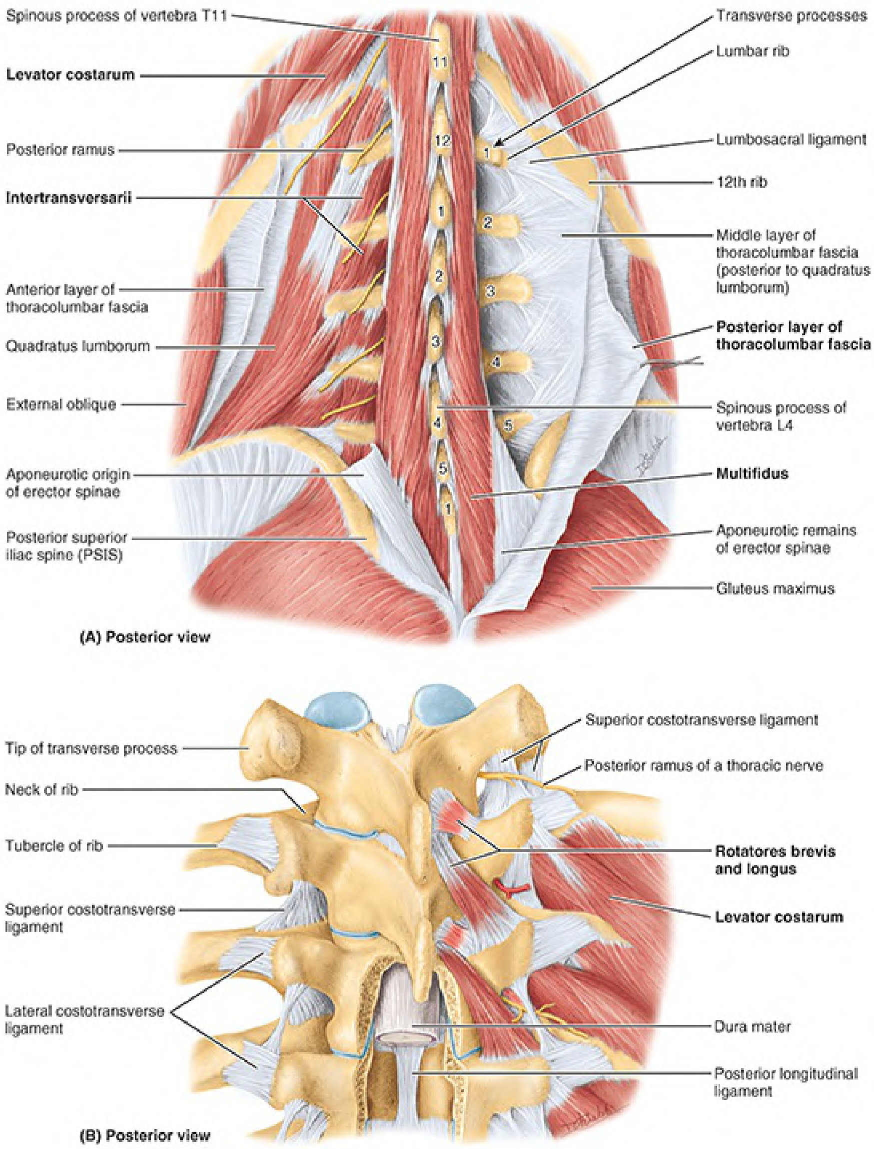


FIGURE 2.37. Deep layer of intrinsic back muscles (transversospinalis muscles). A. Multifidus, levator costarum, intertransversarii, and thoracolumbar fascia. The short lumbar rib is articulating with the transverse process of L1 vertebra. This common variation does not usually cause a problem; however, those unfamiliar with its possible presence may think it is a fractured transverse process. **B.** Rotatores and levatores costarum.

The **semispinalis** is the superficial member of the group. As its name indicates, it arises from approximately half of the vertebral column. It is divided into three parts according to the superior attachments (Table 2.7): **semispinalis capitis**, **semispinalis thoracis**, and **semispinalis cervicis**. Semispinalis capitis forms the longitudinal bulge in the back of the neck near the median plane

(Fig. 2.38A).

TABLE 2.7. DEEP LAYERS OF INTRINSIC BACK MUSCLES

Muscle	Inferior Attachment	Superior Attachment	Nerve Supply	Main Action(s)
Major deep layer				
Transversospinalis	Transverse processes	Spinous processes of more superior vertebrae	Posterior rami of spinal nerves[a]	Extension
Semispinalis	Semispinalis: arises from transverse processes of C4–T12 vertebrae	Semispinalis: thoracis, cervicis, capitis; fibers run superomedially to occipital bone and spinous processes in thoracic and cervical regions, spanning 4–6 segments.		Semispinalis: extends head and thoracic and cervical regions of vertebral column and rotates them contralaterally
Multifidus	Multifidus: arises from posterior sacrum, posterior superior iliac spine of the ilium, aponeurosis of erector spinae, sacro-iliac ligaments, mammillary processes of lumbar vertebrae, transverse processes of T1–T3, articular processes of C4–C7	Multifidus: thickest in lumbar region; fibers pass obliquely superomedially to entire length of spinous processes, located 2–4 segments superior to proximal attachment.		Multifidus: stabilizes vertebrae during local movements of vertebral column
Rotatores (brevis and longus)	Rotatores: arises from transverse processes of vertebrae; best developed in thoracic region	Rotatores: fibers pass superomedially to attach to junction of lamina and transverse process or spinous process of vertebra immediately (brevis) or 2 segments (longus) superior to vertebra of attachment.		Rotatores: stabilizes vertebrae and assist with local extension and rotatory movements of vertebral column; may function as organs of proprioception
Minor deep layer				
Interspinales	Superior surfaces of spinous processes of cervical and lumbar vertebrae	Inferior surfaces of spinous processes of vertebra superior to vertebra of proximal attachment	Posterior rami of spinal nerves	Aid in extension and rotation of vertebral column
Intertransversarii	Transverse processes of cervical and lumbar vertebrae	Transverse processes of adjacent vertebrae	Posterior and anterior rami of spinal nerves[a]	Aid in lateral flexion of vertebral column; acting bilaterally, stabilize vertebral column
Levatores costarum	Pass inferolaterally and insert on rib between tubercle and angle	Tips of transverse processes of C7 and T1–T11 vertebrae	Posterior rami of C8–T11 spinal	Elevate ribs, assisting respiration; assist with lateral flexion of vertebral column

			nerves	

[a]Most back muscles are innervated by posterior rami of spinal nerves, but a few are innervated by anterior rami. Intertransversarii of the cervical region are supplied by anterior rami.

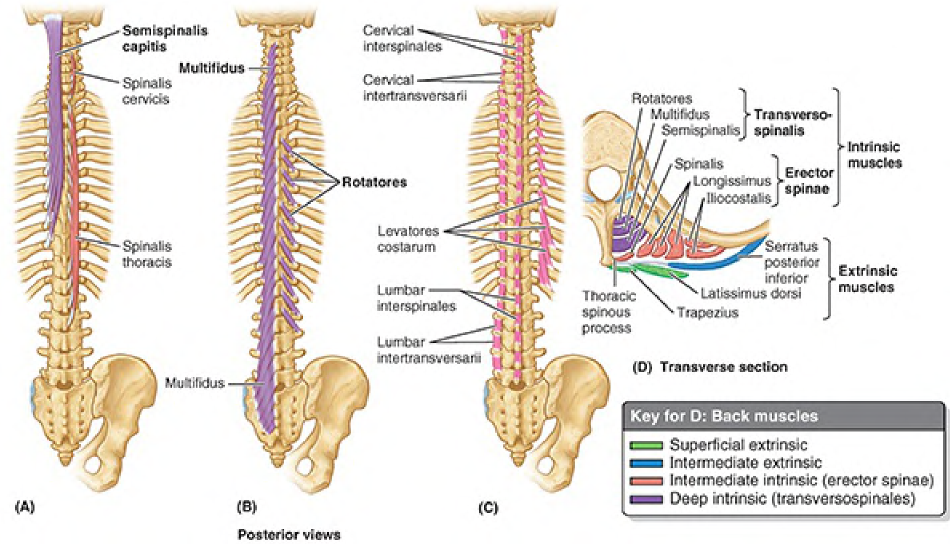


FIGURE 2.38. **Deep layers of intrinsic back muscles. A.** The transversospinalis muscle group (major deep layer—purple) is deep to the erector spinae (pink—see part **D**). **B.** Deeper dissection showing the rotatores and multifidus. The levatores costarum muscles represent the intertransversarii muscles in the thoracic region. **C.** Minor deep layer: interspinales, intertransversarii, and levatores costarum. **D.** Schematic transverse section demonstrating relationships of the groups and individual extrinsic and intrinsic back muscles.

The **multifidus** is the middle layer of the group and consists of short, triangular muscular bundles that are thickest in the lumbar region (Fig. 2.38B).

The **rotatores**, or rotator muscles, are the deepest of the three layers of transversospinal muscles and are best developed in the thoracic region. The transversospinalis group of the deep layer of intrinsic back muscles is illustrated separately in Figure 2.38, and details concerning their attachments, innervation, and action are provided in Table 2.7.

The **interspinales**, **intertransversarii**, and **levatores costarum** are minor deep back muscles that are relatively sparse in the thoracic region. The interspinales and intertransversarii muscles connect spinous and transverse processes, respectively. The elevators of the ribs represent the posterior intertransversarii muscles of the neck. Details concerning the attachments, nerve supply, and actions of the minor muscles of the deep layer of intrinsic muscles are provided in Table 2.7.

PRINCIPAL MUSCLES PRODUCING MOVEMENTS OF INTERVERTEBRAL JOINTS

The principal muscles producing movements of the cervical, thoracic, and lumbar IV joints are illustrated in Figures 2.39 and 2.40, with details summarized in Tables 2.8 and 2.9. Many of the muscles acting on the cervical vertebrae are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 9, Neck. The back muscles are relatively inactive in the stand-easy position, but they (especially the shorter

deep layer of intrinsic muscles) act as static postural muscles (fixators or steadiers) of the vertebral column, maintaining tension and stability as required for the erect posture.

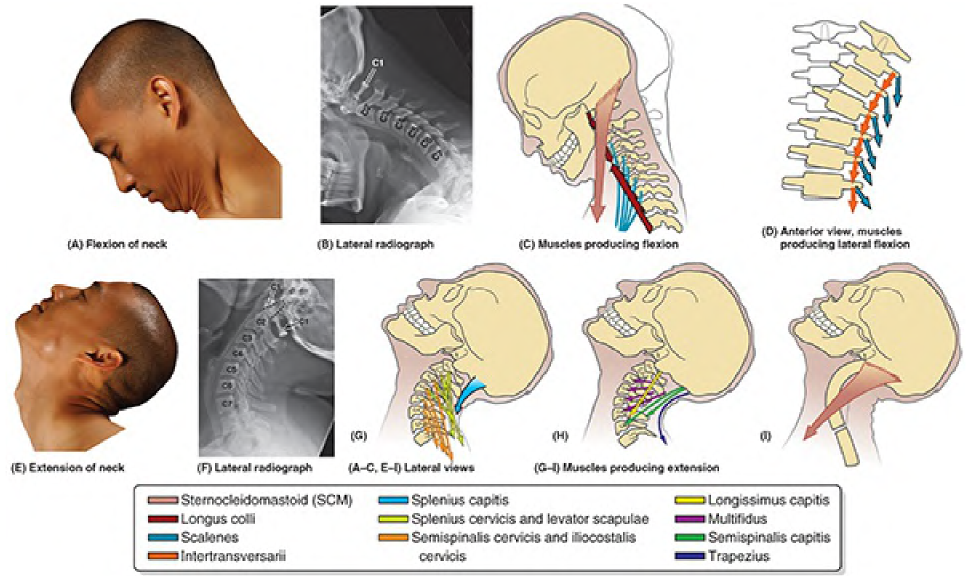


FIGURE 2.39. Principal muscles producing movements of cervical intervertebral joints.

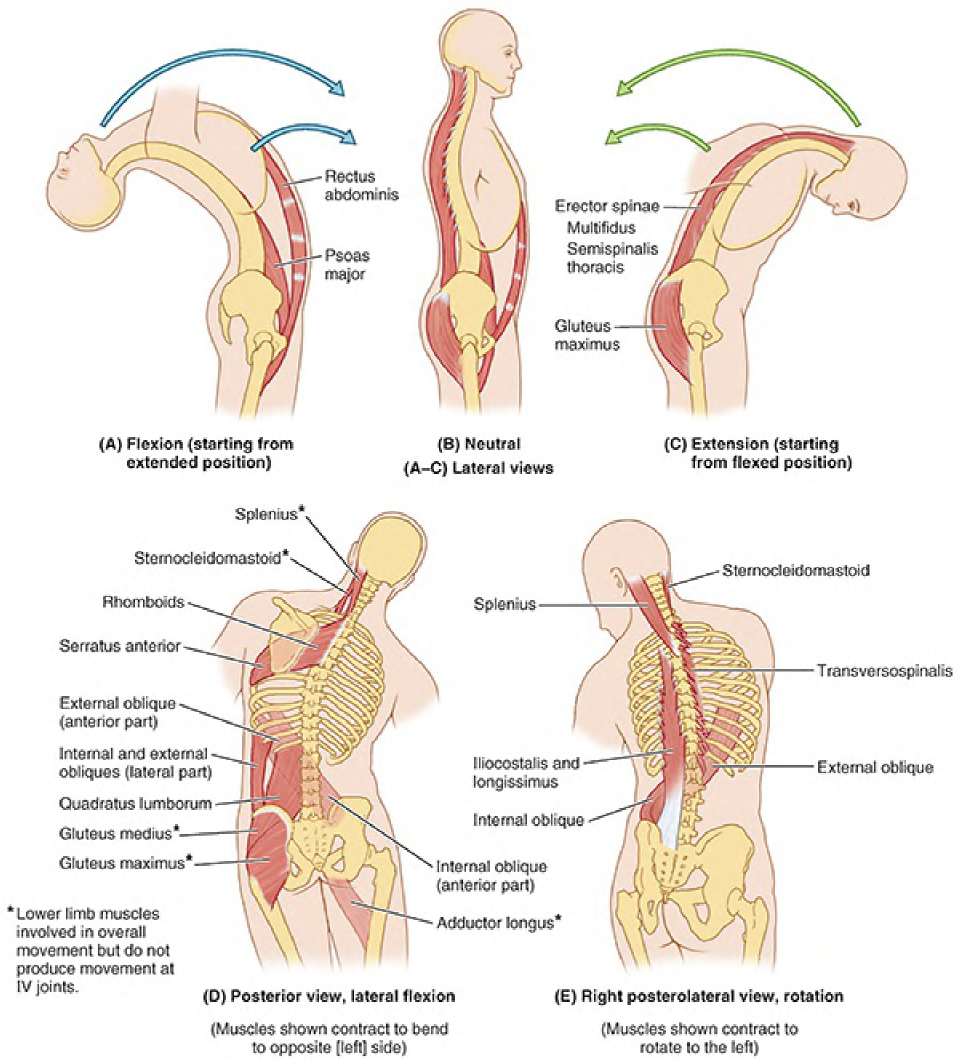


FIGURE 2.40. Principal muscles producing movements of thoracic and lumbar intervertebral joints.

TABLE 2.8. PRINCIPAL MUSCLES PRODUCING MOVEMENT OF CERVICAL INTERVERTEBRAL JOINTS

Flexion	Extension	Lateral Bending	Rotation (Not Shown)
Bilateral action of Longus coli Scalene Sternocleidomastoid	Sternocleidomastoid Trapezius Deep neck muscles Semispinalis cervicis and iliocostalis cervicis Splenius cervicis and levator scapulae Splenius capitis Multifidus Longissimus capitis Semispinalis capitis	Unilateral action of Iliocostalis cervicis Longissimus capitis and cervicis Splenius capitis and cervicis Intertransversarii and scalenes Sternocleidomastoid	Unilateral action of Rotatores Semispinalis capitis and cervicis Multifidus Splenius cervicis

TABLE 2.9. PRINCIPAL MUSCLES PRODUCING MOVEMENTS OF THORACIC

AND LUMBAR INTERVERTEBRAL (IV) JOINTS

Flexion	Extension	Lateral Bending	Rotation
Bilateral action of Rectus abdominis Psoas major Gravity	Bilateral action of Erector spinae Multifidus Semispinalis thoracis	Unilateral action of Iliocostalis thoracis and lumborum Longissimus thoracis Multifidus External and internal oblique Quadratus lumborum Rhomboids Serratus anterior	Unilateral action of Rotatores Multifidus Iliocostalis Longissimus External oblique acting synchronously with opposite internal oblique Splenius thoracis

Note in Table 2.9 that all movements of the IV joints (i.e., all movements of the vertebral column) except pure extension involve or are solely produced by the concentric contraction of abdominal muscles. However, bear in mind that in these as in all movements, the eccentric contraction (controlled relaxation) of the antagonist muscles is vital to smooth, controlled movement (see "Muscle Tissue and Muscular System" in Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts). Thus, it is actually the interaction of anterior (abdominal) and posterior (back) muscles (as well as the contralateral pairs of each) that provides the stability and produces motion of the axial skeleton, much like guy (guide) wires support a pole. Often chronic back strain (such as that caused by excessive lumbar lordosis; see Fig. B2.22C) results from imbalance in this support (lack of tonus of abdominal muscles in the case of lordosis). Exercise or elimination of excessive, unevenly distributed weight may be required to restore balance.

Smaller muscles generally have higher densities of **muscle spindles** (sensors of proprioception that are interdigitated among the muscle's fibers) than do large muscles. It was assumed that the higher concentration of spindles occurred because small muscles produce the most precise movements, such as fine postural movements or manipulation, and, therefore, require more proprioceptive feedback.

The movements described for small muscles are deduced from the location of their attachments and the direction of the muscle fibers and from activity measured by electromyography as movements are performed. Muscles such as the rotatores, however, are so small and are placed in positions of such relatively poor mechanical advantage that their ability to produce the movements described is somewhat questionable. Furthermore, such small muscles are often redundant to other larger muscles that have superior mechanical advantage. Hence, it has been proposed (Buxton & Peck, 1989) that the smaller muscles of small–large muscle pairs function more as "kinesiological monitors," or organs of proprioception, and that the larger muscles are the producers of motion.

Surface Anatomy of Back Muscles

The posterior median furrow overlies the tips of the spinous processes of the vertebrae (Fig. 2.41). The furrow is continuous superiorly with the nuchal groove in the neck and is deepest in the lower thoracic and upper lumbar regions.

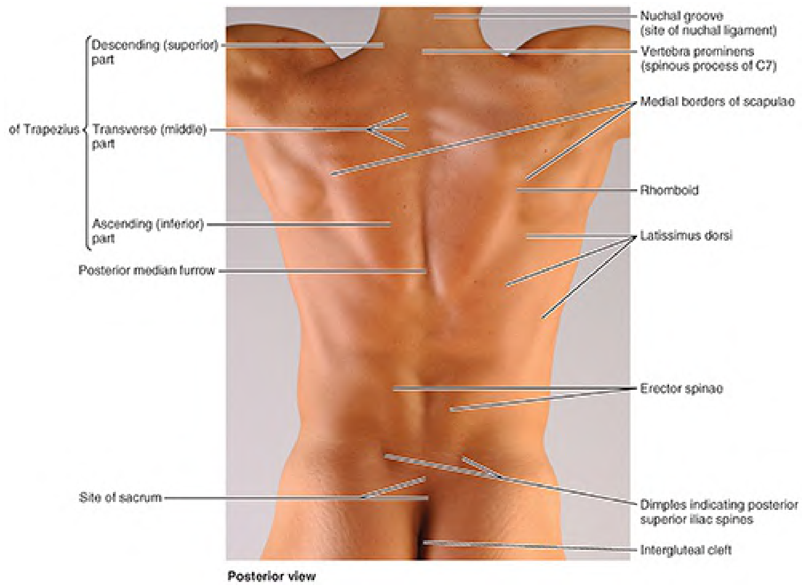


FIGURE 2.41. Surface anatomy of muscles of back.

The erector spinae produce prominent vertical bulges on each side of the furrow. In the lumbar region, they are readily palpable, and their lateral borders coincide with the angles of the ribs and are indicated by shallow grooves in the skin. When the individual is standing, the lumbar spinous processes may be indicated by depressions in the skin. These processes usually become visible when the vertebral column is flexed (see Figs. 2.10A and 2.13A, C). The median furrow ends in the flattened triangular area covering the sacrum and is replaced inferiorly by the intergluteal cleft.

When the upper limbs are elevated, the scapulae move laterally on the thoracic wall, making the rhomboid and teres major muscles visible. The superficially located trapezius and latissimus dorsi muscles connecting the upper limbs to the vertebral column are also clearly visible (Fig. 2.41).

Suboccipital and Deep Neck Muscles

Often misrepresented as a surface region, the **suboccipital region** is a muscle “compartment” deep to the superior part of the posterior cervical region, and deep to the trapezius, sternocleidomastoid, splenius, and semispinalis muscles. It is a pyramidal space inferior to the external occipital prominence of the head that includes the posterior aspects of vertebrae C1 and C2 (Fig. 2.42 orientation figure).

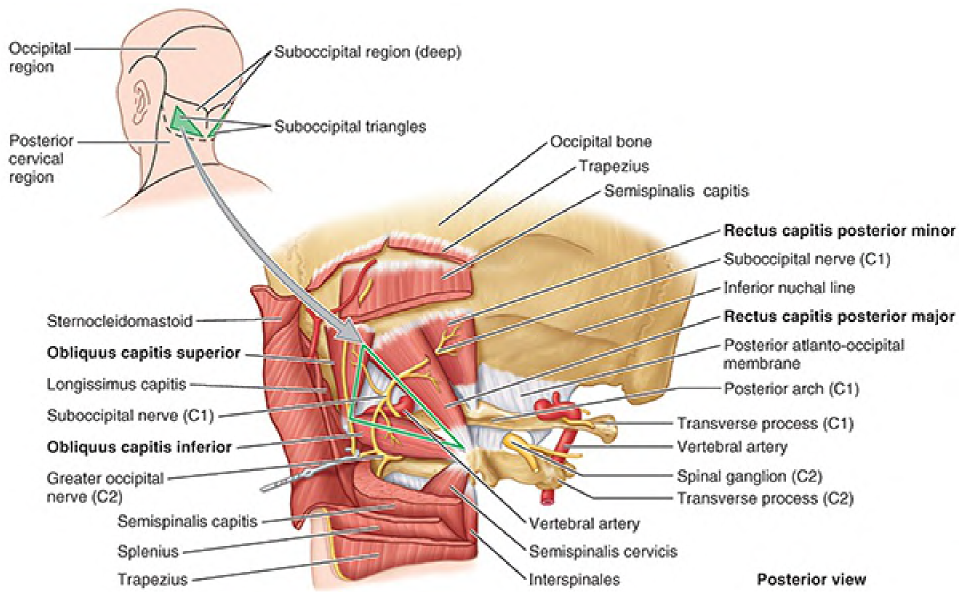


FIGURE 2.42. Suboccipital muscles and suboccipital triangle.

The four small muscles of the suboccipital region lie deep (anterior) to the semispinalis capitis muscles and consist of two rectus capitis posterior (major and minor) and two obliquus muscles. All four muscles are innervated by the posterior ramus of C1, the **suboccipital nerve**. The nerve emerges as the vertebral artery courses deeply between the occipital bone and the atlas (vertebra C1) within the **suboccipital triangle**. Details concerning the boundaries and contents of this triangle and the attachments of the suboccipital muscles are illustrated in Figure 2.42 and described in Table 2.10.

TABLE 2.10. SUBOCCIPITAL MUSCLES AND SUBOCCIPITAL TRIANGLE

Suboccipital Muscles		
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**
Rectus capitis posterior major	Spinous process of vertebra C2	Lateral part of inferior nuchal line of occipital bone
Rectus capitis posterior minor	Posterior tubercle of posterior arch of vertebra C1 (atlas)	Medial part of inferior nuchal line of occipital bone
Obliquus capitis inferior	Posterior tubercle of posterior arch of vertebra C2 (axis)	Transverse process of vertebra C1 (atlas)
Obliquus capitis superior	Transverse process of vertebra C1	Occipital bone between superior and inferior nuchal lines
Suboccipital Triangle		
Aspect of Triangle	**Structures**	
Superomedial boundary	Rectus capitis posterior major	
Superolateral boundary	Obliquus capitis superior	
Inferolateral boundary	Obliquus capitis inferior	

Floor	Posterior atlanto-occipital membrane and posterior arch of vertebra C1 (atlas)
Roof	Semispinalis capitis
Contents	Vertebral artery and suboccipital nerve

Note that the **obliquus capitis inferior** is the only “capitis” muscle that has no attachment to the cranium (skull). These muscles are mainly postural muscles, but actions are typically described for each muscle in terms of producing movement of the head.

The suboccipital muscles act on the head directly or indirectly (explaining the inclusion of capitis in their names) by extending it on vertebra C1 and rotating it on vertebrae C1 and C2. However, recall the discussion of the small member of the small–large muscle pair functioning as a kinesiological monitor for the sense of proprioception.

The principal muscles producing movements of the craniovertebral joints are summarized in Tables 2.11 and 2.12, and the nerves of the posterior cervical region, including the suboccipital region/triangles, are illustrated in Figure 2.43 and summarized in Table 2.13.

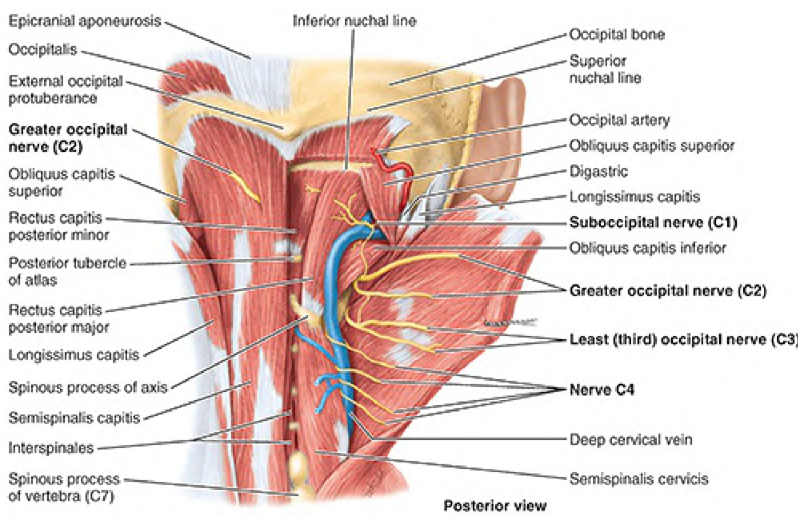
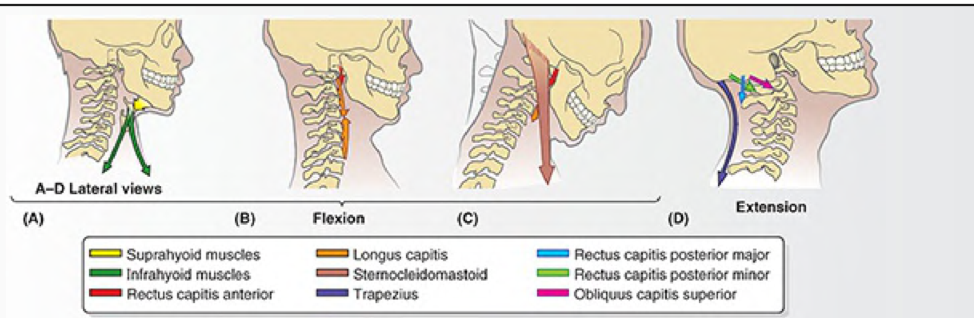


FIGURE 2.43. Nerves of posterior cervical region, including suboccipital region/triangles.

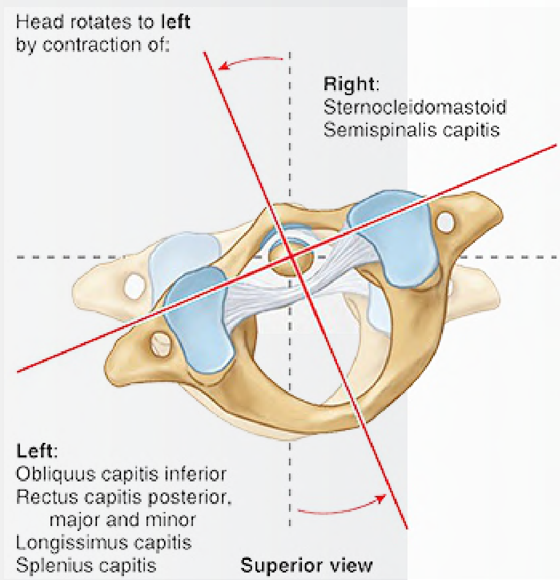
TABLE 2.11. PRINCIPAL MUSCLES PRODUCING MOVEMENT OF ATLANTO-OCCIPITAL JOINTS



Flexion	Extension	Lateral Flexion (Not Shown)
Longus capitis	Rectus capitis posterior, major and	Sternocleidomastoid

Rectus capitis anterior Anterior fibers of sternocleidomastoid Suprahyoid and infrahyoid muscles	minor Obliquus capitis superior Splenius capitis Longissimus capitis Trapezius	Obliquus capitis superior Rectus capitis lateralis Longissimus capitis Splenius capitis

TABLE 2.12. PRINCIPAL MUSCLES PRODUCING MOVEMENT OF ATLANTO-AXIAL JOINTS[a]



Ipsilateral[b]	Contralateral
Obliquus capitis inferior Rectus capitis posterior, major and minor Longissimus capitis Splenius capitis	Sternocleidomastoid Semispinalis capitis

[a]Rotation is the specialized movement at these joints. Movement of one joint involves the other.

[b]Same side to which head is rotated.

TABLE 2.13. NERVES OF POSTERIOR CERVICAL REGION, INCLUDING SUBOCCIPITAL REGION/TRIANGLES

Nerve	Origin	Course	Distribution
Suboccipital	Posterior ramus of spinal nerve C1	Runs between cranium and C1 vertebra to reach suboccipital triangle	Muscles of suboccipital triangle
Greater occipital	Posterior ramus of spinal nerve C2	Emerges inferior to obliquus capitis inferior and ascends to posterior scalp	Skin over the neck and occipital bone
Lesser occipital	Anterior rami of spinal nerves C2–C3	Passes directly to skin	Skin of superior posterolateral neck and scalp posterior to external ear
Posterior rami,	Posterior rami of spinal nerves	Pass segmentally to muscles and	Intrinsic muscles of back and

nerves C3–C7	C3–C7	skin	overlying skin (adjacent to vertebral column)

CLINICAL BOX

MUSCLES OF BACK

Back Strains, Sprains, and Spasms

Adequate warm-up and stretching and exercises to increase the tonus of the "core muscles" (muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall—especially the transversus abdominis—determined to play a role in lumbar stabilization) prevent many back strains and sprains, common causes of lower back pain.

Back sprain is an injury in which only ligamentous tissue, or the attachment of ligament to bone, is involved, without dislocation or fracture. It results from excessively strong contractions related to movements of the vertebral column, such as excessive extension or rotation.

Back strain is a common injury in people who participate in sports; it results from overly strong muscular contraction. The strain involves some degree of stretching or microscopic tearing of muscle fibers. The muscles usually involved are those producing movements of the lumbar IV joints, especially the erector spinae. If the weight is not properly balanced on the vertebral column, strain is exerted on the muscles.

Using the back as a lever when lifting puts an enormous strain on the vertebral column and its ligaments and muscles. Strains can be minimized if the lifter crouches, holds the back as straight as possible, and uses the muscles of the buttocks (nates) and lower limbs to assist with the lifting. Loads should be carried as close to the trunk as possible (Fig. B2.23).

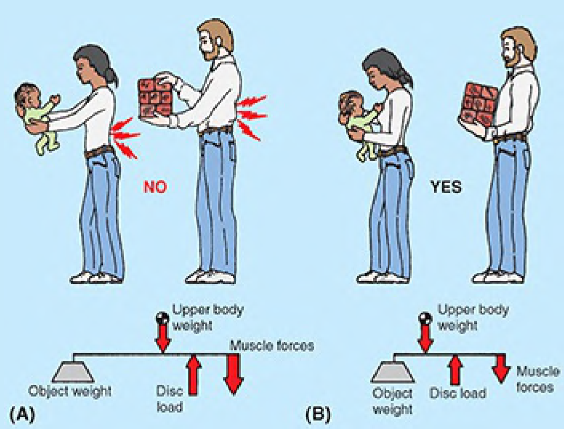


FIGURE B2.23. Load on IV discs created by improper and proper lifting techniques. A. Ergonomics of improper lifting technique. **B.** Ergonomics of proper lifting technique. In part **A**, the body weight is a greater distance away from the fulcrum (IV disc center) than in part **B**. The load on the discs is dependent on the weight of the object, upper body weight, forces of back muscles, and their respective lever arms relative to the center of the

disc. The lever balances below each figure demonstrate that smaller muscles forces and disc loads occur when the object is carried close to the body, that is, closer to the IV disc center.

As a protective mechanism, the back muscles go into spasm after an injury, including a herniated/ruptured disc, or in response to inflammation (e.g., of ligaments or arthritis). A spasm is a sudden involuntary contraction of one or more muscle groups. Spasms are attended by cramps, pain, and interference with function, producing involuntary movement and distortion, and are sometimes relieved by changing or avoiding particular positions (Fig. B2.24).

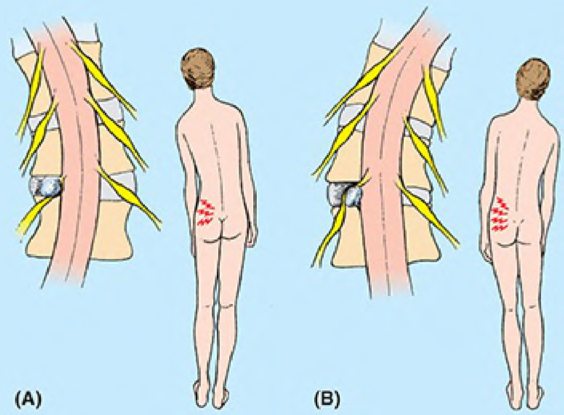


FIGURE B2.24. Muscle spasm following protrusion of an IV disc on left side. Protrusions are shown passing lateral (**A**) and medial (**B**) to the nerve root. Leaning in the directions shown compresses the nerve against the protrusion and increases pain; leaning in the opposite direction (not shown) reduces nerve compression, relieving pain.

The Bottom Line: Muscles of Back

Extrinsic back muscles: The superficial extrinsic back muscles are axio-appendicular muscles that serve the upper limb. ■ Except for the trapezius—innervated by CN XI—the extrinsic back muscles are innervated by the anterior rami of spinal nerves.

Intrinsic back muscles: The deep intrinsic back muscles connect elements of the axial skeleton, are mostly innervated by posterior rami of spinal nerves, and are arranged in three layers: superficial (splenius muscles), intermediate (erector spinae), and deep (transversospinalis muscles). ■ The intrinsic muscles provide primarily extension and proprioception for posture and work synergistically with the muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall to stabilize and produce movements of the trunk.

Suboccipital muscles: Suboccipital muscles extend between vertebrae C1 (atlas) and C2 (axis) and the occipital bone and produce—and/or provide proprioceptive information about—movements at the craniovertebral joints.

CONTENTS OF VERTEBRAL CANAL

The spinal cord, spinal nerve roots, spinal meninges, and the neurovascular structures that supply them are located in the vertebral canal (see Fig. 2.31).

Spinal Cord

The **spinal cord** is the major reflex center and conduction pathway between the body and brain. This cylindrical structure, slightly flattened anteriorly and posteriorly, is protected by the vertebrae, their associated ligaments and muscles, the spinal meninges, and the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

The spinal cord begins as a continuation of the **medulla oblongata** (often called the medulla), the caudal part of the brainstem (see Fig. 8.36). In adults, the spinal cord is 42–45 cm long and extends from the foramen magnum in the occipital bone to the level of the L1 or L2 vertebra (Fig. 2.44B). However, its tapering inferior end, the **conus medullaris**, may terminate as high as T12 vertebra or as low as L3 vertebra. Thus, the spinal cord occupies only the superior two thirds of the vertebral canal.

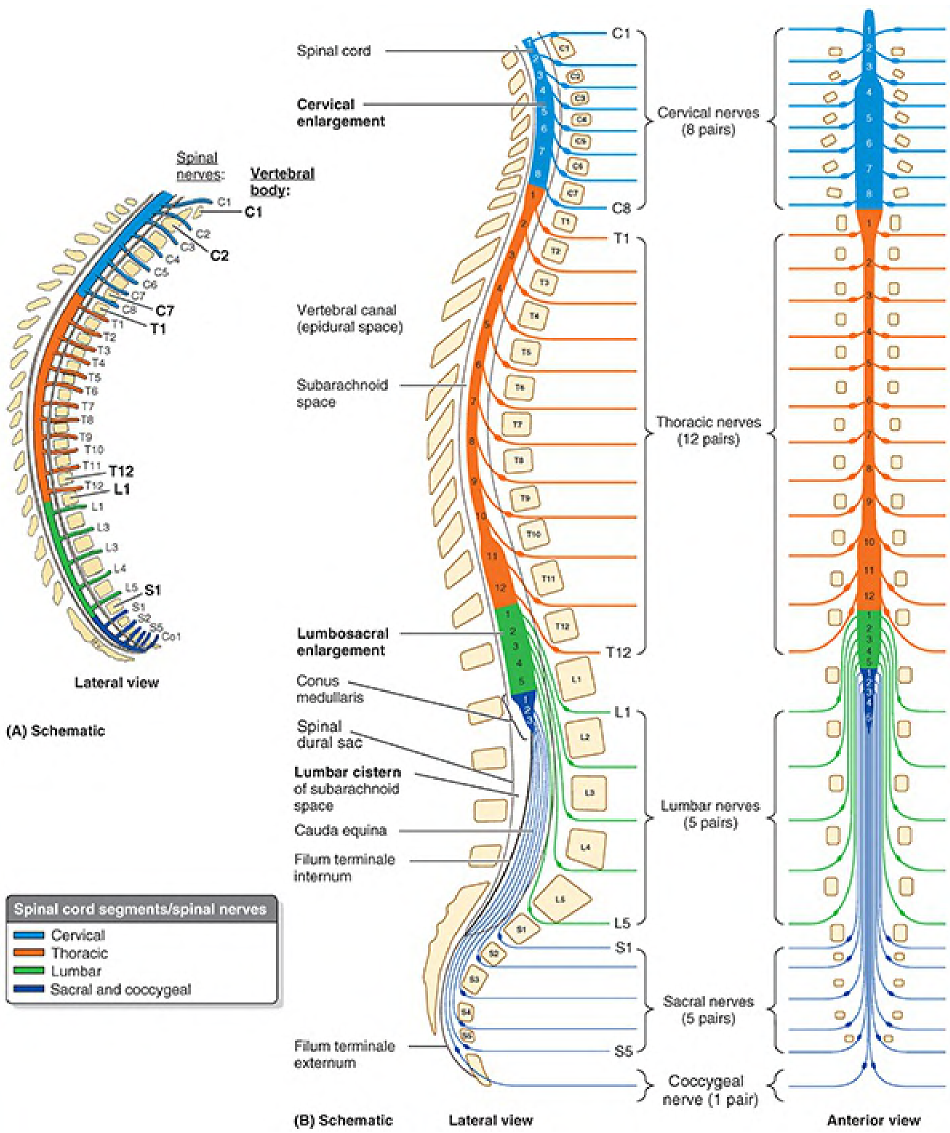


FIGURE 2.44. Relationships of vertebral column, spinal cord segments, and spinal nerves and ganglia. A. At 12 weeks gestation, the spinal cord is the same length as the vertebral column. **B.** The relation of the spinal cord segments (the numbered segments) and spinal nerves and ganglia to the adult vertebral column. Greater growth of the vertebral column has made the spinal cord is shorter by comparison. Now spinal nerves must descend increasingly farther within the vertebral canal to reach the intervertebral foramen by which they exit. Lumbar and sacral spinal nerves extend inferior to the level of the cord, forming the cauda equina.

The spinal cord is enlarged in two regions in relationship to innervation of the limbs. The **cervical enlargement** extends from C4 through T1 segments of the spinal cord, and most of the anterior rami of the spinal nerves arising from it form the brachial plexus of nerves that innervates the upper limbs. The **lumbosacral enlargement** extends from T11 through S1 segments of the spinal cord, inferior to which the cord continues to diminish as the conus medullaris. The anterior rami of the spinal nerves arising from this enlargement make up the lumbar and sacral plexuses of nerves that innervate the lower limbs.

Spinal Nerves and Nerve Roots

The formation and composition of spinal nerves and nerve roots are discussed in Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts. Readers are urged to read this information now if they have not done so previously. The portion of the spinal cord giving rise to the rootlets and roots that ultimately form one bilateral pair of spinal nerves is designated a **spinal cord segment**, the identity of which is the same as the spinal nerves arising from it.

Cervical spinal nerves (except C8) bear the same alphanumeric designation as the vertebrae forming the inferior margin of the IV foramina through which the nerve exits the vertebral canal. The more inferior spinal (T1 through Co1) nerves bear the same alphanumeric designation as the vertebrae forming the superior margin of their exit (Table 2.14). First cervical nerves lack posterior roots in 50% of people, and the coccygeal nerve may be absent.

TABLE 2.14. NUMBERING OF SPINAL NERVES AND VERTEBRAE

Segmental Level	Number of Nerves	Level of Exit from Vertebral Column
Cervical	8 (C1–C8)	Nerve C1[a] (suboccipital nerve) passes superior to arch of vertebra C1 Nerves C2–C7 pass through IV foramina superior to the corresponding vertebrae Nerve C8 passes through the IV foramen between vertebra C7 and T1
Thoracic	12 (T1–T12)	Nerves T1–L5 pass through IV foramina inferior to the corresponding vertebrae
Lumbar	5 (L1–L5)	
Sacral	5 (S1–S5)	Nerves S1–S4 branch into anterior and posterior rami within the sacrum, with the respective rami passing through the anterior and posterior sacral foramina
Coccygeal[a]	1 (Co1)	5th sacral and coccygeal nerves pass through the sacral hiatus

[a]The first cervical nerves lack posterior roots in 50% of people, and the coccygeal nerves may be absent.
Modified from Barr's The Human Nervous System.

In embryos, the spinal cord occupies the whole length of the vertebral canal (Fig. 2.44A); thus, cord segments lie approximately at the vertebral level of the same number, the spinal nerves passing laterally to exit the corresponding IV foramen. During the fetal period, the vertebral column grows faster than the spinal cord; as a result, the cord "ascends" relative to the vertebral canal. At birth, the tip of the conus medullaris is at the L4–L5 level. Thus, in postnatal life, the spinal cord is shorter than the vertebral column; consequently, there is a progressive obliquity of the spinal nerve roots (Figs. 2.44B and 2.45). Because the distance between the origin of a nerve's roots from the spinal cord and the nerve's exit from the vertebral canal increases as the inferior end of the vertebral column is approached, the length of the nerve roots also increases progressively.

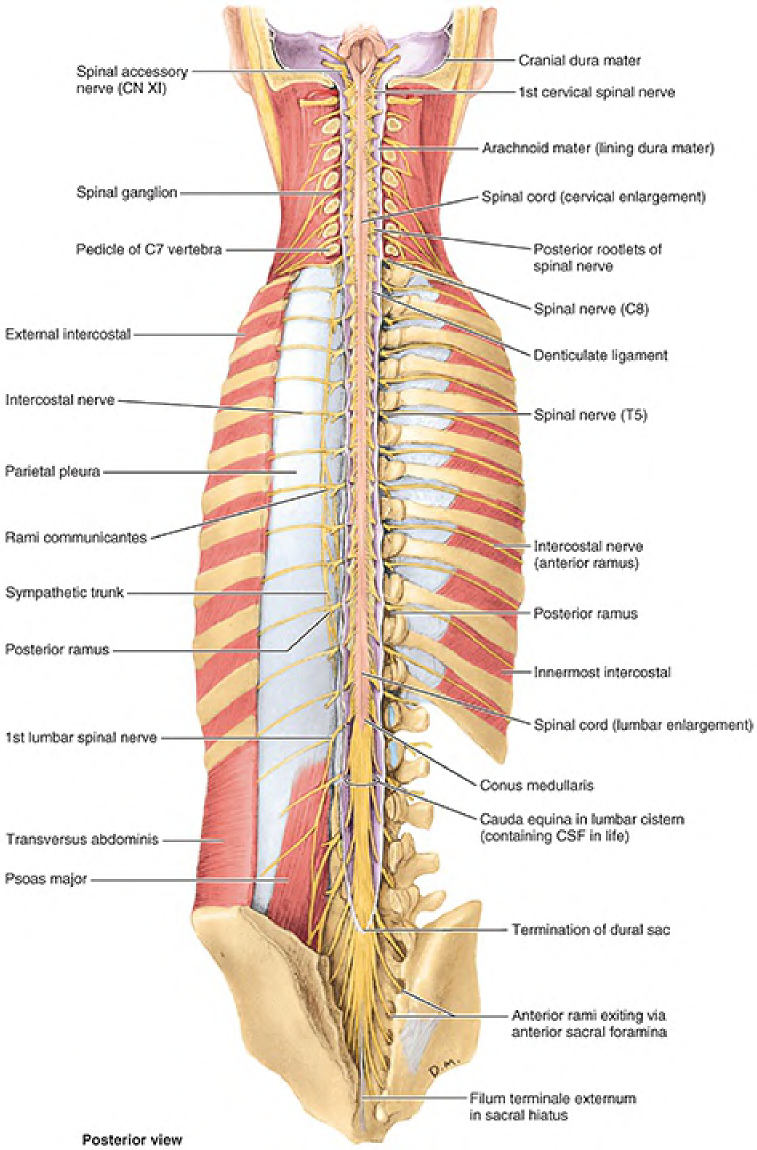


FIGURE 2.45. Spinal cord in situ. The vertebral arches and the posterior aspect of the sacrum have been removed to expose the spinal cord in the vertebral canal. The spinal dural sac has also been opened to reveal the spinal cord and posterior nerve roots, the termination of the spinal cord between the L1 and the L2 vertebral level, and the termination of the spinal dural sac at the S2 segment.

The lumbar and sacral nerve roots are therefore the longest, extending far beyond the termination of the adult spinal cord at approximately the L2 level to reach the remaining lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal IV foramina (Figs. 2.44B, 2.45, and 2.46). This loose bundle of spinal nerve roots, arising from the lumbosacral enlargement and the conus medullaris and coursing within the lumbar cistern of CSF caudal to the termination of the spinal cord, resembles a horse's tail, hence its name—the **cauda equina** (L., horse tail).

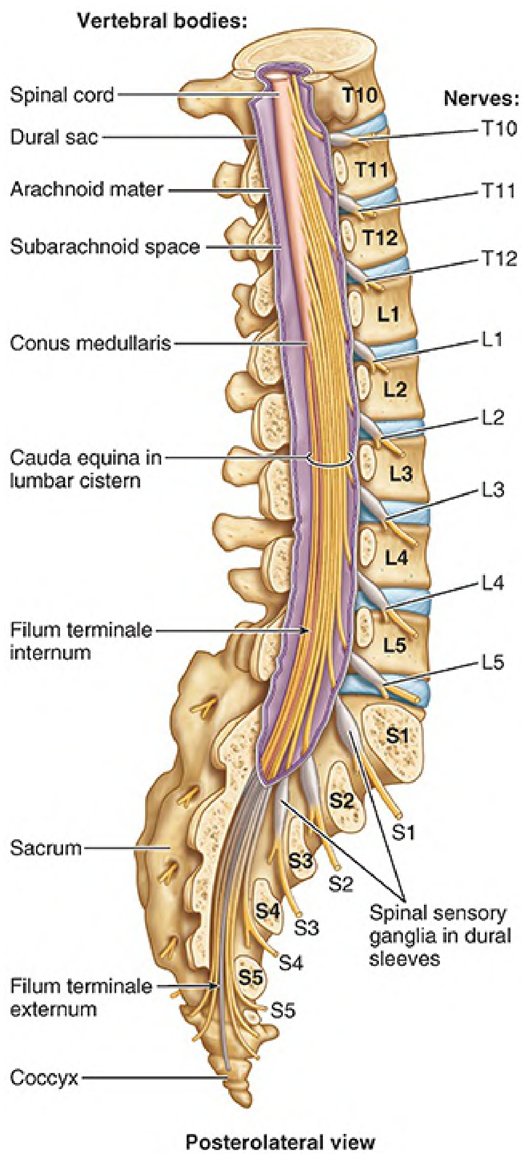


FIGURE 2.46. **Cauda equina and filum terminale in lumbar cistern.** Note the dural sleeves extending from the dural sac, enclosing the spinal sensory ganglia.

Arising from the tip of the conus medullaris, the **filum terminale** descends among the spinal nerve roots in the cauda equina. The filum terminale is the vestigial remnant of the caudal part of the spinal cord that was in the tail-like caudal eminence of the embryo. Its proximal end (the **filum terminale internum** or pial part of the terminal filum) consists of vestiges of neural tissue, connective tissue, and neuroglial tissue covered by pia mater. The filum terminale perforates the inferior end of the dural sac, gaining a layer of dura and continuing through the sacral hiatus as the **filum terminale externum** (or dural part of the terminal filum, also known as the coccygeal ligament) to attach to the dorsum of the coccyx. The filum terminale is an anchor for the inferior end of the spinal cord and spinal meninges (Fig. 2.44B; see Fig. 2.50).

Spinal Meninges and Cerebrospinal Fluid (CSF)

Collectively, the spinal dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater surrounding the spinal cord constitute the **spinal meninges** (Figs. 2.47 and 2.48; Table 2.15). These membranes surround, support, and protect the spinal cord and spinal nerve roots, including those of the cauda equina, and contain the CSF in which these structures are suspended.

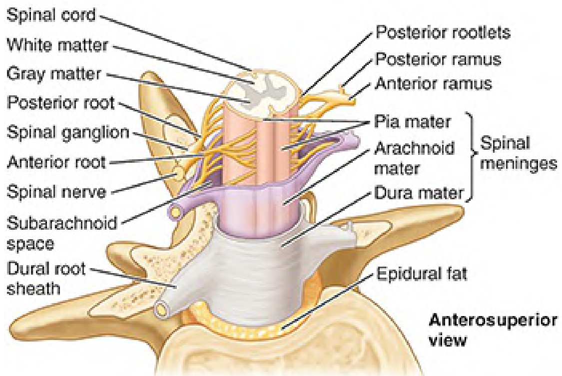


FIGURE 2.47. Spinal cord, spinal nerves, and spinal meninges. Three membranes (the spinal meninges) cover the spinal cord: dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater. As the spinal nerve roots extend toward an IV foramen, they are surrounded by a dural root sheath (sleeve) that is continuous distally with the epineurium of the spinal nerve.

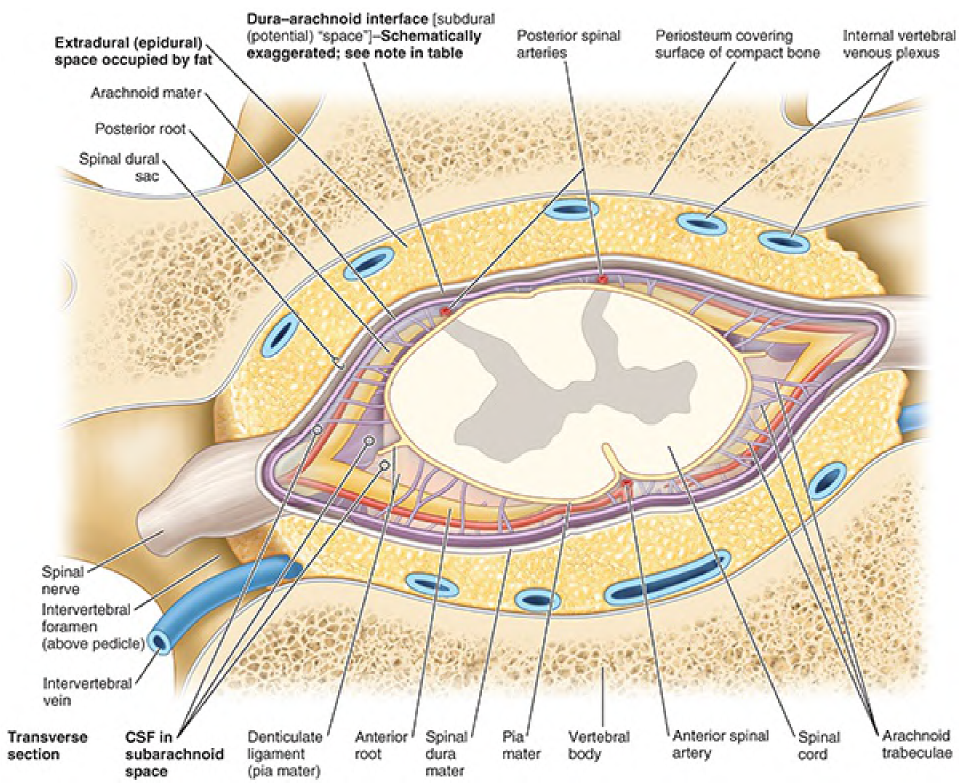


FIGURE 2.48. Transverse section of spinal cord in situ demonstrating meninges and associated spaces.

TABLE 2.15. SPACES ASSOCIATED WITH SPINAL MENINGES[a]

Space	Location	Contents

Epidural	Space between periosteum lining bony wall of vertebral canal and spinal dura mater	Fat (loose connective tissue); internal vertebral venous plexuses; inferior to L2 vertebra, ensheathed roots of spinal nerves
Subarachnoid (leptomeningeal)	Naturally occurring space between arachnoid mater and pia mater	CSF; radicular, segmental, medullary, and spinal arteries; veins; arachnoid trabeculae

[a]Although it is common to refer to a "subdural space," there is no naturally occurring space at the arachnoid–dura junction (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018).

SPINAL DURA MATER

The **spinal dura mater** (or simply, spinal dura), composed mainly of tough fibrous tissue with some elastic fibers, is the outermost covering membrane of the spinal cord (Figs. 2.47 and 2.48). The spinal dura is separated from the periosteum-covered bone and the ligaments that form the walls of the vertebral canal by the **epidural space**. This space is occupied by the internal vertebral venous plexus embedded in a fatty matrix (**epidural fat**). The epidural space runs the length of the vertebral canal, terminating superiorly at the foramen magnum and laterally at the IV foramina, as the spinal dura adheres to the periosteum surrounding each opening, and inferiorly, as the sacral hiatus is sealed by the sacrococcygeal ligament.

The spinal dura forms the **spinal dural sac**, a long tubular sheath within the vertebral canal (Figs. 2.44B, 2.45, and 2.46). This sac adheres to the margin of the foramen magnum of the cranium, where it is continuous with the cranial dura mater. The sac is anchored inferiorly to the coccyx by the filum terminale externum (coccygeal ligament). The spinal dural sac is evaginated by each pair of posterior and anterior roots as they extend laterally toward their exit from the vertebral canal (Fig. 2.49). Thus, tapering lateral extensions of the spinal dura surround each pair of posterior and anterior nerve roots as **dural root sheaths**, or sleeves (Figs. 2.46, 2.47, and 2.49). Distal to the spinal ganglia, these sheaths blend with the **epineurium** (outer connective tissue covering of spinal nerves) that adheres to the periosteum lining the IV foramina.

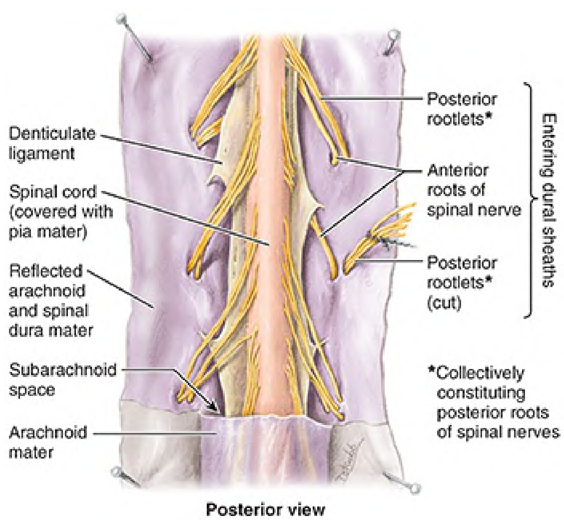


FIGURE 2.49. Spinal cord within its meninges. The spinal dura and arachnoid mater have been split and pinned flat to expose the spinal cord and denticulate ligaments between posterior and anterior spinal nerve roots.

Innervation of Dura Mater. Nerve fibers are distributed to the spinal dura by the (recurrent) meningeal nerves (see Fig. 2.31). The function of these afferent and sympathetic fibers is unclear, although it is known that the afferent fibers supply pain receptors that are involved in the referred pain characteristic of spinal disorders and become irritated when there is inflammation of the meninges (meningitis).

SPINAL ARACHNOID MATER

The **spinal arachnoid mater** is a delicate, avascular membrane composed of fibrous and elastic tissue that lines the spinal dural sac and its dural root sheaths. It encloses the CSF-filled subarachnoid space containing the spinal cord, spinal nerve roots, and spinal ganglia (Figs. 2.46, 2.47, 2.48, and 2.49).

The spinal arachnoid is not attached to the spinal dura but is held against its inner surface by the pressure of the CSF. In a lumbar spinal puncture, the needle traverses the spinal dura and arachnoid simultaneously. Their apposition is the **dura–arachnoid interface** (Fig. 2.48), often erroneously referred to as the "subdural space." No actual space occurs naturally at this site; it is, rather, a weak cell layer (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018). Bleeding into this layer creates a pathological space at the dura–arachnoid junction in which a subdural hematoma is formed. In the cadaver, because of the absence of CSF, the spinal arachnoid falls away from the inner surface of the dura and lies loosely on the spinal cord.

The spinal arachnoid is separated from the pia mater on the surface of the spinal cord by the subarachnoid space containing CSF. Delicate strands of connective tissue, the **arachnoid trabeculae**, span the subarachnoid space connecting the spinal arachnoid and pia.

SPINAL PIA MATER

The **spinal pia mater**, the innermost covering membrane of the spinal cord, is thin and transparent and closely follows all the surface features of the spinal cord (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018). The spinal pia also directly covers the roots of the spinal nerves and the spinal blood vessels. Inferior to the conus medullaris, the spinal pia continues as the filum terminale (Fig. 2.44B).

The spinal cord is suspended in the dural sac by the filum terminale and the right and left **denticulate ligaments** (L. denticulus, small tooth), which run longitudinally along each side of the spinal cord (Figs. 2.49, 2.50, and 2.51). The denticulate ligaments consist of a fibrous sheet of pia extending midway between the posterior and anterior nerve roots from the lateral surfaces of the spinal cord. The 20–22 sawtooth-like processes attach to the inner surface of the arachnoid-lined dural sac. The most superior process of the right and left denticulate ligaments attaches to the cranial dura immediately superior to the foramen magnum, and the inferior process extends from the conus medullaris, passing between the T12 and the L1 nerve roots.

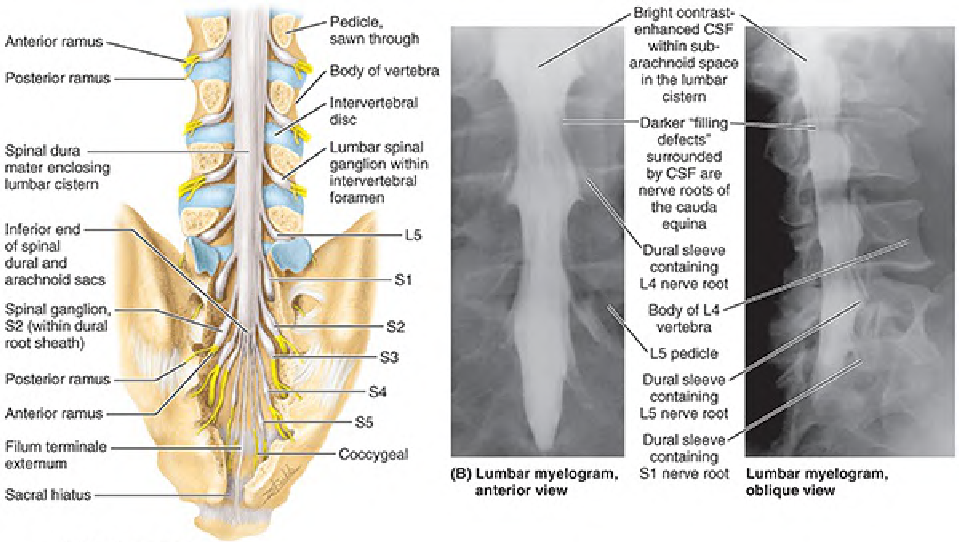


FIGURE 2.50. Inferior end of spinal dural sac. A. Postlaminectomy specimen (i.e., the vertebral arches of the lumbar and sacral vertebrae have been removed) to show the inferior end of the dural sac, which encloses the lumbar cistern containing CSF and the cauda equina. The lumbar spinal ganglia lie within the IV foramina, but the sacral spinal ganglia (S1–S5) are in the sacral canal. In the lumbar region, the nerves exiting the IV foramina pass superior to the IV discs at that level; thus, herniation of the nucleus pulposus tends to impinge on nerves passing to lower levels. **B.** Myelogram of lumbar region. Contrast medium was injected into the lumbar cistern. The lateral projections indicate extensions of the subarachnoid space into the dural root sheaths around the spinal nerve roots.

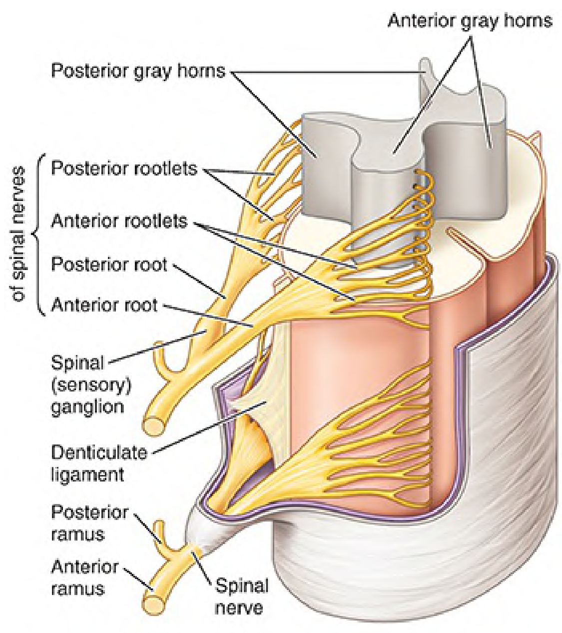


FIGURE 2.51. Spinal cord, anterior and posterior nerve rootlets and roots, spinal ganglia, spinal nerves, and meninges.

SUBARACHNOID SPACE

The **subarachnoid space** is located between the arachnoid and pia mater and is filled with CSF (Figs. 2.46, 2.47, 2.48, and 2.50). The enlargement of the subarachnoid space in the dural sac,

caudal to the conus medullaris and containing CSF and the cauda equina, is the **lumbar cistern** (Figs. 2.44B, 2.45, and 2.46). It extends from the L2 vertebra to the second segment of the sacrum. Dural root sheaths, enclosing spinal nerve roots in extensions of the subarachnoid space, protrude from the sides of the lumbar cistern (Fig. 2.50A, B).

Vasculature of Spinal Cord and Spinal Nerve Roots

ARTERIES OF SPINAL CORD AND NERVE ROOTS

The arteries supplying the spinal cord are branches of the vertebral, ascending cervical, deep cervical, intercostal, lumbar, and lateral sacral arteries (Figs. 2.52 and 2.53). Three longitudinal arteries supply the spinal cord: an anterior spinal artery and paired posterior spinal arteries. These arteries run longitudinally from the medulla of the brainstem to the conus medullaris of the spinal cord.

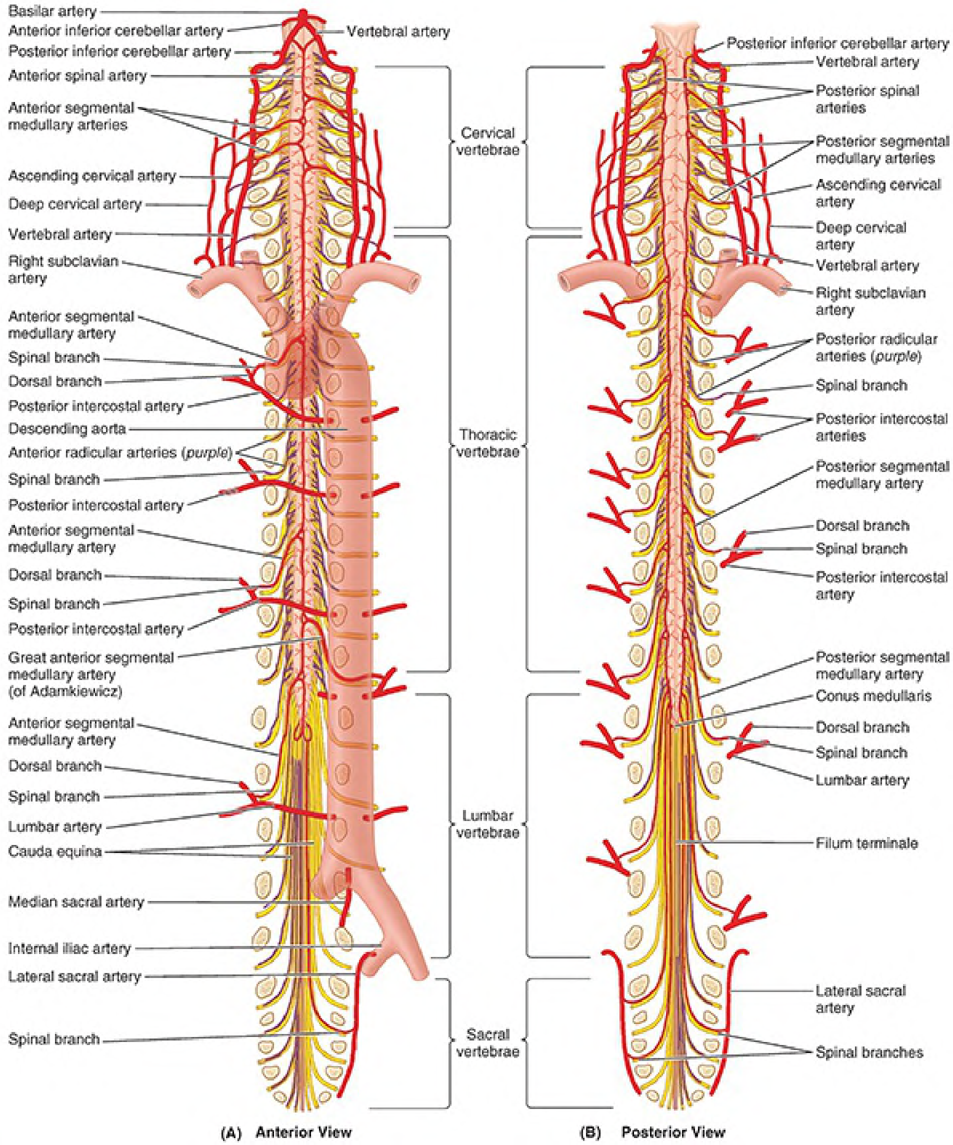


FIGURE 2.52. Arterial supply of spinal cord. A and B. Three longitudinal arteries supply the spinal cord: an anterior spinal artery and two posterior spinal arteries. Radicular arteries are shown at only the cervical and thoracic levels, but they also occur at the lumbar and sacral levels.

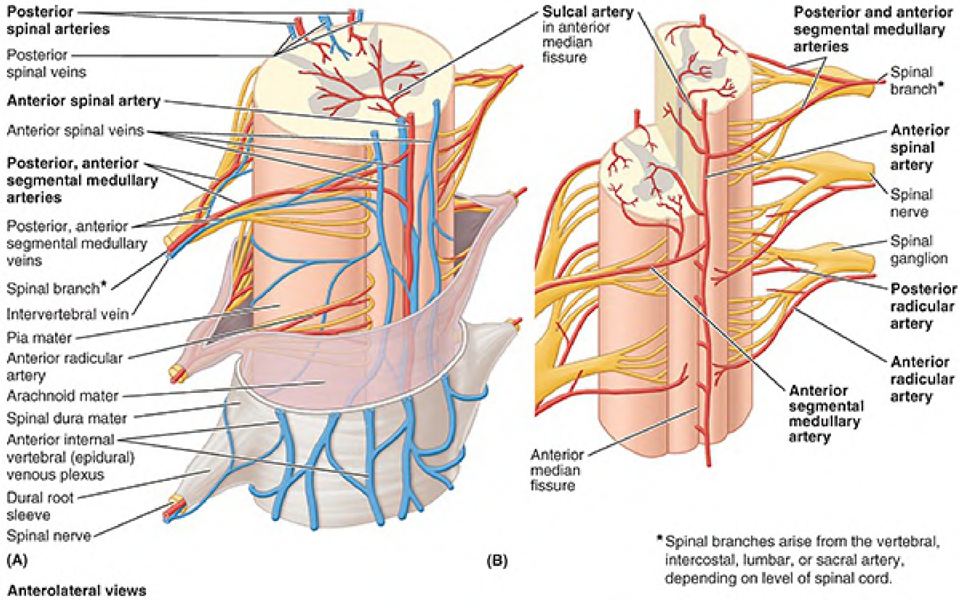


FIGURE 2.53. **Arterial supply and venous drainage of spinal cord and spinal nerve roots. A.** Spinal veins. The veins that drain the spinal cord, as well as internal vertebral venous plexuses, drain into the intervertebral veins, which in turn drain into segmental veins. **B.** Spinal arteries. The pattern of the arterial supply of the spinal cord is from three longitudinal arteries: one anterior lying in the anteromedian position and the other two lying posterolaterally. These vessels are reinforced by medullary branches derived from the segmental arteries. The sulcal arteries are small branches of the anterior spinal artery coursing in the anterior median fissure.

The **anterior spinal artery**, formed by the union of branches of the vertebral arteries, runs inferiorly in the anterior median fissure. **Sulcal arteries** arise from the anterior spinal artery and enter the spinal cord through this fissure (Fig. 2.53B). The sulcal arteries supply approximately two thirds of the cross-sectional area of the spinal cord (Standring, 2021).

Each **posterior spinal artery** is a branch of either the vertebral artery or the posteroinferior cerebellar artery (Figs. 2.52B and 2.53). The posterior spinal arteries commonly form anastomosing channels in the pia mater.

By themselves, the anterior and posterior spinal arteries can supply only the short superior part of the spinal cord. The circulation to much of the spinal cord depends on segmental medullary and radicular arteries running along the spinal nerve roots. The **anterior** and **posterior segmental medullary arteries** are derived from spinal branches of the ascending cervical, deep cervical, vertebral, posterior intercostal, and lumbar arteries. The segmental medullary arteries occur mainly in association with the cervical and lumbosacral enlargements, regions where the need for a good blood supply is greatest. They enter the vertebral canal through the IV foramina.

The **great anterior segmental medullary artery** (of Adamkiewicz), which is on the left side in about 65% of people, reinforces the circulation to two thirds of the spinal cord, including the lumbosacral enlargement (Figs. 2.44B and 2.52A). The great artery, much larger than the other segmental medullary arteries, usually arises via a spinal branch from an inferior intercostal or upper lumbar artery and enters the vertebral canal through the IV foramen at the lower thoracic or upper lumbar level.

The posterior and anterior roots of the spinal nerves and their coverings are supplied by **posterior** and **anterior radicular arteries** (L. radix, root), which run along the nerve roots (Figs. 2.52 and 2.53). The radicular arteries do not reach the posterior, anterior, or spinal arteries. Segmental medullary arteries replace the radicular arteries at the irregular levels at which they occur. Most radicular arteries are small and supply only the nerve roots; however, some of them may assist with the supply of superficial parts of the gray matter in the posterior and anterior horns of the spinal cord.

VEINS OF SPINAL CORD

In general, the veins of the spinal cord have a distribution similar to that of the spinal arteries. There are usually three **anterior** and three **posterior spinal veins** (Fig. 2.53A). The spinal veins are arranged longitudinally, communicate freely with each other, and are drained by up to 12 **anterior** and **posterior medullary** and **radicular veins**. The veins of the spinal cord join the internal vertebral (epidural) venous plexuses in the epidural space (see Fig. 2.31). The internal vertebral venous plexuses pass superiorly through the foramen magnum to communicate with dural sinuses and vertebral veins in the cranium. The internal vertebral plexuses also communicate with the external vertebral venous plexuses on the external surface of the vertebrae.

CLINICAL BOX

CONTENTS OF VERTEBRAL CANAL

Compression of Lumbar Spinal Nerve Roots

The lumbar spinal nerves increase in size from superior to inferior, whereas the IV foramina decrease in diameter. Consequently, the L5 spinal nerve roots are the thickest and their foramina, the narrowest. This increases the chance that these nerve roots will be compressed if osteophytes (bony spurs) develop (see Fig. B2.10B), or herniation of an IV disc occurs.

Myelography

Myelography is a radiopaque contrast procedure that allows visualization of the spinal cord and spinal nerve roots (see Fig. 2.50B). In this procedure, CSF is withdrawn by lumbar puncture and replaced with a contrast material injected into the spinal subarachnoid space. This technique shows the extent of the subarachnoid space and its extensions around the spinal nerve roots within the dural root sheaths. High-resolution MRI has largely supplanted myelography.

Development of Meninges and Subarachnoid Space

Together, the arachnoid and pia mater form the **leptomeninges** (G., slender membranes). They develop as a single layer from the mesenchyme surrounding the embryonic spinal cord. Fluid-filled spaces form within this layer and coalesce to produce the subarachnoid space (Moore et al., 2020). The origin of both pia and arachnoid from a single membrane is reflected by the numerous arachnoid trabeculae passing between them (Fig. 2.48). In adults, the arachnoid is thick enough to be manipulated with forceps. The delicate pia mater gives a shiny appearance to the surface of the spinal cord but is barely visible to the unaided eye as a distinct layer.

Lumbar Spinal Puncture

Lumbar puncture (LP, spinal tap), the withdrawal of CSF from the lumbar cistern, is an important diagnostic tool for evaluating a variety of central nervous system (CNS) disorders. Meningitis and diseases of the CNS may alter the cells in the CSF or change the concentration of its chemical constituents. Examination of CSF can also determine if blood is present.

LP is performed with the patient lying on the side with the back and hips flexed (knee–chest position, Fig. B2.25). Flexion of the vertebral column facilitates insertion of the needle by spreading apart the vertebral laminae and spinous processes, stretching the ligamenta flava.

Head).

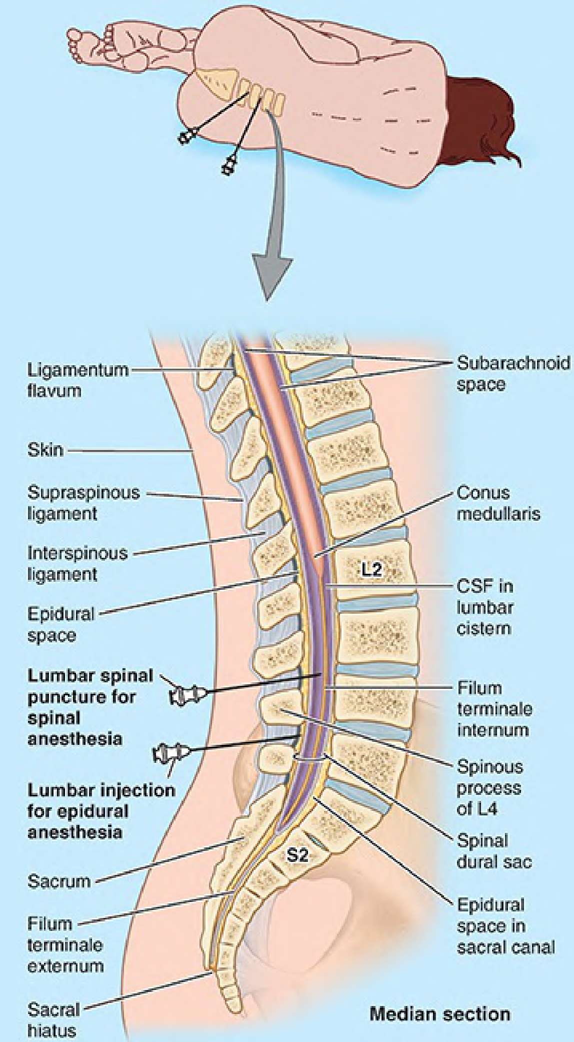


FIGURE B2.25. Lumbar spinal puncture.

The skin covering the lower lumbar vertebrae is anesthetized, and a lumbar puncture needle, fitted with a stylet, is inserted in the midline between the spinous processes of the L3 and L4 (or L4 and L5) vertebrae. Recall that a plane transecting the highest points of the iliac crests—the supracristal plane—usually passes through the L4 spinous process. At these levels, there is no danger of damaging the spinal cord.

After passing 4–6 cm in adults (more in obese persons), the needle "pops" through the ligamentum flavum, then punctures the dura and arachnoid, and enters the lumbar cistern. When the stylet is removed, CSF escapes at the rate of approximately one drop per second. If subarachnoid pressure is high, CSF flows out or escapes as a jet.

Lumbar puncture is not performed in the presence of increased intracranial pressure (within the cranial cavity). The intracranial pressure is generally previously determined by CT scanning but may also be determined by examination of the fundus (back) of the interior of the eyeball with an ophthalmoscope (see Clinical Box "Papilledema" in Chapter 8, Head).

Spinal Anesthesia

An anesthetic agent is injected into the subarachnoid space. Anesthesia usually occurs within 1 minute. A headache may follow spinal anesthesia, which likely results from the leakage of CSF through the lumbar puncture (see Clinical Box "Anesthesia for Childbirth" in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum).

Epidural Anesthesia (Blocks)

An anesthetic agent is injected into the epidural space using the position described for lumbar spinal puncture, or through the sacral hiatus (caudal epidural anesthesia/block) (see Clinical Box "Anesthesia for Childbirth" in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum).

Ischemia of Spinal Cord

The segmental reinforcements of the blood supply to the spinal cord from the segmental medullary arteries are important in supplying blood to the anterior and posterior spinal arteries. Fractures, dislocations, and fracture–dislocations may interfere with the blood supply to the spinal cord from the spinal and medullary arteries.

Deficient blood supply (ischemia) of the spinal cord affects its function and can lead to muscle weakness and paralysis. The spinal cord may also suffer circulatory impairment if the segmental medullary arteries, particularly the great anterior segmental medullary artery (of Adamkiewicz), are narrowed by obstructive arterial disease.

Sometimes the aorta is purposely occluded (cross clamped) during surgery. Patients undergoing such surgeries, and those with ruptured aneurysms of the aorta or occlusion of the great anterior segmental medullary artery, may lose all sensation and voluntary movement inferior to the level of impaired blood supply to the spinal cord (paraplegia) secondary to death of neurons in the part of the spinal cord supplied by the anterior spinal artery (Figs. 2.52 and 2.53).

Neurons with cell bodies distant from the site of ischemia of the spinal cord will also die, secondary to the degeneration of axons traversing the site. The likelihood of iatrogenic paraplegia depends on such factors as the age of the patient, the extent of the disease, and the length of time the aorta is cross clamped.

When systemic blood pressure drops severely for 3–6 minutes, blood flow from the segmental medullary arteries to the anterior spinal artery supplying the midthoracic region of the spinal cord may be reduced or stopped. These people may also lose sensation and voluntary movement in the areas supplied by the affected level of the spinal cord.

Spinal Cord Injuries

The vertebral canal varies considerably in size and shape from level to level, particularly in

the cervical and lumbar regions. A narrow vertebral canal in the cervical region, into which the spinal cord fits tightly, is potentially dangerous because a minor fracture and/or dislocation of a cervical vertebra may damage the spinal cord. The protrusion of a cervical IV disc into the vertebral canal after a neck injury may cause spinal cord shock associated with transient depression or abolition of reflex activity or paralysis inferior to the site of the lesion.

In some people, no fracture or dislocation of cervical vertebrae can be found. If the individual dies and an autopsy is performed, a softening of the spinal cord may be detected at the site of the cervical disc protrusion. Encroachment of the vertebral canal by a protruding IV disc, by swollen ligamenta flava, or resulting from osteoarthritis of the zygapophysial joints may exert pressure on one or more of the spinal nerve roots of the cauda equina. Pressure may produce sensory and motor symptoms in the area of distribution of the involved spinal nerve. This group of bone and joint abnormalities, called lumbar spondylosis (degenerative joint disease), also causes localized pain and stiffness.

Transection of the spinal cord results in loss of all sensation and voluntary movement inferior to the lesion. Transection between the following levels will result in the indicated effects:

- C1–C3: no function below head level; a ventilator is required to maintain respiration.
- C4–C5: quadriplegia (no function of upper and lower limbs); respiration occurs.
- C6–C8: loss of lower limb function combined with a loss of hand and a variable amount of upper limb function; the individual may be able to self-feed or propel a wheelchair.
- T1–T9 paraplegia (paralysis of both lower limbs); the amount of trunk control varies with the height of the lesion.
- T10–L1: some thigh muscle function, which may allow walking with long leg braces
- L2–L3: retention of most leg muscle function; short leg braces may be required for walking.

The Bottom Line: Contents of Vertebral Canal

The spinal cord, spinal nerve roots, CSF, and meninges that surround them are the main contents of the vertebral canal (see Fig. 2.31).

Spinal cord: In adults, the spinal cord occupies only the superior two thirds of the vertebral canal and has two (cervical and lumbosacral) enlargements related to innervation of the limbs. ■ The inferior, tapering end of the spinal cord, the conus medullaris, ends at the level of the L1 or L2 vertebra. ■ However, the filum terminale and spinal nerve roots from the lumbosacral part of the spinal cord that form the cauda equina continue inferiorly within the lumbar cistern containing CSF.

Spinal meninges and CSF: Nerve tissues and neurovascular structures of the vertebral

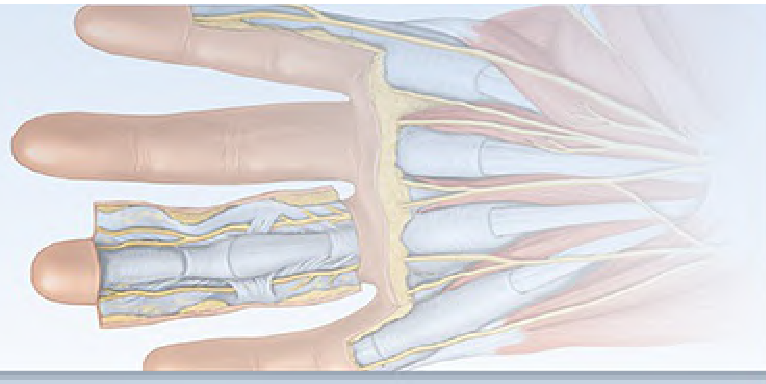
canal are suspended in CSF contained within the dural sac and dural root sheaths. ■ The fluid-filled subarachnoid space is lined with the pia and arachnoid mater, which are continuous membranes (leptomeninges). ■ Because the spinal cord does not extend into the lumbar cistern (the inferior part of the subarachnoid space), it is an ideal site for sampling CSF or for injection of anesthetic agents.

Vasculature of spinal cord and spinal nerve roots: Longitudinal spinal arteries supplying the spinal cord are reinforced by asymmetric segmental medullary arteries occurring at irregular levels (mostly in association with the cervical and lumbar enlargements) that also supply the spinal nerve roots at those levels ■ At levels and on the sides where segmental medullary arteries do not occur, radicular arteries supply the nerve roots. ■ The veins draining the spinal cord have a distribution and drainage generally reflective of the spinal arteries, although there are normally three longitudinal spinal veins both anteriorly and posteriorly.

---

[1] In contemporary usage, the terms vertebral body and centrum and the terms vertebral arch and neural arch are often erroneously used as synonyms. Technically, however, in each case the former is a gross anatomy term applied to parts of the adult vertebrae, and the latter is an embryology term referring to parts of a developing vertebra ossifying from primary centers. The vertebral body includes the centrum and part of the neural arch; the vertebral arch is thus less extensive than the neural arch, and the centrum is less extensive than the vertebral body (O'Rahilly, 1986; Standring, 2021).

3



Upper Limb

CLINICAL BOX KEY

OVERVIEW OF UPPER LIMB

The upper limb is characterized by its mobility and ability to grasp, strike, and conduct fine motor skills (manipulation). These characteristics are especially marked in the hand when performing manual activities, such as buttoning a shirt.

Synchronized interplay occurs between the joints of the upper limb to coordinate the intervening segments to perform smooth, efficient motion at the most workable distance or position required for a specific task. Efficiency of hand function results in large part from the ability to place it in the proper position by movements at the scapulothoracic, glenohumeral, elbow, radio-ulnar, and wrist joints.

The upper limb consists of four major segments, which are further subdivided into regions for precise description (Figs. 3.1 and 3.2):

1. **Shoulder**: proximal segment of the limb that overlaps parts of the trunk (thorax and back) and lower lateral neck. It includes the **pectoral**, **scapular**, and **deltoid regions** of the upper limb, and the lateral part (greater supraclavicular fossa) of the lateral cervical region. It overlies half of the pectoral girdle. The **pectoral girdle (shoulder girdle)** is a bony ring, incomplete posteriorly, formed by the scapulae and clavicles and completed anteriorly by the manubrium of the sternum (part of the axial skeleton).

2. **Arm** (L. brachium): first segment of the free upper limb (more mobile part of the upper limb independent of the trunk) and the longest segment of the limb. It extends between and connects the shoulder and the elbow and consists of **anterior** and **posterior regions of the arm**, centered around the humerus.
3. **Forearm** (L. antebrachium): second longest segment of the limb. It extends between and connects the elbow and wrist and includes **anterior** and **posterior regions of the forearm** overlying the radius and ulna.
4. **Hand** (L. manus): part of the upper limb distal to the forearm that is formed around the carpus, metacarpus, and phalanges. It is composed of the **wrist**, **palm**, **dorsum of hand**, and **digits** (fingers, including an opposable thumb) and is richly supplied with sensory endings for touch, pain, and temperature.

Acromioclavicular Joint

Glenohumeral Joint

TABLE 3.17 Movements of Glenohumeral Joint

Elbow Joint

Proximal Radio-Ulnar Joint

Distal Radio-Ulnar Joint

Wrist Joint

Intercarpal Joints

Carpometacarpal and Intermetacarpal Joints

Metacarpophalangeal and Interphalangeal Joints

CLINICAL BOX Joints of Upper Limb

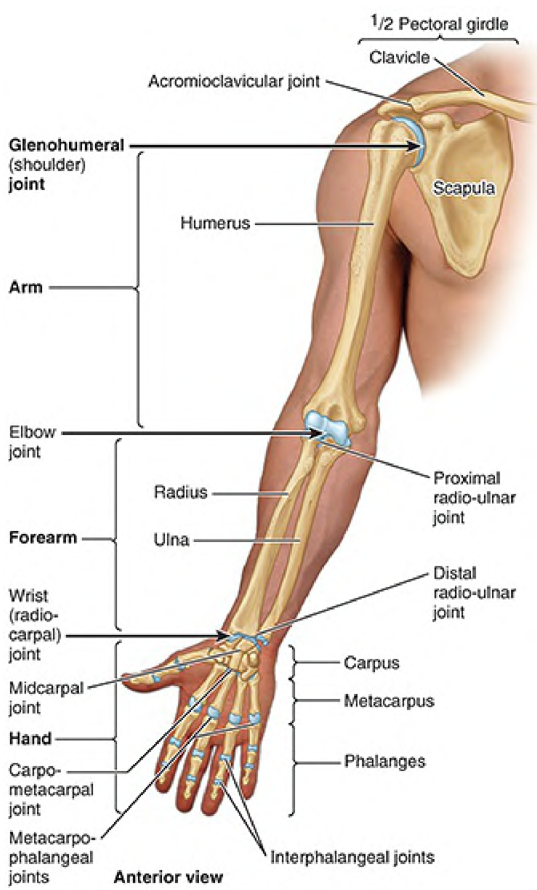


FIGURE 3.1. **Parts and bones of upper limb.** The joints divide the superior appendicular skeleton, and thus the limb itself, into four main parts: shoulder, arm, forearm, and hand.

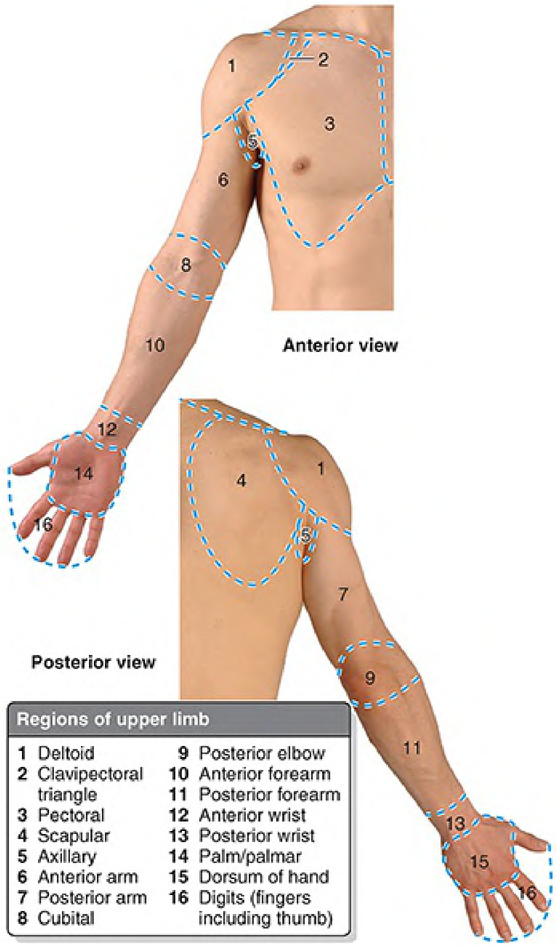


FIGURE 3.2. **Regions of upper limb.** For exact description, the upper limb is divided into regions based on the external features (surface anatomy) of the underlying muscular formations, bones, and joints.

COMPARISON OF UPPER AND LOWER LIMBS

Developing in a similar fashion, the upper and lower limbs share many common features. However, they are sufficiently distinct in structure to enable markedly different functions and abilities. Because the upper limb is not usually involved in weight bearing or motility, its stability has been sacrificed to gain mobility. The upper limb still possesses remarkable strength, and because of the hand's ability to conform to a paddle or assume a gripping or platform configuration, it may assume a role in motility in certain circumstances.

Both the upper and the lower limbs are connected to the **axial skeleton** (cranium, vertebral column, and associated thoracic cage) via the bony pectoral and pelvic girdles, respectively. The pelvic girdle consists of the two hip bones connected to the sacrum (see Fig. 7.3). The pectoral girdle consists of the scapulae and clavicles, connected to the manubrium of the sternum. Both girdles possess a large flat bone located posteriorly, which provides for attachment of proximal muscles and which connects with its contralateral partner anteriorly via small bony braces, the pubic rami and clavicles. However, the flat iliac bones of the pelvic girdle are also connected

posteriorly through their primary attachment to the sacrum via the essentially rigid, weight-transferring sacro-iliac joints. This posterior connection to the axial skeleton places the lower limbs inferior to the trunk, enabling them to be supportive as they function primarily in relation to the line of gravity. Furthermore, because the two sides are connected both anteriorly and posteriorly, the pelvic girdle forms a complete rigid ring that limits mobility, making the movements of one limb markedly affect the movements of the other. The pectoral girdle, however, is connected to the trunk only anteriorly, via the sternum, by flexible joints with 3 degrees of freedom. It is an incomplete ring because the scapulae are not connected with each other posteriorly. Thus, the motion of one upper limb is independent of the other, and the limbs are able to operate effectively anterior to the body, at a distance and level that enable precise eye–hand coordination.

In both the upper and the lower limbs, the long bone of the most proximal segment is the largest and is unpaired. The long bones increase progressively in number but decrease in size in the more distal segments of the limb. The second most proximal segment of both limbs (i.e., the leg and forearm) has two parallel bones, although only in the forearm do both articulate with the bone of the proximal segment, and only in the leg do both articulate directly with the distal segment. Although the paired bones of both the leg and forearm flex and extend as a unit, only those of the upper limb are able to move (supinate and pronate) relative to each other; the bones of the leg are fixed in the pronated position.

The wrist and ankle have a similar number of short bones (eight and seven, respectively). Both groups of short bones interrupt a series of long bones that resumes distally with several sets of long bones of similar lengths, with a similar number of joints of essentially the same type. The digits of the upper limb (fingers including thumb) are the most mobile parts of either limb. However, all other parts of the upper limb are more mobile than are the comparable parts of the lower limb.

BONES OF UPPER LIMB

The pectoral girdle and bones of the free part of the upper limb form the **superior appendicular skeleton** (Fig. 3.3); the pelvic girdle and bones of the free part of the lower limb form the **inferior appendicular skeleton**. The superior appendicular skeleton articulates with the axial skeleton only at the sternoclavicular joint, allowing great mobility. The clavicles and scapulae of the pectoral girdle are supported, stabilized, and moved by **axio-appendicular muscles** that attach to the relatively fixed ribs, sternum, and vertebrae of the axial skeleton.

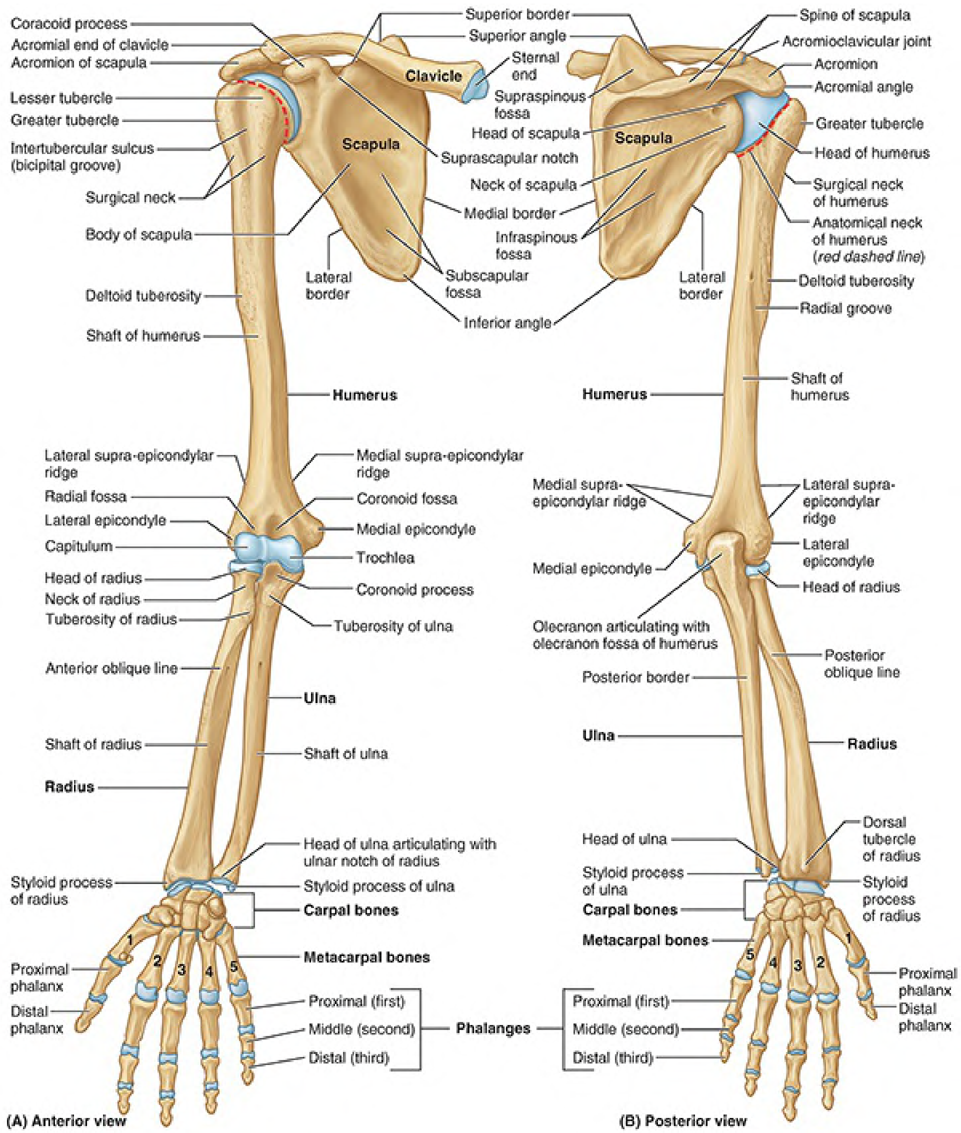


FIGURE 3.3. Bones of upper limb.

Clavicle

The **clavicle** (collar bone) connects the upper limb to the trunk (Figs. 3.3 and 3.4). The **shaft of the clavicle** has a double curve in a horizontal plane. Its medial two thirds is convex anteriorly, and its **sternal end** is enlarged and triangular where it articulates with the manubrium of the sternum at the sternoclavicular (SC) joint. Its lateral third is flattened and concave anteriorly, and its **acromial end** is flat where it articulates with the **acromion** of the scapula at the acromioclavicular (AC) joint (Figs. 3.3B and 3.4). These curvatures increase the resilience of the clavicle and give it the appearance of an elongated capital S.

The clavicle

- serves as a moveable, crane-like strut (rigid support) from which the scapula and free limb are

suspended, keeping them away from the trunk so that the limb has maximum freedom of motion. The strut is movable and allows the scapula to move on the thoracic wall at the "scapulothoracic joint,"[1] increasing the range of motion of the limb. Fixing the strut in position, especially after its elevation, enables elevation of the ribs for deep inspiration.

- forms one of the bony boundaries of the cervico-axillary canal (passageway between the neck and arm), affording protection to the important neurovascular bundle supplying the upper limb
- transmits shocks (traumatic impacts) from the upper limb to the axial skeleton

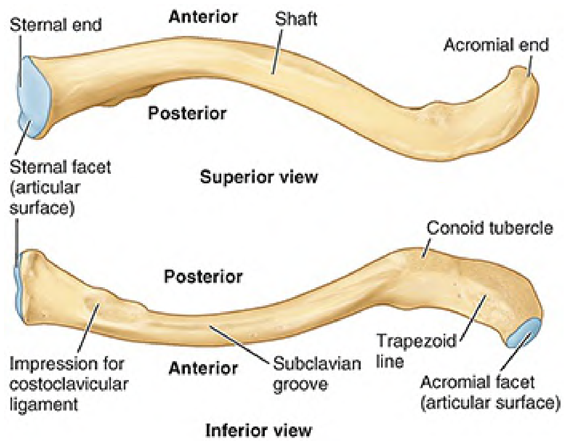


FIGURE 3.4. Right clavicle. Prominent features of the superior and inferior surfaces of the clavicle. The clavicle acts as a mobile strut (supporting brace) connecting the upper limb to the trunk; its length allows the limb to pivot around the trunk.

The clavicle is subcutaneous and palpable throughout its length and is often used as a landmark for clinical procedures.

Although it is designated as a long bone, the clavicle has no medullary (marrow) cavity. It consists of spongy (trabecular) bone with a shell of compact bone.

The **superior surface of the clavicle**, lying just deep to the skin and platysma (G., flat plate) muscle in the subcutaneous tissue, is smooth.

The **inferior surface of the clavicle** is rough because strong ligaments bind it to the 1st rib near its sternal end and suspend the scapula from its acromial end. The **conoid tubercle**, near the acromial end of the clavicle (Fig. 3.4), gives attachment to the conoid ligament, the medial part of the coracoclavicular ligament by which the remainder of the upper limb is passively suspended from the clavicle. Also, near the acromial end of the clavicle is the **trapezoid line**, to which the trapezoid ligament attaches; it is the lateral part of the coracoclavicular ligament.

The **subclavian groove** (groove for the subclavius) in the medial third of the shaft of the clavicle is the site of attachment of the subclavius muscle. More medially is the **impression for the costoclavicular ligament**, a rough, often depressed, oval area that gives attachment to the ligament binding the 1st rib (L. costa) to the clavicle, limiting elevation of the shoulder.

Scapula

The **scapula** (shoulder blade) is a triangular flat bone that lies on the posterolateral aspect of the

thorax, overlying the 2nd–7th ribs (see Fig. 4.1B). The convex **posterior surface** of the scapula is unevenly divided by a thick projecting ridge of bone, the **spine of the scapula**, into a small **supraspinous fossa** and a much larger **infraspinous fossa** (Fig. 3.5A). The concave **costal surface** of most of the scapula forms a large **subscapular fossa**. The broad bony surfaces of the three fossae provide attachments for fleshy muscles. The triangular **body of the scapula** is thin and translucent superior and inferior to the spine of the scapula, although its borders, especially the lateral one, are somewhat thicker. The spine continues laterally as the flat, expanded **acromion** (G. akros, point), which forms the subcutaneous point of the shoulder and articulates with the acromial end of the clavicle. The **deltoid tubercle** of the scapular spine is the prominence indicating the medial point of attachment of the deltoid. The spine and acromion serve as levers for the attached muscles, particularly the trapezius.

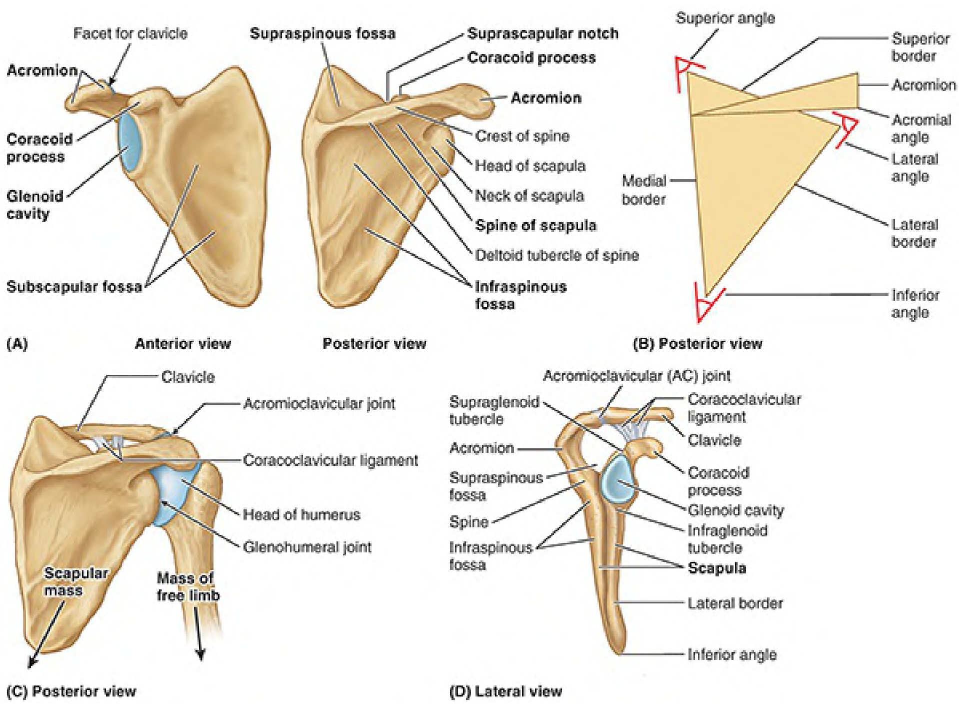


FIGURE 3.5. **Right scapula. A.** Bony features of the costal and posterior surfaces of the scapula. **B.** Borders and angles of the scapula. **C.** Scapular suspension mechanism. The scapula is suspended from the clavicle by the coracoclavicular ligament, at which a balance is achieved among the weight of the scapula and its attached muscles plus the muscular activity medially, and the weight of the free limb laterally. **D.** Lateral aspect of scapula.

Because the acromion is a lateral extension of the scapula, the AC joint is placed lateral to the mass of the scapula and its attached muscles (Fig. 3.5C). The glenohumeral (shoulder) joint on which these muscles operate is almost directly inferior to the AC joint; thus, the scapular mass is balanced with that of the free limb, and the suspending structure (coracoclavicular ligament) lies between the two masses.

Superolaterally, the lateral surface of the scapula has a **glenoid cavity** (G., socket), which receives and articulates with the head of the humerus at the glenohumeral joint (Fig. 3.5A, C). The glenoid cavity is a shallow, concave, oval fossa (L. fossa ovalis), directed anterolaterally and slightly superiorly—that is considerably smaller than the ball (head of the humerus) for which it

serves as a socket. The beak-like **coracoid process** (G. korak-odés, like a crow's beak) is superior to the glenoid cavity and projects anterolaterally. This process also resembles in size, shape, and direction a bent finger pointing to the shoulder, the knuckle of which provides the inferior attachment for the passively supporting coracoclavicular ligament.

The scapula has medial, lateral, and superior borders and superior, lateral, and inferior angles (Fig. 3.5B). When the scapular body is in the anatomical position, the thin **medial border of the scapula** runs parallel to and approximately 5 cm lateral to the spinous processes of the thoracic vertebrae; hence, it is often called the vertebral border (Fig. 3.5B). From the inferior angle, the **lateral border of the scapula** runs superolaterally toward the apex of the axilla; hence it is often called the axillary border. The lateral border is composed of a thick bar of bone that prevents buckling of this stress-bearing region of the scapula.

The lateral border terminates in the truncated **lateral angle of the scapula**, the thickest part of the bone that bears the broadened **head of the scapula** (Fig. 3.5A, B). The glenoid cavity is the primary feature of the head. The shallow constriction between the head and body defines the **neck** of the scapula. The **superior border of the scapula** is marked near the junction of its medial two thirds and lateral third by the **suprascapular notch**, which is located where the superior border joins the base of the coracoid process. The superior border is the thinnest and shortest of the three borders.

The scapula is capable of considerable movement on the thoracic wall at the physiological scapulothoracic joint, providing the base from which the upper limb operates. These movements, enabling the arm to move freely, are discussed later in this chapter with the muscles that move the scapula.

Humerus

The **humerus** (arm bone), the largest bone in the upper limb, articulates with the scapula at the glenohumeral joint, and the radius and ulna at the elbow joint (Figs. 3.1, 3.3, and 3.5C; see Fig. 3.7B). The proximal end of the humerus has a head, surgical and anatomical necks, and greater and lesser tubercles. The spherical **head of the humerus** articulates with the glenoid cavity of the scapula. The **anatomical neck of the humerus** is formed by the groove circumscribing the head and separating it from the greater and lesser tubercles. It indicates the line of attachment of the glenohumeral joint capsule. The **surgical neck of the humerus**, a common site of fracture, is the narrow part distal to the head and tubercles (Fig. 3.3).

The junction of the head and neck with the shaft of the humerus is indicated by the greater and lesser tubercles, which provide attachment and leverage to some scapulohumeral muscles (Fig. 3.3). The **greater tubercle** is at the lateral margin of the humerus, whereas the **lesser tubercle** projects anteriorly from the bone. The **intertubercular sulcus** (**bicipital groove**) separates the tubercles and provides protected passage for the slender tendon of the long head of the biceps muscle.

The **shaft of the humerus** has two prominent features: the **deltoid tuberosity** laterally, for attachment of the deltoid muscle, and the oblique **radial groove** (**groove for the radial nerve**,

spiral groove) posteriorly. The radial nerve and profunda brachii artery lie in the groove as they pass anterior to the long head and between the medial and the lateral heads of the triceps brachii muscle. The inferior end of the humeral shaft widens as the sharp medial and lateral **supra-epicondylar** (supracondylar) **ridges** form and then end distally in the especially prominent **medial epicondyle** and the **lateral epicondyle**, providing for muscle attachment for the anterior (flexor) and posterior (extensor) muscles of the forearm.

The distal end of the humerus—including the trochlea and capitulum, as well as the olecranon, coronoid, and radial fossae—makes up the **condyle of the humerus** (Fig. 3.6). The condyle has two articular surfaces: a lateral **capitulum** (L., little head) for articulation with the head of the radius, and a medial, spool-shaped or pulley-like **trochlea** (L., pulley) for articulation with the proximal end (trochlear notch) of the ulna. Two fossae (hollows) occur back to back superior to the trochlea, making the condyle quite thin between the epicondyles. Anteriorly, the **coronoid fossa** receives the coronoid process of the ulna during full flexion of the elbow. Posteriorly, the **olecranon fossa** accommodates the olecranon of the ulna during full extension of the elbow (Fig. 3.3B). Superior to the capitulum anteriorly, a shallower **radial fossa** accommodates the edge of the head of the radius when the forearm is fully flexed.

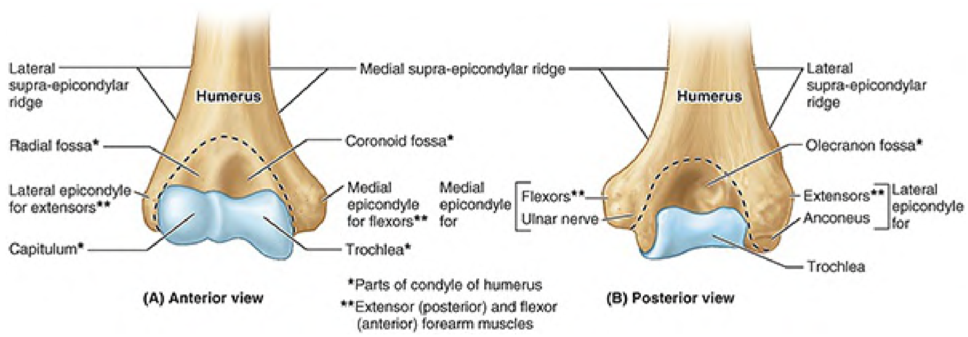


FIGURE 3.6. **Distal end of right humerus. A and B.** The condyle (the boundaries of which are indicated by the dashed line) consists of the capitulum; the trochlea; and the radial, coronoid, and olecranon fossae.

Bones of Forearm

The two forearm bones serve together to form the second unit of an articulated mobile strut (the first unit being the humerus), with a mobile base formed by the shoulder, that positions the hand. However, because this unit is formed by two parallel bones, one of which (the radius) can pivot about the other (the ulna), supination and pronation are possible. This makes it possible to rotate the hand when the elbow is flexed.

ULNA

The **ulna** is the stabilizing bone of the forearm and is the medial and longer of the two forearm bones (Figs. 3.7 and 3.8). Its more massive proximal end is specialized for articulation with the humerus proximally and the head of the radius laterally. For articulation with the humerus, the ulna has two prominent projections: (1) **the olecranon**, which projects proximally from its posterior aspect (forming the point of the elbow) and serves as a short lever for extension of the

elbow, and (2) the **coronoid process**, which projects anteriorly.

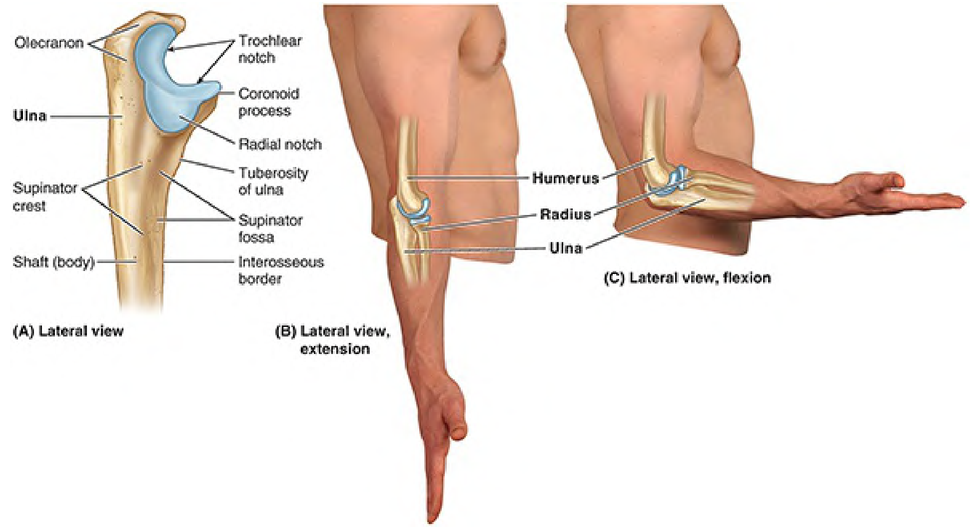


FIGURE 3.7. **Bones of right elbow region. A.** Proximal part of ulna. **B.** Bones of elbow region. The relationship of the distal humerus and proximal ulna and radius during extension of the elbow joint is demonstrated. **C.** Relationship of humerus and forearm bones during flexion of elbow joint.

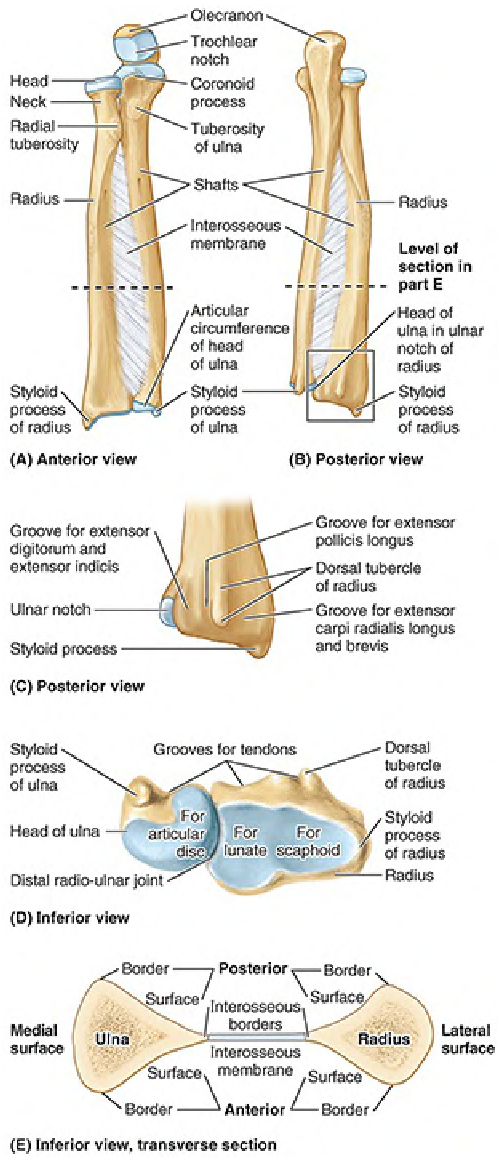


FIGURE 3.8. **Right radius and ulna. A and B.** The radius and ulna are shown in the articulated position, connected by the interosseous membrane. **C and D.** The features of the distal ends of the forearm bones. **E.** In cross section, the shafts of the radius and ulna appear almost as mirror images of one another for much of the middle and distal thirds of their lengths.

The olecranon and coronoid processes form the walls of the **trochlear notch**, which in profile resembles the jaws of a crescent wrench as it "grips" (articulates with) the trochlea of the humerus (Fig. 3.7B, C). The articulation between the ulna and humerus primarily allows only flexion and extension of the elbow joint, although a small amount of abduction and adduction occurs during pronation and supination of the forearm. Inferior to the coronoid process is the **tuberosity of the ulna** for attachment of the tendon of the brachialis muscle (Figs. 3.7A and 3.8A, B).

On the lateral side of the coronoid process is a smooth, rounded concavity, the **radial notch**, which receives the broad periphery of the head of the radius. Inferior to the radial notch on the lateral surface of the ulnar shaft is a prominent ridge, the **supinator crest**. Between it and the

distal part of the coronoid process is a concavity, the **supinator fossa**. The deep part of the supinator muscle attaches to the supinator crest and fossa (Fig. 3.7A).

The **shaft of the ulna** is thick and cylindrical proximally, but it tapers, diminishing in diameter, as it continues distally (Fig. 3.8A). At the narrow distal end of the ulna is a small but abrupt enlargement, the disc-like **head of the ulna** with a small, conical **ulnar styloid process**. The ulna does not reach—and therefore does not participate in—the wrist (radiocarpal) joint (Fig. 3.8).

RADIUS

The **radius** is the lateral and shorter of the two forearm bones. Its proximal end includes a short head, neck, and medially directed tuberosity (Fig. 3.8A). Proximally, the smooth superior aspect of the discoid **head of the radius** is concave for articulation with the capitulum of the humerus during flexion and extension of the elbow joint. The head of the radius also articulates peripherally with the radial notch of the ulna; thus, the head is covered with articular cartilage.

The **neck of the radius** is a constriction distal to the head. The oval **radial tuberosity** is distal to the medial part of the neck and demarcates the proximal end (head and neck) of the radius from the shaft.

The **shaft of the radius**, in contrast to that of the ulna, gradually enlarges as it passes distally. The distal end of the radius is essentially four sided when sectioned transversely. Its medial aspect forms a concavity, the **ulnar notch** (Fig. 3.8C, D), which accommodates the head of the ulna. Its lateral aspect becomes increasingly ridge-like, terminating distally in the **styloid process of the radius**.

Projecting posteriorly, the **dorsal tubercle of the radius** lies between otherwise shallow grooves for the passage of the tendons of forearm muscles. The styloid process of the radius is larger than the ulnar styloid process and extends farther distally (Fig. 3.8A, B). This relationship is of clinical importance when the ulna and/or the radius is fractured (see the Clinical Box "Fractures of Radius and Ulna" in this chapter).

Most of the length of the shafts of the radius and ulna is essentially triangular in cross section, with a rounded, superficially directed base and an acute, deeply directed apex (Fig. 3.8A, E). The apex is formed by a section of the sharp **interosseous border of the radius or ulna** that connects to the thin, fibrous **interosseous membrane of the forearm** (Fig. 3.8A, B, E). The majority of fibers of the interosseous membrane run an oblique course, passing inferiorly from the radius as they extend medially to the ulna (Fig. 3.8A, B). Thus, they are positioned to transmit forces received by the radius (via the hands) to the ulna for transmission to the humerus.

Bones of Hand

The **carpus** (L., "wrist"[2]) is composed of eight **carpal bones**, arranged in proximal and distal rows of four (Fig. 3.9A–C). Located at the junction of forearm and hand, these small bones give flexibility to the carpus. The carpus is markedly convex from side to side posteriorly and concave anteriorly. Augmenting movement at the wrist joint, the two rows of carpal bones glide

on each other; in addition, each bone glides on those adjacent to it.

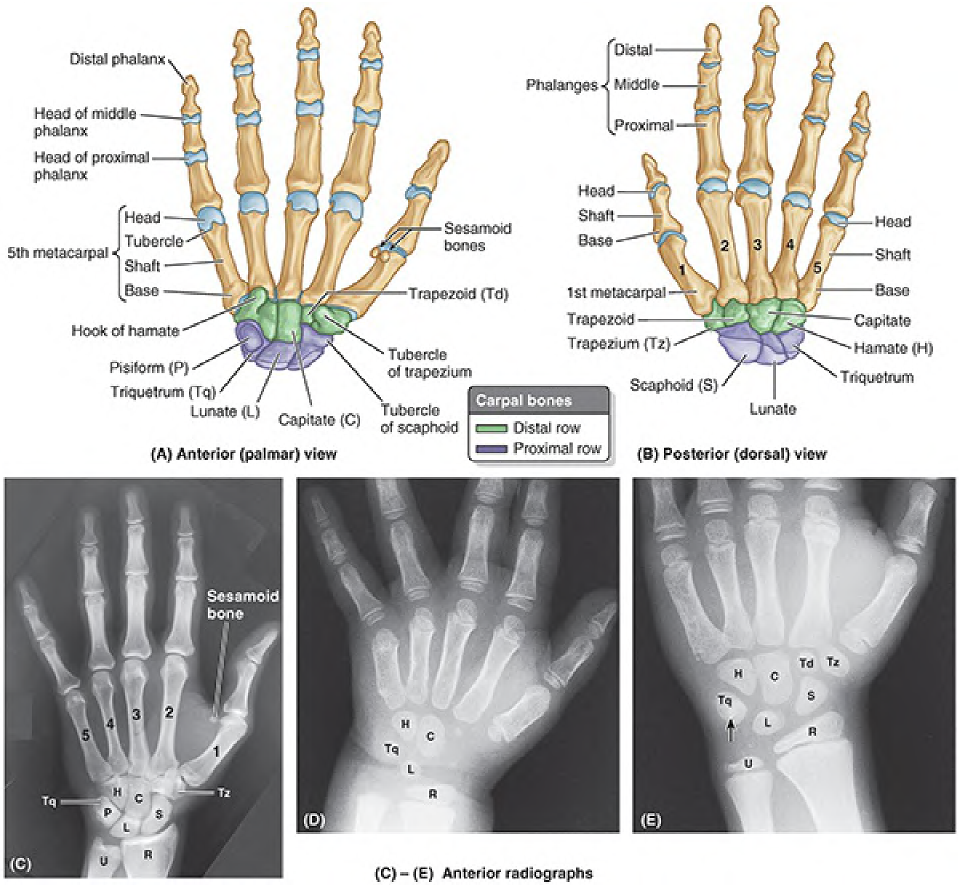


FIGURE 3.9. Bones of right hand. A–C. Adult. The skeleton of the hand consists of three segments: (1) carpals of the base of the palm (subdivided into proximal and distal rows), (2) metacarpals of the palm, and (3) phalanges of the fingers or digits. U, ulna; R, radius. **D.** 2.5-year-old child. Ossification centers of only four carpal bones are visible. Observe the distal radial epiphysis (R). **E.** 11-year-old child. Ossification centers of all carpal bones are visible. The arrow indicates the pisiform lying on the anterior surface of the triquetrum. The distal epiphysis of the ulna has ossified, but all the epiphyseal plates (lines) remain open (i.e., they are still unossified).

From lateral to medial, the four carpal bones in the proximal row (purple in Fig. 3.9A, B) are as follows:

1. **Scaphoid** (G. skaphé, skiff, boat): a boat-shaped bone that articulates proximally with the radius. It has a prominent **scaphoid tubercle** and is the largest bone in the proximal row of carpals.
2. **Lunate** (L. luna, moon): a moon-shaped bone between the scaphoid and triquetral bones. It articulates proximally with the radius and is broader anteriorly than posteriorly.
3. **Triquetrum** (L. triquetrus, three-cornered): a pyramidal bone on the medial side of the carpus. It articulates proximally with the articular disc of the distal radio-ulnar joint.
4. **Pisiform** (L. pisum, pea), a small, pea-shaped bone that lies on the palmar surface of the triquetrum.

From lateral to medial, the four carpal bones in the distal row (green in Fig. 3.9A, B) are as

follows:

1. **Trapezium** (G. trapeze, table): a four-sided bone on the lateral side of the carpus. It articulates with the 1st and 2nd metacarpals, scaphoid, and trapezoid bones.
2. **Trapezoid**: a wedge-shaped bone that resembles the trapezium. It articulates with the 2nd metacarpal, trapezium, capitate, and scaphoid bones.
3. **Capitate** (L. caput, head): a head-shaped bone with a rounded extremity is the largest bone in the carpus. It articulates primarily with the 3rd metacarpal distally and with the trapezoid, scaphoid, lunate, and hamate.
4. **Hamate** (L. hamulus, a little hook): a wedge-shaped bone on the medial side of the hand. It articulates with the 4th and 5th metacarpal, capitate, and triquetral bones. It has a distinctive hooked process, the **hook of the hamate**, that extends anteriorly.

The proximal surfaces of the distal row of carpal bones articulate with the proximal row of carpal bones, and their distal surfaces articulate with the metacarpals.

The **metacarpus** forms the skeleton of the palm of the hand between the carpus and phalanges. It is composed of five **metacarpal bones** (metacarpals). Each metacarpal consists of a base, shaft, and head. The proximal **bases of the metacarpals** articulate with the carpal bones. The distal **heads of the metacarpals** articulate with the proximal phalanges and form the knuckles of the hand. The 1st metacarpal (of the thumb) is the thickest and shortest of these bones. The 3rd metacarpal is distinguished by a **styloid process** on the lateral side of its base (see Fig. 3.12A).

Each digit (finger) has three **phalanges** except for the first (the thumb), which has only two; however, the phalanges of the first digit are stouter than those in other fingers. Each phalanx has a **base** proximally, a **shaft** (body), and a **head** distally (Fig. 3.9). The proximal phalanges are the largest, the middle ones are intermediate in size, and the distal ones are the smallest. The shafts of the phalanges taper distally. The terminal phalanges are flattened and expanded at their distal ends, which underlie the nail beds.

OSSIFICATION OF BONES OF HAND

Radiographs of the wrist and hand are commonly used to assess skeletal age. For clinical studies, the radiographs are compared with a series of standards in a radiographic atlas of skeletal development to determine skeletal age. Ossification centers are usually obvious during the 1st year; however, they may appear before birth. Each carpal bone usually ossifies from one center postnatally (Fig. 3.9D). The centers for the capitate and hamate appear first.

The shaft of each metacarpal begins to ossify during fetal life. Ossification centers appear postnatally in the heads of the four medial metacarpals and in the base of the 1st metacarpal. By age 11, ossification centers of all carpal bones are visible (see Fig. 3.9E).

Surface Anatomy of Upper Limb Bones

Most bones of the upper limb offer a palpable segment or surface (notable exceptions being the

lunate and trapezoid), enabling the skilled examiner to discern abnormalities owing to trauma (fracture or dislocation) or malformation (Fig. 3.10).

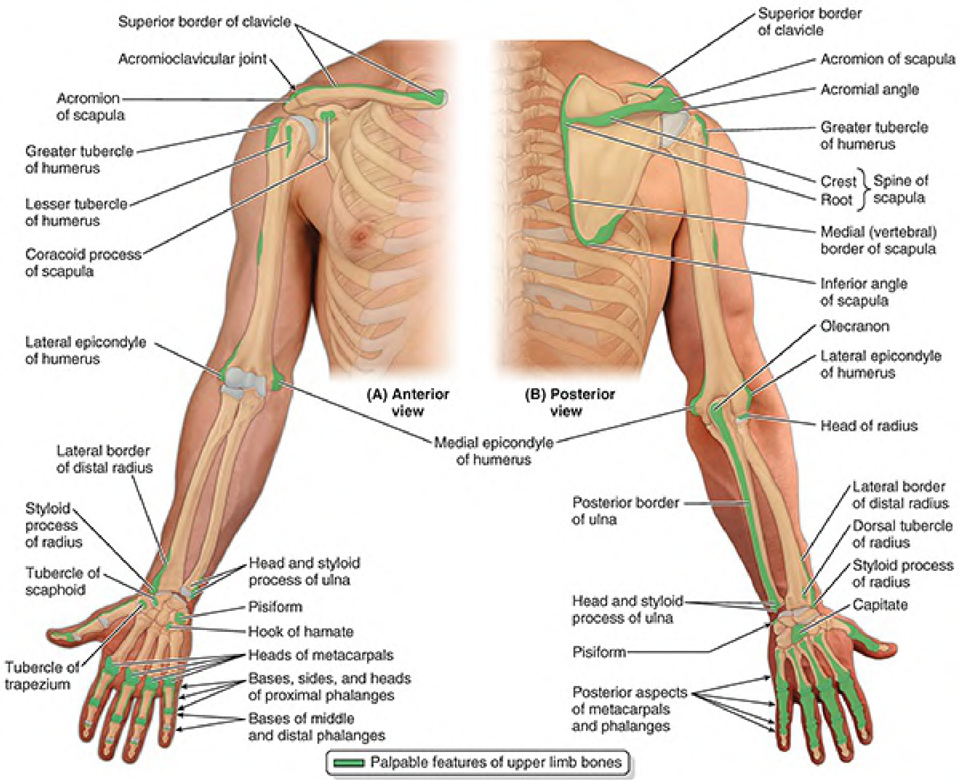


FIGURE 3.10. Surface anatomy of bones of upper limb.

The clavicle is subcutaneous and can be easily palpated throughout its length. Its sternal end projects superior to the manubrium of the sternum (Fig. 3.10). Between the elevated sternal ends of the clavicles is the **jugular notch** (suprasternal notch). The acromial end of the clavicle often rises higher than the acromion, forming a palpable elevation at the acromioclavicular (AC) joint. The acromial end can be palpated 2–3 cm medial to the lateral border of the acromion, particularly when the arm is alternately flexed and extended. Either or both ends of the clavicle may be prominent; when present, this condition is usually bilateral.

Note the elasticity of the skin over the clavicle and how easily it can be pinched into a mobile fold. This property of the skin is useful when ligating (tying a knot around) the third part of the subclavian artery: The skin lying superior to the clavicle is pulled down onto the clavicle and then incised. After the incision is made, the skin is allowed to return to its position superior to the clavicle, where it overlies the artery (thus, the artery is not endangered during the incision).

As the clavicle passes laterally, its medial part can be felt to be convex anteriorly. The large vessels and nerves to the upper limb pass posterior to this convexity. The flattened acromial end of the clavicle does not reach the point of the shoulder, formed by the lateral tip of the acromion of the scapula.

The acromion of the scapula is easily felt and often visible, especially when the deltoid contracts against resistance. The superior surface of the acromion is subcutaneous and may be

traced medially to reach the AC joint. The lateral and posterior borders of the acromion meet to form the **acromial angle** (Fig. 3.10B). The humerus in the glenoid cavity and the deltoid muscle form the rounded curve of the shoulder. The **crest of the scapular spine** is subcutaneous throughout and easily palpated.

When the upper limb is in the anatomical position, the

- superior angle of the scapula lies at the level of the T2 vertebra
- medial end of the root of the scapular spine is opposite the spinous process of the T3 vertebra
- inferior angle of the scapula lies at the level of the T7 vertebra, near the inferior border of the 7th rib and 7th intercostal space

The medial border of the scapula is palpable inferior to the root of the spine of the scapula as it crosses the 3rd–7th ribs. The lateral border of the scapula is not easily palpated because it is covered by the teres major and minor muscles. When the upper limb is abducted and the hand is placed on the back of the head, the scapula is rotated, elevating the glenoid cavity such that the medial border of the scapula parallels the 6th rib. Thus, it can be used to estimate its position and, deep to the rib, the oblique fissure of the lung. The inferior angle of the scapula is easily felt and is often visible. It is grasped when testing movements of the glenohumeral joint to immobilize the scapula. The coracoid process of the scapula can be felt by palpating deeply at the lateral side of the clavipectoral (deltopectoral) triangle (Fig. 3.11).

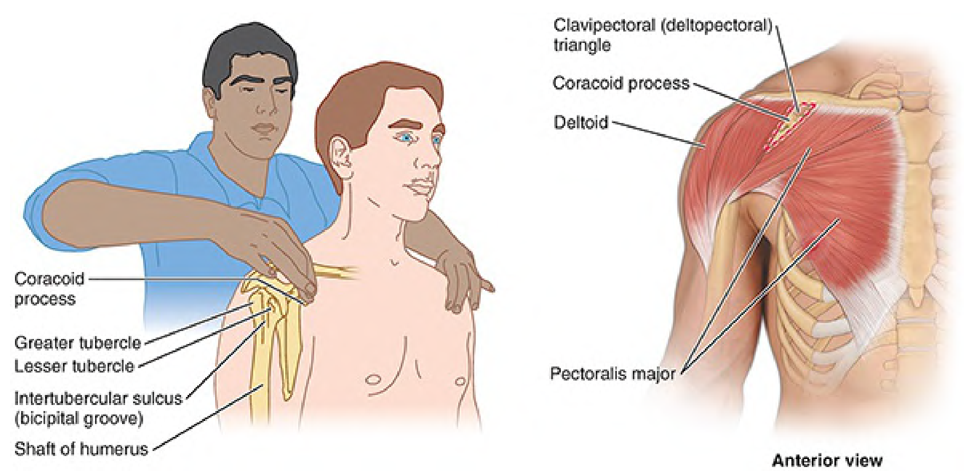


FIGURE 3.11. Palpation of coracoid process of scapula.

The head of the humerus is surrounded by muscles, except inferiorly; consequently, it can be palpated only by pushing the fingers well up into the axillary fossa (armpit). The arm should not be fully abducted; otherwise, the fascia in the axilla will be tense and impede palpation of the humeral head. When the arm is moved and the scapula is fixed (held in place), the head of the humerus can be palpated.

The greater tubercle of the humerus may be felt with the person's arm by the side on deep palpation through the deltoid, inferior to the lateral border of the acromion. In this position, the greater tubercle is the most lateral bony point of the shoulder and, along with the deltoid, gives the shoulder its rounded contour. When the arm is abducted, the greater tubercle is pulled

beneath the acromion and is no longer palpable.

The lesser tubercle of the humerus may be felt with difficulty by deep palpation through the deltoid on the anterior aspect of the arm, approximately 1 cm lateral and slightly inferior to the tip of the coracoid process. Rotation of the arm facilitates palpation of this tubercle. The location of the intertubercular sulcus or bicipital groove, between the greater and the lesser tubercles, is identifiable during flexion and extension of the elbow joint by palpating in an upward direction along the tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii as it moves through the intertubercular groove.

The shaft of the humerus may be felt with varying distinctness through the muscles surrounding it. No part of the proximal part of the humeral shaft is subcutaneous.

The medial and lateral epicondyles of the humerus are subcutaneous and easily palpated on the medial and lateral aspects of the elbow region. The knob-like medial epicondyle, projecting posteromedially, is more prominent than the lateral epicondyle.

When the elbow joint is partially flexed, the lateral epicondyle is visible. When the elbow joint is fully extended, the lateral epicondyle can be palpated but not seen deep to a depression on the posterolateral aspect of the elbow.

The olecranon of the ulna can be easily palpated (Fig. 3.12). When the elbow joint is extended, observe that the tip of the olecranon and humeral epicondyles lie in a straight line (Fig. 3.12A, B). When the elbow is flexed, the olecranon descends until its tip forms the apex of an approximately equilateral triangle, of which the epicondyles form the angles at its base (Fig. 3.12B). These normal relationships are important in the diagnosis of certain elbow injuries (e.g., dislocation of the elbow joint).

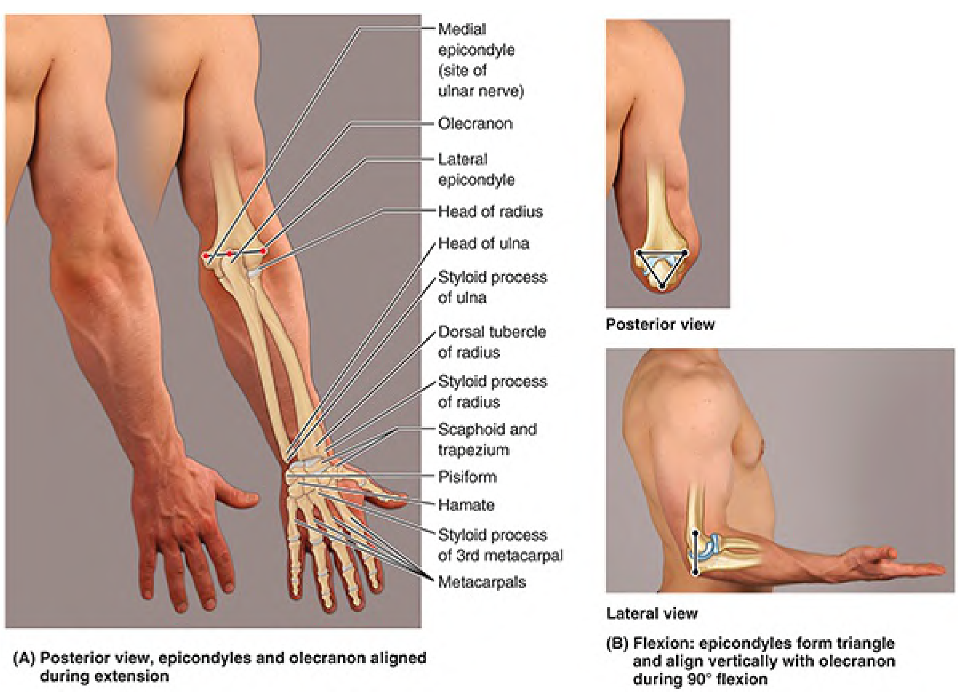


FIGURE 3.12. **Surface anatomy of bones and bony formations of elbow region.**

The posterior border of the ulna, palpable throughout the length of the forearm, demarcates the posteromedial boundary between the flexor–pronator and the extensor–supinator compartments of the forearm. The head of the ulna forms a large, rounded subcutaneous prominence that can be easily seen and palpated on the medial side of the dorsal aspect of the wrist, especially when the hand is pronated. The pointed subcutaneous ulnar styloid process may be felt slightly distal to the rounded ulnar head when the hand is supinated (Fig. 3.12A).

The head of the radius can be palpated and felt to rotate in the depression on the posterolateral aspect of the extended elbow joint, just distal to the lateral epicondyle of the humerus, during pronation and supination of the forearm. The ulnar nerve feels like a thick cord where it passes posterior to the medial epicondyle of the humerus; pressing the nerve here evokes an unpleasant "funny bone" sensation.

The radial styloid process can be easily palpated in the anatomical snuff box on the lateral side of the wrist (see Fig. 3.67B). It is larger and approximately 1 cm more distal than the ulnar styloid process. The radial styloid process is easiest to palpate when the thumb is abducted. It is overlaid by the tendons of the thumb muscles. Because the process extends more distally than the ulnar styloid process, more ulnar deviation than radial deviation of the wrist is possible.

The relationship of the radial and ulnar styloid processes is important in the diagnosis of certain wrist injuries (e.g., Colles fracture; see Fig. B3.3B). Proximal to the radial styloid process, the anterior, lateral, and posterior surfaces of the radius are palpable for several centimeters. The dorsal tubercle of radius is easily felt around the middle of the dorsal aspect of the distal end of the radius. The dorsal tubercle acts as a pulley for the long extensor tendon of the thumb, which passes medial to it.

The pisiform can be felt on the anterior aspect of the medial border of the wrist and can be moved from side to side when the hand is relaxed. The hook of the hamate can be palpated on deep pressure over the medial side of the palm, approximately 2 cm distal and lateral to the pisiform. The tubercles of the scaphoid and trapezium can be palpated at the base and medial aspect of the thenar eminence (ball of thumb) when the hand is extended.

The metacarpals, although overlain by the long extensor tendons of the digits, can be palpated on the dorsum of the hand. The heads of these bones form the knuckles of the fist; the 3rd metacarpal head is most prominent. The styloid process of the 3rd metacarpal can be palpated approximately 3.5 cm from the dorsal tubercle of radius. The dorsal aspects of the phalanges can also be easily palpated. The knuckles of the fingers are formed by the heads of the proximal and middle phalanges.

When measuring the upper limb, or segments of it, for comparison with the contralateral limb, or with standards for normal limb growth or size, the acromial angle (Fig. 3.10B), lateral epicondyle of the humerus, styloid process of the radius, and tip of the third digit are most commonly used as measuring points, with the limb relaxed (dangling), but with palms directed anteriorly.

Because the disabling effects of an injury to an upper limb, particularly the hand, are far out of proportion to the extent of the injury, a sound understanding of the structure and function of the upper limb is of the highest importance. Knowledge of its structure without an understanding of

its functions is almost useless clinically because the aim of treating an injured limb is to preserve or restore its functions.

CLINICAL BOX

BONES OF UPPER LIMB

Fracture of Clavicle

The clavicle is one of the most frequently fractured bones. Clavicular fractures are especially common in children and are often caused by an indirect force transmitted from an outstretched hand through the bones of the forearm and arm to the shoulder during a fall. A fracture may also result from a fall directly on the shoulder. The weakest part of the clavicle is the junction of its middle and lateral thirds. Fracture of the clavicle is also common in adult athletes (e.g., football, hockey players, and bicycle racers).

After fracture of the clavicle, the sternocleidomastoid muscle elevates the medial fragment of bone (Fig. B3.1). Because of the subcutaneous position of the clavicle, the end of the superiorly directed fragment is prominent—readily palpable and/or apparent. The trapezius muscle is unable to hold the lateral fragment up owing to the weight of the upper limb; thus, the shoulder drops. The strong coracoclavicular ligament usually prevents dislocation of the acromioclavicular (AC) joint. People with fractured clavicles support the sagging limb with the other limb. In addition to being depressed, the lateral fragment of the clavicle may be pulled medially by the adductor muscles of the arm, such as the pectoralis major. Overriding of the bone fragments shortens the clavicle. Slings are used to take the weight of the limb off the clavicle to facilitate alignment and the healing process.

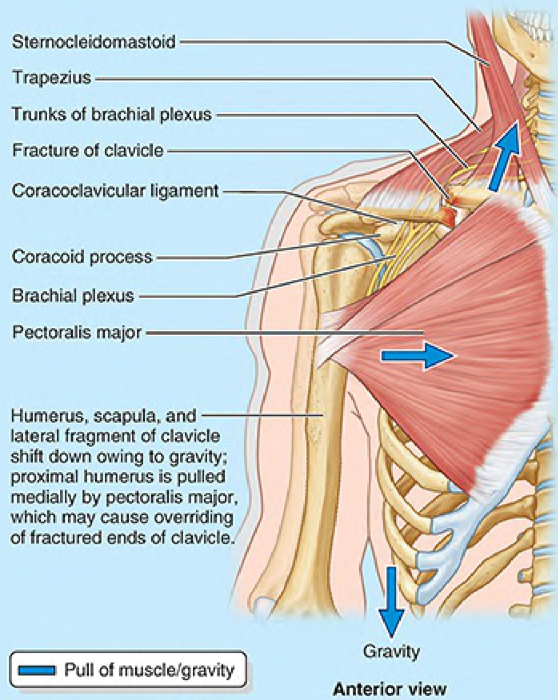


FIGURE B3.1. **Fracture of clavicle.**

The slender clavicles of neonates may be fractured during delivery if they have broad shoulders; however, the bones usually heal quickly. A fracture of the clavicle is often incomplete in younger children—that is, it is a greenstick fracture (see Clinical Box "Fractures of Humerus").

Ossification of Clavicle

The clavicle is the first long bone to ossify (via intramembranous ossification), beginning during the 5th and 6th embryonic weeks from medial and lateral primary ossification centers that are close together in the shaft of the clavicle. The ends of the clavicle later pass through a cartilaginous phase (endochondral ossification); the cartilages form growth zones similar to those of other long bones. A secondary ossification center appears at the sternal end and forms a scale-like epiphysis that begins to fuse with the shaft (diaphysis) between 18 and 25 years of age and is completely fused to it between 25 and 31 years of age. This is the last of the epiphyses of long bones to fuse. A very small epiphysis may be present at the acromial end of the clavicle; it must not be mistaken for a fracture.

Sometimes fusion of the two ossification centers of the clavicle fails to occur; as a result, a bony defect forms between the lateral and medial thirds of the clavicle. Awareness of this possible congenital defect should prevent diagnosis of a fracture in an otherwise normal clavicle. When doubt exists, both clavicles are radiographed because this defect is usually bilateral (Olson et al., 2009).

Fracture of Scapula

Fracture of the scapula is usually the result of severe trauma, as occurs in pedestrian–vehicle accidents. Usually there are also fractured ribs. Most fractures require little treatment because the scapula is covered on both sides by muscles. Most fractures involve the protruding subcutaneous acromion.

Fractures of Humerus

Most injuries of the proximal end of the humerus are fractures of the surgical neck. These injuries are especially common in elderly people with osteoporosis, whose demineralized bones are brittle. Humeral fractures often result in one fragment being driven into the spongy bone of the other fragment (impacted fracture). The injuries usually result from a minor fall on the hand, with the force being transmitted up the forearm bones of the extended limb. Because of impaction of the fragments, the fracture site is sometimes stable and the person is able to move the arm passively with little pain. An avulsion fracture of the greater tubercle of the humerus is seen most commonly in middle-aged and elderly people. A small part of the tubercle is “avulsed” (torn away) (Fig. B3.2A). The avulsion fracture usually results from a dislocation of the humerus. In younger people, a fracture of the greater tubercle can result from impaction with excessive abduction or flexion of the arm. Muscles (especially the subscapularis) that remain attached to the humerus pull the limb into medial rotation.

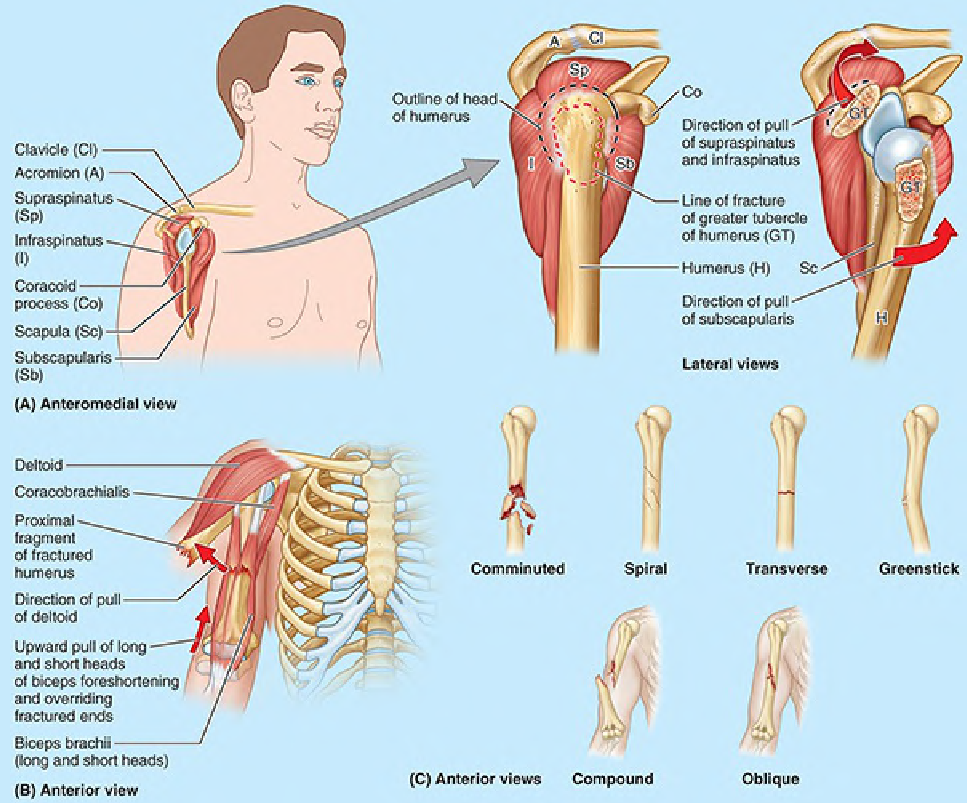


FIGURE B3.2. Humeral fractures. A. Avulsion fracture of greater tubercle of humerus. **B.** Transverse fracture of body of humerus. **C.** Fracture patterns.

Fractures of the shaft of the humerus result from a direct blow to or torsion of the arm, producing various types of fractures. In children, fractures of the shafts of long bones are often greenstick fractures, in which there is disruption of the cortical bone on one side while that on the other side is bent (Fig. B3.2C). This fracture is so named because the parts of the bone do not separate; the bone resembles a tree branch (greenstick) that has been sharply bent but not disconnected.

In a transverse fracture of the humeral shaft, the pull of the deltoid muscle carries the proximal fragment laterally (Fig. B3.2B). Indirect injury resulting from a fall on the outstretched hand may produce a spiral or oblique fracture of the humeral shaft. Overriding of the oblique ends of an obliquely fractured bone may result in shortening of the limb. Because the humerus is surrounded by muscles and has a well-developed periosteum, properly aligned bone fragments usually unite well.

An intercondylar fracture of the humerus results from a severe fall on the flexed elbow or with high-impact injuries such as in a motor vehicle accident. The olecranon of the ulna is driven like a wedge between the medial and lateral parts of the condyle of the humerus, separating one or both parts from the humeral shaft.

The following parts of the humerus are in direct contact with the indicated nerves:

- Surgical neck: axillary nerve
- Radial groove: radial nerve

- Distal end of humerus: median nerve
- Medial epicondyle: ulnar nerve

These nerves may be injured when the associated part of the humerus is fractured. These injuries are discussed later in this chapter.

Fractures of Radius and Ulna

Fractures of the radius and/or ulna are often incomplete in young children—that is, they are greenstick fractures.

Fractures of both the radius and the ulna in older people and athletic adults are usually the result of severe injury. A direct injury usually produces transverse fractures at the same level, usually in the middle third of the bones. Isolated fractures of the radius or ulna also occur. Because the shafts of these bones are firmly bound together by the interosseous membrane, a fracture of one bone is likely to be associated with dislocation of the nearest joint.

Fracture of the distal end of the radius is a common fracture in adults who are 50 years of age and over. It occurs more frequently in women secondary to osteoporosis. A complete transverse fracture of the distal 2 cm of the radius, called a Colles fracture, is the most common fracture of the forearm (Fig. B3.3B). The distal fragment is displaced dorsally and is often comminuted (broken in pieces). The fracture results from forced extension of the hand, usually as the result of trying to ease a fall by outstretching the upper limb.

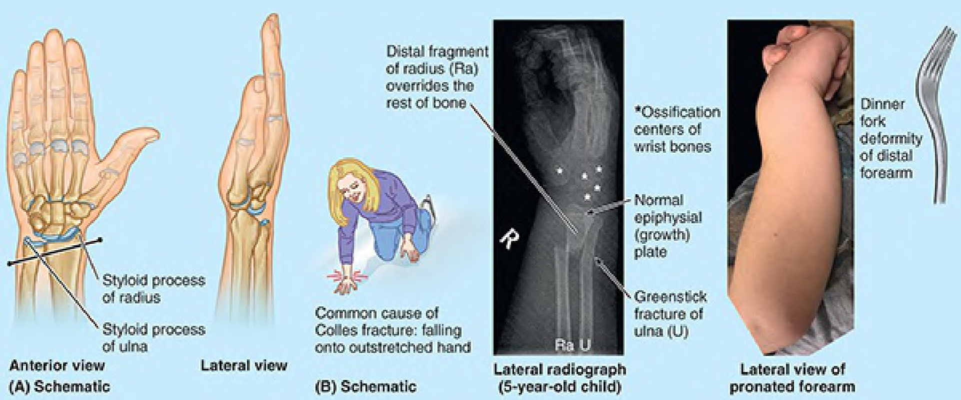


FIGURE B3.3. Distal fracture of forearm bones. A. Normal wrist. **B.** Colles fracture with a dinner fork deformity.

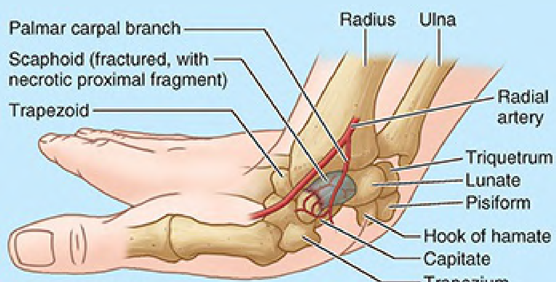
Often, the ulnar styloid process is avulsed (broken off). Normally, the radial styloid process projects farther distally than does the ulnar styloid (Fig. B3.3A); consequently, when a Colles fracture occurs, this relationship is reversed because of shortening of the radius (Fig. B3.3B). This fracture is often referred to as a dinner fork deformity because a posterior angulation (bending) occurs in the forearm just proximal to the wrist and the normal anterior curvature of the relaxed hand. The posterior bending is produced by the posterior displacement and tilt of the distal fragment of the radius.

The typical history of a person with a Colles fracture includes slipping or tripping and, in an attempt to break the fall, landing on the outstretched limb with the forearm and hand pronated. Because of the rich blood supply to the distal end of the radius, bony union is usually good.

When the distal end of the radius fractures in children, the fracture line may extend through the distal epiphysial plate (see Fig. B3.42 later in this chapter). Epiphysial plate injuries are common in older children because of their frequent falls in which the forces are transmitted from the hand to the radius and ulna. The healing process may result in malalignment (displacement) of the epiphysial plate and disturbance of radial growth.

Fracture of Scaphoid

The scaphoid is the most frequently fractured carpal bone. It often results from a fall on the palm when the hand is abducted, the fracture occurring across the narrow part of the scaphoid (Fig. B3.4A). On palpation, pain is produced in the anatomical snuff box on the lateral side of the wrist, especially during dorsiflexion and abduction of the hand. Initial radiographs of the wrist may not reveal a fracture; often, this injury is (mis)diagnosed as a severely sprained wrist.



(A) Schematic

(B) Anterior radiograph

FIGURE B3.4. Fracture of scaphoid (white arrow).

Radiographs taken 10–14 days later reveal a fracture because bone resorption has occurred there (Fig. B3.4B). Owing to the poor blood supply to the proximal part of the scaphoid, union of the fractured parts may take at least 3 months. Avascular necrosis of the

proximal fragment of the scaphoid (pathological death of bone, resulting from inadequate blood supply) may occur and produce degenerative joint disease of the wrist. In some cases, it is necessary to fuse the carpals surgically (arthrodesis).

Fracture of Hamate

Fracture of the hamate may result in nonunion of the fractured bony parts because of the traction produced by the attached hypothenar muscles. Because the ulnar nerve is close to the hook of the hamate, the nerve may be injured, causing decreased grip strength of the hand. The ulnar artery may also be damaged when the hamate is fractured.

Fracture of Metacarpals

The metacarpals (except the 1st) are closely bound together; hence, isolated fractures tend to be stable. Furthermore, these bones have a good blood supply. Consequently, fractures usually heal rapidly. Oblique ("spiral") fracture of a metacarpal may result in overriding of bone fragments and/or rotation of the distal fragment, resulting in a shortened finger, or one that does not flex in harmony with the other fingers. Severe crushing injuries of the hand may produce multiple metacarpal fractures, resulting in instability of the hand. Fracture of the 5th metacarpal, often referred to as a boxer's fracture, occurs when an unskilled person punches someone with a closed and abducted fist. The head of the bone rotates over the distal end of the shaft, producing a flexion deformity.

Fracture of Phalanges

Crushing injuries of the distal phalanges are common (e.g., when a finger is caught in a car door). Because of the highly developed sensation in the fingers, these injuries are extremely painful. A fracture of a distal phalanx is usually comminuted, and a painful hematoma (local collection of blood) soon develops. Fractures of the proximal and middle phalanges are usually the result of crushing or hyperextension injuries. Because of the close relationship of phalangeal fractures to the flexor tendons, the bone fragments must be carefully realigned to restore normal function of the fingers.

The Bottom Line: Bones of Upper Limb

Comparison of upper and lower limbs: The development and structure of the upper and lower limbs have much in common; however, the upper limb has become a mobile organ that allows humans not only to respond to their environment but also to manipulate and control it to a large degree. ■ The upper limb is composed of four increasingly mobile

segments: The proximal three (shoulder, arm, and forearm) serve primarily to position the fourth segment (hand), which is used for grasping, manipulation, and touch. ■ Four characteristics allow the independent operation of the upper limbs, allowing the hands to be precisely positioned and enabling accurate eye–hand coordination: (1) The upper limbs are not involved in weight bearing or ambulation, (2) the pectoral girdle is attached to the axial skeleton only anteriorly via a very mobile joint, (3) paired bones of the forearm can be moved relative to each other, and (4) the hands have long, mobile fingers and an opposable thumb.

Clavicle: The subcutaneously located clavicle connects the upper limb (superior appendicular skeleton) to the trunk (axial skeleton). ■ The clavicle serves as a movable crane-like strut (extended support) from which the scapula and free limb are suspended at a distance from the trunk that enables freedom of motion. ■ Shocks received by the upper limb (especially the shoulder) are transmitted through the clavicle, resulting in a fracture that most commonly occurs between its middle and lateral thirds. ■ The clavicle is the first long bone to ossify and the last to be fully formed.

Scapula: The scapula forms the mobile base from which the free upper limb acts. ■ This triangular flat bone is curved to conform to the thoracic wall and provides large surface areas and edges for attachment of muscles. ■ These muscles (1) move the scapula on the thoracic wall at the physiological scapulothoracic joint and (2) extend to the proximal humerus maintaining the integrity of—and producing motion at—the glenohumeral joint. ■ The spine of the scapula and acromion serve as levers; the acromion enables the scapula and attached muscles to be located medially against the trunk with the acromioclavicular (AC) and glenohumeral joints, thereby allowing movement lateral to the trunk. ■ The coracoid process of the scapula is the site of attachment for the coracoclavicular ligament, which passively supports the upper limb, and a site for muscular (tendon) attachment.

Humerus: The long, strong humerus is a mobile strut—the first in a series of two—used to position the hand at a height (level) and distance from the trunk to maximize its efficiency. ■ The spherical head of the humerus enables a great range of motion on the mobile scapular base; the trochlea and capitulum at its distal end facilitate the hinge movements of the elbow and, at the same time, the pivoting of the radius. ■ The long shaft of the humerus enables reaching and makes it an effective lever for power in lifting, as well as providing surface area for attachment of muscles that act primarily at the elbow. ■ Added surface area for attachment of flexors and extensors of the wrist is provided by the epicondyles, the medial and lateral extensions of the distal end of the humerus.

Ulna and radius: The ulna and radius together make up the second unit of a two-unit articulated strut (the first unit being the humerus), projecting from a mobile base (shoulder) that serves to position the hand. ■ Because the forearm unit is formed by two

parallel bones, and the radius is able to pivot about the ulna, supination and pronation of the hand are possible during elbow flexion. ■ Proximally, the larger medial ulna forms the primary articulation with the humerus, whereas distally, the shorter lateral radius forms the primary articulation with the hand via the wrist. ■ Because the ulna does not reach the wrist, forces received by the hand are transmitted from the radius to the ulna via the interosseous membrane.

Hand: Each segment of the upper limb increases the functionality of the end unit, the hand. ■ Located on the free end of a two-unit articulated strut (arm and forearm) projecting from a mobile base (shoulder), the hand can be positioned over a wide range relative to the trunk. ■ The hand's connection to the flexible strut via the multiple small bones of the carpus, combined with the pivoting of the forearm, greatly increases its ability to be placed in a particular position with the digits able to flex (push or grip) in the necessary direction. ■ The carpal bones are organized into two rows of four bones each and, as a group, articulate with the radius proximally and the metacarpals distally. ■ The highly flexible, elongated digits—extending from a semirigid base (the palm)—enable the ability to grip, manipulate, or perform complex tasks involving multiple and simultaneous individual motions (e.g., when typing or playing a piano).

Surface anatomy: The upper limb presents multiple palpable bony features that are useful (1) when diagnosing fractures, dislocations, or malformations; (2) for approximating the position of deeper structures; and (3) for precisely describing the location of incisions and sites for therapeutic puncture, or areas of pathology or injury.

FASCIA OF UPPER LIMB

Deep to the skin is (1) **subcutaneous tissue** (superficial fascia) containing fat and (2) **deep fascia** compartmentalizing and investing the muscles (Fig. 3.13). If no structure (e.g., muscle, tendon, or bursa) intervenes between the skin and bone, the deep fascia is usually attached to bone.

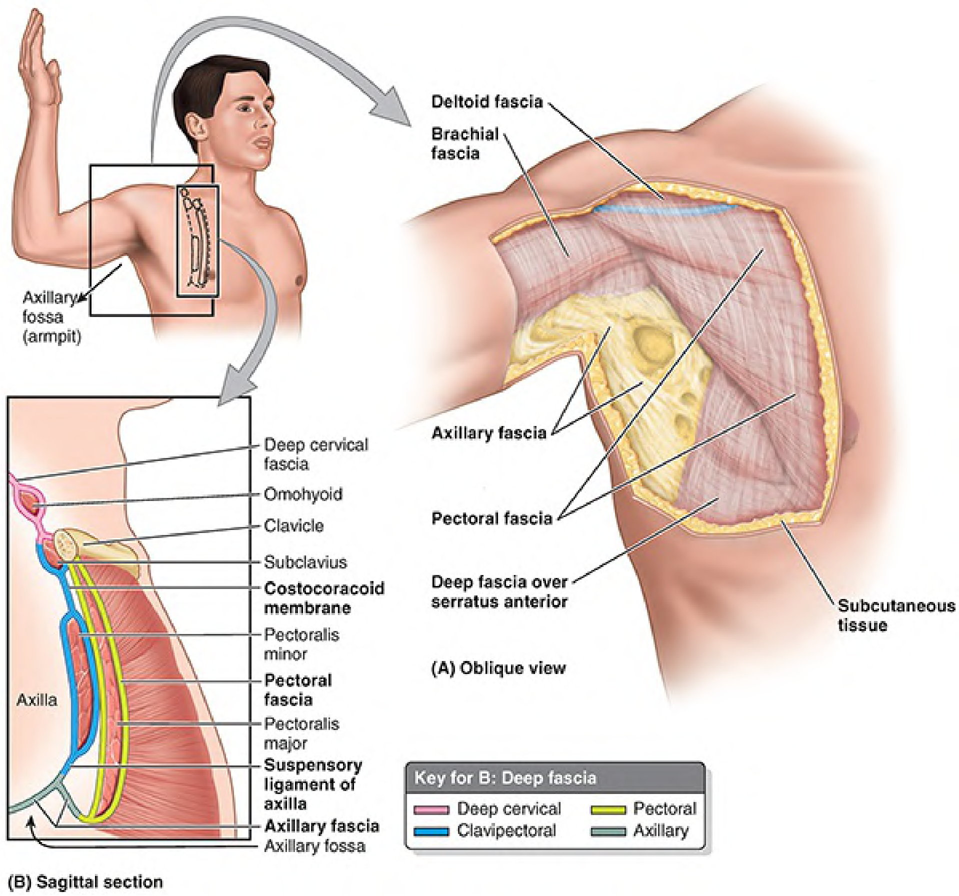


FIGURE 3.13. Anterior wall and floor of axilla. A. Axillary fascia. Axillary fascia forms the floor of the axilla and is continuous with the pectoral fascia. **B.** Pectoral and clavipectoral fascia. The pectoral fascia surrounds the pectoralis major, forming the anterior layer of the anterior axillary wall. The clavipectoral fascia extends between the coracoid process of the scapula, the clavicle, and the axillary fascia.

The fascia of the pectoral region is attached to the clavicle and sternum. The **pectoral fascia** invests the pectoralis major and is continuous inferiorly with the fascia of the anterior abdominal wall. The pectoral fascia leaves the lateral border of the pectoralis major and becomes the **axillary fascia**, which forms the floor of the axilla (compartment deep to skin of the armpit). Deep to the pectoral fascia and pectoralis major, another fascial layer, the **clavipectoral fascia**, descends from the clavicle, enclosing the subclavius and then pectoralis minor, becoming continuous inferiorly with the axillary fascia.

The part of the clavipectoral fascia between the pectoralis minor and subclavius, the **costocoracoid membrane**, is pierced by the lateral pectoral nerve, which primarily supplies the pectoralis major. The part of the clavipectoral fascia inferior to the pectoralis minor, the **suspensory ligament of the axilla**, supports the axillary fascia and pulls it and the overlying skin upward during abduction of the arm, forming the **axillary fossa** (armpit).

The scapulohumeral muscles that cover the scapula, and form the bulk of the shoulder, are also ensheathed by deep fascia. The **deltoid fascia** descends over the superficial surface of the deltoid from the clavicle, acromion, and scapular spine. From the deep surface of the deltoid fascia, numerous septa (connective tissue partitions) penetrate between the fascicles (bundles) of

the muscle. Inferiorly, the deltoid fascia is continuous with the pectoral fascia anteriorly and the dense infraspinous fascia posteriorly. The muscles that cover the anterior and posterior surfaces of the scapula are covered superficially with deep fascia, which is attached to the margins of the scapula and posteriorly to the spine of the scapula.

This arrangement creates osseofibrous subscapular, supraspinous, and infraspinous compartments; the muscles in each compartment attach to (originate from) the deep surface of the overlying fascia in part, allowing the muscles to have greater bulk (mass) than would be the case if only bony attachments occurred. The **supraspinous** and **infraspinous fascia** overlying the supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles, respectively, on the posterior aspect of the scapula are so dense and opaque that they must be removed during dissection to view the muscles.

The **brachial fascia**, a sheath of deep fascia, encloses the arm like a snug sleeve deep to the skin and subcutaneous tissue (Figs. 3.13A and 3.14A, B). It is continuous superiorly with the deltoid, pectoral, axillary, and infraspinous fascias. The brachial fascia is attached inferiorly to the epicondyles of the humerus and the olecranon of the ulna. This fascia is continuous with the **antebrachial fascia**, the deep fascia of the forearm. Two intermuscular septa—the **medial** and **lateral intermuscular septa**—extend from the deep surface of the brachial fascia to the central shaft and medial and lateral supra-epicondylar ridges of the humerus (Fig. 3.14B). These intermuscular septa divide the arm into **anterior (flexor)** and **posterior (extensor) fascial compartments**, each of which contains muscles serving similar functions and sharing common innervation. The fascial compartments of the upper limb are important clinically because they also contain and direct the spread of infection or hemorrhage in the limb.

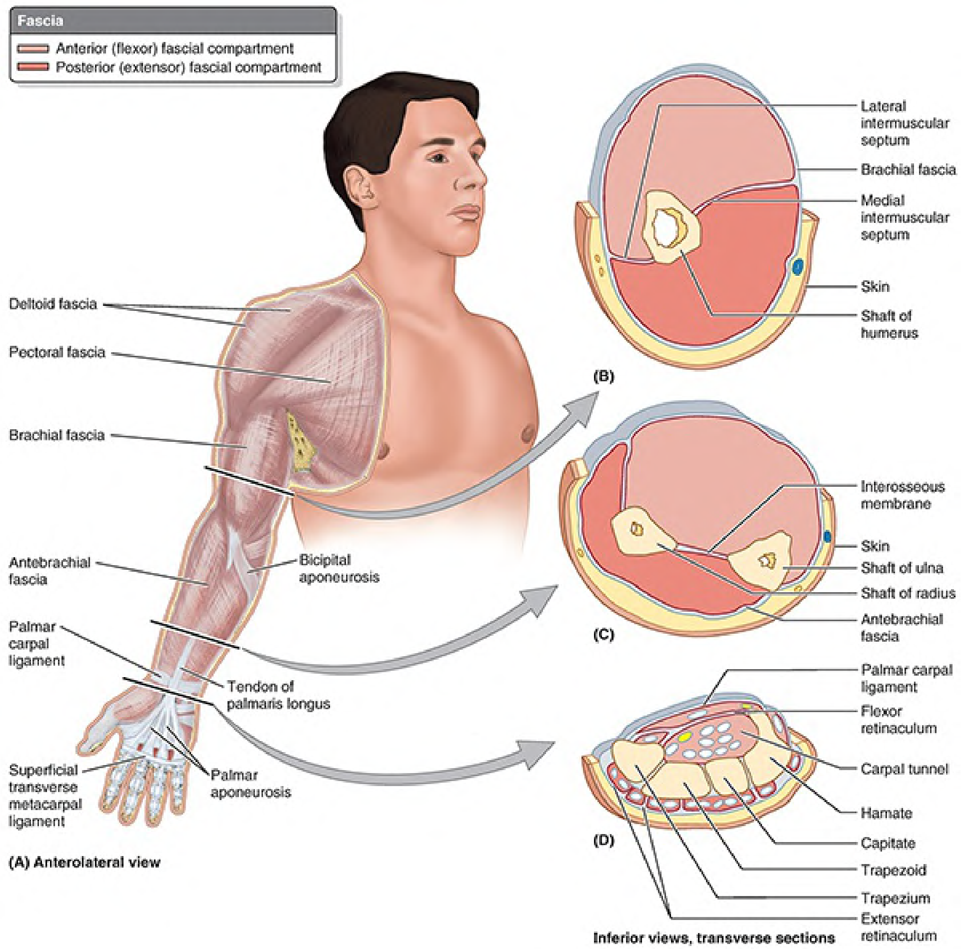


FIGURE 3.14. Fascia and compartments of upper limb. A. Brachial and antebrachial fascia. **B.** Arm, transverse section. **C.** Forearm, transverse section. **D.** Wrist, transverse section. The flexor retinaculum extends between the anterior prominences of the outer carpal bones, converting the anterior concavity of the carpus into an osseofibrous carpal tunnel.

In the forearm, similar fascial compartments are surrounded by the antebrachial fascia and are separated by the **interosseous membrane** connecting the radius and ulna (Fig. 3.14C). The antebrachial fascia thickens posteriorly over the distal ends of the radius and ulna to form a transverse band, the **extensor retinaculum**, which retains the extensor tendons in position (Fig. 3.14D).

The antebrachial fascia also forms an anterior thickening, which is continuous with the extensor retinaculum but is officially unnamed; some authors identify it as the palmar carpal ligament (Fig. 3.14A, D). Immediately distal and at a deeper level to the latter, the antebrachial fascia is also continued as the **flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal ligament)**.[3] This fibrous band extends between the anterior prominences of the outer carpal bones and converts the anterior concavity of the carpus into a carpal tunnel, through which the flexor tendons and median nerve pass.

The palmar aspect of the deep fascia of the upper limb continues beyond the extensor and flexor retinacula as the palmar fascia. The central part of the palmar fascia, the palmar aponeurosis, is thick, tendinous, and triangular and overlies the central compartment of the palm.

Its apex, located proximally, is continuous with the tendon of the palmaris longus (when that muscle is present). The aponeurosis forms four distinct thickenings that radiate to the bases of the fingers and become continuous with the fibrous tendon sheaths of the digits. The bands are traversed distally by the **superficial transverse metacarpal ligament**, which forms the base of the palmar aponeurosis. Innumerable minute, strong skin ligaments (L. retinacula cutis) extend from the palmar aponeurosis to the skin (see Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts; Fig. 1.8B). These ligaments hold the palmar skin close to the aponeurosis, allowing little sliding movement of the skin.

VESSELS AND NERVES OF UPPER LIMB

Overview of Arterial Supply of Upper Limb

The arterial supply of the upper limb begins with the axillary artery, the second part of a single continuous artery changing its name three times (Fig. 3.15A). The first part is the subclavian artery, which contributes to the supply of the scapular region but is considered an artery of the neck (see Chapter 9, Neck). The subclavian artery becomes an axillary artery upon crossing the lateral border of 1st rib. The axillary artery supplies the shoulder and pectoral regions and in turn becomes a brachial artery (artery of the arm) as it crosses the inferior border of the teres major. In the elbow region, the brachial artery terminates by dividing into two arteries of the forearm: the ulnar artery on the medial aspect and the radial artery on the lateral aspect. The ulnar and radial arteries typically terminate by communicating (anastomosing) within the palm of the hand as superficial and deep palmar arches. Pulsation of the arteries of the upper limb may be detected during physical examination at specific sites illustrated in Figure 3.15B–F. Details concerning these arteries, their branches, and anastomoses will be described within each part of the upper limb.

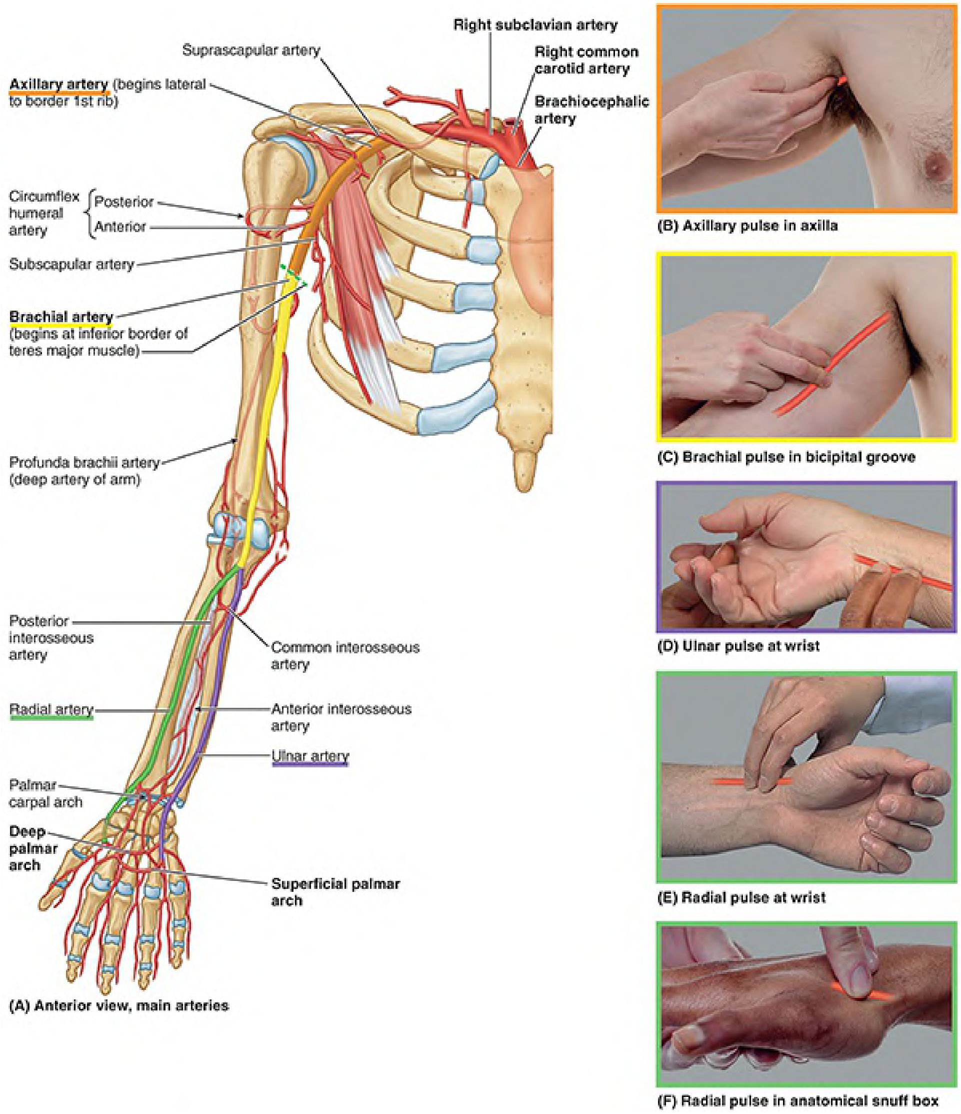


FIGURE 3.15. **Arterial supply and palpation sites of pules of upper limb. A.** Overview. **B–F.** Sites of palpation of pulses.

Venous Drainage of Upper Limb

SUPERFICIAL VEINS OF UPPER LIMB

The main superficial veins of the upper limb, the cephalic and basilic veins, originate in the subcutaneous tissue on the dorsum of the hand from the dorsal venous network (Fig. 3.16A). **Perforating veins** form communications between the superficial and deep veins (Fig. 3.16B). Like the dermatomal pattern, the logic for naming the main superficial veins of the upper limb cephalic (toward the head) and basilic (toward the base) becomes apparent when the limb is placed in its initial embryonic position.

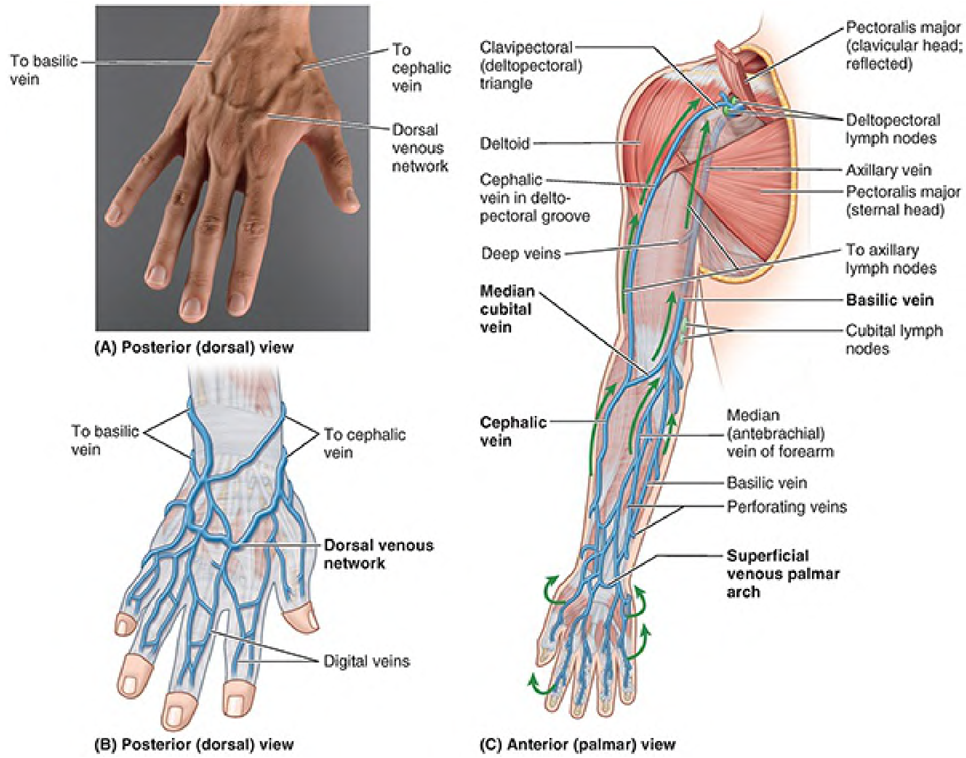


FIGURE 3.16. Superficial venous and lymphatic drainage of upper limb. A and B. Digital veins and dorsal venous network. **C.** Basilic and cephalic veins. Arrows indicate the flow of lymph within lymphatic vessels, which converge toward the vein and drain into the cubital and axillary lymph nodes.

The **cephalic vein** (G. kephalé, head) ascends in the subcutaneous tissue from the lateral aspect of the dorsal venous network and proceeds along the lateral border of the wrist and anterolateral surface of the proximal forearm and arm; it is often visible through the skin. Anterior to the elbow, the cephalic vein communicates with the **median cubital vein**, which passes obliquely across the anterior aspect of the elbow in the cubital fossa (depression in front of the elbow), and joins the basilic vein. The cephalic vein courses superiorly between the deltoid and pectoralis major muscles along the deltopectoral groove and then enters the clavipectoral triangle (Figs. 3.2 and 3.16C). It then pierces the costocoracoid membrane portion of the clavipectoral fascia, joining the terminal part of the axillary vein.

The **basilic vein** ascends in the subcutaneous tissue from the medial end of the dorsal venous network along the medial side of the forearm and inferior part of the arm; it is often visible through the skin. It then passes deeply near the junction of the middle and inferior thirds of the arm, piercing the brachial fascia and running superiorly parallel to the brachial artery and medial cutaneous nerve of the forearm to the axilla, where it merges with the accompanying veins (L. venae comitantes) of the axillary artery to form the axillary vein.

The **median antebrachial vein (median vein of the forearm)** is highly variable. It begins at the base of the dorsum of the thumb, curves around the lateral side of the wrist, and ascends in the middle of the anterior aspect of the forearm between the cephalic and basilic veins. The median antebrachial vein sometimes divides into a median basilic vein, which joins the basilic vein, and a median cephalic vein, which joins the cephalic vein.

DEEP VEINS OF UPPER LIMB

Deep veins lie internal to the deep fascia and—in contrast to the superficial veins—usually occur as paired (continually interanastomosing) accompanying veins that travel with, and bear the same name as, the major arteries of the limb (Fig. 3.17).

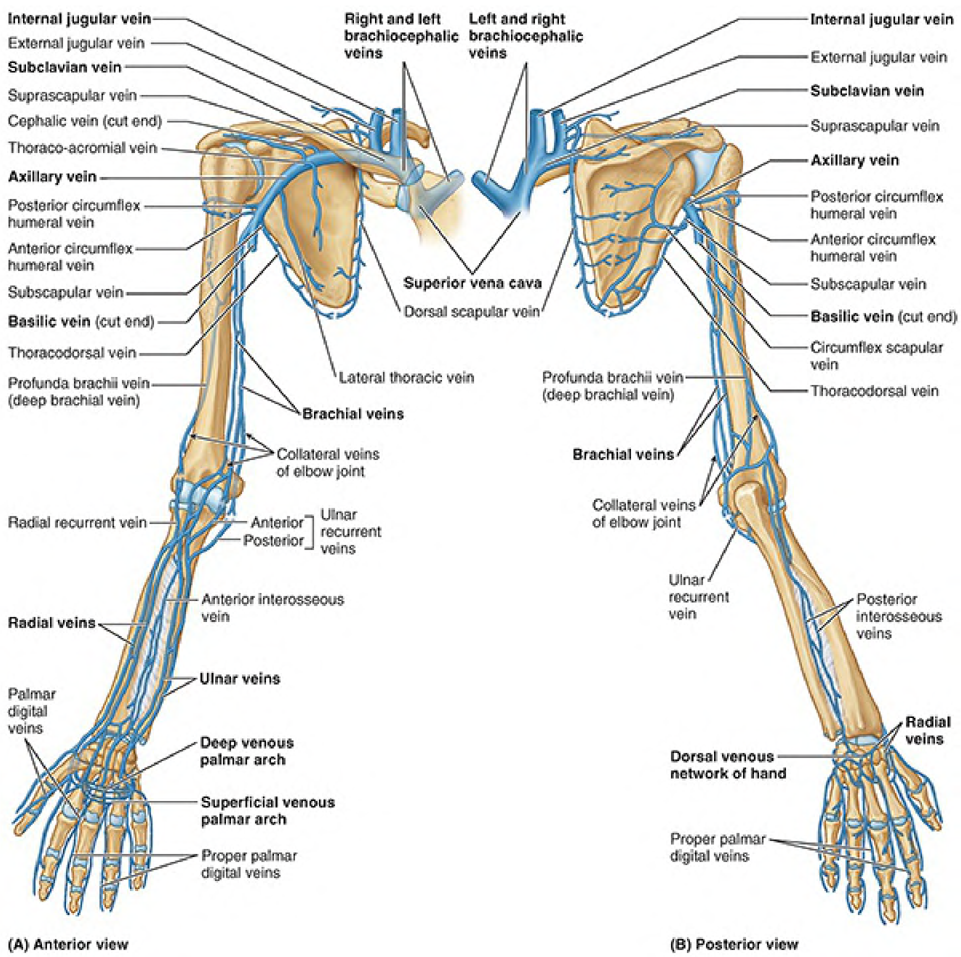


FIGURE 3.17. Deep veins of upper limb. The deep veins bear the same name as the arteries they accompany.

Lymphatic Drainage of Upper Limb

Superficial lymphatic vessels arise from lymphatic plexuses in the skin of the fingers, palm, and dorsum of the hand and ascend mostly with the superficial veins, such as the cephalic and basilic veins (Fig. 3.18). Some vessels accompanying the basilic vein enter the **cubital lymph nodes**, located proximal to the medial epicondyle and medial to the basilic vein. Efferent vessels from these lymph nodes ascend in the arm and terminate in the **humeral (lateral) axillary lymph nodes** (see Chapter 4, Thorax).

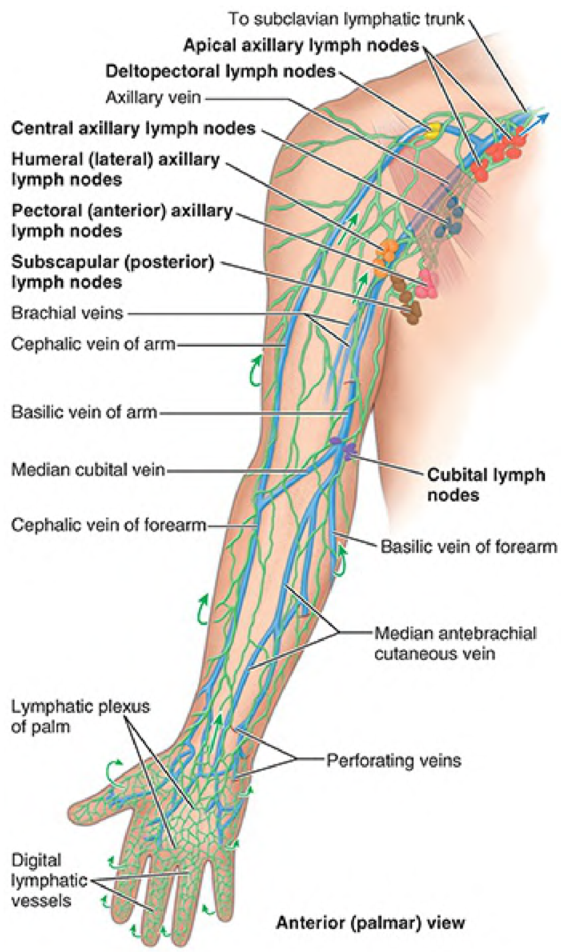


FIGURE 3.18. **Lymphatic drainage of upper limb.** Superficial lymphatic vessels originate from the digital lymphatic vessels of the digits and lymphatic plexus of the palm. Small arrows indicate drainage to the posterior aspect of the limb, dorsum of the hand. Most drainage from the palm follows this route.

Most superficial lymphatic vessels accompanying the cephalic vein cross the proximal part of the arm and the anterior aspect of the shoulder to enter the **apical axillary lymph nodes**. However, some vessels previously enter the more superficial **deltopectoral lymph nodes**.

Deep lymphatic vessels, less numerous than superficial vessels, accompany the major deep veins in the upper limb (radial, ulnar, and brachial) (Fig. 3.17) and terminate in the humeral axillary lymph nodes. They drain lymph from the joint capsules, periosteum, tendons, nerves, and muscles and ascend with the deep veins. A few deep lymph nodes may occur along their course. The axillary lymph nodes are drained by the subclavian lymphatic trunk; both are discussed in greater detail with the axilla, later in this chapter.

Cutaneous and Motor Innervation of Upper Limb

CUTANEOUS INNERVATION OF UPPER LIMB

The cutaneous nerves of the upper limb follow a general pattern that is easy to understand if it is noted that developmentally the limbs grow as lateral protrusions of the trunk, with the 1st digit

(thumb or great toe) located on the cranial side (thumb is directed superiorly). Thus, the lateral aspect of the upper limb is innervated by more cranial spinal cord segments or nerves than the medial aspect.

There are two dermatome maps in common use (Fig. 3.19). One has gained popular acceptance because of its more intuitive aesthetic qualities, corresponding to concepts of limb development (Keegan & Garrett, 1948). The other map is based on clinical findings and is generally preferred by neurologists (Foerster, 1933). Both maps are approximations, delineating dermatomes as distinct zones when actually there is much overlap between adjacent dermatomes and much variation (even from side to side in the same individual). In both schemes, observe the progression of the segmental innervation of the various cutaneous areas around the limb when it is placed in its "initial embryonic position" (abducted with thumb directed superiorly) (Fig. 3.19; Table 3.1).

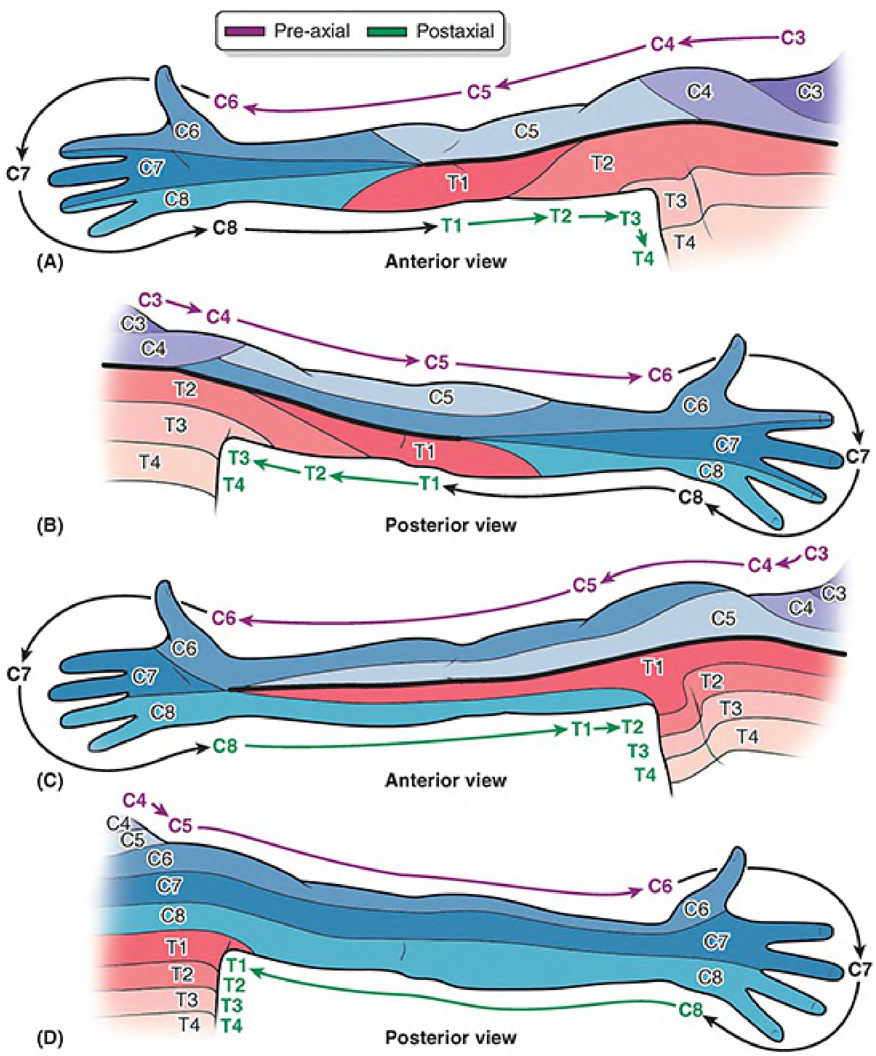


FIGURE 3.19. Segmental (dermatomal) and peripheral (cutaneous nerve) innervation of upper limb. A and B. Pattern of segmental (dermatomal) innervation proposed by Foerster (1933). The dermatomal map depicts innervation of the medial aspect of the limb by upper thoracic (T1–T3) spinal cord segments, consistent with the experience of heart pain (angina pectoris) referred to that area. **C and D.** The pattern of segmental innervation proposed by Keegan and Garrett

(1948). This dermatomal map has gained popular acceptance, perhaps because of the regular progression of its stripes and correlation with developmental concepts. In both patterns, the dermatomes progress sequentially around the periphery of the outstretched limb (with the thumb directed superiorly), providing a way to approximate the segmental innervation.

TABLE 3.1. DERMATOMES OF UPPER LIMB

Spinal Segment/Nerve(s)	Description of Dermatome(s)
C3, C4	Region at base of neck, extending laterally over shoulder
C5	Lateral aspect of arm (i.e., superior aspect of abducted arm)
C6	Lateral forearm and thumb
C7	Middle and ring fingers (or middle three fingers) and center of posterior aspect of forearm
C8	Little finger, medial side of hand and forearm (i.e., inferior aspect of abducted arm)
T1	Medial aspect of forearm and inferior arm
T2	Medial aspect of superior arm and skin of axilla[a]

[a]Not indicated on the Keegan and Garrett (1948) dermatome map. However, pain experienced during a heart attack, considered to be mediated by T1 and T2, is commonly described as "radiating down the medial side of the left arm."

Most cutaneous nerves of the upper limb are derived from the brachial plexus, a major nerve network formed by the anterior rami of the C5–T1 spinal nerves (see "Brachial Plexus" in this chapter). The nerves to the shoulder, however, are derived from the cervical plexus, a nerve network consisting of a series of nerve loops formed between adjacent anterior rami of the first four cervical nerves. The cervical plexus lies deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle on the anterolateral aspect of the neck.

The cutaneous nerves of the arm and forearm[4] are illustrated in Figure 3.20, and their contributing spinal nerves, source, and course and distribution are provided in Table 3.2.

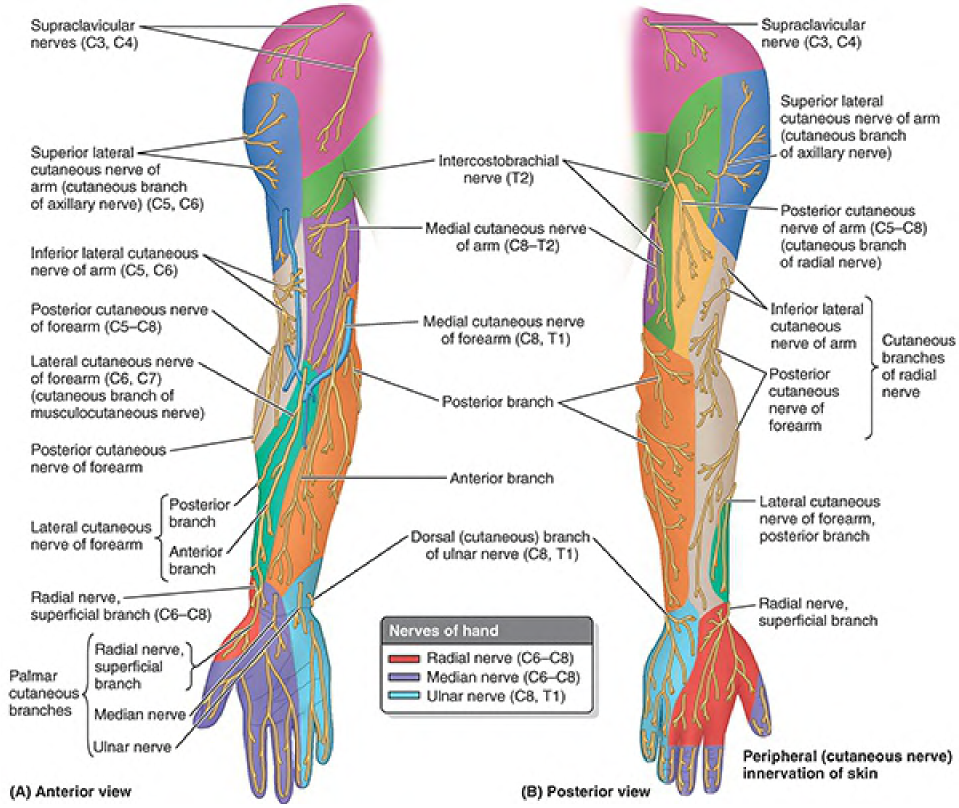


FIGURE 3.20. Distribution of peripheral (named) cutaneous nerves in upper limb. Most of the nerves are branches of nerve plexuses and, therefore, contain fibers from more than one spinal nerve or spinal cord segment.

TABLE 3.2. CUTANEOUS NERVES OF UPPER LIMB

Cutaneous Nerve	Contributing Spinal Nerves	Source	Course and Distribution
Supraclavicular nerves	C3, C4	Cervical plexus	Pass anterior to clavicle, immediately deep to platysma, and supply skin over clavicle and superolateral aspect of pectoralis major
Superior lateral cutaneous nerve of arm	C5, C6	Terminal branch of axillary nerve	Emerges from beneath posterior margin of deltoid and supplies skin over lower part of this muscle and on lateral side of midarm
Inferior lateral cutaneous nerve of arm	C5, C6	Radial nerve (or posterior cutaneous nerve of arm)	Perforates lateral head of triceps, passing close to cephalic vein to supply skin over inferolateral aspect of arm
Posterior cutaneous nerve of arm	C5–C8	Radial nerve (in axilla)	Crosses posterior to and communicates with intercostobrachial nerve and supplies skin on posterior arm as far as olecranon
Posterior cutaneous nerve of forearm	C5–C8	Radial nerve (with inferior lateral cutaneous nerve of arm)	Perforates lateral head of triceps, descends laterally in arm, then runs along and supplies posterior forearm to wrist
Lateral cutaneous nerve of forearm	C6, C7	Musculocutaneous nerve (terminal	Emerges lateral to biceps tendon deep to cephalic vein, supplying skin of anterolateral forearm to wrist

		branch)	
Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm	C8, T1	Medial cord of brachial plexus (in axilla)	Descends medial to brachial artery, pierces deep fascia with basilic vein in midarm, dividing into anterior and posterior branches that enter forearm and supply skin of anteromedial aspect to wrist
Medial cutaneous nerve of arm	C8–T2	Medial cord of brachial plexus (in axilla)	Communicates with intercostobrachial nerve, continuing to supply skin of medial aspect of distal arm
Intercostobrachial nerve	T2	Second intercostal nerve (as its lateral cutaneous branch)	Extends laterally, communicating with posterior and medial cutaneous nerves of arm, supplying skin of axilla and medial aspect of proximal arm

Note that there are lateral, medial, and posterior (but no anterior) cutaneous nerves of the arm and forearm; as discussed later in this chapter, this pattern corresponds to that of the cords of the brachial plexus.

MOTOR INNERVATION OF UPPER LIMB

Somatic motor (general somatic efferent) fibers traveling in the same mixed peripheral nerves that convey sensory fibers to the cutaneous nerves transmit impulses to the voluntary muscles of the upper limb. The unilateral embryological muscle mass (and derived muscle) receiving innervation from a single spinal cord segment or spinal nerve constitutes a myotome (Fig. 3.21). Upper limb muscles usually receive motor fibers from several spinal cord segments or nerves via multisegmental (named) peripheral nerves. Thus, most muscles are made up of more than one myotome, and multiple spinal cord segments are usually involved in producing the movement of the upper limb. However, the intrinsic muscles of the hand constitute a single myotome (T1).

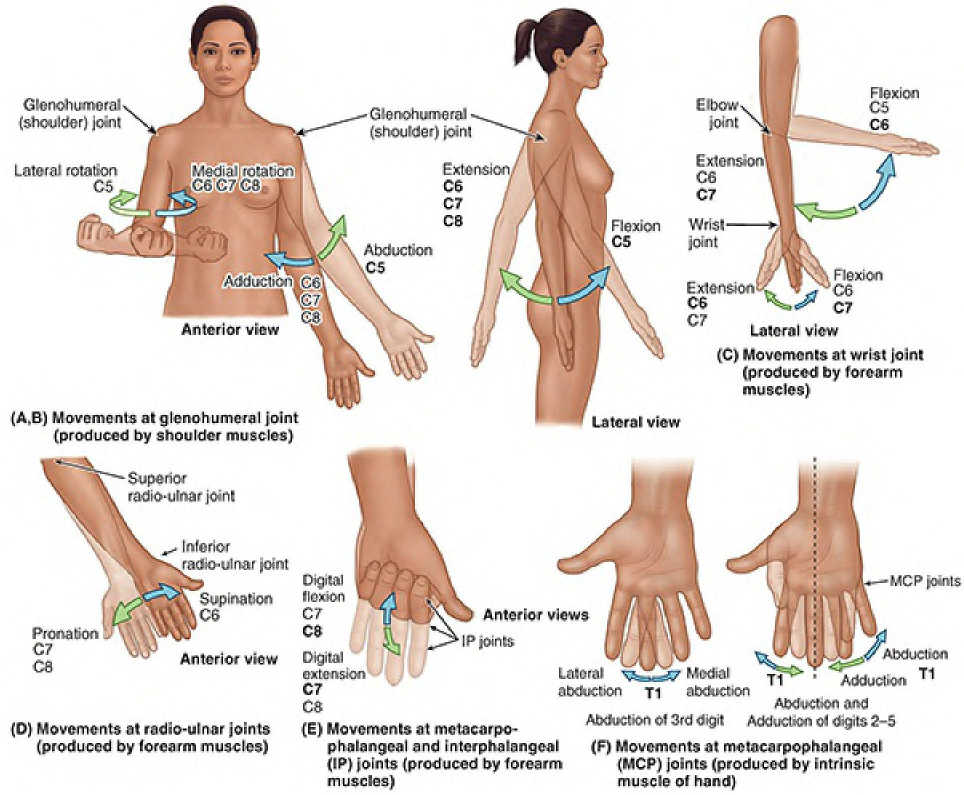
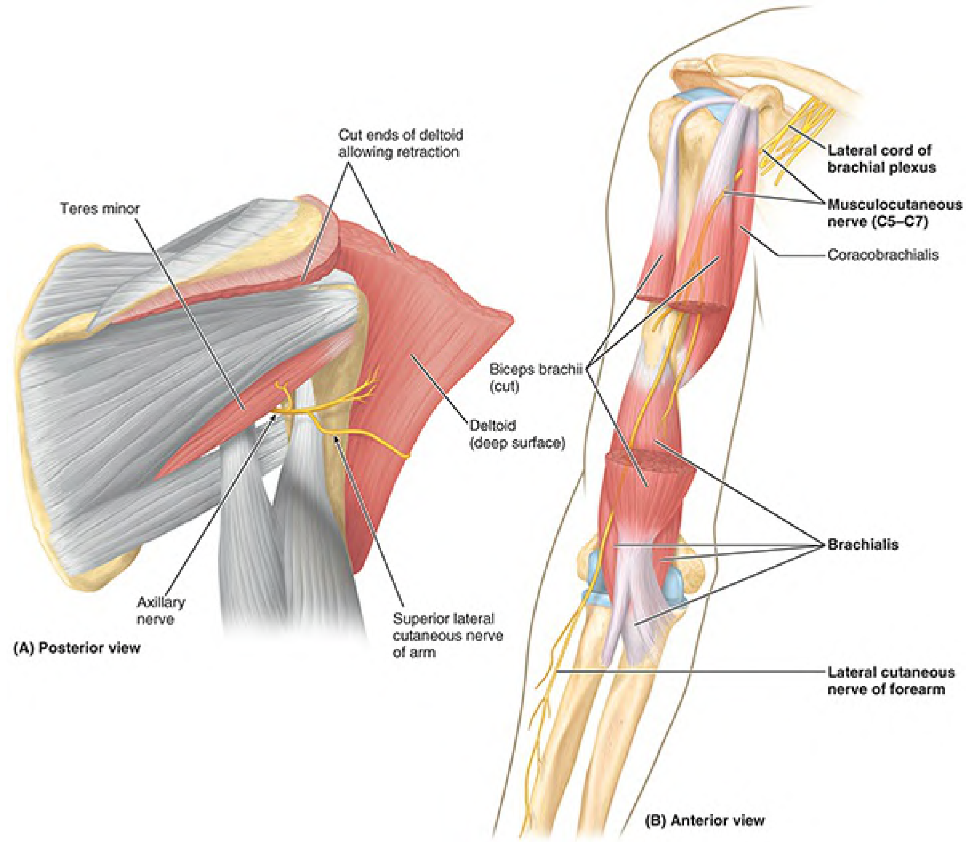


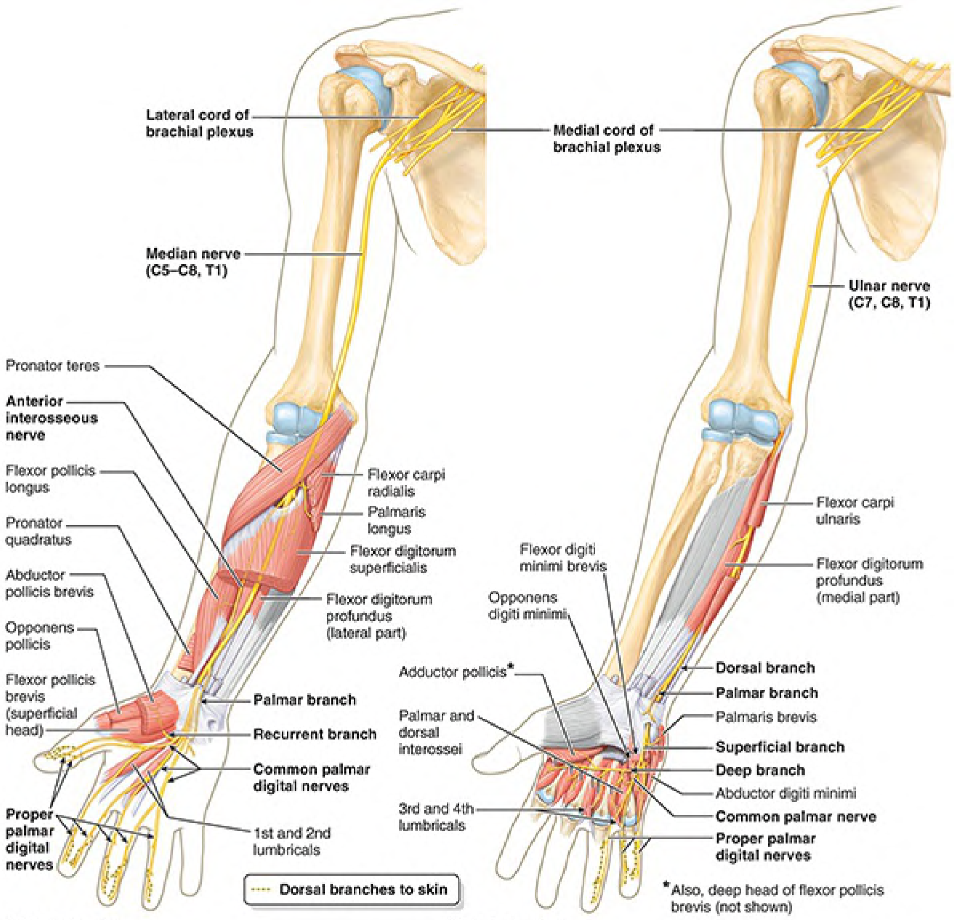
FIGURE 3.21. Segmental innervation of movements of upper limb. A–F. Most movements involve portions of multiple myotomes; however, the intrinsic muscles of the hand (**F**) involve a single myotome (T1).

Summary of Peripheral Nerves of Upper Limb

Peripheral nerves that provide sensory and motor innervation to the upper limb are the axillary, musculocutaneous, median, ulnar, and radial nerves, all of which arise from the brachial plexus (Figs. 3.22A–E). For the most part, names of the cutaneous (sensory) branches of these nerves describe their area of distribution.



Cut ends of deltoid allowing retraction
Teres minor
Deltoid (deep surface)
Axillary nerve
Superior lateral cutaneous nerve of arm
(A) Posterior view
Lateral cord of brachial plexus
Musculocutaneous nerve (C5–C7)
Coracobrachialis
Biceps brachii (cut)
Brachialis
Lateral cutaneous nerve of forearm
(B) Anterior view



(C) Anterior view

(D) Anterior view

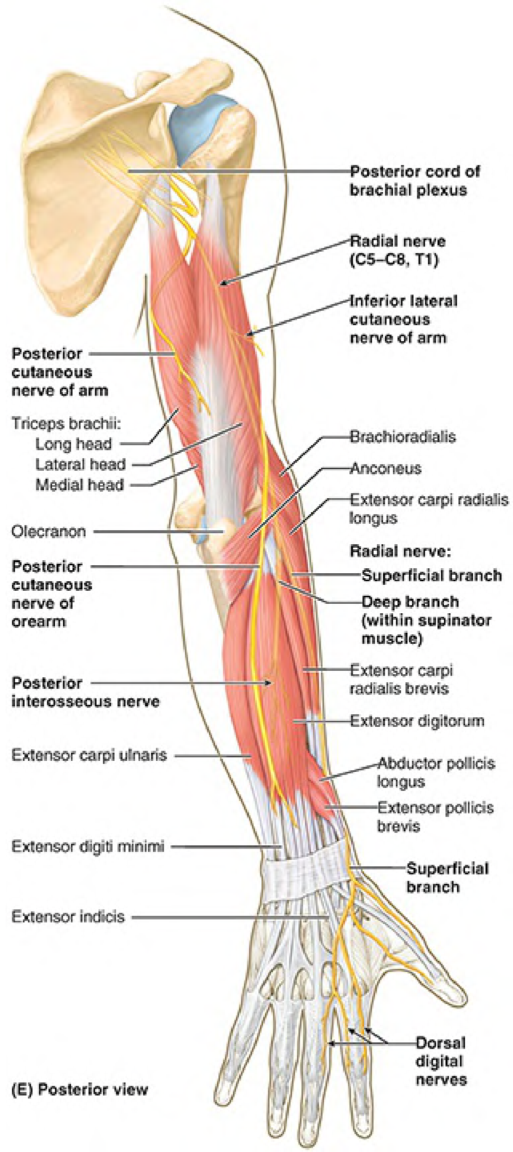


FIGURE 3.22. Summary of peripheral nerves innervating muscles of upper limb. A. Axillary nerve. **B.** Musculocutaneous nerve. **C.** Median nerve. **D.** Ulnar nerve. **E.** Radial nerve.

The axillary nerve conveys fibers from spinal cord segments/nerves C5 and C6 to two muscles of the shoulder: the deltoid and teres minor (Fig. 3.22A). A third, sensory branch is the superior lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm.

The musculocutaneous nerve conveys fibers from spinal cord segments/nerves C5–C7 to muscles of the anterior compartment of the arm, namely the coracobrachialis, biceps brachii, and brachialis muscles (Fig. 3.22B). Its cutaneous branch is the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm.

The median nerve conveys fibers from C5–T1. However, it supplies no innervation in the arm (Fig. 3.22C). It supplies all the muscles in the anterior compartment of the forearm with one and a half exception, which are supplied by the ulnar nerve. It then proceeds into the hand supplying the palmar thumb muscles, again with one and a half exceptions, also supplied by the ulnar

nerve. It also supplies two lumbrical muscles on the lateral (thumb) side of the hand. It sends cutaneous branches to the palmar aspect and nail beds of the three and a half lateral digits of the hand and the adjacent skin of the palm.

The ulnar nerve conveys fibers from C7–T1 (Fig. 3.22D). It also supplies no innervation in the arm, and in the forearm, it supplies only the flexor carpi ulnaris and the medial (ulnar) half of the flexor digitorum profundus of the anterior compartment. In the hand, it supplies muscles of the small finger, the medial two lumbrical muscles, the adductor pollicis, and the deep head of the flexor pollicis brevis. It provides cutaneous innervation to the palmar and dorsal aspects of the medial one and a half digits and to the adjacent skin of the palm.

The radial nerve, like the median nerve, conveys fibers from spinal cord segments/nerves C5–T1 but unlike the nerves above passes to the posterior compartments of the arm and forearm, supplying all muscles within them (Fig. 3.22E). Three cutaneous nerves arise from the radial nerve: the inferior lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm, the posterior cutaneous nerve of the forearm, and the superficial radial nerve. The latter supplies the skin on the dorsum of the hand and base of the thumb.

The five peripheral nerves serving the upper limb are described in detail with the specific regions of the limb they supply.

The Bottom Line: Fascia, Vessels, and Nerves of Upper Limb

Fascia: The firm deep fascia of the upper limb surrounds and contains the structures of the upper limb as an expansion-limiting membrane deep to the skin and subcutaneous tissue. ■ The deep surface of the fascia, which occasionally serves to extend the surface area available for muscular origin, is attached directly or via intermuscular septa to the enclosed bones. ■ The deep fascia thus forms fascial compartments containing individual muscles or muscle groups of similar function and innervation. ■ The compartments also contain or direct the spread of infection or hemorrhage.

Arteries: The shoulder and arm are served by a continuous artery that changes its name three times: subclavian, axillary, and brachial. ■ The brachial artery bifurcates in the elbow region into the ulnar and radial arteries that supply the medial and lateral aspects of the forearm and supply the hand via their anastomoses as superficial and deep plantar arches.

Superficial veins: The cephalic vein courses along the cranial (cephalic) margin of the limb, while the basilic vein courses along the caudal (basic) margin of the limb. ■ Both veins come from the dorsal venous network on the dorsum of the hand and terminate by draining into the beginning (basilic vein) and end (cephalic vein) of the axillary vein.

Deep veins: Deep veins in the limbs usually take the form of paired accompanying

veins, bearing the same name as the artery they accompany.

Lymphatic vessels: The superficial lymphatic vessels generally converge on and follow the superficial veins, and the deep lymphatics follow the deep veins. ■ The lymph collected from the upper limb by both superficial and deep lymphatics drains into the axillary lymph nodes.

Dermatomes: As a consequence of plexus formation, two patterns of cutaneous innervation occur in the upper limb: (1) segmental innervation (dermatomes) by spinal nerves and (2) innervation by multisegmental peripheral (named) nerves. The former pattern is easiest to visualize if the limb is placed in its initial embryonic position (abducted with the thumb directed superiorly). ■ The segments then progress in descending order around the limb (starting with C4 dermatome at the root of the neck, proceeding laterally or distally along the superior surface and then medially or proximally along the inferior surface, as the T2 dermatome continues onto the thoracic wall).

Cutaneous innervation: Like the brachial plexus, which forms posterior, lateral, and medial (but no anterior) cords, the arm and forearm have posterior, lateral, and medial (but no anterior) cutaneous nerves. ■ The medial cutaneous nerves are branches of the medial cord of the brachial plexus. ■ The posterior cutaneous nerves are branches of the radial nerve. ■ Each of the lateral cutaneous nerves arise from a separate source (axillary, radial, and musculocutaneous nerves).

Myotomes: Most upper limb muscles include components of more than one myotome and thus receive motor fibers from several spinal cord segments or spinal nerves. ■ Thus, multiple spinal cord segments are involved in producing the movements of the upper limb. ■ The intrinsic muscles of the hand constitute a single myotome (T1).

Peripheral nerves: The brachial plexus gives rise to five peripheral nerves supplying the free upper limb via motor and cutaneous (sensory) branches, mainly ■ the axillary nerve, which runs to two muscles of the shoulder region and skin of the upper lateral arm; ■ the musculocutaneous nerve, which serves muscles of the anterior arm and skin of the lateral forearm; ■ the radial nerve, which supplies muscles and skin on the posterior aspect of both arm and forearm; and ■ the median and ulnar nerves, which both supply muscles of the anterior forearm and palm and skin of the hand. ■ The median nerve supplies the majority of anterior forearm muscle and skin of the hand, and ■ the ulnar nerve thus serves a minority of anterior forearm muscles and skin of the hand but the majority of the muscles of the hand.

PECTORAL AND SCAPULAR REGIONS

Anterior Axio-Appendicular Muscles

Four anterior axio-appendicular muscles (thoraco-appendicular or pectoral muscles) move the pectoral girdle: pectoralis major, pectoralis minor, subclavius, and serratus anterior. These muscles and their attachments are illustrated in Figure 3.23, and their attachments, nerve supply, and main actions are summarized in Table 3.3.

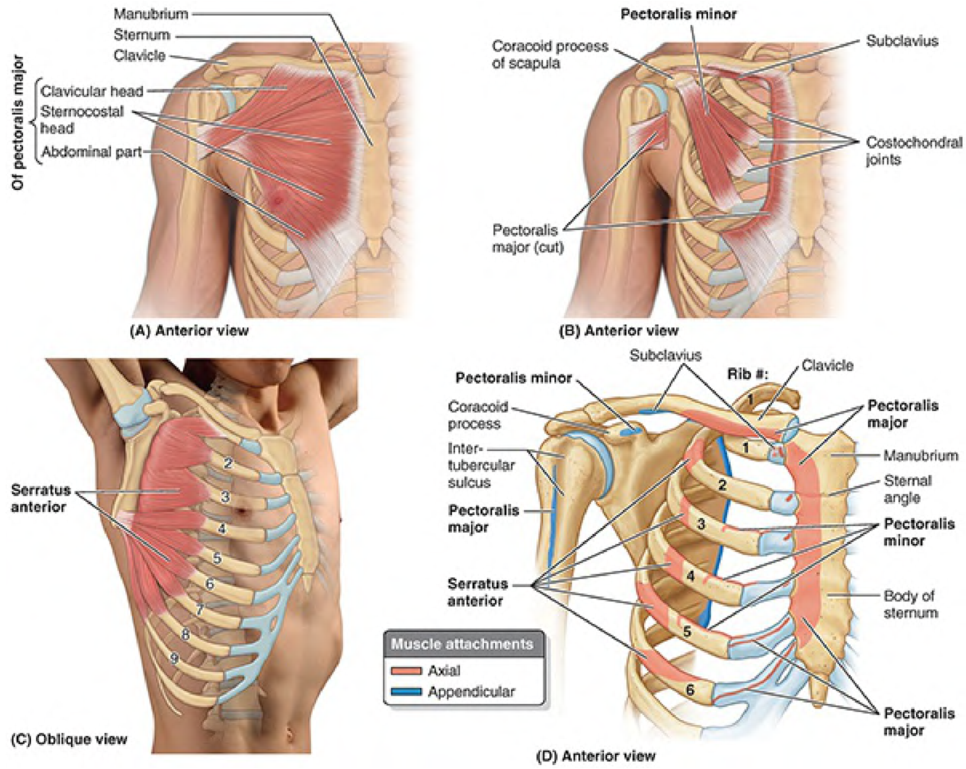


FIGURE 3.23. Anterior axio-appendicular muscles. A. Pectoralis major. **B.** Pectoralis minor and subclavius. **C.** Serratus anterior. **D.** Bony attachments.

TABLE 3.3. ANTERIOR AXIO-APPENDICULAR MUSCLES

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action
Pectoralis major	Clavicular head: anterior surface of medial half of clavicle Sternocostal head: anterior surface of sternum, superior six costal cartilages, and aponeurosis of external oblique muscle	Lateral lip of intertubercular sulcus of humerus	Lateral and medial pectoral nerves; clavicular head (C5, **C6**), and sternocostal head (**C7**, **C8**, T1)	Adducts and medially rotates humerus; draws scapula anteriorly and inferiorly Acting alone, clavicular head flexes humerus and sternocostal head extends it from the flexed position
Pectoralis minor	3rd–5th ribs near their costal cartilages	Medial border and superior surface of coracoid process of scapula	Medial pectoral nerve (C8, T1); Lat. pectoral n. (variable)	Stabilizes scapula by drawing it inferiorly and anteriorly against thoracic wall
Subclavius	Junction of 1st rib and its	Inferior surface of middle	Nerve to	Anchors and depresses

	costal cartilage	third of clavicle	subclavius (**C5**, C6)	clavicle
Serratus anterior	External surfaces of lateral parts of 1st–8th ribs	Anterior surface of medial border of scapula, including superior and inferior angles	Long thoracic nerve (C5, **C6**, **C7**)	Protracts scapula and holds it against thoracic wall; rotates scapula

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "**C5**, C6" means that the nerves supplying the subclavius are derived from the fifth and sixth cervical segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (e.g., **C5**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

The **pectoralis major** is a large, fan-shaped muscle that covers the superior part of the thorax (Fig. 3.23A). It has clavicular and sternocostal heads. The sternocostal head is much larger, and its lateral border forms the muscular mass that makes up most of the anterior wall of the axilla. Its inferior border forms the anterior axillary fold (see "Axilla" in this chapter). The pectoralis major and adjacent deltoid muscles form the narrow **deltopectoral groove**, in which the cephalic vein runs (see Figs. 3.16C and 3.36); however, the muscles diverge slightly from each other superiorly and, along with the clavicle, form the clavipectoral (deltopectoral) triangle (see Figs. 3.2 and 3.16C).

Producing powerful adduction and medial rotation of the arm when acting together, the two parts of the pectoralis major can also act independently: the clavicular head flexing the humerus, and the sternocostal head extending it back from the flexed position.

To test the clavicular head of pectoralis major, the arm is abducted 90°; the individual then moves the arm anteriorly against resistance. If acting normally, the clavicular head can be seen and palpated.

To test the sternocostal head of pectoralis major, the arm is abducted 60° and then adducted against resistance. If acting normally, the sternocostal head can be seen and palpated.

The **pectoralis minor** lies in the anterior wall of the axilla where it is almost completely covered by the much larger pectoralis major (Figs. 3.23B and 3.24). The pectoralis minor is triangular in shape. Its base (proximal attachment) is formed by fleshy slips attached to the anterior ends of the 3rd–5th ribs near their costal cartilages. Its apex (distal attachment) is on the coracoid process of the scapula. Variations in the costal attachments of the muscle are common.

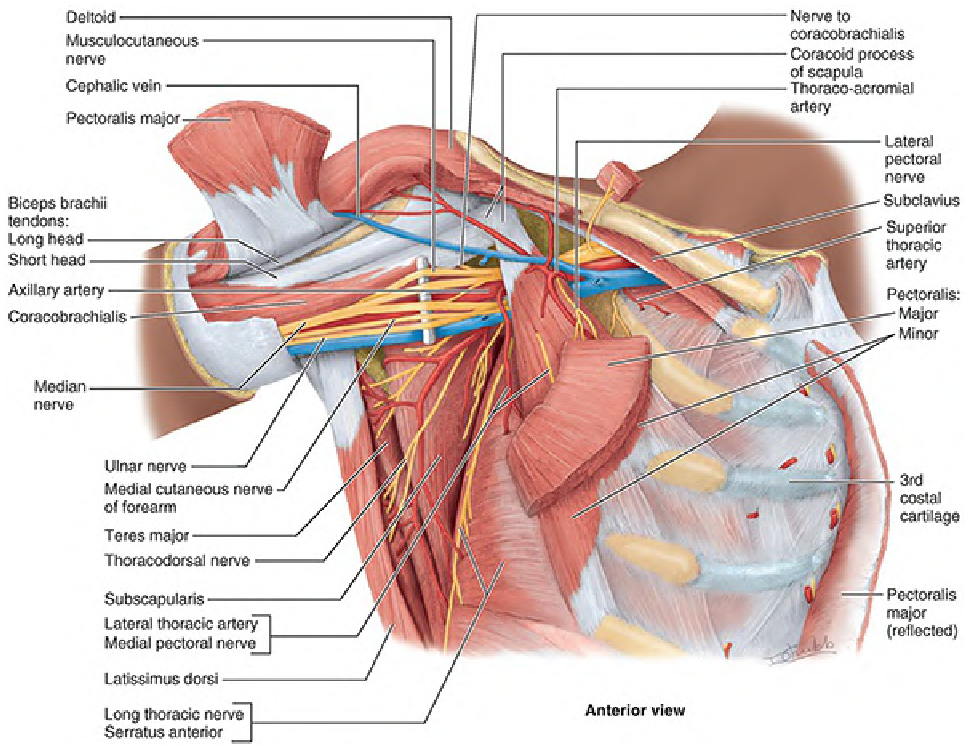


FIGURE 3.24. Axio-appendicular muscles contributing to walls of axilla. Of the anterior axio-appendicular muscles forming the anterior wall, only portions of the pectoralis major (attaching ends, a central part overlying the pectoralis minor, and a cube of muscle reflected superior to the clavicle), the pectoralis minor, and the subclavius remain. All the clavipectoral fascia and axillary fat have been removed, as has the axillary sheath surrounding the neurovascular bundle. This enables observation of the medial wall of the axilla, formed by the serratus anterior overlying the lateral thoracic wall, and of the latissimus dorsi contributing to the posterior wall.

The pectoralis minor stabilizes the scapula and is used when stretching the upper limb forward to touch an object that is just out of reach. It also assists in elevating the ribs for deep inspiration when the pectoral girdle is fixed or elevated. The pectoralis minor is a useful anatomical and surgical landmark for structures in the axilla (e.g., the axillary artery). With the coracoid process, the pectoralis minor forms a “bridge” under which vessels and nerves must pass to the arm.

The **subclavius** lies almost horizontally when the arm is in the anatomical position (Figs. 3.23B and 3.24). This small, round muscle is located inferior to the clavicle and affords some protection to the subclavian vessels and the superior trunk of the brachial plexus if the clavicle fractures. The subclavius anchors and depresses the clavicle, stabilizing it during movements of the upper limb. It also helps resist the tendency for the clavicle to dislocate at the sternoclavicular (SC) joint (e.g., when pulling very hard during a tug-of-war game).

The **serratus anterior** overlies the lateral part of the thorax and forms the medial wall of the axilla (Fig. 3.23C; see Figs. 3.39B or 3.40A). This broad sheet of thick muscle was named because of the sawtoothed appearance of its fleshy slips or digitations (L. serratus, a saw). The muscular slips pass posteriorly and then medially to attach to the whole length of the anterior surface of the medial border of the scapula, including its inferior angle. The serratus anterior is one of the most powerful muscles of the pectoral girdle. It is a strong protractor of the scapula and is used when punching or reaching anteriorly (some call it the “boxer’s muscle”).

The strong inferior part of the serratus anterior rotates the scapula, elevating its glenoid cavity so the arm can be raised above the shoulder. It also anchors the scapula, keeping it closely applied to the thoracic wall, enabling other muscles to use it as a fixed bone for movements of the humerus. The serratus anterior holds the scapula against the thoracic wall when doing push-ups or when pushing against resistance (e.g., pushing a car).

To test the serratus anterior (or the function of the long thoracic nerve that supplies it), the hand of the outstretched limb is pushed against a wall. If the muscle is acting normally, several digitations of the muscle can be seen and palpated.

Posterior Axio-Appendicular and Scapulohumeral Muscles

Posterior axio-appendicular muscles (superficial and intermediate groups of extrinsic back muscles) attach the superior appendicular skeleton to the axial skeleton (in the trunk).

The posterior shoulder muscles are divided into three groups (Table 3.4):

TABLE 3.4. POSTERIOR AXIO-APPENDICULAR MUSCLES

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Muscle Action
Superficial posterior axio-appendicular (extrinsic shoulder) muscles				
Trapezius	Medial third of superior nuchal line; external occipital protuberance; nuchal ligament; spinous processes of C7–T12 vertebrae	Lateral third of clavicle; acromion and spine of scapula	Spinal accessory nerve (CN XI) (motor fibers) and C3, C4 spinal nerves (pain and proprioceptive fibers)	Descending part elevates; ascending part depresses; and middle part (or all parts together) retracts scapula; descending and ascending parts act together to rotate glenoid cavity superiorly
Latissimus dorsi	Spinous processes of inferior 6 thoracic vertebrae, thoracolumbar fascia, iliac crest, and inferior 3 or 4 ribs	Floor of intertubercular sulcus of humerus	Thoracodorsal nerve (**C6**, **C7**, C8)	Extends, adducts, and medially rotates humerus; raises body toward arms during climbing
Deep posterior axio-appendicular (extrinsic shoulder) muscles				
Levator scapulae	Posterior tubercles of transverse processes of C1–C4 vertebrae	Medial border of scapula superior to root of scapular spine	Dorsal scapular (C4, C5) and cervical (C3, C4) nerves	Elevates scapula and rotates its glenoid cavity inferiorly by rotating scapula
Rhomboid minor and major	Minor: nuchal ligament; spinous processes of C7 and T1 vertebrae Major: spinous processes of T2–T5 vertebrae	Minor: smooth triangular area at medial end of scapular spine Major: medial border of scapula from level of spine to inferior angle	Dorsal scapular nerve (C4, **C5**)	Retract scapula and rotate its glenoid cavity inferiorly; fix scapula to thoracic wall

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "C4, **C5**" means that the nerves supplying the rhomboids are derived from the fourth and fifth cervical segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (e.g., **C5**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

- Superficial posterior axio-appendicular (extrinsic shoulder) muscles: trapezius and latissimus dorsi
- Deep posterior axio-appendicular (extrinsic shoulder) muscles: levator scapulae and rhomboids
- Scapulohumeral (intrinsic shoulder) muscles: deltoid, teres major, and the four rotator cuff muscles (supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, and subscapularis)

SUPERFICIAL POSTERIOR AXIO-APPENDICULAR (EXTRINSIC SHOULDER) MUSCLES

The superficial axio-appendicular muscles are the trapezius and latissimus dorsi. These muscles are illustrated in Figure 3.25, and their attachments, nerve supply, and main actions are listed in Table 3.4.

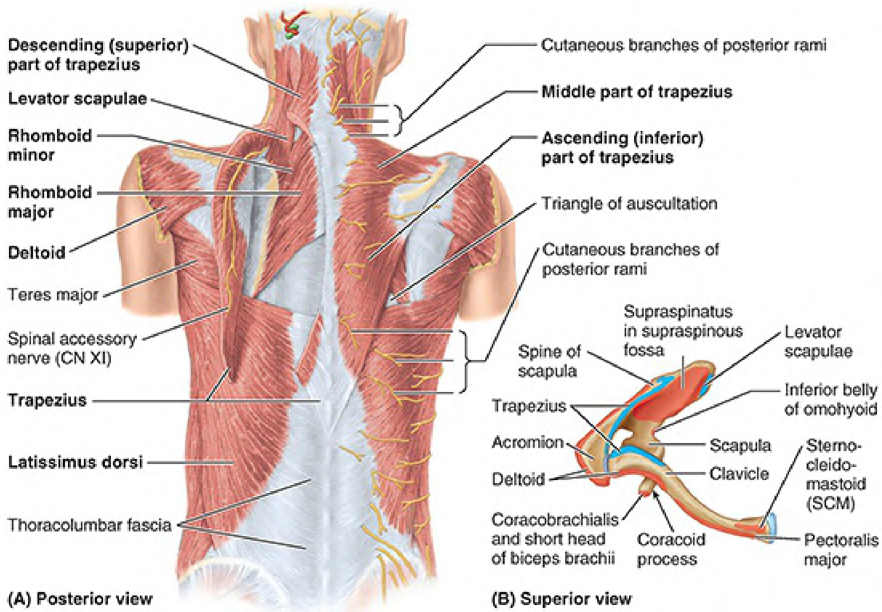


FIGURE 3.25. Posterior axio-appendicular muscles. A. Overview. **B.** Attachment sites.

Trapezius. The **trapezius** provides a direct attachment of the pectoral girdle to the trunk. This large, triangular muscle covers the posterior aspect of the neck and the superior half of the trunk (Fig. 3.26). It was given its name because the muscles of the two sides form a trapezium (G., irregular four-sided figure). The trapezius attaches the pectoral girdle to the cranium and vertebral column and assists in suspending the upper limb. The fibers of the trapezius are divided into three parts, which have different actions at the physiological scapulothoracic joint between the scapula and thoracic wall (Fig. 3.27; Table 3.5):

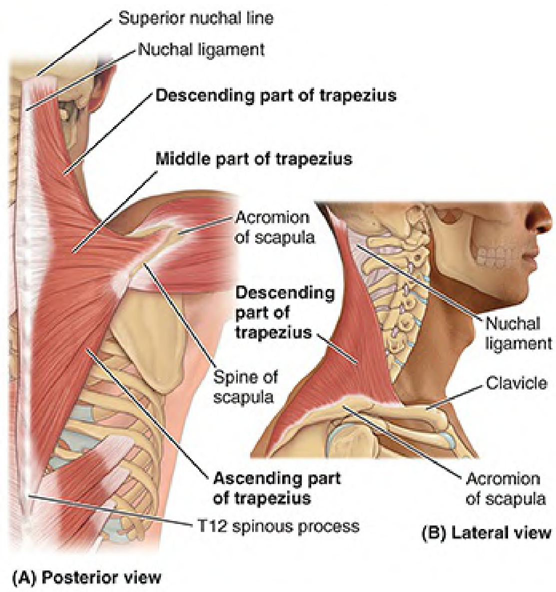


FIGURE 3.26. Trapezius. A. Overview. **B.** Descending part.

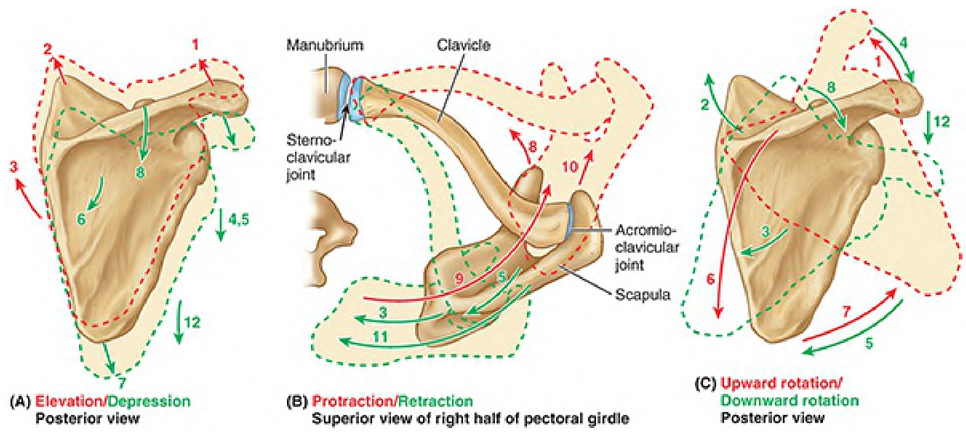


FIGURE 3.27. Movements of scapula and muscles producing them. Arrows indicate the direction of pull; the muscles (and gravity) producing each movement are identified by numbers, which are listed in Table 3.5.

TABLE 3.5. MOVEMENTS OF SCAPULA

Movement of Scapula	Muscles Producing Movement[a]	Nerve to Muscles	Range of Movement (Angular Rotation; Linear Displacement)
Elevation	**Trapezius, descending part** (1)	Spinal accessory (CN XI)	10–12 cm
	Levator scapulae (2) Rhomboids (3)	} Dorsal scapular	
Depression	**Gravity** (12) Pectoralis major, inferior sternocostal head (4) Latissimus dorsi (5) Trapezius, ascending part (6) Serratus anterior, inferior part (7) Pectoralis minor (8)	Pectoral nerves Thoracodorsal Spinal accessory (CN XI) Long thoracic Medial pectoral	

Protraction	**Serratus anterior** (9) Pectoralis major (10) Pectoralis minor (8)	Long thoracic Pectoral nerves Medial pectoral	40–45°; 15 cm
Retraction	**Trapezius, middle part** (11) Rhomboids (3) Latissimus dorsi (5)	Spinal accessory (CN XI) Dorsal scapular Thoracodorsal	
Upward rotation[b]	**Trapezius, descending part** (1) Trapezius, ascending part (6)	Spinal accessory (CN XI)	60°; inferior angle: 10–12 cm; superior angle: 5–6 cm
	Serratus anterior, inferior part (7)	Long thoracic	
Downward rotation[c]	Gravity (12) Levator scapulae (2) Rhomboids (3)	Dorsal scapular	
	Latissimus dorsi (5) Pectoralis minor (8) Pectoralis major, inferior sternocostal head (4)	Thoracodorsal Medial pectoral Medial and lateral pectoral nerves	

[a]Boldface indicates prime or essential mover(s). Numbers refer to Figure 3.27.

[b]The glenoid cavity moves superiorly, as in abduction of the arm.

[c]The glenoid cavity moves inferiorly, as in adduction of the arm.

- Descending (superior) fibers elevate the scapula (e.g., when squaring the shoulders).
- Middle fibers retract the scapula (i.e., pull it posteriorly).
- Ascending (inferior) fibers depress the scapula and lower the shoulder.

Descending and ascending trapezius fibers act together in rotating the scapula on the thoracic wall in different directions, twisting it. The trapezius also braces the shoulders by pulling the scapulae posteriorly and superiorly, fixing them in position on the thoracic wall with tonic contraction; consequently, weakness of the trapezius causes drooping of the shoulders.

To test the trapezius (or the function of the spinal accessory nerve [CN XI] that supplies it), the shoulder is shrugged against resistance (the person attempts to raise the shoulders as the examiner presses down on them). If the muscle is acting normally, the superior border of the muscle can be easily seen and palpated.

Latissimus Dorsi. The name **latissimus dorsi** (L., widest of back) was well chosen because this muscle covers a wide area of the back (Figs. 3.25 and 3.28; Table 3.4). This large fan-shaped muscle passes from the trunk to the humerus and acts directly on the glenohumeral joint and indirectly on the pectoral girdle (scapulothoracic joint). The latissimus dorsi extends, retracts, and rotates the humerus medially (e.g., when folding your arms behind your back or scratching the skin over the opposite scapula).

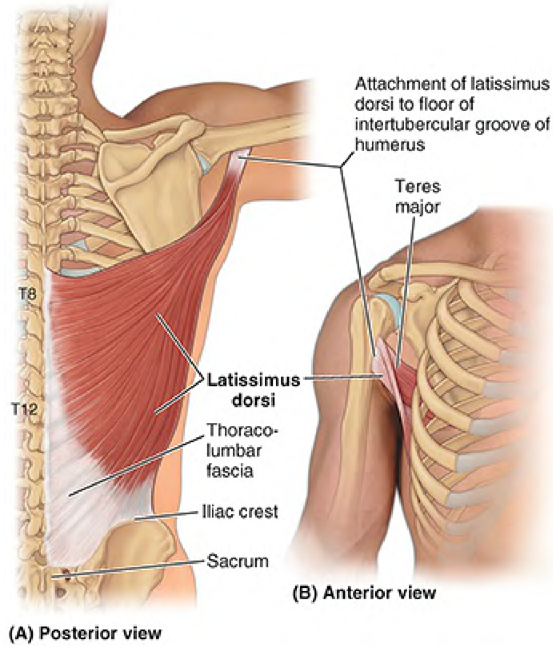


FIGURE 3.28. Latissimus dorsi. See Table 3.4 for details.

In combination with the pectoralis major, the latissimus dorsi is a powerful adductor of the humerus and plays a major role in downward rotation of the scapula in association with this movement (Fig. 3.27; Table 3.5). It is also useful in restoring the upper limb from abduction superior to the shoulder; hence, the latissimus dorsi is important in climbing. In conjunction with the pectoralis major, the latissimus dorsi raises the trunk to the arm, which occurs when performing chin-ups (hoisting oneself so the chin touches an overhead bar) or climbing a tree, for example. These movements are also used when chopping wood, paddling a canoe, and swimming (particularly during the crawl stroke).

To test the latissimus dorsi (or the function of the thoracodorsal nerve that supplies it), the arm is abducted 90° and then adducted against resistance provided by the examiner. If the muscle is normal, the anterior border of the muscle can be seen and easily palpated in the posterior axillary fold (see "Axilla" in this chapter).

DEEP POSTERIOR AXIO-APPENDICULAR (EXTRINSIC SHOULDER) MUSCLES

The **deep posterior axio-appendicular** (axioscapular or thoraco-appendicular) **muscles** are the levator scapulae and rhomboids. These muscles provide direct attachment of the appendicular skeleton to the axial skeleton. The attachments, nerve supply, and main actions are given in Table 3.4.

Levator Scapulae. The superior third of the strap-like **levator scapulae** lies deep to the sternocleidomastoid; the inferior third is deep to the trapezius. From the transverse processes of the upper cervical vertebrae, the fibers of the levator of the scapula pass inferiorly to the superomedial border of the scapula (Figs. 3.25 and 3.29; Table 3.4). True to its name, the levator

scapulae acts with the descending part of the trapezius to elevate the scapula or fix it (resists forces that would depress it, as when carrying a load) (Fig. 3.27; Table 3.5).

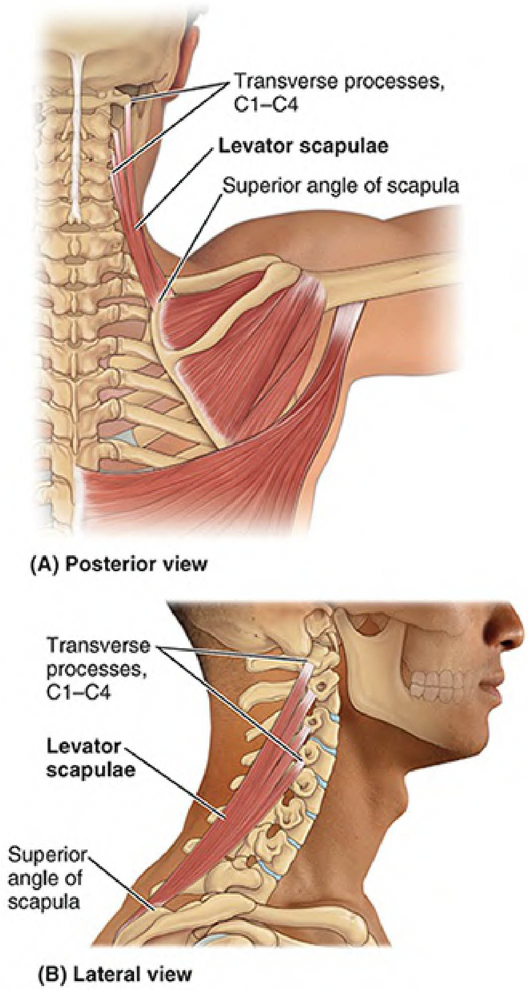


FIGURE 3.29. **Levator scapulae. A.** Levator in relation to deep scapular muscles. **B.** Isolated levator.

With the rhomboids and pectoralis minor, the levator scapulae rotates the scapula, depressing the glenoid cavity (tilting it inferiorly by rotating the scapula). Acting bilaterally (also with the trapezius), the levators extend the neck; acting unilaterally, the muscle may contribute to lateral flexion of the neck (toward the side of the active muscle).

Rhomboids. The **rhomboids** (major and minor), which are not always clearly separated from each other, have a rhomboid appearance—that is, they form an oblique equilateral parallelogram (Figs. 3.25 and 3.30; Table 3.4). The rhomboids lie deep to the trapezius and form broad parallel bands that pass inferolaterally from the vertebrae to the medial border of the scapula. The thin, flat **rhomboid major** is approximately two times wider than the thicker **rhomboid minor** lying superior to it.

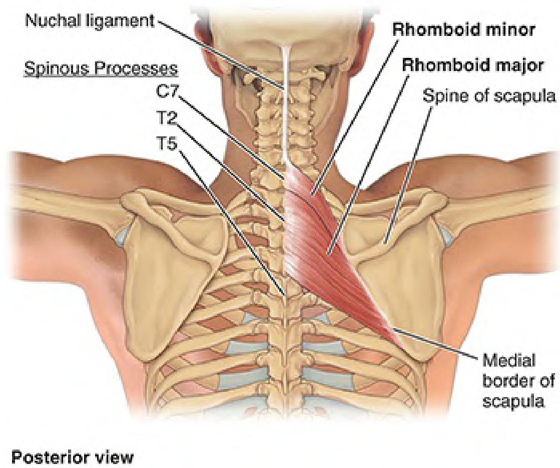


FIGURE 3.30. Rhomboids.

The rhomboids retract and rotate the scapula, depressing its glenoid cavity (Table 3.5). They also assist the serratus anterior in holding the scapula against the thoracic wall and fixing the scapula during movements of the upper limb. The rhomboids are used when forcibly lowering the raised upper limbs (e.g., when driving a stake with a sledge hammer).

To test the rhomboids (or the function of the dorsal scapular nerve that supplies them), the individual places his or her hands posteriorly on the hips and pushes the elbows posteriorly against resistance provided by the examiner. If the rhomboids are acting normally, they can be palpated along the medial borders of the scapulae; because they lie deep to the trapezius, they are unlikely to be visible during testing.

SCAPULOHUMERAL (INTRINSIC SHOULDER) MUSCLES

The six scapulohumeral muscles (deltoid, teres major, supraspinatus, infraspinatus, subscapularis, and teres minor) are relatively short muscles that pass from the scapula to the humerus and act on the glenohumeral joint. These muscles are illustrated in Figures 3.25 and 3.31, and their attachments, nerve supply, and main actions are summarized in Table 3.6.

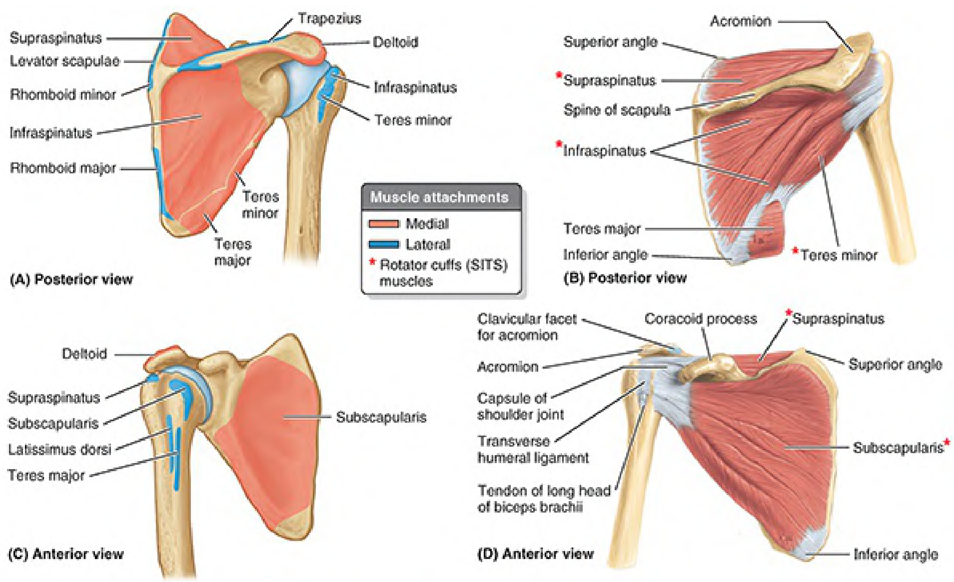


FIGURE 3.31. Scapulohumeral muscles. A–D. These muscles pass from the scapula to the humerus and act on the glenohumeral joint. Not included here is the deltoid, featured in Figure 3.32.

TABLE 3.6. SCAPULOHUMERAL (INTRINSIC SHOULDER) MUSCLES

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Muscle Action
Deltoid	Lateral third of clavicle; acromion and spine of scapula	Deltoid tuberosity of humerus	Axillary nerve (**C5**, C6)	Clavicular (anterior) part: flexes and medially rotates arm Acromial (middle) part: abducts arm Spinal (posterior) part: extends and laterally rotates arm
Supraspinatus[b]	Supraspinous fossa of scapula	Superior facet of greater tubercle of humerus	Suprascapular nerve (C4, **C5**, C6)	Initiates and assists deltoid in abduction of arm and acts with the other rotator cuff muscles[b]
Infraspinatus[b]	Infraspinous fossa of scapula	Middle facet of greater tubercle of humerus	Suprascapular nerve (**C5**, C6)	Laterally rotates arm; and acts with the other rotator cuff muscles[b]
Teres minor[b]	Middle part of lateral border of scapula	Inferior facet of greater tubercle of humerus	Axillary nerve (**C5**, C6)	Laterally rotates arm; and acts with the other rotator cuff muscles[b]
Teres major	Posterior surface of inferior angle of scapula	Medial lip of intertubercular sulcus of humerus	Lower subscapular nerve (C5, **C6**)	Adducts and medially rotates arm
Subscapularis[b]	Subscapular fossa (most of anterior surface of scapula)	Lesser tubercle of humerus	Upper and lower subscapular nerves (C5, **C6**, C7)	Medially rotates arm; as part of rotator cuff, helps hold head of humerus in glenoid cavity

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "**C5**, C6" means that the nerves supplying the deltoid are derived from the fifth and sixth cervical segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (e.g., **C5**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the

muscles concerned.

[b]Collectively, the supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, and subscapularis muscles are referred to as the rotator cuff, or SITS, muscles. Their primary function during all movements of the glenohumeral (shoulder) joint is to hold the humeral head in the glenoid cavity of the scapula.

Deltoid. The **deltoid** is a thick, powerful, coarse-textured muscle covering the shoulder and forming its rounded contour (Figs. 3.25 and 3.32; Table 3.6). As its name indicates, the deltoid is shaped like the inverted Greek letter delta (Δ). The muscle is divided into unipennate anterior and posterior parts and a multipennate middle part (see Fig. 1.18). The parts of the deltoid can act separately or as a whole. When all three parts of the deltoid contract simultaneously, the arm is abducted. The anterior and posterior parts act like guy ropes to steady the arm as it is abducted.

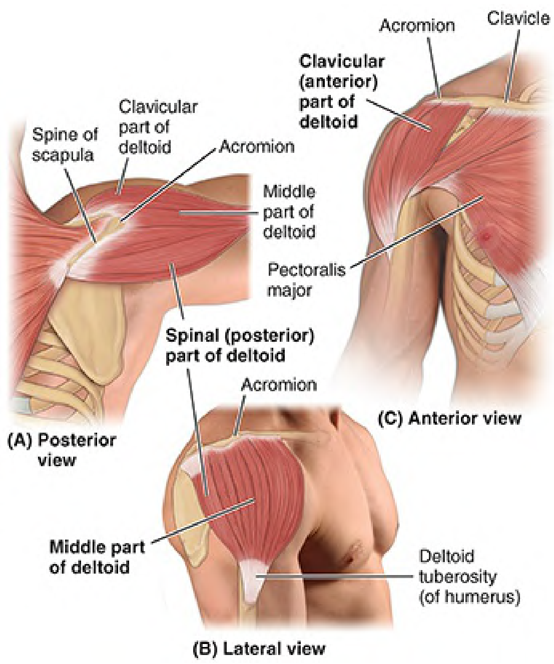


FIGURE 3.32. **Deltoid.**

To initiate movement during the first 15° of abduction, the deltoid is assisted by the supraspinatus (Fig. 3.31B, C). When the arm is fully adducted, the line of pull of the deltoid coincides with the axis of the humerus; thus, it pulls directly upward on the bone and cannot initiate or produce abduction. It is, however, able to act as a shunt muscle, resisting inferior displacement of the head of the humerus from the glenoid cavity, as when lifting and carrying suitcases. From the fully adducted position, abduction must be initiated by the supraspinatus, or by leaning to the side, allowing gravity to initiate the movement. The deltoid becomes fully effective as an abductor after the initial 15° of abduction.

The anterior and posterior parts of the deltoids are used to swing the limbs during walking. The anterior part assists the pectoralis major in flexing the arm, and the posterior part assists the latissimus dorsi in extending the arm. The deltoid also helps stabilize the glenohumeral joint and hold the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity during movements of the upper limb.

To test the deltoid (or the function of the axillary nerve that supplies it), the arm is abducted,

starting from approximately 15°, against resistance (Fig. 3.33). If acting normally, the deltoid can easily be seen and palpated. The influence of gravity is avoided when the person is supine.

FIGURE 3.33. **Testing deltoid muscle.** The examiner resists the patient's abduction of the limb by the deltoid. If the deltoid is acting normally, contraction of the middle part of the muscle can be palpated.

Teres Major. The **teres major** (L. teres, round) is a thick, rounded muscle passing laterally from the inferolateral third of the scapula (Figs. 3.25; 3.31A, B; and 3.34; see Fig. 3.38; Table 3.6). The inferior border of the teres major forms the inferior border of the lateral part of the posterior wall of the axilla. The teres major adducts and medially rotates the arm. It can also help extend it from the flexed position and is an important stabilizer of the humeral head in the glenoid cavity—that is, it steadies the head in its socket.

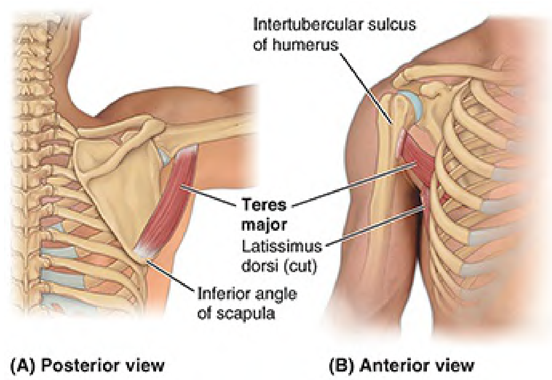


FIGURE 3.34. **Teres major.**

To test the teres major (or the lower subscapular nerve that supplies it), the abducted arm is adducted against resistance. If acting normally, the muscle can be easily seen and palpated in the posterior axillary fold (Fig. 3.36).

ROTATOR CUFF MUSCLES

Four of the scapulohumeral muscles (intrinsic shoulder muscles)—supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, and subscapularis (the SITS muscles)—are called **rotator cuff muscles** because they form a musculotendinous rotator cuff around the glenohumeral joint (Figs. 3.31B, D and

3.35). All except the supraspinatus are rotators of the humerus; the supraspinatus, besides being part of the rotator cuff, initiates and assists the deltoid in the first 15° of abduction of the arm.

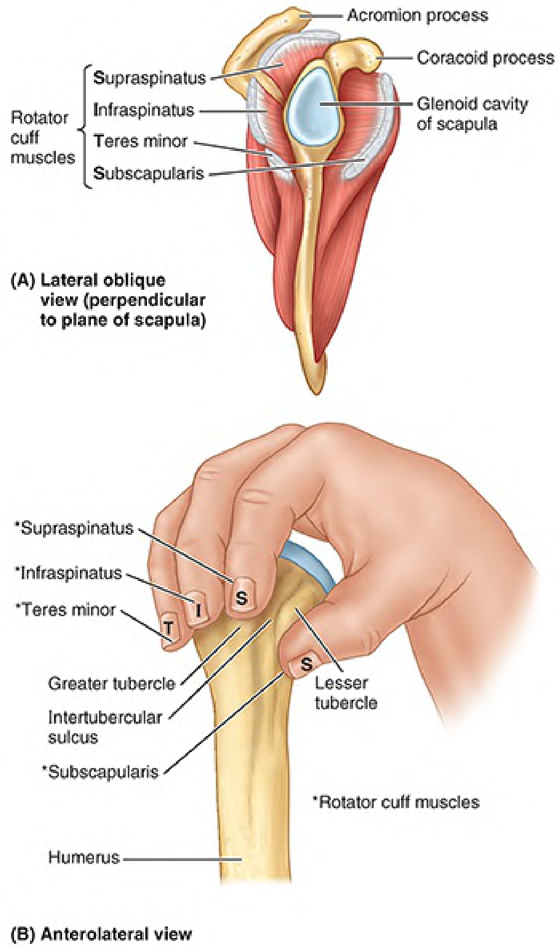


FIGURE 3.35. Disposition of rotator cuff muscles. A. Relationship to glenoid fossa. Coming from opposite sides and three separate fossae on the scapulae, the four rotator cuff (SITS) muscles pass laterally to engulf the head of the humerus. **B.** Attachments to greater and lesser tubercles. The primary combined function of the four SITS muscles is to "grasp" and pull the relatively large head of the humerus medially, holding it against the smaller, shallow glenoid cavity of the scapula. The tendons of the muscles (represented by three fingers and the thumb) blend with the fibrous layer of the capsule of the shoulder joint to form a musculotendinous rotator cuff, which reinforces the capsule on three sides (anteriorly, superiorly, and posteriorly) as it provides active support for the joint.

The tendons of the SITS muscles blend with and reinforce the fibrous layer of the joint capsule of the glenohumeral joint (Fig. 3.31D), thus forming the rotator cuff that protects the joint and gives it stability. The tonic contraction of the contributing muscles holds the relatively large head of the humerus in the small, shallow glenoid cavity of the scapula during arm movements. The rotator cuff (SITS) muscles and their attachments are illustrated in Figure 3.31, and their attachments, nerve supply, and main actions are listed in Table 3.6.

Supraspinatus. The **supraspinatus** occupies the supraspinous fossa of the scapula (Figs. 3.5A; 3.31A, B; and 3.35A). A bursa separates it from the lateral quarter of the fossa. (See "Deltoid" in this chapter for a discussion of this muscle's cooperative action in abducting the

upper limb.)

To test the supraspinatus, abduction of the arm is attempted from the fully adducted position against resistance, while the muscle is palpated superior to the spine of the scapula.

Infraspinatus. The **infraspinatus** occupies the medial three quarters of the infraspinous fossa (Fig. 3.5A) and is partly covered by the deltoid and trapezius. In addition to helping stabilize the glenohumeral joint, the infraspinatus is a powerful lateral rotator of the humerus.

To test the infraspinatus, the person flexes the elbow and adducts the arm. The arm is then laterally rotated against resistance. If acting normally, the muscle can be palpated inferior to the scapular spine. To test the function of the suprascapular nerve, which supplies the supraspinatus and infraspinatus, both muscles must be tested as described.

Teres Minor. The **teres minor** is a narrow, elongate muscle that is completely hidden by the deltoid and is often not clearly delineated from the infraspinatus. The teres minor works with the infraspinatus to rotate the arm laterally and assist in its adduction. The teres minor is most clearly distinguished from the infraspinatus by its nerve supply. The teres minor is supplied by the axillary nerve, whereas the infraspinatus is supplied by the suprascapular nerve (Table 3.6).

Subscapularis. The **subscapularis** is a thick, triangular muscle that lies on the costal surface of the scapula and forms part of the posterior wall of the axilla (Figs. 3.31C, D and 3.35A). It crosses the anterior aspect of the scapulohumeral joint on its way to the humerus. The subscapularis is the primary medial rotator of the arm and also adducts it. It joins the other rotator cuff muscles in holding the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity during all movements of the glenohumeral joint (i.e., it helps stabilize this joint during movements of the elbow, wrist, and hand).

Surface Anatomy of Pectoral, Scapular, and Deltoid Regions

The clavicle is the boundary demarcating the root of the neck from the thorax. It also indicates the “divide” between the deep cervical and axillary “lymph sheds” (like a mountain range dividing watershed areas): Lymph from structures superior to the clavicles drain via the deep cervical nodes, and lymph from structures inferior to the clavicles, as far inferiorly as the umbilicus, drain via the axillary lymph nodes.

The **infraclavicular fossa** is the depressed area just inferior to the lateral part of the clavicle (Fig. 3.36). This depression overlies the **clavipectoral (deltopectoral) triangle**—bounded by the clavicle superiorly, the pectoralis major medially, and the deltoid laterally—which may be evident in the fossa in lean individuals. The cephalic vein, ascending from the upper limb, enters the clavipectoral triangle and pierces the clavipectoral fascia to enter the axillary vein. The coracoid process of the scapula is not subcutaneous; it is covered by the anterior border of the deltoid; however, the tip of the process can be felt on deep palpation on the lateral aspect of the clavipectoral triangle. The coracoid process is used as a bony landmark when performing a brachial plexus block, and its position is of importance in diagnosing shoulder dislocations.

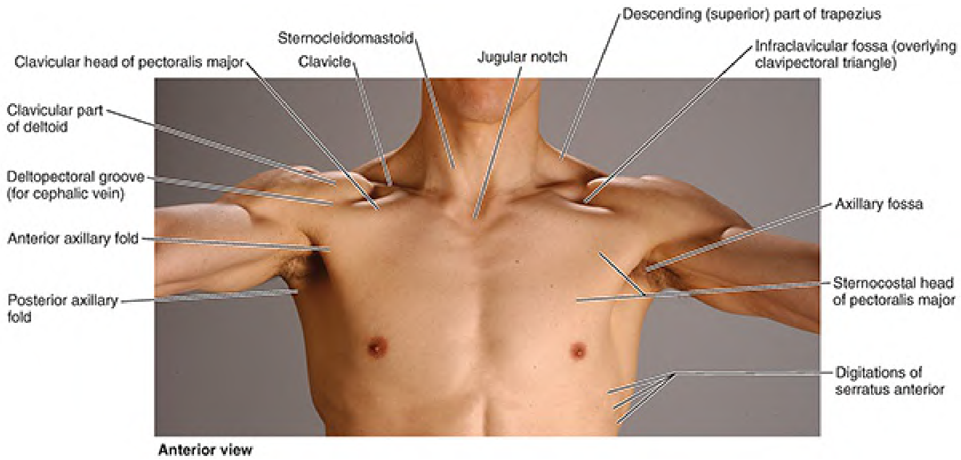


FIGURE 3.36. Surface anatomy of pectoral and deltoid regions.

While lifting a weight, palpate the anterior sloping border of the trapezius, and where its superior fibers attach to the lateral third of the clavicle. When the arm is abducted and then adducted against resistance, the sternocostal part of the pectoralis major can be seen and palpated. If the anterior axillary fold bounding the axilla is grasped between the fingers and thumb, the inferior border of the sternocostal head of the pectoralis major can be felt. Several digitations of the serratus anterior are visible inferior to the anterior axillary fold. The posterior axillary fold is composed of skin and muscular tissue (latissimus dorsi and teres major) bounding the axilla posteriorly.

The lateral border of the acromion may be followed posteriorly with the fingers until it ends at the acromial angle (Fig. 3.37A). Clinically, the length of the arm is measured from the acromial angle to the lateral condyle of the humerus. The spine of the scapula is subcutaneous throughout and is easily palpated as it extends medially and slightly inferiorly from the acromion (Fig. 3.37B). The root of the scapular spine (medial end) is located opposite the tip of the T3 spinous process when the arm is adducted. The medial border of the scapula may be palpated inferior to the root of the spine as it crosses ribs 3–7 (Fig. 3.37C). It may be visible in some people, especially thin people. The inferior angle of the scapula is easily palpated and is usually visible. Grasp the inferior scapular angle with the thumb and fingers and move the scapula up and down. When the arm is adducted, the inferior scapular angle is opposite the tip of the T7 spinous process and lies over the 7th rib or intercostal space.

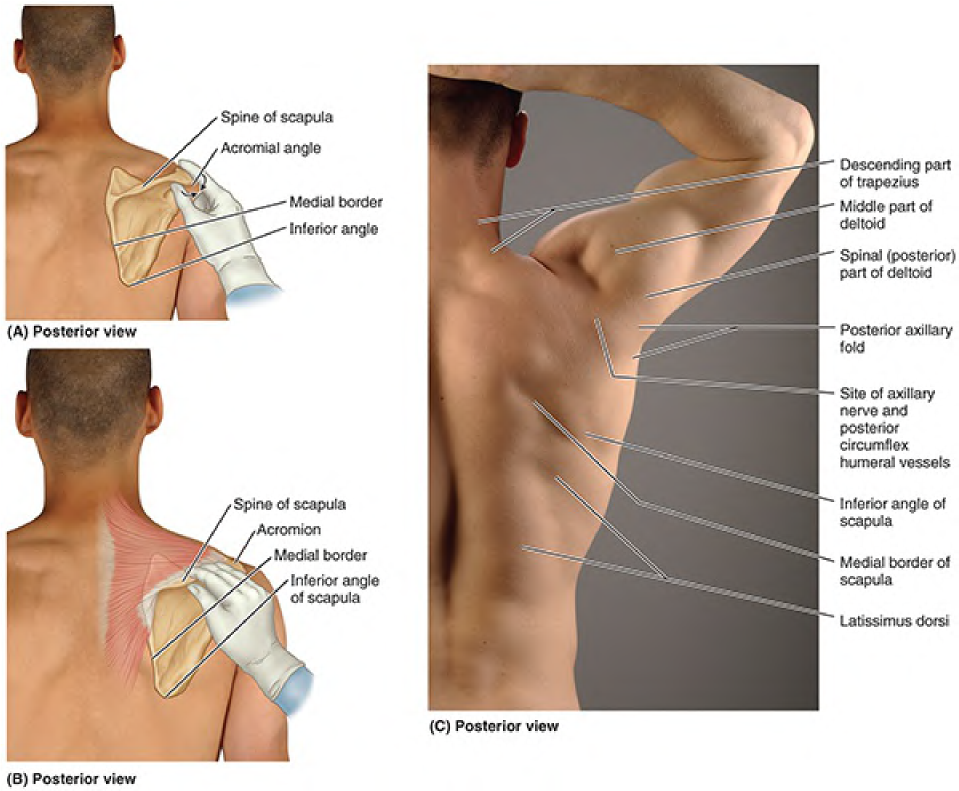


FIGURE 3.37. Surface anatomy of scapula and scapular region. A. Palpation of acromion. **B.** Palpation of spine of scapula. **C.** Surface features.

The **greater tubercle of the humerus** is the most lateral bony point in the shoulder when the arm is adducted, and may be felt on deep palpation through the deltoid inferior to the lateral border of the acromion. When the arm is abducted, observe that the greater tubercle disappears beneath the acromion and is no longer palpable. The **deltoid** covering the proximal part of the humerus forms the rounded muscular contour of the shoulder. The borders and parts of the deltoid are usually visible when the arm is abducted against resistance (Fig. 3.38). Loss of the rounded muscular appearance of the shoulder and the appearance of a surface depression distal to the acromion are characteristic of a dislocated shoulder, or dislocation of the glenohumeral joint. The depression results from displacement of the humeral head. The **teres major** is prominent when the abducted arm is adducted and medially rotated against resistance (e.g., when a gymnast stabilizes or fixes the shoulder joint during an iron cross maneuver on the rings).

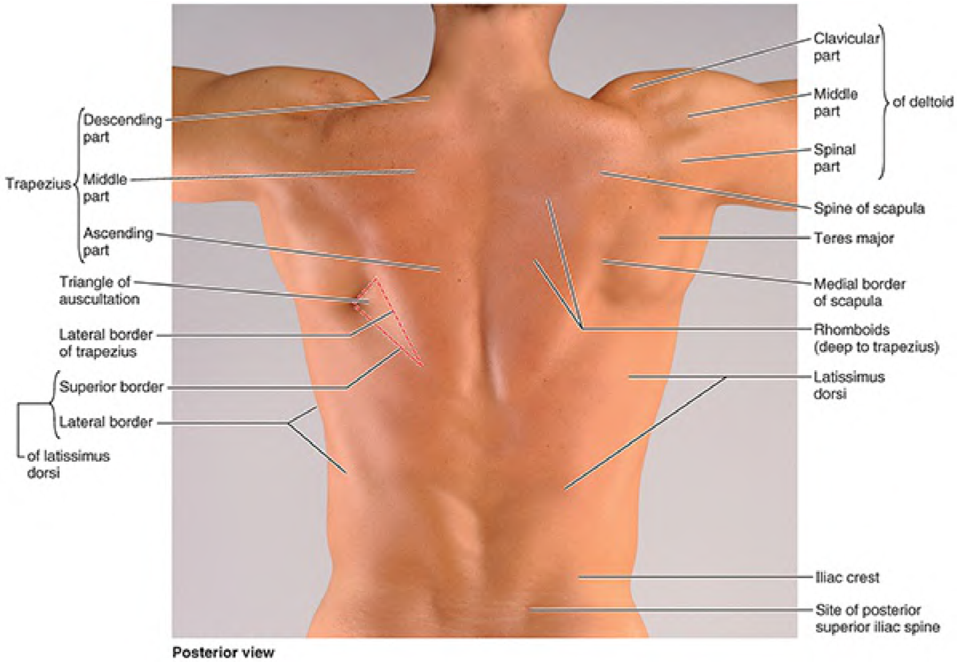


FIGURE 3.38. Surface anatomy of posterior axio-appendicular and scapulohumeral muscles.

When the upper limbs are abducted, the scapulae move laterally on the thoracic wall, enabling the rhomboid muscles to be palpated. Because they are deep to the trapezius, the rhomboids are not always visible. If the rhomboids of one side are paralyzed, the scapula on the affected side remains farther from the midline than on the normal side because the paralyzed muscles are unable to retract it.

CLINICAL BOX

PECTORAL, SCAPULAR, AND DELTOID REGIONS

Congenital Absence of a Body Part, Organ, or Tissue (Agenesis)

Failure of body part or organ to form, usually due to a lack of genetic signaling to produce primordial tissue and failure of subsequent development in the embryo, is referred to as agenesis of the particular structure. If the structure is vital (necessary for life), the fetus will not survive birth. Failure of a nonvital part usually allows survival with limitations that may range from slight to severe. Surgical reconstruction may enable normal or near-normal function and appearance to be established.

Historically, agenesis of a specific structure contributed to the understanding of the function of that structure and yielded insight about the body's ability to compensate and adapt, as well as the structure's normal role in influencing the development of other

regional or systemic structures. The absence of a muscle, for example, not only affects body form but also reveals the role that muscle usually plays in terms of movement and resting position, influencing the growth of the bones to which it is normally attached, as well as the role of opposing muscles and the potential for synergistic muscles to compensate. The result of muscular agenesis predicts the effects of muscular paralysis or surgical removal: inability to perform particular movements due to the absence of phasic contraction, and positioning at rest determined by the tonic contraction of the antagonists.

Poland syndrome is an uncommon but not rare unilateral congenital anomaly of upper limb development, the least severe form of which is agenesis of the pectoralis major (especially its sternocostal part) and pectoralis minor (Fig. B3.5). The anterior axillary fold, formed by the skin and fascia overlying the inferior border of the pectoralis major, is absent on the affected side, and the nipple is more inferior than usual. The functional disability is similar to the experienced by a woman following radical mastectomy (removal of the breast and pectoral muscles due to advanced breast cancer): weakened adduction and weakened extension of the flexed arm and ability to draw the shoulder anteriorly, and lateral rotation of the limb at rest. More severe forms of Poland syndrome involve breast hypoplasia (evident in childhood by the lack of a nipple), the absence of two to four rib segments (presenting the possibility of lung herniation), and additional developmental deficiencies in the free limb.

FIGURE B3.5. Poland syndrome. A young girl with a severe Poland syndrome with absence of the pectoralis muscles and nipple of the breast.

Injury of Long Thoracic Nerve and Paralysis of Serratus

Anterior

When the serratus anterior is paralyzed owing to injury to the long thoracic nerve (see Fig. 3.24), the medial border of the scapula moves laterally and posteriorly away from the thoracic wall. This gives the scapula the appearance of a wing, especially when the person leans on a hand or presses the upper limb against a wall. When the arm is raised, the medial border and inferior angle of the scapula pull markedly away from the posterior thoracic wall, a deformation known as a winged scapula (Fig. B3.6). In addition, the upper limb will not be able to elevate normally above the horizontal position because the serratus anterior is unable to upwardly rotate the scapula to position the glenoid cavity superiorly to allow complete abduction or elevation of the limb. Remember, the trapezius also helps raise the arm above the horizontal. Although protected when the limbs are at one's sides, the long thoracic nerve is exceptional in that it courses on the superficial aspect of the serratus anterior, which it supplies. Thus when the limbs are elevated, as in a knife fight, the nerve is especially vulnerable. Weapons, including bullets directed toward the thorax, are a common source of injury. It is also vulnerable during mastectomy surgery (removal of the breast associated with breast cancer).

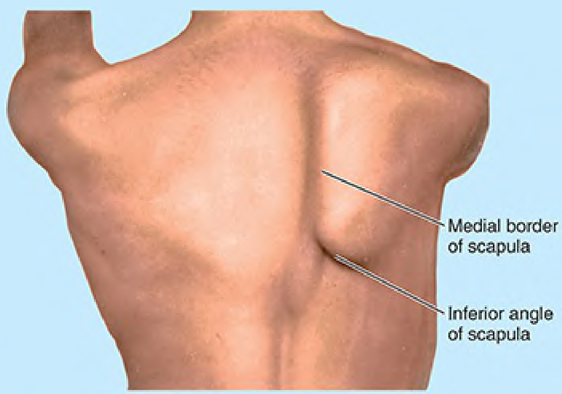


FIGURE B3.6. Right winged scapula.

Triangle of Auscultation

Near the inferior angle of the scapula is a small triangular gap in the musculature. The superior horizontal border of the latissimus dorsi, the medial border of the scapula, and the inferolateral border of the trapezius form a triangle of auscultation (see Figs. 3.25 and 3.38). This gap in the thick back musculature is a good place to examine posterior segments of the lungs with a stethoscope in a heavily muscled individual. When the scapulae are drawn anteriorly by folding the arms across the chest and the trunk is flexed, the triangle of auscultation enlarges.

Injury of Spinal Accessory Nerve (CN XI)

The primary clinical manifestation of spinal accessory nerve palsy is the presentation of a

“dropped” shoulder with a marked ipsilateral weakness when the shoulders are elevated (shrugged) against resistance. Injury of the spinal accessory nerve often occurs as a result of a traction injury such as whiplash, tumor, or cervical lymph node biopsy or surgical procedure at the posterior triangle. Injury of the spinal accessory nerve is discussed in greater detail in Chapters 9, Neck, and 10, Summary of Cranial Nerves.

Injury of Thoracodorsal Nerve

Surgery in the inferior part of the axilla puts the thoracodorsal nerve (C6–C8), supplying the latissimus dorsi, at risk of injury. This nerve passes inferiorly along the posterior wall of the axilla and enters the medial surface of the latissimus dorsi close to where it becomes tendinous (Fig. B3.7). The nerve is also vulnerable to injury during mastectomies when the axillary tail of the breast is removed. The nerve is also vulnerable during surgery on scapular lymph nodes because its terminal part lies anterior to them and the subscapular artery (Fig. B3.8).

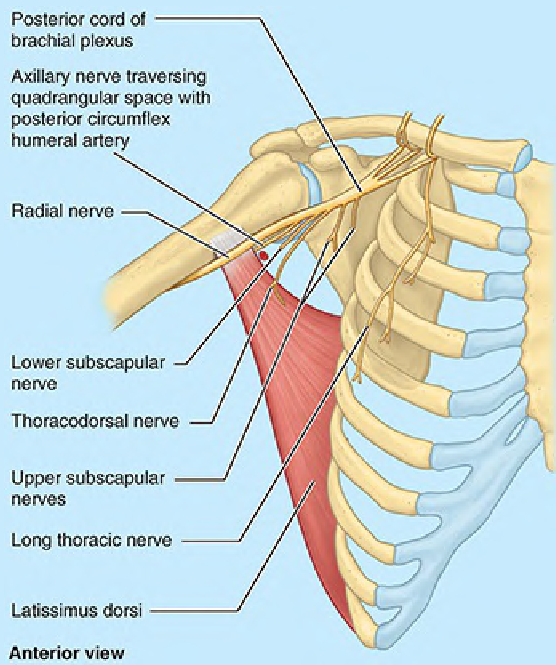


FIGURE B3.7. **Branches of posterior cord of brachial plexus, including thoracodorsal nerve.**

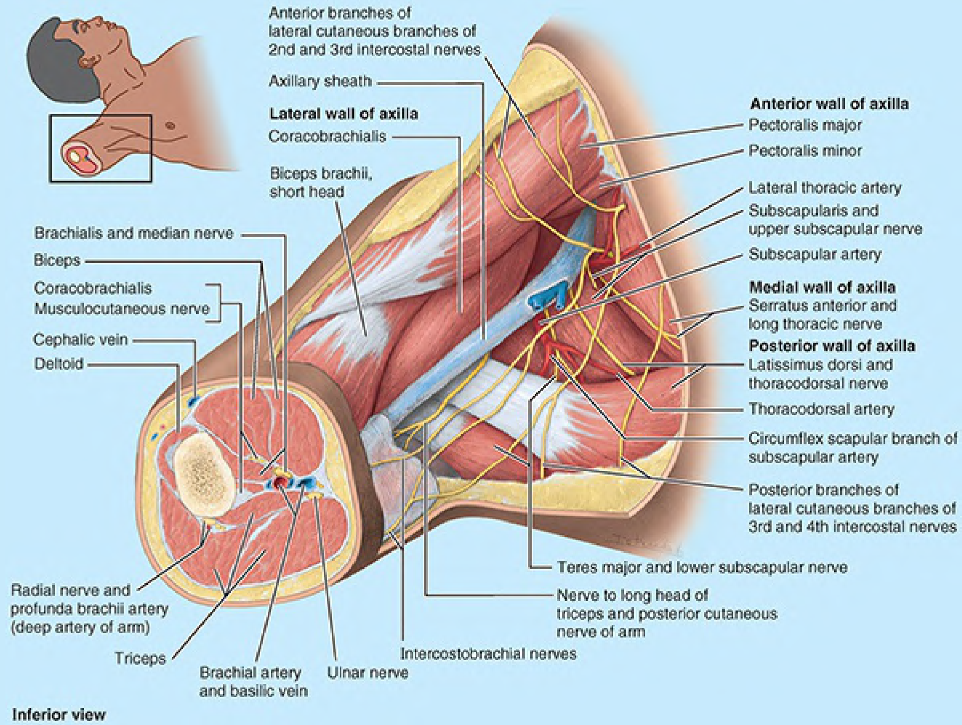


FIGURE B3.8. Nerves closely related to walls of axilla.

The latissimus dorsi and the inferior part of the pectoralis major form an anteroposterior muscular sling between the trunk and arm; however, the latissimus dorsi forms the more powerful part of the sling. With paralysis of the latissimus dorsi, the person is unable to raise the trunk with the upper limbs, as occurs during climbing. Furthermore, the person cannot use an axillary crutch because the shoulder is pushed superiorly by it. These are the primary activities for which active depression of the scapula is required; the passive depression provided by gravity is adequate for most activities.

Injury to Dorsal Scapular Nerve

Injury to the dorsal scapular nerve, the nerve to the rhomboid and levator scapulae muscles, affects the actions of these muscles. If the rhomboids on one side are paralyzed, the scapula on the affected side is located farther from the midline than that on the normal side.

Injury to Axillary Nerve

The deltoid and teres minor atrophy when the axillary nerve (C5 and C6) is severely damaged. Because it passes inferior to the humeral head and winds around the surgical neck of the humerus (Fig. B3.9A), the axillary nerve is usually injured during fracture of this part of the humerus. It may also be damaged during anterior dislocation of the glenohumeral joint and by compression from the incorrect use of crutches.

As the deltoid atrophies, the rounded contour of the shoulder is flattened compared to the uninjured side. This gives the shoulder a flattened appearance and produces a slight hollow inferior to the acromion. In addition to atrophy of the deltoid, a loss of sensation may occur over the lateral side of the proximal part of the arm, the area supplied by the superior lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm, the cutaneous branch of the axillary nerve (red in Fig. B3.9B).

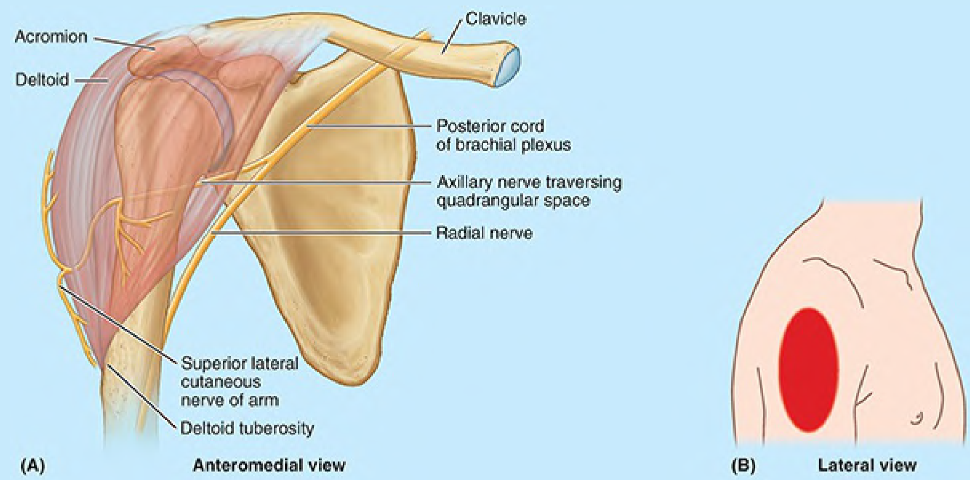
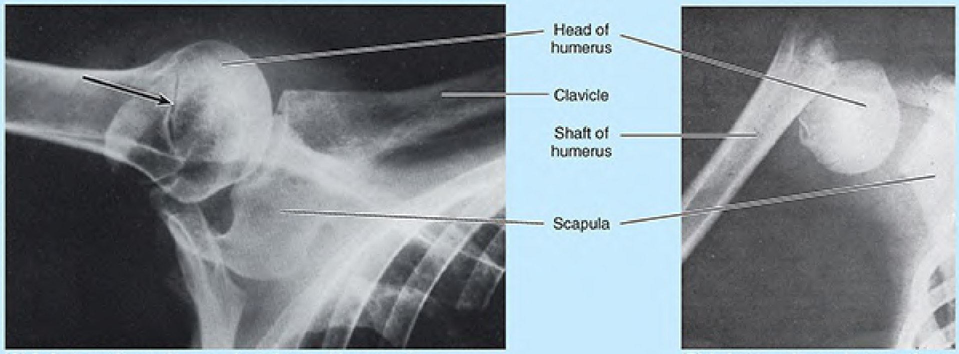


FIGURE B3.9. Injury of axillary nerve. A. Normal course of axillary nerve. **B.** Area of anesthesia (red) following injury to axillary nerve.

The deltoid is a common site for the intramuscular injection of drugs. The axillary nerve runs transversely under cover of the deltoid at the level of the surgical neck of the humerus (Fig. B3.9A). Awareness of its location also avoids injury to it during surgical approaches to the shoulder.

Fracture–Dislocation of Proximal Humeral Epiphysis

A direct blow or indirect injury of the shoulder of a child or adolescent may produce a fracture–dislocation of the proximal humeral epiphysis because the joint capsule of the glenohumeral joint, reinforced by the rotator cuff, is stronger than the epiphysial plate. In severe fractures, the shaft of the humerus is markedly displaced, but the humeral head retains its normal relationship with the glenoid cavity of the scapula (Fig. B3.10). Injuries to the epiphyses can retard growth of the affected part of the bone.



(A) Anterior radiograph, normal epiphysis of humerus in adolescent (*arrow*)

(B) Anterior radiograph, separation of humeral epiphysis

FIGURE B3.10. Fracture–dislocation of proximal humeral epiphysis.

Rotator Cuff Injuries

Injury or disease may damage the musculotendinous rotator cuff, producing instability of the glenohumeral joint. Trauma may tear or rupture one or more of the tendons of the rotator cuff muscles. The supraspinatus tendon is most commonly ruptured (Fig. B3.11).

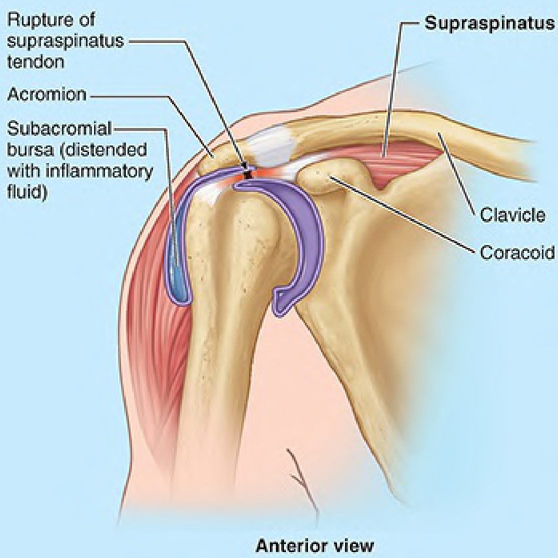


FIGURE B3.11. Rotator cuff injury.

Degenerative tendonitis of the rotator cuff is common, especially in older people. These syndromes are discussed in detail in relationship to the glenohumeral joint.

The Bottom Line: Muscles of Proximal Upper Limb

In terms of their attachments, the muscles of the proximal upper limb are axio-

appendicular or scapulothoracic.

Axio-appendicular muscles: The axio-appendicular muscles serve to position the base from which the upper limb will be extended and function relative to the trunk. ■ These muscles consist of anterior, superficial posterior, and deep posterior groups. ■ The groups work antagonistically to elevate–depress and protract–retract the entire scapula, or rotate it to elevate or depress the glenoid cavity and glenohumeral joint (see Table 3.5). ■ These movements extend the functional range of movements that occur at the glenohumeral joint. ■ All of these movements involve both the clavicle and the scapula; the limits to all movements of the latter are imposed by the former, which provides the only attachment to the axial skeleton. ■ Most of these movements involve the cooperation of a number of muscles with different innervations. Therefore, single nerve injuries typically weaken, but do not eliminate, most movements. ■ Notable exceptions are upward rotation of the lateral angle of the scapula (superior trapezius/spinal accessory nerve only) and lateral rotation of the inferior angle of the scapula (inferior serratus anterior/long thoracic nerve only).

Scapulohumeral muscles: The scapulohumeral muscles (deltoid, teres major, and SITS muscles), along with certain axio-appendicular muscles, act in opposing groups to position the proximal strut of the upper limb (the humerus), producing abduction–adduction, flexion–extension, medial–lateral rotation, and circumduction of the arm. ■ This establishes the height, distance from the trunk, and direction from which the forearm and hand will operate. ■ Essentially, all movements produced by the scapulohumeral muscles at the glenohumeral joint are accompanied by movements produced by axio-appendicular muscles at the sternoclavicular and scapulothoracic joints, especially beyond the initial stages of the movement. ■ A skilled examiner, knowledgeable in anatomy, can manually fix or position the limb to isolate and test distinctive portions of specific upper limb movements. ■ The SITS muscles contribute to the formation of the rotator cuff, which both rotates the humeral head (abducting and medially and laterally rotating the humerus) and holds it firmly against the shallow socket of the glenoid cavity, increasing the integrity of the glenohumeral joint capsule.

AXILLA

The **axilla** is the pyramidal space inferior to the glenohumeral joint and superior to the axillary fascia at the junction of the arm and thorax (Fig. 3.39). The axilla provides a passageway, or “distribution center,” usually protected by the adducted upper limb, for the neurovascular structures that serve the upper limb. From this distribution center, neurovascular structures pass

- superiorly via the cervico-axillary canal to (or from) the root of the neck (Fig. 3.39A)
- anteriorly via the clavipectoral triangle to the pectoral region (Fig. 3.39D)

- inferiorly and laterally into the limb itself
- posteriorly via the quadrangular space to the scapular region
- inferiorly and medially along the thoracic wall to the inferiorly placed axio-appendicular muscles (serratus anterior and latissimus dorsi)

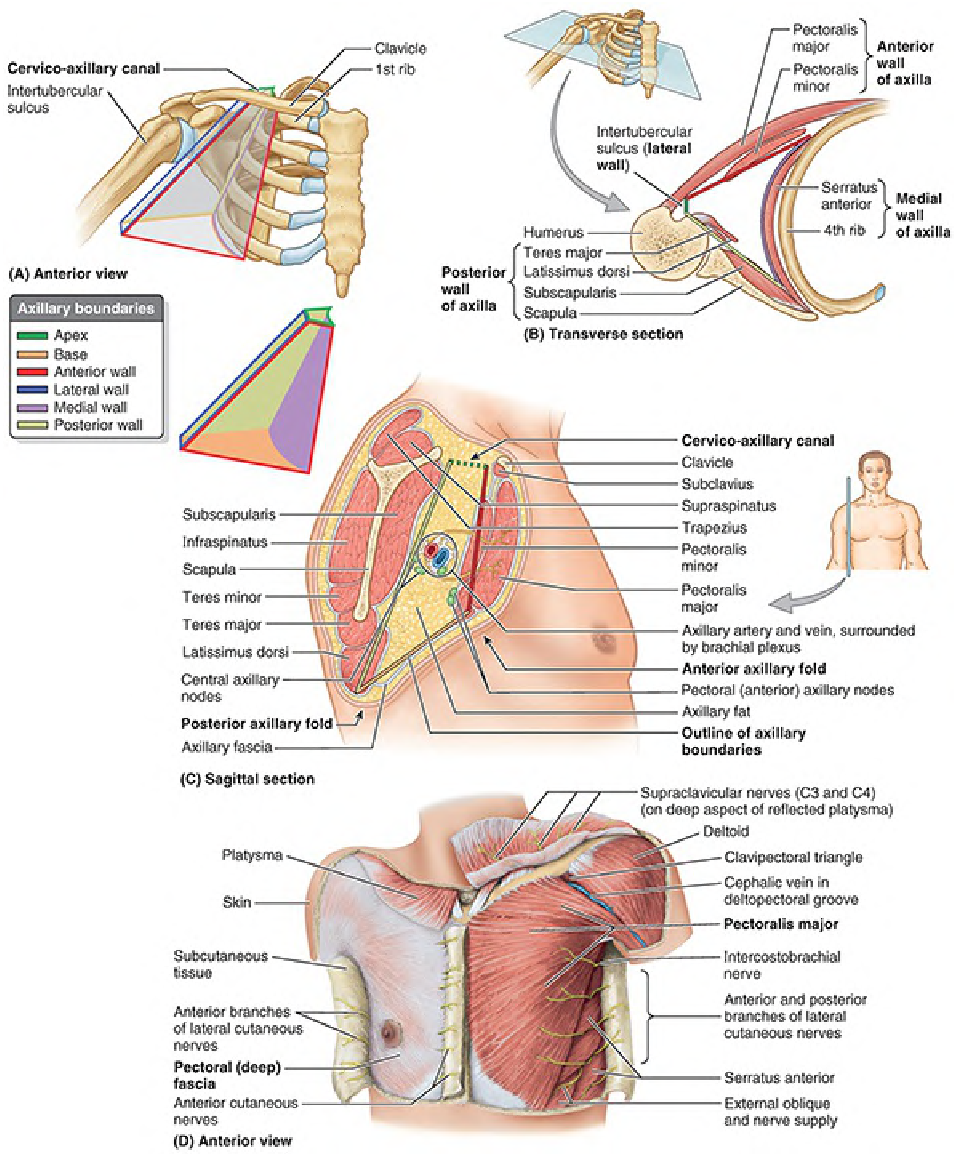


FIGURE 3.39. Location, boundaries, and contents of axilla. A. Boundaries of axilla. The axilla is a space inferior to the glenohumeral joint and superior to the skin of the axillary fossa at the junction of the arm and thorax. **B.** Muscular walls of axilla. The small, lateral bony wall of the axilla is the intertubercular sulcus of the humerus. **C.** Contents of axilla. The scapular and pectoral muscles form its posterior and anterior walls, respectively. The inferior border of the pectoralis major forms the anterior axillary fold, and the latissimus dorsi and teres major form the posterior axillary fold. **D.** Superficial dissection of pectoral region. The platysma is reflected superiorly on the left side, together with the supraclavicular nerves, so that the clavicular attachments of the pectoralis major and deltoid muscles can be seen.

The shape and size of the axilla varies, depending on the position of the arm. It flattens when the arm is fully abducted—a position in which its contents are vulnerable. A “tickle reflex” causes most people to rapidly resume the protected position when invasion threatens.

The axilla has an apex, base, and four walls (three of which are muscular):

- The apex of the axilla is the **cervico-axillary** canal, the passageway between the neck and axilla, bounded by the 1st rib, clavicle, and superior border of the scapula. The arteries, veins, lymphatics, and nerves traverse this superior opening of the axilla to pass to or from the arm (Fig. 3.39A).
- The base of the axilla is formed by the concave skin, subcutaneous tissue, and axillary (deep) fascia extending from the arm to the thoracic wall (approximately the 4th rib level), forming the **axillary fossa** (armpit). The base of the axilla and axillary fossa are bounded by the anterior and posterior axillary folds, the thoracic wall, and the medial aspect of the arm (Fig. 3.39C).
- The anterior wall of the axilla has two layers, formed by the pectoralis major and pectoralis minor and the pectoral and clavicopectoral fascia associated with them (Figs. 3.13B and 3.39B, C). The **anterior axillary fold** is the inferiormost part of the anterior wall that may be grasped between the fingers. It is formed by the pectoralis major, as it bridges from thoracic wall to humerus, and the overlying integument (Fig. 3.39C, D).
- The posterior wall of the axilla is formed chiefly by the scapula and subscapularis on its anterior surface and inferiorly by the teres major and latissimus dorsi (Fig. 3.39B, C). The **posterior axillary fold** is the inferiormost part of the posterior wall that may be grasped. It extends farther inferiorly than the anterior wall and is formed by latissimus dorsi, teres major, and overlying integument.
- The medial wall of the axilla is formed by the thoracic wall (1st–4th ribs and intercostal muscles) and the overlying serratus anterior (Fig. 3.39A, B).
- The lateral wall of the axilla is a narrow bony wall formed by the intertubercular sulcus of the humerus.

The axilla contains axillary blood vessels (axillary artery and its branches, axillary vein and its tributaries), lymphatic vessels, and groups of axillary lymph nodes, all embedded in a matrix of axillary fat (Fig. 3.39C). The axilla also contains large nerves that make up the cords and branches of the brachial plexus, a network of interjoining nerves that pass from the neck to the upper limb (Fig. 3.40B). Proximally, these neurovascular structures are ensheathed in a sleeve-like extension of the cervical fascia, the **axillary sheath** (Fig. 3.40A).

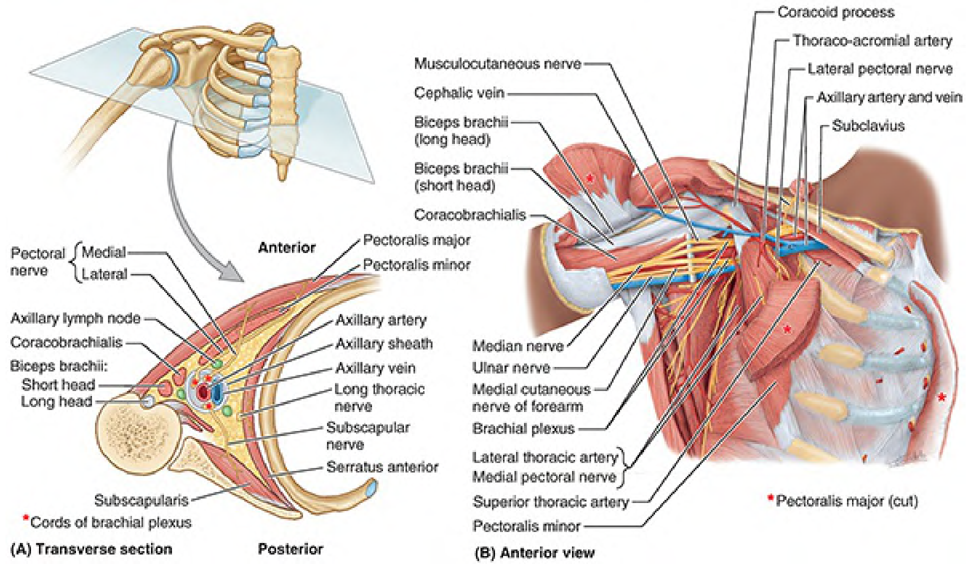


FIGURE 3.40. Contents of axilla. A. Axillary sheath. The axillary sheath encloses the axillary artery and vein and the three cords of the brachial plexus. The innervation of the muscular walls of the axilla is also shown. The tendon of biceps brachii slides within the intertubercular sulcus. **B.** Dissection. Most of the pectoralis major has been removed. The clavipectoral fascia, axillary fat, and axillary sheath have been completely removed. The brachial plexus of nerves surrounds the axillary artery on its lateral and medial aspects (appearing here to be its superior and inferior aspects because the limb is abducted) and on its posterior aspect (not visible from this view). Figure 3.24 is an enlarged view of part **B**.

Axillary Artery

The **axillary artery** begins at the lateral border of the 1st rib as the continuation of the subclavian artery and ends at the inferior border of the teres major (Fig. 3.41). It passes posterior to the pectoralis minor into the arm and becomes the brachial artery when it passes the inferior border of the teres major, at which point it usually has reached the humerus (Fig. 3.41). For descriptive purposes, the axillary artery is divided into three parts by the pectoralis minor (the part number also indicates the number of its branches):

1. The **first part of the axillary artery** is located between the lateral border of the 1st rib and the medial border of the pectoralis minor. It is enclosed in the axillary sheath and has one branch—the superior thoracic artery (Figs. 3.40B and 3.41A; Table 3.7).
2. The **second part of the axillary artery** lies posterior to pectoralis minor and has two branches—the thoracoacromial and lateral thoracic arteries—which pass medial and lateral to the muscle, respectively.
3. The **third part of the axillary artery** extends from the lateral border of pectoralis minor to the inferior border of teres major; it has three branches. The subscapular artery is the largest branch of the axillary artery. Opposite the origin of this artery, the anterior circumflex humeral and posterior circumflex humeral arteries arise, sometimes by means of a common trunk.

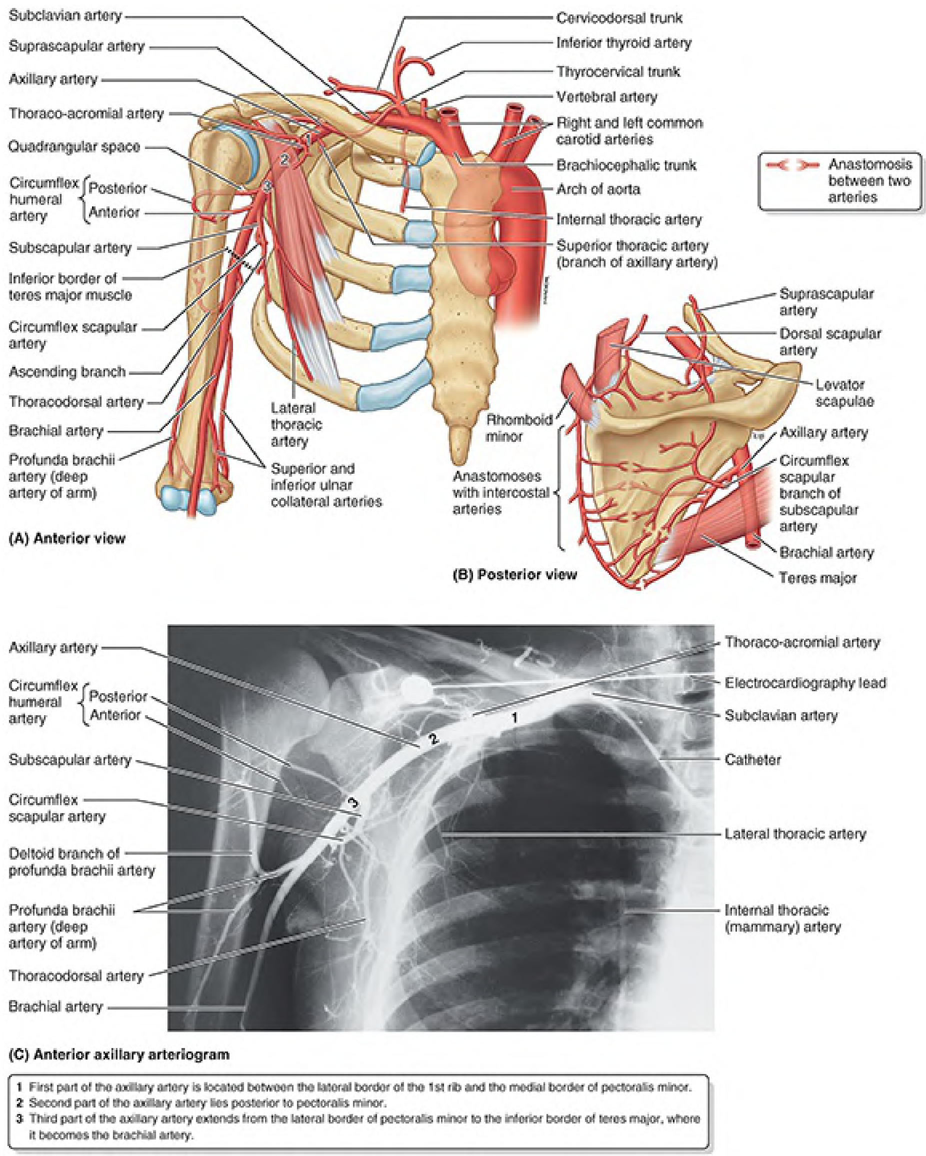


FIGURE 3.41. Arteries of proximal upper limb.

TABLE 3.7. ARTERIES OF PROXIMAL UPPER LIMB (SHOULDER REGION AND ARM)

Artery	Origin		Course
Internal thoracic	Inferior surface of the first part	Subclavian artery	Descends, inclining anteromedially, posterior to sternal end of clavicle and first costal cartilage; enters thorax to descend in parasternal plane; gives rise to perforating branches, anterior intercostal, musculophrenic, and superior epigastric arteries
Thyrocervical trunk	Anterior surface of first part		Ascends as a short, stout trunk, giving rise to four branches: suprascapular, ascending cervical, inferior thyroid arteries, and the cervicodorsal trunk
Suprascapular	Thyrocervical trunk (or as direct branch		Passes inferolaterally crossing anterior scalene muscle,

	of subclavian artery)		phrenic nerve, subclavian artery, and brachial plexus running laterally posterior and parallel to clavicle; next it passes over transverse scapular ligament to supraspinous fossa; then lateral to scapular spine (deep to acromion) to infraspinous fossa on posterior surface of scapula
Superior thoracic	First part (as only branch)		Runs anteromedially along superior border of pectoralis minor; then passes between it and pectoralis major to thoracic wall; helps supply 1st and 2nd intercostal spaces and superior part of serratus anterior
Thoraco-acromial	Second part (first branch)		Curls around superomedial border of pectoralis minor; pierces costocoracoid membrane (clavipectoral fascia); divides into four branches: pectoral, deltoid, acromial, and clavicular
Lateral thoracic	Second part (second branch)	Axillary artery	Descends along axillary border of pectoralis minor; follows it onto thoracic wall, supplying lateral aspect of breast
Circumflex humeral (anterior and posterior)	Third part (sometimes via a common trunk)		Encircle surgical neck of humerus, anastomosing with each other laterally; larger posterior branch traverses quadrangular space
Subscapular	Third part (largest branch of any part)		Descends from level of inferior border of subscapularis along lateral border of scapula, dividing within 2–3 cm into terminal branches, the circumflex scapular and thoracodorsal arteries
Circumflex scapular	Subscapular artery		Curves around lateral border of scapula to enter infraspinous fossa, anastomosing with suprascapular artery
Thoracodorsal			Continues course of subscapular artery, descending with thoracodorsal nerve to enter apex of latissimus dorsi
Profunda brachii (deep artery of arm)	Near its origin		Accompanies radial nerve along radial groove of humerus, supplying posterior compartment of arm and participating in peri-articular arterial anastomosis around elbow joint
Superior ulnar collateral	Near middle of arm	Brachial artery	Accompanies ulnar nerve to posterior aspect of elbow; anastomoses with posterior ulnar recurrent artery
Inferior ulnar collateral	Superior to medial epicondyle of humerus		Passes anterior to medial epicondyle of humerus to anastomose with anterior ulnar collateral artery

The branches of the axillary artery are illustrated in Figure 3.41, and their origin and course are described in Table 3.7.

The **superior thoracic artery** is a small, highly variable vessel that arises just inferior to the subclavius (Fig. 3.41A). It commonly runs inferomedially posterior to the axillary vein and supplies the subclavius, muscles in the 1st and 2nd intercostal spaces, superior slips of the serratus anterior, and overlying pectoral muscles. It anastomoses with the intercostal and/or internal thoracic arteries.

The **thoraco-acromial artery**, a short wide trunk, pierces the costocoracoid membrane and divides into four branches (acromial, deltoid, pectoral, and clavicular), deep to the clavicular head of the pectoralis major (Fig. 3.42).

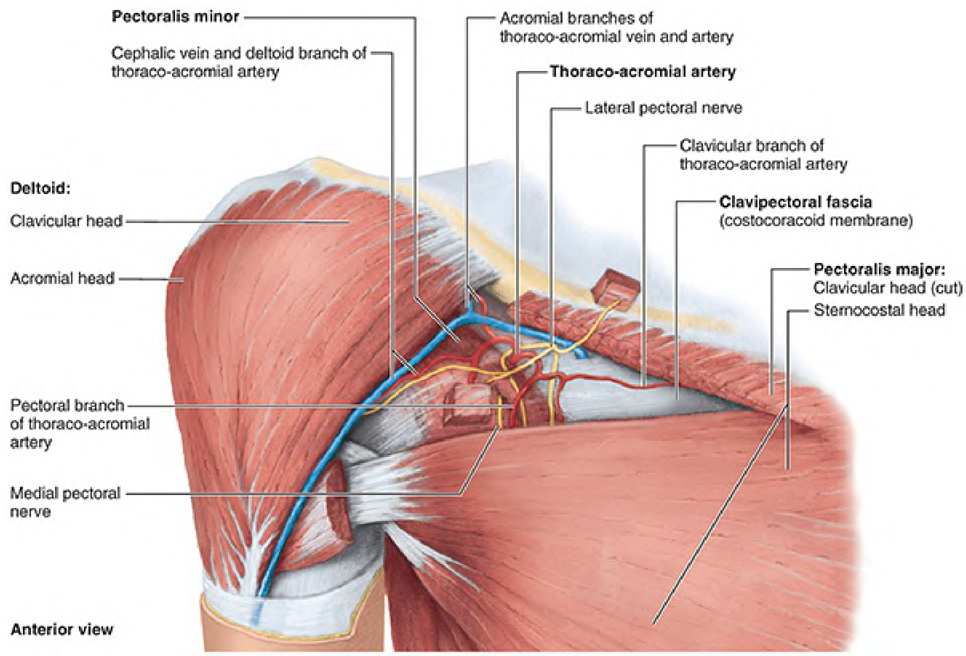


FIGURE 3.42. Anterior wall of axilla. The clavicular head of the pectoralis major is excised except for its clavicular and humeral attaching ends and two cubes, which remain to identify its nerves.

The **lateral thoracic artery** has a variable origin. It usually arises as the second branch of the second part of the axillary artery and descends along the lateral border of the pectoralis minor, following it onto the thoracic wall (Figs. 3.40B and 3.41A); however, it may arise instead from the thoraco-acromial, suprascapular, or subscapular arteries. The lateral thoracic artery supplies the pectoral, serratus anterior, and intercostal muscles; the axillary lymph nodes; and the lateral aspect of the breast.

The **subscapular artery**, the branch of the axillary artery with the greatest diameter but shortest length, descends along the lateral border of the subscapularis on the posterior axillary wall. It soon terminates by dividing into the circumflex scapular and thoracodorsal arteries.

The **circumflex scapular artery**, often the larger terminal branch of the subscapular artery, curves posteriorly around the lateral border of the scapula, passing posteriorly between the subscapularis and teres major to supply muscles on the dorsum of the scapula (Fig. 3.41B). It participates in the anastomoses around the scapula.

The **thoracodorsal artery** continues the general course of the subscapular artery to the inferior angle of the scapula and supplies adjacent muscles, principally the latissimus dorsi (Fig. 3.41A, C). It also participates in the arterial anastomoses around the scapula.

The circumflex humeral arteries encircle the surgical neck of the humerus, anastomosing with each other. The smaller **anterior circumflex humeral artery** passes laterally, deep to the coracobrachialis and biceps brachii. It gives off an ascending branch that supplies the shoulder.

The larger **posterior circumflex humeral artery** passes medially through the posterior wall of the axilla via the **quadrangular space** with the axillary nerve to supply the glenohumeral joint and surrounding muscles (e.g., the deltoid, teres major and minor, and long head of the triceps) (Fig. 3.41A, C; Table 3.7).

Axillary Vein

The **axillary vein** lies initially (distally) on the anteromedial side of the axillary artery, with its terminal part antero-inferior to the artery (Fig. 3.43). This large vein is formed by the union of the brachial vein (the accompanying veins of the brachial artery) and the basilic vein at the inferior border of the teres major.

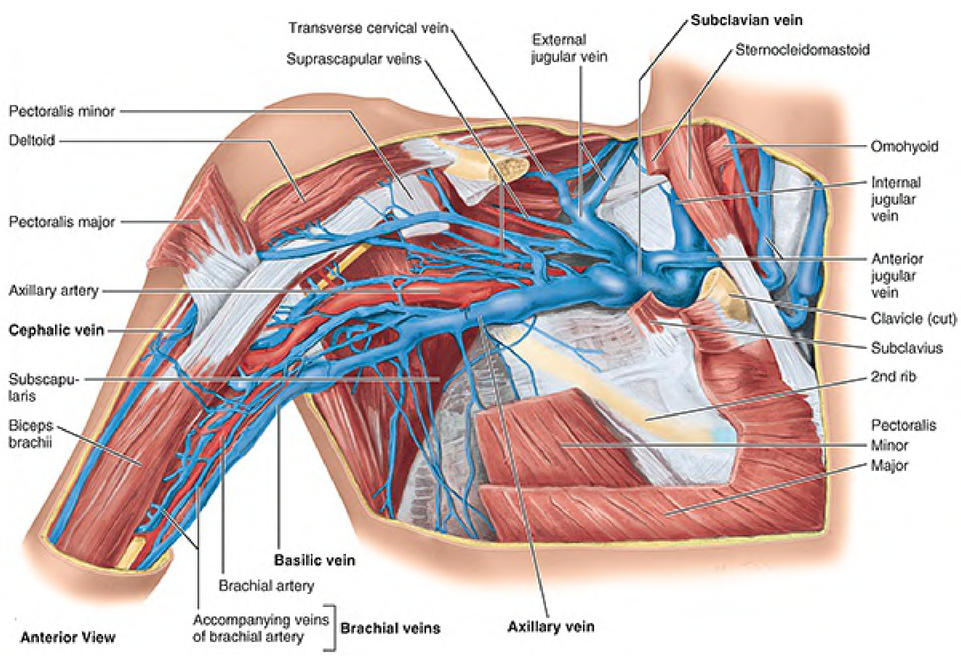


FIGURE 3.43. Veins of axilla. The basilic vein parallels the brachial artery to the axilla, where it merges with the accompanying veins (L. venae comitantes) of the axillary artery to form the axillary vein. The large number of smaller, highly variable veins in the axilla are also tributaries of the axillary vein.

The axillary vein has three parts, which correspond to the three parts of the axillary artery. Thus, the initial, distal end is the third part, whereas the terminal, proximal end is the first part. The axillary vein (first part) ends at the lateral border of the 1st rib, where it becomes the **subclavian vein**. The veins of the axilla are more abundant than the arteries, are highly variable, and frequently anastomose. The axillary vein receives tributaries that generally correspond to branches of the axillary artery with a few major exceptions:

- The veins corresponding to the branches of the thoraco-acromial artery do not merge to enter by a common tributary; some enter independently into the axillary vein, but others empty into the cephalic vein, which then enters the axillary vein superior to the pectoralis minor, close to its transition into the subclavian vein.
- The axillary vein receives, directly or indirectly, the thoraco-epigastric vein(s), which is(are)

formed by the anastomoses of superficial veins from the inguinal region with tributaries of the axillary vein (usually the lateral thoracic vein). These veins constitute a collateral route that enables venous return in the presence of obstruction of the inferior vena cava (see the Clinical Box "Collateral Routes for Abdominopelvic Venous Blood" in Chapter 5).

Axillary Lymph Nodes

The fibrofatty connective tissue of the axilla (axillary fat) contains many lymph nodes. The axillary lymph nodes are arranged in five principal groups: pectoral, subscapular, humeral, central, and apical. The groups are arranged in a manner that reflects the pyramidal shape of the axilla (see Fig. 3.39A). Three groups of axillary nodes are related to the triangular base, one group at each corner of the pyramid (Fig. 3.44A, C).

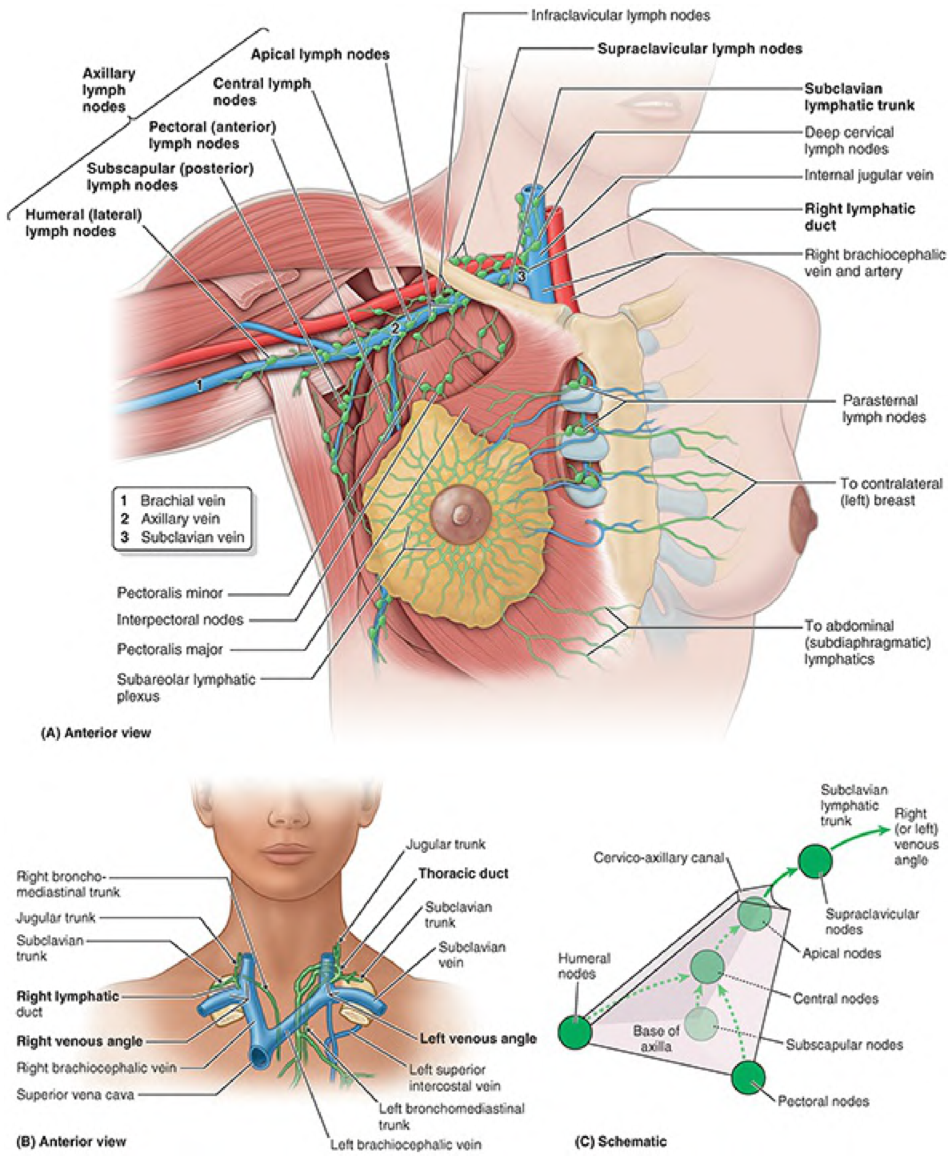


FIGURE 3.44. Axillary lymph nodes and lymphatic drainage of right upper limb and breast. A. Overview of five

groups of axillary lymph nodes. Most lymphatic vessels from the upper limb terminate in the humeral (lateral) and central lymph nodes. However, those accompanying the upper part of the cephalic vein terminate in the apical lymph nodes. The lymphatics of the breast are discussed in Chapter 4, Thorax. **B.** Thoracic and right lymphatic ducts. Lymph passing through the axillary nodes enters efferent lymphatic vessels that form the subclavian lymphatic trunk, which usually empties into the junctions of the internal jugular and subclavian veins (the venous angles). Occasionally, on the right side, this trunk merges with the jugular lymphatic and/or bronchomediastinal trunks to form a short right lymphatic duct. On the left side, it usually enters the termination of the thoracic duct. **C.** Location of axillary lymph nodes. The positions of the five groups of axillary nodes, relative to each other and the pyramidal axilla. The typical pattern of drainage is indicated.

The **pectoral (anterior) nodes** consist of three to five nodes that lie along the medial wall of the axilla, around the lateral thoracic vein and the inferior border of the pectoralis minor. The pectoral nodes receive lymph mainly from the anterior thoracic wall, including most of the breast (especially the superolateral [upper outer] quadrant and subareolar plexus; see Chapter 4, Thorax).

The **subscapular (posterior) nodes** consist of six or seven nodes that lie along the posterior axillary fold and subscapular blood vessels. These nodes receive lymph from the posterior aspect of the thoracic wall and scapular region.

The **humeral (lateral) nodes** consist of four to six nodes that lie along the lateral wall of the axilla, medial and posterior to the axillary vein. These nodes receive nearly all the lymph from the upper limb, except that carried by lymphatic vessels accompanying the cephalic vein, which primarily drain directly to the apical axillary and infraclavicular nodes.

Efferent lymphatic vessels from these three groups pass to the **central nodes**. There are three or four of these large nodes situated deep to the pectoralis minor near the base of the axilla, in association with the second part of the axillary artery. Efferent vessels from the central nodes pass to the **apical nodes**, which are located at the apex of the axilla along the medial side of the axillary vein and the first part of the axillary artery.

The apical nodes receive lymph from all other groups of axillary nodes as well as from lymphatics accompanying the proximal cephalic vein. Efferent vessels from the apical group traverse the cervico-axillary canal.

These efferent vessels ultimately unite to form the **subclavian lymphatic trunk**, although some vessels may drain en route through the **clavicular** (**infraclavicular and supraclavicular**) **nodes**. Once formed, the subclavian trunk may be joined by the jugular and bronchomediastinal trunks on the right side to form the **right lymphatic duct**, or it may enter the right venous angle independently. On the left side, the subclavian trunk commonly joins the **thoracic duct** (Fig. 3.44A, B).

Brachial Plexus

Most nerves in the upper limb arise from the **brachial plexus**, a major nerve network (Figs. 3.40B and 3.45) supplying the upper limb; it begins in the neck and extends into the axilla. Almost all branches of the plexus arise in the axilla (after the plexus has crossed the 1st rib). The brachial plexus is formed by the union of the anterior rami of the last four cervical (C5–C8) and the first thoracic (T1) nerves, which constitute the **roots of the brachial plexus** (Figs. 3.45 and 3.46; Table 3.8).

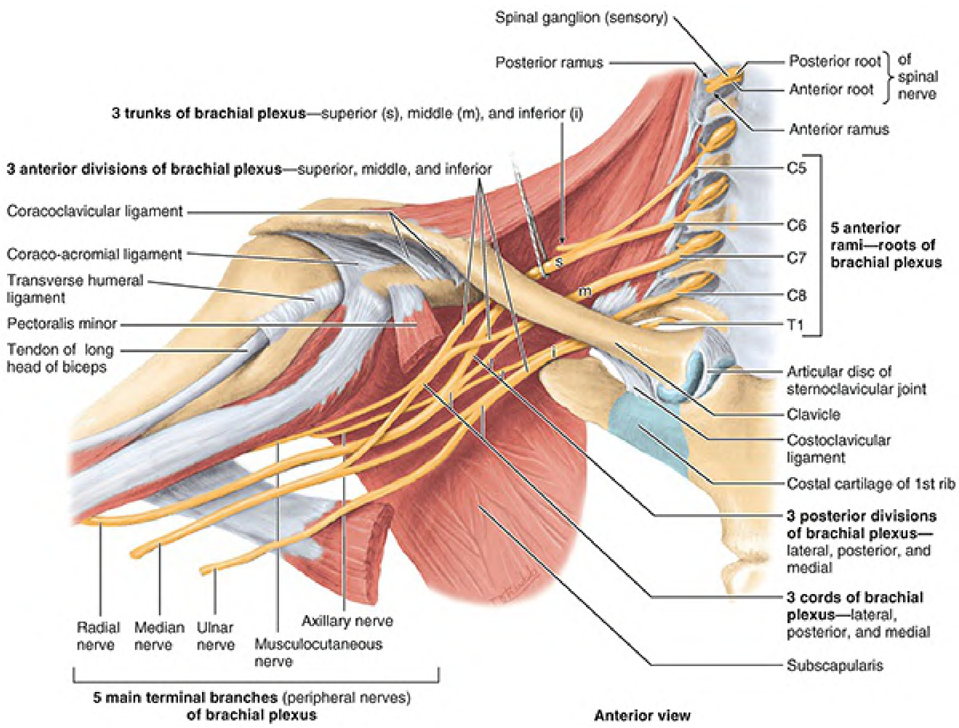


FIGURE 3.45. Formation of brachial plexus. This large nerve network extends from the neck to the upper limb via the cervico-axillary canal (bound by the clavicle, 1st rib, and superior scapula) to provide innervation to the upper limb and shoulder region. The brachial plexus is typically formed by the anterior rami of the C5–C8 nerves and the greater part of the anterior ramus of the T1 nerve (the roots of the brachial plexus). Observe the merging and continuation of certain roots of the plexus to three trunks, the separation of each trunk into anterior and posterior divisions, the union of the divisions to form three cords, and the derivation of the main terminal branches (peripheral nerves) from the cords as the products of plexus formation.

TABLE 3.8. BRACHIAL PLEXUS AND NERVES OF UPPER LIMB

Nerve	Origin[a]	Course	Structures Innervated
Supraclavicular branches			
Dorsal scapular	Posterior aspect of anterior ramus of **C5** with a frequent contribution from C4	Pierces middle scalene; descends deep to levator scapulae and rhomboids	Rhomboids; occasionally supplies levator scapulae
Long thoracic	Posterior aspect of anterior rami of **C5**, **C6**, C7	Passes through cervico-axillary canal (Fig. 3.39A, C), descending posterior to C8 and T1 roots of plexus (anterior rami); runs inferiorly on superficial surface of serratus anterior	Serratus anterior
Suprascapular	Superior trunk, receiving fibers from **C5**, C6, and often C4	Passes laterally across lateral cervical region (posterior triangle of neck), superior to brachial plexus; then through scapular notch inferior to superior transverse scapular ligament	Supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles; glenohumeral (shoulder) joint
Subclavian nerve (nerve to subclavius)	Superior trunk, receiving fibers from C5, **C6**, and often C4 (Fig. 3.46)	Descends posterior to clavicle and anterior to brachial plexus and subclavian artery (Fig. 3.31); often	Subclavius and sternoclavicular joint (accessory phrenic root innervates diaphragm)

		giving an accessory root to phrenic nerve	
Infraclavicular branches			
Lateral pectoral	Side branch of lateral cord, receiving fibers from C5, **C6**, and C7	Pierces costocoracoid membrane to reach deep surface of pectoral muscles; a communicating branch to the medial pectoral nerve passes anterior to axillary artery and vein	Primarily pectoralis major; but some lateral pectoral nerve fibers pass to pectoralis minor via branch to medial pectoral nerve (Fig. 3.48A); acromioclavicular and glenohumeral joints
Musculocutaneous	Terminal branch of lateral cord, receiving fibers from C5–C7	Exits axilla by piercing coracobrachialis (Fig. 3.45); descends between biceps brachii and brachialis (Figs. 3.49B and 3.50), supplying both; continues as lateral cutaneous nerve of forearm	Muscles of anterior compartment of arm (coracobrachialis, biceps brachii and brachialis) (Fig. 3.48B); skin of lateral aspect of forearm
Median	**Lateral root of median nerve** is a terminal branch of lateral cord (C6, C7). **Medial root of median nerve** is a terminal branch of medial cord (C8, T1).	Lateral and medial roots merge to form median nerve lateral to axillary artery; descends through arm adjacent to brachial artery, with nerve gradually crossing anterior to artery to lie medial to artery in cubital fossa (see Fig. 3.55).	Muscles of anterior forearm compartment (except for flexor carpi ulnaris and ulnar half of flexor digitorum profundus), five intrinsic muscles in thenar half of palm and palmar skin (Fig. 3.48B)
Medial pectoral	Side branches of medial cord, receiving fibers from C8 and T1	Passes between axillary artery and vein; then pierces pectoralis minor and enters deep surface of pectoralis major; although it is called medial for its origin from medial cord, it lies lateral to lateral pectoral nerve	Pectoralis minor and sternocostal part of pectoralis major
Medial cutaneous nerve of arm		Smallest nerve of plexus; runs along medial side of axillary and brachial veins; communicates with intercostobrachial nerve	Skin of medial side of arm, as far distal as medial epicondyle of humerus and olecranon of ulna
Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm		Initially runs with ulnar nerve (with which it may be confused) but pierces deep fascia with basilic vein and enters subcutaneous tissue, dividing into anterior and posterior branches	Skin of medial side of forearm, as far distal as wrist
Ulnar	Larger terminal branch of medial cord, receiving fibers from C8, T1, and often C7	Descends medial arm; passes posterior to medial epicondyle of humerus; then descends ulnar aspect of forearm to hand (Figs. 3.48C and 3.49A)	Flexor carpi ulnaris and ulnar half of flexor digitorum profundus (forearm); most intrinsic muscles of hand; skin of hand medial to axial line of digit 4
Upper subscapular	Side branch of posterior cord, receiving fibers from **C5**	Passes posteriorly, entering subscapularis directly	Superior portion of subscapularis
Lower subscapular	Side branch of posterior cord, receiving fibers	Passes inferolaterally, deep to subscapular artery and vein	Inferior portion of subscapularis and teres major

	from **C6**		
Thoracodorsal	Side branch of posterior cord, receiving fibers from C6, **C7**, and C8	Arises between upper and lower subscapular nerves and runs inferolaterally along posterior axillary wall to apical part of latissimus dorsi	Latissimus dorsi
Axillary	Terminal branch of posterior cord, receiving fibers from **C5** and C6	Exits axillary fossa posteriorly, passing through quadrangular space[b] with posterior circumflex humeral artery (Fig. 3.50); gives rise to superior lateral brachial cutaneous nerve; then winds around surgical neck of humerus deep to deltoid (Fig. 3.48D)	Acromioclavicular and glenohumeral (shoulder) joints; teres minor and deltoid muscles (Fig. 3.48D); skin of superolateral arm (over inferior part of deltoid)
Radial	Larger terminal branch of posterior cord (largest branch of plexus), receiving fibers from C5–T1	Exits axillary fossa posterior to axillary artery; passes posterior to humerus in radial groove with deep brachial artery, between lateral and medial heads of triceps; perforates lateral intermuscular septum; enters cubital fossa, dividing into superficial (cutaneous) and deep (motor) radial nerves (Fig. 3.48D)	All muscles of posterior compartments of arm and forearm (Fig. 3.48D); skin of posterior and inferolateral arm, posterior forearm, and dorsum of hand lateral to axial line of digit 4

[a]Boldface (e.g., **C5**) indicates primary component of the nerve.

[b]Bounded superiorly by the subscapularis, head of humerus, and teres minor; inferiorly by the teres major; medially by the long head of the triceps; and laterally by the coracobrachialis and surgical neck of the humerus (Fig. 3.50).

The roots of the plexus usually pass through the gap between the anterior and the middle scalene (L. scalenus anterior and medius) muscles with the subclavian artery (Fig. 3.47). The sympathetic fibers carried by each root of the plexus are received from the gray rami of the middle and inferior cervical ganglia as the roots pass between the scalene muscles.

In the inferior part of the neck, the roots of the brachial plexus unite to form three trunks (Figs. 3.45, 3.46, 3.47, and 3.48A; Table 3.8):

1. A **superior trunk**, from the union of the C5 and C6 roots
2. A **middle trunk**, which is a continuation of the C7 root
3. An **inferior trunk**, from the union of the C8 and T1 roots

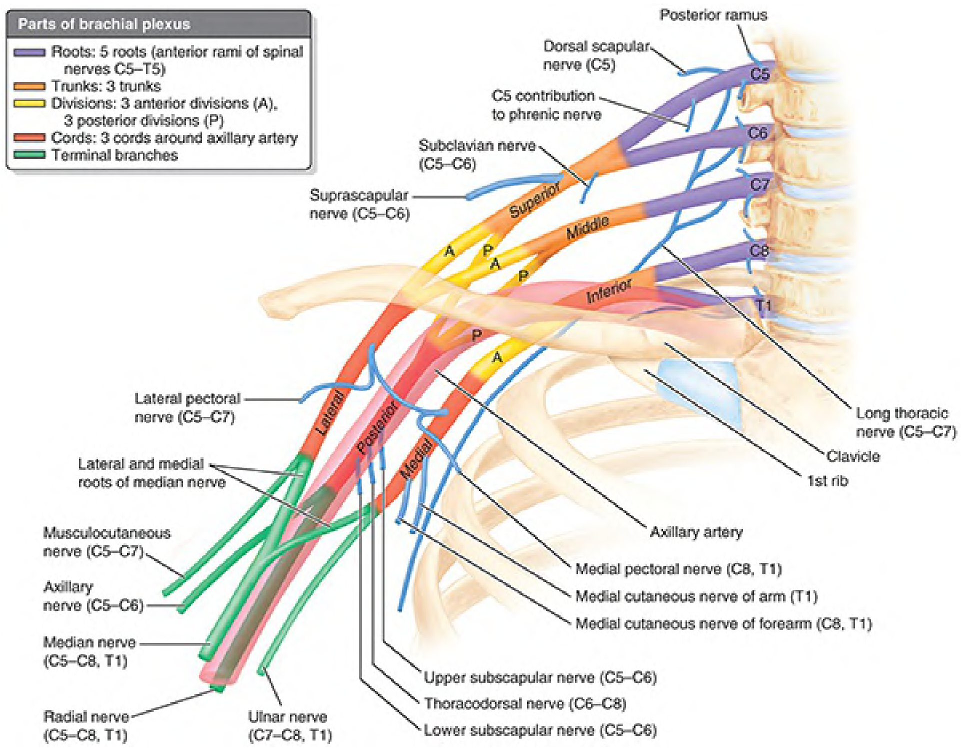


FIGURE 3.46. Brachial plexus.

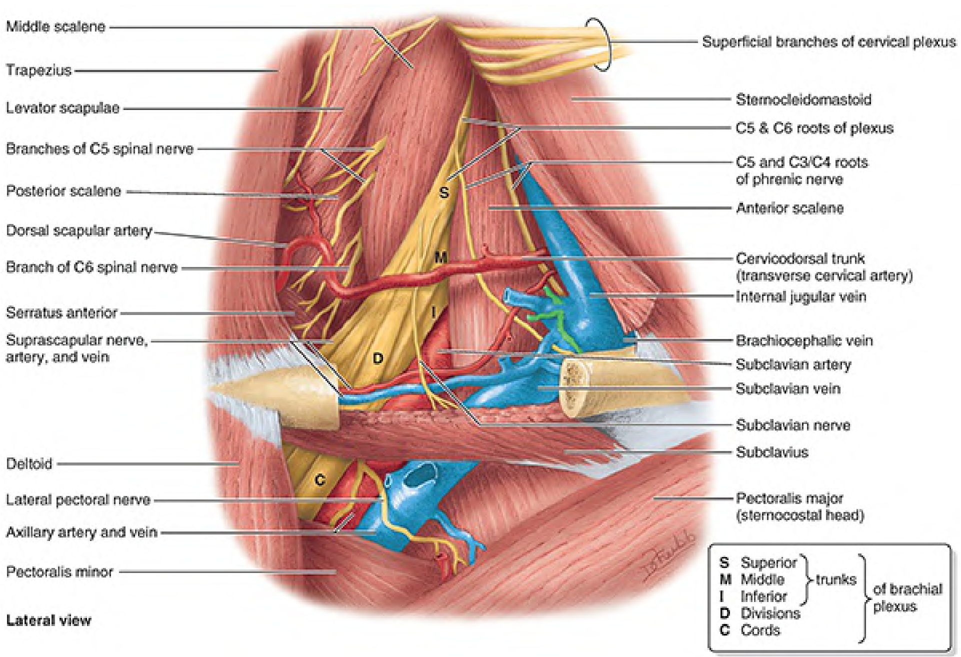
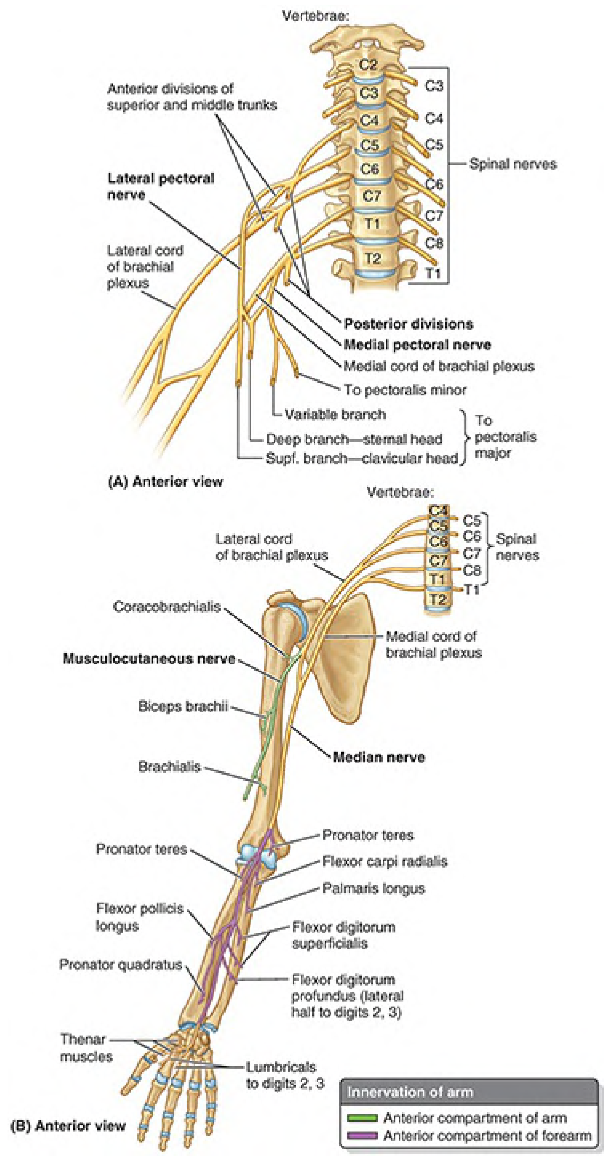


FIGURE 3.47. Dissection of right lateral cervical region (posterior triangle). The brachial plexus and subclavian vessels have been dissected. The anterior rami of spinal nerves C5–C8 (plus T1, concealed here by the third part of the subclavian artery) constitute the roots of the brachial plexus. Merging and subsequent splitting of the nerve fibers conveyed by the roots form the trunks and divisions at the level shown. The subclavian artery emerges between the middle and the anterior scalene muscles with the roots of the plexus.



Vertebrae:
C2
C3
C4
C5
C6
C7
T1
T2
C3
C4
C5
C6
C7
C8
T1
Spinal nerves
Anterior divisions of superior and middle trunks
Lateral pectoral nerve
Lateral cord of brachial plexus
Posterior divisions
Medial pectoral nerve
Medial cord of brachial plexus
To pectoralis minor
Variable branch
Deep branch—sternal head
Supf. branch—clavicular head
To pectoralis major
(A) Anterior view
Vertebrae:
C4
C5
C6
C7
T1
T2
C5
C6
C7
C8
T1
Spinal nerves
Lateral cord of brachial plexus
Coracobrachialis
Musculocutaneous nerve
Medial cord of brachial plexus
Biceps brachii
Median nerve
Brachialis
Pronator teres
Pronator teres
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Flexor pollicis longus
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Pronator quadratus
Flexor digitorum profundus (lateral half to digits 2, 3)
Thenar muscles
Lumbricals to digits 2, 3
Innervation of arm
Anterior compartment of arm
Anterior compartment of forearm
(B) Anterior view

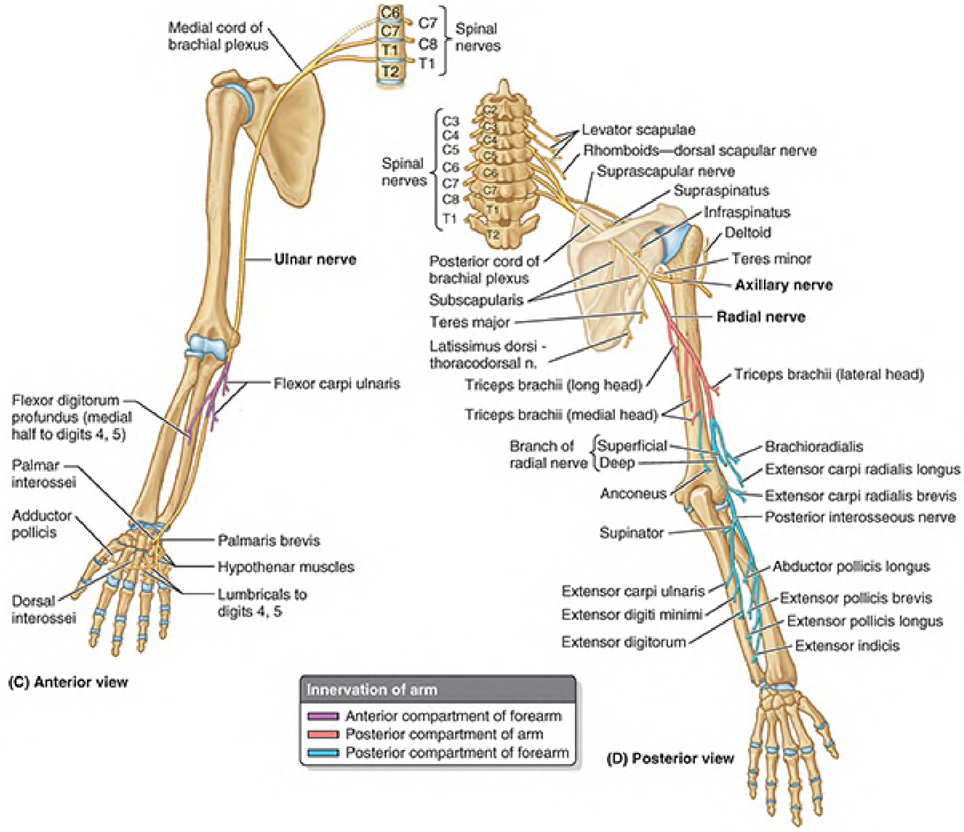


FIGURE 3.48. Motor branches derived from cords of brachial plexus. A. Medial and lateral pectoral nerves. The medial and lateral pectoral nerves arise from the medial and lateral cords of the brachial plexus, respectively (or from the anterior divisions of the trunks that form them, as shown here for the lateral pectoral nerve). **B.** Musculocutaneous and median nerves. The courses of the median and musculocutaneous nerves and the typical pattern of branching of their motor branches are shown. **C.** Ulnar nerve. The course of the ulnar nerve and the typical pattern of branching of its motor branches. **D.** Axillary and radial nerves. The courses of the axillary and radial nerves and the typical pattern of branching of their motor branches are shown. The posterior interosseous nerve is the continuation of the deep branch of the radial nerve, shown here bifurcating into two branches to supply all the muscles with fleshy bellies located entirely in the posterior compartment of the forearm. The dorsum of the hand has no fleshy muscle fibers; therefore, no motor nerves are distributed there.

Each trunk of the brachial plexus divides into anterior and posterior divisions as the plexus passes through the **cervico-axillary canal** posterior to the clavicle (Fig. 3.45). **Anterior divisions of the trunks** supply anterior (flexor) compartments of the upper limb, and **posterior divisions of the trunks** supply posterior (extensor) compartments.

The divisions of the trunks form three cords of the brachial plexus (Figs. 3.45, 3.46, and 3.48; Table 3.8):

1. Anterior divisions of the superior and middle trunks unite to form the **lateral cord**.
2. Anterior division of the inferior trunk continues as the **medial cord**.
3. Posterior divisions of all three trunks unite to form the **posterior cord**.

The cords bear the relationship to the second part of the axillary artery that is indicated by their names. For example, the lateral cord is lateral to the axillary artery, although it may appear to lie superior to the artery because it is most easily seen when the limb is abducted.

The products of plexus formation are multisegmental, peripheral (named) nerves. The brachial plexus is divided into **supraclavicular** and **infraclavicular parts** by the clavicle (Fig. 3.46; Table 3.8). Four branches of the supraclavicular part of the plexus arise from the roots (anterior rami) and trunks of the brachial plexus (dorsal scapular nerve, long thoracic nerve, nerve to subclavius, and suprascapular nerve) and are approachable through the neck. In addition, officially unnamed muscular branches arise from all five roots of the plexus (anterior rami C5–T1), which supply the scaleni and longus colli muscles. The C5 root of the phrenic nerve (considered a branch of the cervical plexus) arises from the C5 plexus root, joining the C3–C4 components of the nerve on the anterior surface of the anterior scalene muscle (Fig. 3.47). Branches of the infraclavicular part of the plexus arise from the cords of the brachial plexus and are approachable through the axilla (Figs. 3.46 and 3.48). Counting side and terminal branches, three branches arise from the lateral cord, whereas the medial and posterior cords each give rise to five branches (counting the roots of the median nerve as individual branches). The branches of the supraclavicular and infraclavicular parts of the brachial plexus are illustrated in Figures 3.46 and 3.48 and listed in Table 3.8, along with the origin, course, and distribution of each branch.

CLINICAL BOX

AXILLA

Arterial Anastomoses Around Scapula

Many arterial anastomoses occur around the scapula. Several vessels join to form networks on the anterior and posterior surfaces of the scapula: the dorsal scapular, suprascapular, and (via the circumflex scapular) subscapular arteries (Fig. B3.12).

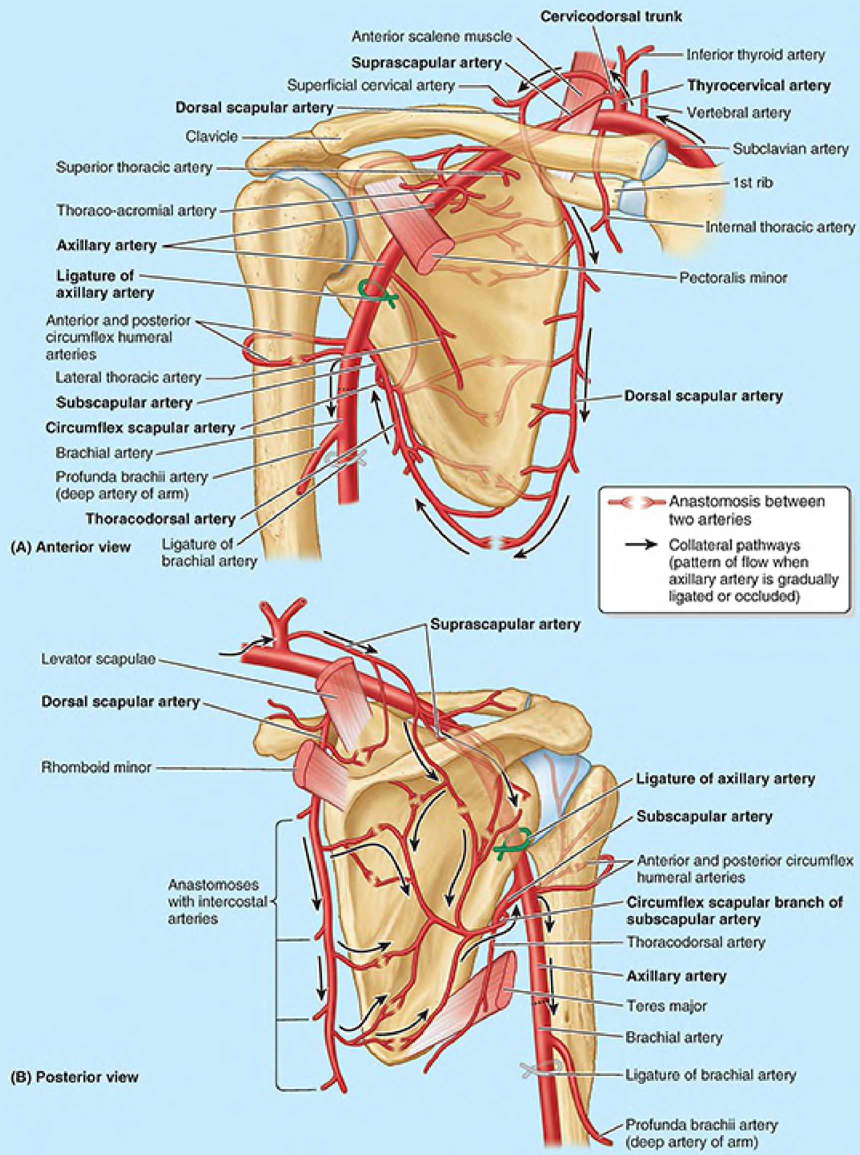


FIGURE B3.12. Arterial anastomoses around scapula.

The importance of the collateral circulation made possible by these anastomoses becomes apparent when ligation of a lacerated subclavian or axillary artery is necessary. For example, the axillary artery may have to be ligated between the 1st rib and subscapular artery. In other cases, vascular stenosis of the axillary artery may result from an atherosclerotic lesion that causes reduced blood flow. In either case, the direction of blood flow in the subscapular artery is reversed, enabling blood to reach the third part of the axillary artery. Note that the subscapular artery receives blood through several anastomoses with the suprascapular artery, dorsal scapular artery, and intercostal arteries.

Slow occlusion of the axillary artery (e.g., resulting from disease or trauma) often enables sufficient collateral circulation to develop, preventing ischemia (loss of blood supply). Sudden occlusion usually does not allow sufficient time for adequate collateral circulation

to develop; as a result, there is an inadequate supply of blood to the arm, forearm, and hand. While potential collateral pathways (peri-articular anastomoses) exist around the shoulder joint proximally, and the elbow joint distally, surgical ligation of the axillary artery between the origins of the subscapular artery and the profunda brachii artery will cut off the blood supply to the arm because the collateral circulation is inadequate.

Compression of Axillary Artery

The axillary artery can be palpated in the inferior part of the lateral wall of the axilla. Compression of the third part of this artery against the humerus may be necessary when profuse bleeding occurs (e.g., resulting from a stab or bullet wound in the axilla). If compression is required at a more proximal site, the axillary artery can be compressed at its origin (as the subclavian artery crosses the 1st rib) by exerting downward pressure in the angle between the clavicle and the inferior attachment of the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

Aneurysm of Axillary Artery

The first part of the axillary artery may enlarge (aneurysm of axillary artery) and compress the trunks of the brachial plexus, causing pain and anesthesia (loss of sensation) in the areas of the skin supplied by the affected nerves. Aneurysm of the axillary artery may occur in baseball pitchers and football quarterbacks because of their rapid and forceful arm movements.

Injuries to Axillary Vein

Wounds in the axilla often involve the axillary vein because of its large size and exposed position. When the arm is fully abducted, the axillary vein overlaps the axillary artery anteriorly. A surgical or traumatic wound in the proximal part of the axillary vein is particularly dangerous not only because of profuse bleeding but also because of the risk of air entering it and producing air emboli (air bubbles) in the blood.

Axillary Vein in Subclavian Vein Puncture

Subclavian vein puncture, in which a catheter is placed into the subclavian vein, is a common clinical procedure (see the Clinical Box "Subclavian Vein Puncture" in Chapter 9, Neck).

The axillary vein becomes the subclavian vein as the 1st rib is crossed (see Fig. 3.47). Because the needle is advanced medially to enter the vein as it crosses the rib, the vein actually punctured (the point of entry) in a "subclavian vein puncture" is the terminal part of the axillary vein. However, the needle tip proceeds into the lumen of the subclavian vein almost immediately. Thus, it is clinically significant that the axillary vein lies anterior and

inferior (i.e., superficial) to the axillary artery and the parts of the brachial plexus that begin to surround the artery at this point.

Infection of Axillary Lymph Nodes

An infection in the upper limb can cause the axillary nodes to enlarge and become tender and inflamed, a condition called lymphangitis (inflammation of lymphatic vessels). The humeral group of nodes is usually the first to be involved.

Lymphangitis is characterized by the development of warm, red, tender streaks in the skin of the limb. Infections in the pectoral region and breast, including the superior part of the abdomen, can also produce enlargement of axillary nodes. In metastatic cancer of the apical group, the nodes often adhere to the axillary vein, which may necessitate excision of part of this vessel. Enlargement of the apical nodes may obstruct the cephalic vein superior to the pectoralis minor.

Dissection of Axillary Lymph Nodes

Excision and pathologic analysis of axillary lymph nodes are often necessary for staging and determining the appropriate treatment of cancer, such as breast cancer. Because the axillary lymph nodes are arranged and receive lymph (and therefore metastatic breast cancer cells) in a specific order, removing and examining the lymph nodes in that order is important in determining the degree to which the cancer has developed and is likely to have metastasized. Staging is frequently accomplished by a targeted procedure, sentinel lymph node biopsy, in which only the node(s) draining the tumor site are removed and tested. This is associated with less potential for injury to surrounding structures. Lymphatic drainage of the upper limb may be impeded after removal or radiation of the axillary nodes, resulting in lymphedema, swelling as a result of accumulated lymph, especially in the subcutaneous tissue.

During axillary node dissection, two nerves are at risk of injury. During surgery, the long thoracic nerve to the serratus anterior is identified and maintained against the thoracic wall (see Fig. B3.8). As discussed earlier in this chapter, cutting the long thoracic nerve results in a winged scapula (see Fig. B3.6). If the thoracodorsal nerve to the latissimus dorsi is cut (see Fig. B3.7), medial rotation and adduction of the arm are weakened, but deformity does not result. If the nodes around this nerve are obviously malignant, sometimes the nerve has to be sacrificed as the nodes are resected to increase the likelihood of complete removal of all malignant cells.

Variations of Brachial Plexus

Variations in the formation of the brachial plexus are common (Illustrated Encyclopedia of Human Anatomical Variation). In addition to the five anterior rami (C5–C8 and T1) that form the roots of the brachial plexus, small contributions may

be made by the anterior rami of C4 or T2. When the superiormost root (anterior ramus) of the plexus is C4 and the inferiormost root is C8, it is a prefixed brachial plexus. Alternately, when the superior root is C6 and the inferior root is T2, it is a postfixed brachial plexus. In the latter type, the inferior trunk of the plexus may be compressed by the 1st rib, producing neurovascular symptoms in the upper limb. Variations may also occur in the formation of trunks, divisions, and cords; in the origin and/or combination of branches; and in the relationship to the axillary artery and scalene muscles. For example, the lateral or medial cords may receive fibers from anterior rami inferior or superior to the usual levels, respectively.

In some individuals, trunk divisions or cord formations may be absent in one or other parts of the plexus; however, the makeup of the terminal branches is unchanged. Because each peripheral nerve is a collection of nerve fibers bound together by connective tissue, it is understandable that the median nerve, for instance, may have two medial roots instead of one (i.e., the nerve fibers are simply grouped differently). This results from the fibers of the medial cord of the brachial plexus dividing into three branches, two forming the median nerve and the third forming the ulnar nerve. Sometimes it may be more confusing when the two medial roots are completely separate; however, understand that although the median nerve may have two medial roots, the components of the nerve are the same (i.e., the impulses arise from the same place and reach the same destination whether they go through one or two roots).

Brachial Plexus Injuries

Injuries to the brachial plexus affect movements and cutaneous sensations in the upper limb. Disease, stretching, and wounds in the lateral cervical region (posterior triangle) of the neck (see Chapter 9, Neck) or in the axilla may produce brachial plexus injuries. Signs and symptoms depend on the part of the plexus involved. Injuries to the brachial plexus result in paralysis and anesthesia. Testing the person’s ability to perform movements assesses the degree of paralysis. With complete paralysis, no movement is detectable. With incomplete paralysis, not all muscles are paralyzed; therefore, the person can move, but the movements are weak compared with those on the normal side. Determining the ability of the person to feel pain (e.g., from a pinprick of the skin) tests the degree of anesthesia.

Injuries to superior parts of the brachial plexus (C5 and C6) usually result from an excessive increase in the angle between the neck and shoulder. These injuries can occur in a person who is thrown from a motorcycle or a horse and lands on the shoulder in a way that widely separates the neck and shoulder (Fig. B3.13A). When thrown, the person’s shoulder often hits something (e.g., a tree or the ground) and stops, but the head and trunk continue to move. This stretches or ruptures superior parts of the brachial plexus or avulses (tears) the roots of the plexus from the spinal cord.

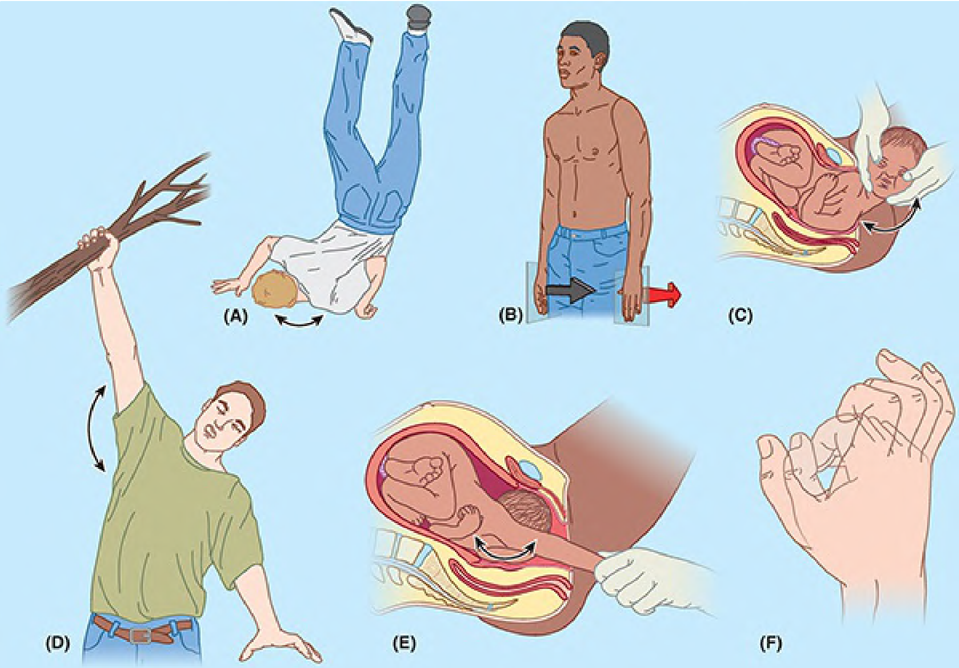


FIGURE B3.13. **Injuries to brachial plexus. A.** Excessive increase in angle between the head and left shoulder. **B.** Waiter's tip position (left upper limb). **C.** Excessive increase in the angle between head and left shoulder during delivery of fetus. **D and E.** Excessive increases in the angle between the trunk and the right upper limb. **F.** Claw hand. Person is attempting to assume lightly shaded "fist" position.

Injury to the superior trunk of the plexus is apparent by the characteristic position of the limb ("waiter's tip position"), in which the limb hangs by the side in medial rotation (Fig. B3.13B, arrow). Upper brachial plexus injuries can also occur in a neonate when excessive stretching of the neck occurs during delivery (Fig. B3.13C).

As a result of injuries to the superior parts of the brachial plexus (Erb-Duchenne palsy), paralysis of the muscles of the shoulder and arm supplied by the C5 and C6 spinal nerves occurs: deltoid, biceps, and brachialis. The usual clinical appearance is an upper limb with an adducted shoulder, medially rotated arm, and extended elbow. The lateral aspect of the forearm also experiences some loss of sensation. Chronic microtrauma to the superior trunk of the brachial plexus from carrying a heavy backpack can produce motor and sensory deficits in the distribution of the musculocutaneous and radial nerves. A superior brachial plexus injury may produce muscle spasms and severe disability in hikers (backpacker's palsy) who carry heavy backpacks for long periods.

Acute brachial plexus neuritis (brachial plexus neuropathy) is a neurologic disorder of unknown cause that is characterized by the sudden onset of severe pain, usually around the shoulder. Typically, the pain begins at night and is followed by muscle weakness and sometimes muscular atrophy (neurologic amyotrophy). Inflammation of the brachial plexus (brachial neuritis) is often preceded by some event (e.g., upper respiratory infection, vaccination, or nonspecific trauma). The nerve fibers involved are usually derived from the superior trunk of the brachial plexus.

Compression of cords of the brachial plexus may result from prolonged hyperabduction

of the arm during performance of manual tasks over the head, such as painting a ceiling. The cords are impinged or compressed between the coracoid process of the scapula and the pectoralis minor tendon. Common neurologic symptoms are pain radiating down the arm, numbness, paresthesia (tingling), erythema (redness of the skin caused by capillary dilation), and weakness of the hands. Compression of the axillary artery and vein causes ischemia of the upper limb and distension of the superficial veins. These signs and symptoms of hyperabduction syndrome result from compression of the axillary vessels and nerves.

Injuries to inferior parts of the brachial plexus (Klumpke paralysis) are much less common. Inferior brachial plexus injuries may occur when the upper limb is suddenly pulled superiorly—for example, when a person grasps something to break a fall (Fig. B3.13D) or a baby's upper limb is pulled excessively during delivery (Fig. B3.13E). These events injure the inferior trunk of the brachial plexus (C8 and T1) and may avulse the roots of the spinal nerves from the spinal cord. The short muscles of the hand are affected, and a claw hand results (Fig. B3.13F).

Brachial Plexus Block

Injection of an anesthetic solution into or immediately surrounding the axillary sheath interrupts conduction of impulses of peripheral nerves and produces anesthesia of the structures supplied by the branches of the cords of the plexus (see Fig. 3.40A). Sensation is blocked in all deep structures of the upper limb, and the skin distal to the middle of the arm. Combined with an occlusive tourniquet technique to retain the anesthetic agent, this procedure enables surgeons to operate on the upper limb without using a general anesthetic. The brachial plexus can be anesthetized using a number of approaches, including supraclavicular and infraclavicular axillary approaches or blocks.

The Bottom Line: Axilla

Axilla: The axilla is a pyramidal, fat-filled compartment (distribution center) giving passage to or housing the major "utilities" serving (supplying, draining, and communicating with) the upper limb. ■ Although normally protected by the arm, axillary structures are vulnerable when the arm is abducted; the "tickle" reflex causes us to recover the protected position rapidly when a threat is perceived. ■ Structures traversing the axilla are ensheathed in a protective wrapping (axillary sheath), embedded in a cushioning matrix (axillary fat) that allows flexibility, and are surrounded by musculoskeletal walls. ■ Neurovascular structures pass to and from the neck/thorax and the entire upper limb (including the pectoral, scapular, and subscapular regions as well as the free upper limb) via the axilla.

Axillary vein and artery: The axillary vein lies anterior and slightly inferior to the axillary artery, both being surrounded by the fascial axillary sheath. ■ For descriptive purposes, the axillary artery and vein are assigned three parts located medial, posterior, and lateral to the pectoralis minor. Coincidentally, the first part of the artery has one branch; the second part, two branches; and the third part, three branches.

Axillary lymph nodes: The axillary lymph nodes are embedded in the axillary fat external to the axillary sheath. ■ The axillary lymph nodes occur in groups that are arranged and receive lymph in a specific order, which is important in staging and determining appropriate treatment for breast cancer. ■ The axillary lymph nodes receive lymph from the upper limb, as well as from the entire upper quadrant of the superficial body wall, from the level of the clavicles to the umbilicus including most from the breast.

Brachial plexus: The brachial plexus is an organized intermingling of the nerve fibers of the five adjacent anterior rami (C5–T1, the roots of the plexus) innervating the upper limb. ■ Although their segmental identity is lost in forming the plexus, the original segmental distribution to skin (dermatomes) and muscles (myotomes) remains, exhibiting a cranial to caudal distribution for the skin (see "Cutaneous Innervation of Upper Limb" in this chapter) and a proximal to distal distribution for the muscles. For example, C5 and C6 fibers primarily innervate muscles that act at the shoulder or flex the elbow; C7 and C8 fibers innervate muscles that extend the elbow or are part of the forearm; and T1 fibers innervate the intrinsic muscles of the hand. ■ Formation of the brachial plexus initially involves merging of the superior and inferior pairs of roots, resulting in three trunks that each divide into anterior and posterior divisions. ■ The fibers traversing anterior divisions innervate flexors and pronators of the anterior compartments of the limb, whereas the fibers traversing posterior divisions innervate extensors and supinators of the posterior compartments of the limb. ■ Five of the six divisions merge to form three cords that surround the axillary artery. ■ Two of the three cords give rise in turn to five nerves, and the third (lateral cord) gives rise to three nerves. ■ In addition to the nerves arising from the cords, more nerves arise from other parts of the plexus. ■ Most nerves arising from the plexus are multisegmental, containing fibers from two or more anterior rami of adjacent spinal nerves.

ARM

The **arm** extends from the shoulder to the elbow. Two types of movement occur between the arm and forearm at the elbow joint: flexion–extension and pronation–supination. The muscles performing these movements are clearly divided into anterior and posterior groups, separated by the humerus and medial and lateral intermuscular septae (Fig. 3.49). The chief action of both

groups is at the elbow joint, but some muscles also act at the glenohumeral joint. The superior part of the humerus provides attachments for tendons of the shoulder muscles.

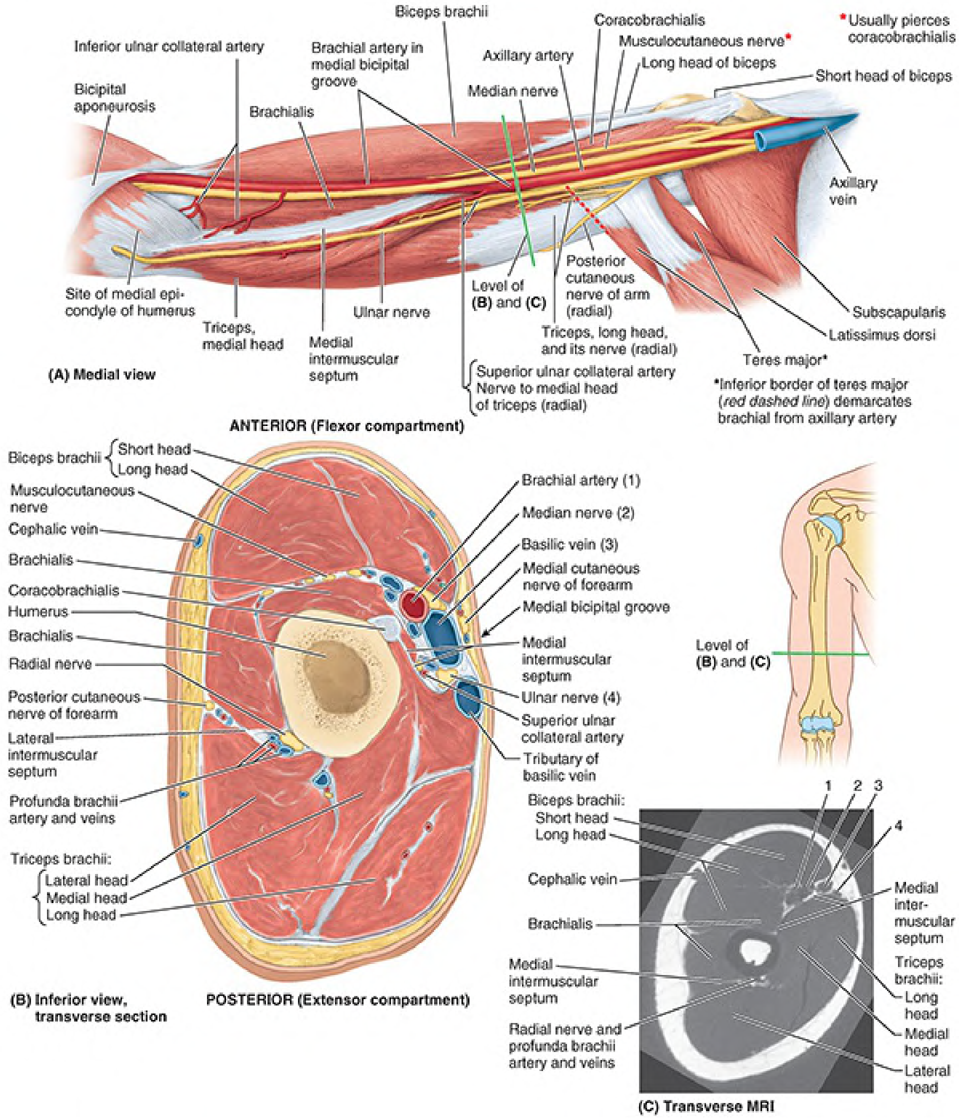


FIGURE 3.49. **Muscles, neurovascular structures, and compartments of arm.** **A.** Dissection of right arm. The veins have been removed, except for the proximal part of the axillary vein. Note the courses of the musculocutaneous, median, and ulnar nerves and the brachial artery along the medial (protected) aspect of the arm. Their courses generally parallel the medial intermuscular septum that separates the anterior and posterior compartments in the distal two thirds of the arm. **B.** Transverse section of right arm. Note the three heads of the triceps and the radial nerve and its companion vessels (in contact with the humerus) lie in the posterior compartment. **C.** Transverse MRI of right arm. Demonstrates features shown in part **B**; the numbered structures are identified in part **B**.

Muscles of Arm

Of the four major arm muscles, three flexors (biceps brachii, brachialis, and coracobrachialis) are in the anterior (flexor) compartment, supplied by the musculocutaneous nerve, and one extensor (triceps brachii) is in the posterior compartment, supplied by the radial nerve (Figs. 3.50 and

3.51B, C, E, F; Table 3.9). A distally placed assistant to the triceps, the anconeus, also lies within the posterior compartment (Fig. 3.51F). The flexor muscles of the anterior compartment are almost twice as strong as the extensors in all positions; consequently, we are better pullers than pushers. It should be noted, however, that the extensors of the elbow are particularly important for raising oneself out of a chair and for wheelchair activity. Therefore, conditioning of the triceps is of particular importance in elderly or disabled persons.

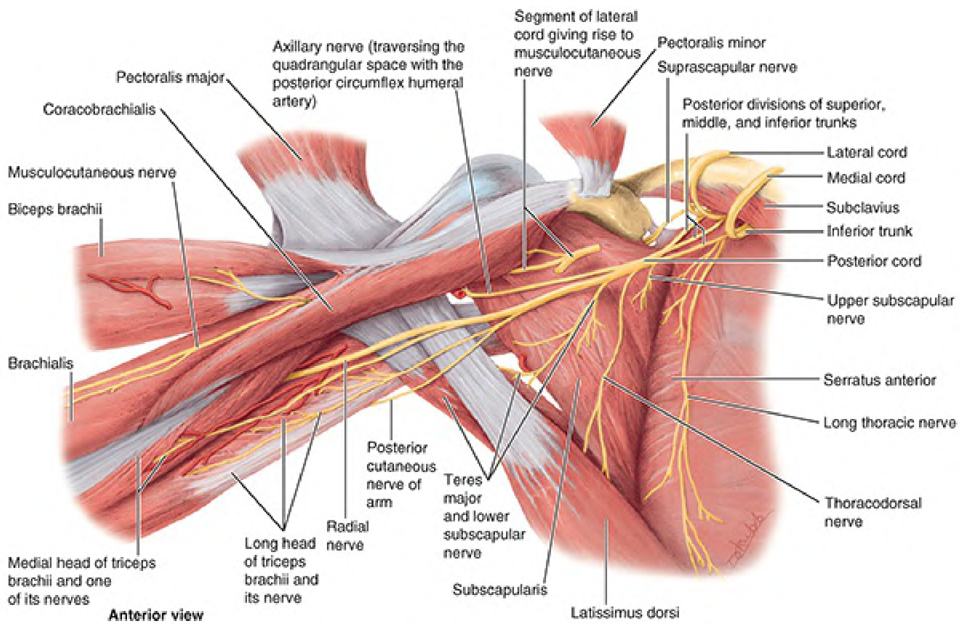


FIGURE 3.50. Nerves supplying medial and posterior walls of axilla and muscles of arm. The pectoralis major and minor muscles are reflected superolaterally, and the lateral and medial cords of the brachial plexus are reflected superomedially. All major vessels and nerves arising from the medial and lateral cords of the brachial plexus (except for the musculocutaneous nerve arising from a segment of the lateral cord) are removed. The posterior cord, formed by the merging of the posterior divisions of all three trunks of the brachial plexus, is demonstrated. It gives rise to five peripheral nerves, four of which supply the muscles of the posterior wall of the axilla and posterior compartments of the upper limb.

TABLE 3.9. MUSCLES OF ARM

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Muscle Action
Biceps brachii	Short head: tip of coracoid process of scapula Long head: supraglenoid tubercle of scapula	Tuberosity of radius and fascia of forearm via bicipital aponeurosis	Musculocutaneous nerve (C5, **C6**, C7)	Supinates forearm and, when it is supine, flexes forearm; short head resists dislocation of shoulder
Coracobrachialis	Tip of coracoid process of scapula	Middle third of medial surface of humerus		Helps flex and adduct arm; resists dislocation of shoulder
Brachialis	Distal half of anterior surface of humerus	Coronoid process and tuberosity ulna	Musculocutaneous nerve[b] (C5, C6) and radial nerve (C5, C7)	Flexes forearm in all positions

Triceps brachii	Long head: infraglenoid tubercle of scapula Lateral head: posterior surface of humerus, superior to radial groove Medial head: posterior surface of humerus, inferior to radial groove	Proximal end of olecranon of ulna and fascia of forearm	Radial nerve (C6, **C7**, **C8**)	Chief extensor of forearm; long head resists dislocation of humerus; especially important during adduction
Anconeus	Lateral epicondyle of humerus	Lateral surface of olecranon and superior part of posterior surface of ulna	Radial nerve (C7, C8, T1)	Assists triceps in extending forearm; stabilizes elbow joint; may abduct ulna during pronation

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "C5, **C6**, C7" means that the nerves supplying the biceps brachii are derived from the fifth and sixth cervical segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (e.g., **C6**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

[b]Some of the lateral part of the brachialis is innervated by a branch of the radial nerve.

The arm muscles and their attachments are illustrated in Figure 3.51, and their attachments, innervation, and actions are described in Table 3.9.

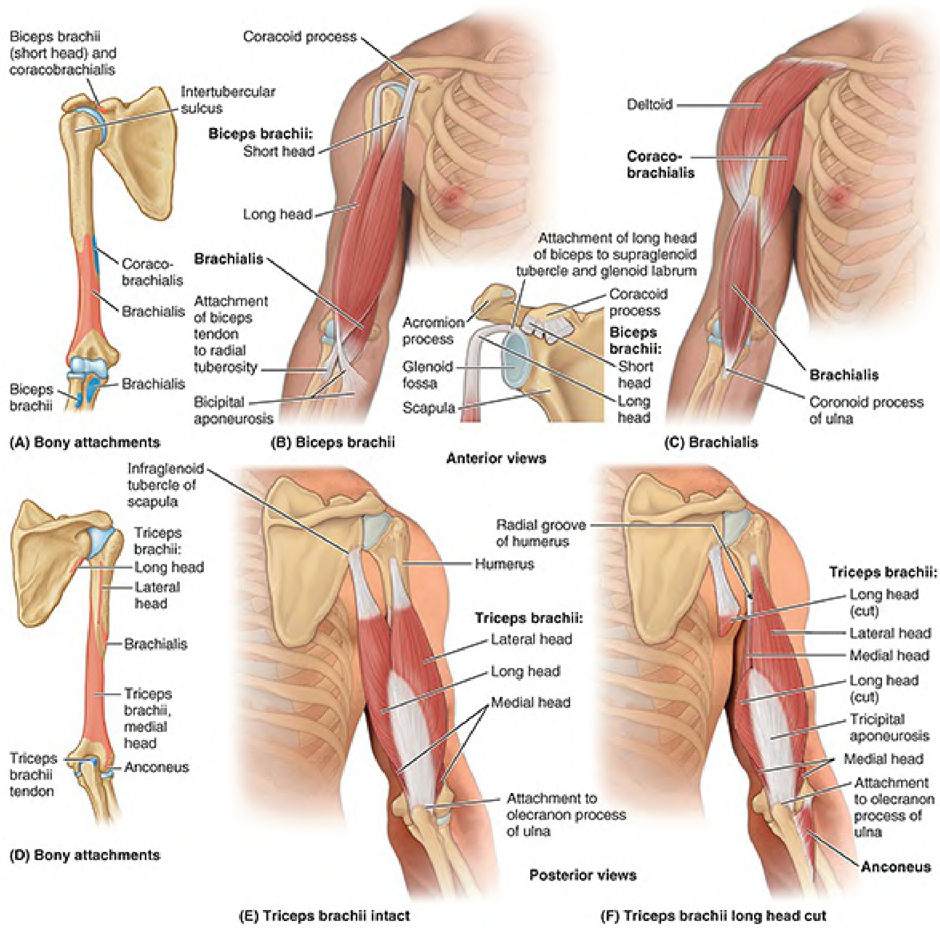


FIGURE 3.51. **Muscles of arm.**

BICEPS BRACHII

As the term **biceps brachii** indicates, the proximal attachment of this fusiform muscle usually has two heads (bi, two + L. caput, head). The two heads of the biceps arise proximally by tendinous attachments to processes of the scapula, their fleshy bellies uniting just distal to the middle of the arm (Fig. 3.51B).

Approximately 10% of people have a third head to the biceps. When present, the third head extends from the superomedial part of the brachialis (with which it is blended), usually lying posterior to the brachial artery. In either case, a single **biceps tendon** forms distally and attaches primarily to the radius.

Although the biceps is located in the anterior compartment of the arm, it has no attachment to the humerus (Figs. 3.49B, C and 3.51A, B). The biceps is a “three-joint muscle,” crossing and capable of effecting movement at the glenohumeral, elbow, and radio-ulnar joints, although it primarily acts at the latter two. Its action and effectiveness are markedly affected by the position of the elbow and forearm. When the elbow is extended, the biceps is a simple flexor of the forearm; however, as elbow flexion approaches 90° and more power is needed against resistance, the biceps is capable of two powerful movements, depending on the position of the forearm.

When the elbow is flexed close to 90° and the forearm is supinated, the biceps is most efficient in producing flexion. Alternately, when the forearm is pronated, the biceps is the primary (most powerful) supinator of the forearm. For example, it is used when right-handed people drive a screw into hard wood and when inserting a corkscrew and pulling the cork from a wine bottle. The biceps barely operates as a flexor when the forearm is pronated, even against resistance. In the semiprone position, it is active only against resistance (Hamill et al., 2022).

Arising from the supraglenoid tubercle of the scapula, and crossing the head of the humerus within the cavity of the glenohumeral joint, the rounded tendon of the long head of the biceps continues to be surrounded by synovial membrane as it descends in the intertubercular sulcus of the humerus. A broad band, the **transverse humeral ligament**, passes from the lesser to the greater tubercle of the humerus and converts the intertubercular groove into a canal (see Fig. 3.45). The ligament holds the tendon of the long head of the biceps in the groove.

Distally, the major attachment of the biceps is to the radial tuberosity via the biceps tendon. However, a triangular membranous band, the **bicipital aponeurosis**, runs from the biceps tendon across the cubital fossa and merges with the antebrachial (deep) fascia covering the flexor muscles in the medial side of the forearm. It attaches indirectly by means of the fascia to the subcutaneous border of the ulna. The proximal part of the aponeurosis can be easily felt where it passes obliquely over the brachial artery and median nerve (Fig. 3.49A; see Fig. 3.54A). The aponeurosis affords protection for these and other structures in the cubital fossa. It also helps lessen the pressure of the biceps tendon on the radial tuberosity during pronation and supination of the forearm.

To test the biceps brachii, the elbow joint is flexed against resistance when the forearm is supinated. If acting normally, the muscle forms a prominent bulge on the anterior aspect of the arm that is easily palpated.

BRACHIALIS

The **brachialis** is a flattened fusiform muscle that lies posterior (deep) to the biceps. Its distal attachment covers the anterior part of the elbow joint (Figs. 3.49 and 3.51C; Table 3.9). The brachialis is the main flexor of the forearm. It is the only pure flexor, producing the greatest amount of flexion force. Unlike the biceps, the brachialis flexes the forearm in all positions, being unaffected by pronation or supination. It acts during both slow and quick movements and in the presence or absence of resistance. When the forearm is extended slowly, the brachialis steadies the movement by slowly lengthening, that is, eccentric contraction (e.g., you use it to pick up and put down a teacup carefully). The brachialis always contracts when the elbow is flexed, and it is primarily responsible for sustaining the flexed position. Because of its important and almost constant role, it is regarded as the workhorse of the elbow flexors.

To test the brachialis, the forearm is semipronated and flexed against resistance. If acting normally, the contracted muscle can be seen and palpated.

CORACOBRACHIALIS

The **coracobrachialis** is an elongated muscle in the superomedial part of the arm. It is a useful

landmark for locating other structures in the arm (Figs. 3.49, 3.50, and 3.51C; Table 3.9). For example, the musculocutaneous nerve pierces it, and the distal part of its attachment indicates the location of the nutrient foramen of the humerus. The coracobrachialis helps flex and adduct the arm and stabilize the glenohumeral joint. With the deltoid and long head of the triceps, it serves as a shunt muscle, resisting downward dislocation of the head of the humerus, as when carrying a heavy suitcase. The median nerve and/or the brachial artery may run deep to the coracobrachialis and be compressed by it.

TRICEPS BRACHII

The **triceps brachii** is a large fusiform muscle in the posterior compartment of the arm (Figs. 3.49; 3.50; 3.51E, F; and 3.52; Table 3.9). As its name indicates, the triceps has three heads: long, lateral, and medial. The triceps is the main extensor of the forearm.

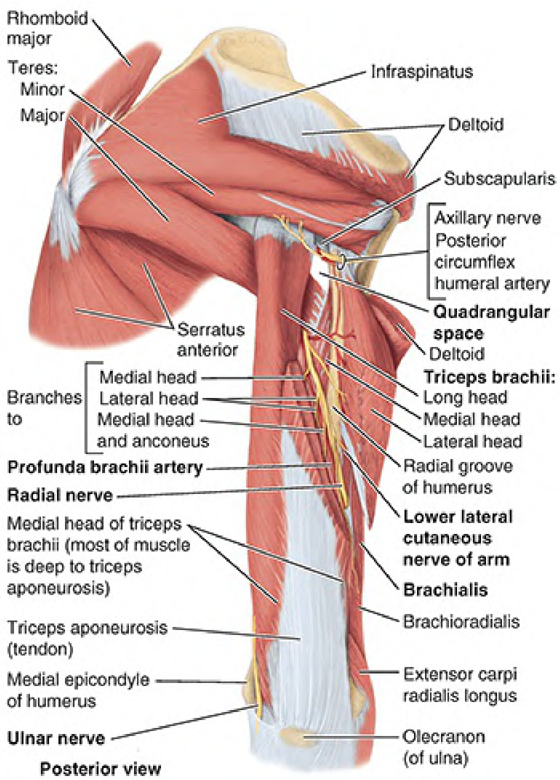


FIGURE 3.52. Muscles of scapular region and posterior region of arm. The lateral head of the triceps brachii is divided and displaced to show the structures traversing the quadrangular space and the radial nerve and profunda brachii artery. The exposed bone of the radial groove, which is devoid of muscular attachment, separates the humeral attachments of the lateral and medial heads of the triceps. (Bony attachments are illustrated in Fig. 3.51D.)

Because its **long head** crosses the glenohumeral joint, the triceps helps stabilize the adducted glenohumeral joint by serving as a shunt muscle, resisting inferior displacement of the head of the humerus. The long head also aids in extension and adduction of the arm, but it is the least active head.

The **medial head** is the workhorse of forearm extension, active at all speeds and in the presence or absence of resistance.

The **lateral head** is the strongest, but it is recruited into activity primarily against resistance (Hamill et al., 2022). Pronation and supination of the forearm do not affect triceps operation. Just proximal to the distal attachment of the triceps is a friction-reducing subtendinous olecranon bursa, between the triceps tendon and the olecranon.

To test the triceps (or to determine the level of a radial nerve lesion), the arm is abducted 90° and then the flexed forearm is extended against resistance provided by the examiner. If acting normally, the triceps can be seen and palpated. Its strength should be comparable with the contralateral muscle, given consideration for lateral dominance (right or left handedness).

ANCONEUS

The **anconeus** is a small, triangular muscle on the posterolateral aspect of the elbow, usually partially blended (continuous) with the medial head of the triceps muscle (Fig. 3.51F; Table 3.9). The anconeus assists the triceps in extending the forearm and tenses the capsule of the elbow joint, preventing its being pinched during extension. It is also said to exert an abducting force on the ulna during pronation of the forearm.

Brachial Artery

The **brachial artery** provides the main arterial supply to the arm and is the continuation of the axillary artery (Fig. 3.53). It begins at the inferior border of the teres major (Figs. 3.49A and 3.53) and ends in the cubital fossa opposite the neck of the radius where, under cover of the bicipital aponeurosis, it divides into the radial and ulnar arteries (Figs. 3.53 and 3.54).

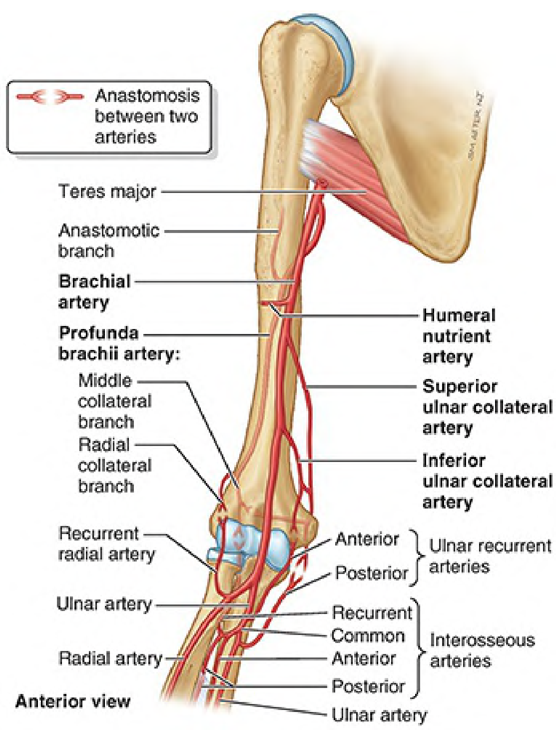


FIGURE 3.53. Arterial supply of arm and proximal forearm. Functionally and clinically important peri-articular arterial anastomoses surround the elbow. The resulting collateral circulation allows blood to reach the forearm when

flexion of the elbow compromises flow through the terminal part of the brachial artery.

The brachial artery, relatively superficial and palpable throughout its course, lies anterior to the triceps and brachialis. At first, it lies medial to the humerus where its pulsations are palpable in the **medial bicipital groove** (Fig. 3.49A, B). It then passes anterior to the medial supra-epicondylar ridge and trochlea of the humerus (Figs. 3.53 and 3.55).

As it passes inferolaterally, the brachial artery accompanies the median nerve, which crosses anterior to the artery (Figs. 3.49A and 3.55). During its course through the arm, the brachial artery gives rise to many unnamed muscular branches, and the **humeral nutrient artery** (Fig. 3.53), which arise from its lateral aspect. The unnamed muscular branches are often omitted from illustrations, but they are evident during dissection.

The main named **branches of the brachial artery** arising from its medial aspect are the profunda brachii artery and the superior and inferior ulnar collateral arteries. The collateral arteries help form the **peri-articular arterial anastomoses of the elbow region** (Fig. 3.53). Other arteries involved are recurrent branches, sometimes double, from the radial, ulnar, and interosseous arteries, which run superiorly anterior and posterior to the elbow joint. These arteries anastomose with descending articular branches of the deep artery of the arm and the ulnar collateral arteries.

PROFUNDA BRACHII ARTERY

The **profunda brachii artery** (deep brachial artery, deep artery of the arm) is the largest branch of the brachial artery and has the most superior origin. The profunda brachii accompanies the radial nerve along the radial groove as it passes posteriorly around the shaft of the humerus (Figs. 3.52 and 3.55). The profunda brachii terminates by dividing into **middle** and **radial collateral arteries**, which participate in the peri-articular arterial anastomoses around the elbow (Fig. 3.53).

HUMERAL NUTRIENT ARTERY

The main **humeral nutrient artery** arises from the brachial artery around the middle of the arm and enters the nutrient canal on the anteromedial surface of the humerus (Fig. 3.53). The artery runs distally in the canal toward the elbow. Other smaller humeral nutrient arteries also occur.

SUPERIOR ULNAR COLLATERAL ARTERY

The **superior ulnar collateral artery** arises from the medial aspect of the brachial artery near the middle of the arm and accompanies the ulnar nerve posterior to the medial epicondyle of the humerus (Figs. 3.49A and 3.53). Here, it anastomoses with the posterior ulnar recurrent and inferior ulnar collateral arteries, participating in the peri-articular arterial anastomoses of the elbow.

INFERIOR ULNAR COLLATERAL ARTERY

The **inferior ulnar collateral artery** arises from the brachial artery approximately 5 cm

proximal to the elbow crease (Figs. 3.49A, 3.53, and 3.54B). It then passes inferomedially anterior to the medial epicondyle of the humerus and joins the peri-articular arterial anastomoses of the elbow region by anastomosing with the anterior ulnar recurrent artery.

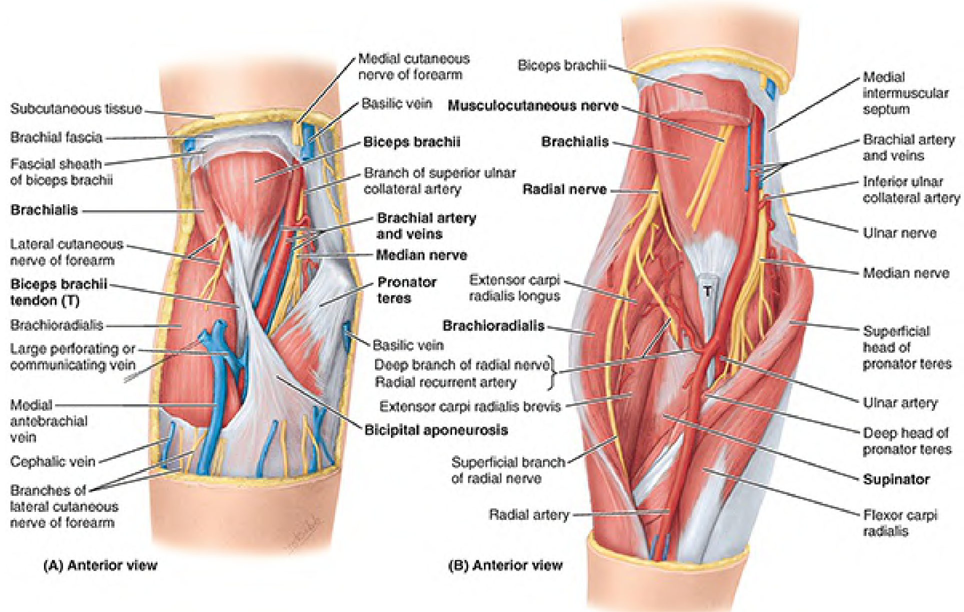


FIGURE 3.54. Dissections of cubital fossa. A. Superficial dissection. **B.** Deep dissection. Part of the biceps is excised and the cubital fossa is opened widely by retracting the forearm extensor muscles laterally and the flexor muscles medially. The radial nerve, which has just left the posterior compartment of the arm by piercing the lateral intermuscular septum, emerges between the brachialis and brachioradialis and divides into a superficial (sensory) and a deep (motor) branch (details are shown in Fig. 3.59A, B).

Veins of Arm

Two sets of **veins of the arm**, superficial and deep, anastomose freely with each other. The superficial veins are in the subcutaneous tissue, and the deep veins accompany the arteries. Both sets of veins have valves, but they are more numerous in the deep veins than in the superficial veins.

SUPERFICIAL VEINS

The two main **superficial veins of the arm**, the **cephalic** and **basilic veins** (Figs. 3.49B, C and 3.54A), are described in "Superficial Veins of Upper Limb" earlier in this chapter.

DEEP VEINS

Paired deep veins, collectively constituting the **brachial vein**, accompany the brachial artery (Fig. 3.54A). Their frequent connections encompass the artery, forming an anastomotic network within a common vascular sheath. The pulsations of the brachial artery help move the blood through this venous network.

The brachial vein begins at the elbow by union of the accompanying veins of the ulnar and

radial arteries and ends by merging with the basilic vein to form the axillary vein (see Figs. 3.17 and 3.43). Not uncommonly, the deep veins join to form one brachial vein during part of their course.

Nerves of Arm

Four main nerves pass through the arm: median, ulnar, musculocutaneous, and radial (Fig. 3.55). Their origins from the brachial plexus, courses in the upper limb, and the structures innervated by them are summarized in Table 3.8. The median and ulnar nerves do not supply branches to the arm.

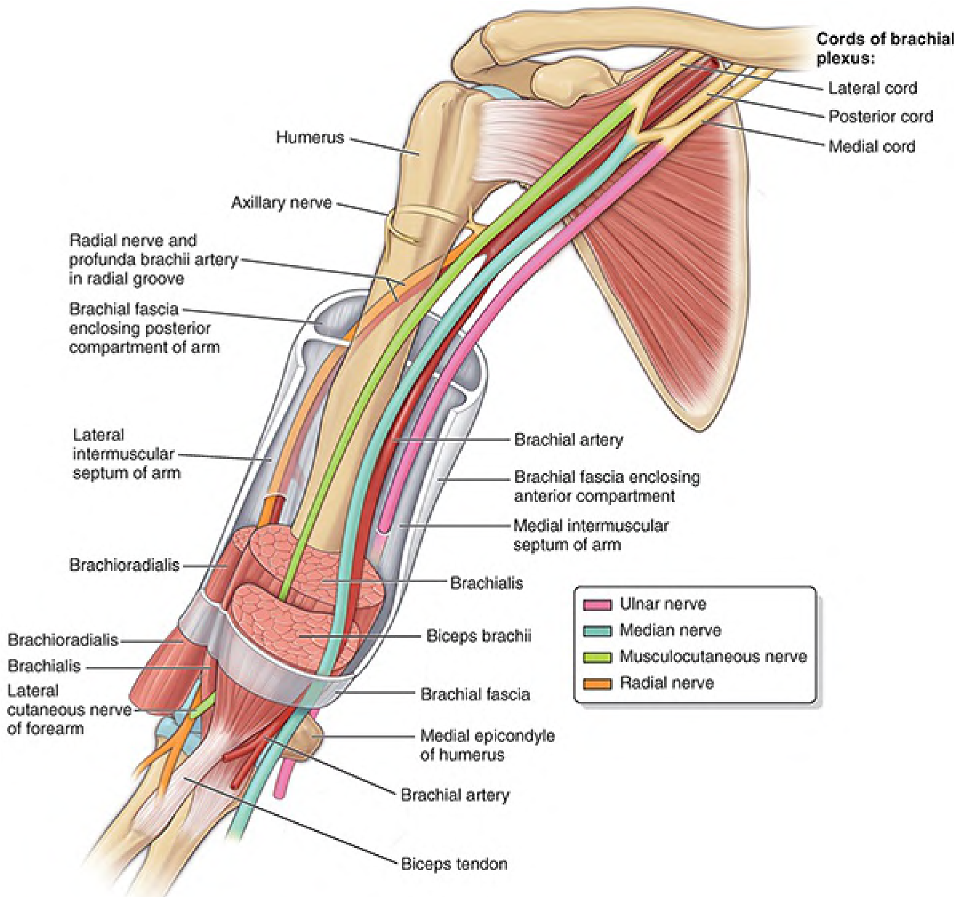


FIGURE 3.55. Relationship of arteries and nerves of arm to humerus and compartments of arm. The radial nerve and accompanying profunda brachii artery wind posteriorly around, and directly on the surface of, the humerus in the radial groove. The radial nerve and radial collateral artery then pierce the lateral intermuscular septum to enter the anterior compartment. The ulnar nerve pierces the medial intermuscular septum to enter the posterior compartment and then lies in the groove for the ulnar nerve on the posterior aspect of the medial epicondyle of the humerus. The median nerve and brachial artery descend in the arm to the medial side of the cubital fossa, where it is well protected and rarely injured. (Details are shown in Fig. 3.54.)

MUSCULOCUTANEOUS NERVE

The **musculocutaneous nerve** begins opposite the inferior border of the pectoralis minor,

pierces the coracobrachialis, and continues distally between the biceps and brachialis (Fig. 3.54B). After supplying all three muscles of the anterior compartment of the arm and sending articular branches to the elbow joint, the musculocutaneous nerve emerges lateral to the biceps as the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm (Fig. 3.55). It becomes truly subcutaneous when it pierces the deep fascia proximal to the cubital fossa to course initially with the cephalic vein in the subcutaneous tissue (Fig. 3.54A). After crossing the anterior aspect of the elbow, it continues to supply the skin of the lateral aspect of the forearm.

RADIAL NERVE

The **radial nerve** in the arm supplies all the muscles in the posterior compartment of the arm (and forearm). The radial nerve enters the arm posterior to the brachial artery, medial to the humerus, and anterior to the long head of the triceps, where it gives branches to the long and medial heads of the triceps (Fig. 3.50). The radial nerve then descends inferolaterally with the profunda brachii artery and passes around the humeral shaft in the radial groove (Figs. 3.49B, 3.52, and 3.55). The branch of the radial nerve to the lateral head of the triceps arises within the radial groove. When it reaches the lateral border of the humerus, the radial nerve pierces the lateral intermuscular septum and continues inferiorly in the anterior compartment of the arm between the brachialis and the brachioradialis to the level of the lateral epicondyle of the humerus (Fig. 3.54B).

Anterior to the lateral epicondyle, the radial nerve divides into deep and superficial branches.

- The **deep branch of the radial nerve** is entirely muscular and articular in its distribution.
- The **superficial branch of the radial nerve** is entirely cutaneous in its distribution, supplying sensation to the dorsum of the hand and fingers.

MEDIAN NERVE

The median nerve in the arm runs distally in the arm on the lateral side of the brachial artery until it reaches the middle of the arm, where it crosses to the medial side and contacts the brachialis (Fig. 3.55). The median nerve then descends into the cubital fossa, where it lies deep to the bicipital aponeurosis and median cubital vein (Fig. 3.54). The median nerve has no branches in the axilla or arm, but it does supply articular branches to the elbow joint.

ULNAR NERVE

The ulnar nerve in the arm passes distally from the axilla anterior to the insertion of the teres major and to the long head of the triceps, on the medial side of the brachial artery (Fig. 3.49). Around the middle of the arm, it pierces the medial intermuscular septum with the superior ulnar collateral artery and descends between the septum and the medial head of the triceps (Fig. 3.55). The ulnar nerve passes posterior to the medial epicondyle and medial to the olecranon to enter the forearm (see Fig. 3.48C and 3.49A). Posterior to the medial epicondyle, where the ulnar nerve is referred to in lay terms as the “funny bone,” the ulnar nerve is superficial, easily palpable, and vulnerable to injury. Like the median nerve, the ulnar nerve has no branches in the

arm, but it also supplies articular branches to the elbow joint.

Cubital Fossa

The cubital fossa is apparent superficially as a depression on the anterior aspect of the elbow region (see Fig. 3.57A). Deeply, it is a space filled with a variable amount of fat anterior to the most distal part of the humerus and the elbow joint. The three boundaries of the triangular cubital fossa are (Fig. 3.54)

1. Superiorly, an imaginary line connecting the medial and lateral epicondyles
2. Medially, the mass of flexor muscles of the forearm arising from the common flexor attachment on the medial epicondyle; most specifically, the pronator teres
3. Laterally, the mass of extensor muscles of the forearm arising from the lateral epicondyle and supra-epicondylar ridge; most specifically, the brachioradialis

The floor of the cubital fossa is formed by the brachialis and supinator muscles of the arm and forearm, respectively. The roof of the cubital fossa is formed by the continuity of brachial and antebrachial (deep) fascia reinforced by the bicipital aponeurosis (Fig. 3.54; see Fig. 3.60), subcutaneous tissue, and skin.

The contents of the cubital fossa are the (see Figs. 3.54; see Fig. 3.59A)

- Terminal part of the brachial artery and the commencement of its terminal branches, the radial and ulnar arteries. The brachial artery lies between the biceps tendon and the median nerve.
- (Deep) accompanying veins of the arteries
- Biceps brachii tendon
- Median nerve
- Radial nerve, deep between the muscles forming the lateral boundary of the fossa (the brachioradialis, in particular) and the brachialis, dividing into its superficial and deep branches. The muscles must be retracted to expose the nerve.

Superficially, in the subcutaneous tissue overlying the cubital fossa are the median cubital vein, lying anterior to the brachial artery, and the medial and lateral cutaneous nerves of the forearm, related to the basilic and cephalic veins (see Fig. 3.57).

Surface Anatomy of Arm and Cubital Fossa

The borders of the deltoid are visible when the arm is abducted against resistance. The distal attachment of the deltoid can be palpated on the lateral surface of the humerus (Fig. 3.56A).

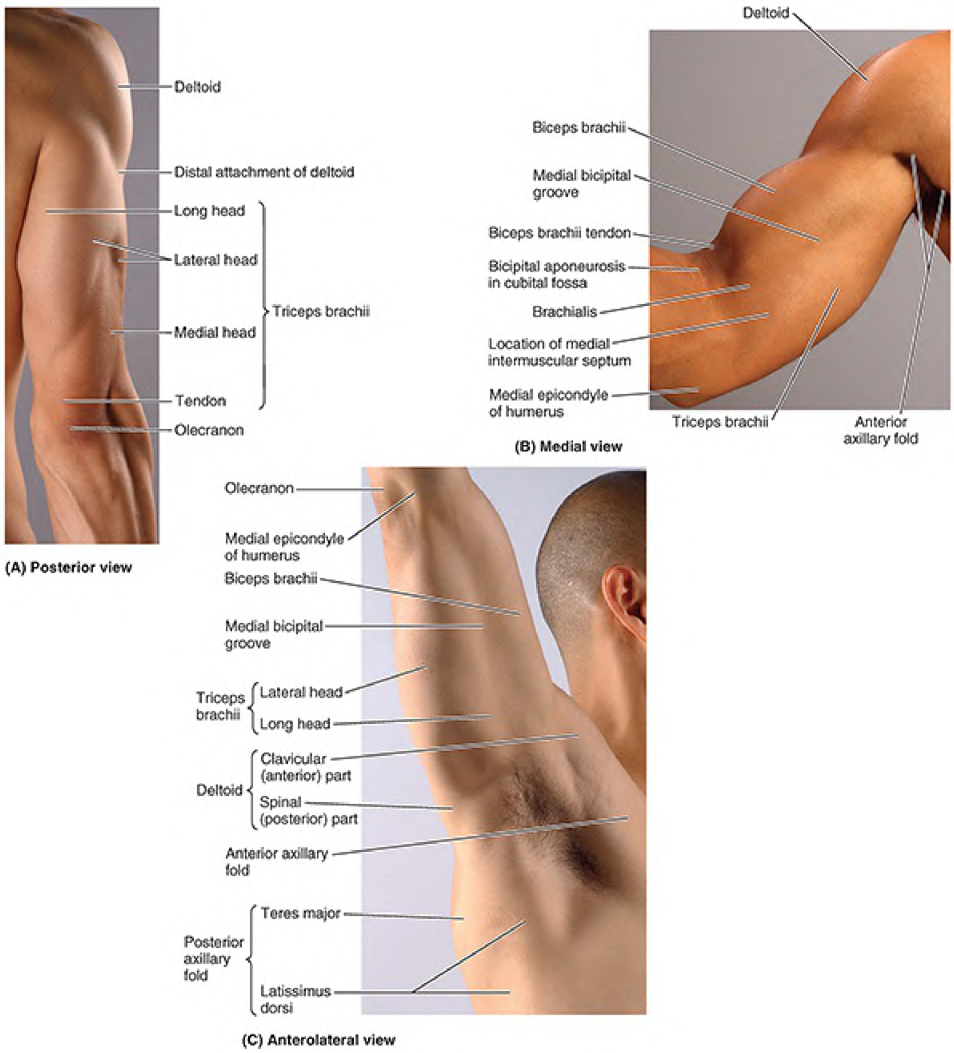


FIGURE 3.56. **Surface anatomy of arm. A.** Triceps brachii. **B.** Biceps and triceps brachii. **C.** Axillary folds and posterior arm.

The long, lateral, and medial heads of the triceps brachii form bulges on the posterior aspect of the arm and are identifiable when the forearm is extended from the flexed position against resistance. The olecranon, to which the triceps tendon attaches distally, is easily palpated. It is separated from the skin by only the olecranon bursa, which accounts for the mobility of the overlying skin. The triceps tendon is easily felt as it descends along the posterior aspect of the arm to the olecranon. The fingers can be pressed inward on each side of the tendon, where the elbow joint is superficial. An abnormal collection of fluid in the elbow joint or in the subtendinous bursa of the triceps brachii is palpable at these sites; the bursa lies deep to the triceps tendon (see Figs. 3.99 and 3.103).

The biceps brachii forms a bulge on the anterior aspect of the arm; its belly becomes more prominent when the elbow is flexed and supinated against resistance (Fig. 3.56B). The biceps brachii tendon can be palpated in the cubital fossa, immediately lateral to the midline, especially when the elbow is flexed against resistance. The proximal part of the bicipital aponeurosis can be

palpated where it passes obliquely over the brachial artery and median nerve. Medial and lateral bicipital grooves separate the bulges formed by the biceps and triceps and indicate the location of the medial and lateral intermuscular septa (Fig. 3.56C). The cephalic vein runs superiorly in the lateral bicipital groove, and the basilic vein ascends in the medial bicipital groove. Deep to the latter is the main neurovascular bundle of the limb.

No part of the shaft of the humerus is subcutaneous; however, it can be palpated with varying distinctness through the muscles surrounding it, especially in many elderly people.

The head of the humerus is surrounded by muscles on all sides, except inferiorly; thus, it can be palpated by pushing the fingers well up into the axilla. The arm should be close to the side so the axillary fascia is loose. The humeral head can be palpated when the arm is moved while the inferior angle of the scapula is held in place.

The brachial artery may be felt pulsating deep to the medial border of the biceps. The medial and lateral epicondyles of the humerus are subcutaneous and can be easily palpated at the medial and lateral aspects of the elbow. The medial epicondyle is more prominent.

In the cubital fossa, the cephalic and basilic veins in the subcutaneous tissue are clearly visible when a tourniquet is applied to the arm, as is the median cubital vein. This vein crosses the bicipital aponeurosis as it runs superomedially connecting the cephalic to the basilic vein (Fig. 3.57).

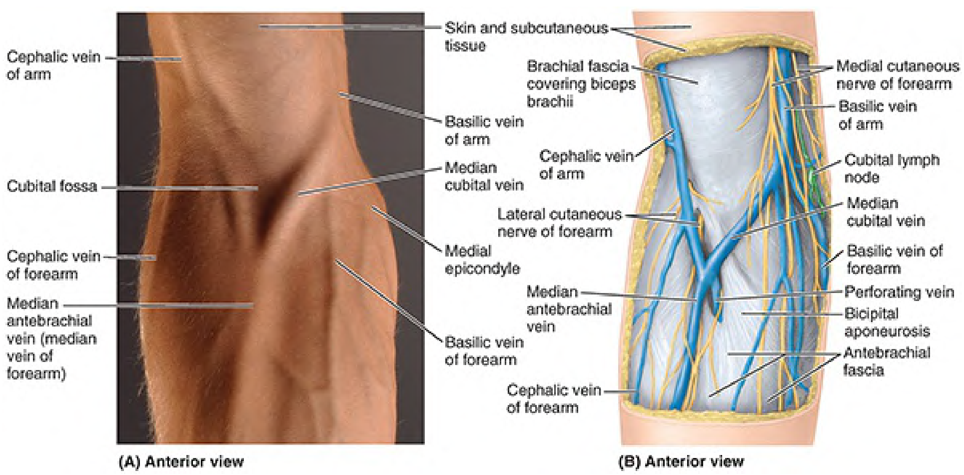


FIGURE 3.57. Surface anatomy of cubital fossa. A. Surface features. **B.** Superficial dissection.

If the thumb is pressed into the cubital fossa, the muscular masses of the long flexors of the forearm will be felt forming the medial border, the pronator teres most directly.

The lateral group of forearm extensors (a soft mass that can be grasped separately), the brachioradialis (most medial) and the long and short extensors of the wrist, can be grasped between the fossa and the lateral epicondyle.

CLINICAL BOX

ARM AND CUBITAL FOSSA

Bicipital Myotatic Reflex

The biceps reflex is one of several deep tendon reflexes that are routinely tested during physical examinations. The relaxed limb is passively pronated and partially extended at the elbow. The examiner's thumb is firmly placed on the biceps tendon, and the reflex hammer is briskly tapped at the base of the nail bed of the examiner's thumb (Fig. B3.14). A normal (positive) response is an involuntary contraction of the biceps, felt as a momentarily tensed tendon, usually with a brief jerk-like flexion of the elbow. A positive response confirms the integrity of the musculocutaneous nerve and the C5 and C6 spinal cord segments. Excessive, diminished, or prolonged (hung) responses may indicate central or peripheral nervous system disease, or metabolic disorders (e.g., thyroid disease).

FIGURE B3.14. Method of eliciting biceps reflex.

Biceps Tendinitis/Tendinosis

The tendon of the long head of the biceps is enclosed by a synovial sheath and moves back and forth in the intertubercular sulcus (bicipital groove) of the humerus (see Fig. 3.51B). Wear and tear of this mechanism can cause shoulder pain. Inflammation of the tendon (biceps tendinitis) results from microtears that happen when the musculotendinous unit is acutely loaded and is associated with degeneration of the tendon, vascular disruption, and an inflammatory repair response. Tendinosis is a degeneration within the tendon's collagen causing disorganization of the collagen in response to poor vascularization, chronic overuse, or aging; there is no inflammatory response in this case.

These conditions can occur as a result of repetitive microtrauma, which is common in sports involving throwing (e.g., baseball and cricket) and use of a racquet (e.g., tennis). A tight, narrow, and/or rough intertubercular sulcus may irritate and inflame the tendon, producing tenderness and crepitus (crackling sound).

Dislocation of Tendon of Long Head of Biceps Brachii

The tendon of the long head of the biceps can be partially or completely dislocated from the

intertubercular sulcus in the humerus. This painful condition may occur in young persons during traumatic separation of the proximal epiphysis of the humerus. The injury also occurs in older persons with a history of biceps tendinitis. Usually, a sensation of popping or catching is felt during arm rotation.

Rupture of Tendon of Long Head of Biceps Brachii

Rupture of the tendon usually results from wear and tear of an inflamed tendon as it moves back and forth in the intertubercular sulcus of the humerus. This injury usually occurs in individuals >35 years of age. Typically, the tendon is torn from its attachment to the supraglenoid tubercle of the scapula (see Fig. 3.5D). The rupture is commonly dramatic and is associated with a snap or pop. The detached muscle belly forms a ball near the center of the distal part of the anterior aspect of the arm (Popeye deformity) (Fig. B3.15). Rupture of the biceps tendon may result from forceful flexion of the arm against excessive resistance, as occurs in weight lifters. However, the tendon ruptures more often as the result of prolonged tendinitis that weakens it. The rupture results from repetitive overhead motions, such as occurs in swimmers and baseball pitchers, that tear the weakened tendon in the intertubercular sulcus.

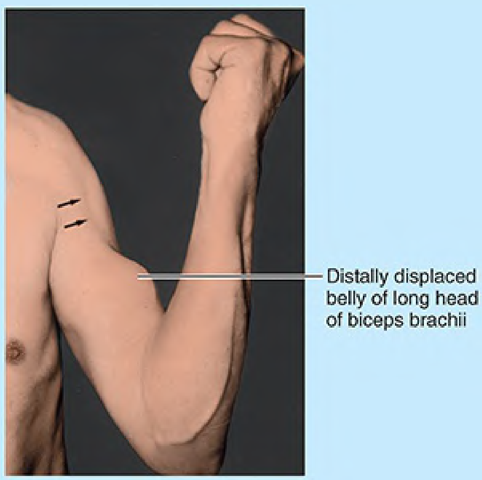


FIGURE B3.15. Rupture of biceps tendon (arrows).

Interruption of Blood Flow in Brachial Artery

Temporary occlusion, compression, and resumption of blood flow in the brachial artery is the basis for measuring blood pressure with a blood pressure cuff (sphygmomanometer) (Fig. B3.16A). After wrapping and securing the cuff snugly around the arm, centered over the brachial artery, the cuff is inflated sufficiently to temporarily occlude flow through the artery. Next, the cuff is gradually deflated while auscultating for sounds of turbulent flow using a stethoscope with its bell placed over the cubital fossa. The first instance of sound marks the systolic blood pressure. As the cuff is further deflated, the sound of turbulent flow from the brachial artery remains audible until

the artery is no longer compressed, marking the diastolic blood pressure.

Stopping bleeding through manual or surgical control of blood flow is called hemostasis. The best place to compress the brachial artery (manually or with a tourniquet) to control hemorrhage is medial to the humerus near the middle of the arm (Fig. B3.16B). Because the arterial anastomoses around the elbow provide a functionally and surgically important collateral circulation, the brachial artery may be clamped distal to the origin of the deep artery of the arm without producing tissue damage (see Fig. 3.53). The anatomical basis for this procedure is that the ulnar and radial arteries will still receive sufficient blood through the anastomoses around the elbow.

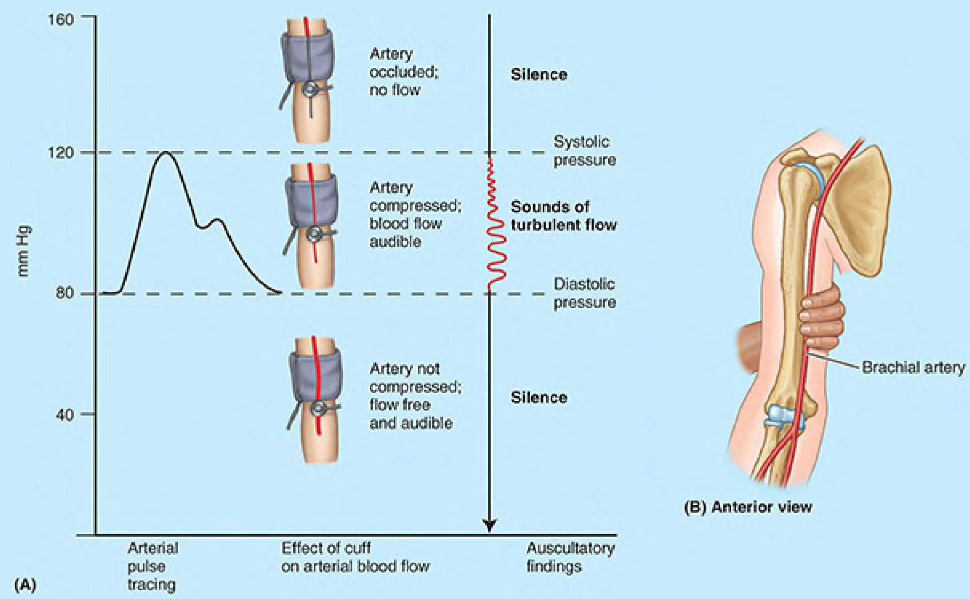


FIGURE B3.16. Interruption of blood flow in brachial artery. A. Measuring blood pressure. **B.** Manual compression of brachial artery.

Although collateral pathways confer some protection against gradual temporary and partial occlusion, sudden complete occlusion or laceration of the brachial artery creates a surgical emergency because paralysis of muscles results from ischemia of the elbow and forearm within a few hours. After this, fibrous scar tissue replaces necrotic tissue and causes the involved muscles to shorten permanently, producing a flexion deformity, the ischemic compartment syndrome (Volkmann or ischemic contracture). Flexion of the fingers and sometimes the wrist results in loss of hand power as a result of irreversible necrosis of the forearm flexor muscles.

Nerve Injury in Fracture of Humeral Shaft

A midhumeral fracture may injure the radial nerve in the radial groove in the humeral shaft. When this nerve is damaged, the fracture is not likely to paralyze the triceps because of the high origin of the nerves to two of its three heads. A fracture of the distal part of the humerus, near the supra-epicondylar ridges, is called a supra-

epicondylar fracture (Fig. B3.17). The distal bone fragment may be displaced anteriorly or posteriorly. The actions of the brachialis and triceps tend to pull the distal fragment over the proximal fragment, shortening the limb. Any of the nerves or branches of the brachial vessels related to the humerus may be injured by a displaced bone fragment.

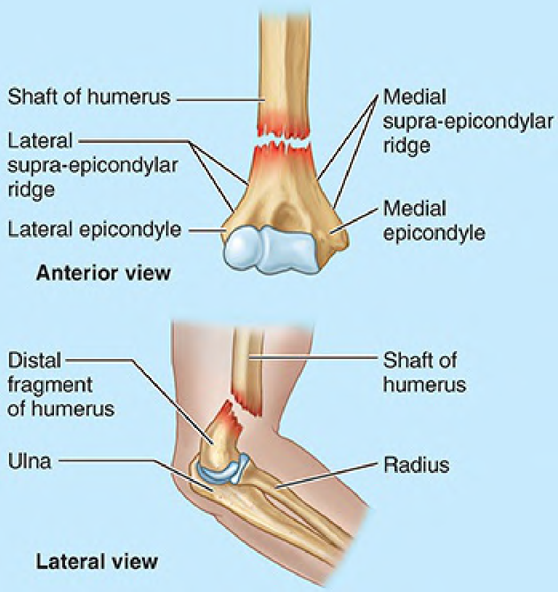


FIGURE B3.17. **Supra-epicondylar fracture.**

Injury to Musculocutaneous Nerve

Injury to the musculocutaneous nerve in the axilla (uncommon in this protected position) is typically inflicted by a weapon such as a knife. A musculocutaneous nerve injury results in paralysis of the coracobrachialis, biceps, and brachialis. Weak flexion may occur at the glenohumeral (shoulder) joint owing to the injury of the musculocutaneous nerve affecting the long head of the biceps brachii and the coracobrachialis. Consequently, flexion of the elbow joint and supination of the forearm are greatly weakened but not lost. Weak flexion and supination are still possible, produced by the brachioradialis and supinator, respectively, both of which are supplied by the radial nerve. Loss of sensation may occur on the lateral surface of the forearm supplied by the lateral cutaneous nerve of forearm, the continuation of the musculocutaneous nerve (see Fig. 3.55).

Injury to Radial Nerve in Arm

Injury to the radial nerve superior to the origin of its branches to the triceps brachii results in paralysis of the triceps, brachioradialis, supinator, and extensor muscles of the wrist and fingers. Loss of sensation in areas of skin supplied by this nerve also occurs.

When the nerve is injured in the radial groove, the triceps is usually not completely

paralyzed but only weakened because only the medial head is affected; however, the muscles in the posterior compartment of the forearm that are supplied by more distal branches of the nerve are paralyzed. The characteristic clinical sign of radial nerve injury is wrist-drop—inability to extend the wrist and the fingers at the metacarpophalangeal joints (Fig. B3.18A). Instead, the relaxed wrist assumes a partly flexed position owing to unopposed tonus of flexor muscles and gravity (Fig. B3.18B).

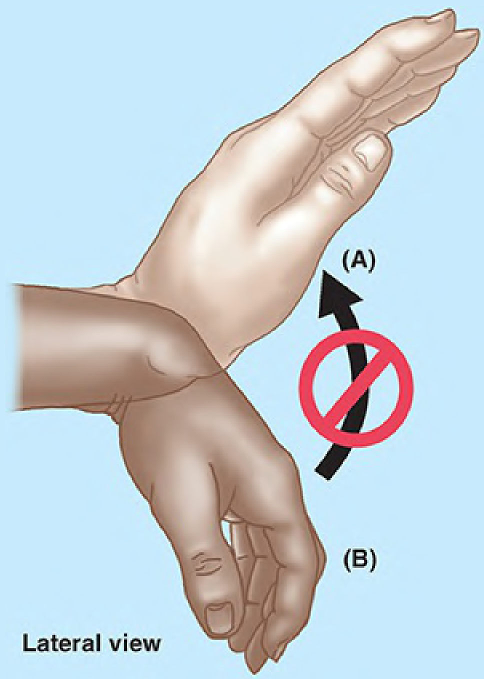


FIGURE B3.18. Wrist-drop.

Venipuncture in Cubital Fossa

The cubital fossa is the common site for sampling and transfusion of blood and intravenous injections because of the prominence and accessibility of veins. To assist location of a suitable vein, a tourniquet is placed around the arm, proximal to the cubital fossa, to block venous return, which causes the veins to engorge. When the most common pattern of superficial veins is present, the median cubital vein is selected (see Fig. 3.57). This vein lies directly on the deep fascia, running diagonally from the cephalic vein of the forearm to the basilic vein of the arm. It crosses the bicipital aponeurosis, which separates it from the underlying brachial artery and median nerve and provides some protection to the latter. The pattern of veins in the cubital fossa varies greatly. In approximately 20% of people, a **median antebrachial vein** (median vein of the forearm) divides into a **median basilic vein**, which joins the basilic vein of the arm, and a **median cephalic vein**, which joins the cephalic vein of the arm (Fig. B3.19). The tourniquet is removed before infusing fluids or before taking the needle out of the vein following the drawing of blood to avoid excessive bleeding and bruising. The median cubital vein is also a site for the introduction of cardiac catheters to secure blood samples from the great vessels

and chambers of the heart. Coronary angiography requires access to the arterial circulation, and hence is typically gained via the radial artery in the forearm, or the femoral artery in the proximal thigh.

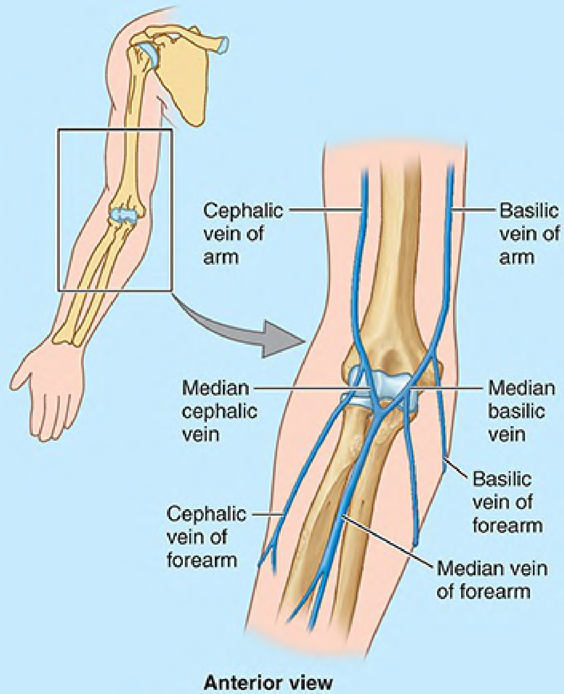


FIGURE B3.19. Median vein of forearm.

The Bottom Line: Arm and Cubital Fossa

Arm: The arm forms a column with the humerus at its center. ■ The humerus, along with intermuscular septa in its distal two thirds, divides the arm lengthwise (or more specifically, the space inside the brachial fascia) into anterior or flexor and posterior or extensor compartments.

The anterior compartment contains three flexor muscles supplied by the musculocutaneous nerve. ■ The coracobrachialis acts (weakly) at the shoulder, and the biceps and brachialis act at the elbow. ■ The biceps is also the primary supinator of the forearm (when the elbow is flexed). ■ The brachialis is the primary flexor of the forearm.

The posterior compartment contains a three-headed extensor muscle, the triceps, which is supplied by the radial nerve. ■ One of the heads (the long head) acts at the shoulder, but mostly the heads work together to extend the elbow.

Both compartments of the arm are supplied by the brachial artery, the posterior compartment primarily via its major branch, the profunda brachii artery. ■ The primary neurovascular bundle is located on the medial side of the limb; thus, it is usually protected

by the limb it serves.

Cubital fossa: The triangular cubital fossa is bound by a line connecting the medial and lateral epicondyles of the humerus, and the pronator teres and brachioradialis muscles arising, respectively, from the epicondyles. ■ The brachialis and supinator form the floor. ■ The biceps tendon descends into the triangle to insert on the radial tuberosity. ■ Medial to the tendon are the median nerve and terminal part of the brachial artery. ■ Lateral to the tendon is the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm superficially and—at a deeper level—the terminal part of the radial nerve. ■ In the subcutaneous tissue, most commonly, a median cubital vein runs obliquely across the fossa, connecting the cephalic vein of the forearm and basilic vein of the arm, providing an advantageous site for venipuncture. ■ In about one fifth of the population, a median antebrachial vein bifurcates into median cephalic and median basilic veins, which replace the diagonal median cubital vein.

FOREARM

The **forearm** is the distal unit of the articulated strut (extension) of the upper limb. It extends from the elbow to the wrist and contains two bones, the radius and ulna, which are joined by an **interosseous membrane** (Fig. 3.58A, B, D). Although thin, this fibrous membrane is strong. In addition to firmly tying the forearm bones together while permitting pronation and supination, the interosseous membrane provides the proximal attachment for some deep forearm muscles. The head of the ulna is at the distal end of the forearm, whereas the head of the radius is at its proximal end. The role of forearm movement, occurring at the elbow and radio-ulnar joints, is to assist the shoulder in the application of force and in controlling the placement of the hand in space.

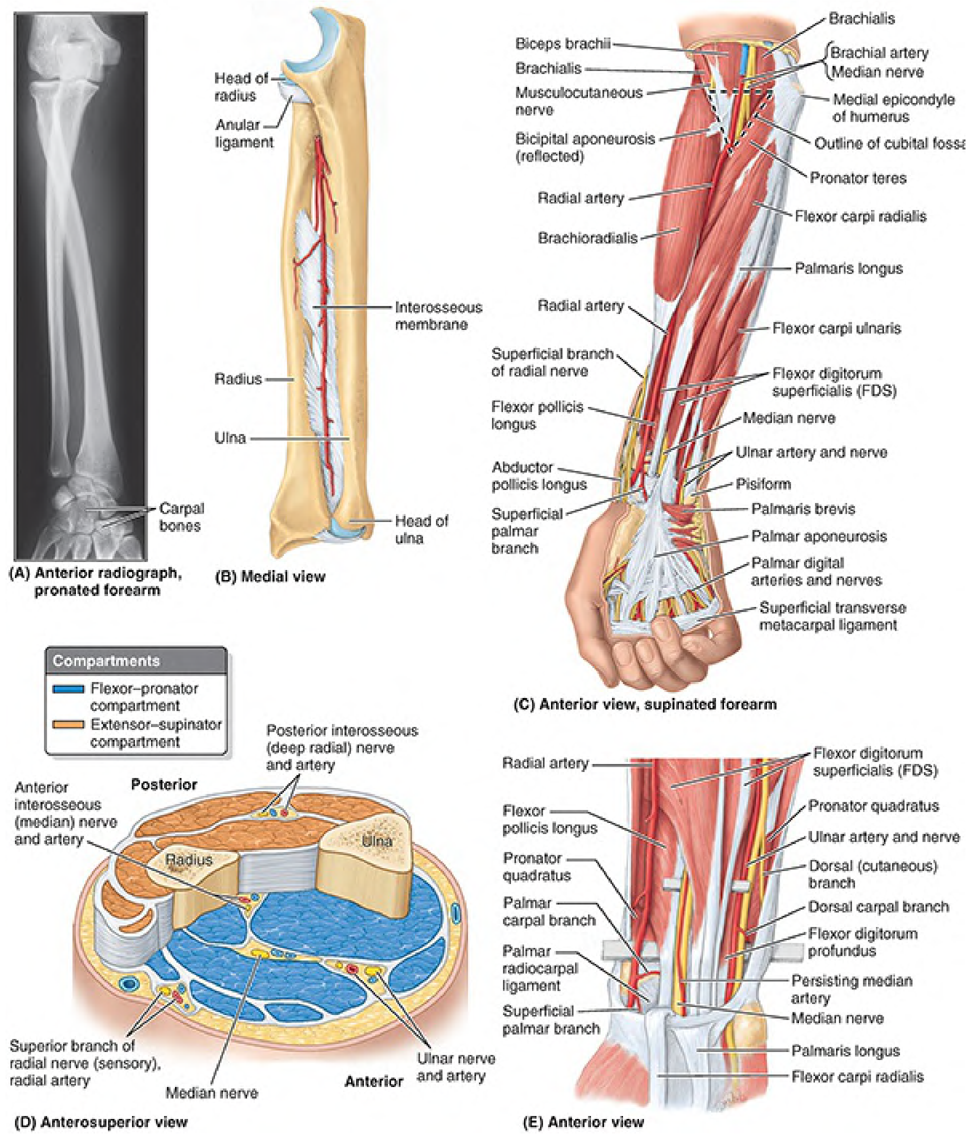


FIGURE 3.58. Bones, muscles, and flexor–pronator compartment of forearm. A. Anterior radiograph of the forearm in pronation. **B.** Bones of forearm and radio-ulnar ligaments. **C.** Dissection showing superficial muscles of forearm and palmar aponeurosis. **D.** Stepped transverse section of compartments of forearm. **E.** Flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS) and related structures. The ulnar artery emerges from its oblique course posterior to the FDS to meet and accompany the ulnar nerve.

Compartments of Forearm

As in the arm, the muscles of similar purpose and innervation are grouped within the same fascial compartments in the forearm. Although the proximal boundary of the forearm per se is defined by the joint plane of the elbow, functionally the forearm includes the distal humerus.

For the distal forearm, wrist, and hand to have minimal bulk to maximize their functionality, they are operated by “remote control” by extrinsic muscles having their bulky, fleshy, contractile parts located proximally in the forearm, distant from the site of action. Their long, slender tendons extend distally to the operative site, like long ropes reaching to distant pulleys.

Furthermore, because the structures on which the muscles and tendons act (wrist and fingers) have an extensive range of motion, a long range of contraction is needed, requiring that the muscles have long contractile parts as well as a long tendon(s).

The forearm proper is not, in fact, long enough to provide the required length and sufficient area for attachment proximally, so the proximal attachments (origins) of the muscles must occur proximal to the elbow—in the arm—and provided by the humerus.

Generally, flexors lie anteriorly and extensors posteriorly; however, the anterior and posterior aspects of the distal humerus are occupied by the chief flexors and extensors of the elbow (Fig. 3.59A). To provide the required attachment sites for the flexors and extensors of the wrist and fingers, medial and lateral extensions (epicondyles and supra-epicondylar ridges) have developed from the distal humerus.

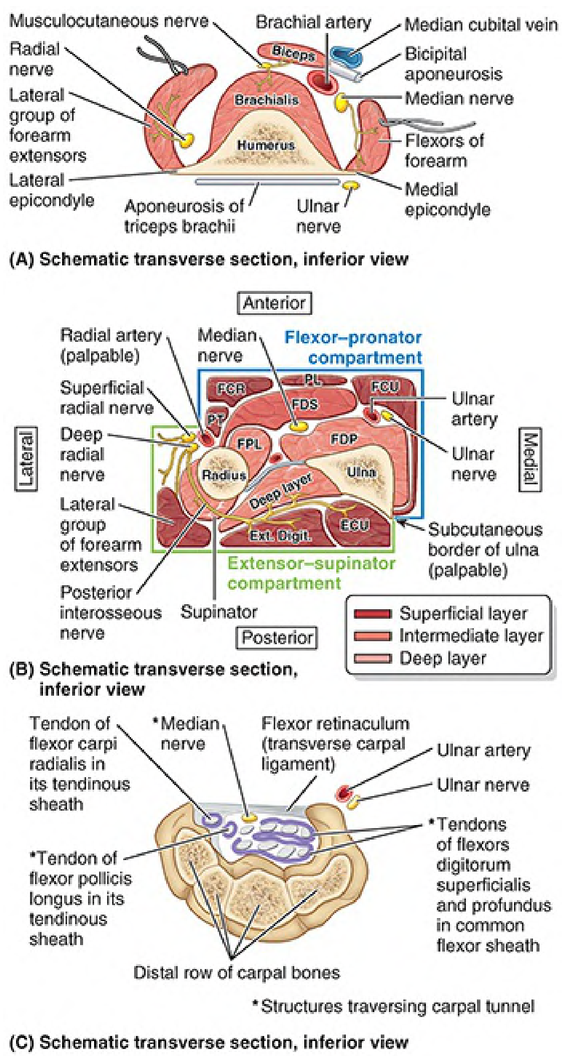


FIGURE 3.59. Transverse sections demonstrating relationships at cubital fossa, proximal forearm, and wrist. A. Cubital fossa. The flexors and extensor of the elbow occupy the anterior and posterior aspects of the humerus. Lateral and medial extensions (epicondyles and supra-epicondylar ridges) of the humerus provide proximal attachment (origin) for the forearm flexors and extensors. **B.** Proximal forearm. Consequently, in the proximal forearm, the "anterior" flexor–pronator compartment actually lies anteromedially, and the "posterior" extensor–supinator compartment lies posterolaterally. The radial artery (laterally) and the sharp, subcutaneous posterior border of the ulna (medially) are palpable features separating

the anterior and posterior compartments. No motor nerves cross either demarcation, making them useful for surgical approaches. Ext. Digit., extensor digitorum; ECU, extensor carpi ulnaris; FCR, flexor carpi radialis; FCU, flexor carpi ulnaris; FDP, flexor digitorum profundus; FDS, flexor digitorum superficialis; FPL, flexor pollicis longus; PL, palmaris longus; PT, pronator teres. **C.** Wrist. Nine tendons from three muscles (and one nerve) of the anterior compartment of the forearm traverse the carpal tunnel; eight of the tendons share a common synovial flexor sheath.

The medial epicondyle and supra-epicondylar ridge provide attachment for the forearm flexors, and the lateral formations provide attachment for the forearm extensors. Thus, rather than lying strictly anteriorly and posteriorly, the proximal parts of the "anterior" (flexor–pronator) compartment of the forearm lie anteromedially, and the "posterior" (extensor–supinator) compartment lies posterolaterally (Figs. 3.58D and 3.59B; see Fig. 3.63C).

Spiraling gradually over the length of the forearm, the compartments become truly anterior and posterior in the distal forearm and wrist. These fascial compartments, containing the muscles in functional groups, are demarcated by the subcutaneous border of the ulna posteriorly (in the proximal forearm) and then medially (distal forearm) and by the radial artery anteriorly and then laterally. These structures are palpable (the artery by its pulsations) throughout the forearm. Because neither boundary is crossed by motor nerves, they also provide sites for surgical incision.

The **flexors and pronators of the forearm** are in the anterior compartment and are served mainly by the median nerve; the one and a half exceptions are innervated by the ulnar nerve. The **extensors and supinators of the forearm** are in the posterior compartment and are all served by the radial nerve (directly or by its deep branch).

The fascial compartments of the limbs generally end at the joints; therefore, fluids and infections in compartments are usually contained and cannot readily spread to other compartments. The anterior compartment is exceptional in this regard because it communicates with the central compartment of the palm through the carpal tunnel (Fig. 3.59C; see Fig. B3.32).

Muscles of Forearm

There are 17 muscles crossing the elbow joint, some of which act on the elbow joint exclusively, whereas others act at the wrist and fingers.

In the proximal part of the forearm, the muscles form fleshy masses extending inferiorly from the medial and lateral epicondyles of the humerus (Figs. 3.58C and 3.59A). The tendons of these muscles pass through the distal part of the forearm and continue into the wrist, hand, and fingers (Figs. 3.58C, E and 3.59C). The flexor muscles of the anterior compartment have approximately twice the bulk and strength of the extensor muscles of the posterior compartment.

FLEXOR–PRONATOR MUSCLES OF FOREARM

The **flexor muscles of the forearm** are in the **anterior (flexor–pronator) compartment of the forearm** and are separated from the extensor muscles of the forearm by the radius and ulna (Fig. 3.59B) and, in the distal two thirds of the forearm, by the interosseous membrane that connects them (Fig. 3.58B, D).

The tendons of most flexor muscles are located on the anterior surface of the wrist and are

held in place by the **palmar carpal ligament** and the flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal ligament), thickenings of the antebrachial fascia (Figs. 3.58C and 3.60).

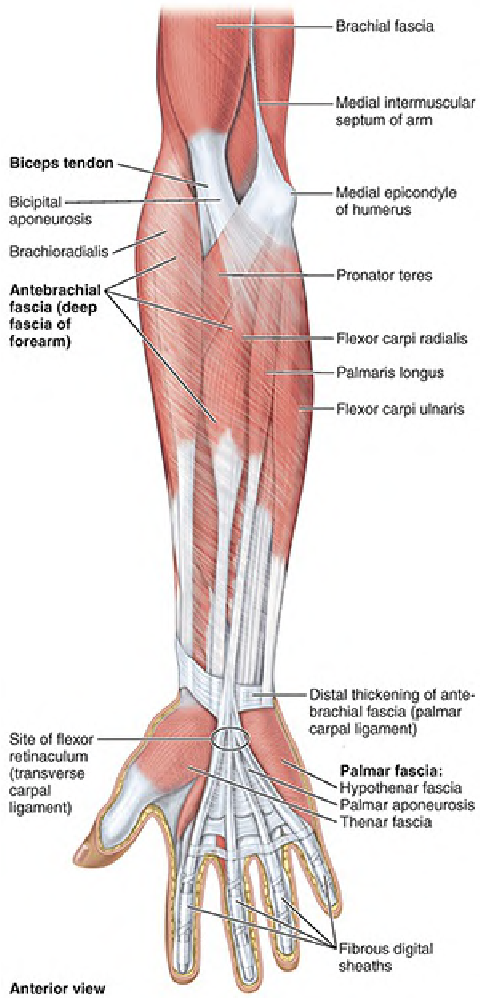


FIGURE 3.60. Fascia of distal upper limb and superficial muscles of forearm.

The flexor–pronator muscles are arranged in three layers or groups (Fig. 3.61; Table 3.10):

TABLE 3.10. MUSCLES OF ANTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF FOREARM

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action
Superficial (first) layer				
Pronator teres				
Ulnar head	Coronoid process	Middle of convexity of lateral surface of radius	Median nerve (C6, **C7**)	Pronates and flexes forearm (at elbow)
Humeral head	Medial epicondyle of humerus (common flexor origin)			
Flexor carpi radialis (FCR)		Base of 2nd metacarpal		Flexes and abducts hand (at wrist)

Palmaris longus		Distal half of flexor retinaculum and apex of palmar aponeurosis	Median nerve (C7, C8)	Flexes hand (at wrist) and tenses palmar aponeurosis
Flexor carpi ulnaris (FCU)				
Humeral head		Pisiform, hook of hamate, 5th metacarpal	Ulnar nerve (C7, **C8**)	Flexes and adducts hand (at wrist)
Ulnar head	Olecranon and posterior border of ulna (via aponeurosis)			
Intermediate (second) layer				
Flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS)				
Humero-ulnar head	Medial epicondyle (common flexor origin and coronoid process)	Shafts of middle phalanges of medial four digits	Median nerve (C7, C8, T1)	Flexes middle phalanges at proximal interphalangeal joints of middle four digits; acting more strongly, it also flexes proximal phalanges at metacarpophalangeal joints
Radial head	Superior half of anterior border			
Deep (third) layer				
Flexor digitorum profundus (FDP)				
Medial part	Proximal three quarters of medial and anterior surfaces of ulna and interosseous membrane	Bases of distal phalanges of 4th and 5th digits	Ulnar nerve (C8, **T1**)	Flexes distal phalanges 4 and 5 at distal interphalangeal joints
Lateral part		Bases of distal phalanges of 2nd and 3rd digits	Anterior interosseous nerve, from median nerve (**C8**, T1)	Flexes distal phalanges 2 and 3 at distal interphalangeal joints
Flexor pollicis longus (FPL)	Anterior surface of radius and adjacent interosseous membrane	Base of distal phalanx of thumb		Flexes phalanges of 1st digit (thumb)
Pronator quadratus	Distal quarter of anterior surface of ulna	Distal quarter of anterior surface of radius		Pronates forearm; deep fibers bind radius and ulna together

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., “C6, **C7**” means that the nerves supplying the pronator teres are derived from the sixth and seventh cervical segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (e.g., **C7**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

1. A **superficial layer or group** of four muscles (pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, palmaris longus, and flexor carpi ulnaris). These muscles are all attached proximally by a common flexor tendon to the medial epicondyle of the humerus, the common flexor attachment.
2. An **intermediate layer**, consisting of one muscle (flexor digitorum superficialis)
3. A **deep layer or group** of three muscles (flexor digitorum profundus, flexor pollicis longus,

and pronator quadratus)

The five superficial and intermediate muscles cross the elbow joint; the three deep muscles do not. With the exception of the pronator quadratus, the more distally placed a muscle's distal attachment lies, the more distally and deeply placed is its proximal attachment.

All muscles in the anterior (flexor–pronator) compartment of the forearm are supplied by the median and/or ulnar nerves (most by the median; only one and a half exceptions are supplied by the ulnar).

Functionally, the brachioradialis is a flexor of the forearm, but it is located in the posterior (posterolateral) or extensor compartment and is thus supplied by the radial nerve. Therefore, the brachioradialis is a major exception to the rule that (1) the radial nerve supplies only extensor muscles and (2) that all flexors lie in the anterior (flexor) compartment.

The **long flexors of the digits** (flexor digitorum superficialis and flexor digitorum profundus) also flex the metacarpophalangeal and wrist joints. The flexor digitorum profundus flexes the digits in slow action. This action is reinforced by the flexor digitorum superficialis when speed and flexion against resistance are required. When the wrist is flexed at the same time that the metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints are flexed, the long flexor muscles of the fingers are operating over a shortened distance between attachments, and the action resulting from their contraction is consequently weaker. Extending the wrist increases their operating distance, and thus, their contraction is more efficient in producing a strong grip (see Fig. 3.75A).

Tendons of the long flexors of the digits pass through the distal part of the forearm, wrist, and palm and continue to the medial four fingers. The flexor digitorum superficialis flexes the middle phalanges, and the flexor digitorum profundus flexes the middle and distal phalanges.

The muscles of the anterior compartment of the forearm are illustrated in Figure 3.61 and their attachments, innervation, and main actions are listed by layers in Table 3.10. The following discussion provides additional details, beginning with the muscles of the superficial and intermediate layers.

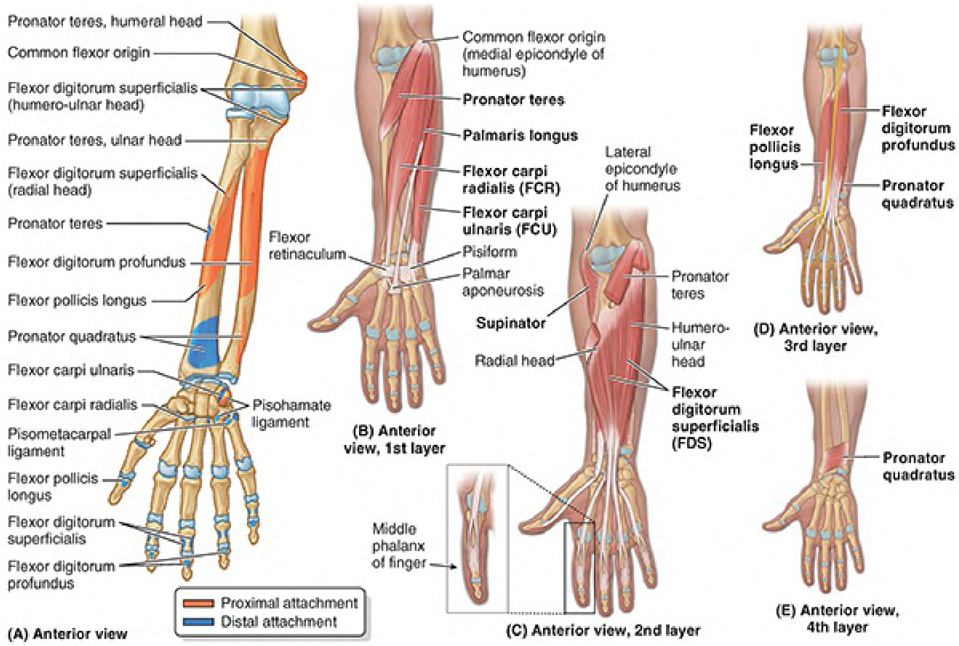


FIGURE 3.61. Flexor muscles of forearm.

Pronator Teres. The **pronator teres**, a fusiform muscle, is the most lateral of the superficial forearm flexors. Its lateral border forms the medial boundary of the cubital fossa.

To test the pronator teres, the person's forearm is flexed at the elbow and pronated from the supine position against resistance provided by the examiner. If acting normally, the muscle is prominent and can be palpated at the medial margin of the cubital fossa.

Flexor Carpi Radialis. The **flexor carpi radialis (FCR)** is a long fusiform muscle located medial to the pronator teres. In the middle of the forearm, its fleshy belly is replaced by a long, flattened tendon that becomes cord-like as it approaches the wrist. The FCR produces flexion (when acting with the flexor carpi ulnaris) and abduction of the wrist (when acting with the extensors carpi radialis longus and brevis). When acting alone, the FCR produces a combination of flexion and abduction simultaneously at the wrist so that the hand moves anterolaterally.

To reach its distal attachment, the FCR tendon passes through a canal in the lateral part of the flexor retinaculum and through a vertical groove in the trapezium in its own synovial **tendinous sheath of the flexor carpi radialis** (Fig. 3.59C). The FCR tendon is a good guide to the radial artery, which lies just lateral to it (Fig. 3.58C).

To test the flexor carpi radialis, the person is asked to flex the wrist against resistance. If acting normally, its tendon can be easily seen and palpated.

Palmaris Longus. The **palmaris longus**, a small fusiform muscle, is absent on one or both sides (usually the left) in approximately 14% of people, but its actions are not missed. It has a short belly and a long, cord-like tendon that passes superficial to the flexor retinaculum and attaches to it and the apex of the palmar aponeurosis (Figs. 3.58C and 3.59). The palmaris longus tendon is a useful guide to the median nerve at the wrist. The tendon lies deep and slightly medial to this nerve before it passes deep to the flexor retinaculum.

To test the palmaris longus, the wrist is flexed and the pads of the little finger and thumb are tightly pinched together. If present and acting normally, the tendon can be easily seen and palpated.

Flexor Carpi Ulnaris. The **flexor carpi ulnaris (FCU)** is the most medial of the superficial flexor muscles. The FCU simultaneously flexes and adducts the hand at the wrist if acting alone. It flexes the wrist when it acts with the FCR and adducts it when acting with the extensor carpi ulnaris. The ulnar nerve enters the forearm by passing between the humeral and ulnar heads of its proximal attachment (Fig. 3.58C). This muscle is exceptional among muscles of the anterior compartment, being fully innervated by the ulnar nerve. The tendon of the FCU is a guide to the ulnar nerve and artery, which are on its lateral side at the wrist (Fig. 3.58C, E).

To test the flexor carpi ulnaris, the person puts the posterior aspect of the forearm and hand on a flat table and is then asked to flex the wrist against resistance while the examiner palpates the muscle and its tendon.

Flexor Digitorum Superficialis. The **flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS)** is sometimes considered one of the superficial muscles of the forearm, which attach to the common flexor origin and therefore cross the elbow (Table 3.10). When considered this way, it is the largest superficial muscle in the forearm. However, the FDS actually forms an intermediate layer between the superficial and deep groups of forearm muscles (Figs. 3.58C and 3.59B). The median nerve and ulnar artery enter the forearm by passing between its humero-ulnar and radial heads (see Fig. 3.68). Near the wrist, the FDS gives rise to four tendons, which pass deep to the flexor retinaculum through the carpal tunnel to the fingers. The four tendons are enclosed (along with the four tendons of the flexor digitorum profundus) in a synovial common flexor sheath (Fig. 3.59C). The FDS flexes the middle phalanges of the medial four fingers at the proximal interphalangeal joints. In continued action, the FDS also flexes the proximal phalanges at the metacarpophalangeal joints and the wrist joint. The FDS is capable of flexing each finger it serves independently.

To test the flexor digitorum superficialis, one finger is flexed at the proximal interphalangeal joint against resistance and the other three fingers are held in an extended position to inactivate the flexor digitorum profundus.

The fascial plane between the intermediate and deep layers of muscles makes up the primary neurovascular plane of the anterior (flexor–pronator) compartment; the main neurovascular bundles exclusive to this compartment course within it. The following three muscles form the deep layer of forearm flexor muscles.

Flexor Digitorum Profundus. The **flexor digitorum profundus (FDP)** is the only muscle that can flex the distal interphalangeal joints of the fingers (Fig. 3.61A, D). This thick muscle "clothes" the anterior aspect of the ulna. The FDP flexes the distal phalanges of the medial four fingers after the FDS has flexed their middle phalanges (i.e., it curls the fingers and assists with flexion of the hand, making a fist). Each tendon is capable of flexing two interphalangeal joints, the metacarpophalangeal joint and the wrist joint. The FDP divides into four parts, which end in four tendons that pass posterior to the FDS tendons and the flexor retinaculum within the common flexor sheath (Fig. 3.59C). The part of the muscle going to the index finger usually

separates from the rest of the muscle relatively early in the distal part of the forearm and is capable of independent contraction. Each tendon enters the fibrous sheath of its digit, posterior to the FDS tendons. Unlike the FDS, the FDP can flex only the index finger independently; thus, the fingers can be independently flexed at the proximal but not the distal interphalangeal joints.

To test the flexor digitorum profundus, the proximal interphalangeal joint is held in the extended position while the person attempts to flex the distal interphalangeal joint. The integrity of the median nerve in the proximal forearm can be tested by performing this test using the index finger, and that of the ulnar nerve can be assessed by using the little finger.

Flexor Pollicis Longus. The **flexor pollicis longus (FPL)**, the long flexor of the thumb (L. pollex, thumb), lies lateral to the FDP, where it clothes the anterior aspect of the radius distal to the attachment of the supinator (Figs. 3.58C, E and 3.61A, D; Table 3.10). The flat FPL tendon passes deep to the flexor retinaculum, enveloped in its own synovial **tendinous sheath of the flexor pollicis longus** on the lateral side of the common flexor sheath (Fig. 3.59C). The FPL primarily flexes the distal phalanx of the thumb at the interphalangeal joint and, secondarily, the proximal phalanx and 1st metacarpal at the metacarpophalangeal and carpometacarpal joints, respectively. The FPL is the only muscle that flexes the interphalangeal joint of the thumb. It also may assist in flexion of the wrist joint.

To test the flexor pollicis longus, the proximal phalanx of the thumb is held and the distal phalanx is flexed against resistance.

Pronator Quadratus. The **pronator quadratus (PQ)**, as its name indicates, is quadrangular and pronates the forearm (Fig. 3.61E). It cannot be palpated or observed, except in dissections, because it is the deepest muscle in the anterior aspect of the forearm. Sometimes it is considered to constitute a fourth muscle layer. The PQ clothes the distal fourth of the radius and ulna and the interosseous membrane between them (Fig. 3.61A, E; Table 3.10). The PQ is the only muscle that attaches only to the ulna at one end and only to the radius at the other end.

The PQ is the prime mover for pronation. The muscle initiates pronation and is assisted by the PT when more speed and power are needed. The pronator quadratus also helps the interosseous membrane hold the radius and ulna together, particularly when upward thrusts are transmitted through the wrist (e.g., during a fall on the hand).

EXTENSOR MUSCLES OF FOREARM

The muscles of the posterior compartment of the forearm are illustrated in Figure 3.62, and their attachments, innervation, and main actions are provided by layer in Table 3.11. The following discussion provides additional details.

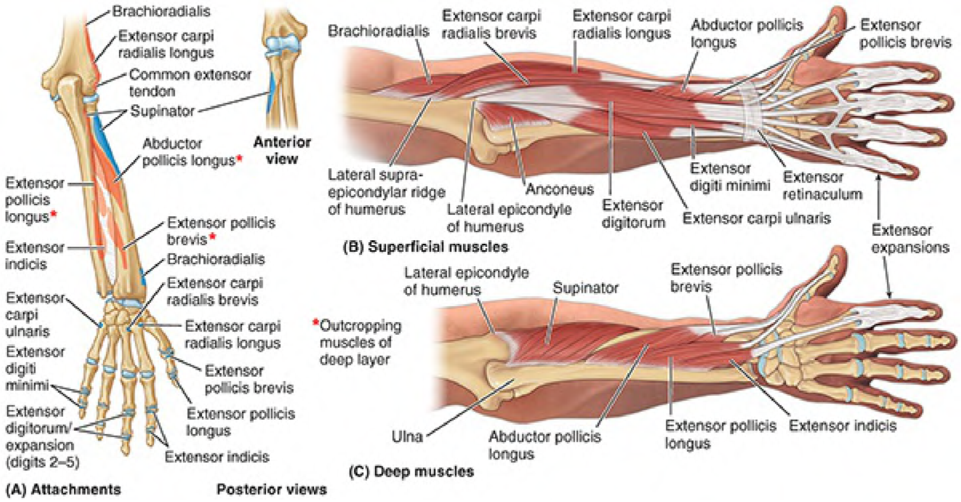


FIGURE 3.62. **Extensor muscles of forearm.**

TABLE 3.11. MUSCLES OF POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF FOREARM

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action
Superficial layer				
Brachioradialis	Proximal two thirds of lateral supra-epicondylar ridge of humerus	Lateral surface of distal end of radius proximal to styloid process	Radial nerve (C5, **C6**, C7)	Relatively weak flexion of forearm; maximal when forearm is in midpronated position
Extensor carpi radialis longus (ECRL)	Lateral supra-epicondylar ridge of humerus	Dorsal aspect of base of 2nd metacarpal	Radial nerve (C6, C7)	Extend and abduct hand at the wrist joint; ECRL active during fist clenching
Extensor carpi radialis brevis (ECRB)	Lateral epicondyle of humerus (common extensor origin)	Dorsal aspect of base of 3rd metacarpal	Deep branch of radial nerve (**C7**, C8)	
Extensor digitorum		Extensor expansions of medial four digits		Extends medial four digits primarily at metacarpophalangeal joints, secondarily at interphalangeal joints
Extensor digiti minimi (EDM)		Extensor expansion of 5th digit		Extends 5th digit primarily at metacarpophalangeal joint, secondarily at interphalangeal joint
Extensor carpi ulnaris (ECU)	Lateral epicondyle of humerus; posterior border of ulna via a shared aponeurosis	Dorsal aspect of base of 5th metacarpal		Extends and adducts hand at wrist joint (also active during fist clenching)
Deep layer				
Supinator	Lateral epicondyle of humerus; radial collateral	Lateral, posterior, and anterior surfaces of	Deep branch of radial nerve (C7,	Supinates forearm; rotates radius to turn palm

	and anular ligaments; supinator fossa; crest of ulna	proximal third of radius	**C8**)	anteriorly or superiorly (if elbow is flexed)
Extensor indicis	Posterior surface of distal third of ulna and interosseous membrane	Extensor expansion of 2nd digit	Posterior interosseous nerve (**C7**, C8), continuation of deep branch of radial nerve	Extends 2nd digit (enabling its independent extension); helps extend hand at wrist
Outcropping muscles of deep layer				
Abductor pollicis longus (APL)	Posterior surface of proximal halves of ulna, radius, and interosseous membrane	Base of 1st metacarpal	Posterior interosseous nerve (C7, **C8**), continuation of deep branch of radial nerve	Abducts thumb and extends it at carpometacarpal joint
Extensor pollicis longus (EPL)	Posterior surface of middle third of ulna and interosseous membrane	Dorsal aspect of base of distal phalanx of thumb		Extends distal phalanx of thumb at interphalangeal joint; extends metacarpophalangeal and carpometacarpal joints
Extensor pollicis brevis (EPB)	Posterior surface of distal third of radius and interosseous membrane	Dorsal aspect of base of proximal phalanx of thumb		Extends proximal phalanx of thumb at metacarpophalangeal joint; extends carpometacarpal joint

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "**C7**, C8" means that the nerves supplying the extensor carpi radialis brevis are derived from the seventh and eighth cervical segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (e.g., **C7**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

The **extensor muscles** are in the **posterior (extensor–supinator) compartment of the forearm**, and all of them are innervated by branches of the radial nerve (Fig. 3.59B). These muscles can be organized physiologically into three functional groups:

1. Muscles that extend and abduct or adduct the hand at the wrist joint (extensor carpi radialis longus, extensor carpi radialis brevis, and extensor carpi ulnaris)
2. Muscles that extend the medial four fingers (extensor digitorum, extensor indicis, and extensor digiti minimi)
3. Muscles that extend or abduct the thumb (abductor pollicis longus, extensor pollicis brevis, and extensor pollicis longus)

The extensor tendons are held in place in the wrist region by the extensor retinaculum, which prevents bowstringing of the tendons (protruding beyond the contour of the bent limb, like the string of an archer's bow) when the hand is extended at the wrist joint. As the tendons pass over the dorsum of the wrist, they are provided with **synovial tendon sheaths** that reduce friction for the extensor tendons as they traverse the osseofibrous tunnels formed by the attachment of the extensor retinaculum to the distal radius and ulna (Fig. 3.63). The extensor muscles of the forearm are organized anatomically into superficial and deep layers (Fig. 3.59B).

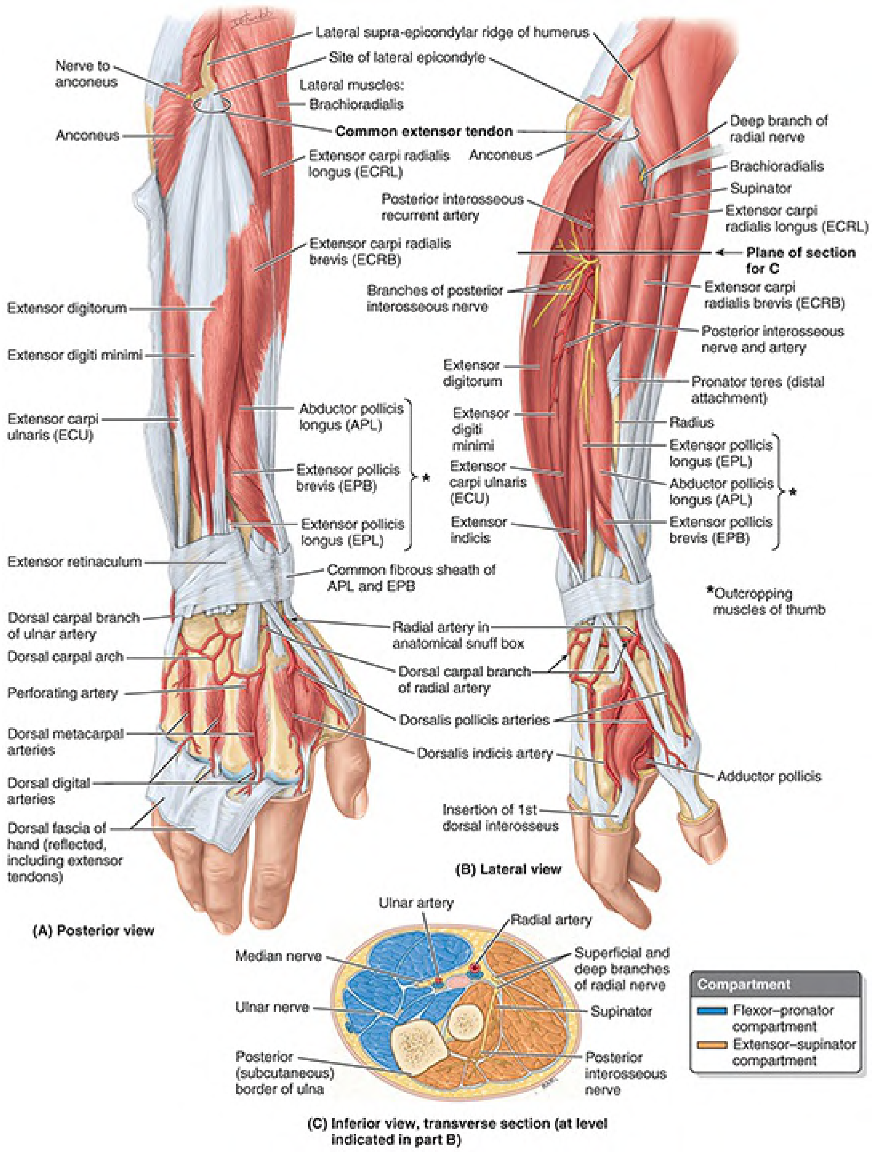


FIGURE 3.63. Extensor–supinator compartment of right forearm. A. Superficial layer of extensor muscles. The distal extensor tendons have been removed from the dorsum of the hand without disturbing the arteries because they lie on the skeletal plane. The fascia on the posterior aspect of the distal-most forearm is thickened to form the extensor retinaculum, which is anchored on its deep aspect to the radius and ulna. **B.** Deep layer of extensor muscles. Three outcropping muscles of the thumb (asterisk) emerge from between the extensor carpi radialis brevis and extensor digitorum: abductor pollicis longus, extensor pollicis brevis, and extensor pollicis longus. The furrow from which the three muscles emerge has been opened proximally up to the lateral epicondyle, exposing the supinator muscle. **C.** Transverse section of forearm. The superficial and deep layers of muscles in the posterior compartment (gold) are supplied by the radial nerve, and the anterior compartment (blue) is supplied by the ulnar and median nerves.

Four of the superficial extensors (extensor carpi radialis brevis, extensor digitorum, extensor digiti minimi, and extensor carpi ulnaris) are attached proximally by a common extensor tendon to the lateral epicondyle (Figs. 3.62A and 3.63A, B; Table 3.11). The proximal attachment of the other two muscles in the superficial group (brachioradialis and extensor carpi radialis longus) is to the lateral supra-epicondylar ridge of the humerus and adjacent lateral intermuscular septum (Fig. 3.62A, B). The four flat tendons of the extensor digitorum pass deep to the extensor

retinaculum to the medial four fingers (Fig. 3.64). The common tendons of the index and little fingers are joined on their medial sides near the knuckles by the respective tendons of the extensor indicis and extensor digiti minimi (extensors of the index and little fingers, respectively).

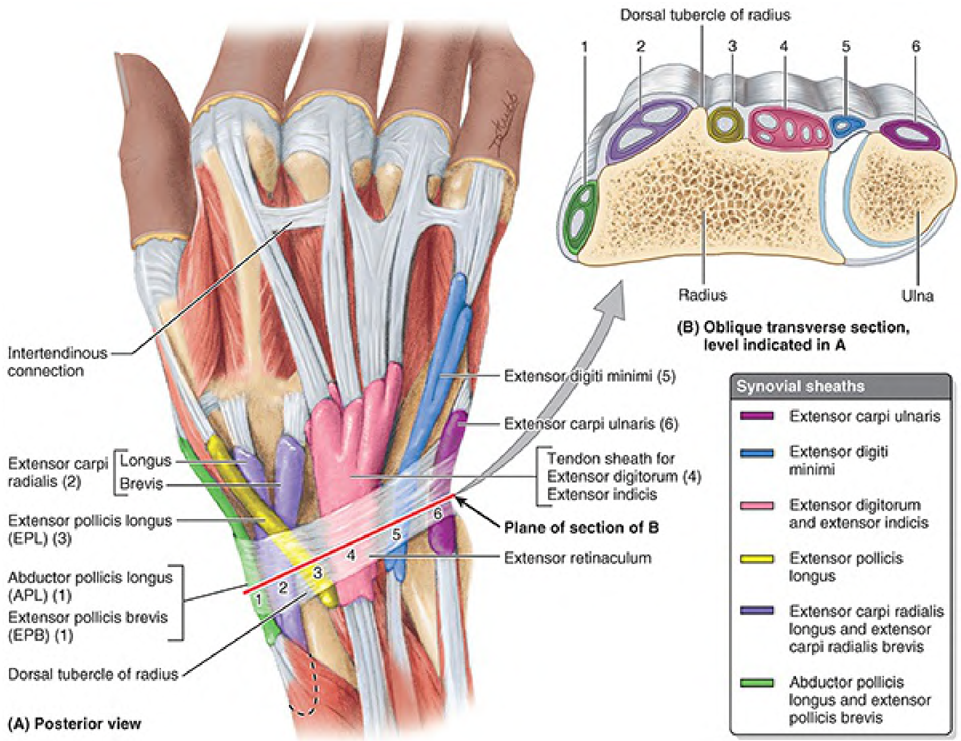


FIGURE 3.64. Synovial sheaths and tendons on distal forearm and dorsum of hand. A. Dissection. Observe that the six synovial tendon sheaths occupy six osseofibrous tunnels formed by attachments of the extensor retinaculum to the ulna and especially the radius, which give passage to 12 tendons of nine extensor muscles. The tendon of the extensor digitorum to the little finger is shared between the ring finger and continues to the little finger via an intertendinous connection. It then receives additional fibers from the tendon of the extensor digiti minimi. Such variations are common. Numbers refer to the labeled osseofibrous tunnels shown in part **B**. **B.** Oblique transverse section of distal end of forearm. The extensor tendons traverse the six osseofibrous tunnels deep to the extensor retinaculum.

Brachioradialis. The **brachioradialis**, a fusiform muscle, lies superficially on the anterolateral surface of the forearm (Figs. 3.60 and 3.63A). It forms the lateral border of the cubital fossa (Fig. 3.58C). As mentioned previously, the brachioradialis is exceptional among muscles of the posterior (extensor) compartment in that it has rotated to the anterior aspect of the humerus and thus flexes the forearm at the elbow. It is especially active during quick movements or in the presence of resistance during flexion of the forearm (e.g., when a weight is lifted), acting as a shunt muscle resisting subluxation of the head of the radius. The brachioradialis and the supinator are the only muscles of the compartment that do not cross and therefore are incapable of acting at the wrist. As it descends, the brachioradialis overlies the radial nerve and artery where they lie together on the supinator, pronator teres tendon, FDS, and FPL. The distal part of the tendon is covered by the abductors pollicis longus and brevis as they pass to the thumb (Fig. 3.63B).

To test the brachioradialis, the elbow joint is flexed against resistance with the forearm in the midprone position. If the brachioradialis is acting normally, the muscle can be seen and palpated.

Extensor Carpi Radialis Longus. The **extensor carpi radialis longus (ECRL)**, a fusiform muscle, is partly overlapped by the brachioradialis, with which it often blends (Fig. 3.63). As it passes distally, posterior to the brachioradialis, its tendon is crossed by the abductor pollicis longus and extensor pollicis brevis. The ECRL is indispensable when clenching the fist.

To test the extensor carpi radialis longus, the wrist is extended and abducted with the forearm pronated. If acting normally, the muscle can be palpated inferoposterior to the lateral side of the elbow. Its tendon can be palpated proximal to the wrist.

Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevis. The **extensor carpi radialis brevis (ECRB)**, as its name indicates, is a shorter muscle than the ECRL because it arises distally in the limb, yet it attaches adjacent to the ECRL in the hand (but to the base of the 3rd metacarpal rather than the 2nd). As it passes distally, it is covered by the ECRL. The ECRB and ECRL pass under the extensor retinaculum together within the **tendinous sheath of the extensor carpi radiales** (Fig. 3.64). The two muscles act together to various degrees, usually as synergists to other muscles. When the two muscles act by themselves, they abduct the hand as they extend it. Acting with the extensor carpi ulnaris, they extend the hand (the brevis is more involved in this action). Acting with the FCR, they produce pure abduction. Their synergistic action with the extensor carpi ulnaris is important in steadying the wrist during tight flexion of the medial four digits (clenching the fist), a function in which the longus is more active.

Extensor Digitorum. The **extensor digitorum**, the principal extensor of the medial four digits, occupies much of the posterior surface of the forearm (Figs. 3.62 and 3.63A). Proximally, its four tendons join the tendon of the extensor indicis to pass deep to the extensor retinaculum through the **tendinous sheath of the extensor digitorum and extensor indicis** (common extensor synovial sheath) (Fig. 3.64A, B). On the dorsum of the hand, the tendons spread out as they run toward the digits. Adjacent tendons are linked proximal to the knuckles (metacarpophalangeal joints) by three oblique intertendinous connections that restrict independent extension of the four medial digits (especially the ring finger). Consequently, normally none of these digits can remain fully flexed as the other ones are fully extended. Commonly, the fourth tendon is fused initially with the tendon to the ring finger and reaches the little finger by an intertendinous connection.

On the distal ends of the metacarpals and along the phalanges of the four medial digits, the four tendons flatten to form **extensor expansions** (Fig. 3.65). Each extensor digital expansion (dorsal expansion or hood) is a triangular, tendinous aponeurosis that wraps around the dorsum and sides of a head of the metacarpal and proximal phalanx. The visor-like “hood” formed by the extensor expansion over the head of the metacarpal, holding the extensor tendon in the middle of the digit, is anchored on each side to the **palmar ligament** (a reinforced portion of the fibrous layer of the joint capsule of the metacarpophalangeal joints) (Fig. 3.65A, C).

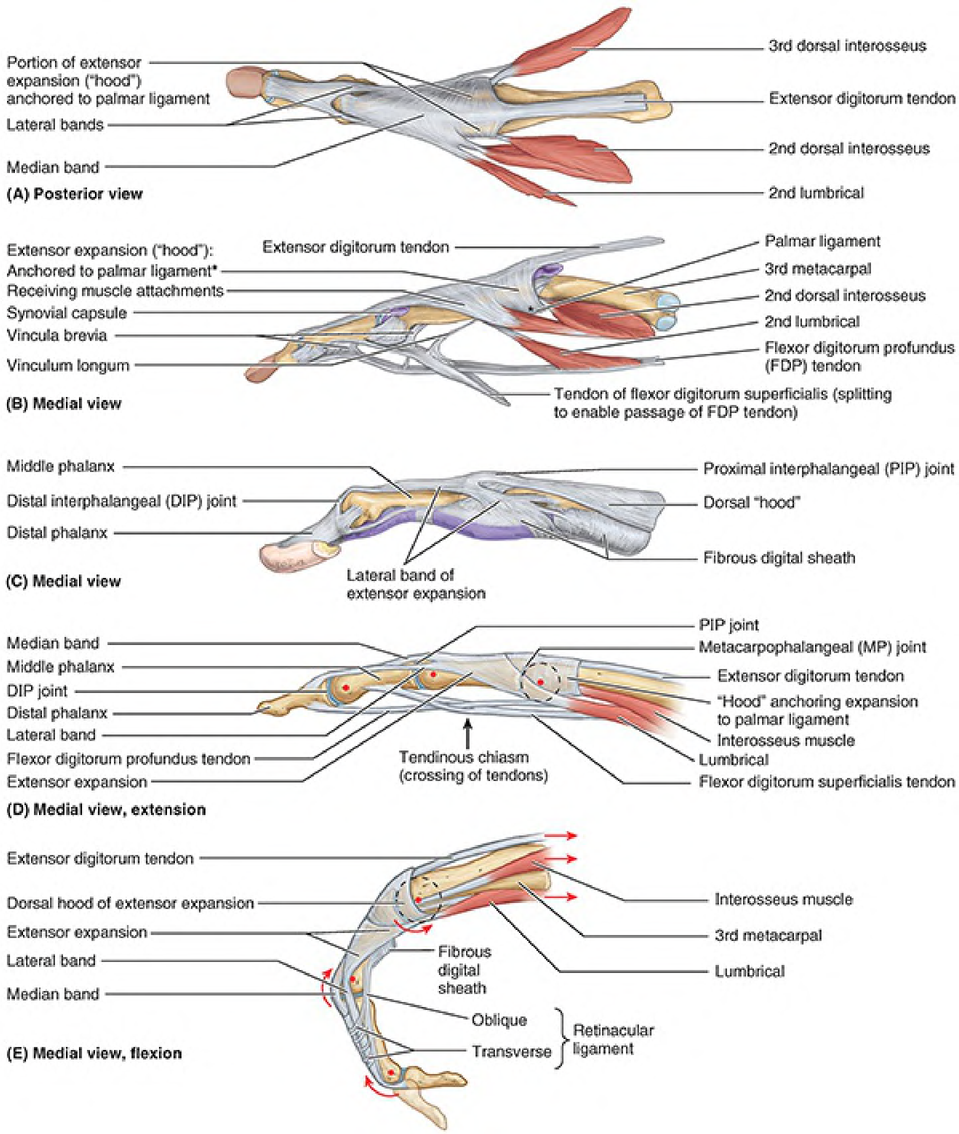


FIGURE 3.65. **Dorsal digital (extensor) apparatus of 3rd digit.** The metacarpal bone and all three phalanges are shown in parts **A**, **B**, **D**, and **E**; only the phalanges are shown in part **C**. **A.** Bands of extensor digitorum longus tendon. Note the extensor digitorum tendon trifurcating (expanding) into three bands: two lateral bands that unite over the middle phalanx to insert into the base of the distal phalanx, and one median band that inserts into the base of the middle phalanx. **B.** Interosseous muscle attachments. Part of the tendon of the interosseous muscles attaches to the base of the proximal phalanx; the other part contributes to the extensor expansion, attaching primarily to the lateral bands, but also fans out into an aponeurosis. Some of the aponeurotic fibers fuse with the median band, and other fibers arch over it to blend with the aponeurosis arising from the other side. On the radial side of each digit, a lumbrical muscle attaches to the radial lateral band. The dorsal hood consists of a broad band of transversely oriented fibers attached anteriorly to the palmar ligaments of the metacarpophalangeal (MP) joints that encircle the metacarpal head and MP joint, blending with the extensor expansion to keep the apparatus centered over the dorsal aspect of the digit. **C.** Retinacular ligaments. Distally, retinacular ligaments extending from the fibrous digital sheath to the lateral bands also help keep the apparatus centered and coordinate movements at the proximal interphalangeal (PIP) and distal interphalangeal (DIP) joints. **D.** Extension of joints of digit. Contraction of the extensor digitorum alone results in extension at all joints (including the MP joint (dashed circle) in the absence of action by the interossei and lumbricals). **E.** Action of lumbricals and interossei. Because of the relationship of the tendons and the lateral bands to the rotational centers of the joints (red dots in parts **D** and **E**), simultaneous contraction of the interossei and lumbricals produces flexion at the MP joint but extension at the PIP and DIP joints (the so-called Z-movement).

In forming the extensor expansion, each extensor digitorum tendon divides into a **median band**, which passes to the base of the middle phalanx, and two **lateral bands**, which pass to the base of the distal phalanx (Fig. 3.65D, E). The tendons of the interosseous and lumbrical muscles of the hand join the lateral bands of the extensor expansion (Fig. 3.65).

The **retinacular ligament** is a delicate fibrous band that runs from the proximal phalanx and fibrous digital sheath obliquely across the middle phalanx and two interphalangeal joints (Fig. 3.65C). It joins the extensor expansion to the distal phalanx. During flexion of the distal interphalangeal joint, the retinacular ligament becomes taut and pulls the proximal joint into flexion. Similarly, on extending the proximal joint, the distal joint is pulled by the retinacular ligament into nearly complete extension.

The extensor digitorum acts primarily to extend the proximal phalanges, and through its collateral reinforcements, it secondarily extends the middle and distal phalanges as well. After exerting its traction on the digits, or in the presence of resistance to digital extension, it helps extend the hand at the wrist joint.

To test the extensor digitorum, the forearm is pronated and the fingers are extended. The person attempts to keep the digits extended at the metacarpophalangeal joints as the examiner exerts pressure on the proximal phalanges by attempting to flex them. If acting normally, the extensor digitorum can be palpated in the forearm, and its tendons can be seen and palpated on the dorsum of the hand.

Extensor Digiti Minimi. The **extensor digiti minimi (EDM)**, a fusiform slip of muscle, is a partially detached part of the extensor digitorum (Figs. 3.62B; 3.63A, B; and 3.64). The tendon of this extensor of the little finger runs through a separate compartment of the extensor retinaculum, posterior to the distal radio-ulnar joint, within the **tendinous sheath of the extensor digiti minimi**. The tendon then divides into two slips; the lateral one is joined to the tendon of the extensor digitorum, with all three tendons attaching to the dorsal digital expansion of the little finger. After exerting its traction primarily on the 5th digit, it contributes to extension of the hand.

To test the extensor digiti minimi, the little finger is extended against resistance while holding digits 2–4 flexed at the metacarpophalangeal joints.

Extensor Carpi Ulnaris. The **extensor carpi ulnaris (ECU)**, a long fusiform muscle located on the medial border of the forearm, has two heads: a humeral head from the common extensor tendon and an ulnar head that arises by a common aponeurosis attached to the posterior border of the ulna and shared by the FCU, FDP, and deep fascia of the forearm. Distally, its tendon runs in a groove between the ulnar head and its styloid process, through a separate compartment of the extensor retinaculum within the **tendinous sheath of the extensor carpi ulnaris**. Acting with the ECRL and ECRB, it extends the hand; acting with the FCU, it adducts the hand. Like the ECRL, it is indispensable when clenching the fist.

To test the extensor carpi ulnaris, the forearm is pronated and the fingers are extended. The extended wrist is then adducted against resistance. If acting normally, the muscle can be seen and palpated in the proximal part of the forearm and its tendon can be felt proximal to the head of the ulna.

Supinator. The **supinator** lies deep in the cubital fossa and, along with the brachialis, forms its floor (Figs. 3.62A, C; 3.64B; and 3.66). Spiraling medially and distally from its continuous, osseofibrous origin, this sheet-like muscle envelops the neck and proximal part of the shaft of the radius. The deep branch of the radial nerve passes between its muscle fibers, separating them into superficial and deep parts, as it passes from the cubital fossa to the posterior part of the arm. As it exits the muscle and joins the posterior interosseous artery, it may be referred to as the posterior interosseous nerve.

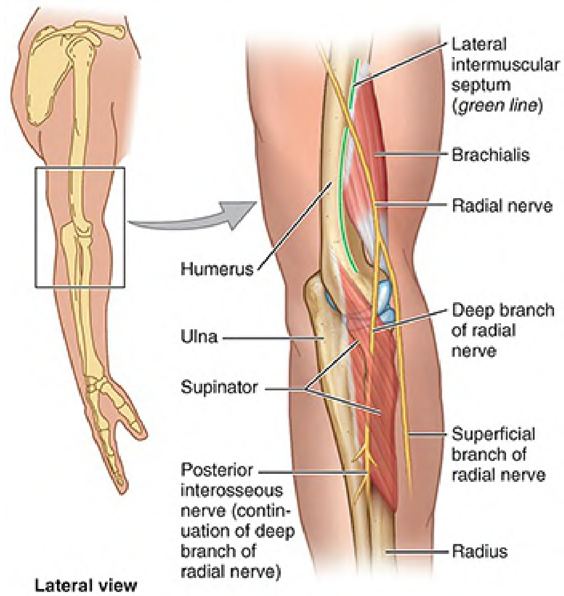


FIGURE 3.66. **Relationship of radial nerve to brachialis and supinator muscles.** In the cubital fossa, lateral to the brachialis, the radial nerve divides into deep (motor) and superficial (sensory) branches. The deep branch penetrates the supinator muscle and emerges in the posterior compartment of the forearm as the posterior interosseous nerve. It joins the artery of the same name to run in the plane between the superficial and the deep extensors of the forearm.

The supinator is the prime mover for slow, unopposed supination, especially when the forearm is extended. The biceps brachii also supinates the forearm and is the prime mover during rapid and forceful supination against resistance when the forearm is flexed (e.g., when a right-handed person drives a screw).

The **deep extensors of the forearm** act on the thumb (abductor pollicis longus, extensor pollicis longus, and extensor pollicis brevis) and the index finger (extensor indicis) (Figs. 3.62, 3.63, 3.64; Table 3.11). The three muscles acting on the thumb are deep to the superficial extensors and “crop out” (emerge) from the furrow in the lateral part of the forearm that divides the extensors. Because of this characteristic, they are sometimes referred to as outcropping muscles of the thumb (Fig. 3.63A).

Abductor Pollicis Longus. The **abductor pollicis longus (APL)** has a long, fusiform belly that lies just distal to the supinator (Fig. 3.62) and is closely related to the extensor pollicis brevis. Its tendon, and sometimes its belly, is commonly split into two parts, one of which may attach to the trapezium instead of the usual site at the base of the 1st metacarpal. The APL acts with the abductor pollicis brevis during abduction of the thumb and with the extensor pollicis

muscles during extension of this digit. Although deeply situated, the APL emerges at the wrist as one of the outcropping muscles. Its tendon passes deep to the extensor retinaculum with the tendon of the extensor pollicis brevis in the common synovial **tendinous sheath of the abductor pollicis longus and extensor pollicis brevis**.

To test the abductor pollicis longus, the thumb is abducted against resistance at the metacarpophalangeal joint. If acting normally, its tendon can be seen and palpated at the lateral side of the anatomical snuff box and on the lateral side of the adjacent extensor pollicis brevis tendon.

Extensor Pollicis Brevis. The belly of the **extensor pollicis brevis (EPB)**, the fusiform short extensor of the thumb, lies distal to the APL and is partly covered by it. Its tendon lies parallel and immediately medial to that of the APL but extends farther, reaching the base of the proximal phalanx (Fig. 3.64). In continued action after acting to extend the proximal phalanx of the thumb, or acting when that joint is fixed by its antagonists, it helps extend the 1st metacarpal and extend and abduct the hand. When the thumb is fully extended, a hollow, called the anatomical snuff box, can be seen on the radial aspect of the wrist (Fig. 3.67).

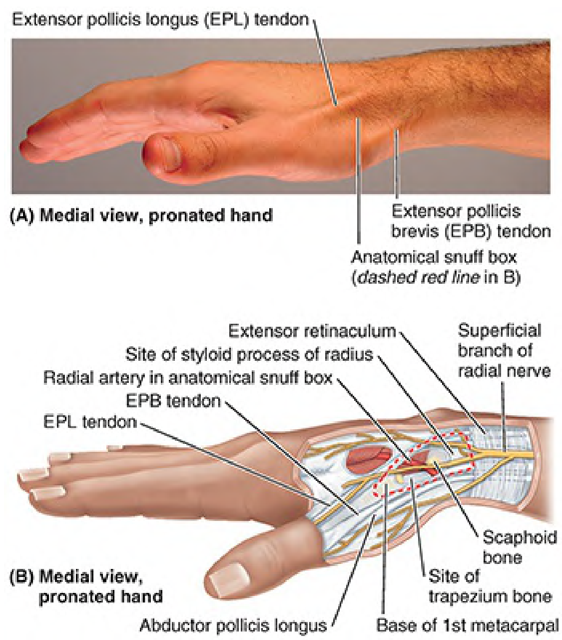


FIGURE 3.67. Anatomical snuff box. A. Surface anatomy. When the thumb is extended, a triangular hollow appears between the tendon of the extensor pollicis longus (EPL) medially and the tendons of the extensor pollicis brevis (EPB) and abductor pollicis longus (APL) laterally. **B.** Floor of anatomical snuff box. The floor formed by the scaphoid and trapezium bones is crossed by the radial artery as it passes diagonally from the anterior surface of the radius to the dorsal surface of the hand.

To test the extensor pollicis brevis, the thumb is extended against resistance at the metacarpophalangeal joint. If the EPB is acting normally, the tendon of the muscle can be seen and palpated at the lateral side of the anatomical snuff box and on the medial side of the adjacent APL tendon (Figs. 3.61, 3.62, and 3.65).

Extensor Pollicis Longus. The **extensor pollicis longus (EPL)** is larger and its tendon is longer than that of the EPB. The tendon passes under the extensor retinaculum in its own tunnel

(Fig. 3.62), within the **tendinous sheath of the extensor pollicis longus**, medial to the dorsal tubercle of the radius. It uses the tubercle as a trochlea (pulley) to change its line of pull as it proceeds to the base of the distal phalanx of the thumb. The gap created between the long extensor tendons of the thumb is the anatomical snuff box (Fig. 3.67). In addition to its main actions (Table 3.11), the EPL also adducts the extended thumb and rotates it laterally.

To test the extensor pollicis longus, the thumb is extended against resistance at the interphalangeal joint. If the EPL is acting normally, the tendon of the muscle can be seen and palpated on the medial side of the anatomical snuff box.

The tendons of the APL and EPB bound the **anatomical snuff box** anteriorly, and the tendon of the EPL bounds it posteriorly (Figs. 3.63, 3.64, and 3.67). The snuff box is visible when the thumb is fully extended; this draws the tendons up and produces a triangular hollow between them. Observe that the

- Radial artery lies in the floor of the snuff box.
- Radial styloid process can be palpated proximally and the base of the 1st metacarpal can be palpated distally in the snuff box.
- Scaphoid and trapezium can be felt in the floor of the snuff box between the radial styloid process and the 1st metacarpal (see the Clinical Box "Fracture of Scaphoid" in this chapter and Fig. 3.67).

Extensor Indicis. The **extensor indicis** has a narrow, elongated belly that lies medial to and alongside that of the EPL (Figs. 3.63B and 3.64). This muscle confers independence to the index finger in that the extensor indicis may act alone or together with the extensor digitorum to extend the index finger at the proximal interphalangeal joint, as in pointing. It also helps extend the hand.

Arteries of Forearm

The main arteries of the forearm are the ulnar and radial arteries, which usually arise opposite the neck of the radius in the inferior part of the cubital fossa as terminal branches of the brachial artery (Fig. 3.68). The named arteries of the forearm are illustrated in Figure 3.69, and their origins and courses are described in Table 3.12. The following discussion provides additional details.

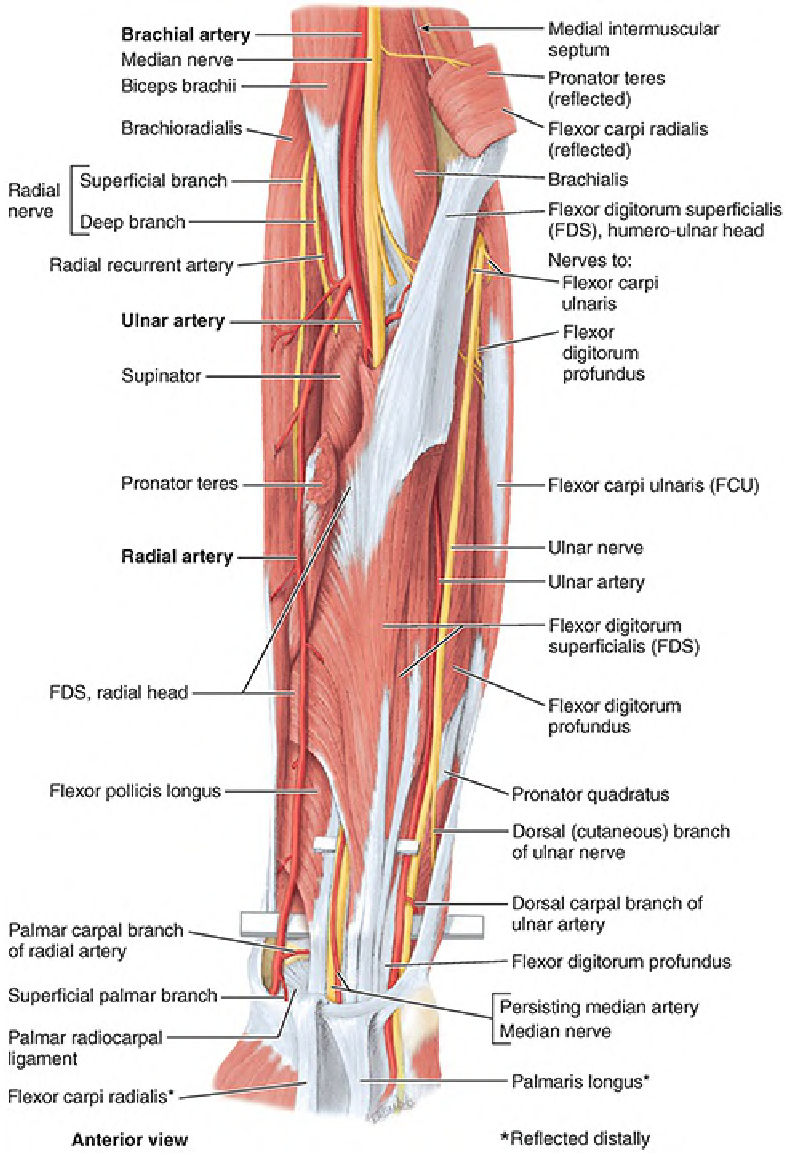


FIGURE 3.68. Flexor digitorum superficialis and related vasculature. Three muscles of the superficial layer (pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, and palmaris longus) have been removed, leaving only their attaching ends. The fourth muscle of the layer (the flexor carpi ulnaris) has been retracted medially. The tendinous humeral attachment of the FDS to the medial epicondyle is thick. The linear attachment to the radius, immediately distal to the radial attachments of the supinator and pronator teres, is thin (Table 3.10). The ulnar artery and median nerve pass between the humeral and the radial heads of the FDS. The artery descends obliquely deep to the FDS to join the ulnar nerve, which descends vertically near the medial border of the FDS (exposed here by splitting a fusion of the FDS and FCU). A (proximal) probe is elevating the FDS tendons (and median nerve and persisting median artery). A second (distal) probe is elevating all the remaining structures that cross the wrist (radiocarpal) joint anteriorly.

TABLE 3.12. ARTERIES OF FOREARM AND WRIST

Artery	Origin	Course in Forearm
Ulnar	As larger terminal branch of brachial artery in cubital fossa	Descends inferomedially and then directly inferiorly, deep to superficial (pronator teres and palmaris longus) and intermediate (flexor digitorum superficialis) layers of flexor muscles to reach medial side of forearm; passes superficial to flexor retinaculum at wrist in ulnar (Guyon) canal to enter hand

Anterior ulnar recurrent artery	Ulnar artery just distal to elbow joint	Passes superiorly between brachialis and pronator teres, supplying both; then anastomoses with inferior ulnar collateral artery anterior to medial epicondyle (Fig. 3.69, palmar view)
Posterior ulnar recurrent artery	Ulnar artery distal to anterior ulnar	Passes superiorly, posterior to medial epicondyle and deep to tendon of flexor carpi ulnaris; then recurrent artery anastomoses with superior ulnar collateral artery
Common interosseous	Ulnar artery in cubital fossa, distal to bifurcation of brachial artery	Passes laterally and deeply, terminating quickly by dividing into anterior and posterior interosseous arteries
Anterior interosseous	As terminal branches of common interosseous artery, between radius and ulna	Passes distally on anterior aspect of interosseous membrane to proximal border of pronator quadratus; pierces membrane and continues distally to join dorsal carpal arch on posterior aspect of interosseous membrane
Posterior interosseous		Passes to posterior aspect of interosseous membrane, giving rise to recurrent interosseous artery; runs distally between superficial and deep extensor muscles, supplying both; replaced distally by anterior interosseous artery
Recurrent interosseous	Posterior interosseous artery, between radius and ulna	Passes superiorly, posterior to proximal radio-ulnar joint and capitulum, to anastomose with middle collateral artery (from deep brachial artery)
Palmar carpal branch	Ulnar artery in distal forearm	Runs across anterior aspect of wrist, deep to tendons of flexor digitorum profundus, to anastomose with the palmar carpal branch of the radial artery, forming palmar carpal arch
Dorsal carpal branch	Ulnar artery, proximal to pisiform	Passes across dorsal surface of wrist, deep to extensor tendons, to anastomose with dorsal carpal branch of radial artery, forming dorsal carpal arch
Radial	As smaller terminal branch of brachial artery in cubital fossa	Runs inferolaterally under cover of brachioradialis; lies lateral to flexor carpi radialis tendon in distal forearm; winds around lateral aspect of radius and crosses floor of anatomical snuff box to pierce first dorsal interosseous muscle
Radial recurrent	Lateral side of radial artery, just distal to brachial artery bifurcation	Ascends between brachioradialis and brachialis, supplying both (and elbow joint); then anastomoses with radial collateral artery (from profunda brachii artery)
Palmar carpal branch	Distal radial artery near distal border of pronator quadratus	Runs across anterior wrist deep to flexor tendons to anastomose with the palmar carpal branch of ulnar artery to form palmar carpal arch
Dorsal carpal branch	Distal radial artery in proximal part of snuff box	Runs medially across wrist deep to pollicis and extensor radialis tendons, anastomoses with ulnar dorsal carpal branch forming dorsal carpal arch

ULNAR ARTERY

Pulsations of the **ulnar artery** can be palpated on the lateral side of the FCU tendon, where it lies anterior to the ulnar head. The ulnar nerve is on the medial side of the ulnar artery. Branches of the ulnar artery arising in the forearm participate in the peri-articular anastomoses of the elbow (Fig. 3.69, palmar view) and supply muscles of the medial and central forearm, the

common flexor sheath, and the ulnar and median nerves:

- The anterior and posterior ulnar recurrent arteries anastomose with the inferior and superior ulnar collateral arteries, respectively, thereby participating in the periarticular arterial anastomoses of the elbow. The anterior and posterior arteries may be present as anterior and posterior branches of a (common) ulnar recurrent artery.
- The common interosseous artery, a short branch of the ulnar artery, arises in the distal part of the cubital fossa and divides almost immediately into anterior and posterior interosseous arteries.
- The anterior interosseous artery passes distally, running directly on the anterior aspect of the interosseous membrane with the anterior interosseous nerve, whereas the posterior interosseous artery courses between the superficial and the deep layers of the extensor muscles in the company of the posterior interosseous nerve. The relatively small posterior interosseous artery is the principal artery serving the structures of the middle third of the posterior compartment. Thus, it is mostly exhausted in the distal forearm and is replaced by the posterior division of the anterior interosseous artery, which pierces the interosseous membrane near the proximal border of the pronator quadratus.
- Unnamed muscular branches of the ulnar artery supply muscles on the medial side of the forearm, mainly those in the flexor–pronator group.

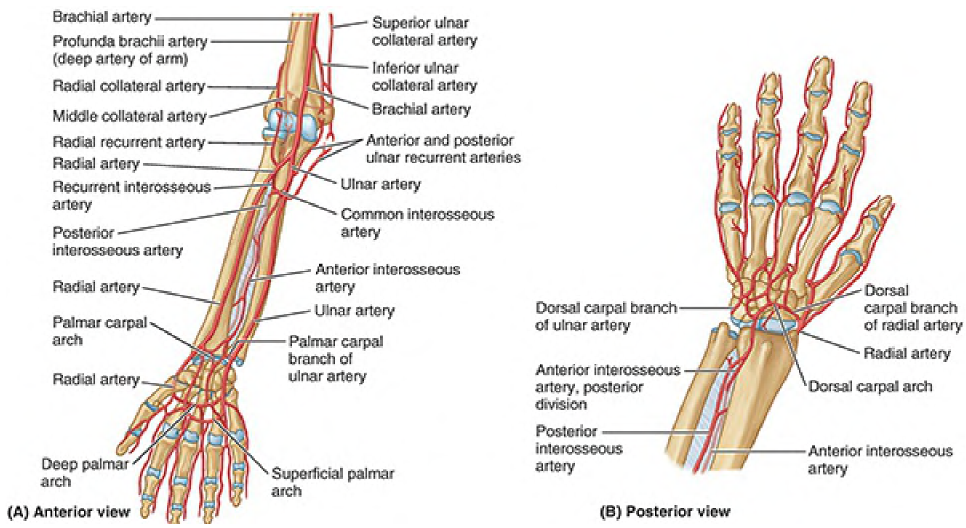


FIGURE 3.69. Arteries of forearm and hand. A. Overview. **B.** Distal forearm and hand.

RADIAL ARTERY

The pulsations of the **radial artery** can be felt throughout the forearm, making it useful as an anterolateral demarcation of the flexor and extensor compartments of the forearm. When the brachioradialis is pulled laterally, the entire length of the artery is visible (Figs. 3.68 and 3.69; Table 3.12). The radial artery lies on muscle until it reaches the distal part of the forearm. Here it lies on the anterior surface of the radius and is only covered by skin and fascia, making this an ideal location for checking the radial pulse.

The course of the radial artery in the forearm is represented by a line joining the midpoint of

the cubital fossa to a point just medial to the radial styloid process. The radial artery leaves the forearm by winding around the lateral aspect of the wrist and crosses the floor of the anatomical snuff box (Figs. 3.67 and 3.68).

- The radial recurrent artery participates in the peri-articular arterial anastomoses around the elbow by anastomosing with the radial collateral artery, a branch of the profunda brachii artery.
- The palmar and dorsal carpal branches of the radial artery participate in the peri-articular arterial anastomosis around the wrist by anastomosing with the corresponding branches of the ulnar artery and terminal branches of the anterior and posterior interosseous arteries, forming the palmar and dorsal carpal arches.
- The unnamed muscular branches of the radial artery supply muscles in the adjacent (anterolateral) aspects of both the flexor and extensor compartments because the radial artery runs along (and demarcates) the anterolateral boundary between the compartments.

Veins of Forearm

In the forearm, as in the arm, there are superficial and deep veins. The superficial veins ascend in the subcutaneous tissue. The deep veins accompany the deep arteries of the forearm.

SUPERFICIAL VEINS

The pattern, common variations, and clinical significance of the superficial veins of the upper limb were discussed earlier in this chapter.

DEEP VEINS

Deep veins accompanying arteries are plentiful in the forearm (Fig. 3.70). These accompanying veins (L. venae comitantes) arise from the anastomosing **deep venous palmar arch** in the hand. From the lateral side of the arch, paired **radial veins** arise and accompany the radial artery. From the medial side, paired **ulnar veins** arise and accompany the ulnar artery. The veins accompanying each artery anastomose freely with each other. The radial and ulnar veins drain the forearm but carry relatively little blood from the hand.

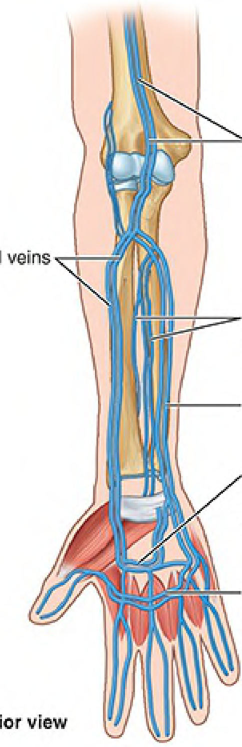


FIGURE 3.70. Deep venous drainage of upper limb.

The deep veins ascend in the forearm along the sides of the corresponding arteries, receiving tributaries from veins leaving the muscles with which they are related. Deep veins communicate with the superficial veins. The deep **interosseous veins**, which accompany the interosseous arteries, unite with the accompanying veins of the radial and ulnar arteries. In the cubital fossa, the deep veins are connected to the median cubital vein, a superficial vein (see Fig. 3.57B). These deep cubital veins also unite with the accompanying veins of the brachial artery.

Nerves of Forearm

The nerves of the forearm are the median, ulnar, and radial. The median nerve is the principal nerve of the anterior (flexor–pronator) compartment of the forearm (Fig. 3.71A; see Fig. 3.59B). Although the radial nerve appears in the cubital region, it soon enters the posterior (extensor–supinator) compartment of the forearm. Besides the cutaneous branches, there are only two nerves of the anterior aspect of the forearm: the median and ulnar nerves. The named nerves of the forearm are illustrated in Figure 3.71, and their origins and courses are described in Table 3.13. The following sections provide additional details and discuss unnamed branches.

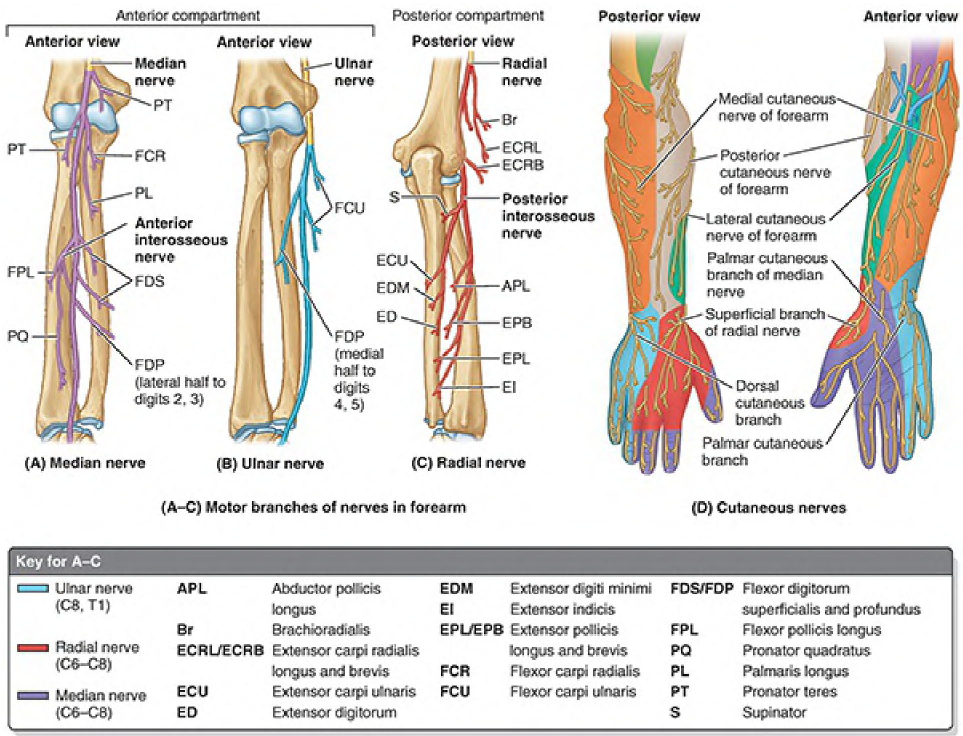


FIGURE 3.71. **Nerves of forearm.**

TABLE 3.13. NERVES OF FOREARM

Nerve	Origin	Course in Forearm
Median	By union of lateral root of median nerve (C6 and C7, from lateral cord of brachial plexus) with medial root (C8 and T1) from medial cord	Enters cubital fossa medial to brachial artery; exits by passing between heads of pronator teres; descends in fascial plane between flexors digitorum superficialis and profundus; runs deep to palmaris longus tendon as it approaches flexor retinaculum to traverse carpal tunnel
Anterior interosseous	Median nerve in distal part of cubital fossa	Descends on anterior aspect of interosseous membrane with artery of same name, between FDP and FPL, to pass deep to pronator quadratus
Palmar cutaneous branch of median nerve	Median nerve in middle to distal forearm, proximal to flexor retinaculum	Passes superficial to flexor reticulum to reach skin of central palm
Ulnar	Larger terminal branch of medial cord of brachial plexus (C8 and T1, often receives fibers from C7)	Enters forearm by passing between heads of flexor carpi ulnaris, after passing posterior to medial epicondyle of humerus; descends forearm between FCU and FDP; becomes superficial in distal forearm
Palmar cutaneous branch of ulnar nerve	Ulnar nerve near middle of forearm	Descends anterior to ulnar artery; perforates deep fascia in distal forearm; runs in subcutaneous tissue to palmar skin medial to axis of 4th digit
Dorsal cutaneous branch of ulnar nerve	Ulnar nerve in distal half of forearm	Passes posteroinferiorly between ulna and flexor carpi ulnaris; enters subcutaneous tissue to supply skin of dorsum medial to axis of 4th digit
Radial	Larger terminal branch of	Enters cubital fossa between brachioradialis and brachialis; anterior

	posterior cord of brachial plexus (C5–T1)	to lateral epicondyle divides into terminal superficial and deep branches
Posterior cutaneous nerve of forearm	Radial nerve, as it traverses radial groove of posterior humerus	Perforates lateral head of triceps; descends along lateral side of arm and posterior aspect of forearm to wrist
Superficial branch of radial nerve	Sensory terminal branch of radial nerve, in cubital fossa	Descends between pronator teres and brachioradialis, emerging from latter to arborize over anatomical snuff box and supply skin of dorsum lateral to axis of 4th digit
Deep branch of radial/posterior interosseous nerve	Motor terminal branch of radial nerve, in cubital fossa; sensory fibers to wrist joint	Deep branch exits cubital fossa winding around neck of radius, penetrating and supplying supinator; emerges in posterior compartment of forearm as posterior interosseous; descends on membrane with artery of same name
Lateral cutaneous nerve of forearm	Continuation of musculocutaneous nerve distal to muscular branches	Emerges lateral to biceps brachii on brachialis, running initially with cephalic vein; descends along lateral border of forearm to wrist
Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm	Medial cord of brachial plexus, receiving C8 and T1 fibers	Perforates deep fascia of arm with basilic vein proximal to cubital fossa; descends medial aspect of forearm in subcutaneous tissue to wrist

MEDIAN NERVE IN FOREARM

The **median nerve** is the principal nerve of the anterior compartment of the forearm (Figs. 3.71A and 3.72; Table 3.13). It supplies muscular branches directly to the muscles of the superficial and intermediate layers of forearm flexors (except the FCU) and deep muscles (except for the medial [ulnar] half of the FDP) via its branch, the anterior interosseous nerve.

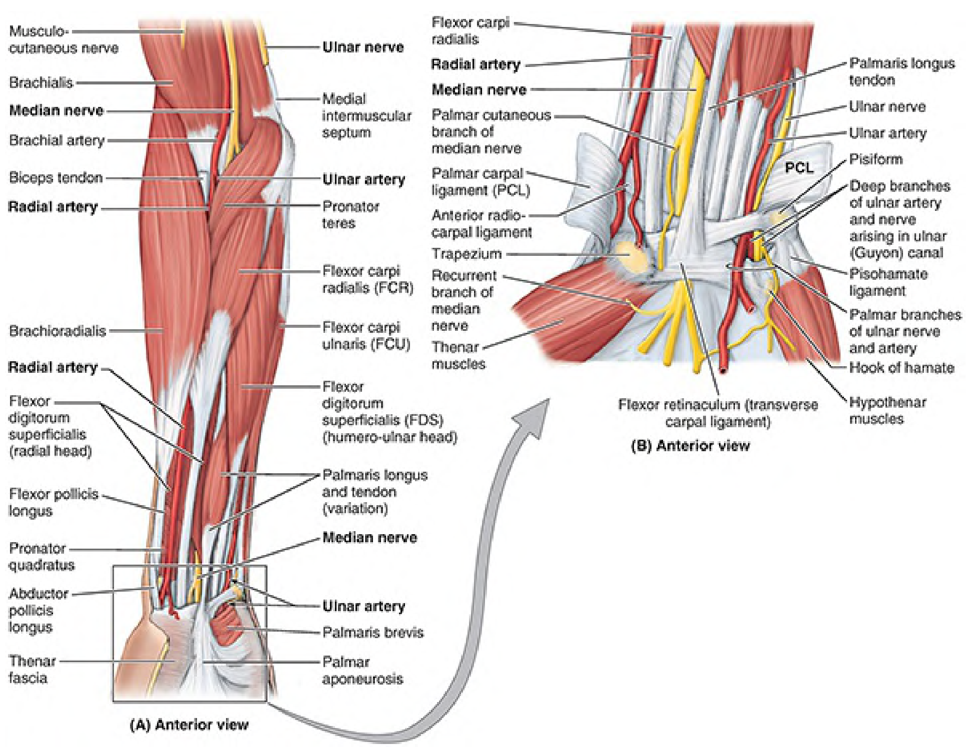


FIGURE 3.72. Neurovascular structures in anterior aspect of forearm and wrist. A. Overview. At the elbow, the

brachial artery lies between the biceps tendon and the median nerve. It bifurcates into the radial and ulnar arteries. In the forearm, the radial artery courses between the extensor and the flexor muscle groups. **B.** Deep dissection of distal part of forearm and proximal hand.

The median nerve has no branches in the arm other than small twigs to the brachial artery. Its major branch in the forearm is the anterior interosseous nerve (Fig. 3.71A; Table 3.13). In addition, the following unnamed branches of the median nerve arise in the forearm:

- Articular branches. These pass to the elbow joint as the median nerve passes it.
- Muscular branches. The nerve to the pronator teres usually arises at the elbow and enters the lateral border of the muscle. A broad bundle of nerves pierces the superficial flexor group of muscles and innervates the FCR, palmaris longus, and FDS.
- Anterior interosseous nerve. This branch runs distally on the interosseous membrane with the anterior interosseous branch of the ulnar artery. After supplying the deep forearm flexors (except the ulnar part of the FDP, which sends tendons to 4th and 5th fingers), it passes deep to and supplies the pronator quadratus. It then ends by sending articular branches to the wrist joint.
- Palmar cutaneous branch of the median nerve. This branch arises in the forearm, just proximal to the flexor retinaculum, but is distributed to skin of the central part of the palm.

ULNAR NERVE IN FOREARM

Like the median nerve, the ulnar nerve does not give rise to branches during its passage through the arm. In the forearm, it supplies only one and a half muscles, the FCU (as it enters the forearm by passing between its two heads of proximal attachment) and the ulnar part of the FDP, which sends tendons to the 4th and 5th digits (Fig. 3.71B; Table 3.13). The ulnar nerve and artery emerge from beneath the FCU tendon and become superficial just proximal to the wrist. They pass superficial to the flexor retinaculum and enter the hand by passing through a groove between the pisiform and the hook of the hamate.

A band of fibrous tissue from the flexor retinaculum bridges the groove to form the small **ulnar canal** (Guyon canal) (Fig. 3.72B). The branches of the ulnar nerve arising in the forearm include unnamed muscular and articular branches, and cutaneous branches that pass to the hand:

- Articular branches pass to the elbow joint while the nerve is between the olecranon and the medial epicondyle.
- Muscular branches supply the FCU and the medial half of the FDP.
- The palmar and dorsal cutaneous branches arise from the ulnar nerve in the forearm, but their sensory fibers are distributed to the skin of the hand.

RADIAL NERVE IN FOREARM

Unlike the medial and ulnar nerves, the radial nerve serves motor and sensory functions in both the arm and forearm (but only sensory functions in the hand). However, its sensory and motor fibers are distributed in the forearm by two separate branches, the superficial (sensory or cutaneous) and deep radial/posterior interosseous nerve (motor) (Fig. 3.71C, D; Table 3.13). It

divides into these terminal branches as it appears in the cubital fossa, anterior to the lateral epicondyle of the humerus, between the brachialis and brachioradialis (Fig. 3.66). The two branches immediately part company, the deep branch winding laterally around the radius, piercing the supinator en route to the posterior compartment.

The posterior cutaneous nerve of the forearm arises from the radial nerve in the posterior compartment of the arm, as it runs along the radial groove of the humerus. Thus, it reaches the forearm independent of the radial nerve, descending in the subcutaneous tissue of the posterior aspect of the forearm to the wrist, supplying the skin (Fig. 3.71D).

The superficial branch of the radial nerve is also a cutaneous nerve, but it gives rise to articular branches as well. It is distributed to skin on the dorsum of the hand and to a number of joints in the hand, branching soon after it emerges from the overlying brachioradialis and crosses the roof of the anatomical snuff box (Fig. 3.67).

The deep branch of the radial nerve, after it pierces the supinator, runs in the fascial plane between superficial and deep extensor muscles in close proximity to the posterior interosseous artery. This part of the nerve is usually referred to as the posterior interosseous nerve (Figs. 3.66 and 3.71C). It supplies motor innervation to all the muscles with fleshy bellies located entirely in the posterior compartment of the forearm (distal to the lateral epicondyle of the humerus).

LATERAL AND MEDIAL CUTANEOUS NERVES OF FOREARM

The **lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm** (lateral antebrachial cutaneous nerve) is the continuation of the musculocutaneous nerve after its motor branches have all been given off to the muscles of the anterior compartment of the arm.

The **medial cutaneous nerve of the forearm** (medial antebrachial cutaneous nerve) is an independent branch of the medial cord of the brachial plexus. With the **posterior cutaneous nerve of the forearm** from the radial nerve, each supplying the area of skin indicated by its name, these three nerves provide all the cutaneous innervation of the forearm (Fig. 3.71D). There is no “anterior cutaneous nerve of the forearm.” (Memory device: This is similar to the brachial plexus, which has lateral, medial, and posterior cords but no anterior cord.)

Although the arteries, veins, and nerves of the forearm have been considered separately, it is important to place them into their anatomical context. Except for the superficial veins, which often course independently in the subcutaneous tissue, these neurovascular structures usually exist as components of neurovascular bundles. These bundles are composed of arteries, veins (in the limbs, usually in the form of accompanying veins), and nerves as well as lymphatic vessels, which are usually surrounded by a neurovascular sheath of varying density.

Surface Anatomy of Forearm

Three bony landmarks are easily palpated at the elbow: the medial and lateral epicondyles of the humerus and the olecranon of the ulna (Fig. 3.73). In the hollow located posterolaterally when the forearm is extended, the head of the radius can be palpated distal to the lateral epicondyle. Supinate and pronate your forearm and feel the movement of the radial head. The **posterior**

border of the ulna is subcutaneous and can be palpated distally from the olecranon along the entire length of the bone. This landmark demarcates the posteromedial boundary separating the flexor–pronator (anterior) and extensor–supinator (posterior) compartments of the forearm.

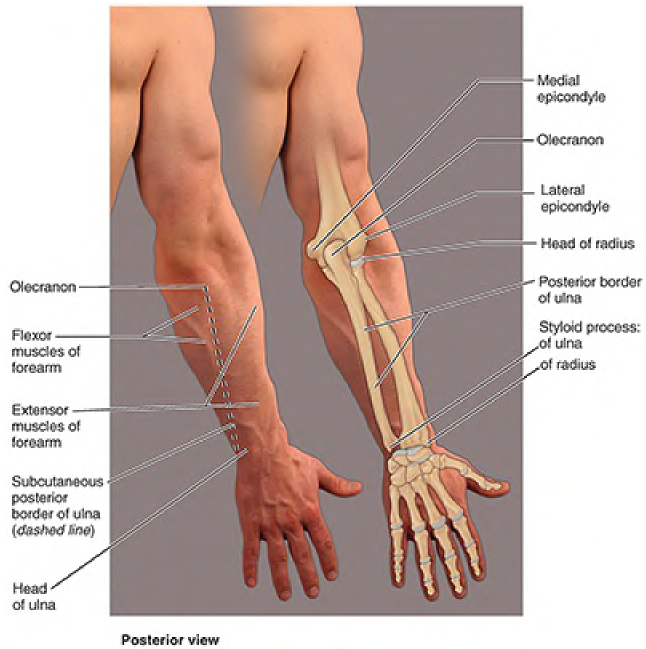


FIGURE 3.73. **Surface anatomy of posterior forearm.**

The cubital fossa, the triangular hollow area on the anterior surface of the elbow, is bounded medially by the prominence formed by the flexor–pronator group of muscles that are attached to the medial epicondyle. To estimate the position of these muscles, put your thumb posterior to your medial epicondyle and then place your fingers on your forearm as shown in Figure 3.74A. The black dot on the dorsum of the hand indicates the position of the medial epicondyle.

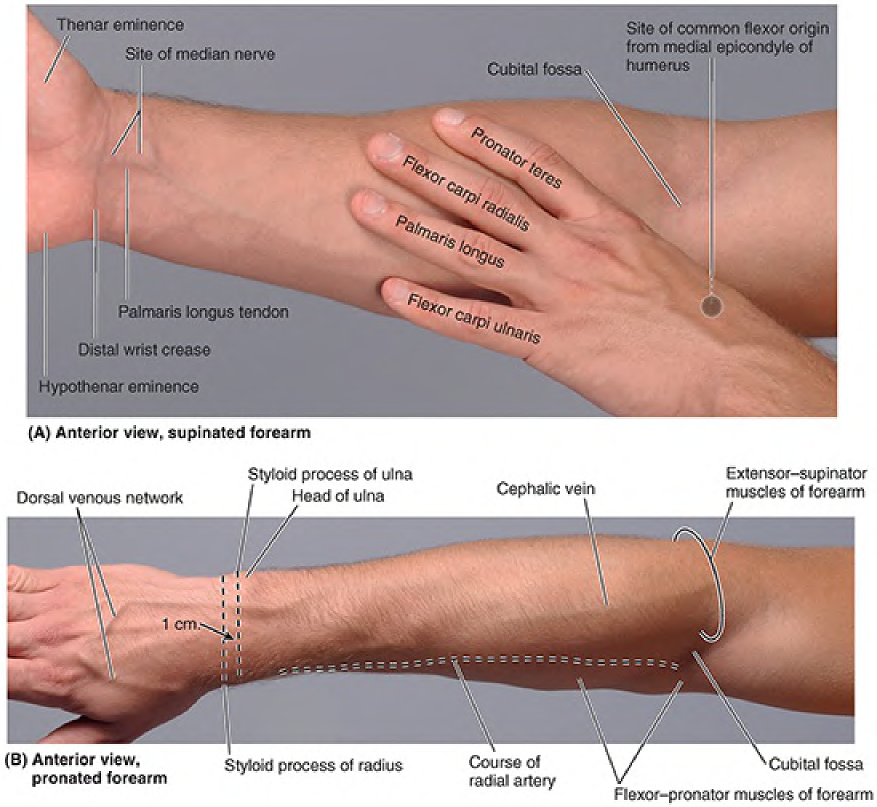


FIGURE 3.74. Surface anatomy of anterior forearm. A. Landmarking location of superficial flexors of forearm. **B.** Features.

The cubital fossa is bounded laterally by the prominence of the extensor–supinator group of muscles attached to the lateral epicondyle (Fig. 3.74B). The pulsations of the radial artery can be palpated throughout the forearm as it runs its superficial course from the cubital fossa to the wrist (anterior to the radial styloid process), demarcating the anterolateral boundary separating the flexor–pronator and extensor–supinator compartments of the forearm.

The head of the ulna is at its distal end and is easily seen and palpated. It appears as a rounded prominence at the wrist when the hand is pronated. The ulnar styloid process can be palpated just distal to the ulnar head. The larger radial styloid process can be easily palpated on the lateral side of the wrist when the hand is supinated, particularly when the tendons covering it are relaxed. The radial styloid process is located approximately 1 cm more distal than the ulnar styloid process. This relationship of the styloid processes is important in the diagnosis of certain injuries in the wrist region (e.g., fracture of the distal end of the radius). Proximal to the radial styloid process, the **surfaces of the radius** are palpable for a few centimeters. The lateral surface of the distal half of the radius is easy to palpate.

CLINICAL BOX

FOREARM

Elbow Tendinitis/Tendinosis or Lateral Epicondylitis

Elbow tendinitis ("tennis elbow") is a painful musculoskeletal condition that may follow repetitive use of the superficial extensor muscles of the forearm. Pain is felt over the lateral epicondyle and radiates down the posterior surface of the forearm. People with elbow tendinitis often feel pain when they open a door or lift a glass. Repeated forceful flexion and extension of the wrist strain the attachment of the common extensor tendon, producing inflammation of the periosteum of the lateral epicondyle (lateral epicondylitis).

Mallet or Baseball Finger

Sudden severe tension on a long extensor tendon may avulse part of its attachment to the phalanx. The most common result of this injury is a mallet or baseball finger (Fig. B3.20A). This deformity results from the distal interphalangeal joint suddenly being forced into extreme flexion (hyperflexion) when, for example, a baseball is miscaught or a finger is jammed into the base pad (Fig. B3.20B). These actions avulse (tear away) the attachment of the tendon to the base of the distal phalanx. As a result, the person cannot extend the distal interphalangeal joint. The resultant deformity bears some resemblance to a mallet.

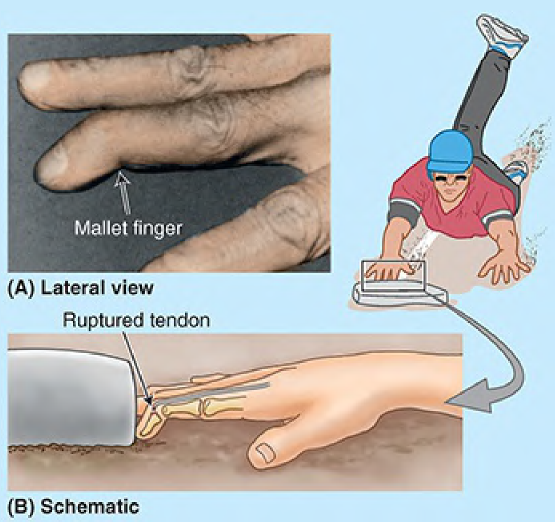


FIGURE B3.20. **Mallet finger. A.** Clinical appearance. **B.** Mechanism of injury.

Fracture of Olecranon

Fracture of the olecranon, called a "fractured elbow" by laypersons, is common because the olecranon is subcutaneous and protrusive. The typical mechanism of

injury is a fall on the elbow combined with sudden powerful contraction of the triceps brachii. The fractured olecranon is pulled away by the active and tonic contraction of the triceps (Fig. B3.21A, B), and the injury is often considered to be an avulsion fracture. Because of the traction produced by the tonus of the triceps on the olecranon fragment, pinning is usually required. Healing occurs slowly, and often a cast must be worn for an extended period of time.

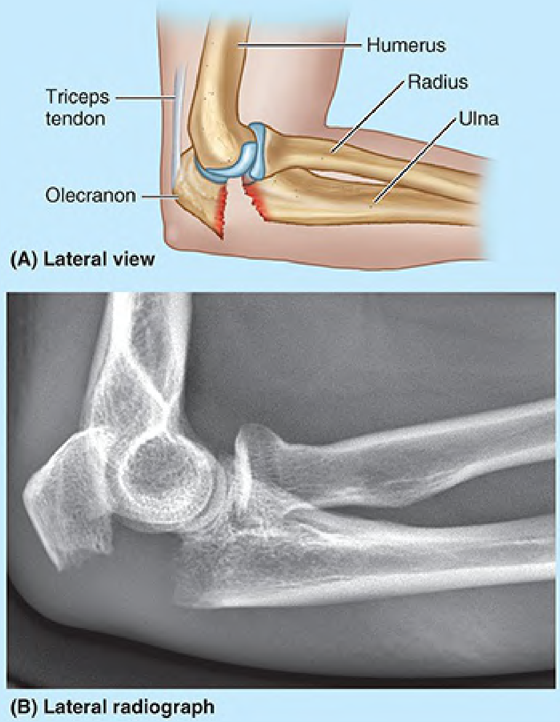


FIGURE B3.21. Fractured olecranon.

Synovial Cyst of Wrist

Sometimes a nontender cystic swelling appears on the hand, most commonly on the dorsum of the wrist (Fig. B3.22). Usually the cyst is the size of a small grape, but it varies and may be as large as a plum. The thin-walled cyst contains clear mucinous fluid. Flexion of the wrist makes the cyst enlarge, and it may be painful. Synovial cysts are close to and often communicate with the synovial sheaths on the dorsum of the wrist (purple in Fig. B3.22). The distal attachment of the ECRB tendon to the base of the 3rd metacarpal is another common site for such a cyst. A cystic swelling of the common flexor synovial sheath on the anterior aspect of the wrist can enlarge enough to produce compression of the median nerve by narrowing the carpal tunnel (carpal tunnel syndrome). This syndrome produces pain and paresthesia (partial numbness, burning, or prickling) in the sensory distribution of the median nerve and clumsiness of finger movements (see the Clinical Box "Carpal Tunnel Syndrome" in this chapter).

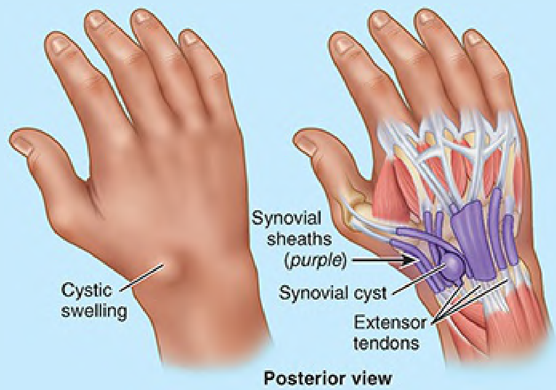


FIGURE B3.22. Synovial cyst on wrist.

High Division of Brachial Artery

Sometimes the brachial artery divides at a more proximal level than usual. In this case, the ulnar and radial arteries begin in the superior or middle part of the arm, and the median nerve passes between them. The musculocutaneous and median nerves commonly communicate as shown in Figure B3.23.

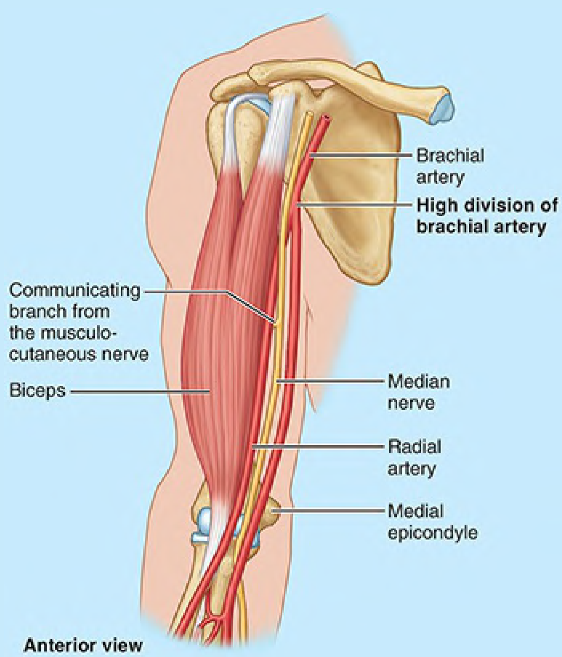


FIGURE B3.23. High division of brachial artery.

Superficial Ulnar Artery

In approximately 3% of people, the ulnar artery descends superficial to the flexor muscles (Fig. B3.24). Pulsations of a superficial ulnar artery can be felt and may be visible. This variation must be kept in mind when performing venesections for withdrawing blood or making intravenous injections. If an aberrant ulnar artery is mistaken

for a vein, it may be damaged and produce bleeding. Injection of drugs into the artery, rather than the vein, may have serious adverse consequences.

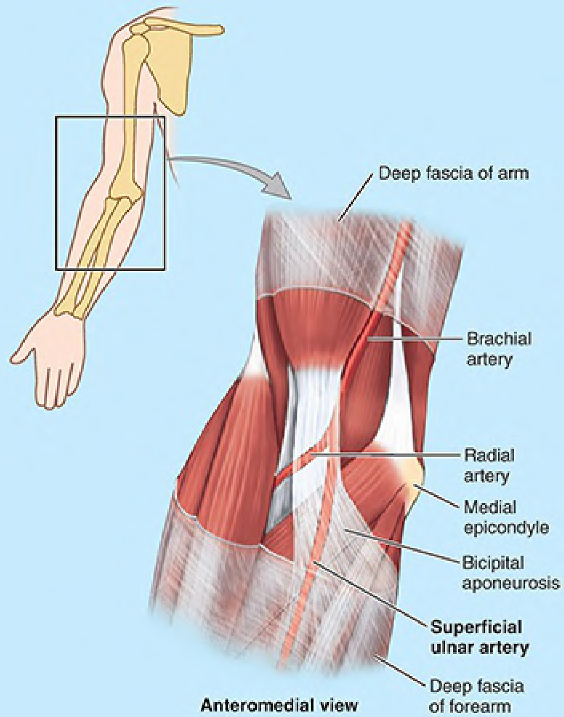


FIGURE B3.24. Superficial ulnar artery.

Measuring Pulse Rate

The common place for measuring the pulse rate is where the radial artery lies on the anterior surface of the distal end of the radius, lateral to the tendon of the FCR. Here the artery is covered by only fascia and skin. The artery can be compressed against the distal end of the radius, where it lies between the tendons of the FCR and APL. When measuring the radial pulse rate, the pulp of the thumb should not be used because it has its own pulse, which could obscure the patient's pulse. If a pulse cannot be felt, try the other wrist because an aberrant radial artery on one side may make the pulse difficult to palpate. A radial pulse may also be felt by pressing lightly in the anatomical snuff box.

Variations in Origin of Radial Artery

The origin of the radial artery may be more proximal than usual; it may be a branch of the axillary or brachial arteries (Fig. B3.23). Sometimes the radial artery is superficial to the deep fascia instead of deep to it. When a superficial vessel is pulsating near the wrist, it is probably a superficial radial artery. The aberrant vessel is vulnerable to laceration.

Median Nerve Injury

When the median nerve is severed in the elbow region, flexion of the proximal interphalangeal joints of the 1st–3rd digits is lost and weakened in the 4th and 5th digits. Flexion of the distal interphalangeal joints of the 2nd and 3rd digits is also lost (Fig. B3.25A). Flexion of the distal interphalangeal joints of the 4th and 5th digits is not affected because the medial part of the FDP, which produces these movements, is supplied by the ulnar nerve. The ability to flex the metacarpophalangeal joints of the 2nd and 3rd digits is affected because the digital branches of the median nerve supply the 1st and 2nd lumbricals. Thus, when the person attempts to make a fist, the 2nd and 3rd fingers remain partially extended ("hand of benediction") (Fig. B3.25B). Thenar muscle function (function of the muscles at the base of the thumb) is also lost, as in carpal tunnel syndrome (see the Clinical Box "Carpal Tunnel Syndrome" in this chapter).

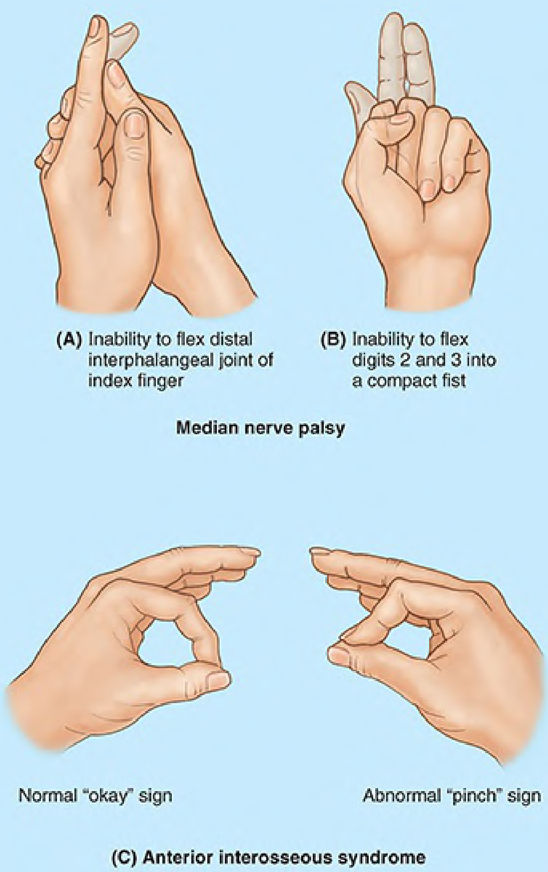


FIGURE B3.25. Median nerve injury (palsy). A and B. Testing for median nerve palsy. **C.** Testing for anterior interosseous syndrome.

When the anterior interosseous nerve is injured, the thenar muscles are unaffected, but paresis (partial paralysis) of the flexor digitorum profundus and flexor pollicis longus occurs. When the person attempts to make the "okay" sign, opposing the tip of the thumb and index finger in a circle, a "pinch" posture of the hand results instead owing to the

absence of flexion of the interphalangeal joint of the thumb and distal interphalangeal joint of the index finger (anterior interosseous syndrome) (Fig. B3.25C).

Pronator Syndrome

Pronator syndrome, a nerve entrapment syndrome, is caused by compression of the median nerve near the elbow. The nerve may be compressed between the heads of the pronator teres as a result of trauma, muscular hypertrophy, or fibrous bands. Individuals with this syndrome are first seen clinically with pain and tenderness in the proximal aspect of the anterior forearm, and hypesthesia (decreased sensation) of palmar aspects of the radial three and half digits and adjacent palm (Fig. B3.26). Symptoms often follow activities that involve repeated pronation.

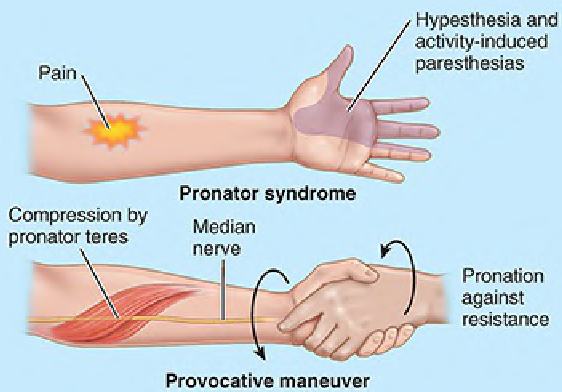


FIGURE B3.26. Pronator syndrome.

Communications Between Median and Ulnar Nerves

Occasionally, communications occur between the median and ulnar nerves in the forearm. These branches are usually represented by slender nerves, but the communications are important clinically because even with a complete lesion of the median nerve, some muscles may not be paralyzed. This may lead to an erroneous conclusion that the median nerve has not been damaged.

Injury of Ulnar Nerve at Elbow and in Forearm

The course of the ulnar nerve makes the nerve very susceptible to traumatic injury. Ulnar nerve injuries usually occur in four places: (1) most commonly, posterior to the medial epicondyle of the humerus (Fig. B3.27), (2) in the cubital tunnel formed by the tendinous arch connecting the humeral and ulnar heads of the FCU (see the Clinical Box "Cubital Tunnel Syndrome"), (3) uncommonly at the wrist (see the Clinical Box "Ulnar Canal Syndrome" in this chapter), and (4) in the hand. Injury at the most common site results when the medial part of the elbow hits a hard surface, often fracturing the medial epicondyle ("funny bone"). Trauma to the nerve proximal to the medial epicondyle

produces paresthesia of the medial part of the dorsum of the hand. Ulnar nerve injury usually produces numbness and tingling (paresthesia) of the medial part of the palm and the medial one and a half fingers (Fig. B3.28). Pluck your ulnar nerve at the posterior aspect of your elbow with your index finger and you may feel tingling in these fingers. Severe compression may also produce elbow pain that radiates distally.

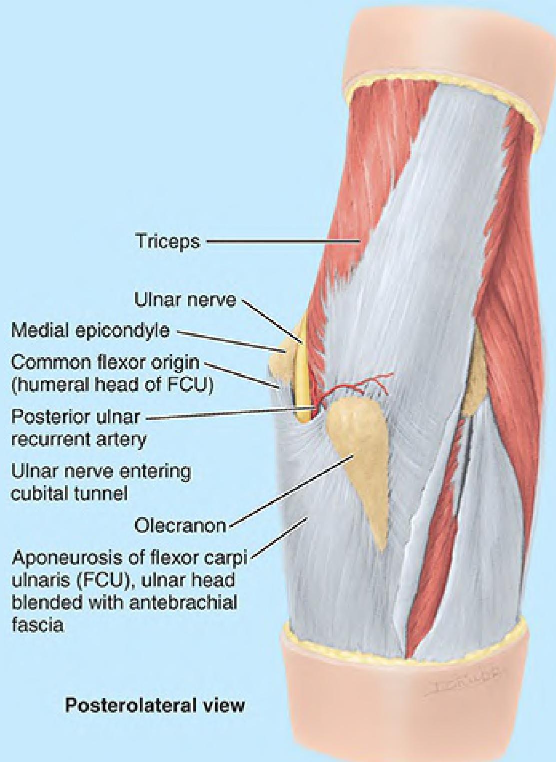


FIGURE B3.27. **Vulnerable position of ulnar nerve.**

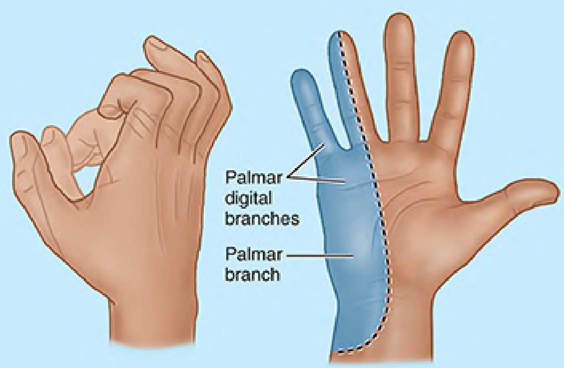


FIGURE B3.28. **Claw hand and sensory distribution of ulnar nerve.**

Ulnar nerve injury can result in extensive motor and sensory loss to the hand. An injury to the nerve in the distal part of the forearm denervates most intrinsic hand muscles. Power of wrist adduction is impaired, and when an attempt is made to flex the wrist joint, the hand is drawn to the lateral side by the FCR (supplied by the median nerve) in the absence of the "balance" provided by the FCU. After ulnar nerve injury, the person has difficulty making a

fist because, in the absence of opposition, the metacarpophalangeal joints become hyperextended, and he or she cannot flex the 4th and 5th digits at the distal interphalangeal joints when trying to make a fist. Furthermore, the person cannot extend the interphalangeal joints when trying to straighten the fingers. This characteristic appearance of the hand, resulting from a distal lesion of the ulnar nerve, is known as claw hand (main en griffe). The deformity results from atrophy of the interosseous muscles of the hand supplied by the ulnar nerve. The claw is produced by the unopposed action of the extensors and FDP. Functional recovery from serious traumatic injury is less likely for the ulnar nerve than for similar injury to either the median or radial nerves, attributed to the ulnar nerve's responsibility for fine movements in the hand, requiring greater specificity in re-innervation to regain useful function (Higgins et al., 2022). For a description of ulnar nerve injury at the wrist, see the Clinical Box "Ulnar Canal Syndrome" in this chapter.

Cubital Tunnel Syndrome

The ulnar nerve may be compressed (ulnar nerve entrapment) in the cubital tunnel formed by the tendinous arch joining the humeral and ulnar heads of attachment of the FCU (Fig. B3.27; Table 3.10). The signs and symptoms of cubital tunnel syndrome are the same as an ulnar nerve lesion in the ulnar groove on the posterior aspect of the medial epicondyle of the humerus.

Injury of Radial Nerve in Forearm (Superficial or Deep Branches)

The radial nerve is usually injured in the arm by a fracture of the humeral shaft. This injury is proximal to the motor branches to the long and short extensors of the wrist from the (common) radial nerve, and so wrist-drop is the primary clinical manifestation of an injury at this level (see the Clinical Box "Injury to Radial Nerve in Arm" in this chapter).

Injury to the deep branch of the radial nerve may occur when wounds of the posterior forearm are deep (penetrating). Severance of the deep branch results in an inability to extend the thumb and the metacarpophalangeal (MP) joints of the other digits. Thus, the integrity of the deep branch may be tested by asking the person to extend the MP joints while the examiner provides resistance (Fig. B3.29). If the nerve is intact, the long extensor tendons should appear prominently on the dorsum of the hand, confirming that the extension is occurring at the MP joints rather than at the interphalangeal joints (movements under the control of other nerves).

FIGURE B3.29. **Testing radial nerve.**

Loss of sensation does not occur because the deep branch of the radial nerve is entirely muscular and articular in distribution. See Table 3.13 to determine the muscles that are paralyzed (e.g., extensor digitorum) when this nerve is severed.

When the superficial branch of the radial nerve, a cutaneous nerve, is severed, sensory loss is usually minimal. Commonly, a coin-shaped area of anesthesia occurs distal to the bases of the 1st and 2nd metacarpals. The reason the area of sensory loss is less than expected, given the areas highlighted in Figure 3.71D, is the result of the considerable overlap from cutaneous branches of the median and ulnar nerves.

The Bottom Line: Forearm

Muscles of anterior compartment of forearm: The superficial and intermediate muscles of the anterior (flexor–pronator) compartment of the forearm are located anteromedially because they arise mainly from the common flexor attachment (medial epicondyle and supra-epicondylar ridge) of the humerus. ■ Muscles in the superficial layer “bend” the wrist to position the hand (i.e., flex the wrist when acting exclusively and abduct or adduct the wrist when working with their extensor counterparts) and assist pronation. ■ The only muscle of the intermediate layer (FDS) primarily flexes the proximal joints of 2nd–5th digits. ■ Muscles of the deep layer attach to the anterior aspects of the radius and ulna, flex all (but especially the distal) joints of all five digits, and pronate the forearm. ■ The muscles of the anterior compartment are innervated mostly by the median nerve, but one and a half muscles (the FCU and ulnar half of the FDP) are innervated by the ulnar nerve. ■ Flexion of the wrist and hand is used for grasping, gripping, and drawing things toward oneself. ■ Pronation is used for positioning the hand to manipulate or pick things up. Both movements are basic protective (defensive) movements.

Muscles of posterior compartment of forearm: The extensor–supinator muscles of the posterior compartment of the forearm are located posterolaterally in the proximal

forearm and are innervated by the radial nerve. ■ The supinator acts at the radio-ulnar joint, while the remaining muscles extend and abduct the hand at the wrist joint and the thumb. The ECU may also contribute to adduction of the hand. ■ The extensor muscles become tendinous in the distal forearm and pass deep to the extensor retinaculum in osseofibrous tunnels. ■ Tendons passing to the medial 4 digits are involved in complex extensor expansions on the dorsal aspects of the fingers. ■ Extension ("cocking") of the wrist is important in enabling the flexors of the fingers to grip tightly or make a fist.

Superficial veins and cutaneous nerves of forearm: Well-developed subcutaneous veins course in the subcutaneous tissue of the forearm. These veins are subject to great variation. ■ Once they have penetrated the deep fascia, cutaneous nerves run independently of the veins in the subcutaneous tissue, where they remain constant in location and size, with lateral, medial, and posterior cutaneous nerves of the forearm supplying the aspects of the forearm described by their names.

Neurovascular bundles of forearm: Three major (radial, median or middle, and ulnar) and two minor (anterior and posterior interosseous) neurovascular bundles occur deep to the antebrachial fascia. ■ The radial neurovascular bundle—containing the radial artery, accompanying veins, and superficial radial nerve—courses along and defines the border between the anterior and the posterior forearm compartments (the vascular structures serving both) deep to the brachioradialis. ■ The middle (median nerve and variable median artery and veins) and ulnar (ulnar nerve, artery, and accompanying veins) bundles course in a fascial plane between the intermediate and the deep flexor muscles. The median nerve supplies most muscles in the anterior compartment, many via its anterior interosseous branch, which courses on the interosseous membrane. ■ The ulnar nerve supplies the one and a half exceptions (FCU and ulnar half of the FDP). ■ The deep radial nerve penetrates the supinator to join the posterior interosseous artery in the plane between the superficial and the deep extensors. This nerve supplies all the muscles arising in the posterior compartment. ■ The flexor muscles of the anterior compartment have approximately twice the bulk and strength of the extensor muscles of the posterior compartment. This, and the fact that the flexor aspect of the limb is the more protected aspect, accounts for the major neurovascular structures being located in the anterior compartment, with only the relatively small posterior interosseous vessels and nerve in the posterior compartment.

HAND

The **hand** is the manual part of the upper limb distal to the forearm. The **wrist** is located at the junction of the forearm and hand. Once positioned at the desired height and location relative to

the body by movements at the shoulder and elbow, and the direction of action is established by pronation and supination of the forearm, the working position or attitude (tilt) of the hand is adjusted by movement at the wrist joint.

The skeleton of the hand (see Fig. 3.9) consists of carpals in the wrist, metacarpals in the hand proper, and phalanges in the digits (fingers). The digits are numbered from 1 to 5, beginning with the thumb: digit 1 is the thumb; digit 2, the index finger; digit 3, the middle finger; digit 4, the ring finger; and digit 5, the little finger. The palmar aspect of the hand features a central concavity that, with the crease proximal to it (over the wrist bones), separates two eminences: a lateral, larger and more prominent **thenar eminence** at the base of the thumb and a medial, smaller **hypothenar eminence** proximal to the base of the 5th finger (see Fig. 3.74A).

Because of the importance of manual dexterity in occupational and recreational activities, a good understanding of the structure and function of the hand is essential for all persons involved in maintaining or restoring its activities: free motion, power grasping, precision handling, and pinching.

The **power grip** (palm grasp) refers to forcible motions of the digits acting against the palm; the fingers are wrapped around an object with counterpressure from the thumb—for example, when grasping a cylindrical structure (Fig. 3.75A). The power grip involves the long flexor muscles to the digits (acting at the interphalangeal joints), the intrinsic muscles in the palm (acting at the metacarpophalangeal joints), and the extensors of the wrist (acting at the radiocarpal and midcarpal joints). The “cocking” of the wrist by the extensors increases the distance over which the flexors of the fingers act, producing the same result as a more complete muscular contraction. Conversely, as flexion increases at the wrist, the grip becomes weaker and more insecure.

FIGURE 3.75. Functional positions of hand. A. In the power grip, when grasping an object, the metacarpophalangeal (MP) and interphalangeal (IP) joints are flexed, but the radiocarpal and midcarpal joints are extended. "Cocking" (extension of) the wrist increases the distance over which the flexor tendons act, increasing tension of the long flexor tendons beyond that produced by maximal contraction of the muscles alone. **B.** The hook grip (flexion of the IP joints of the 2nd–4th digits) resists gravitational (downward) pull with only digital flexion. **C.** The precision grip is used when writing. **D and E.** One uses the precision grip to hold a coin to enable manipulation (**D**) and when pinching an object with fingertips (**E**). **F.** Casts for fractures are applied most often with the hand and wrist in the position of rest. Note the mild extension of the wrist. **G and H.** When gripping an unattached rod loosely (**G**) or firmly (**H**), the 2nd and 3rd carpometacarpal joints are rigid and stable, but the 4th and 5th are saddle joints permitting flexion and extension. The increased flexion changes the angle of the rod during the firm grip.

The **hook grip** is the posture of the hand that is used when carrying a briefcase (Fig. 3.75B). This grip consumes less energy, involving mainly the long flexors of the digits, which are flexed to a varying degree, depending on the size of the object that is grasped.

The **precision handling grip** involves a change in the position of a handled object that requires fine control of the movements of the digits (fingers)—for example, holding a pencil, manipulating a coin, threading a needle, or buttoning a shirt (Fig. 3.75C, D). In a precision grip, the wrist and digits are held firmly by the long flexor and extensor muscles, and the intrinsic

hand muscles perform fine movements of the digits.

Pinching refers to compression of something between the thumb and index finger—for example, handling a teacup or holding a coin on edge (Fig. 3.75E)—or between the thumb and the adjacent two fingers—for example, snapping the fingers.

The **position of rest** is assumed by an inactive hand—for example, when the forearm and hand are laid on a table (Fig. 3.75F). This position is often used when it is necessary to immobilize the wrist and hand in a cast to stabilize a fracture.

Fascia and Compartments of Palm

The fascia of the palm is continuous with the antebrachial fascia and the fascia of the dorsum of the hand (see Fig. 3.60). The **palmar fascia** is thin over the thenar and hypothenar eminences, as **thenar** and **hypothenar fascia**, respectively (Figs. 3.76A and 3.77A). However, the palmar fascia is thick centrally where it forms the fibrous palmar aponeurosis and in the fingers where it forms the digital sheaths. The **palmar aponeurosis**, a strong, well-defined part of the deep fascia of the palm, covers the soft tissues and overlies the long flexor tendons. The proximal end or apex of the triangular palmar aponeurosis is continuous with the flexor retinaculum and the palmaris longus tendon.

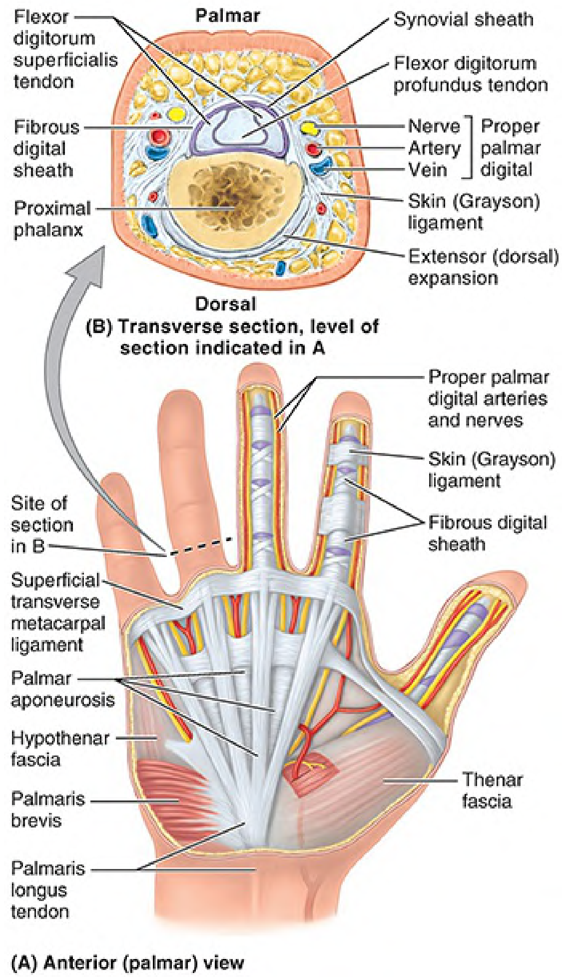


FIGURE 3.76. Palmar fascia and fibrous digital sheaths. A. Overview. The palmar fascia is continuous with the antebrachial fascia. The thin thenar and hypothenar fascia covers the intrinsic muscles of the thenar and hypothenar eminences, respectively. Between the thenar and hypothenar muscle masses, the central compartment of the palm is roofed by the thick palmar aponeurosis. **B.** Transverse section of 4th digit (proximal phalanx level). Within the fibrous digital sheath and proximal to its attachment to the base of the middle phalanx, the FDS tendon has split into two parts to allow continued central passage of the FDP tendon to the distal phalanx.

When the palmaris longus is present, the palmar aponeurosis is the expanded tendon of the palmaris longus. Distal to the apex, the palmar aponeurosis forms four longitudinal digital bands or rays that radiate from the apex and attach distally to the bases of the proximal phalanges and become continuous with the fibrous digital sheaths (Fig. 3.76; see Fig. 3.60). The **fibrous digital sheaths** are ligamentous tubes that enclose the synovial sheaths, the superficial and deep flexor tendons, and the tendon of the FPL in their passage along the palmar aspect of their respective fingers.

A **medial fibrous septum** extends deeply from the medial border of the palmar aponeurosis to the 5th metacarpal (Fig. 3.77A). Medial to this septum is the medial or **hypothenar compartment**, containing the hypothenar muscles and bounded anteriorly by the hypothenar fascia. Similarly, a **lateral fibrous septum** extends deeply from the lateral border of the palmar aponeurosis to the 3rd metacarpal. Lateral to this septum is the lateral or **thenar compartment**,

containing the thenar muscles and bounded anteriorly by the thenar fascia.

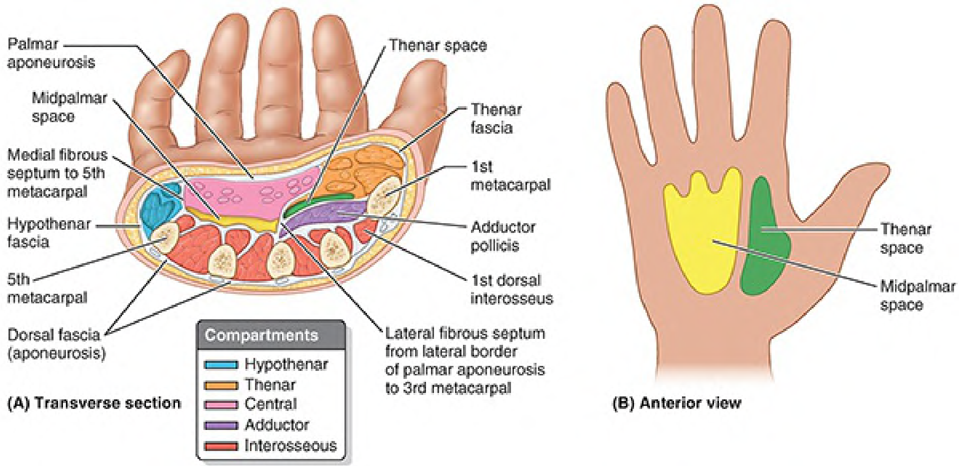


FIGURE 3.77. Compartments, spaces, and fascia of palm. A. Overview. Transverse section through the middle of the palm that illustrates the fascial compartments of the hand. **B.** Thenar and midpalmar spaces. The midpalmar space underlies the central compartment of the palm and is related distally to the synovial tendon sheaths of the 3rd–5th digits and proximally to the common flexor sheath as it emerges from the carpal tunnel. The thenar space underlies the thenar compartment and is related distally to the synovial tendon sheath of the index finger and proximally to the common flexor sheath distal to the carpal tunnel.

Between the hypothenar and thenar compartments is the **central compartment**, bounded anteriorly by the palmar aponeurosis and containing the flexor tendons and their sheaths, the lumbricals, the superficial palmar arterial arch, and the digital vessels and nerves.

The deepest muscular plane of the palm is the **adductor compartment** containing the adductor pollicis.

Between the flexor tendons and the fascia covering the deep palmar muscles are two potential spaces, the **thenar space** and the **midpalmar space** (Fig. 3.77). The spaces are bounded by fibrous septa passing from the edges of the palmar aponeurosis to the metacarpals. Between the two spaces is the especially strong lateral fibrous septum, which is attached to the 3rd metacarpal. Although most fascial compartments end at the joints, the midpalmar space is continuous with the anterior compartment of the forearm via the carpal tunnel.

Muscles of Hand

The intrinsic muscles of the hand are located in five compartments (Fig. 3.77A):

1. Thenar muscles in the thenar compartment: abductor pollicis brevis, flexor pollicis brevis, and opponens pollicis
2. Adductor pollicis in the adductor compartment
3. Hypothenar muscles in the hypothenar compartment: abductor digiti minimi, flexor digiti minimi brevis, and opponens digiti minimi
4. Short muscles of the hand, the lumbricals, in the central compartment with the long flexor tendons
5. The interossei in separate interosseous compartments between the metacarpals

THENAR MUSCLES

The **thenar muscles** form the thenar eminence on the lateral surface of the palm (see Fig. 3.74A). They are chiefly responsible for opposition of the thumb. Movement of the thumb is important for the precise activities of the hand. The high degree of freedom of the movements results from the 1st metacarpal being independent, with mobile joints at both ends. Several muscles are required to control the freedom of thumb movements (Fig. 3.78):

- Extension: extensor pollicis longus, extensor pollicis brevis, and abductor pollicis longus
- Flexion: flexor pollicis longus and flexor pollicis brevis
- Abduction: abductor pollicis longus and abductor pollicis brevis
- Adduction: adductor pollicis and 1st dorsal interosseous
- Opposition: opponens pollicis. This movement occurs at the carpometacarpal joint and results in a "cupping" of the palm. Bringing the tip of the thumb into contact with the 5th finger, or any of the other fingers, involves considerably more movement than can be produced by the opponens pollicis alone.

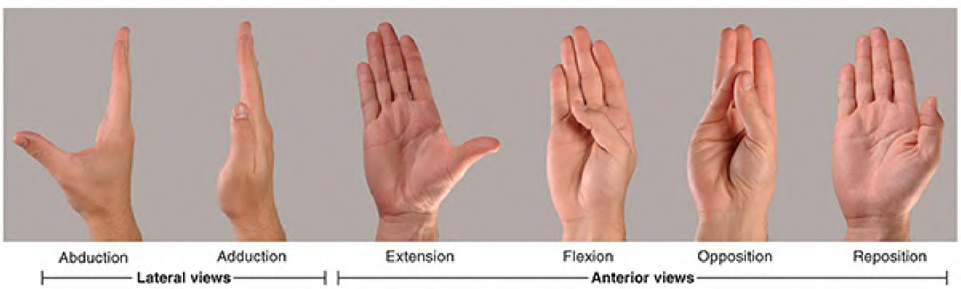


FIGURE 3.78. Movements of thumb. The thumb is rotated 90° to the other digits. This can be confirmed by noting the direction the nail of the thumb faces compared with the nails of the other fingers. Thus, abduction and adduction occur in a sagittal plane and flexion and extension occur in a coronal plane. Opposition, the action bringing the tip of the thumb in contact with the pulps of the other fingers (e.g., with the little finger), is the most complex movement. The components of opposition are abduction and medial rotation at the carpometacarpal joint and flexion of the metacarpophalangeal joint.

The first four movements of the thumb occur at the carpometacarpal and metacarpophalangeal joints. **Opposition**, a complex movement, begins with the thumb in the extended position and initially involves abduction and medial rotation of the 1st metacarpal (cupping the palm) produced by the action of the opponens pollicis at the carpometacarpal joint and then flexion at the metacarpophalangeal joint (Fig. 3.78). The reinforcing action of the adductor pollicis and FPL increases the pressure that the opposed thumb can exert on the fingertips. In pulp-to-pulp opposition, movements of the finger opposing the thumb are also involved.

The thenar muscles are illustrated in Figure 3.79; their attachments are shown in Figure 3.80A; and their attachments, innervations, and main actions are summarized in Table 3.14.

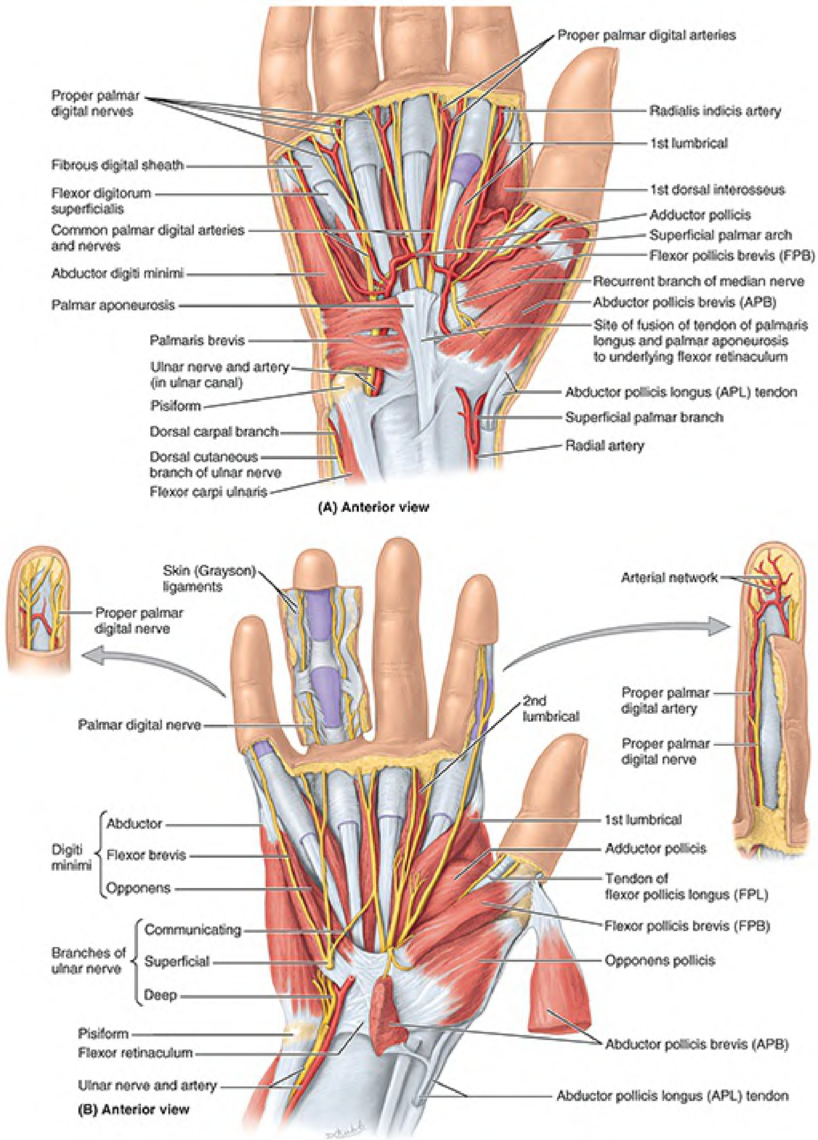


FIGURE 3.79. Superficial dissections of right palm. The skin and subcutaneous tissue have been removed, as have most of the palmar aponeurosis and the thenar and hypothenar fasciae. **A.** Superficial palmar arch is located immediately deep to the palmar aponeurosis, superficial to the long flexor tendons. This arterial arch gives rise to the common palmar digital arteries. In the digits, a digital artery (e.g., radialis indicis) and nerve lie on the medial and lateral sides of the fibrous digital sheath. The pisiform bone protects the ulnar nerve and artery as they pass into the palm. **B.** Flexor retinaculum. Three thenar and three hypothenar muscles attach to the flexor retinaculum and to the four marginal carpal bones united by the retinaculum.

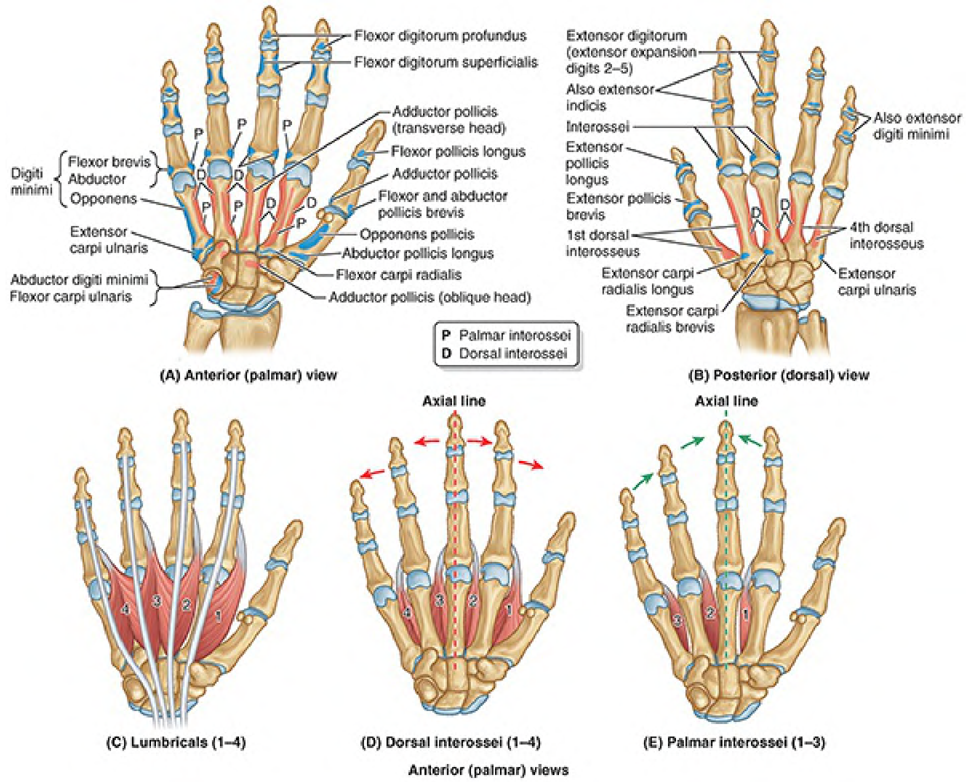


FIGURE 3.80. Attachments of intrinsic muscles of hand and actions of interossei.

TABLE 3.14. INTRINSIC MUSCLES OF HAND

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action
Thenar muscles				
Opponens pollicis	Flexor retinaculum and tubercles of scaphoid and trapezium	Lateral side of 1st metacarpal	Recurrent branch of median nerve (**C8**, T1)	To oppose thumb, it draws 1st metacarpal medially to center of palm and rotates it medially
Abductor pollicis brevis		Lateral side of base of proximal phalanx of thumb		Abducts thumb; helps oppose it
Flexor pollicis brevis				Flexes thumb
Superficial head				
Deep head			Deep branch of ulnar nerve (C8, **T1**)	
Adductor compartment				Adducts thumb toward lateral border of palm
Adductor pollicis				
Oblique head	Bases of 2nd and 3rd metacarpals, capitate, and adjacent carpals	Medial side of base of proximal phalanx of thumb		
Transverse head	Anterior surface of shaft of 3rd			

	metacarpal			
Hypothenar muscles				
Abductor digiti minimi	Pisiform	Medial side of base of proximal phalanx of 5th digit	Deep branch of ulnar nerve (C8, **T1**)	Abducts 5th digit; assists in flexion of its proximal phalanx
Flexor digiti minimi brevis	Hook of hamate and flexor retinaculum			Flexes proximal phalanx of 5th digit
Opponens digiti		Medial border of 5th metacarpal		Draws 5th metacarpal anterior and rotates it, bringing 5th digit into opposition with thumb
Short muscles				
Lumbricals		Lateral sides of extensor expansions of 2nd–5th digits	Median nerve (C8, **T1**)	Flex metacarpophalangeal joints; extend interphalangeal joints of 2nd–5th
1st and 2nd	Lateral two tendons of flexor digitorum profundus (as unipennate muscles)			
3rd and 4th	Medial three tendons of flexor digitorum profundus (as bipennate muscles)		Deep branch of ulnar nerve (C8, **T1**)	
Dorsal interossei, 1st–4th	Adjacent sides of two metacarpals (as bipennate muscles)	Bases of proximal phalanges; extensor expansions of 2nd–4th digits		Abduct 2nd–4th digits from axial line; act with lumbricals in flexing metacarpophalangeal joints and extending interphalangeal joints
Palmar interossei, 1st–3rd	Palmar surfaces of 2nd, 4th, and 5th metacarpals (as unipennate muscles)	Bases of proximal phalanges; extensor expansions of 2nd, 4th, and 5th digits		Adduct 2nd, 4th, and 5th digits toward axial line; assist lumbricals in flexing metacarpophalangeal joints and extending interphalangeal joints; extensor expansions of 2nd–4th digits

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "**C8**, T1" means that the nerves supplying the opponens pollicis are derived from the eighth cervical segment and first thoracic segment of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (e.g., **C8**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

Abductor Pollicis Brevis. The **abductor pollicis brevis (APB)**, the short abductor of the thumb, forms the anterolateral part of the thenar eminence (Fig. 3.79). In addition to abducting the thumb, the APB assists the opponens pollicis during the early stages of opposition by rotating its proximal phalanx slightly medially.

To test the abductor pollicis brevis, abduct the thumb against resistance. If acting normally, the muscle can be seen and palpated.

Flexor Pollicis Brevis. The **flexor pollicis brevis (FPB)**, the short flexor of the thumb, is located medial to the APB. Its two bellies, located on opposite sides of the tendon of the FPL, share (with each other and often with the APB) a common, sesamoid-containing tendon at their distal attachment. The bellies usually differ in their innervation: The larger superficial head of

the FPB is innervated by the recurrent branch of the median nerve, whereas the smaller deep head is usually innervated by the deep palmar branch of the ulnar nerve. The FPB flexes the thumb at the carpometacarpal and metacarpophalangeal joints and aids in opposition of the thumb.

To test the flexor pollicis brevis, flex the thumb against resistance. If acting normally, the muscle can be seen and palpated; however, keep in mind that the FPL also flexes the thumb.

Opponens Pollicis. The **opponens pollicis** is a quadrangular muscle that lies deep to the APB and lateral to the FPB (Fig. 3.79B). The opponens pollicis opposes the thumb, the most important thumb movement. It flexes and rotates the 1st metacarpal medially at the carpometacarpal joint during opposition; this movement occurs when picking up an object. During opposition, the tip of the thumb is brought into contact with the pulp (pad) of the little finger, as shown in Figure 3.78.

ADDUCTOR POLLICIS

The **adductor pollicis** is located in the adductor compartment of the hand (Fig. 3.77A). The fan-shaped muscle has two heads of origin, which are separated by the radial artery as it enters the palm to form the deep palmar arch (Figs. 3.79A and 3.81). Its tendon usually contains a sesamoid bone. The adductor pollicis adducts the thumb, moving the thumb to the palm of the hand (Fig. 3.78), thereby giving power to the grip (Fig. 3.75G, H).

HYPOTHENAR MUSCLES

The **hypothenar muscles** (abductor digiti minimi, flexor digiti minimi brevis, and opponens digiti minimi) produce the hypothenar eminence on the medial side of the palm and move the little finger (see Fig. 3.89). These muscles are in the hypothenar compartment with the 5th metacarpal (Figs. 3.77A and 3.79). The attachments are illustrated in Figure 3.80A, and their attachments, innervations, and main actions of the hypothenar muscles are summarized in Table 3.14.

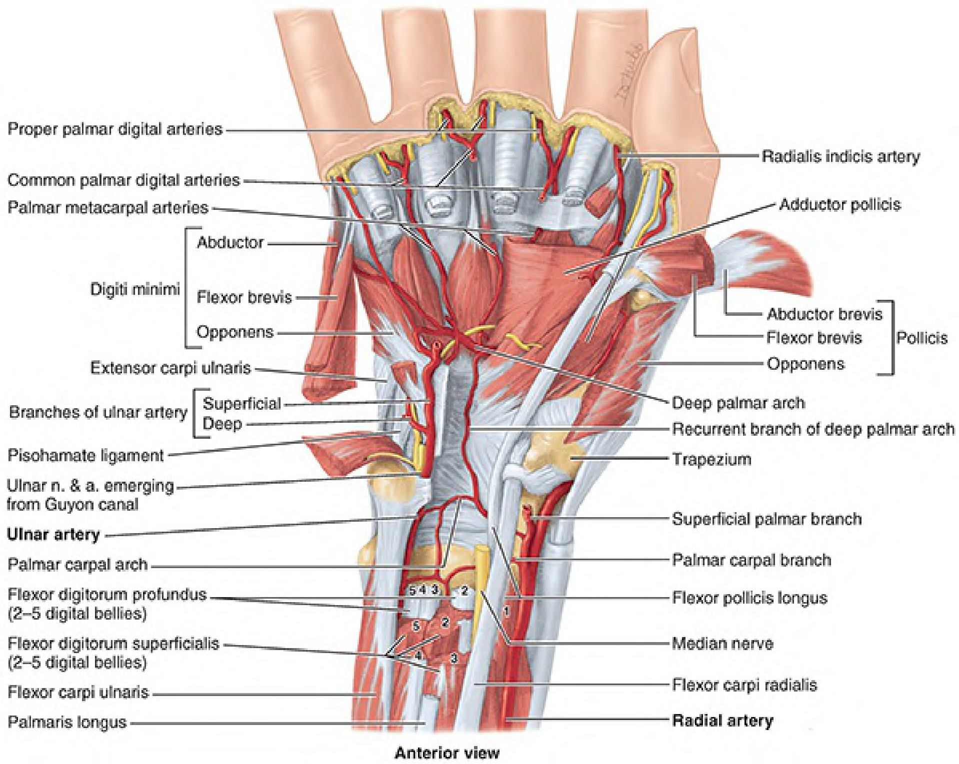


FIGURE 3.81. Muscles and arteries of distal forearm and deep palm. Deep dissection of the palm revealing the anastomosis of the palmar carpal branch of the radial artery with the palmar carpal branch of the ulnar artery to form the palmar carpal arch and deep palmar arch. The deep palmar arch lies at the level of the bases of the metacarpal bones, 1.5–2 cm proximal to the superficial palmar arch.

Abductor Digiti Minimi. The **abductor digiti minimi** is the most superficial of the three muscles forming the hypothenar eminence. The abductor digiti minimi abducts the 5th finger and helps flex its proximal phalanx.

Flexor Digiti Minimi Brevis. The **flexor digiti minimi brevis** is variable in size; it lies lateral to the abductor digiti minimi. The flexor digiti minimi brevis flexes the proximal phalanx of the 5th finger at the metacarpophalangeal joint.

Opponens Digiti Minimi. The **opponens digiti minimi** is a quadrangular muscle that lies deep to the abductor and flexor muscles of the 5th finger. The opponens digiti minimi draws the 5th metacarpal anteriorly and rotates it laterally, thereby deepening the hollow of the palm and bringing the 5th finger into opposition with the thumb (Fig. 3.78). Like the opponens pollicis, the opponens digiti minimi acts exclusively at the carpometacarpal joint.

Palmaris Brevis. The **palmaris brevis** is a small, thin muscle in the subcutaneous tissue of the hypothenar eminence (Figs. 3.76A and 3.79A). It is not in the hypothenar compartment. The palmaris brevis wrinkles the skin of the hypothenar eminence and deepens the hollow of the palm, thereby aiding the palmar grip. The palmaris brevis covers and protects the ulnar nerve and artery. It is attached proximally to the medial border of the palmar aponeurosis and to the skin on the medial border of the hand.

SHORT MUSCLES OF HAND

The short muscles of the hand are the lumbricals and interossei (Fig. 3.80C–E; Table 3.14).

Lumbricals. The four slender lumbrical muscles were named because of their worm-like form (L. lumbricus, earthworm) (Figs. 3.79B and 3.80C). The lumbricals flex the fingers at the metacarpophalangeal joints and extend the interphalangeal joints.

To test the lumbrical muscles, with the palm facing superiorly, the patient is asked to flex the metacarpophalangeal (MP) joints while keeping the interphalangeal joints extended. The examiner uses one finger to apply resistance along the palmar surface of the proximal phalanx of digits 2–5 individually. Resistance may also be applied separately on the dorsal surface of the middle and distal phalanges of digits 2–5 to test extension of the interphalangeal joints, also while flexion of the MP joints is maintained.

Interossei. The four **dorsal interosseus muscles** (dorsal interossei) are located between the metacarpals; the three **palmar interosseus muscles** (palmar interossei) are on the palmar surfaces of the metacarpals in the interosseous compartment of the hand (Fig. 3.77A). The 1st dorsal interosseus muscle is easy to palpate; oppose the thumb firmly against the index finger and it can be easily felt. Some authors describe four palmar interossei; in so doing, they are including the deep head of the FPB because of its similar innervation and placement on the thumb. The four dorsal interossei abduct the fingers, and the three palmar interossei adduct them (Fig. 3.80D, E; Table 3.14).

A mnemonic device is to make acronyms of **p**almar (muscles) **add**uct (PAD) and **d**orsal **ab**duct (DAB). Acting together, the dorsal and palmar interossei and the lumbricals produce flexion at the metacarpophalangeal joints and extension of the interphalangeal joints (the so-called Z-movement). This occurs because of their attachment to the lateral bands of the extensor expansions (see Fig. 3.65A, B).

Understanding the Z-movement is useful because it is the opposite of claw hand, which occurs in ulnar paralysis when the interossei and the 3rd and 4th lumbricals are incapable of acting together to produce the Z-movement (see the Clinical Box “Injury of Ulnar Nerve at Elbow and in Forearm” in this chapter).

To test the palmar interossei, a sheet of paper is placed between adjacent fingers. The individual is asked to “keep the fingers together” to prevent the paper from being pulled away by the examiner (Fig. 3.82A). To test the dorsal interossei, the examiner holds adjacent extended and adducted fingers between thumb and middle finger, providing resistance as the individual attempts to abduct the fingers (the person is asked to “spread the fingers apart”) (Fig. 3.82B).

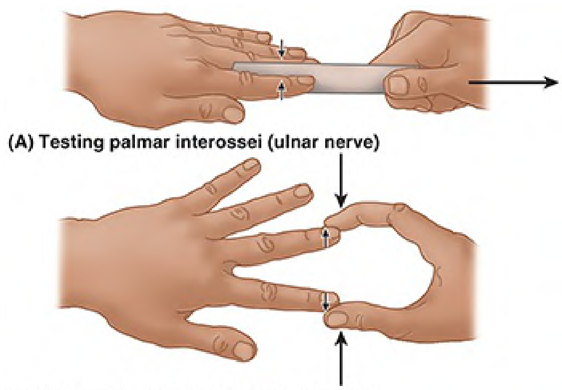


FIGURE 3.82. **Testing interossei (ulnar nerve). A.** Palmar interossei. **B.** Dorsal interossei. Small arrows, patient action; large arrows, examiner action.

Long Flexor Tendons and Tendon Sheaths in Hand

The tendons of the FDS and FDP enter the **common flexor sheath** (ulnar bursa) deep to the flexor retinaculum (Fig. 3.83A). The tendons enter the central compartment of the hand and fan out to enter their respective **digital synovial sheaths**. The flexor and digital sheaths enable the tendons to slide freely over each other during movements of the fingers. Near the base of the proximal phalanx, the tendon of FDS splits to permit passage of the tendon of FDP; the crossing of the tendons makes up a **tendinous chiasm** (Fig. 3.83B; see Figs. 3.65D and 3.76B). The halves of the FDS tendon are attached to the margins of the anterior aspect of the base of the middle phalanx. Distal to the tendinous chiasm, the FDP tendon attaches to the anterior aspect of the base of the distal phalanx (Fig. 3.65D).

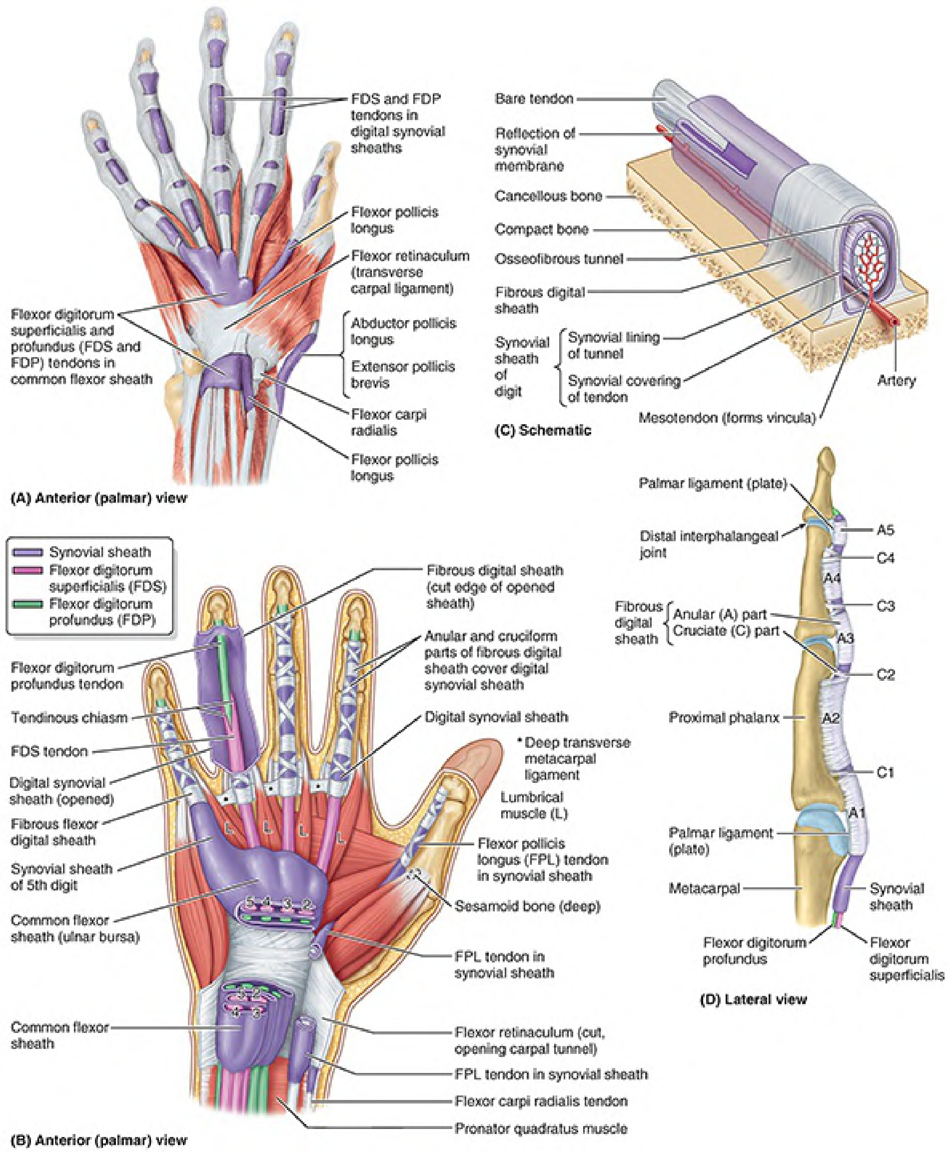


FIGURE 3.83. Flexor tendons, common flexor sheath, fibrous digital sheaths, and synovial sheaths of digits. A. Synovial sheaths. The synovial sheaths of the long flexor tendons to the digits are arranged in two sets: (1) proximal or carpal, posterior to the flexor retinaculum, and (2) distal or digital, within the fibrous sheaths of the digital flexors. **B.** Tendons, tendon bursae, and fibrous digital sheaths. **C.** Osseofibrous tunnel. The structure of an osseofibrous tunnel of a finger, containing a tendon. Within the fibrous sheath, the synovial sheath consists of the (parietal) synovial lining of the tunnel and the (visceral) synovial covering of the tendon. The layers of the synovial sheath are actually separated by only a capillary layer of synovial fluid, which lubricates the synovial surfaces to facilitate gliding of the tendon. **D.** Fibrous digital tendon sheath. Note the anular and cruciate parts (“pulleys”).

The **fibrous digital sheaths** are the strong ligamentous tunnels containing the flexor tendons and their synovial sheaths (Figs. 3.76 and 3.83C, D). The sheaths extend from the heads of the metacarpals to the bases of the distal phalanges. These sheaths prevent the tendons from pulling away from the digits (bowstringing). The fibrous digital sheaths combine with the bones to form **osseofibrous tunnels** through which the tendons pass to reach the digits. The **anular** and **cruciform parts** (often referred to clinically as “pulleys”) are thickened reinforcements of the fibrous digital sheaths (Fig. 3.83D).

The long flexor tendons are supplied by small blood vessels that pass within synovial folds (**vincula**) from the periosteum of the phalanges (see Fig. 3.65B). The tendon of the FPL passes deep to the flexor retinaculum to the thumb within its own synovial sheath. At the head of the metacarpal, the tendon runs between two sesamoid bones, one in the combined tendon of the FPB and APB and the other in the tendon of the adductor pollicis.

Arteries of Hand

Because its function requires it to be placed and held in many different positions, often while grasping or applying pressure, the hand is supplied with an abundance of highly branched and anastomosing arteries so that oxygenated blood is generally available to all parts in all positions. Furthermore, the arteries or their derivatives are relatively superficial, underlying skin that is capable of sweating so that excess heat can be released. To prevent undesirable heat loss in a cold environment, the arterioles of the hands are capable of reducing blood flow to the surface and to the ends of the fingers. The ulnar and radial arteries and their branches provide all the blood to the hand. The arteries of the hand are illustrated in Figures 3.84 and 3.85, and their origins and courses are described in Table 3.15.

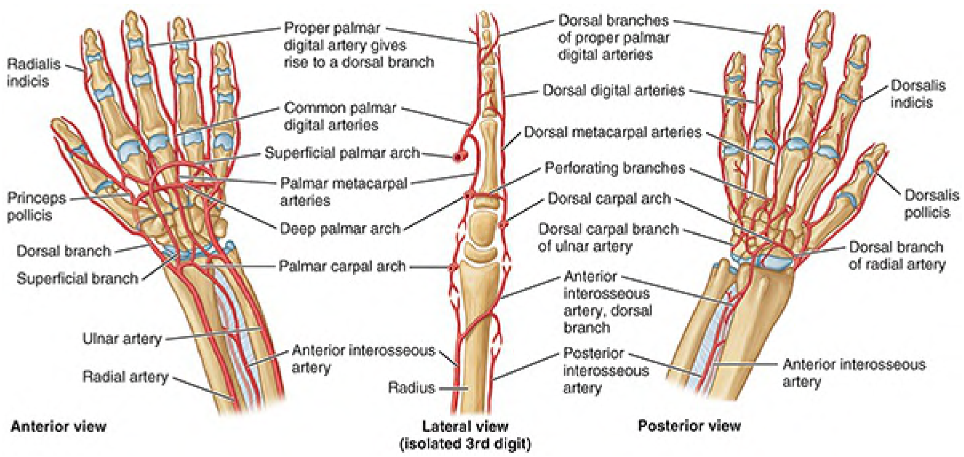


FIGURE 3.84. Arteries of wrist and hand.

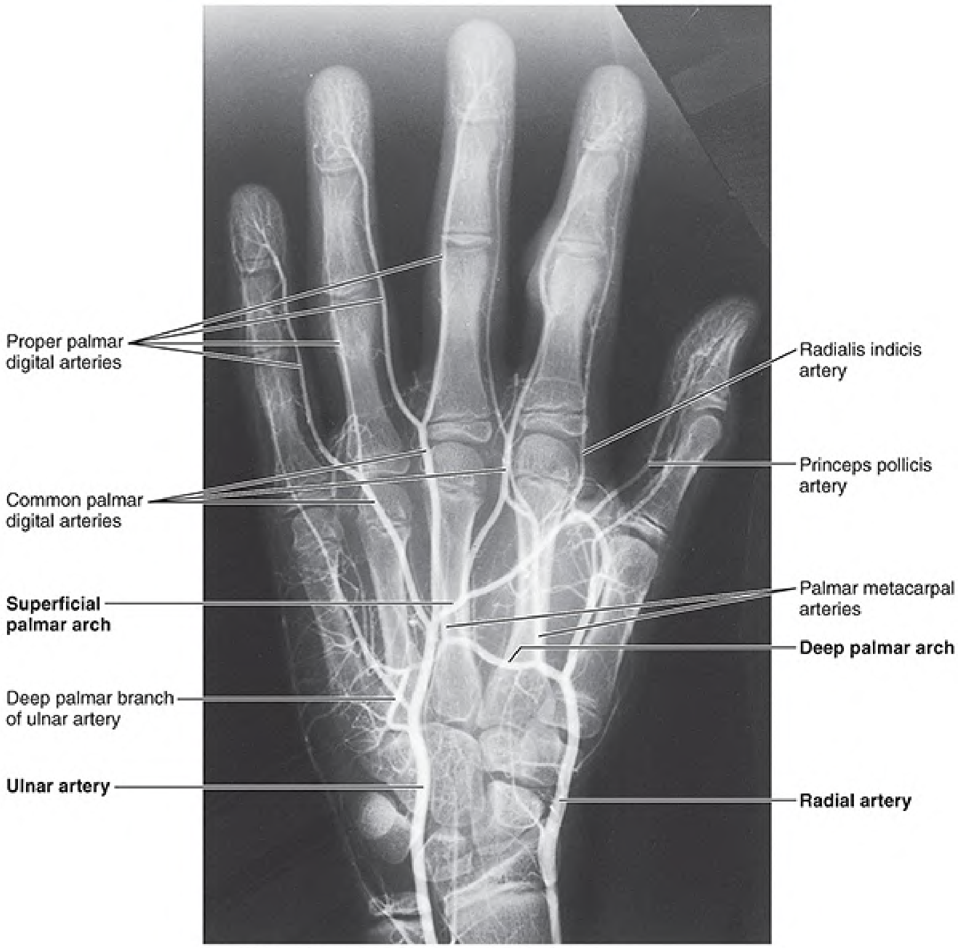


FIGURE 3.85. Arteriogram of wrist and hand. The carpal bones are fully ossified in this teenage hand, but the epiphysial plates (growth plates) of the long bones remain open. Closure occurs when growth is complete, usually at the end of the teenage years.

TABLE 3.15. ARTERIES OF HAND

Artery	Origin	Course
Superficial palmar arch	Direct continuation of ulnar artery; arch is completed on lateral side by superficial branch of radial artery or another of its branches.	Curves laterally deep to palmar aponeurosis and superficial to long flexor tendons; curve of arch lies across palm at level of distal border of extended thumb
Deep palmar arch	Direct continuation of radial artery; arch is completed on medial side by deep branch of ulnar artery.	Curves medially, deep to long flexor tendons; is in contact with bases of metacarpals
Common palmar digital	Superficial palmar arch	Passes distally on lumbricals to webbing of digits
Proper palmar digital	Common palmar digital arteries	Runs along sides of 2nd–5th digits
Princeps pollicis	Radial artery as it turns into palm	Descends on palmar aspect of 1st metacarpal; divides at base of proximal phalanx into two branches that run along sides of thumb

Radialis indicis	Radial artery but may arise from princeps pollicis artery	Passes along lateral side of index finger to its distal end
Dorsal carpal arch	Radial and ulnar arteries	Arches within fascia on dorsum of hand

ULNAR ARTERY IN HAND

The **ulnar artery** enters the hand anterior to the flexor retinaculum between the pisiform and the hook of the hamate via the ulnar canal (Guyon canal) (see Fig. 3.72B). The ulnar artery lies lateral to the ulnar nerve (Fig. 3.79A). The artery divides into two terminal branches, the superficial palmar arch and the deep palmar branch (Figs. 3.84 and 3.85). The **superficial palmar arch**, the main termination of the ulnar artery, gives rise to three **common palmar digital arteries** that anastomose with the **palmar metacarpal arteries** from the deep palmar arch. Each common palmar digital artery divides into a pair of **proper palmar digital arteries**, which run along the adjacent sides of the 2nd–4th digits.

RADIAL ARTERY IN HAND

The **radial artery** curves dorsally around the scaphoid and trapezium and crosses the floor of the anatomical snuff box (see Fig. 3.67). It enters the palm by passing between the heads of the 1st dorsal interosseous muscle and then turns medially, passing between the heads of the adductor pollicis. The radial artery ends by anastomosing with the deep branch of the ulnar artery to form the **deep palmar arch**, which is formed mainly by the radial artery. This arch lies across the metacarpals just distal to their bases (Fig. 3.81). The deep palmar arch gives rise to three palmar metacarpal arteries and the princeps pollicis artery (Figs. 3.84 and 3.85). The radialis indicis artery passes along the lateral side of the index finger. It usually arises from the radial artery, but it may originate from the princeps pollicis.

Veins of Hand

Superficial and deep venous palmar arches, associated with the superficial and deep palmar (arterial) arches, drain into the deep veins of the forearm (see Fig. 3.70). The dorsal digital veins drain into three dorsal metacarpal veins, which unite to form a dorsal venous network (see Fig. 3.16A). Superficial to the metacarpus, this network is prolonged proximally on the lateral side as the cephalic vein. The basilic vein arises from the medial side of the dorsal venous network.

Nerves of Hand

The median, ulnar, and radial nerves supply the hand (Figs. 3.72, 3.79, and 3.86). In addition, branches or communications from the lateral and posterior cutaneous nerves may contribute some fibers that supply the skin of the dorsum of the hand. These nerves and their branches in the hand are illustrated in Figures 3.87 and 3.88A, B, and their origins, courses, and distributions are provided in Table 3.16.

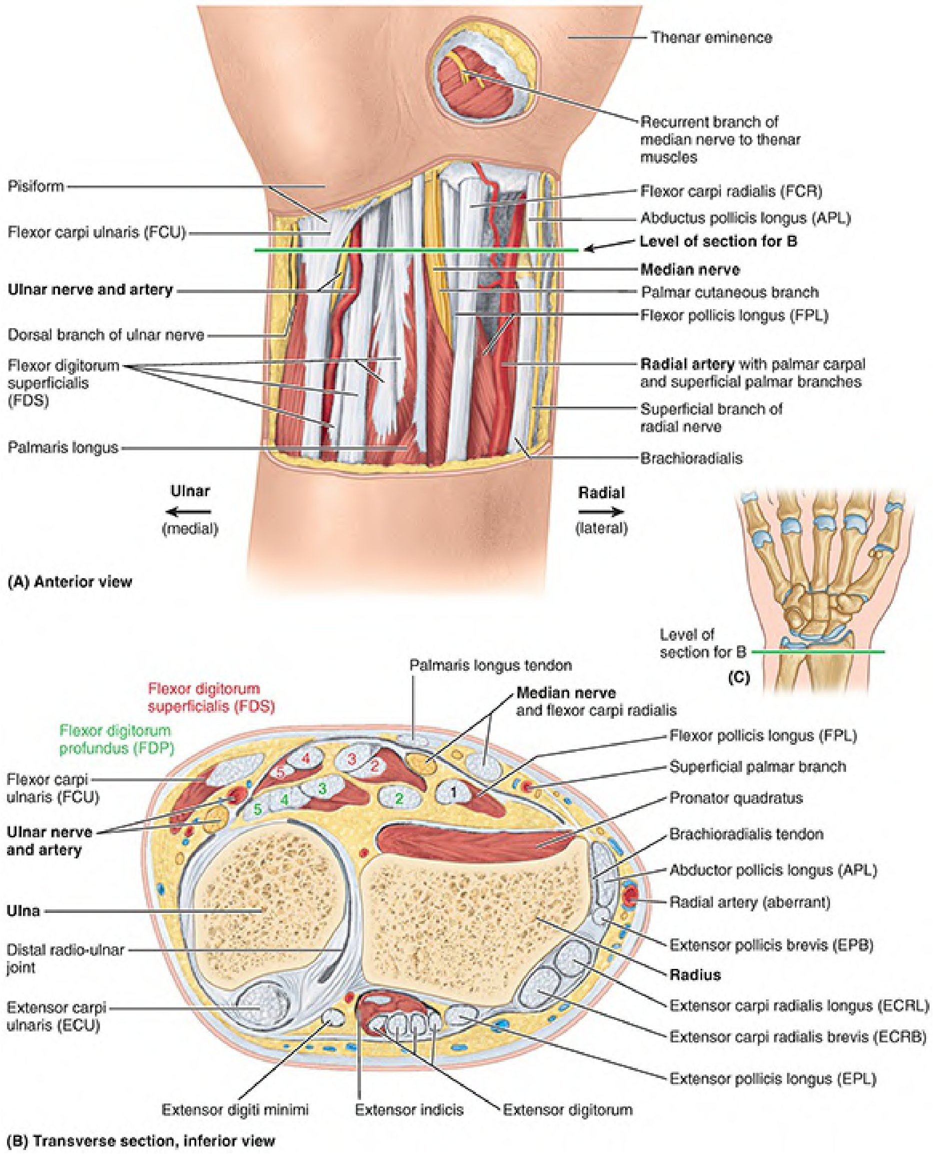


FIGURE 3.86. Structures in distal forearm (wrist region). A. Dissection. A distal skin incision was made along the transverse wrist crease, crossing the pisiform bone. The skin and fasciae are removed proximally, revealing the tendons and neurovascular structures. A circular incision and removal of the skin and thenar fascia reveals the recurrent branch of the median nerve to the thenar muscles, vulnerable to injury when this area is lacerated because of its subcutaneous location. The tendons of the flexor digitorum superficialis and profundus are numbered in part **B** according to the digit of insertion. **B.** Transverse section of distal forearm. Note the long flexor and extensor tendons and neurovascular structures en route from forearm to hand. The ulnar nerve and artery are under cover of the flexor carpi ulnaris; therefore, the pulse of the artery cannot be easily detected here. **C.** Orientation drawing indicating plane of section shown in part **B**.

TABLE 3.16. NERVES OF HAND

Nerve	Origin	Course	Distribution
Median nerve	Arises by two roots, one from lateral cord of brachial plexus (C6, C7 fibers) and one from medial cord (C8, T1 fibers)	Becomes superficial proximal to wrist; passes deep to flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal ligament) as it passes through carpal tunnel to hand	Thenar muscles (except adductor pollicis and deep head of flexor pollicis brevis) and lateral lumbricals (for digits 2 and 3); provides sensation to wrist joint, skin of palmar and distal dorsal aspects of lateral (radial) 3½ digits and adjacent

			palm
Recurrent (thenar) branch of median nerve	Arises from median nerve as soon as it has passed distal to flexor retinaculum	Loops around distal border of flexor retinaculum; enters thenar muscles	Abductor pollicis brevis; opponens pollicis; superficial head of flexor pollicis brevis
Lateral branch of median nerve	Arises as lateral division of median nerve as it enters palm of hand	Runs laterally to palmar aspect of thumb and radial side of 2nd digit	1st lumbrical; skin of palmar and distal dorsal aspects of thumb and radial half of 2nd digit
Medial branch of median nerve	Arises as medial division of median nerve as it enters palm of hand	Runs medially to adjacent sides of 2nd–4th digits	2nd lumbrical; skin of palmar and distal dorsal aspects of adjacent sides of 2nd–4th digits
Palmar cutaneous branch of median nerve	Arises from median nerve just proximal to flexor retinaculum	Passes between tendons of palmaris longus and flexor carpi radialis; runs superficial to flexor retinaculum	Skin of central palm
Ulnar nerve	Terminal branch of medial cord of brachial plexus (C8 and T1 fibers; often also receives C7 fibers)	Becomes superficial in distal forearm, passing superficial to flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal ligament) to enter hand	The majority of intrinsic muscles of hand (hypothenar, interosseous, adductor pollicis, and deep head of flexor pollicis brevis, plus the medial lumbricals [for digits 4 and 5]); provides sensation to skin of palmar and distal dorsal aspects of medial (ulnar) 1½ digits and adjacent palm
Palmar cutaneous branch of ulnar nerve	Arises from ulnar nerve near middle of forearm	Descends on ulnar artery and perforates deep fascia in the distal third of forearm	Skin at base of medial palm, overlying the medial carpals
Dorsal branch of ulnar nerve	Arises from ulnar nerve about 5 cm proximal to flexor retinaculum	Passes distally deep to flexor carpi ulnaris and then dorsally to perforate deep fascia and course along medial side of dorsum of hand, dividing into two to three dorsal digital nerves	Wrist joint; skin of medial aspect of dorsum of hand and proximal portions of little and medial half of ring finger (occasionally also adjacent sides of proximal portions of ring and middle fingers)
Superficial branch of ulnar nerve	Arise from ulnar nerve at wrist as they pass between pisiform and hamate bones	Passes palmaris brevis and divides into two common palmar digital nerves	Palmaris brevis and sensation to skin of the palmar and distal dorsal aspects of digit 5 and of the medial (ulnar) side of digit 4 and proximal portion of palm
Deep branch of ulnar nerve		Passes between muscles of hypothenar eminence to pass deeply across palm with deep palmar (arterial) arch	Wrist joint; hypothenar muscles (abductor, flexor, and opponens digiti minimi), lumbricals of digits 4 and 5, all interossei, adductor pollicis, and deep head of flexor pollicis brevis
Radial nerve, superficial branch	Arises from radial nerve in cubital fossa	Courses deep to brachioradialis, emerging from beneath it to pierce the deep fascia lateral to distal radius	Skin of the lateral (radial) half of dorsal aspect of the hand and thumb and the proximal portions of the dorsal aspects of digits 2 and 3 and of the lateral (radial) half of digit 4

In the hand, these nerves convey sensory fibers from spinal nerves C6–C8 to the skin so that

the C6–C8 dermatomes include the hand (Fig. 3.88C, D). The median and ulnar nerves convey motor fibers from spinal nerve T1 to the hand; the intrinsic muscles of the hand make up myotome T1 (see Fig. 3.21F).

MEDIAN NERVE IN HAND

The median nerve enters the hand through the carpal tunnel, deep to the flexor retinaculum, along with the nine tendons of the FDS, FDP, and FPL (Fig. 3.86). The **carpal tunnel** is the passageway deep to the flexor retinaculum between the tubercles of the scaphoid and trapezoid bones on the lateral side and the pisiform and hook of the hamate on the medial side (see Fig. B3.32A–C). Distal to the carpal tunnel, the median nerve supplies two and a half thenar muscles and the 1st and 2nd lumbricals (Fig. 3.87A). It also sends sensory fibers to the skin on the entire palmar surface, the sides of the first three digits, the lateral half of the 4th digit, and the dorsum of the distal halves of these digits. Note, however, that the palmar cutaneous branch of the median nerve, which supplies the central palm, arises proximal to the flexor retinaculum and passes superficial to it (i.e., it does not pass through the carpal tunnel).

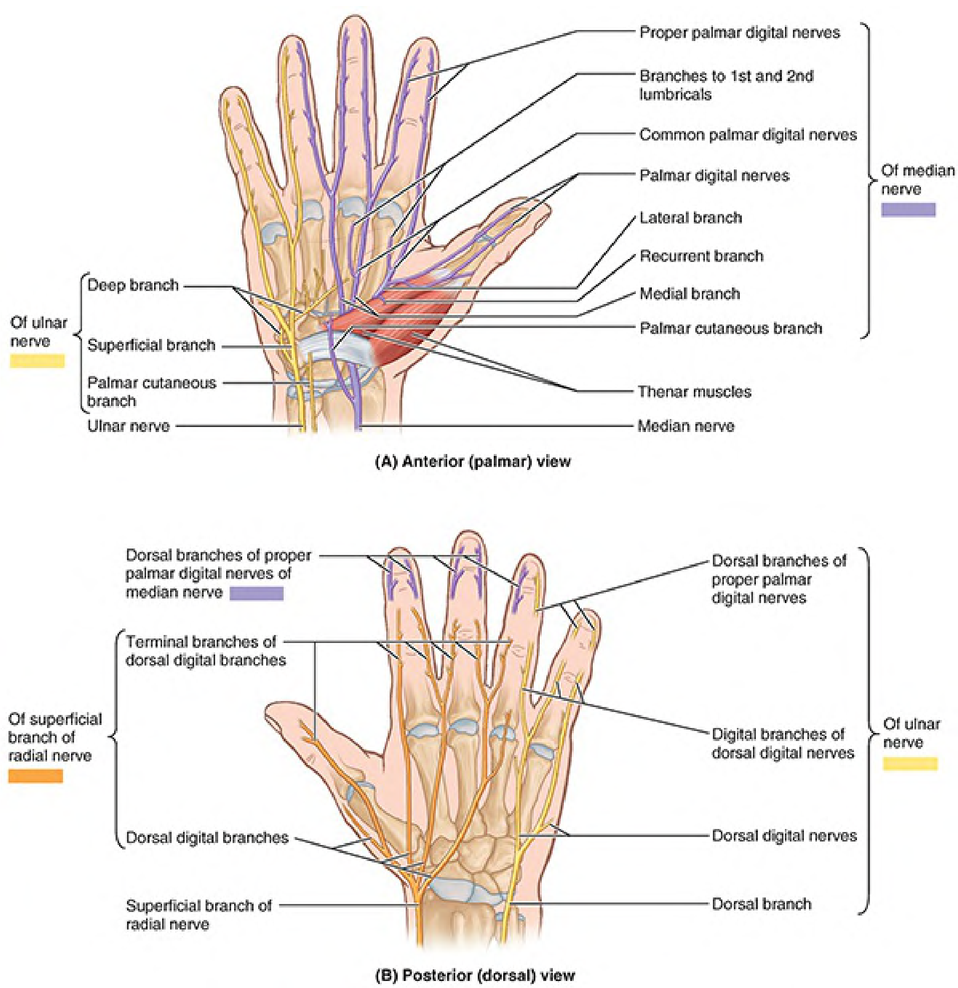


FIGURE 3.87. **Branches of nerves to hand.**

ULNAR NERVE IN HAND

The **ulnar nerve** leaves the forearm by emerging from deep to the tendon of the FCU (Figs. 3.79 and 3.86). It continues distally to the wrist via the ulnar (Guyon) canal (see Fig. 3.72). Here the ulnar nerve is bound by fascia to the anterior surface of the flexor retinaculum as it passes between the pisiform (medially) and the ulnar artery (laterally).

Just proximal to the wrist, the ulnar nerve gives off a **palmar cutaneous branch**, which passes superficial to the flexor retinaculum and palmar aponeurosis and supplies skin on the medial side of the palm (Fig. 3.87A).

The **dorsal cutaneous branch of the ulnar nerve** supplies the medial half of the dorsum of the hand, the 5th finger, and the medial half of the 4th finger (Fig. 3.87B). The ulnar nerve ends at the distal border of the flexor retinaculum by dividing into superficial and deep branches (Fig. 3.79B).

The **superficial branch of the ulnar nerve** supplies cutaneous branches to the anterior surfaces of the medial one and a half digits. The **deep branch of the ulnar nerve** supplies the hypothenar muscles, the medial two lumbricals, the adductor pollicis, the deep head of the FPB, and all the interossei. The deep branch also supplies several joints (wrist, intercarpal, carpometacarpal, and intermetacarpal). The ulnar nerve is often referred to as the nerve of fine movements because it innervates most of the intrinsic muscles that are concerned with intricate hand movements (Table 3.16).

RADIAL NERVE IN HAND

The radial nerve does not supply any hand muscles (Table 3.16). The superficial branch of the radial nerve is entirely sensory (Fig. 3.87B). It pierces the deep fascia near the dorsum of the wrist to supply the skin and fascia over the lateral two thirds of the dorsum of the hand, the dorsum of the thumb, and proximal parts of the lateral one and a half digits (Fig. 3.88A).

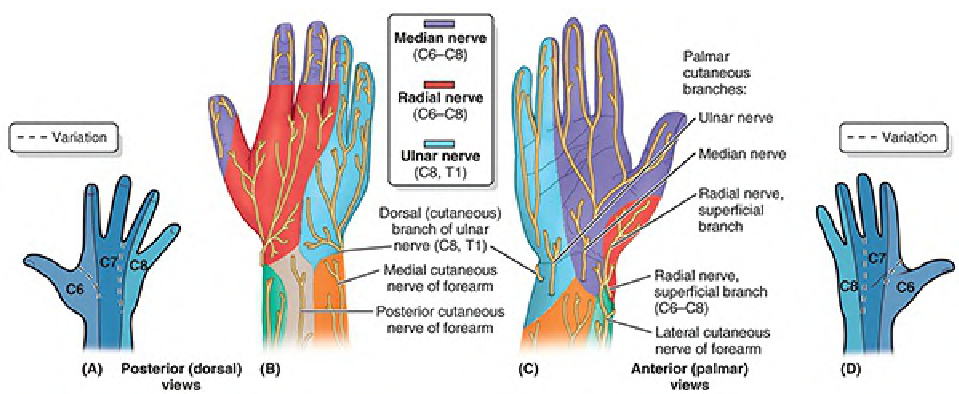


FIGURE 3.88. **Sensory innervation of wrist and hand. A and D.** Distribution of spinal fibers to hand and wrist. **B and C.** Distribution of spinal nerve fibers to hand and wrist (dermatomes).

Surface Anatomy of Hand

The **radial artery pulse**, like other palpable pulses, is a peripheral reflection of cardiac action.

The radial pulse rate is measured where the radial artery lies on the anterior surface of the distal end of the radius, lateral to the FCR tendon, which serves as a guide to the artery (Fig. 3.89). Here, the artery can be felt pulsating between the tendons of the FCR and the APL and where it can be compressed against the radius.

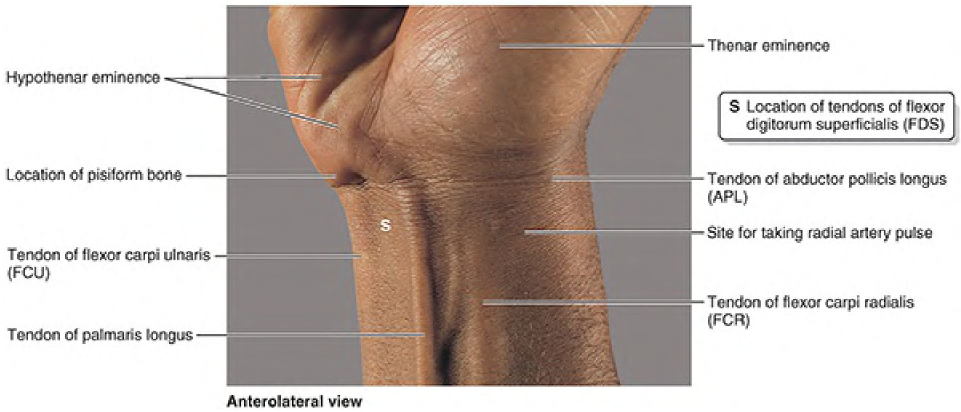


FIGURE 3.89. Surface anatomy of anterior wrist region.

The tendons of FCR and palmaris longus can be palpated anterior to the wrist, a little lateral to its middle, and are usually observed by flexing the closed fist against resistance. The palmaris longus tendon is smaller than the FCR tendon and is not always present. The palmaris longus tendon serves as a guide to the median nerve, which lies deep to it (Fig. 3.86B). The FCU tendon can be palpated as it crosses the anterior aspect of the wrist near the medial side and inserts into the pisiform. The FCU tendon serves as a guide to the ulnar nerve and artery.

The tendons of the FDS can be palpated as the fingers are alternately flexed and extended. The ulnar pulse is often difficult to palpate. The tendons of the APL and EPB indicate the anterior boundary of the anatomical snuff box (Fig. 3.90). The tendon of the EPL indicates the posterior boundary of the box. The radial artery crosses the floor of the snuff box, where its pulsations may be felt (see Figs. 3.15F and 3.67B). The scaphoid and, less distinctly, the trapezium are palpable in the floor of the snuff box.

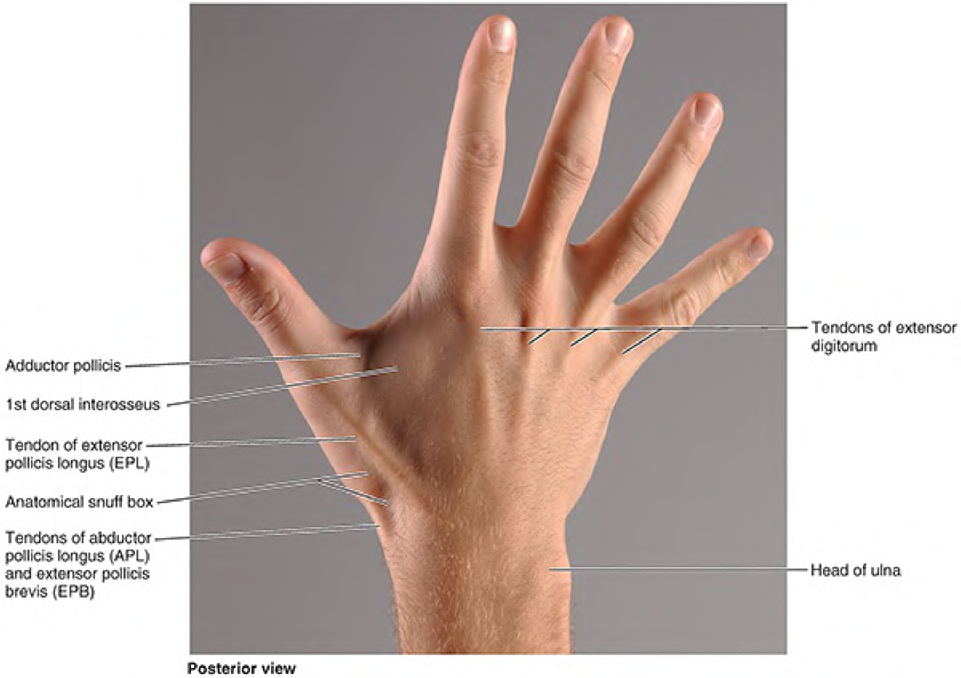


FIGURE 3.90. Surface anatomy of dorsum of hand.

The skin covering the dorsum of the hand is thin and loose when the hand is relaxed. Prove this by pinching and pulling folds of your skin here. The looseness of the skin results from the mobility of the subcutaneous tissue and from the relatively few fibrous skin ligaments that are present. Hair is present in this region and on the proximal parts of the digits, especially in men.

If the dorsum of the hand is examined with the wrist extended against resistance and the digits abducted, the tendons of the extensor digitorum to the fingers stand out, particularly in thin individuals (Fig. 3.90). These tendons are not visible far beyond the knuckles because they flatten here to form the extensor expansions of the fingers (see Fig. 3.65B).

The knuckles that become visible when a fist is made are produced by the heads of the metacarpals. Under the loose subcutaneous tissue and extensor tendons on the dorsum of the hand, the metacarpals can be palpated. A prominent feature of the dorsum of the hand is the dorsal venous network (see Fig. 3.16A).

The skin on the palm is thick because it must withstand the wear and tear of work and play (Fig. 3.91). It is richly supplied with sweat glands but contains no hair or sebaceous glands.

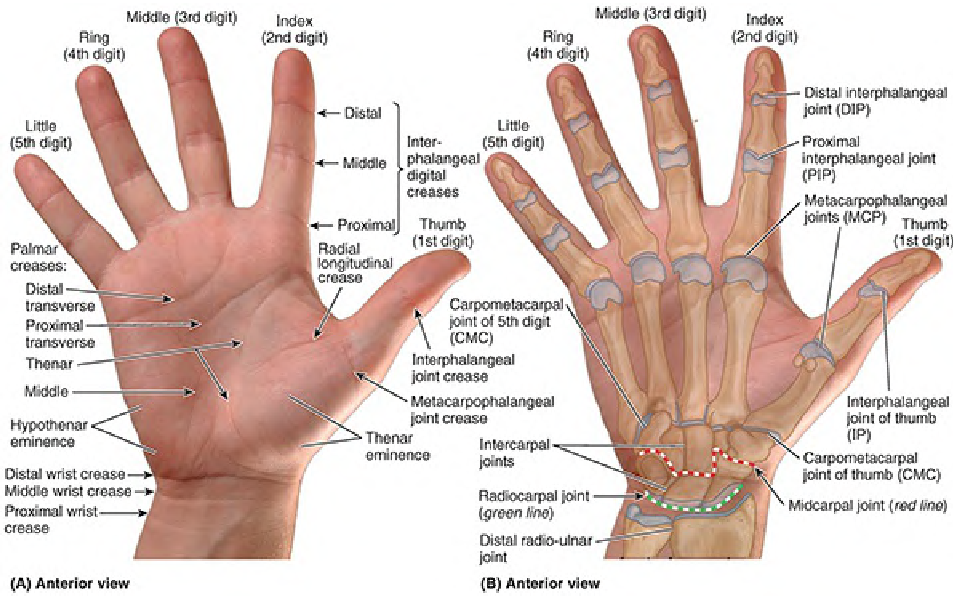


FIGURE 3.91. Surface anatomy of palmar aspect of hand.

The superficial palmar arch lies across the center of the palm, level with the distal border of the extended thumb. The main part of the arch ends at the thenar eminence (Fig. 3.89).

The deep palmar arch lies approximately 1 cm proximal to the superficial palmar arch. The palmar skin presents several more or less constant flexion creases, where the skin is firmly bound to the deep fascia, that help locate palmar wounds and underlying structures (Fig. 3.91A):

- **Wrist creases—proximal, middle, distal**. The distal wrist crease indicates the proximal border of the flexor retinaculum.
- **Palmar creases—transverse, longitudinal**. The longitudinal creases deepen when the thumb is opposed; the transverse creases deepen when the metacarpophalangeal joints are flexed.
  - **Radial longitudinal crease** (the "life line" of palmistry): partially encircles the thenar eminence, formed by the short muscles of the thumb.
  - **Proximal (transverse) palmar crease**: commences on the lateral border of the palm, superficial to the head of the 2nd metacarpal; it extends medially and slightly proximally across the palm, superficial to the bodies of the 3rd–5th metacarpals.
- **Distal (transverse) palmar crease**. The distal palmar crease begins at or near the cleft between the index and middle fingers; it crosses the palm with a slight convexity, superficial to the head of the 3rd metacarpal and then proximal to the heads of the 4th and 5th metacarpals.

Each of the medial four fingers usually has three transverse digital flexion creases:

- **Proximal digital crease**: located at the root of the finger, approximately 2 cm distal to the metacarpophalangeal joint
- **Middle digital crease**: lies over the proximal interphalangeal joint
- **Distal digital crease**: lies over or just proximal to the distal interphalangeal joint

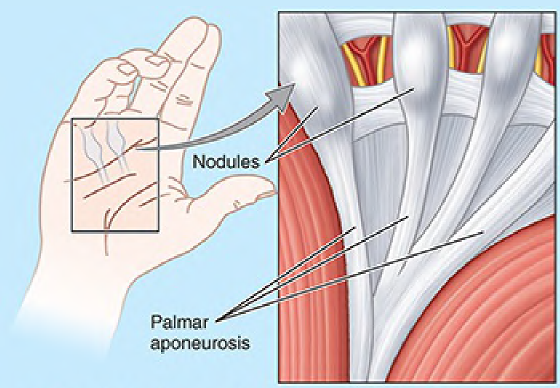
The thumb, having two phalanges, has only two flexion creases. The proximal digital crease of the thumb crosses obliquely, at or proximal to the 1st metacarpophalangeal joint. The **skin ridges** on the pulp (pads) of the digits, forming the fingerprints, are used for identification because of their unique patterns. The physiological function of the skin ridges is to reduce slippage when grasping objects.

CLINICAL BOX

HAND

Dupuytren Contracture of Palmar Fascia

Dupuytren contracture is a disease of the palmar fascia resulting in progressive shortening, thickening, and fibrosis of the palmar fascia and aponeurosis. The fibrous degeneration of the longitudinal bands of the palmar aponeurosis on the medial side of the hand pulls the 4th and 5th fingers into partial flexion at the metacarpophalangeal and proximal interphalangeal joints (Fig. B3.30A).



(A) Longitudinal bands of palmar aponeurosis to fibrous digital sheaths of digits four and five nodular and contracted

(B) Lateral view

FIGURE B3.30. Dupuytren contracture.

The contracture is frequently bilateral and is seen in some men >50 years of age. Its cause is unknown, but evidence points to a hereditary predisposition. The disease first manifests as painless nodular thickenings of the palmar aponeurosis that adhere to the skin. Gradually,

progressive contracture of the longitudinal bands produces raised ridges in the palmar skin that extend from the proximal part of the hand to the base of the 4th and 5th fingers (Fig. B3.30B). Treatment of Dupuytren contracture usually involves surgical excision of all fibrotic parts of the palmar fascia to free the fingers.

Hand Infections

Because the palmar fascia is thick and strong, swellings resulting from hand infections usually appear on the dorsum of the hand, where the fascia is thinner. The potential fascial spaces of the palm are important because they may become infected. The fascial spaces determine the extent and direction of the spread of pus formed by these infections.

Depending on the site of infection, pus will accumulate in the thenar, hypothenar, midpalmar, or adductor compartments (see Fig. 3.77A). Antibiotic therapy has made infections that spread beyond one of these fascial compartments rare; however, an untreated infection can spread proximally from the midpalmar space through the carpal tunnel into the forearm, anterior to the pronator quadratus and its fascia.

Tenosynovitis

Injuries such as a puncture of a finger by a rusty nail can cause infection of the digital synovial sheaths (see Fig. 3.83A). When inflammation of the tendon and synovial sheath occurs (tenosynovitis), the digit swells and movement becomes painful. Because the tendons of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th fingers nearly always have separate synovial sheaths, the infection is usually confined to the infected finger. If the infection is untreated, however, the proximal ends of these sheaths may rupture, allowing the infection to spread to the midpalmar space (see Fig. 3.77B).

Because the synovial sheath of the little finger is usually continuous with the common flexor sheath (see Fig. 3.83B), tenosynovitis in this finger may spread to the common flexor sheath and through the palm and carpal tunnel to the anterior forearm, draining into the space between the pronator quadratus and the overlying flexor tendons (Parona space). Likewise, tenosynovitis in the thumb may spread via the continuous synovial sheath of the FPL (radial bursa). How far an infection spreads from the fingers depends on variations in their connections with the common flexor sheath.

The tendons of the APL and EPB are in the same tendinous sheath on the dorsum of the wrist. Excessive friction of these tendons on their common sheath results in fibrous thickening of the sheath and stenosis of the osseofibrous tunnel. The excessive friction is caused by repetitive forceful use of the hands during gripping and wringing (e.g., squeezing water out of clothes). This condition, called Quervain tenovaginitis stenosans, causes pain in the wrist that radiates proximally to the forearm and distally toward the thumb. Local tenderness is felt over the common flexor sheath on the lateral side of the wrist.

Thickening of a fibrous digital sheath on the palmar aspect of the digit produces stenosis of the osseofibrous tunnel, the result of repetitive forceful use of the fingers. If the tendons of the FDS and FDP enlarge proximal to the tunnel, the person is unable to extend the finger. When the finger is extended passively, a snap is audible. Flexion produces another snap as the thickened tendon moves. This condition is called digital tenovaginitis stenosans (trigger finger or snapping finger) (Fig. B3.31).

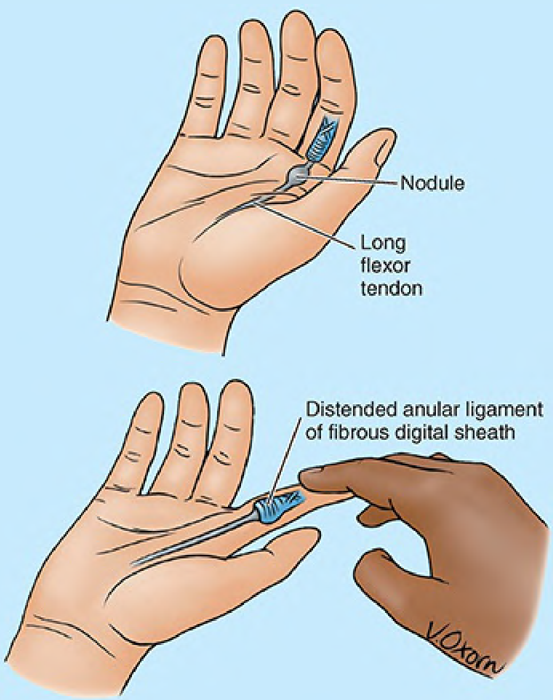


FIGURE B3.31. **Digital tenovaginitis stenosans (trigger finger).**

Laceration of Palmar Arches

Bleeding is usually profuse when the palmar (arterial) arches are lacerated. It may not be sufficient to ligate only one forearm artery when the arches are lacerated because these vessels usually have numerous communications in the forearm and hand and thus bleed from both ends. To obtain a bloodless surgical operating field for treating complicated hand injuries, it may be necessary to compress the brachial artery and its branches proximal to the elbow (e.g., using a pneumatic tourniquet). This procedure prevents blood from reaching the ulnar and radial arteries through the anastomoses around the elbow (see Fig. 3.69A).

Ischemia of Digits (Fingers)

Intermittent bilateral attacks of ischemia of the digits, marked by cyanosis and often accompanied by paresthesia and pain, are characteristically brought on by cold and emotional stimuli. The condition may result from an anatomical abnormality or an

underlying disease. When the cause of the condition is idiopathic (unknown) or primary, it is called Raynaud disease.

The arteries of the upper limb are innervated by sympathetic nerves. Postsynaptic fibers from the sympathetic ganglia enter nerves that form the brachial plexus and are distributed to the digital arteries through branches arising from the plexus. When treating ischemia resulting from Raynaud phenomenon, it may be necessary to perform a cervicodorsal presynaptic sympathectomy (excision of a segment of a sympathetic nerve) to dilate the digital arteries.

Lesions of Median Nerve

Lesions of the median nerve usually occur in two places: the forearm and the wrist. The most common site is where the nerve passes through the carpal tunnel.

CARPAL TUNNEL SYNDROME

Carpal tunnel syndrome results from any lesion that significantly reduces the size of the carpal tunnel (Fig. B3.32A–D) or, more commonly, increases the size of some of the nine structures or their coverings that pass through it (e.g., inflammation of synovial sheaths). Fluid retention, infection, and excessive exercise of the fingers may cause swelling of the tendons or their synovial sheaths. The median nerve is the most sensitive structure in the tunnel. The median nerve has two terminal sensory branches that supply the skin of the hand; hence, paresthesia (tingling), hypoesthesia (diminished sensation), or anesthesia (absence of sensation) may occur in the lateral three and a half digits. The palmar cutaneous branch of the median nerve arises proximal to, and does not pass through, the carpal tunnel; thus, sensation in the central palm remains unaffected. The nerve also has terminal motor branches: the recurrent branch, which serves the three thenar muscles, and branches to lumbricals 1 and 2 (see Fig. 3.87A).

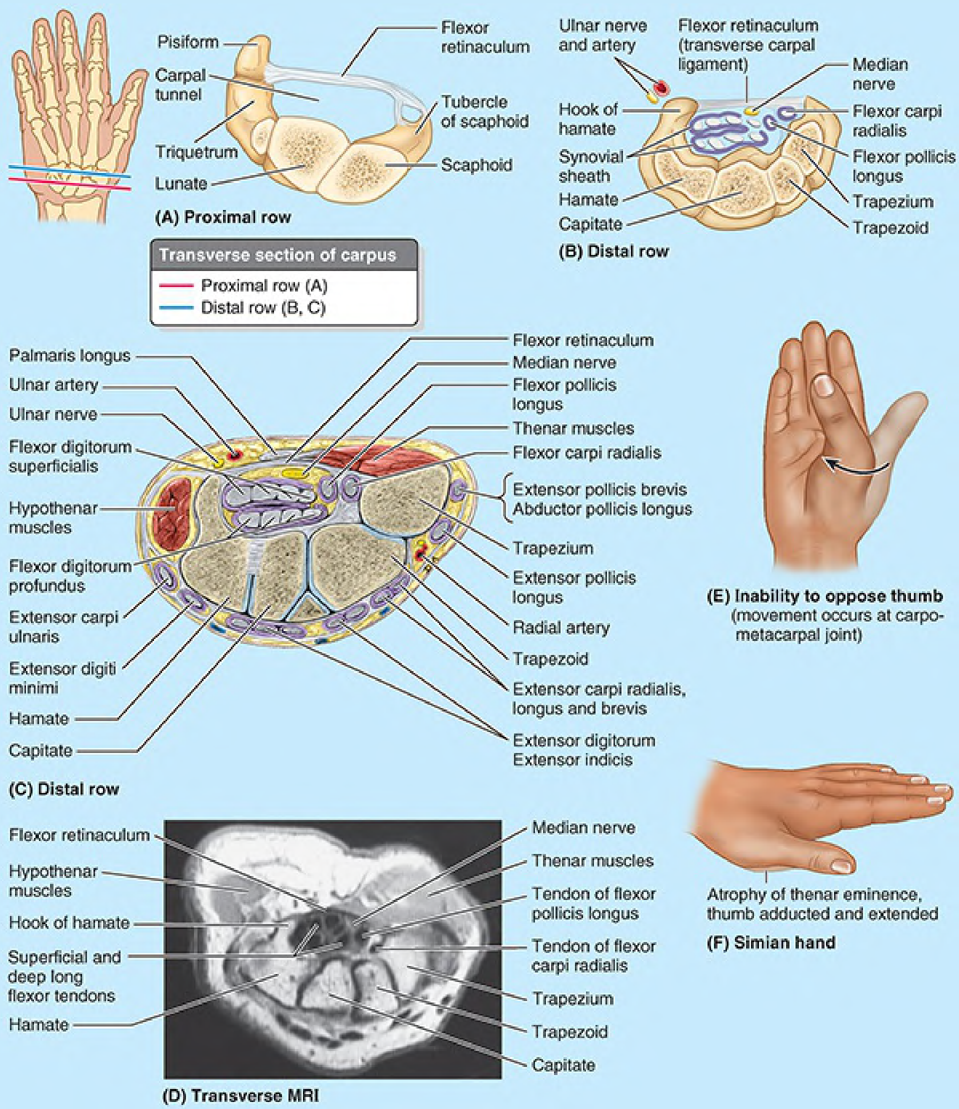


FIGURE B3.32. **Carpal tunnel syndrome.**

Progressive loss of coordination and strength of the thumb (owing to weakness of the APB and opponens pollicis) may occur if the cause of compression is not alleviated. Individuals with carpal tunnel syndrome are unable to oppose their thumbs (Fig. B3.32E). They have difficulty buttoning a shirt or blouse, as well as gripping things such as a comb. As the condition progresses, sensory changes radiate into the forearm and axilla. Symptoms of compression can be reproduced by compression of the median nerve with your finger at the wrist for approximately 30 seconds. To relieve both the compression and the resulting symptoms, partial or complete surgical division of the flexor retinaculum, a procedure called carpal tunnel release, may be necessary. The incision for carpal tunnel release is made toward the medial side of the wrist and flexor retinaculum to avoid possible injury to the recurrent branch of the median nerve.

TRAUMA TO MEDIAN NERVE

Laceration of the wrist often causes median nerve injury because this nerve is relatively close to the surface. In attempted suicides by wrist slashing, the median nerve is commonly injured just proximal to the flexor retinaculum. This results in paralysis of the muscles of the thenar eminence (except the adductor pollicis and deep head of the flexor pollicis brevis) and the first two lumbricals. Hence opposition of the thumb is not possible, and fine control movements of the 2nd and 3rd digits are impaired. Sensation is also lost over the thumb and adjacent two and a half fingers.

Most nerve injuries in the upper limb affect opposition of the thumb (see Fig. 3.78). Undoubtedly, injuries to the nerves supplying the intrinsic muscles of the hand, especially the median nerve, have the most severe effects on this complex movement. If the median nerve is severed in the forearm or at the wrist, the thumb cannot be opposed. However, the APL and adductor pollicis (supplied by the posterior interosseous and ulnar nerves, respectively) may imitate opposition, although ineffective.

Median nerve injury resulting from a perforating wound in the elbow region results in loss of flexion of the proximal and distal interphalangeal joints of the 2nd and 3rd digits. The ability to flex the metacarpophalangeal joints of these fingers is also affected because digital branches of the median nerve supply the 1st and 2nd lumbricals. Simian hand (Fig. B3.32F) refers to a deformity in which thumb movements are limited to flexion and extension of the thumb in the plane of the palm. This condition is caused by the inability to oppose and by limited abduction of the thumb. The recurrent branch of the median nerve to the thenar muscles (see Fig. 3.86A) lies subcutaneously and may be severed by relatively minor lacerations of the thenar eminence. Severance of this nerve paralyzes the thenar muscles, and the thumb loses much of its usefulness.

Ulnar Canal Syndrome

Compression of the ulnar nerve may occur at the wrist where it passes between the pisiform and the hook of the hamate. The depression between these bones is converted by the pisohamate ligament into an osseofibrous tunnel, the ulnar canal (Guyon tunnel) (see Fig. 3.72B). Ulnar canal syndrome (Guyon tunnel syndrome) is manifest by hypoesthesia (reduced sense of touch or sensation) in the medial one and a half fingers and weakness of the intrinsic muscles of the hand.

“Clawing” of the 4th and 5th fingers (hyperextension at the metacarpophalangeal joint with flexion at the proximal interphalangeal joint) may occur, but—in contradistinction to proximal ulnar nerve injury—their ability to flex is unaffected, and there is no radial deviation of the hand.

Handlebar Neuropathy

People who ride long distances on bicycles with their hands in an extended position against

the hand grips put pressure on the hooks of their hamates (see Fig. 3.72B), which compresses their ulnar nerves. This type of nerve compression, which has been called handlebar neuropathy, results in sensory loss on the medial side of the hand and weakness of the intrinsic hand muscles.

Radial Nerve Injury in Arm and Hand Disability

Although the radial nerve supplies no muscles in the hand, radial nerve injury in the arm can produce serious hand disability. The characteristic handicap is inability to extend the wrist resulting from paralysis of extensor muscles of the forearm, all of which are innervated by the radial nerve (see Fig. 3.63B; Table 3.11). The hand is flexed at the wrist and lies flaccid, a condition known as wrist-drop (see the Clinical Box "Injury to Radial Nerve in Arm" in this chapter). The fingers of the relaxed hand also remain in the flexed position at the metacarpophalangeal joints. The loss of the ability to extend the wrist affects the length tension relationship of the wrist and finger flexors. This will drastically reduce grip strength and functional lifting.

The interphalangeal joints can be extended weakly through the action of the intact lumbricals and interossei, which are supplied by the median and ulnar nerves (Table 3.13). The radial nerve has only a small area of exclusive cutaneous supply on the hand. Thus, the extent of anesthesia is minimal, even in serious radial nerve injuries, and is usually confined to a small area on the lateral part of the dorsum of the hand.

Dermatoglyphics

The science of studying ridge patterns of the palm, called dermatoglyphics, is a valuable extension of the conventional physical examination of people with certain congenital anomalies and genetic diseases. For example, people with trisomy 21 (Down syndrome) have dermatoglyphics that are highly characteristic. The best known of these is the single transverse palmar crease (simian crease); however, approximately 1% of the general population has this crease with no other clinical features of the syndrome.

Palmar Wounds and Surgical Incisions

The location of superficial and deep palmar arches should be kept in mind when examining wounds of the palm and when making palmar incisions. Furthermore, it is important to know that the superficial palmar arch is at the same level as the distal end of the common flexor sheath (see Figs. 3.79A and 3.83). As mentioned previously, incisions or wounds along the medial surface of the thenar eminence may injure the recurrent branch of the median nerve to the thenar muscles (see the Clinical Box "Trauma to Median Nerve").

The Bottom Line: Hand

Movements: The larger (wider range) and stronger movements of the hand and fingers (grasping, pinching, and pointing) are produced by extrinsic muscles with fleshy bellies located distant from the hand (near the elbow) and long tendons passing into the hand and fingers. ■ The shorter, more delicate, and weaker movements (typing, playing musical instruments, and writing) and positioning of the fingers for the more powerful movements are accomplished largely by the intrinsic muscles.

Organization: The muscles and tendons of the hand are organized into five fascial compartments: two radial compartments (thenar and adductor) that serve the thumb, an ulnar (hypothenar) compartment that serves the little finger, and two more central compartments that serve the medial four digits (a palmar one for the long flexor tendons and lumbricals, and a deep one between the metacarpals for the interossei).

Muscles: The greatest mass of intrinsic muscles is dedicated to the highly mobile thumb. Indeed, when extrinsic muscles are also considered, the thumb has eight muscles producing and controlling the wide array of movements that distinguish the human hand. ■ The interossei produce multiple movements: The dorsal interossei (and abductors pollicis and digiti minimi) abduct the digits, whereas the palmar interossei (and adductor pollicis) adduct them. Both movements occur at the metacarpophalangeal joints. ■ Acting together with the lumbricals, the interossei flex the metacarpophalangeal and extend the interphalangeal joints of the medial four digits (the Z-movement).

Vasculature: The vasculature of the hand is characterized by multiple anastomoses between both radial and ulnar vessels and palmar and dorsal vessels. ■ The arteries of the hand collectively constitute a peri-articular arterial anastomosis around the collective joints of the wrist and hand. Thus, blood is generally available to all parts of the hand in all positions as well as while performing functions (gripping or pressing) that might otherwise compromise especially the palmar structures. ■ The arteries to the digits are also characterized by their ability to vasoconstrict during exposure to cold to conserve heat and to dilate (while the hand becomes sweaty) to radiate excess heat. ■ The superficial dorsal venous network is commonly used for administering intravenous fluids.

Innervation: Unlike the dermatomes of the trunk and proximal limbs, the zones of cutaneous innervation and the roles of motor innervation are well defined, as are functional deficits. ■ In terms of intrinsic structure, the radial nerve is sensory only via its superficial branch to the dorsum of the hand. ■ The median nerve is most important to the function of the thumb, and sensation from the lateral three and half digits and adjacent palm, whereas the ulnar nerve supplies the remainder. ■ The intrinsic muscles of the hand constitute the T1 myotome. ■ The palmar nerves and vessels are dominant, supplying not only the more sensitive and functional palmar aspect but also the dorsal aspect of the distal part of the

digits (nail beds).

JOINTS OF UPPER LIMB

Movement of the pectoral girdle involves the sternoclavicular, acromioclavicular, and glenohumeral joints (Fig. 3.92), usually all moving simultaneously. Functional defects in any of the joints impair movements of the pectoral girdle. Mobility of the scapula is essential for free movement of the upper limb. The clavicle forms a strut (extension) that holds the scapula, hence the glenohumeral (shoulder) joint, away from the thorax so it can move freely. The clavicle establishes the radius at which the shoulder (half of the pectoral girdle and glenohumeral joint) rotates at the SC joint. The 15–20° of movement at the AC joint permits positioning of the glenoid cavity that is necessary for arm movements.

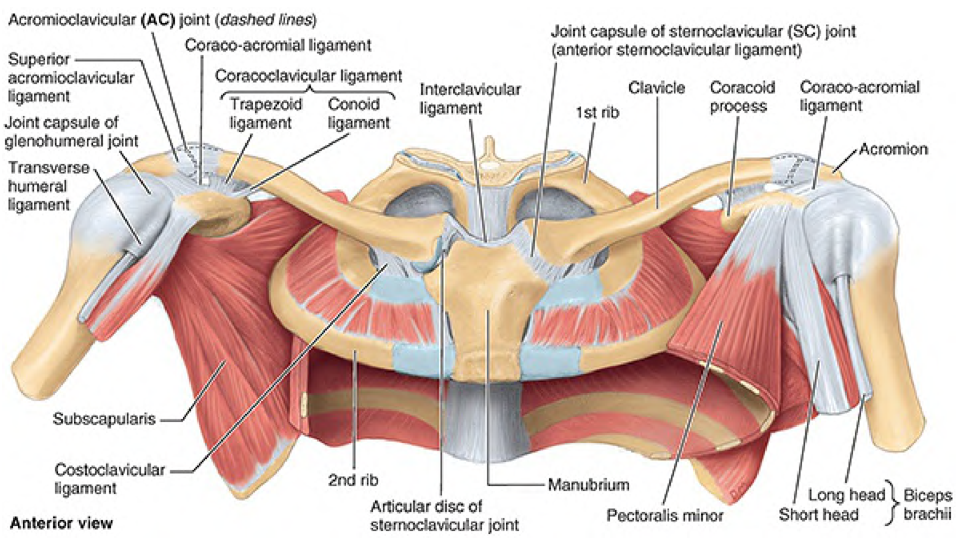


FIGURE 3.92. Pectoral girdle and associated tendons and ligaments. The pectoral girdle is a partial bony ring (incomplete posteriorly) formed by the manubrium of the sternum, the clavicle, and the scapulae. Joints associated with these bones are the sternoclavicular, acromioclavicular, and glenohumeral. The girdle provides for attachment of the superior appendicular skeleton to the axial skeleton and provides the mobile base from which the upper limb operates.

When testing the range of motion of the pectoral girdle, both scapulothoracic (movement of the scapula on the thoracic wall) and glenohumeral movements must be considered. Although the initial 30° of abduction may occur without scapular motion, in the overall movement of fully elevating the arm, the movement occurs in a 2:1 ratio: For every 3° of elevation, approximately 2° occurs at the glenohumeral joint and 1° at the physiological scapulothoracic joint.

Hence, when the upper limb has been elevated so that the arm is vertical at the side of the head (180° of arm abduction or flexion), 120° occurred at the glenohumeral joint and 60° occurred at the scapulothoracic joint. This is known as **scapulohumeral rhythm** (see Fig. 3.94C). The important movements of the pectoral girdle are scapular movements (Table 3.5): elevation and depression, protraction (lateral or forward movement of the scapula) and retraction (medial or backward movement of the scapula), and rotation of the scapula.

Sternoclavicular Joint

The **sternoclavicular (SC) joint** is a saddle type of synovial joint but functions as a ball-and-socket joint. The SC joint is divided into two compartments by an articular disc. The disc is firmly attached to the anterior and posterior sternoclavicular ligaments, thickenings of the fibrous layer of the joint capsule, as well as the interclavicular ligament (Fig. 3.92).

The great strength of the SC joint is a consequence of these attachments. Thus, although the articular disc serves as a shock absorber of forces transmitted along the clavicle from the upper limb, dislocation of the clavicle is rare, whereas fracture of the clavicle is common.

The SC joint is the only articulation between the upper limb and the axial skeleton, and it can be readily palpated because the sternal end of the clavicle lies superior to the manubrium of the sternum.

ARTICULATION OF STERNOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The sternal end of the clavicle articulates with the manubrium and the 1st costal cartilage. The articular surfaces are covered with fibrocartilage.

JOINT CAPSULE OF STERNOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The joint capsule surrounds the SC joint, including the epiphysis at the sternal end of the clavicle. It is attached to the margins of the articular surfaces, including the periphery of the articular disc. A synovial membrane lines the internal surface of the fibrous layer of the joint capsule, extending to the edges of the articular surfaces.

LIGAMENTS OF STERNOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The strength of the SC joint depends on its ligaments and articular disc. **Anterior** and **posterior sternoclavicular ligaments** reinforce the joint capsule anteriorly and posteriorly. The **interclavicular ligament** strengthens the capsule superiorly. It extends from the sternal end of one clavicle to the sternal end of the other clavicle. In between, it is also attached to the superior border of the manubrium. The **costoclavicular ligament** anchors the inferior surface of the sternal end of the clavicle to the 1st rib and its costal cartilage, limiting elevation of the pectoral girdle.

MOVEMENTS OF STERNOCLAVICULAR JOINT

Although the SC joint is extremely strong, it is significantly mobile to allow movements of the pectoral girdle and upper limb (Figs. 3.93 and 3.94D). During full elevation of the limb, the clavicle is raised to approximately a 60° angle. When elevation is achieved via flexion, it is accompanied by rotation of the clavicle around its longitudinal axis. The SC joint can also be moved anteriorly or posteriorly over a range of up to 25–30°. Although not a typical movement, except perhaps during calisthenics (systematic body exercises), it is capable of performing these movements sequentially, moving the acromial end along a circular path—a form of circumduction.

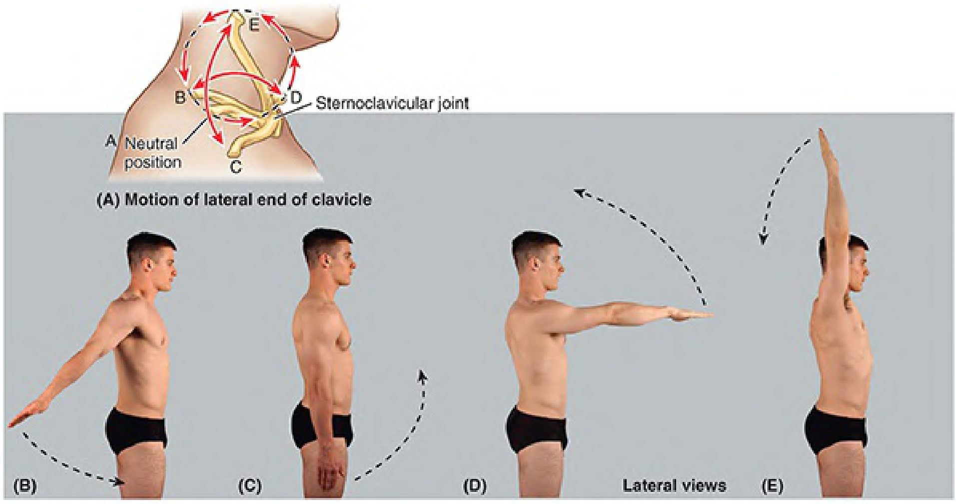


FIGURE 3.93. Movements of upper limb at joints of pectoral girdle. A. Range of motion of lateral end of clavicle permitted by movements at the sternoclavicular joint. Letters indicate disposition of the clavicle during the four positions of the limb demonstrated in parts **B–D**. The movements indicated by the double-headed arrows are D↔B, protraction–retraction; E↔C, elevation–depression. **B–E.** Circumduction of the upper limb requires coordinated movements of the pectoral girdle and glenohumeral joint. Beginning with extended limb, retracted girdle (**B**); neutral position (**C**); flexed limb, protracted girdle (**D**); and, finally, elevated limb and girdle (**E**). Dashed arrows (in **B–E**), circumduction movement starting from position shown.

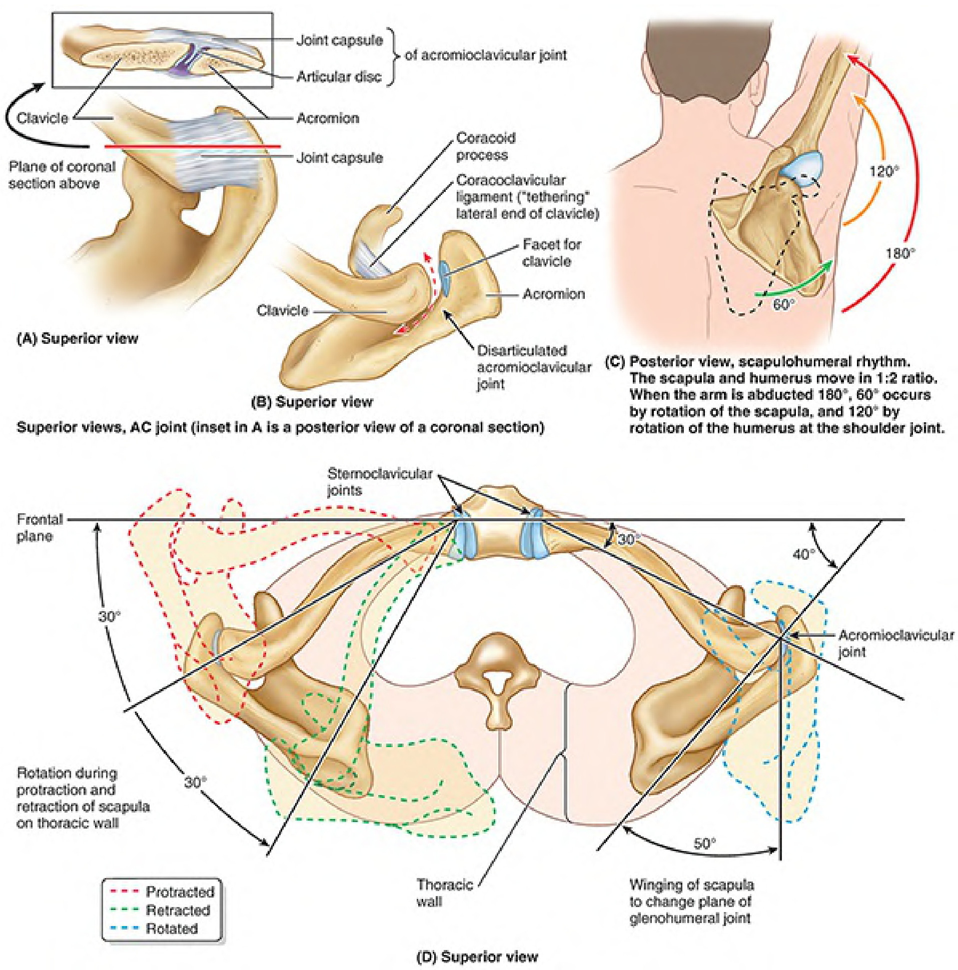


FIGURE 3.94. **Acromioclavicular, scapulothoracic, and sternoclavicular joints. A.** Right AC joint. Note the joint capsule has a partial articular disc (**inset**). **B.** Function of coracoclavicular ligament. As long as this ligament is intact with the clavicle tethered to the coronoid process, the acromion of the scapula cannot be driven inferior to the clavicle. The ligament, however, does permit protraction and retraction of the acromion. **C.** Rotation of scapula at "scapulothoracic joint." This is an essential component of abduction of the upper limb. **D.** Clavicular movements at SC and AC joints. These movements permit protraction and retraction of the scapula on the thoracic wall (red and green dashed lines) and winging of the scapula (blue dashed line). Similar movements occur during elevation, depression, and rotation of the scapula. The latter movements are shown in Table 3.5, which also indicates the muscles specifically responsible for these movements.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF STERNOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The SC joint is supplied by the internal thoracic and suprascapular arteries (see Fig. 3.41).

NERVE SUPPLY OF STERNOCLAVICULAR JOINT

Branches of the medial supraclavicular nerve and the nerve to the subclavius supply the SC joint (Fig. 3.46; Table 3.8).

Acromioclavicular Joint

The **acromioclavicular joint** (AC joint) is a plane type of synovial joint, which is located 2–3 cm from the "point" of the shoulder formed by the lateral part of the acromion (Figs. 3.92 and 3.94A).

ARTICULATION OF ACROMIOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The acromial end of the clavicle articulates with the acromion of the scapula. The articular surfaces, covered with fibrocartilage, are separated by an incomplete wedge-shaped articular disc.

JOINT CAPSULE OF ACROMIOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The sleeve-like, relatively loose fibrous layer of the joint capsule is attached to the margins of the articular surfaces. A synovial membrane lines the fibrous layer. Although relatively weak, the joint capsule is strengthened superiorly by fibers of the trapezius.

LIGAMENTS AUGMENTING ACROMIOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The **acromioclavicular ligament** is a fibrous band extending from the acromion to the clavicle that strengthens the AC joint superiorly (Figs. 3.92 and 3.95A). However, the integrity of the joint is maintained by extrinsic ligaments, distant from the joint itself.

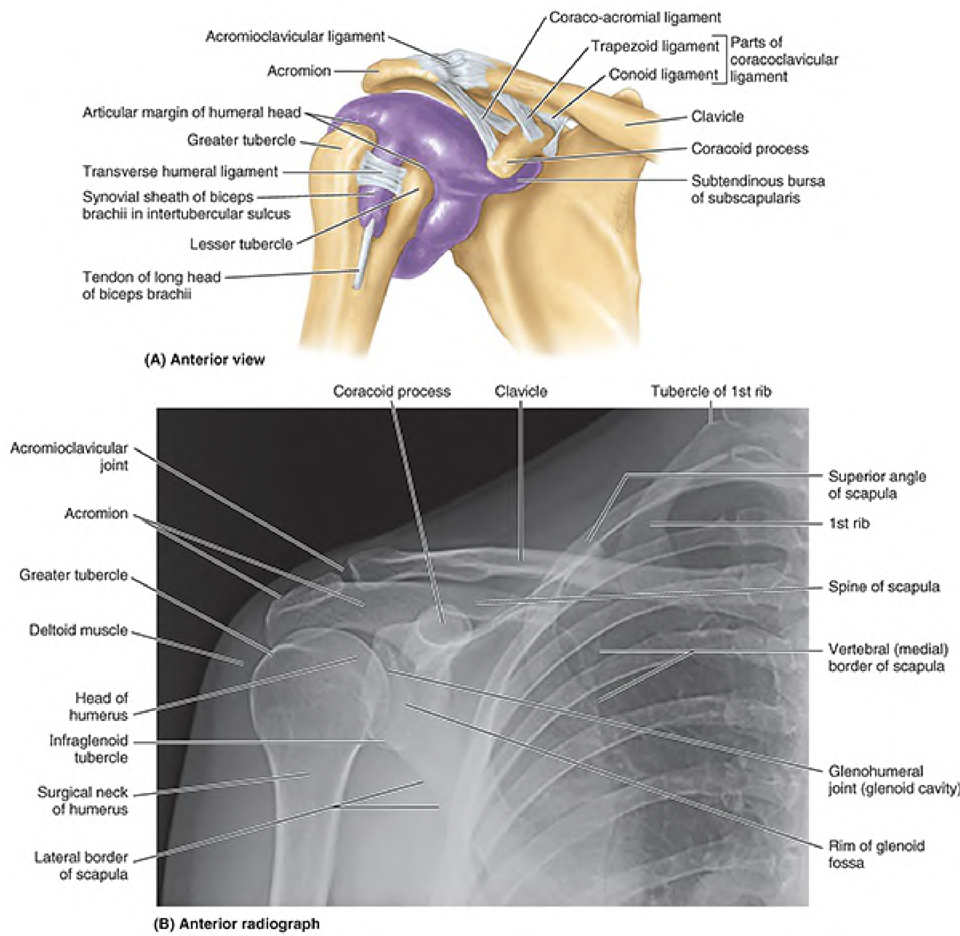


FIGURE 3.95. Glenohumeral (shoulder) joint. A. Synovial membrane. The extent of the synovial membrane of the glenohumeral joint is demonstrated in this specimen in which the articular cavity has been injected with purple latex and the fibrous layer of the joint capsule has been removed. The articular cavity has two extensions: one where it forms a synovial sheath for the tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii in the intertubercular sulcus of the humerus and the other inferior to the coracoid process where it is continuous with the subscapular bursa between the subscapularis tendon and the margin of the glenoid cavity. The joint capsule and intrinsic ligaments of the AC joint are also seen. **B.** Radiograph in anatomical position. Observe the head of the humerus and the glenoid cavity overlap, obscuring the joint plane because the scapula does not lie in the coronal plane (therefore, the glenoid cavity is oblique, not in a sagittal plane.)

The **coracoclavicular ligament** is a strong pair of bands that unite the coracoid process of the scapula to the clavicle, anchoring the clavicle to the coracoid process. The coracoclavicular ligament consists of two ligaments, the conoid and trapezoid ligaments, which are often separated by a bursa related to the lateral end of the subclavius muscle. The more vertical and medially placed **conoid ligament** is an inverted triangle (cone), which has its apex inferiorly where it is attached to the root of the coracoid process. Its wide attachment (base of the triangle) is to the conoid tubercle on the inferior surface of the clavicle. The nearly horizontal **trapezoid ligament** is attached to the superior surface of the coracoid process and extends laterally to the trapezoid line on the inferior surface of the clavicle. In addition to augmenting the AC joint, the coracoclavicular ligament provides the means by which the scapula and free limb are (passively) suspended from the clavicular strut.

MOVEMENTS OF ACROMIOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The acromion of the scapula rotates on the acromial end of the clavicle. These movements are associated with motion at the physiological scapulothoracic joint (Figs. 3.93 and 3.94; see Fig. 3.27; Table 3.5). No muscles connect the articulating bones to move the AC joint; the axio-appendicular muscles that attach to and move the scapula cause the acromion to move on the clavicle.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF ACROMIOCLAVICULAR JOINT

The AC joint is supplied by the suprascapular and thoraco-acromial arteries (see Fig. 3.41).

NERVE SUPPLY OF ACROMIOCLAVICULAR JOINT

Consistent with Hilton law (joints are supplied by articular branches of the nerves supplying the muscles that act on the joint), the lateral pectoral and axillary nerves supply the AC joint (Fig. 3.46; Table 3.8). However, consistent with the joint's subcutaneous location, and the fact that no muscles cut across the joint, innervation is also provided to the AC joint by the cutaneous lateral supraclavicular nerve, a manner of innervation more typical of the distal limb.

Glenohumeral Joint

The glenohumeral (shoulder) joint is a ball-and-socket type of synovial joint that permits a wide range of movement; however, its mobility makes the joint relatively unstable.

ARTICULATION OF GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

The large, round humeral head articulates with the relatively shallow glenoid cavity of the scapula (Figs. 3.96 and 3.97), which is deepened slightly but effectively by the ring-like, fibrocartilaginous **glenoid labrum** (L., lip). Both articular surfaces are covered with hyaline cartilage.

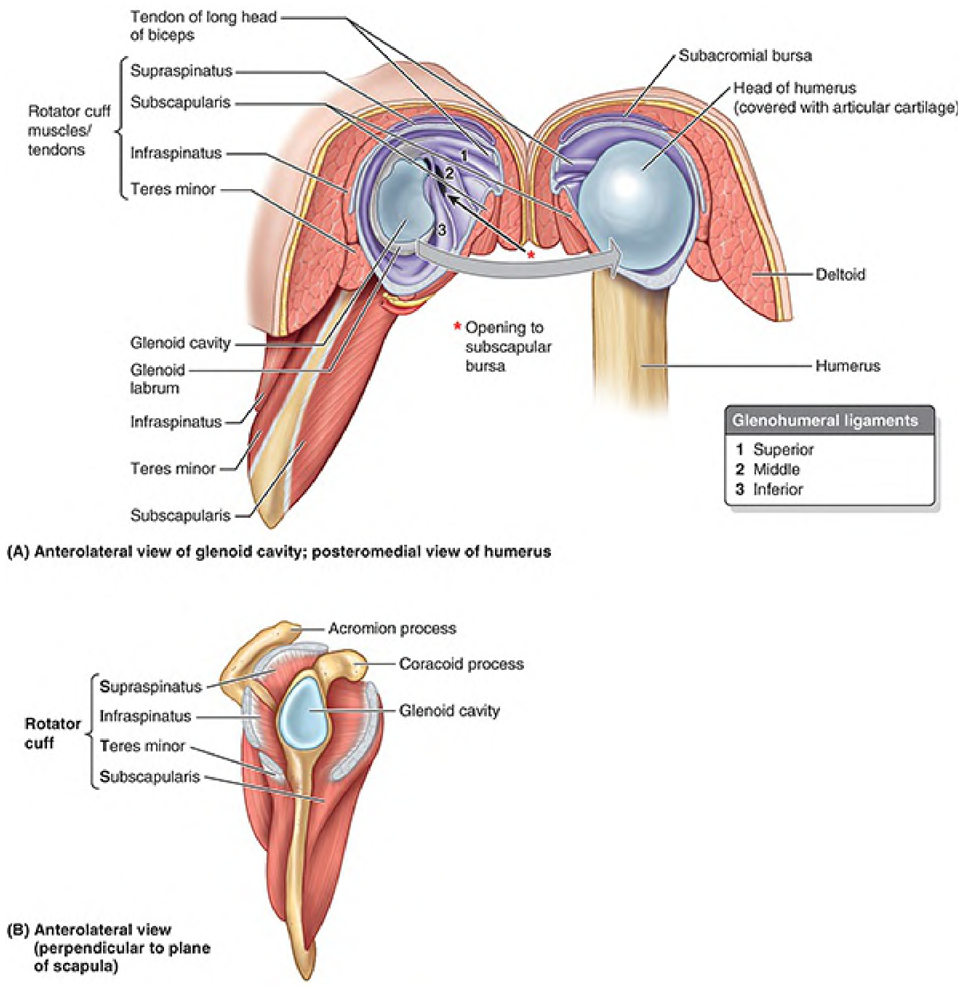


FIGURE 3.96. Rotator cuff and glenohumeral joint. A. Dissection. The glenohumeral joint capsule was sectioned and the joint opened from its posterior aspect as if it were a book. Four short SITS muscles (supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, and subscapularis) cross and surround the joint, blending with its capsule. The anterior, internal surface demonstrates the glenohumeral ligaments, which were incised to open the joint. **B.** Relationship of rotator cuff muscles to glenoid fossa. The SITS muscles of the rotator cuff are shown as they relate to the scapula and its glenoid cavity. The prime function of these muscles and the musculotendinous rotator cuff is to hold the relatively large head of the humerus in the much smaller and shallow glenoid cavity of the scapula.

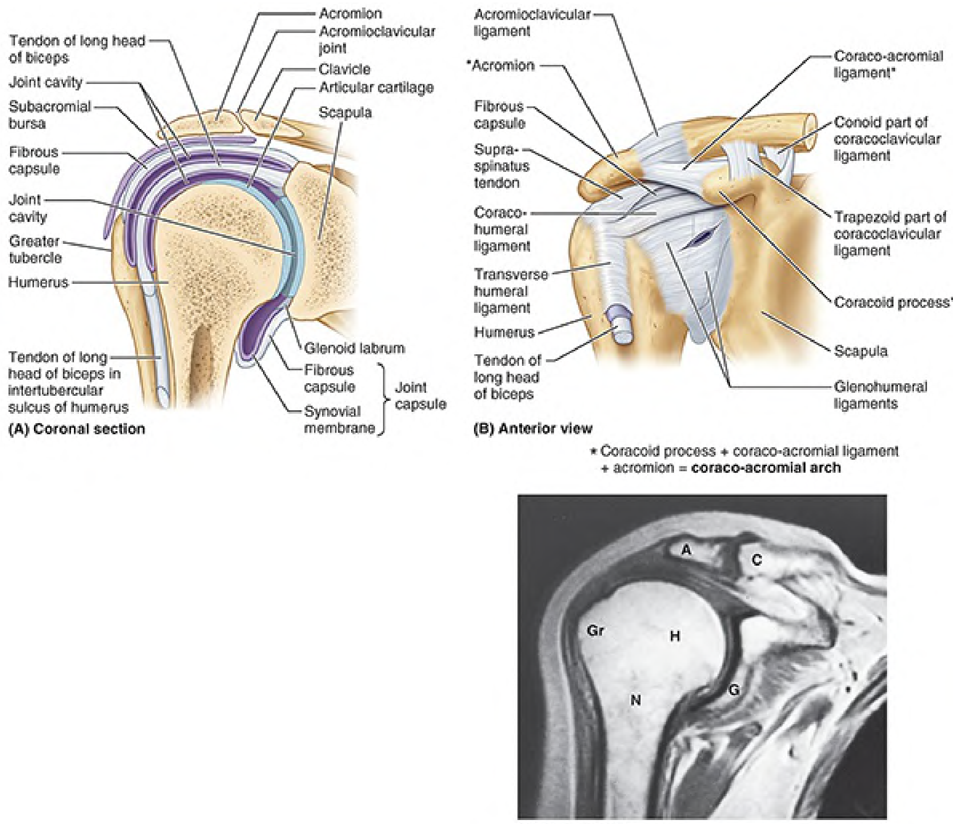


FIGURE 3.97. Capsules and ligaments of glenohumeral and acromioclavicular joints. A. Shoulder joint and subacromial bursa. The relationships of the bones, articular surfaces, joint capsule, cavity of the joints, and the subacromial bursa are demonstrated. **B.** Acromioclavicular, coracohumeral, and glenohumeral ligaments. Although shown on the external aspect of the joint capsule, the glenohumeral ligaments are actually a feature observed from the internal aspect of the joint (as in Fig. 3.94A). These ligaments strengthen the anterior aspect of the capsule of the glenohumeral joint, and the coracohumeral ligament strengthens the capsule superiorly. **C.** Coronal MRI showing the right glenohumeral and AC joints. A, acromion; C, clavicle; G, glenoid cavity; Gr, greater tubercle of humerus; H, head of humerus; N, surgical neck of humerus.

The glenoid cavity accepts little more than a third of the humeral head, which is held in the cavity by the tonus of the musculotendinous rotator cuff, or SITS, muscles (supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, and subscapularis) (Fig. 3.96B; see Fig. 3.31; Table 3.6).

JOINT CAPSULE OF GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

The loose fibrous layer of the joint capsule surrounds the glenohumeral joint and is attached medially to the margin of the glenoid cavity and laterally to the anatomical neck of the humerus (Fig. 3.97A, B). Superiorly, this part of the capsule encroaches on the root of the coracoid process so that the fibrous layer of the capsule encloses the proximal attachment of the long head of the biceps brachii to the supraglenoid tubercle of scapula within the joint.

The joint capsule has two apertures: (1) an opening between the tubercles of the humerus for passage of the tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii (Fig. 3.95A) and (2) an opening situated anteriorly, inferior to the coracoid process that allows communication between the subtendinous bursa of subscapularis and the synovial cavity of the joint. The inferior part of the

joint capsule, the only part not reinforced by the rotator cuff muscles, is its weakest area. Here, the capsule is particularly lax and lies in folds when the arm is adducted; however, it becomes taut when the arm is abducted.

The synovial membrane lines the internal surface of the fibrous layer of the capsule and reflects from it onto the glenoid labrum and the humerus, as far as the articular margin of the head (Figs. 3.95A, 3.96A, and 3.97A).

The synovial membrane also forms a tubular sheath for the tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii, where it lies in the intertubercular sulcus of the humerus and passes into the joint cavity (Fig. 3.95A).

LIGAMENTS OF GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

The glenohumeral ligaments, which strengthen the anterior aspect of the joint capsule and the coracohumeral ligament, which strengthens the joint capsule superiorly, are intrinsic ligaments—that is, part of the fibrous layer of the joint capsule (Figs. 3.96A and 3.97B).

The **glenohumeral ligaments** are three fibrous bands, evident only on the internal aspect of the capsule, that reinforce the anterior part of the joint capsule. These ligaments radiate laterally and inferiorly from the glenoid labrum at the supraglenoid tubercle of the scapula and blend distally with the fibrous layer of the capsule as it attaches to the anatomical neck of the humerus.

The **coracohumeral ligament** is a strong broad band that passes from the base of the coracoid process to the anterior aspect of the greater and lesser tubercles of the humerus (Fig. 3.97B).

The **transverse humeral ligament** is a broad fibrous band that runs more or less obliquely from the greater to the lesser tubercle of the humerus, bridging over the intertubercular sulcus (Figs. 3.95A and 3.97B). This ligament converts the groove into a canal, which holds the synovial sheath and tendon of the biceps brachii in place during movements of the glenohumeral joint.

The **coraco-acromial arch** is an extrinsic, protective structure formed by the smooth inferior aspect of the acromion and the coracoid process of the scapula, with the **coraco-acromial ligament** spanning between them (Fig. 3.97B). This osseoligamentous structure forms a protective arch that overlies the humeral head, preventing its superior displacement from the glenoid cavity. The coraco-acromial arch is so strong that a forceful superior thrust of the humerus will not fracture it; the humeral shaft or clavicle fractures first.

Transmitting force superiorly along the humerus (e.g., when standing at a desk and partly supporting the body with the outstretched limbs), the humeral head presses against the coraco-acromial arch. The supraspinatus muscle passes under this arch and lies deep to the deltoid as its tendon blends with the joint capsule of the glenohumeral joint as part of the rotator cuff (Fig. 3.96).

Movement of the supraspinatus tendon, passing to the greater tubercle of the humerus, is facilitated as it passes under the arch by the **subacromial bursa** (Fig. 3.97A), which lies between the arch superiorly and the tendon and tubercle inferiorly.

MOVEMENTS OF GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

The glenohumeral joint has more freedom of movement than any other joint in the body. This freedom results from the laxity of its joint capsule and the large size of the humeral head compared with the small size of the glenoid cavity. The glenohumeral joint allows movements around three axes and permits flexion–extension, abduction–adduction, rotation (medial and lateral) of the humerus, and circumduction (Fig. 3.98).

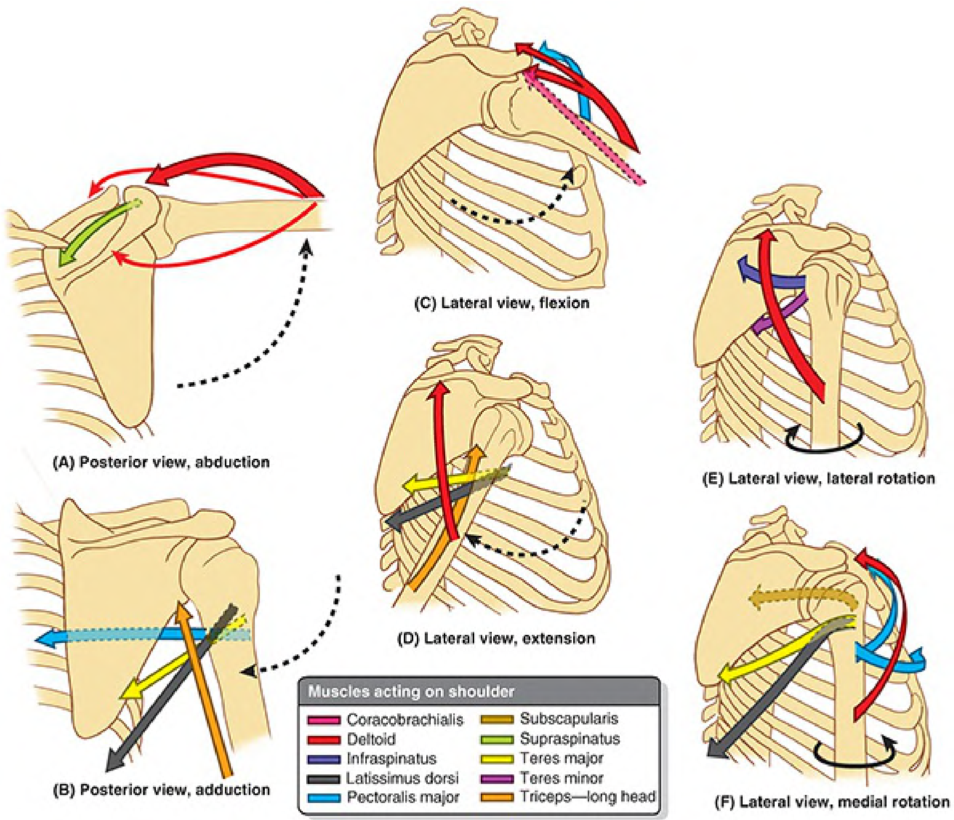


FIGURE 3.98. Movements of glenohumeral joint.

Lateral rotation of the humerus increases the range of abduction. When the arm is abducted without rotation, available articular surface is exhausted and the greater tubercle contacts the coraco-acromial arch, preventing further abduction. If the arm is then laterally rotated 180°, the tubercles are rotated posteriorly and more articular surface becomes available to continue elevation.

Circumduction at the glenohumeral joint is an orderly sequence of flexion, abduction, extension, and adduction—or the reverse (Fig. 3.93). Unless performed over a small range, these movements do not occur at the glenohumeral joint in isolation; they are accompanied by movements at the two other joints of the pectoral girdle (SC and AC). Stiffening or fixation of the joints of the pectoral girdle (ankylosis) results in a much more restricted range of movement, even if the glenohumeral joint is normal.

MUSCLES MOVING GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

The movements of the glenohumeral joint and the muscles that produce them—the axio-

appendicular muscles, which may act indirectly on the joint (i.e., act on the pectoral girdle), and the scapulohumeral muscles, which act directly on the glenohumeral joint (Tables 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, and 3.6)—are illustrated in Figure 3.98 and listed in Table 3.17. Other muscles that serve the glenohumeral joint as shunt muscles, acting to resist dislocation without producing movement at the joint (e.g., when carrying a heavy suitcase), or that maintain the large head of the humerus in the relatively shallow glenoid cavity are also listed in the table.

TABLE 3.17. MOVEMENTS OF GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

Movement (Function)	Prime Mover(s) (From Pendent Position)	Synergists	Notes
Flexion	Pectoralis major (clavicular head); deltoid (clavicular and anterior acromial parts)	Coracobrachialis (assisted by biceps brachii)	From fully extended position to its own (coronal) plane, sternocostal head of pectoralis major is major force.
Extension	Deltoid (spinal part)	Teres major; latissimus dorsi; long head of triceps brachii	Latissimus dorsi (sternocostal head of pectoralis major, and long head of triceps brachii) acts from fully flexed position to their own (coronal) planes.
Abduction	Deltoid (as a whole, but especially acromial part)	Supraspinatus	Supraspinatus is particularly important in initiating movement; also, upward rotation of scapula occurs throughout movement, making a significant contribution.
Adduction	Pectoralis major; latissimus dorsi	Teres major; long head of triceps brachii	In upright position and in absence of resistance, gravity is prime mover.
Medial rotation	Subscapularis	Pectoralis major; deltoid (clavicular part); latissimus dorsi; teres major	With arm elevated, "synergists" become more important than prime movers.
Lateral rotation	Infraspinatus	Teres minor; deltoid (spinal part)	
Tensors of articular capsule (to hold head of humerus against the glenoid cavity)	Subscapularis; infraspinatus (simultaneously)	Supraspinatus; teres minor	Rotator cuff (SITS) muscles acting together; when "resting," their tonus adequately maintains integrity of joint.
Resisting downward dislocation (shunt muscles)	Deltoid (as a whole)	Long head of triceps brachii; coracobrachialis; short head of biceps brachii	Used especially when carrying heavy objects (suitcases, buckets)

BLOOD SUPPLY OF GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

The glenohumeral joint is supplied by the anterior and posterior circumflex humeral arteries and branches of the suprascapular artery (Fig. 3.41; Table 3.7).

INNERVATION OF GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

The suprascapular, axillary, and lateral pectoral nerves supply the glenohumeral joint (Table 3.8).

BURSAE AROUND GLENOHUMERAL JOINT

Several **bursae** (sac-like cavities), containing capillary films of synovial fluid secreted by the synovial membrane, are situated near the glenohumeral joint. Bursae are located where tendons rub against bone, ligaments, or other tendons and where skin moves over a bony prominence. The bursae around the glenohumeral joint are of special clinical importance because some of them communicate with the joint cavity (e.g., the subscapular bursa). Consequently, opening a bursa may mean entering the cavity of the glenohumeral joint.

SUBTENDINOUS BURSA OF SUBSCAPULARIS

The **subtendinous bursa of subscapularis** is located between the tendon of the subscapularis and the neck of the scapula (Fig. 3.95A). The bursa protects the tendon where it passes inferior to the root of the coracoid process and over the neck of the scapula. It usually communicates with the cavity of the glenohumeral joint through an opening in the fibrous layer of the joint capsule (Fig. 3.96A); thus, it is really an extension of the glenohumeral joint cavity.

SUBACROMIAL BURSA

Sometimes referred to as the subdeltoid bursa, the **subacromial bursa** is located between the acromion, coraco-acromial ligament, and deltoid superiorly and the supraspinatus tendon and joint capsule of the glenohumeral joint inferiorly (Fig. 3.97A). Thus, it facilitates movement of the supraspinatus tendon under the coraco-acromial arch and of the deltoid over the joint capsule of the glenohumeral joint and the greater tubercle of the humerus. Its size varies, but it does not normally communicate with the cavity of the glenohumeral joint.

Elbow Joint

The **elbow joint**, a hinge type of synovial joint, is located 2–3 cm inferior to the epicondyles of the humerus (Fig. 3.99).

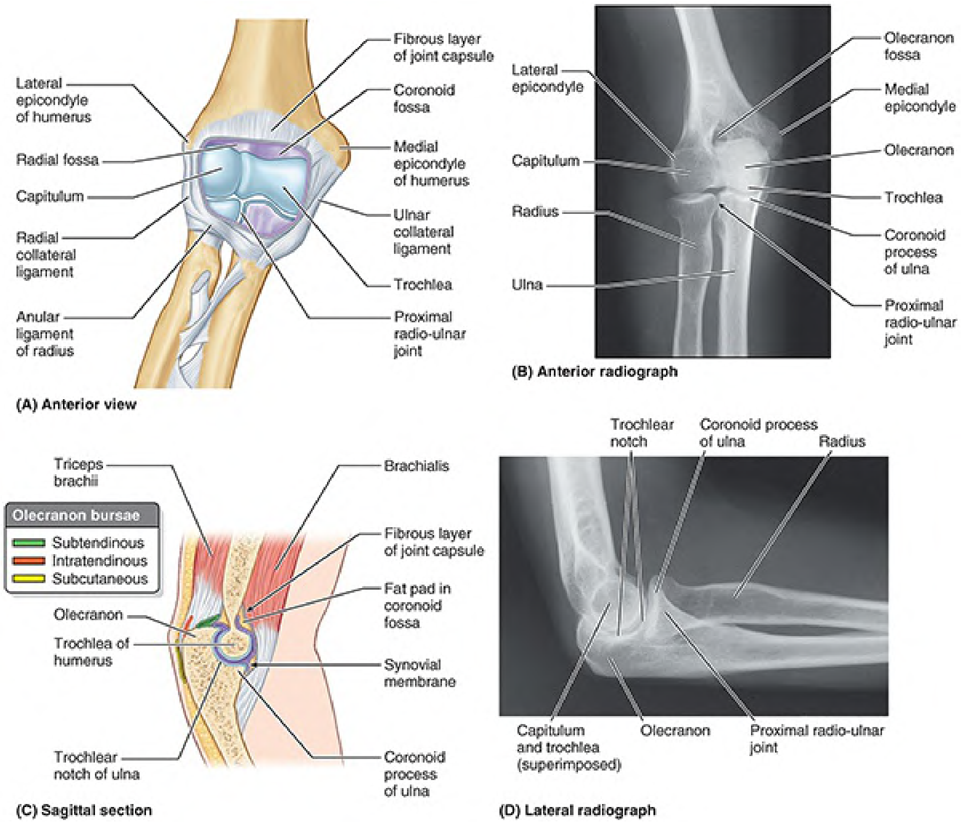


FIGURE 3.99. **Elbow and proximal radio-ulnar joints. A.** Joint capsule. The thin anterior aspect of the joint capsule has been removed to reveal the articulating surfaces of the bones inside. The strong collateral ligaments were left intact. **B.** Radiograph of extended elbow joint. **C.** Humero-ulnar articulation and olecranon bursae. **D.** Radiograph of flexed elbow joint.

ARTICULATION OF ELBOW JOINT

The spool-shaped trochlea and spheroidal capitulum of the humerus articulate with the trochlear notch of the ulna and the slightly concave superior aspect of the head of the radius, respectively; therefore, there are humero-ulnar and humeroradial articulations. The articular surfaces, covered with hyaline cartilage, are most fully congruent (in contact) when the forearm is in a position midway between pronation and supination and is flexed to a right angle.

JOINT CAPSULE OF ELBOW JOINT

The fibrous layer of the joint capsule surrounds the elbow joint (Fig. 3.99A, C). It is attached to the humerus at the margins of the lateral and medial ends of the articular surfaces of the capitulum and trochlea. Anteriorly and posteriorly, it is carried superiorly, proximal to the coronoid and olecranon fossae.

The synovial membrane lines the internal surface of the fibrous layer of the capsule and the intracapsular nonarticular parts of the humerus. It is also continuous inferiorly with the synovial membrane of the proximal radio-ulnar joint. The joint capsule is weak anteriorly and posteriorly but is strengthened on each side by collateral ligaments.

LIGAMENTS OF ELBOW JOINT

The collateral ligaments of the elbow joint are strong triangular bands that are medial and lateral thickenings of the fibrous layer of the joint capsule (Figs. 3.99A and 3.100). The lateral, fan-like **radial collateral ligament** extends from the lateral epicondyle of the humerus and blends distally with the **anular ligament of the radius**, which encircles and holds the head of the radius in the radial notch of the ulna, forming the proximal radio-ulnar joint and permitting pronation and supination of the forearm.

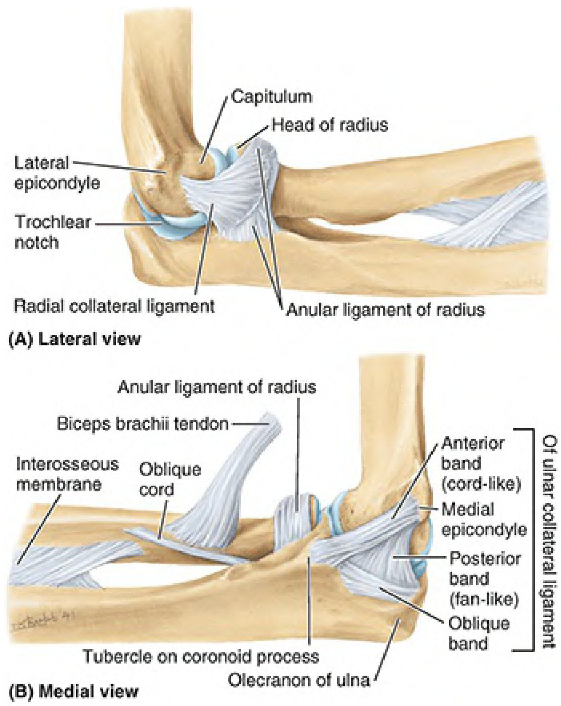


FIGURE 3.100. Collateral ligaments of elbow joint. A. Radial collateral and annular ligaments. The fan-like radial collateral ligament is attached to the anular ligament of the radius, but its superficial fibers continue on to the ulna. **B.** Ulnar collateral ligament. This ligament has a strong, round, cord-like anterior band (part), which is taut when the elbow joint is extended, and a weak, fan-like posterior band, which is taut when the joint is flexed. The oblique fibers merely deepen the socket for the trochlea of the humerus.

The medial, triangular **ulnar collateral ligament** extends from the medial epicondyle of the humerus to the coronoid process and olecranon of the ulna and consists of three bands: (1) the anterior cord-like band is the strongest, (2) the posterior fan-like band is the weakest, and (3) the slender oblique band deepens the socket for the trochlea of the humerus.

MOVEMENTS OF ELBOW JOINT

Flexion and extension occur at the elbow joint. The long axis of the fully extended ulna makes an angle of approximately 170° with the long axis of the humerus. This **carrying angle** (Fig. 3.101) is named for the way the forearm angles away from the body when something is carried, such as a pail of water. The obliquity of the ulna and thus of the carrying angle is more pronounced (the angle is approximately 10° more acute) in women than in men. It is said to enable the swinging limbs to clear the wide female pelvis when walking. In the anatomical position, the elbow is

against the waist. The carrying angle disappears when the forearm is pronated.

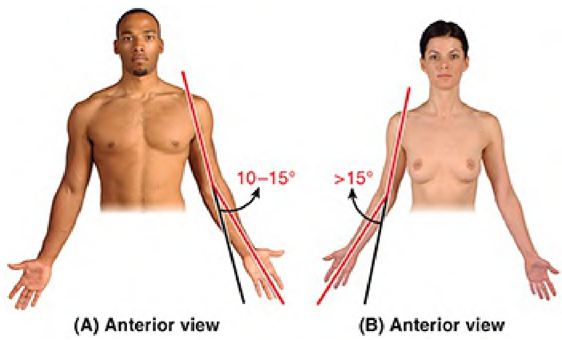


FIGURE 3.101. Carrying angle of elbow joint. A. Male **B.** Female. This angle is made by the axes of the arm and forearm when the elbow is fully extended. Note that the forearm diverges laterally, forming an angle that is greater in the woman. This is said to allow for clearance of the wider female pelvis as the limbs swing during walking; however, no significant difference exists regarding the function of the elbow.

MUSCLES MOVING ELBOW JOINT

A total of 17 muscles cross the elbow and extend to the forearm and hand, most of which have some potential to affect elbow movement. In turn, their function and efficiency in the other movements they produce are affected by elbow position. The chief flexors of the elbow joint are the brachialis and biceps brachii (Fig. 3.102). The brachioradialis can produce rapid flexion in the absence of resistance (even when the chief flexors are paralyzed). Normally, in the presence of resistance, the brachioradialis and pronator teres assist the chief flexors in producing slower flexion. The chief extensor of the elbow joint is the triceps brachii, especially the medial head, weakly assisted by the anconeus.

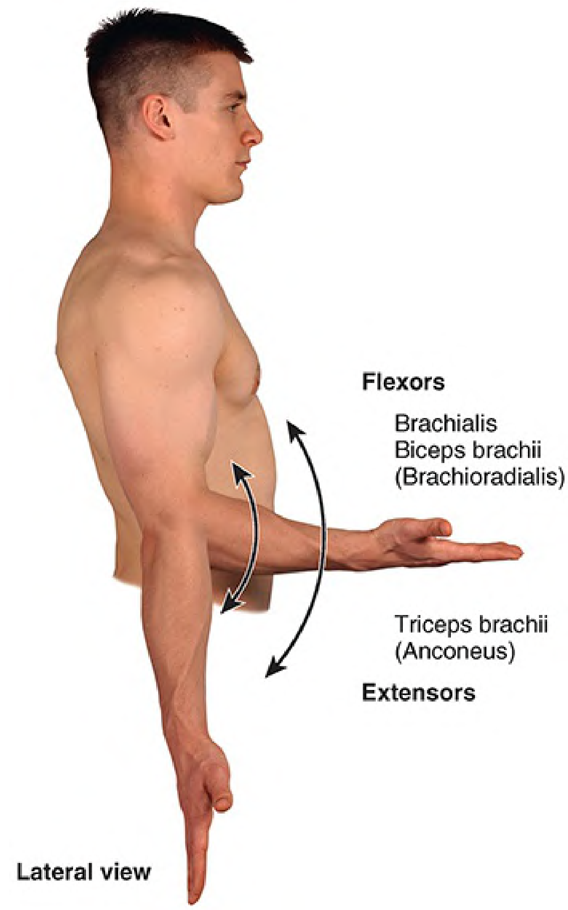


FIGURE 3.102. Movements of elbow joint and muscles that produce them.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF ELBOW JOINT

The arteries supplying the elbow joint are derived from the anastomosis around the elbow joint (see Fig. 3.53).

NERVE SUPPLY OF ELBOW JOINT

The elbow joint is supplied by the musculocutaneous, radial, median, and ulnar nerves (see Fig. 3.71; Table 3.13).

BURSAE AROUND ELBOW JOINT

Only some of the bursae around the elbow joint are clinically important. The three olecranon bursae are (Figs. 3.99C and 3.103) the:

1. **Intratendinous olecranon bursa**, which is sometimes present in the tendon of triceps brachii
2. **Subtendinous olecranon bursa**, which is located between the olecranon and the triceps tendon, just proximal to its attachment to the olecranon
3. **Subcutaneous olecranon bursa**, which is located in the subcutaneous connective tissue over the olecranon

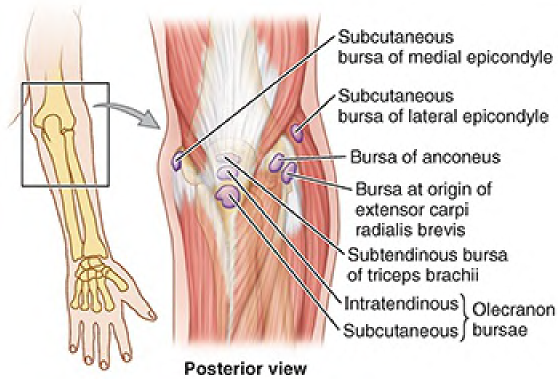


FIGURE 3.103. Bursae around elbow joint. Of the several bursae around the elbow joint, the olecranon bursae are most important clinically. Trauma of these bursae may produce bursitis.

The **bicipitoradial bursa** (biceps bursa) separates the biceps tendon from, and reduces abrasion against, the anterior part of the radial tuberosity.

Proximal Radio-Ulnar Joint

The **proximal (superior)** radio-ulnar joint is a pivot type of synovial joint that allows movement of the head of the radius on the ulna (Figs. 3.99A, B, D and 3.104).

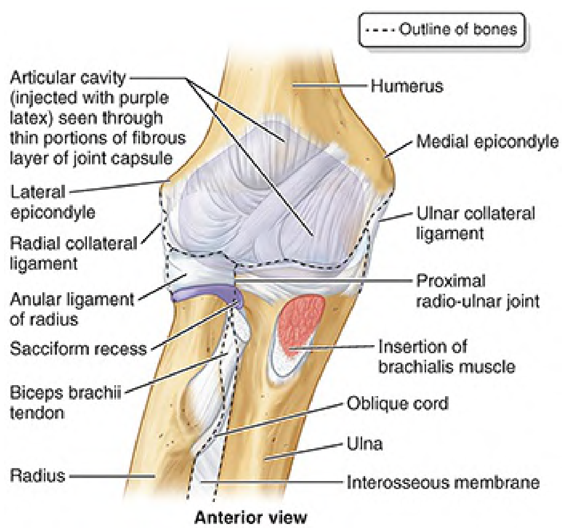


FIGURE 3.104. Proximal radio-ulnar joint. The anular ligament attaches to the radial notch of the ulna, forming a collar around the head of the radius (Fig. 3.105A) and creating a pivot type of synovial joint. The articular cavity of the joint is continuous with that of the elbow joint, as demonstrated by the blue latex injected into that space and seen through the thin parts of the fibrous layer of the capsule, including a small area distal to the anular ligament.

ARTICULATION OF PROXIMAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The head of the radius articulates with the radial notch of the ulna. The radial head is held in position by the anular ligament of the radius.

JOINT CAPSULE OF PROXIMAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The fibrous layer of the joint capsule encloses the joint and is continuous with that of the elbow joint. The synovial membrane lines the deep surface of the fibrous layer and nonarticulating aspects of the bones. The synovial membrane is an inferior prolongation of the synovial membrane of the elbow joint.

LIGAMENTS OF PROXIMAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The strong anular ligament, attached to the ulna anterior and posterior to its radial notch, surrounds the articulating bony surfaces and forms a collar that, with the radial notch, creates a ring that completely encircles the head of the radius (Figs. 3.104, 3.105, and 3.106). The deep surface of the anular ligament is lined with synovial membrane, which continues distally as a **sacciform recess of the proximal radio-ulnar joint** on the neck of the radius. This arrangement allows the radius to rotate within the anular ligament without binding, stretching, or tearing the synovial membrane.

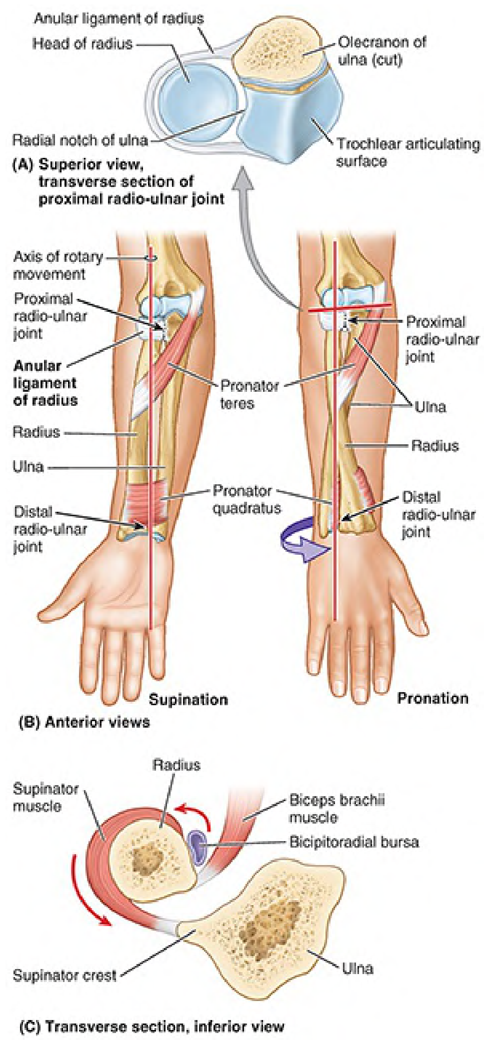


FIGURE 3.105. Supination and pronation of forearm. A. Relationship of anular ligament and head of radius. The head of the radius rotates in the "socket" formed by the anular ligament and radial notch of the ulna. **B.** Pronation and supination. Supination is the movement of the forearm that rotates the radius laterally around its longitudinal axis so that

the dorsum of the hand faces posteriorly and the palm faces anteriorly. Pronation is the movement of the forearm, produced by pronators teres and quadratus, that rotates the radius medially around its longitudinal axis, so that the palm of the hand faces posteriorly and its dorsum faces anteriorly (see Figs. 3.107 and 3.108). **C.** Actions of biceps brachii and supinator in producing supination from pronated position at radio-ulnar joints.

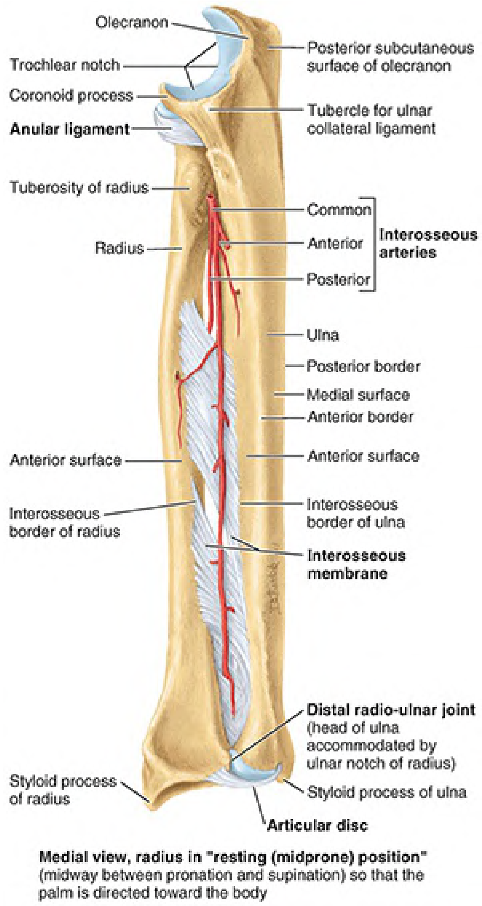


FIGURE 3.106. Radio-ulnar ligaments and interosseous arteries. The ligament of the proximal radio-ulnar joint is the anular ligament. The ligament of the distal radio-ulnar joint is the articular disc. The interosseous membrane connects the interosseous margins of the radius and ulna, forming the radio-ulnar syndesmosis. The general direction of the fibers of the interosseous membrane is such that a superior thrust to the hand is received by the radius and is transmitted to the ulna.

MOVEMENTS OF PROXIMAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

During pronation and supination of the forearm, the head of the radius rotates within the collar formed by the anular ligament and the radial notch of the ulna. **Supination** turns the palm anteriorly, or superiorly when the forearm is flexed (Figs. 3.105, 3.107, and 3.108). **Pronation** turns the palm posteriorly, or inferiorly when the forearm is flexed. The axis for these movements passes proximally through the center of the head of the radius and distally through the site of attachment of the apex of the articular disc to the head (styloid process) of the ulna. During pronation and supination, it is the radius that rotates; its head rotates within the cup-shaped collar formed by the anular ligament and the radial notch on the ulna. Distally, the end of the radius rotates around the head of the ulna. Almost always, supination and pronation are accompanied by synergistic movements of the glenohumeral and elbow joints that produce

simultaneous movement of the ulna, except when the elbow is flexed.

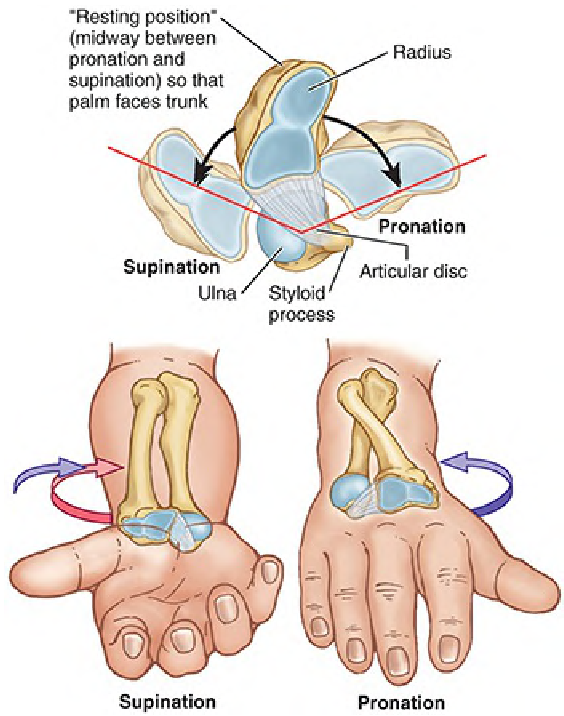


FIGURE 3.107. **Movements of distal radio-ulnar joint during supination and pronation of forearm.** The distal radio-ulnar joint is the pivot type of synovial joint between the head of the ulna and the ulnar notch of the radius. The inferior end of the radius moves around the relatively fixed end of the ulna during supination and pronation of the hand. The two bones are firmly united distally by the articular disc, referred to clinically as the triangular ligament of the distal radio-ulnar joint. It has a broad attachment to the radius but a narrow attachment to the styloid process of the ulna, which serves as the pivot point for the rotary movement.

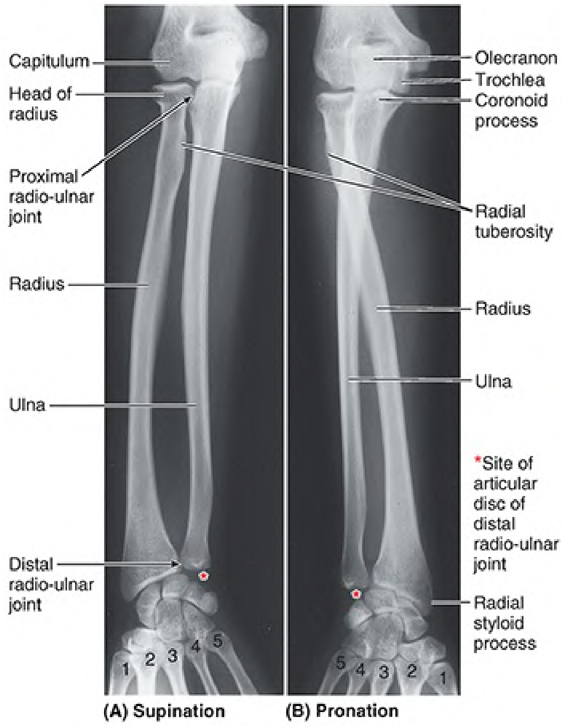


FIGURE 3.108. **Radiographs of radio-ulnar joints. A.** Supinated position. The radius and ulna are parallel. **B.** Pronated position. During pronation, the inferior end of the radius moves anteriorly and medially around the inferior end of the ulna, carrying the hand with it. Thus, in the pronated position, the radius crosses the ulna anteriorly. 1–5, metacarpals.

MUSCLES MOVING PROXIMAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

Supination is produced by the supinator (when resistance is absent) and biceps brachii (when power is required because of resistance), with some assistance from the EPL and ECRL (Fig. 3.105C). Pronation is produced by the pronator quadratus (primarily) and pronator teres (secondarily) (Fig. 3.105B), with some assistance from the FCR, palmaris longus, and brachioradialis (when the forearm is in the midpronated position).

BLOOD SUPPLY OF PROXIMAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The proximal radio-ulnar joint is supplied by the radial portion of the peri-articular arterial anastomosis of the elbow joint (radial and middle collateral arteries anastomosing with the radial and recurrent interosseous arteries, respectively) (see Fig. 3.69; Table 3.12).

INNERVATION OF PROXIMAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The proximal radio-ulnar joint is supplied mainly by the musculocutaneous, median, and radial nerves. Pronation is essentially a function of the median nerve, whereas supination is a function of the musculocutaneous and radial nerves.

Distal Radio-Ulnar Joint

The **distal (inferior) radio-ulnar joint** is a pivot type of synovial joint (Fig. 3.106). The radius moves around the relatively fixed distal end of the ulna.

ARTICULATION OF DISTAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The rounded head of the ulna articulates with the ulnar notch on the medial side of the distal end of the radius. A fibrocartilaginous, triangular **articular disc of the distal radio-ulnar joint** (sometimes referred to by clinicians as the "triangular ligament") binds the ends of the ulna and radius together and is the main uniting structure of the joint (Figs. 3.106, 3.107, and 3.109B). The base of the articular disc is attached to the medial edge of the ulnar notch of the radius, and its apex is attached to the lateral side of the base of the styloid process of the ulna. The proximal surface of this disc articulates with the distal aspect of the head of the ulna. Hence, the joint cavity is L-shaped in a coronal section; the vertical bar of the L is between the radius and ulna, and the horizontal bar is between the ulna and the articular disc (Figs. 3.109B, C and 3.110A). The articular disc separates the cavity of the distal radio-ulnar joint from the cavity of the wrist joint.

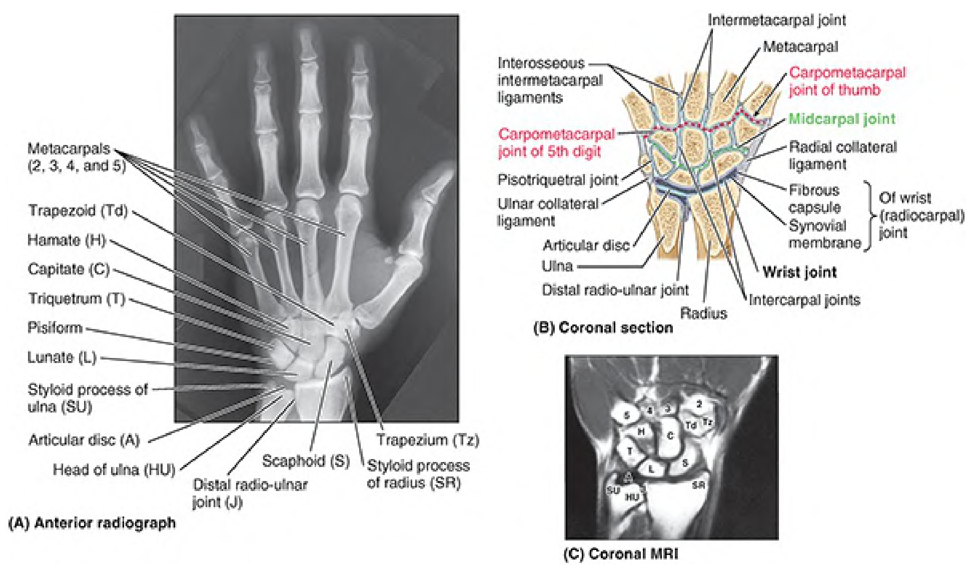


FIGURE 3.109. Bones and joints of wrist and hand. A. Radiograph of wrist and hand. The "joint space" at the distal end of the ulna appears wide because of the radiolucent articular disc. **B.** Coronal section of right hand. The distal radio-ulnar, wrist, intercarpal, carpometacarpal, and intermetacarpal joints are shown. Although they appear to be continuous when viewed radiographically in parts **A** and **C**, the articular cavities of the distal radio-ulnar and wrist joints are separated by the articular disc of the distal radio-ulnar joint. **C.** Coronal MRI of wrist. The structures are identified in part **A**.

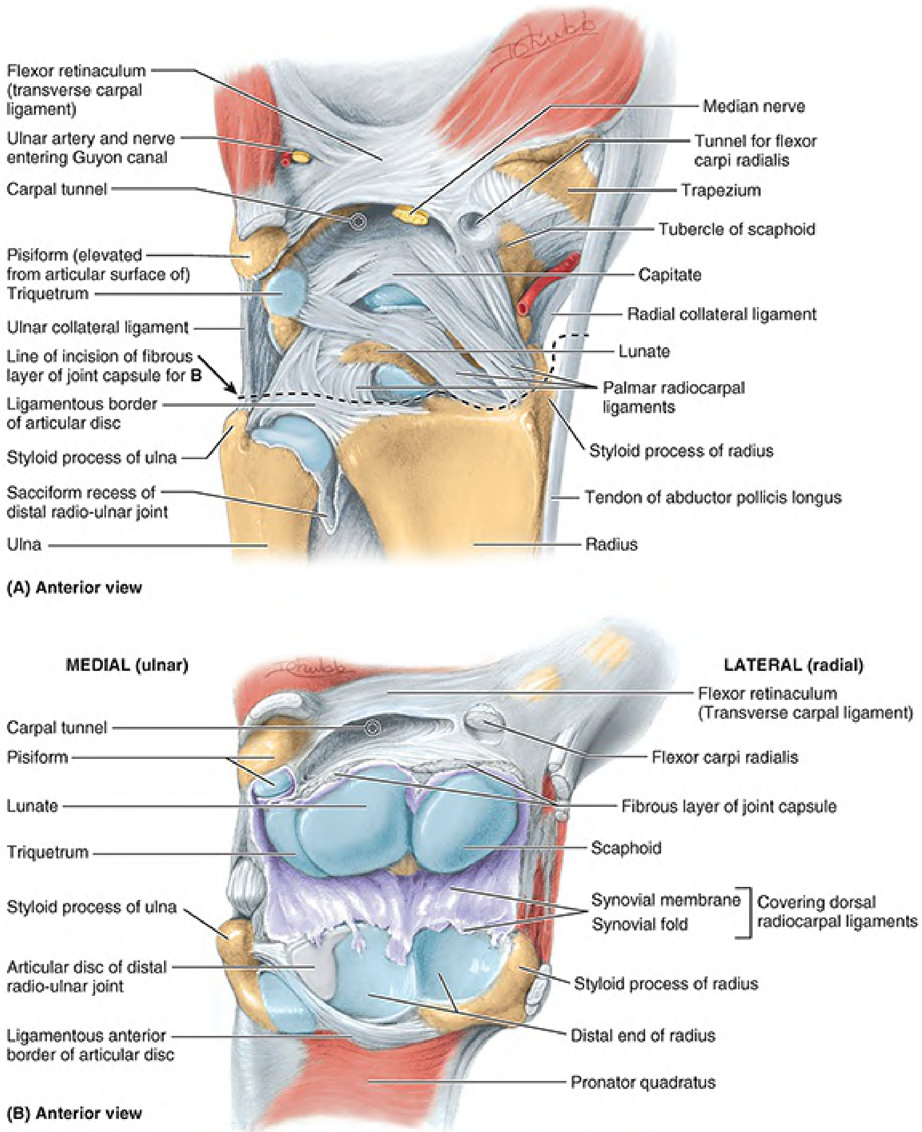


FIGURE 3.110. Dissection of distal radio-ulnar, radiocarpal, and intercarpal joints. A. Ligaments. The hand is forcibly extended but the joint is intact. Observe the palmar radiocarpal ligaments, passing from the radius to the two rows of carpal bones. These strong ligaments are directed so that the hand follows the radius during supination. **B.** Articular surfaces of radiocarpal joint. The joint is opened anteriorly, with the dorsal radiocarpal ligaments serving as a hinge. Observe the nearly equal proximal articular surfaces of the scaphoid and lunate and that the lunate articulates with both the radius and the articular disc. Only during adduction of the wrist does the triquetrum articulate with the articular disc of the distal radio-ulnar joint.

JOINT CAPSULE OF DISTAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The fibrous layer of the joint capsule encloses the distal radio-ulnar joint but is deficient superiorly. The synovial membrane extends superiorly between the radius and ulna to form the **sacciform recess of the distal radio-ulnar joint** (Fig. 3.110A). This redundancy of the synovial capsule accommodates the twisting of the capsule that occurs when the distal end of the radius travels around the relatively fixed distal end of the ulna during pronation of the forearm.

LIGAMENTS OF DISTAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

Anterior and posterior ligaments strengthen the fibrous layer of the joint capsule of the distal radio-ulnar joint. These relatively weak transverse bands extend from the radius to the ulna across the anterior and posterior surfaces of the joint.

MOVEMENTS OF DISTAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

During pronation of the forearm and hand, the distal end of the radius moves (rotates) anteriorly and medially, crossing over the ulna anteriorly (Figs. 3.105, 3.107, and 3.108). During supination, the radius uncrosses from the ulna, its distal end moving (rotating) laterally and posteriorly so the bones become parallel.

MUSCLES MOVING DISTAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The muscles producing movements of the distal radio-ulnar joint are discussed with the proximal radio-ulnar joint.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF DISTAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The anterior and posterior interosseous arteries supply the distal radio-ulnar joint (Fig. 3.106).

INNERVATION OF DISTAL RADIO-ULNAR JOINT

The anterior and posterior interosseous nerves supply the distal radio-ulnar joint.

Wrist Joint

The **wrist (radiocarpal) joint** is a condyloid (ellipsoid) type of synovial joint (see Fig. 1.17). The position of the joint is indicated approximately by a line joining the styloid processes of the radius and ulna or by the proximal wrist crease (Figs. 3.108, 3.109, and 3.110; see Fig. 3.91). The wrist (carpus), the proximal segment of the hand, is a complex of eight carpal bones, articulating proximally with the forearm via the wrist joint and distally with the five metacarpals.

ARTICULATION OF WRIST JOINT

The ulna does not participate in the wrist joint. The distal end of the radius and the articular disc of the distal radio-ulnar joint articulate with the proximal row of carpal bones, except for the pisiform (Fig. 3.109B, C). The latter bone acts primarily as a sesamoid bone, increasing the leverage of the flexor carpi ulnaris (FCU). The pisiform lies in a plane anterior to the other carpal bones, articulating with only the triquetrum.

JOINT CAPSULE OF WRIST JOINT

The fibrous layer of the joint capsule surrounds the wrist joint and is attached to the distal ends of the radius and ulna and the proximal row of carpals (scaphoid, lunate, and triquetrum) (Fig. 3.110A, B). The synovial membrane lines the internal surface of the fibrous layer of the joint

capsule and is attached to the margins of the articular surfaces (Fig. 3.110B). Numerous synovial folds are present.

LIGAMENTS OF WRIST JOINT

The fibrous layer of the joint capsule is strengthened by strong dorsal and palmar radiocarpal ligaments. The **palmar radiocarpal ligaments** pass from the radius to the two rows of carpals (Fig. 3.110A). They are strong and directed so that the hand follows the radius during supination of the forearm. The **dorsal radiocarpal ligaments** take the same direction so that the hand follows the radius during pronation of the forearm.

The joint capsule is also strengthened medially by the **ulnar collateral ligament**, which is attached to the ulnar styloid process and triquetrum (Figs. 3.109B and 3.110A). The joint capsule is also strengthened laterally by the **radial collateral ligament**, which is attached to the radial styloid process and scaphoid.

MOVEMENTS OF WRIST JOINT

The movements at the wrist joint may be augmented by additional smaller movements at the intercarpal and midcarpal joints (Fig. 3.111). The movements are flexion–extension, abduction–adduction (radial deviation–ulnar deviation), and circumduction. The hand can be flexed on the forearm more than it can be extended. These movements are accompanied (actually, are initiated) by similar movements at the midcarpal joint between the proximal and distal rows of carpal bones. Adduction of the hand is greater than abduction (Fig. 3.111B). Most adduction occurs at the wrist joint. Abduction from the neutral position occurs at the midcarpal joint. Circumduction of the hand consists of successive flexion, adduction, extension, and abduction.

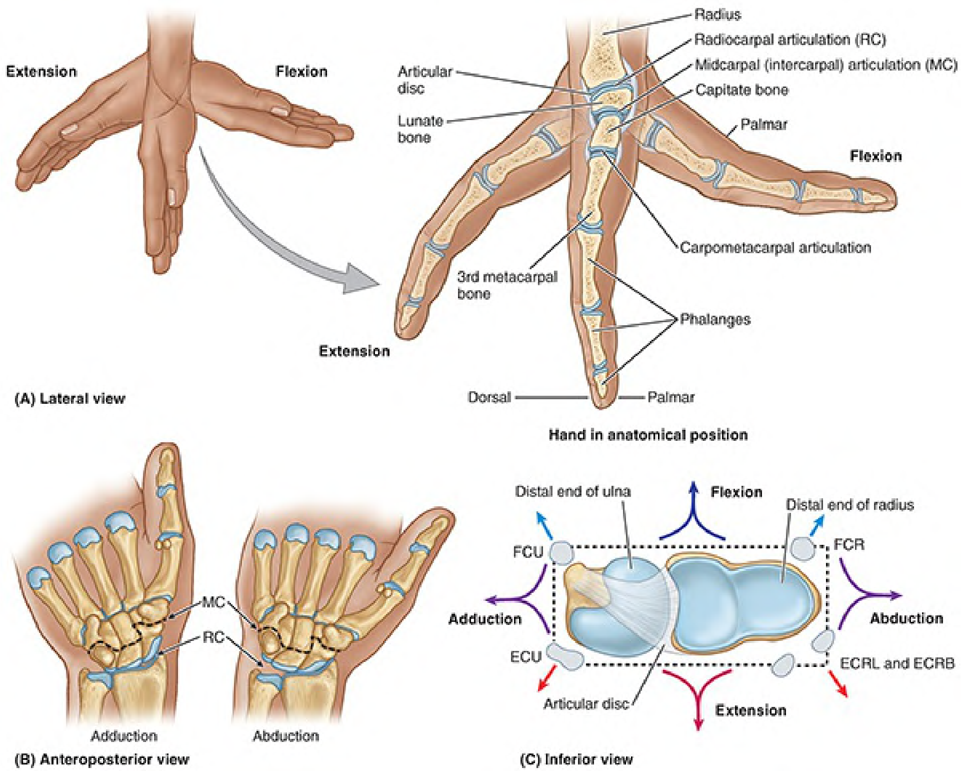


FIGURE 3.111. Movements of wrist. A. Flexion and extension. In this sagittal section of the wrist and hand during extension and flexion, observe the radiocarpal, midcarpal, and carpometacarpal articulations. Most movement occurs at the radiocarpal joint, with additional movement taking place at the midcarpal joint during full flexion and extension. **B.** Adduction and abduction. Movement at the radiocarpal (RC) and midcarpal (MC) joints during adduction and abduction is demonstrated. **C.** Direction of movement of hand on contraction of primary ("carpi") muscles. Arrows indicate direction of movement when tendons exert pull individually or in unison with an adjacent muscle. ECRB, extensor carpi radialis brevis; ECRL, extensor carpi radialis longus; ECU, extensor carpi ulnaris; FCR, flexor carpi radialis; FCU, flexor carpi ulnaris.

MUSCLES MOVING WRIST JOINT

Movement at the wrist is produced primarily by the "carpi" muscles of the forearm, the tendons of which extend along the four corners of the wrist (comparing a cross section of the wrist to a rectangle; Fig. 3.111C) to attach to the bases of the metacarpals. The FCU does so via the pisohamate ligament (Fig. 3.112A), a continuation of the FCU tendon if the pisiform is considered a sesamoid bone within the tendon. Movements of the wrist joint are produced as follows:

- Flexion of the wrist joint is produced by the FCR and FCU, with assistance from the flexors of the fingers and thumb, palmaris longus, and APL (Fig. 3.111C).
- Extension of the wrist joint is produced by the ECRL, ECRB, and ECU, with assistance from the extensors of the fingers and thumb.
- Abduction of the wrist joint is produced by the APL, FCR, ECRL, and ECRB; it is limited to approximately 15° because of the projecting radial styloid process.
- Adduction of the wrist joint is produced by simultaneous contraction of the ECU and FCU.

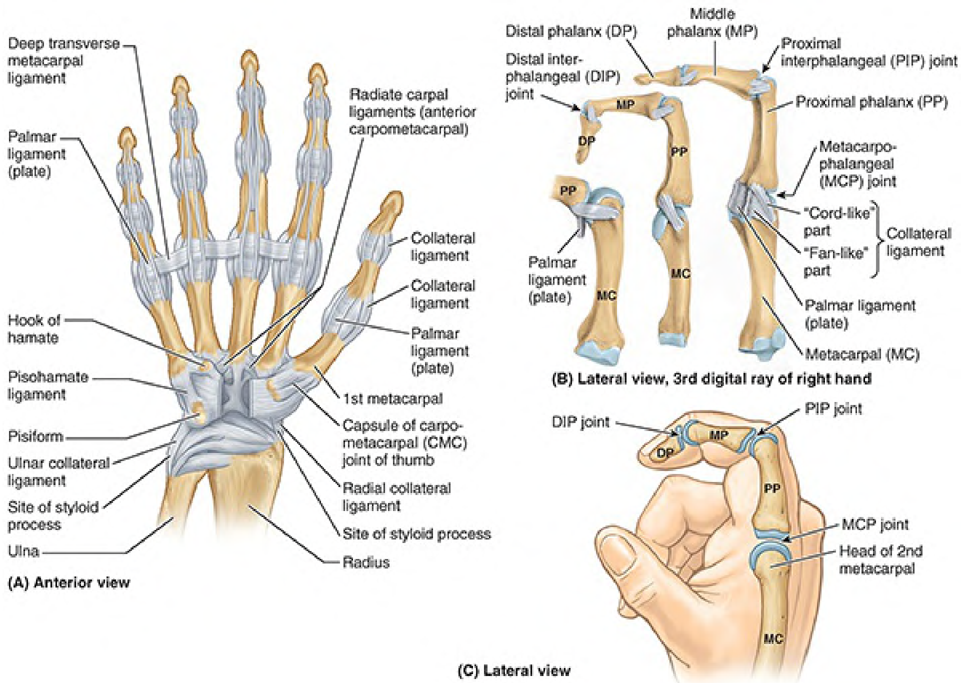


FIGURE 3.112. Joints of hand. A. Palmar ligaments of radio-ulnar, radiocarpal, intercarpal, carpometacarpal, and interphalangeal joints. **B.** Metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints. The palmar ligaments (plates) are modifications of the anterior aspect of the MP and IP joint capsules. **C.** Position of MP and IP joints in flexed digit. The knuckles are formed by the heads of the bones, with the joint plane lying distally.

Most activities require a small amount of wrist flexion; however, tight grip (clenching of the fist) requires extension at the wrist. The mildly extended position is also the most stable and the "resting position."

BLOOD SUPPLY OF WRIST JOINT

The arteries supplying the wrist joint are branches of the dorsal and palmar carpal arches (see Figs. 3.63A and 3.69).

INNERVATION OF WRIST JOINT

The nerves to the wrist joint are derived from the anterior interosseous branch of the median nerve, the posterior interosseous branch of the radial nerve, and the dorsal and deep branches of the ulnar nerve (see Figs. 3.71 and 3.87; Tables 3.13 and 3.16).

Intercarpal Joints

The **intercarpal (IC) joints**, interconnecting the carpal bones, are plane synovial joints (Fig. 3.109), which may be summarized as follows:

- Joints between the carpal bones of the proximal row
- Joints between the carpal bones of the distal row
- The **midcarpal joint**, a complex joint between the proximal and distal rows of carpal bones

- The **pisotriquetral joint**, formed from the articulation of the pisiform with the palmar surface of the triquetrum

JOINT CAPSULE OF INTERCARPAL JOINTS

A continuous, common articular cavity is formed by the IC and carpometacarpal joints, with the exception of the **carpometacarpal joint of the thumb**, which is independent. The wrist joint is also independent. The continuity of the articular cavities, or the lack of it, is significant in relation to the spread of infection and to arthroscopy, in which a flexible fiberoptic scope is inserted into the articular cavity to view its internal surfaces and features. The fibrous layer of the joint capsule surrounds the IC joints, which helps unite the carpals. The synovial membrane lines the fibrous layer and is attached to the margins of the articular surfaces of the carpals.

LIGAMENTS OF INTERCARPAL JOINTS

The carpals are united by anterior, posterior, and interosseous ligaments (Figs. 3.110 and 3.112A).

MOVEMENTS OF INTERCARPAL JOINTS

The gliding movements possible between the carpals occur concomitantly with movements at the wrist joint, augmenting them and increasing the overall range of movement. Flexion and extension of the hand are actually initiated at the midcarpal joint, between the proximal and the distal rows of carpals (Figs. 3.109B and 3.111A). Most flexion and adduction occur mainly at the wrist joint, whereas extension and abduction occur primarily at the midcarpal joint. Movements at the other IC joints are small, with the proximal row being more mobile than the distal row.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF INTERCARPAL JOINTS

The arteries supplying the IC joints are derived from the dorsal and palmar carpal arches (see Fig. 3.84; Table 3.15).

INNERVATION OF INTERCARPAL JOINTS

The IC joints are supplied by the anterior interosseous branch of the median nerve and the dorsal and deep branches of the ulnar nerve (see Fig. 3.87; Table 3.16).

Carpometacarpal and Intermetacarpal Joints

The **carpometacarpal (CMC)** and **intermetacarpal (IM) joints** are the plane type of synovial joint, except for the **CMC joint of the thumb**, which is a saddle joint (Fig. 3.109).

ARTICULATIONS OF CARPOMETACARPAL AND INTERMETACARPAL JOINTS

The distal surfaces of the carpals of the distal row articulate with the carpal surfaces of the bases

of the metacarpals at the CMC joints. The important CMC joint of the thumb is between the trapezium and the base of the 1st metacarpal; it has a separate articular cavity. Like the carpals, adjacent metacarpals articulate with each other; IM joints occur between the radial and ulnar aspects of the bases of the metacarpals.

JOINT CAPSULE OF CARPOMETACARPAL AND INTERMETACARPAL JOINTS

The medial four CMC joints and three IM joints are enclosed by a common joint capsule on the palmar and dorsal surfaces. A common synovial membrane lines the internal surface of the fibrous layer of the joint capsule, surrounding a common articular cavity. The fibrous layer of the CMC joint of the thumb surrounds the joint and is attached to the margins of the articular surfaces. The synovial membrane lines the internal surface of the fibrous layer. The looseness of the capsule facilitates free movement of the joint of the thumb.

LIGAMENTS OF CARPOMETACARPAL AND INTERMETACARPAL JOINTS

The bones are united in the region of the joints by **palmar** and **dorsal CMC** and **IM ligaments** (Fig. 3.112A) and by **interosseous IM ligaments** (Fig. 3.109B). In addition, the superficial and deep **transverse metacarpal ligaments** (the former part of the palmar aponeurosis), associated with the distal ends of the metacarpals, play a role in limiting movement at the CMC and IM joints as they limit separation of the metacarpal heads.

MOVEMENTS OF CARPOMETACARPAL AND INTERMETACARPAL JOINTS

The CMC joint of the thumb permits angular movements in any plane (flexion–extension, abduction–adduction, or circumduction) and a restricted amount of axial rotation. Most important, the movement essential to opposition of the thumb occurs here. Although the opponens pollicis is the prime mover, all of the hypothenar muscles contribute to opposition.

Almost no movement occurs at the CMC joints of the 2nd and 3rd digits, that of the 4th digit is slightly mobile, and that of the 5th digit is moderately mobile, flexing and rotating slightly during a tight grasp (see Fig. 3.75G, H). When the palm of the hand is "cupped" (as during pad-to-pad opposition of thumb and little finger), two thirds of the movement occur at the CMC joint of the thumb, and one third occurs at the CMC and IC joints of the 4th and 5th fingers.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF CARPOMETACARPAL AND INTERMETACARPAL JOINTS

The CMC and IM joints are supplied by peri-articular arterial anastomoses of the wrist and hand (dorsal and palmar carpal arches, deep palmar arch, and metacarpal arteries) (see Figs. 3.84 and 3.85).

INNERVATION OF CARPOMETACARPAL AND INTERMETACARPAL JOINTS

The CMC and IM joints are supplied by the anterior interosseous branch of the median nerve, posterior interosseous branch of the radial nerve, and dorsal and deep branches of the ulnar nerve (see Fig. 3.87).

Metacarpophalangeal and Interphalangeal Joints

The **metacarpophalangeal joints** are the condyloid type of synovial joint that permit movement in two planes: flexion–extension and adduction–abduction. The **interphalangeal joints** are the hinge type of synovial joint that permit flexion–extension only (Fig. 3.112B).

ARTICULATIONS OF METACARPOPHALANGEAL AND INTERPHALANGEAL JOINTS

The heads of the metacarpals articulate with the bases of the proximal phalanges in the MP joints, and the heads of the phalanges articulate with the bases of more distally located phalanges in the IP joints.

JOINT CAPSULES OF METACARPOPHALANGEAL AND INTERPHALANGEAL JOINTS

A joint capsule encloses each MC and IP joint with a synovial membrane lining a fibrous layer that is attached to the margins of each joint.

LIGAMENTS OF METACARPOPHALANGEAL AND INTERPHALANGEAL JOINTS

The fibrous layer of each MC and IP joint capsule is strengthened by two (medial and lateral) **collateral ligaments**. These ligaments have two parts:

- Denser "cord-like" parts that pass distally from the heads of the metacarpals and phalanges to the bases of the phalanges (Fig. 3.112A, B)
- Thinner "fan-like" parts that pass anteriorly to attach to thick, densely fibrous or fibrocartilaginous plates, the **palmar ligaments** (plates), which form the palmar aspect of the joint capsule

The fan-like parts of the collateral ligaments cause the palmar ligaments to move like a visor over the underlying metacarpal or phalangeal heads.

The strong cord-like parts of the collateral ligaments of the MP joint, being eccentrically attached to the metacarpal heads, are slack during extension and taut during flexion. As a result, the fingers cannot usually be spread (abducted) when the MP joints are fully flexed. The interphalangeal joints have corresponding ligaments, but the distal ends of the proximal and middle phalanges, being flattened anteroposteriorly and having two small condyles, permit

neither adduction or abduction.

The palmar ligaments blend with the fibrous digital sheaths and provide a smooth, longitudinal groove that allows the long flexor ligaments to glide and remain centrally placed as they cross the convexities of the joints. The palmar ligaments of the 2nd–5th MP joints are united by **deep transverse metacarpal ligaments** that hold the heads of the metacarpals together. In addition, the dorsal hood of each extensor apparatus attaches anteriorly to the sides of the palmar plates of the MP joints.

MOVEMENTS OF METACARPOPHALANGEAL AND INTERPHALANGEAL JOINTS

Flexion–extension, abduction–adduction, and circumduction of the 2nd–5th digits occur at the 2nd–5th MP joints. Movement at the MP joint of the thumb is limited to flexion–extension. Only flexion and extension occur at the IP joints.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF METACARPAL AND INTERPHALANGEAL JOINTS

Deep digital arteries that arise from the superficial palmar arches supply the MC and IP joints (see Figs. 3.84 and 3.85).

INNERVATION OF METACARPAL AND INTERPHALANGEAL JOINTS

Digital nerves arising from the ulnar and median nerves supply the MC and IP joints (see Fig. 3.87A, B).

CLINICAL BOX

JOINTS OF UPPER LIMB

Dislocation of Sternoclavicular Joint

The rarity of dislocation of the SC joint attests to its strength, which depends on its ligaments, its disc, and the way forces are generally transmitted along the clavicle.

When a blow is received to the acromion of the scapula, or when a force is transmitted to the pectoral girdle during a fall on the outstretched hand, the force of the blow is usually transmitted along the length of the clavicle, that is, along its long axis. The clavicle may fracture near the junction of its middle and lateral thirds, but it is rare for the SC joint to dislocate. Most dislocations of the SC joint in persons <25 years of age result from fractures through the epiphysial plate because the epiphysis at the sternal end of the clavicle does not close until 23–25 years of age.

Ankylosis of Sternoclavicular Joint

Movement at the SC joint is critical to movement of the shoulder. When ankylosis (stiffening or fixation) of the joint occurs, or is necessary surgically, a section of the center of the clavicle is removed, creating a pseudojoint or "flail" joint to permit scapular movement.

Dislocation of Acromioclavicular Joint

Although its extrinsic coracoclavicular ligament is strong, the AC joint itself is weak and easily injured by a direct blow (Fig. B3.33A–D). In contact sports such as football, soccer, hockey, or the martial arts, it is not uncommon for dislocation of the AC joint to result from a hard fall on the shoulder or on the outstretched upper limb. Dislocation of the AC joint can also occur when an ice hockey player is driven into the boards or when a person receives a severe blow to the superolateral part of the back.

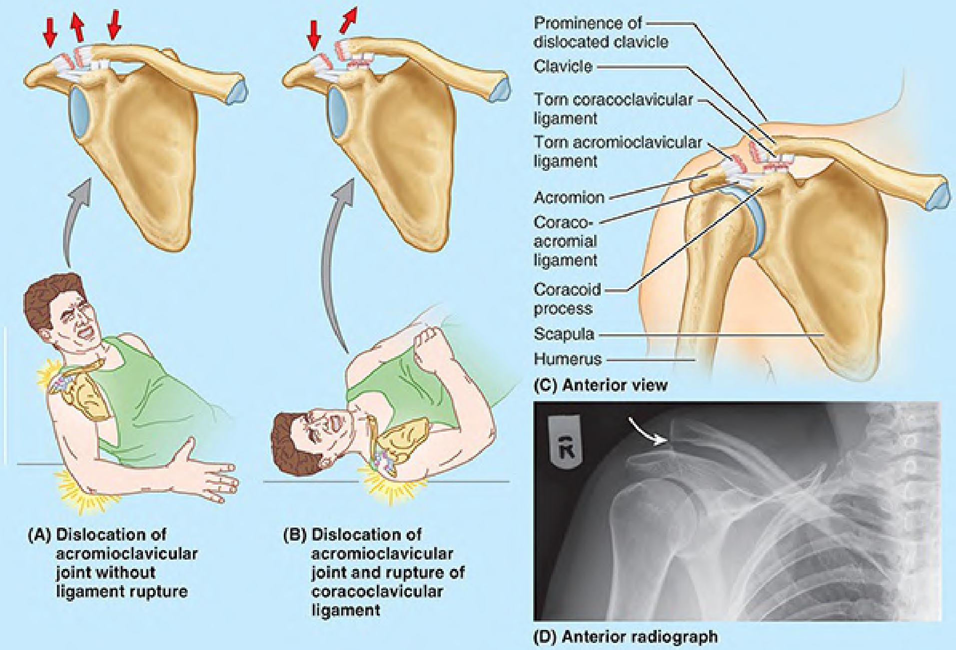


FIGURE B3.33. Dislocation of acromioclavicular joint.

An AC joint dislocation, often called a "shoulder separation," is severe when both the AC and coracoclavicular ligaments are torn. When the coracoclavicular ligament tears, the shoulder separates from the clavicle and falls because of the weight of the upper limb. Rupture of the coracoclavicular ligament allows the fibrous layer of the joint capsule to be torn so that the acromion can pass inferior to the acromial end of the clavicle. Dislocation of the AC joint makes the acromion more prominent, and the clavicle may move superior to this process.

Calcific Tendinitis of Shoulder

Inflammation and calcification of the subacromial bursa result in pain, tenderness, and

limitation of movement of the glenohumeral joint. This condition is also known as calcific scapulohumeral bursitis. Deposition of calcium in the supraspinatus tendon is common. This causes increased local pressure that often causes excruciating pain during abduction of the arm; the pain may radiate as far as the hand. The calcium deposit may irritate the overlying subacromial bursa, producing an inflammatory reaction known as subacromial bursitis (Fig. B3.34).

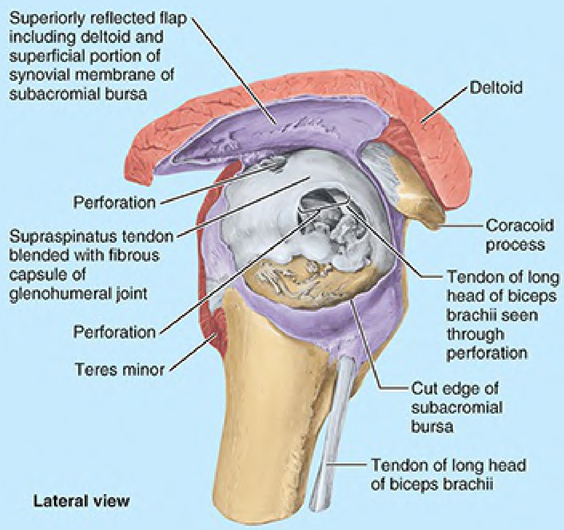


FIGURE B3.34. Attrition of the supraspinatus tendon.

As long as the glenohumeral joint is adducted, no pain usually results because in this position the painful lesion is away from the inferior surface of the acromion. In most people, the pain occurs during 50–130° of abduction (painful arc syndrome) because during this arc the supraspinatus tendon is in intimate contact with the inferior surface of the acromion. The pain usually develops in males 50 years of age and older after unusual or excessive use of the glenohumeral joint.

Rotator Cuff Injuries

The musculotendinous rotator cuff is commonly injured during repetitive use of the upper limb above the horizontal (e.g., during throwing and racquet sports, swimming, and weightlifting). Recurrent inflammation of the rotator cuff, especially the relatively avascular area of the supraspinatus tendon, is a common cause of shoulder pain and results in tears of the musculotendinous rotator cuff.

Repetitive use of the rotator cuff muscles (e.g., by baseball pitchers) may allow the humeral head and rotator cuff to impinge on the coracoacromial arch (see Fig. 3.97B), producing irritation of the arch and inflammation of the rotator cuff. As a result, degenerative tendonitis of the rotator cuff develops. Attrition of the supraspinatus tendon also occurs (Fig. B3.34).

To test for degenerative tendonitis/tendinosis of the rotator cuff, the person is asked to

lower the fully abducted limb slowly and smoothly. From approximately 90° abduction, the limb will suddenly drop to the side in an uncontrolled manner if the rotator cuff (especially its supraspinatus part) is diseased and/or torn.

Rotator cuff injuries may also occur during a sudden strain of the muscles, for example, when an older person strains to lift something, such as a window that is stuck. This strain may rupture a previously degenerated musculotendinous rotator cuff. A fall on the shoulder may also tear a previously degenerated rotator cuff. Often the intracapsular part of the tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii becomes frayed (even worn away), leaving it adherent to the intertubercular sulcus. As a result, shoulder stiffness occurs. Because they fuse, the integrity of the fibrous layer of the joint capsule of the glenohumeral joint is usually compromised when the rotator cuff is injured. As a result, the articular cavity communicates with the subacromial bursa. Because the supraspinatus muscle is no longer functional with a complete tear of the rotator cuff, the person cannot initiate abduction of the upper limb. If the arm is passively abducted 15° or more, the person can usually maintain or continue the abduction using the deltoid.

Dislocation of Glenohumeral Joint

Because of its freedom of movement and instability, the glenohumeral joint is commonly dislocated by direct or indirect injury. Because the presence of the coraco-acromial arch and support of the rotator cuff are effective in preventing upward dislocation, most dislocations of the humeral head occur in the downward (inferior) direction (Fig. B3.35). However, they are described clinically as anterior or (more rarely) posterior dislocations, indicating whether the humeral head has descended anterior or posterior to the infraglenoid tubercle and long head of the triceps. The head ends up lying anterior or posterior to the glenoid cavity.

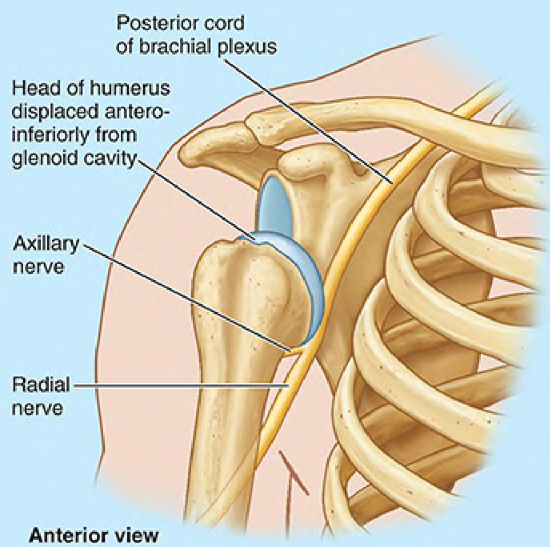


FIGURE B3.35. Dislocation of glenohumeral joint.

Anterior dislocation of the glenohumeral joint occurs most often in young adults, particularly athletes. It is usually caused by excessive extension and lateral rotation of the humerus (Fig. B3.36). The head of the humerus is driven infero-anteriorly, and the fibrous layer of the joint capsule and glenoid labrum may be stripped from the anterior aspect of the glenoid cavity in the process. A hard blow to the humerus when the glenohumeral joint is fully abducted tilts the head of the humerus inferiorly onto the inferior weak part of the joint capsule. This may tear the capsule and dislocate the shoulder so that the humeral head comes to lie inferior to the glenoid cavity and anterior to the infraglenoid tubercle. The strong flexor and adductor muscles of the glenohumeral joint usually subsequently pull the humeral head anterosuperiorly into a subcoracoid position. Unable to use the arm, the person commonly supports it with the other hand.

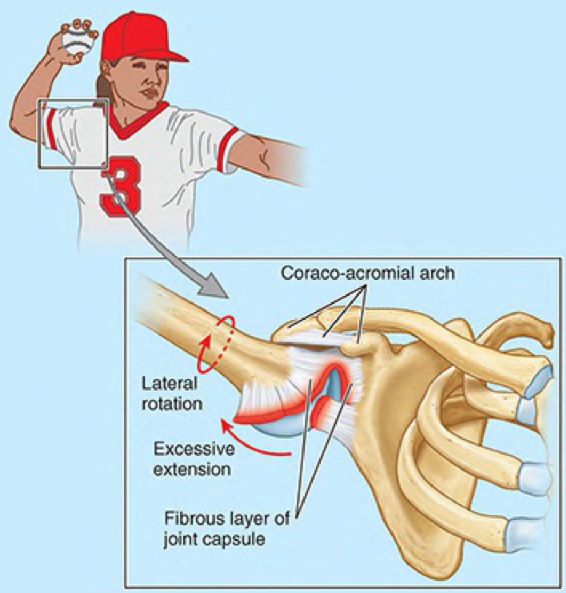


FIGURE B3.36. Axillary nerve injury.

Inferior dislocation of the glenohumeral joint often occurs after an avulsion fracture of the greater tubercle of the humerus, owing to the absence of the upward and medial pull produced by muscles attaching to the tubercle. The axillary nerve may be injured when the glenohumeral joint dislocates because of its close relation to the inferior part of the joint capsule (Fig. B3.35).

Glenoid Labrum Tears

Tearing of the fibrocartilaginous glenoid labrum commonly occurs in athletes who throw a baseball or football and in those who have shoulder instability and subluxation (partial dislocation) of the glenohumeral joint. The tear often results from sudden contraction of the biceps or forceful subluxation of the humeral head over the glenoid labrum (Fig. B3.35; see Fig. 3.97A). Usually a tear occurs in the anterosuperior part of the labrum. The typical symptom is pain while throwing, especially during the

acceleration phase. A sense of popping or snapping may be felt in the glenohumeral joint during abduction and lateral rotation of the arm.

Adhesive Capsulitis of Glenohumeral Joint

Adhesive fibrosis and scarring between the inflamed joint capsule of the glenohumeral joint, rotator cuff, subacromial bursa, and deltoid usually cause adhesive capsulitis (“frozen shoulder”), a condition seen in individuals 40–60 years of age. A person with this condition has difficulty abducting the arm and can obtain an apparent abduction of up to 45° by elevating and rotating the scapula. Because of the lack of movement of the glenohumeral joint, strain is placed on the AC joint, which may be painful during other movements (e.g., elevation, or shrugging, of the shoulder). Injuries that may initiate acute capsulitis are glenohumeral dislocations, calcific supraspinatus tendinitis, partial tearing of the rotator cuff, and bicipital tendinitis.

Bursitis of Elbow

The subcutaneous olecranon bursa (see Figs. 3.99C and 3.103) is exposed to injury during falls on the elbow and infection from abrasions of skin covering the olecranon. Repeated excessive pressure and friction, as occurs in wrestling, for example, may cause this bursa to become inflamed, producing a friction subcutaneous olecranon bursitis (e.g., “student’s elbow”) (Fig. B3.37). This type of bursitis is also known as “dart thrower’s elbow” and “miner’s elbow.” Occasionally, the bursa becomes infected and the area over the bursa becomes inflamed.

FIGURE B3.37. Subcutaneous olecranon bursitis.

Subtendinous olecranon bursitis is much less common. It results from excessive friction between the triceps tendon and olecranon, for example, resulting from repeated flexion–extension of the forearm, as occurs during certain assembly-line jobs. The pain is most severe during flexion of the forearm because of pressure exerted on the inflamed subtendinous olecranon bursa by the triceps tendon (see Fig. 3.103).

Bicipitoradial bursitis (biceps bursitis) results in pain when the forearm is pronated because this action compresses the bicipitoradial bursa against the anterior half of the tuberosity of the radius (see Fig. 3.105C).

Avulsion of Medial Epicondyle

Avulsion (forced separation) of the medial epicondyle in children can result from a fall that causes severe abduction of the extended elbow, an abnormal movement of this articulation. The resulting traction on the ulnar collateral ligament pulls the medial epicondyle distally (Fig. B3.38). The anatomical basis of the avulsion is that the epiphysis for the medial epicondyle may not fuse with the distal end of the humerus until up to age 20. Usually, fusion is complete radiographically at age 14 in females and age 16 in males.

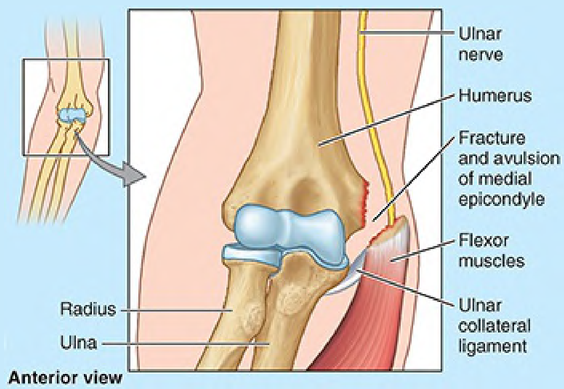


FIGURE B3.38. Fracture and avulsion of medial epicondyle.

Traction injury of the ulnar nerve is a frequent complication of the abduction type of avulsion of the medial epicondyle of the humerus. The anatomical basis for stretching of the ulnar nerve is that it passes posterior to the medial epicondyle before entering the forearm (see Fig. 3.49A).

Ulnar Collateral Ligament Reconstruction

Rupture, tearing, and stretching of the ulnar collateral ligament (UCL; see Fig. 3.109B) are increasingly common injuries related to athletic throwing—primarily baseball pitching (Fig. B3.39A), but this injury may also result from football passing, javelin throwing, and playing water polo. Reconstruction of the UCL, known as a “Tommy John procedure” (after the first pitcher to undergo the surgery), involves an autologous transplant of a long tendon from the contralateral forearm or leg (e.g., the palmaris longus or plantaris tendon; Fig. B3.39B). A 10- to 15-cm length of tendon is passed through holes drilled through the medial epicondyle of the humerus and the lateral aspect of the coronoid process of the ulna (Fig. B3.39C–E).

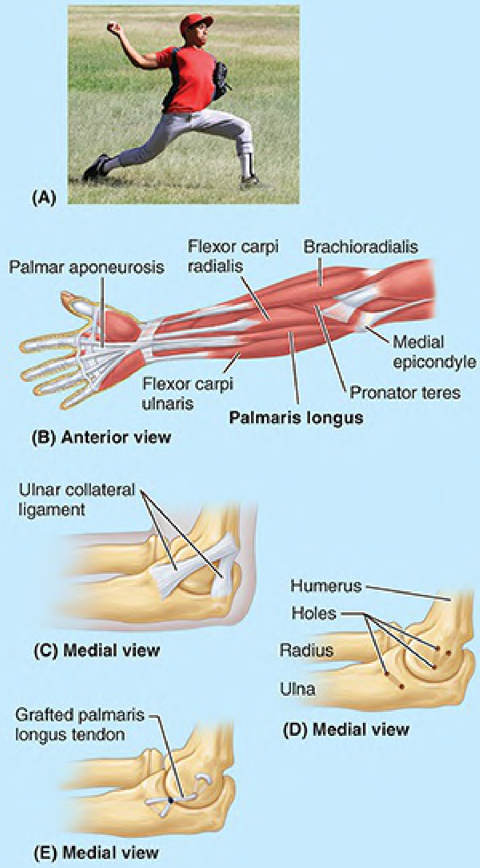


FIGURE B3.39. **"Tommy John procedure" to repair torn ulnar collateral ligament.**

Dislocation of Elbow Joint

Posterior dislocation of the elbow joint may occur when children fall on their hands with their elbows flexed. Dislocations of the elbow may also result from hyperextension or a blow that drives the ulna posterior or posterolateral. The distal end of the humerus is driven through the weak anterior part of the fibrous layer of the joint capsule as the radius and ulna dislocate posteriorly (Fig. B3.40). The ulnar collateral ligament is often torn, and an associated fracture of the head of the radius, coronoid process, or olecranon process of the ulna may occur. Injury to the ulnar nerve may occur, resulting in numbness of the little finger and weakness of flexion and adduction of the wrist.

FIGURE B3.40. Dislocation of elbow. Red arrow, direction of dislocation.

Subluxation and Dislocation of Radial Head

Preschool children, particularly girls, are vulnerable to transient subluxation (incomplete dislocation) of the head of the radius (also called "nursemaid's elbow" or "pulled elbow"). The history of these dislocations is typical. The child is suddenly lifted (jerked) by the upper limb while the forearm is pronated (e.g., lifting a child) (Fig. B3.41A). The child may cry out, refuse to use the limb, and protect their limb by holding it with the elbow flexed and the forearm pronated.

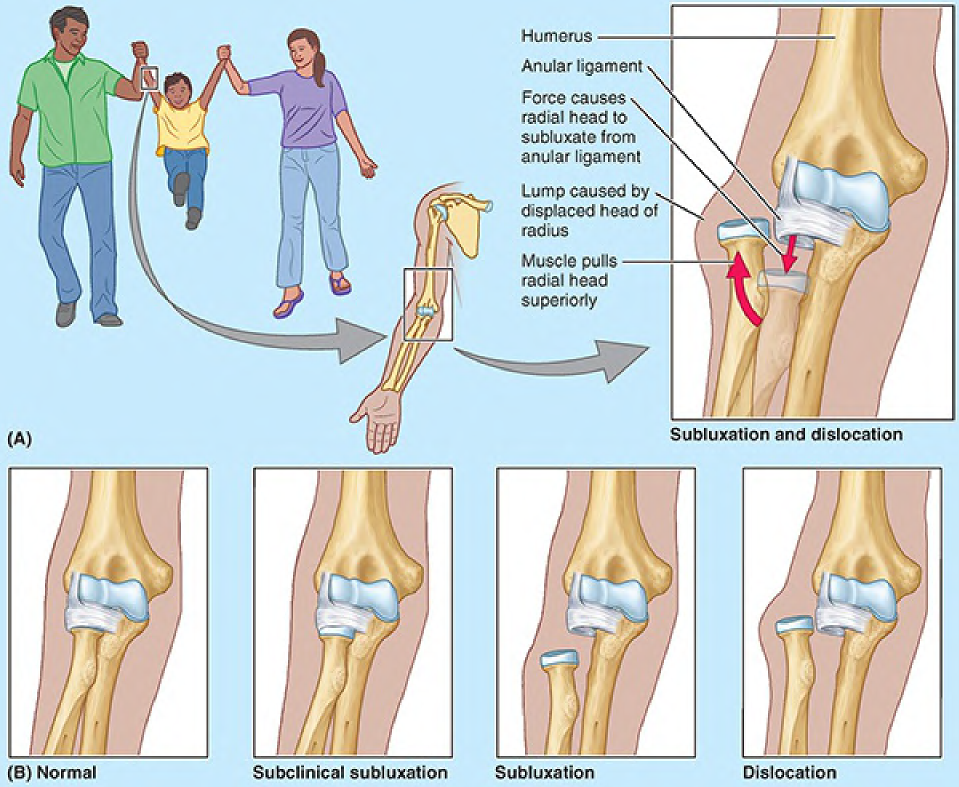


FIGURE B3.41. Dislocation (subluxation) of proximal radio-ulnar joint.

The sudden pulling of the upper limb tears the distal attachment of the anular ligament, where it is loosely attached to the neck of the radius. The radial head then moves distally, partially out of the "socket" formed by the anular ligament (Fig. B3.41B). The proximal part of the torn ligament may become trapped between the head of the radius and the capitulum of the humerus.

The source of pain is the pinched anular ligament. Treatment of the subluxation consists of supination of the child's forearm while the elbow is flexed. The tear in the anular ligament heals when the limb is placed in a sling for 2 weeks.

Wrist Fractures and Dislocations

Fracture of the distal end of the radius (Colles fracture), the most common fracture in people >50 years of age, is discussed in the Clinical Box "Fractures of Radius and Ulna" in this chapter. Fracture of the scaphoid, relatively common in young adults, is discussed in the Clinical Box "Fracture of Scaphoid" in this chapter.

Anterior dislocation of the lunate is an uncommon but serious injury that usually results from a fall on the dorsiflexed wrist (Fig. B3.42A). The lunate is pushed out of its place in the floor of the carpal tunnel toward the palmar surface of the wrist. The displaced lunate may compress the median nerve and lead to carpal tunnel syndrome (see the Clinical Box "Carpal Tunnel Syndrome" earlier in this chapter). Because of its poor blood supply,

avascular necrosis of the lunate may occur. In some cases, excision of the lunate may be required. In degenerative joint disease of the wrist, surgical fusion of carpals (arthrodesis) may be necessary to relieve the severe pain.

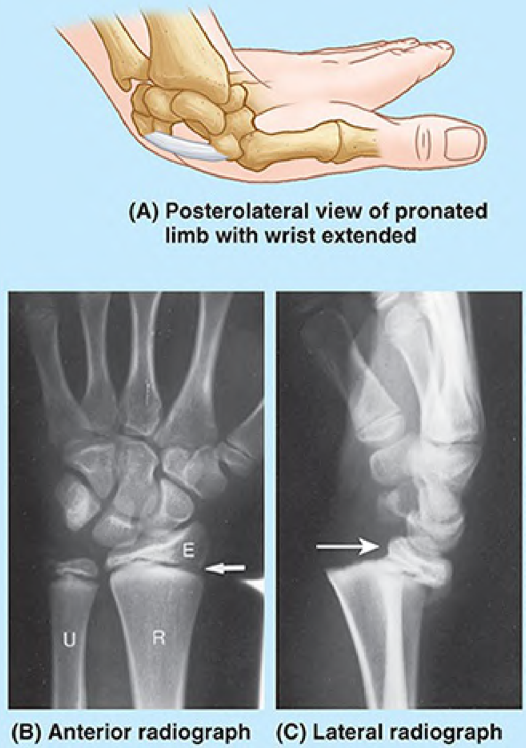


FIGURE B3.42. **Wrist fractures and dislocations.** U, ulna; R, radius; E, radial epiphysis.

Fracture–separation of the distal radial epiphysis is common in children because of frequent falls in which forces are transmitted from the hand to the radius (Fig. B3.42B, C). In a lateral radiograph of a child's wrist, dorsal displacement of the distal radial epiphysis is obvious (Fig. B3.42C). When the epiphysis is placed in its normal position during reduction, the prognosis for normal bone growth is good.

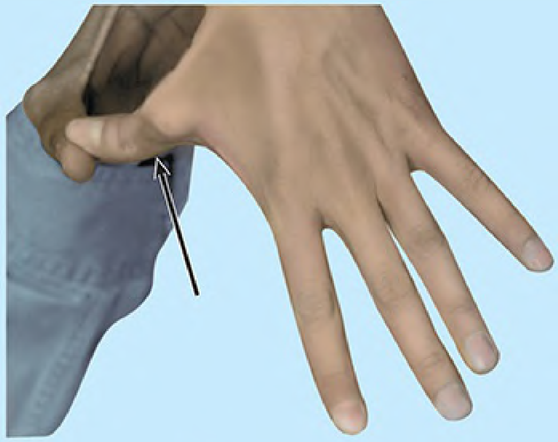
Bull Rider's Thumb

Bull rider's thumb refers to a sprain of the radial collateral ligament and an avulsion fracture of the lateral part of the proximal phalanx of the thumb. This injury is common in individuals who ride mechanical bulls.

Skier's Thumb

Skier's thumb (historically, gamekeeper's thumb) refers to the rupture or chronic laxity of the collateral ligament of the 1st MP joint (Fig. B3.43). The injury results from hyperabduction of the MP joint of the thumb, which occurs when the thumb is held by the ski pole while the rest of the hand hits the ground or enters the snow. In severe

injuries, the head of the metacarpal has an avulsion fracture.



Skier's thumb (*arrow*)

FIGURE B3.43. **Hyperabduction of MP joint.**

The Bottom Line: Joints of Upper Limb

Joints of pectoral girdle: The joints of the pectoral girdle are accessory to the glenohumeral joint in positioning the upper limb. ■ The SC joint links the appendicular skeleton to the axial skeleton. ■ The SC and AC joints enable the movement at the physiological scapulothoracic joint, where approximately 1° of movement occurs for every 3° of arm movement (scapulohumeral rhythm). In turn, approximately two thirds of the movement at the scapulothoracic joint result from motion at the SC joint, and one third is from motion at the AC joint. ■ The strength and integrity of the joints of the shoulder complex do not depend on congruity of the articular surfaces. ■ The integrity of the SC and AC joints results from intrinsic and extrinsic ligaments and the SC articular disc.

Glenohumeral (shoulder) joint: The glenoid cavity of the scapula forms a shallow socket for the relatively large head of the humerus in this ball-and-socket joint; the fossa is deepened only slightly (yet significantly in terms of stability) by the glenoid labrum. ■ Further, the fibrous capsule is loose to permit the wide range of movement that occurs at this joint. ■ Integrity of the glenohumeral joint is maintained largely by the tonic and active contraction of the muscles acting across it, particularly the SITS (rotator cuff) muscles. ■ Degeneration of the rotator cuff is common in advanced age, resulting in pain, limited range and strength of movement, and inflammation of surrounding bursae that develop open communication with the joint cavity.

Elbow joint: Although the elbow joint appears simple because of its primary function as a hinge joint, the fact that it involves the articulation of a single bone proximally with

two bones distally, one of which rotates, confers surprising complexity on this compound (three-part) joint. ■ The hinge movement, the ability to transmit forces, and the high degree of stability of the joint primarily result from the conformation of the articular surfaces of the humero-ulnar joint (i.e., of the trochlear notch of the ulna to the trochlea of the humerus). ■ The integrity and functions of the humeroradial joint and proximal radio-ulnar joint complex depends primarily on the combined radial collateral and anular ligaments. ■ The radiohumeral joint is the portion of the elbow joint between the capitulum and the head of the radius.

Radio-ulnar joints: The combined synovial proximal and distal radio-ulnar joints plus the interosseous membrane enable pronation and supination of the forearm. ■ The anular ligament of the proximal joint, articular disc of the distal joint, and interosseous membrane not only hold the two bones together while permitting the necessary motion between them but (especially the membrane) also transmit forces received from the hand by the radius to the ulna for subsequent transmission to the humerus and pectoral girdle.

Wrist joint: Motion at the wrist moves the entire hand, making a dynamic contribution to a skill or movement, or allowing it to be stabilized in a particular position to maximize the effectiveness of the hand and fingers in manipulating and holding objects. ■ Complexity as well as flexibility of the wrist results from the number of bones involved. ■ Extension–flexion, abduction–adduction, and circumduction occur. ■ Overall, most wrist movement occurs at the wrist (radiocarpal) joint between the radius and articular disc of the distal radio-ulnar joint and the proximal row of carpal bones (primarily the scaphoid and lunate). ■ However, concomitant movement at the intercarpal (IC) joints (especially the midcarpal IC joint) augments these movements.

Joints of hand: The carpometacarpal (CMC) joints of the four medial fingers, which share a common articular cavity, have limited motion (especially those of the 2nd and 3rd digits), contributing to the stability of the palm as a base from and against which the fingers operate. ■ Motion occurs at the CMC joints for the 3rd and 4th digits, mostly in association with a tight grip or cupping of the palm, as during opposition. ■ However, the great mobility of the CMC joint of the thumb, a saddle joint, provides the digit with the major portion of its range of motion and specifically enables opposition. ■ Therefore, the CMC joint is key to the effectiveness of the human hand. In contrast to the CMC joints, the metacarpophalangeal (MP) joints of the medial four fingers offer considerable freedom of movement (flexion–extension and abduction–adduction), whereas that of the thumb is limited to flexion–extension, as are all interphalangeal joints.

---

[1] The **scapulothoracic joint** is a physiological “joint,” in which movement occurs between musculoskeletal structures (between the scapula and associated muscles and the thoracic wall), rather than an anatomical joint, in which movement occurs between

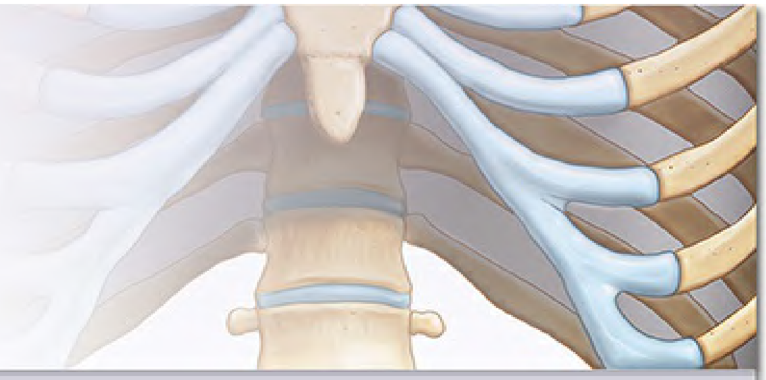
directly articulating skeletal elements. The scapulothoracic joint is where the scapular movements of elevation–depression, protraction–retraction, and rotation occur.

[2]The word “wrist” is often used incorrectly; it should not be used as a synonym for “carpus” because it is correctly applied to the distal end of the forearm, around which a wristwatch or bracelets are worn.

[3]It is awkward that the structure officially identified as the flexor retinaculum does not correspond in position and structure to the extensor retinaculum when there is another structure (the palmar carpal ligament, currently unrecognized by Terminologia Anatomica) that does. The clinical community has proposed and widely adopted the use of the more structurally based term transverse carpal ligament to replace the term flexor retinaculum.

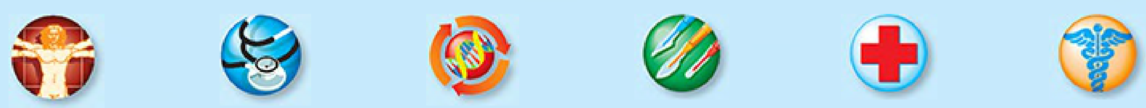
[4]The preferred English-equivalent terms listed by Terminologia Anatomica (TA) are used here. Official alternate TA terms replace of the arm with brachial and of the forearm with antebrachial.

4



Thorax

CLINICAL BOX KEY



Anatomical Variations | Diagnostic Procedures | Life Cycle | Surgical Procedures | Trauma | Pathology

OVERVIEW OF THORAX

The **thorax** is the part of the body between the neck and abdomen. Commonly, the term chest is used as a synonym for thorax; however, the chest is much more extensive than the thoracic wall and cavity contained within it. The **chest** is generally conceived as the superior part of the trunk that is broadest superiorly owing to the presence of the pectoral (shoulder) girdle (clavicles and scapulae), with much of its girth accounted for by the pectoral and scapular musculature and, in adult females, the breasts.

The **thoracic cavity** and its wall have the shape of a truncated cone, being narrowest superiorly, with the circumference increasing inferiorly, and reaching its maximum size at the junction with the abdominal portion of the trunk. The wall of the thoracic cavity is relatively thin, essentially as thick as its skeleton. The **thoracic cage** (rib cage), with the oblique (near horizontal) bars formed by ribs and costal cartilages, is also supported by the vertical sternum and thoracic vertebrae (Fig. 4.1). Furthermore, the floor of the thoracic cavity (thoracic diaphragm) is deeply invaginated inferiorly (i.e., is pushed upward) by viscera of the abdominal cavity. Consequently, nearly the lower half of the thoracic wall surrounds and protects abdominal viscera (e.g., liver) rather than thoracic viscera. Thus, the thorax and its cavity are much smaller than one might expect based on the external appearance of the chest.

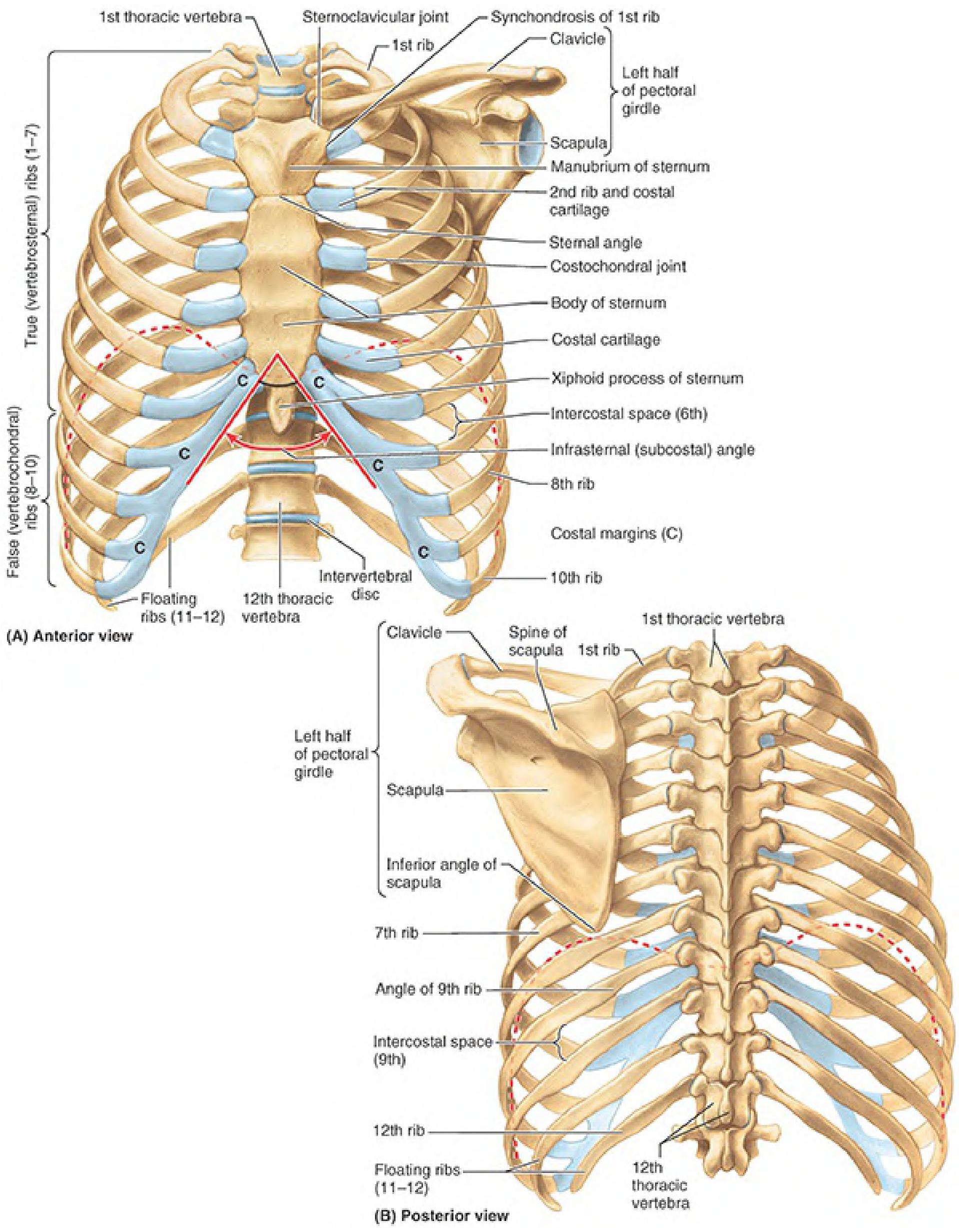


FIGURE 4.1. Thoracic skeleton. A and B. The osteocartilaginous thoracic cage includes the sternum, 12 pairs of ribs and costal cartilages, and 12 thoracic vertebrae and intervertebral discs. The clavicles and scapulae form the pectoral (shoulder) girdle, one side of which is included here to demonstrate the relationship between the thoracic (axial) and upper limb (appendicular) skeletons. The red dotted lines indicate the position of the diaphragm, which separates the thoracic and abdominal cavities.

The thorax includes the primary organs of the respiratory and cardiovascular systems. The thoracic cavity is divided into three major spaces: the central compartment or mediastinum that houses the thoracic viscera except for the lungs and, on each side, the right and left pulmonary cavities housing the lungs.

The majority of the thoracic cavity is occupied by the lungs, which provide for the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide between the air and blood. Most of the remainder of the thoracic cavity is occupied by the heart and structures involved in conducting the air and blood to and

from the lungs. Also, the esophagus, a tubular structure carrying nutrients (food) to the stomach, traverses the thoracic cavity.

In terms of function and development, the breasts are related to the reproductive system; however, the breasts are located on and typically dissected with the thoracic wall and therefore are included in this chapter.

THORACIC WALL

The true thoracic wall includes the thoracic cage and the muscles that extend between the ribs as well as the skin, subcutaneous tissue, muscles, and fascia covering its anterolateral aspect. The same structures covering its posterior aspect are considered to belong to the back. The mammary glands of the breasts lie within the subcutaneous tissue of the thoracic wall. The anterolateral axio-appendicular muscles (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb) that overlie the thoracic cage and form the bed of the breast are encountered in the thoracic wall and may be considered part of it but are distinctly upper limb muscles based on function and innervation. They are mentioned only briefly here.

The dome shape of the thoracic cage provides remarkable rigidity, given the light weight of its components, enabling it to perform the following functions:

- Protect vital thoracic and abdominal organs (most air or fluid filled) from external forces
- Resist the negative (subatmospheric) internal pressures generated by the elastic recoil of the lungs and inspiratory movements
- Provide attachment for and support the weight of the upper limbs
- Provide the anchoring attachment (origin) of many of the muscles that move and maintain the position of the upper limbs relative to the trunk, as well as provide the attachments for muscles of the abdomen, neck, back, and respiration

Although the dome shape of the thoracic cage provides rigidity, its joints and the thinness and flexibility of the ribs allow it to absorb external blows and compressions without fracture and to change its shape for respiration. Because the most important structures within the thorax (heart, great vessels, lungs, and trachea), as well as its floor and walls, are constantly in motion, the thorax is one of the most dynamic regions of the body. With each breath, the muscles of the thoracic wall, working in concert with the diaphragm and muscles of the abdominal wall, vary the volume of the thoracic cavity. This is accomplished first by expanding the capacity of the cavity, thereby causing the lungs to expand and draw air in, and then, due to lung elasticity and muscle relaxation, decreasing the volume of the cavity and causing them to expel air.

The Bottom Line: Overview of Thorax

The thorax, consisting of the thoracic cavity, its contents, and the wall that surrounds it, is the part of the trunk between the neck and abdomen. ■ The shape and size of the thoracic

cavity and thoracic wall are different from that of the chest (upper trunk or torso) because the latter includes some proximal upper limb bones and muscles and, in adult females, the breasts. ■ The thorax includes the primary organs of the respiratory and cardiovascular systems. ■ The thoracic cavity is divided into three compartments: the central mediastinum, occupied by the heart and structures transporting air, blood, and food, and the right and left pulmonary cavities, occupied by the lungs.

Skeleton of Thoracic Wall

The **thoracic skeleton** forms the osteocartilaginous thoracic cage (Fig. 4.1), which protects the thoracic viscera and some abdominal organs. The thoracic skeleton includes 12 pairs of ribs and associated costal cartilages, 12 thoracic vertebrae and the intervertebral (IV) discs interposed between them, and the sternum. The ribs and costal cartilages form the largest part of the thoracic cage; both are identified numerically, from the most superior (1st rib or costal cartilage) to the most inferior (12th).

RIBS, COSTAL CARTILAGES, AND INTERCOSTAL SPACES

Ribs (L. costae) are curved, flat bones that form most of the thoracic cage (Figs. 4.1, 4.2, and 4.3). They are remarkably light in weight yet highly resilient. Each rib has a spongy interior containing bone marrow (hematopoietic tissue), which forms blood cells. There are three types of ribs that can be classified as typical or atypical:

1. **True (vertebrosternal) ribs** (1st–7th ribs): They attach directly to the sternum through their own costal cartilages.
2. **False (vertebrochondral) ribs** (8th, 9th, and usually 10th ribs): Their cartilages are connected to the cartilage of the rib above them; thus, their connection with the sternum is indirect.
3. **Floating (vertebral, free) ribs** (11th, 12th, and sometimes 10th ribs): The rudimentary cartilages of these ribs do not connect even indirectly with the sternum; instead, they end in the posterior abdominal musculature.

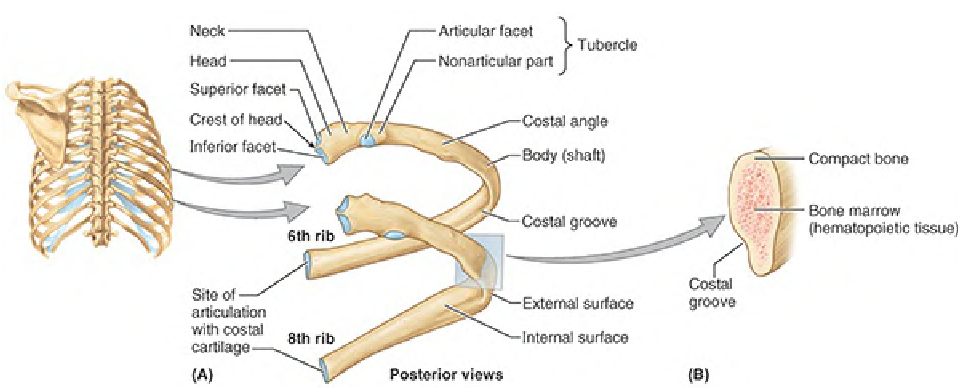


FIGURE 4.2. Typical ribs. A. 3rd–9th ribs. Typical ribs have common characteristics: Each rib has a head, neck,

tubercle, and body (shaft). **B.** Cross-section of the midbody of a typical rib.

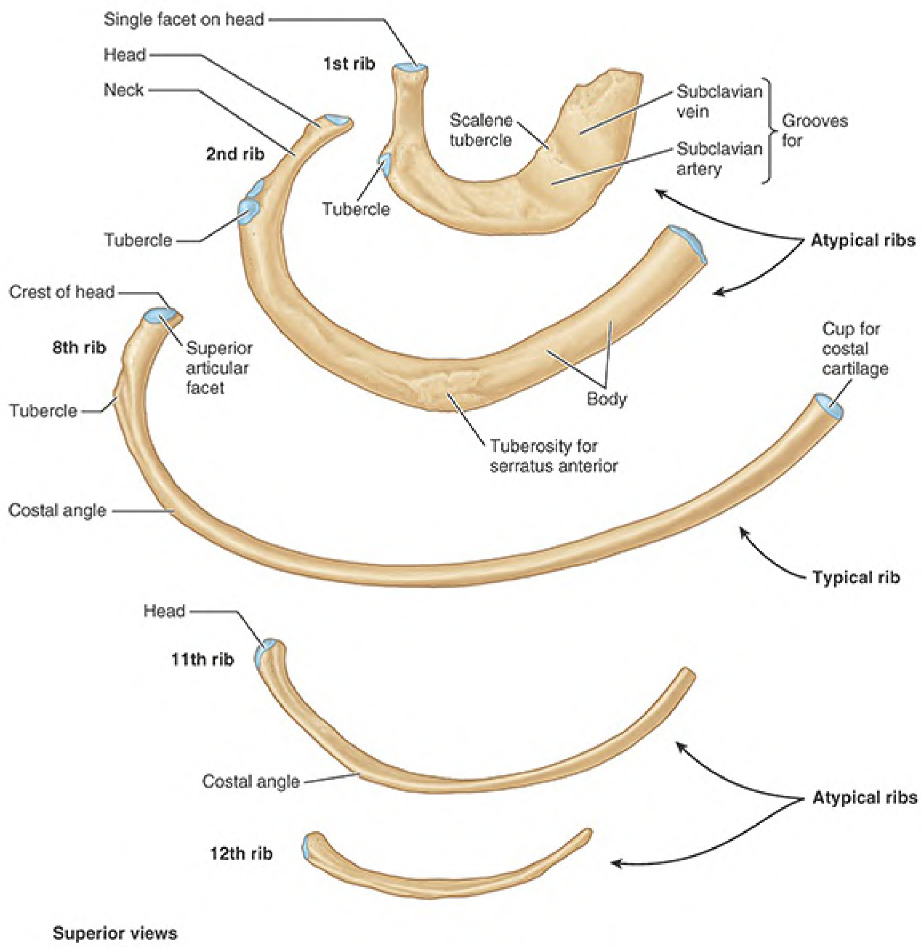


FIGURE 4.3. **Atypical ribs.** The atypical 1st, 2nd, 11th, and 12th ribs differ from typical ribs (e.g., the 8th rib, shown in center).

Typical ribs (3rd–9th) have the following components:

- **Head:** wedge shaped and has two facets, separated by the **crest of the head** (Fig. 4.2); one facet for articulation with the numerically corresponding vertebra and one facet for the vertebra superior to it
- **Neck:** connects the head of the rib with the body at the level of the tubercle
- **Tubercle:** located at the junction of the neck and body; a smooth articular part articulates with the corresponding transverse process of the vertebra, and a rough nonarticular part provides attachment for the costotransverse ligament (see Fig. 4.8B).
- **Body** (shaft): thin, flat, and curved, most markedly at the **costal angle** where the rib turns anterolaterally. The angle also demarcates the lateral limit of attachment of the intermediate layer of intrinsic (erector spinae) muscles to the ribs (see Figs. 2.34 and 2.36). The concave internal surface of the body has a **costal groove** paralleling the inferior border of the rib, which provides some protection for the intercostal nerve and vessels.

Atypical ribs (1st, 2nd, and 10th–12th) are dissimilar (Fig. 4.3):

- The **1st rib** is the broadest (i.e., its body is widest and nearly horizontal), shortest, and most sharply curved of the seven true ribs. It has a single facet on its head for articulation with T1 vertebra only and two transversely directed grooves crossing its superior surface for the subclavian vessels. The grooves are separated by a **scalene tubercle** and ridge, to which the anterior scalene muscle is attached.
- The **2nd rib** has a thinner, less curved body and is substantially longer than the 1st rib. Its head has two facets for articulation with the bodies of the T1 and T2 vertebrae; its main atypical feature is a rough area on its upper surface, the **tuberosity for serratus anterior**, from which part of that muscle originates.
- The 10th–12th ribs, like the 1st rib, have only one facet on their heads and articulate with a single vertebra.
- The 11th and 12th ribs are short and have no neck or tubercle.

Costal cartilages prolong the ribs anteriorly and contribute to the elasticity of the thoracic wall, providing a flexible attachment for their anterior ends (tips). The cartilages increase in length through the first 7 and then gradually decrease. The first 7 costal cartilages attach directly and independently to the sternum; the 8th, 9th, and 10th articulate with the costal cartilages just superior to them, forming a continuous, articulated, cartilaginous **costal margin** (Fig. 4.1A; see Fig. 4.13). The 11th and 12th costal cartilages form caps on the anterior ends of the corresponding ribs and do not reach or attach to any other bone or cartilage. The costal cartilages of ribs 1–10 clearly anchor the anterior end of the rib to the sternum, limiting its overall movement as the posterior end moves around or on the transverse axis of the rib (see Fig. 4.9).

Intercostal spaces separate the ribs and their costal cartilages from one another (Fig. 4.1A). The spaces are named according to the rib forming the superior border of the space—for example, the 4th intercostal space lies between ribs 4 and 5. There are 11 intercostal spaces and 11 intercostal nerves. Intercostal spaces are occupied by intercostal muscles and membranes, and two sets (main and collateral) of intercostal blood vessels and nerves, identified by the same number assigned to the space. The space below the 12th rib does not lie between ribs and thus is referred to as the **subcostal space**, and the anterior ramus (branch) of spinal nerve T12 is the subcostal nerve. The intercostal spaces are widest anterolaterally. The spaces widen further with inspiration and rotation and lateral flexion of the thoracic vertebral column.

THORACIC VERTEBRAE

Most **thoracic vertebrae** are typical in that they are independent and have bodies, vertebral arches, and seven processes for muscular and articular connections (Figs. 4.4 and 4.5). Characteristic features of thoracic vertebrae include the following:

- Bilateral costal facets (demifacets) on the vertebral bodies, usually occurring in inferior and superior pairs, for articulation with the heads of ribs
- Costal facets on the transverse processes for articulation with the tubercles of ribs, except for the inferior two or three thoracic vertebrae

• Long, inferiorly slanting spinous processes

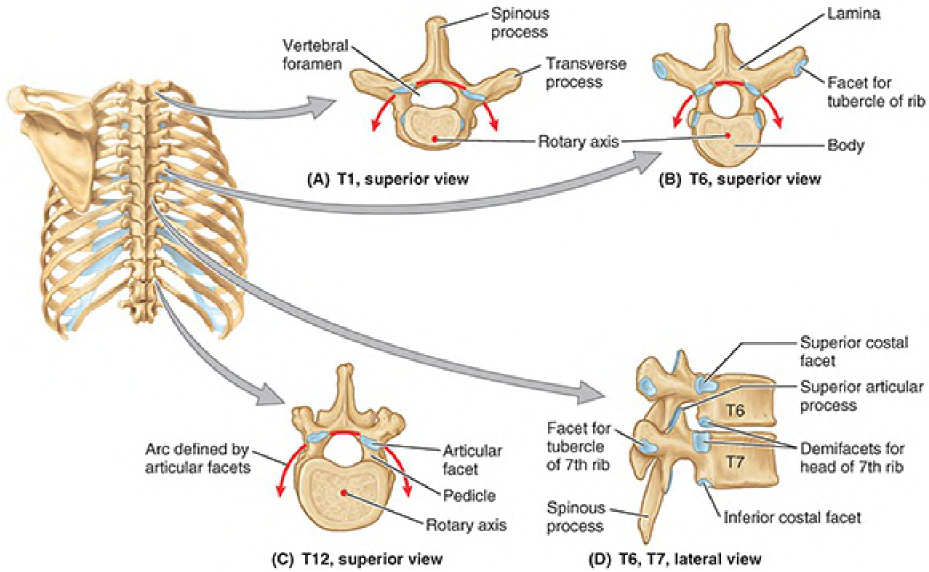


FIGURE 4.4. Thoracic vertebrae. A. T1 vertebra. Vertebral foramen and body similar in size and shape to a cervical vertebra. **B.** T5–T9 vertebrae. These vertebrae have typical characteristics of thoracic vertebrae. **C.** T12 vertebra. This vertebra has bony processes and a body size similar to a lumbar vertebra. The planes of the articular facets of thoracic vertebrae define an arc (red arrows) that centers on an axis traversing the vertebral bodies vertically (**A–C**). **D.** Characteristic features of thoracic vertebrae. Superior and inferior costal facets (demifacets) on the vertebral body and costal facets on the transverse processes. Long sloping spinous processes are characteristic of thoracic vertebrae.

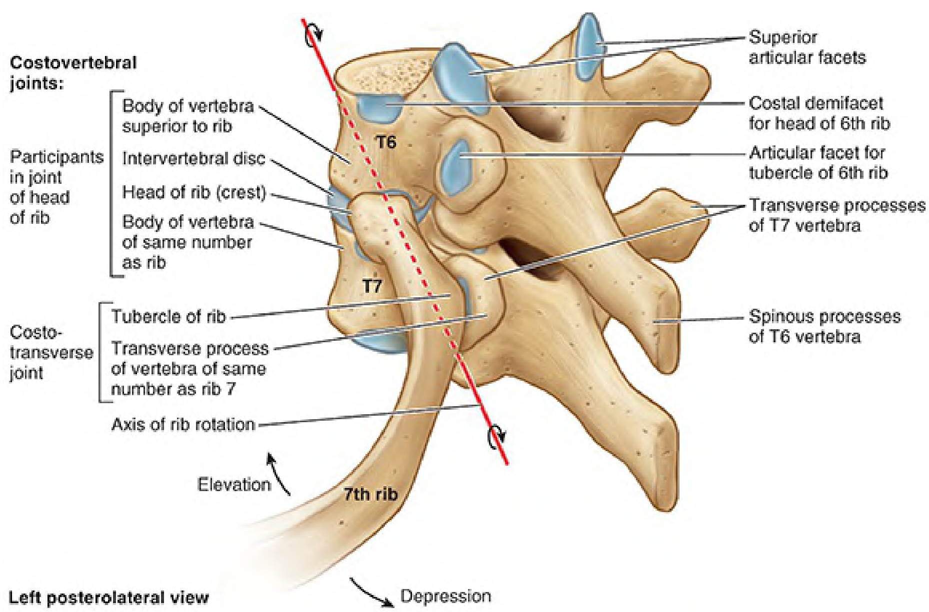


FIGURE 4.5. Costovertebral articulations of a typical rib. The costovertebral joints include the joint of head of rib, in which the head articulates with two adjacent vertebral bodies and the intervertebral disc between them, and the costotransverse joint, in which the tubercle of the rib articulates with the transverse process of a vertebra. The rib moves (elevates and depresses) around an axis that traverses the head and neck of the rib (arrows).

Superior and **inferior costal facets**, most of which are small demifacets, occur as bilaterally paired, planar surfaces on the superior and inferior posterolateral margins of the bodies of typical

thoracic vertebrae (T2–T9). Functionally, the facets are arranged in pairs on adjacent vertebrae, flanking an interposed IV disc: an inferior (demi)facet of the superior vertebra and a superior (demi)facet of the inferior vertebra. Typically, two demifacets paired in this manner and the posterolateral margin of the IV disc between them form a single socket to receive the head of the rib of the same identifying number as the inferior vertebra (e.g., head of rib 6 with the superior costal facet of vertebra T6). Atypical thoracic vertebrae bear whole costal facets in place of demifacets:

- The superior costal facets of vertebra T1 are not demifacets because there are no demifacets on the C7 vertebra above, and rib 1 articulates only with vertebra T1. T1 has a typical inferior costal (demi)facet.
- T10 has only one bilateral pair of (whole) costal facets, located partly on its body and partly on its pedicle.
- T11 and T12 also have only a single pair of (whole) costal facets, located on their pedicles.

The spinous processes projecting from the vertebral arches of typical thoracic vertebrae (e.g., vertebrae T6 or T7) are long and slope inferiorly, usually overlapping the vertebra below (Figs. 4.4D and 4.5). They cover the intervals between the laminae of adjacent vertebrae, thereby preventing sharp objects such as a knife from entering the vertebral canal and injuring the spinal cord. The convex superior articular facets of the superior articular processes face mainly posteriorly and slightly laterally, whereas the concave inferior articular facets of the inferior articular processes face mainly anteriorly and slightly medially. The bilateral joint planes between the respective articular facets of adjacent thoracic vertebrae define an arc, centering on an axis of rotation within the vertebral body (Fig. 4.4A–C). Thus, small rotatory movements are permitted between adjacent vertebrae, limited by the attached rib cage.

STERNUM

The **sternum** (G. sternon, chest) is the flat, elongated bone that forms the middle of the anterior part of the thoracic cage (Fig. 4.6). It directly overlies and affords protection for mediastinal viscera in general and much of the heart in particular. The sternum consists of three parts: manubrium, body, and xiphoid process. In adolescents and young adults, the three parts are connected together by cartilaginous joints (synchondroses) that ossify during middle to late adulthood.

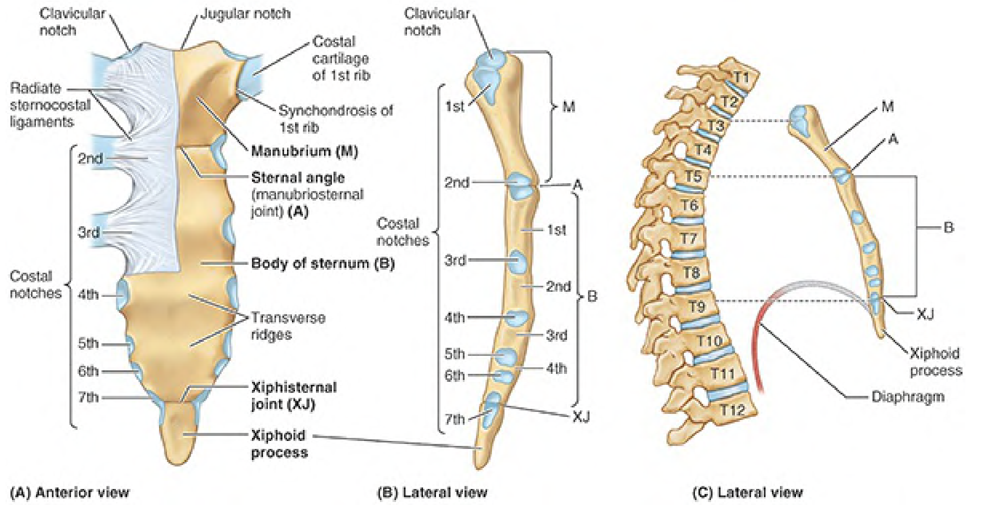


FIGURE 4.6. Sternum. A. Sternal ligaments and periosteum. The thin, broad membranous bands of the radiate sternocostal ligaments (upper right side) pass from the costal cartilages to the anterior and posterior surfaces of the sternum. **B.** Lateral aspect of sternum. Observe the thickness of the superior third of the manubrium between the clavicular notches. **C.** Relationship of sternum to vertebral column.

The **manubrium** (L., handle, as in the handle of a sword, with the sternal body forming the blade) is a roughly trapezoidal bone. The manubrium is the widest and thickest of the three parts of the sternum. The easily palpated concave center of the superior border of the manubrium is the **jugular notch** (**suprasternal notch**). The notch is deepened by the medial (sternal) ends of the clavicles, which are much larger than the relatively small **clavicular notches** in the manubrium that receive them, forming the sternoclavicular (SC) joints (Fig. 4.1A). Inferolateral to the clavicular notch, the costal cartilage of the 1st rib is tightly attached to the lateral border of the manubrium—the **synchondrosis of the first rib** (Figs. 4.1A and 4.6A). The manubrium and body of the sternum lie in slightly different planes superior and inferior to their junction, the **manubriosternal joint** (Fig. 4.6A, B); hence, their junction forms a projecting **sternal angle** (of Louis).

The **body of the sternum** is longer, narrower, and thinner than the manubrium and is located at the level of the T5–T9 vertebrae (Fig. 4.6A–C). Its width varies because of the scalloping of its lateral borders by the **costal notches**. In young people, four sternebrae (primordial segments of the sternum) are obvious. The sternebrae articulate with each other at primary cartilaginous joints (sternal synchondroses). These joints begin to fuse from the inferior end between puberty (sexual maturity) and age 25. The nearly flat anterior surface of the body of the sternum is marked in adults by three variable **transverse ridges** (Fig. 4.6A), which represent the lines of fusion (synostosis) of its four originally separate sternebrae.

The **xiphoid process**, the smallest and most variable part of the sternum, is thin and elongated. Its inferior end lies at the level of T10 vertebra. Although often pointed, the process may be blunt, bifid, curved, or deflected to one side or anteriorly. It is cartilaginous in young people but more or less ossified in adults older than age 40. In elderly people, the xiphoid process may fuse with the sternal body.

The xiphoid process is an important landmark in the median plane because

- Its junction with the sternal body at the **xiphisternal joint** indicates the inferior limit of the central part of the thoracic cavity; this joint is also the site of the **infrasternal angle** (subcostal angle) formed by the right and left costal margins (Fig. 4.1A).
- It is a midline marker for the superior limit of the liver, the central tendon of the diaphragm, and the inferior border of the heart.

Thoracic Apertures

While the thoracic cage provides a complete wall peripherally, it is open superiorly and inferiorly. The much smaller superior opening (aperture) is a passageway that allows communication with the neck and upper limbs. The larger inferior opening provides the ring-like origin of the diaphragm, which completely occludes the opening. Excursions of the diaphragm primarily control the volume/internal pressure of the thoracic cavity, providing the basis for tidal respiration (air exchange).

SUPERIOR THORACIC APERTURE

The **superior thoracic aperture** is bounded (Fig. 4.7) as follows:

- Posteriorly, by vertebra T1, the body of which protrudes anteriorly into the opening
- Laterally, by the 1st pair of ribs and their costal cartilages
- Anteriorly, by the superior border of the manubrium

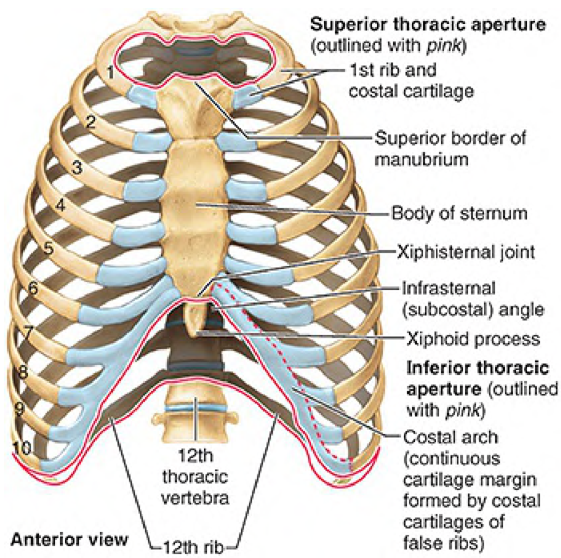


FIGURE 4.7. Thoracic apertures. The superior thoracic aperture is the "doorway" between the thoracic cavity and the neck and upper limb. The inferior thoracic aperture provides attachment for the diaphragm, which protrudes upward so that upper abdominal viscera (e.g., liver) receive protection from the thoracic cage. The continuous cartilaginous bar formed by the articulated cartilages of the 7th–10th (false) ribs forms the costal margin.

Structures that pass between the thoracic cavity and neck through the oblique, kidney-shaped superior thoracic aperture include the trachea, esophagus, nerves, and vessels that supply and drain the head, neck, and upper limbs.

The adult superior thoracic aperture measures approximately 6.5 cm anteroposteriorly and 11 cm transversely. To visualize the size of this opening, note that this is slightly larger than necessary to allow the passage of a 2- × 4-inch piece of lumber. Because of the obliquity of the 1st pair of ribs, the aperture slopes antero-inferiorly.

INFERIOR THORACIC APERTURE

The **inferior thoracic aperture**, the anatomical thoracic outlet, is bounded as follows:

- Posteriorly, by the 12th thoracic vertebra, the body of which protrudes anteriorly into the opening
- Posterolaterally, by the 11th and 12th pairs of ribs
- Anterolaterally, by the joined costal cartilages of ribs 7–10, forming the costal margins
- Anteriorly, by the xiphisternal joint

The inferior thoracic aperture is much more spacious than the superior thoracic aperture and is irregular in outline. It is also oblique because the posterior thoracic wall is much longer than the anterior wall. By closing the inferior thoracic aperture, the diaphragm separates the thoracic and abdominal cavities almost completely. Structures passing from the thorax to the abdomen, or vice versa, pass through openings that traverse the diaphragm (e.g., the esophagus and inferior vena cava) or pass posterior to it (e.g., the aorta).

Just as the size of the thoracic cavity (or its contents) is often overestimated, its inferior extent (corresponding to the boundary between the thoracic and abdominal cavities) is often incorrectly estimated because of the discrepancy between the inferior thoracic aperture and the location of the diaphragm (floor of the thoracic cavity) in living persons. Although the diaphragm takes origin from the structures that make up the inferior thoracic aperture, the domes of the diaphragm rise as high as the level of the 4th intercostal space, and abdominal viscera, including the liver, spleen, and stomach, lie superior to the plane of the inferior thoracic aperture, within the thoracic wall (Fig. 4.1A, B).

Joints of Thoracic Wall

Although movements of the joints of the thoracic wall are frequent—for example, in association with normal respiration—the range of movement at the individual joints is relatively small. Nonetheless, any disturbance that reduces the mobility of these joints interferes with respiration. During deep breathing, the excursions of the thoracic cage (anteriorly, superiorly, or laterally) are considerable. Extending the vertebral column further increases the anteroposterior (AP) diameter of the thorax. The joints of the thoracic wall are illustrated in Figure 4.8. The type, participating articular surfaces, and ligaments of the joints of the thoracic wall are provided in Table 4.1.

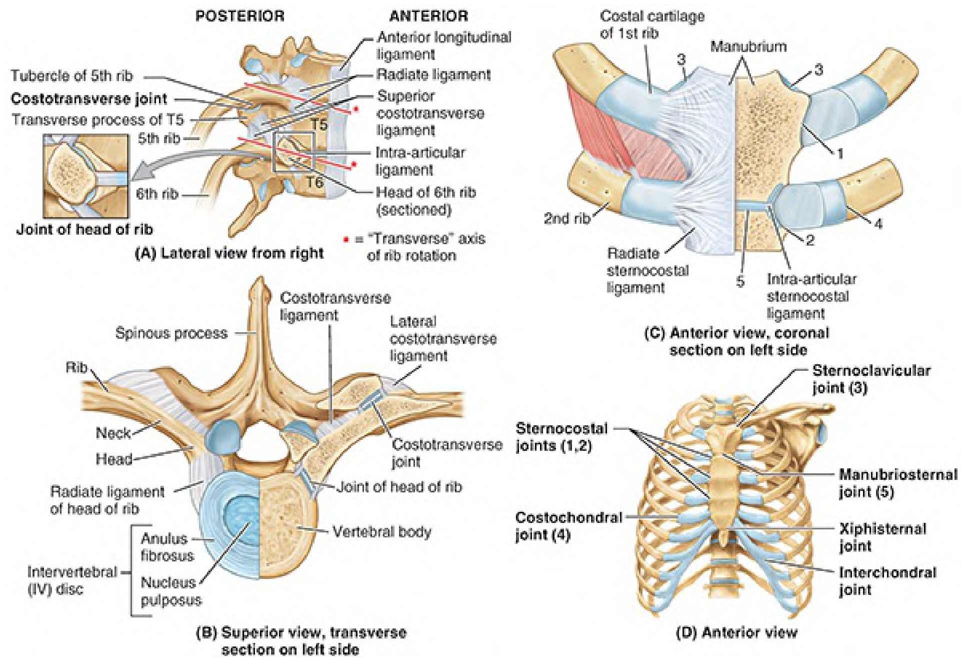


FIGURE 4.8. **Joints of thoracic wall.**

TABLE 4.1. JOINTS OF THORACIC WALL

Joint	Type	Articulation	Ligaments	Comments
Intervertebral (of vertebrae T1–T12)	Symphysis (secondary cartilaginous)	Adjacent vertebral bodies bound together by IV disc	Anterior and posterior longitudinal	Movement mostly limited to small degrees of rotation
Costovertebral Joints of head of rib	Synovial plane joint	Head of each rib with superior demi- or costal facet of vertebral body of same number and inferior demi- or costal facet of vertebral body superior to it and IV disc between them	Radiate and intra-articular ligaments of head of rib	Heads of 1st, 11th, and 12th ribs (sometimes 10th) articulate only with vertebral body of same number.
Costotransverse		Tubercle of rib with transverse process of vertebra of same number	Costotransverse; lateral and superior costotransverse	The 11th and 12th ribs do not articulate with transverse process of vertebrae of same number.
Costochondral	Primary (hyaline) cartilaginous joint	Lateral end of costal cartilage with sternal end of rib	Cartilage and bone bound together by periosteum	No movement normally occurs at this joint; costal cartilage provides flexibility.
Interchondral	Synovial plane joint	Between costal cartilages of 6th and 7th, 7th and 8th, and 8th and 9th ribs	Interchondral ligaments	Articulation between costal cartilages of 9th and 10th ribs is fibrous.
Sternocostal	1st: primary cartilaginous joint (synchondrosis)	Articulation of 1st costal cartilages with manubrium of sternum		

	2nd–7th: synovial plane joint	Articulation of the 2nd–7th pairs of costal cartilages with sternum	Anterior and posterior radiate sternocostal; intra-articular	Articular cavities often absent; fibrocartilage covers articular surfaces.
Sternoclavicular	Saddle type of synovial joint	Sternal end of clavicle with manubrium of sternum and 1st costal cartilage	Anterior and posterior sternoclavicular; costoclavicular	This joint is divided into two compartments by an articular disc.
Manubriosternal	Secondary cartilaginous joint (symphysis)	Articulation between manubrium and body of sternum		These joints often fuse and become synostoses in older individuals.
Xiphisternal	Primary cartilaginous joint (synchondrosis)	Articulation between xiphoid process and body of sternum		

IV, intervertebral.

The intervertebral joints between the bodies of adjacent vertebrae are joined by longitudinal ligaments and intervertebral discs. These joints are discussed with the Back in Chapter 2; the sternoclavicular joints are discussed with the Upper Limb in Chapter 3.

COSTOVERTEBRAL JOINTS

A typical rib articulates posteriorly with the vertebral column at two joints, the joints of heads of ribs and costotransverse joints (Fig. 4.5).

Joints of Heads of Ribs. The head of the rib articulates with the superior costal facet of the corresponding (same-numbered) vertebra, the inferior costal facet of the vertebra superior to it, and the adjacent intervertebral (IV) disc uniting the two vertebrae (Figs. 4.4 and 4.8A). For example, the head of the 6th rib articulates with the superior costal facet of the body of the T6 vertebra, the inferior costal facet of T5, and the IV disc between these vertebrae. The crest of the head of the rib attaches to the IV disc by an **intra-articular ligament of head of rib** within the joint, dividing the enclosed space into two synovial cavities.

The fibrous layer of the joint capsule is strongest anteriorly, where it forms a **radiate ligament of head of rib** that fans out from the anterior margin of the head of the rib to the sides of the bodies of two vertebrae and the IV disc between them (Fig. 4.8A, B). The heads of the ribs connect so closely to the vertebral bodies that only slight gliding movements occur at the (demi)facets (pivoting around the intra-articular ligament of the head of the rib). However, even slight movement at the joints of the heads of ribs may produce a relatively large excursion of the distal (sternal or anterior) end of a rib.

Costotransverse Joints. Abundant ligaments lateral to the posterior parts (vertebral arches) of the vertebrae provide strength to and limit the movements of these joints, which have only thin joint capsules. A **costotransverse ligament** passing from the neck of the rib to the transverse process and a **lateral costotransverse ligament** passing from the tubercle of the rib to the tip of the transverse process strengthen the anterior and posterior aspects of the joint, respectively. A **superior costotransverse ligament** is a broad band that joins the crest of the

neck of the rib to the transverse process superior to it. The aperture between this ligament and the vertebra permits passage of the spinal nerve and the posterior branch of the intercostal artery. The superior costotransverse ligament may be divided into a strong anterior costotransverse ligament and a weak posterior costotransverse ligament.

The strong costotransverse ligaments binding these joints limit their movements to slight gliding. However, the articular surfaces on the tubercles of the superior 6 ribs are convex and fit into concavities on the transverse processes (Fig. 4.9). As a result, rotation occurs around a mostly transverse axis that traverses the intra-articular ligament and the head and neck of the rib (Fig. 4.8A, B). This results in elevation and depression movements of the sternal ends of the ribs and sternum in the sagittal plane (pendulum movement) (Fig. 4.10A, C). Flat articular surfaces of tubercles and transverse processes of the 7th–10th ribs allow gliding (Fig. 4.9), resulting in elevation and depression of the lateralmost portions of these ribs in the transverse plane (bucket-handle movement) (Fig. 4.10B, C).

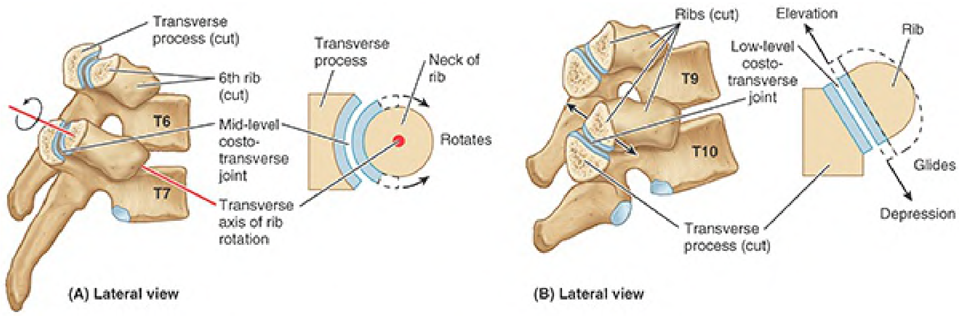


FIGURE 4.9. Costotransverse joints. Conformation of articular surfaces, revealed in sagittal sections, demonstrates how the movement occurs at costotransverse joints. **A.** 1st–7th ribs. Ribs rotate about an axis that runs longitudinally through the neck of the rib. **B.** 8th–10th ribs. Flatter articular surfaces result in gliding movements.

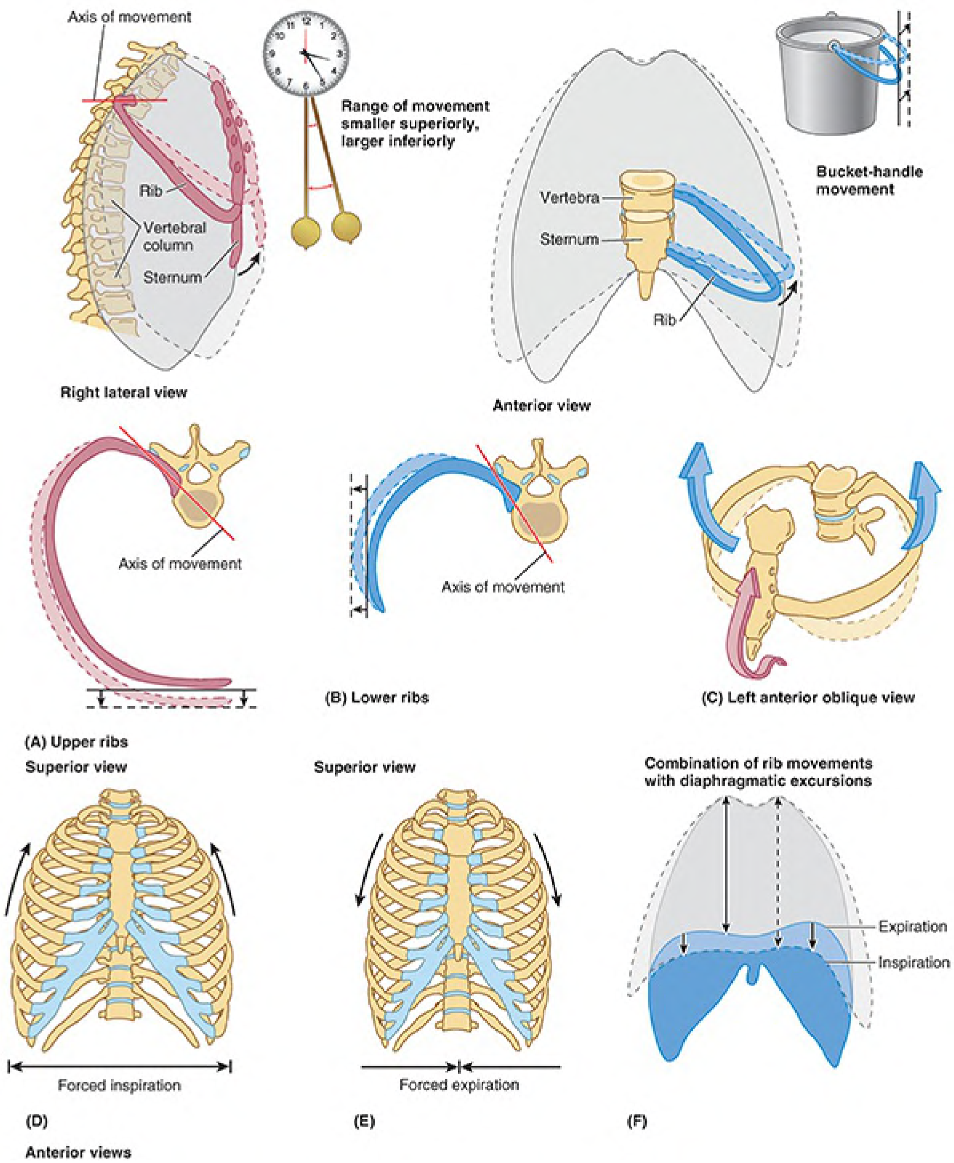


FIGURE 4.10. Movements of thoracic wall. A. Pendulum-like movement of sternum. When the upper ribs are elevated, the AP dimension of the thorax is increased with a greater excursion (increase) occurring at the inferior end of the pendulum. **B.** The middle parts of the lower ribs move laterally when they are elevated, increasing the transverse dimension. **C.** Bucket-handle movement of ribs. Combined movement (arrows) during forced inspiration increases the AP and transverse dimensions of the thoracic cage. **D.** Diaphragm. The thorax widens during forced inspiration as the ribs are elevated (arrows). **E.** The thorax narrows during expiration as the ribs are depressed (arrows). **F.** The primary movement of inspiration (resting or forced) is contraction of the diaphragm, which increases the vertical dimension of the thoracic cavity (arrows). When the diaphragm relaxes, decompression of the abdominal viscera pushes the diaphragm upward, reducing the vertical dimension for expiration.

STERNOCOSTAL JOINTS

The 1st pair of costal cartilages articulates with the manubrium by means of a thin dense layer of tightly adherent fibrocartilage interposed between the cartilage and manubrium, the **synchondrosis of the 1st rib**. The 2nd–7th pairs of costal cartilages articulate with the sternum at synovial joints with fibrocartilaginous articular surfaces on both the chondral and sternal

aspects, allowing movement during respiration. The weak joint capsules of these joints are thickened anteriorly and posteriorly to form **radiate sternocostal ligaments**. These continue as thin, broad membranous bands passing from the costal cartilages to the anterior and posterior surfaces of the sternum, forming a felt-like covering for this bone.

Movements of Thoracic Wall

Movements of the thoracic wall and the diaphragm during inspiration produce increases in the intrathoracic volume and diameters of the thorax (Fig. 4.10D, F). Consequent pressure changes result in air being alternately drawn into the lungs (inspiration) through the nose, mouth, larynx, and trachea and expelled from the lungs (expiration) through the same passages. During passive expiration, the diaphragm, intercostal muscles, and other muscles relax, decreasing intrathoracic volume and increasing the intrathoracic pressure (Fig. 4.10C, E). Concurrently, intra-abdominal pressure decreases and abdominal viscera are decompressed. This allows the stretched elastic tissue of the lungs to recoil, expelling most of the air.

The vertical dimension (height) of the central part of the thoracic cavity increases during inspiration as contraction of the diaphragm causes it to descend, compressing the abdominal viscera (Fig. 4.10F). During expiration, the vertical dimension returns to the neutral position as the elastic recoil of the lungs produces subatmospheric pressure in the pleural cavities, between the lungs and the thoracic wall. As a result of this and the absence of resistance to the previously compressed viscera, the domes of the diaphragm ascend, diminishing the vertical dimension.

The AP dimension of the thorax increases considerably when the intercostal muscles contract. Movement of upper ribs (primarily 2nd–6th) at the costovertebral joints around an axis passing through the necks of the ribs causes the anterior ends of the ribs to rise. Because the ribs slope inferiorly, their elevation also results in anteroposterior movement of the sternum, especially its inferior end—the pendulum movement (Fig. 4.10A, C), with slight movement occurring at the manubriosternal joint in young people, in whom this joint has not yet synostosed (united).

The transverse dimension of the thorax also increases slightly when the intercostal muscles contract, raising the middle (lateralmost parts) of the ribs (especially the lower ones)—the bucket-handle movement (Fig. 4.10B, C). The combination of all these movements moves the thoracic cage anteriorly, superiorly, and laterally (Fig. 4.10C, F).

CLINICAL BOX

THORACIC WALL

Chest Pain

Although chest pain can result from pulmonary disease, it is probably the most important symptom of cardiac disease (Bickley, 2021). However, chest pain may

also occur in intestinal, gallbladder, and musculoskeletal disorders. When evaluating a patient with chest pain, the examination is largely concerned with discriminating between serious conditions and the many minor causes of pain. People who have had a heart attack usually describe the associated pain as a “crushing” substernal pain (deep to the sternum) that does not disappear with rest.

Rib Fractures

The short, broad 1st rib, postero-inferior to the clavicle, is rarely fractured because of its protected position (it cannot be palpated). Consequently, a 1st rib fracture is commonly viewed as a hallmark of severe injury in blunt trauma. When it is broken, however, structures crossing its superior aspect may be injured, including the brachial plexus of nerves and subclavian vessels that serve the upper limb. The middle ribs are most commonly fractured. Rib fractures usually result from blows or crushing injuries. The weakest part of a rib is just anterior to its angle; however, direct violence may fracture a rib anywhere, and its broken end may injure internal organs such as a lung and/or the spleen. Fractures of the lower ribs may tear the diaphragm and result in a diaphragmatic hernia (see Chapter 5, Abdomen). Rib fractures are painful because the broken parts move during respiration, coughing, laughing, and sneezing. Rib fractures have been surgically plated or repaired for this reason, but the practice remains controversial.

Flail Chest

Multiple rib fractures may allow a sizable segment of the anterior and/or lateral thoracic wall to move freely. The loose segment of the wall moves paradoxically (inward on inspiration and outward on expiration). Flail chest is an extremely painful injury and impairs ventilation, thereby affecting oxygenation of the blood. During treatment, the loose segment may be internally fixed with plates or wires to prevent movement.

Thoracotomy, Intercostal Space Incisions, and Rib Excision

The surgical creation of an opening through the thoracic wall to enter a pleural cavity is a thoracotomy (Fig. B4.1). An anterior thoracotomy may involve making H-shaped cuts through the perichondrium of one or more costal cartilages and then shelling out segments of costal cartilage to gain entrance to the thoracic cavity (see Fig. 4.13, right side).

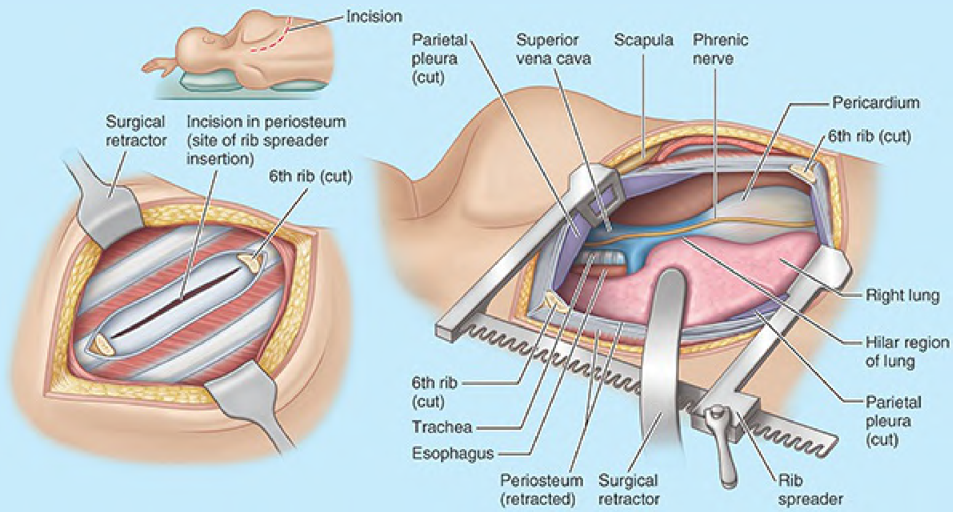


FIGURE B4.1. Thoracotomy.

The posterolateral aspects of the 5th–7th intercostal spaces are important sites for posterior thoracotomy incisions. In general, a lateral approach is most satisfactory for entry through the thoracic cage (Fig. B4.1). With the patient lying on the contralateral side, the upper limb is fully abducted, placing the forearm beside the patient's head. This elevates and laterally rotates the inferior angle of scapula, allowing access as high as the 4th intercostal space.

Most commonly, rib retraction allows procedures to be performed through a single intercostal space following rib retraction, with care to avoid the superior neurovascular bundle. If wider exposure is required, surgeons use an H-shaped incision to incise the superficial aspect of the periosteum that ensheathes the rib, strip the periosteum from the rib, and then excise a wide segment of the rib to gain better access, as might be required to enter the thoracic cavity and remove a lung (pneumonectomy), for example. In the rib's absence, entry into the thoracic cavity can be made through the deep aspect of the periosteal sheath, sparing the adjacent intercostal muscles. After the operation, the missing pieces of ribs regenerate from the intact periosteum, although imperfectly.

In many cases, intrathoracic surgery can be performed using a minimally invasive endoscopic approach (see the Clinical Box "Thoracoscopy" in this chapter).

Supernumerary Ribs

Persons usually have 12 ribs on each side, but the number is increased by the presence of cervical and/or lumbar ribs or decreased by failure of the 12th pair to form. Cervical ribs are relatively common (0.5–2%) and may interfere with neurovascular structures exiting the superior thoracic aperture. Resection may be required to relieve pressure on these structures, which can be performed through a transaxillary approach (incision in axillary fossa or armpit). Lumbar ribs are less common. Supernumerary (extra) ribs also have clinical significance in that they may confuse the

identification of vertebral levels in radiographs and other diagnostic images.

Protective Function and Aging of Costal Cartilages

Costal cartilages provide resilience to the thoracic cage, preventing many blows from fracturing the sternum and/or ribs. Because of the remarkable elasticity of the ribs and costal cartilages in children, chest compression may produce injury within the thorax even in the absence of a rib fracture. In elderly people, the costal cartilages lose some of their elasticity and become brittle; they may undergo calcification, making them radiopaque (i.e., appear white in radiographs). Consequently, performing cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR; utilizing sternal compression) on the elderly is more likely to fracture ribs.

Ossified Xiphoid Process

People in their early 40s may suddenly become aware of their partly ossified xiphoid process and consult their physician about the hard lump in the "pit of their stomach" (epigastric fossa). Never having been aware of their xiphoid process before, they fear they have developed a tumor. Care must be taken during high abdominal (laparotomy) incisions to avoid injuring or cutting the xiphoid process by curving the incision to one side or the other as needed. Injured cartilage cells can implant in the incision, causing heterotropic ossification.

Sternal Fractures

Despite the subcutaneous location of the sternum, sternal fractures are not common. Crush injuries can occur after traumatic compression of the thoracic wall, for example, in automobile accidents when the driver's chest is forced into the steering column. The installation and use of air bags in vehicles has reduced the number of sternal fractures. A fracture of the sternal body is usually a comminuted fracture (a break resulting in several pieces). Displacement of the bone fragments is uncommon because the sternum is invested by deep fascia (fibrous continuities of radiate sternocostal ligaments; see Fig. 4.6A) and the sternal attachments of the pectoralis major muscles. The most common site of sternal fracture in elderly people is at the sternal angle, where the manubriosternal joint has fused. The fracture results in dislocation of the manubriosternal joint.

The concern in sternal injuries is not primarily for the fracture itself but for the likelihood of heart injury (myocardial contusion, cardiac rupture, tamponade) and/or lung injury. The mortality (death rate) associated with sternal fractures is 25–45%, largely owing to these underlying injuries. Patients with sternal contusion should be evaluated for underlying visceral injury (Walls et al., 2018).

Median Sternotomy

To gain access to the thoracic cavity for surgical operations in the mediastinum, the sternum is divided (split) in the median plane and retracted, for example, for coronary artery bypass grafting. The flexibility of ribs and costal cartilages enables spreading of the halves of the sternum during procedures requiring median sternotomy. Such “sternal splitting” also gives good exposure for removal of tumors in the superior lobes of the lungs. After surgery, the halves of the sternum are usually joined using wire sutures. Recovery is less painful than when a muscle-splitting thoracotomy incision is used (see previous Clinical Box “Thoracotomy, Intercostal Space Incisions, and Rib Excision”).

Sternal Biopsy

The sternal body is often used for bone marrow needle biopsy because of its breadth and subcutaneous position. The needle first pierces the thin cortical bone and then enters the vascular spongy bone. Sternal biopsy is commonly used to obtain specimens of marrow for transplantation and for detection of metastatic cancer and blood dyscrasias (abnormalities).

Sternal Anomalies

The sternum develops through the fusion of bilateral, vertical condensations of precartilaginous tissue, sternal bands or bars. The halves of the sternum of the fetus may not fuse. Complete sternal cleft is an uncommon anomaly through which the heart may protrude (ectopia cordis). Partial clefts involving the manubrium and superior half of the body are V- or U-shaped and can be repaired during infancy by direct apposition and fixation of the sternal halves. Sometimes a perforation (sternal foramen) remains in the sternal body because of incomplete fusion. It is not clinically significant; however, one should be aware of its possible presence so that it will not be misinterpreted in chest X-ray, for example, as an unhealed bullet wound. A receding (pectus excavatum, or funnel chest) or projecting (pectus carinatum, or pigeon breast) sternum is an anomalous variation that may become evident or more pronounced during and can be corrected while the child’s thorax is still developing.

The xiphoid process is commonly perforated in elderly persons because of age-related changes; this perforation is also not clinically significant. Similarly, an anteriorly protruding xiphoid process in neonates is not unusual; when it occurs, it does not usually require correction.

Thoracic Outlet Syndrome

Anatomists refer to the superior thoracic aperture as the thoracic inlet because noncirculating substances (air and food) may enter the thorax only through this

aperture. When clinicians refer to the superior thoracic aperture as the thoracic outlet, they are emphasizing the arteries and T1 spinal nerves that emerge from the thorax through this aperture to enter the lower neck and upper limbs. Hence, various types of thoracic outlet syndrome (TOS) exist in which emerging structures are affected by obstructions of the superior thoracic aperture (Brannagan & Tanji, 2022). Although TOS implies a thoracic location, the obstruction actually occurs outside the aperture in the root of the neck, and the manifestations of the syndromes involve the upper limb (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb, and Chapter 9, Neck).

Dislocation of Ribs

Rib dislocation ("slipping rib" syndrome) is the displacement of a costal cartilage from the sternum—dislocation of a sternocostal joint or the displacement of the interchondral joints. Rib dislocations are common in body contact sports; complications may result from pressure on or damage to nearby nerves, vessels, and muscles. Displacement of interchondral joints usually occurs unilaterally and involves ribs 8, 9, and 10. Trauma sufficient to displace these joints often injures underlying structures, such as the diaphragm and/or liver, causing severe pain, particularly during deep inspiratory movements. The injury produces a lump-like deformity at the displacement site.

Separation of Ribs

"Rib separation" refers to dislocation of the costochondral junction between the rib and its costal cartilage. In separations of the 3rd–10th ribs, tearing of the perichondrium and periosteum usually occurs. As a result, the rib may move superiorly, overriding the rib above and causing pain.

Paralysis of Diaphragm

Paralysis of half of the diaphragm (one dome or hemidiaphragm) because of injury to its motor supply from the phrenic nerve does not affect the other half since the domes are separately supplied by the right and left phrenic nerves. One can detect paralysis of the diaphragm radiographically by noting its paradoxical movement. Instead of descending as it normally does during inspiration owing to diaphragmatic contraction (Fig. B4.2A), the paralyzed dome ascends as it is pushed superiorly by the abdominal viscera that are being compressed by the active contralateral dome (Fig. B4.2B). Instead of ascending during expiration, the paralyzed dome descends in response to the positive pressure in the lungs.

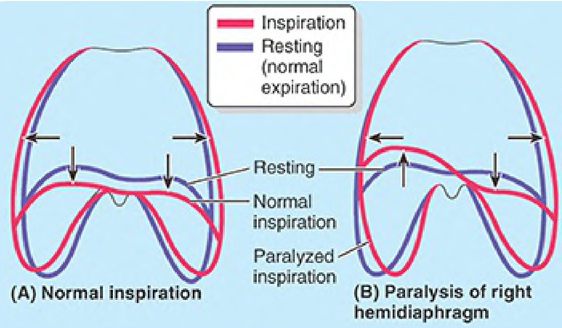


FIGURE B4.2. Movements of diaphragm and chest wall (arrows). A. Normal. **B.** Paradoxical.

The Bottom Line: Skeleton, Apertures, Joints, and Movements of Thoracic Wall

Skeleton of thoracic wall: The thoracic wall (1) protects the contents of the thoracic cavity; (2) provides the mechanics for breathing; and (3) provides for attachment of neck, back, upper limb, and abdominal musculature. ■ The dome shape of the thoracic cage gives it strength, and its osteocartilaginous elements and joints give it flexibility. ■ Posteriorly, the thoracic cage consists of a column of 12 thoracic vertebrae and interposed IV discs. ■ Laterally and anteriorly, the cage consists of 12 ribs that are continued anteriorly by costal cartilages. Anteriorly, the three-part sternum protects the central thoracic viscera.

Apertures of thoracic wall: Although the thoracic cage is complete peripherally, it is open superiorly and inferiorly. ■ The superior thoracic aperture is a small passageway for the transmittal of structures to and from the neck and upper limbs. ■ The large inferior thoracic aperture provides a rim to which the diaphragm is attached. Structures passing between the thorax and abdomen traverse openings in the diaphragm (e.g., esophagus) or pass posterior to it (e.g., aorta).

Joints of thoracic wall: The joints enable and determine movements of the thoracic wall. ■ Posteriorly, ribs articulate with the semiflexible thoracic vertebral column via costovertebral joints. These include joints of heads of ribs and costotransverse joints, both strongly supported by multiple ligaments. ■ Anteriorly, ribs articulate with costal cartilages via costochondral joints. ■ Costal cartilages 1–7 articulate directly and costal cartilages 8–10 indirectly with the sternum via the synchondrosis of the 1st rib, synovial sternocostal joints, and interchondral joints.

Movements of thoracic wall: The movements of most ribs occur around a generally transverse axis that passes through the head, neck, and tubercle of the rib. ■ This axis,

plus the slope and curvature of the ribs, results in pendulum-type movement of the sternum that alters the AP diameter of the thorax and bucket-handle–type movements of lower ribs that alter its transverse diameter. ■ Contraction and relaxation of the superiorly convex diaphragm alter its vertical dimensions. ■ Increasing dimensions produce inhalation, and decreasing dimensions produce exhalation.

Muscles of Thoracic Wall

Some muscles attached to and/or covering the thoracic cage are primarily involved in serving other regions. **Axio-appendicular muscles** extend from the thoracic cage (axial skeleton) to bones of the upper limb (appendicular skeleton). Similarly, some muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall, back, and neck have attachments to the thoracic cage (Fig. 4.11). The axio-appendicular muscles act primarily on the upper limbs (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb). But several of them, including the pectoralis major and pectoralis minor and the inferior part of the serratus anterior, may also function as accessory muscles of respiration, helping elevate the ribs to expand the thoracic cavity when inspiration is deep and forceful (e.g., after a long run). The scalene muscles, which descend from vertebrae of the neck to the 1st and 2nd ribs, act primarily on the vertebral column. However, they also serve as accessory respiratory muscles by fixing these ribs and enabling the muscles connecting the ribs below to be more effective in elevating the lower ribs during forced inspiration.

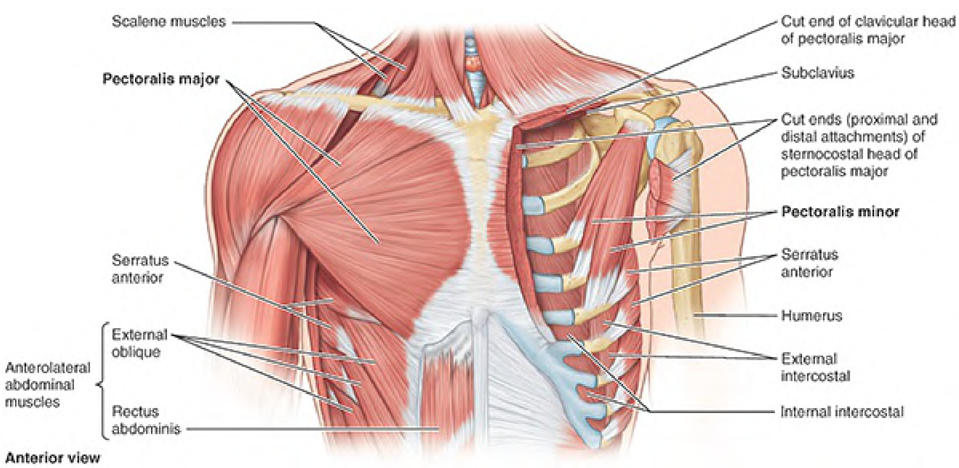


FIGURE 4.11. Axio-appendicular, neck, and anterolateral abdominal muscles overlying thoracic wall. The pectoralis major has been removed on the left side to expose the pectoralis minor, subclavius, and external intercostal muscles. When the upper limb muscles are removed, the superiorly tapering dome shape of the thoracic cage is revealed.

The true **muscles of the thoracic wall** are the serratus posterior, levatores costarum, intercostal, subcostal, and transversus thoracis. They are demonstrated in Figure 4.12A, B, and their attachments, innervations, and functions are listed in Table 4.2.

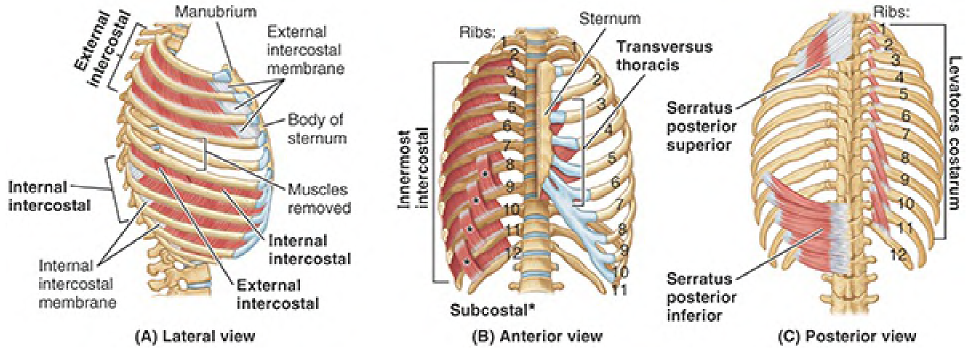


FIGURE 4.12. **Muscles of thoracic wall.**

TABLE 4.2. MUSCLES OF THORACIC WALL

<table>
<tr><th>Muscle</th><th>Superior Attachment</th><th>Interior Attachment</th><th>Innervation</th><th>Main Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>Serratus posterior superior</td><td>Nuchal ligament, spinous processes of C7–T3 vertebrae</td><td>Superior borders of 2nd–4th ribs</td><td>2nd–5th intercostal nerves</td><td>Proprioception (elevate ribs)[a]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Serratus posterior inferior</td><td>Spinous processes of T11–L2 vertebrae</td><td>Inferior borders of 8th–12th ribs near their angles</td><td>Anterior rami to T9–T12 thoracic spinal nerves</td><td>Proprioception (depress ribs)[a]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Levator costarum</td><td>Transverse processes of C7–T11</td><td>Subjacent ribs between tubercle and angle</td><td>Posterior primary rami of C8–T11 nerves</td><td>Elevate ribs</td></tr>
<tr><td>External intercostal</td><td rowspan="3">Inferior border of ribs</td><td rowspan="3">Superior border of ribs below</td><td rowspan="5">Intercostal nerve</td><td>Elevate ribs during forced inspiration[b]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Internal intercostal</td><td rowspan="2">Interosseous part: depresses ribs
Interchondral part: elevates ribs
During active (forced) respiration[b]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Innermost intercostal</td></tr>
<tr><td>Subcostal</td><td>Internal surface of lower ribs near their angles</td><td>Superior borders of 2nd or 3rd ribs below</td><td>Probably act in same manner as internal intercostal muscles</td></tr>
<tr><td>Transversus thoracis</td><td>Posterior surface of lower sternum</td><td>Internal surface of costal cartilages 2–6</td><td>Weakly depress ribs[a] (Proprioception?)</td></tr>
</table>

[a]Action traditionally assigned based on attachments; appear to be largely proprioceptive in function.

[b]All intercostal muscles keep intercostal spaces rigid, thereby preventing them from bulging out during expiration and from being drawn in during inspiration. The role of individual intercostal muscles and accessory muscles of respiration in moving the ribs is difficult to interpret despite many electromyographic studies.

The serratus posterior muscles have traditionally been described as inspiratory muscles, but this function is not supported by electromyography or other evidence. On the basis of their attachments and disposition (Fig. 4.12C), the **serratus posterior superior** was said to elevate the superior four ribs, thus increasing the AP diameter of the thorax and raising the sternum, while

the **serratus posterior inferior** was said to depress the inferior ribs, preventing them from being pulled superiorly by the diaphragm. However, it has been suggested that these muscles, which span ribs related to the superior and inferior thoracic apertures as well as the transitions from the relatively inflexible thoracic vertebral column to the much more flexible cervical and lumbar segments of the column, may not be primarily motor in function (Vilensky et al., 2001). Rather, they may have a proprioceptive function. These muscles, particularly the serratus posterior superior, have been implicated as a source of chronic pain in myofascial pain syndromes.

The **levatores costarum muscles** (L. levator, a lifter) are 12 fan-shaped muscles that elevate the ribs (see Fig. 4.17), but their role, if any, in normal inspiration is uncertain. They may play a role in vertebral movement and/or proprioception.

The intercostal muscles occupy the intercostal spaces (Figs. 4.11, 4.12, 4.13, and 4.14; Table 4.2). The superficial layer is formed by the external intercostals, the inner layer by the internal intercostals. The deepest fibers of the internal intercostals lie deep to the intercostal vessels and nerves and therefore are somewhat artificially designated as a separate muscle, the innermost intercostals.

- The **external intercostal muscles** (11 pairs) occupy the intercostal spaces from the tubercles of the ribs posteriorly to the costochondral junctions anteriorly (Figs. 4.11, 4.12, 4.13, and 4.15). Anteriorly, the muscle fibers are replaced by the **external intercostal membranes** (Fig. 4.15A). These muscles run infero-anteriorly from the rib above to the rib below. Each muscle attaches superiorly to the inferior border of the rib above and inferiorly to the superior border of the rib below (Fig. 4.15C). These muscles are continuous inferiorly with the external oblique muscles in the anterolateral abdominal wall. The external intercostals are most active during inspiration.
- The **internal intercostal muscles** (11 pairs) run deep to and at right angles to the external intercostals (Figs. 4.12B, 4.14, and 4.15C). Their fibers run inferoposteriorly from the floors of the costal grooves to the superior borders of the ribs inferior to them. The internal intercostals attach to the bodies of the ribs and their costal cartilages as far anteriorly as the sternum and as far posteriorly as the angles of the ribs (Fig. 4.16). Between the ribs posteriorly, medial to the angles, the internal intercostals are replaced by the **internal intercostal membranes** (Fig. 4.15A). The inferior internal intercostal muscles are continuous with the internal oblique muscles in the anterolateral abdominal wall. The internal intercostals—weaker than the external intercostal muscles—are most active during expiration, especially their interosseous (vs. interchondral) portions.
- The **innermost intercostal muscles** are similar to the internal intercostals and are essentially their deeper parts. The innermost intercostals are separated from the internal intercostals by intercostal nerves and vessels (Figs. 4.15A, B and 4.17). These muscles pass between the internal surfaces of adjacent ribs and occupy the lateral region of the intercostal spaces. It is likely (but undetermined) that their actions are the same as those of the internal intercostal muscles.

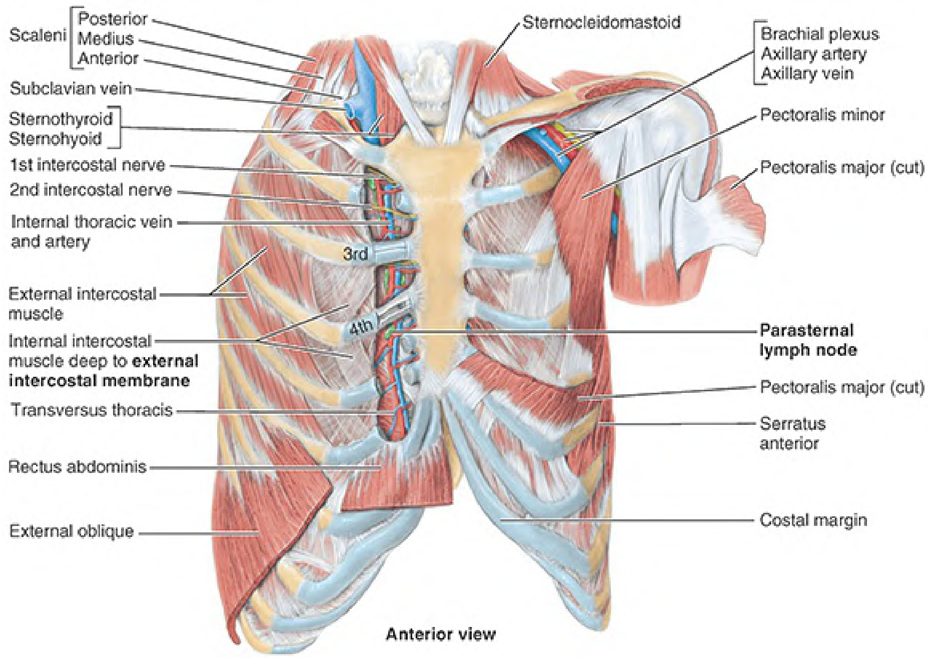


FIGURE 4.13. Dissection of anterior aspect of anterior thoracic wall. The external intercostal muscles are replaced by membranes between costal cartilages. The H-shaped cuts through the perichondrium of the 3rd and 4th costal cartilages are used to shell out pieces of cartilage, as was done with the 4th costal cartilage. It is not uncommon for the 8th rib to attach to the sternum, as in this specimen. The internal thoracic vessels and parasternal lymph nodes (green) lie inside the thoracic cage lateral to the sternum.

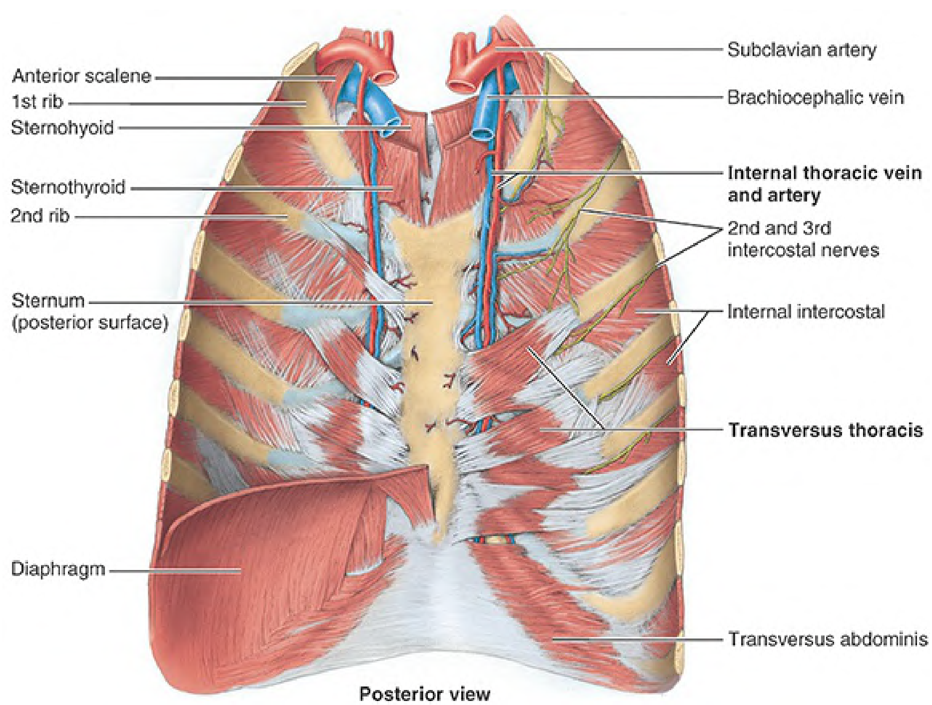


FIGURE 4.14. Posterior aspect of anterior thoracic wall. The internal thoracic arteries arise from the subclavian arteries and have paired accompanying veins (L. venae comitantes) inferiorly. Superior to the 2nd costal cartilage, there is only a single internal thoracic vein on each side, which drains into the brachiocephalic vein. The continuity of the transversus thoracis muscle with the transversus abdominis muscle becomes apparent when the diaphragm is removed, as has been done here on the right side.

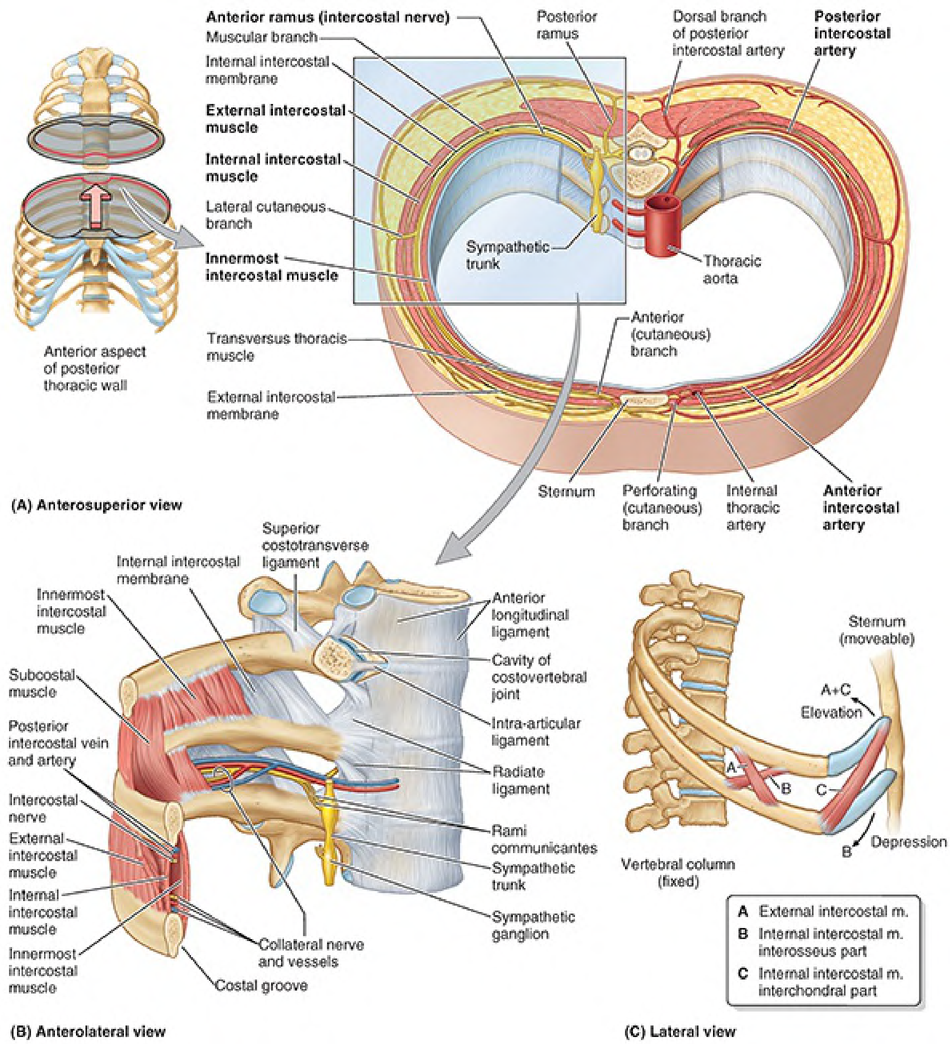


FIGURE 4.15. Contents of an intercostal space. A. Transverse section showing nerves (right side) and arteries (left side) in relation to intercostal muscles. **B.** Posterior part of an intercostal space. The joint capsule (radiate ligament) of one costovertebral joint has been removed. Innermost intercostal muscles bridge one intercostal space; subcostal muscles bridge two. The mnemonic for the order of the neurovascular structures in the intercostal space from superior to inferior is VAN—vein, artery, and nerve. Communicating branches (L. rami communicantes) extend between the intercostal nerves and the sympathetic trunk. **C.** Simple model of action of intercostal muscles. Contraction of the muscle fibers that most closely parallel the slope of the ribs at a given point (fibers A and C) will elevate the ribs and sternum; contraction of muscle fibers that are approximately perpendicular to the slope of the ribs (fiber B) will depress the ribs.

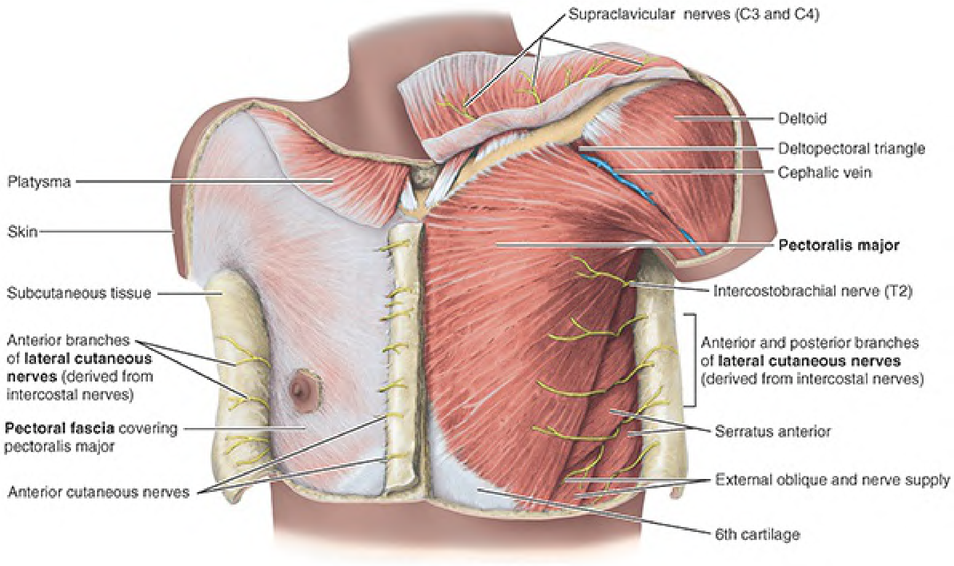


FIGURE 4.16. Superficial dissection of male pectoral region. The platysma is cut short on the right side and is reflected on the left side, together with the underlying supraclavicular nerves. Filmy pectoral fascia covers the right pectoralis major. The fascia has been removed on the left side. The cutaneous branches of the intercostal nerves that supply the breast are shown.

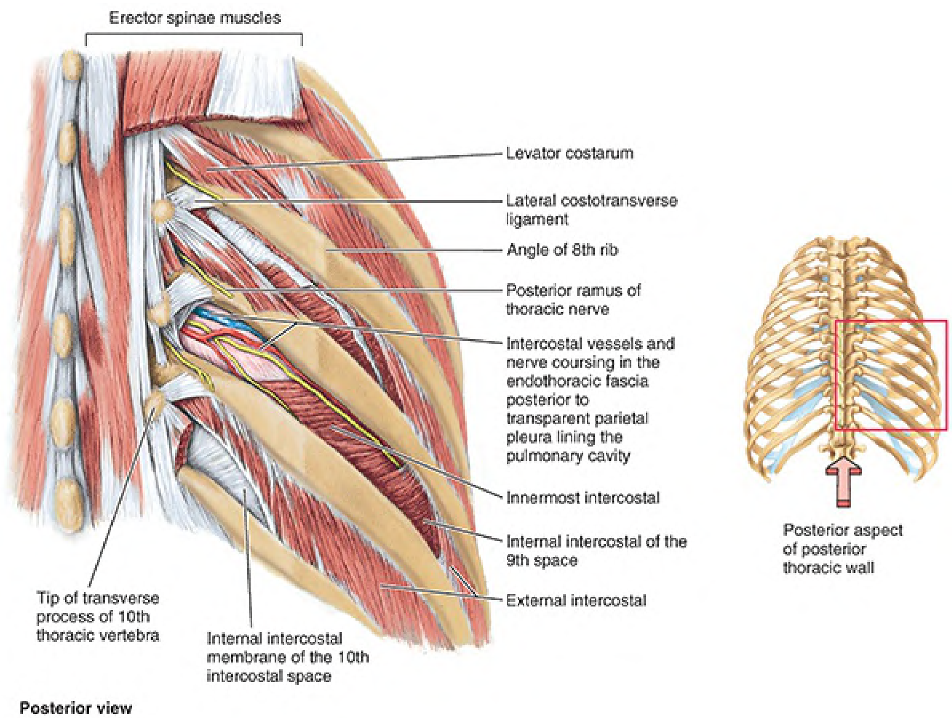


FIGURE 4.17. Dissection of posterior aspect of thoracic wall. Most of the deep muscles of the back have been removed to expose the levatores costarum muscles. In the 8th and 10th intercostal spaces, varying parts of the external intercostal muscle have been removed to expose the underlying internal intercostal membrane, which is continuous with the internal intercostal muscle. In the 9th intercostal space, the levator costarum has been removed to expose the intercostal vessels and nerve.

The **subcostal muscles** are variable in size and shape, usually being well developed only in

the lower thoracic wall. These thin muscular slips extend from the internal surface of the angle of one rib to the internal surface of the second or third rib inferior to it. Crossing one or two intercostal spaces, the subcostals run in the same direction as the internal intercostals and blend with them (Fig. 4.15B).

The **transversus thoracis muscles** consist of four or five slips that radiate superolaterally from the posterior aspect of the inferior sternum (Figs. 4.13, 4.14, and 4.15A). The transversus thoracis muscles are continuous inferiorly with the transversus abdominis muscles in the anterolateral body wall. These muscles appear to have a weak expiratory function and may also provide proprioceptive information.

Although the external and internal intercostals are active during inspiration and expiration, respectively, most activity is isometric (increases tonus without producing movement); the role of these muscles in producing movement of the ribs appears to be related mainly to forced respiration. The diaphragm is the primary muscle of inspiration. Expiration is passive unless one is exhaling against resistance (e.g., inflating a balloon) or trying to expel air more rapidly than usual (e.g., coughing, sneezing, blowing one's nose, or shouting). The elastic recoil of the lungs and decompression of abdominal viscera expel previously inhaled air. The primary role of the intercostal muscles in respiration is to support (increase the tonus or rigidity of) the intercostal space, resisting paradoxical movement especially during inspiration when internal thoracic pressures are lowest (most negative). This is most apparent following a high spinal cord injury, when there is an initial flaccid paralysis of the entire trunk but the diaphragm remains active. In these circumstances, the vital capacity is markedly compromised by the paradoxical incursion of the thoracic wall during inspiration. Several weeks later, the paralysis becomes spastic; the thoracic wall stiffens and vital capacity rises (Standring, 2021).

The mechanical action of the intercostal muscles in rib movement, especially during forced respiration, can be appreciated by means of a simple model (Fig. 4.15C). A pair of curved levers, representing the ribs bordering an intercostal space, are hinged posteriorly to a fixed vertebral column and anteriorly to a moveable sternum. The ribs (and intervening intercostal space) descend as they run anteriorly, reaching their low point approximately at the costochondral junction, and then ascend to the sternum. Muscles with fibers that most closely approximate the slope of the ribs at their attachments (external intercostal and interchondral portion of the internal intercostal muscles) rotate the ribs superiorly at their posterior axes, elevating the ribs and sternum. Muscles with fibers that are approximately perpendicular to the slope of the ribs at their attachment (interosseous part of internal intercostal muscles) rotate the ribs inferiorly at their posterior axes, depressing the ribs and sternum (Slaby et al., 1994).

The (thoracic) diaphragm is a shared wall separating the thorax and abdomen. Although it has functions related to both compartments of the trunk, its most important (vital) function is serving as the primary muscle of inspiration. The detailed description of the diaphragm appears in Chapter 5, Abdomen, because all of its attachments to the lumbar vertebrae are best observed from its inferior (abdominal) aspect.

Fascia of Thoracic Wall

Each part of the deep fascia is named for the muscle it invests or for the structure(s) to which it is attached. Consequently, a large portion of the deep fascia overlying the anterior thoracic wall is called **pectoral fascia** for its association with the pectoralis major muscles (Fig. 4.16). In turn, much of the pectoral fascia forms a major part of the bed of the breast (structures against which the posterior surface of the breast lies). Deep to the pectoralis major and its fascia is another layer of deep fascia suspended from the clavicle and investing the pectoralis minor muscle, the clavipectoral fascia.

The thoracic cage is lined internally with **endothoracic fascia** (see Fig. 4.30C). This thin fibro-areolar layer attaches the adjacent portion of the lining of the lung cavities (costal parietal pleura) to the thoracic wall. It becomes more fibrous over the apices of the lungs (suprapleural membrane).

Nerves of Thoracic Wall

The 12 pairs of thoracic spinal nerves supply the thoracic wall. As soon as they leave the IV foramina in which they are formed, the mixed thoracic spinal nerves divide into anterior and posterior rami (Figs. 4.15A and 4.17). The anterior rami of nerves T1–T11 form the **intercostal nerves** that run along the extent of the intercostal spaces. The anterior ramus of nerve T12, coursing inferior to the 12th rib, is the **subcostal nerve**. The posterior rami of thoracic spinal nerves pass posteriorly, immediately lateral to the articular processes of the vertebrae, to supply the joints, deep back muscles, and skin of the back in the thoracic region.

TYPICAL INTERCOSTAL NERVES

The 3rd–6th intercostal nerves enter the medial-most parts of the posterior intercostal spaces, running initially within the endothoracic fascia between the parietal pleura (serous lining of pulmonary cavity) and the internal intercostal membrane nearly in the middle of the intercostal spaces (Figs. 4.15A, B and 4.17). Near the angles of the ribs, the nerves pass between the internal intercostal and innermost intercostal muscles. At this point, the intercostal nerves pass to and then continue to course in or just inferior to the costal grooves, running inferior to the intercostal arteries (which, in turn, run inferior to the intercostal veins). The neurovascular bundles (especially the vessels) are thus sheltered by the inferior margins of the overlying ribs. Collateral branches of these nerves arise near the angles of the ribs and run along the superior border of the rib below. The nerves continue anteriorly between the internal and innermost intercostal muscles, supplying these and other muscles and giving rise to lateral cutaneous branches in approximately the midaxillary line (MAL). Anteriorly, the nerves appear on the internal surface of the internal intercostal muscle. Near the sternum, the nerves turn anteriorly, passing between the costal cartilages to become anterior cutaneous branches.

Through its posterior ramus and the lateral and anterior cutaneous branches of its anterior ramus, most thoracic spinal nerves (T2–T12) supply a strip-like dermatome of the trunk extending from the posterior median line to the anterior median line (Fig. 4.18). The group of muscles supplied by the posterior ramus and anterior ramus (intercostal nerve) of each pair of

thoracic spinal nerves constitutes a myotome. The myotomes of most thoracic spinal nerves (T2–T11) include the intercostal, subcostal, transversus thoracis, levatores costarum, and serratus posterior muscles associated with the intercostal space that includes the anterior ramus (intercostal nerve) of the specific spinal nerve, plus the overlying portion of the deep muscles of the back.

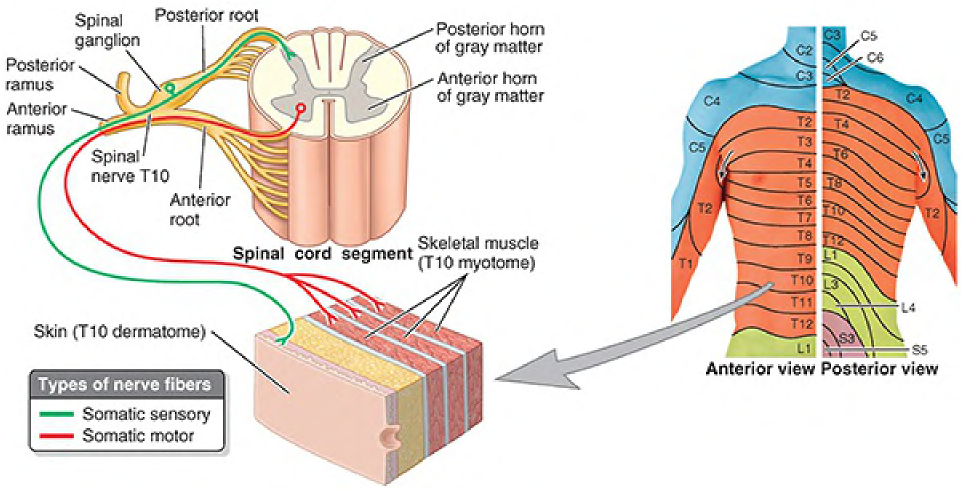


FIGURE 4.18. Segmental innervation (dermatomes) of thoracic wall (after Foerster). Dermatomes C5–T1 are located mostly in the upper limbs and are not represented significantly on the body wall. Since the anterior rami of spinal nerves T2–T12 are not involved in plexus formation, there is no difference between the dermatomes and the zones of peripheral nerve distribution here. Dermatome T4 includes the nipple; dermatome T10 includes the umbilicus.

The branches of a typical intercostal nerve are (Fig. 4.15A, B) as follows:

- **Rami communicantes**, or communicating branches, that connect each intercostal nerve to the ipsilateral sympathetic trunk. Presynaptic fibers leave the initial portions of the anterior ramus of each thoracic (and upper lumbar) spinal nerve by means of a white communicating ramus and pass to the sympathetic trunk. Postsynaptic fibers distributed to the body wall and limbs pass from the ganglia of the sympathetic trunk via gray rami to join the anterior ramus of the nearest spinal nerve, including all intercostal nerves. Sympathetic nerve fibers are distributed through all branches of all spinal nerves (anterior and posterior rami) to reach the blood vessels, sweat glands, and smooth muscle of the body wall and limbs.
- **Collateral branches** that arise near the angles of the ribs and descend to course along the superior margin of the lower rib, helping supply intercostal muscles and parietal pleura
- **Lateral cutaneous branches** that arise near the MAL, pierce the internal and external intercostal muscles, and divide in turn into anterior and posterior branches. These terminal branches supply the skin of the lateral thoracic and abdominal walls.
- **Anterior cutaneous branches** pierce the muscles and membranes of the intercostal space in the parasternal line and divide into medial and lateral branches. These terminal branches supply the skin on the anterior aspect of the thorax and abdomen.
- **Muscular branches** that supply the intercostal, subcostal, transversus thoracis, levatores costarum, and serratus posterior muscles

ATYPICAL INTERCOSTAL NERVES

Although the anterior ramus of most thoracic spinal nerves is simply the intercostal nerve for that level, the anterior ramus of the 1st thoracic (T1) spinal nerve first divides into a large superior and a small inferior part. The superior part joins the brachial plexus, the nerve plexus supplying the upper limb, and the inferior part becomes the 1st intercostal nerve. Other atypical features of specific intercostal nerves include the following:

- The 1st and 2nd intercostal nerves course on the internal surface of the 1st and 2nd ribs, instead of along the inferior margin in costal grooves (Fig. 4.14).
- The 1st intercostal nerve has no anterior cutaneous branch and often no lateral cutaneous branch. When there is a lateral cutaneous branch, it supplies the skin of the axilla and may communicate with either the intercostobrachial nerve or the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm.
- The 2nd (and sometimes 3rd) intercostal nerve gives rise to a large lateral cutaneous branch, the **intercostobrachial nerve**: It emerges from the 2nd intercostal space at the MAL, penetrates the serratus anterior, and enters the axilla and arm. The intercostobrachial nerve usually supplies the floor—skin and subcutaneous tissue—of the axilla and then communicates with the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm to supply the medial and posterior surfaces of the arm. The lateral cutaneous branch of the 3rd intercostal nerve frequently gives rise to a second intercostobrachial nerve.
- The 7th–11th intercostal nerves, after giving rise to lateral cutaneous branches, cross the costal margin posteriorly and continue on to supply abdominal skin and muscles. No longer being between ribs (intercostal), they now become thoraco-abdominal nerves of the anterior abdominal wall (see Chapter 5, Abdomen). Their anterior cutaneous branches pierce the rectus sheath, becoming cutaneous close to the median plane.

Vasculature of Thoracic Wall

In general, the pattern of vascular distribution in the thoracic wall reflects the structure of the thoracic cage; that is, it runs in the intercostal spaces, parallel to the ribs.

ARTERIES OF THORACIC WALL

The arterial supply to the thoracic wall (Fig. 4.19; Table 4.3) derives from the

- thoracic aorta, through the posterior intercostal and subcostal arteries
- subclavian artery, through the internal thoracic and supreme intercostal arteries
- axillary artery, through the superior and lateral thoracic arteries

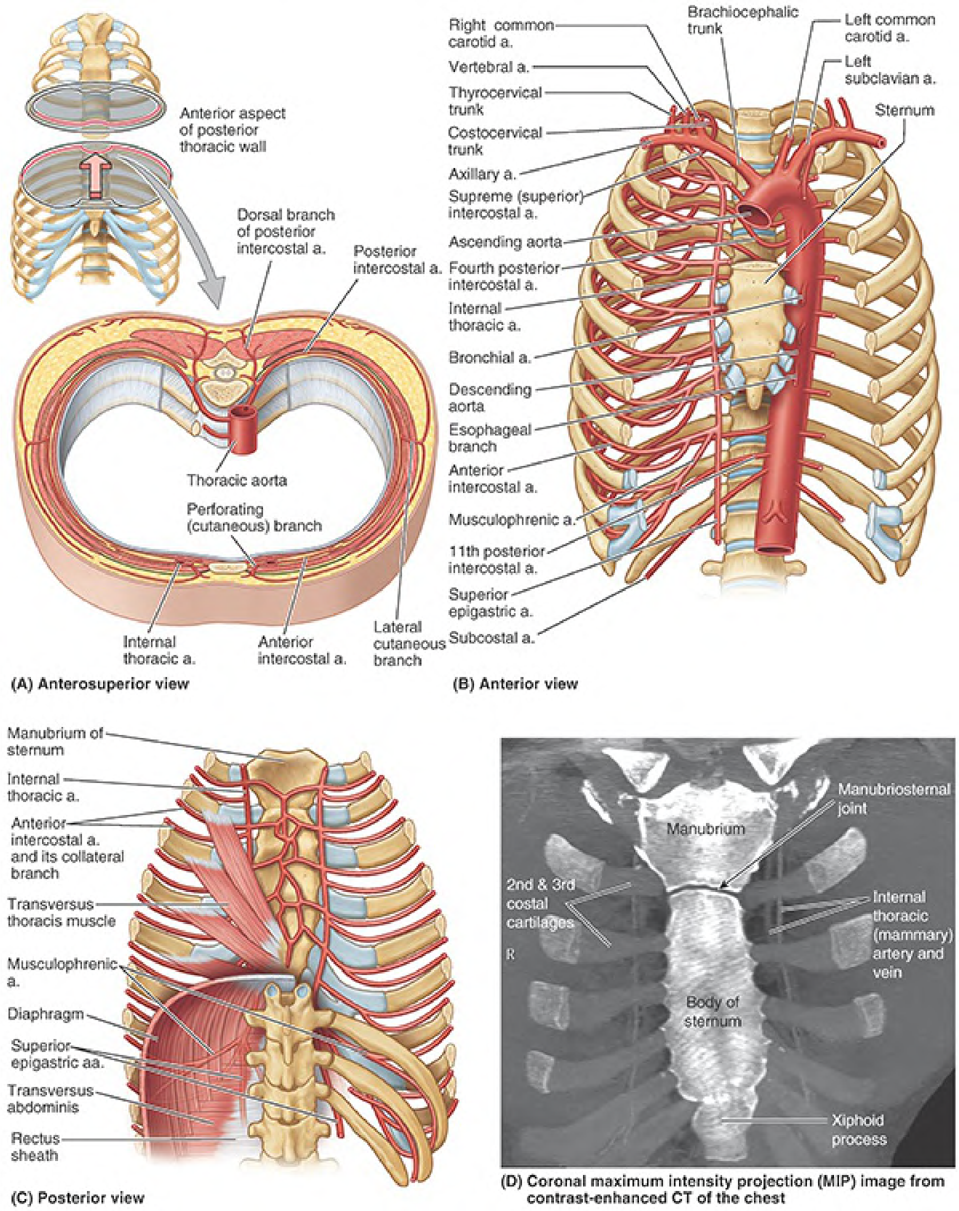


FIGURE 4.19. Arteries of thoracic wall. The arterial supply to the thoracic wall derives from the thoracic aorta through the posterior intercostal and subcostal arteries (**A**, **B**, and **D**), from the axillary artery (**B**), and from the subclavian artery through the internal thoracic (**C**) and supreme intercostal arteries (**B**). **D.** Maximum intensity projection (MIP) image from contrast-enhanced CT of the chest. Compare structures shown here to the anterior thoracic wall structures depicted in **A–C** and Figure 4.44.

TABLE 4.3. ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THORACIC WALL

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution
Posterior intercostals	Superior intercostal artery (intercostal spaces 1 and 2) and thoracic aorta (remaining intercostal spaces)	Pass between internal and innermost intercostal muscles	Intercostal muscles, overlying skin, and parietal pleura
Anterior intercostals	Internal thoracic (intercostal spaces 1–6) and musculophrenic		

	arteries (intercostal spaces 7–9)		
Internal thoracic	Subclavian artery	Passes inferiorly and lateral to sternum between costal cartilages and transversus thoracic muscle to divide into superior epigastric and musculophrenic arteries	By way of anterior intercostal arteries to intercostal spaces 1–6 and musculophrenic artery (lateral terminal branch)
Subcostal	Thoracic aorta	Courses along inferior border of 12th rib	Muscles of anterolateral abdominal wall

The **intercostal arteries** course through the thoracic wall between the ribs. With the exception of the 10th and 11th intercostal spaces, each intercostal space is supplied by three arteries: a large posterior intercostal artery (and its collateral branch) and a small pair of anterior intercostal arteries.

The **posterior intercostal arteries**:

- of the 1st and 2nd intercostal spaces arise from the **supreme (superior) intercostal artery**, a branch of the costocervical trunk of the subclavian artery
- of the 3rd–11th intercostal spaces (and subcostal arteries of the subcostal space) arise posteriorly from the thoracic aorta (Fig. 4.19). Because the aorta is slightly to the left of the vertebral column, the right 3rd–11th intercostal arteries cross the vertebral bodies, running a longer course than those on the left side (Fig. 4.19B).
- all give off a posterior branch that accompanies the posterior ramus of the spinal nerve to supply the spinal cord, vertebral column, back muscles, and skin
- give rise to a small collateral branch that crosses the intercostal space and runs along the superior border of the rib below
- accompany the intercostal nerves through the intercostal spaces. Close to the angle of the rib, the arteries enter the costal grooves, where they lie between the intercostal vein and nerve. At first, the arteries run in the endothoracic fascia between the parietal pleura and the internal intercostal membrane (Fig. 4.17); then they run between the innermost intercostal and internal intercostal muscles.
- have terminal and collateral branches that anastomose anteriorly with anterior intercostal arteries (Fig. 4.19A)

The **internal thoracic arteries** (historically, the internal mammary arteries)

- arise in the root of the neck from the inferior surfaces of the first parts of the subclavian arteries
- descend into the thorax posterior to the clavicle and 1st costal cartilage (Figs. 4.13, 4.14, and 4.19)
- are crossed near their origins by the ipsilateral phrenic nerve
- descend on the internal surface of the thorax slightly lateral to the sternum and posterior to the upper six costal cartilages and intervening internal intercostal muscles. After descending past the 2nd costal cartilage, the internal thoracic arteries run anterior to the transversus thoracis muscle (Figs. 4.14, 4.15A, and 4.19C). Between slips of the transversus thoracis muscle, the

arteries contact parietal pleura posteriorly.

- terminate in the 6th intercostal space by dividing into the superior epigastric and the **musculophrenic arteries**
- directly give rise to the anterior intercostal arteries supplying the superior six intercostal spaces

Ipsilateral pairs of **anterior intercostal arteries**

- supply the anterior parts of the upper nine intercostal spaces
- pass laterally in the intercostal space, one near the inferior margin of the superior rib and the other near the superior margin of the inferior rib
- of the first two intercostal spaces lie initially in the endothoracic fascia that lines the thoracic wall, between the parietal pleura and the internal intercostal muscles
- supplying the 3rd–6th intercostal spaces are separated from the pleura by slips of the transversus thoracis muscle
- of the 7th–9th intercostal spaces derive from the musculophrenic arteries, also branches of the internal thoracic arteries
- supply the intercostal muscles and send branches through them to supply the pectoral muscles, breasts, and skin
- are absent from the inferior two intercostal spaces; these spaces are supplied only by the posterior intercostal arteries and their collateral branches.

VEINS OF THORACIC WALL

The **intercostal veins** accompany the intercostal arteries and nerves and lie most superior in the costal grooves (Figs. 4.15B and 4.20). There are 11 **posterior intercostal veins** and 1 **subcostal vein** on each side. The posterior intercostal veins anastomose with the **anterior intercostal veins** (tributaries of internal thoracic veins). As they approach the vertebral column, the posterior intercostal veins receive a posterior branch, which accompanies the posterior ramus of the spinal nerve of that level, and an intervertebral vein draining the vertebral venous plexuses associated with the vertebral column. Most posterior intercostal veins (4–11) end in the azygos/hemi-azygos venous system, which conveys venous blood to the superior vena cava (SVC). The posterior intercostal veins of the 1st intercostal space usually enter directly into the right and left brachiocephalic veins. The posterior intercostal veins of the 2nd and 3rd (and occasionally 4th) intercostal spaces unite to form a trunk, the superior intercostal vein (Fig. 4.20).

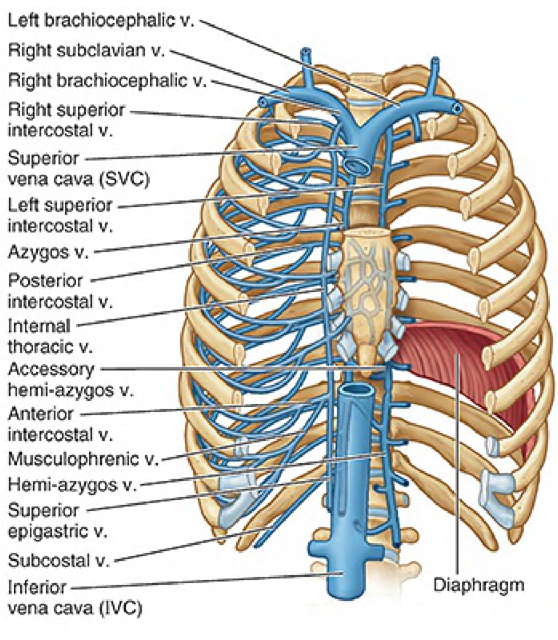


FIGURE 4.20. Veins of thoracic wall. Although depicted here as continuous channels, the anterior and posterior intercostal veins are separate vessels, normally draining in opposite directions, the tributaries of which communicate (anastomose) in approximately the anterior axillary line. Because these veins lack valves, however, flow can be reversed.

The **right superior intercostal vein** is typically the final tributary of the azygos vein before it enters the SVC. **The left superior intercostal vein**, however, usually empties into the left brachiocephalic vein. This requires the vein to pass anteriorly along the left side of the superior mediastinum, specifically across the arch of the aorta or the root of the great vessels arising from it, and between the vagus and phrenic nerves (see Fig. 4.70B). It usually receives the left bronchial veins and may receive the left pericardiacophrenic vein as well. Typically, it communicates inferiorly with the accessory hemi-azygos vein. **The internal thoracic veins** are the companion veins (L. venae comitantes) of the internal thoracic arteries.

Breasts

The breasts are the most prominent superficial structures in the anterior thoracic wall, especially in women. The **breasts** (L. mammae) consist of glandular and supporting fibrous tissue embedded within a fatty matrix, together with blood vessels, lymphatics, and nerves. Both men and women have breasts; normally, they are well developed only in women (Figs. 4.21 and 4.22). The **mammary glands** are in the subcutaneous tissue overlying the pectoralis major and minor muscles. At the greatest prominence of the breast is the nipple, surrounded by a circular pigmented area of skin, the **areola** (L., small area).

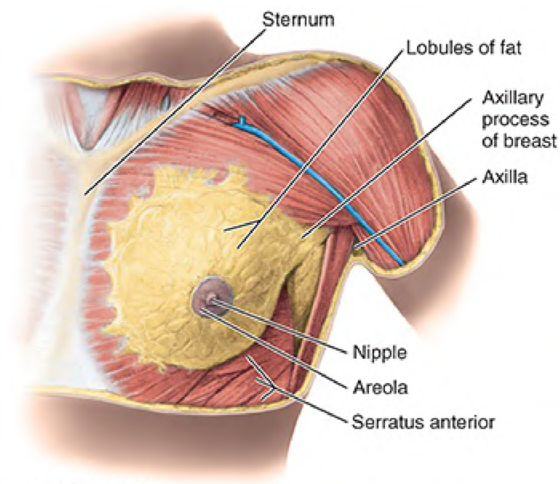


FIGURE 4.21. Bed of breast. Superficial dissection of female pectoral region. The pectoral fascia has been removed, except where it lies deep to the breast. The bed of the breast extends from the 2nd through the 6th ribs. The axillary process of the breast extends toward or into the axillary fossa.

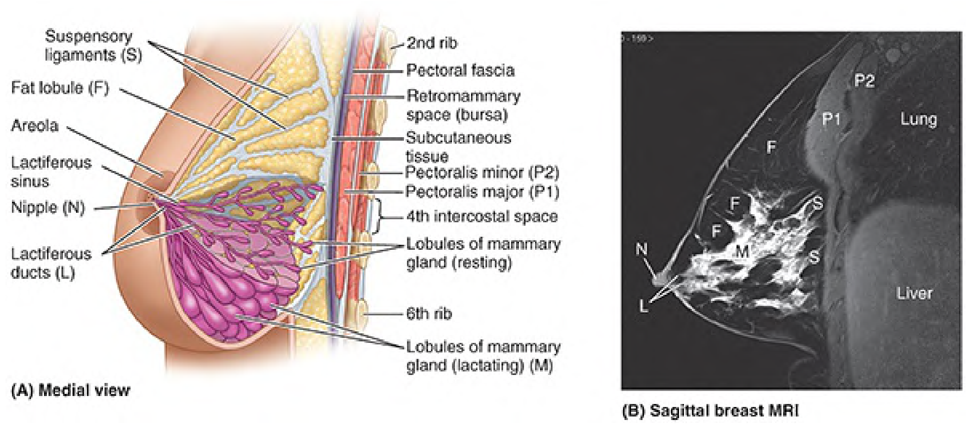


FIGURE 4.22. Female breast. A. Sectional dissection of structures of female breast and anterior thoracic wall. The superior two thirds of the figure demonstrate the suspensory ligaments and alveoli of the breast with resting lobules of mammary gland; the inferior part shows lactating lobules of mammary gland. **B.** Sagittal MRI demonstrating internal structure of breast and posterior relationships.

The mammary glands within the breasts are accessory to reproduction in women. They are rudimentary and functionless in men, consisting of only a few small ducts or epithelial cords. Usually, the fat present in male breasts is not different from that of subcutaneous tissue elsewhere, but the glandular system rarely develops.

CLINICAL BOX

MUSCLES AND NEUROVASCULATURE OF THORACIC WALL

Dyspnea: Difficult Breathing

When people with respiratory problems (e.g., asthma) or with heart failure have difficulty breathing (dyspnea), they use their accessory respiratory muscles to assist the expansion of their thoracic cavity. The recruitment of the neck muscles (sternocleidomastoid, upper trapezius, and scalene muscles) is visible and particularly striking. They may also lean on their knees or on the arms of a chair to fix their pectoral girdle, so these muscles are able to act on their rib attachments and expand the thorax.

Extrapleural Intrathoracic Surgical Access

Fixation makes it difficult to appreciate in the embalmed cadaver, but in surgery, the relatively loose nature of the thin endothoracic fascia provides a natural cleavage plane, allowing the surgeon to separate the costal parietal pleura lining the lung cavity from the thoracic wall. This allows intrathoracic access to extrapleural structures (e.g., lymph nodes) and instrument placement without opening and perhaps contaminating the potential space (pleural cavity) that surrounds the lungs.

Herpes Zoster Infection of Spinal Ganglia

Herpes zoster causes a classic, dermatomally distributed skin lesion—shingles—an agonizingly painful condition (Fig. B4.3). Herpes zoster is primarily a viral disease of spinal ganglia, usually a reactivation of the varicella–zoster virus (VZV) or chickenpox virus. After invading a ganglion, the virus produces a sharp burning pain in the dermatome supplied by the involved nerve (see Fig. 4.18). The affected skin area becomes red, and vesicular eruptions appear. The pain may precede or follow the skin eruptions. Although primarily a sensory neuropathy (pathological change in a nerve), weakness from motor involvement occurs in 0.5–5.0% of people, commonly in elderly cancer patients (Brannagan & Tanji, 2022). Muscular weakness usually occurs in the same myotomal distribution, as do the dermatomal pain and vesicular eruptions. Vaccination confers protection against herpes zoster and is recommended for individuals aged 60 years and older.

FIGURE B4.3. **Herpes zoster.**

Intercostal Nerve Block

Local anesthesia of an intercostal space is produced by injecting an anesthetic agent around the intercostal nerves between the paravertebral line and the area of required anesthesia. This procedure, an intercostal nerve block, is commonly used in patients with rib fractures and sometimes after thoracic surgery. It involves infiltration of the anesthetic around the intercostal nerve trunk and its collateral branches (Fig. B4.4). The term block indicates that the nerve endings in the skin and transmission of impulses through the sensory nerves carrying information about pain are interrupted (blocked) before the impulses reach the spinal cord and brain. Because any particular area of skin usually receives innervation from two adjacent nerves, considerable overlapping of contiguous dermatomes occurs. Therefore, complete loss of sensation usually does not occur unless two or more intercostal nerves are anesthetized.

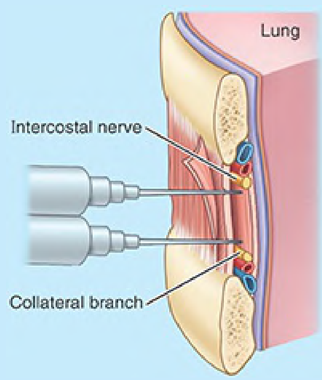


FIGURE B4.4. **Intercostal nerve block.**

The Bottom Line: Muscles and Neurovasculature of Thoracic Wall

Muscles of thoracic wall: The thorax is overlapped by the axio-appendicular muscles of the upper limb as well as some neck, back, and abdominal muscles. ■ Most of these muscles can affect deep respiration when the pectoral girdle is fixed and account for many of the surface features of the thoracic region. The muscles that are truly thoracic, however, provide few if any surface features. ■ The serratus posterior muscles are thin with small bellies that may be proprioceptive organs. ■ The costal muscles can move the ribs during forced respiration. The costal muscles function primarily to support (provide tonus for) the intercostal spaces, resisting negative and positive intrathoracic pressures. ■ The diaphragm is the primary muscle of respiration, responsible for most of inspiration (normally, expiration is mostly passive). ■ Deep fascia overlies and invests the muscles of the thoracic wall, as it does elsewhere. ■ Where the fleshy portions of the intercostal muscles are absent, their fascia is continued as intercostal membranes so that the wall is complete. ■ The endothoracic fascia is a thin, fibro-areolar layer between the internal aspect of the thoracic cage and the lining of the pulmonary cavities, which can be opened surgically to gain access to intrathoracic structures.

Neurovasculature of thoracic wall: The pattern of distribution of neurovascular structures to the thoracic wall reflects the construction of the thoracic cage. ■ These neurovascular structures course in the intercostal spaces, parallel to the ribs, and serve the intercostal muscles as well as the integument and parietal pleura on their superficial and deep aspects. ■ Because plexus formation does not occur in relationship to the thoracic wall, the pattern of peripheral and segmental (dermatomal) innervation is identical in this region. ■ The intercostal nerves run a posterior to anterior course along the length of each intercostal space, and the anterior and posterior intercostal arteries and veins converge toward and anastomose in approximately the anterior axillary line. ■ The posterior vessels arise from the thoracic aorta and drain to the azygos venous system. ■ The anterior vessels arise from the internal thoracic artery, branches, and tributaries and drain to the internal thoracic vein, branches, and tributaries.

FEMALE BREASTS

The amount of fat surrounding the glandular tissue determines the size of nonlactating breasts. The roughly circular body of the female breast rests on a **bed of the breast** that extends transversely from the lateral border of the sternum to the midaxillary line and vertically from the 2nd through 6th ribs. Two thirds of the bed are formed by the pectoral fascia overlying the pectoralis major and the other third by the fascia covering the serratus anterior. Between the breast and the pectoral fascia is a loose subcutaneous tissue plane or potential space—the **retromammary space** (bursa). This plane, containing a small amount of fat, allows the breast

some degree of movement on the pectoral fascia. A smaller part of the mammary gland may extend along the inferolateral edge of the pectoralis major toward the axillary fossa (armpit), forming an **axillary process** or tail (of Spence). The axillary process may enlarge during the menstrual cycle.

The mammary glands are firmly attached to the dermis of the overlying skin by substantial skin ligaments (L. retinacula cutis), the **suspensory ligaments** (of Cooper). These condensations of fibrous connective tissue, particularly well developed in the superior part of the gland, help support the lobes and lobules of the mammary gland.

During puberty (ages 8–15 years), the female breasts normally enlarge, owing in part to glandular development but primarily from increased fat deposition. The areolae and nipples also enlarge. Breast size and shape are determined in part by genetic, ethnic, and dietary factors. **The lactiferous ducts** give rise to buds that develop into 15–20 **lobules of the mammary gland**, which constitute the **parenchyma** (functional substance) of the mammary gland. Thus, each lobule is drained by a lactiferous duct, all of which converge to open independently. Each duct has a dilated portion deep to the areola, the **lactiferous sinus**, in which a small droplet of milk accumulates or remains in the nursing mother. As the baby begins to nurse, compression of the areola (and lactiferous sinus beneath it) expresses the accumulated droplets and encourages the neonate to continue nursing as the hormonally mediated let-down reflex ensues. The mother's milk is secreted into—not sucked from the gland by—the baby's mouth.

The areolae contain numerous **sebaceous glands**, which enlarge during pregnancy and secrete an oily substance that provides a protective lubricant for the areola and nipple. The areola and **nipple** are particularly subject to chafing and irritation as mother and baby begin the nursing experience. The nipples are conical or cylindrical prominences in the centers of the areolae. The nipples have no fat, hair, or sweat glands. The tips of the nipples are fissured with the lactiferous ducts opening into them. The nipples are composed mostly of circularly arranged smooth muscle fibers that compress the lactiferous ducts during lactation and erect the nipples in response to stimulation, as when a baby begins to nurse.

The mammary glands are modified sweat glands; therefore, they have no capsule or sheath. The rounded contour and most of the volume of the breasts are produced by subcutaneous fat, except during pregnancy when the mammary glands enlarge and new glandular tissue forms. The milk-secreting **alveoli** (L., small hollow spaces) are arranged in grape-like clusters. In some women, the breasts may enlarge and become painful during the late (luteal) phase of the menstrual cycle. These changes are most likely due to proliferation of the glandular tissues of the breast caused by shifting levels of the hormones estrogen and progesterone.

VASCULATURE OF BREAST

The arterial supply of the breast (Fig. 4.23A, B) derives from the following arteries:

- **Medial mammary branches of perforating branches** and anterior intercostal branches of the internal thoracic artery, originating from the subclavian artery
- Lateral thoracic and thoraco-acromial arteries, branches of the axillary artery
- Posterior intercostal arteries, branches of the thoracic aorta in the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th intercostal

spaces

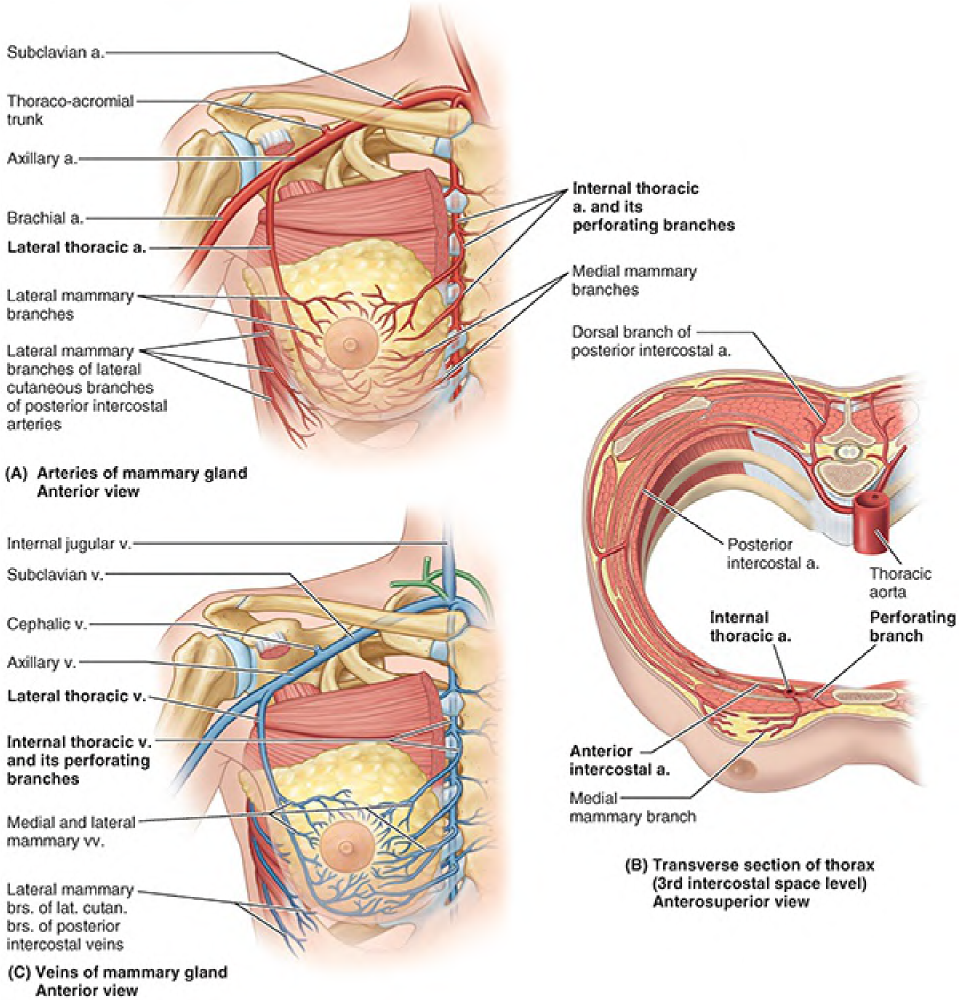


FIGURE 4.23. Vasculature of breast. A. Superficial arterial branches. The mammary gland is supplied from its medial aspect mainly by perforating branches of the internal thoracic artery and laterally and superiorly by several branches of the axillary artery (principally the lateral thoracic artery). **B.** Deep branches. The breast is supplied deeply by branches arising from the intercostal arteries. **C.** Venous drainage. Mammary veins drain to the axillary vein (mainly) and the internal thoracic veins. a., artery; brs., branches; cutan., cutaneous; lat., lateral; v., vein; vv., veins.

The venous drainage of the breast is mainly to the axillary vein, but there is some drainage to the internal thoracic vein (Fig. 4.23C).

The lymphatic drainage of the breast is important because of its role in the metastasis of cancer cells. Lymph passes from the nipple, areola, and lobules of the mammary glands to the **subareolar lymphatic plexus** (Fig. 4.24A, B). Lymph drainage from this plexus is as follows:

- Most lymph (>75%), especially from the lateral breast quadrants, drains to the axillary lymph nodes, initially to the anterior or pectoral nodes for the most part. However, some lymph may drain directly to other axillary nodes or even to interpectoral, deltopectoral, supraclavicular, or inferior deep cervical nodes. (The axillary lymph nodes are covered in detail in Chapter 3, Upper Limb.)

- Most of the remaining lymph, particularly from the medial breast quadrants, drains to the parasternal lymph nodes or to the opposite breast, whereas lymph from the inferior quadrants may pass deeply to abdominal lymph nodes (subdiaphragmatic inferior phrenic lymph nodes).

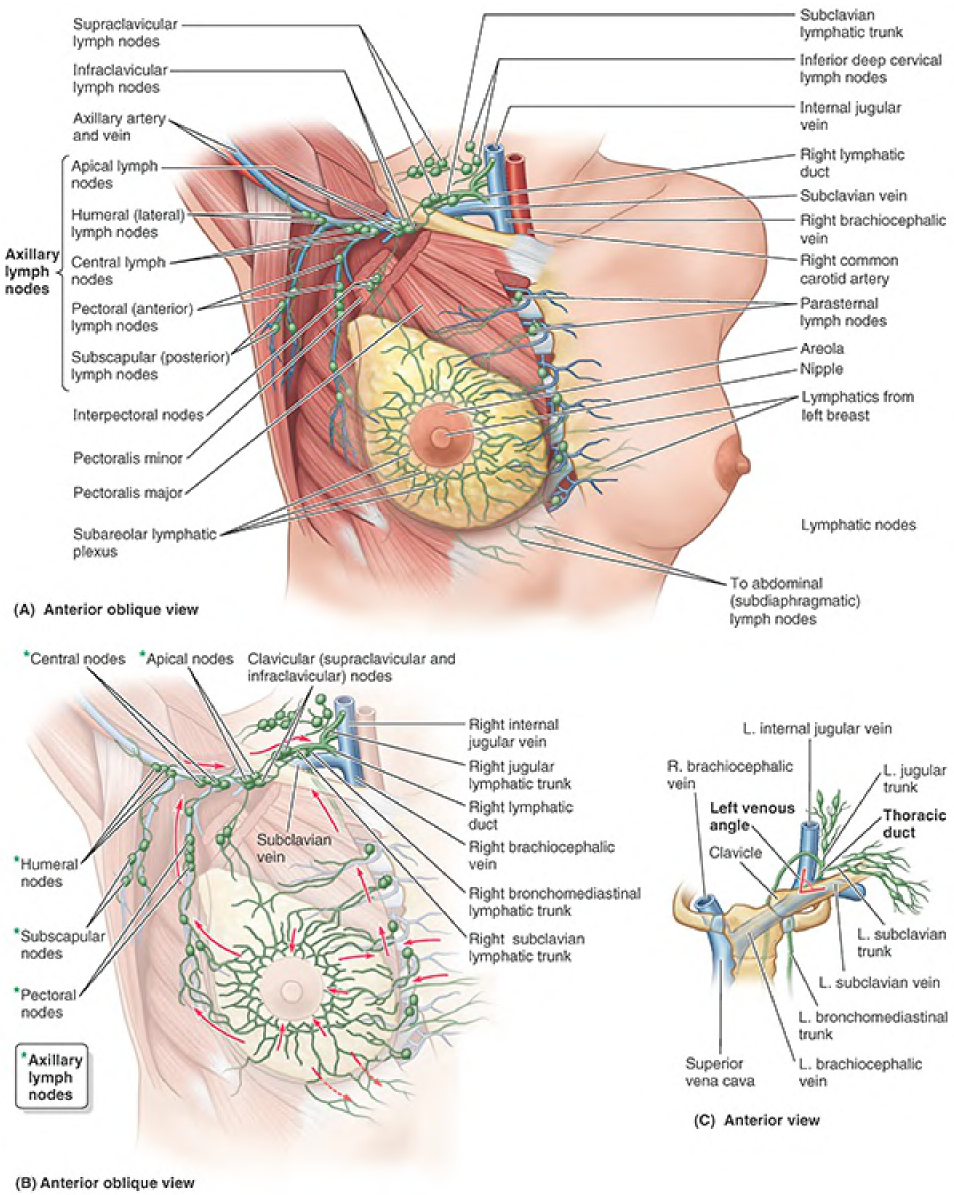


FIGURE 4.24. Lymphatic drainage of breast. A. Location of lymph nodes receiving drainage from breast. **B.** Pattern of lymphatic drainage of breast. The red arrows indicate lymph flow from the right breast. Most lymph, especially that from the superior lateral quadrant and center of the breast, drains to the axillary lymph nodes, which, in turn, are drained by the subclavian lymphatic trunk. On the right side, it enters the venous system via the right lymphatic duct. **C.** Left venous angle. Most lymph from the left breast returns to the venous system via the thoracic duct.

Lymph from the skin of the breast, except the nipple and areola, drains into the ipsilateral axillary, inferior deep cervical, and infraclavicular lymph nodes and into the parasternal lymph nodes of both sides.

Lymph from the axillary nodes drains into clavicular (infraclavicular and supraclavicular)

lymph nodes and from them into the subclavian lymphatic trunk, which also drains lymph from the upper limb. Lymph from the parasternal nodes enters the bronchomediastinal lymphatic trunks, which also drain lymph from the thoracic viscera. The termination of the lymphatic trunks varies; traditionally, these trunks are described as merging with each other and with the jugular lymphatic trunk, draining the head and neck to form a short right lymphatic duct on the right side or entering the termination at the thoracic duct on the left side. However, in many (perhaps most) cases, the trunks open independently into the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins, the right or left venous angles, that form the right and left brachiocephalic veins (Fig. 4.24C). In some cases, they open into both contributing veins immediately prior to the angle.

NERVES OF BREAST

The nerves of the breast derive from anterior and lateral cutaneous branches of the 4th–6th intercostal nerves (see Fig. 4.15). The branches of the intercostal nerves pass through the pectoral fascia covering the pectoralis major to reach overlying subcutaneous tissue and skin of the breast. The branches of the intercostal nerves convey sensory fibers from the skin of the breast and sympathetic fibers to the blood vessels in the breasts and smooth muscle in the overlying skin and nipple.

Surface Anatomy of Thoracic Wall

The clavicles (collar bones) lie subcutaneously, forming bony ridges at the junction of the thorax and neck (Fig. 4.25A, B). They can be palpated easily throughout their length, especially where their medial ends articulate with the manubrium of the sternum. The clavicles demarcate the superior division between zones of lymphatic drainage: Above the clavicles, lymph flows ultimately to inferior jugular lymph nodes; below them, parietal lymph (that from the body wall and upper limbs) flows to the axillary lymph nodes.

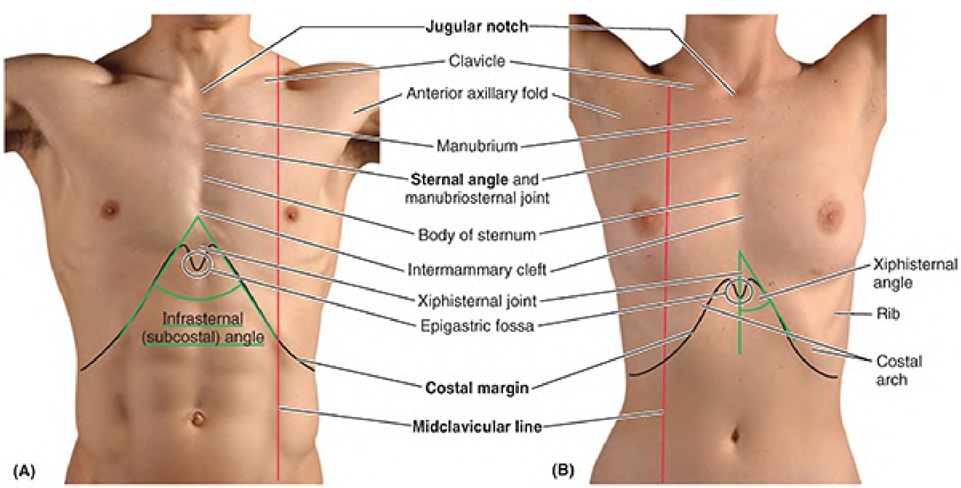


FIGURE 4.25. **Surface features of anterior thoracic wall.**

The sternum (breast bone) lies subcutaneously in the anterior median line and is palpable

throughout its length. Between the prominences of the medial ends of the clavicles at the sternoclavicular joints, the jugular notch in the manubrium can be palpated between the prominent medial ends of the clavicles. The notch lies at the level of the inferior border of the body of T2 vertebra and the space between the 1st and 2nd thoracic spinous processes.

The manubrium, approximately 4 cm long, lies at the level of the bodies of T3 and T4 vertebrae (Fig. 4.26). The sternal angle is palpable and often visible in young people because of the slight movement that occurs at the manubriosternal joint during forced respiration. The sternal angle lies at the level of the T4–T5 IV disc and the space between the 3rd and 4th thoracic spinous processes. The sternal angle marks the level of the 2nd pair of costal cartilages. The left side of the manubrium is anterior to the arch of the aorta, and its right side directly overlies the merging of the brachiocephalic veins to form the superior vena cava (SVC) (Fig. 4.24C). Because it is common clinical practice to insert catheters into the SVC for intravenous feeding of extremely ill patients and for other purposes, it is essential to know the surface anatomy of this large vein. The SVC passes inferiorly deep to the manubrium and manubriosternal junction but projects as much as a fingerbreadth to the right of the margin of the manubrium. The SVC enters the right atrium of the heart opposite the right 3rd costal cartilage.

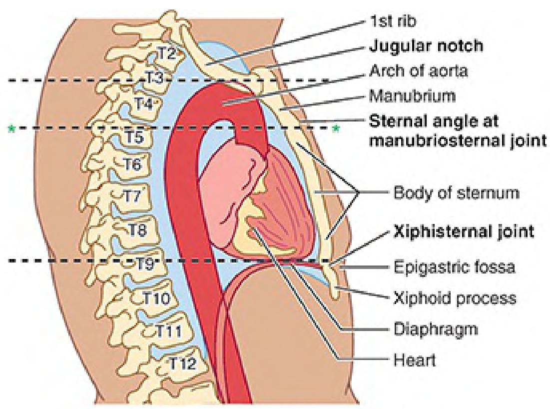


FIGURE 4.26. Vertebral levels of sternum and transverse thoracic plane.

The body of the sternum, approximately 10 cm long, lies anterior to the right border of the heart and vertebrae T5–T9 (Fig. 4.26). **The intermammary cleft** (midline depression or cleavage between the mature female breasts) overlies the sternal body (see Figs. 4.25 and 4.29). The xiphoid process lies in a slight depression, the **epigastric fossa**. This fossa is used as a guide in cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) to properly position the hand on the inferior part of the sternum. The xiphisternal joint is palpable and is often seen as a ridge, at the level of the inferior border of T9 vertebra.

The costal margins, formed by the joined costal cartilages of the 7th–10th ribs, are easily palpable because they extend inferolaterally from the xiphisternal joint. The converging right and left costal margins form the infrasternal angle.

The ribs and intercostal spaces provide a basis for locating or describing the position of structures or sites of trauma or pathology on or deep to the thoracic wall. Because the 1st rib is

not palpable, rib counting in physical examinations starts with the 2nd rib adjacent to the subcutaneous and easily palpated sternal angle. To count the ribs and intercostal spaces anteriorly, slide the fingers (digits) laterally from the sternal angle onto the 2nd costal cartilage and begin counting the ribs and spaces by moving the fingers from here. The 1st intercostal space is that superior to the 2nd costal cartilage—that is, intercostal spaces are numbered according to the rib forming their superior boundary. Generally, it is more reliable to count intercostal spaces since the fingertip tends to rest in (slip into) the gaps between the ribs. One finger should remain in place while another is used to locate the next space. Using all the fingers, it is possible to locate four spaces at a time. The spaces are widest anterolaterally (approximately in the midclavicular line). If the fingers are removed from the thoracic wall while counting spaces, the finger may easily be returned to the same space, mistaking it for the one below. Posteriorly, the medial end of the spine of the scapula overlies the 4th rib.

While the ribs and/or intercostal spaces provide the "latitude" for navigation and localization on the thoracic wall, several imaginary lines facilitate anatomical and clinical descriptions by providing "longitude." The following lines are extrapolated over the thoracic wall based on visible or palpable superficial features:

- The **anterior median (midsternal) line** (AML) indicates the intersection of the median plane with the anterior thoracic wall (Fig. 4.27A).
- The **midclavicular line** (MCL) passes through the midpoint of the clavicle, parallel to the AML.
- The **anterior axillary line** (AAL) runs vertically along the anterior axillary fold that is formed by the inferolateral border of the pectoralis major as it spans from the thoracic cage to the humerus in the arm (Fig. 4.27B).
- The **midaxillary line** (MAL) runs from the apex (deepest part) of the axillary fossa (armpit), parallel to the AAL.
- The **posterior axillary line** (PAL), also parallel to the AAL, is drawn vertically along the posterior axillary fold formed by the latissimus dorsi and teres major muscles as they span from the back to the humerus.
- The **posterior median (midvertebral) line** (PML) is a vertical line along the tips of the spinous processes of the vertebrae (Fig. 4.27C).
- The **scapular lines** (SLs) are parallel to the posterior median line and intersect the inferior angles of the scapula.

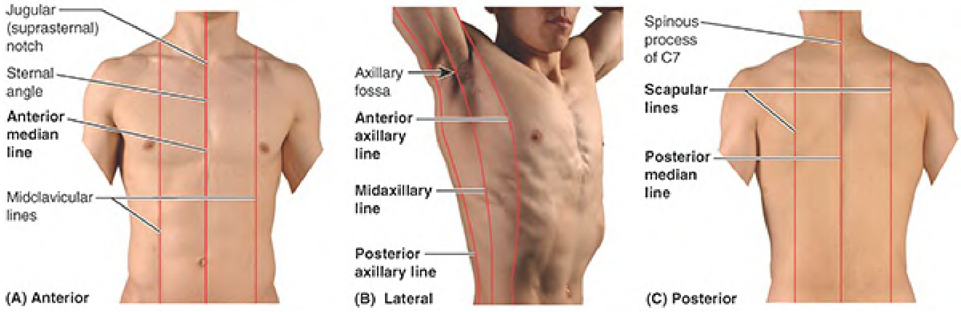


FIGURE 4.27. Vertical lines of thoracic wall.

Additional lines (not illustrated) are extrapolated along the borders of palpable bony formations, such as the parasternal and paravertebral lines (G. para, alongside of, adjacent to) on each side of the sternum and vertebral column.

Breasts are the most prominent surface features of the anterior thoracic wall, especially in women. Except when there is an overabundance of subcutaneous tissue, the breasts in men are mostly an accentuation of the contour of the pectoralis major muscles, highlighted by the presence of the nipple in the 4th intercostal space, lateral to the MCL (Fig. 4.27). In moderately athletic individuals, the contour of the pectoralis major muscles is apparent, separated in the midline by the intermammary cleft overlying the sternum, with the lateral border forming the anterior axillary fold (Fig. 4.25). Inferolaterally, finger-like slips, or **digitations of the serratus anterior**, have a serrated (sawtooth) appearance as they attach to the ribs and interdigitate with the external oblique (Fig. 4.28). The inferior ribs and costal margins are often apparent, especially when the abdominal muscles are contracted. The intercostal musculature is not normally evident; however, in (rare) cases in which there is an absence or atrophy of the intercostal musculature, the intercostal spaces become apparent with respiration: During inspiration, they are concave; during expiration, they protrude.

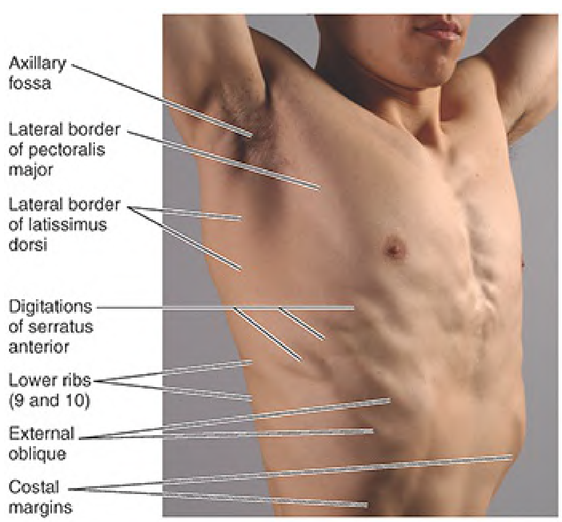


FIGURE 4.28. Surface anatomy of thoracic wall musculature.

The female breasts vary in the size, shape, and symmetry—even in the same person. Their

flattened superior surfaces show no sharp demarcation from the anterior surface of the thoracic wall, but laterally and inferiorly, their borders are well defined (Fig. 4.29). A venous pattern over the breasts is often visible, especially during pregnancy.

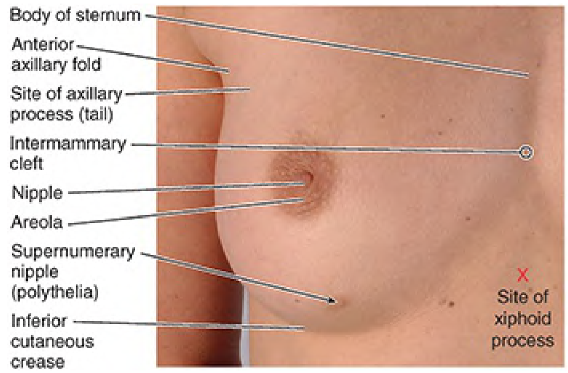


FIGURE 4.29. Surface anatomy of female breast.

The nipple is surrounded by the slightly raised and circular pigmented areola, the color of which depends on the woman's complexion. The areola usually darkens during pregnancy and retains the darkened pigmentation thereafter. The areola is normally dotted with the papular (small elevated) openings of the areolar glands (sebaceous glands in the skin of the areola). On occasion, one or both nipples are inverted (retracted); this minor congenital anomaly may make breastfeeding difficult.

In men and young nulliparous women—those who have never borne a viable child—with moderate breast size, the nipple lies anterior to the 4th intercostal space, approximately 10 cm from the AML. Usually, however, the position of nipples varies considerably with breast size, especially in multiparous women—those who have given birth to two or more children. Consequently, because of variations in size and shape, the nipples are not a reliable guide to the 4th intercostal spaces in adult females.

CLINICAL BOX

BREASTS

Changes in Breasts

Changes in breast tissue, such as branching of the lactiferous ducts, occur throughout the menstrual cycle and during pregnancy. Although mammary glands are prepared for secretion by midpregnancy, they do not produce milk until shortly after the baby is born. Colostrum, a creamy white to yellowish premilk fluid, may secrete from the nipples during the last trimester of pregnancy and during initial episodes of nursing. Colostrum is believed to be especially rich in protein, immune agents, and a growth factor affecting the infant's intestines. In multiparous women (those who have given birth

two or more times), the breasts often become large and pendulous. The breasts in elderly women are usually small because of the decrease in fat and the atrophy of glandular tissue.

Breast Quadrants

For the anatomical location and description of tumors and cysts, the surface of the breast is divided into four quadrants (Fig. B4.5). For example, a physician's record might state: "A hard irregular mass was felt in the superior medial quadrant of the breast at the 2 o'clock position, approximately 2.5 cm from the margin of the areola."

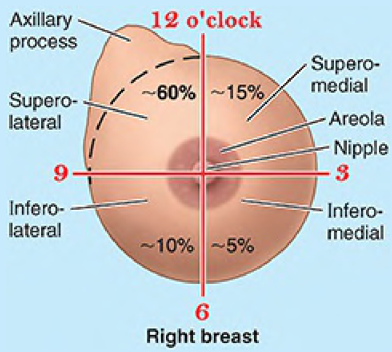


FIGURE B4.5. Breast quadrants.

Carcinoma of Breast

Understanding the lymphatic drainage of the breasts is of practical importance in predicting the metastases (dispersal) of cancer cells from a carcinoma of the breast (breast cancer). Carcinomas of the breast are malignant tumors, usually adenocarcinomas (glandular cancer) arising from the epithelial cells of the lactiferous ducts in the mammary gland lobules (Fig. B4.6D). Metastatic cancer cells that enter a lymphatic vessel usually pass through two or three groups of lymph nodes. Interference with dermal lymphatics by cancer may cause lymphedema (edema, excess fluid in the subcutaneous tissue) in the skin of the breast, which in turn may result in deviation of the nipple and a thickened, leather-like appearance of the skin. Prominent "puffy" skin between dimpled pores gives it an orange-peel appearance (peau d'orange sign) (Fig. B4.6A).

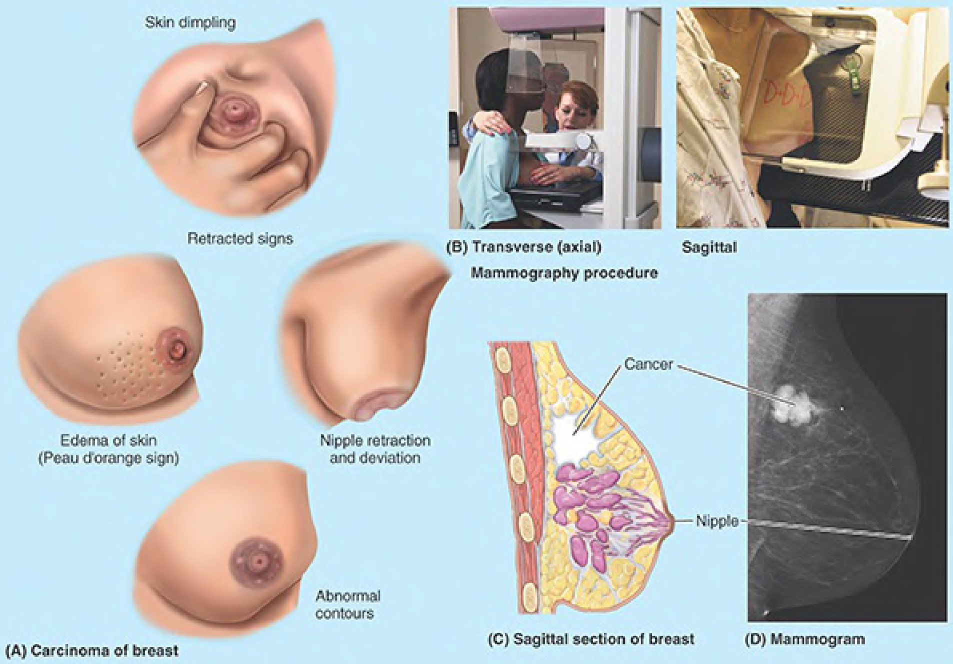


FIGURE B4.6. Detection of breast cancer.

Larger dimples (fingertip size or bigger) result from cancerous invasion of the glandular tissue and fibrosis (fibrous degeneration), which causes shortening or places traction on the suspensory ligaments. Subareolar breast cancer may cause retraction of the nipple by a similar mechanism involving the lactiferous ducts.

Breast cancer typically spreads from the breast by means of lymphatic vessels (lymphogenic metastasis), which carry cancer cells from the breast to the lymph nodes, chiefly those in the axilla. The cells lodge in the nodes, producing nests of tumor cells (metastases). Abundant communications among lymphatic pathways and among axillary, cervical, and parasternal nodes may also cause metastases from the breast to develop in the supraclavicular lymph nodes, the opposite breast, or the abdomen (see Fig. 4.24A, B). Because most of lymphatic drainage of the breast is to the axillary lymph nodes, they are the most common site of metastasis from a breast cancer. Enlargement of these palpable nodes suggests the possibility of breast cancer and may be key to early detection. However, the absence of enlarged axillary lymph nodes is no guarantee that metastasis from a breast cancer has not occurred; the malignant cells may have passed to other nodes, such as the infraclavicular and supraclavicular lymph nodes or directly into the systemic circulation. Surgical removal of axillary nodes to which breast cancer has metastasized, or damage to the axillary lymph nodes and vessels by radiation therapy for cancer treatment, may result in lymphedema in the ipsilateral upper limb, which also drains through the axillary nodes (see the Clinical Box "Dissection of Axillary Lymph Nodes" in Chapter 3, Upper Limb).

The posterior intercostal veins drain into the azygos/hemi-azygos system of veins alongside the bodies of the vertebrae (see Fig. 4.38B) and communicate with the internal vertebral venous plexus surrounding the spinal cord. Cancer cells can also spread from the

breast by these venous routes to the vertebrae and from there to the cranium and brain. Cancer also spreads by contiguity (invasion of adjacent tissue). When breast cancer cells invade the retromammary space (see Fig. 4.22), attach to or invade the pectoral fascia overlying the pectoralis major, or metastasize to the interpectoral nodes, the breast elevates when the muscle contracts. This movement is a clinical sign of advanced cancer of the breast. To observe this upward movement, the physician has the patient place her hands on her hips and press while pulling her elbows forward to tense her pectoral muscles.

Visualizing Breast Structure and Pathology

Examination of the breasts by medical imaging is one of the techniques used to detect breast abnormalities, distinguishing cysts and neoplastic masses from variations in breast architecture. Mammography is a radiographic study of the breast, which is flattened to extend the area that can be examined and reduce thickness, making it more uniform for increased visualization (Fig. B4.6B). Mammography is primarily used for screening for problems before they are evident otherwise. Carcinomas often appear as a large, jagged density in the mammogram (Fig. B4.6C, D). The skin may thickened over the tumor and the nipple may be depressed. In conventional mammography, denser structures including normal suspensory ligaments as well as tumors appear light. Ultrasonography (US) is useful for looking at formations palpated but not clearly observed on a mammogram, especially in women with dense breast tissue, and to gain more specific information about areas of interest in a mammogram or changes detected compared to previous mammograms. Ultrasound is a noninvasive means of distinguishing fluid-filled cysts or abscesses from solid masses. Ultrasound can also be used to guide a biopsy needle or enable fluid aspiration. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the breast is performed with specialized machines (MRI with dedicated breast coils) to further examine problems detected by mammography or US, to rule out false-positive findings, and to plan treatment.

Surgical Incisions of Breast and Surgical Removal of Breast Pathology

The transition between the thoracic wall and breast is most abrupt inferiorly, producing a line, crease, or deep skin fold—the inferior cutaneous crease (see Fig. 4.29). Incisions made along this crease will be least evident and may be hidden by overlap of the breast. Incisions that must be made near the areola, or on the breast itself, are usually directed radially to either side of the nipple (Langer tension lines run transversely here) or circumferentially (see Fig. 1.7 in Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts).

Mastectomy (breast excision) is not as common as it once was as a treatment for breast cancer. In simple mastectomy, the breast is removed down to the retromammary space. The nipple and areola may be spared and immediate reconstruction performed in selected cases. Radical mastectomy, a more extensive surgical procedure, involves removal of the breast,

pectoral muscles, fat, fascia, and as many lymph nodes as possible in the axilla and pectoral region. In current practice, often only the tumor and surrounding tissues are removed—a lumpectomy or quadrantectomy (known as breast-conserving surgery, a wide local excision)—followed by radiation therapy (Goroll, 2021).

Polymastia, Polythelia, and Amastia

Polymastia (supernumerary breasts) or polythelia (accessory nipples) may occur superior or inferior to the normal pair, occasionally developing in the axillary fossa or anterior abdominal wall (Figs. 4.29 and B4.7). Supernumerary breasts usually consist of only a rudimentary nipple and areola, which may be mistaken for a mole (nevus) until they change pigmentation, become darker, with the normal nipples during pregnancy. However, glandular tissue may also be present and further develop with lactation. These small supernumerary breasts may appear anywhere along a line (mammary crest) extending from the axilla to the groin—the location of the embryonic mammary crest (milk line) from which the breasts develop and along which breasts develop in animals with multiple breasts. There may be no breast development (amastia), or there may be a nipple and/or areola, but no glandular tissue.

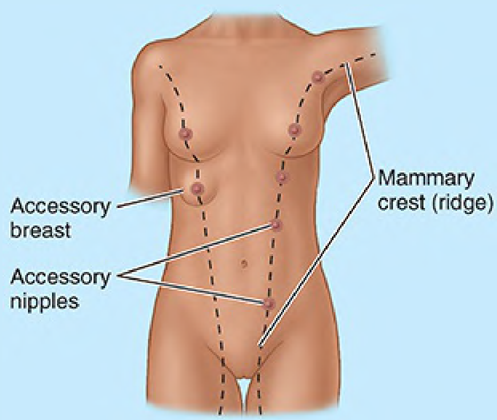


FIGURE B4.7. Polymastia and polythelia.

Breast Cancer in Men

Approximately 1.5% of breast cancers occur in men. As in women, the cancer usually metastasizes to axillary lymph nodes but also to bone, pleura, lung, liver, and skin. Breast cancer affects approximately 1,000 men per year in the United States (Swartz, 2021). A visible and/or palpable subareolar mass or secretion from a nipple may indicate a malignant tumor. Breast cancer in males tends to infiltrate the pectoral fascia, pectoralis major, and apical lymph nodes in the axilla. Although breast cancer is uncommon in men, the consequences are serious because they are frequently not detected until extensive metastases have occurred—for example, in bone.

Gynecomastia

Slight temporary enlargement of the breasts (hypertrophy) is a normal occurrence (frequency = 70%) in males at puberty (age 10–12 years). Breast hypertrophy in males after puberty (gynecomastia) is relatively rare (<1%) and may be age or drug related (e.g., after treatment with diethylstilbestrol for prostate cancer). Gynecomastia may also result from an imbalance between estrogenic and androgenic hormones or from a change in the metabolism of sex hormones by the liver. Thus, a finding of gynecomastia should be regarded as a symptom, and an evaluation must be initiated to rule out important potential causes, such as suprarenal or testicular cancers (Goroll, 2021). Approximately 40% of postpubertal males with Klinefelter syndrome (XXY trisomy) have gynecomastia (Fig. B4.8). Klinefelter syndrome is also characterized by small testes and disproportionately long lower limbs (Moore et al., 2020).

FIGURE B4.8. Gynecomastia in Klinefelter syndrome. A male adolescent with Klinefelter syndrome (XXY trisomy) has breasts. Approximately 40% of males with this syndrome have gynecomastia (development of breasts) and small testes.

The Bottom Line: Breasts and Surface Anatomy of Thoracic Wall

Breasts: The mammary glands are in the subcutaneous tissue of the breast, overlying the pectoralis major and serratus anterior muscles and associated deep fascia (bed of the breast). ■ Lobules of glandular tissue converge toward the nipple, each having its own

lactiferous duct, which opens there. ■ The superior lateral quadrant of the breast has the most glandular tissue, largely owing to an extension toward or into the axilla (axillary process), and, therefore, is the site of most tumors. ■ The breast is served by the internal thoracic and lateral thoracic vessels and the 2nd–6th intercostal vessels and nerves. Most lymph from the breast drains to the axillary lymph nodes; this is significant when treating breast cancer. ■ Because the mammary glands and axillary lymph nodes are superficial, the ability to palpate primary and metastatic tumors during routine breast examination increases likelihood of early detection and treatment.

Surface anatomy of thoracic wall: The thoracic wall is especially well provided with visible and/or palpable features useful in examining the wall and underlying visceral features. ■ Ribs and intercostal spaces, counted from the 2nd rib at the level of the sternal angle, provide latitude. ■ Clavicles, nipples, axillary folds, scapulae, and the vertebral column provide longitude. ■ The breasts are prominent features, and, in males, the nipples demarcate the 4th intercostal space.

VISCERA OF THORACIC CAVITY

When sectioned transversely, it is apparent that the thoracic cavity is kidney shaped: a transversely ovoid space deeply indented posteriorly by the thoracic vertebral column and the heads and necks of the ribs that articulate with it (Fig. 4.30A). The thoracic cavity is divided into three compartments (Fig. 4.30A, C):

- Right and left **pulmonary cavities**, bilateral compartments that contain the lungs and pleurae (lining membranes) and occupy the majority of the thoracic cavity
- A central **mediastinum**, a compartment intervening between and completely separating the two pulmonary cavities, which contains essentially all other thoracic structures—the heart, thoracic parts of the great vessels, thoracic part of the trachea, esophagus, thymus, and other structures (e.g., lymph nodes). It extends vertically from the superior thoracic aperture to the diaphragm and anteroposteriorly from the sternum to the thoracic vertebral bodies.

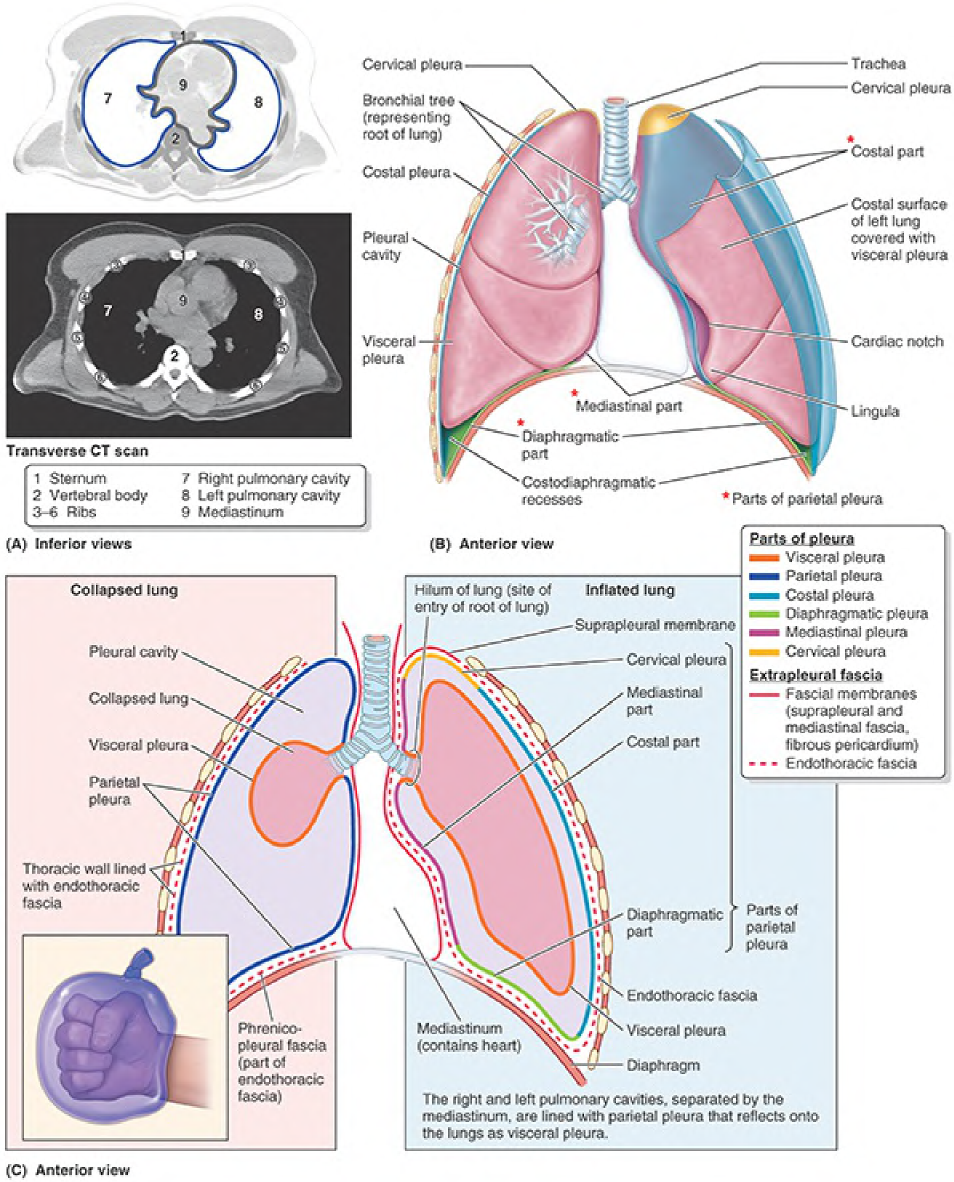


FIGURE 4.30. Divisions of thoracic cavity and lining of pulmonary cavities. A. CT scan and interpretive diagram. Transverse cross-sectional views of the thoracic cavity demonstrate its kidney-like shape, resulting from the protruding vertebral bodies, and division into three compartments. **B and C.** Dimensional and coronal cross-sectional diagrams demonstrating linings of pleural cavities and lungs (pleurae). Each lung is invested by the inner layer of a closed sac that has been invaginated by the lung. **Inset:** A fist invaginating an underinflated balloon demonstrates the relationship of the lung (represented by the fist) to walls of the pleural sac (parietal and visceral layers of pleura).

Pleurae, Lungs, and Tracheobronchial Tree

Each pulmonary cavity (right and left) is lined by a pleural membrane (**pleura**) that also reflects onto and covers the external surface of the lungs occupying the cavities (Fig. 4.30B, C). To visualize the relationship of the pleurae and lungs, push your fist into an underinflated balloon (Fig. 4.30C). The inner part of the balloon wall (adjacent to your fist, which represents the lung) is comparable to the visceral pleura; the remaining outer wall of the balloon represents the

parietal pleura. The cavity between the layers of the balloon, here filled with air, is analogous to the pleural cavity, although the pleural cavity contains only a thin film of fluid. At your wrist (representing the root of the lung), the inner and outer walls of the balloon are continuous, as are the visceral and parietal layers of pleura, together forming a pleural sac. Note that the lung is outside of but surrounded by the pleural sac, just as your fist is surrounded by but outside of the balloon.

The inset in Figure 4.30C is also helpful in understanding the development of the lungs and pleurae. During the embryonic period, the developing lungs invaginate (grow into) the **pericardioperitoneal canals**, the precursors of the pleural cavities. The invaginated celomic epithelium covers the primordia of the lungs and becomes the visceral pleura in the same way that the balloon covers your fist. The epithelium lining the walls of the pericardioperitoneal canals forms the parietal pleura. During embryogenesis, the pleural cavities become separated from the pericardial and peritoneal cavities.

PLEURAE

Each lung is invested by and enclosed in a serous **pleural sac** that consists of two continuous membranes: the visceral pleura, which invests all surfaces of the lungs forming their shiny outer surface, and the parietal pleura, which lines the pulmonary cavities (Fig. 4.30B, C).

The **pleural cavity**—the potential space between the layers of pleura—contains a capillary layer of **serous pleural fluid**, which lubricates the pleural surfaces and allows the layers of pleura to slide smoothly over each other during respiration. The surface tension of the pleural fluid provides the cohesion that keeps the lung surface in contact with the thoracic wall; consequently, the lung expands and fills with air when the thorax expands while still allowing sliding to occur, much like a film of water between two glass plates.

The **visceral pleura** (pulmonary pleura) closely covers the lung and adheres to all its surfaces, including those within the horizontal and oblique fissures (Figs. 4.30B, C and 4.31A). In cadaver dissection, the visceral pleura cannot usually be dissected from the surface of the lung. It provides the lung with a smooth slippery surface, enabling it to move freely on the parietal pleura. The visceral pleura is continuous with the parietal pleura at the **hilum of the lung**, where structures making up the root of the lung (e.g., bronchus and pulmonary vessels) enter and leave the lung (Fig. 4.30C).

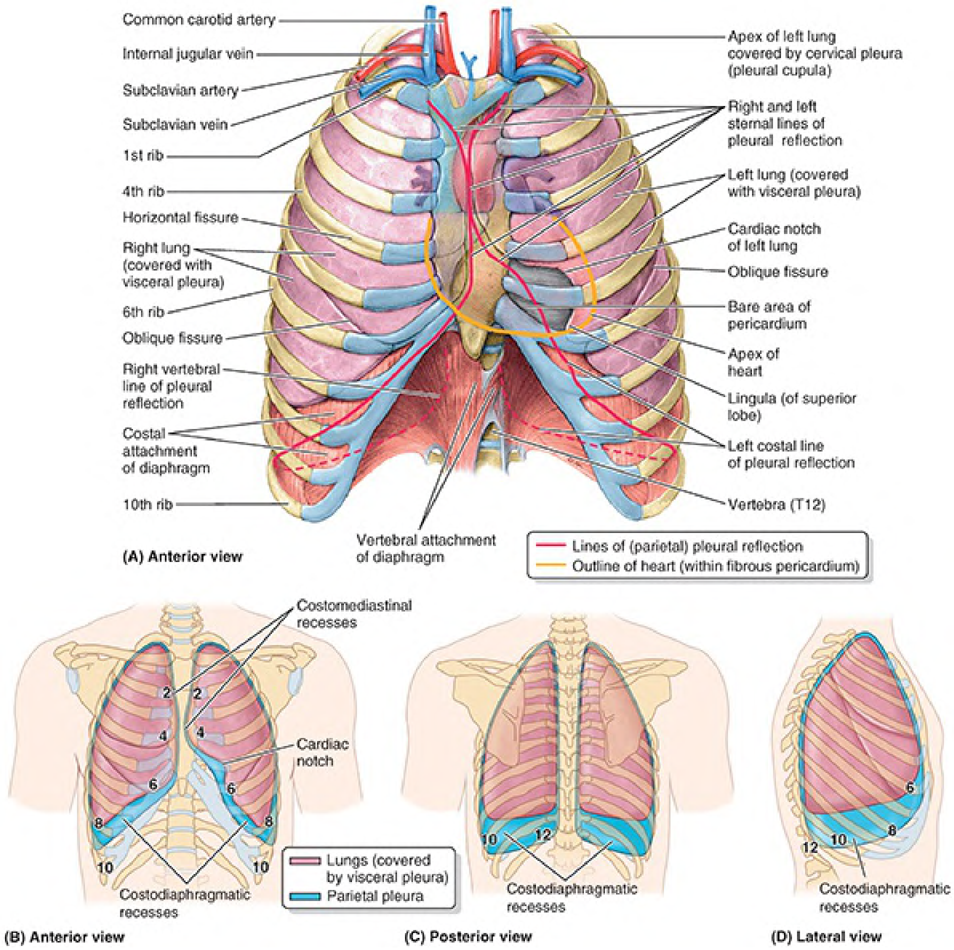


FIGURE 4.31. Relationship of thoracic contents and linings of thoracic cage. A. Overview. The apices of the lungs and cervical pleura extend into the neck. The left sternal reflection of parietal pleura and anterior border of the left lung deviate from the median plane, circumventing the area where the heart is, lies adjacent to the anterior thoracic wall. In this "bare area," the pericardial sac is accessible for needle puncture with less risk of puncturing the pleural cavity or lung. **B–D.** Extent of lungs versus extent of larger pleural sacs during quiet respiration. The costodiaphragmatic recesses, not occupied by lung, are where pleural exudate accumulates when the body is erect. The cardiac notch of the left lung is more pronounced than that in the left pleural outline. The horizontal fissure of the right lung parallels the 4th rib. Ribs are identified by number.

The **parietal pleura lines** the pulmonary cavities, thereby adhering to the thoracic wall, mediastinum, and diaphragm. It is thicker than the visceral pleura, and during surgery and cadaver dissections, it may be separated from the surfaces it covers. The parietal pleura consists of three parts—costal, mediastinal, and diaphragmatic—and the cervical pleura.

The **costal part of the parietal pleura** (costovertebral or costal pleura) covers the internal surfaces of the thoracic wall (Figs. 4.30B, C and 4.32). It is separated from the internal surface of the thoracic wall (sternum, ribs and costal cartilages, intercostal muscles and membranes, and sides of thoracic vertebrae) by endothoracic fascia. This thin, extrapleural layer of loose connective tissue forms a natural cleavage plane for surgical separation of the costal pleura from the thoracic wall (see the Clinical Box "Extrapleural Intrathoracic Surgical Access" in this chapter).

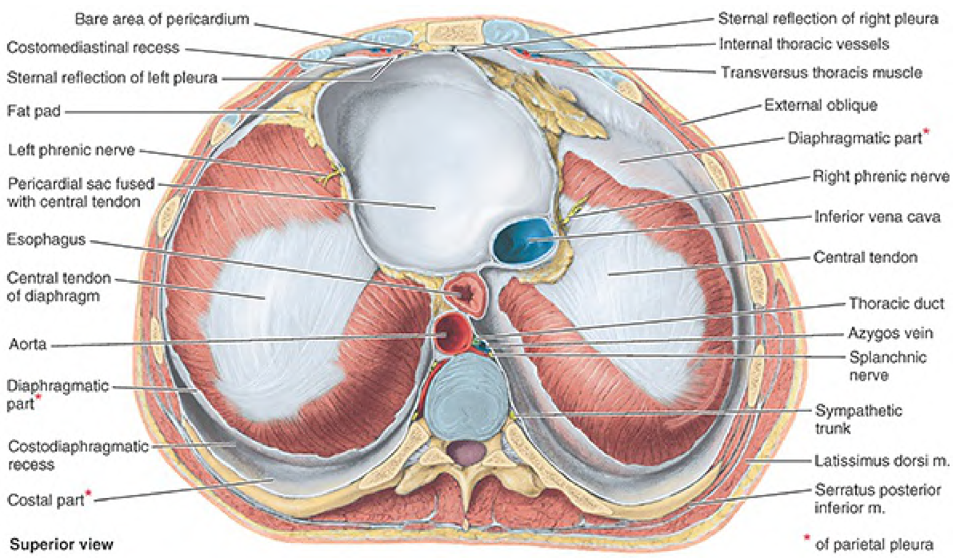


FIGURE 4.32. Diaphragm, base of pulmonary cavities and mediastinum, and costodiaphragmatic recesses. Most of the diaphragmatic pleura has been removed. At this level, the mediastinum consists of the pericardial sac (middle mediastinum) and the posterior mediastinum, mainly containing the esophagus and aorta. The deep groove surrounding the convexity of the diaphragm is the costodiaphragmatic recess, lined with parietal pleura. Anteriorly at this level, the pericardium and costomediastinal recesses and, between the sternal reflections of pleura, an area of pericardium only (the bare area) lie between the heart and the thoracic wall.

The **mediastinal part of the parietal pleura** (mediastinal pleura) covers the lateral aspects of the mediastinum, the partition of tissues and organs separating the pulmonary cavities and their pleural sacs. It continues superiorly into the root of the neck as cervical pleura. It is continuous with costal pleura anteriorly and posteriorly and with the diaphragmatic pleura inferiorly. Superior to the root of the lung, the mediastinal pleura is a continuous sheet passing anteroposteriorly between the sternum and the vertebral column. At the hilum of the lung, it is the mediastinal pleura that reflects laterally onto the root of the lung to become continuous with the visceral pleura.

The **diaphragmatic part of the parietal pleura** (diaphragmatic pleura) covers the superior (thoracic) surface of the diaphragm on each side of the mediastinum, except along its costal attachments (origins) and where the diaphragm is fused to the pericardium, the fibroserous membrane surrounding the heart (Figs. 4.30B, C and 4.32). A thin, more elastic layer of endothoracic fascia, the **phrenicopleural fascia**, connects the diaphragmatic pleura with the muscular fibers of the diaphragm (Fig. 4.30C).

The **cervical pleura** covers the apex of the lung (the part of the lung extending superiorly through the superior thoracic aperture into the root of the neck; Figs. 4.30B, C and 4.31A). It is a superior continuation of the costal and mediastinal parts of the parietal pleura. The cervical pleura forms a cup-like dome (**pleural cupula**) over the apex of the lung that reaches its summit 2–3 cm superior to the level of the medial third of the clavicle, at the level of the neck of the 1st rib. The cervical pleura is reinforced by a fibrous extension of the endothoracic fascia, the **suprapleural membrane** (Sibson fascia). The membrane attaches to the internal border of the 1st rib and the transverse process of C7 vertebra (Fig. 4.30C).

The relatively abrupt lines along which the parietal pleura changes direction as it passes (reflects) from one wall of the pleural cavity to another are the lines of pleural reflection (Figs. 4.31 and 4.32). Three lines of pleural reflection outline the extent of the pulmonary cavities on each side: sternal, costal, and diaphragmatic. The outlines of the right and left pulmonary cavities are asymmetrical (i.e., are not mirror images of each other) because the heart is turned and extends toward the left side, imposing on the left cavity more markedly than on the right.

Deviation of the heart to the left side primarily affects the **right** and **left sternal lines of pleural reflection**, which are asymmetrical. The sternal lines are sharp or abrupt and occur where the costal pleura is continuous with the mediastinal pleura anteriorly. Starting superiorly from the cupulae (Fig. 4.31A), the right and left lines of sternal reflection run inferomedially, passing posterior to the sternoclavicular joints to meet at the anterior median line (AML), posterior to the sternum at the level of its sternal angle. Between the levels of costal cartilages 2–4, the right and left lines descend in contact. The pleural sacs may even slightly overlap each other.

The sternal line of pleural reflection on the right side continues to pass inferiorly in the AML to the posterior aspect of the xiphoid process (level of the 6th costal cartilage), where it turns laterally (Fig. 4.31). The sternal line of reflection on the left side, however, descends in the AML only to the level of the 4th costal cartilage. Here, it passes to the left margin of the sternum and continues inferiorly to the 6th costal cartilage, creating a shallow notch as it runs lateral to an area of direct contact between the pericardium (heart sac) and the anterior thoracic wall. This shallow notch in the pleural sac, and the "bare area" of pericardial contact with the anterior wall (Figs. 4.31 and 4.32), are important for pericardiocentesis (see Clinical Box "Pericardiocentesis" later in this chapter).

The **costal lines of pleural reflection** are sharp continuations of the sternal lines, occurring where the costal pleura becomes continuous with diaphragmatic pleura inferiorly. The right costal line proceeds laterally from the AML. However, because of the bare area of pericardium on the left side, the left costal line begins at the midclavicular line; otherwise, the right and left costal lines are symmetrical as they proceed laterally, posteriorly, and then medially, passing obliquely across the 8th rib in the midclavicular line (MCL) and the 10th rib in the midaxillary line (MAL), becoming continuous posteriorly with the vertebral lines at the necks of the 12th ribs inferior to them.

The **vertebral lines of pleural reflection** are much rounder, gradual reflections and occur where the costal pleura becomes continuous with the mediastinal pleura posteriorly. The vertebral lines of pleural reflection parallel the vertebral column, running in the paravertebral planes from vertebral level T1 through T12, where they become continuous with the costal lines.

The lungs do not fully occupy the pulmonary cavities during expiration; thus, the peripheral diaphragmatic pleura is in contact with the lowermost parts of the costal pleura. The potential pleural spaces here are the **costodiaphragmatic recesses**, pleura-lined "gutters," which surround the upward convexity of the diaphragm inside the thoracic wall (Figs. 4.30B, 4.32, and 4.33C). Similar but smaller pleural recesses are located posterior to the sternum where the costal pleura is in contact with the mediastinal pleura. The potential pleural spaces here are the costomediastinal

recesses. The left recess is larger (less occupied) because the cardiac notch in the left lung is more pronounced than the corresponding notch in the pleural sac. The inferior borders of the lungs move farther into the pleural recesses during deep inspiration and retreat from them during expiration (Fig. 4.33B, C).

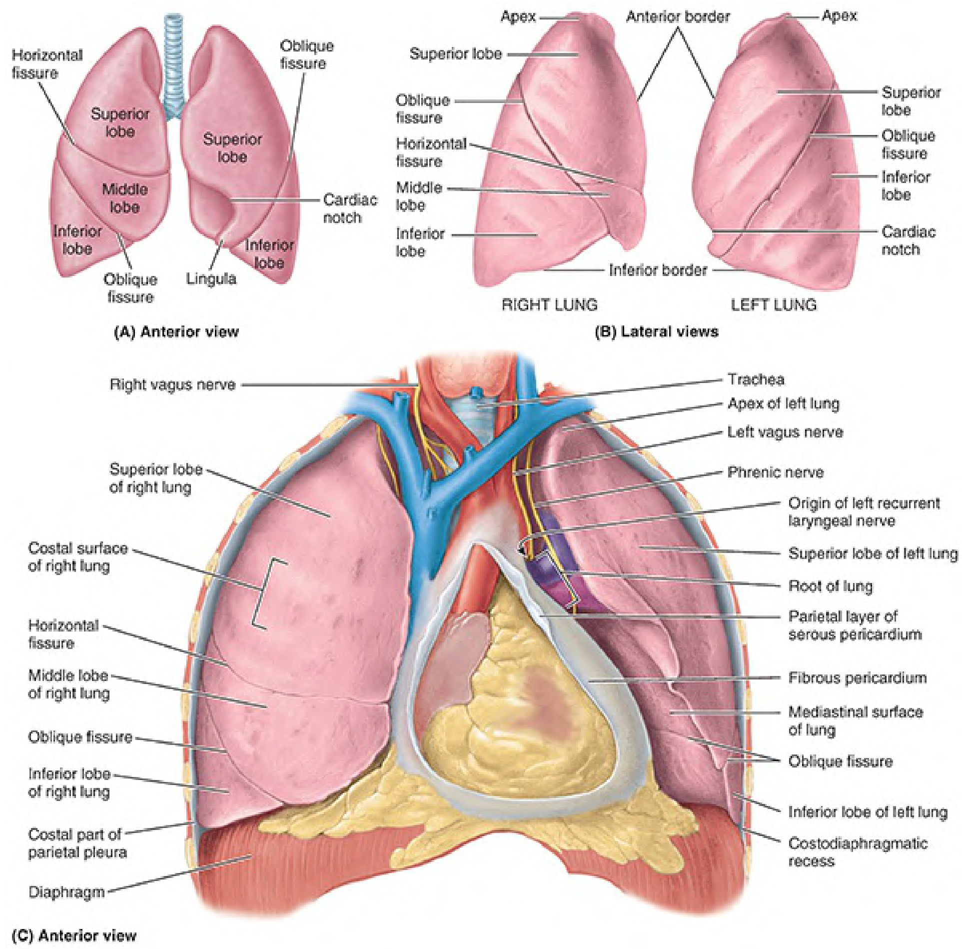


FIGURE 4.33. Costal surfaces of lungs. A and B. Isolated lungs in anterior (**A**) and lateral views (**B**), demonstrating lobes and fissures. **C.** Heart and lungs in situ. The left lung is retracted from the heart (covered by fibrous pericardium) revealing the phrenic nerve as it passes anterior to the root of the lung, while the vagus nerve (CN X) passes posterior to the root. The superior lobe of the left lung in part **C** is a variation that has neither a marked cardiac notch nor a lingula.

LUNGS

The **lungs** are the vital organs of respiration. Their main function is to oxygenate the blood by bringing inspired air into close relation with the venous blood in the pulmonary capillaries. Although cadaveric lungs may be shrunken, firm or hard, and discolored, healthy lungs in living people are normally light, soft, and spongy and fully occupy the pulmonary cavities. They are also elastic and recoil to approximately one third their size when the thoracic cavity is opened (Fig. 4.30C). The lungs are separated from each other by the mediastinum. Each lung has (Figs. 4.33 and 4.34)

- an **apex**, the blunt superior end of the lung ascending above the level of the 1st rib into the

root of the neck; the apex is covered by cervical pleura

- a **base**, the concave inferior surface of the lung, opposite the apex, resting on and accommodating the ipsilateral dome of the diaphragm
- two or three lobes, created by one or two fissures
- three surfaces (costal, mediastinal, and diaphragmatic)
- three borders (anterior, inferior, and posterior)

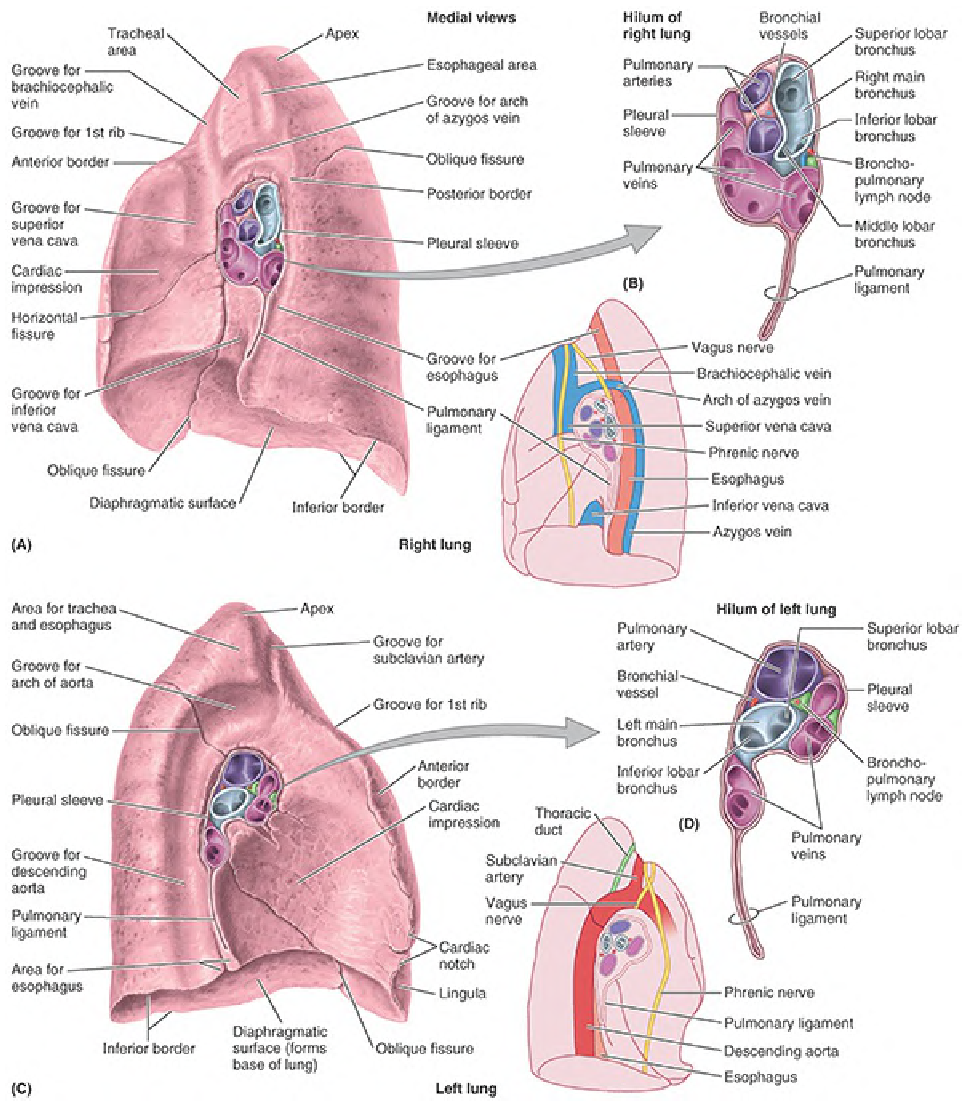


FIGURE 4.34. Mediastinal surfaces and hila of lungs. Impressions are formed in embalmed lungs by contact with adjacent structures. **A and C.** Mediastinal surfaces. Superior to the root of the right lung (**A**), a groove is formed as the arch of the azygos vein courses anteriorly to enter the superior vena cava (SVC), whereas in the left lung (**C**), a similar but larger groove is formed superior to the root as the aorta arches posteriorly and descends as the thoracic aorta. The hilum of each lung is centered in the mediastinal surface. **B and D.** Hila. The root of each lung is surrounded by a pleural sleeve that descends inferior to the root as the pulmonary ligament. The pulmonary veins are the most anterior and inferior in the root, with the bronchi central and posteriorly placed.

The **right lung** features **right oblique** and **horizontal fissures** that divide it into three **right lobes**: **superior**, **middle**, and **inferior**. The right lung is larger and heavier than the left, but it is

shorter and wider because the right dome of the diaphragm is higher and the heart and pericardium bulge more to the left. The anterior border of the right lung is relatively straight. The **left lung** has a single left **oblique fissure** dividing it into two **left lobes**, **superior** and **inferior**. The anterior border of the left lung has a deep **cardiac notch**, an indentation consequent to the deviation of the apex of the heart to the left side. This notch primarily indents the antero-inferior aspect of the superior lobe. This indentation often shapes the most inferior and anterior part of the superior lobe into a thin, tongue-like process, the **lingula** (L., dim. of lingua, tongue), which extends below the cardiac notch and slides in and out of the costomediastinal recess during inspiration and expiration (Figs. 4.30B, 4.31A, and 4.34C).

The lungs of an embalmed cadaver, usually firm to the touch, demonstrate impressions formed by structures adjacent to them, such as the ribs, heart, and great vessels (Figs. 4.33A and 4.34A, C). These markings provide clues to the relationships of the lungs; however, only the cardiac impressions are evident during surgery or in fresh cadaveric or postmortem specimens.

The **costal surface of the lung** is large, smooth, and convex. It is related to the costal pleura, which separates it from the ribs, costal cartilages, and innermost intercostal muscles (Fig. 4.33C). The posterior part of the costal surface is related to the bodies of the thoracic vertebrae and is sometimes referred to as the vertebral part of the costal surface.

The **mediastinal surface of the lung** is concave because it is related to the middle mediastinum, which contains the pericardium and heart (Fig. 4.34). The mediastinal surface includes the hilum, which receives the root of the lung. If embalmed, there is a groove for the esophagus and a cardiac impression for the heart on the mediastinal surface of the right lung. Because two thirds of the heart lies to the left of the midline, the cardiac impression on the mediastinal surface of the left lung is much larger. This surface of the left lung also features a prominent, continuous groove for the arch of the aorta and the descending aorta as well as a smaller area for the esophagus (Fig. 4.34C).

The **diaphragmatic surface of the lung**, which is also concave, forms the **base of the lung**, which rests on the dome of the diaphragm. The concavity is deeper in the right lung because of the higher position of the right dome, which overlies the liver. Laterally and posteriorly, the diaphragmatic surface is bounded by a thin, sharp margin (inferior border) that projects into the costodiaphragmatic recess of the pleura (Figs. 4.33C and 4.34).

The **anterior border of the lung** is where the costal and mediastinal surfaces meet anteriorly and overlap the heart. The cardiac notch indents this border of the left lung. **The inferior border of the lung** circumscribes the diaphragmatic surface of the lung and separates this surface from the costal and mediastinal surfaces. The **posterior border of the lung** is where the costal and mediastinal surfaces meet posteriorly; it is broad and rounded and lies in the cavity at the side of the thoracic region of the vertebral column.

The lungs are attached to the mediastinum by the **roots of the lungs**—that is, the bronchi (and associated bronchial vessels), pulmonary arteries, superior and inferior pulmonary veins, the pulmonary plexuses of nerves (sympathetic, parasympathetic, and visceral afferent fibers), and lymphatic vessels (Fig. 4.34). If the lung root is sectioned before the (medial to) branching of the main (primary) bronchus and pulmonary artery, its general arrangement is as follows:

- Pulmonary artery: superiormost on left (the superior lobar or "eparterial" bronchus may be superiormost on the right)
- Superior and inferior pulmonary veins: anteriormost and inferiormost, respectively
- Main bronchus: against and approximately in the middle of the posterior boundary, with the bronchial vessels coursing on its outer surface (usually on posterior aspect at this point)

The **hilum of the lung** is a wedge-shaped area on the mediastinal surface of each lung through which the structures forming the root of the lung pass to enter or exit the lung (Fig. 4.34B, D). The hilum ("doorway") can be likened to the area of earth where a plant's roots enter the ground. Medial to the hilum, the lung root is enclosed within the area of continuity between the parietal and the visceral layers of pleura—the **pleural sleeve** (mesopneumonium).

Inferior to the root of the lung, this continuity between parietal and visceral pleura forms the **pulmonary ligament**, extending between the lung and the mediastinum, immediately anterior to the esophagus (Fig. 4.34A–D). The pulmonary ligament consists of a double layer of pleura separated by a small amount of connective tissue. When the root of the lung is severed and the lung is removed, the pulmonary ligament appears to hang from the root. To visualize the root of the lung, the pleural sleeve surrounding it, and the pulmonary ligament hanging from it, put on an extra-large lab coat and abduct your upper limb. Your forearm is comparable to the root of the lung, and your coat sleeve represents the pleural sleeve surrounding it. The pulmonary ligament is comparable to the slack of the sleeve as it hangs from your forearm. Your wrist, hand, and abducted fingers represent the branching structures of the root of the lung—the bronchi and pulmonary vessels.

TRACHEOBRONCHIAL TREE

Beginning at the larynx, the walls of the airway are supported by horseshoe- or C-shaped rings of hyaline cartilage. The sublaryngeal airway constitutes the **tracheobronchial tree**. The trachea (described with the superior mediastinum, later in this chapter), located within the superior mediastinum, constitutes the trunk of the tree. It bifurcates at the level of the transverse thoracic plane (or sternal angle) into **main bronchi**, one to each lung, passing inferolaterally to enter the lungs at the hila (singular = hilum) (Fig. 4.35E):

- The **right main bronchus** is wider and shorter and runs more vertically than the left main bronchus as it passes directly to the hilum of the lung.
- The **left main bronchus** passes inferolaterally, inferior to the arch of the aorta and anterior to the esophagus and thoracic aorta, to reach the hilum of the lung.

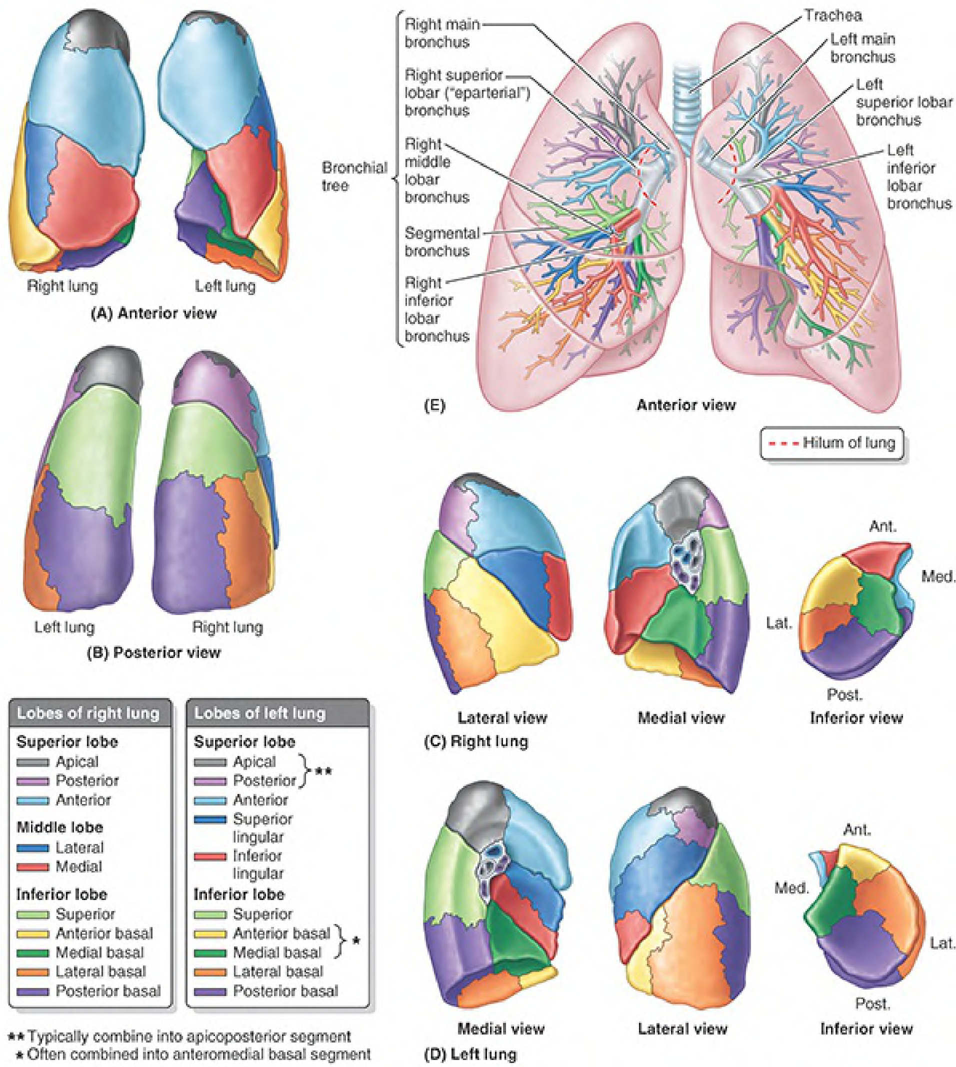


FIGURE 4.35. Tracheobronchial tree and bronchopulmonary segments. A–D. Bronchopulmonary segments after injection of a different color latex into each tertiary segmental bronchus. **E.** Bronchopulmonary tree with tertiary segmental bronchi, color coded to match the bronchopulmonary segment each supplies with air. The right main bronchus gives off the right superior lobar (lobe) bronchus before entering the hilum of the lung.

Within the lungs, the bronchi branch in a constant fashion to form the branches of the tracheobronchial tree. Note that the branches of the tracheobronchial tree are components of the root of each lung (consisting of branches of the pulmonary artery and veins as well as the bronchi).

Each main (primary) bronchus divides into secondary **lobar bronchi**, two on the left and three on the right, each of which supplies a lobe of the lung. Each lobar bronchus divides into several tertiary **segmental bronchi** that supply the bronchopulmonary segments (Figs. 4.35 and 4.36).

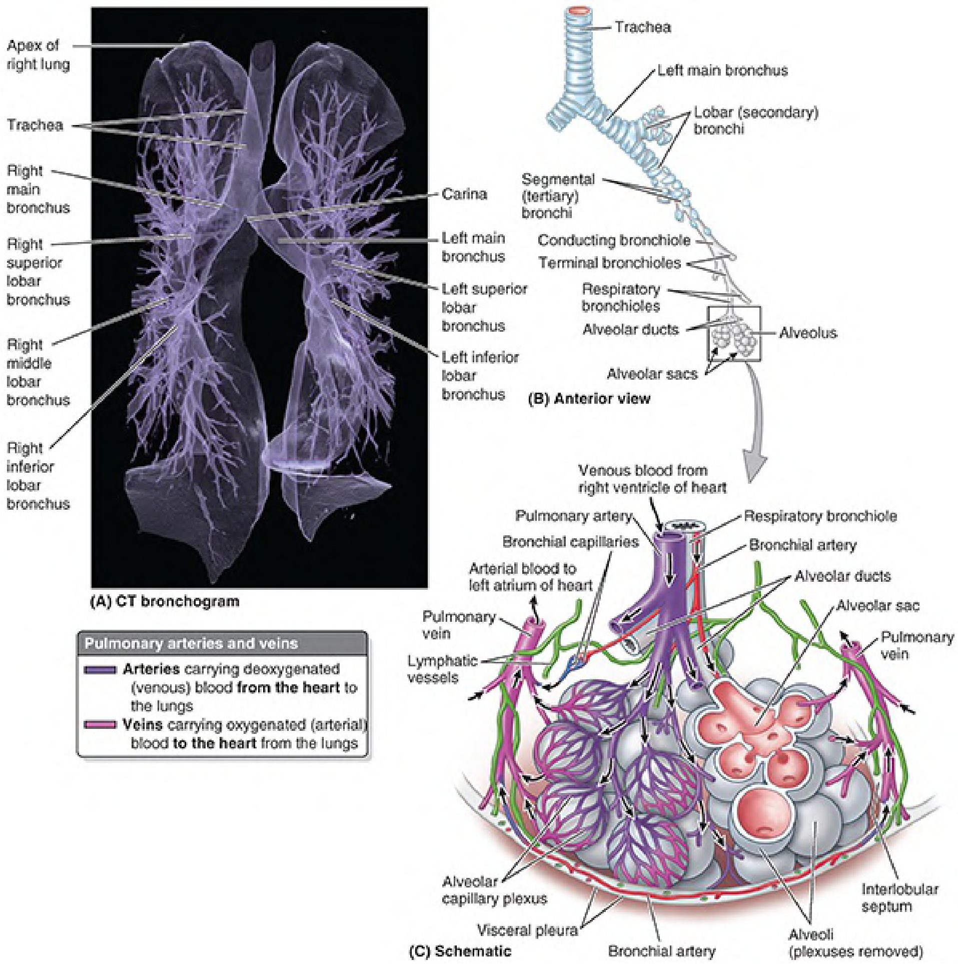


FIGURE 4.36. Internal structure and organization of lungs. A. 3D CT airway study. **B.** Subdivisions of bronchial tree. **C.** Alveoli. Within the lungs, the bronchi and pulmonary arteries are paired and branch in unison. Tertiary segmental (tertiary) branches supply the bronchopulmonary segments. Each intrasegmental pulmonary artery, carrying poorly oxygenated blood, ends in a capillary plexus in the walls of the alveolar sacs and alveoli, where oxygen and carbon dioxide are exchanged. The intersegmental pulmonary veins arise from the pulmonary capillaries, carrying well-oxygenated blood to the heart. Bronchial arteries are distributed along and supply the bronchial tree. Their distalmost branches supply capillary beds drained by the pulmonary veins, such as those of the visceral pleura. A very small amount of low-oxygen blood thus drains into the otherwise oxygen-rich blood conveyed by the pulmonary veins.

The **bronchopulmonary segments** are

- the largest subdivisions of a lobe
- pyramidal-shaped segments of the lung, with their apices facing the lung root and their bases at the pleural surface
- separated from adjacent segments by connective tissue septa
- supplied independently by a segmental bronchus and a tertiary branch of the pulmonary artery
- named according to the segmental bronchi supplying them
- drained by intersegmental parts of the pulmonary veins that lie in the connective tissue between and drain adjacent segments
- usually 18–20 in number (10 in the right lung; 8–10 in the left lung, depending on the combining of segments)

- surgically resectable

Beyond the tertiary segmental bronchi (Fig. 4.35B), there are 20–25 generations of branching conducting bronchioles that eventually end as **terminal bronchioles**, the smallest conducting bronchioles (Fig. 4.36). **Bronchioles** lack cartilage in their walls. **Conducting bronchioles** transport air but lack glands or alveoli. Each terminal bronchiole gives rise to several generations of **respiratory bronchioles**, characterized by scattered, thin-walled outpocketings (alveoli) that extend from their lumens. The **pulmonary alveolus** is the basic structural unit of gas exchange in the lung. Due to the presence of the alveoli, the respiratory bronchioles are involved both in air transportation and gas exchange. Each respiratory bronchiole gives rise to 2–11 alveolar ducts, each of which gives rise to 5–6 alveolar sacs. **Alveolar ducts** are elongated airways densely lined with alveoli, leading to common spaces, the **alveolar sacs**, into which clusters of alveoli open. New alveoli continue to develop until about age 8 years, by which time there are approximately 300 million alveoli.

VASCULATURE OF LUNGS AND PLEURAE

Each lung has a pulmonary artery supplying blood to it and two pulmonary veins draining blood from it (Fig. 4.37). The **right** and **left pulmonary** arteries arise from the pulmonary trunk at the level of the sternal angle; they carry low-oxygen ("venous") blood to the lungs for oxygenation. (They are usually colored blue, like veins, or bluish-purple in anatomical illustrations.) Each pulmonary artery becomes part of the root of the corresponding lung and divides into secondary **lobar arteries**. The right and left superior lobar arteries to the superior lobes arise first, before entering the hilum. Continuing into the lung, the artery descends posterolateral to the main bronchus as the inferior lobar artery of the left lung and as an intermediate artery that will divide into middle and inferior lobar arteries of the right lung. Lobar arteries divide into tertiary **segmental arteries**. The arteries and bronchi are paired in the lung, branching simultaneously and running parallel courses. Consequently, a paired secondary lobar artery and bronchus serve each lobe. Likewise, a paired tertiary segmental artery and bronchus supply each bronchopulmonary segment of the lung. Usually, the artery is located on the anterior aspect of the corresponding bronchus.

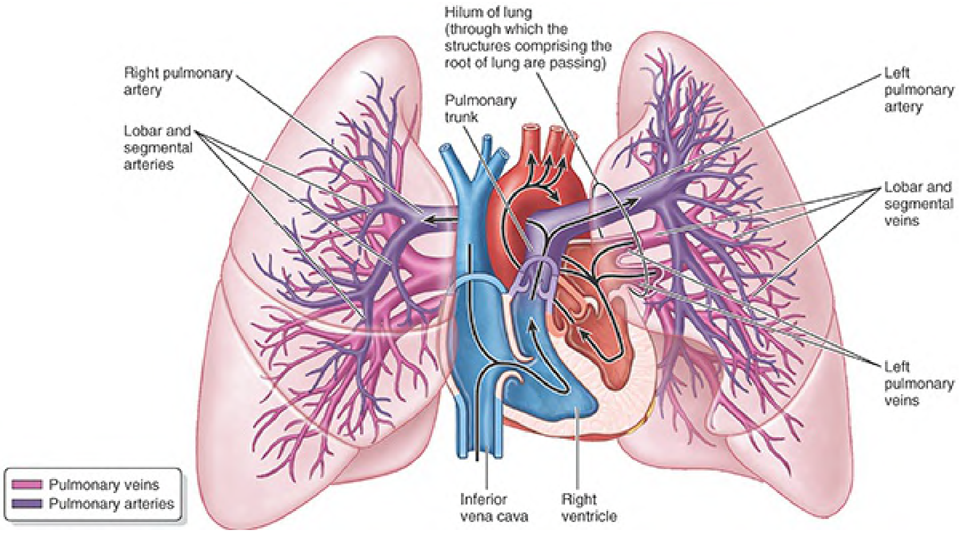


FIGURE 4.37. Pulmonary circulation. Although the intrapulmonary relationships are accurately demonstrated, the separation of the vessels of the root of the lung has been exaggerated in the hilar region to show them as they enter and leave the lung. Note that the right pulmonary artery passes under the arch of the aorta to reach the right lung and that the left pulmonary artery lies completely to the left of the arch. Arrows, flow of blood.

Two pulmonary veins, a **superior** and an **inferior pulmonary vein** on each side, carry oxygen-rich ("arterial") blood from corresponding lobes of each lung to the left atrium of the heart. The **middle lobe vein** is a tributary of the right superior pulmonary vein. (Pulmonary veins are commonly colored red, like arteries, or reddish-purple in anatomical illustrations.) The pulmonary veins run independently of the arteries and bronchi in the lung, coursing between and receiving blood from adjacent bronchopulmonary segments as they run toward the hilum. Except in the central, perihilar region of the lung, the veins from the visceral pleura and the bronchial venous circulation drain into the pulmonary veins, the relatively small volume of low-oxygen blood entering the large volume of oxygen-rich blood returning to the heart. Veins from the parietal pleura join systemic veins in adjacent parts of the thoracic wall.

Bronchial arteries supply blood for nutrition of the structures making up the root of the lungs, the supporting tissues of the lungs, and the visceral pleura (Fig. 4.38A). The two **left bronchial arteries** usually arise directly from the thoracic aorta. The single **right bronchial artery** may also arise directly from the aorta; however, it commonly arises indirectly, either by way of the proximal part of one of the upper posterior intercostal arteries (usually the right 3rd posterior intercostal artery) or from a common trunk with the left superior bronchial artery.

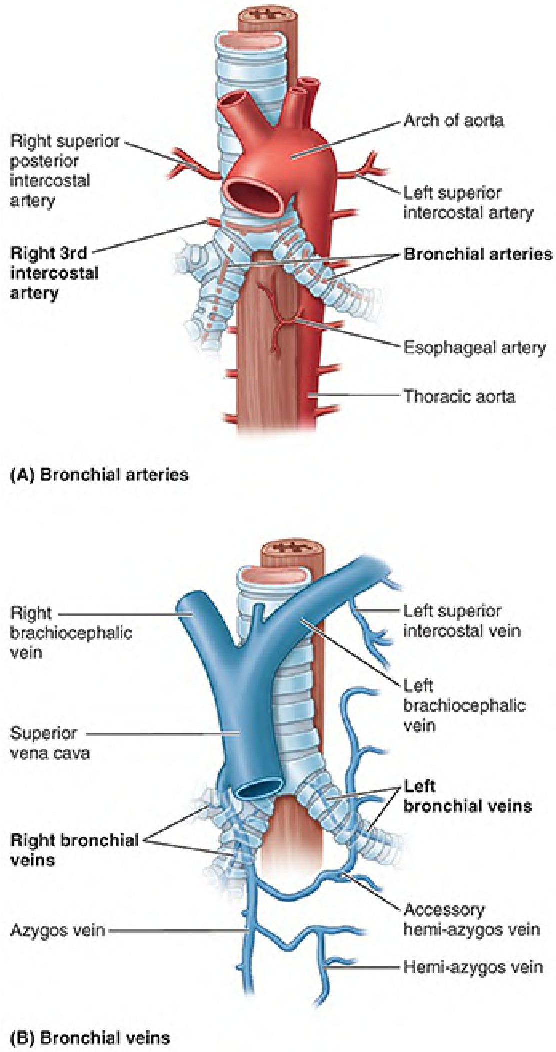


FIGURE 4.38. Bronchial vasculature. A. Bronchial arteries. The bronchial arteries supply the supporting tissues of the lungs and visceral pleura. **B.** Bronchial veins. The bronchial veins drain the more proximal capillary beds supplied by the bronchial arteries; the rest is drained by the pulmonary veins.

The small bronchial arteries provide branches to the upper esophagus. Then, they typically pass along the posterior aspects of the main bronchi, supplying them and their branches as far distally as the respiratory bronchioles. (However, see the variation shown in Figs. 4.63 and 4.69, drawn from a cadaver dissection.) The most distal branches of the bronchial arteries anastomose with branches of the pulmonary arteries in the walls of the bronchioles and in the visceral pleura. The parietal pleura is supplied by the arteries that supply the thoracic wall.

The **bronchial veins** (Fig. 4.38B) drain only part of the blood supplied to the lungs by the bronchial arteries, primarily that distributed to or near the more proximal part of the roots of the lungs. The remainder of the blood is drained by the pulmonary veins, specifically the blood returning from the visceral pleura, the more peripheral regions of the lung, and the distal components of the root of the lung. The right bronchial vein drains into the azygos vein, and the left bronchial vein drains into the accessory hemi-azygos vein or the left superior intercostal vein. Bronchial veins also receive some blood from esophageal veins.

The **pulmonary lymphatic plexuses** communicate freely (Fig. 4.39). The superficial **subpleural lymphatic plexus** lies deep to the visceral pleura and drains the lung parenchyma (tissue) and visceral pleura. Lymphatic vessels from this superficial plexus drain into the **bronchopulmonary lymph nodes** (hilar lymph nodes) in the region of the lung hilum.

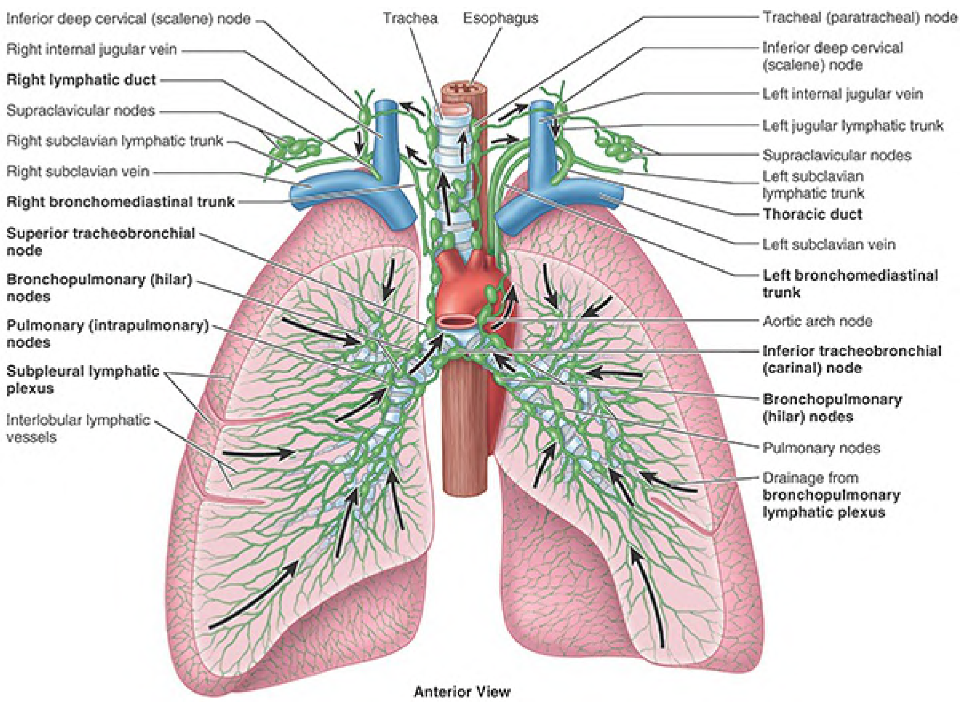


FIGURE 4.39. Lymphatic drainage of lungs. The lymphatic vessels originate from superficial subpleural and deep lymphatic plexuses. All lymph from the lung leaves along the root of the lung and drains to the inferior or superior tracheobronchial lymph nodes. The inferior lobe of both lungs drains to the centrally placed inferior tracheobronchial (carinal) nodes, which primarily drain to the right side. The other lobes of each lung drain primarily to the ipsilateral superior tracheobronchial lymph nodes. From here, the lymph traverses a variable number of paratracheal nodes and enters the bronchomediastinal trunks.

The deep **bronchopulmonary lymphatic plexus** is located in the submucosa of the bronchi and in the peribronchial connective tissue. It is largely concerned with draining the structures that form the root of the lung. Lymphatic vessels from this deep plexus drain initially into the intrinsic **pulmonary lymph nodes**, located along the lobar bronchi. Lymphatic vessels from these nodes continue to follow the bronchi and pulmonary vessels to the hilum of the lung, where they also drain into the bronchopulmonary lymph nodes. From them, lymph from both the superficial and deep lymphatic plexuses drains to the **superior** and **inferior tracheobronchial lymph nodes**, superior and inferior to the bifurcation of the trachea and main bronchi, respectively. The right lung drains primarily through the consecutive sets of nodes on the right side, and the superior lobe of the left lung drains primarily through corresponding nodes of the left side. Many, but not all, of the lymphatics from the inferior lobe of the left lung, however, drain to the right superior tracheobronchial nodes; the lymph then continues to follow the right-side pathway.

Lymph from the tracheobronchial lymph nodes passes to the **right** and **left**

bronchomediastinal lymph trunks, the major lymph conduits draining the thoracic viscera. These trunks usually terminate on each side at the venous angles (junctions of the subclavian and internal jugular veins); however, the right bronchomediastinal trunk may first merge with other lymphatic trunks, converging here to form the short right lymphatic duct. The left bronchomediastinal trunk may terminate in the thoracic duct. Lymph from the parietal pleura drains into the lymph nodes of the thoracic wall (intercostal, parasternal, mediastinal, and phrenic). A few lymphatic vessels from the cervical parietal pleura drain into the axillary lymph nodes.

NERVES OF LUNGS AND PLEURAE

The nerves of the lungs and visceral pleura are derived from the **pulmonary plexuses** anterior and (mainly) posterior to the roots of the lungs (Fig. 4.40). These nerve networks contain parasympathetic, sympathetic, and visceral afferent fibers.

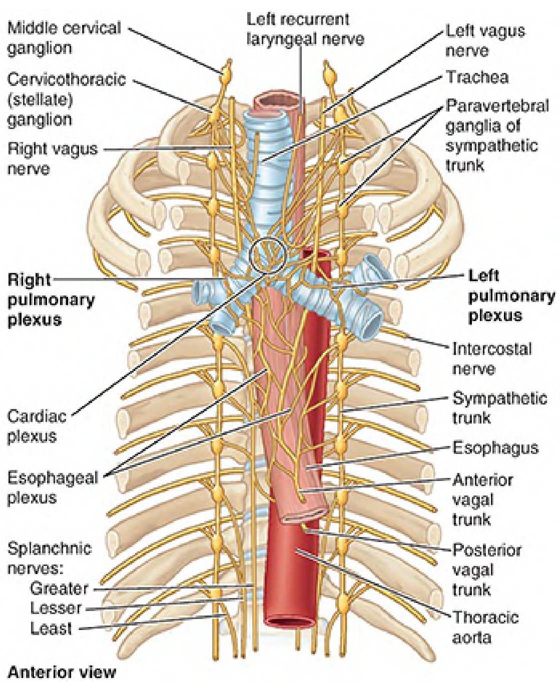


FIGURE 4.40. Nerves of lungs and visceral pleura. The right and left pulmonary plexuses, anterior and posterior to the roots of the lungs, receive sympathetic contributions from the right and left sympathetic trunks and parasympathetic contributions from the right and left vagus nerves (CN X). After contributing to the posterior pulmonary plexus, the vagus nerves continue inferiorly and become part of the esophageal plexus, often losing their identity and then reforming as anterior and posterior vagal trunks. Branches of the pulmonary plexuses accompany pulmonary arteries and especially bronchi to and within the lungs.

The parasympathetic fibers conveyed to the pulmonary plexus are presynaptic fibers from the vagus nerve (CN X). They synapse with parasympathetic ganglion cells (cell bodies of postsynaptic neurons) in the pulmonary plexuses and along the branches of the bronchial tree. The parasympathetic fibers are motor to the smooth muscle of the bronchial tree (bronchoconstrictor), inhibitory to the pulmonary vessels (vasodilator), and secretory to the glands of the bronchial tree (secretomotor).

The sympathetic fibers of the pulmonary plexuses are postsynaptic fibers. Their cell bodies (sympathetic ganglion cells) are in the paravertebral sympathetic ganglia of the sympathetic trunks. The sympathetic fibers are inhibitory to the bronchial muscle (bronchodilator), motor to the pulmonary vessels (vasoconstrictor), and inhibitory to the alveolar glands of the bronchial tree—type II secretory epithelial cells of the alveoli (Fig. 4.36).

The visceral afferent fibers of the pulmonary plexuses are either reflexive (conducting subconscious sensations associated with reflexes that control function) or nociceptive (conducting pain impulses generated in response to painful or injurious stimuli, such as chemical irritants, ischemia, or excessive stretch). Reflexive visceral afferent fibers with cell bodies in the sensory ganglion of the vagus nerve (CN X) accompany the parasympathetic fibers, conveying impulses centrally from nerve endings associated with the following structures:

- Bronchial mucosa, probably in association with tactile sensation for cough reflexes
- Bronchial muscles, possibly involved in stretch reception
- Interalveolar connective tissue, in association with Hering-Breuer reflexes (a mechanism that tends to limit respiratory excursions)
- Pulmonary arteries, serving pressor receptors (receptors sensitive to blood pressure)
- Pulmonary veins, serving chemoreceptors (receptors sensitive to blood gas levels)

Nociceptive afferent fibers from the visceral pleura and bronchi accompany the sympathetic fibers through the sympathetic trunk to the sensory ganglia of upper thoracic spinal nerves, whereas those from the trachea accompany the parasympathetic fibers to the sensory ganglion of the vagus nerve (CN X).

The nerves of the parietal pleura derive from the intercostal and phrenic nerves. The costal pleura and the peripheral part of the diaphragmatic pleura are supplied by the intercostal nerves. They mediate the sensations of touch and pain. The central part of the diaphragmatic pleura and the mediastinal pleura are supplied by the phrenic nerves (Figs. 4.32 and 4.34B, D).

SURFACE ANATOMY OF PLEURAE AND LUNGS

The cervical pleurae and apices of the lungs pass through the superior thoracic aperture deep to the **supraclavicular fossae**, depressions located posterior and superior to the clavicles and lateral to the tendons of the sternocleidomastoid muscles (Fig. 4.41A). The anterior borders of the lungs lie adjacent to the anterior line of reflection of the parietal pleura between the 2nd and 4th costal cartilages. Here, the margin of the left pleural reflection moves laterally and then inferiorly at the cardiac notch to reach the 6th costal cartilage. The anterior border of the left lung is more deeply indented by its cardiac notch. On the right side, the pleural reflection continues inferiorly from the 4th to the 6th costal cartilage, paralleled closely by the anterior border of the right lung. Both pleural reflections and anterior lung borders pass laterally at the 6th costal cartilages. The pleural reflections reach the midclavicular line (MCL) at the level of the 8th costal cartilage, the 10th rib at the midaxillary line (MAL), and the 12th rib at the scapular line (SL). However, the inferior margins of the lungs reach the MCL at the level of the 6th rib, the MAL at the 8th rib, and the SL at the 10th rib, proceeding toward the spinous process of T10 vertebra. They then proceed

toward the spinous process of T12 vertebra. Thus, the parietal pleura generally extends approximately two ribs inferior to the lung.

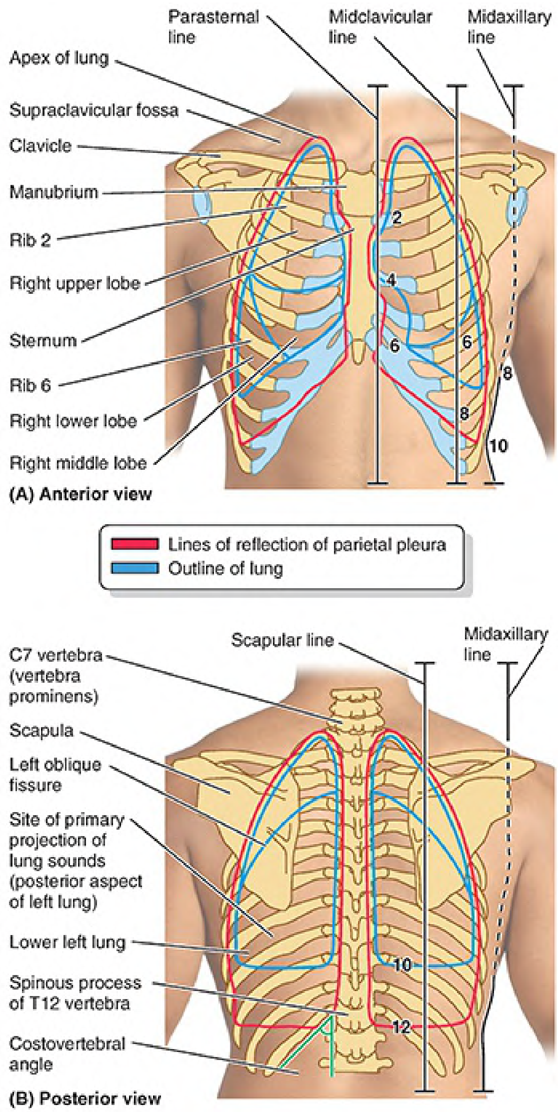


FIGURE 4.41. Surface projection of pleurae and lungs (numbers indicate rib number intersected).

The oblique fissure of the lungs extends from the level of the spinous process of T2 vertebra posteriorly to the 6th costal cartilage anteriorly, which coincides approximately with the medial border of the scapula when the upper limb is elevated above the head (causing the inferior angle to rotate laterally). The horizontal fissure of the right lung extends from the oblique fissure along the 4th rib and costal cartilage anteriorly (Fig. 4.41B).

CLINICAL BOX

PLEURAE, LUNGS, AND TRACHEOBRONCHIAL TREE

Injuries of Cervical Pleura and Apex of Lung

Because of the inferior slope of the 1st pair of ribs and the superior thoracic aperture they form, the cervical pleura and apex of the lung project through this opening into the neck, posterior to the inferior attachments of the sternocleidomastoid muscles. Consequently, the lungs and pleural sacs may be injured in wounds to the base of the neck resulting in a pneumothorax, the presence of air (G. pneuma) in the pleural cavity. The pleura can also be accidentally entered by a needle during attempted subclavian or jugular vein catheterization. The cervical pleura reaches a relatively higher level in infants and young children because of the shortness of their necks. Consequently, the cervical pleura is especially vulnerable to injury during infancy and early childhood.

Injury to Other Parts of Pleurae

The pleurae descend inferior to the costal margin in three regions, where an abdominal incision might inadvertently enter a pleural sac: the right part of the infrasternal angle and right and left costovertebral angles (Fig. 4.41). The small areas of pleura exposed in the costovertebral angles inferomedial to the 12th ribs are posterior to the superior poles of the kidneys. The pleura is in danger here as a pneumothorax may occur, for example, from an incision in the posterior abdominal wall when surgical procedures expose a kidney or trauma. Pleural entry can also occur when the surgeon is dissecting around the esophageal hiatus. This is probably the commonest situation. It is simply treated by aspiration while the patient is still under anesthesia.

Pulmonary Collapse

The lungs (more specifically, the air sacs that collectively make up the lung) are comparable to an inflated balloon when they are distended. If the distension is not maintained, their inherent elasticity will cause them to collapse (atelectasis: secondary atelectasis is the collapse of a previously inflated lung; primary atelectasis refers to the failure of a lung to inflate at birth). An inflated balloon remains distended only as long as its outlet is closed because its walls are free to fully contract. Normal lungs in situ remain distended even when the airway passages are open because the outer surfaces of the lungs (visceral pleura) adhere to the inner surface of the thoracic walls (parietal pleura) as a result of the surface tension provided by the pleural fluid. The elastic recoil of the lungs causes the pressure in the pleural cavities to be subatmospheric. The pressure is usually about −2 mm Hg; during inspiration, it drops to about −8 mm Hg.

If a penetrating wound opens through the thoracic wall or the surface of the lungs, air will

be sucked into the pleural cavity because of the negative pressure (Fig. B4.9). The surface tension adhering visceral to parietal pleura (lung to thoracic wall) will be broken, and the lung will collapse, expelling most of its air because of its inherent elasticity (elastic recoil). When a lung collapses, the pleural cavity (normally a potential space) becomes a real space.

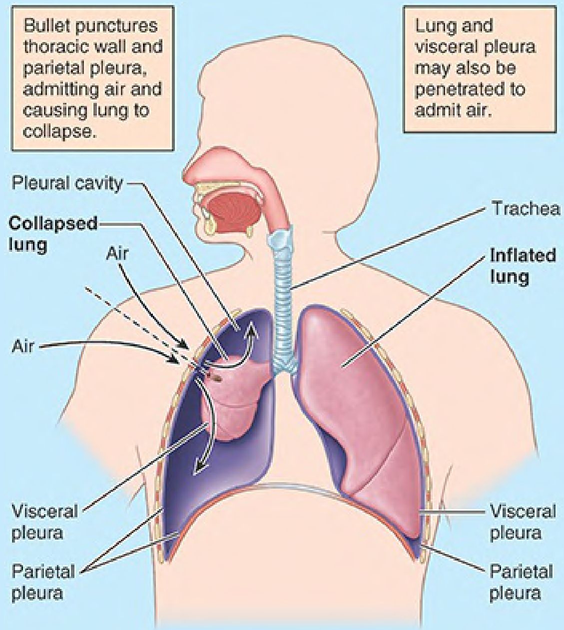


FIGURE B4.9. Pulmonary collapse.

The pleural sacs do not normally communicate; thus, one lung may be collapsed after surgery, for example, without the other lung collapsing. Laceration or rupture of the surface of a lung (and its visceral pleura) or penetration of the thoracic wall (and its parietal pleura) results in hemorrhage and the entrance of air into the pleural cavity. The amount of blood and air that accumulates determines the extent of pulmonary collapse.

When a lung collapses, it occupies less volume within the pulmonary cavity and the pulmonary cavity does not increase in size (in fact, it may decrease in size) during inspiration. This reduction in size will be evident radiographically on the affected side by elevation of the diaphragm above its usual levels, intercostal space narrowing (ribs closer together), and displacement of the mediastinum (mediastinal shift; most evident via the air-filled trachea within it) toward the affected side. In addition, the collapsed lung will usually appear more dense (whiter) surrounded by more radiolucent (blacker) air.

In open-chest surgery, respiration and lung inflation must be maintained by intubating the trachea with a cuffed tube and using a positive-pressure pump, varying the pressure to alternately inflate and deflate the lungs.

Pneumothorax, Hydrothorax, and Hemothorax

Entry of air into the pleural cavity (pneumothorax), resulting from a penetrating wound of the parietal pleura from a bullet, for example, or from rupture of a

pulmonary lesion into the pleural cavity (bronchopulmonary fistula), results in collapse of the lung (Fig. B4.9). Fractured ribs may also tear the visceral pleura and lung, thus producing pneumothorax. The accumulation of a significant amount of fluid in the pleural cavity (hydrothorax) may result from pleural effusion (escape of fluid into the pleural cavity). With a chest wound, blood may also enter the pleural cavity (hemothorax) (Fig. B4.10). Hemothorax results more commonly from injury to a major intercostal or internal thoracic vessel than from laceration of a lung. If both air and fluid (hemopneumothorax, if the fluid is blood) accumulate in the pleural cavity, an air-fluid level or interface (sharp line, horizontal regardless of the patient's position, indicating the upper surface of the fluid) will be seen on a radiograph.

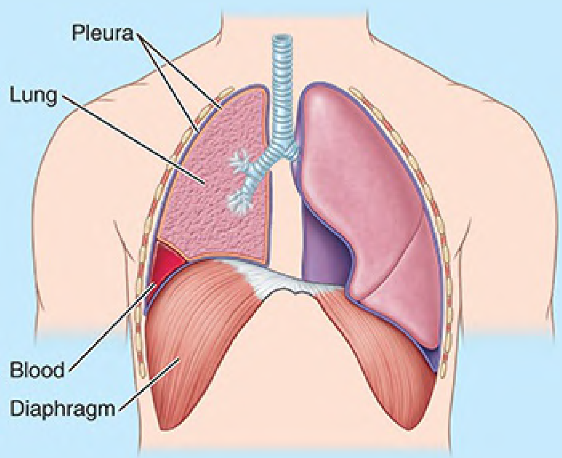


FIGURE B4.10. Hemothorax in right pleural cavity.

Thoracentesis

Sometimes it is necessary to insert a hypodermic needle through an intercostal space into the pleural cavity (thoracentesis) to obtain a sample of fluid or to remove blood or pus (Fig. B4.11). To avoid damage to the intercostal nerve and vessels, the needle is inserted superior to the rib, high enough to avoid the collateral branches. The needle passes through the intercostal muscles and costal parietal pleura into the pleural cavity. When the patient is in the upright position, intrapleural fluid accumulates in the costodiaphragmatic recess. Inserting the needle into the 9th intercostal space in the midaxillary line during expiration will avoid the inferior border of the lung. The needle should be angled upward to avoid penetrating the deep side of the recess (a thin layer of diaphragmatic parietal pleura and diaphragm overlying the liver).

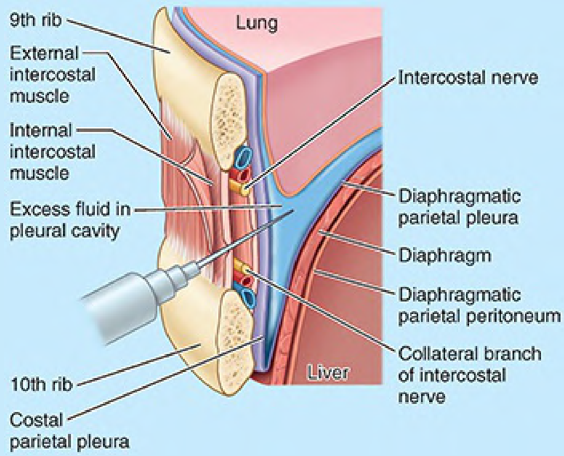


FIGURE B4.11. Technique for midaxillary thoracentesis.

Insertion of a Chest Tube

Major amounts of air, blood, serous fluid, pus, or any combination of these substances in the pleural cavity are typically removed by insertion of a chest tube. A short incision is made in the 5th or 6th intercostal space in the midaxillary line (which is approximately at nipple level). The tube may be directed superiorly (toward the cervical pleura [see Fig. 4.31A]) for air removal or inferiorly (toward the costodiaphragmatic recess) for fluid drainage. The extracorporeal end of the tube (i.e., the end that is outside of the body) is connected to an underwater drainage system, often with controlled suction, to prevent air from being sucked back into the pleural cavity. Removal of air allows reinflation of a collapsed lung. Failure to remove fluid may cause the lung to develop a resistant fibrous covering that inhibits expansion unless it is peeled off (lung decortication).

Pleurectomy and Pleurodesis

Obliteration of a pleural cavity by disease, such as pleuritis (inflammation of pleura), or during surgery (e.g., pleurectomy, the excision of a part of the pleura) (Fig. B4.12A) does not cause appreciable functional consequences; however, it may produce pain during exertion. In other procedures, adherence of the parietal and visceral layers of pleura is induced by covering the apposing layers of pleura with an irritating powder or sclerosing agent (pleurodesis). Pleurectomy and pleurodesis are performed to prevent recurring spontaneous secondary atelectasis (spontaneous lung collapse) caused by chronic pneumothorax or malignant effusion resulting from lung disease (LoCicero et al., 2019).

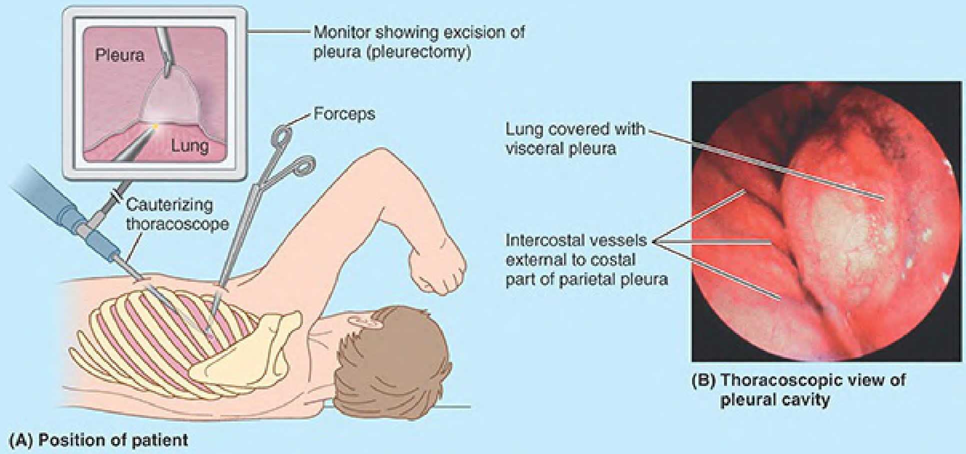


FIGURE B4.12. Pleurectomy.

Thoracoscopy

Thoracoscopy is a diagnostic and sometimes therapeutic procedure in which the pleural cavity is examined with a thoracoscope (Fig. B4.12B). Small incisions are made into the pleural cavity via one to three intercostal spaces. In addition to observation, biopsies can be taken, pathological formations can be excised, drainage can be established, and some thoracic conditions can be treated (e.g., disrupting adhesions or removing plaques).

Pleuritis (Pleurisy)

During inspiration and expiration, the sliding of normally smooth, moist pleurae makes no detectable sound during auscultation of the lungs (listening to breath sounds); however, inflammation of the pleura, pleuritis (pleurisy), makes the lung surfaces rough. The resulting friction (pleural rub) is detectable with a stethoscope. It sounds like a clump of hairs being rolled between the fingers. The inflamed surfaces of pleura may also cause the parietal and visceral layers of pleura to adhere (pleural adhesion). Acute pleuritis is marked by sharp, stabbing pain, especially on exertion, such as climbing stairs, when the rate and depth of respiration may be increased even slightly.

Variations in Lobes of Lung

Variations should be anticipated in the form of the lungs. The oblique and horizontal fissures may be incomplete or absent in some specimens, with consequent reductions in the number or distinctiveness of lobes. Occasionally, an extra fissure divides a lung. Consequently, the left lung sometimes has three lobes and the right lung only two. The superior left lobe may not feature a lingula (see Fig. 4.33A, B). The most common "accessory" lobe is the azygos lobe, which appears in the right lung in

approximately 1% of people. The usually small accessory lobe appears superior to the hilum of the right lung, separated from the rest of the lung by a deep groove lodging the arch of the azygos vein. A less common large azygos lobe may appear as a bifurcated apex.

Appearance of Lungs and Inhalation of Carbon Particles and Irritants

The lungs are light pink in healthy children and people who are nonsmokers and live in a clean environment. The lungs are commonly dark and mottled in most adults who live in either urban or agricultural areas, especially those who smoke, because of the accumulation of carbon and dust particles in the air and irritants in tobacco that are inhaled. Smoker's cough results from the inhalation of these irritants. However, the lungs are capable of accumulating a considerable amount of carbon without being adversely affected. Lymph from the lungs carries special cells (phagocytes) that remove carbon from the gas-exchanging surfaces and deposit it in the "inactive" connective tissue, which supports the lung, or in lymph nodes receiving lymph from the lungs.

Pulmonary Embolism

Obstruction of a pulmonary artery by a blood clot (embolus) is a common cause of morbidity (sickness) and mortality (death). An embolus in a pulmonary artery forms when a blood clot, fat globule, or air bubble travels in the blood to the lungs from a leg vein, for example, after a compound fracture. The embolus passes through the right side of the heart to a lung through a pulmonary artery. It may block a pulmonary artery—pulmonary embolism (PE)—or one of its branches. The pulmonary arteries carry all the blood that has returned to the right heart via the vena caval system. Consequently, the immediate result of PE is partial or complete obstruction of blood flow to the lung. The blockage results in a lung or a sector of a lung that is ventilated with air but not perfused with blood.

When a large embolus occludes a pulmonary artery, the patient suffers acute respiratory distress because of a major decrease in the oxygenation of blood, owing to blockage of blood flow through the lung. Conversely, the right side of the heart may become acutely dilated because the volume of blood arriving from the systemic circuit cannot be pushed through the pulmonary circuit (acute cor pulmonale). In either case, death may occur in a few minutes. A medium-sized embolus may block an artery supplying a bronchopulmonary segment, producing a pulmonary infarct, an area of necrotic (dead) lung tissue.

In physically active people, a collateral circulation—an indirect, accessory blood supply—often exists and develops further when there is a PE so that infarction is not as likely to occur, or at least will not be as devastating. Anastomoses with branches of the bronchial arteries abound in the region of the terminal bronchioles. In ill people with impaired circulation in the lung, such as chronic congestion, PE commonly results in lung infarction.

When an area of visceral pleura is also deprived of blood, it becomes inflamed (pleuritis) and irritates or becomes fused to the sensitive parietal pleura, resulting in pain. Pain from the parietal pleura is referred to the cutaneous distribution of the intercostal nerves to the thoracic wall or, in the case of inferior nerves, to the anterior abdominal wall.

Lung Cancer and Mediastinal Nerves

Lung cancer involving a phrenic nerve may result in paralysis of one half of the diaphragm (hemidiaphragm) (see the Clinical Box "Paralysis of Diaphragm" earlier in this chapter). Because of the intimate relationship of the recurrent laryngeal nerve to the apex of the lung (see Fig. 4.33C), this nerve may be involved in apical lung cancers. This involvement usually results in hoarseness owing to paralysis of a vocal fold (cord) because the recurrent laryngeal nerve supplies all but one of the laryngeal muscles.

Auscultation of Lungs and Percussion of Thorax

Auscultation of the lungs (listening to their sounds with a stethoscope) (Fig. B4.13G) and percussion of the thorax (tapping on fingers pressed firmly on the thoracic wall over the lungs to detect sounds in the lungs) (Fig. B4.13C, D) are important techniques used during physical examinations. Auscultation assesses airflow through the tracheobronchial tree into the lobes of the lung. Percussion helps establish whether the underlying tissues are air filled (resonant sound), fluid filled (dull sound), or solid (flat sound). An awareness of normal anatomy, particularly the projection of the lungs and the portions that are overlapped by bone (e.g., the scapula) with associated muscles, enables the examiner to know where flat and resonant sounds should be expected (Fig. B4.13A, B). Auscultation of the lungs and percussion of the thorax should always include the root of the neck where the apices of the lungs are located (Fig. B4.13A, B, E–G; see Fig. 4.41A). When clinicians refer to "auscultating the base of the lung," they are not usually referring to its diaphragmatic surface or anatomical base. They are usually referring to the inferoposterior part of the inferior lobe. To auscultate this area, the clinician applies a stethoscope to the posterior thoracic wall at the level of the 10th thoracic vertebra (Fig. B4.13E).

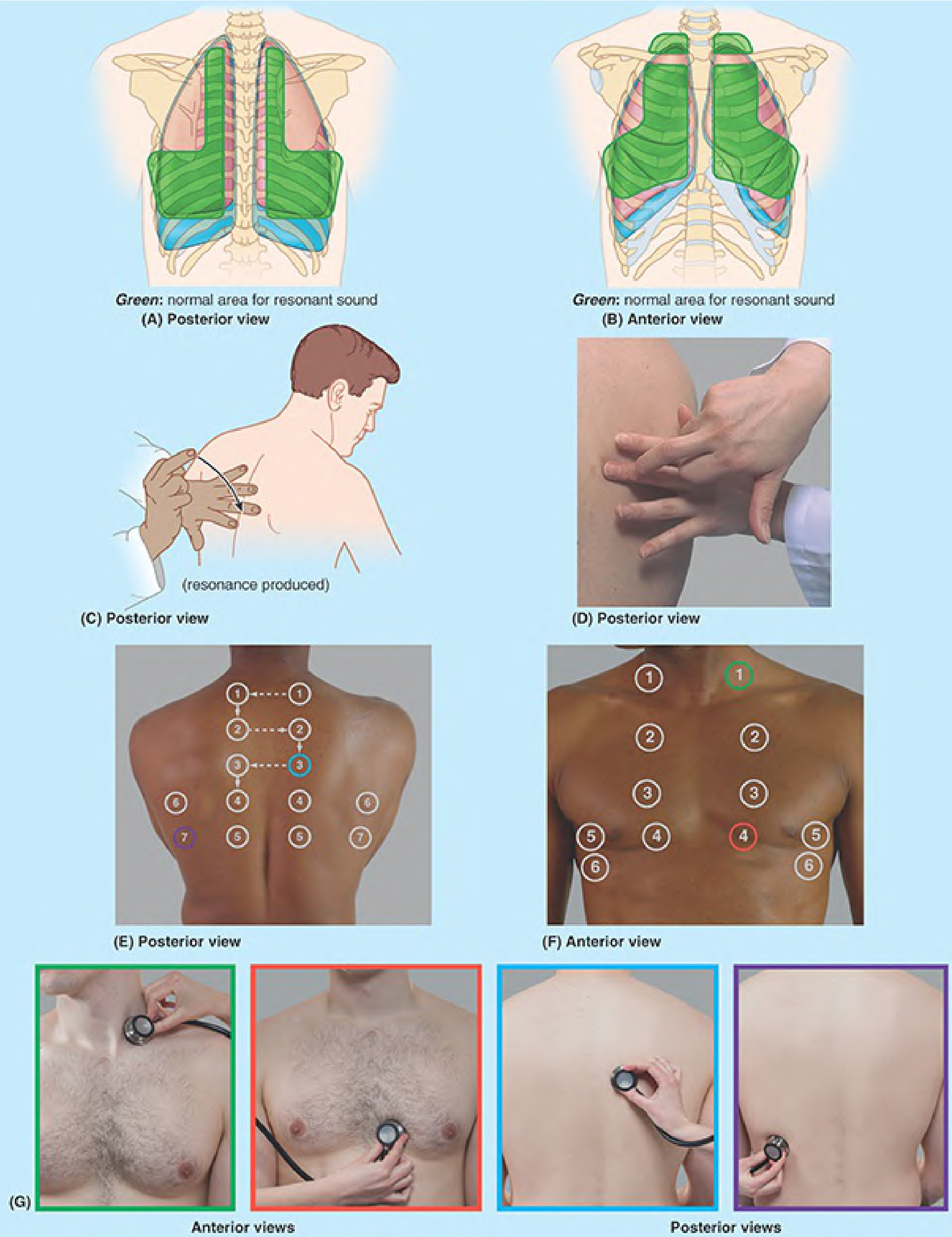


FIGURE B4.13. Percussion and auscultation of lungs. A and B. Normal areas of resonant sound (green) avoid scapula (in part **A**) and dense overlying muscle (in part **B**). **C and D.** Bimanual percussion. **E–G.** Placement of stethoscope for auscultation of lungs.

Aspiration of Foreign Bodies

Because the right main bronchus is wider and shorter and runs more vertically than the left main bronchus, aspirated foreign bodies or food is more likely to enter and lodge in it or one of its branches. A potential hazard encountered by dentists is an aspirated foreign body, such as a piece of tooth or filling material, that is likely to enter the right main bronchus (Fig. B4.14). To maintain a more sterile environment and avoid aspiration of foreign objects, some dentists insert a thin rubber dam into the oral cavity

before performing certain procedures.

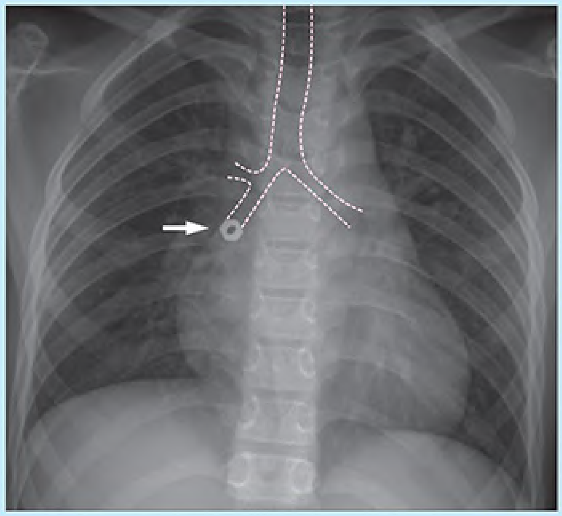


FIGURE B4.14. **Aspiration of foreign body.** This 12-year-old boy had a nervous habit of putting things in his mouth. He accidentally aspirated a nut (as in "nuts and bolts") and it became lodged in his right intermediate bronchus (arrow). Bronchoscopy was required to remove the foreign body.

Bronchoscopy

A bronchoscope is an endoscope for inspecting the interior of the tracheobronchial tree. As a bronchoscope proceeds down the trachea to enter a main bronchus, a keel-like ridge, the carina (L., keel of a boat), is observed between the orifices of the right and left main bronchi (Fig. B4.15). A cartilaginous projection of the last tracheal ring, the carina normally lies in a sagittal plane and has a fairly definite edge. If the tracheobronchial lymph nodes in the angle between the main bronchi are enlarged because cancer cells have metastasized from a bronchogenic carcinoma, for example, the carina is distorted, widened posteriorly, and immobile. Hence, morphological changes in the carina are important diagnostic signs to bronchoscopists in assisting with the differential diagnosis of respiratory disease.

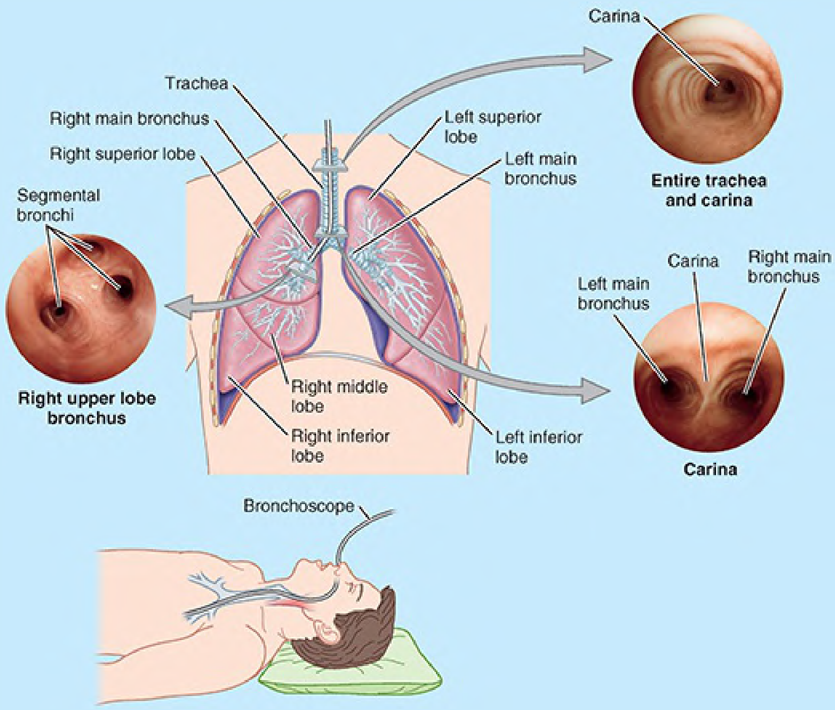


FIGURE B4.15. Bronchoscopy.

The mucous membrane covering the carina is one of the most sensitive areas of the tracheobronchial tree and is associated with the cough reflex. For example, when someone aspirates a peanut, they choke and cough. Once the peanut passes the carina, coughing usually stops. If the choking victim is inverted to make use of gravity to expel the foreign body (postural drainage of the lungs), lung secretions passing the carina also cause coughing, which assists the expulsion.

Lymphatic Drainage and Pleural Adhesion

If the parietal and visceral layers of pleura adhere (pleural adhesion), the lymphatic vessels in the lung and visceral pleura may anastomose (join) with parietal lymphatic vessels that drain into the axillary lymph nodes. The presence of carbon particles in these nodes is presumptive evidence of pleural adhesion.

Segmental Atelectasis

Blockage of a segmental bronchus (e.g., by an aspirated object) will prevent air from reaching the bronchopulmonary segment it supplies. The air in the blocked segment will gradually be absorbed into the blood, and the segment will collapse (Fig. B4.16). Initially, volume loss may cause a mediastinal shift to the side of the atelectasis, but ipsilateral segment(s) may expand to compensate for the reduced volume of the collapsed segment.

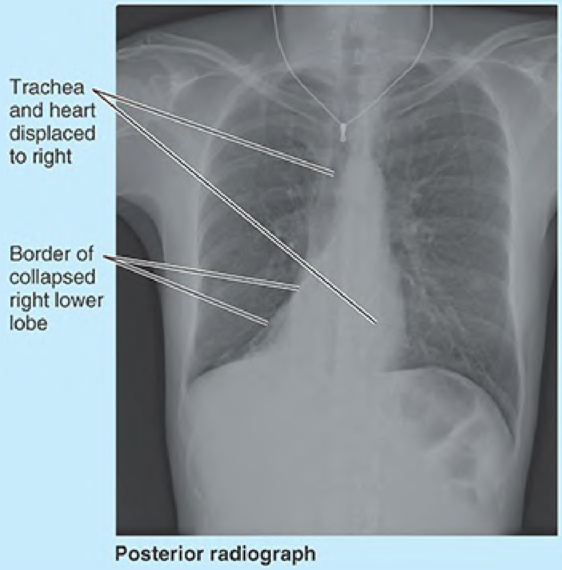


FIGURE B4.16. **Segmental atelectasis.**

Lung Resections

Knowledge of the anatomy of the bronchopulmonary segments (see Fig. 4.35) is essential for precise interpretation of radiographs and other medical images of the lungs. Awareness of these segments is also essential for surgical resection of diseased segments. Bronchial and pulmonary disorders such as tumors or abscesses (collections of pus) often localize in a bronchopulmonary segment, which may be surgically resected. During treatment of lung cancer, the surgeon may remove a whole lung (pneumonectomy), a lobe (lobectomy), or a bronchopulmonary segment (segmentectomy).

Hemoptysis

Spitting of blood or blood-stained sputum derived from the lungs and/or bronchial tree is due to bronchial or pulmonary hemorrhage. In about 95% of cases, the bleeding is from branches of the bronchial arteries. The most common causes include bronchitis (inflammation of the bronchi), lung cancer, pneumonia, bronchiectasis, pulmonary embolism, and tuberculosis.

Bronchogenic Carcinoma

The term bronchogenic carcinoma was once a specific designation for cancer arising in a bronchus—usually squamous (oat) or small cell carcinoma (cancer)—but now the term refers to any lung cancer. Lung cancer (carcinoma, CA) is mainly caused by cigarette smoking. Most cancers arise in the mucosa of the large bronchi and produce a persistent, productive cough or hemoptysis (spitting of blood). Malignant (cancer) cells can be detected in the sputum (saliva-borne matter). The primary tumor, observed radiologically

as an enlarging lung mass (Fig. B4.17), metastasizes early to the bronchopulmonary lymph nodes and subsequently to other thoracic lymph nodes. Common sites of hematogenous metastases (spreading through the blood) of cancer cells from a bronchogenic carcinoma are the brain, bones, lungs, and suprarenal glands. The tumor cells probably enter the systemic circulation by invading the wall of a sinusoid or venule in a lung. It is then transported through the pulmonary veins, left heart, and aorta to these structures. Often, the lymph nodes superior to the clavicle—the supraclavicular lymph nodes—are enlarged when bronchogenic carcinoma develops owing to metastases of cancer cells from the tumor. Consequently, the supraclavicular lymph nodes were once referred to as sentinel lymph nodes because their enlargement alerted the physician to the possibility of malignant disease in the thoracic and/or abdominal organs. More recently, the term sentinel lymph node has been applied to a node or nodes that first receive lymph draining from a cancer-containing area, regardless of location, following injection of blue dye containing radioactive tracer (technetium-99).

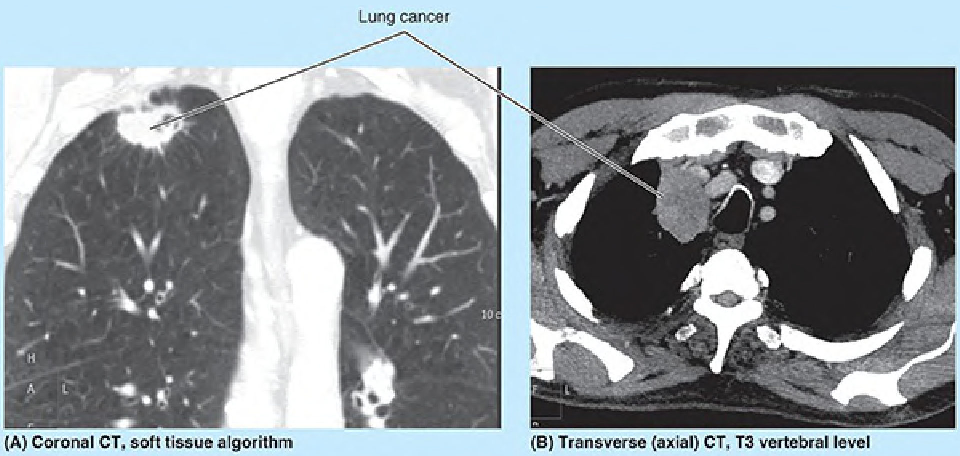


FIGURE B4.17. Lung cancer. Masses in the anterior segment of the right upper lobe of two different patients showing invasion of the pleural surface of the lung (**A**) and of the superior mediastinum (**B**).

Pleural Pain

The visceral pleura is relatively insensitive to pain because it receives no somatic nerve fibers for general sensation. The parietal pleura (particularly the costal part) is extremely sensitive to pain. The parietal pleura is richly supplied by branches of the intercostal and phrenic nerves. Irritation of the parietal pleura may produce local pain or referred pain projected to dermatomes supplied by the same spinal (posterior root) ganglia and segments of the spinal cord. Irritation of the costal and peripheral parts of the diaphragmatic pleura results in local pain and referred pain to the dermatomes of the thoracic and abdominal walls. Irritation of the mediastinal and central diaphragmatic areas of parietal pleura results in referred pain to the root of the neck and over the shoulder (C3–C5 dermatomes).

Chest X-Ray

The most common radiographic study of the thorax is produced by a posterior to anterior (postero-anterior or PA) projection (Fig. B4.18A) of the X-ray beam producing an **anterior radiograph of the thorax** (commonly, "chest X-ray") (Fig. B4.18B). These studies are used primarily to examine the thoracic respiratory and cardiovascular structures, as well as the thoracic wall. The radiologist or technician places the anterior aspect of the patient's thorax against the X-ray detector or film cassette and rotates the shoulders anteriorly to move the scapulae away from the superior parts of the lungs (Fig. B4.18A). The person takes a deep breath and holds it. The deep inspiration causes the diaphragmatic domes to descend, filling the lungs with air (increasing their radiolucency) and moving the inferior margins of the lungs into the costodiaphragmatic recesses. The inferior margins should appear as sharp, acute angles. Pleural effusions accumulating here do not allow the inferior margin to descend into the recess, and the usual radiolucent air density here is replaced with a hazy radiopacity. Lobar disease, such as pneumonia, appears as localized, relatively radiodense areas that contrast with the radiolucency of the remainder of the lung.

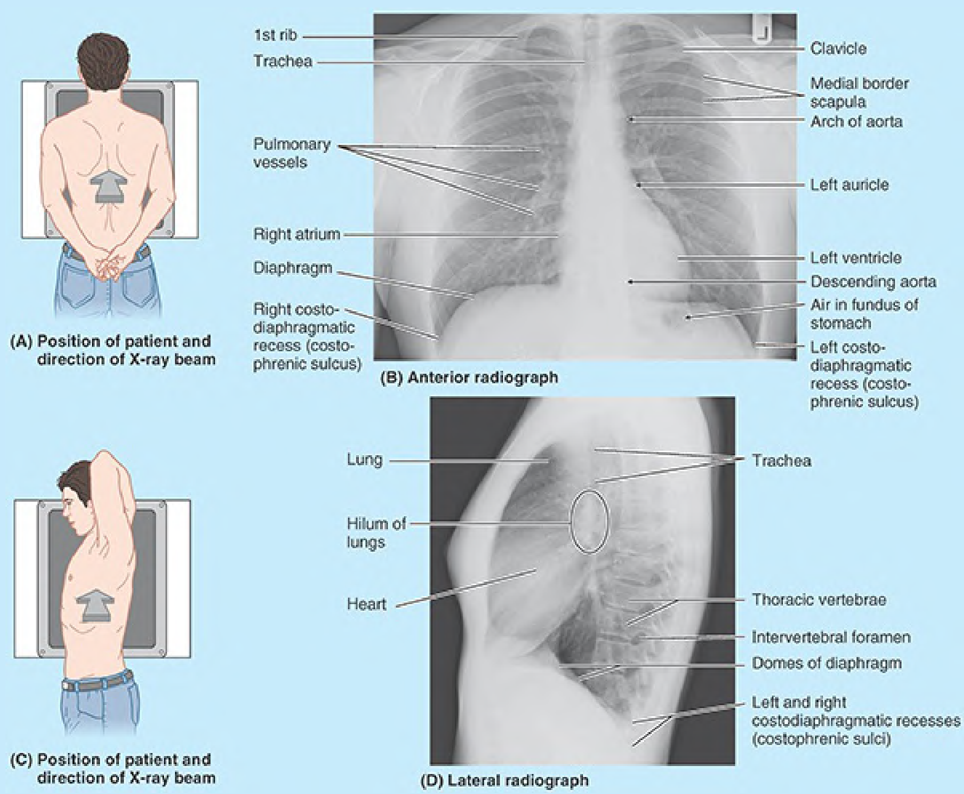


FIGURE B4.18. Thoracic radiography. A. Position for taking anterior radiograph (arrow—X-ray beam). **B.** Anterior radiograph of thorax ("chest X-ray"), viewed as if facing patient. **C.** Position for taking lateral radiograph (arrow—X-ray beam). **D.** Lateral radiograph of the thorax ("lateral chest X-ray"), viewed in direction of beam.

Soft tissues, including those of the breasts, cast shadows of varying density, depending on their composition and thickness. The superior margins of the clavicles are paralleled by

shadows cast by the skin and subcutaneous tissues covering these bones. Ribs and inferior cervical and superior thoracic vertebrae are also visible. Most ribs stand out clearly against the background of the relatively lucent lungs (Fig. B4.18B). The inferior ribs tend to be obscured by the diaphragm and the superior contents of the abdomen (e.g., liver), depending on the phase of respiration when the radiograph was taken. Usually, only lateral margins of the manubrium are visible in these projections. The lower thoracic vertebrae are more or less obscured by the sternum and mediastinum. Uncommonly, cervical ribs, missing ribs, forked ribs, and fused ribs are visible. Occasionally, the costal cartilages are calcified in older people (especially the inferior cartilages).

The right and left domes of the diaphragm are separated by the central tendon, which is obscured by the heart. The right dome of the diaphragm, formed by the underlying liver, is usually approximately half an intercostal space higher than the left dome. The lungs, because of their low density, are relatively lucent compared with surrounding structures. The lungs exhibit a radiodensity similar to that of air and, therefore, produce paired radiolucent areas. The lungs are obscured inferior to the domes of the diaphragm and anterior and posterior to the mediastinum. The pulmonary arteries are visible in the hilar region of each lung. Intrapulmonary vessels are slightly larger in caliber in the inferior lobes. Transverse sections of the air-filled bronchi have lucent centers and thin walls.

When a patient is too sick to stand up (e.g., an intubated/ventilated ICU patient), the chest X-ray is taken as an anteroposterior (AP) projection. The radiograph is still viewed as an anterior radiograph, but it is important to know that an AP projection was used because structures appear somewhat different with regard to relative sizes and skeletal relationships.

Areas obscured in anterior radiographs are usually visible in **lateral radiographs**. From this perspective, the middle and inferior thoracic vertebrae are visible, although they are partially obscured by the ribs (Fig. B4.18D). The three parts of the sternum are also visible. Lateral radiographs allow better viewing of a lesion or anomaly confined to one side of the thorax. Both domes of the diaphragm are often visible as they arch superiorly from the sternum. A lateral radiograph is made using a lateral projection, with the side of the thorax against the film cassette or X-ray detector and the upper limbs elevated over the head (Fig. B4.18C).

The Bottom Line: Pleurae, Lungs, and Tracheobronchial Tree

Pleurae: The thoracic cavity is divided into three compartments: two bilateral pulmonary cavities that are entirely separated by the central mediastinum. ■ The pulmonary cavities are completely lined by membranous parietal pleura that reflects onto the lungs at their roots, becoming the visceral pleura that intimately invests the lungs' outer surface. ■ The

pleural cavity between the two layers of the pleural sac is empty, except for a lubricating film of pleural fluid. The pleural fluid prevents the lungs from collapse and causes the lungs to expand when the thorax expands for inhalation. ■ Most of the parietal pleura is named for the structures it covers: costal, mediastinal, and diaphragmatic parts. ■ The cervical pleura extends into the root of the neck forming a dome above the anterior aspect of the 1st rib and clavicle. ■ Parietal pleura is sensitive, being innervated by the phrenic and intercostal nerves. ■ Because the lungs do not completely fill the pulmonary cavities, and because of the protrusion of the diaphragm and underlying abdominal viscera into the inferior thoracic aperture, a peripheral gutter—the costodiaphragmatic recess—is formed. Extrapulmonary fluids (exudates) accumulate in this space when the trunk is erect.

Lungs: The lungs are the vital organs of respiration in which venous blood exchanges oxygen and carbon dioxide with a tidal airflow. ■ Air and blood are delivered to each lung via its root, consisting of a pulmonary artery and vein and a main bronchus and their branches/tributaries that enter the lung at its hilum. ■ Both lungs are pyramidal, having an apex, a base, three surfaces, and three borders. ■ The right lung has three lobes that are separated by horizontal and oblique fissures. ■ The left lung has two lobes, separated by an oblique fissure, and features a marked cardiac notch in its anterior border owing to the asymmetrical placement of the heart.

Tracheobronchial tree: The tracheobronchial tree is distinguished grossly by cartilage in its walls. ■ The bifurcation of the trachea (at the level of the sternal angle) is asymmetrical: The right main bronchus is more vertical and of greater caliber than the left. ■ The bronchi and pulmonary arteries course and branch together: The main bronchi/arteries each serve a lung, second-order lobar branches supply two left and three right lobes, and third-order segmental branches supply the 8–10 bronchopulmonary segments of each lung. ■ The bronchopulmonary segment is the smallest resectable division of the lung. ■ The pulmonary veins run independent intersegmental courses, draining adjacent bronchopulmonary segments. ■ The structures of the root of the lung and supporting tissues (and part of the esophagus) are supplied by bronchial arteries. ■ The lymphatic drainage of the lungs follows a mostly predictable course, with most of the right lung and the superior lobe of the left lung following ipsilateral pathways to the right lymphatic trunk and thoracic duct. However, most of the drainage from the left inferior lobe passes to the right pathway. Nerve fibers of the pulmonary plexuses are autonomic (bronchoconstrictive and secretomotor vagal parasympathetic fibers; inhibitory and vasoconstrictive sympathetic fibers) and visceral afferent (reflex and pain).

Overview of Mediastinum

The mediastinum (Mod. L., middle septum), occupied by the mass of tissue between the two pulmonary cavities, is the central compartment of the thoracic cavity (Fig. 4.42). It is covered on each side by mediastinal pleura and contains all the thoracic viscera and structures except the lungs. The mediastinum extends from the superior thoracic aperture to the diaphragm inferiorly and from the sternum and costal cartilages anteriorly to the bodies of the thoracic vertebrae posteriorly. Unlike the rigid structure observed in an embalmed cadaver, the mediastinum in living people is a highly mobile region because it consists primarily of hollow (liquid- or air-filled) visceral structures united only by loose connective tissue, often infiltrated with fat. The major structures in the mediastinum are also surrounded by blood and lymphatic vessels, lymph nodes, nerves, and fat.

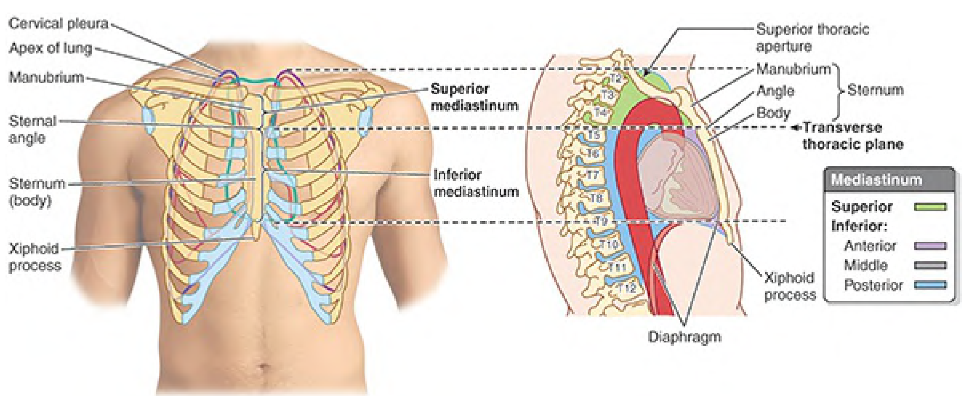


FIGURE 4.42. Subdivisions and levels of mediastinum. The subdivisions of the mediastinum are demonstrated as if the person were in the supine position. The level of the viscera relative to the subdivisions as defined by thoracic cage landmarks depends on the individual's position because the soft tissue of the mediastinum sags with the pull of gravity.

The looseness of the connective tissue and the elasticity of the lungs and parietal pleura on each side of the mediastinum enable it to accommodate movement as well as volume and pressure changes in the thoracic cavity, for example, those resulting from movements of the diaphragm, thoracic wall, and tracheobronchial tree during respiration, contraction (beating) of the heart and pulsations of the great arteries, and passage of ingested substances through the esophagus. The connective tissue becomes more fibrous and rigid with age; hence, the mediastinal structures become less mobile. The mediastinum is divided into superior and inferior parts for descriptive purposes (Fig. 4.42).

The **superior mediastinum** extends inferiorly from the superior thoracic aperture to the horizontal plane that includes the sternal angle anteriorly and passes approximately through the junction (IV disc) of T4 and T5 vertebrae posteriorly, often referred to as the **transverse thoracic plane**. The **inferior mediastinum**—between the transverse thoracic plane and the diaphragm—is further subdivided by the pericardium into anterior, middle, and posterior parts. The pericardium and its contents (heart and roots of its great vessels) constitute the **middle mediastinum**. Some structures, such as the esophagus, pass vertically through the mediastinum and therefore lie in more than one mediastinal compartment.

Pericardium

The middle mediastinum includes the pericardium, heart, and roots of its great vessels (see Fig. 4.33C)—ascending aorta, pulmonary trunk, and SVC—passing to and from the heart.

The **pericardium** is a fibroserous membrane that covers the heart and the beginning of its great vessels (Fig. 4.43; see Fig. 4.33C). The pericardium is a closed sac composed of two layers. The tough external layer, the **fibrous pericardium**, is continuous with the central tendon of the diaphragm (see Fig. 4.32). The internal surface of the fibrous pericardium is lined with a glistening serous membrane, the **parietal layer of serous pericardium**. This layer is reflected onto the heart at the great vessels (aorta, pulmonary trunk and veins, and superior and inferior venae cavae) as the **visceral layer of serous pericardium**. The **serous pericardium** is composed mainly of mesothelium, a single layer of flattened cells forming an epithelium that lines both the internal surface of the fibrous pericardium and the external surface of the heart. The fibrous pericardium is

- continuous superiorly with the tunica adventitia (perivascular connective tissue) of the great vessels entering and leaving the heart and with the pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia
- attached anteriorly to the posterior surface of the sternum by the **sternopericardial ligaments**, which are highly variable in their development
- bound posteriorly by loose connective tissue to structures in the posterior mediastinum
- continuous inferiorly with the central tendon of the diaphragm (Fig. 4.43C, D)

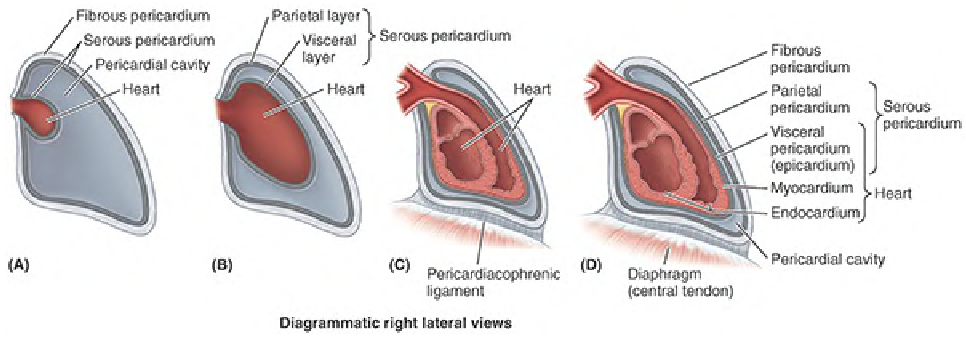


FIGURE 4.43. Pericardium and heart. The heart occupies the middle mediastinum and is enclosed by pericardium, composed of two parts. The tough, outer fibrous pericardium stabilizes the heart and helps prevent it from overdilating. Between the fibrous pericardium and the heart is a "collapsed" sac, the serous pericardium. **A and B.** Schematically, the embryonic heart invaginates the wall of the serous sac and enlarges. **C and D.** Ultimately, it practically obliterates the pericardial cavity, leaving only a potential space between the layers of serous pericardium. The pericardiacophrenic ligament (**D**) is the continuity of the fibrous pericardium with the central tendon of the diaphragm.

The inferior wall (floor) of the fibrous pericardial sac is firmly attached and confluent (partially blended) centrally with the central tendon of the diaphragm. The site of continuity has been referred to as the **pericardiacophrenic ligament**; however, the fibrous pericardium and central tendon are not separate structures that fused together secondarily, nor are they separable by dissection. As a result of the attachments just described, the heart is relatively well tethered in place inside this fibrous pericardial sac. The pericardium is influenced by movements of the heart and great vessels, the sternum, and the diaphragm.

The heart and roots of the great vessels within the pericardial sac lie posterior to the sternum, costal cartilages, and anterior ends of the 3rd–5th ribs on the left side (Fig. 4.44). The heart and pericardial sac are situated obliquely, approximately two thirds to the left and one third to the right of the median plane. If you turn your face to the left about 45° without rotating your shoulders, the rotation of your head approximates that of the heart relative to the trunk.

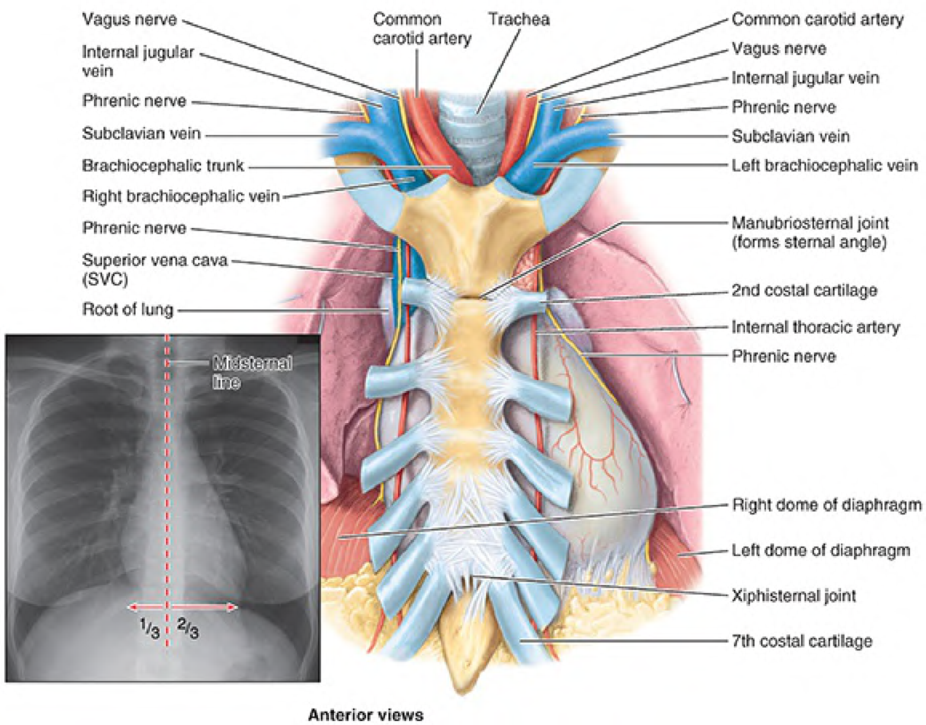


FIGURE 4.44. Pericardial sac in relation to sternum and phrenic nerves. This dissection exposes the pericardial sac posterior to the body of the sternum from just superior to the sternal angle to the level of the xiphisternal joint. The pericardial sac (and therefore the heart) lies approximately one third to the right of the midsternal line and two thirds to the left (**inset**). Note: Compare the anterior thoracic wall features (sternum, costal cartilages, internal thoracic arteries) of this figure to Figure 4.19D.

The fibrous pericardium protects the heart against sudden overfilling because it is so unyielding and closely related to the great vessels that pierce it superiorly. The ascending aorta carries the pericardium superiorly beyond the heart to the level of the sternal angle.

The **pericardial cavity** is the potential space between opposing layers of the parietal and visceral layers of serous pericardium. It normally contains a thin film of fluid that enables the heart to move and beat in a frictionless environment.

The visceral layer of serous pericardium forms the epicardium, the outermost of three layers of the heart wall. It extends onto the beginning of the great vessels, becoming continuous with the parietal layer of serous pericardium (1) where the aorta and pulmonary trunk leave the heart and (2) where the superior vena cava (SVC), inferior vena cava (IVC), and pulmonary veins enter the heart. **The transverse pericardial sinus** is a transversely running passage within the pericardial cavity between these two groups of vessels and the reflections of serous pericardium around them. The reflection of the serous pericardium around the second group of vessels

defines the oblique pericardial sinus. The pericardial sinuses form during development of the heart as a consequence of the folding of the primordial heart tube. As the heart tube folds, its venous end moves posterosuperiorly (Fig. 4.45) so that the venous end of the tube lies adjacent to the arterial end, separated only by the transverse pericardial sinus (Fig. 4.46). Thus, the transverse sinus is posterior to the intrapericardial parts of the pulmonary trunk and ascending aorta, anterior to the SVC, and superior to the atria of the heart.

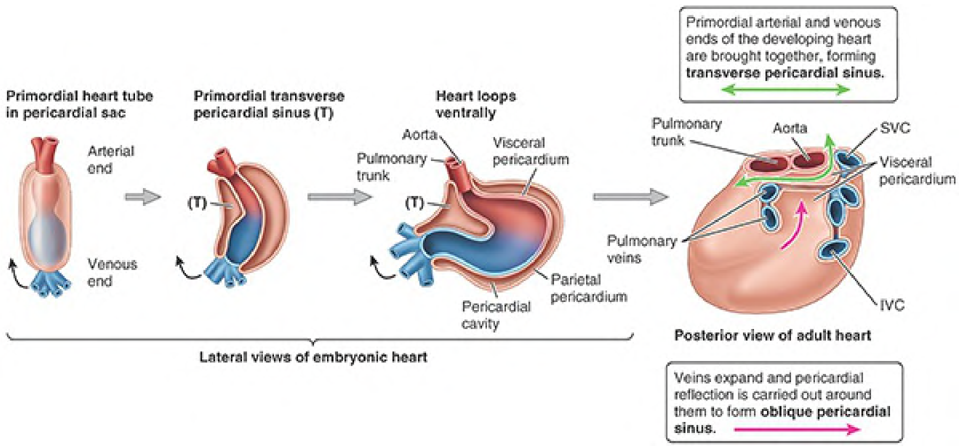


FIGURE 4.45. Development of heart and pericardium. The longitudinal embryonic heart tube invaginates the double-layered pericardial sac (somewhat like placing a wiener in a hot dog bun). The primordial heart tube then "loops" ventrally, bringing the primordial arterial and venous ends of the heart together and creating the primordial transverse pericardial sinus (T) between them. With growth of the embryo, the veins expand and spread apart, inferiorly and laterally. The pericardium reflected around them forms the boundaries of the oblique pericardial sinus. IVC, inferior vena cava; SVC, superior vena cava.

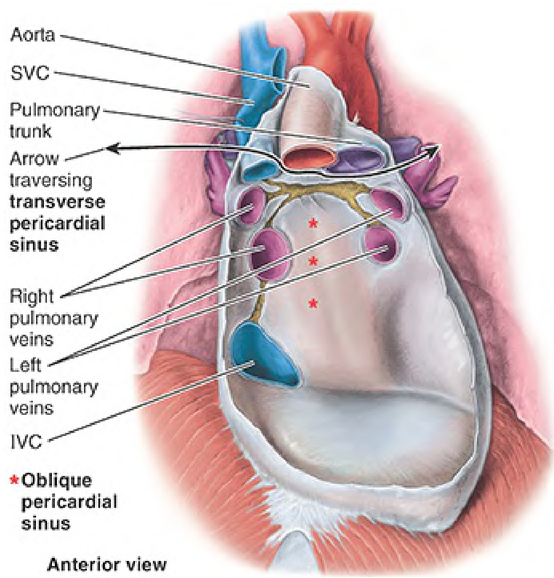


FIGURE 4.46. Interior of pericardial sac. To remove the heart from the sac, the eight vessels piercing the sac were severed. The oblique pericardial sinus is circumscribed by five veins. The superior vena cava (SVC), pulmonary trunk, and especially the aorta have intrapericardial portions. The peak of the pericardial sac occurs at the junction of the ascending aorta and the arch of the aorta. The transverse pericardial sinus is bounded anteriorly by the serous pericardium covering the posterior aspect of the pulmonary trunk and ascending aorta, posteriorly by that covering the SVC, and inferiorly by the visceral pericardium covering the atria of the heart. IVC, inferior vena cava.

As the veins of the heart develop and expand, a pericardial reflection surrounding them forms the **oblique pericardial sinus**, a wide pocket-like recess in the pericardial cavity posterior to the base (posterior aspect) of the heart, formed by the left atrium (Figs. 4.45 and 4.46). The oblique sinus is bounded laterally by the pericardial reflections surrounding the pulmonary veins and IVC and posteriorly by the pericardium overlying the anterior aspect of the esophagus. The oblique sinus can be entered inferiorly and will admit several fingers; however, they cannot pass around any of these structures because the sinus is a blind sac (cul-de-sac).

The **arterial supply of the pericardium** (Fig. 4.47) is mainly from a slender branch of the internal thoracic artery, the **pericardiacophrenic artery**, that often accompanies or at least parallels the phrenic nerve to the diaphragm. Smaller contributions of blood come from the

- musculophrenic artery, a terminal branch of the internal thoracic artery
- bronchial, esophageal, and superior phrenic arteries, branches of the thoracic aorta
- coronary arteries (visceral layer of serous pericardium only), the first branches of the aorta

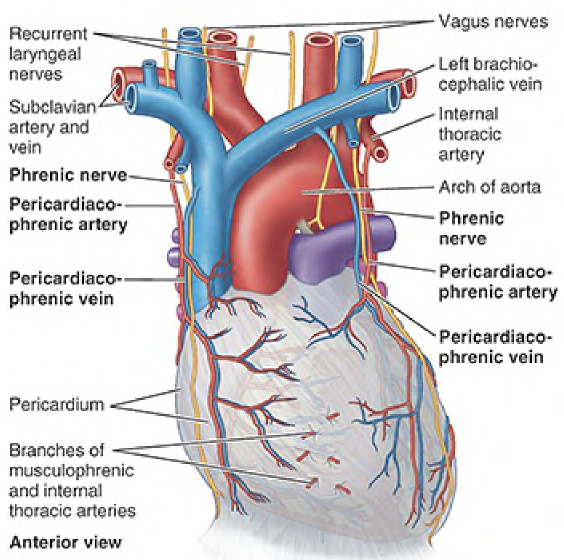


FIGURE 4.47. Arterial supply and venous drainage of pericardium. The arteries of the pericardium derive primarily from the internal thoracic arteries with minor contributions from their musculophrenic branches and the thoracic aorta. The veins are tributaries of the brachiocephalic veins.

The **venous drainage of the pericardium** is from the

- pericardiacophrenic veins, tributaries of the brachiocephalic (or internal thoracic) veins
- variable tributaries of the azygos venous system (discussed later in this chapter)

The **nerve supply of the pericardium** is from the

- phrenic nerves (C3–C5), primary source of sensory fibers; pain sensations conveyed by these nerves are commonly referred to the skin (C3–C5 dermatomes) of the ipsilateral supraclavicular region (top of the shoulder of the same side)
- vagus nerves, function uncertain
- sympathetic trunks, vasomotor

C L I N I C A L
B O X

MEDIASTINUM OVERVIEW AND PERICARDIUM

Somatic Innervation of Pericardium by Phrenic Nerves

The innervation of the pericardium by the phrenic nerves is a consequence of development, and the course of these somatic nerves between the heart and the lungs makes little sense unless the development of the fibrous pericardium is considered. A membrane (pleuropericardial membrane) that includes the phrenic nerve is split or separated from the developing body wall by the developing pleural cavities, which extend to accommodate the rapidly growing lungs (Fig. B4.19). The lungs develop within the pericardioperitoneal canals that run on both sides of the foregut, connecting the thoracic and abdominal cavities on each side of the septum transversum. The canals (primordial pleural cavities) are too small to accommodate the rapid growth of the lungs, and the lungs begin to invade the mesenchyme of the body wall posteriorly, laterally, and anteriorly, splitting it into two layers: an outer layer that becomes the definitive thoracic wall (ribs and intercostal muscles) and an inner or deep layer (the pleuropericardial membranes) that contains the phrenic nerves and forms the fibrous pericardium (Moore et al., 2020). Thus, the pericardial sac can be a source of pain just as the rib cage or parietal pleura can be, although the pain tends to be referred to dermatomes of the body wall—areas from which we more commonly receive sensation.

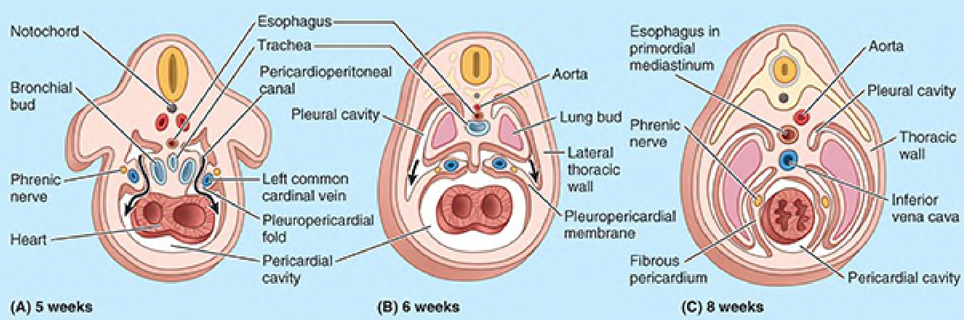


FIGURE B4.19. Transverse sections through an embryo, cranial to septum transversum. These sections show the development of the fibrous pericardium and relocation of the phrenic nerve. Exuberant growth of the lungs into the primordial pleura cavities (pleuroperitoneal canals) cleaves the pleuropericardial folds from the body wall, creating the pleuropericardial membranes. The membranes include the phrenic nerve and become the fibrous pericardium that encloses the heart and separates the pleural and pericardial cavities.

Levels of Viscera Relative to Mediastinal Divisions

The division between the superior and inferior mediastinum (transverse thoracic plane) is defined in terms of bony body wall structures and is mostly independent of

gravitational effects. The level of the viscera relative to the subdivisions of the mediastinum depends on the position of the person (i.e., gravity). When a person is supine or when a cadaver is being dissected, the viscera are positioned higher (more superior) relative to the subdivisions of the mediastinum than when the person is upright (Figs. 4.42 and B4.20A). In other words, gravity pulls the viscera downward when we are vertical.

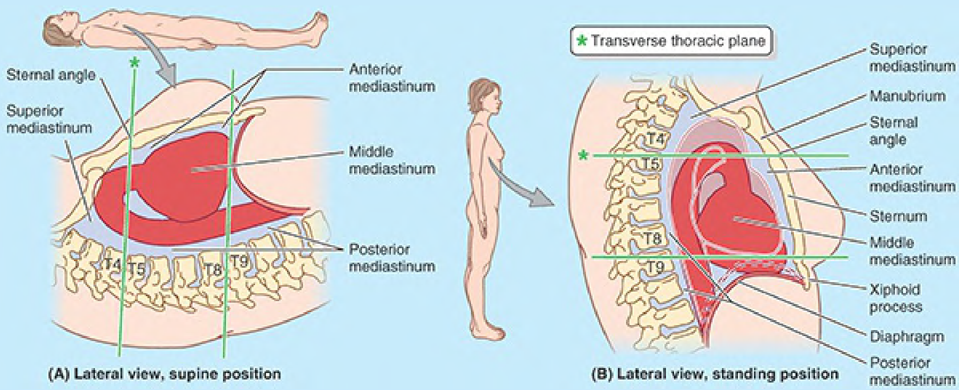


FIGURE B4.20. Shift in position of mediastinal viscera relative to skeletal planes in supine (A) and standing (B) positions due to gravity.

Anatomical descriptions traditionally describe the level of the viscera as if the person were in the supine position—that is, lying face upward in bed or on the operating or dissection table. In this position, the abdominal viscera spread horizontally, pushing the mediastinal structures superiorly. However, when the individual is standing or sitting erect, the levels of the viscera are as shown in Figure B4.20B. This occurs because the soft structures in the mediastinum, especially the pericardium and its contents, the heart and great vessels, and the abdominal viscera supporting them, sag inferiorly under the influence of gravity.

In the supine position (Fig. B4.20A), the

- Arch of the aorta lies superior to the transverse thoracic plane.
- Bifurcation of the trachea is transected by the transverse thoracic plane.
- Central tendon of the diaphragm (or the diaphragmatic surface or inferior extent of the heart) lies at the level of the xiphisternal junction and vertebra T9.

When standing or sitting upright (Fig. B4.20B), the

- Arch of the aorta is transected by the transverse thoracic plane.
- Tracheal bifurcation lies inferior to the transverse thoracic plane.
- Central tendon of the diaphragm may fall to the level of the middle of the xiphoid process and T9–T10 IV discs.

This vertical movement of mediastinal structures must be considered during physical and radiological examinations in the erect and supine positions. In addition, when lying on one's side, the mediastinum sags toward the lower side under the pull of gravity.

Mediastinoscopy and Mediastinal Biopsies

Using an endoscope (mediastinoscope), surgeons can see much of the mediastinum and conduct minor surgical procedures. They insert the endoscope through a small incision at the root of the neck, just superior to the jugular notch of the manubrium, into the potential space anterior to the trachea. During mediastinoscopy, surgeons can view or biopsy mediastinal lymph nodes to determine if cancer cells have metastasized to them (e.g., from a bronchogenic carcinoma). The mediastinum can also be explored and biopsies taken through an anterior thoracotomy (removing part of a costal cartilage; see the Clinical Box "Thoracotomy, Intercostal Space Incisions, and Rib Excision" earlier in this chapter).

Widening of Mediastinum

Radiologists and emergency physicians sometimes observe widening of the mediastinum when viewing chest radiographs. Any structure in the mediastinum may contribute to pathological widening. It is often observed after trauma resulting from a head-on collision, for example, which produces hemorrhage into the mediastinum from lacerated great vessels, such as the aorta or SVC. Frequently, malignant lymphoma (cancer of lymphatic tissue) produces massive enlargement of mediastinal lymph nodes and widening of the mediastinum. Hypertrophy (enlargement) of the heart (often occurring due to congestive heart failure, in which venous blood returns to the heart at a rate that exceeds cardiac output) is a common cause of widening of the inferior mediastinum.

Surgical Significance of Transverse Pericardial Sinus

The transverse pericardial sinus is especially important to cardiac surgeons. After the pericardial sac is opened anteriorly, a finger can be passed through the transverse pericardial sinus posterior to the ascending aorta and pulmonary trunk (Fig. B4.21). By passing a surgical clamp or a ligature around these large vessels, inserting the tubes of a coronary bypass machine, and then tightening the ligature, surgeons can stop or divert the circulation of blood in these arteries while performing cardiac surgery, such as coronary artery bypass grafting.

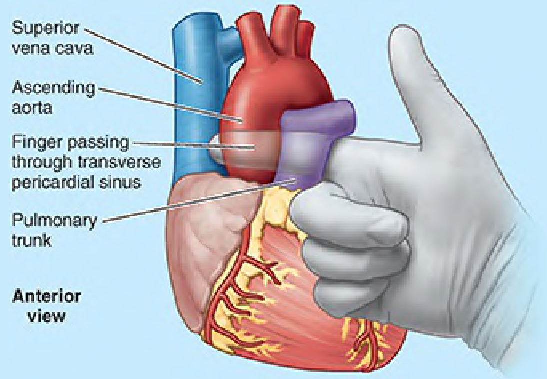


FIGURE B4.21. Transverse pericardial sinus.

Exposure of Venae Cavae

After ascending through the diaphragm, the entire thoracic part of the IVC (approximately 2 cm) is enclosed by the pericardium. Consequently, the pericardial sac must be opened to expose this terminal part of the IVC. The same is true for the terminal part of the SVC, which is partly inside and partly outside the pericardial sac.

Pericarditis, Pericardial Rub, and Pericardial Effusion

The pericardium may be involved in several disease processes. Inflammation of the pericardium (pericarditis) usually causes chest pain. It may also make the serous pericardium rough. Usually, the smooth opposing layers of serous pericardium make no detectable sound during auscultation. If there is pericarditis, friction of the roughened surfaces may sound like the rustle of silk when listening with a stethoscope over the left sternal border and upper ribs (pericardial friction rub). A chronically inflamed and thickened pericardium may calcify, seriously hampering cardiac efficiency. Some inflammatory diseases produce pericardial effusion (passage of fluid from pericardial capillaries into the pericardial cavity, or an accumulation of pus). As a result, the heart becomes compressed (unable to expand and fill fully) and ineffective. Noninflammatory pericardial effusions often occur with congestive heart failure, in which venous blood returns to the heart at a rate that exceeds cardiac output, producing right cardiac hypertension (elevated pressure in the right side of the heart).

Cardiac Tamponade

The fibrous pericardium is a tough, inelastic, closed sac that contains the heart, normally the only occupant other than a thin lubricating layer of pericardial fluid. If extensive pericardial effusion exists, the compromised volume of the sac does not allow full expansion of the heart, limiting the amount of blood the heart can receive, which in turn reduces cardiac output. Cardiac tamponade (heart compression) is a potentially lethal

condition because heart volume is increasingly compromised by the fluid outside the heart but inside the pericardial cavity.

Blood in the pericardial cavity, hemopericardium, likewise produces cardiac tamponade. Hemopericardium may result from perforation of a weakened area of heart muscle owing to a previous myocardial infarction (MI) or heart attack, from bleeding into the pericardial cavity after cardiac operations, or from stab wounds. This situation is especially lethal because of the high pressure involved and the rapidity with which the fluid accumulates. The heart is increasingly compressed and circulation fails. The veins of the face and neck become engorged because of the backup of blood, beginning where the SVC enters the pericardium.

In patients with pneumothorax—air or gas in the pleural cavity—the air may dissect along connective tissue planes and enter the pericardial sac, producing a pneumopericardium.

Pericardiocentesis

Drainage of fluid from the pericardial cavity, pericardiocentesis, is usually necessary to relieve cardiac tamponade. To remove the excess fluid, a large-bore needle may be inserted through the left 5th or 6th intercostal space near the sternum. This approach to the pericardial sac is possible because the cardiac notch in the left lung and the shallower notch in the left pleural sac leave part of the pericardial sac exposed—the **bare area of the pericardium** (see Figs. 4.31A and 4.32). The pericardial sac may also be reached via the xiphocostal angle by passing the needle superoposteriorly (Fig. B4.22). At this site, the needle avoids the lung and pleurae and enters the pericardial cavity; however, care must be taken not to puncture the internal thoracic artery or its terminal branches. In acute cardiac tamponade from hemopericardium, an emergency thoracotomy may be performed (the thorax is rapidly opened) so that the pericardial sac may be incised to immediately relieve the tamponade and stop the hemorrhage from the heart (see the Clinical Box “Thoracotomy, Intercostal Space Incisions, and Rib Excision” earlier in this chapter).

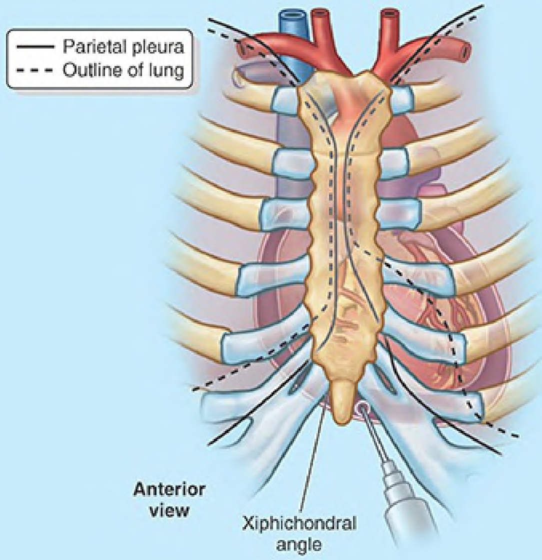
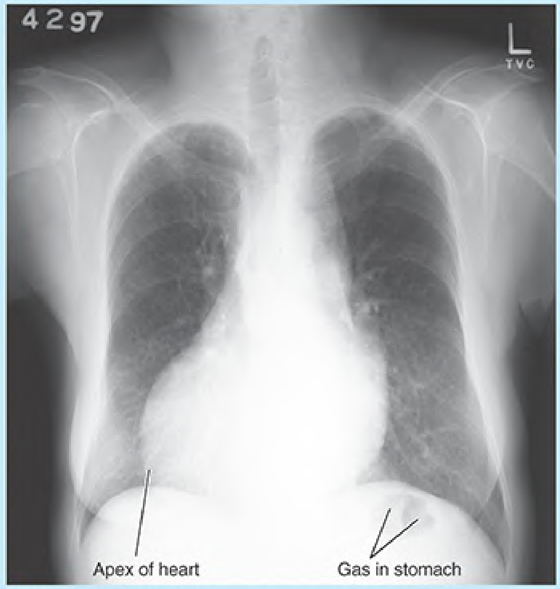


FIGURE B4.22. Pericardiocentesis.

Positional Abnormalities of Heart

Abnormal folding of the embryonic heart tube to the left instead of the right may cause the position of the heart to be completely reversed so that the apex is misplaced to the right instead of the left—dextrocardia (Fig. B4.23). This congenital anomaly is the most common positional abnormality of the heart, but it is still relatively uncommon. Dextrocardia is associated with mirror image positioning of the great vessels and arch of the aorta. This birth defect may be part of a general transposition of the thoracic and abdominal viscera (situs inversus), or the transposition may affect only the heart (isolated dextrocardia). In dextrocardia with situs inversus, the incidence of accompanying cardiac defects is low, and the heart usually functions normally. In isolated dextrocardia, however, the congenital anomaly may be complicated by severe cardiac anomalies, such as transposition of the great arteries (Moore et al., 2020).



Anterior radiograph

FIGURE B4.23. **Dextrocardia.**

The Bottom Line: Mediastinum Overview and Pericardium

Mediastinum overview: The mediastinum is the central compartment of the thoracic cavity and contains all thoracic viscera except the lungs. ■ Occupying structures are hollow (fluid or air filled) and, although contained between bony formations anteriorly and posteriorly, lie between “pneumatic packing,” inflated to constantly changing volumes on each side. ■ The mediastinum is a pliable, dynamic structure that is moved by structures contained within it (e.g., heart) and surrounding it (the diaphragm and other movements of respiration) as well as by the effect of gravity and body position. ■ The superior mediastinum (above the transverse thoracic plane) is occupied by the trachea and upper parts of the great vessels. ■ The middle part (most) of the inferior mediastinum is occupied by the heart. ■ Most of the posterior mediastinum is occupied by structures vertically traversing all or much of the thorax.

Pericardium: The pericardium is a fibroserous sac, invaginated by the heart and roots of the great vessels, that encloses the serous cavity surrounding the heart. ■ The fibrous pericardium is inelastic, attached anteriorly and inferiorly to the sternum and diaphragm, and blends with the adventitia of the great vessels as they enter or leave the sac. Thus, it holds the heart in its middle mediastinal position and limits expansion (filling) of the heart. ■ If fluid or a tumor occupies the pericardial space, the capacity of the heart is

compromised. ■ The serous pericardium lines the fibrous pericardium and the exterior of the heart. This glistening lubricated surface allows the heart (attached only by its afferent and efferent vessels and related reflections of serous membrane) the free movement required for its "wringing-out" motions during contraction. ■ The parietal layer of the serous pericardium is sensitive. Pain impulses conducted from it by the somatic phrenic nerves result in referred pain sensations.

Heart

The **heart**, slightly larger than one's loosely clenched fist, is a double, self-adjusting suction and pressure pump. The parts of the pump work in unison to propel blood to all parts of the body. The right side of the heart (right heart) receives poorly oxygenated (venous) blood from the body through the SVC and IVC and pumps it through the pulmonary trunk and arteries to the lungs for oxygenation (Fig. 4.48A). The left side of the heart (left heart) receives well-oxygenated (arterial) blood from the lungs through the pulmonary veins and pumps it into the aorta for distribution to the body.

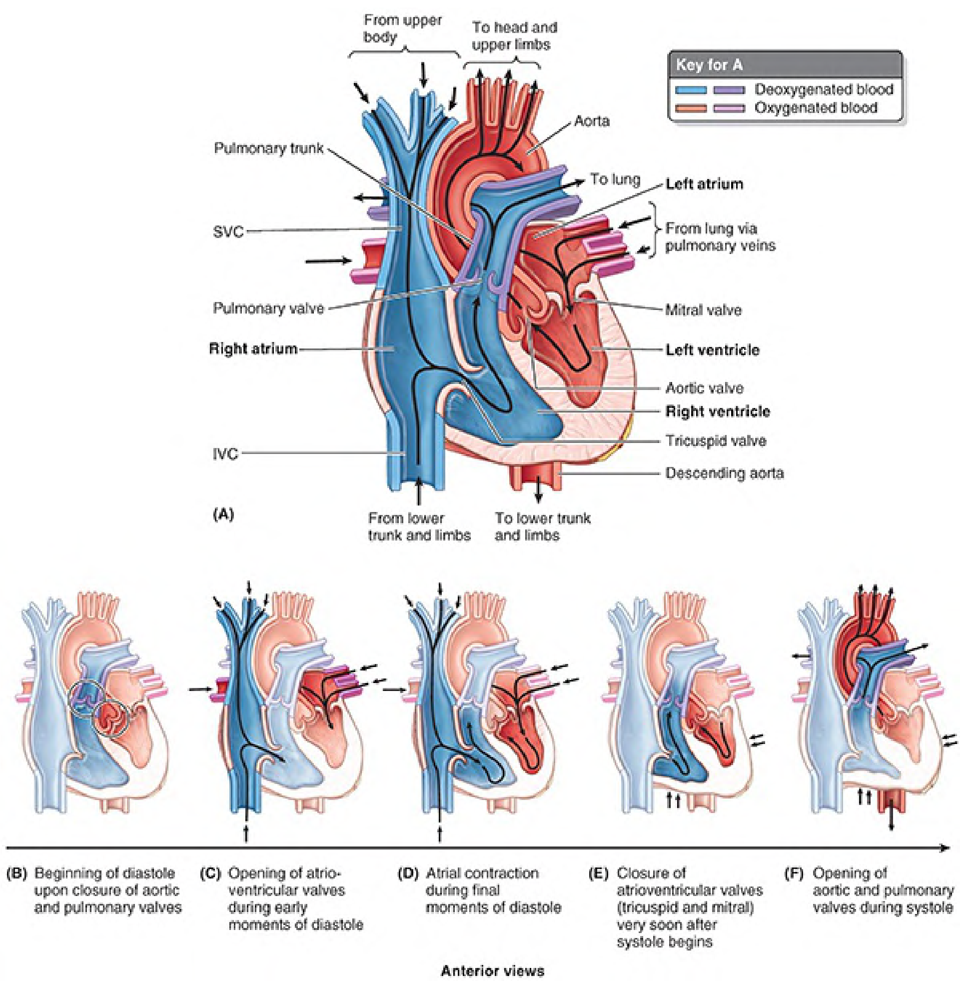


FIGURE 4.48. **Cardiac cycle. A.** Circulation of blood through heart. The right heart (blue side) is the pump for the pulmonary circuit; the left heart (red side) is the pump for the systemic circuit. **B–F.** Stages of cardiac cycle. The cardiac cycle describes the complete movement of the heart or heartbeat and includes the period from the beginning of one heartbeat to the beginning of the next one. The cycle consists of diastole (ventricular relaxation and filling) and systole (ventricular contraction and emptying). See physiological correlation in Figure 4.49. Arrows, direction of blood flow.

The heart has four chambers: **right** and **left atria** and **right** and **left ventricles**. The atria are receiving chambers that pump blood into the ventricles (the discharging chambers). The synchronous pumping actions of the heart's two atrioventricular (AV) pumps (right and left chambers) constitute the **cardiac cycle** (Fig. 4.48B–F). The cycle begins with a period of ventricular elongation and filling (**diastole**) and ends with a period of ventricular shortening and emptying (**systole**).

Two **heart sounds** are heard with a stethoscope: a lub (1st) sound as the blood is transferred from the atria into the ventricles and a dub (2nd) sound as the ventricles expel blood from the heart. The heart sounds are produced by the snapping shut of the one-way valves that normally keep blood from flowing backward during contractions of the heart (Fig. 4.49).

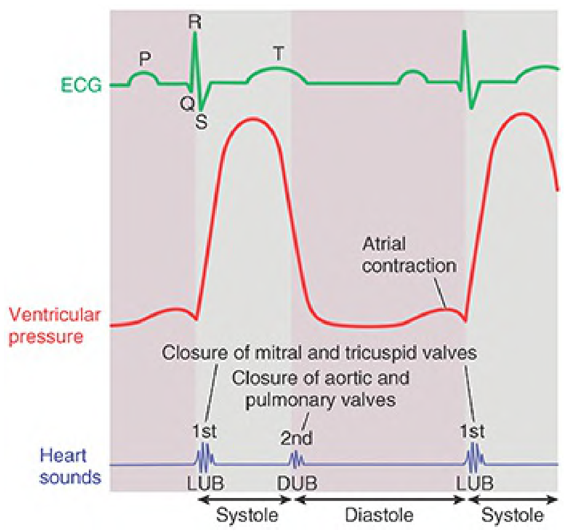


FIGURE 4.49. **Correlation of normal electrocardiogram (ECG), ventricular pressure, and heart sounds.** The closed mitral and tricuspid valves of systole are illustrated in Figure 4.55C, and the closed aortic and pulmonary valves of diastole in Figure 4.55B.

The wall of each heart chamber consists of three layers, from superficial to deep (see Fig. 4.43):

1. **Endocardium**, a thin internal layer (endothelium and subendothelial connective tissue) or lining membrane of the heart that also covers its valves
2. **Myocardium**, a thick, helical middle layer composed of cardiac muscle
3. **Epicardium**, a thin external layer (mesothelium) formed by the visceral layer of serous pericardium

The walls of the heart consist mostly of myocardium, especially in the ventricles. When the ventricles contract, they produce a wringing motion because of the double helical orientation of

the cardiac muscle fibers (Torrent-Guasp et al., 2001) (Fig. 4.50). This motion initially ejects the blood from the ventricles as the outer (basal) spiral contracts, first narrowing and then shortening the heart, reducing the volume of the ventricular chambers. Continued sequential contraction of the inner (apical) spiral elongates the heart, followed by widening as the myocardium briefly relaxes, increasing the volume of the chambers to draw blood from the atria.

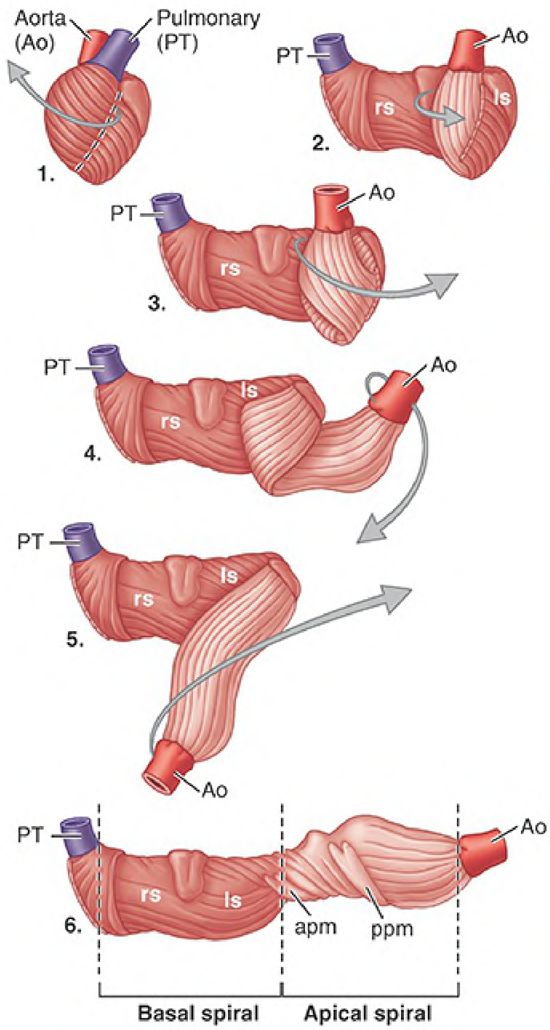


FIGURE 4.50. Arrangement of myocardium and fibrous skeleton of heart. The helical (double spiral) arrangement of the myocardium. When the superficial myocardium is incised along the anterior interventricular groove (dashed line in 1) and peeled back starting at its origin from the fibrous ring of the pulmonary trunk (PT; 2), the thick double spirals of the ventricular myocardial band are revealed (3). The ventricular myocardial band is progressively unwrapped (3–6). A band of nearly horizontal fibers forms an outer basal spiral (dark muscle; 6) that constitutes the outer wall of the right ventricle (right segment, rs) and external layer of the outer wall of the left ventricle (left segment, ls). The deeper apical spiral (light muscle) constitutes the internal layer of the outer wall of the left ventricle. Its crisscrossing fibers make up the interventricular septum. Thus, the septum, like the outer wall of the left ventricle, is also double layered. The sequential contraction of the myocardial band enables the ventricles to function as parallel, sucking and propelling pumps; on contraction, the ventricles do not merely collapse inward but rather wring themselves out. apm, anterior papillary muscles; ppm, posterior papillary muscles.

The cardiac muscle fibers are anchored to the fibrous **skeleton of the heart** (Fig. 4.51). This

is a complex framework of dense collagen forming four **fibrous rings** (L. annuli fibrosi) that surround the orifices of the valves, a right and left **fibrous trigone** (formed by connections between rings), and the membranous parts of the interatrial and interventricular septa. The fibrous skeleton of the heart

- keeps the orifices of the AV and semilunar valves patent and prevents them from being overly distended by an increased volume of blood pumping through them
- provides attachments for the leaflets and cusps of the valves
- provides attachment for the myocardium, which, when uncoiled, forms a continuous **ventricular myocardial band** that originates primarily from the fibrous ring of the pulmonary valve and inserts primarily into the fibrous ring of the aortic valve (Fig. 4.50)
- forms an electrical "insulator" by separating the myenterically conducted impulses of the atria and ventricles so that they contract independently and by surrounding and providing passage for the initial part of the AV bundle of the conducting system of the heart (discussed later in this chapter)

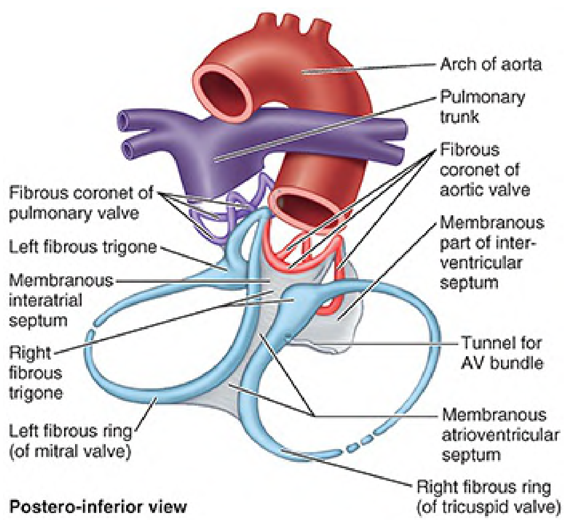


FIGURE 4.51. Fibrous skeleton of heart. The isolated fibrous skeleton is composed of four fibrous rings (or two rings and two "coronets"), each encircling a valve; two trigones; and the membranous portions of the interatrial, interventricular, and atrioventricular septa. AV, atrioventricular.

Externally, the atria are demarcated from the ventricles by the **coronary sulcus** (**atrioventricular groove**), and the right and left ventricles are demarcated from each other by **anterior** and **posterior interventricular (IV) sulci** (grooves) (Fig. 4.52B, C). The heart appears trapezoidal from an anterior or posterior view (Fig. 4.52A, D), but in three dimensions, it is shaped like a tipped-over pyramid with its apex (directed anteriorly and to the left) (Fig. 4.52B inset), a base (opposite the apex, facing mostly posteriorly), and four sides.

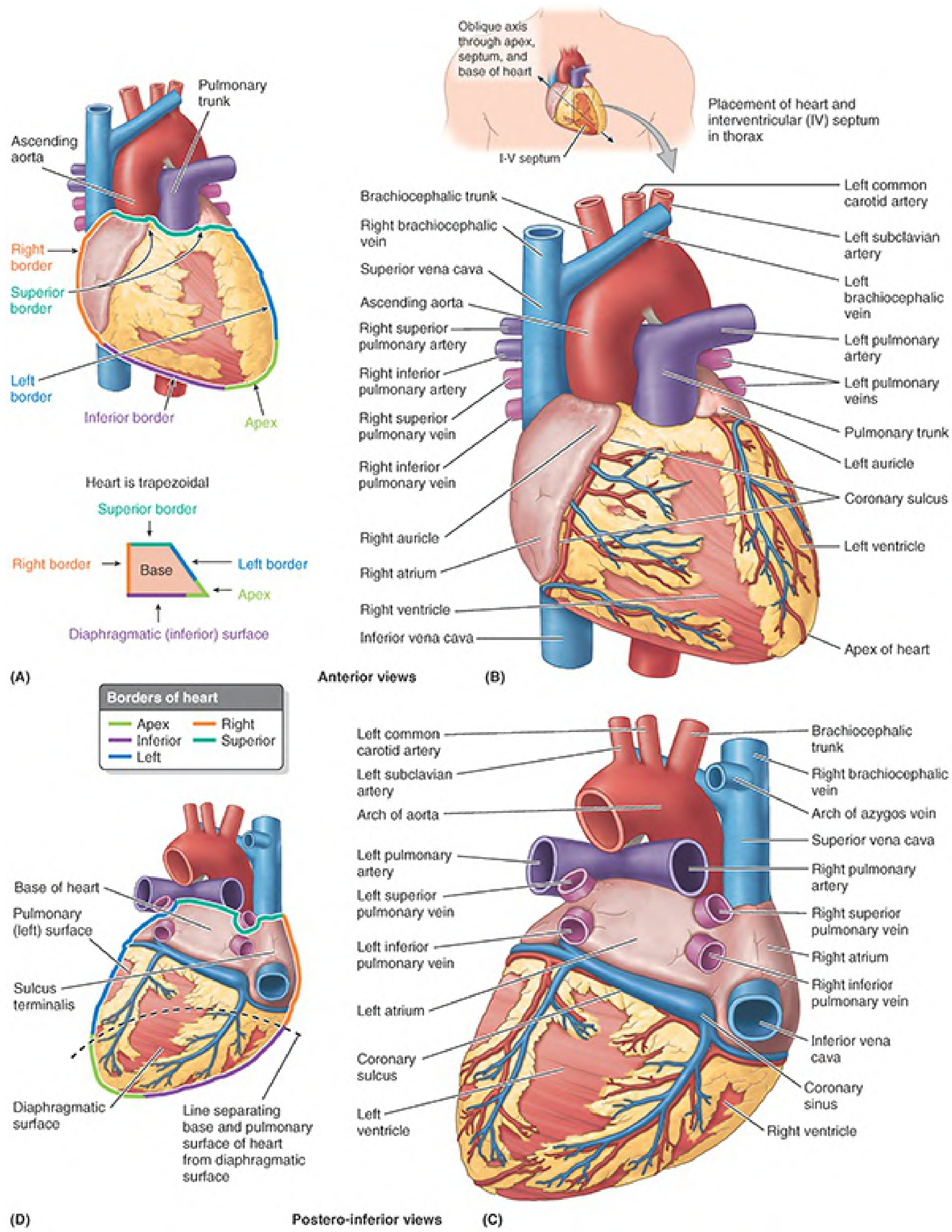


FIGURE 4.52. Shape, orientation, surfaces, and borders of heart. A and B. Sternocostal surface of the heart and relationship of great vessels. The ventricles dominate this surface (two thirds right ventricle, one third left ventricle). **C and D.** Pulmonary (left) and diaphragmatic (inferior) surfaces and base of the heart as well as relationship of great vessels.

The **apex of the heart** (Fig. 4.52B)

- is formed by the inferolateral part of the left ventricle
- lies posterior to the left 5th intercostal space in adults, usually approximately 9 cm (a hand's breadth) from the median plane
- normally remains motionless throughout the cardiac cycle
- is where the sounds of mitral valve closure are maximal (**apex beat**); the apex underlies the site where the heartbeat may be auscultated on the thoracic wall.

The **base of the heart** (Fig. 4.52B inset, C, D)

- is the heart's posterior aspect (opposite the apex)
- is formed mainly by the left atrium, with a lesser contribution by the right atrium
- faces posteriorly toward the bodies of vertebrae T6–T9 and is separated from them by the pericardium, oblique pericardial sinus, esophagus, and aorta
- extends to the bifurcation of the pulmonary trunk superiorly, and inferiorly to the coronary sulcus
- receives the pulmonary veins on the right and left sides of its left atrial portion and the superior and inferior venae cavae at the superior and inferior ends of its right atrial portion

The four surfaces of the heart (Fig. 4.52A–D) are as follows

1. **anterior (sternocostal) surface**, formed mainly by the right ventricle
2. **diaphragmatic (inferior) surface**, formed mainly by the left ventricle and partly by the right ventricle; it is related mainly to the central tendon of the diaphragm
3. **right pulmonary surface**, formed mainly by the right atrium
4. **left pulmonary surface**, formed mainly by the left ventricle; it forms the cardiac impression in the left lung

The heart appears trapezoidal in both anterior (Fig. 4.52A, B) and posterior views (Fig. 4.52C, D). The four borders of the heart are as follows:

1. **right border** (slightly convex), formed by the right atrium and extending between the SVC and the IVC
2. **inferior border** (nearly horizontal), formed mainly by the right ventricle and slightly by the left ventricle
3. **left border** (oblique, nearly vertical), formed mainly by the left ventricle and slightly by the left auricle
4. **superior border**, formed by the right and left atria and auricles in an anterior view; the ascending aorta and pulmonary trunk emerge from this border and the SVC enters its right side. Posterior to the aorta and pulmonary trunk and anterior to the SVC, this border forms the inferior boundary of the transverse pericardial sinus.

The **pulmonary trunk**, approximately 5 cm long and 3 cm wide, is the arterial continuation of the right ventricle and divides into right and left pulmonary arteries. The pulmonary trunk and arteries conduct low-oxygen blood to the lungs for oxygenation (Fig. 4.52B; see Fig. 4.48A).

RIGHT ATRIUM

The right atrium forms the right border of the heart and receives venous blood from the SVC, IVC, and coronary sinus (Fig. 4.52B, D). The ear-like **right auricle** is a conical muscular pouch that projects from this chamber like an add-on room, increasing the capacity of the atrium as it overlaps the ascending aorta.

The interior of the right atrium (Fig. 4.53) has a

- smooth, thin-walled, posterior part (the **sinus venarum**) on which the venae cavae (SVC and IVC) and coronary sinus open, bringing poorly oxygenated blood into the heart
- rough, muscular anterior wall composed of pectinate muscles (L. musculi pectinati)
- right AV orifice through which the right atrium discharges the poorly oxygenated blood it has received into the right ventricle

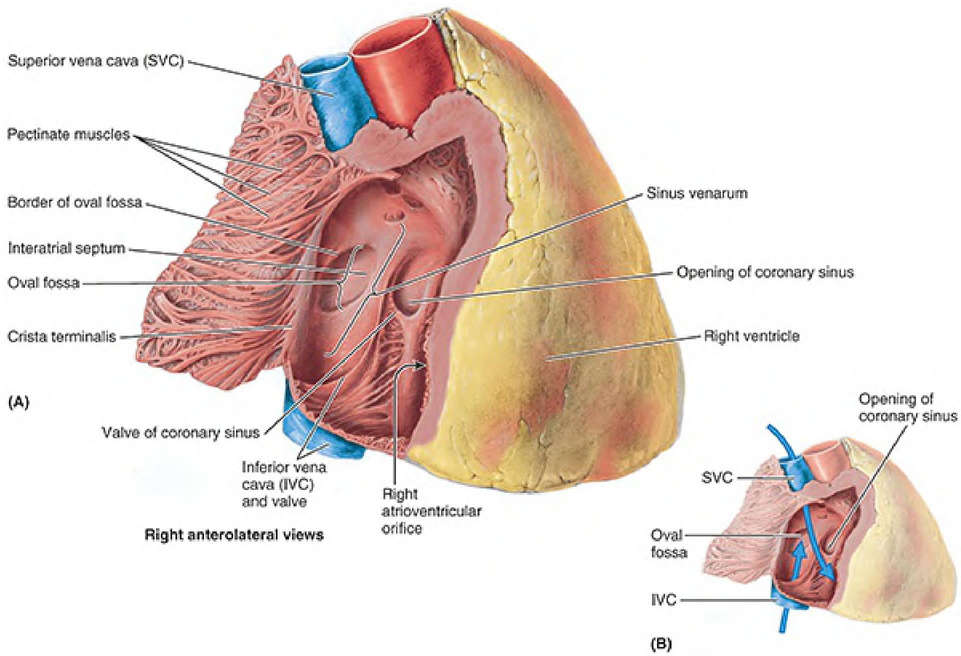


FIGURE 4.53. Right atrium of heart. A. Internal features. The outer wall of the right atrium has been incised from the right auricle to the diaphragmatic surface. The wall has been retracted to reveal the smooth-walled part of the atrium, the sinus venarum, derived from absorption of the venous sinus of the embryonic heart. All of the venous structures entering the right atrium (superior and inferior vena cavae and coronary sinus) open into the sinus venarum. The shallow oval fossa is the site of fusion of the embryonic valve of the oval foramen with the interatrial septum. **B.** Flow through right atrium. The inflow from the superior vena cava (SVC) is directed toward the right atrioventricular orifice, whereas blood from the inferior vena cava (IVC) is directed toward the oval fossa, as it was before birth.

The smooth and rough parts of the atrial wall are separated externally by a shallow vertical groove, the **sulcus terminalis** or terminal groove (Fig. 4.52D), and internally by a vertical ridge, the **crista terminalis** or terminal crest (Fig. 4.53A). The SVC opens into the superior part of the right atrium at the level of the right 3rd costal cartilage. The IVC opens into the inferior part of the right atrium almost in line with the SVC at approximately the level of the 5th costal cartilage.

The **opening of the coronary sinus**, a short venous trunk receiving most of the cardiac veins, is between the right AV orifice and the IVC orifice. **The interatrial septum** separating the atria has an oval, thumbprint-size depression, the **oval fossa** (L. fossa ovalis), which is a remnant of the **oval foramen** (L. foramen ovale) and its valve in the fetus. Full understanding of the features of the right atrium requires an awareness of the development of the heart (see the Clinical Box "Embryology of Right Atrium" in this chapter).

RIGHT VENTRICLE

The right ventricle forms the largest part of the anterior surface of the heart, a small part of the diaphragmatic surface, and almost the entire inferior border of the heart (Fig. 4.52B). Superiorly, it tapers into an arterial cone, the **conus arteriosus** (infundibulum), which leads into the pulmonary trunk (Fig. 4.54A, B). The interior of the right ventricle has irregular muscular elevations (**trabeculae carneae**). A thick muscular ridge, the **supraventricular crest**, separates the ridged muscular wall of the inflow part of the chamber from the smooth wall of the conus arteriosus or outflow part. The inflow part of the ventricle receives blood from the right atrium through the **right AV (tricuspid) orifice** (Fig. 4.55A), located posterior to the body of the sternum at the level of the 4th and 5th intercostal spaces. The right AV orifice is surrounded by one of the fibrous rings of the fibrous skeleton of the heart (Fig. 4.51). The fibrous ring keeps the caliber of the orifice constant (large enough to admit the tips of three fingers), resisting the dilation that might otherwise result from blood being forced through it at varying pressures.

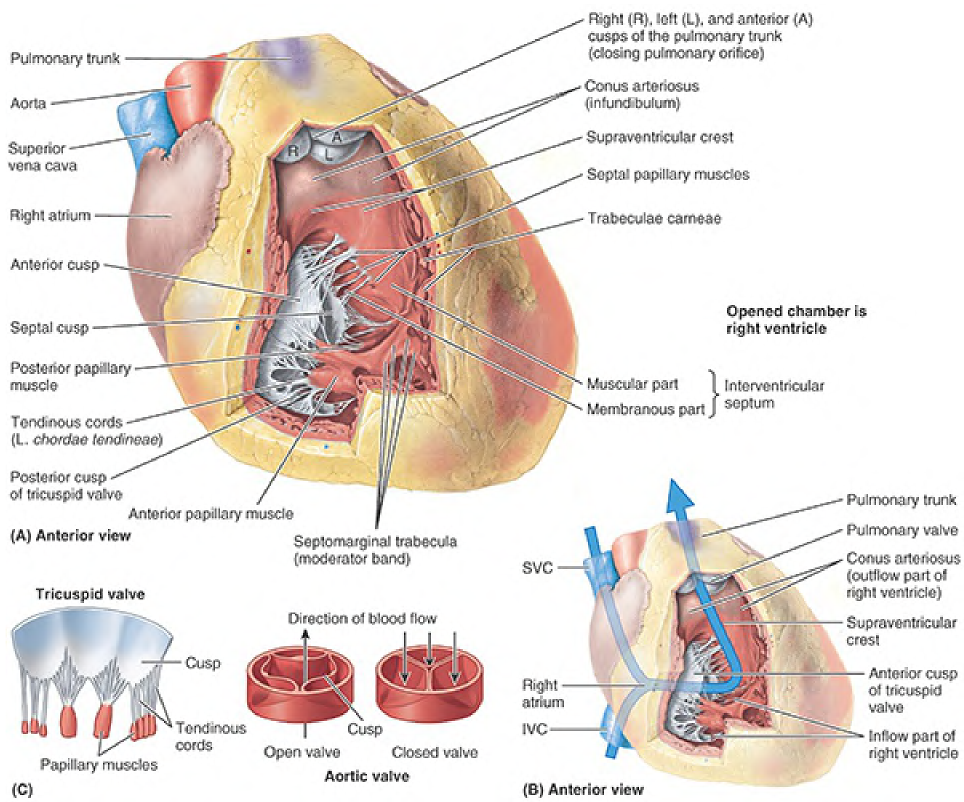


FIGURE 4.54. Right ventricle of heart. The sternocostal wall of the right ventricle has been excised. **A.** Internal features. The tricuspid valve at the entrance to the ventricle (right atrioventricular [AV] orifice) is open and the pulmonic valve at the exit to the pulmonary trunk is closed, as they would be during ventricular filling (diastole). The smooth funnel-shaped conus arteriosus is the outflow tract of the chamber. **B.** Flow through right ventricle. The inflow of blood enters the chamber from its posterior and inferior aspect, flowing anteriorly and to the left (toward the apex); the outflow of blood to the pulmonary trunk leaves superiorly and posteriorly. IVC, inferior vena cava; SVC, superior vena cava. **C.** Tricuspid valve (left) spread out, and pulmonary valve (right) showing influence of blood flow in opening and closing of valve.

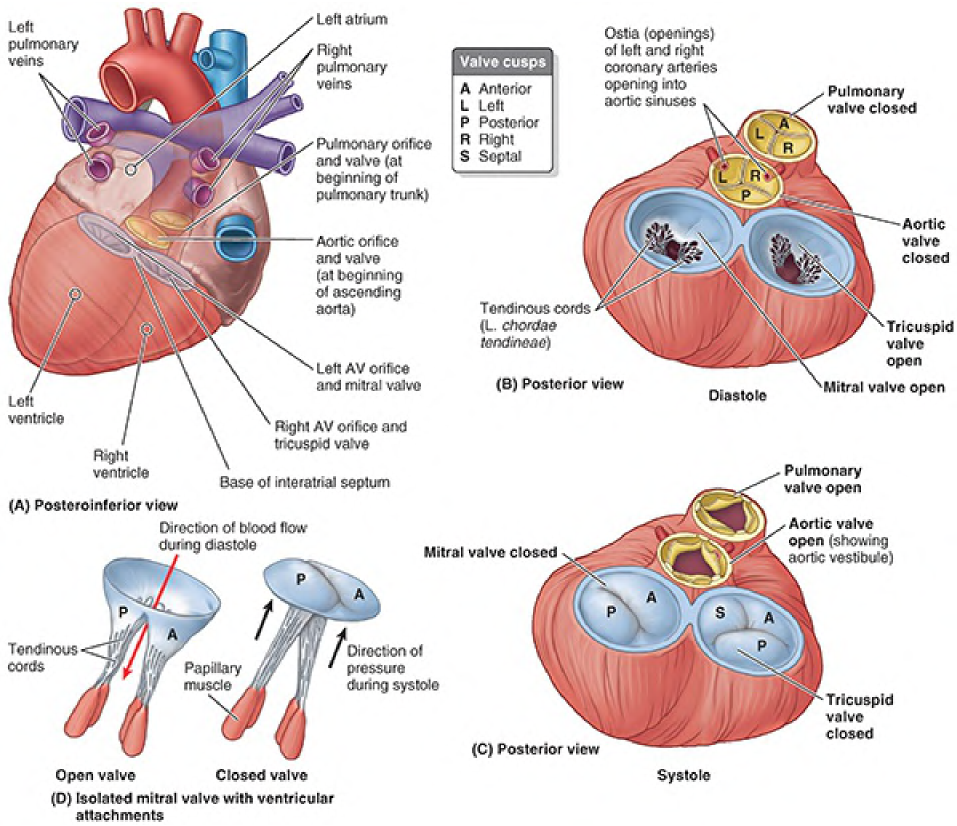


FIGURE 4.55. Valves of heart and great vessels. (Parts **A–D** shown in clockwise order.) **A.** Coronary valves in situ. AV, atrioventricular. **B.** At the beginning of diastole (ventricular relaxation and filling), aortic and pulmonary valves are closed; shortly thereafter, the tricuspid and mitral valves open (also shown in Fig. 4.48). **C.** Shortly after systole (ventricular contraction and emptying) begins, the tricuspid and mitral valves close and the aortic and pulmonary valves open. **D.** Influence of blood flow/pressure in the normal opening and closing of the mitral valve.

The **tricuspid valve** (Figs. 4.54 and 4.55) guards the right AV orifice. The bases of the valve cusps are attached to the fibrous ring around the orifice. Because the fibrous ring maintains the caliber of the orifice, the attached valve cusps contact each other in the same way with each heartbeat. **Tendinous** cords (L. chordae tendineae) attach to the free edges and ventricular surfaces of the anterior, posterior, and septal cusps, much like the cords attaching to a parachute (Fig. 4.54A, C). The tendinous cords arise from the apices of **papillary muscles**, which are conical muscular projections with bases attached to the ventricular wall. The papillary muscles begin to contract before contraction of the right ventricle, tightening the tendinous cords and drawing the cusps together. Because the cords are attached to adjacent sides of two cusps, they prevent separation of the cusps and their eversion (prolapse into the atria) when tension is applied to the tendinous cords and maintained throughout ventricular contraction (systole)—that is, the cusps of the tricuspid valve are prevented from prolapsing (being driven into the right atrium) as ventricular pressure rises. Thus, regurgitation of blood (backward flow of blood) from the right ventricle back into the right atrium is blocked during ventricular systole by the valve cusps (Fig. 4.55C).

Three papillary muscles in the right ventricle correspond to the cusps of the tricuspid valve (Fig. 4.54A):

1. The **anterior papillary muscle**, the largest and most prominent of the three, arises from the anterior wall of the right ventricle; its tendinous cords attach to the anterior and posterior cusps of the tricuspid valve.
2. The **posterior papillary muscle**, smaller than the anterior muscle, may consist of several parts; it arises from the inferior wall of the right ventricle, and its tendinous cords attach to the posterior and septal cusps of the tricuspid valve.
3. The **septal papillary muscle** arises from the interventricular septum, and its tendinous cords attach to the anterior and septal cusps of the tricuspid valve.

The **interventricular septum (IVS)**, composed of muscular and membranous parts, is a strong, obliquely placed partition between the right and left ventricles (Fig. 4.54A; see Fig. 4.57A), forming part of the walls of each. Because of the much higher blood pressure in the left ventricle, the **muscular part of the IVS**, which forms the majority of the septum, has the thickness of the remainder of the wall of the left ventricle (two to three times as thick as the wall of the right ventricle) and bulges into the cavity of the right ventricle. Superiorly and posteriorly, a thin membrane, part of the fibrous skeleton of the heart (Fig. 4.51), forms the much smaller **membranous part of the IVS**. On the right side, the septal cusp of the tricuspid valve (Fig. 4.54A) is attached to the middle of this membranous part of the fibrous skeleton. This means that inferior to the cusp, the membrane is an interventricular septum, but superior to the cusp, it is an atrioventricular septum, separating the right atrium from the left ventricle.

The **septomarginal trabecula (moderator band)** is a curved muscular bundle that traverses the right ventricular chamber from the inferior part of the IVS to the base of the anterior papillary muscle. This trabecula is important because it carries part of the **right branch of the AV bundle**, a part of the conducting system of the heart to the anterior papillary muscle (see "Stimulating and Conducting System of Heart" later in this chapter). This "shortcut" across the chamber seems to facilitate conduction time, allowing coordinated contraction of the anterior papillary muscle.

The right atrium contracts when the right ventricle is empty and relaxed; thus, blood passes through this orifice into the right ventricle, pushing the cusps of the tricuspid valve aside like curtains. The inflow of blood into the right ventricle (inflow tract) enters posteriorly; and when the ventricle contracts, the outflow of blood into the pulmonary trunk (outflow tract) leaves superiorly (Fig. 4.54B). Consequently, the blood takes a U-shaped path through the right ventricle, changing direction about 140°. This change in direction is accommodated by the **supraventricular crest**, which deflects the incoming flow into the main cavity of the ventricle and the outgoing flow into the conus arteriosus toward the pulmonary orifice. The inflow (AV) orifice and outflow (pulmonary) orifice are approximately 2 cm apart. The **pulmonary valve** (Figs. 4.54B and 4.55) at the apex of the conus arteriosus is at the level of the left 3rd costal cartilage (see Fig. B4.25A).

LEFT ATRIUM

The left atrium forms most of the base of the heart (Fig. 4.52C, D). The valveless pairs of right and left pulmonary veins enter the smooth-walled atrium (see Fig. 4.56). In the embryo, there is

only one common pulmonary vein, just as there is a single pulmonary trunk. The wall of this vein and four of its tributaries were incorporated into the wall of the left atrium, in the same way that the sinus venosus was incorporated into the right atrium. The part of the wall derived from the embryonic pulmonary vein is smooth walled. The tubular, muscular **left auricle**, its wall trabeculated with pectinate muscles, forms the superior part of the left border of the heart and overlaps the root of the pulmonary trunk (Fig. 4.52B). It represents the remains of the left part of the primordial atrium. A semilunar depression in the interatrial septum indicates the floor of the oval fossa (Fig. 4.56A); the surrounding ridge is the valve of the oval fossa (L. valvulae foramen ovale).

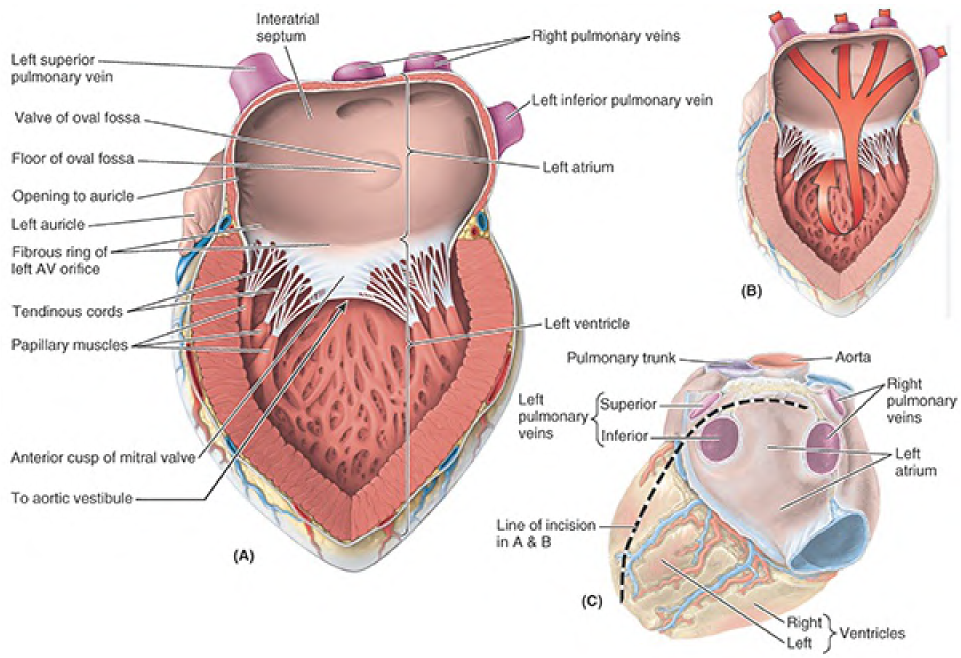


FIGURE 4.56. **Interior of left atrium and ventricle of heart. A.** Features of internal aspects of left atrium and inflow tract of left ventricle. AV, atrioventricular. **B.** Pattern of blood flow through left side of heart. **C.** Orientation figure. For parts **A** and **B**, the heart was incised vertically along its left border and then transversely across the superior part of its base, passing between the superior and the inferior left pulmonary veins.

The interior of the left atrium has

- a larger smooth-walled part and a smaller muscular auricle containing pectinate muscles
- four pulmonary veins (two superior and two inferior) entering its smooth posterior wall (Fig. 4.56A, B)
- a slightly thicker wall than that of the right atrium
- an interatrial septum that slopes posteriorly and to the right

The oxygenated blood the left atrium received from the pulmonary veins is discharged through left AV orifice into the left ventricle (Fig. 4.56B).

LEFT VENTRICLE

The left ventricle forms the apex of the heart, nearly all its left (pulmonary) surface and border,

and most of the diaphragmatic surface (Figs. 4.52 and 4.57). Because arterial pressure is much higher in the systemic than in the pulmonary circulation, the left ventricle performs more work than the right ventricle.

The interior of the left ventricle has (Fig. 4.57)

- walls that are two to three times as thick as those of the right ventricle
- walls that are mostly covered with a mesh of trabeculae carneae that are finer and more numerous than those of the right ventricle
- a conical cavity that is longer than that of the right ventricle
- anterior and posterior papillary muscles that are larger than those in the right ventricle
- a smooth-walled, nonmuscular, supero-anterior outflow part, the **aortic vestibule**, leading from the ventricular cavity to the aortic orifice and aortic valve (Fig. 4.57A–C)
- a double-leaflet mitral valve that guards the left AV orifice (Figs. 4.55, 4.56, and 4.57)
- an **aortic orifice** that lies in its right posterosuperior part and is surrounded by a fibrous ring to which the right posterior and left cusps of the aortic valve are attached; the ascending aorta begins at the aortic orifice.

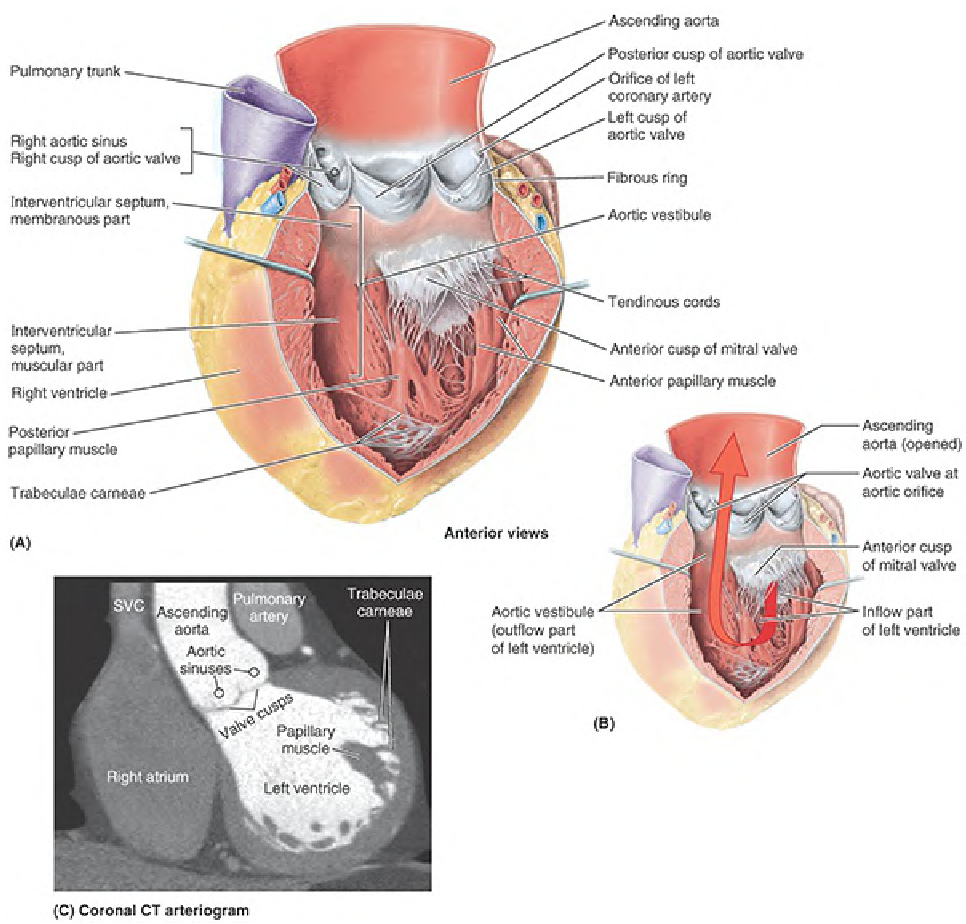


FIGURE 4.57. Interior and outflow tract of left ventricle of heart. A and B. The anterior surface of the left ventricle has been incised parallel to the interventricular groove, with the right margin of the incision retracted to the right, revealing an anterior view of the chamber. **B.** The left atrioventricular orifice and mitral valve are located posteriorly, and the aortic vestibule leads superiorly and to the right to the aortic valve. **C.** Contrast media highlights left ventricle and outflow tract.

The **mitral valve** has two cusps, anterior and posterior. The mitral valve is located posterior to the sternum at the level of the 4th costal cartilage. Each of its cusps receives tendinous cords from more than one papillary muscle. These muscles and their cords support the mitral valve, allowing the cusps to resist the pressure developed during contractions (pumping) of the left ventricle (Figs. 4.55C and 4.57A). The cords become taut just before and during systole, preventing the cusps from being forced into the left atrium. As it traverses the left ventricle, the bloodstream undergoes two right angle turns, which together result in a 180° change in direction. This reversal of flow takes place around the anterior cusp of the mitral valve (Fig. 4.57B).

The semilunar **aortic valve**, between the left ventricle and the ascending aorta, is obliquely placed (Fig. 4.55). It is located posterior to the left side of the sternum at the level of the 3rd rib (see Fig. B4.25A).

SEMILUNAR VALVES

Each of three **semilunar cusps of the pulmonary valve** (anterior, right, and left), like the **semilunar cusps of the aortic valve** (posterior, right, and left), is concave when viewed superiorly (Figs. 4.55B and 4.57A). (See the Clinical Box "Basis for Naming Cusps and Sinuses of Aortic and Pulmonary Valves" in this chapter.) Semilunar cusps do not have tendinous cords to support them. They are smaller in area than the cusps of the AV valves, and the force exerted on them is less than half that exerted on the cusps of the tricuspid and mitral valves. The cusps project into the artery but are pressed toward (but not against) its walls as blood leaves the ventricle (Figs. 4.55C and 4.58B). After relaxation of the ventricle (diastole), the elastic recoil of the wall of the pulmonary trunk or aorta forces the blood back toward the heart. However, the cusps snap closed like an umbrella caught in the wind as they catch the reversed blood flow (Figs. 4.55B and 4.58C). They come together to completely close the orifice, supporting each other as their edges abut (meet) and preventing any significant amount of blood from returning to the ventricle.

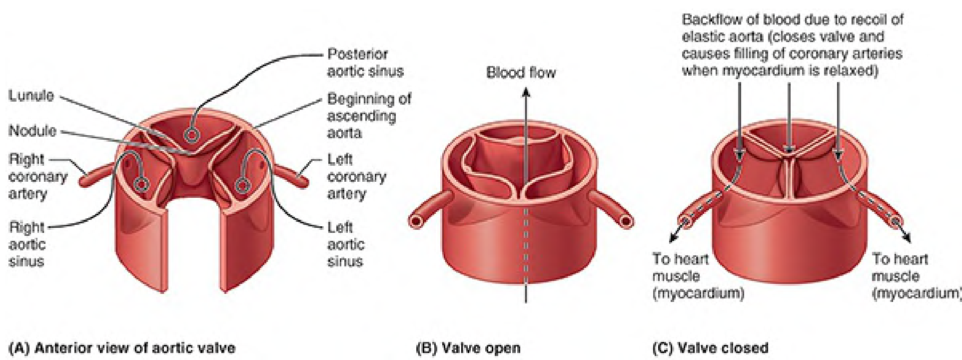


FIGURE 4.58. Aortic valve, aortic sinuses, and coronary arteries. A. Like the pulmonary valve, the aortic valve has three semilunar cusps: right, posterior, and left. **B.** Blood ejected from the left ventricle forces the cusps apart. **C.** When the valve closes, the nodules and lunules meet in the center.

The edge of each cusp is thickened in the region of contact, forming the **lunule;** the apex of the angulated free edge is thickened further as the **nodule** (Fig. 4.58A). Immediately superior to each semilunar cusp, the walls of the origins of the pulmonary trunk and aorta are slightly

dilated, forming a sinus. The **aortic sinuses and sinuses of the pulmonary trunk** (pulmonary sinuses) are the spaces at the origin of the pulmonary trunk and ascending aorta between the dilated wall of the vessel and each cusp of the semilunar valves (Figs. 4.55B and 4.57A, C). The blood in the sinuses and the dilation of the wall prevent the cusps from sticking to the wall of the vessel, which might prevent closure.

The mouth of the right coronary artery is in the **right aortic sinus**, the mouth of the left coronary artery is in the **left aortic sinus**, and no artery arises from the **posterior aortic (noncoronary) sinus** (Figs. 4.57A and 4.58).

VASCULATURE OF HEART

The blood vessels of the heart comprise the coronary arteries and cardiac veins, which carry blood to and from most of the myocardium (Fig. 4.59; see Fig. 4.61). The endocardium and some subendocardial tissue located immediately external to the endocardium receive oxygen and nutrients by diffusion or microvasculature directly from the chambers of the heart. The blood vessels of the heart, normally embedded in fat, course across the surface of the heart just deep to the epicardium. Occasionally, parts of the vessels become embedded within the myocardium. The blood vessels of the heart are affected by both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves.

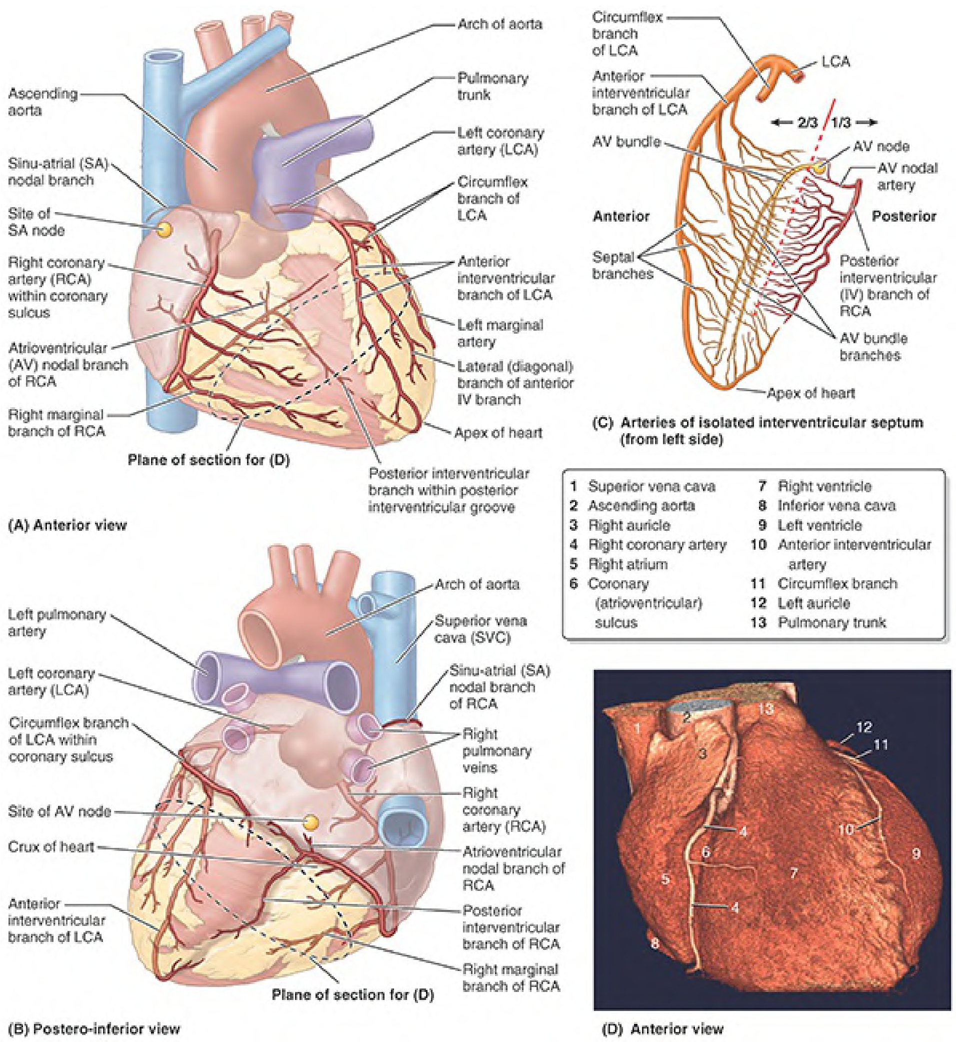


FIGURE 4.59. **Coronary arteries. A and B.** Most common pattern of distribution. The RCA anastomoses with the circumflex branch of the LCA (anastomoses are not shown) after the RCA has given rise to the posterior interventricular (IV) artery. **A–C.** Anterior IV artery (also called the left anterior descending branch). The artery hooks around the apex of the heart to anastomose with the posterior IV artery. **C.** Arteries of interventricular septum (IVS). The RCA branch to the AV node is the first of many septal branches of the posterior IV artery. The septal branches of the anterior interventricular branch of the LCA supply the anterior two thirds of the IVS. Because the AV bundle and bundle branches are centrally placed in and on the IVS, the LCA typically provides most blood to this conducting tissue. **D.** 3-D volume reconstruction of heart and coronary vessels.

Arterial Supply of Heart. The coronary arteries, the first branches of the aorta, supply the myocardium and epicardium. The right and left coronary arteries arise from the corresponding aortic sinuses at the proximal part of the ascending aorta, just superior to the aortic valve, and pass around opposite sides of the pulmonary trunk (Figs. 4.58 and 4.59; Table 4.4). The coronary arteries supply both the atria and the ventricles; however, the atrial branches are usually small and not readily apparent in the cadaveric heart. The ventricular distribution of each coronary artery is not sharply demarcated.

TABLE 4.4. ARTERIAL SUPPLY TO HEART

Artery/Branch	Origin	Course	Distribution	Anastomoses

Right coronary (RCA)	Right aortic sinus	Follows coronary (AV) sulcus between atria and ventricle	Right atrium, SA and AV nodes, and posterior part of IVS	Circumflex and anterior IV branches of LCA
SA nodal	RCA near its origin (in 60%)	Ascends to SA node	Pulmonary trunk and SA node	
Right marginal	RCA	Passes toward inferior margin of heart and apex	Right ventricle and apex of heart	IV branches
Posterior interventricular	RCA (in 67%)	Runs in posterior IV groove to apex of heart	Right and left ventricles and posterior third of IVS	Anterior IV branch of LCA (at apex)
AV nodal	RCA near origin of posterior IV artery	Passes to AV node	AV node	
Left coronary (LCA)	Left aortic sinus	Runs in coronary sulcus and gives off anterior IV and circumflex branches	Most of left atrium and ventricle, IVS, and AV bundles; may supply AV node	RCA
SA nodal	Circumflex branch of LCA (in 40%)	Ascends on posterior surface of left atrium to SA node	Left atrium and SA node	
Anterior interventricular	LCA	Passes along anterior IV groove to apex of heart	Right and left ventricles and anterior two thirds of IVS	Posterior IV branch of RCA (at apex)
Circumflex	LCA	Passes to left in coronary sulcus and runs to posterior surface of heart	Left atrium and left ventricle	RCA
Left marginal	Circumflex branch of LCA	Follows left border of heart	Left ventricle	IV branches
Posterior interventricular	LCA (in 33%)	Runs in posterior IV groove to apex of heart	Right and left ventricles and posterior third of IVS	Anterior IV branch of LCA (at apex)

AV, atrioventricular; IV, interventricular; IVS, interventricular septum; SA, sino-atrial.

The **right coronary artery** (RCA) arises from the right aortic sinus of the ascending aorta and passes to the right side of the pulmonary trunk, running in the coronary sulcus (Figs. 4.58 and 4.59A). Near its origin, the RCA usually gives off an ascending **sino-atrial nodal branch**, which supplies the SA node. The RCA then descends in the coronary sulcus and gives off the **right marginal branch**, which supplies the right border of the heart as it runs toward (but does not reach) the apex of the heart. After giving off this branch, the RCA turns to the left and continues in the coronary sulcus to the posterior aspect of the heart. At the posterior aspect of the **crux** (L., cross) **of the heart**—the junction of the interatrial and interventricular (IV) septa between the four heart chambers—the RCA gives rise to the **atrioventricular nodal branch**, which supplies the AV node (Fig. 4.59A–C). The SA and AV nodes are part of the conducting system of the heart.

Dominance of the coronary arterial system is defined by which artery gives rise to the

posterior interventricular (IV) branch (posterior descending artery). Dominance of the RCA is typical (approximately 67%) (Figs. 4.59A and 4.60A); the RCA gives rise to the large **posterior interventricular branch**, which descends in the posterior IV groove toward the apex of the heart. This branch supplies adjacent areas of both ventricles and sends perforating **interventricular septal branches** into the IV septum. The terminal (left ventricular) branch of the RCA then continues for a short distance in the coronary sulcus (Figs. 4.59A, B and 4.60A). Thus, in the most common pattern of distribution, the RCA supplies the diaphragmatic surface of the heart.

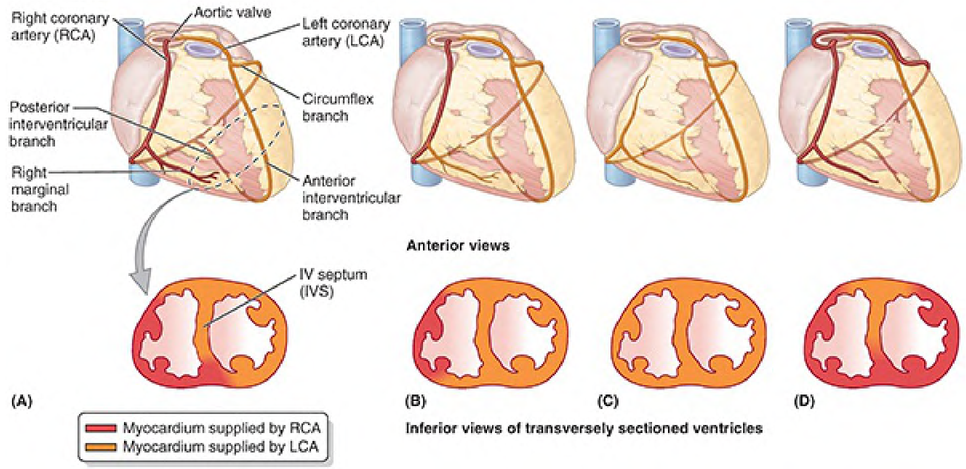


FIGURE 4.60. Variations in distribution of coronary arteries. A. In the most common pattern (67%), the RCA is dominant, giving rise to the posterior interventricular branch. **B and C.** The LCA gives rise to the posterior interventricular branch in approximately 15% of individuals, including LCA dominant (**B**), and agenesis (absence) of RCA (**C**). **D.** Many other variations occur, such as RCA replacing left recurrent branch.

Typically, the RCA supplies (Figs. 4.59 and 4.60A)

- the right atrium
- most of right ventricle
- part of the left ventricle (the diaphragmatic surface)
- part of the IV septum, usually the posterior third
- the SA node (in approximately 60% of people)
- the AV node (in approximately 80% of people)

The **left coronary artery (LCA)** arises from the left aortic sinus of the ascending aorta (Fig. 4.58A), passes between the left auricle and the left side of the pulmonary trunk, and runs in the coronary sulcus (Fig. 4.59A, B). In approximately 40% of people, the **SA nodal branch** arises from the circumflex branch of the LCA and ascends on the posterior surface of the left atrium to the SA node. As it enters the coronary sulcus, at the superior end of the anterior IV groove, the LCA divides into two branches, the anterior IV branch (clinicians continue to use LAD, the abbreviation for the former term “left anterior descending” artery) and the circumflex branch (Fig. 4.59A–C).

The **anterior IV branch** passes along the IV groove to the apex of the heart. Here, it turns

around the inferior border of the heart and commonly anastomoses with the posterior IV branch of the right coronary artery. The anterior IV branch supplies adjacent parts of both ventricles and, via IV septal branches, the anterior two thirds of the IVS (Figs. 4.59C and 4.60A). In many people, the anterior IV branch gives rise to a **lateral branch** (diagonal artery), which descends on the anterior surface of the heart (Fig. 4.59A).

The smaller **circumflex branch of the LCA** follows the coronary sulcus around the left border of the heart to the posterior surface of the heart. The **left marginal** branch of the circumflex branch follows the left margin of the heart and supplies the left ventricle. Most commonly, the circumflex branch of the LCA terminates in the coronary sulcus on the posterior aspect of the heart before reaching the crux of the heart (Fig. 4.59B), but in approximately one third of hearts, it continues to supply a branch that runs in or adjacent to the posterior IV groove (Fig. 4.60B).

Typically, the LCA supplies (Fig. 4.59 and 4.60A)

- the left atrium
- most of the left ventricle
- part of the right ventricle
- most of the IVS (usually its anterior two thirds), including the AV bundle of the conducting system of the heart, through its perforating IV septal branches
- the SA node (in approximately 40% of people)

Variations of Coronary Arteries Variations in the branching patterns and distribution of the coronary arteries are common. In the most common right dominant pattern, present in approximately 67% of people, the RCA and LCA share about equally in the blood supply of the heart (Figs. 4.59 and 4.60A). In approximately 15% of hearts, the LCA is dominant in that the posterior IV branch is a branch of the circumflex artery (Fig. 4.60B). There is codominance in approximately 18% of people, in which branches of both the right and left coronary arteries reach the crux of the heart and give rise to branches that course in or near the posterior IV groove. A few people have only one coronary artery (Fig. 4.60C). Many other variations occur, including a circumflex branch arising from the right aortic sinus (Fig. 4.60D). Approximately 4% of people have an accessory coronary artery.

Coronary Collateral Circulation The branches of the coronary arteries are generally considered to be **functional end arteries** (arteries that supply regions of the myocardium lacking sufficient anastomoses from other large branches to maintain viability of the tissue should occlusion occur). However, anastomoses do exist between branches of the coronary arteries, subepicardial or myocardial, and between these arteries and extracardiac vessels such as thoracic vessels (Standring, 2021). Anastomoses exist between the terminations of the right and the left coronary arteries in the coronary sulcus and between the IV branches around the apex of the heart in approximately 10% of apparently normal hearts. The potential for development of collateral circulation probably exists in most if not all hearts.

Venous Drainage of Heart. The heart is drained mainly by veins that empty into the coronary sinus and partly by small veins that empty into the right atrium (Fig. 4.61). The

coronary sinus, the main vein of the heart, is a wide venous channel that runs from left to right in the posterior part of the coronary sulcus. The coronary sinus receives the great cardiac vein at its left end and the middle cardiac vein and small cardiac veins at its right end. The left posterior ventricular vein and left marginal vein also open into the coronary sinus.

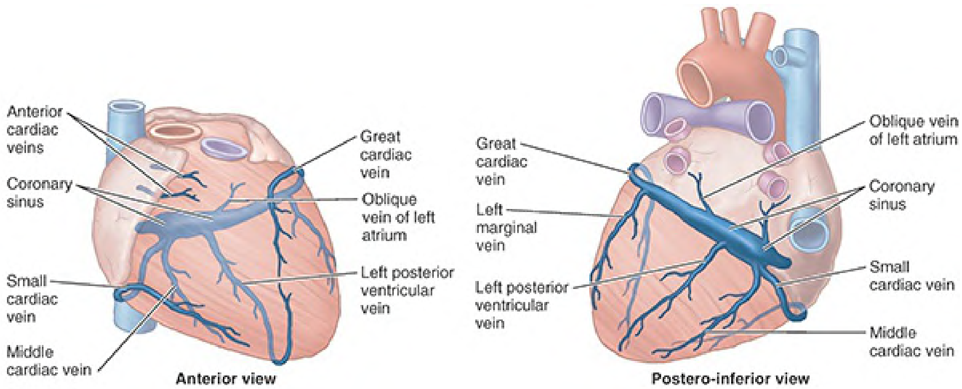


FIGURE 4.61. **Cardiac veins.** The great, middle, and small cardiac veins; the oblique vein of the left atrium; and the left posterior ventricular vein are the main vessels draining into the coronary sinus. The coronary sinus, in turn, empties into the right atrium. The anterior cardiac veins pass deep to the edge of the right auricle to drain directly into the right atrium.

The **great cardiac vein** is the main tributary of the coronary sinus. Its first part, the **anterior interventricular vein**, begins near the apex of the heart and ascends with the anterior IV branch of the LCA. At the coronary sulcus, it turns left, and its second part runs around the left side of the heart with the circumflex branch of the LCA to reach the coronary sinus. (An unusual situation is occurring here: Blood is flowing in the same direction within a paired artery and vein!) The great cardiac vein drains the areas of the heart supplied by the LCA.

The **middle cardiac vein (posterior IV vein)** accompanies the posterior interventricular branch (usually arising from the RCA). A **small cardiac vein** accompanies the right marginal branch of the RCA. Thus, these two veins drain most of the areas commonly supplied by the RCA. The **oblique vein of the left atrium** (of Marshall) is a small vessel, relatively unimportant postnatally, that descends over the posterior wall of the left atrium and merges with the great cardiac vein to form the coronary sinus (defining the beginning of the sinus). The oblique vein is the remnant of the embryonic left SVC, which usually atrophies during the fetal period; it occasionally persists in adults, replacing or augmenting the right SVC.

Some cardiac veins do not drain via the coronary sinus. Several small **anterior cardiac veins** begin over the anterior surface of the right ventricle, cross over the coronary sulcus, and usually end directly in the right atrium; sometimes, they enter the small cardiac vein. The **smallest cardiac veins** (L. venae cordis minimae) are minute vessels that begin in the capillary beds of the myocardium and open directly into the chambers of the heart, chiefly the atria. Although called veins, they are valveless communications with the capillary beds of the myocardium and may carry blood from the heart chambers to the myocardium.

Lymphatic Drainage of Heart. Lymphatic vessels in the myocardium and subendocardial connective tissue pass to the **subepicardial lymphatic plexus**. Vessels from this plexus pass to the coronary sulcus and follow the coronary arteries. A single lymphatic vessel, formed by the

union of various lymphatic vessels from the heart, ascends between the pulmonary trunk and left atrium and ends in the **inferior tracheobronchial lymph nodes**, usually on the right side.

STIMULATING, CONDUCTING, AND REGULATING SYSTEMS OF HEART

Stimulating and Conducting System of Heart. In the ordinary sequence of events in the cardiac cycle, the atrium and ventricle work together as one pump. **The conducting system of the heart** (Fig. 4.62) generates and transmits the impulses that produce the coordinated contractions of the cardiac cycle (discussed earlier in this chapter). The conducting system consists of nodal tissue that initiates the heartbeat and coordinates contractions of the four heart chambers and highly specialized conducting fibers for conducting them rapidly to the different areas of the heart. The impulses are then propagated by the cardiac striated muscle cells so that the chamber walls contract simultaneously.

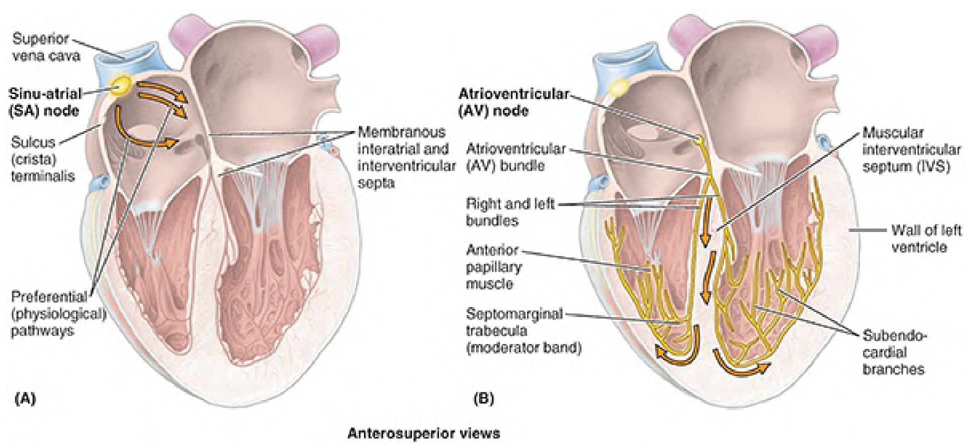


FIGURE 4.62. Conducting system of heart. A. SA node stimulation of atrium. Impulses (arrows) initiated at the SA node, located at the superior end of the sulcus (internally, crista) terminalis, are propagated through the atrial musculature to the AV node. **B.** AV node stimulation of ventricles. Impulses (arrows) received by the AV node, in the inferior part of the interatrial septum, are conducted through the AV bundle and its branches to the myocardium. The AV bundle begins at the AV node and divides into right and left bundles at the junction of the membranous and muscular parts of the IVS.

The **sinu-atrial (SA) node** is located anterolaterally just deep to the epicardium at the junction of the SVC and right atrium, near the superior end of the sulcus terminalis (Figs. 4.59A and 4.62A). The SA node—a small collection of nodal tissue, specialized cardiac muscle fibers, and associated fibro-elastic connective tissue—is the pacemaker of the heart. The SA node initiates and regulates the impulses for the contractions of the heart, giving off an impulse approximately 70 times per minute in most people most of the time. The contraction signal from the SA node spreads myogenically (through the musculature) of both atria. The SA node is supplied by the **sino-atrial nodal artery**, which usually arises as an atrial branch of the RCA (in 60% of people), but it often arises from the LCA (in 40%). The SA node is stimulated by the sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system to accelerate the heart rate and is inhibited by the parasympathetic division to return to or approach its basal rate.

The **atrioventricular (AV) node** is a smaller collection of nodal tissue than the SA node. The

AV node is located in the postero-inferior region of the interatrial septum near the opening of the coronary sinus (Figs. 4.59A–C and 4.61B). The signal generated by the SA node passes through the walls of the right atrium, propagated by the cardiac muscle (**myogenic conduction**), which transmits the signal rapidly from the SA node to the AV node. The AV node then distributes the signal to the ventricles through the **AV bundle** (Fig. 4.62B). Sympathetic stimulation speeds up conduction, and parasympathetic stimulation slows it down. The AV bundle, the only bridge between the atrial and ventricular myocardium, passes from the AV node through the fibrous skeleton of the heart (see Fig. 4.51) and along the membranous part of the IVS.

At the junction of the membranous and muscular parts of the IVS, the AV bundle divides into **right** and **left bundles** (Fig. 4.62B). These branches proceed on each side of the muscular IVS deep to the endocardium and then ramify into **subendocardial branches** (Purkinje fibers), which extend into the walls of the respective ventricles. The subendocardial branches of the right bundle stimulate the muscle of the IVS, the anterior papillary muscle through the septomarginal trabecula (moderator band), and the wall of the right ventricle. The left bundle divides near its origin into approximately six smaller tracts, which give rise to subendocardial branches that stimulate the IVS, the anterior and posterior papillary muscles, and the wall of the left ventricle.

The AV node is supplied by the **AV nodal artery**, the largest and usually the first IV septal branch of the posterior IV artery, a branch of the RCA in 80% of people (Fig. 4.59A–C). Thus, the arterial supply to both the SA and AV nodes is usually derived from the RCA. However, the AV bundle traverses the center of the IVS, the anterior two thirds of which is supplied by the septal branches of the anterior IV branch of the LCA (Fig. 4.59C, D).

Impulse generation and conduction can be summarized as follows:

- The SA node initiates an impulse that is rapidly conducted to cardiac muscle fibers in the atria, causing them to contract (Fig. 4.62A).
- The impulse spreads by myogenic conduction, which rapidly transmits the impulse from the SA node to the AV node.
- The signal is distributed from the AV node through the AV bundle and its branches (the right and left bundles), which pass on each side of the IVS to supply subendocardial branches to the papillary muscles and the walls of the ventricles (Fig. 4.62B).

Innervation of Heart. The heart is supplied by autonomic nerve fibers from the **cardiac plexus** (Fig. 4.63; see Fig. 4.68B, C), which is often quite artificially divided into superficial and deep portions. This nerve network is most commonly described as lying on the anterior surface of the bifurcation of the trachea (a respiratory structure) since it is most commonly observed in dissection after removal of the ascending aorta and the bifurcation of the pulmonary trunk. However, its primary relationship is to the posterior aspect of the latter two structures, especially the ascending aorta. The cardiac plexus is formed of both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers en route to the heart as well as visceral afferent fibers conveying reflexive and nociceptive fibers from the heart. Fibers extend from the plexus along and to the coronary vessels and to components of the conducting system, particularly the SA node.

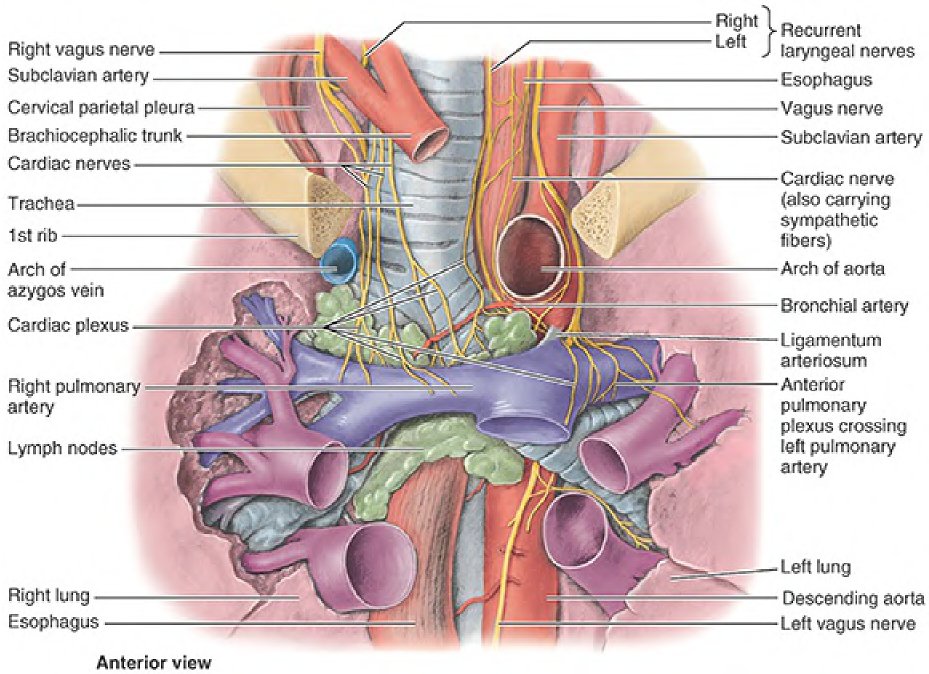


FIGURE 4.63. Cardiac nerves and plexus. This dissection of the superior and posterior mediastina demonstrates cardiac branches of the vagus nerve (CN X) and sympathetic trunks running down the sides of the trachea to form the cardiac plexus. Although shown lying anterior to the tracheal bifurcation here, the primary relationship of the cardiac plexus is to the ascending aorta and pulmonary trunk, the former having been removed to expose the plexus.

The **sympathetic supply** is from presynaptic fibers, with cell bodies in the intermediolateral cell columns (IMLs) of the superior five or six thoracic segments of the spinal cord, and postsynaptic sympathetic fibers, with cell bodies in the cervical and superior thoracic paravertebral ganglia of the sympathetic trunks. The postsynaptic fibers traverse cardiopulmonary splanchnic nerves and the cardiac plexus to end in the SA and AV nodes and in relation to the terminations of parasympathetic fibers on the coronary arteries. Sympathetic stimulation causes increased heart rate, impulse conduction, force of contraction, and, at the same time, increased blood flow through the coronary vessels to support the increased activity. Adrenergic stimulation of the SA node and conducting tissue increases the rate of depolarization of the pacemaker cells while increasing atrioventricular conduction. Direct adrenergic stimulation from the sympathetic nerve fibers, as well as indirect suprarenal (adrenal) hormone stimulation, increases atrial and ventricular contractility. Most adrenergic receptors on coronary blood vessels are β2-receptors, which, when activated, cause relaxation (or perhaps inhibition) of vascular smooth muscle and, therefore, dilation of the arteries (Wilson-Pauwels et al., 1997). This supplies more oxygen and nutrients to the myocardium during periods of increased activity.

The parasympathetic supply is from presynaptic fibers of the vagus nerves. Postsynaptic parasympathetic cell bodies (intrinsic ganglia) are located in the atrial wall and interatrial septum near the SA and AV nodes and along the coronary arteries. Parasympathetic stimulation slows the heart rate, reduces the force of the contraction, and constricts the coronary arteries, saving energy between periods of increased demand. Postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers release acetylcholine, which binds with muscarinic receptors to slow the rates of depolarization of the

pacemaker cells and atrioventricular conduction and decrease atrial contractility.

CLINICAL BOX

HEART

Percussion of Heart

Percussion defines the density and size of the heart. The classical percussion technique is to create vibration by tapping the chest with a finger while listening and feeling for differences in sound wave conduction. Cardiac percussion is performed at the 3rd, 4th, and 5th intercostal spaces from the left anterior axillary line to the right anterior axillary line (Fig. B4.24). Normally, the percussion note changes from resonance to dullness (because of the presence of the heart) approximately 6 cm lateral to the left border of the sternum.

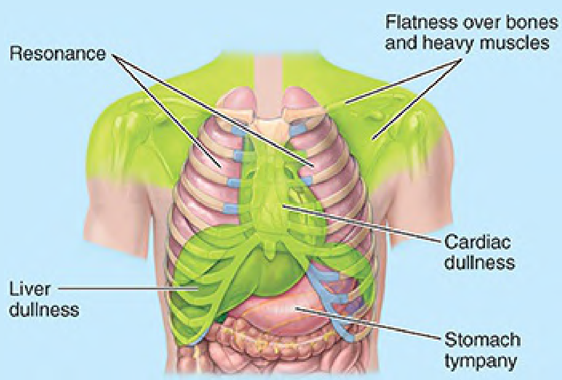


FIGURE B4.24. Cardiac percussion. Areas of flatness or dullness (yellow green) and resonance (unshaded) of thorax.

Surface Projection and Auscultation of Heart Valves

The heart and great vessels are approximately in the middle of the thorax, surrounded laterally and posteriorly by the lungs and anteriorly by the sternum and the central part of the thoracic cage (Fig. B4.25A, B). The borders of the heart are variable and depend on the position of the diaphragm and the build and physical condition of the person. With one exception, the quadrilateral outline of the heart can be approximated by connecting the primary sites of auscultation (Fig. B4.25C–G).

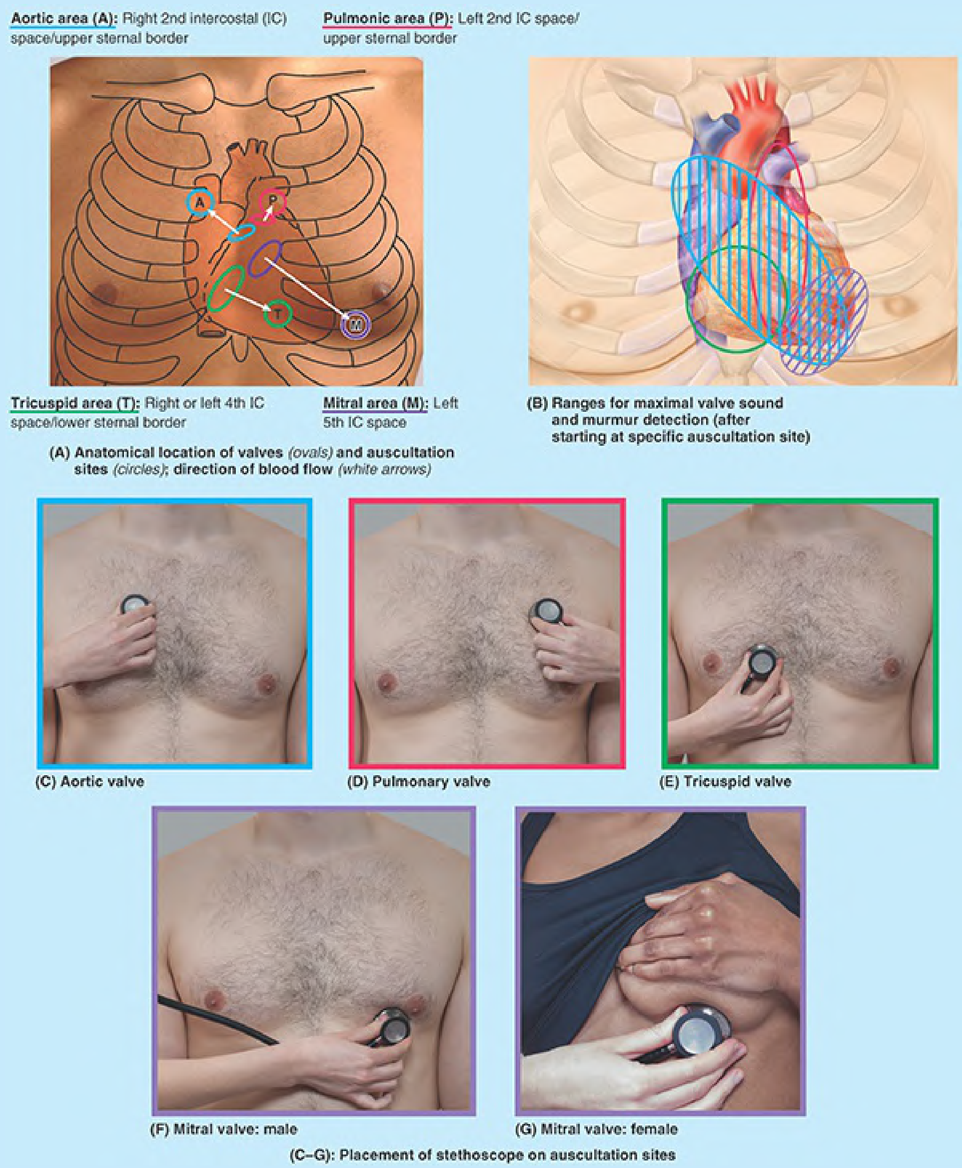


FIGURE B4.25. Surface projection and auscultation of heart valves.

Clinicians' interest in the surface projection of the heart and cardiac valves results from their need to listen to valve sounds. The primary sites of auscultation are starting points for listening to the valves and are as wide apart as possible so that the sounds produced at any given valve may be clearly distinguished from those produced at other valves. Blood tends to carry the sound in the direction of its flow; consequently, each area is situated superficial to the chamber or vessel into which the blood has passed and in a direct line with the valve orifice. However, there is a considerable range from individual to individual as to where normal sounds of murmurs may be detected (Fig. B4.25B). The valves are located posterior to the sternum; however, the sounds produced by them are projected to the auscultation sites (Fig. B4.25A, C–G) where the stethoscope may be placed initially to avoid intervening bone, ranging from there as necessary to maximize sounds (Fig. B4.25B):

- Aortic valve (A): 2nd right intercostal space at the sternal border, with range extending to the apex of the heart
- Pulmonary valve (P): 2nd left intercostal space at the sternal border, ranging inferiorly along left sternal border
- Tricuspid valve (T): 5th intercostal space at left sternal border, ranging to the 4th or 5th right sternal border
- Mitral valve (M): over the apex of the heart in the left 5th intercostal space at MCL, ranging superiorly and medially to the left sternal border of the 4th or 5th left intercostal space. This is the apex beat, the impulse that results from the apex of the heart being forced against the anterior thoracic wall when the left ventricle contracts.

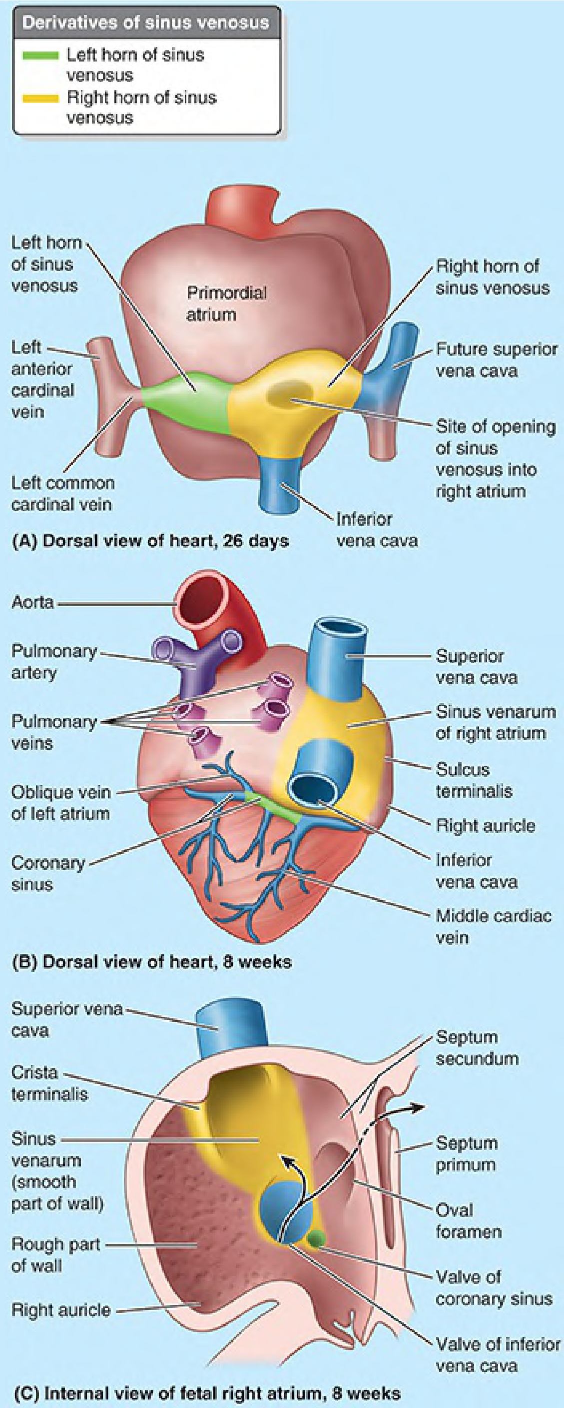
Cardiac Catheterization

In cardiac catheterization, a radiopaque catheter is inserted into a peripheral vein (e.g., the femoral vein) and passed under fluoroscopic control into the right atrium, right ventricle, pulmonary trunk, and pulmonary arteries, respectively. Using this technique, intracardiac pressures can be recorded and blood samples may be removed. If a radiopaque contrast medium is injected, it can be followed through the heart and great vessels using cineradiography.

Echocardiography (cardiac ultrasonography) is a noninvasive test that can also permit study of the circulation through the beating heart. Both tests are helpful in the study of congenital cardiac defects.

Embryology of Right Atrium

The primordial atrium is represented in the adult by the right auricle. The definitive atrium is enlarged by incorporation of most of the embryonic sinus venosus (Fig. B4.26A–C). The coronary sinus is also a derivative of this venous sinus. The part of the venous sinus incorporated into the primordial atrium becomes the smooth-walled sinus venarum of the adult right atrium (see Fig. 4.53A) into which all the veins drain, including the coronary sinus. The line of fusion of the primordial atrium (the adult auricle) and the sinus venarum (the derivative of the venous sinus) is indicated internally by the crista terminalis and externally by the sulcus terminalis. The sino-atrial (SA) node (discussed earlier in this chapter) is located just in front of the opening of the SVC at the superior end of the crista terminalis—that is, in the border between the primordial atrium and the sinus venosus, hence its name.


Derivatives of sinus venosus
Left horn of sinus venosus
Right horn of sinus venosus
Left horn of sinus venosus
Primordial atrium
Right horn of sinus venosus
Left anterior cardinal vein
Future superior vena cava
Site of opening of sinus venosus into right atrium
Left common cardinal vein
Inferior vena cava
(A) Dorsal view of heart, 26 days
Aorta
Pulmonary artery
Superior vena cava
Pulmonary veins
Sinus venarum of right atrium
Sulcus terminalis
Oblique vein of left atrium
Right auricle
Coronary sinus
Inferior vena cava
Middle cardiac vein
(B) Dorsal view of heart, 8 weeks
Superior vena cava
Septum secundum
Crista terminalis
Sinus venarum (smooth part of wall)
Septum primum
Oval foramen
Rough part of wall
Valve of coronary sinus
Right auricle
Valve of inferior vena cava
(C) Internal view of fetal right atrium, 8 weeks

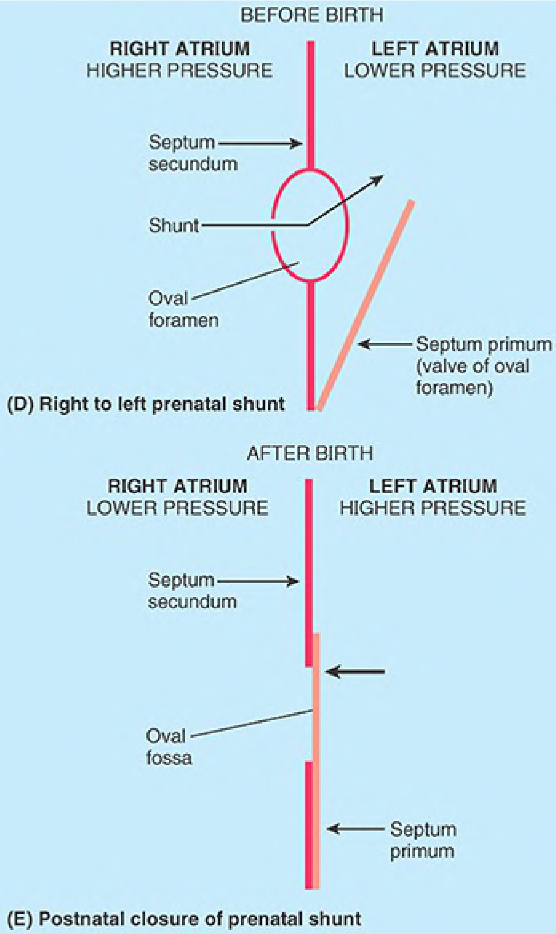


FIGURE B4.26. Development of features of right atrium. A. Primordial atrium and sinus venosus. **B.** Right sinual horn incorporated into right atrium; left sinual horn has become coronary sinus. **C.** Sinual horn derivatives in wall of right atrium. **D and E.** Pressures opening oval foramen before birth (**D**) and closing foramen to become oval fossa after birth (**E**).

Before birth, the valve of the IVC directs most of the oxygenated blood returning from the placenta in the umbilical vein and IVC toward the oval foramen in the interatrial septum, through which it passes into the left atrium (Fig. B4.26D). The oval foramen has a flap-like valve that permits a right-to-left shunt of blood but prevents a left-to-right shunt. At birth, when the baby takes its first breath, the lungs expand with air and pressure in the right atrium falls below that in the left atrium (Fig. B4.26E). Consequently, the oval foramen closes for its first and last time, and its valve usually fuses with the interatrial septum. The closed oval foramen is represented in the postnatal interatrial septum by the depressed oval fossa. The **border of the oval fossa** (L. limbus fossae ovalis) surrounds the fossa. The floor of the fossa is formed by the valve of the oval foramen. The rudimentary **IVC valve**, a semilunar crescent of tissue, has no function after birth; it varies considerably in size and is occasionally absent.

Septal Defects

ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECTS

A congenital anomaly of the interatrial septum, usually incomplete closure of the oval foramen, is an atrial septal defect (ASD). A probe-size patency is present in the superior part of the oval fossa in 15–25% of adults (Moore et al., 2020). These small openings, by themselves, cause no hemodynamic abnormalities and are, therefore, of no clinical significance and should not be considered forms of ASDs. Clinically significant ASDs vary widely in size and location and may occur as part of more complex congenital heart disease. Large ASDs allow oxygenated blood from the lungs to be shunted from the left atrium through the ASD into the right atrium, causing enlargement of the right atrium and ventricle and dilation of the pulmonary trunk (Fig. B4.27A). This left-to-right shunt of blood overloads the pulmonary vascular system, resulting in hypertrophy of the right atrium and ventricle and pulmonary arteries.

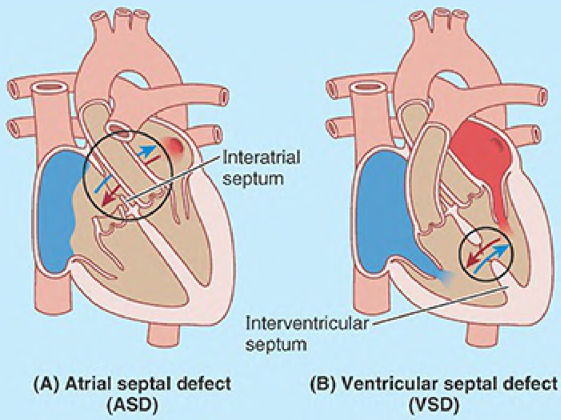


FIGURE B4.27. Septal defects.

VENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECTS

The membranous part of the IVS develops separately from the muscular part and has a complex embryological origin. Consequently, this part is the common site of ventricular septal defects (VSDs), although defects also occur in the muscular part (Fig. B4.27B). VSDs rank first on all lists of cardiac defects. Isolated VSDs account for approximately 25% of all forms of congenital heart disease. The size of the defect varies from 1 to 25 mm. A VSD causes a left-to-right shunt of blood through the defect. A large shunt increases pulmonary blood flow, which causes severe pulmonary disease (hypertension, or increased blood pressure) and may cause cardiac failure. The much less common VSD in the muscular part of the septum frequently closes spontaneously during childhood (Resnik et al., 2019).

Basis for Naming Cusps and Sinuses of Aortic and Pulmonary Valves

The following account explains the embryological basis for naming the pulmonary and aortic valves. The **truncus arteriosus**, the common arterial trunk from both ventricles of the embryonic heart, has four cusps (Fig. B4.28A). The truncus arteriosus divides into two vessels, each with its own three-cusp valve (pulmonary and aortic) (Fig. B4.28B). The heart undergoes partial rotation so that its apex becomes directed to the left, resulting in the arrangement of cusps as shown in Figure B4.28C. Consequently, the cusps are named according to their embryological origin, not their postnatal anatomical position. Thus, the pulmonary valve has right, left, and anterior cusps, and the aortic valve has right, left, and posterior cusps. Similarly, the aortic sinuses are named right, left, and posterior.

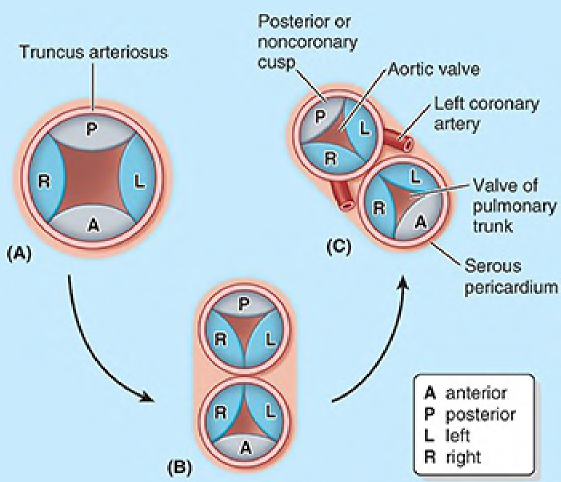


FIGURE B4.28. Developmental basis for names of valve cusps. A. Undivided valve of truncus arteriosus. **B.** Aortic and pulmonic valves after division of truncus valve. **C.** Final position and relationships of aortic and pulmonic valves.

This terminology normally agrees with the coronary arteries. The right coronary artery usually arises from the right aortic sinus, superior to the right cusp of the aortic valve, and the left coronary usually has a similar relation to the left cusp and sinus. The posterior cusp and sinus do not give rise to a coronary artery; thus, they are also referred to as a "noncoronary" cusp and sinus. Variations in the origin of the coronary arteries do occur (Fig. B4.29; see Fig. 4.60).

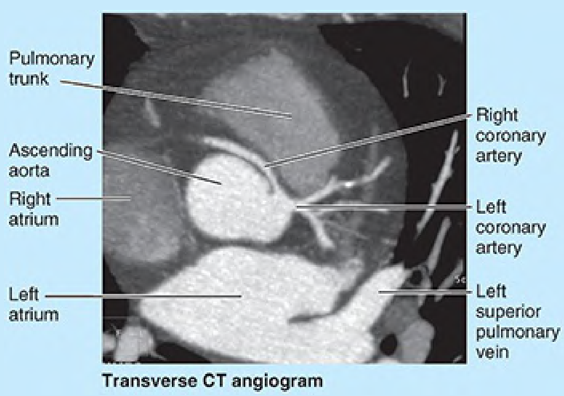


FIGURE B4.29. Aberrant origin of right coronary artery. The right coronary artery is arising from left aortic sinus. This variant may become compressed between the aorta and pulmonary trunk.

Stroke or Cerebrovascular Accident

Thrombi (clots) form on the walls of the left atrium in certain types of heart disease. If these thrombi detach, or pieces break off from them, they pass into the systemic circulation and occlude peripheral arteries. Occlusion of an artery supplying the brain results in a stroke or cerebrovascular accident (CVA), which may affect vision, cognition, or the motor function of parts of the body previously controlled by the now-damaged (ischemic) area of the brain.

Valvular Heart Disease

Disorders involving the valves of the heart disturb the pumping efficiency of the heart. Valvular heart disease produces either stenosis (narrowing) or insufficiency. Stenosis is the failure of a valve to open fully, slowing blood flow from a chamber. Insufficiency or regurgitation, on the other hand, is failure of the valve to close completely, usually owing to nodule formation on (or scarring and contraction of) the cusps so that the edges do not meet or align. This allows a variable amount of blood (depending on the severity) to flow back into the chamber it was just ejected from. Both stenosis and insufficiency result in an increased workload for the heart.

Restriction of high-pressure blood flow (stenosis) or passage of blood through a narrow opening into a larger vessel or chamber (stenosis and regurgitation) produces turbulence. Turbulence sets up eddies (small whirlpools) that produce vibrations that are audible as murmurs. Superficial vibratory sensations (thrills) may be felt on the skin over an area of turbulence.

The clinical significance of a valvular dysfunction ranges from slight and physiologically insignificant to severe and rapidly fatal. Factors such as degree, duration, and etiology (cause) affect secondary changes in the heart, blood vessels, and other organs, both proximal and distal to the valve lesion. Valvular disorders may be congenital or acquired. Insufficiency may result from pathology of the valve itself or its supporting structures (anulus, tendinous cords, dilation of chamber wall, etc.). It may occur acutely (suddenly—e.g., from a rupture of the cords) or chronically (over a relatively long time—e.g., scarring and retraction). Valvular stenosis, on the other hand, is almost always the result of a valve abnormality and is essentially always a chronic process (Kumar et al., 2020).

Because valvular diseases are mechanical problems, damaged or defective cardiac valves can be replaced surgically in a procedure called valvuloplasty. Most commonly, artificial valve prostheses made of synthetic materials are used in these valve replacement procedures, but xenografted valves (valves transplanted from other species, such as pigs) are also used.

MITRAL VALVE INSUFFICIENCY (MITRAL VALVE PROLAPSE)

A prolapsed mitral valve is an insufficient or incompetent valve with one or both leaflets enlarged, redundant, or "floppy" and extending back into the left atrium during systole. As a result, blood regurgitates into the left atrium when the left ventricle contracts, producing a characteristic heart sound or murmur. This is an extremely common condition, occurring in up to 1 in every 20 people, most often in young females. Usually, it is an incidental finding on physical examination, but it is of clinical importance in a small fraction of those affected, with the patient suffering chest pain and fatigue.

PULMONARY VALVE STENOSIS

In pulmonary valve stenosis, the valve cusps are fused, forming a dome with a narrow central opening. In infundibular pulmonary stenosis, the conus arteriosus is underdeveloped. Both types of pulmonary stenoses produce a restriction of right ventricular outflow and may occur together. The degree of hypertrophy of the right ventricle is variable.

PULMONARY VALVE INCOMPETENCE

If the free margins (lunules) of the cusps of a semilunar valve thicken and become inflexible or are damaged by disease, the valve will not close completely. An incompetent pulmonary valve results in a backrush of blood under high pressure into the right ventricle during diastole. Like other valvular abnormalities, pulmonic regurgitation may be heard through a stethoscope as a heart murmur, an abnormal sound from the heart, produced in this case by damage to the cusps of the pulmonary valve.

AORTIC VALVE STENOSIS

Aortic valve stenosis is the most frequent valve abnormality. For those born in the early- and mid-20th century, rheumatic fever was a common cause but now accounts for <10% of cases of aortic stenosis. The great majority of aortic stenoses is a result of degenerative calcification, often the result of a congenital bicuspid aortic valve, and comes to clinical attention in the sixth decade of life or later. Aortic stenosis causes extra work for the heart, resulting in left ventricular hypertrophy.

AORTIC VALVE INSUFFICIENCY

Insufficiency of the aortic valve results in aortic regurgitation (backrush of blood into the left ventricle), producing a heart murmur and a collapsing pulse (forcible impulse that rapidly diminishes).

Echocardiography

Echocardiography (ultrasonic cardiography) is a method of graphically recording the position and motion of the heart by the echo obtained from beams of ultrasonic waves directed through the thoracic wall (Fig. B4.30). This technique may detect as little as 20 mL of fluid in the pericardial cavity, such as that resulting from pericardial effusion. Doppler echocardiography is a technique that demonstrates and records the flow of blood through the heart and great vessels by Doppler ultrasonography, making it especially useful in the diagnosis and analysis of problems with blood flow through the heart, such as septal defects, and in delineating valvular stenosis and regurgitation, especially on the left side of the heart.

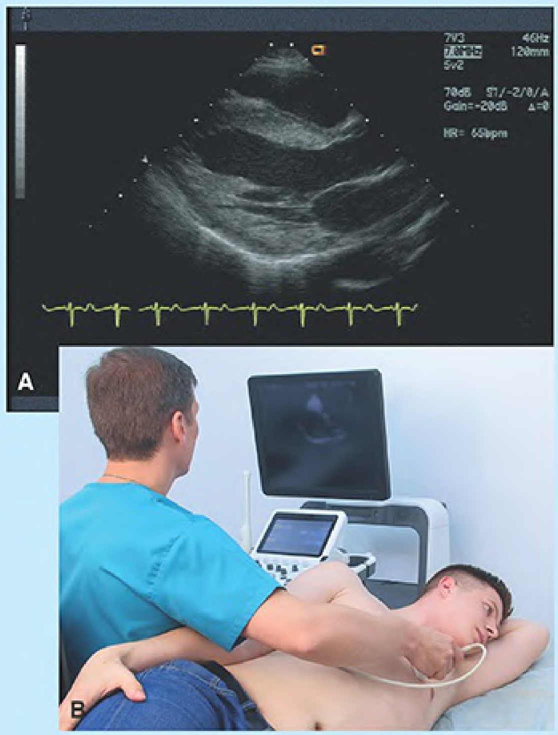


FIGURE B4.30. Echocardiography. A. Normal echocardiogram. **B.** Sonographer placing transducer in a left intercostal space in the parasternal line, overlying the heart.

Coronary Angiography

Using conventional coronary angiography, the coronary arteries can be visualized with coronary arteriograms (Fig. B4.31). A long, narrow catheter is passed into the ascending aorta, commonly via the femoral artery in the inguinal region although increasingly via the radial artery in the forearm. Under fluoroscopic control, the tip of the catheter is placed just inside the opening of a coronary artery. A small injection of radiopaque contrast material is made, and cineradiographs are taken to show the lumen of the artery and its branches, as well as any stenotic areas that may be present. Increasingly, noninvasive CT or MR angiography is replacing the invasive conventional methods (see Figs. B4.41 and B4.47).

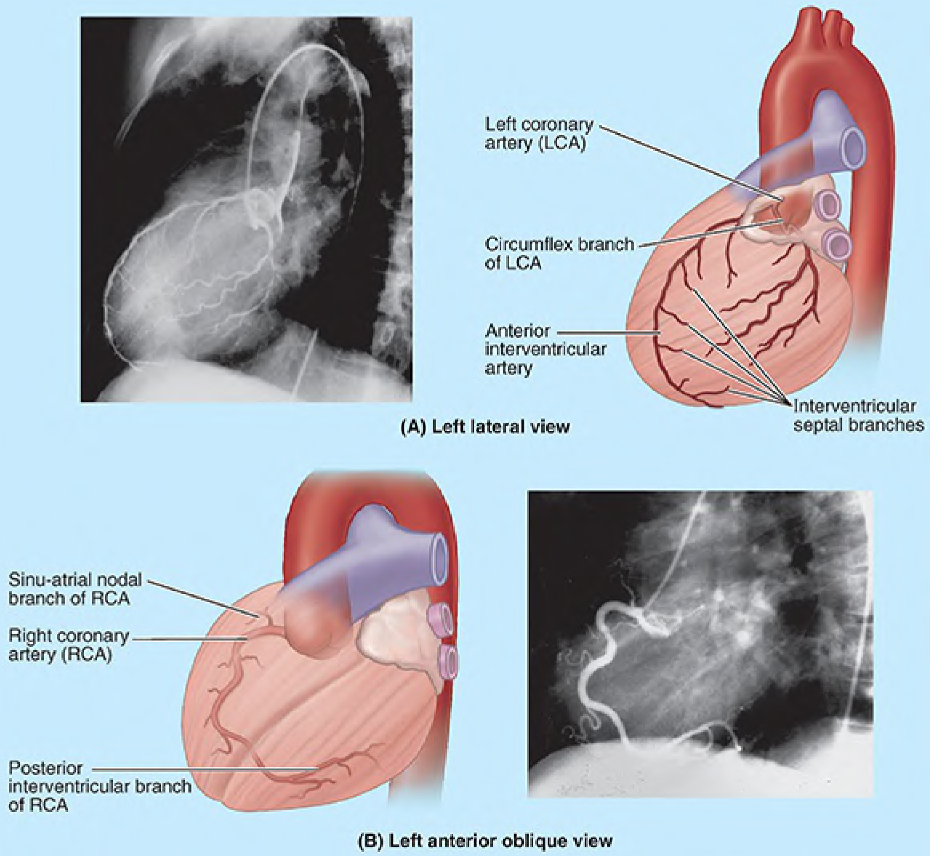


FIGURE B4.31. **Conventional coronary arteriograms.**

Coronary Artery Disease or Coronary Heart Disease

Coronary artery disease (CAD) is one of the leading causes of death. It has many causes, all of which result in a reduced blood supply to the vital myocardial tissue.

MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

With sudden occlusion of a major artery by an embolus (G. embolos, plug), the region of myocardium supplied by the occluded vessel becomes infarcted (rendered virtually bloodless) and undergoes necrosis (pathological tissue death). The three most common sites of coronary artery occlusion and the percentage of occlusions involving each artery are (Fig. B4.32) the:

1. Anterior IV (LAD) branch of the LCA (40–50%).
2. RCA (30–40%).
3. Circumflex branch of the LCA (15–20%).

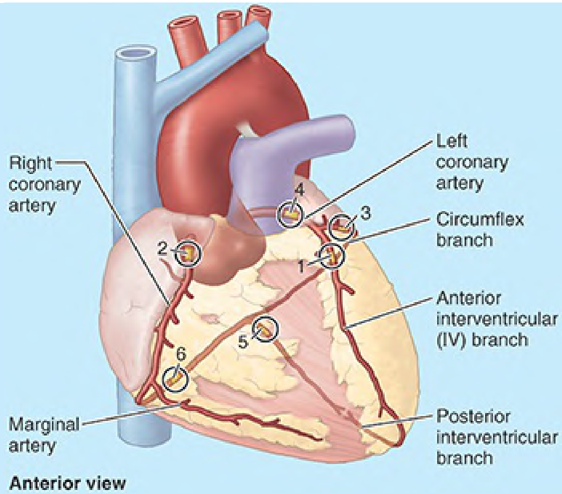


FIGURE B4.32. **Sites of coronary artery occlusion (circles), in order of frequency.** Sites 1–3 account for at least 85% of all occlusions.

An area of myocardium that has undergone necrosis constitutes a myocardial infarction (MI). The most common cause of ischemic heart disease is coronary artery insufficiency resulting from atherosclerosis.

CORONARY ATHEROSCLEROSIS

The atherosclerotic process, characterized by lipid deposits in the intima (lining layer) of the coronary arteries, begins during early adulthood and slowly results in stenosis of the lumina of the arteries (Fig. B4.33). As coronary atherosclerosis progresses, the collateral channels connecting one coronary artery with the other expand, which may initially permit adequate perfusion of the heart during relative inactivity. Despite this compensatory mechanism, the myocardium may not receive enough oxygen when the heart needs to perform increased amounts of work. Strenuous exercise, for example, increases the heart's activity and its need for oxygen. Insufficiency of blood supply to the heart (myocardial ischemia) may result in MI.

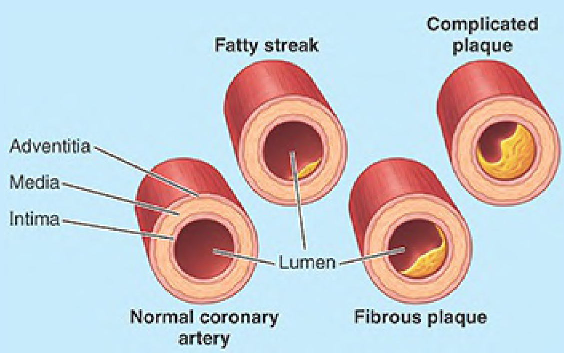


FIGURE B4.33. **Atherosclerosis.** Stages of development in a coronary artery.

SLOWLY PROGRESSIVE CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE

In slow occlusion of a coronary artery, the collateral circulation has time to increase so that adequate perfusion of the myocardium can occur when a potentially ischemic event occurs. Consequently, MI may not result. On sudden blockage of a large coronary branch, some infarction is probably inevitable, but the extent of the area damaged depends on the degree of development of collateral anastomotic channels. If large branches of both coronary arteries are partially obstructed, an extracardiac collateral circulation may be used to supply blood to the heart. These collaterals connect the coronary arteries with the vasa vasorum (small arteries) in the tunica adventitia of the aorta and pulmonary arteries and with branches of the internal thoracic, bronchial, and phrenic arteries. Clinical studies show that anastomoses cannot provide collateral routes quickly enough to prevent the effects of sudden coronary artery occlusion. The functional value of these anastomoses thus appears to be more effective in slowly progressive CAD in individuals that are physically active.

Angina Pectoris

Pain that originates in the heart is called angina or angina pectoris (L. angina, strangling pain + L. pectoris, of the chest). Individuals with angina commonly describe the transient (15 seconds to 15 minutes) but moderately severe constricting pain as tightness in the thorax, deep to the sternum. The pain is the result of ischemia of the myocardium that falls short of inducing the cellular necrosis that defines infarction.

Most often, angina results from narrowed coronary arteries. The reduced blood flow results in less oxygen being delivered to the cardiac striated muscle cells. As a result of the limited anaerobic metabolism of the myocytes, lactic acid accumulates and the pH is reduced in affected areas of the heart. Pain receptors in muscle are stimulated by lactic acid. Strenuous exercise (especially after a heavy meal), sudden exposure to cold, and stress all require increased activity on the part of the heart, but the occluded vessels cannot provide it. When food enters the stomach, blood flow to it and other parts of the digestive tract is increased. As a result, some blood is diverted from other organs, including the heart.

Anginal pain is relieved by a period of rest (1–2 minutes are often adequate). Sublingual nitroglycerin (medication placed or sprayed under the tongue for absorption through the oral mucosa) may be administered because it dilates the coronary (and other) arteries. This increases blood flow to the heart while decreasing the workload and the heart’s need for oxygen because the heart is pumping against less resistance. Furthermore, the dilated vessels accommodate more of the blood volume, so less blood arrives in the heart, relieving heart congestion. Thus, the angina is usually relieved. Such angina provides a warning that the coronary arteries are compromised and that there is a need for a change of lifestyle, a health care intervention, or both.

The pain resulting from MI is usually more severe than with angina pectoris, and the pain resulting from the infarction does not disappear after 1–2 minutes of rest.

Coronary Bypass Graft

Patients with obstruction of their coronary circulation and severe angina may undergo a coronary bypass graft operation. A segment of an artery or vein is connected to the ascending aorta or to the proximal part of a coronary artery and then to the coronary artery distal to the stenosis (Fig. B4.34). The great saphenous vein is commonly harvested for coronary bypass surgery because it (1) has a diameter equal to or greater than that of the coronary arteries, (2) can be easily dissected from the lower limb, and (3) and offers relatively lengthy portions with a minimum occurrence of valves or branching. Reversal of the implanted segment of vein can negate the effect of a valve if a valved segment must be used. Use of the radial artery in bypass surgery has become increasingly more common. A coronary bypass graft shunts blood from the aorta to a stenotic coronary artery to increase the flow distal to the obstruction. Simply stated, it provides a detour around the stenotic area (arterial stenosis) or blockage (arterial atresia). Revascularization of the myocardium may also be achieved by surgically anastomosing an internal thoracic artery with a coronary artery. Hearts with coronary bypass grafts are commonly found during dissections in the gross anatomy laboratory.

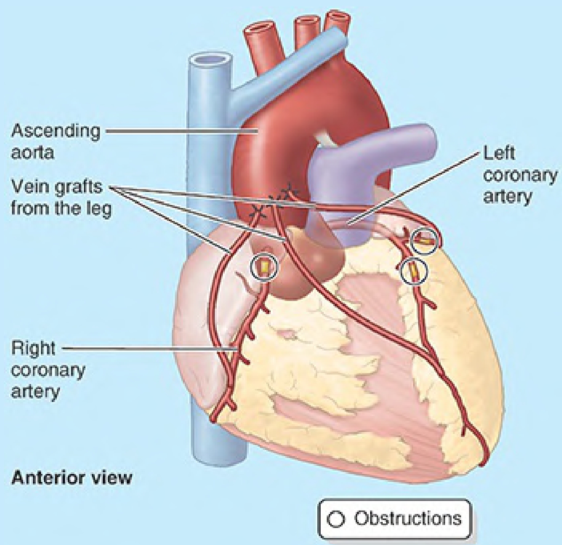


FIGURE B4.34. Triple coronary artery bypass.

Coronary Angioplasty

Cardiologists or interventional radiologists use percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty in which they pass a catheter with a small inflatable balloon attached to its tip into the obstructed coronary artery (Fig. B4.35). When the catheter reaches the obstruction, the balloon is inflated, flattening the atherosclerotic plaque against the vessel's wall. The vessel is stretched to increase the size of the lumen, thus improving blood flow. In other cases, thrombokinase is injected through the catheter; this enzyme dissolves the blood clot. Intraluminal instruments with rotating blades and lasers have also been employed. After dilation of the vessel, an intravascular stent may be introduced to maintain the dilation. Intravascular stents are composed of rigid or semirigid tubular meshes,

collapsed during introduction. Once in place, they expand or are expanded with a balloon catheter, to maintain luminal patency.

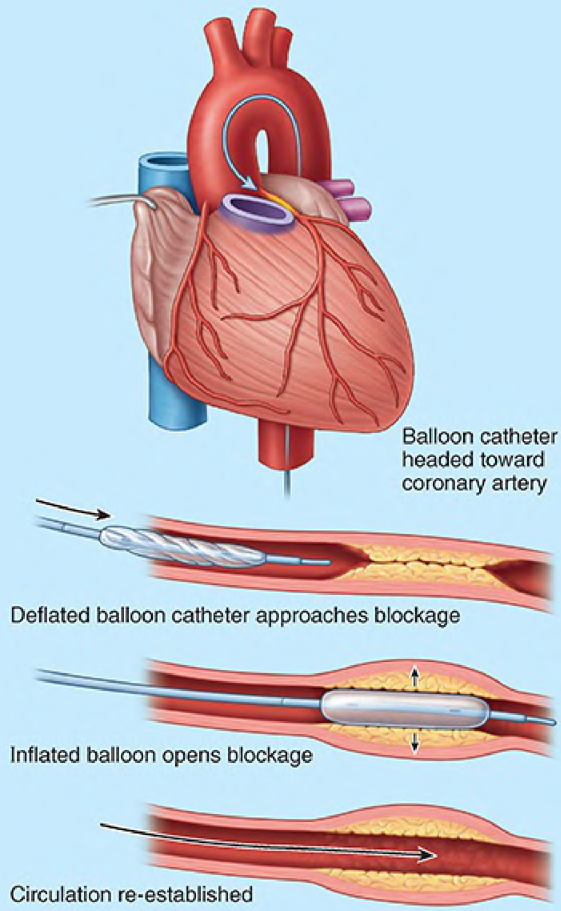


FIGURE B4.35. Percutaneous transluminal angioplasty.

Collateral Circulation via the Smallest Cardiac Veins

Reversal of flow in the anterior and smallest cardiac veins may bring **luminal blood** (blood from the heart chambers) to the capillary beds of the myocardium in some regions, providing some additional collateral circulation. However, unless these collaterals have dilated in response to pre-existing ischemic heart disease, especially in conjunction with physical conditioning, they are unlikely to be able to supply sufficient blood to the heart during an acute event and thus prevent MI.

Electrocardiography

The passage of impulses over the heart from the SA node through the conducting system and the pattern of myocardial repolarization can be amplified and recorded as an electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG) (Fig. B4.36). Functional testing of the heart includes exercise tolerance tests (treadmill stress tests), primarily to check the consequences

of possible coronary artery disease. Exercise tolerance tests are of considerable importance in detecting the cause of heartbeat irregularities. Heart rate, ECG, and blood pressure readings are monitored as the patient does increasingly demanding exercise on a treadmill. The results show the maximum effort a patient's heart can safely tolerate.

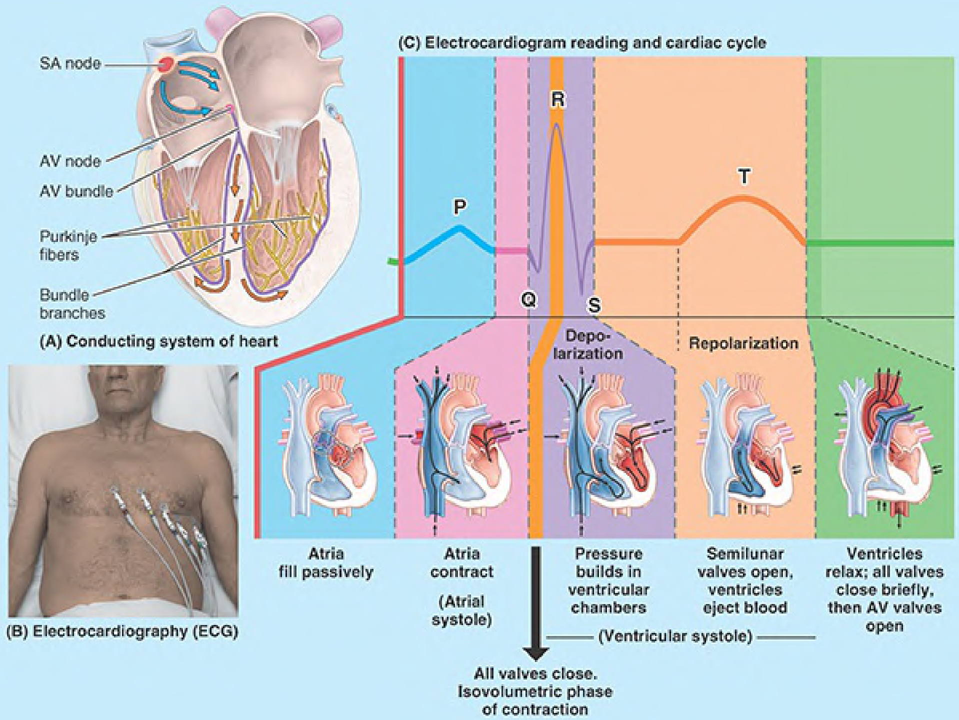


FIGURE B4.36. Relationship of electrocardiogram to conducting system of heart and cardiac cycle.

Coronary Occlusion and Conducting System of Heart

Damage to the conducting system of the heart, often resulting from ischemia caused by coronary artery disease, produces disturbances of cardiac muscle contraction.

Since the anterior IV branch (LAD) gives rise to the septal branches supplying the AV bundle in most people, and branches of the RCA supply both the SA and AV nodes (Fig. B4.37; see Fig. 4.59C), parts of the conducting system of the heart are likely to be affected by their occlusion, and a heart block may occur. In this case (if the patient survives the initial stages), the ventricles will begin to contract independently at their own rate: 25–30 times per minute (much slower than the slowest normal rate [40–45 times per minute]). The atria continue to contract at the normal rate if the SA node has been spared, but the impulse generated by the SA node no longer reaches the ventricles.

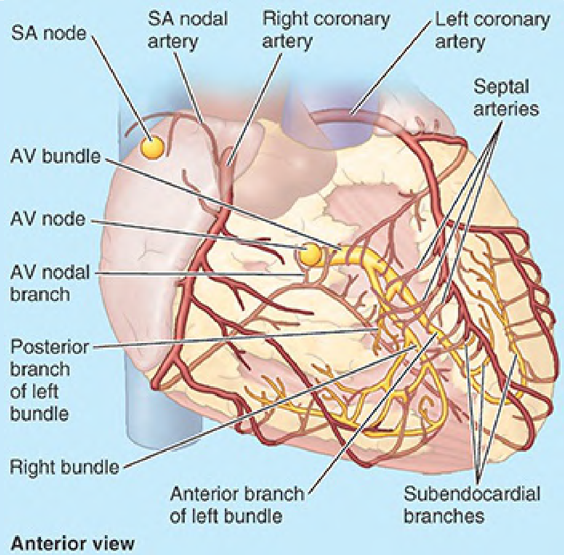


FIGURE B4.37. Blood supply of conducting system of heart. AV, atrioventricular; SA, sino-atrial.

Damage to one of the bundle branches results in a bundle-branch block, in which excitation passes along the unaffected branch and causes a normally timed systole of that ventricle only. The impulse then spreads to the other ventricle via myogenic (muscle propagated) conduction, producing a late asynchronous contraction. In these cases, a cardiac pacemaker (artificial heart regulator) may be implanted to increase the ventricular rate of contraction to 70–80 per minute.

With a VSD, the AV bundle usually lies in the margin of the VSD. Obviously, this vital part of the conducting system must be preserved during surgical repair of the defect. Destruction of the AV bundle would cut the only physiological link between the atrial and ventricular musculature, also producing a heart block as described above.

Artificial Cardiac Pacemaker

In some people with a heart block, an artificial cardiac pacemaker (approximately the size of a pocket watch) is inserted subcutaneously. The pacemaker consists of a pulse generator or battery pack, a wire (lead), and an electrode. Pacemakers produce electrical impulses that initiate ventricular contractions at a predetermined rate. An electrode with a catheter connected to it is inserted into a vein and its progression through the venous pathway is followed with a fluoroscope, a device for examining deep structures in real time (as motion occurs) by means of radiographs. The terminal of the electrode is passed through the SVC to the right atrium and through the tricuspid valve into the right ventricle. Here, the electrode is firmly fixed to the trabeculae carneae in the ventricular wall and placed in contact with the endocardium.

Restarting Heart

In most cases of cardiac arrest, first aid workers perform cardiopulmonary resuscitation

(CPR) to restore cardiac output and pulmonary ventilation. By applying firm pressure to the thorax over the inferior part of the sternal body (external or closed chest massage), the sternum moves posteriorly 4–5 cm. The increased intrathoracic pressure forces blood out of the heart into the great arteries. When the external pressure is released and the intrathoracic pressure falls, the heart again fills with blood. If the heart stops beating (cardiac arrest) during heart surgery, the surgeon attempts pump for it using internal or open-chest heart massage until the normal circulation can be restored.

Fibrillation of Heart

Fibrillation is multiple, rapid, circuitous contractions or twitchings of muscular fibers, including cardiac muscle. In atrial fibrillation, the normal regular rhythmical contractions of the atria are replaced by rapid irregular and uncoordinated twitchings of different parts of the atrial walls. The ventricles respond at irregular intervals to the dysrhythmic impulses received from the atria, but usually, circulation remains satisfactory. In ventricular fibrillation, the normal ventricular contractions are replaced by rapid, irregular twitching movements that do not pump (i.e., they do not maintain the systemic circulation, including the coronary circulation). The damaged conducting system of the heart does not function normally. As a result, an irregular pattern of uncoordinated contractions occurs in the ventricles, except in those areas that are infarcted. Ventricular fibrillation is the most disorganized of all dysrhythmias, and in its presence, no effective cardiac output occurs. The condition is fatal if allowed to persist.

Defibrillation of Heart

A defibrillating electric shock may be given to the heart through the thoracic wall via large electrodes (paddles). This shock causes cessation of all cardiac movements, and a few seconds later, the heart may begin to beat more normally. As coordinated contractions and hence pumping of the heart is re-established, some degree of systemic (including coronary) circulation results. If the chest is already open, as during heart surgery, special paddles may be placed directly on the heart.

Cardiac Referred Pain

The heart is insensitive to touch, cutting, cold, and heat; however, ischemia and the accumulation of metabolic products stimulate pain endings in the myocardium. The afferent pain fibers run centrally in the middle and inferior cervical branches and especially in the thoracic cardiac branches of the sympathetic trunk. The axons of these primary sensory neurons enter spinal cord segments T1 through T4 or T5, especially on the left side.

Cardiac referred pain is a phenomenon whereby noxious stimuli originating in the heart are perceived by a person as pain arising from a superficial part of the body—the skin on

the left upper limb, for example. Visceral referred pain is transmitted by visceral afferent fibers accompanying sympathetic fibers and is typically referred to somatic structures or areas such as a limb having afferent fibers with cell bodies in the same spinal ganglion and central processes that enter the spinal cord through the same posterior roots (Kaufman & Jones, 2018).

Anginal pain is commonly felt as radiating from the substernal and left pectoral regions to the left shoulder and the medial aspect of the left upper limb (Fig. B4.38A). This part of the limb is supplied by the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm. Often, the lateral cutaneous branches of the 2nd and 3rd intercostal nerves (the intercostobrachial nerves) join or overlap in their distribution with the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm. Consequently, cardiac pain is referred to the upper limb because the spinal cord segments of these cutaneous nerves (T1–T3) are also common to the visceral afferent terminations for the coronary arteries. Synaptic contacts may also be made with commissural (connector) neurons, which conduct impulses to neurons on the right side of comparable areas of the spinal cord. This occurrence explains why pain of cardiac origin, although usually referred to the left side, may be referred to the right side, both sides, or the back (Fig. B4.38B, C).

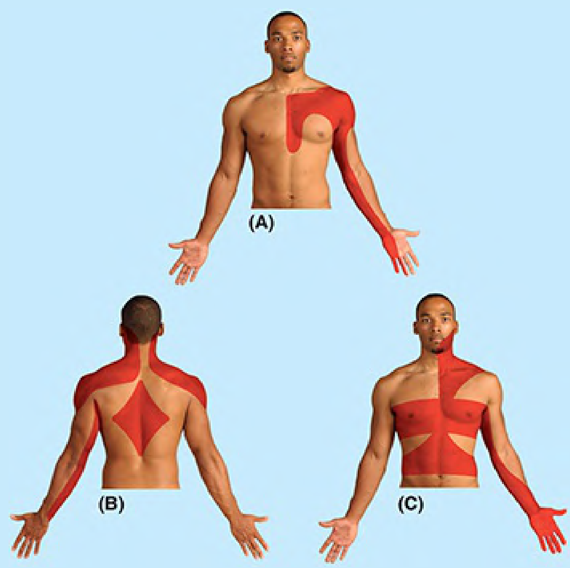


FIGURE B4.38. Areas of cardiac referred pain (red). A. Common anginal pain pattern. **B and C.** Less common patterns of cardiac referred pain.

The Bottom Line: Heart

Heart: The heart is a dual suction and pressure pump that propels blood through the infinite double loop formed by the pulmonary and systemic circuits. ■ The right heart serves the former and the left heart the latter. ■ The heart is shaped like a tipped-over

pyramid, with the apex directed antero-inferiorly and to the left and the base opposite the apex (posterior). ■ Each side of the heart includes a receiving chamber (atrium) and a suction–compression–expulsion chamber (ventricle). ■ The bilateral chambers (and thus the high-pressure systemic and lower-pressure pulmonary circuits) are separated by a cardiac septum that is largely muscular but partly membranous. ■ AV valves are placed between unilateral chambers to facilitate two-stage (accumulate and then eject) pumping. ■ One-way semilunar valves (pulmonic and aortic) placed at the exit on each side prevent backflow (except that which fills the coronary arteries) and maintain the diastolic pressure of the arteries. ■ The chambers have a glistening endothelial lining, the endocardium; a muscular wall or myocardium, the thickness of which is proportional to the internal pressures occurring within the specific chamber; and a glistening outer covering (the visceral layer of serous pericardium, or epicardium). ■ The myocardium of the atria and ventricles (and the myogenic propagation of contracting stimuli through it) is attached to and separated by the connective tissue of the fibrous skeleton of the heart. ■ The fibrous skeleton consists of four fibrous rings, two trigones, and the membranous parts of the cardiac septa. ■ Only specialized muscle conducting contractile impulses from the atria to the ventricles penetrates the fibrous skeleton at defined sites. ■ The fibrous skeleton provides attachment for the myocardium and cusps of valves and maintains the integrity of the orifices.

Coronary circulation: The circulatory system of the myocardium is unique in that the coronary arteries fill during ventricular diastole as a result of aortic recoil. They are typically (but not necessarily) functional end arteries. ■ The right coronary artery (RCA) and circumflex branch of the left coronary artery (LCA) supply the walls of the atria via small branches. ■ The RCA typically supplies the SA and AV nodes, the myocardium of the external wall of the right ventricle (except its anterior surface), the diaphragmatic surface of the left ventricle, and the posterior third of the IVS. ■ The LCA typically supplies the anterior two thirds of the IVS (including the AV bundle of conductive tissue), the anterior wall of the right ventricle, and the external wall of the left ventricle (except the diaphragmatic surface). ■ The capillary beds of the myocardium drain primarily into the right atrium via veins emptying into the coronary sinus. However, the vein also may enter directly into the chambers via the smallest cardiac veins. Both pathways lack valves.

Conducting, stimulating, and regulating system of heart: The conducting system of the heart consists of specialized intrinsic nodes that rhythmically generate stimuli and bundles of modified cardiac muscle that conduct the impulses. The result is the coordinated contraction of the atria and ventricles. ■ The rate of generation and speed of conductivity are increased by the sympathetic division and inhibited by the parasympathetic division of the ANS to meet demands or conserve energy. ■ The

impulse-generating sino-atrial (SA) node and the relaying atrioventricular (AV) node are typically supplied by nodal branches of the RCA. The atrioventricular bundle and its branches are primarily supplied by septal branches of the LCA. ■ Occlusion of either coronary artery with subsequent infarction of nodal or conductive tissue may require placement of an artificial cardiac pacemaker. ■ The effect of the ANS on the coronary arteries is paradoxical. Sympathetic stimulation produces vasodilation and parasympathetic stimulation produces vasoconstriction.

Superior Mediastinum and Great Vessels

The superior mediastinum is superior to the transverse thoracic plane, passing through the sternal angle and the junction (IV disc) of vertebrae T4 and T5 (Fig. 4.64). From anterior to posterior, the contents of the superior mediastinum are (Figs. 4.65 and 4.66A, B) the following:

- Thymus
- Great vessels, with the veins (brachiocephalic veins and SVC) anterior to the arteries (arch of aorta and roots of its major branches—the brachiocephalic trunk, left common carotid artery, and left subclavian artery) and related nerves (vagus and phrenic nerves and the cardiac plexus of nerves)
- Inferior continuation of the cervical viscera (trachea anteriorly and esophagus posteriorly) and related nerves (left recurrent laryngeal nerve)
- Thoracic duct and lymphatic trunks

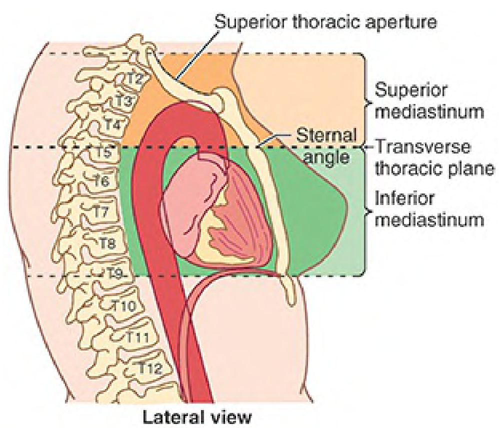


FIGURE 4.64. Boundaries of superior mediastinum. The superior mediastinum extends inferiorly from the superior thoracic aperture to the transverse thoracic plane.

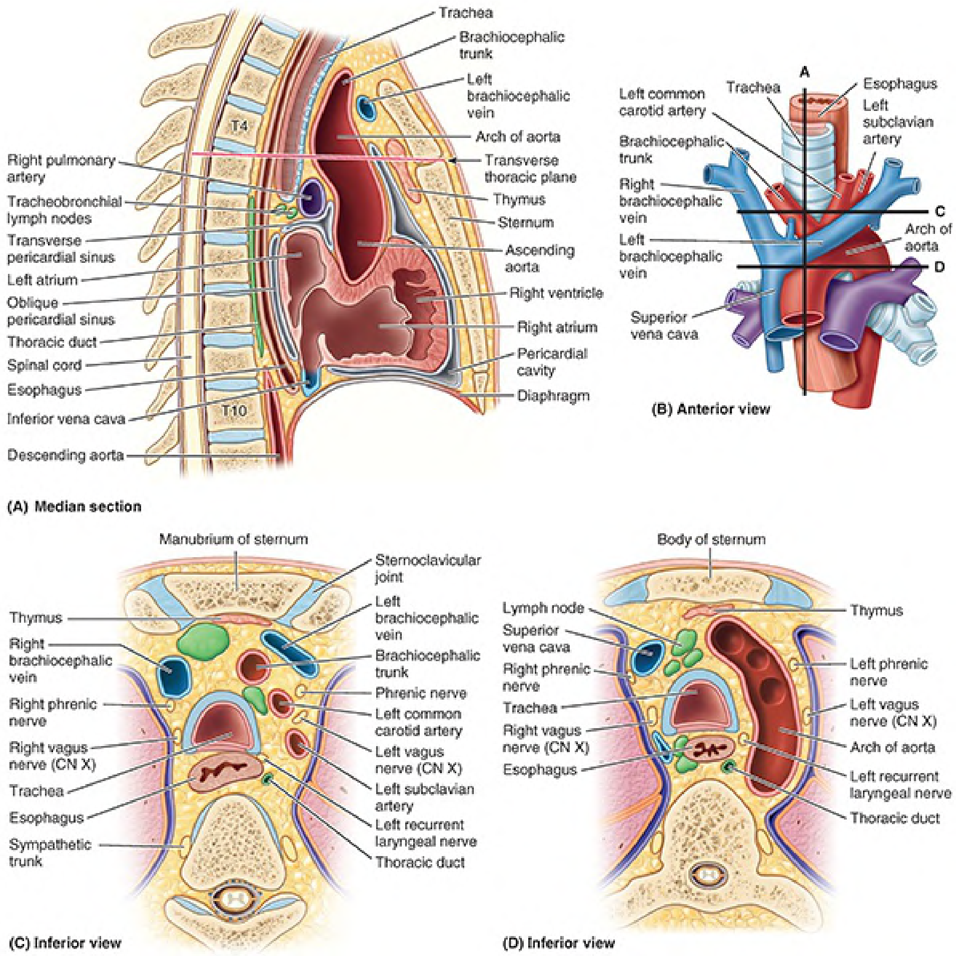


FIGURE 4.65. Relationships of structures in superior mediastinum. The order of systemic structures in the superior mediastinum, from anterior to posterior, is demonstrated in median (**A**), anterior (**B**), and inferior (**C** and **D**) views: thymus, veins, arteries, airway (trachea), alimentary tract (esophagus), lymphatic ducts, vertebral bodies/intervertebral discs, and spinal cord.

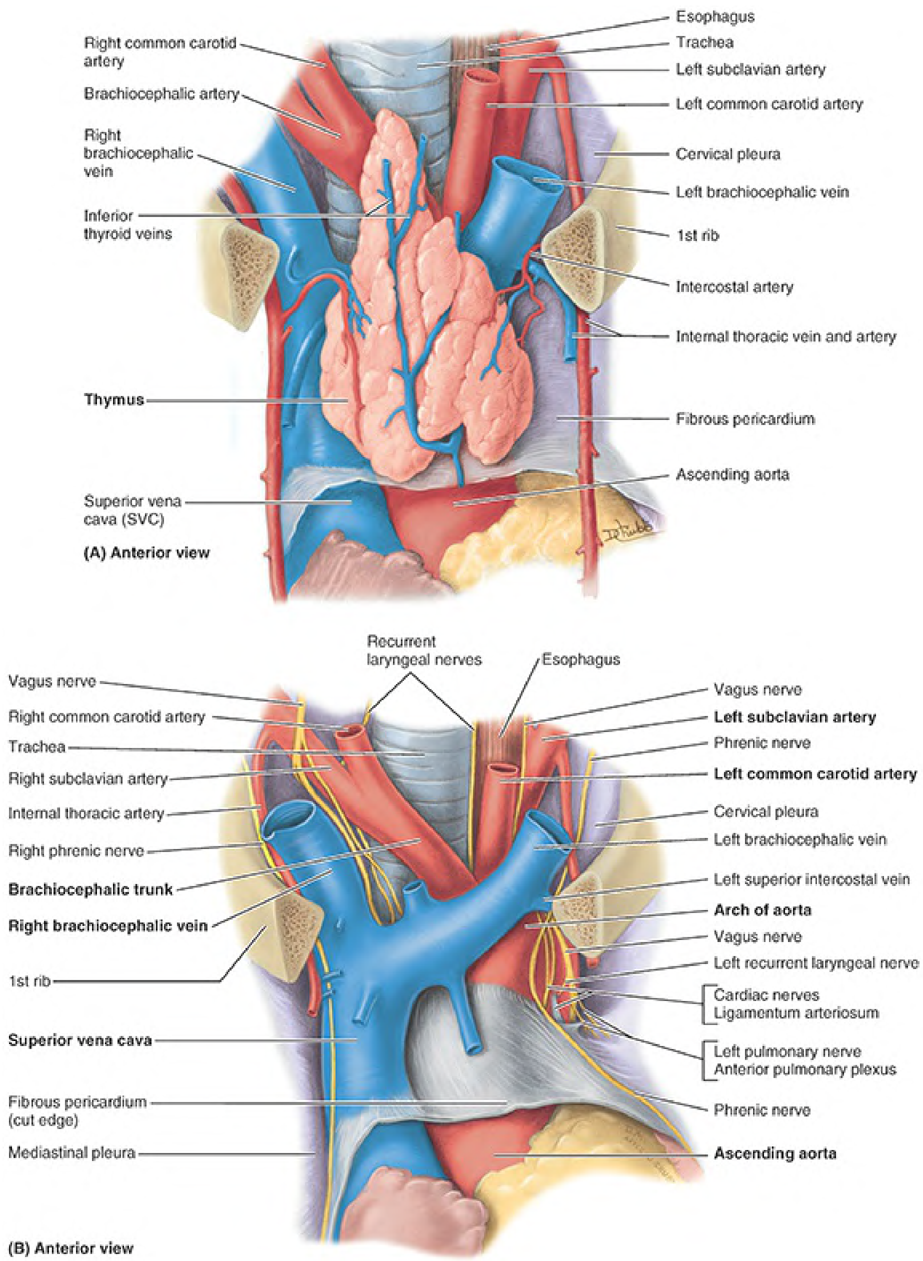


FIGURE 4.66. Dissections of superior mediastinum. A. Superficial dissection of mediastinum. The sternum and ribs have been excised and the overlapping parietal pleurae removed. It is unusual to see such a distinct thymus in an adult; usually, it is impressive during puberty but subsequently regresses and becomes largely replaced by fat and fibrous tissue. **B.** Deep dissection of root of neck and superior mediastinum. The thymus has been removed. The right vagus nerve (CN X) crosses anterior to the right subclavian artery and gives off the right recurrent laryngeal nerve, which passes medially to reach the trachea and esophagus. The left recurrent laryngeal nerve passes inferior and then posterior to the arch of the aorta and ascends between the trachea and esophagus to the larynx.

To summarize systemically, the order of the major structures in the superior mediastinum, from anterior to posterior, is (1) thymus, (2) veins, (3) arteries, (4) airway, (5) alimentary tract, and (6) lymphatic trunks.

THYMUS

The **thymus**, a primary lymphoid organ, is located in the inferior part of the neck and the anterior part of the superior mediastinum (Figs. 4.65 and 4.66A). It is a flat gland with flask-shaped lobes that lies posterior to the manubrium and extends into the anterior mediastinum, anterior to the fibrous pericardium. After puberty, the thymus undergoes gradual involution and is largely replaced by fat. The rich arterial supply of the thymus is derived mainly from the anterior intercostal and **anterior mediastinal branches of the internal thoracic arteries**. The veins of the thymus end in the left brachiocephalic, internal thoracic, and inferior thyroid veins. The lymphatic vessels of the thymus end in the parasternal, brachiocephalic, and tracheobronchial lymph nodes.

GREAT VESSELS

The **right** and **left brachiocephalic** veins are formed posterior to the sternoclavicular (SC) joints by the union of the internal jugular and subclavian veins. At the level of the inferior border of the 1st right costal cartilage, the brachiocephalic veins unite to form the SVC (Figs. 4.65B and 4.66B). The left brachiocephalic vein is more than twice as long as the right brachiocephalic vein because it passes from the left to the right side, anterior to the roots of the three major branches of the arch of the aorta (Fig. 4.66B). The brachiocephalic veins shunt blood from the head, neck, and upper limbs to the right atrium.

The **superior vena cava (SVC)** returns blood from all structures superior to the diaphragm, except the lungs and heart. It passes inferiorly and ends at the level of the 3rd costal cartilage, where it enters the right atrium of the heart. The SVC lies in the right side of the superior mediastinum, anterolateral to the trachea and posterolateral to the ascending aorta. The right phrenic nerve lies between the SVC and the mediastinal pleura. The terminal half of the SVC is in the middle mediastinum, where it lies beside the ascending aorta and forms the posterior boundary of the transverse pericardial sinus (see Fig. 4.45).

The **ascending aorta**, approximately 2.5 cm in diameter, begins at the aortic orifice. Its only branches are the coronary arteries, arising from the aortic sinuses (see Fig. 4.55B). The ascending aorta is intrapericardial (Fig. 4.66A, B); for this reason, and because it lies inferior to the transverse thoracic plane, it is considered a content of the middle mediastinum (part of inferior mediastinum).

The **arch of the aorta** (aortic arch), the curved continuation of the ascending aorta (Figs. 4.65A and 4.67; see Table 4.5), begins posterior to the 2nd right sternocostal (SC) joint at the level of the sternal angle. It arches superiorly, posteriorly and to the left, and then inferiorly. The arch ascends anterior to the right pulmonary artery and the bifurcation of the trachea, reaching its apex at the left side of the trachea and esophagus as it passes over the root of the left lung. The arch descends posterior to the left root of the lung beside the T4 vertebra. The arch ends by becoming the **thoracic (descending) aorta** posterior to the 2nd left sternocostal joint.

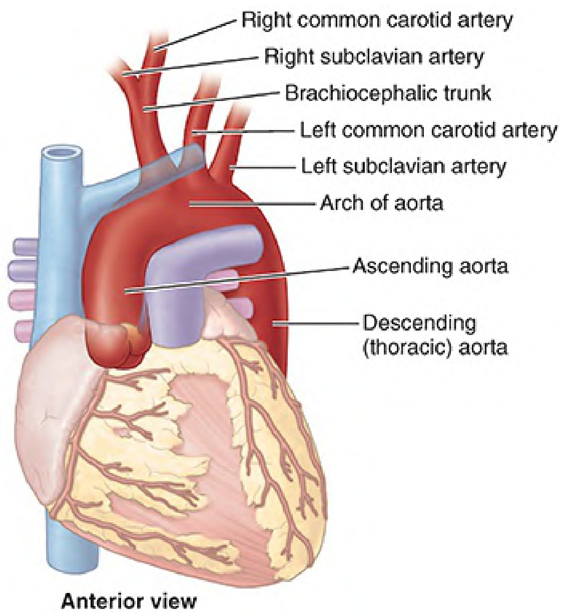


FIGURE 4.67. **Common pattern of branches of arch of aorta.** The pattern shown is present in approximately 65% of people. The largest branch (brachiocephalic trunk) arises from the beginning of the arch, the next artery (left common carotid artery) arises from the superior part of the arch, and the third branch (left subclavian artery) arises from the arch approximately 1 cm distal to the left common carotid.

TABLE 4.5 AORTA AND ITS BRANCHES IN THORAX

Artery	Origin	Course	Branches
Ascending aorta	Aortic orifice of left ventricle	Ascends approximately 5 cm to sternal angle where it becomes arch of aorta	Right and left coronary arteries
Arch of aorta	Continuation of ascending aorta	Arches posteriorly on left side of trachea and esophagus and superior to left main bronchus	Brachiocephalic, left common carotid, left subclavian
Thoracic (descending) aorta	Continuation of arch of aorta	Descends in posterior mediastinum to left of vertebral column; gradually shifts medially to lie in median plane at aortic hiatus	Posterior intercostal arteries, subcostal, some phrenic arteries, and visceral branches (e.g., esophageal)
Posterior intercostal	Posterior aspect of thoracic aorta	Pass laterally and then anteriorly parallel to ribs	Lateral and anterior cutaneous branches
Bronchial (1–2 branches)	Anterior aspect of aorta or posterior intercostal artery	Run with the tracheobronchial tree	Bronchial and peribronchial tissue and visceral pleura
Esophageal (4–5 branches)	Anterior aspect of thoracic aorta	Run anteriorly to reach the esophagus	To esophagus
Superior phrenic (vary in number)	Anterior aspects of thoracic aorta	Arise at aortic hiatus and pass to superior aspect of diaphragm	To diaphragm

The **arch of the azygos vein** occupies a position corresponding to the aorta on the right side of the trachea over the root of the right lung, although the blood is flowing in the opposite

direction (see Fig. 4.63). The **ligamentum arteriosum**, the remnant of the fetal ductus arteriosus, passes from the root of the left pulmonary artery to the inferior surface of the arch of the aorta. The usual branches of the arch are the brachiocephalic trunk, left common carotid artery, and left subclavian artery (Figs. 4.67 and 4.68A).

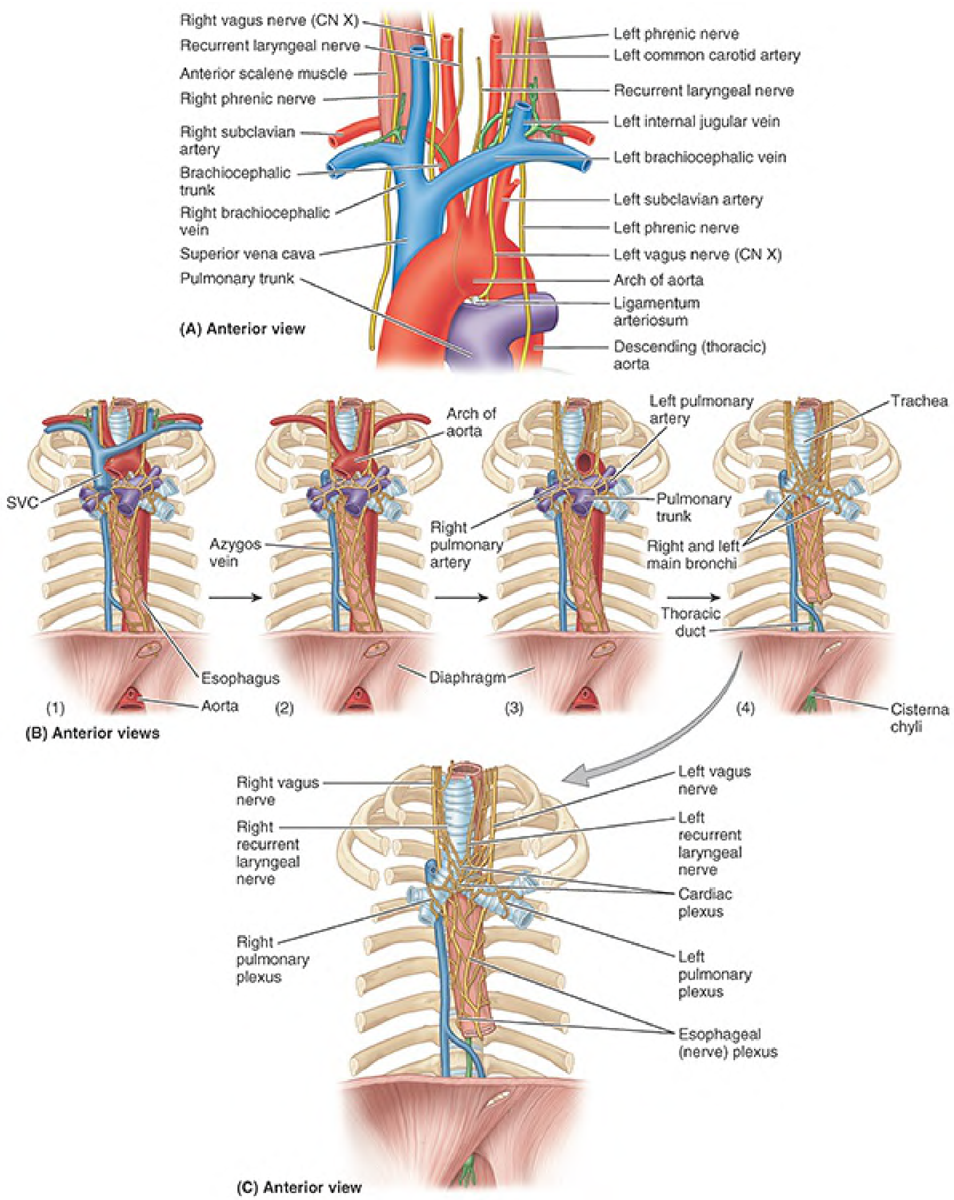


FIGURE 4.68. Great vessels and nerves. A. Relationships of vessels and nerves in superior mediastinum. The ligamentum arteriosum is the remnant of the fetal shunt (ductus arteriosus) that bypasses the prefunctional lungs. **B.** Relationships at bifurcation of trachea from superficial to deep. (1) Most anterior. The left brachiocephalic vein passes across the roots of the three major branches of the arch of the aorta. (2) The ascending aorta and arch pass anterior and superior, respectively, to the right pulmonary artery. (3) The bifurcation of the pulmonary trunk and right pulmonary artery lie directly anterior to the bifurcation of the trachea. (4) The cardiac plexus remains on the anterior aspect of the tracheal bifurcation after removal of the pulmonary trunk and arteries, the ascending aorta, and the arch of the aorta, to which the plexus is primarily related. **C.** Nerves in superior and posterior mediastina. The viscera that lie anterior to the trachea and esophagus have been removed.

The **brachiocephalic trunk**, the first and largest branch of the arch of the aorta, arises posterior to the manubrium, where it is anterior to the trachea and posterior to the left brachiocephalic vein (Figs. 4.65A, B, 4.66B, and 4.68A). The trunk ascends superolaterally to reach the right side of the trachea and the right SC joint, where it divides into the right common carotid and right subclavian arteries.

The **left common carotid artery**, the second branch of the arch of the aorta, arises posterior to the manubrium, slightly posterior and to the left of the brachiocephalic trunk. It ascends anterior to the left subclavian artery and is at first anterior to the trachea and then to its left. It enters the neck by passing posterior to the left SC joint.

The **left subclavian artery**, the third branch of the arch of the aorta, arises from the posterior part of the arch, just posterior to the left common carotid artery. It ascends lateral to the trachea and left common carotid artery through the superior mediastinum; it has no branches in the mediastinum. As it leaves the thorax and enters the root of the neck, it passes posterior to the left SC joint.

NERVES IN SUPERIOR MEDIASTINUM

The vagus nerves exit the cranium and descend through the neck posterolateral to the common carotid arteries (Fig. 4.67A; see Table 4.6). Each vagus nerve enters the superior mediastinum posterior to the respective SC joint and brachiocephalic vein.

TABLE 4.6 NERVES OF THORAX

Nerve	Origin	Course	Distribution
Vagus (CN X)	8–10 rootlets from medulla of brainstem	Enters superior mediastinum posterior to sternoclavicular joint and brachiocephalic vein; gives rise to recurrent laryngeal nerve; passes posterior to roots of lungs to form esophageal plexus; continues into abdomen	Pulmonary plexus, esophageal plexus, and cardiac plexus
Phrenic	Anterior rami of C3–C5 nerves	Passes through superior thoracic aperture and runs between mediastinal pleura and pericardium, passing anterior to roots of lungs	Mediastinal parietal pleura and pericardium; muscle, parietal pleura, and peritoneum of central portion of diaphragm
Intercostals (1–11)	Anterior rami of T1–T11 nerves	Run in intercostal spaces between internal and innermost layers of intercostal muscles	Muscles in and skin over intercostal space; lower nerves supply muscles and skin of anterolateral abdominal wall.
Subcostal	Anterior ramus of T12 nerve	Follows inferior border of 12th rib and passes into abdominal wall	Abdominal wall and skin of gluteal region
Recurrent laryngeal	Vagus nerve	Loops around subclavian artery on right; on left runs around arch of aorta and ascends in tracheo-esophageal groove	Intrinsic muscles of larynx (except cricothyroid); sensory inferior to level of vocal folds
Cardiac plexus	Cervical and cardiac	From arch of aorta and posterior	Impulses pass to sino-atrial node;

	branches of vagus nerve and cardiopulmonary splanchnic nerves from sympathetic trunk	surface of heart, fibers extend along coronary arteries and to sino-atrial node.	parasympathetic fibers slow rate, reduce force of heartbeat, and constrict coronary arteries; sympathetic fibers have the opposite effect.
Pulmonary plexus	Vagus nerve and cardiopulmonary splanchnic nerves from sympathetic trunk	Forms on root of lung and extends along bronchial subdivisions	Parasympathetic fibers constrict bronchioles; sympathetic fibers dilate them; afferents convey reflexes.
Esophageal plexus	Right and left vagus nerves and splanchnic nerves from sympathetic trunk	Distal to tracheal bifurcation; vagus and sympathetic splanchnic nerves form a plexus around esophagus	Vagal and sympathetic fibers to smooth muscle and glands of inferior two thirds of esophagus

The **right vagus nerve** (RVN) enters the thorax anterior to the right subclavian artery, where it gives rise to the **right recurrent laryngeal nerve** (Fig. 4.68A–C). The right recurrent laryngeal nerve hooks around the right subclavian artery and ascends between the trachea and esophagus to supply the larynx. The RVN runs postero-inferiorly through the superior mediastinum on the right side of the trachea. The RVN then passes posterior to the right brachiocephalic vein, SVC, and root of the right lung. Here, it divides into many branches, which contribute to the **right pulmonary plexus** (Fig. 4.68C). Usually, the RVN leaves this plexus as a single nerve and passes to the esophagus, where it again breaks up and contributes fibers to the **esophageal (nerve) plexus**. The RVN also gives rise to nerves that contribute to the cardiac plexus.

The **left vagus nerve** (LVN) descends in the neck posterior to the left common carotid artery (Fig. 4.68A). It enters the mediastinum between the left common carotid artery and left subclavian artery. When the LVN reaches the left side of the arch of the aorta, it diverges posteriorly from the left phrenic nerve. The LVN is separated laterally from the phrenic nerve by the left superior intercostal vein. As the LVN curves medially at the inferior border of the arch of the aorta, it gives off the **left recurrent laryngeal nerve**. The left recurrent laryngeal nerve passes inferior to the arch of the aorta, immediately lateral to the ligamentum arteriosum, and ascends to the larynx in the groove between the trachea and the esophagus (Figs. 4.63, 4.66B, 4.68A–C, and 4.69). The LVN passes posterior to the root of the left lung, where it breaks up into many branches that contribute to the **left pulmonary plexus**. The LVN leaves this plexus as a single trunk and passes to the esophagus, where it joins fibers from the right vagus in the esophageal (nerve) plexus (Fig. 4.68B, C).

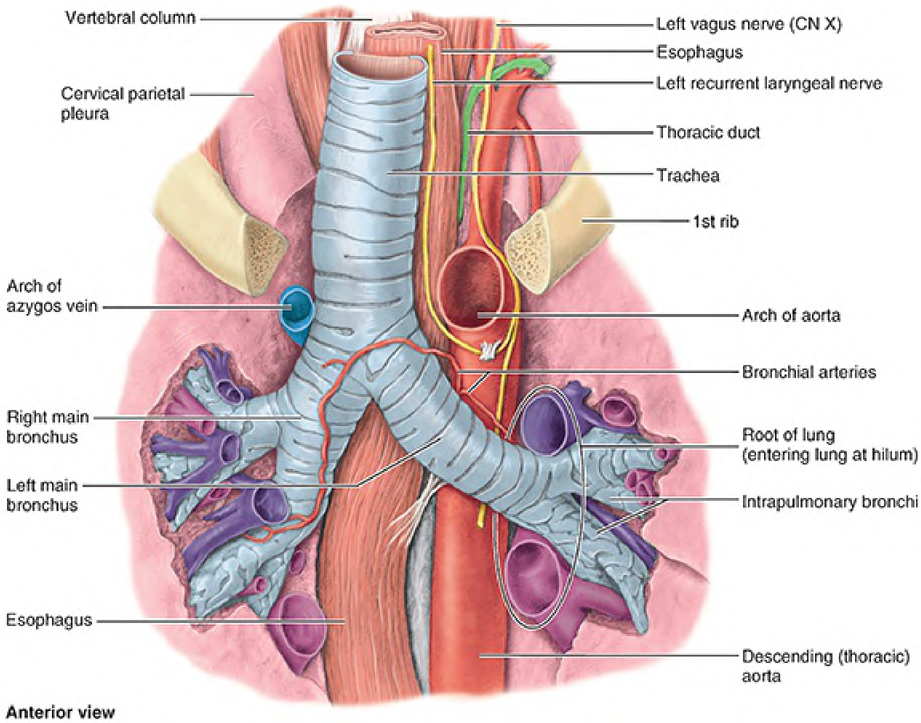


FIGURE 4.69. Deep dissection of superior mediastinum. Four structures run parallel as they traverse the superior thoracic aperture: trachea, esophagus, left recurrent laryngeal nerve, and thoracic duct. The right main bronchus is more vertical, shorter, and wider than the left main bronchus. The course of the right bronchial artery shown here is aberrant; usually, it passes posterior to the bronchus.

The phrenic nerves (Fig. 4.68A) supply the diaphragm with motor and sensory fibers, the latter accounting for approximately one third of the nerve's fibers. The phrenic nerves also supply sensory fibers to the pericardium and mediastinal pleura. Each phrenic nerve enters the superior mediastinum between the subclavian artery and the origin of the brachiocephalic vein (see Table 4.6). The fact that the phrenic nerves pass anterior to the roots of the lungs provides an important means of distinguishing them from the vagus nerves, which pass posterior to the roots.

The **right phrenic nerve** passes along the right side of the right brachiocephalic vein, SVC, and the pericardium over the right atrium. It also passes anterior to the root of the right lung and descends on the right side of the IVC to the diaphragm, which it pierces near the caval opening (Fig. 4.70A).

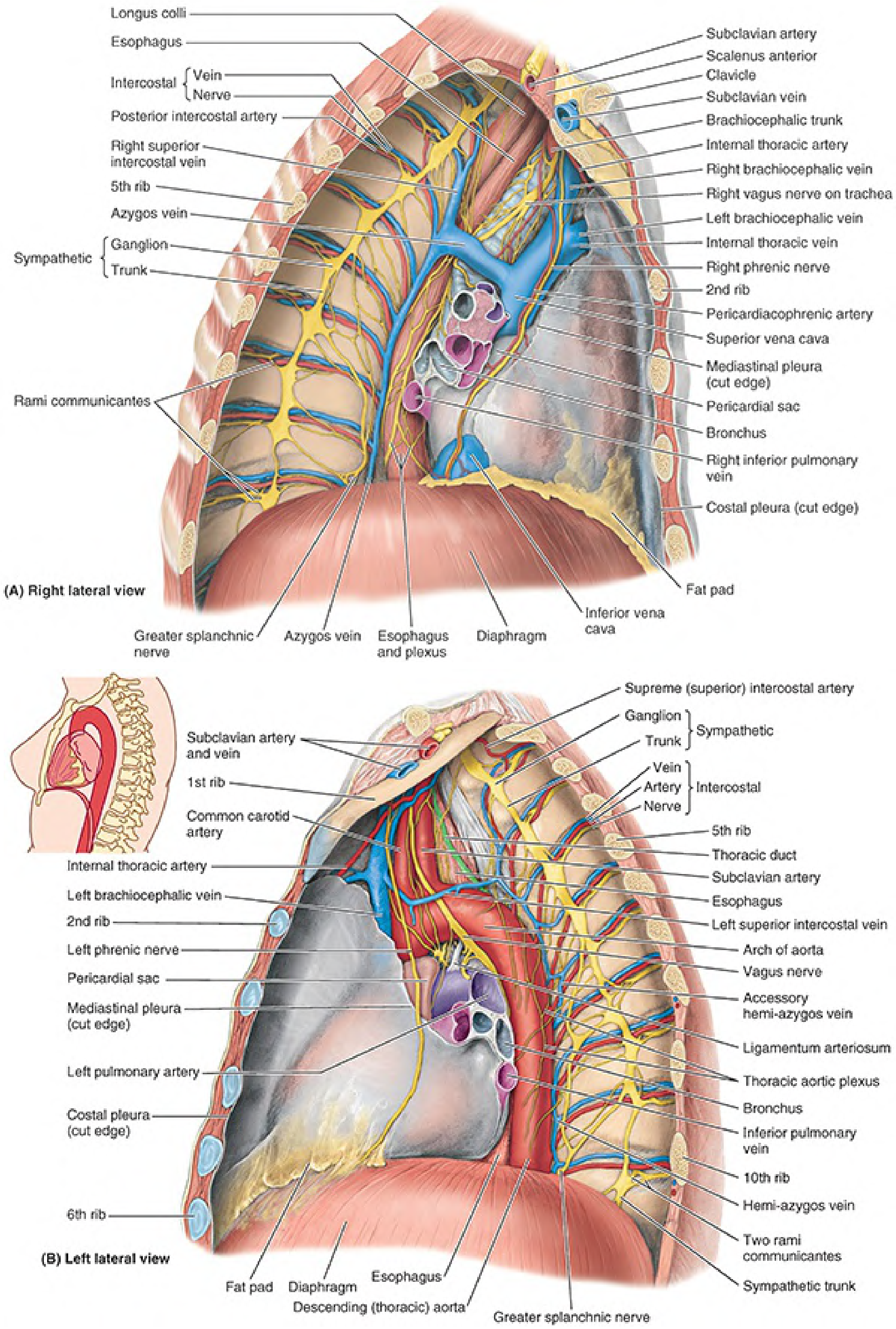


FIGURE 4.70. Lateral exposures of mediastinum. A. Right side of mediastinum. Most of the costal and mediastinal pleura has been removed to expose the underlying structures. This side of the mediastinum, the blue side, is dominated by venous structures: the azygos vein and arch, superior vena cava, right atrium, and inferior vena cava. **B.** Left side of mediastinum. The red side is dominated by arterial structures: the arch of aorta and thoracic aorta, left common carotid and subclavian arteries, and left ventricle (plus the pulmonary trunk and left pulmonary artery). At the thoracic and superior lumbar levels, the sympathetic trunk is attached to intercostal nerves by paired (white and gray) rami communicantes. The left superior intercostal vein, draining the upper two to three intercostal spaces, passes anteriorly to enter the left brachiocephalic vein.

The **left phrenic nerve** descends between the left subclavian and left common carotid arteries. It crosses the left surface of the arch of the aorta anterior to the left vagus nerve and passes over the left superior intercostal vein. The left phrenic nerve then descends anterior to the root of the left lung and runs along the fibrous pericardium, superficial to the left atrium and ventricle of the heart, where it pierces the diaphragm to the left of the pericardium (Fig. 4.70B). Most branching of the phrenic nerves for distribution to the diaphragm occurs on the diaphragm's inferior (abdominal) surface.

TRACHEA

The **trachea** descends anterior to the esophagus and enters the superior mediastinum, inclining a little to the right of the median plane (Figs. 4.68B, C and 4.69). The posterior surface of the trachea is flat where it is applied to the esophagus (Fig. 4.65B). The trachea ends at the level of the sternal angle by dividing into the right and left main bronchi (Figs. 4.65A and 4.69). The trachea terminates superior to the level of the heart and is not a component of the posterior mediastinum.

ESOPHAGUS

The **esophagus** is a fibromuscular tube that extends from the pharynx to the stomach (Figs. 4.65A, B; 4.68B, C; 4.69; 4.70A; and 4.71). The esophagus enters the superior mediastinum between the trachea and vertebral column, where it lies anterior to the bodies of the T1–T4 vertebrae. The esophagus is usually flattened anteroposteriorly. Initially, it inclines to the left but is pushed back to the median plane by the arch of the aorta. It is then compressed anteriorly by the root of the left lung. In the superior mediastinum, the thoracic duct usually lies on the left side of the esophagus, deep (medial) to the arch of the aorta (Figs. 4.69 and 4.70B). Inferior to the arch, the esophagus again inclines to the left as it approaches and passes through the **esophageal hiatus** in the diaphragm (Fig. 4.71).

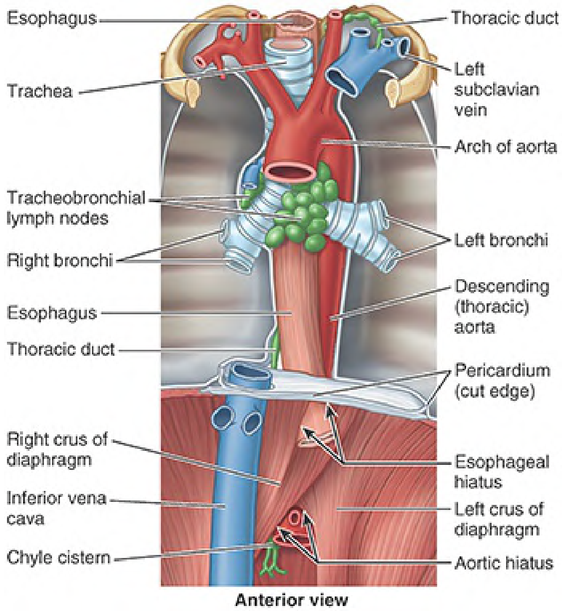


FIGURE 4.71. Anterior view of esophagus, trachea, bronchi, and aorta. The arch of aorta curves posteriorly on the left side of the trachea and esophagus. Enlargement of the inferior tracheobronchial (carinal) nodes may widen the angle between the main bronchi. In this specimen, the thoracic duct enters the left subclavian vein.

Posterior Mediastinum

The **posterior mediastinum** (the posterior part of the inferior mediastinum) is located inferior to the transverse thoracic plane, anterior to the T5–T12 vertebrae, posterior to the pericardium and diaphragm, and between the parietal pleura of the two lungs (Figs. 4.65A and 4.68C). The posterior mediastinum contains the thoracic aorta, thoracic duct and lymphatic trunks, posterior mediastinal lymph nodes, azygos and hemi-azygos veins, and esophagus and esophageal nerve plexus. Some authors also include the thoracic sympathetic trunks and thoracic splanchnic nerves; however, these structures lie lateral to the vertebral bodies and are not within the posterior mediastinal compartment or space per se.

THORACIC AORTA

The **thoracic aorta** is the continuation of the arch of the aorta (Figs. 4.69, 4.71, and 4.72; Table 4.5). It begins on the left side of the inferior border of the body of the T4 vertebra and descends in the posterior mediastinum on the left sides of the T5–T12 vertebrae. As it descends, the thoracic aorta approaches the median plane and displaces the esophagus to the right. **The thoracic aortic plexus** (Fig. 4.70B), an autonomic nerve network, surrounds it. The thoracic aorta lies posterior to the root of the left lung (Figs. 4.69 and 4.70B), pericardium, and esophagus. It terminates (with a name change to abdominal aorta) anterior to the inferior border of the T12 vertebra and enters the abdomen through the **aortic hiatus** in the diaphragm (Fig. 4.71). The thoracic duct and azygos vein ascend on its right side and accompany it through this hiatus.

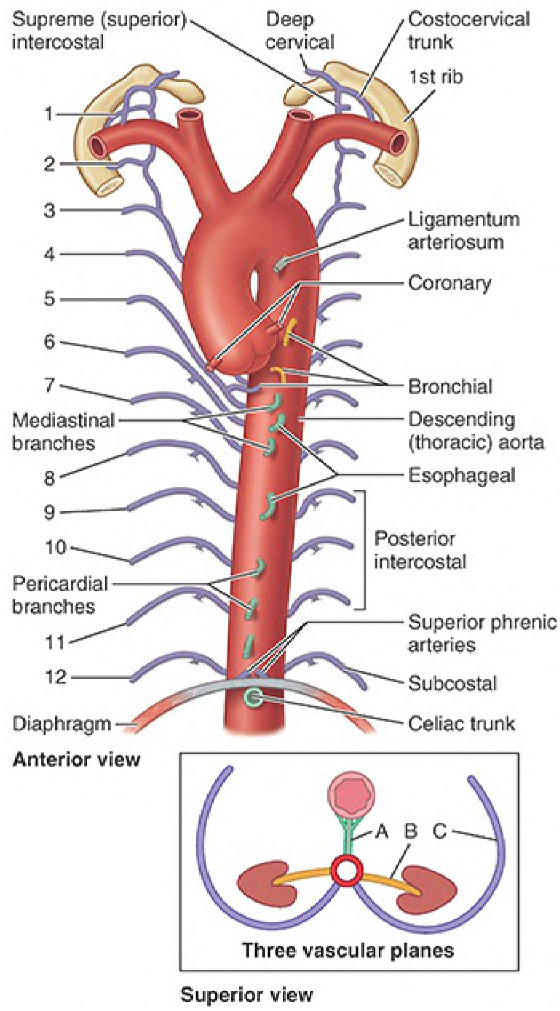


FIGURE 4.72. Branches of thoracic aorta. Branches of the thoracic aorta tend to arise within three vascular planes (**inset**). Esophageal and pericardial branches represent unpaired visceral branches (A in **inset**) arising anteriorly; the bronchial arteries represent paired lateral visceral branches (B in **inset**); posterior intercostal and subcostal arteries (1–12) represent paired, segmental parietal branches that mostly arise posterolaterally (C in **inset**). The paired superior phrenic arteries arising from the inferior part of the thoracic aorta that supply the diaphragm are exceptions to the pattern; they are paired parietal branches that have migrated anteriorly.

In a pattern that will be more evident in the abdomen, the branches of the descending aorta arise and course within three "vascular planes" (Fig. 4.72):

1. An anterior, midline plane of unpaired visceral branches to the gut (embryonic digestive tube) and its derivatives (A in Fig. 4.72 inset)
2. Lateral planes of paired visceral branches serving viscera other than the gut and its derivatives (B in Fig. 4.72 inset)
3. Posterolateral planes of paired (segmental) parietal branches to the body wall (C in Fig. 4.72 inset)

In the thorax, the unpaired visceral branches of the anterior vascular plane are the **esophageal arteries**—usually two, but there may be as many as five (Fig. 4.72; Table 4.5). The paired visceral branches of the lateral plane are represented in the thorax by the bronchial arteries (Fig.

4.69). Although the right and left bronchial arteries may arise directly from the aorta, most commonly, only the paired left bronchial arteries do so; the right bronchial arteries arise indirectly as branches of a right posterior intercostal artery (usually the 3rd). The paired parietal branches of the thoracic aorta that arise posterolaterally are the nine posterior intercostal arteries that supply all but the upper two intercostal spaces and the subcostal arteries (Fig. 4.72). The latter vessels arise from the thoracic aorta but course below the diaphragm. They are in series with the posterior intercostal arteries.

Exceptions to this pattern include the following:

- **Superior phrenic arteries**, paired parietal branches that pass anterolaterally to the superior surface of the diaphragm (which is actually facing posteriorly at this level owing to the convexity of the diaphragm), where they anastomose with the musculophrenic and pericardiacophrenic branches of the internal thoracic artery
- **Pericardial branches**, unpaired branches that arise anteriorly but, instead of passing to the gut, send twigs to the pericardium. The same is true for the small **mediastinal arteries** that supply the lymph nodes and other tissues of the posterior mediastinum.

ESOPHAGUS

The **esophagus** descends into the posterior mediastinum from the superior mediastinum, passing posterior to and to the right of the arch of the aorta (Figs. 4.68C, 4.69, and 4.71) and posterior to the pericardium and left atrium. The esophagus constitutes the primary posterior relationship of the base of the heart. It then deviates to the left and passes through the esophageal hiatus in the diaphragm at the level of the T10 vertebra, anterior to the aorta.

The esophagus may have three impressions, or “constrictions,” in its thoracic part. These may be observed as narrowings of the lumen in oblique chest radiographs that are taken as barium is swallowed. The esophagus is compressed by three structures: (1) the arch of the aorta, (2) the left main bronchus, and (3) the diaphragm. The first two impressions occur in close proximity. The aortic arch compression is most evident in a postero-anterior (PA) radiograph after a barium swallow, and the bronchial impression is more evident in lateral views. No constrictions are visible in the empty esophagus; however, as it expands during filling, the structures noted above compress its walls.

THORACIC DUCT AND LYMPHATIC TRUNKS

The **thoracic duct** is the largest lymphatic channel in the body. In the posterior mediastinum, it lies on the anterior aspect of the bodies of the inferior 7 thoracic vertebrae (Fig. 4.73). The thoracic duct conveys most lymph of the body to the venous system: that from the lower limbs, pelvic cavity, abdominal cavity, left upper limb, and left side of the thorax, head, and neck—that is, all lymph except that from the right superior quadrant (see the overview of the lymphatic system in Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts).

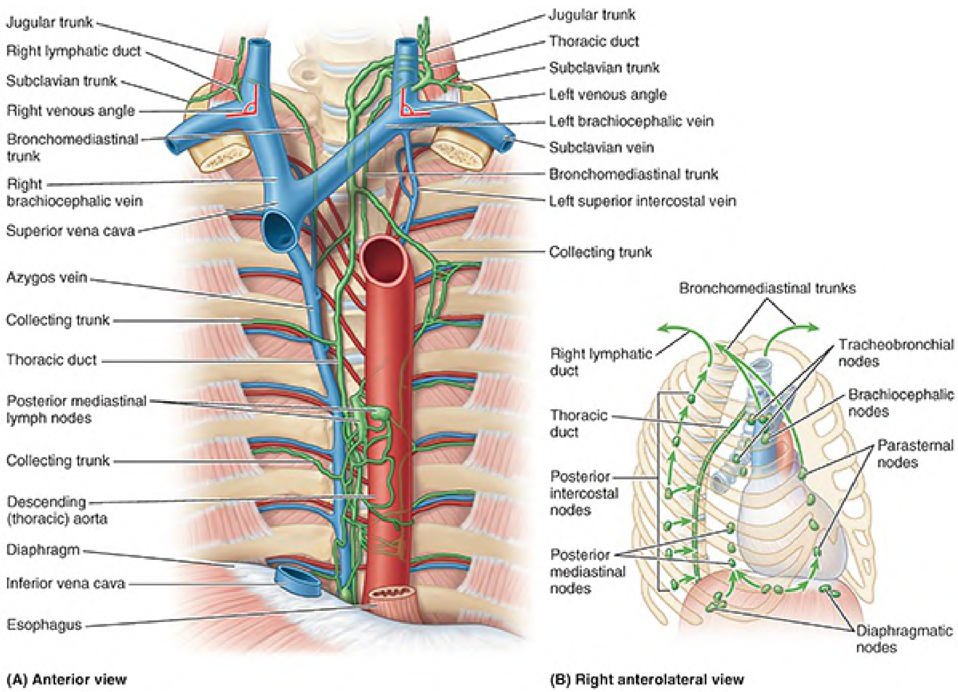


FIGURE 4.73. Thoracic duct and bronchomediastinal trunks. A. Thoracic aorta pulled slightly to left and azygos vein slightly to right to expose thoracic duct. At approximately the transverse thoracic plane (sternal angle, T4–T5 intervertebral disc level), the thoracic duct passes to the left and continues its ascent to the neck where it arches laterally to enter the left venous angle. The right lymphatic duct is formed by the union of the contralateral partners of the ducts that join the termination of the thoracic duct. **B.** Lymph nodes and pathways that provide lymphatic drainage of thoracic cavity.

The thoracic duct originates from the **cisterna chyli** (chyle cistern) in the abdomen and ascends through the aortic hiatus in the diaphragm (Fig. 4.71). The duct is usually thin walled and dull white. Often, it is beaded because of its numerous valves. It ascends in the posterior mediastinum among the thoracic aorta on its left, the azygos vein on its right, the esophagus anteriorly, and the vertebral bodies posteriorly. At the level of the T4, T5, or T6 vertebra, the thoracic duct crosses to the left, posterior to the esophagus, and ascends into the superior mediastinum.

The thoracic duct receives branches from the middle and superior intercostal spaces of both sides through several collecting trunks. It also receives branches from posterior mediastinal structures. Near its termination, the thoracic duct often receives the jugular, subclavian, and bronchomediastinal lymphatic trunks (although any or all these vessels may terminate independently). The thoracic duct usually empties into the venous system near the union of the left internal jugular and subclavian veins—the left venous angle or origin of the left brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 4.73A)—but it may open into the left subclavian vein as shown in Figure 4.71.

VESSELS AND LYMPH NODES OF POSTERIOR MEDIASTINUM

The thoracic aorta and its branches have been discussed earlier. **Posterior mediastinal lymph nodes** (Fig. 4.73A, B) lie posterior to the pericardium, where they are related to the esophagus and thoracic aorta. There are several nodes posterior to the inferior part of the esophagus and

more (up to eight) anterior and lateral to it. The posterior mediastinal lymph nodes receive lymph from the esophagus, the posterior aspect of the pericardium and diaphragm, and the middle posterior intercostal spaces. Lymph from the nodes drains to the right or left venous angles via the right lymphatic duct or the thoracic duct, respectively.

The **azygos system of veins**, on each side of the vertebral column, drains the back and thoraco-abdominal walls (Figs. 4.73A and 4.74A, B) and mediastinal viscera. The azygos system exhibits much variation in its origin, course, tributaries, and anastomoses. The azygos vein (G., azygos, unpaired) and its main tributary, the hemi-azygos vein, usually arise from "roots" arising from the posterior aspect of the IVC and/or renal vein, respectively, which merge with the ascending lumbar veins.

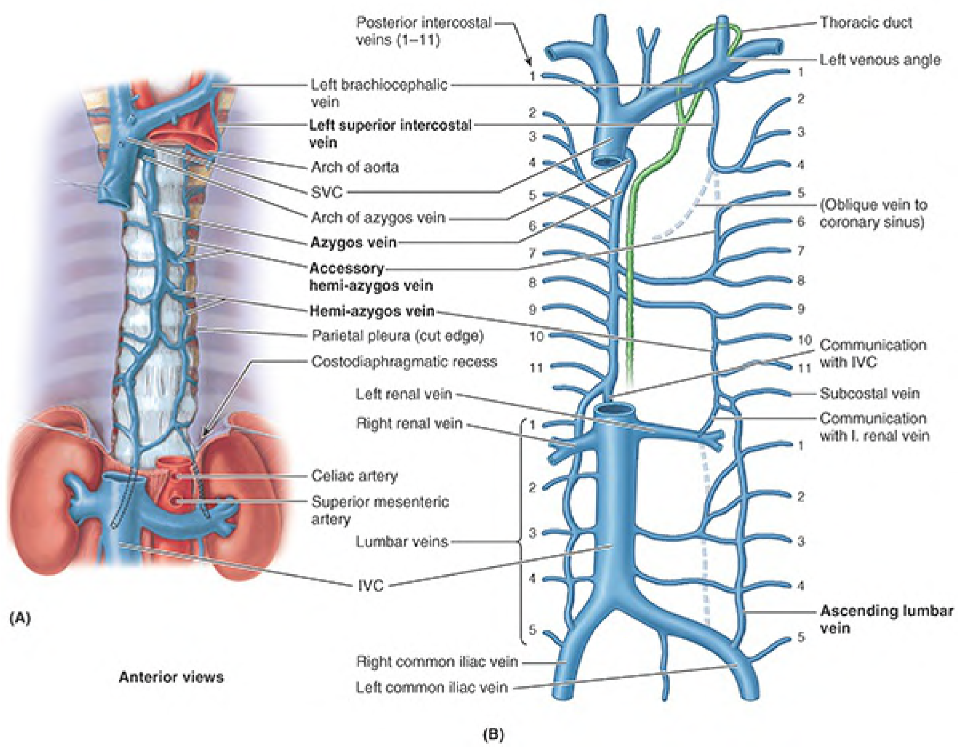


FIGURE 4.74. Azygos system of veins. A. The azygos vein forms a direct connection between the inferior vena cava (IVC) and the superior vena cava (SVC). **B.** The azygos and hemi-azygos veins are also continuous inferiorly (below diaphragm) with the ascending lumbar veins.

The **azygos vein** forms a collateral pathway between the SVC and IVC and drains blood from the posterior walls of the thorax and abdomen. It ascends in the posterior mediastinum, passing close to the right sides of the bodies of the inferior 8 thoracic vertebrae. It arches over the superior aspect of the root of the right lung to join the SVC, similar to the way the arch of the aorta passes over the root of the left lung. In addition to the posterior intercostal veins, the azygos vein communicates with the vertebral venous plexuses that drain the back, vertebrae, and structures in the vertebral canal. The azygos vein also receives the mediastinal, esophageal, and bronchial veins (Fig. 4.74).

The **hemi-azygos vein** arises on the left side by the junction of the left subcostal and

ascending lumbar veins. It ascends on the left side of the vertebral column, posterior to the thoracic aorta as far as the T9 vertebra. Here, it crosses to the right, posterior to the aorta, thoracic duct, and esophagus, and joins the azygos vein. The hemi-azygos vein receives the inferior three posterior intercostal veins, the inferior esophageal veins, and several small mediastinal veins. **The accessory hemi-azygos vein** begins at the medial end of the 4th or 5th intercostal space and descends on the left side of the vertebral column from T5 through T8. It receives tributaries from veins in the 4th–8th intercostal spaces and sometimes from the left bronchial veins. It crosses over the T7 or T8 vertebra, posterior to the thoracic aorta and thoracic duct, where it joins the azygos vein. Sometimes the accessory hemi-azygos vein joins the hemi-azygos vein and opens with it into the azygos vein. The accessory hemi-azygos is frequently connected to the left superior intercostal vein, as shown in Figure 4.74. The left superior intercostal vein, which drains the 1st–3rd intercostal spaces, may communicate with the accessory hemi-azygos vein; however, it drains primarily into the left brachiocephalic vein.

NERVES OF POSTERIOR MEDIASTINUM

The sympathetic trunks and their associated ganglia form a major portion of the autonomic nervous system (Fig. 4.75; Table 4.6). The **thoracic sympathetic trunks** are in continuity with the cervical and lumbar sympathetic trunks. The thoracic trunks lie against the heads of the ribs in the superior part of the thorax, the costovertebral joints in the midthoracic level, and the sides of the vertebral bodies in the inferior part of the thorax. The **lower thoracic splanchnic nerves** —also known as greater, lesser, and least splanchnic nerves—are part of the abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves because they supply viscera inferior to the diaphragm. They consist of mainly presynaptic fibers from the 5th through the 12th sympathetic ganglia, which pass through the diaphragm and synapse in prevertebral ganglia in the abdomen. They supply sympathetic innervation for most of the abdominal viscera. These splanchnic nerves are discussed further in Chapter 5, Abdomen.

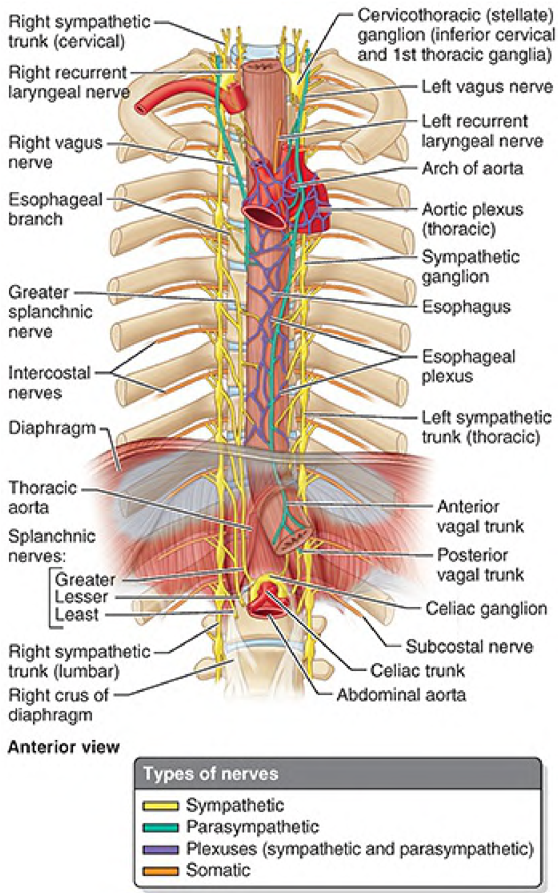


FIGURE 4.75. Nerves of superior and posterior mediastina.

Anterior Mediastinum

The anterior mediastinum, the smallest subdivision of the mediastinum (Fig. 4.42), lies between the body of the sternum and the transversus thoracis muscles anteriorly and the pericardium posteriorly. It is continuous with the superior mediastinum at the sternal angle and is limited inferiorly by the diaphragm. The anterior mediastinum consists of loose connective tissue (**sternopericardial ligaments**), fat, lymphatic vessels, a few lymph nodes, and branches of the internal thoracic vessels. In infants and children, the anterior mediastinum contains the inferior part of the thymus. In unusual cases, this lymphoid organ may extend to the level of the 4th costal cartilages.

CLINICAL BOX

SUPERIOR, POSTERIOR, AND ANTERIOR MEDIASTINUM

Variations of Great Arteries

VARIATIONS IN BRANCHING OF ARCH OF AORTA

The usual pattern of branches of the arch of the aorta is present in approximately 65% of people (Fig. B4.39A). Variations in the origin of the branches of the arch are fairly common (Fig. B4.39B). In approximately 27% of people, the left common carotid artery originates from the brachiocephalic trunk. A brachiocephalic trunk fails to form in approximately 2.5% of people; in these cases, each of the four arteries (right and left common carotid and subclavian arteries) originates independently from the arch of the aorta. The left vertebral artery originates from the arch of the aorta in approximately 5% of people. Both right and left brachiocephalic trunks originate from the arch in approximately 1.2% of people (Bergman, 2015).

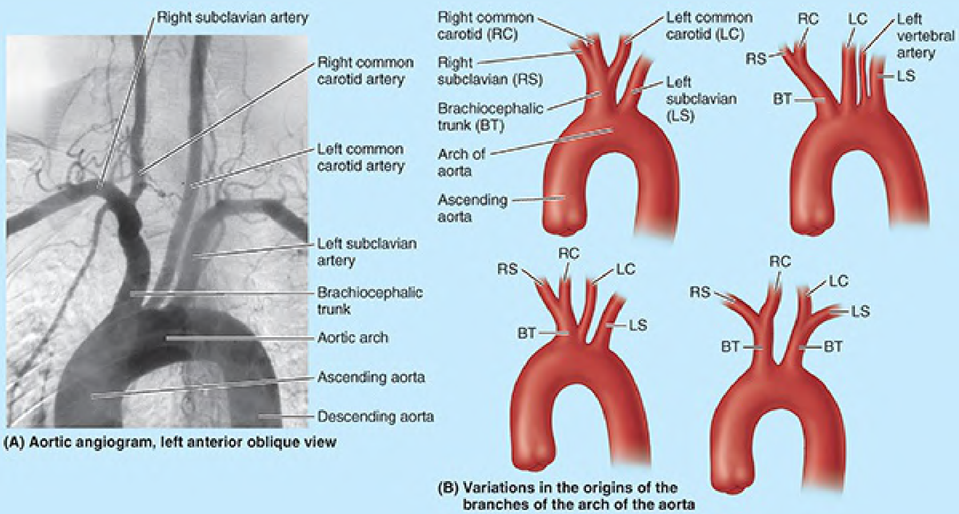


FIGURE B4.39. Variations in branching of arch of aorta. A. Aortic angiogram (aortogram) demonstrating most common pattern of branching. **B.** Variations in branching of arch of aorta.

ANOMALIES OF AORTIC BRANCHES AND AORTIC ARCH

A retro-esophageal right subclavian artery sometimes arises as the last (most left-sided) branch of the arch of the aorta (Fig. B4.40A). The artery crosses posterior to the esophagus to reach the right upper limb and may compress the esophagus, causing difficulty in swallowing (dysphagia). An accessory artery to the thyroid gland, the **thyroid ima artery** (L. arteria thyroidea ima), may arise from the arch of the aorta or the brachiocephalic artery.

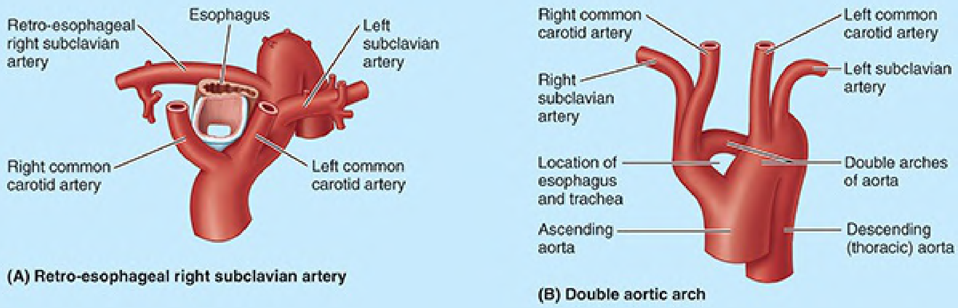


FIGURE B4.40. Anomalies of aortic branches and aortic arch.

The most superior part of the arch of the aorta is usually approximately 2.5 cm inferior to the superior border of the manubrium, but it may be more superior or inferior. Sometimes, the arch curves over the root of the right lung and passes inferiorly on the right side, forming a **right arch of the aorta**. In some cases, the abnormal arch, after passing over the root of the right lung, passes posterior to the esophagus to reach its usual position on the left side. Less frequently, a **double arch of the aorta** forms a vascular ring around the esophagus and trachea (Fig. B4.40B). A trachea that is compressed enough to affect breathing may require surgical division of the vascular ring.

Aneurysm of Ascending Aorta

The distal part of the ascending aorta receives a strong thrust of blood when the left ventricle contracts. Because its wall is not yet reinforced by fibrous pericardium (the fibrous pericardium blends with the aortic adventitia at the beginning of the arch; see Fig. 4.66B), an aneurysm (localized dilation) may develop. An aortic aneurysm is evident on a chest film (radiograph of the thorax) or an MR angiogram (Fig. B4.41) as an enlarged area of the ascending aorta silhouette. Individuals with an aneurysm usually complain of chest pain that radiates to the back. The aneurysm may exert pressure on the trachea, esophagus, and recurrent laryngeal nerve, causing difficulty in breathing and swallowing.

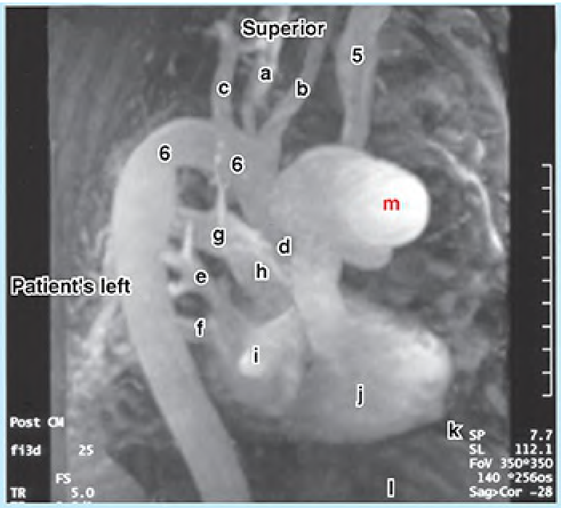


FIGURE B4.41. Aneurysm of the aortic arch. 5, superior vena cava; 6, aortic arch; a, left common carotid artery; b, brachiocephalic artery; c, left subclavian artery; d, ascending aorta; e, right pulmonary vein; f, left pulmonary vein; g, left pulmonary artery; h, pulmonary trunk; i, left atrium; j, left ventricle; k, diaphragm; l, liver; m, large saccular aneurysm arising from ascending aorta.

Coarctation of Aorta

In coarctation of the aorta, the arch of the aorta or thoracic aorta has an abnormal narrowing (stenosis) that diminishes the caliber of the aortic lumen, producing an obstruction to blood flow to the inferior part of the body (Fig. B4.42). The most common site for a coarctation is near the ligamentum arteriosum (see Fig. 4.63). When the coarctation is inferior to this site (postductal coarctation), a good collateral circulation usually develops between the proximal and distal parts of the aorta through the intercostal and internal thoracic arteries. This type of coarctation is compatible with many years of life because the collateral circulation carries blood to the thoracic aorta inferior to the stenosis. The collateral vessels may become so large that they cause notable pulsation in the intercostal spaces and erode the adjacent surfaces of the ribs, which is visible in radiographs of the thorax.

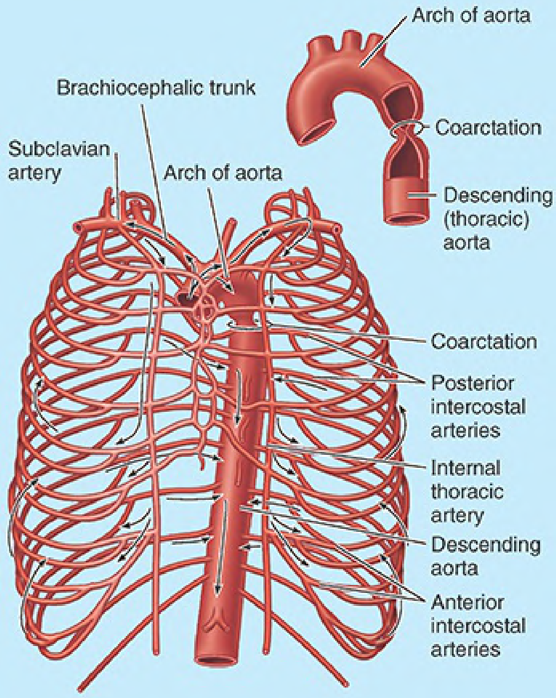


FIGURE B4.42. **Coarctation of aorta.** Arrows, direction of blood flow.

Injury to Recurrent Laryngeal Nerves

The recurrent laryngeal nerves supply all intrinsic muscles of the larynx, except one. Consequently, any investigative (diagnostic) procedure (e.g., mediastinotomy) or disease process in the superior mediastinum may injure these nerves and affect the voice. Because the left recurrent laryngeal nerve winds around the arch of the aorta and ascends between the trachea and esophagus, it may be involved in a bronchogenic or esophageal carcinoma, enlargement of mediastinal lymph nodes, or an aneurysm of the arch of the aorta. In the latter condition, the nerve may be stretched by the dilated arch.

Blockage of Esophagus

The impressions produced in the esophagus by adjacent structures are of clinical interest because of the slower passage of substances at these sites. The impressions indicate where swallowed foreign objects are most likely to lodge and where a stricture may develop, for example, after the accidental drinking of a caustic liquid such as lye.

Laceration of Thoracic Duct

The thoracic duct is thin walled and usually dull white in living persons. However, it may be colorless, making it difficult to identify. Consequently, it is vulnerable to inadvertent injury during investigative and/or surgical procedures in the posterior

mediastinum. Laceration of the thoracic duct during an accident or lung surgery results in lymph escaping into the thoracic cavity at rates ranging from 75 to 200 mL per hour. Lymph or chyle from the lacteals of the intestine may also enter the pleural cavity, producing chylothorax. This fluid may be removed by a needle tap or by thoracentesis; in some cases, it may be necessary to ligate (tie off) the thoracic duct. The lymph then returns to the venous system by other lymphatic channels that join the thoracic duct superior to the ligature.

Variations of Thoracic Duct

Variations of the thoracic duct are common because the superior part of the duct represents the original left member of a pair of lymphatic vessels in the embryo. Sometimes, two thoracic ducts are present for a short distance.

Alternate Venous Routes to Heart

The azygos, hemi-azygos, and accessory hemi-azygos veins offer alternate means of venous drainage from the thoracic, abdominal, and back regions when obstruction of the IVC occurs. In some people, an accessory azygos vein parallels the azygos vein on the right side. Other people have no hemi-azygos system of veins. A clinically important variation, although uncommon, is when the azygos system receives all the blood from the IVC except that from the liver. In these people, the azygos system drains nearly all the blood inferior to the diaphragm, except from the digestive tract. If obstruction of the SVC occurs superior to the entrance of the azygos vein, blood can drain inferiorly into the veins of the abdominal wall and return to the right atrium through the azygos venous system and the IVC.

Age Changes in Thymus

The thymus is a prominent feature of the superior mediastinum during infancy and childhood. In some infants, the thymus may compress the trachea. The thymus plays an important role in the development and maintenance of the immune system. As puberty is reached, the thymus begins to diminish in relative size. By adulthood, it is usually replaced by adipose tissue and is often scarcely recognizable; however, it continues to produce T lymphocytes.

Radiography of Mediastinum

The heart casts most of the central radiopaque shadow in PA projections (Fig. B4.43), but the separate chambers of the heart are not distinguishable. Knowledge of the structures forming the **cardiovascular shadow** or silhouette is important because changes in the shadow may indicate anomalies or functional disease (Fig. B4.43A).

In PA radiographs (AP views), the borders of the cardiovascular shadow are as follows:

- Right border, right brachiocephalic vein, SVC, right atrium, and IVC
- Left border, terminal part of the arch of aorta, pulmonary trunk, left auricle, and left ventricle

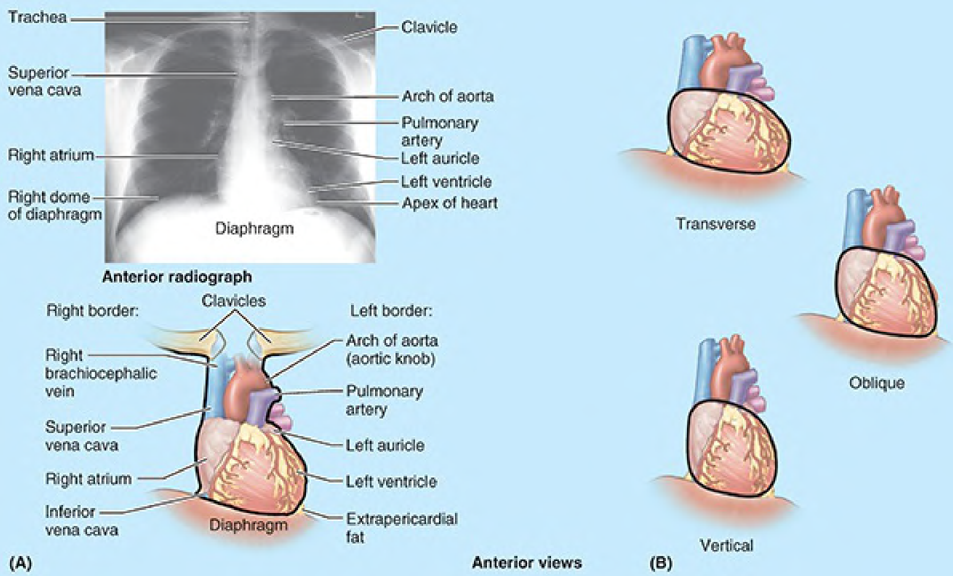


FIGURE B4.43. Cardiovascular shadows (mediastinal silhouettes). A. Composition of margins of cardiovascular shadow. **B.** Common types of cardiovascular shadow.

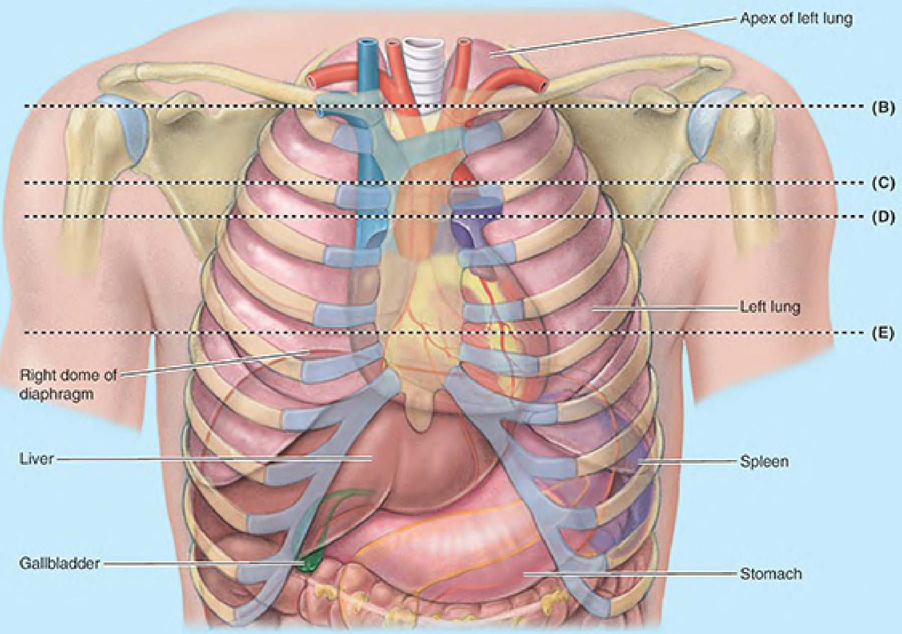
The left inferior part of the cardiovascular shadow presents the region of the apex. The typical anatomical apex, if present, is often inferior to the shadow of the diaphragm. Three main types of cardiovascular shadows occur, depending primarily on body type or habitus (Fig. B4.43B):

- Transverse type, observed in obese persons, pregnant women, and infants
- Oblique type, characteristic of most people
- Vertical type, present in people with narrow chests

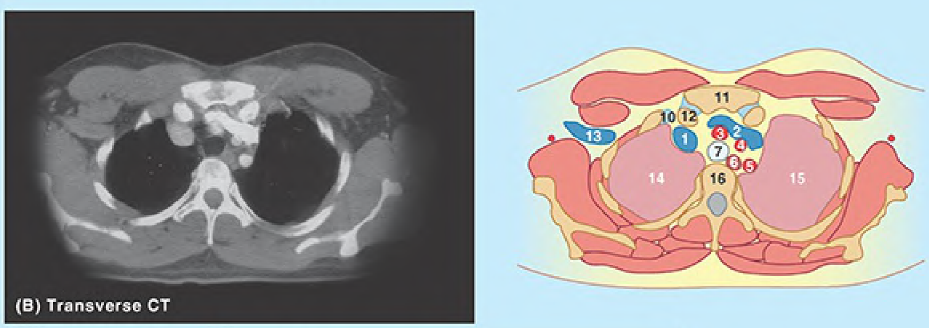
CT and MRI of Mediastinum

CT and MRI are commonly used to examine the thorax (Fig. B4.44). MRI is usually better for detecting and delineating soft tissue lesions. It is especially useful for examining the viscera and lymph nodes of the mediastinum and roots of the lungs, by means of both planar and reconstructed (Figs. B4.45, B4.46, and B4.47) images. It is also used to study the breasts. Transverse (axial) CT and MR scans are always oriented to show how a horizontal section of a patient's body lying on an examination table would appear to the physician who is at the patient's feet. Therefore, the top of the image is anterior, and the left lateral edge of the image represents the right lateral surface of the patient's body. Data from CT and MR scans can be graphically reconstructed by the

computer as transverse, sagittal, oblique, or coronal sections of the body.



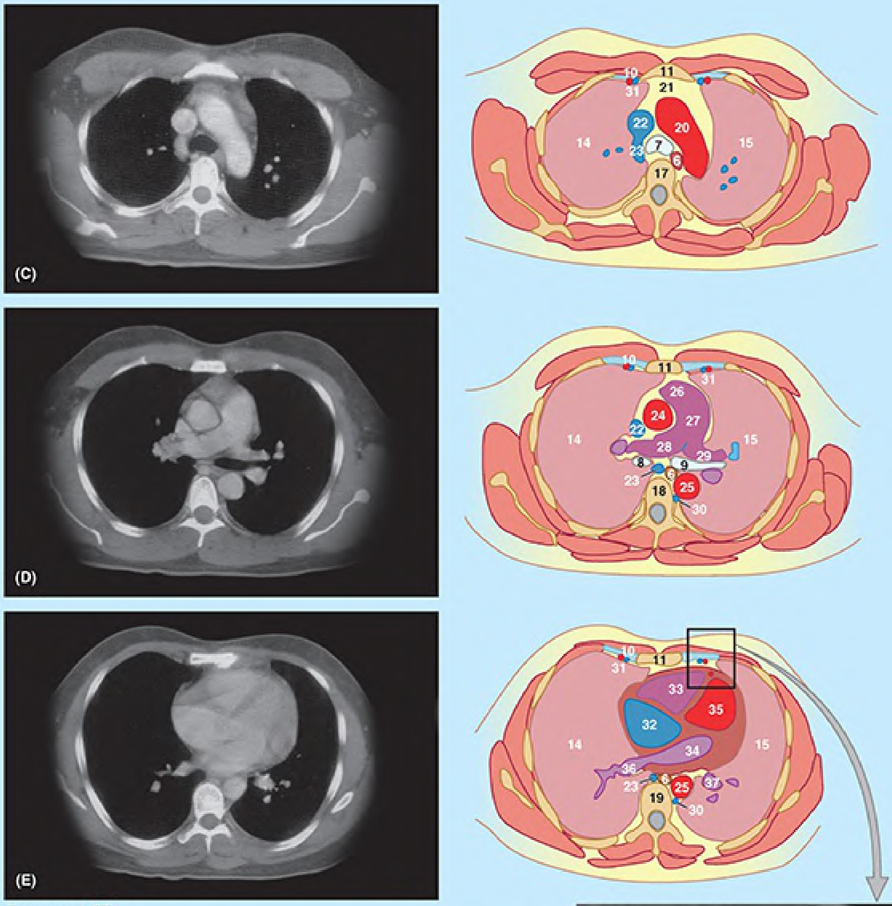
(A) Anterior view



(B) Transverse CT

Key to B–E

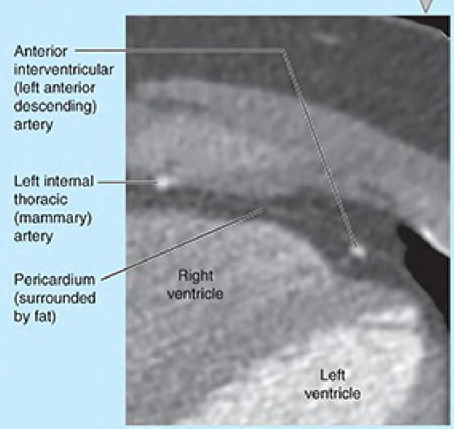
1	Right brachiocephalic vein	8	Right main bronchus
2	Left brachiocephalic vein	9	Left main bronchus
3	Brachiocephalic vein	10	Costal cartilage
4	Left common carotid artery	11	Sternum
5	Left subclavian artery	12	Clavicle
6	Esophagus	13	Axillary vein
7	Trachea		



Transverse CTs

Key to (B–E) *continued*

14 Right lung	**26** Conus arteriosus
15 Left lung	**27** Pulmonary trunk
16 T4 vertebral body	**28** Right pulmonary artery
17 T5 vertebral body	**29** Left pulmonary artery
18 T6 vertebral body	**30** Hemi-azygos vein
19 T8 vertebral body	**31** Internal thoracic vessels
20 Arch of aorta	**32** Right atrium
21 Anterior mediastinum (region of thymic remnant)	**33** Right ventricle
22 Superior vena cava	**34** Left atrium
23 Arch of azygos vein	**35** Left ventricle
24 Ascending aorta	**36** Inferior right pulmonary vein
25 Descending aorta	**37** Inferior left pulmonary vein



(F) Transverse MRI with contrast

FIGURE B4.44. Serial transverse CT scans of thorax. A. The level of each scan is indicated (broken lines). **B.** At the level of the sternoclavicular joints, the left brachiocephalic vein (2) crosses the midline anterior to the three branches of the arch of the aorta (3, 4, and 5) to join the right brachiocephalic vein (1), forming the superior vena cava [SVC] (22) at a more inferior level. **C.** The arch of the aorta (20) is obliquely placed (more sagittal than transverse), with the ascending end anteriorly in the midline, and the descending end posteriorly and to the left of the vertebral bodies (17). The SVC (22) on the right side receives the arch of the azygos vein (23) from its posterior aspect. **D.** The pulmonary trunk (27) forms the stem of an inverted Y, with the arms formed by the right (28) and left (29) pulmonary arteries. The right pulmonary artery (28) passes beneath the arch of the aorta (between ascending [24] and descending [25] aortae). **E.** A scan at the level of the maximum diameter of the heart demonstrates all four chambers (32–35) and the diagonal slant of the interventricular septum (between 33 and 35)—see **inset**. **F.** Close up of indicated (boxed) area of part **E** showing detail of pericardium and left internal thoracic and anterior descending coronary arteries.

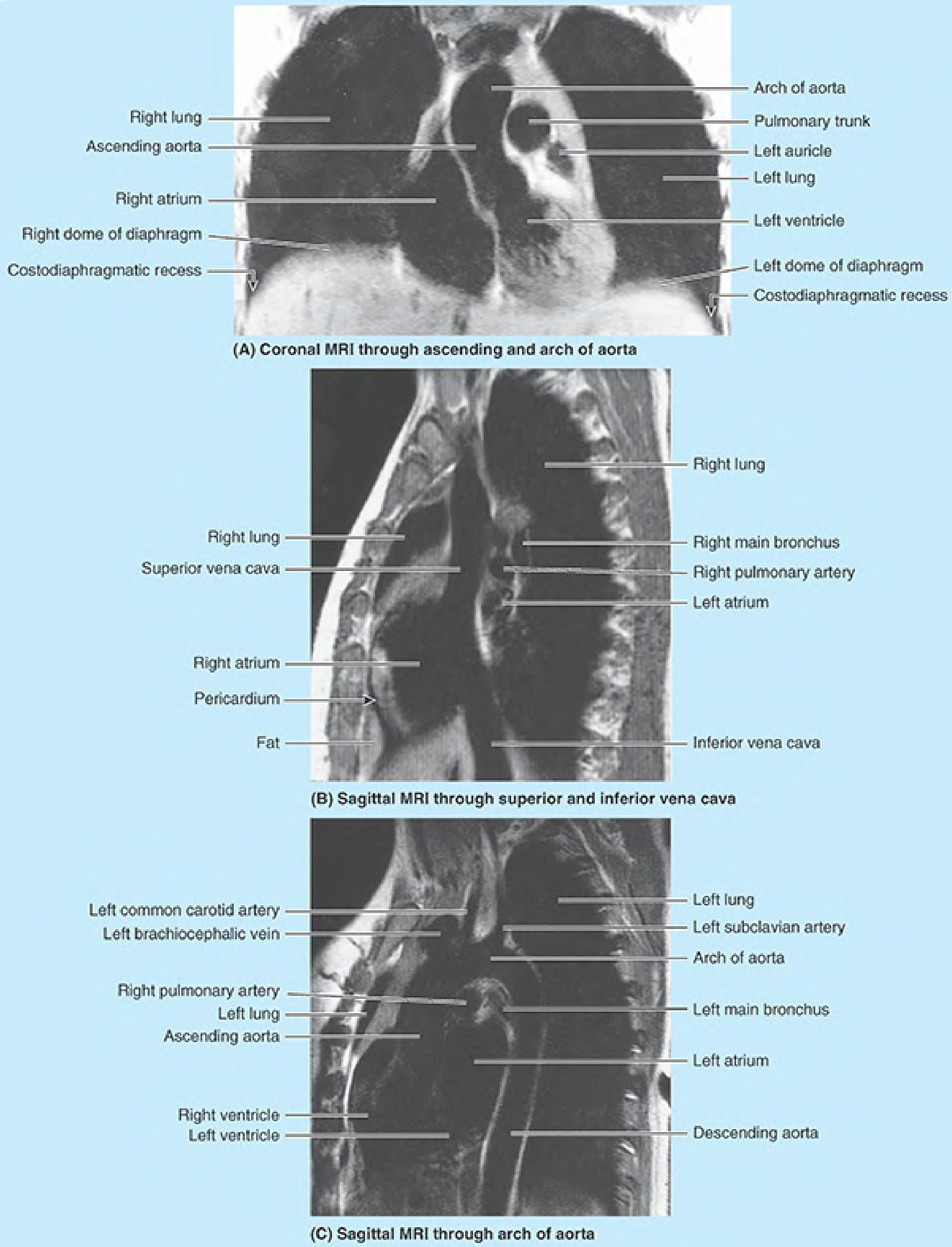


FIGURE B4.45. Coronal and sagittal CT scans of thorax. A. Coronal MRI through ascending and arch of aorta. **B.** Sagittal MRI through superior and inferior venae cavae. **C.** Sagittal MRI through arch of aorta.

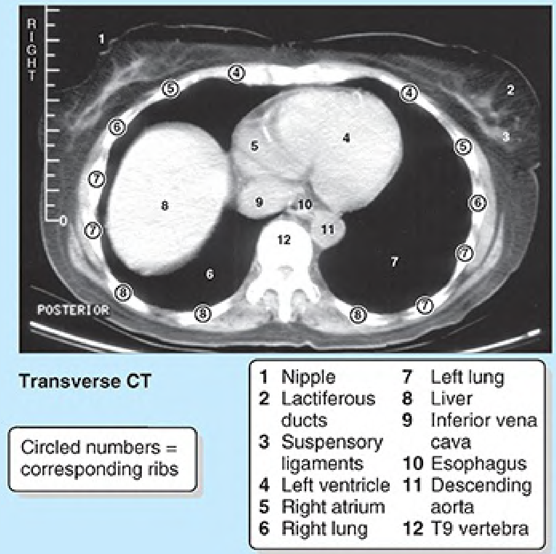


FIGURE B4.46. CT examination of breasts and mediastinum.

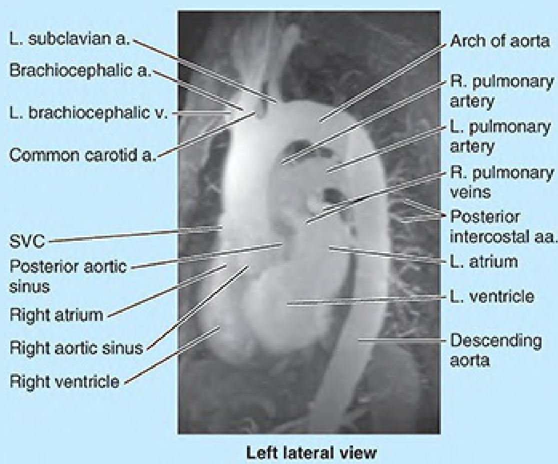


FIGURE B4.47. Magnetic resonance reconstructed angiogram of heart and great vessels. Lateral view (from left and slightly anterior). Reconstructed from data generated and accumulated by spiral magnetic resonance imaging. All chambers of the heart and great vessels are clearly visible. SVC, superior vena cava.

The Bottom Line: Superior, Posterior, and Anterior Mediastinum

Superior mediastinum: The superior mediastinum extends between the superior thoracic aperture and the transverse thoracic plane. The only organ that belongs exclusively to this region is the adult thymus. ■ The remainder of the structures in the superior mediastinum pass through the superior thoracic aperture to the root of the neck or pass between the neck and abdomen. ■ Within the superior mediastinum, structures occur in systemic layers,

proceeding from anterior to posterior: (1) lymphoid system (thymus), (2) blood vascular system (veins first, then arteries), (3) respiratory system (trachea), (4) alimentary system (esophagus), and (5) lymph vascular system. ■ The nervous system does not have its own layer in the superior mediastinum, but it is integrated with layer 2 (phrenic and vagus nerves) and lies between layers 3 and 4 (recurrent laryngeal nerves). ■ The pattern of the branches of the arch of the aorta is atypical in approximately 35% of people.

Posterior mediastinum: The posterior mediastinum is the narrow passageway that lies posterior to the heart and diaphragm and between the lungs. It contains structures passing from thorax to abdomen or vice versa. ■ Contents include the esophagus and esophageal nerve plexus, thoracic aorta, thoracic duct and lymphatic trunks, posterior mediastinal lymph nodes, and azygos and hemi-azygos veins. ■ Branches of the thoracic aorta occur primarily within three vascular planes. ■ The azygos/hemi-azygos venous system constitutes the venous counterpart to the thoracic aorta and its posterior mediastinal branches. ■ The thoracic portion of the sympathetic trunks and thoracic splanchnic nerves may or may not be considered components of the posterior mediastinum.

Anterior mediastinum: The smallest subdivision of the mediastinum, between sternum and transversus thoracis muscles, significant primarily as a surgical plane, contains primarily loose connective tissue and, in infants and children, the inferior extend of the thymus.

5

Abdomen

CLINICAL BOX KEY

The **abdomen** is the part of the trunk between the thorax and the pelvis (Fig. 5.1). It is a flexible, dynamic container housing most of the organs of the alimentary system and part of the urogenital system. Containment of the abdominal organs and their contents is provided by musculo-aponeurotic walls anterolaterally, the diaphragm superiorly, and the muscles of the pelvis inferiorly. The anterolateral musculo-aponeurotic walls are suspended between and supported by two bony rings (the inferior margin of the thoracic skeleton superiorly and the pelvic girdle inferiorly) linked by a semirigid lumbar vertebral column in the posterior abdominal wall. Interposed between the more rigid thorax and pelvis, this arrangement enables the abdomen to enclose and protect its contents while providing the flexibility required by respiration, posture, and locomotion.

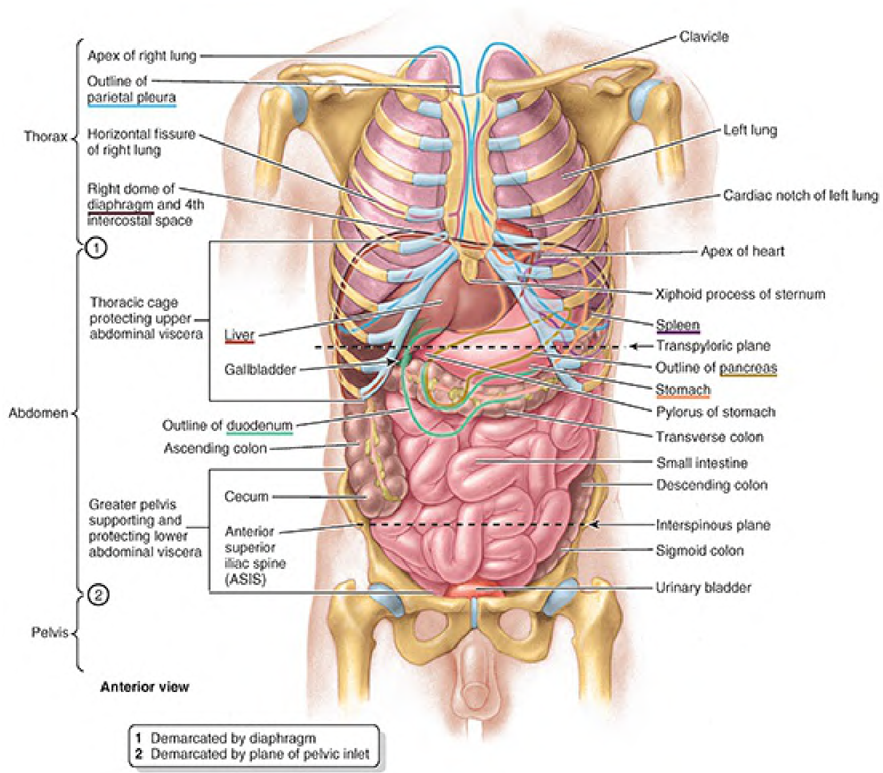


FIGURE 5.1. **Overview of viscera of thorax and abdomen in situ.**

Through voluntary or reflexive contraction, its muscular roof, anterolateral walls, and floor can raise internal (intra-abdominal) pressure to aid expulsion of air from the thoracic cavity (lungs and bronchi) or of fluid (e.g., urine or vomitus), flatus (gas), feces, or fetuses from the abdominopelvic cavity.

OVERVIEW: WALLS, CAVITIES, REGIONS, AND PLANES

The dynamic, multilayered, musculo-aponeurotic **abdominal walls** not only contract to increase intra-abdominal pressure but also distend considerably, accommodating expansions caused by ingestion, pregnancy, fat deposition, or pathology.

The anterolateral abdominal wall and several organs lying against the posterior wall are covered on their internal aspects with a serous membrane or peritoneum (serosa) that reflects (turns sharply and continues) onto the **abdominal viscera** (L., soft parts, internal organs), such as the stomach, intestine, liver, and spleen. Thus, a bursal sac or lined potential space (peritoneal cavity) is formed between the walls and the viscera that normally contains only enough extracellular (parietal) fluid to lubricate the membrane covering most of the surfaces of the structures forming or occupying the abdominal cavity. Visceral movement associated with digestion occurs freely, and the double-layered reflections of peritoneum passing between the walls and the viscera provide passage for the blood vessels, lymphatics, and nerves. Variable amounts of fat may also occur between the walls and viscera and the peritoneum lining them.

The abdominal cavity

- forms the superior and major part of the **abdominopelvic cavity** (Fig. 5.2), the continuous cavity that extends between the thoracic diaphragm and pelvic diaphragm
- has no floor of its own because it is continuous with the pelvic cavity. The plane of the pelvic inlet (superior pelvic aperture) arbitrarily, but not physically, separates the abdominal and the pelvic cavities.
- extends superiorly into the osseocartilaginous thoracic cage to the 4th intercostal space (Fig. 5.1). Consequently, the more superiorly placed abdominal organs (spleen, liver, part of the kidneys, and stomach) are protected by the thoracic cage. The greater pelvis (expanded part of the pelvis superior to the pelvic inlet) supports and partly protects the lower abdominal viscera (part of the ileum, cecum, appendix, and sigmoid colon).
- is the location of most digestive organs, parts of the urogenital system (kidneys and most of the ureters), and the spleen

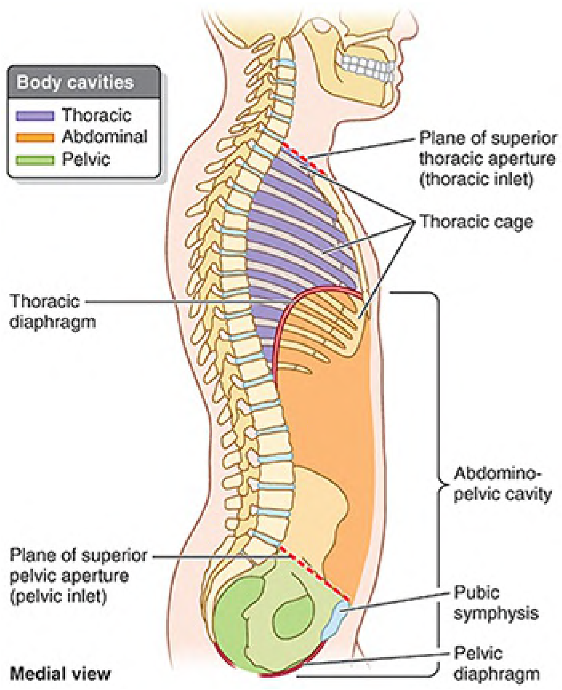
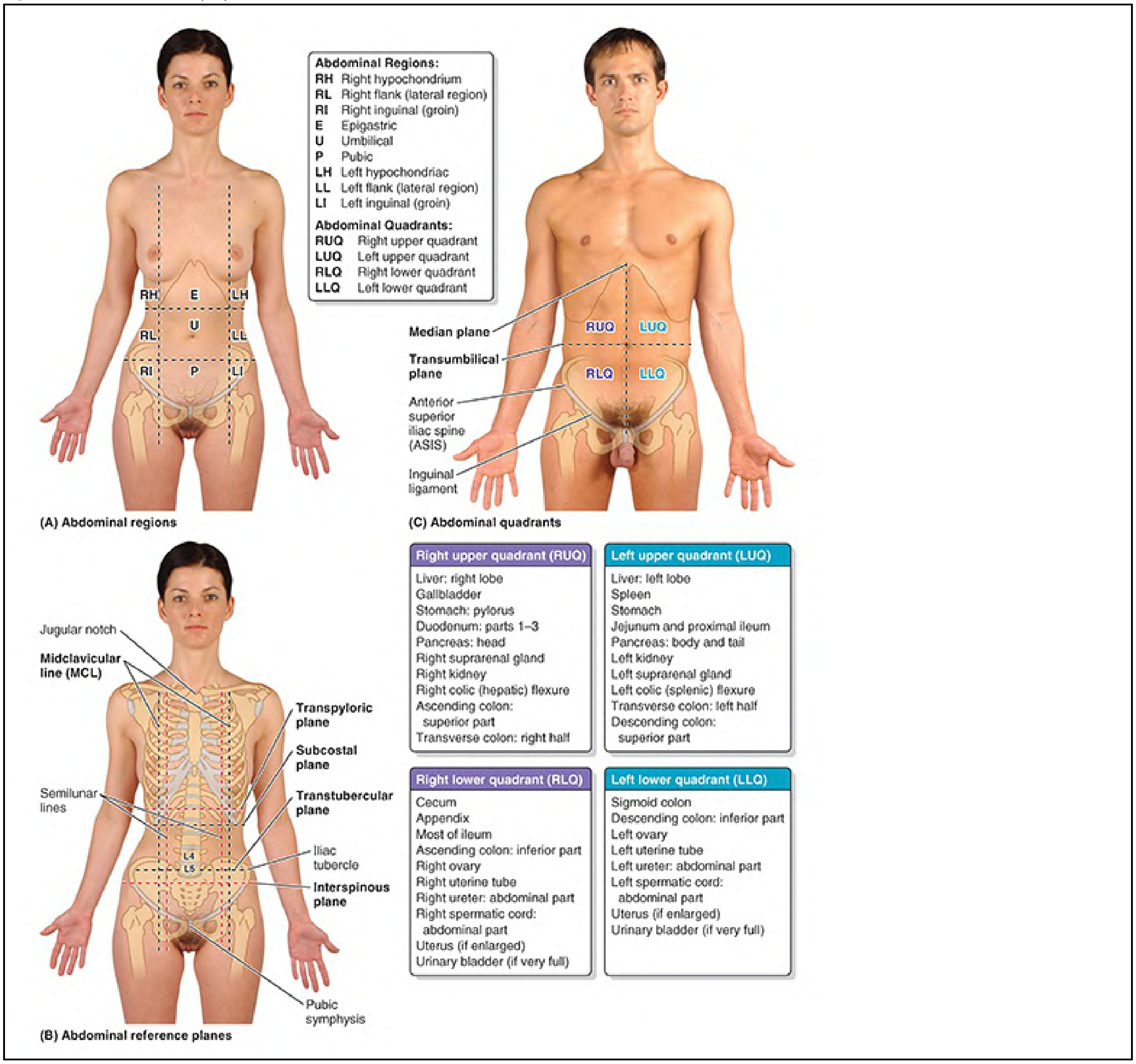


FIGURE 5.2. Abdominopelvic cavity. The body has been sectioned in the median plane to show the abdominal and pelvic cavities as subdivisions of the continuous abdominopelvic cavity.

Nine regions of the abdominal cavity are used to describe the location of abdominal organs, pains, or pathologies (Table 5.1A, B). The regions are delineated by four planes: two sagittal (vertical) and two transverse (horizontal) planes. The two sagittal planes are usually the midclavicular planes that pass from the midpoint of the clavicles (approximately 9 cm from the midline) to the **midinguinal points**, midpoints of the lines joining the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) and the pubic tubercles on each side.

TABLE 5.1. ABDOMINAL REGIONS (A), REFERENCE PLANES (B), AND

QUADRANTS (C)



Most commonly, the transverse planes are the **subcostal plane**, passing through the inferior border of the 10th costal cartilage on each side, and the **transtubercular plane**, passing through the iliac tubercles (approximately 5 cm posterior to the ASIS on each side) and the body of the L5 vertebra. Both of these planes have the advantage of intersecting palpable structures.

Some clinicians use the transpyloric and interspinous planes to establish the nine regions. The **transpyloric plane**, extrapolated midway between the superior borders of the manubrium of the sternum and the pubic symphysis (typically the L1 vertebral level), commonly transects the pylorus (the distal, more tubular part of the stomach) when the patient is recumbent (supine or prone) (Fig. 5.1). Because the viscera sag with the pull of gravity, the pylorus usually lies at a lower level when the individual is standing erect. The transpyloric plane is a useful landmark because it also transects many other important structures: the fundus of the gallbladder, neck of

the pancreas, origins of the superior mesenteric artery (SMA) and hepatic portal vein, root of the transverse mesocolon, duodenojejunal junction, and hila of the kidneys. The **interspinous plane** passes through the easily palpated ASIS on each side (Table 5.1B).

For more general clinical descriptions, four quadrants of the abdominal cavity (right and left upper and lower quadrants) are defined by two readily defined planes: (1) the transverse transumbilical plane, passing through the umbilicus or navel (and typically the intervertebral [IV] disc between the L3 and L4 vertebrae), dividing it into upper and lower halves, and (2) the vertical median plane, passing longitudinally through the body, dividing it into right and left halves (Table 5.1C).

It is important to know what organs are located in each abdominal region or quadrant so that one knows where to auscultate, percuss, and palpate them (Table 5.1) and to record the locations of findings during a physical examination.

ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

Although the abdominal wall is continuous, it is subdivided into the anterior wall, right and left lateral walls, and posterior wall for descriptive purposes (Fig. 5.3). The abdominal wall is musculo-aponeurotic, except for the posterior wall, which includes the lumbar region of the vertebral column. The boundary between the anterior and lateral walls is indefinite; therefore, the term **anterolateral abdominal wall** is often used. Some structures, such as muscles and cutaneous nerves, are in both the anterior and lateral walls. The anterolateral abdominal wall extends from the thoracic cage to the pelvis.

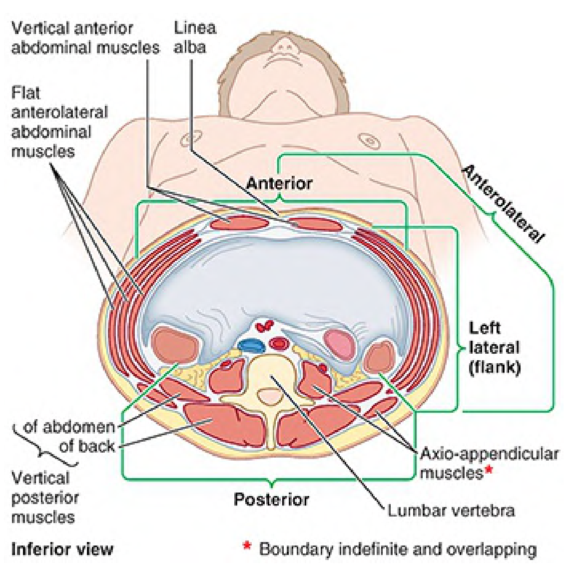


FIGURE 5.3. Subdivisions of abdominal wall. A transverse section of the abdomen demonstrates various aspects of the wall and its components. (The relatively superficial latissimus dorsi and deeper psoas major muscles are axio-appendicular muscles that attach distally in the upper and lower limbs, respectively.)

The anterolateral abdominal wall is bounded superiorly by the cartilages of the 7th–10th ribs and the xiphoid process of the sternum and inferiorly by the inguinal ligament and the superior

margins of the anterolateral aspects of the pelvic girdle (iliac crests, pubic crests, and pubic symphysis) (Fig. 5.4A).

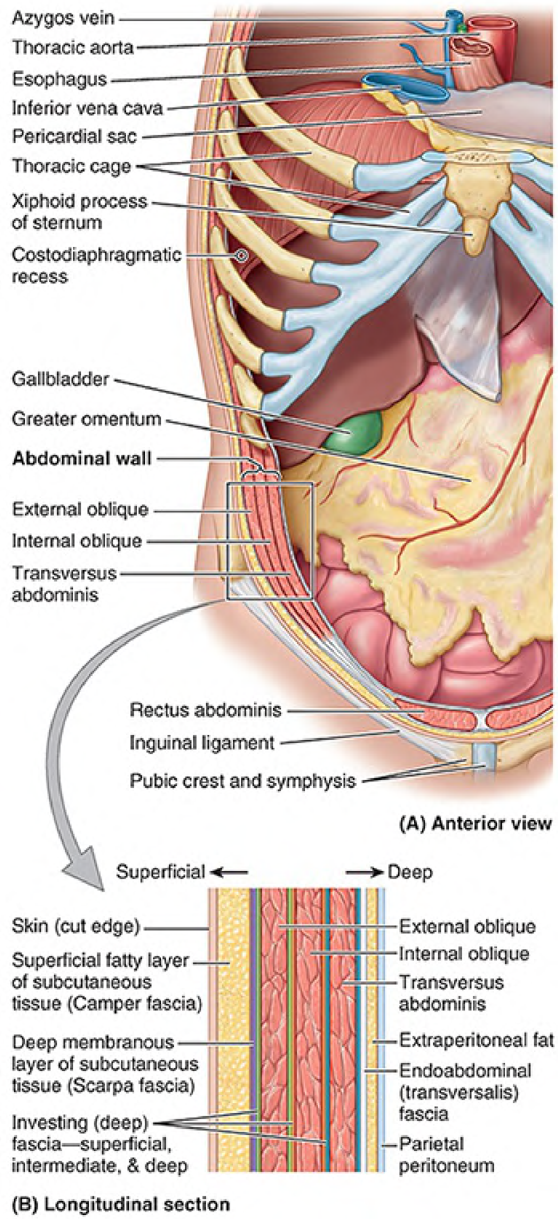


FIGURE 5.4. Layers of anterolateral abdominal wall. A. Overview. The anterior abdominal wall and soft tissues of the anterior thoracic wall have been removed. **B.** Layers of anterolateral abdominal wall from skin to parietal peritoneum.

The anterolateral abdominal wall consists of skin and subcutaneous tissue (superficial fascia) composed mainly of fat, muscles and their aponeuroses and deep fascia, extraperitoneal fat, and parietal peritoneum (Fig. 5.4B). The skin attaches loosely to the subcutaneous tissue, except at the umbilicus, where it adheres firmly. Most of the anterolateral wall includes three musculotendinous layers; the fiber bundles of each layer run in different directions. This three-ply structure is similar to that of the intercostal spaces in the thorax.

Fascia of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall

The subcutaneous tissue over most of the wall includes a variable amount of fat. It is a major site of fat storage. Males are especially susceptible to subcutaneous accumulation of fat in the lower anterior abdominal wall. In morbid obesity, the fat is many inches thick, often forming one or more sagging folds (L. panniculi; singular = panniculus, apron).

Superior to the umbilicus, the subcutaneous tissue is consistent with that found in most regions. Inferior to the umbilicus, the deepest part of the subcutaneous tissue is reinforced by many elastic and collagen fibers, so it has two layers: the **superficial fatty layer** (Camper fascia) and the **deep membranous layer** (Scarpa fascia) **of subcutaneous tissue**. The membranous layer continues inferiorly into the perineal region as the membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue of the perineum (superficial perineal or Colles fascia) but not into the thighs (see Fig. 5.9B).

Superficial, intermediate, and deep layers of investing fascia cover the external aspects of the three muscle layers of the anterolateral abdominal wall and their aponeuroses (flat expanded tendons) and cannot be easily separated from them. The investing fascias here are extremely thin, being represented mostly by the epimysium (outer fibrous connective tissue layer surrounding all muscles—see Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts) superficial to or between muscles. The internal aspect of the abdominal wall is lined with membranous and areolar sheets of varying thickness constituting **endoabdominal fascia**. Although continuous, different parts of this fascia are named according to the muscle or aponeurosis it is lining. The portion lining the deep surface of the transversus abdominis muscle and its aponeurosis is the **transversalis fascia**. The glistening lining of the abdominal cavity, the parietal peritoneum, is formed by a single layer of epithelial cells and supporting connective tissue. The parietal peritoneum is internal to the transversalis fascia and is separated from it by a variable amount of **extraperitoneal fat**.

Muscles of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall

There are five (bilaterally paired) muscles in the anterolateral abdominal wall (Fig. 5.3): three flat muscles and two vertical muscles. Their attachments are demonstrated in Figure 5.5 and listed, along with their nerve supply and main actions, in Table 5.2.

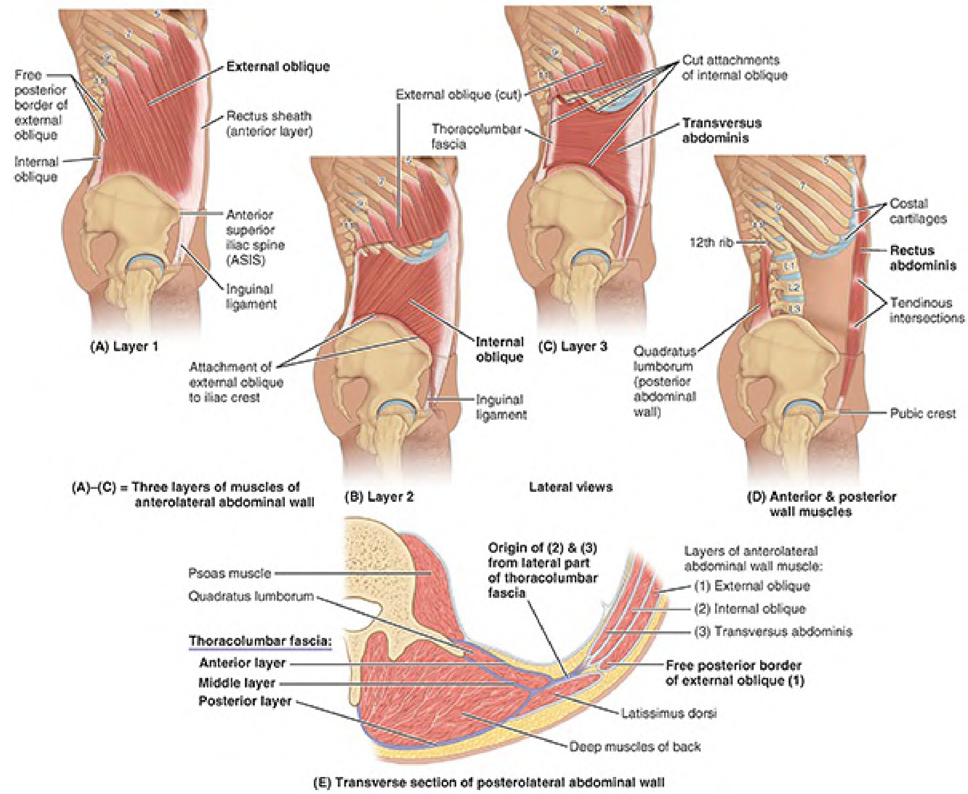


FIGURE 5.5. Muscles of anterolateral abdominal wall.

TABLE 5.2. MUSCLES OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Main Action[a]
External oblique (Fig 5.5A)	External surfaces of 5th–12th ribs	Linea alba, pubic tubercle, and anterior half of iliac crest	Thoraco-abdominal nerves (T7–T11 spinal nerves) and subcostal nerve	Compresses and supports abdominal viscera[b] and flexes and rotates trunk
Internal oblique (Fig 5.5B)	Thoracolumbar fascia, anterior two thirds of iliac crest, and connective tissue deep to lateral third of inguinal ligament	Inferior borders of 10th–12th ribs, linea alba, and pecten pubis via conjoint tendon	Thoraco-abdominal nerves (anterior rami of T6–T12 spinal nerves) and first lumbar nerve	
Transversus abdominis (Fig 5.5C)	Internal surfaces of 7th–12th costal cartilages, thoracolumbar fascia, iliac crest, and connective tissue deep to lateral third of inguinal ligament	Linea alba with aponeurosis of internal oblique, pubic crest, and pecten pubis via conjoint tendon		Compresses and supports abdominal viscera[b]
Rectus abdominis (Fig 5.5D)	Pubic symphysis and pubic crest	Xiphoid process and 5th–7th costal cartilages	Thoraco-abdominal nerves (anterior rami of T6–T12 spinal nerves)	Flexes trunk (lumbar vertebrae) and compresses abdominal viscera[b]; stabilizes and controls tilt of pelvis (antilordosis)

[a]Approximately 80% of people have an insignificant muscle, the pyramidalis, which is located in the rectus sheath anterior to the most inferior part of the rectus abdominis. It extends from the pubic crest of the hip bone to the linea alba. This small muscle draws down on the linea alba.

[b]In so doing, these muscles act as antagonists of the diaphragm to produce expiration.

The three flat muscles are the external oblique, internal oblique, and transversus abdominis. The muscle fibers of these three concentric muscle layers have varying orientations, with the fibers of the outer two layers running diagonally and perpendicular to each other for the main part, and the fibers of the deep layer running transversely. All three flat muscles are continued anteriorly and medially as strong, sheet-like aponeuroses (Fig. 5.6A). Between the midclavicular line (MCL) and the midline, the aponeuroses form the tough, aponeurotic, tendinous rectus sheath enclosing the rectus abdominis muscle (Fig. 5.6B). The aponeuroses then interweave with their fellows of the opposite side, forming a midline **raphe** (G. rhaphe, suture, seam), the **linea alba** (L. white line), which extends from the xiphoid process to the pubic symphysis. The decussation and interweaving of the aponeurotic fibers here is not only between right and left sides but also between superficial and intermediate and intermediate and deep layers.

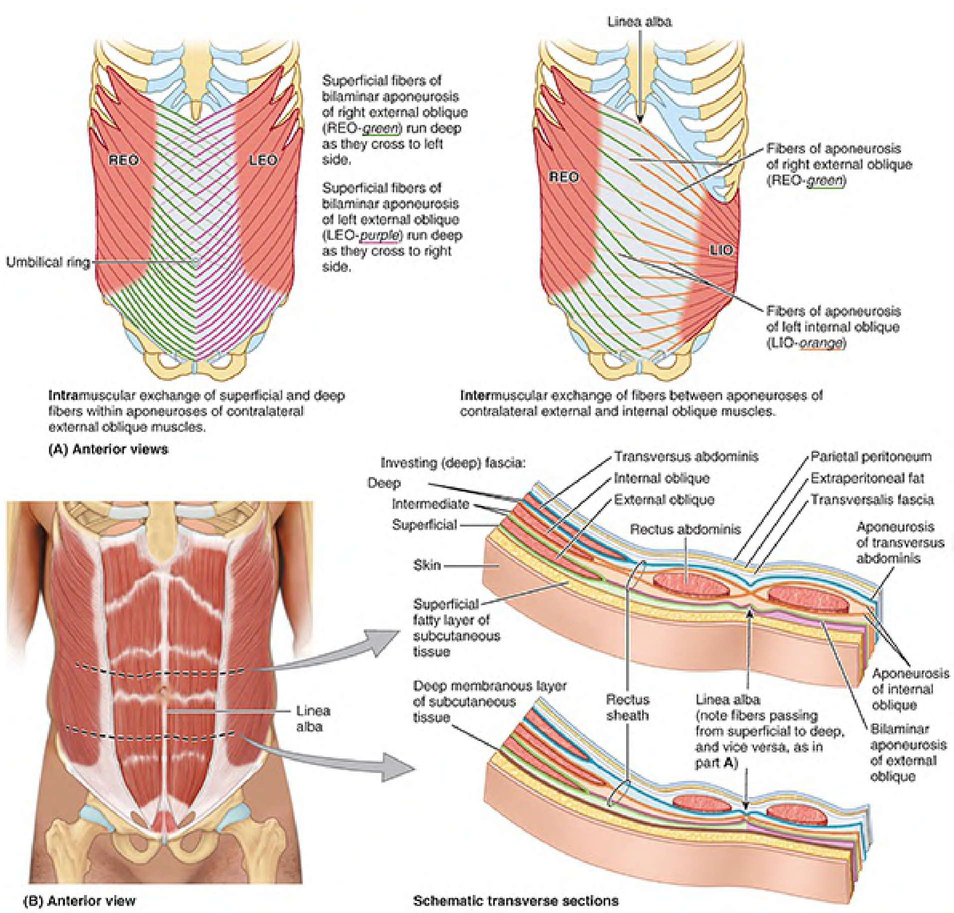


FIGURE 5.6. **Structure of anterolateral abdominal wall. A.** Intramuscular and intermuscular fiber exchanges of aponeuroses of external and internal oblique muscles are illustrated. **B.** Transverse sections superior and inferior to umbilicus to show makeup of rectus sheath.

The two vertical muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall, contained within the rectus sheath, are the large rectus abdominis and the small pyramidalis.

EXTERNAL OBLIQUE MUSCLE

The **external oblique muscle** is the largest and most superficial of the three flat anterolateral abdominal muscles (Fig. 5.7). The attachments of the external oblique are demonstrated in Figure 5.5A and listed, along with the nerve supply and main actions, in Table 5.2. In contrast to the two deeper layers, the external oblique does not originate posteriorly from the thoracolumbar fascia; its posteriormost fibers (the thickest part of the muscle) have a free edge where they span between its costal origin and the iliac crest (Fig. 5.5D, E). The fleshy part of the muscle contributes primarily to the lateral part of the abdominal wall. Its aponeurosis contributes to the anterior part of the wall.

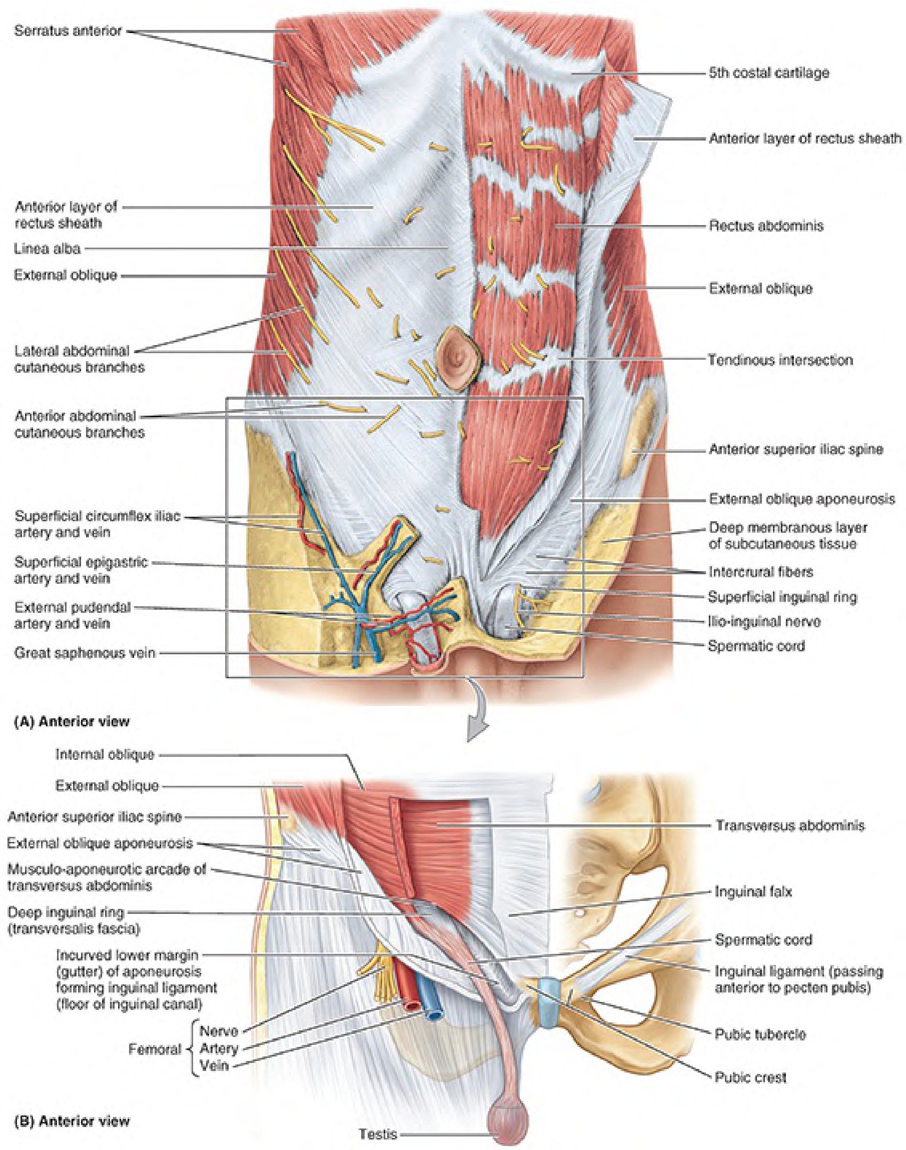


FIGURE 5.7. **Anterolateral abdominal wall. A.** Superficial dissection. The anterior layer of the rectus sheath is

reflected on the left side. Observe the anterior cutaneous nerves (T7–T12) piercing the rectus abdominis and the anterior layer of the rectus sheath. **B.** Serial dissection. The three flat abdominal muscles and the formation of the inguinal ligament are demonstrated.

Although the posteriormost fibers from rib 12 are nearly vertical as they run to the iliac crest, more anterior fibers fan out, taking an increasingly medial direction so that most of the fleshy fibers run inferomedially—in the same direction as the fingers do when the hands are in one's side pockets—with the most anterior and superior fibers approaching a horizontal course. The muscle fibers become aponeurotic approximately at the MCL medially and at the **spino-umbilical line** (line running from the umbilicus to the ASIS) inferiorly, forming a sheet of tendinous fibers that decussate at the linea alba, most becoming continuous with tendinous fibers of the contralateral internal oblique (Fig. 5.6A). Thus, the contralateral external and internal oblique muscles together form a "digastric muscle," a two-bellied muscle sharing a common central tendon that works as a unit (see Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts). For example, the right external oblique and left internal oblique work together when flexing and rotating to bring the right shoulder toward the left hip (torsional movement of trunk).

Inferiorly, the external oblique aponeurosis attaches to the ipsilateral pubic crest medial to the pubic tubercle, while decussating fibers extend to the contralateral pubic crest, reinforcing the symphysis (Fig. 5.6A). The inferior margin of the external oblique aponeurosis is thickened as an undercurving fibrous band with a free posterior edge that spans between the ASIS and the pubic tubercle as the inguinal ligament (Poupart ligament) (Figs. 5.7B and 5.8).

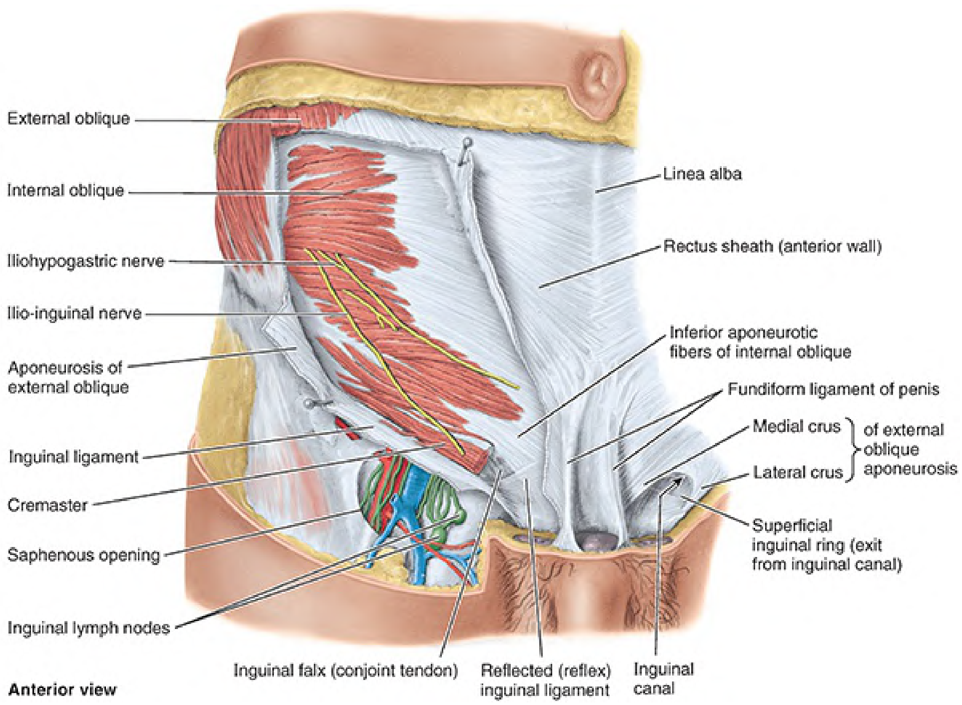


FIGURE 5.8. Inferior abdominal wall and inguinal region of a male. The aponeurosis of the external oblique is partly cut away, and the spermatic cord has been cut and removed from the inguinal canal.

Palpate your inguinal ligament by pressing deeply into the center of the crease between the

thigh and trunk and moving the fingertips up and down. Inferiorly, the inguinal ligament is continuous with the deep fascia of the thigh. The inguinal ligament is therefore not a freestanding structure, although—as a useful landmark—it is frequently depicted as such. It serves as a retinaculum (retaining band) for the muscular and neurovascular structures passing deep to it to enter the thigh. The inferior parts of the two deeper anterolateral abdominal muscles arise in relationship to the lateral portion of the inguinal ligament. The complex modifications and attachments of the inguinal ligament, and of the inferomedial portions of the aponeuroses of the anterolateral abdominal wall muscles, are discussed in detail with the inguinal region (later in this chapter).

INTERNAL OBLIQUE MUSCLE

The intermediate of the three flat abdominal muscles, the **internal oblique** is a thin muscular sheet that fans out anteromedially (Figs. 5.5B, 5.8, and 5.9A). Except for its lowermost fibers, which arise from the lateral half of the inguinal ligament, its fleshy fibers run perpendicular to those of the external oblique, running superomedially (like your fingers when the hand is placed over your chest). Its fibers also become aponeurotic at the MCL and participate in the formation of the rectus sheath. The attachments of the internal oblique are demonstrated in Figure 5.5B and listed, along with the nerve supply and main actions, in Table 5.2.

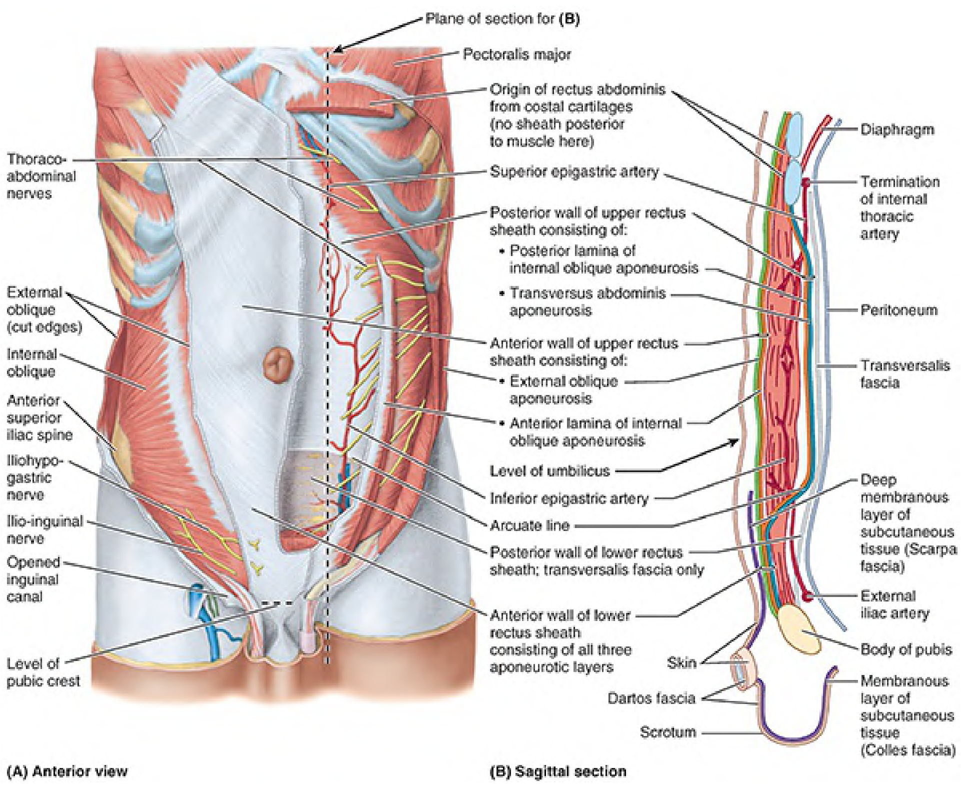


FIGURE 5.9. Formation of rectus sheath and neurovascular structures of anterior and anterolateral abdominal wall. A. Deep dissection. The fleshy portion of the external oblique is excised on the right side, but its aponeurosis and the anterior wall of the rectus sheath are intact. The anterior wall of the sheath and the rectus abdominis are removed on the left side so that the posterior wall of the sheath may be seen. Lateral to the left rectus sheath, the fleshy part of the internal oblique has been cut longitudinally; the edges of the cut are retracted to reveal the thoraco-abdominal nerves coursing in

the neurovascular plane between the internal oblique and the transversus abdominis. **B.** Schematic. Sagittal section through rectus sheath.

TRANSVERSUS ABDOMINIS MUSCLE

The fibers of the **transversus abdominis**, the innermost of the three flat abdominal muscles (see Figs. 5.5C and 5.7B), run more or less transversally, except for the inferior ones, which run parallel to those of the internal oblique. This transverse, circumferential orientation is ideal for compressing the abdominal contents, increasing intra-abdominal pressure. The fibers of the transversus abdominis muscle also end in an aponeurosis, which contributes to the formation of the rectus sheath (Fig. 5.9). The attachments of the transversus abdominis are demonstrated in Figure 5.5C and listed, along with the nerve supply and main actions, in Table 5.2.

Between the internal oblique and the transversus abdominis muscles is a neurovascular plane, which corresponds with a similar plane in the intercostal spaces. In both regions, the plane lies between the middle and deepest layers of muscle (Fig. 5.9A). The **neurovascular plane of the anterolateral abdominal wall** contains the nerves and arteries supplying the anterolateral abdominal wall. In the anterior part of the abdominal wall, the nerves and vessels leave the neurovascular plane and lie mostly in the subcutaneous tissue.

RECTUS ABDOMINIS MUSCLE

A long, broad, strap-like muscle, the **rectus abdominis** (L. rectus, straight) is the principal vertical muscle of the anterior abdominal wall (Figs. 5.5D, 5.6B, 5.7A, and 5.9B). The attachments of the rectus abdominis are demonstrated in Figure 5.5D and listed, along with the nerve supply and main actions, in Table 5.2. The paired rectus muscles, separated by the linea alba, lie close together inferiorly. The rectus abdominis is three times as wide superiorly as inferiorly; it is broad and thin superiorly and narrow and thick inferiorly. Most of the rectus abdominis is enclosed in the rectus sheath. The rectus muscle is anchored transversely by attachment to the anterior layer of the rectus sheath at three or more **tendinous intersections** (transverse fibrous bands, see Figs. 5.5D and 5.7A). When tensed in muscular people, the areas of muscle between the tendinous intersections bulge outward. The intersections, indicated by grooves in the skin between the muscular bulges, usually occur at the level of the xiphoid process, at the umbilicus, and halfway between these structures.

PYRAMIDALIS

The **pyramidalis** is a small, insignificant triangular muscle that is absent in approximately 20% of people. It lies anterior to the inferior part of the rectus abdominis and attaches to the anterior surface of the pubis and the anterior pubic ligament. It ends in the linea alba, which is especially thickened for a variable distance superior to the pubic symphysis. The pyramidalis tenses the linea alba. When present, surgeons use the attachment of the pyramidalis to the linea alba as a landmark for median abdominal incision (Skandalakis, 2021).

RECTUS SHEATH, LINEA ALBA, AND UMBILICAL RING

The **rectus sheath** is the strong, incomplete fibrous compartment of the rectus abdominis and pyramidalis muscles (Figs. 5.7, 5.8, and 5.9). Also found in the rectus sheath are the superior and inferior epigastric arteries and veins, lymphatic vessels, and distal portions of the thoraco-abdominal nerves (abdominal portions of the anterior rami of spinal nerves T7–T12).

The rectus sheath is formed by the decussation and interweaving of the aponeuroses of the flat abdominal muscles (Fig. 5.6B). The external oblique aponeurosis contributes to the anterior wall of the sheath throughout its length. The superior two thirds of the internal oblique aponeurosis splits into two layers (laminae) at the lateral border of the rectus abdominis: one lamina passing anterior to the muscle and the other passing posterior to it. The anterior lamina joins the aponeurosis of the external oblique to form the anterior layer of the rectus sheath. The posterior lamina joins the aponeurosis of the transversus abdominis to form the posterior layer of the rectus sheath.

Beginning approximately one third of the distance from the umbilicus to the pubic crest, the aponeuroses of the three flat muscles pass anterior to the rectus abdominis to form the anterior layer of the rectus sheath, leaving only the relatively thin transversalis fascia to cover the rectus abdominis posteriorly. A crescentic **arcuate line** (Fig. 5.9) demarcates the transition between the aponeurotic posterior wall of the sheath covering the superior three quarters of the rectus and the transversalis fascia covering the inferior quarter. Throughout the length of the sheath, the fibers of the anterior and posterior layers of the sheath interlace in the anterior median line to form the complex linea alba.

The posterior layer of the rectus sheath is also deficient superior to the costal margin because the transversus abdominis is continued superiorly as the transversus thoracis, which lies internal to the costal cartilages (see Fig. 4.14), and the internal oblique attaches to the costal margin. Hence, superior to the costal margin, the rectus abdominis lies directly on the thoracic wall (Fig. 5.9B).

The **linea alba**, running vertically the length of the anterior abdominal wall and separating the bilateral rectus sheaths (Fig. 5.7A), narrows inferior to the umbilicus to the width of the pubic symphysis and widens superiorly to the width of the xiphoid process. The linea alba transmits small vessels and nerves to the skin. In thin muscular people, a groove is visible in the skin overlying the linea alba. At its middle, underlying the umbilicus, the linea alba contains the **umbilical ring**, a defect in the linea alba through which the fetal umbilical vessels passed to and from the umbilical cord and placenta. All layers of the anterolateral abdominal wall fuse at the umbilicus. As fat accumulates in the subcutaneous tissue postnatally, the skin becomes raised around the umbilical ring and the umbilicus becomes depressed. This occurs 7–14 days after birth, when the atrophic umbilical cord "falls off."

FUNCTIONS AND ACTIONS OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL MUSCLES

The muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall

- form a strong expandable support for the anterolateral abdominal wall

- support the abdominal viscera and protect them from most injuries
- compress the abdominal contents to maintain or increase the intra-abdominal pressure and, in so doing, oppose the diaphragm (increased intra-abdominal pressure facilitates expulsion)
- move the trunk and help to maintain posture

The oblique and transverse muscles, acting together bilaterally, form a muscular girdle that exerts firm pressure on the abdominal viscera. The rectus abdominis participates little, if at all, in this action. Compressing the abdominal viscera and increasing intra-abdominal pressure elevates the relaxed diaphragm to expel air during respiration and more forcibly for coughing, sneezing, nose blowing, voluntary eructation (burping), and yelling or screaming. When the diaphragm contracts during inspiration, the anterolateral abdominal wall expands as its muscles relax to make room for the organs, such as the liver, that are pushed inferiorly. The combined actions of the anterolateral muscles also produce the force required for defecation (discharge of feces), micturition (urination), vomiting, and parturition (childbirth). Increased intra-abdominal (and intrathoracic) pressure is also involved in heavy lifting, the resulting force sometimes producing a hernia.

The anterolateral abdominal muscles are also involved in movements of the trunk at the level of the lumbar vertebrae and in controlling the tilt of the pelvis when standing for maintenance of posture (resisting lumbar lordosis). Consequently, strengthening the anterolateral abdominal wall musculature improves standing and sitting posture. The rectus abdominis is a powerful flexor of the thoracic and especially lumbar regions of the vertebral column, pulling the anterior costal margin and pubic crest toward each other. The oblique abdominal muscles also assist in movements of the trunk, especially lateral flexion of the lumbar vertebrae and rotation of the lower thoracic vertebral column. The transversus abdominis probably has no appreciable effect on the vertebral column (Standring, 2021).

Neurovasculature of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall

DERMATOMES OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

The map of dermatomes of the anterolateral abdominal wall is almost identical to the map of peripheral nerve distribution (Fig. 5.10). This is because the anterior rami of spinal nerves T7–T12, which supply most of the abdominal wall, do not participate in plexus formation. The exception occurs at the L1 level, where the L1 anterior ramus bifurcates into two named peripheral nerves. Each dermatome begins posteriorly overlying the intervertebral foramen by which the spinal nerve exits the vertebral column and follows the slope of the ribs around the trunk. Dermatome T10 includes the umbilicus, whereas dermatome L1 includes the inguinal fold.

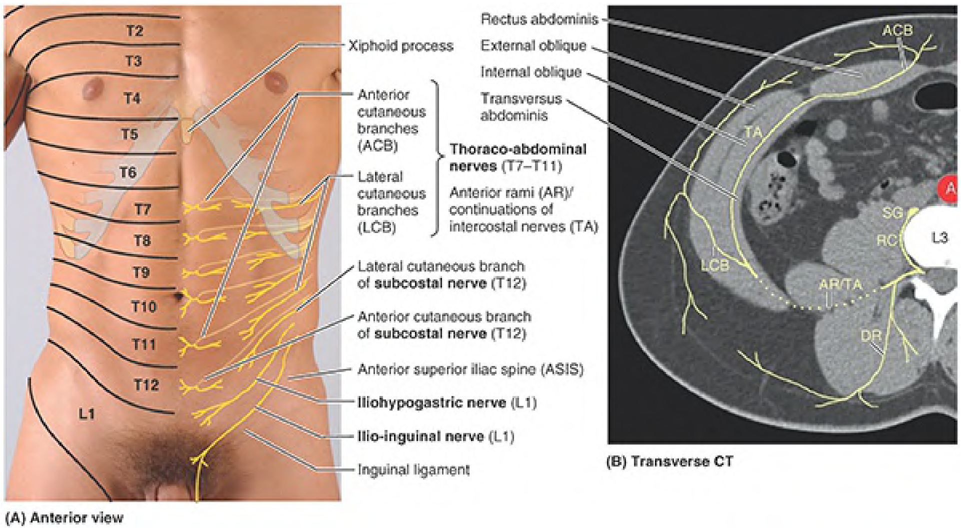


FIGURE 5.10. **Innervation of anterolateral abdominal wall. A.** Dermatomes and distribution of cutaneous branches. **B.** Transverse CT scan at L3 vertebral level showing neurovascular plane (path) of lumbar spinal nerve branches. A, abdominal aorta; DR, dorsal (posterior) ramus; RC, ramus communicans; SG, sympathetic ganglia of sympathetic trunk.

NERVES OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

The skin and muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall are supplied mainly by the following nerves (Figs. 5.9A and 5.10; Table 5.3):

- **Thoraco-abdominal nerves**: These are the distal, abdominal parts of the anterior rami of the inferior six thoracic spinal nerves (T7–T11); they are the former inferior intercostal nerves distal to the costal margin.
- **Lateral (thoracic) cutaneous branches** of the thoracic spinal nerves T7–T9 or T10
- **Subcostal nerve**: the large anterior ramus of spinal nerve T12
- **Iliohypogastric** and **ilio-inguinal nerves**: terminal branches of the anterior ramus of spinal nerve L1

TABLE 5.3. NERVES OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

Nerves	Origin	Course	Distribution
Thoraco-abdominal (T7–T11)	Continuation of lower (7th–11th) intercostal nerves distal to the costal margin	Run between second and third layers of abdominal muscles; branches enter subcutaneous tissue as lateral cutaneous branches of T10–T11 (in anterior axillary line) and anterior cutaneous branches of T7–T11 (parasternal line).	Muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall and overlying skin
7th–9th lateral cutaneous branches	7th–9th intercostal nerves (anterior rami of spinal nerves T7–T9)	Anterior divisions continue across costal margin in subcutaneous tissue.	Skin of right and left hypochondriac regions
Subcostal (anterior ramus of T12)	Spinal nerve T12	Runs along the inferior border of the 12th rib; then passes onto the subumbilical abdominal wall between second and third layers of abdominal muscles	Muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall (including most inferior slip of external oblique) and overlying skin, superior to

			the iliac crest and inferior to the umbilicus
Iliohypogastric (L1)	As superior terminal branch of anterior ramus of spinal nerve L1	Pierces the transversus abdominis muscle to course between second and third layers of abdominal muscles; branches pierce external oblique aponeuroses of most inferior abdominal wall	Skin overlying iliac crest, upper inguinal, and hypogastric regions; internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles
Ilio-inguinal (L1)	As inferior terminal branch of the anterior ramus of spinal nerve L1	Passes between second and third layers of abdominal muscles; then traverses the inguinal canal	Skin of the lower inguinal region, mons pubis, anterior scrotum or labium majus, and adjacent medial thigh; inferiormost internal oblique and transversus abdominis

The thoraco-abdominal nerves pass infero-anteriorly from the intercostal spaces and run in the neurovascular plane between the internal oblique and the transversus abdominis muscles to supply the abdominal skin and muscles. The lateral cutaneous branches emerge from the musculature of the anterolateral wall to enter the subcutaneous tissue along the anterior axillary line (as anterior and posterior divisions), whereas the anterior abdominal cutaneous branches pierce the rectus sheath to enter the subcutaneous tissue a short distance from the median plane. Anterior abdominal cutaneous branches of thoraco-abdominal nerves (Fig. 5.10; Table 5.3) are as follows:

- T7–T9 supply the skin superior to the umbilicus.
- T10 supplies the skin around the umbilicus.
- T11, plus the cutaneous branches of the subcostal (T12), iliohypogastric, and ilio-inguinal (L1), supply the skin inferior to the umbilicus.

During their course through the anterolateral abdominal wall, the thoraco-abdominal, subcostal, and iliohypogastric nerves communicate with each other.

VESSELS OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

The skin and subcutaneous tissue of the abdominal wall are served by an intricate subcutaneous venous plexus, draining superiorly to the internal thoracic vein medially and the lateral thoracic vein laterally and inferiorly to the superficial and inferior epigastric veins, tributaries of the femoral and external iliac veins, respectively (Fig. 5.11). Cutaneous veins surrounding the umbilicus anastomose with para-umbilical veins, small tributaries of the hepatic portal vein that parallel the obliterated umbilical vein (round ligament of the liver). A relatively direct lateral superficial anastomotic channel, the **thoraco-epigastric vein**, may exist or develop (as a result of altered venous flow) between the superficial epigastric vein (a femoral vein tributary) and the lateral thoracic vein (an axillary vein tributary). The deeper veins of the anterolateral abdominal wall accompany the arteries, bearing the same name. A deeper, medial venous anastomosis may exist or develop between the inferior epigastric vein (an external iliac vein tributary) and the superior epigastric/internal thoracic veins (subclavian vein tributaries). The superficial and deep anastomoses may afford collateral circulation during blockage of either vena cava.

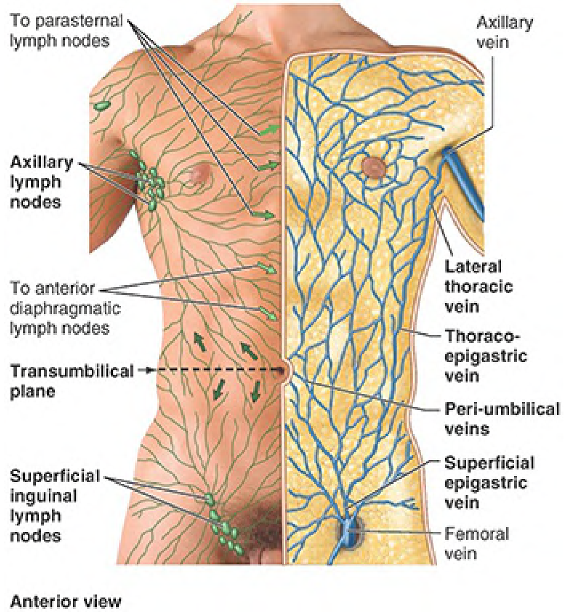


FIGURE 5.11. Lymphatics and superficial veins of anterolateral abdominal wall.

The primary blood vessels (arteries and veins) of the anterolateral abdominal wall are as follows:

- Superior epigastric vessels and branches of the musculophrenic vessels from the internal thoracic vessels
- Inferior epigastric and deep circumflex iliac vessels from the external iliac vessels
- Superficial circumflex iliac and superficial epigastric vessels from the femoral artery and greater saphenous vein, respectively
- Posterior intercostal vessels of the 10th–11th intercostal space and the anterior branches of subcostal vessels

The arterial supply to the anterolateral abdominal wall is demonstrated in Figure 5.12 and summarized in Table 5.4. The distribution of the deep abdominal blood vessels reflects the arrangement of the muscles: The vessels of the anterolateral abdominal wall have an oblique, circumferential pattern (similar to the intercostal vessels; see Fig. 4.19), whereas the vessels of the central anterior abdominal wall are oriented more vertically.

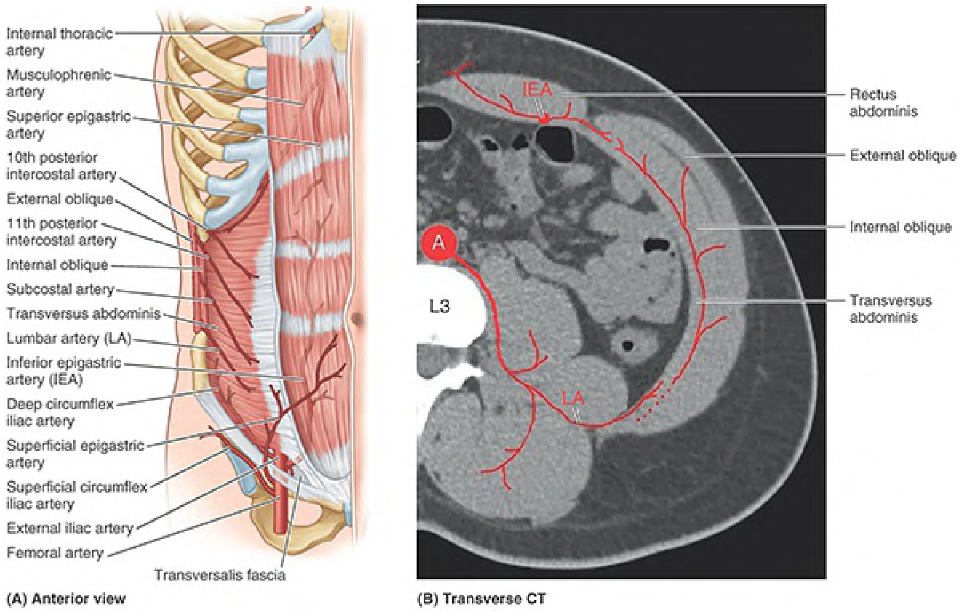


FIGURE 5.12. Arteries of anterolateral abdominal wall. A. Distribution of arteries. **B.** Transverse CT scan at L3 vertebral level showing neurovascular plane (path) for deep arteries. A, abdominal aorta.

TABLE 5.4. ARTERIES OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution
Musculophrenic	Internal thoracic artery	Descends along the costal margin	Superficial and deep abdominal wall of the hypochondriac region; anterolateral diaphragm
Superior epigastric		Descends in rectus sheath deep to rectus abdominis	Rectus abdominis muscle; superficial and deep abdominal wall of the epigastric and upper umbilical regions
10th and 11th posterior intercostal arteries	Aorta	Arteries continue beyond ribs to descend in the abdominal wall between internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles.	Superficial and deep abdominal wall of the lateral (lumbar or flank) region
Subcostal			
Inferior epigastric	External iliac artery	Runs superiorly and enters rectus sheath; runs deep to rectus abdominis	Rectus abdominis muscle; deep abdominal wall of pubic and inferior umbilical regions
Deep circumflex iliac		Runs on deep aspect of the anterior abdominal wall, parallel to the inguinal ligament	Iliacus muscle and deep abdominal wall of the inguinal region; iliac fossa
Superficial circumflex iliac	Femoral artery	Runs in subcutaneous tissue along the inguinal ligament	Superficial abdominal wall of inguinal region and adjacent anterior thigh
Superficial epigastric		Runs in subcutaneous tissue toward the umbilicus	Superficial abdominal wall of the pubic and inferior umbilical regions

The **superior epigastric artery** is the direct continuation of the internal thoracic artery. It enters the rectus sheath superiorly through its posterior layer and supplies the superior part of the

rectus abdominis and anastomoses with the inferior epigastric artery approximately in the umbilical region (see Fig. 5.9; Table 5.4).

The **inferior epigastric artery** arises from the external iliac artery just superior to the inguinal ligament. It runs superiorly in the transversalis fascia to enter the rectus sheath below the arcuate line. It enters the lower rectus abdominis and anastomoses with the superior epigastric artery (Fig. 5.9).

Lymphatic drainage of the anterolateral abdominal wall follows the following patterns (Fig. 5.11):

- Superficial lymphatic vessels accompany the subcutaneous veins; those superior to the transumbilical plane drain mainly to the axillary lymph nodes; however, a few drain to the parasternal lymph nodes. Superficial lymphatic vessels inferior to the transumbilical plane drain to the superficial inguinal lymph nodes.
- Deep lymphatic vessels accompany the deep veins of the abdominal wall and drain to the external iliac, common iliac, and right and left lumbar (caval and aortic) lymph nodes.

For an overview of superficial and deep lymphatic drainage, see Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts.

CLINICAL BOX

FASCIA AND MUSCLES OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

Clinical Significance of Fascia and Fascial Spaces of Abdominal Wall

Liposuction is a surgical method for removing unwanted subcutaneous fat using a percutaneously placed suction tube and high vacuum pressure. The tubes are inserted subdermally through small skin incisions. When closing abdominal skin incisions inferior to the umbilicus, surgeons include the membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue when suturing because of its strength. Between this layer and the deep fascia covering the rectus abdominis and external oblique muscles is a potential space where fluid may accumulate (e.g., urine from a ruptured urethra). Although there are no barriers (other than gravity) to prevent fluid from spreading superiorly from this space, it cannot spread inferiorly into the thigh because the deep membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue fuses with the deep fascia of the thigh (fascia lata) along a line approximately 5.5 cm inferior and parallel to the inguinal ligament.

The endoabdominal fascia is of special importance in surgery. It provides a plane that can be opened, enabling the surgeon to approach structures on or in the anterior aspect of the

posterior abdominal wall, such as the kidneys or bodies of lumbar vertebrae, without entering the membranous peritoneal sac containing the abdominal viscera. Thus, the risk of contamination is minimized. An anterolateral part of this potential space between the transversalis fascia and the parietal peritoneum (space of Bogros) is used for placing prostheses (e.g., Gore-Tex mesh) when repairing inguinal hernias (Skandalakis et al., 1996) (see Fig. 5.15A, B).

Protuberance of Abdomen

A prominent abdomen is normal in infants and young children because their gastrointestinal tracts contain considerable amounts of air. In addition, their anterolateral abdominal cavities are enlarging and their abdominal muscles are gaining strength. An infant's and young child's relatively large liver also accounts for some bulging. Abdominal muscles protect and support the viscera most effectively when they are well toned; thus, the well-conditioned adult of normal weight has a flat or scaphoid (lit. boat shaped; i.e., hollowed or concave) abdomen when in the supine position.

The six common causes of abdominal protrusion begin with the letter F: food, fluid, fat, feces, flatus, and fetus. Eversion of the umbilicus may be a sign of increased intra-abdominal pressure, usually resulting from ascites (abnormal accumulation of serous fluid in the peritoneal cavity), or a large mass (e.g., a tumor, a fetus, or an enlarged organ such as the liver). Excess fat accumulation due to overnourishment most commonly involves the subcutaneous fatty layer; however, there may also be excessive depositions of extraperitoneal fat in some types of obesity. Tumors and organomegaly (organ enlargement such as splenomegaly—enlargement of the spleen) also produce abdominal enlargement. When the anterior abdominal muscles are underdeveloped or become atrophic, as a result of old age or insufficient exercise, they provide insufficient tonus to resist the increased weight of a protuberant abdomen on the anterior pelvis. The pelvis tilts anteriorly at the hip joints when standing (the pubis descends and the sacrum ascends) producing excessive lordosis of the lumbar region (see Fig. B2.22C).

Abdominal Hernias

The anterolateral abdominal wall may be the site of abdominal hernias. These hernias commonly occur wherever something (vessels, spermatic cord, etc.) pierces the abdominal wall creating a potential weakness.

Most hernias occur in the inguinal, umbilical, and epigastric regions (see the Clinical Box "Inguinal Hernias" in this chapter). Umbilical hernias are common in neonates because the anterior abdominal wall is relatively weak in the umbilical ring, which had failed to close normally, causing a protrusion at the umbilicus, especially in low-birth-weight infants. Umbilical hernias are usually small and result from increased intra-abdominal pressure in the presence of weakness and incomplete closure of the anterior abdominal wall after

ligation of the umbilical cord at birth. Many of these small hernias subsequently close spontaneously. Acquired umbilical hernias occur most commonly in women and obese people. Extraperitoneal fat and/or peritoneum protrude into the hernial sac. The lines along which the fibers of the abdominal aponeuroses interlace are also potential sites of herniation (see Fig. 5.6B). Occasionally, gaps exist where these fiber exchanges occur—for example, in the midline or in the transition from aponeurosis to rectus sheath. These gaps may be congenital, the result of the stresses of obesity and aging, or the consequence of surgical (including laparoscopic) or traumatic wounds.

An epigastric hernia, a hernia in the epigastric region through the linea alba, occurs in the midline between the xiphoid process and the umbilicus. These are typically just lobules of fat. They are often painful, especially if a nerve is compressed. Spigelian hernias are those occurring along the semilunar lines (see Table 5.1B). These types of hernia tend to occur in people older than 40 years and are usually associated with obesity. The hernial sac, composed of peritoneum, is often covered with only skin and fatty subcutaneous tissue but may occur deep to the muscle.

NEUROVASCULATURE OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL

Palpation of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall

Warm hands are important when palpating the abdominal wall because cold hands make the anterolateral abdominal muscles tense, producing involuntary spasms of the muscles, known as guarding. Intense guarding, board-like reflexive muscular rigidity that cannot be willfully suppressed, occurs during palpation when an organ (such as the appendix) is inflamed and in itself constitutes a clinically significant sign of acute abdomen. The involuntary muscular spasms attempt to protect the viscera from pressure, which is painful when an abdominal infection is present. The common nerve supply of the skin and muscles of the wall explains why these spasms occur.

Palpation of abdominal viscera is performed with the patient in the supine position with thighs and knees semiflexed to enable adequate relaxation of the anterolateral abdominal wall. Otherwise, the deep fascia of the thighs pulls on the membranous layer of abdominal subcutaneous tissue, tensing the abdominal wall. Some people tend to place their hands behind their heads when lying supine, which also tightens the muscles and makes the examination difficult. Placing the upper limbs at the sides and putting a pillow under the person's knees tends to relax the anterolateral abdominal muscles.

Superficial Abdominal Reflexes

The abdominal wall is the only protection most of the abdominal organs have. Consequently, the wall will react if an organ is diseased or injured. With the person

supine and the muscles relaxed, the superficial abdominal reflex is elicited by quickly stroking horizontally, lateral to medial, toward the umbilicus. Usually, contraction of the abdominal muscles is felt; this reflex may not be observed in obese people. Similarly, any injury to the abdominal skin results in a rapid reflex contraction of the abdominal muscles.

Injury to Nerves of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall

The inferior thoracic spinal nerves (T7–T12) and the iliohypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves (L1) approach the abdominal musculature separately to provide the multisegmental innervation of the abdominal muscles. Thus, they are distributed across the anterolateral abdominal wall, where they run oblique but mostly horizontal courses. They are susceptible to injury in surgical incisions or from trauma at any level of the abdominal wall. Injury to nerves of the anterolateral abdominal wall may result in weakening of the muscles. The most common cause is surgery. An oblique subcostal incision, used for liver/pancreas surgery (in the past for open cholecystectomy), can result in denervation of part of the abdominal wall if the nerves are not carefully identified and spared, which is not always possible. In the inguinal region, such a weakness may predispose an individual to development of an inguinal hernia (see the Clinical Box "Inguinal Hernias" in this chapter).

Abdominal Surgical Incisions

Surgeons use various abdominal surgical incisions to gain access to the abdominal cavity. When possible, the incisions follow the cleavage lines (Langer lines) in the skin (see Fig. 1.7 and Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts, for discussion of these lines). The incision that allows adequate exposure, and secondarily, the best possible cosmetic effect, is chosen. The location of the incision also depends on the type of operation, the location of the organ(s) the surgeon wants to reach, bony or cartilaginous boundaries, avoidance of (especially motor) nerves, maintenance of blood supply, and minimizing injury to muscles and fascia of the abdominal wall while aiming for favorable healing. Thus, before making an incision, the surgeon considers the direction of the muscle fibers and the location of the aponeuroses and nerves. Consequently, a variety of incisions are routinely used, each having specific advantages and limitations.

Instead of transecting muscles, causing denervation and consequent atrophy of muscle fibers as well as increased pain and bleeding, the surgeon splits them in the direction of (and between) their fibers. The rectus abdominis is an exception; it can be transected because its muscle fibers run short distances between tendinous intersections and the segmental nerves supplying it enter the lateral part of the rectus sheath where they can be located and preserved. Generally, incisions are made in the part of the anterolateral abdominal wall that gives the freest access to the targeted organ with the least disturbance to the nerve supply to the muscles. Muscles and viscera are retracted toward, not away from, their neurovascular

supply.

Cutting a motor nerve paralyzes the muscle fibers supplied by it, thereby weakening the anterolateral abdominal wall. However, because of overlapping areas of innervation between nerves, one or two small branches of nerves may usually be cut without a noticeable loss of motor supply to the muscles or loss of sensation to the skin.

LONGITUDINAL INCISIONS

Longitudinal (vertical) incisions, such as median (midline) and paramedian incisions (Fig. B5.1), are preferred for exploratory operations because they offer good exposure of and access to the viscera and can be extended as necessary with minimal complication.

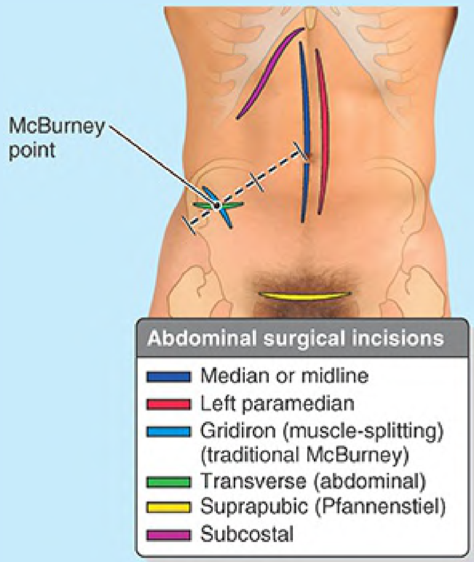


FIGURE B5.1. Abdominal surgical incisions.

Median incisions can be made rapidly without cutting muscle, major blood vessels, or nerves. Median incisions can be made along any part or the length of the linea alba from the xiphoid process to pubic symphysis. Because the linea alba transmits only small vessels and nerves to the skin, a median (midline) incision is relatively bloodless and avoids major nerves; however, incisions in some people may reveal abundant and well-vascularized fat. Conversely, because of its relatively poor blood supply, the linea alba may undergo necrosis and subsequent degeneration after incision if its edges are not aligned properly during closure. Paramedian incisions (lateral to the median plane) are made in a sagittal plane and may extend from the costal margin to the pubic hairline. After the incision passes through the anterior layer of the rectus sheath, the muscle is retracted laterally without sectioning to prevent tension and injury to the vessels and nerves. The posterior layer of the rectus sheath and the peritoneum are then incised to enter the peritoneal cavity.

OBLIQUE AND TRANSVERSE INCISIONS

The direction of oblique and transverse incisions is related to muscle fiber orientation,

nearby hard tissue (costal margin or iliac or pubic crest), or minimizing potential nerve damage. Gridiron (muscle-splitting) incisions are often used for an appendectomy. The oblique McBurney incision is made at the McBurney point, approximately 2.5 cm superomedial to the ASIS on the spino-umbilical line. The external oblique aponeurosis is incised inferomedially in the direction of its fibers and retracted. The musculo-aponeurotic fibers of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis are then split in the line of their fibers and retracted. The iliohypogastric nerve, running deep to the internal oblique, is identified and preserved. Carefully made, the entire exposure cuts no musculo-aponeurotic fibers; therefore, when the incision is closed, the muscle fibers move together and the abdominal wall is as strong after the operation as it was before. Suprapubic incisions ("bikini" incisions) are made at the pubic hairline. These incisions—horizontal with a slight convexity—are used for most gynecological and obstetrical operations (e.g., for cesarean delivery). The linea alba and anterior layers of the rectus sheaths are transected and resected superiorly, and the rectus muscles are retracted laterally or divided through their tendinous parts allowing reattachment without muscle fiber injury. The iliohypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves are identified and preserved.

Transverse incisions through the anterior layer of the rectus sheath and rectus abdominis provide good access and cause the least possible damage to the nerve supply of the rectus abdominis. This muscle may be divided transversely without serious damage because a new transverse band forms when the muscle segments are rejoined. Transverse incisions are not made through the tendinous intersections because cutaneous nerves and branches of the superior epigastric vessels pierce these fibrous regions of the muscle. Transverse incisions can be increased laterally as needed to increase exposure but are not utilized for exploratory procedures because superior and inferior extension is difficult and the incision may make it difficult to place a colostomy or ileostomy.

Subcostal incisions provide access to the gallbladder and biliary ducts on the right side and the spleen on the left. The incision is made parallel but at least 2.5 cm inferior to the costal margin to avoid the 7th and 8th thoracic spinal nerves (see Table 5.3).

HIGH-RISK INCISIONS

High-risk incisions include rarely used pararectus incisions. Pararectus incisions along the lateral border of the rectus sheath are undesirable because they may cut the nerve supply to the rectus abdominis. Inguinal incisions, commonly used for repairing hernias, require care to avoid injury of the ilio-inguinal nerve.

INCISIONAL HERNIA

An incisional hernia is a protrusion of omentum (a fold of peritoneum) or an organ through a surgical incision. If the muscular and aponeurotic layers of the abdomen do not heal properly, an incisional hernia can result.

MINIMALLY INVASIVE (ENDOSCOPIC) SURGERY

Many abdominopelvic surgical procedures (e.g., removal of the gallbladder) are performed using a laparoscope, in which tiny perforations of the abdominal wall allow the entry of instruments operated externally, replacing the larger conventional incisions. Thus, the potential for nerve injury, incisional hernia, or contamination through the open wound and the time required for healing are minimized.

Reversal of Venous Flow and Collateral Pathways of Superficial Abdominal Veins

When flow in the superior or inferior vena cava is obstructed, anastomoses between the tributaries of these systemic veins, such as the thoraco-epigastric vein, may provide collateral pathways by which the obstruction may be bypassed, allowing blood to return to the heart (Fig. B5.2).

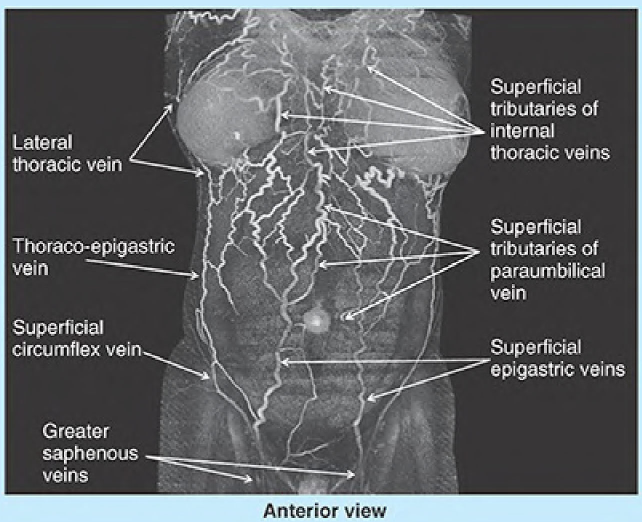


FIGURE B5.2. **Superficial venous collateral pathways of abdomen.**

The Bottom Line: Fascia, Muscles, and Neurovasculature of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall

Fascia: The fascia of the anterolateral abdominal wall consists of subcutaneous (superficial), investing (deep), and endoabdominal portions. ■ The subcutaneous layer is modified inferior to the umbilicus to include a superficial fatty layer and a deep membranous layer. ■ The superficial fatty layer is specialized here, particularly in males, for lipid storage, whereas the deep membranous layer is sufficiently complete to compartmentalize extravasated fluids (blood or urine) and allow placement of sutures during surgery. ■ The investing layer is typical of deep fascias ensheathing voluntary

muscles and here reflects the trilaminar arrangement of the flat abdominal muscles and their aponeuroses. ■ The endoabdominal fascia is of particular importance in surgery, enabling the establishment of an extraperitoneal space that allows anterior access to retroperitoneal structures (e.g., kidneys, ureters, and bodies of lumbar vertebra) without entering the peritoneal cavity.

Muscles: The anterolateral abdominal muscles consist of concentric, flat muscles located anterolaterally and vertical muscles placed anteriorly adjacent to the midline. ■ A trilaminar arrangement of the flat muscles, like that in the thorax, also occurs here; however, other than their innervation by multiple but separate segmental nerves, the metamerism (segmentation) characteristic of the thoracic intercostal musculature is not apparent in the abdomen. ■ The fleshy portions of the flat muscles become aponeurotic anteriorly. The fibers of the aponeuroses interlace in the midline, forming the linea alba, and continue into the aponeuroses of the contralateral muscles. ■ The aponeurotic fibers of the external obliques are also continuous across the midline with those of the contralateral internal oblique muscles. ■ Three layers of flat, bilateral digastric muscles encircle the trunk, forming oblique and transverse girdles that enclose the abdominal cavity. ■ In the upper two thirds of the abdominal wall, the aponeurotic layers separate on each side of the linea alba to form longitudinal sheaths that contain the rectus muscles. This brings them into a functional relationship with the flat muscles in which the vertical muscles brace the girdles anteriorly. ■ In the lower third of the anterior abdominal wall, the aponeuroses of all three layers of flat muscles pass anterior to the rectus muscles (recti). ■ As flexors of the trunk, the recti are the antagonistic partners of the deep (extensor) muscles of the back. Balance in the development and tonus of these partners affects posture (and thus, weakness of the abdominal muscles may result in excessive lumbar lordosis—an abnormally convex curvature of the lower vertebral column). ■ The special arrangements of the anterolateral abdominal muscles enable them to provide flexible containing walls for the abdominal contents, to increase intra-abdominal pressure or decrease abdominal volume for expulsion, and to produce anterior and lateral flexion and torsional (rotatory) movements of the trunk.

Nerves: The anterolateral abdominal muscles receive multisegmental innervation via the anterior rami of lower thoracic (T7–T12) and the L1 spinal nerves. ■ The rami pass separately to the muscles as five thoraco-abdominal nerves (T7–T11), a subcostal nerve (T12), and iliohypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves (L1) that course in a plane between the second and third layers. ■ Lateral cutaneous branches supply the overlying abdominal skin lateral to the midclavicular line (MCL). ■ Anterior cutaneous branches supply skin medial to the MCL. ■ Except for L1, the maps of the abdominal dermatomes and of the peripheral nerves are thus identical. ■ Landmark dermatomes are dermatome T10, which

includes the umbilicus, and dermatome L1, which includes the inguinal fold.

Vessels: ■ The skin and subcutaneous tissue of the abdominal wall drain superiorly (ultimately to the superior vena caval system) via the internal thoracic vein medially and the lateral thoracic vein laterally and inferiorly (ultimately to the inferior vena caval system) via the superficial and inferior epigastric veins. ■ Cutaneous veins surrounding the umbilicus anastomose with small tributaries of the hepatic portal vein. ■ The distribution of the deeper abdominal blood vessels reflects the arrangement of the muscles: an oblique, circumferential pattern (similar to the intercostal vessels above) over the anterolateral abdominal wall and a vertical pattern anteriorly. ■ The circumferential vessels of the anterolateral wall are continuations of the 7th–11th posterior intercostal vessels, subcostal vessels, and deep circumflex iliac vessels. ■ Vertical vessels include an anastomosis between the superior and the inferior epigastric vessels within the rectus sheath. ■ A superficial anastomotic channel, the thoraco-epigastric vein, and the deeper medial pathway between the inferior and the superior epigastric veins afford collateral circulation during blockage of superior or inferior vena cava. ■ Superficial abdominal lymphatic vessels superior to the transumbilical plane drain primarily to the axillary lymph nodes; those inferior to the plane drain to the superficial inguinal lymph nodes. ■ Deep lymphatic vessels accompany deep veins of the abdominal wall to the iliac and right and left lumbar (caval and aortic) lymph nodes.

Internal Surface of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall

The internal (posterior) surface of the anterolateral abdominal wall is covered with transversalis fascia, a variable amount of extraperitoneal fat, and parietal peritoneum (Fig. 5.13). The infra-umbilical part of this surface exhibits five umbilical peritoneal folds passing toward the umbilicus, one in the median plane and two on each side:

- The **median umbilical fold** extends from the apex of the urinary bladder to the umbilicus and covers the median umbilical ligament, a fibrous remnant of the urachus that joined the apex of the fetal bladder to the umbilicus.
- Two **medial umbilical folds**, lateral to the median umbilical fold, cover the medial umbilical ligaments, formed by occluded parts of the umbilical arteries.
- Two **lateral umbilical folds**, lateral to the medial umbilical folds, cover the inferior epigastric vessels and therefore bleed if cut.

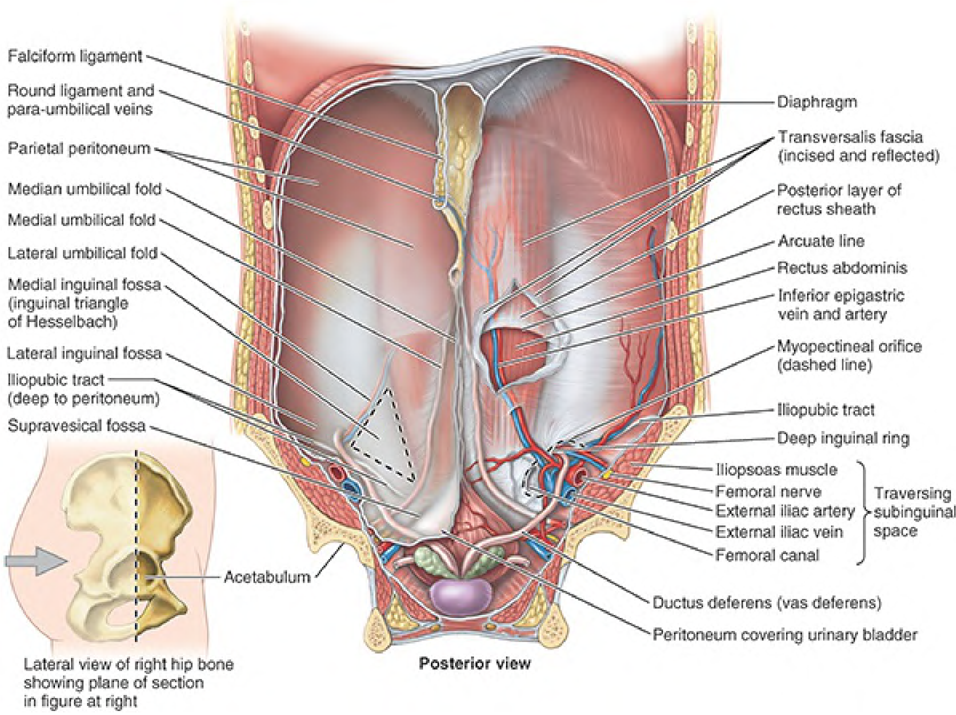


FIGURE 5.13. Posterior aspect of anterolateral abdominal wall of a male. The peritoneal ligaments, folds, and fossae are the main features of this aspect.

The depressions lateral to the umbilical folds are the peritoneal fossae, each of which is a potential site for a hernia. The location of a hernia in one of these fossae determines how the hernia is classified. The shallow fossae between the umbilical folds are as follows:

- **Supravesical fossae** between the median and the medial umbilical folds, formed as the peritoneum reflects from the anterior abdominal wall onto the bladder. The level of the supravesical fossae rises and falls with filling and emptying of the bladder.
- **Medial inguinal fossae** between the medial and the lateral umbilical folds, areas also commonly called **inguinal triangles** (Hesselbach triangles), which are potential sites for the less common direct inguinal hernias
- **Lateral inguinal fossae**, lateral to the lateral umbilical folds, include the deep inguinal rings and are potential sites for the most common type of hernia in the lower abdominal wall, the indirect inguinal hernia (see the Clinical Box “Inguinal Hernias” in this chapter).

The supra-umbilical part of the internal surface of the anterior abdominal wall has a sagittally oriented peritoneal reflection, the **falciform ligament**, that extends between the superior anterior abdominal wall and the liver. It encloses the round ligament of the liver (L. ligamentum teres hepatis) and para-umbilical veins in its inferior free edge. The round ligament is a fibrous remnant of the umbilical vein, which passed from the umbilicus to the liver prenatally (Fig. 5.13).

Inguinal Region

The **inguinal region** (groin) extends between the ASIS and pubic tubercle. It is an important area anatomically and clinically: anatomically because it is a region where structures exit and enter the abdominal cavity and clinically because the pathways of exit and entrance are potential sites of herniation.

Although the testis is located in the perineum postnatally, the male gonad originally forms in the abdomen. Its relocation out of the abdomen into the perineum through the inguinal canal accounts for many of the structural features of the region. Traditionally, the testis and scrotum are dissected and studied in relation to the anterior abdominal wall and the inguinal region. For this reason, male anatomy receives greater emphasis in this section.

INGUINAL LIGAMENT AND ILIOPUBIC TRACT

Thickened fibrous bands, or retinacula, occur in relationship to many joints that have a wide range of movement to retain structures against the skeleton during the various positions of the joint (see Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts). The inguinal ligament and iliopubic tract, extending from the ASIS to the pubic tubercle, constitute a bilaminar anterior (flexor) retinaculum of the hip joint (Figs. 5.13 and 5.14). The retinaculum spans the **subinguinal space**, through which pass the flexors of the hip and neurovascular structures serving much of the lower limb. These fibrous bands are the thickened inferolateral-most portions of the external oblique and aponeurosis and the inferior margin of the transversalis fascia. They are major landmarks of the region.

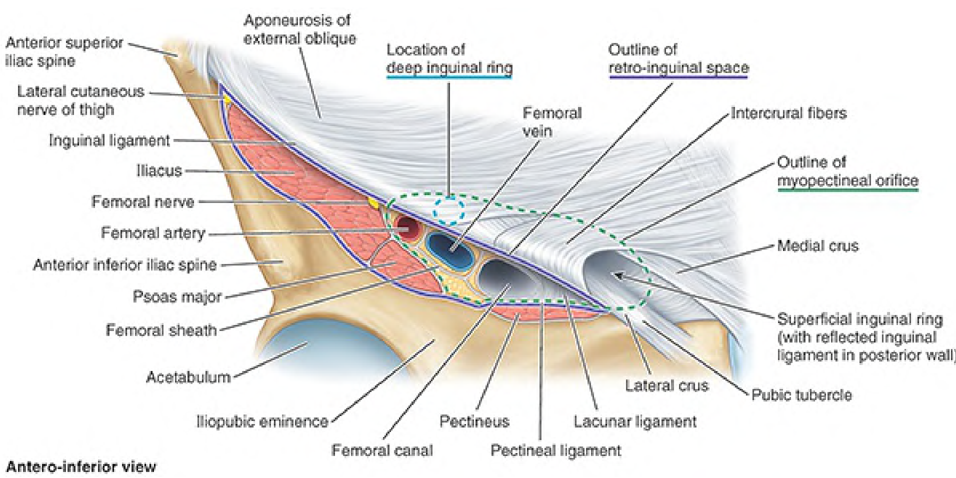


FIGURE 5.14. Formations of inguinal region. The inguinal ligament is the thickened, underturned, inferior margin of the aponeurosis of the external oblique, forming a retinaculum that bridges the sub-(retro-)inguinal space. A slit-like gap between the medial and the lateral crura of the external oblique aponeurosis, bridged by intercrural fibers, forms the superficial inguinal ring.

The **inguinal ligament** is a dense band constituting the inferiormost part of the external oblique aponeurosis. Although most fibers of the ligament's medial end insert into the pubic tubercle, some follow other courses (Fig. 5.14):

- Some of the deeper fibers pass posteriorly to attach to the superior pubic ramus lateral to the tubercle, forming the arching **lacunar ligament** (of Gimbernat), which forms the medial

boundary of the subinguinal space. The most lateral of these fibers continue to run along the pecten pubis as the **pectineal ligament** (of Cooper).

- Some of the more superior fibers fan upward, bypassing the pubic tubercle and crossing the linea alba to blend with the lower fibers of the contralateral external oblique aponeurosis. These fibers form the **reflected inguinal ligament** (Figs. 5.8, 5.14, and 5.15A).

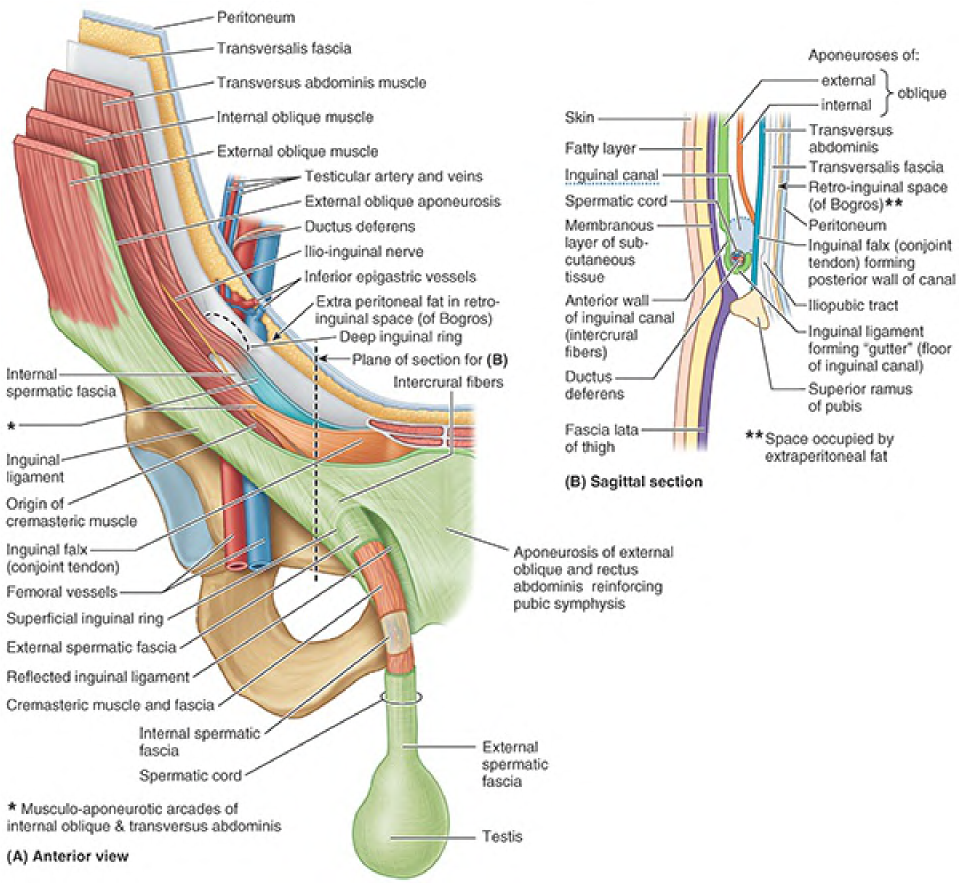


FIGURE 5.15. Inguinal canal and spermatic cord. A. Layers of abdominal wall and the coverings of spermatic cord and testis derived from each layer. **B.** Schematic. Sagittal section of anterior abdominal wall and inguinal canal. The plane of section is indicated in part **A**.

The **iliopubic tract** is the thickened inferior margin of the transversalis fascia, which appears as a fibrous band running parallel and posterior (deep) to the inguinal ligament (Figs. 5.13 and 5.15B). The iliopubic tract, seen in the place of the inguinal ligament when the inguinal region is viewed from its internal (posterior) aspect (e.g., during laparoscopy), reinforces the posterior wall and floor of the inguinal canal as it bridges the structures traversing the subinguinal space.

The inguinal ligament and iliopubic tract span and provide central strength to an area of innate weakness in the body wall in the inguinal region called the **myopectineal orifice** (Fruchaud, 1956). This weak area, occurring in relation to structures traversing the body wall, is the site of direct and indirect inguinal and femoral hernias.

INGUINAL CANAL

The **inguinal canal** is formed in relation to the relocation of the testis during fetal development. The inguinal canal in adults is an oblique passage, approximately 4 cm long, directed inferomedially through the inferior part of the anterolateral abdominal wall. It lies parallel and superior to the medial half of the inguinal ligament (see Figs. 5.14 and 5.15). The main occupant of the inguinal canal is the spermatic cord in males and the round ligament of the uterus in females. These are functionally and developmentally distinct structures that occur in the same location. The inguinal canal also contains blood and lymphatic vessels, the ilio-inguinal nerve, and the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve (n. to cremaster) (see Fig. 7.31A) in both sexes. The inguinal canal has an opening at each end:

- The **deep (internal) inguinal ring** is the entrance to the inguinal canal. It is located superior to the middle of the inguinal ligament and lateral to the inferior epigastric artery (Fig. 5.14). It is the beginning of an evagination in the transversalis fascia that forms an opening like the entrance to a cave (Figs. 5.7B, 5.13, and 5.15). Through this opening, the extraperitoneal ductus deferens (vas deferens) and testicular vessels in males (or round ligament of the uterus in females) and genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve pass to enter the inguinal canal. The transversalis fascia itself continues into the canal, forming the innermost covering (internal fascia) of the structures traversing the canal.
- The **superficial (external) inguinal ring** is the exit by which the spermatic cord in males, or the round ligament in females, and ilio-inguinal nerve emerge from the inguinal canal (Figs. 5.7A, 5.14, and 5.15). The superficial ring is a split that occurs in the diagonal, otherwise parallel, fibers of the external oblique aponeurosis just superolateral to the pubic tubercle. The parts of the aponeurosis that lie lateral and medial to, and form the margins of, the superficial ring are crura (L. leg-like parts). The **lateral crus** attaches to the pubic tubercle, and the **medial crus** attaches to the pubic crest. Fibers of the superficial layer of investing (deep) fascia overlying the external oblique muscle and aponeurosis, running perpendicular to the fibers of the aponeurosis, pass from one crus to the other across the superolateral part of the ring. These **intercrural fibers** help prevent the crura from spreading apart (i.e., they keep the "split" in the aponeurosis from expanding).

The inguinal canal is normally collapsed anteroposteriorly against the structures it conveys. Between its two openings (rings), the inguinal canal has two walls (anterior and posterior), as well as a roof and floor (Figs. 5.14 and 5.15A, B). The structures forming these boundaries are listed in Table 5.5.

TABLE 5.5. BOUNDARIES OF INGUINAL CANAL

Boundary	Lateral Third/Deep Ring	Middle Third	Medial Third/Superficial Ring
Posterior wall	Transversalis fascia	Transversalis fascia	Inguinal falx (conjoint tendon) plus reflected inguinal ligament
Anterior wall	Internal oblique plus lateral crus of aponeurosis of external oblique	Aponeurosis of external oblique (lateral crus and intercrural fibers)	Aponeurosis of external oblique (intercrural fibers), with fascia of external oblique continuing onto cord as external spermatic fascia

Roof	Transversalis fascia	Musculo-aponeurotic arches of internal oblique and transverse abdominal	Medial crus of aponeurosis of external oblique
Floor	Iliopubic tract	Inguinal ligament	Lacunar ligament

The inguinal canal has two walls (anterior and posterior), a roof, and a floor (Figs. 5.8 and 5.15A, B):

- Anterior wall: formed by the external oblique aponeurosis throughout the length of the canal; its lateral part is reinforced by muscle fibers of the internal oblique.
- Posterior wall: formed by the transversalis fascia; its medial part is reinforced by pubic attachments of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis aponeuroses that frequently merge to variable extents into a common tendon—the **inguinal falx** (conjoint tendon)—and the reflected inguinal ligament.
- Roof: formed laterally by the transversalis fascia, centrally by musculo-aponeurotic arches of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis, and medially by the medial crus of the external oblique aponeurosis
- Floor: formed laterally by the iliopubic tract, centrally by gutter formed by the infolded inguinal ligament, and medially by the lacunar ligament

As the inguinal ligament and iliopubic tract span the myopectineal orifice (Fig. 5.13), they demarcate the inferior boundaries of the inguinal canal and its openings. The inguinal triangle separates these formations from the structures of the femoral sheath (femoral vessels and femoral canal) that traverse the medial part of the subinguinal space. Most groin hernias in males pass superior to the iliopubic tract (inguinal hernias), whereas most pass inferior to it in females (femoral hernias). Because of its relative weakness, the myopectineal orifice is overlaid with prosthetic mesh placed in the extraperitoneal retro-inguinal space ("space of Bogros") in many hernia repairs.

Development of Inguinal Canal. The testes develop in the extraperitoneal connective tissue in the superior lumbar region of the posterior abdominal wall (Fig. 5.16A). The **male gubernaculum** is a fibrous tract originally connecting the primordial testis to the anterolateral abdominal wall at the site of the future deep ring of the inguinal canal. A peritoneal diverticulum, the **processus vaginalis**, traverses the developing inguinal canal, carrying muscular and fascial layers of the anterolateral abdominal wall before it as it enters the primordial scrotum. By the 12th week, the testis is in the pelvis, and by 28 weeks (7th month), it lies close to the developing deep inguinal ring (Fig. 5.16B). The testis begins to pass through the inguinal canal during the 28th week and takes approximately 3 days to traverse it. Approximately 4 weeks later, the testis enters the scrotum (Fig. 5.16C). As the testis, its duct (ductus deferens), and its vessels and nerves relocate, they are ensheathed by musculofascial extensions of the anterolateral abdominal wall, which account for the presence of their derivatives in the adult scrotum: the internal and external spermatic fasciae and cremaster muscle (Fig. 5.15). The stalk of the processus vaginalis normally degenerates; however, its distal saccular part forms the tunica vaginalis, the serous sheath of the testis and epididymis (Moore et al., 2020).

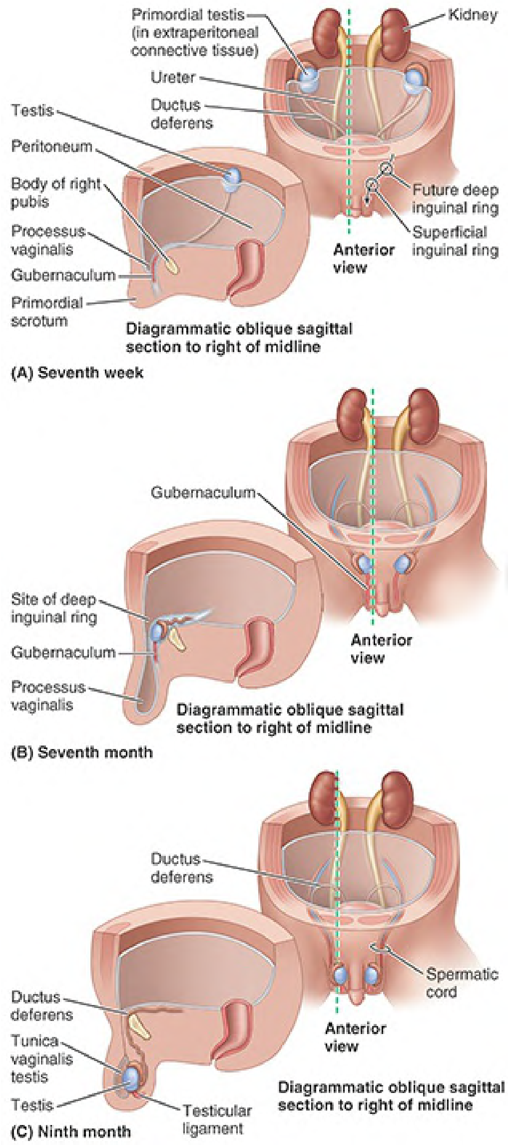


FIGURE 5.16. Formation of inguinal canals and relocation of testes. A. 7-week embryo. The testis is attached to the posterior abdominal wall. **B.** A fetus at 28 weeks (7th month). The processus vaginalis and testis pass through the inguinal canal. The testis passes posterior to the processus vaginalis, not through it. **C.** Newborn infant. Obliteration of the stalk of the processus vaginalis has occurred. The remains of the processus vaginalis have formed the tunica vaginalis of the testis. The remnant of the gubernaculum has disappeared.

The ovaries also develop in the superior lumbar region of the posterior abdominal wall and relocate to the lateral wall of the pelvis (Fig. 5.17). The processus vaginalis of the peritoneum traverses the transversalis fascia at the site of the deep inguinal ring, forming the inguinal canal as in the male, and protrudes into the developing labium majus, which is the female homologue of (part corresponding to) the scrotum.

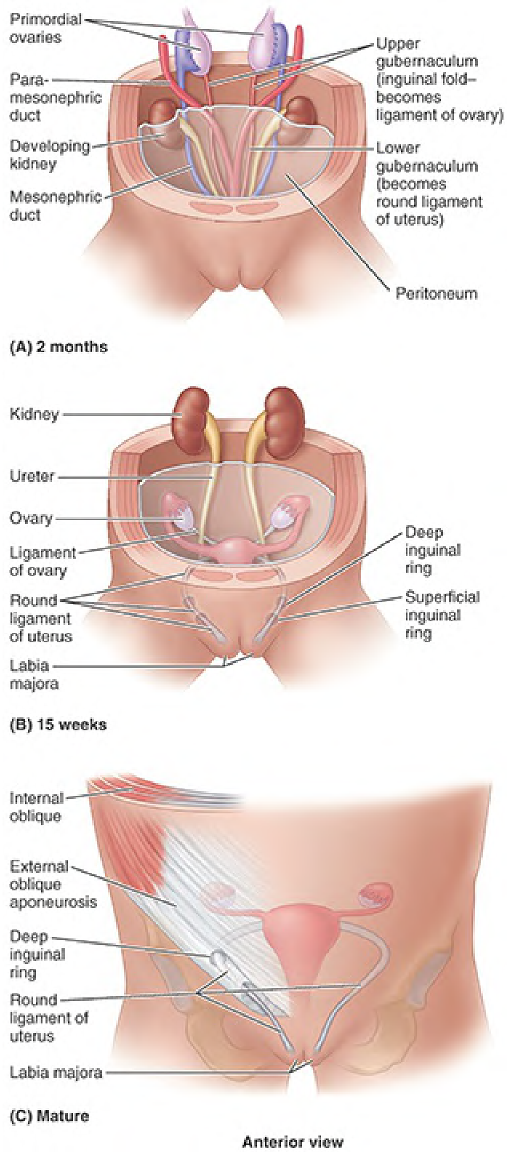


FIGURE 5.17. Formation of inguinal canals in females. A. 2 months. The undifferentiated gonads (primordial ovaries) are located on the dorsal abdominal wall. **B.** 15 weeks. The ovaries have descended into the greater pelvis. The processus vaginalis (not shown) passes through the abdominal wall, forming the inguinal canal on each side as in the male fetus. The round ligament passes through the canal and attaches to the subcutaneous tissue of the labium majus. **C.** Mature female. The processus vaginalis has degenerated, but the round ligament persists and passes through the inguinal canal.

The **female gubernaculum**, a fibrous cord connecting the ovary and primordial uterus to the developing labium majus, is represented postnatally by the **ovarian ligament**, between the ovary and uterus, and the **round ligament of the uterus** (L. ligamentum teres uteri), extending from the superolateral aspect ("horn") of the uterus through the superficial inguinal ring. Because of the attachment of the ovarian ligaments to the uterus, the ovaries do not relocate to the inguinal region; however, the round ligament passes through the inguinal canal and disperses into the subcutaneous tissue of the anterior labium majus (Fig. 5.17B, C).

Except for its most inferior part, which becomes a serous sac engulfing the testis, the tunica vaginalis, the processus vaginalis obliterates by the 6th month of fetal development. The inguinal

canals in females are narrower than those in males, and the canals in infants of both sexes are shorter and much less oblique than in adults. The superficial inguinal rings in infants lie almost directly anterior to the deep inguinal rings.

Inguinal Canal and Increased Intra-Abdominal Pressure. The deep and superficial inguinal rings in the adult do not overlap because of the oblique path of the inguinal canal. Consequently, increases in intra-abdominal pressure act on the inguinal canal, forcing the posterior wall of the canal against the anterior wall and strengthening this wall, thereby decreasing the likelihood of herniation until the pressures overcome the resistant effect of this mechanism. Simultaneously, contraction of the external oblique approximates the anterior wall of the canal to the posterior wall. It also increases tension on the medial and lateral crura, resisting enlargement (dilation) of the superficial inguinal ring. Contraction of the musculature that forms the lateral part of the arcades of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles makes the roof of the canal descend, constricting the canal (Fig. 5.18).

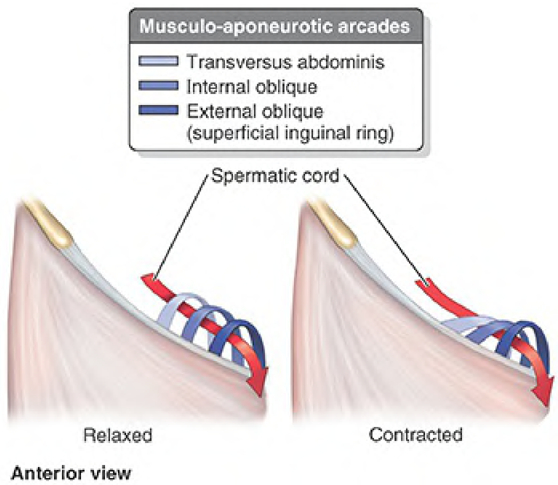


FIGURE 5.18. Arcades of inguinal canal. The inguinal canal consists of a series of three musculo-aponeurotic arcades traversed by the spermatic cord or round ligament of the uterus (arrow). The muscular contraction that increases intra-abdominal pressure also causes the roof of the canal to descend, narrowing the canal as it is simultaneously collapsed anteroposteriorly by the increased internal pressure.

Spermatic Cord, Scrotum, and Testes

SPERMATIC CORD

The spermatic cord contains structures running to and from the testis and suspends the testis in the scrotum (Fig. 5.19; Table 5.6). The spermatic cord begins at the deep inguinal ring lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels, passes through the inguinal canal, exits at the superficial inguinal ring, and ends in the scrotum at the posterior border of the testis (Fig. 5.15; Table 5.6). Fascial coverings derived from the anterolateral abdominal wall during prenatal development surround the spermatic cord. The coverings of the spermatic cord include the following:

- **Internal spermatic fascia**: derived from the transversalis fascia
- **Cremasteric fascia**: derived from the investing fascia of both the superficial and deep

surfaces of the internal oblique muscle

- **External spermatic fascia**: derived from the external oblique aponeurosis and its investing fascia

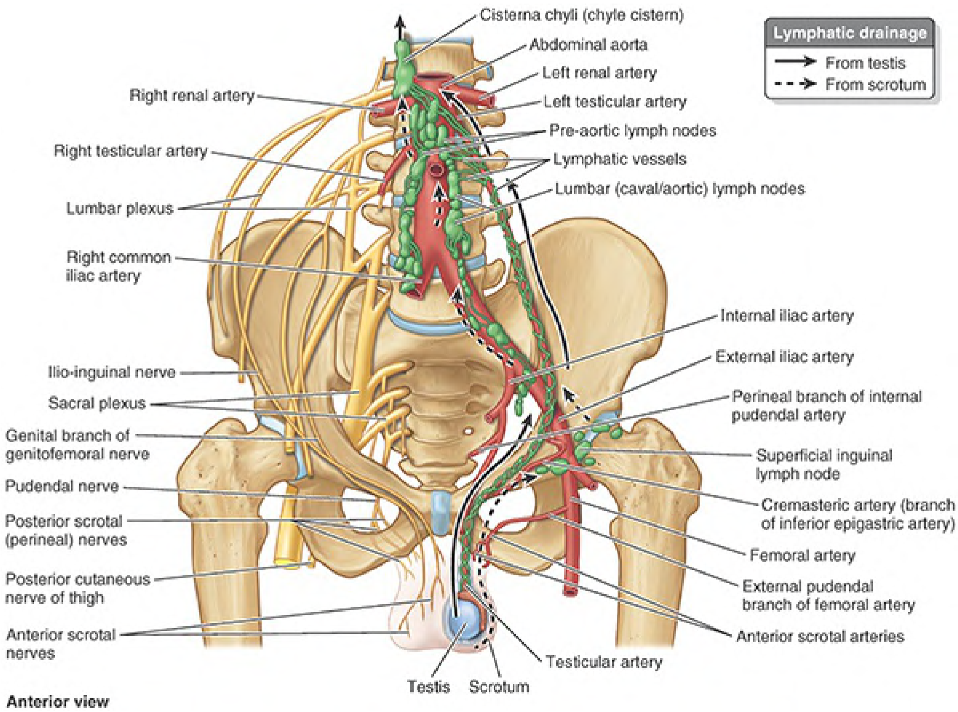
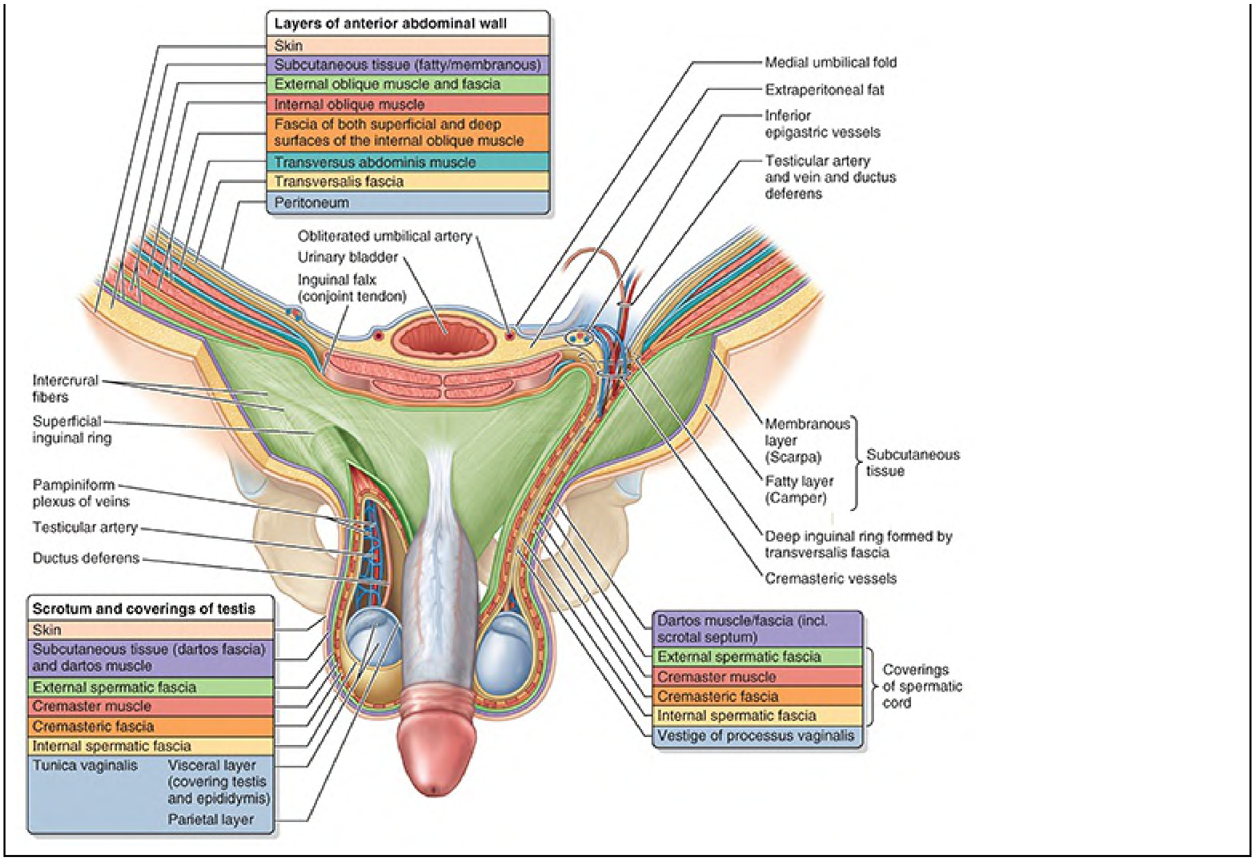


FIGURE 5.19. Arterial supply and lymphatic drainage of testis and scrotum; innervation of scrotum. Lymph draining from the testis and scrotum follows different courses. The lumbar plexus provides innervation to the anterolateral aspect of the scrotum; the sacral plexus provides innervation to the postero-inferior aspect.

TABLE 5.6. CORRESPONDING LAYERS OF ANTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL, SCROTUM, AND SPERMATIC CORD



The cremasteric fascia contains loops of **cremaster muscle**, which is formed by the lowermost fascicles of the internal oblique muscle arising from the inguinal ligament (Fig. 5.15A; see Fig. 5.8). The cremaster muscle reflexively draws the testis superiorly in the scrotum, particularly in response to cold. In a warm environment, such as a hot bath, the cremaster relaxes and the testis descends deeply in the scrotum. Both responses occur in an attempt to regulate the temperature of the testis for spermatogenesis (formation of sperms), which requires a constant temperature approximately 1° cooler than core temperature, or during sexual activity as a protective response. The cremaster typically acts coincidentally with the **dartos muscle**, smooth muscle of the fat-free subcutaneous tissue of the scrotum (dartos fascia), which inserts into the skin, assisting testicular elevation as it produces contraction of the skin of the scrotum in response to the same stimuli. The cremaster muscle is innervated by the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve (L1, L2), a derivative of the lumbar plexus (Fig. 5.19). The cremaster is striated muscle receiving somatic innervation, whereas the dartos is smooth muscle receiving autonomic innervation. Coverings corresponding to those of the spermatic cord are indistinct along the round ligament. The constituents of the spermatic cord are the following (Fig. 5.15; see Fig. 5.21; Table 5.6):

- Ductus deferens (vas deferens): a muscular tube approximately 45 cm long that conveys sperms from the epididymis to the ejaculatory duct
- Testicular artery: arising from the aorta and supplying the testis and epididymis

- Artery of ductus deferens: arising from the inferior vesical artery
- Cremasteric artery: arising from the inferior epigastric artery
- Pampiniform venous plexus: a network formed by up to 12 veins that converge superiorly as right or left testicular veins
- Sympathetic nerve fibers on arteries and the ductus deferens
- Genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve: supplying the cremaster muscle
- Lymphatic vessels: draining the testis and closely associated structures and passing to the lumbar lymph nodes
- **Vestige of processus vaginalis**: may be seen as a fibrous thread in the anterior part of the spermatic cord extending between the abdominal peritoneum and the tunica vaginalis; it may not be detectable.

Because it is not a homolog of the spermatic cord, the round ligament does not contain comparable structures. It includes only vestiges of the lower part of the ovarian gubernaculum paralleled by remnants, if any, of the obliterated processus vaginalis.

SCROTUM

The **scrotum** is a cutaneous sac consisting of two layers: heavily pigmented skin and the closely related **dartos fascia**, a fat-free fascial layer including smooth muscle fibers (dartos muscle) responsible for the rugose (wrinkled) appearance of the scrotum (see Fig. 5.9B; Table 5.6). Because the dartos muscle attaches to the skin, its contraction causes the scrotum to wrinkle when cold, thickening the integumentary layer while reducing scrotal surface area and assisting the cremaster muscles in holding the testes closer to the body, all of which reduces heat loss.

The scrotum is divided internally by a continuation of the dartos fascia, the septum of the scrotum, into right and left compartments. The septum is demarcated externally by the scrotal raphe (see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum), a cutaneous ridge marking the line of fusion of the embryonic labioscrotal swellings. The superficial dartos fascia is devoid of fat and is continuous anteriorly with the membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue of the abdomen (Scarpa fascia) and posteriorly with the membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue of the perineum (Colles fascia) (see Fig. 5.9B).

The development of the scrotum is closely related to the formation of the inguinal canals. The scrotum develops from the labioscrotal swellings, two cutaneous outpouchings of the anterior abdominal wall that fuse to form a pendulous cutaneous pouch. Late in the fetal period, the testes and spermatic cords enter the scrotum.

The arterial supply of the scrotum (Fig. 5.19) is from the

- posterior scrotal branches of the perineal artery: a branch of the internal pudendal artery
- anterior scrotal branches of the deep external pudendal artery: a branch of the femoral artery
- **cremasteric artery**: a branch of the inferior epigastric artery

Scrotal veins accompany the arteries. The lymphatic vessels of the scrotum drain into the superficial inguinal lymph nodes.

The nerves of the scrotum (Fig. 5.19) include branches of the lumbar plexus to the

anterolateral surface and branches of the sacral plexus to the posterior and inferior surfaces:

- Genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve (L1, L2): supplying the anterolateral surface
- **Anterior scrotal nerves**: branches of the ilio-inguinal nerve (L1) supplying the anterior surface
- **Posterior scrotal nerves**: branches of the perineal branch of the pudendal nerve (S2–S4) supplying the posterior surface
- Perineal branches of the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh (S2, S3): supplying the postero-inferior surface

TESTES

The **testes** (testicles) are the male gonads—paired ovoid reproductive glands that produce sperms (spermatozoa) and male hormones, primarily testosterone (Fig. 5.20). The testes are suspended in the scrotum by the spermatic cords, with the left testis usually suspended (hanging) more inferiorly than the right testis.

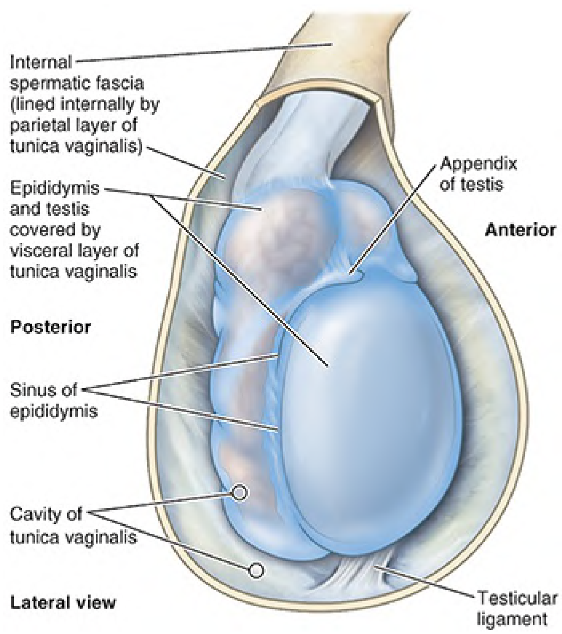


FIGURE 5.20. Tunica vaginalis (opened). The distal part of the contents of the spermatic cord, the epididymis, and most of the testis are surrounded by a collapsed sac, the tunica vaginalis. Consequently, the testis and epididymis—directly covered by the tunica's visceral layer—are mobile within the scrotum. The outer parietal layer lines the peritesticular continuation of the internal spermatic fascia.

The surface of each testis is covered by the **visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis**, except where the testis attaches to the epididymis and spermatic cord. The **tunica vaginalis** is a closed peritoneal sac partially surrounding the testis, which represents the closed-off distal part of the embryonic processus vaginalis. The visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis is closely applied to the testis, epididymis, and inferior part of the ductus deferens. The slit-like recess of the tunica vaginalis, the **sinus of the epididymis**, is between the body of the epididymis and the posterolateral surface of the testis.

The **parietal layer of the tunica vaginalis**, adjacent to the internal spermatic fascia, is more extensive than the visceral layer and extends superiorly for a short distance onto the distal part of the spermatic cord. The small amount of fluid in the cavity of the tunica vaginalis separates the visceral and parietal layers, allowing the testis to move freely in the scrotum.

The testes have a tough fibrous outer surface, the **tunica albuginea**, that thickens into a ridge on its internal, posterior aspect as the **mediastinum of the testis** (Fig. 5.21). From this internal ridge, fibrous septa extend inward between lobules of minute but long and highly coiled seminiferous tubules in which the sperms are produced. The seminiferous tubules are joined by **straight tubules** to the **rete testis** (L. rete, a net), a network of canals in the mediastinum of the testis.

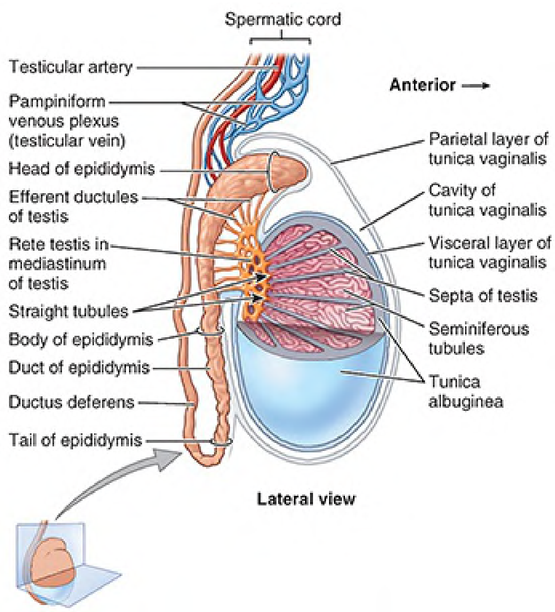


FIGURE 5.21. Structures of testis and epididymis. The coverings and a quarter section of the testis has been removed to demonstrate the contents of the distal spermatic cord, features of the epididymis, and internal structural details of the testis. The cavity of the tunica vaginalis—actually a potential space—is highly exaggerated.

The long **testicular arteries** arise from the anterolateral aspect of the abdominal aorta just inferior to the renal arteries (Fig. 5.19). They pass retroperitoneally (posterior to the peritoneum) in an oblique direction, crossing over the ureters and the inferior parts of the external iliac arteries to reach the deep inguinal rings. They enter the inguinal canals through the deep rings, pass through the canals, exit them through the superficial inguinal rings, and enter the spermatic cords to supply the testes. The testicular artery or one of its branches anastomoses with the artery of the ductus deferens.

The veins emerging from the testis and epididymis form the **pampiniform venous plexus**, a network of 8–12 veins lying anterior to the ductus deferens and surrounding the testicular artery in the spermatic cord (Fig. 5.21). The pampiniform plexus is part of the thermoregulatory system of the testis (along with the cremasteric and dartos muscles) helping to keep this gland at a constant temperature. The veins of each pampiniform plexus converge superiorly, forming a

right testicular vein, which enters the inferior vena cava (IVC), and a left testicular vein, which enters the left renal vein (see Fig. 5.76).

The lymphatic drainage of the testis follows the testicular artery and vein to the right and left lumbar (caval/aortic) and pre-aortic lymph nodes (see Fig. 5.19). The autonomic nerves of the testis arise as the testicular plexus of nerves on the testicular artery, which contains sympathetic fibers from the T10 (and sometimes T11) segment of the spinal cord, visceral afferent fibers, and perhaps vagal parasympathetic fibers. Autonomic fibers may also reach the testis via the deferential plexus.

EPIDIDYMIS

The **epididymis** is an elongated structure on the posterior surface of the testis (Fig. 5.20). **Efferent ductules** of the testis transport newly developed sperms to the epididymis from the rete testis. The epididymis is formed by minute convolutions of the **duct of the epididymis**, so tightly compacted that they appear solid (Fig. 5.21). The duct becomes progressively smaller as it passes from the head of the epididymis on the superior part of the testis to its tail. In the lengthy course of this duct, the sperms are stored and continue to mature. The epididymis consists of the following:

- **Head of the epididymis**: the superior expanded part that is composed of lobules formed by the coiled ends of 12–14 efferent ductules
- **Body of the epididymis**: major part consisting of the tightly convoluted duct of the epididymis
- **Tail of the epididymis**: tapering continuation with the ductus deferens, the duct that transports the sperms from the epididymis to the ejaculatory duct for expulsion via the urethra during ejaculation (see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum)

Surface Anatomy of Anterolateral Abdominal Wall

The **umbilicus** is an obvious feature of the anterolateral abdominal wall. It is a vestige of the site of attachment of the umbilical cord and is the reference point for the transumbilical plane (Fig. 5.22; see Table 5.1C). This puckered indentation of skin in the center of the anterior abdominal wall is typically at the level of the IV disc between the L3 and L4 vertebrae. However, its height on the wall varies considerably and is lower when abdominal subcutaneous fat is abundant. Regardless of its level, the umbilicus lies within the T10 dermatome. The epigastric fossa (pit of the stomach) is a slight depression in the epigastric region, just inferior to the xiphoid process. This fossa is particularly noticeable when a person is in the supine position because the abdominal organs spread out, drawing the anterolateral abdominal wall posteriorly in this region. The pain caused by pyrosis (“heartburn,” resulting from reflux of gastric acid into the esophagus) is often felt at this site. The 7th–10th costal cartilages unite on each side of the epigastric fossa, their medial borders forming the costal margin. Although the abdominal cavity extends higher, the costal margin is the demarcation between the thoracic and abdominal portions of the body wall. When a person is in the supine position, observe the rise and fall of the abdominal wall

with respiration: superiorly with inspiration and inferiorly with expiration. The rectus abdominis muscles can be palpated and observed when a supine person is asked to raise their head and shoulders against resistance.

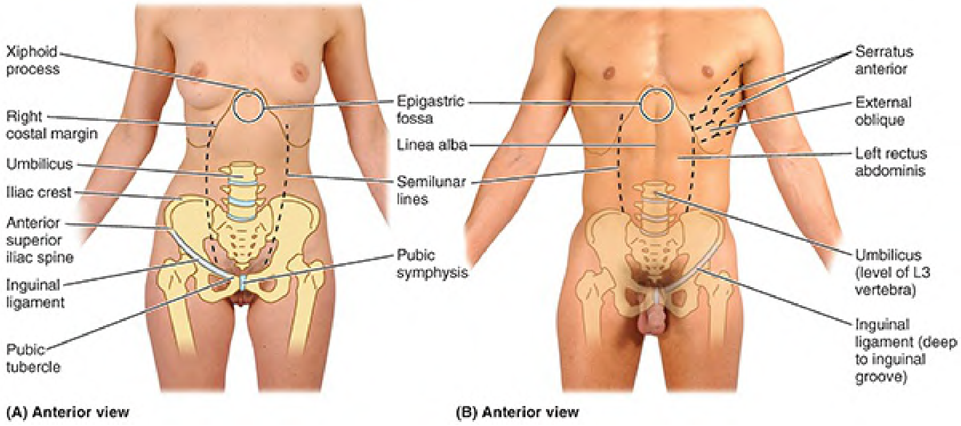


FIGURE 5.22. **Surface anatomy of anterolateral abdominal wall**. **A.** Female. **B.** Male.

The location of the linea alba is visible in lean individuals because of the vertical skin groove superficial to this raphe. The groove is usually obvious because the linea alba is approximately 1 cm wide between the two parts of the rectus abdominis superior to the umbilicus. Inferior to the umbilicus, the linea alba is not indicated by a groove. Some pregnant women, especially those with dark hair and a dark complexion, have a heavily pigmented line, the **linea nigra**, in the midline skin external to the linea alba. After pregnancy, the color of this line fades.

The upper margins of the pubic bones (pubic crest) and the cartilaginous joint that unite them (pubic symphysis) can be felt at the inferior end of the linea alba. The inguinal fold is a shallow oblique groove overlying the inguinal ligament as it extends between the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) and the pubic tubercle. The bony iliac crest at the level of L4 vertebra can be easily palpated as it extends posteriorly from the ASIS. The pubic crest, inguinal folds, and iliac crests demarcate the inferior limit of the anterior abdominal wall, distinguishing it from the perineum centrally and the lower limbs (thighs) laterally.

The **semilunar lines** (L. lineae semilunares) are slightly curved, linear impressions in the skin that extend from the inferior costal margin near the 9th costal cartilages to the pubic tubercles. These semilunar skin grooves (5–8 cm from the midline) are clinically important because they are parallel with the lateral edges of the rectus sheath.

Skin grooves also overlie the tendinous intersections of the rectus abdominis, which are clearly visible in persons with well-developed rectus muscles. The interdigitating bellies of the serratus anterior and external oblique muscles are also visible.

The site of the inguinal ligament is indicated by the **inguinal groove**, a skin crease that is parallel and just inferior to the inguinal ligament. This groove is readily visualized by having the person drop one leg to the floor while lying supine on an examining table. The inguinal groove marks the division between the anterolateral abdominal wall and the thigh.

CLINICAL BOX

INTERNAL SURFACE OF ANTEROLATERAL ABDOMINAL WALL AND INGUINAL REGION

Undescended (Cryptorchid) Testis

The testes are undescended in approximately 3% of full-term and 30% of premature infants (Moore et al., 2020). About 95% of undescended testes occur unilaterally. If a testis has not descended or is not retractable (capable of being drawn down), the condition is cryptorchidism (G. orchis, testis + L. from G. kryptos, hidden). The undescended testis usually lies somewhere along the normal path of its prenatal descent, commonly in the inguinal canal. The importance of cryptorchidism is a greatly increased risk for developing malignancy in the undescended testis, particularly problematic because it is not palpable and is not usually detected until cancer has progressed. In addition, the testis needs a cooler environment for fertility. For these reasons, cryptorchid testes are typically surgically corrected in childhood.

Postnatal Patency of Umbilical Vein

Before the birth of a fetus, the umbilical vein carries well-oxygenated, nutrient-rich blood from the placenta to the fetus. Although reference is often made to the “occluded” umbilical vein forming the round ligament of the liver, this vein is patent for some time after birth and is used for umbilical vein catheterization for exchange transfusion during early infancy—for example, in infants with erythroblastosis fetalis or hemolytic disease of the neonate (Kliegman et al., 2020).

Metastasis of Uterine Cancer to Labium Majus

Lymphogenous metastasis of cancer most commonly occurs along lymphatic pathways that parallel the venous drainage of the organ that is the site of the primary tumor. This is also true of the uterus, the veins, and lymph vessels of which mostly drain via deep routes. However, some lymphatic vessels follow the course of the round ligament through the inguinal canal. Thus, while occurring less often, metastatic uterine cancer cells (especially from tumors adjacent to the proximal attachment of the round ligament) can spread from the uterus to the labium majus (the developmental homolog of the scrotum and site of distal attachment of the round ligament) and from there to the superficial inguinal nodes, which receive lymph from the skin of the perineum (including the labia).

SPERMATIC CORD, SCROTUM, AND TESTES

Inguinal Hernias

The majority of abdominal hernias occur in the inguinal region. Inguinal hernias account for 75% of abdominal hernias. These herniations occur in both sexes, but most inguinal hernias (approximately 86%) occur in males because of the passage of the spermatic cord through the inguinal canal.

An inguinal hernia is a protrusion of parietal peritoneum and viscera, such as the small intestine, through a normal or abnormal opening from the cavity in which they belong. Most hernias are reducible, meaning they can be returned to their normal place in the peritoneal cavity by appropriate manipulation. The two types of inguinal hernia are direct and indirect inguinal hernias. More than two thirds are indirect hernias. Characteristics of direct and indirect inguinal hernias are listed and illustrated in Table B5.1, with related anatomy illustrated in Figure B5.3A–E.

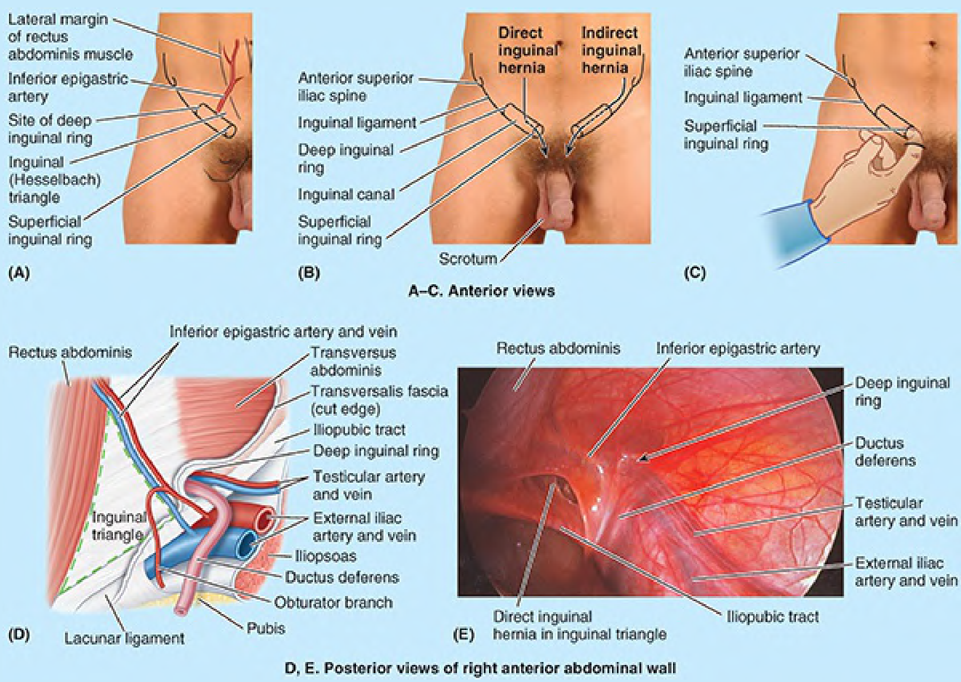
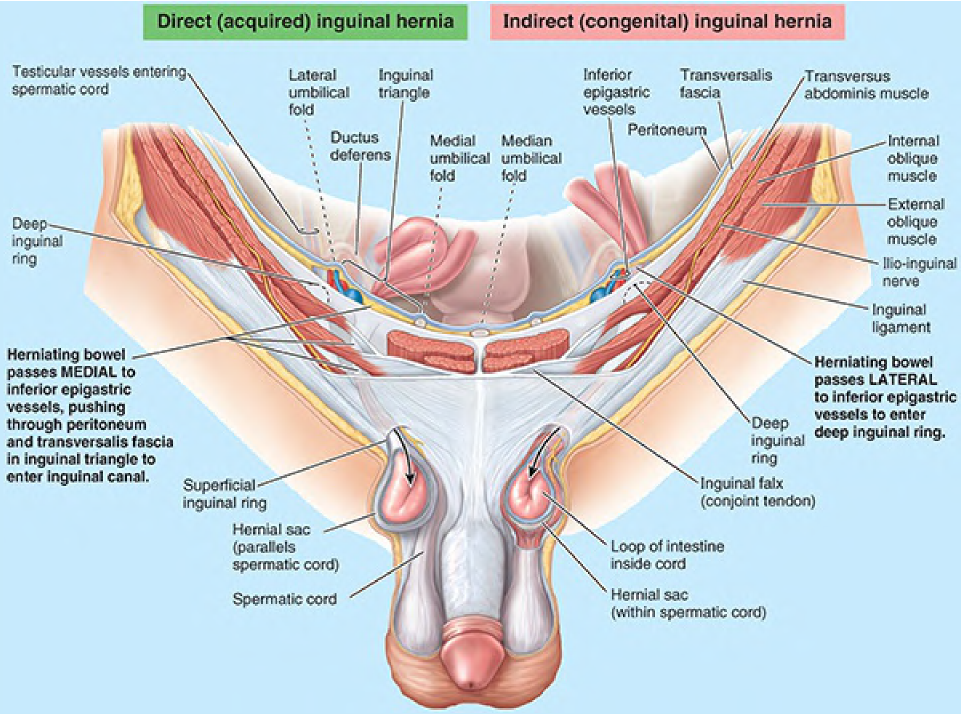


FIGURE B5.3. Inguinal canal and inguinal hernias.

TABLE B5.1 CHARACTERISTICS OF INGUINAL HERNIAS



Characteristic	**Direct (Acquired)**	**Indirect (Congenital)**
Predisposing factors	Weakness of anterior abdominal wall in inguinal triangle (e.g., owing to distended superficial ring, narrow inguinal falx, or attenuation of aponeurosis in males >40 years of age)	Patency of processus vaginalis (complete or at least superior part) in younger persons, the great majority of which are males
Frequency	Less common (one third to one quarter of inguinal hernias)	More common (two thirds to three quarters) of inguinal hernias
Exit from abdominal cavity (Fig. B5.3A, B)	Peritoneum plus transversalis fascia (lies outside inner one or two fascial coverings of cord)	Peritoneum of persistent processus vaginalis plus all three fascial coverings of cord/round ligament
Course (Fig. B5.3C)	Passes through or around inguinal canal, usually traversing only medial third of canal, external and parallel to vestige of processus vaginalis	Traverses inguinal canal (entire canal if it is of sufficient size) within processus vaginalis
Exit from anterior abdominal wall	Via superficial ring, lateral to cord; rarely enters scrotum	Via superficial ring inside cord, commonly passing into scrotum/labium majus

Arrows, passage of hernia.

Source: Based on Gest TR. Atlas of Anatomy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2020; Plates 5.12B and 5.13B, C.

Normally, most of the processus vaginalis obliterates before birth, except for the distal part that forms the tunica vaginalis of the testis (see Table 5.6 and Fig. 5.20). The peritoneal part of the hernial sac of an indirect inguinal hernia is formed by the persisting processus vaginalis. If the entire stalk of the processus vaginalis persists, the hernia extends into the scrotum superior to the testis, forming a complete indirect inguinal hernia (Table B5.1).

The superficial inguinal ring is palpable superolateral to the pubic tubercle by

invaginating the skin of the upper scrotum with the index finger (Fig. B5.3C). The examiner's finger follows the spermatic cord superolaterally to the superficial inguinal ring. If the ring is dilated, it may admit the finger without causing pain. Should a hernia be present, a sudden impulse is felt against either the tip or pad of the examining finger when the patient is asked to cough (Swartz, 2021). However, because both inguinal hernia types exit the superficial ring, palpation of an impulse at this site does not discriminate type.

With the palmar surface of the finger against the anterior abdominal wall, the deep inguinal ring may be felt as a skin depression superior to the inguinal ligament, 2–4 cm superolateral to the pubic tubercle. Detection of an impulse at the superficial ring and a mass at the site of the deep ring suggests an indirect hernia.

Palpation of a direct inguinal hernia is performed by placing the palmar surface of the index and/or middle finger over the inguinal triangle and asking the person to cough or bear down (strain). If a hernia is present, a forceful impulse is felt against the pad of the finger. The finger can also be placed in the superficial inguinal ring; if a direct hernia is present, a sudden impulse is felt medial to the finger when the person coughs or bears down.

Cremasteric Reflex

Contraction of the cremaster muscle is elicited by lightly stroking the skin on the medial aspect of the superior part of the thigh with an applicator stick or tongue depressor. The ilio-inguinal nerve supplies this area of skin. The rapid elevation of the testis on the same side is the cremasteric reflex. This reflex is extremely active in children; consequently, hyperactive cremasteric reflexes may simulate undescended testes. A hyperactive reflex can be abolished by having the child sit in a cross-legged, squatting position; if the testes are descended, they can then be palpated in the scrotum.

Cysts and Hernias of the Processus Vaginalis

Indirect inguinal hernias can occur in women; however, they are approximately 20 times more common in men. If the processus vaginalis remains patent in females, it may form a small peritoneal pouch (canal of Nuck), in the inguinal canal that may extend to the labium majus. In female infants, such remnants can enlarge and form cysts in the inguinal canal. The cysts may produce a bulge in the anterior part of the labium majus and have the potential to develop into an indirect inguinal hernia.

Hydrocele of Spermatic Cord and/or Testis

A hydrocele is the presence of excess fluid in a persistent processus vaginalis. This congenital anomaly may be associated with an indirect inguinal hernia. The fluid accumulation results from secretion of an abnormal amount of serous fluid from the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis. The size of the hydrocele depends on how much of the processus vaginalis persists.

A hydrocele of the testis is confined to the scrotum and distends the tunica vaginalis (Fig. B5.4A). A hydrocele of the spermatic cord is confined to the spermatic cord and distends the persistent part of the stalk of the processus vaginalis (Fig. B5.4B). A congenital hydrocele of the cord and testis may communicate with the peritoneal cavity.

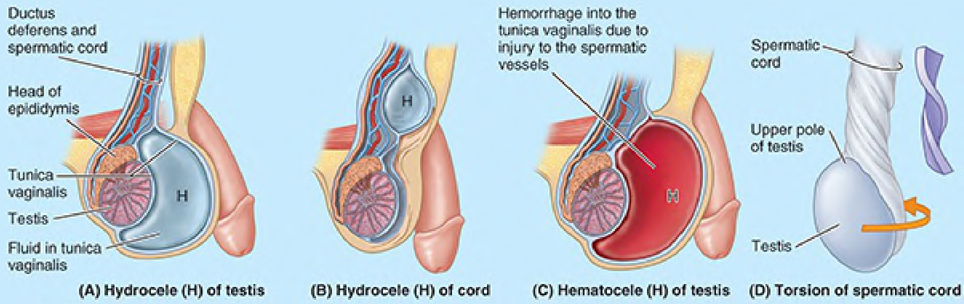


FIGURE B5.4. Hydrocele of spermatic cord and testes and testicular torsion.

Detection of a hydrocele requires transillumination, a procedure during which a bright light is applied to the side of the scrotal enlargement in a darkened room. The transmission of light as a red glow indicates excess serous fluid in the scrotum. Newborn male infants often have residual peritoneal fluid in their tunica vaginalis; however, this fluid is usually absorbed during the 1st year of life. Certain pathological conditions, such as injury and/or inflammation of the epididymis, may also produce a hydrocele in adults.

Hematocele of Testis

A hematocele of the testis is a collection of blood in the tunica vaginalis that results, for example, from rupture of branches of the testicular artery by trauma to the testis (Fig. B5.4C). Trauma may produce a scrotal and/or testicular hematoma (accumulation of blood, usually clotted, in any extravascular location). Blood does not transilluminate; therefore, transillumination can differentiate a hematocele or hematoma from a hydrocele. A hematocele of the testis may be associated with a scrotal hematocele, resulting from effusion of blood into the scrotal tissues.

Torsion of Spermatic Cord

Torsion of the spermatic cord is a surgical emergency because necrosis (pathologic death) of the testis may occur. The torsion (twisting) obstructs the venous drainage, with resultant edema and hemorrhage and subsequent arterial obstruction. The twisting usually occurs just above the upper pole of the testis (Fig. B5.4D). One clue on physical examination is that the testis seems to lie transversely, with the anchoring mesentery located superiorly instead of posteriorly (bell clapper deformity). Ultrasound can be used to confirm. To prevent recurrence or occurrence on the contralateral side, which is likely, both testes are surgically fixed to the scrotal septum.

Anesthetizing Scrotum

Since the anterolateral surface of the scrotum is supplied by the lumbar plexus (primarily L1 fibers via the ilio-inguinal nerve) and the postero-inferior aspect is supplied by the sacral plexus (primarily S3 fibers via the pudendal nerve), a spinal anesthetic agent must be injected more superiorly to anesthetize the anterolateral surface of the scrotum than is necessary to anesthetize its postero-inferior surface.

Spermatocele and Epididymal Cyst

A spermatocele is a retention cyst (collection of fluid) in the epididymis (Fig. B5.5A), usually near its head. Spermatoceles contain a milky fluid and are generally asymptomatic. An epididymal cyst is a collection of fluid anywhere in the epididymis (Fig. B5.5B).

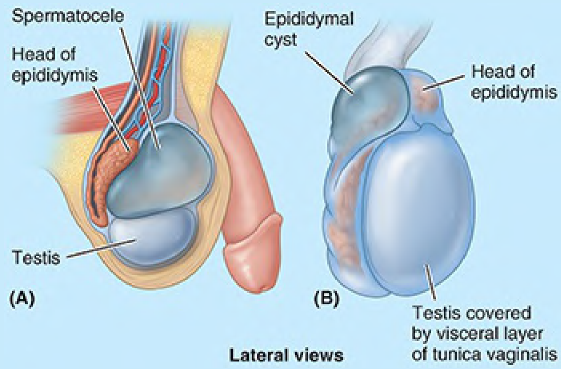


FIGURE B5.5. Cysts of epididymis. A. Spermatocele. **B.** Epididymal cyst.

Vestigial Remnants of Embryonic Genital Ducts

When the tunica vaginalis is opened, rudimentary structures may be observed at the superior aspects of the testes and epididymis (Fig. B5.6). These structures are small remnants of genital ducts in the embryo. They are rarely observed unless pathological changes occur. The appendix of the testis is a vesicular remnant of the cranial end of the paramesonephric (müllerian) duct, the embryonic genital duct that in the female forms half of the uterus. It is attached to the upper pole of the testis. The appendices of the epididymis are remnants of the cranial end of the mesonephric (wolffian) duct, the embryonic genital duct that in the male forms part of the ductus deferens. The appendices are attached to the head of the epididymis.

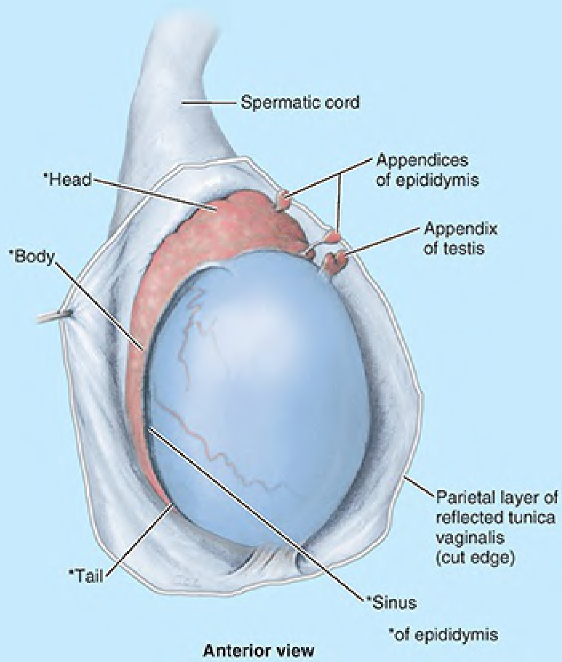


FIGURE B5.6. **Vestiges of embryonic genital ducts.**

Varicocele

The vine-like pampiniform plexus of veins may become dilated (varicose) and tortuous, producing a varicocele, which is usually visible only when the man is standing or straining. The enlargement usually disappears when the person lies down, particularly if the scrotum is elevated while supine, allowing gravity to empty the veins. Palpating a varicocele can be likened to feeling a bag of worms. Varicoceles may result from defective valves in the testicular vein, but kidney or renal vein problems can also result in distension of the pampiniform veins. Varicocele occurs predominantly on the left side, probably because the acute angle at which the right vein enters the IVC is more favorable to flow than the nearly 90° angle at which the left testicular vein enters the left renal vein, making it more susceptible to obstruction or reversal of flow.

Cancer of Testis and Scrotum

Lymphogenous metastasis is common to all testicular tumors, so a knowledge of lymphatic drainage is helpful in treatment (Kumar et al., 2020). Because the testes relocate from the posterior abdominal wall to the scrotum during fetal development, their lymphatic drainage differs from that of the scrotum, which is an outpouching of anterolateral abdominal skin (see Fig. 5.15). Consequently:

- Cancer of the testis: metastasizes initially to the retroperitoneal lumbar lymph nodes, which lie just inferior to the renal veins. Subsequent spread may be to mediastinal and supraclavicular nodes.

- Cancer of the scrotum: metastasizes to the superficial inguinal lymph nodes, which lie in the subcutaneous tissue inferior to the inguinal ligament and along the terminal part of the great saphenous vein

Testicular tumors are approached through an inguinal incision so that vessels and lymphatics can be controlled early. A classic pitfall is going in through a scrotal incision, thinking a mass is “just” a hydrocele. Careful physical examination and ultrasound help avoid this mistake.

Metastasis of testicular cancer may also occur by hematogenous spread of cancer cells (via the blood) to the lungs, liver, brain, and bone.

The Bottom Line

Internal Abdominal Wall and Inguinal Region

Internal abdominal wall: The primary features of the internal surface of the anterolateral abdominal wall are peritoneal folds overlying structures radiating from the umbilical ring and the peritoneal fossae formed in relation to the folds. ■ Of the umbilical peritoneal folds, the central three (median and medial umbilical folds) cover remnants of embryological structures, whereas the lateral umbilical folds cover the inferior epigastric vessels. ■ The peritoneal fossae formed in relation to the umbilical folds include the transitional supravesical fossae, the height of which changes with bladder filling, and the medial and lateral inguinal fossa, overlying potential weak areas in the anterior abdominal wall where direct and indirect inguinal hernias, respectively, may occur. ■ The supra-umbilical falciform ligament encloses the remnant of the embryonic umbilical vein and the accompanying para-umbilical veins (tributaries of the hepatic portal vein) in its free edge.

Inguinal region: The inguinal region extends from the ASIS to the pubic tubercle; its superficial inguinal fold demarcates the abdomen from the lower limb. It lies within the L1 dermatome. ■ Most structures and formations in the inguinal region relate to a double (bilaminar) retinaculum formed by the inguinal ligament and iliopubic tract as they extend between the two bony points. These two bands are thickenings of the inferior margins of the external oblique aponeurosis and transversalis fascia of the abdominal wall, respectively.

To allow the testis to descend prenatally to a subcutaneous location that will be cooler postnatally (a requirement for the development of sperms), the inguinal canal traverses the abdominal wall superior and parallel to the medial half of the inguinal ligament. ■ In females, only the inferior portion of the gubernaculum traverses the canal, becoming the round ligament of the uterus. ■ The inguinal canal itself consists of a deep ring internally,

a superficial ring externally, and two musculo-aponeurotic arches in between. ■ The oblique passageway through the offset rings and arches collapses when intra-abdominal pressure increases. ■ Collapse of the canal, combined with the prenatal occlusion of the peritoneal evagination (processus vaginalis) and the contraction of the arches, normally resists the tendency for abdominal contents to herniate (protrude through) the canal. ■ Failure of the processus vaginalis to occlude, or defective anatomy, or degeneration of tissues, may result in the development of inguinal hernias.

Spermatic Cord, Scrotum, and Testes

Spermatic cord: In their passage through the inguinal canal, the processus vaginalis, testis, ductus deferens, and neurovascular structures of the testis (or processus vaginalis and lower ovarian gubernaculum of the female) become engulfed by fascial extensions derived from most (three of four) of the layers traversed. This results in a trilaminar covering. ■ The transversalis fascia, internal oblique, and external oblique layers contribute the internal spermatic fascia, cremasteric muscle and fascia, and external spermatic fascia, respectively, to the spermatic cord. ■ Although the portion of the processus vaginalis within the spermatic cord occludes, that part adjacent to the testis remains patent as the tunica vaginalis testis. ■ The contents of the spermatic cord are the ductus deferens and neurovascular structures, which trailed the testis as it relocated from the posterior abdominal wall during development.

Scrotum: The scrotum is the integumentary sac formed from the labioscrotal swellings of the male to house the testes after their relocation. The fatty layer of subcutaneous tissue of the abdominal wall is replaced in the scrotum by the smooth dartos muscle, whereas the membranous layer is continued as the dartos fascia and scrotal septum. ■ The scrotum receives anterior scrotal arteries from the thigh (via the external pudendal artery), posterior scrotal arteries from the perineum (internal pudendal artery), and internally cremasteric arteries from the abdomen (inferior epigastric artery). ■ Anterior scrotal nerves are derived from the lumbar plexus (via the genitofemoral and ilio-inguinal nerves), and posterior scrotal nerves from the sacral plexus (via the pudendal nerve).

Testes: The testes are the male gonads, shaped and sized like large olives that produce sperms and male hormones. ■ Each testis is engulfed, except posteriorly and superiorly, by a double-layered serous sac, the tunica vaginalis, derived from the peritoneum. ■ The outer surface of the testis is covered with the fibrous tunica albuginea, which is thickened internally and posteriorly as the mediastinum of the testis from which septa radiate. ■ Between the septa are loops of fine seminiferous tubules in which the sperms develop. The tubules converge and empty into the rete testis in the mediastinum, which is connected in turn to the epididymis by the efferent ductules. ■ The innervation, blood vasculature, and lymphatic drainage all reflect the posterior abdominal origin of the testes and are, for the

main part, independent of the surrounding scrotal sac. ■ The epididymis is formed by the highly convoluted and compacted duct of the epididymis leading from the efferent ductules to the ductus deferens. It is the site of sperm storage and maturation. The epididymis clings to the more protected superior and posterior aspects of the testis.

PERITONEUM AND PERITONEAL CAVITY

The **peritoneum** is a continuous, glistening, and slippery transparent serous membrane. It lines the abdominopelvic cavity and invests the viscera (Fig. 5.23). The peritoneum consists of two continuous layers: the parietal peritoneum, which lines the internal surface of the abdominopelvic wall, and the visceral peritoneum, which invests viscera such as the stomach and intestines. Both layers of peritoneum consist of mesothelium, a layer of simple squamous epithelial cells.

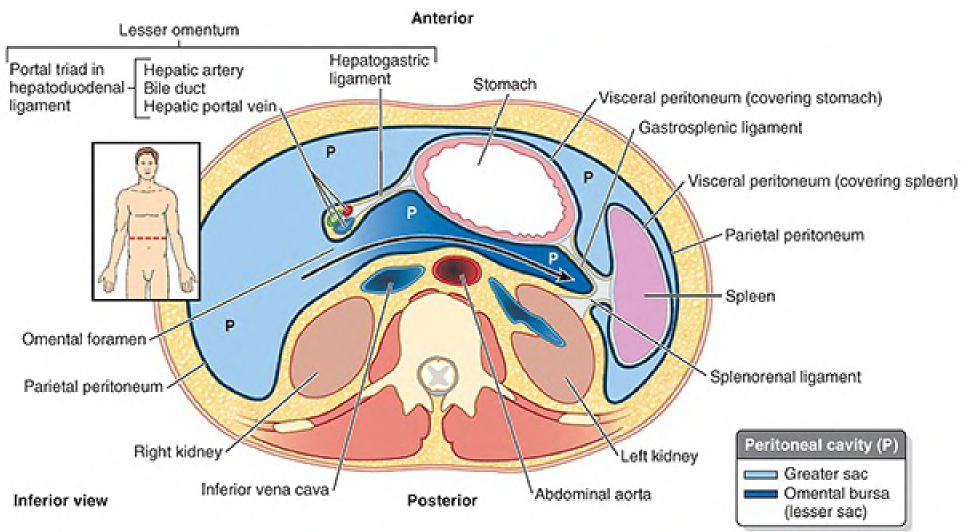


FIGURE 5.23. Transverse section of abdomen at level of omental bursa. The orientation figure (inset) indicates the level of the section. The arrow passes from the greater sac of the peritoneal cavity (P) through the omental (epiploic) foramen and across the full extent of the omental bursa (lesser sac).

The **parietal peritoneum** is served by the same blood and lymphatic vasculature and the same somatic nerve supply, as is the region of the wall it lines. Like the overlying skin, the peritoneum lining the interior of the body wall is sensitive to pressure, pain, heat and cold, and laceration. Pain from the parietal peritoneum is generally well localized, except for that on the inferior surface of the central part of the diaphragm, where innervation is provided by the phrenic nerves (discussed later in this chapter); irritation here is often referred to the C3–C5 dermatomes over the shoulder.

The visceral peritoneum and the organs it covers are served by the same blood and lymphatic vasculature and visceral nerve supply. The visceral peritoneum is insensitive to touch, heat and cold, and laceration; it is stimulated primarily by stretching and chemical irritation. The pain

produced is poorly localized, being referred to the dermatomes of the spinal ganglia providing the sensory fibers, particularly to midline portions of these dermatomes. Consequently, pain from foregut derivatives is usually experienced in the epigastric region, that from midgut derivatives in the umbilical region, and that from hindgut derivatives in the pubic region.

The peritoneum and viscera are in the abdominopelvic cavity. The relationship of the viscera to the peritoneum is as follows:

- Intraperitoneal organs are almost completely covered with visceral peritoneum (e.g., the stomach and spleen). Intraperitoneal in this case does not mean inside the peritoneal cavity (although the term is used clinically for substances injected into this cavity). Intraperitoneal organs have conceptually, if not literally, invaginated into the closed sac, like pressing your fist into an inflated balloon (see the discussion of potential spaces in the Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts).
- Extraperitoneal, retroperitoneal, and subperitoneal organs are also outside the peritoneal cavity—external to the parietal peritoneum—and are only partially covered with peritoneum (usually on just one surface). Retroperitoneal organs such as the kidneys are between the parietal peritoneum and the posterior abdominal wall and have parietal peritoneum only on their anterior surfaces (often with a variable amount of intervening fat). Similarly, the subperitoneal urinary bladder has parietal peritoneum only on its superior surface.

The **peritoneal cavity** is within the abdominal cavity and continues inferiorly into the pelvic cavity. The peritoneal cavity is a potential space of capillary thinness between the parietal and visceral layers of peritoneum. It contains no organs but contains a thin film of **peritoneal fluid**, which is composed of water, electrolytes, and other substances derived from interstitial fluid in adjacent tissues. Peritoneal fluid lubricates the peritoneal surfaces, enabling the viscera to move over each other without friction, and allowing the movements of digestion. In addition to lubricating the surfaces of the viscera, the peritoneal fluid contains leukocytes and antibodies that resist infection. Lymphatic vessels, particularly on the inferior surface of the constantly active diaphragm, absorb the peritoneal fluid. The peritoneal cavity is completely closed in males. However, there is a communication pathway in females to the exterior of the body through the uterine tubes, uterine cavity, and vagina. This communication constitutes a potential pathway of infection from the exterior.

Embryology of Peritoneal Cavity

When it is initially formed, the gut (embryonic digestive tube) is the same length as the developing body. It undergoes exuberant growth, however, to provide the large absorptive surface required by nutrition. By the end of the 10th week of development, the gut is much longer than the body that contains it. For this increase in length to occur, the gut must gain freedom of movement relative to the body wall at an early stage while still maintaining the connection with it necessary for innervation and blood supply. This growth (and later, the activity of the gut) is accommodated by the development of a serous cavity within the trunk that houses the increasingly lengthy and convoluted gut in a relatively compact space. The rate of

growth of the gut initially outpaces the development of adequate space within the trunk (body), and for a time, the rapidly lengthening gut extends outside the developing anterior body wall (see the Clinical Box "Brief Review of Embryological Rotation of Midgut" in this chapter).

Early in its development, the embryonic body cavity (intraembryonic coelom) is lined with mesoderm, the primordium of the peritoneum. At a slightly later stage, the primordial abdominal cavity is lined with parietal peritoneum derived from mesoderm, which forms a closed sac. The lumen of the peritoneal sac is the peritoneal cavity. As the organs develop, they invaginate (protrude) to varying degrees into the peritoneal sac, acquiring a peritoneal covering, the visceral peritoneum. A viscus (organ) such as the kidney protrudes only partially into the peritoneal cavity; hence, it is primarily retroperitoneal, always remaining external to the peritoneal cavity and posterior to the peritoneum lining the abdominal cavity. Other viscera, such as the stomach and spleen, protrude completely into the peritoneal sac and are almost completely invested by visceral peritoneum—that is, they are intraperitoneal.

These viscera are connected to the abdominal wall by a mesentery of variable length, which is composed of two layers of peritoneum with a thin layer of loose connective tissue between them. Generally, viscera that vary relatively little in size and shape, such as the kidneys, are retroperitoneal, whereas viscera that undergo marked changes in shape owing to filling, emptying, and peristalsis, such as the stomach, are invested with visceral peritoneum. Intraperitoneal viscera with a mesentery, such as most of the small intestine, are mobile, the degree of which varies with the length of the mesentery. Although the liver and spleen do not change shape as a result of intrinsic activity (although they may slowly change in size when engorged with blood), their need for a covering of visceral peritoneum is dictated by the need to accommodate passive changes in position imposed by the adjacent, highly active diaphragm.

As organs protrude into the peritoneal sac, their vessels, nerves, and lymphatics remain connected to their extraperitoneal (usually retroperitoneal) sources or destinations so that these connecting structures lie between the layers of the peritoneum forming their mesenteries. Initially, the entire primordial gut is suspended in the center of the peritoneal cavity by a posterior mesentery attached to the midline of the posterior body wall. As the organs grow, they gradually reduce the size of the peritoneal cavity until it is only a potential space between the parietal and visceral layers of peritoneum. As a consequence, several parts of the gut come to lie against the posterior abdominal wall, and their posterior mesenteries become gradually reduced because of pressure from overlying organs (Fig. 5.24). For example, during development, the growing coiled mass of small intestine pushes the part of the gut that will become the descending colon to the left side and presses its mesentery against the posterior abdominal wall. The mesentery is held there until the layer of peritoneum that formed the left side of the mesentery and the part of the visceral peritoneum of the colon lying against the body wall fuse with the parietal peritoneum of the body wall. As a result, the colon becomes fixed to the posterior abdominal wall on the left side with peritoneum covering only its anterior aspect. The descending colon (as well as the ascending colon on the right side) has thus become secondarily retroperitoneal, having once been intraperitoneal (Moore et al., 2020).

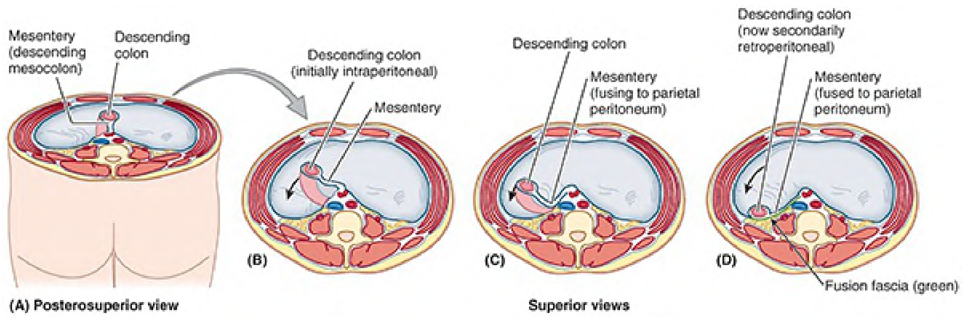


FIGURE 5.24. Migration and fusion of descending mesocolon. Starting from the primordial position, suspended from the midline of the posterior abdominal wall (**A**), the mesocolon shifts to the left (**B**) and gradually fuses with the left posterior parietal peritoneum (**C**). **D.** The descending colon has become secondarily retroperitoneal. The arrow indicates the left paracolic gutter, the site where an incision is made during mobilization of the colon during surgery. Sometimes, the descending colon retains a short mesentery, similar to the stage shown in part **C**, especially where the colon is in the iliac fossa.

The layers of peritoneum are now fused by means of a **fusion fascia** (of Toldt), a connective tissue plane between the retroperitoneum and the former descending mesocolon in which the nerves, vessels, and lymph nodes of the descending colon continue to lie. Thus, the descending colon of the adult can be freed from the posterior body wall (surgically mobilized) by incising the peritoneum along the lateral border of the descending colon and then bluntly dissecting along the plane of the fusion fascia, elevating the neurovascular structures from the posterior body wall until the midline is reached. The ascending colon can be similarly mobilized on the right side.

Several parts of the gastrointestinal tract and associated organs become secondarily retroperitoneal (e.g., most of the duodenum and pancreas as well as the ascending and descending parts of the colon). They are covered with glistening peritoneum only on their anterior surface. Other parts of the viscera (e.g., the sigmoid colon and spleen) retain a relatively short mesentery. However, the roots of the short mesenteries do not arise from the midline but shift to the left or right by a fusion process like that described for the descending colon.

Peritoneal Formations

The peritoneal cavity has a complex shape. Some of the facts relating to this include the following:

- The peritoneal cavity houses a great length of gut, most of which is covered with peritoneum.
- Extensive continuities are required between the parietal and visceral peritoneum to convey the necessary neurovascular structures from the body wall to the viscera.
- Although the volume of the abdominal cavity is a fraction of the body's volume, the parietal and visceral peritoneum lining the peritoneal cavity within it have a much greater surface area than the body's outer surface (skin); therefore, the peritoneum is highly convoluted.

Various terms are used to describe the parts of the peritoneum that connect organs with other organs, or to the abdominal wall, and the compartments and recesses that are formed as a consequence.

A **mesentery** is a double layer of peritoneum that occurs as a result of the invagination of the

peritoneum by an organ and constitutes a continuity of the visceral and parietal peritoneum. It provides a means for neurovascular communications between the organ and the body wall (Fig. 5.25A, B, E). A mesentery connects an intraperitoneal organ to the body wall—usually the posterior abdominal wall (e.g., mesentery of the small intestine).

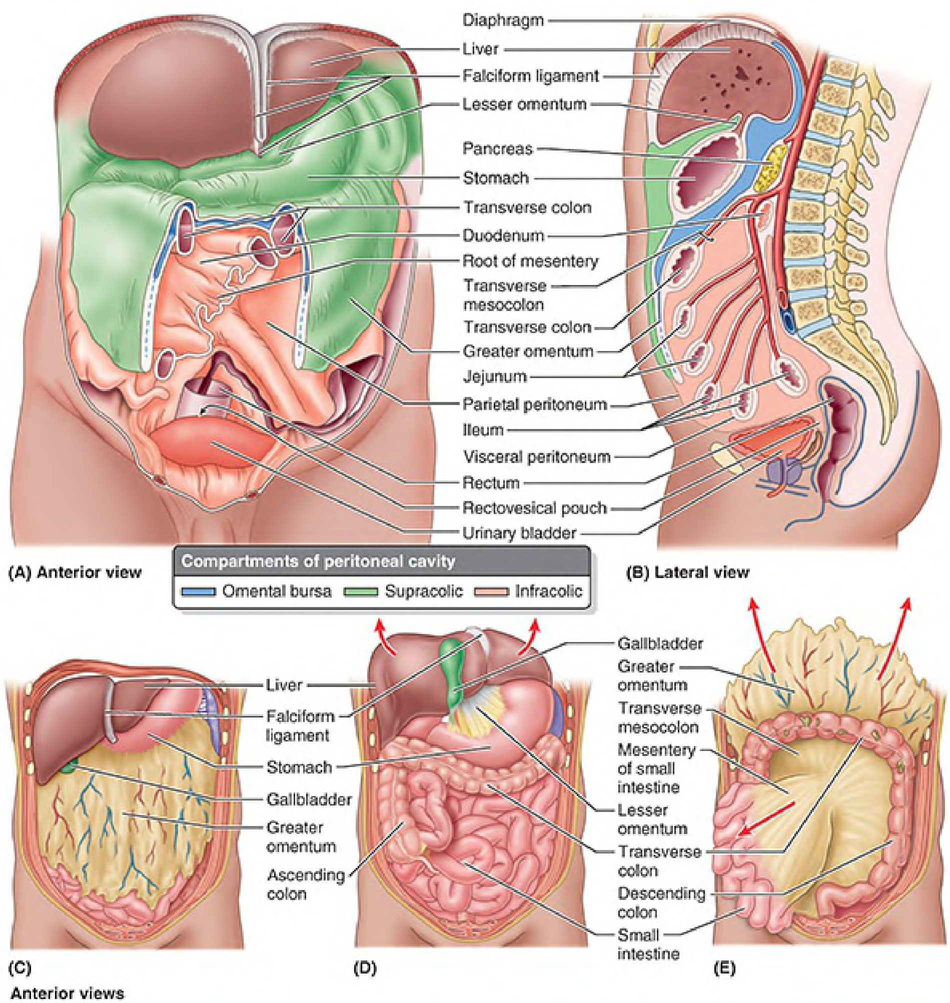


FIGURE 5.25. Principal formations of peritoneum. A. Compartments of peritoneal cavity. In this opened peritoneal cavity, parts of the greater omentum, transverse colon, and the small intestine and its mesentery have been cut away to reveal deep structures and the layers of the mesenteric structures. The mesentery of the jejunum and ileum (small intestine) and sigmoid mesocolon have been cut close to their parietal attachments. **B.** Median section of abdominopelvic cavity of a male showing relationships of peritoneal attachments. **C.** Greater omentum. The greater omentum is shown in its "normal" position, covering most of the abdominal viscera. **D.** Lesser omentum. The lesser omentum attaches the liver to the lesser curvature of the stomach. The liver and gallbladder are reflected superiorly. The greater omentum has been removed from the greater curvature of the stomach and transverse colon to reveal the intestines. **E.** Mesentry of small intestine. The greater omentum has been reflected superiorly, and the small intestine has been retracted to the right side to reveal the mesentery of the small intestine and the transverse mesocolon.

The **small intestine mesentery** is usually referred to simply as "the mesentery"; however, mesenteries related to other specific parts of the alimentary tract are named accordingly—for example, the transverse and sigmoid mesocolons (Fig. 5.25B), mesoesophagus, mesogastrium, and meso-appendix. Mesenteries have a core of connective tissue containing blood and

lymphatic vessels, nerves, lymph nodes, and fat (see Fig. 5.48A).

An **omentum** is a double-layered extension or fold of peritoneum that passes from the stomach and proximal part of the duodenum to adjacent organs in the abdominal cavity (Fig. 5.25).

- The **greater omentum** is a prominent, four-layered peritoneal fold that hangs down like an apron from the greater curvature of the stomach and the proximal part of the duodenum (Fig. 5.25A–C, E). After descending, it folds back and attaches to the anterior surface of the transverse colon and its mesentery.
- The **lesser omentum** is a much smaller, double-layered peritoneal fold that connects the lesser curvature of the stomach and the proximal part of the duodenum to the liver (Figs. 5.25B, D and 5.26). It also connects the stomach to a triad of structures that run between the duodenum and liver in the free edge of the lesser omentum (Figs. 5.23 and 5.26).

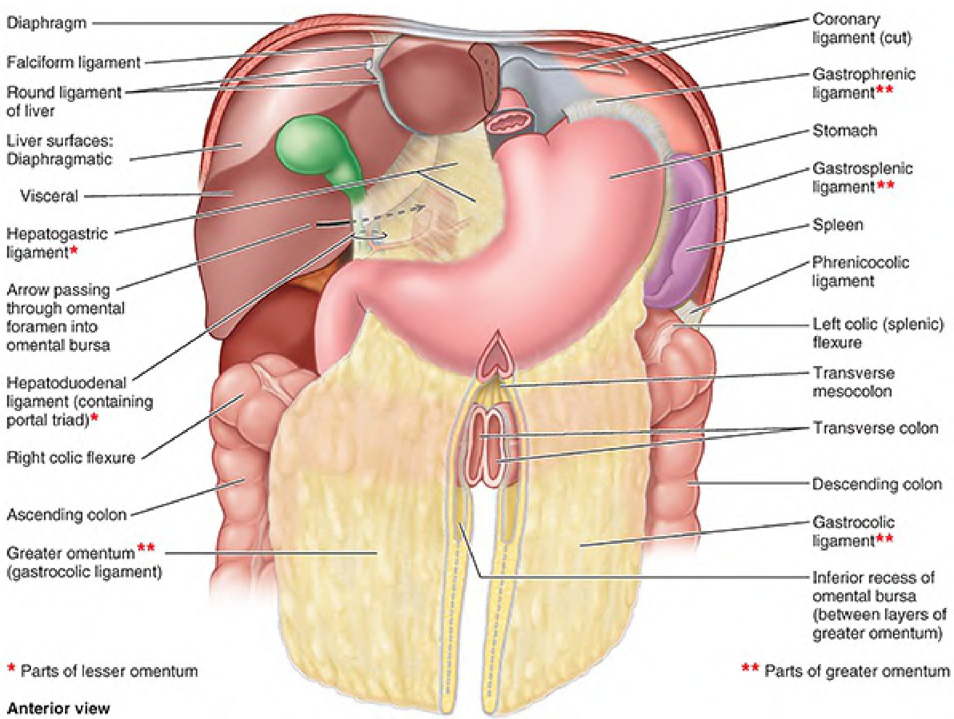


FIGURE 5.26. Parts of greater and lesser omenta. The liver and gallbladder have been reflected superiorly. The central part of the greater omentum has been cut out to show its relation to the transverse colon and mesocolon. The term greater omentum is often used as a synonym for the gastrocolic ligament, but it actually also includes the gastrosplenic and gastrophrenic ligaments, all of which have a continuous attachment to the greater curvature of the stomach. The hepatoduodenal ligament (free edge of lesser omentum) conveys the portal triad: hepatic artery, bile duct, and portal vein.

A **peritoneal ligament** consists of a double layer of peritoneum that connects an organ with another organ or to the abdominal wall.

The liver is connected to the

- anterior abdominal wall by the falciform ligament (Fig. 5.26; see Fig. 5.13)
- stomach by the **hepatogastric ligament**, the membranous portion of the lesser omentum
- duodenum by the **hepatoduodenal ligament**, the thickened free edge of the lesser omentum,

which conducts the portal triad: portal vein, hepatic artery, and bile duct (Figs. 5.23 and 5.26)

The hepatogastric and hepatoduodenal ligaments are continuous parts of the lesser omentum and are separated only for descriptive convenience.

The stomach is connected to the

- inferior surface of the diaphragm by the **gastrophrenic ligament**
- spleen by the **gastrosplenic ligament**, which reflects to the hilum of the spleen
- transverse colon by the **gastrocolic ligament**, the apron-like part of the greater omentum, which descends from the greater curvature, turns under, and then ascends to the transverse colon

All these structures have a continuous attachment along the greater curvature of the stomach and are all part of the greater omentum, separated only for descriptive purposes.

Although intraperitoneal organs may be almost entirely covered with visceral peritoneum, every organ must have an area that is not covered to allow the entrance or exit of neurovascular structures. Such areas are called **bare areas**, formed in relation to the attachments of the peritoneal formations to the organs, including mesenteries, omenta, and ligaments that convey the neurovascular structures.

A **peritoneal fold** is a reflection of peritoneum that is raised from the body wall by underlying blood vessels, ducts, and ligaments formed by obliterated fetal vessels (e.g., the umbilical folds on the internal surface of the anterolateral abdominal wall; see Fig. 5.13). Some peritoneal folds contain blood vessels and bleed if cut, such as the lateral umbilical folds, which contain the inferior epigastric arteries.

A **peritoneal recess**, or **peritoneal fossa**, is a pouch of peritoneum that is formed by a peritoneal fold (e.g., the inferior recess of the omental bursa between the layers of the greater omentum, and the supravesical and umbilical fossae between the umbilical folds; see Fig. 5.13).

Subdivisions of Peritoneal Cavity

After the rotation and development of the greater curvature of the stomach during development (see the Clinical Box “Brief Review of Embryological Rotation of Midgut” in this chapter), the peritoneal cavity is divided into the greater and lesser peritoneal sacs (Fig. 5.27A). The greater sac is the main and larger part of the peritoneal cavity. A surgical incision through the anterolateral abdominal wall enters the greater sac. The omental bursa (lesser sac) lies posterior to the stomach and lesser omentum.

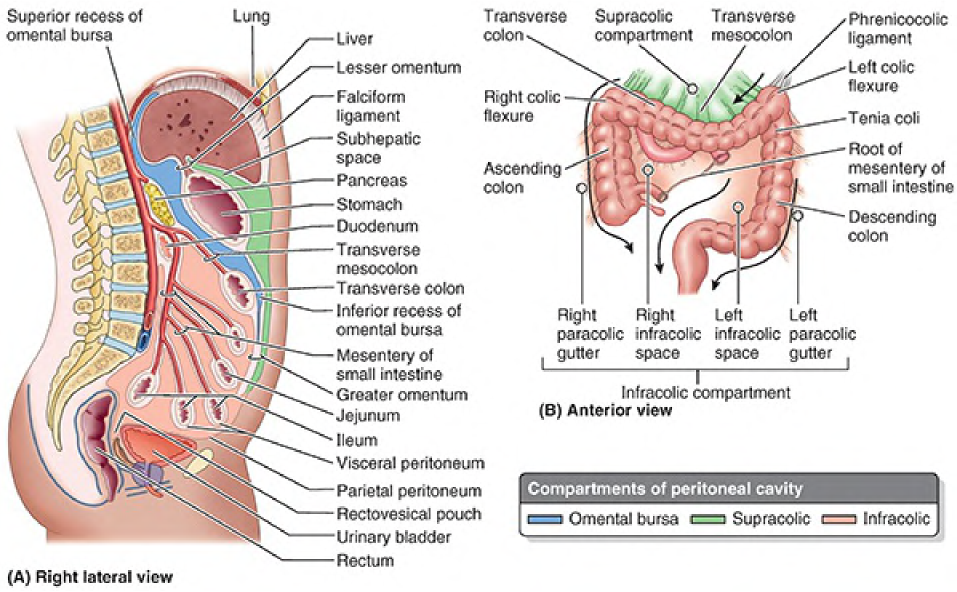


FIGURE 5.27. Subdivisions of peritoneal cavity. A. Median section of abdominopelvic cavity showing subdivisions of peritoneal cavity. **B.** Supracolic and infracolic compartments of greater sac. The greater omentum has been removed. The infracolic spaces and paracolic gutters determine the flow of ascitic fluid (arrows) when inclined or upright.

The **transverse mesocolon** (mesentery of the transverse colon) divides the abdominal cavity into a **supracolic compartment**, containing the stomach, liver, and spleen, and an **infracolic compartment**, containing the small intestine and ascending and descending colon. The infracolic compartment lies posterior to the greater omentum and is divided into **right** and **left infracolic spaces** by the mesentery of the small intestine (Fig. 5.27B). Free communication occurs between the supracolic and the infracolic compartments through the **paracolic gutters**, the grooves between the lateral aspect of the ascending or descending colon and the posterolateral abdominal wall. Flow is freest on the right side.

The **omental bursa** is an extensive sac-like cavity that lies posterior to the stomach, lesser omentum, and adjacent structures (Figs. 5.23, 5.27A, and 5.28). The omental bursa has a superior recess, limited superiorly by the diaphragm and the posterior layers of the coronary ligament of the liver, and an inferior recess between the superior parts of the layers of the greater omentum (Figs. 5.26 and 5.28A).

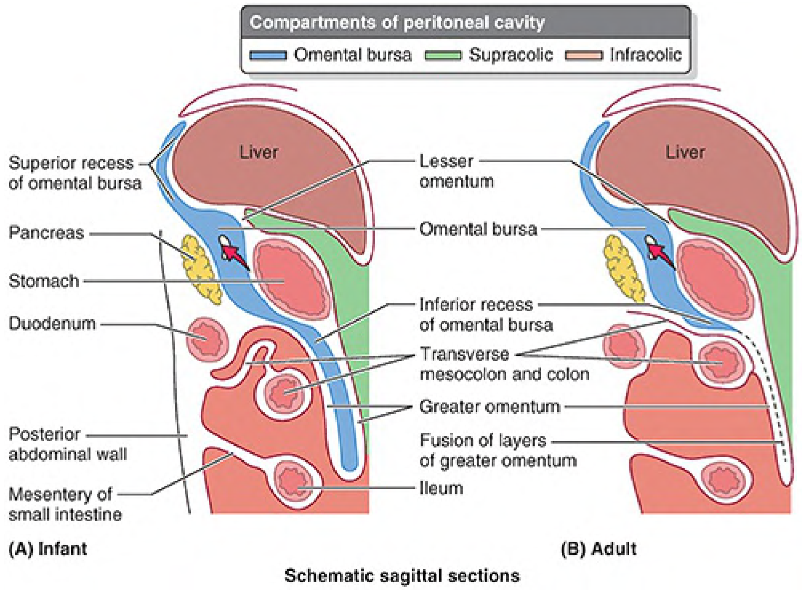


FIGURE 5.28. Walls and recesses of omental bursa. A. Infant. The omental bursa is an isolated part of the peritoneal cavity, lying dorsal to the stomach and extending superiorly to the liver and diaphragm (superior recess) and inferiorly between the layers of the greater omentum (inferior recess). **B.** Adult. The abdomen after fusion of the layers of the greater omentum. The inferior recess now extends inferiorly only as far as the transverse colon. The red arrows pass from the greater sac through the omental foramen into the omental bursa.

The omental bursa permits free movement of the stomach on the structures posterior and inferior to it because the anterior and posterior walls of the omental bursa slide smoothly over each other. Most of the inferior recess of the bursa becomes sealed off from the main part posterior to the stomach after adhesion of the anterior and posterior layers of the greater omentum (Fig. 5.28B).

The omental bursa communicates with the greater sac through the **omental foramen** (epiploic foramen), an opening situated posterior to the free edge of the lesser omentum (hepatoduodenal ligament). The omental foramen can be located by running a finger along the gallbladder to the free edge of the lesser omentum (Fig. 5.29). The omental foramen usually admits two fingers. The boundaries of the omental foramen are as follows:

- Anteriorly: the hepatoduodenal ligament (free edge of lesser omentum), containing the hepatic portal vein, hepatic artery, and bile duct (Figs. 5.23 and 5.26)
- Posteriorly: the IVC and a muscular band, the right crus of the diaphragm, covered anteriorly with parietal peritoneum (They are retroperitoneal.)
- Superiorly: the liver, covered with visceral peritoneum (Figs. 5.28 and 5.29)
- Inferiorly: the superior or first part of the duodenum

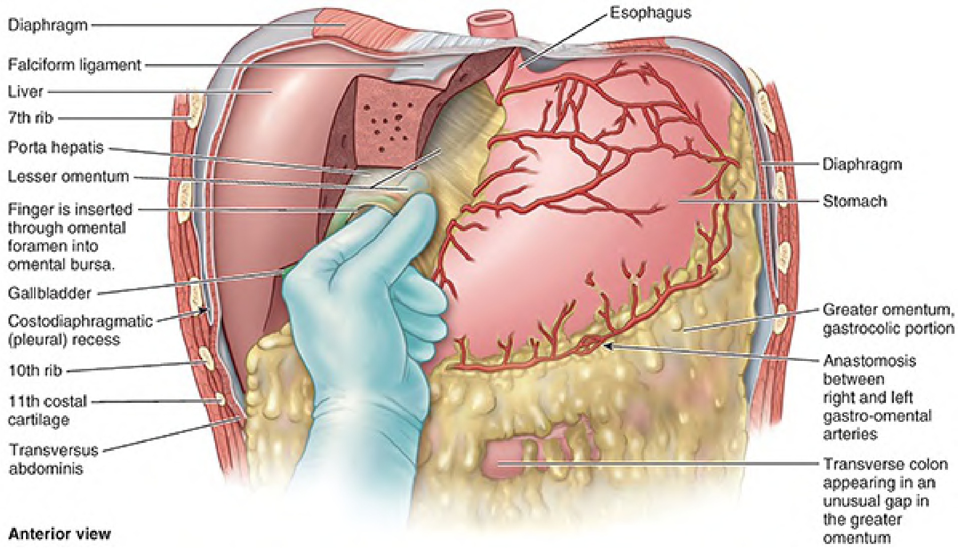


FIGURE 5.29. Omental (epiploic) foramen and omental bursa. The index finger is passing from the greater sac through the omental foramen into the omental bursa (lesser sac). The hepatoduodenal ligament is being pinched between thumb and index finger, which would compress the structures of the portal triad (portal vein, hepatic artery, and bile duct).

CLINICAL BOX

PERITONEUM AND PERITONEAL CAVITY

Patency and Blockage of Uterine Tubes

While theoretically it is possible for organisms to enter the female peritoneal cavity directly via the uterine tubes, such primary peritonitis is rare, bearing testimony to the effectiveness of the protective mechanisms of the female reproductive tract. A primary mechanism in preventing such infection is a mucous plug that effectively blocks the external os (opening) of the uterus to most pathogens but not to sperm cells. The patency of the uterine tubes can be tested clinically by means of a technique in which air or radiopaque dye is injected into the uterine cavity, from which it normally flows through the uterine tubes into the peritoneal cavity (hysterosalpingography; see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum, for more details).

Peritoneum and Surgical Procedures

Because the peritoneum is well innervated, patients undergoing abdominal surgery experience more pain with large, invasive, open incisions of the peritoneum (laparotomy) than they do with small laparoscopic incisions or vaginal operations.

It is the covering of visceral peritoneum (often referred to clinically as the serosa) that makes watertight end-to-end anastomoses of intraperitoneal organs, such as the small

intestine, relatively easy to achieve. Surgeons refer to this as reperitonealization. It is more difficult to achieve watertight anastomoses of extraperitoneal structures that have an outer adventitial layer, such as the thoracic esophagus.

Because of the high incidence of complications such as peritonitis and adhesions (see the Clinical Box "Peritoneal Adhesions and Adhesiotomy") after operations in which the peritoneal cavity is opened, efforts are made to remain outside the peritoneal cavity whenever possible (e.g., translumbar or extraperitoneal anterior approach to the kidneys). When opening the peritoneal cavity is necessary, great effort is made to avoid contamination of the cavity.

Peritonitis and Ascites

When bacterial contamination occurs during laparotomy, or when the gut is traumatically penetrated or ruptured as the result of infection and inflammation (e.g., appendicitis), allowing gas, fecal matter, and bacteria to enter the peritoneal cavity, the result is infection and inflammation of the peritoneum—peritonitis. Exudation of serum, fibrin, cells, and pus into the peritoneal cavity occurs, accompanied by pain in the overlying skin and an increase in the tone of the anterolateral abdominal muscles. Given the extent of the peritoneal surfaces and the rapid absorption of material, including bacterial toxins, from the peritoneal cavity, when a peritonitis becomes generalized (widespread in the peritoneal cavity), the condition is dangerous and perhaps lethal. In addition to the severe abdominal pain, tenderness, nausea and/or vomiting, fever, and constipation are present.

General peritonitis also occurs when an ulcer perforates the wall of the stomach or duodenum, spilling its acidic contents into the peritoneal cavity. Excess fluid in the peritoneal cavity is called ascitic fluid. The clinical condition in which one has ascitic fluid is referred to as ascites. Ascites may also occur as a result of mechanical injury (which may also produce internal bleeding) or other pathological conditions, such as portal hypertension (venous congestion), widespread metastasis of cancer cells to the abdominal viscera, and starvation (when plasma proteins fail to be produced, altering concentration gradients and producing a paradoxically protuberant abdomen). In all these cases, the peritoneal cavity may be distended with several liters of abnormal fluid, interfering with movements of the viscera.

Rhythmic movements of the anterolateral abdominal wall normally accompany respirations. If the abdomen is drawn in as the chest expands (paradoxical abdominothoracic rhythm) and muscle rigidity is present, either peritonitis or pneumonitis (inflammation of the lungs) may be present. Because the intense pain worsens with movement, people with peritonitis commonly lie with their knees flexed to relax their anterolateral abdominal muscles. They also breathe shallowly (and hence more rapidly), reducing the intra-abdominal pressure and pain. The suction effect of the diaphragm during respiration draws fluid (e.g., from a perforated viscus) into the subphrenic spaces. Hence, subphrenic abscess is a frequent complication of peritonitis.

Peritoneal Adhesions and Adhesiotomy

If the peritoneum is damaged, by a stab wound, for example, or infected, the peritoneal surfaces become inflamed, making them sticky with fibrin. As healing occurs, the fibrin may be replaced with fibrous tissue, forming abnormal attachments between the visceral peritoneum of adjacent viscera, or between the visceral peritoneum of an organ and the parietal peritoneum of the adjacent abdominal wall. Adhesions (scar tissue) may also form after an abdominal operation (e.g., owing to a ruptured appendix) and limit the normal movements of the viscera. This tethering may cause chronic pain or emergency complications such as intestinal obstruction when the intestine becomes twisted around an adhesion (volvulus).

Adhesiolysis refers to the surgical separation of adhesions. Adhesions are often found during dissection of cadavers (see, e.g., the adhesion binding the spleen to the diaphragm in Fig. 5.39B).

Abdominal Paracentesis

Most cases of peritonitis are secondary, having a surgical cause. Ascites can also result from cirrhosis of the liver or in association with malignancy. In rare cases, individuals with chronic ascites from a condition such as cirrhosis will develop primary peritonitis in which the ascites becomes infected without a surgical cause.

Treatment of generalized peritonitis includes removal of the ascitic fluid, for relief when large amounts are present, and diagnosis (e.g., culture). In the presence of infection, large doses of antibiotics are administered. Occasionally, more localized accumulations of fluid may have to be removed for analysis. Surgical puncture of the peritoneal cavity for the aspiration or drainage of fluid is called paracentesis. After injection of a local anesthetic agent, a needle or trocar and a cannula are inserted through the anterolateral abdominal wall into the peritoneal cavity through the linea alba, for example. The needle is inserted superior to the empty urinary bladder in a location that avoids the inferior epigastric artery.

Peritoneal Dialysis

The peritoneum is a semipermeable membrane with an extensive surface area, much of which (subdiaphragmatic portions in particular) overlies blood and lymphatic capillary beds. Therefore, fluid injected into the peritoneal cavity is absorbed rapidly.

In renal failure, waste products such as urea accumulate in the blood and tissues and ultimately reach fatal levels. Peritoneal dialysis may be performed in which soluble substances and excess water are removed from the system by transfer across the peritoneum, using a dilute sterile solution that is introduced into the peritoneal cavity on one side and then drained from the other side. Diffusible solutes and water are transferred between the blood and the peritoneal cavity as a result of concentration gradients between

the two fluid compartments. Peritoneal dialysis is usually employed only temporarily, however. For the long term, it is preferable to use direct blood flow through a renal dialysis machine.

Functions of Greater Omentum

The greater omentum, large and fat laden, prevents the visceral peritoneum from adhering to the parietal peritoneum. It has considerable mobility and moves around the peritoneal cavity with peristaltic movements of the viscera. It is called the "policeman of the abdomen" because it goes to the site of trouble. It often forms adhesions adjacent to an inflamed organ, such as the appendix, sometimes walling it off and thereby protecting other viscera from it. Thus, it is common when entering the abdominal cavity, in either dissection or surgery, to find the omentum markedly displaced from the "normal" position in which it is almost always depicted in anatomical illustrations. The greater omentum also cushions the abdominal organs against injury and forms insulation against loss of body heat.

Abscess Formation

Perforation of a duodenal ulcer, rupture of the gallbladder, or perforation of the appendix may lead to the formation of an abscess (circumscribed collection of purulent exudate, i.e., pus) in the subhepatic or subphrenic recess. The abscess may be walled inferiorly by adhesions of the greater omentum (see the Clinical Box "Subphrenic Abscesses" in this chapter).

Spread of Pathological Fluids

Peritoneal recesses are of clinical importance in connection with the spread of pathological fluids such as pus, a product of inflammation. The recesses determine the extent and direction of the spread of fluids that may enter the peritoneal cavity when an organ is diseased or injured.

Flow of Ascitic Fluid and Pus

The paracolic gutters are of clinical importance because they provide pathways for the flow of ascitic fluid and the spread of intraperitoneal infections (Fig. 5.27B).

Purulent material (consisting of or containing pus) in the abdomen can be transported along the paracolic gutters into the pelvis, especially when the person is upright. Thus, to facilitate the flow of exudate into the pelvic cavity where absorption of toxins is it is relatively easy to drain, patients with peritonitis are often placed in the sitting position (at least a 45° angle). Conversely, infections in the pelvis may extend superiorly to a subphrenic recess situated under the diaphragm (see the Clinical Box "Subphrenic

Abscesses" in this chapter), especially when the person is supine. Similarly, the paracolic gutters provide pathways for the spread of cancer cells that have sloughed from the ulcerated surface of a tumor and entered the peritoneal cavity.

Fluid in Omental Bursa

Perforation of the posterior wall of the stomach results in the passage of its fluid contents into the omental bursa. An inflamed or injured pancreas can also result in the passage of pancreatic fluid into the bursa, forming a pancreatic pseudocyst.

Internal Hernia Through Omental Foramen

Although uncommon, a loop of small intestine may pass through the omental foramen into the omental bursa and be strangulated by the edges of the foramen. As none of the boundaries of the foramen can be incised because each contains blood vessels, the swollen intestine must be decompressed using a needle so it can be returned to the greater sac of the peritoneal cavity through the omental foramen.

Temporary Control of Hemorrhage from Cystic Artery

The cystic artery must be ligated or clamped and then severed during cholecystectomy, removal of the gallbladder. Sometimes, however, the artery is accidentally severed before it has been adequately ligated. The surgeon can control the hemorrhage by compressing the hepatic artery as it traverses the hepatoduodenal ligament. The index finger is placed in the omental foramen and the thumb on its anterior wall (Fig. 5.29). Alternate compression and release of pressure on the hepatic artery allows the surgeon to identify the bleeding artery and clamp it. This is also done sometimes to provide temporary control during cases of severe trauma to the liver or associated structures ("Pringle maneuver").

The Bottom Line: Peritoneum, Peritoneal Cavity, and Peritoneal Formations

Peritoneum and peritoneal cavity: The peritoneum is a continuous, serous membrane that lines the abdominopelvic cavity (the parietal peritoneum) and the contained viscera (the visceral peritoneum). ■ The collapsed peritoneal cavity between the parietal and visceral peritoneum normally contains only enough peritoneal fluid (about 50 mL) to lubricate the inner surface of the peritoneum. This arrangement allows the gut the freedom of movement required for alimentation (digestion). ■ Adhesions formed as a result of

infection or injury interfere with these movements. ■ The parietal peritoneum is a sensitive, semipermeable membrane, with blood and lymphatic capillary beds especially abundant deep to its subdiaphragmatic surface.

Peritoneal formations and subdivisions of peritoneal cavity: Continuities and connections between the visceral and parietal peritoneum occur where the gut enters and exits the abdominopelvic cavity. ■ Parts of the peritoneum also occur as double folds (mesenteries and omenta and subdivisions called ligaments) that convey neurovascular structures and the ducts of accessory organs to and from the viscera. ■ Peritoneal ligaments are named for the particular structures connected by them. ■ As a result of the rotation and exuberant growth of the intestine during development, the disposition of the peritoneal cavity becomes complex. The main part of the peritoneal cavity (greater sac) is divided by the transverse mesocolon into supracolic and infracolic compartments. ■ A smaller part of the peritoneal cavity, the omental bursa (lesser sac) lies posterior to the stomach, separating it from retroperitoneal viscera on the posterior wall. It communicates with the greater sac via the omental foramen. ■ The complex disposition of the peritoneal cavity determines the flow and pooling of excess (ascitic) fluid occupying the peritoneal cavity during pathological conditions.

ABDOMINAL VISCERA

Overview of Abdominal Viscera and Digestive Tract

The viscera of the abdomen constitute the majority of the alimentary system: the terminal part of the esophagus and the stomach, intestines, spleen, pancreas, liver, gallbladder, kidneys, and suprarenal glands (Figs. 5.30 and 5.31). When the abdominal cavity is opened to study these organs, it becomes evident that the liver, stomach, and spleen almost fill the domes of the diaphragm. Because they bulge into the thoracic cage, they receive protection from the lower thoracic cage. It is also evident that the falciform ligament normally attaches along a continuous line to the anterior abdominal wall as far inferiorly as the umbilicus. It divides the liver superficially into right and left lobes. The fat-laden greater omentum, when in its typical position, conceals almost all of the intestine. The gallbladder projects inferior to the sharp border of the liver (Fig. 5.31A).

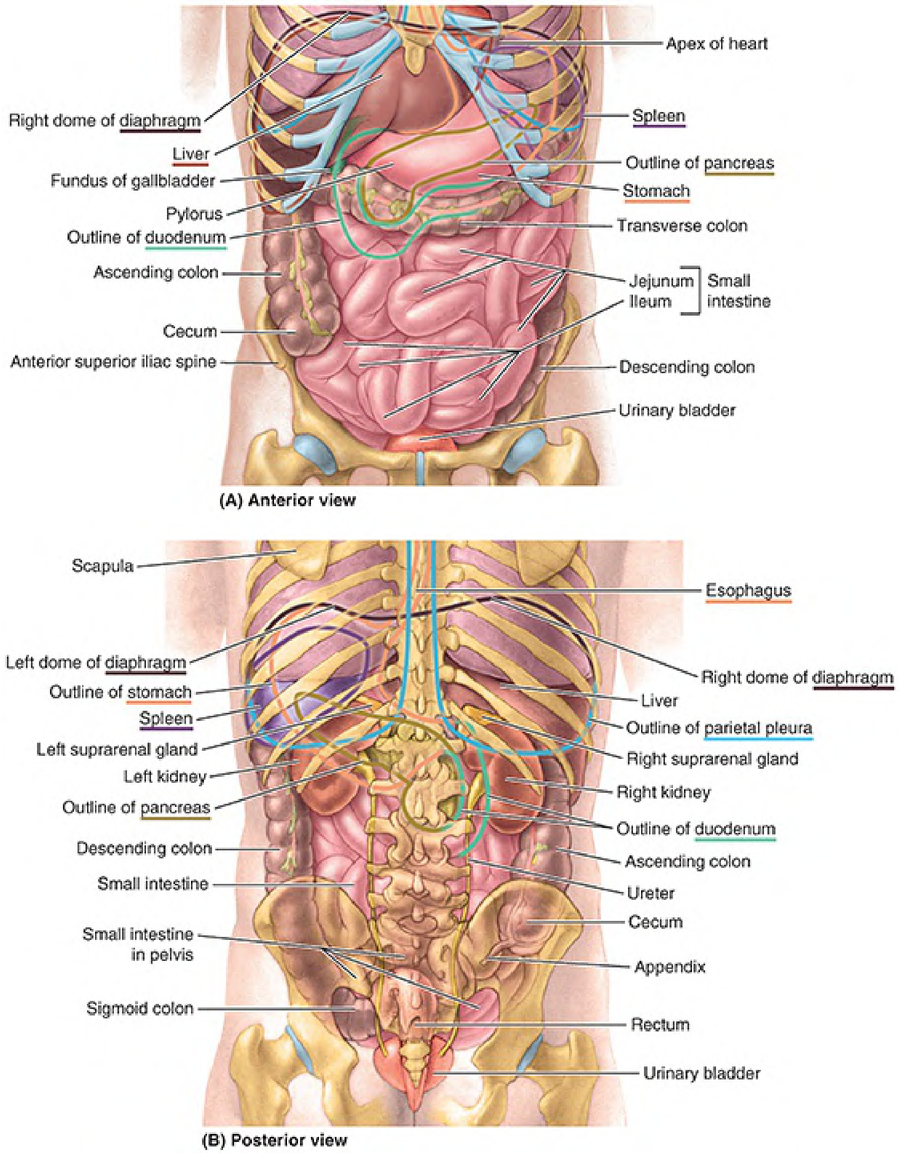


FIGURE 5.30. Overview of thoracic and abdominal viscera. A and B. Some abdominal organs extend superiorly into the thoracic cage and are protected by it. Partially protected by the lowest ribs, the right kidney is lower than the left kidney, owing to the mass of the liver on the right side. A large part of the small intestine is in the pelvis.

Food passes from the mouth and pharynx through the esophagus to the stomach, where it mixes with gastric secretions (Fig. 5.31B). Digestion mostly occurs in the stomach and duodenum. **Peristalsis**, a series of ring-like contraction waves, begins around the middle of the stomach and moves slowly toward the pylorus. It is responsible for mixing the masticated (chewed) food mass with gastric juices and for emptying the contents of the stomach into the duodenum.

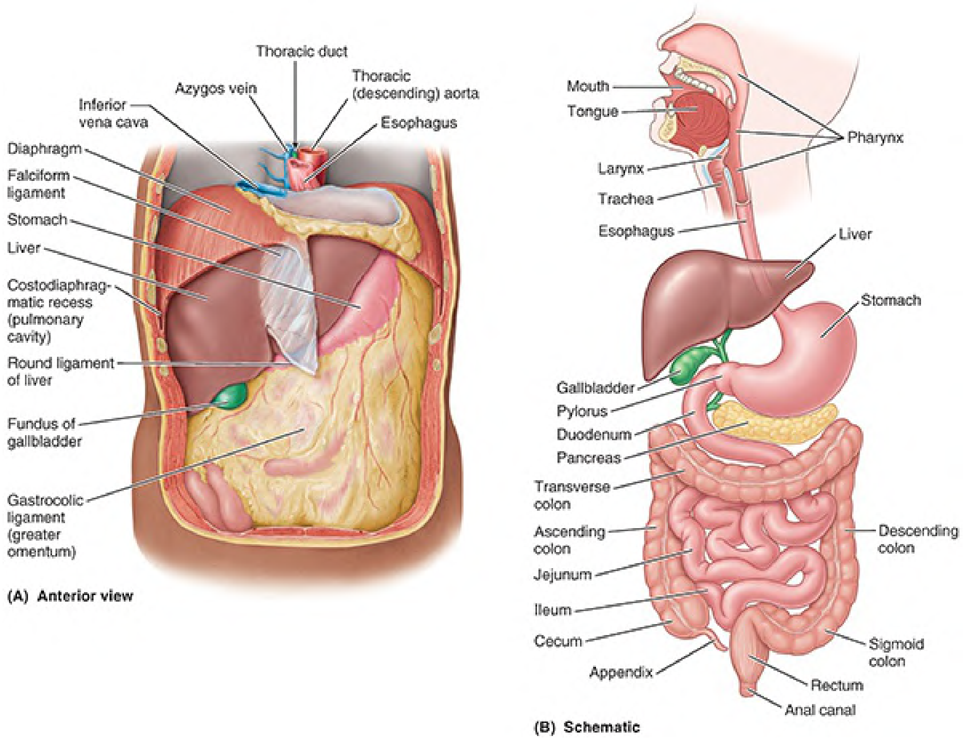


FIGURE 5.31. Abdominal contents in situ and in relation to alimentary system. A. Overview. The undisturbed abdominal contents are shown. The anterior abdominal and thoracic walls are cut away. The falciform ligament is severed at its attachment to the anterior abdominal wall. **B.** Alimentary system.

Absorption of chemical compounds occurs principally in the small intestine, a coiled 5- to 6-m-long tube (shorter in life, when tonus is present, than in the cadaver) consisting of the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. Peristalsis also occurs in the jejunum and ileum; however, it is not forceful unless an obstruction is present. The stomach is continuous with the duodenum, which receives the openings of the ducts from the pancreas and liver, the major glands of the alimentary system.

The large intestine consists of the cecum (which receives the terminal part of the ileum), appendix, colon (ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid), rectum, and anal canal. Most reabsorption of water occurs in the ascending colon. Feces form in the descending and sigmoid colon and accumulate in the rectum before defecation. The esophagus, stomach, and small and large intestines constitute the **gastrointestinal tract** and are derived from the primordial foregut, midgut, and hindgut.

The arterial supply to the abdominal part of the alimentary system is from the abdominal aorta. The three major branches of the aorta supplying it are the celiac trunk and the superior and inferior mesenteric arteries (Fig. 5.32A).

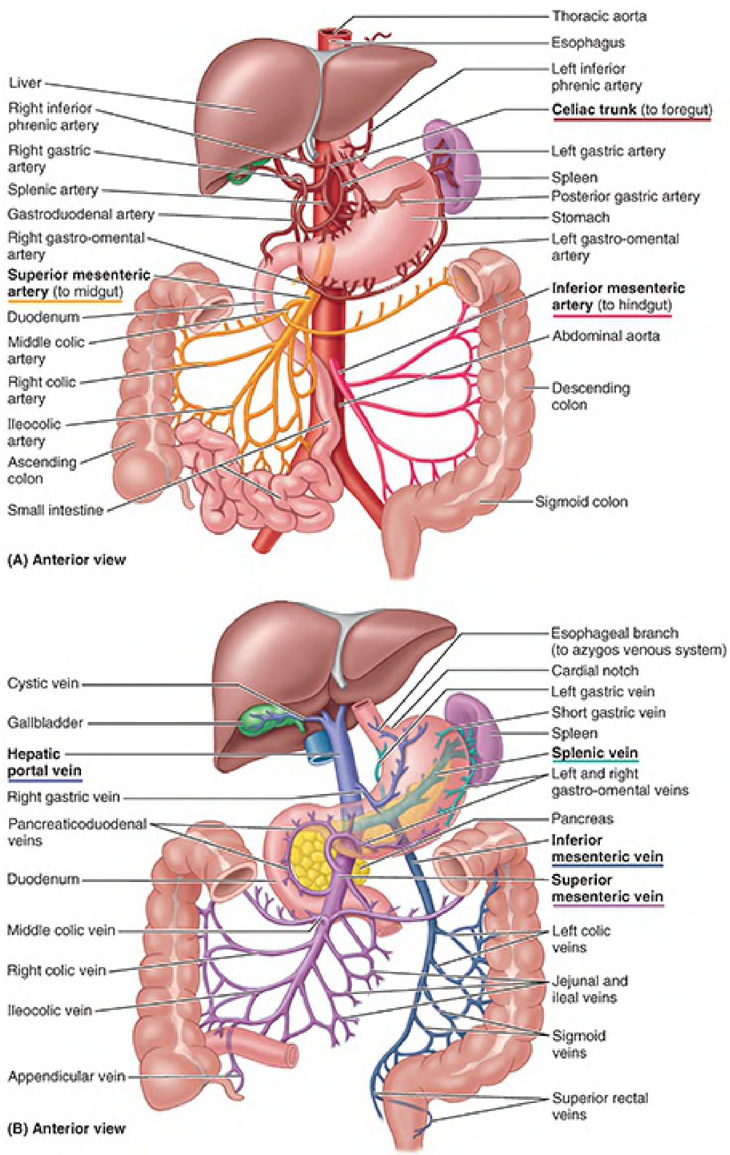


FIGURE 5.32. Arterial supply and venous drainage of abdominal parts of alimentary system. A. Arterial supply. The three unpaired branches of the abdominal aorta supply, in succession, the derivatives of the foregut, midgut, and hindgut. **B.** Venous drainage. The nutrient-rich blood from the gastrointestinal tract and that from the spleen, pancreas, and gallbladder all drain to the liver via the portal vein.

The hepatic portal vein is formed by the union of the superior mesenteric and splenic veins (Fig. 5.32B). It is the main channel of the portal venous system, which collects blood from the abdominal part of the alimentary tract, pancreas, spleen, and most of the gallbladder and carries it to the liver.

Esophagus

The **esophagus** is a muscular tube (approximately 25 cm [10 inches] long) with an average diameter of 2 cm that conveys food from the pharynx to the stomach (Fig. 5.33A). As seen during fluoroscopy (X-ray, using a fluoroscope) after a barium swallow (Fig. 5.34), the

esophagus normally has three constrictions where adjacent structures produce impressions:

- **Cervical constriction** (**upper esophageal sphincter**): at its beginning at the **pharyngo-esophageal junction**, approximately 15 cm from the incisor teeth; formed by the cricopharyngeus muscle (see Chapter 8, Head)
- **Thoracic (broncho-aortic) constriction**: a compound constriction where it is first crossed by the arch of the aorta, 22.5 cm from the incisor teeth, and then where it is crossed by the left main bronchus, 27.5 cm from the incisor teeth; the former is seen in anteroposterior views, the latter in lateral views.
- **Diaphragmatic constriction**: where it passes through the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm, approximately 40 cm from the incisor teeth (Fig. 5.33A)

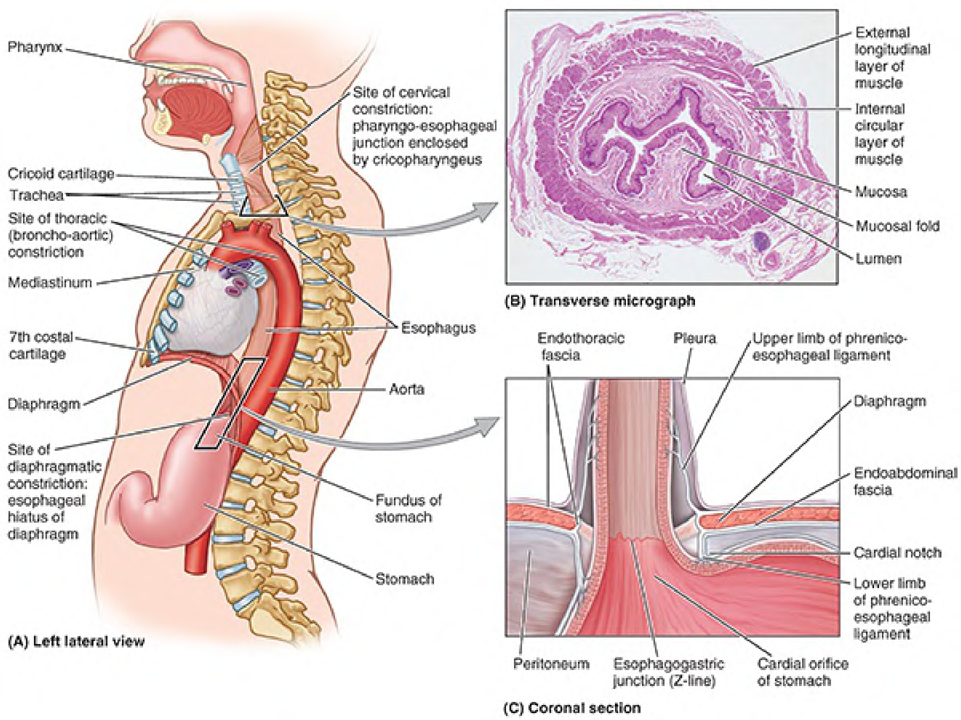


FIGURE 5.33. **Relationships of esophagus. A.** Overview. The esophagus begins at the level of the cricoid cartilage and descends posterior to the trachea. It leaves the thorax through the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm. **B.** Transverse micrograph of esophagus, hematoxylin and eosin staining. Note the double muscular and plicated mucosal layers of its wall. **C.** Esophagogastric junction and phrenico-esophageal ligament. The phrenico-esophageal ligament connects the esophagus flexibly to the diaphragm; it limits upward movement of the esophagus while permitting some movement during swallowing and respiration.

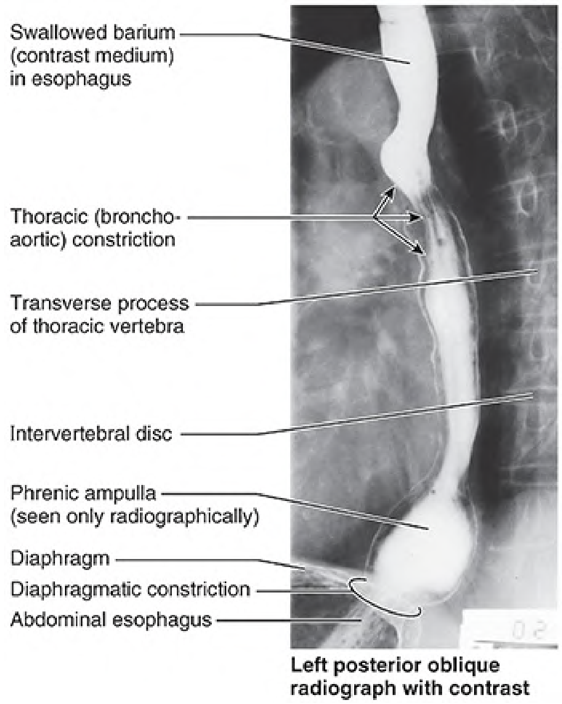


FIGURE 5.34. Radiograph of esophagus after swallowing barium meal. Two of the three normal "constrictions" (impressions) caused by the arch of the aorta and left main bronchus are shown. The phrenic ampulla, which is seen only radiographically, is the distensible part of the esophagus superior to the diaphragm.

Awareness of these constrictions is important when passing instruments through the esophagus into the stomach and when viewing radiographs of patients who are experiencing dysphagia (difficulty in swallowing).

The esophagus

- follows the curve of the vertebral column as it descends through the neck and mediastinum—the median partition of the thoracic cavity (Fig. 5.33A)
- has internal circular and external longitudinal layers of muscle (Fig. 5.33B). In its superior third, the external layer consists of voluntary striated muscle; the inferior third is composed of smooth muscle, and the middle third is made up of both types of muscle.
- passes through the elliptical esophageal hiatus in the muscular right crus of the diaphragm, just to the left of the median plane at the level of the T10 vertebra
- terminates by entering the stomach at the cardial orifice of the stomach (Fig. 5.33C) to the left of the midline at the level of the 7th left costal cartilage and T11 vertebra
- is encircled by the esophageal (nerve) plexus distally (Fig. 5.35)

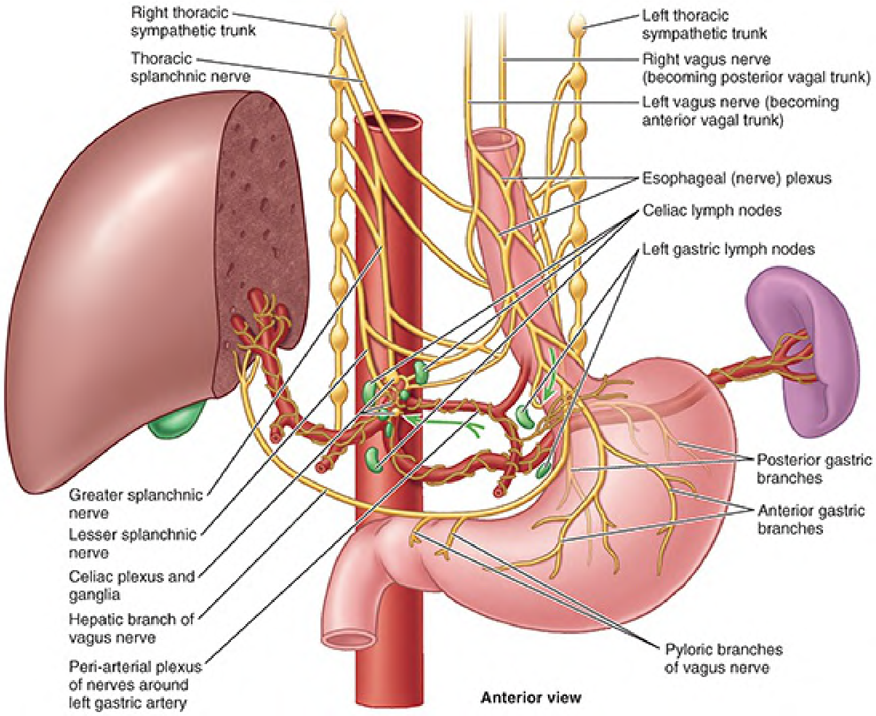


FIGURE 5.35. Nerves and lymphatics of abdominal esophagus and stomach. The vagus nerves (CN X) divide into branches that form the esophageal (nerve) plexus around the inferior esophagus. Anterior and posterior gastric branches of the plexus accompany the esophagus through the esophageal hiatus for distribution to the anterior and posterior aspects of the stomach. The anterior branches also extend to the pylorus and liver. Postsynaptic sympathetic nerve fibers from the celiac plexus are distributed to these organs through peri-arterial plexuses. The lymphatic vessels of the stomach follow a pattern similar to that of the arteries, although the flow is in the opposite direction. Thus, lymph from the stomach and abdominal part of the esophagus drains to the gastric and then celiac lymph nodes.

Food passes through the esophagus rapidly because of the peristaltic action of its musculature, aided by but not dependent on gravity (one can still swallow if inverted). The esophagus is attached to the margins of the esophageal hiatus in the diaphragm by the **phrenico-esophageal ligament** (Fig. 5.33C), an extension of inferior diaphragmatic fascia. This ligament permits independent movement of the diaphragm and esophagus during respiration and swallowing.

The trumpet-shaped abdominal part of the esophagus, only 1.25 cm long, passes from the esophageal hiatus in the right crus of the diaphragm to the cardial orifice of the stomach, widening as it approaches, passing anteriorly and to the left as it descends inferiorly. Its anterior surface is covered with peritoneum of the greater sac, continuous with that covering the anterior surface of the stomach. It fits into a groove on the posterior (visceral) surface of the liver.

The posterior surface of the **abdominal part of the esophagus** is covered with peritoneum of the omental bursa, continuous with that covering the posterior surface of the stomach. The right border of the abdominal esophagus is continuous with the lesser curvature of the stomach; however, its left border is separated from the fundus of the stomach by the cardial notch between the esophagus and fundus (see Fig. 5.37A).

The **esophagogastric junction** lies to the left of the T11 vertebra on the horizontal plane that passes through the tip of the xiphoid process. Surgeons and endoscopists designate the **Z-line** (Fig. 5.33C), a jagged line where the mucosa abruptly changes from esophageal to gastric

mucosa, as the junction. Immediately superior to this junction, the musculature of the right crus of the diaphragm forming the esophageal hiatus functions as an extrinsic physiological inferior esophageal sphincter that contracts and relaxes, usually in concert with a variably thickened muscular coat around the cardial orifice of the stomach. Radiologic studies show that food stops here momentarily and that the sphincter mechanism is normally efficient in preventing reflux of gastric contents into the esophagus. When one is not eating, the lumen of the esophagus is normally collapsed superior to this level to prevent food or stomach juices from regurgitating into the esophagus.

Details concerning the neurovasculature of the cervical and thoracic portions of the esophagus are provided in Chapter 2, Back, and Chapter 9, Neck. The arterial supply of the abdominal part of the esophagus is from the left gastric artery, a branch of the celiac trunk, and the left inferior phrenic artery (Fig. 5.32A). The venous drainage from the submucosal veins of this part of the esophagus is both to the portal venous system through the left gastric vein (Fig. 5.32B) and into the systemic venous system through **esophageal veins** entering the azygos vein.

The lymphatic drainage of the abdominal part of the esophagus is into the left gastric lymph nodes (Fig. 5.35); efferent lymphatic vessels from these nodes drain mainly to celiac lymph nodes.

The esophagus is innervated by the **esophageal plexus**, formed by the vagal trunks (becoming anterior and posterior gastric branches), and the thoracic sympathetic trunks via the greater (abdominopelvic) splanchnic nerves and peri-arterial plexuses around the left gastric and inferior phrenic arteries. (See “Innervation of Abdominal Viscera”.)

Stomach

The **stomach** is the expanded part of the digestive tract between the esophagus and small intestine (Fig. 5.31B). It is specialized for the accumulation of ingested food, which it chemically and mechanically prepares for digestion and passage into the duodenum. The stomach acts as a food blender and reservoir; its chief function is enzymatic digestion. The gastric juice gradually converts a mass of food into a semiliquid mixture, chyme (G. juice), which passes fairly quickly into the duodenum. An empty stomach is only of slightly larger caliber than the large intestine; however, it is capable of considerable expansion and can hold 2–3 L of food.

POSITION, PARTS, AND SURFACE PROJECTION OF STOMACH

The size, shape, and position of the stomach can vary markedly in persons of different body types (bodily habitus) and may change even in the same individual as a result of diaphragmatic movements during respiration, the stomach’s contents (empty vs. after a heavy meal), and the position of the person. In the supine position, the stomach commonly lies in the right and left upper quadrants, or epigastric, umbilical, and left hypochondrium and flank regions (Fig. 5.36A). In the erect position, the stomach moves inferiorly. In asthenic (thin, weak) individuals, the body of the stomach may extend into the pelvis (Fig. 5.36B).

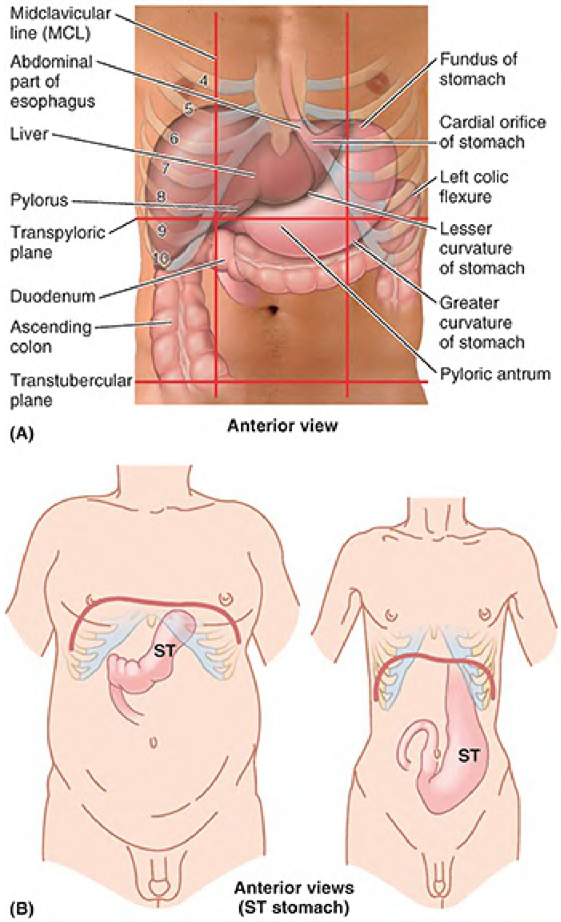


FIGURE 5.36. Surface projection and effect of body type (bodily habitus) on disposition and shape of stomach. A. Common position of the stomach in a person of medium build in the supine or prone position. **B.** Orthotopic stomach. A heavily built hypersthenic individual with a short thorax and long abdomen is likely to have an orthotopic stomach that is placed high and more transversely disposed. In people with a slender asthenic physique, the stomach is likely to be low and vertical (hypotonic stomach).

The stomach has four parts (Figs. 5.36A and 5.37A–C):

- **Cardia**: the part surrounding the **cardial orifice** (opening), the superior opening or inlet of the stomach. In the supine position, the cardial orifice usually lies posterior to the 6th left costal cartilage, 2–4 cm from the median plane at the level of the T11 vertebra.
- **Fundus**: the dilated superior part that is related to the left dome of the diaphragm, limited inferiorly by the horizontal plane of the cardial orifice. The **cardial notch** is between the esophagus and the fundus. The fundus may be dilated by gas, fluid, food, or any combination of these. In the supine position, the fundus usually lies posterior to the left 6th rib in the plane of the MCL (Fig. 5.36A).
- **Body**: the major part of the stomach between the fundus and pyloric antrum
- **Pyloric part**: the funnel-shaped outflow region of the stomach; its wider part, the **pyloric antrum**, leads into the **pyloric canal**, its narrower part (Fig. 5.37A–E). The **pylorus** (G., gatekeeper) is the distal, sphincteric region of the pyloric part. It is a marked thickening of the circular layer of smooth muscle that controls discharge of the stomach contents through the

pyloric orifice (inferior opening or outlet of the stomach) into the duodenum (Figs. 5.37D and 5.38B).

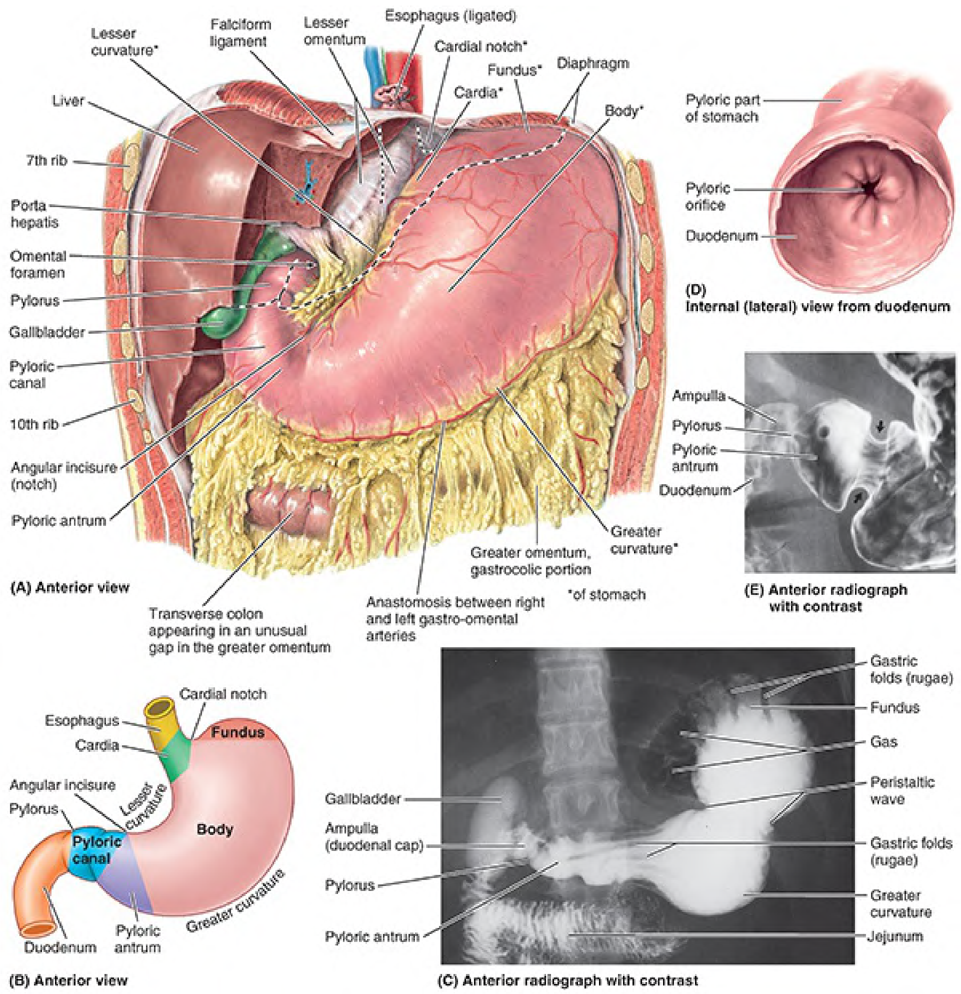


FIGURE 5.37. Abdominal part of esophagus and stomach. A. Overview. The stomach is inflated with air. The left part of the liver is cut away so that the lesser omentum and omental foramen can be seen. The extent of the intact liver is indicated by the longer dotted lines. **B.** Parts of stomach. **C.** Radiograph of stomach after barium meal. Circular peristaltic waves begin in the body of the stomach and sweep toward the pyloric canal, as shown in part **E** (arrows), where they stop. Gas can be seen in the cardia and fundus of this supine patient. **D.** Pyloric orifice. The orifice is the opening of the pyloric canal into the duodenum. **E.** Radiograph of pyloric region of stomach and superior part of duodenum after barium meal.

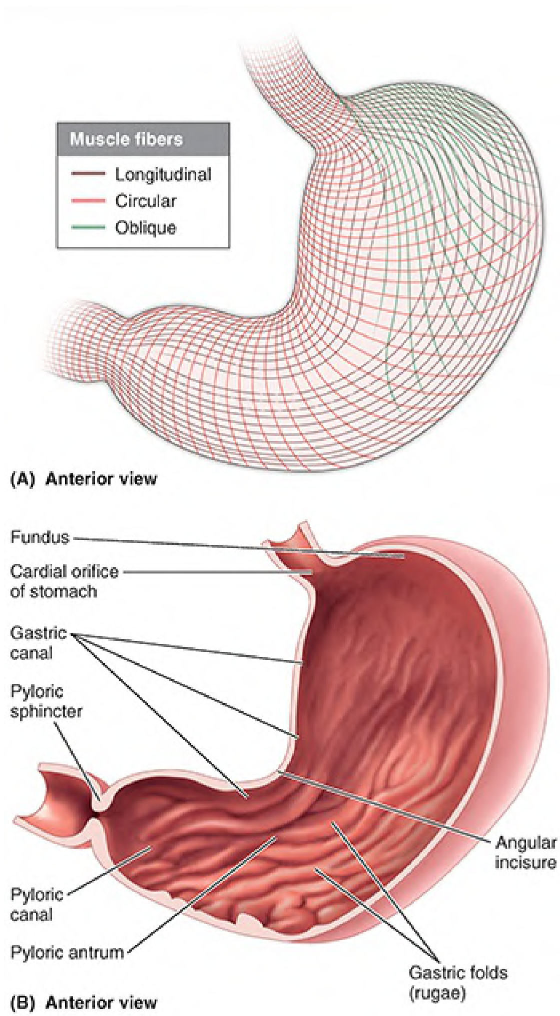


FIGURE 5.38. Wall and internal surface of stomach. A. Muscular layers of stomach wall. **B.** Dissection. The anterior wall of the stomach has been removed to demonstrate its interior. The longitudinal gastric folds disappear on distension. Along the lesser curvature, several longitudinal mucosal folds extend from the esophagus to the pylorus, making up the gastric canal along which ingested liquids pass.

Intermittent emptying of the stomach occurs when intragastric pressure overcomes the resistance of the pylorus. The pylorus is normally tonically contracted so that the pyloric orifice is reduced, except when emitting chyme (semifluid mass). At irregular intervals, gastric peristalsis pushes the chyme through the pyloric canal and orifice into the small intestine for further mixing, digestion, and absorption.

In the supine position, the pyloric part of the stomach lies at the level of the **transpyloric plane**, midway between the jugular notch superiorly and the pubic crest inferiorly (Fig. 5.36A). The plane transects the 8th costal cartilages and the L1 vertebra. When erect, its location varies from the L2 through L4 vertebra. The pyloric orifice is approximately 1.25 cm right of the midline.

The stomach also features two curvatures (Fig. 5.37A–C):

- **Lesser curvature**: forms the shorter concave right border of the stomach. The angular incisure (notch), the most inferior part of the curvature, indicates the junction of the body and

pyloric part of the stomach (Fig. 5.37A, B). The **angular incisure** lies just to the left of the midline.

- **Greater curvature**: forms the longer convex left border of the stomach. It passes inferiorly to the left from the junction of the 5th intercostal space and MCL and then curves to the right, passing deep to the 9th or 10th left cartilage as it continues medially to reach the pyloric antrum.

Because of the unequal lengths of the lesser curvature on the right and the greater curvature on the left, in most people the shape of the stomach resembles the letter J.

To facilitate the churning/mixing function of the stomach, its wall has three layers of smooth muscle instead of the usual two, adding an oblique layer (Fig. 5.38A).

INTERIOR OF STOMACH

The smooth surface of the gastric mucosa is reddish brown during life, except in the pyloric part, where it is pink. In life, it is covered by a continuous mucous layer that protects its surface from the gastric acid the stomach's glands secrete. When contracted, the gastric mucosa is thrown into longitudinal ridges or wrinkles called **gastric folds** (gastric rugae) (Fig. 5.38B); they are most marked toward the pyloric part and along the greater curvature. During swallowing, a temporary groove or furrow-like **gastric canal** forms between the longitudinal gastric folds along the lesser curvature. It can be observed radiographically and endoscopically. The gastric canal forms because of the firm attachment of the gastric mucosa to the muscular layer, which does not have an oblique layer at this site. Saliva and small quantities of masticated food and other fluids drain along the gastric canal to the pyloric canal when the stomach is mostly empty. The gastric folds diminish and obliterate as the stomach is distended (fills).

RELATIONS OF STOMACH

The stomach is covered by visceral peritoneum, except where blood vessels run along its curvatures and in a small area posterior to the cardial orifice (Fig. 5.36A). The two layers of the lesser omentum extend around the stomach and leave its greater curvature as the greater omentum (Figs. 5.28, 5.31, and 5.37A). Anteriorly, the stomach is related to the diaphragm, left lobe of the liver, and anterior abdominal wall. Posteriorly, the stomach is related to the omental bursa and pancreas; the posterior surface of the stomach forms most of the anterior wall of the omental bursa (Fig. 5.39A). The transverse colon is related inferiorly and laterally to the stomach as it courses along the greater curvature of the stomach to the left colic flexure.

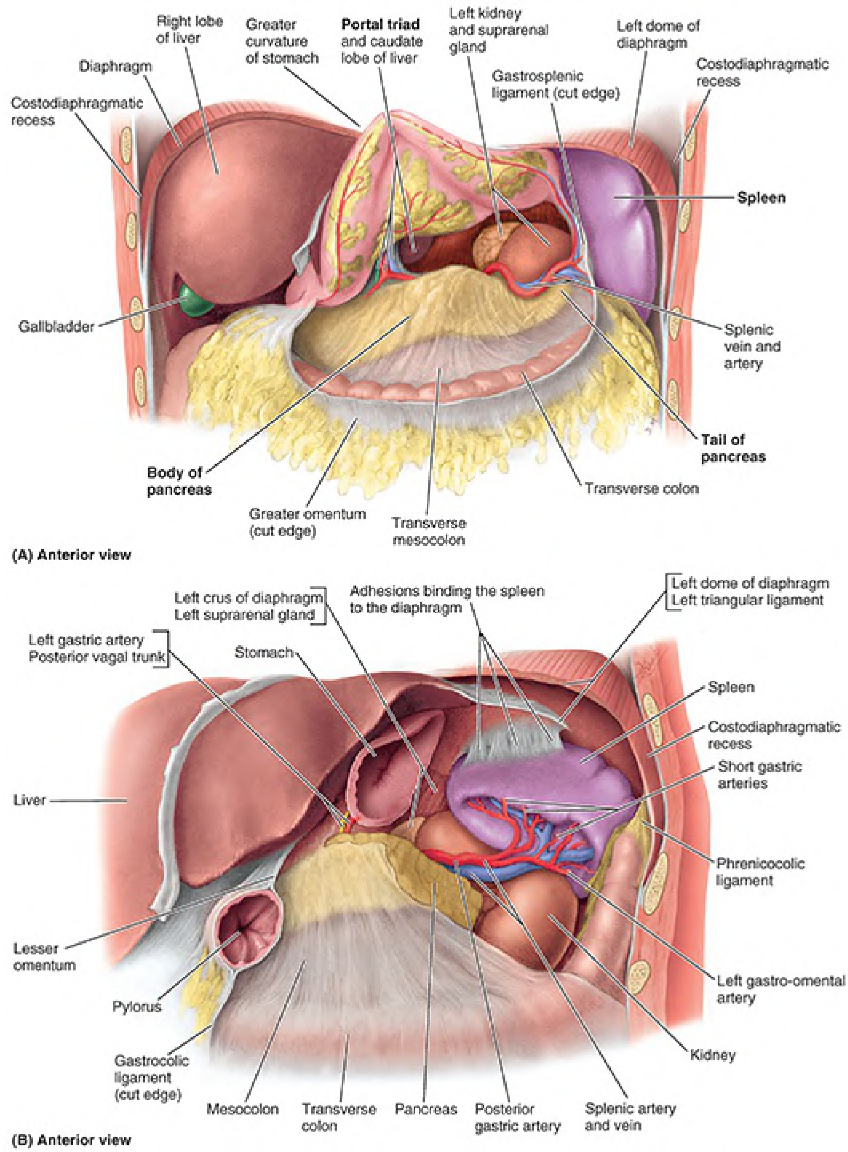


FIGURE 5.39. **Omental bursa and stomach bed. A.** Omental bursa. The greater omentum and the gastrosplenic ligament have been cut along the greater curvature of the stomach, and the stomach has been reflected superiorly to open the bursa anteriorly. At the right end of the bursa, two of the boundaries of the omental foramen can be seen: the inferior root of the hepatoduodenal ligament (containing the portal triad) and caudate lobe of the liver. **B.** Stomach bed. The stomach and most of the lesser omentum have been excised, and the peritoneum of the posterior wall of the omental bursa covering the stomach bed is largely removed to reveal the organs in the bed. Although adhesions, such as those binding the spleen to the diaphragm here, are common postmortem findings, they are not normal anatomy.

The **bed of the stomach**, on which the stomach rests in the supine position, is formed by the structures forming the posterior wall of the omental bursa. From superior to inferior, the bed of the stomach is formed by the left dome of the diaphragm, spleen, left kidney and suprarenal gland, splenic artery, pancreas, and transverse mesocolon (Fig. 5.39B).

VESSELS AND NERVES OF STOMACH

The rich arterial supply of the stomach arises from the celiac trunk and its branches (Fig. 5.40;

Table 5.7). Most blood is supplied by anastomoses formed along the lesser curvature by the **right** and **left gastric arteries** and along the greater curvature by the **right** and **left gastro--omental (gastroepiploic) arteries**. The fundus and upper body receive blood from the **short** and **posterior gastric arteries**.

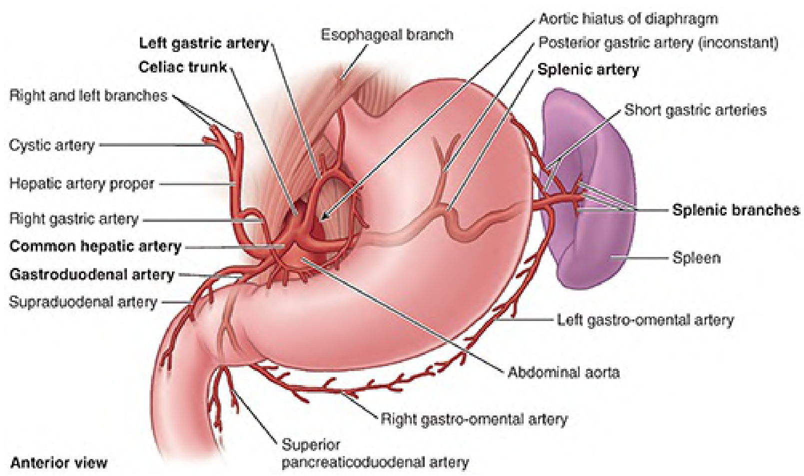


FIGURE 5.40. **Arteries of stomach, duodenum, and spleen.** The arterial supply of the abdominal part of the esophagus, stomach, upper (superior and upper descending parts) duodenum, and spleen is from the celiac artery. The direct branches of the celiac trunk appear in boldface.

TABLE 5.7. ARTERIAL SUPPLY TO ABDOMINAL FOREGUT DERIVATIVES: ESOPHAGUS, STOMACH, LIVER, GALLBLADDER, PANCREAS, AND SPLEEN

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution
Celiac trunk	Abdominal aorta (at level of aortic hiatus)	After short antero-inferior course, bifurcates into splenic and common hepatic arteries	Esophagus, stomach, proximal duodenum, liver/biliary apparatus, pancreas
Left gastric	Celiac trunk	Ascends retroperitoneally to the esophageal hiatus, giving rise to an esophageal branch; then descending along lesser curvature to anastomose with right gastric artery	Distal (mostly abdominal) part of esophagus and lesser curvature of stomach
Splenic		Runs retroperitoneally along superior border of pancreas; traverses splenorenal ligament to hilum of spleen	Body of pancreas, spleen, and greater curvature and posterior stomach body
Posterior gastric	Splenic artery posterior to the stomach	Ascends retroperitoneally along the posterior wall of the lesser omental bursa to enter the gastrophrenic ligament	Posterior wall and fundus of stomach
Left gastro-omental (left gastroepiploic)	Splenic artery in hilum of spleen	Passes between layers of gastrosplenic ligament to the stomach and then along the greater curvature in the greater omentum to anastomose with the right gastro-omental artery	Left portion of greater curvature of the stomach

Short gastric (n = 4–5)		Passes between layers of gastrosplenic ligament to fundus of stomach	Fundus of stomach
Hepatic[a]	Celiac trunk	Passes retroperitoneally to reach hepatoduodenal ligament; passing between layers to porta hepatis; bifurcates into right and left hepatic arteries	Liver, gallbladder and biliary ducts, stomach, duodenum, pancreas, and respective lobes of liver
Cystic	Right hepatic artery	Arises within hepatoduodenal ligament (in cystohepatic triangle of Calot)	Gallbladder and cystic duct
Right gastric	Hepatic artery	Runs along lesser curvature of stomach to anastomose with left gastric artery	Right portion of lesser curvature of stomach
Gastroduodenal		Descends retroperitoneally, posterior to gastroduodenal junction	Stomach, pancreas, first part of duodenum, and distal part of bile duct
Right gastro-omental (right gastroepiploic)	Gastroduodenal artery	Passes between layers of greater omentum along greater curvature of stomach to anastomose with left gastro-omental artery	Right portion of greater curvature of stomach
Superior pancreaticoduodenal		Divides into anterior and posterior arteries that descend on each side of pancreatic head, anastomosing with similar branches of inferior pancreaticoduodenal artery	Proximal portion of duodenum and superior part of head of pancreas
Inferior pancreaticoduodenal	Superior mesenteric artery	Divides into anterior and posterior arteries that ascend on each side of pancreatic head, anastomosing with similar branches of superior pancreaticoduodenal artery	Distal portion of duodenum and head of pancreas

[a]For descriptive purposes, the hepatic artery is often divided into the common hepatic artery, from its origin to the origin of the gastroduodenal artery, and hepatic artery proper, made up of the remainder of the vessel.

The veins of the stomach parallel the arteries in position and course (Fig. 5.41). The **right** and **left gastric veins** drain into the hepatic portal vein; the **short gastric veins** and **left gastro-omental veins** drain into the splenic vein, which joins the superior mesenteric vein (SMV) to form the hepatic portal vein. The **right gastro-omental vein** empties in the SMV. A **prepyloric vein** ascends over the pylorus to the right gastric vein. Because this vein is obvious in living persons, surgeons use it for identifying the pylorus.

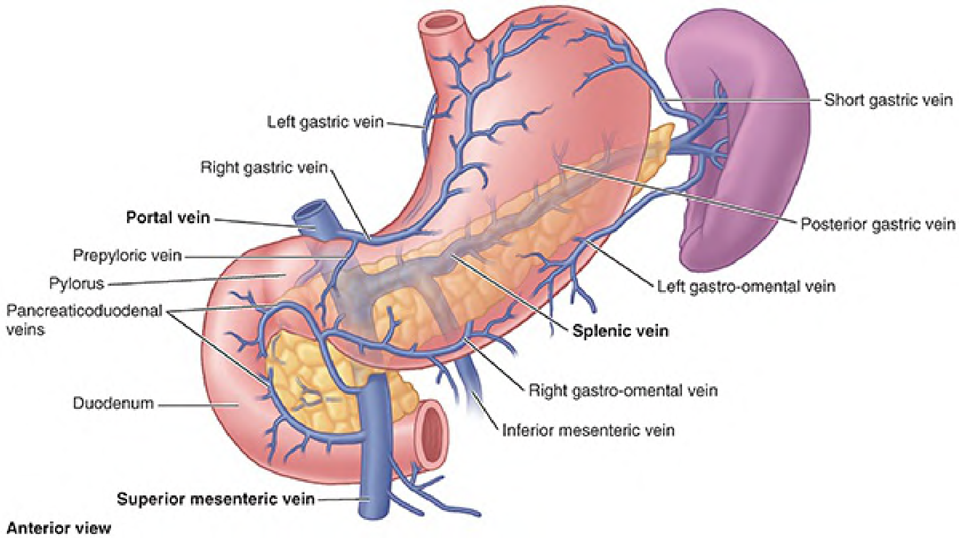


FIGURE 5.41. Veins of stomach, duodenum, and spleen. Venous drainage from the abdominal part of the esophagus, stomach, upper (superior and upper descending parts) duodenum, pancreas, and spleen is into the portal vein, either directly or indirectly via the splenic or superior mesenteric vein (SMV). The gastric veins parallel the arteries in position and course.

The **gastric lymphatic vessels** (Fig. 5.42A) accompany the arteries along the greater and lesser curvatures of the stomach. They drain lymph from its anterior and posterior surfaces toward its curvatures, where the **gastric** and **gastro-omental lymph nodes** are located. The efferent vessels from these nodes accompany the large arteries to the celiac lymph nodes. The following is a summary of the lymphatic drainage of the stomach:

- Lymph from the superior two thirds of the stomach drains along the right and left gastric vessels to the **gastric lymph nodes**; lymph from the fundus and superior part of the body of the stomach also drains along the short gastric arteries and left gastro-omental vessels to the pancreaticosplenic lymph nodes.
- Lymph from the right two thirds of the inferior third of the stomach drains along the right gastro-omental vessels to the **pyloric lymph nodes**.
- Lymph from the left one third of the greater curvature drains to the **pancreaticoduodenal lymph nodes**, which are located along the short gastric and splenic vessels.

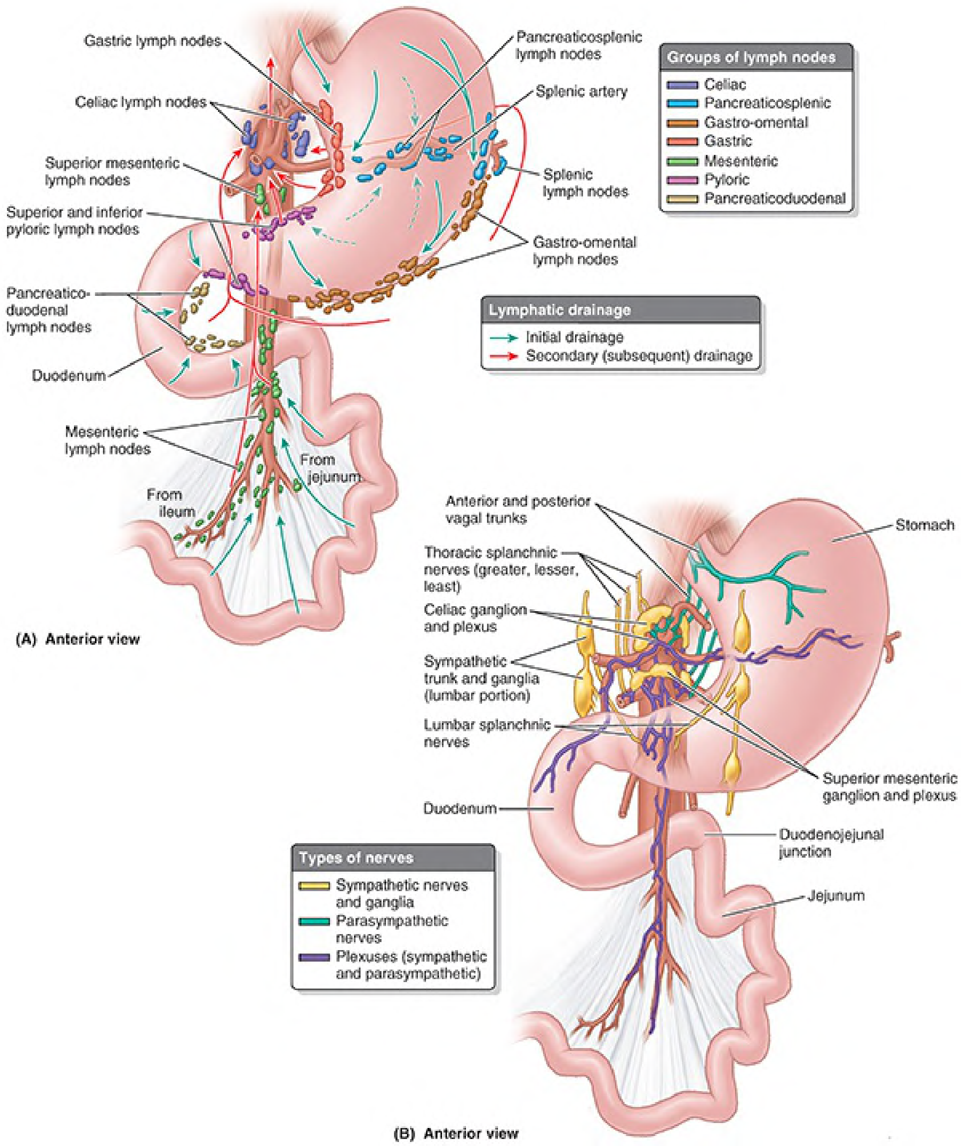


FIGURE 5.42. Lymphatic drainage and innervation of stomach and small intestine. A. Lymphatic drainage. The arrows indicate the direction of lymph flow to the lymph nodes. **B.** Innervation. Innervation of the stomach is both parasympathetic, from the vagus nerves (CN X) via the esophageal plexus, and sympathetic, via the greater (abdominopelvic) splanchnic, the celiac plexus, and peri-arterial plexuses.

The parasympathetic nerve supply of the stomach (Fig. 5.42B) is from the anterior and posterior vagal trunks and their branches, which enter the abdomen through the esophageal hiatus.

The anterior vagal trunk, derived mainly from the left vagus nerve (CN X), usually enters the abdomen as a single branch that lies on the anterior surface of the esophagus. It runs toward the lesser curvature of the stomach, where it gives off hepatic and duodenal branches, which leave the stomach in the hepatoduodenal ligament. The rest of the anterior vagal trunk continues along the lesser curvature, giving rise to anterior gastric branches.

The larger posterior vagal trunk, derived mainly from the right vagus nerve, enters the abdomen on the posterior surface of the esophagus and passes toward the lesser curvature of the

stomach. The posterior vagal trunk supplies branches to the anterior and posterior surfaces of the stomach. It gives off a celiac branch, which passes to the celiac plexus, and then continues along the lesser curvature, giving rise to posterior gastric branches.

The sympathetic nerve supply of the stomach, from the T6 through T9 segments of the spinal cord, passes to the celiac plexus through the greater splanchnic nerve and is distributed through the plexuses around the gastric and gastro-omental arteries. (See “Innervation of Abdominal Viscera.”)

Small Intestine

The **small intestine**, consisting of the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum (Fig. 5.43), is the primary site for absorption of nutrients from ingested materials. It extends from the pylorus to the ileocecal junction where the ileum joins the cecum (the first part of the large intestine). The pyloric part of the stomach empties into the duodenum, duodenal admission being regulated by the pylorus.

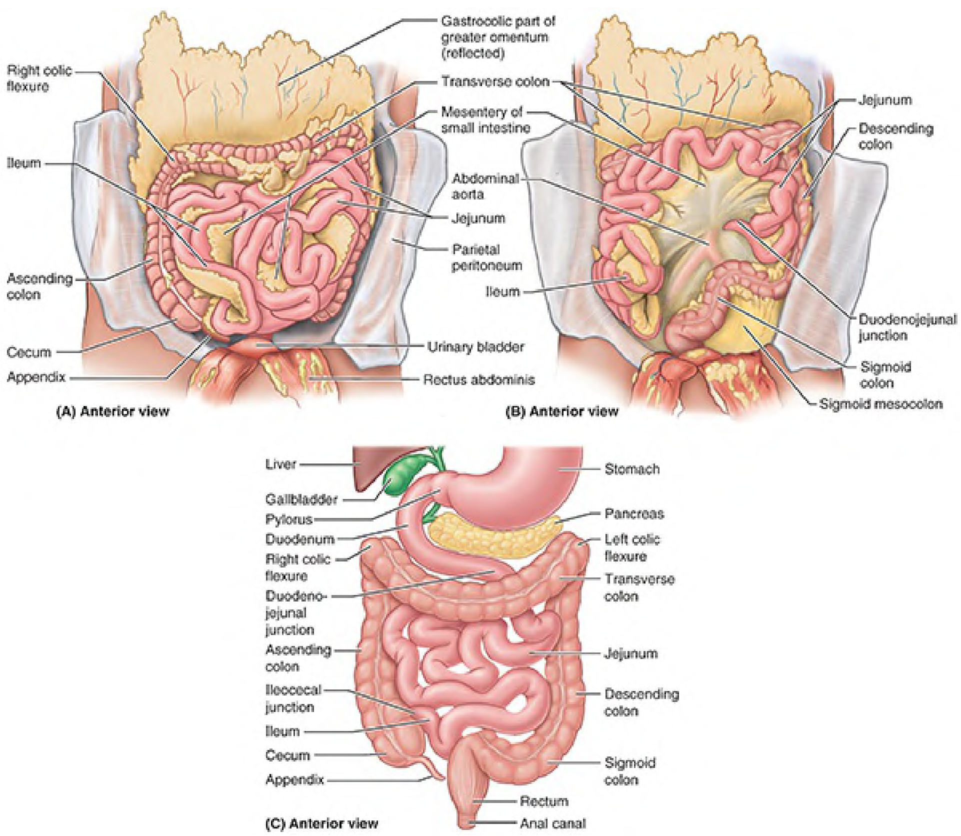


FIGURE 5.43. **Small and large intestines. A.** In situ relationships. Note the convolutions of the small intestine in situ, encircled on three sides by the large intestine and revealed by elevating the greater omentum. **B.** Mesentry of small intestine. The small intestine has been retracted superiorly. **C.** Overview. This orientation drawing of the alimentary system indicates the general position and relationships of the intestines.

DUODENUM

The **duodenum** (L. breadth of 12 fingers), the first and shortest (25 cm) part of the small intestine, is also the widest and most fixed part. The duodenum pursues a C-shaped course around the head of the pancreas (Figs. 5.43C and 5.44A, C). It begins at the pylorus on the right side and ends at the duodenojejunal flexure (junction) on the left side (Fig. 5.44B, C). This junction occurs approximately at the level of the L2 vertebra, 2–3 cm to the left of the midline. The junction usually takes the form of an acute angle, the **duodenojejunal flexure**. Most of the duodenum is fixed by peritoneum to structures on the posterior abdominal wall and is considered partially retroperitoneal. The duodenum is divisible into four parts (Figs. 5.44C and 5.45):

- Superior (first) part: short (approximately 5 cm) and lies anterolateral to the body of the L1 vertebra
- Descending (second) part: longer (7–10 cm) and descends along the right sides of the L1–L3 vertebrae
- Inferior (third) part: 6–8 cm long and crosses the L3 vertebra
- Ascending (fourth) part: short (5 cm) and begins at the left of the L3 vertebra and rises superiorly as far as the superior border of the L2 vertebra

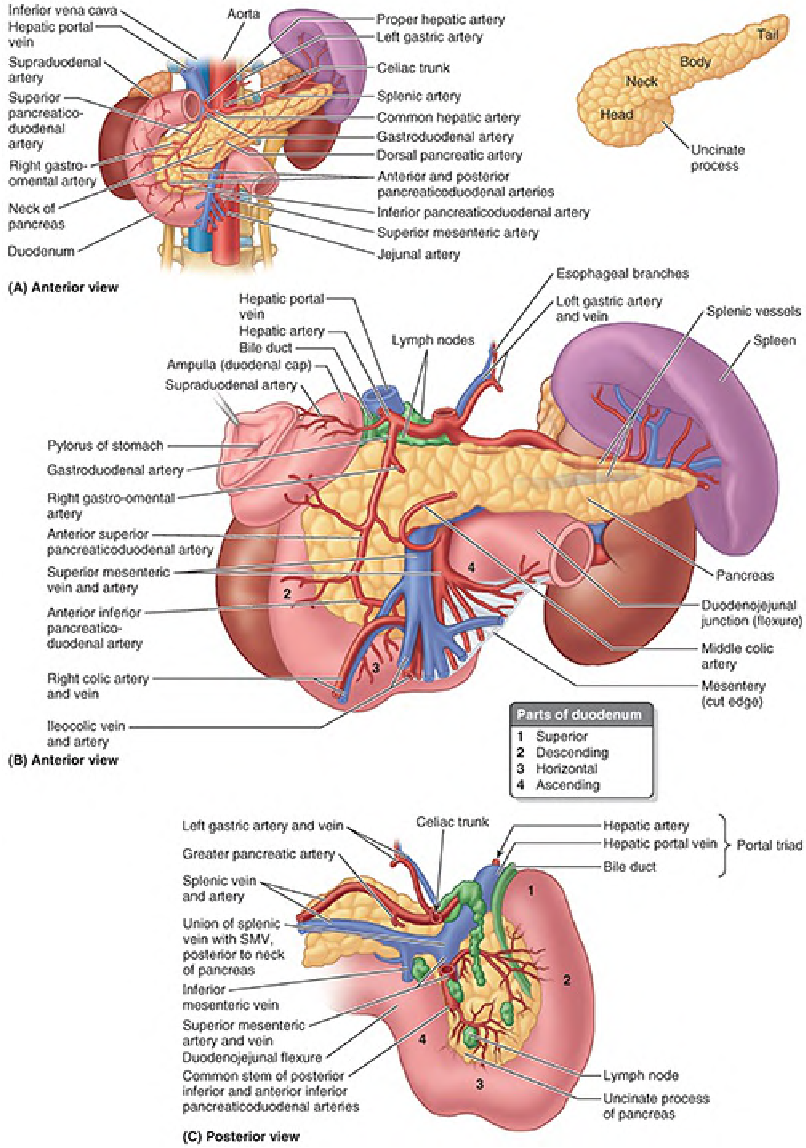


FIGURE 5.44. Duodenum, pancreas, and spleen. A. Overview. The duodenum, pancreas, and spleen and their blood supply are revealed by removal of the stomach, transverse colon, and peritoneum. **B.** Anterior aspect of duodenum, pancreas, and related vasculature. The duodenum is molded around the head of the pancreas. **C.** Posterior aspect of duodenum and pancreas. The abdominal aorta and inferior vena cava occupy the vertical concavity posterior to the head of the pancreas and third part of the duodenum. The uncinate process is the extension of the head of the pancreas that passes posterior to the superior mesenteric vessels. The bile duct is descending in a fissure (opened up) in the posterior part of the head of the pancreas. SMV, superior mesenteric vein.

The first 2 cm of the superior part of the duodenum, immediately distal to the pylorus, has a mesentery and is mobile. This free part, called the **ampulla** (duodenal cap), has an appearance distinct from the remainder of the duodenum when observed radiographically using contrast medium (Fig. 5.37C, E). The distal 3 cm of the superior part and the other three parts of the duodenum have no mesentery and are immobile because they are retroperitoneal. The principal relationships of the duodenum are illustrated in Figures 5.44 and 5.45.

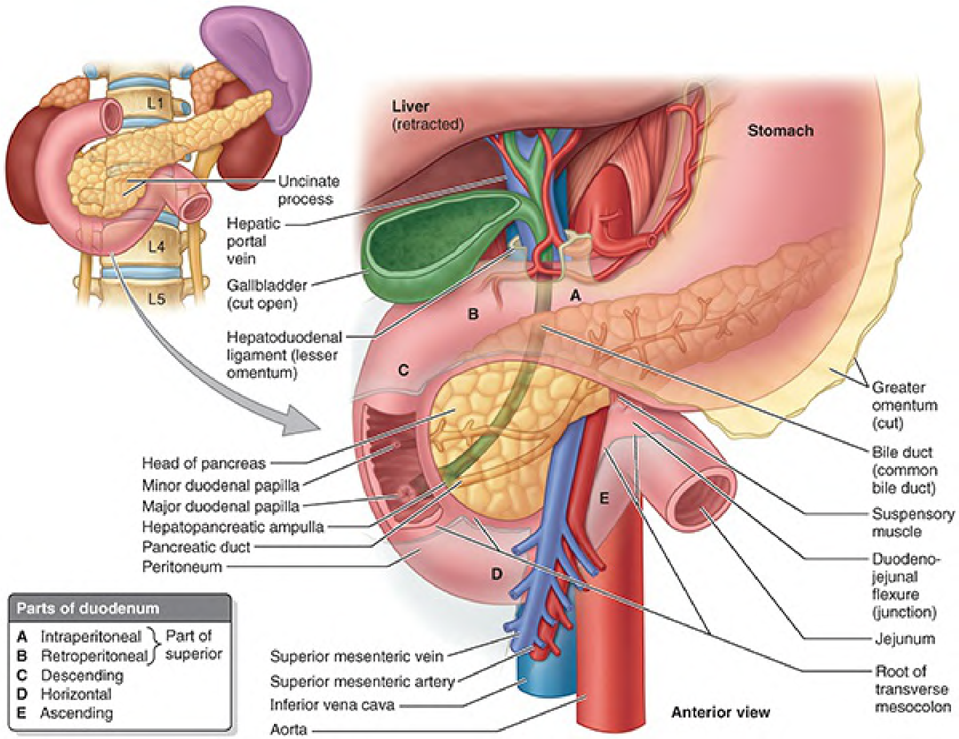


FIGURE 5.45. Relationships and parts of duodenum. The duodenum pursues a C-shaped course around the head of the pancreas.

The **superior part of the duodenum** ascends from the pylorus and is overlapped by the liver and gallbladder. Peritoneum covers its anterior aspect, but it is bare of peritoneum posteriorly, except for the ampulla. The proximal part has the hepatoduodenal ligament (part of the lesser omentum) attached superiorly and the greater omentum attached inferiorly (see Fig. 5.26).

The **descending part of the duodenum** runs inferiorly, curving around the head of the pancreas (Figs. 5.44 and 5.45). Initially, it lies to the right of and parallel to the IVC. The bile and main pancreatic ducts enter its posteromedial wall. These ducts usually unite to form the **hepatopancreatic ampulla**, which opens on an eminence, called **the major duodenal papilla**, located posteromedially in the descending duodenum. The descending part of the duodenum is entirely retroperitoneal. The anterior surface of its proximal and distal thirds is covered with peritoneum; however, the peritoneum reflects from its middle third to form the double-layered mesentery of the transverse colon, the transverse mesocolon.

The **inferior (horizontal) part of the duodenum** runs transversely to the left, passing over the IVC, aorta, and L3 vertebra. It is crossed by the superior mesenteric artery and vein and the root of the mesentery of the jejunum and ileum. Superior to it is the head of the pancreas and its uncinate process. The anterior surface of the inferior part is covered with peritoneum, except where it is crossed by the superior mesenteric vessels and the root of the mesentery. Posteriorly, it is separated from the vertebral column by the right psoas major, IVC, aorta, and the right testicular or ovarian vessels.

The **ascending part of the duodenum** runs superiorly and along the left side of the aorta to reach the inferior border of the body of the pancreas. Here it curves anteriorly to join the jejunum

at the duodenojejunal flexure, supported by the attachment of a **suspensory muscle of the duodenum** (ligament of Treitz). This muscle is composed of a slip of skeletal muscle from the diaphragm and a fibromuscular band of smooth muscle from the third and fourth parts of the duodenum. Contraction of this muscle widens the angle of the duodenojejunal flexure, facilitating movement of the intestinal contents. The suspensory muscle passes posterior to the pancreas and splenic vein and anterior to the left renal vein.

The arteries of the duodenum arise from the celiac trunk and the superior mesenteric artery (Fig. 5.44). The celiac trunk, via the **gastroduodenal artery** and its branch, the **superior pancreaticoduodenal artery**, supplies the duodenum proximal to the entry of the bile duct into the descending part of the duodenum. The superior mesenteric artery, through its branch, the **inferior pancreaticoduodenal artery**, supplies the duodenum distal to the entry of the bile duct. The pancreaticoduodenal arteries lie in the curve between the duodenum and the head of the pancreas and supply both structures. The anastomosis of the superior and inferior pancreaticoduodenal arteries (i.e., between the celiac and superior mesenteric arteries) occurs between the entry of the bile duct and the junction of the descending and inferior parts of the duodenum. An important transition in the blood supply of the digestive tract occurs here: proximally, extending orad (toward the mouth) to and including the abdominal part of the esophagus, the blood is supplied to the digestive tract by the celiac trunk; distally, extending aborad (away from the mouth) to the left colic flexure, the blood is supplied by the SMA. The basis of this transition in blood supply is embryological; this is the junction of the foregut and midgut.

The veins of the duodenum follow the arteries and drain into the hepatic portal vein, some directly and others indirectly, through the superior mesenteric and splenic veins (Fig. 5.41).

The lymphatic vessels of the duodenum follow the arteries. The anterior lymphatic vessels drain into the pancreaticoduodenal lymph nodes, located along the superior and inferior pancreaticoduodenal arteries, and into the pyloric lymph nodes, which lie along the gastroduodenal artery (Fig. 5.46). The posterior lymphatic vessels pass posterior to the head of the pancreas and drain into the **superior mesenteric lymph nodes**. Efferent lymphatic vessels from the duodenal lymph nodes drain into the celiac lymph nodes.

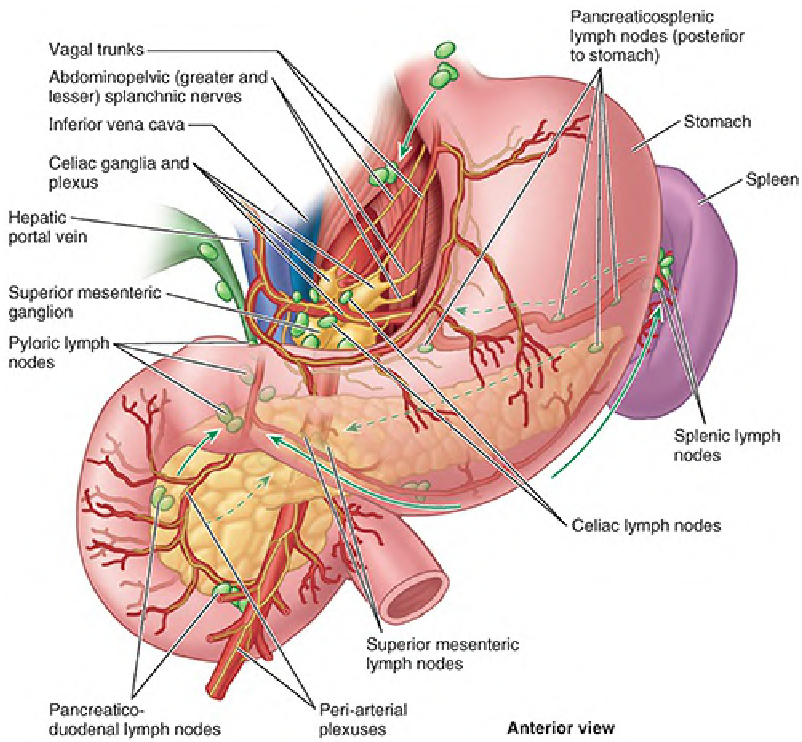


FIGURE 5.46. Lymphatic drainage and innervation of duodenum, pancreas, and spleen. The close positional relationship of these organs results in sharing of blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerve pathways, in whole or in part.

The nerves of the duodenum derive from the vagus and greater and lesser (abdominopelvic) splanchnic nerves by way of the celiac and superior mesenteric plexuses. The nerves are next conveyed to the duodenum via peri-arterial plexuses extending to the pancreaticoduodenal arteries (see “Innervation of Abdominal Viscera”).

JEJUNUM AND ILEUM

The second part of the small intestine, the **jejunum**, begins at the duodenojejunal flexure where the gastrointestinal tract resumes an intraperitoneal course. The third part of the small intestine, the **ileum**, ends at the **ileocecal junction**, the union of the terminal ileum and the cecum (Figs. 5.43C and 5.47). Together, the jejunum and ileum are 6–7 m long, the jejunum constituting approximately two fifths and the ileum approximately three fifths of the intraperitoneal section of the small intestine.

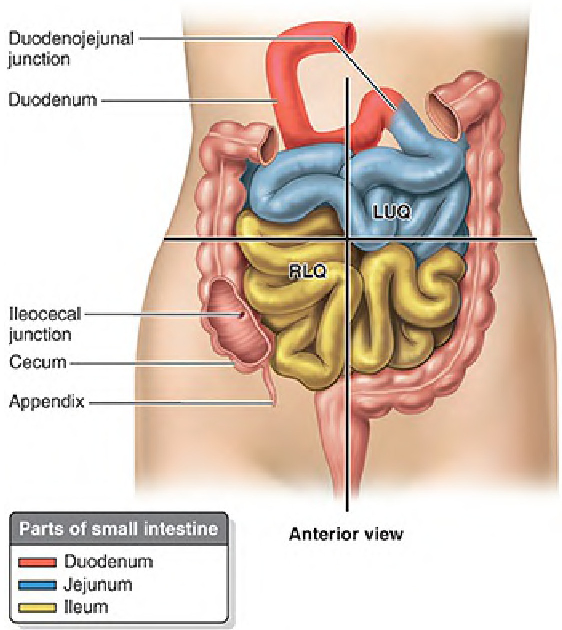


FIGURE 5.47. Jejunum and ileum. The jejunum begins at the duodenojejunal flexure and the ileum ends at the cecum. The combined term jejuno-ileum is sometimes used as an expression of the fact that there is no clear external line of demarcation between the jejunum and the ileum. LUQ, left upper quadrant; RLQ, right lower quadrant.

Most of the jejunum lies in the left upper quadrant (LUQ) of the infracolic compartment, whereas most of the ileum lies in the right lower quadrant (RLQ). The terminal ileum usually lies in the pelvis from which it ascends, ending in the medial aspect of the cecum. Although no clear line of demarcation between the jejunum and ileum exists, they have distinctive characteristics that are surgically important (Fig. 5.48B–F; Table 5.8).

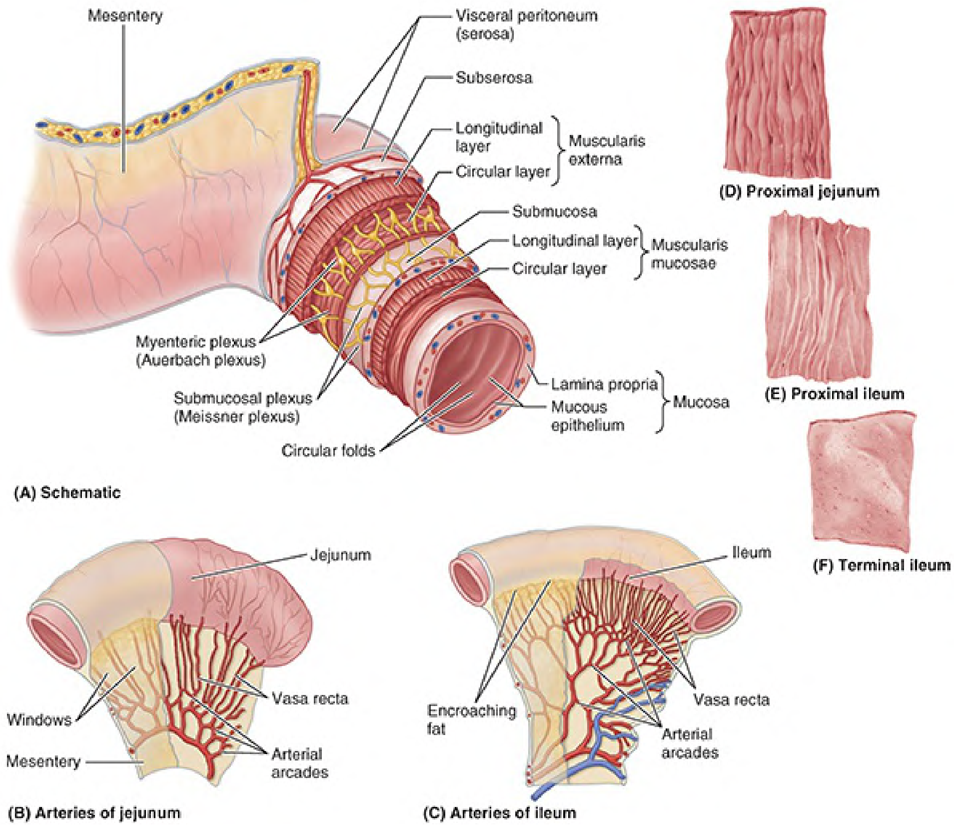


FIGURE 5.48. Structure of mesentery and small intestine: distinctive features of jejunum and ileum. A. Mesentery and wall of small intestine. Note that the mesentery is a double-layered fold of visceral peritoneum suspending the gut and conducting neurovasculature to and from the posterior body wall. **B–F.** Distinctive features of the jejunum and ileum, outlined in Table 5.8, are illustrated.

TABLE 5.8. DISTINGUISHING CHARACTERISTICS OF JEJUNUM AND ILEUM IN LIVING BODY (FIG. 5.48)

Characteristic	Jejunum (B and D)[a]		Ileum (C, E, and F)[a]	
Color	Deeper red		Paler pink	
Caliber	2–4 cm		2–3 cm	
Wall	Thick and heavy		Thin and light	
Vascularity	Greater	(B)	Less	(C)
Vasa recta	Long	(B)	Short	(C)
Arcades	A few large loops	(B)	Many short loops	(C)
Fat in mesentery	Less		More	
Circular folds (L. plicae circulares)	Large, tall, and closely packed (**D**)		Low and sparse (**E**); absent in distal part (**F**)	
Lymphoid nodules (Peyer patches)	Few		Many (**F**)	

[a]Letters in parentheses refer to individual figures in Figure 5.48.

The **mesentery** is a fan-shaped fold of peritoneum that attaches the jejunum and ileum to the posterior abdominal wall (Figs. 5.43B and 5.48A). The origin or **root of the mesentery** (approximately 15 cm long) is directed obliquely, inferiorly, and to the right (Fig. 5.49A). It extends from the duodenojejunal junction on the left side of vertebra L2 to the ileocolic junction and the right sacro-iliac joint. The average length of the mesentery from its root to the intestinal border is 20 cm. The root of the mesentery crosses (successively) the ascending and inferior parts of the duodenum, abdominal aorta, IVC, right ureter, right psoas major, and right testicular or ovarian vessels. Between the two layers of the mesentery are the superior mesenteric vessels, lymph nodes, a variable amount of fat, and autonomic nerves.

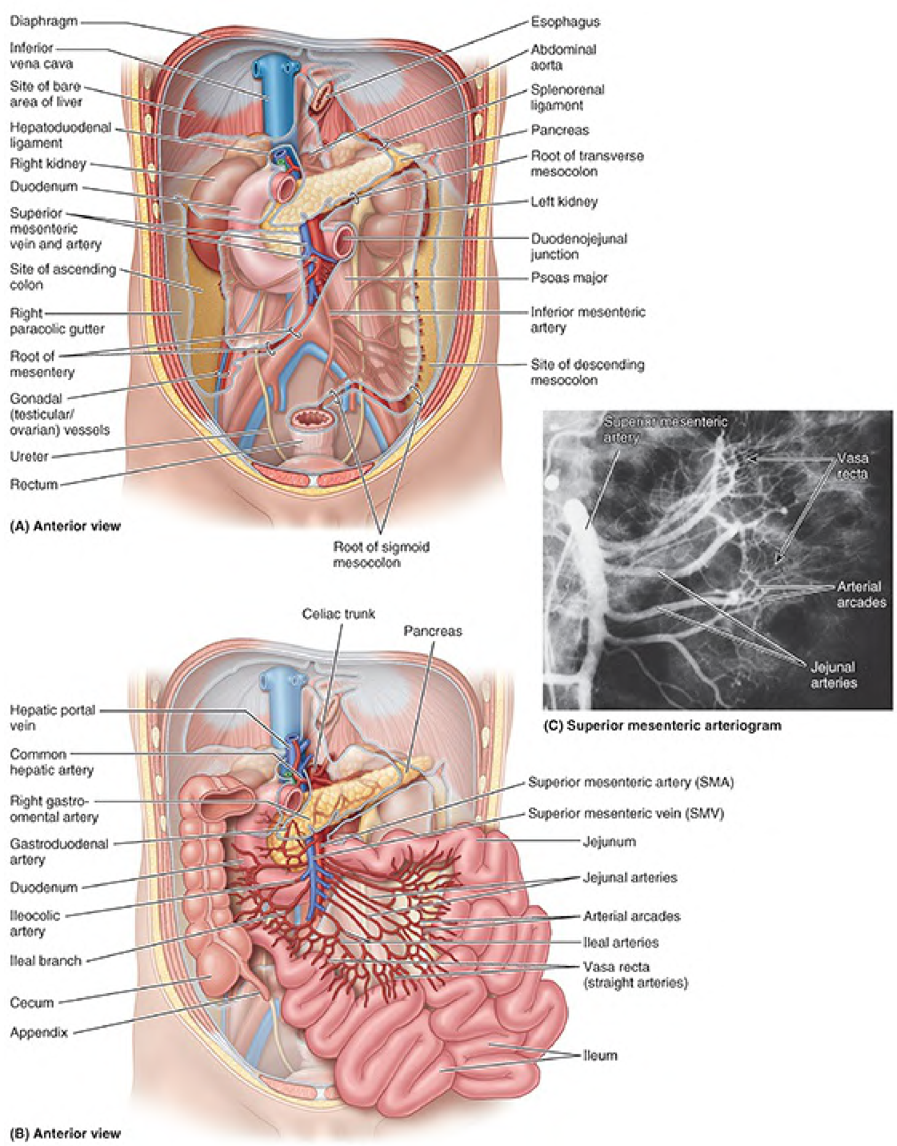


FIGURE 5.49. Arterial supply and mesenteries of intestines. A. Arterial supply of large intestine. The transverse and sigmoid mesocolons and the mesentery of the jejunum and ileum have been cut at their roots. The ileocolic and right colic arteries on the right side and the left colic and sigmoid arteries on the left side originally coursed within mesenteries (ascending and descending mesocolons) that later fused to the posterior wall; they can be re-established surgically. **B.** Arterial supply and venous drainage of small intestine. Except for the proximal duodenum, all of the small intestine are

supplied by the SMA. The SMV drains blood from the same portions of the intestine into the hepatic portal vein. **C.** Arteriogram showing jejunal arteries.

The **superior mesenteric artery (SMA)** supplies the jejunum and ileum via **jejunal** and **ileal arteries** (Fig. 5.49B).

The SMA usually arises from the abdominal aorta at the level of the L1 vertebra, approximately 1 cm inferior to the celiac trunk, and runs between the layers of the mesentery, sending 15–18 branches to the jejunum and ileum (see Figs. 5.54 and 5.55). The arteries unite to form loops or arches, called **arterial arcades**, which give rise to straight arteries, called **vasa recta** (Figs. 5.48B and 5.49B).

The superior mesenteric vein drains the jejunum and ileum (Fig. 5.49B). It lies anterior and to the right of the SMA in the root of the mesentery (Fig. 5.49A). The SMV ends posterior to the neck of the pancreas, where it unites with the splenic vein to form the hepatic portal vein (Fig. 5.44C).

Specialized lymphatic vessels in the **intestinal villi** (tiny projections of the mucous membrane) that absorb fat are called **lacteals**. They empty their milk-like fluid into the lymphatic plexuses in the walls of the jejunum and ileum. The lacteals drain in turn into lymphatic vessels between the layers of the mesentery. Within the mesentery, the lymph passes sequentially through three groups of lymph nodes (Fig. 5.50):

- **Juxta-intestinal lymph nodes**: located close to the intestinal wall
- **Mesenteric lymph nodes**: scattered among the arterial arcades
- **Superior central nodes**: located along the proximal part of the SMA

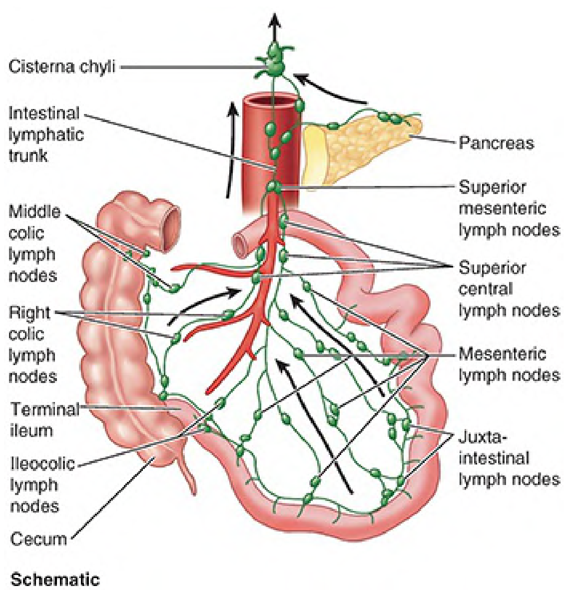


FIGURE 5.50. Mesenteric lymph nodes. The superior nodes form a system in which the central nodes, at the root of the superior mesenteric artery, receive lymph from the mesenteric, ileocolic, right colic, and middle colic nodes, which in turn receive lymph from juxta-intestinal lymph nodes. The juxta-intestinal nodes adjacent to the intestines are most abundant. Fewer occur along the arteries. Arrows, flow of lymph.

Efferent lymphatic vessels from the mesenteric lymph nodes drain to the superior mesenteric

lymph nodes. Lymphatic vessels from the terminal ileum follow the ileal branch of the ileocolic artery to the **ileocolic lymph nodes**.

The SMA and its branches are surrounded by a peri-arterial nerve plexus through which the nerves are conducted to the parts of the intestine supplied by this artery (Fig. 5.51). The sympathetic fibers in the nerves to the jejunum and ileum originate in the T8–T10 segments of the spinal cord and reach the **superior mesenteric nerve plexus** through the sympathetic trunks and thoracic abdominopelvic (greater, lesser, and least) splanchnic nerves. The presynaptic sympathetic fibers synapse on cell bodies of postsynaptic sympathetic neurons in the celiac and superior mesenteric (prevertebral) ganglia. The parasympathetic fibers in the nerves to the jejunum and ileum derive from the posterior vagal trunks. The presynaptic parasympathetic fibers synapse with postsynaptic parasympathetic neurons in the myenteric and submucosal plexuses of the enteric nervous system in the intestinal wall (see "Innervation of Abdominal Viscera").

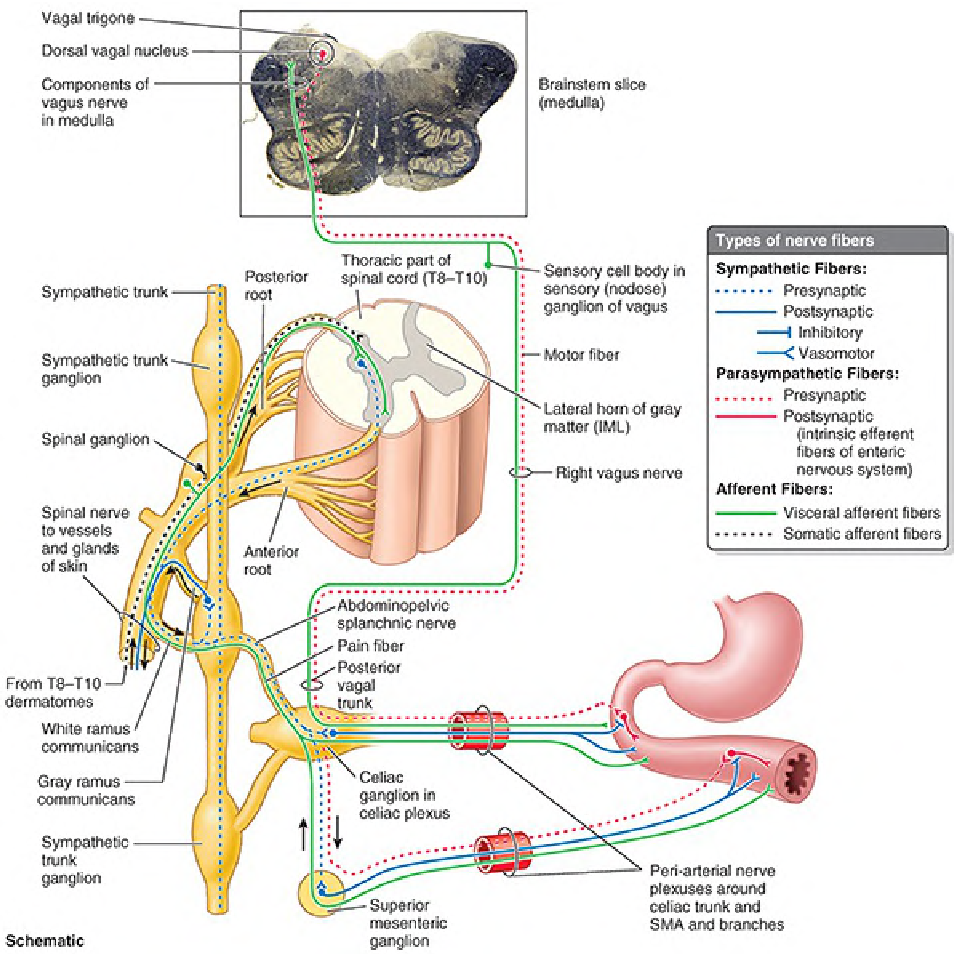


FIGURE 5.51. Extrinsic innervation of small intestine. Presynaptic sympathetic nerve fibers originate in the T8 or T9 through T10 or T11 segments of the spinal cord and reach the celiac plexus through the sympathetic trunks and greater and lesser (abdominopelvic) splanchnic nerves. After synapsing in the celiac and superior mesenteric ganglia, postsynaptic nerve fibers accompany the arteries to the intestine. Afferent fibers are concerned with long reflexes and pain reaching the CNS. Presynaptic parasympathetic (vagus) nerves originate in the medulla (oblongata) and pass to the intestine via the posterior vagal trunk. They synapse with intrinsic postsynaptic neurons of the enteric nervous system located in the

intestinal wall. SMA, superior mesenteric artery. Arrows, direction of impulses; IML, intermediolateral cell column.

Sympathetic stimulation reduces peristaltic and secretory activity of the intestine and causes vasoconstriction, reducing or stopping gastrointestinal activity and making blood (and energy) available for “fleeing or fighting.” Parasympathetic stimulation increases peristalsis and secretion activity of the intestine, restoring gastrointestinal activity following a sympathetic reaction. Cessation of sympathetic stimulation allows vasodilation, restoring blood flow to the active bowel. The small intestine also has extrinsic and intrinsic sensory (visceral afferent) fibers. The intestine is insensitive to most pain stimuli, including cutting and burning; however, it is sensitive to distension that is perceived as colic (spasmodic abdominal pains or “intestinal cramps”). Visceral pain from the small intestine may be referred to dermatomes supplied by somatic afferent fibers sharing by the same spinal sensory ganglia and spinal cord segments.

Large Intestine

The **large intestine** is where water is absorbed from the indigestible residues of the liquid chyme, converting it into semisolid stool or feces that is stored temporarily and allowed to accumulate until defecation occurs. The large intestine consists of the cecum; appendix; ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid colon; rectum; and anal canal (Fig. 5.52). The large intestine can be distinguished from the small intestine by the following:

- **Omental appendices**: small, fatty, omentum-like projections
- **Teniae coli**: three distinct longitudinal bands: (1) **mesocolic tenia**, to which the transverse and sigmoid mesocolons attach; (2) **omental tenia**, to which the omental appendices attach; and (3) **free tenia** (L. t. libera), to which neither mesocolons nor omental appendices are attached
- **Haustra**: sacculations of the wall of the colon between the teniae
- A much greater caliber (internal diameter)

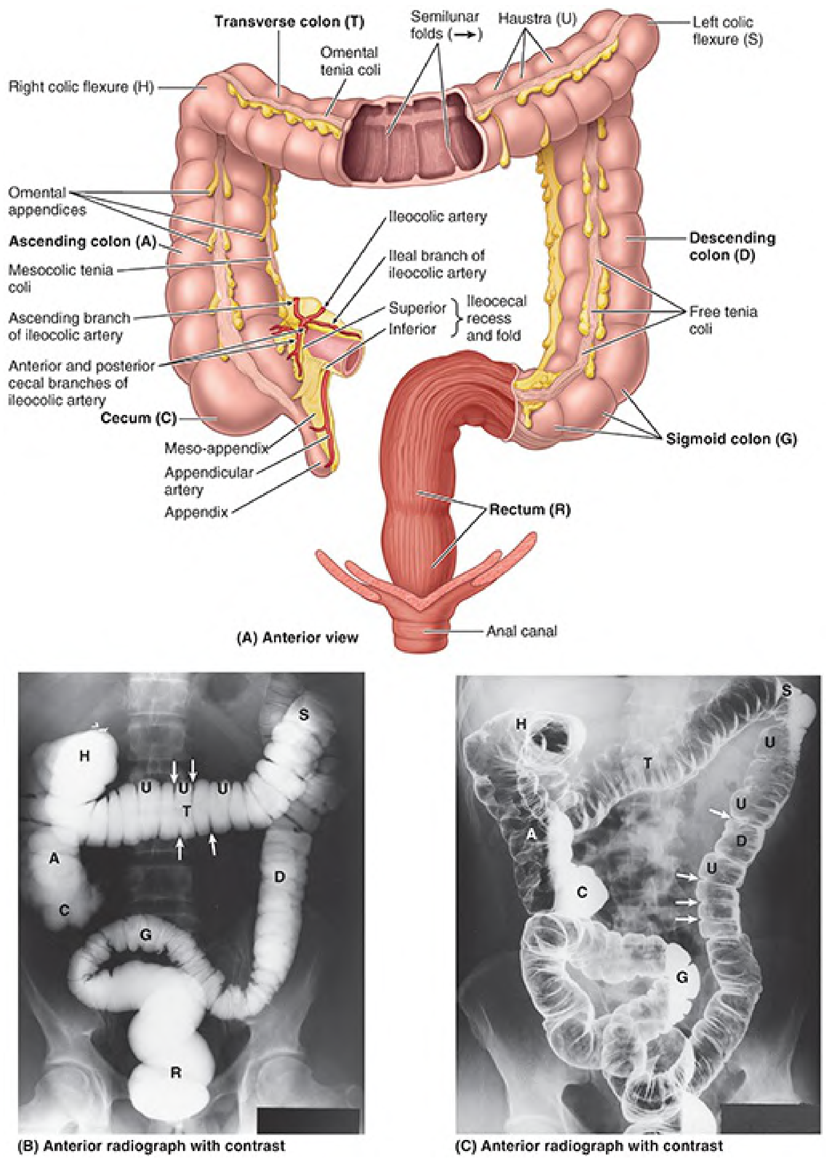


FIGURE 5.52. Terminal ileum and large intestine (including appendix). A. Overview. Teniae, haustra, and fatty omental appendices (characteristic of the colon) are not associated with the rectum. **B.** Single contrast study. To examine the colon, a barium enema has been given after the bowel is cleared of fecal material by a cleansing enema. The semilunar folds demarcating the haustra are visible. **C.** Double contrast study. Following the single-contrast study, the patient has evacuated the barium, and the colon was distended with air for this double-contrast study. The luminal surface remains coated with a thin layer of barium. Arrows, semilunar folds.

The teniae coli (thickened bands of smooth muscle representing most of the longitudinal coat) begin at the base of the appendix as the thick longitudinal layer of the appendix separates into three bands. The teniae run the length of the large intestine, abruptly broadening and merging with each other again at the rectosigmoid junction into a continuous longitudinal layer around the rectum. Because their tonic contraction shortens the part of the wall with which they are associated, the colon becomes sacculated or “baggy” between the teniae, forming the haustra.

CECUM AND APPENDIX

The **cecum** is the first part of the large intestine; it is continuous with the ascending colon. The cecum is a blind intestinal pouch, approximately 7.5 cm in both length and breadth. It lies in the iliac fossa of the right lower quadrant of the abdomen, inferior to the junction of the terminal ileum and cecum (Figs. 5.52 and 5.53). If distended with feces or gas, the cecum may be palpable through the anterolateral abdominal wall.

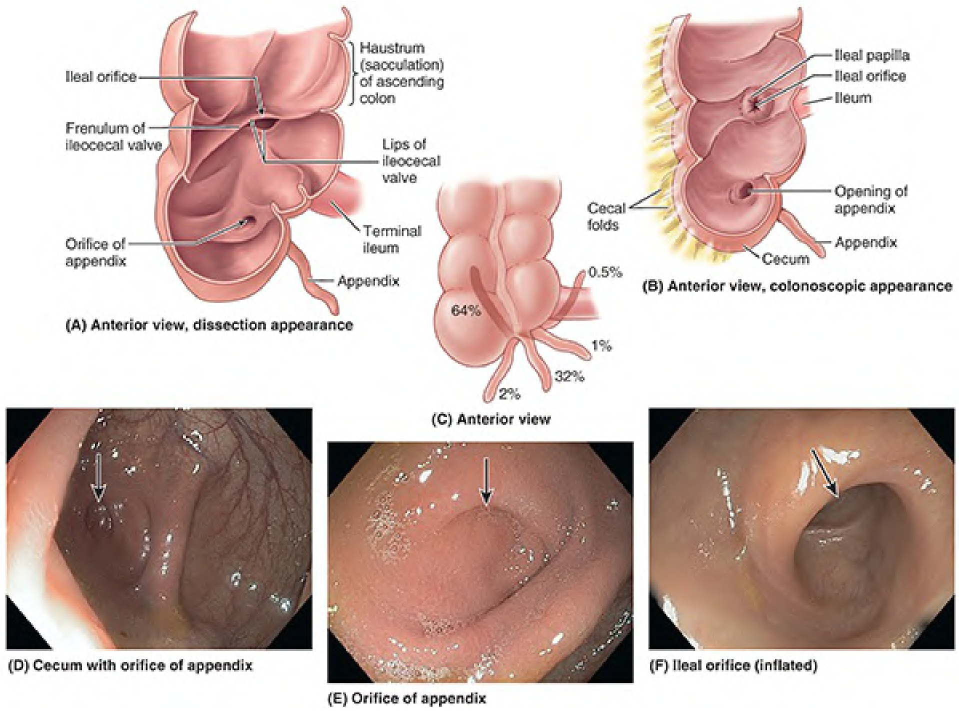


FIGURE 5.53. Terminal ileum, cecum, and appendix. A. Opened air-dried cecum. Observe the ileocecal valve and ileal orifice. The frenulum is a fold (more evident in cadavers) that runs from the ileocecal valve along the wall at the junction of the cecum and ascending colon. **B.** Endoscopic (living) appearance of ileocecal valve. **C.** Approximate incidences of various locations of the appendix, based on an analysis of 10,000 cases. **D–F.** Colonoscopic views (arrows indicate orifices).

The cecum usually lies within 2.5 cm of the inguinal ligament; it is almost entirely enveloped by peritoneum and can be lifted freely. However, the cecum has no mesentery. Because of its relative freedom, it may be displaced from the iliac fossa, but it is commonly bound to the lateral abdominal wall by one or more **cecal folds** of peritoneum (Fig. 5.53B). The terminal ileum enters the cecum obliquely and partly invaginates into it.

In dissection, the **ileal orifice** enters the cecum between **ileocolic lips** (superior and inferior), folds that meet laterally forming ridges called the **frenula of the ileal orifice** (Fig. 5.53A). It was believed that when the cecum is distended or when it contracts, the lips and frenula actively tighten, closing the valve to prevent reflux from the cecum into the ileum. However, direct observation by endoscopy in living persons does not support this description. The circular muscle is poorly developed around the orifice; therefore, the valve is unlikely to have any sphincteric action that controls passage of the intestinal contents from the ileum into the cecum. The orifice is usually closed by tonic contraction, however, appearing as an **ileal papilla** on the cecal side (Fig. 5.53B). The papilla probably serves as a relatively passive flap valve, preventing

reflux from the cecum into the ileum as contractions occur to propel contents up the ascending colon and into the transverse colon (Magee & Dalley, 1986).

The **appendix** (vermiform appendix; L. vermis, worm-like) is a blind intestinal diverticulum (6–10 cm in length) that contains masses of lymphoid tissue. It arises from the posteromedial aspect of the cecum inferior to the ileocecal junction. The appendix has a short triangular mesentery, the **meso-appendix**, which derives from the posterior side of the mesentery of the terminal ileum (Fig. 5.52A). The meso-appendix attaches to the cecum and the proximal part of the appendix. The position of the appendix is variable, but it is usually retrocecal (Fig. 5.53C; see the Clinical Box "Position of Appendix" in this chapter).

The arterial supply of the cecum is from the **ileocolic artery**, the terminal branch of the SMA (Figs. 5.54 and 5.55; Table 5.9). The **appendicular artery**, a branch of the ileocolic artery, supplies the appendix. Venous drainage from the cecum and appendix flow through a tributary of the SMV, the **ileocolic vein** (Fig. 5.56A).

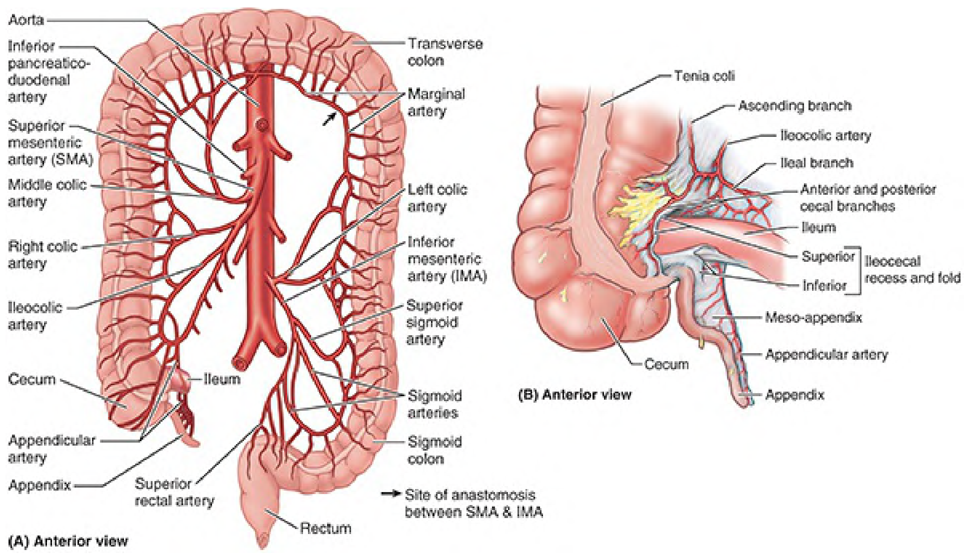


FIGURE 5.54. **Arterial supply to large intestine and appendix. A.** Overview. **B.** Arteries of the ileocecal region.

TABLE 5.9. ARTERIAL SUPPLY TO INTESTINES

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution
Superior mesenteric	Abdominal aorta	Runs in root of mesentery to ileocecal junction	Part of gastrointestinal tract derived from midgut
Intestinal (jejunal and ileal) (n = 15–18)	Superior mesenteric artery	Passes between two layers of mesentery	Jejunum and ileum
Middle colic		Ascends retroperitoneally and passes between layers of transverse mesocolon	Transverse colon
Right colic		Passes retroperitoneally to reach ascending colon	Ascending colon
Ileocolic	Terminal branch	Runs along root of mesentery and divides	Ileum, cecum, and ascending colon

	of superior mesenteric artery	into ileal and colic branches	
Appendicular	Ileocolic artery	Passes between layers of meso-appendix	Appendix
Inferior mesenteric	Abdominal aorta	Descends retroperitoneally to left of abdominal aorta	Supplies part of gastrointestinal tract derived from hindgut
Left colic	Inferior mesenteric artery	Passes retroperitoneally toward left to descending colon	Descending colon
Sigmoid (n = 3–4)		Passes retroperitoneally toward left to descending colon	Descending and sigmoid colon
Superior rectal	Terminal branch of inferior mesenteric artery	Descends retroperitoneally to rectum	Proximal part of rectum
Middle rectal	Internal iliac artery	Passes retroperitoneally to rectum	Midpart of rectum
Inferior rectal	Internal pudendal artery	Crosses ischio-anal fossa to reach rectum	Distal part of rectum and anal canal

Lymphatic drainage of the cecum and appendix passes to lymph nodes in the meso-appendix and to the ileocolic lymph nodes that lie along the ileocolic artery (Fig. 5.56B). Efferent lymphatic vessels pass to the superior mesenteric lymph nodes.

The nerve supply to the cecum and appendix derives from the sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves from the superior mesenteric plexus (Fig. 5.56C). The sympathetic nerve fibers originate in the lower thoracic part of the spinal cord, and the parasympathetic nerve fibers derive from the vagus nerves. Afferent nerve fibers from the appendix accompany the sympathetic nerves to the T10 segment of the spinal cord (see "Innervation of Abdominal Viscera").

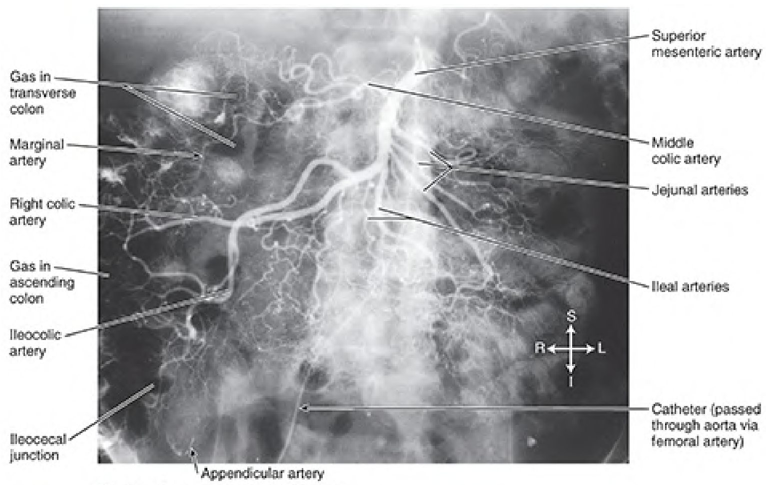
COLON

The **colon** has four parts—ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid—that succeed one another in an arch (see Figs. 5.43C and 5.52). The colon encircles the small intestine, the ascending colon lying to the right of the small intestine, the transverse colon superior and/or anterior to it, the descending colon to the left of it, and the sigmoid colon inferior to it.

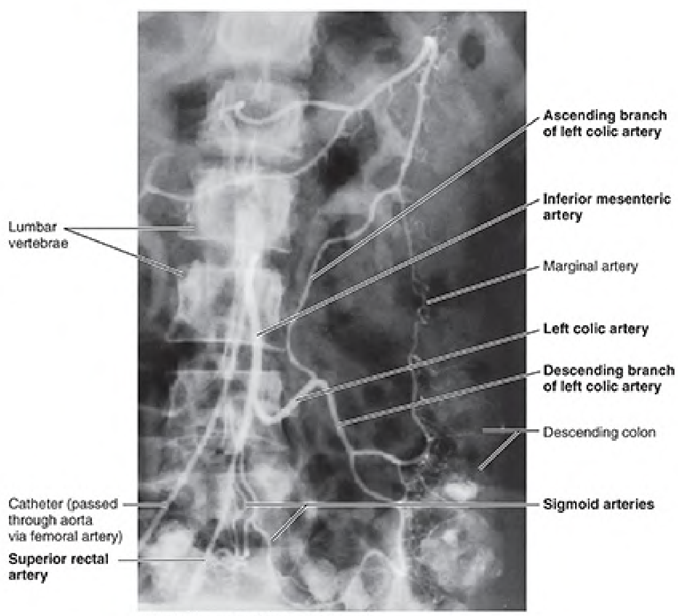
The **ascending colon** is the second part of the large intestine. It passes superiorly on the right side of the abdominal cavity from the cecum to the right lobe of the liver, where it turns to the left at the **right colic flexure** (hepatic flexure). This flexure lies deep to the 9th and 10th ribs and is overlapped by the inferior part of the liver.

The ascending colon is narrower than the cecum and is secondarily retroperitoneal along the right side of the posterior abdominal wall. The ascending colon is usually covered by peritoneum anteriorly and on its sides; however, in approximately 25% of people, it has a short mesentery. The ascending colon is separated from the anterolateral abdominal wall by the greater omentum. A deep vertical groove lined with parietal peritoneum, the right paracolic gutter, lies between the lateral aspect of the ascending colon and the adjacent abdominal wall (see Fig. 5.49A).

The arterial supply to the ascending colon and right colic flexure is from branches of the SMA, the ileocolic and **right colic arteries** (Figs. 5.54 and 5.55; Table 5.9). These arteries anastomose with each other and with the right branch of the middle colic artery, the first of a series of anastomotic arcades that is continued by the left colic and sigmoid arteries to form a continuous arterial channel, the **marginal artery** (juxtacolic artery). This artery parallels and extends the length of the colon close to its mesenteric border.



(A) Superior mesenteric arteriogram



(B) Inferior mesenteric arteriogram

FIGURE 5.55. **Superior and inferior mesenteric arteriograms. A.** Arteriogram of branches of superior mesenteric artery. Radiopaque dye was injected into the bloodstream by means of the catheter introduced into the femoral artery and advanced through the iliac arteries and aorta to the opening of the superior mesenteric artery. **B.** Arteriogram of branches of inferior mesenteric artery.

Venous drainage from the ascending colon flows through tributaries of the SMV, the ileocolic and **right colic veins** (Fig. 5.56A). The lymphatic drainage passes first to the **epicolic** and **paracolic lymph nodes**, next to the ileocolic and intermediate **right colic lymph nodes**, and

from them to the superior mesenteric lymph nodes (Fig. 5.56B). The nerve supply to the ascending colon is derived from the superior mesenteric nerve plexus (Fig. 5.56C).

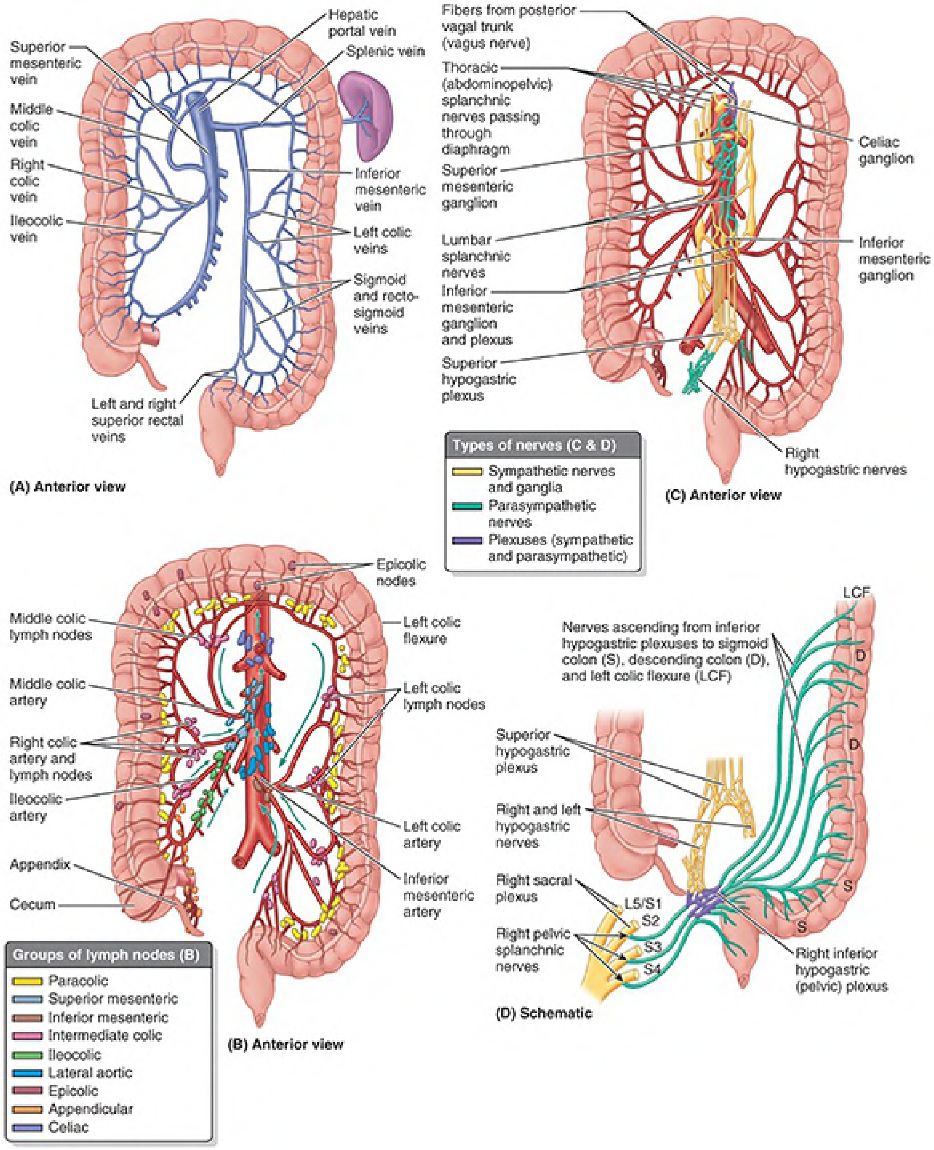


FIGURE 5.56. Veins, lymph nodes, and nerves of large intestine. A. Venous drainage. Pattern of drainage by the superior and inferior mesenteric veins corresponds to the pattern of supply by the superior and inferior mesenteric arteries. **B.** Lymphatic drainage. Lymph from the large intestine flows sequentially to epicolic nodes (on the gut), paracolic nodes (along mesenteric border), intermediate colic nodes (along the colic arteries), and then to the superior or inferior mesenteric nodes and the intestinal trunks. **C.** Innervation. Innervation of the colon occurs by means of mixed peri-arterial plexuses extending from the superior and inferior mesenteric ganglia along the respective arteries. **D.** Parasympathetic innervation of descending and sigmoid colon. Parasympathetic fibers from S2 to S4 spinal cord levels ascend independently from the inferior hypogastric (pelvic) plexuses to reach the sigmoid colon, descending colon, and distal transverse colon.

The **transverse colon** is the third, longest, and most mobile part of the large intestine (Fig. 5.52). It crosses the abdomen from the right colic flexure to the left colic flexure, where it turns inferiorly to become the descending colon. The **left colic flexure** (splenic flexure) is usually

more superior, more acute, and less mobile than the right colic flexure. It lies anterior to the inferior part of the left kidney and attaches to the diaphragm through the phrenicocolic ligament (see Fig. 5.26). The transverse colon and its mesentery, the transverse mesocolon, loop down, often inferior to the level of the iliac crests (Fig. 5.57B). The mesentery is adherent to or fused with the posterior wall of the omental bursa. The **root of the transverse mesocolon** (see Fig. 5.49A) lies along the inferior border of the pancreas and is continuous with the parietal peritoneum posteriorly. Being freely movable, the transverse colon is variable in position, usually hanging to the level of the umbilicus (L3 vertebral level) (Fig. 5.57A). However, in tall thin people, the transverse colon may extend into the pelvis (Fig. 5.57B).

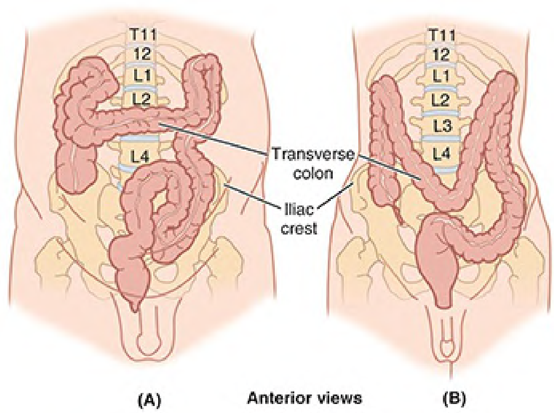


FIGURE 5.57. **Effect of body type (body habitus) on disposition of transverse colon. A.** A heavily built hypersthenic individual with a short thorax and a long abdomen. This individual is likely to have a transverse colon that is placed high. **B.** Individual with a slender asthenic physique. They are likely to have a transverse colon that dips down toward or into the pelvis.

The arterial supply of the transverse colon is mainly from the **middle colic artery** (Figs. 5.54 and 5.55; Table 5.9), a branch of the SMA. However, the transverse colon may also receive arterial blood from the right and left colic arteries via anastomoses, part of the series of anastomotic arcades that collectively form the **marginal artery** (of Drummond, juxtacolic artery).

Venous drainage of the transverse colon is through the SMV (Fig. 5.56A). The lymphatic drainage of the transverse colon is to the **middle colic lymph nodes**, which in turn drain to the superior mesenteric lymph nodes (Fig. 5.56B).

The nerve supply of the transverse colon is from the superior mesenteric nerve plexus via the peri-arterial plexuses of the right and middle colic arteries (Fig. 5.56C). These nerves transmit sympathetic, parasympathetic (vagal), and visceral afferent nerve fibers (see "Innervation of Abdominal Viscera").

The **descending colon** occupies a secondarily retroperitoneal position between the left colic flexure and the left iliac fossa, where it is continuous with the sigmoid colon (Fig. 5.52). Thus, peritoneum covers the colon anteriorly and laterally and binds it to the posterior abdominal wall. Although retroperitoneal, the descending colon, especially in the iliac fossa, has a short mesentery in approximately 33% of people; however, it is usually not long enough to cause

volvulus (twisting) of the colon. As it descends, the colon passes anterior to the lateral border of the left kidney. As with the ascending colon, the descending colon has a paracolic gutter (the left one) on its lateral aspect (see Fig. 5.49A).

The **sigmoid colon**, characterized by its S-shaped loop of variable length, links the descending colon and the rectum (Fig. 5.52). The sigmoid colon extends from the iliac fossa to the third sacral (S3) vertebra, where it joins the rectum. The termination of the teniae coli, approximately 15 cm from the anus, indicates the rectosigmoid junction.

The sigmoid colon usually has a long mesentery—the **sigmoid mesocolon**—and therefore has considerable freedom of movement, especially its middle part (see the Clinical Box "Volvulus of Sigmoid Colon" in this chapter). The **root of the sigmoid mesocolon** has an inverted V-shaped attachment, extending first medially and superiorly along the external iliac vessels and then medially and inferiorly from the bifurcation of the common iliac vessels to the anterior aspect of the sacrum. The left ureter and the division of the left common iliac artery lie retroperitoneally, posterior to the apex of the root of the sigmoid mesocolon. The omental appendices of the sigmoid colon are long (Fig. 5.52A); they disappear when the sigmoid mesentery terminates. The teniae coli also disappear as the longitudinal muscle in the wall of the colon broadens to form a complete layer in the rectum.

The arterial supply of the descending and sigmoid colon is from the left colic and **sigmoid arteries**, branches of the inferior mesenteric artery (Fig. 5.54; Table 5.9). Thus, at approximately the left colic flexure, a second transition occurs in the blood supply of the abdominal part of the alimentary canal: the SMA supplying blood to that part orad (proximal) to the flexure (derived from the embryonic midgut) and the IMA supplying blood to the part aborad (distal) to the flexure (derived from the embryonic hindgut). During surgical colon resection, visualization of the anastomosis between the SMA and IMA is important to ensure a continuous blood supply. The sigmoid arteries descend obliquely to the left, where they divide into ascending and descending branches. The superior branch of the most superior sigmoid artery anastomoses with the descending branch of the left colic artery, thereby forming a part of the marginal artery. Venous drainage from the descending colon and sigmoid colon is provided by the inferior mesenteric vein (IMV), flowing usually into the splenic vein and then the hepatic portal vein on its way to the liver (Fig. 5.56A; see Fig. 5.75B).

Lymphatic drainage from the descending colon and sigmoid colon is conducted through vessels passing to the epicolic and paracolic nodes and then through the **intermediate colic lymph nodes** along the left colic artery (Fig. 5.56B). Lymph from these nodes passes to the **inferior mesenteric lymph nodes** that lie around the IMA. However, lymph from the left colic flexure may also drain to the superior mesenteric lymph nodes.

Orad (toward the mouth, or proximal) to the left colic flexure, sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers travel together from the abdominal aortic plexus via peri-arterial plexuses to reach the abdominal part of the alimentary tract (Fig. 5.56C); however, aborad (away from the mouth, or distal) to the flexure, they follow separate routes.

The sympathetic nerve supply of the descending and sigmoid colon is from the lumbar part of the sympathetic trunk via lumbar (abdominopelvic) splanchnic nerves, the superior mesenteric

plexus, and the peri-arterial plexuses following the inferior mesenteric artery and its branches.

The parasympathetic nerve supply is from the pelvic splanchnic nerves via the inferior hypogastric (pelvic) plexus and nerves, which ascend retroperitoneally from the plexus, mostly independent of the arterial supply to this part of the gastrointestinal tract (Fig. 5.56D). Orad to the middle of the sigmoid colon, visceral afferents conveying pain sensation pass retrogradely with sympathetic fibers to thoracolumbar spinal sensory ganglia, whereas those carrying reflex information travel with the parasympathetic fibers to vagal sensory ganglia. Aborad to the middle of the sigmoid colon, all visceral afferents follow the parasympathetic fibers retrogradely to the sensory ganglia of spinal nerves S2–S4 (see "Innervation of Abdominal Viscera").

RECTUM AND ANAL CANAL

The **rectum** is the fixed (primarily retroperitoneal and subperitoneal) terminal part of the large intestine. It is continuous with the sigmoid colon at the level of S3 vertebra. The junction is at the inferior end of the mesentery of the sigmoid colon (Fig. 5.52). The rectum is continuous inferiorly with the anal canal. These parts of the large intestine are described with the pelvis in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum.

CLINICAL BOX

ESOPHAGUS AND STOMACH

Esophageal Varices

Because the submucosal veins of the inferior esophagus drain to both the portal and systemic venous systems, they constitute a portosystemic anastomosis. In portal hypertension (an abnormally increased blood pressure in the portal venous system), blood is unable to pass through the liver via the hepatic portal vein, causing a reversal of flow in the esophageal tributary. The large volume of blood causes the submucosal veins to enlarge markedly, forming esophageal varices (Fig. B5.7). These distended collateral channels may rupture and cause severe hemorrhage that is life-threatening and difficult to control surgically. Esophageal varices commonly develop in persons who have developed alcoholic cirrhosis (fibrous scarring) of the liver (see the Clinical Box "Cirrhosis of Liver" in this chapter).

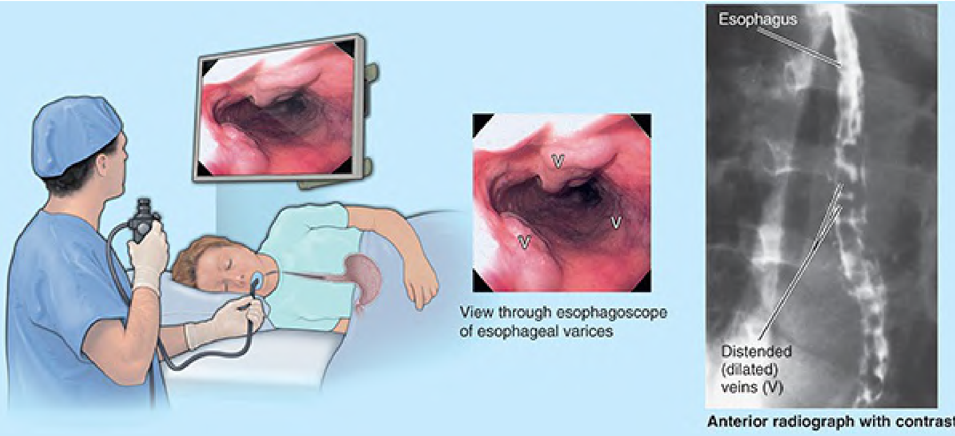


FIGURE B5.7. Esophageal varices.

Pyrosis

Pyrosis (G., burning), or "heartburn," is the most common type of esophageal discomfort or substernal pain. This burning sensation in the abdominal part of the esophagus is usually the result of regurgitation of small amounts of food or gastric fluid into the lower esophagus (gastro-esophageal reflux disorder; GERD). Pyrosis may also be associated with hiatal hernia (see the Clinical Box "Hiatal Hernia"). As indicated by its common name, heartburn, pyrosis is commonly perceived as a "chest" (vs. abdominal) sensation.

Bariatric Surgery

Bariatric surgery is performed on morbidly obese individuals to achieve weight loss. Currently, bariatric surgery is the most frequently performed stomach surgery. It includes a variety of approaches aimed at reducing stomach volume (restrictive procedures), reducing nutrient absorptive area (malabsorptive procedures), or a combination of the two (mixed procedures), many of which can be performed laparoscopically. Restrictive procedures include the application of fixed or adjustable bands externally to the stomach (banding), or resecting part of the stomach to create a small pouch or tubular "sleeve," or folding of the stomach onto itself (fundoplication). Malabsorptive procedures involve rerouting of the connection of the stomach with the small intestine and/or of variable portions of the small intestine. Mixed procedures include gastric bypass surgery, once the most common bariatric procedure but declining markedly in frequency. In addition to achieving significant weight loss, the procedures have reduced especially diabetes but also other comorbidities including malabsorption syndrome and sleep apnea. Strict postsurgical adherence to healthy eating habits is an important factor in the success of bariatric surgery. Complications from bariatric surgery have a relatively high frequency.

Displacement of Stomach

Pancreatic pseudocysts and abscesses in the omental bursa may push the stomach anteriorly. This displacement is usually visible in lateral radiographs of the stomach and other diagnostic images, such as computed tomography (CT). Following pancreatitis (inflammation of the pancreas), the posterior wall of the stomach may adhere to the part of the posterior wall of the omental bursa that covers the pancreas. This adhesion occurs because of the close relationship of the posterior wall of the stomach to the pancreas.

Hiatal Hernia

A hiatal (hiatus) hernia is a protrusion of part of the stomach into the mediastinum through the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm. The hernias occur most often in people after middle age, possibly because of weakening of the muscular part of the diaphragm and widening of the esophageal hiatus. Although clinically there are several types of hiatal hernia, the two main types are paraesophageal hiatal hernia and sliding hiatal hernia (Skandalakis et al., 1996).

In the less common para-esophageal hiatal hernia, the cardia remains in its normal position (Fig. B5.8A). However, a pouch of peritoneum, often containing part of the fundus of the stomach, extends through the esophageal hiatus anterior to the esophagus. In these cases, usually no regurgitation of gastric contents occurs because the cardial orifice is in its normal position.

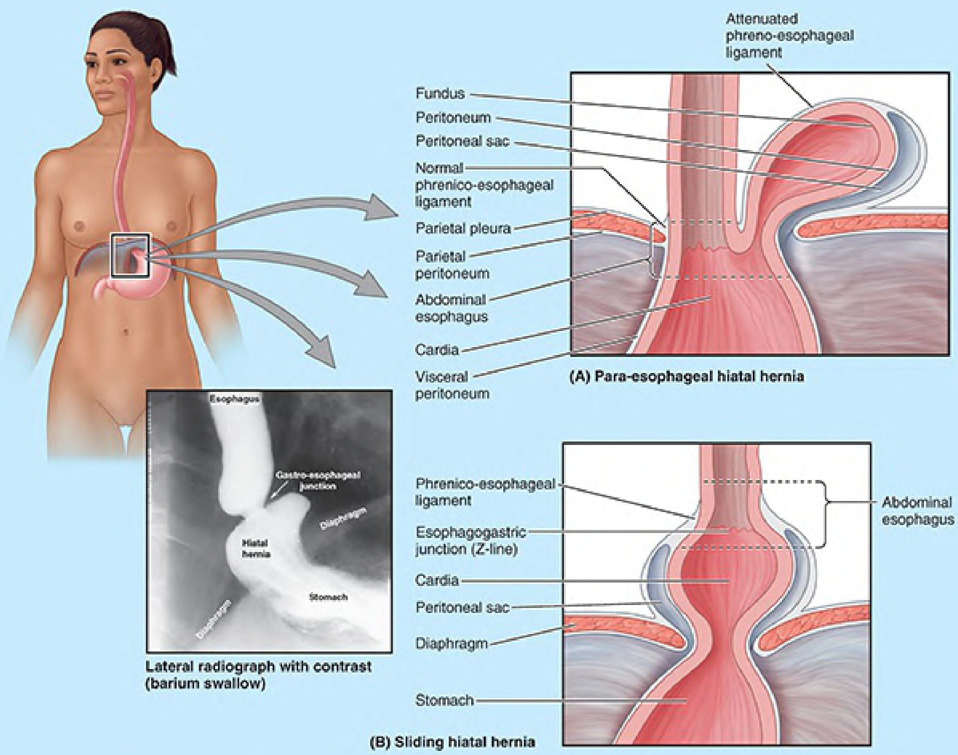


FIGURE B5.8. **Hiatal hernia.**

In the common sliding hiatal hernia, the abdominal part of the esophagus, the cardia, and

parts of the fundus of the stomach slide superiorly through the esophageal hiatus into the thorax, especially when the person lies down or bends over (Fig. B5.8B). Some regurgitation of stomach contents into the esophagus is possible because the clamping action of the right crus of the diaphragm on the inferior end of the esophagus (the lower “esophageal sphincter”) is weak.

Pylorospasm

Spasmodic contraction of the pylorus sometimes occurs in infants, usually between 2 and 12 weeks of age. Pylorospasm is characterized by failure of the smooth muscle fibers encircling the pyloric canal to relax normally. As a result, food does not pass easily from the stomach into the duodenum and the stomach becomes overly full, usually resulting in discomfort and vomiting.

Congenital Hypertrophic Pyloric Stenosis

Congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis is a marked thickening of the smooth muscle (hypertrophy) in the pylorus that affects approximately 1 of every 150 male infants and 1 of every 750 female infants (Moore et al., 2020). Normally, gastric peristalsis pushes chyme through the pyloric canal and orifice into the small intestine at irregular intervals (Fig. B5.9A). In neonates with pyloric stenosis, the elongated overgrown pylorus is hard and the pyloric canal is narrow (Fig. B5.9B), resisting gastric emptying. Proximally, the stomach may become secondarily dilated because of the pyloric stenosis (narrowing). Although the cause of congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis is unknown, genetic factors appear to be involved because of this condition’s high incidence in infants of monozygotic twins.

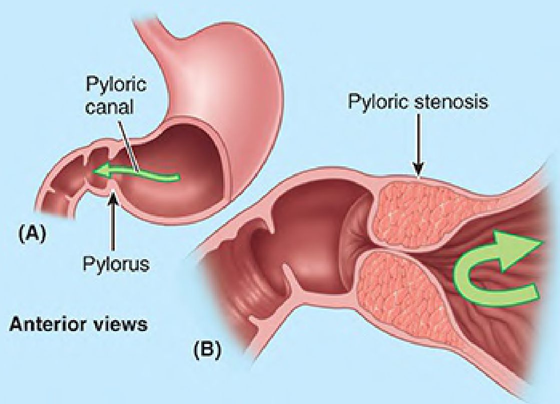


FIGURE B5.9. Congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis. A. Normal passage through the pyloric sphincter. **B.** Stoppage of flow due to stenosis.

Pyloric stenosis can be treated by a simple operation, pyloromyotomy, in which the surgeon cuts through the hypertrophied circular muscle layer of the pylorus, allowing free passage.

Carcinoma of Stomach

When the body or pyloric part of the stomach contains a malignant tumor, the mass may be palpable. Using a gastroscope, physicians can inspect the mucosa of the air-inflated stomach, enabling them to observe gastric lesions and take biopsies (Fig. B5.10). The extensive lymphatic drainage of the stomach and the impossibility of removing all the lymph nodes create a surgical problem. The nodes along the splenic vessels can be excised by removing the spleen, gastrosplenic and splenorenal ligaments, and the body and tail of the pancreas. Involved nodes along the gastro-omental vessels can be removed by resecting the greater omentum; however, removal of the aortic and celiac nodes and those around the head of the pancreas is difficult. Most gastric cancers are detected too late for good surgical control.

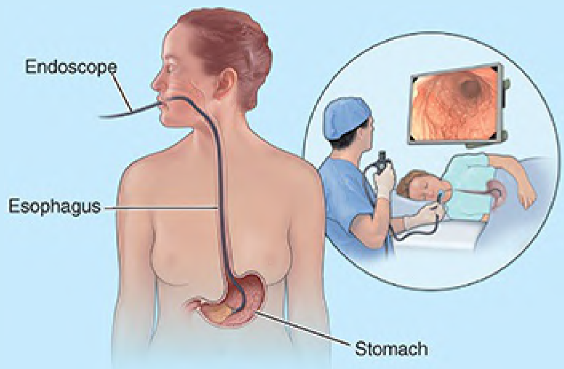


FIGURE B5.10. Endoscopic examination of stomach.

Gastrectomy and Lymph Node Resection

Total gastrectomy (removal of the entire stomach) is uncommon. Partial gastrectomy (removal of part of the stomach) may be performed to remove a region of the stomach involved by a carcinoma, for example. Because the anastomoses of the arteries supplying the stomach provide good collateral circulation, one or more arteries may be ligated during this procedure without seriously affecting the blood supply to the part of the stomach remaining in place. When removing the pyloric antrum, for example, the greater omentum is incised parallel and inferior to the right gastro-omental artery, requiring ligation of all the omental branches of this artery. The omentum does not degenerate, however, because of anastomoses with other arteries, such as the omental branches of the left gastro-omental artery, which are still intact. Partial gastrectomy to remove a carcinoma usually also requires removal of all involved regional lymph nodes. Because cancer frequently occurs in the pyloric region, removal of the pyloric lymph nodes as well as the right gastro-omental lymph nodes also receiving lymph drainage from this region is especially important. As stomach cancer becomes more advanced, the lymphogenous dissemination of malignant cells involves the celiac lymph nodes, to which all gastric nodes drain.

Gastric Ulcers, Peptic Ulcers, Helicobacter pylori, and Vagotomy

Most ulcers of the stomach (gastric ulcers) and duodenum are associated with an infection of a specific bacterium, Helicobacter pylori. People experiencing severe chronic anxiety are most prone to the development of peptic ulcers. They often have gastric acid secretion rates that are markedly higher than normal between meals. It is thought that the high acid in the stomach and duodenum overwhelms the bicarbonate normally produced by the duodenum and reduces the effectiveness of the mucous lining, leaving it vulnerable to H. pylori. The bacteria erode the protective mucous lining of the stomach, inflaming the mucosa and making it vulnerable to the effects of the gastric acid and digestive enzymes (pepsin) produced by the stomach.

If the ulcer erodes into the gastric arteries, it can cause life-threatening bleeding. Because the secretion of acid by parietal cells of the stomach is largely controlled by the vagus nerves, vagotomy (surgical section of the vagus nerves) was performed historically to reduce the production of acid in some people with chronic or recurring ulcers. The procedure has become relatively rare due to testing for and treatment of H. pylori. Vagotomy may also be performed in conjunction with resection of an ulcerated area to reduce acid secretion. Truncal vagotomy (surgical section of the vagal trunks) was rarely performed because the innervation of other abdominal structures was also sacrificed (Fig. B5.11A). Proximal gastric vagotomy denervated the stomach but the vagal branches to the pylorus, liver and biliary ducts, intestines, and celiac plexus were preserved (Fig. B5.11B). Selective proximal vagotomy attempted to denervate even more specifically the area in which the parietal cells are located, hoping to affect the acid-producing cells while sparing other gastric function (motility) stimulated by the vagus nerve (Fig. B5.11C).

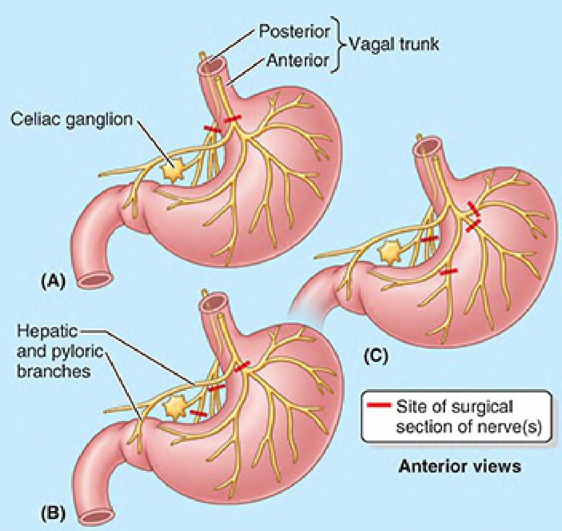


FIGURE B5.11. **Vagotomy. A.** Truncal. **B.** Selective gastric. **C.** Selective proximal. Red bars indicate site of surgical section of nerve.

A posterior gastric ulcer may erode through the stomach wall into the pancreas, resulting in referred pain to the back. In such cases, erosion of the splenic artery may potentially result in severe hemorrhage into the peritoneal cavity. Pain impulses from the stomach are carried by visceral afferent fibers that accompany sympathetic nerves. This fact was evident because the pain of a recurrent peptic ulcer sometimes persisted after complete vagotomy, whereas patients who had a bilateral sympathectomy could have a perforated peptic ulcer without experiencing pain.

Visceral Referred Pain

Pain is an unpleasant sensation associated with actual or potential tissue damage and mediated by specific nerve fibers to the brain, where its conscious appreciation may be modified. Organic pain arising from an organ such as the stomach varies from dull to severe; however, the pain is poorly localized. It radiates to the dermatome level, which receives visceral afferent fibers from the organ concerned. Visceral referred pain from a gastric ulcer, for example, is referred to the epigastric region because the stomach is supplied by pain afferents that reach the T7 and T8 spinal sensory ganglia and spinal cord segments through the greater splanchnic nerve (Fig. B5.12). The brain interprets the pain as though the irritation occurred in the skin of the epigastric region, which is also supplied by the same sensory ganglia and spinal cord segments.

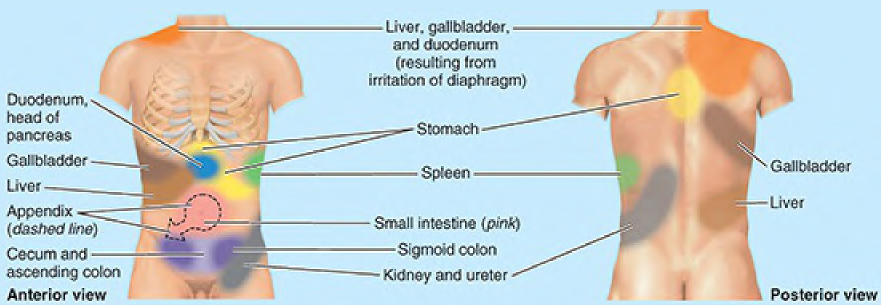


FIGURE B5.12. Visceral referred pain.

Pain arising from the parietal peritoneum is of the somatic type and is usually severe. The site of its origin can be localized. The anatomical basis for this localization of pain is that the parietal peritoneum is supplied by somatic sensory fibers through thoracic nerves, whereas a viscus such as the appendix is supplied by visceral afferent fibers in the lesser splanchnic nerve. Inflamed parietal peritoneum is extremely sensitive to stretching. When digital pressure is applied to the anterolateral abdominal wall over the site of inflammation, the parietal peritoneum is stretched. When the fingers are suddenly removed, extreme localized pain is usually felt, known as rebound tenderness.

SMALL AND LARGE INTESTINE

Duodenal Ulcers

Duodenal ulcers (peptic ulcers) are inflammatory erosions of the duodenal mucosa. Most (65%) duodenal ulcers occur in the posterior wall of the superior part of the duodenum within 3 cm of the pylorus. Occasionally, an ulcer (especially one located anteriorly) perforates the duodenal wall, permitting the contents to enter the peritoneal cavity and causing peritonitis. Because the superior part of the duodenum closely relates to the liver, gallbladder, and pancreas, any of these structures may become adherent to the inflamed duodenum. They may also become ulcerated as the lesion continues to erode the tissue that surrounds it. Although intraluminal bleeding from duodenal ulcers commonly occurs, producing a sometimes massive upper GI hemorrhage, erosion of the gastroduodenal artery (a posterior relation of the superior part of the duodenum) by a perforating duodenal ulcer results in severe hemorrhage into the peritoneal cavity (hemoperitoneum).

Developmental Changes in Mesoduodenum

During the early fetal period, the entire duodenum has a mesentery; however, most of it fuses with the posterior abdominal wall because of pressure from the overlying transverse colon. Because the attachment of the mesoduodenum to the wall is secondary (occurred through formation of a fusion fascia; discussed under "Embryology of Peritoneal Cavity"), the duodenum and the closely associated pancreas can be separated (surgically mobilized) from the underlying retroperitoneal viscera during surgical operations involving the duodenum without endangering the blood supply to the duodenum or the underlying kidney or the ureter.

Paraduodenal Hernias

There are two or three inconstant folds and fossae (recesses) around the duodenojejunal flexure (Fig. B5.13). The paraduodenal fold and fossa are large and lie to the left of the ascending part of the duodenum. If a loop of intestine enters this fossa, it may strangulate. During repair of a paraduodenal hernia, care must be taken not to injure the branches of the inferior mesenteric artery and vein or the ascending branches of the left colic artery, which are closely related to the paraduodenal fold and fossa.

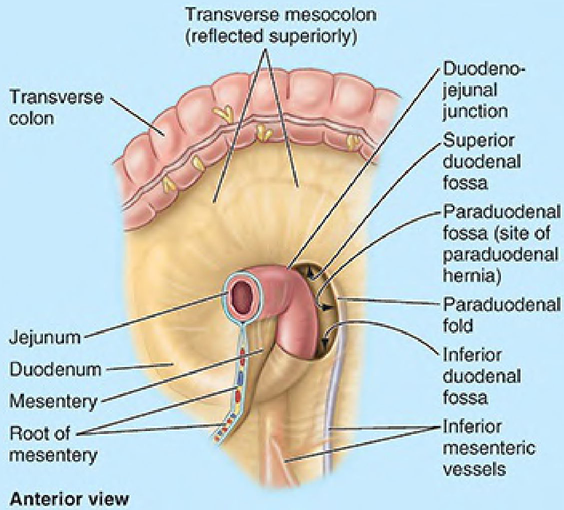


FIGURE B5.13. Paraduodenal hernia.

Brief Review of Embryological Rotation of Midgut

An understanding of the rotation of the midgut clarifies the adult arrangement of the intestines. The primordial gut comprises the foregut, midgut, and hindgut. Pain arising from foregut derivatives—esophagus, stomach, pancreas, duodenum, liver, and biliary ducts—localizes in the epigastric region. Pain arising from midgut derivatives—the small intestine distal to bile duct, cecum, appendix, ascending colon, and most of the transverse colon—localizes in the peri-umbilical region. Pain arising from hindgut derivatives—the distal part of the transverse colon, descending colon, sigmoid colon, and rectum—localizes in the hypogastric region (see Table 5.1).

For 4 weeks, the rapidly growing midgut, supplied by the SMA, is physiologically herniated into the proximal part of the umbilical cord (Fig. B5.14A). It is attached to the umbilical vesicle (yolk sac) by the omphalo-enteric duct (yolk stalk). As it returns to the abdominal cavity, the midgut rotates 270° around the axis of the SMA (Fig. B5.14B, C). As the relative size of the liver and kidneys decreases, the midgut returns to the abdominal cavity as increased space becomes available. As the parts of the intestine reach their definitive positions, their mesenteric attachments undergo modification (Fig. B5.14D, E). Some mesenteries shorten and others disappear (e.g., most of duodenal mesentery) as most of the duodenum and pancreas and the ascending and descending colons become secondarily retroperitoneal. Some of the consequences of normal rotation of the midgut include the following: (1) the duodenum passes posterior to the SMA; (2) the transverse colon and mesocolon are transversely oriented, pass anterior to the SMA, and divide the peritoneal cavity into supra- and infracolic compartments; (3) the ascending and descending colons lie on the right and left sides, respectively, and are retroperitoneal; (4) most of the jejunum occupies the left superolateral part of the infracolic compartment; and (5) most of the ileum, cecum, and appendix occupy the right inferolateral part of the infracolic compartment. Malrotation of the midgut (intestine) results in several congenital anomalies

such as volvulus (twisting) of the intestine (Moore et al., 2020).

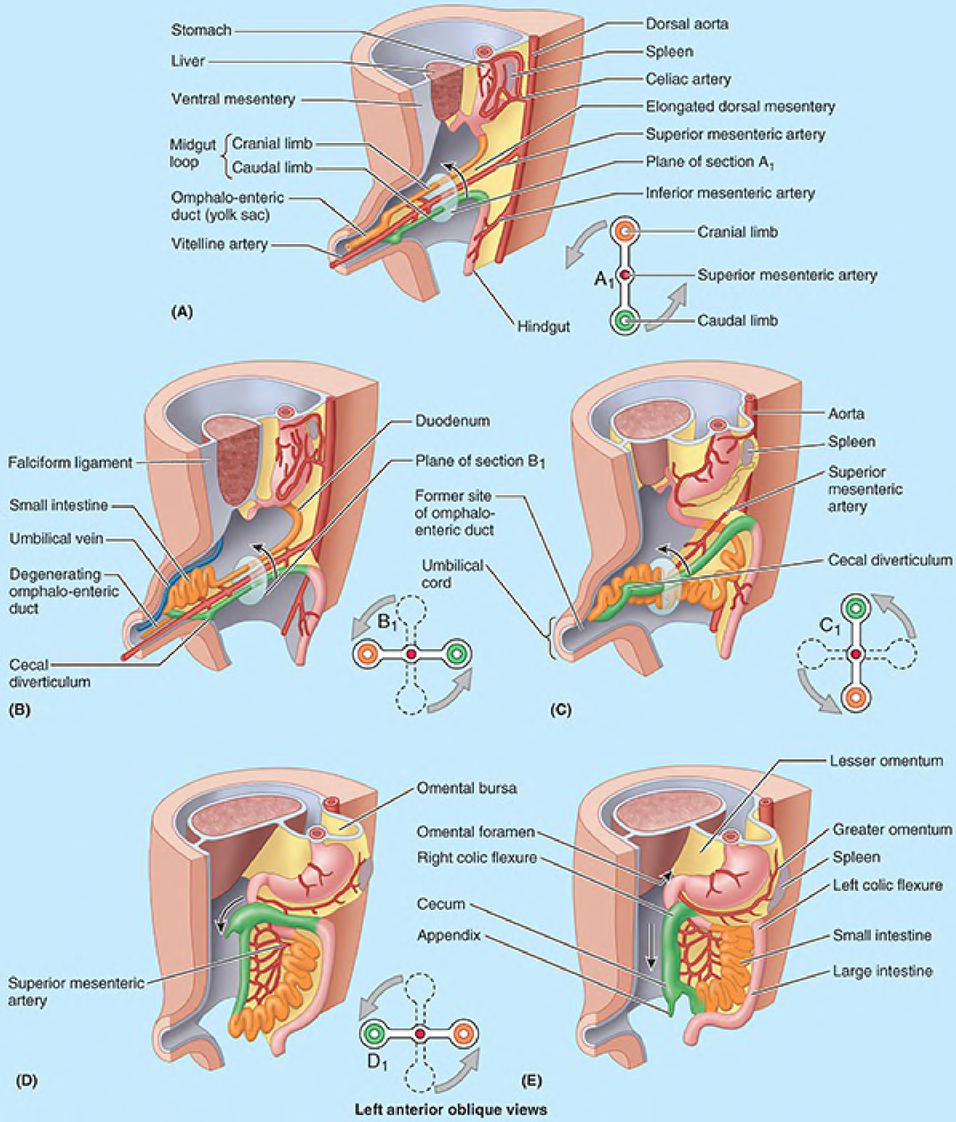


FIGURE B5.14. **Embryological rotation of midgut (arrows indicate direction of gut rotation).**

Navigating Small Intestine

When portions of the small intestine have been delivered through a surgical wound, the proximal (orad—toward the mouth) and distal (aborad—away from the mouth) ends of a loop of intestine are not apparent. If you try to follow the intestine in a particular direction (e.g., attempting to follow the ileum to the ileocecal junction), it is important to know which end is which. Normal peristalsis may not be present to provide a clue. Place your hands on each side of the intestine and its mesentery and then follow the mesentery with your fingers to its root (its attachment to the posterior abdominal wall), untwisting the loop of intestine as necessary. Once the mesentery and intestine are straightened to match the direction of the root, the cranial end must be the orad end, and the

caudal end the aborad end.

Ischemia of Intestine

Occlusion of the vasa recta (see Fig. 5.48B) by emboli (e.g., blood clots formed elsewhere), thrombus (organized clots forming locally), or atherosclerotic occlusion (plaque) results in ischemia of the part of the intestine concerned. If the ischemia is severe, necrosis (tissue death) of the involved segment results and ileus (obstruction of the intestine) of the paralytic type occurs. Ileus is accompanied by a severe colicky pain, along with abdominal distension, vomiting, and often fever and dehydration. Emboli from the heart sent inferiorly via the descending aorta tend to lodge in the SMA or its branches rather than other abdominal branches (e.g., the celiac, renal, or inferior mesenteric arteries) because the SMA arises at a less acute angle from the aorta. If the condition is diagnosed early (e.g., using a superior mesenteric arteriogram), the obstructed part of the vessel may be cleared surgically and the bowel may be preserved.

Ileal Diverticulum

An ileal diverticulum (or Meckel diverticulum) is a congenital anomaly that occurs in 1–2% of the population. A remnant of the proximal part of the embryonic omphalo-enteric duct (yolk stalk), the diverticulum usually appears as a finger-like pouch (Fig. B5.15A). It is always at the site of attachment of the omphalo-enteric duct on the antimesenteric border (border opposite the mesenteric attachment) of the ileum. The diverticulum is usually located 30–60 cm from the ileocecal junction in infants and 50 cm in adults. It may be free (74%) or attached to the umbilicus (26%) (Fig. B5.15B). Although its mucosa is mostly ileal in type, it may also include areas of acid-producing gastric tissue, pancreatic tissue, or jejunal or colonic mucosa. An ileal diverticulum may become inflamed and produce pain mimicking that produced by appendicitis.

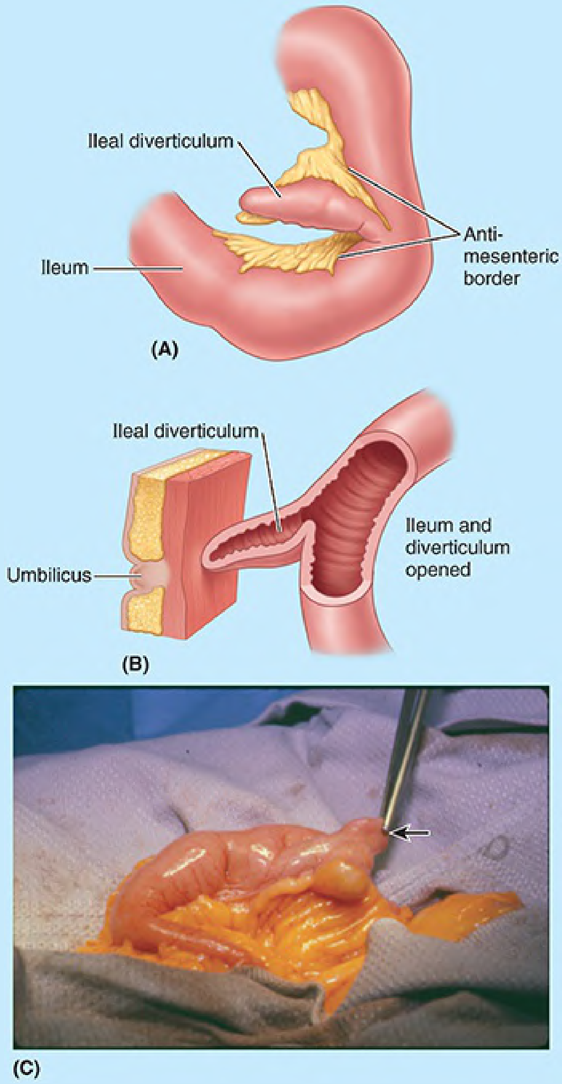


FIGURE B5.15. Ileal diverticulum.

Position of Appendix

A retrocecal appendix extends superiorly toward the right colic flexure and is usually freely mobile (see Fig. 5.53C). When it lies beneath the peritoneal covering of the cecum, it may become fused to the cecum or the posterior abdominal wall. An inflamed appendix in this position is more difficult to remove, especially laparoscopically. The appendix may project inferiorly toward or across the pelvic brim. The anatomical position of the appendix determines the symptoms and the site of muscular spasm and tenderness when the appendix is inflamed. The base of the appendix typically lies in the LRQ, deep to a point that is one third of the way along the oblique line joining the right anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) to the umbilicus (McBurney point on spino-umbilical line). However, see subhepatic cecum under "Appendectomy" in this Clinical Box.

Appendicitis

Acute inflammation of the appendix, appendicitis, is a common cause of an acute abdomen (severe abdominal pain arising suddenly). Usually, digital pressure over the McBurney point registers maximum abdominal tenderness. Appendicitis in young people is usually caused by hyperplasia of lymphatic follicles in the appendix that occludes the lumen. In older people, the obstruction usually results from a fecalith (coprolith), a concretion that forms around a center of fecal matter. When secretions from the appendix cannot escape, the appendix swells, stretching the visceral peritoneum. The pain of appendicitis usually commences as a vague pain in the peri-umbilical region because afferent pain fibers enter the spinal cord at the T10 level (see Fig. B5.12). Later, severe pain in the right lower quadrant results from irritation of the parietal peritoneum lining the posterior abdominal wall (usually formed by the psoas and iliacus muscles in the region of the appendix). Thus, extending the thigh at the hip joint may elicit pain.

Acute infection of the appendix may result in thrombosis (clotting of blood) in the appendicular artery, which often results in ischemia, gangrene (death of tissue), and perforation of an inflamed appendix. Rupture of the appendix results in infection of the peritoneum (peritonitis), increased abdominal pain, nausea and/or vomiting, and abdominal rigidity (stiffness of abdominal muscles). Flexion of the right thigh ameliorates the pain because it causes relaxation of the right psoas muscle, a flexor of the thigh.

Appendectomy

Surgical removal of the appendix (appendectomy) may be performed through a transverse or gridiron (muscle-splitting) incision centered at the McBurney point in the right lower quadrant (see the Clinical Box “Abdominal Surgical Incisions” in this chapter). Traditionally, a gridiron incision is made perpendicular to the spino-umbilical line, but a transverse incision is also commonly used. The choice of incision site and type is at the surgeon’s discretion. While typically the inflamed appendix is deep to the McBurney point, the site of maximal pain and tenderness indicates the actual location.

Laparoscopic appendectomy has become a standard procedure selectively utilized for removing the appendix. The peritoneal cavity is first inflated with carbon dioxide gas, distending the abdominal wall, to provide viewing and working space. The laparoscope is passed through a small incision in the anterolateral abdominal wall (e.g., near or through the umbilicus). One or two other small incisions (“portals”) are required for surgical (instrument) access to the appendix and related vessels.

When surgeons have trouble finding the base of the appendix, or the appendix itself (usually due to inflammatory changes), they look for the convergence of the three teniae on the surface of the cecum, after having first found the region of the ileocecal valve.

In unusual cases of malrotation of the intestine, or failure of descent of the cecum, the appendix is not in the lower right quadrant (LRQ). When the cecum is high (subhepatic cecum), the appendix is in the right hypochondriac region (see Table 5.1) and the pain

localizes there, not in the LRQ. The appendix is also displaced cephalad by the enlarging uterus during pregnancy; hence, diagnosis and removal of appendix later in pregnancy must take this into account. A high appendix can be difficult to find via the classic McBurney incision.

Mobile Ascending Colon

When the inferior part of the ascending colon has a mesentery, the cecum and proximal part of the colon are abnormally mobile. This condition, present in approximately 11% of individuals, may cause cecal bascule (folding of the mobile cecum) or, less commonly, cecal volvulus (L. volvo, to roll—twisting of the mobile cecum), both of which may cause obstruction of the intestine. Cecopexy (fixation) may avoid volvulus and possible obstruction of the colon. In this anchoring procedure, a tenia coli of the cecum and proximal ascending colon is sutured to the abdominal wall.

Colitis, Colectomy, Ileostomy, and Colostomy

Chronic inflammation of the colon (ulcerative colitis, Crohn disease) is characterized by severe inflammation and ulceration of the colon and rectum. In some cases, a colectomy is performed, during which the terminal ileum and colon, as well as the rectum and anal canal, are removed. An ileostomy is then constructed to establish a stoma, an artificial opening of the ileum through the skin of the anterolateral abdominal wall (Fig. B5.16A). The terminating ileum is delivered through and sutured to the periphery of an opening in the anterolateral abdominal wall, allowing the egress of its contents. Similarly, following a partial colectomy, a colostomy or sigmoidostomy is performed to create an artificial cutaneous opening for the terminal part of the colon (Fig. B5.16B). An ostomy may be permanent or temporary. Sometimes surgeons create a temporary ostomy to allow the bowel to heal after resection and anastomosis. The ostomy prevents fecal contents from going through the anastomosis; thus, if the anastomosis has a small imperfection causing a leak, the result is not catastrophic peritonitis.

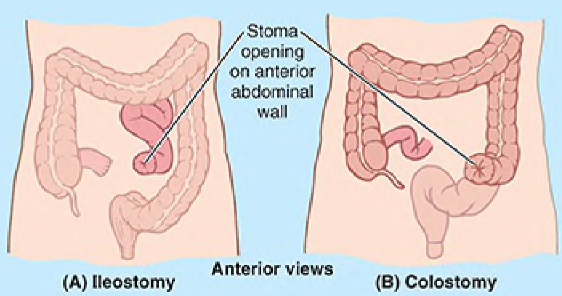


FIGURE B5.16. **Ostomies. A.** Ileostomy. **B.** Colostomy.

Colonoscopy, Sigmoidoscopy, and Colorectal Cancer

The interior of the colon can be observed and photographed in a procedure called colonoscopy or coloscopy, using a long, flexible fiberoptic endoscope (colonoscope) inserted into the colon through the anus and rectum (Fig. B5.17A). The interior of the sigmoid colon is observed with a sigmoidoscope, a shorter endoscope, in a procedure called sigmoidoscopy. Small instruments can be passed through both instruments and used to facilitate minor operative procedures, such as biopsies or removal of polyps. Most tumors of the large intestine occur in the sigmoid colon and rectum (often near the rectosigmoid junction) or ascending colon. Colorectal cancers have different characteristics based on their location within the colon or rectum. For example, tumors in the ascending colon are more common among women and older patients, whereas rectosigmoidal tumors are more common among men and younger patients. Cancers of the transverse or descending colon are less common.

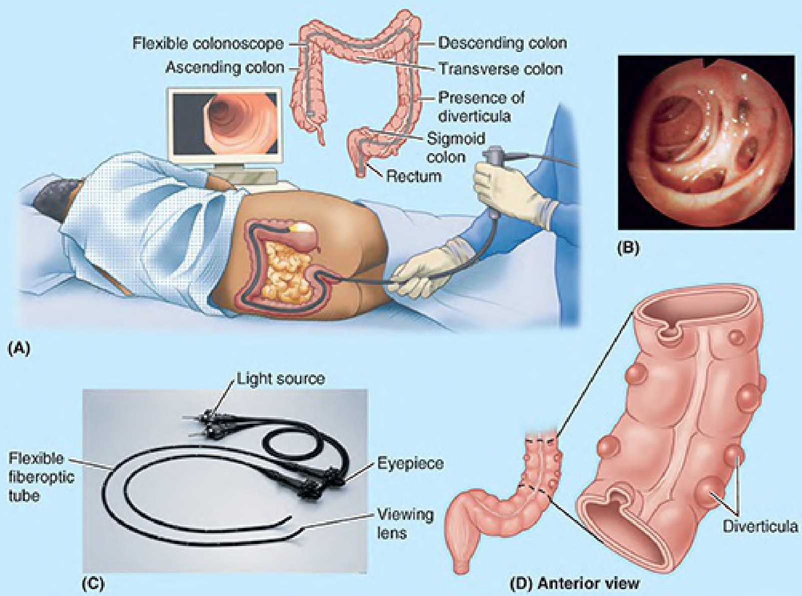


FIGURE B5.17. Examination of large intestine. A. Colonoscopic procedure. **B.** Diverticulosis of colon, as photographed through a colonoscope. **C.** Parts of a colonoscope. Photographs can be taken by a camera attached to the colonoscope. **D.** External appearance of diverticula of sigmoid colon.

Diverticulosis

Diverticulosis is a disorder in which multiple false diverticula (external evaginations or outpocketings of the mucosa of the colon) develop along the intestine. It primarily affects middle-aged and elderly people. Diverticulosis is commonly found in the sigmoid colon (Fig. B5.17D), typically ending where the teniae expand and converge at the colorectal junction. Colonic diverticula are not true diverticula because they are formed from protrusions of mucous membrane only, evaginated through weak points (separations) developed between muscle fibers rather than involving the whole wall of the colon. They occur most commonly on the mesenteric side of the two nonmesenteric teniae coli, where nutrient arteries perforate the muscle coat to reach the submucosa. Diverticula

are subject to infection and rupture, leading to diverticulitis, which can distort and erode the nutrient arteries, leading to hemorrhage. Diets high in fiber have proven beneficial in reducing the occurrence of diverticulosis.

Volvulus of Sigmoid Colon

Rotation and twisting of the mobile loop of the sigmoid colon and mesocolon—volvulus of the sigmoid colon (Fig. B5.18)—result in obstruction of the lumen of the descending colon and any part of the sigmoid colon proximal to the twisted segment. Obstipation (inability of the stool or flatus to pass) and ischemia (absence of blood flow) of the looped part of the sigmoid colon result. Volvulus is an acute emergency, and unless it resolves spontaneously, necrosis (tissue death) of the involved segment may occur if untreated.

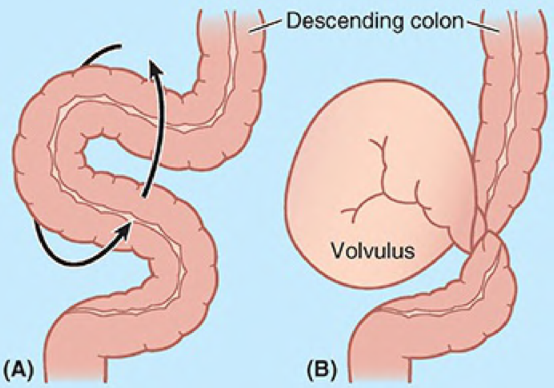


FIGURE B5.18. Volvulus of sigmoid colon (arrows indicate direction of gut rotation).

The Bottom Line

Esophagus and Stomach

Esophagus: The esophagus is a tubular conveyer of food, delivering it from the pharynx to the stomach. ■ The esophagus penetrates the diaphragm at the T10 vertebral level, passing through its right crus, which decussates around it to form the physiological inferior esophageal sphincter. ■ The trumpet-shaped abdominal part, composed entirely of smooth muscle innervated by the esophageal nerve plexus, enters the cardial part of the stomach. ■ The abdominal part of the esophagus receives blood from esophageal branches of the left gastric artery (from the celiac trunk). ■ Submucosal veins drain to both the systemic and portal venous systems and thus constitute portocaval anastomoses that may become varicose in the presence of portal hypertension. ■ Internally, in living people, the

esophagus is demarcated from the stomach by an abrupt mucosal transition, the Z-line.

Stomach: The stomach is the dilated portion of the alimentary tract between the esophagus and the duodenum, specialized to accumulate ingested food and prepare it chemically and mechanically for digestion. ■ The stomach lies asymmetrically in the abdominal cavity, to the left of the midline and usually in the upper left quadrant. However, the position of the stomach can vary markedly in persons of different body types. ■ The abdominal portion of the esophagus enters its cardial portion, and its pyloric part leads to the exit to the duodenum. ■ Gastric emptying is controlled by the pylorus. ■ In life, the internal surface of the stomach is covered with a protective layer of mucus, overlying gastric folds that disappear with distension. ■ The stomach is intraperitoneal, with the lesser omentum (enclosing the anastomoses between right and left gastric vessels) attached to its lesser curvature and the greater omentum (enclosing the anastomoses between right and left gastro-omental vessels) attached to its greater curvature. ■ The vessels of its curvatures serve the body and pyloric antrum of the stomach. The upper body and fundus are served by short and posterior gastric vessels. ■ The trilaminar smooth muscle of the stomach and gastric glands receives parasympathetic innervation from the vagus; sympathetic innervation to the stomach is vasoconstrictive and antiperistaltic.

Small and Large Intestines

Small intestine: The duodenum is the first part of the small intestine, receiving chyme mixed with gastric acid and pepsin directly from the stomach via the pylorus. ■ The duodenum follows a mostly secondarily retroperitoneal, C-shaped course around the head of the pancreas. ■ The descending part of the duodenum receives both the bile and the pancreatic ducts. ■ At or just distal to this level, a transition occurs in the blood supply of the abdominal part of the digestive tract. Proximal to this point, it is supplied by branches of the celiac trunk; distal to this point, it is supplied by branches of the superior mesenteric artery.

The jejunum and ileum make up the convolutions of the small intestine occupying most of the infracolic division of the greater sac of the peritoneal cavity. ■ The jejunum is mostly to the upper left, and the ileum to the lower right. Together, they are 3–4 m in length (in the cadaver; less in living people owing to the structures' tonicity). The orad (proximal relative to the mouth) two fifths is jejunum and the aborad (distal) three fifths is ileum, although there is no clear line of transition. The diameter of the small intestine becomes increasingly smaller as the semifluid chyme progresses through it. ■ Its blood vessels also become smaller, but the number of tiers of arcades increases while the length of the vasa recta decreases. ■ The fat in which the vessels are embedded within the mesentery increases, making these features more difficult to see. ■ The ileum is characterized by an abundance of lymphoid tissue, aggregated into lymphoid nodules

(Peyer patches). ■ The intraperitoneal portion of the small intestine (jejunum and ileum) is suspended by the mesentery, the root of which extends from the duodenojejunal junction to the left of the midline at the L2 level to the ileocecal junction in the right iliac fossa. ■ An ileal diverticulum is a congenital anomaly present in 1–2% of the population. It is 3–6 cm in length and is typically located 50 cm from the ileocecal junction in adults.

Large intestine: The large intestine consists of the cecum; appendix; ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid colon; rectum; and anal canal. ■ The large intestine is characterized by teniae coli, haustra, omental appendices, and a large caliber. ■ The large intestine begins at the ileocecal valve, but its first part, the cecum, is a pocket that hangs inferior to the valve. ■ The pouch-like cecum, the widest part of the large intestine, is completely intraperitoneal and has no mesentery, so that it is mobile within the right iliac fossa. ■ The ileocecal valve is a combination valve and weak sphincter, actively opening periodically to allow entry of ileal contents and forming a largely passive one-way valve between the ileum and the cecum, preventing reflux. ■ The appendix is an intestinal diverticulum, rich in lymphoid tissue, that enters the medial aspect of the cecum, usually deep to the junction of the lateral third and medial two thirds of the spino-umbilical line. Most commonly, the appendix is retrocecal in position, but 32% of the time, it descends into the lesser pelvis. ■ The cecum and appendix are supplied by branches of the ileocecal vessels.

The colon has four parts: ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid. ■ The ascending colon is a superior, secondarily retroperitoneal continuation of the cecum, extending between the level of the ileocecal valve and the right colic flexure. ■ The transverse colon, suspended by the transverse mesocolon between the right and left flexures, is the longest and most mobile part of the large intestine. The level to which it descends depends largely on body type (habitus). ■ The descending colon occupies a secondarily retroperitoneal position between the left colic flexure and left iliac fossa, where it is continuous with the sigmoid colon. ■ The S-shaped sigmoid colon, suspended by the sigmoid mesocolon, is highly variable in length and disposition, ending at the rectosigmoid junction. The teniae, haustra, and omental appendices cease at the junction, located anterior to the third sacral segment.

The part of large intestine orad (proximal) to the left colic flexure (cecum, appendix, and ascending and transverse colons) is served by branches of the superior mesenteric vessels. Aborad (distal) to the flexure, most of the remainder of the large intestine (descending and sigmoid colons and superior rectum) is served by the inferior mesenteric vessels. ■ The left colic flexure also marks the divide between cranial (vagal) and sacral (pelvic splanchnic) parasympathetic innervation of the alimentary tract. ■ Sympathetic fibers are conveyed to the large intestine via abdominopelvic (lesser and lumbar)

splanchnic nerves via the prevertebral (superior and inferior mesenteric) ganglia and periarterial plexuses. ■ The middle of the sigmoid colon marks a divide in the sensory innervation of the abdominal alimentary tract: Orad, visceral afferents for pain travel retrogradely with sympathetic fibers to spinal sensory ganglia, whereas those conveying reflex information travel with parasympathetic fibers to vagal sensory ganglia; aborad, both types of visceral afferent fibers travel with parasympathetic fibers to spinal sensory ganglia.

Spleen

The **spleen** is an ovoid, usually purplish, pulpy mass about the size and shape of one's fist. It is relatively delicate and considered the most vulnerable abdominal organ. The spleen is located in the superolateral part of the left upper quadrant (LUQ), or hypochondrium of the abdomen, where it enjoys protection of the inferior thoracic cage (Fig. 5.58A, B). As the largest of the lymphatic organs, it participates in the body's defense system as a site of lymphocyte (white blood cell) proliferation and of immune surveillance and response.

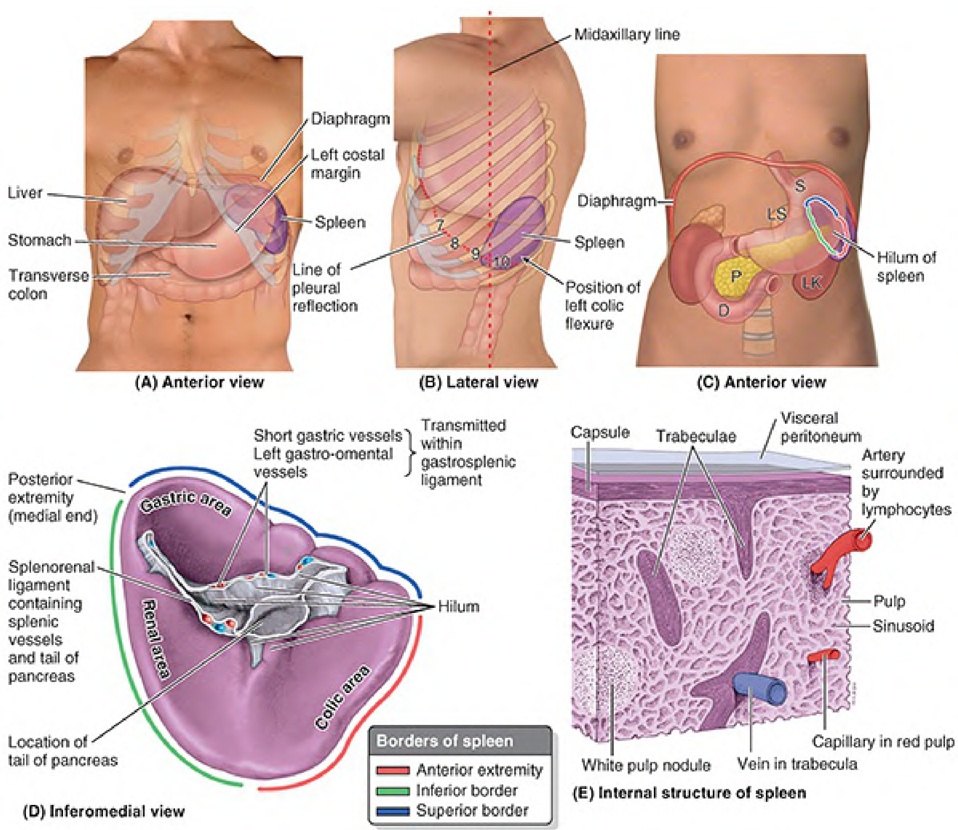


FIGURE 5.58. Anatomy of spleen. A and B. Surface projection. **C.** Surface projection of spleen and pancreas relative to diaphragm and posterior abdominal viscera. D, duodenum; LK, left kidney; LS, left suprarenal gland; P, pancreas; S, stomach. **D.** Visceral surface of spleen. Notches are characteristic of the superior border. Concavities on the visceral surface are impressions formed by the structures in contact with the spleen. **E.** Internal structure of spleen.

Prenatally, the spleen is a hematopoietic (blood-forming) organ, but after birth, it is involved primarily in identifying, removing, and destroying expended red blood cells (RBCs) and broken-down platelets and in recycling iron and globin. The spleen serves as a blood reservoir, storing RBCs and platelets, and, to a limited degree, can provide a sort of "self-transfusion" as a response to the stress imposed by hemorrhage. In spite of its size and the many useful and important functions it provides, it is not a vital organ (not necessary to sustain life).

To accommodate these functions, the spleen is a soft, vascular (sinusoidal) mass with a relatively delicate fibroelastic capsule (Fig. 5.58E). The thin capsule is covered with a layer of visceral peritoneum that entirely surrounds the spleen except at the **splenic hilum**, where the splenic branches of the splenic artery and vein enter and leave (Fig. 5.58D). Consequently, it is capable of marked expansion and some relatively rapid contraction.

The spleen is a mobile organ, although it normally does not descend inferior to the costal (rib) region; it rests on the left colic flexure (Fig. 5.58A, B). It is associated posteriorly with the left 9th–11th ribs (its long axis is roughly parallel to the 10th rib) and separated from them by the diaphragm and the costodiaphragmatic recess—the cleft-like extension of the pleural cavity between the diaphragm and the lower part of the thoracic cage. The relations of the spleen are as follows:

- Anteriorly, the stomach
- Posteriorly, the left part of the diaphragm, which separates it from the pleura, lung, and ribs 9–11
- Inferiorly, the left colic flexure
- Medially, the left kidney

The spleen varies considerably in size, weight, and shape; however, it is usually approximately 12 cm long and 7 cm wide. (A nonmetric memory device exploits odd numbers: The spleen is 1 inch thick, 3 inches wide, and 5 inches long and weighs 7 ounces.)

The **diaphragmatic surface of the spleen** is convexly curved to fit the concavity of the diaphragm and curved bodies of the adjacent ribs (Fig. 5.58A–C). The close relationship of the spleen to the ribs that normally protect it can be a detrimental one in the presence of rib fractures (see the Clinical Box "Rupture of Spleen" in this chapter). The **anterior** and **superior borders of the spleen** are sharp and often notched, whereas its **posterior (medial) end** and **inferior border** are rounded (Fig. 5.58D). Normally, the spleen does not extend inferior to the left costal margin; thus, it is seldom palpable through the anterolateral abdominal wall unless it is enlarged. When it is hardened and enlarged to approximately three times its normal size, it moves inferior to the left costal margin, and its **superior (notched) border** lies inferomedially (see the Clinical Box "Splenectomy and Splenomegaly" in this chapter). The notched border is helpful when palpating an enlarged spleen because when the person takes a deep breath, the notches can often be palpated.

The spleen normally contains a large quantity of blood that is expelled periodically into the circulation by the action of the smooth muscle in its capsule and trabeculae. The large size of the splenic artery (or vein) indicates the volume of blood that passes through the spleen's capillaries

and sinuses. The thin **fibrous capsule of the spleen** is composed of dense, irregular, fibroelastic connective tissue that is thickened at the splenic hilum (Fig. 5.58E). Internally, the **trabeculae** (small fibrous bands), arising from the deep aspect of the capsule, carry blood vessels to and from the parenchyma or **splenic pulp**, the substance of the spleen.

The spleen contacts the posterior wall of the stomach and is connected to its greater curvature by the gastrosplenic ligament and to the left kidney by the **splenorenal ligament**. These ligaments, containing splenic vessels, are attached to the hilum of the spleen on its medial aspect (Fig. 5.58D). The splenic hilum is often in contact with the tail of the pancreas and constitutes the left boundary of the omental bursa.

The arterial supply of the spleen is from the **splenic artery**, the largest branch of the celiac trunk (Fig. 5.59A). It follows a tortuous course posterior to the omental bursa, anterior to the left kidney, and along the superior border of the pancreas. Between the layers of the splenorenal ligament, the splenic artery divides into five or more branches that enter the hilum. The lack of anastomosis of these arterial vessels within the spleen results in the formation of vascular segments of the spleen: two in 84% of spleens and three in the others, with relatively avascular planes between them, enabling subtotal splenectomy (see the Clinical Box "Splenectomy and Splenomegaly" in this chapter).

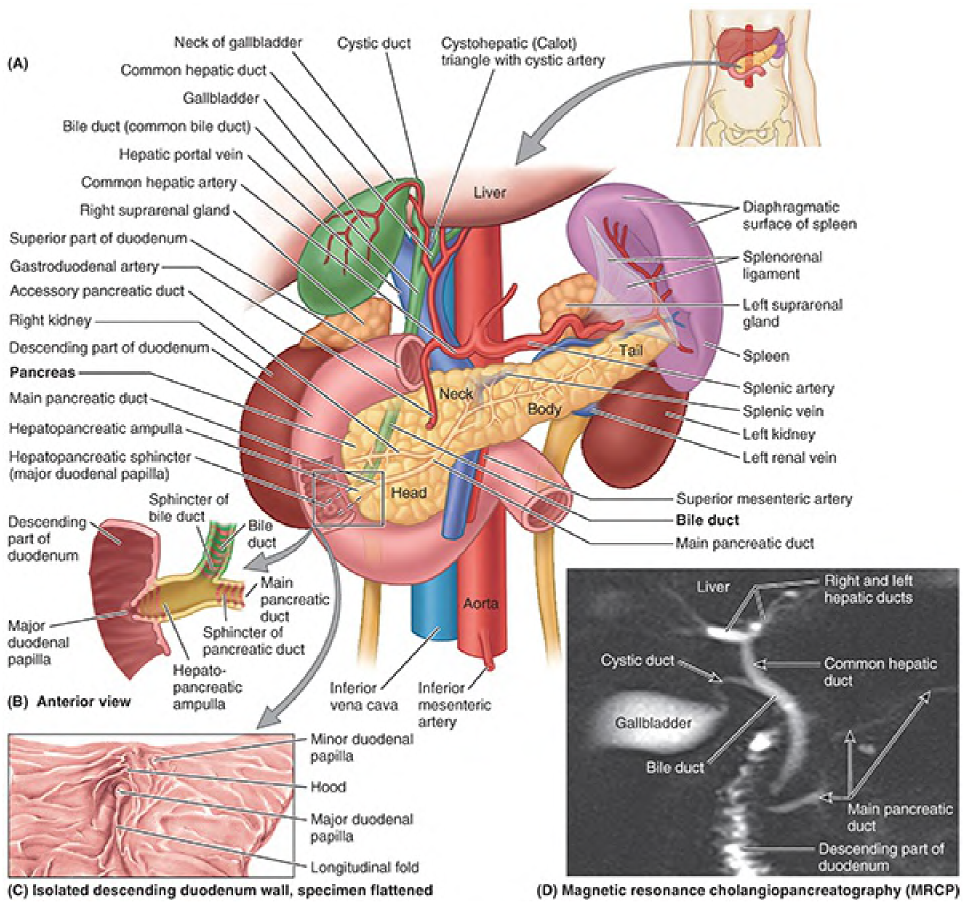


FIGURE 5.59. Spleen, pancreas, duodenum, and biliary ducts. A. Relationships of spleen, pancreas, and extrahepatic biliary ducts to other retroperitoneal viscera. **B.** Hepatopancreatic ampulla. The ampulla is the entry of the bile duct and pancreatic duct into the duodenum. **C.** Interior of descending part of duodenum showing major and minor duodenal

papillae. **D.** Endoscopic retrograde cholangiography and pancreatography showing bile and pancreatic ducts.

Venous drainage from the spleen flows via the **splenic vein**, formed by several tributaries that emerge from the hilum (Figs. 5.59A and 5.60B). It is joined by the IMV and runs posterior to the body and tail of the pancreas throughout most of its course. The splenic vein unites with the SMV posterior to the neck of the pancreas to form the hepatic portal vein.

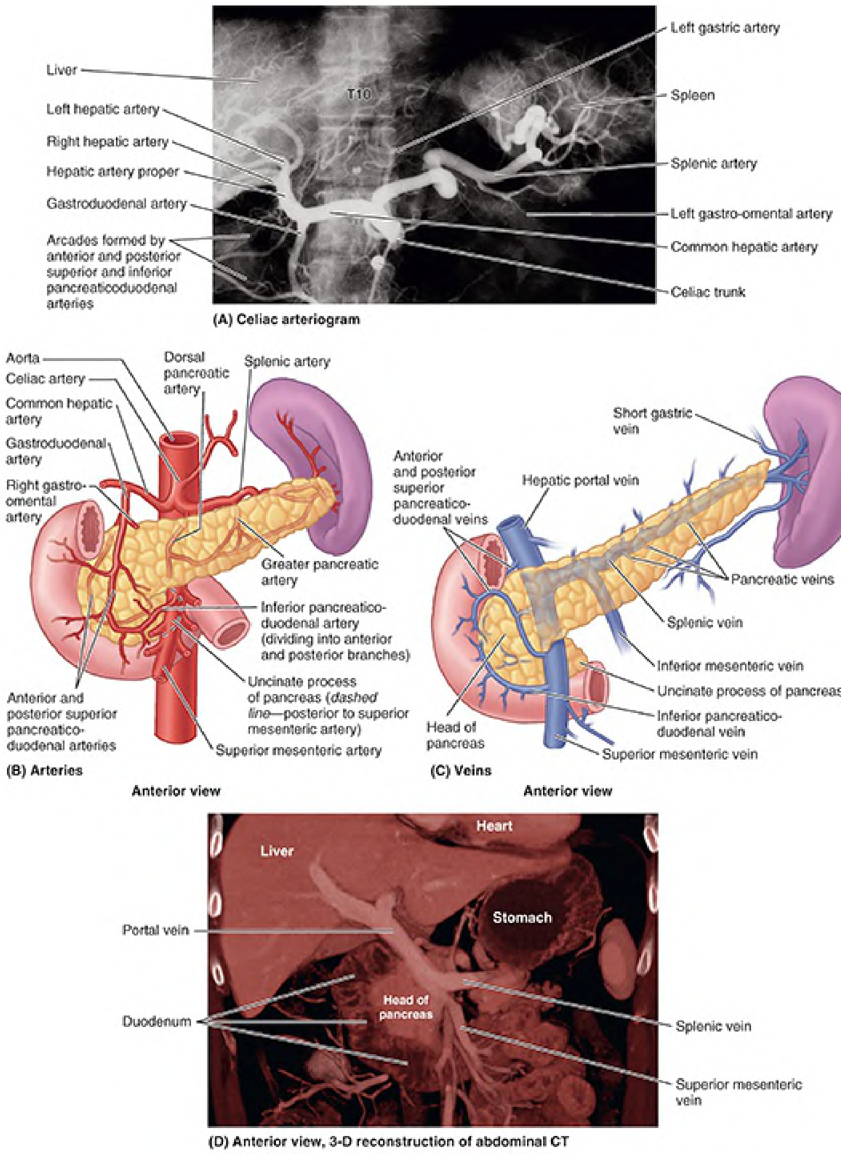


FIGURE 5.60. Arterial supply and venous drainage of pancreas. Because of the close relationship of the pancreas and duodenum, their blood vessels are the same in whole or in part. **A.** Arteriogram showing branches of celiac artery. Radiopaque dye was selectively injected into the lumen of the celiac artery. **B.** Arterial supply. Except for the inferior part of the pancreatic head (including uncinate process), the spleen and pancreas receive blood from the celiac artery. **C.** Venous drainage. **D.** 3-D reconstruction of abdominal CT scan (portal venogram). The union of SMV and splenic vein to form the hepatic portal vein in relation to the head of the pancreas is shown.

The splenic lymphatic vessels leave the lymph nodes in the splenic hilum and pass along the splenic vessels to the **pancreaticosplenic lymph nodes** en route to the celiac nodes (Fig. 5.61A).

The pancreaticosplenic nodes relate to the posterior surface and superior border of the pancreas.

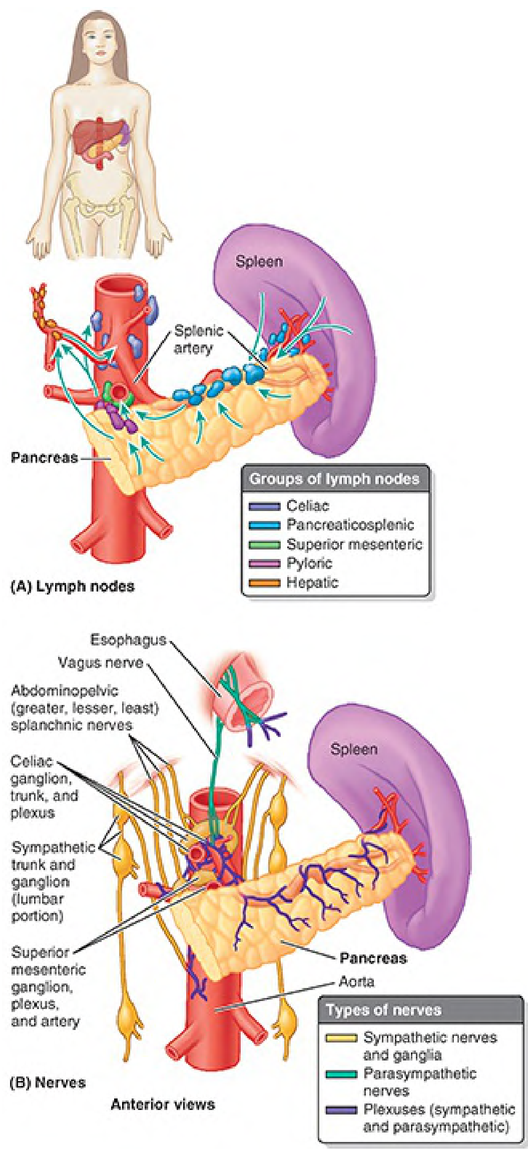


FIGURE 5.61. **Lymphatic drainage and innervation of pancreas and spleen. A.** Lymphatic drainage. The arrows indicate lymph flow to the lymph nodes. **B.** Innervation. The nerves of the pancreas are autonomic nerves from the celiac and superior mesenteric plexuses. A dense network of nerve fibers passes from the celiac plexus along the splenic artery to the spleen. Most are postsynaptic sympathetic fibers to smooth muscle of the splenic capsule, trabeculae, and intrasplenic vessels.

The nerves of the spleen, derived from the celiac plexus (Fig. 5.61B), are distributed mainly along branches of the splenic artery and are vasomotor in function.

Pancreas

The **pancreas** is an elongated, accessory digestive gland that lies retroperitoneally, overlying and transversely crossing the bodies of the L1 and L2 vertebra (the level of the transpyloric plane) on

the posterior abdominal wall (Fig. 5.58C). It lies posterior to the stomach between the duodenum on the right and the spleen on the left (Fig. 5.59A). The transverse mesocolon attaches to its anterior margin (see Fig. 5.39A). The pancreas produces

- an exocrine secretion (pancreatic juice from the acinar cells) that enters the duodenum through the main and accessory pancreatic ducts
- endocrine secretions (glucagon and insulin from the pancreatic islets [of Langerhans]) that enter the blood (Fig. 5.59D)

For descriptive purposes, the pancreas is divided into four parts: head, neck, body, and tail.

The **head of the pancreas** is the expanded part of the gland that is embraced by the C-shaped curve of the duodenum to the right of the superior mesenteric vessels just inferior to the transpyloric plane. It firmly attaches to the medial aspect of the descending and horizontal parts of the duodenum. The **uncinate process**, a projection from the inferior part of the pancreatic head, extends medially to the left, posterior to the SMA (Fig. 5.60A). The pancreatic head rests posteriorly on the IVC, right renal artery and vein, and left renal vein. On its way to opening into the descending part of the duodenum, the bile duct lies in a groove on the posterosuperior surface of the head or is embedded in its substance (Fig. 5.59A, B; see Fig. 5.44C).

The **neck of the pancreas** is short (1.5–2 cm) and overlies the superior mesenteric vessels, which form a groove in its posterior aspect (see Fig. 5.44B, C). The anterior surface of the neck, covered with peritoneum, is adjacent to the pylorus of the stomach. The SMV joins the splenic vein posterior to the neck to form the hepatic portal vein (Fig. 5.60).

The **body of the pancreas** continues from the neck and lies to the left of the superior mesenteric vessels, passing over the aorta and L2 vertebra, continuing just above the transpyloric plane posterior to the omental bursa. The anterior surface of the body of the pancreas is covered with peritoneum and lies in the floor of the omental bursa and forms part of the stomach bed (see Fig. 5.39A, B). The posterior surface of the body is devoid of peritoneum and is in contact with the aorta, SMA, left suprarenal gland, left kidney, and renal vessels (Fig. 5.59A).

The **tail of the pancreas** lies anterior to the left kidney, where it is closely related to the splenic hilum and the left colic flexure. The tail is relatively mobile and passes between the layers of the splenorenal ligament with the splenic vessels (Fig. 5.58D).

The **main pancreatic duct** begins in the tail of the pancreas and runs through the parenchyma of the gland to the pancreatic head: Here, it turns inferiorly and is closely related to the bile duct (Fig. 5.59A, B). The main pancreatic duct and bile duct usually unite to form the short, dilated **hepatopancreatic ampulla** (of Vater), which opens into the descending part of the duodenum at the summit of the major duodenal papilla (Fig. 5.59B, C). At least 25% of the time, the ducts open into the duodenum separately.

The **sphincter of the pancreatic duct** (around the terminal part of the pancreatic duct), the **sphincter of the bile duct** (choledochal sphincter—around the termination of the bile duct), and the hepatopancreatic sphincter (of Oddi)—around the **hepatopancreatic ampulla**—are smooth muscle sphincters that prevent reflux of digestive secretions and duodenal content. Of these, only the sphincter of the bile duct plays a significant role in controlling the flow of digestive secretion

(bile) into the duodenum.

The **accessory pancreatic duct** (Fig. 5.59A) opens into the duodenum at the summit of the minor duodenal papilla (Fig. 5.59C). Usually, the accessory duct communicates with the main pancreatic duct. In some cases, the main pancreatic duct is smaller than the accessory pancreatic duct and the two may not be connected. In such cases, the accessory duct carries most of the pancreatic juice.

The arterial supply of the pancreas is derived mainly from the branches of the markedly tortuous splenic artery. Multiple **pancreatic arteries** form several arcades with pancreatic branches of the gastroduodenal and superior mesenteric arteries (Fig. 5.60A). As many as 10 branches may pass from the splenic artery to the body and tail of the pancreas. The anterior and posterior superior pancreaticoduodenal arteries, branches of the gastroduodenal artery, and the anterior and posterior inferior pancreaticoduodenal arteries, branches of the SMA, form anteriorly and posteriorly placed arcades that supply the head of the pancreas (Fig. 5.60B).

Venous drainage from the pancreas occurs via corresponding pancreatic veins, tributaries of the splenic and superior mesenteric parts of the hepatic portal vein; most empty into the splenic vein (Fig. 5.60C, D).

The pancreatic lymphatic vessels follow the blood vessels (Figs. 5.46 and 5.61A; see Fig. 5.71). Most vessels end in the pancreaticosplenic lymph nodes, which lie along the splenic artery. Some vessels end in the pyloric lymph nodes. Efferent vessels from these nodes drain to the superior mesenteric lymph nodes or to the celiac lymph nodes via the hepatic lymph nodes.

The nerves of the pancreas are derived from the vagus and abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves passing through the diaphragm (Fig. 5.61B). The parasympathetic and sympathetic fibers reach the pancreas by passing along the arteries from the celiac plexus and **superior mesenteric plexus** (see "Innervation of Abdominal Viscera"). In addition to sympathetic fibers that pass to blood vessels, sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers are distributed to pancreatic acinar cells and islets. The parasympathetic fibers are secretomotor, but pancreatic secretion is primarily mediated by secretin and cholecystokinin, hormones formed by the epithelial cells of the duodenum and proximal intestinal mucosa under the stimulus of acid contents from the stomach.

Liver

The **liver** is the largest gland in the body and, after the skin, the largest single organ. It weighs approximately 1,500 g and accounts for approximately 2.5% of adult body weight. In a mature fetus—when it serves as a hematopoietic organ—it is proportionately twice as large (5% of body weight).

Except for fat, all nutrients absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract are initially conveyed to the liver by the portal venous system. In addition to its many metabolic activities, the liver stores glycogen and secretes **bile**, a yellow-brown or green fluid that aids in the emulsification of fat.

Bile passes from the liver via the biliary ducts—right and left hepatic ducts—that join to form the common hepatic duct, which unites with the cystic duct to form the (common) bile duct. The liver produces bile continuously; however, between meals, it accumulates and is stored in the

gallbladder, which also concentrates the bile by absorbing water and salts. When food arrives in the duodenum, the gallbladder sends concentrated bile through the biliary ducts to the duodenum.

SURFACE PROJECTION, SURFACES, PERITONEAL REFLECTIONS, AND RELATIONSHIPS OF LIVER

The liver lies mainly in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen, where it is protected by the thoracic (rib) cage and the diaphragm (Fig. 5.62). The normal liver lies deep to ribs 7–11 on the right side and crosses the midline toward the left nipple. The liver occupies most of the right hypochondrium and upper epigastrium and extends into the left hypochondrium. The liver moves with the excursions of the diaphragm and is located more inferiorly when one is erect because of gravity. This mobility facilitates palpation (see the Clinical Box "Palpation of Liver" in this chapter).

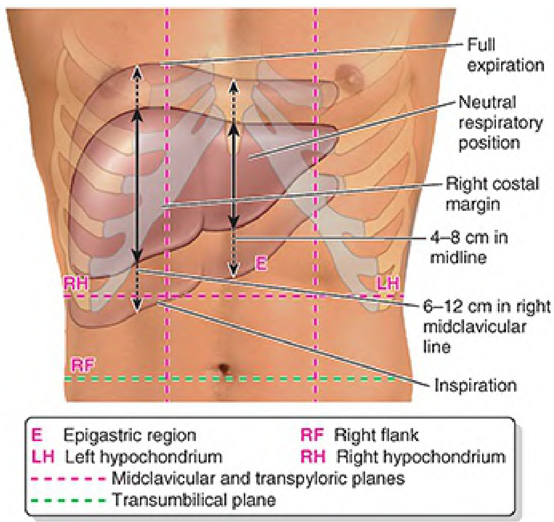


FIGURE 5.62. Surface projection of liver. The liver's location, extent, relationship to the thoracic cage, and range of movements with change of position and diaphragmatic excursion are demonstrated.

The liver has a convex diaphragmatic surface (anterior, superior, and some posterior) and a relatively flat or even concave visceral surface (postero-inferior), which are separated anteriorly by its sharp inferior border that follows the right costal margin inferior to the diaphragm (Fig. 5.63A).

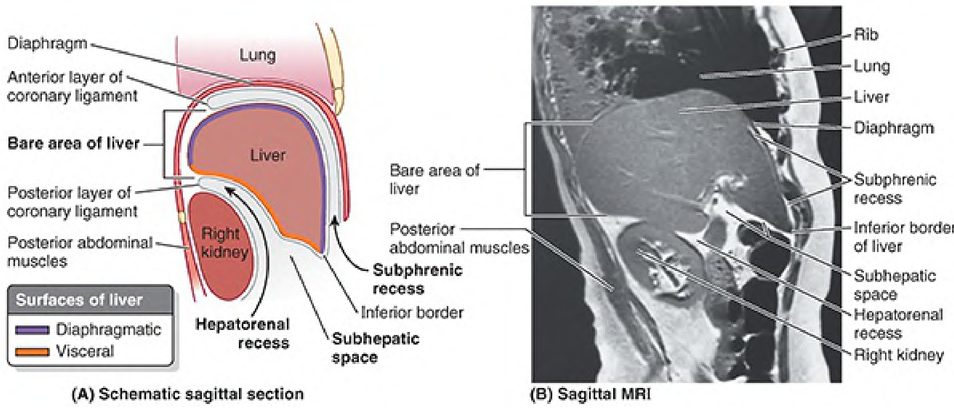


FIGURE 5.63. Surfaces of liver and related potential spaces. A. Schematic sagittal section through diaphragm, liver, and right kidney. The two surfaces of the liver are distinguished and related peritoneal recesses are demonstrated. **B.** Sagittal magnetic resonance imaging scan at midclavicular line. This scan demonstrates the relationships featured in part **A** in a living person.

The **diaphragmatic surface of the liver** is smooth and dome shaped, where it is related to the concavity of the inferior surface of the diaphragm, which separates it from the pleurae, lungs, pericardium, and heart (Fig. 5.63A, B). **Subphrenic recesses**—superior extensions of the peritoneal cavity (greater sac)—exist between diaphragm and the anterior and superior aspects of the diaphragmatic surface of the liver. The subphrenic recesses are separated into right and left recesses by the falciform ligament, which extends between the liver and the anterior abdominal wall. The portion of the supracolic compartment of the peritoneal cavity immediately inferior to the liver is the subhepatic space.

The **hepatorenal recess** (hepatorenal pouch; Morison pouch) is the posterosuperior extension of the subhepatic space, lying between the right part of the visceral surface of the liver and the right kidney and suprarenal gland. The hepatorenal recess is a gravity-dependent part of the peritoneal cavity in the supine position; fluid draining from the omental bursa flows into this recess (Fig. 5.64B, E). The hepatorenal recess communicates anteriorly with the right subphrenic recess (Fig. 5.63A, B). Recall that normally all recesses of the peritoneal cavity are potential spaces only, containing just enough peritoneal fluid to lubricate the adjacent peritoneal membranes.

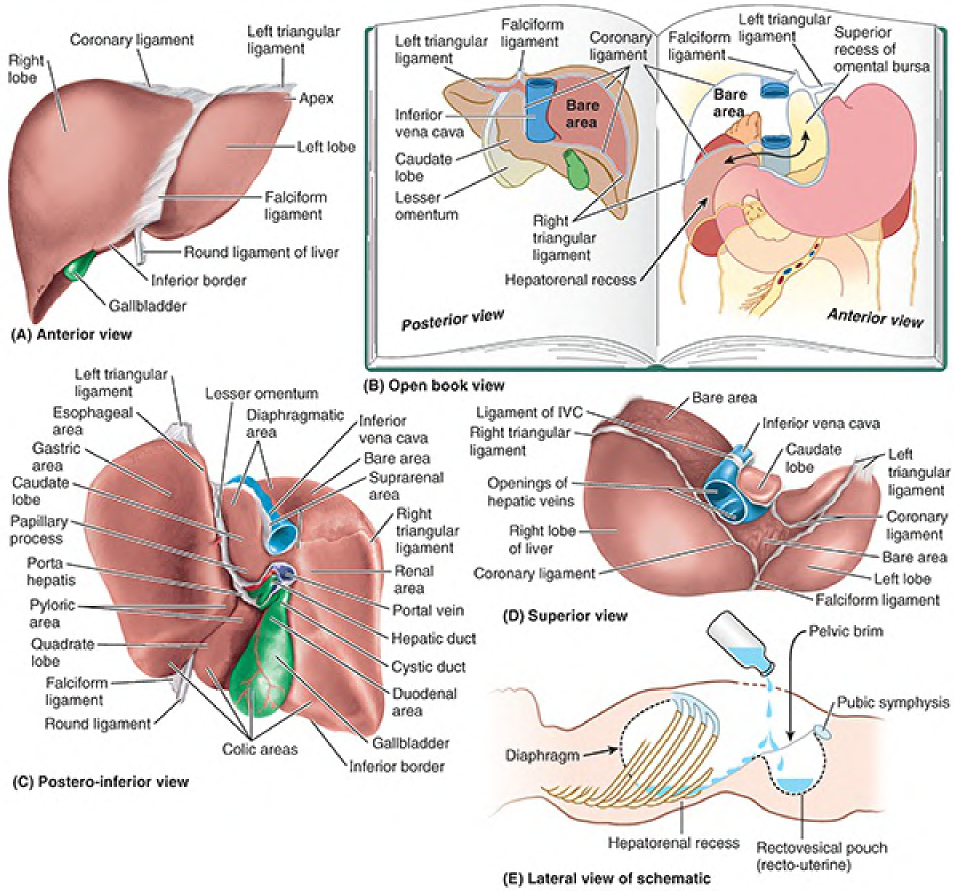


FIGURE 5.64. Peritoneal and visceral relationships of liver. A. Diaphragmatic surface. This surface conforms to the inferior surface of the diaphragm and is divided into right and left lobes of the liver by the falciform and coronary ligaments. **B.** Peritoneal reflections (ligaments). The attachments of the liver are cut through, and the liver is removed from its site, placed on the specimen's right, and turned posteriorly, as when turning the page of a book. **C.** Visceral surface. In the anatomical position, the visceral surface of the liver is directed inferiorly, posteriorly, and to the left. In embalmed specimens, impressions remain where this surface is contacted by adjacent structures. **D.** Falciform ligament. The two layers of peritoneum forming the falciform ligament separate over the superior aspect of the liver to form the anterior layer of the coronary ligament, leaving the bare area of the liver without a peritoneal covering. IVC, inferior vena cava. **E.** Gravity-dependent recesses of abdominopelvic cavity in supine position. The hepatorenal recess is the upper one, receiving drainage from the omental bursa and upper abdominal (supracolic) portions of the greater sac.

The diaphragmatic surface of the liver is covered with visceral peritoneum, except posteriorly in the **bare area of the liver** (Fig. 5.64B–D), where it lies in direct contact with the diaphragm. The bare area is demarcated by the reflection of peritoneum from the diaphragm to it as the anterior (upper) and posterior (lower) layers of the **coronary ligament** (Fig. 5.63A). These layers meet on the right to form the **right triangular ligament** and diverge toward the left to enclose the triangular bare area (Fig. 5.64A–D). The anterior layer of the coronary ligament is continuous on the left with the right layer of the falciform ligament, and the posterior layer is continuous with the right layer of the lesser omentum. Near the **apex** (the left extremity) of the wedge-shaped liver, the anterior and posterior layers of the left part of the coronary ligament meet to form the left triangular ligament. The IVC traverses a deep **groove for the vena cava** within the bare area of the liver (Fig. 5.64B–D).

The **visceral surface of the liver** is also covered with visceral peritoneum (Fig. 5.64C), except in the **fossa for the gallbladder** (Fig. 5.65B) and the **porta hepatis**—a transverse fissure where the vessels (hepatic portal vein, hepatic artery, and lymphatic vessels), the hepatic nerve plexus, and hepatic ducts that supply and drain the liver enter and leave it. In contrast to the smooth diaphragmatic surface, the visceral surface bears multiple fissures and impressions from contact with other organs.

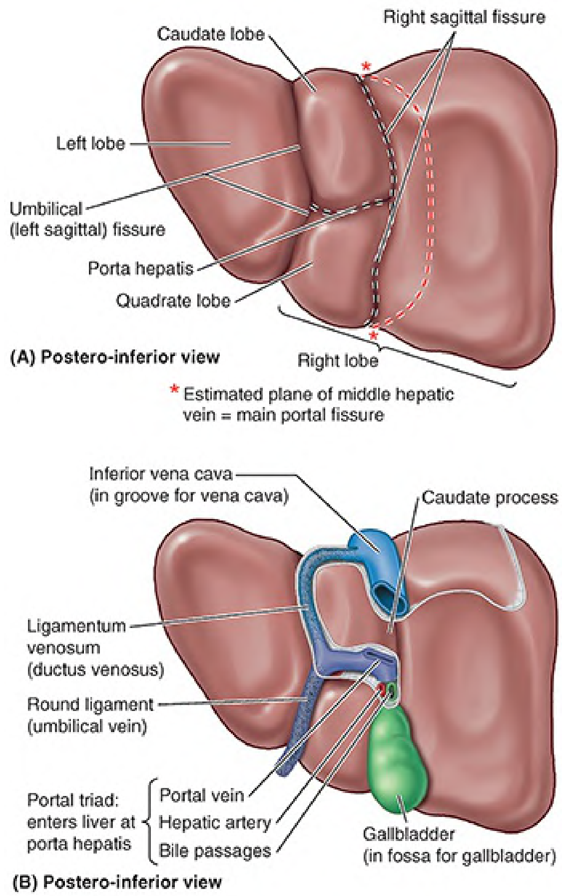


FIGURE 5.65. Visceral surface of liver. A. Anatomical lobes. The four anatomical lobes of the liver are defined by external features (peritoneal reflections and fissures). **B.** Structures forming and occupying fissures of visceral surface.

Two sagittally oriented fissures, linked centrally by the transverse porta hepatis, form the letter H on the visceral surface (Fig. 5.65A). The **right sagittal fissure** is the continuous groove formed anteriorly by the fossa for the gallbladder and posteriorly by the groove for the vena cava. The **umbilical (left sagittal) fissure** is the continuous groove formed anteriorly by the **fissure for the round ligament** and posteriorly by the **fissure for the ligamentum venosum**. The **round ligament of the liver** (L. ligamentum teres hepatis) is the fibrous remnant of the umbilical vein, which carried well-oxygenated and nutrient-rich blood from the placenta to the fetus (Fig. 5.65B). The round ligament and small para-umbilical veins course in the free edge of the falciform ligament. The **ligamentum venosum** is the fibrous remnant of the fetal ductus venosus, which shunted blood from the umbilical vein to the IVC, short-circuiting the liver.

The lesser omentum, enclosing the **portal triad** (bile duct, hepatic artery, and hepatic portal vein), passes from the liver to the lesser curvature of the stomach and the first 2 cm of the superior part of the duodenum (Fig. 5.66A). The thick, free edge of the lesser omentum extends between the porta hepatis and the duodenum (the hepatoduodenal ligament) and encloses the structures that pass through the porta hepatis. The sheet-like remainder of the lesser omentum, the hepatogastric ligament, extends between the groove for the ligamentum venosum and the lesser curvature of the stomach.

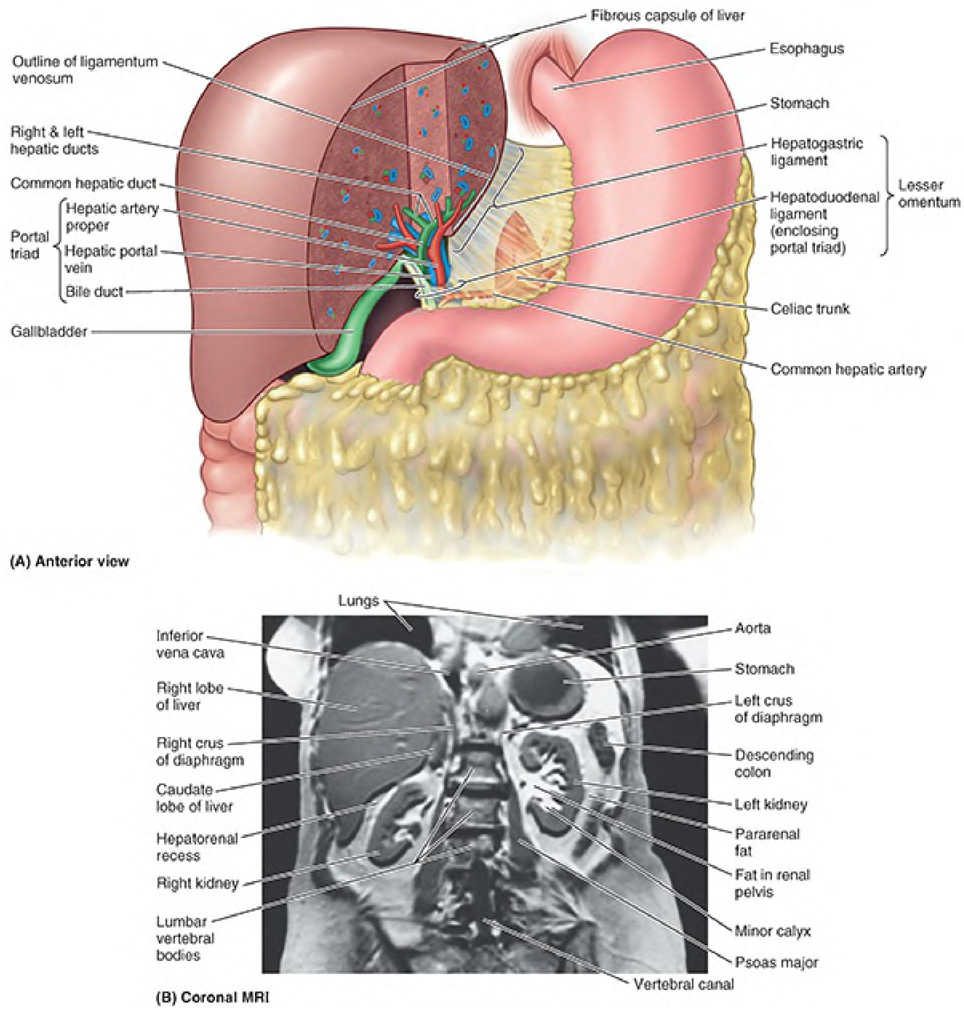


FIGURE 5.66. Relationships of liver to other abdominal viscera, lesser omentum, and portal triad. A. Dissection. The anterior sagittal cut through the liver is made in the plane of the fossa for the gallbladder, and the posterior sagittal cut is in the plane of the fissure for the ligamentum venosum. These cuts have been joined by a narrow coronal cut in the plane of the porta hepatis. The relationship of the liver to the anterior (intraperitoneal) abdominal viscera is demonstrated. The portal triad passes between the layers of the hepatoduodenal ligament to enter the liver at the porta hepatis. The common hepatic artery passes between the layers of the hepatogastric ligament. **B.** Coronal magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) demonstrating the relationship of the liver to posterior (retroperitoneal) abdominal viscera.

In addition to the fissures, impressions on (areas of) the visceral surface (Fig. 5.64C) reflect the liver's relationship to the

- right side of the anterior aspect of the stomach (gastric and pyloric areas)

- superior part of the duodenum (duodenal area)
- lesser omentum (extends into the fissure for the ligamentum venosum)
- gallbladder (fossa for gallbladder)
- right colic flexure and right transverse colon (colic area)
- right kidney and suprarenal gland (renal and suprarenal areas) (Fig. 5.66B)

ANATOMICAL LOBES OF LIVER

Externally, the liver is divided into two anatomical lobes and two accessory lobes by the reflections of peritoneum from its surface, the fissures formed in relation to those reflections and the vessels serving the liver and the gallbladder. These superficial "lobes" are not true lobes as the term is generally used in relation to glands and are only secondarily related to the liver's internal architecture. The essentially midline plane defined by the attachment of the falciform ligament and the left sagittal fissure separates a large **right lobe** from a much smaller **left lobe** (Figs. 5.64A, C, D and 5.65). On the slanted visceral surface, the right and left sagittal fissures course on each side of—and the transverse porta hepatis separates—two accessory lobes (parts of the anatomic right lobe): the **quadrate lobe** anteriorly and inferiorly and the caudate lobe posteriorly and superiorly. The **caudate lobe** was so named not because it is caudal in position (it is not) but because it often gives rise to a "tail" in the form of an elongated **papillary process** (Fig. 5.64C). A **caudate process** extends to the right, between the IVC and the porta hepatis, connecting the caudate and right lobes (Fig. 5.65B).

FUNCTIONAL SUBDIVISION OF LIVER

Although not distinctly demarcated internally, where the parenchyma appears continuous, the liver has functionally independent **right** and **left livers** (parts or portal lobes) that are much more equal in size than the anatomical lobes; however, the right liver is still somewhat larger (Figs. 5.67 and 5.68; Table 5.10). Each part receives its own primary branch of the hepatic artery and hepatic portal vein and is drained by its own hepatic duct. The caudate lobe may in fact be considered a third liver; its vascularization is independent of the bifurcation of the portal triad (it receives vessels from both bundles) and is drained by one or two small hepatic veins, which enter directly into the IVC distal to the main hepatic veins. The liver can be further subdivided into four divisions and then into eight surgically resectable hepatic segments, each served independently by a secondary or tertiary branch of the portal triad, respectively (Fig. 5.67).

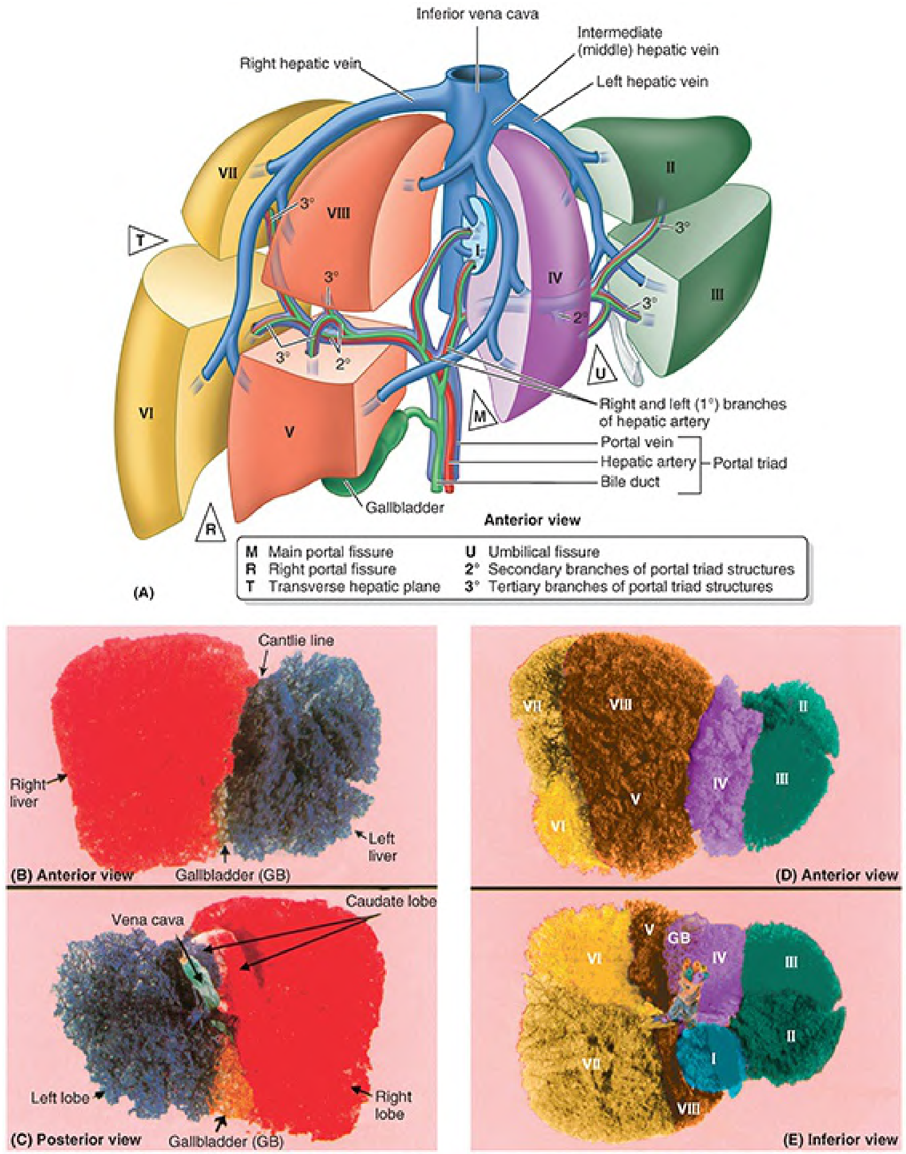


FIGURE 5.67. Hepatic segmentation. A. Schematic illustration. The right, intermediate, and left hepatic veins course within three planes or fissures (right portal [R], main portal [M], and umbilical [U]) that divide the liver into four vertical divisions, each served by a secondary (2°) branch of the portal triad. Three divisions are further subdivided at the transverse portal plane (T) into hepatic segments, each supplied by tertiary (3°) branches of the triad. The left medial division and caudate lobe are also considered hepatic segments, bringing the total to eight surgically resectable hepatic segments (segments I–VIII, each also given a name as demonstrated in Fig. 5.68 and Table 5.10). Each segment has its own intrasegmental blood supply and biliary drainage. The hepatic veins are intersegmental, draining the portions of multiple segments adjacent to them. **B and C.** Injection of latex into right (red) and left (blue) portal veins. The right and left livers and the Cantlie line that demarcates them on the diaphragmatic surface are seen. **D and E.** Injection of different colors of latex into secondary and tertiary branches of portal vein. The divisions of the liver and hepatic segments I–VIII are shown.

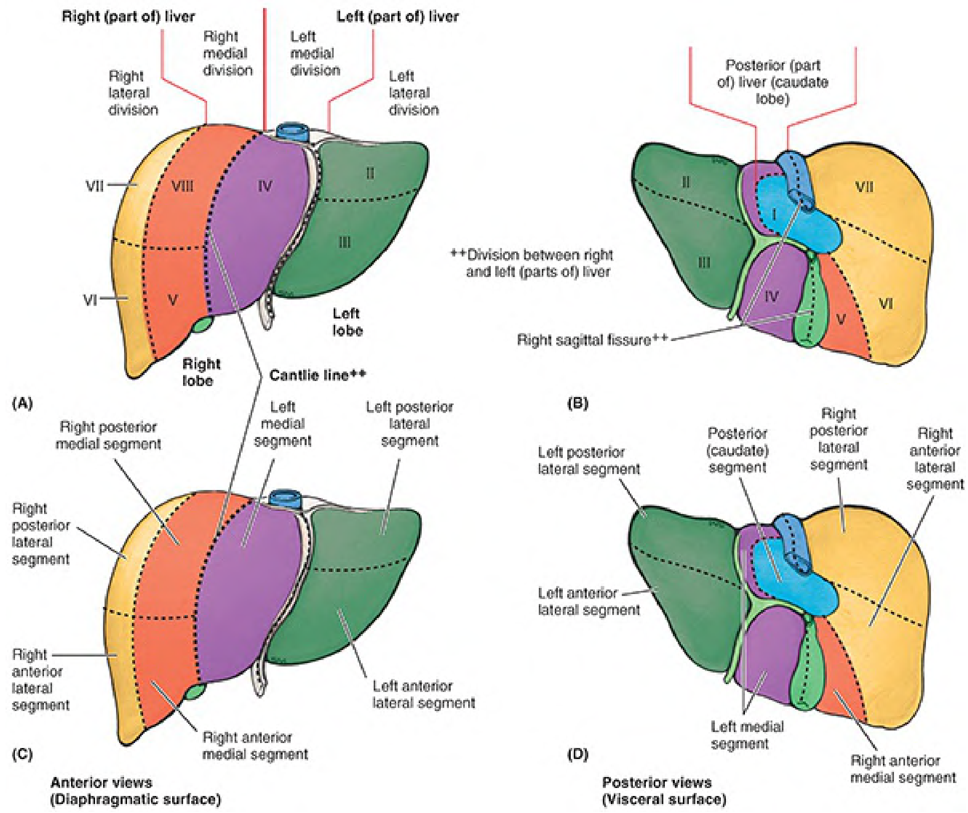


FIGURE 5.68. Parts, divisions, and segments of liver. Each part, division, and segment has an identifying name; segments are also identified by Roman numerals.

TABLE 5.10. TERMINOLOGY FOR SUBDIVISIONS OF LIVER

Anatomical Term	Right Lobe			Left Lobe	Caudate Lobe	
Functional/surgical term[a]	Right (part of) liver [Right portal lobe[b]]		Left (part of) liver [Left portal lobe[c]]		Posterior (part of) liver	
	Right lateral division	Right medial division	Left medial division	Left lateral division	[Right caudate lobe[b]]	[Left caudate lobe[c]]
	Right posterior lateral segment **Segment VII** [Posterior superior area]	Right posterior medial segment **Segment VIII** [Anterior superior area]	[Medial superior area] Left medial segment **Segment IV** [Medial inferior area = quadrate lobe]	Left posterior lateral segment **Segment II** [Lateral superior area]	Posterior segment **Segment I**	
	Right anterior lateral segment **Segment VI** [Posterior inferior area]	Right anterior medial segment **Segment V** [Anterior inferior area]		Left anterior lateral segment **Segment III** [Lateral inferior area]		

[a]The labels in the table and figures above reflect the Terminologia Anatomica: International Anatomical Terminology (1998). Previous terminology is in brackets. Under the schema of the previous terminology, the caudate lobe was divided into right and left halves.

[b]The right half of the caudate lobe was considered a subdivision of the right portal lobe.

[c]The left half of the caudate lobe was considered a subdivision of the left portal lobe.

Hepatic (Surgical) Segments of Liver. Except for the caudate lobe (segment I), the liver is divided into right and left livers based on the primary (1°) division of the portal triad into right and left branches, the plane between the right and the left livers being the **main portal fissure** in which the middle hepatic vein lies (Fig. 5.67A–C). On the visceral surface, this plane is demarcated by the right sagittal fissure. The plane is demarcated on the diaphragmatic surface by extrapolating an imaginary line—the Cantlie line (Cantlie, 1898)—from the notch for the fundus of the gallbladder to the IVC (Figs. 5.67B and 5.68A, C).

The right and left livers are subdivided vertically into medial and lateral divisions by the right portal and umbilical fissures, in which the right and left hepatic veins lie (Figs. 5.67A, D, E and 5.68). The right portal fissure has no external demarcation. Each of the four divisions receives a secondary (2°) branch of the portal triad (Fig. 5.67A). (Note: The medial division of the left liver—left medial division—is part of the right anatomical lobe; the left lateral division is the same as the left anatomical lobe.)

A transverse hepatic plane at the level of the horizontal parts of the right and left branches of the portal triad subdivides three of the four divisions (all but the left medial division), creating six hepatic segments, each receiving tertiary branches of the triad. The left medial division is also counted as a hepatic segment so that the main part of the liver has seven segments (**segments II–VIII**, numbered clockwise), which have also been given a descriptive name (Figs. 5.67A, D, E and 5.68). The caudate lobe (**segment I**, bringing the total number of segments to eight) is supplied by branches of both divisions and is drained by its own minor hepatic veins.

While the pattern of segmentation described here is the most common pattern, the segments vary considerably in size and shape as a result of individual variation in the branching of the hepatic and portal vessels. The clinical significance of hepatic segments is explained in the Clinical Box "Hepatic Lobectomies and Segmentectomy" in this chapter.

BLOOD VESSELS OF LIVER

The liver, like the lungs, has a dual blood supply (afferent vessels): a dominant venous source and a lesser arterial one (Fig. 5.67A). The hepatic portal vein brings 75–80% of the blood to the liver. Portal blood, containing about 40% more oxygen than blood returning to the heart from the systemic circuit, sustains the liver parenchyma (liver cells or hepatocytes) (Fig. 5.69). The hepatic portal vein carries virtually all of the nutrients absorbed by the alimentary tract to the sinusoids of the liver. The exception is lipids, which are absorbed into and bypass the liver via the lymphatic system. Arterial blood from the hepatic artery, accounting for only 20–25% of blood received by the liver, is distributed initially to nonparenchymal structures, particularly the intrahepatic bile ducts.

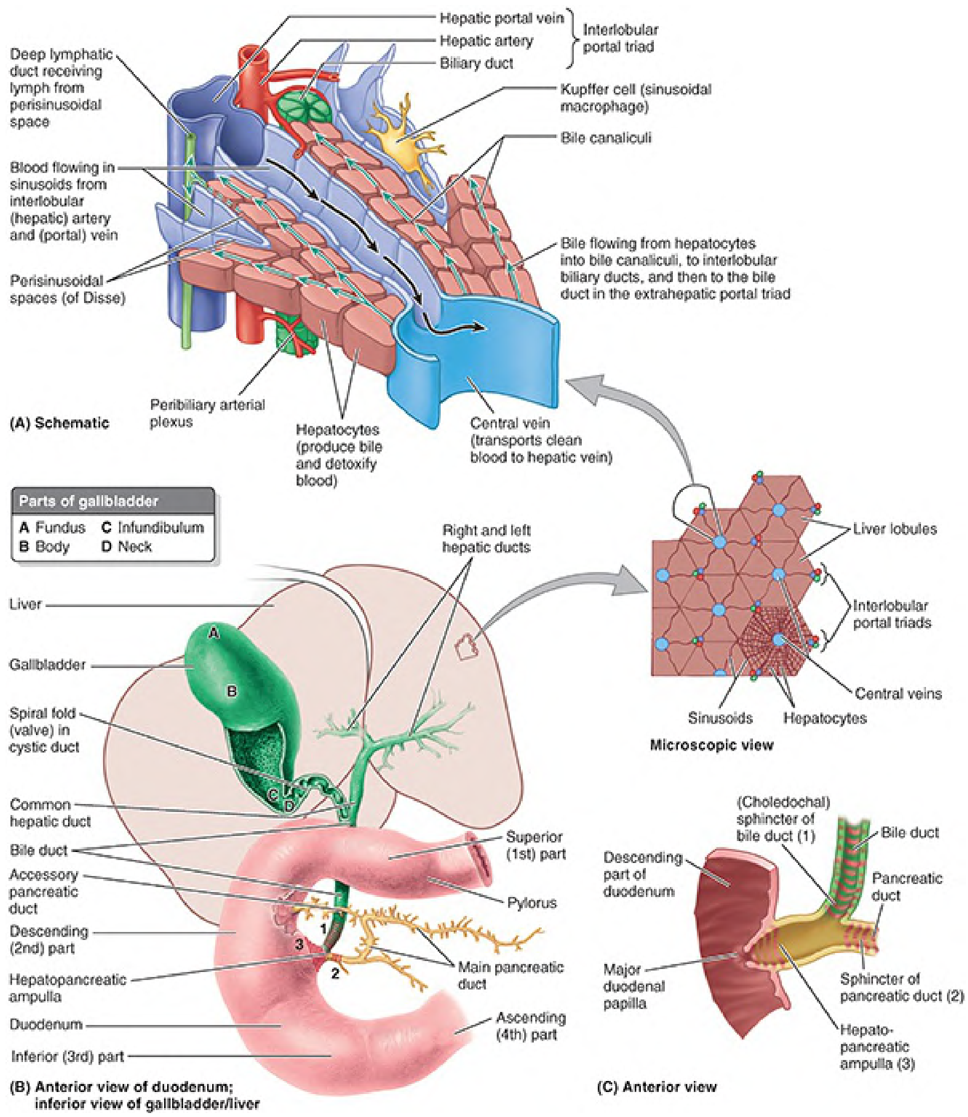


FIGURE 5.69. Flow of blood and bile in liver. A. Liver lobule. This small part of a liver lobule illustrates the components of the interlobular portal triad and the positioning of the sinusoids and bile canaliculi. The enlarged view of the surface of a block of parenchyma removed from the liver in part **B** shows the hexagonal pattern of lobes and the place of part **A** within that pattern. **B.** Extrahepatic bile passages, gallbladder, and pancreatic ducts. **C.** Sphincters of bile duct (1), pancreatic duct (2), and hepatopancreatic ampulla (3).

The hepatic portal vein, a short, wide vein, is formed by the superior mesenteric and splenic veins posterior to the neck of the pancreas. It ascends anterior to the IVC as part of the portal triad in the hepatoduodenal ligament (Fig. 5.66A). The **hepatic artery**, a branch of the celiac trunk, may be divided into the **common hepatic artery**, from the celiac trunk to the origin of the gastroduodenal artery, and the **hepatic artery proper**, from the origin of the gastroduodenal artery to the bifurcation of the hepatic artery (see Fig. 5.60A, B). At or close to the porta hepatis, the hepatic artery and hepatic portal vein terminate by dividing into right and left branches; these primary branches supply the right and left livers, respectively (Fig. 5.67). Within the right and left livers, the simultaneous secondary branchings of the hepatic portal vein and hepatic artery supply the medial and lateral divisions of the right and left liver, with three of the four secondary

branches undergoing further (tertiary) branchings to supply independently seven of the eight hepatic segments.

Between the divisions are the **right, intermediate (middle)**, and **left hepatic veins**, which are intersegmental in their distribution and function, draining parts of adjacent segments. The hepatic veins, formed by the union of collecting veins that in turn drain the central veins of the hepatic parenchyma (Fig. 5.69), open into the IVC just inferior to the diaphragm. The attachment of these veins to the IVC helps hold the liver in position.

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE AND INNERVATION OF LIVER

The liver is a major lymph-producing organ. Between one quarter and one half of the lymph entering the thoracic duct comes from the liver.

The lymphatic vessels of the liver occur as superficial lymphatics in the subperitoneal **fibrous capsule of the liver** (Glisson capsule), which forms its outer surface (Fig. 5.66A), and as deep lymphatics in the connective tissue, which accompany the ramifications of the portal triad and hepatic veins (Fig. 5.69A). Most lymph is formed in the **perisinusoidal spaces** (of Disse) and drains to the deep lymphatics in the surrounding **intralobular portal triads**.

Superficial lymphatics from the anterior aspects of the diaphragmatic and visceral surfaces of the liver, and deep lymphatic vessels accompanying the portal triads, converge toward the porta hepatis. The superficial lymphatics drain to the **hepatic lymph nodes** scattered along the hepatic vessels and ducts in the lesser omentum (Fig. 5.70A). Efferent lymphatic vessels from the hepatic nodes drain into celiac lymph nodes, which in turn drain into the cisterna chyli (chyle cistern), a dilated sac at the inferior end of the thoracic duct (see Fig. 5.101B).

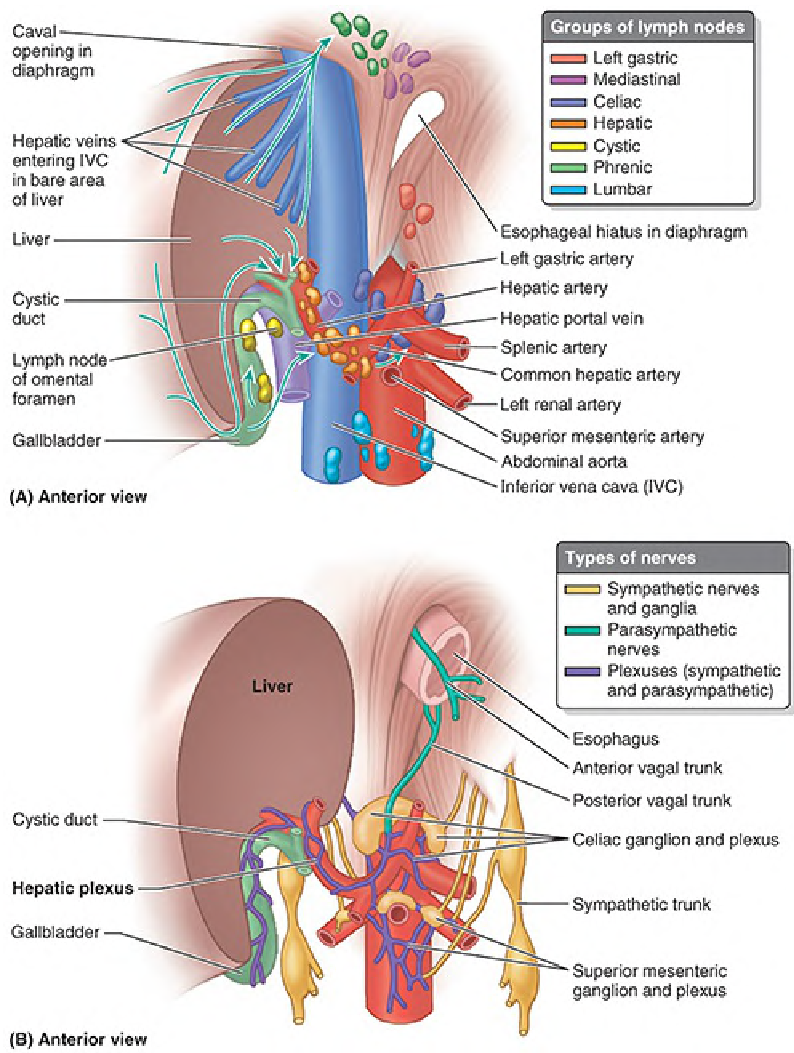


FIGURE 5.70. **Lymphatic drainage and innervation of liver. A.** Lymphatic drainage. The liver is a major lymph-producing organ. Lymph from the liver flows in two directions: that from the upper liver flows to lymph nodes located superiorly in the thorax; that from the lower liver flows to nodes located inferiorly in the abdomen. **B.** Innervation. The hepatic plexus, the largest derivative of the celiac plexus, accompanies the branches of the hepatic artery to the liver conveying sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers. Arrows, direction of lymph flow.

Superficial lymphatics from the posterior aspects of the diaphragmatic and visceral surfaces of the liver drain toward the bare area of the liver. Here, they drain into **phrenic lymph nodes**, or join deep lymphatics that have accompanied the hepatic veins converging on the IVC, and pass with this large vein through the diaphragm to drain into the **posterior mediastinal lymph nodes**. Efferent lymphatic vessels from these nodes join the right lymphatic and thoracic ducts. A few lymphatic vessels follow different routes:

- From the posterior surface of the left lobe of the liver toward the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm to end in the left gastric lymph nodes
- From the anterior central diaphragmatic surface along the falciform ligament to the parasternal lymph nodes
- Along the round ligament of the liver to the umbilicus and lymphatics of the anterior

abdominal wall

The nerves of the liver are derived from the hepatic plexus (Fig. 5.70B), the largest derivative of the celiac plexus. The **hepatic plexus** accompanies the branches of the hepatic artery and hepatic portal vein to the liver. This plexus consists of sympathetic fibers from the celiac plexus and parasympathetic fibers from the anterior and posterior vagal trunks. Nerve fibers accompany the vessels and biliary ducts of the portal triad. Other than vasoconstriction, their function is unclear.

Biliary Ducts and Gallbladder

The **biliary ducts** convey bile from the liver to the duodenum. Bile is produced continuously by the liver and stored and concentrated in the gallbladder, which releases it intermittently when fat enters the duodenum. Bile emulsifies the fat so that it can be absorbed in the distal intestine.

Normal hepatic tissue, when sectioned, is traditionally described as demonstrating a pattern of hexagonal-shaped liver lobules (Fig. 5.69A) when viewed under low magnification. Each lobule has a **central vein** running through its center from which **sinusoids** (large capillaries) and plates of **hepatocytes** (liver cells) radiate toward an imaginary perimeter extrapolated from surrounding **interlobular portal triads** (terminal branches of the hepatic portal vein and hepatic artery and initial branches of the biliary ducts). Although commonly said to be the anatomical units of the liver, hepatic "lobules" are not structural entities; instead, the lobular pattern is a physiological consequence of pressure gradients and is altered by disease. Because the bile duct is not central, the hepatic lobule does not represent a functional unit like acini of other glands. However, the hepatic lobule is a firmly established concept and is useful for descriptive purposes.

The hepatocytes secrete bile into the **bile canaliculi** formed between them. The canaliculi drain into the small interlobular biliary ducts and then into large collecting bile ducts of the intrahepatic portal triad, which merges to form the hepatic ducts (Fig. 5.69B). The **right** and **left hepatic ducts** drain the right and left (parts of the) liver, respectively. Shortly after leaving the porta hepatis, these hepatic ducts unite to form the **common hepatic duct**, which is joined on the right side by the cystic duct to form the bile duct (part of the extrahepatic portal triad of the lesser omentum), which conveys the bile to the duodenum.

BILE DUCT

The **bile duct** (formerly called the common bile duct) forms in the free edge of the lesser omentum by the union of the cystic duct and common hepatic duct (Figs. 5.65 and 5.69B). The length of the bile duct varies from 5 to 15 cm, depending on where the cystic duct joins the common hepatic duct.

The bile duct descends posterior to the superior part of the duodenum and lies in a groove on the posterior surface of the head of the pancreas. On the left side of the descending part of the duodenum, the bile duct comes into contact with the main pancreatic duct. These ducts run obliquely through the wall of this part of the duodenum, where they unite, forming a dilation, the hepatopancreatic ampulla (Fig. 5.69C). The distal end of the ampulla opens into the duodenum

through the major duodenal papilla (see Fig. 5.45C). The circular muscle around the distal end of the bile duct is thickened to form the **sphincter of the bile duct** (L. ductus choledochus) (Fig. 5.69C). When this sphincter contracts, bile cannot enter the ampulla and the duodenum; hence, bile backs up and passes along the cystic duct to the gallbladder for concentration and storage.

The arterial supply of the bile duct is from the (Fig. 5.71)

- cystic artery: supplying the proximal part of the duct
- right hepatic artery: supplying the middle part of the duct
- posterior superior pancreaticoduodenal artery and gastroduodenal artery: supplying the retroduodenal part of the duct

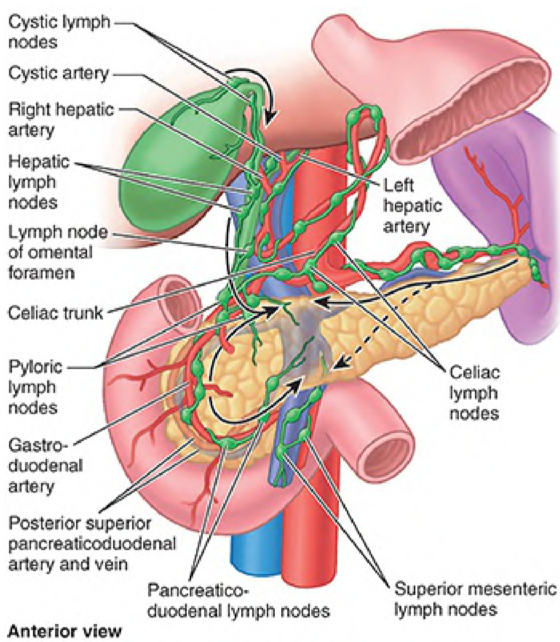


FIGURE 5.71. Arterial supply of biliary duct and lymphatic drainage of gallbladder and bile duct. The lymphatic vessels of the gallbladder and biliary passages anastomose superiorly with those of the liver and inferiorly with those of the pancreas; most drainage flows to the celiac lymph nodes. Arrows, direction of lymph flow.

The venous drainage from the proximal part of the bile duct and the hepatic ducts usually enters the liver directly via tiny cystic veins (Fig. 5.72). The posterior superior pancreaticoduodenal vein drains the distal part of the bile duct and empties into the hepatic portal vein or one of its tributaries (see Fig. 5.60C).

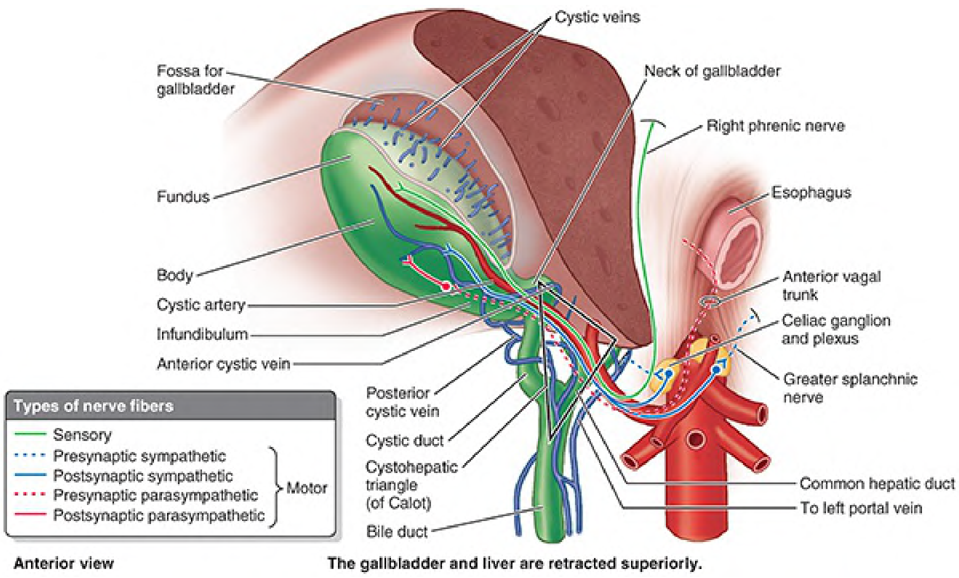


FIGURE 5.72. Nerves and veins of liver and biliary system. Nerves are prominent along the hepatic artery and bile duct and their branches. The sympathetic nerve supply is vasomotor in the liver and biliary system. The veins of the gallbladder neck communicate with cystic veins along the cystic and biliary ducts. Small cystic veins pass from the adherent portion of the gallbladder into the sinusoids of the liver.

The lymphatic vessels from the bile duct pass to the **cystic lymph nodes** near the neck of the gallbladder, the **lymph node of the omental foramen**, and the hepatic lymph nodes (Figs. 5.70 and 5.71). Efferent lymphatic vessels from the bile duct pass to the celiac lymph nodes.

GALLBLADDER

The gallbladder (7–10 cm long) lies in the fossa for the gallbladder on the visceral surface of the liver (Figs. 5.65B and 5.72). This shallow fossa lies at the junction of the right and left (parts of the) liver.

The relationship of the gallbladder to the duodenum is so intimate that the superior part of the duodenum is usually stained with bile in the cadaver (Fig. 5.73B). Because the liver and gallbladder must be retracted superiorly to expose the gallbladder (Fig. 5.69B) during an open anterior surgical approach (and atlases often depict it in this position), it is easy to forget that, in its natural position, the body of the gallbladder lies anterior to the superior part of the duodenum and its neck and cystic duct are immediately superior to the duodenum (Fig. 5.73; see Fig. 5.37A).

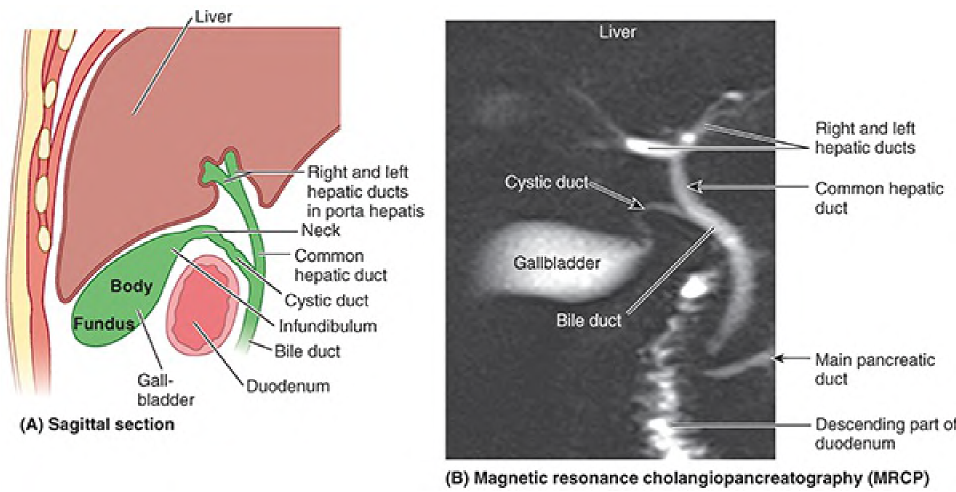


FIGURE 5.73. Normal disposition of gallbladder and extrahepatic biliary ducts. A. Schematic sagittal section showing relationships to superior part of duodenum. **B.** Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography of gallbladder, bile passages, pancreatic duct, and descending part of duodenum.

The pear-shaped gallbladder can hold up to 50 mL of bile. Peritoneum completely surrounds the fundus of the gallbladder and binds its body and neck to the liver. The hepatic surface of the gallbladder attaches to the liver by connective tissue of the fibrous capsule of the liver.

The gallbladder has three parts (Figs. 5.69B, 5.72, and 5.73):

- **Fundus**: the wide blunt end that usually projects from the inferior border of the liver at the tip of the right 9th costal cartilage in the MCL (see Figs. 5.30A and 5.31A)
- **Body**: main portion that contacts the visceral surface of the liver, transverse colon, and superior part of the duodenum
- **Infundibulum**: narrow, tapering end, opposite the fundus and directed toward the porta hepatis
- **Neck**: typically makes a simple or an S-shaped bend and joins the cystic duct

The **cystic duct** (3–4 cm long) connects the neck of the gallbladder to the common hepatic duct (Fig. 5.73A, B). The mucosa of the neck spirals into the **spiral fold** (spiral valve) (Fig. 5.69B). The spiral fold helps keep the cystic duct open; thus, bile can easily be diverted into the gallbladder when the distal end of the bile duct is closed by the sphincter of the bile duct and/or hepatopancreatic sphincter, or bile can pass to the duodenum as the gallbladder contracts. The spiral fold also offers additional resistance to sudden dumping of bile when the sphincters are closed, and intra-abdominal pressure is suddenly increased, as during a sneeze or cough. The cystic duct passes between the layers of the lesser omentum, usually parallel to the common hepatic duct, which it joins to form the bile duct.

The arterial supply of the gallbladder and cystic duct is from the cystic artery (Figs. 5.71, 5.72, and 5.74A). The **cystic artery** commonly arises from the right hepatic artery in the triangle between the common hepatic duct, cystic duct, and visceral surface of the liver, the **cystohepatic triangle** (of Calot) (Fig. 5.72). Variations occur in the origin and course of the cystic artery (Fig. 5.74B, C).

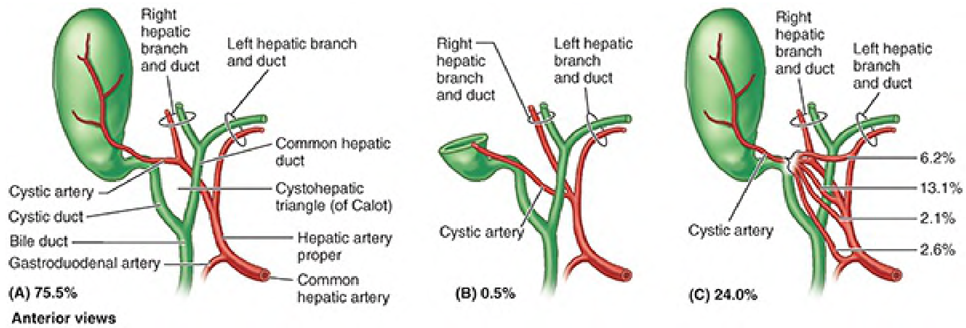


FIGURE 5.74. Variation in origin and course of cystic artery. A. Common pattern. The cystic artery usually arises from the right hepatic artery in the cystohepatic triangle (of Calot), bounded by the cystic duct, common hepatic duct, and visceral surface of the right liver. **B and C.** Variations in the origin and course of the cystic artery (Daseler et al., 1947). Variations are of clinical significance during cholecystectomy—surgical removal of the gallbladder.

The venous drainage from the neck of the gallbladder and cystic duct flows via the **cystic veins**. These small and usually multiple veins enter the liver directly or drain through the hepatic portal vein to the liver, after joining the veins draining the hepatic ducts and proximal bile duct (Fig. 5.72). The veins from the fundus and body of the gallbladder pass directly into the visceral surface of the liver and drain into the hepatic sinusoids. Because this is drainage from one capillary (sinusoidal) bed to another, it constitutes an additional (parallel) portal system.

The lymphatic drainage of the gallbladder is to the hepatic lymph nodes (Fig. 5.71), often through cystic lymph nodes located near the neck of the gallbladder. Efferent lymphatic vessels from these nodes pass to the celiac lymph nodes.

The nerves to the gallbladder and cystic duct (Fig. 5.72) pass along the cystic artery from the celiac (nerve) plexus (sympathetic and visceral afferent [pain] fibers) and the vagus nerve (parasympathetic). The right phrenic nerve (somatic afferent fibers) may carry pain caused by gallbladder inflammation. Parasympathetic stimulation causes contractions of the gallbladder and relaxation of the sphincters at the hepatopancreatic ampulla. However, these responses are generally stimulated by the hormone cholecystokinin (CCK), produced by the duodenal walls (in response to the arrival of a fatty meal), and circulated through the bloodstream.

HEPATIC PORTAL VEIN AND PORTAL–SYSTEMIC ANASTOMOSES

The **hepatic portal vein (HPV)** is the main channel of the portal venous system (Fig. 5.75A, B). It is formed anterior to the IVC and posterior to the neck of the pancreas (close to the level of the L1 vertebra and the transpyloric plane) by the union of the superior mesenteric and splenic veins. In approximately one third of individuals, the IMV joins the confluence of the superior mesenteric and splenic veins; hence, all three veins form the hepatic portal vein. In most people, the IMV enters the splenic vein (60%) (see Fig. 5.56A) or the SMV (40%).

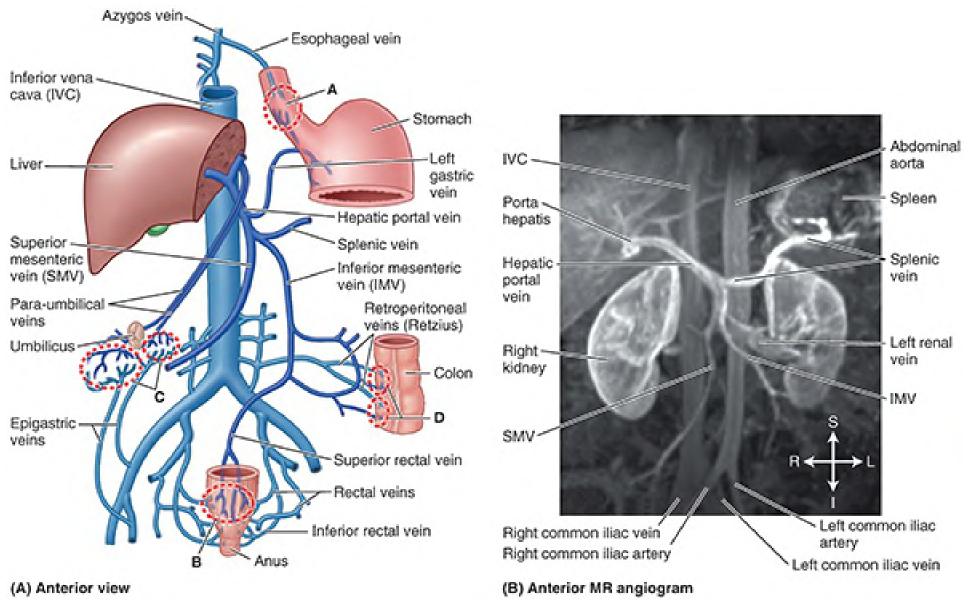


FIGURE 5.75. Tributaries of hepatic portal vein and portal–systemic anastomoses. A. Overview. Anastomoses provide a collateral circulation in cases of obstruction in the liver or portal vein. Here, the portal tributaries are darker blue and systemic tributaries are lighter blue. A–D indicate sites of anastomoses. A is between the submucosal esophageal veins draining into either the azygos vein (systemic) or the left gastric vein (portal); when dilated, these are esophageal varices. B is between the inferior and middle rectal veins draining into the inferior vena cava (systemic) and the superior rectal vein, continuing as the inferior mesenteric vein (portal). The submucosal veins involved are normally dilated (varicose in appearance), even in newborns. When the mucosa containing them prolapses, they form hemorrhoids. (The varicose appearance of the veins and the occurrence of hemorrhoids are not typically related to portal hypertension, as is commonly stated.) C shows para-umbilical veins (portal) anastomosing with small epigastric veins of the anterior abdominal wall (systemic); this may produce the “caput medusae” (Fig. B5.30). D is on the posterior aspects (bare areas) of secondarily retroperitoneal viscera, or the liver, where twigs of visceral veins—for example, the colic vein, splenic veins, or the portal vein itself (portal system)—anastomose with retroperitoneal veins of the posterior abdominal wall or diaphragm (systemic system). **B.** Magnetic resonance (MR) angiogram (portal venogram). The tributaries and formation of the portal vein in a living person are shown.

Although the HPV is a large vessel, it runs a short course (7–8 cm), most of which is contained within the hepatoduodenal ligament. As it approaches the porta hepatis, the hepatic portal vein divides into right and left branches. The hepatic portal vein collects blood with reduced oxygenation but rich in nutrients from the abdominal part of the alimentary system, including the gallbladder and pancreas, as well as the spleen, and carries it to the liver. Streaming of the blood flow is said to occur in which blood from the splenic vein, carrying the products of RBC breakdown from the spleen, passes mostly to the left liver. Blood from the SMV, rich in absorbed nutrients from the intestines, passes mostly to the right liver. Within the liver, its branches are distributed in a segmental pattern (see “Blood Vessels of Liver”) and end in expanded capillaries, the venous sinusoids of the liver (see Fig. 5.69A).

Portal–systemic anastomoses, in which the portal venous system communicates with the systemic venous system, are formed in the submucosa of the inferior esophagus, in the submucosa of the anal canal, in the peri-umbilical region, and on the posterior aspects (bare areas) of secondarily retroperitoneal viscera, or the liver (Fig. 5.75; see legend for details). When portal circulation through the liver is diminished or obstructed because of liver disease or physical pressure from a tumor, for example, blood from the gastrointestinal tract can still reach

the right side of the heart through the IVC by way of these collateral routes. These alternate routes are available because the hepatic portal vein and its tributaries have no valves; hence, blood can flow in a reverse direction to the IVC. However, the volume of blood forced through the collateral routes may be excessive, resulting in potentially fatal varices (abnormally dilated veins) (see the Clinical Box “Portal Hypertension” in this chapter) if the obstruction is not surgically bypassed (see the Clinical Box “Portosystemic Shunts” in this chapter).

CLINICAL BOX

SPLEEN AND PANCREAS

Rupture of Spleen

Although well protected by the 9th–12th ribs (see Fig. 5.30B), the spleen is the most frequently injured organ in the abdomen. Blunt trauma to the left side or to other regions of the abdomen that cause a sudden, marked increase in intra-abdominal pressure (e.g., by impalement on the handlebars of a motorcycle) can cause the thin fibrous capsule and overlying peritoneum of the spleen to rupture, disrupting its soft pulp (ruptured spleen). If ruptured, there is profuse bleeding (intraperitoneal hemorrhage) and shock.

The close relationship of the spleen to the ribs that normally protect it can be detrimental when there are rib fractures. Severe blows on the left side may fracture one or more of these ribs and rupture the underlying spleen, or sharp bone fragments may lacerate the spleen.

Splenectomy and Splenomegaly

Repair of a ruptured spleen is difficult; consequently, splenectomy (removal of the spleen) is often performed to prevent the person from bleeding to death. Subtotal (partial) splenectomy, when possible, is followed by rapid regeneration. Even total splenectomy usually does not produce serious effects, especially in adults, because most of its functions are assumed by other reticuloendothelial organs (e.g., liver and bone marrow), but there is a greater susceptibility to certain bacterial infections. When the spleen is diseased, resulting from, for example, granulocytic leukemia (high leukocyte and white blood cell count), it may enlarge to 10 or more times its normal size and weight (splenomegaly). Spleen engorgement sometimes accompanies hypertension (high blood pressure). The spleen is not usually palpable in the adult. Generally, if its lower edge can be detected when palpating below the left costal margin at the end of inspiration (Fig. B5.19A), it is enlarged about three times its “normal” size. Splenomegaly also occurs in some forms of hemolytic or granulocytic anemias, in which RBCs or white blood cells (WBCs), respectively, are destroyed at abnormally high rates (Fig. B5.19B). In such cases, a splenectomy may be lifesaving.

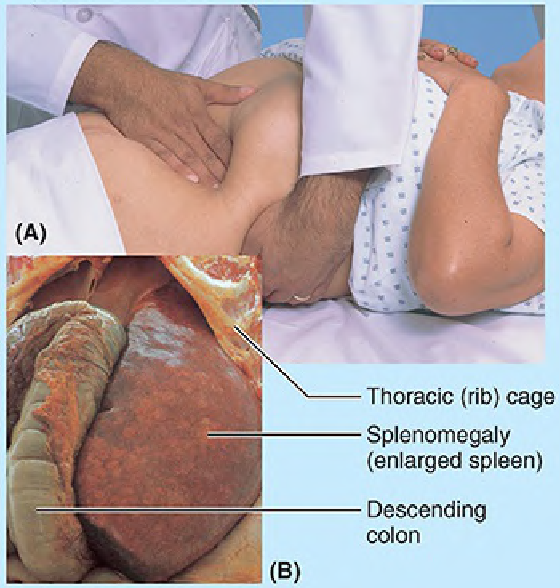


FIGURE B5.19. **Examination of spleen. A.** Palpation of the spleen. **B.** Splenomegaly. This 4,200-g spleen was seen at autopsy.

Accessory Spleen(s) and Splenosis

One or more small accessory spleens may develop prenatally near the splenic hilum. They may be embedded partly or wholly in the tail of the pancreas, between the layers of the gastrosplenic ligament, in the infracolic compartment, in the mesentery, or in close proximity to an ovary or testis (Fig. B5.20). In most affected individuals, only one accessory spleen is present. Accessory spleens are relatively common, are usually small (approximately 1 cm in diameter and range from 0.2 to 10 cm), and may resemble a lymph node. Awareness of the possible presence of an accessory spleen is important because if not removed during a splenectomy, the symptoms that called for removal of the spleen (e.g., splenic anemia) may persist. Splenosis—generalized autoimplantation of ectopic splenic tissue into the peritoneum, omentum, or mesenteries—sometimes follows splenic rupture.

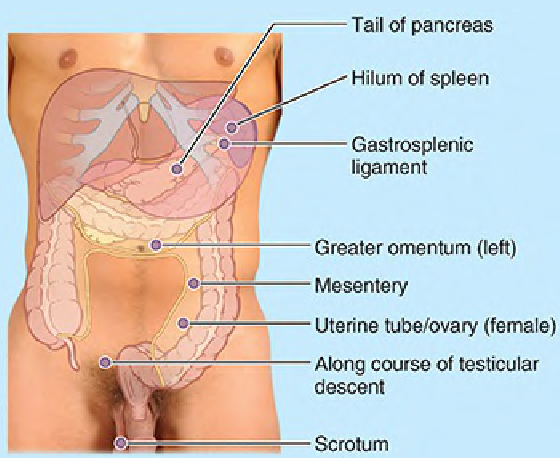


FIGURE B5.20. **Potential sites of accessory spleens.** The dots indicate where small accessory spleens may be

located.

Splenic Needle Biopsy and Splenoportography

The relationship of the costodiaphragmatic recess of the pleural cavity to the spleen is clinically important (see Fig. 5.39A, B). This potential space descends to the level of the 10th rib in the midaxillary line. Its existence must be kept in mind when doing a splenic needle biopsy or when injecting radiopaque material into the spleen for visualization of the hepatic portal vein (splenoportography). If care is not exercised, this material may enter the pleural cavity, causing pleuritis (inflammation of the pleura).

Blockage of Hepatopancreatic Ampulla and Pancreatitis

Because the main pancreatic duct joins the bile duct to form the hepatopancreatic ampulla and pierces the duodenal wall, a gallstone passing along the extrahepatic bile passages may lodge in the constricted distal end of the ampulla, where it opens at the summit of the major duodenal papilla (see Fig. 5.59A, B). In this case, both the biliary and pancreatic duct systems are blocked and neither bile nor pancreatic juice can enter the duodenum. However, bile may back up and enter the pancreatic duct, usually resulting in pancreatitis (inflammation of the pancreas). A similar reflux of bile sometimes results from spasms of the hepatopancreatic sphincter. Normally, the sphincter of the pancreatic duct prevents reflux of bile into the pancreatic duct; however, if the hepatopancreatic ampulla is obstructed, the weak pancreatic duct sphincter may be unable to withstand the excessive pressure of the bile in the hepatopancreatic ampulla. If an accessory pancreatic duct connects with the main pancreatic duct and opens into the duodenum, it may compensate for an obstructed main pancreatic duct or spasm of the hepatopancreatic sphincter.

Cholangiopancreatography

Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP), a type of MRI exam, has become the standard procedure for the diagnosis of both pancreatic and biliary disease. This technique produces detailed images of the hepatobiliary and pancreatic systems, including the liver, gallbladder, bile ducts, pancreas, and pancreatic duct (see Fig. B5.28 under "Gallstones" in this Clinical Box for an example of an MRCP image). While this newer, noninvasive technology has largely replaced the former standard procedure, endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) for pancreatic and biliary disease diagnosis, ERCP is utilized when interventions (biopsy, stone removal, or stenting) are required (Fig. B5.21). First, a fiberoptic endoscope is passed through the mouth, esophagus, and stomach. Then the duodenum is entered and a cannula is inserted into the major duodenal papilla and advanced under fluoroscopic control into the duct of choice (bile duct or pancreatic duct) for injection of radiographic contrast medium. Utilizing the fluoroscopic visualization provided by the contrast medium, instruments operated through the endoscope

are then utilized for the intervention.

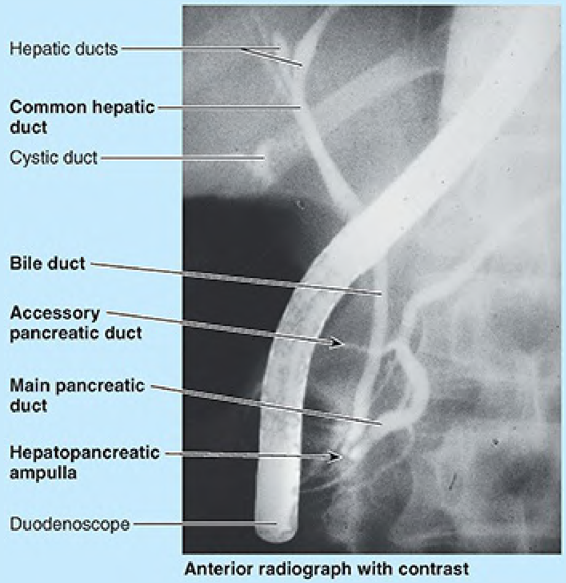


FIGURE B5.21. Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatogram (ERCP).

Accessory Pancreatic Tissue

It is not unusual for ectopic accessory pancreatic tissue to develop in the stomach, duodenum, ileum, or an ileal diverticulum; however, the stomach and duodenum are the most common sites. The accessory pancreatic tissue may contain pancreatic islet cells that produce glucagon and insulin.

Rupture of Pancreas

The pancreas is centrally located within the body. Consequently, it is not palpable and is well protected from all but the most severe penetrating trauma. The pancreas, like the liver, has a considerable functional reserve. For all these reasons, the pancreas, as an exocrine organ, is not commonly a primary cause of clinical problems (discounting diabetes, an endocrine disorder of the islet cells). Most exocrine pancreatic problems are secondary to biliary problems. Pancreatic injury can result from sudden, severe, forceful compression of the abdomen, such as the force of impalement on a steering wheel in an automobile accident. Because the pancreas lies transversely, the vertebral column acts as an anvil, and the traumatic force may rupture the friable pancreas.

Rupture of the pancreas frequently tears its duct system, allowing pancreatic juice to enter the parenchyma of the gland and to invade adjacent tissues. Digestion of pancreatic and other tissues by pancreatic juice is very painful.

Subtotal Pancreatectomy

Pancreatectomy, partial or complete surgical removal of the pancreas, is most commonl performed when pancreatic tumors are detected (see the Clinical Box "Pancreatic Cancer" below). However, subtotal or partial pancreatectomy is also utilized to remove injured portions of the pancreas and for the treatment of chronic pancreatitis after nonsurgical options have failed. Pancreatitis is a disease in which the pancreas becomes inflamed. Pancreatic damage happens when the digestive enzymes are activated before they are released into the small intestine and begin attacking the pancreas. Subtotal pancreatectomy reduces pancreatic secretion by reducing the size of the pancreas. While surgical removal of the body and tail is less difficult, the anatomical relationships and blood supply of the head of the pancreas, bile duct, and duodenum make it impossible to remove the entire head of the pancreas without removing the duodenum and terminal bile duct (Skandalakis, 2021). Usually, a rim of the pancreas is retained along the medial border of the duodenum to preserve the duodenal blood supply.

Pancreatic Cancer

Cancer involving the pancreatic head accounts for most cases of extrahepatic obstruction of the biliary ducts. Because of the posterior relationships of the pancreas, cancer of the head often compresses and obstructs the bile duct and/or the hepatopancreatic ampulla. Obstruction of the biliary tract, usually the common bile duct or ampulla, results in the retention of bile pigments, enlargement of the gallbladder, and obstructive jaundice. Jaundice (Fr. jaune, yellow) is the yellow staining of most body tissues, skin, mucous membranes, and conjunctiva by circulating bile pigments.

Most people with pancreatic cancer have ductular adenocarcinoma. Severe pain in the back is frequently present. Cancer of the neck and body of the pancreas may cause hepatic portal or inferior vena caval obstruction because the pancreas overlies these large veins (see Fig. 5.60B). The pancreas' extensive drainage to relatively inaccessible lymph nodes, and the fact that pancreatic cancer typically metastasizes to the liver early via the hepatic portal vein, make early detection unlikely and surgical resection of the cancerous pancreas difficult.

The Whipple procedure for cancer of the pancreas and biliary tract (pancreatoduodenectomy) is the most commonly performed for tumors of the pancreas. It is a complex operation to remove part of the head of the pancreas, part of the duodenum, and the gallbladder. Tumors that grow in the body and tail of the pancreas are removed by a subtotal procedure called distal pancreatectomy.

LIVER, BILIARY DUCTS, AND GALLBLADDER

Palpation of Liver

The liver may be palpated in a supine person because of the inferior movement of the diaphragm and liver that accompanies deep inspiration (see Fig. 5.62). One

method of palpating the liver is to place the left hand posteriorly behind the lower rib cage (Fig. B5.22). Then, put the right hand on the person's right upper quadrant, lateral to the rectus abdominis and inferior to the costal margin. The person is asked to take a deep breath as the examiner presses posterosuperiorly with the right hand and pulls anteriorly with the left hand (Bickley, 2021).

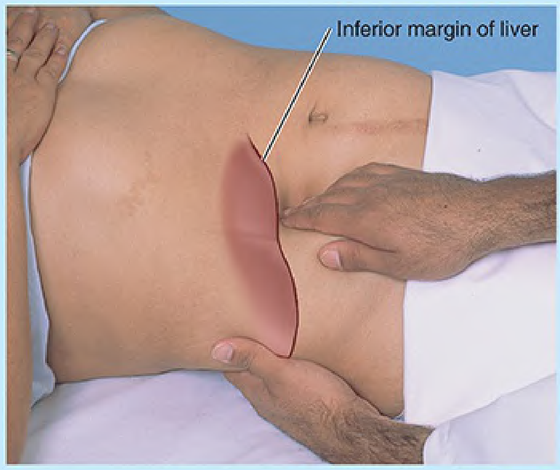


FIGURE B5.22. Palpation of inferior margin of liver.

Subphrenic Abscesses

Peritonitis may result in the formation of localized abscesses (collections of purulent exudate or pus) in various parts of the peritoneal cavity. A common site for pus to collect is in the right or left subphrenic recess or space. Subphrenic abscesses are more common on the right side because of the frequency of ruptured appendices and perforated duodenal ulcers. Because the right and left subphrenic recesses are continuous with the hepatorenal recess (the lowest [most gravity-dependent] parts of the peritoneal cavity when supine), pus from a subphrenic abscess may drain into the hepatorenal recess (see Fig. 5.64E), especially when patients are bedridden.

A subphrenic abscess is often drained by an incision inferior to, or through, the bed of the 12th rib (Ellis & Mahadevan, 2019), making it unnecessary to create an opening in the pleura or peritoneum. An anterior subphrenic abscess is often drained through a subcostal incision located inferior and parallel to the right costal margin. Many are now drained percutaneously, under ultrasound or CT guidance.

Hepatic Lobectomies and Segmentectomy

When it was discovered that the right and left hepatic arteries and ducts, as well as branches of the right and left hepatic portal veins, do not communicate, it became possible to perform hepatic lobectomies, removal of the right or left (part of the) liver, without excessive bleeding.

More recently, especially since the advent of the cauterizing scalpel and laser surgery, it

has become possible to perform hepatic segmentectomies. This procedure makes it possible to remove (resect) only those segments that are affected by a tumor. The right, intermediate, and left hepatic veins serve as guides to the planes (fissures) between the hepatic divisions (Fig. B5.23); however, they also provide a major source of bleeding with which the surgeon must contend. While the pattern of branching demonstrated in Figure 5.67A is the most common pattern, the segments vary considerably in size and shape as a result of individual variation in the branching of the hepatic and portal vessels. Each hepatic resection is empirical, requiring ultrasonography, injection of dye, or balloon catheter occlusion to establish the patient's segmental pattern (Cheng et al., 1997).

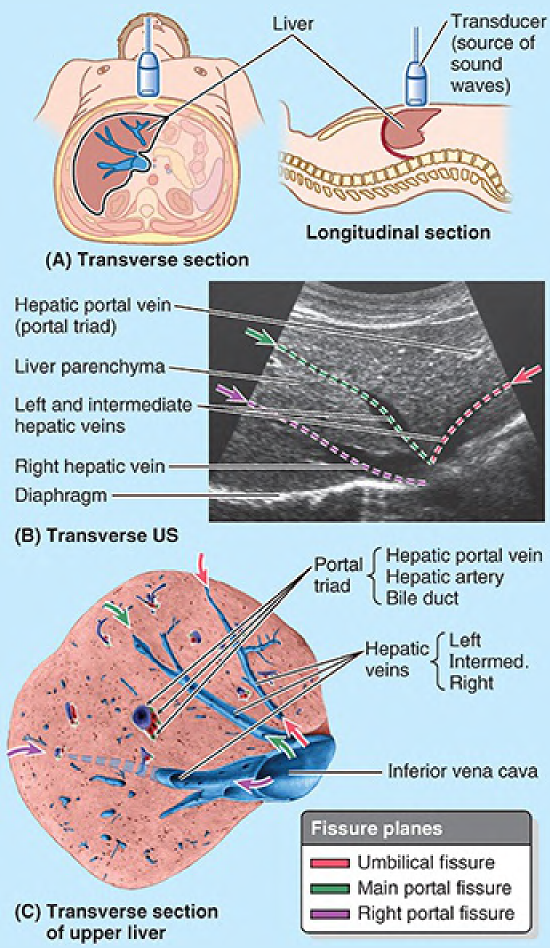


FIGURE B5.23. Ultrasonography (US) of hepatic veins.

Rupture of Liver

The liver is easily injured because it is large, fixed in position, and friable (easily crumbled). Often, a fractured rib that perforates the diaphragm tears the liver.

Because of the liver's great vascularity and friability, liver lacerations often cause considerable hemorrhage and right upper quadrant pain. These injuries are usually managed by removing the foreign material and packing or embolization (deliberate blocking of blood

vessels to control bleeding) when necessary. Every effort is made to avoid resection of the liver for trauma; resection is a last resort. In such cases, the surgeon must decide whether to perform a segmentectomy or lobectomy. Most injuries to the liver involve the right liver. A more extensive injury that is likely to leave large areas of the liver devascularized may require lobectomy.

Aberrant Hepatic Arteries

The more common variety of right or left hepatic artery that arises as a terminal branch of the hepatic artery proper (Fig. B5.24A) may be replaced in part or entirely by an aberrant (accessory or replaced) artery arising from another source. The most common source of an aberrant right hepatic artery is the SMA (Fig. B5.24B). The most common source of an aberrant left hepatic artery is the left gastric artery (Fig. B5.24C).

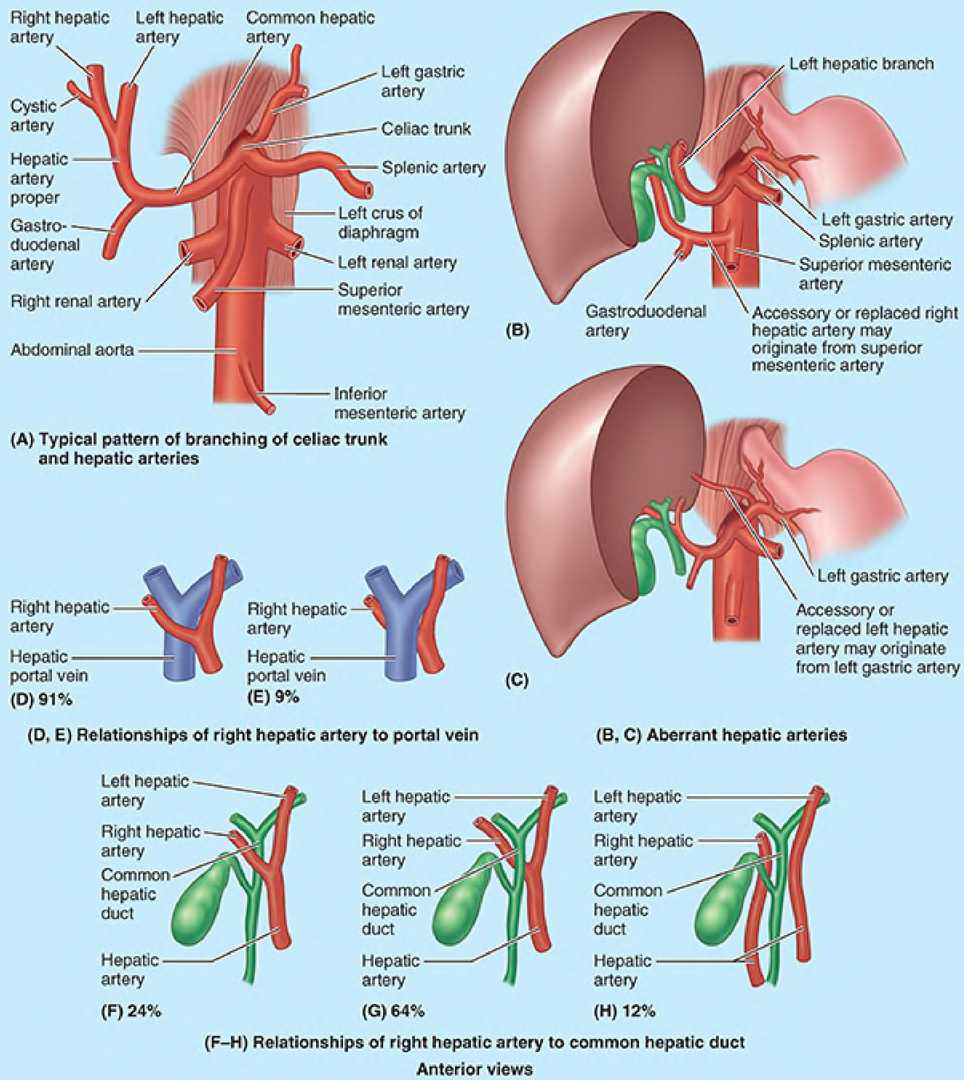


FIGURE B5.24. Variations of right and left hepatic arteries.

Variations in Relationships of Hepatic Arteries

In most people, the right hepatic artery crosses anterior to the hepatic portal vein (Fig. B5.24D); however, in some people, the artery crosses posterior to the hepatic portal vein (Fig. B5.24E). In most people, the right hepatic artery runs posterior to the common hepatic duct (Fig. B5.24G). In some individuals, the right hepatic artery crosses anterior to the common hepatic duct (Fig. B5.24F), or the right hepatic artery arises from the SMA and so does not cross the common hepatic duct at all (Fig. B5.24H). These anatomic variations are primarily important when surgical procedures are performed in the region.

Hepatomegaly

The liver is a soft highly vascular organ that receives a large amount of blood immediately before it enters the heart. Both the IVC and hepatic veins lack valves. Any rise in central venous pressure is directly transmitted to the liver, which enlarges as it becomes engorged with blood. Marked temporary engorgement stretches the fibrous capsule of the liver, producing pain around the lower ribs, particularly in the right hypochondrium. This engorgement, particularly in conjunction with increased or sustained diaphragmatic activity, may be an underlying cause of “runner’s stitch,” perhaps explaining why it is a right-sided phenomenon.

In addition to diseases that produce hepatic engorgement such as congestive heart failure, bacterial and viral diseases such as hepatitis cause hepatomegaly (liver enlargement). When the liver is massively enlarged, its inferior edge may be readily palpated below the right costal margin and may even reach the pelvic brim in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen.

Tumors also enlarge the liver. The liver is a common site of metastatic carcinoma (secondary cancers spreading from organs drained by the portal system of veins, e.g., the large intestine). Cancer cells may also pass to the liver from the thorax, especially from the right breast, because of the communications between thoracic lymph nodes and the lymphatic vessels draining the bare area of the liver. Metastatic tumors form hard, rounded nodules within the hepatic parenchyma that may be palpable on physical examination.

Cirrhosis of Liver

The liver is the primary site for detoxification of substances absorbed by the gastrointestinal tract; thus, it is vulnerable to cellular damage and consequent scarring, accompanied by regenerative nodules. There is progressive destruction of hepatocytes (see Fig. 5.69) in hepatic cirrhosis and replacement of these cells by fat and fibrous tissue. Although many industrial solvents, such as carbon tetrachloride, produce cirrhosis, the condition develops most frequently in persons suffering from chronic alcoholism.

Alcoholic cirrhosis, the most common of many causes of portal hypertension, is characterized by hepatomegaly and a "hobnail" appearance of the liver surface (see Fig. B5.31B in the Clinical Box "Portosystemic Shunts") resulting from fatty changes and fibrosis. The liver has great functional reserve; therefore, the metabolic evidence of liver failure is late to appear. Fibrous tissue surrounds the intrahepatic blood vessels and biliary ducts, making the liver firm and impeding the circulation of blood through it (portal hypertension). The preferred treatment of advanced hepatic cirrhosis is liver transplant. Less commonly, a portosystemic or portocaval shunt may be percutaneously or surgically created, anastomosing the portal and systemic venous systems (see the Clinical Box "Portosystemic Shunts").

Liver Biopsy

Hepatic tissue may be obtained for diagnostic purposes by liver biopsy. Because the liver is located in the right hypochondriac region where it receives protection from the overlying thoracic cage, the needle is commonly directed through the right 10th intercostal space in the midaxillary line. Before the physician takes the biopsy, the person is asked to hold his or her breath in full expiration to reduce the costodiaphragmatic recess and to lessen the possibility of damaging the lung and contaminating the pleural cavity.

Mobile Gallbladder

In most people, the gallbladder is closely attached to the fossa for the gallbladder on the visceral surface of the liver (see Fig. 5.72). In approximately 4% of people, however, the gallbladder is suspended from the liver by a short mesentery, increasing its mobility. Mobile gallbladders are subject to vascular torsion and infarction (sudden insufficiency of arterial or venous blood supply).

Variations in Cystic and Hepatic Ducts

Occasionally, the cystic duct runs alongside the common hepatic duct and adheres closely to it. The cystic duct may be short or even absent. In some people, there is low union of the cystic and common hepatic ducts (Fig. B5.25A). As a result, the bile duct is short and lies posterior to the superior part of the duodenum, or even inferior to it. When there is low union, the two ducts may be joined by fibrous tissue, making surgical clamping of the cystic duct difficult without injuring the common hepatic duct.

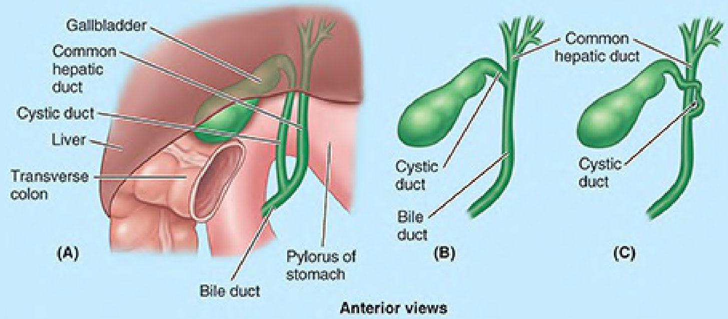


FIGURE B5.25. Union of cystic and common hepatic ducts. A. Low union. **B.** High union. **C.** Swerving course.

Occasionally, there is high union of the cystic and common hepatic ducts near the porta hepatis (Fig. B5.25B). In other cases, the cystic duct spirals anteriorly over the common hepatic duct before joining it on the left side (Fig. B5.25C). Awareness of the variations in arteries and bile duct formation is important for surgeons when they ligate the cystic duct during cholecystectomy (surgical removal of the gallbladder).

Accessory Hepatic Ducts

Accessory (aberrant) hepatic ducts are common and are in positions of danger during cholecystectomy. An accessory duct is a normal segmental duct that joins the biliary system outside the liver instead of within it (Fig. B5.26). Because it drains a normal segment of the liver, it leaks bile if inadvertently cut during surgery (Skandalakis, 2021). Of 95 gallbladders and biliary ducts studied, 7 had accessory ducts: 4 joined the common hepatic duct near the cystic ducts, 2 joined the cystic duct, and 1 was an anastomosing duct connecting the cystic duct with the common hepatic duct (Agur & Dalley, 2021).

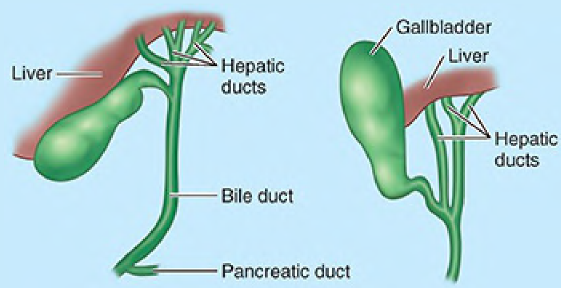


FIGURE B5.26. Accessory hepatic ducts.

Gallstones

A gallstone is a concretion in the gallbladder, cystic duct, or bile duct composed chiefly of cholesterol crystals (Fig. B5.27A, B). Gallstones (cholelithiasis) are much more common in females and their incidence increases with age. However, in approximately 50% of persons, gallstones are "silent" (asymptomatic). Over a 20-year period, two thirds of asymptomatic people with gallstones remain symptom free. The longer

stones remain quiescent, the less likely symptoms are to develop. For gallstones to cause clinical symptoms, they must obtain a size sufficient to produce mechanical injury to the gallbladder or obstruction of the biliary tract (Townsend et al., 2022).

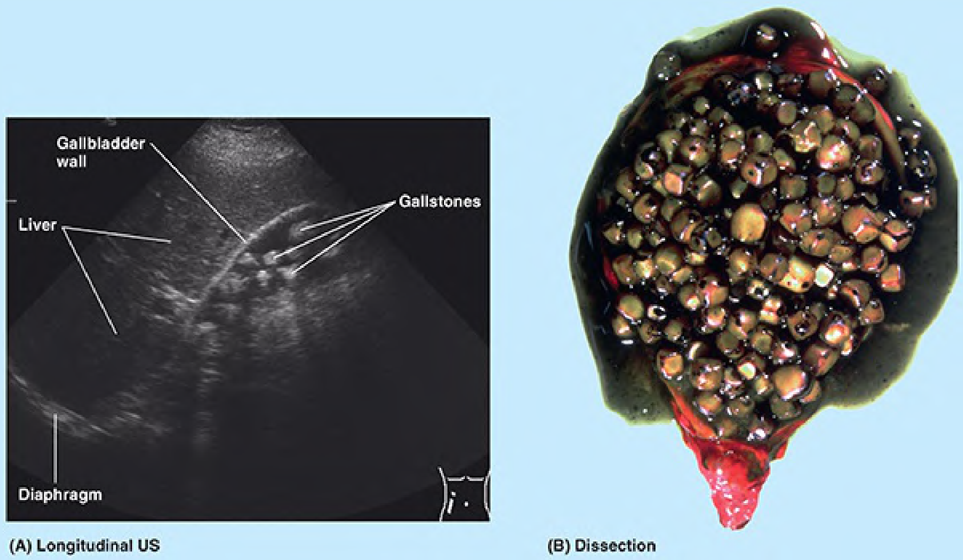


FIGURE B5.27. **Gallstones. A.** Ultrasound of the gallbladder with echogenic calculi (gallstones). **B.** Gallstones (cholelithiasis). The gallbladder has been opened to reveal numerous cholesterol gallstones.

The distal end of the common bile duct is a narrow part of the biliary passages and is a common site for impaction of gallstones (Fig. B5.28). Gallstones may also lodge in the hepatic and cystic ducts. A stone lodged in the cystic duct causes biliary colic (intense, spasmodic pain). When the gallbladder relaxes, the stone may move back into the gallbladder. If the stone blocks the cystic duct, cholecystitis (inflammation of the gallbladder) occurs because of bile accumulation, causing enlargement of the gallbladder.

Another common site for impaction of gallstones is a sacculation (Hartmann pouch) that may appear at the junction of the neck of the gallbladder and the cystic duct. When this pouch is large, the cystic duct arises from its upper left aspect, not from what appears to be the apex of the gallbladder. Gallstones commonly collect in the pouch. If a peptic duodenal ulcer ruptures, a false passage may form between the pouch and the superior part of the duodenum, allowing gallstones to enter the duodenum. (See the following Clinical Box "Gallstones in Duodenum" below.)

FIGURE B5.28. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography. Dilation of the common bile duct has occurred secondary to a calculus lodged in the distal duct. Note the concave contour of the distal end of the visible duct at the superior margin of the calculus.

Pain from an impaction of the gallbladder develops in the epigastric region and later shifts to the right hypochondriac region at the junction of the 9th costal cartilage and the lateral border of the rectus sheath. Inflammation of the gallbladder may cause pain in the posterior thoracic wall, or right shoulder owing to irritation of the diaphragm. If bile cannot leave the gallbladder, it enters the blood and may cause jaundice (see the Clinical Box "Pancreatic Cancer"). Ultrasound and CT scans are common noninvasive techniques for locating stones.

Gallstones in Duodenum

A gallbladder that is dilated and inflamed owing to an impacted gallstone in its duct may develop adhesions with adjacent viscera. Continued inflammation may break down (ulcerate) the tissue boundaries between the gallbladder and a part of the gastrointestinal tract adherent to it, resulting in a cholecysto-enteric fistula (Fig. B5.29). Because of their proximity to the gallbladder, the superior part of the duodenum and the transverse colon are most likely to develop a fistula of this type. The fistula would enable a large gallstone, incapable of passing though the cystic duct, to enter the gastrointestinal tract. A large gallstone entering the small intestine in this way may become trapped at the ileocecal valve (the next narrowing of the GI tract), producing a bowel obstruction (gallstone ileus). A cholecysto-enteric fistula also permits gas from the gastrointestinal tract to enter the gallbladder, providing a diagnostic radiographic sign.

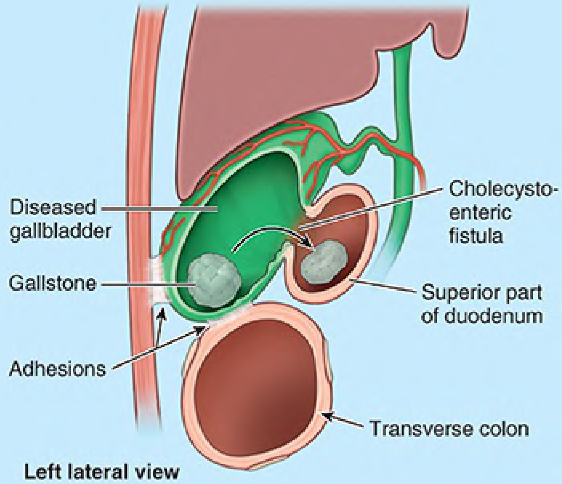


FIGURE B5.29. Gallstones in duodenum.

Cholecystectomy

People with severe biliary colic usually have their gallbladders removed. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy often replaces the open-incision surgical method.

The cystic artery most commonly arises from the right hepatic artery in the cystohepatic triangle (Calot triangle) (see Figs. 5.72 and 5.74A). In current clinical use, the cystohepatic triangle is defined inferiorly by the cystic duct, medially by the common hepatic duct, and superiorly by the inferior surface of the liver. Careful dissection of the cystohepatic triangle early during cholecystectomy safeguards these important structures should there be anatomical variations. Errors during gallbladder surgery commonly result from failure to appreciate the common variations in the anatomy of the biliary system, especially its blood supply. Before dividing any structure and removing the gallbladder, surgeons identify all three biliary ducts, as well as the cystic and hepatic arteries. It is usually the right hepatic artery that is in danger during surgery and must be located before ligating the cystic artery.

Portal Hypertension

When scarring and fibrosis from cirrhosis obstruct the hepatic portal vein in the liver, pressure rises in the vein and its tributaries, producing portal hypertension.

The large volume of blood flowing from the portal system to the systemic system at the sites of portal–systemic anastomoses may produce varicose veins, especially in the lower esophagus. The veins may become so dilated that their walls rupture, resulting in hemorrhage (see Fig. B5.7).

Bleeding from esophageal varices (abnormally dilated veins) at the distal end of the esophagus is often severe and may be fatal. In severe cases of portal obstruction, the veins of the anterior abdominal wall (normally caval tributaries) that anastomose with the para-

umbilical veins (normally portal tributaries) may become varicose and look somewhat like small snakes radiating under the skin around the umbilicus. This condition is referred to as caput medusae because of its resemblance to the serpents on the head of Medusa, a character in Greek mythology (Fig. B5.30).

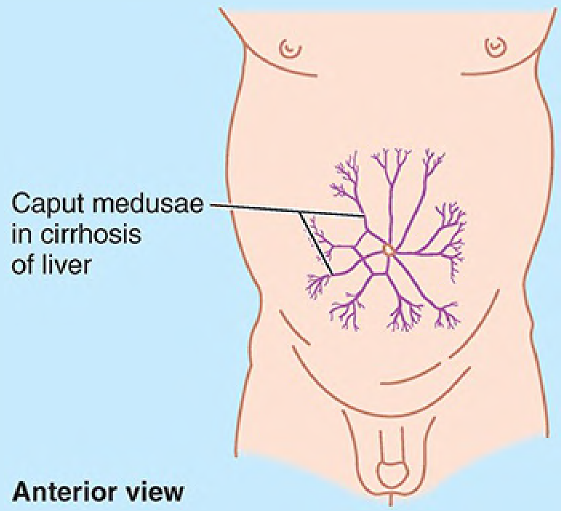


FIGURE B5.30. Caput medusa.

Portosystemic Shunts

A common method for reducing portal hypertension is to divert blood from the portal venous system to the systemic venous system by creating a communication between the hepatic portal vein and the IVC. Initially, portocaval anastomoses or portosystemic shunts were laparotomy procedures in which the two veins were surgically connected, usually where they lie close to each other posterior to the liver (Fig. B5.31A, B). Another means of reducing portal pressure was to join the splenic vein to the left renal vein, after splenectomy (splenorenal anastomosis or shunt) (Fig. B5.31C) (Skandalakis, 2021). These methods have been almost entirely replaced by performing liver transplants, sometimes preceded by a transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) procedure while a donor liver is procured. A TIPS procedure is performed by an interventional radiologist introducing a catheter tipped with an unexpanded stent into the right internal jugular vein and directing it under fluoroscopic guidance into one of the major hepatic veins via the right brachiocephalic vein, superior vena cava, right atrium, and inferior vena cava. Once in the hepatic vein, the unopened stent is pushed through the parenchyma of the liver into the portal vein. The stent is expanded, setting it in place and providing the portosystemic shunt (anastomosis) (Fig. 5.31D). The catheter is then withdrawn.

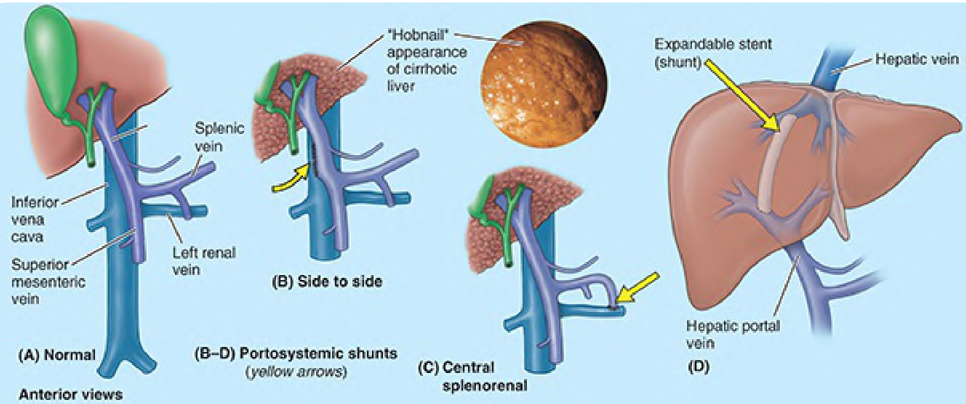


FIGURE B5.31. **Portosystemic shunts (yellow arrows).**

The Bottom Line

Spleen and Pancreas

Spleen: The spleen is a highly vascular (sinusoidal), pulpy mass surrounded by a delicate fibroelastic capsule. ■ The spleen is completely covered by peritoneum, except at the splenic hilum, where the splenorenal ligament (conveying splenic vessels to the spleen) and gastrosplenic ligament (conveying the short gastric and left gastro-omental vessels to the stomach) attach. ■ The average spleen is about the size of one's fist, within a considerable range of normal variation. ■ The spleen is the largest of the lymphoid organs, but it is not vital. ■ As a blood reservoir, it is normally capable of considerable temporary expansion and contraction, but it may undergo much more marked, chronic enlargement when diseased. ■ Although it receives protection from the overlying left 9th–11th ribs, the relatively delicate spleen is the abdominal organ most vulnerable to indirect trauma. ■ Strong blows to the abdomen can cause a sudden increase in intra-abdominal pressure that may rupture the spleen, resulting in profuse intraperitoneal hemorrhage.

Pancreas: The pancreas is both an exocrine gland, producing pancreatic juice that is secreted into the duodenum for digestion, and an endocrine gland, producing insulin and glucagon that are released as hormones into the blood. ■ The secondarily retroperitoneal pancreas consists of a head, an uncinate process, neck, body, and tail. ■ The head, to the right of the SMA, is embraced by the C-shaped duodenum and penetrated by the termination of the bile duct, whereas its extension, the uncinate process, passes posterior to the SMA. ■ The neck passes anterior to the SMA and SMV, the latter merging there with the splenic vein to form the hepatic portal vein. ■ The body lies to the left of the SMA, running transversely across the posterior wall of the omental bursa and crossing anteriorly

over the L2 vertebral body and abdominal aorta. ■ The tail enters the splenorenal ligament as it approaches the splenic hilum. ■ The splenic vein runs parallel and posterior to the tail and body of the pancreas as it runs from the spleen to the hepatic portal vein. ■ The main pancreatic duct runs a similar course within the pancreas, continuing transversely through the head to merge with the bile duct to form the hepatopancreatic ampulla, which enters the descending part of the duodenum. ■ As an endocrine gland, the pancreas receives an abundant blood supply from the pancreaticoduodenal and splenic arteries. ■ Although it receives vasomotor sympathetic and secretomotor parasympathetic nerve fibers, regulation of pancreatic secretion is primarily hormonal. ■ The pancreas is well protected by its central location in the abdomen. The exocrine pancreas is seldom the cause of clinical problems, although diabetes, involving the endocrine pancreas, has become increasingly common.

Liver, Biliary Ducts, Gallbladder, and Portal Vein

Liver: The liver has multiple functions. ■ It is our major metabolic organ, initially receiving all absorbed foodstuffs, except fats. ■ It is also our largest gland, functioning as an extrinsic intestinal gland in producing bile. ■ The liver occupies essentially all of the right dome of the diaphragm and extends to the apex of the left dome. Consequently, it enjoys protection from the lower thoracic cage and moves with respiratory excursions. ■ The liver is divided superficially by the falciform ligament and a groove for the ligamentum venosum into a large anatomical right lobe and a much smaller left one; formations on its visceral surface demarcate caudate and quadrate lobes. ■ The liver is covered with peritoneum except for the bare area, demarcated by peritoneal reflections comprising the coronary ligaments. ■ Based on interdigitated branchings of the portal triad (hepatic portal vein, hepatic artery, and intrahepatic bile ducts) and hepatic veins, the continuous parenchyma of the liver can be divided into right and left livers (plus the caudate lobe). ■ The liver can be further subdivided into four divisions and then eight surgically resectable hepatic segments. ■ The liver, like the lungs, receives a dual blood supply, with 75–80% of the blood arriving via the hepatic portal vein, meeting the nutritional needs of the hepatic parenchyma; 20–25% arrives via the hepatic artery, delivered primarily to the nonparenchymal elements. The hepatic portal vein and hepatic artery enter the liver via the porta hepatis, where the hepatic ducts exit. ■ Three large hepatic veins drain directly to the IVC as it is embedded in the liver’s bare area. ■ The liver is also the body’s largest lymph-producing organ. The liver’s visceral aspect drains via an abdominal route, and its diaphragmatic aspect drains via a thoracic route.

Biliary ducts and gallbladder: Right and left hepatic ducts drain the bile produced by the right and left livers into the common hepatic duct, which thus carries all bile from the

liver. ■ The common hepatic duct merges with the cystic duct to form the bile duct, which conveys the bile to the descending part of the duodenum. ■ When the sphincter of the bile duct is closed, bile backs up in the bile and cystic ducts, filling the gallbladder, where bile is stored and concentrated between meals. ■ Although parasympathetic innervation can open the sphincter of the bile duct (and the weaker sphincter of the hepatopancreatic ampulla) and contract the gallbladder, typically, these are hormonally regulated responses to fat entering the duodenum, emptying the accumulated bile into the duodenum. ■ The pear-shaped gallbladder is attached to the visceral surface of the liver, with its fundus projecting from the liver's inferior border against the anterior abdominal wall at the intersection of the transpyloric plane and the right MCL. ■ The gallbladder, cystic duct, and uppermost bile duct are supplied by the cystic artery, a branch arising from the right hepatic artery within the cystohepatic triangle. ■ In addition to drainage via cystic veins that accompany the cystic artery and enter the hepatic portal vein, veins from the fundus and body make up a mini-portal system that drains directly into the hepatic sinusoids deep to the visceral surface of the liver.

Hepatic portal vein: The large but short hepatic portal vein, formed posterior to the neck of the pancreas by the merger of the SMV and splenic vein, conveys all venous blood and blood-borne nutrients from the gastrointestinal tract to the liver. ■ The hepatic portal vein terminates at the porta hepatis, bifurcating into the right and left portal veins, distributed in a segmental pattern to the right and left livers. ■ The hepatic portal vein traverses the hepatoduodenal ligament (free edge of lesser omentum and anterior boundary of omental foramen) as part of an extrahepatic portal triad (hepatic portal vein, hepatic artery, bile duct). ■ Portal–systemic anastomoses provide a potential collateral pathway by which blood can return to the heart when there is an obstruction of the hepatic portal vein or disease of the liver. However, when the collateral pathways must convey large volumes, potentially lethal esophageal varices may develop.

Kidneys, Ureters, and Suprarenal Glands

The kidneys produce urine that is conveyed by the ureters to the urinary bladder in the pelvis. The superomedial aspect of each kidney normally contacts a suprarenal gland. A weak fascial septum separates the glands from the kidneys; thus, they are not actually attached to each other (Fig. 5.76). The suprarenal glands function as part of the endocrine system, completely separate in function from the kidneys. The superior urinary organs (kidneys and ureters), their vessels, and the suprarenal glands are primary retroperitoneal structures on the posterior abdominal wall—that is, they were originally formed as and remain retroperitoneal viscera.

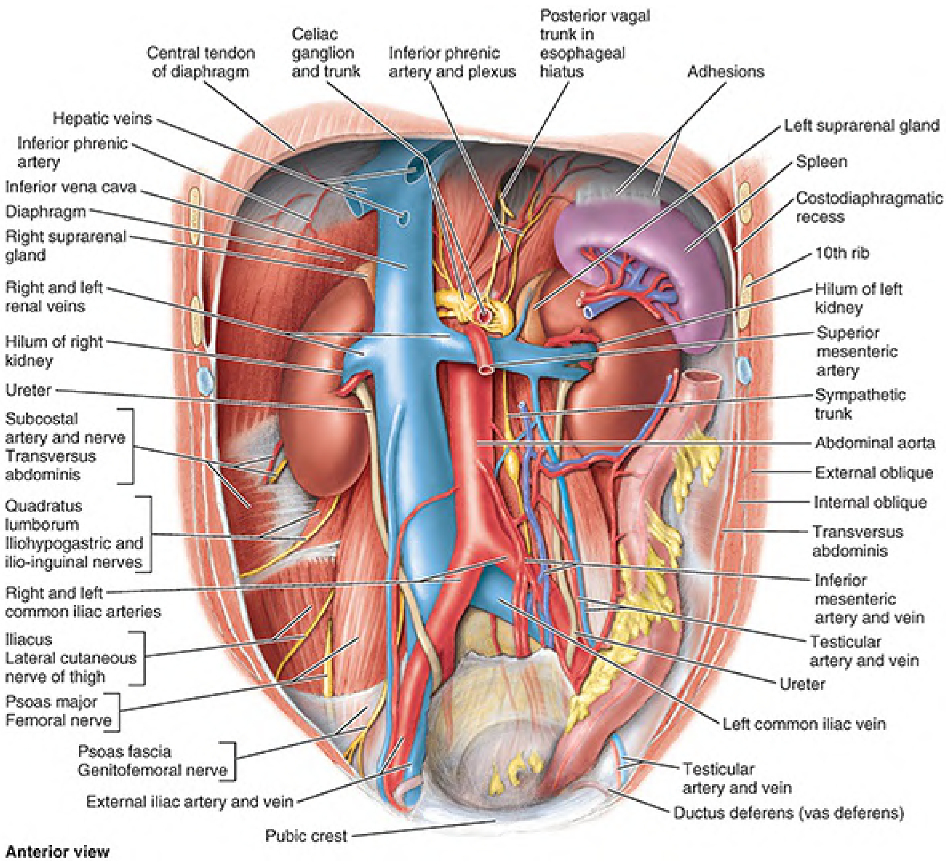


FIGURE 5.76. Posterior abdominal wall showing great vessels, kidneys, and suprarenal glands. Most of the fascia has been removed in this view. The ureter crosses the external iliac artery just beyond the common iliac bifurcation. The gonadal arteries (testicular arteries, as in this male, or ovarian arteries, in females) cross anterior to the ureters and provide ureteric branches to them. The renal arteries are not seen here because they lie posterior to the renal veins. The superior mesenteric artery arises superior to and runs anteriorly across the left renal vein, compressing the vein against the abdominal aorta posteriorly.

Perinephric fat (perirenal fat capsule) surrounds the kidneys and their vessels as it extends into their hollow centers, the **renal sinuses** (Fig. 5.77B). The kidneys, suprarenal glands, and the fat surrounding them are enclosed (except inferiorly) by a condensed, membranous layer of renal fascia, which continues medially to ensheathe the renal vessels, blending with the vascular sheaths of the latter. Inferomedially, a delicate extension of the renal fascia is prolonged along the ureter as the **periureteric fascia**. External to the renal fascia is **paranephric fat** (pararenal fat body), the extraperitoneal fat of the lumbar region that is most obvious posterior to the kidney. The renal fascia sends collagen bundles through the paranephric fat.

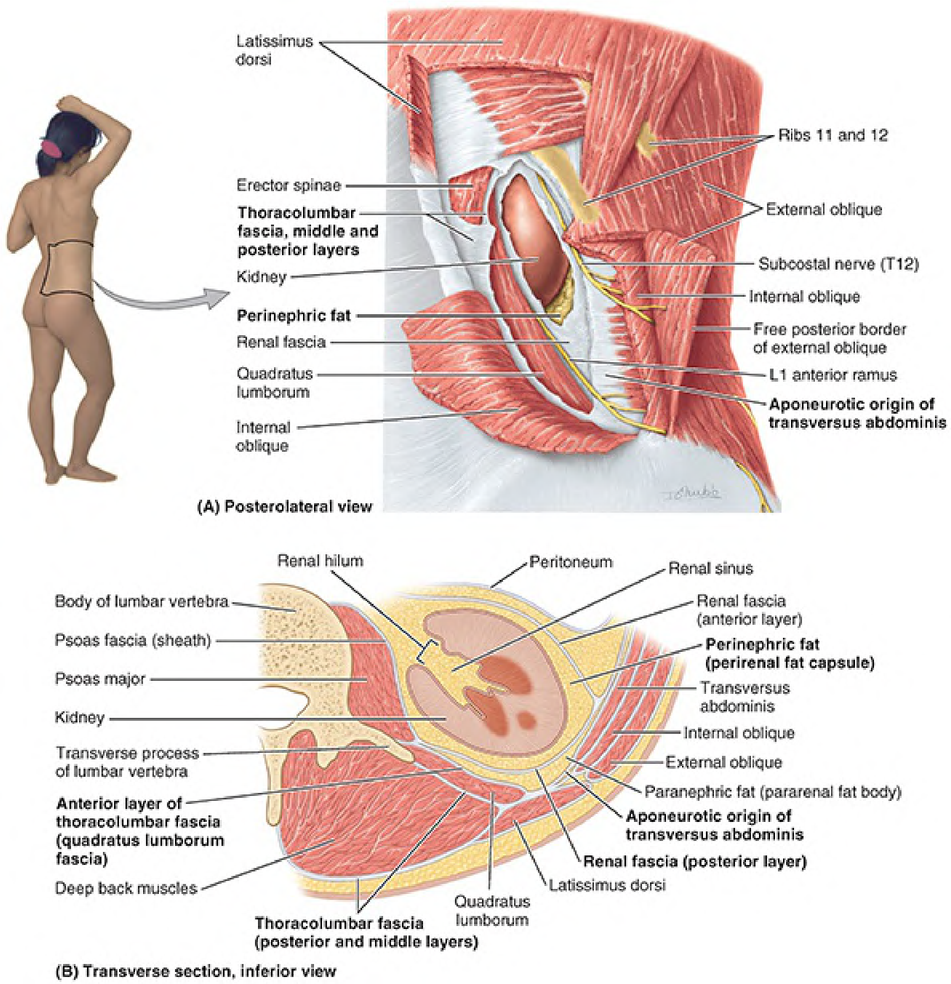


FIGURE 5.77. Lumbar approach to kidney and musculofascial relationships of kidney. A. Dissection. The right posterolateral abdominal wall has been incised between the muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall and the muscles of the back. The kidney and perinephric fat surrounding it inside the renal fascia are exposed. See Figure 5.95 for an earlier stage of this dissection. **B.** Relationship of kidney to muscles and fascia. Because the renal fascia surrounds the kidney as a separate sheath, it must be incised in any surgical operation on the kidney, whether from an anterior or a posterior approach.

The collagen bundles, renal fascia, and perinephric and paranephric fat, along with the tethering provided by the renal vessels and ureter, hold the kidneys in a relatively fixed position. However, movement of the kidneys occurs during respiration and when changing from the supine to the erect position, and vice versa. Normal renal mobility is approximately 3 cm, approximately the height of one vertebral body. Superiorly, the renal fascia is continuous with the fascia on the inferior surface of the diaphragm (diaphragmatic fascia); thus, the primary attachment of the suprarenal glands is to the diaphragm. Inferiorly, the anterior and posterior layers of renal fascia are only loosely united, if attached at all. (See the Clinical Boxes "Perinephric Abscess" and "Nephroptosis" in this chapter.)

KIDNEYS

The ovoid **kidneys** remove excess water, salts, and wastes of protein metabolism from the blood

while returning nutrients and chemicals to the blood. They lie retroperitoneally on the posterior abdominal wall, one on each side of the vertebral column at the level of the T12–L3 vertebrae (Figs. 5.76 and 5.78).

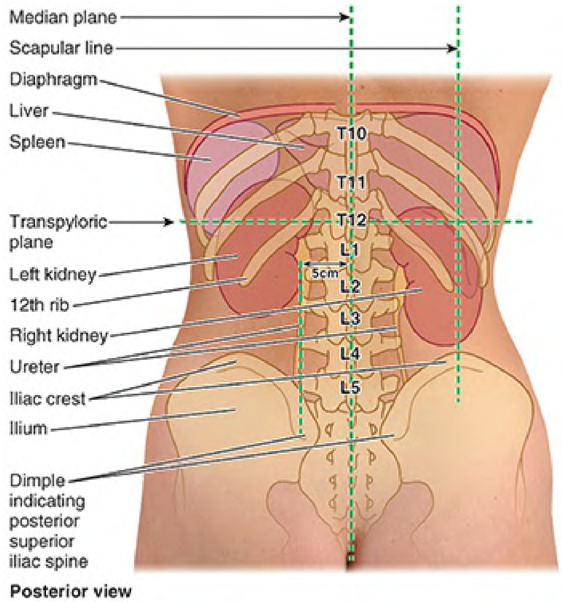


FIGURE 5.78. Surface projection of kidneys and abdominal part of ureters.

At the concave medial margin of each kidney is a vertical cleft, the renal hilum (Figs. 5.76 and 5.77B). The **renal hilum** is the entrance to a space within the kidney, the **renal sinus**. Structures that serve the kidneys (vessels, nerves, and structures that drain urine from the kidney) enter and exit the renal sinus through the renal hilum. The hilum of the left kidney lies near the transpyloric plane, approximately 5 cm from the median plane (Fig. 5.78). The transpyloric plane passes through the superior pole of the right kidney, which is approximately 5.5 cm lower than the left pole, probably due to the presence of the liver. Posteriorly, the superior parts of the kidneys lie deep to the 11th and 12th ribs. The levels of the kidneys change during respiration and with changes in posture. Each kidney moves 2–3 cm in a vertical direction during the movement of the diaphragm that occurs with deep breathing. Because the usual surgical approach to the kidneys is through the posterior abdominal wall, it is helpful to know that the inferior pole of the right kidney is approximately a finger's breadth superior to the iliac crest.

During life, the kidneys are reddish brown and measure approximately 10 cm in length, 5 cm in width, and 5.5 cm in thickness. Superiorly, the posterior aspects of the kidneys are associated with the diaphragm, which separates them from the pleural cavities and the 12th pair of ribs (Figs. 5.76 and 5.78). More inferiorly, the posterior surfaces of the kidney are related to the psoas major muscles medially and the quadratus lumborum muscle (Figs. 5.76 and 5.77). (See the Clinical Box "Pain in Pararenal Region" in this chapter). The subcostal nerve and vessels and the iliohypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves descend diagonally across the posterior surface of the renal fascia overlying the kidneys. The liver, duodenum, and ascending colon are anterior to the right kidney (Figs. 5.75B and 5.79). This kidney is separated from the liver by the hepatorenal

recess. The left kidney is related to the stomach, spleen, pancreas, jejunum, and descending colon.

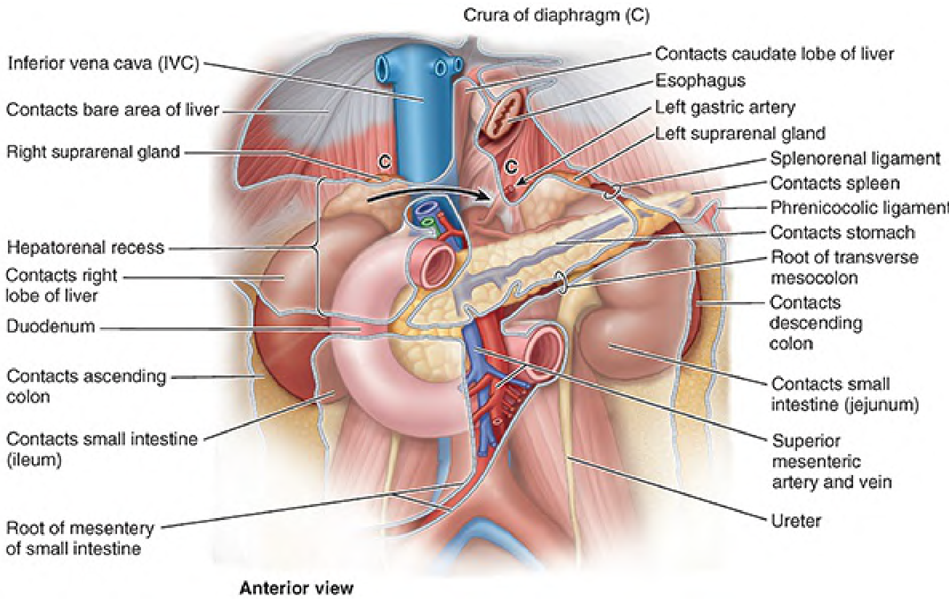


FIGURE 5.79. Relationships of kidneys, suprarenal glands, pancreas, and duodenum. The right suprarenal gland is at the level of the omental foramen (black arrow).

At the hilum, the renal vein is anterior to the renal artery, which is anterior to the renal pelvis (Figs. 5.76 and 5.80A). Within the kidney, the renal sinus is occupied by the renal pelvis, calices, vessels, and nerves and a variable amount of fat (Fig. 5.80C, D). Each kidney has anterior and posterior surfaces, medial and lateral margins, and superior and inferior poles. However, because of the protrusion of the lumbar vertebral column into the abdominal cavity, the kidneys are obliquely placed, lying at an angle to each other (Fig. 5.77B). Consequently, the transverse diameter of the kidneys is foreshortened in anterior views (Fig. 5.76) and anterior radiographs (Fig. 5.81). The lateral margin of each kidney is convex, and the medial margin is concave where the renal sinus and renal pelvis are located. The indented medial margin gives the kidney a somewhat bean-shaped appearance.

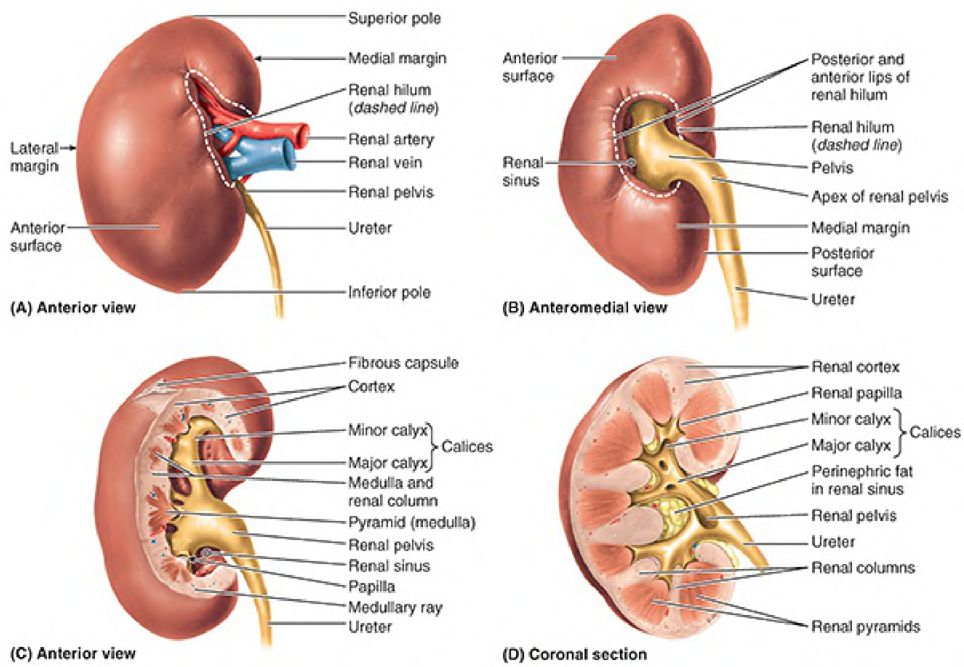


FIGURE 5.80. **External and internal features of kidneys. A.** External features of right kidney. **B.** Renal sinus, as seen through renal hilum. **C.** Renal pelvis and calices within renal sinus. **D.** Internal features. The renal pyramids contain the collecting tubules and form the medulla of the kidney. The renal cortex contains the renal corpuscles.

The **renal pelvis** is the flattened, funnel-shaped expansion of the superior end of the ureter (Figs. 5.80B–D, 5.81, and 5.82). The **apex of the renal pelvis** is continuous with the ureter. The renal pelvis receives two or three **major calices** (calyces), each of which divides into two or three **minor calices**. Each minor calyx is indented by a **renal papilla**, the apex of the renal pyramid, from which the urine is excreted. In living persons, the renal pelvis and its calices are usually collapsed (empty). The pyramids and their associated cortex form the lobes of the kidney. The lobes are visible on the external surfaces of the kidneys in fetuses, and evidence of the lobes may persist for some time after birth.

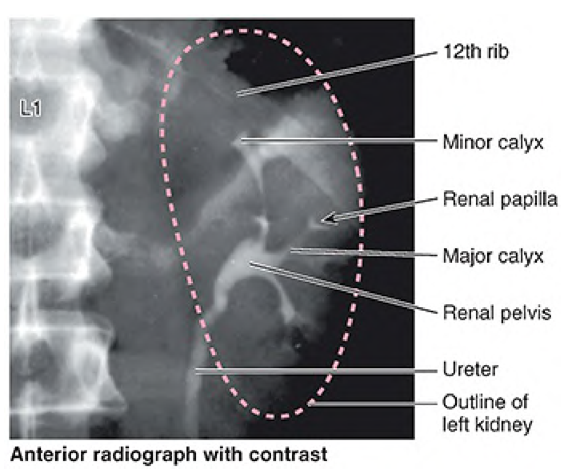


FIGURE 5.81. **Intravenous urogram (pyelogram).** The contrast medium was injected intravenously and was concentrated and excreted by the kidneys. This anterior projection shows the calices, renal pelvis, and ureter outlined by the contrast medium filling their lumina.

URETERS

The **ureters** are muscular ducts (25–30 cm long) with narrow lumina that carry urine from the kidneys to the urinary bladder (Figs. 5.76 and 5.82). They run inferiorly from the apices of the renal pelves at the hila of the kidneys, passing over the pelvic brim at the bifurcation of the common iliac arteries. They then run along the lateral wall of the pelvis and enter the urinary bladder.

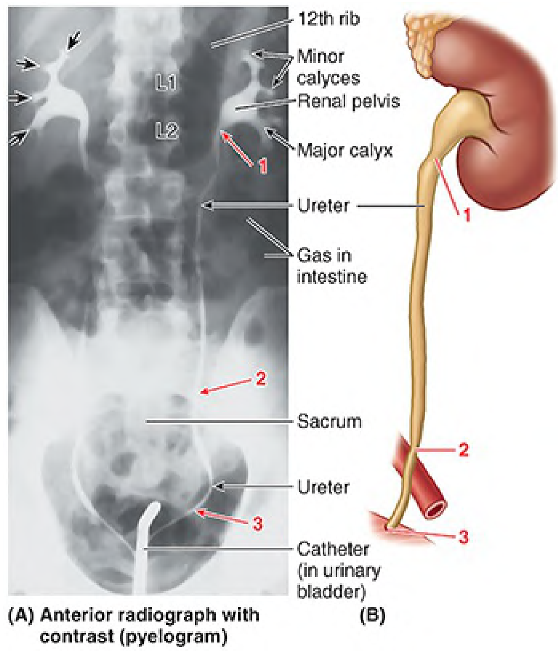


FIGURE 5.82. **Normal constrictions of ureters. A.** Retrograde pyelogram. Contrast medium was injected into the ureters from a flexible endoscope (urethroscope) in the bladder. The arrows represent papillae bulging into the minor calices. **B.** Sites at which relative constrictions in the ureters normally appear: at the ureteropelvic junction (1), crossing the external iliac artery and/or pelvic brim (2), and as the ureter traverses the bladder wall (3).

The abdominal parts of the ureters adhere closely to the parietal peritoneum and are retroperitoneal throughout their course. From the back, the surface marking of the ureter is a line joining a point 5 cm lateral to the L1 spinous process and the posterior superior iliac spine (Fig. 5.78). The ureters occupy a sagittal plane that intersects the tips of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae. When examining the ureters radiographically using contrast medium (Figs. 5.81 and 5.82), the ureters normally demonstrate relative constrictions in three places: (1) at the junction of the ureters and renal pelves, (2) where the ureters cross the brim of the pelvic inlet, and (3) during their passage through the wall of the urinary bladder (Fig. 5.82). These constricted areas are potential sites of obstruction by ureteric stones (calculi).

Congenital anomalies of the kidneys and ureters are fairly common. (See the Clinical Box "Congenital Anomalies of Kidneys and Ureters" in this chapter.)

SUPRARENAL GLANDS

The **suprarenal (adrenal) glands**, yellowish in living persons, are located between the

superomedial aspects of the kidneys and the diaphragm (Fig. 5.83), where they are surrounded by connective tissue containing considerable perinephric fat. The suprarenal glands are enclosed by renal fascia by which they are attached to the crura of the diaphragm. Although the name "suprarenal" implies that the kidneys are their primary relationship, their major attachment is to the diaphragmatic crura. They are separated from the kidneys by a thin septum (part of the renal fascia—see the Clinical Box "Renal Transplantation" in this chapter).

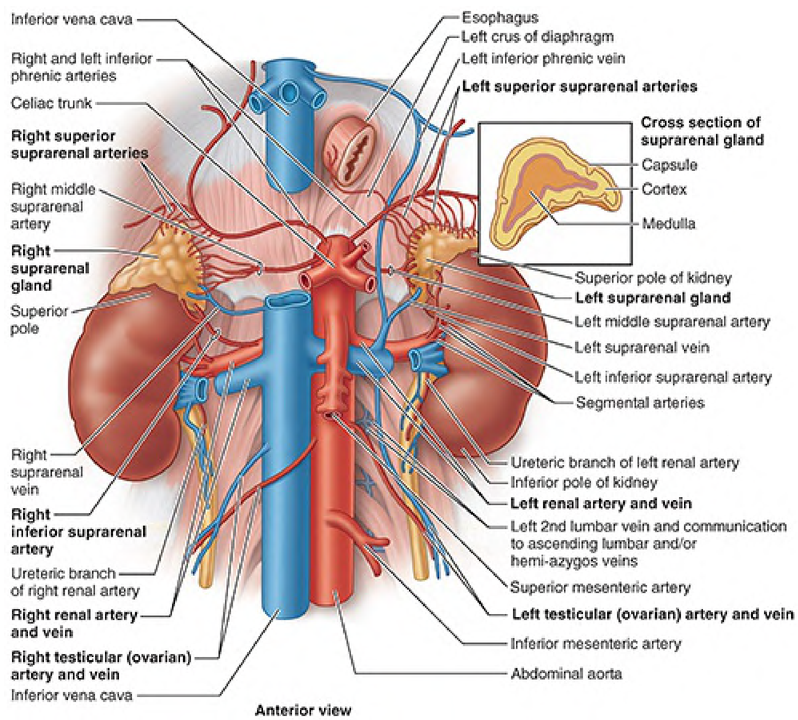


FIGURE 5.83. **Blood vessels of suprarenal glands, kidneys, and superior parts of ureters.** The celiac plexus of nerves and ganglia that surrounds the celiac trunk has been removed. The inferior vena cava has been transected, and its superior part has been elevated from its normal position to reveal the arteries that pass posterior to it. The renal veins have been cut so that the kidneys could be moved laterally. For the normal relationships of the kidneys and suprarenal glands with the great vessels, see Figure 5.76. A cross section of the suprarenal gland (inset) shows that it is composed of two distinct parts: the cortex and medulla, which are two separate endocrine glands that became closely related during embryonic development.

The shape and relations of the suprarenal glands differ on the two sides. The pyramidal right gland is more apical (situated over the superior pole) relative to the left kidney, lies anterolateral to the right crus of the diaphragm, and makes contact with the IVC anteromedially (Fig. 5.79) and the liver anterolaterally. The crescent-shaped left gland is medial to the superior half of the left kidney and is related to the spleen, stomach, pancreas, and the left crus of the diaphragm.

Each gland has a hilum, where the veins and lymphatic vessels exit the gland, whereas the arteries and nerves enter the glands at multiple sites. The medial borders of the suprarenal glands are 4–5 cm apart. In this area, from right to left, are the IVC, right crus of the diaphragm, celiac ganglion, celiac trunk, SMA, and the left crus of the diaphragm.

Each suprarenal gland has two parts: the suprarenal cortex and suprarenal medulla (Fig. 5.83, inset); these parts have different embryological origins and different functions.

The **suprarenal cortex** derives from mesoderm and secretes corticosteroids and androgens. These hormones cause the kidneys to retain sodium and water in response to stress, increasing the blood volume and blood pressure. They also affect muscles and organs such as the heart and lungs.

The **suprarenal medulla** is a mass of nervous tissue permeated with capillaries and sinusoids that derives from neural crest cells associated with the sympathetic nervous system (see Fig. 5.87). The chromaffin cells of the medulla are related to sympathetic ganglion (postsynaptic) neurons in both derivation (neural crest cells) and function. These cells secrete catecholamines (mostly epinephrine) into the bloodstream in response to signals from presynaptic neurons. Powerful medullary hormones, epinephrine (adrenaline) and norepinephrine (noradrenaline), activate the body to a flight-or-fight status in response to traumatic stress. They also increase heart rate and blood pressure, dilate the bronchioles, and change blood flow patterns, preparing for physical exertion.

VESSELS AND NERVES OF KIDNEYS, URETERS, AND SUPRARENAL GLANDS

Renal Arteries and Veins. The renal arteries arise at the level of the IV disc between the L1 and L2 vertebrae (Figs. 5.83 and 5.84). The longer **right renal artery** passes posterior to the IVC. Typically, each artery divides close to the hilum into five segmental arteries that are end arteries (i.e., they do not anastomose significantly with other segmental arteries so that the area supplied by each segmental artery is an independent, surgically resectable unit or **renal segment**). Segmental arteries are distributed to the renal segments as follows (Fig. 5.85):

- The superior (apical) segment is supplied by the **superior (apical) segmental artery**; the anterosuperior and antero-inferior segments are supplied by the **anterosuperior segmental** and **antero-inferior segmental arteries**; and the inferior segment is supplied by the **inferior segmental artery**. These arteries originate from the anterior branch of the renal artery.
- The **posterior segmental artery**, which originates from a continuation of the posterior branch of the renal artery, supplies the posterior segment of the kidney.

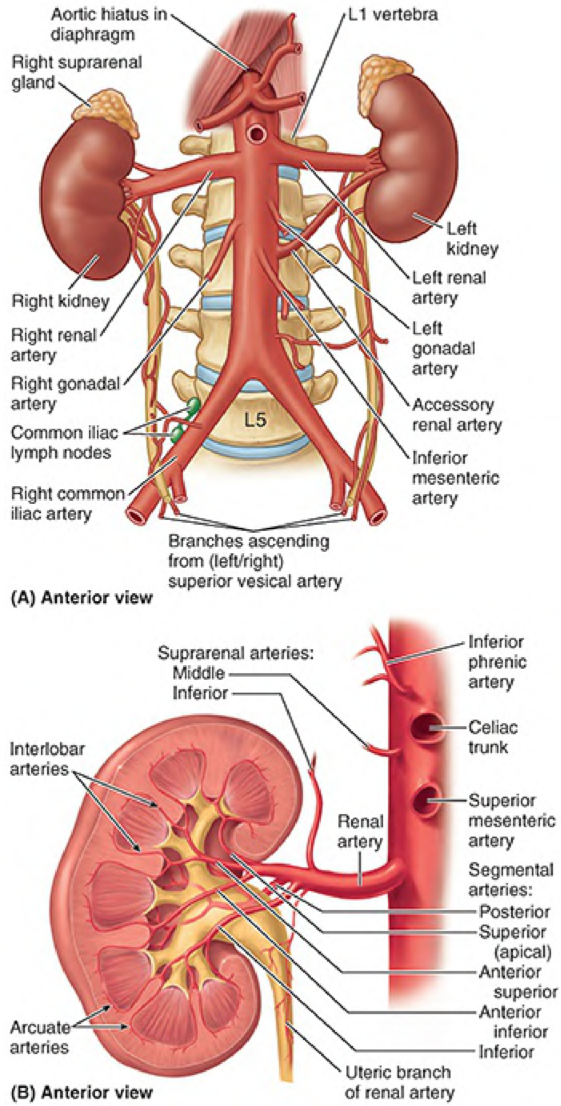


FIGURE 5.84. **Arterial supply of kidneys and ureters. A.** Renal arteries. The abdominal aorta lies anterior to the L1–L4 vertebral bodies, usually immediately to the left of the midline. An accessory left renal artery is present. **B.** Internal distribution of renal artery.

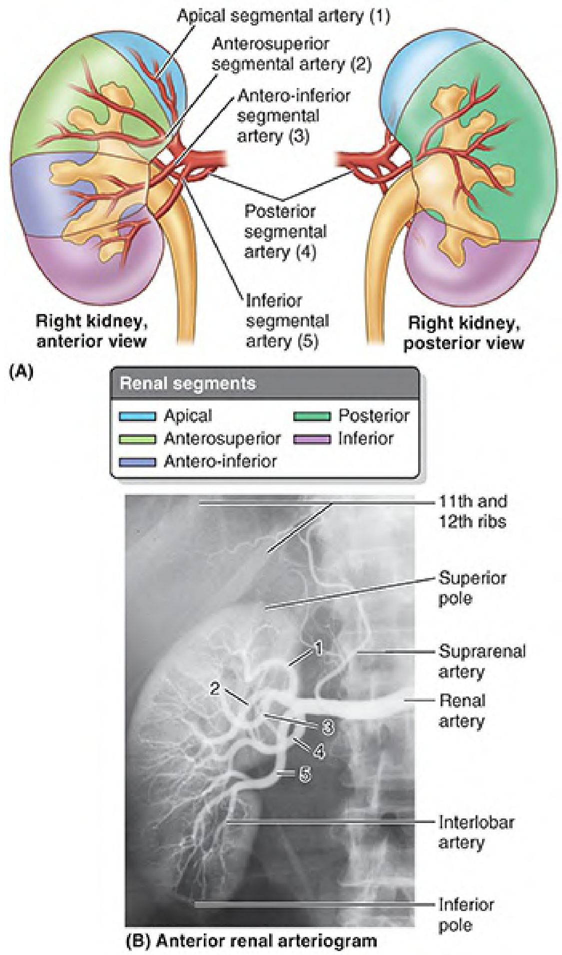


FIGURE 5.85. Renal segments and segmental arteries. A. Renal segments and segmental renal arteries. Numbers in parentheses identify arteries in part **B**. **B.** Renal arteriogram. 1–5, segmental renal arteries. Although the veins of the kidney anastomose freely, segmental arteries are end arteries.

Multiple renal arteries are common and usually enter the hilum of the kidney (Fig. 5.84). Extrahilar renal arteries from the renal artery or aorta may enter the external surface of the kidney, commonly at their poles ("polar arteries"—see the Clinical Box "Accessory Renal Vessels" in this chapter).

Several renal veins drain each kidney and unite in a variable fashion to form the right and left renal veins; these veins lie anterior to the **right** and **left renal arteries**. The longer left renal vein receives the left suprarenal vein, the left gonadal (testicular or ovarian) vein, and a communication with the ascending lumbar vein; it then traverses the acute angle between the SMA anteriorly and the aorta posteriorly (see the Clinical Box "Renal Vein Entrapment Syndrome" in this chapter). Each renal vein drains into the IVC.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Ureters. Arterial branches to the abdominal portion of the ureter arise consistently from the renal arteries, with less constant branches arising from the testicular or ovarian arteries, the abdominal aorta, and the common iliac arteries (Fig. 5.84). The branches approach the ureters medially and divide into ascending and descending branches, forming a longitudinal anastomosis on the ureteric wall. However, ureteric branches

are small and relatively delicate, and disruption may lead to ischemia in spite of the continuous anastomotic channel formed. In operations in the posterior abdominal region, surgeons pay special attention to the location of ureters and are careful not to retract them laterally or unnecessarily. The arteries supplying the pelvic portion of the ureter are discussed in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum.

Veins draining the abdominal part of the ureters drain into the renal and gonadal (testicular or ovarian) veins (Fig. 5.83).

Suprarenal Arteries and Veins. The endocrine function of the suprarenal glands makes their abundant blood supply necessary. The suprarenal arteries branch freely before entering each gland so that 50–60 branches penetrate the capsule covering the entire surface of the glands. Suprarenal arteries arise from three sources (Fig. 5.83):

- **Superior suprarenal arteries** (6–8) from the inferior phrenic arteries
- **Middle suprarenal arteries** (L1) from the abdominal aorta near the level of origin of the SMA
- **Inferior suprarenal arteries** (L1) from the renal arteries

The venous drainage of the suprarenal glands occurs via large suprarenal veins. The short **right suprarenal vein** drains into the IVC, whereas the longer **left suprarenal vein**, often joined by the inferior phrenic vein, empties into the left renal vein.

Lymphatics of Kidneys, Ureters, and Suprarenal Glands. The renal lymphatic vessels follow the renal veins and drain into the right and left lumbar (caval and aortic) lymph nodes (Fig. 5.86). Lymphatic vessels from the superior part of the ureter may join those from the kidney or pass directly to the lumbar nodes. Lymphatic vessels from the middle part of the ureter usually drain into the common iliac lymph nodes, whereas vessels from its inferior part drain into the common, external, or internal iliac lymph nodes.

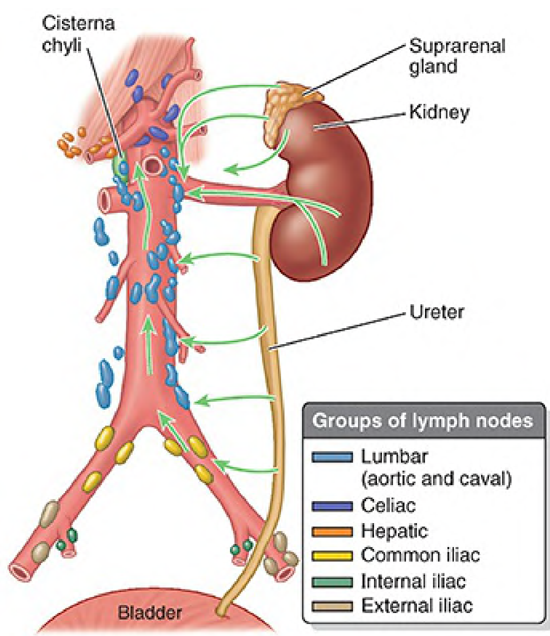


FIGURE 5.86. Lymphatics of kidneys and suprarenal glands. The lymphatic vessels of the kidneys form three

plexuses: one in the substance of the kidney, one under the fibrous capsule, and one in the perirenal fat. Four or five lymphatic trunks leave the renal hilum and are joined by vessels from the capsule (arrows). The lymphatic vessels follow the renal vein to the lumbar (caval and aortic) lymph nodes. Lymph from the suprarenal glands also drains to the lumbar nodes. Lymphatic drainage of the ureters is also illustrated. The lumbar lymph nodes drain through the lumbar lymphatic trunks to the cisterna chyli.

The suprarenal lymphatic vessels arise from a plexus deep to the capsule of the gland and from one in its medulla. The lymph passes to the lumbar lymph nodes. Many lymphatic vessels leave the suprarenal glands.

Nerves of Kidneys, Ureters, and Suprarenal Glands. The nerves to the kidneys arise from the renal nerve plexus and consist of sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers (Fig. 5.87A). The renal nerve plexus is supplied by fibers from the abdominopelvic (especially the least) splanchnic nerves. The nerves of the abdominal part of the ureters derive from the renal, abdominal aortic, and superior hypogastric plexuses (Fig. 5.87A). Visceral afferent fibers conveying pain sensation (e.g., resulting from obstruction and consequent distension) follow the sympathetic fibers retrograde to spinal ganglia and cord segments T11–L2. Ureteric pain is usually referred to the ipsilateral lower quadrant of the anterior abdominal wall and especially to the groin (see the Clinical Box “Renal and Ureteric Calculi” in this chapter).

ALGRAWANY

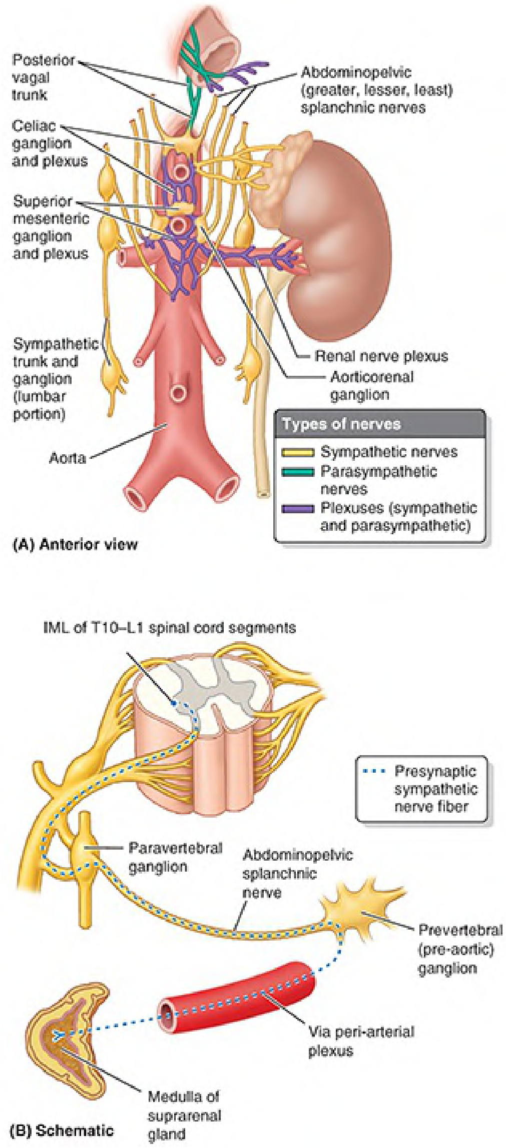


FIGURE 5.87. Nerves of kidneys and suprarenal glands. A. Overview. The nerves are derived from the celiac plexus, abdominopelvic (lesser and least) splanchnic nerves, and the aorticorenal ganglion. The main efferent innervation of the kidney is vasomotor, autonomic nerves supplying the afferent and efferent arterioles. **B.** Suprarenal glands. Exclusively in the case of the suprarenal medulla, the presynaptic sympathetic fibers pass through both the paravertebral and prevertebral ganglia without synapsing to end directly on the secretory cells of the suprarenal medulla. IML, intermediolateral cell column.

The rich nerve supply of the suprarenal glands is from the celiac plexus and abdominopelvic (greater, lesser, and least) splanchnic nerves. Myelinated presynaptic sympathetic fibers—mainly derived from the intermediolateral cell column (IML), or lateral horn, of gray matter of the spinal cord segments T10–L1—traverse both the paravertebral and the prevertebral ganglia, without synapse, to be distributed to the chromaffin cells in the suprarenal medulla (Fig. 5.87B).

CLINICAL

BOX

KIDNEYS, URETERS, AND SUPRARENAL GLANDS

Palpation of Kidneys

The kidneys are often impalpable. In lean adults, the inferior pole of the right kidney is palpable by bimanual examination as a firm, smooth, somewhat rounded mass that descends during inspiration. Palpation of the right kidney is generally easier than the left kidney because it is 1–2 cm inferior to the left one. To palpate the kidneys, press the flank (side of the trunk between the 11th and 12th ribs and the iliac crest) anteriorly with one hand while palpating deeply at the costal margin with the other (Fig. B5.32). The left kidney is usually not palpable unless it is enlarged or a retroperitoneal mass has displaced it inferiorly.

FIGURE B5.32. Palpation of right kidney.

Perinephric Abscess

The attachments of the renal fascia determine the path of extension of a perinephric abscess (pus around the kidney). For example, fascia at the renal hilum attaches to the renal vessels and ureter, usually preventing the spread of pus to the contralateral side. However, pus from an abscess (or blood from an injured kidney) may force its way into the pelvis between the loosely attached anterior and posterior layers of the renal fascia.

Nephroptosis

Because the layers of renal fascia do not fuse firmly inferiorly to offer resistance, abnormally mobile kidneys may descend more than the normal 3 cm when the body is erect. When kidneys descend, the suprarenal glands remain in place because they lie in a separate fascial compartment and are firmly attached to the diaphragm. Nephroptosis (dropped kidney) is distinguished from an ectopic kidney (congenital misplaced kidney) by a ureter of normal length that has loose coiling or kinks because the distance to the bladder

has been reduced. The kinks do not seem to be of significance. Symptoms of intermittent pain in the renal region, relieved by lying down, appear to result from traction on the renal vessels. The lack of inferior support for the kidneys in the lumbar region is one of the reasons transplanted kidneys are placed in the iliac fossa of the greater pelvis. Other reasons for this placement are the availability of major blood vessels and convenient access to the nearby bladder.

Renal Transplantation

Renal transplantation is the preferred treatment for selected cases of chronic renal failure. The kidney can be removed from the donor without damaging the suprarenal gland because of the weak septum of renal fascia that separates the kidney from this gland. The site for transplanting a kidney is in the iliac fossa of the greater pelvis. This site supports the transplanted kidney, so that traction is not placed on the surgically anastomosed vessels. The renal artery and vein are joined to the external iliac artery and vein, respectively, and the ureter is sutured into the urinary bladder.

Renal Cysts

Cysts in the kidney, multiple or solitary, are common findings during ultrasound examinations and dissection of cadavers. Adult polycystic disease of the kidneys is an important cause of renal failure; it is inherited as an autosomal dominant trait. The kidneys are markedly enlarged and distorted by cysts as large as 5 cm (Fig. B5.33).

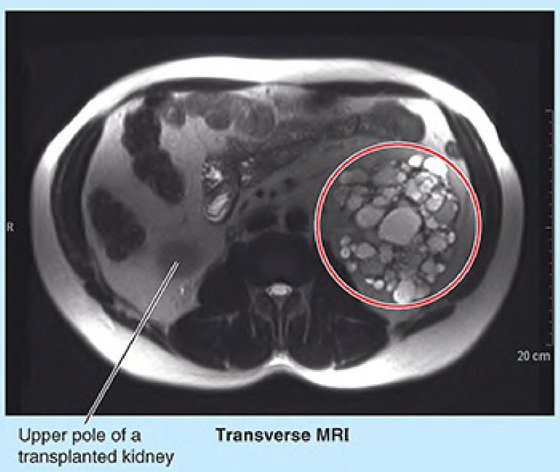


FIGURE B5.33. Adult polycystic kidney disease. The severely cystic left kidney is within the circle. The patient previously had a right nephrectomy because of complications that developed in the right kidney, and the advanced renal failure has been treated with renal transplantation.

Pain in Pararenal Region

The close relationship of the kidneys to the psoas major muscles explains why extension of

the hip joints may increase pain resulting from inflammation in the pararenal areas. These muscles flex the thighs at the hip joints.

Accessory Renal Vessels

During their "ascent" to their final site, the embryonic kidneys receive their blood supply and venous drainage from successively more superior vessels. Usually the inferior vessels degenerate as superior ones take over. Failure of these vessels to degenerate results in accessory renal arteries (see Fig. 5.84) and veins. Some accessory arteries ("polar arteries") enter/exit the poles of the kidneys. An inferior polar artery crosses the ureter and may obstruct it. Variations in the number and position of these vessels occur in approximately 30% of people.

Renal Vein Entrapment Syndrome

In crossing the midline to reach the IVC, the longer left renal vein traverses an acute angle between the SMA anteriorly and the abdominal aorta posteriorly (Fig. B5.34). Downward traction on the SMA may compress the left renal vein (and perhaps the third part of the duodenum) resulting in a renal vein entrapment syndrome (meso-aortic compression of the left renal vein), also known as "nutcracker syndrome" based on the appearance of the vein in the acute arterial angle in a sagittal angiographic view. The syndrome may include hematuria or proteinuria (blood or protein in the urine), abdominal (left flank) pain, nausea and vomiting (indicating compression of the duodenum), and left testicular pain in men (related to the left testicular vein draining into the left renal vein proximal to the compression). Uncommonly, a left-sided varicocele may occur.

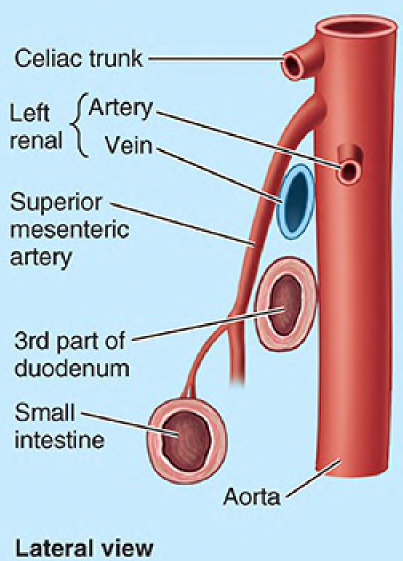


FIGURE B5.34. Renal vein entrapment.

Congenital Anomalies of Kidneys and Ureters

Bifid renal pelvis and ureter are fairly common (Fig. B5.35A, B). These anomalies result from division of the ureteric bud (metanephric diverticulum), the primordium of the renal pelvis and ureter. The extent of ureteral duplication depends on the completeness of embryonic division of the ureteric bud. The bifid renal pelvis and/or ureter may be unilateral or bilateral; however, separate openings into the bladder are uncommon. Incomplete division of the ureteric bud results in a bifid ureter; complete division results in a supernumerary kidney (Moore et al., 2020).

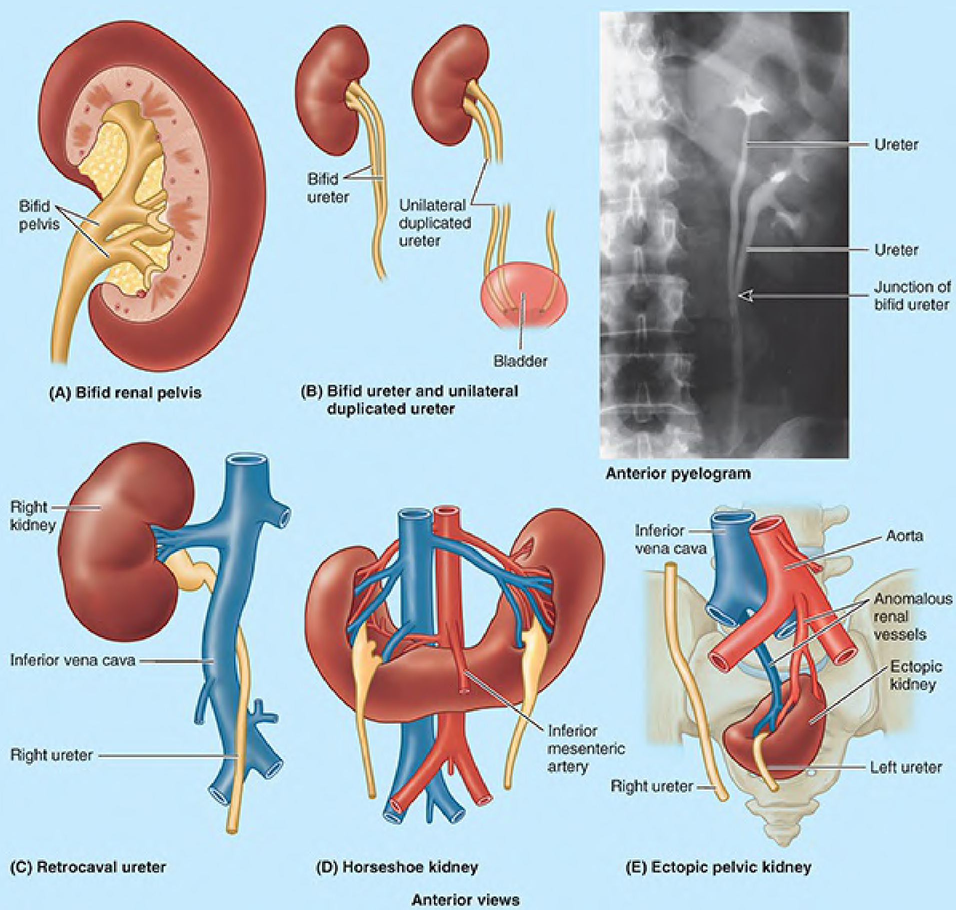


FIGURE B5.35. Anomalies of kidneys and ureters.

An uncommon anomaly is a retrocaval ureter (Fig. B5.35C), which leaves the kidney and passes posterior to the IVC.

The kidneys are close together in the embryonic pelvis. In approximately 1 in 600 fetuses, the inferior poles (rarely, the superior poles) of the kidneys fuse to form a horseshoe kidney (Fig. B5.35D). This U-shaped kidney usually lies at the level of L3–L5 vertebrae because the root of the inferior mesenteric artery prevented normal relocation of the kidneys. Horseshoe kidney usually produces no symptoms; however, associated abnormalities of the kidney and renal pelvis may be present, obstructing the ureter.

Sometimes, the embryonic kidney on one or both sides fails to enter the abdomen and lies anterior to the sacrum. Although uncommon, awareness of the possibility of an ectopic pelvic kidney (Fig. B5.35E) should prevent it from being mistaken for a pelvic tumor and removed. A pelvic kidney in a woman also can be injured by or cause obstruction during childbirth. Pelvic kidneys usually receive their blood supply from the aortic bifurcation or a common iliac artery.

Renal and Ureteric Calculi

Calculi (L. pebbles) are composed of salts of inorganic or organic acids or of other materials. They may form and become located in the calices of the kidneys, ureters, or urinary bladder (Fig. B5.36). A renal calculus (kidney stone) may pass from the kidney into the renal pelvis and then into the ureter. If the stone is sharp or larger than the normal lumen of the ureter (approximately 3 mm), it causes excessive distension of this muscular tube; the ureteric calculus will cause severe intermittent pain (ureteric colic) as it is gradually forced down the ureter by waves of contraction. The calculus may cause complete or intermittent obstruction of urinary flow. Depending on the level of obstruction, which changes, the pain may be referred to the lumbar or inguinal regions or to the external genitalia and/or testis.

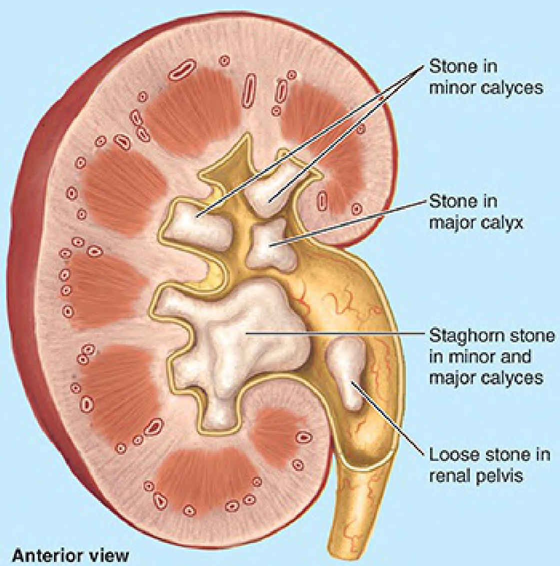


FIGURE B5.36. Renal calculi.

The pain is referred to the cutaneous areas innervated by spinal cord segments and sensory ganglia, which also receive visceral afferents from the ureter, mainly T11–L2. The pain passes infero-anteriorly “from the loin to the groin” as the stone progresses through the ureter. (The loin is the lumbar region, and the groin is the inguinal region.) The pain may extend into the proximal anterior aspect of the thigh by projection through the genitofemoral nerve (L1, L2), the scrotum in males and the labia majora in females. The extreme pain may be accompanied by marked digestive upset (nausea, vomiting, cramping,

and diarrhea) and a generalized sympathetic response that may to various degrees mask the more specific symptoms.

Ureteric calculi can be observed and removed with a nephroscope, an instrument that is inserted through a small incision. Another technique, lithotripsy, focuses a shockwave through the body that breaks the calculus into small fragments that pass with the urine.

The Bottom Line: Retroperitoneal Viscera and Their Neurovasculature

Kidneys: The abdominal urinary organs and the suprarenal glands are primary retroperitoneal structures, embedded within perinephric fat that is separated from the surrounding extraperitoneal paranephric fat by a membranous condensation, the renal fascia. ■ The kidneys are bean-shaped structures located between the T12 and the L3 vertebral levels, deep (anterior) to the 12th ribs. ■ Closely related to the diaphragm, the kidneys move with its excursions. ■ The suprarenal glands are located superomedially to the kidneys but are not attached to them. ■ The kidneys are hollow. The central renal sinus is occupied by the renal calices and renal pelvis, segmental arteries, and renal veins that are embedded in perinephric fat. ■ The papillae of the renal pyramids, from which urine is excreted, evaginate into and are surrounded by minor calices. ■ The minor calices merge to form major calices that in turn merge to form the renal pelvis. ■ The vascular structures and renal pelvis exit the renal sinus at the medially directed hilum.

Ureters: The abdominal portions of the ureters descend on the anterior surface of the psoas muscles from the apex of the renal pelvis to the pelvic brim. ■ The ureters normally have three sites of relative constriction, where kidney stones may lodge: the ureteropelvic junction, pelvic brim, and bladder wall. ■ The abdominal portions of the ureters receive multiple, relatively delicate ureteric branches from the renal, testicular or ovarian, and common iliac arteries and from the abdominal aorta, which approach the ureters medially. ■ A vertical line 5 cm lateral to the lumbar spinous processes, intersecting the posterior superior iliac spine, approximates the position of the ureter.

Suprarenal glands: The suprarenal glands are located superomedially to the kidneys but are attached primarily to the diaphragmatic crura by the surrounding renal fascia. ■ Each suprarenal gland is actually two endocrine glands of different origin and function: suprarenal cortex and suprarenal medulla (the latter surrounded by the former). ■ The suprarenal cortex derives from mesoderm and secretes corticosteroids and androgens; the suprarenal medulla derives from neural crest cells and secretes catecholamines (mostly epinephrine). ■ The right suprarenal gland is more pyramidal in shape and apical in

position relative to the right kidney, whereas the left gland is more crescentic and lies more medial to the superior half of the kidney.

Neurovasculature: The renal arteries arise from the abdominal aorta at the level of the L1–L2 IV disc. They lie anterior to the renal veins, with the right renal artery being longer than the left, and the left renal vein being longer than the right. ■ Both renal veins receive renal and superior ureteric veins and drain into the IVC, but the long left vein also receives the left suprarenal vein, the left gonadal vein, and a communication with the left ascending lumbar vein. ■ Near the hilum, the renal arteries divide into anterior and posterior branches, the anterior branches giving rise to four segmental renal arteries. ■ The segmental renal arteries are end arteries, each supplying a surgically resectable renal segment.

Suprarenal arteries arise from three sources: superior suprarenal arteries from the inferior phrenic arteries, middle suprarenal arteries from the abdominal aorta, and inferior suprarenal arteries from the renal arteries. ■ The suprarenal glands drain via one large suprarenal vein, the right entering the IVC and the left entering the left renal vein.

Lymphatics from the suprarenal glands, kidneys, and upper ureters follow the venous drainage to the right or left lumbar (caval or aortic) lymph nodes.

Visceral afferent fibers (accompanying the sympathetic fibers) conduct pain sensation from the ureters to spinal cord segments T11–L2, with sensation referred to the corresponding dermatomes overlying the loin and groin. The suprarenal glands receive a rich nerve supply via presynaptic sympathetic fibers originating in the IMLs of the T10–L1 spinal cord segments. These fibers traverse both the paravertebral (sympathetic trunks) and prevertebral (celiac) ganglia without synapsing. They terminate directly on the chromaffin cells of the suprarenal medulla.

Innervation of Abdominal Viscera

For autonomic innervation of the abdominal viscera, several different splanchnic nerves and one cranial nerve (the vagus, CN X) deliver presynaptic sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers, respectively, to the abdominal aortic plexus and its associated sympathetic ganglia (Figs. 5.88 and 5.89; Table 5.11). The peri-arterial extensions of these plexuses deliver postsynaptic sympathetic fibers and the continuations of parasympathetic fibers to the abdominal viscera, where intrinsic parasympathetic ganglia occur.

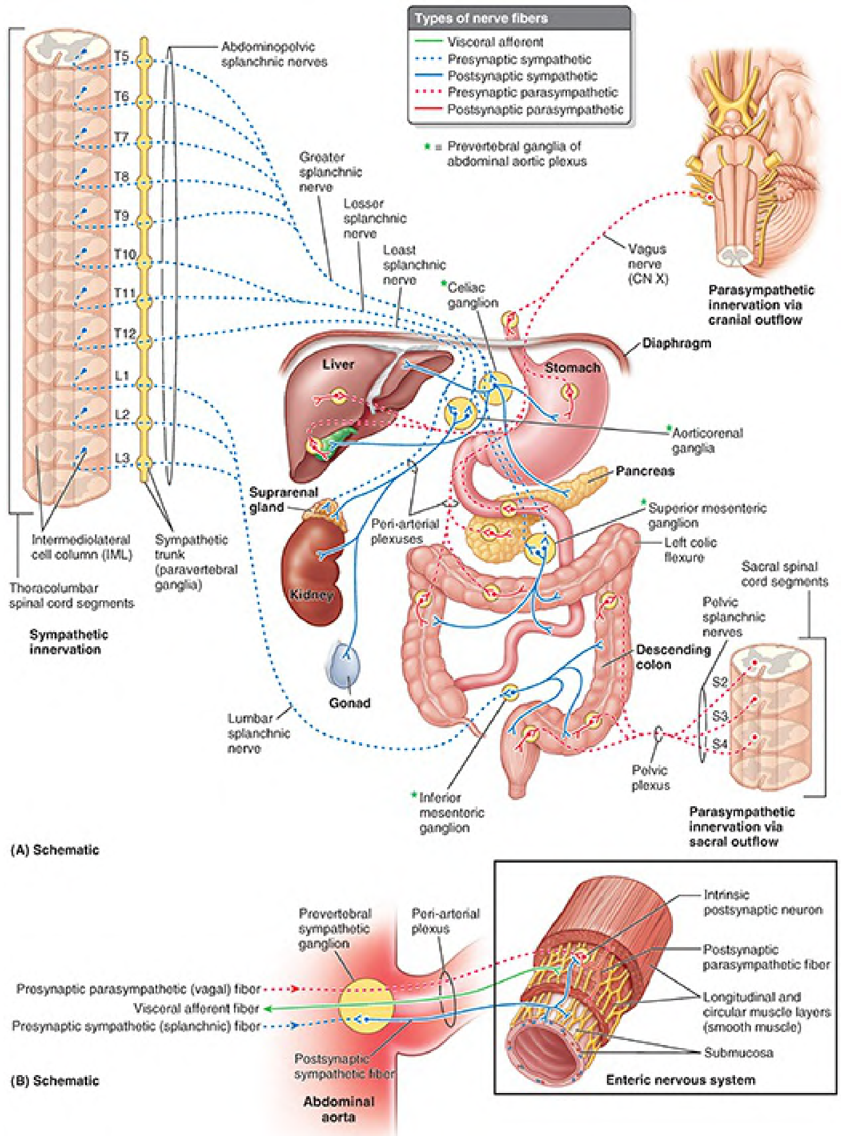


FIGURE 5.88. Autonomic nerves of posterior abdominal wall. A. Origin and distribution of presynaptic and postsynaptic sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers and ganglia involved in supplying abdominal viscera. **B.** Enteric nervous system. Nerve fibers passing to and from the intrinsic plexuses of abdominal viscera are demonstrated.

TABLE 5.11. AUTONOMIC INNERVATION OF ABDOMINAL VISCERA (SPLANCHNIC NERVES)

Splanchnic Nerves	Autonomic Fiber Type[a]	System	Origin	Destination
A. Abdominopelvic	Presynaptic	Sympathetic	Lower thoracic and abdominopelvic sympathetic trunk:	Abdominopelvic cavity (prevertebral ganglia serving viscera and suprarenal glands inferior to level of diaphragm)
1. Lower thoracic a. Greater b. Lesser c. Least			1. Thoracic sympathetic trunk: a. T5–T9 or T10 level b. T10–T11 level	1. Abdominal prevertebral ganglia: a. Celiac ganglia b. Aorticorenal ganglia c. and 2. Other abdominopelvic

			c. T12 level	prevertebral ganglia (superior and inferior mesenteric and of intermesenteric/hypogastric/pelvic plexuses)
2. Lumbar			2. Abdominal sympathetic trunk	
3. Sacral			3. Pelvic (sacral) sympathetic trunk	3. Anterior rami forming sacral plexus
B. Pelvic	Presynaptic	Parasympathetic	Anterior rami of S2–S4 spinal nerves	Intrinsic ganglia of descending and sigmoid colon, rectum, and pelvic viscera

[a]Splanchnic nerves also convey visceral afferent fibers, which are not part of the autonomic nervous system.

SYMPATHETIC INNERVATION

The sympathetic part of the autonomic innervation of the abdominal viscera consists of the following:

- Abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves from the thoracic and abdominal sympathetic trunks
- Prevertebral sympathetic ganglia
- Abdominal aortic plexus and its extensions, the peri-arterial plexuses

The nerve plexuses are mixed, shared with the parasympathetic nervous system and visceral afferent fibers.

The **abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves** convey presynaptic sympathetic fibers to the abdominopelvic cavity. The fibers arise from cell bodies in the IMLs (or lateral horns) of the gray matter of spinal cord segments T5–L2 or L3. The fibers pass successively through the anterior roots, anterior rami, and white communicating branches of thoracic and upper lumbar spinal nerves to reach the sympathetic trunks. They pass through the paravertebral ganglia of the trunks without synapsing to enter the abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves, which convey them to the prevertebral ganglia of the abdominal cavity. The abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves include the:

- Lower thoracic splanchnic nerves (greater, lesser, and least): from the thoracic part of the sympathetic trunks
- Lumbar splanchnic nerves: from the lumbar part of the sympathetic trunks

The lower thoracic splanchnic nerves are the main source of presynaptic sympathetic fibers serving abdominal viscera. The **greater splanchnic nerve** (from the sympathetic trunk at T5 through T9 or T10 vertebral levels), **lesser splanchnic nerve** (from T10 and T11 levels), and **least splanchnic nerve** (from the T12 level) are the specific abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves that arise from the thoracic part of the sympathetic trunks. They pierce the corresponding crus of the diaphragm to convey presynaptic sympathetic fibers to the celiac, superior mesenteric, and aorticorenal (prevertebral) sympathetic ganglia, respectively.

The **lumbar splanchnic nerves** arise from the abdominal part of the sympathetic trunks. Medially, the lumbar sympathetic trunks give off three to four lumbar splanchnic nerves, which

pass to the intermesenteric, inferior mesenteric, and superior hypogastric plexuses, conveying presynaptic sympathetic fibers to the associated prevertebral ganglia of those plexuses.

The cell bodies of postsynaptic sympathetic neurons constitute the major prevertebral ganglia that cluster around the roots of the major branches of the abdominal aorta: the celiac, **aorticorenal, superior mesenteric,** and **inferior mesenteric ganglia**. Minor, unnamed prevertebral ganglia occur within the intermesenteric and superior hypogastric plexuses. With the exception of the innervation of the suprarenal medulla, the synapse between presynaptic and postsynaptic sympathetic neurons occurs in the prevertebral ganglia (Fig. 5.88B). Postsynaptic sympathetic nerve fibers pass from the prevertebral ganglia to the abdominal viscera by means of the peri-arterial plexuses associated with the branches of the abdominal aorta. Sympathetic innervation in the abdomen, as elsewhere, is primarily involved in producing vasoconstriction. With regard to the gastrointestinal tract, it acts to inhibit (slow down or stop) peristalsis.

PARASYMPATHETIC INNERVATION

The parasympathetic part of the autonomic innervation of the abdominal viscera (Figs. 5.88 and 5.89) consists of the following:

- Anterior and posterior vagal trunks
- Pelvic splanchnic nerves
- Abdominal (para-aortic) autonomic plexuses and their extensions, the peri-arterial plexuses
- Intrinsic (enteric) parasympathetic ganglia, components of intrinsic enteric plexuses of the enteric nervous system

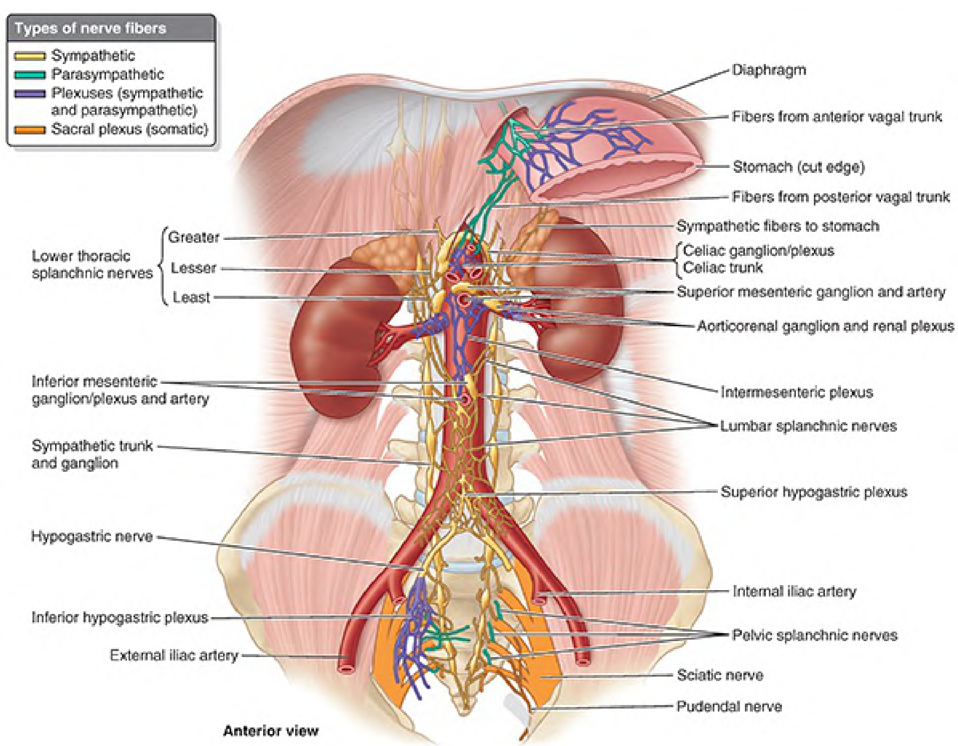


FIGURE 5.89. Splanchnic nerves, nerve plexuses, and sympathetic ganglia in abdomen.

The nerve plexuses are mixed, shared with the sympathetic nervous system and visceral afferent fibers.

The anterior and posterior vagal trunks are the continuation of the left and right vagus nerves that emerge from the esophageal plexus and pass through the esophageal hiatus on the anterior and posterior aspects of the esophagus and stomach (Fig. 5.88A; see Fig. 5.35). The vagus nerves convey presynaptic parasympathetic and visceral afferent fibers (mainly for unconscious sensations associated with reflexes) to the abdominal aortic plexuses and the peri-arterial plexuses, which extend along the branches of the aorta.

The **pelvic splanchnic nerves** are distinct from other splanchnic nerves (Table 5.11) in that they

- have nothing to do with the sympathetic trunks
- derive directly from anterior rami of spinal nerves S2–S4
- convey presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the inferior hypogastric (pelvic) plexus

Presynaptic fibers terminate on the isolated and widely scattered cell bodies of postsynaptic neurons lying on or within the abdominal viscera, constituting intrinsic (or, in the case of the GI tract, enteric) ganglia (Fig. 5.88B).

The presynaptic parasympathetic and visceral afferent reflex fibers conveyed by the vagus nerves extend to intrinsic ganglia of the lower esophagus, stomach, and small intestine, including the duodenum, ascending colon, and most of the transverse colon (Fig. 5.88A). The fibers conveyed by the pelvic splanchnic nerves supply the descending and sigmoid parts of the colon, rectum, and pelvic organs. Thus, in terms of the gastrointestinal tract, the vagus nerves provide parasympathetic innervation of the smooth muscle and glands of the gut as far as the left colic flexure; the pelvic splanchnic nerves provide the remainder. Parasympathetic innervation in the abdomen is primarily involved in promotion of peristalsis (restoring it following inhibition by a sympathetic response) and secretion.

EXTRINSIC AUTONOMIC PLEXUSES

The extrinsic abdominal autonomic plexuses are nerve networks consisting of both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers, which surround the abdominal aorta and its major branches (Figs. 5.88 and 5.89). The celiac, superior mesenteric, and inferior mesenteric plexuses are interconnected. The prevertebral sympathetic ganglia are scattered among the celiac and mesenteric plexuses.

The **celiac plexus**, surrounding the root of the celiac (arterial) trunk, contains irregular right and left **celiac ganglia** (approximately 2 cm long) that unite superior and inferior to the celiac trunk (Figs. 5.88A and 5.89). The parasympathetic root of the celiac plexus is a branch of the posterior vagal trunk, which contains fibers from the right and left vagus nerves. The sympathetic roots of the plexus are the greater and lesser splanchnic nerves.

The **superior mesenteric plexus** and ganglion or ganglia surround the origin of the SMA. The plexus has one median and two lateral roots. The median root is a branch of the celiac plexus, and the lateral roots arise from the lesser and least splanchnic nerves, sometimes with a

contribution from the first lumbar ganglion of the sympathetic trunk.

The **inferior mesenteric plexus** surrounds the inferior mesenteric artery and gives offshoots to its branches. It receives a medial root from the intermesenteric plexus and lateral roots from the lumbar ganglia of the sympathetic trunks. An **inferior mesenteric ganglion** may also appear just superior to the root of the inferior mesenteric artery.

The **intermesenteric plexus** is part of the aortic plexus of nerves between the superior and the inferior mesenteric arteries. It gives rise to renal, testicular or ovarian, and ureteric plexuses.

The **superior hypogastric plexus** is continuous with the intermesenteric plexus and the inferior mesenteric plexus and lies anterior to the inferior part of the abdominal aorta and extends inferiorly across its bifurcation (Table 5.11). Right and left **hypogastric nerves** join the superior hypogastric plexus to the inferior hypogastric plexus. The superior hypogastric plexus supplies ureteric and testicular plexuses and a plexus on each common iliac artery.

The **inferior hypogastric plexuses** are mixed sympathetic and parasympathetic plexuses formed on each side as the hypogastric nerves from the superior hypogastric plexus merge with the pelvic splanchnic nerves. The right and left plexuses are situated on the sides of the rectum, cervix of the uterus, and urinary bladder. The plexuses receive small branches from the superior sacral sympathetic ganglia and the sacral parasympathetic outflow from S2 through S4 sacral spinal nerves (pelvic [parasympathetic] splanchnic nerves). Extensions of the inferior hypogastric plexus send autonomic fibers along the blood vessels, which form visceral plexuses on the walls of the pelvic viscera (e.g., rectal and vesical plexuses).

INTRINSIC PLEXUSES: THE ENTERIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

Intrinsic ganglionated plexuses of the GI tract, extending from the midesophagus through the internal anal sphincter and along the pancreatobiliary duct system, constitute the **enteric nervous system (ENS)**. The ENS consists of two interconnected plexuses (Fig. 5.88B; see Fig. 5.48A): (1) the **myenteric plexus** (Auerbach), located between and primarily concerned with motility and vasomotion of the muscular layers of the gut wall (although located in the stomach, it is also concerned with secretion), and (2) the **submucosal plexus** (Meissner), located in the submucosa of the gut (most prominent in the small intestine, relatively sparse in the esophagus and stomach), concerned with the exocrine and endocrine secretion, vasomotion, micromotility, and immune activity (inflammation and immunomodulation) of the mucosa. Vasomotion (control of blood flow) at this level influences water and electrolyte movement. Corresponding plexuses with smaller, sparser ganglia extend to the pancreas, gallbladder, and cystic and major biliary ducts.

The motor neurons of these plexuses are intrinsic or enteric ganglia that serve nominally as postsynaptic neurons for the parasympathetic system. In addition to functioning as relay neurons, receiving and passing on efferent impulses sent by presynaptic parasympathetic neurons, they also receive input from postsynaptic sympathetic fibers (making them a third-order neuron in that system). They have vast interconnectivity with surrounding efferent neurons, both directly and via interneurons, as well as axons terminating on smooth muscle and glands (Fig. 5.90A). Extrinsic visceral afferent fibers convey long reflex (hunger, satiety, and nausea) and pain

sensations to the CNS via vagal (nodose) sensory ganglia and thoracic, upper lumbar, and middle sacral spinal sensory ganglia (Fig. 5.90B). In addition, there are intrinsic afferent neurons with cell bodies in the plexuses that monitor mechanical and chemical conditions in the gut and communicate with the efferent neurons providing local (short) reflex circuitry, as well as sending information centrally. Thus, the interconnecting nerve bundles of the plexuses include postsynaptic sympathetic fibers, pre- and postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers, interneuron fibers, and long and short visceral afferent fibers.

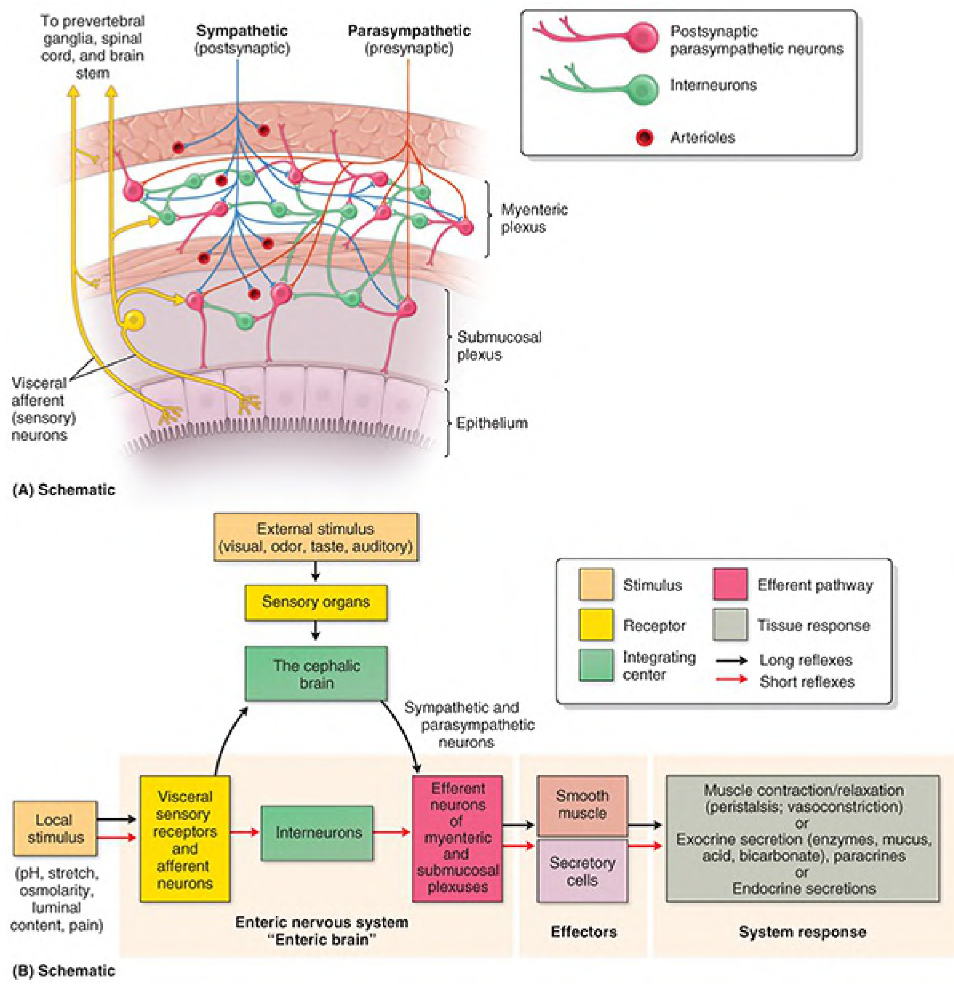


FIGURE 5.90. Enteric nervous system. A. Organization of enteric nervous system within intestinal wall. **B.** Long (extrinsic) and short (intrinsic) reflexes involving enteric nervous system.

These intrinsic neurons and the complex enteric plexuses in which they are enmeshed integrate and control gastrointestinal function with remarkable independence, sustaining visceral activities with local reflex mechanisms. CNS input via the ANS merely modulates the activity of the ENS, with the parasympathetic system primarily promoting and the sympathetic system primarily inhibiting its motor and secretory activity in response to overall demands placed on the body by environmental and circumstantial factors. With regard to the smooth muscle sphincters, the roles of the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems reverse, with the sympathetic system

maintaining tonus and the parasympathetic system inhibiting it. The ENS can function quite autonomously, without input from either system; intestine harvested for transplant is not denervated in the usual sense.

The ENS is estimated to include as many as 500 million neurons—more than occur in the entire spinal cord—and employs more than 40 neurotransmitters and neuromodulators, including half the body's dopamine and 95% of all serotonin. The support cells of the intrinsic ENS neurons are more like glial cells (astroglia) of the brain than Schwann cells of the peripheral nervous system. Relatively nonpermeable capillaries associated with the ganglia provide a diffusion barrier resembling the blood–brain barrier of cerebral blood vessels. These facts, combined with complexity and autonomous function, explain why the ENS has come to be considered a "second brain" or at least a third component of the visceral nervous system. Its integrity and appropriate function is vital.

VISCERAL SENSORY INNERVATION

Visceral afferent fibers conveying pain sensations accompany the sympathetic (visceral motor) fibers. The pain impulses pass retrogradely to those of the motor fibers along the splanchnic nerves to the sympathetic trunk, through white communicating branches to the anterior rami of the spinal nerves. Then they pass into the posterior root to the spinal sensory ganglia and spinal cord. Progressively lower spinal sensory ganglia and spinal cord segments are involved in innervating the abdominal viscera as the tract proceeds caudally. The stomach (foregut) receives innervation from the T6 to T9 levels, small intestine through transverse colon (midgut) from the T8 to T12 levels, and descending colon (hindgut) from the T12 to L2 levels (Fig. 5.91). Starting from the midpoint of the sigmoid colon, visceral pain fibers run with parasympathetic fibers, the sensory impulses being conducted to S2–S4 sensory ganglia and spinal cord levels. These are the same spinal cord segments involved in the sympathetic innervation of those portions of alimentary tract.

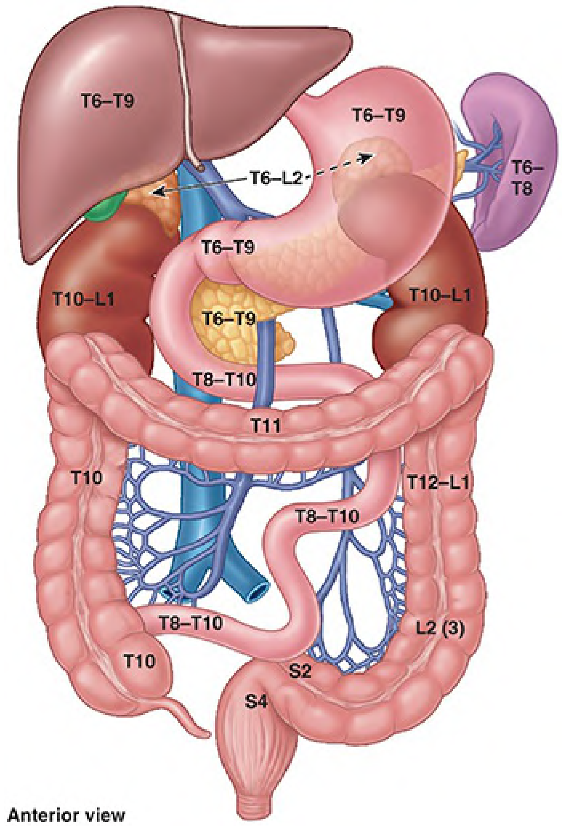


FIGURE 5.91. Segmental innervation of abdominal viscera. Approximate spinal cord segments and spinal sensory ganglia involved in sympathetic and visceral afferent (pain) innervation of abdominal viscera are shown.

Visceral afferent fibers conveying reflex sensations (that generally do not reach levels of consciousness) accompany the parasympathetic (visceral motor) fibers.

The Bottom Line: Innervation of Abdominal Viscera

Sympathetic innervation: Presynaptic sympathetic nerve fibers involved in innervating abdominal viscera arise from cell bodies in the lower two thirds of the IMLs (T5–T6 to L2–L3 spinal cord levels) and travel via spinal nerves, anterior rami, and white communicating branches to the sympathetic trunks. ■ The fibers traverse the paravertebral ganglia of the trunks without synapsing, continuing as components of abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves. These nerves convey them to the abdominal aortic plexus, where they are joined by presynaptic parasympathetic fibers delivered by the vagus nerve. ■ The sympathetic fibers pass to prevertebral ganglia, most of which are clustered around the major branches of the abdominal aorta. After synapsing within the ganglia, the postsynaptic sympathetic fibers join the presynaptic parasympathetic fibers, traveling via peri-arterial plexuses around the branches of the abdominal aorta to reach the viscera. ■ A continuation of the abdominal aortic plexus inferior to the aortic bifurcation (the superior

and inferior hypogastric plexuses) conveys sympathetic innervation to most of the pelvic viscera. The sympathetic fibers mainly innervate the blood vessels of abdominal viscera and are inhibitory to the parasympathetic stimulation. ■ The parasympathetic fibers synapse on or in the walls of the viscera with intrinsic postsynaptic parasympathetic neurons, which terminate on the smooth muscle or glands of the viscera.

Parasympathetic innervation: The vagus nerves supply parasympathetic fibers to the digestive tract from the esophagus through the transverse colon. ■ Pelvic splanchnic nerves supply the descending and sigmoid colon and rectum. ■ Parasympathetic stimulation promotes peristalsis and secretion (although much of the latter is usually hormonally regulated).

Enteric nervous system: The ENS consists of the myenteric plexus of the gut wall musculature, and the submucosal plexus, deep to and serving the gut lining or mucosa. ■ In addition to postsynaptic parasympathetic motor neurons, which are extensively interconnected both directly and via interneurons, the plexus includes intrinsic primary afferent neurons that receive local input and stimulate the motor neurons, forming local reflex circuitry, as well as informing the CNS. ■ The ENS intrinsically integrates exocrine and endocrine secretion, vasomotion, macro- and micromotility, and immune activity of the gut. ■ Input from the CNS via extrinsic parasympathetic and sympathetic fibers only modulates this local activity.

Sensory innervation: Visceral afferent fibers follow the autonomic fibers retrograde to sensory ganglia. ■ Afferent fibers conveying pain sensation from abdominal viscera orad (proximal) to the middle of the sigmoid colon run with the sympathetic fibers to the thoracolumbar spinal sensory ganglia; all other visceral afferent fibers run with the parasympathetic fibers. Thus, visceral afferent fibers conveying reflex information from the gut orad to the middle of the sigmoid colon pass to vagal sensory ganglia; fibers conveying both pain and reflex information from the gut aborad (distal) to the middle of the sigmoid colon pass to spinal sensory ganglia S2–S4.

DIAPHRAGM

The **diaphragm** is a double-domed, musculotendinous partition separating the thoracic and abdominal cavities. Its mainly convex superior surface faces the thoracic cavity, and its concave inferior surface faces the abdominal cavity (Fig. 5.92A, B). The diaphragm is the chief muscle of inspiration (actually, of respiration altogether, because expiration is largely passive). It descends during inspiration; however, only its central part moves because its periphery, as the fixed origin of the muscle, attaches to the inferior margin of the thoracic cage and the superior lumbar vertebrae.

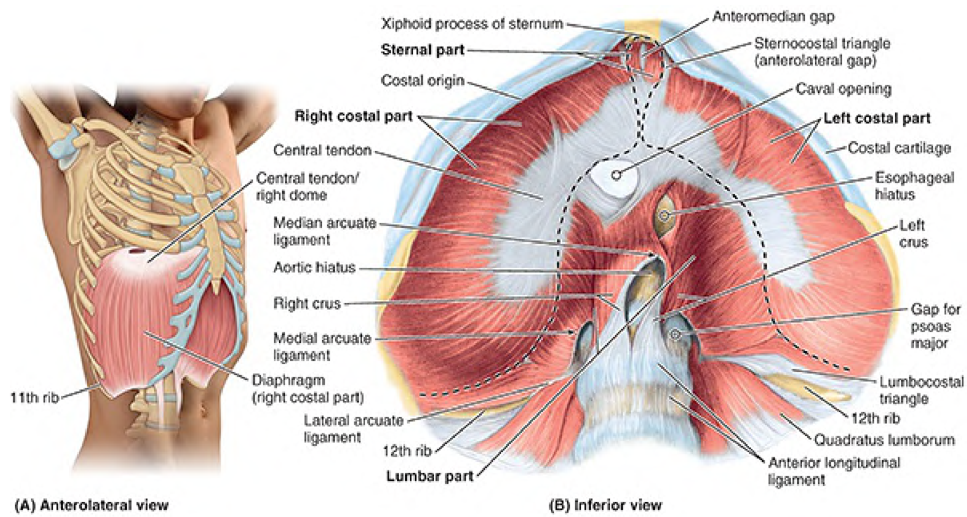


FIGURE 5.92. Attachments and features of abdominal aspect of diaphragm. A. Right dome of diaphragm. The thoracic cage has been removed to demonstrate the attachments and convexity. **B.** Parts of diaphragm. The fleshy sternal, costal, and lumbar parts of the diaphragm (outlined with broken lines) attach centrally to the central tendon, the aponeurotic insertion of the diaphragmatic muscle fibers.

The pericardium, containing the heart, lies on the central part of the diaphragm, depressing it slightly (Fig. 5.92A). The diaphragm curves superiorly into **right** and **left domes**; normally, the right dome is higher than the left dome owing to the presence of the liver. During expiration, the right dome reaches as high as the 5th rib and the left dome ascends to the 5th intercostal space. The level of the domes of the diaphragm varies according to the

- phase of respiration (inspiration or expiration)
- posture (e.g., supine or standing)
- size and degree of distension of the abdominal viscera

The **muscular part of the diaphragm** is situated peripherally with fibers that converge radially on the trifoliate central aponeurotic part, the **central tendon** (Fig. 5.92). The central tendon has no bony attachments and is incompletely divided into three leaves, resembling a wide cloverleaf (Fig. 5.92B). Although it lies near the center of the diaphragm, the central tendon is closer to the anterior part of the thorax.

The caval opening (vena caval foramen), through which the terminal part of the IVC passes to enter the heart, perforates the central tendon. The surrounding muscular part of the diaphragm forms a continuous sheet; however, for descriptive purposes, it is divided into three parts, based on the peripheral attachments:

- **Sternal part**: consisting of two muscular slips that attach to the posterior aspect of the xiphoid process; this part is not always present.
- **Costal part**: consisting of wide muscular slips that attach to the internal surfaces of the inferior six costal cartilages and their adjoining ribs on each side; the costal parts form the right and left domes.
- **Lumbar part**: arising from two aponeurotic arches, the medial and lateral arcuate ligaments, and the three superior lumbar vertebrae; the lumbar part forms right and left muscular crura

that ascend to the central tendon.

The **crura of the diaphragm** are musculotendinous bands that arise from the anterior surfaces of the bodies of the superior three lumbar vertebrae, the anterior longitudinal ligament, and the IV discs. The **right crus**, larger and longer than the left crus, arises from the first three or four lumbar vertebrae. The **left crus** arises from the first two or three lumbar vertebrae. Because it lies to the left of the midline, it is surprising to find that the esophageal hiatus is a formation in the right crus; however, if the muscular fibers bounding each side of the hiatus are traced inferiorly, it will be seen that they pass to the right of the aortic hiatus.

The right and left crura and the fibrous **median arcuate ligament**, which unites them as it arches over the anterior aspect of the aorta, form the aortic hiatus. The diaphragm is also attached on each side to the medial and lateral arcuate ligaments. The **medial arcuate ligament** is a thickening of the fascia covering the psoas major, spanning between the lumbar vertebral bodies and the tip of the transverse process of L1. The **lateral arcuate ligament** covers the quadratus lumborum muscles, continuing from the L12 transverse process to the tip of the 12th rib.

The superior aspect of the central tendon of the diaphragm is fused with the inferior surface of the fibrous pericardium, the strong, external part of the fibroserous pericardial sac that encloses the heart.

Vessels and Nerves of Diaphragm

The arteries of the diaphragm form a branch-like pattern on both its superior (thoracic) and inferior (abdominal) surfaces. The arteries supplying the superior surface of the diaphragm (Fig. 5.93; Table 5.12) are the pericardiacophrenic and musculophrenic arteries, branches of the internal thoracic artery, and the **superior phrenic arteries**, arising from the thoracic aorta. The arteries supplying the inferior surface of the diaphragm are the **inferior phrenic arteries**, which typically are the first branches of the abdominal aorta; however, they may arise from the celiac trunk.

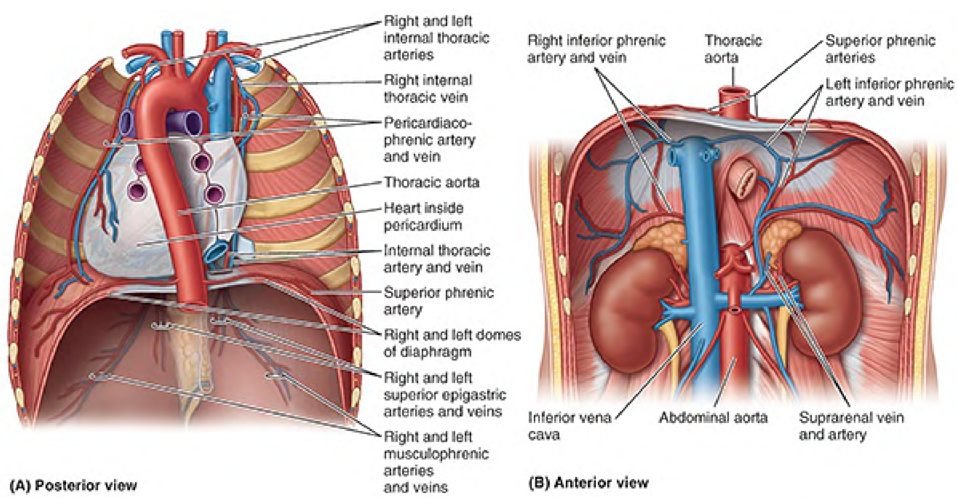


FIGURE 5.93. **Blood vessels of diaphragm. A.** Arteries and veins of superior surface of diaphragm. **B.** Arteries and veins of inferior surface of diaphragm.

TABLE 5.12. NEUROVASCULAR STRUCTURES OF DIAPHRAGM

Vessels and Nerves	Superior Surface of the Diaphragm	Inferior Surface of the Diaphragm
Arterial supply	Superior phrenic arteries from the thoracic aorta Musculophrenic and pericardiophrenic arteries from internal thoracic arteries	Inferior phrenic arteries from the abdominal aorta
Venous drainage	Musculophrenic and pericardiacophrenic veins drain into internal thoracic veins; superior phrenic vein (right side) drains into IVC.	Inferior phrenic veins; right vein drains into IVC; left vein is doubled and drains into IVC and suprarenal vein.
Lymphatic drainage	Diaphragmatic lymph nodes to phrenic nodes and then to parasternal and posterior mediastinal nodes.	Superior lumbar lymph nodes; lymphatic plexuses on superior and inferior surfaces communicate freely.
Innervation	Sensory supply: centrally by phrenic nerves (C3–C5), peripherally by intercostal nerves (T5–T11) and subcostal nerves (T12)	Motor supply: phrenic nerves (C3–C5) Sensory supply: centrally by phrenic nerves (C3–C5), peripherally by intercostal nerves (T5–T11) and subcostal nerves (T12)

IVC, inferior vena cava.

The veins draining the superior surface of the diaphragm are the **pericardiacophrenic** and **musculophrenic veins**, which empty into the internal thoracic veins and, on the right side, a superior phrenic vein, which drains into the IVC. Some veins from the posterior curvature of the diaphragm drain into the azygos and hemi-azygos veins (see Chapter 4, Thorax). The veins draining the inferior surface of the diaphragm are the inferior phrenic veins. The **right inferior phrenic vein** usually opens into the IVC, whereas the **left inferior phrenic vein** is usually double, with one branch passing anterior to the esophageal hiatus to end in the IVC and the other, more posterior branch usually joining the left suprarenal vein. The right and left phrenic veins may anastomose with each other.

The lymphatic plexuses on the superior and inferior surfaces of the diaphragm communicate freely (Fig. 5.94A). The **anterior** and **posterior diaphragmatic lymph nodes** are on the superior surface of the diaphragm. Lymph from these nodes drains into the parasternal, posterior mediastinal, and phrenic lymph nodes. Lymphatic vessels from the inferior surface of the diaphragm drain into the anterior diaphragmatic, phrenic, and superior lumbar (caval/aortic) lymph nodes. Lymphatic capillaries are dense on the inferior surface of the diaphragm, constituting the primary means for absorption of peritoneal fluid and substances introduced by intraperitoneal (IP) injection.

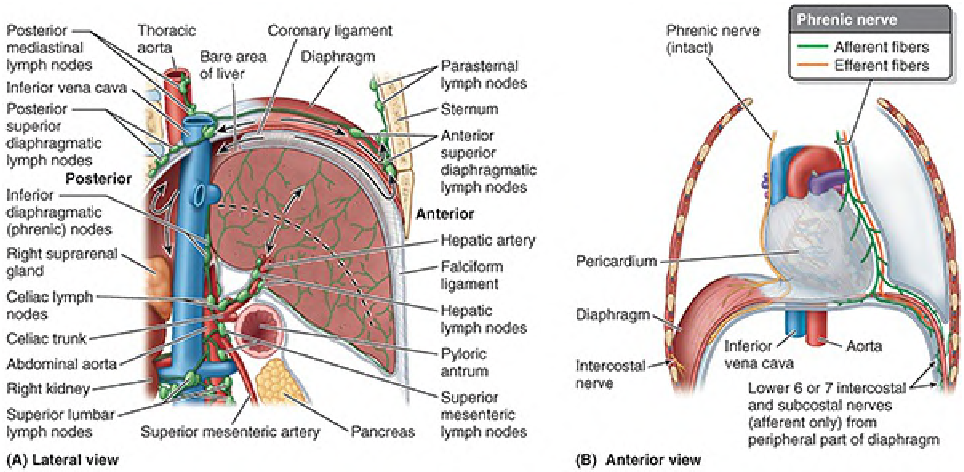


FIGURE 5.94. **Lymphatic drainage and innervation of diaphragm. A.** Lymphatic drainage. Lymphatic vessels are formed in two plexuses, one on the superior surface of the diaphragm and the other on its inferior surface; the plexuses communicate freely. **B.** Innervation. The phrenic nerves supply all of the motor and most of the sensory innervation to the diaphragm. The lower 6 or 7 intercostal and subcostal nerves provide sensory innervation peripherally.

The entire motor supply to the diaphragm is from the right and left phrenic nerves, each of which arises from the anterior rami of C3–C5 segments of the spinal cord and is distributed to the ipsilateral half of the diaphragm from its inferior surface (Fig. 5.94B). Sensory innervation (pain and proprioception) to the diaphragm is also mostly from the phrenic nerves. Peripheral parts of the diaphragm receive their sensory nerve supply from the intercostal nerves (lower six or seven) and the subcostal nerves.

Diaphragmatic Apertures

The **diaphragmatic apertures** (openings, hiatus) permit structures (vessels, nerves, and lymphatics) to pass between the thorax and abdomen (Figs. 5.92, 5.93, and 5.95). There are three large apertures for the IVC, esophagus, and aorta and a number of small ones.

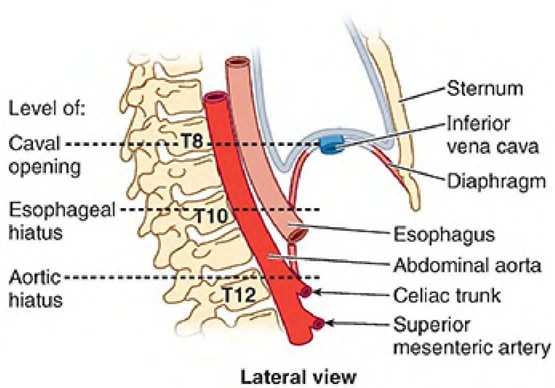


FIGURE 5.95. **Apertures of diaphragm.** "8-10-12" is a convenient memory device, referring to the thoracic vertebral levels at which the inferior vena cava, esophagus, and aorta penetrate the diaphragm.

CAVAL OPENING

The **caval opening** is an aperture in the central tendon primarily for the IVC. Also passing through the caval opening are terminal branches of the right phrenic nerve and a few lymphatic vessels on their way from the liver to the middle phrenic and mediastinal lymph nodes. The caval opening is located to the right of the median plane at the junction of the central tendon's right and middle leaves. The most superior of the three large diaphragmatic apertures, the caval opening, lies at the level of the IV disc between the T8 and T9 vertebrae. The IVC is adherent to the margin of the opening; consequently, when the diaphragm contracts during inspiration, it widens the opening and dilates the IVC. These changes facilitate blood flow through this large vein to the heart.

ESOPHAGEAL HIATUS

The **esophageal hiatus** is an oval opening for the esophagus in the muscle of the right crus of the diaphragm at the level of the T10 vertebra. The esophageal hiatus also transmits the anterior and posterior vagal trunks, esophageal branches of the left gastric vessels, and a few lymphatic vessels. The fibers of the right crus of the diaphragm decussate (cross one another) inferior to the hiatus, forming a muscular sphincter for the esophagus that constricts it when the diaphragm contracts. The esophageal hiatus is superior to and to the left of the aortic hiatus. In most individuals (70%), both margins of the hiatus are formed by muscular bundles of the right crus. In others (30%), a superficial muscular bundle from the left crus contributes to the formation of the right margin of the hiatus.

AORTIC HIATUS

The **aortic hiatus** is the opening posterior in the diaphragm for the descending aorta (Figs. 5.92 and 5.95). Because the aorta does not pierce the diaphragm, movements of the diaphragm do not affect blood flow through the aorta during respiration. The aorta passes between the crura of the diaphragm posterior to the median arcuate ligament, which is at the level of the inferior border of the T12 vertebra. The aortic hiatus also transmits the thoracic duct and sometimes the azygos and hemi-azygos veins.

SMALL OPENINGS IN DIAPHRAGM

In addition to the three main apertures, there is a small opening, the **sternocostal triangle** (foramen), between the sternal and costal attachments of the diaphragm (Fig. 5.92). This triangle transmits lymphatic vessels from the diaphragmatic surface of the liver and the superior epigastric vessels. The sympathetic trunks pass deep to the medial arcuate ligament, accompanied by the least splanchnic nerves. There are two small apertures in each crus of the diaphragm; one transmits the greater splanchnic nerve and the other the lesser splanchnic nerve.

Actions of Diaphragm

When the diaphragm contracts, its domes are pulled inferiorly so that the convexity of the diaphragm is somewhat flattened (see Fig. 4.10F in Chapter 4, Thorax). Although this movement

is often described as the “descent of the diaphragm,” only the domes of the diaphragm descend. The diaphragm’s periphery remains attached to the ribs and cartilages of the inferior six ribs. As the diaphragm descends, it pushes the abdominal viscera inferiorly. This increases the volume of the thoracic cavity and decreases the intrathoracic pressure, resulting in air being taken into the lungs. In addition, the volume of the abdominal cavity decreases slightly and intra-abdominal pressure increases somewhat.

Movements of the diaphragm are also important in circulation because the increased intra-abdominal pressure and decreased intrathoracic pressure help return venous blood to the heart. When the diaphragm contracts, compressing the abdominal viscera, blood in the IVC is forced superiorly into the heart.

The diaphragm is at its most superior level when a person is supine (with the upper body lowered, the Trendelenburg position). In this position, the abdominal viscera push the diaphragm superiorly in the thoracic cavity. When a person lies on one side, the hemidiaphragm rises to a more superior level because of the greater push of the viscera on that side. Conversely, the diaphragm assumes an inferior level when a person is sitting or standing. For this reason, people with dyspnea (difficult breathing) prefer to sit up, not lie down; nontidal (reserve) lung volume is increased, and the diaphragm is working with gravity rather than opposing it.

POSTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL

The posterior abdominal wall (Figs. 5.96, 5.97, and 5.98) is mainly composed of the following structures:

- Five lumbar vertebrae and associated IV discs (centrally)
- Posterior abdominal wall muscles, including the psoas, quadratus lumborum, iliacus, transversus abdominis, and oblique muscles (laterally)
- Diaphragm, which contributes to the superior part of the posterior wall
- Fascia, including the thoracolumbar fascia
- Lumbar plexus, composed of the anterior rami of lumbar spinal nerves
- Fat, nerves, vessels (e.g., aorta and IVC), and lymph nodes

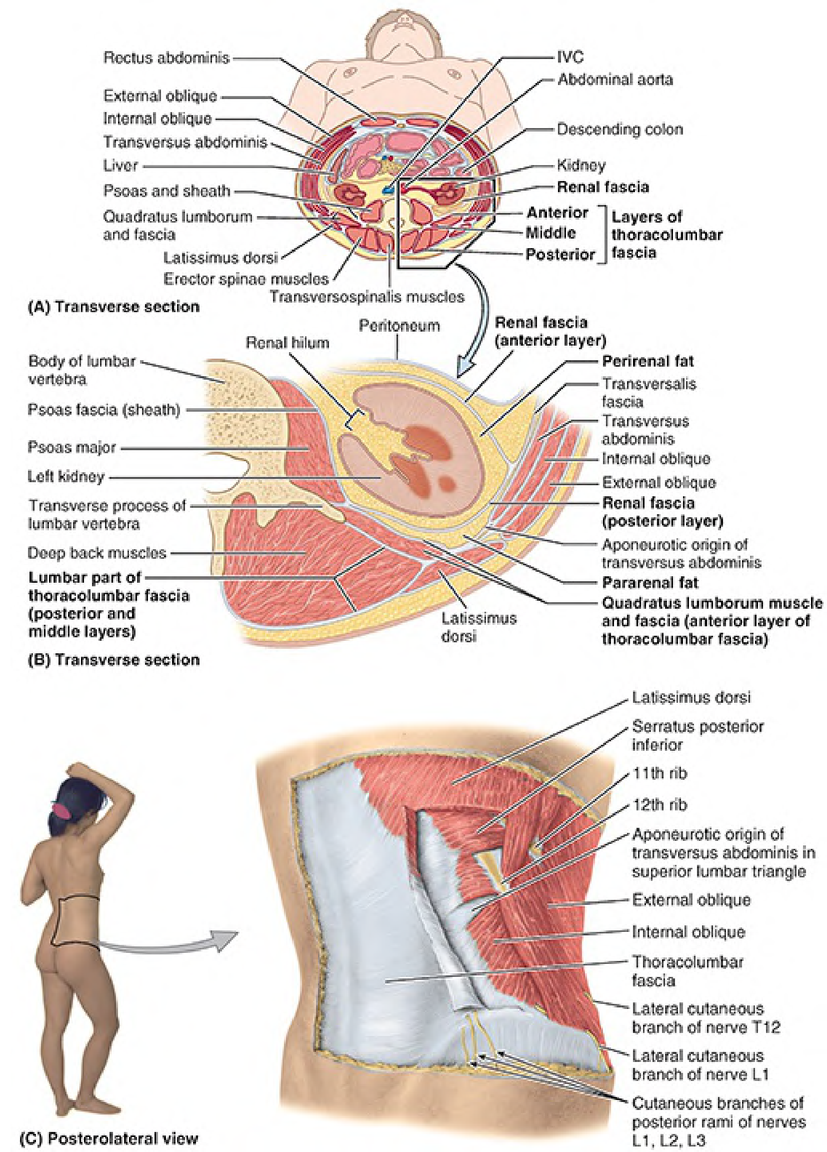


FIGURE 5.96. Fascia and aponeuroses of abdominal wall at level of renal hila. A. Relationships of muscles, aponeuroses, and fascia of abdominal wall. The three flat abdominal muscles forming the lateral walls span between complex anterior and posterior aponeurotic formations that ensheathe vertically disposed muscles. The thin anterolateral walls (appearing disproportionately thick here) are distensible. Although flexible, the posterior abdominal wall is weight bearing and so is reinforced by the vertebral column and muscles that act on it; thus, it is not distensible. IVC, inferior vena cava. **B.** Aponeurotic and fascial layers of posterior abdominal wall. For details concerning those of the anterior abdominal wall, see Figure 5.5B. **C.** Superficial dissection.

If observing the anatomy of the posterior abdominal wall in only two-dimensional diagrams, such as Figure 5.98, it would be easy to suppose that it is flat. In observing a dissected cadaver or a transverse cross section such as that in Figures 5.96A, B, it is apparent that the lumbar vertebral column is a marked central prominence in the posterior wall, creating two paravertebral “gutters” on each side. The deepest (most posterior) part of these gutters is occupied by the kidneys and their surrounding fat. The abdominal aorta lies on the anterior aspect of the anteriorly protruding vertebral column. It is usually surprising to find how close the lower abdominal aorta lies to the

anterior abdominal wall in lean individuals (see Fig. B5.40C). Of course, many structures lie anterior to the aorta (SMA, parts of the duodenum, pancreas and left renal vein, etc.), and so these "posterior abdominal structures" may approach the anterior abdominal wall closer than might be expected in thin persons, especially when they are in the supine position.

Fascia of Posterior Abdominal Wall

The posterior abdominal wall is covered with a continuous layer of endoabdominal fascia that lies between the parietal peritoneum and the muscles (Fig. 5.96B). The fascia lining the posterior abdominal wall is continuous with the transversalis fascia that lines the transversus abdominis muscle. It is customary to name the fascia according to the structure it covers.

The psoas fascia covering the psoas major muscle (psoas sheath) is attached medially to the lumbar vertebrae and pelvic brim. The psoas fascia (sheath) is thickened superiorly to form the medial arcuate ligament (Fig. 5.92). The psoas fascia fuses laterally with the quadratus lumborum and thoracolumbar fascias (Fig. 5.96B). Inferior to the iliac crest, the psoas fascia is continuous with the part of the iliac fascia covering the iliacus.

The **thoracolumbar fascia** is an extensive fascial complex attached to the vertebral column medially that, in the lumbar region, has **posterior**, **middle**, and **anterior layers with muscles** enclosed between them (Fig. 5.96B, C). It is thin and transparent where it covers the thoracic parts of the deep muscles, but it is thick and strong in the lumbar region. The enclosure of the vertical deep back muscles (erector spinae) by the posterior and middle layers of the thoracolumbar fascia on the posterior aspect of the trunk is comparable to the enclosure of the rectus abdominis by the rectus sheath on the anterior aspect (Fig. 5.96A). This posterior sheath is even more formidable than the rectus sheath, however, because of the thickness of its posterior layer and the central attachment to the lumbar vertebrae, as opposed to the rectus sheaths, which lack bony support where they fuse to each other at the linea alba. The lumbar part of this posterior sheath, extending between the 12th rib and the iliac crest, attaches laterally to the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles, as does the rectus sheath. However, in contrast to the rectus sheath, the thoracolumbar fascia is not attached to the external oblique; it is attached to the latissimus dorsi (Fig. 5.96B, C).

The **anterior layer of the thoracolumbar fascia** (quadratus lumborum fascia), covering the anterior surface of the quadratus lumborum—a thinner, more transparent layer than the other two layers—attaches to the anterior surfaces of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae, the iliac crest, and the 12th rib (Figs. 5.96B and 5.98). The anterior layer is continuous laterally with the aponeurotic origin of the transversus abdominis muscle. It thickens superiorly to form the lateral arcuate ligament and is adherent inferiorly to the **iliolumbar ligaments** (Fig. 5.98).

Muscles of Posterior Abdominal Wall

The main paired muscles in the posterior abdominal wall (Fig. 5.97; Table 5.13) are as follows:

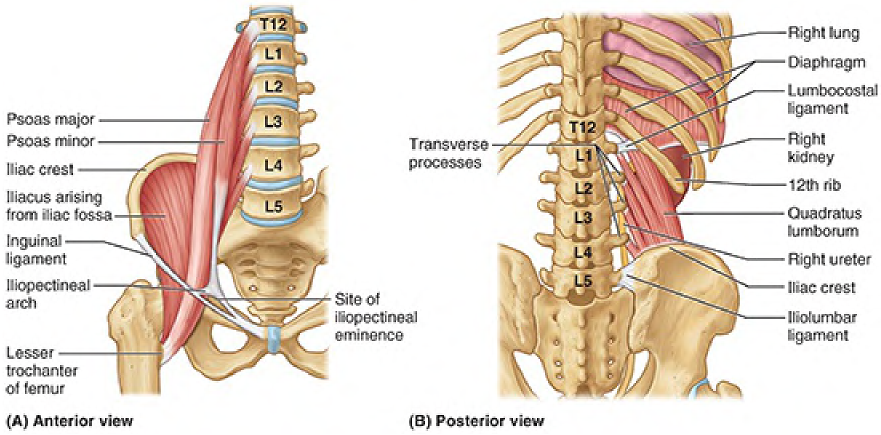


FIGURE 5.97. **Muscles of posterior abdominal wall.**

- Psoas major: passing inferolaterally
- Iliacus: lying along the lateral sides of the inferior part of the psoas major
- Quadratus lumborum: lying adjacent to the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae and lateral to superior parts of the psoas major

TABLE 5.13. MUSCLES OF POSTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL

Muscle	Superior Attachment	Inferior Attachment	Innervation	Main Action
Psoas major[a]	Transverse processes of lumbar vertebrae; sides of bodies of T12–L5 vertebrae and intervening intervertebral discs	By a strong tendon to lesser trochanter of femur	Anterior rami of lumbar nerves **L1**, **L2**, and L3	Acting inferiorly with iliacus, it flexes the thigh; acting superiorly, it flexes the vertebral column laterally; it is used to balance the trunk; when sitting, it acts inferiorly with the iliacus to flex the trunk
Iliacus[a]	Superior two thirds of iliac fossa, ala of sacrum, and anterior sacro-iliac ligaments	Lesser trochanter of femur and shaft inferior to it and to psoas major tendon	Femoral nerve (L2–L4)	Flexes thigh and stabilizes hip joint; acts with psoas major
Quadratus lumborum	Medial half of inferior border of 12th ribs and tips of lumbar transverse processes	Iliolumbar ligament and internal lip of iliac crest	Anterior branches of T12 and L1–L4 nerves	Extends and laterally flexes vertebral column; fixes 12th rib during inspiration

[a]Psoas minor and iliacus muscles merge inferiorly; collectively form iliopsoas muscle.

The attachments, nerve supply, and main actions of these muscles are summarized in Table 5.13.

PSOAS MAJOR

The long, thick, fusiform **psoas major** lies lateral to the lumbar vertebrae (Figs. 5.97A and 5.98). Psoas is a Greek word meaning “muscle of the loin.” (Butchers refer to the psoas of animals as

the tenderloin.) The psoas major passes inferolaterally, deep to the inguinal ligament to reach the lesser trochanter of the femur. The lumbar plexus of nerves is embedded in the posterior part of the psoas major, anterior to the lumbar transverse processes.

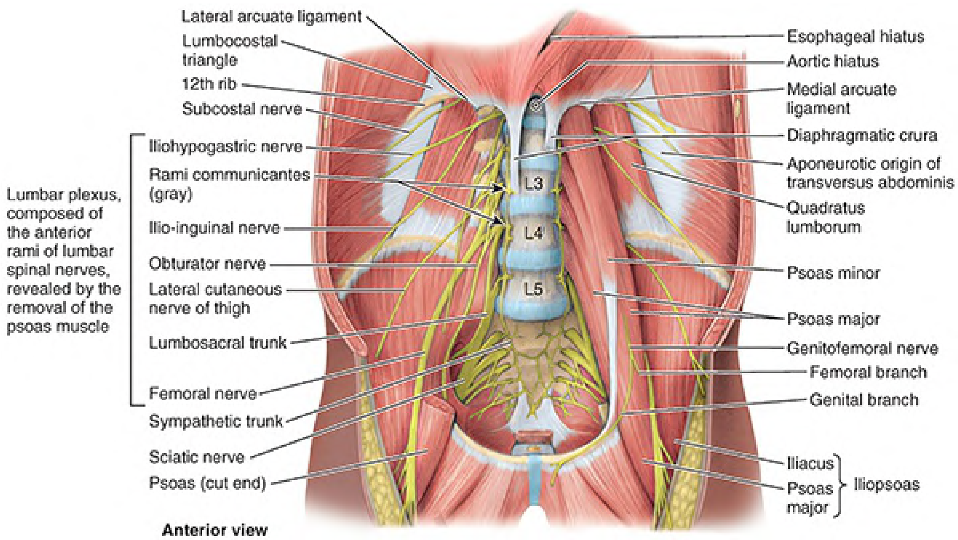


FIGURE 5.98. **Muscles and nerves of posterior abdominal wall.** Most of the right psoas major has been removed to show that the lumbar plexus of nerves is formed by the anterior rami of the first four lumbar spinal nerves and that it lies in the substance of the psoas major.

ILIACUS

The **iliacus** is a large triangular muscle that lies along the lateral side of the inferior part of the psoas major. Most of its fibers join the tendon of the psoas major. Together, the psoas and iliacus form the **iliopsoas**, the chief flexor of the thigh. It is also a stabilizer of the hip joint and helps maintain the erect posture at this joint. The psoas and iliacus share in hip flexion; however, only the psoas can produce movement (flexion or lateral bending) of the lumbar vertebral column.

QUADRATUS LUMBORUM

The quadrilateral **quadratus lumborum** forms a thick muscular sheet in the posterior abdominal wall (Figs. 5.96A, B; 5.97B; and 5.98). It lies adjacent to the lumbar transverse processes and is broader inferiorly. Close to the 12th rib, the lateral arcuate ligament crosses the quadratus lumborum. The subcostal nerve passes posterior to this ligament and runs inferolaterally on the quadratus lumborum. Branches of the lumbar plexus run inferiorly on the anterior surface of this muscle.

Nerves of Posterior Abdominal Wall

Components of both the somatic and autonomic (visceral) nervous systems are associated with the posterior abdominal wall.

The subcostal nerves (anterior rami of T12) arise in the thorax, pass posterior to the lateral arcuate ligaments into the abdomen, and run inferolaterally on the anterior surface of the

quadratus lumborum (Fig. 5.98). They pass through the transversus abdominis and internal oblique muscles to supply the external oblique and skin of the anterolateral abdominal wall.

The **lumbar spinal nerves** (L1–L5) pass from the spinal cord through the IV foramina inferior to the corresponding vertebrae, where they divide into posterior and anterior rami. Each ramus contains sensory and motor fibers. The posterior rami pass posteriorly to supply the muscles of the back and overlying skin, whereas the anterior rami pass laterally and inferiorly, to supply the skin and muscles of the inferiormost trunk and lower limb. The initial portions of the anterior rami of the L1, L2, and occasionally L3 spinal nerves give rise to white communicating branches (L. rami communicantes), which convey presynaptic sympathetic fibers to the lumbar sympathetic trunks.

The abdominal part of the sympathetic trunks (lumbar sympathetic trunks), consisting of four lumbar paravertebral sympathetic ganglia and the interganglionic branches that connect them, is continuous with the thoracic part of the trunks deep to the medial arcuate ligaments of the diaphragm. The lumbar trunks descend on the anterolateral aspects of the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae in a groove formed by the adjacent psoas major. Inferiorly, they cross the sacral promontory and continue inferiorly into the pelvis as the sacral part of the trunks.

For the innervation of the abdominal wall and lower limbs, synapses between the presynaptic and postsynaptic fibers occur in the sympathetic trunks. Postsynaptic sympathetic fibers travel from the lateral aspect of the trunks via gray communicating branches to the anterior rami. They become the thoraco-abdominal and subcostal nerves and the lumbar plexus (somatic nerves) that stimulate vasomotion, sudomotion, and pilomotion in the lowermost trunk and lower limb. Lumbar splanchnic nerves arising from the medial aspect of the lumbar sympathetic trunks convey presynaptic sympathetic fibers for the innervation of pelvic viscera.

The **lumbar plexus of nerves** is formed anterior to the lumbar transverse processes, within the proximal attachment of the psoas major. This nerve network is composed of the anterior rami of L1 through L4 nerves. The following nerves are branches of the lumbar plexus; the three largest are listed first:

- The femoral nerve (L2–L4) emerges from the lateral border of the psoas major and innervates the iliacus and passes deep to the inguinal ligament/iliopubic tract to the anterior thigh, supplying the flexors of the hip and extensors of the knee.
- The obturator nerve (L2–L4) emerges from the medial border of the psoas major and passes into the lesser pelvis, passing inferior to the superior pubic ramus (through the obturator foramen) to the medial thigh, supplying the adductor muscles.
- The lumbosacral trunk (L4, L5) passes over the ala (wing) of the sacrum and descends into the pelvis to participate in the formation of the sacral plexus with the anterior rami of S1–S4 nerves.
- The **ilio-inguinal** and **iliohypogastric nerves** (L1) arise from the anterior ramus of L1, entering the abdomen posterior to the medial arcuate ligament and passing inferolaterally, anterior to the quadratus lumborum. They run superior and parallel to the iliac crest, piercing the transversus abdominis near the ASIS. They then pass through the internal and external obliques to supply the abdominal muscles and skin of the inguinal and pubic regions. The

division of the L1 anterior ramus may occur as far distally as the ASIS, so that often only one nerve (L1) crosses the posterior abdominal wall instead of two.

- The genitofemoral nerve (L1, L2) pierces the psoas major and runs inferiorly on its anterior surface, deep to the psoas fascia; it divides lateral to the common and external iliac arteries into femoral and genital branches.
- The lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh, or lateral femoral cutaneous nerve (L2, L3), runs inferolaterally on the iliacus and enters the thigh deep to the inguinal ligament/iliopubic tract, just medial to the ASIS; it supplies skin on the anterolateral surface of the thigh.
- An **accessory obturator nerve** (L3, L4) is present almost 10% of the time. It parallels the medial border of the psoas, anterior to the obturator nerve, crossing superior to the superior pubic ramus in close proximity to the femoral vein.

Although the larger branches (femoral, obturator, and lumbosacral trunk) are consistent in their placement, variation should be anticipated in the disposition of the smaller branches of the lumbar plexus.

Vessels of Posterior Abdominal Wall

The major neurovascular bundle of the inferior trunk, including the abdominal aorta, the inferior vena cava, and the aortic peri-arterial nerve plexus, courses in the midline of the posterior abdominal wall, anterior to the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae (see Figs. 5.70B and 5.89).

ABDOMINAL AORTA

Most arteries supplying the posterior abdominal wall arise from the **abdominal aorta** (Fig. 5.99A; Table 5.14). The subcostal arteries arise from the thoracic aorta and distribute inferior to the 12th rib. The abdominal aorta is approximately 13 cm in length. It begins at the aortic hiatus in the diaphragm at the level of the T12 vertebra and ends at the level of the L4 vertebra by dividing into the right and left common iliac arteries. The abdominal aorta may be represented on the anterior abdominal wall by a band (approximately 2 cm wide) extending from a median point, approximately 2.5 cm superior to the transpyloric plane to a point slightly (2–3 cm) inferior to and to the left of the umbilicus at the level of the supracristal plane (plane of the highest points of the iliac crests) (Fig. 5.99B). In children and lean adults, the lower abdominal aorta is sufficiently close to the anterior abdominal wall that its pulsations may be detected or apparent when the wall is relaxed (see the Clinical Box “Pulsations of Aorta and Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm” in this chapter).

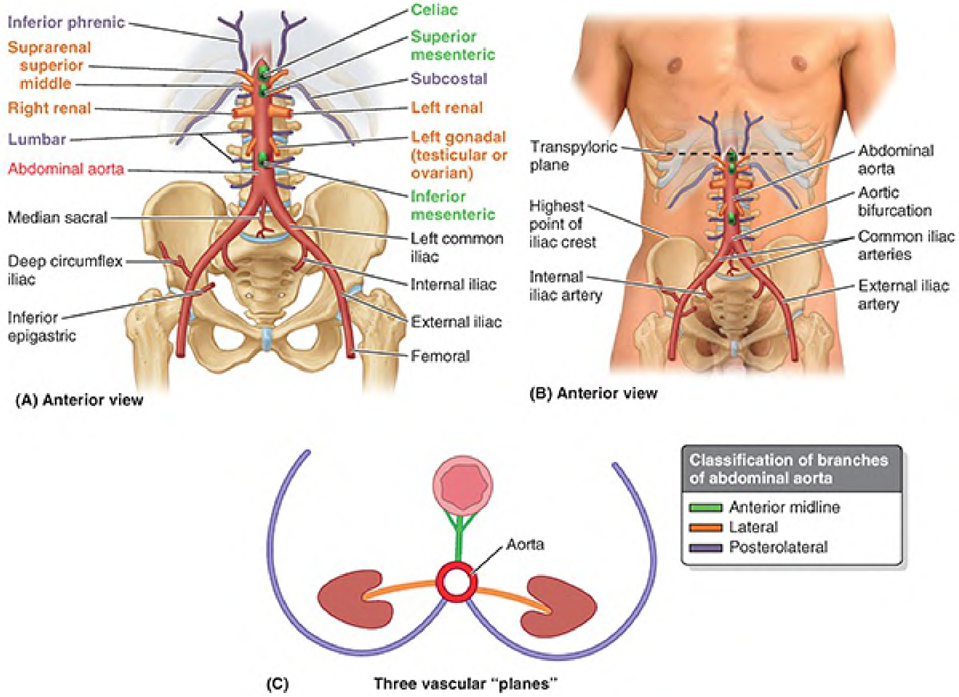


FIGURE 5.99. **Branches of abdominal aorta. A.** Overview. **B.** Surface projection. **C.** Vascular planes.

TABLE 5.14. BRANCHES OF ABDOMINAL AORTA

Vascular Plane	Class	Distribution	Abdominal Branches (Arteries)	Vertebral Level
1. Anterior midline	Unpaired visceral	Digestive tract	Celiac	T12
			Superior mesenteric	L1
			Inferior mesenteric	L3
2. Lateral	Paired visceral	Urogenital and endocrine organs	Suprarenal	L1
			Renal	L1
			Gonadal (testicular or ovarian)	L2
3. Posterolateral	Paired parietal (segmental)	Diaphragm; body wall	Subcostal	T12
			Inferior phrenic	T12
			Lumbar	L1–L4

The **common iliac arteries** diverge and run inferolaterally, following the medial border of the psoas muscles to the pelvic brim. Here, each common iliac artery divides into the internal and external iliac arteries. The internal iliac artery enters the pelvis. (Its course and branches are described in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum.) The external iliac artery follows the iliopsoas muscle. Just before leaving the abdomen, the external iliac artery gives rise to the inferior epigastric and **deep circumflex iliac arteries**, which supply the anterolateral abdominal wall.

Relations of Abdominal Aorta. From superior to inferior, the important anterior relations of the abdominal aorta are as follows:

- Celiac plexus and ganglion (see Figs. 5.55B and 5.70)
- Body of the pancreas and splenic vein (see Fig. 5.71)
- Horizontal part of the duodenum
- Coils of small intestine

The abdominal aorta descends anterior to the bodies of the T12–L4 vertebrae (Fig. 5.99A). The left lumbar veins pass posterior to the aorta to reach the IVC (Fig. 5.100). On the right, the aorta is related to the azygos vein, cisterna chyli, thoracic duct, right crus of the diaphragm, and right celiac ganglion. On the left, the aorta is related to the left crus of the diaphragm and the left celiac ganglion.

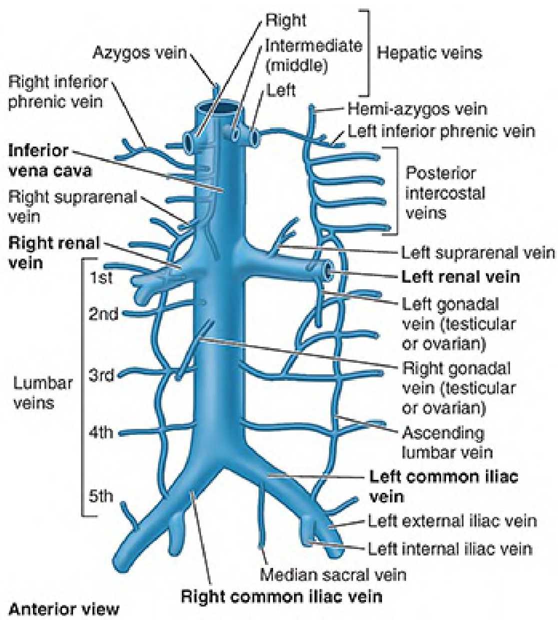


FIGURE 5.100. Inferior vena cava (IVC) and its tributaries. The asymmetry in the renal and common iliac veins reflects the placement of the IVC to the right of the midline.

Branches of Abdominal Aorta. The branches of the descending (thoracic and abdominal) aorta may be described as arising and coursing in three "vascular planes" and can be classified as being visceral or parietal and paired or unpaired (Fig. 5.99A, C; Table 5.14). Paired parietal branches of the aorta serve the diaphragm and posterior abdominal wall.

The **median sacral artery**, an unpaired parietal branch, may be said to occupy a fourth (posterior) plane because it arises from the posterior aspect of the aorta just proximal to its bifurcation. Although markedly smaller, it could also be considered a midline "continuation" of the aorta, in which case its lateral branches, the **small lumbar arteries** and **lateral sacral branches**, would also be included as part of the paired parietal branches.

VEINS OF POSTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL

The veins of the posterior abdominal wall are tributaries of the IVC, except for the left testicular or ovarian vein, which enters the left renal vein instead of entering the IVC (Fig. 5.100). The IVC, the largest vein in the body, has no valves except for a variable, nonfunctional one at its

orifice in the right atrium of the heart. The IVC returns poorly oxygenated blood from the lower limbs, most of the back, the abdominal walls, and the abdominopelvic viscera. Blood from the abdominal viscera passes through the portal venous system and the liver before entering the IVC via the hepatic veins.

The **inferior vena cava (IVC)** begins anterior to the L5 vertebra by the union of the common iliac veins. The union occurs approximately 2.5 cm to the right of the median plane, inferior to the aortic bifurcation and posterior to the proximal part of the right common iliac artery (see Fig. 5.76). The IVC ascends on the right side of the bodies of the L3–L5 vertebrae and on the right psoas major to the right of the aorta. The IVC leaves the abdomen by passing through the caval opening in the diaphragm and enters the thorax at the T8 vertebral level. Because it is formed one vertebral level inferior to the aortic bifurcation and traverses the diaphragm four vertebral levels superior to the aortic hiatus, the overall length of the IVC is 7 cm greater than that of the abdominal aorta, although most of the additional length is intrahepatic. The IVC collects poorly oxygenated blood from the lower limbs and nonportal blood from the abdomen and pelvis. Almost all the blood from the gastrointestinal tract is collected by the hepatic portal system and passes through the hepatic veins to the IVC.

The tributaries of the IVC correspond to the paired visceral and parietal branches of the abdominal aorta. The veins that correspond to the unpaired visceral branches of the aorta are instead tributaries of the hepatic portal vein. The blood they carry does ultimately enter the IVC via the hepatic veins, after traversing the liver.

The branches corresponding to the paired visceral branches of the abdominal aorta include the right suprarenal vein, the right and left renal veins, and the right gonadal (testicular or ovarian) vein. The left suprarenal and gonadal veins drain indirectly into the IVC because they are tributaries of the left renal vein.

Paired parietal branches of the IVC include the inferior phrenic veins, the 3rd (L3) and 4th (L4) lumbar veins, and the common iliac veins. The ascending lumbar and azygos veins connect the IVC and SVC, either directly or indirectly providing collateral pathways (see the Clinical Box “Collateral Routes for Abdominopelvic Venous Blood” in this chapter).

LYMPHATIC VESSELS AND LYMPH NODES OF POSTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL

Lymphatic vessels and lymph nodes lie along the aorta, IVC, and iliac vessels (Fig. 5.101A). The common iliac lymph nodes receive lymph from the external and internal iliac lymph nodes. Lymph from the common iliac lymph nodes passes to the right and left lumbar lymph nodes. Lymph from the alimentary tract, liver, spleen, and pancreas passes along the celiac and superior and inferior mesenteric arteries to the pre-aortic lymph nodes (celiac and superior and inferior mesenteric nodes) scattered around the origins of these arteries from the aorta. Efferent vessels from these nodes form the **intestinal lymphatic trunks**, which may be single or multiple, and participate in the confluence of lymphatic trunks that gives rise to the thoracic duct (Fig. 5.101B).

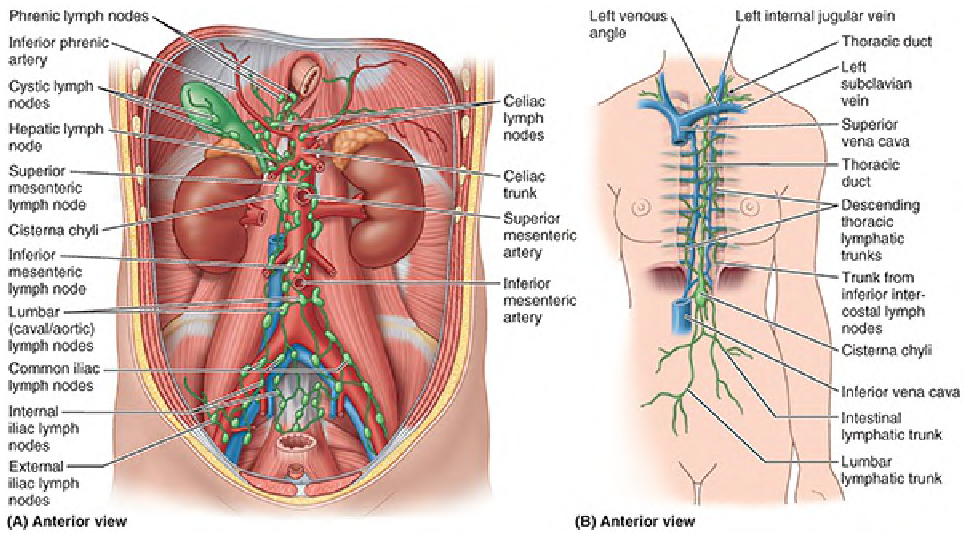


FIGURE 5.101. Lymphatic drainage of posterior abdominal wall. A. Lymphatic vessels and lymph nodes. **B.** Abdominal lymphatic trunks. All lymphatic drainage from the lower half of the body converges in the abdomen to enter the beginning of the thoracic duct.

The right and left lumbar (caval and aortic) lymph nodes lie on both sides of the IVC and aorta. These nodes receive lymph directly from the posterior abdominal wall, kidneys, ureters, testes or ovaries, uterus, and uterine tubes. They also receive lymph from the descending colon, pelvis, and lower limbs through the inferior mesenteric and **common iliac lymph nodes**. Efferent lymphatic vessels from the large lumbar lymph nodes form the right and left **lumbar lymphatic trunks**.

The inferior end of the thoracic duct lies anterior to the bodies of the L1 and L2 vertebrae between the right crus of the diaphragm and the aorta. The thoracic duct begins with the convergence of the main lymphatic ducts of the abdomen, which in only a small proportion of individuals takes the form of the commonly depicted, thin-walled sac or dilation, the **cisterna chyli** (chyle cistern) (Fig. 5.101B). Cisterna chyli vary greatly in size and shape. More often, there is merely a simple or plexiform convergence at this level of the right and left lumbar lymphatic trunks, the intestinal lymph trunk(s), and a pair of **descending thoracic lymphatic trunks**, which carry lymph from the lower six intercostal spaces on each side. Consequently, essentially all the lymphatic drainage from the lower half of the body (deep lymphatic drainage inferior to the level of the diaphragm and all superficial drainage inferior to the level of the umbilicus) converges in the abdomen to enter the beginning of the thoracic duct.

The thoracic duct ascends through the aortic hiatus in the diaphragm into the posterior mediastinum, where it collects more parietal and visceral drainage, particularly from the left upper quadrant of the body. The duct ultimately ends by entering the venous system at the junction of the left subclavian and internal jugular veins (the left venous angle).

CLINICAL BOX

DIAPHRAGM

Hiccups

Hiccups (hiccoughs) are involuntary, spasmodic contractions of the diaphragm, causing sudden inhalations that are rapidly interrupted by spasmodic closure of the glottis (aperture of the larynx) that checks the inflow of air and produces the characteristic sound. Hiccups result from irritation of afferent or efferent nerve endings, or of medullary centers in the brainstem that control the muscles of respiration, particularly the diaphragm. Hiccups have many causes, such as indigestion, diaphragm irritation, alcoholism, cerebral lesions, and thoracic and abdominal lesions, all which disturb the phrenic nerves.

Section of a Phrenic Nerve

Section of a phrenic nerve in the neck results in complete paralysis and eventual atrophy of the muscular part of the corresponding half of the diaphragm, except in persons who have an accessory phrenic nerve (see Chapter 8, Head). Paralysis of a hemidiaphragm can be recognized radiographically by its permanent elevation and paradoxical movement. See the Clinical Box "Paralysis of Diaphragm" in Chapter 4, Thorax.

Referred Pain from Diaphragm

Pain from the diaphragm radiates to two different areas because of the difference in the sensory nerve supply of the diaphragm (see Table 5.11). Pain resulting from irritation of the diaphragmatic pleura or the diaphragmatic peritoneum is referred to the shoulder region, the area of skin supplied by the C3–C5 segments of the spinal cord (see the Clinical Box "Visceral Referred Pain" earlier in this chapter). These segments also contribute anterior rami to the phrenic nerves. Irritation of peripheral regions of the diaphragm, innervated by the inferior intercostal nerves, is more localized, being referred to the skin over the costal margins of the anterolateral abdominal wall.

Rupture of Diaphragm and Herniation of Viscera

Rupture of the diaphragm and herniation of viscera can result from a sudden large increase in either the intrathoracic or intra-abdominal pressure. The common cause of this injury is severe trauma to the thorax or abdomen during a motor vehicle accident. Most diaphragmatic ruptures are on the left side (95%) because the substantial mass of the liver, intimately associated with the diaphragm on the right side, provides a physical barrier.

A nonmuscular area of variable size called the lumbocostal triangle usually occurs

between the costal and lumbar parts of the diaphragm (see Figs. 5.92 and 5.98). This part of the diaphragm is normally formed only by fusion of the superior and inferior fascias of the diaphragm. When a traumatic diaphragmatic hernia occurs, the stomach, small intestine and mesentery, transverse colon, and spleen may herniate through this area into the thorax.

Hiatal (hiatus) hernia, a protrusion of part of the stomach into the thorax through the esophageal hiatus, was discussed earlier in this chapter. The structures that pass through the esophageal hiatus (vagal trunks, left inferior phrenic vessels, esophageal branches of the left gastric vessels) may be injured in surgical procedures on the esophageal hiatus (e.g., repair of a hiatus hernia).

Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia

In congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH), part of the stomach and intestine herniate through a large posterolateral defect (foramen of Bochdalek) in the region of the lumbocostal trigone of the diaphragm (Fig. B5.37). Herniation almost always occurs on the left owing to the presence of the liver on the right. This type of hernia results from the complex development of the diaphragm. Posterolateral defect of the diaphragm is the only relatively common congenital anomaly of the diaphragm, occurring approximately once in 2,200 newborn infants (Moore et al., 2020). With abdominal viscera in the limited space of the prenatal pulmonary cavity, one lung (usually the left lung) does not have room to develop normally or to inflate after birth. Because of the consequent pulmonary hypoplasia, the mortality rate in these infants is high (approximately 76%).

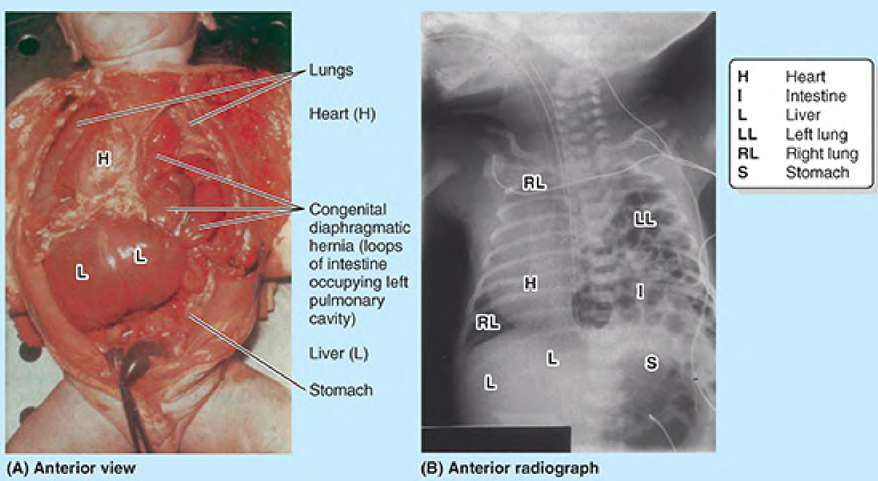


FIGURE B5.37. Congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH). A. As seen on autopsy. **B.** As seen radiographically in a neonate.

POSTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL

Psoas Abscess

Although the prevalence of tuberculosis (TB) has been greatly reduced, there is currently a

resurgence of TB, especially in Africa and Asia, sometimes in pandemic proportions, owing to AIDS and drug resistance. TB of the vertebral column is quite common. An infection may spread through the blood to the vertebrae (hematogenous spread), particularly during childhood. An abscess resulting from tuberculosis in the lumbar region tends to spread from the vertebrae into the psoas fascia (sheath), where it produces a psoas abscess (Fig. B5.38). As a consequence, the psoas fascia thickens to form a strong stocking-like tube. Pus from the psoas abscess passes inferiorly along the psoas muscle within this fascial tube over the pelvic brim and deep to the inguinal ligament. The pus usually surfaces in the superior part of the thigh. Pus can also reach the psoas fascia by passing from the posterior mediastinum when the thoracic vertebrae are diseased.

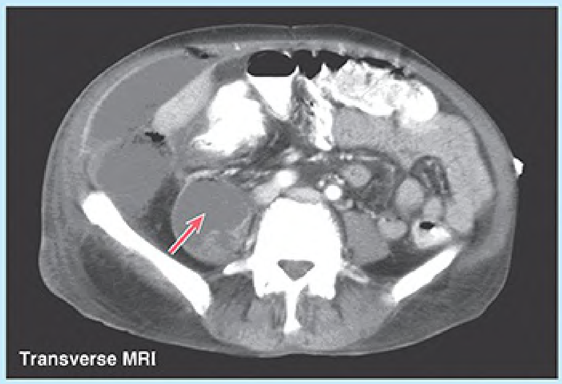


FIGURE B5.38. **Psoas abscess (arrow).**

The inferior part of the iliac fascia is often tense and raises a fold that passes to the internal aspect of the iliac crest. The superior part of this fascia is loose and may form a pocket, the iliacosubfascial fossa, posterior to the above mentioned fold. Part of the large intestine, such as the cecum and/or appendix on the right side and the sigmoid colon on the left side, may become trapped in this fossa, causing considerable pain.

Posterior Abdominal Pain

The iliopsoas muscle has extensive, clinically important relations to the kidneys, ureters, cecum, appendix, sigmoid colon, pancreas, lumbar lymph nodes, and nerves of the posterior abdominal wall. When any of these structures is diseased, movement of the iliopsoas usually causes pain. When intra-abdominal inflammation is suspected, the iliopsoas test is performed. The person is asked to lie on the unaffected side and extend the flexed thigh on the affected side against resistance by the examiner (Bickley, 2021). The elicitation of pain with this maneuver is a positive psoas sign. An acutely inflamed appendix, for example, will produce a positive right psoas sign (Fig. B5.39).

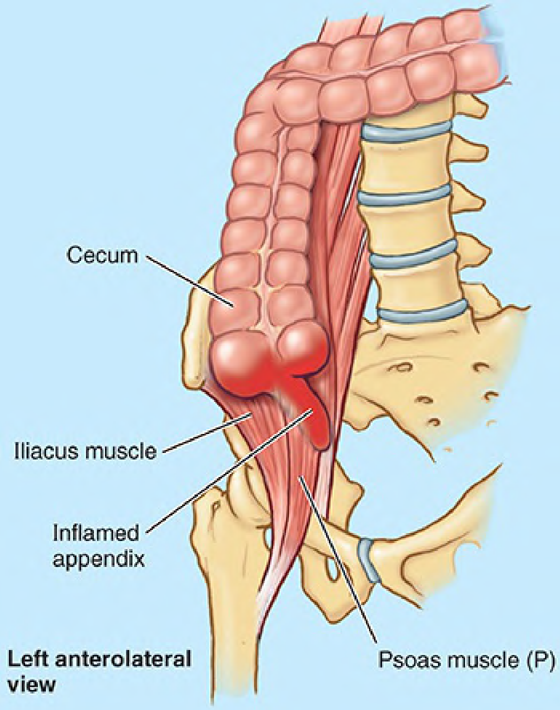


FIGURE B5.39. **Anatomical basis of psoas sign.**

Because the psoas lies along the vertebral column and the iliacus crosses the sacro-iliac joint, disease of the intervertebral and sacro-iliac joints may cause spasm of the iliopsoas, a protective reflex. Adenocarcinoma of the pancreas in advanced stages invades the muscles and nerves of the posterior abdominal wall, producing excruciating pain because of the close relationship of the pancreas to the posterior abdominal wall.

Pulsations of Aorta and Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm

Because the aorta lies posterior to the pancreas and stomach, a tumor of these organs may transmit pulsations of the aorta that could be mistaken for an abdominal aortic aneurysm, a localized enlargement of the aorta (Fig. B5.40A, B). Deep palpation of the midabdomen can detect an aneurysm, which usually results from a congenital or acquired weakness of the arterial wall (Fig. B5.40C). Pulsations of a large aneurysm can be detected to the left of the midline; the pulsatile mass can be moved easily from side to side. Medical imaging can confirm the diagnosis in doubtful cases.

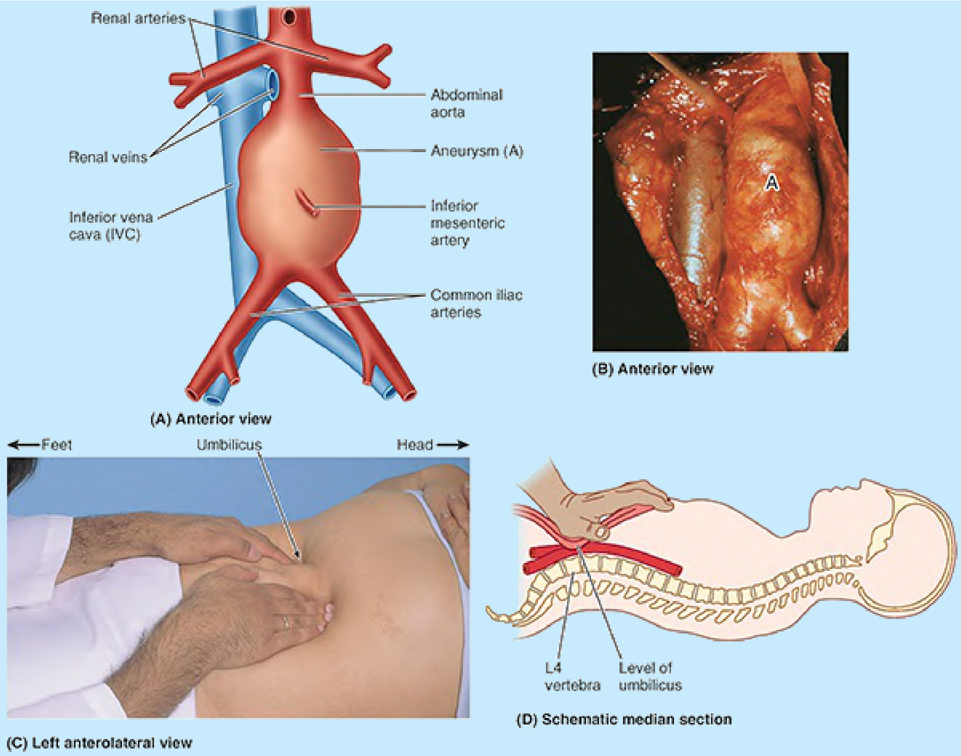


FIGURE B5.40. **Pulsations of aorta and abdominal aortic aneurysm. A** and **B.** Aortic aneurysm. **C.** Palpation of abdominal aorta (aortic pulse). **D.** Compression of abdominal aorta.

Acute rupture of an abdominal aortic aneurysm is associated with severe pain in the abdomen or back. If unrecognized, such an aneurysm has a mortality rate of nearly 90% because of heavy blood loss (Swartz, 2021). Surgeons can repair an aneurysm by opening it, inserting a prosthetic graft, and sewing the wall of the aneurysmal aorta over the graft to protect it. Many vascular problems formerly treated with open repair, including aneurysm repair, are now being treated by means of endovascular catheterization procedures.

When the anterior abdominal wall is relaxed, particularly in children and thin adults, the inferior part of the abdominal aorta may be compressed against the body of the L4 vertebra by firm pressure on the anterior abdominal wall, over the umbilicus (Fig. B5.40D). This pressure may be applied to control bleeding in the pelvis or lower limbs.

Collateral Routes for Abdominopelvic Venous Blood

Three collateral routes, formed by valveless veins of the trunk, are available for venous blood to return to the heart when the IVC is obstructed or ligated. Two of these routes (one involving the superior and inferior epigastric veins and another involving the thoraco-epigastric vein) were discussed earlier in this chapter with the anterior abdominal wall. The third collateral route involves the epidural venous plexus inside the vertebral column (illustrated and discussed in Chapter 2, Back), which communicates with the lumbar veins of the inferior caval system, and the tributaries of the azygos system of veins, which is part of the superior caval system.

The inferior part of the IVC has a complicated developmental history because it forms from parts of three sets of embryonic veins (Moore et al., 2020). Therefore, IVC anomalies are relatively common, and most of them, such as a persistent left IVC, occur inferior to the renal veins (Fig. B5.41). These anomalies result from the persistence of embryonic veins on the left side, which normally disappear. If a left IVC is present, it may cross to the right side at the level of the kidneys.

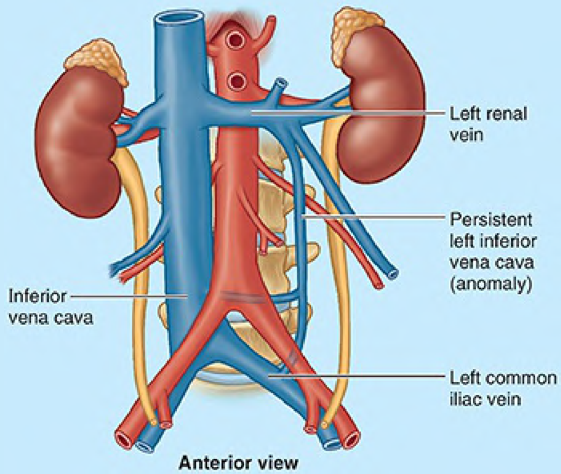


FIGURE B5.41. **Persistent left inferior vena cava.**

The Bottom Line: Diaphragm and Posterior Abdominal Wall

The diaphragm is the double-domed, musculotendinous partition separating the thoracic and abdominal cavities and is the chief muscle of inspiration. ■ The muscular portion arises from the ring-like inferior thoracic aperture from which the diaphragm rises steeply, invaginating the thoracic cage and forming a common central tendon. ■ The right dome (higher because of the underlying liver) rises nearly to the level of the nipple, whereas the left dome is slightly lower. ■ The central portion of the diaphragm is slightly depressed by the heart within the pericardium and is fused to the mediastinal surface of the central tendon. In the neutral respiratory position, the central tendon lies at the level of the T8–T9 IV disc and the xiphisternal joint. ■ When stimulated by the phrenic nerves, the domes are pulled downward (descend), compressing the abdominal viscera. When stimulation ceases and the diaphragm relaxes, the diaphragm is pushed upward (ascends) by the combined decompression of the viscera and tonus of the muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall. ■ The diaphragm is perforated by the IVC and phrenic nerves at the T8 vertebral level. ■ The fibers of the right crus of the diaphragm form a sphincteric hiatus for the esophagus at

the T10 vertebral level. ■ The descending aorta and thoracic duct pass posterior to the diaphragm at the T12 vertebral level, in the midline between the crura, overlapped by the median arcuate ligament connecting them. ■ Superior and inferior phrenic arteries and veins supply most of the diaphragm, with additional drainage occurring via the musculophrenic and azygos/hemi-azygos veins. ■ In addition to exclusive motor innervation, the phrenic nerves supply most of the pleura and peritoneum covering the diaphragm. ■ Peripheral parts of the diaphragm receive sensory innervation from the lower intercostal and subcostal nerves. ■ The left lumbocostal triangle and the esophageal hiatus are potential sites of acquired hernias through the diaphragm. Developmental defects in the left lumbocostal region account for most congenital diaphragmatic hernias.

Fascia and muscles: Large, complex aponeurotic formations cover the central parts of the trunk both anteriorly and posteriorly, forming dense sheaths centrally that house vertical muscles and attach laterally to the flat muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall. ■ The thoracolumbar fascia is the posterior aponeurotic formation. In addition to ensheathing the erector spinae between its posterior and middle layers, it encloses the quadratus lumborum between its middle and anterior layers. ■ The anterior layer, part of the endoabdominal fascia, is continuous medially with the psoas fascia (enclosing the psoas) and laterally with the transversalis fascia (lining the transversus abdominis). ■ The tube-like psoas fascia provides a potential pathway for the spread of infections between the vertebral column and hip joint. ■ The endoabdominal fascia covering the anterior aspects of both the quadratus lumborum and psoas is thickened over the superiormost aspects of the muscles, forming the lateral and medial arcuate ligaments, respectively. ■ A highly variable layer of extraperitoneal fat intervenes between the endoabdominal fascia and peritoneum. It is especially thick in the paravertebral gutters of the lumbar region, comprising the paranephric fat (pararenal fat body). ■ The muscles of the posterior abdominal wall are the quadratus lumborum, psoas major, and iliacus.

Nerves: The lumbar sympathetic trunks deliver postsynaptic sympathetic fibers to the lumbar plexus for distribution with somatic nerves and presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the abdominal aortic plexus, the latter ultimately innervating pelvic viscera. ■ With the exception of the subcostal nerve (T12) and lumbosacral trunk (L4–L5), the somatic nerves of the posterior abdominal wall are products of the lumbar plexus, formed by the anterior rami of L1–L4 deep to the psoas. ■ Only the subcostal nerve and derivatives of the anterior ramus of L1 (iliohypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves) have an abdominal distribution—to the muscles and skin of the inguinal and pubic regions. All other nerves pass to the muscles and skin of the lower limb.

Arteries: Except for the subcostal arteries, the arteries supplying the posterior abdominal wall arise from the abdominal aorta. ■ The abdominal aorta descends from the

aortic hiatus, coursing on the anterior aspects of the T12–L4 vertebra, immediately left of the midline, and bifurcates into the common iliac arteries at the level of the supracristal plane. ■ Branches of the aorta arise and course in three vascular planes: anterior (unpaired visceral branches), lateral (paired visceral branches), and posterolateral (paired parietal). ■ The median sacral artery may be considered a diminutive continuation of the aorta, which continues to give rise to paired parietal branches to the lower lumbar vertebrae and sacrum.

Veins: The veins of the posterior abdominal wall are mostly direct tributaries of the IVC, although some enter indirectly via the left renal vein. The IVC: ■ is the largest vein and lacks valves; ■ is formed at the L5 vertebral level by the union of the common iliac veins; ■ ascends to the T8 vertebral level, passing through the caval opening of the diaphragm and entering the heart almost simultaneously; ■ drains poorly oxygenated blood from the body inferior to the diaphragm; and ■ receives the venous drainage of the abdominal viscera indirectly via the hepatic portal vein, liver, and hepatic veins. ■ Except for the hepatic veins, the tributaries of the IVC mostly correspond to the lateral paired visceral and posterolateral paired parietal branches of the abdominal aorta. ■ Three collateral routes (two involving the anterior abdominal wall and one involving the vertebral canal) are available to return blood to the heart when the IVC is obstructed.

Lymph vessels and lymph nodes: Lymphatic drainage from the abdominal viscera courses retrograde along the ramifications of the three unpaired visceral branches of the abdominal aorta. ■ Lymphatic drainage from the abdominal wall merges with that from the lower limbs, both pathways following the arterial supply retrograde from those parts. ■ Ultimately, all lymphatic drainage from structures inferior to the diaphragm, plus that draining from the lower six intercostal spaces via the descending thoracic lymphatic trunks, enters the beginning of the thoracic duct at the T12 level, posterior to the aorta. ■ The origin of the thoracic duct may take the form of a saccular cisterna chyli (chyle cistern).

SECTIONAL MEDICAL IMAGING OF ABDOMEN

Ultrasound, computed tomography (CT) scans, and **magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)** are used to examine the abdominal viscera (Figs. 5.102, 5.103, 5.104, and 5.105). Because MRIs provide better differentiation between soft tissues, its images are more revealing. An image in virtually any plane can be reconstructed after scanning is completed. Abdominal angiographic studies may also now be performed using magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) (Fig. 5.105C).

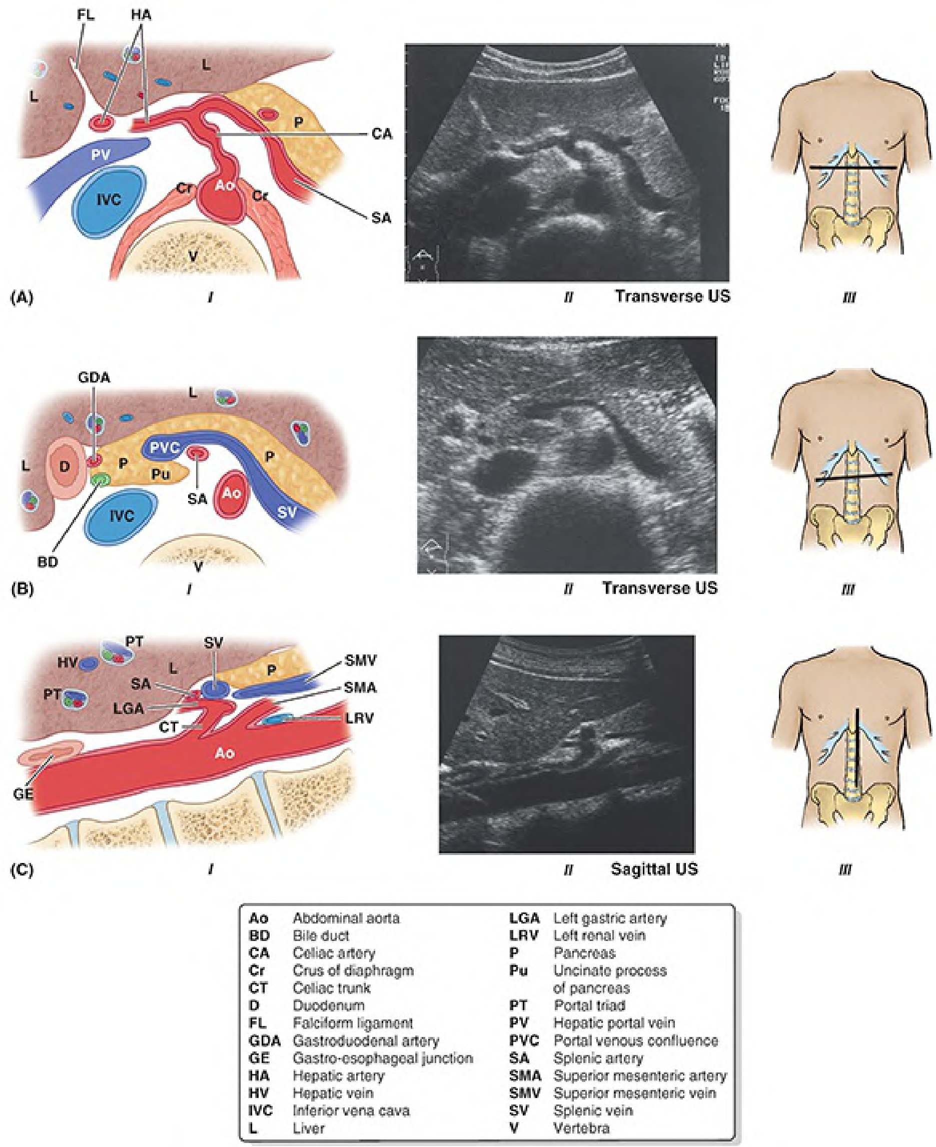


FIGURE 5.102. Ultrasound (US) scans of abdomen. A. Transverse scan through celiac trunk. **B.** Transverse scan through pancreas. **C.** Sagittal scan through aorta.

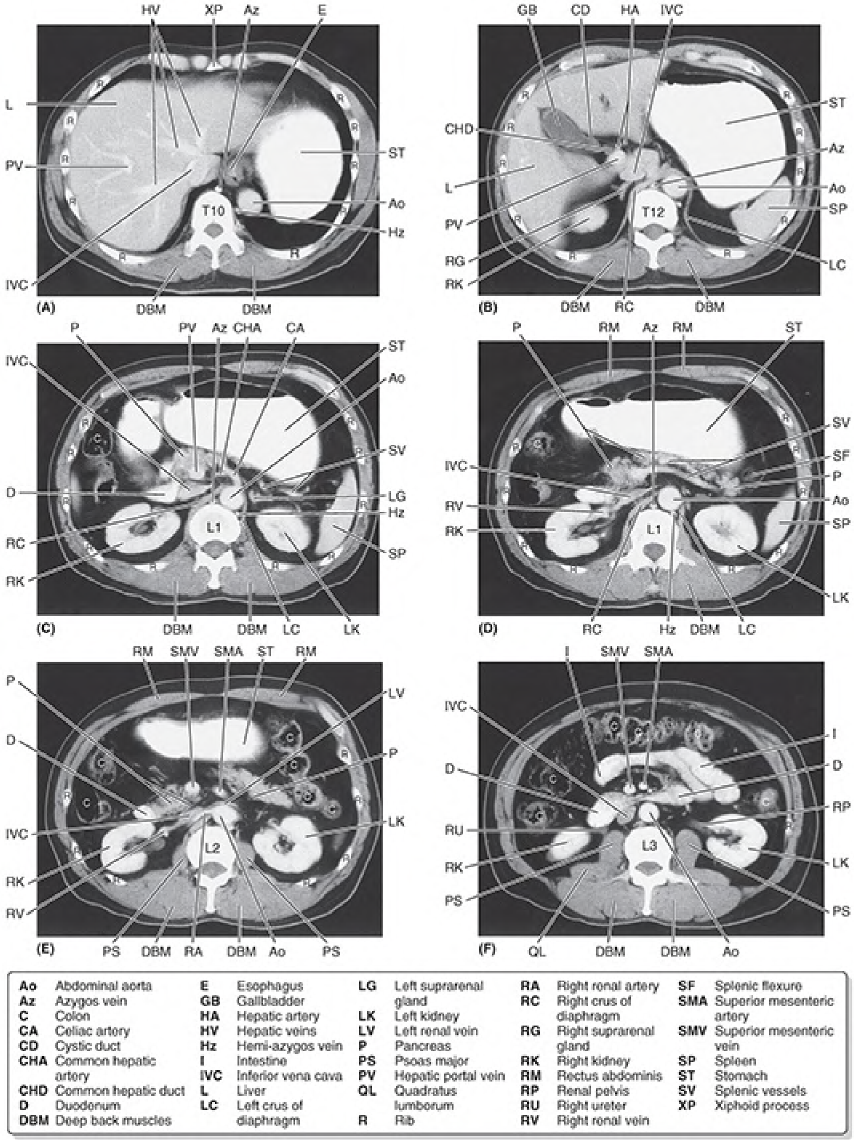


FIGURE 5.103. **Transverse (axial) CT images of abdomen**. **A–F.** Scans at progressively inferior levels show body wall, viscera, and blood vessels.

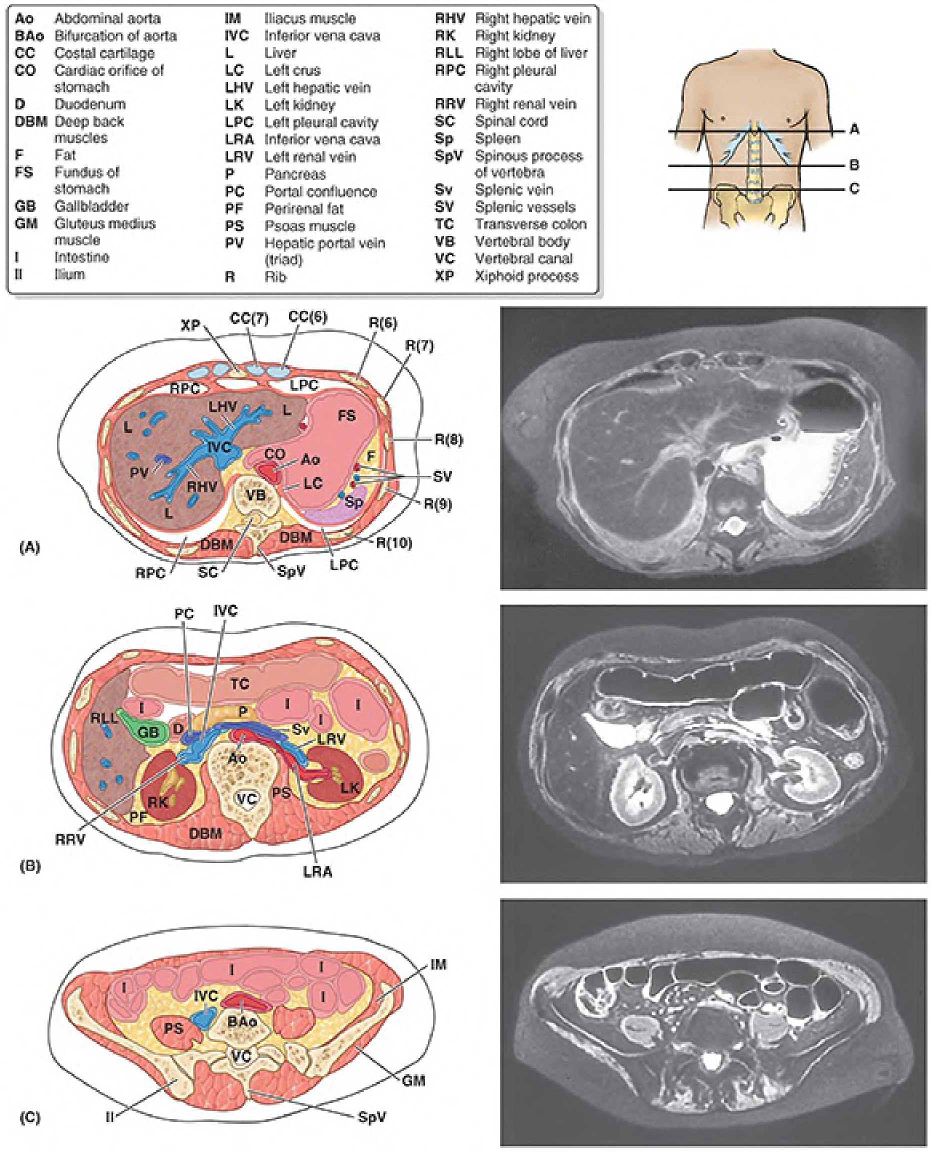


FIGURE 5.104. **Transverse magnetic resonance images (MRIs) of abdomen. A.** Level of T10 vertebra and esophageal hiatus. **B.** Level of L1–L2 vertebra and renal vessels and hilum. **C.** Level of L5 vertebra and bifurcation of aorta.

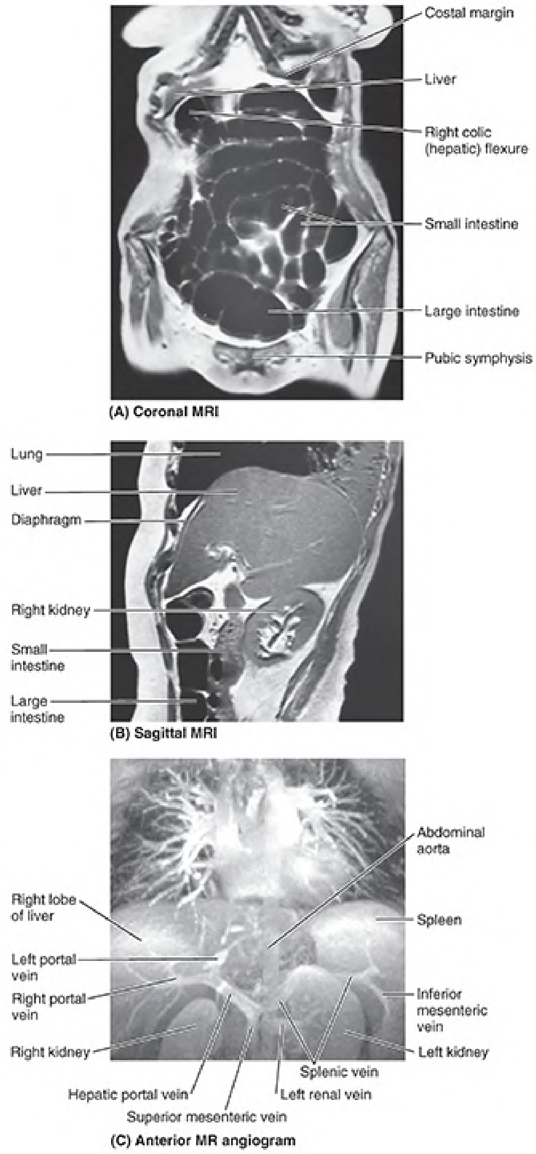
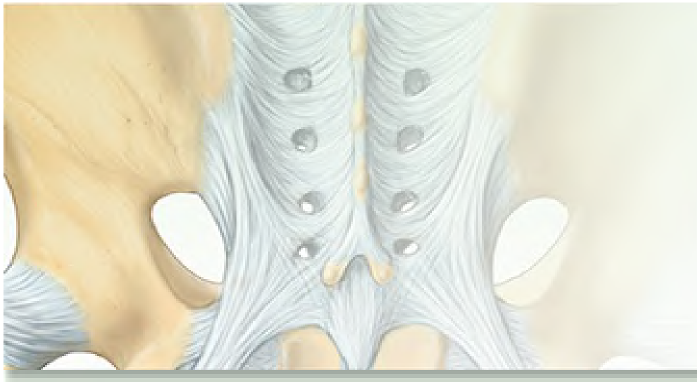


FIGURE 5.105. Magnetic resonance images (MRIs) and magnetic resonance (MR) angiogram of abdomen. A. Coronal scan through viscera (almost all intestine) of anterior abdominal cavity. **B.** Sagittal scan in right midclavicular line. **C.** MR angiogram demonstrating great vessels of thorax, aorta, and portal vein in abdomen.



6

Pelvis and Perineum

CLINICAL BOX KEY

INTRODUCTION TO PELVIS AND PERINEUM

In common usage, the pelvis (L., basin) is the part of the body's trunk that is inferoposterior to the abdomen and is the area of transition between the trunk and the lower limbs. The pelvic cavity is the inferiormost part of the abdominopelvic cavity. Anatomically, the pelvis is the part of the body surrounded by the pelvic girdle (bony pelvis), part of the appendicular skeleton of the lower limb (Fig. 6.1).

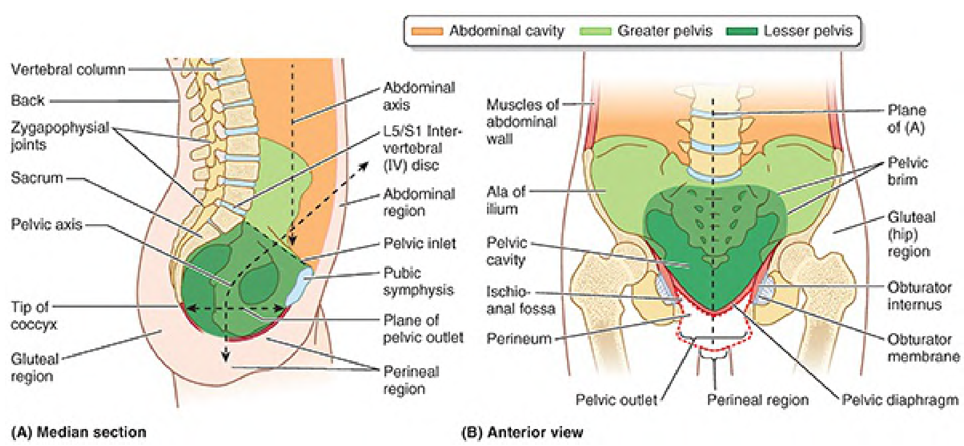


FIGURE 6.1. **Pelvis and perineum within trunk. A.** Median section of lower trunk, left half. **B.** Posterior half of coronally sectioned lower trunk. The pelvis (green) is the space within the pelvic girdle, overlapped externally by the abdominal and gluteal regions, perineum, and lower back. Consequently, the pelvis has no external surface area. The greater pelvis (light green) is pelvic by virtue of its bony boundaries but is abdominal in terms of its contents. The lesser pelvis (dark green) provides the bony framework (skeleton) for the pelvic cavity and deep perineum.

The pelvis is subdivided into greater and lesser pelves. The greater pelvis is surrounded by the superior pelvic girdle. The greater pelvis is occupied by inferior abdominal viscera, affording them protection similar to the way the superior abdominal viscera are protected by the inferior thoracic cage. The lesser pelvis is surrounded by the inferior pelvic girdle, which provides the skeletal framework for both the pelvic cavity and the perineum—compartments of the trunk separated by the musculofascial pelvic diaphragm. Externally, the pelvis is covered or overlapped by the inferior anterolateral abdominal wall anteriorly, the gluteal region of the lower limb posterolaterally, and the perineum inferiorly.

The term perineum[1] refers both to the area of the surface of the trunk between the thighs and the buttocks, extending from the coccyx to the pubis, and to the shallow compartment lying deep (superior) to this area but inferior to the pelvic diaphragm. The perineum includes the anus and external genitalia: the penis and scrotum of the male and the vulva of the female.

PELVIC GIRDLE

The **pelvic girdle** is a basin-shaped ring of bones that connects the vertebral column to the two femurs. The primary functions of the pelvic girdle are to

- bear the weight of the upper body when sitting and standing
- transfer that weight from the axial to the lower appendicular skeleton for standing and walking
- provide attachment for the powerful muscles of locomotion and posture and those of the abdominal wall, withstanding the forces generated by their actions

Consequently, the pelvic girdle is strong and rigid, especially compared to the pectoral (shoulder) girdle. Other functions of the pelvic girdle are to

- contain and protect the pelvic viscera (inferior parts of the urinary tracts and the internal reproductive organs) and the inferior abdominal viscera (e.g., intestines) while permitting passage of their terminal parts (and, in females, a full-term fetus) via the perineum
- provide support for the abdominopelvic viscera and gravid (pregnant) uterus
- provide attachment for the erectile bodies of the external genitalia
- provide attachment for the muscles and membranes that assist the functions listed above by forming the pelvic floor and filling gaps that exist in or around it

Bones and Features of Pelvic Girdle

In mature people, the pelvic girdle is formed by three bones (Fig. 6.2A):

- Right and left hip bones (coxal or pelvic bones): large, irregularly shaped bones, each of

which develops from the fusion of three bones (ilium, ischium, and pubis)

- Sacrum: formed by the fusion of five, originally separate, sacral vertebrae

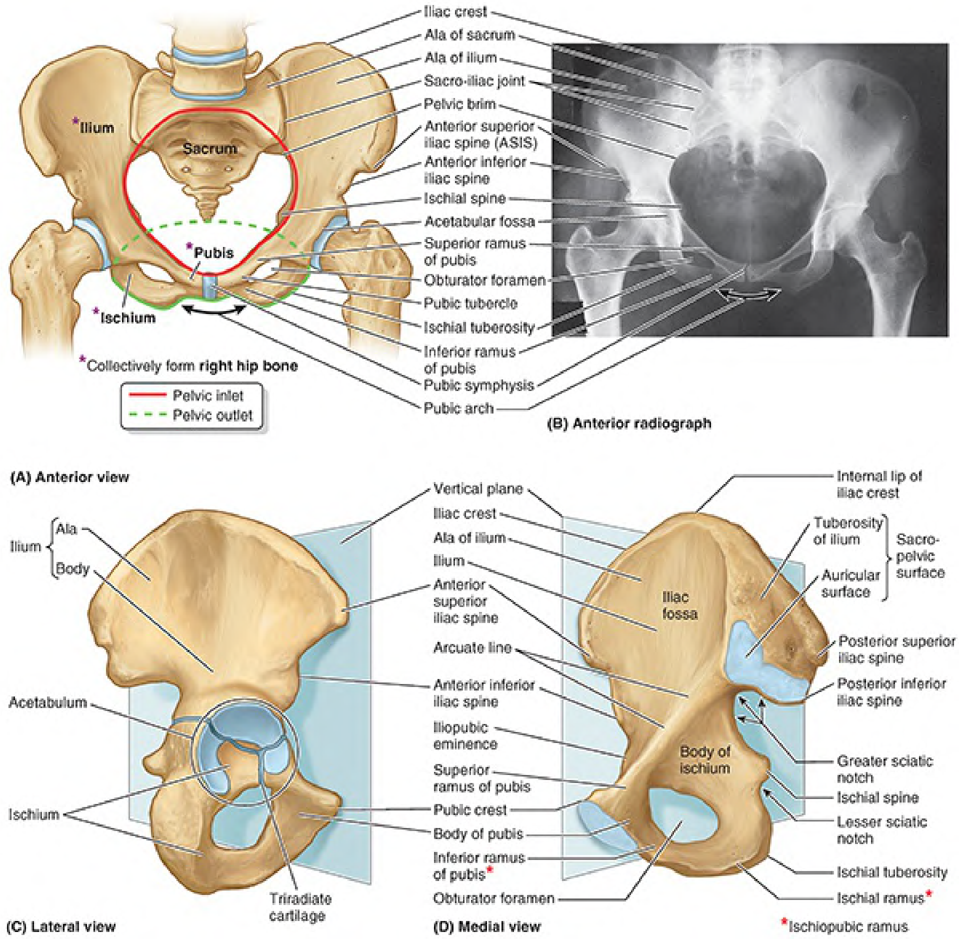


FIGURE 6.2. Pelvic girdle. A. Features of pelvic girdle. **B.** Radiograph of pelvic girdle. The pelvic girdle is formed by two hip bones (of the inferior skeleton) anteriorly and laterally and the sacrum (of the axial skeleton) posteriorly. **C.** Child's right hip bone. The hip bone is in the anatomical position when the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) and the anterior aspect of the pubis lie in the same vertical plane. The preadolescent hip bone is composed of three bones—ilium, ischium, and pubis—that meet in the cup-shaped acetabulum. Prior to their fusion, the bones are united by a triradiate cartilage along a Y-shaped line (blue). **D.** Right adult hip bone in anatomical position. The bones are fused.

The internal (medial or pelvic) aspects of the hip bones bound the pelvis, forming its lateral walls; these aspects of the bones are emphasized here. Their external aspects, primarily involved in providing attachment for the lower limb muscles, are discussed in Chapter 7, Lower Limb. As part of the vertebral column, the sacrum and coccyx are discussed in detail in Chapter 2, Back.

In infants and children, each hip bone consists of three separate bones united by a triradiate cartilage at the acetabulum, the cup-like depression in the lateral surface of the hip bone that articulates with the head of the femur (Fig. 6.2C). After puberty, the ilium, ischium, and pubis fuse to form the hip bone. The right and left hip bones are joined anteriorly at the pubic symphysis, a secondary cartilaginous joint. The hip bones articulate posteriorly with the sacrum at the sacro-iliac joints to form the pelvic girdle.

The ilium is the superior, fan-shaped part of the hip bone (Fig. 6.2B, C). The ala (wing) of the ilium represents the spread of the fan, and the body of the ilium, the handle of the fan. On its external aspect, the body participates in formation of the acetabulum. The iliac crest, the rim of the fan, has a curve that follows the contour of the ala between the anterior and posterior superior iliac spines. The anteromedial concave surface of the ala forms the iliac fossa. Posteriorly, the **sacropelvic surface of the ilium** features an **auricular surface** and an **iliac tuberosity**, for synovial and syndesmotic articulation with the sacrum, respectively.

The ischium has a body and ramus (L., branch). The body of the ischium helps form the acetabulum and the ramus of the ischium forms part of the obturator foramen. The large postero-inferior protuberance of the ischium is the ischial tuberosity. The small pointed posteromedial projection near the junction of the ramus and body is the ischial spine. The concavity between the ischial spine and the ischial tuberosity is the lesser sciatic notch. The larger concavity, the greater sciatic notch, is superior to the ischial spine and is formed in part by the ilium.

The pubis is an angulated bone with a superior ramus, which helps form the acetabulum, and an inferior ramus, which contributes to the bony borders of the obturator foramen. A thickening on the anterior part of the body of the pubis is the pubic crest, which ends laterally as a prominent swelling, the pubic tubercle. The lateral part of the superior pubic ramus has an oblique ridge, the pecten pubis (pectineal line of the pubis).

The pelvis is divided into greater (false) and lesser (true) pelves by the oblique plane of the **pelvic inlet** (superior pelvic aperture) (Figs. 6.1A and 6.2A). The bony edge (rim) surrounding and defining the pelvic inlet is the **pelvic brim**, formed by the

- promontory and ala of the sacrum (superior surface of its lateral part, adjacent to the body of the sacrum)
- a **right** and **left linea terminalis** (terminal line) together form a continuous oblique ridge consisting of the
  - **arcuate line** on the inner surface of the ilium
  - pecten pubis (pectineal line) and pubic crest, forming the superior border of the superior ramus and body of the pubis

The **pubic arch** is formed by the right and left **ischiopubic rami** (conjoined inferior rami of the pubis and ischium; Fig. 6.2A, C). These rami meet at the pubic symphysis, their inferior borders defining the **subpubic angle** (Fig. 6.3). The width of the subpubic angle is determined by the distance between the right and the left ischial tuberosities. This can be measured with the gloved fingers in the vagina during a pelvic examination.

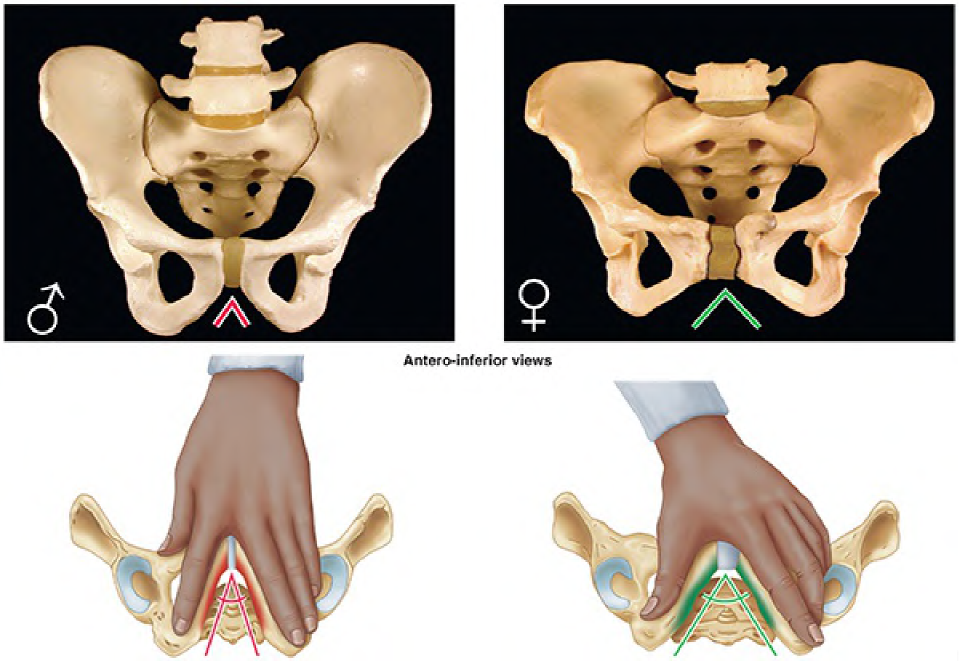


FIGURE 6.3. Pelvic girdles of male and female. Pubic arches or subpubic angles typical for each gender (male = red; female = green) can be approximated by spreading the index and middle finger (demonstrating narrow subpubic angle of male pelvis) or thumb and index finger (demonstrating wider subpubic angle of female pelvis).

The **pelvic outlet** (inferior pelvic aperture) is bounded by the (Figs. 6.1A and 6.2A)

- pubic arch anteriorly
- ischial tuberosities laterally
- inferior margin of the sacrotuberous ligament (running between the coccyx and the ischial tuberosity) posterolaterally
- tip of the coccyx posteriorly

The **greater pelvis** (false pelvis) is the part of the pelvis (Fig. 6.1)

- superior to the pelvic inlet
- bounded by the iliac alae posterolaterally and the anterosuperior aspect of the S1 vertebra posteriorly
- occupied by abdominal viscera (e.g., the ileum and sigmoid colon)

The **lesser pelvis** (true pelvis) is the part of the pelvis

- between the pelvic inlet and pelvic outlet
- bounded by the pelvic surfaces of the hip bones, sacrum, and coccyx
- that includes the true pelvic cavity and the deep parts of the perineum (perineal compartment), specifically the ischio-anal fossae (Fig. 6.1B)
- that is of major obstetrical and gynecological significance

The concave superior surface of the musculofascial pelvic diaphragm forms the floor of the true pelvic cavity, which is thus deepest centrally. The convex inferior surface of the pelvic diaphragm forms the roof of the perineum, which is therefore shallow centrally and deep

peripherally. Its lateral parts (ischio-anal fossae) extend well up into the lesser pelvis. The terms pelvis, lesser pelvis, and pelvic cavity are commonly used incorrectly, as if they were synonymous terms.

Orientation of Pelvic Girdle

When a person is in the anatomical position, the right and left anterior superior iliac spines (ASISs) and the anterior aspect of the pubic symphysis lie in the same vertical plane (Fig. 6.2B, C). When a pelvic girdle in this position is viewed anteriorly (Fig. 6.2A), the tip of the coccyx appears close to the center of the pelvic inlet, and the pubic bones and pubic symphysis constitute more of a weight-bearing floor than an anterior wall. In the median view (Fig. 6.1A), the sacral promontory is located directly superior to the center of the pelvic outlet (site of the perineal body). Consequently, the curved axis of the pelvis intersects the axis of the abdominal cavity at an oblique angle.

Pelvic Girdle Sexual Differences

Distinction between male and female skeletons is most evident in the pelvic girdle. The pelvic girdles of males and females differ in several respects (Fig. 6.3; Table 6.1). These sexual differences are related mainly to the heavier build and larger muscles of most men and to the adaptation of the pelvis (particularly the lesser pelvis) in women for parturition (childbearing). Sexual differences appear during gestation regarding the pubic arch. Greater volume of the pelvic cavity and greater dimensions of the girdle in males appear during infancy, with the greatest distinctions developing following puberty. See the Clinical Box "Variations in Male and Female Pelves" in this chapter. Changes in pelvic shape continue throughout life (see Huseynov et al., 2016, which provides animations of male and female lifetime changes).

TABLE 6.1. COMPARISON OF MALE AND FEMALE BONY PELVES

Bony Pelvis	Male (♂)	Female (♀)
General structure	Thick and heavy	Thin and light
Greater pelvis (false pelvis)	Deep	Shallow
Lesser pelvis (true pelvis)	Narrow and deep, tapering	Wide and shallow, cylindrical
Pelvic inlet (superior pelvic aperture)	Heart-shaped, narrow	Oval and rounded; wide
Pelvic outlet (inferior pelvic aperture)	Comparatively small	Comparatively large
Pubic arch and subpubic angle	Narrow (<70°)	Wide (>80°)
Obturator foramen	Round	Oval
Acetabulum	Large	Small
Greater sciatic notch	Narrow (~70°); inverted V	Almost 90°

Joints and Ligaments of Pelvic Girdle

The primary joints of the pelvic girdle are the sacro-iliac joints and the pubic symphysis (Fig. 6.4A). The sacro-iliac joints link the **axial skeleton** (skeleton of the trunk, composed of the vertebral column at this level) and the **inferior appendicular skeleton** (skeleton of the lower limb). The lumbosacral and sacrococcygeal joints, although joints of the axial skeleton, are directly related to the pelvic girdle. Strong ligaments support and strengthen these joints.

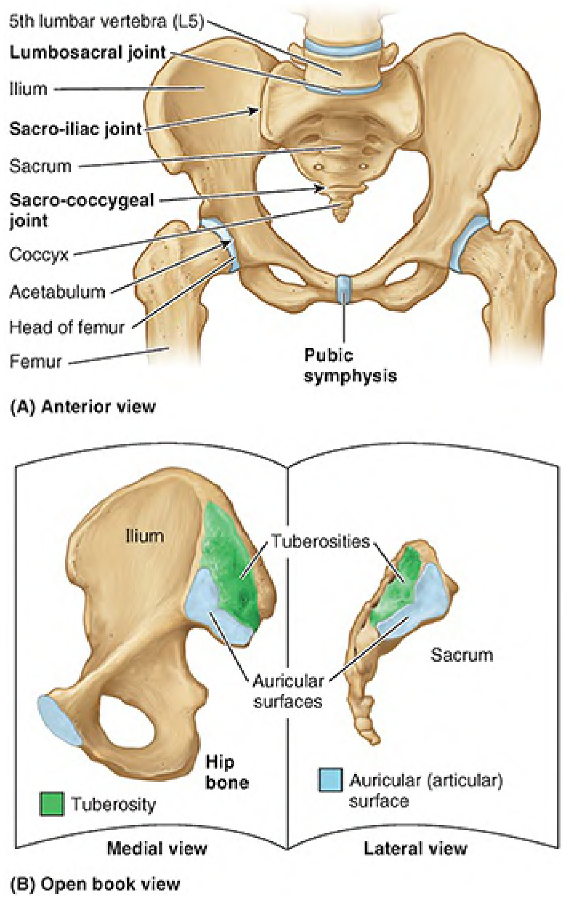


FIGURE 6.4. Joints of pelvic girdle. A. Overview. The sacro-iliac joints unite the axial and inferior appendicular skeletons. The lumbosacral and sacrococcygeal joints are joints of the axial skeleton directly related to the pelvic girdle. **B.** Open book view of articulating surfaces of sacro-iliac joint.

SACRO-ILIAC JOINTS

The **sacro-iliac joints** are strong, weight-bearing compound joints, consisting of an anterior synovial joint (between the ear-shaped auricular surfaces of the sacrum and ilium, covered with articular cartilage) and a posterior syndesmosis (a fibrous joint between the tuberosities of these bones) (Fig. 6.4B). The auricular surfaces of the synovial joint have irregular but congruent elevations and depressions that interlock (Fig. 6.5A–C). The sacro-iliac joints differ from most synovial joints in that only very limited mobility is allowed, a necessary consequence of their role in transmitting the weight of most of the body to the hip bones.

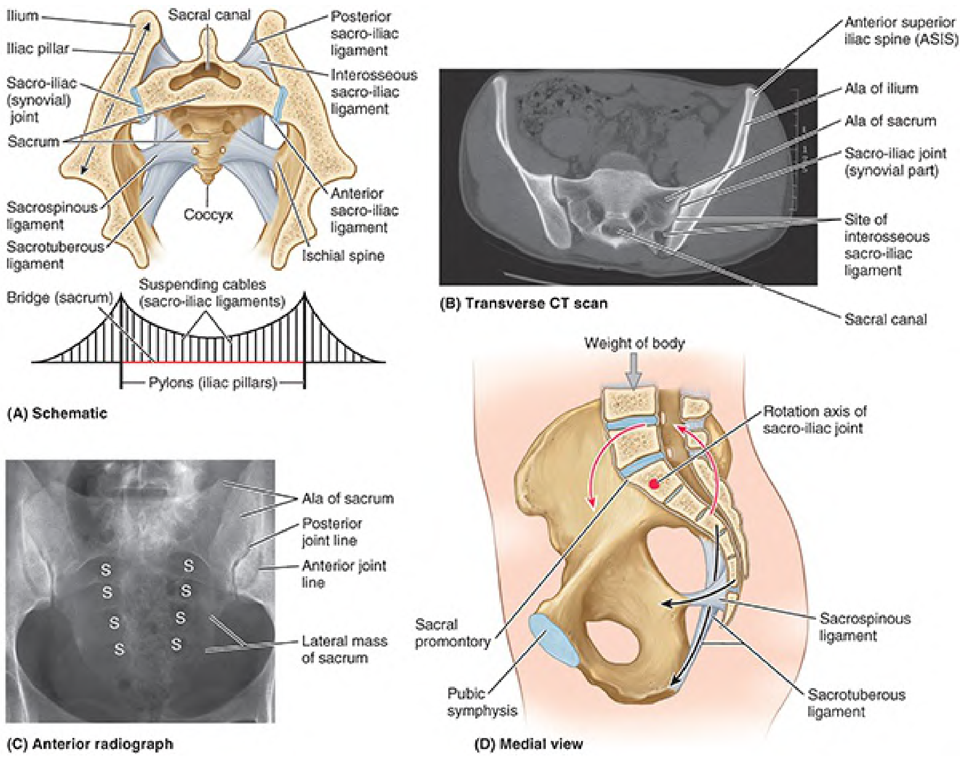


FIGURE 6.5. Sacro-iliac joints and pubic symphysis with associated ligaments. A. Transfer of weight from sacrum to ilia. Strong interosseous sacro-iliac ligaments lie deep (antero-inferior) to the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments consisting of shorter fibers connecting the tuberosity of the sacrum to the tuberosity of the ilium. The sacrum is suspended from the ilia (left and right ilium) like the central portion of a suspension bridge suspended from the pylons at each end. **B.** CT scan of synovial and syndesmotic portions of sacro-iliac joint. **C.** Radiographic appearance of sacro-iliac joints. Because the articulating surfaces are irregular and slightly oblique, the anterior and posterior parts of the joint appear separately. S, sacral foramina. **D.** Transfer of weight to sacrum. Body weight is transmitted to the sacrum anterior to the axis of rotation at the sacro-iliac joint. The tendency for increased weight or force to rotate the upper sacrum anteriorly and inferiorly is resisted by the strong sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments anchoring the inferior sacrum and coccyx to the ischium.

Weight is transferred from the axial skeleton to the ilia (plural of ilium) via sacro-iliac ligaments (Fig. 6.4A), then to the femurs during standing, and to the ischial tuberosities during sitting. As long as tight apposition is maintained between the articular surfaces, the sacro-iliac joints remain stable. Unlike a keystone at the top of an arch, the sacrum is actually suspended between the iliac bones and is firmly attached to them by posterior and interosseous sacro-iliac ligaments (Fig. 6.5A).

The thin **anterior sacro-iliac ligaments** are merely the anterior part of the fibrous capsule of the synovial part of the joint (Figs. 6.5A and 6.6). The abundant **interosseous sacro-iliac ligaments** (lying deep between the tuberosities of the sacrum and ilium and occupying an area of approximately 10 cm^2) are the primary structures involved in transferring the weight of the upper body from the axial skeleton to the two ilia of the appendicular skeleton (Fig. 6.5A).

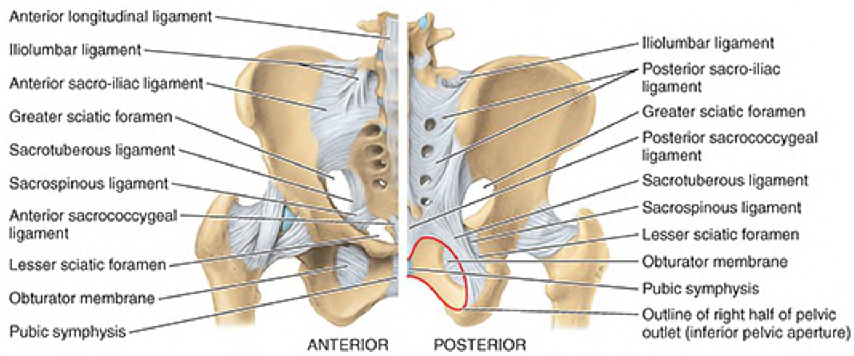


FIGURE 6.6. Ligaments of pelvic girdle. The ligaments of hip joint (shown but not labeled) are identified in Chapter 7, Lower Limb.

The **posterior sacro-iliac ligaments** are the posterior external continuation of the same mass of fibrous tissue (Figs. 6.5A and 6.6). Because the fibers of the interosseous and posterior sacro-iliac ligaments run obliquely upward and outward from the sacrum, the axial weight pushing down on the sacrum actually pulls the ilia inward (medially) so that they compress the sacrum between them, locking the irregular but congruent surfaces of the sacro-iliac joints together. The iliolumbar ligaments are accessory ligaments to this mechanism (Fig. 6.6).

Inferiorly, the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments are joined by fibers extending from the posterior margin of the ilium (between the posterior superior and posterior inferior iliac spines) and the base of the coccyx to form the massive sacrotuberous ligament (Fig. 6.6). This ligament passes from the posterior ilium and lateral sacrum and coccyx to the ischial tuberosity, transforming the sciatic notch of the hip bone into a large sciatic foramen. The sacrospinous ligament, passing from the lateral sacrum and coccyx to the ischial spine, further subdivides this foramen into greater and lesser sciatic foramina.

Usually, movement at the sacro-iliac joint is limited by interlocking of the articulating bones and the sacro-iliac ligaments to slight gliding and rotary movements (Fig. 6.5D). When landing after a high jump or when weight lifting in the standing position, exceptional force is transmitted through the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae to the superior end of the sacrum. Because this transfer of weight occurs anterior to the axis of the sacro-iliac joints, the superior end of the sacrum is pushed inferiorly and anteriorly. However, rotation of the superior sacrum is counterbalanced by the strong sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments, which anchor the inferior end of the sacrum to the ischium, preventing its superior and posterior rotation (Figs. 6.5D and 6.6). By allowing only slight upward movement of the inferior end of the sacrum relative to the hip bones, resilience is provided to the sacro-iliac region when the vertebral column sustains sudden increases in force or weight.

PUBIC SYMPHYSIS

The **pubic symphysis** consists of a fibrocartilaginous interpubic disc and surrounding ligaments uniting the bodies of the pubic bones in the median plane (Fig. 6.7). The **interpubic disc** is generally wider in women. The ligaments joining the bones are thickened at the superior and inferior margins of the symphysis, forming superior and inferior pubic ligaments. The **superior**

pubic ligament connects the superior aspects of the pubic bodies and interpubic disc, extending as far laterally as the pubic tubercles. The **inferior** (arcuate) **pubic ligament** is a thick arch of fibers that connects the inferior aspects of the joint components, rounding off the subpubic angle as it forms the apex of the pubic arch (Fig. 6.3). The decussating fibers of the tendinous attachments of the rectus abdominis and external oblique muscles also strengthen the pubic symphysis anteriorly (see Chapter 5, Abdomen).

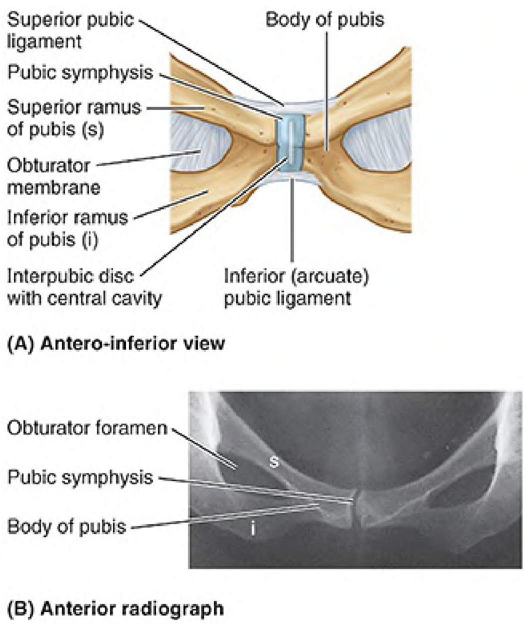


FIGURE 6.7. **Pubic bones and pubic symphysis. A.** Pubic symphysis. The pubic symphysis is a secondary cartilaginous joint between the bodies of the pubic bones. **B.** Radiographic appearance of pubic symphysis in anatomical position. The bodies of the pubic bones are nearly horizontal, and the joint appears foreshortened in this position.

LUMBOSACRAL JOINTS

L5 and S1 vertebrae articulate at the anterior intervertebral (IV) joint formed by the L5/S1 IV disc between their bodies (Fig. 6.4A) and at two posterior zygapophysial joints (facet joints) between the articular processes of these vertebrae (Fig. 6.1). The facets on the S1 vertebra face posteromedially, interlocking with the anterolaterally facing inferior articular facets of the L5 vertebra, preventing the lumbar vertebra from sliding anteriorly down the incline of the sacrum. These joints are further strengthened by fan-like **iliolumbar ligaments** radiating from the transverse processes of the L5 vertebra to the ilia (Fig. 6.6).

SACROCOCCYGEAL JOINT

The **sacrococcygeal joint** is a secondary cartilaginous joint (Fig. 6.4A) with an IV disc. Fibrocartilage and ligaments join the apex of the sacrum to the base of the coccyx. The **anterior** and **posterior sacrococcygeal ligaments** are long strands that reinforce the joint (Fig. 6.6).

CLINICAL

BOX

PELVIC GIRDLE

Variations in Male and Female Pelves

Although anatomical differences between male and female pelves are usually distinct, the pelvis of any person may have some features of the opposite sex. The pelvic types shown in Figure B6.1A and C are most common in males, B and A in white females, and B and C in black females, whereas D is uncommon in both sexes. The **gynecoid pelvis** is the normal female type (Fig. B6.1B); its pelvic inlet typically has a rounded oval shape and a wide transverse diameter. A **platypelloid** or markedly **android** (masculine or funnel-shaped) **pelvis** in a woman may present hazards to successful vaginal delivery of a fetus (Fig. B6.1A).

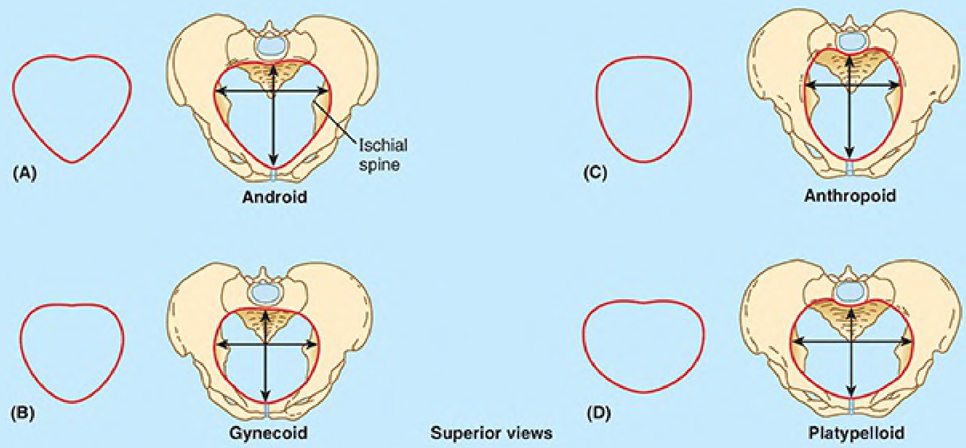


FIGURE B6.1. Variations in shape of pelvic inlet.

In forensic medicine (the application of medical and anatomical knowledge for the purposes of law), identification of human skeletal remains usually involves the diagnosis of sex. A prime focus of attention is the pelvic girdle because sexual differences usually are clearly visible. Even fragments of the pelvic girdle are useful in determining sex.

Pelvic Diameters (Conjugates)

The size of the lesser pelvis is particularly important in obstetrics because it is the bony canal through which the fetus passes during normal childbirth. To determine the capacity of the female pelvis for childbearing, the diameters of the lesser pelvis are noted radiographically or manually during a pelvic examination. The minimum anteroposterior (AP) diameter of the lesser pelvis, the **true** (obstetrical) **conjugate** from the middle of the sacral promontory to the posterosuperior margin (closest point) of the pubic symphysis (Fig. B6.2A, B), is the narrowest fixed distance through which the baby's head must pass in a vaginal delivery. However, this distance cannot be measured directly during

a pelvic examination because of the presence of the bladder. Consequently, the **diagonal conjugate** (Fig. B6.2B) is measured by palpating the sacral promontory with the tip of the middle finger, using the other hand to mark the level of the inferior margin of the pubic symphysis on the examining hand (Fig. B6.2C). After the examining hand is withdrawn, the distance between the tip of the index finger (1.5 cm shorter than the middle finger) and the marked level of the pubic symphysis is measured to estimate the true conjugate, which should be 11.0 cm or greater.

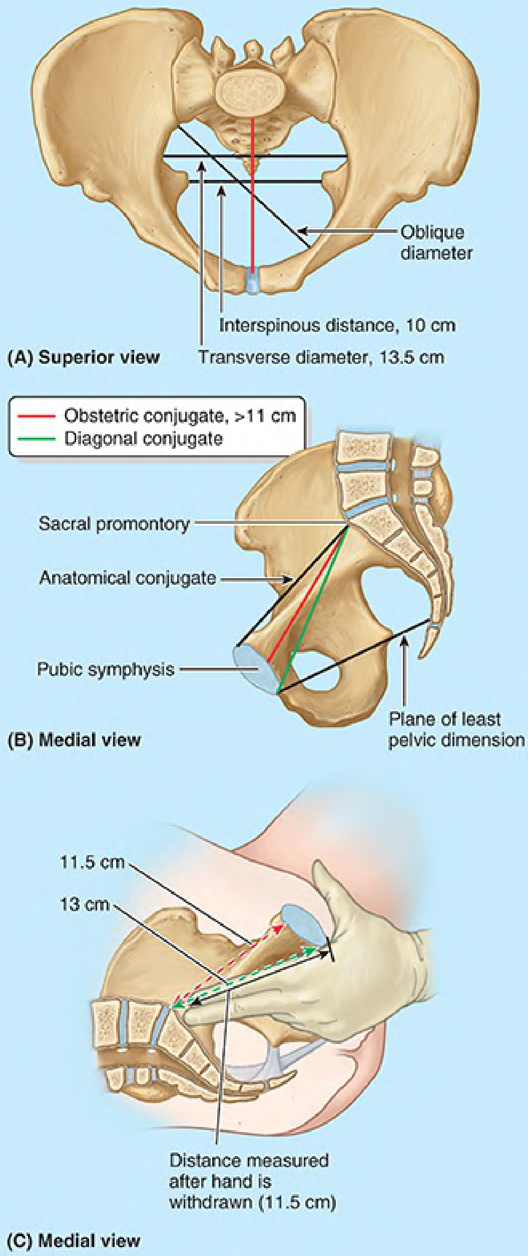


FIGURE B6.2. **Pelvic dimensions.**

In all pelvic girdles, the ischial spines extend toward each other, and the **interspinous distance** between them is normally the narrowest part of the **pelvic canal** (the passageway

through the pelvic inlet, lesser pelvis, and pelvic outlet) through which a baby's head must pass at birth (Fig. B6.2B), but it is not a fixed distance (see the Clinical Box "Relaxation of Pelvic Ligaments and Increased Joint Mobility in Late Pregnancy" below). During a pelvic examination, if the ischial tuberosities are far enough apart to permit three fingers to enter the vagina side by side, the subpubic angle is considered sufficiently wide to permit passage of an average fetal head at full term.

Pelvic Fractures

Anteroposterior compression of the pelvis occurs during crush accidents (e.g., when a heavy object falls on the pelvis; Fig. B6.3A). This type of trauma commonly produces fractures of the pubic rami. When the pelvis is compressed laterally, the acetabula and ilia are squeezed toward each other and may be broken.

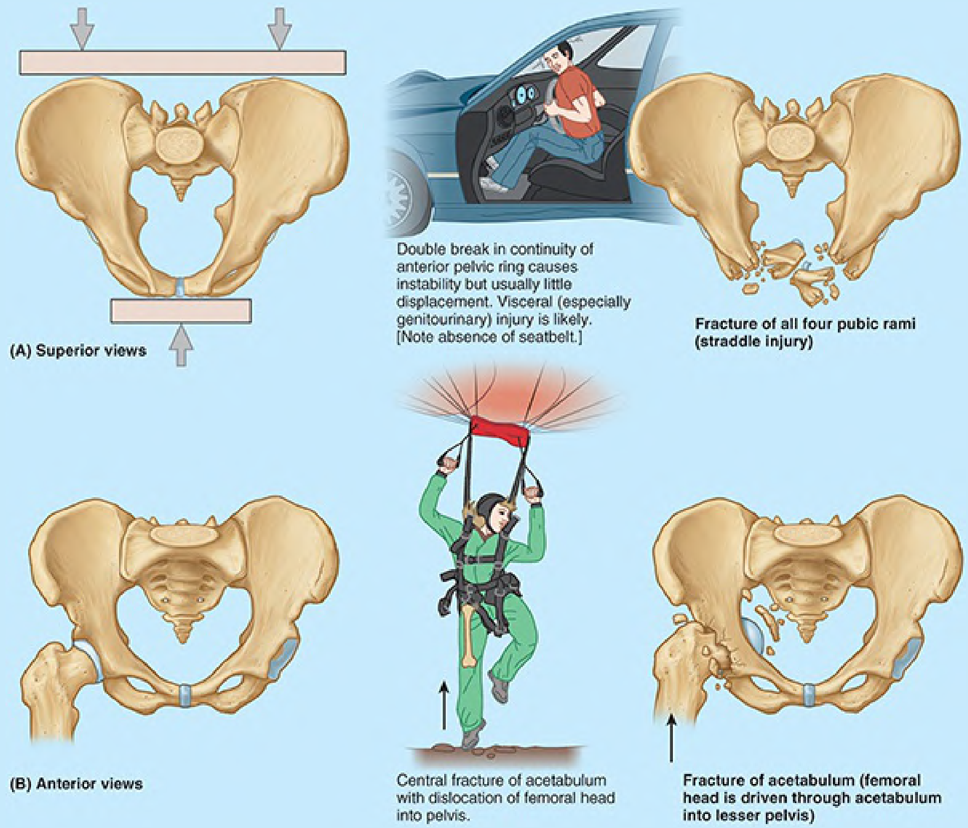


FIGURE B6.3. Pelvic fractures.

Fractures of the bony pelvic ring are almost always multiple fractures or a fracture combined with a joint dislocation. To illustrate this, try breaking a pretzel ring at just one point. Some pelvic fractures result from the tearing away of bone by the strong ligaments associated with the sacro-iliac joints. (These ligaments are shown in Figs. 6.3 and 6.4A.)

Pelvic fractures can result from direct trauma to the pelvic bones, such as occurs during an automobile accident (Fig. B6.3A). They may also be caused by forces transmitted to the

pelvic bones from the lower limbs during falls on the feet (Fig. B6.3B). Weak areas of the pelvis, where fractures often occur, are the pubic rami, the acetabula (or the area immediately surrounding them), the region of the sacro-iliac joints, and the alae of the ilium.

Pelvic fractures may cause injury to pelvic soft tissues, blood vessels, nerves, and organs. Fractures in the pubo-obturator area are relatively common and are often complicated because of their relationship to the urinary bladder and urethra, which may be ruptured or torn.

Falls on the feet or buttocks from a high ladder may drive the head of the femur through the acetabulum into the pelvic cavity, injuring pelvic viscera, nerves, and vessels. In persons younger than 17 years of age, the acetabulum may fracture through the triradiate cartilage into its three developmental parts (see Fig. 6.2C) or the bony acetabular margins may be torn away.

Relaxation of Pelvic Ligaments and Increased Joint Mobility in Late Pregnancy

The larger cavity of the interpubic disc in females (see Fig. 6.3) increases in size during pregnancy. This change increases the circumference of the lesser pelvis and contributes to increased flexibility of the pubic symphysis. Increased levels of sex hormones and the presence of the hormone relaxin cause the pelvic ligaments to relax during the latter half of pregnancy, allowing increased movement at the pelvic joints. Relaxation of the sacro-iliac joints and pubic symphysis permits as much as a 10–15% increase in diameters (mostly transverse, including the interspinous distance; Fig. B6.2A), facilitating passage of the fetus through the pelvic canal. The coccyx is also able to move posteriorly.

The one diameter that remains unaffected is the true (obstetrical) diameter between the sacral promontory and the posterosuperior aspect of the pubic symphysis (Fig. B6.2A, B). Relaxation of sacro-iliac ligaments causes the interlocking mechanism of the sacro-iliac joint to become less effective, permitting greater rotation of the pelvis and contributing to the lordotic (hollow back, saddle back) posture often assumed during pregnancy with the change in the center of gravity. Relaxation of ligaments is not limited to the pelvis, and the possibility of joint dislocation increases during late pregnancy.

Spondylolysis and Spondylolisthesis

Spondylolysis is a defect allowing part of a vertebral arch (the posterior projection from the vertebral body that surrounds the spinal canal and bears the articular, transverse, and spinal processes) to be separated from its body. Spondylolysis of vertebra L5 results in the separation of the vertebral body from the part of its vertebral arch bearing the inferior articular processes (Fig. B6.4A). The inferior articular processes of L5

normally interlock with the articular processes of the sacrum. When the defect is bilateral, the body of the L5 vertebrae may slide anteriorly on the sacrum (spondylolisthesis) so that it overlaps the sacral promontory (Fig. B6.4B, C). The intrusion of the L5 body into the pelvic inlet reduces the AP diameter of the pelvic inlet, which may interfere with parturition (childbirth). It may also compress spinal nerves, causing low back or lower limb pain.

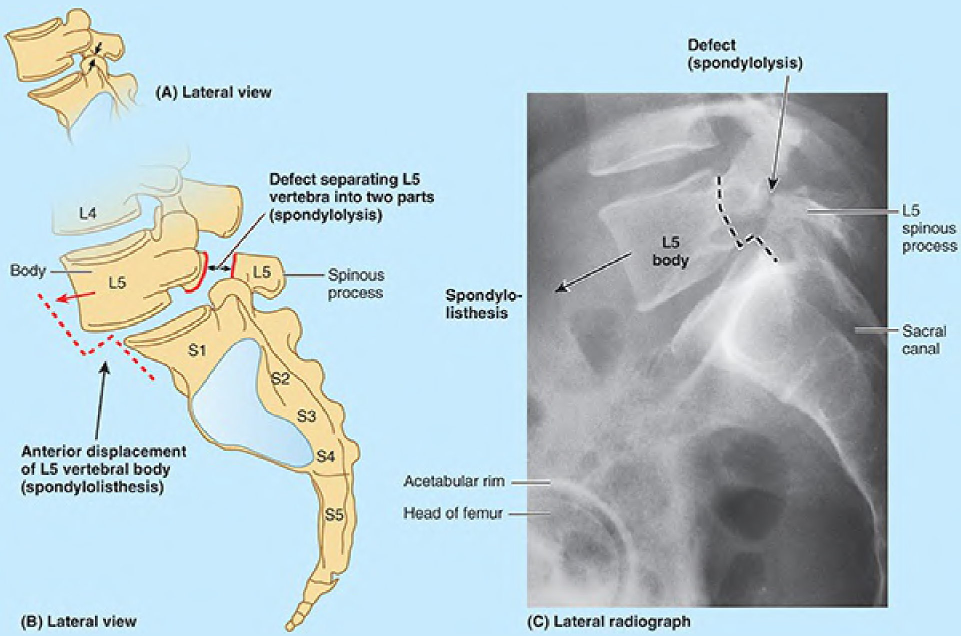


FIGURE B6.4. Spondylolysis and spondylolisthesis. A. Normal L5 vertebra with intact articular processes. **B.** Schematic. **C.** Radiograph. The dashed line follows the posterior vertebral margins of L5 and the sacrum.

Obstetricians test for spondylolisthesis by running their fingers along the lumbar spinous processes. An abnormally prominent L5 process indicates that the anterior part of L5 vertebra and the vertebral column superior to it may have moved anteriorly relative to the sacrum and the vertebral arch of L5. Medical images, such as sagittal magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), are taken to confirm the diagnosis and to measure the AP diameter of the pelvic inlet.

The Bottom Line: Pelvis and Pelvic Girdle

Pelvis: The pelvis is the space enclosed by the pelvic girdle, which is subdivided into the greater pelvis (the inferior part of the abdominal cavity, which receives the protection of the alae of the ilia) and the lesser pelvis (the space inside the bony ring of the pelvis inferior to the pelvic brim). ■ The lesser pelvis provides the skeletal framework for both the pelvic cavity and the perineum, which are separated by the musculofascial pelvic diaphragm. ■ The term perineum refers both to the region that includes the anus and

external genitalia and to a shallow compartment deep to that area. ■ The inferior anterolateral abdominal wall, gluteal region, and perineum overlap the pelvis.

Pelvic girdle: The pelvic girdle is an articulated bony ring composed of the sacrum and two hip bones. Whereas the pelvic girdle is part of the appendicular skeleton of the lower limb, the sacrum is also part of the axial skeleton, continuous with the lumbar vertebrae superiorly and coccyx inferiorly. ■ The hip bones are formed by the fusion of the ilium, ischium, and pubis. ■ The primary functions of the pelvic girdle are bearing and transfer of weight; secondary functions include protection and support of abdominopelvic viscera and housing and attachment for structures of the genital and urinary systems. ■ The pelvic girdle is in the anatomical position when its three anteriormost points (right and left ASISs and anterior aspect of pubic symphysis) lie in the same vertical plane. ■ Male and female pelves are distinct. The characteristic features of the normal (gynecoid) female pelvis reflect the fact that the fetus must traverse the pelvic canal during childbirth. ■ Because atypical female pelves may not be conducive to a vaginal birth, determination of the pelvic diameters is of clinical importance.

Joints of pelvis: The sacro-iliac joints are specialized compound synovial and syndesmotic joints, the structures of which reflect both the primary (weight bearing/weight transfer and stability) and the secondary (parturition) functions of the pelvis. ■ Strong interosseous and posterior sacro-iliac ligaments suspend the sacrum between the ilia, transferring weight and stabilizing the bony ring of the pelvis. ■ The synovial joints allow slight but significant movement during childbirth, when the pubic symphysis and the ligaments are softened by hormones. ■ To counterbalance the weight of the upper body and additional forces generated by activities, such as jumping and load bearing, which are received by the superior sacrum anterior to the rotatory axis of the sacro-iliac joints, the inferior end of the sacrum is anchored to the ischium by the substantial sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments.

PELVIC CAVITY

The abdominopelvic cavity extends superiorly into the thoracic cage and inferiorly into the pelvis, so that its superior and inferior parts are relatively protected (Fig. 6.8A). Perforating wounds in either the thorax or pelvis may therefore involve the abdominopelvic cavity and its contents.

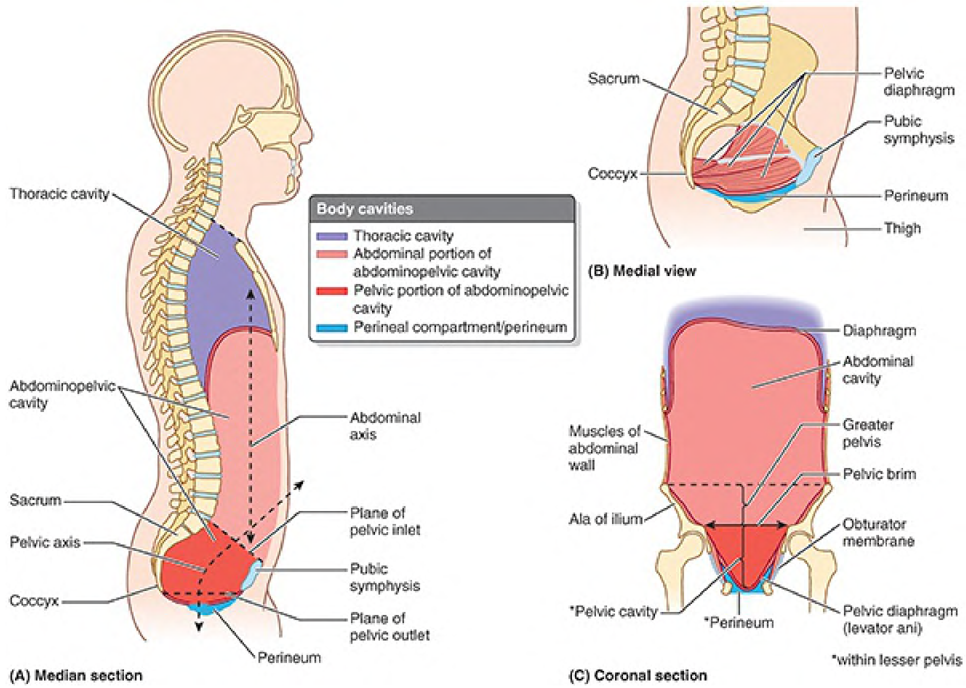


FIGURE 6.8. Thoracic and abdominopelvic cavities. A. Overview. Although the greater pelvis and pelvic cavity are actually continuous, they are demarcated by the plane of the pelvic inlet (defined by the pelvic brim). **B.** Pelvic diaphragm separating lesser pelvis and perineum. **C.** Abdominopelvic cavity.

The funnel-shaped **pelvic cavity**—the space bounded peripherally by the bony, ligamentous, muscular pelvic walls and floor—is the inferoposterior part of the abdominopelvic cavity. The pelvic cavity is continuous with the abdominal cavity at the pelvic inlet but angulated posteriorly from it (Fig. 6.8A, C). Although continuous, the abdominal and pelvic cavities are described separately for descriptive purposes, facilitating the regional approach.

The pelvic cavity contains the terminal parts of the ureters, the urinary bladder, rectum, pelvic genital organs, blood vessels, lymphatics, and nerves. In addition to these distinctly pelvic viscera, it also contains what might be considered an overflow of abdominal viscera: loops of the small intestine (mainly ileum) and, frequently, large intestine (appendix and transverse and/or sigmoid colon).

The pelvic cavity is limited inferiorly by the musculofascial pelvic diaphragm, which is suspended above (but descends centrally to the level of) the pelvic outlet, forming a bowl-like pelvic floor. The pelvic cavity is bounded posteriorly by the coccyx and inferiormost sacrum, with the superior part of the sacrum forming a roof over the posterior half of the cavity (Fig. 6.8A, B).

The bodies of the pubic bones, and the pubic symphysis uniting them, form an antero-inferior wall that is much shallower (shorter) than the posterosuperior wall and ceiling formed by the sacrum and coccyx. Consequently, the **axis of the pelvis** (a line in the median plane defined by the center point of the pelvic cavity at every level) is curved, pivoting around the pubic symphysis (Fig. 6.8A). The curving form of the pelvic axis and the disparity in depth between the anterior and posterior walls of the cavity are important factors in the mechanism of fetal passage through the pelvic canal.

Walls and Floor of Pelvic Cavity

The pelvic cavity has an antero-inferior wall, two lateral walls, a posterior wall, and a floor (Fig. 6.9A). The muscles forming the walls and floor of the pelvic cavity are demonstrated in Figure 6.10. The proximal and distal attachments, innervation, and main actions of the muscles are described in Table 6.2.

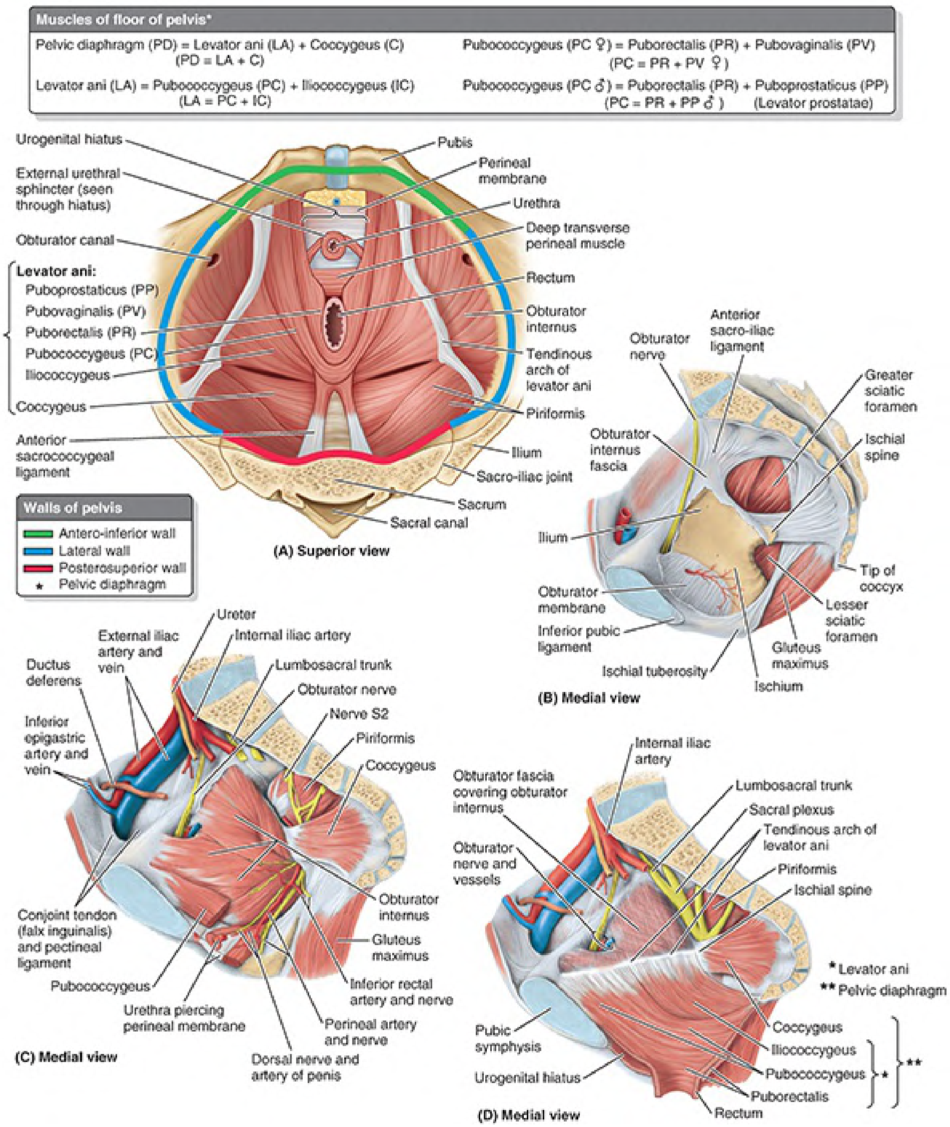


FIGURE 6.9. Floor and walls of pelvis. A. Floor of pelvis. The pelvic floor is formed by the pelvic diaphragm, encircled by and suspended in part from the pubic symphysis and pubic bones anteriorly, the ilia laterally, and the sacrum and coccyx posteriorly. **B–D.** Serial reconstruction of parietal structures of right hemipelvis. **B.** Osseoligamentous wall. Posterolaterally, the coccyx and inferior part of the sacrum are attached to the ischial tuberosity by the sacrotuberous ligament and to the ischial spine by the sacrospinous ligament. The obturator membrane, composed of strong interlacing fibers, fills the obturator foramen. **C.** Muscular wall. Muscles of the lesser pelvis are added to part **B**. The obturator internus pads the lateral wall of the pelvis, its fibers converging to escape posteriorly through the lesser sciatic foramen (see part **B**). **D.** Muscular floor. Levator ani is added to part **C**. It is suspended from a thickening in the obturator fascia (the tendinous arch), which extends from the pubic body to the ischial spine.

TABLE 6.2. MUSCLES OF PELVIC WALLS AND FLOOR

Boundary	Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation	Main Action
Lateral wall	**Obturator internus**	Pelvic surfaces of the ilium and ischium; obturator membrane	Greater trochanter of the femur	Nerve to obturator internus (L5, S1, S2)	Rotates the hip joint laterally; assists in holding the head of the femur in acetabulum
Posterosuperior wall	**Piriformis**	Pelvic surface of S2–S4 segments; superior margin of greater sciatic notch and sacrotuberous ligament	Greater trochanter of the femur	Anterior rami of S1 and S2	Rotates the hip joint laterally and abducts it; assists in holding the head of the femur in acetabulum
Floor	**Coccygeus** (ischiococcygeus)	Ischial spine	Inferior end of the sacrum and coccyx	Branches of S4 and S5 spinal nerves	Forms small part of pelvic diaphragm that supports pelvic viscera; flexes coccyx
	Levator ani (puborectalis, pubococcygeus, and iliococcygeus)	Body of pubis; tendinous arch of obturator fascia; ischial spine	Perineal body; coccyx; anococcygeal ligament; walls of the prostate or vagina, rectum, and anal canal	Nerve to levator ani (branches of S4), inferior anal (rectal) nerve, and coccygeal plexus	Forms most of pelvic diaphragm that helps support pelvic viscera and resists increases in intra-abdominal pressure

ANTERO-INFERIOR PELVIC WALL

The antero-inferior pelvic wall (more of a weight-bearing floor than an anterior wall in the anatomical position) is formed primarily by the bodies and rami of the pubic bones and the pubic symphysis (Figs. 6.7 and 6.9B–D). It participates in bearing the weight of the urinary bladder.

LATERAL PELVIC WALLS

The lateral pelvic walls are formed by the right and left hip bones, each of which includes an obturator foramen closed by an **obturator membrane** (Figs. 6.8C and 6.9B). The fleshy attachments of the obturator internus muscles cover and thus pad most of the lateral pelvic walls (Figs. 6.9C and 6.10A). The fleshy fibers of each obturator internus muscles converge posteriorly, become tendinous, and turn sharply laterally to pass from the lesser pelvis through the lesser sciatic foramen to attach to the greater trochanter of the femur. The medial surfaces of these muscles are covered by **obturator fascia**, thickened centrally as a tendinous arch that provides attachment for the pelvic diaphragm (Fig. 6.9D).

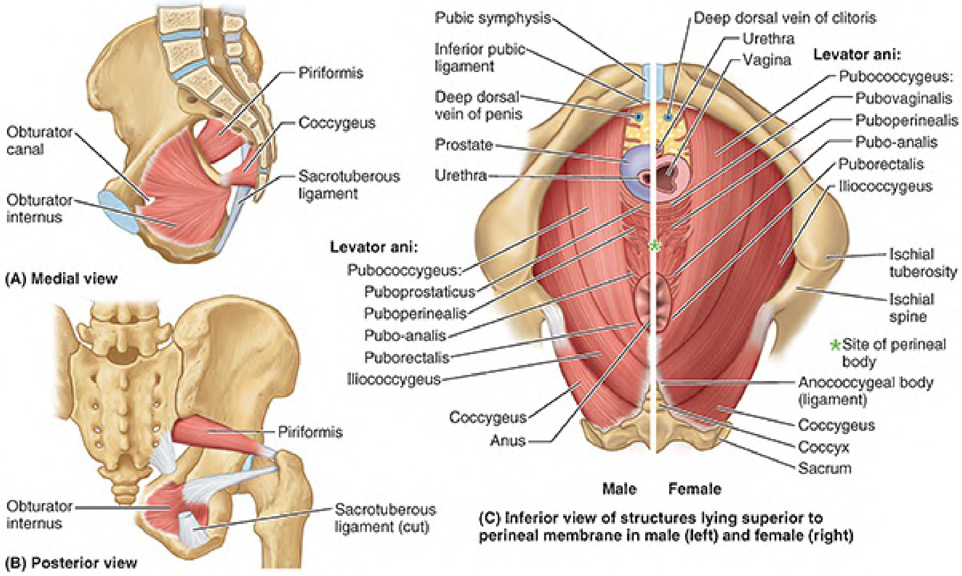


FIGURE 6.10. Muscles of pelvic walls and floor. A and B. Pelvic walls. The obturator internus and piriformis are muscles that act on the lower limb but are also components of the pelvic walls. **C.** Pelvic floor. The muscles of the levator ani and the coccygeus comprise the pelvic diaphragm that forms the floor of the pelvic cavity. The fascia covering the inferior surface of the pelvic diaphragm forms the "roof" of the perineum.

POSTERIOR WALL (POSTEROLATERAL WALL AND ROOF)

In the anatomical position, the posterior pelvic wall consists of a bony wall and roof in the midline (formed by the sacrum and coccyx) and musculoligamentous posterolateral walls, formed by ligaments associated with the sacro-iliac joints and piriformis muscles (Fig. 6.9A–C). The ligaments include the anterior sacro-iliac, sacrospinous, and sacrotuberous ligaments.

The piriformis muscles arise from the superior sacrum, lateral to its pelvic foramina (Figs. 6.9A and 6.10A). The muscles pass laterally, leaving the lesser pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen to attach to the superior border of the greater trochanter of the femur (Fig. 6.10B). The piriformis muscles occupy much of the greater sciatic foramen, forming the posterolateral walls of the pelvic cavity (Fig. 6.9A). Immediately deep (anteromedial) to these muscles (often embedded in the fleshy fibers) are the nerves of the sacral plexus (Fig. 6.9D). A gap at the inferior border of each piriformis muscle allows passage of neurovascular structures between the pelvis and the perineum and lower limb (gluteal region).

PELVIC FLOOR

The pelvic floor is formed by the bowl- or funnel-shaped **pelvic diaphragm**, which consists of the coccygeus and levator ani muscles and the fascias (L. fasciae) covering the superior and inferior aspects of these muscles (Figs. 6.9A, 6.10C, and 6.11; Table 6.2). The pelvic diaphragm lies within the lesser pelvis, separating the pelvic cavity from the perineum, for which it forms the roof.

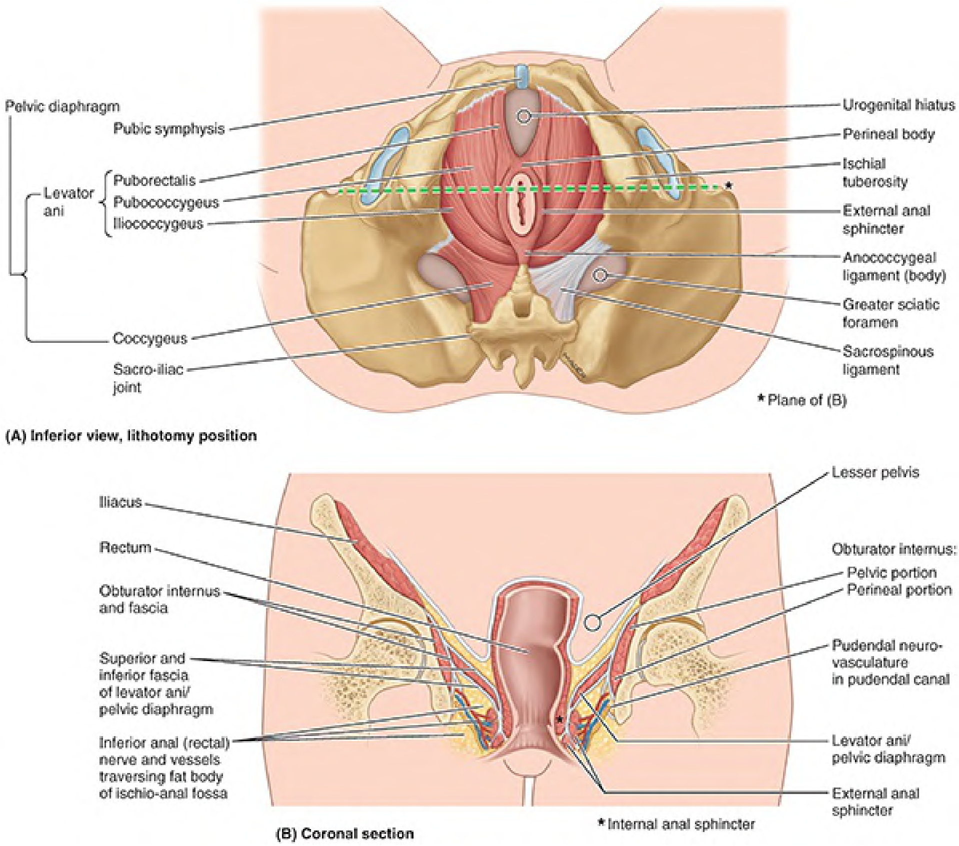


FIGURE 6.11. Pelvic diaphragm. A. Components of pelvic diaphragm. **B.** Schematic coronal section of anorectum. The basin-like nature for which the pelvis was named is evident in this coronal section. The fat-filled ischio-anal fossae of the perineum also lie within the bony ring of the lesser pelvis.

The attachment of the diaphragm to the overlying obturator fascia divides the obturator internus muscles into a superior pelvic portion and an inferior perineal portion (Fig. 6.11B). Medial to the pelvic portions of the obturator internus muscles are the obturator nerves and vessels and other branches of the internal iliac vessels.

The **coccygeus muscles** arise from the lateral aspects of the inferior sacrum and coccyx, their fleshy fibers lying on and attaching to the deep surface of the sacrospinous ligament (Fig. 6.9B, C). The **levator ani** (a broad muscular sheet) is the larger and more important part of the pelvic floor. It is attached to the bodies of the pubic bones anteriorly, the ischial spines posteriorly, and a thickening in the obturator fascia (the **tendinous arch of the levator ani**) between the two bony sites on each side.

The pelvic diaphragm thus stretches between the anterior, lateral, and posterior walls of the lesser pelvis, giving it the appearance of a hammock suspended from these attachments, closing much of the ring of the pelvic girdle. An anterior gap between the medial borders of the levator ani muscles of each side—the **urogenital hiatus**—gives passage to the urethra and, in females, the vagina (Fig. 6.10A).

The levator ani consists of three parts, often poorly demarcated but designated according to attachments and fiber course (Figs. 6.9A, D; 6.10C; and 6.11):

- **Puborectalis:** the thicker, narrower, medial part of the levator ani, consisting of muscle fibers that are continuous between the posterior aspects of the bodies of the right and left pubic bones. It forms a U-shaped muscular sling (puborectal sling) that passes posterior to the anorectal junction (Figs. 6.11A and 6.12), bounding the urogenital hiatus. This part plays a major role in maintaining fecal continence.
- **Pubococcygeus:** the wider but thinner intermediate part of the levator ani, which arises lateral to the puborectalis from the posterior aspect of the body of the pubis and anterior tendinous arch (Figs. 6.9A, D; 6.10C; and 6.11). It passes posteriorly in a nearly horizontal plane; its lateral fibers attach to the coccyx and its medial fibers merge with those of the contralateral muscle to form a fibrous raphe or tendinous plate, part of the **anococcygeal body** or ligament between the anus and coccyx (often referred to clinically as the "levator plate"). Shorter muscular slips of pubococcygeus extend medially and blend with the fascia around midline structures and are named for the structure near their termination: pubovaginalis (females), puboprostaticus (males), puboperinealis, and pubo-analis.
- **Iliococcygeus:** the posterolateral part of the levator ani, which arises from the posterior tendinous arch and ischial spine. It is thin and often poorly developed (appearing more aponeurotic than muscular) and also blends with the anococcygeal body posteriorly.

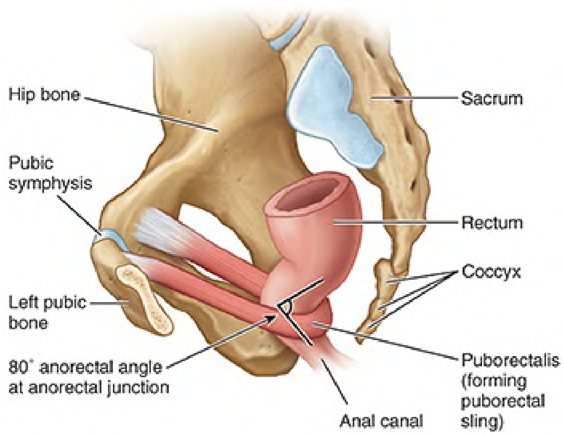


FIGURE 6.12. Puborectalis muscle. Most of the left hip bone has been removed to demonstrate that this part of the levator ani is formed by continuous muscle fibers following a U-shaped course around the anorectal junction. The puborectalis thus forms a puborectal sling, the tonus of which is responsible for maintaining the anorectal angle (perineal flexure).

The levator ani forms a dynamic floor for supporting the abdominopelvic viscera (e.g., the intestines). It is tonically contracted most of the time to support the abdominopelvic viscera and to assist in maintaining urinary and fecal continence. It is actively contracted during activities such as forced expiration, coughing, sneezing, vomiting, and fixation of the trunk during strong movements of the upper limbs (e.g., when lifting heavy objects), primarily to increase support of the viscera during periods of increased intra-abdominal pressure and perhaps secondarily to contribute to the increased pressure (e.g., to aid expulsion).

Penetrated centrally by the anal canal, the levator ani is funnel shaped, with the U-shaped

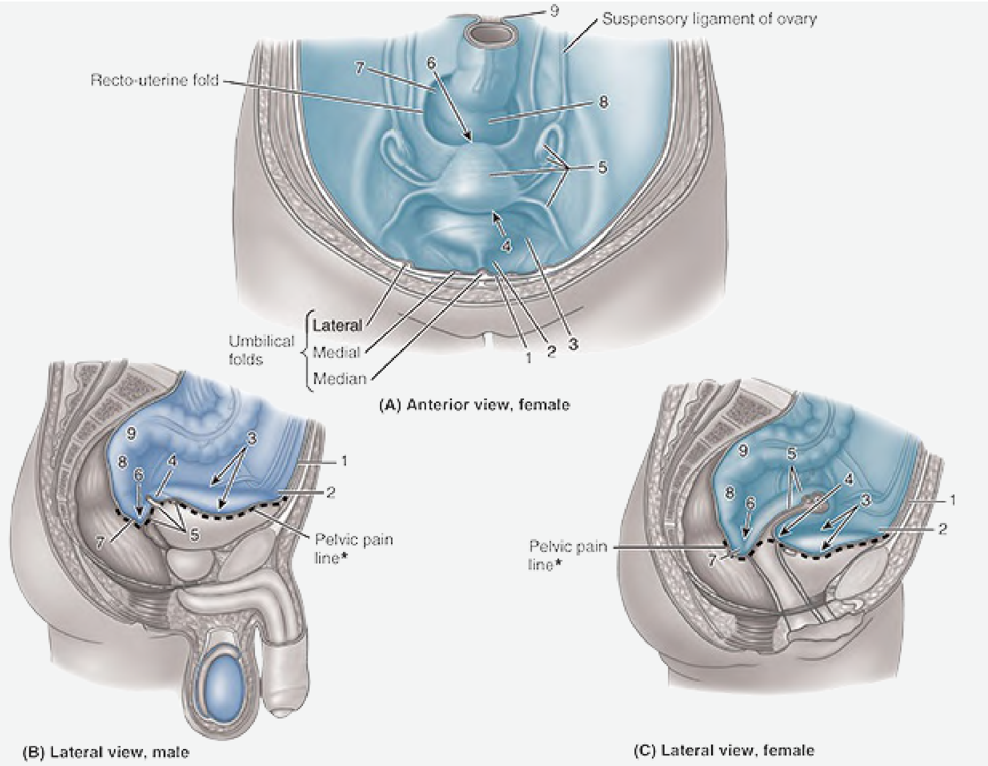
puborectalis looping around the "funnel spout"; its tonic contraction bends the anorectum anteriorly. Active contraction of the (voluntary) puborectalis portion is important in maintaining fecal continence immediately after rectal filling or during peristalsis when the rectum is full and the involuntary sphincter muscle is inhibited (relaxed).

The levator ani must relax to allow urination and defecation. The increased intra-abdominal pressure for defecation is provided by contraction of the (thoracic) diaphragm and muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall. Acting together, the parts of the levator ani elevate the pelvic floor after their relaxation and the consequent descent of the pelvic diaphragm that occurs during urination and defecation.

Peritoneum and Peritoneal Cavity of Pelvis

The parietal peritoneum lining the abdominal cavity continues inferiorly into the pelvic cavity but does not reach the pelvic floor. Instead, it reflects onto the pelvic viscera, remaining separated from the pelvic floor by the pelvic viscera and surrounding pelvic fascia (Table 6.3). The pelvic viscera are not completely ensheathed by peritoneum, lying inferior to it for the main part. Only their superior and superolateral surfaces are covered with peritoneum. Only the uterine tubes (except for their ostia, which are open) are intraperitoneal and suspended by a mesentery. The ovaries, although suspended in the peritoneal cavity by a mesentery, are not covered with glistening peritoneum; instead, a special, relatively dull epithelium of cuboidal cells (germinal epithelium) covers them.

TABLE 6.3. PERITONEAL REFLECTIONS IN PELVIS[a]



Male (Fig. B)	Female (Figs. A and C)
1. Descends anterior abdominal wall (loose attachment allows insertion of the bladder as it fills)	1. Descends anterior abdominal wall (loose attachment allows insertion of the bladder as it fills)
2. Reflects onto superior surface of the bladder, creating supravesical fossa	2. Reflects onto superior surface of the bladder, creating supravesical fossa
3. Covers convex superior surface of the bladder and slopes down sides of roof to ascend lateral wall of pelvis, creating a paravesical fossa on each side	3. Covers convex superior surface of the bladder and slopes down sides of roof to ascend lateral wall of pelvis, creating a paravesical fossa on each side
4. Descends posterior surface of the bladder as much as 2 cm	4. Reflects from bladder roof onto body of uterus forming vesico-uterine pouch
5. Laterally, forms fold over ureters (ureteric fold), ductus deferens, and superior ends of seminal glands	5. Covers body and fundus of the uterus and posterior fornix of the vagina; extends laterally from uterus as double fold or mesentery—broad ligament that engulfs uterine tubes and round ligaments of uterus and suspends ovaries
6. Reflects from bladder and seminal glands onto rectum, forming rectovesical pouch	6. Reflects from vagina onto rectum, forming recto-uterine pouch
7. Rectovesical pouch extends laterally and posteriorly to form a pararectal fossa on each side of the rectum	7. Recto-uterine pouch extends laterally and posteriorly to form a pararectal fossa on each side of the rectum
8. Ascends rectum; from inferior to superior, rectum is subperitoneal and then retroperitoneal	8. Ascends rectum; from inferior to superior, rectum is subperitoneal and then retroperitoneal
9. Engulfs sigmoid colon beginning at rectosigmoid junction	9. Engulfs sigmoid colon beginning at rectosigmoid junction

[a]Numbers in figures refer to items in the corresponding table.

*The pelvic pain line corresponds to the lowest extent of the peritoneum and demarcates innervation for visceral and somatic pain.

A loose areolar (fatty) layer between the transversalis fascia and the parietal peritoneum of the inferior part of the anterior abdominal wall allows the bladder to expand between these layers as it becomes distended with urine. The region superior to the bladder (1 in Table 6.3) is the only site where the parietal peritoneum is not firmly bound to the underlying structures. Consequently, the level at which the peritoneum reflects onto the superior surface of the bladder, creating the **supravesical fossa** (2 in Table 6.3), is variable, depending on the fullness of the bladder. When the peritoneum reflects from the abdominopelvic wall onto the pelvic viscera and fascia, a series of folds and fossae is created (2–7 in Table 6.3).

In females, as the peritoneum at or near the midline reaches the posterior border of the roof of the bladder, it reflects onto the anterior aspect of the uterus at the isthmus of the uterus (see "Female Internal Genital Organs" in this chapter); thus, it is not related to the anterior vaginal fornix, which is subperitoneal in location. The peritoneum passes over the fundus of the uterus and descends the entire posterior aspect of the uterus onto the posterior vaginal wall before reflecting superiorly onto the anterior wall of the inferior rectum (rectal ampulla). The "pocket" thus formed between the uterus and the rectum is the **recto-uterine pouch** (cul-de-sac of Douglas) (6 in Table 6.3, Fig. C). The median recto-uterine pouch is often described as being the inferiormost extent of the peritoneal cavity in the female, but often, its lateral extensions on each side of the rectum, the **pararectal fossae**, are deeper.

Prominent peritoneal ridges, the **recto-uterine folds**, formed by underlying fascial ligaments demarcate the lateral boundaries of the pararectal fossae (Table 6.3, Fig. A). As the peritoneum passes up and over the uterus in the middle of the pelvic cavity, a double peritoneal fold, the broad ligament of the uterus, extends between the uterus and the lateral pelvic wall on each side, forming a partition that separates the paravesical fossae and pararectal fossae of each side. The uterine tubes, ovaries, ligaments of the ovaries, and round ligaments of the uterus are enclosed within the broad ligaments. Subdivisions of the broad ligament related to these structures are discussed with the uterus later in this chapter. Recall that in females, the pelvic peritoneal cavity communicates with the external environment via the uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina.

In males—and in females who have had a hysterectomy (removal of the uterus)—the central peritoneum descends a short distance (as much as 2 cm) down the posterior surface (base) of the bladder and then reflects superiorly onto the anterior surface of the inferior rectum, forming the **rectovesical pouch**. The female recto-uterine pouch is normally deeper (extends farther caudally) than the male rectovesical pouch (7 in Table 6.3).

In males, a gentle peritoneal fold or ridge, the **ureteric fold**, is formed as the peritoneum passes up and over the ureter and ductus (vas) deferens (secretory duct of the testis) on each side of the posterior bladder, separating the paravesical and pararectal fossae (see Fig. 6.30). In this regard, it is the male equivalent of the broad ligament of the uterus. Posterior to the ureteric folds and lateral to the central rectovesical pouch, the peritoneum often descends far enough caudally to cover the superior ends or superior posterior surfaces of the seminal glands (vesicles) and ampullae of the ductus deferens (see Figs. 6.36 and 6.37). Except for these sites (and the testis in

its tunica vaginalis, which is derived from peritoneum), the male reproductive organs are not in contact with the peritoneum.

In both sexes, the inferior third of the rectum is below the inferior limits of the peritoneum (i.e., it is subperitoneal); the middle third is covered with peritoneum only on its anterior surface; and the superior third is covered on both its anterior and lateral surfaces. The rectosigmoid junction, near the pelvic brim, is intraperitoneal.

Pelvic Fascia

Pelvic fascia is connective tissue that occupies the space between the membranous peritoneum and the muscular pelvic walls and floor not occupied by the pelvic viscera. This "layer" is a continuation of the comparatively thin (except around kidneys) endoabdominal fascia that lies between the muscular abdominal walls and the peritoneum superiorly. Traditionally, the pelvic fascia has been described as having parietal and visceral components (Fig. 6.13).

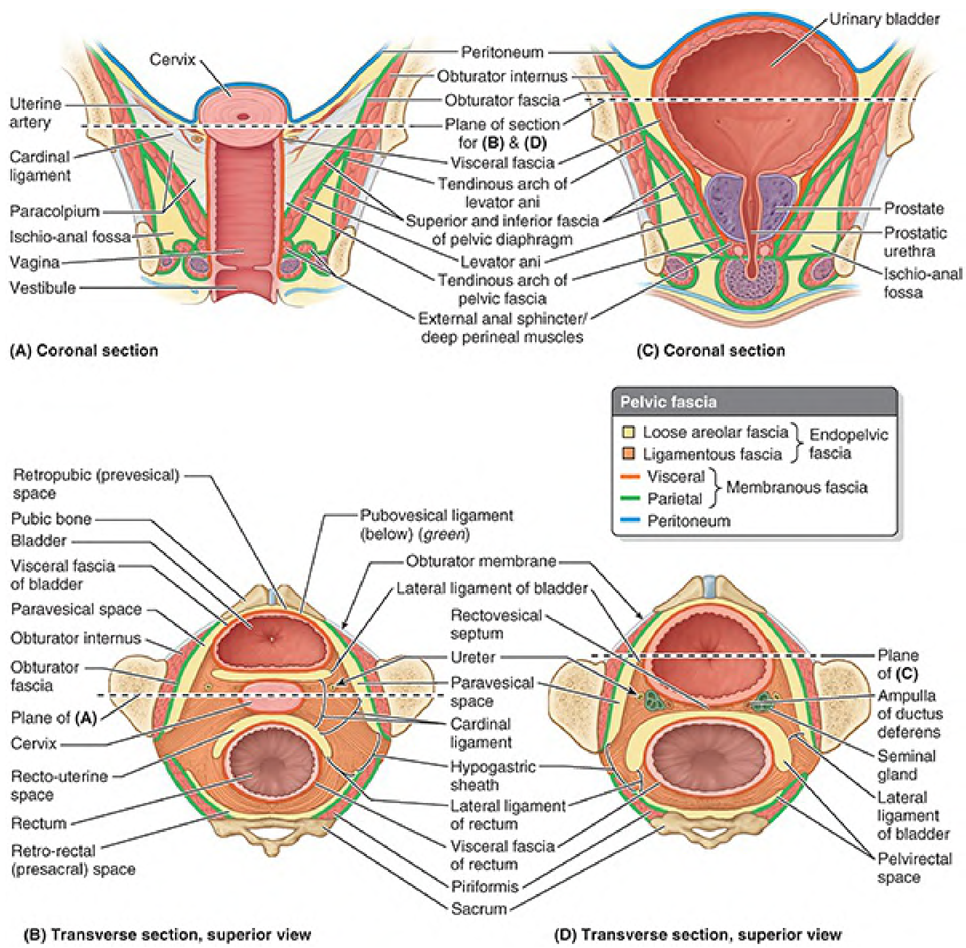


FIGURE 6.13. Pelvic fascia: endopelvic fascia and fascial ligaments. A and B. Sections of female pelvis. **C and D.** Sections of male pelvis. The parietal and visceral pelvic fascia and the endopelvic fascia between them, with its ligamentous and loose areolar components are demonstrated.

MEMBRANOUS PELVIC FASCIA: PARIETAL AND VISCERAL

The **parietal pelvic fascia** is a membranous layer of variable thickness that lines the inner (deep or pelvic) aspect of the muscles forming the walls and floor of the pelvis—the obturator internus, piriformis, coccygeus, levator ani, and part of the urethral sphincter muscles. Specific parts of the parietal fascia are named for the muscle that is covered (e.g., obturator fascia). This layer is continuous superiorly with the transversalis and iliopsoas fascias.

The **visceral pelvic fascia** includes the membranous fascia that directly ensheathes the pelvic organs, forming the adventitial layer of each. The membranous parietal and visceral layers become continuous where the organs penetrate the pelvic floor (Figs. 6.13A, C and 6.14). Here, the parietal fascia is thickened, forming the **tendinous arch of pelvic fascia**, a continuous bilateral band running from the pubis to the sacrum along the pelvic floor adjacent to the viscera (Fig. 6.14A, B). The anteriormost part of this tendinous arch (**puboprostatic ligament** in males; **pubovesical ligament** in females) connects the prostate to the pubis in the male or the fundus (base) of the bladder to the pubis in the female. The posteriormost part of the band runs as the **sacrogenital ligaments** from the sacrum around the side of the rectum to attach to the prostate in the male or the vagina in the female. In females, the lateral connection of the visceral fascia of the vagina with the tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia is the **paracolpium** (Fig. 6.13A). The paracolpia suspend the vagina between the tendinous arches, assisting the vagina in bearing the weight of the fundus of the bladder.

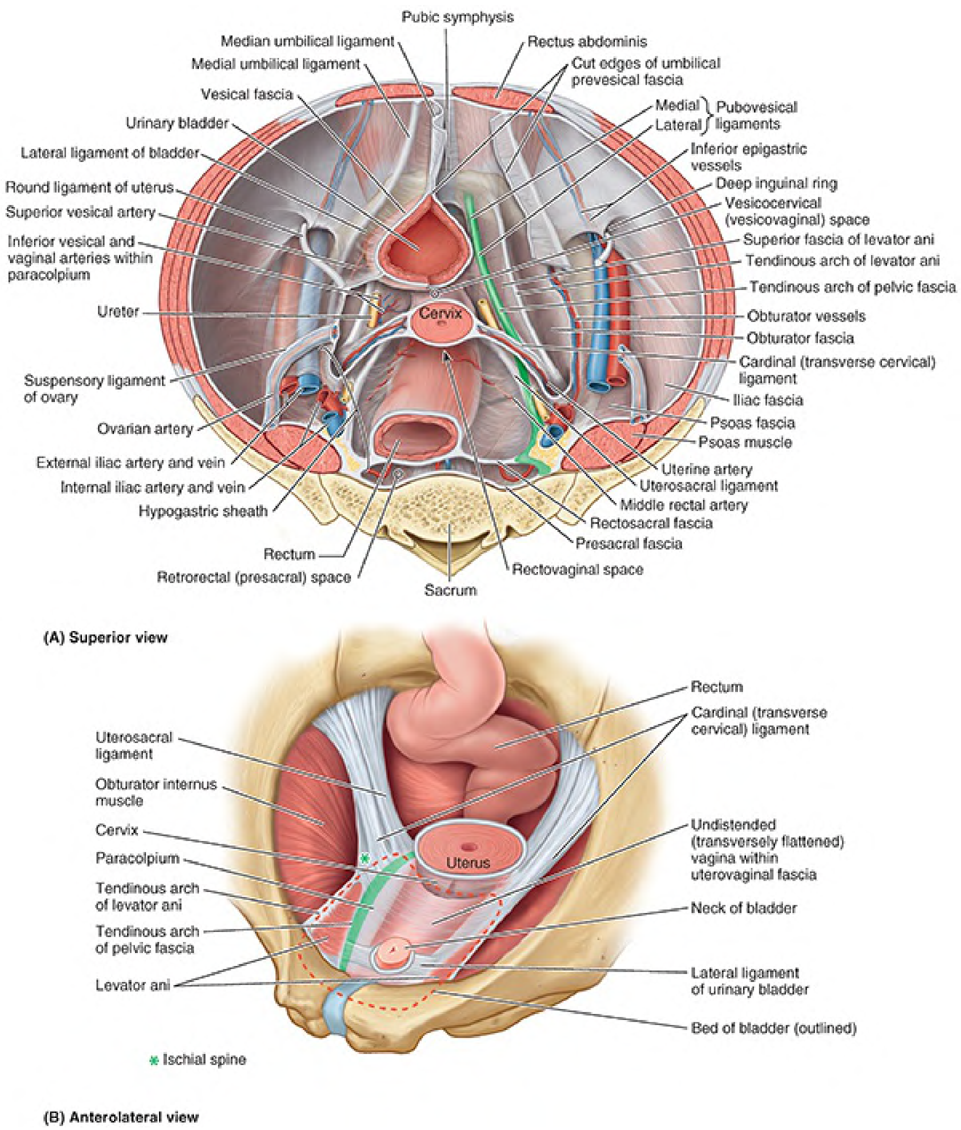


FIGURE 6.14. Pelvic fascial ligaments. A. Overview. Peritoneum and loose areolar endopelvic fascia have been removed to demonstrate the pelvic fascial ligaments located inferior to the peritoneum but superior to the female pelvic floor (pelvic diaphragm). The tendinous arch of the levator ani is a thickening of the obturator (parietal) fascia, providing the anterolateral attachment of the levator ani. The tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia (highlighted in green) is a thickening at the point of reflection of parietal membranous fascia onto the pelvic viscera, where it becomes visceral membranous fascia. **B.** Fascial ligaments supporting vagina and cervix of uterus. Since the posterior part of the urinary bladder rests on the anterior wall of the vagina, the paracolpium supports the vagina and contributes to the support of the bladder.

ENDOPELVIC FASCIA: LOOSE AND CONDENSED

Often, the abundant connective tissue remaining between the parietal and visceral membranous layers is considered to be part of the visceral fascia, but sometimes, it is labeled as parietal fascia. It is probably more realistic to consider this remaining fascia simply as extraperitoneal or subperitoneal endopelvic fascia (Fig. 6.13A, C), which lies adjacent to both the parietal and visceral membranous fascias. This fascia forms a connective tissue matrix or packing material for the pelvic viscera (Fig. 6.13B, D). It varies markedly in density and content. Some of it is an extremely loose areolar (fatty) tissue, relatively devoid of all but minor lymphatics and nutrient

vessels. During dissection or surgery, the fingers can be pushed into this loose tissue with ease, creating actual spaces by blunt dissection, for example, between the pubis and bladder anteriorly and between the sacrum and rectum posteriorly. These potential spaces, normally consisting only of a layer of loose fatty tissue, are the **retropubic** (or prevesical, extended posterolaterally as paravesical) and **retrorectal** (or presacral) **spaces**, respectively. The presence of loose connective tissue here accommodates the expansion of the urinary bladder and rectal ampulla as they fill.

Although types of endopelvic fascia do not differ much in their gross appearance, other parts of the endopelvic fascia have a much more fibrous consistency, containing an abundance of collagen and elastic fibers and a scattering of smooth muscle fibers. These parts are often described as "fascial condensations" or pelvic "ligaments." For example, during dissection, if you insert the fingers of one hand into the retropubic space and the fingers of the other hand into the presacral space and attempt to bring them together along the lateral pelvic wall, you will find that they do not meet or pass from one space to the other. They encounter the so-called **hypogastric sheath**, a thick band of condensed pelvic fascia. This fascial condensation is not merely a barrier separating the two potential spaces. It gives passage to essentially all the vessels and nerves passing from the lateral wall of the pelvis to the pelvic viscera, along with the ureters and, in the male, the ductus deferens.

As it extends medially from the lateral wall, the hypogastric sheath divides into three laminae (layers) that pass to or between the pelvic organs, conveying neurovascular structures and providing support. Because of the latter function, they are also referred to as ligaments. The anteriormost lamina, the **lateral ligament of the bladder**, passes to the bladder, conveying the superior vesical arteries and veins. The posteriormost lamina (lateral rectal ligament) passes to the rectum, conveying the middle rectal artery and vein.

In the male, the middle lamina forms a relatively thin fascial partition, the **rectovesical septum** (Fig. 6.13D), between the posterior surface of the bladder and the prostate anteriorly and the rectum posteriorly. In the female, the middle lamina is markedly more substantial than the other two, passing medially to the uterine cervix and vagina as the **cardinal ligament** (transverse cervical ligament) (Figs. 6.13B and 6.14A, B).

In its superiormost portion, at the base of the peritoneal broad ligament, the uterine artery runs medially toward the cervix while the ureters pass immediately inferior to them. The ureters pass on each side of the cervix heading anteriorly toward the bladder. This relationship ("water passing under the bridge") is an especially important one for surgeons (see the Clinical Box "Iatrogenic Injury of Ureters" in this chapter). The cardinal ligament, and the way in which the uterus normally "rests" on top of the bladder, provides the main passive support for the uterus. The perineal muscles provide dynamic support for the uterus by contracting during moments of increased intra-abdominal pressure (sneezing, coughing, etc.). Passive and dynamic supports together resist the tendency for the uterus to fall or be pushed through the hollow tube formed by the vagina (uterine prolapse). The cardinal ligament has enough fibrous content to anchor wide loops of suture during surgical repairs.

In addition to the ischio-anal fossae inferior to the pelvic diaphragm (i.e., in the perineum)

(Fig. 6.13A, C), there is a surgically important potential **pelvirectal space** in the loose extraperitoneal connective tissue superior to the pelvic diaphragm (Fig. 6.13D). It is divided into anterior recto-uterine (female) or rectovesical (male) spaces and posterior **retrorectal** (presacral) **spaces** by the **rectosacral** (lateral rectal) **ligaments**, which are the posterior laminae of the hypogastric sheaths. These ligaments connect the rectum to the parietal pelvic fascia at the S2–S4 levels (Fig. 6.13B, D). The middle rectal arteries and rectal nerve plexuses are embedded in the lateral rectal ligaments.

CLINICAL BOX

PELVIC CAVITY

Injury to Pelvic Floor

During childbirth, the pelvic floor supports the fetal head while the cervix of the uterus is dilating to permit delivery of the fetus. The perineum, levator ani, and ligaments of the pelvic fascia may be injured during childbirth (Fig. B6.5A). The pubococcygeus and puborectalis, the main and most medial parts of the levator ani, are the muscles torn most often (Fig. B6.5B). These parts of the muscle are important because they encircle and support the urethra, vagina, and anal canal. Weakening of the levator ani and pelvic fascia (e.g., tearing of the paracolpium), from stretching or tearing during childbirth, may decrease support for the vagina, bladder, uterus, or rectum or alter the position of the neck of the bladder and the urethra. These changes may cause urinary stress incontinence, characterized by dribbling of urine when intra-abdominal pressure is raised during coughing and lifting, for example, or lead to the prolapse of one or more pelvic organs (see the Clinical Boxes “Cystocele, Urethrocele, and Urinary Incontinence” and “Pelvic Organ Prolapse” in this chapter). Tearing of the puborectalis, which produces the anorectal angle and increases the angle to maintain fecal continence, is likely to result in various degrees of fecal incontinence.

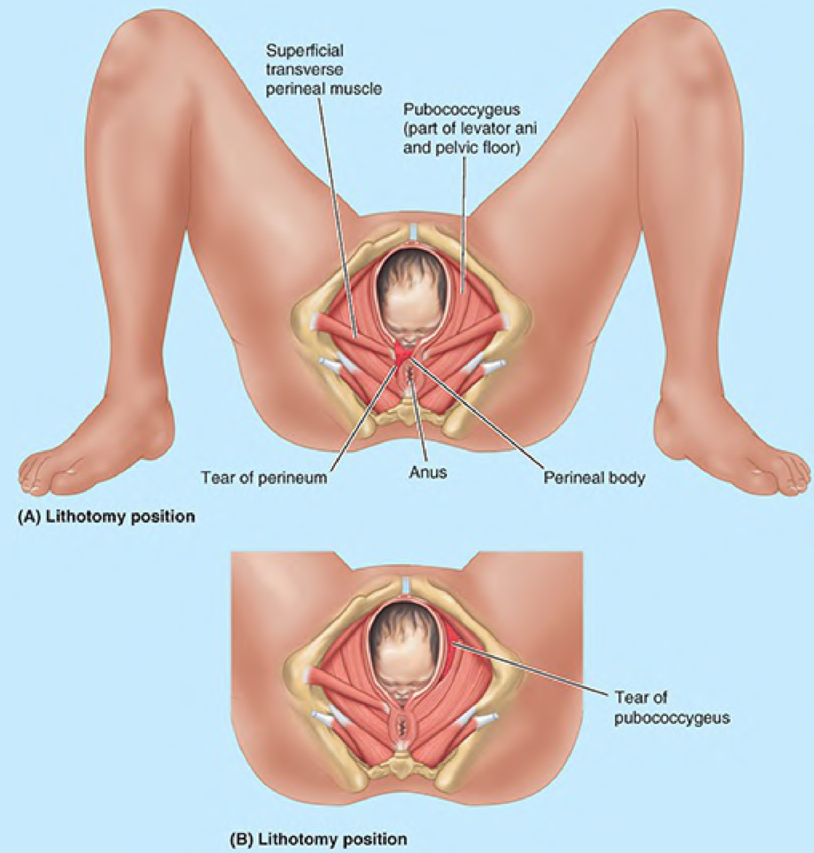


FIGURE B6.5. Obstetrical lacerations.

The Bottom Line: Pelvic Cavity, Pelvic Peritoneum, and Pelvic Fascia

Pelvic cavity: The pelvic cavity, between the pelvic inlet superiorly and the pelvic diaphragm inferiorly, contains the terminal parts of the urinary and alimentary systems, the internal genital organs, the associated vascular structures, and the nerves supplying the pelvis and lower limbs. ■ The pubic symphysis and bones of the lesser pelvis bound the cavity; they do so directly in the region of the midline anteriorly and posterosuperiorly. ■ The lateral walls are padded by the obturator internus muscles. ■ The sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments form the greater and lesser sciatic foramina in the posterolateral walls. These foramina are filled by the structures that traverse them, such as the piriformis muscle. ■ The dynamic floor of the pelvic cavity is the hammock-like pelvic diaphragm, composed of the levator ani and coccygeus muscles. ■ The levator ani is a tripartite, funnel-shaped muscular sheet formed by the puborectalis, pubococcygeus, and iliococcygeus muscles. ■ In addition to the levator's general role of supporting

abdominopelvic viscera as part of the pelvic diaphragm, the puborectalis is particularly involved in maintaining fecal continence. ■ The ability of the musculofascial pelvic floor to relax and distend is critical to the functions of defecation and parturition.

Peritoneum: The peritoneum lining the abdominal cavity continues into the pelvic cavity, reflecting onto the superior aspects of most pelvic viscera (only the lengths of the uterine tubes, but not their free ends, are fully intraperitoneal and have a mesentery). In so doing, the peritoneum creates a number of folds and fossae. ■ Because the peritoneum is not firmly bound to the suprapubic abdominal wall, the bladder is able to expand between the peritoneum and the anterior abdominal wall as it fills, elevating the supravesical fossae. ■ The rectovesical pouch and its lateral extensions, the pararectal fossae, are the inferiormost extents of the peritoneal cavity in males. ■ In females, the uterus is located between the bladder and rectum, creating uterovesical and recto-uterine pouches. ■ The lateral extensions of the peritoneal fold engulfing the uterine fundus form the broad ligament, a transverse duplication of peritoneum separating the paravesical and pararectal fossae. ■ The recto-uterine fossa and its lateral extensions, the pararectal fossae, are the inferiormost extents of the peritoneal cavity in females.

Pelvic fascia: Membranous parietal pelvic fascia, continuous with the fascia lining the abdominal cavity, lines the pelvic walls and reflects onto the pelvic viscera as pelvic visceral fascia. ■ The right and left lines of reflection are thickened into paramedian fascial bands extending from pubis to coccyx, the tendinous arches of the pelvic fascia. ■ The subperitoneal space between the parietal and visceral pelvic fascias is occupied with fatty endopelvic fascia. This fascial matrix has loose areolar portions, occupying potential spaces, and condensed fibrous tissue, surrounding neurovascular structures in transit to the viscera while also tethering (supporting) the viscera. ■ The two portions of endopelvic fascia are indistinct in appearance but have distinctly different textures. ■ The primary fascial condensations form the hypogastric sheaths along the posterolateral pelvic walls. ■ As these fascial sheaths extend toward the viscera, three laminae are formed, including the lateral ligament of the bladder anteriorly and the lateral rectal ligaments posteriorly. ■ In females, the middle lamina is the cardinal ligament that passively supports the vagina and uterine cervix, while conveying their neurovasculature. ■ In males, the middle lamina is the rectovesical septum.

NEUROVASCULAR STRUCTURES OF PELVIS

The major neurovascular structures of the pelvis lie extraperitoneally against the posterolateral walls. The somatic nerves lie laterally (adjacent to the walls), with the vascular structures medial to them. Generally, the veins are lateral to the arteries (Fig. 6.15). Pelvic lymph nodes are mostly

clustered around the pelvic veins, the lymphatic drainage often paralleling venous flow. In dissecting from the pelvic cavity toward the pelvic walls, the pelvic arteries are encountered first, followed by the associated pelvic veins, and then the somatic nerves of the pelvis.

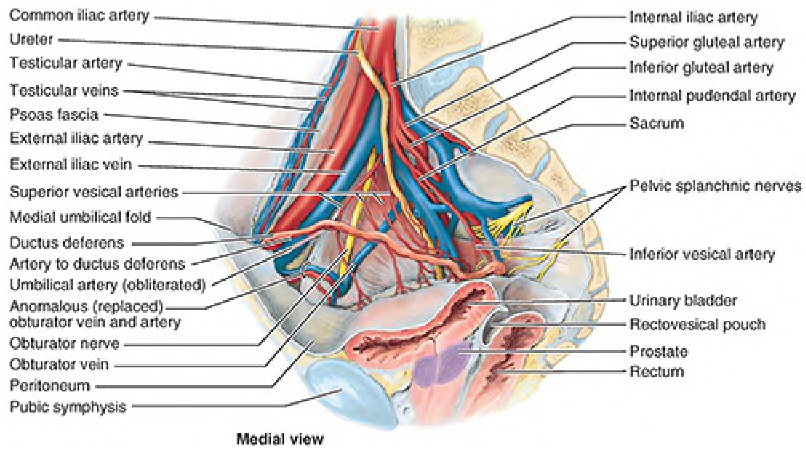


FIGURE 6.15. Neurovascular relationships of pelvis. The neurovascular structures of the male pelvis are shown. Generally, the pelvic veins lie between the pelvic arteries (which lie medially or internally) and the somatic nerves (which lie laterally or externally).

Pelvic Arteries

The pelvis is richly supplied with arteries, among which multiple anastomoses occur, providing an extensive collateral circulation. Information concerning the origin, course, distribution, and anastomoses of the arteries of the pelvis is provided in Figure 6.16 and Table 6.4. The following text provides additional information not provided in the table.

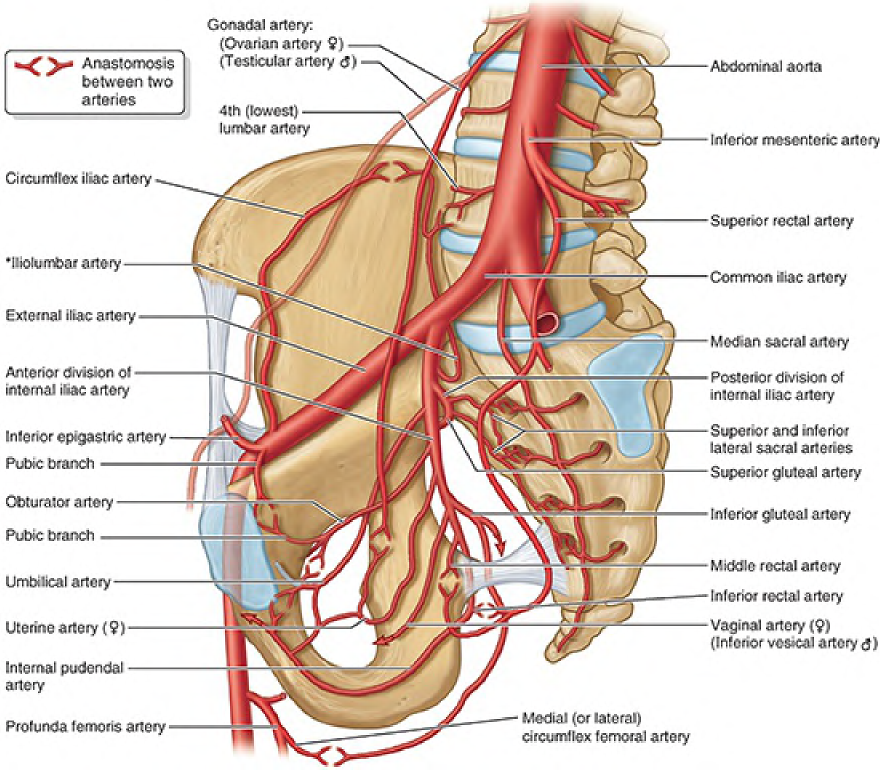


FIGURE 6.16. Arteries and arterial anastomoses in pelvis. The origins, courses, and distribution of the arteries and the arterial anastomoses formed are described in Table 6.4. Branching of the internal iliac artery is highly variable. For example, the iliolumbar artery (asterisk) often arises from the posterior division instead of directly from the internal iliac artery as shown, and 50% of inferior gluteal arteries arise from the posterior division.

TABLE 6.4. ARTERIES OF PELVIS

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution	Anastomoses
Gonadal	Abdominal aorta	Descends retroperitoneally		
Testicular (♂)		Traverses inguinal canal and enters scrotum	Abdominal ureter, testis, and epididymis	Cremasteric artery and artery of ductus deferens
Ovarian (♀)		Crosses pelvic brim and descends in suspensory ligament of the ovary	Abdominal and/or pelvic ureter, ovary, and ampullary end of uterine tube	Uterine artery via tubal and ovarian branches
Superior rectal	Continuation of inferior mesenteric artery	Crosses left common iliac vessels and descends into pelvis between layers of sigmoid mesocolon	Superior part of the rectum	Middle rectal artery; inferior rectal (internal pudendal) artery
Median sacral	Posterior aspect of abdominal aorta	Descends close to midline over L4 and L5 vertebrae, sacrum, and coccyx	Inferior lumbar vertebrae, sacrum, and coccyx	Lateral sacral artery (via medial sacral branches)
Internal iliac	Common iliac artery	Passes medially over pelvic brim and descends into pelvic cavity; often	Main blood supply to pelvic organs, gluteal muscles, and perineum	

		forms anterior and posterior divisions		
Anterior division of internal iliac	Internal iliac artery	Passes anteriorly along lateral wall of the pelvis, dividing into visceral, obturator, and internal pudendal arteries	Pelvic viscera, muscles of superior medial thigh, and perineum	
Umbilical	Anterior division of internal iliac artery (or from the specific branch of the anterior division indicated)	Runs a short pelvic course, gives off superior vesical arteries, then obliterates, becoming medial umbilical ligament	Superior aspect of urinary bladder and, in some males, ductus deferens (via superior vesical arteries and artery to ductus deferens)	(Occasionally the patent part of the umbilical artery)
Superior vesical	(Patent proximal umbilical artery)	Usually multiple; pass to superior aspect of the urinary bladder	Superior aspect of the urinary bladder; in some males, ductus deferens (via artery to ductus deferens)	Inferior vesical (♂); vaginal artery (♀)
Obturator		Runs antero-inferiorly on obturator fascia of lateral pelvic wall, exiting pelvis via obturator canal	Pelvic muscles, nutrient artery to ilium, head of femur, and muscles of medial compartment of thigh	Inferior epigastric (via pubic branch); umbilical artery
Inferior vesical(♂)		Passes subperitoneally in lateral ligament of the bladder, giving rise to prostatic artery (♂) and occasionally the artery to the ductus deferens	Inferior aspect of male urinary bladder, pelvic part of ureter; prostate and seminal glands; occasionally ductus deferens	Superior vesical artery
Artery to ductus deferens (♂)	(Superior or inferior vesical artery)	Runs subperitoneally to ductus deferens	Ductus deferens	Testicular artery; cremasteric artery
Prostatic branches (♂)	(Inferior vesical artery)	Descends on posterolateral aspects of the prostate	Prostate and prostatic urethra	Deep perineal (internal pudendal)
Uterine (♀)		Runs anteromedially in base of broad ligament/superior cardinal ligament, gives rise to vaginal artery, and then crosses ureter superiorly to reach lateral aspect of uterine cervix	Uterus, ligaments of uterus, medial parts of uterine tube and ovary, and superior vagina via vaginal branch	Ovarian artery (via tubal and ovarian branches); vaginal artery
Vaginal (♀)	Uterine artery	Descends to arborize around the vagina, passing one or more branches to the urinary bladder	Vagina, vestibular bulb, and adjacent rectum; inferior vesical branch(es)[a]: fundus or base and neck of the urinary bladder	Vaginal branch of uterine artery and superior vesical artery

Internal pudendal		Exits pelvis via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis, enters perineum (ischio-anal fossa) via lesser sciatic foramen, and passes via pudendal canal to UG triangle	Main artery of perineum, including muscles and skin of anal and urogenital triangles and erectile bodies	(Umbilical artery; prostatic branches of inferior vesical artery in males)
Middle rectal	Anterior division of internal iliac artery	Descends in the pelvis to inferior part of the rectum	Inferior part of the rectum, seminal glands, prostate (vagina)	Superior and inferior rectal arteries
Inferior gluteal[b]		Exits pelvis via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis	Pelvic diaphragm (coccygeus and levator ani), piriformis, quadratus femoris, superiormost hamstrings, gluteus maximus, and sciatic nerve	Profunda femoris artery (via medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries)
Posterior division of internal iliac	Internal iliac artery	Passes posteriorly and gives rise to parietal branches	Pelvic wall and gluteal region	
Iliolumbar[c]		Ascends anterior to sacro-iliac joint and posterior to common iliac vessels and psoas major, dividing into iliac and lumbar branches	Psoas major, iliacus, and quadratus lumborum muscles; cauda equina in vertebral canal	Circumflex iliac artery and 4th (and lowest) lumbar artery
Lateral sacral (superior and inferior)	Posterior division of internal iliac artery	Runs on anteromedial aspect of piriformis to send branches into pelvic sacral foramina	Piriformis, structures in sacral canal, erector spinae, and overlying skin	Medial sacral arteries (from median sacral artery)
Superior gluteal		Passes between lumbosacral trunk and anterior ramus of S1 spinal nerve to exit pelvis via greater sciatic foramen superior to piriformis	Piriformis, all three gluteal muscles, and tensor fasciae latae	Lateral sacral, inferior gluteal, internal pudendal, deep circumflex femoral, lateral circumflex femoral

[a]An inferior vesical artery often occurs as an independent branch of the internal iliac artery.

[b]Arises as terminal branch of posterior division of internal iliac artery approximately 50% of the time.

[c]Often arises directly from internal iliac artery, proximal to divisions.

Six main arteries enter the lesser pelvis of females: the paired internal iliac and ovarian arteries and the unpaired median sacral and superior rectal arteries. Since the testicular arteries do not enter the lesser pelvis, only four main arteries enter the lesser pelvis of males.

INTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY

The **internal iliac artery** is the principal artery of the pelvis, supplying most of the blood to the pelvic viscera and some to the musculoskeletal part of the pelvis; however, it also supplies

branches to the gluteal region, medial thigh regions, and the perineum (Fig. 6.15).

Each internal iliac artery, approximately 4 cm long, begins as the common iliac artery and bifurcates into the internal and external iliac arteries at the level of the IV disc between the L5 and S1 vertebrae. The ureter crosses the common iliac artery or its terminal branches at or immediately distal to the bifurcation. The internal iliac artery is separated from the sacro-iliac joint by the internal iliac vein and the lumbosacral trunk. It descends posteromedially into the lesser pelvis, medial to the external iliac vein and obturator nerve and lateral to the peritoneum.

Anterior Division of Internal Iliac Artery. Variations in the pattern of branching of the internal iliac artery are typical; the most common pattern (described here and depicted in Figs. 6.15, 6.16, and 6.17) occurs less than half the time. Ultimately, the identity of medium and small arteries is based on their distribution, which is very consistent, rather than their variable origins. The internal iliac artery usually ends at the superior edge of the greater sciatic foramen by dividing into anterior and posterior divisions (trunks). The branches of the **anterior division of the internal iliac artery** include not only visceral branches (to bladder, rectum, and reproductive organs) but also parietal branches that pass to the thigh and buttocks (Fig. 6.17A, B). The arrangement of the branches is highly variable.

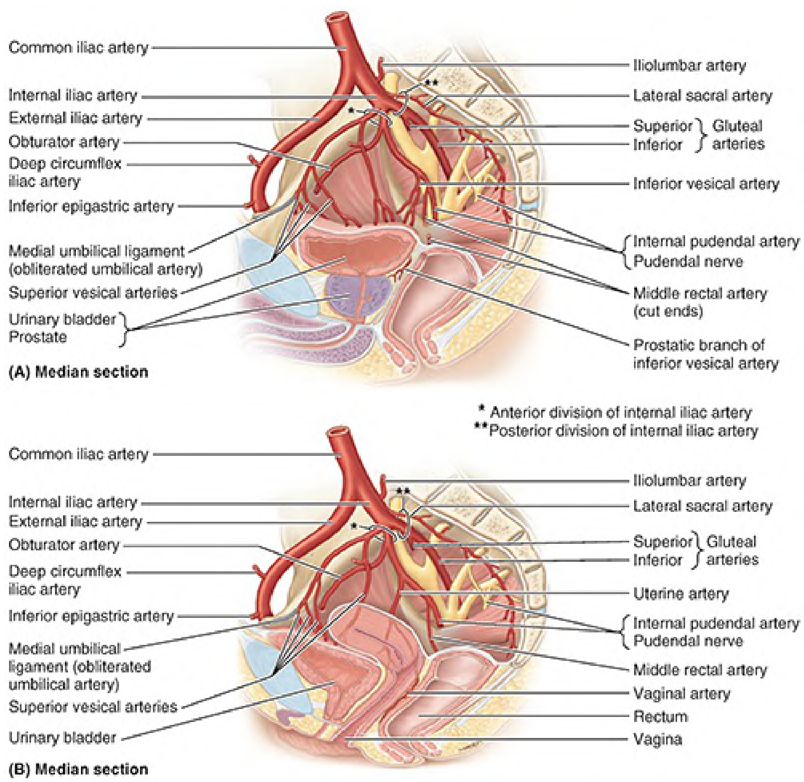


FIGURE 6.17. **Arteries of pelvis. A.** Male pelvis. **B.** Female pelvis. Anterior divisions of the internal iliac arteries usually supply most of the blood to pelvic viscera.

Umbilical Artery. Before birth, the umbilical arteries are the main continuation of the internal iliac arteries, passing along the lateral pelvic wall and then ascending the anterior abdominal wall to and through the umbilical ring into the umbilical cord. The **prenatal**

umbilical arteries are large and conduct oxygen- and nutrient-deficient fetal blood to the placenta for replenishment. When the umbilical cord is cut, the distal parts of these vessels no longer function and become occluded distal to branches that pass to the bladder. The occluded parts form fibrous cords, the medial umbilical ligaments (Figs. 6.16 and 6.17A, B). The ligaments raise folds of peritoneum (medial umbilical folds) on the deep surface of the anterior abdominal wall (see Fig. 5.13).

The patent parts of the diminished **postnatal umbilical arteries** run antero-inferiorly between the urinary bladder and the lateral wall of the pelvis, providing usually multiple **superior vesical arteries** to the superior bladder, then ending immediately afterward at the point of obliteration into ligaments.

Obturator Artery. The origin of the **obturator artery** is variable; usually, it arises close to the origin of the umbilical artery, where it is crossed by the ureter. It runs antero-inferiorly on the obturator fascia on the lateral wall of the pelvis and passes between the obturator nerve and vein (Figs. 6.16 and 6.17A, B).

Within the pelvis, the obturator artery gives off muscular branches, a nutrient artery to the ilium, and a pubic branch. The **pubic branch** arises just before the obturator artery leaves the pelvis. It ascends on the pelvic surface of the pubis to anastomose with its fellow of the opposite side and the pubic branch of the inferior epigastric artery, a branch of the external iliac artery.

In a common variation (>20%), an **aberrant** or **accessory obturator artery** arises from the inferior epigastric artery and descends into the pelvis along the usual route of the pubic branch (Figs. 6.15 and 6.16). Surgeons performing hernia repairs must keep this common variation in mind.

The extrapelvic distribution of the obturator artery to the medial thigh is described with the lower limb (see Chapter 7, Lower Limb).

Inferior Vesical Artery. The **inferior vesical artery** occurs consistently as a direct branch of the anterior division only in males (Figs. 6.16 and 6.17A). In females, it may occur—with nearly equal frequency—as a direct branch of the internal iliac artery or as a branch of the uterine artery (Figs. 6.16 and 6.17B).

Uterine Artery. The **uterine artery** is an additional branch of the internal iliac artery in females, usually arising separately and directly from the internal iliac artery (Figs. 6.16 and 6.17B). It may arise from the umbilical artery. Developmentally, it is the homolog of the artery to the ductus deferens in males. Importantly, the uterine arteries enlarge markedly during pregnancy when they are the source of maternal blood to the placenta, supplying oxygen and nutrients via the placenta to the developing fetus. It descends on the lateral wall of the pelvis, anterior to the internal iliac artery, and passes medially to reach the junction of the uterus and vagina, where the cervix (neck) of the uterus protrudes into the superior vagina (Fig. 6.18A, B). As it passes medially, the uterine artery passes directly superior to the ureter. The relationship of ureter to artery is often remembered by the phrase “water (urine) passes under the bridge (uterine artery).” However, the artery actually spirals half way or more around the descending ureter, passing both superior and anterior to the ureter. On reaching the side of the cervix, the uterine artery divides into a smaller descending **vaginal branch**, which supplies the cervix and vagina,

and a larger **ascending branch**, which runs along the lateral margin of the uterus, supplying it. The ascending branch bifurcates into **ovarian** and **tubal branches**, which continue to supply the medial ends of the ovary and uterine tube and anastomose with the ovarian and tubal branches of the ovarian artery.

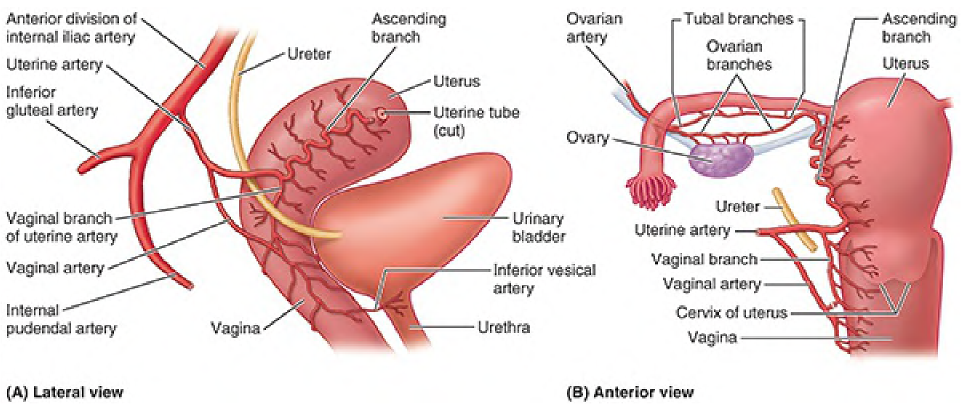


FIGURE 6.18. Uterine and vaginal arteries. A. Origin of arteries from anterior division of internal iliac artery and distribution to uterus and vagina. **B.** Anastomoses between ovarian and tubal branches of ovarian and uterine arteries and between vaginal branch of uterine artery and vaginal artery. These communications occur, and the ascending branch courses, between the layers of the broad ligament.

Vaginal Artery. The **vaginal artery** is the homolog to the inferior vesical artery in males. It often arises from the initial part of the uterine artery instead of arising directly from the anterior division. The vaginal artery supplies numerous branches to the anterior and posterior surfaces of the vagina and the fundus and neck of the bladder (Figs. 6.16, 6.17B, and 6.18).

Middle Rectal Artery. The **middle rectal artery** may arise independently from the internal iliac artery, or it may arise in common with the inferior vesical artery or the internal pudendal artery (Figs. 6.16 and 6.17).

Internal Pudendal Artery. The **internal pudendal artery**, larger in males than in females, passes inferolaterally, anterior to the piriformis muscle and sacral plexus. It leaves the pelvis between the piriformis and coccygeus muscles by passing through the inferior part of the greater sciatic foramen. The internal pudendal artery then passes around the posterior aspect of the ischial spine or the sacrospinous ligament and enters the ischio-anal fossa through the lesser sciatic foramen.

The internal pudendal artery, along with the internal pudendal veins and branches of the pudendal nerve, passes through the pudendal canal in the lateral wall of the ischio-anal fossa (see Fig. 6.11B). As it exits the canal, medial to the ischial tuberosity, the internal pudendal artery divides into its terminal branches, the perineal artery and dorsal arteries of the penis or clitoris.

Inferior Gluteal Artery. The **inferior gluteal artery** is the larger terminal branch of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery (Fig. 6.18A), but approximately half of the time, it is a terminal branch of the posterior division (Fig. 6.17). It passes posteriorly between the sacral nerves (usually S2 and S3) and leaves the pelvis through the inferior part of the greater sciatic foramen, inferior to the piriformis muscle (Fig. 6.16). It supplies the muscles and skin of the buttocks and the posterior surface of the thigh.

Posterior Division of Internal Iliac Artery. When the internal iliac artery divides into anterior and posterior divisions, the posterior division typically gives rise to the following three parietal arteries (Fig. 6.17A, B):

- **Iliolumbar artery:** This artery runs superolaterally in a recurrent fashion (turning sharply backward relative to its source) to the iliac fossa. Within the fossa, the artery divides into an iliac branch, which supplies the iliacus muscle and ilium, and a lumbar branch, which supplies the psoas major and quadratus lumborum muscles.
- **Lateral sacral arteries:** Superior and inferior lateral sacral arteries may arise as independent branches or via a common trunk. The lateral sacral arteries pass medially and descend anterior to the sacral anterior rami, giving off spinal branches, which pass through the anterior sacral foramina and supply the spinal meninges enclosing the roots of the sacral nerves. Some branches of these arteries pass from the sacral canal through the posterior sacral foramina and supply the erector spinae muscles of the back and the skin overlying the sacrum.
- **Superior gluteal artery:** The largest branch of the posterior division, the superior gluteal artery passes between the lumbosacral trunk and S1 ventral ramus to supply the upper gluteal muscles in the buttocks.

OVARIAN ARTERY

The **ovarian artery** arises from the abdominal aorta inferior to the renal artery but considerably superior to the inferior mesenteric artery (Fig. 6.16). As it passes inferiorly, the ovarian artery adheres to the parietal peritoneum and runs anterior to the ureter on the posterior abdominal wall, usually giving branches to it. As the ovarian artery enters the lesser pelvis, it crosses the origin of the external iliac vessels. It then runs medially, dividing into an **ovarian branch** and a **tubal branch**, which supply the ovary and uterine tube, respectively (Fig. 6.18B). These branches anastomose with the corresponding branches of the uterine artery.

MEDIAN SACRAL ARTERY

The **median sacral artery** is a small unpaired artery that usually arises from the posterior surface of the abdominal aorta, just superior to its bifurcation, but it may arise from its anterior surface (Fig. 6.16). This vessel descends in or near the midline anterior to the bodies of the last one or two lumbar vertebrae and the sacrum and coccyx. During pelvic laparoscopic procedures, it provides a useful indication of the midline on the posterior wall of the pelvis. Its terminal branches participate in a series of anastomotic loops. Before the median sacral artery enters the lesser pelvis, it sometimes gives rise to a pair of L5 arteries.

As it descends over the sacrum, the median sacral artery gives off small parietal (lateral sacral) branches that anastomose with the lateral sacral arteries. It also gives rise to small visceral branches to the posterior part of the rectum, which anastomose with the superior and middle rectal arteries. The median sacral artery represents the caudal end of the embryonic dorsal aorta, which reduced in size as the tail-like caudal eminence of the embryo disappeared.

SUPERIOR RECTAL ARTERY

The **superior rectal artery** is the direct continuation of the inferior mesenteric artery (Fig. 6.16). It crosses the left common iliac vessels and descends in the sigmoid mesocolon to the lesser pelvis. At the level of the S3 vertebra, the superior rectal artery divides into two branches, which descend on each side of the rectum and supply it as far inferiorly as the internal anal sphincter.

Pelvic Veins

Pelvic venous plexuses are formed by the interjoining veins surrounding the pelvic viscera (Fig. 6.19B, C). These intercommunicating networks of veins are clinically important. The various plexuses within the lesser pelvis (rectal, vesical, prostatic, uterine, and vaginal) unite and are drained mainly by tributaries of the internal iliac veins, but some of them drain through the superior rectal vein into the inferior mesenteric vein of the hepatic portal system (Fig. 6.19A) or through lateral sacral veins into the internal vertebral venous plexus (see Chapter 2, Back). Additional relatively minor paths of venous drainage from the lesser pelvis include the parietal **median sacral vein** and, in females, the ovarian veins.

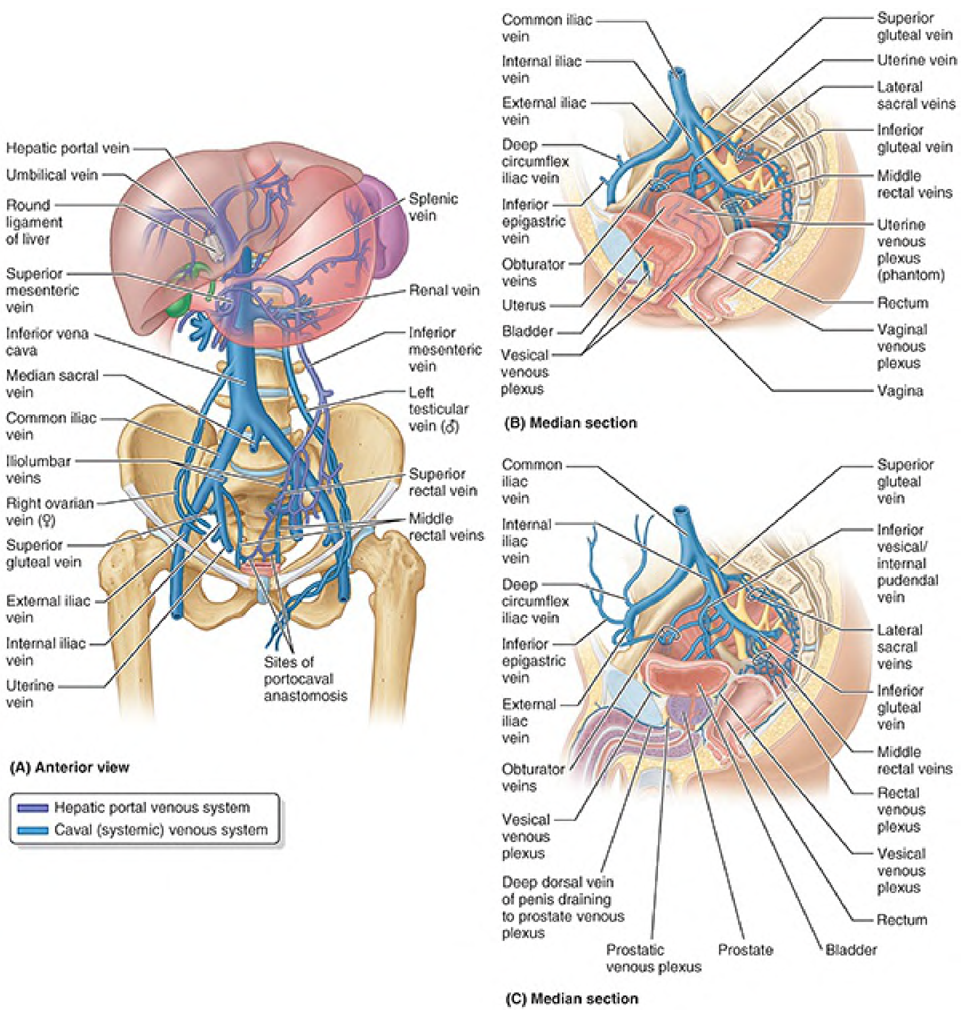


FIGURE 6.19. **Pelvic veins. A.** Caval and hepatic portal venous system of abdominopelvic cavity. **B.** Veins of female pelvis. **C.** Veins of male pelvis. Venous drainage from pelvic organs flows mainly to the caval system via the internal iliac veins. The superior rectum normally drains into the hepatic portal system, although the superior rectal veins anastomose with the middle and inferior rectal veins, which are tributaries of the internal iliac veins.

The **internal iliac veins** form superior to the greater sciatic foramen and lie postero-inferior to the internal iliac arteries (Fig. 6.19A, B). Tributaries of the internal iliac veins are more variable than the branches of the internal iliac artery with which they share names, but roughly accompany them, draining the same territories that the arteries supply. However, there are no veins accompanying the umbilical arteries between the pelvis and the umbilicus, and the **iliolumbar veins** from the iliac fossae of the greater pelvis usually drain into the common iliac veins instead. The internal iliac veins merge with the external iliac veins to form the **common iliac veins**, which unite at the level of vertebra L4 or L5 to form the **inferior vena cava** (Fig. 6.19A).

The **superior gluteal veins**, the accompanying veins (L. venae comitantes) of the superior gluteal arteries of the gluteal region, are the largest tributaries of the internal iliac veins except during pregnancy, when the uterine veins become larger. Testicular veins traverse the greater pelvis as they pass from the deep inguinal ring toward their posterior abdominal terminations but do not usually drain pelvic structures.

The **lateral sacral veins** often appear disproportionately large in angiograms. They anastomose with the internal vertebral venous plexus (see Chapter 2, Back), providing an alternate collateral pathway to reach either the inferior or superior vena cava. It may also provide a pathway for metastasis of prostatic or ovarian cancer cells to vertebral or cranial sites.

Lymph Nodes of Pelvis

The lymph nodes receiving lymph drainage from pelvic organs are variable in number, size, and location. Dividing them into definite groups is often somewhat arbitrary. Four primary groups of nodes are located in or adjacent to the pelvis, named for blood vessels with which they are associated (Fig. 6.20):

- **External iliac lymph nodes:** lie above the pelvic brim, along the external iliac vessels. They receive lymph mainly from the inguinal lymph nodes; however, they receive lymph from pelvic viscera, especially the superior parts of the middle to anterior pelvic organs. Whereas most lymphatic drainage from the pelvis tends to parallel routes of venous drainage, lymphatic drainage to the external iliac nodes does not. These nodes drain into the common iliac nodes.
- **Internal iliac lymph nodes:** clustered around the anterior and posterior divisions of the internal iliac artery and the origins of the gluteal arteries. They receive drainage from the inferior pelvic viscera, deep perineum, and gluteal region and drain into the common iliac nodes.
- **Sacral lymph nodes:** lie in the concavity of the sacrum, adjacent to the median sacral vessels. They receive lymph from postero-inferior pelvic viscera and drain either to internal or

common iliac nodes.

- **Common iliac lymph nodes:** lie superior to the pelvic brim, along the common iliac blood vessels (Fig. 6.20), and receive drainage from the three main groups listed above. These nodes begin a common route for drainage from the pelvis that passes next to the lumbar (caval/aortic) nodes. Inconstant direct drainage to the common iliac nodes occurs from some pelvic organs (e.g., from the neck of the bladder and inferior vagina).

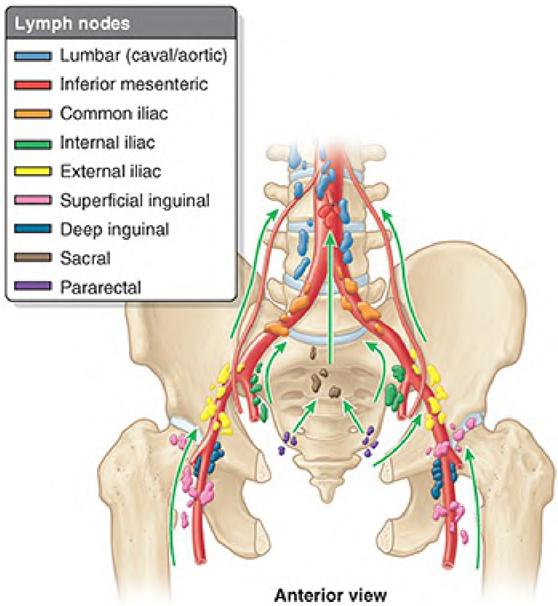


FIGURE 6.20. **Lymph nodes of pelvis.**

Additional minor groups of lymph nodes (e.g., the **pararectal nodes**) occupy the connective tissue along the branches of the internal iliac vessels.

Both primary and minor groups of pelvic nodes are highly interconnected, so that many nodes can be removed without disturbing drainage. The interconnections also allow cancer to spread in virtually any direction, to any pelvic or abdominal viscus. While the lymphatic drainage tends to parallel the venous drainage (except for that to the external iliac nodes, where proximity provides a rough guide), the pattern is not sufficiently predictable to allow the progress of metastatic cancer from pelvic organs to be anticipated or staged in a manner comparable to that of breast cancer progressing through the axillary nodes. Lymphatic drainage from the specific pelvic organs is described following the description of the pelvic viscera.

Pelvic Nerves

The pelvis is innervated mainly by the **sacral** and **coccygeal spinal nerves** and the pelvic part of the autonomic nervous system. The piriformis and coccygeus muscles form a bed for the sacral and coccygeal nerve plexuses (Fig. 6.21). The anterior rami of the S2 and S3 nerves emerge between the digitations of these muscles.

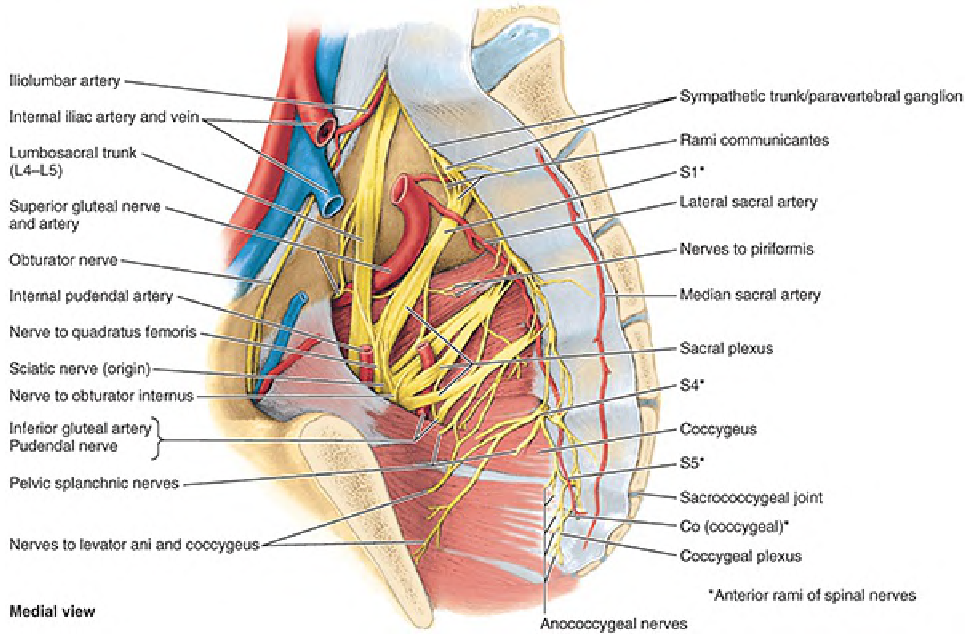


FIGURE 6.21. Nerves and nerve plexuses of pelvis. Somatic nerves (sacral and coccygeal nerve plexuses) and pelvic (sacral) part of sympathetic trunk. Although located in the pelvis, most of the nerves seen here are involved with the innervation of the lower limb rather than the pelvic structures.

OBTURATOR NERVE

The obturator nerve arises from the anterior rami of spinal nerves L2–L4 of the lumbar plexus in the abdomen (greater pelvis) and enters the lesser pelvis. It runs in the extraperitoneal fat along the lateral wall of the pelvis to the obturator canal, an opening in the obturator membrane that otherwise fills the obturator foramen. As it passes through the canal and enters the thigh, it divides into anterior and posterior parts that supply the medial thigh muscles. No pelvic structures are supplied by the obturator nerve.

LUMBOSACRAL TRUNK

At or immediately superior to the pelvic brim, the descending part of the L4 nerve unites with the anterior ramus of the L5 nerve to form the thick, cord-like **lumbosacral trunk** (Figs. 6.21 and 6.22; see Fig. 6.9D). The trunk passes inferiorly, on the anterior surface of the ala of the sacrum, and joins the sacral plexus.

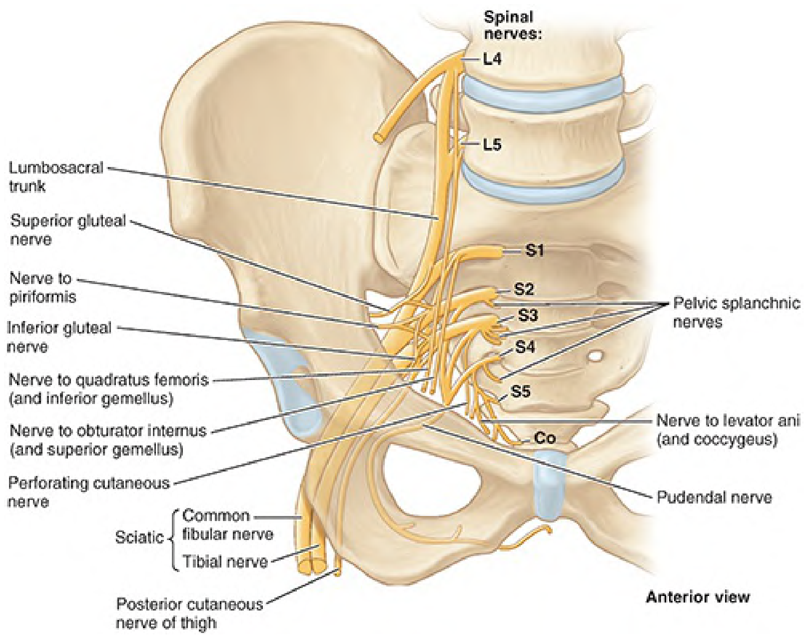


FIGURE 6.22. **Somatic nerves of pelvis: sacral plexus.**

SACRAL PLEXUS

This plexus is demonstrated in Figure 6.22, and the segmental composition and distribution of the nerves derived from it are listed in Table 6.5. The following text provides additional information about the formation of the nerves and their courses.

TABLE 6.5. SOMATIC NERVES OF PELVIS

Nerve	Origin	Distribution
Sciatic	L4, L5, S1, S2, S3	Articular branches to hip joint and muscular branches to flexors of the knee in the thigh and all muscles in the leg and foot
Superior gluteal	L4, L5, S1	Gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, and tensor fasciae latae muscles
Nerve to quadratus femoris (and inferior gemellus)	L4, L5, S1	Quadratus femoris and inferior gemellus muscles
Inferior gluteal	L5, S1, S2	Gluteus maximus
Nerve to obturator internus (and superior gemellus)	L5, S1, S2	Obturator internus and superior gemellus muscles
Nerve to piriformis	S1, S2	Piriformis muscle
Posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh	S2, S3	Cutaneous branches to the buttocks and uppermost medial and posterior surfaces of the thigh
Perforating cutaneous	S2, S3	Cutaneous branches to medial part of the buttocks
Pudendal	S2, S3, S4	Structures in perineum: sensory branches to external genitalia; muscular branches to perineal muscles, external urethral sphincter, and external anal sphincter

Pelvic splanchnic	S2, S3, S4	Pelvic viscera via inferior hypogastric and pelvic plexuses
Nerves to levator ani and coccygeus	S3, S4	Levator ani and coccygeus muscles

The **sacral plexus** is located on the posterolateral wall of the lesser pelvis. The two main nerves arising from the sacral plexus, the sciatic and pudendal nerves, lie external to the parietal pelvic fascia. Most branches of the sacral plexus leave the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen.

The sciatic nerve is the largest nerve in the body. It is formed as the large anterior rami of spinal nerves L4–S3 converge on the anterior surface of the piriformis (Figs. 6.21 and 6.22). As it is formed, the sciatic nerve passes through the greater sciatic foramen, usually inferior to the piriformis, to enter the gluteal region. It then descends along the posterior aspect of the thigh to supply the posterior aspect of the thigh and the entire leg and foot.

The **pudendal nerve** is the main nerve of the perineum and the chief sensory nerve of the external genitalia. Accompanied by the internal pudendal artery, it leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen between the piriformis and coccygeus muscles. It then hooks around the ischial spine and sacrospinous ligament and enters the perineum through the lesser sciatic foramen (Fig. 6.22).

The superior gluteal nerve leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen, superior to the piriformis to supply muscles in the gluteal region (Figs. 6.21 and 6.22).

The inferior gluteal nerve leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen (Fig. 6.22), inferior to the piriformis and superficial to the sciatic nerve, accompanying the inferior gluteal artery. Both nerve and artery break up into several branches that enter the deep surface of the overlying gluteus maximus muscle.

COCCYGEAL PLEXUS

The **coccygeal plexus** is a small network of nerve fibers formed by the anterior rami of S4 and S5 and the **coccygeal nerves** (Fig. 6.21). It lies on the pelvic surface of the coccygeus and supplies this muscle, part of the levator ani, and the sacrococcygeal joint. The **anococcygeal nerves** arising from this plexus pierce the coccygeus and anococcygeal ligament to supply a small area of skin between the tip of the coccyx and the anus.

PELVIC AUTONOMIC NERVES

Autonomic nerves enter the pelvic cavity via four routes (Fig. 6.23):

- Sacral sympathetic trunks: primarily provide sympathetic innervation to the lower limbs
- Peri-arterial plexuses: postsynaptic, sympathetic, vasomotor fibers to superior rectal, ovarian, and internal iliac arteries and their derivative branches
- Hypogastric plexuses: most important route by which sympathetic fibers are conveyed to the pelvic viscera
- Pelvic splanchnic nerves: pathway for parasympathetic innervation of pelvic viscera and descending and sigmoid colon

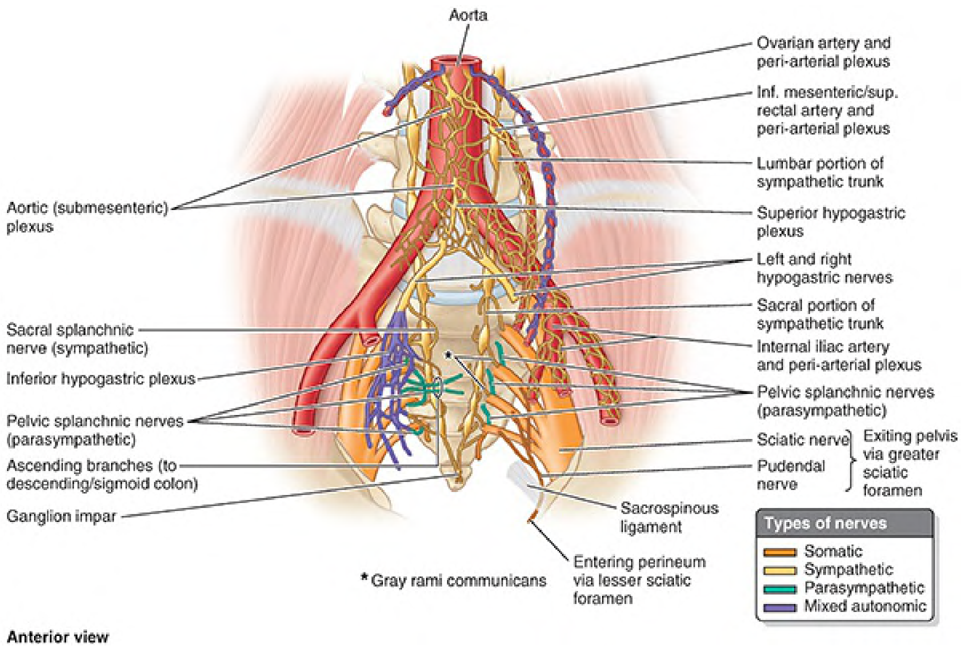


FIGURE 6.23. Autonomic nerves of pelvis. The superior hypogastric plexus is a continuation of the aortic plexus that divides into left and right hypogastric nerves as it enters the pelvis. The hypogastric and pelvic splanchnic nerves merge to form the inferior hypogastric plexuses, which therefore consist of both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers. Autonomic (sympathetic) fibers also enter the pelvis via the sympathetic trunks and peri-arterial plexuses.

The **sacral sympathetic trunks** are the inferior continuation of the lumbar sympathetic trunks (Figs. 6.21 and 6.23). Each of the sacral trunks is diminished in size from that of the lumbar trunks and usually includes four sympathetic ganglia. The sacral trunks descend on the pelvic surface of the sacrum just medial to the pelvic sacral foramina and converge to form the small median **ganglion impar** (coccygeal ganglion) anterior to the coccyx. The sacral sympathetic trunks descend posterior to the rectum in the extraperitoneal connective tissue and send communicating branches (gray rami communicantes) to each of the anterior rami of the sacral and coccygeal nerves. They also send small branches to the median sacral artery and the inferior hypogastric plexus. The primary function of the sacral sympathetic trunks is to provide postsynaptic fibers to the sacral plexus for sympathetic (vasomotor, pilomotor, and sudomotor) innervation of the lower limb.

The peri-arterial plexuses of the ovarian, superior rectal, and internal iliac arteries are minor routes by which sympathetic fibers enter the pelvis. Their primary function is vasomotion of the arteries they accompany.

The **hypogastric plexuses** (superior and inferior) are networks of sympathetic and visceral afferent nerve fibers. The main part of the superior hypogastric plexus is a prolongation of the intermesenteric plexus (see Chapter 5, Abdomen), which lies inferior to the bifurcation of the aorta (Fig. 6.23). It carries fibers conveyed to and from the intermesenteric plexus by the L3 and L4 splanchnic nerves. The superior hypogastric plexus enters the pelvis, dividing into **right** and **left hypogastric nerves**, which descend on the anterior surface of the sacrum. These nerves descend lateral to the rectum within hypogastric sheaths and then spread in a fan-like fashion as they merge with the pelvic splanchnic nerves to form the right and left inferior hypogastric

plexuses.

The **inferior hypogastric plexuses** thus contain both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers as well as visceral afferent fibers, which continue through the lamina of the hypogastric sheath to the pelvic viscera, upon which they form subplexuses collectively referred to as the **pelvic plexuses**. In both sexes, subplexuses are associated with the lateral aspects of the rectum and inferolateral surfaces of the bladder. In addition, subplexuses in the male are also associated with the prostate and seminal glands. In females, subplexuses are also associated with the cervix of the uterus and the lateral fornices of the vagina.

Pelvic splanchnic nerves arise in the pelvis from the anterior rami of spinal nerves S2–S4 of the sacral plexus (Figs. 6.21, 6.22, and 6.23). They convey presynaptic parasympathetic fibers derived from the S2–S4 spinal cord segments, which make up the sacral outflow of the parasympathetic (craniosacral) nervous system, and visceral afferent fibers from cell bodies in the spinal ganglia of the corresponding spinal nerves. The greatest contribution of these fibers is usually from the S3 nerve.

The hypogastric/pelvic system of plexuses, receiving sympathetic fibers via lumbar splanchnic nerves and parasympathetic fibers via pelvic splanchnic nerves, innervate the pelvic viscera. Although the sympathetic component largely produces vasomotion as elsewhere, here, it also inhibits peristaltic contraction of the rectum and stimulates contraction of the internal genital organs during orgasm, producing ejaculation in the male.

Because the pelvis does not include a cutaneous area, pelvic sympathetic fibers do not produce pilomotion or vasomotion functions. The parasympathetic fibers distributed within the pelvis stimulate contraction of the rectum and bladder for defecation and urination, respectively. Parasympathetic fibers in the prostatic plexus penetrate the pelvic floor to reach the erectile bodies of the external genitalia, producing erection.

VISCERAL AFFERENT INNERVATION IN PELVIS

Visceral afferent fibers travel with autonomic nerve fibers, although the sensory impulses are conducted centrally, retrograde to the efferent impulses conveyed by the autonomic fibers. All visceral afferent fibers conducting reflexive sensation (information that does not reach consciousness) travel with parasympathetic fibers. Therefore, in the case of the pelvis, they travel through the pelvic and inferior hypogastric plexuses and the pelvic splanchnic nerves to the spinal sensory ganglia of spinal nerves S2–S4.

The paths followed by visceral afferent fibers conducting pain from the pelvic viscera differ in terms of course and destination, depending on whether the viscus or part of the viscus from which the pain is emanating is located superior or inferior to the **pelvic pain line**. Except in the case of the alimentary canal, the pelvic pain line corresponds to the inferior limit of the peritoneum (see Table 6.3, Figs. B and C). Intraperitoneal abdominopelvic viscera, or aspects of visceral structures that are in contact with the peritoneum, are superior to the pain line. Subperitoneal pelvic viscera or portions of viscera are inferior to the pain line. In the case of the alimentary tract (large intestine), the pain line does not correlate with the peritoneum; the pain line occurs in the middle of the sigmoid colon.

Visceral afferent fibers conducting pain impulses from abdominopelvic viscera superior to the pain line follow sympathetic fibers retrograde, ascending through hypogastric/aortic plexuses, abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves, lumbar sympathetic trunks, and white rami communicantes to reach cell bodies in the inferior thoracic/upper lumbar spinal ganglia. Afferent fibers conducting pain impulses from the viscera or portions of viscera inferior to the pain line follow the parasympathetic fibers retrograde through the pelvic and inferior hypogastric plexuses and pelvic splanchnic nerves to reach cell bodies in the spinal sensory ganglia of S2–S4.

CLINICAL BOX

NEUROVASCULAR STRUCTURES OF PELVIS

Iatrogenic Injury of Ureters

INJURY DURING LIGATION OF UTERINE ARTERY

The fact that the ureter is crossed by the uterine artery near the lateral part of the fornix of the vagina is clinically important. As indicated in the description of the uterine artery, descriptions of the relationship of the artery to the ureter tend to be oversimplified as "passing superior to the ureter." In fact, the artery winds 50% or more of the way around the ureter, passing at least both superior and anterior to the ureter. The ureter is in danger of being inadvertently clamped (crushed), ligated, or transected during a hysterectomy (excision of uterus) when the uterine artery is ligated and severed to remove the uterus. The point at which the uterine artery and ureter cross lies approximately 2 cm superior to the ischial spine.

INJURY DURING LIGATION OF OVARIAN ARTERY

The ureters are vulnerable to injury when the ovarian vessels are ligated during an oophorectomy (excision of ovary) because these structures are close to each other as they cross the pelvic brim.

Ligation of Internal Iliac Artery and Collateral Circulation in Pelvis

Occasionally, the internal iliac artery becomes stenotic (the lumen becomes narrow) due to atherosclerotic cholesterol deposit (Fig. B6.6) or is surgically ligated to control pelvic hemorrhage. Because of the numerous anastomoses between the artery's branches and adjacent arteries (see Fig. 6.16; Table 6.4), ligation does not stop blood flow but it does reduce blood pressure, allowing hemostasis (arrest of bleeding) to

occur. Examples of collateral pathways to the internal iliac artery include the following pairs of anastomosing arteries: lumbar and iliolumbar, median (middle) sacral and lateral sacral, superior rectal and middle rectal, and inferior gluteal and profunda femoris artery. Blood flow in the artery is maintained, although it may be reversed in the anastomotic branch. The collateral pathways may maintain the blood supply to the pelvic viscera, gluteal region, and genital organs.

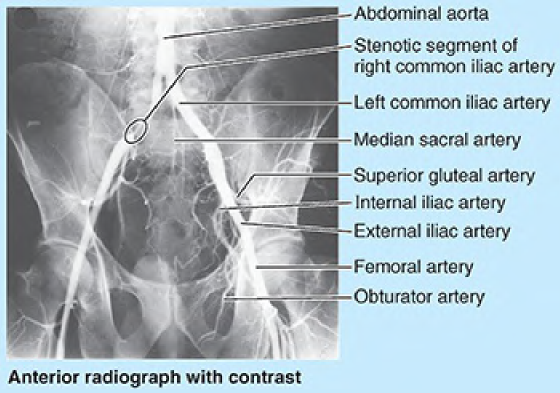


FIGURE B6.6. Iliac arteriogram. Radiopaque dye was injected into the abdominal aorta in the lumbar region. There is a site of narrowing (stenosis) of the right common iliac artery (circled area).

Injury to Pelvic Nerves

During childbirth, the fetal head may compress the nerves of the mother's sacral plexus, producing pain in the lower limbs. The obturator nerve is vulnerable to injury during surgery (e.g., during removal of cancerous lymph nodes from the lateral pelvic wall). Injury to this nerve may cause painful spasms of the adductor muscles of the thigh and sensory deficits in the medial thigh region. Injury to the nerve to the levator ani, including its branches to the pubococcygeus and/or puborectalis, due to stretching of the nerve during a vaginal birth, may result in a loss of support of the pelvic viscera and urinary or fecal incontinence similar to that resulting from tearing of the muscle.

The Bottom Line: Neurovascular Structures of Pelvis

Progressing from the pelvic cavity outward, as when dissecting the pelvis, the retroperitoneal hypogastric/pelvic autonomic nerve plexuses are encountered first (nearest the viscera), then pelvic arteries, pelvic veins, and finally the pelvic somatic nerves and sympathetic trunks, the latter two being adjacent to the pelvic walls.

Pelvic arteries: Multiple anastomosing arteries provide a collateral circulatory system that helps ensure an adequate blood supply to the greater and lesser pelves. Most arterial blood is delivered to the lesser pelvis by the internal iliac arteries, which commonly bifurcate into an anterior division (providing all the visceral branches) and a posterior

division (usually exclusively parietal). ■ Postnatally, the umbilical arteries become occluded distal to the origin of the superior vesical arteries and, in the male, the arteries to the ductus deferens. ■ The inferior vesical (males) and uterine arteries (females) supply the inferior bladder and pelvic urethra. The inferior vesical artery also supplies the prostate. The vaginal artery supplies the superior vagina. ■ The uterine artery is exclusively female, but both sexes have middle rectal arteries.

Parietal branches of the anterior division of the internal iliac in both sexes include the obturator, inferior gluteal, and internal pudendal arteries, the main branches of which arise outside of the lesser pelvis. ■ A clinically significant aberrant obturator artery arises from the inferior epigastric vessels in approximately 20% of the population. ■ The iliolumbar, superior gluteal, and lateral sacral arteries are parietal branches of the posterior division of the internal iliac artery, distributed outside of the lesser pelvis. ■ The iliolumbar artery is a major supplier to structures of the iliac fossae (greater pelvis). ■ The gonadal arteries of both sexes descend into the greater pelvis from the abdominal aorta, but only the ovarian arteries enter the lesser pelvis.

Pelvic veins: The venous plexuses associated with and named for the various pelvic viscera intercommunicate with each other and the internal vertebral (epidural) venous plexuses of the vertebral canal. However, most venous blood exits the pelvis via the internal iliac veins.

Pelvic lymph drainage and nodes: Lymphatic drainage from the pelvis follows a pattern that mainly, but not completely, follows the pattern of venous drainage through variable minor and major groups of lymph nodes, the latter including the sacral and internal, external, and common iliac nodes. ■ Aspects of the anterior to middle pelvic organs, approximately at the level of (and including) the roof of the undistended urinary bladder, drain to the external iliac nodes, independent of the venous drainage. ■ The pelvic lymph nodes are highly interconnected, so that lymphatic drainage (and metastatic cancer cells) can pass in almost any direction, to any pelvic or abdominal organ.

Pelvic nerves: Somatic nerves within the pelvis form the sacral plexus, primarily concerned with innervation of the lower limbs and perineum. ■ The pelvic portions of the sympathetic trunks are also primarily concerned with innervation of the lower limbs. ■ Autonomic nerves are primarily brought to the pelvis via the superior hypogastric plexus (sympathetic fibers) and pelvic splanchnic nerves (parasympathetic fibers), the two merging to form the inferior hypogastric and pelvic plexuses. ■ Sympathetic fibers to the pelvis produce vasomotion and contraction of internal genital organs during orgasm; they also inhibit rectal peristalsis. ■ Pelvic parasympathetic fibers stimulate bladder and rectal emptying and extend to the erectile bodies of the external genitalia to produce erection. ■ Visceral afferent fibers travel retrogradely along the autonomic nerve fibers. ■ Visceral

afferents conveying unconscious reflex sensation follow the course of the parasympathetic fibers to the spinal sensory ganglia of S2–S4, as do those transmitting pain sensations from the viscera inferior to the pelvic pain line (structures that do not contact the peritoneum plus the distal sigmoid colon and rectum). ■ Visceral afferent fibers conducting pain from structures superior to the pelvic pain line (structures in contact with the peritoneum, except for the distal sigmoid colon and rectum) follow the sympathetic fibers retrogradely to inferior thoracic and superior lumbar spinal ganglia.

PELVIC VISCERA

The **pelvic viscera** include the distal parts of the urinary system and gastrointestinal tract and the reproductive system. Although the sigmoid colon and parts of the small intestine extend into the pelvic cavity, they are abdominal rather than pelvic viscera. The bladder and rectum—true pelvic viscera—are inferior continuations of systems encountered in the abdomen. Except for features related to sharing of the male urethra by the urinary and reproductive tracts, and physical relationships to the respective reproductive organs, there are relatively few distinctions between the male and female pelvic urinary and gastrointestinal organs.

Urinary Organs

The pelvic urinary organs (Fig. 6.24A) are as follows:

- pelvic portions of the ureters, which carry urine from the kidneys
- urinary bladder, which temporarily stores urine
- urethra, which conducts urine from the bladder to the exterior

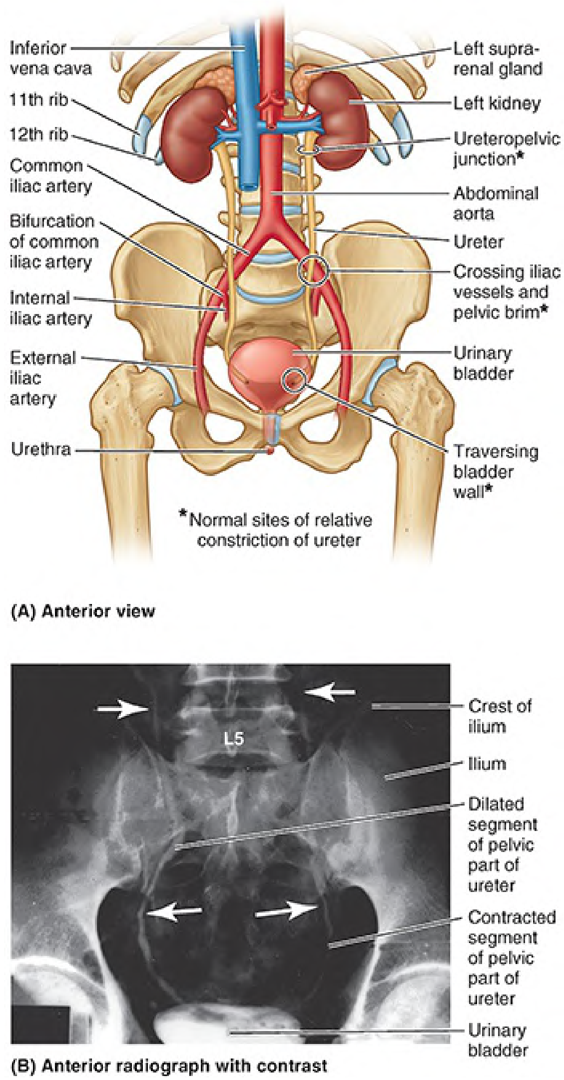


FIGURE 6.24. **Genito-urinary viscera. A.** Course and normal sites of relative constriction of ureters. **B.** Normal intravenous urogram. The arrows indicate transient narrowing of the lumina of the ureters resulting from peristaltic contraction.

URETERS

The **ureters** are muscular tubes, 25–30 cm long, which connect the kidneys to the urinary bladder. The ureters are retroperitoneal; their superior abdominal portions are described in Chapter 5, Abdomen. As the ureters cross the bifurcation of the common iliac artery (or the beginning of the external iliac artery), they pass over the pelvic brim, thus leaving the abdomen and entering the lesser pelvis (Fig. 6.24A, B). The pelvic parts of the ureters run on the lateral walls of the pelvis, parallel to the anterior margin of the greater sciatic notch, between the parietal pelvic peritoneum and the internal iliac arteries. Opposite the ischial spine, they curve anteromedially, superior to the levator ani, and enter the urinary bladder. The inferior ends of the ureters are surrounded by the vesical venous plexus (see Fig. 6.19B, C).

The ureters pass obliquely through the muscular wall of the urinary bladder in an inferomedial direction, entering the outer surface of the bladder approximately 5 cm apart, but their internal

openings into the lumen of the empty bladder are separated by only half that distance. This oblique passage through the bladder wall forms a one-way "flap valve," the internal pressure of the filling bladder causing the intramural passage to collapse. In addition, contractions of the bladder musculature act as a sphincter preventing the reflux of urine into the ureters when the bladder contracts, increasing internal pressure during micturition. Urine passes down the ureters by means of peristaltic contractions, a few drops being transported at intervals of 12–20 seconds (Fig. 6.24B).

In males, the only structure that passes between the ureter and the peritoneum is the ductus deferens (see Fig. 6.34); it crosses the ureter within the ureteric fold of peritoneum. The ureter lies posterolateral to the ductus deferens and enters the posterosuperior angle of the bladder, just superior to the seminal gland.

In females, the ureter passes medial to the origin of the uterine artery and continues to the level of the ischial spine, where it is crossed superiorly by the uterine artery (see the Clinical Box "Iatrogenic Injury of Ureters" in this chapter). It then passes close to the lateral part of the fornix of the vagina and enters the posterosuperior angle of the bladder.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Pelvic Portion of Ureters. The arterial supply to the pelvic parts of the ureters is variable, with ureteric branches extending from the common iliac, internal iliac, and ovarian arteries (Fig. 6.25; Table 6.4). The ureteric branches anastomose along the length of the ureter forming a continuous blood supply, although not necessarily effective collateral pathways. The most constant arteries supplying the terminal parts of the ureter in females are branches of the uterine arteries. The source of similar branches in males are the inferior vesical arteries. The blood supply of the ureters is a matter of great concern to surgeons operating in the region (see the Clinical Box "Iatrogenic Compromise of Ureteric Blood Supply" in this chapter).

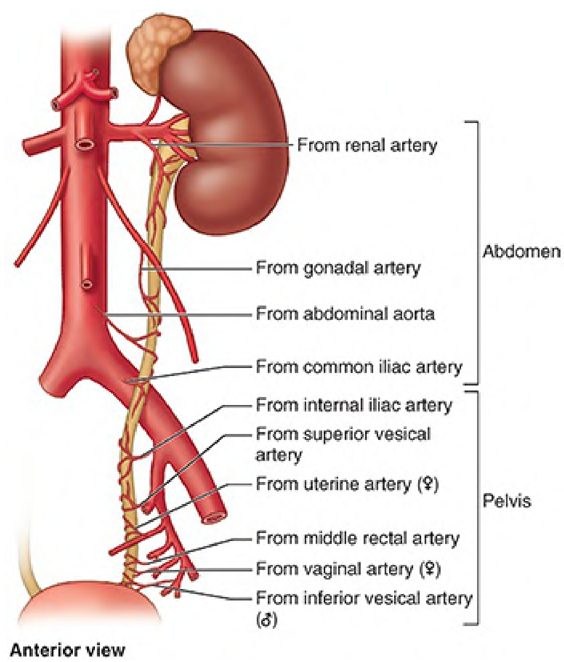


FIGURE 6.25. Blood supply of ureter. Branches supplying the abdominal half of the ureter approach medially, while

those supplying the pelvic half approach laterally. During surgery, the ureters are avoided and left undisturbed when possible. If necessary, traction of the ureters is applied gently and only toward the blood supply to avoid disruption of the small branches.

The venous drainage from the pelvic parts of the ureters generally parallels the arterial supply, draining to veins with corresponding names. Lymphatic vessels pass primarily to common and internal iliac nodes (see Fig. 6.20).

Innervation of Ureters. The nerves to the ureters derive from adjacent autonomic plexuses (renal, aortic, superior, and inferior hypogastric; Fig. 6.26). The ureters are primarily superior to the pelvic pain line. Afferent (pain) fibers from the ureters follow sympathetic fibers in a retrograde direction to reach the spinal ganglia and spinal cord segments of T10–L2 or L3. Ureteric pain is usually referred to the ipsilateral lower quadrant of the abdomen, especially to the groin (inguinal region) (see the Clinical Box "Ureteric Calculi" in this chapter).

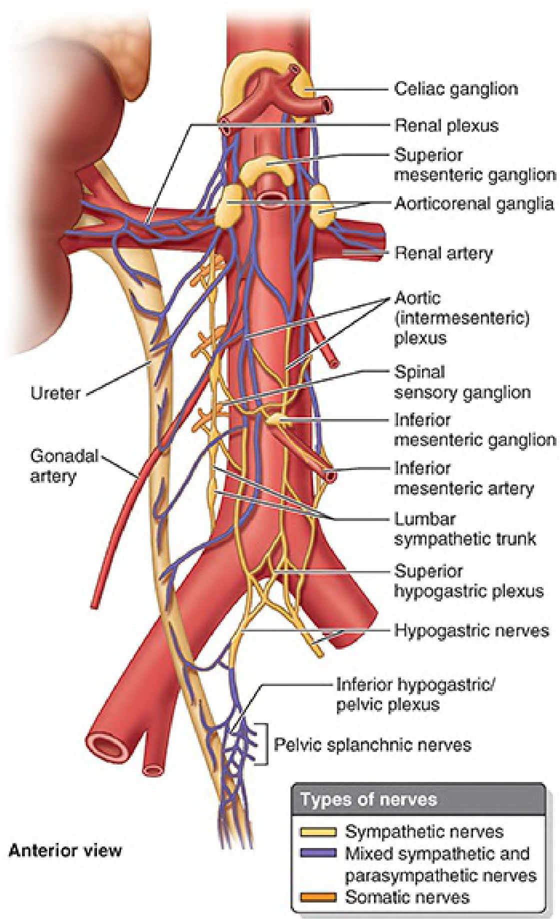


FIGURE 6.26. Innervation of ureters. Nerve fibers from the renal, aortic, and superior and inferior hypogastric plexuses extend to the ureter, carrying visceral afferent and sympathetic fibers to the T10–L2(3) spinal sensory ganglia and cord segments. Parasympathetic fibers, from the S2–S4 spinal cord segments, are distributed to the pelvic part of the ureter. Extrinsic ANS fibers are not essential for the initiation and propagation of ureteric peristalsis.

Urinary Bladder. The **urinary bladder**, a hollow viscus with strong muscular walls, is characterized by its distensibility (Fig. 6.27A). The bladder is a temporary reservoir for urine and

varies in size, shape, position, and relationships according to its content and the state of neighboring viscera. When empty, the adult urinary bladder is located in the lesser pelvis, lying partially superior to and partially posterior to the pubic bones (Fig. 6.27B). It is separated from these bones by the potential retropubic space (of Retzius) and lies mostly inferior to the peritoneum, resting on the pubic bones and pubic symphysis anteriorly and the prostate (males) or anterior wall of the vagina (females) posteriorly (Fig. 6.27A, B). The bladder is relatively free within the extraperitoneal subcutaneous fatty tissue, except for its neck, which is held firmly by the lateral ligaments of bladder and the tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia—especially its anterior component, the puboprostatic ligament in males and the pubovesical ligament in females (see Fig. 6.14A). In females, since the posterior aspect of the bladder rests directly upon the anterior wall of the vagina, the lateral attachment of the vagina to the tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia, the paracolpium, is an indirect but important factor in supporting the urinary bladder (see Fig. 6.14B) (DeLancey, 1992; Ashton-Miller & DeLancey, 2007).

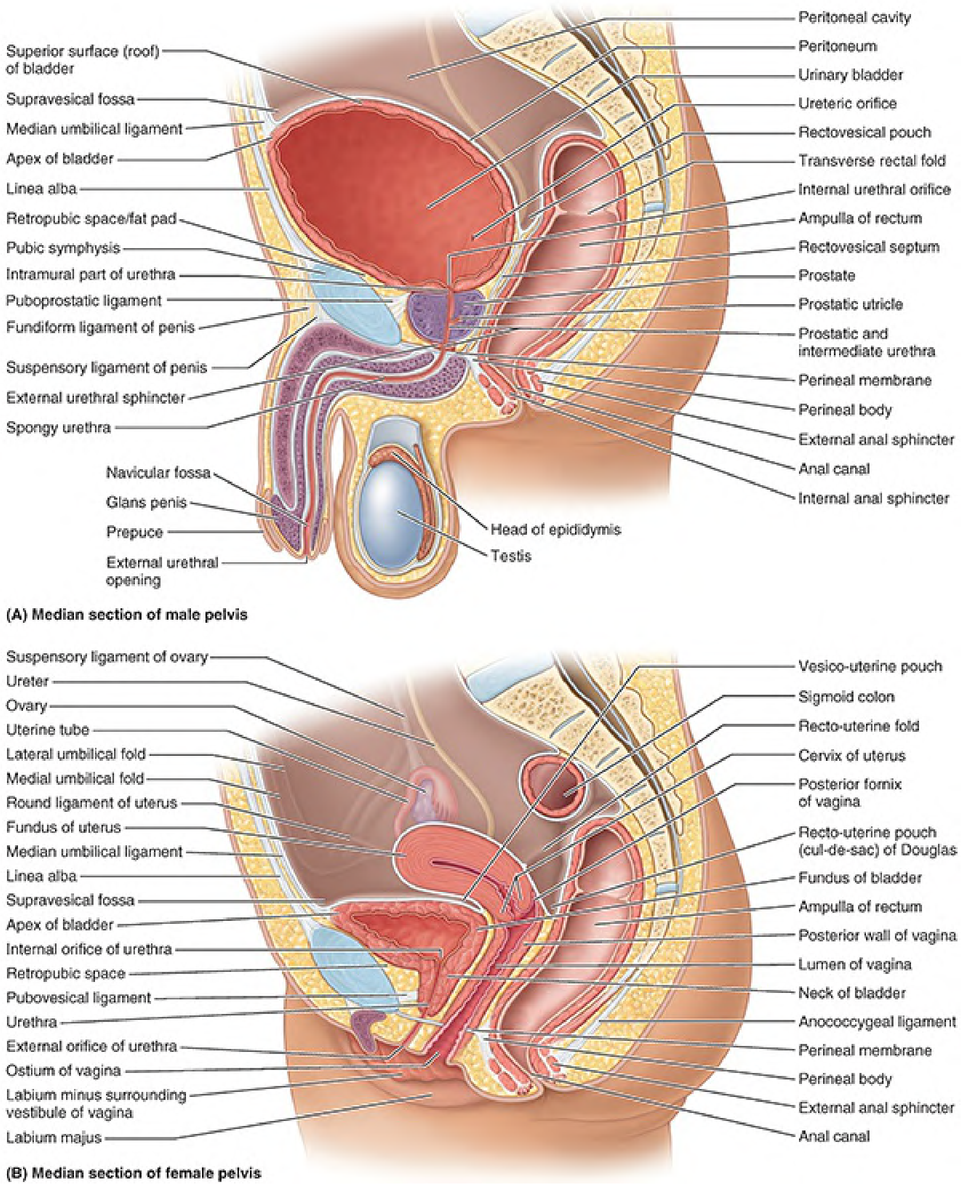


FIGURE 6.27. Viscera in hemisected male and female pelves. A. Male pelvis. The urinary bladder is distended, as when full. Compare its relation to the anterior abdominal wall, pubic symphysis, and level of the supravesical fossa to that of the nondistended (empty) bladder in part **B**. **B.** Female pelvis, the uterus was sectioned in its own median plane and is depicted as though it coincided with the median plane of the body, which is seldom the case. With the bladder empty, the normal disposition of the uterus shown here—bent on itself (anteflexed) at the junction of the body and cervix of the uterus and tipped anteriorly (anteverted)—causes its weight to be borne mainly by the bladder. The urethra lies anterior and parallel to the lower half of the vagina.

In infants and young children, the urinary bladder is almost entirely in the abdomen even when empty (Fig. 6.28A). The bladder usually enters the greater pelvis by 6 years of age; however, it is not located entirely within the lesser pelvis until after puberty. An empty bladder in adults lies almost entirely in the lesser pelvis, its superior surface level with the superior margin of the pubic symphysis (Fig. 6.28B). As the bladder fills, it enters the greater pelvis as it ascends in the extraperitoneal fatty tissue of the anterior abdominal wall (Fig. 6.27A). In some individuals, a full bladder may ascend to the level of the umbilicus.

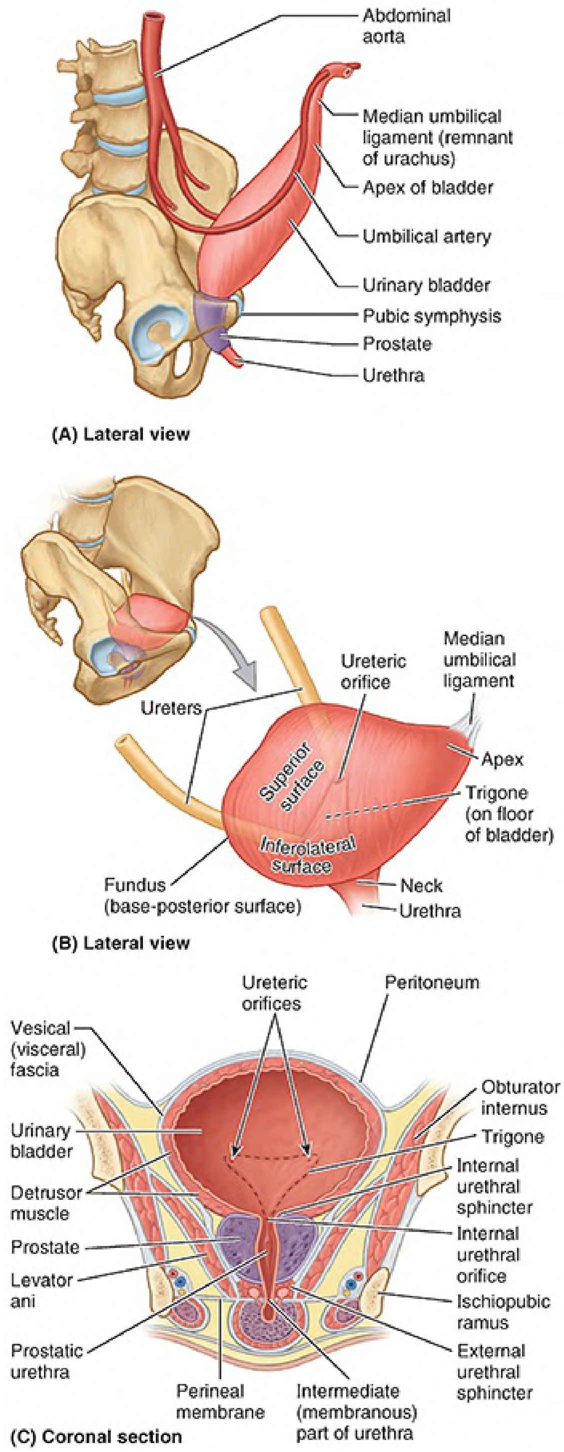


FIGURE 6.28. Urinary bladder and prostatic urethra. A. Bladder of an infant. The bladder lies almost entirely in the abdominal cavity. **B.** Surfaces of bladder. **C.** Coronal section of adult urinary bladder and prostate in plane of prostatic urethra.

At the end of micturition (urination), the bladder of a normal adult contains virtually no urine. When empty, the bladder is somewhat tetrahedral (Fig. 6.28B) and externally has an apex, body,

fundus, and neck. The bladder's four surfaces (superior, two inferolateral, and posterior) are most apparent when viewing an empty, contracted bladder that has been removed from a cadaver, when the bladder appears rather boat shaped.

The **apex of the bladder** points toward the superior edge of the pubic symphysis when the bladder is empty. The **fundus of the bladder** is opposite the apex, formed by the somewhat convex posterior wall. The **body of the bladder** is the major portion of the bladder between the apex and the fundus. The fundus and inferolateral surfaces meet inferiorly at the **neck of the bladder**.

The **bladder bed** is formed by the structures that directly contact it. On each side, the pubic bones and fascia covering the levator ani and superior obturator internus muscle lie in contact with the inferolateral surfaces of the bladder (Fig. 6.28C). Only the superior surface is covered by peritoneum. Consequently, in males, the fundus is separated from the rectum centrally by only the fascial rectovesical septum (Fig. 6.27A) and laterally by the seminal glands and ampullae of the ductus deferentes (see Fig. 6.34). In females, the fundus is directly related to the superior anterior wall of the vagina (Fig. 6.27B). The bladder is enveloped by a loose connective tissue visceral fascia.

The walls of the bladder are composed chiefly of the **detrusor muscle**. Toward the neck of the male bladder, the muscle fibers form the involuntary **internal urethral sphincter**. This sphincter contracts during ejaculation to prevent retrograde ejaculation (ejaculatory reflux) of semen into the bladder. Some fibers run radially and assist in opening the **internal urethral orifice**. In males, the muscle fibers in the neck of the bladder are continuous with the fibromuscular tissue of the prostate, whereas in females, these fibers are continuous with muscle fibers in the wall of the urethra.

The **ureteric orifices** and the internal urethral orifice are at the angles of the **trigone of the bladder** (Fig. 6.28C). The ureteric orifices are encircled by loops of detrusor musculature that tighten when the bladder contracts to assist in preventing reflux of urine into the ureters. The **uvula of the bladder** is a slight elevation of the trigone. It is usually more prominent in older men owing to enlargement of the posterior lobe of the prostate (see Fig. 6.30A).

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Bladder. The main arteries supplying the bladder are branches of the internal iliac arteries (see Table 6.4). The superior vesical arteries supply anterosuperior parts of the bladder. In males, the inferior vesical arteries supply the fundus and neck of the bladder. In females, the vaginal arteries replace the inferior vesical arteries of the male and send small branches to postero-inferior parts of the bladder (see Fig. 6.17B). The obturator and inferior gluteal arteries also supply small branches to the bladder.

The veins draining blood from the bladder correspond to the arteries and are tributaries of the internal iliac veins. In males, the vesical venous plexus is continuous with the prostatic venous plexus (see Fig. 6.19C), and the combined plexus complex envelops the fundus of the bladder and prostate, the seminal glands, the ductus deferentes, and the inferior ends of the ureters. It also receives blood from the deep dorsal vein of the penis, which drains into the prostatic venous plexus. The **vesical venous plexus** is the venous network that is most directly associated with the bladder itself. It mainly drains through the inferior vesical veins into the internal iliac veins;

however, it may drain through the sacral veins into the internal vertebral venous plexuses. In females, the vesical venous plexus envelops the pelvic part of the urethra and the neck of the bladder, receives blood from the dorsal vein of the clitoris, and communicates with the vaginal or uterovaginal venous plexus (Fig. 6.19B).

Innervation of Bladder. Sympathetic fibers are conveyed from inferior thoracic and upper lumbar spinal cord levels to the vesical (pelvic) plexuses primarily through the hypogastric plexuses and nerves, whereas parasympathetic fibers from sacral spinal cord levels are conveyed by the pelvic splanchnic nerves and the inferior hypogastric plexus (Fig. 6.29). The parasympathetic fibers are motor to the detrusor muscle and inhibitory to the internal urethral sphincter of the male bladder. Consequently, when visceral afferent fibers are stimulated by stretching, the bladder contracts reflexively, the internal urethral sphincter relaxes (in males), and urine flows into the urethra. With toilet training, we learn to suppress this reflex when we do not wish to void. The sympathetic innervation that stimulates ejaculation simultaneously causes contraction of the internal urethral sphincter to prevent reflux of semen into the bladder. A sympathetic response at moments other than ejaculation (e.g., self-consciousness when standing at the urinal in front of a waiting line) can cause the internal sphincter to contract, hampering the ability to urinate until parasympathetic inhibition of the sphincter occurs.

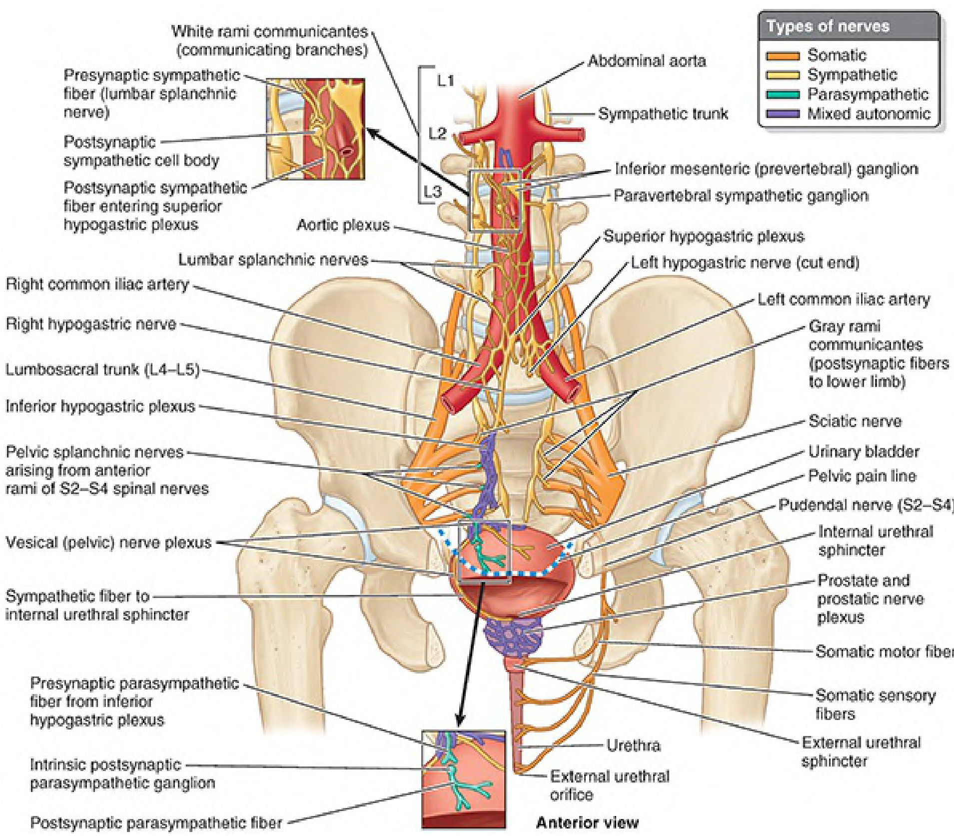


FIGURE 6.29. Innervation of bladder and urethra. Presynaptic sympathetic fibers from the T11–L2 or L3 spinal cord levels involved in innervation of the bladder, prostate, and proximal urethra pass via lumbar splanchnic nerves to the aortic/hypogastric system of plexuses, synapsing in the plexuses en route to the pelvic viscera. Presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the bladder arise from neurons in the S2–S4 spinal cord segments and pass from the anterior rami of spinal nerves S2–S4 via the pelvic splanchnic nerves and the inferior hypogastric and vesical (pelvic) plexuses to the

bladder. They synapse with postsynaptic neurons located on or near the bladder wall. Visceral afferent fibers conveying reflex information and pain sensation from subperitoneal viscera (inferior to the pelvic pain line) follow parasympathetic fibers retrogradely to the S2–S4 spinal ganglia, whereas those conducting pain from the bladder roof (superior to the pelvic pain line) follow sympathetic fibers retrogradely to the T11–L2 or L3 spinal ganglia. The pelvic (sacral) sympathetic trunk primarily serves the lower limb. The somatic nerves shown here are distributed to the perineum.

Sensory fibers from most of the bladder are visceral; reflex afferents follow the course of the parasympathetic fibers, as do those transmitting pain sensations (e.g., as results from overdistension) from the inferior part of the bladder. The superior surface of the bladder is covered with peritoneum and therefore is superior to the pelvic pain line (see Table 6.3, Figs. B and C). Consequently, pain fibers from the superior bladder follow the sympathetic fibers retrogradely to the inferior thoracic and upper lumbar spinal ganglia (T11–L2 or L3).

PROXIMAL (PELVIC) MALE URETHRA

The **male urethra** is a muscular tube (18–22 cm long) that conveys urine from the internal urethral orifice of the urinary bladder to the external urethral orifice, located at the tip of the glans penis (Fig. 6.27A). The urethra also provides an exit for semen (sperms and glandular secretions). For descriptive purposes, the urethra is divided into four parts, demonstrated in Figures 6.27A and 6.30 and described in Table 6.6. The distal intermediate part and spongy urethra are described further with the perineum.

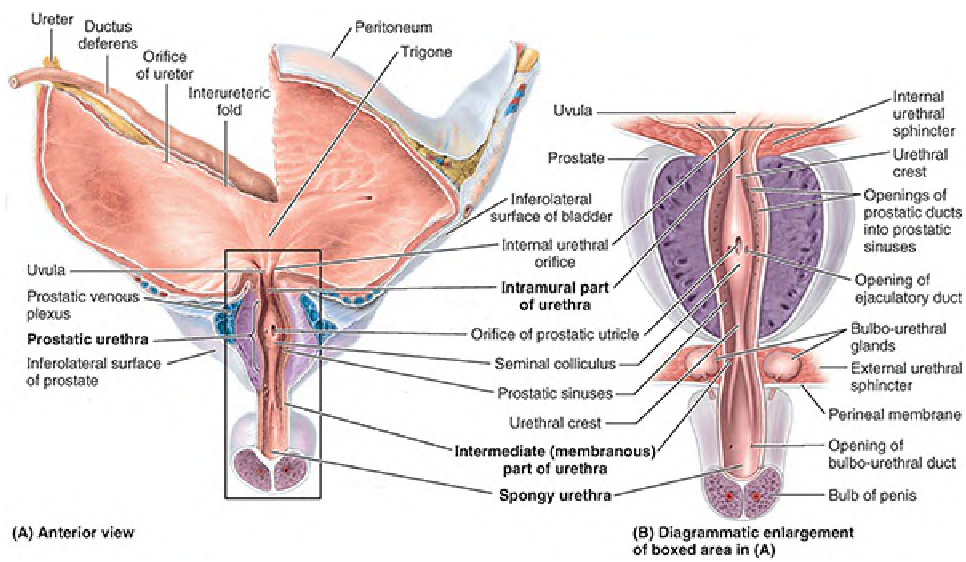


FIGURE 6.30. Interior of male bladder and urethra. A. Interior of bladder. The anterior parts of the bladder, prostate, and urethra are cut away. A portion of the posterior wall of the bladder has been removed to reveal the intramural part of ureter and the ductus deferens posterior to the bladder. The interureteric fold runs between the entrances of the ureters into the bladder lumen, demarcating the superior limit of the trigone of the bladder. The prominence of the posterior wall of the internal urethral orifice (at the tip of the leader line indicating this orifice), when exaggerated, becomes the uvula of the bladder. This small projection is produced by the middle lobe of the prostate. The prostatic fascia encloses the prostatic venous plexus. **B.** Features of urethra. Enlargement of boxed area in part **A**. Note the bulbo-urethral glands are embedded in the substance of the external urethral sphincter.

TABLE 6.6. PARTS OF MALE URETHRA

Part	Length[a]	Location/Disposition	Features
Intramural (preprostatic) part	0.5–1.5 cm	Extends almost vertically through the neck of the bladder	Surrounded by internal urethral sphincter; diameter and length vary, depending on whether bladder is filling or emptying
Prostatic urethra	3.0–4.0 cm	Descends through anterior prostate, forming a gentle, anteriorly concave curve; is bounded anteriorly by a vertical trough-like part (rhabdosphincter) of external urethral sphincter	Widest and most dilatable part; features urethral crest with seminal colliculus, flanked by prostatic sinuses into which prostatic ducts open; ejaculatory ducts open onto colliculus; hence, urinary and reproductive tracts merge in this part
Intermediate (membranous) part	1.0–1.5 cm	Passes through deep perineal pouch, surrounded by circular fibers of external urethral sphincter; penetrates perineal membrane	Narrowest and least distensible part (except for external urethral orifice)
Spongy urethra	~15 cm	Courses through corpus spongiosum; initial widening occurs in the bulb of the penis; widens again distally as navicular fossa (in glans penis)	Longest and most mobile part; bulbo-urethral glands open into bulbous part; distally, urethral glands open into small urethral lacunae entering the lumen of this part

[a]Lengths are provided for purposes of comparison—students should not memorize these lengths.

The **intramural** (**preprostatic**) **part of the urethra** varies in diameter and length, depending on whether the bladder is filling. During filling, the neck of the bladder is tonically contracted so the internal urethral orifice is small and high. During emptying, the neck of the bladder is relaxed so the orifice is wide and low. The most prominent feature of the **prostatic urethra** is the **urethral crest**, a median ridge between bilateral grooves, the **prostatic sinuses** (Fig. 6.30). The secretory **prostatic ducts** open into the prostatic sinuses. The **seminal colliculus** is a rounded eminence in the middle of the urethral crest with a slit-like orifice that opens into a small cul-de-sac, the **prostatic utricle**. The utricle is the vestigial remnant of the embryonic uterovaginal canal, the surrounding walls of which, in the female, constitute the primordium of the uterus and a part of the vagina. The ejaculatory ducts open into the prostatic urethra via minute, slit-like openings located adjacent to and occasionally just within the orifice of the prostatic utricle. Therefore, the urinary and reproductive tracts merge at this point.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Proximal Male Urethra. The intramural and prostatic parts of the urethra are supplied by prostatic branches of the inferior vesical and middle rectal arteries (see Figs. 6.15, 6.16, and 6.17A). The veins from the proximal two parts of the urethra drain into the prostatic venous plexus (see Fig. 6.19C).

Innervation of Proximal Male Urethra. The nerves are derived from the prostatic plexus (mixed sympathetic, parasympathetic, and visceral afferent fibers) (Fig. 6.29). The **prostatic plexus** is one of the pelvic plexuses (an inferior extension of the vesical plexus) arising as organ-specific extensions of the inferior hypogastric plexus.

FEMALE URETHRA

The **female urethra** (approximately 4 cm long and 6 mm in diameter) passes antero-inferiorly from the internal urethral orifice of the urinary bladder (Fig. 6.27B), posterior and then inferior to the pubic symphysis, to the external urethral orifice. The musculature surrounding the internal urethral orifice of the female bladder is not organized into an internal sphincter. The **female external urethral orifice** is located in the vestibule of the vagina, the cleft between the labia minora of the external genitalia, directly anterior to the vaginal orifice (ostium). The urethra lies anterior to the vagina (forming an elevation in the anterior vaginal wall; see Fig. 6.39B). Its axis is parallel to that of the vagina (Fig. 6.27B). The urethra passes with the vagina through the pelvic diaphragm, external urethral sphincter, and perineal membrane.

Urethral glands are present, particularly in the superior part of the urethra. One group of glands on each side, the para-urethral glands, are homologs to the prostate. These glands have a common para-urethral duct, which opens (one on each side) near the external urethral orifice. The external urethral sphincter is located in the perineum and is discussed in the "Perineum" section.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Female Urethra. Blood is supplied to the female urethra by the internal pudendal and vaginal arteries (see Figs. 6.16, 6.17B, and 6.18A). The veins follow the arteries and have similar names (see Fig. 6.19B).

Innervation of Female Urethra. The nerves to the urethra arise from the vesical (nerve) plexus and the pudendal nerve. The pattern is similar to that in males (Fig. 6.29), given the absence of a prostatic plexus and an internal urethra sphincter. Visceral afferents from most of the urethra run in the pelvic splanchnic nerves, but the termination receives somatic afferents from the pudendal nerve. Both the visceral and somatic afferent fibers extend from cell bodies in the S2–S4 spinal ganglia.

Rectum

The **rectum** is the pelvic part of the digestive tract and is continuous proximally with the sigmoid colon (Fig. 6.31) and distally with the anal canal. The **rectosigmoid junction** lies anterior to the S3 vertebra. At this point, the teniae coli of the sigmoid colon spread to form a continuous outer longitudinal layer of smooth muscle, and the fatty omental appendices are discontinued (see Fig. 6.56).

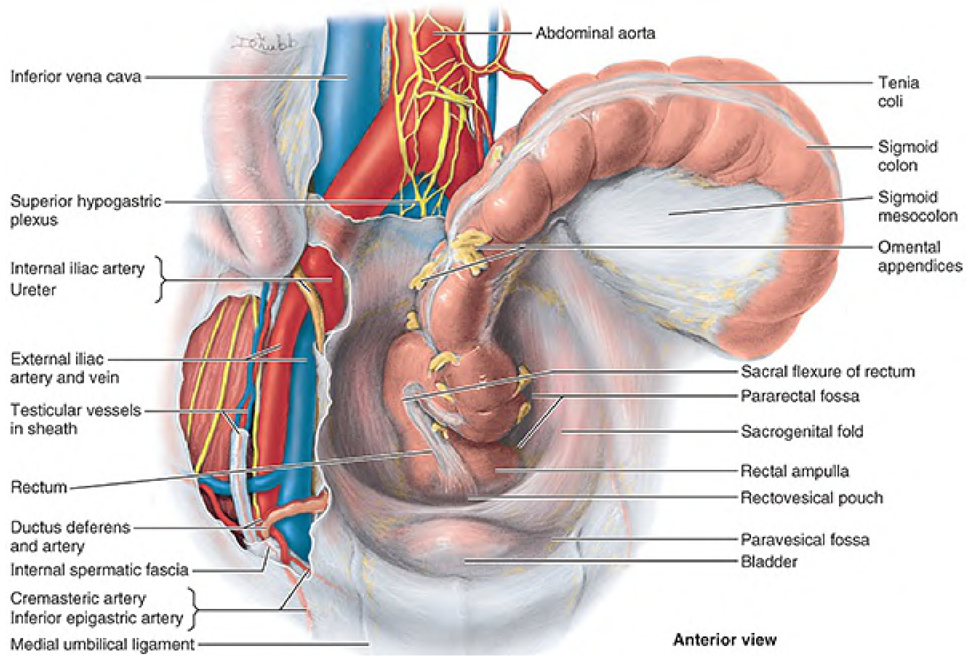


FIGURE 6.31. Sigmoid colon entering lesser pelvis and becoming rectum. The sigmoid colon is intraperitoneal, suspended by the sigmoid mesocolon. The rectum becomes retroperitoneal and then subperitoneal as it descends. The peritoneum has been removed superior to sacral promontory and right iliac fossa, revealing the superior hypogastric plexus lying in the bifurcation of the abdominal aorta and the internal iliac artery, ureter, and ductus deferens crossing the pelvic brim to enter the lesser pelvis.

Although the rectum's name is derived from the Latin term for "straight" (rectus), the term was coined during ancient studies on animals to describe the distal part of the colon. The human rectum is characterized by a number of flexures. The rectum follows the curve of the sacrum and coccyx, forming the **sacral flexure of the rectum**. The rectum ends antero-inferior to the tip of the coccyx, immediately before a sharp postero-inferior angle (the **anorectal flexure of the anal canal**) that occurs as the gut perforates the pelvic diaphragm (levator ani). The roughly 80° anorectal flexure is an important mechanism for fecal continence, being maintained during the resting state by the tonus of the puborectalis muscle, and by its active contraction during peristaltic contractions if defecation is not to occur. With the flexures of the rectosigmoid junction superiorly and the anorectal junction inferiorly, the rectum has an S shape when viewed laterally.

Three sharp **lateral flexures of the rectum** (**superior** and **inferior** on the left side and **intermediate** on the right) are apparent when the rectum is viewed anteriorly (Fig. 6.32). The flexures are formed in relation to three internal infoldings (**transverse rectal folds**): two on the left side and one on the right side. The folds overlie thickened parts of the circular muscle layer of the rectal wall. The dilated terminal part of the rectum, lying directly superior to and supported by the pelvic diaphragm (levator ani) and anococcygeal ligament, is the **ampulla of the rectum** (Figs. 6.27 and 6.31; see Fig. 6.34). The ampulla receives and holds an accumulating fecal mass until it is expelled during defecation. The ability of the ampulla to relax to accommodate the initial and subsequent arrivals of fecal material is another essential element of maintaining fecal continence.

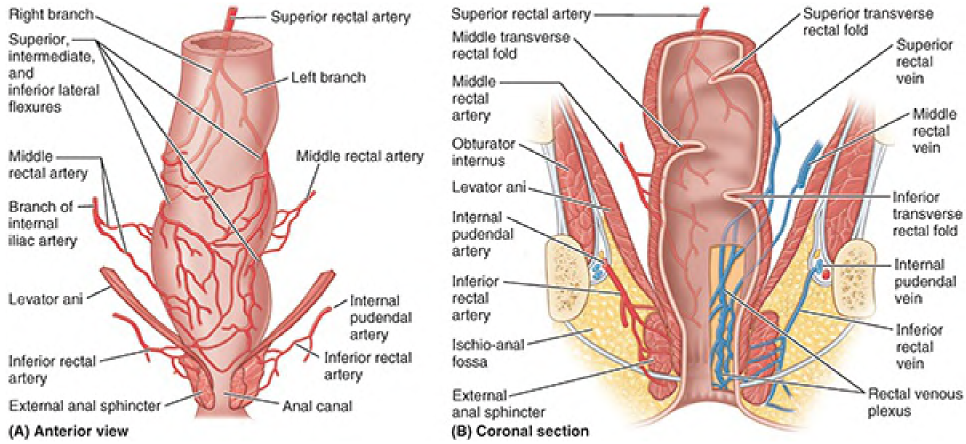


FIGURE 6.32. Arteries and veins of rectum and anal canal. A. Arterial supply. Despite their name, the inferior rectal arteries, which are branches of the internal pudendal arteries, mainly supply the anal canal. **B.** Arterial supply and venous drainage of anorectum within pelvis and perineum. The internal and external rectal venous plexuses are most directly related to the anal canal. The flexures and transverse rectal folds help support the weight of the feces.

Peritoneum covers the anterior and lateral surfaces of the superior third of the rectum, only the anterior surface of the middle third, and no surface of the inferior third because it is subperitoneal (see Table 6.3). In males, the peritoneum reflects from the rectum to the posterior wall of the bladder, where it forms the floor of the rectovesical pouch. In females, the peritoneum reflects from the rectum to the posterior part of the fornix of the vagina, where it forms the floor of the recto-uterine pouch. In both sexes, lateral reflections of peritoneum from the superior third of the rectum form pararectal fossae (Fig. 6.31), which permit the rectum to distend as it fills with feces.

The rectum lies posteriorly against the inferior three sacral vertebrae and the coccyx, anococcygeal ligament, median sacral vessels, and inferior ends of the sympathetic trunks and sacral plexuses. In males, the rectum is related anteriorly to the fundus of the urinary bladder, terminal parts of the ureters, ductus deferentes, seminal glands, and prostate (see Figs. 6.13D and 6.34). The rectovesical septum lies between the fundus of the bladder and the ampulla of the rectum and is closely associated with the seminal glands and prostate. In females, the rectum is related anteriorly to the vagina and is separated from the posterior part of the fornix and the cervix by the recto-uterine pouch (see Figs. 6.13D and 6.27B). Inferior to this pouch, the weak rectovaginal septum separates the superior half of the posterior wall of the vagina from the rectum.

ARTERIAL SUPPLY AND VENOUS DRAINAGE OF RECTUM

The superior rectal artery, the continuation of the abdominal inferior mesenteric artery, supplies the proximal part of the rectum (Fig. 6.32). The right and left middle rectal arteries, which often arise from the anterior divisions of the internal iliac arteries in the pelvis, supply the middle and inferior parts of the rectum. The **inferior rectal arteries**, arising from the internal pudendal arteries in the perineum, supply the anorectal junction and anal canal. Anastomoses between the superior and inferior rectal arteries may provide potential collateral circulation, but anastomoses with the middle rectal arteries are sparse.

Blood from the rectum drains through the superior, middle, and inferior rectal veins (Fig. 6.32B). Anastomoses occur between the portal and systemic veins in the wall of the anal canal. Because the superior rectal vein drains into the portal venous system and the middle and inferior rectal veins drain into the systemic system, these anastomoses are clinically important areas of portocaval anastomosis (see Fig. 5.75A). The submucosal rectal venous plexus surrounds the rectum, communicating with the vesical venous plexus in males and the uterovaginal venous plexus in females. The **rectal venous plexus** consists of two parts (Fig. 6.32B): the **internal rectal venous plexus** just deep to the mucosa of the anorectal junction and the subcutaneous **external rectal venous plexus** external to the muscular wall of the rectum. Although these plexuses bear the term rectal, they are primarily "anal" in terms of location, function, and clinical significance (see "Venous and Lymphatic Drainage of Anal Canal" in this chapter).

INNERVATION OF RECTUM

The nerve supply to the rectum is from the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems (Fig. 6.33). The sympathetic supply is from the lumbar spinal cord, conveyed via lumbar splanchnic nerves and the hypogastric/pelvic plexuses and through the peri-arterial plexus of the inferior mesenteric and superior rectal arteries. The parasympathetic supply is from the S2–S4 spinal cord level, passing via the pelvic splanchnic nerves and the left and right inferior hypogastric plexuses to the rectal (pelvic) plexus. Because the rectum is inferior (distal) to the pelvic pain line (see Table 6.3, Figs. B and C), all visceral afferent fibers follow the parasympathetic fibers retrogradely to the S2–S4 spinal sensory ganglia.

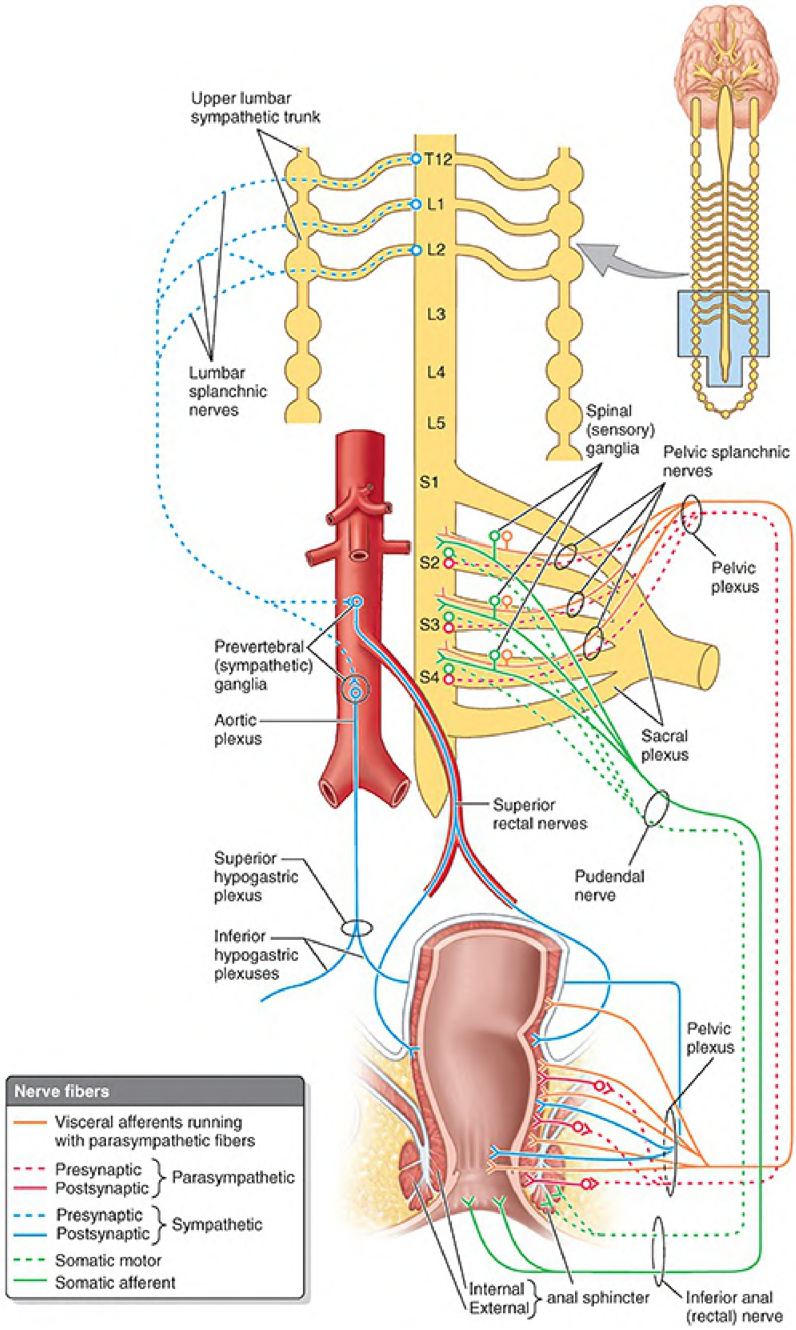


FIGURE 6.33. Innervation of rectum and anal canal. The lumbar and pelvic splanchnic nerves and hypogastric plexuses are retracted laterally for clarity.

CLINICAL BOX

URINARY ORGANS AND RECTUM

Iatrogenic Compromise of Ureteric Blood Supply

The ureters may be injured during abdominal, retroperitoneal, pelvic, or gynecological operations as a result of inadvertently interrupting their blood supply. Identification of the ureters during their full course through the pelvis is an important preventive measure. Ureters vermiculate (exhibit a worm-like peristaltic motion) in response to gentle prodding. This helps the surgeon confirm their identity during dissection.

The longitudinal anastomoses between arterial branches to the ureter are usually adequate to maintain the blood supply along the length of the ureters, but occasionally, they are not. Injury to the ureter during surgery may lead to delayed rupture of the ureter. The denuded ureteral segment becomes gangrenous and leaks or ruptures 7–10 days after surgery. When traction is necessary, it is applied gently within a strictly limited range using padded, blunt retractors. It is useful to realize that although the blood supply to the abdominal segment of the ureter approaches from a medial direction, that of the pelvic segment approaches from a lateral direction (see Fig. 6.25); the ureters should be retracted accordingly.

Ureteric Calculi

The ureters are expansile muscular tubes that dilate (along with the intrarenal collecting system—calices and renal pelvis) if obstructed (Fig. B6.7). Acute obstruction usually results from the presence of a ureteric calculus (L., pebble). The symptoms and severity depend on the location, type, and size of the calculus and on whether it is smooth or spiky. Although passage of small calculi (stones) usually causes little or no pain, larger ones produce severe pain. Stones that descend the length of the ureter cause pain described as migrating “from loin to groin” (from the lateral abdominal to inguinal regions).

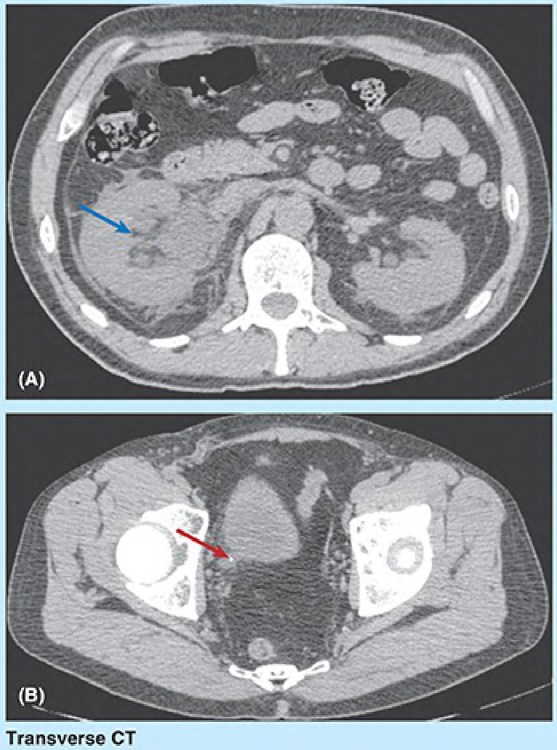


FIGURE B6.7. **Obstructing ureteric calculus. A.** This image at the L1 vertebral level demonstrates an enlarged right kidney with a dilated intrarenal collecting system (blue arrow). **B.** In the lesser pelvis, a calcific density appears at the ureterovesical junction (red arrow) with dilation of the ureter.

The pain caused by a calculus is a colicky (severe) pain, which results from hyperperistalsis in the ureter, superior to the level of the obstruction. Ureteric calculi may cause complete or intermittent obstruction of urinary flow. The obstruction may occur anywhere along the ureter, but it occurs most often at the three sites where the ureters are normally relatively constricted (see Fig. 6.24A): (1) at the junction of the ureters and renal pelves, (2) where they cross the external iliac artery and pelvic brim, and (3) during their passage through the wall of the urinary bladder (Fig. B6.7B).

The presence of calculi can often be confirmed by an abdominal radiograph, an intravenous urogram. Currently, computed tomography (CT) scanning is the preferred method. Ureteric calculi may be removed by open surgery, by endoscopy (endourology), or lithotripsy. Lithotripsy uses shock waves to break up a stone into small fragments that are passed in the urine.

Cystocele, Urethrocele, and Urinary Incontinence

Damage to the pelvic floor during childbirth (e.g., laceration of perineal muscles [see Fig. B6.5B]), a lesion of the nerves supplying them, or rupture of the fascial support of the vagina (the paracolpium [see Fig. 6.14B]) can result in a loss of bladder support, leading to collapse of the bladder onto the anterior vaginal wall. When intra-abdominal pressure increases (as when relaxing the pelvic floor and “bearing down” to

compress the bladder during urination), the base of the bladder and upper urethra is pushed against the anterior wall of the vagina, which lacking support will in turn bulge into the vaginal lumen and may protrude through the vaginal orifice into the vestibule—cystocele (herniation of the urinary bladder) (Fig. B6.8). Even in the absence of a cystocele, weakened support to the vagina or pelvic floor may result in a lack of support of the urethra, which runs in close proximity to (essentially "embedded against") the anterior vaginal wall. The lack of support may alter the normal placement, direction, or angle of the urethra (urethrocele), diminishing the usual passive compression of the urethra that helps to maintain urinary continence during temporary increases in intra-abdominal pressure at times outside of urination (e.g., during physical exertion, coughing, sneezing, or laughing) producing spurting or dribbling of urine—urodynamic stress incontinence. Nonsurgical treatments include pelvic floor muscle exercises, pessaries (devices placed in the vagina to provide support and resistance), and pharmacotherapy. Surgical treatment involves retethering of the vagina and/or the placement of support directly to the urethra (e.g., urethral bulking agents, or fascial slings) to restore its direction and enable passive compression.

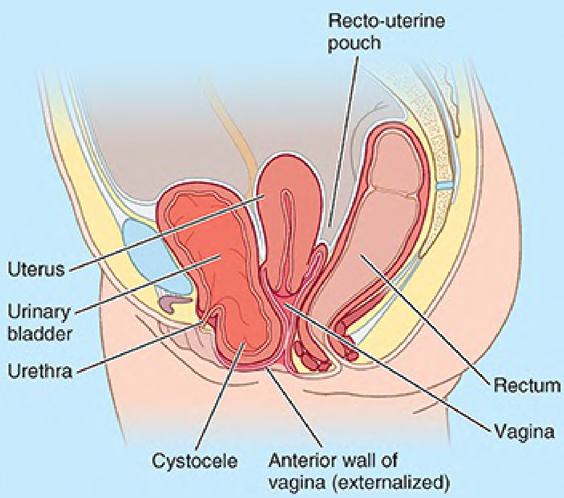


FIGURE B6.8. Prolapse of urinary bladder.

Suprapubic Cystostomy

Although the superior surface of the empty bladder lies at the level of the superior margin of the pubic symphysis, as the bladder fills, it extends superiorly above the symphysis into the loose areolar tissue between the parietal peritoneum and anterior abdominal wall (Fig. B6.9). The bladder then lies adjacent to the wall without the intervention of peritoneum. Consequently, the distended bladder may be punctured (suprapubic cystostomy) or approached surgically superior to the pubic symphysis for the introduction of indwelling catheters or instruments without traversing the peritoneum and entering the peritoneal cavity. Urinary calculi, foreign bodies, and small tumors may also be removed from the bladder through a suprapubic extraperitoneal incision.

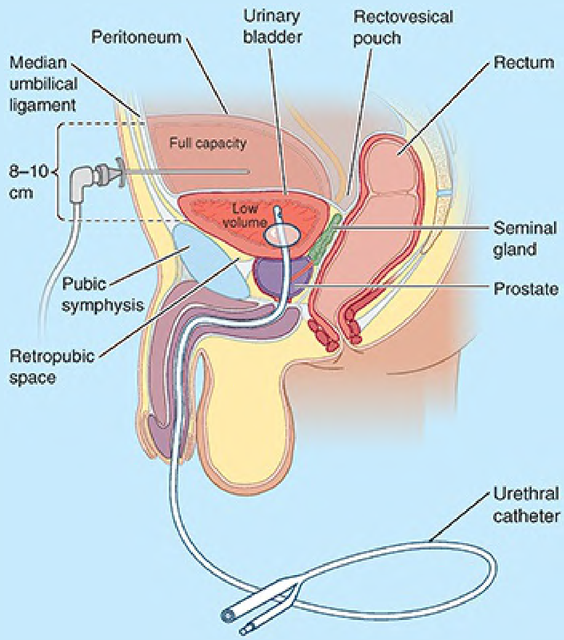


FIGURE B6.9. Routes for urinary catheterization.

Rupture of Bladder

Because of the superior position of the distended bladder, it may be ruptured by injuries to the inferior part of the anterior abdominal wall or by fractures of the pelvis. The rupture may result in the escape of urine extraperitoneally or intraperitoneally. Rupture of the superior part of the bladder frequently tears the peritoneum, resulting in extravasation (passage) of urine into the peritoneal cavity. Posterior rupture of the bladder usually results in passage of urine extraperitoneally into the perineum.

Cystoscopy

The interior of the bladder and its three orifices can be examined with a cystoscope. During transurethral resection of a tumor, the instrument is passed into the bladder through the urethra (Fig. B6.10). Using a high-frequency electrical current, the tumor is removed in small fragments, which are washed from the bladder with water.

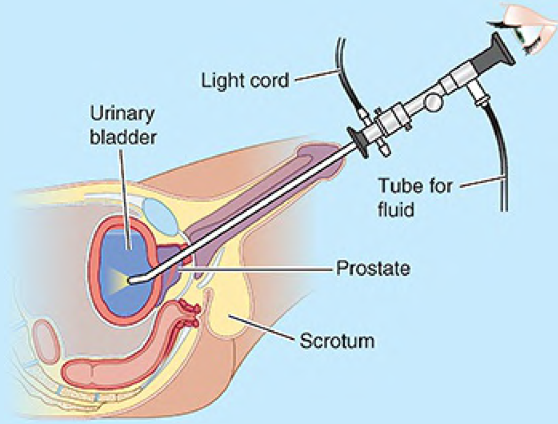


FIGURE B6.10. Cystoscopy.

Clinically Significant Differences Between Male and Female Urethrae

The female urethra is distensible because it contains considerable elastic tissue, as well as smooth muscle. It can be easily dilated without injury; consequently, the passage of catheters or cystoscopes is easier in females than in males. Infections of the urethra, and especially of the bladder, are more common in women because the female urethra is short, more distensible, and is open to the exterior through the vestibule of the vagina.

Rectal Examination

Many structures related to the antero-inferior part of the rectum may be palpated through its walls (e.g., the prostate and seminal glands in males and the cervix in females). In both sexes, the pelvic surfaces of the sacrum and coccyx may be palpated. The ischial spines and tuberosities may also be palpated. Enlarged internal iliac lymph nodes, pathological thickening of the ureters, swellings in the ischio-anal fossae (e.g., ischio-anal abscesses and abnormal contents in the rectovesical pouch in the male or the recto-uterine pouch in the female) may also be palpated. Tenderness of an inflamed appendix may also be detected rectally if it descends into the lesser pelvis (pararectal fossa).

The internal aspect of the rectum can be examined with a proctoscope, and biopsies of lesions may be taken through this instrument. During insertion of a sigmoidoscope, the curvatures of the rectum and its acute flexion at the rectosigmoid junction have to be kept in mind so the patient does not undergo unnecessary discomfort. The operator must also know that the transverse rectal folds, which provide useful landmarks for the procedure, may temporarily impede passage of these instruments.

Resection of Rectum

When resecting the rectum in males (e.g., during cancer treatment), the plane of the rectovesical septum (a fascial septum extending superiorly from the perineal body) is located so that the prostate and urethra can be separated from the rectum. In this way, these organs are not damaged during the surgery.

The Bottom Line: Pelvic Urinary and Digestive Organs

Ureters: The ureters carry urine from the renal pelves to the urinary bladder. ■ The ureters descend subperitoneally into the pelvis, passing inferior to the ductus deferens of males or the uterine artery of females, the latter relationship being of particular surgical importance. ■ The ureters penetrate the bladder wall obliquely from its postero-inferior angle, creating a one-way valve. ■ The pelvic portion of each ureter is served by the inferior vesical (male) or vaginal (female) artery and the vesical venous plexus and internal iliac veins. ■ Calculi, likely to become entrapped where the ureter crosses the pelvic brim or enters the bladder, produce severe groin pain.

Urinary bladder: The superior and inferior portions of the urinary bladder are quite distinct anatomically and functionally. ■ The body of the bladder is highly distensible, embedded in loose extraperitoneal fat, and covered on its superior aspect with peritoneum, all of which allow expansion with filling. ■ In contrast, the relatively indistensible neck of the bladder is anchored in place by pelvic ligaments and the floor of the bladder overlying it (which includes the trigone of the bladder) and remains relatively unchanged with filling. ■ Most of the bladder body is served by superior vesical arteries and veins. ■ The neck and adjacent inferior body are served by inferior vesical arteries and the vesical venous plexus. ■ Sympathetic fibers from inferior thoracic and superior lumbar spinal cord segments maintain the tonus of the bladder neck and, in males during ejaculation, stimulate contraction of the internal urethral sphincter to prevent reflux of semen. ■ Parasympathetic fibers conveyed by pelvic splanchnic nerves from the S2–S4 spinal cord segments inhibit the neck musculature and stimulate increased tonus of the detrusor muscle of the bladder walls for urination. ■ Visceral afferent fibers conducting pain sensation from the roof of the bladder (superior to the pelvic pain line) follow the sympathetic fibers retrogradely to spinal sensory ganglia. The remaining visceral afferent fibers follow the parasympathetic fibers.

Urethra: The male urethra consists of four parts, two of which are the intramural and prostatic parts. ■ The intramural part varies in length and caliber, depending on whether the bladder is filling or emptying. ■ The prostatic urethra is distinguished both by its surroundings and the structures that open into it. It is surrounded by the prostate. ■ The

prostatic ducts open into prostatic sinuses on each side of the urethral crest. ■ The vestigial utricle is a relatively large opening in the center of the seminal colliculus, flanked by the tiny openings of the ejaculatory ducts. ■ The reproductive and urinary tracts merge within the prostatic urethra.

The female urethra runs parallel to the vagina. It is firmly attached to and indents the anterior vaginal wall centrally and distally. ■ Since it is not shared with the reproductive tract, an internal urethral sphincter is not required at the neck of the female bladder.

Rectum: The rectum accumulates and temporarily stores feces. ■ The rectum begins at the rectosigmoid junction as the teniae of the sigmoid colon spread and unite into a continuous longitudinal layer of smooth muscle and the omental appendices cease. ■ The rectum ends with the anorectal flexure as the gut penetrates the pelvic diaphragm, becoming the anal canal. ■ Despite the Latin term rectus (straight), the rectum is concave anteriorly as the sacral flexure and has three lateral flexures formed in relation to the internal transverse rectal folds. ■ The rectum enlarges into the rectal ampulla directly above the pelvic floor. ■ The superior, middle, and inferior parts of the rectum are, respectively, intraperitoneal, retroperitoneal, and subperitoneal. ■ Collateral arterial circulation and a portocaval venous anastomosis result from anastomoses of the superior and inferior rectal vessels. ■ Sympathetic nerve fibers pass to the rectum (especially blood vessels and internal anal sphincter) from lumbar spinal cord segments via the hypogastric/pelvic plexuses and the peri-arterial plexus of the superior rectal artery. ■ Parasympathetic and visceral afferent fibers involve the middle sacral spinal cord segments and spinal ganglia.

Male Internal Genital Organs

The male internal genital organs include the testes, epididymides (singular = epididymis), ductus deferentes (singular = ductus deferens), seminal glands, ejaculatory ducts, prostate, and bulbo-urethral glands (Fig. 6.34). The testes and epididymides (described in Chapter 5, Abdomen) are considered internal genital organs on the basis of their developmental position and homology with the internal female ovaries. However, because of their external position postnatally and because in dissection these organs are encountered during the dissection of the inguinal region of the anterior abdominal wall, they are considered with the abdomen in Chapter 5, Abdomen.

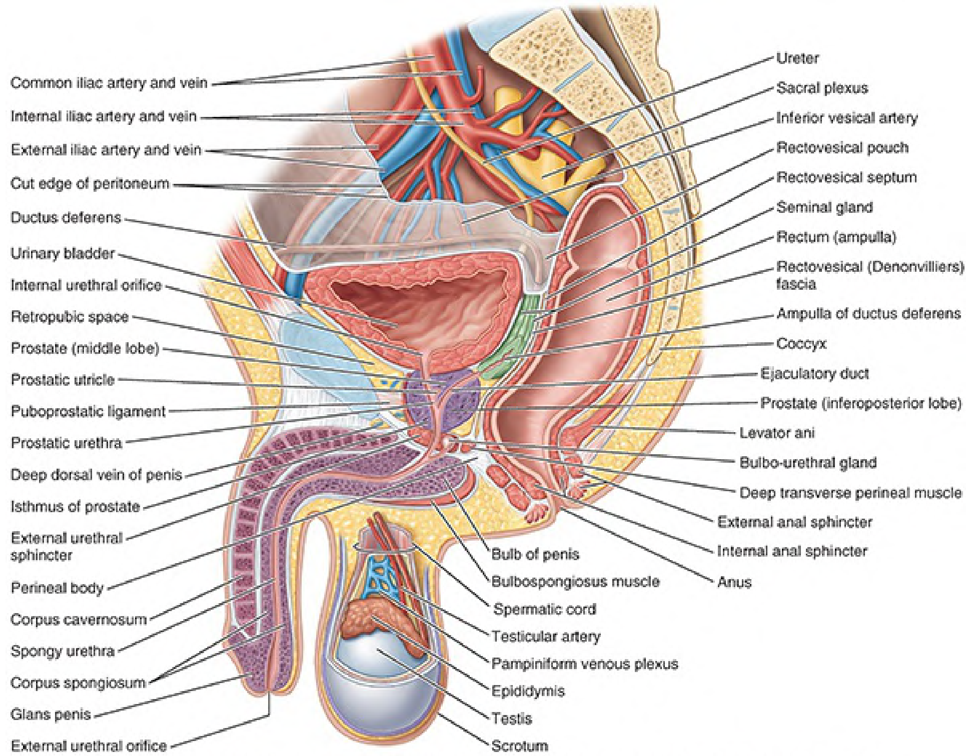


FIGURE 6.34. Hemisected male pelvis and perineum (right half). The genital organs are demonstrated: testis, epididymis, ductus deferens, ejaculatory duct, and penis, with the accessory glandular structures (seminal gland, prostate, and bulbo-urethral gland). The spermatic cord connects the testis to the abdominal cavity, and the testis lies externally in a musculocutaneous pouch, the scrotum.

DUCTUS DEFERENS

The **ductus deferens** (vas deferens) is the continuation of the duct of the epididymis. The ductus deferens

- has relatively thick muscular walls and a minute lumen, giving it a cord-like firmness
- begins in the tail of the epididymis, at the inferior pole of the testis (see Fig. 5.21)
- ascends posterior to the testis and medial to the epididymis
- is the primary component of the spermatic cord
- penetrates the anterior abdominal wall via the inguinal canal
- crosses over the external iliac vessels and enters the pelvis
- passes along the lateral wall of the pelvis, where it lies external to the parietal peritoneum
- ends by joining the duct of the seminal gland to form the ejaculatory duct

During the pelvic part of its course, the ductus deferens maintains direct contact with the peritoneum; no other structure intervenes between them (Fig. 6.34). The ductus crosses superior to the ureter near the posterolateral angle of the urinary bladder, running between the ureter and the peritoneum of the ureteric fold to reach the fundus of the bladder. The relationship of the ductus deferens to the ureter in the male is similar, although of lesser clinical importance, to that of the uterine artery to the ureter in the female. The developmental basis of this relationship is

shown in Figure 6.35. Posterior to the bladder, the ductus deferens at first lies superior to the seminal gland and then descends medial to the ureter and the gland (Fig. 6.36A, B). Here, the ductus deferens enlarges to form the **ampulla of the ductus deferens** before its termination.

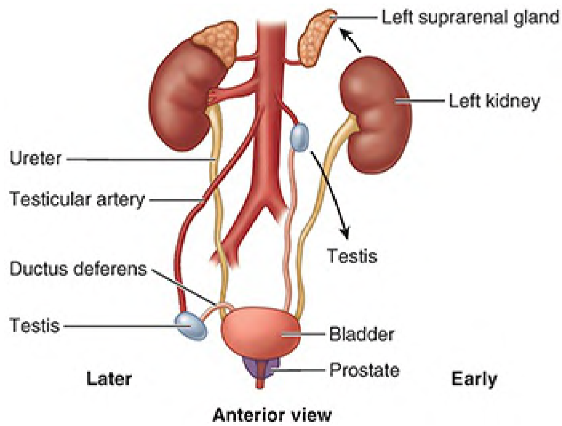


FIGURE 6.35. **Structures crossing male ureter in abdomen and pelvis.** During development, as the testis descends inferiorly and laterally from its original position (medial to the site of the kidneys on the posterior abdominal wall) to and then through the inguinal canal, the ureter is crossed by testicular vessels in the abdomen and by the ductus deferens in the pelvis. This relationship is retained throughout life.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Ductus Deferens. The tiny artery to the ductus deferens usually arises from a superior (sometimes inferior) vesical artery (Fig. 6.37; see Fig. 6.15; Table 6.4) and terminates by anastomosing with the testicular artery, posterior to the testis. Veins from most of the ductus drain into the testicular vein, including the distal pampiniform plexus. Its terminal portion drains into the vesicular/prostatic venous plexus.

SEMINAL GLANDS

Each **seminal gland** (vesicle) is an elongated structure (approximately 5 cm long, but sometimes, it is much shorter) that lies between the fundus of the bladder and the rectum (Figs. 6.34, 6.36, and 6.37). The seminal glands are obliquely placed superior to the prostate and do not store sperms (as the term "vesicle" indicates). They secrete a thick alkaline fluid with fructose (an energy source for sperms) and a coagulating agent that mixes with the sperms as they pass into the ejaculatory ducts and urethra.

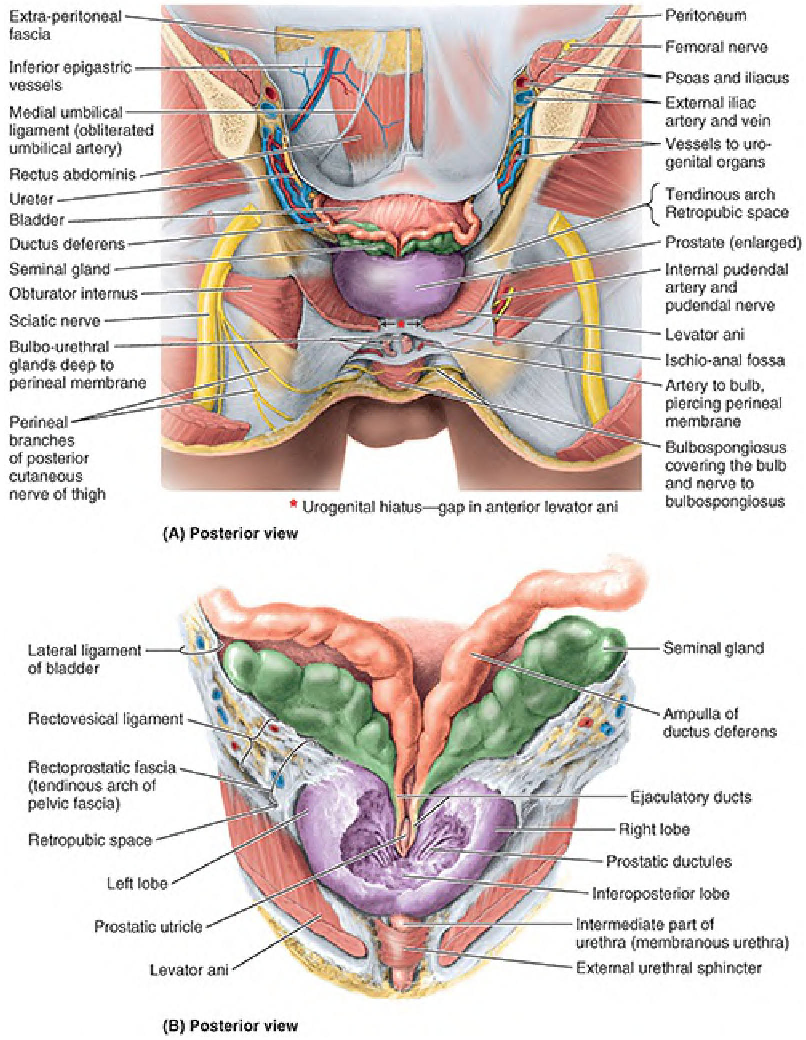


FIGURE 6.36. Posterior aspect of male pelvic viscera. A. Overview. The posterior pelvic wall, rectum, and rectovesical septum have been removed. The umbilical ligaments, like the urinary bladder, are embedded in extraperitoneal or subperitoneal fascia (mostly removed in this dissection). **B.** Posterior dissection of prostate. The ejaculatory ducts are formed by the merger of the duct of the seminal gland and the ductus deferens. The vestigial prostatic utricle, usually seen as an invagination in an anterior view, appears in this posterior dissection as an evagination lying between the ejaculatory ducts.

The superior ends of the seminal glands are covered with peritoneum and lie posterior to the ureters, where the peritoneum of the rectovesical pouch separates them from the rectum. The inferior ends of the seminal glands are closely related to the rectum and are separated from it only by the rectovesical septum (Fig. 6.34). The duct of the seminal gland joins the ductus deferens to form the ejaculatory duct.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Seminal Glands. The **arteries to the seminal glands** derive from the inferior vesical and middle rectal arteries (Fig. 6.37; see Figs. 6.15 and 6.17; Table 6.4). The veins accompany the arteries and have similar names (Fig. 6.19C).

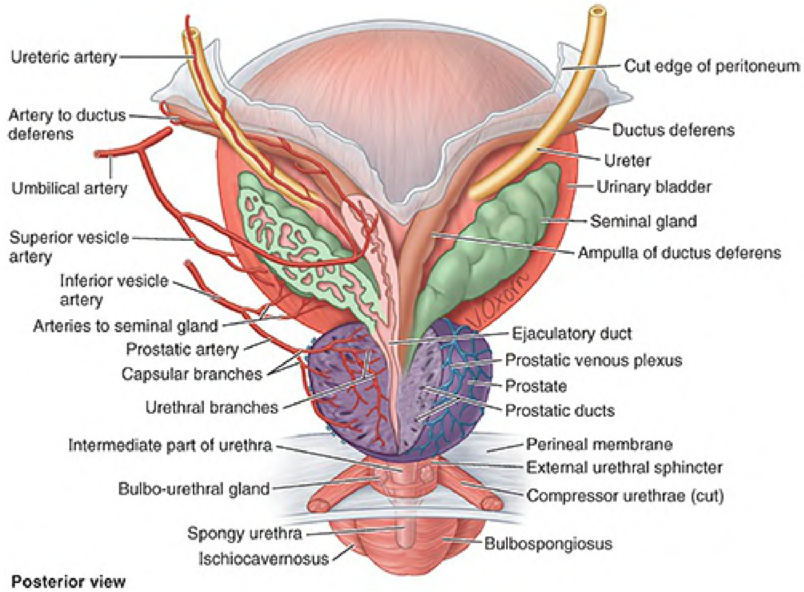


FIGURE 6.37. Pelvic part of ureters, urinary bladder, seminal glands, terminal parts of ductus deferens, and prostate. The left seminal gland and ampulla of the ductus deferens are dissected free and sliced open. Part of the prostate is also cut away to expose the ejaculatory duct. The perineal membrane lies between the external genitalia and the deep part of the perineum (anterior recess of ischio-anal fossa). It is pierced by the urethra, ducts of the bulbo-urethral glands, dorsal and deep arteries of the penis, cavernous nerves, and the dorsal nerve of the penis.

EJACULATORY DUCTS

The **ejaculatory ducts** are slender tubes that arise by the union of the ducts of the seminal glands with the ductus deferentes (Figs. 6.34, 6.36, and 6.37). The ejaculatory ducts (approximately 2.5 cm long) arise near the neck of the bladder and run close together as they pass antero-inferiorly through the posterior part of the prostate and along the sides of the prostatic utricle. The ejaculatory ducts converge and open on the seminal colliculus by tiny, slit-like apertures on, or just within, the opening of the prostatic utricle (Fig. 6.30). Although the ejaculatory ducts traverse the glandular prostate, prostatic secretions do not join the seminal fluid until the ejaculatory ducts have terminated in the prostatic urethra.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Ejaculatory Ducts. The arteries to the ductus deferens, usually branches of the superior (but frequently inferior) vesical arteries, supply the ejaculatory ducts (Fig. 6.37). The veins join the prostatic and vesical venous plexuses (Fig. 6.19C).

PROSTATE

The **prostate** (approximately 3 cm long, 4 cm wide, and 2 cm in anteroposterior [AP] depth) is the largest accessory gland of the male reproductive system (Figs. 6.34, 6.36, and 6.37). The firm, walnut-size prostate surrounds the prostatic urethra. The glandular part makes up approximately two thirds of the prostate; the other third is fibromuscular.

The **fibrous capsule of the prostate** is dense and neurovascular, incorporating the prostatic plexuses of veins and nerves. All of this is surrounded by the visceral layer of the pelvic fascia, forming a fibrous prostatic sheath that is thin anteriorly, continuous anterolaterally with the

puboprostatic ligaments, and dense posteriorly where it blends with the rectovesical septum. The prostate has

- a base closely related to the neck of the bladder
- an apex that is in contact with fascia on the superior aspect of the urethral sphincter and deep perineal muscles
- a muscular anterior surface, featuring mostly transversely oriented muscle fibers forming a vertical, trough-like hemisphincter (rhabdosphincter), which is part of the urethral sphincter. The anterior surface is separated from the pubic symphysis by retroperitoneal fat in the retropubic space.
- a posterior surface that is related to the ampulla of the rectum
- inferolateral surfaces that are related to the levator ani

Although not clearly distinct anatomically, the following lobes of the prostate are traditionally described (Fig. 6.38A):

- The **isthmus of the prostate** (commissure of prostate; historically, the anterior "lobe") lies anterior to the urethra. It is fibromuscular, the muscle fibers representing a superior continuation of the external urethral sphincter muscle to the neck of the bladder, and contains little, if any, glandular tissue.
- **Right** and **left lobes of the prostate**, separated anteriorly by the isthmus and posteriorly by a central, shallow longitudinal furrow, may each be subdivided for descriptive purposes into four indistinct lobules defined by their relationship to the urethra and ejaculatory ducts and—-although less apparent—by the arrangement of the ducts and connective tissue:
    1. An **inferoposterior** (lower posterior) **lobule** that lies posterior to the urethra and inferior to the ejaculatory ducts. This lobule constitutes the aspect of the prostate palpable by digital rectal examination.
    2. An **inferolateral** (lower lateral) **lobule** directly lateral to the urethra, forming the major part of the right or left lobe
    3. A **superomedial lobule**, deep to the inferoposterior lobule, surrounding the ipsilateral ejaculatory duct
    4. An **anteromedial lobule**, deep to the inferolateral lobule, directly lateral to the proximal prostatic urethra

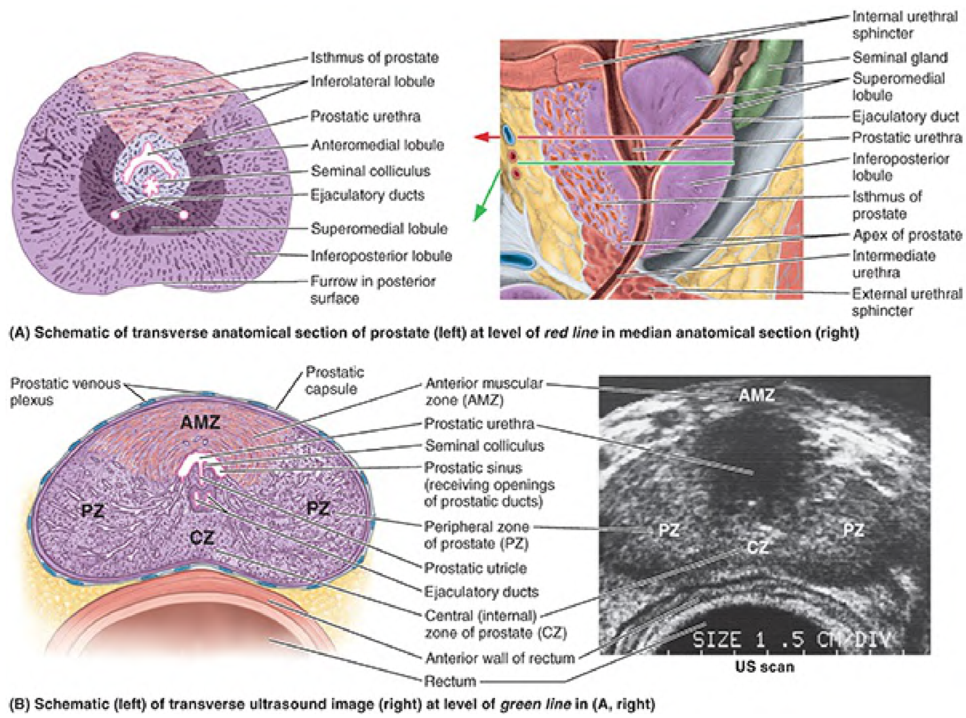


FIGURE 6.38. Lobules and zones of prostate. A. Anatomical sections. The lobules are poorly demarcated. **B.** Anatomical section with correlated ultrasound (US) scan. The US transducer was inserted into the rectum to scan the anteriorly located prostate. The ducts of the glands in the peripheral zone open into the prostatic sinuses, whereas the ducts of the glands in the central (internal) zone open into the prostatic sinuses and the seminal colliculus.

An embryonic middle (median) lobe gives rise to items 3 and 4 above. This region tends to undergo hormone-induced hypertrophy in advanced age, forming a middle lobule that lies between the urethra and the ejaculatory ducts and is closely related to the neck of the bladder. Enlargement of the middle lobule is believed to be at least partially responsible for the formation of the uvula (L. uva, a grape) that may project into the internal urethral orifice (see Fig. 6.30).

Some clinicians, especially urologists and sonographers, divide the prostate into peripheral and central (internal) zones (Fig. 6.38B). The central zone is comparable to the middle lobe.

The **prostatic ducts** (20–30) open chiefly into the prostatic sinuses that lie on either side of the seminal colliculus on the posterior wall of the prostatic urethra (Fig. 6.37). Prostatic fluid, a thin, milky fluid, provides approximately 20% of the volume of **semen** (a mixture of secretions produced by the testes, seminal glands, prostate, and bulbo-urethral glands that provides the vehicle by which sperms are transported) and plays a role in activating the sperms.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Prostate. The prostatic arteries are mainly branches of the internal iliac artery (Fig. 6.37; see Fig. 6.17A; Table 6.4), especially the inferior vesical arteries, but also the internal pudendal and middle rectal arteries. The veins join to form a plexus around the sides and base of the prostate (Fig. 6.37; see Fig. 6.19C). This **prostatic venous plexus**, between the fibrous capsule of the prostate and the prostatic sheath, drains into the internal iliac veins. The prostatic venous plexus is continuous superiorly with the vesical venous plexus and communicates posteriorly with the internal vertebral venous plexus.

BULBO-URETHRAL GLANDS

The two pea-size **bulbo-urethral glands** (Cowper glands) lie posterolateral to the intermediate part of the urethra, largely embedded within the external urethral sphincter (Figs. 6.30B, 6.34, 6.36, and 6.37). The **ducts of the bulbo-urethral glands** pass through the perineal membrane with the intermediate urethra and open through minute apertures into the proximal part of the spongy urethra in the bulb of the penis. Their mucus-like secretion enters the urethra during sexual arousal.

INNERVATION OF INTERNAL GENITAL ORGANS OF MALE PELVIS

The ductus deferens, seminal glands, ejaculatory ducts, and prostate are richly innervated by sympathetic nerve fibers. Presynaptic sympathetic fibers originate from cell bodies in the intermediolateral cell column of the T12–L2 (or L3) spinal cord segments. They traverse the paravertebral ganglia of the sympathetic trunks to become components of lumbar (abdominopelvic) splanchnic nerves and the hypogastric and pelvic plexuses (see Fig. 6.29).

Presynaptic parasympathetic fibers from S2 and S3 spinal cord segments traverse pelvic splanchnic nerves, which also join the inferior hypogastric/pelvic plexuses. Synapses with postsynaptic sympathetic and parasympathetic neurons occur within the plexuses, en route to or near the pelvic viscera. As part of an orgasm, the sympathetic system stimulates contraction of the internal urethral sphincter to prevent retrograde ejaculation. Simultaneously, it stimulates rapid peristaltic-like contractions of the ductus deferens, and the combined contraction of and secretion from the seminal glands and prostate that provide the vehicle (semen), and the expulsive force to discharge the sperms during ejaculation. The function of the parasympathetic innervation of the internal genital organs is unclear. However, parasympathetic fibers traversing the prostatic nerve plexus form the cavernous nerves that pass to the erectile bodies of the penis, which are responsible for producing penile erection (see Fig. 6.64).

CLINICAL BOX

MALE INTERNAL GENITAL ORGANS

Male Sterilization

The common method of sterilizing males is a deferentectomy, popularly called a vasectomy. During this procedure, part of the ductus deferens is ligated and/or excised through an incision in the superior part of the scrotum (Fig. B6.11). Hence, the subsequent ejaculated fluid from the seminal glands, prostate, and bulbo-urethral glands contains no sperms. The unexpelled sperms degenerate in the epididymis and the proximal part of the ductus deferens.

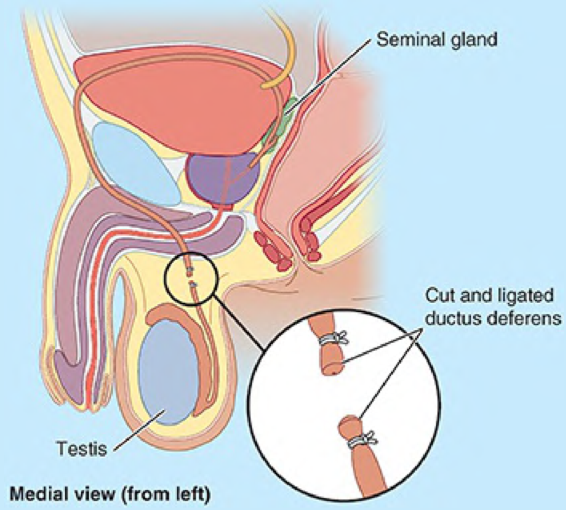


FIGURE B6.11. Vasectomy.

Reversal of a deferentectomy is successful in favorable cases (patients <30 years of age and <7 years postoperation) in most instances. The ends of the sectioned ductus deferentes are reattached under an operating microscope.

Abscesses in Seminal Glands

Localized collections of pus (abscesses) in the seminal glands may rupture, allowing pus to enter the peritoneal cavity. Seminal glands can be palpated during a rectal examination, especially if enlarged or full. They are palpated most easily when the bladder is moderately full. They can also be massaged to release their secretions for microscopic examination to detect gonococci (organisms that cause gonorrhea), for example.

Hypertrophy of Prostate

The prostate is of considerable medical interest because enlargement or benign hypertrophy of the prostate (BHP) is common after middle age, affecting virtually every male who lives long enough. An enlarged prostate projects into the urinary bladder and impedes urination by distorting the prostatic urethra. The middle lobule usually enlarges the most and obstructs the internal urethral orifice. The more the person strains, the more the valve-like prostatic mass obstructs the urethra.

BHP is a common cause of urethral obstruction, leading to nocturia (need to void during the night), dysuria (difficulty and/or pain during urination), and urgency (sudden desire to void). BHP also increases the risk of bladder infections (cystitis) as well as kidney damage.

The prostate is examined for enlargement and tumors (focal masses or asymmetry) by digital rectal examination (Fig. B6.12). The palpability of the prostate depends on the fullness of the bladder. A full bladder offers resistance, holding the gland in place and

making it more readily palpable. The malignant prostate feels hard and often irregular. In advanced stages, cancer cells metastasize both via lymphatic routes (initially to the internal iliac and sacral lymph nodes and later to distant nodes) and via venous routes (by way of the internal vertebral venous plexus to the vertebrae and brain).

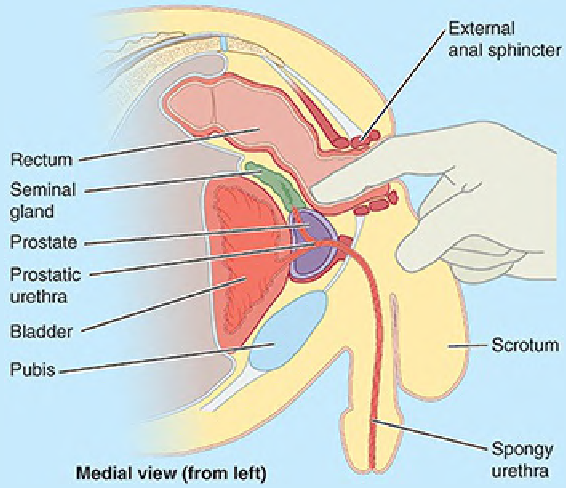


FIGURE B6.12. Prostatic examination.

Because of the close relationship of the prostate to the prostatic urethra, obstructions may be relieved endoscopically. The instrument is inserted transurethrally through the external urethral orifice and spongy urethra into the prostatic urethra. All or part of the prostate, or just the hypertrophied part, is removed (transurethral resection of the prostate; TURP). In more serious cases, the entire prostate is removed along with the seminal glands, ejaculatory ducts, and terminal parts of the deferent ducts (radical prostatectomy).

TURP and improved open operative techniques attempt to preserve the nerves and blood vessels associated with the capsule of the prostate that pass to and from the penis, increasing the possibility for patients to retain sexual function after surgery, as well as restoring normal urinary control.

The Bottom Line: Male Internal Genital Organs

Ductus deferens: The cord-like ductus deferens is the primary component of the spermatic cord, conducting sperms from the epididymis to the ejaculatory duct. ■ The distal portion of the ductus is superficial within the scrotum (and, therefore, easily accessible for deferentectomy or vasectomy) before it penetrates the anterior abdominal wall via the inguinal canal. ■ The pelvic portion of the ductus lies immediately external to the peritoneum, with its terminal portion enlarging externally as its lumen becomes tortuous internally, forming the ampulla of the ductus deferens.

Seminal glands, ejaculatory ducts, and prostate: Obliquely placed seminal glands converge at the base of the bladder, where each of their ducts merges with the ipsilateral

ductus deferens to form an ejaculatory duct. ■ The two ejaculatory ducts immediately enter the posterior aspect of the prostate, running closely parallel through the gland to open on the seminal colliculus. ■ Prostatic ducts open into prostatic sinuses, adjacent to the seminal colliculus. Thus, the major glandular secretions and sperms are delivered to the prostatic urethra. ■ The seminal glands and prostate produce by far the greatest portion of the seminal fluid, indispensable for transport and delivery of sperms. ■ These internal genital organs, located within the anterior male pelvis, receive blood from the inferior vesicle and middle rectal arteries, which drain into the continuous prostatic/vesicle venous plexus. ■ Sympathetic fibers from lumbar levels stimulate the contraction and secretion resulting in ejaculation. ■ The function of parasympathetic fibers from S2–S4 to the internal genital organs is unclear; however, those traversing the prostatic nerve plexus to form the cavernous nerves produce erection.

Female Internal Genital Organs

The female internal genital organs include the ovaries, uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina.

OVARIES

The **ovaries** are almond-shaped and almond-sized female gonads in which the oocytes (female gametes or germ cells) develop. They are also endocrine glands that produce reproductive hormones. Each ovary is suspended by a short peritoneal fold or mesentery, the mesovarium (Fig. 6.39A). The mesovarium is a subdivision of a larger mesentery of the uterus, the broad ligament.

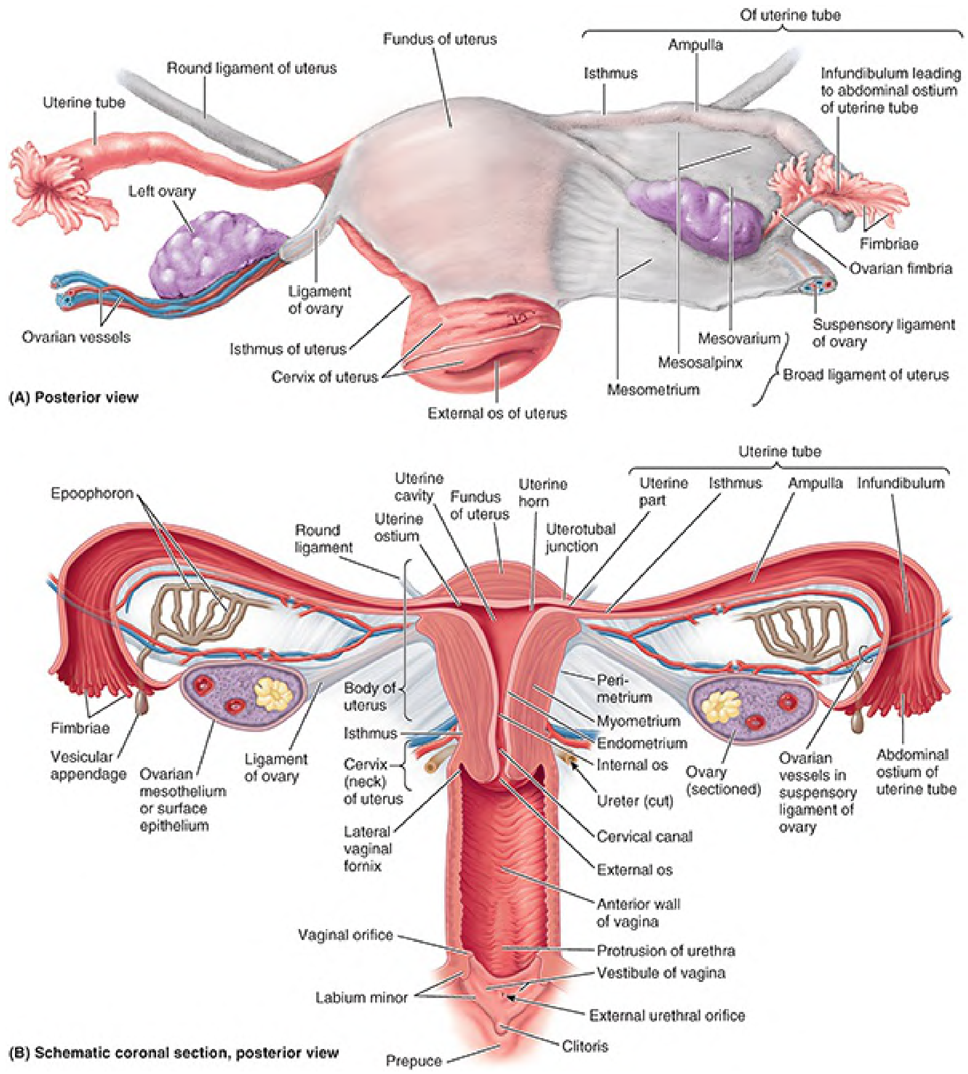


FIGURE 6.39. Internal female genital organs. A. Parts of broad ligament. The broad ligament is removed on the left side to show the ovary and uterine tube. **B.** Internal structure of female genital organs. The epoophoron is a collection of rudimentary tubules in the mesosalpinx (mesentery of uterine tube). The epoophoron and vesicular appendage are vestiges of the embryonic mesonephros.

In prepubertal females, the connective tissue capsule (tunica albuginea of the ovary) comprising the surface of the ovary is covered by a smooth layer of **ovarian mesothelium** or **surface** (**germinal**) **epithelium**, a single layer of cuboidal cells that gives the surface a dull, grayish appearance, contrasting with the shiny surface of the adjacent peritoneal mesovarium with which it is continuous (Fig. 6.39B). After puberty, the ovarian surface epithelium becomes progressively scarred and distorted because of the repeated rupture of ovarian follicles and discharge of oocytes during ovulation. The scarring is less in women who have been taking oral contraceptives that inhibit ovulation.

The ovarian vessels, lymphatics, and nerves cross the pelvic brim, passing to and from the superolateral aspect of the ovary within a peritoneal fold, the **suspensory ligament of the ovary**, which becomes continuous with the mesovarium of the broad ligament. Medially within the mesovarium, a short ligament of ovary tethers the ovary to the uterus. Consequently, the ovaries

are typically found laterally between the uterus and the lateral pelvic wall during a manual or ultrasonic pelvic examination (Fig. 6.40). The ligament of ovary is a remnant of the superior part of the ovarian gubernaculum of the fetus (see Fig. 5.17B). The ligament of the ovary connects the proximal (uterine) end of the ovary to the lateral angle of the uterus, just inferior to the entrance of the uterine tube (Fig. 6.39A). Because the ovary is suspended in the peritoneal cavity and its surface is not covered by peritoneum, the oocyte expelled at ovulation passes into the peritoneal cavity. However, its intraperitoneal life is short because it is normally trapped by the fimbriae of the infundibulum of the uterine tube and carried into the ampulla, where it may be fertilized.

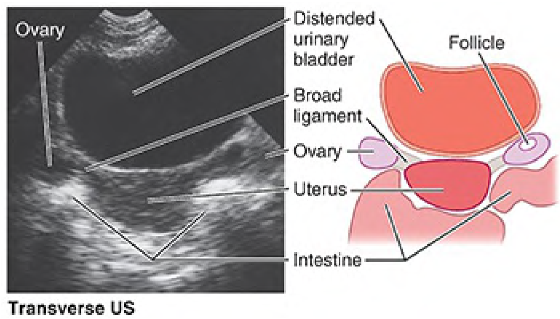


FIGURE 6.40. Ovaries and uterus as revealed by ultrasound scanning. The diagram on the right is a graphic interpretation of the image.

UTERINE TUBES

The **uterine tubes** (formerly called oviducts or fallopian tubes) conduct the oocyte, discharged monthly from an ovary during childbearing years, from the peri-ovarian peritoneal cavity to the uterine cavity. They also provide the usual site of fertilization. The tubes extend laterally from the uterine horns and open into the peritoneal cavity near the ovaries (Fig. 6.39A, B).

The uterine tubes (approximately 10 cm long) lie in a narrow mesentery, the **mesosalpinx**, forming the free anterosuperior edges of the broad ligaments. In the “ideal” disposition, as typically illustrated, the tubes extend symmetrically posterolaterally to the lateral pelvic walls, where they arch anterior and superior to the ovaries in the horizontally disposed broad ligament. In reality, as seen in an ultrasound examination, the tubes are commonly asymmetrically arranged with one or the other often lying superior and even posterior to the uterus.

The uterine tubes are divisible into four parts, from lateral to medial:

1. **Infundibulum:** the funnel-shaped distal end of the tube that opens into the peritoneal cavity through the **abdominal ostium**. The finger-like processes of the fimbriated end of the infundibulum (**fimbriae**) spread over the medial surface of the ovary; one large **ovarian fimbria** is attached to the superior pole of the ovary.
2. **Ampulla:** the widest and longest part of the tube, which begins at the medial end of the infundibulum; fertilization of the oocyte usually occurs in the ampulla.
3. **Isthmus:** the thick-walled part of the tube, which enters the uterine horn
4. **Uterine part:** the short intramural segment of the tube that passes through the wall of the uterus and opens via the uterine ostium into the uterine cavity at the uterine horn

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Ovaries and Uterine Tubes. The ovarian arteries arise from the abdominal aorta (see Fig. 6.16; Table 6.4) and descend along the posterior abdominal wall. At the pelvic brim, they cross over the external iliac vessels and enter the suspensory ligaments (Fig. 6.39A), approaching the lateral aspects of the ovaries and uterine tubes. The ascending branches of the uterine arteries (branches of the internal iliac arteries) course along the lateral aspects of the uterus to approach the medial aspects of the ovaries and tubes (Fig. 6.41; see Fig. 6.18B). Both the ovarian and ascending uterine arteries terminate by bifurcating into ovarian and tubal branches, which supply the ovaries and tubes from opposite ends and anastomose with each other, providing a collateral circulation from abdominal and pelvic sources to both structures.

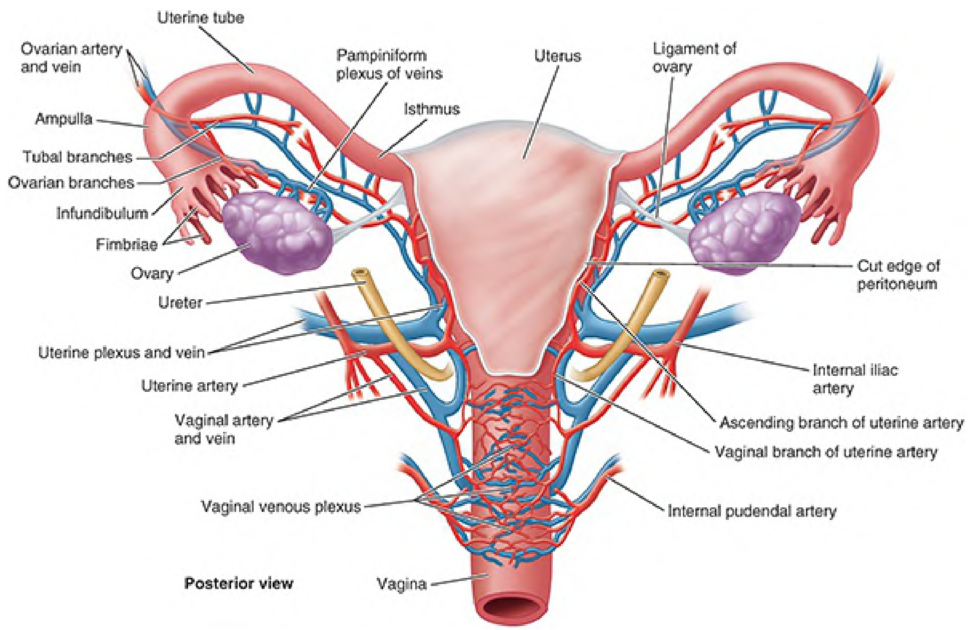


FIGURE 6.41. **Blood supply and venous drainage of uterus, vagina, and ovaries.** The broad ligament of the uterus is removed on each side of the uterus showing the anastomosing branches of the ovarian artery from the aorta and the uterine artery from the internal iliac artery supplying the ovary, uterine tube, and uterus. The veins follow a similar pattern, flowing retrograde to the arteries, but are more plexiform, including a pampiniform plexus related to the ovary and continuous uterine and vaginal plexuses (collectively, the uterovaginal plexus).

Veins draining the ovary form a vine-like **pampiniform plexus of veins** in the broad ligament near the ovary and uterine tube (Fig. 6.41). The veins of the plexus usually merge to form a singular **ovarian vein**, which leaves the lesser pelvis with the ovarian artery. The right ovarian vein ascends to enter the inferior vena cava; the left ovarian vein drains into the left renal vein (see Fig. 6.19). The tubal veins drain into the ovarian veins and uterine (uterovaginal) venous plexus (Fig. 6.41).

Innervation of Ovaries and Uterine Tubes. The nerve supply derives partly from the ovarian plexus, descending with the ovarian vessels, and partly from the uterine (pelvic) plexus (Fig. 6.42). The ovaries and uterine tubes are intraperitoneal and, therefore, are superior to the pelvic pain line (see Table 6.3). Thus, visceral afferent pain fibers ascend retrogradely with the descending sympathetic fibers of the ovarian plexus and lumbar splanchnic nerves to cell bodies

in the T11–L1 spinal sensory ganglia. Visceral afferent reflex fibers follow parasympathetic fibers retrogradely through the uterine (pelvic) and inferior hypogastric plexuses and the pelvic splanchnic nerves to cell bodies in the S2–S4 spinal sensory ganglia.

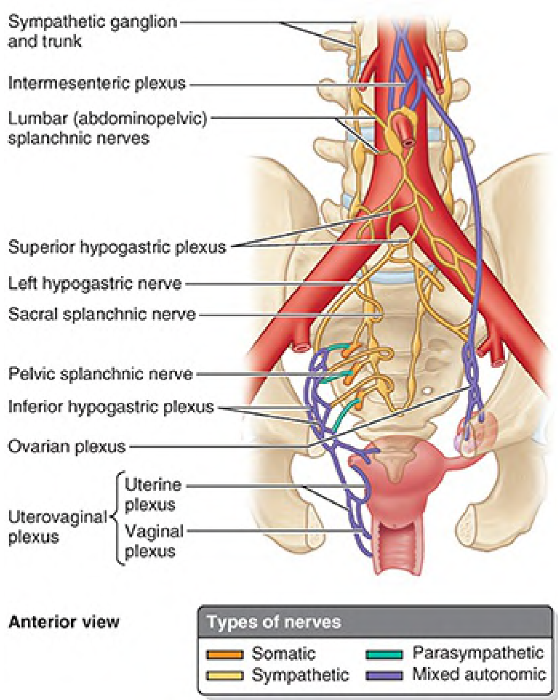


FIGURE 6.42. Nerve supply of ovaries and female internal genital organs. In addition to autonomic (visceral motor) fibers, these nerves convey visceral afferent fibers from these organs. The inferior part of the vagina is not depicted because it receives somatic innervation.

UTERUS

The **uterus** (womb) is a thick-walled, pear-shaped, hollow muscular organ. The embryo and fetus develop in the uterus. Its muscular walls adapt to the growth of the fetus and then provide the power for its expulsion during childbirth. The nongravid (nonpregnant) uterus usually lies in the lesser pelvis, with its body lying on the urinary bladder and its cervix between the urinary bladder and rectum (Fig. 6.43A).

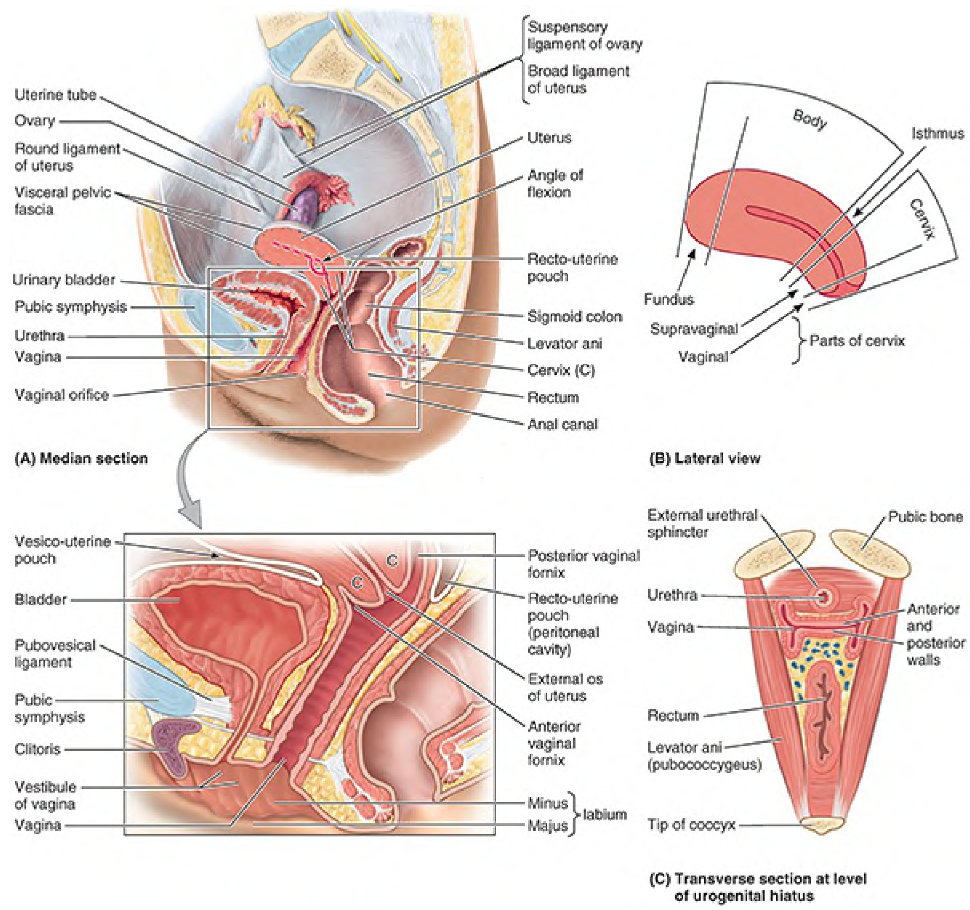


FIGURE 6.43. Uterus and vagina. A. Disposition of uterus. Note the axes of the urethra and vagina are parallel, and the urethra is adherent to the anterior vaginal wall. Placing a gloved finger in the vagina can help direct the insertion of a catheter through the urethra into the bladder. When the bladder is empty, the typical uterus is anteverted and anteflexed. **B.** Parts of uterus. The two main parts of the uterus, the body and cervix, are separated by the isthmus. Knowledge of further subdivisions of the main parts is especially important, for example, for describing the location of tumors and sites of attachment of the placenta. **C.** Transverse section through inferior female pelvic organs. The organs penetrate the pelvic floor through the urogenital hiatus, appearing as the gap between the right and left sides of the levator ani.

The uterus is a very dynamic structure, the size and proportions of which change during the various changes of life (see the Clinical Box “Lifetime Changes in Anatomy of Uterus” in this chapter).

The adult uterus is usually anteverted (tipped anterosuperiorly relative to the axis of the vagina) and anteflexed (flexed or bent anteriorly relative to the cervix, creating the angle of flexion) so that its mass lies over the bladder. Consequently, when the bladder is empty, the uterus typically lies in a nearly transverse plane (Figs. 6.43A, B and 6.44A). The position of the uterus changes with the degree of fullness of the bladder (Fig. 6.44B) and rectum and stage of pregnancy. Although its size varies considerably, the nongravid uterus is approximately 7.5 cm long, 5 cm wide, and 2 cm thick and weighs approximately 90 g. The uterus is divisible into two main parts (Fig. 6.43B): the body and cervix.

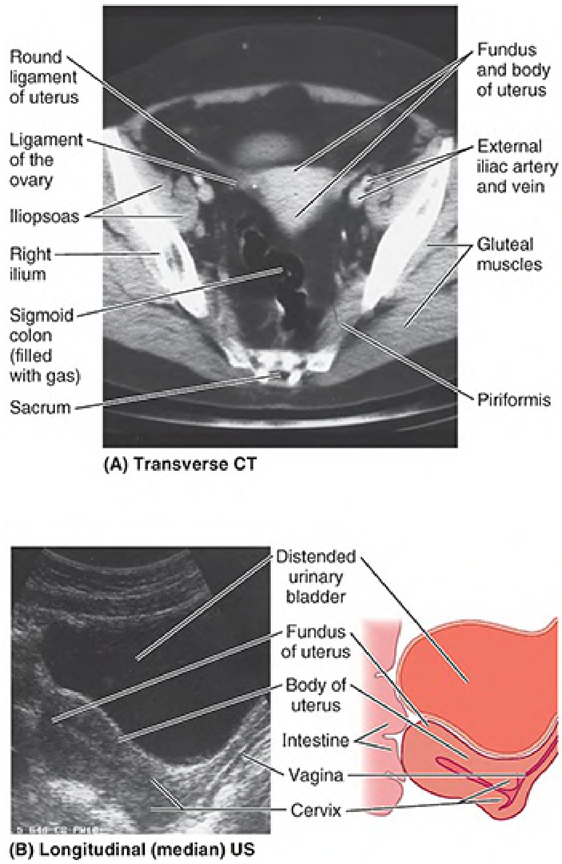


FIGURE 6.44. Imaging of female pelvic viscera. A. Uterus. Because the uterus is nearly horizontally disposed when anteverted and anteflexed over the bladder, most of its body, including the fundus, appears in this scan. **B.** Distended urinary bladder. Temporary retroversion and retroflexion result when a fully distended urinary bladder temporarily retroverts the uterus and decreases its angle of flexion. (Compare with Fig. 6.43A.)

The **body of the uterus**, forming the superior two thirds of the organ, includes the **fundus of the uterus**, the rounded part that lies superior to the uterine ostia (Fig. 6.39B). The body lies between the layers of the broad ligament and is freely movable (Fig. 6.39A). It has two surfaces: vesical (related to the bladder) and intestinal. The body is demarcated from the cervix by the **isthmus of the uterus**, a relatively constricted segment, approximately 1 cm long (Figs. 6.39A, B and 6.43B).

The **cervix of the uterus** is the cylindrical, relatively narrow inferior third of the uterus, approximately 2.5 cm long in an adult nonpregnant woman. For descriptive purposes, two parts are described: a **supravaginal part**, between the isthmus and the vagina, and a **vaginal part**, which protrudes into the superiormost anterior vaginal wall (Fig. 6.43B). The rounded vaginal part surrounds the **external os of the uterus** and is surrounded in turn by a narrow recess, the vaginal fornix (Figs. 6.39A, B and 6.43A [inset]). The supravaginal part is separated from the bladder anteriorly by loose connective tissue and from the rectum posteriorly by the recto-uterine pouch (Fig. 6.43A).

The slit-like **uterine cavity** is approximately 6 cm in length from the external os to the wall of the fundus (Fig. 6.39B). The **uterine horns** (L. cornua) are the superolateral regions of the uterine cavity, where the uterine tubes enter. The uterine cavity continues inferiorly as the

cervical canal. This fusiform canal extends from a narrowing inside the isthmus of the uterine body, the **anatomical internal os**, through the supravaginal and vaginal parts of the cervix, communicating with the lumen of the vagina through the external os. The uterine cavity (in particular, the cervical canal) and the lumen of the vagina together constitute the **birth canal**, through which the fetus passes at the end of gestation.

The wall of the body of the uterus consists of three layers (coats):

1. **Perimetrium**—the serosa or outer serous layer—consists of peritoneum supported by a thin layer of connective tissue.
2. **Myometrium**—the middle layer of smooth muscle—becomes greatly distended (more extensive but much thinner) during pregnancy. The main branches of the blood vessels and nerves of the uterus are located in this layer. During childbirth, contraction of the myometrium is hormonally stimulated at intervals of decreasing length to dilate the cervical os and expel the fetus and placenta. During the menses, myometrial contractions may produce cramping.
3. **Endometrium**—the inner mucous layer—is firmly adhered to the underlying myometrium. The endometrium is actively involved in the menstrual cycle, differing in structure with each stage of the cycle. If conception occurs, the blastocyst becomes implanted in this layer; if conception does not occur, the inner surface of this layer is shed during menstruation.

The amount of muscular tissue in the cervix is markedly less than in the body of the uterus. The cervix is mostly fibrous and is composed mainly of collagen with a small amount of smooth muscle and elastin.

Ligaments of Uterus. Externally, the **ligament of the ovary** attaches to the uterus postero-inferior to the uterotubal junction (Fig. 6.39A, B). The **round ligament of the uterus** (L. ligamentum teres uteri) attaches antero-inferiorly to this junction. These two ligaments are vestiges of the ovarian gubernaculum, related to the relocation of the gonad from its developmental position on the posterior abdominal wall (see Fig. 5.17A).

The **broad ligament of the uterus** is a double layer of peritoneum (mesentery) that extends from the sides of the uterus to the lateral walls and floor of the pelvis (Fig. 6.39A). This ligament assists in keeping the uterus in position. The two layers of the broad ligament are continuous with each other at a free edge that surrounds the uterine tube. Laterally, the peritoneum of the broad ligament is prolonged superiorly over the vessels as the suspensory ligament of the ovary. Between the layers of the broad ligament on each side of the uterus, the ligament of the ovary lies posterosuperiorly and the round ligament of the uterus lies antero-inferiorly. The uterine tube lies in the anterosuperior free border of the broad ligament, within a small mesentery called the mesosalpinx. Similarly, the ovary lies within a small mesentery called the mesovarium on the posterior aspect of the broad ligament. The largest part of the broad ligament, inferior to the mesosalpinx and mesovarium, which serves as a mesentery for the uterus itself, is the **mesometrium**.

The uterus is a dense structure located in the center of the pelvic cavity. The principal supports of the uterus holding it in this position are both passive and active or dynamic. Dynamic

support of the uterus is provided by the pelvic diaphragm. Its tone during sitting and standing and active contraction during periods of increased intra-abdominal pressure (sneezing, coughing, etc.) is transmitted through the surrounding pelvic organs and the endopelvic fascia in which they are embedded. Passive support of the uterus is provided by its position—the way in which the normally anteverted and anteflexed uterus rests on top of the bladder (Fig. 6.43A). When intra-abdominal pressure is increased, the uterus is pressed against the bladder. The cervix is the least mobile part of the uterus because of the passive support provided by attached condensations of endopelvic fascia (ligaments), which may also contain smooth muscle (see Figs. 6.13A, B and 6.14):

- Cardinal (transverse cervical) ligaments extend from the supravaginal cervix and lateral parts of the fornix of the vagina to the lateral walls of the pelvis (see Fig. 6.14).
- Uterosacral ligaments pass superiorly and slightly posteriorly from the sides of the cervix to the middle of the sacrum; they are palpable during a rectal examination.

Together, these passive and active supports keep the uterus centered in the pelvic cavity and resist the tendency for the uterus to fall or be pushed through the vagina (see the Clinical Box "Disposition of Uterus" in this chapter).

Relations of Uterus. Peritoneum covers the uterus anteriorly and superiorly, except for the cervix (Fig. 6.39A). The peritoneum is reflected anteriorly from the uterus onto the bladder and posteriorly over the posterior part of the fornix of the vagina to the rectum (Fig. 6.43A). Anteriorly, the uterine body is separated from the urinary bladder by the **vesico-uterine pouch**, where the peritoneum is reflected from the uterus onto the posterior margin of the superior surface of the bladder. Posteriorly, the uterine body and supravaginal part of the cervix are separated from the sigmoid colon by a layer of peritoneum and the peritoneal cavity and from the rectum by the recto-uterine pouch. Laterally, the uterine artery crosses the ureter superiorly, near the cervix (Fig. 6.41).

The following is a summary of the relations of the uterus (Fig. 6.45):

- Anteriorly (antero-inferiorly in its normal anteverted position): the supravesical fossa and vesico-uterine pouch of the peritoneal cavity and the superior surface of the bladder. The supravaginal part of the cervix is related to the bladder and is separated from it by only fibrous connective tissue.
- Posteriorly: the recto-uterine pouch containing loops of small intestine and the anterior surface of rectum. Only the visceral pelvic fascia uniting the rectum and uterus here resists increased intra-abdominal pressure.
- Laterally: the peritoneal broad ligament flanking the uterine body and the fascial cardinal ligaments on each side of the cervix and vagina. In the transition between the two ligaments, the ureters run anteriorly slightly superior to the lateral part of the vaginal fornix and inferior to the uterine arteries, usually approximately 2 cm lateral to the supravaginal part of the cervix (see Fig. 6.13A).

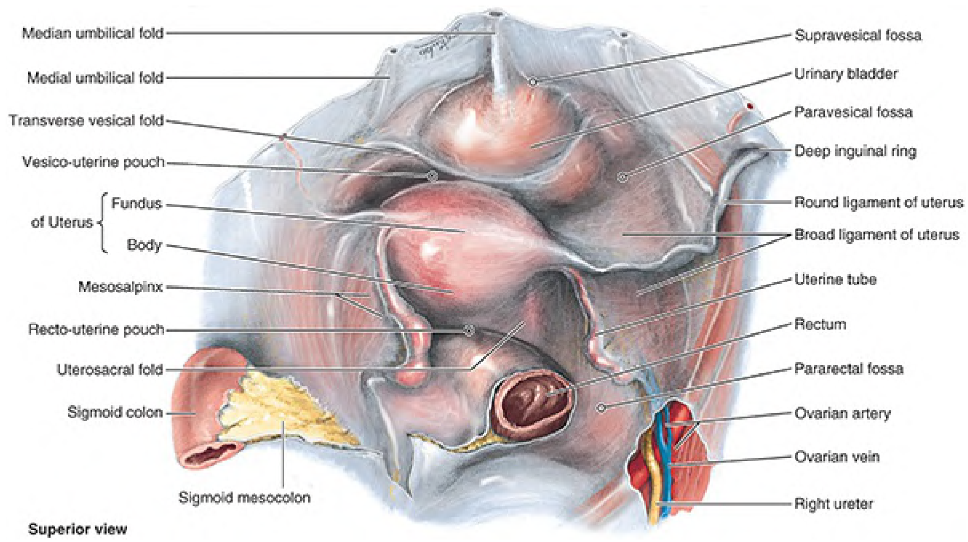


FIGURE 6.45. Relationship of female pelvic viscera. The peritoneum is intact, lining the pelvic cavity and covering the superior aspect of the bladder, fundus and body of uterus, and much of the rectum. In this supine cadaver, the uterine tube and mesosalpinx on each side are hanging down, obscuring the ovaries from view. The uterus is typically asymmetrically placed, as it is here. The round ligament of the uterus follows the same subperitoneal course as the ductus deferens of the male.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Uterus. The blood supply of the uterus derives mainly from the uterine arteries, with potential collateral supply from the ovarian arteries (Fig. 6.41). The uterine veins enter the broad ligaments with the arteries and form a **uterine venous plexus** on each side of the cervix. Veins from the uterine plexus drain into the internal iliac veins.

VAGINA

The **vagina**, a distensible musculomembranous tube (7–9 cm long), extends from the superiormost aspect of the vaginal part of the cervix of the uterus to the **vaginal orifice**, the opening at the inferior end of the vagina (Figs. 6.39B and 6.43A). The vaginal orifice, external urethral orifice, and ducts of the greater and lesser vestibular glands open into the **vestibule of the vagina**, the cleft between the labia minora. The vaginal part of the cervix lies anteriorly in the superior vagina. The vagina

- serves as a canal for menstrual fluid
- forms the inferior part of the birth canal
- receives the penis and ejaculate during sexual intercourse
- communicates superiorly with the cervical canal and inferiorly with the vestibule of the vagina

The vagina is usually collapsed. The vaginal orifice is usually collapsed toward the midline so that its lateral walls are in contact on each side of an anteroposterior slit. Superior to the orifice, however, the anterior and posterior walls are in contact on each side of a transverse potential cavity, H-shaped in cross section (Fig. 6.43C), except at its superior end where the cervix holds them apart. The vagina lies posterior to the urinary bladder and urethra, the latter projecting along the midline of its inferior anterior wall (Fig. 6.39B). The vagina lies anterior to the rectum,

passing between the medial margins of the levator ani (puborectalis) muscles. The **vaginal fornix**, the recess around the cervix, has anterior, posterior, and lateral parts (Figs. 6.39A and 6.43A). The **posterior vaginal fornix** is the deepest part and is closely related to the recto-uterine pouch. Four muscles compress the vagina, acting as sphincters: **pubovaginalis**, external urethral sphincter, **urethrovaginal sphincter**, and bulbospongiosus (Fig. 6.46).

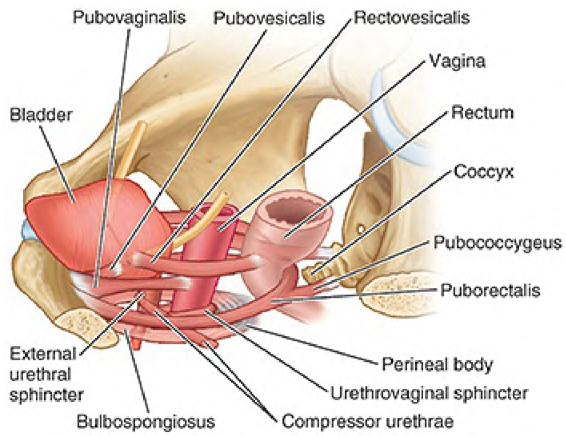


FIGURE 6.46. Muscles compressing urethra and vagina. Muscles that compress the vagina and act as sphincters include the pubovaginalis, external urethral sphincter (especially its urethrovaginal sphincter part), and bulbospongiosus. The compressor urethrae and external urethral sphincter compress the urethra.

The vagina is related (see Fig. 6.27B)

- anteriorly to the fundus of the urinary bladder and urethra
- laterally to the levator ani, visceral pelvic fascia, and ureters
- posteriorly (from inferior to superior) to the anal canal, rectum, and recto-uterine pouch

ARTERIAL SUPPLY AND VENOUS DRAINAGE OF VAGINA

The arteries supplying the superior part of the vagina derive from the uterine arteries. The arteries supplying the middle and inferior parts of the vagina derive from the vaginal and internal pudendal arteries (Fig. 6.41; see Fig. 6.18).

The vaginal veins form **vaginal venous plexuses** along the sides of the vagina and within the vaginal mucosa (Fig. 6.41). These veins are continuous with the uterine venous plexus as the **uterovaginal venous plexus** and drain into the internal iliac veins through the uterine vein. This plexus also communicates with the vesical and rectal venous plexuses.

INNERVATION OF VAGINA AND UTERUS

Only the inferior one fifth to one quarter of the vagina is somatic in terms of innervation. Innervation of this part of the vagina is from the deep perineal nerve, a branch of the pudendal nerve, which conveys sympathetic and visceral afferent fibers but no parasympathetic fibers (Fig. 6.47). Only this somatically innervated part is sensitive to touch and temperature, even though the somatic and visceral afferent fibers have their cell bodies in the same (S2–S4) spinal ganglia.

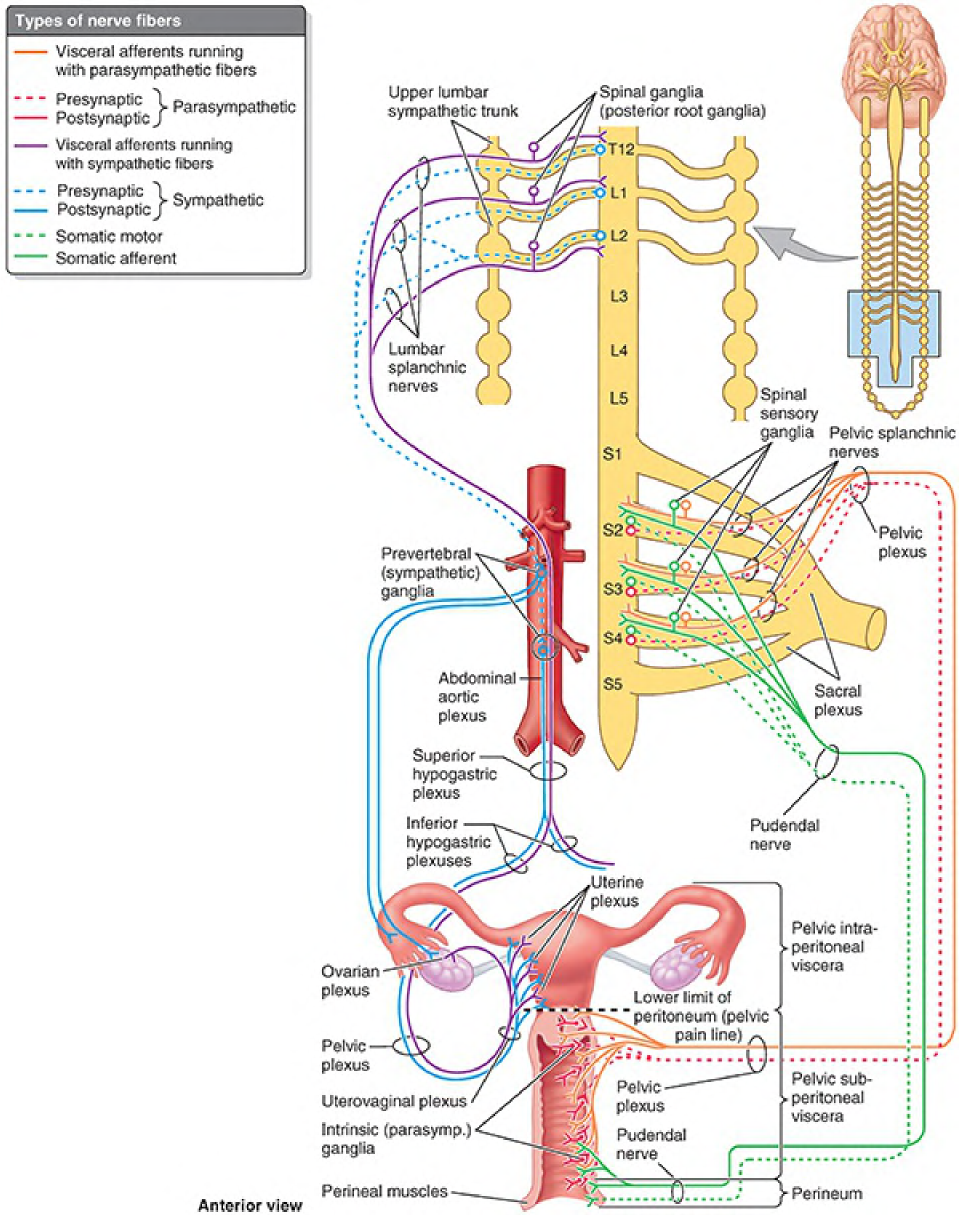


FIGURE 6.47. Innervation of female internal genital organs. Pelvic splanchnic nerves, arising from the S2–S4 anterior rami, supply parasympathetic motor fibers to the uterus and vagina (and vasodilator fibers to the erectile tissue of the clitoris and bulb of the vestibule; not shown). Presynaptic sympathetic fibers traverse the sympathetic trunk and pass through the lumbar splanchnic nerves to synapse in prevertebral ganglia with postsynaptic fibers; the latter fibers travel through the superior and inferior hypogastric plexuses to reach the pelvic viscera. Visceral afferent fibers conducting pain from intraperitoneal structures (such as the uterine body) travel with the sympathetic fibers to the T12–L2 spinal ganglia. Visceral afferent fibers conducting pain from subperitoneal structures, such as the cervix and vagina (i.e., the birth canal), travel with parasympathetic fibers to the S2–S4 spinal ganglia. Somatic sensation from the opening of the vagina also passes to the S2–S4 spinal ganglia via the pudendal nerve. In addition, muscular contractions of the uterus are hormonally induced.

Most of the vagina (superior three quarters to four fifths) is visceral in terms of its innervation. Nerves to this part of the vagina and to the uterus are derived from the **uterovaginal nerve plexus**, which travels with the uterine artery at the junction of the base of the (peritoneal) broad ligament and the superior part of the (fascial) transverse cervical ligament. The uterovaginal

nerve plexus is one of the pelvic plexuses that extend to the pelvic viscera from the inferior hypogastric plexus. Sympathetic, parasympathetic, and visceral afferent fibers pass through this plexus.

Sympathetic innervation originates in the inferior thoracic spinal cord segments and passes through lumbar splanchnic nerves and the intermesenteric–hypogastric–pelvic series of plexuses. Parasympathetic innervation originates in the S2–S4 spinal cord segments and passes through the pelvic splanchnic nerves to the inferior hypogastric–uterovaginal plexus. The visceral afferent innervation of the superior (intraperitoneal; fundus and body) and inferior (subperitoneal; cervical) parts of the uterus and vagina differs in terms of course and destination. Visceral afferent fibers conducting pain impulses from the intraperitoneal uterine fundus and body (superior to the pelvic pain line) follow the sympathetic innervation retrograde to reach cell bodies in the inferior thoracic–superior lumbar spinal ganglia. Afferent fibers conducting pain impulses from the subperitoneal uterine cervix and vagina (inferior to the pelvic pain line) follow the parasympathetic fibers retrograde through the uterovaginal and inferior hypogastric plexuses and pelvic splanchnic nerves to reach cell bodies in the spinal sensory ganglia of S2–S4. The two different routes followed by visceral pain fibers is clinically significant in that it offers mothers a variety of types of anesthesia for childbirth (see the Clinical Box "Anesthesia for Childbirth" in this chapter). All visceral afferent fibers from the uterus and vagina not concerned with pain (those conveying unconscious sensations) also follow the latter route.

CLINICAL BOX

FEMALE INTERNAL GENITAL ORGANS

Infections of Female Genital Tract

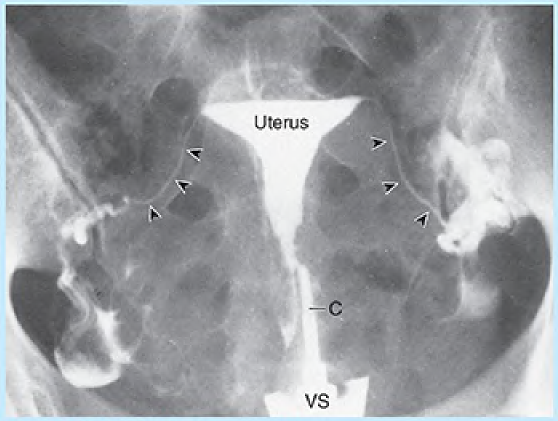
Because the female genital tract communicates with the peritoneal cavity through the abdominal ostia of the uterine tubes, infections of the vagina, uterus, and tubes may result in peritonitis. Conversely, inflammation of a tube (salpingitis) may result from infections that spread from the peritoneal cavity. A major cause of infertility in women is blockage of the uterine tubes, often the result of salpingitis.

Patency of Uterine Tubes

HYSTEROSALPINGOGRAPHY

Patency of the uterine tubes may be determined by a radiographic procedure involving injection of a water-soluble radiopaque material or carbon dioxide gas into the uterus and tubes through the external os of the uterus (hysterosalpingography). The contrast medium travels through the uterine cavity and tubes (arrowheads in Fig.

B6.13). Accumulation of radiopaque fluid or the appearance of gas bubbles in the pararectal fossae (pouch) region of the peritoneal cavity indicates that the tubes are patent.



Anterior radiograph with contrast

FIGURE B6.13. **Hysterosalpingogram.** Radiograph with contrast. Arrowheads, uterine tubes; C, catheter in the cervical canal; VS, vaginal speculum.

ENDOSCOPY

Patency of the uterine tubes can also be determined by hysteroscopy, examination of the interior of the tubes using a narrow endoscopic instrument (hysteroscope), which is introduced through the vagina and uterus.

Female Sterilization

TUBAL STERILIZATION

Tubal sterilization is a permanent, surgical method of birth control. Oocytes released from the ovaries that enter the tubes of these patients degenerate and are soon absorbed. Surgical tubal sterilizations are performed using either an abdominal or laparoscopic approach. Open abdominal tubal sterilization is usually performed through a short suprapubic incision made at the pubic hairline and involves removal of a segment or all of the uterine tube. It may be performed at the time of cesarean section if no further children are desired. Laparoscopic tubal sterilization is done with a fiberoptic laparoscope inserted through a small incision, usually near the umbilicus (Fig. B6.14). In this procedure, tubal continuity is interrupted by applying cautery, rings, or clips.

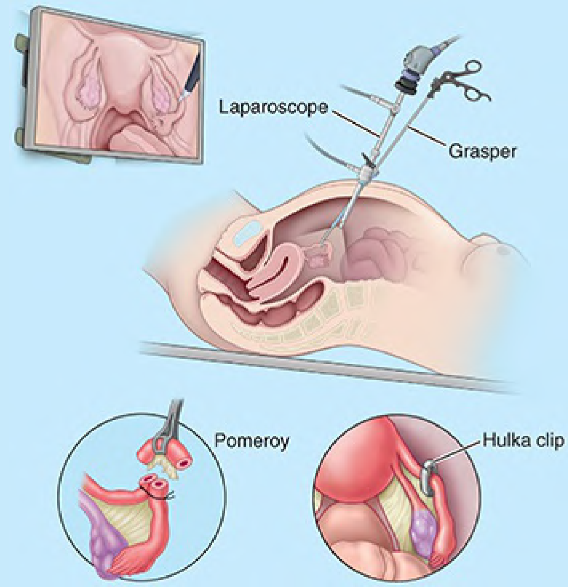


FIGURE B6.14. **Laparoscopic tubal ligation.**

HYSTEROSCOPIC STERILIZATION

A nonsurgical method of sterilization involves hysteroscopic placement of nickel–titanium alloy inserts into the openings of each uterine tube. Scar tissue forms around the implants, blocking the uterine tubes. This process takes approximately 3 months, although it can take longer. A hysterosalpingography is performed after 3 months to ensure that the uterine tubes are completely occluded. In the meantime, a backup method of contraception must be used.

Ectopic Tubal Pregnancy

Tubal pregnancy is the most common type of ectopic gestation (embryonic implantation and initiation of gestational development outside of the body of the uterus); it occurs in approximately 1 of every 250 pregnancies in North America (Moore et al., 2020). If not diagnosed early, ectopic tubal pregnancies may result in rupture of the uterine tube and severe hemorrhage into the abdominopelvic cavity during the first 8 weeks of gestation. Tubal rupture and hemorrhage constitute a threat to the mother's life and result in death of the embryo.

In some women, collections of pus may develop in a uterine tube (pyosalpinx) and the tube may be partly occluded by adhesions. In these cases, the morula (early embryo) may not be able to pass along the tube to the uterus, although sperms have obviously done so. When the blastocyst forms, it may implant in the mucosa of the uterine tube, producing an ectopic tubal pregnancy. Although ectopic implantation may occur in any part of the tube, the common site is in the ampulla (Fig. B6.15). Ectopic pregnancies also occur idiopathically (without demonstrable or understood reason) in women, and there is increased risk in cases of faulty tubal sterilization.

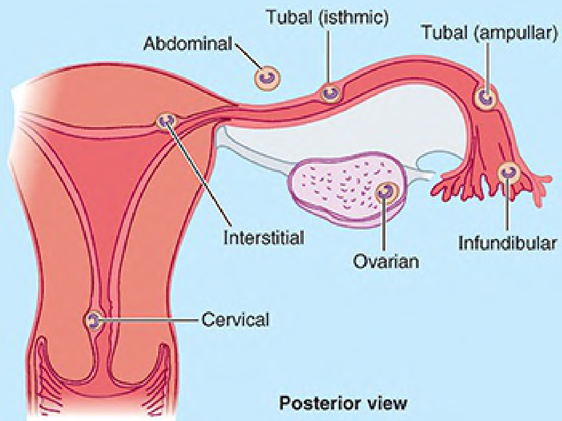


FIGURE B6.15. Sites of ectopic pregnancy.

On the right side, the appendix often lies close to the ovary and uterine tube. This relationship explains why a ruptured tubal pregnancy and the resulting peritonitis may be misdiagnosed as acute appendicitis. In both cases, the parietal peritoneum is inflamed in the same general area, and the pain is referred to the right lower quadrant of the abdomen.

Remnants of Embryonic Ducts

Occasionally, the mesosalpinx between the uterine tube and the ovary contains embryonic remnants (see Fig. 6.39B). The epoophoron forms from remnants of the mesonephric tubules of the mesonephros, the transitory embryonic kidney (Moore et al., 2020). There may also be a persistent duct of the epoophoron (duct of Gartner), a remnant of the mesonephric duct that forms the ductus deferens and ejaculatory duct in the male. It lies between layers of the broad ligament along each side of the uterus and/or vagina. A vesicular appendage is sometimes attached to the infundibulum of the uterine tube. It is the remains of the cranial end of the mesonephric duct that forms the ductus epididymis. Although these vestigial structures are mostly of embryological and morphological interest, they occasionally accumulate fluid and form cysts (e.g., Gartner duct cysts).

Bicornuate Uterus

Incomplete fusion of the embryonic paramesonephric ducts, from which the uterus is formed, results in a variety of congenital anomalies, ranging from formation of a unicornuate uterus (receiving a uterine duct only from the right or left) to duplication in the form of a bicornuate uterus (Fig. B6.16A, B), doubled uterine cavities, or a completely doubled uterus (uterus didelphys).

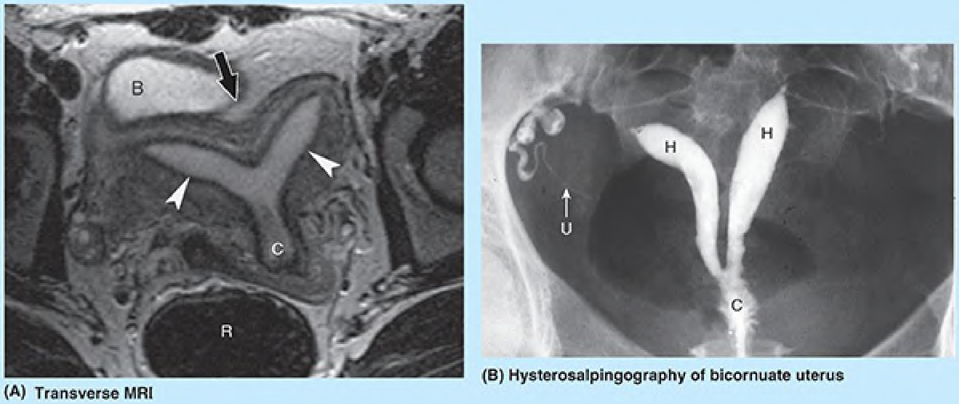


FIGURE B6.16. Bicornuate uterus. Black arrow, surface of fundus; arrowheads, two separate horns of uterus; B, bladder; C, cervix; H, horns of uterus; R, rectum; U, uterine tube.

Disposition of Uterus

Normally, the uterus is anteverted and anteflexed, so that the body of the uterus rests upon the empty bladder, one of several means by which passive support for the uterus may be provided (Fig. B6.17A). However, the uterus may assume other dispositions, including excessive anteflexion (Fig. B6.17B), anteflexion with retroversion (Fig. B6.17C), and retroflexion with retroversion (Fig. B6.17D). Once marked, retroversion and/or retroversion was thought to be a potential predisposing factor in uterine prolapse or to present a potential complication in pregnancy; however, this has proven to be unjustified.

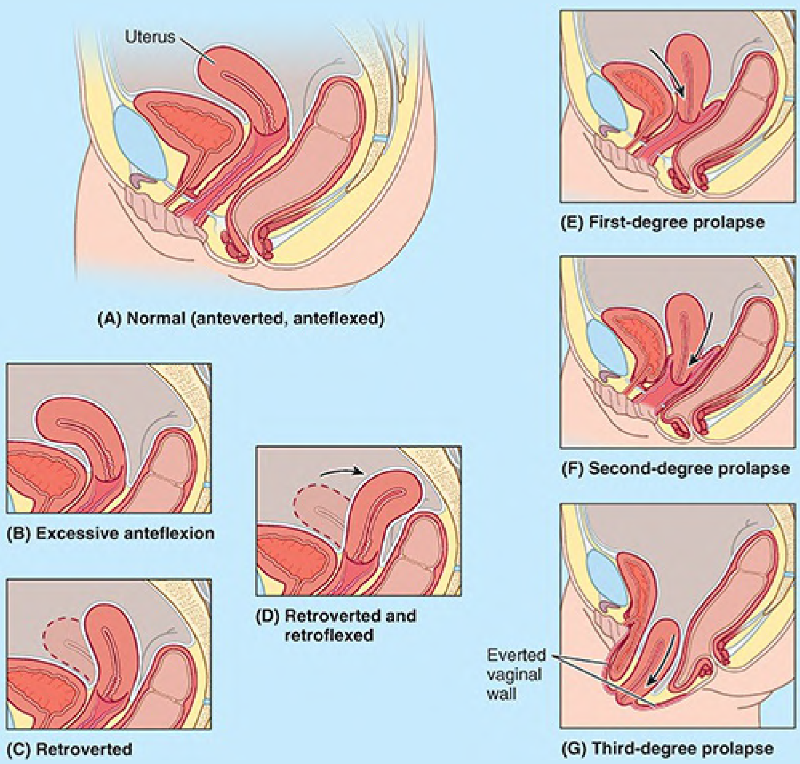


FIGURE B6.17. Disposition of uterus.

Manual Examination of Uterus

The size and disposition of the uterus may be examined by bimanual palpation (Fig. B6.18A). Two gloved fingers of the examiner's dominant hand are passed superiorly in the vagina, while the other hand is pressed inferoposteriorly on the pubic region of the anterior abdominal wall. The size and other characteristics of the uterus can be determined in this way (e.g., whether the uterus is in its normal anteverted position). When softening of the uterine isthmus occurs (Hegar sign), the cervix feels as though it were separated from the body of the uterus. Softening of the isthmus is an early sign of pregnancy. The uterus can be further stabilized through rectovaginal examination, which is used if examination via the vagina alone does not yield clear findings (Fig. B6.18B).

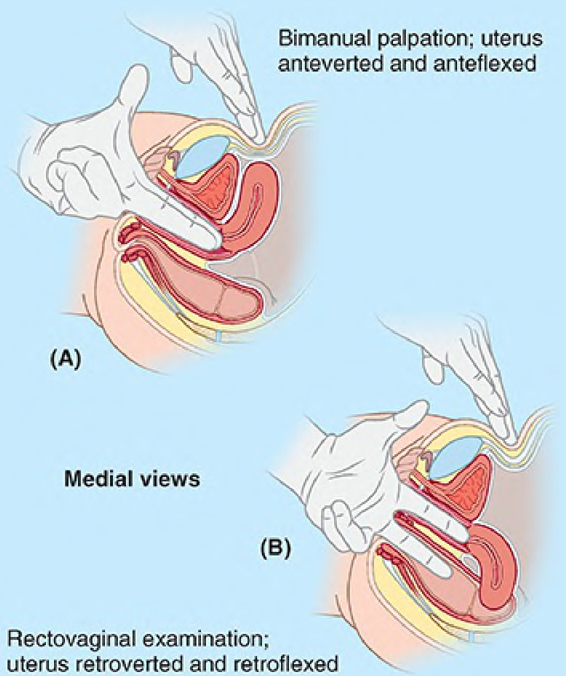


FIGURE B6.18. Bimanual pelvic examination for position of uterus.

Lifetime Changes in Anatomy of Uterus

The uterus is possibly the most dynamic structure in human anatomy (Fig. B6.19). At birth, the uterus is relatively large and has adult proportions (body to cervical ratio = 2:1) due to the prepartum (before childbirth) influence of the maternal hormones (Fig. B6.19A). Several weeks postpartum (after childbirth), childhood dimensions and proportions are obtained: The body and cervix are approximately of equal length (body to cervical ratio = 1:1), with the cervix being of greater diameter (thickness) (Fig. B6.19B). Because of the small size of the pelvic cavity during infancy, the uterus is mainly an abdominal organ. The cervix remains relatively large (approximately 50% of total uterus) throughout childhood. During puberty, the uterus (especially its body) grows rapidly in size, once again assuming adult proportions (Fig. B6.19C). In the postpubertal,

premenopausal, nonpregnant woman, the body of the uterus is pear shaped; the thick-walled superior two thirds of the uterus lies within the pelvic cavity (Fig. B6.19D). During this phase of life, the uterus undergoes monthly changes in size, weight, and density in relation to the menstrual cycle.

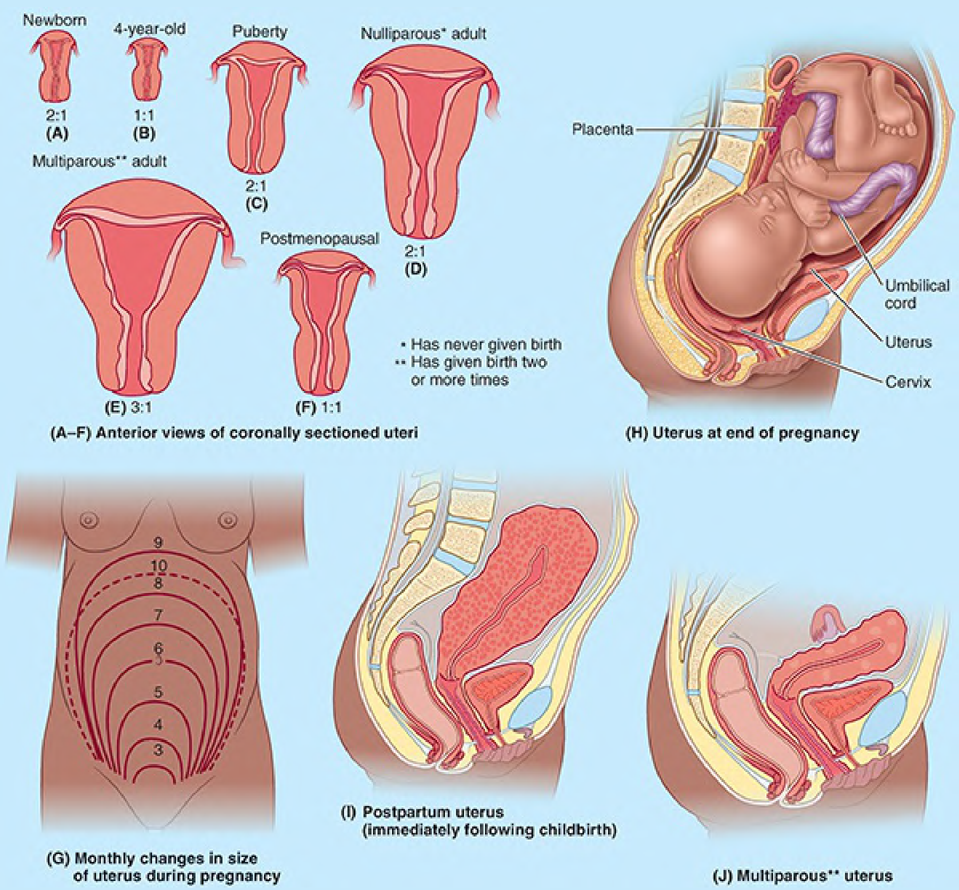


FIGURE B6.19. Lifetime changes in uterus.

Over the 9 months of pregnancy, the gravid uterus expands greatly to accommodate the fetus, becoming larger and increasingly thin walled (Fig. B6.19G). At the end of pregnancy (B6.19G, line 10), the fetus "drops," as the head becomes engaged in the lesser pelvis. The uterus becomes nearly membranous, with the fundus dropping below its highest level (achieved in the 9th month), at which time it extends superiorly to the costal margin, occupying most of the abdominopelvic cavity (Fig. B6.19H).

Immediately after delivery of the fetus, the large uterus becomes thick walled and edematous (Fig. B6.19I), but its size reduces rapidly. The multiparous nongravid uterus has a large and nodular body and usually extends into the lower abdominal cavity, often causing a slight protrusion of the inferior abdominal wall in lean women (Fig. B6.19E, J; see Fig. 6.73B).

During menopause (45–55 years of age), the uterus (again, especially the body) decreases in size. Postmenopause, the uterus is involuted and regresses to a markedly smaller size, once again assuming childhood proportions (Fig. B6.19F). All these stages represent normal

anatomy for the particular age and reproductive status of the woman. Changes in the appearance of the cervix associated with childbirth remain visible throughout the rest of the woman's lifetime, although probably not of functional significance.

Cervical Cancer Screening

Until 1940, cervical cancer was the leading cause of death in North American women (Krebs, 2000). The decline in the incidence and number of women dying from cervical cancer is related to the accessibility of the cervix to direct visualization and to cell and tissue study by means of cervical cytology (invented in 1946 by Dr. George Papanicolaou; hence, this test is also called a "Pap test"). Cervical cytology allows detection and treatment of premalignant cervical conditions (Hoffman et al., 2020). The vagina can be distended with a vaginal speculum to enable inspection of the cervix (Fig. B6.20A, B). A spatula is placed in the external os of the uterus (Fig. B6.20A). The spatula is rotated to scrape cellular material from the mucosa of the vaginal cervix (Fig. B6.20C), followed by insertion of a cytobrush into the cervical canal that is rotated to gather cellular material from the supravaginal cervical mucosa. The cellular material is then placed in a preservative liquid for microscopic examination (Fig. B6.20D). Preferred current cervical cancer screening for women aged 30–65 years includes both cervical cytology and testing for human papillomavirus (HPV) every 5 years. HPV is the leading cause of cervical cancer in women. HPV testing is not recommended for women aged 21–29 years due to the high prevalence of HPV in this population. For this group of women, cervical cytology alone is recommended every 3 years.

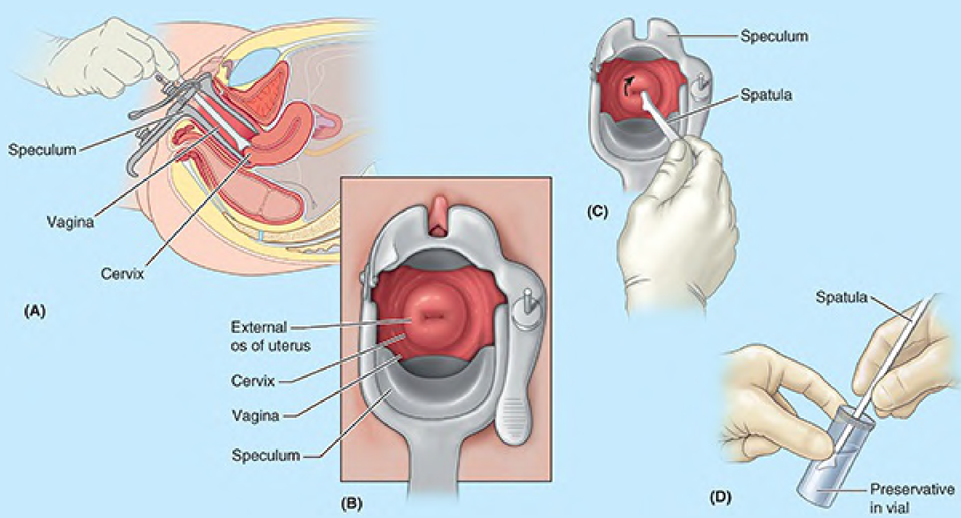


FIGURE B6.20. Cervical cytology (Pap smear).

Because no peritoneum intervenes between the anterior cervix and the base of the bladder, cervical cancer may spread by contiguity to the bladder. It may also spread by lymphogenous (lymph-borne) metastasis to external or internal iliac or sacral nodes. Hematogenous (bloodborne) metastasis may occur via iliac veins or via the internal

vertebral venous plexus.

Hysterectomy

Hysterectomy, surgical excision of the uterus (G. hystera), is a relatively common procedure performed primarily in the case of uterine disease, such as large uterine fibroids, endometriosis, or uterine or cervical cancer. The incidence of hysterectomy for noncancerous reasons has markedly declined in favor of exploring other options. The procedure stops abnormal bleeding but also stops menstrual periods and ends the ability to conceive. The incidence of hysterectomy for noncancerous reasons has markedly declined in favor of exploring other options. The uterus may be surgically approached and removed through the anterior abdominal wall ("transabdominal approach") or through the vagina ("transvaginal approach") (Fig. B6.21), by means of conventional surgery or with laparoscopic or robotic assistance. Depending on the location, extent, and nature of the pathology, a subtotal (supracervical or cervical), total, or radical hysterectomy may be performed, the latter involving removal of the ovaries in addition to the uterus. In subtotal hysterectomies, the uterus is divided at the isthmus. When cervical or total hysterectomies are performed, the vaginal fornices are incised, encircling the cervix, to separate the uterus from the vagina. The superior end of the vagina is then closed by suture. Ligation of the uterine artery is performed distal to the vaginal artery and vaginal branches to enable maximal blood flow to the superior end of the vagina to facilitate healing.

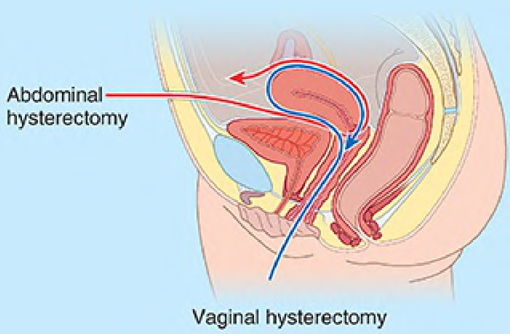


FIGURE B6.21. Surgical routes for hysterectomy.

Distension of Vagina

The adult vagina can be markedly distended, particularly in the region of the posterior part of the fornix. For example, distension of this part allows palpation of the sacral promontory during a pelvic examination (see the Clinical Box "Pelvic Diameters [Conjugates]" in this chapter). The distension also accommodates the erect penis during sexual intercourse.

The vagina is especially distended by the fetus during parturition, particularly in an AP direction when the fetus's shoulders are delivered (Fig. B6.22). Lateral distension is limited by the ischial spines, which project posteromedially, and the sacrospinous ligaments

extending from these spines to the lateral margins of the sacrum and coccyx. The birth canal is thus deep anteroposteriorly and narrow transversely at this point, causing the fetus's shoulders to rotate into the AP plane.

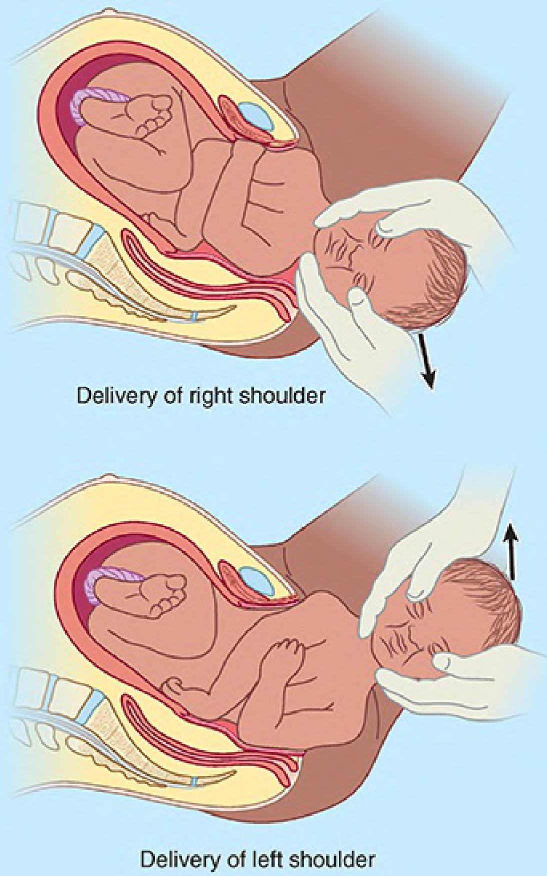


FIGURE B6.22. Passage fetus through vagina. (Arrows, direction of manual guidance.)

Digital Pelvic Examination

Because of its relatively thin, distensible walls and central location within the pelvis, the cervix, ischial spines, and sacral promontory can be palpated with the gloved digits in the vagina and/or rectum (manual pelvic examination). Pulsations of the uterine arteries may also be felt through the lateral parts of the fornix, as may irregularities of the ovaries, such as cysts (Fig. B6.23). An ultrasound probe may be inserted into the vagina to visualize adjacent structures such as the ovaries.

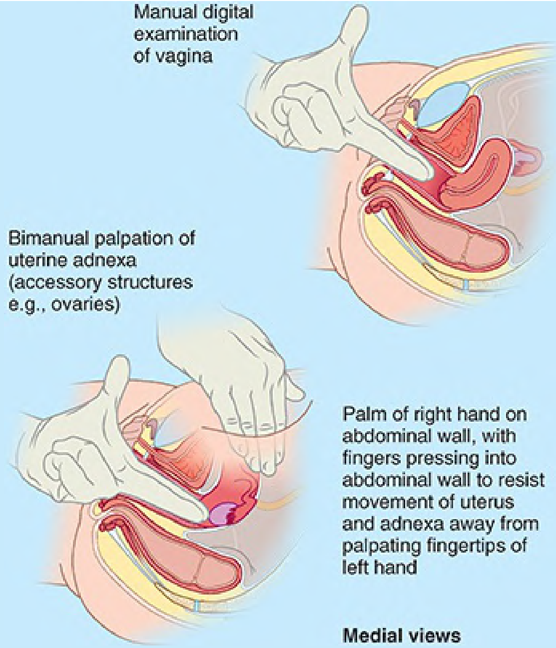


FIGURE B6.23. **Digital pelvic examination of vagina and uterine adnexa.**

Vaginal Fistulae

Because of the close relationship of the vagina to adjacent pelvic organs, obstetrical trauma during long and difficult labor may result in weaknesses, necrosis, or tears in the vaginal wall and sometimes beyond. Radiation treatment for pelvic cancer, surgical complications, and inflammatory bowel disease or diverticulitis may also impact the vagina. These insults may form or subsequently develop into abnormal passages (fistulas) between the vaginal lumen and the lumina of the adjacent bladder, ureter, urethra, bowel, or rectum (Fig. B6.24). Urine enters the vagina from vesicovaginal, ureterovaginal, and urethrovaginal fistulas. Flow is continuous from vesico- and ureterovaginal fistulas but occurs only during micturition from urethrovaginal fistulas. Fecal matter or gas may be discharged from the vagina when there is an entero- (bowel) or rectovaginal fistula. Fistulas are surgically repaired.

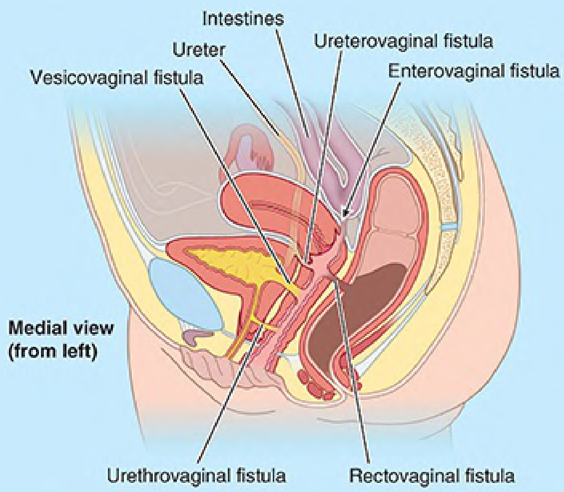


FIGURE B6.24. Vaginal fistulae.

Culdocentesis

A pelvic abscess in the recto-uterine pouch can be drained through an incision made in the posterior part of the vaginal fornix (culdocentesis—“culdo-” referencing the term “cul-de-sac,” a term used historically for the recto-uterine pouch [of Douglas]). Similarly, fluid in the peritoneal cavity (e.g., blood) can be aspirated by this technique (Fig. B6.25).

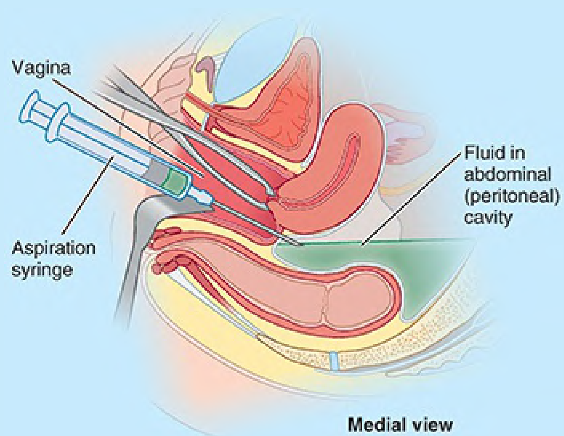


FIGURE B6.25. Culdocentesis.

Laparoscopic Examination of Pelvic Viscera

Visual examination of the pelvic viscera is especially useful in diagnosing many conditions affecting the pelvic viscera, such as ovarian cysts and tumors, endometriosis (the presence of functioning endometrial tissue outside the uterus), and ectopic pregnancies. Laparoscopy involves inserting a laparoscope into the peritoneal cavity through a small (approximately 2-cm) incision below the umbilicus (Fig. B6.26).

Insufflation of carbon dioxide creates a pneumoperitoneum to provide space to visualize, and the pelvis is elevated so that gravity will pull the intestines into the abdomen. The uterus can be externally manipulated to facilitate visualization, or additional openings (ports) can be made to introduce other instruments for manipulation or to enable therapeutic procedures (e.g., ligation of the uterine tubes).

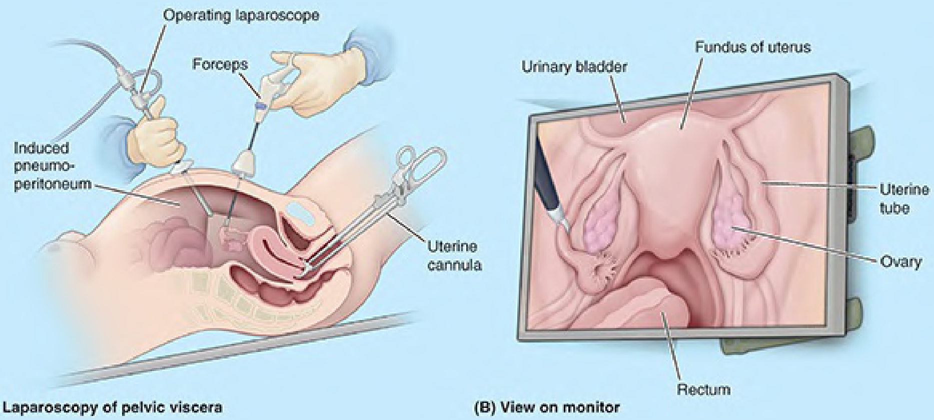


FIGURE B6.26. Laparoscopic examination.

Anesthesia for Childbirth

Several options are available to women to reduce the pain and discomfort experienced during childbirth. General anesthesia is used for emergency procedures. General anesthesia renders the mother unconscious; she is unaware of the labor and delivery. Clinicians monitor and regulate maternal respiration and both maternal and fetal cardiac function. Childbirth occurs passively under the control of maternal hormones with the assistance of an obstetrician.

Regional anesthesia or analgesia, such as an epidural, spinal, or pudendal block, affects one area of the body. The amount of numbness felt depends on the type of agent used. With regional analgesia, a woman is conscious of uterine contractions and can “bear down” or push to assist the contractions and expel the fetus. Regional anesthesia induces complete blockade of pain and feeling and does not allow a woman to assist with labor.

The epidural block is a popular choice for participatory childbirth (A in Fig. B6.27). The anesthetic agent is administered using an indwelling catheter into the epidural space (a fat-filled space) at the L3–L4 vertebral level, enabling administration of more anesthetic agent for a deeper or more prolonged anesthesia, if necessary. The anesthesia bathes the spinal nerve roots, including the pain fibers from the uterine cervix and superior vagina and the afferent fibers from the pudendal nerve. Therefore, the entire birth canal, pelvic floor, and majority of the perineum are anesthetized, but the lower limbs are not usually affected. The pain fibers from the uterine body (superior to the pelvic pain line) ascend to the inferior thoracic–superior lumbar levels. These and the fibers superior to them are not affected by the anesthetic, so the mother is aware of her uterine contractions. The spinal epidural space does not continue into the cranial cavity (see Fig. 8.28C in Chapter 8, Head), so the

anesthetic agent cannot ascend beyond the foramen magnum.

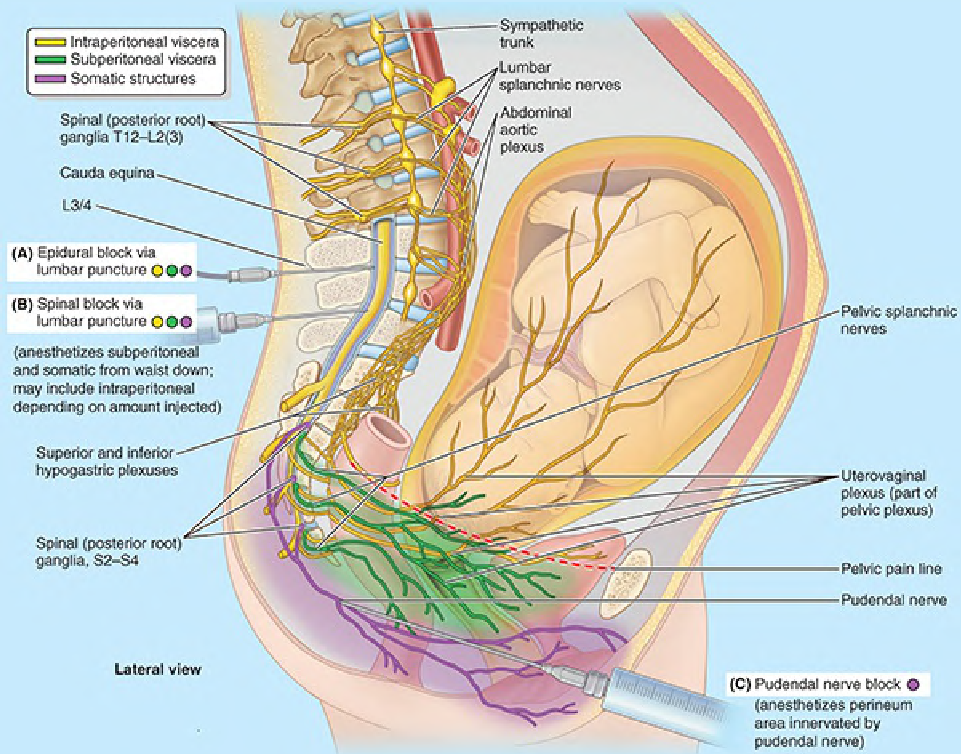


FIGURE B6.27. Obstetrical anesthesia.

Spinal anesthesia, in which the anesthetic agent is introduced through the dura and arachnoid mater with a needle into the spinal subarachnoid space at the L3–L4 vertebral level (B in Fig. B6.27), produces complete anesthesia inferior to approximately the waist level. The perineum, pelvic floor, and birth canal are anesthetized, and motor and sensory functions of the entire lower limbs, as well as sensation of uterine contractions, are temporarily blocked. Spinal anesthesia often is used for limited-duration procedures, such as postpartum sterilization or forceps delivery, or for the second stage of labor. Depending on the agent used, its effects last for 30–250 minutes. If labor is extended or the level of anesthesia is inadequate, it may be difficult or impossible to re-administer the anesthesia. Because the anesthetic agent is heavier than cerebrospinal fluid, it remains in the inferior spinal subarachnoid space while the patient is inclined. The anesthetic agent circulates into the cerebral subarachnoid space in the cranial cavity when the patient lies flat following the delivery. Consequently, a severe "spinal headache" is a potential complication with spinal anesthesia that cannot occur with epidural anesthesia.

With both epidural and spinal anesthesia, there is a risk that cerebrospinal fluid can leak out of the subarachnoid space. With an epidural, this happens when the needle inadvertently pierces the dura and arachnoid mater. With a spinal block, the needle deliberately pierces the dura and arachnoid. As cerebrospinal fluid leaks out, it decreases pressure within the canal, which can lead to a severe headache. In severe cases, the headache can be treated using an autologous blood patch, in which a small amount of the patient's blood is injected

into the epidural space to fill the hole made by the needle.

A pudendal nerve block is a peripheral nerve block that provides local anesthesia over the S2–S4 dermatomes (the majority of the perineum) and the inferior quarter of the vagina (C in Fig. B6.27). It does not block pain from the superior birth canal (uterine cervix and superior vagina), so the mother is able to feel uterine contractions. It can be re-administered; however to do so, it may be disruptive and involve the use of a sharp instrument in close proximity to the infant's head. The anatomical basis of the administration of a pudendal block is provided in the Clinical Box "Pudendal and Ilio-Inguinal Nerve Blocks" in this chapter.

Caudal (sacral canal) epidural blocks are no longer commonly used.

The Bottom Line: Female Internal Genital Organs

Ovaries and uterine tubes: The ovaries are suspended by two peritoneal folds: the mesovarium from the posterosuperior aspect of the broad ligament and the vascular suspensory ligament of the ovary from the lateral wall of the pelvis. ■ They are attached to the uterus by the ligaments of the ovaries. ■ The peritoneum ends at the ovary itself. It is replaced on the surface of the ovary with a duller, cuboidal epithelium.

The uterine tubes are the conduits and the site of fertilization for oocytes discharged into the peritoneal cavity. ■ Coursing in a peritoneal fold (mesosalpinx) that makes up the superior margin of the broad ligament, each uterine tube has a fimbriated, funnel-like infundibulum, a wide ampulla, a narrow isthmus, and a short uterine part that traverses the uterine wall to enter the cavity.

The ovaries and uterine tubes receive a double (collateral) blood supply from the abdominal aorta via the ovarian arteries and from the internal iliac arteries via the uterine arteries. ■ This collateral circulation allows the ovaries to be spared to supply estrogen when a hysterectomy necessitates ligation of the uterine arteries. ■ Sympathetic and visceral afferent pain fibers travel with the ovarian vessels. ■ Parasympathetic and visceral afferent reflex fibers traverse pelvic plexuses and pelvic splanchnic nerves.

Uterus: Shaped like an inverted pear, the uterus is the organ in which the blastocyst (early embryo) implants and develops into a mature embryo and then a fetus. ■ Although its size and proportions change during the various phases of life, the nongravid uterus consists of a body and cervix, demarcated by a relatively narrow isthmus. ■ The uterus has a trilaminar wall consisting of (1) an inner vascular and secretory endometrium, which undergoes cyclical changes to prepare for implantation to occur and sheds with menstrual flow if it does not; (2) a hormonally stimulated intermediate smooth muscle myometrium, which dilates the cervical canal (exit) and expels the fetus during childbirth; and (3)

visceral peritoneum (perimetrium), which covers most of the fundus and body (except for a bare area abutting the bladder) and continues bilaterally as the broad ligament (mesometrium).

The uterus is normally anteverted and anteflexed so that its weight is borne largely by the urinary bladder, although it also receives significant passive support from the cardinal ligaments and active support from the muscles of the pelvic floor. ■ The uterine artery supplies the uterus and, during pregnancy, the placenta. ■ The uterine veins drain to the uterovaginal venous plexus.

Vagina: The vagina is a musculomembranous passage connecting the uterine cavity to the exterior, allowing the entrance/insertion of the penis, ejaculate, tampons, or examining digits and the exit of a fetus or menstrual fluid. ■ The vagina lies between and is closely related to the urethra anteriorly and rectum posteriorly but is separated from the latter by the peritoneal recto-uterine pouch superiorly and the fascial rectovaginal septum inferiorly. The vagina is indented (invaginated) anterosuperiorly by the uterine cervix so that an encircling pocket or vaginal fornix is formed around it. ■ Most of the vagina is located within the pelvis, receiving blood via pelvic branches of the internal iliac arteries (uterine and vaginal arteries) and draining directly into the uterovaginal venous plexus and, via deep (pelvic) routes, to the internal and external iliac and sacral lymph nodes. ■ The inferiormost part of the vagina is located within the perineum, receiving blood from the internal pudendal artery and draining via superficial (perineal) routes into superficial inguinal nodes. ■ The vagina is capable of remarkable distension, enabling manual examination (palpation) of pelvic landmarks and viscera (especially the ovaries) as well as of pathology (e.g., ovarian cysts).

Innervation of uterus and vagina: The inferiormost (perineal) portion of the vagina receives somatic innervation via the pudendal nerve (S2–S4) and is, therefore, sensitive to touch and temperature. ■ The remainder of the vagina and uterus is pelvic and thus visceral in its location, receiving innervation from autonomic and visceral afferent fibers. ■ All unconscious, reflex-type sensation travels retrogradely along the parasympathetic pathways to the S2–S4 spinal sensory ganglia, as does pain sensation arising in the subperitoneal uterus (primarily cervix) and vagina (inferior to the pelvic pain line)—that is, from the birth canal. ■ However, pain sensation from the intraperitoneal uterus (superior to the pelvic pain line) travels retrogradely along the sympathetic pathway to the inferiormost thoracic and superior lumbar spinal ganglia. ■ Epidural anesthesia may be administered to take advantage of the discrepancy in the pain pathways to facilitate participatory childbirth methods; uterine contractions are felt, but the birth canal is anesthetized.

Lymphatic Drainage of Pelvic Viscera

For the main part, the lymphatic vessels of the pelvis follow the venous system, following the tributaries of the internal iliac vein to the internal iliac nodes, directly or via the sacral lymph nodes (Fig. 6.48). However, structures located superiorly in the anterior portion of the pelvis drain to the external iliac nodes, a lymphatic pathway that does not parallel venous drainage. From both external and internal iliac nodes, lymph flows via common iliac and lumbar (caval/aortic) lymph nodes, draining via lumbar lymphatic trunks into the cisterna chyli.

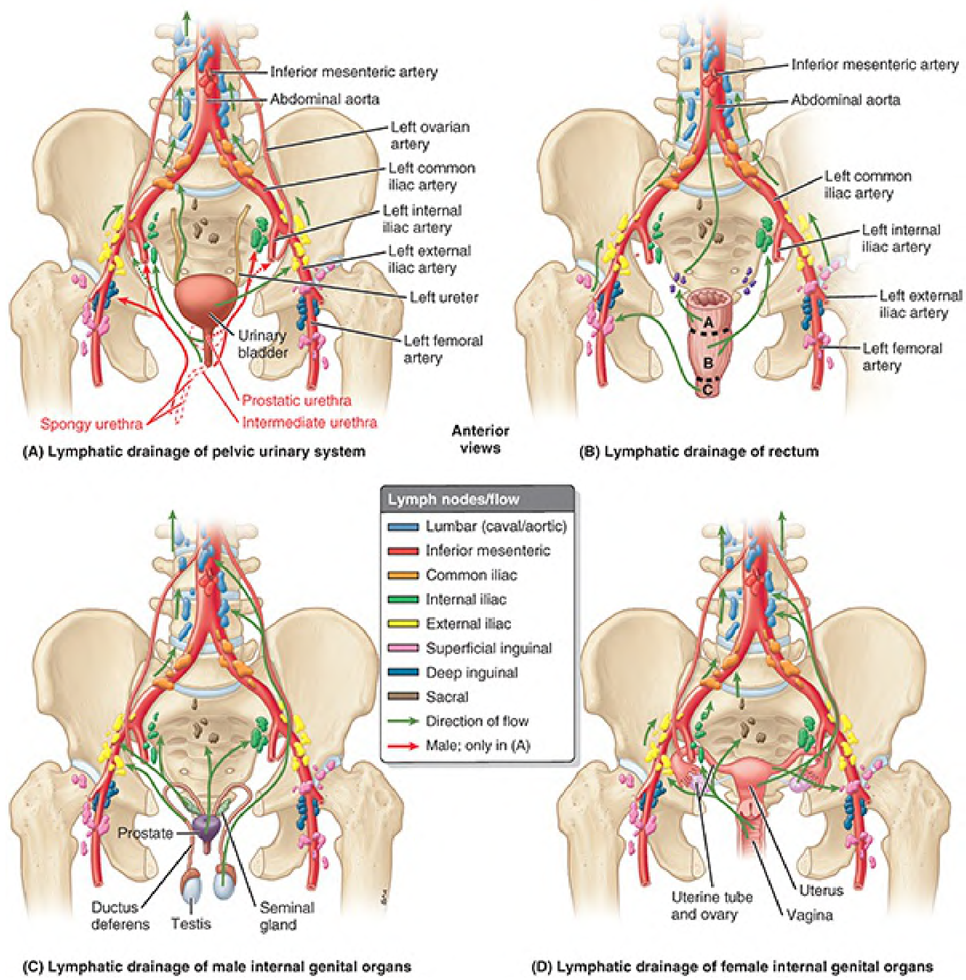


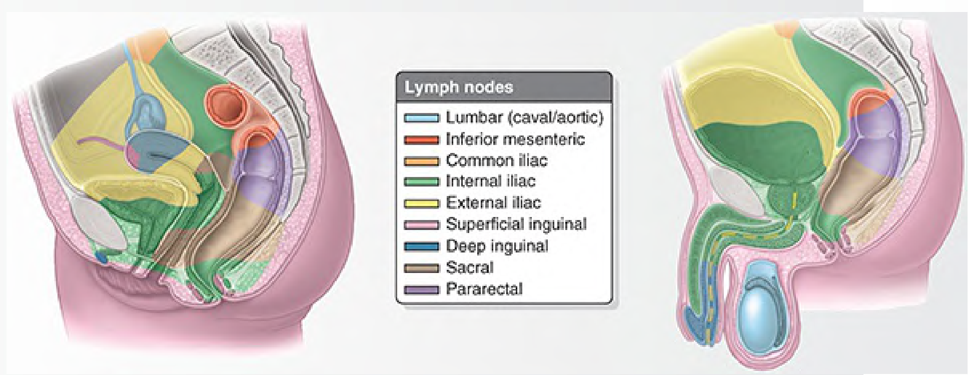
FIGURE 6.48. **Lymphatic drainage of pelvic viscera.**

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE FROM URINARY SYSTEM

The superior portion of the pelvic part of the ureters drains primarily to external iliac nodes, while the inferior portion drains to the internal iliac nodes (Fig. 6.48A; Table 6.7). Lymphatic vessels from the superolateral aspects of the bladder pass to the external iliac lymph nodes, whereas those from the fundus and neck pass to the internal iliac lymph nodes. Some vessels from the neck of the bladder drain into the sacral or common iliac lymph nodes. Most lymphatic vessels from the female urethra and proximal part of the male urethra pass to the internal iliac

lymph node. However, a few vessels from the female urethra may also drain into the sacral nodes and, from the distal female urethra, to the inguinal lymph nodes.

TABLE 6.7. LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE OF STRUCTURES OF PELVIS AND PERINEUM



Lymph Node Group		Structures Typically Draining to Lymph Node Group	
Lumbar	Female: along ovarian vessels	Gonads and associated structures; common iliac nodes	Female: ovary; uterine tube (except isthmus and intra-uterine parts); fundus of uterus
	Male: along testicular vessels		Male urethra: testis; epididymis
Inferior mesenteric		Superiormost rectum; sigmoid colon; descending colon; pararectal nodes	
Common iliac		External and internal iliac lymph nodes	
Internal iliac		Inferior pelvic structures; deep perineal structures; sacral nodes	Female: base of the bladder; inferior pelvic ureter; anal canal (above pectinate line); inferior rectum; middle and upper vagina; cervix; body of the uterus
			Male: prostatic urethra; prostate; base of the bladder; inferior pelvic ureter; inferior seminal glands; cavernous bodies; anal canal (above pectinate line); inferior rectum
External iliac		Anterosuperior pelvic structures; deep inguinal nodes	Female: superior bladder; superior pelvic ureter; upper vagina; cervix; lower body of the uterus
			Male: superior bladder; superior pelvic ureter; upper seminal gland; pelvic part of ductus deferens; intermediate and spongy urethra (secondary)
Superficial inguinal		Lower limb; superficial drainage of inferolateral quadrant of the trunk, including anterior abdominal wall inferior to umbilicus, gluteal region, and superficial perineal structures	Female: superolateral uterus (near attachment of round ligament); skin of perineum including vulva; ostium of the vagina (inferior to hymen); prepuce of the clitoris; peri-anal skin; anal canal

		inferior to pectinate line
		Male: skin of perineum including skin and prepuce of the penis; scrotum; peri-anal skin; anal canal inferior to pectinate line
Deep inguinal	Glans clitoris or penis; superficial inguinal nodes	Female: glans clitoris Male: glans penis; distal spongy urethra
Sacral	Postero-inferior pelvic structures: inferior rectum; inferior vagina	
Pararectal	Superior rectum	

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE FROM RECTUM

Lymphatic vessels from the superior rectum pass to inferior mesenteric lymph nodes, many passing through **pararectal lymph nodes** (located directly on the muscle layer of the rectum) and/or sacral lymph nodes en route (Fig. 6.48B; Table 6.7). The inferior mesenteric nodes drain into the lumbar (caval/aortic) lymph nodes. Lymphatic vessels from the inferior half of the rectum drain directly to sacral lymph nodes or, especially from the distal ampulla, follow the middle rectal vessels to drain into the internal iliac lymph nodes.

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE FROM MALE PELVIC VISCERA

Lymphatic vessels from the ductus deferens, ejaculatory ducts, and inferior parts of the seminal glands drain to the external iliac lymph nodes (Fig. 6.48C; Table 6.7). The lymphatic vessels from the superior parts of the seminal glands and prostate terminate chiefly in the internal iliac lymph nodes, but some drainage from the latter may pass to the sacral nodes.

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE FROM FEMALE PELVIC VISCERA

Lymphatic vessels from the ovaries, joined by vessels from the uterine tubes and most from the fundus of the uterus, follow the ovarian veins as they ascend to the right and left lumbar (caval/aortic) lymph nodes (Fig. 6.48D; Table 6.7).

Lymphatic vessels from the uterus drain in many directions, coursing along the blood vessels that supply it as well as the ligaments attached to it:

- Most lymphatic vessels from the fundus and superior uterine body pass along the ovarian vessels to the lumbar (caval/aortic) lymph nodes, but some vessels from the fundus, particularly those near the entrance of the uterine tubes and attachments of the round ligaments, run along the round ligament of the uterus to the superficial inguinal lymph nodes.
- Vessels from most of the uterine body and some from the cervix pass within the broad ligament to the external iliac lymph nodes.
- Vessels from the uterine cervix also pass along the uterine vessels, within the transverse cervical ligaments, to the internal iliac lymph nodes, and along uterosacral (sacrogenital) ligaments to the sacral lymph nodes.

Lymphatic vessels from the vagina drain from the parts of the vagina as follows:

- Superior part: to the internal and external iliac lymph nodes
- Middle part: to the internal iliac lymph nodes
- Inferior part: to the sacral and common iliac nodes (Fig. 6.48; Table 6.7)
- External orifice: to the superficial inguinal lymph nodes

PERINEUM

The **perineum** refers to the shallow compartment of the body (perineal compartment) bounded by the pelvic outlet and separated from the pelvic cavity by the fascia covering the inferior aspect of the pelvic diaphragm, which is formed by the levator ani and coccygeus muscles (Fig. 6.49). In the anatomical position, the surface of the perineum—the **perineal region**—is the narrow region between the proximal parts of the thighs. However, when the lower limbs are abducted, it is a diamond-shaped area extending from the mons pubis anteriorly in females, the medial surfaces (insides) of the thighs laterally, and the gluteal folds and superior end of the intergluteal (natal) cleft posteriorly (Fig. 6.50).

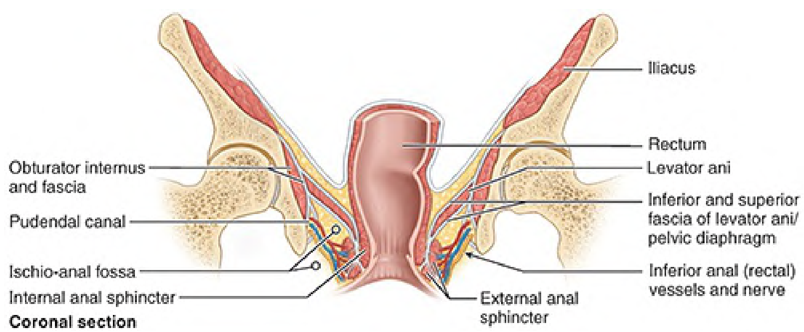


FIGURE 6.49. **Boundary separating pelvis from perineum.** The inferior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm (levator ani muscle) is the demarcation.

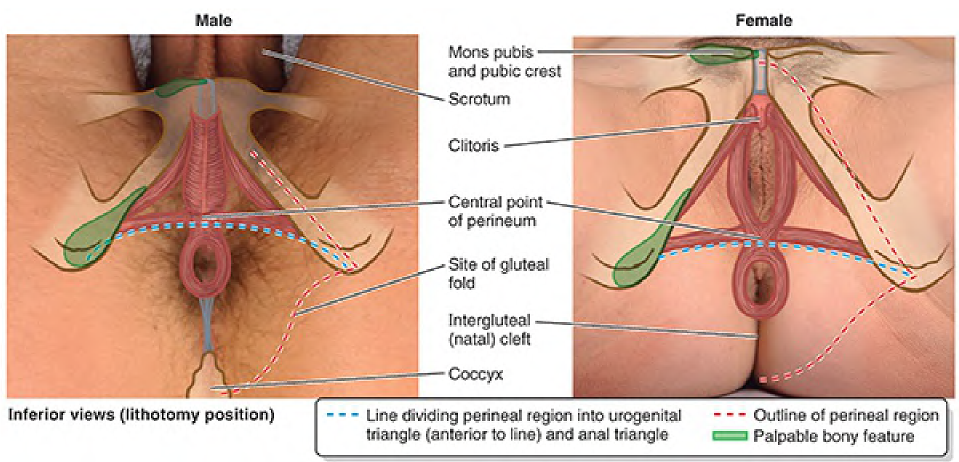


FIGURE 6.50. **Male and female perineal regions.** Boundaries and surface features of the perineal region with projections of the osseous boundaries and muscles of the superficial muscles of the perineum. The penis and some of the scrotum (part of the perineal region) are retracted anteriorly and therefore are not shown.

The osseofibrous structures marking the boundaries of the perineum (perineal compartment) (Fig. 6.51A, B) are the

- pubic symphysis, anteriorly
- **ischiopubic rami** (combined inferior pubic rami and ischial rami), anterolaterally
- ischial tuberosities, laterally
- sacrotuberous ligaments, posterolaterally
- inferiormost sacrum and coccyx, posteriorly

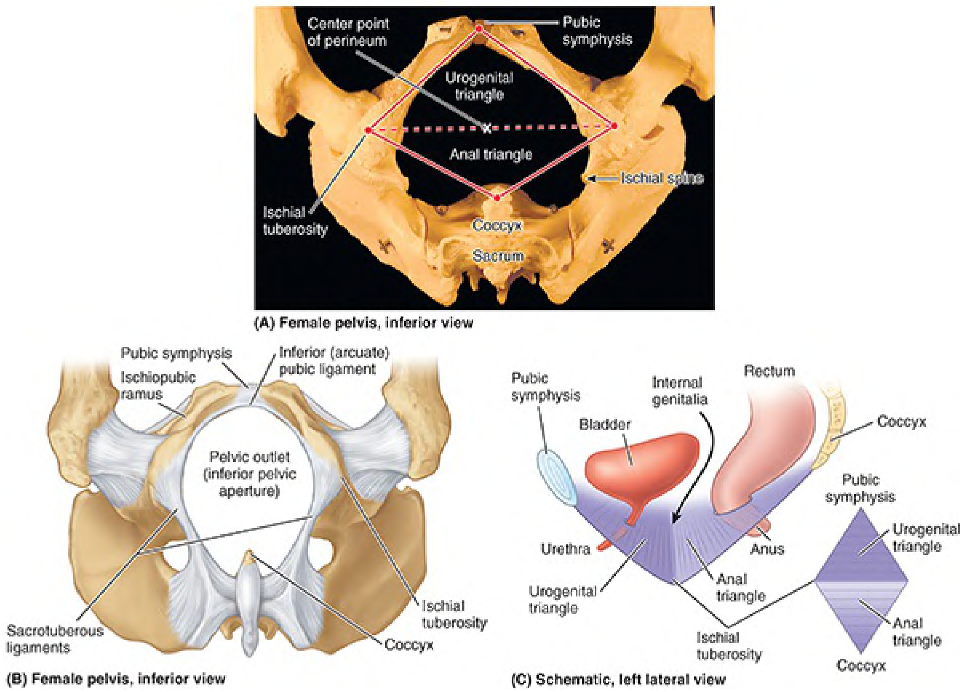
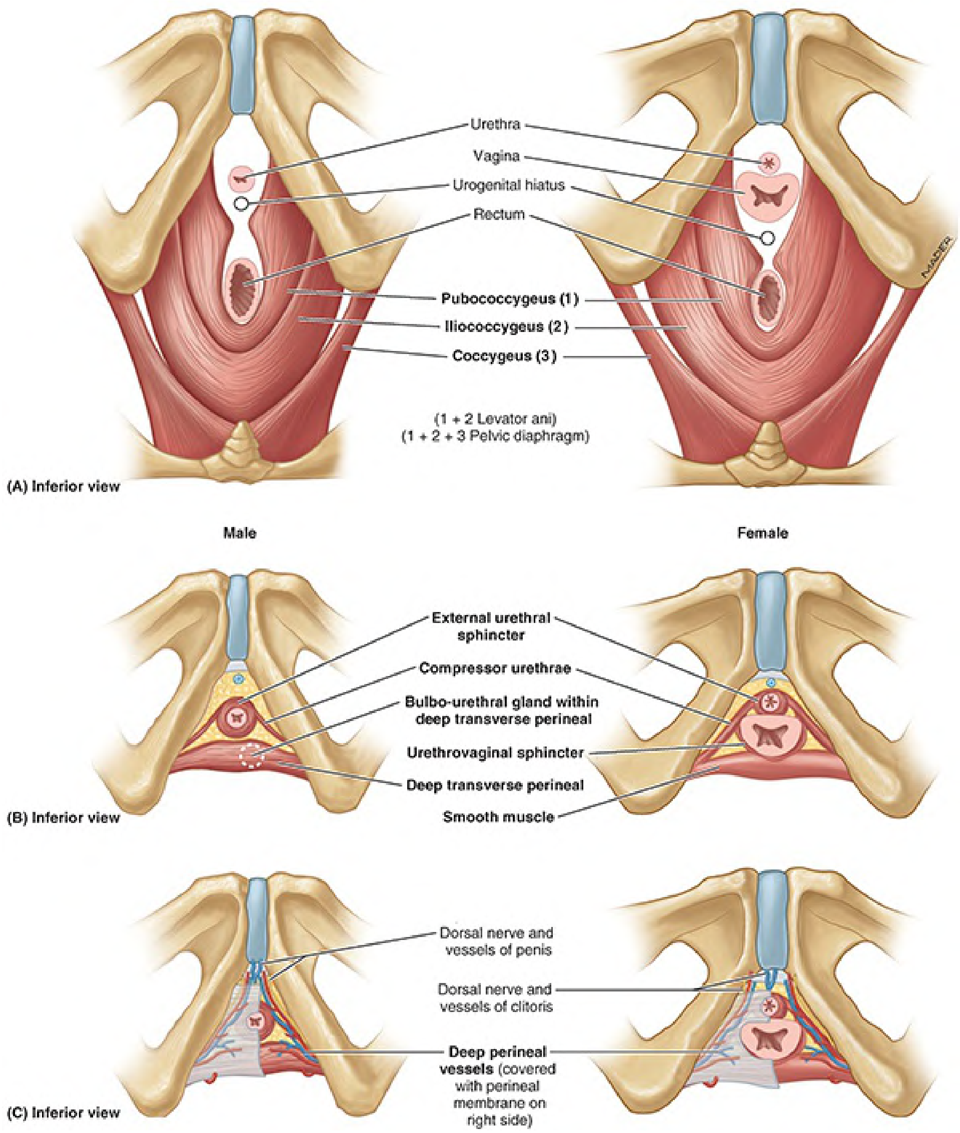


FIGURE 6.51. Boundaries and disposition of perineum. A. Pelvic girdle demonstrating bony features bounding perineum. The two triangles comprising the diamond-shaped perineum are superimposed. **B.** Osseofibrous structures bounding the pelvic outlet and perineum. This view of the female pelvis is the one obstetricians visualize when the patient is on the examining table. **C.** The two triangles (urogenital and anal) that together comprise the perineum do not occupy the same plane. The plane between the bladder and rectum is occupied by internal genitalia and a septum formed during embryonic development as the urogenital sinus was partitioned into the urinary bladder and urethra anteriorly and the anorectum posteriorly.

A transverse line joining the anterior ends of the ischial tuberosities divides the diamond-shaped perineum into two triangles, the oblique planes of which intersect at the transverse line (Fig. 6.51A–C). The **anal triangle** lies posterior to this line. The anal canal and its orifice, the anus, constitute the major deep and superficial features of the triangle, lying centrally surrounded by ischio-anal fat. The **urogenital** (UG) **triangle** is anterior to this line. In contrast to the open anal triangle, the UG triangle is “closed” by a thin sheet of tough, deep fascia, the **perineal membrane**, which stretches between the two sides of the pubic arch, covering the anterior part of the pelvic outlet (Fig. 6.52C). The perineal membrane thus fills the anterior gap in the pelvic diaphragm (the urogenital hiatus; Fig. 6.52A) but is perforated by the urethra in both sexes and by the vagina of the female. The membrane and the ischiopubic rami to which it attaches provide

a foundation for the erectile bodies of the external genitalia—the penis and scrotum of males and the pudendum or vulva of females—which are the superficial features of the triangle (Fig. 6.50).



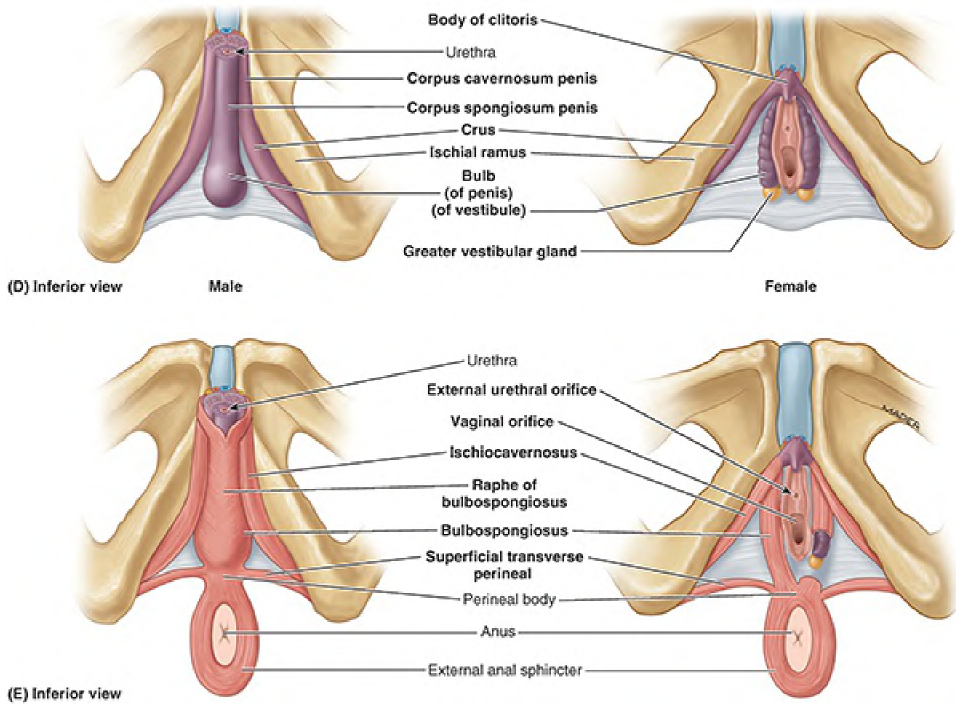


FIGURE 6.52. **Layers of perineum of males and females.** The layers are shown as being built up from deep (**A**) to superficial (**E**) layers. **A.** The pelvic outlet is almost closed by the pelvic diaphragm (levator ani and coccygeus muscles), forming the floor of the pelvic cavity and, as viewed here, the roof of the perineum. The urethra (and vagina in females) and rectum pass through the urogenital hiatus of the pelvic diaphragm. **B and C.** The external urethral sphincter and deep transverse perineal muscle span the region of the urogenital hiatus, which is closed inferiorly by the perineal membrane extending between the ischiopubic rami. **D and E.** Inferior to the perineal membrane, the superficial perineal pouch (space) contains the erectile bodies and the muscles associated with them.

The midpoint of the line joining the ischial tuberosities is the **central point of the perineum**. This is the location of the **perineal body** (central tendon of the perineum), which is an irregular mass, variable in size and consistency. It contains collagenous and elastic fibers and both skeletal and smooth muscle (Fig. 6.52E). The perineal body lies deep to the skin, with relatively little overlying subcutaneous tissue, posterior to the vestibule of the vagina or bulb of the penis and anterior to the anus and anal canal. The perineal body is the site of convergence and interlacing of fibers of several muscles, including the following:

- Bulbospongiosus
- External anal sphincter
- Superficial and deep transverse perineal muscles
- Smooth and voluntary slips of muscle from the external urethral sphincter, levator ani, and muscular coats of the rectum

Anteriorly, the perineal body blends with the posterior border of the perineal membrane and superiorly with the rectovesical or rectovaginal septum (Fig. 6.53A, B).

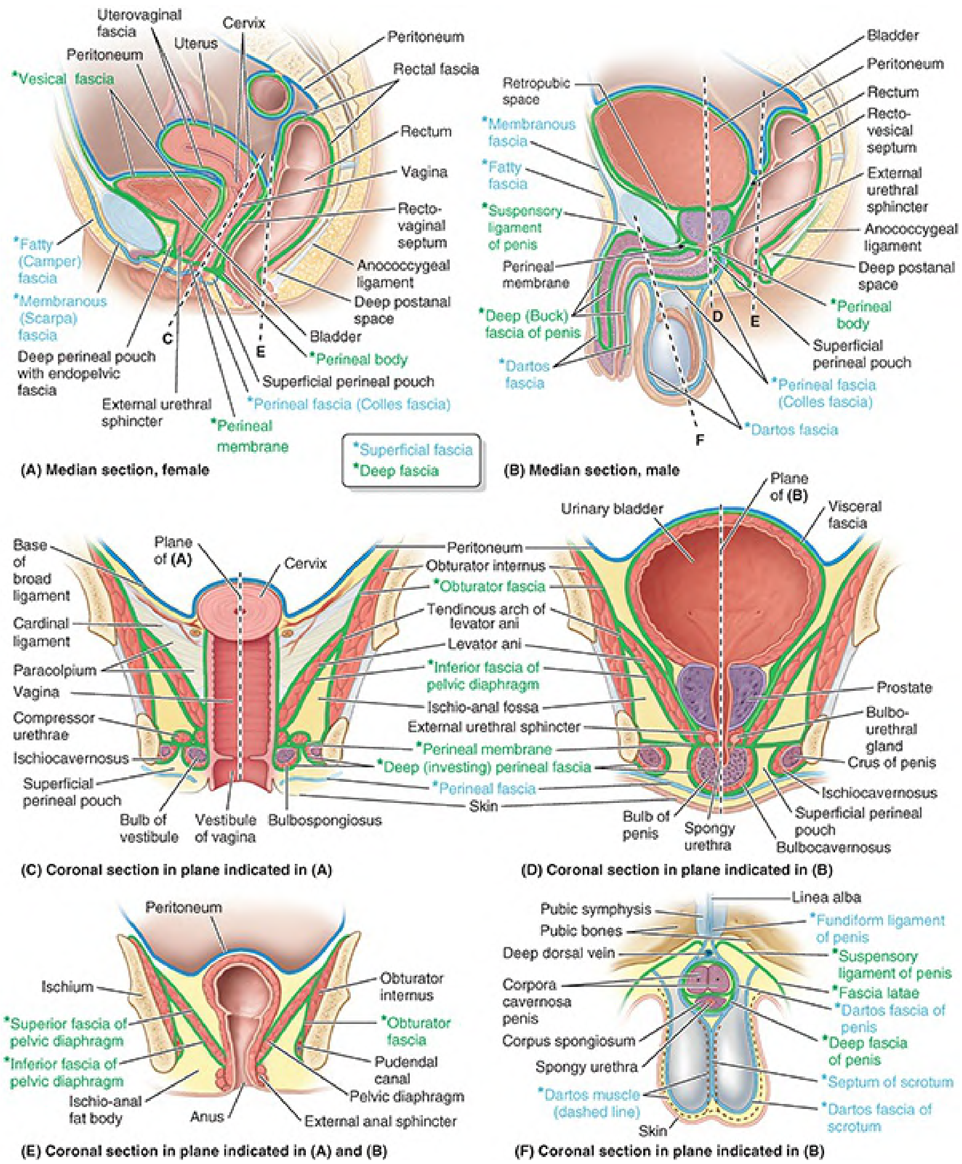


FIGURE 6.53. **Fasciae of perineum. A.** Female. **B.** Male. The planes of the sections shown in parts **C–F** are indicated. **C.** Coronal section of female urogenital triangle in plane of vagina. Fibro-areolar components of the endopelvic fascia (cardinal ligament and paracolpium) are shown. **D.** Coronal section of male urogenital triangle in plane of prostatic urethra. **E.** Coronal section of anal triangle in protum. An enlarged view of the layers of the penislane of lower rectal and anal canals. **F.** Subcutaneous tissue of proximal penis and sc is provided in Figure 6.61C.

Fasciae and Pouches of Urogenital Triangle

PERINEAL FASCIAE[2]

The perineal fascia consists of superficial and deep layers. The **subcutaneous tissue of the perineum**, like that of the inferior anterior abdominal wall, consists of a superficial fatty layer and a deep membranous layer, the (superficial) **perineal fascia** (Colles fascia).

In females, the **fatty layer of subcutaneous tissue of the perineum** makes up the substance of the labia majora and mons pubis and is continuous anteriorly and superiorly with the fatty

layer of subcutaneous tissue of the abdomen (Camper fascia) (Fig. 6.53A). In males, the fatty layer is greatly diminished in the urogenital triangle, being replaced altogether in the penis and scrotum with smooth (dartos) muscle. It is continuous between the penis or scrotum and thighs with the fatty layer of subcutaneous tissue of the abdomen (Fig. 6.53B, F). In both sexes, the fatty layer of subcutaneous tissue of the perineum is continuous posteriorly with the ischio-anal fat body in the anal region (Fig. 6.53E).

The membranous **perineal fascia** does not extend into the anal triangle. It is attached posteriorly to the posterior margin of the perineal membrane and perineal body (Fig. 6.53A, B). Laterally, it is attached to the fascia lata (deep fascia) of the superiormost medial aspect of the thigh (Fig. 6.53C, E). Anteriorly in males, the perineal fascia is continuous with the **dartos fascia** of the penis and scrotum; however, on each side of and anterior to the scrotum, the perineal fascia becomes continuous with the membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue of the abdomen (Scarpa fascia) (Fig. 6.53B). In females, the perineal fascia passes superior to the fatty layer forming the labia majora and becomes continuous with the membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue of the abdomen (Fig. 6.53A, C).

The **deep perineal fascia** (investing or Gallaudet fascia) intimately invests the ischiocavernosus, bulbospongiosus, and superficial transverse perineal muscles (Fig. 6.53A, E). It is also attached laterally to the ischiopubic rami. Anteriorly, it is fused to the suspensory ligament of the penis (see Fig. 6.63) and is continuous with the deep fascia covering the external oblique muscle of the abdomen and the rectus sheath. In females, the deep perineal fascia is fused with the suspensory ligament of the clitoris and, as in males, with the deep fascia of the abdomen.

SUPERFICIAL PERINEAL POUCH

The **superficial perineal pouch** (space or compartment) is a potential space between the perineal fascia and the perineal membrane, bounded laterally by the ischiopubic rami (Figs. 6.52D, E and 6.53).

In males, the superficial perineal pouch contains the

- root (bulb and crura) of the penis and associated muscles (ischiocavernosus and bulbospongiosus)
- proximal (bulbous) part of the spongy urethra
- superficial transverse perineal muscles
- deep perineal branches of the internal pudendal vessels and pudendal nerves

In females, the superficial perineal pouch contains the

- clitoris and associated muscle (ischiocavernosus)
- bulbs of the vestibule and surrounding muscle (bulbospongiosus)
- greater vestibular glands
- superficial transverse perineal muscles
- related vessels and nerves (deep perineal branches of the internal pudendal vessels and pudendal nerves)

The structures of the superficial perineal pouch are discussed in greater detail, specific to each sex, under "Male Perineum" and "Female Perineum," later in this chapter.

DEEP PERINEAL POUCH

The **deep perineal pouch** (space) is bounded inferiorly by the perineal membrane, superiorly by the inferior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm, and laterally by the inferior portion of the obturator fascia (covering the obturator internus muscle) (Fig. 6.53C, D). It includes the fat-filled anterior recesses of the ischio-anal fossae. The superior boundary in the region of the urogenital hiatus is indistinct.

In both sexes, the deep perineal pouch contains

- part of the urethra, centrally
- the inferior part of the external urethral sphincter muscle, above the center of the perineal membrane, surrounding the urethra
- anterior extensions of the ischio-anal fat bodies

In males, the deep perineal pouch contains the

- intermediate part of the urethra, the narrowest part of the male urethra
- deep transverse perineal muscles, immediately superior to the perineal membrane (on its superior surface), running transversely along its posterior aspect
- bulbo-urethral glands, embedded within the deep perineal musculature
- dorsal neurovascular structures of the penis

In females, the deep perineal pouch contains the

- proximal part of the urethra
- a mass of smooth muscle in the place of deep transverse perineal muscles on the posterior edge of the perineal membrane, associated with the perineal body
- dorsal neurovasculature of the clitoris

Past Concept of Deep Perineal Pouch and External Urethral Sphincter. Traditionally, a trilaminar, triangular UG diaphragm has been described as making up the deep perineal pouch. Although the classical descriptions appear justified when viewing only the superficial aspect of the structures occupying the deep pouch (Fig. 6.54A), the long-held concept of a flat, essentially two-dimensional diaphragm is erroneous. According to this concept, a trilaminar "UG diaphragm" consisted of the perineal membrane (inferior fascia of the UG diaphragm) inferiorly, a superior fascia of the UG diaphragm superiorly, and deep perineal muscles in between. The deep pouch was the space between the two fascial membranes, occupied by what was perceived to be a flat muscular sheet consisting of a disc-like sphincter urethra anterior to or within an equally two-dimensional, transversely oriented deep transverse perineal muscle. In males, the bulbo-urethral glands were also considered occupants of the pouch. Only the descriptions of the perineal membrane and deep transverse perineal muscles of the male (with embedded glands) appear to be supported by evidence, which includes medical imaging of live subjects (Myers et al., 1998). Many texts, atlases, and medical illustrations continue to feature the old model, and

students are likely to encounter the outdated images and concepts in clinical training and practice and need to be aware of the inaccuracies in this regard.

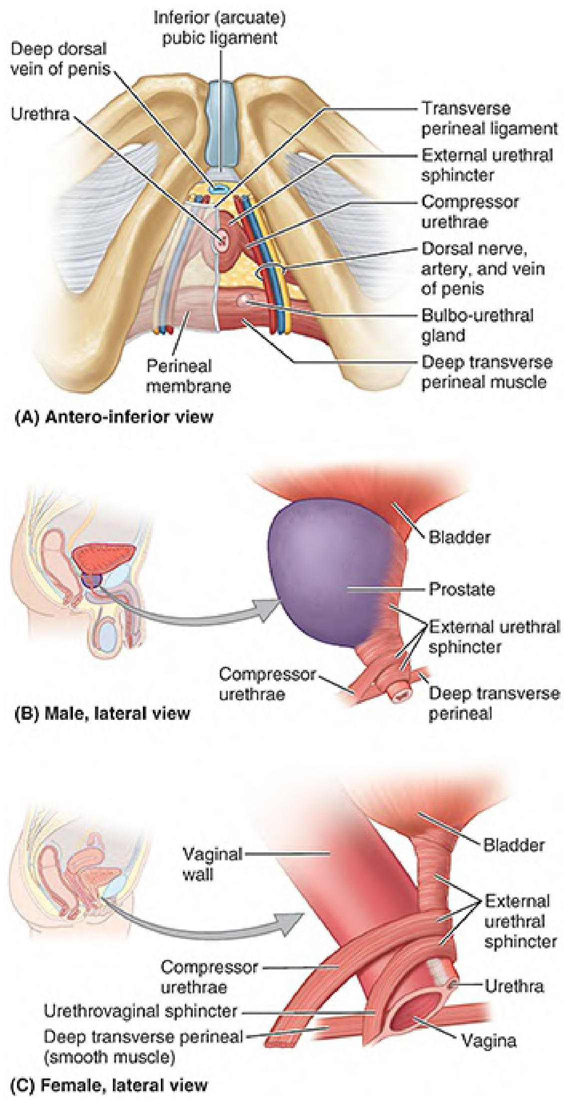


FIGURE 6.54. **Deep perineal pouch and male and female external urethral sphincters. A.** Deep perineal pouch. The pouch is viewed through (left side) and after removal of the perineal membrane (right side). **B.** Male urethral sphincter complex. The trough-like fibers of the superior external urethral sphincter ascend to the neck of the bladder as part of the isthmus of the prostate. The inferior sphincter includes cylindrical and loop-like portions (compressor urethrae). **C.** Female urethral sphincter complex.

Current Concept of Deep Perineal Pouch and External Urethral Sphincter. In the female, the posterior edge of the perineal membrane is typically occupied by a mass of smooth muscle in the place of the deep transverse perineal muscles (Wendell-Smith, 1995). Immediately superior to the posterior half of the perineal membrane, the flat, sheet-like, deep transverse perineal muscle, when developed (typically only in males), offers dynamic support for the pelvic viscera. As described by Oelrich (1980), however, the urethral sphincter muscle is not a flat, planar structure, and the only “superior fascia” is the intrinsic fascia of the external urethral sphincter muscle. Contemporary views consider the inferior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm to be the

superior boundary of the deep pouch (Fig. 6.53C–E). In both views, the strong perineal membrane is the inferior boundary (floor) of the deep pouch, separating it from the superficial pouch. The perineal membrane is indeed, with the perineal body, the final passive support of the pelvic viscera.

The male **external urethral sphincter** is more like a tube or trough than a disc. In the male, only the inferior part of the muscle forms an encircling investment (a true sphincter) for the intermediate part of the urethra inferior to the prostate (Fig. 6.54B). Its larger, trough-like part extends vertically to the neck of the bladder as part of the isthmus of the prostate, displacing glandular tissue and investing the prostatic urethra anteriorly and anterolaterally only (see Fig. 6.38). Apparently, the muscular primordium is established around the whole length of the urethra before development of the prostate. As the prostate develops from urethral glands, the posterior and posterolateral muscle atrophies or is displaced by the prostate. Whether this part of the muscle compresses or dilates the prostatic urethra is a matter of some controversy.

The female **external urethral sphincter** is more properly a “urogenital sphincter” (Oelrich, 1983). Here, too, a part forms a true anular sphincter around the urethra (Fig. 6.54C), with several additional parts extending from it: a superior part, extending to the neck of the bladder; a subdivision described as extending inferolaterally to the ischial ramus on each side (the compressor urethrae muscle); and yet another band-like part, which encircles both the vagina and the urethra (urethrovaginal sphincter). In both males and females, the musculature described is oriented perpendicular to the perineal membrane, rather than lying in a plane parallel to it.

Features of Anal Triangle

ISCHIO-ANAL FOSSAE

The **ischio-anal fossae** (ischiorectal fossae) on each side of the anal canal are large fascia-lined, wedge-shaped spaces between the skin of the anal region and the pelvic diaphragm (Figs. 6.53E; 6.55A, B; and 6.56). The apex of each fossa lies superiorly where the levator ani muscle arises from the obturator fascia. The ischio-anal fossae, wide inferiorly and narrow superiorly, are filled with fat and loose connective tissue. The two ischio-anal fossae communicate by means of the deep postanal space over the anococcygeal ligament (body), a fibrous mass located between the anal canal and the tip of the coccyx (Figs. 6.53A, B and 6.55A).

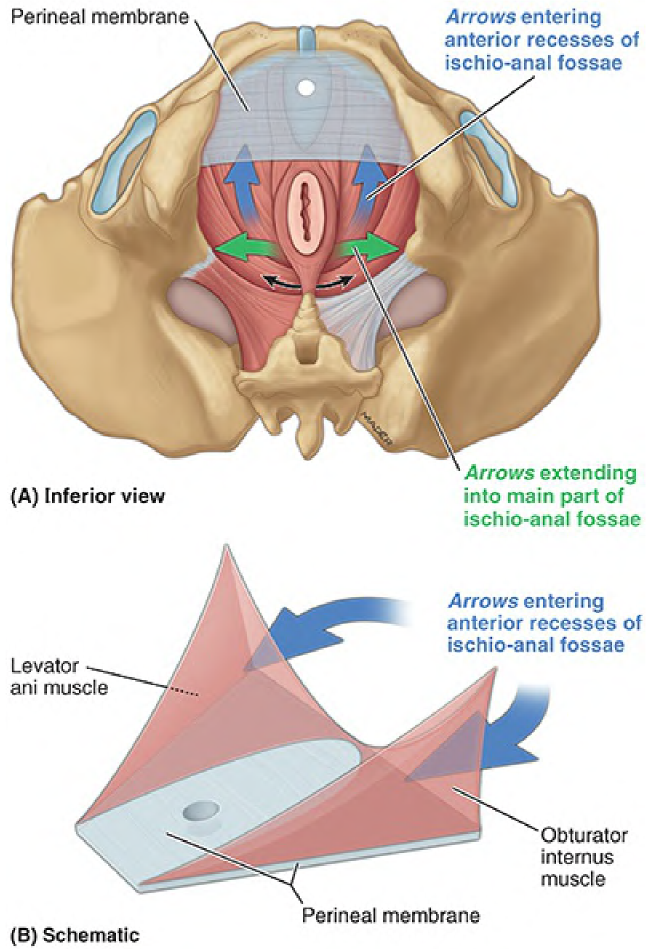


FIGURE 6.55. Pelvic diaphragm and ischio-anal fossae. A. Relationships of pelvic diaphragm, perineal membrane, and ischio-anal fossae. Fascia covering the inferior aspect of the pelvic diaphragm (not shown) forms the roof of the fossae. The left sacrospinous ligament has been removed to reveal the coccygeus. Abscesses of the right or left ischio-anal fossa may extend to the contralateral fossa via the deep postanal space (double-headed arrow). **B.** Schematic of anterior recesses of ischio-anal fossae. The recesses are large enough to admit a fingertip during dissection.

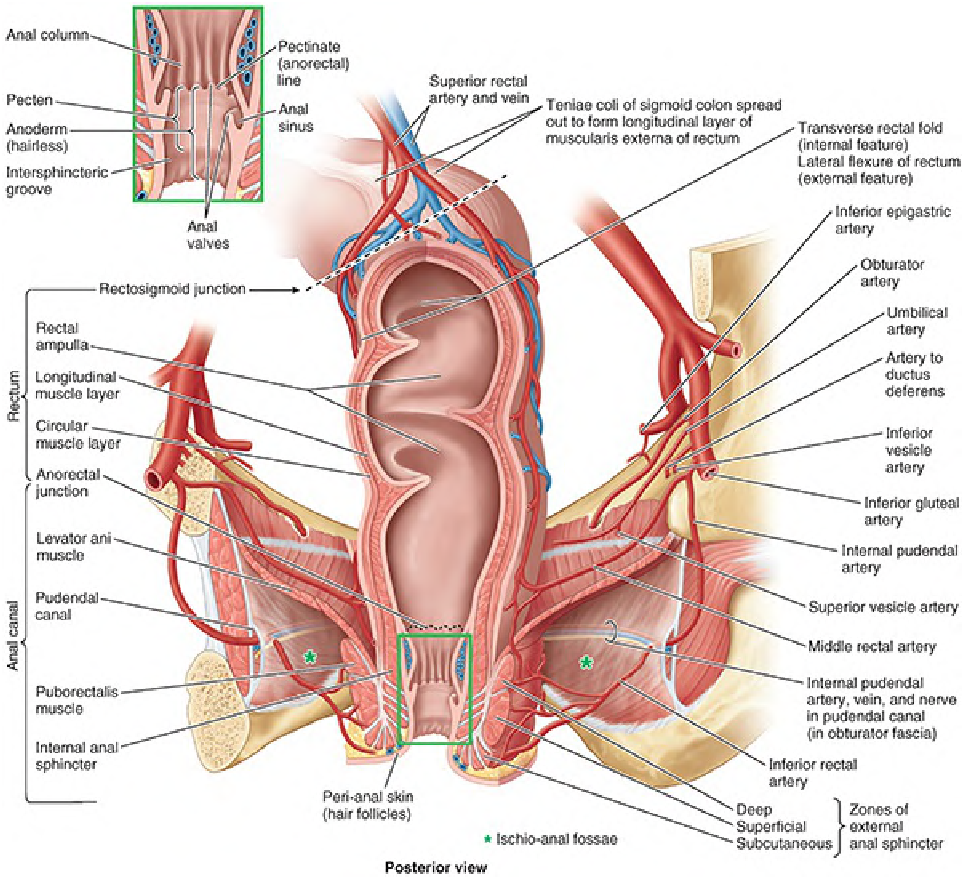


FIGURE 6.56. Rectum and anal canal, levator ani, and ischio-anal fossa. The left posterolateral third of the rectum and anal canal have been removed to demonstrate the luminal features. The pudendal vessels and nerves are transmitted by the pudendal canal, a space within the obturator fascia that covers the medial surface of the obturator internus, lining the lateral wall of the ischio-anal fossa.

Each ischio-anal fossa is bounded as follows:

- Laterally by the ischium and overlapping inferior part of the obturator internus, covered with obturator fascia
- Medially by the external anal sphincter, with a sloping superior medial wall or roof formed by the levator ani as it descends to blend with the sphincter; both structures surround the anal canal
- Posteriorly by the sacrotuberous ligament and gluteus maximus
- Anteriorly by the bodies of the pubic bones, inferior to the origin of the puborectalis. These parts of the fossae, extending into the UG triangle superior to the perineal membrane (and musculature on its superior surface), are known as the **anterior recesses of the ischio-anal fossae** (Fig. 6.55B).

Each ischio-anal fossa is filled with a **fat body of the ischio-anal fossa** (Fig. 6.53E). These fat bodies support the anal canal, but they are readily displaced to permit descent and expansion of the anal canal during the passage of feces. The fat bodies are traversed by tough, fibrous bands, as well as by several neurovascular structures, including the inferior anal/rectal vessels

and nerves and two other cutaneous nerves, the perforating branch of S2 and S3 and the perineal branch of S4 nerve (see Fig. 6.49).

PUDENDAL CANAL AND ITS NEUROVASCULAR BUNDLE

The **pudendal canal** (Alcock canal) is an essentially horizontal passageway within the obturator fascia that covers the medial aspect of the obturator internus muscle and lines the lateral wall of the ischio-anal fossa (Fig. 6.56; see Fig. 6.49). The internal pudendal artery and vein, the pudendal nerve, and the nerve to the obturator internus enter the pudendal canal at the lesser sciatic notch, inferior to the ischial spine. The internal pudendal vessels and the pudendal nerve supply and drain blood from and innervate most of the perineum. As the artery and nerve enter the canal, they give rise to the **inferior rectal artery** and **nerve**, which pass medially to supply the external anal sphincter and the peri-anal skin (Figs. 6.56, 6.57, and 6.58; Table 6.8). Toward the distal (anterior) end of the pudendal canal, the artery and nerve both bifurcate, giving rise to the perineal nerve and artery, which are distributed mostly to the superficial pouch (inferior to the perineal membrane), and to the dorsal artery and nerve of the penis or clitoris, which run in the deep pouch (superior to the membrane). When the latter structures reach the dorsum of the penis or clitoris, the nerves run distally on the lateral side of the continuation of the internal pudendal artery as they both proceed to the glans penis or glans clitoris.

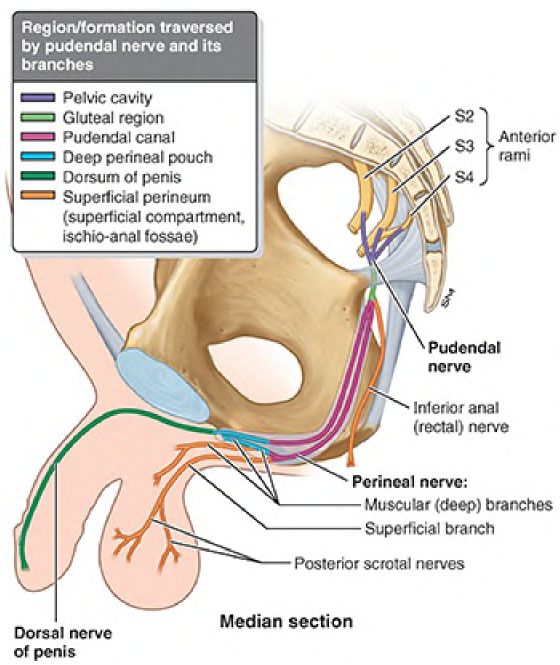


FIGURE 6.57. Distribution of pudendal nerve. Five regions traversed by the nerve are shown. The pudendal nerve supplies the skin, organs, and muscles of the perineum; therefore, it is concerned with micturition, defecation, erection, ejaculation, and, in the female, parturition. Although the pudendal nerve is shown here in the male, its distribution is similar in the female because the parts of the female perineum are homologs of those in the male.

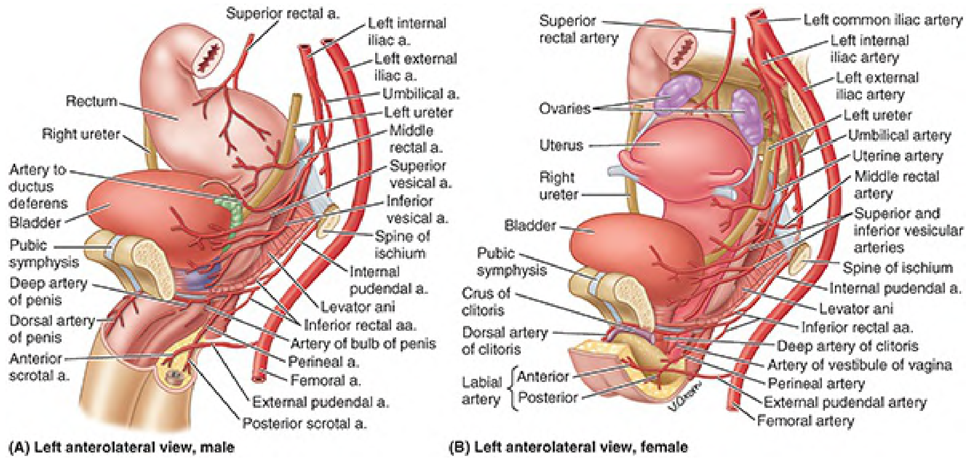


FIGURE 6.58. Arteries of perineum.

TABLE 6.8. ARTERIES OF PERINEUM

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution in Perineum
Internal pudendal	Anterior division of internal iliac artery	Leaves pelvis through greater sciatic foramen; hooks around ischial spine to enter perineum via lesser sciatic foramen; enters pudendal canal	Primary artery of perineum and external genital organs
Inferior rectal	Internal pudendal artery	Arises at entrance to pudendal canal; traverses ischio-anal fossa to anal canal	Anal canal inferior to pectinate line; anal sphincters; peri-anal skin
Perineal		Arises within pudendal canal; passes to superficial pouch (space) on exit	Supplies superficial perineal muscles and scrotum of male/vestibule of female
Posterior scrotal (♂) **or labial** (♀)	Terminal branches of perineal artery	Runs in superficial fascia of posterior scrotum or labia majora	Skin of scrotum or labia majora and minora
Artery of bulb of penis (♂) **or vestibule** (♀)		Pierces perineal membrane to reach bulb of penis or vestibule of vagina	Supplies bulb of penis (including bulbar urethra) and bulbo-urethral gland (male) or bulb of vestibule and greater vestibular gland (female)
Deep artery of penis (♂) **or clitoris** (♀)	Terminal branches of internal pudendal artery	Pierces perineal membrane to enter crura of corpora cavernosa of penis or clitoris; branches run proximally and distally	Supplies most erectile tissue of corpora cavernosa of penis or clitoris via helicine arteries
Dorsal artery of penis (♂) **or clitoris** (♀)		Passes to deep pouch; pierces perineal membrane and traverses suspensory ligament of penis or clitoris to run on dorsum of penis or clitoris to glans	Deep perineal pouch; skin of penis; fascia of penis or clitoris; distal corpus spongiosum of penis, including spongy urethra; glans penis or clitoris
External pudendal, superficial, and deep branches	Femoral artery	Pass medially from thigh to reach anterior aspect of the urogenital triangle of perineum	Anterior aspect of scrotum and skin at root of penis of male; mons pubis and anterior aspect of labia of female

The perineal nerve has two branches: The **superficial perineal nerve** gives rise to posterior scrotal or labial (cutaneous) branches, and the **deep perineal nerve** supplies the muscles of the deep and superficial perineal pouches, the skin of the vestibule of the vagina, and the mucosa of the inferiormost part of the vagina. The inferior rectal nerve communicates with the posterior scrotal or labial and perineal nerves. The **dorsal nerve of the penis** or **clitoris** is the primary sensory nerve serving the male or female organ, especially the sensitive glans at the distal end.

ANAL CANAL

The **anal canal** is the terminal part of the large intestine and of the entire digestive tract. It extends from the superior aspect of the pelvic diaphragm to the **anus** (Fig. 6.56). The anal canal (2.5–3.5 cm long) begins as the rectal ampulla narrows proximal to the level of the U-shaped sling formed by the puborectalis muscle (see Fig. 6.12). The anal canal ends at the anus, the external outlet of the alimentary tract. The anal canal, surrounded by internal and external anal sphincters, descends postero-inferiorly between the anococcygeal ligament and the perineal body. The canal is collapsed except during passage of feces. Both sphincters must relax before defecation can occur.

The **internal anal sphincter** (Fig. 6.56; see Fig. 6.49) is an involuntary sphincter surrounding the superior two thirds of the anal canal. It is a thickening of the circular muscle layer. Its contraction (tonus) is stimulated and maintained by sympathetic fibers from the superior rectal (peri-arterial) and hypogastric plexuses. Its contraction is inhibited by parasympathetic fiber stimulation, both intrinsically in relation to peristalsis and extrinsically by fibers conveyed by the pelvic splanchnic nerves. This sphincter is tonically contracted most of the time to prevent leakage of fluid or flatus; however, it relaxes (is inhibited) temporarily in response to distension of the rectal ampulla by feces or gas, requiring voluntary contraction of the puborectalis muscle and external anal sphincter if defecation or flatulence is to be prevented. The ampulla relaxes after initial distension (when peristalsis subsides) and tonus returns until the next peristalsis, or until a threshold level of distension occurs, at which point inhibition of the sphincter is continuous until distension is relieved.

The **external anal sphincter** is a large voluntary sphincter that forms a broad band on each side of the inferior two thirds of the anal canal (Figs. 6.52E and 6.56). This sphincter is attached anteriorly to the perineal body and posteriorly to the coccyx via the anococcygeal ligament. It blends superiorly with the puborectalis muscle.

The external anal sphincter is described as having subcutaneous, superficial, and deep parts; these are zones rather than muscle bellies and are often indistinct. The external anal sphincter is supplied mainly by S4 through the inferior rectal nerve (Fig. 6.57), although its deep part also receives fibers from the nerve to the levator ani, in common with the puborectalis, with which it contracts in unison to maintain continence when the internal sphincter is relaxed (except during defecation).

Internally, the superior half of the mucous membrane of the anal canal is characterized by a series of longitudinal ridges called **anal columns** (Fig. 6.56), better defined in children than adults. These columns contain the terminal branches of the superior rectal artery and vein. The

anorectal junction, indicated by the superior ends of the anal columns, is where the rectum joins the anal canal. At this point, the wide rectal ampulla abruptly narrows as it traverses the pelvic diaphragm. The inferior ends of the anal columns are joined by **anal valves**. Superior to the valves are small recesses called **anal sinuses**. When compressed by feces, the anal sinuses exude mucus, which aids in evacuation of feces from the anal canal.

The inferior comb-shaped limit of the anal valves forms an irregular line, the **pectinate line** (dentate line) (Fig. 6.59), that indicates the junction of the superior part of the anal canal (visceral; derived from the embryonic hindgut) and the inferior part (somatic; derived from the embryonic proctodeum).

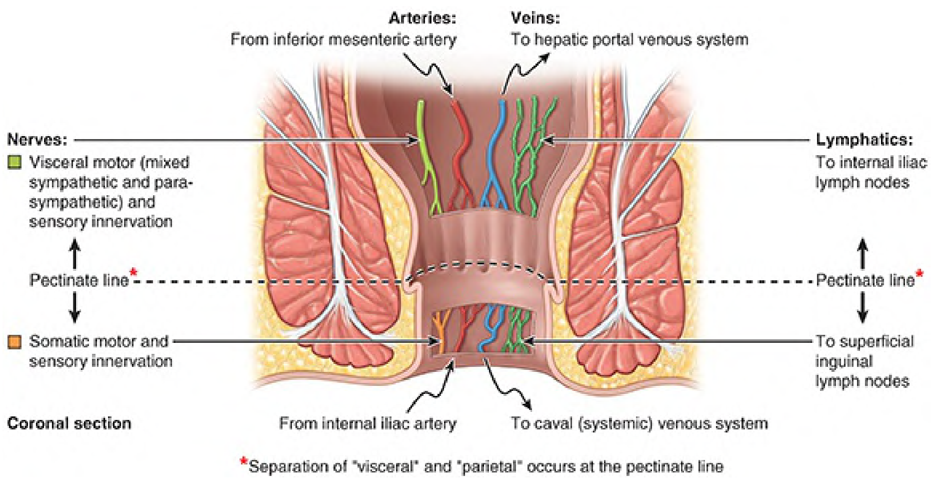


FIGURE 6.59. Transitions occurring at pectinate line. Vessels and nerves superior to the pectinate line are visceral; those inferior to the pectinate line are parietal or somatic. This transition reflects the embryological development of the anorectum.

The anal canal superior to the pectinate line differs from the part inferior to the pectinate line in its histology, arterial supply, innervation, and venous and lymphatic drainage (Fig. 6.59). These differences result from the different embryological origins of the superior and inferior parts of the anal canal (Moore et al., 2020).

Arterial Supply of Anal Canal. The superior rectal artery supplies the anal canal superior to the pectinate line (Fig. 6.59; see Fig. 6.32A). The two inferior rectal arteries supply the anal canal inferior to the pectinate line as well as the surrounding muscles and peri-anal skin (Figs. 6.58 and 6.59; see Fig. 6.32; Table 6.8). The middle rectal arteries assist with the blood supply to the anal canal by forming anastomoses with the superior and inferior rectal arteries.

Venous and Lymphatic Drainage of Anal Canal. The internal rectal venous plexus drains in both directions from the level of the pectinate line. Superior to the pectinate line, the internal rectal plexus drains chiefly into the superior rectal vein (a tributary of the inferior mesenteric vein) and the portal system (Fig. 6.59; see Fig. 6.32B). Inferior to the pectinate line, the internal rectal plexus drains into the inferior rectal veins (tributaries of the caval venous system) around the margin of the external anal sphincter. The middle rectal veins (tributaries of the internal iliac veins) mainly drain the muscularis externa of the ampulla and form anastomoses with the superior and inferior rectal veins. In addition to the abundant venous anastomoses, the rectal

plexuses receive multiple arteriovenous anastomoses (AVAs) from the superior and middle rectal arteries.

The normal submucosa of the anorectal junction is markedly thickened and in section has the appearance of a cavernous (erectile) tissue, owing to the presence of the sacculated veins of the internal rectal venous plexus. The vascular submucosa is especially thickened in the left lateral, right anterolateral, and right posterolateral positions, forming anal cushions, or threshold pads, at the point of closure of the anal canal. Because these cushions contain plexuses of saccular veins capable of directly receiving arterial blood via multiple AVAs, they are variably pliable and turgid and form a sort of flutter valve that contributes to the normally water- and gas-tight closure of the anal canal.

Superior to the pectinate line, the lymphatic vessels drain deeply into the internal iliac lymph nodes and through them into the common iliac and lumbar lymph nodes (Fig. 6.59; see Fig. 6.48B; Table 6.7). Inferior to the pectinate line, the lymphatic vessels drain superficially into the superficial inguinal lymph nodes, as does most of the perineum.

Innervation of Anal Canal. The nerve supply to the anal canal superior to the pectinate line is visceral innervation from the inferior hypogastric plexus, involving sympathetic, parasympathetic, and visceral afferent fibers (Fig. 6.59; see Fig. 6.33). Sympathetic fibers maintain the tonus of the internal anal sphincter. Parasympathetic fibers inhibit the tonus of the internal sphincter and evoke peristaltic contraction for defecation. The superior part of the anal canal, like the rectum superior to it, is inferior to the pelvic pain line (see Table 6.3). All visceral afferents travel with the parasympathetic fibers to spinal sensory ganglia S2–S4. Superior to the pectinate line, the anal canal is sensitive only to stretching, which evokes sensations at both the conscious and unconscious (reflex) levels. For example, distension of the rectal ampulla inhibits (relaxes) the tonus of the internal sphincter.

The nerve supply of the anal canal inferior to the pectinate line is somatic innervation derived from the inferior anal (rectal) nerves, branches of the pudendal nerve. Therefore, this part of the anal canal is sensitive to pain, touch, and temperature. Somatic efferent fibers stimulate contraction of the voluntary external anal sphincter.

CLINICAL BOX

PERINEUM

Gender Transitioning

Transitioning toward feminine or masculine gender presentation consists of a wide spectrum of options ranging from counseling and lifestyle changes to noninvasive procedures and gender confirmation surgery. Importantly, the individual is screened by health care professionals to ensure that informed consent can be given for the chosen clinical path. Prior to any procedures, the individual usually undergoes hormone

replacement therapy.

Gender confirmation surgery is complex and can involve removal of organs defining male or female anatomy and a broad spectrum of procedures that reshape the genitalia into a form and appearance that enable gender role expression. Gender confirmation may include (1) orchiectomy, penectomy, vaginoplasty, clitoroplasty, labiaplasty, augmentation mammaplasty, facial feminizing surgery, voice pitch elevating surgery; (2) hysterectomy, salpingo-oophorectomy, vaginectomy/colpectomy, urethroplasty, mastectomy/breast reduction, metoidioplasty, phalloplasty, scrotoplasty, and/or placement of testicular prosthesis.

Pelvic Organ Prolapse

Stretching or tearing of the levator ani and/or pelvic fascia, which may occur during childbirth (discussed previously; see the Clinical Box "Injury to Pelvic Floor" in this chapter), or disruption of the perineal body, removes support from the pelvic floor. The perineal body is an important structure, especially in women, because it is the final support of the pelvic viscera, linking muscles that extend across the pelvic outlet, like crossing beams supporting the overlying pelvic diaphragm. The perineal body can be disrupted by trauma (including an inadequately repaired episiotomy), inflammatory disease, and infection, which may result in the formation of a fistula (abnormal canal) connected to the vestibule of the vagina (see the Clinical Box "Vaginal Fistulae" in this chapter).

As a result, prolapse of pelvic viscera may occur. Anatomical sites that can be affected by prolapse include the following (Fig. B6.28):

- Urethrocele: prolapse of the lower anterior vaginal wall that involves only the urethra
- Cystocele: prolapse of the anterior vaginal wall involving the bladder (see the previous Clinical Box "Cystocele, Urethrocele, and Urinary Incontinence" in this chapter)
- Uterovaginal prolapse: prolapse of the uterus, cervix, or upper vagina
- Rectocele: prolapse of the lower posterior vaginal wall involving the rectum
- Enterocele: prolapse of the upper posterior vaginal wall involving the rectovaginal pouch

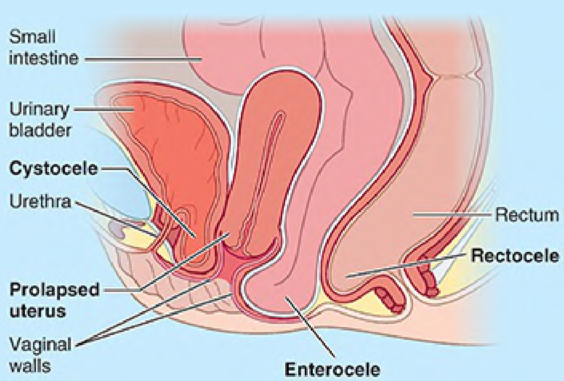


FIGURE B6.28. Pelvic organ prolapse.

The Pelvic Organ Prolapse Quantification (POP-Q) system is a method of quantifying and describing pelvic organ prolapse. It relies on specific measurements of nine defined points, with the point of reference being the hymenal ring. According to this system, there are four degrees of prolapse:

1. Prolapse of the organ halfway to the hymen
2. Prolapse of the organ to the hymen
3. Prolapse of the organ past the hymen
4. Maximum descent of the organ

Treatment for pelvic organ prolapse includes pelvic floor (e.g., Kegel) exercises, pessaries (devices that are inserted into the vagina to support the prolapsed organs), and various surgical interventions.

Episiotomy

During vaginal surgery and labor, an episiotomy (surgical incision of the perineum and inferoposterior vaginal wall) may be made to enlarge the vaginal orifice, with the intention of decreasing excessive traumatic tearing of the perineum and uncontrolled jagged tears of the perineal muscles. Once routinely performed, episiotomies are now markedly less commonly performed in vaginal deliveries in the United States (Landon et al., 2021). It is generally agreed that episiotomy is indicated when descent of the fetus is arrested or protracted, when instrumentation is necessary (e.g., use of obstetrical forceps), or to expedite delivery when there are signs of fetal distress.

The perineal body is the major structure incised during a median episiotomy (Fig. B6.29A, B). The rationale of the median incision is that the scar produced as the wound heals will not be greatly different from the fibrous tissue surrounding it. Because the incision extends only partially into this fibrous tissue, some surgeons believe that the incision is more likely to be self-limiting, resisting further tearing. However, when further tearing occurs, it is directed toward the anus, and sphincter damage or anovaginal fistulae are potential sequelae. Recent studies indicate median episiotomies are associated with an increased incidence of severe lacerations, associated in turn with an increased incidence of long-term incontinence, pelvic prolapse, and anovaginal fistulae.

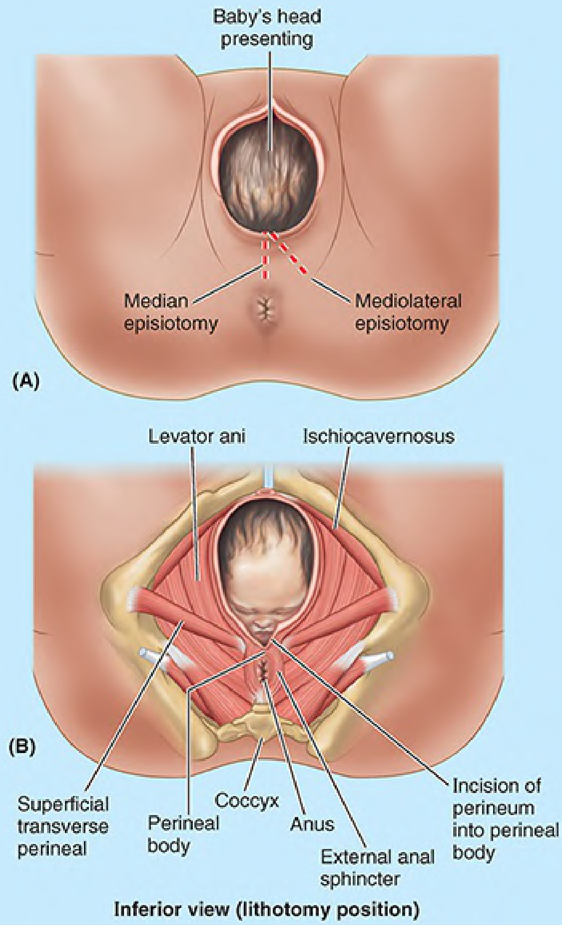


FIGURE B6.29. Episiotomy.

Mediolateral episiotomies (Fig. B6.29A) appear to result in a lower incidence of severe laceration and are less likely to be associated with damage to the anal sphincters and canal (see Fig. B6.5). The incision is initially a median incision, which then turns laterally as it proceeds posteriorly, circumventing the perineal body and directing further tearing away from the anus.

Rupture of Urethra in Males and Extravasation of Urine

Fractures of the pelvic girdle, especially those resulting from separation of the pubic symphysis and puboprostatic ligaments, often cause a rupture of the intermediate part of the urethra. Rupture of this part of the urethra results in the extravasation (escape) of urine and blood into the deep perineal pouch (Fig. B6.30A); the fluid may pass superiorly through the urogenital hiatus and distribute extraperitoneally around the prostate and bladder.

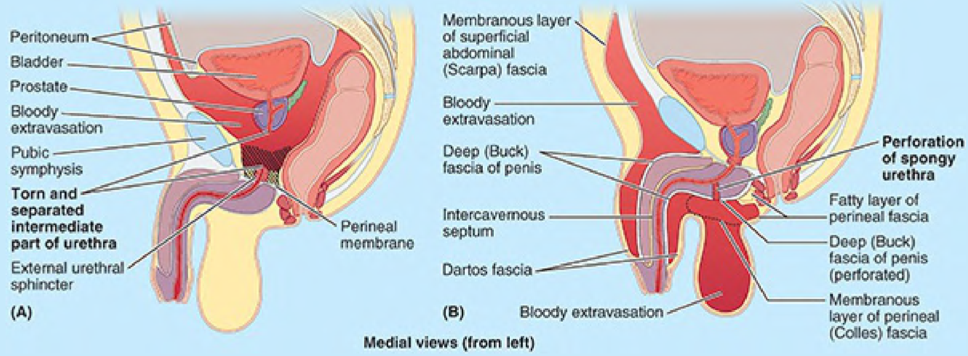


FIGURE B6.30. Urethral rupture with extravasation.

The common site of rupture of the spongy urethra and extravasation of urine is in the bulb of the penis (Fig. B6.30B). This injury usually results from a forceful blow to the perineum (straddle injury), such as falling on a metal beam, or, less commonly, from the incorrect passage (false passage) of a transurethral catheter or device that fails to negotiate the angle of the urethra in the bulb of the penis. Rupture of the corpus spongiosum and spongy urethra results in urine passing from it (extravasating) into the superficial perineal space. The attachments of the perineal fascia determine the direction of flow of the extravasated urine. Urine may pass into the loose connective tissue in the scrotum, around the penis, and, superiorly, deep to the membranous layer of subcutaneous connective tissue of the inferior anterior abdominal wall.

The urine cannot pass far into the thighs because the membranous layer of superficial perineal fascia blends with the fascia lata, enveloping the thigh muscles, just distal to the inguinal ligament. In addition, urine cannot pass posteriorly into the anal triangle because the superficial and deep layers of perineal fascia are continuous with each other around the superficial perineal muscles and with the posterior edge of the perineal membrane between them. Rupture of a blood vessel in the superficial perineal pouch resulting from trauma would result in a similar containment of blood in the pouch.

Starvation and Rectal Prolapse

The fat bodies of the ischio-anal fossae are among the last reserves of fatty tissue to disappear with starvation. In the absence of the support provided by the ischio-anal fat, rectal prolapse is relatively common.

Pectinate Line: A Clinically Important Landmark

The pectinate line (also called the dentate or mucocutaneous line) is a particularly important landmark because it is visible and approximates the level of important anatomical changes related to the transition from visceral to parietal (see Fig. 6.59), affecting such things as the types of tumors that occur and the direction in which they metastasize.

Anal Fissures; Ischio-Anal and Peri-Anal Abscesses

The ischio-anal fossae are occasionally the sites of infection, which may result in the formation of ischio-anal abscesses (Fig. B6.31A). These collections of pus are painful. Infections may reach the ischio-anal fossae in several ways:

- After cryptitis (inflammation of anal sinuses)
- Extension from a pelvirectal abscess
- After a tear in the anal mucous membrane
- From a penetrating wound in the anal region

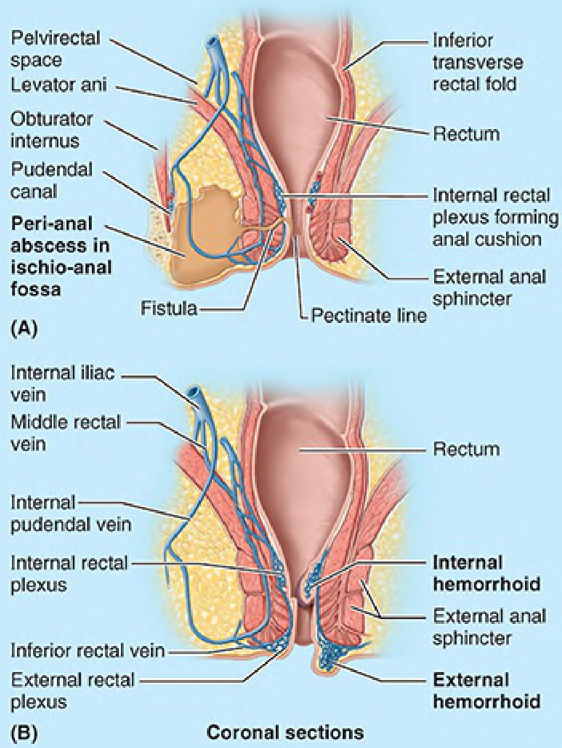


FIGURE B6.31. Hemorrhoids.

Diagnostic signs of an ischio-anal abscess are fullness and tenderness between the anus and the ischial tuberosity. A peri-anal abscess may rupture spontaneously, opening into the anal canal, rectum, or peri-anal skin. Because the ischio-anal fossae communicate posteriorly through the deep postanal space, an abscess in one fossa may spread to the other one and form a semicircular "horseshoe-shaped" abscess around the posterior aspect of the anal canal.

In chronically constipated persons, the anal valves and mucosa may be torn by hard feces. An anal fissure (slit-like lesion) is usually located in the posterior midline, inferior to the anal valves. It is painful because this region is supplied by sensory fibers of the inferior rectal nerves. A peri-anal abscess may follow infection of an anal fissure, and the infection may spread to the ischio-anal fossae and form ischio-anal abscesses or spread into the pelvis

and form a pelvirectal abscess.

An anal fistula may result from the spread of an anal infection and cryptitis (inflammation of an anal sinus). One end of this abnormal canal (fistula) opens into the anal canal, and the other end opens into an abscess in the ischio-anal fossa or into the peri-anal skin.

Hemorrhoids

Internal hemorrhoids (piles) are prolapses of rectal mucosa (more specifically of the “anal cushions”) containing the normally dilated veins of the internal rectal venous plexus (Fig. B6.31B). Internal hemorrhoids result from a breakdown of the muscularis mucosae, a smooth muscle layer deep to the mucosa. Internal hemorrhoids that prolapse into or through the anal canal are often compressed by the contracted sphincters, impeding blood flow. As a result, they tend to strangulate and ulcerate. Because of the presence of abundant arteriovenous anastomoses, bleeding from internal hemorrhoids is characteristically bright red. The current practice is to treat only prolapsed, ulcerated internal hemorrhoids. External hemorrhoids are thromboses (blood clots) in the veins of the external rectal venous plexus and are covered by skin. Predisposing factors for hemorrhoids include pregnancy, chronic constipation and prolonged toilet sitting and straining, and any disorder that impedes venous return, including increased intra-abdominal pressure.

The anastomoses between the superior, middle, and inferior rectal veins form clinically important communications between the portal and systemic venous systems (see Fig. 5.75A). The superior rectal vein drains into the inferior mesenteric vein, whereas the middle and inferior rectal veins drain through the systemic system into the inferior vena cava. Any abnormal increase in pressure in the valveless portal system or veins of the trunk may cause enlargement of the superior rectal veins, resulting in an increase in blood flow or stasis in the internal rectal venous plexus. In the portal hypertension that occurs in relation to hepatic cirrhosis, the portocaval anastomosis between the superior and the middle and inferior rectal veins, along with portocaval anastomoses elsewhere, may become varicose. It is important to note that the veins of the rectal plexuses normally appear varicose (dilated and tortuous), even in newborns, and that internal hemorrhoids occur most commonly in the absence of portal hypertension.

Regarding pain from and the treatment of hemorrhoids, it is important to note that the anal canal superior to the pectinate line is visceral; thus, it is innervated by visceral afferent pain fibers, so that an incision or needle insertion in this region is painless. Internal hemorrhoids are not painful and can be treated without anesthesia. Inferior to the pectinate line, the anal canal is somatic, supplied by the inferior anal (rectal) nerves containing somatic sensory fibers. Therefore, it is sensitive to painful stimuli (e.g., to the prick of a hypodermic needle). External hemorrhoids can be painful but often resolve in a few days.

Anorectal Incontinence

Stretching of the pudendal nerve(s) during a traumatic childbirth can result in pudendal nerve damage and anorectal incontinence.

The Bottom Line: Perineum and Perineal Region

The perineum is the diamond-shaped compartment bounded peripherally by the osseofibrous pelvic outlet and deeply (superiorly) by the pelvic diaphragm. ■ The surface area overlying this compartment is the perineal region. ■ The urogenital (UG) triangle (anteriorly) and anal triangle (posteriorly) that together form this diamond-shaped area lie at angles to each other. ■ The intersecting planes of the triangles define the transverse line (extending between ischial tuberosities) that is the base of each triangle. ■ Centrally, the UG triangle is perforated by the urethra and, in females, by the vagina. ■ The anal triangle is perforated by the anal canal. ■ The perineal body is a musculofibrous mass between the UG and the anal perforating structures, at the center point of the perineum.

UG triangle: The subcutaneous tissue of the urogenital triangle includes a superficial fatty layer and a deeper membranous layer, the perineal fascia (Colles fascia), which are continuous with corresponding layers of the inferior anterior abdominal wall. ■ In females, the fatty layer is thick within the mons pubis and labia majora, but in males, it is replaced by smooth dartos muscle in the penis and scrotum. ■ The perineal fascia is limited to the UG triangle, fusing with the deep fascia at the posterior border (base) of the triangle. ■ In males, this layer extends into the penis and scrotum, where it is closely associated with the loose, mobile skin of these structures. ■ The planar perineal membrane divides the urogenital triangle of the perineum into superficial and deep perineal pouches. ■ The superficial perineal pouch is between the membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue of the perineum and the perineal membrane and is bounded laterally by the ischiopubic rami. ■ The deep perineal pouch is between the perineal membrane and the inferior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm and is bounded laterally by the obturator fascia. ■ The superficial perineal pouch contains the erectile bodies of the external genitalia and associated muscles, the superficial transverse perineal muscle, deep perineal nerves and vessels, and in females the greater vestibular glands. ■ The deep pouch includes the fat-filled anterior recesses of the ischio-anal fossae (laterally), the deep perineal muscle and inferiormost part of the external urethral sphincter, the part of the urethra traversing the perineal membrane (the intermediate urethra of males), the dorsal nerves of the penis/clitoris, and in males the bulbo-urethral glands.

Anal triangle: The ischio-anal fossae are fascia-lined, wedge-shaped spaces occupied

by ischio-anal fat bodies. ■ The fat bodies provide supportive packing that can be compressed or pushed aside to permit the temporary descent and expansion of the anal canal or vagina for passage of feces or a fetus. ■ The fat bodies are traversed by inferior anal/rectal neurovasculature. ■ The pudendal canal is an important passageway in the lateral wall of the fossa, between layers of the obturator fascia, for neurovasculature passing to and from the UG triangle.

Anal canal: The anal canal is the terminal part of both the large intestine and the digestive tract, the anus being the external outlet. ■ Closure (and thus fecal continence) is maintained by the coordinated action of the involuntary internal and voluntary external anal sphincters. ■ The sympathetically stimulated tonus of the internal sphincter maintains closure, except during filling of the rectal ampulla and when inhibited during a parasympathetically stimulated peristaltic contraction of the rectum. ■ During these moments, closure is maintained (unless defecation is permitted) by voluntary contraction of the puborectalis and external anal sphincter. ■ Internally, the pectinate line demarcates the transition from visceral to somatic neurovascular supply and drainage. ■ The anal canal is surrounded by superficial and deep venous plexuses, the veins of which normally have a varicose appearance. ■ Thromboses in the superficial plexus and mucosal prolapse, including portions of the deep plexus, constitute painful external and insensitive internal hemorrhoids, respectively.

Male Urogenital Triangle

The **male urogenital triangle** includes the external genitalia and perineal muscles. The **male external genitalia** include the distal urethra, scrotum, and penis.

DISTAL MALE URETHRA

The male urethra is subdivided into four parts: intramural (preprostatic), prostatic, intermediate, and spongy. The intramural and prostatic parts are described with the pelvis (earlier in this chapter). Details concerning all four parts of the male urethra are provided and compared in Table 6.6.

The **intermediate** (**membranous**) **part of the urethra** begins at the apex of the prostate and traverses the deep perineal pouch, surrounded by the external urethral sphincter. It then penetrates the perineal membrane, ending as the urethra enters the bulb of the penis (Fig. 6.60). Posterolateral to this part of the urethra are the small bulbo-urethral glands and their slender ducts, which open into the proximal part of the spongy urethra in the bulb of the penis.

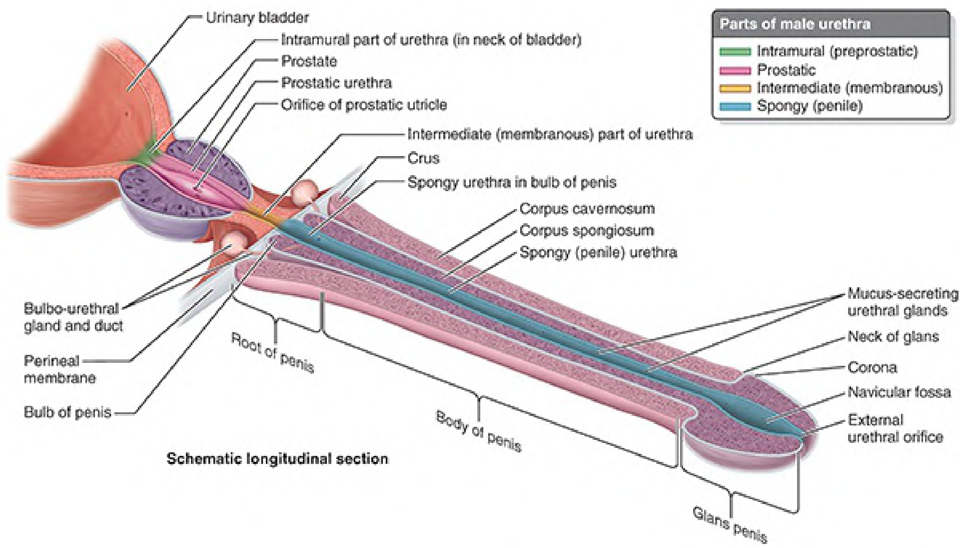


FIGURE 6.60. Male urethra and associated structures. The urethra has four parts: the vesicular part (in the bladder neck), the prostatic urethra, the intermediate part (membranous urethra), and the spongy (cavernous) urethra. The ducts of the bulbo-urethral glands open into the proximal part of the spongy urethra. The urethra is not uniform in its caliber: The external urethral orifice and intermediate part are narrowest. Attempting to approach this "straight line" position as much as possible facilitates passage of a catheter or other transurethral device.

The **spongy (penile) urethra** begins at the distal end of the intermediate part of the urethra and ends at the **male external urethral orifice**, which is slightly narrower than any of the other parts of the urethra. The lumen of the spongy urethra is approximately 5 mm in diameter; however, it is expanded in the bulb of the penis to form the **intrabulbar fossa** and in the glans penis to form the **navicular fossa**. On each side, the slender ducts of the bulbo-urethral glands open into the proximal part of the spongy urethra; the orifices of these ducts are extremely small. There are also many minute openings of the ducts of mucus-secreting **urethral glands** into the spongy urethra.

Arterial Supply of Distal Male Urethra. The arterial supply of the intermediate and spongy parts of the urethra is from branches of the dorsal artery of the penis (see Figs. 6.52C and 6.58; Table 6.8).

Venous and Lymphatic Drainage of Distal Male Urethra. Veins accompany the arteries and have similar names. Lymphatic vessels from the intermediate part of the urethra drain mainly into the internal iliac lymph nodes (Table 6.7; see Fig. 6.65), whereas most vessels from the spongy urethra pass to the deep inguinal lymph nodes, but some lymph passes to the external iliac nodes.

Innervation of Distal Male Urethra. The innervation of the intermediate part of the urethra is the same as that of the prostatic part: autonomic (efferent) innervation via the prostatic nerve plexus, arising from the inferior hypogastric plexus. The sympathetic innervation is from the lumbar spinal cord levels via the lumbar splanchnic nerves, and the parasympathetic innervation is from the sacral levels via the pelvic splanchnic nerves. The visceral afferent fibers follow the parasympathetic fibers retrogradely to sacral spinal sensory ganglia. The dorsal nerve of the penis, a branch of the pudendal nerve, provides somatic innervation of the spongy part of the urethra (see Fig. 6.57).

SCROTUM

The **scrotum** is a cutaneous fibromuscular sac containing the testes and associated structures. It is situated postero-inferior to the penis and inferior to the pubic symphysis. The bilateral embryonic formation of the scrotum is indicated by the midline **scrotal raphe** (Fig. 6.61A, E), which is continuous on the ventral surface of the penis with the **penile raphe** and posteriorly along the median line of the perineum with the **perineal raphe**. Internally, deep to the scrotal raphe, the scrotum is divided into two compartments, one for each testis, by a prolongation of the dartos fascia, the **septum of the scrotum** (see Fig. 6.53F). The testes and epididymides and their coverings are described with the abdomen (see Chapter 5, Abdomen).

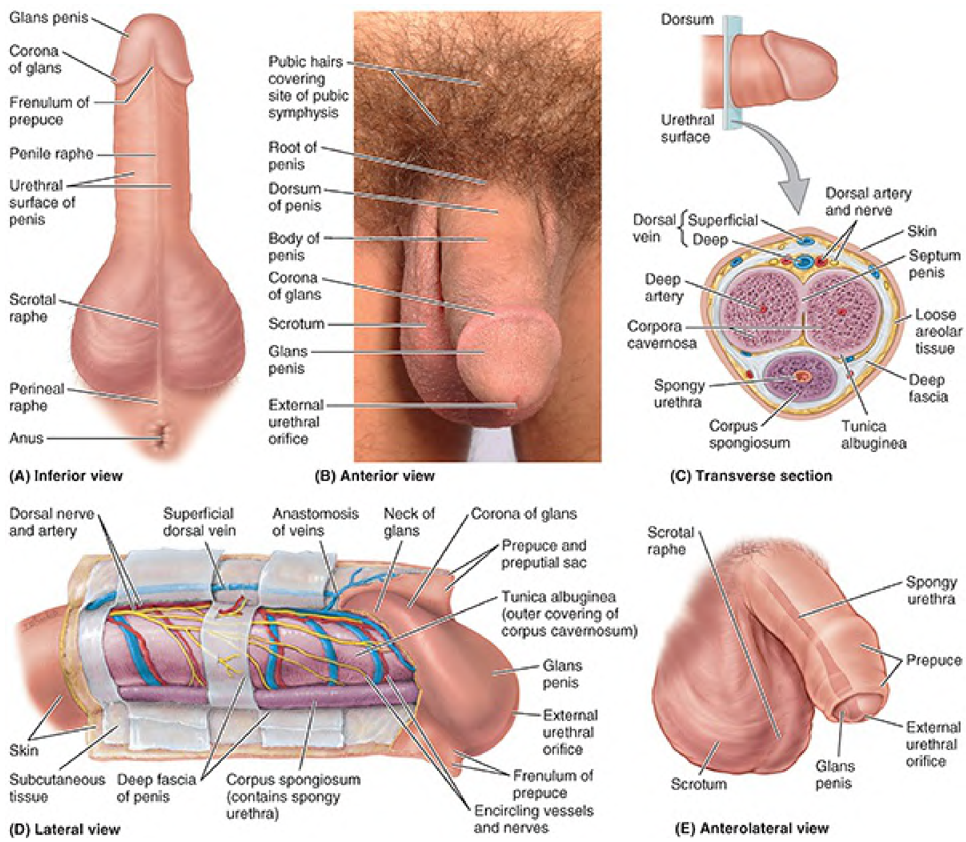


FIGURE 6.61. Penis and scrotum. A. Urethral surface of circumcised penis. The spongy urethra is deep to the cutaneous penile raphe. The scrotum is divided into right and left halves by the cutaneous scrotal raphe, which is continuous with the penile and perineal raphes. **B.** Dorsum of circumcised penis and anterior surface of scrotum. The penis consists of a root, body, and glans. **C.** Corpora cavernosa and a corpus spongiosum. **D.** Dissection. The skin of the penis extends distally as the prepuce, overlapping the neck and corona of the glans penis. **E.** Uncircumcised penis. Compare with circumcised penis in parts **A** and **B**.

Arterial Supply of Scrotum. **Anterior scrotal arteries**, terminal branches of the **external pudendal arteries** (from the femoral artery), supply the anterior aspect of the scrotum. **Posterior scrotal arteries**, terminal branches of the superficial perineal branches of the internal pudendal arteries, supply the posterior aspect (see Fig. 6.58A; Table 6.8). The scrotum also receives branches from the cremasteric arteries (branches of the inferior epigastric arteries).

Venous and Lymphatic Drainage of Scrotum. The scrotal veins accompany the arteries, sharing the same names but draining primarily to the external pudendal veins. Lymphatic vessels from the scrotum carry lymph to the superficial inguinal lymph nodes (see Table 6.6).

Innervation of Scrotum. The anterior aspect of the scrotum is supplied by derivatives of the lumbar plexus: **anterior scrotal nerves**, derived from the ilio-inguinal nerve, and the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve (see Table 6.10). The posterior aspect of the scrotum is supplied by derivatives of the sacral plexus: **posterior scrotal nerves**, branches of the superficial perineal branches of the pudendal nerve, and the perineal branch of the posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh (Figs. 6.57 and 6.62A; see Fig. 6.64). Sympathetic fibers conveyed by these nerves assist in the thermoregulation of the testes, stimulating contraction of the smooth dartos muscle in response to cold or stimulating the scrotal sweat glands while inhibiting contraction of the dartos muscle in response to excessive warmth.

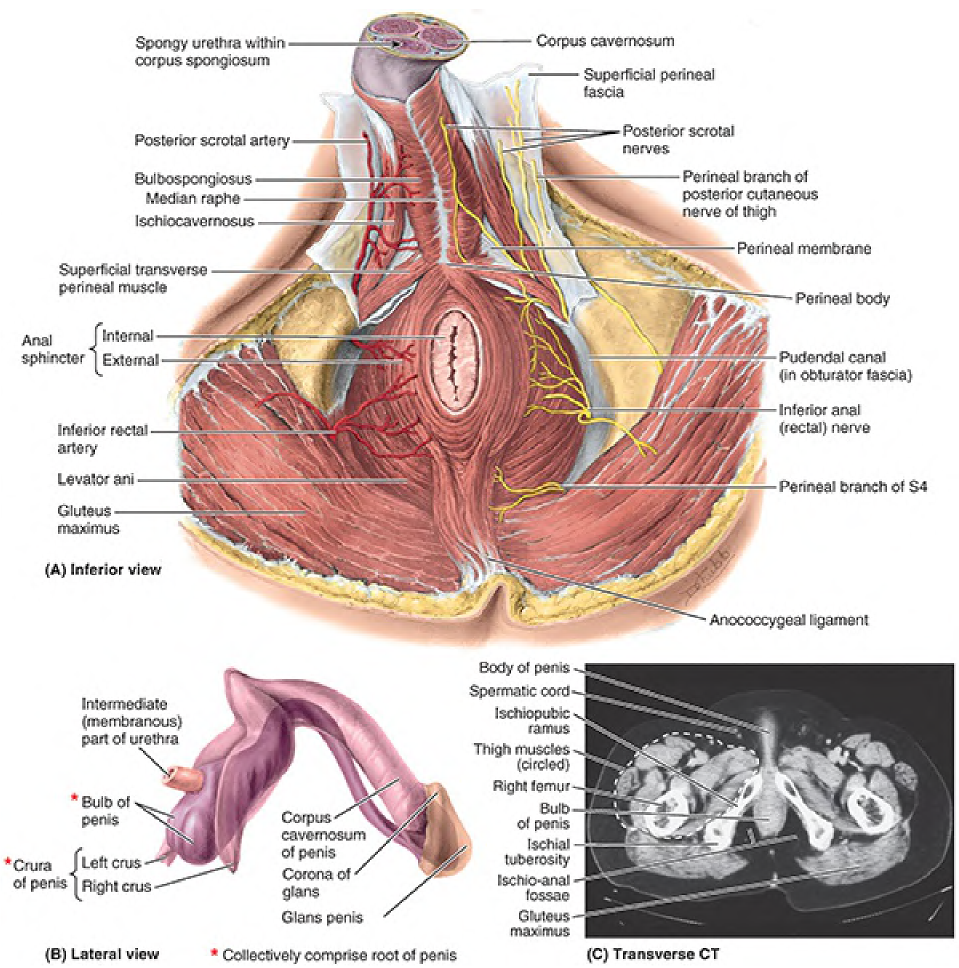


FIGURE 6.62. Male perineum and structure of penis. A. Dissection. The anal canal is surrounded by the external anal sphincter, with an ischio-anal fossa on each side. The inferior anal (rectal) nerve branches from the pudendal nerve at the entrance to the pudendal canal and, with the perineal branch of S4, supplies the external anal sphincter. **B.** Structure of penis. The corpus spongiosum has been separated from the corpora cavernosa. The natural flexures of the penis are preserved. The glans penis fits like a cap over the blunt ends of the corpora cavernosa. **C.** CT scan at level of superficial pouch of a male.

PENIS

The **penis** is the male copulatory organ and, by conveying the urethra, provides the common outlet for urine and semen (Figs. 6.60, 6.61, and 6.62). The penis consists of a root, body, and glans. It is composed of three cylindrical cavernous bodies of erectile tissue: the paired **corpora cavernosa** dorsally and the single **corpus spongiosum** ventrally. In the anatomical position, the penis is erect; when the penis is flaccid, its dorsum is directed anteriorly. Each cavernous body has an outer fibrous covering or capsule, the **tunica albuginea** (Fig. 6.61C). Superficial to the outer covering is the **deep fascia of the penis** (Buck fascia), the continuation of the deep perineal fascia that forms a strong membranous covering for the corpora cavernosa and corpus spongiosum, binding them together (Fig. 6.61C, D). The corpus spongiosum contains the spongy urethra. The corpora cavernosa are fused with each other in the median plane, except posteriorly where they separate to form the **crura of the penis** (Figs. 6.60 and 6.62B). Internally, the cavernous tissue of the corpora is separated (usually incompletely) by the **septum penis** (Fig. 6.61C).

The **root of the penis**, the attached part, consists of the crura, bulb, and ischiocavernosus and bulbospongiosus muscles (Figs. 6.60 and 6.62A, B). The root is located in the superficial perineal pouch, between the perineal membrane superiorly and the deep perineal fascia inferiorly (see Fig. 6.53B, D). The **crura** and **bulb of the penis** consist of erectile tissue. Each crus is attached to the inferior part of the internal surface of the corresponding ischial ramus (see Fig. 6.52D), anterior to the ischial tuberosity. The enlarged posterior part of the bulb of the penis is penetrated superiorly by the urethra, continuing from its intermediate part (Figs. 6.60 and 6.62B).

The **body of the penis** is the free pendulous part that is suspended from the pubic symphysis. Except for a few fibers of the bulbospongiosus muscle near the root of the penis and the ischiocavernosus muscle that embrace the crura, the body of the penis has no muscles (Fig. 6.62).

The penis consists of thin skin, connective tissue, blood and lymphatic vessels, fascia, the corpora cavernosa, and corpus spongiosum containing the spongy urethra (Fig. 6.61C). Distally, the corpus spongiosum expands to form the conical **glans penis**, or head of the penis (Figs. 6.61A, B, D and 6.62B). The margin of the glans projects beyond the ends of the corpora cavernosa to form the **corona of the glans**. The corona overhangs an obliquely grooved constriction, the **neck of the glans**, which separates the glans from the body of the penis. The slit-like opening of the spongy urethra, the external urethral orifice (meatus), is near the tip of the glans penis.

The skin of the penis is thin, darkly pigmented relative to adjacent skin and connected to the tunica albuginea by loose connective tissue. At the neck of the glans, the skin and fascia of the penis are prolonged as a double layer of skin, the prepuce (foreskin), which in uncircumcised males covers the glans penis to a variable extent (Fig. 6.61E). The **frenulum of the prepuce** is a median fold that passes from the deep layer of the prepuce to the urethral surface of the glans (Fig. 6.61A, D).

The **suspensory ligament of the penis** is a condensation of deep fascia that arises from the anterior surface of the pubic symphysis (Fig. 6.63). The ligament passes inferiorly and splits to

form a sling that is attached to the deep fascia of the penis at the junction of its root and body. The fibers of the suspensory ligament are short and taut, anchoring the erectile bodies of the penis to the pubic symphysis.

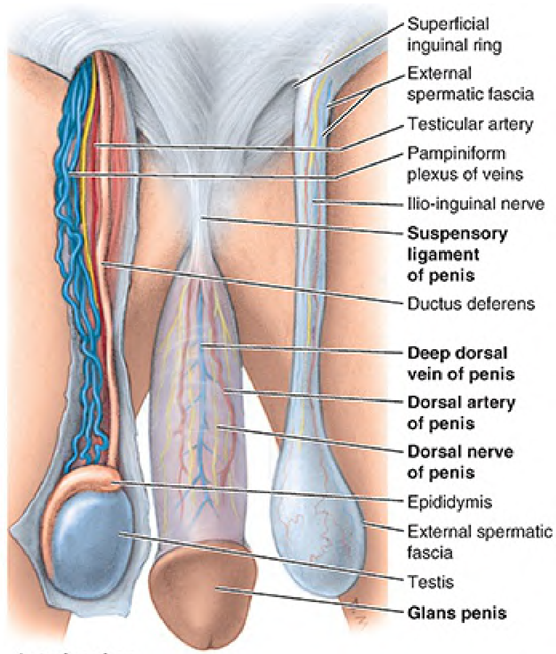


FIGURE 6.63. **Vessels and nerves on dorsum of penis and contents of spermatic cord.** The skin of the penis and scrotum has been removed. The superficial (dartos) fascia covering the penis has also been removed to expose the deep dorsal vein in the midline flanked by bilateral dorsal arteries and nerves.

The **fundiform ligament of the penis** is an irregular mass or condensation of collagen and elastic fibers of the subcutaneous tissue that descends in the midline from the linea alba anterior to the pubic symphysis (see Fig. 6.53F). The ligament splits to surround the penis and then unites and blends inferiorly with the dartos fascia forming the scrotal septum. The fibers of the fundiform ligament are relatively long and loose and lie superficial (anterior) to the suspensory ligament.

Arterial Supply of Penis. The penis is supplied mainly by branches of the internal pudendal arteries (see Fig. 6.58A; Table 6.8):

- **Dorsal arteries of the penis** run on each side of the deep dorsal vein in the dorsal groove between the corpora cavernosa (Figs. 6.61C, D and 6.63), supplying the fibrous tissue around the corpora cavernosa, the corpus spongiosum and spongy urethra, and the penile skin.
- **Deep arteries of the penis** pierce the crura proximally and run distally near the center of the corpora cavernosa, supplying the erectile tissue in these structures (Fig. 6.61C; see Fig. 6.58A).
- **Arteries of the bulb of the penis** supply the posterior (bulbous) part of the corpus spongiosum and the urethra within it as well as the bulbo-urethral gland (see Fig. 6.58A).

In addition, **superficial** and **deep branches of the external pudendal arteries** supply the

penile skin, anastomosing with branches of the internal pudendal arteries.

The deep arteries of the penis are the main vessels supplying the cavernous spaces in the erectile tissue of the corpora cavernosa and are, therefore, involved in the erection of the penis. They give off numerous branches that open directly into the cavernous spaces. When the penis is flaccid, these arteries are coiled, restricting blood flow; they are called **helicine arteries of the penis** (G. helix, a coil).

Venous Drainage of Penis. Blood from the cavernous spaces is drained by a venous plexus that joins the **deep dorsal vein of the penis** in the deep fascia (Figs. 6.61C and 6.63). This vein passes between the laminae of the suspensory ligament of the penis, inferior to the inferior pubic ligament and anterior to the perineal membrane, to enter the pelvis, where it drains into the prostatic venous plexus. Blood from the skin and subcutaneous tissue of the penis drains into the **superficial dorsal vein(s)**, which drain(s) into the superficial external pudendal vein. Some blood also passes to the internal pudendal vein.

Innervation of Penis. The nerves derive from the S2–S4 spinal cord segments and spinal ganglia, passing through the pelvic splanchnic and pudendal nerves, respectively (Fig. 6.64). Sensory and sympathetic innervation is provided primarily by the dorsal nerve of the penis, a terminal branch of the pudendal nerve, which arises in the pudendal canal and passes anteriorly into the deep perineal pouch. It then runs to the dorsum of the penis, where it runs lateral to the dorsal artery (Figs. 6.61C and 6.63). It supplies both the skin and glans penis. The penis is richly supplied with a variety of sensory nerve endings, especially the glans penis. Branches of the ilio-inguinal nerve supply the skin at the root of the penis. Cavernous nerves, conveying parasympathetic fibers independently from the prostatic nerve plexus, innervate the helicine arteries of the erectile tissue.

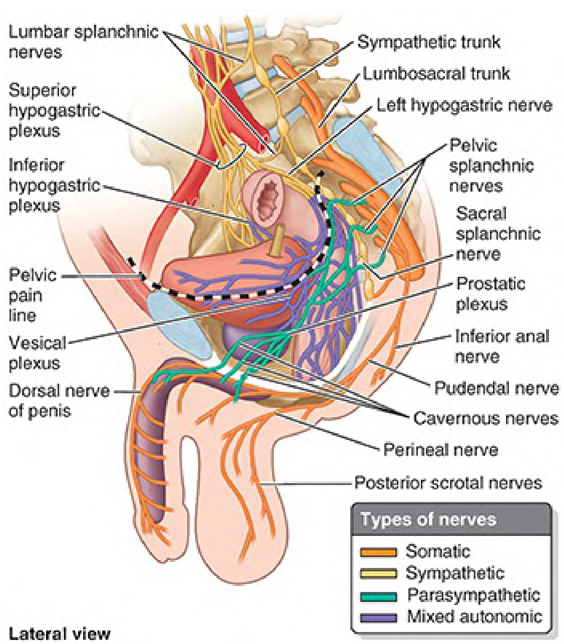


FIGURE 6.64. Nerves of perineum. The pudendal nerve conveys the majority of sensory, sympathetic, and somatic motor fibers to the perineum. Although originating from the same spinal cord segments from which the pudendal nerve is derived, the parasympathetic fibers of the cavernous nerves course independently of the pudendal nerve. With the

exception of the cavernous nerves, parasympathetic fibers do not occur outside the head, neck, or cavities of the trunk. The cavernous nerves arise from the prostatic plexus of males and from the vesical plexus of females. They terminate on the arteriovenous anastomoses and helicine arteries of the erectile bodies, which, when stimulated, produce erection of the penis or engorgement of the clitoris and vestibular bulb in females.

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE OF MALE PERINEUM

Lymph from the skin of all parts of the perineum, including the hairless skin inferior to the pectinate line of the anorectum but excluding the glans penis, drains to the superficial inguinal nodes (Fig. 6.65).

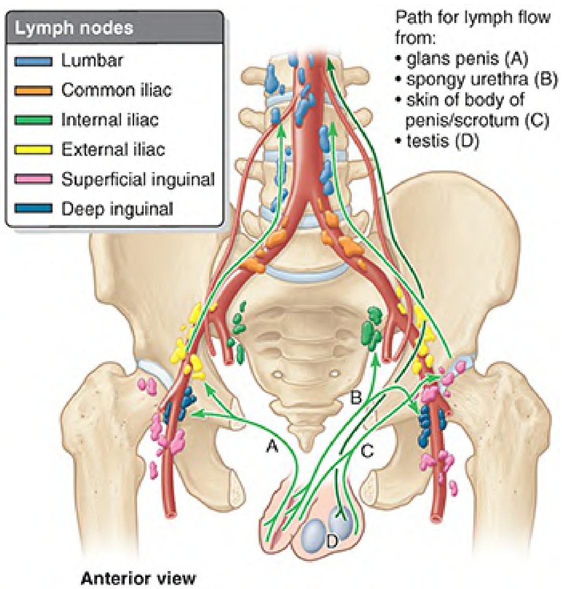


FIGURE 6.65. Lymphatic drainage of male urogenital triangle: penis, spongy urethra, scrotum, and testis. Arrows, direction of lymph flow to the lymph nodes.

Reflective of their abdominal origins, lymph from the testes follow a route, independent of the scrotal drainage, along the testicular veins to the intermesenteric portion of the lumbar (caval/aortic) and pre-aortic lymph nodes.

Lymphatic drainage from the intermediate and proximal parts of the urethra and cavernous bodies drains into the internal iliac lymph nodes, whereas most vessels from the distal spongy urethra and glans penis pass to the deep inguinal nodes, but some lymph passes to the external inguinal nodes.

PERINEAL MUSCLES OF MALE

The **superficial perineal muscles**, located in the superficial perineal pouch, include the superficial transverse perineal, bulbospongiosus, and ischiocavernosus muscles (Figs. 6.62A and 6.66). Details about the attachments, innervation, and actions of these muscles are provided in Tables 6.9 and 6.10.

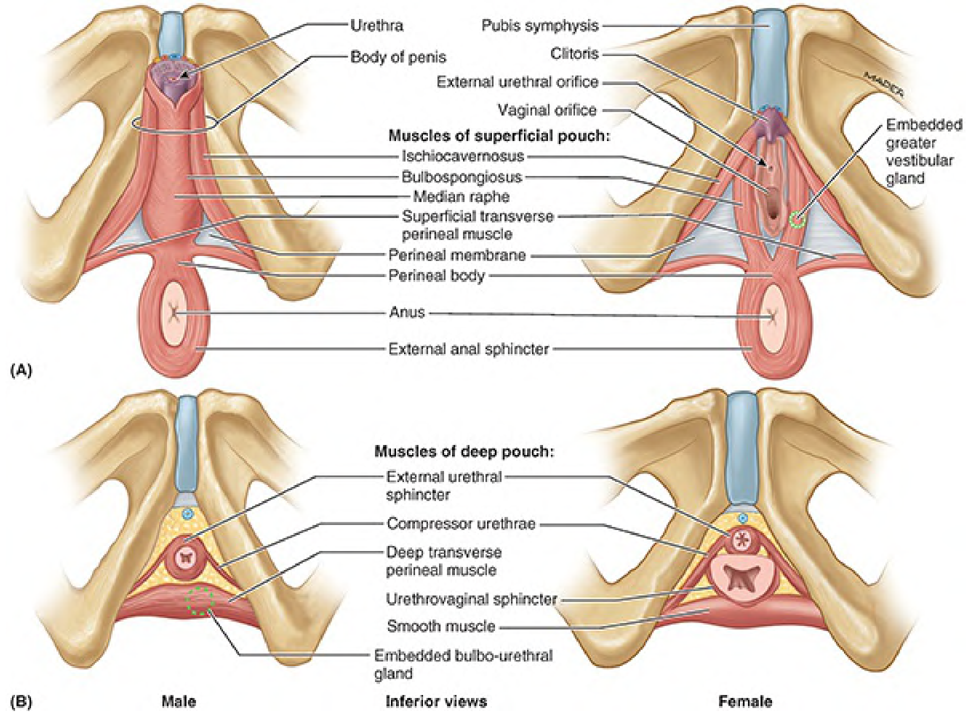


FIGURE 6.66. Muscles of perineum. A. Muscles of superficial perineal pouch. **B.** Muscles of deep perineal pouch.

TABLE 6.9. MUSCLES OF PERINEUM

Muscle	Origin	Course and Distribution	Innervation	Main Action
External anal sphincter	Skin and fascia surrounding anus; coccyx via anococcygeal ligament	Passes around lateral aspects of anal canal, insertion into perineal body	Inferior anal (rectal) nerve, a branch of pudendal nerve (S2–S4)	Constricts anal canal during peristalsis, resisting defecation; supports and fixes perineal body and pelvic floor
Bulbospongiosus	Male: median raphe on ventral surface of bulb of penis; perineal body	Male: surrounds lateral aspects of bulb of penis and most proximal part of body of penis, inserting into perineal membrane, dorsal aspect of corpus spongiosum and corpora cavernosa, and fascia of bulb of penis	Muscular (deep) branch of perineal nerve, a branch of pudendal nerve (S2–S4)	Male: supports and fixes perineal body/pelvic floor; compresses bulb of penis to expel last drops of urine/semen; assists erection by compressing outflow via deep perineal vein and by pushing blood from bulb into body of penis
	Female: perineal body	Female: passes on each side of lower vagina, enclosing bulb and greater vestibular gland; inserts into pubic arch and fascia of corpora cavernosa of clitoris		Female: supports and fixes perineal body/pelvic floor; “sphincter” of vagina; assists in erection of clitoris (and perhaps bulb of vestibule); compresses greater vestibular gland
Ischiocavernosus	Internal surface of ischiopubic ramus and ischial tuberosity	Embraces crus of penis or clitoris, inserting onto inferior and medial aspects of crus and to perineal membrane medial	Muscular (deep) branch of perineal	Maintains erection of penis or clitoris by compressing outflow veins and pushing blood from the root of penis or clitoris into the body of penis or

		to crus	nerve, a branch of pudendal nerve (S2–S4)	clitoris
Superficial transverse perineal muscle		Passes along inferior aspect of posterior border of perineal membrane to perineal body		Supports and fixes perineal body/pelvic floor to support abdominopelvic viscera and resist increased intra-abdominal pressure
Deep transverse perineal muscle		Passes along superior aspect of posterior border of perineal membrane to perineal body and external anal sphincter; in females, often replaced by smooth muscle blending with perineal body		
External urethral sphincter	(Compressor urethra portion only)	Surrounds urethra superior to perineal membrane; in males, it also ascends anterior aspect of prostate; in females, some fibers also enclose vagina (urethrovaginal sphincter)	Dorsal nerve of penis or clitoris, the terminal branch of the pudendal nerve (S2–S4)	Compresses urethra to maintain urinary continence; in females, urethrovaginal sphincter portion also compresses vagina

TABLE 6.10. NERVES OF PERINEUM

Nerve	Origin	Course	Distribution
Anterior labial nerves (♀); **anterior scrotal nerves** (♂)	Terminal part of ilio-inguinal nerve (L1)	Arise as ilio-inguinal exits superficial inguinal ring; pass anteriorly and inferiorly	In females, sensory to mons pubis and anterior part of labium majus; in males, sensory to pubic region, skin of proximal penis, and anterior aspect of scrotum and adjacent thigh
Genital branch of genitofemoral nerve	Genitofemoral nerve (L1 and L2)	Emerges through or near superficial inguinal ring	In females, sensory to anterior labia majora; in males, motor to cremaster muscle, sensory to anterior aspect of scrotum and adjacent thigh
Perineal branch of posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh	Posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh (S1–S3)	Arises deep to inferior border of gluteus maximus; passes medially over sacrotuberous ligament to parallel ischiopubic ramus	Sensory to lateral perineum (labia majora in ♀, scrotum in ♂), genitofemoral sulcus, and superiormost medial thigh; may overlap lateral parts of perineum supplied by pudendal nerve
Inferior cluneal nerves	Posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh (S1–S3)	Arise deep to and emerge from inferior border of gluteus maximus, ascending in subcutaneous tissue	Skin of inferior and inferolateral gluteal region (buttocks)—gluteal fold and area superior to it
Pudendal nerve (S2–S4)	Sacral plexus (anterior rami of S2–S4)	Exits pelvis via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis; passes posterior to sacrospinous ligament; enters perineum via lesser sciatic foramen, immediately dividing into branches as it enters pudendal canal	Motor to muscles of perineum and sensory to majority of perineal region via its branches, the inferior rectal and perineal nerves, and the dorsal nerve of clitoris or penis
Inferior anal (rectal) **nerve**	Pudendal nerve (S3–S4)	Passes medially from area of ischial spine (entrance to pudendal canal), traversing ischio-anal fat body	External anal sphincter; participates in innervation of inferior and medial-most part of levator ani (puborectalis);

			sensory to anal canal inferior to pectinate line and circumanal skin
Perineal nerve	Pudendal nerve	Arises near entrance to pudendal canal, paralleling parent nerve to end of canal, and then passes medially	Divides into superficial and deep branches, the posterior labial or scrotal nerve and the deep perineal nerve
Posterior labial nerves (♀), **posterior scrotal nerves** (♂)	Superficial terminal branch of perineal nerve	Arise in anterior (terminal) end of pudendal canal, passing medially and superficially	In females, labia minora and all but anterior labia majora; in males, posterior aspect of scrotum
Deep perineal nerve	Deep terminal branch of perineal nerve	Arises in anterior (terminal) end of pudendal canal, passing medially then deeply in superficial perineal pouch	Motor to muscles of superficial perineal pouch (ischiocavernosus, bulbospongiosus, and superficial perineal muscles); in females, sensory to vestibule of vagina and inferior part of vagina

The **superficial transverse perineal muscles** and the bulbospongiosus muscles join the external anal sphincter in attaching centrally to the perineal body. They cross the pelvic outlet like intersecting beams, supporting the perineal body to aid the pelvic diaphragm in supporting the pelvic viscera. Simultaneous contraction of the superficial perineal muscles (plus the deep transverse perineal muscle) during penile erection provides a firmer base for the penis.

The **bulbospongiosus muscles** form a constrictor that compresses the bulb of the penis and the corpus spongiosum, thereby aiding in emptying the spongy urethra of residual urine and/or semen. The anterior fibers of the bulbospongiosus, encircling the most proximal part of the body of the penis, also assist erection by increasing the pressure on the erectile tissue in the root of the penis (Fig. 6.62A). At the same time, they also compress the deep dorsal vein of the penis, impeding venous drainage of the cavernous spaces and helping promote enlargement and turgidity of the penis.

The **ischiocavernosus muscles** surround the crura in the root of the penis. They force blood from the cavernous spaces in the crura into the distal parts of the corpora cavernosa, which increases the turgidity (firm distension) of the penis during erection. Contraction of the ischiocavernosus muscles also compresses the tributaries of deep dorsal vein of the penis leaving the crus of the penis, thereby restricting venous outflow from the penis and helping maintain the erection.

Because of their function during erection and the activity of the bulbospongiosus subsequent to urination and ejaculation to expel the last drops of urine and semen, the perineal muscles are generally more developed in males than in females.

ERECTION, EMISSION, EJACULATION, AND REMISSION

When a male is stimulated erotically, arteriovenous anastomoses by which blood is normally able to bypass the "empty" potential spaces or sinuses of the corpora cavernosa are closed. The smooth muscle in the fibrous trabeculae and coiled helicine arteries relaxes (is inhibited) as a result of parasympathetic stimulation (S2–S4 through the cavernous nerves from the **prostatic**

nerve plexus). Consequently, the helicine arteries straighten, enlarging their lumina and allowing blood to flow into and dilate the cavernous spaces in the corpora of the penis.

The bulbospongiosus and ischiocavernosus muscles compress veins egressing from the corpora cavernosa, impeding the return of venous blood. As a result, the corpora cavernosa and corpus spongiosum become engorged with blood near arterial pressure, causing the erectile bodies to become turgid (enlarged and rigid), and an **erection** occurs.

During **emission**, semen (sperms and glandular secretions) is delivered to the prostatic urethra through the ejaculatory ducts after peristalsis of the ductus deferentes and seminal glands. Prostatic fluid is added to the seminal fluid as the smooth muscle in the prostate contracts. Emission is a sympathetic response (L1–L2 nerves). During **ejaculation**, semen is expelled from the urethra through the external urethral orifice.

Ejaculation results from

- closure of the internal urethral sphincter at the neck of the urinary bladder, a sympathetic response (L1–L2 nerves)
- contraction of the urethral muscle, a parasympathetic response (S2–S4 nerves)
- contraction of the bulbospongiosus muscles, from the pudendal nerves (S2–S4)

After ejaculation, the penis gradually returns to a flaccid state (**remission**), resulting from sympathetic stimulation, which causes constriction of the smooth muscle in the coiled helicine arteries. The bulbospongiosus and ischiocavernosus muscles relax, allowing more blood to be drained from the cavernous spaces in the corpora cavernosa into the deep dorsal vein.

CLINICAL BOX

MALE UROGENITAL TRIANGLE

Urethral Catheterization

Urethral catheterization is done to remove urine from a person who is unable to micturate. It is also performed to irrigate the bladder and to obtain an uncontaminated sample of urine. When inserting catheters and urethral sounds (slightly conical instruments for exploring and dilating a constricted urethra), the curves of the male urethra must be considered. Just distal to the perineal membrane, the spongy urethra is well covered inferiorly and posteriorly by erectile tissue of the bulb of the penis; however, a short segment of the intermediate part of the urethra is unprotected (Fig. B6.32). Because the urethral wall is thin and the angle that must be negotiated to enter the intermediate part of the spongy urethra, the wall is vulnerable to rupture during the insertion of urethral catheters and sounds. The intermediate part, the least distensible part, runs infero-anteriorly as it passes through the external urethral sphincter. Proximally, the prostatic part takes a slight curve that is concave anteriorly as it traverses the prostate.

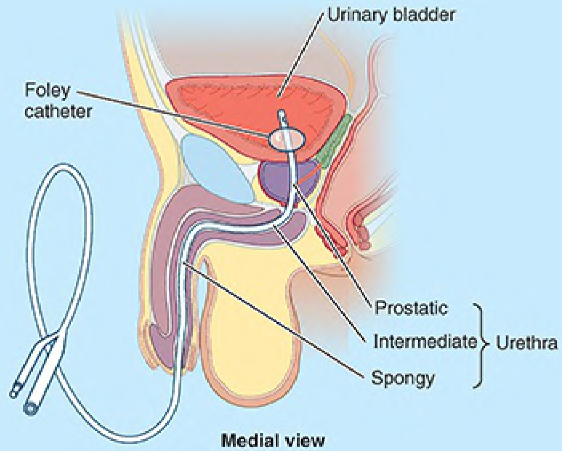


FIGURE B6.32. **Urethral catheterization in male.**

Urethral stricture may result from external trauma of the penis or infection of the urethra. Urethral sounds are used to dilate the constricted urethra in such cases. The spongy urethra will expand enough to permit passage of an instrument approximately 8 mm in diameter. The external urethral orifice is the narrowest and least distensible part of the urethra; hence, an instrument that passes through this opening normally passes through all other parts of the urethra.

Distension of Scrotum

The scrotum is easily distended. In persons with large indirect inguinal hernias, for example, the intestine may enter the scrotum, making it as large as a soccer ball. Similarly, inflammation of the testes (orchitis), associated with mumps, bleeding in the subcutaneous tissue, or chronic lymphatic obstruction (as occurs in the parasitic disease elephantiasis) may produce an enlarged scrotum.

Palpation of Testes

The soft, pliable skin of the scrotum makes it easy to palpate the testes and the structures related to them (e.g., the epididymis and ductus deferens). Most health care providers agree that testicular exam should be part of a routine physical exam. Some physicians recommend that men perform a self-examination of their testicles monthly after puberty and report any testicular or scrotal changes. It is normal for one testicle to be slightly larger than the other. Most commonly, the left testis lies at a more inferior level than the right one.

According to the American Cancer Society, although testicular cancer can occur at any age, about half of all cases occur between the ages of 20 and 34. The lifetime risk of developing testicular cancer is 1 in 263, making it a relatively uncommon type of cancer. The risk of dying from testicular cancer is about 1 in 5,000. Testicular cancer can be treated

and usually cured, especially when found early in the course of the disease.

Hypospadias

Hypospadias is a common congenital anomaly of the penis, occurring in 1 in 300 newborns. In the simplest and most common form, glanular hypospadias, the external urethral orifice is on the ventral aspect of the glans penis. In other infants, the defect is in the body of the penis (penile hypospadias) (Fig. B6.33A) or in the perineum (penoscrotal or scrotal hypospadias) (Fig. B6.33B). Hence, the external urethral orifice is on the urethral surface of the penis. The embryological basis of penile and penoscrotal hypospadias is failure of the urogenital folds to fuse on the ventral surface of the penis, completing the formation of the spongy urethra. It is believed that hypospadias is associated with an inadequate production of androgens by the fetal testes. Differences in the timing and degree of hormonal insufficiency probably account for the different types of hypospadias (Moore et al., 2020).

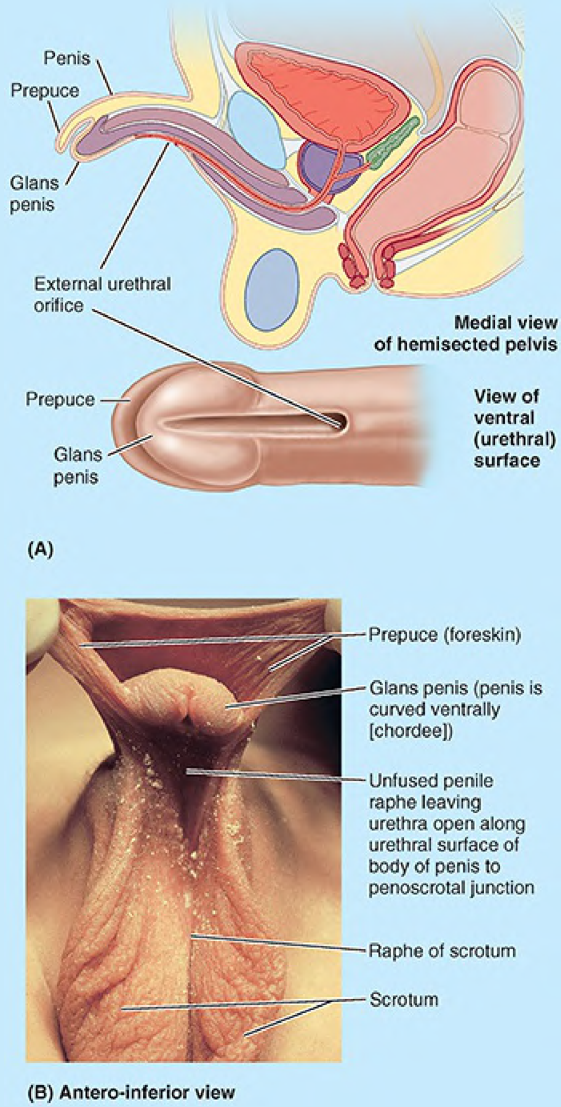


FIGURE B6.33. Penile hypospadias.

Phimosis, Paraphimosis, and Circumcision

In an uncircumcised penis, the prepuce covers all or most of the glans penis (see Fig. 6.61E). The prepuce is usually sufficiently elastic for it to be retracted over the glans. In some males, it fits tightly over the glans and cannot be retracted easily (phimosis) if at all. As there are modified sebaceous glands in the prepuce, the oily secretions of cheesy consistency (smegma) from them accumulate in the **preputial sac**, the space between the glans and prepuce, causing irritation.

In some males, retraction of the prepuce over the corona of the glans penis constricts the neck of the glans so much that there is interference with the drainage of blood and tissue fluid. In persons with this condition (paraphimosis), the glans may enlarge so much that the prepuce cannot be drawn over it. Circumcision is commonly performed in such cases.

Circumcision, surgical excision of the prepuce, is the most commonly performed minor surgical operation on male infants. Following circumcision, the glans penis is exposed (see Fig. 6.61B). Although it is a religious practice in Islam and Judaism, it is often done routinely for nonreligious reasons (a preference usually explained in terms of tradition or hygiene) in North America. In adults, circumcision is usually performed when phimosis or paraphimosis occurs.

Impotence and Erectile Dysfunction

Inability to obtain an erection (impotence) may result from several causes. When a lesion of the prostatic plexus or cavernous nerves results in an inability to achieve an erection, a surgically implanted, semirigid, or inflatable penile prosthesis may assume the role of the erectile bodies, providing the rigidity necessary to insert and move the penis within the vagina during intercourse.

Erectile dysfunction (ED) may occur in the absence of a nerve insult due to a variety of other causes. Central nervous system (hypothalamic) and endocrine (pituitary or testicular) disorders may result in reduced testosterone (male hormone) secretion. Nerve fibers may fail to stimulate erectile tissues, or blood vessels may be insufficiently responsive to autonomic stimulation. In many such cases, erection can be achieved with the assistance of oral medications or injections that increase blood flow into the cavernous sinusoids by causing relaxation of smooth muscle.

The Bottom Line: Male Urogenital Triangle

Distal male urethra: The intermediate urethra is the shortest and narrowest part of the male urethra, the limit of its distension normally being the same as that of the external urethral orifice. ■ It is encircled by voluntary muscle of the inferior part of the external urethral sphincter before perforating the perineal membrane. ■ Immediately inferior to the membrane, the urethra enters the corpus spongiosum and becomes the spongy urethra, the longest part of the male urethra. ■ The spongy urethra has expansions at each end, the intrabulbar and navicular fossae. ■ The intermediate and spongy parts of the urethra are supplied and drained by the same dorsal (blood) vessels of the penis but differ in terms of innervation and lymphatic drainage. The intermediate part follows visceral paths and the spongy part follows somatic paths.

Scrotum: The scrotum is a dynamic, fibromuscular cutaneous sac for the testes and epididymides. ■ Its internal subdivision by a septum of dartos fascia is demarcated externally by a median scrotal raphe. ■ The anterior aspect of the scrotum is served by anterior scrotal blood vessels and nerves, continuations of external pudendal blood vessels,

and branches of the lumbar nerve plexus. ■ The posterior aspect of the scrotum is served by posterior scrotal blood vessels and nerves, continuations of internal pudendal blood vessels, and branches of the sacral nerve plexus. ■ Sympathetic innervation of smooth dartos muscle and sweat glands assists thermoregulation of the testes.

Penis: The penis is an organ of copulation and excretion of urine and semen. ■ It is formed mainly of thin, mobile skin overlying three cylindrical bodies of erectile cavernous tissue, the paired corpora cavernosa, and a single corpus spongiosum containing the spongy urethra. ■ The erectile bodies are bound together by deep fascia of the penis, except at the root where they separate into the crura and bulb of the penis. ■ The crura attach to the ischiopubic rami, but all parts of the root are attached to the perineal membrane. ■ At the junction of the root and body, the penis is attached to the pubic symphysis by the suspensory ligament of the penis. ■ The ischiocavernosus muscles ensheathe the crura, and the bulbospongiosus muscle ensheathes the bulb, its most anterior fibers encircling the most proximal part of the penile body and deep dorsal vessels. ■ The glans penis is a distal expansion of the corpus spongiosum, which has the external urethral orifice at its tip and a projecting corona that overhangs the neck of the glans. ■ Unless removed by circumcision, the neck is covered by the prepuce (foreskin).

Except for skin near its root, the penis is supplied mainly by branches of the internal pudendal arteries. ■ The dorsal arteries supply most of the body and glans. ■ The deep arteries supply the cavernous tissue. The terminal helicine arteries open to engorge the sinuses with blood at arterial pressure, causing penile erection. ■ Superficial structures drain via the superficial dorsal vein to the external pudendal veins, whereas the erectile bodies drain via the deep dorsal vein to the prostatic venous plexus. ■ Sensory and sympathetic innervation are provided mainly by the dorsal nerve of the penis, but the helicine arteries that produce erection are innervated by cavernous nerves, extensions of the prostatic nerve plexus.

Perineal muscles: In addition to their bony origins, the voluntary superficial and deep muscles of the perineum are also attached to the perineal membrane (by which they are separated) and the perineal body. ■ In addition to the sphincteric functions of the external anal and urethral sphincters for maintaining fecal and urinary continence, the male perineal muscles function as a group to provide a base for the penis and support for the perineal body (which in turn supports the pelvic diaphragm). ■ The ischiocavernosus and bulbospongiosus muscles both constrict venous outflow from the erectile bodies to assist erection, simultaneously pushing blood from the penile root into the penile body. ■ In addition, the bulbospongiosus muscle constricts the bulb of the penis to express the final drops of urine or semen. ■ Because of these multiple functions, the perineal muscles are generally relatively well developed in males. The perineal muscles are innervated by

muscular branches of the pudendal nerve.

Female Urogenital Triangle

The **female urogenital triangle** includes the female external genitalia, perineal muscles, and anal canal.

FEMALE EXTERNAL GENITALIA

The **female external genitalia** (Fig. 6.67) include the mons pubis, labia majora (enclosing the pudendal cleft), labia minora (enclosing the vestibule of vagina), clitoris, bulbs of vestibule, and greater and lesser vestibular glands. The synonymous terms **vulva** and **pudendum** include all these parts; the term pudendum is commonly used clinically. The vulva serves

- as sensory and erectile tissue for sexual arousal and intercourse
- to direct the flow of urine
- to prevent entry of foreign material into the urogenital tract

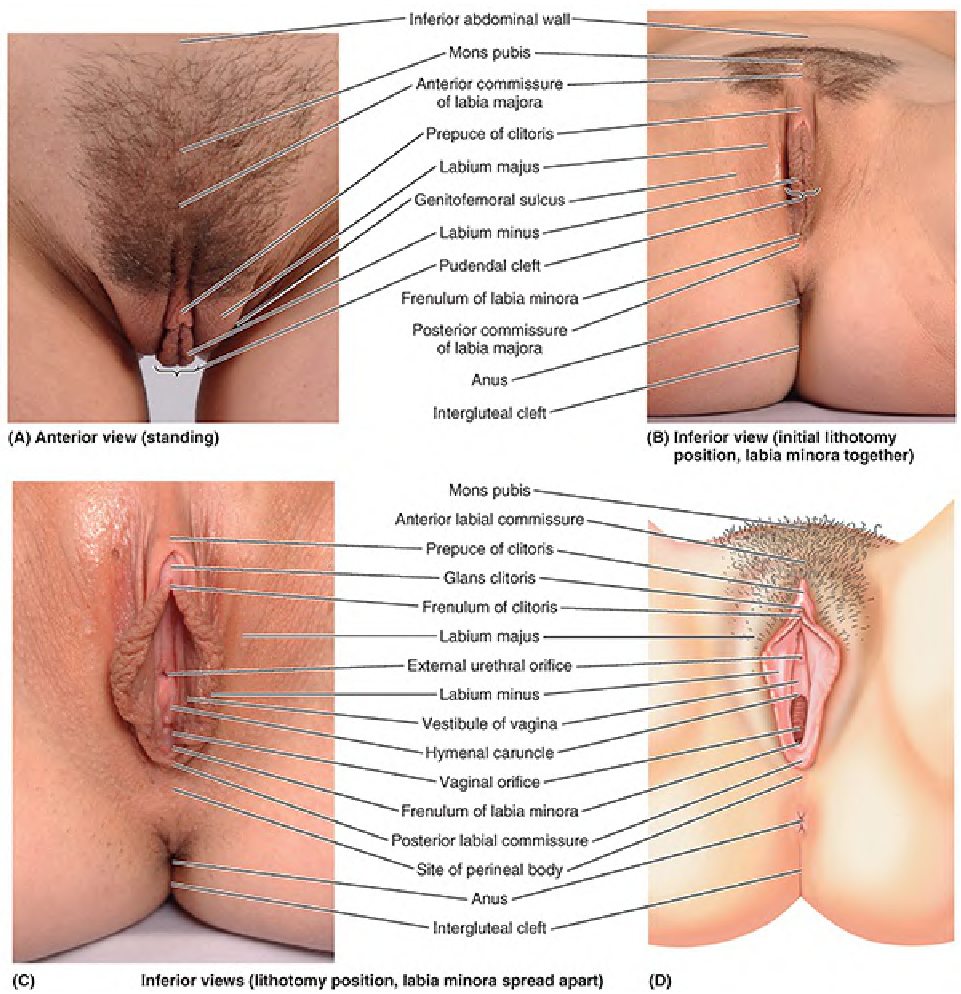


FIGURE 6.67. Female external genitalia. A–C. Surface anatomy of vulva (pudendum) of vagina demonstrated in three

positions. **D.** Illustration of vulva, similar to part **C**. Moisture typically keeps the labia minora passively apposed, keeping the vestibule of the vagina closed (**B**) unless spread apart as in part **C**.

Mons Pubis. The **mons pubis** is the rounded, fatty eminence anterior to the pubic symphysis, pubic tubercles, and superior pubic rami. The eminence is formed by a mass of fatty subcutaneous tissue. The amount of fat increases at puberty and decreases after menopause. The surface of the mons is continuous with the anterior abdominal wall. After puberty, the mons pubis is covered with coarse pubic hairs.

Labia Majora. The **labia majora** are prominent folds of skin that indirectly protect the clitoris and urethral and vaginal orifices (Fig. 6.67). Each labium majus is largely filled with a finger-like "digital process" of loose subcutaneous tissue containing smooth muscle and the termination of the round ligament of the uterus (Fig. 6.68). The labium majus passes inferoposteriorly from the mons pubis toward the anus (Fig. 6.67D).

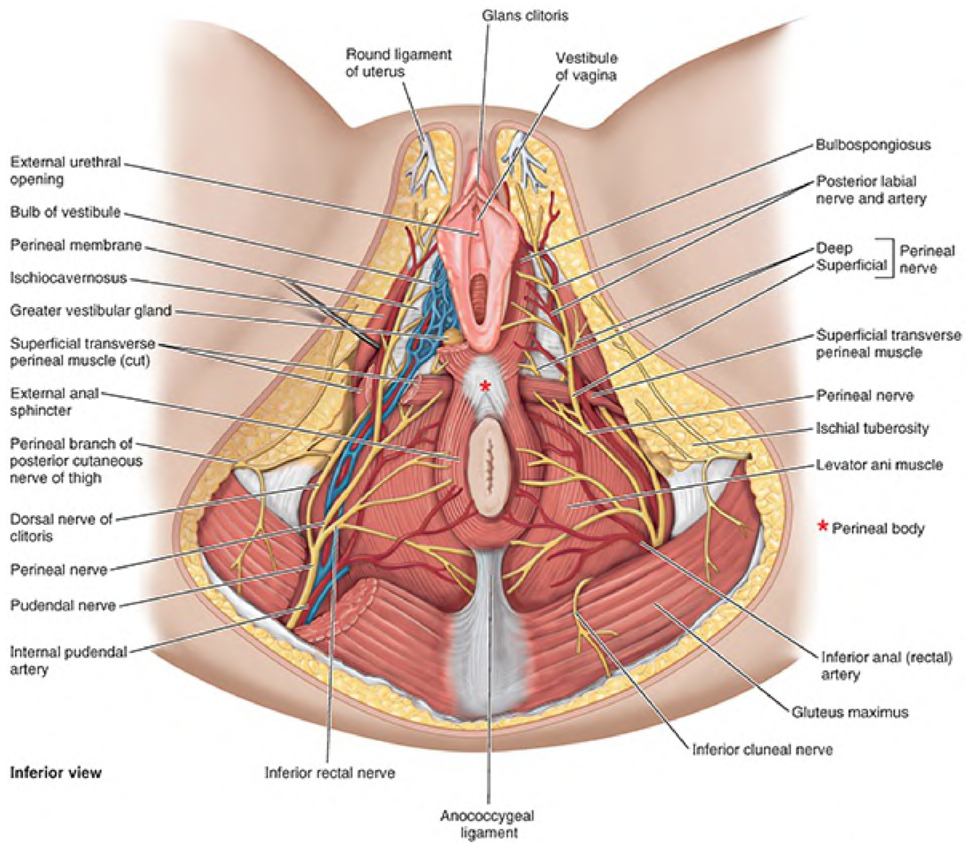


FIGURE 6.68. Female perineum. Skin, subcutaneous tissue (including perineal fascia and ischio-anal fat bodies), and the investing fascia of the muscles are removed. On the right side, the bulbospongiosus muscle is resected to reveal the bulb of the vestibule. Deeper dissection of the superficial pouch (right side) reveals the bulbs of the vestibule and the greater vestibular glands (not shown).

The labia majora lie on the sides of a central depression (a narrow slit when the thighs are adducted) (Fig. 6.67A), the **pudendal cleft**, within which are the labia minora and vestibule (Fig. 6.67C, D). The external aspects of the labia majora of the adult are covered with pigmented skin containing many sebaceous glands and are covered with crisp pubic hairs. The internal aspects of

the labia are smooth, pink, and hairless.

The labia majora are thicker anteriorly where they join to form the **anterior commissure**. Posteriorly, in nulliparous women (those never having borne children), they merge to form a ridge, the **posterior commissure**, which overlies the perineal body and is the posterior limit of the vulva. This commissure usually disappears after the first vaginal birth.

Labia Minora. The **labia minora** are rounded folds of fat-free, hairless skin. They are enclosed in the pudendal cleft and immediately surround and close over the vestibule of vagina into which both the external urethral and vaginal orifices open. They have a core of spongy connective tissue containing erectile tissue at their base and many small blood vessels. Anteriorly, the labia minora form two laminae. The medial laminae of each side unite as the **frenulum of the clitoris**. The lateral laminae unite anterior to (or often anterior and inferior to, thus overlapping and obscuring) the glans clitoris, forming the **prepuce** (foreskin) **of the clitoris**. In young women, especially virgins, the labia minora are connected posteriorly by a small transverse fold, the **frenulum of the labia minora** (fourchette). Although the internal surface of each labium minus consists of thin moist skin, it has the pink color typical of mucous membrane and contains many sebaceous glands and sensory nerve endings (see the Clinical Box "Female Genital Cutting" in this chapter).

Clitoris. The **clitoris** is an erectile organ located where the labia minora meet anteriorly (Figs. 6.67, 6.68, and 6.69A). The clitoris consists of a **root**, a small, cylindrical **body**, and the **glans clitoris**, the tip of the body (Fig. 6.69B, D). The root is composed of the two tapered and separated proximal portions or **crura** of the erectile bodies, the **corpora cavernosa**. The crura firmly attach to the inferior pubic rami and perineal membrane and are covered inferiorly by muscle (ischiocavernosus) deep to the labia (Fig. 6.69B). The crura unite with each other forming a sharp angle deep to the skin inferior to the mons pubis to become the pendulous body (Fig. 6.69A, D). The angle and the proximal body are attached to the pubic symphysis by a suspensory ligament. The union of the crura is also joined by anterior extensions of the bulbs of the vestibule, collectively forming a **bulboclitoral erectile organ** (Di Marino & Lepidi, 2014) (Fig. 6.69B). Within the body, the corpora are ovoid in cross-section with their apposed surfaces forming a central septum (Fig. 6.69C). They are bound by surrounding clitoral fascia. The distal body and glans are commonly covered by a loose fold of skin, the **prepuce**, or **hood of the clitoris** (Kelling et al., 2020) (Figs. 6.67, 6.68, and 6.69A). Together, the body and glans clitoris are approximately 2 cm in length and <1 cm in diameter. Dorsal arteries and large, fasciculated **dorsal nerves of the clitoris** pass distally along the dorsum of the body to the skin of the glans, flanking a large central dorsal vein (Fig. 6.69B, C).

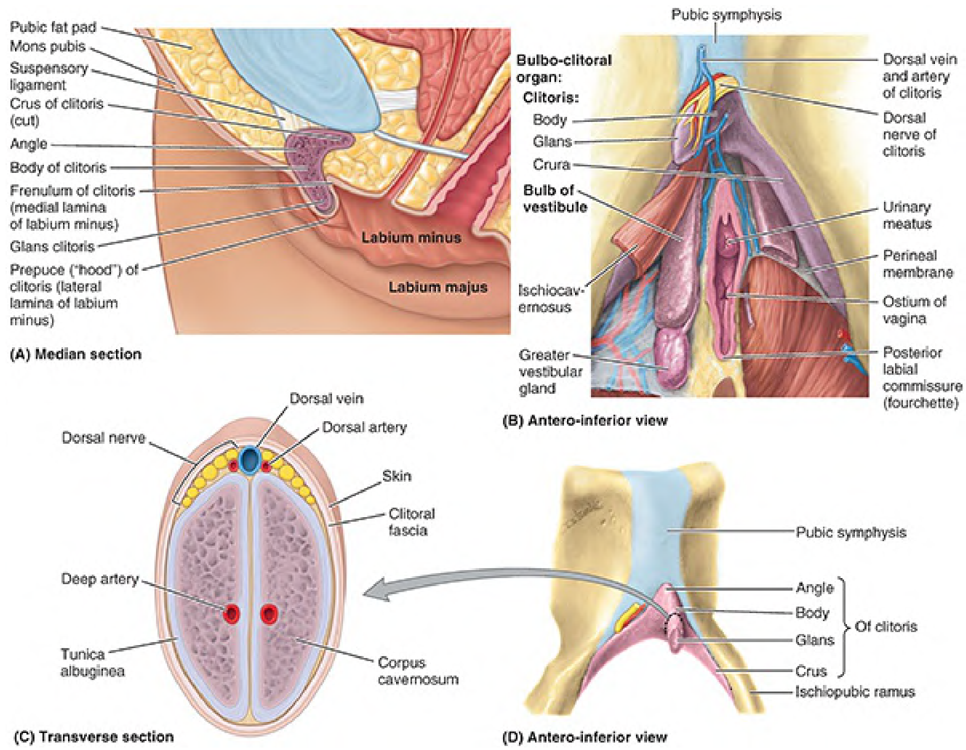


FIGURE 6.69. Clitoris. A. Clitoris in context of vulva. **B.** Deep dissection of urogenital triangle. Components of the erectile bulbo-clitoral organ are demonstrated. **C.** Transverse section of clitoral body, as indicated in part **D**. The corpora cavernosa appear ovoid with neurovascular structures, including large, fasciculated dorsal nerves, coursing along the dorsum. **D.** Isolated clitoris. The surrounding soft tissues are removed to reveal the parts of the clitoris.

In contrast to the penis, the clitoris is not functionally related to the urethra or to urination. It functions solely as an organ of sexual arousal. The clitoris is highly sensitive and enlarges on tactile stimulation. The glans clitoris is the most highly innervated part of the clitoris and is densely supplied with sensory endings.

Vestibule of Vagina. The **vestibule of the vagina** is the space surrounded by the labia minora into which the orifices of the urethra and vagina and the ducts of the greater and lesser vestibular glands open (Figs. 6.67C, D and 6.68). The external urethral orifice is located 2–3 cm postero-inferior to the glans clitoris and anterior to the vaginal orifice. On each side of the external urethral orifice are the openings of the ducts of the **para-urethral glands**. Openings of the ducts of the greater vestibular glands are located on the upper, medial aspects of the labia minora, in 5 and 7 o'clock positions relative to the vaginal orifice in the lithotomy position.

The size and appearance of the **vaginal orifice** vary with the condition of the **hymen**, a thin anular fold of mucus membrane, which partially or wholly occludes the vaginal orifice. After its rupture, only remnants of the hymen, **hymenal caruncles** (tags), are visible (Fig. 6.67C, D). These remnants demarcate the vagina from the vestibule. The hymen has no established physiological function. It is considered primarily a developmental vestige. However, its condition (and that of the frenulum of the labia minora) often provides critical evidence in cases of child abuse and rape.

Bulbs of Vestibule. The **bulbs of the vestibule** are paired masses of elongated erectile tissue,

approximately 3 cm in length (Fig. 6.68). The bulbs lie along the sides of the vaginal orifice, superior or deep to (not within) the labia minora, immediately inferior to the perineal membrane (see Fig. 6.52D, E). They are covered inferiorly and laterally by the bulbospongiosus muscles extending along their length. The bulbs of the vestibule are homologous with the bulb of the penis.

Vestibular Glands. The **greater vestibular glands** (Bartholin glands), approximately 0.5 cm in diameter, are located in the superficial perineal pouch. They lie on each side of the vestibule of the vagina, posterolateral to the vaginal orifice and inferior to the perineal membrane; thus, they are in the superficial perineal pouch (see Fig. 6.52D). The greater vestibular glands are round or oval and are partly overlapped anteriorly by the bulbs of the vestibule. Like the bulbs, they are partially surrounded by the bulbospongiosus muscles. The slender ducts of these glands pass deep to the bulbs of the vestibule and open into the vestibule on each side of the vaginal orifice. These glands secrete mucus into the vestibule of the vagina during sexual arousal (see the Clinical Box "Infection of Greater Vestibular Glands" in this chapter).

The **lesser vestibular glands** are small glands on each side of the vestibule of the vagina that open into it between the urethral and vaginal orifices. These glands secrete mucus into the vestibule, which moistens the labia and vestibule.

Arterial Supply and Venous Drainage of Vulva. The abundant arterial supply to the vulva is from the external and internal pudendal arteries (Fig. 6.68; see Fig. 6.58B; Table 6.8). The internal pudendal artery supplies most of the skin, external genitalia, and perineal muscles. The labial arteries are branches of the internal pudendal artery, as are those of the clitoris.

The labial veins are tributaries of the internal pudendal veins and accompanying veins of the internal pudendal artery. Erectile sinus engorgement during the excitement phase of the sexual response causes an increase in the size and consistency of the clitoris and bulbs of the vestibule of the vagina.

Innervation of Vulva. The anterior aspect of the vulva (mons pubis, anterior labia) is supplied by derivatives of the lumbar plexus: the **anterior labial nerves**, derived from the ilio-inguinal nerve, and the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve.

The posterior aspect of the vulva is supplied by derivatives of the sacral plexus: the perineal branch of the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh laterally and the pudendal nerve centrally (Figs. 6.68 and 6.70). The latter is the primary nerve of the perineum. Its **posterior labial nerves** (terminal superficial branches of the perineal nerve) supply the labia. Deep and muscular branches of the perineal nerve supply the orifice of the vagina and superficial perineal muscles. The dorsal nerve of the clitoris supplies deep perineal muscles and sensation to the clitoris (see the Clinical Box "Pudendal and Ilio-Inguinal Nerve Blocks" in this chapter).

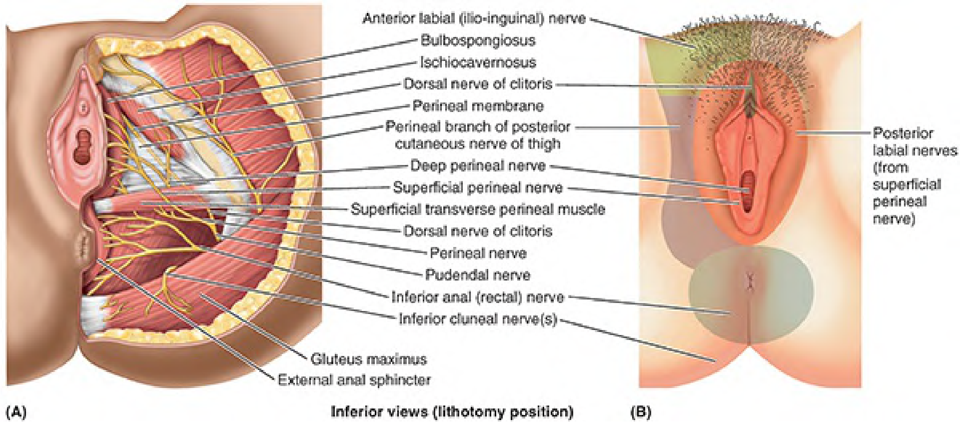


FIGURE 6.70. **Nerves of female perineum. A.** Dissection of perineal nerves. Skin, subcutaneous tissue, and ischio-anal fat bodies are removed. Most of the area and most features of the perineum are innervated by branches of the pudendal nerve (S2–S4). **B.** Cutaneous zones of innervation.

The bulb of the vestibule and erectile bodies of the clitoris receive parasympathetic fibers via cavernous nerves from the uterovaginal nerve plexus. Parasympathetic stimulation produces increased vaginal secretion, erection of the clitoris, and engorgement of erectile tissue in the bulbs of the vestibule.

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE OF FEMALE PERINEUM

The vulva contains a rich network of lymphatic vessels. Lymph from the skin of the perineum, including the anoderm inferior to the pectinate line of the anorectum and the inferiormost vagina, vaginal orifice, and vestibule, drains initially to the superficial inguinal lymph nodes. Lymph from the clitoris, vestibular bulb, and anterior labia minora drains to the deep inguinal lymph nodes, or directly to the internal iliac lymph nodes, and that from the urethra drains to the internal iliac or sacral lymph nodes (Fig. 6.71; see Table 6.7).

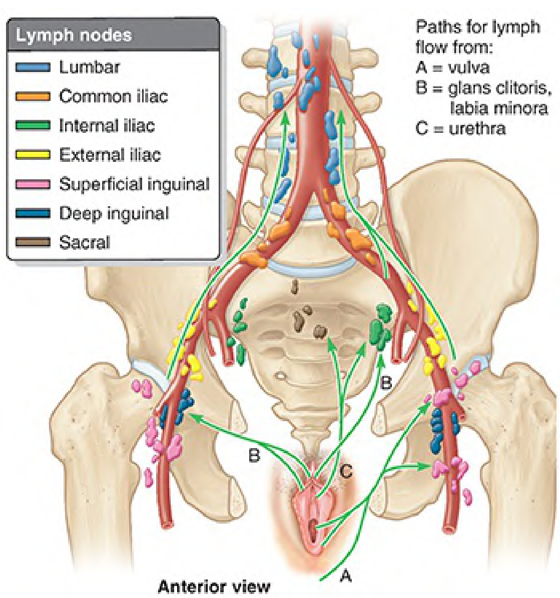


FIGURE 6.71. **Lymphatic drainage of vulva.** Arrows, direction of lymph flow to the lymph nodes.

PERINEAL MUSCLES OF FEMALE

The superficial perineal muscles include the superficial transverse perineal, **ischiocavernosus**, and bulbospongiosus muscles (see Fig. 6.66A, B). Details of their attachments, innervation, and action are provided in Table 6.9 (see the Clinical Boxes "Exercises for Strengthening of Female Perineal Muscles" and "Vaginismus" in this chapter).

CLINICAL BOX

FEMALE UROGENITAL TRIANGLE

Female Genital Cutting

Although illegal and now being actively discouraged in most countries, female genital cutting or mutilation (including "circumcision") is still practiced in some cultures. The operation, usually performed during childhood, removes the prepuce of the clitoris but often also removes part or all of the clitoris and labia minora and may include suturing of the vaginal ostium. This disfiguring procedure is erroneously thought to inhibit sexual arousal and gratification.

Vulvar Trauma

The mostly vascular bulbs of the vestibule are susceptible to disruption of vessels as the result of trauma (e.g., athletic injuries such as jumping hurdles, sexual assault, and obstetrical injury). These injuries often result in severe pain, vulvar hematomas (localized collection of blood) in the labia majora, and scarring and, in some cases, may lead to future obstructed labor or fistula formation.

Infection of Greater Vestibular Glands

The greater vestibular glands are usually not palpable but are when infected. Occlusion of the vestibular gland duct can predispose the individual to infection of the greater vestibular gland. The gland is the site or origin of most vulvar adenocarcinomas (cancers). Bartholinitis, inflammation of the greater vestibular (Bartholin) glands, may result from a number of pathogenic organisms. Infected glands may enlarge to a diameter of 4–5 cm and impinge on the wall of the rectum. Occlusion of the vestibular gland duct without infection can result in the accumulation of mucin (Bartholin gland cyst) (Fig. B6.34).

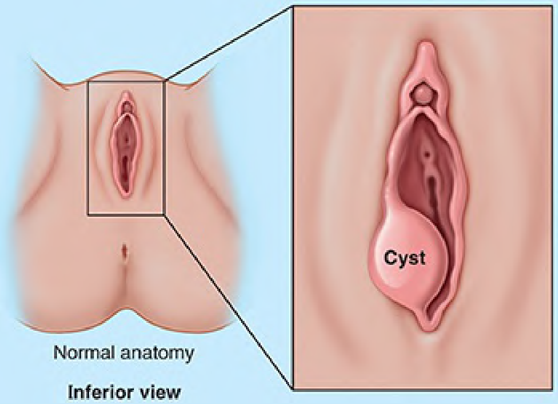


FIGURE B6.34. **Bartholin gland cyst.**

Pudendal and Ilio-Inguinal Nerve Blocks

To relieve perineal pain during childbirth, pudendal nerve block anesthesia may be performed by injecting a local anesthetic agent into the tissues surrounding the pudendal nerve (Fig. B6.35). The injection is made where the pudendal nerve crosses the lateral aspect of the sacrospinous ligament, near its attachment to the ischial spine or in the initial part of the pudendal canal. The needle may be passed through the overlying skin (as illustrated) or, more commonly perhaps, through the vagina (see Fig. B6.27) parallel to the palpating finger. Because the fetus's head is usually stationed within the lesser pelvis at this stage, it is important that the physician's finger is always positioned between the needle tip and the baby's head during the procedure.

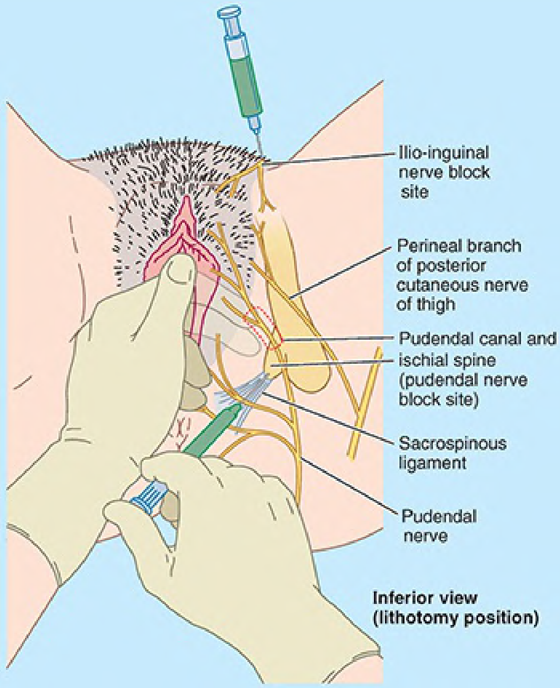


FIGURE B6.35. Pudendal and ilio-inguinal nerve block.

To abolish sensation from the anterior part of the perineum, an ilio-inguinal nerve block is performed. When patients continue to complain of pain sensation after proper administration of a pudendal or pudendal and ilio-inguinal nerve blocks, it is usually the result of overlapping innervation by the perineal branch at the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh. Other types of anesthesia for childbirth are explained and compared in the Clinical Box "Anesthesia for Childbirth" (earlier in this chapter).

Exercises for Strengthening of Female Perineal Muscles

The superficial transverse perineal muscle, bulbospongiosus, and external anal sphincter, through their common attachment to the perineal body, form crossing beams over the pelvic outlet to support the perineal body and pelvic diaphragm, as in males. In the absence of the functional demands related to urination, penile erection, and ejaculation in males, the muscles are commonly relatively underdeveloped in women. However, when developed, they contribute to the support of the pelvic viscera and help prevent urinary stress incontinence and postpartum prolapse of pelvic viscera. Therefore, many gynecologists as well as prepartum classes for participatory childbirth recommend that women practice Kegel exercises (named for A. H. Kegel, a 20th-century U.S. gynecologist) using the perineal muscles, such as successive interruption of the urine flow during urination. Some prepartum childbirth classes teach that in learning to voluntarily contract and relax the perineal muscles, women may be able to resist the tendency to contract the musculature during uterine contractions, allowing a less obstructed passage for the fetus and decreasing the likelihood of tearing the perineal muscles. The efficacy of this

is controversial.

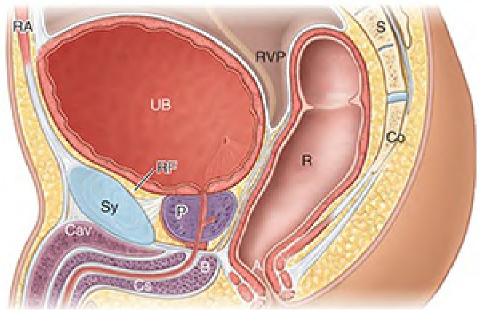
Vaginismus

Vaginismus is defined as involuntary (reflex) muscle spasms that occur when vaginal penetration is attempted (when perineal muscles are distended). Vaginismus may be limited to specific situations (e.g., sexual intercourse) or in all situations in which vaginal penetration is attempted (tampon insertion, gynecologic exams). It may cause dyspareunia (painful intercourse); in severe forms, it prevents vaginal entry. Vaginismus is a physical disorder that, for some women, has a psychological component, such as anticipated fear of pain with penetration. For others, vaginismus may be linked to a gynecologic disorder, medical condition, or medication. Treatment often involves muscle relaxation techniques and desensitization with the use of vaginal dilators of increasing diameter.

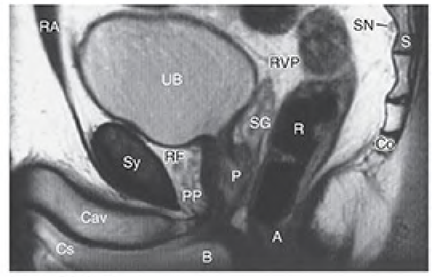
SECTIONAL IMAGING OF PELVIS AND PERINEUM

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

MRI provides excellent evaluation of pelvic structures in any plane (Fig. 6.72) and permits outstanding delineation of the uterus and ovaries (Fig. 6.73). It also permits the identification of tumors (e.g., a myoma or benign neoplasm) and congenital anomalies (e.g., bicornuate uterus; see Fig. B6.16).

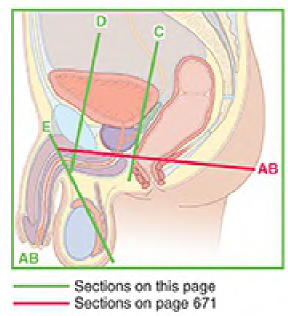


(A) Anatomical median section

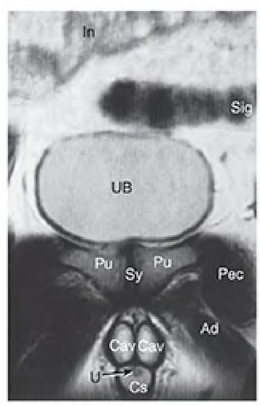


(B) Median MRI

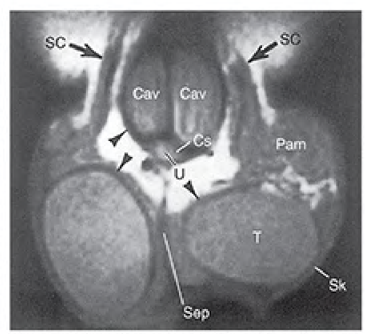
A	Anus	R	Rectum
Ad	Adductor muscles	RA	Rectus abdominis
B	Bulb of penis	RF	Retropubic fat
Cav	Corpus cavernosum of penis	RVP	Rectovesical pouch
Co	Coccyx	S	Sacrum
Cs	Corpus spongiosum of penis	SC	Spermatic cord
IM	Iliacus muscle	Sep	Scrotal septum
In	Small intestine	SG	Seminal gland
IR	Inferior rectal nerve and vessels	Sig	Sigmoid colon
LA	Levator ani	Sk	Skin
LS	Lumbosacral trunk	SN	Sacral nerves
OI	Obturator internus	Sy	Pubic symphysis
P	Prostate	T	Testis
Pam	Pampiniform plexus	U	Urethra
PP	Prostatic venous plexus	UB	Urinary bladder
Pec	Pectineus		
Pu	Pubic bone		



(C) Coronal MRI



(D) Coronal MRI



(E) Coronal section; *arrowheads*, tunica albuginea of corpus cavernosum and testis

FIGURE 6.72. MRI scans of male pelvis.

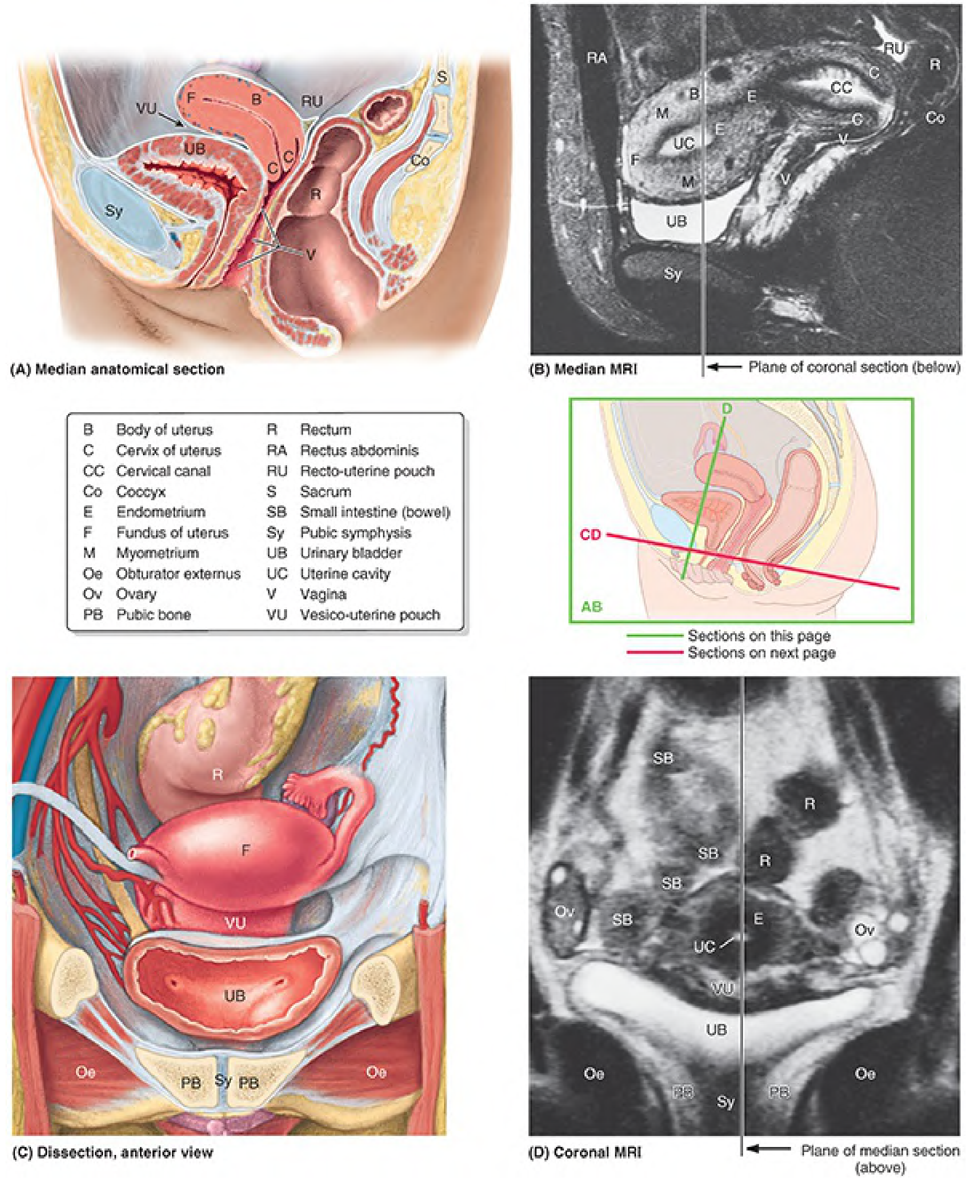
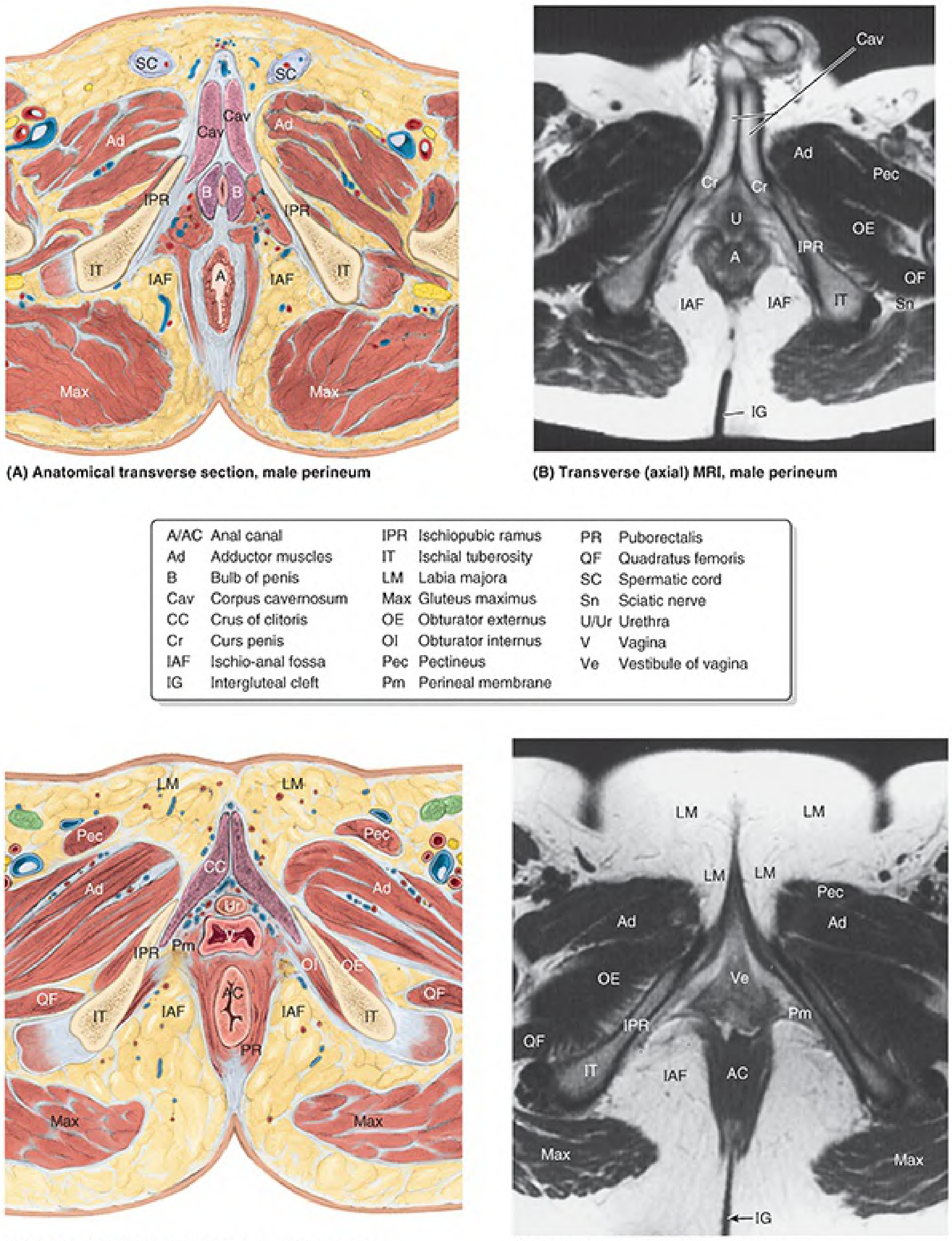


FIGURE 6.73. MRI studies of female pelvis.



(A) Anatomical transverse section, male perineum

(B) Transverse (axial) MRI, male perineum

(C) Anatomical transverse section, female perineum

(D) Transverse MRI, female perineum

FIGURE 6.74. MRI studies of male and female perineum.

---

[1]The term perineum has been used in different ways, in different languages, and in different circumstances. In its most restricted sense, and in obstetrics, it has been used to refer to the area superficial to the perineal body, between the vulva or scrotum and the anus or to the perineal body itself. In an intermediate sense, it has included only the perineal region, a superficial (surface) area bounded by the thighs laterally, the mons pubis anteriorly, and the coccyx posteriorly. In its widest sense, as used in Terminologia Anatomica (the international anatomical terminology), and in this book, it refers to the region of the body that includes all structures of the anal and urogenital triangles, superficial and deep, extending as far superiorly as the inferior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm.

[2]The terminology used in this section (in boldface) was recommended by the Federative International Committee on Anatomical Terminology (FICAT) in 1998; however, because many clinicians concerned with the perineum use eponyms, the authors have placed commonly used terms in parentheses so that the FICAT terminology will be understood by all readers.

7

Lower Limb

CLINICAL BOX KEY

OVERVIEW OF LOWER LIMB

The **lower limbs** (extremities) are extensions from the trunk specialized to support body weight, for locomotion (ability to move from one place to another), and to maintain balance.

The lower limbs have six major regions (Fig. 7.1):

1. The **gluteal region** (G. gloutos, buttocks) is the transitional region between the trunk and free lower limbs. It includes two parts of the lower limb: the rounded, prominent posterior region, the **buttocks** (L. nates, clunes), and the lateral, usually less prominent **hip region** (L. regio coxae), which overlies the hip joint and greater trochanter of the femur. The "width of the hips" in common terminology is a reference to one's transverse dimensions at the level of the greater trochanters. The gluteal region is bounded superiorly by the iliac crest, medially by the intergluteal cleft (natal cleft), and inferiorly by the skin fold (groove) underlying the buttocks, the **gluteal fold** (L. sulcus glutealis). The gluteal muscles, overlying the pelvic girdle, constitute the bulk of this region.
2. The **femoral region** (thigh) is the region of the free lower limb that lies between the gluteal, abdominal, and perineal regions proximally and the knee region distally. It includes most of the femur (thigh bone). The transition from the trunk to the free lower limb occurs abruptly in the inguinal region (groin). Here, the boundary between the abdominal and perineal regions

and the femoral region is demarcated by the inguinal ligament anteriorly and the ischiopubic ramus of the hip bone (part of the pelvic girdle or skeleton of the pelvis) medially. Posteriorly, the gluteal fold separates the gluteal and femoral regions (see Fig. 7.49A).

3. The **knee region** (L. regio genus) includes the prominences (condyles) of the distal femur and proximal tibia, head of the fibula, and patella (knee cap, which lies anterior to the distal end of the femur), as well as the joints between these bony structures. The **posterior region of the knee** (L. poples) includes a well-defined, fat-filled hollow, transmitting neurovascular structures, called the popliteal fossa.
4. The **leg region** (L. regio cruris) is the part that lies between the knee and the talocrural region. It includes most of the tibia (shin bone) and fibula (calf bone). The **leg** (L. crus) connects the knee and foot. Often, laypersons refer incorrectly to the entire lower limb as "the leg."
5. The ankle (L. tarsus) or **talocrural region** (L. regio talocruralis) includes the medial and lateral prominences (malleoli) that flank the ankle (talocrural) joint.
6. The foot (L. pes) or **foot region** (L. regio pedis) is the distal part of the lower limb containing the tarsus, metatarsus, and phalanges (toe bones). The **toes** are the **digits of the foot**. The **great toe** (L. hallux), like the thumb, has only two phalanges (digital bones); the other digits have three.

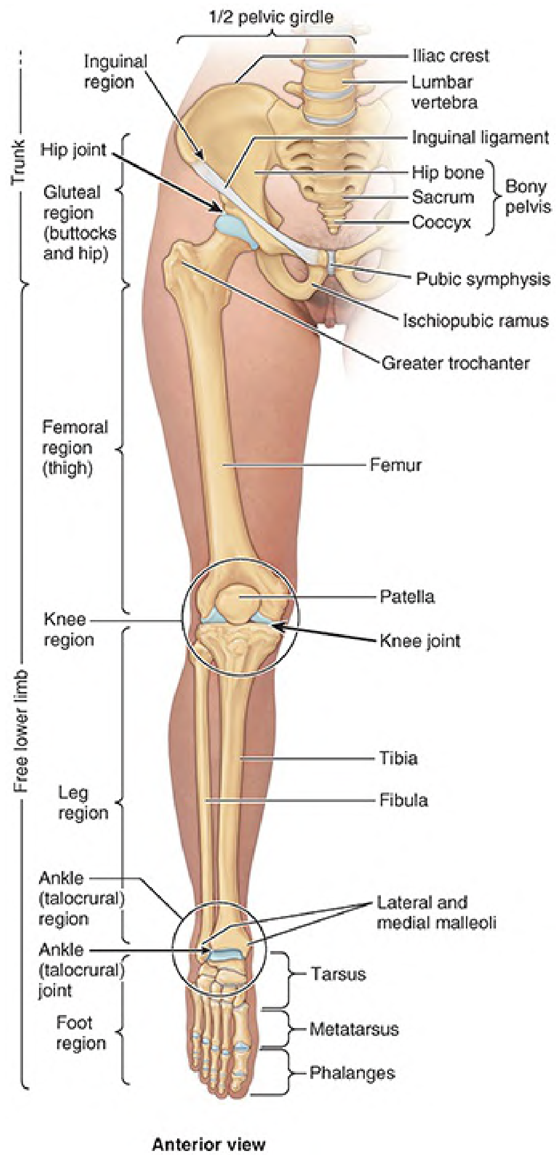


FIGURE 7.1. Regions and bones of lower limb.

DEVELOPMENT OF LOWER LIMB

The development of the lower limb is illustrated, explained, and contrasted with that of the upper limb in Figure 7.2. Initially, the development of the lower limb is similar to that of the upper limb, although occurring about a week later. During the 5th week, **lower limb buds** bulge from the lateral aspect of the L2–S2 segments of the trunk (a broader base than for the upper limbs) (Fig. 7.2A). Both limbs initially extend from the trunk with their developing thumbs and great toes directed superiorly and the palms and soles directed anteriorly. Both limbs then undergo torsion around their long axes but in opposite directions (Fig. 7.2B–D).

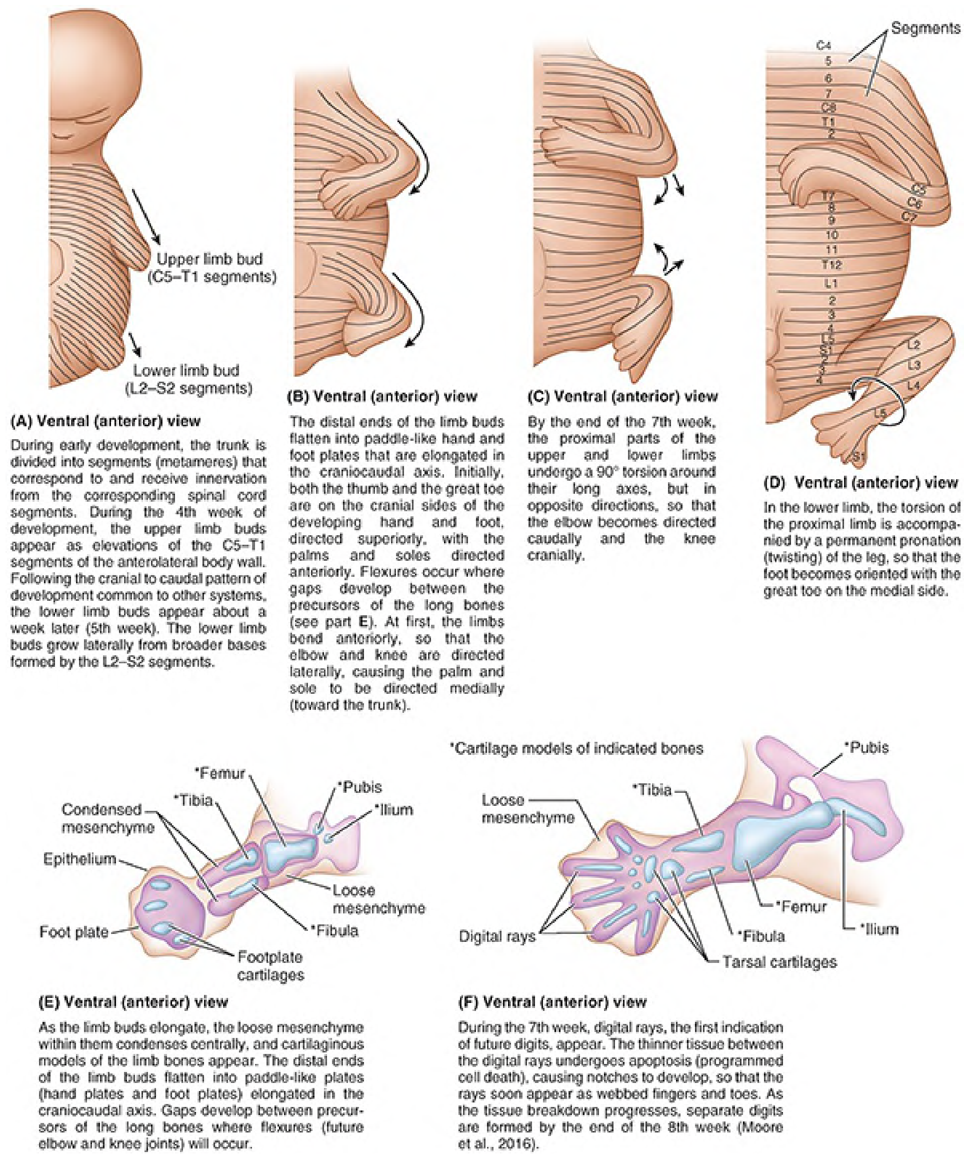


FIGURE 7.2. Development of lower limbs. A–D. Overview. The upper and lower limbs develop from limb buds that arise from the lateral body wall during the 4th and 5th weeks, respectively. They then elongate, develop flexures, and rotate in opposite directions. Segmental innervation is maintained, the dermatomal pattern reflecting the elongation and spiraling of the limb. **E and F.** Cartilaginous stage of development of bone. Future bones develop from cartilage models, demonstrated at the end of the 6th week (**E**) and beginning of the 7th week (**F**).

The medial rotation and permanent pronation of the lower limb explain how

- The knee, unlike the joints superior to it, extends anteriorly and flexes posteriorly, as do the joints inferior to the knee (e.g., interphalangeal joints of the toes).
- The foot becomes oriented with the great toe on the medial side (Fig. 7.2D), whereas the hand (in the anatomical position) becomes oriented with the thumb on the lateral side.
- The "barber pole" pattern of the segmental innervation of the skin (dermatomes) of the lower limb develops (see "Cutaneous Innervation of Lower Limb" in this chapter).

The torsion and twisting of the lower limb is still in progress at birth (note that babies' feet

tend to meet sole to sole when they are brought together, like clapping). Completion of the process coincides with the mastering of walking skills.

BONES OF LOWER LIMB

The skeleton of the lower limb (inferior appendicular skeleton) may be divided into two functional components: the pelvic girdle and the bones of the free lower limb (Fig. 7.1). The **pelvic girdle** (bony pelvis) is a bony ring composed of the sacrum and right and left hip bones joined anteriorly at the pubic symphysis.

The pelvic girdle attaches the free lower limb to the axial skeleton, the sacrum being common to the axial skeleton and the pelvic girdle. The pelvic girdle also makes up the skeleton of the lower part of the trunk. Its protective and supportive functions serve the abdomen, pelvis, and perineum as well as the lower limbs. The bones of the free lower limb are contained within and specifically serve that part of the limb.

Arrangement of Lower Limb Bones

Body weight is transferred from the vertebral column through the sacro-iliac joints to the pelvic girdle and from the pelvic girdle through the hip joints to the femurs (L. femora) (Fig. 7.3A). To support the erect bipedal posture better, the femurs are oblique (directed inferomedially) within the thighs so that when standing, the knees are adjacent and placed directly inferior to the trunk, returning the center of gravity to the vertical lines of the supporting legs and feet (Figs. 7.1, 7.3, and 7.4). Compare this oblique position of the femurs with that of quadrupeds, in which the femurs are vertical and the knees are apart, with the trunk mass suspended between the limbs (Fig. 7.3B).

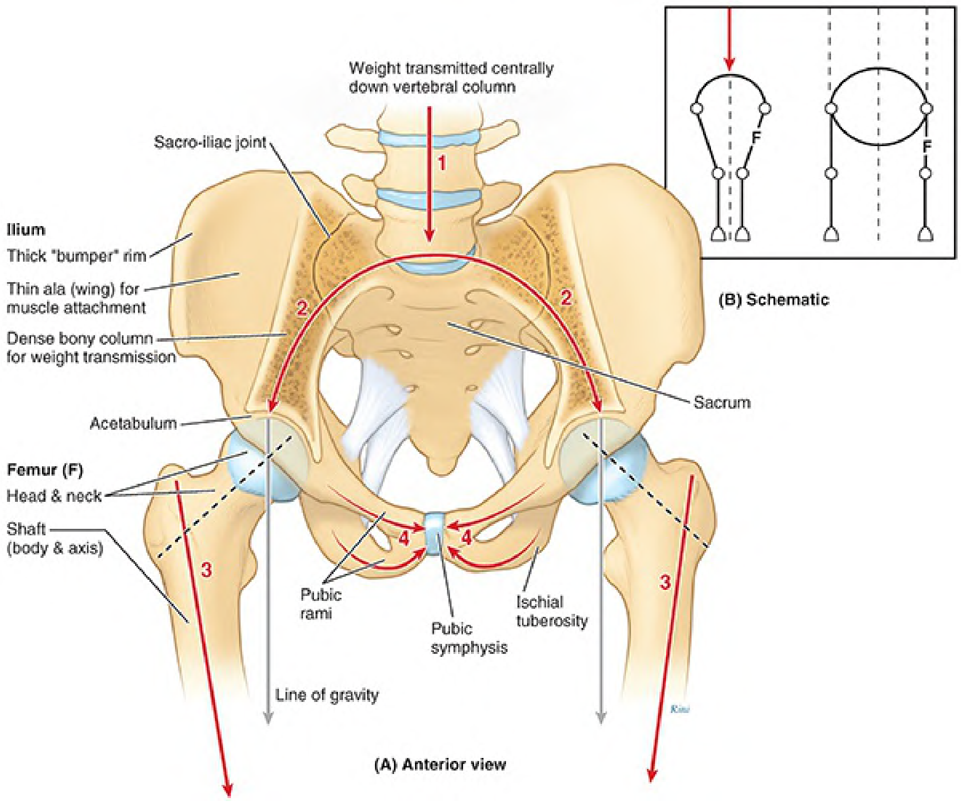


FIGURE 7.3. Pelvic girdle and related joints, demonstrating transfer of weight. A. Transmission of weight from vertebral column to lower limbs. The weight of the upper body, transmitted centrally through the vertebral column (1), is divided and directed laterally by means of the bony arch formed by the sacrum and ilia (2). Thick portions of the ilia transfer the weight to the femurs (3). The pubic rami form “struts” or braces that help maintain the integrity of the arch (4). **B.** Arrangement of bones in bipeds versus quadrupeds. The arrangement of the lower limb bones of bipeds is compared to that of quadrupeds. The diagonal disposition of the femur recenters support directly inferior to the trunk (body mass) to make bipedal standing more efficient and to enable bipedal walking, in which the full weight is borne alternately by each limb. In quadrupeds, the trunk is suspended between essentially vertical limbs, requiring simultaneous support from each side.

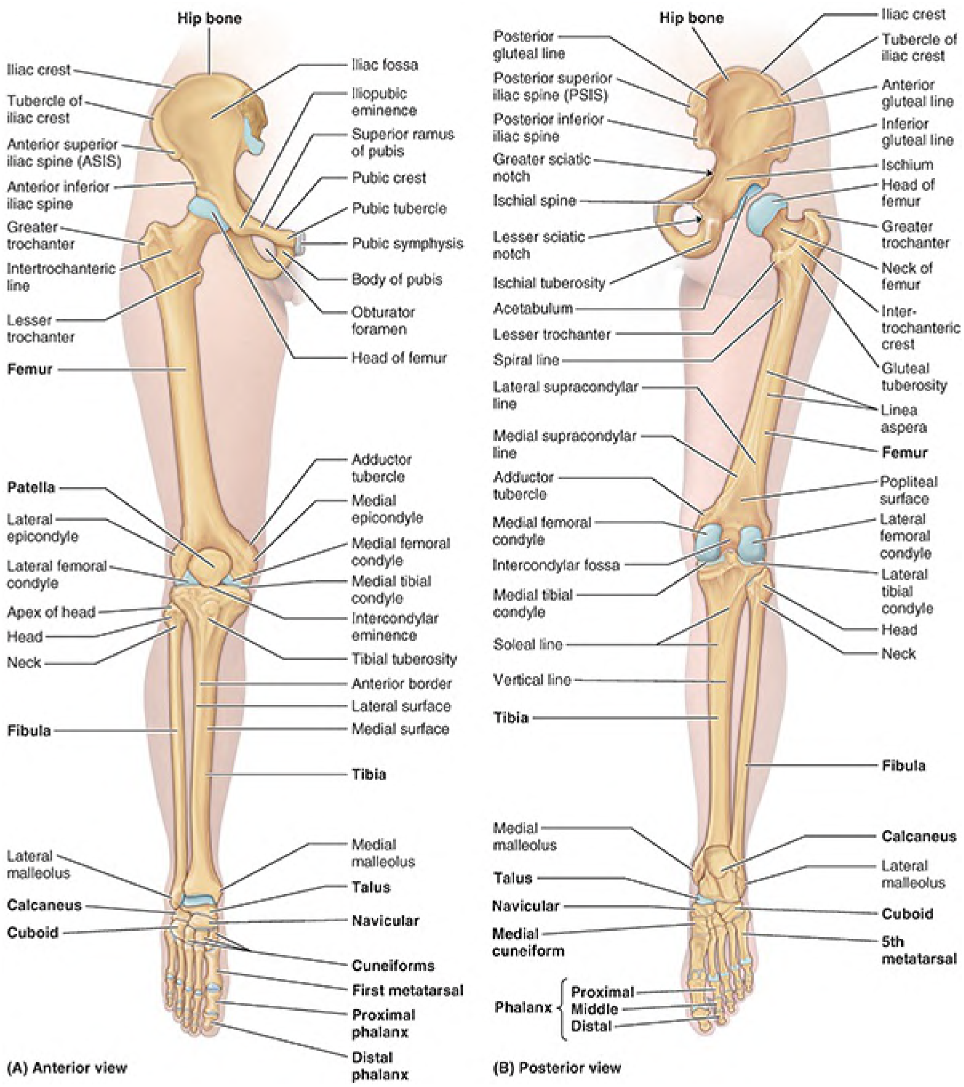


FIGURE 7.4. Bones of lower limb. A and B. Individual bones and bony formations are identified. The foot is in full plantarflexion. The hip joint is disarticulated (**B**) to demonstrate the acetabulum of the hip bone, which receives the head of the femur.

The femurs of human females are slightly more oblique than those of males, reflecting the greater width of their pelves. At the knees, the distal end of each femur articulates with the patella and tibia of the corresponding leg. Weight is transferred from the knee joint to the ankle joint by the tibia. The fibula does not articulate with the femur and therefore does not bear or transfer weight. The role of the fibula is to provide for muscle attachment and contribute to the formation of the ankle joint.

At the ankle, the weight borne by the tibia is transferred to the talus (Fig. 7.4). The talus is the keystone of a longitudinal arch formed by the tarsal and metatarsal bones of each foot that distributes the weight evenly between the heel and forefoot when standing, creating a flexible but stable bony platform to support the body.

Hip Bone

The mature **hip bone** (L. os coxae) is the large, flat pelvic bone formed by the fusion of three primary bones—ilium, ischium, and pubis—at the end of the teenage years. Each of the three bones is formed from its own primary center of ossification; five secondary centers of ossification appear later.

At birth, the three primary bones are joined by hyaline cartilage; in children, they are incompletely ossified (Fig. 7.5). At puberty, the three bones are still separated by a Y-shaped **triradiate cartilage** centered in the acetabulum, although the two parts of the ischiopubic rami fuse by the 9th year (Fig. 7.5B). The bones begin to fuse between 15 and 17 years of age; fusion is complete between 20 and 25 years of age. Little or no trace of the lines of fusion of the primary bones is visible in older adults (Fig. 7.6). Although the bony components are rigidly fused, their names are still used in adults to describe the three parts of the hip bone.

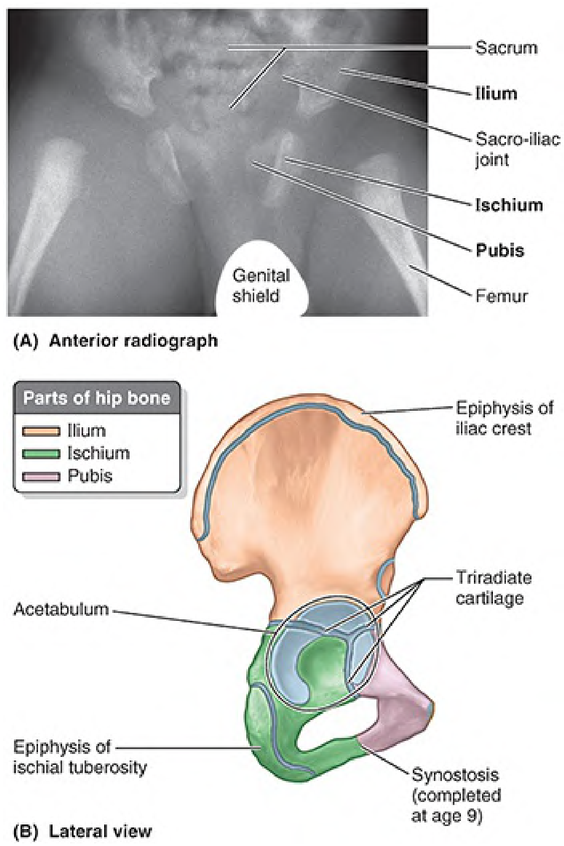


FIGURE 7.5. Parts of hip bones. A. Radiograph of infant's hips. This radiograph shows the three parts of the incompletely ossified hip bones (ilium, ischium, and pubis). **B.** Hip bone of 13-year-old. Note the Y-shaped triradiate cartilage.

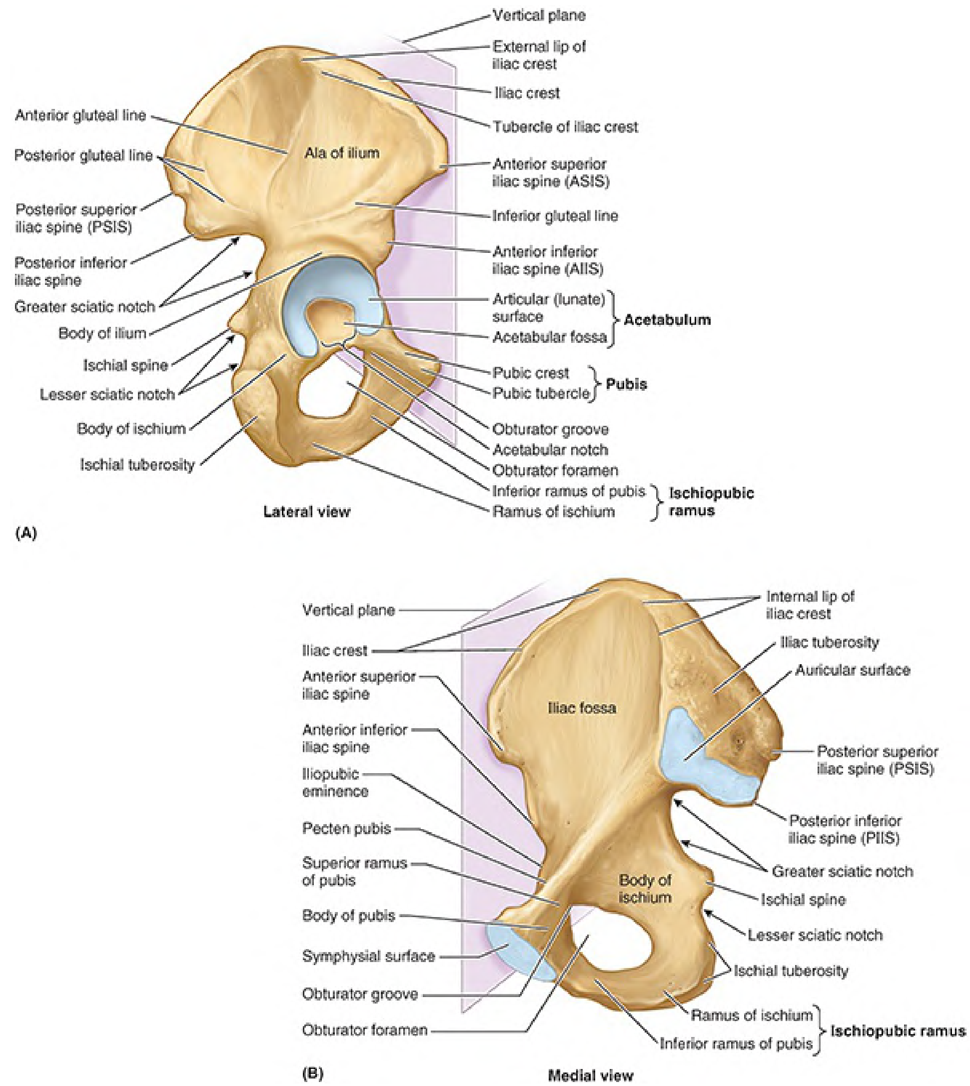


FIGURE 7.6. Right hip bone of adult in anatomical position. In this position, the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) and the anterior aspect of the pubis lie in the same coronal plane (blue). **A.** Lateral aspect. The large hip bone is constricted in the middle and expanded at its superior and inferior ends. **B.** Medial aspect. The symphysial surface of the pubis articulates with the corresponding surface of the contralateral hip bone. The auricular surface of the ilium articulates with a corresponding surface of the sacrum to form the sacro-iliac joint.

Because much of the medial aspect of the hip bones/bony pelvis is primarily concerned with pelvic and perineal structures and functions (Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum) or their union with the vertebral column (Chapter 2, Back), it is described more thoroughly in those chapters. Aspects of the hip bones concerned with lower limb structures and functions, mainly involving their lateral aspects, are described in this chapter.

ILIUM

The **ilium** forms the largest part of the hip bone and contributes the superior part of the acetabulum (Fig. 7.5B). The ilium has thick medial portions (columns) for weight bearing and thin, wing-like, posterolateral portions, the **alae** (L. wings), that provide broad surfaces for the

fleshy attachment of muscles (Fig. 7.3).

The **body of the ilium** joins the pubis and ischium to form the acetabulum. Anteriorly, the ilium has stout **anterior superior** and **anterior inferior iliac spines** that provide attachment for ligaments and tendons of lower limb muscles (Fig. 7.6).

Beginning at the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS), the long curved and thickened superior border of the ala of the ilium, the **iliac crest**, extends posteriorly, terminating at the **posterior superior iliac spine** (PSIS). The crest serves as a protective "bumper" and is an important site of aponeurotic attachment for thin, sheet-like muscles and deep fascia. A prominence on the external lip of the crest, the **tubercle of the iliac crest** (iliac tubercle), lies 5–6 cm posterior to the ASIS. The **posterior inferior iliac spine** marks the superior end of the greater sciatic notch.

The lateral surface of the ala of the ilium has three rough curved lines—the posterior, anterior, and inferior **gluteal lines**—that demarcate the proximal attachments of the three large gluteal muscles (pl., glutei). Medially, each ala has a large, smooth depression, the **iliac fossa** (Fig. 7.6B), that provides proximal attachment for the iliacus muscle. The bone forming the superior part of this fossa may become thin and translucent, especially in older women with osteoporosis.

Posteriorly, the medial aspect of the ilium has a rough, ear-shaped articular area, the **auricular surface** (L. auricula, a little ear), and an even rougher **iliac tuberosity** superior to it for synovial and syndesmotic articulation with the reciprocal surfaces of the sacrum at the sacroiliac joint.

ISCHIUM

The **ischium** forms the postero-inferior part of the hip bone. The superior part of the **body of the ischium** fuses with the pubis and ilium, forming the postero-inferior aspect of the acetabulum. The **ramus of the ischium** joins the inferior ramus of the pubis to form a bar of bone, the **ischiopubic ramus** (Fig. 7.6A), which constitutes the inferomedial boundary of the obturator foramen. The posterior border of the ischium forms the inferior margin of a deep indentation, the **greater sciatic notch**. The large, triangular **ischial spine** at the inferior margin of this notch provides ligamentous attachment. This sharp demarcation separates the greater sciatic notch from a more inferior, smaller, rounded, and smooth-surfaced indentation, the **lesser sciatic notch**. The lesser sciatic notch serves as a trochlea or pulley for a muscle that emerges from the bony pelvis. The rough bony projection at the junction of the inferior end of the body of the ischium and its ramus is the large **ischial tuberosity**. The body's weight rests on this tuberosity when sitting, and it provides the proximal, tendinous attachment of posterior thigh muscles.

PUBIS

The **pubis** forms the anteromedial part of the hip bone, contributing the anterior part of the acetabulum, and provides proximal attachment for muscles of the medial thigh. The pubis is divided into a flattened medially placed **body** and **superior** and **inferior rami** that project laterally from the body (Fig. 7.6).

Medially, the **symphysial surface** of the body of the pubis articulates with the corresponding surface of the body of the contralateral pubis by means of the pubic symphysis (Fig. 7.3A). The

anterosuperior border of the united bodies and symphysis forms the **pubic crest**, which provides attachment for abdominal muscles.

Small projections at the lateral ends of the pubic crest, the **pubic tubercles**, are important landmarks of the inguinal regions (Fig. 7.6). The tubercles provide attachment for the main part of the inguinal ligament and thereby indirect muscle attachment. The posterior margin of the superior ramus of the pubis has a sharp raised edge, the **pecten pubis**, which forms part of the pelvic brim (see Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum).

OBTURATOR FORAMEN

The **obturator foramen** is a large oval or irregularly triangular opening in the hip bone. It is bounded by the pubis and ischium and their rami. Except for a small passageway for the obturator nerve and vessels (obturator canal), the obturator foramen is closed by the thin, strong obturator membrane. The presence of the foramen minimizes bony mass (weight) while its closure by the obturator membrane still provides extensive surface area on both sides for fleshy muscle attachment.

ACETABULUM

The **acetabulum** (L., shallow vinegar cup) is the large cup-shaped cavity or socket on the lateral aspect of the hip bone that articulates with the head of the femur to form the hip joint (Fig. 7.6A). All three primary bones forming the hip bone contribute to the formation of the acetabulum (Fig. 7.5).

The margin of the acetabulum is incomplete inferiorly at the **acetabular notch**, which makes the fossa resemble a cup with a piece of its lip missing (Fig. 7.6A). The rough depression in the floor of the acetabulum extending superiorly from the acetabular notch is the **acetabular fossa**. The acetabular notch and fossa also create a deficit in the smooth **lunate surface of the acetabulum**, the articular surface receiving the head of the femur.

ANATOMICAL POSITION OF HIP BONE

Surfaces, borders, and relationships of the hip bone are described assuming that the body is in the anatomical position. To place an isolated hip bone or bony pelvis in this position, situate it so that the

- ASIS and the anterosuperior aspect of the pubis lie in the same coronal plane.
- Symphysial surface of the pubis is vertical, parallel to the median plane (Fig. 7.6).

In the anatomical position, the

- Acetabulum faces inferolaterally, with the acetabular notch directed inferiorly.
- Obturator foramen lies inferomedial to the acetabulum.
- Internal aspect of the body of the pubis faces almost directly superiorly. (It essentially forms a floor on which the urinary bladder rests.)
- Superior pelvic aperture (pelvic inlet) is more vertical than horizontal; in the anteroposterior

(AP) view, the tip of the coccyx appears near its center (Fig. 7.3).

Femur

The **femur** is the longest and heaviest bone in the body. It transmits body weight from the hip bone to the tibia when a person is standing (Fig. 7.4). Its length is approximately a quarter of the person's height. The femur consists of a **shaft** (body) and two ends, superior or proximal and inferior or distal (Fig. 7.7).

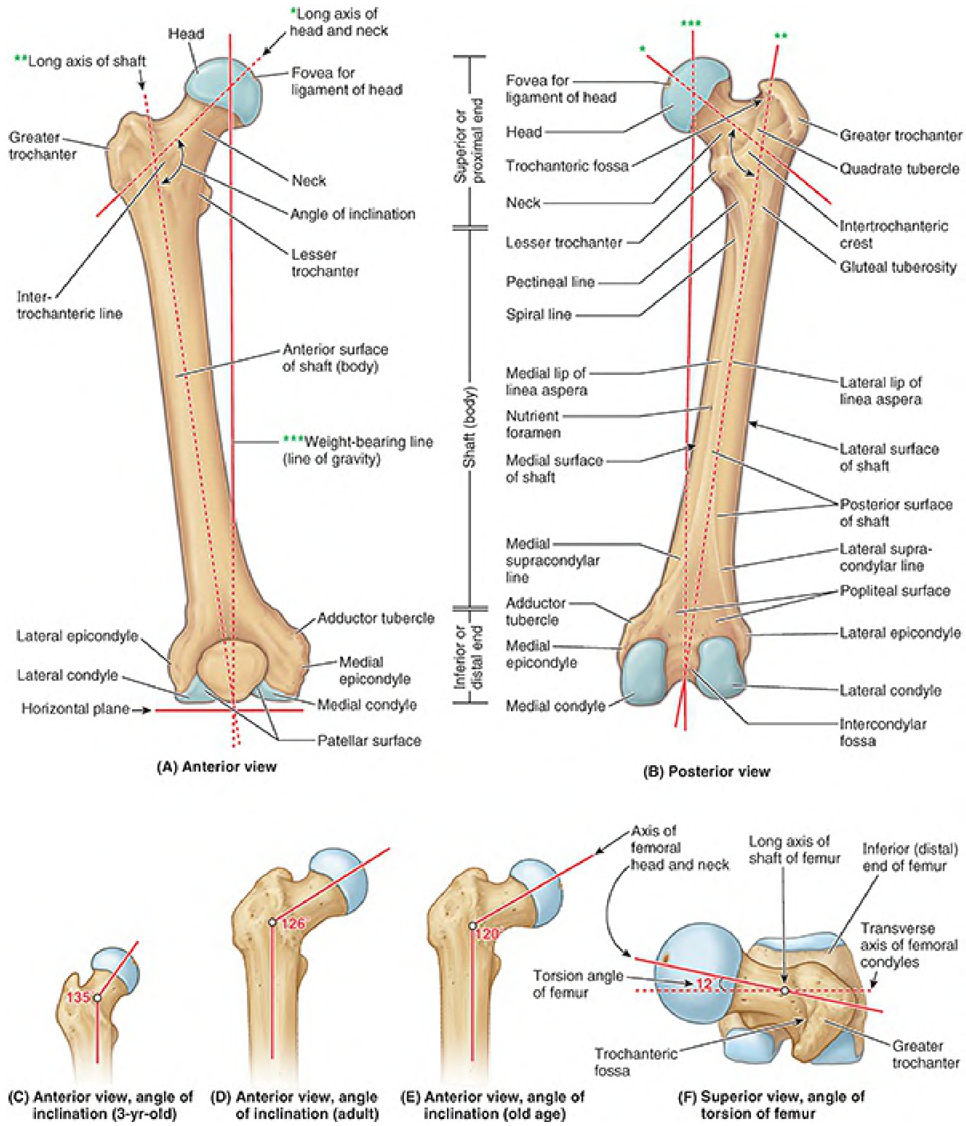


FIGURE 7.7. **Right femur. A and B.** Features of an adult femur. Functionally and morphologically, the bone consists of highly modified superior and inferior ends and an intervening cylindrical shaft. **C–E.** Angle of inclination. The femur is "bent" so that the long axis of the head and neck lies at an angle (angle of inclination) to that of the shaft. When the massive femoral condyles rest on a horizontal surface, the femur assumes its oblique anatomical position in which the center of the round femoral head lies directly superior to the intercondylar fossa. The angle of inclination decreases (becomes more acute) with age, resulting in greater stress at a time when bone mass is reduced. **F.** Angle of torsion. When the femur is viewed along the long axis of the femoral shaft, so that the proximal end is superimposed over the distal end, it can be seen that the axis of the head and neck of the femur forms a 12° angle with the transverse axis of the femoral

condyles (angle of torsion).

The superior (proximal) end of the femur consists of a head, neck, and two trochanters (greater and lesser). The round **head of the femur** makes up two thirds of a sphere that is covered with articular cartilage, except for a medially placed depression or pit, the **fovea for the ligament of the head**. In early life, the ligament gives passage to an artery supplying the epiphysis of the head. The **neck of the femur** is trapezoidal, with its narrow end supporting the head and its broader base being continuous with the shaft. Its average diameter is three quarters that of the femoral head.

The proximal femur is "bent" (L-shaped) so that the long axis of the head and neck projects superomedially at an angle to that of the obliquely oriented shaft (Fig. 7.7A, B). This obtuse **angle of inclination** is greatest (most nearly straight) at birth and gradually diminishes (becomes more acute) until the adult angle is reached (115–140°, averaging 126°) (Fig. 7.7C–E).

The angle of inclination is less in females because of the increased width between the acetabula (a consequence of a wider lesser pelvis) and the greater obliquity of the femoral shaft. The angle of inclination allows greater mobility of the femur at the hip joint because it places the head and neck more perpendicular to the acetabulum in the neutral position. The abductors and rotators of the thigh attach mainly to the apex of the angle (the greater trochanter) so they are pulling on a lever (the short limb of the L) that is directed more laterally than vertically. This provides increased leverage for the abductors and rotators of the thigh and allows the considerable mass of the abductors of the thigh to be placed superior to the femur (in the gluteal region) instead of lateral to it, freeing the lateral aspect of the femoral shaft to provide an increased area for the fleshy attachment of the extensors of the knee.

The angle of inclination also allows the obliquity of the femur within the thigh, which permits the knees to be adjacent and inferior to the trunk, as explained previously. This is advantageous for bipedal walking; however, it imposes considerable strain on the neck of the femur. Consequently, fractures of the femoral neck can occur in older people as a result of a slight stumble if the neck has been weakened by osteoporosis (pathologic reduction of bone mass).

The torsion of the proximal lower limb (femur) that occurred during development does not conclude with the long axis of the superior end of the femur (head and neck) parallel to the transverse axis of the inferior end (femoral condyles). When the femur is viewed superiorly (so that one is looking along the long axis of the shaft), it is apparent that the two axes lie at an angle (the **torsion angle** or **angle of declination**), the mean of which is 7° in males and 12° in females. The torsion angle, combined with the angle of inclination, allows rotatory movements of the femoral head within the obliquely placed acetabulum to convert into flexion and extension, abduction and adduction, and rotational movements of the thigh.

Where the femoral neck and shaft join, there are two large, blunt elevations, the trochanters (Fig. 7.7A, B, F). The abrupt, conical, and rounded **lesser trochanter** (G., a runner) extends medially from the posteromedial part of the junction of the neck and shaft of the femur to give tendinous attachment to the primary flexor of the thigh (the iliopsoas).

The **greater trochanter** is a large, laterally placed bony mass that projects superiorly and

posteriorly where the neck joins the femoral shaft, providing attachment and leverage for abductors and rotators of the thigh. The site where the neck and shaft join is indicated by the **intertrochanteric line**, a roughened ridge formed by the attachment of a powerful ligament (iliofemoral ligament). The intertrochanteric line runs from the greater trochanter and winds around the lesser trochanter to continue posteriorly and inferiorly as a less distinct, narrow and rough ridge, called the **spiral line**.

A similar but smoother and more prominent ridge, the **intertrochanteric crest**, joins the trochanters posteriorly. The rounded elevation on the crest is the **quadrate tubercle**. In anterior and posterior views (Fig. 7.7A, B), the greater trochanter is in line with the femoral shaft. In posterior and superior views (Fig. 7.7B, F), it overhangs a deep depression medially, the **trochanteric fossa**.

The **shaft of the femur** is slightly bowed (convex) anteriorly. This convexity may increase markedly, proceeding laterally as well as anteriorly, if the shaft is weakened by a loss of calcium, as occurs in rickets (a disease attributable to vitamin D deficiency). Most of the shaft is smoothly rounded, providing fleshy origin to extensors of the knee, except posteriorly where a broad, rough line, the **linea aspera**, provides aponeurotic attachment for adductors of the thigh. This vertical ridge is especially prominent in the middle third of the femoral shaft, where it has **medial** and **lateral lips** (margins). Superiorly, the lateral lip blends with the broad, rough **gluteal tuberosity**, and the medial lip continues as the **spiral line**.

A prominent intermediate ridge, the **pectineal line**, extends from the central part of the linea aspera to the base of the lesser trochanter. Inferiorly, the linea aspera divides into medial and lateral **supracondylar lines**, which lead to the medial and lateral femoral condyles (Fig. 7.7B).

The **medial** and **lateral femoral condyles** make up nearly the entire inferior (distal) end of the femur. The two condyles are on the same horizontal level when the bone is in the anatomical position, so that if an isolated femur is placed upright with both condyles contacting the floor or tabletop, the femoral shaft will assume the same oblique position it occupies in the living body (about 9° from vertical in males and slightly greater in females).

The femoral condyles articulate with menisci (crescentic plates of cartilage) and tibial condyles to form the knee joint (Fig. 7.4). The menisci and tibial condyles glide as a unit across the inferior and posterior aspects of the femoral condyles during flexion and extension. The convexity of the articular surface of the condyles increases as it descends the anterior surface, covering the inferior end, and then ascends posteriorly. The condyles are separated posteriorly and inferiorly by an **intercondylar fossa** but merge anteriorly, forming a shallow longitudinal depression, the **patellar surface** (Fig. 7.7), which articulates with the patella. The lateral surface of the lateral condyle has a central projection called the lateral epicondyle. The medial surface of the medial condyle has a larger and more prominent medial epicondyle, superior to which another elevation, the **adductor tubercle**, forms in relation to a tendon attachment. The epicondyles provide proximal attachment for the medial and lateral collateral ligaments of the knee joint.

SURFACE ANATOMY OF PELVIC GIRDLE AND FEMUR

Bony landmarks are helpful during physical examinations and surgery because they can be used to evaluate normal development, detect and assess fractures and dislocations, and locate the sites of structures such as nerves and blood vessels.

When your hands are on your hips, they rest on your iliac crests (Fig. 7.8A, D, E). The anterior third of the crests is easily palpated because the crests are subcutaneous. The posterior two thirds of the crests are more difficult to palpate because they are usually covered with fat. The iliac crest ends anteriorly at the rounded ASIS (anterior superior iliac spine), which is easy to palpate by tracing the iliac crest antero-inferiorly. The ASIS is often visible in thin individuals. In obese people, these spines are covered with fat and may be difficult to locate; however, they are easier to palpate when the person is sitting and the muscles attached to them are relaxed.

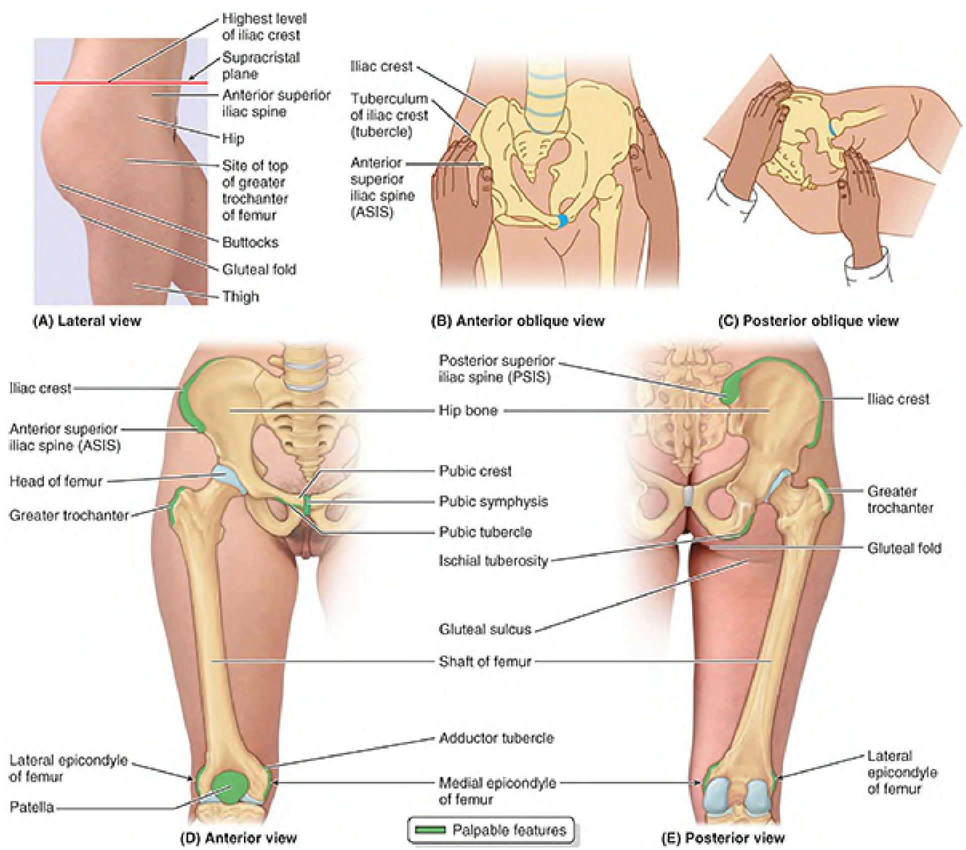


FIGURE 7.8. Surface anatomy of hip bone and femur. A. Surface landmarks. **B.** Bimanual palpation of anterior superior iliac spine. This technique is used to determine position of pelvis (pelvic tilt). **C.** Palpation of ischial tuberosity. **D and E.** Surface projection and palpable features of hip bone and femur.

The iliac tubercle, 5–6 cm posterior to the ASIS, marks the widest point of the iliac crest. To palpate this tubercle, place your thumb on the ASIS and move your fingers posteriorly along the external lip of the iliac crest (Fig. 7.8B). The iliac tubercle lies at the level of the spinous process of the L5 vertebra.

Approximately a hand's width inferior to the umbilicus, the pubic bones and pubic symphysis may be palpated (Fig. 7.8D). The pubic tubercle can be palpated about 2 cm from the pubic symphysis at the anterior extremity of the pubic crest. The iliac crest ends posteriorly at the sharp

PSIS (posterior superior iliac spine) (Fig. 7.8E), which may be difficult to palpate; however, its position is easy to locate because it lies at the bottom of a skin dimple, approximately 4 cm lateral to the midline. The dimple exists because the skin and underlying fascia attach to the PSIS. The skin dimples are useful landmarks when palpating the area of the sacro-iliac joints in search of edema (swelling) or local tenderness. These dimples also indicate the termination of the iliac crests from which bone marrow and pieces of bone for grafts can be obtained (e.g., to repair a fractured tibia).

The ischial tuberosity is easily palpated in the inferior part of the buttocks when the thigh is flexed (Fig. 7.8C). The buttocks cover and obscure the tuberosity when the thigh is extended (Fig. 7.8E). The gluteal fold coincides with the fat pad associated with the inferior border of the gluteus maximus and indicates the separation of the buttocks from the thigh.

The center of the femoral head can be palpated deep to a point approximately a thumb's breadth inferior to the midpoint of the inguinal ligament as it spans between the ASIS and pubic tubercle (Fig. 7.8D). The shaft of the femur is covered with muscles and is not usually palpable. Only the superior and inferior ends of the femur are palpable.

The laterally placed greater trochanter projects superior to the junction of the shaft with the femoral neck and can be palpated on the lateral side of the thigh approximately 10 cm inferior to the iliac crest (Fig. 7.8A, D, E). The greater trochanter forms a prominence anterior to the hollow on the lateral side of the buttocks. The prominences of the greater trochanters are normally responsible for the width of the adult pelvis. The posterior edge of the greater trochanter is relatively uncovered and most easily palpated when the limb is not weight bearing. The anterior and lateral parts of the trochanter are not easy to palpate because they are covered by fascia and muscle. Because it lies close to the skin, the greater trochanter causes discomfort when you lie on your side on a hard surface. In the anatomical position, a line joining the tips of the greater trochanters normally passes through the pubic tubercles and the center of the femoral heads. The lesser trochanter is indistinctly palpable superior to the lateral end of the gluteal fold.

The femoral condyles are subcutaneous and easily palpated when the knee is flexed or extended (Fig. 7.8D, E). At the center of the lateral aspect of each condyle is a prominent epicondyle that is easily palpable. The patellar surface of the femur is where the patella slides during flexion and extension of the leg at the knee joint. The lateral and medial margins of the patellar surface can be palpated when the leg is flexed. The adductor tubercle, a small prominence of bone, may be felt at the superior part of the medial femoral condyle by pushing your thumb inferiorly along the medial side of the thigh until it encounters the tubercle.

Patella

The **patella** (knee cap) is a large sesamoid bone that is formed in the tendon of the quadriceps femoris muscle after birth. This triangular bone, located anterior to the midcondylar region of the femur, articulates with the patellar surface of the femur (Fig. 7.9). The subcutaneous anterior surface of the patella is convex. The thick **base** (superior border) slopes infero-anteriorly and the lateral and medial **borders** converge inferiorly to form the pointed **apex**. The posterior **articular**

surface is smooth, covered with an exceptionally thick layer of articular cartilage, and is divided into narrower medial and wider lateral articular surfaces by a vertical ridge. The ridge and the balanced pull of the vastus muscles keep the patella centered in the intercondylar groove of the femur as it provides mechanical advantage to the quadriceps femoris in extending the leg at the knee.

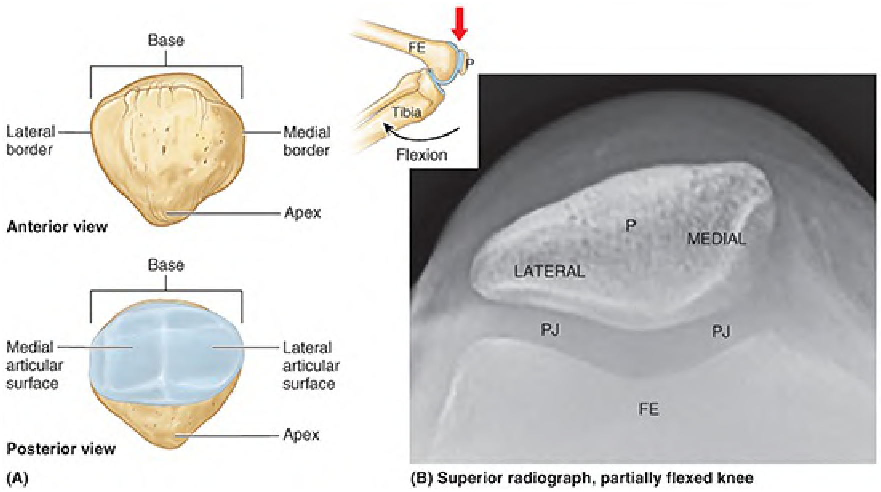


FIGURE 7.9. **Patella. A.** Surfaces. **B.** Skyline (merchant) view of partially flexed knee. P, patella; FE, femur; PJ, patellofemoral "joint space" (actually thick articular cartilage, mostly on posterior patella but also femoral condyles); red arrow, direction of beam.

Tibia and Fibula

The tibia and fibula are the bones of the leg (Fig. 7.10; see Fig. 7.4). The tibia articulates with the condyles of the femur superiorly and the talus inferiorly and in so doing transmits the body's weight. The fibula mainly functions as an attachment for muscles, but it is also important for the stability of the ankle joint. The shafts of the tibia and fibula are connected by a dense **interosseous membrane** composed of strong oblique fibers descending from the tibia to the fibula.

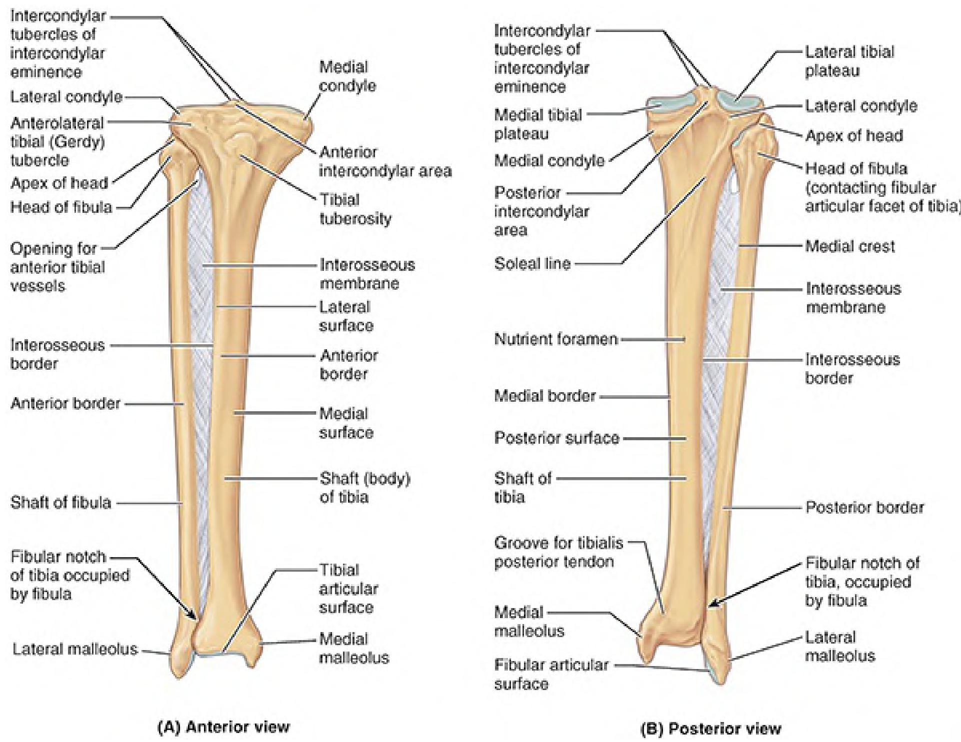


FIGURE 7.10. Features of right tibia and fibula. Tibiofibular syndesmoses, including the dense interosseous membrane, tightly connect the tibia and fibula. The interosseous membrane also provides additional surface area for muscular attachment. The anterior tibial vessels traverse the opening in the membrane to enter the anterior compartment of the leg.

TIBIA

The **tibia** (shin bone) is located on the anteromedial side of the leg, nearly parallel to the fibula. It is the second largest bone in the body. It flares outward at both ends to provide an increased area for articulation and weight transfer. The superior (proximal) end widens to form **medial** and **lateral condyles** that overhang the shaft medially, laterally, and posteriorly, forming a relatively flat **superior articular surface**, or tibial plateau. This plateau consists of two smooth articular surfaces (the medial one slightly concave and the lateral one slightly convex) that articulate with the large condyles of the femur. The articular surfaces are separated by an **intercondylar eminence** formed by two **intercondylar tubercles** (medial and lateral) flanked by relatively rough **anterior** and **posterior intercondylar areas**.

The tubercles fit into the **intercondylar fossa** between the femoral condyles (Fig. 7.7B). The intercondylar tubercles and areas provide attachment for the menisci and principal ligaments of the knee, which hold the femur and tibia together, maintaining contact between their articular surfaces.

The anterolateral aspect of the lateral tibial condyle bears an **anterolateral tibial tubercle** (Gerdy tubercle) inferior to the articular surface (Fig. 7.10A), which provides the distal attachment for a dense thickening of the fascia covering the lateral thigh, adding stability to the knee joint. The lateral condyle also bears a **fibular articular facet** posterolaterally on its inferior aspect for the head of the fibula.

Unlike that of the femur, the **shaft of the tibia** is truly vertical within the leg (Fig. 7.10, see Fig. 7.4). It is somewhat triangular in cross section, having three surfaces (medial, lateral, and posterior) and three borders (anterior, medial, and interosseous).

The **anterior border of the tibia** is the most prominent border. It and the adjacent **medial surface** are subcutaneous throughout their lengths and are commonly known as the "shin." Their periosteal covering and overlying skin are vulnerable to bruising. At the superior end of the anterior border, a broad, oblong **tibial tuberosity** provides distal attachment for the patellar ligament, which stretches between the inferior margin of the patella and the tibial tuberosity.

The tibial shaft is thinnest at the junction of its middle and distal thirds. The distal end of the tibia is smaller than the proximal end, flaring only medially. The medial expansion extends inferior to the rest of the shaft as the **medial malleolus**. The inferior surface of the shaft and the lateral surface of the medial malleolus articulate with the talus and are covered with articular cartilage (see Figs. 7.4 and 7.97A).

The **interosseous border** of the tibia is sharp where it gives attachment to the interosseous membrane that unites the two leg bones (Fig. 7.10). Inferiorly, the sharp border is replaced by a groove, the **fibular notch**, that accommodates and provides fibrous attachment to the distal end of the fibula.

On the posterior surface of the proximal part of the tibial shaft is a rough diagonal ridge, called the **soleal line**, which runs inferomedially to the medial border. This line is formed in relationship to the aponeurotic origin of the soleus muscle approximately one third of the way down the shaft. Immediately distal to the soleal line is an obliquely directed vascular groove, which leads to a large **nutrient foramen** for passage of the main artery supplying the proximal end of the bone and its marrow. From it, the nutrient canal runs inferiorly in the tibia before it opens into the medullary (marrow) cavity.

FIBULA

The slender **fibula** lies posterolateral to the tibia and is firmly attached to it by the tibiofibular syndesmosis, which includes the interosseous membrane (Fig. 7.10). The fibula has no function in weight bearing. It serves mainly for muscle attachment, providing distal attachment (insertion) for one muscle and proximal attachment (origin) for eight muscles. The fibers of the tibiofibular syndesmosis are arranged to resist the resulting net downward pull on the fibula.

The distal end enlarges and is prolonged laterally and inferiorly as the **lateral malleolus**. The malleoli form the outer walls of a rectangular socket (mortise), which is the superior component of the ankle joint (see Fig. 7.4A), and provide attachment for the ligaments that stabilize the joint. The lateral malleolus is more prominent and posterior than the medial malleolus and extends approximately 1 cm more distally.

The proximal end of the fibula consists of an enlarged **head** superior to a small **neck** (Fig. 7.10). The head has a pointed **apex** and articulates with the fibular facet on the posterolateral, inferior aspect of the lateral tibial condyle. The **shaft of the fibula** is twisted and marked by the sites of muscular attachments. Like the shaft of the tibia, it is triangular in cross section, having three borders (anterior, interosseous, and posterior) and three surfaces (medial, posterior, and

lateral).

SURFACE ANATOMY OF TIBIA AND FIBULA

The tibial tuberosity, an oval elevation on the anterior surface of the tibia, is easily palpated approximately 5 cm distal to the apex of the patella (Fig. 7.11A). The subcutaneous, flat anteromedial surface of the tibia is also easy to palpate. The skin covering this surface is freely movable. The tibial condyles can be palpated anteriorly at the sides of the patellar ligament, especially when the knee is flexed.

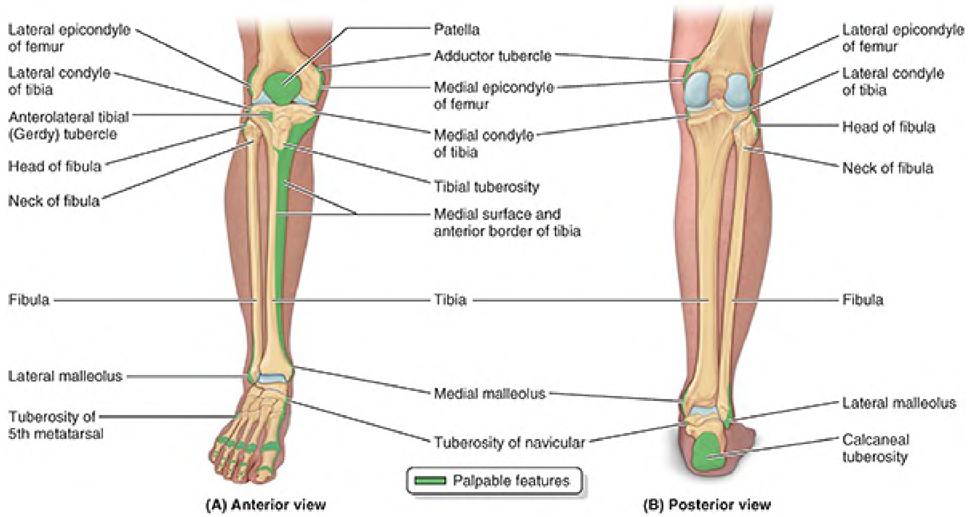


FIGURE 7.11. Surface projection and palpable features of bones of leg, ankle, and heel.

The head of the fibula is prominent at the level of the superior part of the tibial tuberosity because the knob-like head is subcutaneous at the posterolateral aspect of the knee. The neck of the fibula can be palpated just distal to the lateral side of the fibular head. Doing so may evoke a mildly unpleasant sensation because of the presence of the nerve passing there.

The medial malleolus, the prominence on the medial side of the ankle, is also subcutaneous and prominent. Note that its inferior end is blunt and does not extend as far distally as the lateral malleolus. The medial malleolus lies approximately 1.25 cm proximal to the level of the tip of the lateral malleolus (Fig. 7.11A, B).

Only the distal quarter of the shaft of the fibula is palpable. Palpate your lateral malleolus, noting that it is subcutaneous and that its inferior end is sharp. Note also that the tip of the lateral malleolus extends farther distally and more posteriorly than does the tip of the medial malleolus.

Bones of Foot

The bones of the foot include the tarsus, metatarsus, and phalanges. There are 7 tarsal bones, 5 metatarsal bones, and 14 phalanges (Fig. 7.12; see Figs. 7.1 and 7.4). Although knowledge of the characteristics of individual bones is necessary for an understanding of the structure of the foot, it is important to study the skeleton of the foot as a whole and to identify its principal bony

landmarks in the living foot (see "Surface Anatomy of Bones of Foot" and "Surface Anatomy of Ankle and Foot Regions" in this chapter).

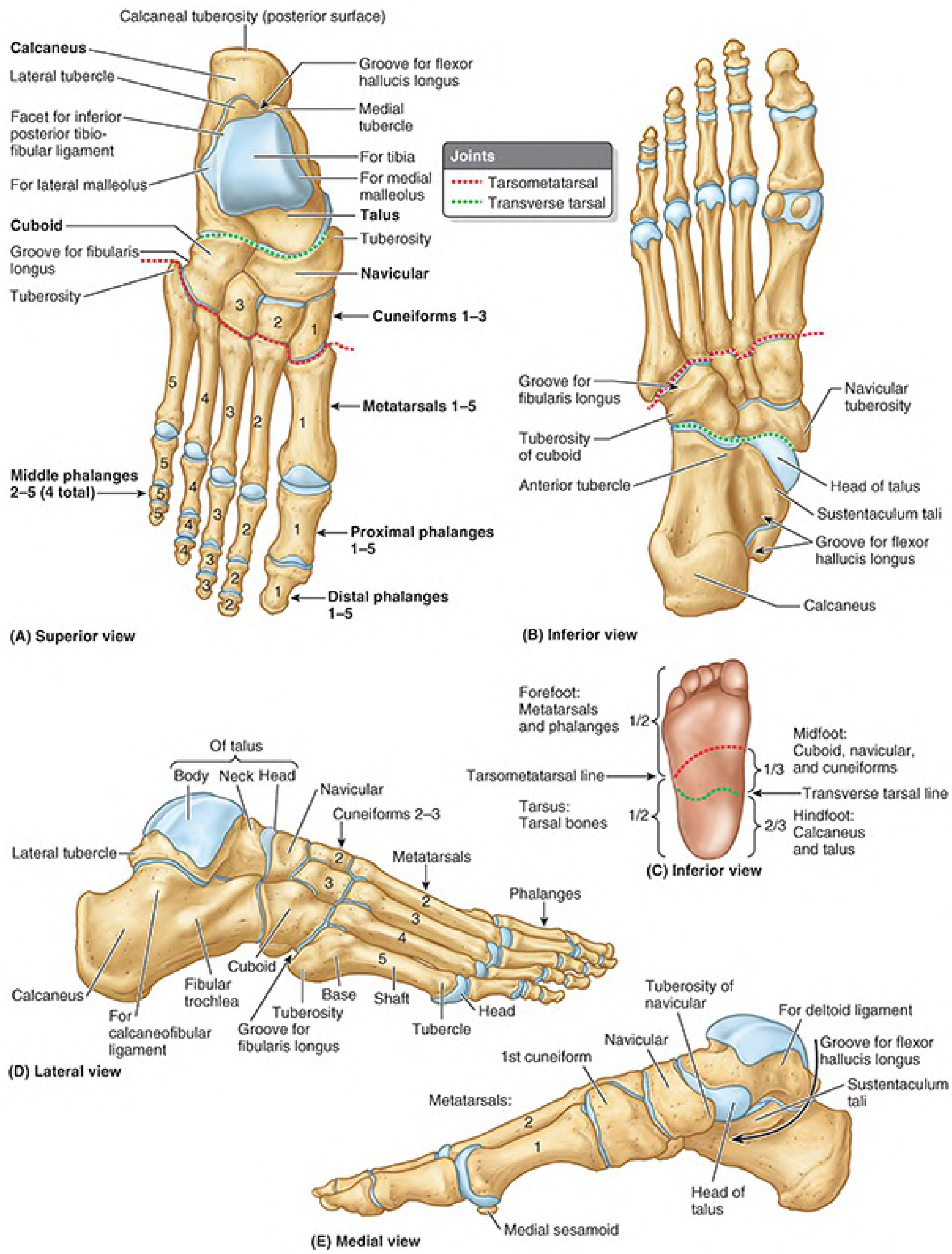


FIGURE 7.12. **Features of bones of right foot. A.** Dorsum of foot. **B.** Plantar surface of foot. **C.** Zones of foot. The seven bones of the tarsus make up the posterior half of the foot. The talus and calcaneus occupy the posterior two thirds of the tarsus, or the hindfoot, and the cuboid; navicular; and medial, lateral, and intermediate cuneiforms occupy the anterior third, or midfoot. The metatarsus connects the tarsus posteriorly with the phalanges anteriorly. Together, the metatarsus and phalanges make up the anterior half of the foot (forefoot). **D.** Lateral aspect. **E.** Medial aspect.

TARSUS

The tarsus (posterior or proximal foot; hindfoot + midfoot; Fig. 7.12C) consists of seven bones (Fig. 7.12A, B): talus, calcaneus, cuboid, navicular, and three cuneiforms. Only one bone, the

talus, articulates with the leg bones.

The **talus** (L., ankle bone) has a body, neck, and head (Fig. 7.12D). The superior surface, or **trochlea of the talus**, is gripped by the two malleoli (see Fig. 7.4) and receives the weight of the body from the tibia. The talus transmits that weight in turn, dividing it between the calcaneus, on which the **body of talus** rests, and the forefoot, via an osseoligamentous “hammock” that receives the rounded and anteromedially directed **head of talus**. The hammock (spring ligament) is suspended across a gap between a shelf-like medial projection of the calcaneus (sustentaculum tali) and the navicular bone, which lies anteriorly (Fig. 7.12B, E).

The talus is the only tarsal bone that has no muscular or tendinous attachments. Most of its surface is covered with articular cartilage. The talar body bears the trochlea superiorly and narrows into a posterior process that features a **groove for the tendon of the flexor hallucis longus** (Fig. 7.12E), flanked by a prominent **lateral tubercle** and a less prominent **medial tubercle** (Fig. 7.12A, D).

The **calcaneus** (L., heel bone) is the largest and strongest bone in the foot (Fig. 7.12). When standing, the calcaneus transmits the majority of the body’s weight from the talus to the ground. The anterior two thirds of the calcaneus’ superior surface articulates with the talus and its anterior surface articulates with the cuboid.

The lateral surface of the calcaneus has an oblique ridge (Fig. 7.12D), the **fibular trochlea**, that lies between the tendons of the fibularis longus and brevis. This trochlea anchors a tendon pulley for the evertors of the foot (muscles that move the sole of the foot away from the median plane). The **sustentaculum tali** (L., talar shelf), the shelf-like support of the head of the talus, projects from the superior border of the medial surface of the calcaneus (Fig. 7.12B, E). The posterior part of the calcaneus has a massive, weight-bearing prominence, the **calcaneal tuberosity** (L. tuber calcanei), which has **medial**, **lateral**, and **anterior tubercles**. Only the medial tubercle contacts the ground during standing.

The **navicular** (L., little ship) is a flattened, boat-shaped bone located between the head of the talus posteriorly and the three cuneiforms anteriorly (Fig. 7.12). The medial surface of the navicular projects inferiorly to form the **navicular tuberosity**, an important site for tendon attachment because the medial border of the foot does not rest on the ground, as does the lateral border. Instead, it forms a longitudinal arch of the foot, which must be supported centrally. If this tuberosity is too prominent, it may press against the medial part of the shoe and cause foot pain.

The **cuboid**, approximately cubical in shape, is the most lateral bone in the distal row of the tarsus (Fig. 7.12A, D). Anterior to the **tuberosity of the cuboid** on the lateral and inferior surfaces of the bone is a **groove for the tendon of the fibularis** (peroneus) **longus** muscle.

The three cuneiform bones (Fig. 7.12A, D, E) are the medial (1st), intermediate (2nd), and lateral (3rd). The **medial cuneiform** is the largest bone, and the **intermediate cuneiform** is the smallest. Each cuneiform (L. cuneus, wedge shaped) articulates with the navicular posteriorly and the base of its appropriate metatarsal anteriorly. The **lateral cuneiform** also articulates with the cuboid.

METATARSUS

The **metatarsus** (anterior or distal foot, forefoot; Fig. 7.12C) consists of five metatarsals that are numbered from the medial side of the foot (Fig. 7.12A). In the articulated skeleton of the foot (Fig. 7.12; see Figs. 7.1 and 7.4), the tarsometatarsal joints form an oblique **tarsometatarsal line** joining the midpoints of the medial and shorter lateral borders of the foot. Thus, the metatarsals and phalanges are located in the anterior half (forefoot) and the tarsals are in the posterior half (hindfoot) (Fig. 7.12A, C).

The **1st metatarsal** is shorter and stouter than the others. The **2nd metatarsal** is the longest. Each metatarsal has a base proximally, a shaft, and a head distally (Fig. 7.12C). The base of each metatarsal is the larger, proximal end. The bases of the metatarsals articulate with the cuneiform and cuboid bones, and the heads articulate with the proximal phalanges. The bases of the 1st and 5th metatarsals have large tuberosities that provide for tendon attachment; the **tuberosity of the 5th metatarsal** projects laterally over the cuboid (Fig. 7.12A, D). On the plantar surface of the head of the 1st metatarsal are prominent **medial** and **lateral sesamoid bones** (Figs. 7.12B, E and 7. 13B); they are embedded in the tendons passing along the plantar surface (see "Surface Anatomy of Bones of Foot" in this chapter).

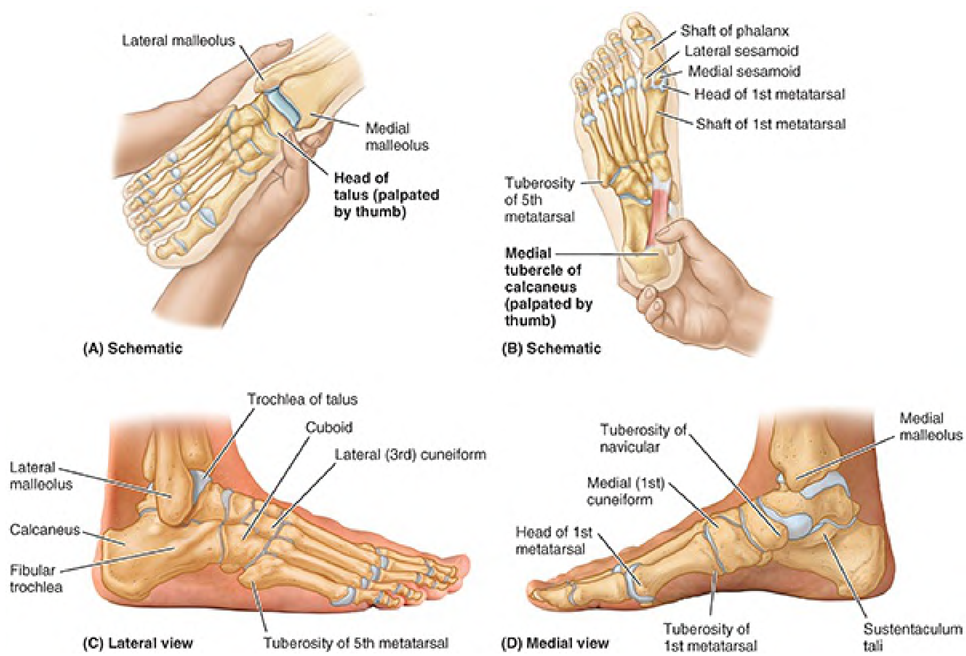


FIGURE 7.13. Surface projection and palpation of bony prominences of foot.

PHALANGES

The 14 **phalanges** of the lower limb are as follows: The 1st digit (great toe) has 2 phalanges (proximal and distal); the other four digits have 3 phalanges each: proximal, middle, and distal (Fig. 7.12A, D). Each **phalanx** has a **base** (proximally), a **shaft**, and a **head** (distally). The phalanges of the 1st digit are short, broad, and strong. The middle and distal phalanges of the 5th digit may be fused in elderly people.

SURFACE ANATOMY OF BONES OF FOOT

The head of the talus is palpable anteromedial to the proximal part of the lateral malleolus when the foot is inverted, and anterior to the medial malleolus when the foot is everted (Fig. 7.13A). Eversion of the foot makes the talar head more prominent as it moves away from the navicular. The head of the talus occupies the space between the sustentaculum tali and the navicular tuberosity. If the talar head is difficult to palpate, draw a line from the tip of the medial malleolus to the navicular tuberosity; the head of the talus lies deep to the center of this line. When the foot is plantarflexed, the superior surface of the body of the talus can be palpated on the anterior aspect of the ankle, anterior to the inferior end of the tibia.

The weight-bearing medial tubercle of the calcaneus on the plantar surface of the foot is broad and large (Fig. 7.13D), but often, it is not palpable because of the overlying skin and subcutaneous tissue. The sustentaculum tali is the only part of the medial aspect of the calcaneus that may be palpated as a small prominence approximately a finger's breadth distal to the tip of the medial malleolus (Fig. 7.13B). The entire lateral surface of the calcaneus is subcutaneous. The fibular trochlea, a small lateral extension of the calcaneus, may be detectable as a small tubercle on the lateral aspect of the calcaneus, antero-inferior to the tip of the lateral malleolus (Fig. 7.13C).

Usually, palpation of bony prominences on the plantar surface of the foot is difficult because of the thick skin, fascia, and pads of fat. The medial and lateral sesamoid bones inferior to the head of the 1st metatarsal can be felt to slide when the great toe is moved passively. The heads of the metatarsals can be palpated by placing the thumb on their plantar surfaces and the index finger on their dorsal surfaces. If callosities (calluses), thickenings of the keratin layer of the epidermis, are present, the metatarsal heads are difficult to palpate.

The tuberosity of the 5th metatarsal forms a prominent landmark on the lateral aspect of the foot (Fig. 7.13C, D) that can easily be palpated at the midpoint of the lateral border of the foot. The shafts of the metatarsals and phalanges can be felt on the dorsum of the foot between the extensor tendons.

The cuboid can be felt on the lateral aspect of the foot, posterior to the base of the 5th metatarsal. The medial (1st) cuneiform can be palpated between the tuberosity of the navicular and the base of the 1st metatarsal (Fig. 7.13B). The head of the 1st metatarsal forms a prominence on the medial aspect of the foot. The tuberosity of the navicular is easily seen and palpated on the medial aspect of the foot (Fig. 7.13B), infero-anterior to the tip of the medial malleolus. The cuboid and cuneiforms are difficult to identify individually by palpation.

CLINICAL BOX

BONES OF LOWER LIMB

Lower Limb Injuries

Knee, leg, and foot injuries are the most common lower limb injuries. Injuries to the hips

make up <3% of lower limb injuries. In general, most injuries result from acute trauma during contact sports such as hockey and football and from overuse during endurance sports such as marathon races.

Adolescents are most vulnerable to these injuries because of the demands of sports on their maturing musculoskeletal systems. The cartilaginous models of the bones in the developing lower limbs are transformed into bone by endochondral ossification (see Fig. 7.2E, F). Because the process is not completed until early adulthood, cartilaginous epiphysial plates still exist during the teenage years, when physical activity often peaks and involvement in competitive sports is most common.

The **epiphysial plates** are discs of hyaline cartilage between the metaphysis and epiphysis of a mature long bone that permit the bone to grow longer. During growth spurts, bones actually grow faster than the attached muscle. The combined stress on the epiphysial plates resulting from physical activity and rapid growth may result in irritation and injury of the plates and developing bone (osteochondrosis).

Injuries of Hip Bone

Fractures of the hip bone are referred to as pelvic fractures (see the Clinical Box “Pelvic Fractures” in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum). The term hip fracture is most commonly applied (unfortunately) to fractures of the femoral head, neck, or trochanters.

Avulsion fractures of the hip bone may occur during sports that require sudden acceleration or deceleration forces, such as sprinting or kicking in football, soccer, hurdle jumping, basketball, and martial arts (Fig. B7.1). A small part of bone with a piece of a tendon or ligament attached is “avulsed” (torn away). These fractures occur at **apophyses** (bony projections that lack secondary ossification centers). Avulsion fractures occur where muscles or ligaments are attached. Common areas for avulsion fractures of the hip bone include the anterior superior and inferior iliac spines, ischial tuberosities, and ischiopubic rami.

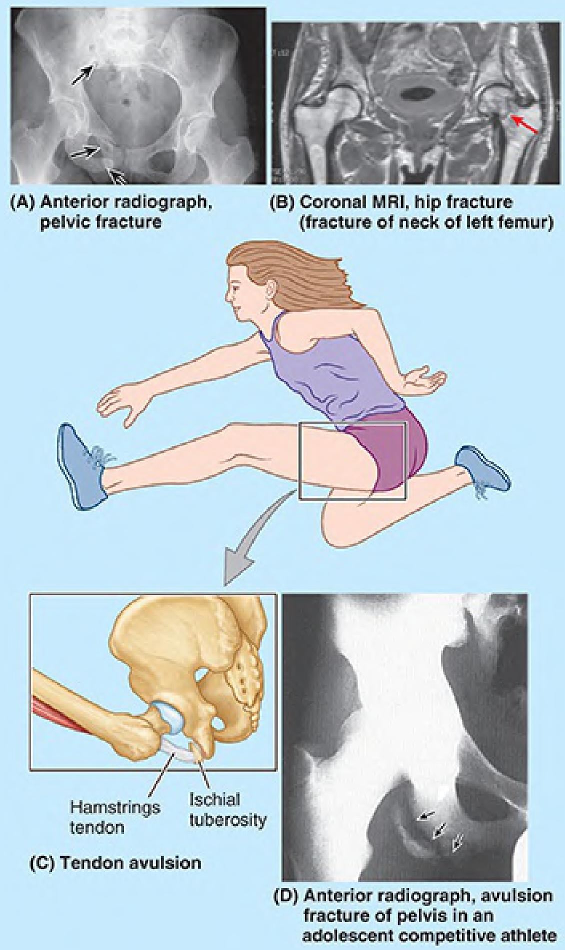


FIGURE B7.1. Pelvic and hip fractures.

Coxa Vara and Coxa Valga

The angle of inclination between the long axis of the femoral neck and the femoral shaft (see Fig. 7.7C–E) varies with age, sex, and development of the femur (e.g., a congenital defect in the ossification of the femoral neck). It may also change with any pathological process that weakens the neck of the femur (e.g., rickets). When the angle of inclination is decreased, the condition is coxa vara (Fig. B7.2A); when it is increased, it is coxa valga (Fig. B7.2B). The term “vara” or “varus” is a Latin adjective describing any bone or joint in a limb that is deformed so that the distal element (the shaft of the femur relative to the femoral neck in this case) deviates toward the midline. Conversely, the term “valga” or “valgus” describes a bone or joint in a limb that is deformed so that the distal element deviates away from the midline. Coxa vara causes a mild shortening of the lower limb and limits passive abduction of the hip.

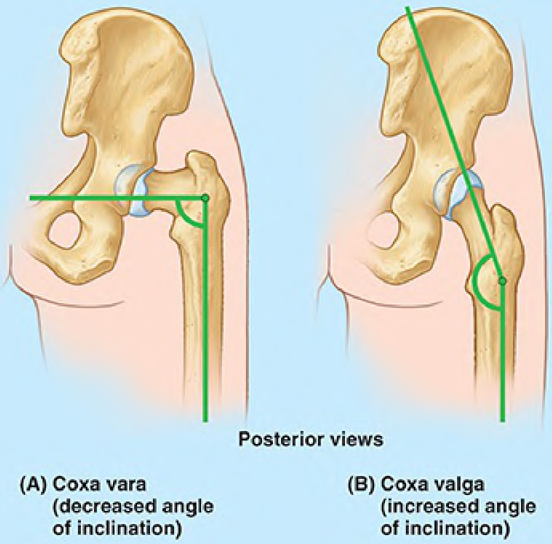


FIGURE B7.2. Coxa vara and valga.

Dislocated Epiphysis of Femoral Head

In older children and adolescents (10–17 years of age), the epiphysis of the femoral head may slip away from the femoral neck because of a weakened epiphysial plate. This injury may be caused by acute trauma or repetitive microtraumas that place increased shearing stress on the epiphysis, especially with abduction and lateral rotation of the thigh. The epiphysis often dislocates (slips), slowly resulting in a progressive coxa vara. The common initial symptom of the injury is hip discomfort that may be referred to the knee. Radiographic examination of the superior end of the femur is usually required to confirm a diagnosis of a dislocated epiphysis of the head of the femur.

Femoral Fractures

Despite its large size and strength, the femur is commonly fractured. The type of fracture sustained is frequently age and even sex related. The neck of the femur is most frequently fractured because it is the narrowest and weakest part of the bone and it lies at a marked angle to the line of weight bearing (pull of gravity). It becomes increasingly vulnerable with age, especially in females, secondary to osteoporosis.

Fractures of the proximal femur occur at several locations; two examples are transcervical (middle of neck) and intertrochanteric (Fig. B7.3). These fractures usually occur as a result of indirect trauma (stumbling or stepping down hard, as off a curb or step). Because of the angle of inclination, these fractures are inherently unstable and impaction (overriding of fragments resulting in foreshortening of the limb) occurs. Muscle spasm also contributes to the shortening of the limb.

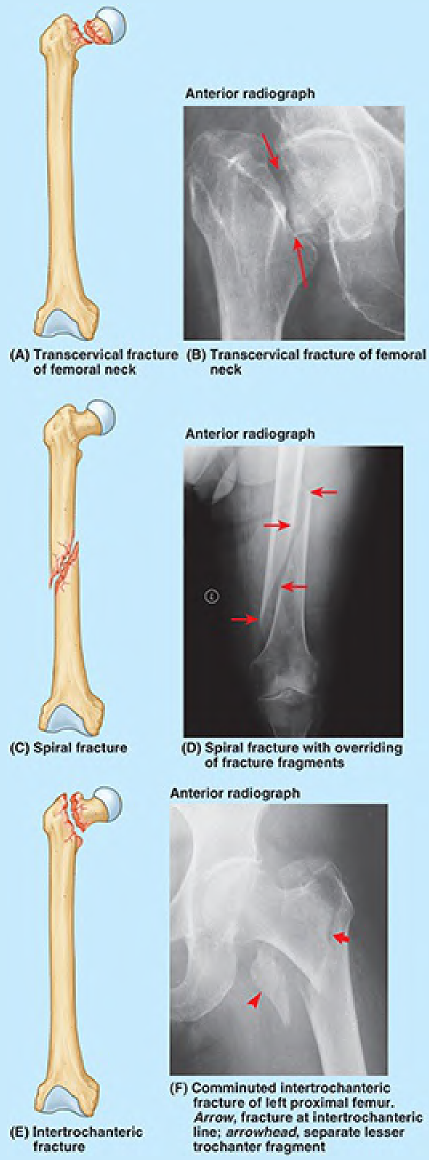


FIGURE B7.3. Fractures of femur.

Intracapsular fractures (occurring within the hip joint capsule) are complicated by degeneration of the femoral head, owing to vascular trauma (see the Clinical Boxes “Fractures of Femoral Neck” and “Surgical Hip Replacement” in this chapter).

Fractures of the greater trochanter and femoral shaft usually result from direct trauma (direct blows sustained by the bone resulting from falls or being hit) and are most common during the more active years. They frequently occur during motor vehicle accidents and sports, such as skiing and climbing. In some cases, a spiral fracture of the femoral shaft occurs, resulting in foreshortening as the fragments override, or the fracture may be comminuted (broken into several pieces), with the fragments displaced in various directions as a result of muscle pull and depending on the level of the fracture. Union of this serious type of fracture may take up to a year.

Fractures of the inferior or distal femur may be complicated by separation of the condyles, resulting in misalignment of the articular surfaces of the knee joint, or by hemorrhage from the large popliteal artery that runs directly on the posterior surface of the bone. This fracture compromises the blood supply to the leg (an occurrence that should always be considered in knee fractures or dislocations).

Tibial Fractures

The tibial shaft is narrowest at the junction of its middle and inferior thirds, which is the most frequent site of fracture. Unfortunately, this area of the bone also has the poorest blood supply. Because its anterior surface is subcutaneous, the tibial shaft is the most common site for a compound fracture (Fig. B7.4A). Compound tibial fractures may also result from direct trauma (e.g., a “bumper fracture” caused when a car bumper strikes the leg). Fracture of the tibia through the nutrient canal predisposes the patient to nonunion of the bone fragments resulting from damage to the nutrient artery.

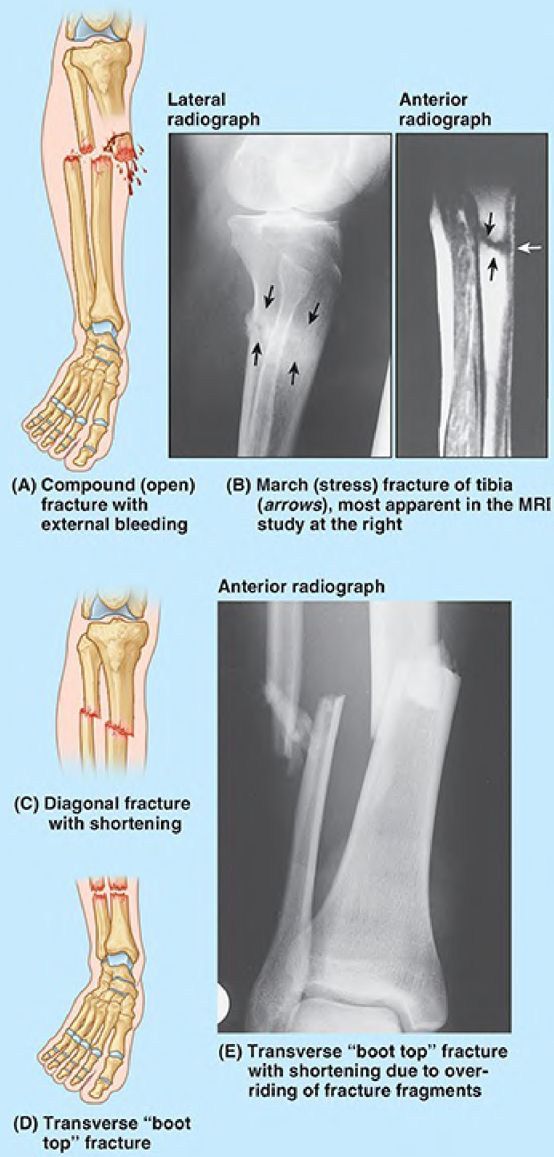


FIGURE B7.4. Fractures of tibia and fibula.

Transverse march (stress) fractures of the inferior third of the tibia (Fig. B7.4B) are common in people who take long hikes before they are conditioned for this activity. The strain may fracture the anterior cortex of the tibia. Indirect violence applied to the tibial shaft when the bone turns with the foot fixed during a fall may produce a fracture (e.g., when a person is tackled in football).

In addition, severe torsion during skiing may produce a diagonal fracture (Fig. B7.4C) of the tibial shaft at the junction of the middle and inferior thirds, as well as a fracture of the fibula. Diagonal fractures are often associated with limb shortening caused by overriding of the fractured ends. Frequently during skiing, a fracture results from a high-speed forward fall, which angles the leg over the rigid ski boot, producing a "boot-top fracture" (Fig. B7.4D, E).

Fractures Involving Epiphysial Plates

The primary ossification center for the superior end of the tibia appears shortly after birth and joins the shaft of the tibia during adolescence (usually 16–18 years of age). Tibial fractures in children are more serious if they involve the epiphysial plates because continued normal growth of the bone may be jeopardized. The tibial tuberosity usually forms by inferior bone growth from the superior epiphysial center at approximately 10 years of age, but a separate center for the tibial tuberosity may appear at approximately 12 years of age. Disruption of the epiphysial plate at the tibial tuberosity may cause inflammation of the tuberosity and chronic recurring pain during adolescence (Osgood-Schlatter disease), especially in young athletes (Fig. B7.5).

Medial radiograph

FIGURE B7.5. Osgood-Schlatter disease. Prominence of tibial tuberosity elongated and fragmented (single arrow) with overlying soft tissue swelling (double arrow).

Fibular Fractures

Fibular fractures commonly occur 2–6 cm proximal to the distal end of the lateral malleolus and are often associated with fracture–dislocations of the ankle joint, which are combined with tibial fractures (Fig. B7.6A). When a person slips and the foot is forced into an excessively inverted position, the ankle ligaments tear, forcibly tilting the talus against the lateral malleolus, and may shear it off (Fig. B7.6B).

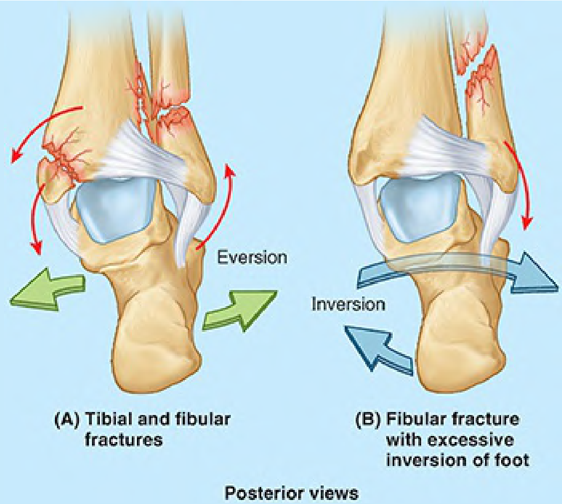


FIGURE B7.6. Fractures of medial and lateral malleoli. Red arrows, forces acting on fracturing bones.

Fractures of the lateral and medial malleoli are relatively common in soccer and basketball players. Fibular fractures can be painful owing to disrupted muscle attachments. Walking is compromised because of the bone's role in ankle stability.

Bone Grafts

If a part of a weight-bearing bone is destroyed by injury or disease, the limb becomes useless. Replacement of the affected segment by a bone transplant may avoid amputation. The fibula is a common source of bone for grafting. Even after a segment of the shaft has been removed, walking, running, and jumping can be normal.

Free vascularized fibulas have been used to restore skeletal integrity to upper and lower limbs in which congenital bone defects exist and to replace segments of bone after trauma or excision of a malignant tumor (Fig. B7.7). The remaining parts of the fibula usually do not regenerate because the periosteum and nutrient artery are generally removed with the piece of bone so that the graft will remain alive and grow when transplanted to another site. Secured in its new site, the fibular segment restores the blood supply of the bone to which it is now attached. Healing proceeds as if a fracture had occurred at each of its ends.

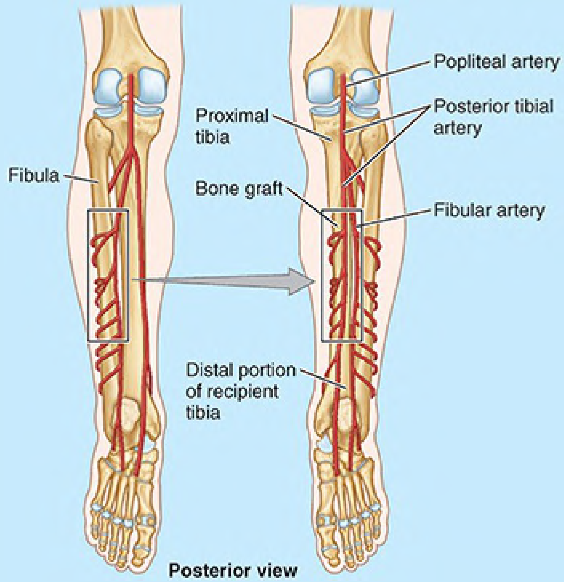


FIGURE B7.7. **Bone grafts.**

Awareness of the location of the nutrient foramen in the fibula is important when performing free vascularized fibular transfers. Because the nutrient foramen is located in the middle third of the fibula in most cases (see Fig. 7.68), this segment of the bone is used for transplanting when the graft must include a blood supply to the medullary cavity as well as to the compact bone of the surface (via the periosteum).

Because of its extensive subcutaneous location, the anterior tibia is accessible for obtaining pieces of bone for grafting in children; it is also used as a site for intraosseous infusion in dehydrated children or children with shock.

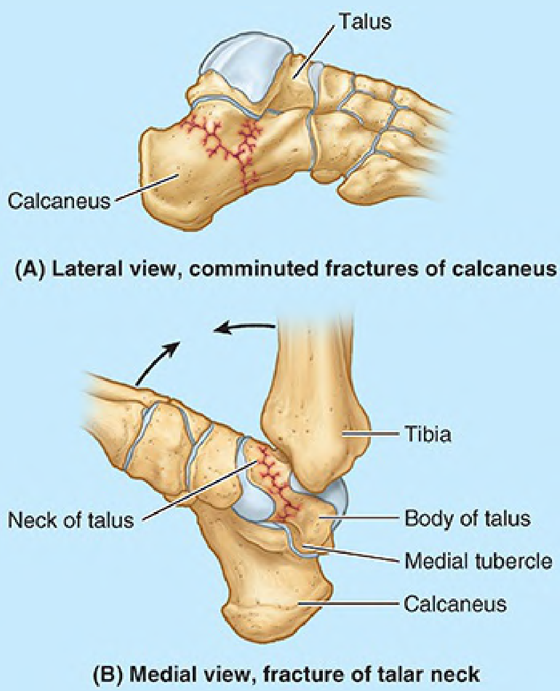
Intraosseous Infusion

Intraosseous (IO) infusion is a method of delivering hydration, blood, and medications directly into the medullary cavity of a bone when peripheral venous access is difficult or impossible. It is used primarily in cases of traumatic shock and in children with circulatory collapse. The most common site for IO infusion is the proximal tibia, due to the thinness of the skin and the existence of landmarks that aid in the correct insertion of the IO needle into the medullary cavity while avoiding the growth plate. Other sites for IO infusion include the distal femur, tibia, or fibula, proximal humerus, and the manubrium of the sternum. The needle is inserted into the flat area of bone approximately 2 cm distal and slightly medial from the tibial tuberosity (Fig. B7.8). Special needles designed for manual insertion are used; battery-powered or impact-driven devices also are available to help aid insertion. Because of the risk of osteomyelitis, IO infusion must be replaced with peripheral venous or central line access within 24 hours.

FIGURE B7.8. **Intraosseous infusion.**

Calcaneal Fractures

A hard fall onto the heel, from a ladder, for example, may fracture the calcaneus into several pieces, producing a comminuted fracture (Fig. B7.9A). A calcaneal fracture is usually disabling because it disrupts the subtalar (talocalcaneal) joint, where the talus articulates with the calcaneus.



(C) Dorsal view
Fractures of metatarsals

(D) Dorsal radiograph, fractures of 3rd–5th metatarsals

(E) Dorsal radiograph, avulsion fracture of 5th metatarsal

FIGURE B7.9. Fractures of foot bones. Black arrows, indicate dorsiflexion of ankle.

Fractures of Talar Neck

Fractures of the talar neck (Fig. B7.9B) may occur during severe dorsiflexion of the ankle (e.g., when a person is pressing extremely hard on the brake pedal of a vehicle during a head-on collision). In some cases, the body of the talus dislocates posteriorly.

Fractures of Metatarsals

Metatarsal fractures occur when a heavy object falls on the foot, for example, or when it is run over by a heavy object such as a metal wheel (Fig. B7.9C, D). Metatarsal fractures are also common in dancers, especially female ballet dancers who use the demi-pointe technique. The dancer's fracture usually occurs when the dancer loses balance, putting the full body weight on the metatarsal and fracturing the bone. Fatigue fractures of the metatarsals may result from prolonged walking. These fractures, usually transverse, result from repeated stress on the metatarsals.

When the foot is suddenly and violently inverted, the tuberosity of the 5th metatarsal may be avulsed (torn away) by the tendon of the fibularis brevis muscle. An avulsion fracture of the tuberosity of the 5th metatarsal (Fig. B7.9C, E) is common in basketball and tennis players. This injury produces pain and edema at the base of the 5th metatarsal and may be associated with a severe ankle sprain.

Os Trigonum

During ossification of the talus, the secondary ossification center, which becomes the lateral tubercle of the talus, occasionally fails to unite with the body of the talus. This failure may be caused by applied stress (forceful plantarflexion) during the early teens. Occasionally, a partly or even fully ossified center may fracture and progress to nonunion. Either event may result in a bone (accessory ossicle) known as an **os trigonum**,

which occurs in 14–25% of adults, more commonly bilaterally (Fig. B7.10). It has an increased prevalence among soccer players and ballet dancers.

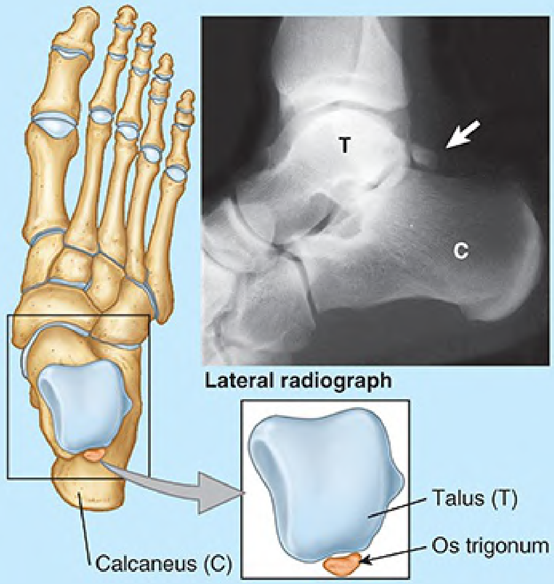


FIGURE B7.10. Os trigonum.

Fracture of Sesamoid Bones

The sesamoid bones of the great toe (see Fig. 7.13D) in the tendons of the flexor hallucis brevis bear the weight of the body, especially during the latter part of the stance phase of walking. The sesamoids develop before birth and begin to ossify during late childhood. Fracture of the sesamoid bones may result from a crushing injury (Fig. B7.11).

FIGURE B7.11. Fracture of sesamoid bones. Black arrow, fractured sesamoid bone; white arrow, normal sesamoid bone; 1–5, metatarsals.

The Bottom Line: Bones of Lower Limb

Hip bone: Formed by the union of three primary bones (ilium, ischium, and pubis), the hip bones are joined to the sacrum posteriorly and to each other anteriorly (at the pubic symphysis) to form the pelvic girdle. ■ Each hip bone is specialized to receive half the weight of the upper body when standing and all of it periodically during walking. ■ Thick parts of the bone transfer weight to the femur. ■ Thin parts of the bone provide a broad surface for attachment of powerful muscles that move the femur. ■ The pelvic girdle encircles and protects the pelvic viscera, particularly the reproductive organs.

Femur: Through development, our largest bone, the femur, has developed a bend (angle of inclination) and has twisted (medial rotation and torsion so that the knee and all joints inferior to it flex posteriorly) to accommodate our erect posture and to enable bipedal walking and running. ■ The angle of inclination and attachment of the abductors and rotators to the greater trochanter allow increased leverage, superior placement of the abductors, and oblique orientation of the femur in the thigh. ■ Combined with the torsion angle, oblique rotatory movements at the hip joint are converted into movements of flexion–extension and abduction–adduction (in the sagittal and coronal planes, respectively) as well as of rotation.

Patella: The patella is a triangular bone that articulates posteriorly with the distal femur. ■ It is a sesamoid bone in the tendon of the quadriceps femoris muscle, providing the muscle with mechanical advantage in extending the knee.

Tibia and fibula: Our second largest bone, the tibia, is a vertical column bearing the weight of all superior to it. ■ The slender fibula does not bear weight but, along with the interosseous membrane that binds it to the tibia, is accessory to the tibia in providing an additional surface area for fleshy muscle attachment and in forming the socket of the ankle joint. ■ Through development, the two bones have become permanently pronated to provide for a stable stance and facilitate locomotion.

Bones of foot: The many bones of the foot form a functional unit that allows weight to be distributed to a wide platform to maintain balance when standing, enable conformation and adjustment to terrain variations, and perform shock absorption. ■ They also transfer weight from the heel to the forefoot as required in walking and running.

FASCIA OF LOWER LIMB

Subcutaneous Tissue

The **subcutaneous tissue** (superficial fascia) lies deep to the skin (Fig. 7.14) and consists of loose connective tissue that contains a variable amount of fat, cutaneous nerves, superficial veins (great and small saphenous veins and their tributaries), lymphatic vessels, and lymph nodes.

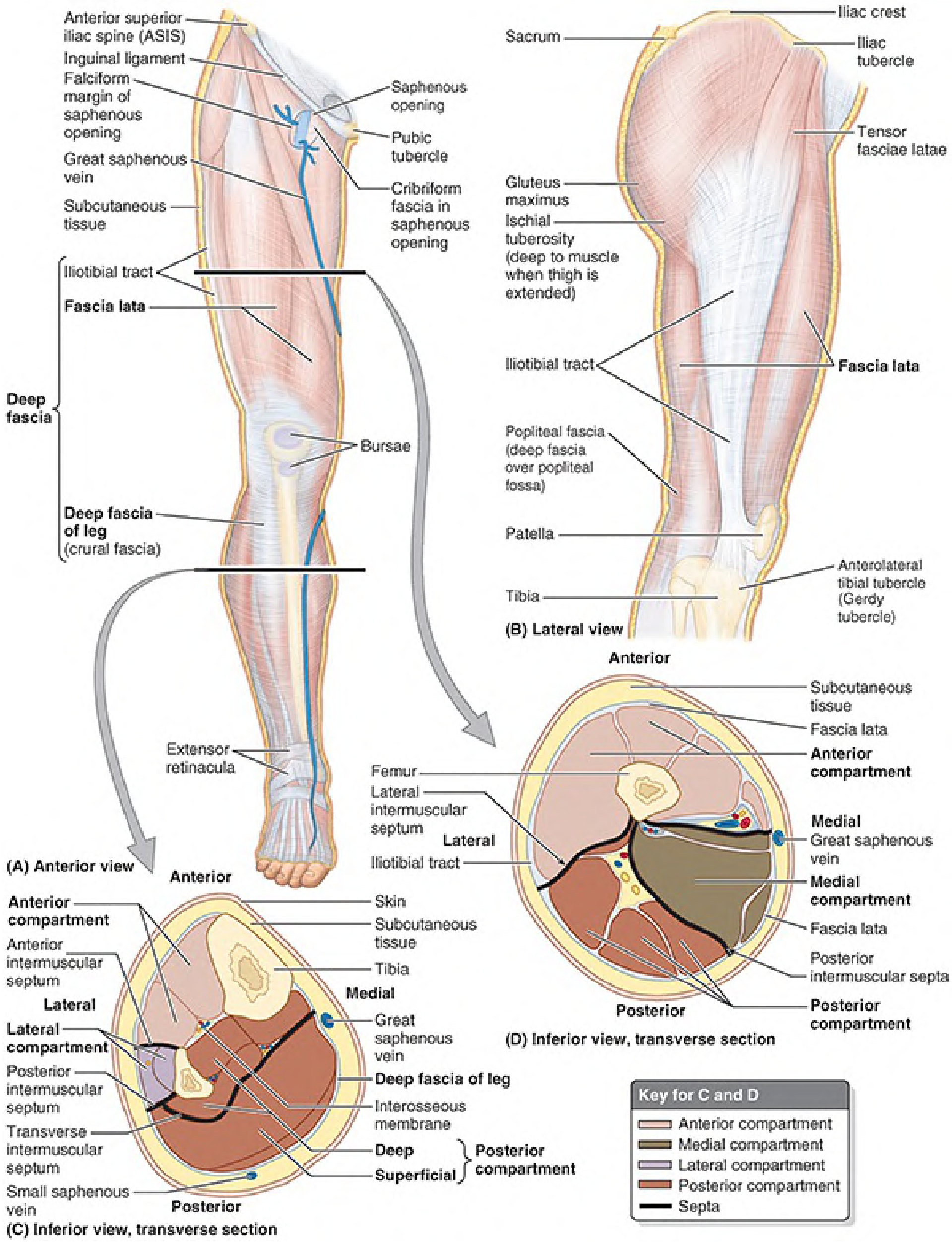


FIGURE 7.14. **Fascia, intermuscular septa, and fascial compartments of lower limb. A.** Overview. The anterior skin and subcutaneous tissue have been removed to reveal the deep fascia. **B.** Fascia lata. Fascia lata is reinforced laterally by longitudinal fibers of the iliotibial tract, the common aponeurotic tendon of the gluteus maximus and tensor fasciae latae. **C.** Fascial compartments of leg. **D.** Fascial compartments of thigh.

The subcutaneous tissue of the hip and thigh is continuous with that of the inferior part of the anterolateral abdominal wall and buttocks. At the knee, the subcutaneous tissue loses fat

anteriorly and laterally, and blends with the deep fascia, but fat is again present distal to the knee in the subcutaneous tissue of the leg.

Deep Fascia

The **deep fascia of the lower limb** is especially strong, investing the limb like an elastic stocking (Fig. 7.14A, B). This fascia limits outward expansion of contracting muscles, making muscular contraction more efficient in compressing veins to push blood toward the heart.

FASCIA LATA

The deep fascia of the thigh is called **fascia lata** (L. lata, broad). Superiorly, the fascia lata attaches to and is continuous with the

- inguinal ligament, pubic arch, body of pubis, and pubic tubercle anteriorly
- membranous layer of subcutaneous tissue (Scarpa fascia) of the inferior abdominal wall; this layer attaches to the fascia lata approximately a finger's breadth inferior to the inguinal ligament.
- iliac crest laterally and posteriorly
- sacrum, coccyx, sacrotuberous ligament, and ischial tuberosity/ischiopubic ramus posteriorly and medially

Inferiorly, the fascia lata attaches to and is continuous with

- exposed parts of bones around the knee
- the deep fascia of the leg inferior to the knee

The fascia lata is substantial because it encloses the large thigh muscles, especially laterally, where it is thickened and strengthened by additional reinforcing longitudinal fibers to form the **iliotibial tract** (Fig. 7.14B). This broad band of fibers is the shared aponeurosis of the tensor fasciae latae and gluteus maximus muscles. The iliotibial tract extends from the iliac tubercle to the **anterolateral tubercle of the tibia** (Gerdy tubercle).

The thigh muscles are separated into three compartments—anterior, medial, and posterior. The walls of these compartments are formed by the fascia lata and three fascial intermuscular septa that arise from its deep aspect and attach to the linea aspera of the femur (Fig. 7.14D). The **lateral intermuscular septum** is especially strong; the other two septa are relatively weak. The lateral intermuscular septum extends deeply from the iliotibial tract to the lateral lip of the linea aspera and lateral supracondylar line of the femur. This septum offers an internervous plane (plane between nerves) to surgeons needing wide exposure of the femur.

The **saphenous opening** in the fascia lata (Fig. 7.14A) is a gap or hiatus in the fascia lata inferior to the medial part of the inguinal ligament, approximately 4 cm inferolateral to the pubic tubercle. The saphenous opening is usually approximately 3.75 cm in length and 2.5 cm in breadth, and its long axis is vertical. The medial margin of the opening is smooth, but its superior, lateral, and inferior margins form a sharp crescentic edge, the **falciform margin**. Fibrofatty tissue, the **cribriform fascia** (L. cribrum, a sieve), is a localized membranous layer of

subcutaneous tissue that spreads over the saphenous opening, closing it. The connective tissue is pierced by numerous openings (thus its name) for the passage of efferent lymphatic vessels from the superficial inguinal lymph nodes and by the great saphenous vein and its tributaries. After passing through the saphenous opening and cribriform fascia, the great saphenous vein enters the femoral vein (Fig. 7.14A). The lymphatic vessels enter the deep inguinal lymph nodes.

DEEP FASCIA OF LEG

The **deep fascia of the leg**, or crural fascia (L. crus, leg), attaches to the anterior and medial borders of the tibia, where it is continuous with tibial periosteum. The deep fascia of the leg is thick in the proximal part of the anterior aspect of the leg, where it forms part of the proximal attachments of the underlying muscles. Although thinner distally, the deep fascia of the leg forms thickened bands both superior and anterior to the ankle joint, the **extensor retinacula** (Fig. 7.14A).

Anterior and **posterior intermuscular septa** pass from the deep surface of the lateral deep fascia of the leg and attach to the corresponding margins of the fibula. The interosseous membrane and intermuscular septa divide the leg into three compartments: anterior (dorsiflexor), lateral (fibular), and posterior (plantarflexor) (Fig. 7.14C). The posterior compartment is further subdivided by the **transverse intermuscular septum**, separating superficial and deep plantarflexor muscles.

OVERVIEW OF VESSELS AND NERVES OF LOWER LIMB

Arterial Supply of Lower Limb

The blood supply to the lower limbs begins with the two terminal branches of the common iliac arteries (Fig. 7.15A). The internal iliac artery, while largely involved in the blood supply of the pelvic viscera, sends blood to the lower limb musculature arising from the pelvic girdle, including that of the gluteal region, iliac fossa, and the most proximal part of the medial thigh (Fig. 7.15A, F). The external iliac artery becomes the femoral artery, the primary artery of the free lower limb, as it passes deep to the inguinal ligament to enter the thigh. Shortly after entering the thigh, the femoral artery gives rise to its largest branch, the deep femoral artery, which will supply the posterior and lateral aspects of most of the thigh. The femoral artery continues medial to the femur, supplying most of the medial and anterior aspects of the thigh. Proximal to the knee, it passes through an opening between attachments of the adductor magnus muscle, the adductor hiatus, and changes its name to the popliteal artery. The popliteal artery runs posterior to, and supplies the structures of, the knee joint. Upon entering the leg, the popliteal artery bifurcates into anterior and posterior tibial arteries. The anterior tibial artery passes between the bones of the leg to supply the anterior compartment of the leg and dorsum of the foot. The posterior tibial artery soon gives rise to the fibular (peroneal) artery to the lateral leg and continues in the posterior leg (Fig. 7.15F). After passing the medial malleolus, the posterior tibial artery bifurcates into the medial and lateral plantar arteries supplying the medial

and lateral aspects of the sole of the foot. Pulsation of the arteries of the lower limb may be detected during physical examination at specific sites illustrated in Figure 7.15B–E. Details concerning these arteries, their branches, and anastomoses are described within each part of the lower limb.

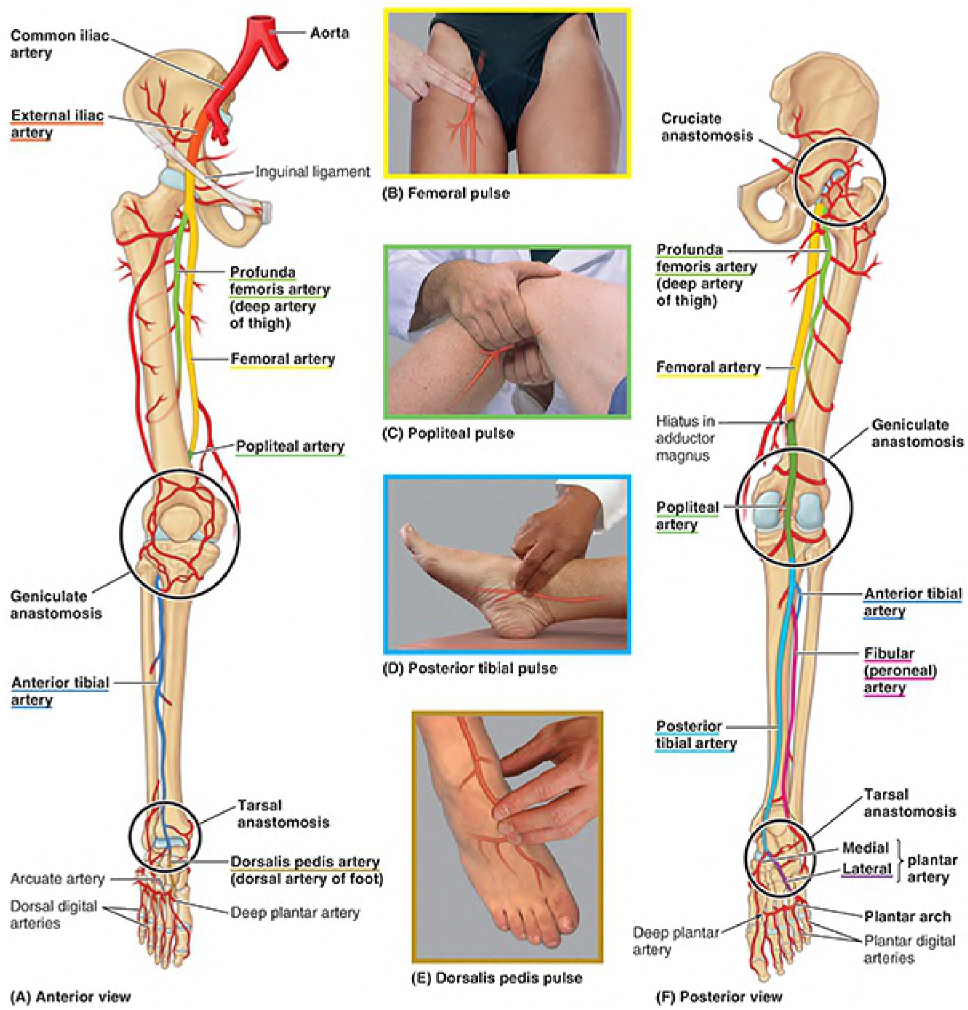


FIGURE 7.15. Arterial supply and sites for palpation of pulse in lower limb. A. Overview, anterior aspect. **B–E.** Sites for palpation of pulse. **F.** Overview, posterior aspect.

Venous Drainage of Lower Limb

The lower limb has superficial and deep veins: The superficial veins are in the subcutaneous tissue and run independent from named arteries; the deep veins are deep to (beneath) the deep fascia and accompany all major arteries. Superficial and deep veins have valves, which are more numerous in deep veins.

SUPERFICIAL VEINS OF LOWER LIMB

The two major superficial veins in the lower limb are the great and small saphenous veins (Fig. 7.16A, B). Most of their tributaries are unnamed.

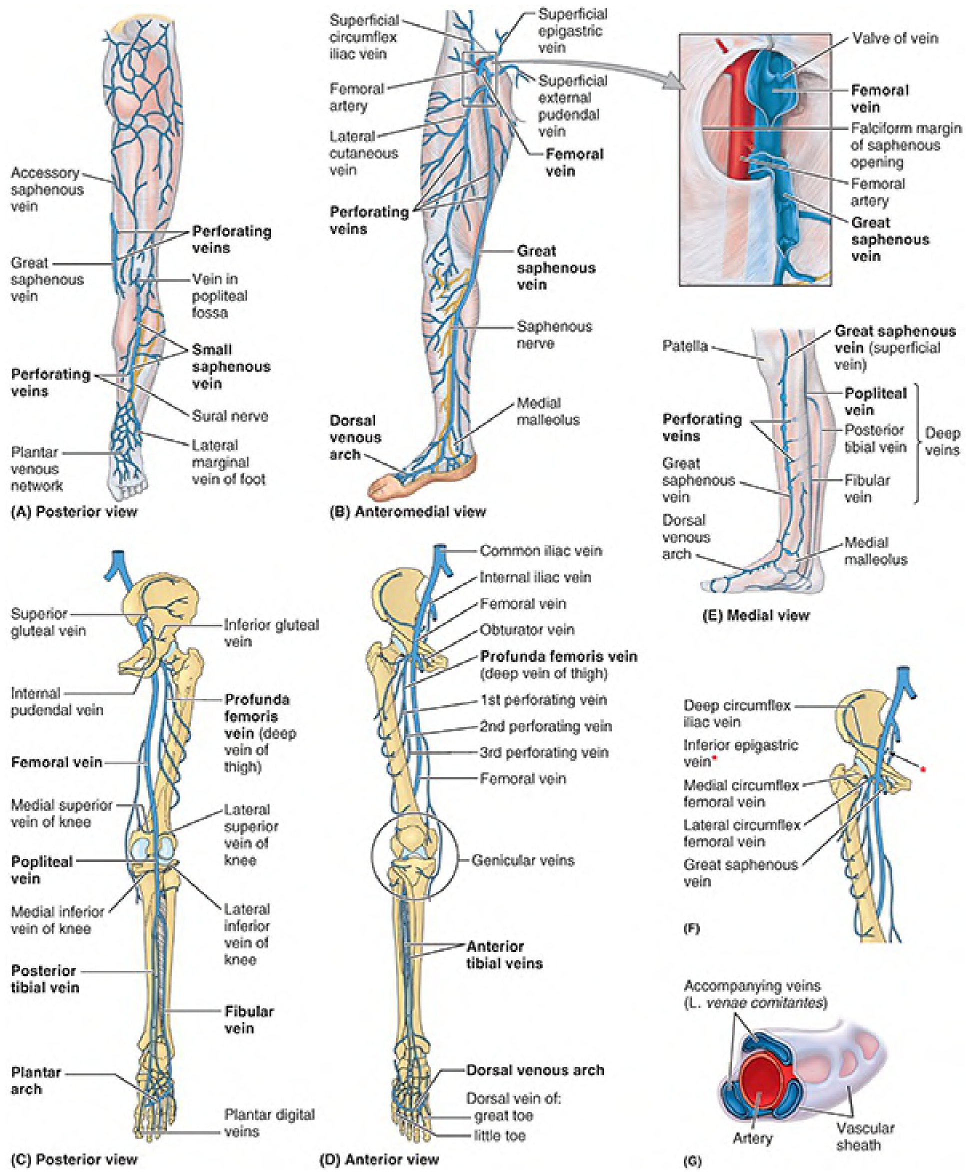


FIGURE 7.16. Veins. A and B. Superficial veins. These veins are usually unaccompanied and course within the subcutaneous tissue. **B** (inset)**.** The proximal ends of the femoral and great saphenous veins are opened and spread apart to show the valves. **C and D.** Deep veins. The deep veins are internal to the deep fascia and usually course with arteries. Although depicted as single veins here, the deep veins occur as multiple veins. **E.** Perforating veins. These veins pierce the deep fascia to shunt blood from the superficial veins to the deep veins. **F.** Deep veins of hip region. **G.** Accompanying veins. The deep veins usually occur as duplicate or multiple accompanying veins.

The **great saphenous vein** is formed by the union of the dorsal vein of the great toe and the dorsal venous arch of the foot (Figs. 7.16A and 7.17A). The great saphenous vein

- ascends anterior to the medial malleolus
- passes posterior to the medial condyle of the femur (about a hand's breadth posterior to the medial border of the patella)
- anastomoses freely with the small saphenous vein
- traverses the saphenous opening in the fascia lata

- empties into the femoral vein

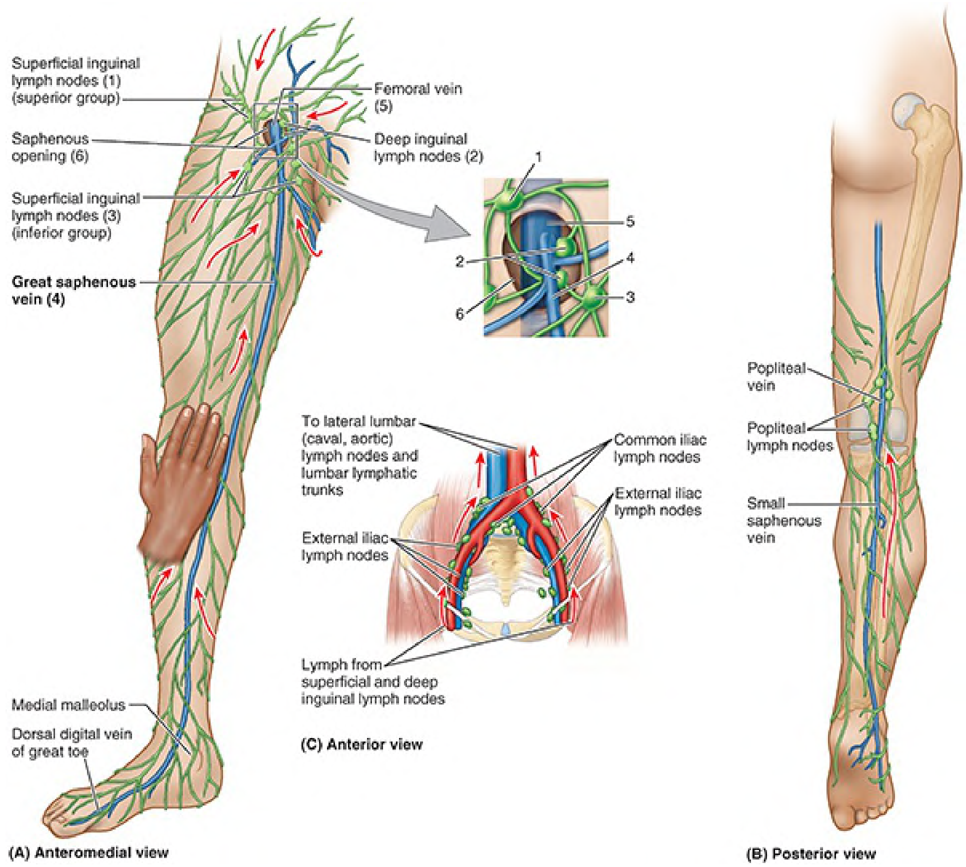


FIGURE 7.17. Superficial veins and lymphatics of lower limb. A. Anterior and medial aspects of lower limb. The superficial lymphatic vessels converge toward and accompany the great saphenous vein, draining into the inferior (vertical) group of superficial inguinal lymph nodes. The great saphenous vein passes anterior to the medial malleolus, approximately a hand's breadth posterior to the patella. **B.** Posterior aspect of lower limb. Superficial lymphatic vessels of the lateral foot and posterolateral leg accompany the small saphenous vein and drain initially into the popliteal lymph nodes. The efferent vessels from these nodes join other deep lymphatics, which accompany the femoral vessels to drain into the deep inguinal lymph nodes. **C.** Drainage of inguinal lymph nodes. Arrows represent the continuation of lymph drainage from the lower limb via the superficial inguinal and iliac nodes.

The great saphenous vein has 10–12 valves, which are more numerous in the leg than in the thigh (Fig. 7.16B, E). These valves are usually located just inferior to the perforating veins. The perforating veins also have valves.

Venous valves are cusps (flaps) of endothelium with cup-like valvular sinuses that fill from above. When they are full, the valve cusps occlude the lumen of the vein, thereby preventing reflux of blood distally, making flow unidirectional. The valvular mechanism also breaks the column of blood in the saphenous vein into shorter segments, reducing back pressure. Both effects make it easier for the musculovenous pump (discussed in Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts) to overcome the force of gravity to return the blood to the heart.

As it ascends in the leg and thigh, the great saphenous vein receives numerous tributaries and communicates in several locations with the small saphenous vein. Tributaries from the medial and posterior aspects of the thigh frequently unite to form an **accessory saphenous vein** (Fig.

7.16A). When present, this vein becomes the main communication between the great and small saphenous veins.

Also, fairly large vessels, the **lateral** and **anterior cutaneous veins**, arise from networks of veins in the inferior part of the thigh and enter the great saphenous vein superiorly, just before it enters the femoral vein. Near its termination, the great saphenous vein also receives the superficial circumflex iliac, superficial epigastric, and external pudendal veins (Fig. 7.16B).

The **small saphenous vein** arises on the lateral side of the foot from the union of the dorsal vein of the little toe with the dorsal venous arch (Fig. 7.16B, D). The small saphenous vein

- ascends posterior to the lateral malleolus as a continuation of the lateral marginal vein
- passes along the lateral border of the calcaneal tendon
- inclines to the midline of the fibula and penetrates the deep fascia
- ascends between the heads of the gastrocnemius muscle
- empties into the popliteal vein in the popliteal fossa

Although many tributaries are received by the saphenous veins, their diameters remain remarkably uniform as they ascend the limb. This is possible because the blood received by the saphenous veins is continuously shunted from these superficial veins in the subcutaneous tissue to the deep veins internal to the deep fascia by means of many perforating veins.

The **perforating veins** penetrate the deep fascia close to their origin from the superficial veins and contain valves that allow blood to flow only from the superficial veins to the deep veins (Fig. 7.16A, B, E). The perforating veins pass through the deep fascia at an oblique angle so that when muscles contract and the pressure increases inside the deep fascia, the perforating veins are compressed. Compression of these veins also prevents blood from flowing from the deep to the superficial veins. This pattern of venous blood flow—from superficial to deep—is important for proper venous return from the lower limb because it enables muscular contractions to propel blood toward the heart against gravity (**musculovenous pump**) (see Fig. 1.26 in Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts).

DEEP VEINS OF LOWER LIMB

Deep veins accompany all the major arteries and their branches (Fig. 7.16C–F). Instead of occurring as a single vein in the limbs (although they are frequently illustrated as one and are often referred to as a single vein), the **accompanying veins** (L. venae comitantes) usually occur as paired, frequently interconnecting veins that flank the artery they accompany (Fig. 7.16G). They are contained within a vascular sheath with the artery, whose pulsations also help compress and move blood in the veins.

Although the dorsal venous arch drains primarily via the saphenous veins, perforating veins penetrate the deep fascia, forming and continually supplying an **anterior tibial vein** in the anterior leg. **Medial** and **lateral plantar veins** from the plantar aspect of the foot form the **posterior tibial** and **fibular veins** posterior to the medial and lateral malleoli (Fig. 7.16C–E). All three deep veins from the leg flow into the popliteal vein posterior to the knee, which becomes the femoral vein in the thigh. Veins accompanying the perforating arteries of the profunda

femoris vein drain blood from the thigh muscles and terminate in the profunda femoris vein (deep vein of thigh), which joins the terminal portion of the femoral vein (Fig. 7.16C, D). The femoral vein passes deep to the inguinal ligament to become the external iliac vein.

Because of the effect of gravity, blood flow is slower when a person stands quietly. During exercise, blood received by the deep veins from the superficial veins is propelled by muscular contraction to the femoral and then the external iliac veins. Flow in the reverse direction is prevented if the valves are competent. The deep veins are more variable and anastomose much more frequently than the arteries they accompany. Both superficial and deep veins can be ligated if necessary.

Lymphatic Drainage of Lower Limb

The lower limb has superficial and deep lymphatic vessels. The **superficial lymphatic** vessels converge on and accompany the saphenous veins and their tributaries (Fig. 7.17A). The lymphatic vessels accompanying the great saphenous vein end in the vertical group of **superficial inguinal lymph nodes**. Most lymph from these nodes passes directly to the external iliac lymph nodes, located along the external iliac vein. Some lymph also passes to the **deep inguinal lymph nodes**, located under the deep fascia on the medial aspect of the femoral vein. The lymphatic vessels accompanying the small saphenous vein enter the **popliteal lymph nodes**, which surround the popliteal vein in the fat of the popliteal fossa (Fig. 7.17B).

Deep lymphatic vessels from the leg accompany deep veins and also enter the popliteal lymph nodes. Most lymph from these nodes ascends through deep lymphatic vessels to the deep inguinal lymph nodes. Lymph from the deep nodes passes to the external and common iliac lymph nodes and then enters the lumbar lymphatic trunks (Fig. 7.17C).

Cutaneous Innervation of Lower Limb

Cutaneous nerves in the subcutaneous tissue supply the skin of the lower limb (Fig. 7.18; Table 7.1). These nerves, except for some proximal unisegmental nerves arising from the T12 or L1 spinal nerves, are branches of the lumbar and sacral plexuses. The areas of skin supplied by the individual spinal nerves, including those contributing to the plexuses, are called dermatomes. The dermatomal (segmental) pattern of skin innervation is retained throughout life but is distorted by limb lengthening and the torsion of the limb that occurs during development (Fig. 7.19; see Fig. 7.2).

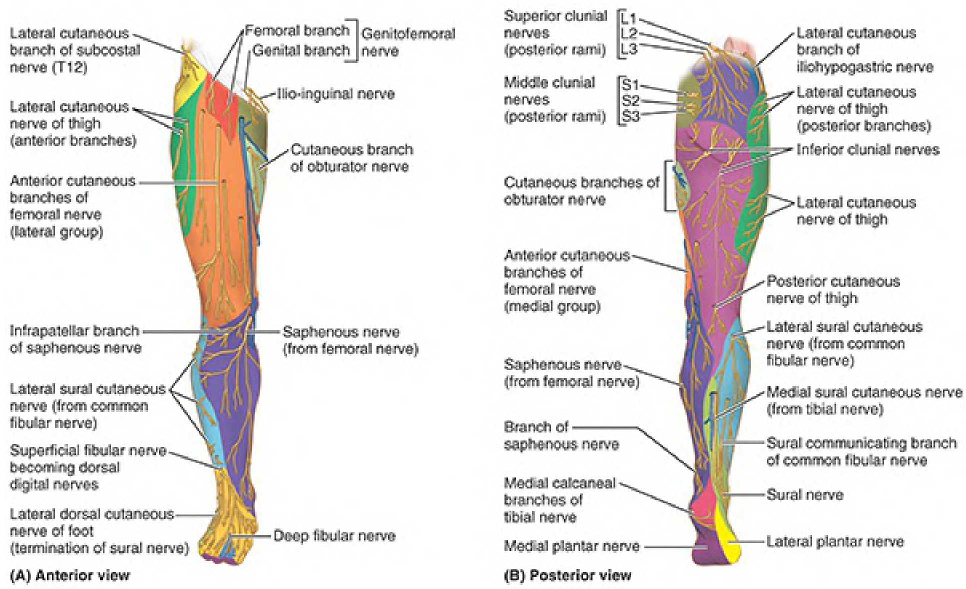


FIGURE 7.18. Cutaneous nerves of lower limb.

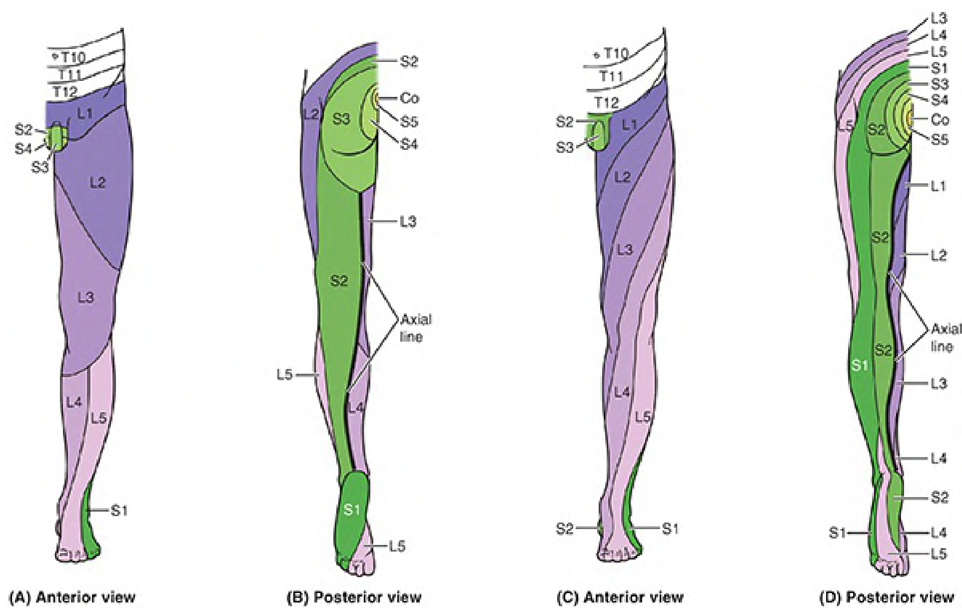


FIGURE 7.19. Dermatomes of lower limb. The dermatomal or segmental pattern of distribution of sensory nerve fibers persists despite the merging of spinal nerves in plexus formation during development. Two different dermatome maps are commonly used. **A and B.** The dermatome pattern of the lower limb according to Foerster (1933) is preferred by many because of its correlation with clinical findings. **C and D.** The dermatome pattern of the lower limb according to Keegan and Garrett (1948) is preferred by others for its aesthetic uniformity and obvious correlation with development. Although depicted as distinct zones, adjacent dermatomes overlap considerably, except along the axial line.

TABLE 7.1. CUTANEOUS NERVES OF LOWER LIMB

Nerve	Origin (Contributing Spinal Nerves)	Course	Distribution in Lower Limb
Subcostal	T12 anterior ramus	Courses along inferior border of 12th rib. Lateral cutaneous branch descends over iliac	Lateral cutaneous branch supplies skin of hip region inferior to anterior part of iliac

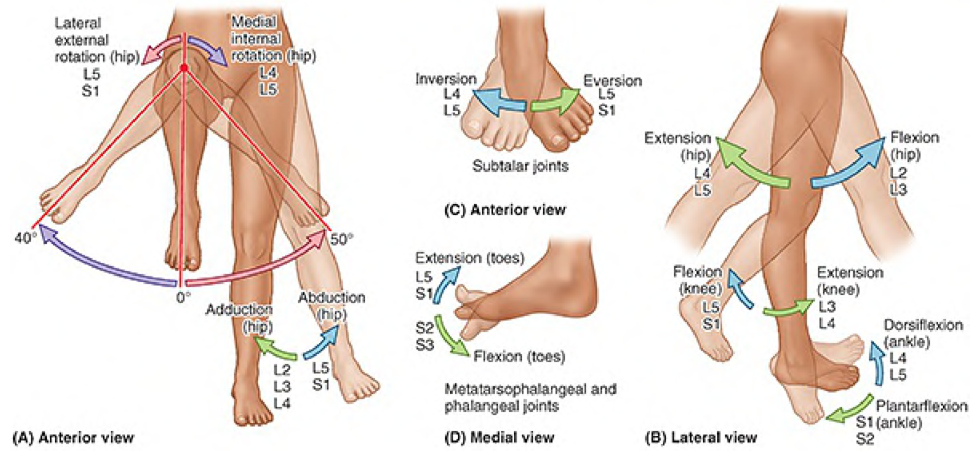
		crest.	crest and anterior to greater trochanter.
Iliohypogastric	Lumbar plexus (L1; occasionally T12)	Parallels iliac crest; divides into lateral and anterior cutaneous branches	Lateral cutaneous branch supplies superolateral quadrant of buttocks.
Ilio-inguinal	Lumbar plexus (L1; occasionally T12)	Passes through inguinal canal; divides into femoral and scrotal or labial branches	Femoral branch supplies skin over medial femoral triangle.
Genitofemoral	Lumbar plexus (L1–L2)	Descends anterior surface of psoas major; divides into genital and femoral branches	Femoral branch supplies skin over lateral part of femoral triangle; genital branch supplies anterior scrotum or labia majora.
Lateral cutaneous nerve of thigh	Lumbar plexus (L2–L3)	Passes deep to inguinal ligament, 2–3 cm medial to anterior superior iliac spine	Supplies skin on anterior and lateral aspects of thigh
Anterior cutaneous branches	Lumbar plexus via femoral nerve (L2–L4)	Arise in femoral triangle; pierce fascia lata along path of sartorius muscle	Supply skin of anterior and medial aspects of thigh
Cutaneous branch of obturator nerve	Lumbar plexus via obturator nerve, anterior branch (L2–L4)	Following its descent between adductors longus and brevis, anterior division of obturator nerve pierces fascia lata to reach skin of thigh.	Skin of middle part of medial thigh
Posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh	Sacral plexus (S1–S3)	Enters gluteal region via infrapiriform portion of greater sciatic foramen deep to gluteus maximus and then descends deep to fascia lata	Terminal branches pierce fascia lata to supply skin of posterior thigh and popliteal fossa.
Saphenous nerve	Lumbar plexus via femoral nerve (L3–L4)	Traverses adductor canal but does not pass through adductor hiatus; crossing medial side of knee deep to sartorius tendon	Skin on medial side of leg and foot
Superficial fibular nerve	Common fibular nerve (L4–S1)	Courses through lateral compartment of leg; after supplying fibular muscles, perforates deep fascia of leg	Skin of anterolateral leg and dorsum of foot, excluding web between great and 2nd toes
Deep fibular nerve	Common fibular nerve (L5)	After supplying muscles on dorsum of foot, pierces deep fascia superior to heads of 1st and 2nd metatarsals	Skin of web between great and 2nd toes
Sural nerve	Tibial and common fibular nerves (S1–S2)	Medial sural cutaneous branch of tibial nerve and sural communicating branch of fibular nerve merge at varying levels on posterior leg.	Skin of posterolateral leg and lateral margin of foot
Medial plantar nerve	Tibial nerve (L4–L5)	Passes between first and	Skin of medial side of sole,

		second layers of plantar muscles and then between medial and middle muscles of first layer	and plantar aspect, sides, and nail beds of medial 3½ toes
Lateral plantar nerve	Tibial nerve (S1–S2)	Passes between first and second layers of plantar muscles and then between middle and lateral muscles of first layer	Skin of lateral sole, and plantar aspect, sides, and nail beds of lateral 1½ toes
Calcaneal nerves	Tibial and sural nerves (S1–S2)	Lateral and medial branches of tibial and sural nerves, respectively, over calcaneal tuberosity	Skin of heel
Superior clunial nerves	L1–L3 posterior rami	Penetrate thoracodorsal fascia; course laterally and inferiorly in subcutaneous tissue	Skin overlying superior and central parts of buttocks
Middle clunial nerves	S1–S3 posterior rami	Emerge from dorsal sacral foramina; directly enter overlying subcutaneous tissue	Skin of medial buttocks and intergluteal cleft
Inferior clunial nerves	Posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh (S2–S3)	Arise deep to gluteus maximus; emerge from beneath inferior border of muscle	Skin of inferior buttocks (overlying gluteal fold)

Although simplified into distinct zones in dermatome maps, adjacent dermatomes overlap, except at the **axial line**, the line of junction of dermatomes supplied from discontinuous spinal levels. The cutaneous nerves of the lower limb are illustrated in Figure 7.18 and their origin (including contributing spinal nerves), of course, and distribution are listed in Table 7.1.

Motor Innervation of Lower Limb

Somatic motor (general somatic efferent) fibers traveling in the same mixed peripheral nerves that convey sensory fibers to the cutaneous nerves transmit impulses to the muscles of the lower limb. The unilateral embryological muscle mass receiving innervation from a single spinal cord segment or spinal nerve comprises a myotome. Lower limb muscles usually receive motor fibers from several spinal cord segments or nerves. Thus, most muscles are composed of more than one myotome, and most often, multiple spinal cord segments are involved in producing the movement of the lower limb (Fig. 7.20).



(E)

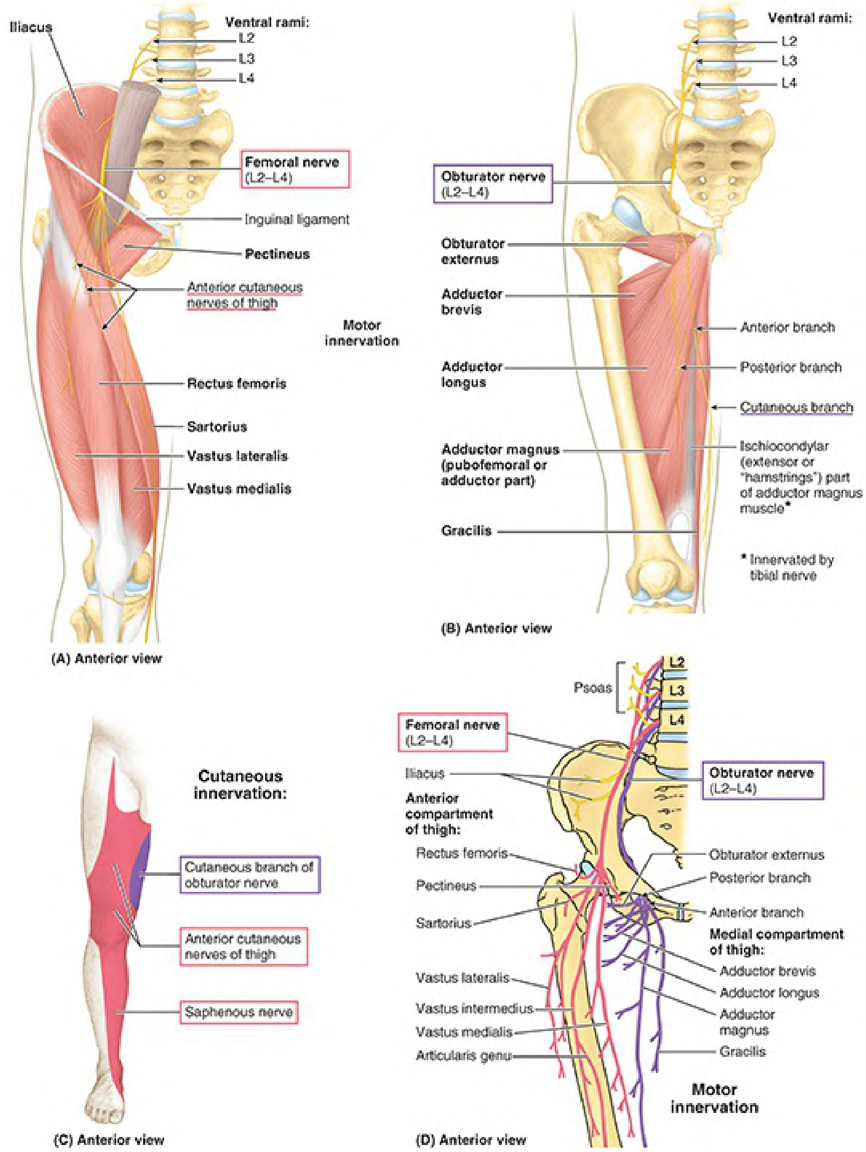
Myotatic (Deep Tendon) Reflex	Spinal Cord Segments
Quadriceps (knee jerk)	L3/L4
Calcaneal (Achilles; ankle jerk)	S1/S2

FIGURE 7.20. **Myotomes and deep tendon reflexes.** Myotomes are the segmental innervation of muscle groups and movements of lower limb. The level of spinal cord injury or nerve impingement may be determined by the strength and ability to perform particular movements.

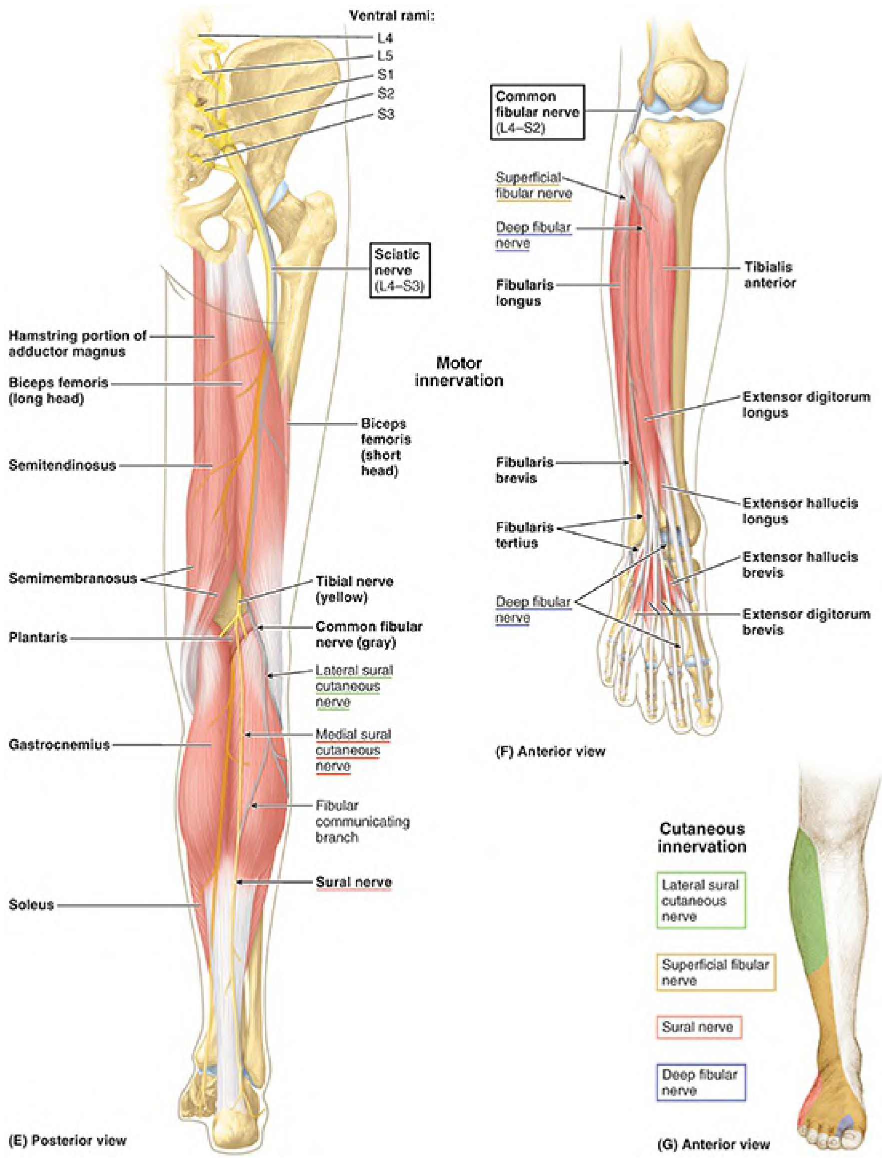
Peripheral Nerves of Lower Limb

Peripheral nerves providing sensory and motor innervation to the lower limb are the femoral and obturator nerves, arising from the lumbar plexus, and the sciatic nerve, arising as a single nerve —the largest of the body—from the sacral plexus, but having two main components, the tibial and common fibular nerves. For the main part, names of the cutaneous branches of these nerves describe their area of distribution.

The femoral nerve conveys fibers from spinal cord segments/nerves L2–L4 to flexors of the hip joint and extensors of the knee joint, located mainly in the anterior compartment of the thigh (Fig. 7.21A, D). It gives rise to multiple anterior cutaneous nerves of the thigh (Fig. 7.21C). The longest branch of the femoral nerve, the saphenous nerve, supplies skin of the anteromedial leg and medial aspect of ankle and foot.


Iliacus
Ventral rami:
L2
L3
L4
Femoral nerve
(L2–L4)
Inguinal ligament
Pectineus
Anterior cutaneous
nerves of thigh
Motor
innervation
Rectus femoris
Sartorius
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
(A) Anterior view
Ventral rami:
L2
L3
L4
Obturator nerve
(L2–L4)
Obturator
externus
Adductor
brevis
Adductor
longus
Adductor magnus
(pubofemoral or
adductor part)
Gracilis
Anterior branch
Posterior branch
Cutaneous branch
Ischiocondylar
(extensor or
"hamstrings") part
of adductor magnus
muscle*
* Innervated by
tibial nerve
(B) Anterior view
Cutaneous
innervation:
Cutaneous branch of
obturator nerve
Anterior cutaneous
nerves of thigh
Saphenous nerve
(C) Anterior view
Psoas
L2
L3
L4
Femoral nerve
(L2–L4)
Iliacus
Anterior
compartment
of thigh:
Rectus femoris
Pectineus
Sartorius
Vastus lateralis
Vastus intermedius
Vastus medialis
Articularis genu
Obturator nerve
(L2–L4)
Obturator externus
Posterior branch
Anterior branch
Medial compartment
of thigh:
Adductor brevis
Adductor longus
Adductor
magnus
Gracilis
Motor
innervation
(D) Anterior view

ALGRAWANY



Ventral rami:
L4
L5
S1
S2
S3
Sciatic nerve (L4–S3)
Hamstring portion of adductor magnus
Biceps femoris (long head)
Semitendinosus
Biceps femoris (short head)
Semimembranosus
Tibial nerve (yellow)
Plantaris
Common fibular nerve (gray)
Lateral sural cutaneous nerve
Gastrocnemius
Medial sural cutaneous nerve
Fibular communicating branch
Sural nerve
Soleus
(E) Posterior view
Motor innervation
Common fibular nerve (L4–S2)
Superficial fibular nerve
Deep fibular nerve
Fibularis longus
Tibialis anterior
Extensor digitorum longus
Fibularis brevis
Extensor hallucis longus
Fibularis tertius
Extensor hallucis brevis
Deep fibular nerve
Extensor digitorum brevis
(F) Anterior view
Cutaneous innervation
Lateral sural cutaneous nerve
Superficial fibular nerve
Sural nerve
Deep fibular nerve
(G) Anterior view

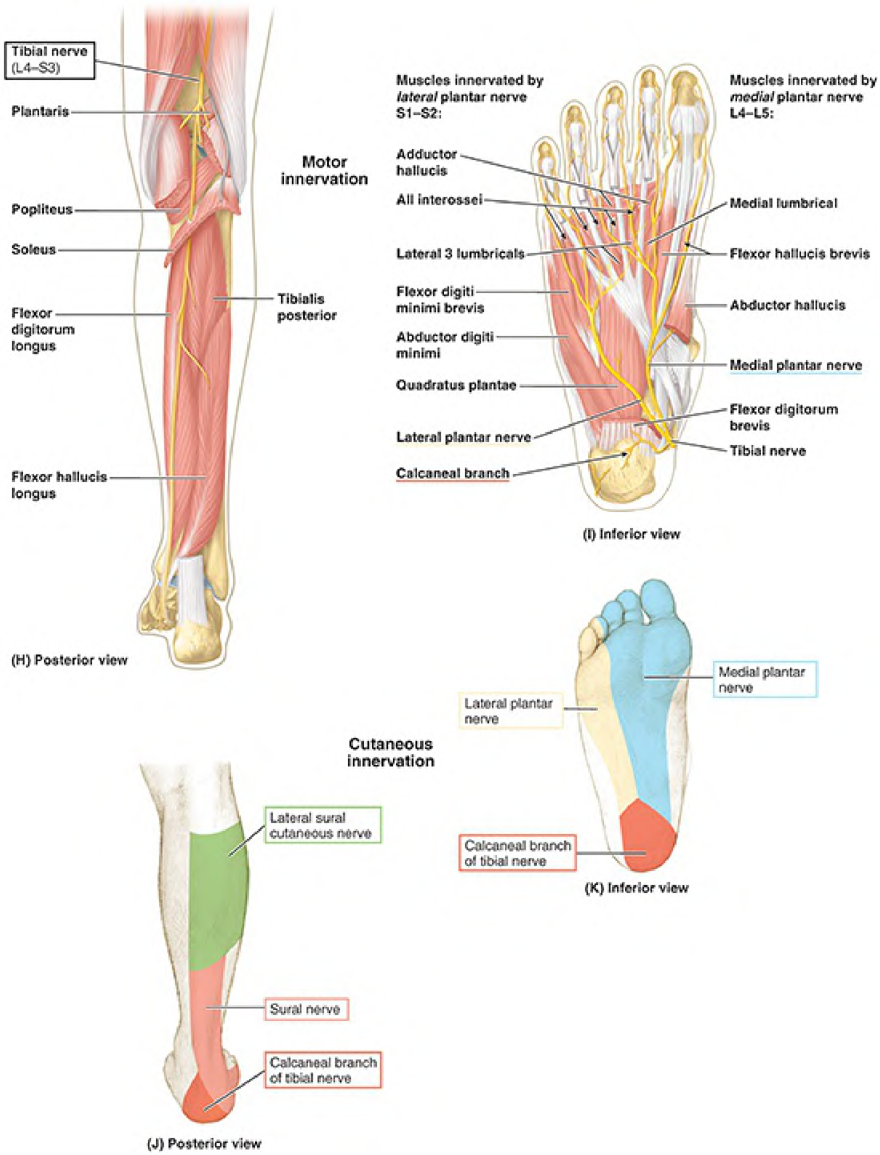


FIGURE 7.21. Overview of peripheral nerves providing cutaneous and motor innervation of lower limb. A. Motor distribution of femoral nerve. **B.** Motor distribution of obturator nerve. **C.** Cutaneous distribution of femoral and obturator nerves. **D.** Overview of motor branches of femoral and obturator nerve. **E.** Overview of sciatic nerve. **F.** Motor distribution of superficial and deep fibular nerves. **G.** Cutaneous distribution of superficial and deep fibular nerves. **H.** Motor distribution of tibial nerve. **I.** Motor innervation of medial and lateral plantar nerves. **J.** Cutaneous distribution of tibial nerve. **K.** Cutaneous distribution of medial and lateral plantar nerves.

The obturator nerve conveys fibers from the same L2–L4 spinal cord segments/nerves to adductors of the hip joint located in the medial compartment of the thigh (Fig. 7.21B, D), and a variable area of skin on the medial thigh, above the knee (Fig. 7.21C).

The sciatic nerve conveys fibers from all spinal segments/nerves contributing to the sacral plexus (L4–S3) (Fig. 7.21E). It descends in the posterior compartment of the thigh, separating into its two components proximal to the knee. Its tibial nerve component supplies the extensor of the hip joint, flexors of the knee joint (with one exception), and plantar flexors of the ankle joint located in the posterior compartments of the thigh and leg (Fig. 7.21E, H). Immediately distal to

the medial malleolus, it divides into medial and lateral plantar nerves that supply the skin and muscles of the sole of the foot (Fig. 7.21I, K). The common fibular nerve component of the sciatic nerve supplies the short head of the biceps muscle in the posterior compartment of the thigh (Fig. 7.21E). It winds around the neck of the fibula, dividing into (1) the superficial fibular nerve, supplying the evertors of the foot in the lateral compartment of the leg, and skin of the distal part of the lateral leg and the dorsum of the foot (Fig. 7.21F, G); and (2) the deep fibular nerve that supplies the dorsiflexors of the ankle joint located in the anterior compartment of the leg, the muscles of the dorsum of the foot, and the skin of the web between great and 2nd toes.

The tibial and common fibular nerves form a common cutaneous nerve, the sural nerve (Fig. 7.21E). Prior to the merging of their branches, the medial (tibial) sural nerve supplies skin of the posterior leg, the lateral (fibular) sural nerve supplies skin of the lateral leg and dorsum of foot, and the common sural nerve supplies skin of the posterior ankle region and heel of foot (Fig. 7.21E–G, J–K).

CLINICAL BOX

OVERVIEW OF VESSELS AND NERVES OF LOWER LIMB

Compartment Syndromes and Fasciotomy

The fascial compartments of the lower limbs are generally closed spaces, ending proximally and distally at the joints. Trauma to muscles and/or vessels in the compartments from burns, sustained intense use of muscles, or blunt trauma may produce hemorrhage, edema, and inflammation of the muscles. Because the septa and deep fascia of the leg forming the boundaries of the leg compartments are strong, the increased volume consequent to any of these processes increases intracompartmental pressure.

The pressure may reach levels high enough to compress structures significantly in the compartment(s) concerned. The small vessels of muscles and nerves (vasa nervorum) are particularly vulnerable to compression. Structures distal to the compressed area may become ischemic and permanently injured (e.g., loss of motor function in muscles whose blood supply and/or innervation is affected). Increased pressure in a confined anatomical space adversely affects the circulation and threatens the function and viability of tissue within or distally, constituting compartment syndromes.

Loss of distal leg pulses is an obvious sign of arterial compression, as is lowering of the temperature of tissues distal to the compression. A fasciotomy (incision of overlying fascia or a septum) may be performed to relieve the pressure in the compartment(s) concerned.

Varicose Veins, Thrombosis, and Thrombophlebitis

Frequently, the great saphenous vein and its tributaries become varicose (dilated so that the cusps of their valves do not close). Varicose veins are common in the posteromedial parts of the lower limb and may cause discomfort (Fig. B7.12A). In a healthy vein, the valves allow blood to flow toward the heart (Fig. B7.12B) while keeping blood from flowing away from the heart (Fig. B7.12C). Valves in varicose veins (Fig. B7.12D) are incompetent due to dilation or rotation and no longer function properly. As a result, blood flows inferiorly in the veins, producing varicose veins.

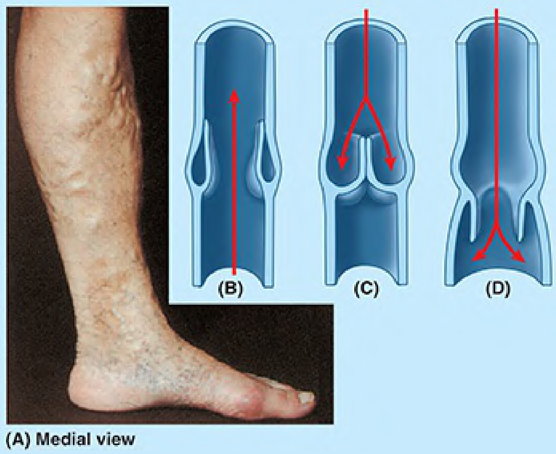


FIGURE B7.12. Varicose veins. Arrows, direction of flow.

Deep venous thrombosis (DVT) of one or more of the deep veins of the lower limb is characterized by swelling, warmth, and erythema (inflammation and infection). Venous stasis (stagnation) is an important cause of thrombus formation. Venous stasis can be caused by

- incompetent, loose fascia that fails to resist muscle expansion, diminishing the effectiveness of the musculovenous pump (see Fig. 1.26)
- external pressure on the veins from bedding during a prolonged hospital stay or from a tight cast or bandage
- muscular inactivity (e.g., during an overseas aircraft flight)

DVT with inflammation around the involved veins (thrombophlebitis) may develop. A large thrombus that breaks free from a lower limb vein may travel to a lung, forming a pulmonary thromboembolism (obstruction of a pulmonary artery). A large embolus may obstruct a main pulmonary artery and may cause death.

Saphenous Vein Grafts

The great saphenous vein is sometimes used for coronary arterial bypasses because (1) it is readily accessible, (2) a sufficient distance occurs between the tributaries and the perforating veins so that usable lengths can be harvested, and (3) its wall contains a higher percentage of muscular and elastic fibers than do other superficial veins.

Saphenous vein grafts are used to bypass obstructions in blood vessels (e.g., in an intracoronary thrombus). When part of the great saphenous vein is removed and then used for a bypass, the vein is placed in a reversed fashion, or an instrument is passed through the veins to render the valves incompetent so that the valves do not obstruct blood flow in the venous graft. Because there are so many other leg veins, removal of the great saphenous vein rarely produces a significant problem in the lower limb or seriously affects circulation, provided the deep veins are intact. In fact, removal of this vein may facilitate the superficial to deep drainage pattern to take advantage of the musculovenous pump.

Saphenous Cutdown and Saphenous Nerve Injury

Even when it is not visible in infants, in obese people, or in patients in shock whose veins are collapsed, the great saphenous vein can always be located by making a skin incision anterior to the medial malleolus (see Fig. 7.16B). This procedure, called a saphenous cutdown, is used to insert a cannula for prolonged administration of blood, plasma expanders, electrolytes, or drugs.

The saphenous nerve accompanies the great saphenous vein anterior to the medial malleolus. Should this nerve be cut during a saphenous cutdown or caught by a ligature during closure of a surgical wound, the patient may complain of pain or numbness along the medial border of the foot.

Enlarged Inguinal Lymph Nodes

Lymph nodes enlarge when diseased. Abrasions and minor sepsis, caused by pathogenic microorganisms or their toxins in the blood or other tissues, may produce moderate enlargement of the superficial inguinal lymph nodes (lymphadenopathy) in otherwise healthy people. Because these enlarged nodes are located in subcutaneous tissue, they are usually easy to palpate.

When inguinal lymph nodes are enlarged, their entire field of drainage—the trunk inferior to the umbilicus, including the perineum, as well as the entire lower limb—should be examined to determine the cause of their enlargement. In female patients, the relatively remote possibility of metastasis of cancer from the uterus should also be considered because some lymphatic drainage from the uterine fundus may flow along lymphatics accompanying the round ligament of the uterus through the inguinal canal to reach the superficial inguinal lymph nodes. All palpable lymph nodes should also be examined.

Regional Nerve Blocks of Lower Limbs

Interruption of the conduction of impulses in peripheral nerves (nerve block) may be achieved by making perineural injections of anesthetics close to the nerves whose conductivity is to be blocked.

The femoral nerve (L2–L4) can be blocked 2 cm inferior to the inguinal ligament,

approximately a finger's breadth lateral to the femoral artery. Paresthesia (tingling, burning, tickling) radiates to the knee and over the medial side of the leg if the saphenous nerve (terminal branch of femoral) is affected.

Abnormalities of Sensory Function

In most instances, a peripheral nerve sensitizing an area of skin represents more than one segment of the spinal cord. Therefore, to interpret abnormalities of peripheral sensory function, peripheral nerve distribution of the major cutaneous nerves must be interpreted as anatomically different from dermatome distribution of the spinal cord segments (see Fig. 7.19). Neighboring dermatomes may overlap.

Pain sensation is tested by using a sharp object and asking the patient if pain is felt. If there is no sensation, the spinal cord segment(s) involved can be determined.

The Bottom Line: Overview of Vessels and Nerves of Lower Limb

Fascia: The lower limb is invested by subcutaneous tissue and deep fascia. ■ The former insulates, stores fat, and provides passage for cutaneous nerves and superficial vessels (lymphatics and veins). ■ The deep fascia of the thigh (fascia lata) and leg (crural fascia) (1) surround the thigh and leg, respectively, limiting outward bulging of muscles and facilitating venous return in deep veins; (2) separate muscles with similar functions and innervation into compartments; and (3) surround individual muscles, allowing them to act independently. ■ Modifications of the deep fascia include openings that allow the passage of neurovascular structures (e.g., the saphenous opening) and thickenings that retain tendons close to the joints they act on (retinacula).

Veins: The veins of the lower limb include both superficial (in the subcutaneous tissue) and deep (internal to the deep fascia) veins. ■ The superficial great and small saphenous veins mainly drain the integument or skin and, via many perforating veins, continuously shunt blood to the deep veins accompanying the arteries. ■ Deep veins are subject to muscle compression (musculovenous pump) to aid venous return. ■ All lower limb veins have valves to overcome the effects of gravity.

Lymphatic vessels: Most lymph from the lower limb drains via lymphatics that follow the superficial veins (e.g., the saphenous veins) to the superficial inguinal nodes. ■ Some lymphatics follow deep veins to deep inguinal nodes. Lymph drainage from the lower limb then passes deep to the external and common iliac nodes of the trunk.

Cutaneous nerves: The cutaneous innervation of the lower limb reflects both the

original segmental innervation of the skin via separate spinal nerves in its dermatomal pattern and the result of plexus formation in the distribution of multisegmental peripheral nerves. ■ Most innervation of the thigh is supplied by lateral and posterior cutaneous nerves of the thigh and anterior cutaneous branches of the femoral nerve, the names of which describe their distribution. The latter branches also supply most of the medial aspect of the thigh. ■ The innervation of the leg and dorsum of the foot is supplied by saphenous (anteromedial leg), sural (posterolateral leg), and fibular nerves (anterolateral leg and dorsum of foot). ■ The plantar aspect (sole) of the foot is supplied by calcaneal branches of the tibial and sural nerves (heel region) and the medial and lateral plantar nerves; the areas of distribution of the latter are demarcated by a line bisecting the 4th toe.

POSTURE AND GAIT

The lower limbs function primarily in standing and walking. Typically, the actions of lower limb muscles are described as if the muscle were acting in isolation, which rarely occurs. In this book, including the comments in the tables, the role of each muscle (or of the functional group of which it is a member) is described in typical activities, especially standing and walking. It is important to be familiar with lower limb movements and concentric and eccentric contractions of muscles and to have a basic understanding of the processes of standing and walking. We suggest reading this section as a "preview" to provide a context for your study of individual muscles and muscle groups and then returning to this section to learn its information in depth, synthesizing it on a functional basis.

Standing at Ease

When a person is standing at ease with the feet slightly apart and rotated laterally so the toes point outward, only a few of the back and lower limb muscles are active (Fig. 7.22). The mechanical arrangement of the joints and muscles are such that a minimum of muscular activity is required to keep from falling. In the stand-easy position, the hip and knee joints are extended and are in their most stable positions (maximal contact of articular surfaces for weight transfer, with supporting ligaments taut).

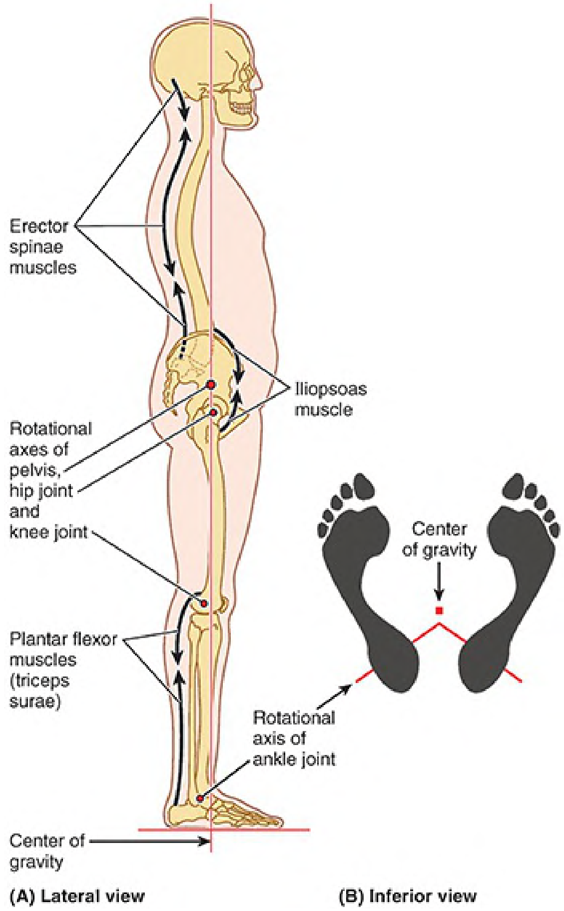


FIGURE 7.22. **Relaxed standing. A.** Alignment of body relative to center of gravity. The relationship of the line of gravity to the transverse rotational axes of the pelvis and lower limb in the relaxed standing (stand-easy) position is demonstrated. Only minor postural adjustments, mainly by the extensors of the back and the plantarflexors of the ankle, are necessary to maintain this position because the ligaments of the hip and knee are being tightly stretched to provide passive support. **B.** Bipedal platform formed by feet. A bipedal platform is formed by the feet during relaxed standing. The weight of the body is symmetrically distributed around the center of gravity, which falls in the posterior third of a median plane between the slightly parted and laterally rotated feet, anterior to the rotational axes of the ankle joints.

The ankle joint is less stable than the hip and knee joints, and the line of gravity falls between the two limbs, just anterior to the axis of rotation of the ankle joints. Consequently, a tendency to fall forward (forward sway) must be countered periodically by bilateral contraction of the calf muscles (plantarflexion). The spread or splay of the feet increases lateral stability. However, when lateral sway occurs, it is countered by the hip abductors (including tensor fasciae latae acting through the iliotibial tract). The fibular collateral ligament of the knee joint and the evertor muscles of one side act with the thigh adductors, tibial collateral ligament, and invertor muscles of the contralateral side.

Walking: Gait Cycle

Locomotion is a complex function. The movements of the lower limbs during walking on a level surface may be divided into alternating swing and stance phases, illustrated in Figure 7.23 and

described in Table 7.2. The **gait cycle** consists of one cycle of swing and stance by one limb. The **stance phase** begins with a heel strike (Fig. 7.23A), when the **heel strikes** the ground and begins to assume the body's full weight (loading response), and ends with a push off by the forefoot (Fig. 7.23G)—a result of plantarflexion. (See the Clinical Box "Absence of Plantarflexion" in this chapter.)

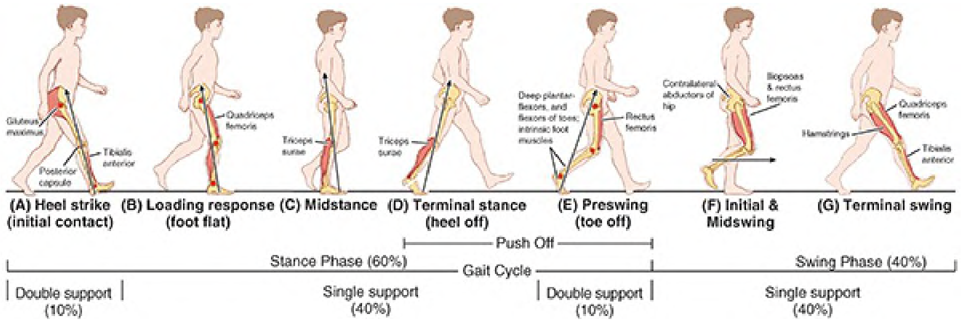


FIGURE 7.23. Gait cycle. The activity of one limb between two repeated events of walking. Eight phases are typically described, two of which have been combined in part **F** for simplification.

TABLE 7.2. MUSCLE ACTION DURING GAIT CYCLE

	Phase of Gait	Mechanical Goals	Active Muscle Groups	Examples
STANCE PHASE	**Heel strike** (initial contact)	**Lower forefoot to ground**	Ankle joint dorsiflexors (eccentric contraction)	**Tibialis anterior**
		Continue deceleration (reverse forward swing)	Hip joint extensors	Gluteus maximus
		Preserve longitudinal arch of foot	Intrinsic muscles of foot	Flexor digitorum brevis
			Long tendons of foot	Tibialis anterior
	Loading response (foot flat)	**Accept weight**	Knee joint extensors	**Quadriceps**
		Decelerate mass (slow dorsiflexion)	Ankle joint plantarflexors	Triceps surae (soleus and gastrocnemius)
		Stabilize pelvis	Hip joint abductors	**Gluteus medius and minimus; tensor fasciae latae**
		Preserve longitudinal arch of foot	Intrinsic muscles of foot	Flexor digitorum brevis
			Long tendons of foot	Tibialis posterior; long flexors of digits
	Midstance	Stabilize knee	Knee joint extensors	Quadriceps
		Control dorsiflexion (preserve momentum)	Ankle joint plantarflexors (eccentric contraction)	Triceps surae (soleus and gastrocnemius)
		Stabilize pelvis	Hip joint abductors	**Gluteus medius and minimus; tensor fasciae latae**
		Preserve longitudinal arch of foot	Intrinsic muscles of foot	Flexor digitorum brevis
			Long tendons of foot	Tibialis posterior; long

			flexors of digits
Terminal stance (heel off)	**Accelerate mass**	Ankle joint plantarflexors (concentric contraction)	**Triceps surae (soleus and gastrocnemius)**
	Stabilize pelvis	Hip joint abductors	**Gluteus medius and minimus; tensor fasciae latae**
	Preserve arches of foot; fix forefoot	Intrinsic muscles of foot	Adductor hallucis
		Long tendons of foot	Tibialis posterior; long flexors of digits
Preswing (toe off)	Accelerate mass	Long flexors of digits	Flexor hallucis longus; flexor digitorum longus
	Preserve arches of foot; fix forefoot	Intrinsic muscles of foot	Adductor hallucis
		Long tendons of foot	Tibialis posterior; long flexors of digits
	Decelerate thigh; prepare for swing	Hip joint flexors (eccentric contraction)	Iliopsoas; rectus femoris
Initial swing	**Accelerate thigh; vary cadence**	**Hip joint flexors (concentric contraction)**	**Iliopsoas; rectus femoris**
	Clear foot	**Ankle joint dorsiflexors**	**Tibialis anterior**
Midswing	**Clear foot**	**Ankle joint dorsiflexors**	**Tibialis anterior**
Terminal swing	Decelerate thigh	Hip joint extensors (eccentric contraction)	Gluteus maximus; hamstrings
	Decelerate leg	Knee joint flexors (eccentric contraction)	Hamstrings
	Position foot	**Ankle joint dorsiflexors**	Tibialis anterior
	Extend knee to place foot (control stride); prepare for contact.	**Knee joint extensors**	Quadriceps

The **swing phase** begins after push off when the toes leave the ground and ends when the heel strikes the ground. The swing phase occupies approximately 40% of the walking cycle and the stance phase, 60%. The stance phase of walking is longer than the swing phase because it begins and ends with relatively short periods (each 10% of the cycle) of double support (both feet are contacting the ground) as the weight is transferred from one side to the other, with a more extended period of single support (only one foot on the ground bearing all body weight) in between as the contralateral limb swings forward. In **running**, there is no period of double support; consequently, the time and percentage of the gait cycle represented by the stance phase are reduced.

Walking is a remarkably efficient activity, taking advantage of gravity and momentum so that a minimum of physical exertion is required. Most energy is used (1) in the eccentric contraction of the dorsiflexors during the beginning (**loading response**) phase of stance (Fig. 7.23B) as the

heel is lowered to the ground following heel strike and (2) especially at the end of stance (**terminal stance**) (Fig. 7.23D) as the plantarflexors concentrically contract, pushing the forefoot (metatarsals and phalanges) down to produce push off, thus providing most of the propulsive force.

During the last part of the stance phase (**push off** or toe off) (Fig. 7.23E), the toes flex to grip the ground and augment the push off initiated from the ball of the foot (sole underlying the heads of the medial two metatarsals). The long flexors and intrinsic muscles of the foot stabilize the forefoot and toes so that the effect of plantarflexion at the ankle and flexion of the toes is maximized.

The swing phase also involves flexion of the hip so that the free limb accelerates faster than the forward movement of the body. During **initial swing** (Fig. 7.23F), the knee flexes almost simultaneously, owing to momentum (without expenditure of energy), followed by dorsiflexion (lifting the forefoot up) at the ankle joint. The latter two movements have the effect of shortening the free limb so that it will clear the ground as it swings forward. By **midswing**, knee extension is added to the flexion and momentum of the thigh to realize anterior swing fully.

The extensors of the hip and flexors of the knee contract eccentrically at the end of swing phase (**terminal swing**) (Fig. 7.23G) to decelerate the forward movement, while extensors of the knee (quadriceps) contract as necessary to extend the leg for the desired length of stride and to position the foot (present the heel) for heel strike.

Contraction of the knee extensors is maintained through the heel strike into the loading phase to absorb shock and keep the knee from buckling until it reaches full extension. Because the unsupported side of the hip tends to drop during the swing phase (which would negate the effect of limb shortening), abductor muscles on the supported side contract strongly during the single support part of the stance phase (Fig. 7.23F, G), pulling on the fixed femur to resist the tilting and keep the pelvis level. The same muscles also rotate (advance) the contralateral side of the pelvis forward, concurrent with the swing of its free limb.

Of course, all these actions alternate from side to side with each step. The extensors of the hip normally make only minor contributions to level walking. Primarily, the hip is passively extended by momentum during stance, except when accelerating or walking fast, and becomes increasingly active with increase in slope (steepness) during walking uphill or upstairs. Concentric hip flexion and knee extension are used during the swing phase of level walking and so are not weight-bearing actions; however, they are affected by body weight when their eccentric contraction is necessary for deceleration or walking downhill or downstairs.

Stabilization and resilience are important during locomotion. The invertors and evertors of the foot are principal stabilizers of the foot during the stance phase. Their long tendons, plus those of the flexors of the digits, also help support the arches of the foot during the stance phase, assisting the intrinsic muscles of the sole.

ANTERIOR AND MEDIAL REGIONS OF THIGH

Organization of Proximal Lower Limb

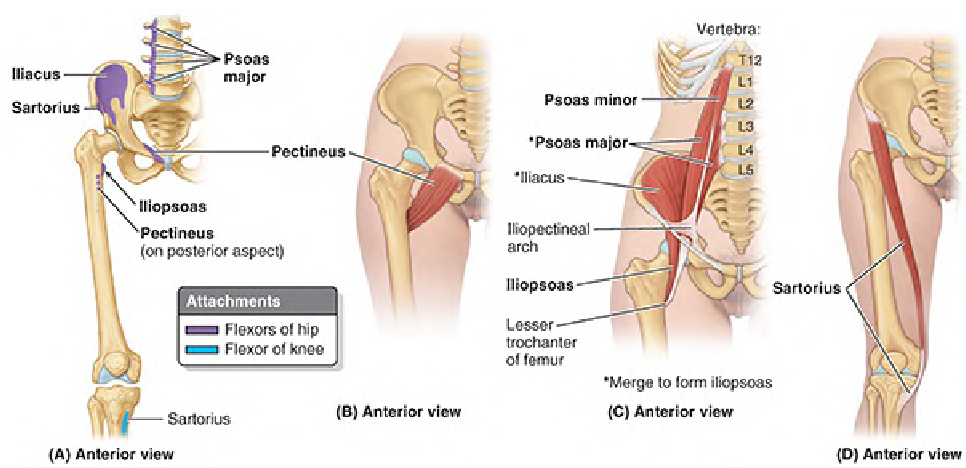
During evolution, the development of a prominent gluteal region is closely associated with the assumption of bipedalism and an erect posture. The prominent gluteal region is unique to humans. Modification of the shape of the femur necessary for bipedal walking and running (specifically the "bending" of the bone, creating the angle of inclination and the trochanters) allows the superior placement of the abductors of the thigh into the gluteal region.

The remaining thigh muscles are organized into three compartments by intermuscular septa that pass deeply between the muscle groups from the inner surface of the fascia lata to the linea aspera of the femur (see Fig. 7.14D). The compartments are anterior or extensor, medial or adductor, and posterior or flexor, so named on the basis of their location or action at the knee joint. Generally, the anterior group is innervated by the femoral nerve, the medial group by the obturator nerve, and the posterior group by the tibial portion of the sciatic nerve. Although the compartments vary in absolute and relative size depending on the level, the anterior compartment is the largest overall and includes the femur.

To facilitate continuity and follow an approach commonly used in dissection courses, the anterior and medial compartments of the thigh are addressed initially, followed by continuous examination of the posterior aspect of the proximal limb: gluteal region and posterior thigh. This approach is then continued by consideration of the popliteal fossa and leg.

Anterior Thigh Muscles

The large **anterior compartment of the thigh** contains the **anterior thigh muscles**, the flexors of the hip (Fig. 7.24A–D) and extensors of the knee (Fig. 7.24E–I). For attachments, nerve supply, and main actions of these muscles, see Tables 7.3.I and 7.3.II. The anterior thigh muscles include the pectineus, iliopsoas, sartorius, and quadriceps femoris.[1]



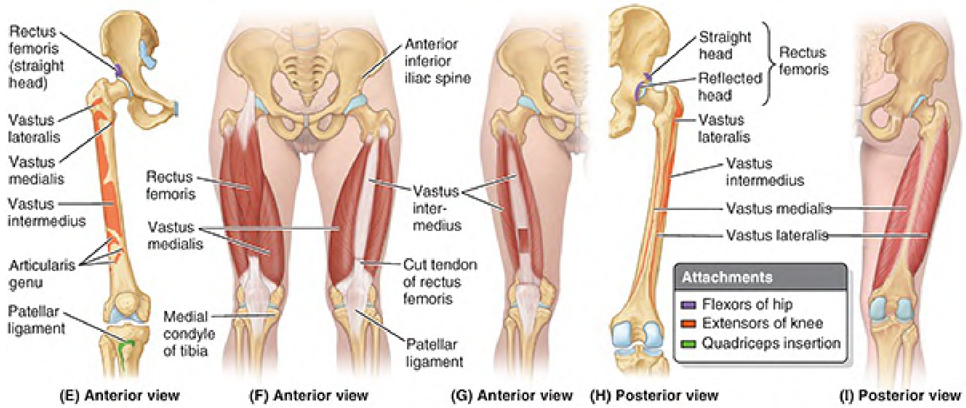


FIGURE 7.24. **Muscles of anterior thigh. A.** Attachments of flexors of hip. **B.** Pectineus. **C.** Iliopsoas. **D.** Sartorius. **E.** Anterior attachments of extensors of knee. **F.** Quadriceps femoris. **G.** Vastus intermedius. **H.** Posterior attachments of extensors of knee. **I.** Vastus medialis and lateralis.

TABLE 7.3.I. MUSCLES OF ANTERIOR THIGH ACTING AT HIP JOINT

Muscle	Proximal Attachment[a]	Distal Attachment	Innervation[b]	Main Action(s)
Pectineus	Superior ramus of pubis	Pectineal line of femur, just inferior to lesser trochanter	Femoral nerve (**L2**, L3); may receive a branch from obturator nerve	Adducts and slightly flexes hip joint; assists with lateral rotation
Iliopsoas				Act conjointly in flexion and lateral rotation of hip joint and in stabilizing this joint when standing[c]
Psoas major	Sides of T12–L5 vertebrae and discs between them; transverse processes of all lumbar vertebrae	Lesser trochanter of femur	Anterior rami of lumbar nerves (**L1**, **L2**, L3)	
Psoas minor	Sides of T12–L1 vertebrae and intervertebral discs	Pectineal line and iliopubic eminence via iliopectineal arch	Anterior rami of lumbar nerves (L1, L2)	
Iliacus	Iliac crest, iliac fossa, ala of sacrum, and anterior sacro-iliac ligaments	Tendon of psoas major, lesser trochanter, and femur distal to it	Femoral nerve (**L2**, L3)	
Sartorius	Anterior superior iliac spine and superior part of notch inferior to it	Superior part of medial surface of tibia (as part of pes anserinus)	Femoral nerve (L2, L3)	Flexes, abducts, and lateral rotates hip joint; flexes knee joint (medially rotates leg when knee joint is flexed)[d]

[a]The Latin word insertio means attachment. The terms insertion and origin (L. origo) have not been used here (or elsewhere) since they change with function.

[b]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., “L1, L2, L3” means that the nerves supplying the psoas major are derived from the first three lumbar segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (**L1**, **L2**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments, or to the motor nerve roots arising from them, results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

[c]The psoas major is also a postural muscle that helps control the deviation of the trunk and is active during standing.

[d]The four actions of the sartorius (L. sartor, tailor) produce the once common cross-legged sitting position used by tailors, hence the name.

TABLE 7.3.II. MUSCLES OF ANTERIOR THIGH ACTING AT KNEE JOINT

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action
Quadriceps femoris				
Rectus femoris	Anterior inferior iliac spine and ilium superior to acetabulum	Via common tendinous (quadriceps tendon) and independent attachments to base of patella; indirectly via patellar ligament to tibial tuberosity; medial and lateral vasti also attach to tibia and patella via aponeuroses (medial and lateral patellar retinacula).	Femoral nerve (L2, **L3**, **L4**)	Extends knee joint; rectus femoris also steadies hip joint and helps iliopsoas flex hip joint.
Vastus lateralis	Greater trochanter and lateral lip of linea aspera of femur			
Vastus medialis	Intertrochanteric line and medial lip of linea aspera of femur			
Vastus intermedius	Anterior and lateral surfaces of shaft of femur			

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., “L1, L2, L3” means that the nerves supplying the quadriceps femoris are derived from the first three lumbar segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (**L3**, **L4**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

The major muscles of the anterior compartment tend to atrophy (diminish) rapidly with disease, and physical therapy is often necessary to restore strength, tone, and symmetry with the opposite limb after immobilization of the thigh or leg.

PECTINEUS

The **pectineus** is a flat quadrangular muscle located in the anterior part of the superomedial aspect of the thigh (Fig. 7.24A, B; Table 7.3.I). It often appears to be composed of two layers, superficial and deep, and these are generally innervated by two different nerves. Because of the dual nerve supply and the muscle’s actions (the pectineus adducts and flexes the thigh and assists in medial rotation of the thigh), it is actually a transitional muscle between the anterior and medial compartments.

ILIOPSOAS

The **iliopsoas**, the chief flexor of the thigh, is the most powerful of the hip flexors with the longest range. Although it is one of the body’s most powerful muscles, it is relatively hidden, with most of its mass located in the posterior wall of the abdomen and greater pelvis. Its broad lateral part, the **iliacus**, and its long medial part, the **psoas major**, arise from the iliac fossa and lumbar vertebrae, respectively (Fig. 7.24C; Table 7.3.I). Thus, it is the only muscle attached to the vertebral column, pelvis, and femur. It is in a unique position not only to produce movement but also to stabilize (fixate). However, it can also perpetuate and even contribute to deformity and disability when it is malformed (especially if it is shortened), dysfunctional, or diseased.

Concentric contraction of the iliopsoas typically moves the free limb, producing flexion at the

hip to lift the limb and initiate its forward swing during walking (i.e., during the preswing and initial swing phases) as the opposite limb accepts weight (Fig. 7.23E, F) or to elevate the limb during climbing. However, it is also capable of moving the trunk. Bilateral contraction of the iliopsoas muscles initiates flexion of the trunk at the hip on the fixed thigh—as when (incorrectly) doing sit-ups—and decreases the lumbar lordosis (curvature) of the vertebral column. It is active during walking downhill, its eccentric contraction resisting acceleration.

The iliopsoas is also a postural muscle, active during standing in maintaining normal lumbar lordosis (and indirectly the compensatory thoracic kyphosis; see Chapter 2, Back) and resisting hyperextension of the hip joint (Fig. 7.22).

SARTORIUS

The **sartorius**, the "tailor's muscle" (L. sartus, patched or repaired), is long and ribbon-like. It passes lateral to medial across the supero-anterior part of the thigh (Fig. 7.24D; Table 7.3.I). The sartorius lies superficially in the anterior compartment, within its own relatively distinct fascial sheath. It descends inferiorly as far as the medial side of the knee.

The sartorius, the longest muscle in the body, acts across two joints. It flexes the hip joint and participates in flexion of the knee joint. It also weakly abducts the thigh and laterally rotates it. The actions of both sartorius muscles bring the lower limbs into the cross-legged sitting position. None of the actions of the sartorius is strong; therefore, it is mainly a synergist, acting with other thigh muscles that produce these movements.

QUADRICEPS FEMORIS

The **quadriceps femoris** (L., four-headed femoral muscle) forms the main bulk of the anterior thigh muscles and collectively constitutes the largest and one of the most powerful muscles in the body. It covers almost all the anterior aspect and sides of the femur (Fig. 7.24E–I). The quadriceps femoris (usually shortened to quadriceps) consists of four parts: (1) rectus femoris, (2) vastus lateralis, (3) vastus intermedius, and (4) vastus medialis. Collectively, the quadriceps is a two-joint muscle capable of producing action at both the hip and knee.

The quadriceps is the great extensor of the leg. Concentric contraction of the quadriceps to extend the knee against gravity is important during rising from sitting or squatting, during climbing and walking upstairs, and for acceleration and projection (running and jumping) when it is lifting or moving the body's weight. Consequently, it may be three times stronger than its antagonistic muscle group, the hamstrings.

In level walking, the quadriceps muscles become active during the termination of the swing phase, preparing the knee to accept weight (Fig. 7.23G; Table 7.2). The quadriceps is primarily responsible for absorbing the jarring shock of heel strike, and its activity continues as the weight is assumed during the early stance phase (loading response). It also functions as a fixator during bent-knee sports, such as skiing and tennis, and contracts eccentrically during downhill walking and descending stairs.

The tendons of the four parts of the quadriceps unite in the distal portion of the thigh to form a single, strong, broad **quadriceps tendon** (Fig. 7.24F). The **patellar ligament** (L. ligamentum

patellae) is the continuation of the quadriceps tendon in which the patella, the largest sesamoid bone in the body, is embedded. Distally, the patellar ligament is attached to the tibial tuberosity.

The medial and lateral vasti muscles also attach independently to the patella and form aponeuroses, the **medial** and **lateral patellar retinacula**, which reinforce the joint capsule of the knee joint on each side of the patella en route to attachment to the anterior border of the tibial plateau. The retinacula also play a role in keeping the patella aligned over the patellar surface of the femur.

The **patella** provides a bony surface that is able to withstand the compression placed on the quadriceps tendon during kneeling and the friction occurring when the knee is flexed and extended during running. The patella also provides additional leverage for the quadriceps in placing the tendon more anteriorly, farther from the joint's axis, causing it to approach the tibia from a position of greater mechanical advantage. The inferiorly directed apex of the patella indicates the level of the joint plane of the knee when the leg is extended and the patellar ligament is taut (Fig. 7.25C).

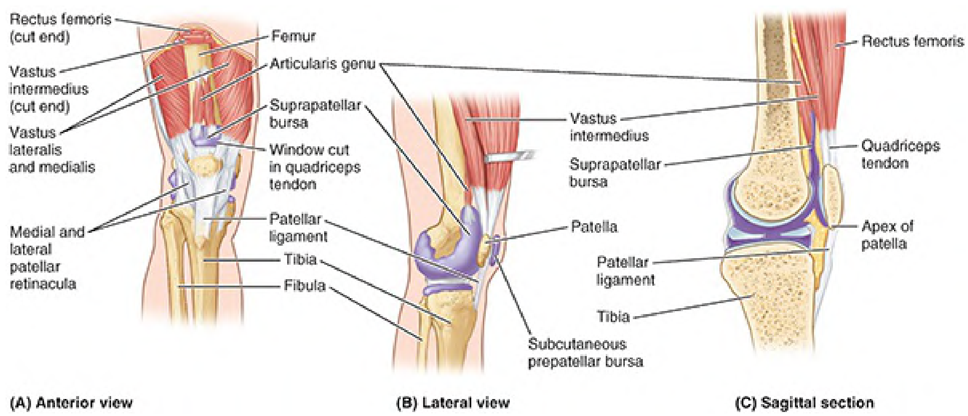


FIGURE 7.25. Suprapatellar bursa and articularis genu. The suprapatellar bursa is normally a potential space between the quadriceps muscles and femur. In this figure, the space is exaggerated as if latex were injected into the knee joint.

Testing the quadriceps[2] is performed with the person in the supine position with the knee partly flexed. The person extends the knee against resistance. During the test, contraction of the rectus femoris should be observable and palpable if the muscle is acting normally, indicating that its nerve supply is intact.

Rectus Femoris. The **rectus femoris** received its name because it runs straight down the thigh (L. rectus, straight). Because of its attachments to the hip bone and tibia (via the patellar ligament) (Fig. 7.24E, F), it crosses two joints; hence, it is capable of flexing the thigh at the hip joint and extending the leg at the knee joint. The rectus femoris is the only part of the quadriceps that crosses the hip joint, and as a hip flexor, it acts with and like the iliopsoas during the preswing and initial swing phases of walking (Fig. 7.24F; Table 7.2).

The ability of the rectus femoris to extend the knee is compromised during hip flexion, but it does contribute to the extension force during the toe off phase of walking, when the thigh is extended. It is particularly efficient in movements combining knee extension and hip flexion

from a position of hip hyperextension and knee flexion, as in the preparatory position for kicking a soccer ball. The rectus femoris is susceptible to injury and avulsion from the anterior inferior iliac spine during kicking, hence the name “kicking muscle.” A loss of function of the rectus femoris may reduce thigh flexion strength by as much as 17%.

Vastus Muscles. The names of the three large **vastus muscles** (pl., vasti) indicate their position around the femoral shaft (Fig. 7.24E–I; Table 7.3.II):

- **Vastus lateralis**, the largest component of the quadriceps, lies on the lateral side of the thigh.
- **Vastus medialis** covers the medial side of the thigh.
- **Vastus intermedius** lies deep to the rectus femoris, between the vastus medialis and vastus lateralis.

It is difficult to isolate the function of the three vastus muscles.

The small, flat **articularis genu** (articular muscle of the knee), a derivative of the vastus intermedius, usually consists of a variable number of muscular slips that attach superiorly onto the inferior part of the anterior aspect of the femur and inferiorly onto the synovial membrane of the knee joint and the wall of the suprapatellar bursa (Figs. 7.24E and 7.25). The articularis genu muscle pulls the synovial membrane superiorly during extension of the leg, thereby preventing folds of the membrane from being compressed between the femur and the patella within the knee joint.

Medial Thigh Muscles

The muscles of the medial compartment of the thigh comprise the **adductor group**, consisting of the adductor longus, adductor brevis, adductor magnus, gracilis, and obturator externus (Fig. 7.26). In general, they attach proximally to the antero-inferior external surface of the bony pelvis (pubic bone, ischiopubic ramus, and ischial tuberosity), and adjacent obturator membrane, and distally to the linea aspera of the femur (Fig. 7.26A; Table 7.4).

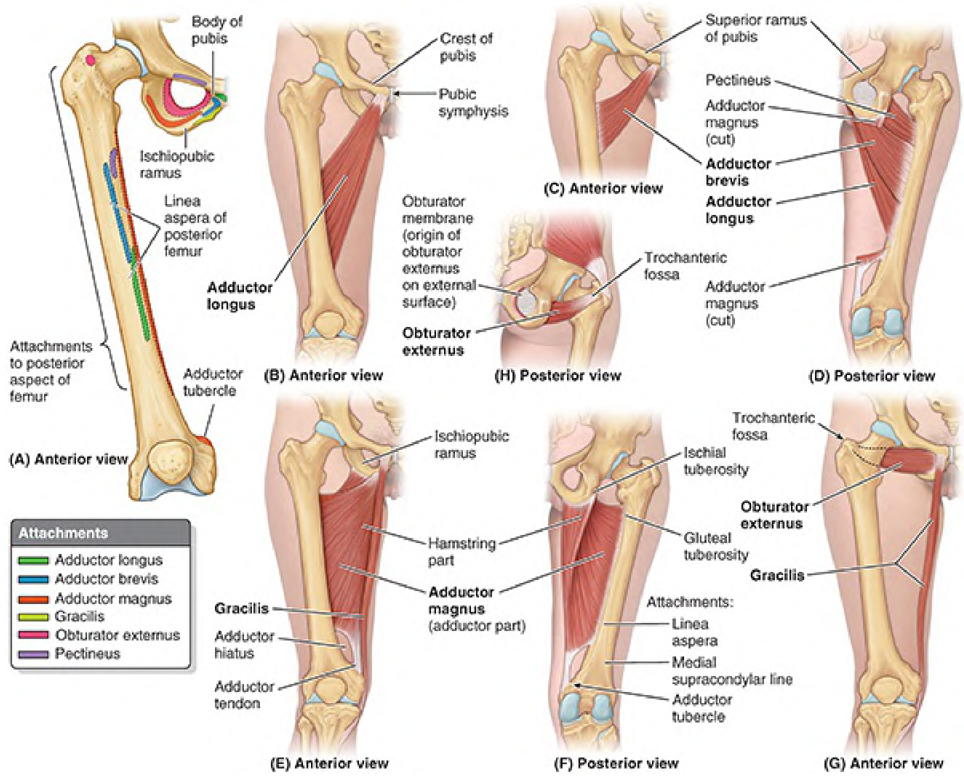


FIGURE 7.26. Muscles of medial thigh. A. Attachments. **B.** Adductor longus. **C.** Adductor brevis. **D.** Adductors longus and brevis. **E and F.** Adductor magnus. **G.** Gracilis and obturator externus.

TABLE 7.4. MUSCLES OF MEDIAL THIGH

Muscle[a]	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[b]	Main Action
Adductor longus	Body of pubis inferior to pubic crest	Middle third of linea aspera of femur	Obturator nerve and branch of anterior division (L2, **L3**, L4)	Adducts hip joint
Adductor brevis	Body and inferior ramus of pubis	Pectineal line and proximal part of linea aspera of femur		Adducts hip joint and, to some extent, flexes it
Adductor magnus	Adductor part: inferior ramus of pubis and ramus of ischium Hamstring part: ischial tuberosity	Adductor part: gluteal tuberosity, linea aspera, and medial supracondylar line Hamstring part: adductor tubercle of femur	Adductor part: obturator nerve (L2, **L3**, **L4**) and branches of posterior division Hamstring part: tibial part of sciatic nerve (**L4**)	Adducts hip joint Adductor part: flexes hip joint Hamstring part: extends hip joint
Gracilis	Body and inferior ramus of pubis	Superior part of medial surface of tibia (as part of pes anserinus)	Obturator nerve (**L2**, L3)	Adducts hip joint; flexes knee joint, medially rotating it when flexed
Obturator externus	Margins of obturator foramen and obturator membrane	Trochanteric fossa of femur	Obturator nerve (L3, **L4**)	Laterally rotates hip joint; stabilizes hip joint

[a]Collectively, the four of five muscles listed are the adductors of the thigh, but their actions are more complex (e.g., they act as flexors of the hip joint during flexion of the knee joint and are active during walking); see the "Posture and Gait" section in this chapter.

[b]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "L2, L3, L4" means that the nerves supplying the adductor longus are derived from the second to fourth lumbar segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (**L3**) indicate the main segmental innervation.

All adductor muscles, except the "hamstring part" of the adductor magnus and part of the pectineus, are supplied by the obturator nerve (L2–L4). The hamstring part of the adductor magnus is supplied by the tibial part of the sciatic nerve (L4). The details of their attachments, nerve supply, and actions of the muscles are provided in Table 7.4.

ADDUCTOR LONGUS

The **adductor longus** is a large, fan-shaped muscle and is the most anteriorly placed of the adductor group. The triangular long adductor arises by a strong tendon from the anterior aspect of the body of the pubis, just inferior to the pubic tubercle (apex of triangle), and expands to attach to the linea aspera of the femur (base of triangle) (Fig. 7.26A, B); in so doing, it covers the anterior aspects of the adductor brevis and the middle of the adductor magnus.

ADDUCTOR BREVIS

The **adductor brevis**, the short adductor, lies deep to the pectineus and adductor longus, where it arises from the body and inferior ramus of the pubis. It widens as it passes distally to attach to the superior part of the linea aspera (Fig. 7.26A, C, D).

As the obturator nerve emerges from the obturator canal to enter the medial compartment of the thigh, it splits into an anterior and a posterior division. The two divisions pass anterior and posterior to the adductor brevis. This unique relationship is useful in identifying the muscle during dissection and in anatomical cross sections.

ADDUCTOR MAGNUS

The **adductor magnus** is the largest, most powerful, and most posterior muscle in the adductor group. It is a composite, triangular muscle with a thick, medial margin that has an adductor part and a "hamstring part." The two parts differ in their attachments, nerve supply, and main actions (Table 7.4).

The adductor part fans out widely for aponeurotic distal attachment along the entire length of the linea aspera of the femur, extending inferiorly onto the medial supracondylar ridge (Fig. 7.26A, E, F). The "hamstring part" has a tendinous distal attachment to the adductor tubercle, failing to cross the knee joint like the other "true" hamstrings muscles (see "Posterior Thigh Region" in this chapter).

GRACILIS

The **gracilis** (L., slender) is a long, strap-like muscle and is the most medial muscle of the thigh (Fig. 7.26E, G). It is the most superficial of the adductor group and the weakest member. It is the only one of the group to cross the knee joint as well as the hip joint. The gracilis joins with two other two-joint muscles from the other two compartments (the sartorius and semitendinosus

muscles) (Fig. 7.27A). Thus, the three muscles are innervated by three different nerves. They have a common tendinous insertion, the **pes anserinus** (L., goose's foot), into the superior part of the medial surface of the tibia.

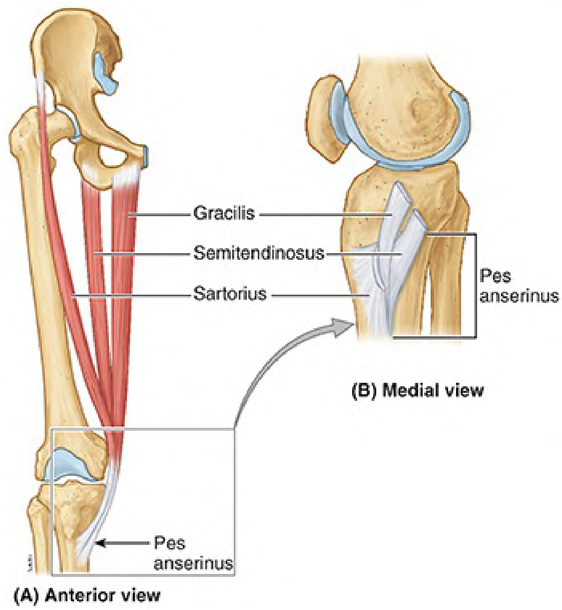


FIGURE 7.27. Pes anserinus. A. Contributing muscles. **B.** Converging tendons forming pes anserinus.

The gracilis is a synergist in adducting the thigh, flexing the knee, and rotating the leg medially when the knee is flexed. It acts with the other two "pes anserinus" muscles to add stability to the medial aspect of the extended knee, much as the gluteus maximus and tensor fasciae latae do via the iliotibial tract on the lateral side.

OBTURATOR EXTERNUS

The **obturator externus** is a flat, relatively small, fan-shaped muscle that is deeply placed in the superomedial part of the thigh. It extends from the external surface of the obturator membrane and surrounding bone of the pelvis to the posterior aspect of the greater trochanter, passing directly under the acetabulum and neck of the femur (Fig. 7.26G).

ACTIONS OF ADDUCTOR MUSCLE GROUP

From the anatomical position, the main action of the adductor group is to pull the thigh medially, toward or past the median plane. Three adductors (longus, brevis, and magnus) are used in all movements in which the thighs are adducted (e.g., pressed together when riding a horse).

They are also used to stabilize the stance when standing on both feet, to correct a lateral sway of the trunk, or when there is a side-to-side shift of the surface on which one is standing (rocking a boat, standing on a balance board). These muscles are also used in kicking with the medial side of the foot in soccer and in swimming. Finally, they contribute to flexion of the extended thigh and extension of the flexed thigh when running or against resistance.

The adductors as a group constitute a large muscle mass. Although they are important in many

activities, it has been shown that a reduction of as much as 70% in their function will result in only a slight to moderate impairment of hip function (Markhede & Stener, 1981).

Testing of the medial thigh muscles is performed while the person is lying supine with the knee straight. The individual adducts the thigh against resistance, and if the adductors are normal, the proximal ends of the gracilis and adductor longus can easily be palpated.

ADDUCTOR HIATUS

The **adductor hiatus** is an opening or aperture between the aponeurotic distal attachment of the adductor part of the adductor magnus and the tendinous distal attachment of the hamstring part (Fig. 7.26E). The adductor hiatus transmits the femoral artery and vein from the adductor canal in the thigh to the popliteal fossa posterior to the knee. The opening is located just lateral and superior to the adductor tubercle of the femur.

Neurovascular Structures and Relationships in Anteromedial Thigh

FEMORAL TRIANGLE

The **femoral triangle**, a subfascial formation, is a triangular landmark useful in dissection and in understanding relationships in the groin (Fig. 7.28A, B). In living people, it appears as a triangular depression inferior to the inguinal ligament when the thigh is flexed, abducted, and laterally rotated (Fig. 7.28A). The femoral triangle is bounded (Fig. 7.28B)

- superiorly by the inguinal ligament (thickened inferior margin of external oblique aponeurosis) that forms the base of the femoral triangle
- medially by the lateral border of the adductor longus
- laterally by the sartorius; the apex of the femoral triangle is where the medial border of the sartorius crosses the lateral border of the adductor longus.

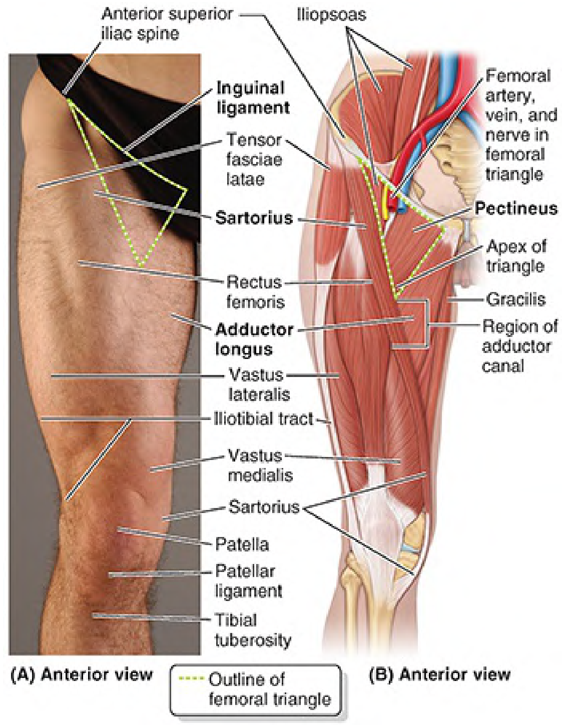


FIGURE 7.28. **Surface anatomy of femoral triangle. A.** Surface anatomy. **B.** Underlying structures.

The muscular floor of the femoral triangle is formed by the iliopsoas laterally and the pectineus medially. The roof of the femoral triangle is formed by the fascia lata and cribriform fascia, subcutaneous tissue, and skin.

The inguinal ligament actually serves as a flexor retinaculum, retaining structures that pass anterior to the hip joint against the joint during flexion of the thigh. Deep to the inguinal ligament, the **retro-inguinal space** (created as the inguinal ligament spans the gap between the two bony prominences to which it is attached, the ASIS and pubic tubercle) is an important passageway connecting the trunk/abdominopelvic cavity to the lower limb (Fig. 7.29A, B).

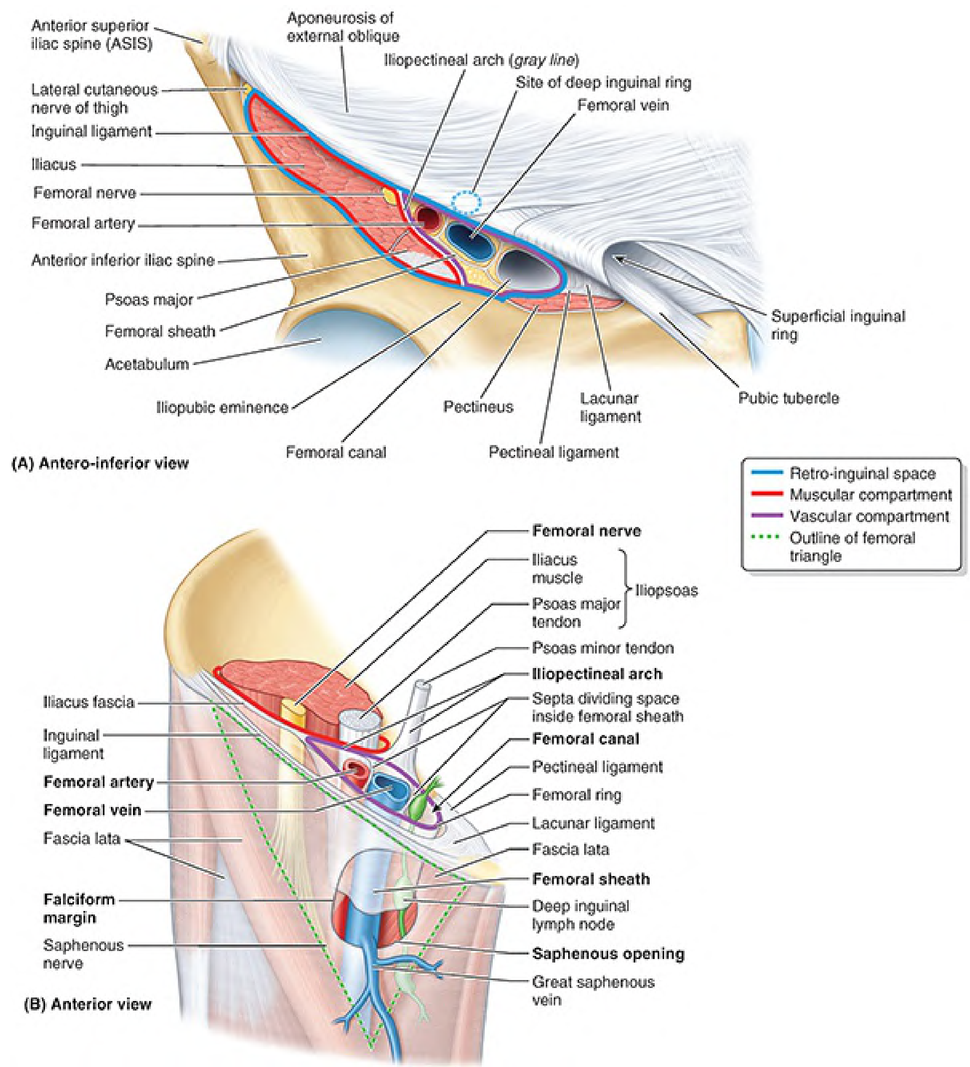


FIGURE 7.29. **Retro-inguinal space; structure and contents of femoral sheath. A.** Retro-inguinal space. Compartments of retro-inguinal space and structures traversing them to enter femoral triangle. **B.** Contents of femoral triangle. This illustration of superior end of anterior aspect of the right thigh demonstrates the distal continuation of the structures cut in part **A**. Note the compartments within the femoral sheath. The proximal end (abdominal opening) of the femoral canal is the femoral ring.

The retro-inguinal space is divided into two compartments (L. lacunae) by a thickening of the iliopsoas fascia, the **iliopectineal arch**, which passes between the deep surface of the inguinal ligament and the iliopubic eminence (see Fig. 7.6B). Lateral to the iliopectineal arch is the **muscular compartment of the retro-inguinal space**, through which the iliopsoas muscle and femoral nerve pass from the greater pelvis into the anterior thigh (Fig. 7.29A, B). Medial to the iliopectineal arch, the **vascular compartment of the retro-inguinal space** allows passage of the major vascular structures (veins, artery, and lymphatics) between the greater pelvis and the femoral triangle of the anterior thigh. As they enter the femoral triangle, the names of the vessels change from external iliac to femoral.

The contents of the femoral triangle, from lateral to medial, are (Figs. 7.29B and 7.30A, B) as follows:

- Femoral nerve and its (terminal) branches
- Femoral sheath and its contents:
  - Femoral artery and several of its branches
  - Femoral vein and its proximal tributaries (e.g., the great saphenous and profunda femoris veins)
  - Deep inguinal lymph nodes and associated lymphatic vessels

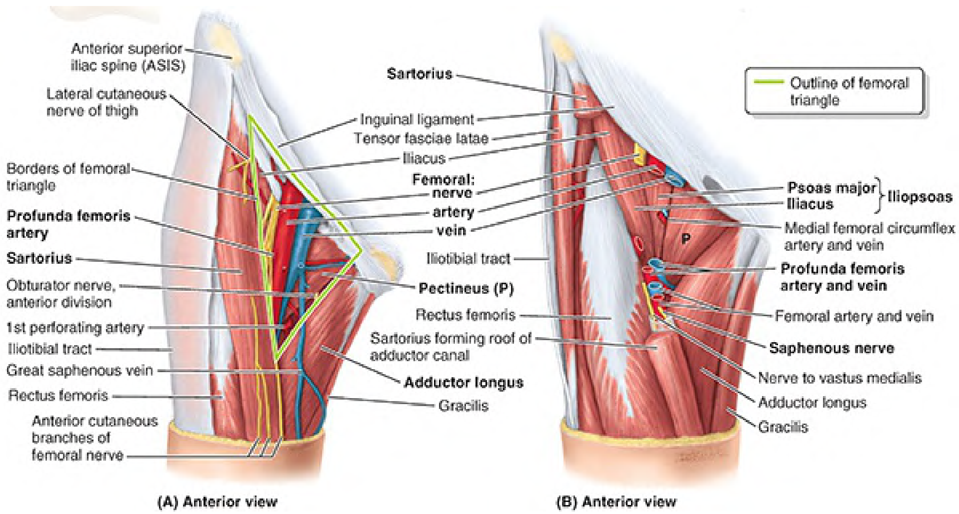


FIGURE 7.30. **Structures of femoral triangle. A.** Superficial dissection. The boundaries and contents of femoral triangle. The triangle is bound by the inguinal ligament superiorly, the adductor longus medially, and the sartorius laterally. The femoral nerve and vessels enter the base of the triangle superiorly and exit from its apex inferiorly. **B.** Deep dissection. Sections have been removed from the sartorius and femoral vessels and nerve. Observe the muscles forming the floor of the femoral triangle: the iliopsoas laterally and the pectineus medially. Of the neurovascular structures at the apex of the femoral triangle, the two anterior vessels (femoral artery and vein) and the two nerves enter the adductor canal (anterior to adductor longus), and the two posterior vessels (profunda femoris artery and vein) pass deep (posterior) to the adductor longus.

The femoral triangle is bisected by the femoral artery and vein, which pass to and from the adductor canal inferiorly at the triangle's apex (Fig. 7.30A). The **adductor canal** is an intermuscular passageway deep to the sartorius by which the major neurovascular bundle of the thigh traverses the middle third of the thigh (Fig. 7.30B; see Fig. 7.33).

FEMORAL NERVE

The **femoral nerve** (L2–L4) is the largest branch of the lumbar plexus. The nerve originates in the abdomen within the psoas major and descends posterolaterally through the pelvis to approximately the midpoint of the inguinal ligament (Figs. 7.29B and 7.30A). It then passes deep to this ligament and enters the femoral triangle, lateral to the femoral vessels.

After entering the femoral triangle, the femoral nerve divides into several branches to the anterior thigh muscles. It also sends articular branches to the hip and knee joints and provides several cutaneous branches to the anteromedial side of the thigh (see Table 7.1).

The terminal cutaneous branch of the femoral nerve, the **saphenous nerve**, descends through the femoral triangle, lateral to the femoral sheath containing the femoral vessels (Figs. 7.29B and

7.30B; Table 7.1). The saphenous nerve accompanies the femoral artery and vein through the adductor canal and becomes superficial by passing between the sartorius and gracilis when the femoral vessels traverse the adductor hiatus at the distal end of the canal. It runs antero-inferiorly to supply the skin and fascia on the anteromedial aspects of the knee, leg, and foot.

FEMORAL SHEATH

The **femoral sheath** is a funnel-shaped fascial tube of varying length (usually 3–4 cm) that passes deep to the inguinal ligament, lining the vascular compartment of the retro-inguinal space (Fig. 7.31). It terminates inferiorly by blending with the adventitia of the femoral vessels. The sheath encloses proximal parts of the femoral vessels and creates the femoral canal medial to them (Figs. 7.29B and 7.31B).

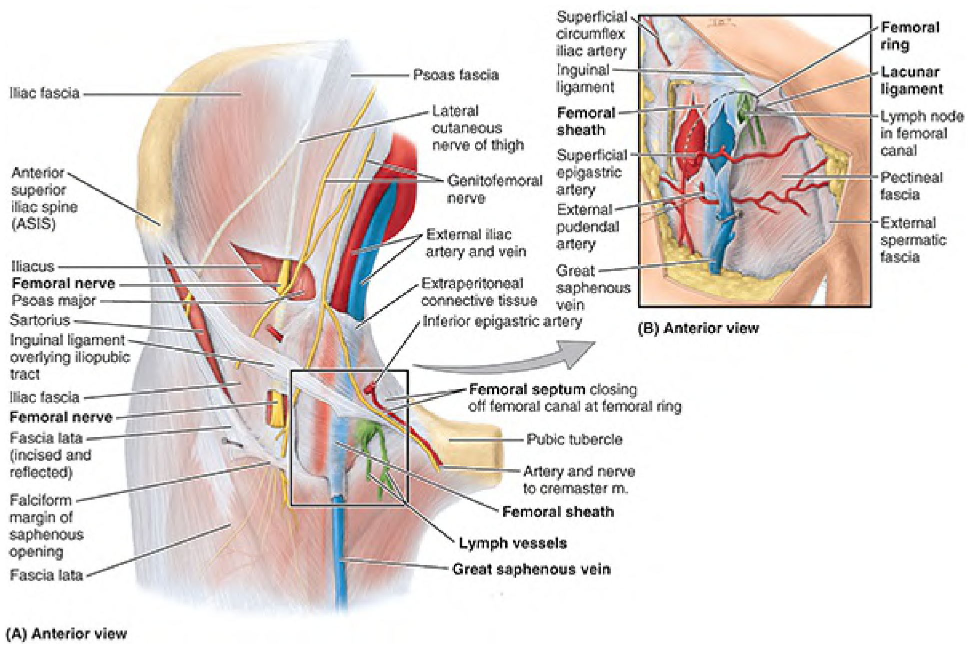


FIGURE 7.31. Dissection of femoral sheath in femoral triangle. A. Iliac fascia and fascia lata. The fascia lata inferior to the inguinal ligament, including the falciform margin of the saphenous opening, is cut and reflected inferiorly so that the inferior continuation of the iliac fascia can be observed. The femoral nerve, seen through a window in the iliac fascia, is external and lateral to the femoral sheath. **B.** Femoral artery and vein in femoral sheath. The femoral sheath has been incised.

The femoral sheath is formed by an inferior prolongation of transversalis and iliopsoas fascia from the abdomen. The femoral sheath does not enclose the femoral nerve because that passes through the muscular compartment. When a long femoral sheath occurs (extends farther distally), its medial wall is pierced by the great saphenous vein and lymphatic vessels (Fig. 7.31).

The femoral sheath allows the femoral artery and vein to glide deep to the inguinal ligament during movements of the hip joint.

The femoral sheath lining the vascular compartment is subdivided internally into three smaller compartments by vertical septa of extraperitoneal connective tissue that extend from the abdomen along the femoral vessels (Figs. 7.29B and 7.31B). The compartments of the femoral

sheath are the

- lateral compartment for the femoral artery
- intermediate compartment for the femoral vein
- medial compartment, which is the femoral canal

The **femoral canal** is the smallest of the three compartments of the femoral sheath. It is conical and short (approximately 1.25 cm) and lies between the medial edge of the femoral sheath and the femoral vein. The femoral canal

- extends distally to the level of the proximal edge of the saphenous opening
- allows the femoral vein to expand when venous return from the lower limb is increased or when increased intra-abdominal pressure causes a temporary stasis (blockage) in the vein (as during a Valsalva maneuver, i.e., taking a breath and holding it, often while bearing down)
- contains loose connective tissue, fat, a few lymphatic vessels, and sometimes a deep inguinal lymph node (lacunar lymph node)

The base of the femoral canal is the oval **femoral ring** formed by the small (approximately 1 cm wide) proximal opening at its abdominal end. This opening is closed by extraperitoneal fatty tissue that forms the transversely oriented **femoral septum** (Fig. 7.31A). The abdominal surface of the septum is covered by parietal peritoneum. The femoral septum is pierced by lymphatic vessels connecting the inguinal and external iliac lymph nodes.

The boundaries of the femoral ring are (Fig. 7.29B)

- laterally, the vertical septum between the femoral canal and femoral vein
- posteriorly, the superior ramus of the pubis covered by the pectineus muscle and its fascia
- medially, the lacunar ligament
- anteriorly, the medial part of the inguinal ligament

FEMORAL ARTERY

Details concerning the origin, course, and distribution of the arteries of the thigh are illustrated in Figure 7.32 and described in Table 7.5.

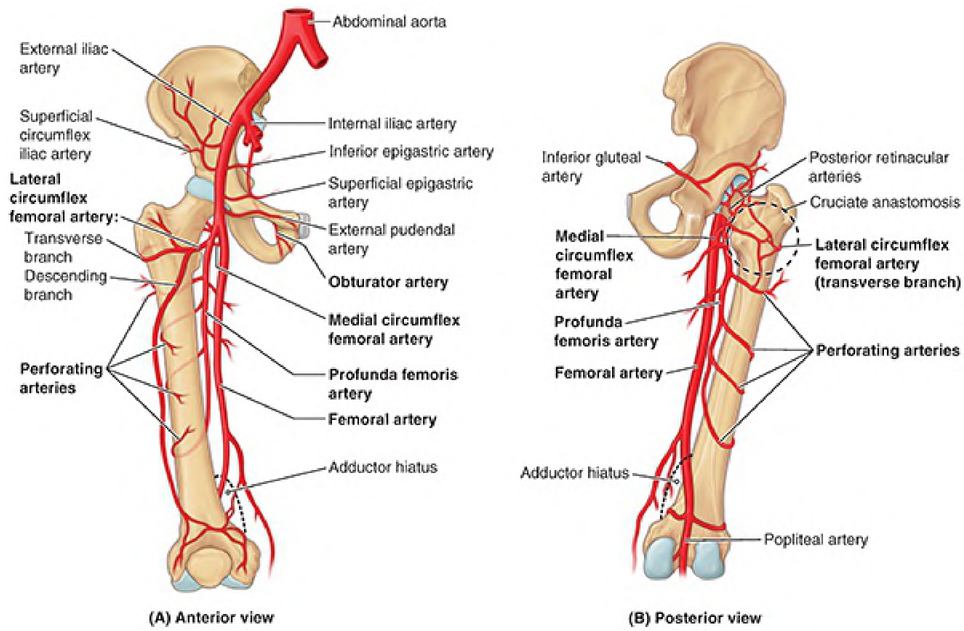


FIGURE 7.32. Arteries of anterior and medial thigh.

TABLE 7.5. ARTERIES OF ANTERIOR AND MEDIAL THIGH

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution
Femoral	Continuation of external iliac artery distal to inguinal ligament	Descends through femoral triangle bisecting it; then courses through adductor canal; terminates as it traverses adductor hiatus, where its name becomes popliteal artery	Branches supply anterior and anteromedial aspects of thigh.
Profunda femoris artery (deep artery of thigh)	Femoral artery 1–5 cm inferior to inguinal ligament	Passes deeply between pectineus and adductor longus; descending posterior to latter on medial side of femur	Three to four perforating arteries pass through adductor magnus muscle, winding around femur to supply muscles in medial, posterior, and lateral part of anterior compartments.
Medial circumflex femoral	Profunda femoris artery; may arise from femoral artery	Passes medially and posteriorly between pectineus and iliopsoas; enters gluteal region and gives rise to posterior retinacular arteries; then terminates by dividing into transverse and ascending branches	Supplies most of blood to head and neck of femur. Transverse branch takes part in cruciate anastomosis of thigh. Ascending branch joins inferior gluteal artery.
Lateral circumflex femoral		Passes laterally deep to sartorius and rectus femoris, dividing into ascending, transverse, and descending arteries	Ascending branch supplies anterior part of gluteal region; transverse branch winds around femur; descending branch joins genicular peri-

			articular anastomosis.
Obturator	Internal iliac artery or (in approximately 20%) as an accessory or replaced obturator artery from the inferior epigastric artery	Passes through obturator foramen; enters medial compartment of thigh and divides into anterior and posterior branches, which pass on respective sides of adductor brevis	Anterior branch supplies obturator externus, pectineus, adductors of thigh, and gracilis; posterior branch supplies muscles attached to ischial tuberosity.

The **femoral artery**, the continuation of the external iliac artery distal to the inguinal ligament, is the primary artery of the lower limb (Figs. 7.29, 7.30, 7.31, and 7.32; see Fig. 7.15; Table 7.5). It enters the femoral triangle deep to the inguinal ligament midway between the ASIS and the pubic symphysis, between the femoral nerve laterally and the femoral vein medially (Fig. 7.33A). The pulsations of the femoral artery are palpable within the femoral triangle because of its relatively superficial position deep (posterior) to the fascia lata. The femoral artery lies and descends on the adjacent borders of the iliopsoas and pectineus muscles that form the floor of the triangle. The superficial epigastric artery, superficial (and sometimes the deep) circumflex iliac arteries, and the superficial and deep external pudendal arteries arise from the anterior aspect of the proximal part of the femoral artery.

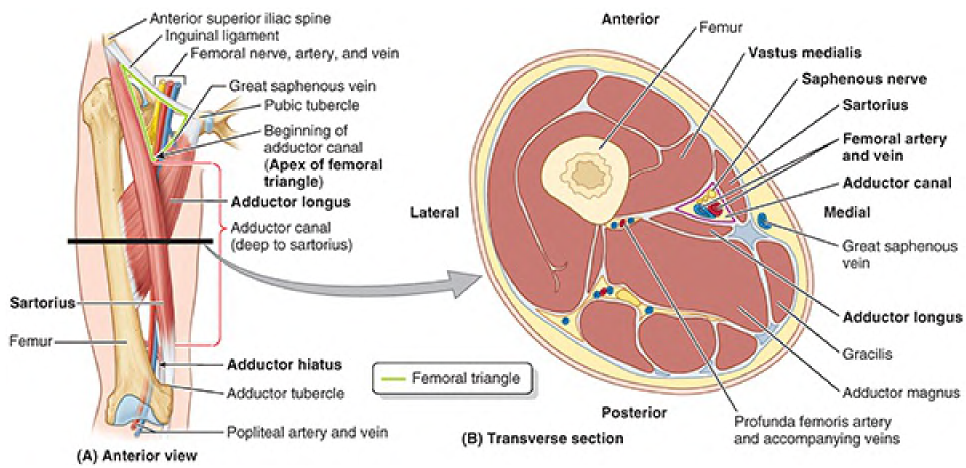


FIGURE 7.33. Adductor canal. A. Orientation drawing. The adductor canal and the level of the section of part **B**. **B.** Transverse section of adductor canal. The muscles bounding the adductor canal and its neurovascular contents are visualized.

The **profunda femoris artery** (deep artery of thigh) is the largest branch of the femoral artery and the chief artery to the thigh (Fig. 7.32). It arises from the lateral or posterior side of the femoral artery in the femoral triangle. In the middle third of the thigh, where it is separated from the femoral artery and vein by the adductor longus (Figs. 7.30B and 7.33B), it gives off 3–4 perforating arteries that wrap around the posterior aspect of the femur (Fig. 7.32; Table 7.5). The perforating arteries supply muscles of all three fascial compartments (adductor magnus, hamstrings, and vastus lateralis).

The **circumflex femoral arteries** encircle the uppermost shaft of the femur and anastomose with each other and other arteries, supplying the thigh muscles and the superior (proximal) end

of the femur. The **medial circumflex femoral artery** is especially important because it supplies most of the blood to the head and neck of the femur via its branches, the **posterior retinacular arteries**. The retinacular arteries are often torn when the femoral neck is fractured or the hip joint is dislocated. The **lateral circumflex femoral artery**, less able to supply the femoral head and neck as it passes laterally across the thickest part of the joint capsule of the hip joint, mainly supplies muscles on the lateral side of the thigh.

Obturator Artery. The **obturator artery** helps the profunda femoris artery supply the adductor muscles via anterior and posterior branches, which anastomose. The posterior branch gives off an acetabular branch that supplies the head of the femur.

FEMORAL VEIN

The **femoral vein** is the continuation of the popliteal vein proximal to the adductor hiatus. As it ascends through the adductor canal, the femoral vein lies posterolateral and then posterior to the femoral artery (Figs. 7.29B and 7.30A, B). The femoral vein enters the femoral sheath lateral to the femoral canal and ends posterior to the inguinal ligament, where it becomes the external iliac vein.

In the inferior part of the femoral triangle, the femoral vein receives the profunda femoris vein, the great saphenous vein, and other tributaries. The **profunda femoris vein** (deep vein of thigh), formed by the union of three or four perforating veins, enters the femoral vein approximately 8 cm inferior to the inguinal ligament and approximately 5 cm inferior to the termination of the great saphenous vein.

ADDUCTOR CANAL

The **adductor canal** (subsartorial canal; Hunter canal) is a long (approximately 5-cm), narrow passageway extending from the apex of the femoral triangle, where the sartorius crosses over the adductor longus, to the adductor hiatus in the tendon of the adductor magnus (Fig. 7.33A).

The adductor canal provides an intermuscular passage for the femoral artery and vein, the saphenous nerve, and the slightly larger nerve to vastus medialis, delivering the femoral vessels to the popliteal fossa where they become popliteal vessels.

The adductor canal is bounded (Fig. 7.33B)

- anteriorly and laterally by the vastus mediali
- posteriorly by the adductors longus and magnus
- medially by the sartorius, which overlies the groove between the above muscles, forming the roof of the canal

In the inferior third to half of the canal, a tough subsartorial or vastoadductor fascia spans between the adductor longus and the vastus medialis muscles, forming the anterior wall of the canal deep to the sartorius. Because this fascia has a distinct superior margin, novices dissecting in this area commonly assume when they see the femoral vessels pass deep to this fascia that they are traversing the adductor hiatus. The adductor hiatus, however, is located at a more inferior level, just proximal to the medial supracondylar ridge. This hiatus is a gap between the

aponeurotic adductor and the tendinous hamstrings attachments of the adductor magnus (see Fig. 7.26E).

Surface Anatomy of Anterior and Medial Regions of Thigh

In fairly muscular individuals, some of the bulky anterior thigh muscles can be observed. The prominent muscles are the quadriceps and sartorius, whereas laterally, the tensor fasciae latae is palpable as is the iliotibial tract to which this muscle attaches (Fig. 7.34A).

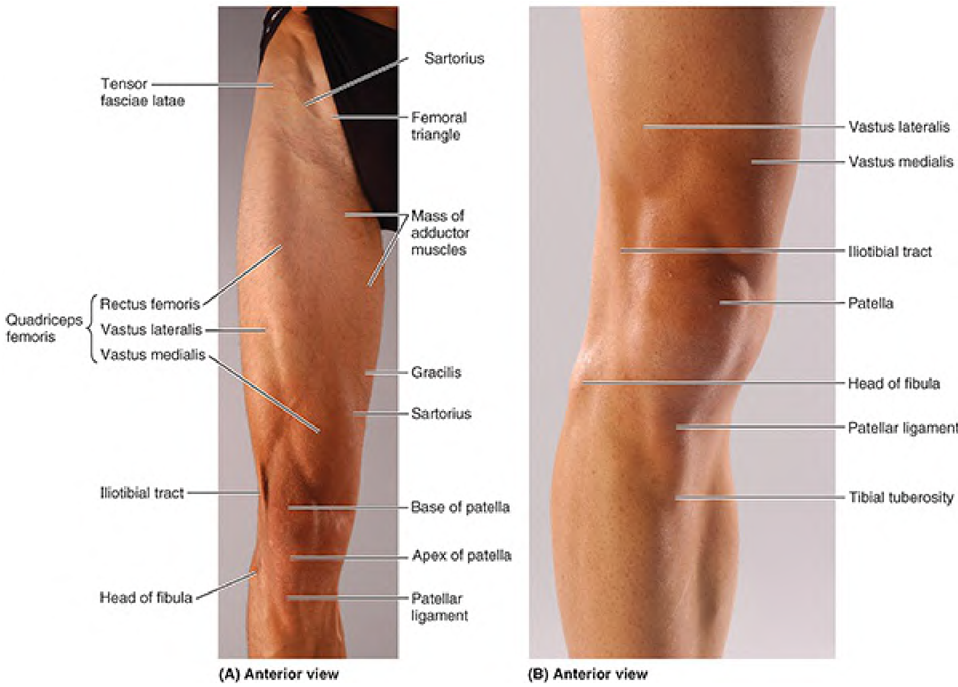


FIGURE 7.34. Surface anatomy of anterior and medial thigh.

Three of the four parts of the quadriceps are visible or can be approximated (Fig. 7.34A, B). The fourth part (vastus intermedius) is deep and almost hidden by the other muscles and cannot be palpated.

The rectus femoris may be easily observed as a ridge passing down the thigh when the lower limb is raised from the floor while sitting. Observe the large bulges formed by the vastus lateralis and medialis at the knee (Fig. 7.34B). The patellar ligament is easily observed, especially in thin people, as a thick band running from the patella to the tibial tuberosity. You can also palpate the infrapatellar fat pads, the masses of loose fatty tissue on each side of the patellar ligament.

On the medial aspect of the inferior part of the thigh, the gracilis and sartorius muscles form a well-marked prominence, which is separated by a depression from the large bulge formed by the vastus medialis (Fig. 7.34A, B). Deep in this depressed area, the large tendon of the adductor magnus can be palpated as it passes to its attachment to the adductor tubercle of the femur.

Measurements of the lower limb are taken to detect shortening (e.g., resulting from a femoral fracture). To make these measurements, compare the affected limb with the corresponding limb. Real limb shortening is detected by comparing the measurements from the ASIS to the distal tip

of the medial malleolus on both sides.

To determine if the shortening is in the thigh, the measurement is taken from the top of the ASIS to the distal edge of the lateral femoral condyle on both sides. Keep in mind that small differences between the two sides—such as a difference of 1.25 cm in total length of the limb—may be normal.

The proximal two thirds of a line drawn from the midpoint of the inguinal ligament to the adductor tubercle when the thigh is flexed, abducted, and rotated laterally represent the course of the femoral artery (Fig. 7.33A). The proximal third of the line represents this artery as it passes through the femoral triangle, whereas the middle third represents the artery while it is in the adductor canal. Approximately 3.75 cm along this line distal to the inguinal ligament, the profunda femoris artery arises from the femoral artery.

The femoral vein is (Figs. 7.29B and 7.30A)

- medial to the femoral artery at the base of the femoral triangle (indicated by inguinal ligament)
- posterior to the femoral artery at the apex of the femoral triangle
- posterolateral to the artery in the adductor canal

The femoral triangle, in the supero-anterior aspect of the thigh, is not a prominent surface feature in most people. When some people sit cross-legged, the sartorius and adductor longus stand out, delineating the femoral triangle. The surface anatomy of the femoral triangle is clinically important because of its contents (Fig. 7.29B).

The femoral artery can be felt pulsating just inferior to the midinguinal point. When you palpate the femoral pulse, the femoral vein is just medial, the femoral nerve is a finger's breadth lateral, and the femoral head is just posterior. The femoral artery runs a 5-cm superficial course through the femoral triangle before it is covered by the sartorius in the adductor canal.

The great saphenous vein enters the thigh posterior to the medial femoral condyle and passes superiorly along a line from the adductor tubercle to the saphenous opening. The central point of this opening, where the great saphenous vein enters the femoral vein, is located 3.75 cm inferior and 3.75 cm lateral to the pubic tubercle (Fig. 7.30A).

CLINICAL BOX

ANTERIOR AND MEDIAL REGIONS OF THIGH

Hip and Thigh Contusions

Sports broadcasters and trainers refer to a "hip pointer," which is a contusion of the iliac crest that usually occurs at its anterior part (e.g., where the sartorius attaches to the ASIS). This is one of the most common injuries to the hip region, usually occurring in association with collision sports, such as the various forms of football, ice

hockey, and volleyball.

Contusions cause bleeding from ruptured capillaries and infiltration of blood into the muscles, tendons, and other soft tissues. The term hip pointer may also refer to avulsion of bony sites of muscle attachment, for example, of the sartorius or rectus femoris to the anterior superior and inferior iliac spines, respectively, or of the hamstrings to the ischium (see Fig. B7.1C, D). However, these injuries should be called avulsion fractures.

Another term commonly used is “charley horse,” which may refer either to the cramping of an individual thigh muscle because of ischemia or to contusion and rupture of blood vessels sufficient enough to form a hematoma. The injury is usually the consequence of tearing of fibers of the rectus femoris; sometimes, the quadriceps tendon is also partially torn. The most common site of a thigh hematoma is in the quadriceps. A charley horse is associated with localized pain and/or muscle stiffness and commonly follows direct trauma (e.g., a stick slash in hockey or a tackle in football).

Psoas Abscess

The psoas major muscle arises in the abdomen from the intervertebral discs, the sides of the T12–L5 vertebrae, and their transverse processes (see Fig. B5.38). The medial arcuate ligament of the diaphragm arches obliquely over the proximal part of the psoas major. The transversalis fascia on the internal abdominal wall is continuous with the psoas fascia, where it forms a fascial covering for the psoas major that accompanies the muscle into the anterior region of the thigh.

There is a resurgence of tuberculosis (TB) in Africa, Asia, and elsewhere. A retroperitoneal pyogenic infection (pus forming) in the abdomen or greater pelvis, characteristically occurring in association with TB of the vertebral column, or secondary to regional enteritis of the ileum (Crohn disease), may result in the formation of a psoas abscess. When the abscess passes between the psoas and its fascia to the inguinal and proximal thigh regions, severe pain may be referred to the hip, thigh, or knee joint. A psoas abscess should always be considered when edema occurs in the proximal part of the thigh. Such an abscess may be palpated or observed in the inguinal region, just inferior or superior to the inguinal ligament, and may be mistaken for an indirect inguinal hernia or a femoral hernia, an enlargement of the inguinal lymph nodes, or a saphenous varix. The lateral border of the psoas is commonly visible in radiographs of the abdomen; an obscured psoas shadow may be an indication of abdominal pathology.

Paralysis of Quadriceps

A person with paralyzed quadriceps muscles cannot extend the leg against resistance. They commonly walk with a forward lean, pressing on the distal end of the thigh with their hand as the heel contacts the ground to prevent inadvertent flexion of the knee joint.

Weakness of the vastus medialis or vastus lateralis, resulting from arthritis or trauma to the knee joint, can result in abnormal patellar movement and loss of joint stability.

Chondromalacia Patellae

Chondromalacia patellae (softening of the articular cartilage of the patella, or "runner's knee") is a common knee injury for marathon runners. Such overstressing of the knee region can also occur in running sports such as basketball. The soreness and aching around or deep to the patella often result from quadriceps imbalance. Chondromalacia patellae may also result from a blow to the patella or extreme flexion of the knee (e.g., during squatting when power lifting).

Patellar Fractures

A direct blow to the patella may fracture it into two or more fragments (Fig. B7.13). Transverse patellar fractures may result from a blow to the knee or sudden contraction of the quadriceps (e.g., when one slips and attempts to prevent a backward fall). The proximal fragment is pulled superiorly with the quadriceps tendon, and the distal fragment remains with the patellar ligament.

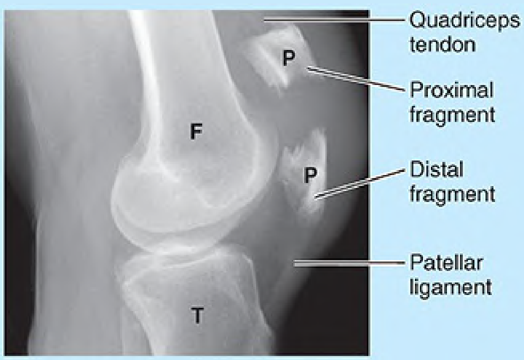


FIGURE B7.13. Patellar fracture. F, femur; P, patella; T, tibia.

Abnormal Ossification of Patella

The patella is cartilaginous at birth. It ossifies during the 3rd–6th years, frequently from more than one ossification center. Although these centers usually coalesce and form a single bone, they may remain separate on one or both sides, giving rise to a bipartite or tripartite patella (Fig. B7.14). An unwary observer might interpret this condition on a radiograph or CT as a patellar fracture. Ossification abnormalities are nearly always bilateral; therefore, diagnostic images should be examined from both sides. If the defects are bilateral, the defects are likely ossification abnormalities.

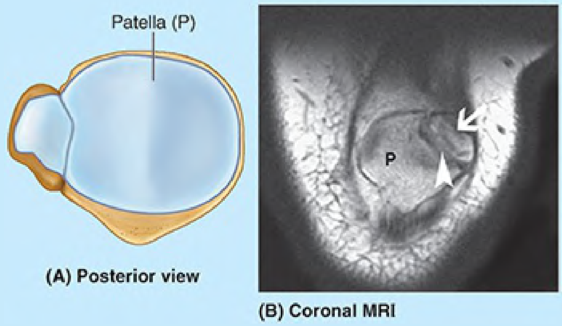


FIGURE B7.14. Bipartite patella. Arrow, bipartite segment; arrowhead, false "fracture" line.

Patellar Tendon Reflex

Tapping the patellar ligament with a reflex hammer (Fig. B7.15) normally elicits the patellar tendon reflex ("knee jerk"). This myotatic (deep tendon) reflex is routinely tested during a physical examination by having the person sit with the legs dangling. A firm strike on the ligament with a reflex hammer usually causes the leg to extend. If the reflex is normal, a hand on the person's quadriceps should feel the muscle contract. This tendon reflex tests the integrity of the femoral nerve and the L2–L4 spinal cord segments.

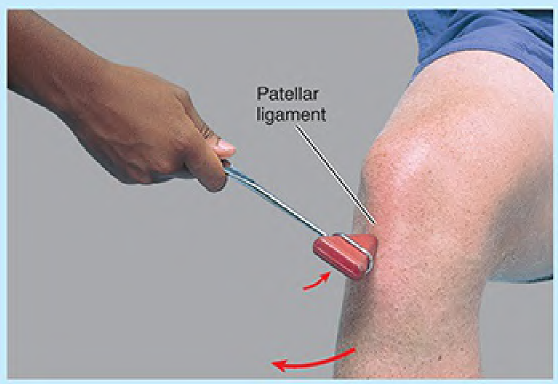


FIGURE B7.15. Patellar tendon reflex.

Tapping the ligament activates muscle spindles in the quadriceps. Afferent impulses from the spindles travel in the femoral nerve to the L2–L4 segments of the spinal cord. From here, efferent impulses are transmitted via motor fibers in the femoral nerve to the quadriceps, resulting in a jerk-like contraction of the muscle and extension of the leg at the knee joint.

Diminution or absence of the patellar tendon reflex may result from any lesion that interrupts the innervation of the quadriceps (e.g., peripheral nerve disease).

Transplantation of Gracilis

Because the gracilis is a relatively weak member of the adductor group of muscles, it can be removed without noticeable loss of its actions on the leg. Surgeons often

transplant the gracilis, or part of it, with its nerve and blood vessels to replace a damaged muscle in the hand, for example. Once the muscle is transplanted, it soon produces good digital flexion and extension.

Freed from its distal attachment, the muscle has also been relocated and repositioned to create a replacement for a nonfunctional external anal sphincter.

Groin Pull

Sports broadcasters refer to a "pulled groin" or "groin injury." These terms mean that a strain, stretching, and probably some tearing of the proximal attachments of the anteromedial thigh muscles have occurred. The injury usually involves the flexor and adductor thigh muscles. The proximal attachments of these muscles are in the inguinal region (groin), the junction of the thigh and trunk.

Groin pulls usually occur in sports that require quick starts (e.g., sprinting and base stealing in baseball) or extreme stretching (e.g., gymnastics).

Injury to Adductor Longus

Muscle strains of the adductor longus often occur in sports that require fast acceleration, deceleration, and changes in direction. Examples include ice hockey, cricket, breaststroke swimming, football, and rugby. This injury may also occur in horseback riders and produce pain (rider's strain). Ossification sometimes occurs in the tendons of these muscles because the horseback riders actively adduct their thighs to keep from falling from their animals. The ossified tendons are sometimes wrongly called "riders' bones."

Palpation, Compression, and Cannulation of Femoral Artery

The initial part of the femoral artery, proximal to the branching of the profunda femoris artery, is superficial in position, making it especially accessible and useful for a number of clinical procedures. Some vascular surgeons refer to this part of the femoral artery as the common femoral artery and to its continuation distally as the superficial femoral artery. This terminology is not recommended by the Federative International Program on Anatomical Terminology because it is a deep artery. The term is not used in this book because it may cause misunderstanding.

With the person lying in the supine position, the femoral pulse may be palpated midway between the ASIS and the pubic symphysis (Fig. B7.16A, B). By placing the tip of the little finger (of the left hand when dealing with the right side) on the ASIS and the tip of the thumb on the pubic tubercle, the femoral pulse can be palpated with the midpalm just inferior to the midpoint of the inguinal ligament by pressing firmly. See Figure 7.15B for

palpation of the femoral pulse in the upright position. Normally, the pulse is strong; however, if the common or external iliac arteries are partially occluded, the pulse may be diminished.

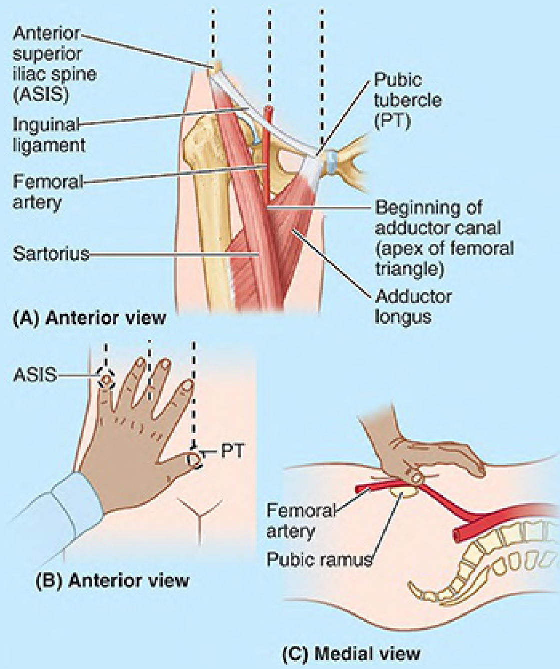


FIGURE B7.16. Localization of femoral artery.

Compression of the femoral artery may also be accomplished at this site by pressing directly posteriorly against the superior pubic ramus, psoas major, and femoral head (Fig. B7.16C). Compression at this point will reduce blood flow through the femoral artery and its branches, such as the profunda femoris artery.

The femoral artery may be cannulated just inferior to the midpoint of the inguinal ligament. In left cardial (cardiac) angiography, a long, slender catheter is inserted into the artery and passed up the external iliac artery, common iliac artery, and aorta to the left ventricle of the heart. This same approach is used to visualize the coronary arteries in coronary arteriography.

Blood may also be taken from the femoral artery for blood gas analysis (the determination of oxygen and carbon dioxide concentrations and pressures with the pH of the blood by laboratory tests).

Laceration of Femoral Artery

The superficial position of the femoral artery in the femoral triangle makes it vulnerable to traumatic injury (see Fig. 7.31A, B), especially laceration. Commonly, both the femoral artery and vein are lacerated in anterior thigh wounds because they lie close together. In some cases, an arteriovenous shunt occurs as a result of communication between the injured vessels.

When it is necessary to ligate the femoral artery, anastomosis of branches of the femoral artery with other arteries that cross the hip joint may supply blood to the lower limb. The cruciate anastomosis is a four-way common meeting of the medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries with the inferior gluteal artery superiorly, and the first perforating artery inferiorly, posterior to the femur (see Fig. 7.32; Table 7.5), occurring less often than its frequent mention implies.

Potentially Lethal Misnomer

Some clinical staff, vascular laboratories, and text and reference books use the term “superficial femoral” when referring to the femoral artery or vein distal to the branching of, or union with, the profunda femoris vessels (deep femoral vessels). Some primary care physicians may not have been taught and/or may not realize that the so-called superficial vessels are actually deeply located and that acute thrombosis of the vein is potentially life-threatening. The adjective superficial should not be used for either the femoral artery or vein because it implies that they are superficial, that is, located in the subcutaneous tissue (Benninger, 2014). Most pulmonary emboli originate in deep veins, not in superficial veins. The risk of embolism can be greatly reduced by anticoagulant treatment. The use of imprecise language here creates the possibility that an acute thrombosis of this truly deep vessel could be overlooked as an acute clinical issue and a life-threatening situation created.

Saphenous Varix

A localized dilation of the terminal part of the great saphenous vein, called a saphenous varix (L. dilated vein), may cause edema in the femoral triangle. A saphenous varix may be confused with other groin swellings, such as a psoas abscess; however, a varix should be considered when varicose veins are present in other parts of the lower limb.

Location of Femoral Vein

The femoral vein is not usually palpable, but its position can be located inferior to the inguinal ligament by feeling the pulsations of the femoral artery, which is immediately lateral to the vein. In thin people, the femoral vein may be close to the surface and may be mistaken for the great saphenous vein. It is important therefore to know that the femoral vein has no tributaries at this level, except for the great saphenous vein that joins it approximately 3 cm inferior to the inguinal ligament. In varicose vein operations, it is obviously important to identify the great saphenous vein correctly and not tie off the femoral vein by mistake.

Cannulation of Femoral Vein

To secure blood samples and take pressure recordings from the chambers of the right side of the heart and/or from the pulmonary artery and to perform right cardiac angiography, a long, slender catheter is inserted into the femoral vein as it passes through the femoral triangle. Under fluoroscopic control, the catheter is passed superiorly through the external and common iliac veins into the inferior vena cava and right atrium of the heart. Femoral venous puncture may also be used for the administration of fluids.

Femoral Hernias

The femoral ring is a weak area in the anterior abdominal wall that normally is of a size sufficient to admit the tip of the little finger (Fig. B7.17). The femoral ring is the usual originating site of a femoral hernia, a protrusion of abdominal viscera (often a loop of small intestine) through the femoral ring into the femoral canal. A femoral hernia appears as a mass, often tender, in the femoral triangle, inferolateral to the pubic tubercle.

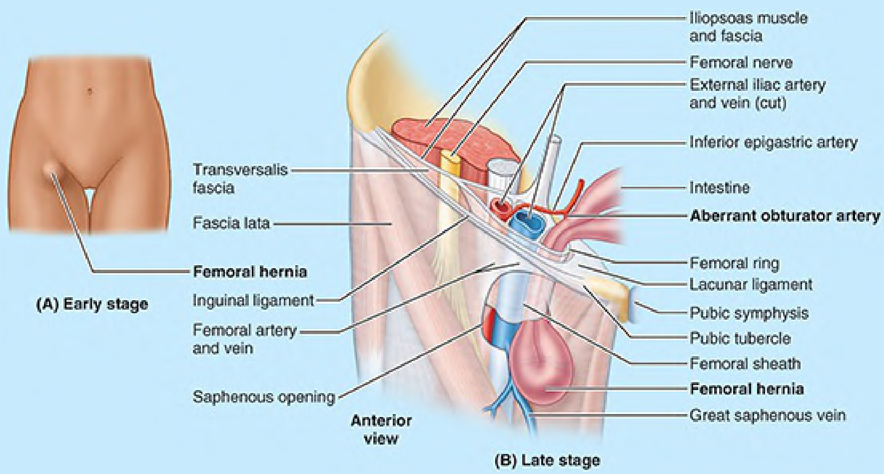


FIGURE B7.17. Femoral hernia.

The hernia is bounded by the femoral vein laterally and the lacunar ligament medially. The hernial sac compresses the contents of the femoral canal (loose connective tissue, fat, and lymphatics) and distends the wall of the canal. Initially, the hernia is small because it is contained within the canal, but it can enlarge by passing inferiorly through the saphenous opening into the subcutaneous tissue of the thigh.

Femoral hernias are more common in females because of their wider pelves and smaller inguinal canals and rings. This type of hernia may also occur after multiple pregnancies due to enlargement of the femoral ring over time from increased intra-abdominal pressure forcing fat into the femoral canal. Femoral hernias may cause hip or abdominal pain. Strangulation of a femoral hernia may occur because of the sharp, rigid boundaries of the femoral ring, particularly the concave margin of the lacunar ligament. Strangulation of a

femoral hernia interferes with the blood supply to the herniated intestine. This vascular impairment may result in necrosis (death of the tissues).

Replaced or Accessory Obturator Artery

An enlarged pubic branch of the inferior epigastric artery either takes the place of the obturator artery (replaced obturator artery) or joins it as an accessory obturator artery, in approximately 20% of people (Fig. B7.18). This artery runs close to or across the femoral ring to reach the obturator foramen and could be closely related to the neck of a femoral hernia. Consequently, this artery could be involved in a strangulated femoral hernia. Surgeons placing staples during endoscopic repair of both inguinal and femoral hernias must also be vigilant concerning the possible presence of this common arterial variant.

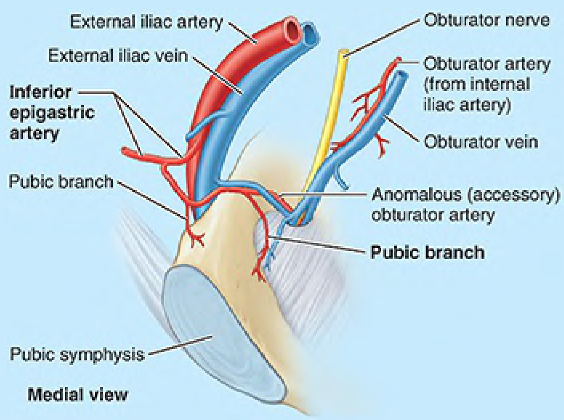


FIGURE B7.18. Accessory obturator artery.

The Bottom Line: Anterior and Medial Regions of Thigh

Anterior compartment: This large anterior compartment includes the flexors of the hip and extensors of the knee, with most muscles innervated by the femoral nerve. ■ The quadriceps femoris accounts for most of the mass of this compartment. It surrounds the femur on three sides and has a common tendon of attachment to the tibia, which includes the patella as a sesamoid bone. ■ Major muscles of this compartment atrophy rapidly with disease or disuse, requiring physical therapy to retain or restore function.

Medial compartment: The muscles of this compartment attach proximally to the antero-inferior bony pelvis and distally to the linea aspera of the femur. ■ Muscles here are adductors of the thigh, innervated primarily by the obturator nerve. Use of these muscles as prime movers is relatively limited. ■ The primary neurovascular bundle of the

thigh, like that of the arm, is placed on the medial side of the limb for protection.

Neurovascular structures and relationships in anteromedial thigh: In the upper third of the thigh, the neurovascular bundle is most superficial as it enters deep to the inguinal ligament. This relatively superficial position is important for clinical procedures. ■ Although they are essentially adjacent, the femoral nerve traverses the muscular lacunae of the retro-inguinal space, whereas the femoral vessels traverse the vascular lacunae within the femoral sheath. ■ The femoral vessels bisect the femoral triangle, where the primary vessels of the thigh, the profunda femoris artery and vein, arise and terminate, respectively. ■ The femoral nerve per se terminates within the femoral triangle. However, two of its branches, a motor branch (nerve to vastus medialis) and sensory branch (saphenous nerve), are part of the neurovascular bundle that traverses the adductor canal in the middle third of the thigh. ■ The vascular structures then pass through the adductor hiatus, becoming popliteal in name and location in the distal thigh/posterior knee region.

GLUTEAL AND POSTERIOR THIGH REGIONS

Gluteal Region: Buttocks and Hip Region

Although the demarcation of the trunk and lower limb is abrupt anteriorly at the inguinal ligament, posteriorly, the gluteal region is a large transitional zone between the trunk and limb. Physically part of the trunk, functionally, the gluteal region is definitely part of the lower limb.

The **gluteal region** is the prominent area posterior to the pelvis and inferior to the level of the iliac crests (the buttocks) and extending laterally to the posterior margin of the greater trochanter (Fig. 7.35). The hip region overlies the greater trochanter laterally, extending anteriorly to the ASIS. Some definitions include both buttock and hip region as part of the gluteal region, but the two parts are commonly distinguished. The intergluteal cleft (natal cleft) is the groove that separates the buttocks from each other. The **gluteal muscles** (gluteus maximus, medius, and minimus and tensor fasciae latae) form the bulk of the region. The gluteal fold demarcates the inferior boundary of the buttock and the superior boundary of the thigh.

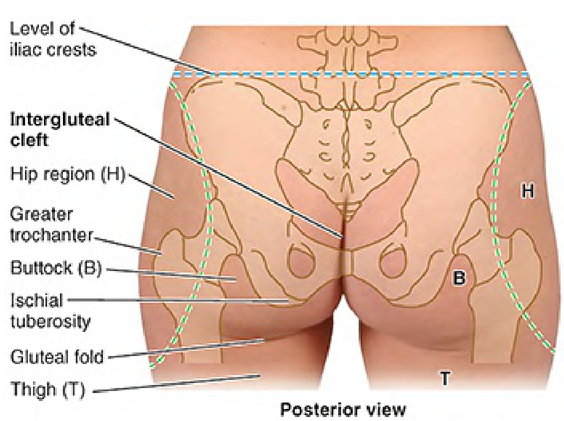


FIGURE 7.35. **Gluteal region.** This region includes the buttocks and hip region.

GLUTEAL LIGAMENTS

The parts of the bony pelvis—hip bones, sacrum, and coccyx—are bound together by dense ligaments (Fig. 7.36). The **posterior sacro-iliac ligament** is continuous inferiorly with the sacrotuberous ligament. The **sacrotuberous ligament** extends across the sciatic notch of the hip bone, converting the notch into a foramen that is further subdivided by the **sacrospinous ligament** and ischial spine, creating the greater and lesser sciatic foramina. The **greater sciatic foramen** is the passageway for structures entering or leaving the pelvis (e.g., sciatic nerve), whereas the **lesser sciatic foramen** is the passageway for structures entering or leaving the perineum (e.g., pudendal nerve).

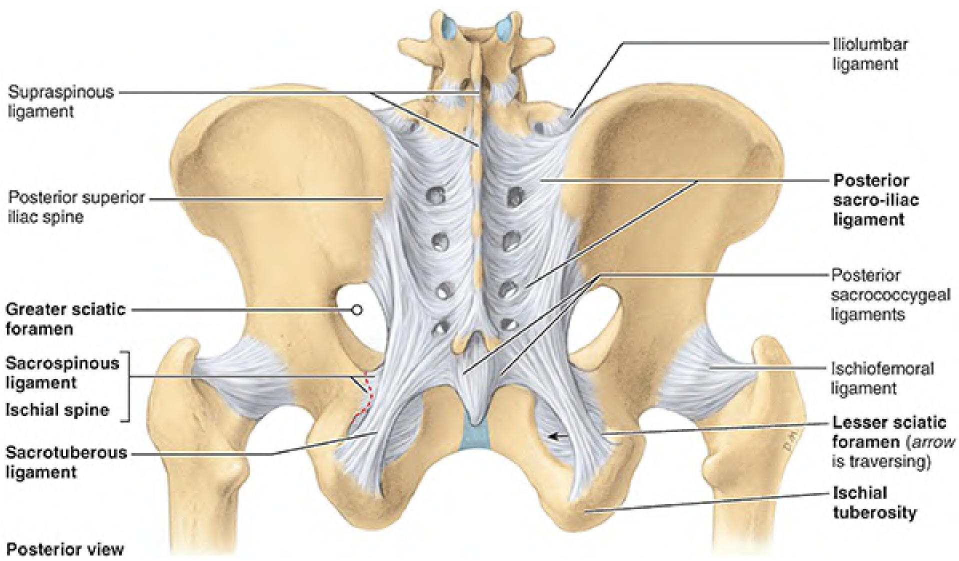


FIGURE 7.36. **Ligaments of pelvic girdle.** The sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments convert the greater and lesser sciatic notches into foramina.

It is helpful to think of the greater sciatic foramen as the “door” through which all lower limb arteries and nerves leave the pelvis and enter the gluteal region. The piriformis muscle (Fig. 7.37D–G; Table 7.6) also enters the gluteal region through the greater sciatic foramen and fills most of it.

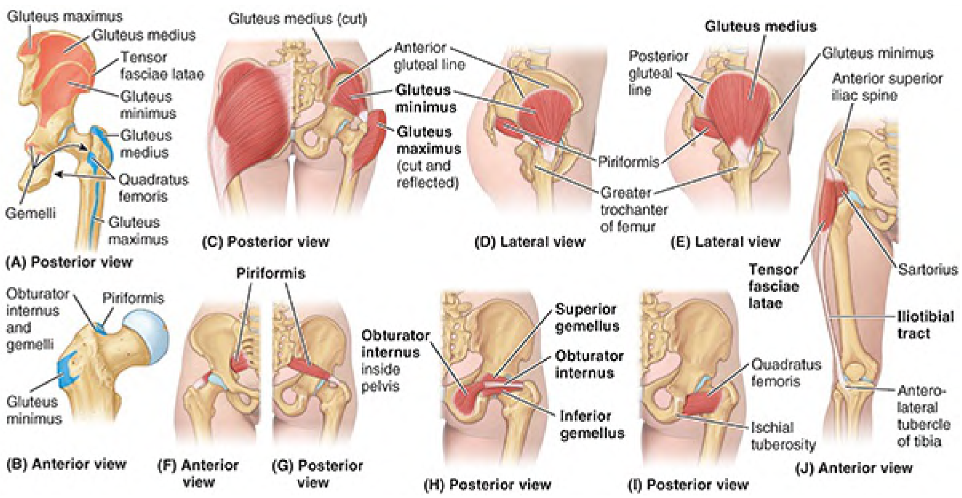


FIGURE 7.37. Muscles of gluteal region. A and B. Attachments. **C.** Glutei. **D.** Gluteus minimus. **E.** Gluteus medius. **F and G.** Piriformis. **H.** Gemelli. **I.** Quadratus femoris. **J.** Tensor fasciae latae.

TABLE 7.6. MUSCLES OF GLUTEAL REGION: ABDUCTORS AND ROTATORS OF THIGH[d]

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action
Gluteus maximus	Ilium posterior to posterior gluteal line; dorsal surface of sacrum and coccyx; sacrotuberous ligament	Most fibers end in iliotibial tract, which inserts into lateral condyle of tibia; some fibers insert on gluteal tuberosity.	Inferior gluteal nerve (L5, **S1**, **S2**)	Extends hip joint (especially from flexed position) and assists in lateral rotation; fixes hip joint and assists in rising from sitting position
Gluteus medius	External surface of ilium between anterior and posterior gluteal lines	Lateral surface of greater trochanter of femur	Superior gluteal nerve (**L5**, S1)	Abduct and medially rotate hip joint; keep pelvis level when ipsilateral limb is weight bearing and advance opposite (unsupported) side during its swing phase.
Gluteus minimus	External surface of ilium between anterior and inferior gluteal lines	Anterior surface of greater trochanter of femur		
Tensor fasciae latae	Anterior superior iliac spine; anterior part of iliac crest	Iliotibial tract, which attaches to lateral condyle of tibia		
Piriformis	Anterior surface of sacrum; sacrotuberous ligament	Superior border of greater trochanter of femur	Branches of anterior rami of **S1** and S2	Laterally rotate extended hip joint and abduct hip joint when flexed; stabilize hip joint
Obturator internus	Pelvic surface of obturator membrane and surrounding bones	Medial surface of greater trochanter (trochanteric fossa) of femur[b]	Nerve to obturator internus (L5, **S1**)	
Superior and inferior gemelli	Superior: ischial spine Inferior: ischial tuberosity	Medial surface of greater trochanter (trochanteric fossa) of femur[b]	Superior gemellus: same nerve supply as obturator internus Inferior gemellus: same nerve supply	

			as quadratus femoris	
Quadratus femoris	Lateral border of ischial tuberosity	Quadrate tubercle on intertrochanteric crest of femur and area inferior to it	Nerve to quadratus femoris (L5, S1)	Laterally rotates hip joint[c]; stabilizes hip joint

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "S1, S2" means that the nerves supplying the piriformis are derived from the first two sacral segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (**S1**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments, or to the motor nerve roots arising from them, results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

[b]The gemelli muscles blend with and share the tendon of the obturator internus as it attaches to the greater trochanter of the femur, collectively forming the triceps coxae.

[c]There are six lateral rotators of the thigh: piriformis, obturator internus, superior and inferior gemelli, quadratus femoris, and obturator externus. These muscles also stabilize the hip joint.

[d]Collectively, the muscles are listed as abductors and rotators of the hip joint but their actions are more complex; see the "Posture and Gait" section.

Muscles of Gluteal Region

The **muscles of the gluteal region** (Fig. 7.38) share a common compartment but are organized into two layers, superficial and deep:

- The superficial layer of muscles of the gluteal region consists of the three large overlapping glutei (maximus, medius, and minimus) and the tensor fasciae latae (Figs. 7.37A, C–E, J and 7.38). These muscles all have proximal attachments to the posterolateral (external) surface and margins of the ala of the ilium and are mainly extensors, abductors, and medial rotators of the thigh.
- The deep layer of muscles of the gluteal region consists of smaller muscles (piriformis, obturator internus, superior and inferior gemelli, and quadratus femoris) covered by the inferior half of the gluteus maximus (Figs. 7.37F–I and 7.38). These muscles all have distal attachments on or adjacent to the intertrochanteric crest of the femur. These muscles are lateral rotators of the thigh, but they also stabilize the hip joint, working with the strong ligaments of the hip joint to steady the femoral head in the acetabulum.

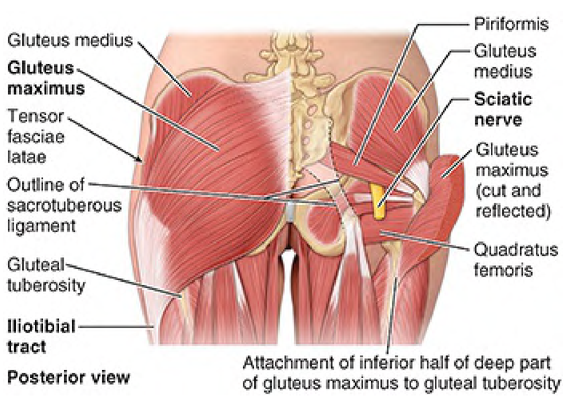


FIGURE 7.38. **Muscles of gluteal region: superficial and deep dissections.**

The attachments of the muscles of the gluteal region are illustrated in Figure 7.37A–J, and their innervation and main actions are described in Table 7.6.

GLUTEUS MAXIMUS

The **gluteus maximus** is the most superficial gluteal muscle (Figs. 7.37C and 7.38). It is the largest, heaviest, and most coarsely fibered muscle of the body. The gluteus maximus covers all of the other gluteal muscles, except for the anterosuperior third of the gluteus medius.

The ischial tuberosity can be felt on deep palpation through the inferior part of the muscle, just superior to the medial part of the gluteal fold (Fig. 7.35). When the thigh is flexed, the inferior border of the gluteus maximus moves superiorly, leaving the ischial tuberosity subcutaneous. You do not sit on your gluteus maximus; you sit on the fatty fibrous tissue and the ischial bursa that lie between the ischial tuberosity and skin.

The gluteus maximus slopes inferolaterally at a 45° angle from the pelvis to the buttocks. The fibers of the superior and larger part of the gluteus maximus and superficial fibers of its inferior part insert into the iliotibial tract and indirectly, via the lateral intermuscular septum, into the linea aspera of the femur (Fig. 7.39A, B). Some deep fibers of the inferior part of the muscle (roughly the deep anterior and inferior quarter) attach to the gluteal tuberosity of the femur.

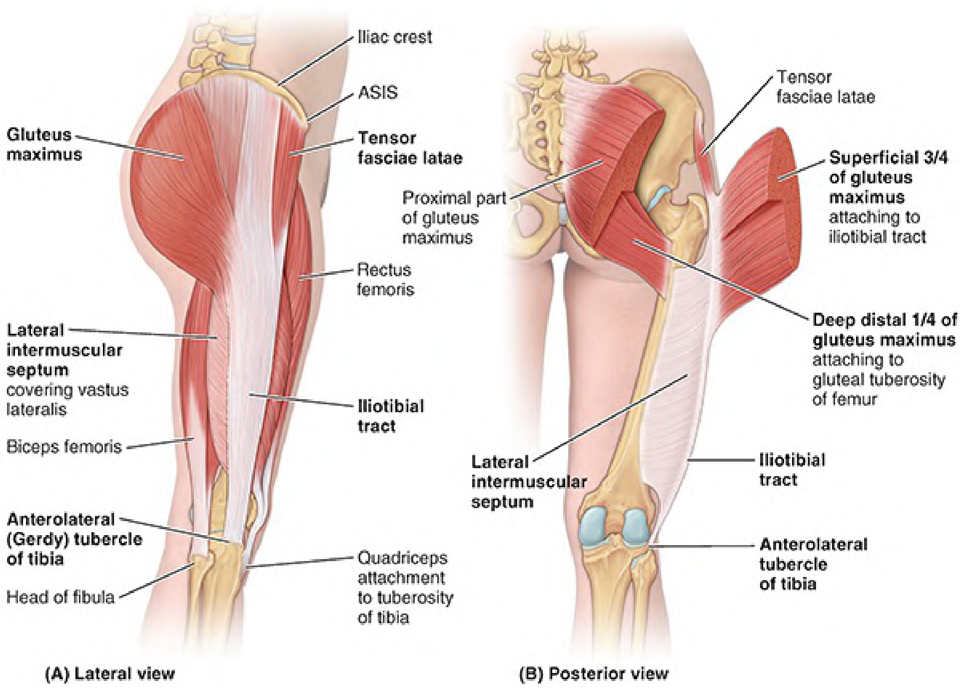


FIGURE 7.39. **Gluteus maximus and tensor fasciae latae. A.** Superficial view. Note the lateral musculofibrous complex formed by the tensor fasciae latae and gluteus maximus muscles and their shared aponeurotic tendon, the iliotibial tract. **B.** Deep posterior view with gluteus maximus partially reflected. The iliotibial tract is continuous posteriorly and deeply with the dense lateral intermuscular septum.

The inferior gluteal nerve and vessels enter the deep surface of the gluteus maximus at its center. It is supplied by both the inferior and superior gluteal arteries. In the superior part of its course, the sciatic nerve passes deep to the gluteus maximus (Fig. 7.38).

The main actions of the gluteus maximus are extension and lateral rotation of the thigh. When the distal attachment of the gluteus maximus is fixed, the muscle extends the trunk on the lower limb. Although it is the strongest extensor of the hip, it acts mostly when force is necessary (rapid movement or movement against resistance). The gluteus maximus functions primarily between the flexed and standing (straight) positions of the thigh, as when rising from the sitting position, straightening from the bending position, walking uphill and upstairs, and running. It is used only briefly during casual walking and usually not at all when standing motionless.

Paralysis of the gluteus maximus does not seriously affect walking on level ground. Verify this by placing your hand on your buttocks when walking slowly. The gluteus maximus contracts only briefly during the earliest part of the stance phase (from heel strike to when the foot is flat on the ground, to resist further flexion as weight is assumed by the partially flexed limb) (see Fig. 7.23A and Table 7.2). If you climb stairs and put your hands on your buttocks, you will feel the gluteus maximus contract strongly.

Because the iliotibial tract crosses the knee and attaches to the anterolateral tubercle of the tibia (Gerdy) (Figs. 7.37J and 7.39A, B), the gluteus maximus and tensor fasciae latae together are also able to assist in making the extended knee stable, but they are not usually called on to do so during normal standing. Because the iliotibial tract attaches to the femur via the lateral intermuscular septum, it does not have the freedom necessary to produce motion at the knee.

Testing the gluteus maximus is performed when the person is prone with the lower limb straight. The person tightens the buttocks and extends the hip joint as the examiner observes and palpates the gluteus maximus.

Gluteal Bursae. Gluteal bursae (L., purses) separate the gluteus maximus from adjacent structures (Fig. 7.40). Bursae are membranous sacs lined by a synovial membrane containing a capillary layer of slippery fluid resembling egg white. Bursae are located in areas subject to friction (e.g., where the iliotibial tract crosses the greater trochanter). The purpose of bursae is to reduce friction and permit free movement. Usually, three bursae are associated with the gluteus maximus:

1. The **trochanteric bursa** separates superior fibers of the gluteus maximus from the greater trochanter. This bursa is commonly the largest of the bursae formed in relation to bony prominences and is present at birth. Other bursae appear to form as a result of postnatal movement.
2. The **ischial bursa** separates the inferior part of the gluteus maximus from the ischial tuberosity; it is often absent.
3. The **gluteofemoral bursa** separates the iliotibial tract from the superior part of the proximal attachment of the vastus lateralis.

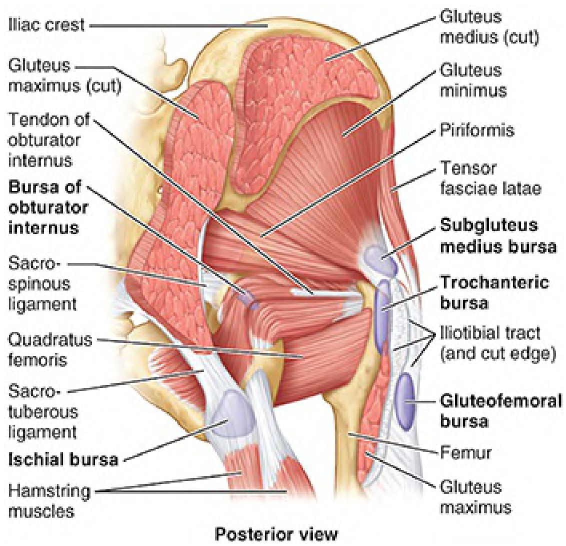


FIGURE 7.40. Gluteal muscles and bursae. Three bursae (trochanteric, gluteofemoral, and ischial) usually separate the gluteus maximus from underlying bony prominences. The bursa of the obturator internus underlies the tendon of the obturator internus.

See the Clinical Boxes "Trochanteric Bursitis" and "Ischial Bursitis."

GLUTEUS MEDIUS AND GLUTEUS MINIMUS

The smaller gluteal muscles, **gluteus medius** and **gluteus minimus**, are fan shaped, and their fibers converge in the same manner toward essentially the same target (Figs. 7.37C–E, 7.38, 7.40, and 7.41). They share the same actions and nerve supply (Table 7.6) and are supplied by the same blood vessel, the superior gluteal artery. The gluteus minimus and most of the gluteus medius lie deep to the gluteus maximus on the external surface of the ilium. The gluteus medius and minimus abduct the thigh when the ipsilateral foot is off the ground and stabilize (fix) the pelvis and rotate it medially when the contralateral foot is off the ground (Fig. 7.42; see Fig. 7.23F; Table 7.2).

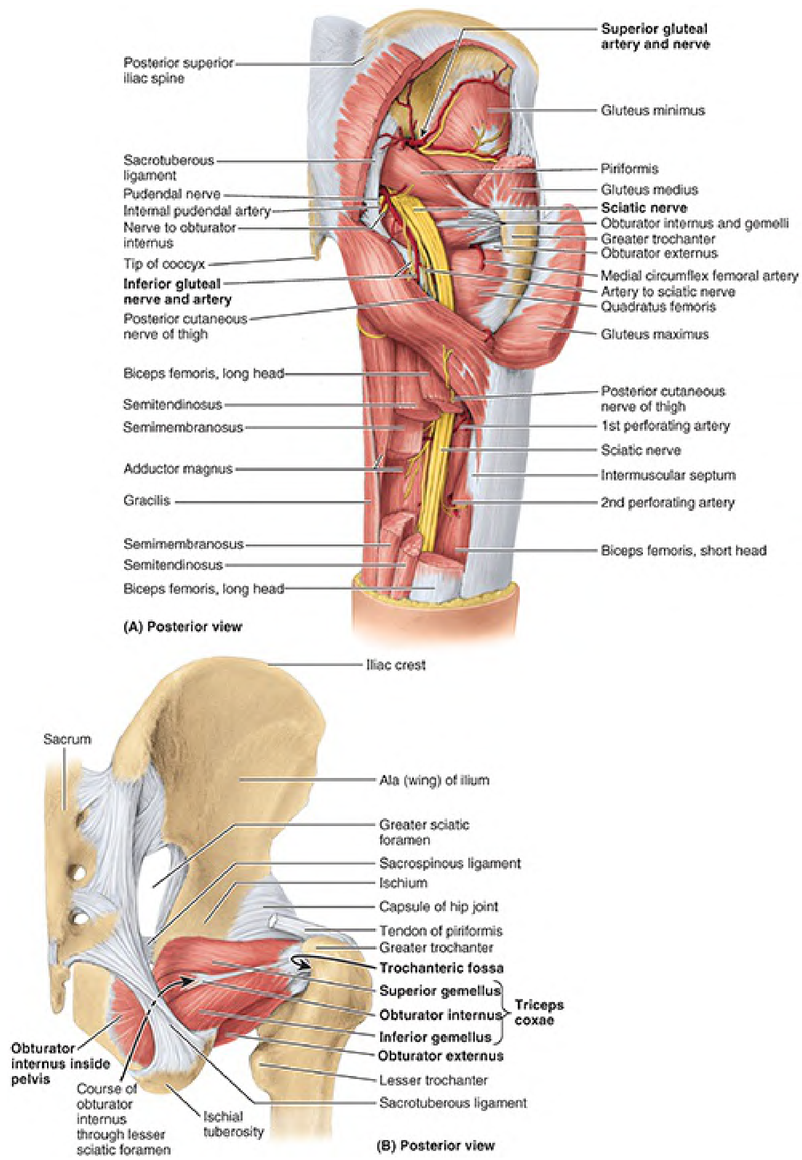


FIGURE 7.41. Gluteal region and posterior thigh. A. Dissection. Most of the gluteus maximus and medius are removed, and segments of the hamstrings are excised, to reveal the neurovascular structures of the gluteal region and proximal posterior thigh. The sciatic nerve runs deep (anterior) to and is protected by the overlying gluteus maximus initially and then the biceps femoris. **B.** Obturator internus and externus. This dissection shows some of the lateral rotators of the thigh. The components of the triceps coxae share a common attachment into the trochanteric fossa adjacent to that of the obturator externus.

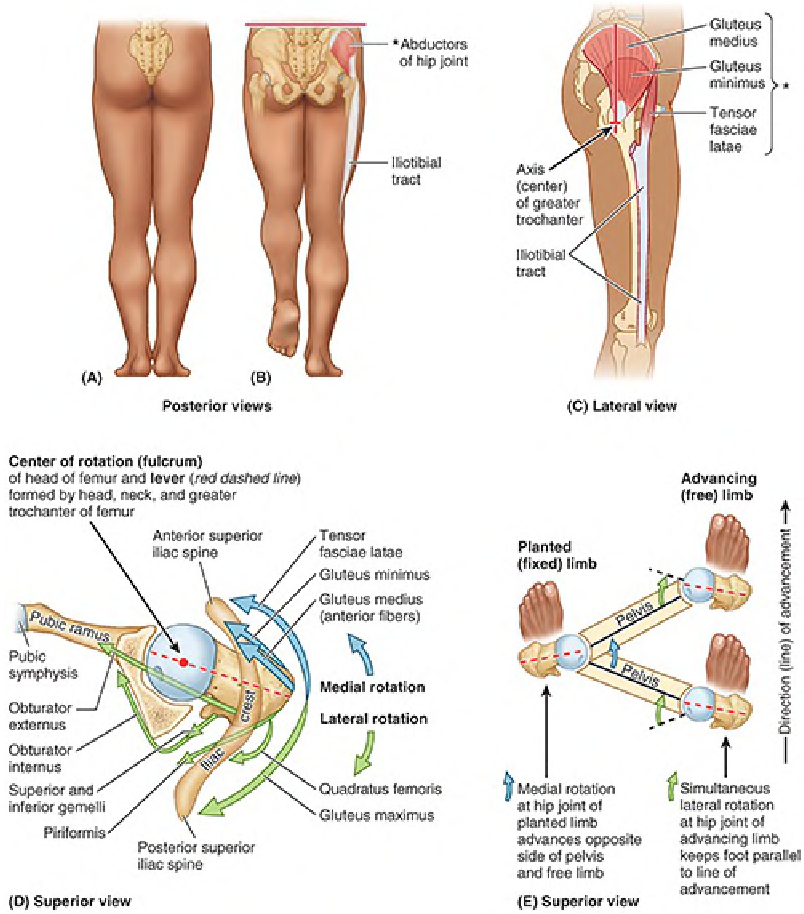


FIGURE 7.42. Action of abductors/medial rotators of hip joint in walking. A and B. Role of abductors of hip joint. When the weight is on both feet (**A**), the pelvis is evenly supported and does not sag. When the weight is borne by one limb (**B**), the muscles on the supported side fix the pelvis so that it does not sag to the unsupported side. Keeping the pelvis level enables the non–weight-bearing limb to clear the ground as it is brought forward during the swing phase. **C and D.** Note that most abductors—the tensor fasciae latae, gluteus minimus, and most (the anterior fibers) of the gluteus medius—lie anterior to the lever provided by the axis of the head, neck, and greater trochanter of the femur to rotate the thigh around the vertical axis traversing the femoral head. The superior view of the right hip joint (**D**) includes the superior pubic ramus, acetabulum, and iliac crest; the inferior part of the ilium has been removed to reveal the head and neck of the femur. The lines of pull of the rotators of the hip are indicated by arrows, demonstrating the antagonistic relationship resulting from their positions relative to the lever and the center of rotation (fulcrum). The medial rotators pull the greater trochanter anteriorly and the lateral rotators pull the trochanter posteriorly, resulting in rotation of the thigh around the vertical axis. Note that all of these muscles also pull the head and neck of the femur medially into the acetabulum, strengthening the joint. **E.** Role in walking. In walking, the same muscles that act unilaterally during the stance phase (planted limb) to keep the pelvis level via abduction can simultaneously produce medial rotation at the hip joint, advancing the opposite unsupported side of the pelvis (augmenting advancement of the free limb). The lateral rotators of the advancing (free) limb act during the swing phase to keep the foot parallel to the direction (line) of advancement.

Testing the gluteus medius and minimus is performed while the person is sidelying with the test limb uppermost and the lowermost limb flexed at the hip and knee for stability. The person abducts the thigh without flexion or rotation against straight downward resistance. The gluteus medius can be palpated inferior to the iliac crest, posterior to the tensor fasciae latae, which is also contracting during abduction of the thigh.

TENSOR FASCIAE LATAE

The **tensor fasciae latae** is a fusiform muscle approximately 15 cm long that is enclosed between two layers of fascia lata (Figs. 7.37C, J; 7.39; and 7.40). Its attachments, innervation, and action are provided in Table 7.6.

The tensor fasciae latae and the superficial and anterior part of the gluteus maximus share a common distal attachment to the anterolateral tubercle of the tibia via the iliotibial tract, which acts as a long aponeurosis for the muscles. However, unlike the gluteus maximus, the tensor fasciae latae is served by the superior gluteal neurovascular bundle. Despite its gluteal innervation and shared attachment, this tensor is primarily a flexor of the thigh because of its anterior location; however, it generally does not act independently.

To produce flexion, the tensor fasciae latae act in concert with the iliopsoas and rectus femoris. When the iliopsoas is paralyzed, the tensor fasciae latae undergoes hypertrophy in an attempt to compensate for the paralysis. It also works in conjunction with other abductor/medial rotator muscles (gluteus medius and minimus) (Fig. 7.42). It lies too far anteriorly to be a strong abductor and thus probably contributes primarily as a synergist or fixator.

The tensor fasciae latae tenses the fascia lata and iliotibial tract. Because the iliotibial tract is attached to the femur via the lateral intermuscular septum, the tensor produces little if any movement of the leg (Fig. 7.39B). However, when the knee is fully extended, it contributes to (increases) the extending force, adding stability, and plays a role in supporting the femur on the tibia when standing if lateral sway occurs. When the knee is flexed by other muscles, the tensor fasciae latae can synergistically augment flexion and lateral rotation of the leg.

The abductors/medial rotators of the hip joint play an essential role during locomotion, advancing, and preventing the sagging of the unsupported side of the pelvis during walking, as illustrated and explained in Figure 7.42. The supportive and action-producing functions of the abductors/medial rotators depend on normal

- muscular activity and innervation from the superior gluteal nerve
- articulation of the hip joint components
- strength and angulation of the femoral neck

PIRIFORMIS

The pear-shaped **piriformis** (L. pirum, a pear) is located partly on the posterior wall of the lesser pelvis and partly posterior to the hip joint (Figs. 7.37F, G; 7.38; and 7.40; Table 7.6). The piriformis leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen, almost filling it, to reach its attachment to the superior border of the greater trochanter.

Because of its key position in the buttock, the piriformis is the landmark of the gluteal region. The piriformis provides the key to understanding relationships in the gluteal region because it determines the names of the blood vessels and nerves (Fig. 7.41A):

- The superior gluteal vessels and nerve emerge superior to it.
- The inferior gluteal vessels and nerve emerge inferior to it.

See the Clinical Box “Injury to Sciatic Nerve” in this chapter.

OBTURATOR INTERNUS AND GEMELLI

The **obturator internus** and the **superior** and **inferior gemelli** (L. geminus, small twin) form a tricipital (three-headed) muscle, the **triceps coxae** (triceps of the hip), which occupies the gap between the piriformis and the quadratus femoris (Figs. 7.37H and 7.41A, B). The common tendon of these muscles lies horizontally in the buttocks as it passes to the greater trochanter of the femur.

The attachments, action, and innervation are described in Table 7.6. The obturator internus is located partly in the pelvis, where it covers most of the lateral wall of the lesser pelvis (Fig. 7.41B). It leaves the pelvis through the lesser sciatic foramen, makes a right-angle turn (Figs. 7.41B and 7.42D), becomes tendinous, and receives the distal attachments of the gemelli before attaching to the medial surface of the greater trochanter (trochanteric fossa) of the femur.

The small gemelli are narrow, triangular extra-pelvic reinforcements of the obturator internus. Although the inferior gemellus receives separate innervation from the nerve to the quadratus femoris, it is more realistic to consider these three muscles as a unit (i.e., the triceps coxae) because they are incapable of independent action.

The **bursa of the obturator internus** allows free movement of the muscle over the posterior border of the ischium, where the border forms the lesser sciatic notch and the trochlea over which the tendon glides as it turns (Fig. 7.40).

QUADRATUS FEMORIS

The **quadratus femoris**, a short, flat quadrangular muscle, is located inferior to the obturator internus and gemelli (Figs. 7.37H, 7.38, 7.40, and 7.41A). True to its name, the quadratus femoris is a rectangular muscle that is a strong lateral rotator of the thigh (Fig. 7.42D).

OBTURATOR EXTERNUS

Based on its location (posterior to the pectineus and the superior ends of the adductor muscles), and its innervation (obturator nerve), the obturator externus was described earlier in this chapter with the medial thigh muscles (see Fig. 7.26H; Table 7.4). However, it functions as a lateral rotator of the thigh (Fig. 7.42D), and its distal attachment is visible only during dissection of the gluteal region (Fig. 7.41B) or hip joint. That is why it is mentioned again in this context.

The belly of the obturator externus lies deep in the proximal thigh, with its tendon passing inferior to the neck of the femur and deep to the quadratus femoris, on the way to its attachment to the trochanteric fossa of the femur (Figs. 7.41B and 7.42D). The obturator externus, with other short muscles around the hip joint, stabilizes the head of the femur in the acetabulum. It is most effective as a lateral rotator of the thigh when the hip joint is flexed.

Posterior Thigh Region

The **posterior thigh muscles** and their attachments are illustrated in Figure 7.43, and their

attachments, innervation, and actions are described in Table 7.7.

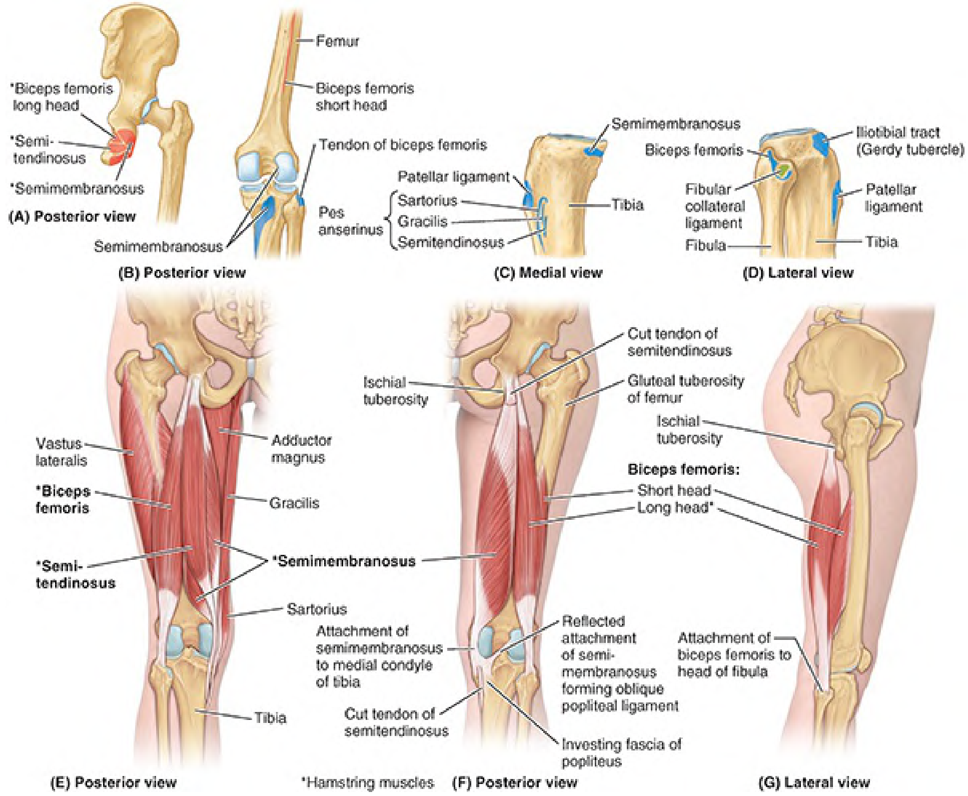


FIGURE 7.43. **Muscles of posterior thigh. A–D.** Attachments. **E.** Hamstring muscles. **F.** Semimembranosus and biceps femoris. **G.** Biceps femoris.

TABLE 7.7. MUSCLES OF POSTERIOR THIGH: EXTENSORS OF HIP AND FLEXORS OF KNEE

Muscle[a]	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[b]	Main Action[c]
Semitendinosus	Ischial tuberosity	Superior part of media surface of tibia (as part of pes anserinus)	Tibial division of sciatic nerve part of tibia (**L5**, **S1**, S2)	Extend hip joint; flex knee joint and medially rotate it when flexed. When hip and knee joints are flexed (as when sitting), these muscles can extend trunk at hip joint (to rise).
Semimembranosus		Posterior part of medial condyle of tibia. Reflected attachment forms oblique popliteal ligament (to lateral femoral condyle).		
Biceps femoris	Long head: ischial tuberosity Short head: linea aspera and lateral supracondylar line of femur	Lateral side of head of fibula. Tendon is split at this site by fibular collateral ligament of knee.	Long head: tibial division of sciatic nerve (L5, **S1**, S2) Short head: common fibular division of sciatic nerve (L5, **S1**, S2)	Flexes knee joint and laterally rotates it when flexed; long head extends hip joint (e.g., accelerating mass during first step of gait and when rising from sitting position).

[a]Collectively, these three muscles are known as hamstrings.

[b]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "L5, S1, S2" means that the nerves supplying the semitendinosus are derived from the fifth lumbar segment and first two sacral segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (**L5**, **S1**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

[c]Collectively, the muscles are listed as extensors of the hip joint and flexors of the knee joint but their actions are more complex; see the "Posture and Gait" section in this chapter.

Three of the four muscles in the posterior aspect of the thigh are hamstrings. The **hamstring muscles** (Figs. 7.43E–G and 7.44B) are (1) semitendinosus, (2) semimembranosus, and (3) biceps femoris (long head). The hamstring muscles ("hamstrings" for short) share the following common features:

- Proximal attachment to the ischial tuberosity deep to the gluteus maximus (Fig. 7.43A, E–G)
- Distal attachment to the bones of the leg (Fig. 7.43B–G)
  - Thus, they span and act on two joints, producing extension at the hip joint and flexion at the knee joint.
- Innervation by the tibial division of the sciatic nerve (Fig. 7.44A)

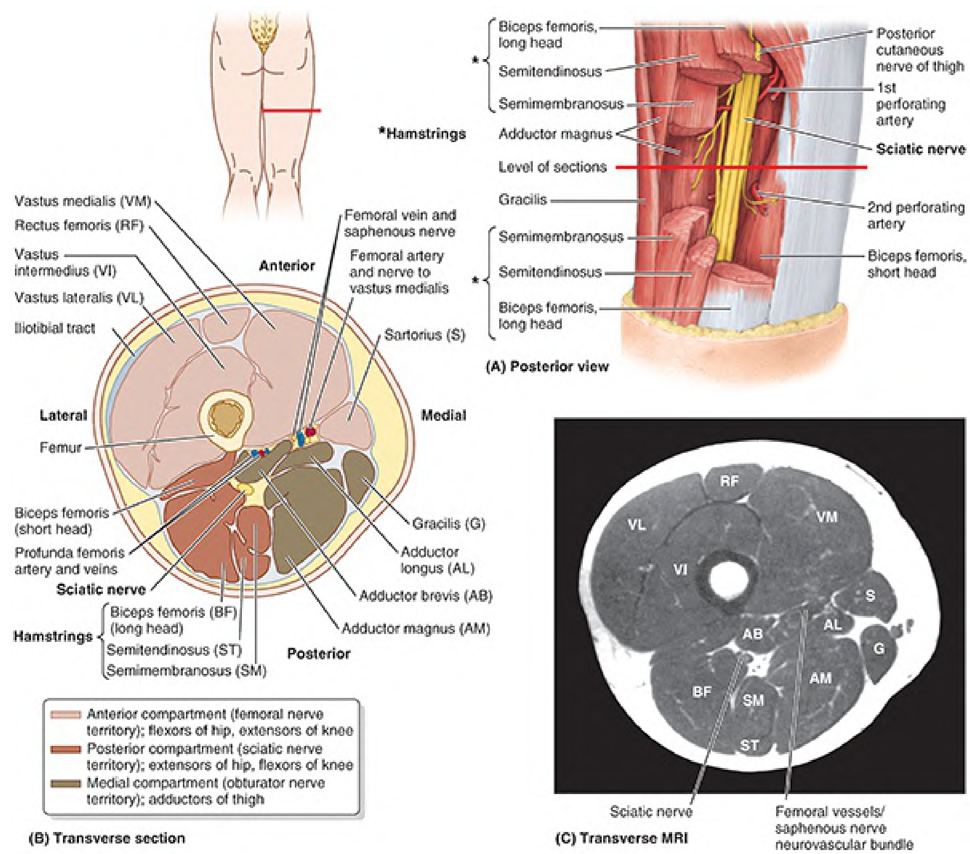


FIGURE 7.44. Muscles and fascial compartments of thigh. A. Dissection. Segments of the hamstring muscles are excised to reveal the sciatic nerve. The level of the sections shown in parts **B** and **C** is indicated. **B.** Transverse section through the middle thigh, 10–15 cm inferior to the inguinal ligament. The three compartments of the thigh are demonstrated in different shades of color. Note that each has its own nerve supply and functional group(s) of muscles. **C.** Transverse MRI of the right thigh corresponding to part **B**.

The long head of the biceps femoris meets all these conditions, but the short head of the biceps, the fourth muscle of the posterior compartment, fails to meet any of them. The "hamstrings" portion of the adductor magnus (medial compartment) meets three of these conditions but doesn't span the knee joint.

The hamstrings received their name because it is common to tie hams (pork thighs) up for curing and/or smoking using the long tendons of these muscles (Fig. 7.43E, F). This also explains the expression "hamstringing the enemy" by slashing these tendons lateral and medial to the knees.

The two actions of the hamstrings cannot be performed maximally at the same time. Full flexion of the knee requires so much shortening of the hamstrings that they cannot provide the additional contraction that would be necessary for simultaneous full extension of the thigh. Similarly, full extension of the hip shortens the hamstrings so they cannot further contract to act fully on the knee. When the thighs and legs are fixed, the hamstrings can help extend the trunk at the hip joint.

The hamstrings are active in thigh extension under all situations except full flexion of the knee, including maintenance of the relaxed standing posture (standing at ease). A person with paralyzed hamstrings tends to fall forward because the gluteus maximus muscles cannot maintain the necessary muscle tone to stand straight.

The hamstrings are the hip extensors involved in walking on flat ground, when the gluteus maximus demonstrates minimal activity. However, rather than producing either hip extension or knee flexion per se during normal walking, the hamstrings demonstrate most activity when they are eccentrically contracting, resisting (decelerating) hip flexion and knee extension during terminal swing (between midswing and heel strike) (see Fig. 7.23G; Table 7.2).

The length of the hamstrings varies, but this is usually a matter of conditioning. In some people, they are not long enough to allow them to touch their toes when the knees are extended. Routine stretch exercise can lengthen these muscles and tendons.

To test the hamstrings, the person flexes his or her leg against resistance. Normally, these muscles—especially their tendons on each side of the popliteal fossa—should be prominent as they bend the knee (see Fig. 7.51C).

SEMITENDINOSUS

The **semitendinosus**, as its name indicates, is half tendinous (Fig. 7.43E). It has a fusiform belly that is usually interrupted by a tendinous intersection and a long, cord-like tendon that begins approximately two thirds of the way down the thigh. Distally, the tendon attaches to the medial surface of the superior part of the tibia as part of the pes anserinus formation in conjunction with the tendinous insertions of the sartorius and gracilis (Fig. 7.43C; see Fig. 7.27).

SEMIMEMBRANOSUS

The **semimembranosus** is a broad muscle that is also aptly named because of the flattened membranous form of its proximal attachment to the ischial tuberosity (Fig. 7.43E, F; Table 7.7). The tendon of the semimembranosus forms around the middle of the thigh and descends to the

posterior part of the medial condyle of the tibia.

The semimembranosus tendon divides distally into three parts: (1) a direct attachment to the posterior aspect of the medial tibial condyle, (2) a part that blends with the popliteal fascia, and (3) a reflected part that reinforces the intercondylar part of the joint capsule of the knee as the **oblique popliteal ligament** (Fig. 7.43F; see Fig. 7.90B).

When the knee is flexed to 90°, the tendons of the medial hamstrings or “semi-” muscles (semitendinosus and semimembranosus) pass to the medial side of the tibia. In this position, contraction of the medial hamstrings (and of synergists including the gracilis, sartorius, and popliteus) produces a limited amount (about 10°) of medial rotation of the tibia at the knee. The two medial hamstrings are not as active as the lateral hamstring, the biceps femoris, which is the “workhorse” of extension at the hip (Hamill et al., 2022).

BICEPS FEMORIS

The fusiform **biceps femoris**, as its name indicates, has two heads: a long head and a short head (Fig. 7.43E–G). In the inferior part of the thigh, the long head becomes tendinous and is joined by the short head. The rounded common tendon of these heads attaches to the head of the fibula and can easily be seen and felt as it passes the knee, especially when the knee is flexed against resistance.

The **long head of the biceps femoris** crosses and provides protection for the sciatic nerve after it descends from the gluteal region into the posterior aspect of the thigh (Figs. 7.41A and 7.44A–C). When the sciatic nerve divides into its terminal branches, the lateral branch (common fibular nerve) continues this relationship, running with the biceps tendon.

The **short head of the biceps femoris** arises from the lateral lip of the inferior third of the linea aspera and supracondylar ridge of the femur (Fig. 7.43B, G). Whereas the hamstrings have a common nerve supply from the tibial division of the sciatic nerve, the short head of the biceps is innervated by the fibular division (Table 7.7). Because each of the two heads of the biceps femoris has a different nerve supply, a wound in the posterior thigh with nerve injury may paralyze one head and not the other.

When the knee is flexed to 90°, the tendons of the lateral hamstring (biceps), as well as the iliotibial tract, pass to the lateral side of the tibia. In this position, contraction of the biceps and tensor fasciae latae produces about 40° lateral rotation of the tibia at the knee. Rotation of the flexed knee is especially important in snow skiing.

Neurovascular Structures of Gluteal and Posterior Thigh Regions

Several important nerves arise from the sacral plexus and either supply the gluteal region (e.g., superior and inferior gluteal nerves) or pass through it to supply the perineum and thigh (e.g., the pudendal and sciatic nerves, respectively). Figure 7.45 depicts the nerves of the gluteal region and posterior thigh, and Table 7.8 describes their origin, course, and distribution

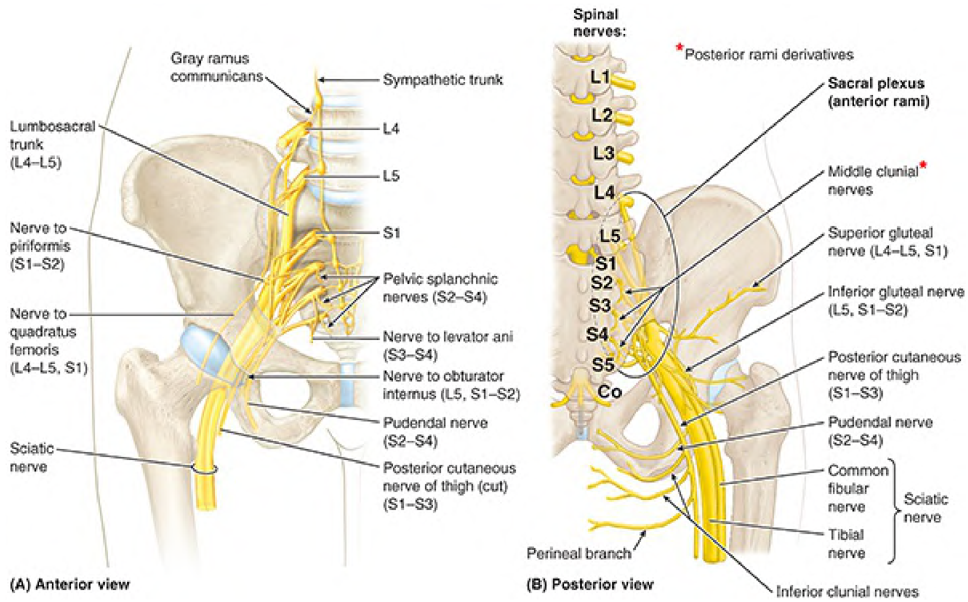


FIGURE 7.45. Nerves of gluteal and posterior thigh regions.

TABLE 7.8. NERVES OF GLUTEAL AND POSTERIOR THIGH REGIONS

Nerve	Origin	Course	Distribution
Clunial			
Superior	As lateral cutaneous branches of posterior rami of L1–L3 spinal nerves	Pass inferolaterally across iliac crest	Supply skin of superior buttocks as far as tubercle of iliac crest
Middle	As lateral cutaneous branches of posterior rami of S1–S3 spinal nerves	Exit through posterior sacral foramina and pass laterally to gluteal region	Supply skin over sacrum and adjacent area of buttocks
Inferior	Posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh (anterior rami of S2–S3 spinal nerves)	Emerges from inferior border of gluteus maximus and ascends superficial to it	Supplies skin of inferior half of buttocks as far as greater trochanter
Sciatic	Sacral plexus (anterior and posterior divisions of anterior rami of L4–S3 spinal nerves)	Enters gluteal region via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis and deep to gluteus maximus; descends in posterior thigh deep to biceps femoris; bifurcates into tibial and common fibular nerves at apex of popliteal fossa	Supplies no muscles in gluteal region; supplies all muscles of posterior compartment of thigh (tibial division supplies all but short head of biceps, which is supplied by common fibular division)
Posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh	Sacral plexus (anterior and posterior divisions of anterior rami of S1–S3 spinal nerves)	Enters gluteal region via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis and deep to gluteus maximus, emerging from inferior border of latter; descends in posterior thigh deep to fascia lata	Supplies skin of inferior half of buttocks (through inferior clunial nerves), skin over posterior thigh and popliteal fossa, and skin of lateral perineum and upper medial thigh (via its perineal branch)
Superior gluteal	Sacral plexus (posterior divisions of anterior rami of L4–S1 spinal nerves)	Enters gluteal region via greater sciatic foramen superior to piriformis; courses laterally between	Innervates gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, and tensor fasciae latae muscles

		gluteus medius and minimus as far as tensor fasciae latae	
Inferior gluteal	Sacral plexus (posterior divisions of anterior rami of L5–S2 spinal nerves)	Enters gluteal region via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis and deep to inferior part of gluteus maximus, dividing into several branches	Supplies gluteus maximus
Nerve to quadratus femoris	Sacral plexus (anterior divisions of anterior rami of L4–S1 spinal nerves)	Enters gluteal region via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis, deep (anterior) to sciatic nerve	Innervates hip joint, inferior gemellus, and quadratus femoris
Pudendal	Sacral plexus (anterior divisions of anterior rami of S2–S4 spinal nerves)	Exits pelvis via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis; descends posterior to sacrospinous ligament; enters perineum through lesser sciatic foramen	Supplies no structures in gluteal region or posterior thigh (principal nerve to perineum)
Nerve to obturator internus	Sacral plexus (anterior divisions of anterior rami of L5–S2 spinal nerves)	Exits pelvis via greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis; descends posterior to sacrospinous ligament; enters perineum through lesser sciatic foramen	Supplies superior gemellus and obturator internus

CLUNIAL NERVES

The skin of the gluteal region is richly innervated by **superior**, **middle**, and **inferior clunial nerves** (L. clunes, buttocks). These superficial nerves supply the skin over the iliac crest, between the posterior superior iliac spines, and over the iliac tubercles. Consequently, these nerves are vulnerable to injury when bone is taken from the ilium for grafting.

DEEP GLUTEAL NERVES

The deep gluteal nerves are the superior and inferior gluteal nerves, sciatic nerve, nerve to quadratus femoris, posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh, nerve to obturator internus, and pudendal nerve (Figs. 7.41A and 7.45; Table 7.8). All of these nerves are branches of the sacral plexus and leave the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen. Except for the superior gluteal nerve, they all emerge inferior to the piriformis.

Superior Gluteal Nerve. The **superior gluteal nerve** runs laterally between the gluteus medius and minimus with the deep branch of the superior gluteal artery. It divides into a superior branch that supplies the gluteus medius and an inferior branch that continues to pass between the gluteus medius and the gluteus minimus to supply both muscles and the tensor fasciae latae.

See the Clinical Box “Injury to Superior Gluteal Nerve” in this chapter.

Inferior Gluteal Nerve. The **inferior gluteal nerve** leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen, inferior to the piriformis and superficial to the sciatic nerve, accompanied by multiple branches of the inferior gluteal artery and vein. The inferior gluteal nerve also divides into several branches, which provide motor innervation to the overlying gluteus maximus.

Sciatic Nerve. The **sciatic nerve** is the largest nerve in the body and is the continuation of the

main part of the sacral plexus. The branches (rami) converge at the inferior border of the piriformis to form the sciatic nerve, a thick, flattened band approximately 2 cm wide. The sciatic nerve is the most lateral structure emerging through the greater sciatic foramen inferior to the piriformis.

Medial to the sciatic nerve are the inferior gluteal nerve and vessels, the internal pudendal vessels, and the pudendal nerve. The sciatic nerve runs inferolaterally under cover of the gluteus maximus, midway between the greater trochanter and ischial tuberosity. The nerve rests on the ischium and then passes posterior to the obturator internus, quadratus femoris, and adductor magnus muscles. The sciatic nerve is so large that it receives a named branch of the inferior gluteal artery, the **artery to the sciatic nerve**.

The sciatic nerve supplies no structures in the gluteal region. It supplies the posterior thigh muscles, all leg and foot muscles, and the skin of most of the leg and foot. It also supplies articular branches to all joints of the lower limb. The sciatic nerve is really two nerves, the tibial nerve, derived from anterior (preaxial) divisions of the anterior rami, and the common fibular nerve, derived from posterior (postaxial) divisions of the anterior rami, which are loosely bound together in the same connective tissue sheath (Figs. 7.45 and 7.46A).

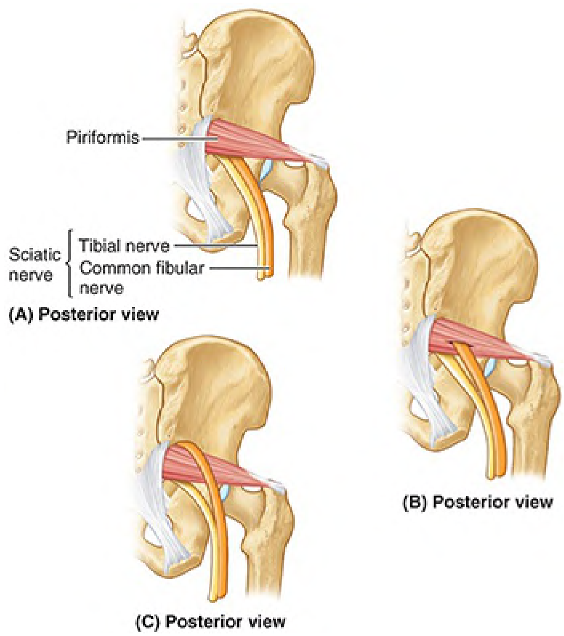


FIGURE 7.46. Relationship of sciatic nerve to piriformis. A. Inferior to piriformis. The sciatic nerve usually emerges from the greater sciatic foramen inferior to the piriformis. **B.** Common fibular division piercing piriformis. In 12.2% of 640 limbs studied by Dr. J. C. B. Grant, the sciatic nerve divided before exiting the greater sciatic foramen; the common fibular division (yellow) passed through the piriformis. **C.** Common fibular division superior to piriformis. In 0.5% of cases, the common fibular division passed superior to the muscle, where it is especially vulnerable to injury during intragluteal injections.

The tibial and common fibular nerves usually separate in the distal thigh (Fig. 7.45B); however, in approximately 12% of people, the nerves separate as they leave the pelvis (Fig. 7.46A). In these cases, the tibial nerve passes inferior to the piriformis, and the common fibular nerve pierces this muscle or passes superior to it (Fig. 7.46B, C).

Nerve to Quadratus Femoris. The **nerve to the quadratus femoris** leaves the pelvis anterior to the sciatic nerve and obturator internus and passes over the posterior surface of the hip joint (Fig. 7.45). It supplies an articular branch to this joint and innervates the inferior gemellus and quadratus femoris muscles.

Posterior Cutaneous Nerve of Thigh. The **posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh** supplies more skin than any other cutaneous nerve (Fig. 7.45; see Fig. 7.19; Table 7.1). Its fibers from the anterior divisions of S2 and S3 supply the skin of the perineum via its perineal branch. Some of the fibers from the posterior divisions of the anterior rami of S1 and S2 supply the skin of the inferior part of the buttocks (via the inferior clunial nerves). Other fibers continue inferiorly in branches that supply the skin of the posterior thigh and proximal part of the leg. Unlike most nerves bearing the name cutaneous, the main part of this nerve lies deep to the deep fascia (fascia lata), with only its terminal branches penetrating the subcutaneous tissue for distribution to the skin.

Pudendal Nerve. The pudendal nerve is the most medial structure to exit the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen. It descends inferior to the piriformis, posterolateral to the sacrospinous ligament, and enters the perineum through the lesser sciatic foramen to supply structures in this region. The pudendal nerve supplies no structures in the gluteal region or posterior thigh and is discussed in detail in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum.

Nerve to Obturator Internus. The **nerve to the obturator internus** arises from the anterior divisions of the anterior rami of the L5–S2 nerves and parallels the course of the pudendal nerve (Fig. 7.45A). As it passes around the base of the ischial spine, the nerve supplies the superior gemellus. After entering the perineum via the lesser sciatic foramen, the nerve supplies the obturator internus muscle.

ARTERIES OF GLUTEAL AND POSTERIOR THIGH REGIONS

The **arteries of the gluteal region** arise, directly or indirectly, from the internal iliac arteries, but the patterns of origin of the arteries are variable (Figs. 7.41A and 7.47; Table 7.9). The major branches of the internal iliac artery that supply or traverse the gluteal region are the (1) superior gluteal artery, (2) inferior gluteal artery, and (3) internal pudendal artery. The posterior compartment of the thigh has no major artery exclusive to the compartment; it receives blood from multiple sources: inferior gluteal, medial circumflex femoral, perforating, and popliteal arteries.

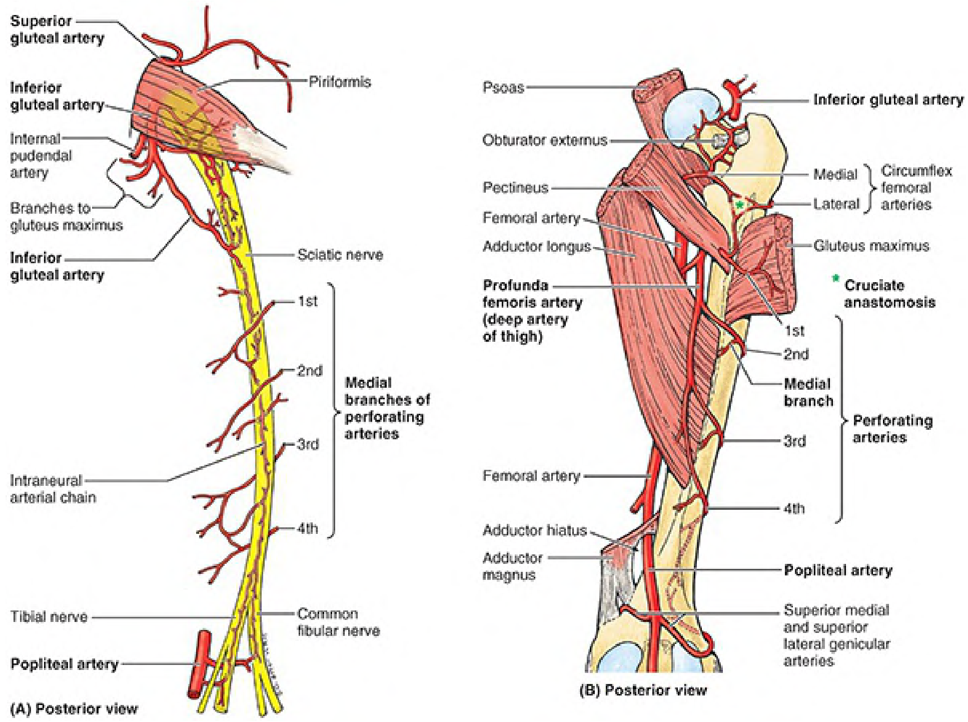


FIGURE 7.47. **Arteries of gluteal and posterior thigh regions.**

TABLE 7.9. ARTERIES OF GLUTEAL AND POSTERIOR THIGH REGIONS

Artery[a]	Course	Distribution
Superior gluteal	Enters gluteal region through greater sciatic foramen superior to piriformis; divides into superficial and deep branches; anastomoses with inferior gluteal and medial circumflex femoral arteries (not shown in Fig. 7.47)	Superficial branch: supplies gluteus maximus Deep branch: runs between gluteus medius and minimus and supplies them and tensor fasciae latae
Inferior gluteal	Enters gluteal region through greater sciatic foramen inferior to piriformis; descends on medial side of sciatic nerve (not shown in Fig. 7.47); anastomoses with superior gluteal artery and participates in cruciate anastomosis of thigh, involving first perforating artery of profunda femoris and medial and lateral circumflex arteries	Supplies gluteus maximus, obturator internus, quadratus femoris, and superior parts of hamstrings
Internal pudendal	Enters gluteal region through greater sciatic foramen; descends posterior to ischial spine; enters perineum through lesser sciatic foramen	Supplies external genitalia and muscles in perineal region; does not supply gluteal region
Perforating	Enters posterior compartment by perforating aponeurotic portion of adductor magnus attachment and medial intermuscular septum; after providing muscular branches to hamstrings, continues to anterior compartment by piercing lateral intermuscular septum	Supplies majority (central portions) of hamstring muscles and then continues to supply vastus lateralis in anterior compartment

[a]All of these arteries arise from the internal iliac artery (see Fig. 7.32A for an anterior view).

Superior Gluteal Artery. The **superior gluteal artery** is the largest branch of the internal iliac artery and passes posteriorly between the lumbosacral trunk and the S1 nerve. This artery

leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen, superior to the piriformis, and divides immediately into superficial and deep branches. The superficial branch supplies the gluteus maximus and skin over the proximal attachment of this muscle. The deep branch supplies the gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, and tensor fasciae latae. The superior gluteal artery anastomoses with the inferior gluteal and medial circumflex femoral arteries.

Inferior Gluteal Artery. The **inferior gluteal artery** arises from the internal iliac artery and passes posteriorly through the parietal pelvic fascia, between the S1 and the S2 (or S2 and S3) nerves. The inferior gluteal artery leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen, inferior to the piriformis. It enters the gluteal region deep to the gluteus maximus and descends medial to the sciatic nerve.

The inferior gluteal artery supplies the gluteus maximus, obturator internus, quadratus femoris, and superior parts of the hamstrings. It anastomoses with the superior gluteal artery and frequently, but not always, participates in the cruciate anastomosis of the thigh, involving the first perforating arteries of the profunda femoris artery and the medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries (Table 7.5). These vessels all participate in supplying the structures of the proximal posterior thigh.

Before birth, the inferior gluteal artery is the major artery of the posterior compartment, traversing its length and becoming continuous with the popliteal artery. This part of the artery diminishes, however, persisting postnatally as the artery to the sciatic nerve.

Internal Pudendal Artery. The **internal pudendal artery** arises from the internal iliac artery and lies anterior to the inferior gluteal artery. Its course parallels that of the pudendal nerve, entering the gluteal region through the greater sciatic foramen inferior to the piriformis (Fig. 7.47A). The internal pudendal artery leaves the gluteal region immediately by crossing the ischial spine/sacrospinous ligament and enters the perineum through the lesser sciatic foramen. Like the pudendal nerve, it supplies the skin, external genitalia, and muscles in the perineal region. It does not supply any structures in the gluteal region or posterior thigh.

Perforating Arteries. There are usually four **perforating arteries** of the profunda femoris artery, three arising in the anterior compartment and the fourth being the terminal branch of the profunda femoris artery itself (Fig. 7.47A, B; Table 7.9). The perforating arteries are large vessels, unusual in the limbs for their transverse, intercompartmental course.

Surgeons operating in the posterior compartment are careful to identify them to avoid inadvertent injury. They perforate the aponeurotic portion of the distal attachment of the adductor magnus to enter the posterior compartment. Within the posterior compartment, they typically give rise to muscular branches to the hamstrings and anastomotic branches that ascend or descend to unite with those arising superiorly or inferiorly from the other perforating arteries or the inferior gluteal and popliteal artery.

A continuous anastomotic arterial chain thus extends from the gluteal to popliteal regions, which gives rise to additional branches to muscles and to the sciatic nerve (Fig. 7.47A). After giving off their posterior compartment branches, the perforating arteries pierce the lateral intermuscular septum to enter the anterior compartment, where they supply the vastus lateralis muscle.

VEINS OF GLUTEAL AND POSTERIOR THIGH REGIONS

The **gluteal veins** are tributaries of the internal iliac veins that drain blood from the gluteal region. The **superior and inferior gluteal veins** accompany the corresponding arteries through the greater sciatic foramen, superior and inferior to the piriformis, respectively (Fig. 7.48A). They communicate with tributaries of the femoral vein, thereby providing alternative routes for the return of blood from the lower limb (e.g., if the femoral vein is occluded or has to be ligated).

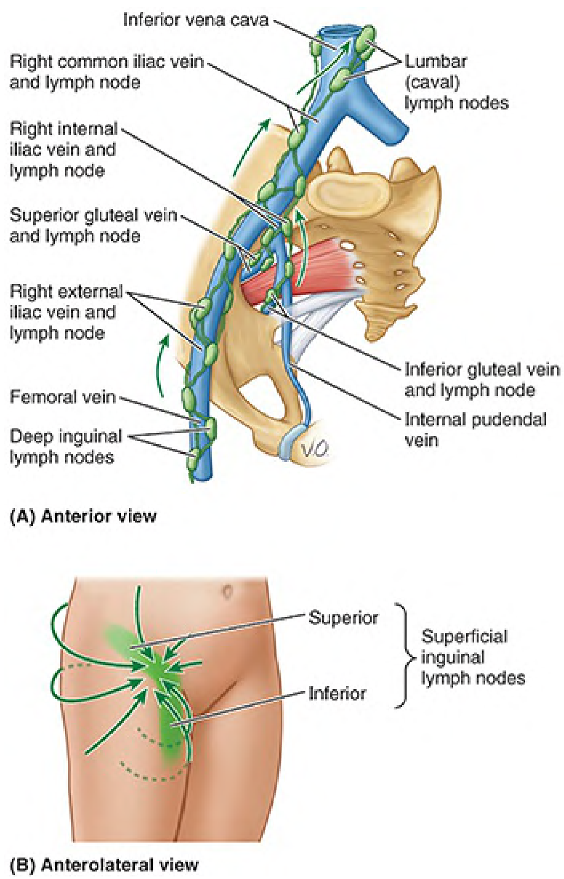


FIGURE 7.48. Lymphatic drainage of gluteal and thigh regions. A. Deep lymphatic drainage. Lymph from the deep tissues of the gluteal region enters the pelvis along the gluteal veins, draining to the superior and inferior gluteal lymph nodes; from them, it passes to the iliac and lateral lumbar (caval/aortic) lymph nodes. **B.** Superficial lymphatic drainage. Lymph from superficial tissues of the gluteal region passes initially to the superficial inguinal nodes, which also receive lymph from the thigh. Lymph from all the superficial inguinal nodes passes via efferent lymph vessels to the external and common iliac, and right and left lumbar (caval/aortic) lymph nodes, draining via lumbar lymphatic trunks to the cisterna chyli and thoracic duct.

The **internal pudendal veins** accompany the internal pudendal arteries and join to form a single vein that enters the internal iliac vein. These veins drain blood from the external genitalia or pudendum (L. pudere, ashamed). Perforating veins accompany the arteries of the same name to drain blood from the posterior compartment of the thigh into the profunda femoris vein. The perforating veins, like the arteries, usually communicate inferiorly with the popliteal vein and superiorly with the inferior gluteal vein.

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE OF GLUTEAL AND THIGH REGIONS

Lymph from the deep tissues of the buttocks follows the gluteal vessels to the **superior** and **inferior gluteal lymph nodes**, and from them to the internal, external, and common iliac lymph nodes (Fig. 7.48A) and from them to the lateral lumbar (aortic/caval) lymph nodes.

Lymph from the superficial tissues of the gluteal region enters the superficial inguinal lymph nodes, which also receive lymph from the thigh (Fig. 7.48A, B). All the superficial inguinal nodes send efferent lymphatic vessels to the external iliac lymph nodes.

In terms of the vascular supply to the lower limb as a whole, the majority of the arterial blood coming to the limb and most of the venous blood and lymph exiting from it pass along the more protected anteromedial aspect of the limb.

Flexor muscles are generally better protected than are extensor muscles, the latter being exposed and therefore vulnerable in the flexed, defensive (fetal) position (vertebral column and limbs flexed).

Surface Anatomy of Gluteal and Posterior Thigh Regions

The skin of the gluteal region is usually thick and coarse, especially in men, whereas the skin of the thigh is relatively thin and loosely attached to the underlying subcutaneous tissue. A line joining the highest points of the iliac crests (Fig. 7.49A) crosses the L4–L5 intervertebral (IV) disc and is a useful landmark when a lumbar spinal puncture is performed (see Chapter 2, Back), indicating the middle of the lumbar cistern.

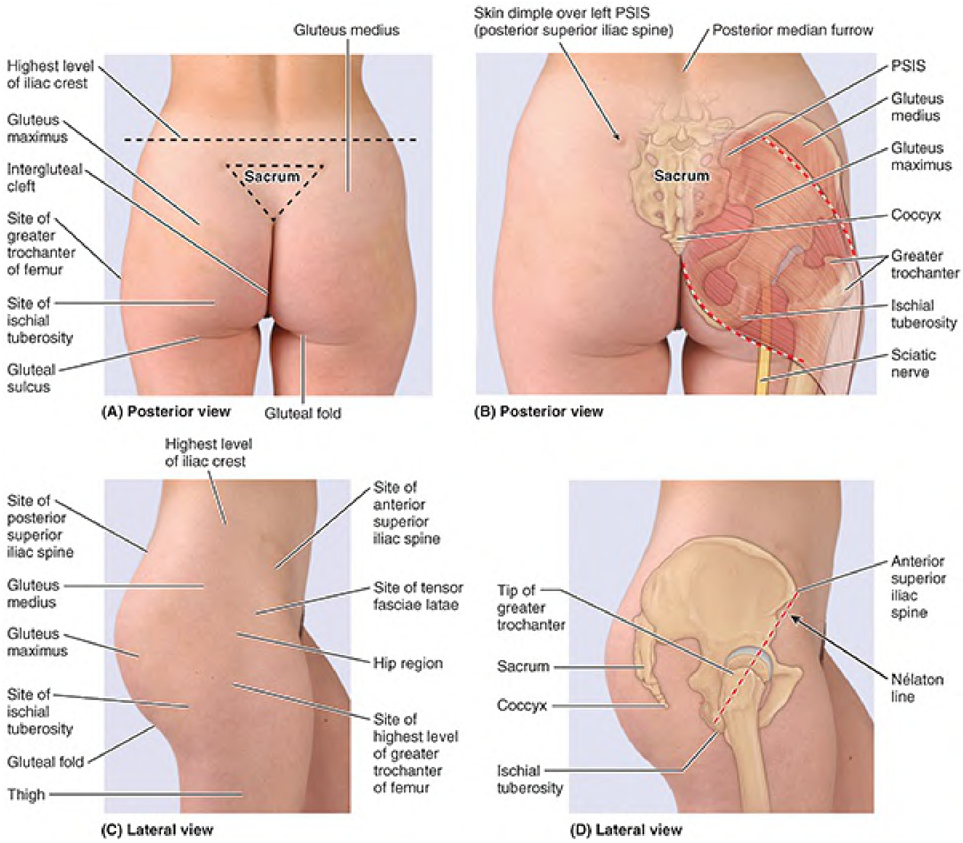


FIGURE 7.49. **Surface anatomy of gluteal region.**

The intergluteal cleft, beginning inferior to the apex of the sacrum, is the deep groove between the buttocks. It extends as far superiorly as the S3 or S4 segment. The coccyx is palpable in the superior part of the intergluteal cleft.

The posterior superior iliac spines (PSIS) are located at the posterior extremities of the iliac crests and may be difficult to palpate; however, their position can always be located at the bottom of the permanent skin dimples approximately 3.75 cm from midline (Fig. 7.49B). A line joining these dimples, often more visible in women than in men, passes through the S2 spinous process, indicating the level of the lowest limit of the dural sac (see Figs. 2.41 and B2.25), the middle of the sacro-iliac joints, and the bifurcation of the common iliac arteries (see Fig. 7.15A).

The location of only two of the gluteal muscles can be observed. The gluteus maximus covering most structures in the gluteal region can be felt to contract when straightening up from bending over. The inferior edge of this large muscle is located just superior to the gluteal fold, which contains a variable amount of subcutaneous fat (Fig. 7.49A, C). The gluteal fold disappears when the hip joint is flexed. The degree of prominence of the gluteal fold changes in certain abnormal conditions, such as atrophy of the gluteus maximus. An imaginary line drawn from the coccyx to the ischial tuberosity indicates the inferior edge of the gluteus maximus (Fig. 7.49B). Another line drawn from the PSIS to a point slightly superior to the greater trochanter indicates the superior edge of this muscle.

The **gluteal sulcus**, the skin crease inferior to the gluteal fold, delineates the buttocks from the posterior aspect of the thigh (Fig. 7.49A, B). When the thigh is extended as in the figures, the

ischial tuberosity is covered by the inferior part of the gluteus maximus; however, the tuberosity is easy to palpate when the thigh is flexed because the gluteus maximus slips superiorly off the tuberosity, which is then subcutaneous. Feel the ischial tuberosity as you bend to sit.

The superior part of the gluteus medius can be palpated between the superior part of the gluteus maximus and the iliac crest (Figs. 7.49B and 7.50A, B). The gluteus medius of one buttock can be felt when all the body weight shifts onto the ipsilateral limb (the one on the same side).

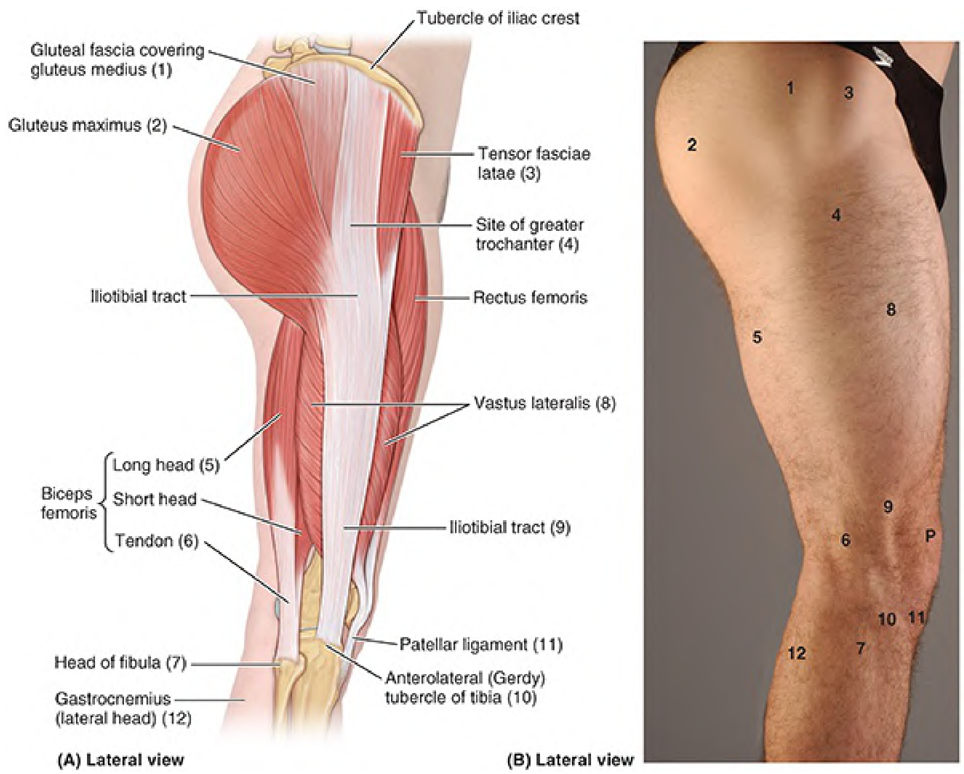


FIGURE 7.50. Surface anatomy of hip region and lateral thigh. P, patella.

The greater trochanter, the most lateral bony point in the gluteal region, may be felt on the lateral aspect of the hip, especially its inferior part (Fig. 7.49A–C). It is easier to palpate when you passively abduct your lower limb to relax the gluteus medius and minimus. The top of the greater trochanter lies approximately a hand's breadth inferior to the tubercle of the iliac crest (Fig. 7.50).

The prominence of the trochanter increases when a dislocated hip causes atrophy of the gluteal muscles and displacement of the trochanter. A line drawn over the lateral hip region from the ASIS to the ischial tuberosity (Nélaton line) normally passes over or near the top of the greater trochanter (Fig. 7.49D). The trochanter can be felt superior to this line in a person with a dislocated hip or a fractured femoral neck. The lesser trochanter is palpable with difficulty from the posterior aspect when the thigh is extended and rotated medially.

The surface marking of the superior border of the piriformis is indicated by a line joining the skin dimple formed by the posterior superior iliac spine to the superior border of the greater

trochanter of the femur (Fig. 7.51A).

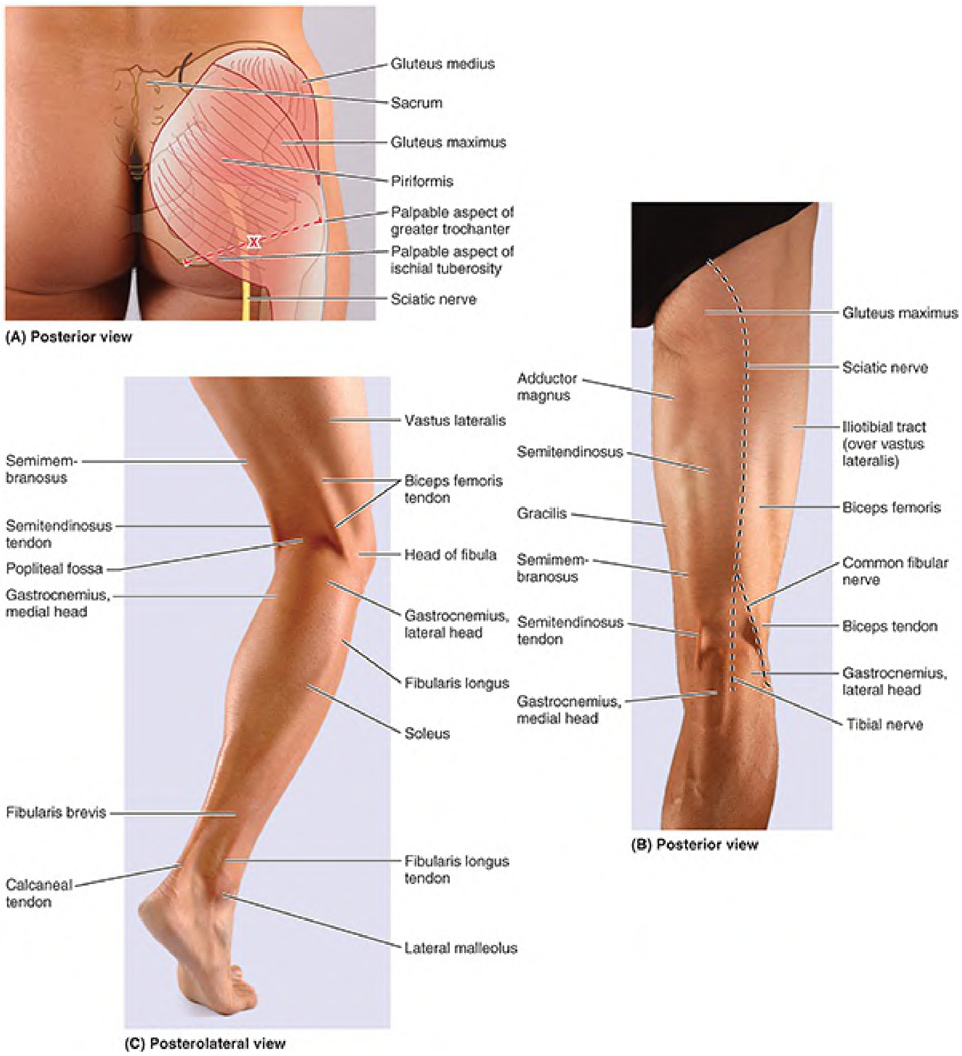


FIGURE 7.51. Surface anatomy of gluteal region and posterior thigh. A. Surface projection of piriformis and sciatic nerve. **B.** Hamstring muscles. The hip and knee joints are extended with muscles actively tensed following exercise to provide muscle definition. **C.** Popliteal fossa and leg. Weight is being borne by the right limb while the hip, knee, and metatarsophalangeal joints are in a flexed position.

The sciatic nerve, the most important structure inferior to the piriformis, is represented by a line that extends from a point midway between the greater trochanter and ischial tuberosity (Fig. 7.51A) down the middle of the posterior aspect of the thigh (Fig. 7.51B). The level of the bifurcation of the sciatic nerve into the tibial and common fibular nerves varies. The separation usually occurs between the middle and inferior third of the thigh. Less commonly, the division of the sciatic nerve occurs as it passes through the greater sciatic foramen (Fig. 7.46C). The sciatic nerve stretches when the thigh is flexed and the knee is extended, and it relaxes when the thigh is extended and the knee is flexed.

The tibial nerve bisects the popliteal fossa. The common fibular nerve follows the tendon of the biceps femoris.

The hamstrings can be felt as a group as they arise from the ischial tuberosity and extend along the lateral and posterior aspects of the thigh (Fig. 7.51B, C). The iliotibial tract, the fibrous band that reinforces the fascia lata laterally, can be observed on the lateral aspect of the thigh as it passes to the lateral tibial condyle (Fig. 7.50A, B).

While sitting down with your lower limb extended, raise your heel off the floor and feel the anterior border of the iliotibial tract passing a finger's breadth posterior to the lateral border of the patella. Note that the iliotibial tract is prominent and taut when the heel is raised and indistinct when the heel is lowered.

The tendons of the hamstrings can be observed and palpated at the borders of the popliteal fossa, the depression between the tendons at the back of the flexed knee (Fig. 7.51B, C). The biceps femoris tendon is on the lateral side of the fossa. The most lateral tendon on the medial side when the knee is flexed against resistance is the semimembranosus tendon.

While sitting on a chair with your knee flexed, press your heel against the leg of the chair and feel your biceps femoris tendon laterally and trace it to the head of the fibula. Also feel the narrow and more prominent semitendinosus tendon medially, which pulls away from the semimembranosus tendon that attaches to the superomedial part of the tibia.

See the Clinical Box "Hamstring Injuries" below.

CLINICAL BOX

GLUTEAL AND POSTERIOR THIGH REGIONS

Trochanteric Bursitis

Trochanteric bursitis, inflammation of the trochanteric bursa (see Fig. 7.40), may result from repetitive actions such as climbing stairs while carrying heavy objects or running on a steeply elevated treadmill. These movements involve the gluteus maximus and move the superior tendinous fibers repeatedly back and forth over the bursae of the greater trochanter. Trochanteric bursitis causes deep diffuse pain in the lateral thigh region.

This type of friction bursitis is characterized by point tenderness over the great trochanter; however, the pain radiates along the iliotibial tract that extends from the iliac tubercle to the tibia (see Figs. 7.39 and 7.50). This thickening of the fascia lata receives tendinous reinforcements from the tensor fasciae latae and gluteus maximus muscles. The pain from an inflamed trochanteric bursa, usually localized just posterior to the greater trochanter, is generally elicited by manually resisting abduction and lateral rotation of the thigh while the person is lying on the unaffected side.

Ischial Bursitis

Recurrent microtrauma resulting from repeated stress (e.g., as from cycling, rowing, or other activities involving repetitive hip extension while seated) may overwhelm the ability of the ischial bursa (see Fig. 7.40) to dissipate applied stress. The recurrent trauma results in inflammation of the bursa (ischial bursitis).

Ischial bursitis is a friction bursitis resulting from excessive friction between the ischial bursae and the ischial tuberosities. Localized pain occurs over the bursa, and the pain increases with movement of the gluteus maximus. Calcification may occur in the bursa with chronic bursitis. Because the ischial tuberosities bear the body's weight during sitting, these pressure points may lead to pressure sores in debilitated people, particularly paraplegic persons with poor nursing care.

Hamstring Injuries

Hamstring strains (pulled and/or torn hamstrings) are common in individuals who run and/or kick hard (e.g., in running, jumping, and quick-start sports such as baseball, basketball, football, and soccer). The violent muscular exertion required to excel in these sports may avulse (tear) part of the proximal tendinous attachments of the hamstrings to the ischial tuberosity. Hamstring strains are twice as common as quadriceps strains.

Usually, thigh strains are accompanied by contusion (bruising) and tearing of muscle fibers, resulting in rupture of the blood vessels supplying the muscles. The resultant hematoma is contained by the dense stocking-like fascia lata.

Tearing of hamstring fibers is often so painful when the athlete moves or stretches the leg that the person falls and writhes in pain. These injuries often result from inadequate warming up before practice or competition.

Avulsion (tearing away) of the ischial tuberosity at the proximal attachment of the biceps femoris and semitendinosus may result from forcible flexion of the hip with the knee extended (e.g., kicking a football). (See Fig. B7.1 and the Clinical Box "Injuries of Hip Bone" in this chapter.)

Injury to Superior Gluteal Nerve

Injury to this nerve results in a characteristic motor loss, resulting in a disabling gluteus medius limp, to compensate for weakened abduction of the thigh by the gluteus medius and minimus, and/or a gluteal gait, a compensatory list of the body to the weakened gluteal side. This compensation places the center of gravity over the supporting lower limb. Medial rotation of the thigh is also severely impaired. When a standing person is asked to lift one foot off the ground and stand on one foot, the gluteus medius and minimus normally contract as soon as the contralateral foot leaves the floor, preventing tipping of the pelvis to the unsupported side (Fig. B7.19A, B).

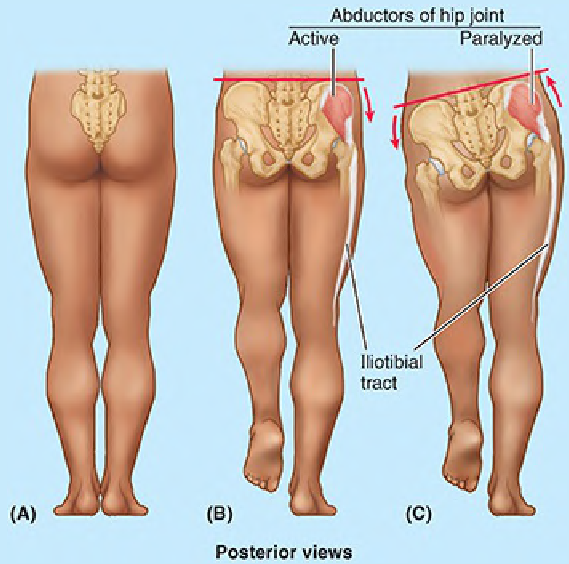


FIGURE B7.19. Paralysis of abductors of hip joint.

When a person who has suffered a lesion of the superior gluteal nerve is asked to stand on one leg, the pelvis on the unsupported side descends (Fig. B7.19C), indicating that the gluteus medius and minimus on the supported side are weak or nonfunctional. This sign is referred to clinically as a positive Trendelenburg test. Other causes of this sign include fracture of the greater trochanter (the distal attachment of gluteus medius) and dislocation of the hip joint.

When the pelvis descends on the unsupported side, the lower limb becomes, in effect, too long and does not clear the ground when the foot is brought forward in the swing phase of walking. To compensate, the individual leans away from the unsupported side, raising the pelvis to allow adequate room for the foot to clear the ground as it swings forward. This results in a characteristic "waddling" or gluteal gait.

Other ways to compensate is to lift the foot higher as it is brought forward, resulting in the so-called steppage gait, or to swing the foot outward (laterally), the so-called swing-out gait. These same gaits are adopted to compensate for the footdrop that results from common fibular nerve paralysis. (See these abnormal gaits illustrated in Fig. B7.21 of the Clinical Box "Injury to Common Fibular Nerve and Footdrop" in this chapter.)

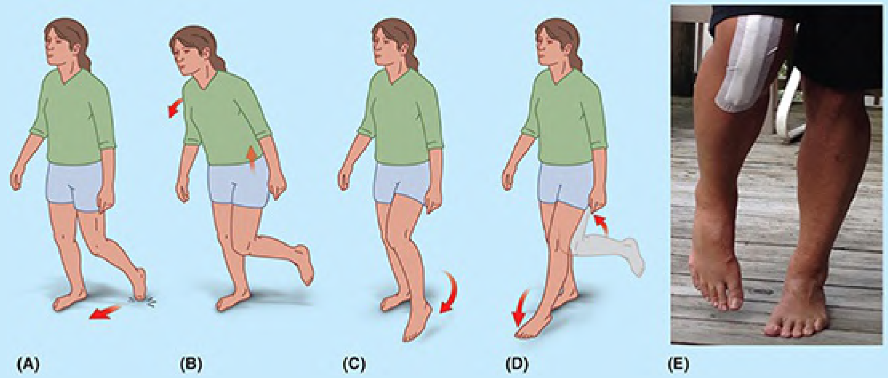


FIGURE B7.21. **Footdrop.**

Regional Anesthesia of Sciatic Nerve

Sensation conveyed by the sciatic nerve and adjacent posterior femoral cutaneous nerves can be blocked by the injection of an anesthetic agent a few centimeters inferior to the midpoint of the line joining the posterior superior iliac spine (PSIS) and the superior border of the greater trochanter. The resulting area of anesthesia (numbness to pain) includes the posterior aspect of the thigh, anterior and posterolateral aspects of the leg, and the sole of the foot, since the sciatic nerve gives rise to the fibular and tibial (and derivative plantar) nerves.

Injury to Sciatic Nerve

A pain in the buttocks may result from compression of the sciatic nerve by the piriformis (piriformis syndrome). Individuals involved in sports that require excessive use of the gluteal muscles (e.g., ice skaters, cyclists, and rock climbers) and women are more likely to develop this syndrome. In approximately 50% of cases, the histories indicate trauma to the buttocks associated with hypertrophy (increase in bulk) and spasm of the piriformis. In approximately 12% of people in whom the common fibular division of the sciatic nerve passes through the piriformis (see Fig. 7.46B), this muscle may compress the nerve.

Complete section of the sciatic nerve is uncommon; however, when it occurs, the leg is useless because extension of the hip is impaired, as is flexion of the leg. All ankle and foot movements are also lost.

Incomplete section of the sciatic nerve (e.g., from stab wounds) may also involve the inferior gluteal and/or the posterior femoral cutaneous nerves. Recovery from a lesion of the sciatic nerve is slow and usually incomplete.

With respect to the sciatic nerve, the buttocks have a side of safety (its lateral side) and a side of danger (its medial side). Wounds or surgery on the medial side of the buttocks may injure the sciatic nerve and its branches to the hamstrings (semitendinosus, semimembranosus, and biceps femoris) on the posterior aspect of the thigh. Paralysis of

these muscles results in impairment of thigh extension and leg flexion.

Intragluteal Injections

The gluteal region (buttocks) is a common site for intramuscular (IM) injection of drugs. Gluteal IM injections penetrate the skin, fascia, and muscles. The gluteal region is a common injection site because the muscles are thick and large; consequently, they provide a substantial volume for absorption of injected substances by intramuscular veins. It is important to be aware of the extent of the gluteal region and the safe region for giving injections. Some people restrict the area of the buttocks to the most prominent part. This misunderstanding may be dangerous because the sciatic nerve lies deep to this area (Fig. B7.20A).

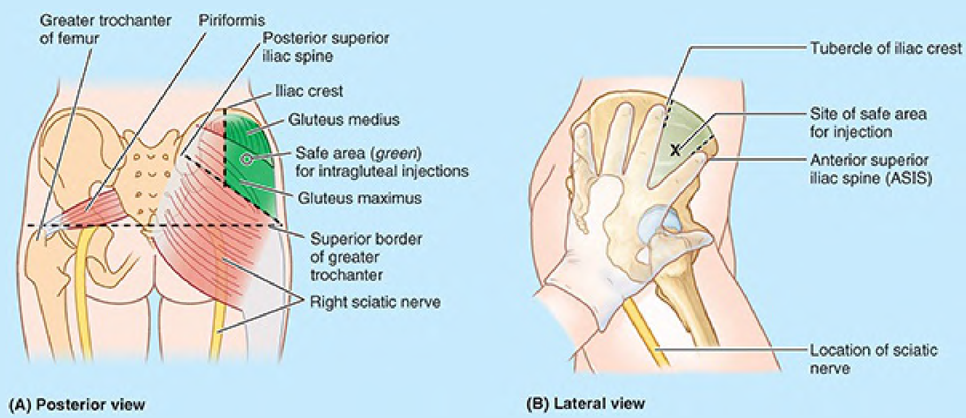


FIGURE B7.20. Safe area for intragluteal injection.

Injections into the buttocks are safe only in the superolateral quadrant of the buttocks or superior to a line extending from the PSIS to the superior border of the greater trochanter (approximating the superior border of the gluteus maximus).

IM injections can also be given safely into the anterolateral part of the thigh, where the needle enters the gluteus medius or tensor fasciae latae (see Fig. 7.50A) as it extends distally from the iliac crest and ASIS. The index finger is placed on the ASIS, and the fingers are spread posteriorly along the iliac crest until the tubercle of the crest is felt by the middle finger (Fig. B7.20B). An IM injection can be made safely in the triangular area between the fingers (just anterior to the proximal joint of the middle finger) because it is superior to the sciatic nerve. Complications of improper technique include nerve injury, hematoma, and abscess formation.

The Bottom Line: Gluteal and Posterior Thigh Regions

Gluteal region: The femur is bent at the angle of inclination, creating a relatively transverse lever formed by the proximal femur. ■ This enables superior placement of the

abductors of the thigh and provides mechanical advantage for the deeper medial and lateral rotators of the thigh, critical for bipedal locomotion. ■ Despite their designations, the abductors/medial rotators (the superficial gluteal muscles) are most active during the stance phase, when they simultaneously elevate and advance the contralateral unsupported side of the pelvis during ambulation. ■ The lateral rotators (deep gluteal muscles) of the unsupported side rotate the free limb during the swing phase so that the foot remains parallel to the line of advancement.

Posterior femoral region: Although they have only about two thirds the strength of the gluteus maximus, the hamstrings are the main extensors of the hip used in normal walking. ■ The hamstrings are two-joint muscles, and their concentric contraction produces either extension of the hip or flexion of the knee. ■ However, in walking, the hamstrings are most active in eccentrically contracting to decelerate hip flexion and knee extension during terminal swing. ■ The hamstrings also rotate the tibia when the knee is flexed. ■ If resistance to hip extension is increased or more vigorous extension is required, the gluteus maximus is called into action.

Neurovascular structures of gluteal and posterior femoral regions: Because it overlies the major doorway (greater sciatic foramen) by which derivatives of the sacral plexus exit the bony pelvis, the gluteal region includes a disproportionate number of nerves of all sizes, both motor and sensory. ■ Most nerves are in the inferomedial quadrant; thus, properly administered IM injections avoid these structures. ■ Because the sciatic nerve includes fibers from the L4–S3 spinal nerves, it is affected by the most common nerve compression syndromes (e.g., radiculopathies [disorders] of the L4 and L5 spinal nerve roots; see Chapter 2, Back). ■ Even though occurring outside the lower limb per se, these syndromes result in sciatica—pain that radiates down the lower limb along the course of the sciatic nerve and its terminal branches. ■ Pain experienced in the lower limb may not necessarily arise from a problem in the limb! ■ Arteries and veins serving the gluteal region and the proximal part of the posterior compartment of the thigh are branches and tributaries of the internal iliac artery and vein that pass to and from the region via the greater sciatic foramen. ■ All but the superior gluteal vessels exit the greater sciatic foramen inferior to the piriformis muscle. ■ Although the pudendal vessels follow the same route, they traverse the gluteal region only briefly en route to and from the perineum via the lesser sciatic foramen. ■ The posterior compartment of the thigh does not have a major artery coursing through it with primary responsibility for the compartment. Rather, branches from several arteries in other compartments supply it.

POPLITEAL FOSSA AND LEG

Popliteal Region

The popliteal fossa is a mostly fat-filled compartment of the lower limb. Superficially, when the knee is flexed, the popliteal fossa is evident as a diamond-shaped depression posterior to the knee joint (Fig. 7.52). The size of the gap between the hamstring and gastrocnemius muscles is misleading, however, in terms of the actual size and extent of the fossa. Deeply, it is much larger than the superficial depression indicates because the heads of the gastrocnemius forming the inferior boundary superficially form a roof over the inferior half of the deep part. When the knee is extended, the fat within the fossa protrudes through the gap between muscles, producing a rounded elevation flanked by shallow, longitudinal grooves overlying the hamstring tendons. In dissection, if the heads of the gastrocnemius are separated and retracted (Fig. 7.53), a much larger space is revealed.

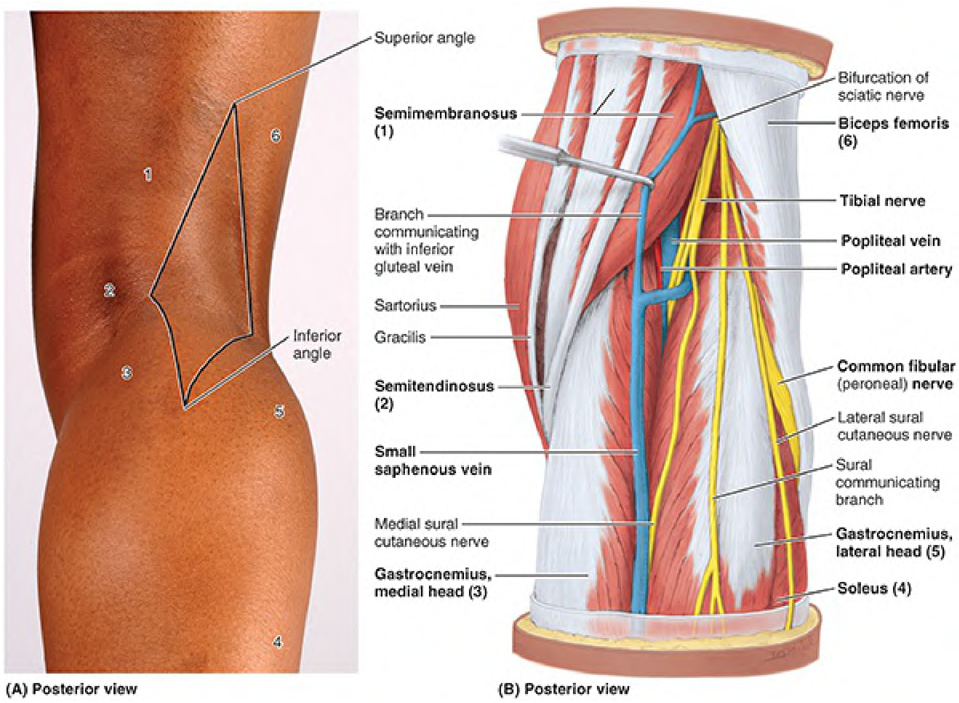


FIGURE 7.52. Superficial popliteal region. A. Surface anatomy. Numbers on the surface anatomy refer to structures identified in part **B**. The diamond-shaped gap in the roof of the popliteal fossa, formed by the overlying muscles, is outlined. **B.** Superficial dissection. Muscles cover most of the popliteal fossa.

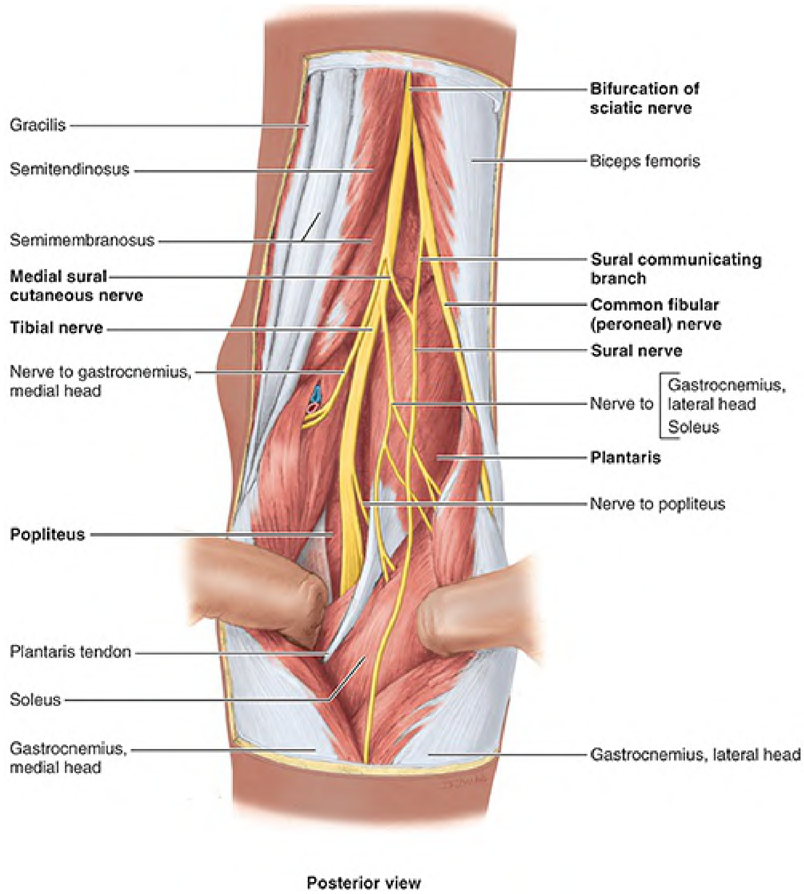


FIGURE 7.53. Dissection of nerves of popliteal fossa. The two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle have been separated and are being retracted. The sciatic nerve separates into its components at the apex of the popliteal fossa. The common fibular nerve courses along the medial border of the biceps femoris. All the motor branches arising from the tibial nerve, except one, arise from the lateral side; consequently, in surgery, it is safer to dissect on the medial side. The level at which the medial sural cutaneous nerve and sural communicating branch merge to form the sural nerve—occurring high here—is quite variable; it may even occur at the level of the ankle.

Superficially, the popliteal fossa is bounded

- superolaterally by the biceps femoris (superolateral border)
- superomedially by the semimembranosus, lateral to which is the semitendinosus (superomedial border)
- inferolaterally and inferomedially by the lateral and medial heads of the gastrocnemius, respectively (inferolateral and inferomedial borders)
- posteriorly by skin and popliteal fascia (roof)

Deeply, the superior boundaries are formed by the diverging medial and lateral supracondylar lines of the femur. The inferior boundary is formed by the soleal line of the tibia (see Fig. 7.4B). These boundaries surround a relatively large diamond-shaped floor (anterior wall), formed by the **popliteal surface of the femur** superiorly, the posterior aspect of the joint capsule of the knee joint centrally, and the investing **popliteus fascia** covering the popliteus muscle inferiorly (Fig. 7.54).

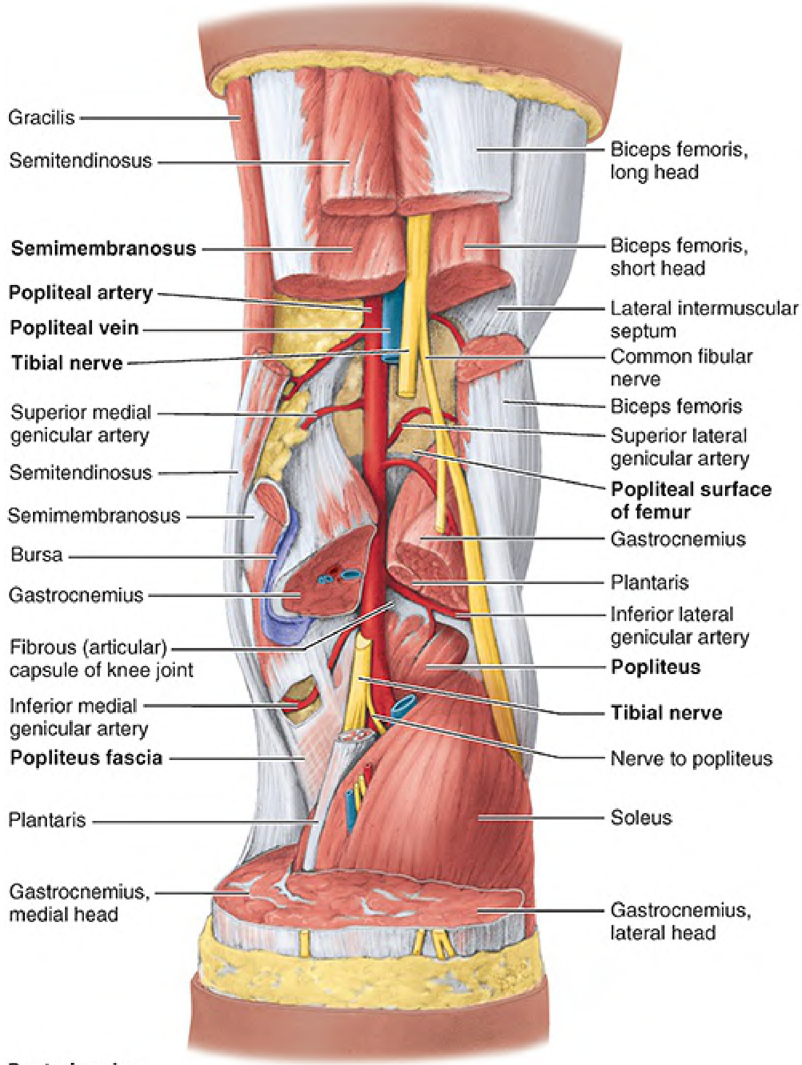


FIGURE 7.54. Deep dissection of popliteal fossa. The popliteal artery runs on the floor of the fossa, formed by the popliteal surface of the femur, the joint capsule of the knee, and the investing fascia of the popliteus.

The contents of the popliteal fossa (Figs. 7.52B, 7.53, and 7.54) include the

- termination of the small saphenous vein
- popliteal arteries and veins and their branches and tributaries
- tibial and common fibular nerves
- posterior cutaneous nerve of thigh (see Fig. 7.45B)
- popliteal lymph nodes and lymphatic vessels (see Fig. 7.17B)

FASCIA OF POPLITEAL FOSSA

The subcutaneous tissue (superficial fascia) overlying the popliteal fossa may contain the small saphenous vein (see Fig. 7.14B; unless it has penetrated the deep fascia of the leg at a more inferior level) and up to three cutaneous nerves: the terminal branch(es) of the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh and the medial and lateral sural cutaneous nerves (Fig. 7.52B).

The **popliteal fascia** is a strong sheet of deep fascia, continuous superiorly with the fascia lata and inferiorly with the deep fascia of the leg (see Fig. 7.14B). The popliteal fascia forms a protective covering for neurovascular structures passing from the thigh through the popliteal fossa to the leg and a relatively loose but functional retaining "retinaculum" (retaining band) for the hamstring tendons. Often, the fascia is pierced by the small saphenous vein.

When the leg extends, the fat within the fossa is relatively compressed as the popliteal fascia becomes taut, and the semimembranosus muscle moves laterally, providing further protection to the contents of the fossa.

The contents, most important the popliteal artery and lymph nodes, are most easily palpated with the knee semiflexed. Because of the deep fascial roof and osseofibrous floor, the fossa is a relatively confined space. Many disorders produce swelling of the fossa, making knee extension painful. (See the Clinical Boxes "Popliteal Abscess and Tumor," "Popliteal Aneurysm and Hemorrhage," and "Popliteal Cysts" in this chapter.)

NEUROVASCULAR STRUCTURES AND RELATIONSHIPS IN POPLITEAL FOSSA

All important neurovascular structures that pass from the thigh to the leg do so by traversing the popliteal fossa. Progressing from superficial to deep (posterior to anterior) within the fossa, as in dissection, the nerves are encountered first and then the veins. The arteries lie deepest, directly on the popliteal surface of the femur, joint capsule, and investing fascia of the popliteus forming the floor of the fossa (Fig. 7.54).

Nerves in Popliteal Fossa. The sciatic nerve usually ends at the superior angle of the popliteal fossa by dividing into the tibial and common fibular nerves (Figs. 7.52B, 7.53, and 7.54).

The **tibial nerve** is the medial, larger terminal branch of the sciatic nerve derived from anterior (preaxial) divisions of the anterior rami of the L4–S3 spinal nerves. The tibial nerve is the most superficial of the three main central components of the popliteal fossa (i.e., nerve, vein, and artery); however, it is still in a deep and protected position. The tibial nerve bisects the fossa as it passes from its superior to its inferior angle.

While in the fossa, the tibial nerve gives branches to the soleus, gastrocnemius, plantaris, and popliteus muscles. The **medial sural cutaneous nerve** is also derived from the tibial nerve in the popliteal fossa. It is joined by the **sural communicating branch of the common fibular nerve** at a highly variable level to form the sural nerve. This nerve supplies the lateral side of the leg and ankle.

The **common fibular** (peroneal) **nerve** is the lateral, smaller terminal branch of the sciatic nerve derived from posterior (postaxial) divisions of the anterior rami of the L4–S2 spinal nerves. The common fibular nerve begins at the superior angle of the popliteal fossa and follows closely the medial border of the biceps femoris and its tendon along the superolateral boundary of the fossa. The nerve leaves the fossa by passing superficial to the lateral head of the gastrocnemius and then passes over the posterior aspect of the head of the fibula. The common fibular nerve winds around the neck of the fibula and divides into its terminal branches.

The most inferior branches of the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh supply the skin that overlies the popliteal fossa (see Fig. 7.45B). The nerve traverses most of the length of the posterior compartment of the thigh deep to the fascia lata; only its terminal branches enter the subcutaneous tissue as cutaneous nerves.

Blood Vessels in Popliteal Fossa. The **popliteal artery**, the continuation of the femoral artery (Figs. 7.54 and 7.55), begins when the latter passes through the adductor hiatus (see Figs. 7.15A, F; 7.32A, B; and 7.47A). The popliteal artery passes inferolaterally through the fossa and ends at the inferior border of the popliteus by dividing into the anterior and posterior tibial arteries. The deepest (most anterior) structure in the fossa, the popliteal artery, runs in close proximity to the joint capsule of the knee as it spans the intercondylar fossa.

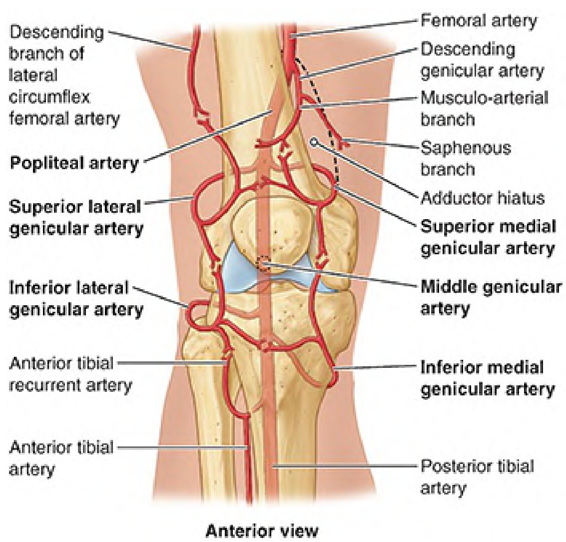


FIGURE 7.55. Genicular anastomosis. The many arteries making up the peri-articular anastomosis around the knee provide an important collateral circulation for bypassing the popliteal artery when the knee joint has been maintained too long in a fully flexed position or when the vessels are narrowed or occluded.

Five genicular branches of the popliteal artery supply the capsule and ligaments of the knee joint. The genicular arteries are the **superior lateral**, **superior medial**, **middle**, **inferior lateral**, and **inferior medial genicular arteries** (Fig. 7.55). They participate in the formation of the peri-articular **genicular anastomosis**, a network of vessels surrounding the knee that provides collateral circulation capable of maintaining blood supply to the leg during full knee flexion, which may kink the popliteal artery. Other contributors to this important genicular anastomosis are the

- **descending genicular artery**, a branch of the femoral artery, superomedially
- **descending branch of the lateral femoral circumflex artery**, superolaterally
- **anterior tibial recurrent artery**, a branch of the anterior tibial artery, inferolaterally

Muscular branches of the popliteal artery supply the hamstring, gastrocnemius, soleus, and plantaris muscles. The superior muscular branches of the popliteal artery have clinically important anastomoses with the terminal part of the profunda femoris and gluteal arteries.

The **popliteal vein** begins at the distal border of the popliteus as a continuation of the

posterior tibial vein (Fig. 7.54). Throughout its course, the vein lies close to the popliteal artery, lying superficial to it in the same fibrous sheath. The popliteal vein is initially posteromedial to the artery and lateral to the tibial nerve. More superiorly, the popliteal vein lies posterior to the artery, between this vessel and the overlying tibial nerve. Superiorly, the popliteal vein, which has several valves, becomes the femoral vein as it traverses the adductor hiatus. The small saphenous vein passes from the posterior aspect of the lateral malleolus to the popliteal fossa, where it pierces the deep popliteal fascia and enters the popliteal vein.

Lymph Nodes in Popliteal Fossa. The **superficial popliteal lymph nodes** are usually small and lie in the subcutaneous tissue. A lymph node lies at the termination of the small saphenous vein and receives lymph from the lymphatic vessels that accompany this vein (see Fig. 7.17B). The **deep popliteal lymph nodes** surround the vessels and receive lymph from the joint capsule of the knee and the lymphatic vessels that accompany the deep veins of the leg. The lymphatic vessels from the popliteal lymph nodes follow the femoral vessels to the deep inguinal lymph nodes.

Anterior Compartment of Leg

ORGANIZATION OF LEG

The bones of the leg (tibia and fibula) that connect the knee and ankle, and the three fascial compartments (anterior, lateral, and posterior compartments of the leg), formed by the anterior and posterior intermuscular septa, the interosseous membrane, and the two leg bones to which they attach, were discussed at the beginning of this chapter and are illustrated in cross section in Figure 7.56. The muscles of each compartment share common functions and innervations.

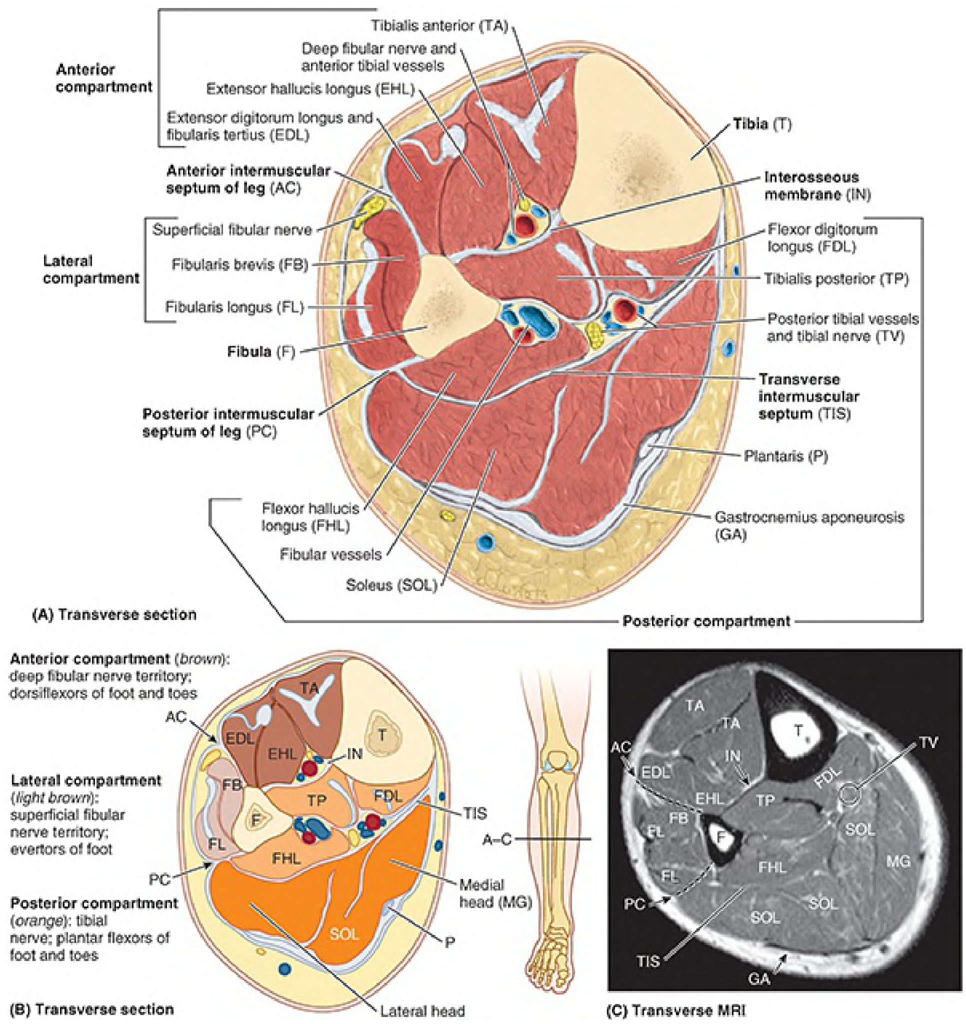


FIGURE 7.56. Compartments of leg. A. Anatomical transverse section at midcalf level. The anterior (dorsiflexor or extensor) compartment contains four muscles (the fibularis tertius lies inferior to the level of this section). The lateral (fibular) compartment contains two evertor muscles. The posterior (plantarflexor or flexor) compartment, containing seven muscles, is subdivided by an intracompartmental transverse intermuscular septum into a superficial group of three (two of which are commonly tendinous/aponeurotic at this level) and a deep group of four. The popliteus (part of the deep group) lies superior to the level of this section. **B.** Overview of compartments of leg. **C.** MRI of the leg. Abbreviations are defined in the labels for parts **A** and **B**.

The **anterior compartment of the leg**, or dorsiflexor (extensor) compartment, is located anterior to the interosseous membrane, between the lateral surface of the shaft of the tibia and the medial surface of the shaft of the fibula.

The anterior compartment is bounded anteriorly by the deep fascia of the leg and skin. The deep fascia overlying the anterior compartment is dense superiorly, providing part of the proximal attachment of the muscle immediately deep to it. With unyielding structures on three sides (the two bones and the interosseous membrane) and a dense fascia on the remaining side, the relatively small anterior compartment is especially confined and therefore most susceptible to compartment syndromes (see the Clinical Box "Containment and Spread of Compartmental Infections in Leg" in this chapter).

Inferiorly, two band-like thickenings of the fascia form **retinacula** that bind the tendons of the

anterior compartment muscles before and after they cross the ankle joint, preventing them from bowstringing anteriorly during dorsiflexion of the joint (Fig. 7.57):

1. The **superior extensor retinaculum** is a strong, broad band of deep fascia, passing from the fibula to the tibia, proximal to the malleoli.
2. The **inferior extensor retinaculum**, a Y-shaped band of deep fascia, attaches laterally to the anterosuperior surface of the calcaneus. It forms a strong loop around the tendons of the fibularis tertius and the extensor digitorum longus muscles.

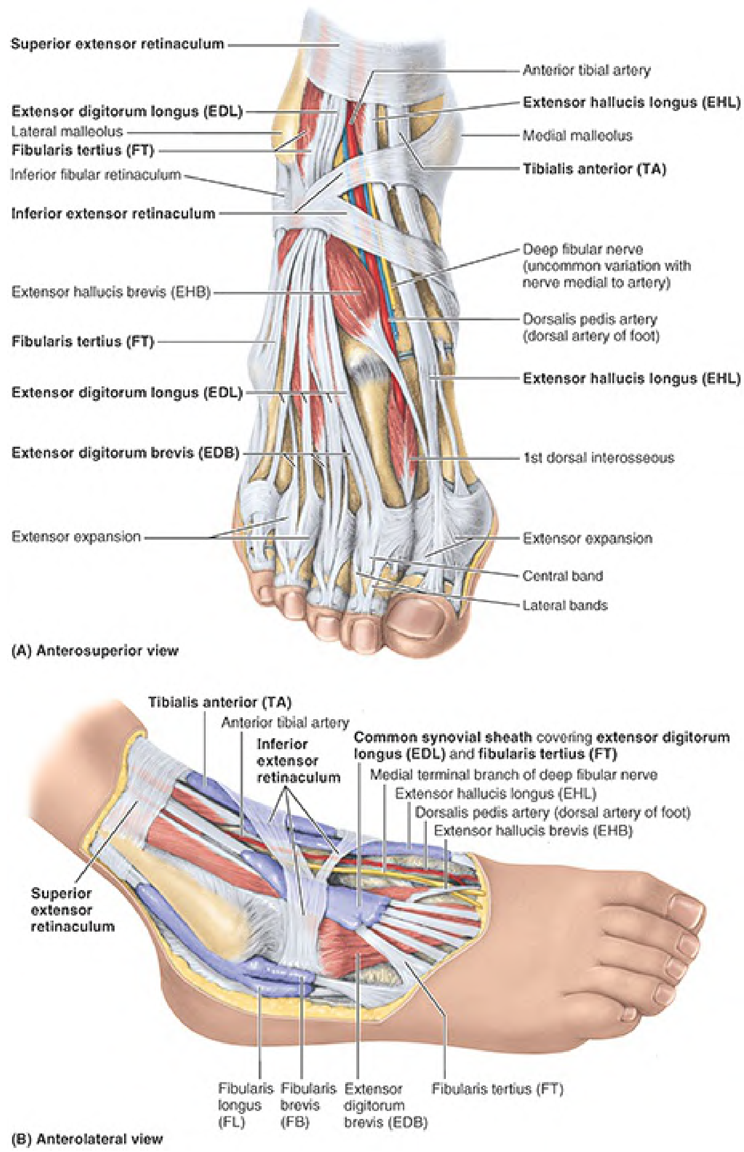


FIGURE 7.57. Dissections of foot. These dissections demonstrate the continuation of the anterior and lateral leg muscles into the foot. The thinner portions of the deep fascia of the leg have been removed, leaving the thicker portions that make up the extensor and fibular retinacula, which retain the tendons as they cross the ankle. **A.** Dorsum of foot. The vessels and nerves are cut short. At the ankle, the vessels and the deep fibular nerve lie midway between the malleoli and between the tendons of the long extensors of the toes. **B.** Synovial sheaths. Synovial sheaths surround the tendons as they pass beneath the retinacula of the ankle.

MUSCLES OF ANTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF LEG

The four muscles in the anterior compartment of the leg are the tibialis anterior, extensor digitorum longus, extensor hallucis longus, and fibularis tertius (Figs. 7.56A, B and 7.58; Table 7.10). These muscles pass and insert anterior to the transversely oriented axis of the ankle (talocrural) joint and, therefore, are **dorsiflexors of the ankle joint**, elevating the forefoot and depressing the heel. The long extensors also pass along and attach to the dorsal aspect of the digits and are thus extensors (elevators) of the toes.

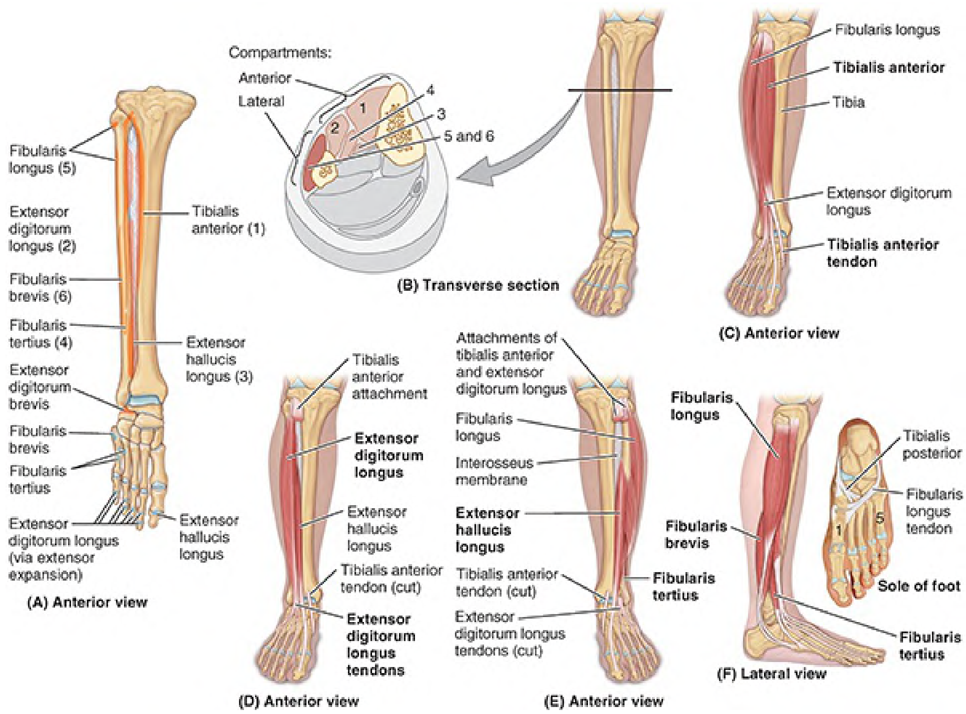


FIGURE 7.58. Muscles of anterior and lateral compartments of leg. A. Attachments. **B.** Schematic transverse section. Numbers refer to Table 7.10. **C and D.** Anterior compartment. **E and F.** Lateral compartment.

TABLE 7.10. MUSCLES OF ANTERIOR AND LATERAL COMPARTMENTS OF LEG

Muscle[a]	**Proximal Attachment**	**Distal Attachment**	**Innervation**[b]	**Main Action**[c]
Anterior compartment				
Tibialis anterior (1)	Lateral condyle and superior half of lateral surface of tibia and interosseous membrane	Medial and inferior surfaces of medial cuneiform and base of 1st metatarsal	Deep fibular nerve (**L4**, L5)	Dorsiflexes ankle joint and inverts subtalar joint
Extensor digitorum longus (2)	Lateral condyle of tibia and superior three quarters of medial surface of fibula and interosseous membrane	Middle and distal phalanges of lateral four digits	Deep fibular nerve (L5, S1)	Extends lateral four digits and dorsiflexes ankle joint
Extensor hallucis longus (3)	Middle part of anterior surface of fibula and interosseous membrane	Dorsal aspect of base of distal phalanx of great toe (hallux)		Extends great toe and dorsiflexes ankle joint

Fibularis tertius (4)	Inferior third of anterior surface of fibula and interosseous membrane	Dorsum of base of 5th metatarsal		Dorsiflexes ankle joint and aids in eversion of subtalar joint
Lateral compartment				
Fibularis longus (5)	Head and superior two thirds of lateral surface of fibula	Base of 1st metatarsal and medial cuneiform	Superficial fibular nerve (**L5**, **S1**, S2)	Everts subtalar joint and weakly plantarflexes ankle joint
Fibularis brevis (6)	Inferior two thirds of lateral surface of fibula	Dorsal surface of tuberosity on lateral side of base of 5th metatarsal		

[a]Numbers refer to Figure 7.58A, B.

[b]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "L4, L5" means that the nerves supplying the tibialis anterior are derived from the fourth and fifth lumbar segments of the spinal cord). Numbers in boldface (**L4**) indicate the main segmental innervation. Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

[c]Collectively, the muscles are listed as dorsiflexors of the ankle joint and extensors of the digits but their actions are more complex; see the "Posture and Gait" section in this chapter.

Although it is a relatively weak and short movement—only about a quarter the strength of plantarflexion (Soderberg, 1997), with a range of about 20° from neutral—dorsiflexion is actively used in the swing phase of walking, when concentric contraction keeps the forefoot elevated to clear the ground as the free limb swings forward (see Fig. 7.23F, G and Table 7.2). Immediately after, in the stance phase, eccentric contraction of the tibialis anterior controls the lowering of the forefoot to the floor following heel strike (see Fig. 7.23A and Table 7.2). The latter is important to a smooth gait and is important to deceleration (braking) relative to running and walking downhill. During standing, the dorsiflexors reflexively pull the leg (and thus the center of gravity) anteriorly on the fixed foot when the body starts to lean (the center of gravity begins to shift too far) posteriorly. When descending a slope, especially if the surface is loose (sand, gravel, or snow), dorsiflexion is used to "dig in" one's heels.

Tibialis Anterior. The **tibialis anterior** (**TA**), the most medial and superficial dorsiflexor, is a slender muscle that lies against the lateral surface of the tibia (Figs. 7.56 and 7.59). The long tendon of TA begins halfway down the leg and descends along the anterior surface of the tibia. Its tendon passes within its own synovial sheath deep to the superior and inferior extensor retinacula (Fig. 7.57) to its attachment on the medial side of the foot. In so doing, its tendon is located farthest from the axis of the ankle joint, giving it the most mechanical advantage and making it the strongest dorsiflexor. Although antagonists at the ankle joint, TA and the tibialis posterior (in the posterior compartment) both cross the subtalar and transverse tarsal joints to attach to the medial border of the foot. Thus, they act synergistically to invert the foot.

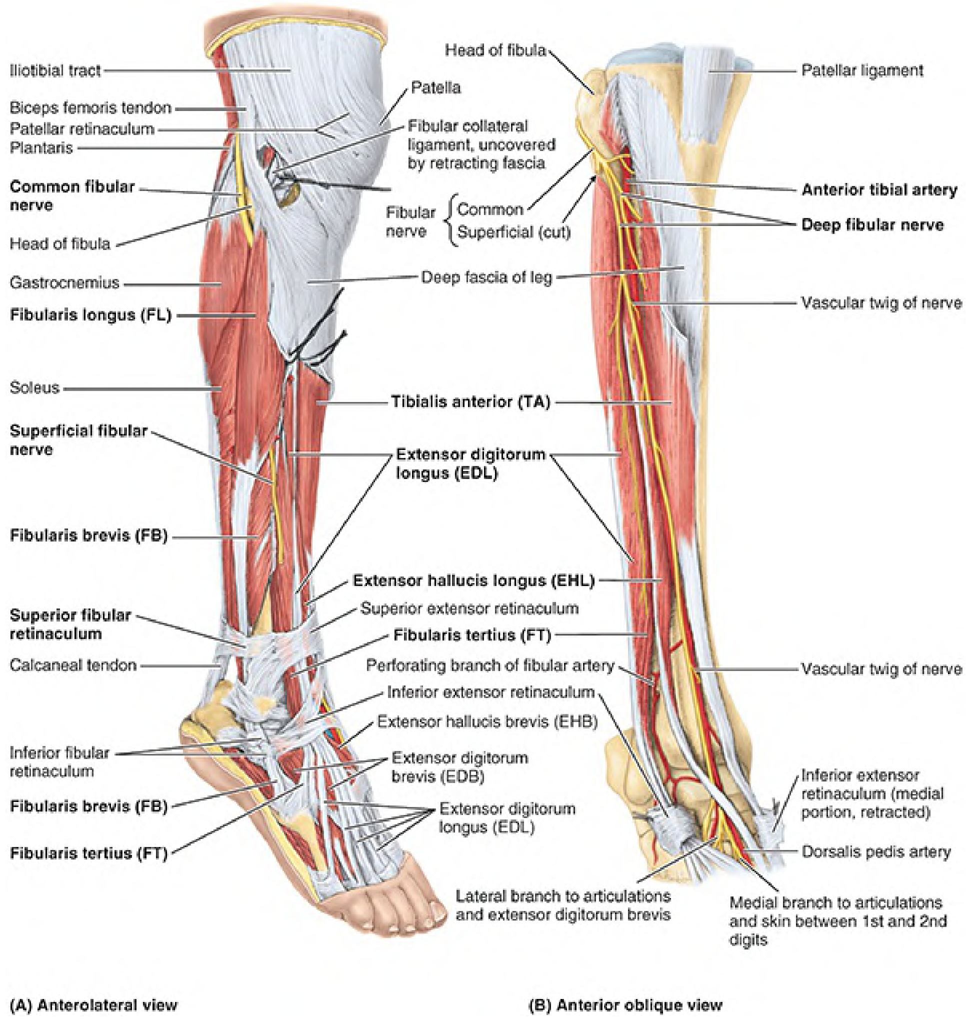


FIGURE 7.59. Dissections of anterior and lateral compartments of leg. A. Superficial dissection. This dissection shows the muscles of the anterolateral leg and dorsum of the foot. The common fibular nerve, coursing subcutaneously across the lateral aspect of the head and neck of the fibula, is the most commonly injured peripheral nerve. **B.** Deep dissection. The anterior compartment, the muscles, and inferior extensor retinaculum are retracted to display the arteries and nerves.

To test the TA, the person is asked to stand on their heels or dorsiflex the foot against resistance; if normal, its tendon can be seen and palpated.

Extensor Digitorum Longus. The **extensor digitorum longus** (**EDL**) is the most lateral of the anterior leg muscles (Figs. 7.56, 7.57, 7.58, and 7.59). A small part of the proximal attachment of the muscle is to the lateral tibial condyle; however, most of it attaches to the medial surface of the fibula and the superior part of the anterior surface of the interosseous membrane (Fig. 7.58A; Table 7.10).

The EDL becomes tendinous superior to the ankle, forming four tendons that attach to the phalanges of the lateral four toes. A common synovial sheath surrounds the four tendons of the EDL (plus that of the fibularis tertius) as they diverge on the dorsum of the foot and pass to their distal attachments (Fig. 7.57B).

Each tendon of EDL forms a membranous extensor expansion (dorsal aponeurosis) over the

dorsum of the proximal phalanx of the toe, which divides into two lateral bands and one central band (Fig. 7.57A). The central band inserts into the base of the middle phalanx, and the lateral slips converge to insert into the base of the distal phalanx.

To test the EDL, the lateral four toes are dorsiflexed against resistance; if acting normally, the tendons can be seen and palpated.

Fibularis Tertius. The **fibularis tertius** (**FT**) is a separated part of EDL, which shares its synovial sheath (Figs. 7.57 and 7.59). Proximally, the attachments and fleshy parts of the EDL and FT are continuous; however, distally, the FT tendon is separate and attaches to the 5th metatarsal, not to a phalanx (Fig. 7.58F; Table 7.10). Although FT contributes (weakly) to dorsiflexion, it also acts at the subtalar and transverse tarsal joints, contributing to eversion (pronation) of the foot. It may play a special proprioceptive role in sensing sudden inversion and then contracting reflexively to protect the anterior tibiofibular ligament, the most commonly sprained ligament of the body. FT is not always present.

Extensor Hallucis Longus. The **extensor hallucis longus** (**EHL**) is a thin muscle that lies deeply between the TA and EDL at its superior attachment to the middle half of the fibula and interosseous membrane (Fig. 7.58E; Table 7.10). EHL rises to the surface in the distal third of the leg, passing deep to the extensor retinacula (Figs. 7.57 and 7.59). It courses distally along the crest of the dorsum of the foot to the great toe.

To test the EHL, the great toe is dorsiflexed against resistance; if acting normally, its entire tendon can be seen and palpated.

NERVE OF ANTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF LEG

The **deep fibular** (peroneal) **nerve** is the nerve of the anterior compartment (Figs. 7.56A, 7.59B, and 7.60A; Table 7.11). It is one of the two terminal branches of the common fibular nerve, arising between the fibularis longus muscle and the neck of the fibula. After its entry into the anterior compartment, the deep fibular nerve accompanies the anterior tibial artery, first between the TA and EDL and then between the TA and EHL. The deep fibular nerve then exits the compartment, continuing across the ankle joint to supply intrinsic muscles (extensors digitorum and hallucis brevis), and a small area of the skin of the foot. A lesion of this nerve results in an inability to dorsiflex the ankle (footdrop).

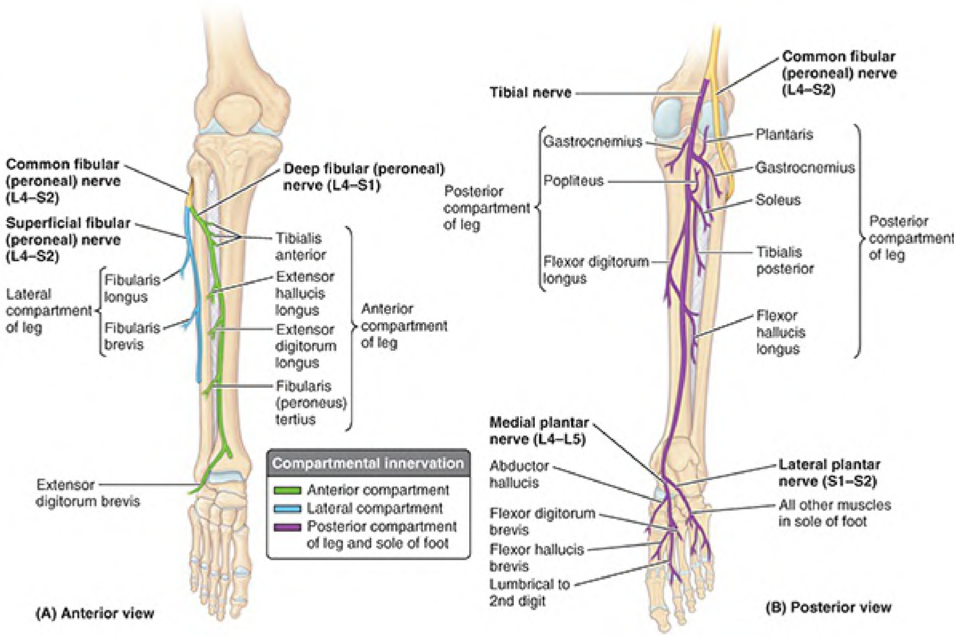


FIGURE 7.60. Motor nerves of leg.

TABLE 7.11. NERVES OF LEG

Nerve	Origin	Course	Distribution in Leg
Saphenous	Femoral nerve	Descends with femoral vessels through femoral triangle and adductor canal and then descends with great saphenous vein	Supplies skin on medial side of ankle and foot
Sural	Usually arises from branches of both tibial and common fibular nerves	Descends between heads of gastrocnemius and becomes superficial at middle of leg; descends with small saphenous vein and passes inferior to lateral malleolus to lateral side of foot	Supplies skin on posterior and lateral aspects of leg and lateral side of foot
Tibial	Sciatic nerve	Forms as sciatic bifurcates at apex of popliteal fossa; descends through popliteal fossa and lies on popliteus; runs inferiorly on tibialis posterior with posterior tibial vessels; terminates beneath flexor retinaculum by dividing into medial and lateral plantar nerves	Supplies posterior muscles of leg and knee joint
Common fibular (peroneal)	Sciatic nerve	Forms as sciatic bifurcates at apex of popliteal fossa and follows medial border of biceps femoris and its tendon; passes over posterior aspect of head of fibula and then winds around neck of fibula deep to fibularis longus, where it divides into deep and superficial fibular nerves	Supplies skin on lateral part of posterior aspect of leg via the lateral sural cutaneous nerve; also supplies knee joint via its articular branch
Superficial fibular (peroneal)	Common fibular nerve	Arises between fibularis longus and neck of fibula and descends in lateral compartment of leg; pierces deep fascia at distal third of leg to become subcutaneous	Supplies fibularis longus and brevis and skin on distal third of anterior surface of leg and dorsum of foot
Deep fibular (peroneal)	Common fibular nerve	Arises between fibularis longus and neck of fibula; passes through extensor digitorum longus and descends on interosseous	Supplies anterior muscles of leg, dorsum of foot, and skin of first interdigital cleft; sends articular

		membrane; crosses distal end of tibia and enters dorsum of foot	branches to joints it crosses

ARTERY IN ANTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF LEG

The **anterior tibial artery** supplies structures in the anterior compartment (Figs. 7.56A, 7.61B, and 7.62; Table 7.12). The smaller terminal branch of the popliteal artery, the anterior tibial artery, begins at the inferior border of the popliteus muscle (i.e., as the popliteal artery passes deep to the tendinous arch of the soleus). The artery immediately passes anteriorly through a gap in the superior part of the interosseous membrane to descend on the anterior surface of this membrane between the TA and EDL muscles. At the ankle joint, midway between the malleoli, the anterior tibial artery changes names, becoming the dorsalis pedis artery (dorsal artery of the foot).

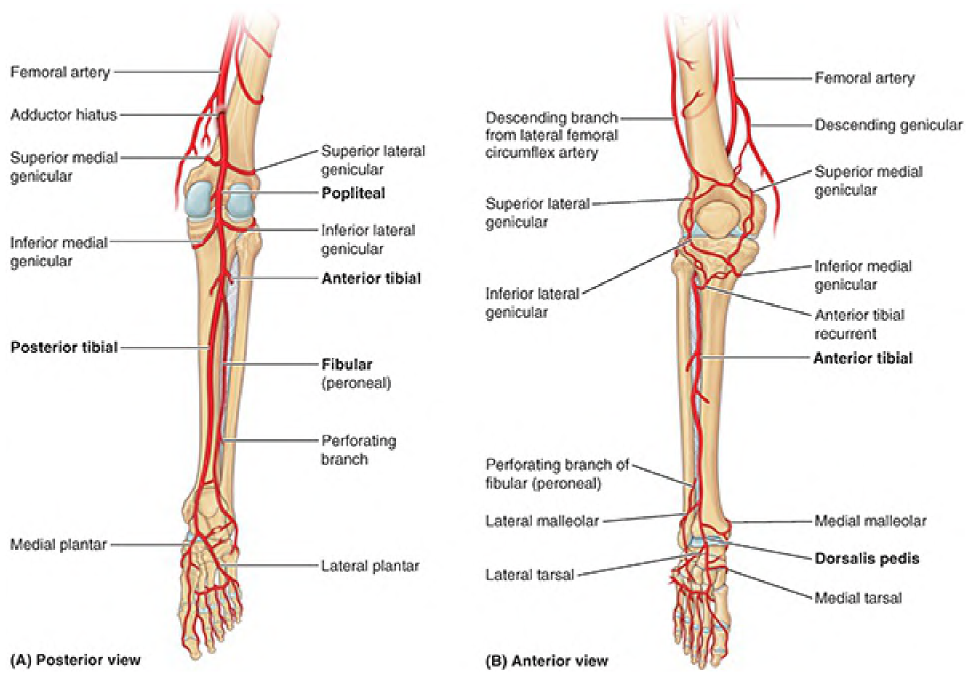


FIGURE 7.61. **Arteries of leg.**

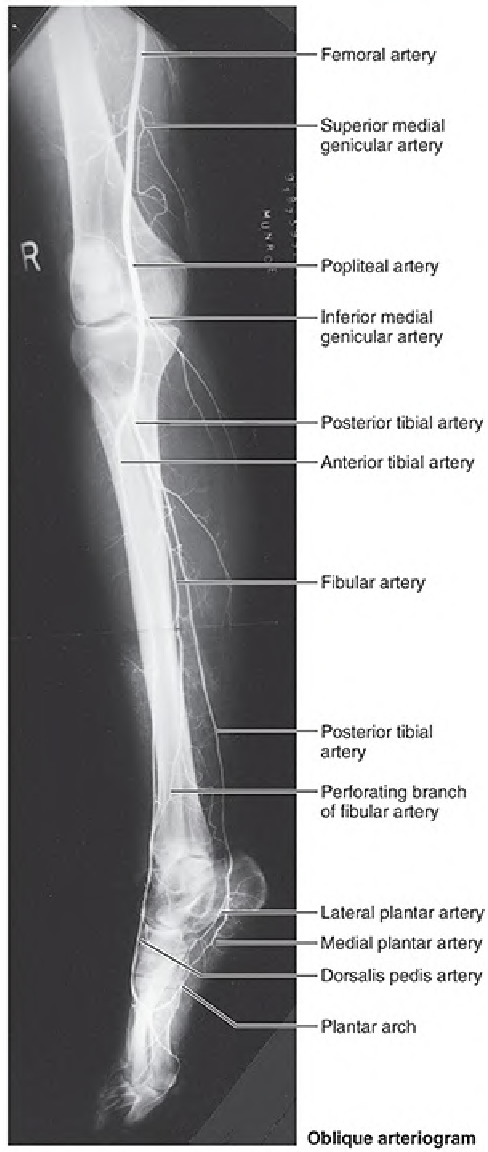


FIGURE 7.62. **Popliteal arteriogram.** The popliteal artery begins at the site of the adductor hiatus (where it may be compressed) and then lies successively on the distal end of the femur, joint capsule of the knee joint, and popliteus muscle (not visible) before dividing into the anterior and posterior tibial arteries at the inferior angle of the popliteal fossa. Here, it is subject to entrapment as it passes beneath the tendinous arch of the soleus muscle.

TABLE 7.12. ARTERIES OF LEG

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution in Leg
Popliteal	Continuation of femoral artery at adductor hiatus in adductor magnus	Passes through popliteal fossa to leg; ends at lower border of popliteus muscle by dividing into anterior and posterior tibial arteries	Superior, middle, and inferior genicular arteries to both lateral and medial aspects of knee
Anterior tibial	Popliteal	Passes between tibia and fibula into anterior compartment through gap in superior part of interosseous membrane and descends on this membrane between tibialis anterior and extensor digitorum	Anterior compartment of leg

		longus	
Dorsalis pedis (dorsal artery of foot)	Continuation of anterior tibial artery distal to inferior extensor retinaculum	Descends anteromedially to first interosseous space and divides into plantar and arcuate arteries	Muscles on dorsum of foot; pierces first dorsal interosseous muscles as deep plantar artery to contribute to formation of plantar arch
Posterior tibial	Popliteal	Passes through posterior compartment of leg and terminates distal to flexor retinaculum by dividing into medial and lateral plantar arteries	Posterior and lateral compartments of leg. Circumflex fibular branch joins anastomoses around knee. Nutrient artery passes to tibia.
Fibular	Posterior tibial	Descends in posterior compartment adjacent to posterior intermuscular septum	Posterior compartment of leg: Perforating branches supply lateral compartment of leg.

Lateral Compartment of Leg

The **lateral compartment of the leg**, or evertor compartment, is the smallest (narrowest) of the leg compartments. It is bounded by the lateral surface of the fibula, the anterior and posterior intermuscular septa, and the deep fascia of the leg (Fig. 7.56A, B; Table 7.10). The lateral compartment ends inferiorly at the **superior fibular retinaculum**, which spans between the distal tip of the fibula and the calcaneus (Fig. 7.59A). Here, the tendons of the two muscles of the lateral compartment (fibularis longus and brevis) enter a common synovial sheath to accommodate their passage between the superior fibular retinaculum and the lateral malleolus, using the latter as a trochlea as they cross the ankle joint (Fig. 7.57B).

MUSCLES IN LATERAL COMPARTMENT OF LEG

The lateral compartment contains the fibularis longus and brevis muscles. These muscles have their fleshy bellies in the lateral compartment but are tendinous as they exit the compartment within the common synovial sheath deep to the superior fibular retinaculum. Both muscles are **evertors of the foot**, elevating the lateral margin of the foot. Developmentally, the fibularis muscles are postaxial muscles, receiving innervation from the posterior divisions of the spinal nerves, which contribute to the sciatic nerve. However, because the fibularis longus and brevis pass posterior to the transverse axis of the ankle (talocrural) joint, they contribute to plantarflexion at the ankle—unlike the postaxial muscles of the anterior compartment (including the fibularis tertius), which are dorsiflexors.

As evertors, the fibularis muscles act at the subtalar and transverse tarsal joints. From the neutral position, only a few degrees of eversion are possible. In practice, the primary function of the evertors of the foot is not to elevate the lateral margin of the foot (the common description of eversion) but to depress or fix the medial margin of the foot in support of the toe off phase of walking and, especially, running and to resist inadvertent or excessive inversion of the plantarflexed foot (the position in which the ankle is most vulnerable to injury). When standing (and particularly when balancing on one foot), the fibularis muscles contract to resist medial sway (to recenter a line of gravity, which has shifted medially) by pulling laterally on the leg while depressing the medial margin of the foot.

To test the fibularis longus and brevis, the foot is everted strongly against resistance; if acting normally, the muscle tendons can be seen and palpated inferior to the lateral malleolus.

Fibularis Longus. The **fibularis longus** (**FL**) is the longer and more superficial of the two fibularis muscles, arising much more superiorly on the shaft of the fibula (Figs. 7.56, 7.58F, and 7.59A; Table 7.10). The narrow FL extends from the head of the fibula to the sole of the foot. Its tendon can be palpated and observed proximal and posterior to the lateral malleolus (Fig. 7.63B).

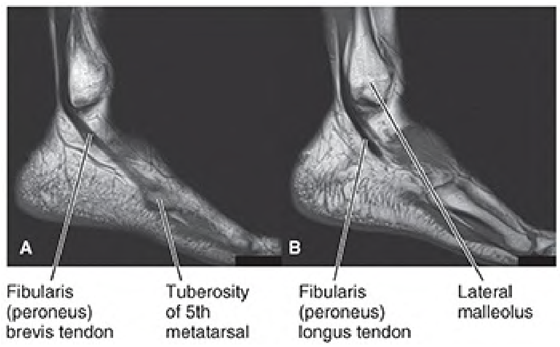


FIGURE 7.63. Sagittal MRIs of lateral aspect of ankle. A. Fibularis brevis. **B.** Fibularis longus.

Distal to the superior fibular retinaculum, the common sheath shared by the fibular muscles splits to extend through separate compartments deep to the **inferior fibular retinaculum** (Figs. 7.57A and 7.59). The FL passes through the inferior compartment—inferior to the fibular trochlea on the calcaneus—and enters a groove on the antero-inferior aspect of the cuboid bone (see Fig. 7.12D). It then crosses the sole of the foot, running obliquely and distally to reach its attachment to the 1st metatarsal and 1st (medial) cuneiform bones (see Fig. 7.72F). When a person stands on one foot, the FL helps steady the leg on the foot.

Fibularis Brevis. The **fibularis brevis** (**FB**) is a fusiform muscle that lies deep to the FL, and, true to its name, the FB is shorter than its partner in the lateral compartment (Figs. 7.56, 7.58F, and 7.59A; Table 7.10). Its broad tendon grooves the posterior aspect of the lateral malleolus and can be palpated inferior to it. The narrower tendon of the FL lies posterior to the tendon of the FB and does not contact the lateral malleolus (Fig. 7.63B). The tendon of the FB traverses the superior compartment of the inferior fibular retinaculum, passing superior to the fibular trochlea of the calcaneus; it can be easily traced to its distal attachment to the base of the 5th metatarsal (Fig. 7.63A; see Fig. 7.12D). The tendon of the fibularis tertius, a slip of muscle from the extensor digitorum longus, often merges with the tendon of the FB (Fig. 7.59A). Occasionally, however, the fibularis tertius passes anteriorly to attach directly to the proximal phalanx of the 5th digit.

NERVES IN LATERAL COMPARTMENT OF LEG

The **superficial fibular** (peroneal) **nerve**, a terminal branch of the common fibular nerve, is the nerve of the lateral compartment (Figs. 7.56A, 7.59A, and 7.60A; Table 7.11). After supplying the FL and FB, the superficial fibular nerve continues as a cutaneous nerve, supplying the skin on the distal part of the anterior surface of the leg and nearly all the dorsum of the foot.

BLOOD VESSELS IN LATERAL COMPARTMENT OF LEG

The lateral compartment does not have an artery coursing through it. Instead, perforating branches and accompanying veins supply blood to and drain blood from the compartment. Proximally, **perforating branches of the anterior tibial artery** penetrate the anterior intermuscular septum. Inferiorly, **perforating branches of the fibular artery** penetrate the posterior intermuscular septum, along with their accompanying veins (L. venae comitantes) (Figs. 7.61 and 7.62; Table 7.12).

Posterior Compartment of Leg

The **posterior compartment of the leg** (plantarflexor compartment) is the largest of the three leg compartments (Fig. 7.56A–C). The posterior compartment and the muscles within it are divided into superficial and deep subcompartments/muscle groups by the transverse intermuscular septum. The tibial nerve and posterior tibial and fibular vessels supply both parts of the posterior compartment but run in the deep subcompartment deep (anterior) to the transverse intermuscular septum.

The larger **superficial subcompartment** is the least confined compartmental area. The smaller **deep subcompartment**, like the anterior compartment, is bounded by the two leg bones and the interosseous membrane that binds them together, plus the transverse intermuscular septum. Therefore, the deep subcompartment is quite tightly confined. Because the nerve and blood vessels supplying the entire posterior compartment and the sole of the foot pass through the deep subcompartment, when swelling occurs, it leads to a compartment syndrome that has serious consequences, such as muscular necrosis (tissue death) and paralysis.

Inferiorly, the deep subcompartment tapers as the muscles it contains become tendinous. The transverse intermuscular septum ends as reinforcing transverse fibers that extend between the tip of the medial malleolus and the calcaneus to form the **flexor retinaculum** (see Fig. 7.65). The retinaculum is subdivided deeply, forming separate compartments for each tendon of the deep muscle group, as well as for the tibial nerve and posterior tibial artery as they bend around the medial malleolus.

Muscles of the posterior compartment produce plantarflexion at the ankle, inversion at the subtalar and transverse tarsal joints, and flexion of the toes. **Plantarflexion** is a powerful movement (four times stronger than dorsiflexion) produced over a relatively long range (approximately 50° from neutral) by muscles that pass posterior to the transverse axis of the ankle joint. Plantarflexion develops thrust, applied primarily at the ball of the foot that is used to propel the body forward and upward, and is the major component of the forces generated during the push off (heel off and toe off) parts of the stance phase of walking and running (see Fig. 7.23D, E; Table 7.2).

SUPERFICIAL MUSCLE GROUP IN POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT

The superficial group of calf muscles (muscles forming prominence of "calf" of posterior leg) includes the gastrocnemius, soleus, and plantaris. Details concerning their attachments,

innervation, and actions are provided in Fig. 7.64A–D and Table 7.13.I. The gastrocnemius and soleus share a common tendon, the calcaneal tendon, which attaches to the calcaneus. Collectively, these two muscles make up the three-headed **triceps surae** (L. sura, calf) (Figs. 7.64C, D and 7.65A). This powerful muscular mass tugs on the lever provided by the calcaneal tuberosity, elevating the heel and thus depressing the forefoot, generating as much as 93% of the plantarflexion force.

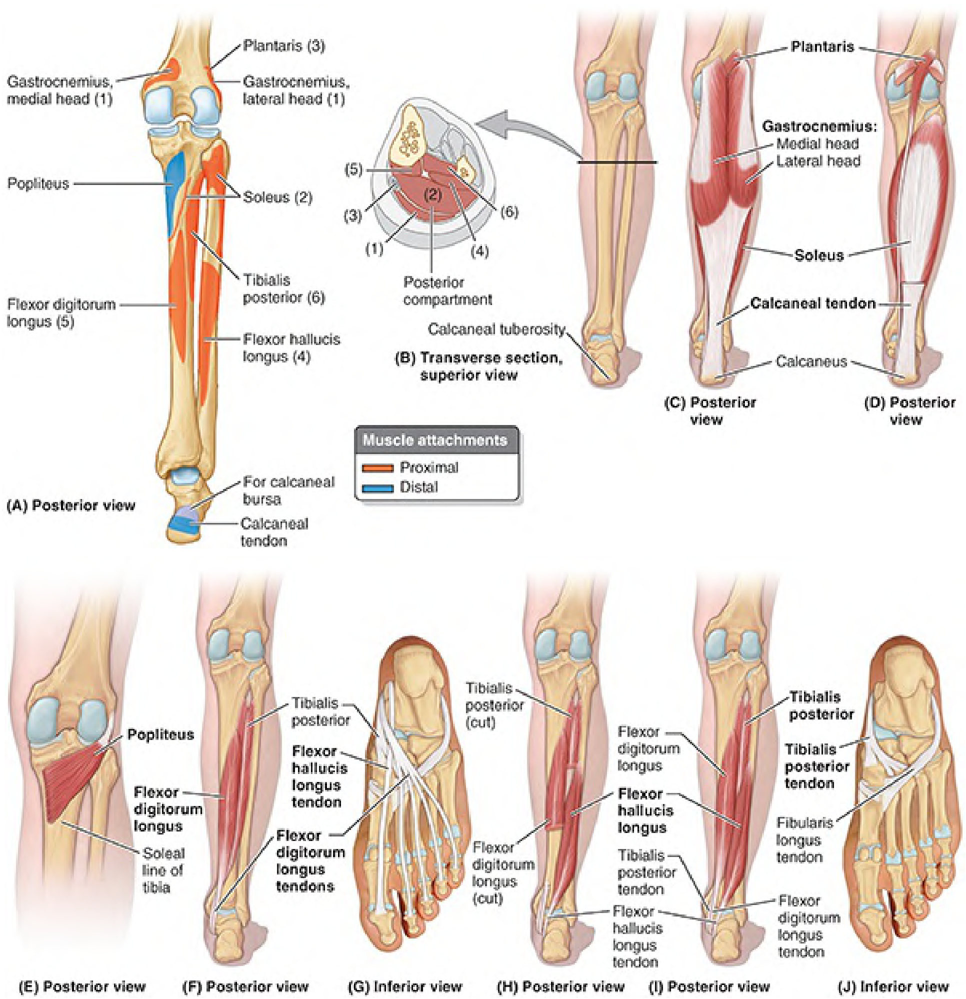


FIGURE 7.64. Muscles of posterior compartment of leg. A. Attachments. **B.** Schematic, transverse section. Numbers refer to Table 7.13. **C and D.** Superficial muscles. **E–J.** Deep muscles.

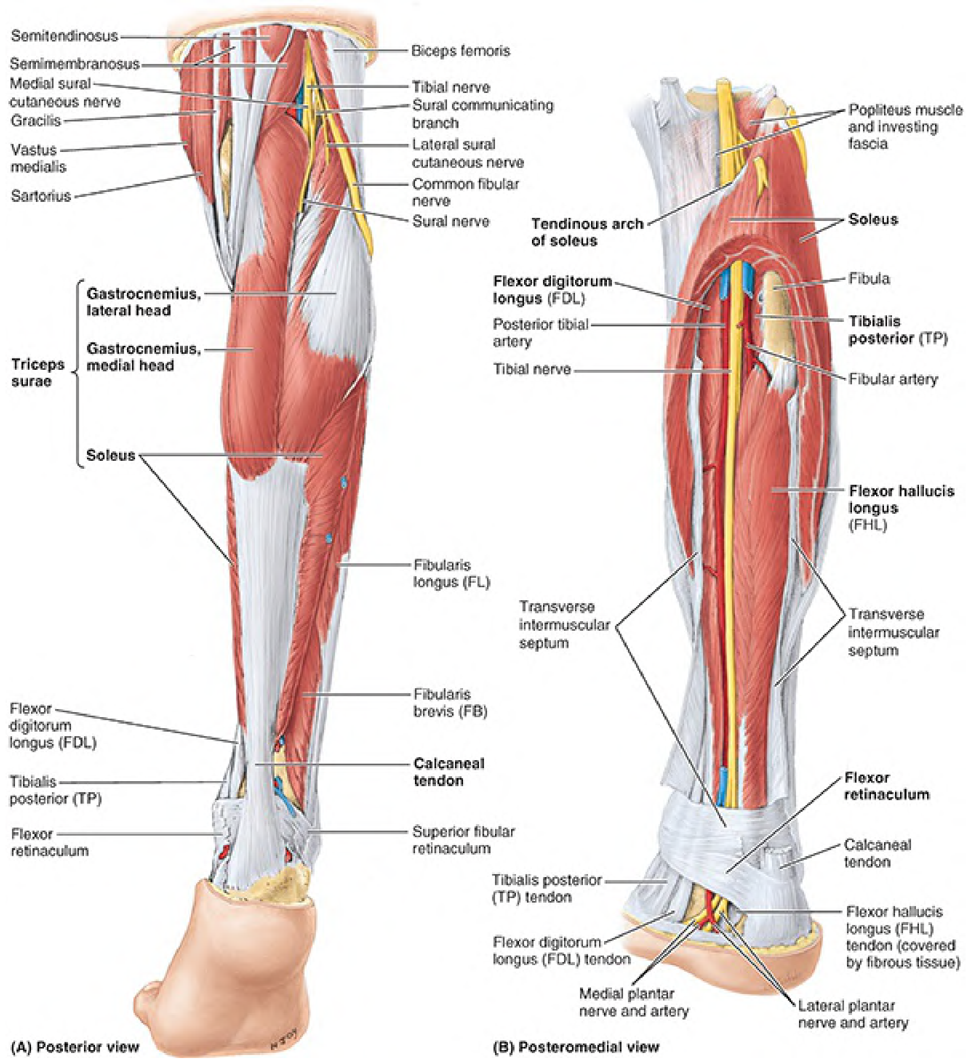


FIGURE 7.65. Dissections of posterior aspect of leg. A. Superficial dissection. Except for the retinacula in the ankle region, the deep fascia has been removed to reveal the nerves and muscles. The three heads of the triceps surae muscle attach distally to the calcaneus via the spiraling fibers of the calcaneal tendon. **B.** Deep dissection. The gastrocnemius and most of the soleus are removed, leaving only a horseshoe-shaped section of the soleus close to its proximal attachments and the distal part of the calcaneal tendon. The transverse intermuscular septum has been split to reveal the deep muscles, vessels, and nerves.

TABLE 7.13.I. SUPERFICIAL MUSCLES OF POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF LEG

Muscle[a]	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[b]	Main Action
Gastrocnemius (1)	Lateral head: lateral aspect of lateral condyle of femur	Posterior surface of calcaneus via calcaneal tendon	Tibial nerve (S1, S2)	Plantarflexes ankle joint when knee joint is extended; raises heel during walking; flexes knee joint
	Medial head: popliteal surface of femur; superior to medial condyle			
Soleus (2)	Posterior aspect of head and superior quarter of posterior surface of fibula; soleal line and middle third of medial border of tibia; tendinous arch			Plantarflexes ankle joint independent of position of knee; stabilizes ankle joint

		extending between the bony attachments		
Plantaris (3)		Inferior end of lateral supracondylar line of femur; oblique popliteal ligament		Weakly assists gastrocnemius in plantarflexing ankle joint

[a]Numbers refer to Figure 7.64B.

[b]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "S1, S2" means that the nerves supplying these muscles are derived from the first and second sacral segments of the spinal cord). Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

The large size of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles is a human characteristic that is directly related to our upright stance. These muscles are strong and heavy because they lift, propel, and accelerate the weight of the body when walking, running, jumping, or standing on the toes.

The **calcaneal tendon** (L. tendo calcaneus, Achilles tendon) is the most powerful (thickest and strongest) tendon in the body. Approximately 15 cm in length, it is a continuation of the flat aponeurosis formed halfway down the calf where the bellies of the gastrocnemius terminate (Figs. 7.64C, D and 7.65). Proximally, the aponeurosis receives fleshy fibers of the soleus directly on its deep surface, but distally, the soleus fibers become tendinous. The tendon thus becomes thicker (deeper) but narrower as it descends until it becomes essentially round in cross section superior to the calcaneus. It then widens as it inserts on the posterior surface of the calcaneal tuberosity. The calcaneal tendon typically spirals a quarter turn (90°) during its descent, so that the gastrocnemius fibers attach laterally and the soleal fibers attach medially. This arrangement is thought to be significant to the tendon's elastic ability to absorb energy (shock) and recoil, releasing the energy as part of the propulsive force it exerts. Although they share a common tendon, the two muscles of the triceps surae are capable of acting alone, and often do so: "You stroll with the soleus but win the long jump with the gastrocnemius."

To test the triceps surae, the foot is plantarflexed against resistance (e.g., by "standing on the toes," in which case body weight [gravity] provides resistance). If normal, the calcaneal tendon and triceps surae can be observed and palpated.

A subcutaneous calcaneal bursa, located between the skin and the calcaneal tendon, allows the skin to move over the taut tendon. A deep bursa of the calcaneal tendon (retrocalcaneal bursa), located between the tendon and the calcaneus, allows the tendon to glide over the bone.

Gastrocnemius. The **gastrocnemius** is the most superficial muscle in the posterior compartment and forms the proximal, most prominent part of the calf (Figs. 7.64A, C and 7.65A; Table 7.13.I). It is a fusiform, two-headed, two-joint muscle with the medial head slightly larger and extending more distally than its lateral partner. The heads come together at the inferior margin of the popliteal fossa, where they form the inferolateral and inferomedial boundaries of this fossa. Because its fibers are largely of the white, fast-twitch (type 2) variety, contractions of the gastrocnemius produce rapid movements during running and jumping. It is recruited into action only intermittently during symmetrical standing.

The gastrocnemius crosses and is capable of acting on both the knee and the ankle joints;

however, it cannot exert its full power on both joints at the same time. It functions most effectively when the knee is extended (and is maximally activated when knee extension is combined with dorsiflexion, as in the sprint start). It is incapable of producing plantarflexion when the knee is fully flexed.

Soleus. The **soleus** is located deep to the gastrocnemius and is the "workhorse" of plantarflexion (Figs. 7.64B, D and 7.65A, B; Table 7.13.I). It is a large muscle, flatter than the gastrocnemius, that is named for its resemblance to a sole—the flat fish that reclines on its side on the sea floor. The soleus has a continuous proximal attachment in the shape of an inverted U to the posterior aspects of the fibula and tibia and a tendinous arch between them, the **tendinous arch of soleus** (L. arcus tendineus soleus) (Figs. 7.64A and 7.65B). The popliteal artery and tibial nerve exit the popliteal fossa by passing through this arch, the popliteal artery simultaneously bifurcating into its terminal branches, the anterior and posterior tibial arteries.

The soleus can be palpated on each side of the gastrocnemius when the individual is "standing on their toes" (weight on forefoot with ankle plantarflexed, as in Fig. 7.65A). The soleus may act with the gastrocnemius in plantarflexing the ankle joint; it cannot act on the knee joint and acts alone to produce plantarflexion when the knee is flexed (e.g., doing a squat or "duck walk"). Soleus has many parts, each with fiber bundles coursing in different direction.

When the foot is planted, the soleus pulls posteriorly on the bones of the leg. This is important to standing because the line of gravity passes anterior to the leg's bony axis (see Fig. 7.22A). The soleus is thus an antigravity muscle (the predominant plantarflexor for standing and strolling), which contracts antagonistically but cooperatively (alternately) with the dorsiflexor muscles of the leg to maintain balance. Composed largely of red, fatigue-resistant, slow-twitch (type 1) muscle fibers, it is a strong but relatively slow plantarflexor of the ankle joint, capable of sustained contraction. Electromyography (EMG) studies show that during symmetrical standing, the soleus is continuously active.

Plantaris. The **plantaris** is a small muscle with a short belly and a long tendon (Figs. 7.53; 7.54; 7.56A, B; and 7.64A, C, D; Table 7.13.I). This vestigial muscle is absent in 5–10% of people and is highly variable in size and form when present (most commonly a tapering slip about the size of the small finger). It acts with the gastrocnemius but is insignificant as either a flexor of the knee or a plantarflexor of the ankle.

The plantaris has been considered to be an organ of proprioception for the larger plantarflexors, as it has a high density of muscle spindles (receptors for proprioception). Its long, slender tendon is easily mistaken for a nerve (and hence dubbed by some as the "freshman's nerve").

The plantaris tendon runs distally between the gastrocnemius and soleus (Figs. 7.56A and 7.64B) and occasionally suddenly ruptures with a painful pop during activities such as racquet sports. Because of its minor role, the plantaris tendon can be removed for grafting (e.g., during reconstructive surgery of the tendons of the hand) without causing disability.

DEEP MUSCLE GROUP IN POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT

Four muscles make up the deep group in the posterior compartment of the leg (Figs. 7.56; 7.64A,

B, E–I; 7.65B; 7.66; 7.67; and 7.68; Table 7.13.II): popliteus, flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus, and tibialis posterior. The popliteus acts on the knee joint, whereas the other muscles plantarflex the ankle with two continuing on to flex the toes. However, because of their smaller size and the close proximity of their tendons to the axis of the ankle joint, the “nontriceps” plantarflexors collectively produce only about 7% of the total force of plantarflexion, and for this action it is lateral compartment muscles, the fibularis longus and brevis, that are most significant. When the calcaneal tendon is ruptured, these muscles cannot generate the power necessary to lift the body’s weight (i.e., to stand on the toes).

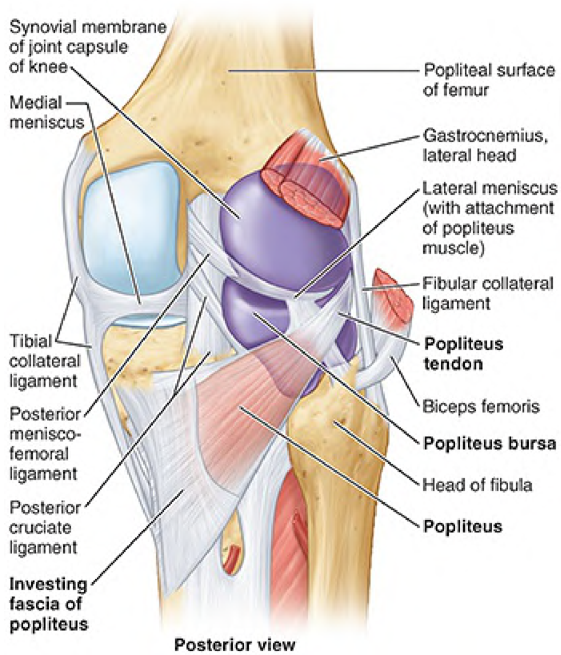


FIGURE 7.66. **Deep dissection of popliteal fossa and posterior knee region.**

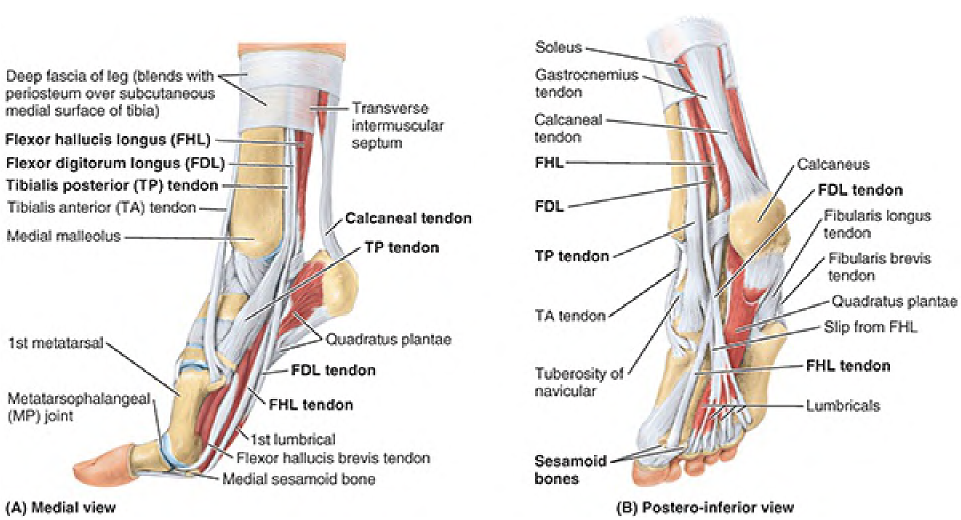


FIGURE 7.67. **Dissection demonstrating continuation of plantarflexor tendons into sole of foot. A.** Relationship of tendons to lateral malleolus. The foot is raised as in the push off phase of walking, demonstrating the position of the plantarflexor tendons as they cross the ankle. Observe the sesamoid bone acting as a “foot stool” for the 1st metatarsal, giving it extra height and protecting the flexor hallucis longus tendon. **B.** Tendons in the sole of the foot.

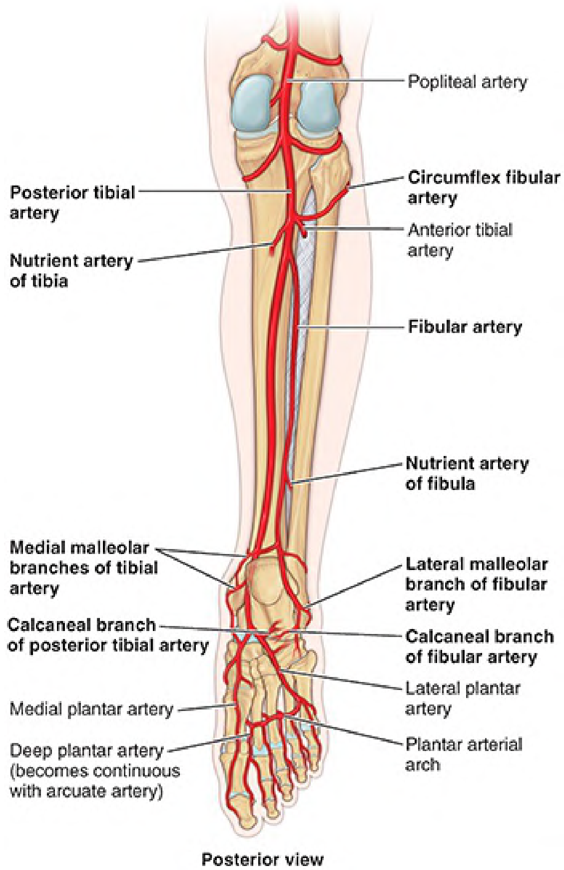


FIGURE 7.68. Arteries of knee, posterior leg, and sole of foot. The foot is plantarflexed.

TABLE 7.13.II. DEEP MUSCLES OF POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF LEG

Muscle[a]	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[b]	Main Action
Popliteus	Lateral surface of lateral condyle of femur and lateral meniscus	Posterior surface of tibia and superior to soleal line	Tibial nerve (L4, L5, S1)	Weakly flexes knee joint and unlocks it by rotating femur 5° on fixed tibia; medially rotates tibia of unplanted limb
Flexor hallucis longus (4)	Inferior two thirds of posterior surface of fibula; inferior part of interosseous membrane	Base of distal phalanx of great toe (hallux)	Tibial nerve (S2, S3)	Flexes great toe at all joints; weakly plantarflexes ankle joint; supports medial longitudinal arch of foot
Flexor digitorum longus (5)	Medial part of posterior surface of tibia inferior to soleal line; by a broad tendon to fibula	Bases of distal phalanges of lateral four digits		Flexes lateral four digits; plantarflexes ankle joint; supports longitudinal arches of foot
Tibialis posterior (6)	Interosseous membrane; posterior surface of tibia inferior to soleal line; posterior surface of fibula	Tuberosity of navicular, cuneiform, cuboid, and sustentaculum tali of calcaneus; bases of 2nd, 3rd, and 4th metatarsals	Tibial nerve (L4, L5)	Plantarflexes ankle joint; inverts foot; maintains medial longitudinal arch

[a]Numbers refer to Figure 7.64B.

[b]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., “S2, S3” means that the nerves supplying the flexor hallucis longus are derived from the second and third sacral segments of the spinal cord). Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

The two muscles of the posterior compartment that pass to the toes are crisscrossed—that is, the muscle attaching medially to the great toe (flexor hallucis longus) arises laterally (from the fibula) in the deep subcompartment, and the muscle attaching to the lateral four toes (flexor digitorum longus) arises medially (from the tibia) (Figs. 5.64A, G, I and 5.67B). Their tendons cross in the sole of the foot.

Popliteus. The **popliteus** is a thin, triangular muscle that forms the inferior part of the floor of the popliteal fossa (Figs. 7.64A, E and 7.66; see Figs. 7.53 and 7.54; Table 7.13.II). Proximally, its tendinous attachment to the lateral aspect of the lateral femoral condyle and its broader attachment to the lateral meniscus occur between the fibrous layer and the synovial membrane of the joint capsule of the knee. The apex of its fleshy belly emerges from the joint capsule of the knee joint. It has a fleshy distal attachment to the tibia that is covered by investing fascia reinforced by a fibrous expansion from the semimembranosus muscle (**investing fascia of popliteus**; Fig. 7.66; see Fig. 7.93E).

The popliteus is insignificant as a flexor of the knee joint per se, but during flexion at the knee, it assists in pulling the lateral meniscus of the knee joint posteriorly, a movement otherwise produced passively by compression (as it is for the medial meniscus). When a person is standing with the knee partly flexed, the popliteus contracts to assist the posterior cruciate ligament (PCL) in preventing anterior displacement of the femur on the inclined tibial plateau (see Fig. 7.93D, E).

The **popliteus bursa** lies deep to the popliteus tendon (Fig. 7.66). When standing with the knees locked in the fully extended position, the popliteus acts to rotate the femur laterally 5° on the tibial plateaus, releasing the knee from its close-packed or locked position so that flexion can occur. When the foot is off the ground and the knee is flexed, the popliteus can aid the medial hamstrings (the “semi-muscles”) in rotating the tibia medially beneath the femoral condyles.

Flexor Hallucis Longus. The **flexor hallucis longus** (FHL) is a powerful flexor of all of the joints of the great toe (Fig. 7.67A, B). Immediately after the triceps surae has delivered the thrust of plantarflexion to the ball of the foot (the prominence of the sole underlying the heads of the 1st and 2nd metatarsals), the FHL delivers a final thrust via flexion of the great toe for the preswing phase (toe off) of the gait cycle (see Fig. 7.23E; Table 7.2). When barefoot, this thrust is delivered by the great toe; but with soled shoes on, it becomes part of the thrust of plantarflexion delivered by the forefoot.

The tendon of the FHL passes posterior to the distal end of the tibia and occupies a shallow groove on the posterior surface of the talus, which is continuous with the groove on the plantar surface of the sustentaculum tali (Figs. 7.64G–J and 7.67; Table 7.13.II). The tendon then crosses deep to the tendon of the flexor digitorum longus in the sole of the foot. As it passes to the distal phalanx of the great toe, the FHL tendon runs between two sesamoid bones in the tendons of the flexor hallucis brevis (Fig. 7.67B). These bones protect the tendon from the pressure of the head of the 1st metatarsal bone.

To test the FHL, the distal phalanx of the great toe is flexed against resistance; if normal, the tendon can be seen and palpated on the plantar aspect of the great toe as it crosses the joints of the toe.

Flexor Digitorum Longus. The **flexor digitorum longus** (FDL) is smaller than the FHL, even though it moves four digits (Figs. 7.64G, I; 7.65B; and 7.67B; Table 7.13.II). It passes diagonally into the sole of the foot, superficial to the tendon of the FHL. However, its direction of pull is realigned by the quadratus plantae muscle, which is attached to the posterolateral aspect of the FDL tendon as it divides into four tendons (Figs. 7.64G and 7.67B), which in turn pass to the distal phalanges of the lateral four digits.

To test the FDL, the distal phalanges of the lateral four toes are flexed against resistance; if they are acting normally, the tendons of the toes can be seen and palpated.

Tibialis Posterior. The **tibialis posterior** (TP), the deepest (most anterior) muscle in the posterior compartment, lies between the FDL and the FHL in the same plane as the tibia and fibula within the deep subcompartment (Figs. 7.64B, F–J and 7.67A, B; Table 7.13.II). Distally, the TP attaches primarily to the navicular bone (in close proximity to the high point of the medial longitudinal arch of the foot) but has attachments to other tarsal and metatarsal bones.

The TP is traditionally described as an invertor of the foot. Indeed, when the foot is off the ground, it can act synergistically with the TA to invert the foot, their otherwise antagonistic functions canceling each other out. However, the primary role of the TP is to support or maintain (fix) the medial longitudinal arch during weight bearing; consequently, the muscle contracts statically throughout the stance phase of gait (see Fig. 7.23A–E; Table 7.2). In so doing, it acts independently of the TA because once the foot is flat on the ground after heel strike, that muscle is relaxed during the stance phase (the dorsiflexion that occurs as the body passes over the planted foot is passive), unless braking requires its eccentric contraction.

While standing (especially on one foot), however, the two muscles may cooperate to depress the lateral side of the foot and pull medially on the leg as needed to counteract lateral leaning for balance.

To test the TP, the foot is inverted against resistance with the foot in slight plantarflexion; if normal, the tendon can be seen and palpated posterior to the medial malleolus.

NERVES IN POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT

The tibial nerve (L4, L5, and S1–S3) is the larger of the two terminal branches of the sciatic nerve (Fig. 7.60B; Table 7.11). It runs vertically through the popliteal fossa with the popliteal artery, passing between the heads of the gastrocnemius, the two structures exiting the fossa by passing deep to the tendinous arch of the soleus (Fig. 7.65B).

The tibial nerve supplies all muscles in the posterior compartment of the leg (Figs. 7.56A and 7.65B; Table 7.11). At the ankle, the nerve lies between the tendons of the FHL and the FDL. Postero-inferior to the medial malleolus, the tibial nerve divides into the medial and lateral plantar nerves. A branch of the tibial nerve, the medial sural cutaneous nerve, is usually joined by the sural communicating branch of the common fibular nerve from the posterior compartment to form the superficial sural nerve (see Figs. 7.52B, 7.53, and 7.78D; Table 7.11). The sural

nerve supplies the skin of the lateral and posterior part of the inferior third of the leg and the lateral side of the foot. Articular branches of the tibial nerve supply the knee joint, and medial calcaneal branches supply the skin of the heel.

ARTERIES IN POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT

The **posterior tibial artery**, the larger and more direct terminal branch of the popliteal artery, provides the blood supply to the posterior compartment of the leg and to the foot (Figs. 7.56A, 7.61, 7.65B, and 7.68; Table 7.12). It begins at the distal border of the popliteus, as the popliteal artery passes deep to the tendinous arch of the soleus and simultaneously bifurcates into its terminal branches. Close to its origin, the posterior tibial artery gives rise to its largest branch, the fibular artery, which runs lateral and parallel to it, also within the deep subcompartment.

During its descent, the posterior tibial artery is accompanied by the tibial nerve and veins. The artery runs posterior to the medial malleolus, from which it is separated by the tendons of the TP and FDL (Fig. 7.65B). Inferior to the medial malleolus, it runs between the tendons of the FHL and FDL. Deep to the flexor retinaculum and the origin of the abductor hallucis, the posterior tibial artery divides into medial and lateral plantar arteries, the arteries of the sole of the foot.

The **fibular** (peroneal) **artery**, the largest and most important branch of the posterior tibial artery, arises inferior to the distal border of the popliteus and the tendinous arch of the soleus (Figs. 7.61A, 7.65B, and 7.68; Table 7.12). It descends obliquely toward the fibula and passes along its medial side, usually within the FHL. The fibular artery gives muscular branches to the popliteus and other muscles in both the posterior and the lateral compartments of the leg. It also gives rise to the **nutrient artery of the fibula** (Fig. 7.68).

Distally, the fibular artery gives rise to a perforating branch and terminal lateral malleolar and calcaneal branches. The perforating branch pierces the interosseous membrane and passes to the dorsum of the foot, where it anastomoses with the arcuate artery. The lateral calcaneal branches supply the heel, and the lateral malleolar branch joins other malleolar branches to form a peri-articular arterial anastomosis of the ankle.

The **circumflex fibular artery** arises from the origin of the anterior or posterior tibial artery at the knee and passes laterally over the neck of the fibula to the anastomoses around the knee.

The **nutrient artery of tibia**, the largest nutrient artery in the body, arises from the origin of the anterior or posterior tibial artery. It pierces the tibialis posterior, to which it supplies branches, and enters the nutrient foramen in the proximal third of the posterior surface of the tibia (see Fig. 7.10B).

Surface Anatomy of Leg

The tibial tuberosity is an easily palpable elevation on the anterior aspect of the proximal part of the tibia, approximately 5 cm distal to the apex of the patella (Fig. 7.69A, B). This oval elevation indicates the level of the head of the fibula and the bifurcation of the popliteal artery into the anterior and posterior tibial arteries.

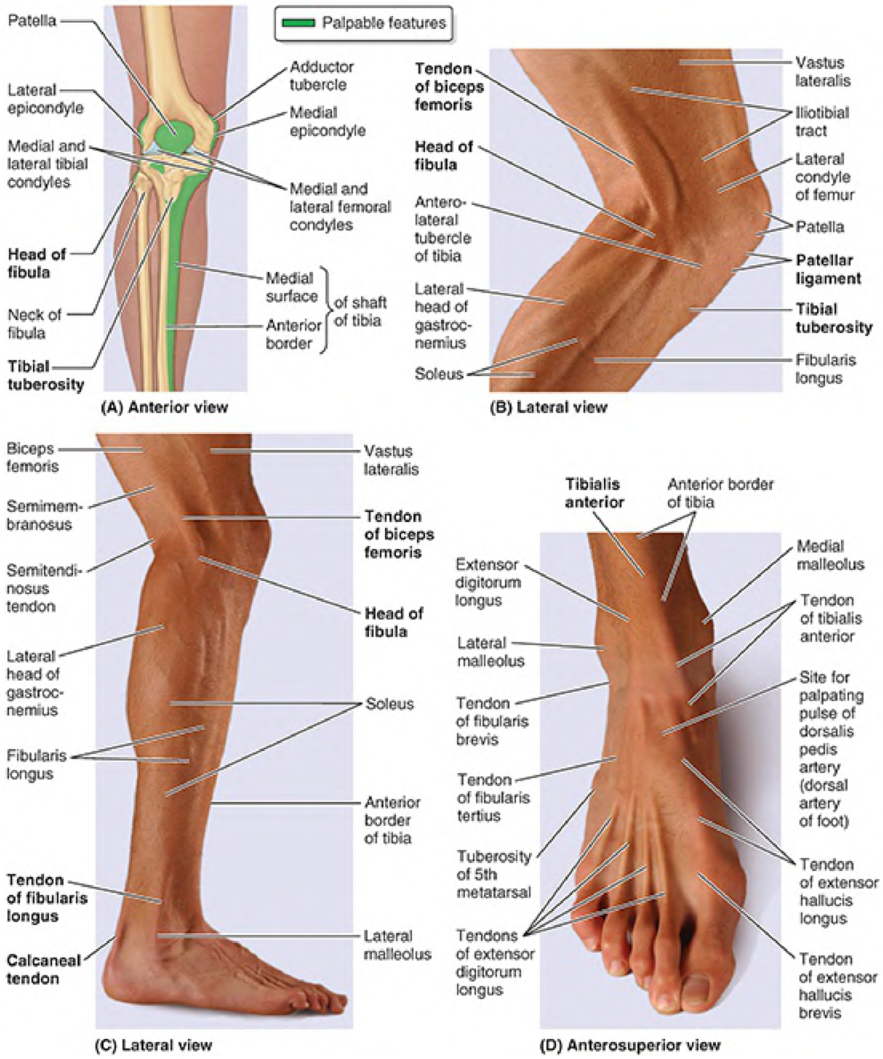


FIGURE 7.69. **Surface anatomy of leg. A.** Bones. **B.** Lateral aspect of knee. The knee is flexed while weight bearing. **C.** Lateral aspect of leg and foot. **D.** Dorsum of foot. Extensors and flexors of toes are being contracted simultaneously, demonstrating extensor tendons without elevating toes from ground.

The patellar ligament may be felt as it extends from the inferior border of the apex of the patella. It is most easily felt when the knee is extended. When the knee flexes to a right angle, a depression may be felt on each side of the patellar ligament. The joint cavity is superficial in these depressions.

The head of the fibula is subcutaneous and may be palpated at the posterolateral aspect of the knee, at the level of the tibial tuberosity (Fig. 7.69B, C). The neck of the fibula can be palpated just distal to the head.

The tendon of the biceps femoris may be traced by palpating its distal attachment to the lateral side of the head of the fibula. This tendon and the head and neck of the fibula guide the examining finger to the common fibular nerve (Fig. 7.65A). The nerve is indicated by a line along the biceps femoris tendon, posterior to the head of the fibula, and around the lateral aspect of the fibular neck to its anterior aspect, just distal to the fibular head. Here, it can be rolled against the fibular neck with the fingertips.

The anterior border of the tibia is sharp, subcutaneous, and easily followed distally by palpation from the tibial tuberosity to the medial malleolus (Fig. 7.69A–D). The medial surface of the shaft of the tibia is also subcutaneous, except at its proximal end. Its inferior third is crossed obliquely by the great saphenous vein as the vein passes proximally to the medial aspect of the knee.

The tibialis anterior (TA) lies superficially and is easily palpable just lateral to the anterior border of the tibia (Fig. 7.69D). As the foot is inverted and dorsiflexed, the large tendon of the TA can be seen and palpated as it runs distally and slightly medially over the anterior surface of the ankle joint to the medial side of the foot. If the 1st digit is dorsiflexed, the tendon of the EHL can be palpated just lateral to the tendon of TA. The tendon of the EHB may also be visible.

As the toes are extended, the tendons of the EDL can be palpated lateral to the extensor hallucis longus and followed to the four lateral digits. The tendon of the FT may be palpable lateral to the tendons of the EDL, especially when the foot is dorsiflexed and everted.

The shaft of the fibula is subcutaneous only in its distal part, proximal to the lateral malleolus; this is the common site of fractures. The medial and lateral malleoli are subcutaneous and prominent. Palpate them, noting that the tip of the lateral malleolus extends farther distally and posteriorly than the medial malleolus.

The fibularis longus (FL) is subcutaneous throughout its course (Fig. 7.69C). The tendons of this muscle and the fibularis brevis (FB) are palpable when the foot is everted as they pass around the posterior aspect of the lateral malleolus. These tendons may be followed anteriorly along the lateral side of the foot. The tendon of the FL runs as far anteriorly as the cuboid and then disappears by turning into the sole of the foot. The tendon of the FB may be traced to its attachment to the base of the 5th metatarsal.

The calcaneal tendon can be easily followed to its attachment to the calcaneal tuberosity, the posterior part of the calcaneus. The ankle joint is fairly superficial in the depression on each side of the calcaneal tendon. The heads of the gastrocnemius are easily recognizable in the superior part of the calf of the leg (Fig. 7.69B, C). The soleus can be palpated deep to and at the sides of the superior part of the calcaneal tendon. The triceps surae (soleus and gastrocnemius) is easy to palpate when the individual is standing on the toes. The soleus can be distinguished from the gastrocnemius during squatting (flexing the knees while standing on toes) because flexion of the knee to approximately 90° makes the gastrocnemius flaccid; plantarflexion in this position is maintained by the soleus. The deep muscles of the posterior compartment are not easily palpated, but their tendons can be observed just posterior to the medial malleolus, especially when the foot is inverted and the toes are flexed.

CLINICAL BOX

POPLITEAL FOSSA AND LEG

Popliteal Abscess and Tumor

Because the deep popliteal fascia is strong, limiting its expansion, pain from an abscess, cyst, or tumor in the popliteal fossa is usually severe. Popliteal abscesses tend to spread superiorly and inferiorly because of the toughness of the popliteal fascia.

Popliteal Pulse

Because the popliteal artery is deep, it may be difficult to feel the popliteal pulse. Palpation of this pulse is commonly performed with the person in the prone position with the knee flexed to relax the popliteal fascia and hamstrings. The pulsations are best felt in the inferior part of the fossa where the popliteal artery is related to the tibia. Weakening or loss of the popliteal pulse is a sign of a femoral artery obstruction.

Popliteal Aneurysm and Hemorrhage

A popliteal aneurysm (abnormal dilation of all or part of the popliteal artery) usually causes edema and pain in the popliteal fossa. A popliteal aneurysm may be distinguished from other masses by palpable pulsations (thrills) and abnormal arterial sounds (bruits) detectable with a stethoscope. Because the artery lies deep to the tibial nerve, an aneurysm may stretch the nerve or compress its blood supply (vasa nervorum). Pain from such nerve compression is usually referred, in this case to the skin overlying the medial aspect of the calf, ankle, or foot.

Because the popliteal artery is closely applied to the popliteal surface of the femur and the joint capsule (see Fig. 7.62), fractures of the distal femur or dislocations of the knee may rupture the artery, resulting in hemorrhage. Furthermore, because of their proximity and confinement within the popliteal fossa, an injury of the artery and vein may result in an arteriovenous fistula (communication between an artery and a vein). Failure to recognize these occurrences and to act promptly may result in the loss of the leg and foot.

If the femoral artery must be ligated, blood can bypass the occlusion through the genicular anastomosis and reach the popliteal artery distal to the ligation (see Fig. 7.55).

Injury to Tibial Nerve

Injury to the tibial nerve is uncommon because of its deep and protected position in the popliteal fossa; however, the nerve may be injured by deep lacerations in the fossa. Posterior dislocation of the knee joint may also damage the tibial nerve. Severance of the tibial nerve produces paralysis of the flexor muscles in the leg and the intrinsic muscles in the sole of the foot. People with a tibial nerve injury are unable to plantarflex their ankle or flex their toes. Loss of sensation also occurs on the sole of the foot.

Containment and Spread of Compartmental Infections in Leg

The fascial compartments of the lower limbs are generally closed spaces, ending proximally and distally at the joints. Because the septa and deep fascia of the leg forming the boundaries of the leg compartments are strong, the increased volume consequent to infection with suppuration (formation of pus) increases intra-compartmental pressure. Inflammations within the anterior and posterior compartments of the leg spread chiefly in a distal direction; however, a purulent (pus-forming) infection in the lateral compartment of the leg can ascend proximally into the popliteal fossa, presumably along the course of the fibular nerve. Fasciotomy (incision of fascia) may be necessary to relieve pressure and debride (scrape away) pockets of infection.

Tibialis Anterior Strain (Shin Splints)

Shin splints—edema and pain in the area of the distal two thirds of the tibia—result from repetitive microtrauma of the tibialis anterior (TA) (Fig. 7.59A), which causes small tears in the periosteum covering the shaft of the tibia and/or of fleshy attachments to the overlying deep fascia of the leg. Shin splints are a mild form of the anterior compartment syndrome. Shin splints commonly occur during traumatic injury or athletic overexertion of muscles in the anterior compartment, especially TA, by untrained persons. Often, persons who lead sedentary lives develop shin splints when they participate in long-distance walks.

Shin splints also occur in trained runners who do not warm up and cool down sufficiently. Muscles in the anterior compartment swell from sudden overuse, and the edema and muscle–tendon inflammation reduce the blood flow to the muscles. The swollen muscles are painful and tender to pressure.

Fibularis Muscles and Evolution of Human Foot

Whereas the feet of anthropoids (higher primates) are inverted so that they walk on the outer border of the foot, the feet of humans are relatively everted (pronated) so that the soles lie more fully on the ground. This pronation is the result, at least in part, of the medial migration of the distal attachment of the fibularis longus across the sole of the foot (Fig. 7.64J) and the development of a fibularis tertius that is attached to the base of the 5th metatarsal. These features are unique to the human foot.

Injury to Common Fibular Nerve and Footdrop

Because of its superficial position, the common fibular nerve is the nerve most often injured in the lower limb, mainly because it winds subcutaneously around the fibular neck, leaving it vulnerable to direct trauma (see Fig. 7.60A). This nerve may also be

severed during fracture of the fibular neck or severely stretched when the knee joint is injured or dislocated. Severance of the common fibular nerve results in flaccid paralysis of all muscles in the anterior and lateral compartments of the leg (dorsiflexors of ankle and evertors of foot). The loss of dorsiflexion of the ankle causes footdrop, which is further exacerbated by unopposed inversion of the foot. This has the effect of making the limb "too long": The toes do not clear the ground during the swing phase of walking (Fig. B7.21A, E).

There are several other conditions that may result in a lower limb that is "too long" functionally, for example, pelvic tilt (see Fig. B7.19C) and spastic paralysis or contraction of the soleus. There are at least three means of compensating for this problem:

1. A waddling gait, in which the individual leans to the side opposite the long limb, "hiking" the hip (Fig. B7.21B)
2. A swing-out gait, in which the long limb is swung out laterally (abducted) to allow the toes to clear the ground (Fig. B7.21C)
3. A high-stepping steppage gait, in which extra flexion is employed at the hip and knee to raise the foot as high as necessary to keep the toes from hitting the ground (Fig. B7.21D, E)

Because the dropped foot makes it difficult to make the heel strike the ground first as in a normal gait, a steppage gait is commonly employed in the case of flaccid paralysis. Sometimes, an extra "kick" is added as the free limb swings forward in an attempt to flip the forefoot upward just before setting the foot down.

The braking action normally produced by eccentric contraction of the dorsiflexors is also lost in flaccid paralysis footdrop. Therefore, the foot is not lowered to the ground in a controlled manner after heel strike; instead, the foot slaps the ground suddenly, producing a distinctive "clop" and greatly increasing the shock both received by the forefoot and transmitted up the tibia to the knee. Individuals with a common fibular nerve injury may also experience a variable loss of sensation on the anterolateral aspect of the leg and the dorsum of the foot.

Deep Fibular Nerve Entrapment

Excessive use of muscles supplied by the deep fibular nerve (e.g., during skiing, running, and dancing) may result in muscle injury and edema in the anterior compartment. This entrapment may cause compression of the deep fibular nerve and pain in the anterior compartment.

Compression of the deep fibular nerve by tight-fitting ski boots, for example, may occur where the nerve passes deep to the inferior extensor retinaculum and the extensor hallucis brevis (see Fig. 7.57A). Pain occurs in the dorsum of the foot and usually radiates to the web space between the 1st and 2nd toes. Because ski boots are a common cause of this type of nerve entrapment, this condition has been called the "ski boot syndrome"; however, the syndrome also occurs in soccer players and runners and can also result from tight shoes.

Superficial Fibular Nerve Entrapment

Chronic ankle sprains may produce recurrent stretching of the superficial fibular nerve, which may cause pain along the lateral side of the leg and the dorsum of the ankle and foot. Numbness and paresthesia (tickling or tingling) may be present and increase with activity.

Fabella in Gastrocnemius

Close to its proximal attachment, the lateral head of the gastrocnemius may contain a sesamoid bone, the **fabella** (L., bean), which articulates with the lateral femoral condyle. The fabella is visible in lateral radiographs of the knee in 3–5% of people (Fig. B7.22).

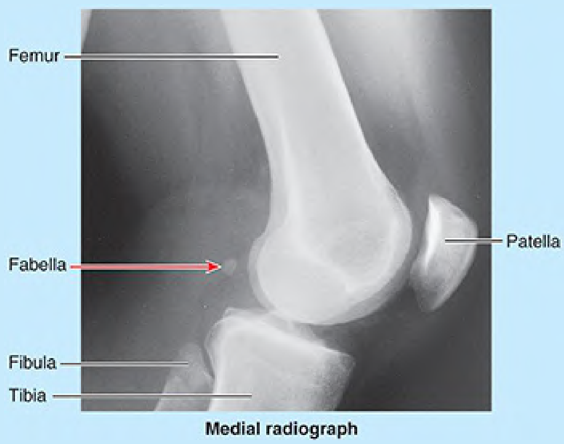


FIGURE B7.22. Fabella.

Calcaneal Tendinitis

Inflammation of the calcaneal tendon constitutes 9–18% of running injuries. Microscopic tears of collagen fibers in the tendon, particularly just superior to its attachment to the calcaneus, result in tendinitis, which causes pain during walking, especially when wearing rigid-soled shoes. Calcaneal tendinitis often occurs during repetitive activities, especially in individuals who take up running after prolonged inactivity, or suddenly increase the intensity of their training, but it may also result from poor footwear or training surfaces.

Ruptured Calcaneal Tendon

Rupture of the calcaneal tendon is often sustained by poorly conditioned people with a history of calcaneal tendinitis. The injury is typically experienced as an audible snap during a forceful push off (plantarflexion with the knee extended) followed immediately by sudden calf pain and sudden dorsiflexion of the plantarflexed foot. In a

completely ruptured tendon, a gap is palpable, usually 1–5 cm proximal to the calcaneal attachment. The muscles affected are the gastrocnemius, soleus, and plantaris.

Calcaneal tendon rupture is probably the most severe acute muscular problem of the leg. Individuals with this injury cannot plantarflex against resistance (cannot raise the heel from the ground or balance on the affected side), and passive dorsiflexion (usually limited to 20° from neutral) is excessive.

Ambulation (walking) is possible only when the limb is laterally (externally) rotated, rolling over the transversely placed foot during the stance phase without push off. Bruising appears in the malleolar region, and a lump usually appears in the calf owing to shortening of the triceps surae. In older or nonathletic people, nonsurgical repairs are often adequate, but surgical intervention is usually advised for those with active lifestyles, such as tennis players.

Calcaneal Tendon Reflex

The ankle jerk reflex, or triceps surae reflex, is a calcaneal tendon reflex. It is a myotatic reflex elicited while the person's legs are dangling over the side of the examining table. The calcaneal tendon is struck briskly with a reflex hammer just proximal to the calcaneus (Fig. B7.23). The normal result is plantarflexion of the ankle joint. The calcaneal tendon reflex tests the S1 and S2 nerve roots. If the S1 nerve root is injured or compressed, the ankle reflex is virtually absent.

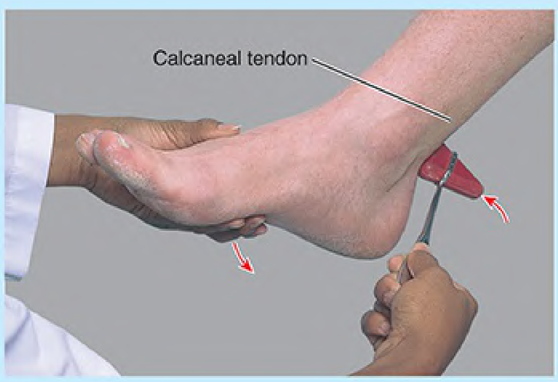


FIGURE B7.23. Calcaneal tendon reflex.

Absence of Plantarflexion

If the muscles of the calf are paralyzed, the calcaneal tendon is ruptured, or normal push off is painful, a much less effective and efficient push off (from the midfoot) can still be accomplished by the actions of the gluteus maximus and hamstrings in extending the thigh at the hip joint and the quadriceps in extending the knee. Because push off from the forefoot is not possible (in fact, the ankle will be passively dorsiflexed as the body's weight moves anterior to the foot), those attempting to walk in the absence of plantarflexion often rotate the foot as far laterally (externally) as possible during the stance

phase to disable passive dorsiflexion and allow a more effective push off through hip and knee extension exerted at the midfoot.

Gastrocnemius Strain

Gastrocnemius strain (tennis leg) is a painful acute injury resulting from partial tearing of the medial belly of the gastrocnemius at or near its musculotendinous junction, often seen in individuals older than 40 years of age. It is caused by overstretching the muscle by concomitant full extension of the knee and dorsiflexion of the ankle joint. Usually, an abrupt onset of stabbing pain is followed by edema and spasm of the gastrocnemius.

Calcaneal Bursitis

Calcaneal bursitis (retro-Achilles bursitis) results from inflammation of the deep bursa of the calcaneal tendon, located between the calcaneal tendon and the superior part of the posterior surface of the calcaneus (Fig. B7.24). Calcaneal bursitis causes pain posterior to the heel and occurs commonly during long-distance running, basketball, and tennis. It is caused by excessive friction on the bursa as the tendon continuously slides over it.

FIGURE B7.24. Deep calcaneal bursa.

Venous Return from Leg

A venous plexus deep to the triceps surae is involved in the return of blood from the leg. When a person is standing, the venous return from the leg depends largely on the muscular activity of the triceps surae (see "Venous Drainage of Lower Limb" in this chapter). Contraction of the calf muscles pumps blood superiorly in the deep veins. The musculovenous pump is improved by the deep fascia that invests the muscles like an elastic stocking.

Accessory Soleus

An accessory soleus is present in approximately 3% of people (Fig. B7.25). The accessory

muscle usually appears as a distal belly medial to the calcaneal tendon. Clinically, an accessory soleus may be associated with pain and edema (swelling) during prolonged exercise.

FIGURE B7.25. **Accessory soleus.**

Posterior Tibial Pulse

The posterior tibial pulse can usually be palpated between the posterior surface of the medial malleolus and the medial border of the calcaneal tendon (Fig. B7.26).

Because the posterior tibial artery passes deep to the flexor retinaculum, it is important when palpating this pulse to have the person invert the foot to relax the retinaculum. Failure to do so may lead to the erroneous conclusion that a pulse is absent.

FIGURE B7.26. **Posterior tibial pulse.**

Both arteries are examined simultaneously for equality of force. Palpation of the posterior tibial pulses is essential for examining patients with occlusive peripheral arterial disease.

Although posterior tibial pulses are absent in approximately 15% of normal young people, absence of posterior tibial pulses is a sign of occlusive peripheral arterial disease in people older than 60 years. For example, intermittent claudication, characterized by leg pain and cramps, develops during walking and disappears after rest. These conditions result from ischemia of the leg muscles caused by narrowing or occlusion of the leg arteries.

The Bottom Line: Popliteal Fossa and Leg

Popliteal fossa: The popliteal fossa is a fat-filled and relatively confined compartment posterior to the knee that is traversed by all neurovascular structures passing between the thigh and the leg. ■ The sciatic nerve bifurcates at the apex of the fossa, with the common fibular nerve passing laterally along the biceps tendon. ■ The tibial nerve, popliteal vein, and popliteal artery bisect the fossa—in that order, from superficial (posterior) to deep (anterior). ■ Genicular branches of the popliteal artery form a peri-articular genicular anastomosis around the knee, providing collateral circulation to maintain blood flow in all positions of the knee.

Anterior compartment of leg: The anterior compartment, confined by mostly unyielding bones and membranes, is susceptible to compartment syndromes. ■ The contained muscles are ankle dorsiflexors/toe extensors that are active in walking as they (1) concentrically contract to raise the forefoot to clear the ground during the swing phase of the gait cycle and (2) eccentrically contract to lower the forefoot to the ground after the heel strike of the stance phase. ■ The deep fibular nerve and anterior tibial artery course within and supply the anterior compartment. ■ Injury of the common or deep fibular nerve results in **footdrop**.

Lateral compartment of leg: The small lateral compartment contains the primary evertors of the foot and the superficial fibular nerve that supplies them. ■ Because no artery courses within this compartment, perforating branches from the anterior tibial and fibular arteries (and their accompanying veins) penetrate the intermuscular septa to supply (and drain) blood. ■ Eversion is used to support/depress the medial foot during the toe off of the stance phase, and to resist inadvertent inversion, preventing injury.

Posterior compartment of leg: The posterior or plantarflexor compartment is subdivided by the transverse intermuscular septum into superficial and deep subcompartments. ■ In the superficial subcompartment, the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles (triceps surae) share a common tendon (the calcaneal tendon, the body’s strongest tendon). ■ The triceps surae provides the power of plantarflexion that propels the body in walking and plays a major role in running and jumping via push off. ■ The deep muscles

in the posterior compartment augment the plantarflexor action through flexion of the digits and support of the longitudinal arches of the foot. ■ The contents of the posterior compartment are supplied by the tibial nerve and two arteries, the (medial) posterior tibial and fibular arteries. ■ All three structures (tibial nerve and two arteries) course within the confined deep subcompartment, where swelling may have profound consequences for the entire posterior compartment, the distal lateral compartment, and the foot.

FOOT

The clinical importance of the foot is indicated by the considerable amount of time primary care physicians devote to foot problems. Podiatry is the specialized field that deals with the study and care of the feet.

The ankle refers to the narrowest and malleolar parts of the distal leg, proximal to the dorsum and heel of the foot, including the ankle joint. The foot, distal to the ankle, provides a platform for supporting the body when standing and has an important role in locomotion.

The skeleton of the foot consists of 7 tarsals, 5 metatarsals, and 14 phalanges (Fig. 7.70). The foot and its bones may be considered in terms of three anatomical and functional zones (see Fig. 7.12C):

- The **hindfoot**: talus and calcaneus
- The **midfoot**: navicular, cuboid, and cuneiforms
- The **forefoot**: metatarsals and phalanges

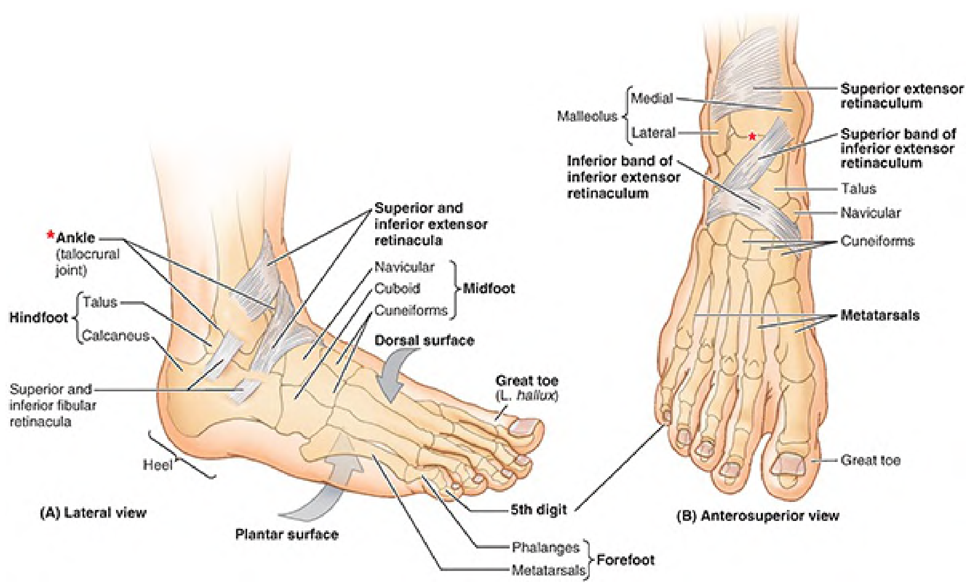


FIGURE 7.70. Surfaces, parts, bones, and retinacula of ankle and foot. A. Forefoot, midfoot, and hindfoot. **B.** Extensor retinacula on dorsum of foot. The disposition of the bones of the foot and the superior and inferior extensor and fibular retinacula relative to surface features are demonstrated.

The part/region of the foot contacting the floor or ground is the **sole** (plantar region, L. regio

plantaris). The part directed superiorly is the dorsum of the foot (L. dorsum pedis), or **dorsal region of foot** (L. regio dorsalis pedis). The sole of the foot underlying the calcaneus is the heel or **heel region** (L. regio calcanea), and the sole underlying the heads of the medial two metatarsals is the **ball of foot**. The **great toe** (L. hallux) is also the **1st toe** (digit of foot, L. digitus primus), and the **little toe** (L. digitus minimus) is also the **5th toe**.

Skin and Fascia of Foot

Marked variations occur in the thickness (strength) and texture of skin, subcutaneous tissue (superficial fascia), and deep fascia in relationship to weight bearing and distribution, ground contact (grip, abrasion), and the need for containment or compartmentalization.

SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE

The skin of the dorsum of the foot is much thinner and less sensitive than skin on most of the sole. The subcutaneous tissue is loose deep to the dorsal skin; therefore, edema (swelling) is most marked over this surface, especially anterior to and around the medial malleolus. The skin over the major weight-bearing areas of the sole—the heel, lateral margin, and ball of the foot—is thick. The subcutaneous tissue in the sole is more fibrous than in other areas of the foot.

Fibrous septa—highly developed skin ligaments (L., retinacula cutis)—divide this tissue into fat-filled areas, making it a shock-absorbing pad, especially over the heel. The skin ligaments also anchor the skin to the underlying deep fascia (plantar aponeurosis), improving the "grip" of the sole. The skin of the sole is hairless and sweat glands are numerous; the entire sole is sensitive ("ticklish"), especially the thinner-skinned area underlying the arch of the foot.

DEEP FASCIA OF FOOT

The deep fascia of the dorsum of the foot is thin where it is continuous proximally with the inferior extensor retinaculum (Fig. 7.71A). Over the lateral and posterior aspects of the foot, the deep fascia is continuous with the **plantar fascia**, the deep fascia of the sole (Fig. 7.71B, C). The plantar fascia has a thick central part and weaker medial and lateral parts.

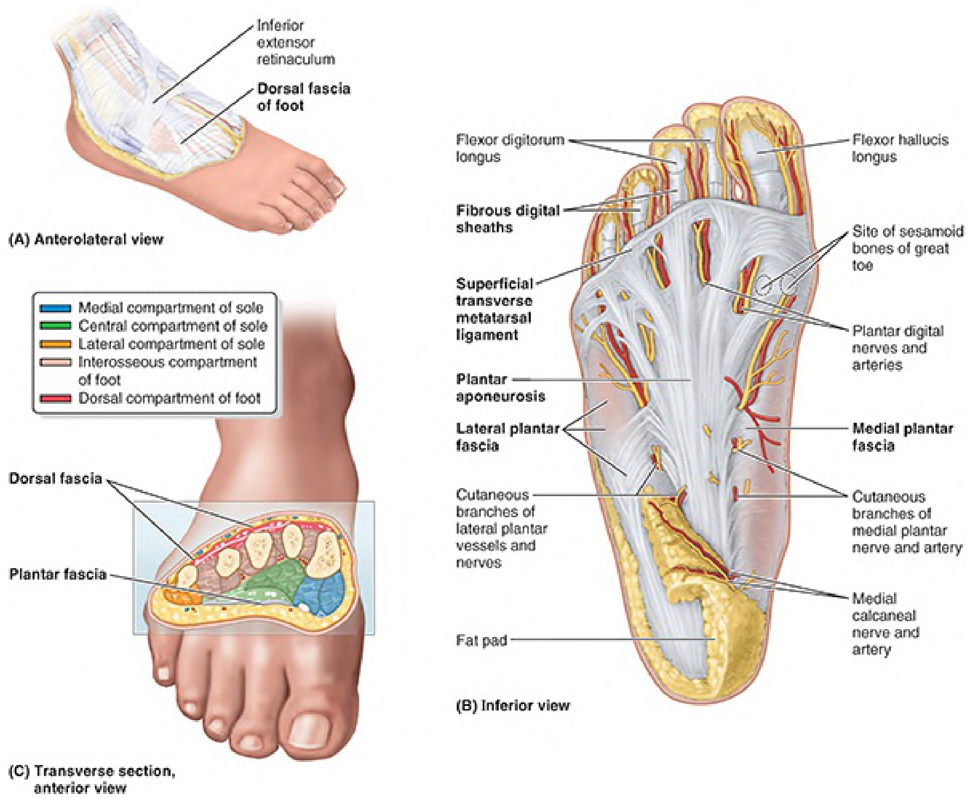


FIGURE 7.71. **Fascia and compartments of foot. A.** Deep fascia of leg and dorsum of foot. **B.** Deep plantar fascia. The fascia consists of the thick plantar aponeurosis and the thinner medial and lateral plantar fascia. Thinner parts of the plantar fascia have been removed, revealing the plantar digital vessels and nerves. **C.** Compartments of foot. The bones and muscles of the foot are surrounded by the deep dorsal and plantar fascia. A large central and smaller medial and lateral compartments of the sole are created by intermuscular septa that extend deeply from the plantar aponeurosis.

The thick, central part of the plantar fascia forms the strong plantar aponeurosis, longitudinally arranged bundles of dense fibrous connective tissue investing the central plantar muscles. It resembles the palmar aponeurosis of the palm of the hand but is tougher, denser, and elongated.

The plantar fascia holds the parts of the foot together, helps protect the sole from injury, and helps to support the longitudinal arches of the foot.

The **plantar aponeurosis** arises posteriorly from the calcaneus and functions like a superficial ligament. Distally, the longitudinal bundles of collagen fibers of the aponeurosis divide into five bands that become continuous with the **fibrous digital sheaths** that enclose the flexor tendons that pass to the toes. At the anterior end of the sole, inferior to the heads of the metatarsals, the aponeurosis is reinforced by transverse fibers forming the **superficial transverse metatarsal ligament**.

In the midfoot and forefoot, vertical intermuscular septa extend deeply (superiorly) from the margins of the plantar aponeurosis toward the 1st and 5th metatarsals, forming the three compartments of the sole (Fig. 7.71C):

1. The **medial compartment of the sole** is covered superficially by thinner medial plantar fascia. It contains the abductor hallucis, flexor hallucis brevis, the tendon of the flexor

hallucis longus, and the medial plantar nerve and vessels.

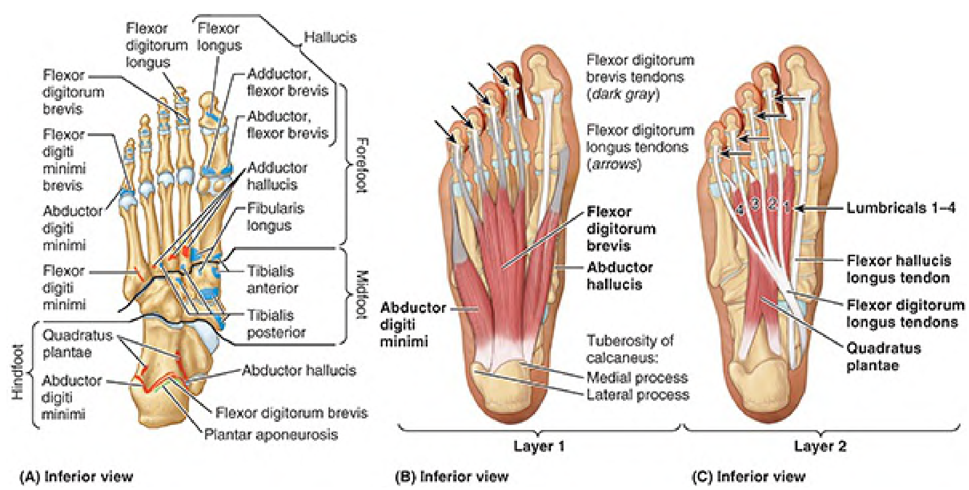
2. The **central compartment of the sole** is covered superficially by the dense plantar aponeurosis. It contains the flexor digitorum brevis; the tendons of the flexor hallucis longus and flexor digitorum longus, plus the muscles associated with the latter; the quadratus plantae and lumbricals, and the adductor hallucis. The lateral plantar nerve and vessels are also located here.
3. The **lateral compartment of the sole** is covered superficially by the thinner lateral plantar fascia and contains the abductor and flexor digiti minimi brevis.

In the forefoot only, a fourth compartment, the **interosseous compartment of the foot**, is surrounded by the plantar and dorsal interosseous fascias. It contains the metatarsals, the dorsal and plantar interosseous muscles, and the deep plantar and metatarsal vessels. Whereas the plantar interossei and plantar metatarsal vessels are distinctly plantar in position, the remaining structures of the compartment are located intermediate between the plantar and dorsal aspects of the foot.

A fifth compartment, the **dorsal compartment of the foot**, lies between the dorsal fascia of the foot and the tarsal bones and the dorsal interosseous fascia of the midfoot and forefoot. It contains the muscles (extensors hallucis brevis and extensor digitorum brevis) and neurovascular structures of the dorsum of the foot.

Muscles of Foot

Of the 20 individual muscles of the foot, 14 are located on the plantar aspect, 2 are on the dorsal aspect, and 4 are intermediate in position. From the plantar aspect, muscles of the sole are arranged in four layers within four compartments. The muscles of the foot are illustrated in Figures 7.72A–J and 7.73; their attachments, innervation, and actions are described in Table 7.14.



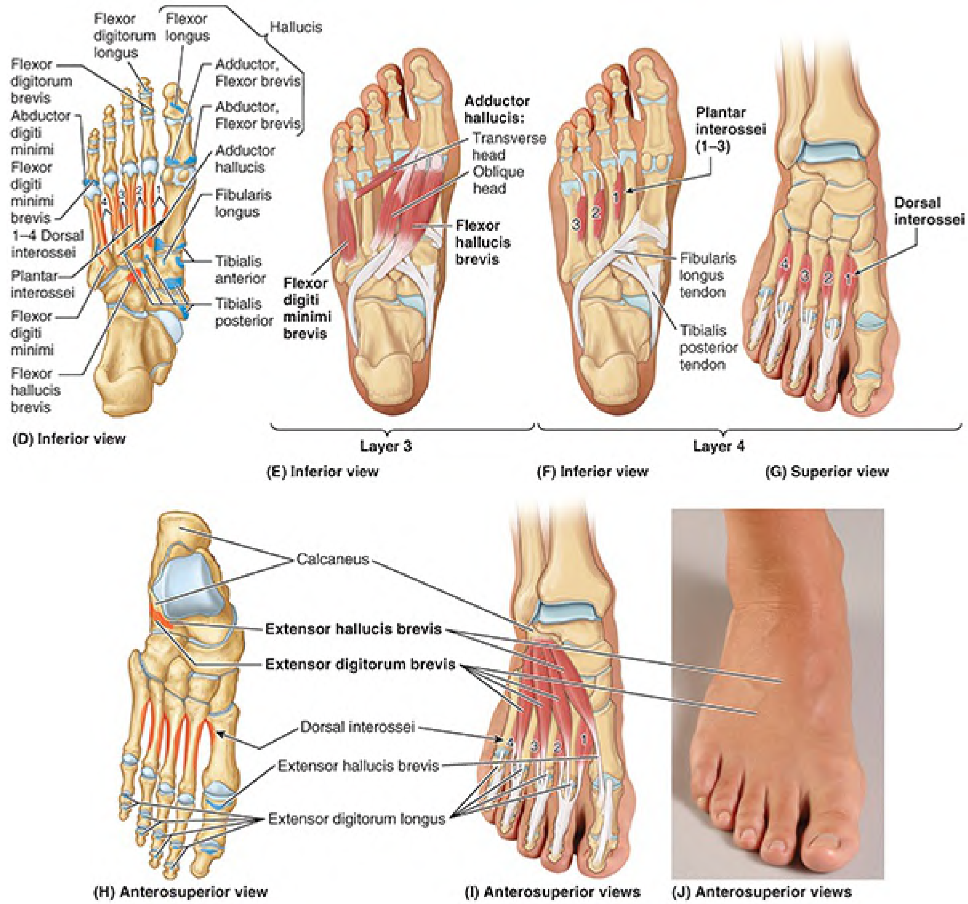


FIGURE 7.72. **Muscles of foot. A.** Attachments of muscles of 1st and 2nd layers of sole of foot. **B.** Muscles of 1st layer of sole of foot. **C.** Muscles of 2nd layer of sole of foot. **D.** Attachments of muscles of 3rd and 4th layers of sole of foot. **E.** Muscles of 3rd layer of sole of foot. **F and G.** Muscles of 4th layer of sole of foot. **H–J.** Attachments and muscles of dorsum of foot.

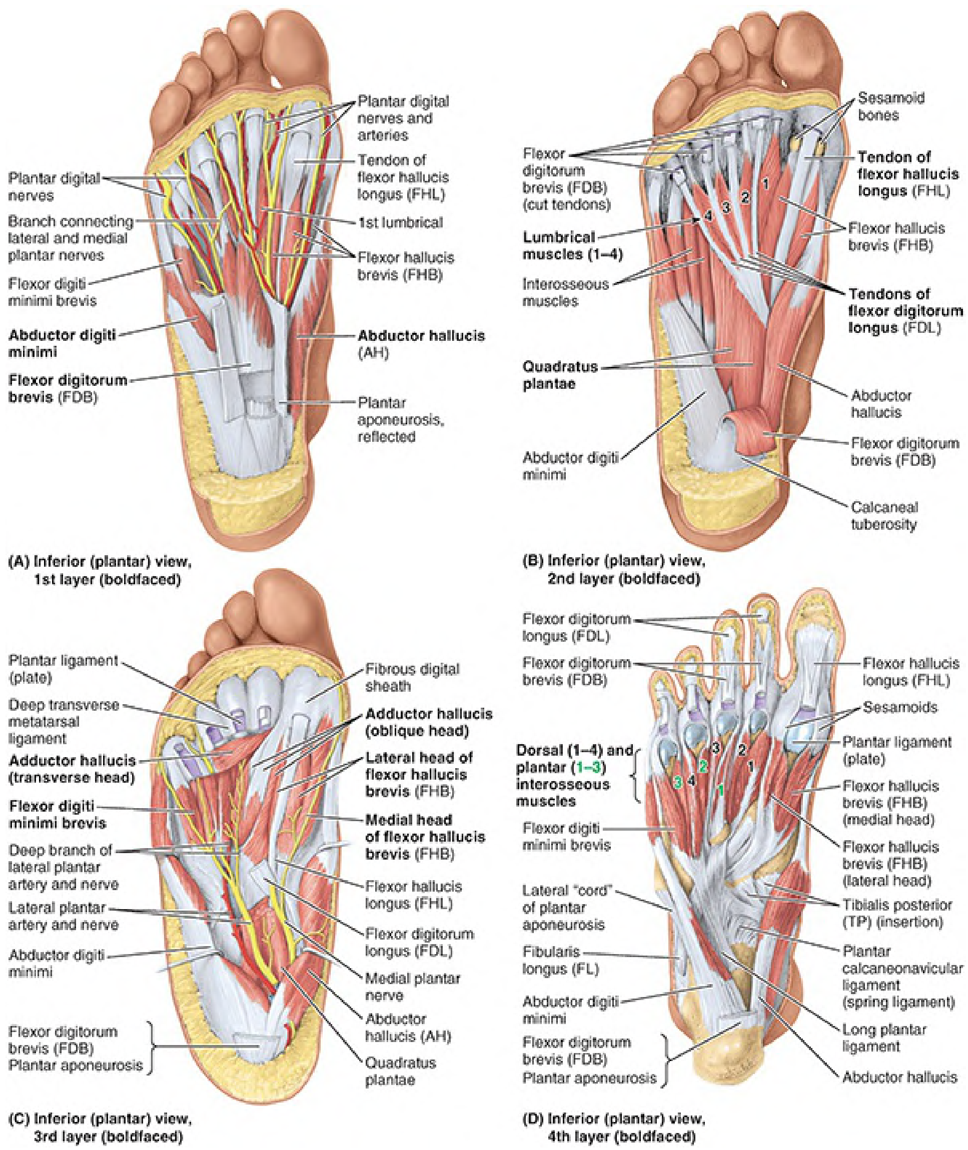


FIGURE 7.73. Layers of plantar muscles. A. First layer. This layer consists of the abductors of the large and small toes and the short flexor of the toes. **B.** Second layer. This layer consists of the long flexor tendons and associated muscles: four lumbricals and the quadratus plantae. **C.** Third layer. This layer consists of the flexor of the little toe and the flexor and adductor of the great toe. Also demonstrated are the neurovascular structures that course in a plane between the 1st and 2nd layers. **D.** Fourth layer. This layer consists of the dorsal and plantar interosseous muscles.

TABLE 7.14.I. MUSCLES OF FOOT: 1ST AND 2ND LAYERS OF SOLE

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action[b]
1st layer				
Abductor hallucis	Medial tubercle of tuberosity of calcaneus; flexor retinaculum; plantar aponeurosis	Medial side of base of proximal phalanx of 1st digit	Medial plantar nerve (L5, S1)	Abducts and flexes 1st digit (great toe, hallux) at metatarsophalangeal (MTP) and interphalangeal (IP) joints

Flexor digitorum brevis	Medial tubercle of tuberosity of calcaneus; plantar aponeurosis; intermuscular septa	Both sides of middle phalanges of lateral four digits	Medial plantar nerve (L5, S1)	Flexes lateral four digits at MTP and IP joints
Abductor digiti minimi	Medial and lateral tubercles of tuberosity of calcaneus; plantar aponeurosis; intermuscular septa	Lateral side of base of proximal phalanx of 5th digit	Lateral plantar nerve (S1–S3)	Abducts and flexes little toe (5th digit) at MTP and IP joints
2nd layer				
Quadratus plantae	Medial surface and lateral margin of plantar surface of calcaneus	Posterolateral margin of tendon of flexor digitorum longus	Lateral plantar nerve (S1–S3)	Assists flexor digitorum longus in flexing lateral four digits at MTP and IP joints
Lumbricals	Tendons of flexor digitorum longus	Medial aspect of expansion over lateral four digits	Medial one: medial plantar nerve (L5–S1) Lateral three: lateral plantar nerve (S1–S3)	Flex proximal IP joint; extend middle and distal IP joints of lateral four digits

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., "S2, S3" means that the nerves supplying the abductor hallucis are derived from the second and third sacral segments of the spinal cord). Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

[b]Despite individual actions, the primary function of the intrinsic muscles of the sole of the foot is to resist flattening or maintain the arch of the foot.

TABLE 7.14.II. MUSCLES OF FOOT: 3RD AND 4TH LAYERS OF SOLE

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action[b]
3rd layer				
Flexor hallucis brevis	Plantar surfaces of cuboid and lateral cuneiforms	Both sides of base of proximal phalanx of 1st digit	Medial plantar nerve (L5, S1)	Flexes proximal interphalangeal (IP) joint of 1st digit
Adductor hallucis	Oblique head: bases of metatarsals 2–4 Transverse head: plantar ligaments of metatarsophalangeal (MTP) joints	Tendons of both heads attach to lateral side of base of proximal phalanx of 1st digit.	Deep branch of lateral plantar nerve (S1–S3)	Traditionally said to adduct 1st digit; assists in maintaining transverse arch of foot by pulling metatarsals medially
Flexor digit minimi brevis	Base of 5th metatarsal	Base of proximal phalanx of 5th digit	Superficial branch of lateral plantar nerve (S1–S3)	Flexes proximal IP joint of 5th digit, thereby assisting with flexion of digit
4th layer				
Plantar interossei (three muscles)	Plantar aspect of medial sides of shafts of metatarsals 3–5	Medial sides of bases of phalanges of 3rd–5th digits	Lateral plantar nerve (S1–S3)	Adduct and flex digits 3–5 at MTP joints

Dorsal interossei (four muscles)	Adjacent sides of shafts of metatarsals 1–5	1st: medial side of proximal phalanx of 2nd digit 2nd–4th: lateral sides of 2nd–4th digits		Abduct and flex digits 2–4 at MTP joints

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., “S2, S3” means that the nerves supplying the flexor hallucis brevis are derived from the second and third sacral segments of the spinal cord). Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

[b]Despite individual actions, the primary function of the intrinsic muscles of the sole of the foot is to resist flattening or maintain the arch of the foot.

TABLE 7.14.III. MUSCLES OF FOOT: DORSUM OF FOOT

Muscle	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Innervation[a]	Main Action
Extensor digitorum brevis	Calcaneus (floor of tarsal sinus); interosseous talocalcaneal ligament; stem of inferior extensor retinaculum	Long extensor tendons of three intermediate digits (toes 2–4)	Deep fibular nerve (L5 or S1, or both)	Aids the extensor digitorum longus in extending the three intermediate toes at the metatarsophalangeal (MTP) and interphalangeal joints
Extensor hallucis brevis	In common with extensor digitorum brevis (above)	Dorsal aspect of base of proximal phalanx of great toe (digit 1)		Aids the extensor hallucis longus in extending the great toe at the MTP joint

[a]The spinal cord segmental innervation is indicated (e.g., “L5 or S1” means that the nerve supplying the extensor digitorum brevis is derived from either the fifth lumbar segment or first sacral segment of the spinal cord). Damage to one or more of the listed spinal cord segments or to the motor nerve roots arising from them results in paralysis of the muscles concerned.

Despite their compartmental and layered arrangement, the plantar muscles function primarily as a group during the support phase of stance, maintaining the arches of the foot (see Fig. 7.23B–E; Table 7.2). They basically resist forces that tend to reduce the longitudinal arch as weight is received at the heel (posterior end of the arch) and then transferred to the ball of the foot and great toe (anterior end of the arch).

The muscles become most active in the later portion of the movement to stabilize the foot for propulsion (push off), a time when forces also tend to flatten the foot’s transverse arch. Concurrently, they are also able to refine further the efforts of the long muscles, producing supination and pronation in enabling the platform of the foot to adjust to uneven ground.

The muscles of the foot are of little importance individually because fine control of the individual toes is not important to most people. Rather than producing actual movement, they are most active in fixing the foot or in increasing the pressure applied against the ground by various aspects of the sole or toes to maintain balance.

Although the adductor hallucis resembles a similar muscle of the palm that adducts the thumb, despite its name, the adductor hallucis is probably most active during the push off phase of stance in pulling the lateral four metatarsals toward the great toe, fixing the transverse arch of the foot, and resisting forces that would spread the metatarsal heads as weight and force are applied to the forefoot (Table 7.2).

In Table 7.14, note that the

- **P**lantar interossei **Ad**duct (**PAD**) the toes and arise from a single metatarsal as unipennate muscles.
- **D**orsal interossei **Ab**duct (**DAB**) the toes and arise from two metatarsals as bipennate muscles.

See the movements of adduction and abduction of the toes illustrated in Fig. 7.104.

There are two neurovascular planes between the muscle layers of the sole of the foot (Figs. 7.73 and 7.74B): (1) a superficial one between the 1st and the 2nd muscular layers and (2) a deep one between the 3rd and the 4th muscular layers. The tibial nerve divides inferior to the medial malleolus into the medial and lateral plantar nerves (Figs. 7.73, and 7.75; see Fig. 7.60B; Table 7.15). These nerves supply the intrinsic muscles of the plantar aspect of the foot.

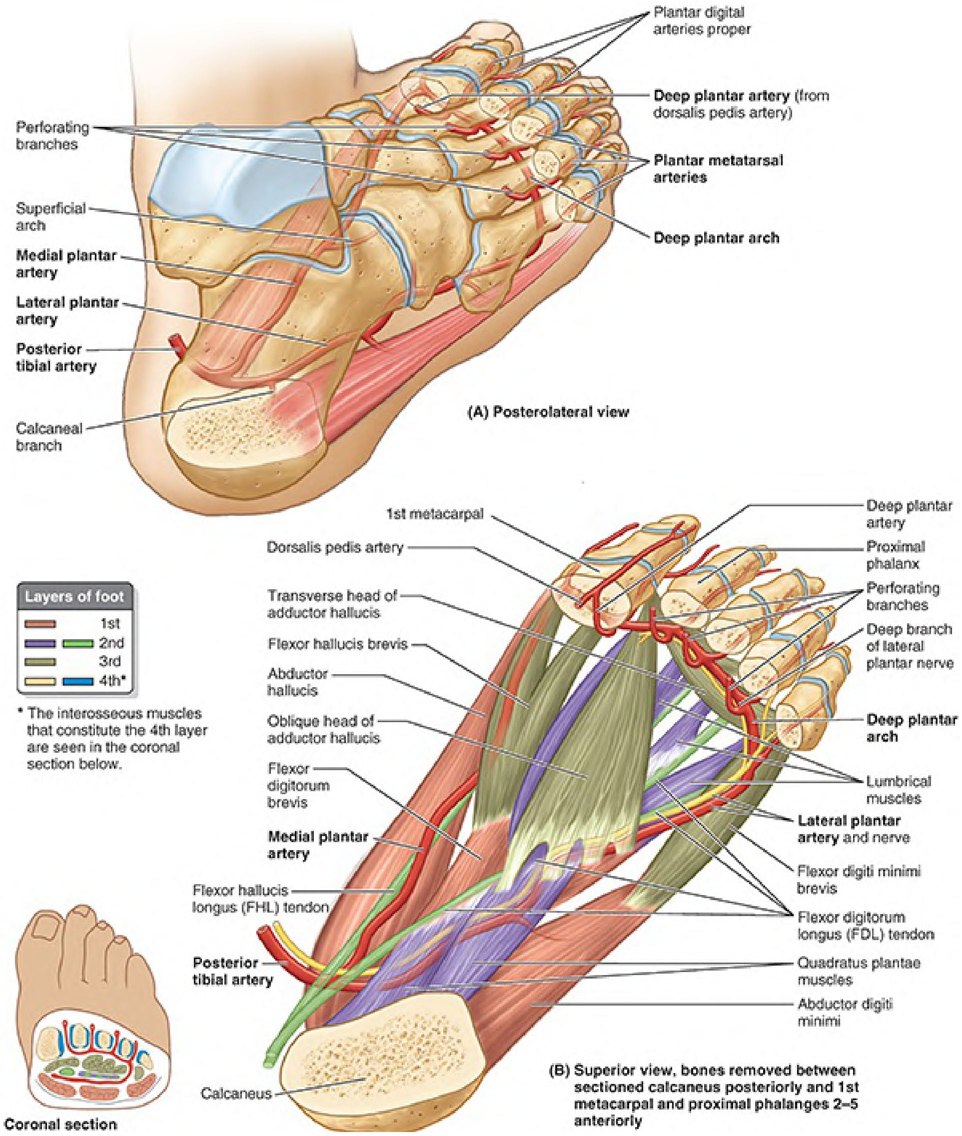


FIGURE 7.74. Arteries and muscle layers of foot. A. Overview. The posterior tibial artery terminates as it enters the foot by dividing into the medial and lateral plantar arteries. Observe the distal anastomoses of these vessels with the deep plantar artery from the dorsal artery of the foot and the perforating branches to the arcuate artery on the dorsum of the foot.

B. Relationship of plantar arteries to muscle layers of sole of foot. Note that the plantar arteries enter and run in the plane between the 1st and the 2nd layers, with the lateral plantar artery passing from medial to lateral. The deep branches of the artery then pass from lateral to medial between the 3rd and the 4th layers.

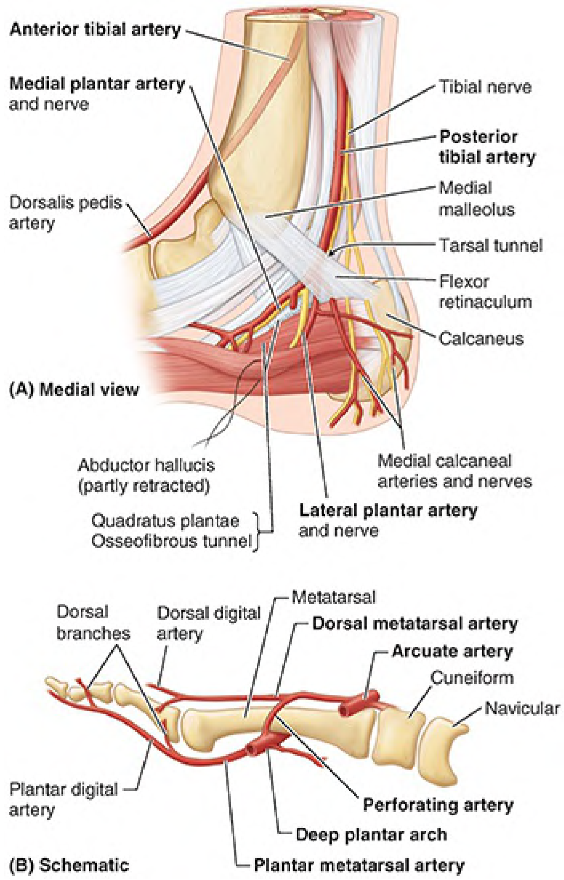


FIGURE 7.75. Arteries of foot: branching and communicating. A. Posterior tibial artery. Branching of the parent neurovascular structures that gives rise to plantar vessels and nerves is shown. **B.** Plantar digital arteries. The arteries of the midfoot and forefoot resemble those of the hand in that (1) arches on the two aspects give rise to metatarsal (metacarpal) arteries, which in turn give rise to digital arteries; (2) the dorsal arteries end are exhausted before reaching the distal ends of the toes or digits, so the plantar (palmar) digital arteries send branches dorsally to supply the distal dorsal aspects of the digits, including the nail beds; and (3) perforating branches extend between the metatarsals (metacarpals) forming anastomoses between the arches of each side.

The medial plantar nerve courses within the medial compartment of the sole between the 1st and 2nd muscle layers. Initially, the lateral plantar nerve (and artery) runs laterally between the muscles of the 1st and 2nd layers of plantar muscles (Figs. 7.73C and 7.74B). Their deep branches then pass medially between the muscles of the 3rd and 4th layers (Fig. 7.74B).

Two closely connected muscles on the dorsum of the foot are the **extensor digitorum brevis** (**EDB**) and **extensor hallucis brevis** (**EHB**) (see Figs. 7.58A, B and 7.59A). The EHB is actually part of the EDB. These thin, broad muscles form a fleshy mass on the lateral part of the dorsum of the foot, anterior to the lateral malleolus. Its small fleshy belly may be felt when the toes are extended.

Neurovascular Structures and Relationships in Foot

NERVES OF FOOT

The cutaneous innervation of the foot is supplied (Fig. 7.76; Table 7.15)

- medially by the saphenous nerve, which extends distally to the head of 1st metatarsal
- superiorly (dorsum of foot) by the superficial (primarily) and deep fibular nerves
- inferiorly (sole of foot) by the medial and lateral plantar nerves; the common border of their distribution extends along the 4th metacarpal and toe or digit. (This is similar to the pattern of innervation of the palm of the hand.)
- laterally by the sural nerve, including part of the heel
- posteriorly (heel) by medial and lateral calcaneal branches of the tibial and sural nerves, respectively

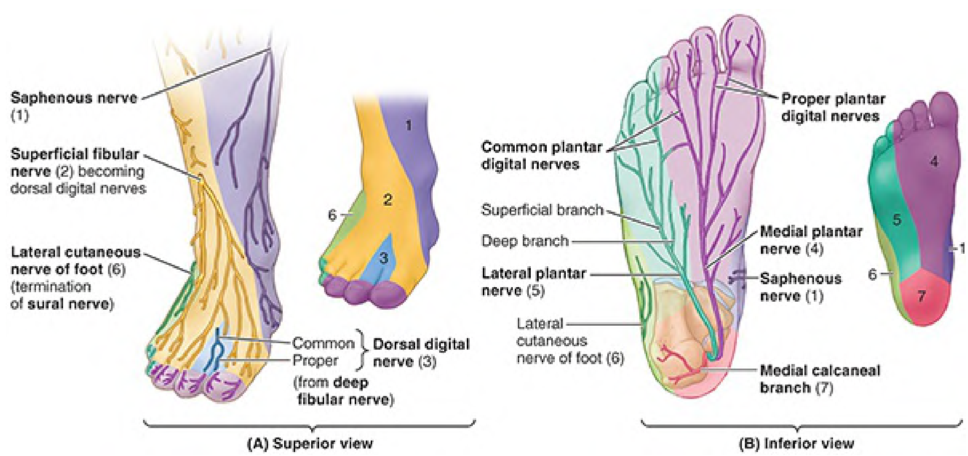


FIGURE 7.76. Cutaneous innervation of foot.

TABLE 7.15. NERVES OF FOOT

Nerve[a]	Origin	Course	Distribution in Foot
Saphenous (1)	Femoral nerve	Arises in femoral triangle and descends through thigh and leg; accompanies great saphenous vein anterior to medial malleolus; ends on medial side of foot	Supplies skin on medial side of foot as far anteriorly as head of 1st metatarsal
Superficial fibular (2)	Common fibular nerve	Pierces deep fascia in distal third of leg to become cutaneous; then sends branches to foot and digits	Supplies skin on dorsum of foot and all digits, except lateral side of 5th and adjoining sides of the 1st and 2nd digits
Deep fibular (3)		Passes deep to extensor retinaculum to enter dorsum of foot	Supplies extensor digitorum brevis and skin on contiguous sides of 1st and 2nd digits
Medial plantar (4)	Larger terminal branch of tibial nerve	Passes distally in foot between abductor hallucis and flexor digitorum brevis; divides into	Supplies skin of medial side of sole of foot and sides of first three digits; also supplies

		muscular and cutaneous branches	abductor hallucis, flexor digitorum brevis, flexor hallucis brevis, and first lumbrical
Lateral plantar (5)	Smaller terminal branch of tibial nerve	Passes laterally in foot between quadratus plantae and flexor digitorum brevis muscles; divides into superficial and deep branches	Supplies quadratus plantae, abductor digiti minimi, and digiti minimi brevis; deep branch supplies plantar and dorsal interossei, lateral three lumbricals, and adductor hallucis; supplies skin on sole lateral to a line splitting 4th digit
Sural (6)	Usually arises from branches of both tibial and common fibular nerves	Passes inferior to the lateral malleolus to lateral side of foot	Lateral aspect of hindfoot and midfoot
Calcaneal branches (7)	Tibial and sural nerves	Pass from distal part of the posterior aspect of leg to skin on heel	Skin of heel

[a]Numbers refer to Figure 7.76.

Saphenous Nerve. The saphenous nerve is the longest and most widely distributed cutaneous branch of the femoral nerve; it is the only branch to extend beyond the knee (Fig. 7.76A; Table 7.15; see Fig. 7.78C). In addition to supplying the skin and fascia on the anteromedial aspect of the leg, the saphenous nerve passes anterior to the medial malleolus to the dorsum of the foot, where it supplies articular branches to the ankle joint and continues to supply skin along the medial side of the foot as far anteriorly as the head of the 1st metatarsal.

Superficial and Deep Fibular Nerves. After coursing between and supplying the fibular muscles in the lateral compartment of the leg, the superficial fibular nerve emerges as a cutaneous nerve about two thirds of the way down the leg. It then supplies the skin on the anterolateral aspect of the leg and divides into the **medial** and **intermediate dorsal cutaneous nerves**, which continue across the ankle to supply most of the skin on the dorsum of the foot. Its terminal branches are the dorsal digital nerves (common and proper) that supply the skin of the proximal aspect of the medial half of the great toe and that of the lateral three and a half digits.

After supplying the muscles of the anterior compartment of the leg, the deep fibular nerve passes deep to the extensor retinaculum and supplies the intrinsic muscles on the dorsum of the foot (extensors digitorum and hallucis longus) and the tarsal and tarsometatarsal joints. When it finally emerges as a cutaneous nerve, it is so far distal in the foot that only a small area of skin remains available for innervation: the web of skin between contiguous sides of the 1st and 2nd toes. It innervates this area as the **1st common dorsal (and then proper dorsal) digital nerve(s)**.

Medial Plantar Nerve. The **medial plantar nerve**, the larger and more anterior of the two terminal branches of the tibial nerve, arises deep to the flexor retinaculum. It enters the sole of the foot by passing deep to the abductor hallucis (AH) (Figs. 7.73C and 7.75A). It then runs anteriorly between the AH muscle and the flexor digitorum brevis (FDB), supplying both with motor branches on the lateral side of the medial plantar artery (Fig. 7.73A, C). After sending

motor branches to the flexor hallucis brevis (FHB) and 1st lumbrical muscle, the medial plantar nerve terminates near the bases of the metatarsals by dividing into three sensory branches (common plantar digital nerves). These branches supply the skin of the medial three and a half digits (including the dorsal skin and nail beds of their distal phalanges) and the skin of the sole proximal to them. Compared to the other terminal branch of the tibial nerve, the medial plantar nerve supplies more skin area but fewer muscles. Its distribution to both skin and muscles of the foot is comparable to that of the median nerve in the hand.

Lateral Plantar Nerve. The **lateral plantar nerve**, the smaller and more posterior of the two terminal branches of the tibial nerve, also courses deep to the AH (Fig. 7.75A) but runs anterolaterally between the 1st and 2nd layers of plantar muscles, on the medial side of the lateral plantar artery (Fig. 7.71B). The lateral plantar nerve terminates as it reaches the lateral compartment, dividing into superficial and deep branches (Fig. 7.76B; Table 7.15).

The superficial branch divides, in turn, into two **plantar digital nerves** (one common and one proper) that supply the skin of the plantar aspects of the lateral one and a half digits, the dorsal skin and nail beds of their distal phalanges, and skin of the sole proximal to them. The deep branch of the lateral plantar nerve courses with the plantar arterial arch between the 3rd and the 4th muscle layers.

The superficial and deep branches of the lateral plantar nerve supply all muscles of the sole not supplied by the medial plantar nerve. Compared to the medial plantar nerve, the lateral plantar nerve supplies less skin area but more individual muscles. Its distribution to both skin and muscles of the foot is comparable to that of the ulnar nerve in the hand (Chapter 3, Upper Limb). The medial and lateral plantar nerves also provide innervation to the plantar aspects of all the joints of the foot.

Sural Nerve. The **sural nerve** is formed by union of the medial sural cutaneous nerve (from the tibial nerve) and sural communicating branch of the common fibular nerve, respectively (see Fig. 7.53; Table 7.11). The level of junction of these branches is variable; it may be high (in the popliteal fossa) or low (proximal to heel). Sometimes, the branches do not join and, therefore, no sural nerve is formed. In these people, the skin normally innervated by the sural nerve is supplied by the medial and lateral sural cutaneous branches. The sural nerve accompanies the small saphenous vein and enters the foot posterior to the lateral malleolus to supply the ankle joint and skin along the lateral margin of the foot (Fig. 7.76A; Table 7.15).

ARTERIES OF FOOT

The arteries of the foot are terminal branches of the anterior and posterior tibial arteries (Figs. 7.75A and 7.77), respectively: the dorsalis pedis and plantar arteries.

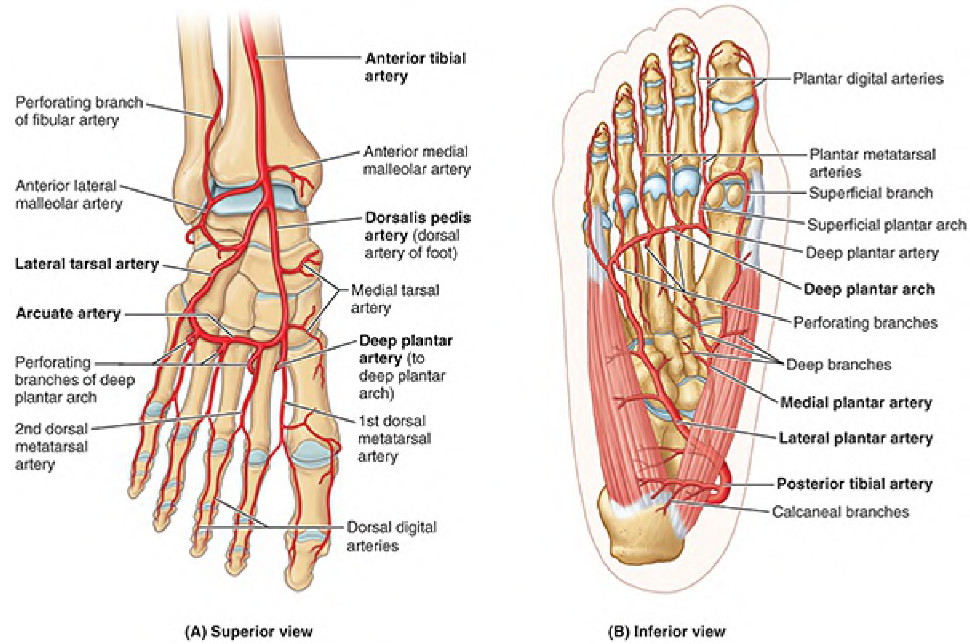


FIGURE 7.77. Arteries of foot: overview. A. Dorsum of foot. The anterior tibial artery becomes the dorsalis pedis artery when it crosses the talocrural joint. **B.** Plantar aspect of foot. The medial and lateral plantar arteries are terminal branches of the posterior tibial artery. The deep plantar artery and perforating branches of the deep plantar arch provide anastomoses between the dorsal and the plantar arteries.

Dorsalis Pedis Artery. Often, a major source of blood supply to the forefoot (e.g., during extended periods of standing), the **dorsalis pedis artery** (dorsal artery of foot) is the direct continuation of the anterior tibial artery. The dorsalis pedis artery begins midway between the malleoli and runs anteromedially, deep to the inferior extensor retinaculum between the extensor hallucis longus and the extensor digitorum longus tendons on the dorsum of the foot.

The dorsalis pedis artery passes to the first interosseous space, where it divides into the 1st dorsal metatarsal artery and a **deep plantar artery**. The latter passes deeply between the heads of the first dorsal interosseous muscle to enter the sole of the foot, where it joins the lateral plantar artery to form the deep plantar arch. The course and destination of the dorsal artery and its major continuation, the deep plantar artery, are comparable to the radial artery of the hand, which completes a deep arterial arch in the palm.

The **lateral tarsal artery**, a branch of the dorsalis pedis artery, runs laterally in an arched course beneath the EDB to supply this muscle and the underlying tarsals and joints. It anastomoses with other branches, such as the arcuate artery.

The **1st dorsal metatarsal artery** divides into branches that supply both sides of the great toe and the medial side of the 2nd toe.

The **arcuate artery** runs laterally across the bases of the lateral four metatarsals, deep to the extensor tendons, to reach the lateral aspect of the forefoot, where it may anastomose with the lateral tarsal artery to form an arterial loop. The arcuate artery gives rise to the **2nd**, **3rd**, and **4th dorsal metatarsal arteries**. These vessels run distally to the clefts of the toes and are connected to the plantar arch and the plantar metatarsal arteries by perforating branches (Figs. 7.74, 7.75B, and 7.77A, B). Distally, each dorsal metatarsal artery divides into two **dorsal digital arteries** for

the dorsal aspect of the sides of adjoining toes (Fig. 7.77A); however, these arteries generally end proximal to the distal interphalangeal joint (Fig. 7.75B) and are replaced by or receive replenishment from dorsal branches of the plantar digital arteries.

ARTERIES OF SOLE OF FOOT

The sole of the foot has a prolific blood supply from the posterior tibial artery, which divides deep to the flexor retinaculum (Figs. 7.73A, 7.75A, and 7.77B). The terminal branches pass deep to the abductor hallucis (AH) as the medial and lateral plantar arteries, which accompany the similarly named nerves.

Medial Plantar Artery. The **medial plantar artery** is the smaller terminal branch of the posterior tibial artery. It gives rise to a deep branch (or branches) that supplies mainly muscles of the great toe. The larger superficial branch of the medial plantar artery supplies the skin on the medial side of the sole and has digital branches that accompany digital branches of the medial plantar nerve, the more lateral of which anastomose with medial plantar metatarsal arteries. Occasionally, a **superficial plantar arch** is formed when the superficial branch anastomoses with the lateral plantar artery or the deep plantar arch (Fig. 7.77B).

Lateral Plantar Artery. The **lateral plantar artery**, much larger than the medial plantar artery, arises with and accompanies the nerve of the same name (Figs. 7.73C, 7.74B, 7.75A, and 7.77B). It runs laterally and anteriorly, at first deep to the AH and then between the FDB and quadratus plantae.

The lateral plantar artery arches medially across the foot with the deep branch of the lateral plantar nerve to form the **deep plantar arch**, which is completed by union with the deep plantar artery, a branch of the dorsalis pedis artery. As it crosses the foot, the deep plantar arch gives rise to four **plantar metatarsal arteries**; three **perforating branches**; and many branches to the skin, fascia, and muscles in the sole. The plantar metatarsal arteries divide near the base of the proximal phalanges to form the **plantar digital arteries**, supplying adjacent digits (toes); the more medial metatarsal arteries are joined by superficial digital branches of the medial plantar artery. The plantar digital arteries typically provide most of the blood reaching the distal toes, including the nail bed, via perforating and dorsal branches (Figs. 7.75B and 7.77)—an arrangement that also occurs in the fingers.

VENOUS DRAINAGE OF FOOT

As in the rest of the lower limb, there are both superficial and deep veins in the foot (Fig. 7.78). The deep veins take the form of interanastomosing paired veins accompanying all arteries internal to the deep fascia. The superficial veins are subcutaneous and unaccompanied by arteries.

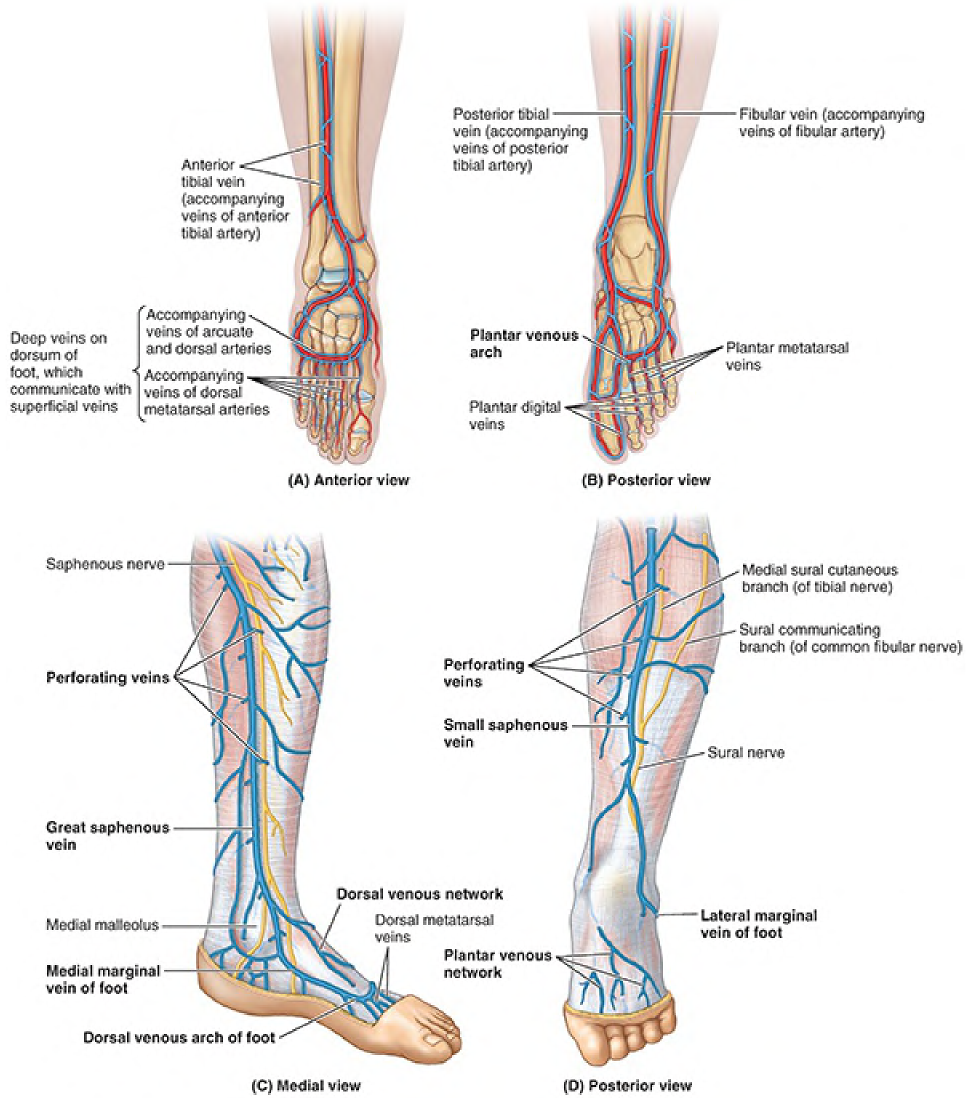


FIGURE 7.78. **Veins of leg and foot. A and B.** Deep veins of leg and foot. The deep veins accompany the arteries and their branches; they anastomose frequently and have numerous valves. **C and D.** Superficial veins of leg and foot. The main superficial veins drain into the deep veins as they ascend the limb by means of perforating veins so that muscular compression can propel blood toward the heart against the pull of gravity. The distal great saphenous vein is accompanied by the saphenous nerve, and the small saphenous vein is accompanied by the sural nerve and its medial root (medial sural cutaneous nerve).

Perforating veins begin the one-way shunting of blood from superficial to deep veins, a pattern essential to operation of the musculovenous pump, proximal to the ankle joint.

Deep Venous Drainage. Deep drainage from the foot is markedly augmented by ambulation (compression and activity of intrinsic foot muscles) increasing flow from the deep plantar arch to the posterior tibial vein (Fig. 7.78A). Intermittent compression devices are used during and after surgery and during prolonged bed rest to increase this flow and reduce the risk of deep vein thrombosis.

Superficial Venous Drainage. Dorsal digital veins continue proximally as **dorsal metatarsal veins**, which also receive branches from **plantar digital veins** (Fig. 7.78B, C). These veins drain

to the **dorsal venous arch of the foot**, proximal to which a **dorsal venous network** covers the remainder of the dorsum of the foot. Both the arch and the network are located in the subcutaneous tissue.

For the main part, superficial veins from a **plantar venous network** either drain around the medial border of the foot to converge with the medial part of the dorsal venous arch and network to form a **medial marginal vein**, which becomes the great saphenous vein, or drain around the lateral margin to converge with the lateral part of the dorsal venous arch and network to form the **lateral marginal vein**, which becomes the small saphenous vein (Fig. 7.78C, D).

Perforating veins from the great and small saphenous veins then continuously shunt blood deeply as they ascend to take advantage of the musculovenous pump.

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE OF FOOT

The lymphatics of the foot begin in subcutaneous plexuses. The collecting vessels consist of superficial and deep lymphatic vessels that follow the superficial veins and major vascular bundles, respectively.

Superficial lymphatic vessels are most numerous in the sole of the foot (Fig. 7.79). The medial superficial lymphatic vessels, larger and more numerous than the lateral ones, drain the medial side of the dorsum and sole of the foot (Fig. 7.79A). These vessels converge on the great saphenous vein and accompany it to the vertical group of superficial inguinal lymph nodes, located along the vein's termination, and then to the deep inguinal lymph nodes along the proximal femoral vein (see Fig. 7.48A, B). The lateral superficial lymphatic vessels drain the lateral side of the dorsum and sole of the foot. Most of these vessels pass posterior to the lateral malleolus and accompany the small saphenous vein to the popliteal fossa, where they enter the popliteal lymph nodes (Fig. 7.79B).

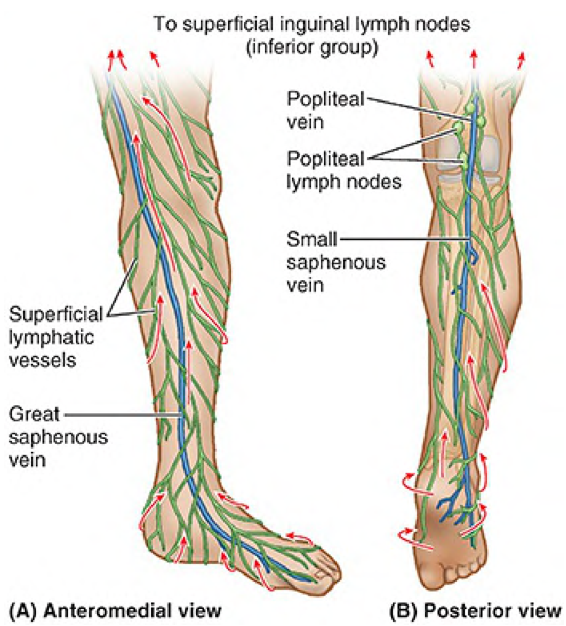


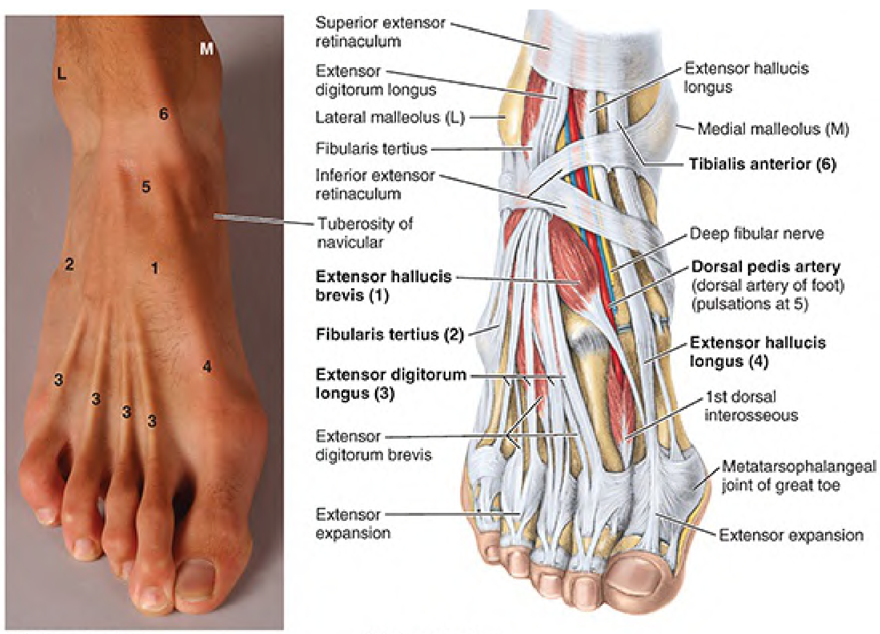
FIGURE 7.79. Superficial lymphatic drainage of foot and leg. A. Medial aspect. Superficial lymphatic vessels from the medial foot drain are joined by those from the anteromedial leg in draining to the superficial inguinal lymph nodes via

lymphatics that accompany the great saphenous vein. **B.** Sole of foot and posterior aspect of leg. Lymphatic drainage from the sole drains dorsally and proximally. Superficial lymphatic vessels from the lateral foot join those from the posterolateral leg, converging to vessels accompanying the small saphenous vein and draining into the popliteal lymph nodes.

The deep lymphatic vessels from the foot follow the main blood vessels: fibular, anterior and posterior tibial, popliteal, and femoral veins. The deep vessels from the foot also drain into the popliteal lymph nodes. Lymphatic vessels from them follow the femoral vessels, carrying lymph to the deep inguinal lymph nodes. From the deep inguinal nodes, all lymph from the lower limb passes deep to the inguinal ligament to the iliac lymph nodes (see Fig. 7.48A).

Surface Anatomy of Ankle and Foot Regions

The tendons in the ankle region can be identified satisfactorily only when their muscles are acting. If the foot is actively inverted, the tendon of the tibialis posterior may be palpated as it passes posterior and distal to the medial malleolus, then superior to the sustentaculum tali, to reach its attachment to the tuberosity of the navicular (Fig. 7.80A, B, E). Hence, the tibialis posterior tendon is the guide to the navicular. The tendon of the tibialis posterior also indicates the site for palpating the posterior tibial pulse (halfway between the medial malleolus and the calcaneal tendon) (see Fig. B7.26).



(A) Superior view (B) Superior view

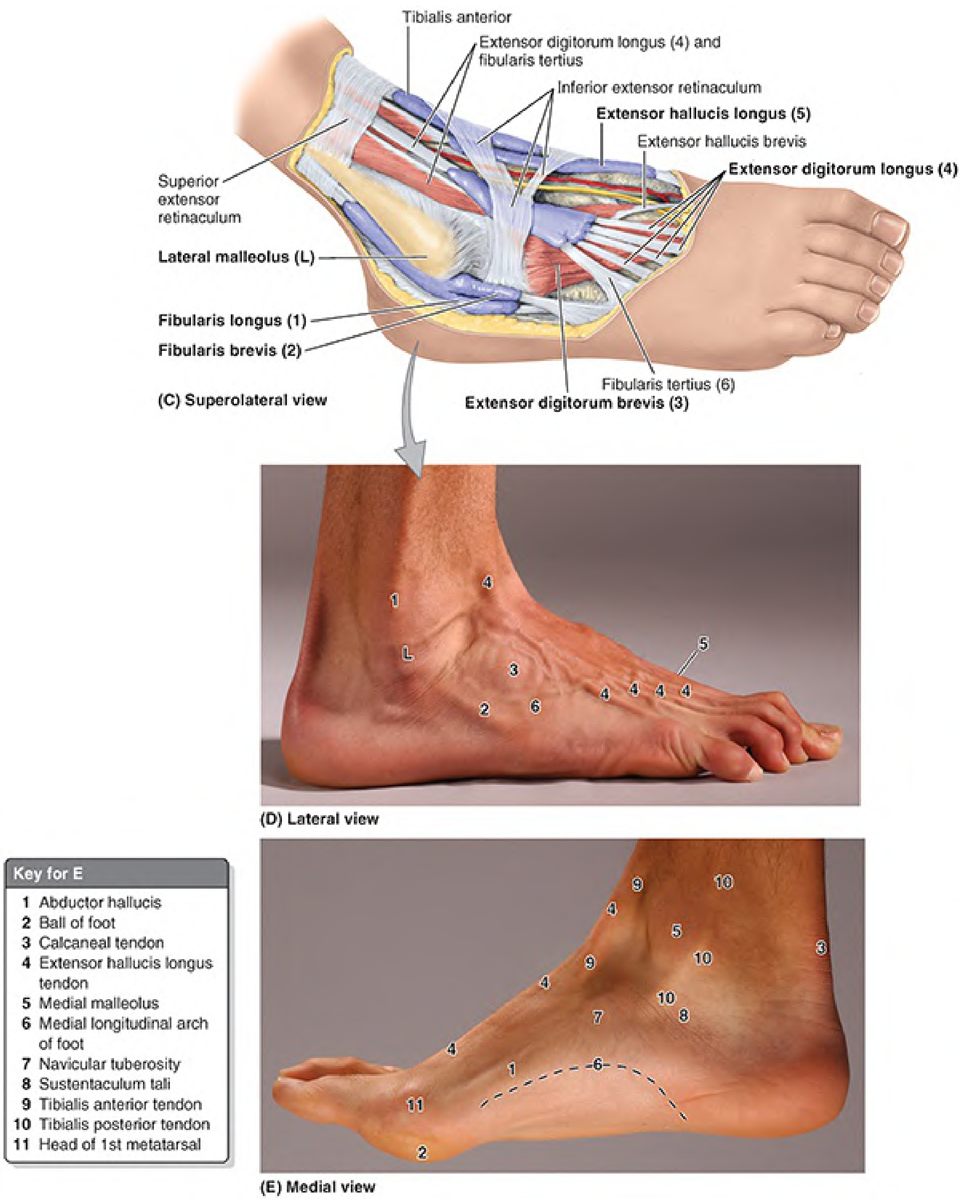


FIGURE 7.80. Surface anatomy of foot. A. Features on dorsum of foot. **B.** Underlying structures on dorsum of foot. **C.** Underlying structures on lateral aspect of foot. Numbers in parentheses in part **C** refer to structures identified in part **D**. **D.** Features of lateral aspect of foot. **E.** Features of medial aspect of foot. Numbered structures are identified in key.

The tendons of the fibularis longus and brevis may be followed distally, posterior and inferior to the lateral malleolus, and then anteriorly along the lateral aspect of the foot (Fig. 7.80D, E). The fibularis longus tendon can be palpated as far as the cuboid, and then, it disappears as it turns into the sole. The fibularis brevis tendon can easily be traced to its attachment to the dorsal surface of the tuberosity on the base of the 5th metatarsal. This tuberosity is located at the middle of the lateral border of the foot. With toes actively extended, the small fleshy belly of the **extensor digitorum brevis** may be seen and palpated anterior to the lateral malleolus. Its position should be observed and palpated so that it may not be mistaken subsequently for an abnormal edema (swelling).

The tendons on the anterior aspect of the ankle (from medial to lateral side) are easily palpated when the foot is dorsiflexed (Fig. 7.80A–C):

- The large tendon of the tibialis anterior leaves the cover of the superior extensor tendon, from which level the tendon is invested by a continuous synovial sheath; the tendon may be traced to its attachment to the 1st cuneiform and the base of the 1st metatarsal.
- The tendon of the extensor hallucis longus, obvious when the great toe is extended against resistance, may be followed to its attachment to the base of the distal phalanx of the great toe.
- The tendons of the extensor digitorum longus may be followed easily to their attachments to the lateral four toes.
- The tendon of the fibularis tertius may also be traced to its attachment to the base of the 5th metatarsal. This muscle is of minor importance and may be absent.

CLINICAL BOX

FOOT

Plantar Fasciitis

Inflammation of the plantar fascia—plantar fasciitis—is often caused by an overuse mechanism. It may result from running and high-impact aerobics, especially when inappropriate footwear is worn. Plantar fasciitis is the most common hindfoot problem in runners. It causes pain on the plantar surface of the foot and heel. The pain is often most severe after sitting and when beginning to walk in the morning. It usually dissipates after 5–10 minutes of activity and often recurs following rest.

Point tenderness is located at the proximal attachment of the aponeurosis to the medial tubercle of the calcaneus and on the medial surface of this bone. The pain increases with passive extension of the great toe and may be further exacerbated by dorsiflexion of the ankle and/or weight bearing.

If a calcaneal spur (abnormal bony process) protrudes from the medial tubercle, plantar fasciitis is likely to cause pain on the medial side of the foot when walking (Fig. B7.27). Usually, a bursa develops at the end of the spur that may also become inflamed and tender.

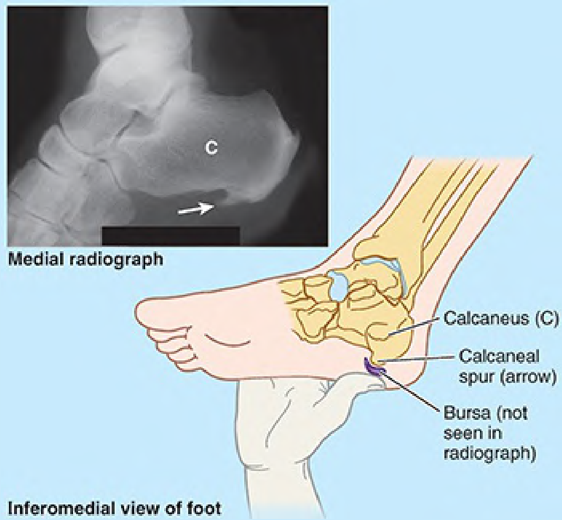


FIGURE B7.27. Calcaneal spur.

Infections of Foot

Deep infections of the foot are common, especially in seasons, climates, and cultures where shoes are rarely worn. A neglected puncture wound may lead to an extensive deep infection, resulting in swelling, pain, and fever.

Deep infections of the foot often localize within the compartments between the muscular layers (see Fig. 7.74B). A well-established infection in one of the enclosed fascial or muscular spaces usually requires surgical incision and drainage. When possible, the incision is made on the medial side of the foot, passing superior to the abductor hallucis to allow visualization of critical neurovascular structures, while avoiding production of a painful scar in a weight-bearing area.

Superficial infections, which can also be limb-threatening, are more globally problematic in patients with diabetes or vascular disease.

Contusion of Extensor Digitorum Brevis

Functionally, the EDB and EHB muscles are relatively unimportant. Clinically, knowing the location of the belly of the EDB is important for distinguishing it from abnormal edema. Contusion and tearing of muscle fibers and associated blood vessels result in a hematoma (clotted extravasated blood), producing edema anteromedial to the lateral malleolus. Most people who have not seen this inflamed muscle assume they have a severely sprained ankle.

Sural Nerve Grafts

Pieces of the sural nerve are often used for nerve grafts in procedures such as repairing nerve defects resulting from wounds. The surgeon is usually able to locate

this nerve in relation to the small saphenous vein (see Fig. 7.78D). Because of the variations in the level of formation of the sural nerve, the surgeon may have to make incisions in both legs and then select the better specimen.

Regional Anesthesia of Superficial Fibular Nerve

After the superficial fibular nerve pierces the deep fascia to become a cutaneous nerve, it divides into medial and intermediate cutaneous nerves (see Fig. 7.76A). In thin people, these branches can often be seen or felt as ridges under the skin when the foot is plantarflexed. Injections of an anesthetic agent around these branches in the ankle region, anterior to the palpable portion of the fibula, anesthetize the skin on the dorsum of the foot (except the web between and adjacent surfaces of the 1st and 2nd toes) more broadly and effectively than more local injections on the dorsum of the foot for superficial surgery.

Plantar Reflex

The **plantar reflex** (L4, L5, S1, and S2 nerve roots) is a myotatic (deep tendon) reflex that is routinely tested during neurologic examinations. The lateral aspect of the sole of the foot is stroked with a blunt object, such as a tongue depressor, beginning at the heel and crossing to the base of the great toe. The motion is firm and continuous but neither painful nor ticklish. Flexion of the toes is a normal response. Slight fanning of the lateral four toes and dorsiflexion of the great toe is an abnormal response (Babinski sign), indicating brain injury or cerebral disease, except in infants. Because the corticospinal tracts are not fully developed in newborns, a Babinski sign is usually elicited and may be present until children are 4 years of age (except in infants with a brain injury or cerebral disease).

Medial Plantar Nerve Entrapment

Compressive irritation of the medial plantar nerve as it passes deep to the flexor retinaculum, or curves deep to the abductor hallucis, may cause aching, burning, numbness, and tingling (paresthesia) on the medial side of the sole of the foot and in the region of the navicular tuberosity. Medial plantar nerve compression may occur during repetitive eversion of the foot (e.g., during gymnastics and running). Because of its frequency in runners, these symptoms have been called “jogger’s foot.”

Palpation of Dorsalis Pedis Pulse

The **dorsalis pedis artery pulse** is evaluated during a physical examination of the peripheral vascular system. Dorsalis pedis pulses may be palpated with the feet slightly dorsiflexed. The pulses are usually easy to palpate because these dorsal

arteries are subcutaneous and pass along the dorsum of the foot lateral and parallel to the EHL tendon (Fig. B7.28). A diminished or absent dorsalis pedis pulse usually suggests vascular insufficiency resulting from arterial disease. The five P signs of acute arterial occlusion are pain, pallor, paresthesia, paralysis, and pulselessness. Some healthy adults (and even children) have congenitally nonpalpable dorsalis pedis pulses; the variation is usually bilateral. In these cases, the dorsalis pedis artery is replaced by an extended perforating fibular artery of smaller caliber than the typical dorsalis pedis artery but running in the same location.

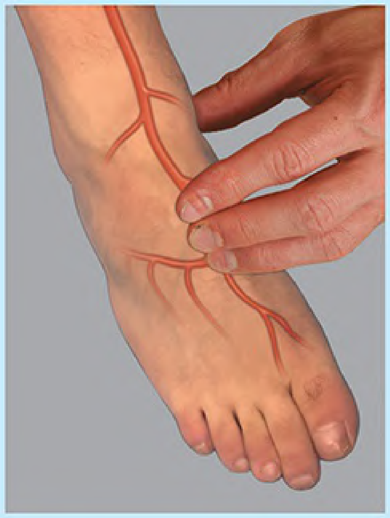


FIGURE B7.28. Dorsalis pedis pulse.

Hemorrhaging Wounds of Sole of Foot

Puncture wounds of the sole of the foot involving the deep plantar arch and its branches usually result in severe bleeding, typically from both ends of the cut artery because of the abundant anastomoses. Ligation of the deep arch is difficult because of its depth and the structures that surround it.

Lymphadenopathy

Infections of the foot may spread proximally, causing enlargement of the popliteal and inguinal lymph nodes (lymphadenopathy). Infections on the lateral side of the foot initially produce enlargement of popliteal lymph nodes (popliteal lymphadenopathy); later, the superficial inguinal lymph nodes may enlarge.

Inguinal lymphadenopathy without popliteal lymphadenopathy can result from infection of the medial side of the foot, leg, or thigh; however, enlargement of these nodes can also result from an infection or tumor in the vulva, penis, scrotum, perineum, and gluteal region and from terminal parts of the urethra, anal canal, and vagina.

The Bottom Line: Foot

Muscles of foot: The intrinsic muscles of the plantar surface of the foot are arranged in four layers and divided into four fascial compartments. ■ A tough plantar aponeurosis overlies the central compartment, passively contributing to arch maintenance and, along with firmly bound fat, protecting the vessels and nerves from compression. ■ There is similarity to the arrangement of muscles in the palm of the hand, but the muscles of the foot generally respond as a group rather than individually, acting to maintain the longitudinal arch of the foot or push a portion of it harder against the ground to maintain balance. ■ The movements of abduction and adduction produced by the interossei are toward or away from the 2nd digit. ■ The foot has two intrinsic muscles on its dorsum that augment the long extensor muscles. ■ The plantar intrinsic muscles function throughout the stance phase of gait, from heel strike to toe off, resisting forces that tend to spread the arches of the foot. ■ These muscles are especially active in fixing the medial forefoot for the propulsive push off.

Nerves of foot: The plantar intrinsic muscles are innervated by the medial and lateral plantar nerves, whereas the dorsal muscles are innervated by the deep fibular nerve. ■ Most of the dorsum of the foot receives cutaneous innervation from the superficial fibular nerve, the exception being the skin of the web between and the adjacent sides of the 1st and 2nd toes. The latter receives innervation from the deep fibular nerve after it supplies the muscles on the dorsum of the foot. ■ The skin of the medial and lateral sides of the foot is innervated by the saphenous and sural nerves, respectively. ■ The plantar aspect of the foot receives innervation from the larger medial and smaller lateral plantar nerves. ■ The medial plantar nerve supplies more skin (the plantar aspect of the medial three and half toes and adjacent sole) but fewer muscles (the medial hallux and 1st lumbrical muscles only) than the lateral plantar nerve. ■ The lateral planar nerve supplies the remaining muscles and skin of the plantar aspect. ■ The distribution of the medial and lateral plantar nerves is comparable to that of the median and ulnar nerves in the palm.

Arteries of foot: The dorsal and plantar arteries of the foot are terminal branches of the anterior and posterior tibial arteries, respectively. ■ The dorsalis pedis artery supplies all of the dorsum of the foot and, via the arcuate artery, the proximal dorsal aspect of the toes. It also contributes to formation of the deep plantar arch via its terminal deep plantar artery. ■ The smaller medial and larger lateral plantar arteries supply the plantar aspect of the foot, the latter running in vascular planes between the 1st and 2nd layers and then, as the plantar arch, the 3rd and 4th layers of the intrinsic muscles. ■ Anastomoses between the dorsalis pedis and plantar arteries are abundant and important for the health of the foot. ■

Except for the scarcity of a superficial plantar arch, the arterial pattern of the foot is similar to that of the hand.

Efferent vessels of foot: Venous drainage of the foot primarily follows a superficial route, draining to the dorsum of the foot and then medially via the great saphenous vein or laterally via the small saphenous veins. ■ From these veins, blood is shunted by perforating veins to the deep veins of the leg and thigh that participate in the musculovenous pump. ■ The lymphatics carrying lymph from the foot drain toward and then along the superficial veins draining the foot. ■ Lymph from the medial foot follows the great saphenous vein and drains directly to superficial inguinal lymph nodes. ■ Lymph from the lateral foot follows the small saphenous vein and drains initially to the popliteal lymph nodes and then by deep lymphatic vessels to the deep inguinal nodes.

JOINTS OF LOWER LIMB

The joints of the lower limb include the articulations of the pelvic girdle—lumbosacral joints, sacro-iliac joints, and pubic symphysis, which are discussed in Chapter 6, Pelvis and Perineum. The remaining joints of the lower limb are the hip joints, knee joints, tibiofibular joints, ankle joints, and foot joints (Fig. 7.81).

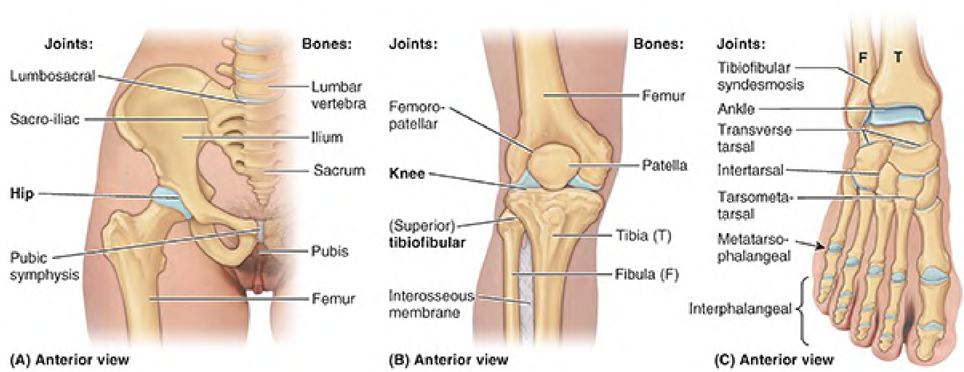


FIGURE 7.81. **Bones of joints of lower limb. A.** Hip joint. **B.** Knee joint. **C.** Ankle and foot joints.

Hip Joint

The **hip joint** forms the connection between the lower limb and the pelvic girdle (Fig. 7.81A). It is a strong and stable multiaxial ball-and-socket type of synovial joint. The head of the femur is the ball and the acetabulum is the socket (Fig. 7.82). The hip joint is designed for stability over a wide range of movement. Next to the glenohumeral (shoulder) joint, it is the most movable of all joints. During standing, the entire weight of the upper body is transmitted through the hip bones to the heads and necks of the femora.

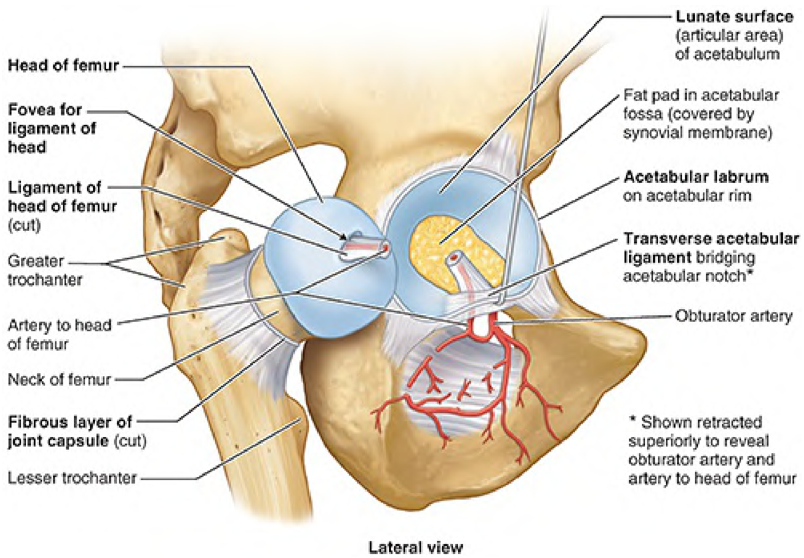


FIGURE 7.82. Articular surfaces of hip joint. The joint was disarticulated by cutting the ligament of the head of the femur and retracting the head from the acetabulum. The transverse acetabular ligament is retracted superiorly to show the obturator canal, which transmits the obturator nerve and vessels passing from the pelvic cavity to the medial thigh.

ARTICULAR SURFACES OF HIP JOINT

The round head of the femur articulates with the cup-like acetabulum of the hip bone (Figs. 7.81, 7.82, 7.83, 7.84, and 7.85). The head of the femur forms approximately two thirds of a sphere. Except for the depression or fovea for the ligament of the femoral head, all of the femoral head is covered with articular cartilage, which is thickest over weight-bearing areas.

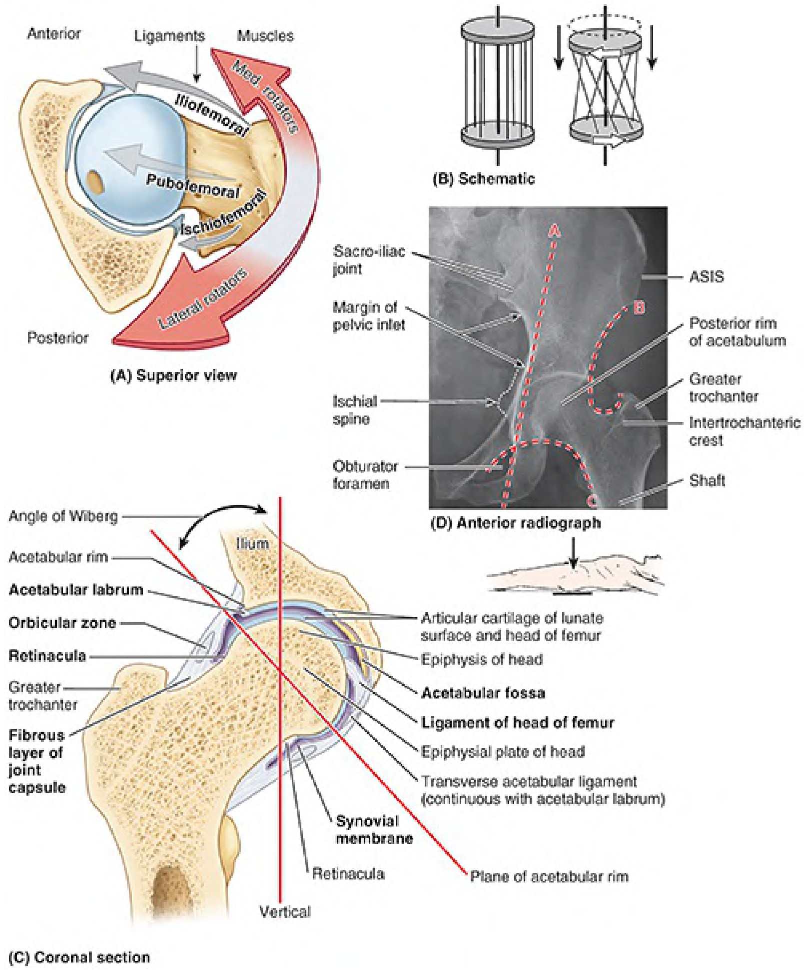


FIGURE 7.83. Factors increasing stability of hip joint. A. Peri-articular muscles and intrinsic ligaments. The medial and reciprocal pull of the peri-articular muscles (medial and lateral rotators; reddish brown arrows) and intrinsic ligaments of the hip joint (gray arrows) on the femur are demonstrated. Relative strengths are indicated by arrow width: Anteriorly, the muscles are less abundant, but the ligaments are robust; posteriorly, the muscles predominate. **B.** Fibrous layer of joint capsule. Parallel fibers linking two discs resemble those making up the tube-like fibrous layer of the hip joint capsule. When one disc (the femur) rotates relative to the other (the acetabulum), the fibers become increasingly oblique and draw the two discs together. Similarly, extension of the hip joint winds (increases the obliquity of) the fibers of the fibrous layer, pulling the head and neck of the femur tightly into the acetabulum, increasing the stability of the joint. Flexion unwinds the fibers of the capsule. **C.** Acetabular labrum and transverse acetabular ligament. In this coronal section of hip joint, the acetabular labrum and transverse acetabular ligament, spanning the acetabular notch, extend the acetabular rim so that a complete socket is formed. Thus, the acetabular complex engulfs the head of the femur. The epiphysis of the femoral head is entirely within the joint capsule. The thick weight-bearing bone of the ilium normally lies directly superior to the head of the femur for efficient transfer of weight to the femur (Fig. 7.3). The angle of Wiberg (see text) is used radiographically to determine the degree to which the acetabulum overhangs the head of the femur. **D.** Radiographically relevant lines and curvatures of femur and pelvis. Several different lines and curvatures are used in the detection of hip abnormalities (dislocations, fractures, or slipped epiphyses). The Kohler line (red A) is normally tangential to the pelvic inlet and the obturator foramen. The acetabular fossa should lie lateral to this line. A fossa that crosses the line suggests an acetabular fracture with inward displacement. The iliofemoral line (red B) and the Shenton line (red C) should appear in a normal AP radiograph as smooth, continuous lines that are bilaterally symmetrical. The Shenton line is a radiographic indication of the angle of inclination (ASIS, anterior superior iliac spine).

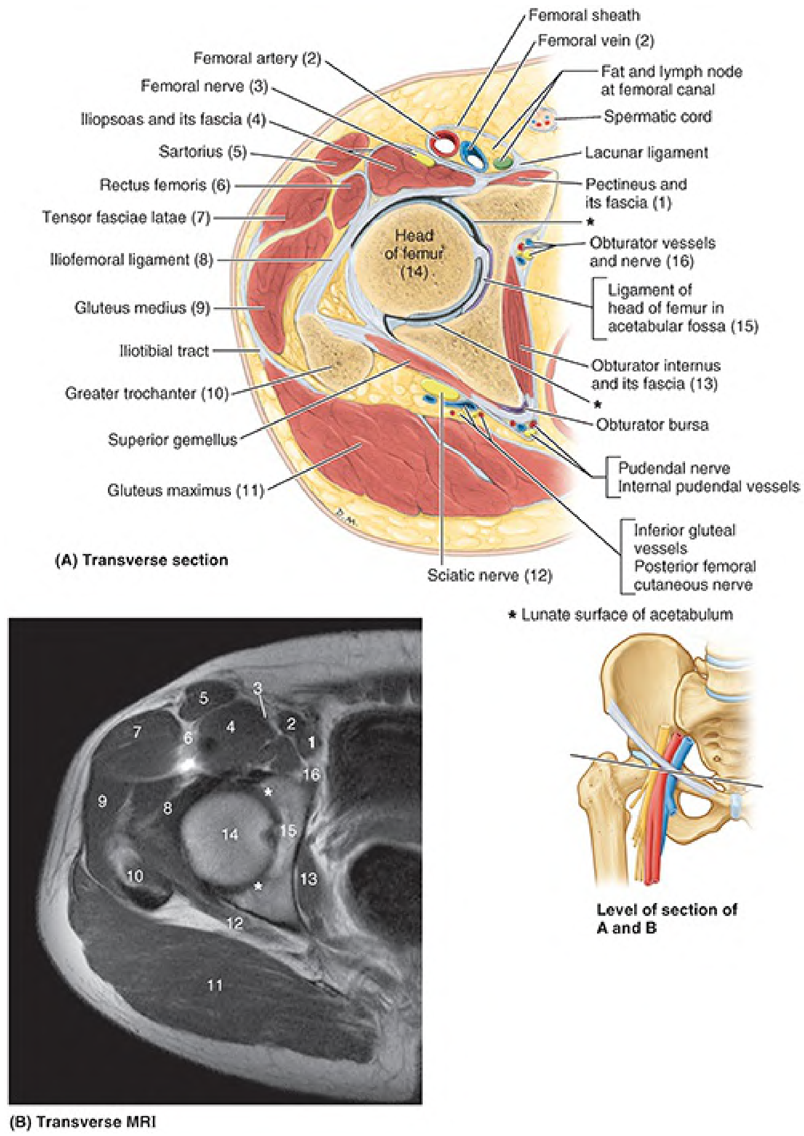


FIGURE 7.84. Sectional and radiographic anatomy of gluteal region and proximal anterior thigh at level of hip joint. A. Anatomical section. Numbers in parentheses in part **A** refer to structures identified in part **B**. **B.** Transverse MRI.

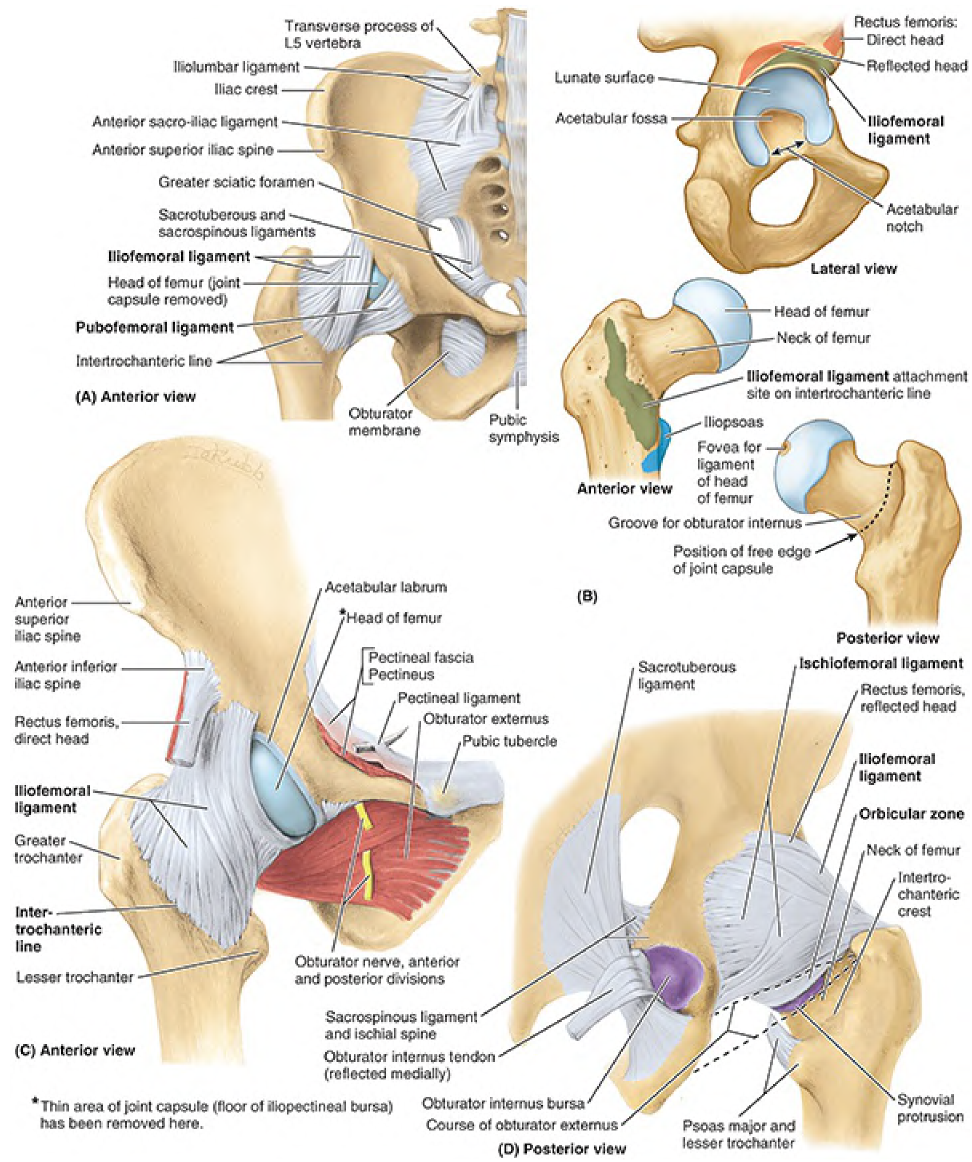


FIGURE 7.85. Ligaments of pelvis and hip joint. A. Sacro-iliac and ligaments of anterior and inferior hip joint. Weight transfer from the vertebral column to the pelvic girdle is a function of the sacro-iliac ligaments. Weight transfer at the hip joint is accomplished primarily by the disposition of the bones, with the ligaments limiting the range of movement and adding stability. **B.** Sites of attachment and tendinous relationships of iliofemoral ligaments and joint capsule. **C.** Iliofemoral ligament. **D.** Ischiofemoral ligament. Because the joint capsule does not attach to the posterior aspect of the femur, the synovial membrane protrudes from the joint capsule, forming the obturator externus bursa to facilitate movement of the tendon of the obturator externus (shown in part **C**) over the bone.

The acetabulum, a hemispherical hollow on the lateral aspect of the hip bone, is formed by the fusion of three bony parts (see Fig. 7.5). The heavy, prominent **acetabular rim** of the acetabulum consists of a semilunar articular part covered with articular cartilage, the lunate surface of the acetabulum (Figs. 7.82, 7.83, 7.84, and 7.85). The acetabular rim and lunate surface form approximately three quarters of a circle; the missing inferior segment of the circle is the acetabular notch.

The lip-shaped **acetabular labrum** (L. labrum, lip) is a fibrocartilaginous rim attached to the

margin of the acetabulum, increasing the acetabular articular area by nearly 10%. The **transverse acetabular ligament**, a continuation of the acetabular labrum, bridges the acetabular notch (Figs. 7.82 and 7.83C). As a result of the height of the rim and labrum, more than half of the femoral head fits within the acetabulum (Figs. 7.83C and 7.84). Thus, during dissection, the femoral head must be cut from the acetabular rim to enable disarticulation of the joint. Centrally, a deep nonarticular part, called the acetabular fossa, is formed mainly by the ischium (Figs. 7.82, 7.83C, and 7.84). This fossa is thin walled (often translucent) and continuous inferiorly with the acetabular notch.

The articular surfaces of the acetabulum and femoral head are most congruent when the hip is flexed 90°, abducted 5°, and rotated laterally 10° (the position in which the axis of the acetabulum and the axis of the femoral head and neck are aligned), which is the quadruped position!

In other words, in assuming the upright position, a relatively small degree of joint stability was sacrificed to maximize weight bearing when erect. Even so, the hip joint is our most stable joint, owing also to its complete ball-and-socket construction (depth of socket), the strength of its joint capsule, and the attachments of muscles crossing the joint, many of which are located at some distance from the center of movement (Soames & Palastanga, 2019).

JOINT CAPSULE OF HIP JOINT

The hip joints are enclosed within strong joint capsules, formed of a loose external fibrous layer (fibrous capsule) and an internal synovial membrane (Fig. 7.83C). Proximally, the fibrous layer attaches to the acetabulum, just peripheral to the acetabular rim to which the labrum is attached, and to the transverse acetabular ligament (Figs. 7.83C and 7.85A, C, D). Distally, the fibrous layer attaches to the femoral neck only anteriorly at the intertrochanteric line and root of the greater trochanter (Fig. 7.85B). Posteriorly, the fibrous layer crosses the femoral neck proximal to the intertrochanteric crest but is not attached to it.

Most fibers of the fibrous layer of the capsule take a spiral course from the hip bone to the intertrochanteric line of the femur, but some deep fibers pass circularly around the neck, forming the **orbicular zone** (Figs. 7.83C and 7.85D). Thick parts of the fibrous layer form the **ligaments of the hip joint**, which pass in a spiral fashion from the pelvis to the femur (Fig. 7.85A, C, D). Extension winds the spiraling ligaments and fibers more tightly, constricting the capsule and drawing the femoral head tightly into the acetabulum (Fig. 7.83B). The tightened fibrous layer increases the stability of the joint but restricts extension of the joint to 10–20° beyond the vertical position. Flexion increasingly unwinds the spiraling ligaments and fibers. This permits considerable flexion of the hip joint with increasing mobility.

Of the three intrinsic ligaments of the joint capsule below, it is the first one that reinforces and strengthens the joint:

1. Anteriorly and superiorly is the strong, Y-shaped **iliofemoral ligament**, which attaches to the anterior inferior iliac spine and the acetabular rim proximally and the intertrochanteric line distally (Fig. 7.85A, C). Said to be the body's strongest ligament, the iliofemoral ligament specifically prevents hyperextension of the hip joint during standing by screwing the femoral

head into the acetabulum via the mechanism described above. It is further reinforced by overlying tendons of the rectus femoris and iliopsoas muscles (Fig. 7.85B, C).

2. Anteriorly and inferiorly is the **pubofemoral ligament**, which arises from the obturator crest of the pubic bone and passes laterally and inferiorly to merge with the fibrous layer of the joint capsule (Fig. 7.85A). This ligament blends with the medial part of the iliofemoral ligament and tightens during both extension and abduction of the hip joint. The pubofemoral ligament prevents over-abduction of the hip joint.
3. Posteriorly is the **ischiofemoral ligament**, which arises from the ischial part of the acetabular rim (Fig. 7.85D). The weakest of the three ligaments, it spirals superolaterally to the femoral neck, medial to the base of the greater trochanter.

The relative size, strengths, and positions of the three ligaments of the hip joint are shown in Figure 7.83A. The ligaments and peri-articular muscles (the medial and lateral rotators of the thigh) play a vital role in maintaining the structural integrity of the joint.

Both muscles and ligaments pull the femoral head medially into the acetabulum, and they are reciprocally balanced when doing so. The medial flexors, located anteriorly, are fewer, weaker, and less mechanically advantaged, whereas the anterior ligaments are strongest. Conversely, the ligaments are weaker posteriorly where the medial rotators are abundant, stronger, and more mechanically advantaged.

In all synovial joints, a synovial membrane lines the internal surfaces of the fibrous layer, as well as any intracapsular bony surfaces not lined with articular cartilage. Thus, in the hip joint, where the fibrous layer attaches to the femur distant from the articular cartilage covering the femoral head, the **synovial membrane of the hip joint** reflects proximally along the femoral neck to the edge of the femoral head. Longitudinal synovial folds (retinacula) occur in the synovial membrane covering the femoral neck (Fig. 7.83C). Subsynovial **retinacular arteries** (branches of the medial, and a few of the lateral, circumflex femoral artery) that supply the femoral head and neck course within the synovial folds (Fig. 7.86).

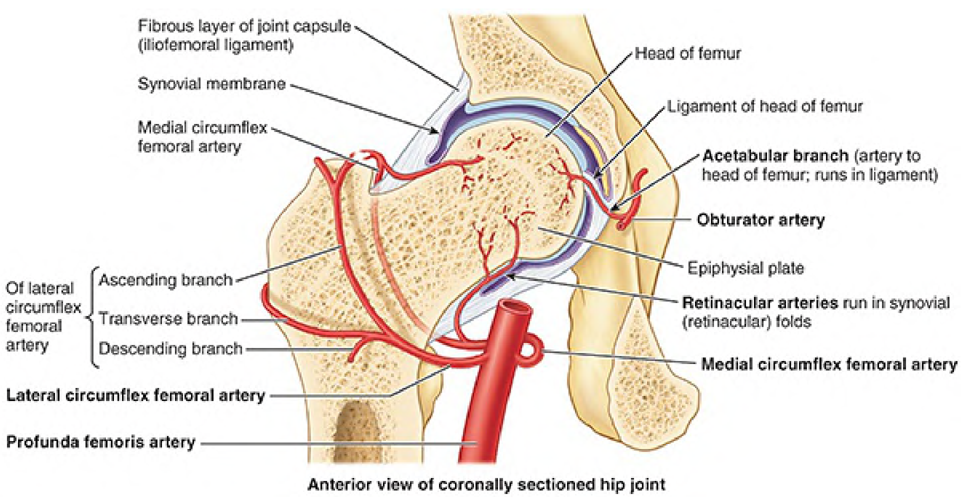


FIGURE 7.86. Blood supply of head and neck of femur. Branches of the medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries, branches of the profunda femoris artery, and the artery to the femoral head (a branch of the obturator artery) supply the head and neck of the femur. In the adult, the medial circumflex femoral artery is the most important source of

blood to the femoral head and adjacent (proximal) neck.

The **ligament of the head of the femur** (Figs. 7.82, 7.83C, 7.84, and 7.86), primarily a synovial fold conducting a blood vessel, is weak and of little importance in strengthening the hip joint. Its wide end attaches to the margins of the acetabular notch and the transverse acetabular ligament; its narrow end attaches to the fovea for the ligament of the head.

Usually, the ligament contains a small artery to the head of the femur. A fat pad in the acetabular fossa fills the part of the acetabular fossa that is not occupied by the ligament of the femoral head (Fig. 7.82). Both the ligament and the fat pad are covered with synovial membrane. The malleable nature of the fat pad permits it to change shape to accommodate the variations in the congruity of the femoral head and acetabulum as well as changes in the position of the ligament of the head during joint movements. A synovial protrusion beyond the free margin of the joint capsule onto the posterior aspect of the femoral neck forms a bursa for the obturator externus tendon (Fig. 7.85D).

MOVEMENTS OF HIP JOINT

Hip movements are flexion–extension, abduction–adduction, medial–lateral rotation, and circumduction (Fig. 7.87). Movements of the trunk at the hip joints are also important, such as those occurring when a person lifts his or her trunk from the supine position during sit-ups or keeps the pelvis level when one foot is off the ground.

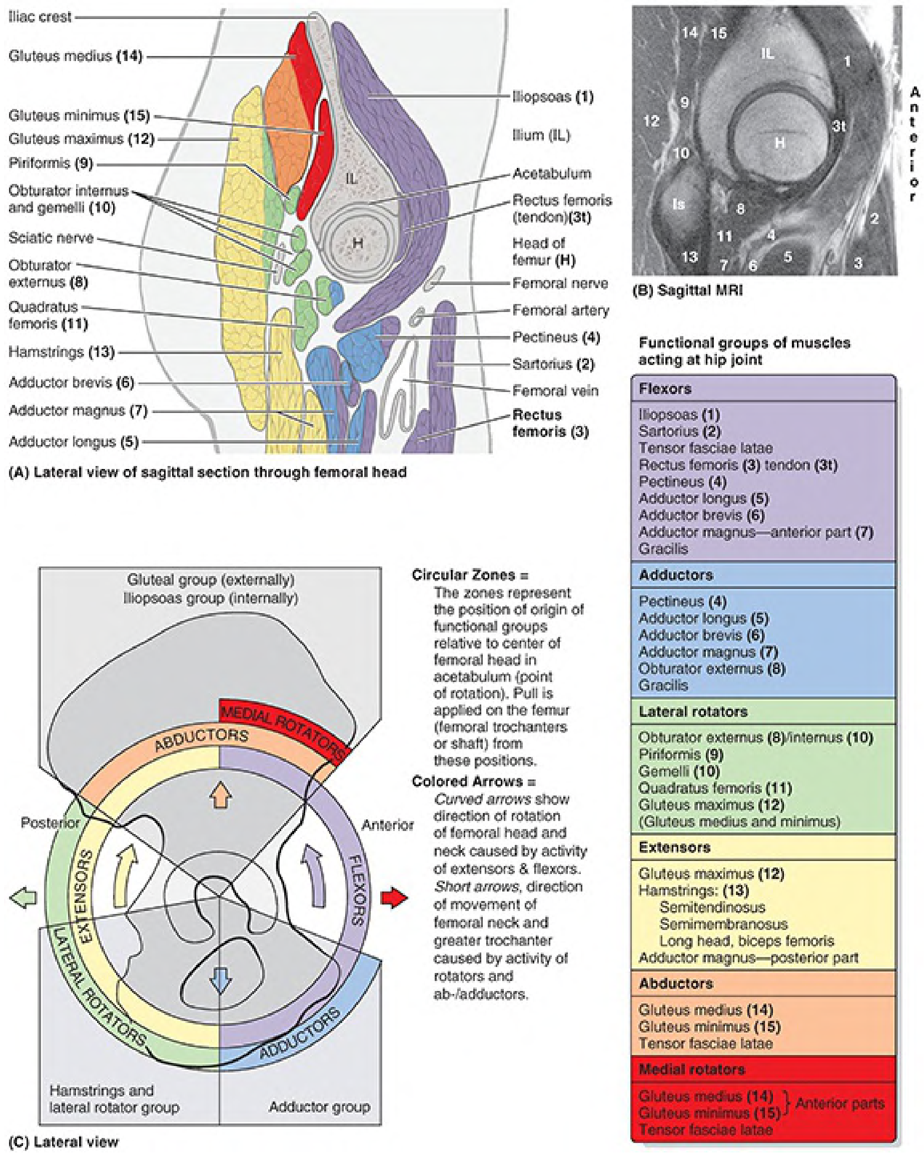


FIGURE 7.87. Relations of hip joint and muscles producing movements of joint. A. Muscles, vessels, and nerves related to the hip joint. The muscles are color coded to indicate their function(s). Applying Hilton's law, it is possible to deduce the innervation of the hip joint by knowing which muscles directly cross and act on the joint and their nerve supply. **B.** MRI of hip joint in plane corresponding to part **A**. Is, ischium. **C.** Positions and movements of functional muscle groups of hip joint.

The degree of flexion and extension possible at the hip joint depends on the position of the knee. If the knee is flexed, relaxing the hamstrings, the hip joint can be actively flexed until the thigh almost reaches the anterior abdominal wall and can reach it via further passive flexion. Not all of this movement occurs at the hip joint; some results from flexion of the vertebral column. During extension of the hip joint, the fibrous layer of the joint capsule, especially the iliofemoral ligament, is taut; therefore, the hip can usually be extended only slightly beyond the vertical except by movement of the bony pelvis (flexion of lumbar vertebrae).

From the anatomical position, the range of abduction of the hip joint is usually somewhat greater than for adduction. About 60° of abduction is possible when the thigh is extended at the

hip joint and more when it is flexed. Lateral rotation is much more powerful than medial rotation.

The main muscles producing movements of the hip joint are listed in Figure 7.87B. Note the following:

1. The iliopsoas is the strongest flexor of the hip.
2. In addition to its function as an adductor, the adductor magnus also serves as a flexor (anterior or aponeurotic part) and an extensor (posterior or hamstrings part).
3. Several muscles participate in both flexion and adduction (pectineus and gracilis as well all three "adductor" muscles).
4. In addition to serving as abductors, the anterior portions of the gluteus medius and minimus are also medial rotators.
5. The gluteus maximus serves as the primary extensor from the flexed to the straight (standing) position, and from this point posteriorly, extension is achieved primarily by the hamstrings. The gluteus maximus is also a lateral rotator.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF HIP JOINT

Arteries supplying the hip joint (Fig. 7.86) include the following:

- The medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries, which are usually branches of the profunda femoris artery, but occasionally, they arise as branches of the femoral artery.
- The **artery to the head of the femur**, which is a branch of the obturator artery of variable size; it traverses the ligament of the head.

The main blood supply of the hip joint is from the retinacular arteries arising as branches of the circumflex femoral arteries. Retinacular arteries arising from the medial circumflex femoral artery are most abundant, bringing more blood to the head and neck of the femur because they are able to pass beneath the unattached posterior border of the joint capsule. Retinacular arteries arising from the lateral circumflex femoral must penetrate the thick iliofemoral ligament and are smaller and fewer.

NERVE SUPPLY OF HIP JOINT

Hilton's law states that the nerves supplying the muscles extending directly across and acting at a given joint also innervate the joint. Articular rami arise from the intramuscular rami of the muscular branches or directly from named nerves. A knowledge of the nerve supply of the muscles and their relationship to the joints can allow one to deduce the nerve supply of many joints. Possible deductions regarding the hip joint and its muscular relationships include (Fig. 7.87):

- Flexors innervated by the femoral nerve pass anterior to the hip joint; the anterior aspect of the hip joint is innervated by the femoral nerve.
- Lateral rotators pass inferior and posterior to the hip joint; the inferior aspect of the joint is innervated by the obturator nerve and the posterior aspect is innervated by branches from the

nerve to the quadratus femoris.

- Abductors innervated by the superior gluteal nerve pass superior to the hip joint; the superior aspect of the joint is innervated by the superior gluteal nerve.

Pain perceived as coming from the hip joint may be misleading because pain can be referred from the vertebral column.

Knee Joint

The **knee joint** is the largest and most superficial joint. It is primarily a hinge type of synovial joint, allowing flexion and extension; however, the hinge movements are combined with gliding and rolling and with rotation about a vertical axis. Although the knee joint is well constructed, its function is commonly impaired when it is hyperextended (e.g., in body contact sports, such as ice hockey and football).

ARTICULATIONS, ARTICULAR SURFACES, AND STABILITY OF KNEE JOINT

Relevant anatomical details of the involved bones, including their articulating surfaces, were discussed in "Bones of Lower Limb" in this chapter. The articular surfaces of the knee joint are characterized by their large size and their complicated and incongruent shapes. The knee joint consists of three articulations (Figs. 7.88 and 7.89):

- Two **femorotibial articulations** (**lateral** and **medial**) between the lateral and the medial femoral and tibial condyles
- One intermediate **femoropatellar articulation** (see Fig. 7.93B, C)

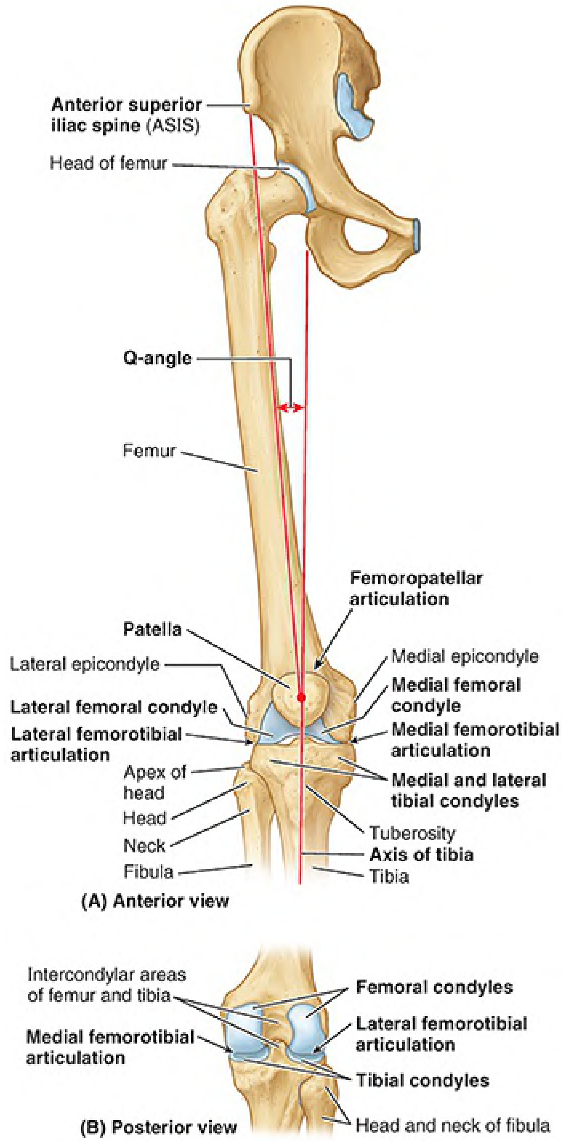


FIGURE 7.88. Bones of knee joint. A. Features of anterior aspect of knee joint. The hip bone and proximal femur are included to demonstrate the Q-angle, determined during physical examination to indicate alignment of the femur and tibia and to evaluate valgus or varus stress at the knee. **B.** Features of posterior aspect of knee joint.

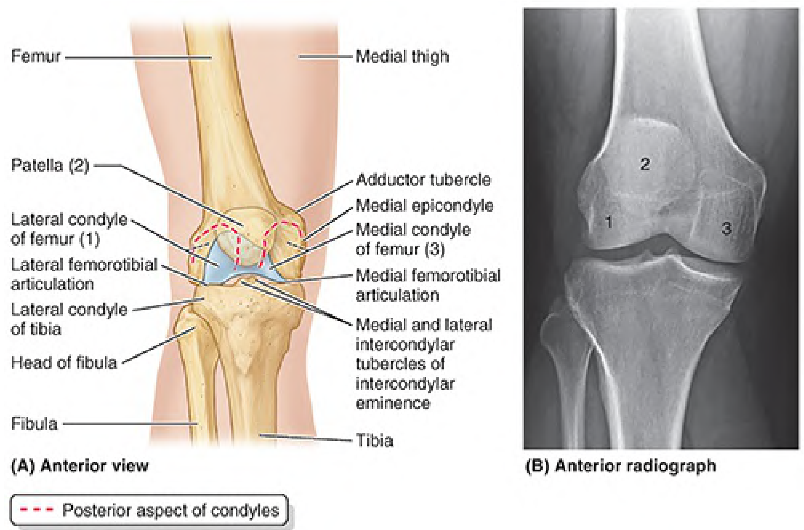


FIGURE 7.89. Radiography of knee joint. A and B. The orientation drawing depicts the structures visible in the anterior radiograph of the right knee joint.

The fibula is not involved in the knee joint.

The knee joint is relatively weak mechanically because of the incongruence of its articular surfaces, which has been compared to two balls sitting on a warped tabletop. The stability of the knee joint depends on (1) the strength and actions of the surrounding muscles and their tendons and (2) the ligaments that connect the femur and tibia. Of these supports, the muscles are most important; therefore, many sport injuries are preventable through appropriate conditioning and training.

The most important muscle in stabilizing the knee joint is the large quadriceps femoris, particularly the inferior fibers of the vastus medialis and lateralis (Fig. 7.90A). The knee joint functions surprisingly well after a ligament strain if the quadriceps is well conditioned.

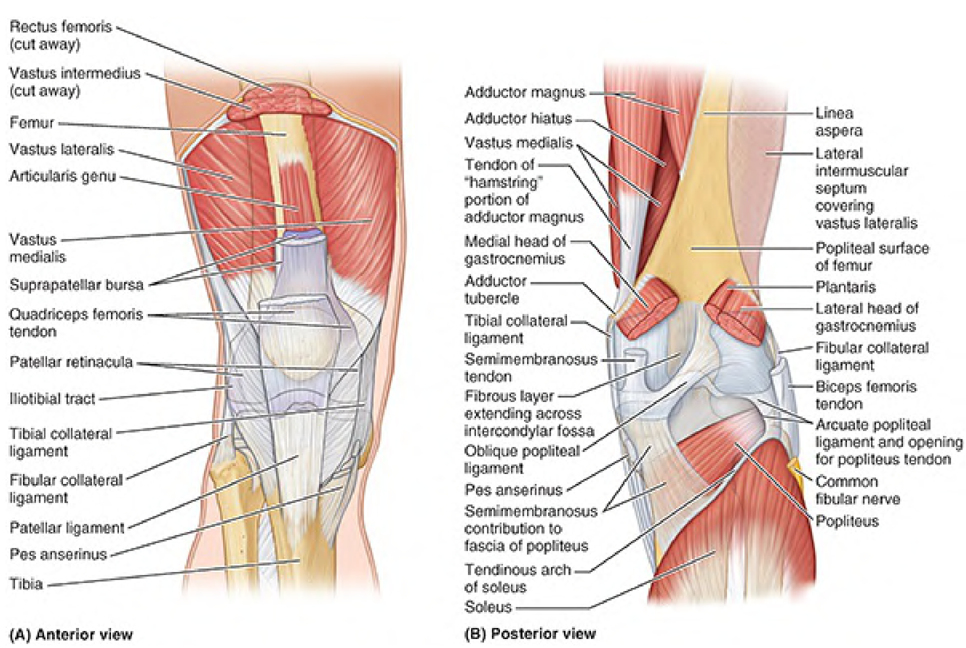


FIGURE 7.90. Knee joint capsule. The fibrous layer of the joint capsule is relatively thin in some places and thickened in others to form reinforcing intrinsic (capsular) ligaments. **A.** Anterior aspect. The fibrous layer includes the patellar retinacula, which attaches to the sides of the quadriceps tendon, patella, and patellar ligament, and incorporation of the iliotibial tract (laterally) and the medial collateral ligament (medially). **B.** Posterior aspect. The hamstring and gastrocnemius muscles and the posterior intermuscular septum have been cut and removed to expose the adductor magnus, lateral intermuscular septum, and the floor of the popliteal fossa. Posteriorly, the fibrous layer includes the oblique and arcuate popliteal ligaments and a perforation inferior to the arcuate popliteal ligament to allow passage of the popliteus tendon.

The erect, extended position is the most stable position of the knee joint. In this position, the articular surfaces are most congruent (contact is minimized in all other positions); the primary ligaments of the joint (collateral and cruciate ligaments) are taut, and the many tendons surrounding the joint provide a splinting effect.

JOINT CAPSULE OF KNEE JOINT

The **joint capsule of the knee joint** is typical in consisting of an external fibrous layer of the capsule (fibrous capsule) and an internal synovial membrane that lines all internal surfaces of the articular cavity not covered with articular cartilage (Fig. 7.91B). The fibrous layer has a few thickened parts that make up intrinsic ligaments, but for the main part, it is thin and is actually incomplete in some areas (Fig. 7.90B). The fibrous layer attaches to the femur superiorly, just proximal to the articular margins of the condyles. Posteriorly, the fibrous layer encloses the condyles and the intercondylar fossa. The fibrous layer has an opening or gap posterior to the lateral tibial condyle to allow the tendon of the popliteus to pass out of the joint capsule to attach to the tibia (Fig. 7.91B). Inferiorly, the fibrous layer attaches to the margin of the superior articular surface (tibial plateau) of the tibia, except where the tendon of the popliteus crosses the bone (Figs. 7.90A, B and 7.91B). The quadriceps tendon, patella, and patellar ligament replace the fibrous layer anteriorly—that is, the fibrous layer is continuous with the lateral and medial margins of these structures, and there is no separate fibrous layer in the region of these structures (Figs. 7.90A and 7.91B).

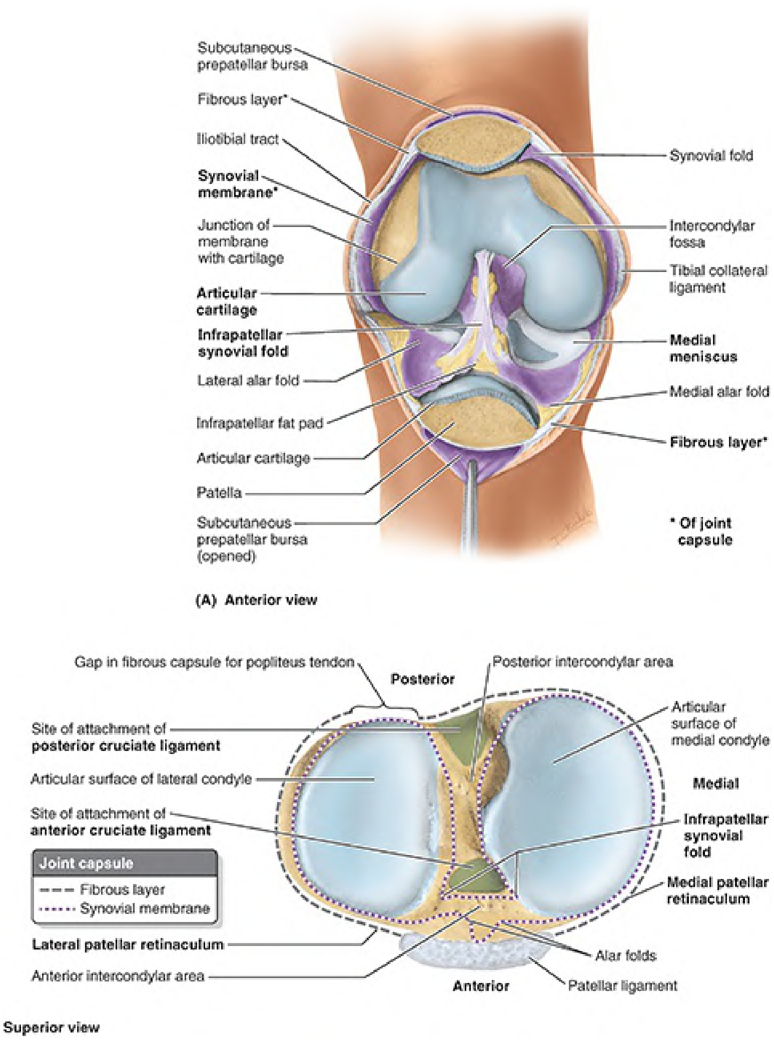


FIGURE 7.91. Internal knee joint. A. Dissection with knee joint flexed. The joint capsule was incised transversely, the patella was sawn through, and then, the knee was flexed, opening the articular cavity. The infrapatellar fold of synovial membrane encloses the cruciate ligaments, excluding them from the joint cavity. All internal surfaces not covered with or made of articular cartilage (blue or gray in the case of the menisci) are lined with synovial membrane (mostly purple but transparent and colorless where it is covering nonarticular surfaces of the femur). **B.** Superior articular surface of tibia. The attachments of the fibrous layer and synovial membrane to the tibia are shown. Note that although they are adjacent on each side, they part company centrally to accommodate intercondylar and infrapatellar structures that are intracapsular (inside the fibrous layer) but extra-articular (excluded from the articular cavity by synovial membrane).

The extensive synovial membrane of the capsule lines all surfaces bounding the articular cavity (the space containing synovial fluid) not covered by articular cartilage (Fig. 7.91A, B). Thus, it attaches to the periphery of the articular cartilage covering the femoral and tibial condyles and patella, and the edges of the menisci, the fibrocartilaginous discs between the tibial and femoral articular surfaces. The synovial membrane lines the internal surface of the fibrous layer laterally and medially, but centrally, it becomes separated from the fibrous layer.

From the posterior aspect of the joint, the synovial membrane reflects anteriorly into the intercondylar region, covering the cruciate ligaments and the **infrapatellar fat pad**, so that they are excluded from the articular cavity. This creates a median **infrapatellar synovial fold**, a

vertical fold of synovial membrane that approaches the posterior aspect of the patella, occupying all but the most anterior part of the intercondylar region. Thus, it almost subdivides the articular cavity into right and left femorotibial articular cavities; indeed, this is how arthroscopic surgeons consider the articular cavity. Fat-filled **lateral** and **medial alar folds** cover the inner surface of fat pads that occupy the space on each side of the patellar ligament internal to the fibrous layer.

Superior to the patella, the knee joint cavity extends deep to the vastus intermedius as the suprapatellar bursa (Figs. 7.90A and 7.91A, B). The synovial membrane of the joint capsule is continuous with the synovial lining of this bursa. This large bursa usually extends approximately 5 cm superior to the patella; however, it may extend halfway up the anterior aspect of the femur. Muscle slips deep to the vastus intermedius form the articularis genu, which attaches to the synovial membrane and retracts the bursa during extension of the knee (Fig. 7.90A; see Fig. 7.25).

EXTRACAPSULAR LIGAMENTS OF KNEE JOINT

The joint capsule is strengthened by five extracapsular or capsular (intrinsic) ligaments: patellar ligament, fibular collateral ligament, tibial collateral ligament, oblique popliteal ligament, and arcuate popliteal ligament (Fig. 7.90A, B). They are sometimes called external ligaments to differentiate them from internal ligaments, such as the cruciate ligaments.

The patellar ligament, the distal part of the quadriceps femoris tendon, is a strong, thick fibrous band passing from the apex and adjoining margins of the patella to the tibial tuberosity (Fig. 7.88A). The patellar ligament is the anterior ligament of the knee joint. Its medial and lateral borders receive the medial and lateral patellar retinacula, respectively, aponeurotic expansions of the vastus medialis and lateralis and overlying deep fascia. The retinacula make up the joint capsule of the knee on each side of the patella (Figs. 7.90A and 7.91B) and play an important role in maintaining alignment of the patella relative to the patellar articular surface of the femur. The oblique placement of the femur and/or line of pull of the quadriceps femoris muscle relative to the axis of the patellar tendon and tibia, assessed clinically as the Q-angle, favors lateral displacement of the patella (Fig. 7.88).

The collateral ligaments of the knee are taut when the knee is fully extended, contributing to stability while standing (Fig. 7.92A, D). As flexion proceeds, they become increasingly slack, permitting and limiting (serving as check ligaments for) rotation at the knee.

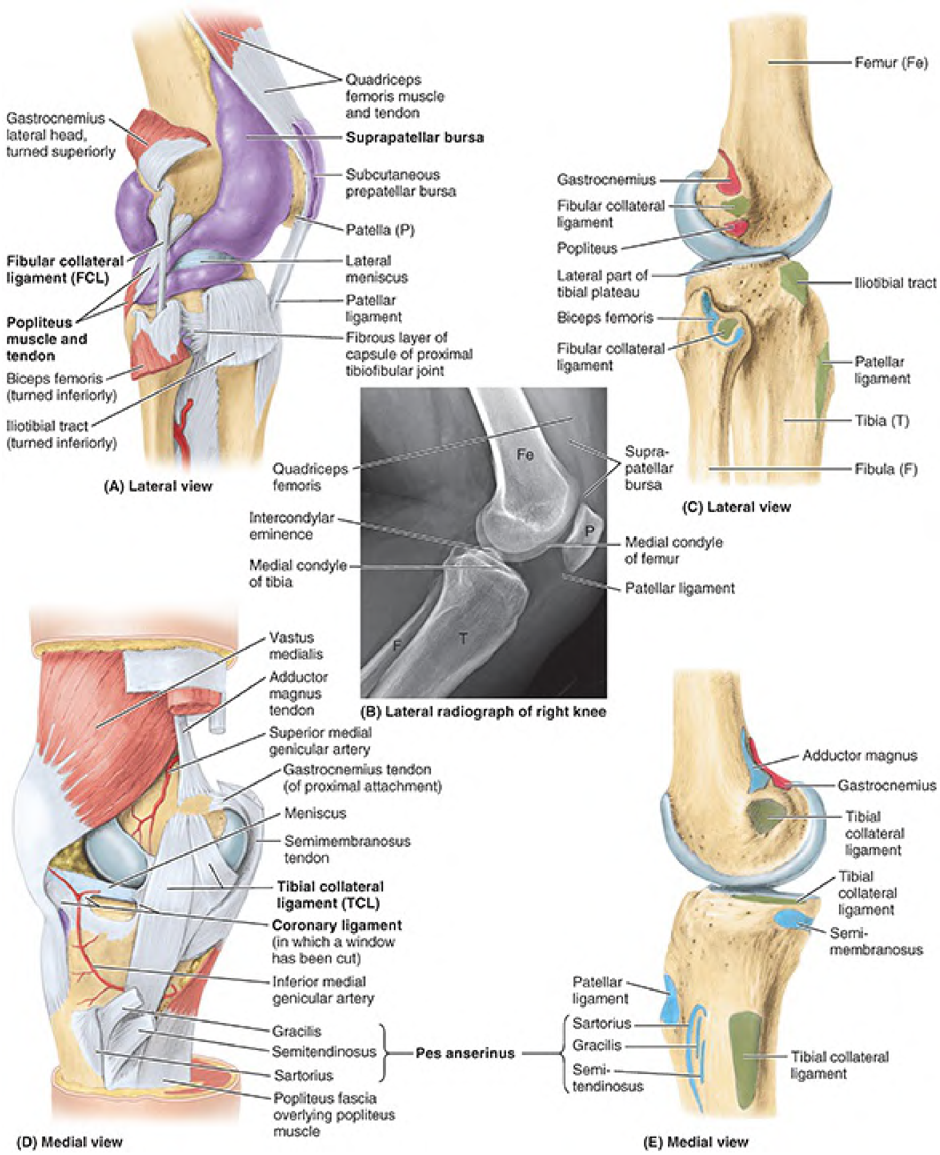


FIGURE 7.92. Collateral ligaments and bursae of knee joint. A. Fibular collateral ligament. Purple latex was injected to demonstrate the extensive and complex articular cavity. The cavity/synovial membrane extends superiorly deep to the quadriceps, forming the suprapatellar bursa. **B.** Arthrogram of slightly flexed knee joint. The suprapatellar bursa is inflated with carbon dioxide. **C.** Lateral attachments of ligaments and muscles. Attachment sites of the fibular collateral ligament (green) and related muscles (red, proximal; blue, distal). **D.** Tibial collateral ligament. Isolated from the fibrous layer of the joint capsule, of which it is a part. **E.** Medial attachments of ligaments and muscles.

The **fibular collateral ligament** (**FCL**; lateral collateral ligament), a cord-like extracapsular ligament, is strong. It extends inferiorly from the lateral epicondyle of the femur to the lateral surface of the fibular head (Fig. 7.92A, C). The tendon of the popliteus passes deep to the FCL, separating it from the lateral meniscus. The tendon of the biceps femoris is split into two parts by the FCL (Fig. 7.92A).

The **tibial collateral ligament** (**TCL**; medial collateral ligament) is a strong, flat, intrinsic (capsular) band that extends from the medial epicondyle of the femur to the medial condyle and the superior part of the medial surface of the tibia (Fig. 7.92D, E). At its midpoint, the deep

fibers of the TCL are firmly attached to the medial meniscus. The TCL is weaker than the FCL, so in contact sports such as football and ice hockey it, along with the medial meniscus attached to it, commonly gets torn.

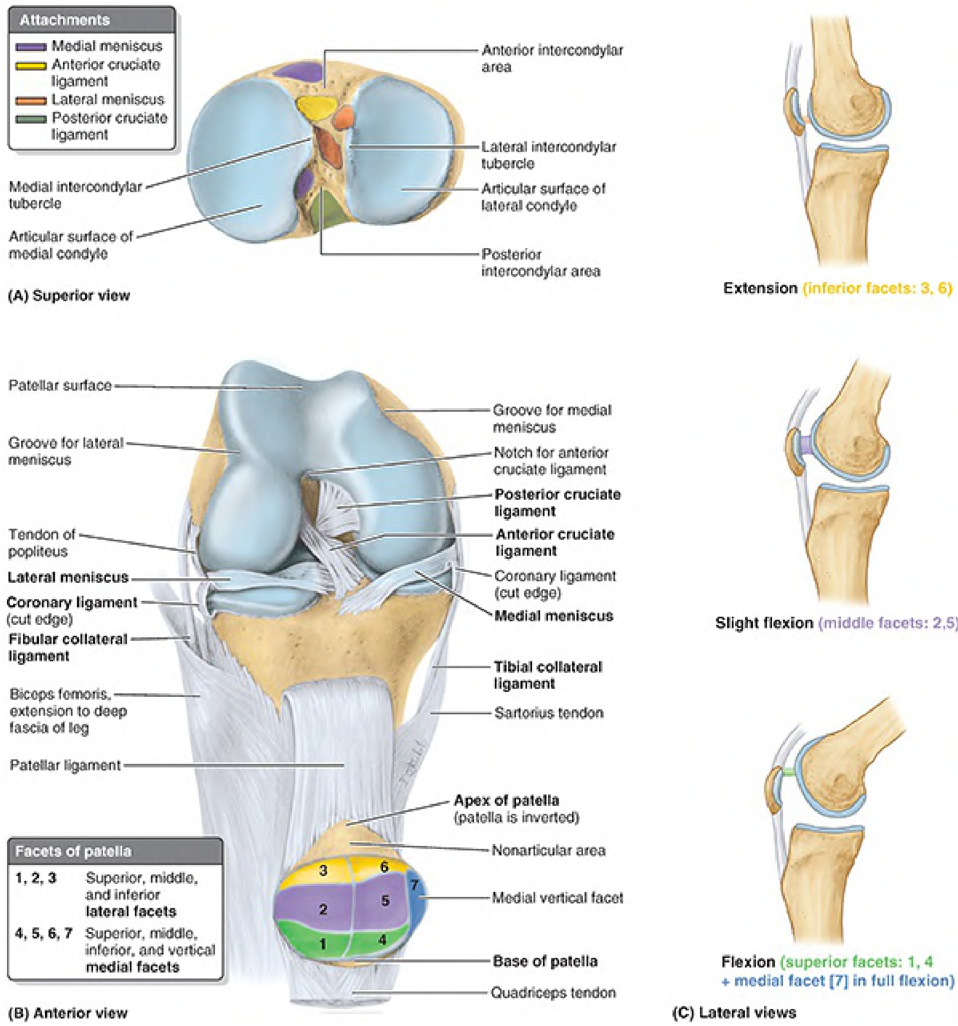
The **oblique popliteal ligament** is a recurrent expansion of the tendon of the semimembranosus that reinforces the joint capsule posteriorly as it spans the intracondylar fossa (Fig. 7.88B). The ligament arises posterior to the medial tibial condyle and passes superolaterally toward the lateral femoral condyle, blending with the central part of the posterior aspect of the joint capsule.

The **arcuate popliteal ligament** also strengthens the joint capsule posterolaterally. It arises from the posterior aspect of the fibular head, passes superomedially over the tendon of the popliteus, and spreads over the posterior surface of the knee joint. Its development appears to be inversely related to the presence and size of a fabella in the proximal attachment of the lateral head of gastrocnemius (see the Clinical Box “Fabella in Gastrocnemius,” Fig. B7.22, in this chapter). Both structures are thought to contribute to posterolateral stability of the knee.

INTRA-ARTICULAR LIGAMENTS OF KNEE JOINT

The intra-articular ligaments within the knee joint consist of the cruciate ligaments and menisci. The tendon of the popliteus is also intra-articular during part of its course.

The **cruciate ligaments** (L. crux, a cross) crisscross within the joint capsule of the joint but outside the synovial cavity (Figs. 7.93A, B and 7.94). The cruciate ligaments are located in the center of the joint and cross each other obliquely, like the letter X. During medial rotation of the tibia on the femur, the cruciate ligaments wind around each other; thus, the amount of medial rotation possible is limited to about 10°. Because they become unwound during lateral rotation, nearly 40° of lateral rotation is possible when the knee is flexed approximately 90°, the movement being ultimately limited by the TCL. The chiasm (crossing) of the cruciate ligaments serves as the pivot for rotatory movements at the knee. Because of their oblique orientation, in every position, one cruciate ligament, or parts of one or both ligaments, is tense. It is the cruciate ligaments that maintain contact of the femoral and tibial articular surfaces during flexion of the knee.


Attachments
Medial meniscus
Anterior cruciate ligament
Lateral meniscus
Posterior cruciate ligament
Anterior intercondylar area
Lateral intercondylar tubercle
Articular surface of lateral condyle
Posterior intercondylar area
Medial intercondylar tubercle
Articular surface of medial condyle
(A) Superior view
Extension (inferior facets: 3, 6)
Patellar surface
Groove for medial meniscus
Groove for lateral meniscus
Notch for anterior cruciate ligament
Posterior cruciate ligament
Anterior cruciate ligament
Tendon of popliteus
Lateral meniscus
Coronary ligament (cut edge)
Coronary ligament (cut edge)
Medial meniscus
Fibular collateral ligament
Tibial collateral ligament
Biceps femoris, extension to deep fascia of leg
Sartorius tendon
Patellar ligament
Apex of patella (patella is inverted)
Nonarticular area
Medial vertical facet
Base of patella
Quadriceps tendon
Facets of patella
1, 2, 3 Superior, middle, and inferior lateral facets
4, 5, 6, 7 Superior, middle, inferior, and vertical medial facets
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
(B) Anterior view
Slight flexion (middle facets: 2,5)
Flexion (superior facets: 1, 4 + medial facet [7] in full flexion)
(C) Lateral views

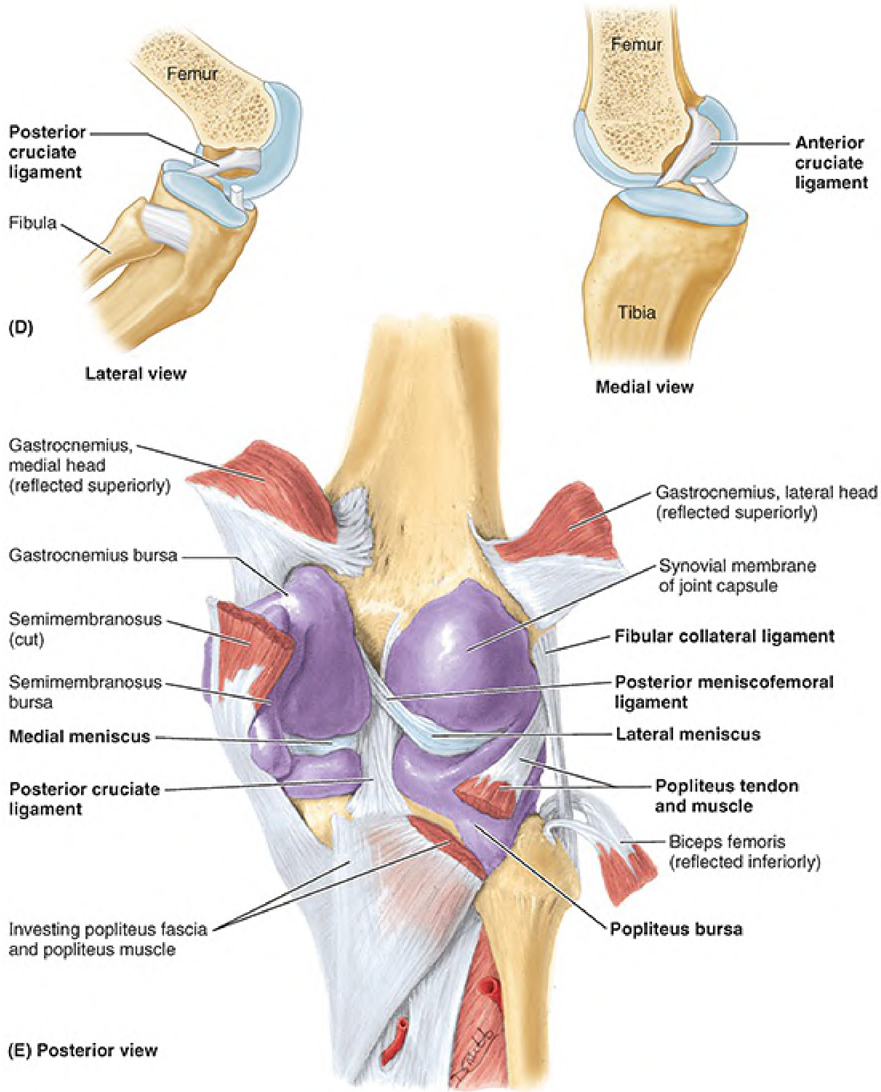


FIGURE 7.93. Articular surfaces, cruciate ligaments, and synovial cavity of knee joint. A. Attachments of cruciate ligaments and menisci. Superior aspect of the superior articular surface of the tibia (tibial plateau), showing the medial and lateral condyles (articular surfaces) and the intercondylar eminence between them. The sites of attachment of the cruciate ligaments are colored green or yellow; those of the medial meniscus, purple; and those of the lateral meniscus, orange. **B.** Dissection of cruciate ligaments. The quadriceps tendon has been severed and the patella (within the tendon and its continuation, the patellar ligament) has been reflected inferiorly. **C.** Femoropatellar articulation. Contact occurs between 2 and 3 of the 7 facets of the patella and the patellar surface of the femur, depending on the position of the joint. **D.** Posterior and anterior cruciate ligaments. In these lateral and medial views, the femur has been sectioned longitudinally and the near half has been removed with the proximal part of the corresponding cruciate ligament. The lateral view demonstrates how the posterior cruciate ligament resists anterior displacement of the femur on the tibial plateau. The medial view demonstrates how the anterior cruciate ligament resists posterior displacement of the femur on the tibial plateau. **E.** Dissection of posterior aspect of knee joint. Both heads of the gastrocnemius are reflected superiorly, and the biceps femoris is reflected inferiorly. The articular cavity has been inflated with purple latex to demonstrate its continuity with the various bursae and the reflections and attachments of the complex synovial membrane.

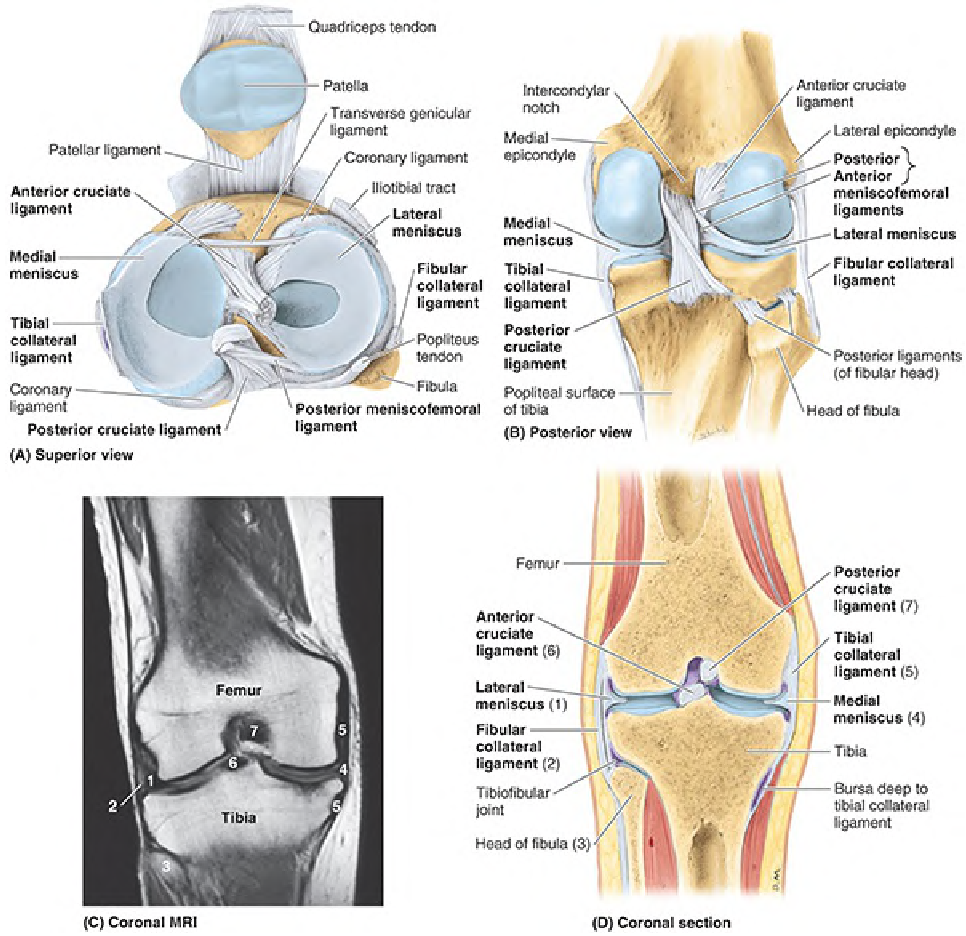


FIGURE 7.94. Menisci of knee joint. A. Medial and lateral menisci on tibia. The quadriceps tendon is cut, and the patella and patellar ligament are reflected inferiorly and anteriorly. The menisci, their attachments to the intercondylar area of the tibia, and the tibial attachments of the cruciate ligaments are shown. **B.** Dissection of posterior aspect of knee joint to show ligaments and menisci. The band-like tibial collateral ligament is attached to the medial meniscus. The cord-like fibular collateral ligament is separated from the lateral meniscus. The posterior meniscofemoral ligament attaches the lateral meniscus to the medial femoral condyle. **C.** MRI scan showing menisci and ligaments. The numbers on the MRI study refer to the structures labeled in the corresponding anatomical coronal section. **D.** Anatomical coronal section of knee joint.

The **anterior cruciate ligament** (**ACL**), the weaker of the two cruciate ligaments, arises from the anterior intercondylar area of the tibia, just posterior to the attachment of the medial meniscus (Fig. 7.93A, B). It extends superiorly, posteriorly, and laterally to attach to the posterior part of the medial side of the lateral condyle of the femur (Fig. 7.93D). It limits posterior rolling (turning and traveling) of the femoral condyles on the tibial plateau during flexion, converting it to spin (turning in place). It also prevents posterior displacement of the femur on the tibia and hyperextension of the knee joint. When the joint is flexed at a right angle, the tibia cannot be pulled anteriorly (like pulling out a drawer) because it is held by the ACL. The ACL has a relatively poor blood supply.

The **posterior cruciate ligament** (**PCL**), the stronger of the two cruciate ligaments, arises from the posterior intercondylar area of the tibia (Fig. 7.93A, E). The PCL passes superiorly and anteriorly on the medial side of the ACL to attach to the anterior part of the lateral surface of the

medial condyle of the femur (Fig. 7.93B, D). The PCL limits anterior rolling of the femur on the tibial plateau during extension, converting it to spin. It also prevents anterior displacement of the femur on the tibia or posterior displacement of the tibia on the femur and helps prevent hyperflexion of the knee joint. In the weight-bearing flexed knee, the PCL is the main stabilizing factor for the femur (e.g., when walking downhill).

The **menisci of the knee joint** are crescentic plates ("wafers") of fibrocartilage on the articular surface of the tibia that deepen the surface and play a role in shock absorption (Figs. 7.91 and 7.92). The menisci (G. meniskos, crescent) are thicker at their external margins and taper to thin, unattached edges in the interior of the joint. Wedge shaped in transverse section, the menisci are firmly attached at their ends to the intercondylar area of the tibia (Fig. 7.91A). Their external margins attach to the joint capsule of the knee. The **coronary ligaments** are portions of the joint capsule extending between the margins of the menisci and most of the periphery of the tibial condyles (Figs. 7.93B and 7.94A). A slender fibrous band, the **transverse ligament of the knee**, joins the anterior edges of the menisci, crossing the anterior intercondylar area (see Fig. 7.10A) and tethering the menisci to each other during knee movements.

The **medial meniscus** is C shaped, broader posteriorly than anteriorly (Fig. 7.94A). Its anterior end (horn) is attached to the anterior intercondylar area of the tibia, anterior to the attachment of the ACL (Figs. 7.93A, B and 7.94A). Its posterior end is attached to the posterior intercondylar area, anterior to the attachment of the PCL (Fig. 7.93E). The medial meniscus firmly adheres to the deep surface of the TCL (Figs. 7.92D and 7.94A–D). Because of its widespread attachments laterally to the tibial intercondylar area and medially to the TCL, the medial meniscus is less mobile on the tibial plateau than is the lateral meniscus.

The **lateral meniscus** is nearly circular, smaller, and more freely movable than the medial meniscus (Fig. 7.92A). The **tendon of the popliteus** has two parts proximally. One part attaches to the lateral epicondyle of the femur and passes between the lateral meniscus and inferior part of the lateral epicondylar surface of the femur (on the tendon's medial aspect) and the FCL that overlies its lateral aspect (Figs. 7.92A and 7.93B, E). The other, more medial part of the popliteal tendon attaches to the posterior limb of the lateral meniscus. A strong tendinous slip, the posterior meniscofemoral ligament, joins the lateral meniscus to the posterior aspect of the PCL and the medial femoral condyle (Figs. 7.93D and 7.94A, B). Occasionally, an anterior meniscofemoral ligament is also present (Fig. 7.94B).

MOVEMENTS OF KNEE JOINT

Flexion and extension are the main knee movements; some rotation occurs when the knee is flexed. The main movements of the knee joint are illustrated in Figure 7.95, and the muscles producing them and relevant details are provided in Table 7.16.

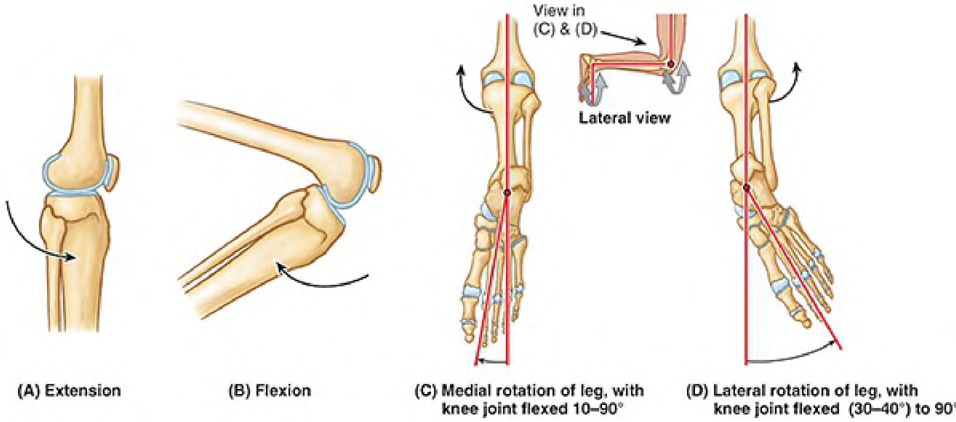


FIGURE 7.95. **Movements of knee joint.**

TABLE 7.16. MOVEMENTS OF KNEE JOINT AND MUSCLES PRODUCING THEM

Movement	Degrees Possible	Muscles Producing Movement		Factors Limiting (Checking) Movement	Comments
		Primary	**Secondary**		
Extension	Normal knees extend to 0° (straight alignment of axes of tibia and femur)[a]	Quadriceps femoris	Weakly: tensor fasciae latae	Anterior edge of lateral meniscus contacts shallow groove between tibial and patellar surfaces of femoral condyles; anterior cruciate ligament contacts groove in intercondylar fossa.	Ability of quadriceps to produce extension is most effective when hip joint is extended; flexion diminishes its efficiency.
Flexion	120° (hip extended); 140° (hip flexed); 160° passively	Hamstrings (semitendinosus, semimembranosus, long head of biceps); short head of biceps	Gracilis, sartorius, gastrocnemius, and popliteus	Calf of leg contacts thigh; length of hamstrings is also a factor—more knee flexion is possible when hip joint is flexed; cannot fully flex knee when hip is extended	Normally, role of gastrocnemius is minimal, but in presence of a supracondylar fracture, it rotates (flexes) distal fragment of femur.
Medial rotation	10° with knee flexed; 5° with knee extended	Semitendinosus and semimembranosus when knee is flexed; popliteus when nonbearing knee is extended	Gracilis and sartorius	Collateral ligaments, loose during flexion without rotation, become taut at limits of rotation.	When extended knee is bearing weight, action of popliteus laterally rotates femur; when not bearing weight, popliteus medially rotates leg (tibia).
Lateral rotation	30–40° when knee is flexed to 90°	Biceps femoris when knee is flexed		Collateral ligaments become taut; anterior cruciate ligament becomes wound around posterior	At end of rotation, with no opposition, tensor fasciae latae can assist in maintaining position.

				cruciate ligament.	

[a]Straight alignment of axis of tibia with axis of femur is 0°; normal range extends to −3° (3° of hyperextension).

When the knee is fully extended with the foot on the ground, the knee passively “locks” because of medial rotation of the femoral condyles on the tibial plateau (the “screw-home mechanism”). This position makes the lower limb a solid column and more adapted for weight bearing. When the knee is “locked,” the thigh and leg muscles can relax briefly without making the knee joint too unstable. To unlock the knee, the popliteus contracts, rotating the femur laterally about 5° on the planted tibial plateau so that flexion of the knee can occur.

Movements of Menisci. Although the rolling movement of the femoral condyles during flexion and extension is limited (converted to spin) by the cruciate ligaments, some rolling does occur, and the point of contact between the femur and the tibia moves posteriorly with flexion and returns anteriorly with extension. Furthermore, during rotation of the knee, one femoral condyle moves anteriorly on the corresponding tibial condyle while the other femoral condyle moves posteriorly, rotating about the cruciate ligaments. The menisci must be able to migrate on the tibial plateau as the points of contact between femur and tibia change.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF KNEE JOINT

The arteries supplying the knee joint are the 10 vessels that form the peri-articular **genicular anastomoses** around the knee: the genicular branches of the femoral, popliteal, and anterior and posterior recurrent branches of the anterior tibial recurrent and circumflex fibular arteries (Figs. 7.96 and 7.97B). The middle genicular branches of the popliteal artery penetrate the fibrous layer of the joint capsule and supply the cruciate ligaments, synovial membrane, and peripheral margins of the menisci.

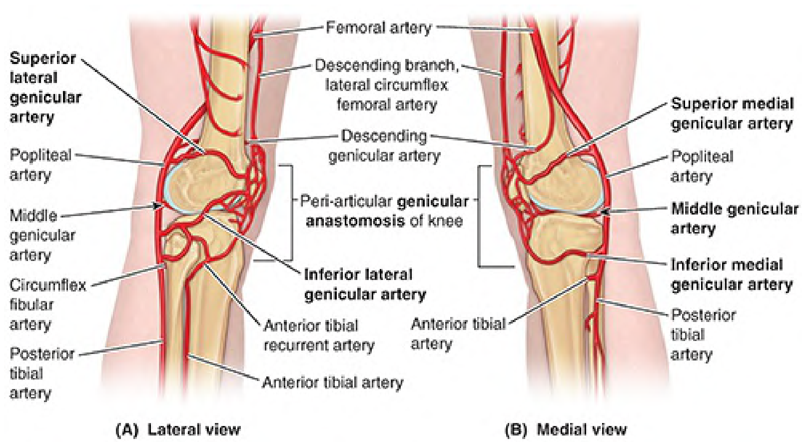


FIGURE 7.96. Arterial anastomoses around knee. In addition to providing collateral circulation, the genicular arteries of the genicular anastomosis supply blood to the structures surrounding the joint as well as to the joint itself (e.g., its joint or articular capsule).

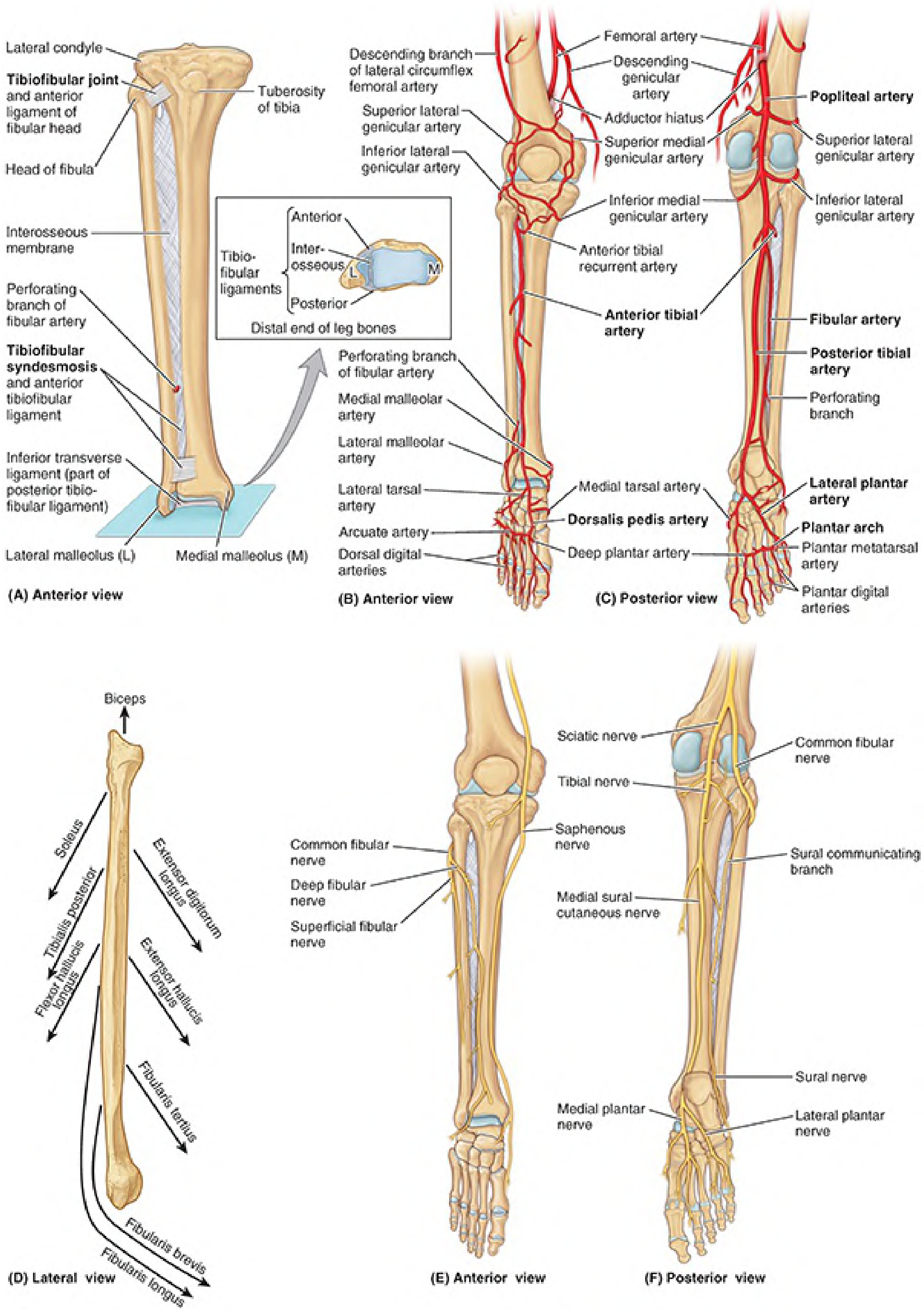


FIGURE 7.97. Overview of joints and neurovascular structures of leg and foot. A. Tibiofibular articulations. These include the synovial tibiofibular joint and the tibiofibular syndesmosis; the latter is made up of the interosseous membrane of the leg and the anterior and posterior tibiofibular ligaments. The oblique direction of the fibers of the interosseous membrane, primarily extending inferolaterally from the tibia, allows slight upward movement of the fibula but resists downward pull on it. **B and C.** Arterial supply of joints of leg and foot. Peri-articular anastomoses surround the knee and ankle. **D.** Direction of pull muscles attaching to fibula. Of the nine muscles attached to the fibula, all except one exert a downward pull on the fibula. **E and F.** Nerve supply of leg and foot. Starting with the knee and progressing distally in the limb, cutaneous nerves become increasingly involved in providing innervation to joints, taking over completely in the distal foot and toes.

INNERVATION OF KNEE JOINT

Reflecting Hilton's law, the nerves supplying the muscles crossing (acting on) the knee joint also supply the joint (Fig. 7.97D); thus, articular branches from the femoral, tibial, and common fibular nerves supply its anterior, posterior, and lateral aspects, respectively. In addition, however, the saphenous (cutaneous) nerve supplies additional articular branches to its medial aspect.

BURSAE AROUND KNEE JOINT

There are at least 12 bursae around the knee joint because most tendons run parallel to the bones and pull lengthwise across the joint during knee movements. The main bursae of the knee are illustrated in Figure 7.98 and described in Table 7.17.

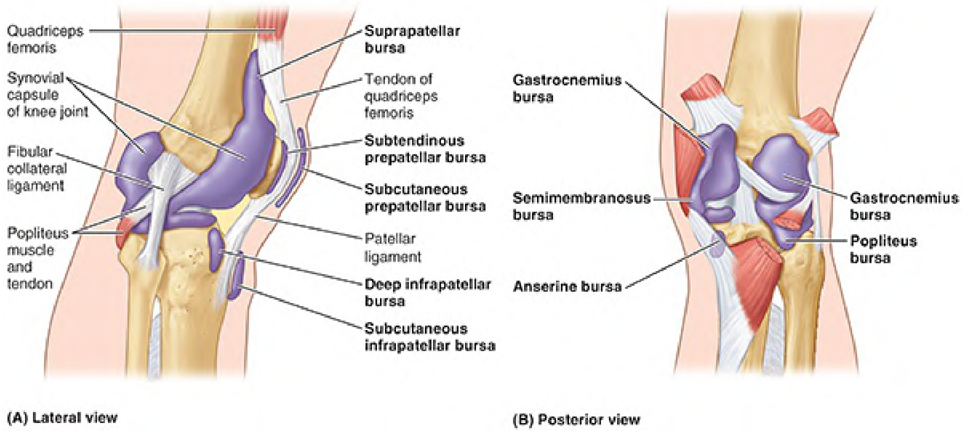


FIGURE 7.98. Bursae around knee joint and proximal leg.

TABLE 7.17. BURSAE AROUND KNEE JOINT

Bursae	Locations	Comments
Suprapatellar	Between femur and tendon of quadriceps femoris	Held in position by articular muscle of knee; communicates freely with (superior extension of) synovial cavity of knee joint
Popliteus	Between tendon of popliteus and lateral condyle of tibia	Opens into synovial cavity of knee joint inferior to lateral meniscus
Anserine	Separates tendons of sartorius, gracilis, and semitendinosus from tibia and tibial collateral ligament	Area where tendons of these muscles attach to tibia; resembles a goose's foot (L. pes anserinus)
Gastrocnemius	Deep to proximal attachment of tendon of medial head of gastrocnemius	An extension of synovial membrane of knee joint capsule
Semimembranosus	Between medial head of gastrocnemius and semimembranosus tendon	Related to distal attachment of semimembranosus
Subcutaneous prepatellar	Between skin and anterior surface of patella	Allows free movement of skin over patella during movements of leg
Subcutaneous infrapatellar	Between skin and tibial tuberosity	Helps knee withstand pressure when kneeling

Deep infrapatellar	Between patellar ligament and anterior surface of tibia	Separated from knee joint by infrapatellar fat pad

The **subcutaneous prepatellar** and **infrapatellar bursae** are located at the convex surface of the joint, allowing the skin to be able to move freely during movements of the knee (Figs. 7.91A and 7.92A).

Four bursae communicate with the synovial cavity of the knee joint: suprapatellar bursa (deep to the distal quadriceps), popliteus bursa, anserine bursa (deep to the tendinous distal attachments of the sartorius, gracilis, and semitendinosus), and gastrocnemius bursa (Figs. 7.92A and 7.93E). The large **suprapatellar bursa** (Figs. 7.90A and 7.92A) is especially important because an infection in it may spread to the knee joint cavity. Although it develops separately from the knee joint, the bursa becomes continuous with it.

Tibiofibular Joints

The tibia and fibula are connected by two joints: the synovial–tibiofibular joint and the tibiofibular syndesmosis (inferior tibiofibular) joint. In addition, an interosseous membrane joins the shafts of the tibia and fibula (Fig. 7.97A). The fibers of the interosseous membrane and all ligaments of both tibiofibular articulations run inferiorly from the tibia to the fibula. Thus, the membrane and ligaments strongly resist the downward pull placed on the fibula by eight of the nine muscles attached to it (Fig. 7.97C). However, they allow slight upward movement of the fibula that occurs when the wide (anterior) end of the trochlea of the talus is wedged between the malleoli during dorsiflexion at the ankle. Movement at the superior tibiofibular joint is impossible without movement at the inferior tibiofibular syndesmosis.

The anterior tibial vessels pass through a hiatus at the superior end of the interosseous membrane (Fig. 7.97A, B). At the inferior end of the membrane is a smaller hiatus through which the perforating branch of the fibular artery passes.

TIBIOFIBULAR JOINT

The **tibiofibular joint** (superior tibiofibular joint) is a plane type of synovial joint between the flat facet on the fibular head and a similar articular facet located posterolaterally on the lateral tibial condyle (Figs. 7.94B, D and 7.97A). A tense joint capsule surrounds the joint and attaches to the margins of the articular surfaces of the fibula and tibia. The joint capsule is strengthened by anterior and posterior ligaments of the fibular head, which pass superomedially from the fibular head to the lateral tibial condyle (Fig. 7.94B). The joint is crossed posteriorly by the tendon of the popliteus. A pouch of synovial membrane from the knee joint, the popliteus bursa (Fig. 7.98; Table 7.17), passes between the tendon of the popliteus and the lateral condyle of the tibia. About 20% of the time, the bursa also communicates with the synovial cavity of the tibiofibular joint, enabling transmigration of inflammatory processes between the two joints.

Movement. Slight movement of the joint occurs during dorsiflexion of the foot as a result of wedging of the trochlea of the talus between the malleoli (see "Articular Surfaces of Ankle Joint"

later in this chapter).

Blood Supply. The arteries of the superior tibiofibular joint are from the inferior lateral genicular and anterior tibial recurrent arteries (Figs. 7.96A and 7.97B).

Nerve Supply. The nerves of the tibiofibular joint are from the common fibular nerve and the nerve to the popliteus (Fig. 7.97D).

TIBIOFIBULAR SYNDESMOSIS

The **tibiofibular syndesmosis** is a compound fibrous joint. It is the fibrous union of the tibia and fibula by means of the interosseous membrane (uniting the shafts) and the anterior, interosseous, and posterior tibiofibular ligaments (the latter making up the **inferior tibiofibular joint**, uniting the distal ends of the bones). The integrity of the inferior tibiofibular joint is essential for the stability of the ankle joint because it keeps the lateral malleolus firmly against the lateral surface of the talus.

Articular Surfaces and Ligaments. The rough, triangular articular area on the medial surface of the inferior end of the fibula articulates with a facet on the inferior end of the tibia (Figs. 7.97A and 7.99B). The strong deep **interosseous tibiofibular ligament** continuous superiorly with the interosseous membrane and forms the principal connection between the tibia and the fibula. The joint is also strengthened anteriorly and posteriorly by the strong external **anterior** and **posterior tibiofibular ligaments**. The distal deep continuation of the posterior tibiofibular ligament, the **inferior transverse** (**tibiofibular**) **ligament**, forms a strong connection between the distal ends of the tibia (medial malleolus) and the fibula (lateral malleolus). It contacts the talus and forms the posterior "wall" of a square socket (with three deep walls and a shallow or open anterior wall), the **malleolar mortise**, for the trochlea of the talus. The lateral and medial walls of the mortise are formed by the respective malleoli (Fig. 7.99).

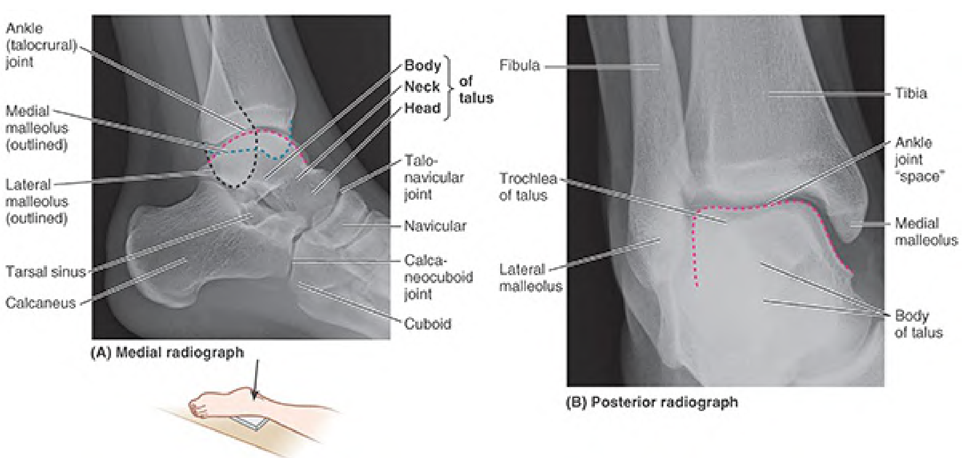


FIGURE 7.99. Ankle joint demonstrated radiographically. A. Features of lateral projection. **B.** Ankle joint of 14-year-old boy. Epiphysial cartilage plates are evident at this age.

Movement. Slight movement of the joint occurs to accommodate wedging of the wide portion of the trochlea of the talus between the malleoli during dorsiflexion of the foot.

Blood Supply. The arteries are from the perforating branch of the fibular artery and from

medial malleolar branches of the anterior and posterior tibial arteries (Fig. 7.97B).

Nerve Supply. The nerves to the syndesmosis are from the deep fibular, tibial, and saphenous nerves (Fig. 7.97D).

Ankle Joint

The **ankle joint** (talocrural articulation) is a hinge-type synovial joint. It is located between the distal ends of the tibia and the fibula and the superior part of the talus (Figs. 7.99 and 7.100). The ankle joint can be felt between the tendons on the anterior surface of the ankle as a slight depression, approximately 1 cm proximal to the level of the tip of the medial malleolus.

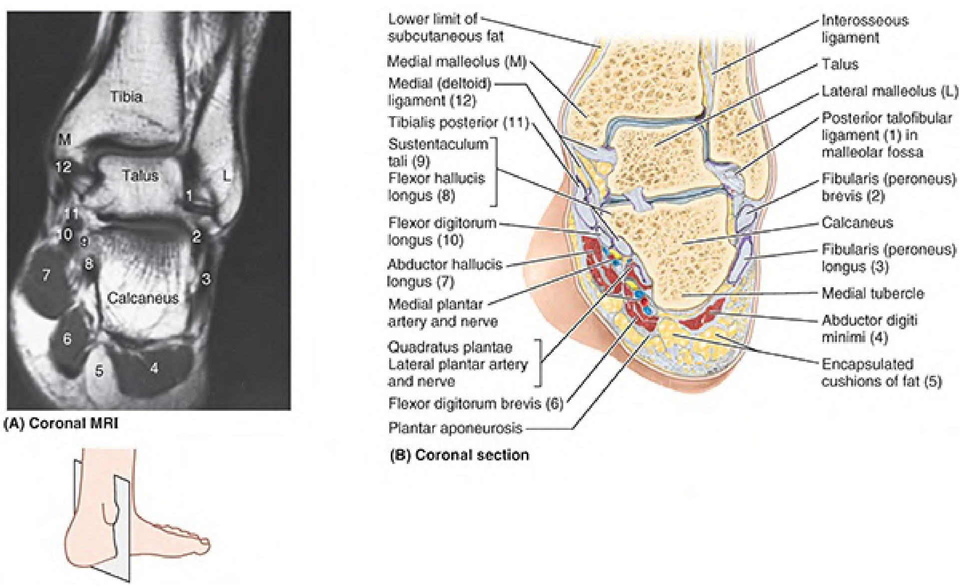


FIGURE 7.100. Sectional anatomy of ankle region. A. MRI of ankle region. The orientation drawing depicts the structures visible in the MRI of the ankle. **B.** Anatomical coronal section.

ARTICULAR SURFACES OF ANKLE JOINT

The distal ends of the tibia and fibula (along with the inferior transverse part of the posterior tibiofibular ligament) (Fig. 7.97A) form a malleolar mortise into which the pulley-shaped trochlea of the talus fits (Figs. 7.99B and 7.100). The trochlea (L., pulley) is the rounded superior articular surface of the talus (see Fig. 7.103C). The medial surface of the lateral malleolus articulates with the lateral surface of the trochlea of the talus. The tibia articulates with the talus in two places:

1. Its inferior surface forms the roof of the malleolar mortise, transferring the body's weight to the talus.
2. Its medial malleolus articulates with the medial surface of the trochlea of the talus.

The malleoli grip the talus tightly as it rocks in the mortise during movements of the joint. The grip of the malleoli on the trochlea is strongest during dorsiflexion of the foot (as when "digging in one's heels" when descending a steep slope or during tug-of-war) because this

movement forces the wider, anterior part of the trochlea posteriorly between the malleoli, spreading the tibia and fibula slightly apart. This spreading is limited especially by the strong interosseous tibiofibular ligament as well as the anterior and posterior tibiofibular ligaments that unite the tibia and fibula (Figs. 7.100 and 7.101).

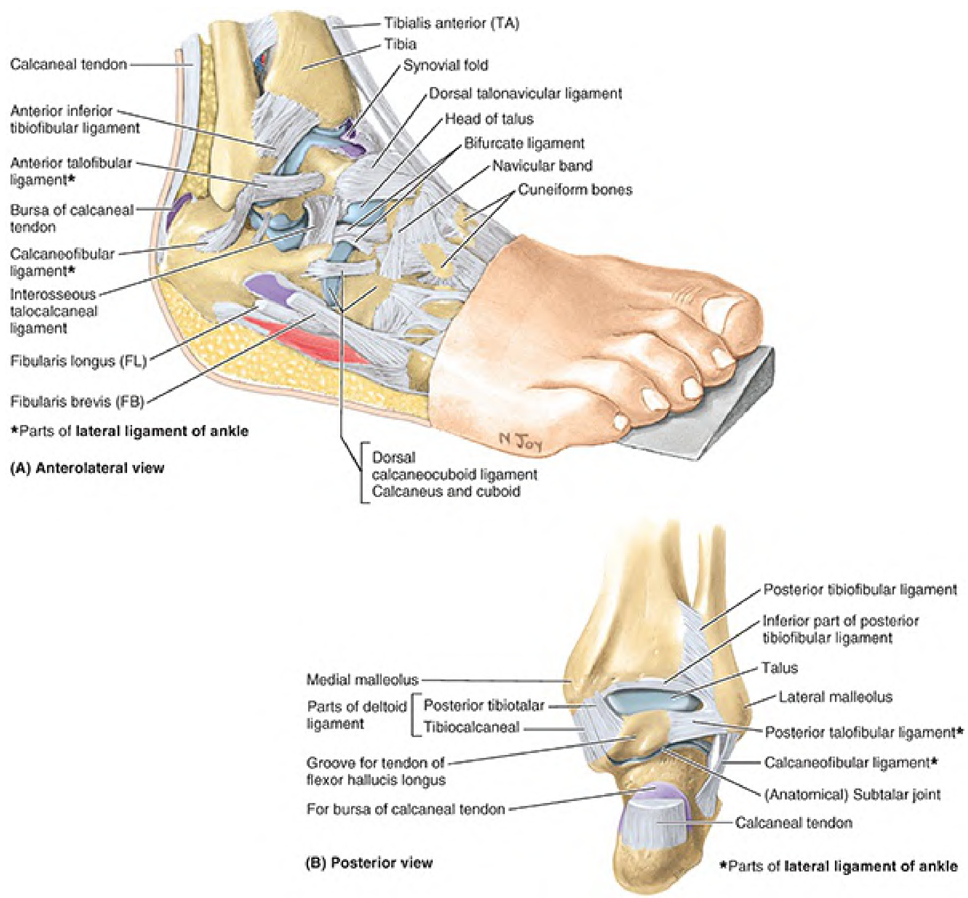


FIGURE 7.101. **Dissection of ankle joint and joints of inversion and eversion. A.** Dissection. The foot has been inverted (by placing a wedge under the foot) to demonstrate the articular surfaces and make the lateral ligaments taut. **B.** Ligaments of posterior aspect of ankle joint.

The interosseous ligament is deeply placed between the nearly congruent surfaces of the tibia and fibula; although demonstrated in the inset for Figure 7.97A, the ligament can actually be observed only by rupturing it or in a cross section.

The ankle joint is relatively unstable during plantarflexion because the trochlea is narrower posteriorly and, therefore, lies relatively loosely within the mortise. It is during plantarflexion that most injuries of the ankle occur (usually as a result of sudden, unexpected—and therefore inadequately resisted—inversion of the foot).

JOINT CAPSULE OF ANKLE JOINT

The **joint capsule of the ankle joint** is thin anteriorly and posteriorly but is supported on each side by strong lateral and medial (collateral) ligaments (Figs. 7.101 and 7.102; thin areas of the capsule have been removed in Fig. 7.101, leaving only the reinforced parts—the ligaments—and

a synovial fold). Its fibrous layer is attached superiorly to the borders of the articular surfaces of the tibia and the malleoli and inferiorly to the talus. The synovial membrane is loose and lines the fibrous layer of the capsule. The synovial cavity often extends superiorly between the tibia and the fibula as far as the interosseous tibiofibular ligament.

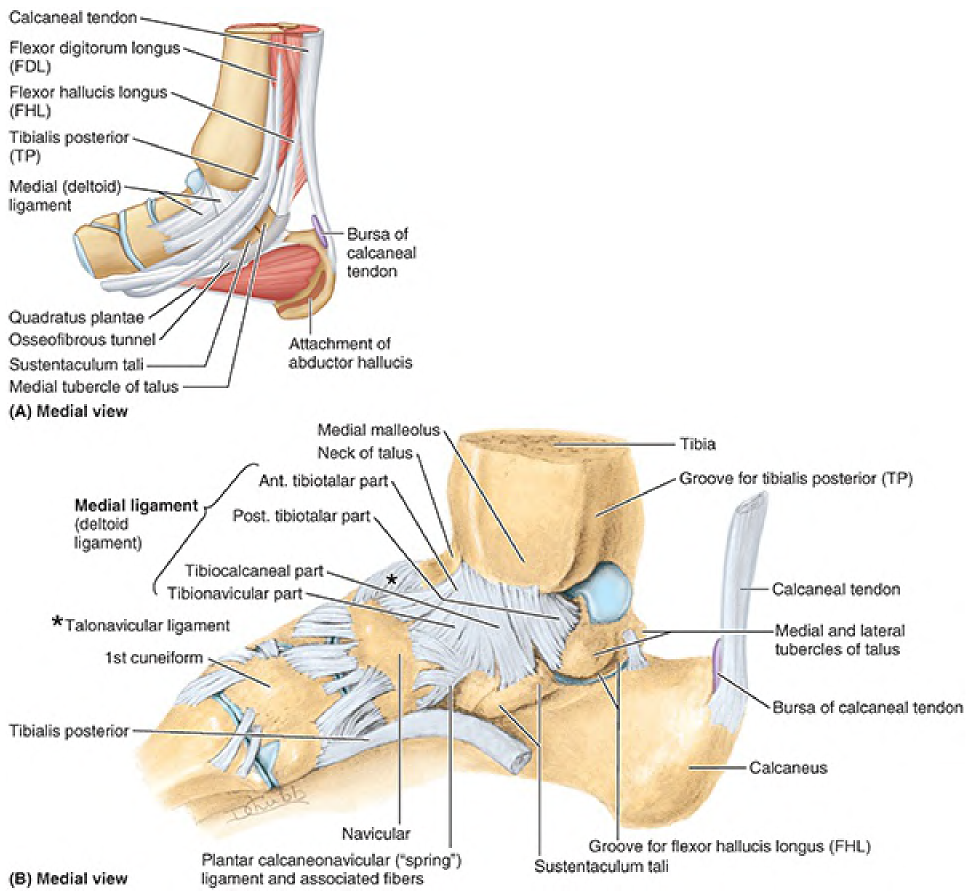


FIGURE 7.102. Tendons and ligaments on medial aspect of ankle and foot. A. Relationships of flexor tendons to medial malleolus and sustentaculum tali. Except for the part tethering the flexor hallucis longus tendon, the flexor retinaculum has been removed. **B.** Parts of medial (deltoid) ligament of ankle.

LIGAMENTS OF ANKLE JOINT

The ankle joint is reinforced laterally by the **lateral ligament of the ankle**, a compound structure consisting of three completely separate ligaments (Fig. 7.101A, B):

1. **Anterior talofibular ligament**, a flat, weak band that extends anteromedially from the lateral malleolus to the neck of the talus
2. **Posterior talofibular ligament**, a thick, fairly strong band that runs horizontally medially and slightly posteriorly from the malleolar fossa of the fibula to the lateral tubercle of the talus (Figs. 7.100 and 7.101B)
3. **Calcaneofibular ligament**, a round cord that passes postero-inferiorly from the tip of the lateral malleolus to the lateral surface of the calcaneus (Fig. 7.101A, B)

The joint capsule is reinforced medially by the large, strong **medial ligament of the ankle**

(deltoid ligament) that attaches proximally to the medial malleolus (Fig. 7.102). The medial ligament fans out from the malleolus, attaching distally to the talus, calcaneus, and navicular via four adjacent and continuous parts: the **tibionavicular part**, the **tibiocalcaneal part**, and the **anterior** and **posterior tibiotalar parts**. The medial ligament stabilizes the ankle joint during eversion and prevents subluxation (partial dislocation) of the joint.

MOVEMENTS OF ANKLE JOINT

The main movements of the ankle joint are dorsiflexion and plantarflexion of the foot, which occur around a transverse axis passing through the talus (Fig. 7.103B). Because the narrow end of the trochlea of the talus lies loosely between the malleoli when the foot is plantarflexed, some "wobble" (small amounts of abduction, adduction, inversion, and eversion) is possible in this unstable position.

- Dorsiflexion of the ankle is produced by the muscles in the anterior compartment of the leg (see Table 7.10). Dorsiflexion is usually limited by the passive resistance of the triceps surae to stretching and by tension in the medial and lateral ligaments.
- Plantarflexion of the ankle is produced by the muscles in the posterior compartment of the leg (see Table 7.13). In toe dancing by ballet dancers, for example, the dorsum of the foot is in line with the anterior surface of the leg.

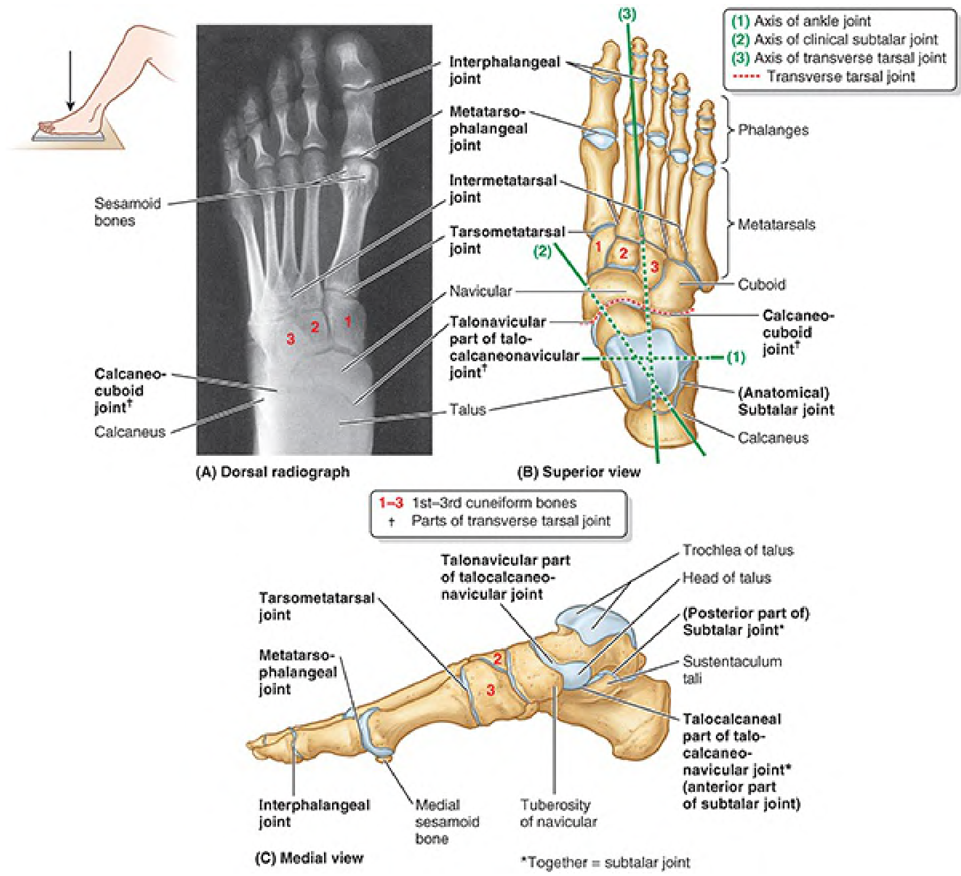


FIGURE 7.103. Joints of foot.

BLOOD SUPPLY OF ANKLE JOINT

The arteries are derived from malleolar branches of the fibular and anterior and posterior tibial arteries (Fig. 7.97B).

NERVE SUPPLY OF ANKLE JOINT

The nerves are derived from the saphenous, tibial, sural, and superficial and deep fibular nerves. The superficial and deep fibular nerves are branches of the common fibular nerve (Fig. 7.97D).

Foot Joints

The many joints of the foot involve the tarsals, metatarsals, and phalanges (Fig. 7.103; Table 7.18). The important intertarsal joints are the subtalar (talocalcaneal) joint and the transverse tarsal joint (calcaneocuboid and talonavicular joints). Inversion and eversion of the foot are the main movements involving these joints. The other intertarsal joints (e.g., intercuneiform joints) and the tarsometatarsal and intermetatarsal joints are relatively small and are so tightly joined by ligaments that only slight movement occurs between them. In the foot, flexion and extension occur in the forefoot at the metatarsophalangeal and interphalangeal joints (Fig. 7.104A, B; Table 7.19). Inversion is augmented by flexion of the toes (especially the great and 2nd toes),

and eversion by their extension (especially of the lateral toes). All bones of the foot proximal to the metatarsophalangeal joints are united by dorsal and plantar ligaments. The bones of the metatarsophalangeal and interphalangeal joints are united by lateral and medial collateral ligaments.

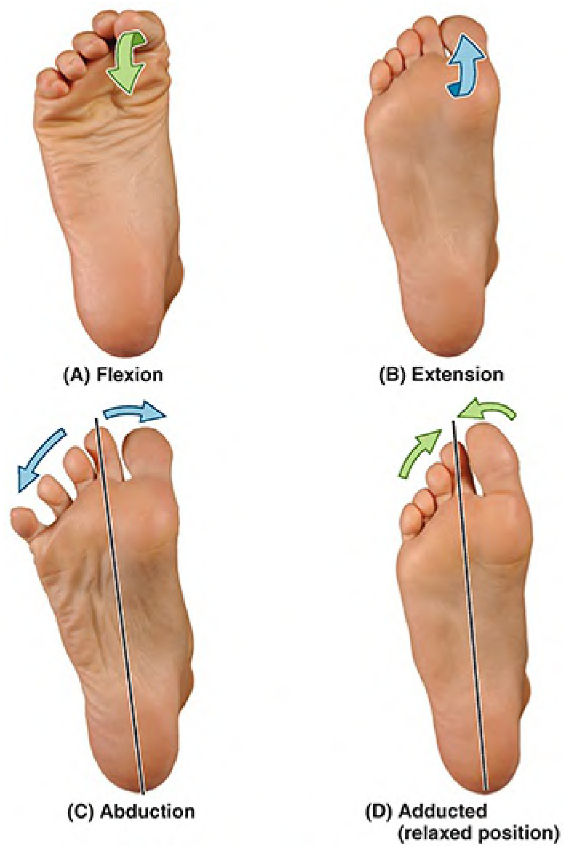


FIGURE 7.104. **Movements of joints of forefoot.**

TABLE 7.18. JOINTS OF FOOT

Joint	Type	Articulating Surfaces	Joint Capsule	Ligaments	Movements	Blood Supply	Nerve Supply
Subtalar (talocalcaneal, anatomical subtalar joint)	Plane synovial joint	Inferior surface of body of talus (posterior calcaneal articular facet) articulates with superior surface (posterior talar articular surface) of calcaneus.	Fibrous layer of joint capsule is attached to margins of articular surfaces.	Medial, lateral, and posterior talocalcaneal ligaments support capsule; interosseous talocalcaneal ligament binds bones together.	Inversion and eversion of foot	Posterior tibial and fibular arteries	Plantar aspect: medial or lateral plantar nerve Dorsal aspect: deep fibular nerve
Talocalcaneonavicular	Synovial joint; talonavicular part is ball-and-socket type.	Head of talus articulates with calcaneus and navicular bones.	Joint capsule incompletely encloses joint.	Plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligament supports head of talus.	Gliding and rotatory movements possible	Anterior tibial artery via lateral tarsal artery, a branch of dorsalis pedis artery (dorsal artery of foot)	
Calcaneocuboid	Plane synovial joint	Anterior end of calcaneus articulates with	Fibrous capsule encloses joint.	Dorsal calcaneocuboid ligament, plantar	Inversion and eversion of foot;		

		posterior surface of cuboid.		calcaneocuboid, and long plantar ligaments support joint capsule.	circumduction		
Cuneonavicular joint		Anterior navicular articulates with posterior surfaces of cuneiforms.	Common capsule encloses joints.	Dorsal and plantar cuneonavicular ligaments	Little movement occurs.		
Tarsometatarsal		Anterior tarsal bones articulate with bases of metatarsal bones.	Separate joint capsules enclose each joint.	Dorsal, plantar, and interosseous tarsometatarsal ligaments bind bones together.	Gliding or sliding		Deep fibular; medial and lateral plantar nerves; sural nerve
Intermetatarsal	Plane synovial joint	Bases of metatarsal bones articulate with each other.	Separate joint capsules enclose each joint.	Dorsal, plantar, and interosseous intermetatarsal ligaments bind lateral four metatarsal bones together.	Little individual movement occurs.	Lateral metatarsal artery (a branch of dorsalis pedis artery)	Digital nerves
Metatarsophalangeal	Condyloid synovial joint	Heads of metatarsal bones articulate with bases of proximal phalanges.		Collateral ligaments support capsule on each side; plantar ligament supports plantar part of capsule.	Flexion, extension and some abduction, adduction, and circumduction		
Interphalangeal	Hinge synovial joint	Head of one phalanx articulates with base of one distal to it.		Collateral and plantar ligaments support joints.	Flexion and extension	Digital branches of plantar arch	

TABLE 7.19. MOVEMENTS OF JOINTS OF FOREFOOT AND MUSCLES PRODUCING THEM

Movement (letters refer to Fig. 7.104)	Muscles[a]
Metatarsophalangeal joints	
Flexion (A)	**Flexor digitorum brevis** **Lumbricals** **Interossei** **Flexor hallucis brevis** **Flexor hallucis longus** Flexor digiti minimi brevis Flexor digitorum longus
Extension (B)	**Extensor hallucis longus** **Extensor digitorum longus** **Extensor digitorum brevis**
Abduction (C) (pulling digits away from the longitudinal axis of the 2nd toe)	**Abductor hallucis** **Abductor digiti minimi** **Dorsal interossei**
Adduction (D) (pulling digits toward the longitudinal axis of the 2nd toe)	**Adductor hallucis** **Plantar interossei**

Interphalangeal joints	
Flexion (A)	**Flexor hallucis longus** **Flexor digitorum longus** **Flexor digitorum brevis** Quadratus plantae
Extension (B)	**Extensor hallucis longus** **Extensor digitorum longus** **Extensor digitorum brevis**

[a]Muscles in boldface are chiefly responsible for the movement; the other muscles assist them.

The **subtalar joint** occurs where the talus rests on and articulates with the calcaneus. The anatomical subtalar joint is a single synovial joint between the slightly concave posterior calcaneal articular surface of the talus and the convex posterior articular facet of the calcaneus (Figs. 7.100B and 7.101B). The joint capsule is weak but is supported by medial, lateral, posterior, and interosseous talocalcaneal ligaments (Figs. 7.100B and 7.101A). The **interosseous talocalcaneal ligament** lies within the tarsal sinus, which separates the subtalar and talocalcaneonavicular joints, and is especially strong. Orthopedic surgeons use the term subtalar joint for the compound functional joint consisting of the anatomical subtalar joint plus the **talocalcaneal part of the talocalcaneonavicular joint**. The two separate elements of the clinical subtalar joint straddle the talocalcaneal interosseous ligament. Structurally, the anatomical definition is logical because the anatomical subtalar joint is a discrete joint, having its own joint capsule and articular cavity. Functionally, however, the clinical definition is logical because the two parts of the compound joint function as a unit; it is impossible for them to function independently. The subtalar joint (by either definition) is where the majority of inversion and eversion occurs, around an axis that is oblique.

The **transverse tarsal joint** is a compound joint formed by two separate joints aligned transversely: the **talonavicular part of the talocalcaneonavicular joint** and the **calcaneocuboid joint** (Fig. 7.103A, B). At this joint, the midfoot and forefoot rotate as a unit on the hindfoot around a longitudinal (AP) axis, augmenting the inversion and eversion movements occurring at the clinical subtalar joint. Transection across the transverse tarsal joint is a standard method for surgical amputation of the foot.

MAJOR LIGAMENTS OF FOOT

The major ligaments of the plantar aspect of the foot (Fig. 7.105) are the

- **plantar calcaneonavicular ligament** (spring ligament), which extends across and fills a wedge-shaped gap between the sustentaculum tali and the inferior margin of the posterior articular surface of the navicular (Fig. 7.105A, B). The spring ligament supports the head of the talus and plays important roles in the transfer of weight from the talus and in maintaining the longitudinal arch of the foot, of which it is the keystone (superiormost element).
- **long plantar ligament**, which passes from the plantar surface of the calcaneus to the groove on the cuboid. Some of its fibers extend to the bases of the metatarsals, thereby forming a tunnel for the tendon of the fibularis longus (Fig. 7.105A). The long plantar ligament is

important in maintaining the longitudinal arch of the foot.

- **plantar calcaneocuboid ligament** (short plantar ligament), which is located on a plane between the plantar calcaneonavicular and the long plantar ligaments (Fig. 7.105B). It extends from the anterior aspect of the inferior surface of the calcaneus to the inferior surface of the cuboid. It is also involved in maintaining the longitudinal arch of the foot.

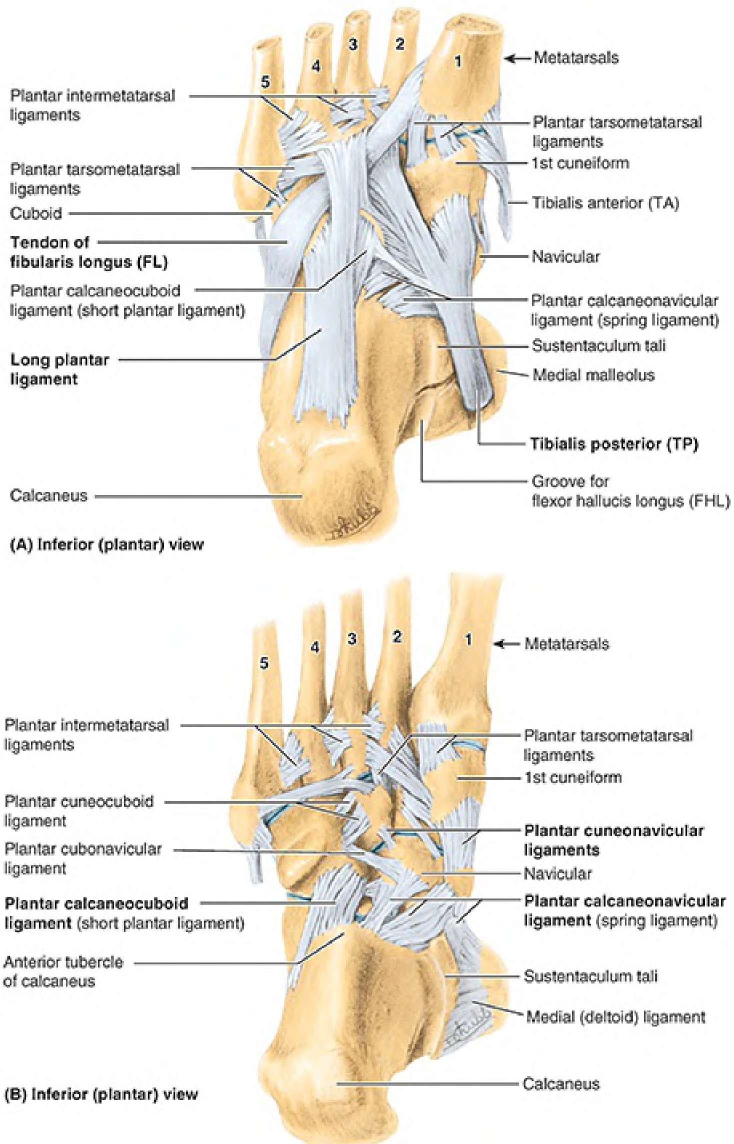


FIGURE 7.105. **Plantar ligaments. A.** Superficial dissection. **B.** Deep dissection.

ARCHES OF FOOT

If the feet were more rigid structures, each impact with the ground would generate extremely large forces of short duration (shocks) that would be propagated through the skeletal system. Because the foot is composed of numerous bones connected by ligaments, it has considerable flexibility that allows it to deform with each ground contact, thereby absorbing much of the shock. Furthermore, the tarsal and metatarsal bones are arranged in longitudinal and transverse

arches passively supported and actively restrained by flexible tendons that add to the weight-bearing capabilities and resiliency of the foot. Thus, much smaller forces of longer duration are transmitted through the skeletal system.

The arches distribute weight over the pedal platform (foot), acting not only as shock absorbers but also as springboards for propelling it during walking, running, and jumping. The resilient arches add to the foot's ability to adapt to changes in surface contour. The weight of the body is transmitted to the talus from the tibia. Then, it is transmitted posteriorly to the calcaneus and anteriorly to the "ball of the foot" (the sesamoids of the 1st metatarsal and the head of the 2nd metatarsal), and that weight/pressure is shared laterally with the heads of the 3rd–5th metatarsals as necessary for balance and comfort (Fig. 7.106). Between these weight-bearing points are the relatively elastic arches of the foot, which become slightly flattened by body weight during standing. They normally resume their curvature (recoil) when body weight is removed.

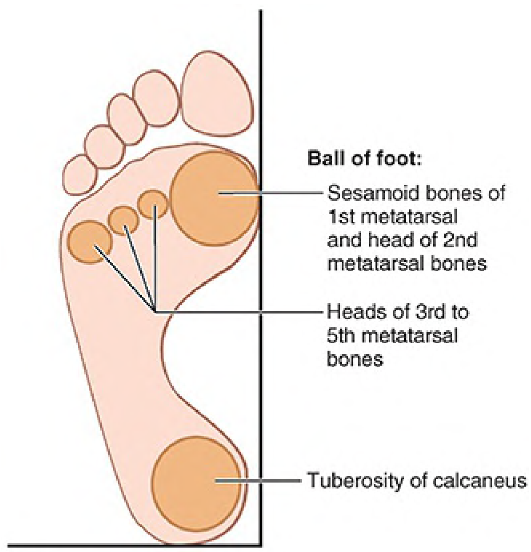


FIGURE 7.106. **Weight-bearing areas of foot.** Body weight is divided approximately equally between the hindfoot (calcaneus) and the forefoot (heads of the metatarsals). The forefoot has five points of contact with the ground: a large medial one that includes the two sesamoid bones associated with the head of the 1st metatarsal and the heads of the lateral four metatarsals. The 1st metatarsal supports the major share of the load, with the lateral forefoot providing balance.

The **longitudinal arch of the foot** is composed of medial and lateral parts (Fig. 7.107). Functionally, both parts act as a unit with the transverse arch of the foot, spreading the weight in all directions. The **medial longitudinal arch** is higher and more important than the lateral longitudinal arch (Fig. 7.107A, B). The medial longitudinal arch is composed of the calcaneus, talus, navicular, three cuneiforms, and three metatarsals. The talar head is the keystone of the medial longitudinal arch. The tibialis anterior and posterior, via their tendinous attachments, help support the medial longitudinal arch. The fibularis longus tendon, passing from lateral to medial, also helps support this arch (Fig. 7.107C, E). The **lateral longitudinal arch** is much flatter than the medial part of the arch and rests on the ground during standing (Fig. 7.107B, D). It is made up of the calcaneus, cuboid, and lateral two metatarsals.

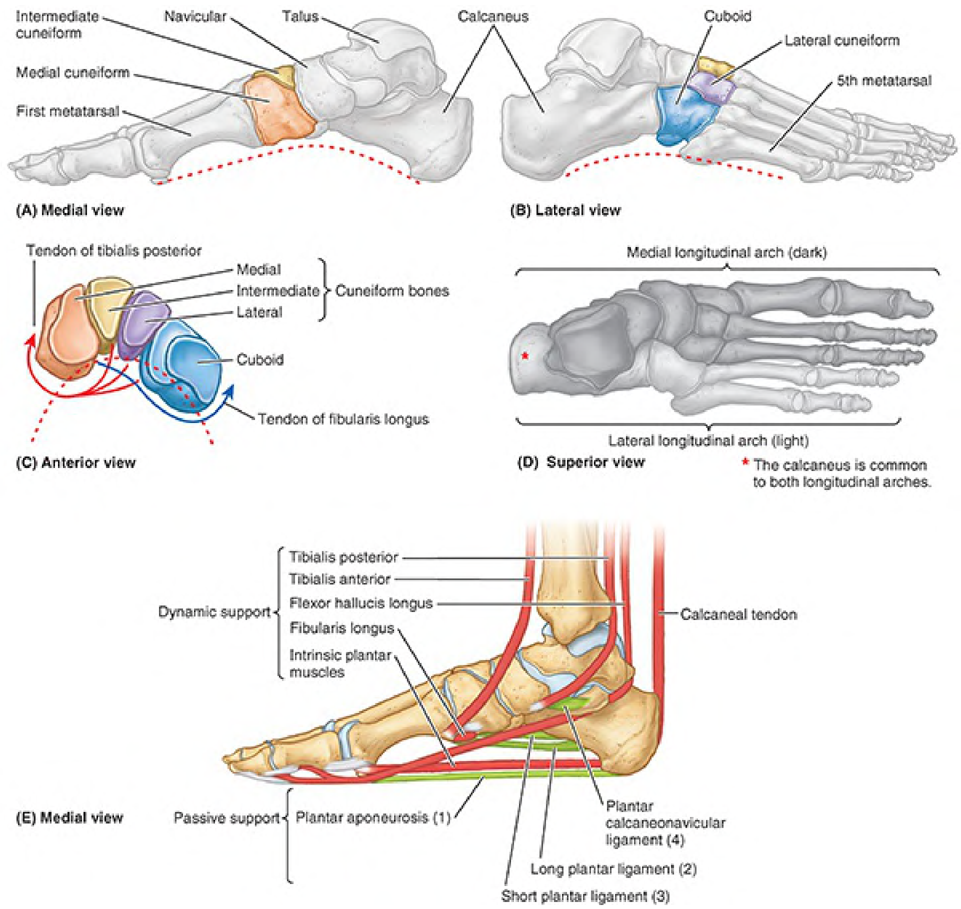


FIGURE 7.107. Arches of foot. A. Medial longitudinal arch. **B.** Lateral longitudinal arch. The medial longitudinal arch is higher than the lateral longitudinal arch, which may contact the ground when standing erect. **C.** Transverse arch shown at the level of the cuneiforms, receiving stirrup-like support from a major invertor (tibialis posterior) and evertor (fibularis longus). **D.** Components of medial (dark gray) and lateral (light gray) longitudinal arches. The calcaneus (medium gray) is common to both. The medial arch is primarily weight bearing, whereas the lateral arch provides balance. **E.** Structures providing active and passive support of arches. The active (red lines) and passive (green) supports of the longitudinal arches are represented. There are four layers of passive support (1–4). Red dashed lines, arches of foot.

The **transverse arch of the foot** runs from side to side (Fig. 7.107C). It is formed by the cuboid, cuneiforms, and bases of the metatarsals. The medial and lateral parts of the longitudinal arch serve as pillars for the transverse arch. The tendons of the fibularis longus and tibialis posterior, crossing under the sole of the foot like a stirrup (Fig. 7.107C), help maintain the curvature of the transverse arch. The integrity of the bony arches of the foot is maintained by both passive factors and dynamic supports (Fig. 7.107E).

Passive factors involved in forming and maintaining the arches of the foot include:

- The shape of the united bones (both arches, but especially the transverse arch)
- Four successive layers of fibrous tissue that bowstring the longitudinal arch (superficial to deep):
  1. Plantar aponeurosis
  2. Long plantar ligament
  3. Plantar calcaneocuboid (short plantar) ligament

4. Plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligament

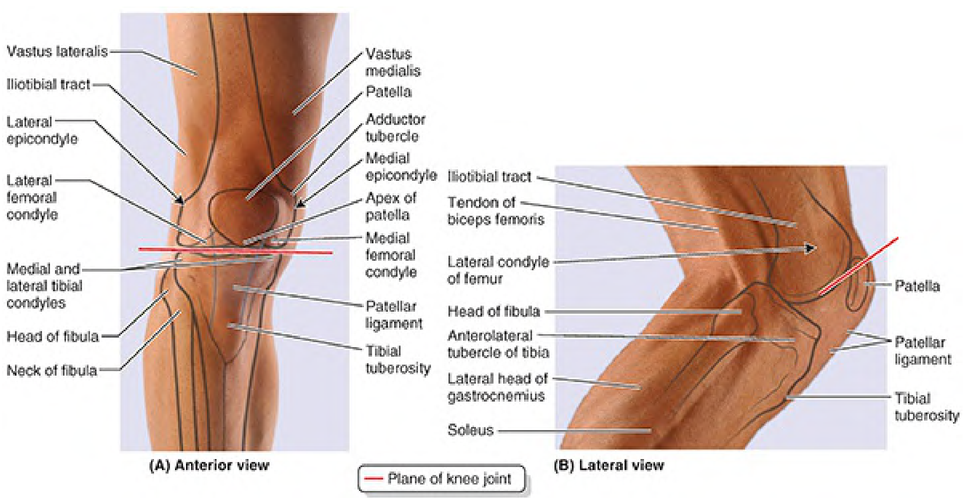
Dynamic supports involved in maintaining the arches of the foot include:

- Active (reflexive) bracing action of intrinsic muscles of foot (longitudinal arch)
- Active and tonic contraction of muscles with long tendons extending into foot:
  - Flexors hallucis and digitorum longus for the longitudinal arch
  - Fibularis longus and tibialis posterior for the transverse arch

Of these factors, the plantar ligaments and the plantar aponeurosis bear the greatest stress and are most important in maintaining the arches of the foot.

Surface Anatomy of Joints of Knee, Ankle, and Foot

The knee region is between the thigh and the leg (Fig. 7.108A). Superior to it are the large bulges formed by the vastus lateralis and medialis. Superolateral to the knee is the iliotibial tract, which can be followed inferiorly to the anterolateral (Gerdy) tubercle of the tibia. The patella, easily palpated and moveable from side to side during extension, lies anterior to the femoral condyles (palpable to each side of the middle of the patella). Extending from the apex of the patella, the patellar ligament is easily visible, especially in thin people, as a thick band attached to the prominent tibial tuberosity. The plane of the knee joint, between femoral condyles and tibial plateau, may be palpated on each side of the junction of patellar apex and ligament when the knee is extended. Laterally, the head of the fibula is readily located by following the tendon of the biceps femoris inferiorly. This tendon is particularly prominent when the knee is partially flexed (Fig. 7.108B). The fibular collateral ligament may be palpated as a cord-like structure superior to the fibular head and anterior to biceps tendon, when the knee is fully flexed.



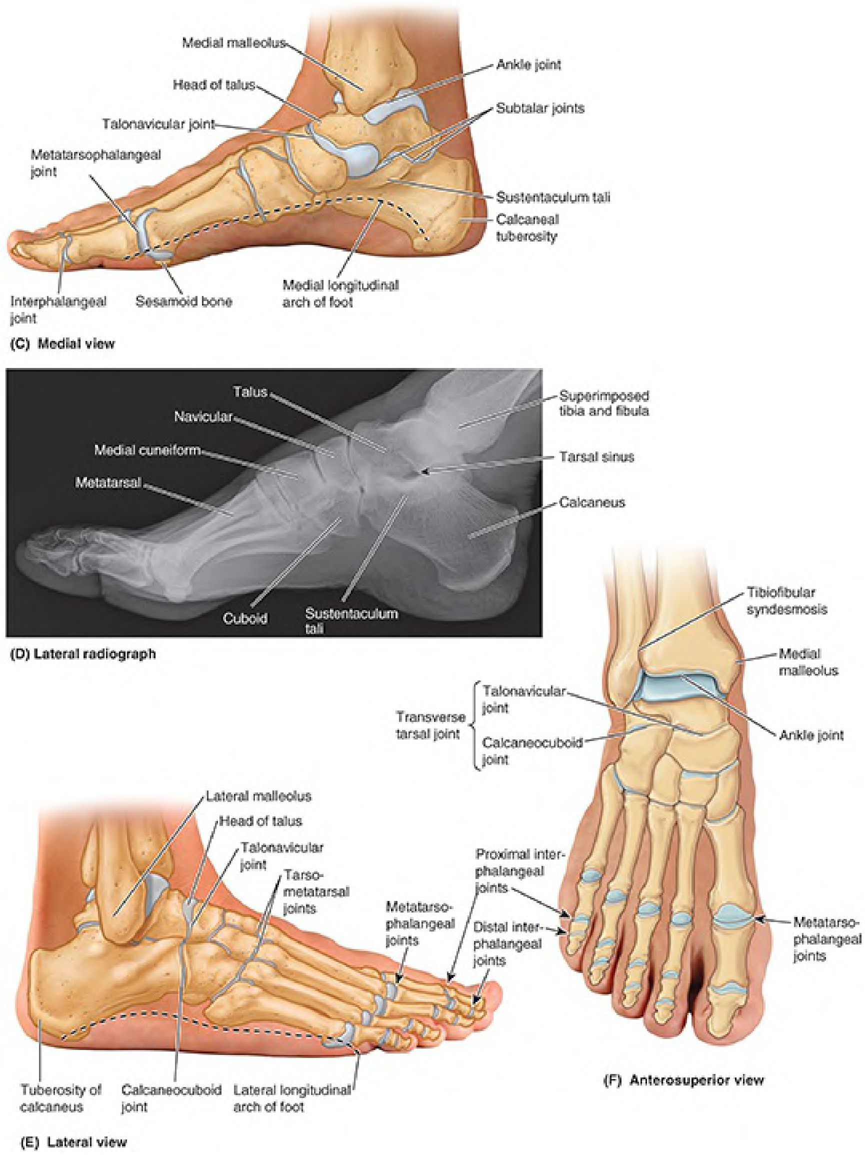


FIGURE 7.108. Surface anatomy of knee, leg, ankle, and foot joints. A. Anterior aspect with knee extended. **B.** Lateral aspect with knee partially flexed. **C.** Bones of medial aspect of foot. **D.** Medial view of lateral radiograph. **E.** Bones of lateral aspect of foot. **F.** Bones of dorsum of foot.

The prominences of the lateral and medial malleoli provide an approximation of the axis of the ankle joint (Fig. 7.108C–E). When the ankle is plantarflexed, the anterior border of the distal end of the tibia is palpable proximal to the malleoli, providing an indication of the joint plane of the ankle joint. The sustentaculum tali, approximately 2 cm distal to the tip of the medial malleolus, is best felt by palpating it from below where it is somewhat obscured by the tendon of the flexor digitorum longus, which crosses it. On the lateral side, when the foot is inverted, the lateral margin of the **anterior surface of the calcaneus** is uncovered and palpable. This indicates the site of the calcaneocuboid joint. When the foot is plantarflexed, the head of the talus is exposed. Palpate it dorsal to where the anterior surface of the calcaneus is felt. The calcaneal tendon at the posterior aspect of the ankle is easily palpated and traced to its attachment to the

calcaneal tuberosity. In the depression on each side of the tendon, the ankle joint is superficial. When the joint is overfilled with fluid, these depressions may be obliterated. The transverse tarsal joint is indicated by a line from the posterior aspect of the tuberosity of the navicular to a point halfway between the lateral malleolus and the tuberosity of the 5th metatarsal.

The **metatarsophalangeal joint of the great toe** lies distal to the knuckle formed by the head of the 1st metatarsal. Gout, a metabolic disorder, commonly causes edema and tenderness of this joint, as does osteoarthritis (degenerative joint disease). Severe pain in the 1st metatarsophalangeal joint is called podagra (from G. pous + G. agra, a seizure). Often, the 1st metatarsophalangeal joint is the first one affected by arthritis.

CLINICAL BOX

JOINTS OF LOWER LIMB

Bipedalism and Congruity of Articular Surfaces of Hip Joint

The acetabulum is directed inferiorly, laterally, and anteriorly in humans. The weight-bearing iliac portion of the acetabular rim overlies the femoral head, which is important for transfer of weight to the femur in the erect (standing/walking) position (see Figs. 7.3 and 7.83C).

Consequently, of the positions commonly assumed by humans, the hip joint is mechanically most stable when a person is bearing weight, as when lifting a heavy object, for example. Decreases in the degree to which the ilium overlies the femoral head (detectable radiographically as the angle of Wiberg; Fig. 7.83C, D) may indicate joint instability.

Because of the anterior direction of the axis of the acetabulum and the posterior direction of the axis of the femoral head and neck as it extends laterally (owing to the torsion angle—discussed earlier), there is an angle of 30–40° between their axes (Fig. B7.29). Consequently, the articular surfaces of the head and acetabulum are not fully congruent in the erect (bipedal) posture. The anterior part of the femoral head is “exposed” and articulates mostly with the joint capsule (see Figs. 7.83C; 7.84; 7.85A, C; and 7.88). Nonetheless, rarely is >40% of the available articular surface of the femoral head in contact with the surface of the acetabulum in any position.

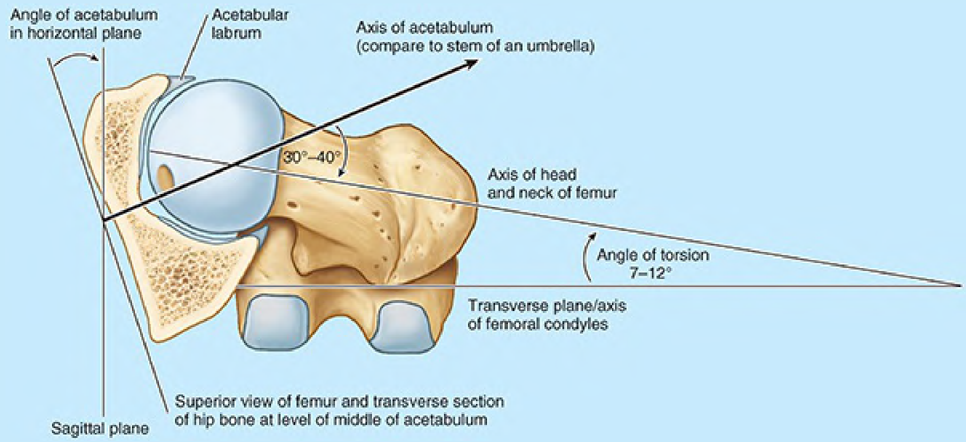


FIGURE B7.29. **Congruity of articular surfaces of hip joint.**

Relative to other joints and in view of the large size of the hip joint, this is extensive contact, contributing considerably to the joint's great stability.

Fractures of Femoral Neck

Fractures of the neck of the femur (unfortunately referred to as "fractured hips," implying that the hip bone is broken) are uncommon in most contact sports because the participants are usually young and the femoral neck is strong in people <40 years of age. When they do occur in this age group, these fractures usually result from high-energy impacts (e.g., during race-car accidents, skiing, trampoline, and equestrian events) when the lower limb is extended and the force of the impact is transmitted to the hip joint, even if applied at some distance from the joint. For example, if the foot is firmly braced against the car floor with the knee locked, or if the knee is braced against the dashboard during a head-on collision, the force of the impact may be transmitted superiorly and produce a femoral neck fracture. Femoral neck fractures are especially common in individuals >60 years, especially in women, because their femoral necks are more often weak and brittle, as a result of osteoporosis (Fig. B7.30). Fractures of the femoral neck are often intracapsular, and realignment of the neck fragments requires internal skeletal fixation.

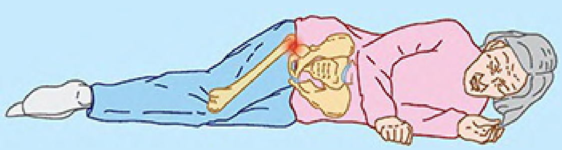


FIGURE B7.30. **Fracture of femoral neck.**

Fractures of the femoral neck cause lateral rotation of the lower limb. Fractures of the femoral neck often disrupt the blood supply to the head of the femur. Most of the blood to the head and neck of the femur is supplied by the medial circumflex femoral artery (Fig. 7.86). The retinacular arteries arising from this artery are often torn when the femoral neck

is fractured or the hip joint is dislocated. Following some femoral neck fractures, the artery to the ligament of the femoral head may be the only remaining source of blood to the proximal fragment. This artery is frequently inadequate for maintaining the femoral head; consequently, the fragment may undergo aseptic vascular necrosis (tissue death).

Surgical Hip Replacement

Although the hip joint is strong and stable, it is subject to severe traumatic injury and degenerative disease. Osteoarthritis of the hip joint, characterized by pain, edema, limitation of motion, and erosion of articular cartilage, is a common cause of disability (Fig. B7.31A). During hip replacement, a metal prosthesis anchored to the person's femur by bone cement replaces the femoral head and neck (Fig. B7.31B). A plastic socket cemented to the hip bone replaces the acetabulum.

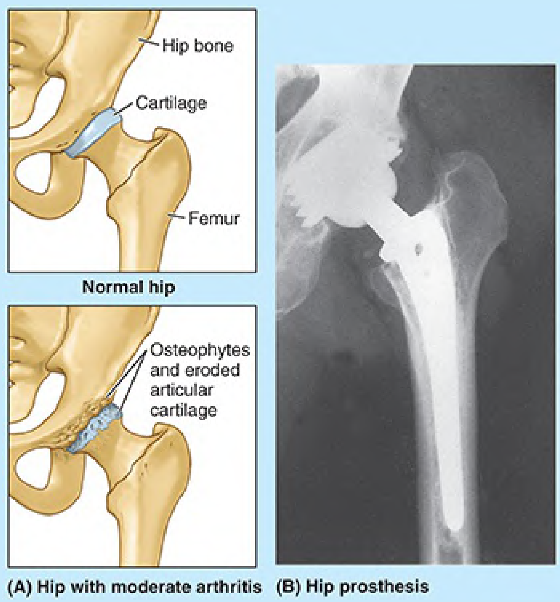


FIGURE B7.31. **Necrosis of femoral head.**

Necrosis of Femoral Head in Children

In children, traumatic dislocations of the hip joint disrupt the artery to the head of the femur. Fractures that result in separation of the superior femoral epiphysis (the growth plate between the femoral head and neck) are also likely to result in an inadequate blood supply to the femoral head and in posttraumatic avascular necrosis of the head of the femur. As a result, incongruity of the joint surfaces develops, and growth at the epiphysis is retarded. Such conditions, most common in children 3–9 years of age, produce hip pain that may radiate to the knee.

Dislocation of Hip Joint

Congenital dislocation of the hip joint is common, occurring in approximately 1.5 per 1 neonates; it is bilateral in approximately half the cases. Girls are affected at least eight times more often than boys (Salter, 1999). Dislocation occurs when the femoral head is not properly located in the acetabulum. Inability to abduct the thigh is characteristic of congenital dislocation. In addition, the affected limb appears (and functions as if it is) shorter because the dislocated femoral head is more superior than on the normal side, resulting in a positive Trendelenburg sign (hip appears to drop on one side during walking). Approximately 25% of all cases of arthritis of the hip in adults are the direct result of residual defects from congenital dislocation of the hip.

Acquired dislocation of the hip joint is uncommon because this articulation is so strong and stable. Nevertheless, dislocation may occur during an automobile accident when the hip is flexed, adducted, and medially rotated, the usual position of the lower limb when a person is riding in a car.

Posterior dislocations of the hip joint are most common. A head-on collision that causes the knee to strike the dashboard may dislocate the hip when the femoral head is forced out of the acetabulum (Fig. B7.32A). The joint capsule ruptures inferiorly and posteriorly, allowing the femoral head to pass through the tear in the capsule, and over the posterior margin of the acetabulum onto the lateral surface of the ilium, shortening and medial rotating the limb (Fig. B7.32B).

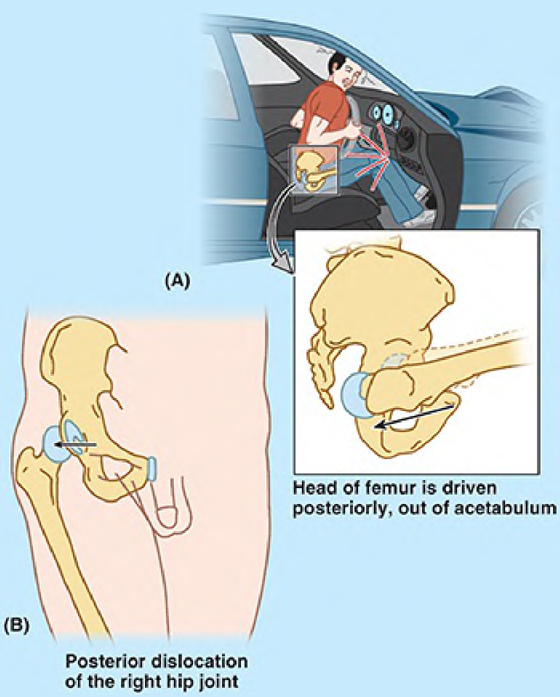


FIGURE B7.32. Dislocation of hip joint.

Because of the close relationship of the sciatic nerve to the hip joint (see Fig. 7.84A), it may be injured (stretched and/or compressed) during posterior dislocations or fracture–dislocations of the hip joint. This kind of injury may result in paralysis of the hamstrings

and muscles distal to the knee supplied by the sciatic nerve. Sensory changes may also occur in the skin over the posterolateral aspects of the leg and over much of the foot because of injury to sensory branches of the sciatic nerve.

Anterior dislocation of the hip joint results from a violent injury that forces the hip into extension, abduction, and lateral rotation (e.g., catching a ski tip when snow skiing). In these cases, the femoral head is inferior to the acetabulum. Often, the acetabular margin fractures, producing a fracture–dislocation of the hip joint. When the femoral head dislocates, it usually carries the acetabular bone fragment and acetabular labrum with it. These injuries also occur with posterior dislocations.

Genu Valgum and Genu Varum

The femur is placed diagonally within the thigh, whereas the tibia is almost vertical within the leg, creating an angle at the knee between the long axes of the bones (Fig. B7.33A). The angle between the two bones, referred to clinically as the **Q-angle**, is assessed by drawing a line from the ASIS to the middle of the patella and extrapolating a second (vertical) line passing through the middle of the patella and tibial tuberosity (see Fig. 7.88). The Q-angle is typically greater in adult females, owing to their wider pelves. When normal, the angle of the femur within the thigh places the middle of the knee joint directly inferior to the head of the femur when standing, centering the weight-bearing line in the intercondylar region of the knee (Fig. B7.33A).

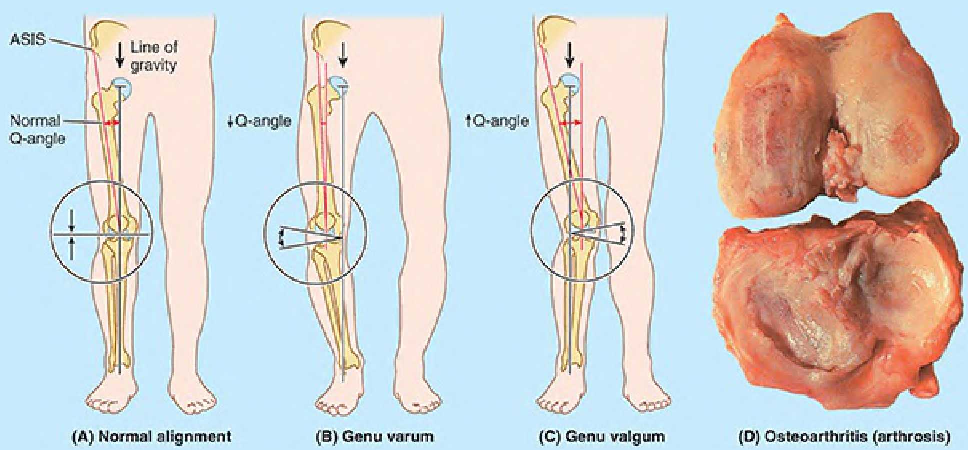


FIGURE B7.33. Genu varum and valgum.

A medial angulation of the leg in relation to the thigh, in which the femur is abnormally vertical and the Q-angle is small, is a deformity called genu varum (bowleg) that causes unequal weight bearing: The line of weight bearing falls medial to the center of the knee (Fig. B7.33B). Excess pressure is placed on the medial aspect of the knee joint, which results in arthrosis (destruction of knee cartilages), and the fibular collateral ligament is overstressed (Fig. B7.33D). A lateral angulation of the leg (large Q-angle, >17°) in relation to the thigh (exaggeration of the knee angle) is called genu valgum (knock-knee) (Fig.

B7.33C). Because of the exaggerated knee angle in genu valgum, the weight-bearing line falls lateral to the center of the knee. Consequently, the tibial collateral ligament is overstretched, and there is excess stress on the lateral meniscus and cartilages of the lateral femoral and tibial condyles. The patella, normally pulled laterally by the tendon of the vastus lateralis, is pulled even farther laterally when the leg is extended in the presence of genu valgum so that its articulation with the femur is abnormal.

Children commonly appear bowlegged for 1–2 years after starting to walk, and knock-knees are frequently observed in children 2–4 years of age. Persistence of these abnormal knee angles in late childhood usually means congenital deformities exist that may require correction. Any irregularity of a joint eventually leads to wear and tear (arthrosis) of the articular cartilages and degenerative joint changes (osteoarthritis [arthrosis]) (Fig. B7.33D).

Patellar Dislocation

When the patella is dislocated, it nearly always dislocates laterally. Patellar dislocation is more common in women, presumably because of their greater Q-angle, which, in addition to representing the oblique placement of the femur relative to the tibia, represents the angle of pull of the quadriceps relative to the axis of the patella and tibia (the term Q-angle was actually coined in reference to the angle of pull of the quadriceps). The tendency toward lateral dislocation is normally counterbalanced by the medial, more horizontal pull of the powerful vastus medialis. In addition, the more anterior projection of the lateral femoral condyle and deeper slope for the larger lateral patellar facet provide a mechanical deterrent to lateral dislocation. An imbalance of the lateral pull and the mechanisms resisting it result in abnormal tracking of the patella within the patellar groove and chronic patellar pain, even if actual dislocation does not occur.

Patellofemoral Syndrome

Pain deep to the patella often results from excessive running, especially downhill; hence, this type of pain is often called “runner’s knee.” The pain results from repetitive microtrauma caused by abnormal tracking of the patella relative to the patellar surface of the femur, a condition known as the patellofemoral syndrome. This syndrome may also result from a direct blow to the patella and from osteoarthritis of the patellofemoral compartment (degenerative wear and tear of articular cartilages). In some cases, strengthening of the vastus medialis corrects patellofemoral dysfunction. This muscle tends to prevent lateral dislocation of the patella resulting from the Q-angle because the vastus medialis attaches to and pulls on the medial border of the patella. Hence, weakness of the vastus medialis predisposes the individual to the patellofemoral dysfunction and patellar dislocation.

Knee Joint Injuries

Knee joint injuries are common because the knee is a low-placed, mobile, weight-bearing joint, serving as a fulcrum between two long levers (thigh and leg). Its stability depends almost entirely on its associated ligaments and surrounding muscles.

The knee joint is essential for everyday activities such as standing, walking, and climbing stairs. It is also a main joint for sports that involve running, jumping, kicking, and changing directions. To perform these activities, the knee joint must be mobile; however, this mobility makes it susceptible to injuries.

The most common knee injury in contact sports is ligament sprain, which occurs when the foot is fixed in the ground (Fig. B7.34A). If a force is applied against the knee when the foot cannot move, ligament injuries are likely to occur. The tibial and fibular collateral ligaments (TCL and FCL) are tightly stretched when the leg is extended, normally preventing disruption of the sides of the knee joint.

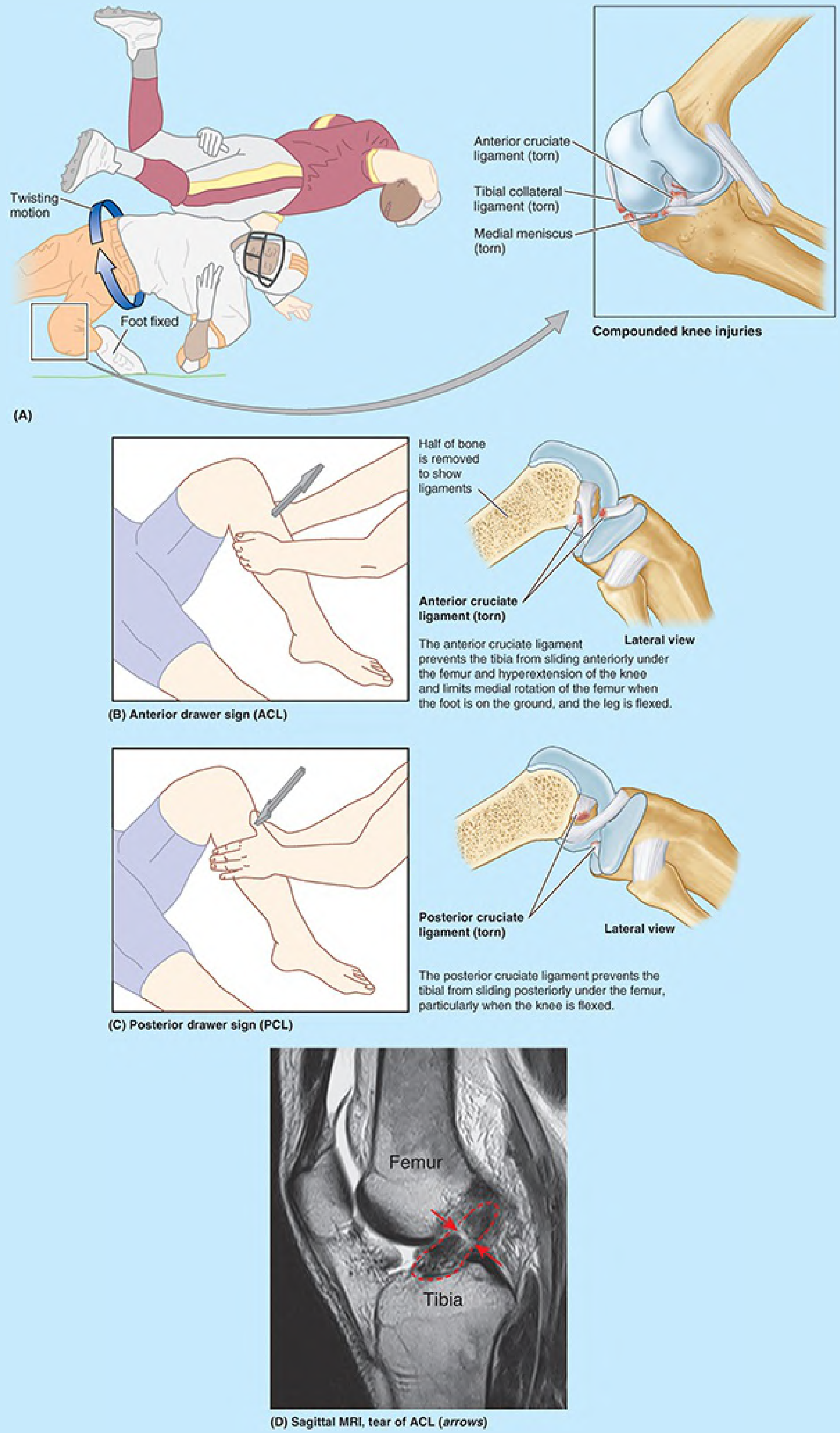


FIGURE B7.34. Knee joint injuries.

The firm attachment of the TCL to the medial meniscus is of considerable clinical significance because tearing of this ligament frequently results in concomitant tearing of the medial meniscus. The injury is frequently caused by a blow to the lateral side of the extended knee or excessive lateral twisting of the flexed knee that disrupts the TCL and concomitantly tears and/or detaches the medial meniscus from the joint capsule (Fig. B7.34A). This injury is common in athletes who twist their flexed knees while running (e.g., in basketball, the various forms of football, and volleyball). The ACL, which serves as a pivot for rotatory movements of the knee, and is taut during flexion, may also tear subsequent to the rupture of the TCL, creating an “unhappy triad” of knee injuries.

Hyperextension and severe force directed anteriorly against the femur with the knee semiflexed (e.g., a cross-body block in football) may tear the ACL. ACL rupture is also a common knee injury in skiing accidents. This injury causes the free tibia to slide anteriorly under the fixed femur, known as the anterior drawer sign (Fig. B7.34B); it is tested clinically via the Lachman test. The ACL may tear away from the femur or tibia; however, tears commonly occur in the midportion of the ligament.

Although strong, PCL ruptures may occur when a player lands on the tibial tuberosity with the knee flexed (e.g., when knocked to the floor in basketball). PCL ruptures usually occur in conjunction with tibial or fibular ligament tears. These injuries can also occur in head-on collisions when seat belts are not worn and the proximal end of the tibia strikes the dashboard. PCL ruptures allow the free tibia to slide posteriorly under the fixed femur, known as the posterior drawer sign (Fig. B7.34C).

Meniscal tears usually involve the medial meniscus. The lateral meniscus does not usually tear because of its mobility. Pain on lateral rotation of the tibia on the femur indicates injury of the lateral meniscus (Fig. B7.35A), whereas pain on medial rotation of the tibia on the femur indicates injury of the medial meniscus (Fig. B7.35B). Most meniscal tears occur in conjunction with TCL or ACL tears. Peripheral meniscal tears can often be repaired, or they may heal on their own because of the generous blood supply to this area. If tears do not heal or cannot be repaired, the meniscus is removed (e.g., by arthroscopic surgery). Knee joints from which a meniscus has been removed suffer no loss of mobility; however, the knee may be less stable and the tibial plateaus often undergo inflammatory reactions (Fig. B7.33D).

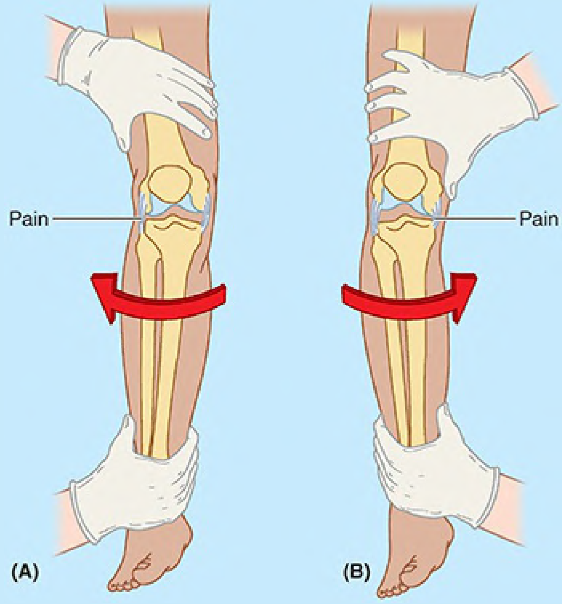
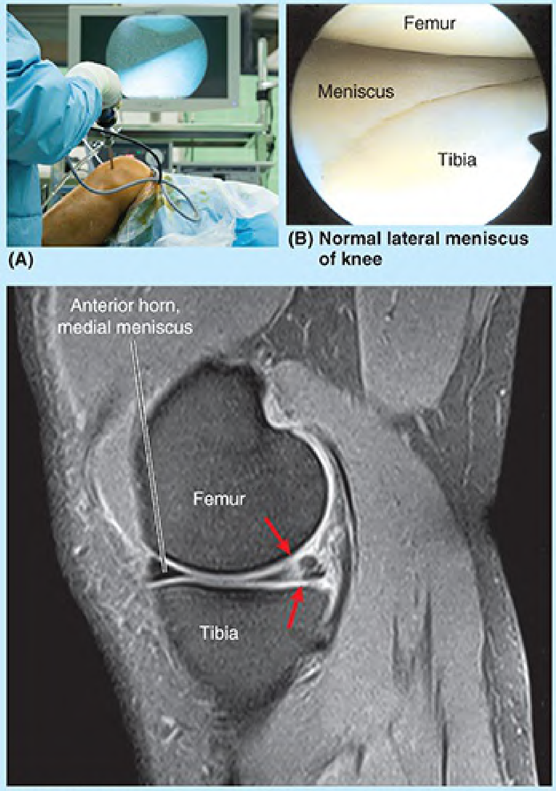


FIGURE B7.35. **Locating a meniscal tear.**

Arthroscopy of Knee Joint

Arthroscopy is an endoscopic examination that allows visualization of the interior of the knee joint cavity with minimal disruption of tissue (Fig. B7.36). The arthroscope and one (or more) additional cannula(e) are inserted through tiny incisions, known as portals. The second cannula is for passage of specialized tools (e.g., manipulative probes or forceps) or equipment for trimming, shaping, or removing damaged tissue. This technique allows removal of torn menisci, loose bodies in the joint (such as bone chips), and débridement (the excision of devitalized articular cartilaginous material) in certain advanced cases of arthritis. Ligament repair or replacement may also be performed using an arthroscope. Although general anesthesia is usually preferable, knee arthroscopy can be performed using local or regional anesthesia. During arthroscopy, the articular cavity of the knee must be treated essentially as two separate (medial and lateral) femorotibial articulations, owing to the imposition of the synovial fold around the cruciate ligaments.



(A)

(B) Normal lateral meniscus of knee

(C) Sagittal MRI, tear of posterior horn of medial meniscus (*arrows*)

FIGURE B7.36. Arthroscopy of knee joint.

Aspiration of Knee Joint

Fractures of the distal end of the femur, or lacerations of the anterior thigh, may involve the suprapatellar bursa and result in infection of the knee joint. When the knee joint is infected and inflamed, the amount of synovial fluid may increase. Joint effusions, the escape of fluid from blood or lymphatic vessels, results in increased amounts of fluid in the joint cavity. Because the suprapatellar bursa communicates freely with the synovial cavity of the knee joint, fullness of the thigh in the region of the suprapatellar bursa may indicate increased synovial fluid. This bursa can be aspirated to remove the fluid for examination. Direct aspiration of the knee joint is usually performed with the patient sitting on a table with the knee flexed. The joint is approached laterally, using three bony points as landmarks for needle insertion: the anterolateral tibial (Gerdy) tubercle, the lateral epicondyle of the femur, and the apex of the patella. In addition to being the route for aspiration of serous and sanguineous (bloody) fluid, this triangular area also lends itself to drug injection for treating pathology of the knee joint.

Bursitis in Knee Region

Prepatellar bursitis is caused by excessive and repeated friction between the skin and the

patella, for example, jobs associated with kneeling. However, the bursa may also be injured by compressive forces resulting from a direct blow or from falling on the flexed knee (Fig. B7.37). If the inflammation is chronic, the bursa becomes distended with fluid and forms a swelling anterior to the knee.

FIGURE B7.37. **Prepatellar bursitis.**

Subcutaneous infrapatellar bursitis is caused by excessive friction between the skin and the tibial tuberosity; the edema occurs over the proximal end of the tibia. This condition was formerly called "clergyman's knee" because of frequent genuflecting (L. genu, knee); however, it occurs more commonly in roofers and floor tilers if they do not wear knee pads. Deep infrapatellar bursitis results in edema between the patellar ligament and the tibia, superior to the tibial tuberosity. The inflammation is usually caused by overuse and subsequent friction between the patellar tendon and the structures posterior to it, the infrapatellar fat pad and tibia (Anderson & Parr, 2011). Enlargement of the deep infrapatellar bursa obliterates the dimples normally occurring on each side of the patellar ligament when the leg is extended (see Fig. 7.108A).

Abrasions or penetrating wounds may result in suprapatellar bursitis, an infection caused by bacteria entering the suprapatellar bursa from the torn skin (see Fig. 7.98A). The infection may spread to the cavity of the knee joint, causing localized redness and enlarged popliteal and inguinal lymph nodes.

Popliteal Cysts

Popliteal cysts (Baker cysts) are abnormal fluid-filled sacs of synovial membrane in the region of the popliteal fossa. A popliteal cyst is almost always a complication of chronic knee joint effusion. The cyst may be a herniation of the gastrocnemius or semimembranosus bursa through the fibrous layer of the joint capsule into the popliteal fossa, communicating with the synovial cavity of the knee joint by a narrow stalk (Fig. B7.38). Synovial fluid may also escape from the knee joint (synovial effusion) or a bursa around the knee and collect in the popliteal fossa. Here, it forms a new synovial-lined sac or popliteal cyst. Popliteal cysts are common in children but seldom cause symptoms. In adults, popliteal cysts can be large, extending as far as the midcalf, and may interfere with

knee movements.

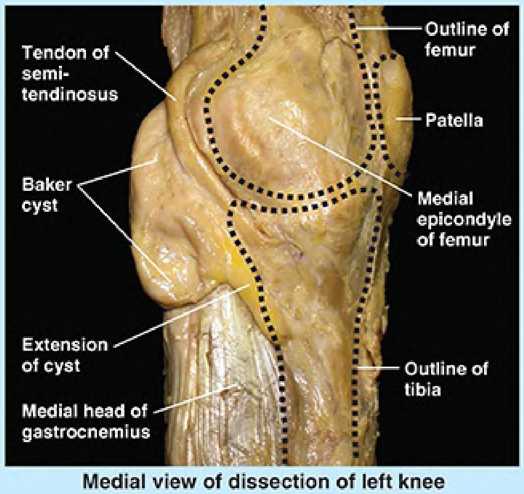
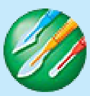


FIGURE B7.38. **Popliteal (Baker) cyst.**

Knee Replacement



If a person's knee is diseased, resulting from osteoarthritis, for example, an artificial knee joint may be inserted (total knee replacement arthroplasty) (Fig. B7.39). The artificial knee joint consists of plastic and metal components that are cemented to the femoral and tibial bone ends after removal of the defective areas. The combination of metal and plastic mimics the smoothness of cartilage on cartilage and produces good results in "low-demand" people who have a relatively sedentary life. In "high-demand" people who are active in sports, the bone–cement junctions may break down, and the artificial knee components may loosen; however, improvements in bioengineering and surgical technique have provided better results.

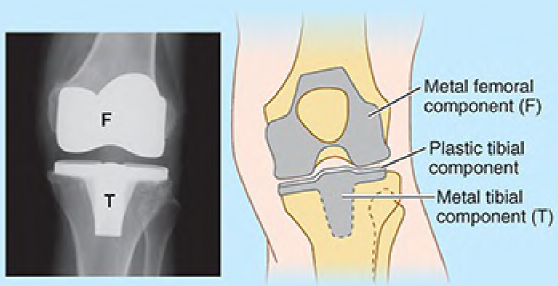


FIGURE B7.39. **Knee replacement.**

Ankle Injuries

The ankle is the most frequently injured major joint in the body. Ankle sprains (torn fibers of ligaments) are most common. A sprained ankle is nearly always an inversion injury, involving twisting of the weight-bearing plantarflexed foot. The person steps on an uneven surface and the foot is forcibly inverted or lands on an inverted

foot from a vertical jump. Lateral ligament sprains occur in running and jumping sports, particularly basketball (70–80% of players have had at least one sprained ankle). The lateral ligament is injured because it is much weaker than the medial ligament and is the ligament that resists inversion at the talocrural joint. The anterior talofibular ligament—part of the lateral ligament—is most vulnerable and most commonly torn during ankle sprains, either partially or completely, resulting in instability of the ankle joint (Fig. B7.40). The calcaneofibular ligament may also be torn. In severe sprains, the lateral malleolus of the fibula may also be fractured. Shearing injuries fracture the lateral malleolus at or superior to the ankle joint. Avulsion fractures break the malleolus inferior to the ankle joint; a fragment of bone is pulled off by the attached ligament(s).

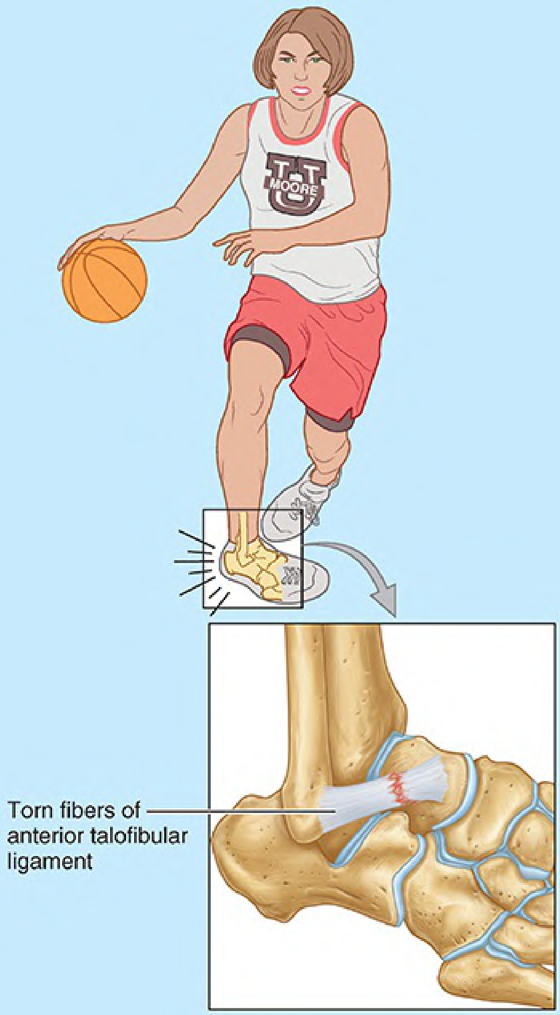


FIGURE B7.40. Anterior talofibular ligament injury.

A Pott fracture–dislocation of the ankle occurs when the foot is forcibly everted (Fig. B7.41). This action pulls on the extremely strong medial ligament, often avulsing the medial malleolus. The talus then moves laterally, shearing off the lateral malleolus or, more commonly, breaking the fibula superior to the tibiofibular syndesmosis. If the tibia is

carried anteriorly, the posterior margin of the distal end of the tibia is also sheared off by the talus, producing a “trimalleolar fracture.” In applying this term to this injury, the entire distal end of the tibia is erroneously considered to be a “malleolus.”

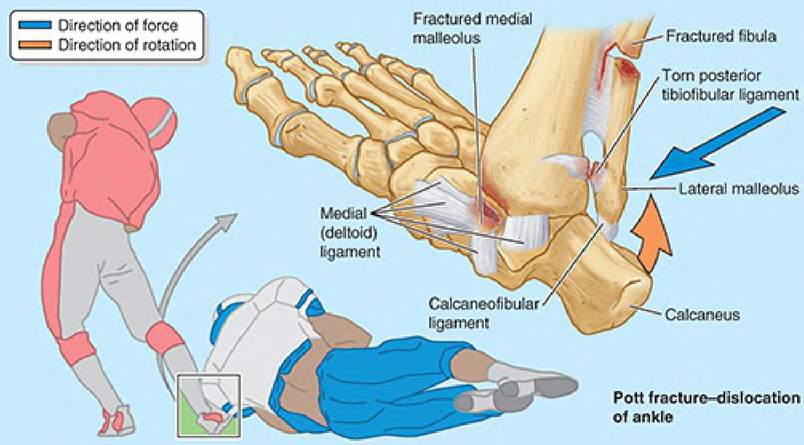


FIGURE B7.41. **Ankle injuries.**

Tibial Nerve Entrapment

The tibial nerve leaves the posterior compartment of the leg by passing deep to the flexor retinaculum in the interval between the medial malleolus and the calcaneus (see Figs. 7.65B and 7.75A). Entrapment and compression of the tibial nerve (tarsal tunnel syndrome) occur when there is edema and tightness in the ankle involving the synovial sheaths of the tendons of muscles in the posterior compartment of the leg. The area involved is from the medial malleolus to the calcaneus, and the heel pain results from compression of the tibial nerve by the flexor retinaculum.

Hallux Valgus

Hallux valgus is a foot deformity caused by pressure from footwear and degenerative joint disease; it is characterized by lateral deviation of the great toe (Fig. B7.42). The L in valgus indicates lateral deviation. In some people, the painful deviation is so large that the great toe overlaps the 2nd toe (Fig. B7.42A), and there is a decrease in the medial longitudinal arch. Such deviation occurs especially in females, and its frequency increases with age. These individuals cannot move their 1st digit away from their 2nd digit because the sesamoids under the head of the 1st metatarsal are usually displaced and lie in the space between the heads of the 1st and 2nd metatarsals (Fig. B7.42B). The 1st metatarsal shifts medially and the sesamoids shift laterally. Often, the surrounding tissues swell and the resultant pressure and friction against the shoe cause a subcutaneous bursa to form; when tender and inflamed, the bursa is called a bunion (Fig. B7.42A). Often, hard corns (inflamed areas of thick skin) also form over the proximal interphalangeal joints, especially of the little toe.

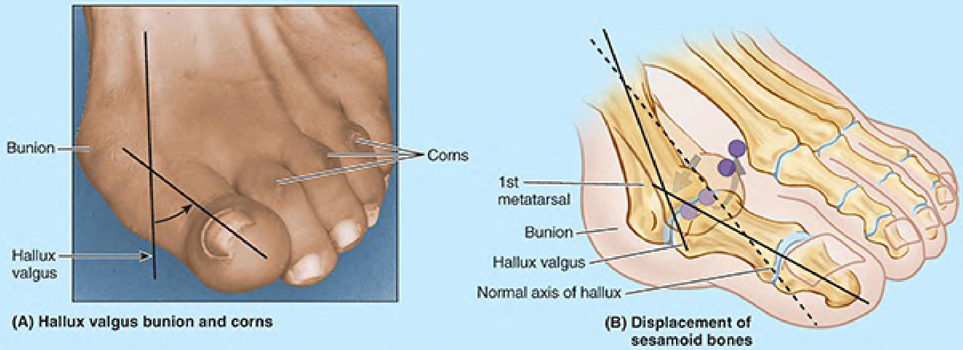


FIGURE B7.42. **Hallux valgus and corns.**

Hammer Toe

Hammer toe is a foot deformity in which the proximal phalanx is permanently and markedly dorsiflexed (hyperextended) at the metatarsophalangeal joint and the middle phalanx strongly plantarflexed at the proximal interphalangeal joint. The distal phalanx of the digit is often also hyperextended. This gives the digit (usually the 2nd) a hammer-like appearance (Fig. B7.43A). This deformity of one or more toes may result from weakness of the lumbrical and interosseous muscles, which flex the metatarsophalangeal joints and extend the interphalangeal joints. A callosity or callus, hard thickening of the keratin layer of the skin, often develops where the dorsal surface of the toe repeatedly rubs on the shoe.

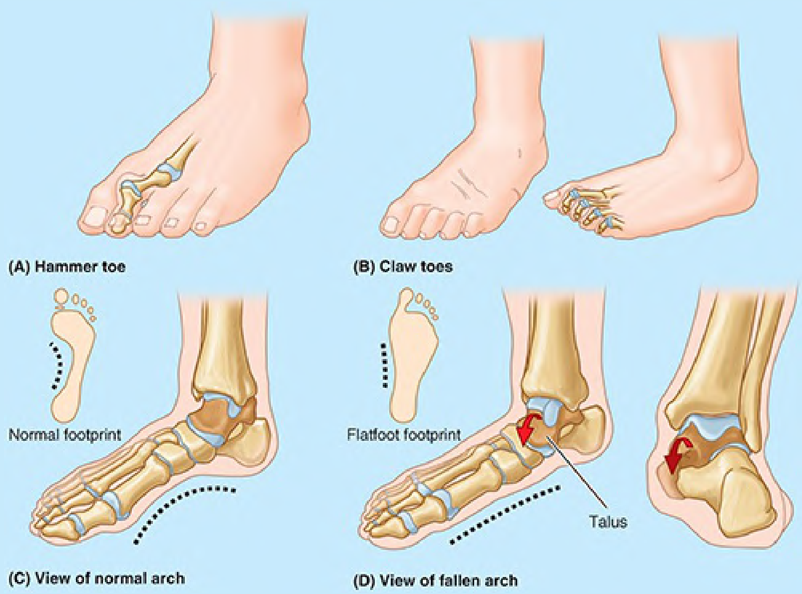


FIGURE B7.43. **Foot pathology.**

Claw Toes

Claw toes are characterized by hyperextension of the metatarsophalangeal joints and flexion

of the distal interphalangeal joints (Fig. B7.43B). Usually, the lateral four toes are involved. Callosities or corns develop on the dorsal surfaces of the toes because of pressure of the shoe. They may also form on the plantar surfaces of the metatarsal heads and the toe tips because they bear extra weight when claw toes are present.

Pes Planus (Flat Feet)

The flat appearance of the sole of the foot before age 3 is normal; it results from the thick subcutaneous fat pad in the sole. As children get older, the fat is lost, and a normal medial longitudinal arch becomes visible (Fig. B7.43C). Flat feet can either be flexible (flat, lacking a medial arch, when weight bearing but normal in appearance when not bearing weight [Fig. B7.43D]) or rigid (flat even when not bearing weight). The more common flexible flat feet result from loose or degenerated intrinsic ligaments (inadequate passive arch support). Flexible flat feet are common in childhood but usually resolve with age as the ligaments grow and mature. The condition occasionally persists into adulthood and may or may not be symptomatic.

Rigid flat feet with a history that goes back to childhood are likely to result from a bone deformity (such as a fusion of adjacent tarsal bones). Acquired flat feet ("fallen arches") are likely to be secondary to dysfunction of the tibialis posterior (dynamic arch support) owing to trauma, degeneration with age, or denervation. In the absence of normal passive or dynamic support, the plantar calcaneonavicular ligament fails to support the head of the talus. Consequently, the head of the talus displaces inferomedially and becomes prominent (Fig. B7.43D, red arrows). As a result, some flattening of the medial part of the longitudinal arch occurs, along with lateral deviation of the forefoot. Flat feet are common in older people, particularly if they undertake much unaccustomed standing or gain weight rapidly, adding stress on the muscles and increasing the strain on the ligaments supporting the arches.

Clubfoot (Talipes Equinovarus)

Clubfoot refers to a foot that is twisted out of position. Of the several types, all are congenital (present at birth). Talipes equinovarus, the common type (2 per 1,000 neonates), involves the subtalar joint; boys are affected twice as often as girls. The foot is inverted, the ankle is plantarflexed, and the forefoot is adducted (turned toward the midline in an abnormal manner) (Fig. B7.44A). The foot assumes the position of a horse's hoof, hence the prefix "equino" (L. equinus, horse). In half of those affected, both feet are malformed. A person with an uncorrected clubfoot cannot put the heel and sole flat and must bear the weight on the lateral surface of the forefoot. Consequently, walking is painful. The main abnormality is shortness and tightness of the muscles, tendons, ligaments, and joint capsules on the medial side and posterior aspect of the foot and ankle (Fig. B7.44B).

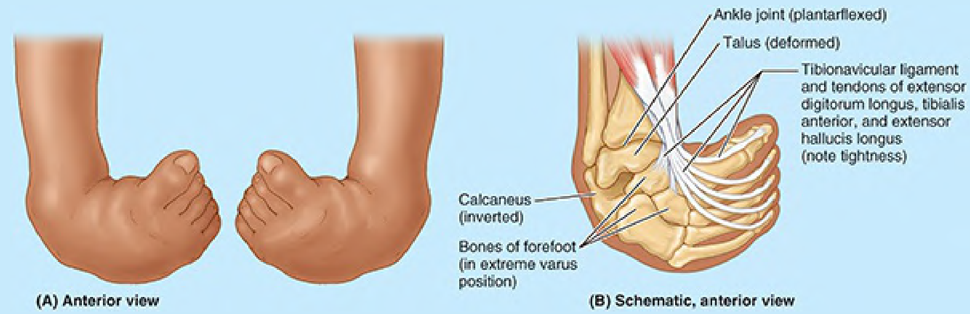


FIGURE B7.44. Clubfoot.

The Bottom Line: Joints of Lower Limb

Hip joint: The hip joint is the strongest and most stable joint. ■ Its stability results from (1) the mechanical strength of its ball and (deep) socket construction, allowing extensive articular surface contact, (2) its strong joint capsule, and (3) its many surrounding muscles. ■ However, it remains vulnerable, especially in older age, because of the angle of the femoral neck (inclination) and close association of the blood supply of the femoral head to the neck. Thus, fractures result in avascular necrosis of the femoral head. ■ Major movements of the hip joint include flexion and extension, possible over a wide range; medial and lateral rotation with abduction are part of every step of normal, bipedal walking.

Knee joint: The knee is a hinge joint with a wide range of motion (primarily flexion and extension, with rotation increasingly possible with flexion). ■ It is our most vulnerable joint, owing to its incongruous articular surfaces and the mechanical disadvantage resulting from bearing the body's weight plus momentum while serving as a fulcrum between two long levers. ■ Compensation is attempted by several features, including (1) strong intrinsic, extracapsular, and intracapsular ligaments; (2) splinting by many surrounding tendons (including the iliotibial tract); and (3) menisci that fill the spatial void, providing mobile articular surfaces. ■ Of particular clinical importance are (1) collateral ligaments that are taut during (and limit) extension and are relaxed during flexion, allowing rotation for which they serve as check ligaments; (2) cruciate ligaments that maintain the joint during flexion, providing the pivot for rotation; and (3) the medial meniscus that is attached to the tibial collateral ligament and is frequently injured because of this attachment.

Tibiofibular joints: The tibiofibular joints include a proximal synovial joint, an interosseous membrane, and a distal tibiofibular syndesmosis, consisting of anterior, interosseous, and posterior tibiofibular ligaments. ■ Together, these joints make up a compensatory system that allows a slight upward movement of the fibula owing to forced

transverse expansion of the malleolar mortise (deep square socket) during maximal dorsiflexion of the ankle. ■ All fibrous tibiofibular connections run downward from tibia to fibula, allowing this slight upward movement while strongly resisting the downward pull applied to the fibula by the contraction of eight of the nine muscles attached to it.

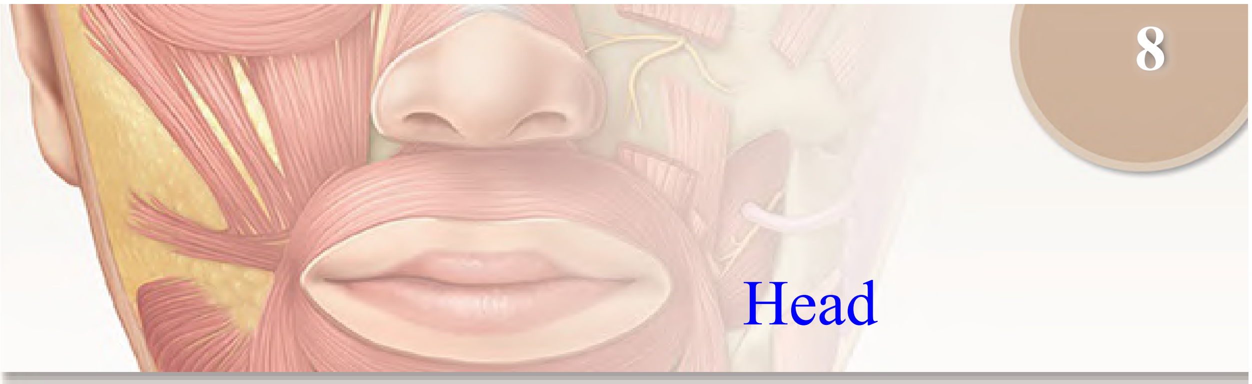
Ankle joint: The ankle (talocrural) joint is composed of a superior mortise, formed by the weight-bearing inferior surface of the tibia and the two malleoli, which receive the trochlea of the talus. ■ The ankle joint is maintained medially by a strong, medial (deltoid) ligament and a much weaker lateral ligament. ■ The lateral ligament (specifically its anterior talofibular ligament component) is the most frequently injured ligament of the body. ■ Injury occurs primarily by inadvertent inversion of the plantarflexed, weight-bearing foot. ■ About 70° of dorsiflexion and plantarflexion is possible at the ankle joint, in addition to which small amounts of wobble occur in the less stable plantarflexed position.

Joints of foot: Functionally, there are three compound joints in the foot: (1) the clinical subtalar joint between the talus and the calcaneus, where inversion and eversion occur about an oblique axis; (2) the transverse tarsal joint, where the midfoot and forefoot rotate as a unit on the hindfoot around a longitudinal axis, augmenting inversion and eversion; and (3) the remaining joints of the foot, which allow the pedal platform (foot) to form dynamic longitudinal and transverse arches. ■ The arches provide the resilience necessary for walking, running, and jumping and are maintained by four layers of passive, fibrous support, plus the dynamic support provided by the intrinsic muscles of the foot and the long fibular, tibial, and flexor tendons.

---

[1]Because of its anterior position, the tensor fasciae latae is often studied with the anterior thigh muscles for convenience (i.e., when the cadaver is supine); however, it is actually part of the gluteal group and is included with that group in this book.

[2]There are entire texts dedicated to the testing of muscles. We are providing only a few important examples useful to primary care health professionals.



8

Head

CLINICAL BOX KEY

Anatomical Variations | Diagnostic Procedures | Life Cycle | Surgical Procedures | Trauma | Pathology

OVERVIEW OF HEAD

The **head** is the superior part of the body that is attached to the trunk by the neck. It is the control and communications center as well as the "loading dock" for the body. The head houses the brain; therefore, it is the site of our consciousness: ideas, creativity, imagination, responses, decision making, and memory. The head also includes special sensory receivers (eyes, ears, mouth, and nose), broadcast devices for voice and expression, and portals for the intake of fuel (food), water, and oxygen and the exhaust of carbon dioxide.

The head consists of the brain and its protective coverings (cranial vault and meninges), the ears, and the face. The face includes openings and passageways, with lubricating glands and valves (seals) to close some of them, the masticatory (chewing) devices, and the orbits that house the visual apparatus. The face also provides our identity as individuals. Disease, malformation, and trauma of structures in the head form the bases of many specialties, including dentistry, maxillofacial surgery, neurology, neuroradiology, neurosurgery, ophthalmology, oral surgery, otology, rhinology, and psychiatry.

CRANIUM

The **cranium** (skull) is the skeleton of the head (Fig. 8.1A). It is composed of 22 named bones. A series of bones form its two parts, the neurocranium and viscerocranium (Fig. 8.1B). The **neurocranium** is the bony case of the brain and its membranous coverings, the cranial meninges. It also contains proximal parts of the cranial nerves and the vasculature of the brain. The neurocranium in adults is formed by a series of eight bones: four singular bones centered on the midline (frontal, ethmoidal, sphenoidal, and occipital), and two sets of bones occurring as bilateral pairs (temporal and parietal) (Figs. 8.1A, 8.2A, and 8.3).

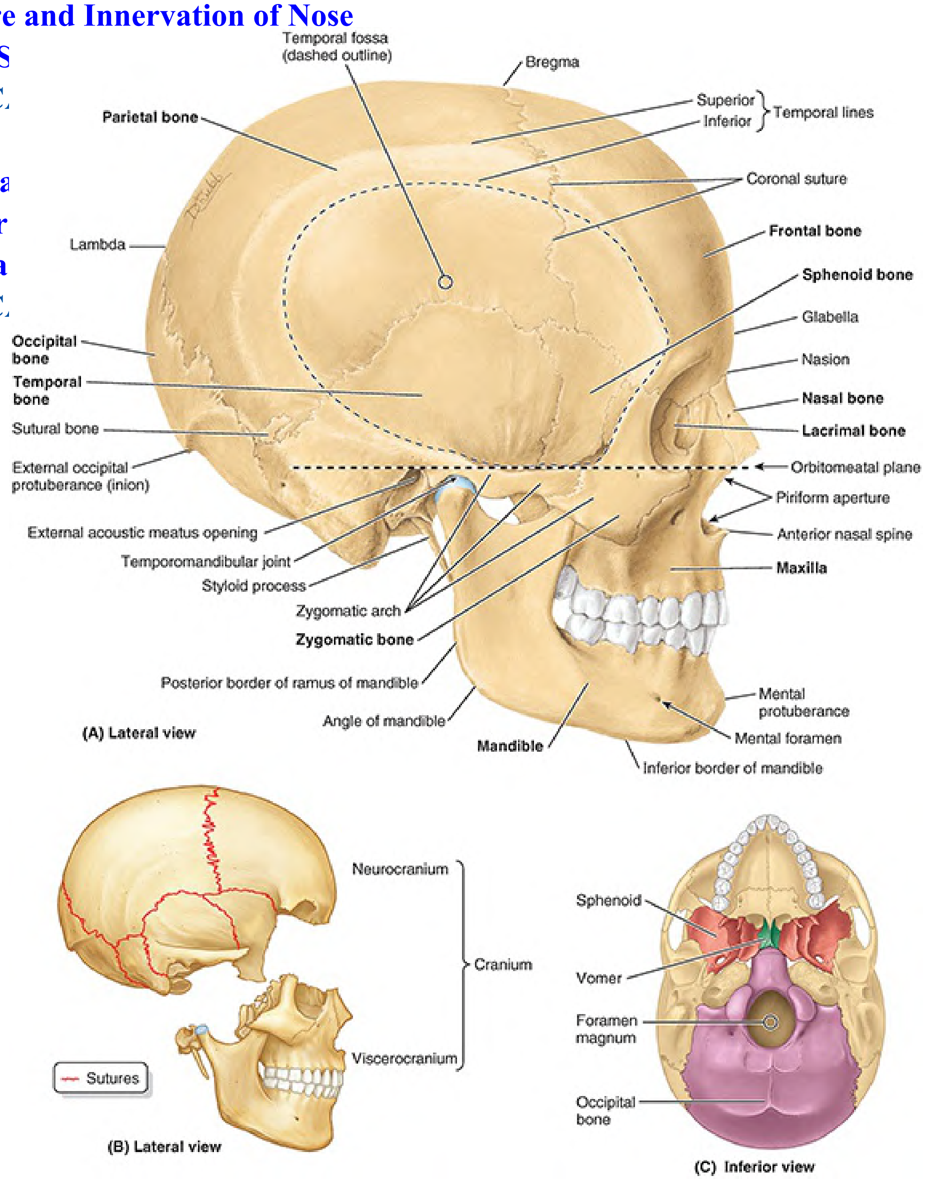


FIGURE 8.1. **Adult cranium I: lateral and inferior aspects. A.** Features. In the anatomical position, the inferior margin of the orbit and the superior margin of the external acoustic meatus lie in the same horizontal orbitomeatal (Frankfort horizontal) plane. **B.** Neurocranium and viscerocranium. From the lateral aspect, it is apparent that the volume of the neurocranium, housing the brain, is approximately double that of the viscerocranium. **C.** Location of sphenoid and occipital bones in cranial base. The spinal cord is continuous with the brain through the foramen magnum, the large opening in the basal part of the occipital bone.

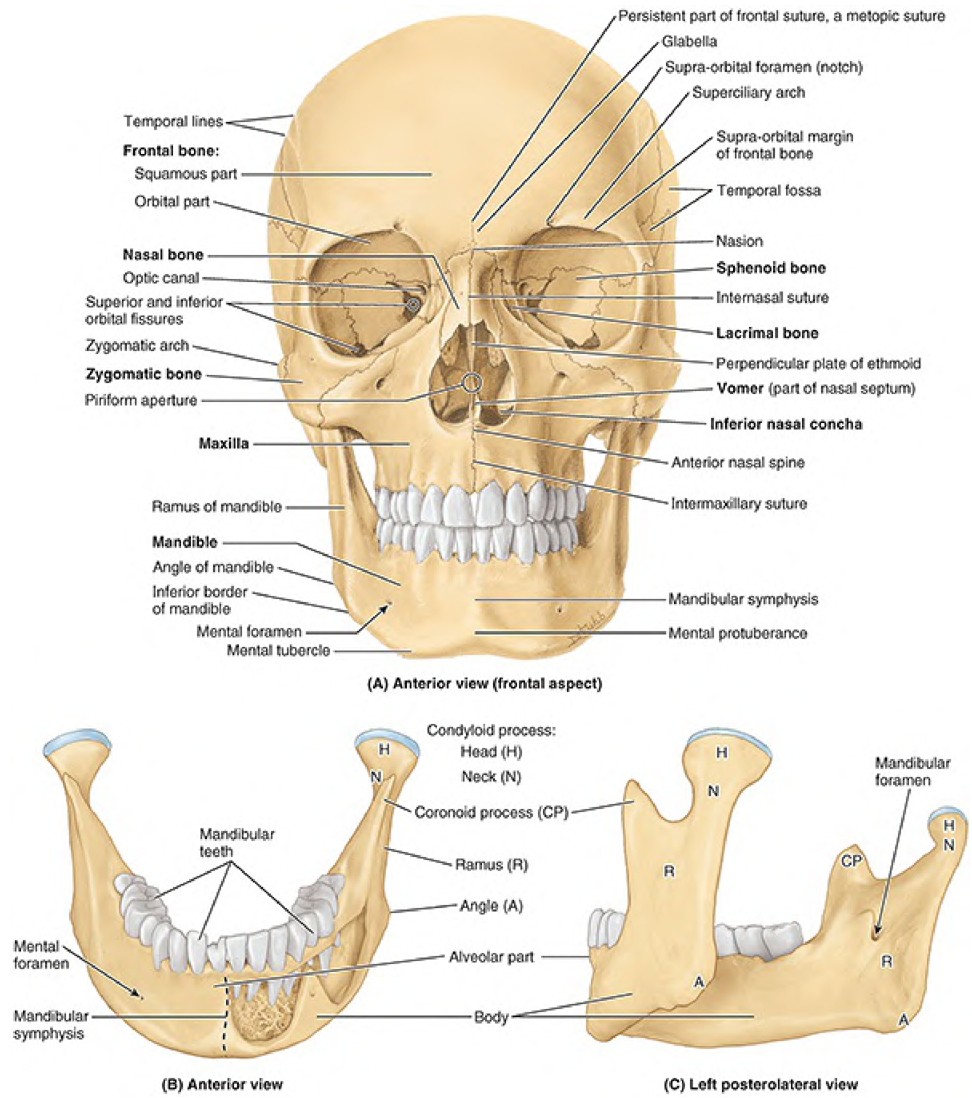


FIGURE 8.2. Adult cranium II: facial (anterior) aspect and mandible. A. Features. The viscerocranium, housing the optical apparatus, nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, and oral cavity, dominates the facial aspect of the cranium. **B.** Anterior aspect of mandible. **C.** Posterolateral aspect of mandible. The mandible is a major component of the viscerocranium, articulating with the remainder of the cranium via the temporomandibular joint. The broad ramus and coronoid process provide attachment for powerful muscles of mastication (chewing).

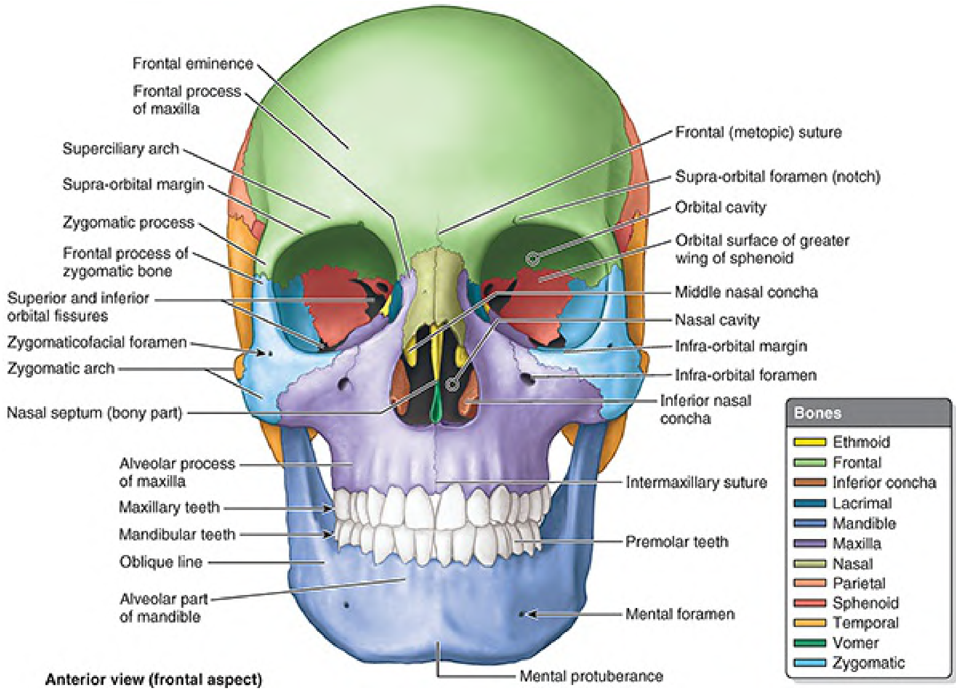


FIGURE 8.3. Adult cranium III: bones of facial (anterior) aspect. Bones are color coded. The supra-orbital notch, the infra-orbital foramen, and the mental foramen, giving passage to major sensory nerves of the face, are approximately in a vertical line.

The neurocranium has a dome-like roof, the **calvaria** (skullcap), and a floor or **cranial base** (**basicranium**). The bones forming the calvaria are primarily flat bones (frontal, parietal, and occipital; see Fig. 8.8A) formed by intramembranous ossification of head mesenchyme from the neural crest. These "flat bones" and flat portions of the bones forming the neurocranium are actually curved, with convex external and concave internal surfaces. The bones contributing to the cranial base are primarily irregular bones with substantial flat portions (sphenoidal and temporal) formed by endochondral ossification of cartilage (chondrocranium) or from more than one type of ossification. The ethmoid bone is an irregular bone that makes a relatively minor midline contribution to the neurocranium (see Fig. 8.12A) but is primarily part of the viscerocranium (Figs. 8.2A and 8.3).

Most calvarial bones are united by fibrous interlocking **sutures** (Fig. 8.1A, B; also see Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts); however, during childhood, some bones (sphenoid and occipital) are united by hyaline cartilage (synchondroses—cartilaginous joints). The spinal cord is continuous with the brain through the foramen magnum, a large opening in the cranial base (Fig. 8.1C).

The **viscerocranium** (facial skeleton) comprises the facial bones that mainly develop in the mesenchyme of the embryonic pharyngeal arches (Moore et al., 2020). The viscerocranium forms the anterior part of the cranium, and it consists of the bones surrounding the mouth (upper and lower jaws), nose/nasal cavity, and most of the orbits (eye sockets or orbital cavities) (Figs. 8.2 and 8.3).

The viscerocranium consists of 15 irregular bones: 3 singular bones centered on or lying in the

midline (mandible, ethmoid, and vomer) and 6 bones occurring as bilateral pairs (maxillae; inferior nasal conchae; and zygomatic, palatine, nasal, and lacrimal bones) (Figs. 8.1A and 8.4A). The maxillae and mandible house the teeth, that is, they provide the sockets and supporting bone for the maxillary and mandibular teeth. The maxillae contribute the greatest part of the upper facial skeleton, forming the skeleton of the upper jaw, which is fixed to the cranial base. The mandible forms the skeleton of the lower jaw, which is movable because it articulates with the cranial base at the temporomandibular joints (Figs. 8.1A and 8.2).

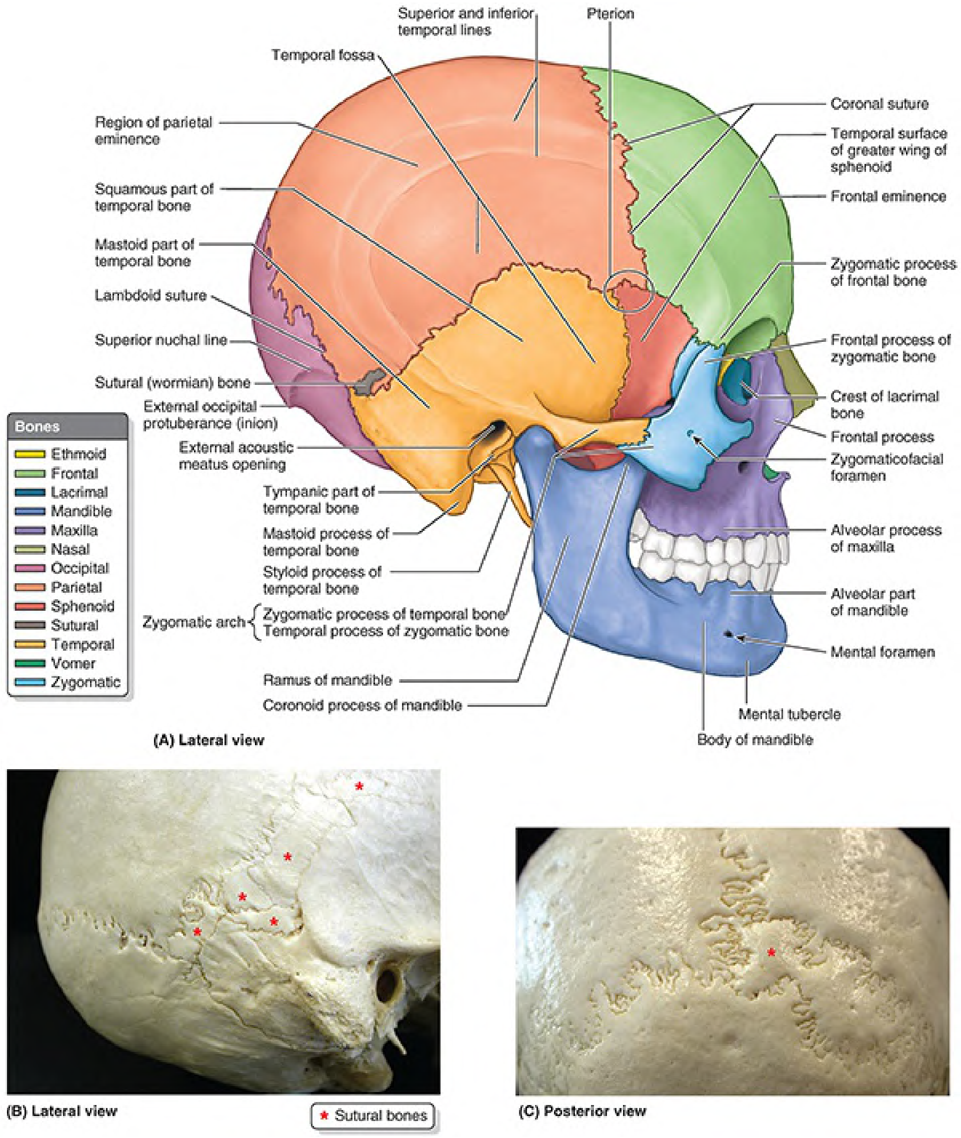


FIGURE 8.4. Adult cranium IV: bones of lateral aspect and sutural bones. A. Features. Within the temporal fossa, the pterion is a craniometric point at the junction of the greater wing of the sphenoid, the squamous temporal bone, the frontal, and the parietal bones. **B and C.** Sutural bones: along temporoparietal suture (**B**) and lambdoid suture (**C**).

Several bones of the cranium (frontal, temporal, sphenoid, and ethmoid bones) are **pneumatized bones**, which contain **air spaces** (air cells or large sinuses), presumably to decrease their weight (Fig. 8.5). The total volume of the air spaces in these bones increases with

age.

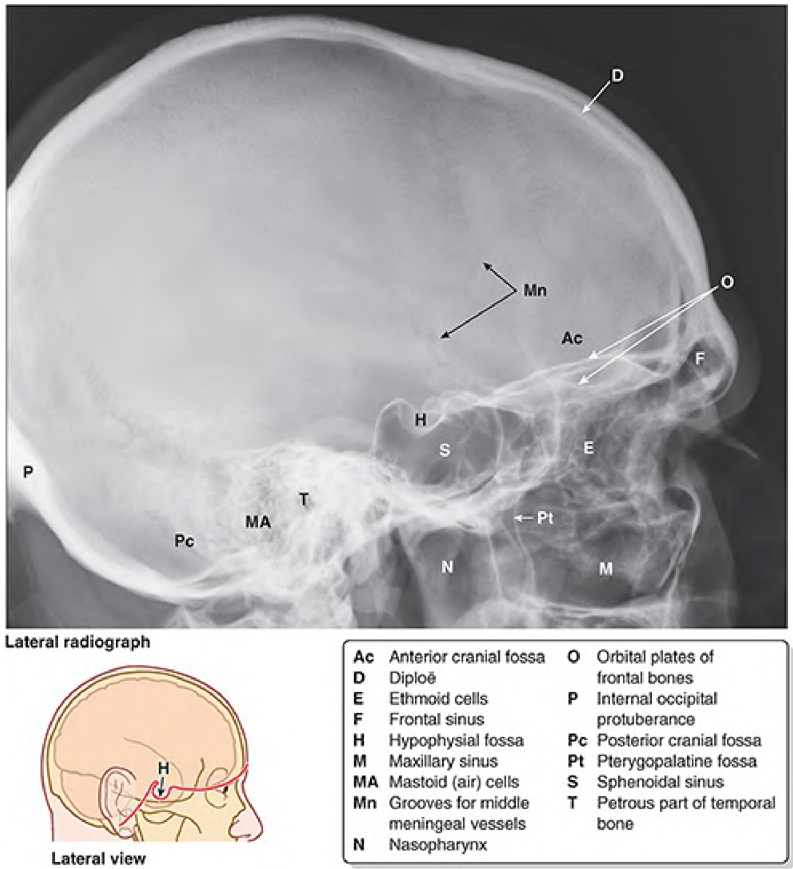


FIGURE 8.5. **Lateral radiograph of cranium.** Pneumatized (air-filled) bones contain sinuses or cells that appear as radiolucencies (dark areas) and bear the name of the occupied bone. The right and left orbital parts of the frontal bone are not superimposed; therefore, the floor of the anterior cranial fossa appears as two lines (P).

In the anatomical position, the cranium is oriented so that the inferior margin of the orbit and the superior margin of the external acoustic opening of the external acoustic meatus of both sides lie in the same horizontal plane (Fig. 8.1A). This standard craniometric reference is the **orbitomeatal plane** (Frankfort horizontal plane).

Anterior Aspect of Cranium

Features of the **anterior** (frontal or facial) **aspect of the cranium** are the frontal and zygomatic bones, orbits, nasal region, maxillae, and mandible (Figs. 8.2 and 8.3).

The **frontal bone**, specifically its **squamous** (flat) **part**, forms the skeleton of the forehead, articulating inferiorly with the nasal and zygomatic bones. In some adults, a frontal suture persists; this remnant is called a **metopic suture**. It is in the middle **glabella**, the smooth, slightly depressed area between the superciliary arches. The **frontal suture** divides the frontal bones of the fetal cranium (see the Clinical Box "Development of Cranium" in this chapter).

The intersection of the frontal and nasal bones is the **nasion** (L. nasus, nose), which in most

people is related to a distinctly depressed area (bridge of the nose) (Figs. 8.1A and 8.2A). The nasion is one of many craniometric points that are used radiographically in medicine (or on dry crania in physical anthropology) to make cranial measurements, compare and describe the topography of the cranium, and document abnormal variations (Fig. 8.6; Table 8.1). The frontal bone also articulates with the lacrimal, ethmoid, and sphenoid bones; a horizontal portion of bone (orbital part) forms both the roof of the orbit and part of the floor of the anterior part of the cranial cavity (Fig. 8.3).

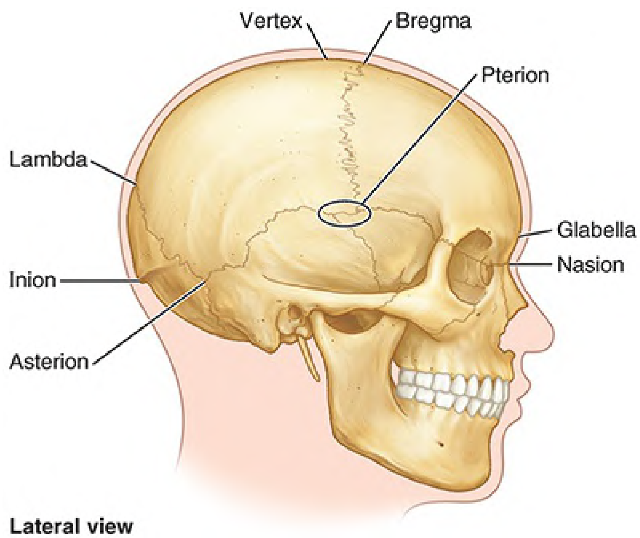


FIGURE 8.6. **Craniometric points.**

TABLE 8.1. CRANIOMETRIC POINTS OF CRANIUM

Landmark	Shape and Location
Pterion (G., wing)	Junction of greater wing of sphenoid, squamous temporal, frontal, and parietal bones; overlies course of anterior division of middle meningeal artery
Lambda (G., the letter L)	Point on calvaria at junction of lambdoid and sagittal sutures
Bregma (G., forepart of head)	Point on calvaria at junction of coronal and sagittal sutures
Vertex (L., whirl, whorl)	Superior point of neurocranium, in middle with cranium oriented in anatomical (orbitomeatal or Frankfort) plane
Asterion (G. asterios, starry)	Star shaped; located at junction of three sutures: parietomastoid, occipitomastoid, and lambdoid
Glabella (L., smooth, hairless)	Smooth prominence; most marked in males; on frontal bones superior to root of nose; most anterior projecting part of forehead
Inion (G., back of head)	Most prominent point of external occipital protuberance
Nasion (L., nose)	Point on cranium where frontonasal and internasal sutures meet

The **supra-orbital margin** of the frontal bone, the angular boundary between the squamous and orbital parts, has a **supra-orbital foramen (notch)** in some crania for passage of the supra-orbital nerve and vessels. Just superior to the supra-orbital margin is a ridge, the **superciliary**

arch, that extends laterally on each side from the glabella. The prominence of this ridge, deep to the eyebrows, is generally greater in males (Figs. 8.2A and 8.3).

The **zygomatic bones** (cheek bones, malar bones), forming the prominences of the cheeks, lie on the inferolateral sides of the orbits and rest on the maxillae. The anterolateral rims, walls, floor, and much of the infra-orbital margins of the orbits are formed by these quadrilateral bones. A small **zygomaticofacial foramen** pierces the lateral aspect of each bone (Figs. 8.3 and 8.4A). The zygomatic bones articulate with the frontal, sphenoid, and temporal bones and the maxillae.

Inferior to the nasal bones is the pear-shaped **piriform aperture**, the anterior nasal opening in the cranium (Figs. 8.1A and 8.2A). The **bony nasal septum** can be observed through this aperture, dividing the nasal cavity into right and left parts. On the lateral wall of each nasal cavity are curved bony plates, the **nasal conchae** (Figs. 8.2A and 8.3).

The **maxillae** form the upper jaw. Their **alveolar processes** include the tooth sockets (alveoli) and constitute the supporting bone for the **maxillary teeth**. The two maxillae are united at the **intermaxillary suture** in the median plane (Fig. 8.2A). The maxillae surround most of the piriform aperture and form the infra-orbital margins medially. They have a broad connection with the zygomatic bones laterally and an **infra-orbital foramen** inferior to each orbit for passage of the infra-orbital nerve and vessels (Fig. 8.3).

The **mandible** is a U-shaped bone with an alveolar part that supports the **mandibular teeth**. It consists of a horizontal part, the **body**, and a vertical part, the **ramus** (Fig. 8.2B, C). Inferior to the second premolar teeth are the **mental foramina** for the mental nerves and vessels (Figs. 8.1A; 8.2A, B; and 8.3). The **mental protuberance**, forming the prominence of the chin, is a triangular bony elevation inferior to the **mandibular symphysis** (L. symphysis menti), the osseous union where the halves of the infantile mandible fuse (Fig. 8.2A, B; see Fig. B8.6A).

Lateral Aspect of Cranium

The **lateral aspect of the cranium** is formed by both neurocranium and viscerocranium (Figs. 8.1A, B and 8.4A). The main features of the neurocranial part are the temporal fossa, the external acoustic meatus opening, and the mastoid process of the temporal bone. The main features of the viscerocranial part are the infratemporal fossa, zygomatic arch, and lateral aspects of the maxilla and mandible.

The **temporal fossa** is bounded superiorly and posteriorly by the **superior** and **inferior temporal lines**, anteriorly by the frontal and zygomatic bones, and inferiorly by the zygomatic arch (Figs. 8.1A and 8.4A). The superior border of this arch corresponds to the inferior limit of the cerebral hemisphere of the brain. The **zygomatic arch** is formed by the union of the **temporal process of the zygomatic bone** and the **zygomatic process of the temporal bone**.

In the anterior part of the temporal fossa, 3–4 cm superior to the midpoint of the zygomatic arch, there is a clinically important area of bone junctions: the **pterion** (G. pteron, wing) (Figs. 8.4A and 8.6; Table 8.1). It is usually indicated by an H-shaped formation of sutures that unite the frontal, parietal, sphenoid (greater wing), and temporal bones. Less commonly, the frontal and temporal bones articulate. Sometimes all four bones meet at a point.

The **external acoustic meatus opening (pore)** is the entrance to the external acoustic meatus (canal), which leads to the tympanic membrane (eardrum) (Fig. 8.4A). The **mastoid process** of the temporal bone is postero-inferior to the external acoustic meatus opening. Anteromedial to the mastoid process is the styloid process of the temporal bone, a slender needle-like, pointed projection. The infratemporal fossa is an irregular space inferior and deep to the zygomatic arch and mandible and posterior to the maxilla (see Fig. 8.69B).

Occipital Aspect of Cranium

The posterior or **occipital aspect of the cranium** is composed of the **occiput** (L., back of head, the convex posterior protuberance of the **squamous part of the occipital bone**), parts of the parietal bones, and mastoid parts of the temporal bones (Fig. 8.7A).

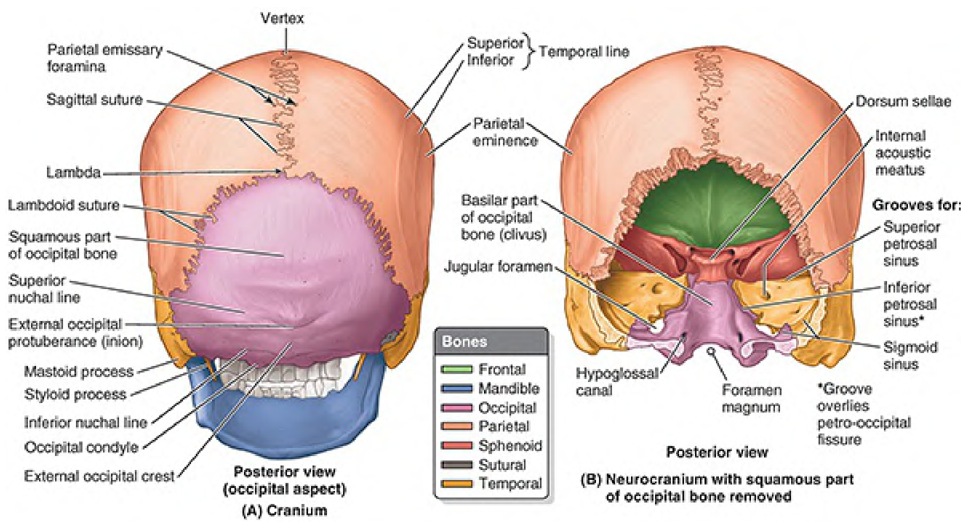


FIGURE 8.7. Adult cranium V: occipital (posterior) aspect. A. Features and bones. The occiput is composed of parts of the parietal bones, the occipital bone, and the mastoid parts of the temporal bones. The sagittal and lambdoid sutures meet at the lambda, which can often be felt as a depression in living persons. **B.** Anterior part of posterior cranial fossa. The squamous part of the occipital bone has been removed.

The **external occipital protuberance** is usually easily palpable in the median plane. However, occasionally (especially in females), it may be inconspicuous. A craniometric point defined by the tip of the external protuberance is the **inion** (G., nape of neck) (Figs. 8.1A, 8.4A, and 8.6; Table 8.1). The **external occipital crest** descends from the external protuberance toward the foramen magnum, the large opening in the basal part of the occipital bone (Figs. 8.1C and 8.7A; see Fig. 8.9).

The **superior nuchal line**, marking the superior limit of the neck, extends laterally from each side of the external protuberance. The **inferior nuchal line** is less distinct. In the center of the occiput, **lambda** indicates the junction of the sagittal and the lambdoid sutures (Figs. 8.1A, 8.6, and 8.7A; Table 8.1). Lambda can sometimes be felt as a depression. One or more **sutural bones** (accessory or wormian bones) may be located at lambda or near the mastoid process (Fig. 8.4B, C).

Superior Aspect of Cranium

The **superior (vertical) aspect of the cranium**, usually somewhat oval in form, broadens posterolaterally at the **parietal eminences** (Fig. 8.8A). In some people, **frontal eminences** are also visible, giving the calvaria a somewhat square appearance.

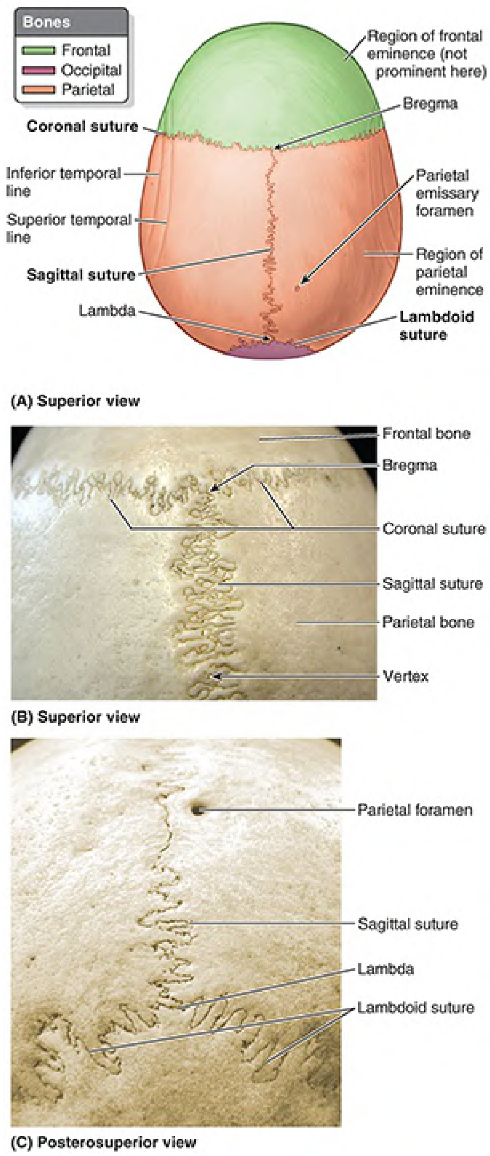


FIGURE 8.8. **Adult cranium VI: superior aspect. A.** Calvaria. The squamous parts of the frontal and occipital bones and the paired parietal bones contribute to the calvaria. **B.** Bregma. The vertex is the superior (topmost) point of the cranium. **C.** Lambda. Note the prominent, unilateral parietal foramen. Although emissary foramina often occur in this general location, there is much variation.

The **coronal suture** separates the frontal and parietal bones (Fig. 8.8A, B), the **sagittal suture** separates the parietal bones, and the **lambdoid suture** separates the parietal and temporal bones from the occipital bone (Fig. 8.8A, C). **Bregma** is the craniometric landmark formed by the intersection of the sagittal and coronal sutures (Figs. 8.6 and 8.8A; Table 8.1). **Vertex**, the most

superior point of the calvaria, is near the midpoint of the sagittal suture (Figs. 8.6 and 8.7A).

The **parietal foramen** is a small, inconstant aperture located posteriorly in the parietal bone near the sagittal suture (Fig. 8.8A, C). Sometimes, paired parietal foramina are present. Most irregular, highly variable foramina that occur in the neurocranium are emissary foramina that transmit emissary veins connecting scalp veins to the venous sinuses of the dura mater (see "Scalp" in this chapter).

External Surface of Cranial Base

The cranial base (basicranium) is the inferior portion of the neurocranium (floor of the cranial cavity) and viscerocranium minus the mandible (Fig. 8.9). The **external surface of the cranial base** features the **alveolar arch of the maxillae** (the free border of the alveolar processes surrounding and supporting the maxillary teeth); the palatine processes of the maxillae; and the palatine, sphenoid, vomer, temporal, and occipital bones.

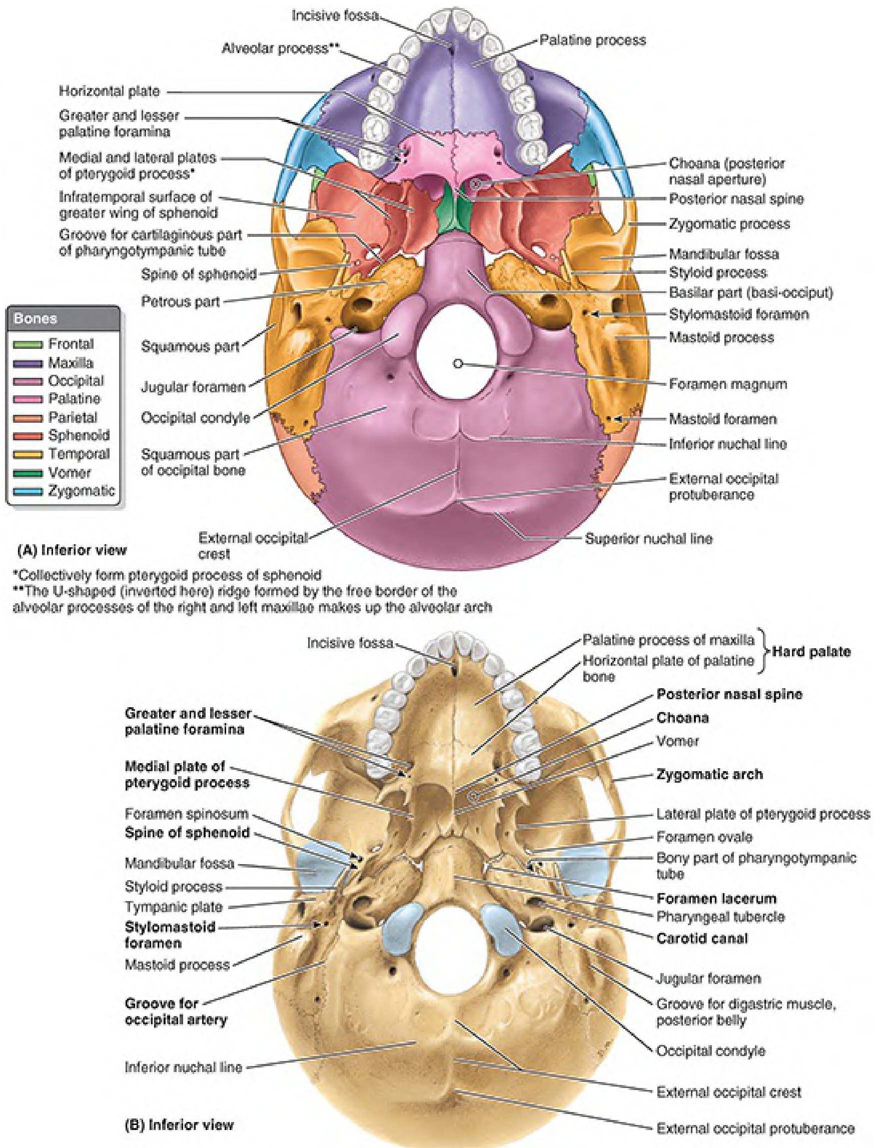


FIGURE 8.9. Adult cranium VII: external cranial base. A. Color coded bones and features. The contributing bones are color coded. **B.** Features. The foramen magnum is located midway between and on a level with the mastoid processes. The hard palate forms both a part of the roof of the mouth and the floor of the nasal cavity. The large choanae on each side of the vomer make up the posterior entrance to the nasal cavities.

The **hard palate** (bony palate) is formed by the **palatal processes of the maxillae** anteriorly and the **horizontal plates of the palatine bones** posteriorly. The free posterior border of the hard palate projects posteriorly in the median plane as the **posterior nasal spine**. Posterior to the central incisor teeth is the **incisive fossa**, a depression in the midline of the bony palate into which the incisive canals open.

The right and left nasopalatine nerves pass from the nose through a variable number of incisive canals and foramina (they may be bilateral or merged into a single formation). Posterolaterally are the **greater** and **lesser palatine foramina**. Superior to the posterior edge of the palate are two large openings: the **choanae** (posterior nasal apertures), which are separated from each other by the **vomer** (L., plowshare), a flat unpaired bone of trapezoidal shape that

forms a major part of the bony nasal septum (Fig. 8.9B).

Wedged between the frontal, temporal, and occipital bones is the **sphenoid** (L., winged; pterygoid is an often-used synonym for sphenoid), an irregular unpaired bone that consists of a body and three pairs of processes: greater wings, lesser wings, and pterygoid processes (Fig. 8.10). The **greater** and **lesser wings of the sphenoid** spread laterally from the lateral aspects of the **body of the sphenoid**. The greater wings have orbital, temporal, and infratemporal surfaces apparent in facial, lateral, and inferior views of the exterior of the cranium (Figs. 8.3, 8.4A, and 8.9A). Their cerebral surfaces are seen in internal views of the cranial base (Fig. 8.11). The **pterygoid processes**, consisting of **lateral** and **medial pterygoid plates**, extend inferiorly on each side of the sphenoid from the junction of the body and greater wings (Figs. 8.9A and 8.10A, B).

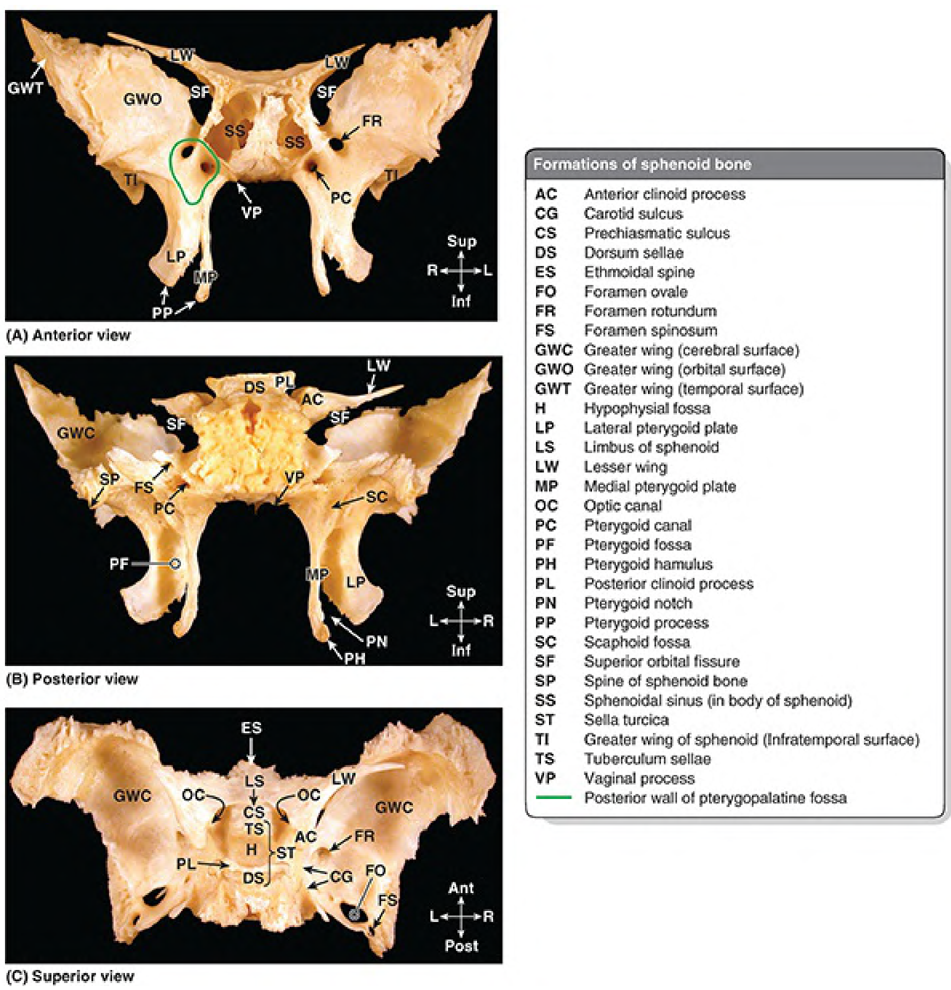


FIGURE 8.10. Sphenoid. The unpaired, irregular sphenoid is a pneumatic (air-filled) bone. **A.** Anterior aspect. Parts of the thin anterior wall of the body of the sphenoid have been chipped off revealing the interior of the sphenoid sinus, which typically is unevenly divided into separate right and left cavities. **B.** Superior aspect. The superior orbital fissure is a gap between the lesser and greater wings of the sphenoid. The medial and lateral pterygoid plates are components of the pterygoid processes. **C.** Posterior aspect. Details of the sella turcica, the midline formation that surrounds the hypophysial fossa, are shown.

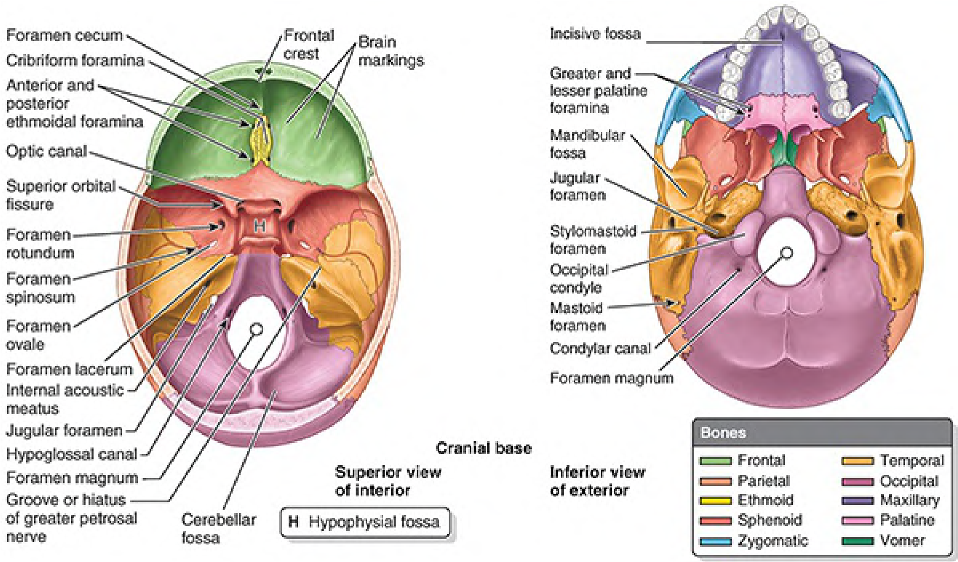


FIGURE 8.11. Adult cranium VIII: cranial foramina.

The **groove for the cartilaginous part of the pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube** lies medial to the **spine of the sphenoid**, inferior to the junction of the greater wing of the sphenoid and the **petrous** (L., rock-like) **part of the temporal bone** (Fig. 8.9B). Depressions in the **squamous** (L., flat) **part of the temporal bone**, called the **mandibular fossae**, accommodate the mandibular condyles when the mouth is closed.

The **occipital bone** articulates with the sphenoid anteriorly, forming the posterior part of the cranial base. The four parts of the occipital bone are arranged around the foramen magnum, the most conspicuous feature of the cranial base. The major structures passing through this large foramen are the spinal cord (where it becomes continuous with the medulla oblongata of the brain), the meninges (coverings) of the brain and spinal cord, the vertebral arteries, the anterior and posterior spinal arteries, and the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI). On the lateral parts of the occipital bone are two large protuberances, the **occipital condyles**, by which the cranium articulates with the vertebral column.

The large opening between the occipital bone and the petrous part of the temporal bone is the **jugular foramen**, from which the internal jugular vein (IJV) and several cranial nerves (CN IX–CN XI) emerge from the cranium (Figs. 8.9A and 8.11; Table 8.2). The entrance to the carotid canal for the internal carotid artery is just anterior to the jugular foramen (Fig. 8.9B). The mastoid processes provide for muscle attachments. The **stylomastoid foramen**, transmitting the facial nerve (CN VII) and stylomastoid artery, lies posterior to the base of the styloid process.

TABLE 8.2. FORAMINA AND OTHER APERTURES OF CRANIAL FOSSAE AND CONTENTS

Foramina/Apertures	Contents
Anterior cranial fossa	
Foramen cecum	Nasal emissary vein (in a small percentage of population postpartum)

Cribriform foramina in cribriform plate	Axons of olfactory cells in olfactory epithelium that form olfactory nerves
Anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina	Vessels and nerves with same names
Middle cranial fossa	
Optic canals	Optic nerves (CN II) and ophthalmic arteries
Superior orbital fissure	Ophthalmic veins; ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1); CN III, IV, and VI; and sympathetic fibers
Foramen rotundum	Maxillary nerve (CN V_2)
Foramen ovale	Mandibular nerve (CN V_3) and accessory meningeal artery
Foramen spinosum	Middle meningeal artery and vein and meningeal branch of CN V_3
Foramen lacerum[a]	Deep petrosal nerve and some meningeal arterial branches and small veins
Groove or hiatus of greater petrosal nerve	Greater petrosal nerve and petrosal branch of middle meningeal artery
Posterior cranial fossa	
Foramen magnum	Medulla and meninges, vertebral arteries, CN XI, dural veins, anterior and posterior spinal arteries
Jugular foramen	CN IX, X, and XI; superior bulb of internal jugular vein; inferior petrosal and sigmoid sinuses; and meningeal branches of ascending pharyngeal and occipital arteries
Hypoglossal canal	Hypoglossal nerve (CN XII)
Condylar canal	Emissary vein that passes from sigmoid sinus to vertebral veins in neck
Mastoid foramen	Mastoid emissary vein from sigmoid sinus and meningeal branch of occipital artery

[a]The internal carotid artery and its accompanying sympathetic and venous plexuses actually pass horizontally across (rather than vertically through) the area of the foramen lacerum, an artifact of dry crania, which is closed by cartilage in life.

Internal Surface of Cranial Base

The **internal surface of the cranial base** (L. basis cranii interna) has three large depressions that lie at different levels: the anterior, middle, and posterior cranial fossae, which form the bowl-shaped floor of the **cranial cavity**, the space enclosed within the neurocranium occupied by the brain (Fig. 8.12). The anterior cranial fossa is at the highest level, and the posterior cranial fossa is at the lowest level.

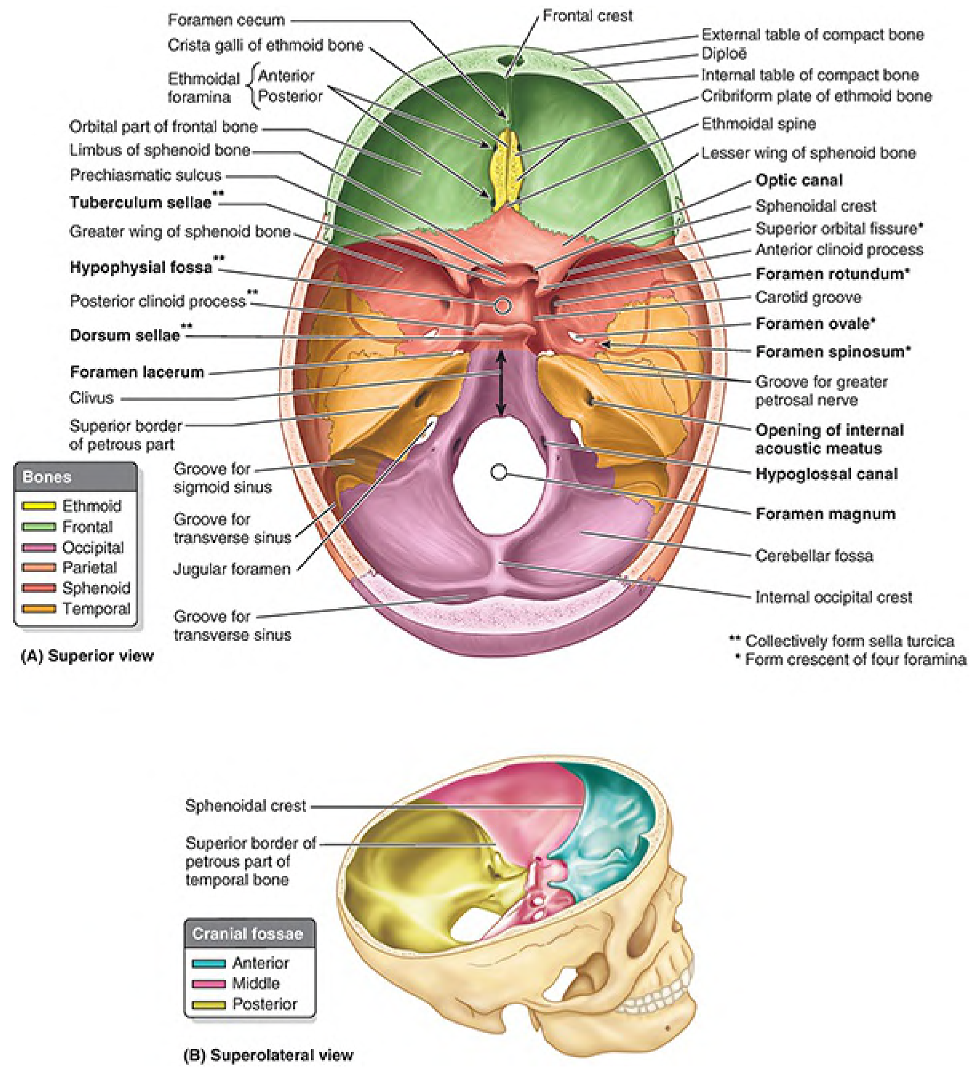


FIGURE 8.12. **Adult cranium IX: internal cranial base. A.** Bones and features. **B.** Anterior, middle, and posterior cranial fossae.

ANTERIOR CRANIAL FOSSA

The inferior and anterior parts of the frontal lobes of the brain occupy the **anterior cranial fossa**, the shallowest of the three cranial fossae (Fig. 8.12B). The fossa is formed by the frontal bone anteriorly, the ethmoid bone in the middle, and the body and lesser wings of the sphenoid posteriorly. The greater part of the fossa is formed by the **orbital parts of the frontal bone**, which support the frontal lobes of the brain and form the roofs of the orbits. This surface shows sinuous impressions (brain markings) of the orbital gyri (ridges) of the frontal lobes (Fig. 8.11).

The **frontal crest** is a median bony extension of the frontal bone (Fig. 8.12A). At its base is the **foramen cecum** of the frontal bone, which accommodates a diverticulum of dura mater during fetal development, and conducts a small vein in some people, but is generally insignificant postnatally. The **crista galli** (L., cock's comb) is a thick, median ridge of bone posterior to the foramen cecum, which projects superiorly from the ethmoid. On each side of this ridge is the sieve-like cribriform plate of ethmoid bone. Its numerous tiny foramina transmit the

olfactory nerves (CN I) from the olfactory areas of the nasal cavities to the olfactory bulbs of the brain, which lie on this plate (Fig. 8.12A; Table 8.2).

MIDDLE CRANIAL FOSSA

The butterfly-shaped **middle cranial fossa** has a central part composed of the sella turcica on the body of the sphenoid and large, depressed lateral parts on each side (Fig. 8.12). The middle cranial fossa is postero-inferior to the anterior cranial fossa, separated from it by the sharp sphenoidal crests laterally and the limbus of the sphenoid centrally. A variably prominent ridge, the **limbus of the sphenoid** forms the anterior boundary of the transversely oriented **prechiasmatic sulcus** extending between the right and the left optic canals. The **sphenoidal crests** are formed mostly by the sharp posterior borders of the lesser wings of the sphenoid bones, which overhang the lateral parts of the fossae anteriorly. The sphenoidal crests end medially in two sharp bony projections, the anterior clinoid processes.

The bones forming the lateral parts of the fossa are the greater wings of the sphenoid, the squamous parts of the temporal bones laterally, and the petrous parts of the temporal bones posteriorly. The lateral parts of the middle cranial fossa support the temporal lobes of the brain. The boundary between the middle and the posterior cranial fossae is the **superior border (crest) of the petrous part of the temporal bone** laterally and a flat plate of bone, the dorsum sellae of the sphenoid, medially.

The **sella turcica** (L., Turkish saddle) is the saddle-like bony formation on the upper surface of the body of the sphenoid, which is surrounded by the **anterior** and **posterior clinoid processes** (Figs. 8.10C and 8.12A). Clinoid means "bedpost," and the four processes (two anterior and two posterior) surround the hypophysial fossa, the "bed" of the pituitary gland, like the posts of a four-poster bed. The sella turcica is composed of three parts:

1. The **tuberculum sellae** (horn of saddle): a variable slight to prominent median elevation forming the posterior boundary of the prechiasmatic sulcus and the anterior boundary of the hypophysial fossa
2. The **hypophysial fossa** (pituitary fossa): a median depression (seat of saddle) in the body of the sphenoid that accommodates the pituitary gland (L. hypophysis)
3. The **dorsum sellae** (back of saddle): a square plate of bone projecting superiorly from the body of the sphenoid. It forms the posterior boundary of the sella turcica, and its prominent superolateral angles make up the posterior clinoid processes.

On each side of the body of the sphenoid, a crescent of four foramina perforates the roots of the cerebral surfaces of the greater wings of the sphenoid (Figs. 8.10C, 8.11, and 8.12A); structures transmitted by the foramina are listed in Table 8.2:

1. **Superior orbital fissure**: Located between the greater and the lesser wings, it opens anteriorly into the orbit (Fig. 8.2A).
2. **Foramen rotundum** (round foramen): Located posterior to the medial end of the superior orbital fissure, it runs a horizontal course to an opening on the anterior aspect of the root of the greater wing of the sphenoid (Figs. 8.10A and 8.12A) into a bony formation between the

sphenoid, the maxilla, and the palatine bones, the pterygopalatine fossa.

3. **Foramen ovale** (oval foramen): a large foramen posterolateral to the foramen rotundum; it opens inferiorly into the infratemporal fossa (Fig. 8.9B).
4. **Foramen spinosum** (spinous foramen): located posterolateral to the foramen ovale and opens into the infratemporal fossa in relationship to the spine of the sphenoid (Fig. 8.11)

The **foramen lacerum** (lacerated or torn foramen) is not part of the crescent of foramina. This ragged foramen lies posterolateral to the hypophysial fossa and is an artifact of a dried cranium (Fig. 8.12A). In life, it is closed by a cartilage plate. Only some meningeal arterial branches and small veins are transmitted vertically through the cartilage, completely traversing this foramen. The internal carotid artery and its accompanying sympathetic and venous plexuses pass across the superior aspect of the cartilage (i.e., pass over the foramen), and some nerves traverse it horizontally, passing to a foramen in its anterior boundary.

Extending posteriorly and laterally from the foramen lacerum is a narrow **groove for the greater petrosal nerve** on the anterosuperior surface of the petrous part of the temporal bone. There is also a small **groove for the lesser petrosal nerve**.

POSTERIOR CRANIAL FOSSA

The **posterior cranial fossa**, the largest and deepest of the three cranial fossae, lodges the cerebellum, pons, and medulla oblongata (Fig. 8.12B). The posterior cranial fossa is formed mostly by the occipital bone, but the dorsum sellae of the sphenoid marks its anterior boundary centrally (Fig. 8.12A), and the petrous and mastoid parts of the temporal bones contribute its anterolateral "walls."

From the dorsum sellae, there is a marked incline, the **clivus**, in the center of the anterior part of the fossa leading to the foramen magnum. Posterior to this large opening, the posterior cranial fossa is partly divided by the **internal occipital crest** into bilateral large concave impressions, the **cerebellar fossae**. The internal occipital crest ends in the **internal occipital protuberance** formed in relationship to the confluence of the sinuses, a merging of dural venous sinuses.

Broad grooves show the horizontal course of the transverse sinus and the S-shaped sigmoid sinus. At the base of the petrous ridge of the temporal bone is the jugular foramen, which transmits several cranial nerves in addition to the sigmoid sinus that exits the cranium as the internal jugular vein (IJV) (Fig. 8.11; Table 8.2). Anterosuperior to the jugular foramen is the internal acoustic meatus for the facial (CN VII) and vestibulocochlear nerves (CN VIII) and the labyrinthine artery. The **hypoglossal canal** for the hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) is superior to the anterolateral margin of the foramen magnum.

Walls of Cranial Cavity

The walls of the cranial cavity vary in thickness in different regions. They are usually thinner in females than in males and are thinner in children and elderly people. The bones tend to be thinnest in areas that are well covered with muscles, such as the squamous part of the temporal bone (Fig. 8.11). Thin areas of bone can be seen radiographically (Fig. 8.5) or by holding a dried

cranium up to a bright light.

Most bones of the calvaria consist of **internal** and **external tables of compact bone**, separated by diploë (Figs. 8.5 and 8.11). The **diploë** is cancellous bone containing red bone marrow during life, through which run canals formed by diploic veins. The diploë in a dried calvaria is not red because the protein was removed during preparation of the cranium. The internal table of bone is thinner than the external table, and in some areas, there is only a thin plate of compact bone with no diploë.

The bony substance of the cranium is unequally distributed. Relatively thin (but mostly curved) flat bones provide the necessary strength to maintain cavities and protect their contents. However, in addition to housing the brain, the bones of the neurocranium (and processes from them) provide proximal attachment for the strong muscles of mastication that attach distally to the mandible. Consequently, high compressive forces occur across the nasal cavity and orbits that are sandwiched between. Therefore, thickened portions of the cranial bones form stronger pillars or buttresses that transmit forces, bypassing the orbits and nasal cavity (Fig. 8.13). The main buttresses are the **frontonasal buttress**, extending from the region of the canine teeth between the nasal and the orbital cavities to the central frontal bone, and the **zygomatic arch–lateral orbital margin buttress** from the region of the molars to the lateral frontal and temporal bones. Similarly, **occipital buttresses** transmit forces received lateral to the foramen magnum from the vertebral column. Perhaps to compensate for the denser bone required for these buttresses, some areas of the cranium not as mechanically stressed become pneumatized (air filled).

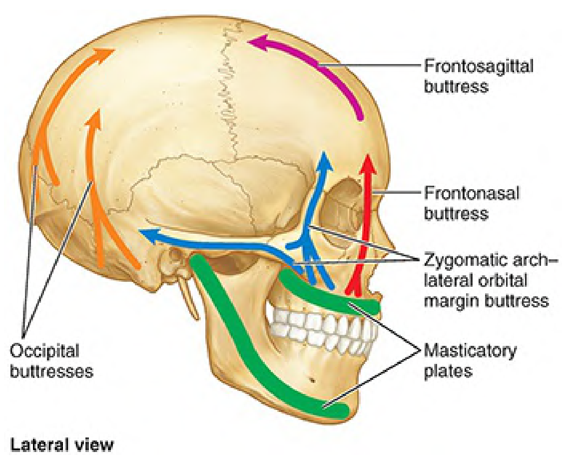


FIGURE 8.13. Buttresses of cranium. The buttresses are thicker portions of cranial bone that transmit forces around weaker regions of the cranium.

Regions of Head

To allow clear communications regarding the location of structures, injuries, or pathologies, the head is divided into regions (Fig. 8.14). The large number of regions into which the relatively small area of the face is divided (eight) reflects its functional complexity and personal importance, as do annual expenditures for elective aesthetic surgery. Except for the auricular

region, which includes the external ear, the names of the regions of the neurocranial portion of the head correspond to the underlying bones or bony features: frontal, parietal, occipital, temporal, and mastoid regions.

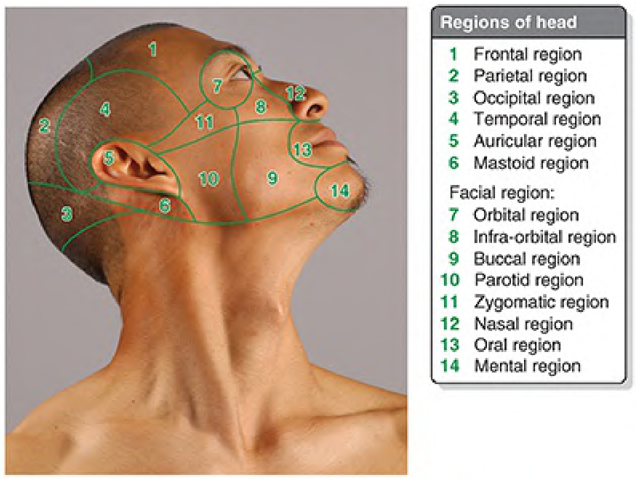


FIGURE 8.14. Regions of head.

The viscerocranial portion of the head includes the facial region, which is divided into five bilateral and three median regions related to superficial features (oral and buccal regions), to deeper soft tissue formations (parotid region), and to skeletal features (orbital, infra-orbital, nasal, zygomatic, and mental regions). The remainder of this chapter discusses several of these regions in detail as well as some deep regions not represented on the surface (e.g., the infratemporal region and pterygopalatine fossa). The surface anatomy of these regions is discussed with the description of each region.

CLINICAL BOX

CRANIUM

Head Injuries

Head injuries are a major cause of death and disability. The complications of head injuries include hemorrhage, infection, and injury to the brain (e.g., concussion) and cranial nerves. Disturbance in the level of consciousness is the most common symptom of head injury. Almost 10% of all deaths in the United States are caused by injury, and approximately half of traumatic deaths involve the brain (Louis et al., 2022). Head injuries occur mostly in young persons between the ages of 15 and 24 years. The major cause of brain injury varies; however, motor vehicle and motorcycle accidents are prominent. The high energy transmitted during these accidents can cause fiber tracts and axons within the brain to shear, causing a pattern called “diffuse axonal injury” for which

there is no good treatment.

Headaches and Facial Pain

Few complaints are more common than headaches and facial pain. Although usually benign and frequently associated with tension, fatigue, or mild fever, headaches may indicate a serious intracranial problem such as a brain tumor, subarachnoid hemorrhage, or meningitis. Neuralgias (G. algos, pain) are characterized by severe throbbing or stabbing pain along the course of a nerve caused by a demyelinating lesion. They are a common cause of facial pain. Terms such as facial neuralgia describe diffuse painful sensations. Localized aches have specific names, such as earache (otalgia) and toothache (odontalgia). A sound knowledge of the clinical anatomy of the head helps in understanding the causes of headaches and facial pain.

Injury to Superciliary Arches

The superciliary arches are relatively sharp bony ridges (see Fig. 8.3). Consequently, a blow to them (e.g., during boxing) may lacerate the skin and cause bleeding. Bruising of the skin surrounding the orbit causes tissue fluid and blood to accumulate in the surrounding connective tissue, which gravitates, usually unilaterally, into the superior (upper) eyelid and around the eye ("black eye"; see Fig. B8.12).

Malar Flush

The zygomatic bone was once called the malar bone; consequently, you are likely to hear the clinical term malar flush. This redness of the skin covering the zygomatic process (malar eminence) is associated with a rise in temperature in various fevers occurring with certain diseases, such as tuberculosis. A characteristic "butterfly rash" is seen over the zygomatic eminence in some cases of systemic lupus erythematosus disease, an autoimmune disease.

Fractures of Maxillae and Associated Bones

Dr. Léon-Clement Le Fort (a Paris surgeon and gynecologist, 1829–1893) classified three common variants of fractures of the maxillae (Fig. B8.1):

- **Le Fort I fracture:** wide variety of horizontal fractures of the maxillae, passing superior to the maxillary alveolar process (i.e., to the roots of the teeth), crossing the bony nasal septum and possibly the pterygoid plates of the sphenoid
- **Le Fort II fracture:** passes from the posterolateral parts of the maxillary sinuses (cavities in the maxillae) superomedially through the infra-orbital foramina, lacrimals, or ethmoids to the bridge of the nose. As a result, the entire central part of the face,

including the hard palate and alveolar processes, is separated from the rest of the cranium.

- **Le Fort III fracture:** horizontal fracture that passes through the superior orbital fissures and the ethmoid and nasal bones and extends laterally through the greater wings of the sphenoid and the frontozygomatic sutures. Concurrent fracturing of the zygomatic arches causes the maxillae and zygomatic bones to separate from the rest of the cranium.

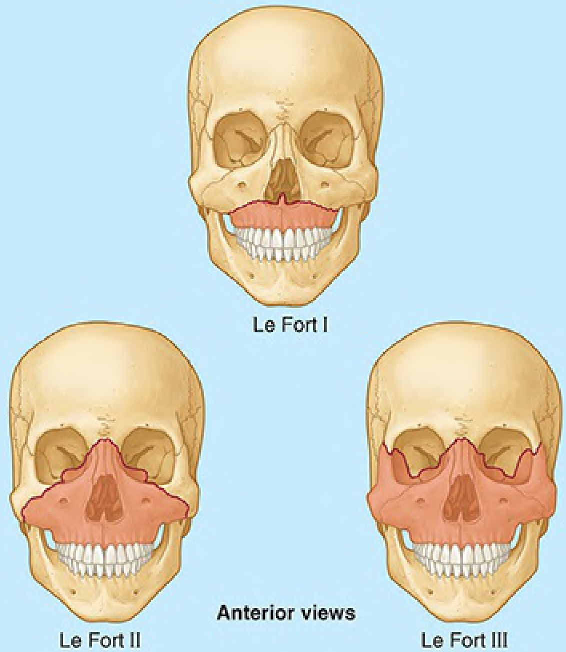


FIGURE B8.1. **Le Fort fractures.**

Fractures of Mandible

A broken mandible usually involves two fractures, which frequently occur on opposite sides of the mandible. Therefore, if one fracture is observed, a search should be made for another (e.g., a hard blow to the jaw often fractures the neck and body of the mandible in the region of the opposite canine tooth).

Fractures of the coronoid process of the mandible are uncommon and usually single (Fig. B8.2). Fractures of the neck of the mandible are often transverse and may be associated with dislocation of the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) on the same side. Fractures of the angle of the mandible are usually oblique and may involve the bony socket or alveolus of the 3rd molar tooth (Fig. B8.2, line C). Fractures of the body of the mandible frequently pass through the socket of a canine tooth (Fig. B8.2, line D).

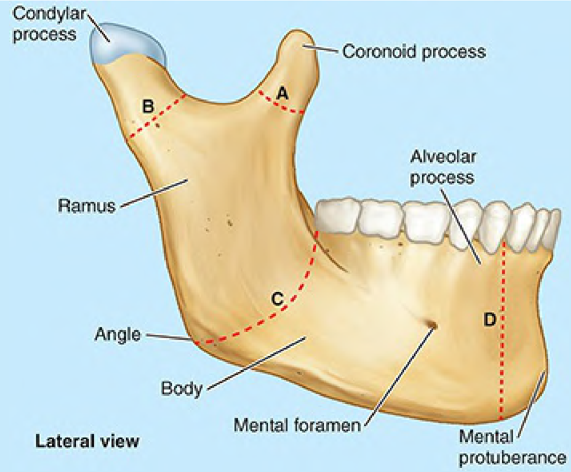


FIGURE B8.2. Fractures of mandible. Line A, fracture of the coronoid process; line B, fracture of the neck of the mandible; line C, fracture of the angle of the mandible; line D, fracture of the body of the mandible.

Resorption of Alveolar Bone

Extraction of teeth causes the alveolar bone to resorb in the affected region(s) (Fig. B8.3). Following complete loss or extraction of maxillary teeth, the tooth sockets begin to fill in with bone, and the alveolar process begins to resorb. Similarly, extraction of mandibular teeth causes the bone of the alveolar part to resorb. Gradually, the mental foramen comes to lie near the superior border of the body of the mandible (Fig. B8.3A–C). In some cases, the mental foramina disappear, exposing the mental nerves to injury. Pressure from a dental prosthesis (e.g., a denture resting on an exposed mental nerve) may produce pain during eating. Loss of all the teeth results in a decrease in the vertical facial dimension and mandibular prognathism (overclosure). Deep creases in the facial skin also appear that pass posteriorly from the corners of the mouth.

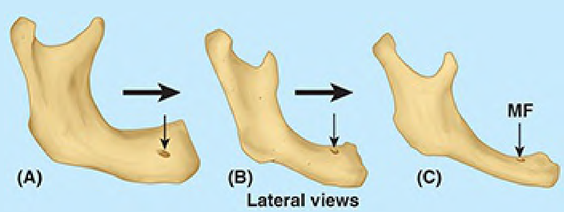


FIGURE B8.3. Stages of resorption (A–C) of edentulous (toothless) alveolar bone.

Fractures of Calvaria

The convexity of the calvaria distributes and thereby usually minimizes the effects of a blow to the head. However, hard blows in thin areas of the calvaria are likely to produce depressed fractures, in which a bone fragment is depressed inward, compressing and/or injuring the brain (Fig. B8.4). Linear calvarial fractures, the most frequent type, usually occur at the point of impact, but fracture lines often radiate away from it in two or more directions. In comminuted fractures, the bone is broken into several

pieces. If the area of the calvaria is thick at the site of impact, the bone may bend inward without fracturing. However, a fracture may occur some distance from the site of direct trauma where the calvaria is thinner. In a contrecoup (counterblow) fracture, no fracture occurs at the point of impact, but one occurs on the opposite side of the cranium.

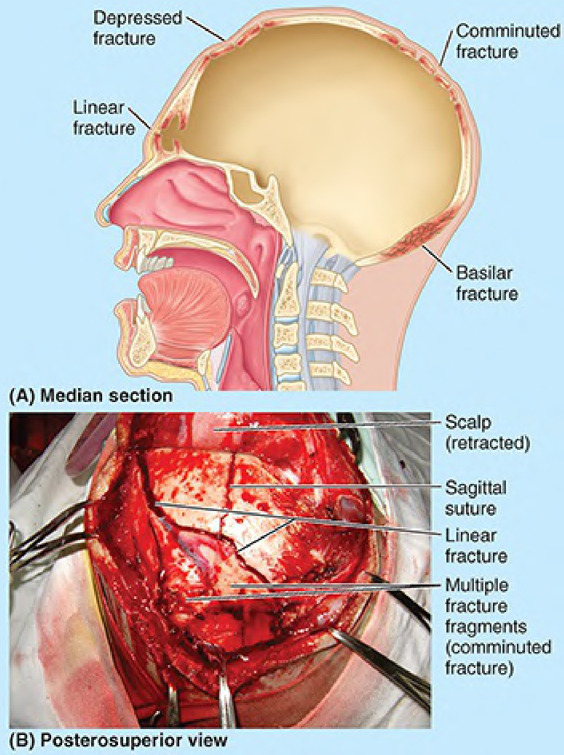


FIGURE B8.4. Fractures of calvaria.

Surgical Access to Cranial Cavity: Bone Flaps

Surgeons access the cranial cavity and brain by performing a craniotomy, in which a section of the neurocranium, called a bone flap, is elevated or removed (Fig. B8.5).

Because the adult pericranium (periosteum of cranium) has poor osteogenic (bone-forming) properties, little regeneration occurs after bone loss (e.g., when pieces of bone are removed during repair of a comminuted cranial fracture). Surgically produced bone flaps are put back into place and wired to other parts of the calvaria or held in place temporarily with metal plates. Reintegration is most successful when the bone is reflected with its overlying muscle and skin so that it retains its own blood supply during the procedure and after repositioning. If the bone flap is not replaced (i.e., a permanent plastic or metal plate replaces the flap), the procedure is called a craniectomy.

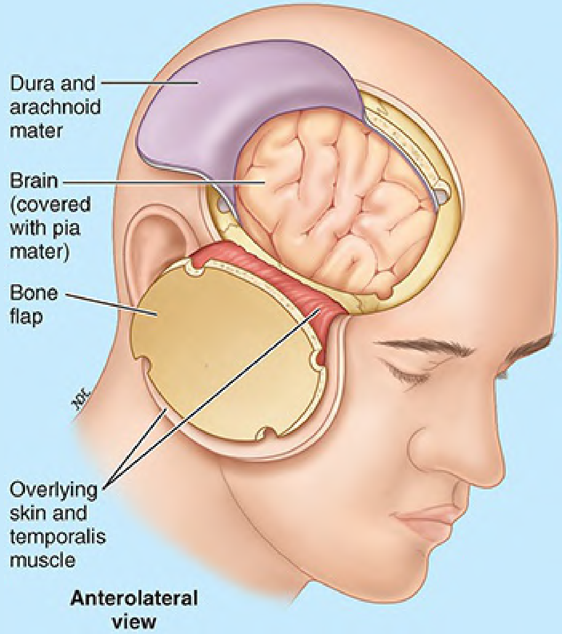


FIGURE B8.5. **Craniotomy.**

Development of Cranium

The bones of the calvaria and some parts of the cranial base develop by intramembranous ossification. Most parts of the cranial base develop by endochondral ossification. At birth, the bones of the calvaria are smooth and unilaminar; no diploë is present. The frontal and parietal eminences are especially prominent (Fig. B8.6). The cranium of a neonate is disproportionately large compared to other parts of the skeleton; however, the facial aspect is small compared to the calvaria, which forms approximately one eighth of the cranium. In the adult, the facial skeleton forms one third of the cranium. The large size of the calvaria in infants results from precocious growth and development of the brain and eyes.

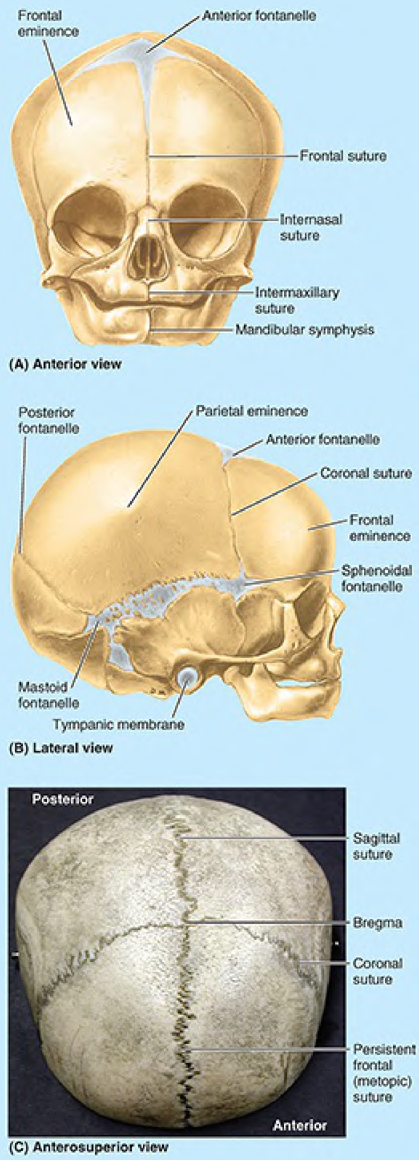


FIGURE B8.6. Cranial development.

The rudimentary development of the face makes the orbits appear relatively large (Fig. B8.6A). The smallness of the face results from the rudimentary development of the maxillae, mandible, and paranasal sinuses (air-filled bone cavities), the absence of erupted teeth, and the small size of the nasal cavities.

The halves of the frontal bone in the neonate are separated by the frontal suture, the frontal and parietal bones are separated by the coronal suture, and the maxillae and mandibles are separated by the intermaxillary suture and mandibular symphysis (secondary cartilaginous joint), respectively. There are no mastoid and styloid processes (Fig. B8.6A, B). Because there are no mastoid processes at birth, the facial nerves are close to the surface when they emerge from the stylomastoid foramina. Thus, the facial nerves may be injured by forceps during a difficult delivery or later by an incision posterior or inferior to the

auricle of the external ear (e.g., for the surgical treatment of mastoiditis or middle ear problems). The mastoid processes form gradually during the 1st year as the sternocleidomastoid muscles complete their development and pull on the petromastoid parts of the temporal bones.

The bones of the calvaria of neonates are separated by **fontanelles** (fibrous membranes; palpable deep to the scalp, these are perceived as "soft spots"). The largest occur between the angles (corners) of the flat bones (Fig. B8.6A, B). They include the anterior and posterior fontanelles and the paired sphenoidal and mastoid fontanelles. Palpation of the fontanelles during infancy, especially the anterior and posterior ones, enables physicians to determine the following:

- Progress of growth of the frontal and parietal bones
- Degree of hydration of an infant (a depressed fontanelle indicates dehydration)
- Level of intracranial pressure (a bulging fontanelle indicates increased pressure on the brain)

The **anterior fontanelle**, the largest one, is diamond or star shaped. It is bounded by the halves of the frontal bone anteriorly and the parietal bones posteriorly (Fig. B8.6). Therefore, it is located at the junction of the sagittal, coronal, and frontal sutures, the future site of the bregma (see Fig. 8.6; Table 8.1). By 18 months of age, the surrounding bones have fused, and the anterior fontanelle is no longer clinically palpable.

At birth, the frontal bone consists of two halves. Union of the halves begins in the 2nd year. In most cases, the frontal suture is obliterated by the 8th year. However, in approximately 8% of people, a remnant of the frontal suture, the **metopic suture**, persists (see Figs. 8.2A and 8.3). Much less frequently, the entire suture remains (Fig. B8.6C). A persistent suture must not be interpreted as a fracture in a radiograph or another medical image (e.g., a CT scan).

The **posterior fontanelle** is triangular and bounded by the parietal bones anteriorly and the occipital bone posteriorly. It is located at the junction of the lambdoid and sagittal sutures, the future site of lambda (see Figs. 8.7A and 8.8C). The posterior fontanelle begins to close during the first few months after birth, and by the end of the 1st year, it is small and no longer clinically palpable. The **sphenoidal** and **mastoid fontanelles**, overlain by the temporalis muscle (see Fig. 8.16A), fuse during infancy and are less important clinically than the midline fontanelles. The halves of the mandible fuse early in the 2nd year (Fig. B8.6). The two maxillae and nasal bones usually do not fuse.

The softness of the cranial bones in fetuses and their loose connections at the sutures and fontanelles enable the shape of the cranium to be molded during birth (Fig. B8.7). During passage of the fetus through the birth canal, the halves of the frontal bone become flat, the occipital bone is drawn out, and one parietal bone slightly overrides the other. Within a few days after birth, the shape of the neonatal cranium returns to normal. The resilience of the cranial bones of infants allows them to resist forces that would produce fractures in adults. The fibrous sutures of the calvaria also permit the cranium to enlarge during infancy and

childhood. The increase in the size of the calvaria is greatest during the first 2 years, the period of most rapid brain development. The calvaria normally increases in capacity for 15–16 years. After this, the calvaria usually increases slightly in size for 3–4 years due to bone thickening.

FIGURE B8.7. Molding of calvaria.

Age Changes in Face

The mandible is the most dynamic of our bones; its size and shape and the number of teeth it normally bears undergo considerable change with age. In the neonate, the mandible consists of two halves united in the median plane by a cartilaginous joint, the mandibular symphysis. Union between the halves of the mandible is affected by means of fibrocartilage. This union begins during the 1st year, and the halves are fused by the end of the 2nd year. The body of the mandible in neonates is a mere shell lacking an alveolar part with each half enclosing five deciduous teeth. These teeth usually begin to erupt in infants at approximately 6 months of age. The body of the mandible elongates, particularly posterior to the mental foramen (Fig. B8.2), to accommodate this development. Later, eight permanent teeth begin to erupt during the 6th year of life (Fig. B8.8). Eruption of the permanent teeth is not complete until early adulthood.

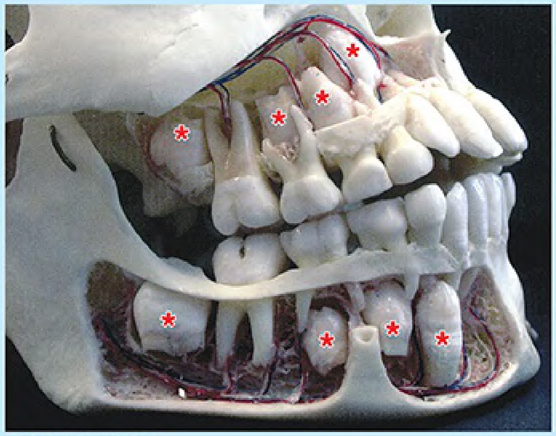


FIGURE B8.8. **Dentition showing unerupted permanent teeth.** These are indicated with red asterisks.

Rapid growth of the face during infancy and early childhood coincides with the eruption of deciduous teeth. Vertical growth of the upper face results mainly from dento-alveolar development of alveolar bone. These changes are more marked after the permanent teeth erupt. Concurrent enlargement of the frontal and facial regions is associated with the increase in the size of the paranasal sinuses, the air-filled extensions of the nasal cavities in certain cranial bones (Fig. B8.9). Most paranasal sinuses are rudimentary or absent at birth. Growth of the paranasal sinuses is important in altering the shape of the face and in adding resonance to the voice.

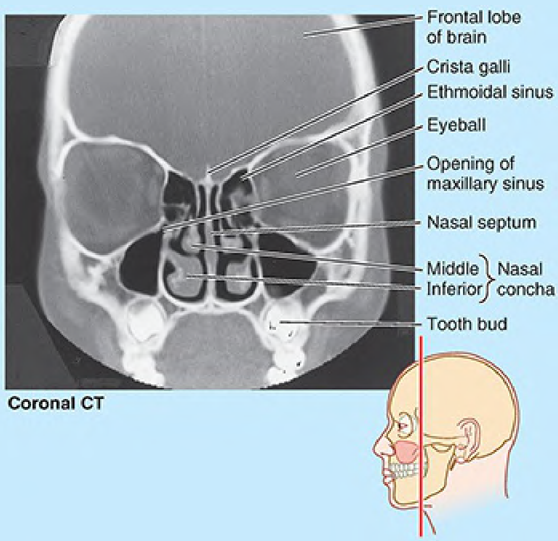


FIGURE B8.9. **Paranasal sinuses in a child cranium.**

Obliteration of Cranial Sutures

The obliteration of sutures between the bones of the calvaria usually begins between the ages of 30 and 40 years on the internal surface. Approximately 10 years later, the sutures on the external surface obliterate (Fig. B8.10; cf. Fig. 8.8B). Obliteration of

sutures usually begins at the bregma and continues sequentially in the sagittal, coronal, and lambdoid sutures. Closure times vary considerably.

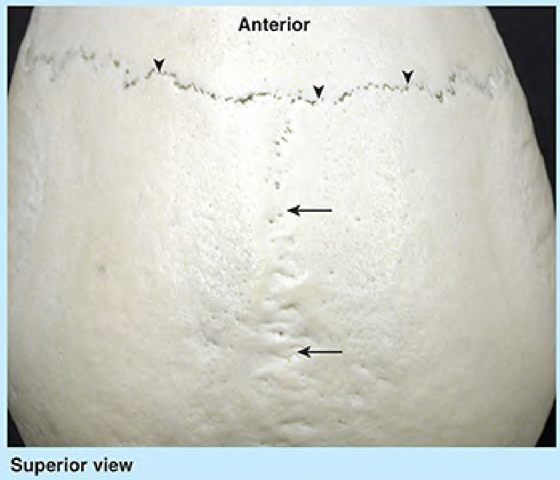


FIGURE B8.10. Obliteration (synostosis) of cranial sutures. Arrows, sagittal; arrowheads, coronal.

Age Changes in Cranium

As people age, the cranial bones normally become progressively thinner and lighter, and the diploë gradually becomes filled with a gray gelatinous material. In these individuals, the bone marrow has lost its blood cells and fat, giving it a gelatinous appearance.

Craniosynostosis and Cranial Malformations

Premature closure of the cranial sutures (primary craniosynostosis) results in several cranial malformations (Fig. B8.11). The incidence of primary craniosynostosis is approximately 1 per 2,000 births (Kliegman et al., 2020). The cause of craniosynostosis is unknown, but genetic factors appear to be important. The prevailing hypothesis is that abnormal development of the cranial base creates exaggerated forces on the dura mater (outer covering membrane of the brain) that disrupt normal cranial sutural development. These malformations are more common in males than in females and are often associated with other skeletal anomalies. The type of malformed cranium that forms depends on which sutures close prematurely.

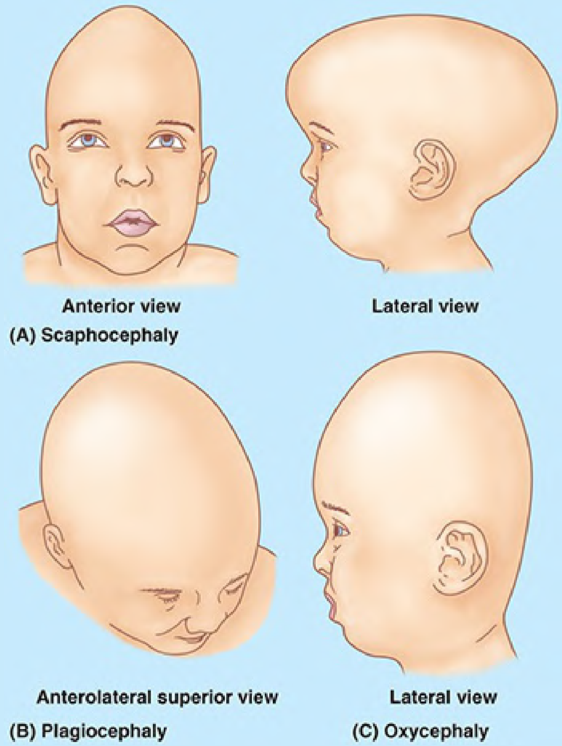


FIGURE B8.11. Cranial malformations.

Premature closure of the sagittal suture, in which the anterior fontanelle is small or absent, results in a long, narrow, wedge-shaped cranium, a condition called scaphocephaly (Fig. B8.11A). When premature closure of the coronal or the lambdoid suture occurs on one side only, the cranium is twisted and asymmetrical, a condition known as plagiocephaly (Fig. B8.11B). Premature closure of the coronal suture results in a high, tower-like cranium, called oxycephaly or turricephaly (Fig. B8.11C). The latter type of cranial malformation is more common in females. Premature closure of sutures usually does not affect brain development.

The Bottom Line: Cranium

The cranium is the skeleton of the head, an amalgamation of functional components united to form a single skeletal formation. ■ The basic functional components include the neurocranium, the container of the brain and internal ears, and viscerocranium, providing paired orbits, nasal cavities, and teeth-bearing plates (alveolar processes) of the oral cavity. ■ Although some mobility between cranial bones is advantageous during birth, they become fixed together by essentially immovable joints (sutures), allowing independent movement of only the mandible. ■ Abundant fissures and foramina facilitate communication and passage of neurovascular structures between functional components.

■ The bony substance of the cranium is unequally distributed. Relatively thin (but mostly curved) flat bones provide the necessary strength to maintain cavities and protect contents. ■ However, the bones and processes of the neurocranium also provide proximal attachment for the strong muscles of mastication (chewing) that attach distally to the mandible. ■ The high compressive forces generated across the nasal cavity and orbits, sandwiched between the muscle attachments, are resisted by thickened portions of the bones forming stronger pillars or buttresses. ■ The mostly superficial surface of the cranium provides both visible and palpable landmarks.

Internal features of the cranial base reflect the major formations of the brain that rest on it. ■ Bony ridges radiating from the centrally located sella turcica divide it into three cranial fossae. ■ The frontal lobes of the brain lie in the anterior cranial fossa. ■ The temporal lobes lie in the middle cranial fossa. ■ The hindbrain, consisting of the pons, cerebellum, and medulla, occupies the posterior cranial fossa, with the medulla continuing through the foramen magnum where it is continuous with the spinal cord.

FACE AND SCALP

Face

The **face** is the anterior aspect of the head from the forehead to the chin and from one ear to the other. The face provides our identity as an individual human. Thus, birth defects, scarring, or other alterations resulting from pathology or trauma have marked consequences beyond their physical effects.

The basic shape of the face is determined by the underlying bones. The individuality of the face results primarily from anatomical variations in the shape and relative prominence of the features of the underlying cranium; in the deposition of fatty tissue; in the color and effects of aging on the overlying skin; and in the abundance, nature, and placement of hair on the face and scalp. The relatively large size of the **buccal fat-pads** in infants prevents collapse of the cheeks during sucking and produces their chubby-cheeked appearance. Growth of the facial bones takes longer than those of the calvaria. The ethmoid bone, orbital cavities, and superior parts of the nasal cavities have nearly completed their growth by the 7th year. Expansion of the orbits and growth of the nasal septum carry the maxillae infero-anteriorly. Considerable facial growth occurs during childhood as the paranasal sinuses develop and permanent teeth erupt.

The face plays an important role in communication. Our interactions with others take place largely via the face (including the ears) and thus the term interface for a site of interactions. Whereas the shape and features of the face provide our identity, much of our effect on others and their perceptions about us result from the way we use facial muscles to make the slight alterations in the features that constitute facial expression.

Scalp

The **scalp** consists of skin (normally hair bearing) and subcutaneous tissue that cover the neurocranium from the superior nuchal lines on the occipital bone to the supra-orbital margins of the frontal bone (see Figs. 8.3 and 8.4A). Laterally, the scalp extends over the temporal fascia to the zygomatic arches.

The scalp is composed of five layers, the first three of which are connected intimately and move as a unit (e.g., when wrinkling the forehead and moving the scalp). Each letter in the word scalp serves as a memory key for one of its five layers (Fig. 8.15A):

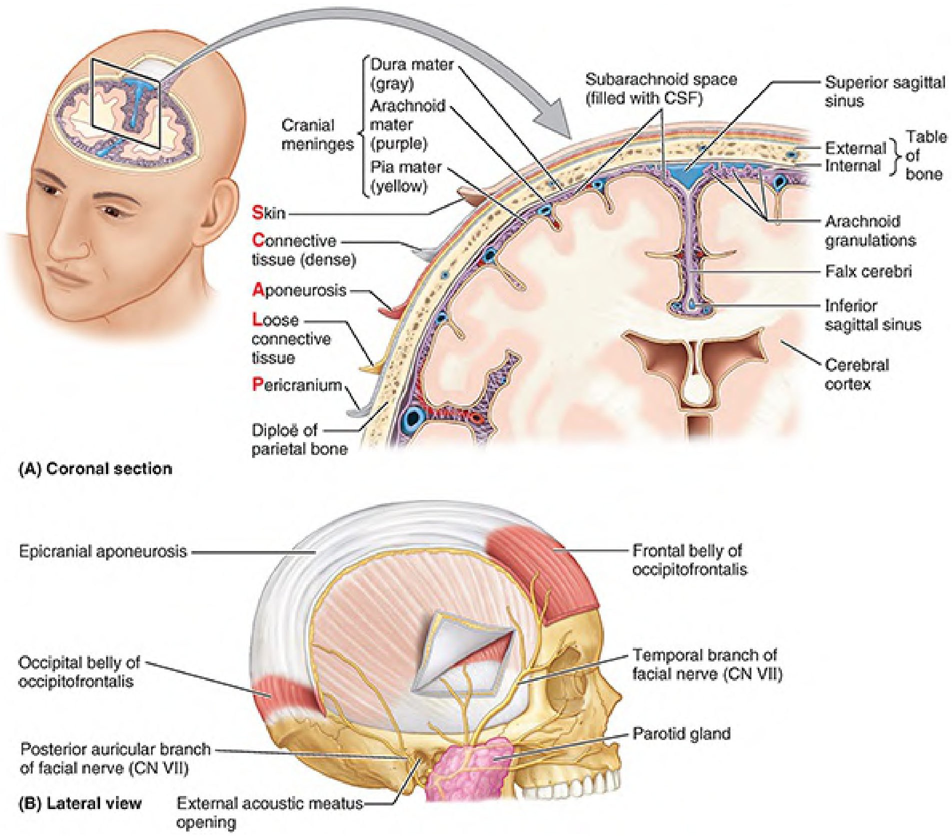


FIGURE 8.15. Layers of scalp, cranium, and meninges. A. Overview. The skin is bound tightly to the epicranial aponeurosis, which moves freely over the pericranium and cranium because of the intervening loose connective tissue. Aponeurosis refers to the epicranial aponeurosis, the flat intermediate tendon of the occipitofrontalis muscle. The cranial meninges and the subarachnoid (leptomeningeal) space are shown. CSF, cerebrospinal fluid. **B.** Occipitofrontalis muscle. Innervation of the two bellies by the posterior auricular and temporal branches of the facial nerve is demonstrated.

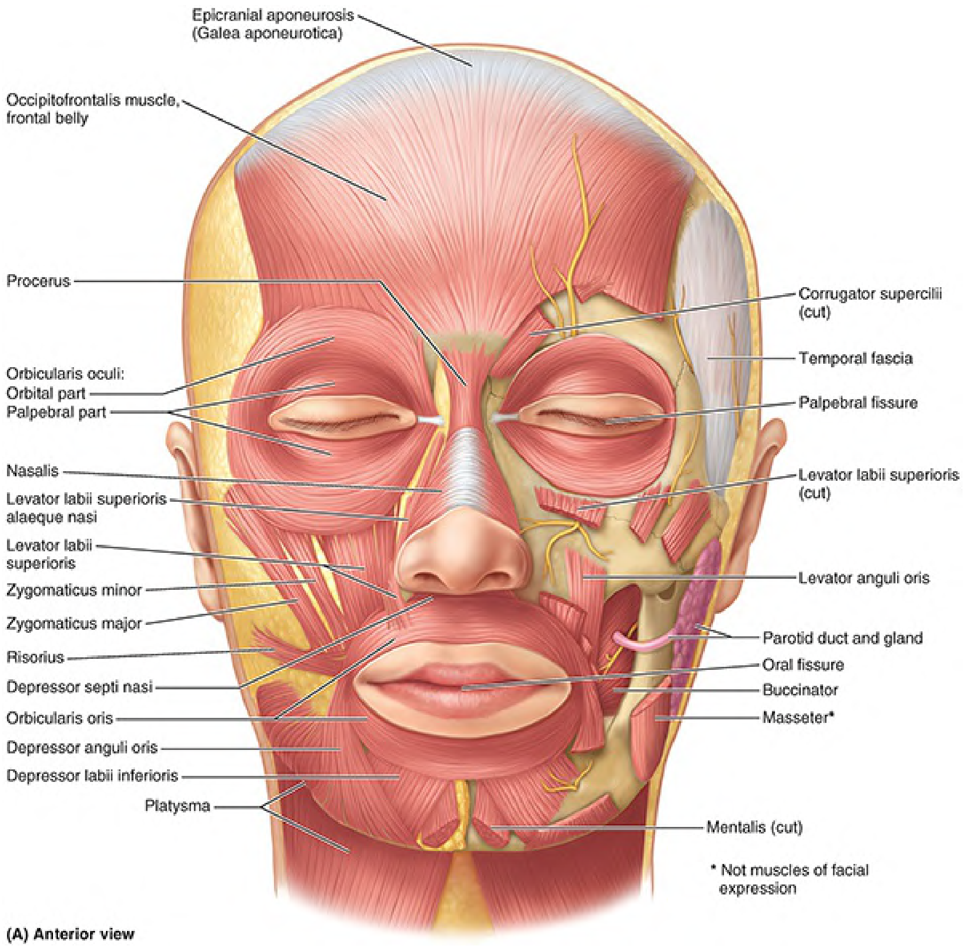
1. **S**kin: thin, except in the occipital region, contains many sweat and sebaceous glands and hair follicles. It has an abundant arterial supply and good venous and lymphatic drainage.
2. **C**onnective tissue: forms the thick, dense, richly vascularized subcutaneous layer that is well supplied with cutaneous nerves
3. **A**poneurosis (**epicranial aponeurosis**): the broad, strong, tendinous sheet that covers the calvaria and serves as the attachment for muscle bellies converging from the forehead and occiput (**occipitofrontalis muscle**) (Fig. 8.15B) and from the temporal bones on each side

(**temporoparietalis** and **anterior** and **superior auricular muscles**). Collectively, these structures constitute the musculo-aponeurotic **epicranius**. The frontal belly of the occipitofrontalis pulls the scalp anteriorly, wrinkles the forehead, and elevates the eyebrows. The occipital belly of the occipitofrontalis pulls the scalp posteriorly, smoothing the skin of the forehead. The superior auricular muscle (a specialized posterior part of the temporoparietalis) elevates the auricle of the external ear. All parts of the epicranius (muscle and aponeurosis) are innervated by the facial nerve.

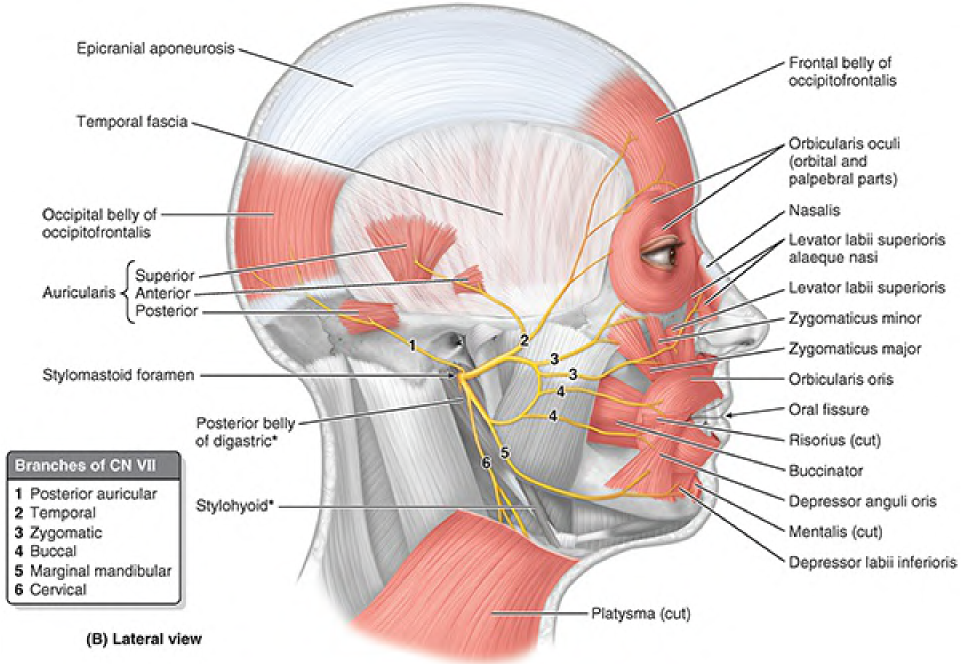
4. **L**oose areolar tissue: a sponge-like layer including potential spaces that may distend with fluid as a result of injury or infection. This layer allows free movement of the **scalp proper** (the first three layers—skin, connective tissue, and epicranial aponeurosis) over the underlying calvaria.
5. **P**ericranium: a dense layer of connective tissue that forms the external periosteum of the neurocranium. It is firmly attached but can be stripped from the crania of living persons, except where the pericranium is continuous with the fibrous tissue in the cranial sutures.

Muscles of Face and Scalp

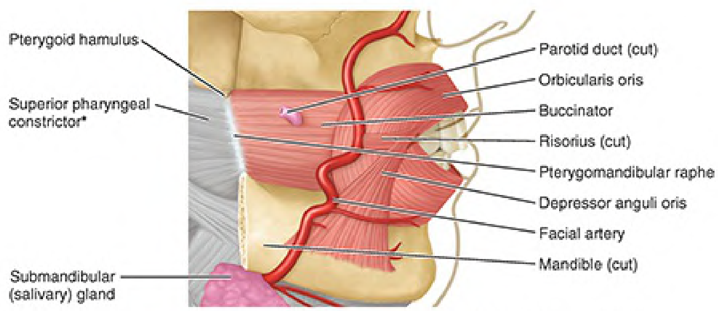
The facial muscles (muscles of facial expression) are in the subcutaneous tissue of the anterior and posterior scalp, face, and neck. They move the skin and change facial expressions to convey mood. Most muscles attach to bone or fascia and produce their effects by pulling the skin. The muscles of the scalp and face are illustrated in Figure 8.16, and their attachments and actions are provided in Table 8.3. Certain muscles and/or muscle groups are discussed in further detail.



(A) Anterior view



(B) Lateral view



(C) Lateral view

*Not muscles of facial expression

FIGURE 8.16. Muscles of scalp and face.

TABLE 8.3. MUSCLES OF SCALP AND FACE

Muscle[a]	Origin	Insertion	Main Action(s)
Occipitofrontalis			
Front belly[2]	Epicranial aponeurosis	Skin and subcutaneous tissue of eyebrows and forehead	Elevates eyebrows and wrinkles skin of forehead; protracts scalp (indicating surprise or curiosity)
Occipital belly[1]	Lateral two thirds of superior nuchal line	Epicranial aponeurosis	Retracts scalp; increasing effectiveness of frontal belly
Orbicularis oculi (orbital sphincter)[2,3]	Medial orbital margin; medial palpebral ligament; lacrimal bone	Skin around margin of orbit; superior and inferior tarsal plates	Closes eyelids: palpebral part does so gently; orbital part tightly (winking)
Corrugator supercilii[2]	Medial end of superciliary arch	Skin superior to middle of supra-orbital margin and superciliary arch	Draws eyebrow medially and inferiorly, creating vertical wrinkles above nose (demonstrating concern or worry)

Procerus plus **transverse part of nasalis**[4]	Fascia aponeurosis covering nasal bone and lateral nasal cartilage	Skin of inferior forehead, between eyebrows	Depresses medial end of eyebrow; wrinkles skin over dorsum of nose (conveying disdain or dislike)
Alar part of nasalis plus **levator labii superioris alaeque nasi**[4]	Frontal process of maxilla (inferomedial margin of orbit)	Major alar cartilage; lateral part of skin of upper lip	Depresses ala laterally, dilating anterior nasal aperture (i.e., “flaring nostrils,” as during anger or exertion); helps to elevate upper lip
Orbicularis oris (oral sphincter)[4]	Medial maxilla and mandible; deep surface of peri-oral skin; angle of mouth (modiolus)	Mucous membrane of lips	Tonus closes oral fissure; phasic contraction compresses and protrudes lips (kissing) or resists distension (when blowing)
Levator labii superioris[4]	Infra-orbital margin (maxilla)	Skin of upper lip	Part of dilators of mouth; retract (elevate) and/or evert upper lip; deepen nasolabial sulcus (showing sadness)
Zygomaticus minor[4]	Anterior aspect, zygomatic bone		
Buccinator (cheek muscle)[4]	Mandible, alveolar process of maxilla and alveolar part of mandible, pterygomandibular raphe	Angle of mouth (modiolus); orbicularis oris	Presses cheek against molar teeth; works with tongue to keep food between occlusal surfaces and out of oral vestibule; resists distension (when blowing)
Zygomaticus major[4]	Lateral aspect of zygomatic bone	Angle of mouth (modiolus)	Part of dilators of mouth; elevate labial commissure—bilaterally to smile (happiness); unilaterally to sneer (disdain)
Levator anguli oris[4]	Infra-orbital maxilla (canine fossa)		Part of dilators of mouth; widens oral fissure, as when grinning or grimacing
Risorius[4]	Parotid fascia and buccal skin (highly variable)		Part of dilators of mouth; depresses labial commissure bilaterally to frown (sadness)
Depressor anguli oris[5]	Anterolateral base of mandible		
Depressor labii inferioris[5]	Platysma and anterolateral body of mandible	Skin of lower lip	Part of dilators of mouth; retracts (depresses) and/or everts lower lip (pouting, sadness)
Mentalis[5]	Body of mandible (anterior to roots of inferior incisors)	Skin of chin (mentolabial sulcus)	Elevates and protrudes lower lip; elevates skin of chin (showing doubt)
Platysma[6]	Subcutaneous tissue of infraclavicular and supraclavicular regions	Base of mandible; skin of cheek and lower lip; angle of mouth (modiolus); orbicularis oris	Depresses mandible (against resistance); tenses skin of inferior face and neck (conveying tension and stress)

[a]All facial muscles are innervated by the facial nerve (CN VII) via its posterior auricular branch (1) or via the temporal (2), zygomatic (3), buccal (4), marginal mandibular (5), or cervical (6) branches of the parotid plexus.

All muscles of facial expression develop from mesoderm in the second pharyngeal arches. A subcutaneous muscular sheet forms during embryonic development that spreads over the neck and face, carrying branches of the nerve of the arch (the facial nerve, CN VII) with it to supply

all the muscles formed from the arch (Moore et al., 2020). The muscular sheet differentiates into muscles that surround the facial orifices (mouth, eyes, and nose), serving as sphincter and dilator mechanisms that also produce many facial expressions (Fig. 8.17). Because of their common embryological origin, the platysma and facial muscles are often fused, and their fibers are frequently intermingled.

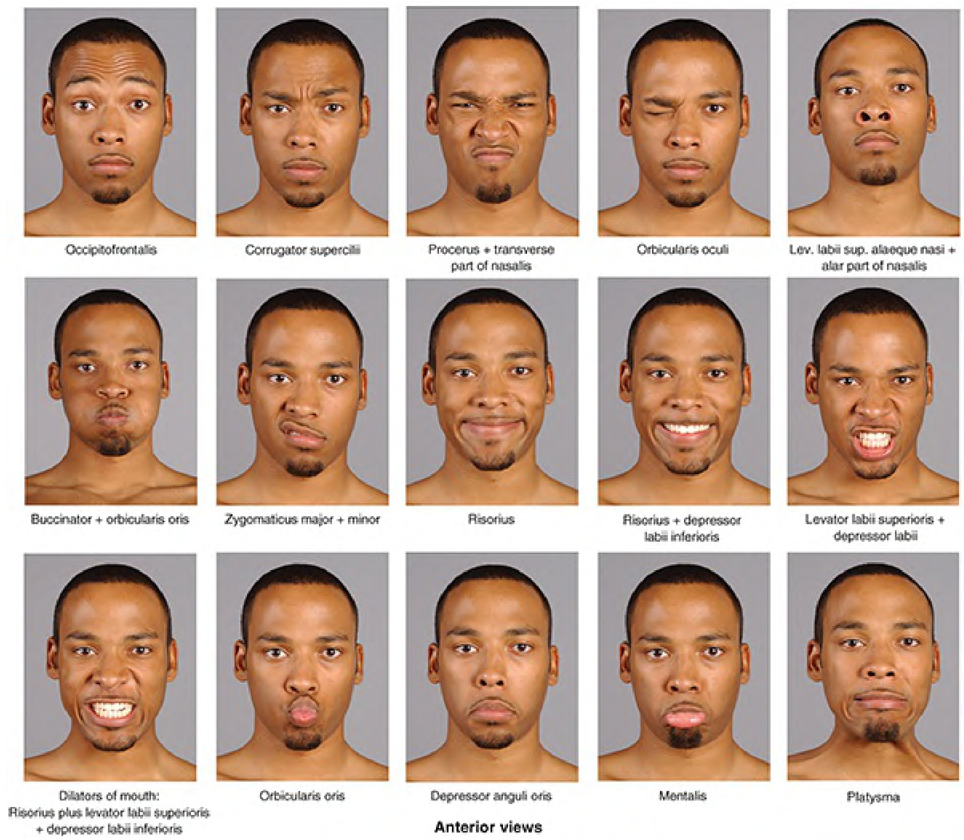


FIGURE 8.17. **Muscles of facial expression in action.** These muscles are superficial sphincters and dilators of the orifices of the head. The facial muscles, supplied by the facial nerve (CN VII), are attached to and move the skin of the face, producing many facial expressions.

MUSCLES OF SCALP, FOREHEAD, AND EYEBROWS

The **occipitofrontalis** is a flat digastric muscle, with **occipital** and **frontal bellies** that share a common tendon, the **epicranial aponeurosis** (Figs. 8.15 and 8.16A, B; Table 8.3). Because the aponeurosis is a layer of the scalp, independent contraction of the occipital belly retracts the scalp and contraction of the frontal belly protracts it. Acting simultaneously, the occipital belly, with bony attachments, works as a synergist with the frontal belly, which has no bony attachments, to elevate the eyebrows and produce transverse wrinkles across the forehead. This gives the face a surprised look.

MUSCLES OF MOUTH, LIPS, AND CHEEKS

The lips, shape, and degree of opening of the mouth are important for clear speech. In addition, we add emphasis to our vocal communication with our facial expressions. Several muscles alter

the shape of the mouth and lips during speaking as well as during such activities as singing, whistling, and mimicry. The shape of the mouth and lips is controlled by a complex three-dimensional group of muscular slips, which include the following (Fig. 8.16B, C; Table 8.3):

- Elevators, retractors, and evertors of the upper lip
- Depressors, retractors, and evertors of the lower lip
- The orbicularis oris, the sphincter around the mouth
- The buccinator in the cheek

At rest, the lips are in gentle contact and the teeth are close together.

The **orbicularis oris**, the first of the series of sphincters associated with the alimentary system (digestive tract), encircles the mouth within the lips, controlling entry and exit through the **oral fissure** (L. rima oris, the opening between the lips). The orbicularis oris is important during articulation (speech).

The **buccinator** (L., trumpeter) is a thin, flat, rectangular muscle that attaches laterally to the alveolar process of the maxillae and alveolar part of the mandible, opposite the molar teeth. It also attaches to the **pterygomandibular raphe**, a tendinous thickening of the buccopharyngeal fascia separating and giving origin to the superior pharyngeal constrictor posteriorly. The buccinator occupies a deeper, more medially placed plane than the other facial muscles, passing deep to the mandible so that it is more closely related to the buccal mucosa than to the skin of the face. The buccinator, active in smiling, also keeps the cheek taut, thereby preventing it from folding and being injured during chewing.

Anteriorly, the fibers of the buccinator mingle medially with those of the orbicularis oris, and the tonus of the two muscles compresses the cheeks and lips against the teeth and gums. The tonic contraction of the buccinator, and especially of the orbicularis oris, provides a gentle but continual resistance to the tendency of the teeth to tilt in an outward direction. In the presence of a short upper lip, or retractors that remove this force, crooked or protrusive ("buck") teeth develop.

The orbicularis oris (from the labial aspect) and buccinator (from the buccal aspect) work with the tongue (from the lingual aspect) to keep food between the occlusal surfaces of the teeth during mastication (chewing) and to prevent food from accumulating in the oral vestibule. The buccinator also helps the cheeks resist the forces generated by whistling and sucking. The buccinator was given its name because it compresses the cheeks (L. buccae) during blowing (e.g., when a musician plays a wind instrument). Some trumpeters (notably the late Dizzy Gillespie) stretch their buccinators and other cheek muscles so much that their cheeks balloon out when they blow forcibly on their instruments.

Several dilator muscles radiate from the lips and angles of the mouth, somewhat like the spokes of a wheel, retracting the various borders of the oral fissure collectively, in groups, or individually. Lateral to the angles of the mouth or **commissures of the lips** (the junctions of the upper and lower lips), fibers of as many as nine facial muscles interlace or merge in a highly variable and multiplanar formation called the **modiolus**, which is largely responsible for the occurrence of dimples in many people.

The **platysma** (G., flat plate) is a broad, thin sheet of muscle in the subcutaneous tissue of the neck (Fig. 8.16A, B; Table 8.3). The anterior borders of the two muscles decussate over the chin and blend with the facial muscles. Acting from its superior attachment, the platysma tenses the skin, producing vertical skin ridges, conveying great stress, and releasing pressure on the superficial veins. Acting from its inferior attachment, the platysma helps depress the mandible and draw the corners of the mouth inferiorly, as in a grimace.

MUSCLES OF ORBITAL OPENING

The function of the eyelids (L. palpebrae) is to protect the eyeballs from injury and excessive light. The eyelids also keep the cornea moist by spreading the tears.

The **orbicularis oculi** closes the eyelids and wrinkles the forehead vertically (Figs. 8.16A, B and 8.18; Table 8.3). Its fibers sweep in concentric circles around the orbital margin and eyelids. Contraction of these fibers narrows the **palpebral fissure** (aperture between the eyelids) and assists the flow of lacrimal fluid (tears) by bringing the lids together laterally first, closing the palpebral fissure in a lateral to medial direction. The orbicularis oculi muscle consists of three parts:

1. Palpebral part: arising from the **medial palpebral ligament** (see Fig. 8.21) and mostly located within the eyelids, gently closes the eyelids (as in blinking or sleep) to keep the cornea from drying
2. Lacrimal part: passing posterior to the lacrimal sac, draws the eyelids medially, aiding drainage of tears
3. Orbital part: overlying the orbital rim and attached to the frontal bone and maxilla medially, tightly closes the eyelids (as in winking or squinting) to protect the eyeballs against glare and dust

FIGURE 8.18. Disposition and actions of orbicularis oculi muscle. A. Parts of orbicularis oculi. **B.** Palpebral part. The palpebral part gently closes the eyelids. **C.** Orbital part. The orbital part tightly closes the eyelids.

When all three parts of the orbicularis oculi contract, the eyes are firmly closed (Figs. 8.17 and 8.18C).

MUSCLES OF NOSE AND EARS

As demonstrated in the Clinical Box "Flaring of Nostrils" in this chapter, the muscles of the nose may provide evidence of breathing behaviors. Otherwise, although these muscles are functionally important in certain mammals (elephants, tapirs, rabbits, and some diving

mammals), they are relatively unimportant in humans, except in terms of facial expression and in the specialized field of aesthetic plastic surgery. The muscles of the ears, important in animals capable of cocking or directing the ears toward the sources of sounds, are even less critical in humans.

Nerves of Face and Scalp

Cutaneous (sensory) innervation of the face and anterosuperior part of the scalp is provided primarily by the trigeminal nerve (CN V), whereas motor innervation to the facial muscles is provided by the facial nerve (CN VII).

CUTANEOUS NERVES OF FACE AND SCALP

The **trigeminal nerve** (CN V) originates from the lateral surface of the pons of the midbrain by two roots: motor and sensory. These roots are comparable to the motor (anterior) and sensory (posterior) roots of spinal nerves. The sensory root of CN V consists of the central processes of pseudounipolar neurons located in a sensory ganglion (**trigeminal ganglion**) at the distal end of the root, which is bypassed by the multipolar neuronal axons making up the motor root. CN V is the sensory nerve for the face and the motor nerve for the muscles of mastication and several small muscles (Fig. 8.19).

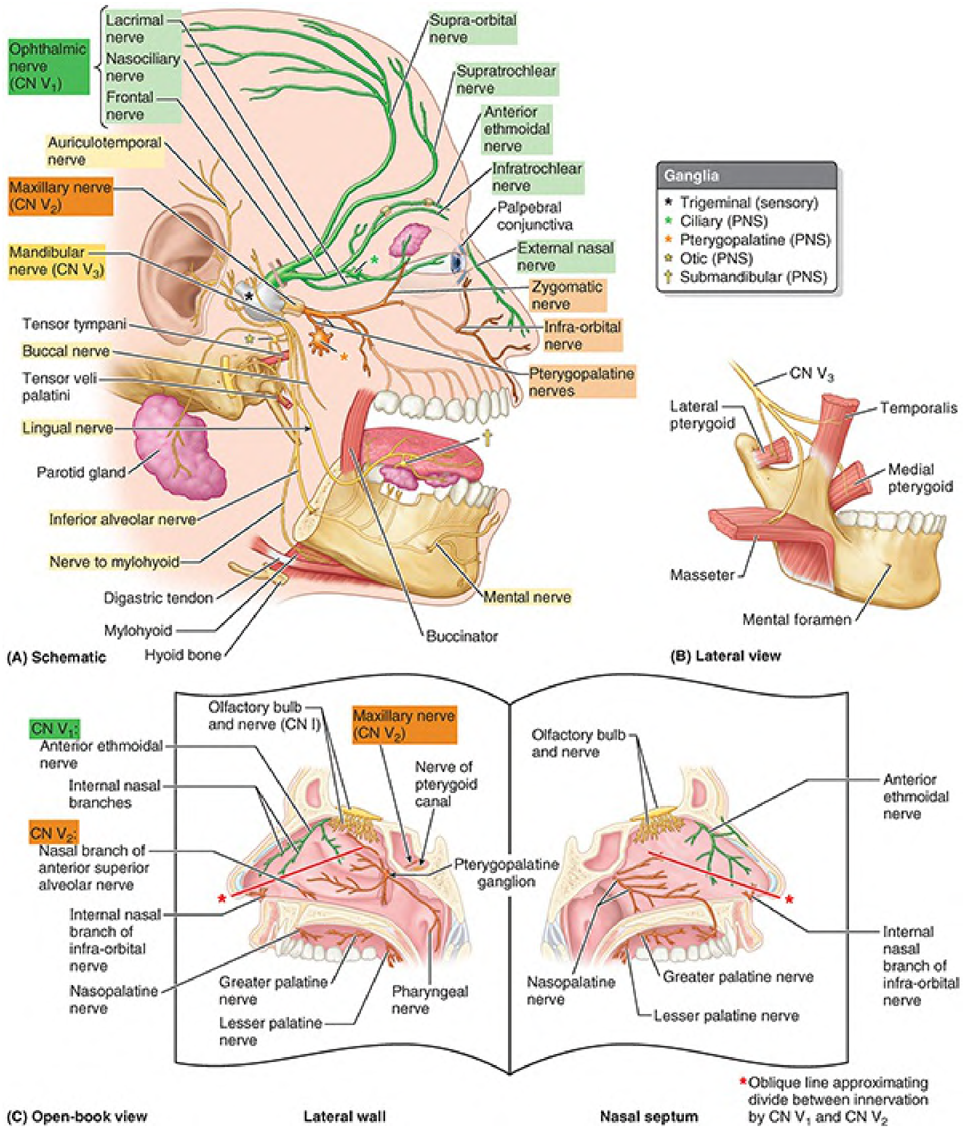


FIGURE 8.19. Distribution of trigeminal nerve (CN V). A. Overview. The three divisions of CN V arise from the trigeminal ganglion. In addition to the trigeminal ganglion, a sensory ganglion (similar to the spinal ganglia of spinal nerves), and four parasympathetic ganglia (three of which are shown here), are associated with the branches of the trigeminal nerve. **B.** Branches of mandibular nerve (CN V_3) supplying muscles of mastication. **C.** Superficial and deep distribution of CN V_1, and CN V_2 on lateral wall and septum of right nasal cavity.

The peripheral processes of the neurons of the trigeminal ganglion constitute three divisions of the nerve: the ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1), the maxillary nerve (CN V_2), and the sensory component of the mandibular nerve (CN V_3). These nerves are named according to their main areas of termination: the eye, maxilla, and mandible, respectively. The first two divisions (ophthalmic and maxillary nerves) are wholly sensory. The mandibular nerve is largely sensory, but it also receives the motor fibers (axons) from the motor root of CN V that mainly supply the muscles of mastication. The cutaneous nerves derived from each division of CN V are illustrated in Figure 8.20, and the origin, course, and distribution of each nerve are listed and described in Table 8.4.

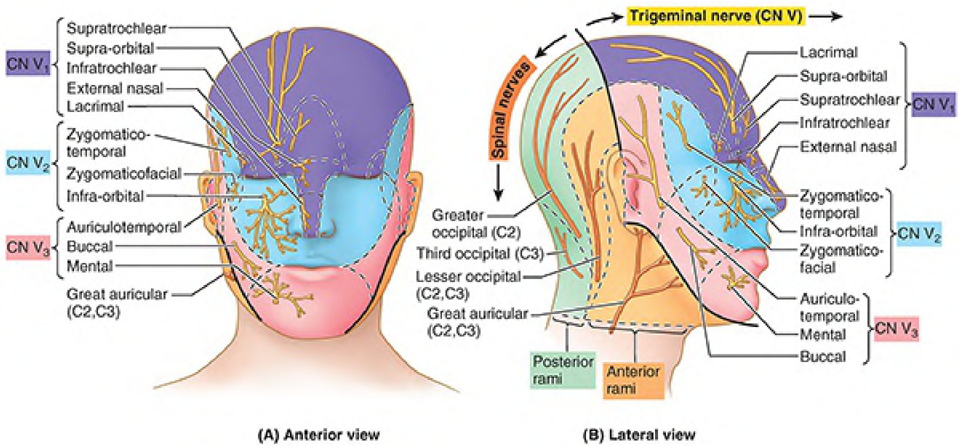


FIGURE 8.20. **Cutaneous nerves of face and scalp.**

TABLE 8.4. CUTANEOUS NERVES OF FACE AND SCALP

Nerve	Origin	Course	Distribution
Cutaneous nerves derived from ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1)			
Supra-orbital	Largest branch from bifurcation of frontal nerve, approximately in middle of orbital roof	Continues anteriorly along roof of orbit, emerging via supra-orbital notch or foramen; ascends forehead, breaking into branches	Mucosa of frontal sinus; skin and conjunctiva of middle of superior eyelid; skin and pericranium of anterolateral forehead and scalp to vertex (interauricular line)
Supratrochlear	Smaller branch from bifurcation of frontal nerve, approximately in middle of orbital roof	Continues anteromedially along roof of orbit, passing lateral to trochlea and ascending forehead	Skin and conjunctive of medial aspect of superior eyelid; skin and pericranium of anteromedial forehead
Lacrimal	Smallest branch from trifurcation of CN V_1 proximal to superior orbital fissure	Runs superolaterally through orbit, receiving secretomotor fibers via a communicating branch from the zygomaticotemporal nerve	Lacrimal gland (secretomotor fibers); small area of skin and conjunctive of lateral part of superior eyelid
Infratrochlear	Terminal branch (with anterior ethmoidal nerve) of nasociliary nerve	Follows medial wall of orbit, passing inferior to trochlea	Skin lateral to root of nose; skin and conjunctiva of eyelids adjacent to medial canthus, lacrimal sac, and lacrimal caruncle
External nasal	Terminal branch of anterior ethmoidal nerve (of nasociliary nerve)	Emerges from nasal cavity by passing between nasal bone and lateral nasal cartilage	Skin of nasal ala, vestibule, and dorsum of nose, including apex
Cutaneous nerves derived from maxillary nerve (CN V_2)			
Infra-orbital	Continuation of CN V_2 distal to its entrance into the orbit via the inferior orbital fissure	Traverses infra-orbital groove and canal in orbital floor, giving rise to superior alveolar branches; then emerges via infra-orbital foramen, immediately dividing into inferior palpebral, internal and external	Mucosa of maxillary sinus; premolar, canine, and incisor maxillary teeth; skin and conjunctiva of inferior eyelid; skin of cheek, lateral nose, and antero-inferior nasal

		nasal, and superior labial branches	septum; skin and oral mucosa of superior lip
Zygomaticofacial	Smaller terminal branch (with zygomaticotemporal nerve) of zygomatic nerve	Traverses zygomaticofacial canal in zygomatic bone at inferolateral angle of orbit	Skin on prominence of cheek
Zygomaticotemporal	Larger terminal branch (with zygomaticofacial nerve) of zygomatic nerve	Sends communicating branch to lacrimal nerve in orbit; then passes to temporal fossa via zygomaticotemporal canal in zygomatic bone	Hairless skin anterior part of temporal fossa
Cutaneous nerves derived from mandibular nerve (CN V_3)			
Auriculotemporal	In infratemporal fossa via two roots from posterior trunk of CN V_3 that encircle middle meningeal artery	Passes posteriorly deep to ramus of mandible and superior deep part of parotid gland, emerging posterior to temporomandibular joint	Skin anterior to auricle and posterior two thirds of temporal region; skin of tragus and adjacent helix of auricle; skin of roof of external acoustic meatus; and skin of superior tympanic membrane
Buccal	In infratemporal fossa as sensory branch of anterior trunk of CN V_3	Passes between two parts of lateral pterygoid muscle, emerging anteriorly from cover of ramus of mandible and masseter, uniting with buccal branches of facial nerve	Skin and oral mucosa of cheek (overlying and deep to anterior part of buccinator); buccal gingivae (gums) adjacent to second and third molars
Mental	Terminal branch of inferior alveolar nerve (CN V_3)	Emerges from mandibular canal via mental foramen in anterolateral aspect of body of mandible	Skin of chin and skin; oral mucosa of inferior lip
Cutaneous nerves derived from anterior rami of cervical spinal nerves			
Great auricular	Spinal nerves C2 and C3 via cervical plexus	Ascends vertically across sternocleidomastoid, posterior to external jugular vein	Skin overlying angle of mandible and inferior lobe of auricle; parotid sheath
Lesser occipital		Follows posterior border of sternocleidomastoid; then ascends posterior to auricle	Scalp posterior to auricle
Cutaneous nerves derived from posterior rami of cervical spinal nerves			
Greater occipital nerve	As medial branch of posterior ramus of spinal nerve C2	Emerges between axis and obliquus capitis inferior; then pierces trapezius	Scalp of occipital region
Third occipital nerve	As lateral branch of posterior ramus of spinal nerve C3	Pierces trapezius	Scalp of lower occipital and suboccipital regions

The cutaneous nerves of the neck overlap those of the face. Cutaneous branches of cervical nerves from the cervical plexus extend over the posterior aspect of the neck and scalp. The **great auricular nerve** innervates the inferior aspect of the auricle (external ear) and much of the parotid region of the face (the area overlying the angle of the jaw).

OPHTHALMIC NERVE

The **ophthalmic nerve** (CN V_1), the superior division of the trigeminal nerve, is the smallest of the three divisions of CN V. It arises from the trigeminal ganglion as a wholly sensory nerve and supplies the area of skin derived from the embryonic frontonasal prominence (Moore et al., 2020). As CN V_1 enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure, it trifurcates into the frontal, nasociliary, and lacrimal nerves (Fig. 8.19). Except for the external nasal nerve, the cutaneous branches of CN V_1 reach the skin of the face via the orbital opening (Fig. 8.21).

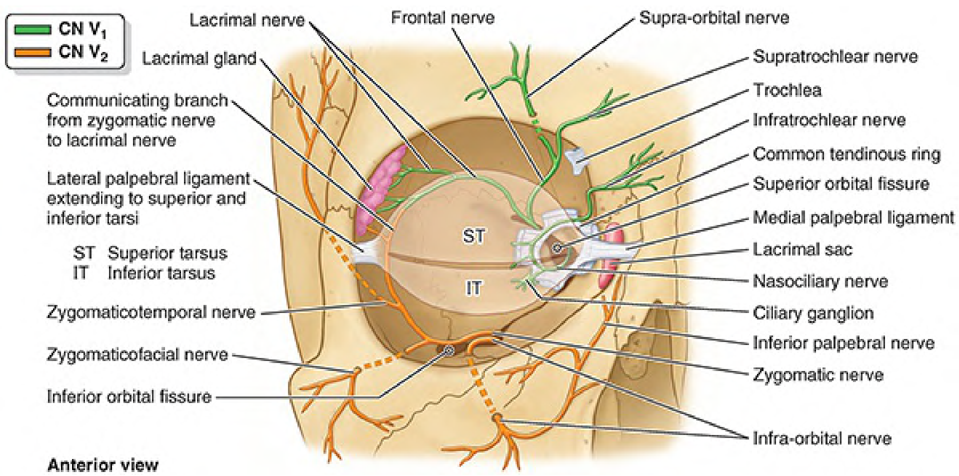


FIGURE 8.21. Cutaneous nerves of orbital/periorbital region. Cutaneous nerves are shown in relation to the orbital walls and rim and the fibrous skeleton of the eyelids. The skin of the superior eyelid is supplied by branches of the ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1), whereas the inferior eyelid is supplied mainly by branches of the maxillary nerve (CN V_2).

The **frontal nerve**, the largest branch produced by the trifurcation of CN V_1, runs along the roof of the orbit toward the orbital opening, bifurcating approximately midway into the cutaneous **supra-orbital** and **supratrochlear nerves**, distributed to the forehead and scalp (Figs. 8.21 and 8.22).

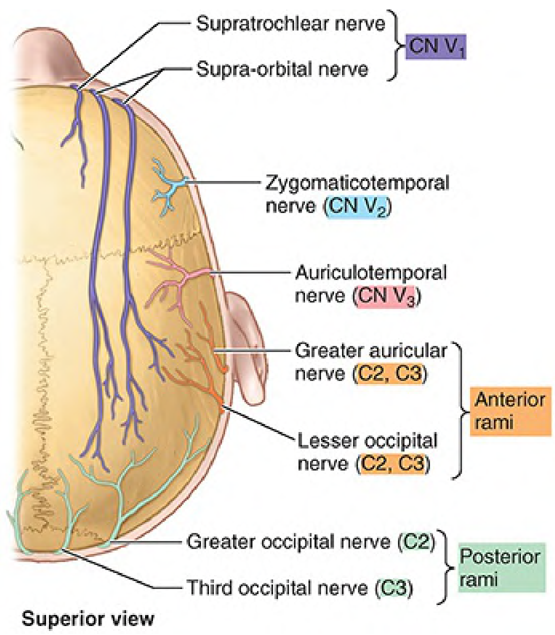


FIGURE 8.22. **Nerves of scalp.** The nerves appear in sequence: CN V_1, CN V_2, CN V_3, anterior rami of C2 and C3, and posterior rami of C2 and C3.

The **nasociliary nerve**, the intermediate branch of the CN V_1 trifurcation, supplies branches to the eyeball and divides within the orbit into the posterior ethmoidal, anterior ethmoidal, and infratrochlear nerves (Fig. 8.19). The posterior and anterior ethmoidal nerves leave the orbit, the latter running a circuitous course passing through the cranial and nasal cavities. Its terminal branch, the **external nasal nerve**, is a cutaneous nerve supplying the external nose. The **infratrochlear nerve** is a terminal branch of the nasociliary nerve and its main cutaneous branch.

The **lacrimal nerve**, the smallest branch from the trifurcation of CN V_1, is primarily a cutaneous branch, but it also conveys some secretomotor fibers, sent via a communicating branch, from a ganglion associated with the maxillary nerve for innervation of the lacrimal gland (Figs. 8.19, 8.20, and 8.21).

MAXILLARY NERVE

The **maxillary nerve** (CN V_2), the intermediate division of the trigeminal nerve, also arises as a wholly sensory nerve (Fig. 8.19A). CN V_2 passes anteriorly from the trigeminal ganglion and leaves the cranium through the foramen rotundum in the base of the greater wing of the sphenoid. The maxillary nerve enters the pterygopalatine fossa, where it gives off branches to the pterygopalatine ganglion and continues anteriorly, entering the orbit through the inferior orbital fissure (Fig. 8.21). It gives off the zygomatic nerve and passes anteriorly into the infra-orbital groove and foramen as the infra-orbital nerve.

The **zygomatic nerve** runs to the lateral wall of the orbit, giving rise to two of the three cutaneous branches of CN V_2, the **zygomaticofacial** and **zygomaticotemporal nerves**. The zygomatic nerve then continues as a communicating branch conveying secretomotor fibers to the

lacrimal nerve. En route to the face, the **infra-orbital** nerve gives off palatine branches, branches to the mucosa of the maxillary sinus, and branches to the middle and anterior upper teeth. It reaches the skin of the face by traversing the infra-orbital foramen on the infra-orbital surface of the maxilla. The three cutaneous branches of the maxillary nerve supply the area of skin derived from the embryonic maxillary prominences (Fig. 8.20) (Moore et al., 2020).

MANDIBULAR NERVE

The **mandibular nerve** (CN V_3) is the inferior and largest division of the trigeminal nerve (Fig. 8.19A). It is formed by the union of sensory fibers from the sensory ganglion and the motor root of CN V in the foramen ovale in the greater wing of the sphenoid, through which CN V_3 emerges from the cranium. CN V_3 has three sensory branches that supply the area of skin derived from the embryonic mandibular prominence. It also supplies motor fibers to the muscles of mastication (Fig. 8.19B). CN V_3 is the only division of CN V that carries motor fibers. The major cutaneous branches of CN V_3 are the **auriculotemporal**, **buccal**, and **mental nerves**. En route to the skin, the auriculotemporal nerve passes deep to the parotid gland, conveying secretomotor fibers to it from the otic ganglion (Fig. 8.19A).

NERVES OF SCALP

Innervation of the scalp anterior to the auricles of the external ears is through branches of all three divisions of CN V, the trigeminal nerve (Figs. 8.20B and 8.22; Table 8.4). Posterior to the auricles, the nerve supply is from spinal cutaneous nerves (C2 and C3).

MOTOR NERVES OF FACE

The motor nerves of the face are the facial nerve to the muscles of facial expression and the motor root of the trigeminal nerve/mandibular nerve to the muscles of mastication (masseter, temporal, medial, and lateral pterygoids). These nerves also supply some more deeply placed muscles (described later in this chapter in relation to the mouth, middle ear, and neck) (Fig. 8.19A).

FACIAL NERVE

CN VII, the **facial nerve**, has a motor root and a sensory/parasympathetic root (the latter being the intermediate nerve). The **motor root of CN VII** supplies the muscles of facial expression, including the superficial muscle of the neck (platysma), auricular muscles, scalp muscles, and certain other muscles derived from mesoderm in the embryonic second pharyngeal arch (Fig. 8.23). Following a circuitous route through the temporal bone, CN VII emerges from the cranium through the stylomastoid foramen located between the mastoid and styloid processes (see Figs. 8.9B and 8.11). It immediately gives off the **posterior auricular nerve**, which passes posterosuperior to the auricle of the ear to supply the auricularis posterior and occipital belly of the occipitofrontalis muscle (Fig. 8.23A, C).

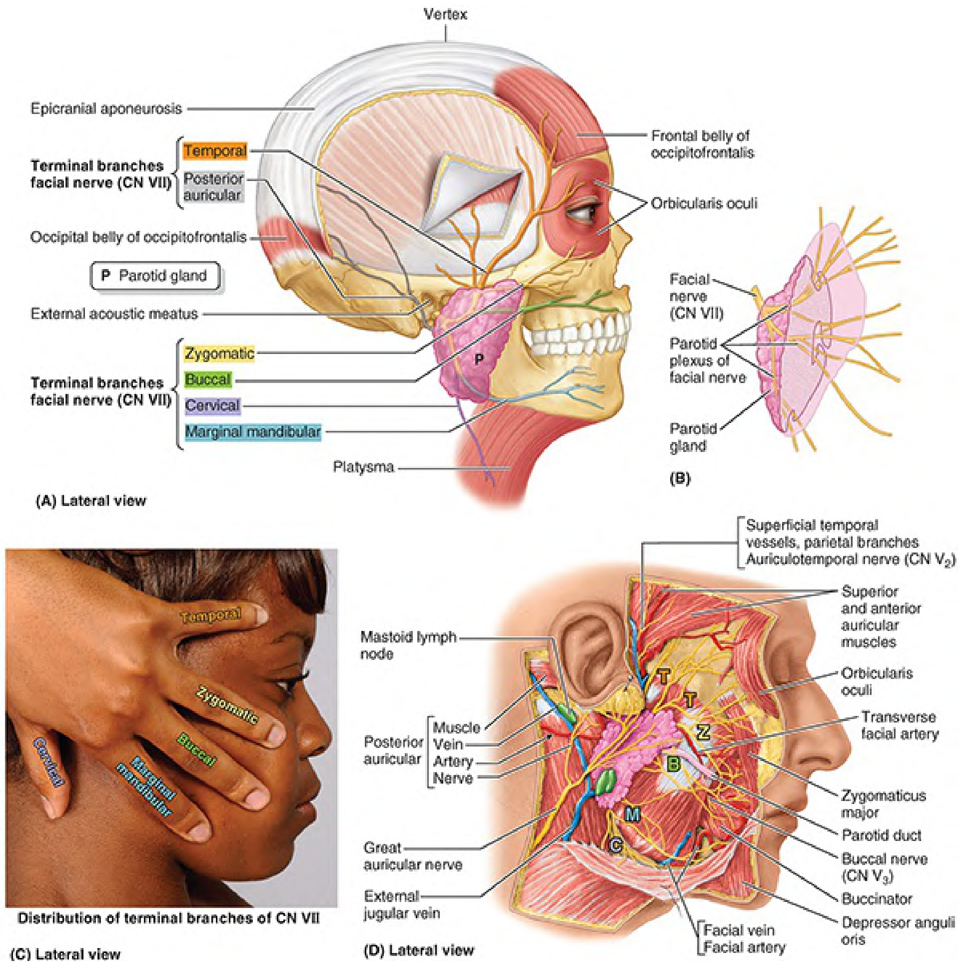


FIGURE 8.23. Branches of facial nerve (CN VII). A. Overview. The terminal branches of CN VII arise from the parotid plexus within the parotid gland. They emerge from the gland under cover of its lateral surface and radiate in a generally anterior direction across the face. Although intimately related to the parotid gland (and often contacting the submandibular gland via one or more of its lower branches), CN VII does not send nerve fibers to the salivary glands. Two muscles representing the extremes of the distribution of CN VII, the occipitofrontalis and platysma, are also shown. **B.** Parotid plexus of facial nerve embedded in parotid gland. The gland is sectioned in a coronal plane. **C.** Method for demonstrating and general course of terminal branches of CN VII. **D.** Dissection. The great auricular nerve (C2 and C3), which supplies the parotid sheath and skin over the angle of the mandible, and terminal branches of the facial nerve, which supply the muscles of facial expression are demonstrated. B, buccal; C, cervical; M, marginal mandibular; T, temporal; Z, zygomatic.

The main trunk of CN VII runs anteriorly and is engulfed by the parotid gland, in which it forms the **parotid plexus**. This plexus gives rise to the five terminal branches of the facial nerve: temporal, zygomatic, buccal, marginal mandibular, and cervical. The names of the branches refer to the regions they supply. Specific muscles supplied by each branch are identified in Table 8.3.

The **temporal branch of CN VII** emerges from the superior border of the parotid gland and crosses the zygomatic arch to supply the auricularis superior and auricularis anterior; the frontal belly of the occipitofrontalis; and, most important, the superior part of the orbicularis oculi.

The **zygomatic branch of CN VII** passes via two or three branches superior and mainly inferior to the eye to supply the inferior part of the orbicularis oculi and other facial muscles inferior to the orbit.

The **buccal branch of CN VII** passes external to the buccinator to supply this muscle and the muscles of the upper lip (upper parts of orbicularis oris and inferior fibers of levator labii superioris).

The **marginal mandibular branch of CN VII** supplies the risorius and muscles of the lower lip and chin. It emerges from the inferior border of the parotid gland and crosses the inferior border of the mandible deep to the platysma to reach the face. In approximately 20% of people, this branch passes inferior to the angle of the mandible.

The **cervical branch of CN VII** passes inferiorly from the inferior border of the parotid gland and runs posterior to the mandible to supply the platysma (Fig. 8.23).

Cutaneous branches from the geniculate ganglion accompany the auricular branch of the vagus nerve to skin on both sides of the auricle, in the region of the concha. Although not evident anatomically, their existence is most evident through clinical manifestations.

Superficial Vasculature of Face and Scalp

The face is richly supplied by with superficial arteries and external veins, as is evident in blushing and blanching (e.g., becoming pale due to cold). The terminal branches of both arteries and veins anastomose freely, including anastomoses across the midline with contralateral partners.

SUPERFICIAL ARTERIES OF FACE

Most superficial arteries of the face are branches or derivatives of branches of the external carotid artery, as illustrated in Figure 8.24. The origin, course, and distribution of these arteries are presented in Table 8.5. The **facial artery** provides the major arterial supply to the face. It arises from the external carotid artery and winds its way to the inferior border of the mandible, just anterior to the masseter (Figs. 8.23C and 8.24B). The artery lies superficially here, immediately deep to the platysma. The facial artery crosses the mandible, buccinator, and maxilla as it courses over the face to the medial angle (canthus) of the eye, where the superior and inferior eyelids meet (Fig. 8.24B). The facial artery lies deep to the zygomaticus major and levator labii superioris muscles. Near the termination of its sinuous course through the face, the facial artery passes approximately a finger's breadth lateral to the angle of the mouth. The facial artery sends branches to the upper and lower lips (**superior** and **inferior labial arteries**), ascends along the side of the nose, and anastomoses with the dorsal nasal branch of the ophthalmic artery. Distal to the **lateral nasal artery** at the side of the nose, the terminal part of the facial artery is called the **angular artery**.

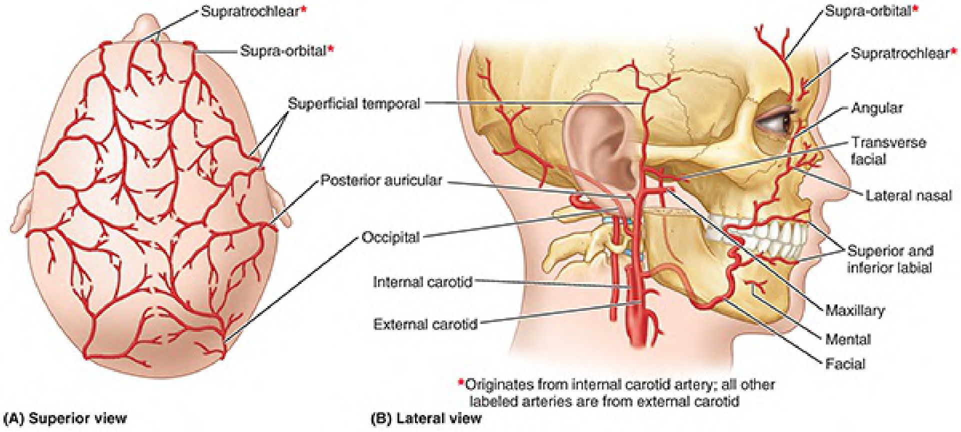


FIGURE 8.24. Superficial arteries of face and scalp.

TABLE 8.5. SUPERFICIAL ARTERIES OF FACE AND SCALP

Artery	Origin	Course	Distribution
Facial	External carotid artery	Ascends deep to submandibular gland; winds around inferior border of mandible and enters face	Muscles of facial expression and face
Inferior labial	Facial artery near angle of mouth	Runs medially in lower lip	Lower lip
Superior labial		Runs medially in upper lip	Upper lip and ala (side) and septum of nose
Lateral nasal	Facial artery as it ascends alongside nose	Passes to ala of nose	Skin on ala and dorsum of nose
Angular	Terminal branch of facial artery	Passes to medial angle (canthus) of eye	Superior part of cheek and inferior eyelid
Occipital	External carotid artery	Passes medial to posterior belly of digastric and mastoid process; accompanies occipital nerve in occipital region	Scalp of back of head, as far as vertex
Posterior auricular	External carotid artery	Passes posteriorly, deep to parotid gland, along styloid process between mastoid process and ear	Auricle of ear and scalp posterior to auricle
Superficial temporal	Smaller terminal branch of external carotid artery	Ascends anterior to ear to region and ends in scalp	Facial muscles and skin of temporal frontal and temporal regions
Transverse facial	Superficial temporal artery within parotid gland	Crosses face superficial to masseter and inferior to zygomatic arch	Parotid gland and duct, muscles and skin of face
Mental	Terminal branch of inferior alveolar artery	Emerges from mental foramen and passes to chin	Facial muscles and skin of chin
Supra-orbital[a]	Terminal branches of ophthalmic artery	Passes superiorly from supra-orbital foramen	Muscles and skin of forehead and scalp and superior conjunctiva
Supratrochlear[a]		Passes superiorly from supratrochlear notch	

[a]Source is internal carotid artery.

The **superficial temporal artery** is the smaller terminal branch of the external carotid artery; the other branch is the maxillary artery. The superficial temporal artery emerges on the face between the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) and the auricle, enters the temporal fossa, and ends in the scalp by dividing into frontal and parietal branches. These arterial branches accompany or run in close proximity to the corresponding branches of the auriculotemporal nerve.

The **transverse facial artery** arises from the superficial temporal artery within the parotid gland and crosses the face superficial to the masseter (Figs. 8.23C and 8.24B), approximately a finger's breadth inferior to the zygomatic arch. It divides into numerous branches that supply the parotid gland and duct, the masseter, and the skin of the face. It anastomoses with branches of the facial artery.

In addition to the superficial temporal arteries, several other arteries accompany cutaneous nerves in the face. **Supra-orbital** and **supratrochlear arteries**, branches of the ophthalmic artery, accompany nerves of the same name across the eyebrows and forehead (Fig. 8.24; Table 8.5). The supra-orbital artery continues and supplies the anterior scalp to the vertex. The **mental artery**, the only superficial branch derived from the maxillary artery, accompanies the nerve of the same name in the chin.

ARTERIES OF SCALP

The scalp has a rich blood supply (Fig. 8.24A; Table 8.5). The arteries course within layer two of the scalp, the subcutaneous connective tissue layer between the skin and the epicranial aponeurosis. The arteries anastomose freely with adjacent arteries and across the midline with the contralateral artery. The arterial walls are firmly attached to the dense connective tissue in which the arteries are embedded, limiting their ability to constrict when cut. Consequently, bleeding from scalp wounds is profuse.

The arterial supply is from the **external carotid arteries** through the occipital, posterior auricular, and superficial temporal arteries and from the internal carotid arteries through the supratrochlear and supra-orbital arteries. The arteries of the scalp supply little blood to the neurocranium, which is supplied primarily by the middle meningeal artery.

EXTERNAL VEINS OF FACE

Most external facial veins are drained by veins that accompany the arteries of the face. As with most superficial veins, they are subject to many variations; a common pattern is shown in Figure 8.25, and Table 8.6 provides details.

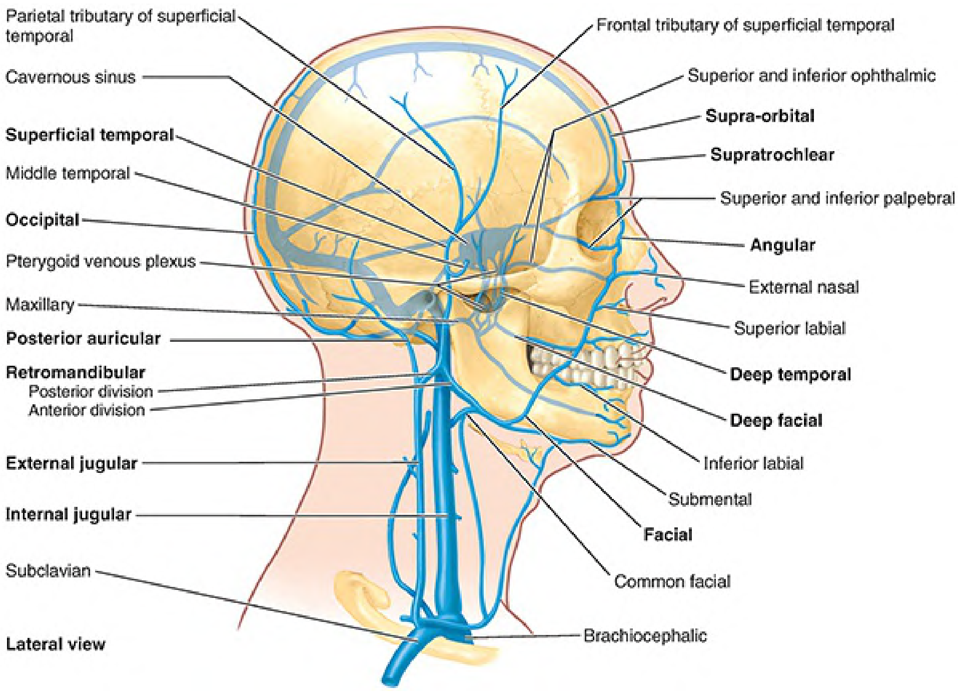


FIGURE 8.25. **Veins of face and scalp.**

TABLE 8.6. VEINS OF FACE AND SCALP

Vein	Origin	Course	Termination	Area Drained
Supratrochlear	Begins from venous plexus on forehead and scalp, through which it communicates with frontal branch of superficial temporal vein, its contralateral partner, and supra-orbital vein	Descends near midline of forehead to root of nose, where it joins supra-orbital vein	Angular vein at root of nose	Anterior part of scalp and forehead
Supra-orbital	Begins in forehead by anastomosing with frontal tributary of superficial temporal vein	Passes medially superior to orbit; joins supratrochlear vein; a branch passes through supra-orbital notch and joins with superior ophthalmic vein		
Angular	Begins at root of nose by union of supratrochlear and supra-orbital veins	Descends obliquely along root and side of nose to inferior orbital margin	Becomes facial vein at inferior margin of orbit	Anterior part of scalp and forehead; superior and inferior eyelids and conjunctiva; may receive drainage from cavernous sinus
Facial	Continuation of angular vein past	Descends along lateral	Internal jugular vein	Anterior scalp

	inferior margin of orbit	border of nose, receiving external nasal and inferior palpebral veins; then passes obliquely across face to cross inferior border of mandible; receives communication from retromandibular vein (after which, it is sometimes called common facial vein)	opposite or inferior to level of hyoid bone	and forehead; eyelids; external nose; anterior cheek; lips; chin; and submandibular gland
Deep facial	Pterygoid venous plexus	Runs anteriorly on maxilla superior to buccinator and deep to masseter, emerging medial to anterior border of masseter onto face	Enters posterior aspect of facial vein	Infratemporal fossa (most areas supplied by maxillary artery)
Superficial temporal	Begins from widespread plexus of veins on side of scalp and along zygomatic arch	Frontal and parietal tributaries unite anterior to the auricle; crosses temporal root of zygomatic arch to pass from temporal region and enter substance of the parotid gland	Joins maxillary vein posterior to neck of mandible to form retromandibular vein	Side of scalp; superficial aspect of temporal muscle; and external ear
Retromandibular	Formed anterior to ear by union of superficial temporal and maxillary veins	Runs posterior and deep to ramus of mandible through substance of parotid gland; communicates at inferior end with facial vein	Unites with posterior auricular vein to form external jugular vein	Parotid gland and masseter muscle

Like veins elsewhere, they have abundant anastomoses that allow drainage to occur by alternate routes during periods of temporary compression. The alternate routes include both superficial pathways (via the facial and retromandibular/external jugular veins) and deep drainage (via the anastomoses with the cavernous sinus, pterygoid venous plexus, and the internal jugular vein).

The **facial veins**, coursing with or parallel to the facial arteries, are valveless veins that provide the primary superficial drainage of the face. Tributaries of the facial vein include the **deep facial vein**, which drains the pterygoid venous plexus of the infratemporal fossa. Inferior to the margin of the mandible, the facial vein is joined by the anterior (communicating) branch of the retromandibular vein. The facial vein drains directly or indirectly into the internal jugular vein (IJV). At the medial angle of the eye, the facial vein communicates with the superior ophthalmic vein, which drains into the cavernous sinus.

The **retromandibular vein** is a deep vessel of the face formed by the union of the superficial

temporal vein and the maxillary vein, the latter draining the pterygoid venous plexus. The retromandibular vein runs posterior to the ramus of the mandible within the substance of the parotid gland, superficial to the external carotid artery and deep to the facial nerve. As it emerges from the inferior pole of the parotid gland, the retromandibular vein divides into an anterior branch that unites with the facial vein and a posterior branch that joins the posterior auricular vein inferior to the parotid gland to form the **external jugular vein**. This vein passes inferiorly and superficially in the neck to empty into the subclavian vein.

VEINS OF SCALP

The venous drainage of the superficial parts of the scalp is through the accompanying veins of the scalp arteries, the **supra-orbital** and **supratrochlear veins**. The **superficial temporal veins** and **posterior auricular veins** drain the scalp anterior and posterior to the auricles, respectively. The posterior auricular vein often receives a mastoid emissary vein from the sigmoid sinus, a dural venous sinus (see Fig. 8.33). The **occipital veins** drain the occipital region of the scalp. Venous drainage of deep parts of the scalp in the temporal region is through **deep temporal veins**, which are tributaries of the pterygoid venous plexus.

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE OF FACE AND SCALP

There are no lymph nodes in the scalp, and except for the parotid/buccal region, there are no lymph nodes in the face. Lymph from the scalp, face, and neck drains into the superficial ring (pericervical collar) of lymph nodes—submental, submandibular, parotid, mastoid, and occipital—located at the junction of the head and neck (Fig. 8.26A). The lymphatic vessels of the face accompany other facial vessels. Superficial lymphatic vessels accompany veins, and deep lymphatics accompany arteries. All lymphatic vessels from the head and neck drain directly or indirectly into the deep cervical lymph nodes (Fig. 8.26B), a chain of nodes mainly located along the IJV in the neck. Lymph from these deep nodes passes to the **jugular lymphatic trunk**, which joins the thoracic duct on the left side and the IJV or **brachiocephalic vein** on the right side. A summary of the lymphatic drainage of the face follows:

- Lymph from the lateral part of the face and scalp, including the eyelids, drains to the superficial **parotid lymph nodes**.
- Lymph from the deep parotid nodes drains to the **deep cervical lymph nodes**.
- Lymph from the upper lip and lateral parts of the lower lip drains to the **submandibular lymph nodes**.
- Lymph from the chin and central part of the lower lip drains to the **submental lymph nodes**.

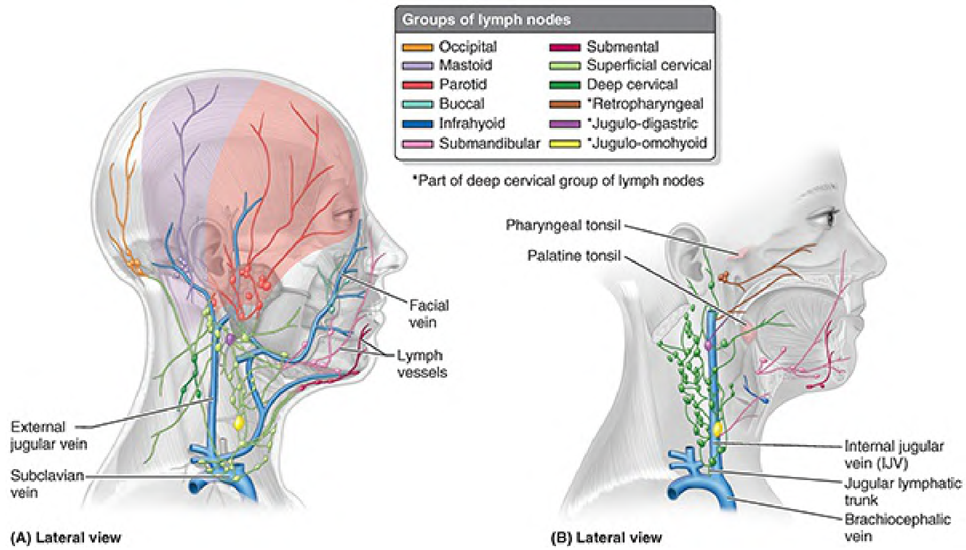


FIGURE 8.26. **Lymphatic drainage of face and scalp. A.** Superficial drainage. A pericervical collar of superficial lymph nodes is formed at the junction of the head and neck by the submental, submandibular, parotid, mastoid, and occipital nodes. These nodes initially receive most of the lymph drainage from the face and scalp. **B.** Deep drainage. All lymphatic vessels from the head and neck ultimately drain into the deep cervical lymph nodes, either directly from the tissues or indirectly after passing through an outlying group of nodes.

Surface Anatomy of Face

Despite the apparently infinite variations that enable people to be identified as individuals, the features of the human face are constant (Fig. 8.27). The **eyebrows** (L. supercilia) are linear growths of hair overlying the **supra-orbital margin**. The hairless region between the eyebrows overlies the glabella, and the prominent ridges that extend laterally on each side above the eyebrows are the superciliary arches.

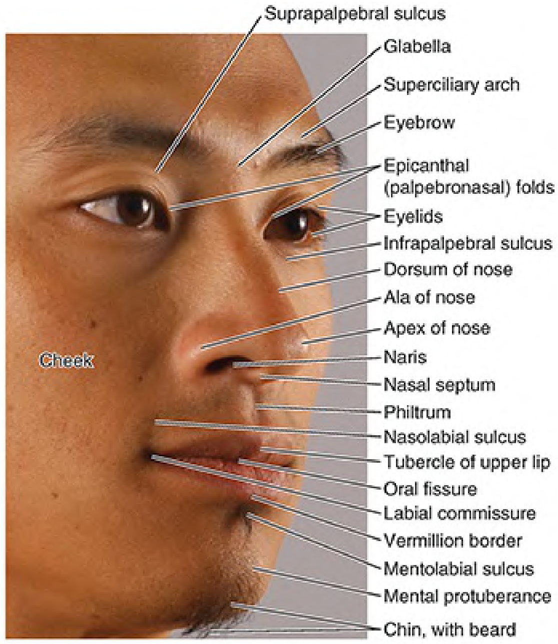


FIGURE 8.27. **Surface anatomy of face.**

The **eyelids** (L. palpebrae) are mobile, musculofibrous folds that overlie the eyeball. They are joined at each end of the **palpebral fissure** between the eyelids at the **medial** and **lateral angles** (canthi) of the eye. The **epicanthal fold** (**epicanthus**) is a fold of skin that covers the medial angle of the eye in some people, chiefly Asians. The depressions superior and inferior to the eyelids are the **suprapalpebral** and **infrapalpebral** sulci.

The shape of the nose varies remarkably. The external nose presents a prominent apex and is continuous with the forehead at the root of the nose (bridge). The rounded anterior border between the root and apex is the dorsum of the nose. Inferior to the apex, the nasal cavity of each side opens anteriorly by a naris (plural = nares), bounded medially by the nasal septum and laterally by an ala (wing) of the nose.

The lips surround the opening of the mouth, the oral fissure. The **vermillion border of the lip** marks the beginning of the transitional zone (commonly referred to as the lip) between the skin and mucous membrane of the lip. The skin of the **transitional zone** is hairless and thin, increasing its sensitivity and causing its color to be different (because of underlying capillary beds) from that of the adjacent skin of the face. The lateral junction of the lips is the **labial commissure**; the angle between the lips, medial to the commissure, that increases as the mouth opens and decreases as it closes is the **angle of the mouth**.

The median part of the upper lip features a **tubercle**, superior to which is a shallow groove, the **philtrum** (G., love charm), extending to the nasal septum. The musculofibrous folds of the lips continue laterally as the **cheek**, which also contains the buccinator muscle and buccal fat-pad. The cheek is separated from the lips by the **nasolabial sulcus**, which runs obliquely between the ala of the nose and the angle of the mouth. These grooves are easiest to observe during smiling. The lower lip is separated from the **mental protuberance** (chin) by the

mentolabial sulcus. The lips, cheeks, and chin of the mature male grow hair as part of the secondary sex characteristics, the **beard**.

CLINICAL BOX

FACE AND SCALP

Facial Lacerations and Incisions

Because the face has no distinct deep fascia and the subcutaneous tissue between the cutaneous attachments of the facial muscles is loose, facial lacerations tend to gape (part widely). Consequently, the skin must be carefully sutured to prevent scarring. The looseness of the subcutaneous tissue also enables fluid and blood to accumulate in the loose connective tissue following bruising of the face.

Similarly, facial inflammation causes considerable swelling (e.g., a beesting on the root of the nose may close both eyes). As a person ages, the skin loses its resiliency (elasticity) resulting in ridges and wrinkles in the skin perpendicular to the direction of the facial muscle fibers. Skin incisions along these cleavage or wrinkle lines (Langer lines) heal with minimal scarring (see the Clinical Box "Skin Incisions and Scarring," in Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts).

Scalp Injuries

Because the scalp arteries arising at the sides of the head are well protected by dense connective tissue and anastomose freely, a partially detached scalp may be replaced with a reasonable chance of healing as long as one of the vessels supplying the scalp remains intact. During an attached craniotomy (surgical removal of a segment of the calvaria with a soft tissue scalp flap to expose the cranial cavity), the incisions are usually made convex and upward (see Fig. B8.5), and the superficial temporal artery is included in the tissue flap.

The scalp proper, the first three layers of the scalp (see Fig. 8.15A), is often regarded clinically as a single layer because they remain together when a scalp flap is made during a craniotomy and when part of the scalp is torn off (e.g., during an industrial accident). Nerves and vessels of the scalp enter inferiorly and ascend through layer two to the skin. Consequently, surgical pedicle scalp flaps are made so that they remain attached inferiorly to preserve the nerves and vessels, thereby promoting good healing.

The arteries of the scalp supply little blood to the calvaria, which is supplied by the middle meningeal arteries. Therefore, loss of the scalp does not produce necrosis (death) of the calvarial bones.

Scalp Wounds

The epicranial aponeurosis is clinically important. Because of the strength of this aponeurosis, superficial scalp wounds do not gape, and the margins of the wound are held together. Furthermore, deep sutures are not necessary when suturing superficial wounds because the epicranial aponeurosis does not allow wide separation of the skin. Deep scalp wounds gape widely when the epicranial aponeurosis is lacerated in the coronal plane because of the pull of the frontal and occipital bellies of the occipitofrontalis muscle in opposite directions (anteriorly and posteriorly).

Scalp Infections

The loose connective tissue layer (layer four) of the scalp is the danger area of the scalp because pus or blood spreads easily in it. Infection in this layer can also pass into the cranial cavity through small emissary veins, which pass through parietal foramina in the calvaria, and reach intracranial structures such as the meninges (see Fig. 8.8A, C). An infection cannot pass into the neck because the occipital bellies of the occipitofrontalis muscle attach to the occipital bone and mastoid parts of the temporal bones (see Fig. 8.16A). Neither can a scalp infection spread laterally beyond the zygomatic arches because the epicranial aponeurosis is continuous with the temporal fascia that attaches to these arches.

An infection or fluid (e.g., pus or blood) from an injury to the scalp and/or the forehead can enter the eyelids and the root of the nose because the occipitofrontalis inserts into the skin and subcutaneous tissue and does not attach to the bone (see Fig. 8.16B). Consequently, “black eyes” (periorbital ecchymosis) can result (Fig. B8.12). The skin of the eyelid is the thinnest of the body and is delicate and sensitive. Because of the loose nature of the subcutaneous tissue within the eyelids, even a relatively slight injury or inflammation may result in an accumulation of fluid, causing the eyelids to swell. Blows to the periorbital region usually produce soft tissue damage because the tissues are crushed against the strong and relatively sharp margin. **Ecchymoses** (purple patches) develop as a result of extravasation of blood into the subcutaneous tissue and skin of the eyelids and surrounding regions.

Anterior view

FIGURE B8.12. Ecchymosis (extravasation of blood under skin).

Sebaceous Cysts

The ducts of sebaceous glands associated with hair follicles in the scalp may become obstructed, resulting in the retention of secretions and the formation of sebaceous cysts (pilar cysts). Because they are in the skin, sebaceous cysts move with the scalp.

Cephalohematoma

Sometimes after a difficult birth, bleeding occurs between the baby's pericranium (layer 5 of scalp) (see Fig. 8.15A) and calvaria, usually over one parietal bone. Blood becomes trapped in this area, forming a cephalohematoma. This benign condition frequently seen in neonates results from birth trauma that ruptures multiple, minute periosteal arteries that nourish the bones of the calvaria.

Flaring of Nostrils

The actions of the nasalis muscles (see Fig. 8.17, center top row) have generally been held as insignificant. However, observant clinicians study their action because of their diagnostic value (e.g., true nasal breathers can flare their nostrils distinctly). Habitual mouth breathing, caused by chronic nasal obstruction, for example, diminishes and sometimes eliminates the ability to flare the nostrils. Children who are chronic mouth breathers often develop dental malocclusion (improper bite) because the alignment of the teeth is maintained to a large degree by normal periods of occlusion and labial closure. Antisnoring devices have been developed that attach to the nose to flare the nostrils and maintain a more patent air passageway.

Paralysis of Facial Muscles

Injury to the facial nerve (CN VII) or its branches produces paralysis of some or all facial muscles on the affected side (Bell palsy). The affected area sags, and facial expression is distorted, making it appear passive or sad (Fig. B8.13). The loss of tonus of the orbicularis oculi causes the inferior eyelid to evert (fall away from the surface of the eyeball). Thus, lacrimal fluid is not spread over the cornea, preventing adequate lubrication, hydration, and flushing of the surface of the cornea.

FIGURE B8.13. **Bell palsy.**

This makes the cornea vulnerable to ulceration. A resulting corneal scar can impair vision. If the injury weakens or paralyzes the buccinator and orbicularis oris, food will accumulate in the oral vestibule during chewing, usually requiring continual removal with a finger. When the sphincters or dilators of the mouth are affected, displacement of the mouth (drooping of its corner) is produced by contraction of unopposed contralateral facial muscles and gravity, resulting in food and saliva dribbling out of the side of the mouth. Weakened lip muscles affect speech as a result of an impaired ability to produce labial (B, M, P, or W) sounds. Affected persons cannot whistle or blow a wind instrument. They frequently dab their eyes and mouth with a handkerchief to wipe the fluid (tears and saliva), which runs from the drooping lid and mouth. The fluid and constant wiping may result in localized skin irritation.

Infra-Orbital Nerve Block

For treating wounds of the upper lip and cheek or, more commonly, for repairing the maxillary incisor teeth, local anesthesia of the inferior part of the face is achieved by infiltration of the infra-orbital nerve with an anesthetic agent. The injection is made in the region of the infra-orbital foramen, by elevating the upper lip and passing the needle through the junction of the oral mucosa and gingiva at the superior aspect of the oral vestibule.

To determine where the infra-orbital nerve emerges, pressure is exerted on the maxilla in the region of the infra-orbital foramen. Too much pressure on the nerve causes considerable pain. Because companion infra-orbital vessels leave the infra-orbital foramen with the nerve, aspiration of the syringe during injection prevents inadvertent injection of anesthetic fluid into a blood vessel. Because the orbit is located just superior to the injection site, a careless injection could result in passage of anesthetic fluid into the orbit, causing

temporary paralysis of the extra-ocular muscles.

Mental Nerve Blocks

Occasionally, it is desirable to anesthetize one side of the skin and mucous membrane of the lower lip and the skin of the chin (e.g., to suture a severe laceration of the lip or chin). Injection of an anesthetic agent into the mental foramen blocks the mental nerve that supplies the skin and mucous membrane of the lower lip from the mental foramen to the midline, including the skin of the chin.

Buccal Nerve Block

To anesthetize the skin and mucous membrane of the cheek (e.g., to suture a knife wound), an anesthetic injection can be made into the mucosa covering the retromolar fossa, a triangular depression posterior to the 3rd mandibular molar tooth between the anterior border of the ramus and the temporal crest (on the medial side of the coronoid process of the mandible).

Trigeminal Neuralgia

Trigeminal neuralgia or tic douloureux is a sensory disorder of the sensory root of CN V that occurs most often in middle-aged and elderly persons. It is characterized by sudden attacks of excruciating, lightning-like jabs of facial pain. A paroxysm (sudden sharp pain) can last for 15 minutes or more. The pain may be so intense that the person winces, thus the common term tic (twitch). In some cases, the pain may be so severe that psychological changes occur, leading to depression and even suicide attempts.

CN V_2 is most frequently involved, then CN V_3, and, least frequently, CN V_1. The paroxysms are often set off by touching the face, brushing the teeth, shaving, drinking, or chewing. The pain is often initiated by touching an especially sensitive trigger zone, frequently located around the tip of the nose or the cheek (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018). In trigeminal neuralgia, demyelination of axons in the sensory root occurs. In most cases, this is caused by pressure of a small aberrant artery (Kiernan, 2014). Often, when the aberrant artery is moved away from the sensory root of CN V, the symptoms disappear. Other scientists believe the condition is caused by a pathological process affecting neurons in the trigeminal ganglion.

Medical or surgical treatment or both are used to alleviate the pain. In cases involving the CN V_2, attempts have been made to block the infra-orbital nerve at the infra-orbital foramen using alcohol. This treatment usually relieves pain temporarily. The simplest surgical procedure is avulsion or cutting of the branches of the nerve at the infra-orbital foramen.

Other treatments have used radiofrequency selective ablation of parts of the trigeminal ganglion by a needle electrode passing through the cheek and foramen ovale. In some cases,

it is necessary to section the sensory root for relief of the pain. To prevent regeneration of nerve fibers, the sensory root of the trigeminal nerve may be partially cut between the ganglion and the brainstem (rhizotomy). Although the axons may regenerate, they do not do so within the brainstem. Surgeons attempt to differentiate and cut only the sensory fibers to the division of CN V involved.

The same result may be achieved by sectioning the spinal tract of CN V (tractotomy). After this operation, the sensation of pain, temperature, and simple (light) touch is lost over the area of skin and mucous membrane supplied by the affected component of the CN V. This loss of sensation may annoy the patient, who may not recognize the presence of food on the lip and cheek or feel it within the mouth on the side of the nerve section. However, these disabilities are usually preferable to excruciating pain.

Lesions of Trigeminal Nerve

Lesions of the entire trigeminal nerve cause widespread anesthesia involving the:

- Corresponding anterior half of the scalp
- Face (except for skin over the angle of the mandible) and the cornea and conjunctiva
- Mucous membranes of the nose, mouth, and anterior part of the tongue

Paralysis of the muscles of mastication also occurs.

Herpes Zoster Infection of Trigeminal Ganglion

A herpes zoster virus infection may produce a lesion in the cranial ganglia. Involvement of the trigeminal ganglion occurs in approximately 20% of cases (Mukerji et al., 2022). The infection is characterized by an eruption of groups of vesicles following the course of the affected nerve (e.g., ophthalmic herpes zoster). Any division of CN V may be involved, but the ophthalmic division is most commonly affected. Usually, the cornea is involved, often resulting in painful corneal ulceration and subsequent scarring of the cornea.

Testing Sensory Function of CN V

The sensory function of the trigeminal nerve is tested by asking the person to close his or her eyes and respond when types of touch are felt (e.g., a piece of dry gauze is gently stroked across the skin of one side of the face and then to the corresponding position on the other side). The test is then repeated until the skin of the forehead (CN V_1), cheek (CN V_2), and lower jaw (CN V_3) has been tested. The person is asked if one side feels the same as or different from the other side. The testing may then be repeated using warm or cold instruments and the gentle touch of a sharp pin, again alternating sides (Fig. B8.14A). Specific testing for CN V_1 is performed by touching the cornea with a strand of

cotton to elicit a reflexive blink (Fig. B8.14B).

FIGURE B8.14. **Testing sensory function of CN V.**

Injuries to Facial Nerve

Injury to branches of the facial nerve causes paralysis of the facial muscles (Bell palsy), with or without loss of taste on the anterior two thirds of the tongue or altered secretion of the lacrimal and salivary glands (see the Clinical Box "Paralysis of Facial Muscles"). Lesions near the origin of CN VII from the pons of the brain, or proximal to the origin of the greater petrosal nerve (in the region of the geniculate ganglion), result in loss of motor, gustatory (taste), and autonomic functions. Lesions distal to the geniculate ganglion, but proximal to the origin of the chorda tympani nerve, produce the same dysfunction, except that lacrimal secretion is not affected. Lesions near the stylomastoid foramen result in loss of motor function only (i.e., facial paralysis).

Facial nerve palsy has many causes. The most common nontraumatic cause of facial paralysis is inflammation of the facial nerve near the stylomastoid foramen (see Fig. 8.9A), often as a result of a viral infection. This produces edema (swelling) and compression of the nerve in the facial canal. Injury of the facial nerve may result from fracture of the temporal bone. Facial paralysis is evident soon after the injury. If the nerve is completely sectioned, the chances of complete or even partial recovery are remote. Muscular movement usually improves when the nerve damage is associated with blunt head trauma; however, recovery may not be complete (Higgins et al., 2022). Facial nerve palsy may be idiopathic (occurring without a known cause). However, it often follows exposure to cold, as occurs when riding in a car with a window open.

Facial paralysis may be a complication of surgery; consequently, identification of the facial nerve and its branches is essential during surgery (e.g., parotidectomy, removal of a parotid gland). The facial nerve is most distinct as it emerges from the stylomastoid foramen. If necessary, electrical stimulation may be used for confirmation. Facial nerve palsy may also be associated with dental manipulation, vaccination, pregnancy, HIV infection, Lyme disease (inflammatory disorder causing headache and stiff neck), and infections of the middle ear (otitis media). Because the branches of the facial nerve are superficial, they are subject to injury by stab and gunshot wounds, cuts, and injury at birth (see Fig. 8.23):

- A lesion of the zygomatic branch of CN VII causes paralysis, including loss of tonus of

the orbicularis oculi in the inferior eyelid.

- Paralysis of the buccal branch of CN VII causes paralysis of the buccinator and superior portion of the orbicularis oris and upper lip muscles.
- Paralysis of the marginal mandibular branch of CN VII may occur when an incision is made along the inferior border of the mandible. Injury to this branch (e.g., during a surgical approach to the submandibular gland) causes paralysis of the inferior portion of the orbicularis oris and lower lip muscles.

The consequences of such paralyses are discussed in the Clinical Box "Paralysis of Facial Muscles."

Compression of Facial Artery

The facial artery can be occluded by pressure against the mandible where the vessel crosses it (see Figs. 8.16C and 8.24B). Because of the numerous anastomoses between the branches of the facial artery and the other arteries of the face, compression of the facial artery on one side does not stop all bleeding from a lacerated facial artery or one of its branches. In lacerations of the lip, pressure must be applied on both sides of the cut to stop the bleeding. In general, facial wounds bleed freely and heal quickly.

Pulses of Arteries of Face and Scalp

The pulses of the superficial temporal and facial arteries may be used for taking the pulse. For example, anesthesiologists at the head of the operating table often take the temporal pulse where the superficial temporal artery crosses the zygomatic process just anterior to the auricle (Fig. B8.15A). Clench your teeth and palpate the facial pulse as the facial artery crosses the inferior border of the mandible immediately anterior to the masseter muscle (Fig. B8.15B; see Fig. 8.70).


(A) Lateral view, superficial temporal artery pulse

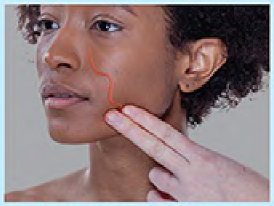

(B) Anterolateral view, facial artery pulse

FIGURE B8.15. Face and scalp pulses.

Stenosis of Internal Carotid Artery

At the medial angle of the eye, an anastomosis occurs between the facial artery, a branch of the external carotid artery, and cutaneous branches of the internal carotid artery. With advancing age, the internal carotid artery may become narrow (stenotic)

owing to atherosclerotic thickening of the intima (innermost coat) of the arteries. Because of the arterial anastomosis, intracranial structures such as the brain can receive blood from the connection of the facial artery to the dorsal nasal branch of the ophthalmic artery.

Scalp Lacerations

Scalp lacerations are the most common type of head injury requiring surgical care. These wounds bleed profusely because the arteries entering the periphery of the scalp bleed from both ends owing to abundant anastomoses. The arteries do not retract when lacerated because they are held open by the dense connective tissue in layer two of the scalp. Spasms of the occipitofrontalis muscle can increase gaping of scalp wounds. Bleeding from scalp lacerations can be fatal if not controlled (e.g., by sutures).

Squamous Cell Carcinoma of Lip

Squamous cell carcinoma (cancer) of the lip usually involves the lower lip (Fig. B8.16). Overexposure to sunshine over many years is a common factor in these cases. Chronic irritation from pipe smoking is also a contributing cause. Cancer cells from the central part of the lower lip, the floor of the mouth, and the apex of the tongue spread to the submental lymph nodes, whereas cancer cells from lateral parts of the lower lip drain to the submandibular lymph nodes.


Anterior view

FIGURE B8.16. Carcinoma of lip.

The Bottom Line: Face and Scalp

The face provides our identity as an individual human. Thus, birth or acquired defects have consequences beyond their physical effects. ■ The individuality of the face results primarily from anatomical variation. ■ The way in which the facial muscles alter the basic features is critical to communication. ■ Lips and the shape and degree of opening of the mouth are important components of speech, but emphasis and subtleties of meaning are provided by our facial expressions.

Structure of scalp: The scalp is a somewhat mobile soft tissue mantle covering the calvaria. ■ The primary subcutaneous component of the scalp is the musculo-aponeurotic epicranius to which the overlying skin is firmly attached, but it is separated from the outer periosteum (pericranium) of the cranium by loose areolar tissue. ■ The areolar layer enables the mobility of the scalp over the calvaria and permits traumatic separation of the scalp from the cranium. ■ Attachment of the skin to the epicranial aponeurosis keeps the edges of superficial wounds together, but a wound that also penetrates the epicranial aponeurosis gaps widely. ■ Blood may collect in the areolar space deep to the aponeurosis after a head injury.

Muscles of face and scalp: The facial muscles play important roles as the dilators and sphincters of the portals of the alimentary (digestive), respiratory, and visual systems (oral and palpebral fissures and nostrils), controlling what enters and some of what exits from our bodies. ■ Other facial muscles assist the muscles of mastication by keeping food between the teeth during chewing. ■ Fleshy portions of the face (eyelids and cheeks) form dynamic containing walls for the orbits and oral cavity. ■ Facial muscles are all derived from the second pharyngeal arch and are therefore supplied by the nerve of this arch, the facial nerve (CN VII). ■ Facial muscles are subcutaneous, most having a skeletal origin and a cutaneous insertion. ■ The face lacks the deep fascia present elsewhere in the body.

Innervation of face and scalp: The face is highly sensitive. It receives sensory innervation from the three divisions of the trigeminal nerve (CN V). ■ The major terminal branches of each division reach the subcutaneous tissue of each side of the face via three foramina that are aligned vertically. ■ Each division supplies a distinct sensory zone, similar to a dermatome, but without the overlapping of adjacent nerves; therefore, injuries result in distinct and defined areas of paresthesia. ■ The divisions of CN V supply sensation not only to the superficial skin of the face but also to deep mucosal surfaces of the conjunctival sacs, cornea, nasal cavity, and paranasal sinuses and to the oral cavity and vestibule. ■ The skin covering the angle of the mandible is innervated by the great auricular nerve, a branch of the cervical plexus. ■ Eight nerves supply sensation to the scalp via branches arising from all three divisions of CN V, anterior to the auricle of the external ear and branches of cervical spinal nerves posterior to the auricle. ■ The facial nerve (CN VII) is the motor nerve of the face, supplying all the muscles of facial expression, including the platysma, occipital belly of occipitofrontalis, and auricular muscles that are not part of the face per se. ■ These muscles receive innervation from CN VII primarily via five branches of the parotid (nerve) plexus.

Vasculature of face and scalp: The face and scalp are highly vascular. The terminal branches of the arteries of the face anastomose freely (including anastomoses across the midline with their contralateral partners). Thus, bleeding from facial lacerations may be

diffuse, with the lacerated vessel bleeding from both ends. ■ Most arteries of the face are branches or derivatives of branches of the external carotid artery; the arteries arising from the internal carotid that supply the forehead are exceptions. ■ The main artery to the face is the facial artery. ■ The arteries of the scalp are firmly embedded in the dense connective tissue overlying the epicranial aponeurosis. Thus, when lacerated, these arteries bleed from both ends, like those of the face, but are less able to constrict or retract than other superficial vessels; therefore, profuse bleeding results.

The veins of the face and scalp generally accompany arteries, providing a primarily superficial venous drainage. ■ However, they also anastomose with the pterygoid venous plexus and with dural venous sinuses via emissary veins, which provide a potentially dangerous route for the spread of infection. ■ Most nerves and vessels of the scalp run vertically toward the vertex; thus, a horizontal laceration may produce more neurovascular damage than a vertical one.

The lymphatic drainage of most of the face follows the venous drainage to lymph nodes around the base of the anterior part of the head (submandibular, parotid, and superficial cervical nodes). ■ An exception to this pattern is the lymph drainage of the central part of the lip and chin, which initially drains to the submental lymph nodes. All nodes of the face drain in turn to the deep cervical lymph nodes.

CRANIAL MENINGES

The **cranial meninges** are membranous coverings of the brain that lie immediately internal to the cranium (Fig. 8.28; see Fig. 8.15A). The cranial meninges

- protect the brain
- form the supporting framework for arteries, veins, and venous sinuses
- enclose a fluid-filled cavity, the subarachnoid space, which is vital to the normal function of the brain

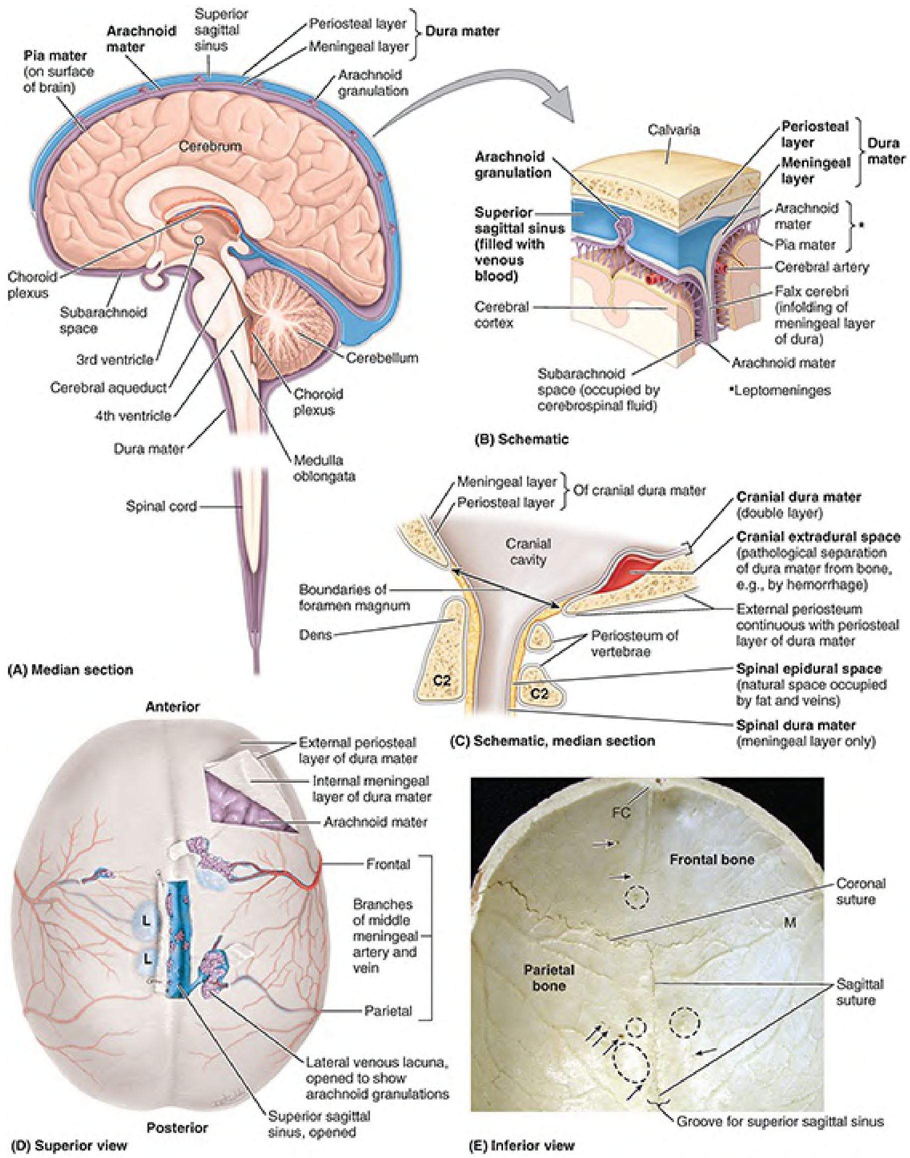


FIGURE 8.28. Meninges and their relationship to calvaria, brain, and spinal cord. A. Overview. The dura mater and subarachnoid space (purple) surround the brain and are continuous with that around the spinal cord. **B.** Meninges. The two layers of dura separate to form dural venous sinuses. Arachnoid granulations protrude through the meningeal layer of the dura into the dural venous sinuses and effect transfer of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) to the venous system. **C.** Cranial and spinal extradural space. The normal fat- and vein-filled spinal epidural (extradural) space is not continuous with the potential or pathological cranial epidural space. Cranial dura mater has two layers, whereas spinal dura mater consists of a single layer. **D.** Dura mater. In the median plane, a part of the thick roof of the superior sagittal sinus has been incised and retracted; laterally, parts of the thin roof of two lateral lacunae (L) are reflected to demonstrate the abundant arachnoid granulations. On the right, an angular flap of dura has been turned anteriorly; the convolutions of the cerebral cortex are visible through the arachnoid mater. **E.** Internal aspect of the calvaria. Pits (dashed circles, granular foveolae) in the frontal and parietal bones, which are produced by enlarged arachnoid granulations or clusters of smaller ones (as in part **D**) are shown. Multiple small emissary veins pass between the superior sagittal sinus and the veins in the diploë and scalp through small emissary foramina (arrows) located on each side of the sagittal suture. The sinuous vascular groove (M) on the lateral wall is formed by the frontal branch of the middle meningeal artery. The falx cerebri attaches anteriorly to the frontal crest (FC).

The meninges are composed of three membranous connective tissue layers (Fig. 8.28A, B, D):

1. Dura mater (dura): tough, thick external fibrous layer
2. Arachnoid mater (arachnoid): thin intermediate layer
3. Pia mater (pia): delicate internal vasculated layer

The intermediate and internal layers (arachnoid and pia) are continuous membranes that collectively make up the **leptomeninx** (G., slender membrane) (Fig. 8.28B). The arachnoid is separated from the pia by the **subarachnoid (leptomeningeal) space**, which contains **cerebrospinal fluid** (CSF). This fluid-filled space helps maintain the balance of extracellular fluid in the brain. CSF is a clear liquid similar to blood plasma in constitution. It provides nutrients but it has less protein and a different ion concentration. CSF is formed by the choroid plexuses of the four ventricles of the brain (Fig. 8.28A). This fluid leaves the ventricular system and enters the subarachnoid space between the arachnoid and pia mater, where it cushions and nourishes the brain.

Dura Mater

The **cranial dura mater** (dura), a thick, dense, bilaminar membrane, is also called the pachymeninx (G. pachy, thick + G. menix, membrane) (Fig. 8.28A). It is adherent to the internal table of the calvaria. The two layers of the cranial dura are an external periosteal layer, formed by the periosteum covering the internal surface of the calvaria, and an internal meningeal layer, a strong fibrous membrane that is continuous at the foramen magnum with the spinal dura covering the spinal cord.

The external periosteal layer of dura adheres to the internal surface of the cranium. Its attachment is tenacious along the suture lines and in the cranial base (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018). The external periosteal layer is continuous at the cranial foramina with the periosteum on the external surface of the calvaria (Fig. 8.28C). This outer layer is not continuous with the dura mater of the spinal cord, which consists of only a meningeal layer.

Except where the dural sinuses and infoldings occur (Fig. 8.28B), the internal meningeal layer is intimately fused with the periosteal layer and cannot be separated from it (Fig. 8.28B, C). The fused external and internal layers of dura over the calvaria can be easily stripped from the cranial bones (e.g., when the calvaria is removed at autopsy). In the cranial base, the two dural layers are firmly attached and difficult to separate from the bones. In life, such separation at the dural–cranial interface occurs only pathologically, creating an actual (blood- or fluid-filled) epidural space.

DURAL INFOLDINGS OR REFLECTIONS

The internal **meningeal layer of dura mater** is a supporting layer that reflects away from the external periosteal layer of dura to form dural infoldings (reflections) (Figs. 8.28B and 8.29). The dural infoldings divide the cranial cavity into compartments, forming partial partitions (dural septa) between certain parts of the brain and providing support for other parts. The dural infoldings include the following:

- Falx cerebri (cerebral falx)
- Tentorium cerebelli (cerebellar tentorium)
- Falx cerebelli (cerebellar falx)
- Diaphragma sellae (sellar diaphragm)

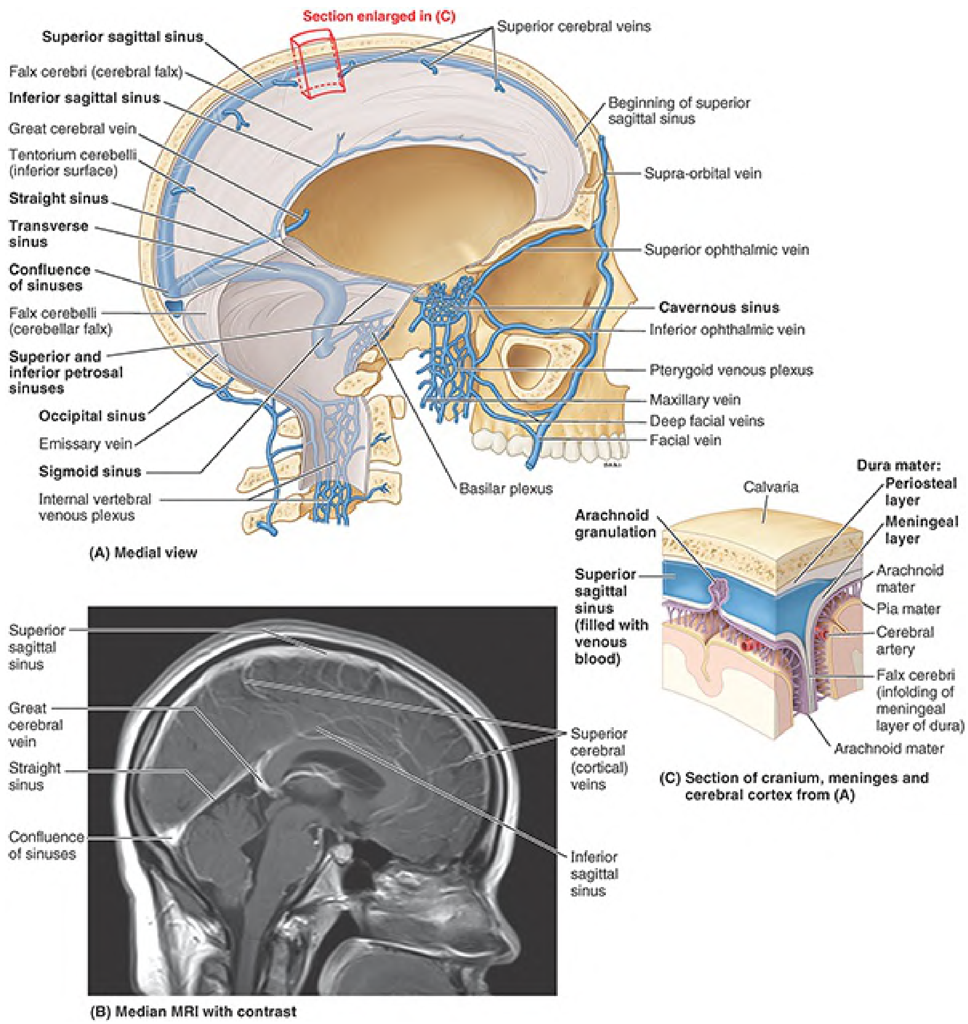


FIGURE 8.29. Dural infoldings and dural venous sinuses. A. Overview. Two sickle-shaped dural folds (septae), the falx cerebri and falx cerebelli, are vertically oriented in the median plane; two roof-like folds, the tentorium cerebelli and the small diaphragma sellae (removed), lie horizontally. **B.** MRI showing venous sinuses in situ. **C.** Enlargement of section of part A. Periosteal and meningeal layers of dural mater separate to form meningeal sinuses and infoldings.

The **falx cerebri** (L. falx, sickle shaped), the largest dural infolding, lies in the **longitudinal cerebral fissure** that separates the right and the left cerebral hemispheres. The falx cerebri attaches in the median plane to the internal surface of the calvaria, from the frontal crest of the frontal bone and crista galli of the ethmoid bone anteriorly to the internal occipital protuberance posteriorly (Figs. 8.29A and 8.30). It ends by becoming continuous with the tentorium cerebelli.

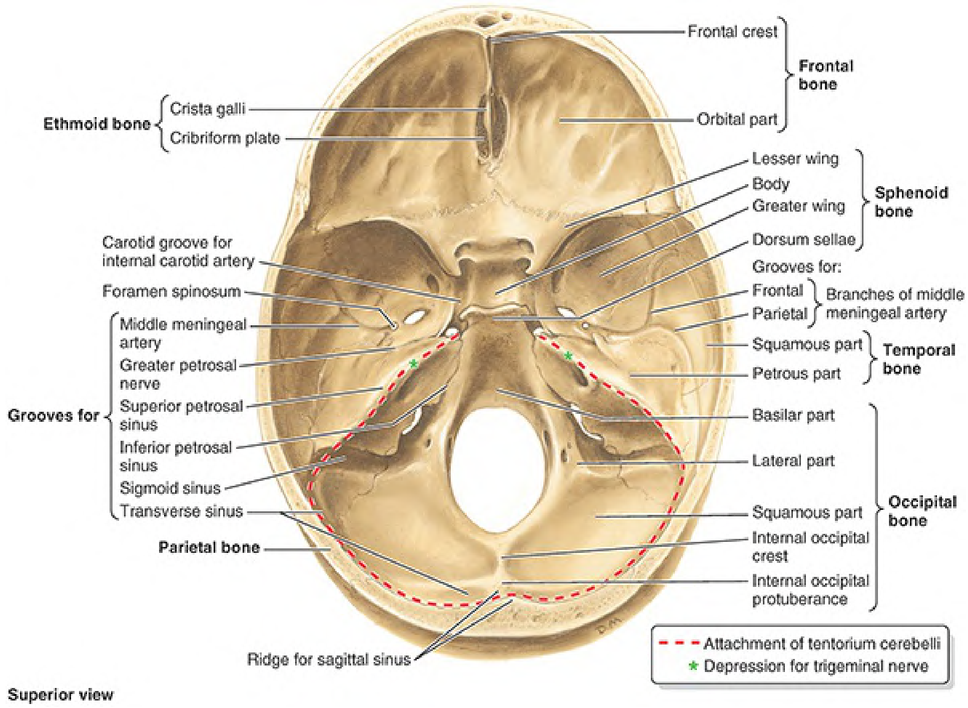


FIGURE 8.30. Interior of base of cranium. The internal occipital protuberance is formed in relationship to the confluence of sinuses (see Fig. 8.31A), and grooves are formed in the cranial base by the dural venous sinuses (e.g., the sigmoid sinus). The tentorium cerebelli is attached along the lengths of the transverse and superior petrosal sinuses (dashed line).

The **tentorium cerebelli**, the second largest dural infolding, is a wide crescentic septum that separates the occipital lobes of the cerebral hemispheres from the cerebellum (Fig. 8.29A and 8.31A, B). The tentorium cerebelli attaches rostrally to the clinoid processes of the sphenoid, rostrolaterally to the petrous part of the temporal bone, and posterolaterally to the internal surface of the occipital bone and part of the parietal bone.

The falx cerebri attaches to the tentorium cerebelli and holds it up, giving it a tent-like appearance (L. tentorium, tent). The tentorium cerebelli divides the cranial cavity into supratentorial and infratentorial compartments. The supratentorial compartment is divided into right and left halves by the falx cerebri. The concave anteromedial border of the tentorium cerebelli is free, producing a gap called the **tentorial notch** through which the brainstem (midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata) extends from the posterior into the middle cranial fossa (Fig. 8.31A, B; see Fig. B8.18).

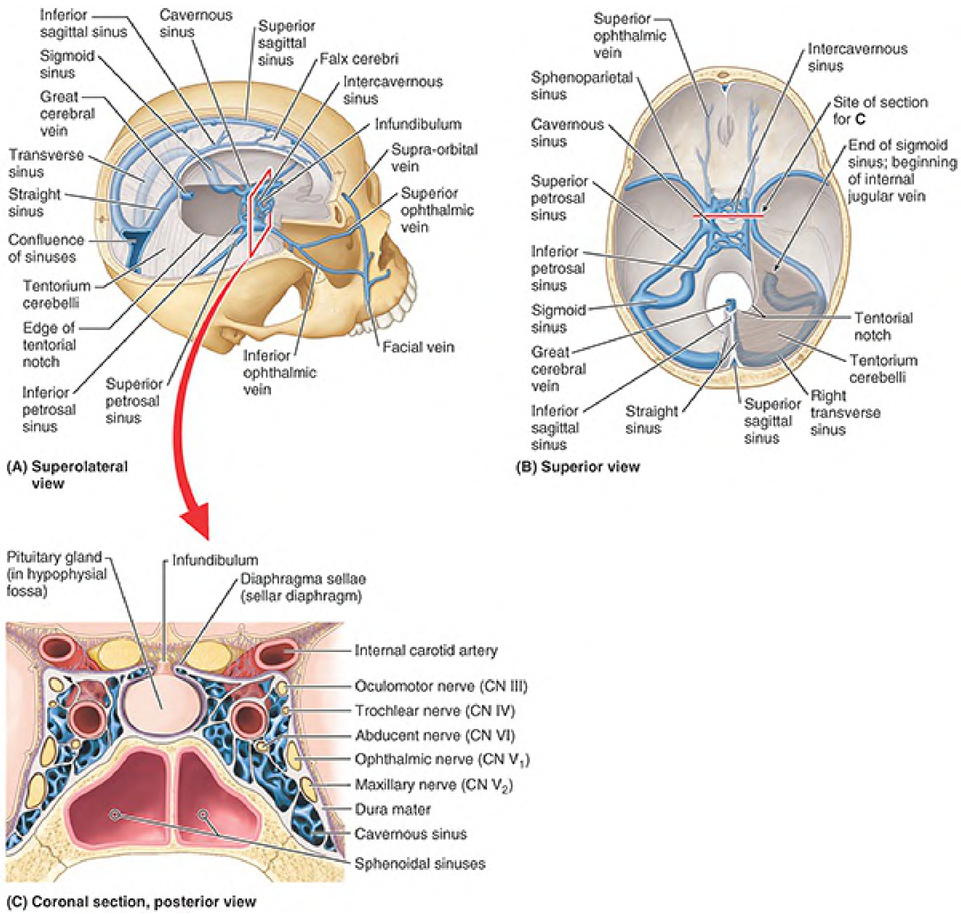


FIGURE 8.31. Venous sinuses of dura mater. A. Relationship of sinuses to falx cerebri and tentorium cerebelli. **B.** Communications of cavernous sinuses and drainage of confluence of sinuses. The ophthalmic veins drain into the cavernous sinus. **C.** Relationship of neurovascular structures to cavernous sinus. The cavernous sinus is situated bilaterally at the lateral aspect of the hollow body of the sphenoid and the hypophysial fossa. The internal carotid arteries, having made acute bends, are cut twice. Inferiorly, the cavernous parts of the arteries are sectioned as they pass anteriorly along the carotid groove toward the acute bend of the artery (some radiologists refer to the bend as the "carotid siphon"). Superiorly, the cerebral parts of the arteries are sectioned as they pass posteriorly from the bend to join the cerebral arterial circle.

The **falx cerebelli** is a vertical dural infolding that lies inferior to the tentorium cerebelli in the posterior part of the posterior cranial fossa (Figs. 8.29 and 8.30). It is attached to the internal occipital crest and partially separates the cerebellar hemispheres.

The **diaphragma sellae**, the smallest dural infolding, is a circular sheet of dura that is suspended between the clinoid processes forming a partial roof over the hypophysial fossa in the sphenoid (Fig. 8.31B, C). The diaphragma sellae covers the pituitary gland in this fossa and has an aperture for passage of the infundibulum and hypophysial veins.

DURAL VENOUS SINUSES

The **dural venous sinuses** are endothelium-lined spaces between the periosteal and meningeal layers of the dura. They form where the dural septa attach along the free edge of the falx cerebri and in relation to formations of the cranial floor (Figs. 8.29, 8.31, and 8.32). Large veins from

the surface of the brain empty into these sinuses and most of the blood from the brain ultimately drains through them into the internal jugular veins (IJVs). The **superior sagittal sinus** lies in the convex attached border of the falx cerebri (Fig. 8.29). This sinus begins at the crista galli and ends near the internal occipital protuberance (Fig. 8.30) at the confluence of sinuses, a meeting place of the superior sagittal, straight, occipital, and transverse sinuses (Fig. 8.32). The superior sagittal sinus receives the superior cerebral veins and communicates on each side through slit-like openings with the **lateral venous lacunae** (L., small lakes), lateral expansions of the superior sagittal sinus (Fig. 8.28D).

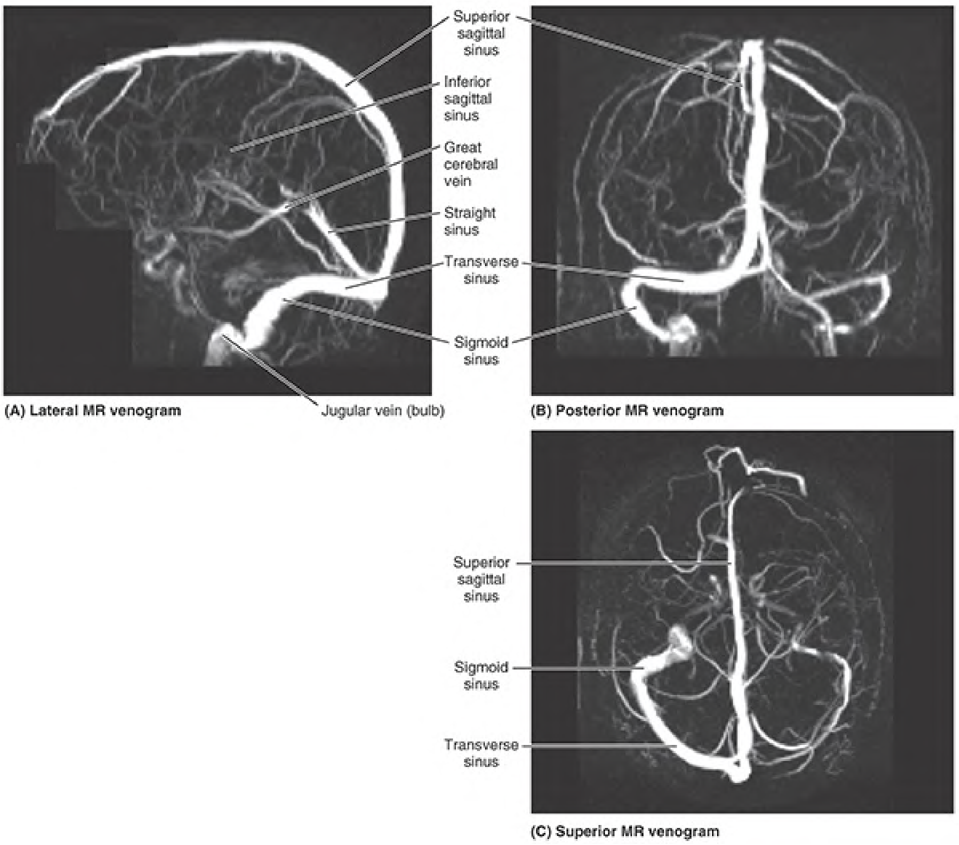


FIGURE 8.32. Maximum intensity projection (MIP) of MR venograms of dural venous sinuses and cerebral veins. When there is concern about intracranial venous thrombosis, the dural venous sinuses and cerebral veins can be visualized using MRI techniques that do not require the injection of contrast material. The bright (white) signal is produced by the venous blood in the sinuses and veins.

Arachnoid granulations (collections of arachnoid villi) are tufted prolongations of the arachnoid that protrude through the meningeal layer of the dura mater into the dural venous sinuses, especially the lateral lacunae and affect transfer of CSF to the venous system (Fig. 8.28B, D; see Fig. 8.35). Enlarged arachnoid granulations (pacchionian bodies) may erode bone, forming pits called **granular foveolae** in the calvaria (Fig. 8.28E). They are usually observed especially in the vicinity of the superior sagittal sinus but may also occur in the transverse, superior petrosal and straight dural venous sinuses. Arachnoid granulations are structurally adapted for the transport of CSF from the subarachnoid space to the venous system.

The **inferior sagittal sinus** is much smaller than the superior sagittal sinus (Fig. 8.29). It runs in the inferior concave free border of the falx cerebri and ends in the straight sinus. The **straight sinus** (L. sinus rectus) is formed by the union of the inferior sagittal sinus with the great cerebral vein. It runs inferoposteriorly along the line of attachment of the falx cerebri to the tentorium cerebelli, where it joins the confluence of sinuses.

The **transverse sinuses** pass laterally from the confluence of sinuses, forming a groove in the occipital bones and the postero-inferior angles of the parietal bones (Figs. 8.30, 8.31, and 8.32). The transverse sinuses course along the posterolateral attached margins of the tentorium cerebelli and then become the sigmoid sinuses as they approach the posterior aspect of the petrous temporal bones. Blood received by the confluence of sinuses is drained by the transverse sinuses, but rarely equally. Usually, the left sinus is dominant (larger).

The **sigmoid sinuses** follow S-shaped courses in the posterior cranial fossa, forming deep grooves in the temporal and occipital bones. Each sigmoid sinus turns anteriorly and then continues inferiorly as the IJV after traversing the jugular foramen. The **occipital sinus** lies in the attached border of the falx cerebelli and ends superiorly in the confluence of sinuses (Fig. 8.29A, B). The occipital sinus communicates inferiorly with the internal vertebral venous plexus (Figs. 8.29A and 8.33).

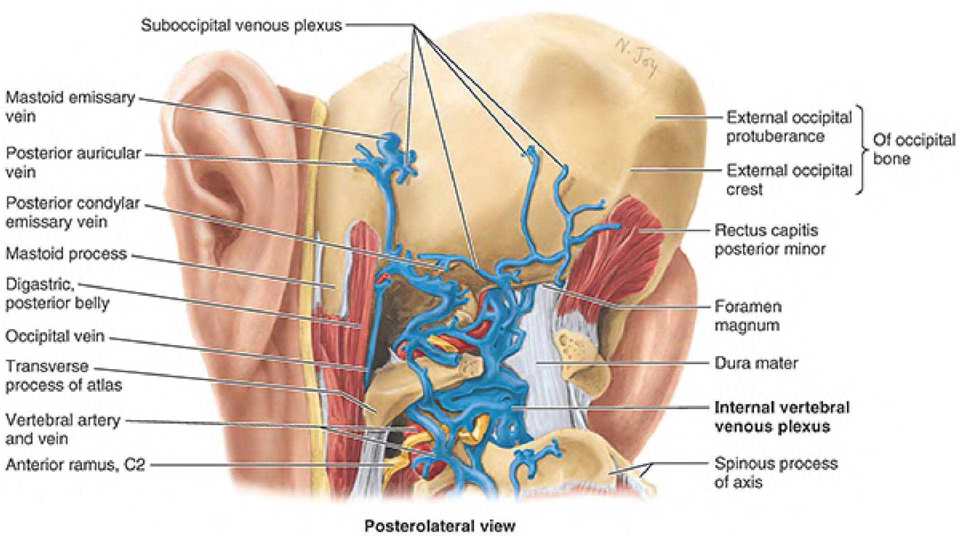


FIGURE 8.33. Deep dissection of suboccipital region. The external vertebral venous system has numerous intercommunications and connections, some of which are shown here. Superiorly, the system communicates with the veins of the scalp and the intracranial venous sinuses via the foramen magnum, the mastoid foramina, and the condylar canals. Anteromedially, it passes between the laminae and through the intervertebral foramina to communicate with the internal vertebral venous plexus and veins around the vertebral artery.

The **cavernous sinuses**, large venous plexuses, are located on each side of the sella turcica on the upper surface of the body of the sphenoid, which contains the sphenoidal (air) sinus (Figs. 8.29A and 8.31). The cavernous sinus consists of a venous plexus of extremely thin-walled veins that extends from the superior orbital fissure anteriorly to the apex of the petrous part of the temporal bone posteriorly. The sinus receives blood from the superior and inferior ophthalmic veins, superficial middle cerebral vein, and sphenoparietal sinus. The venous channels in these

sinuses communicate with each other through venous channels anterior and posterior to the stalk of the pituitary gland—the **intercavernous sinuses** (Fig. 8.31A, B)—and sometimes through veins inferior to the pituitary gland. The cavernous sinuses drain postero-inferiorly through the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses and emissary veins to the basilar and pterygoid plexuses (Fig. 8.29A).

Inside each cavernous sinus is the **internal carotid artery** with its small branches, surrounded by the carotid plexus of sympathetic nerve(s), and the abducent nerve (CN VI) (Fig. 8.31C). The oculomotor (CN III) and trochlear (CN IV) nerves, plus two of the three divisions of the trigeminal nerve (CN V), are embedded in the lateral wall of the sinus. The artery, carrying warm blood from the body's core, traverses the sinus filled with cooler blood returning from the capillaries of the body's periphery, allowing for heat exchange to conserve energy or cool the arterial blood. This does not appear to be as important in humans as it is in running animals (e.g., horses and cheetahs) in which the carotid artery runs a longer, more tortuous course through the cavernous sinuses, allowing cooling of blood before it enters the brain. Pulsations of the artery within the cavernous sinus are said to promote propulsion of venous blood from the sinus, as does gravity (Standring, 2021).

The **superior petrosal sinuses** run from the posterior ends of the veins making up the cavernous sinus to the transverse sinuses at the site where these sinuses curve inferiorly to form the sigmoid sinuses (Fig. 8.32B). Each superior petrosal sinus lies in the anterolateral attached margin of the tentorium cerebelli, which attaches to the superior border (crest) of the petrous part of the temporal bone (Fig. 8.30).

The **inferior petrosal sinuses** also commence at the posterior end of the cavernous sinus (Fig. 8.31A, B). Each inferior petrosal sinus runs in a groove between the petrous part of the temporal bone and the basilar part of the occipital bone (Fig. 8.30). The inferior petrosal sinuses drain the cavernous sinus directly into the transition of the sigmoid sinus to the IJV at the jugular foramen (Fig. 8.31B). The **basilar plexus** connects the inferior petrosal sinuses and communicates inferiorly with the internal vertebral venous plexus (Figs. 8.29B and 8.33). **Emissary veins** connect the dural venous sinuses with veins outside the cranium. Although they are valveless and blood may flow in both directions, flow in the emissary veins is usually away from the brain. The size and number of emissary veins vary; many small ones are unnamed. A **frontal emissary vein** is present in children and some adults. It passes through the foramen cecum of the cranium, connecting the superior sagittal sinus with veins of the frontal sinus and nasal cavities. A **parietal emissary vein**, which may be paired bilaterally, passes through the parietal foramen in the calvaria, connecting the superior sagittal sinus with the veins external to it, particularly those in the scalp (see Fig. 8.8A, C). A **mastoid emissary vein** passes through the mastoid foramen and connects each sigmoid sinus with the occipital or posterior auricular vein (Fig. 8.33). A **posterior condylar emissary vein** may also be present, passing through the condylar canal, connecting the sigmoid sinus with the suboccipital venous plexus.

VASCULATURE OF DURA MATER

The **arteries of the dura** supply more blood to the calvaria than to the dura. The largest of these

vessels, the **middle meningeal artery**, is a branch of the maxillary artery (Fig. 8.28D). It enters the floor of the middle cranial fossa through the foramen spinosum (Fig. 8.30), runs laterally in the fossa, and turns supero-anteriorly on the greater wing of the sphenoid, where it divides into anterior and posterior branches (Fig. 8.28D). The **frontal branch of the middle meningeal artery** runs superiorly to the pterion and then curves posteriorly to ascend toward the vertex of the cranium. The **parietal branch of the middle meningeal artery** runs posterosuperiorly and ramifies (breaks up into distributing branches) over the posterior aspect of the cranium. Small areas of dura are supplied by other arteries: meningeal branches of the ophthalmic arteries, branches of the occipital arteries, and small branches of the vertebral arteries.

The **veins of the dura** accompany the meningeal arteries, often in pairs. The **middle meningeal veins** accompany the middle meningeal artery, leave the cranial cavity through the foramen spinosum or foramen ovale, and drain into the pterygoid venous plexus (Fig. 8.29B).

NERVE SUPPLY OF DURA MATER

The dura on the floors of the anterior and middle cranial fossa and the roof of the posterior cranial fossa is innervated by meningeal branches arising directly or indirectly from the trigeminal nerve (CN V) (Fig. 8.34). There are three divisions of CN V (CN V_1, CN V_2, and CN V_3), each of which contributes a meningeal branch or branches. The **anterior meningeal branches of the ethmoidal nerves** (CN V_1) and the **meningeal branches of the maxillary** (CN V_2) and **mandibular** (CN V_3) **nerves** supply the dura of the anterior cranial fossa. The latter two nerves also supply the dura of the middle cranial fossa (Fig. 8.34B). The meningeal branches of CN V_2 and CN V_3 are distributed as peri-arterial plexuses, accompanying the branches of the middle meningeal artery (Fig. 8.34A, inset).

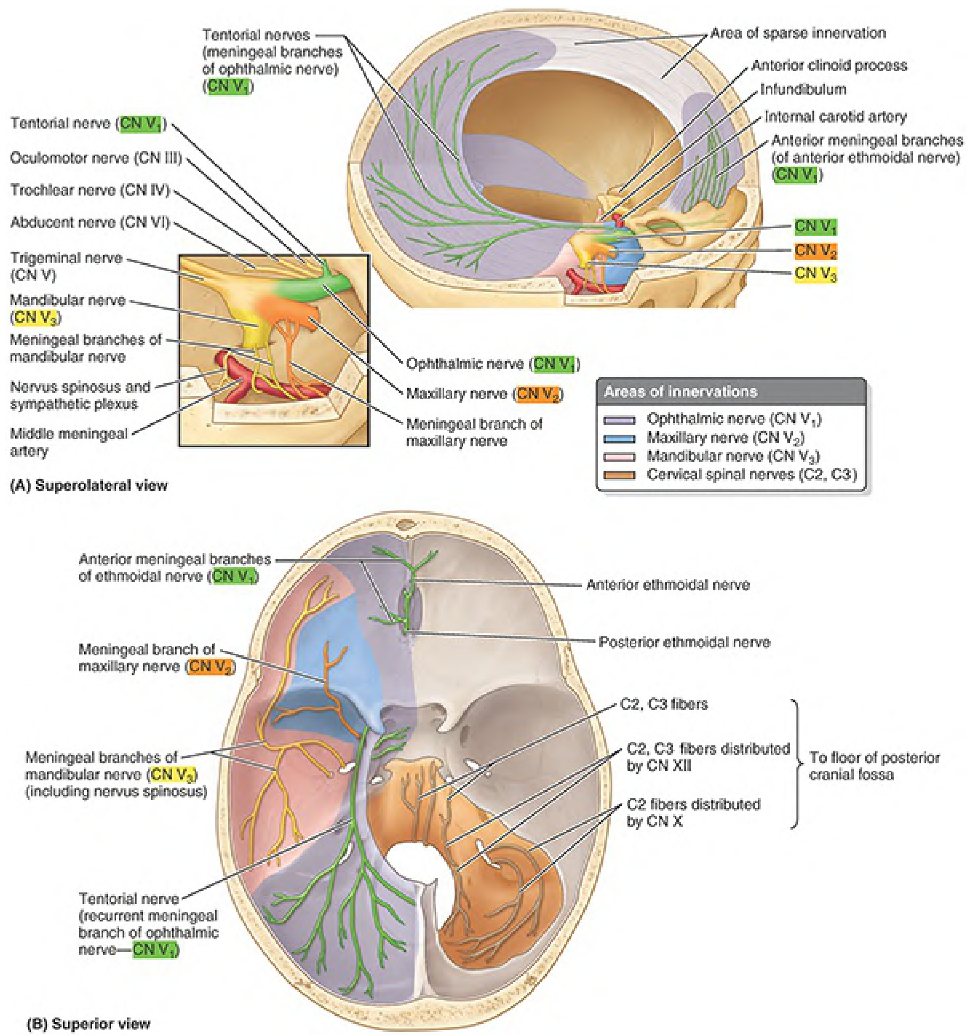


FIGURE 8.34. Innervation of dura mater. A. Meningeal branches of maxillary (CN V_2) and mandibular (CN V_3) nerves. These branches are distributed to the dura of the lateral part of the anterior and the middle cranial fossae as peri-arterial plexuses that accompany the branches of the middle meningeal artery along with vasomotor sympathetic nerve fibers from the superior cervical ganglion (inset). **B.** Branches of trigeminal and sensory fibers of cervical spinal nerves (C2, C3).

The dura forming the roof of the posterior cranial fossa (tentorium cerebelli) and posterior part of the falx cerebri is supplied by the **tentorial nerve** (a branch of the ophthalmic nerve), whereas the anterior falx cerebri is innervated by ascending branches of the anterior meningeal branches (Fig. 8.34A). The dura of the floor of the posterior cranial fossa receives sensory fibers from the spinal ganglia of C2 and C3 carried by those spinal nerves or by fibers transferred to and traveling centrally with the vagus (CN X) and hypoglossal (CN XII) nerves. Sensory endings are more numerous in the dura along each side of the superior sagittal sinus and in the tentorium cerebelli than they are in the floor of the cranium.

Pain fibers are most numerous where arteries and veins course in the dura. Pain arising from the dura is generally referred, perceived as a headache arising in cutaneous or mucosal regions supplied by the involved cervical nerve or division of the trigeminal nerve.

Arachnoid Mater and Pia Mater

The arachnoid mater and pia mater (or simply arachnoid and pia; together the leptomeninges) develop from a single layer of mesenchyme surrounding the embryonic brain, becoming the parietal part (arachnoid) and visceral part (pia) of the leptomeninx (Fig. 8.35). The derivation of the arachnoid–pia from a single embryonic layer is indicated in the adult by the numerous web-like arachnoid trabeculae passing between the arachnoid and pia, which give the arachnoid its name (G. arachne–, spider, cobweb + G. eidos, resemblance). The trabeculae are composed of flattened, irregularly shaped fibroblasts that bridge the subarachnoid space (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018). The arachnoid and pia are in continuity immediately proximal to the exit of each cranial nerve from the dura mater. The **cranial arachnoid mater** contains fibroblasts, collagen fibers, and some elastic fibers. Although thin, the arachnoid is thick enough to be manipulated with forceps. The avascular arachnoid, although closely applied to the meningeal layer of the dura, is not attached to the dura. It is held against the inner surface of the dura by the pressure of the CSF in the subarachnoid space.

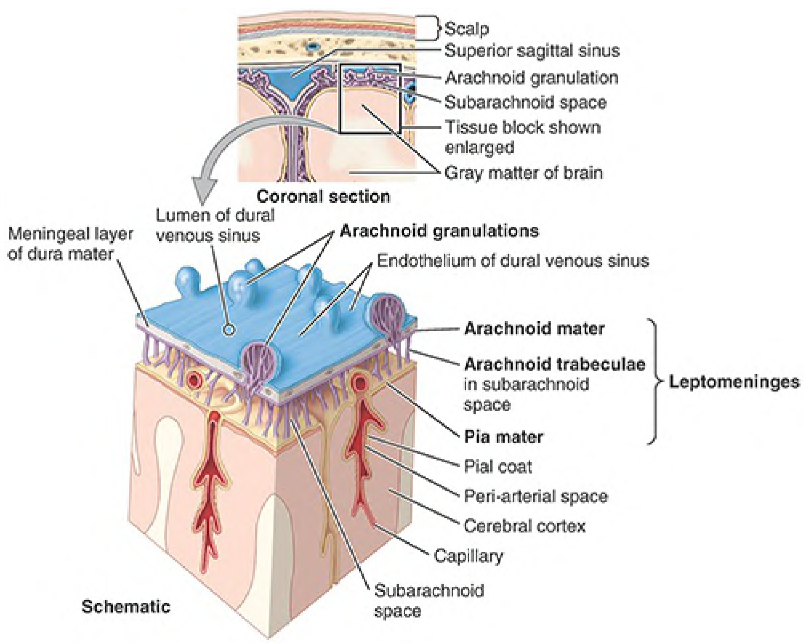


FIGURE 8.35. Leptomeninges. The coronal section (above) indicates the site of the tissue block (below). The subarachnoid space separates the two layers of the leptomeninges, the arachnoid and pia. CSF pressure keeps the arachnoid apposed to the meningeal layer of dura, and in the region of the superior sagittal sinus and adjacent venous lacunae (see Fig. 8.28D), arachnoid granulations project through the dura into the blood-filled dural venous sinus.

The **cranial pia mater** is an even thinner membrane than the arachnoid. It is highly vascularized by a network of fine blood vessels. The pia is difficult to see, but it gives the surface of the brain a shiny appearance. The pia adheres to the surface of the brain and follows all its contours. When the cerebral arteries penetrate the cerebral cortex, the pia follows them for a short distance, forming a **pial coat** and a **peri-arterial space** (Fig. 8.35).

Meningeal Spaces

Of the three meningeal "spaces" commonly mentioned in relation to the cranial meninges, only one exists as a space in the absence of pathology:

- The **dura–cranial interface** (extradural or epidural "space") is not a natural space between the cranium and the external periosteal layer of the dura because the dura is attached to the bones. It becomes an **extradural space** only pathologically (e.g., when blood from torn meningeal vessels pushes the periosteum away from the cranium) (Fig. 8.28C). The potential or pathological cranial epidural space is not continuous with the **spinal epidural space** (a natural space occupied by epidural fat and a venous plexus) because the former is between the periosteum and the cranium, whereas the latter is between the periosteum covering the vertebrae and the spinal dura (see Figs. B8.19A and 2.31 in Chapter 2, Back).
- The dura–arachnoid interface or junction ("subdural space") is likewise not a natural space between the dura and arachnoid. A space may develop in the dural border cell layer as the result of trauma, such as a hard blow to the head (Haines et al., 1993; Haines & Mihailoff, 2018).
- The subarachnoid space, between the arachnoid and pia, is a real space that contains CSF, trabecular cells, arteries, and veins.

Although it is commonly stated that the brain "floats" in CSF, the brain is suspended in the CSF-filled subarachnoid space by the arachnoid trabeculae.

CLINICAL BOX

CRANIAL MENINGES

Fracture of Pterion

Fracture of the pterion can be life-threatening because it overlies the frontal branches of the middle meningeal vessels, which lie in grooves on the internal aspect of the lateral wall of the calvaria (see Fig. 8.30). The pterion is two fingers' breadth superior to the zygomatic arch and a thumb's breadth posterior to the frontal process of the zygomatic bone (Fig. B8.17A). A hard blow to the side of the head (e.g., during boxing) may fracture the thin bones forming the pterion (see Fig. 8.4A), producing a rupture of the frontal branch of the middle meningeal artery or vein crossing the pterion (Fig. B8.17B). The resulting hematoma exerts pressure on the underlying cerebral cortex (see Fig. 8.19A). An untreated middle meningeal vessel hemorrhage may cause death in a few hours.

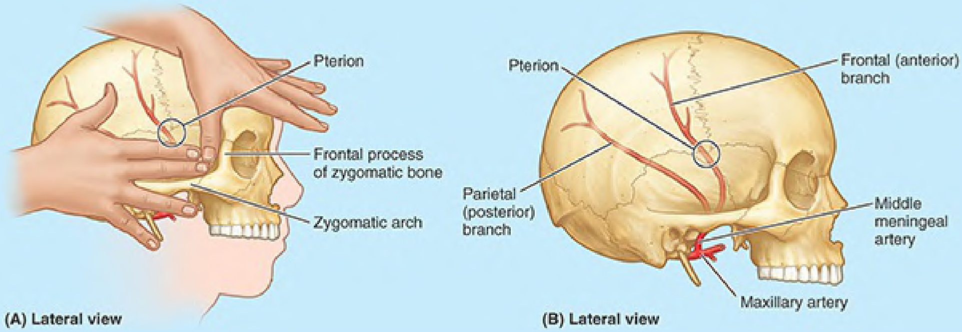


FIGURE B8.17. Location and relationships of pterion.

Thrombophlebitis of Facial Vein

The facial vein makes clinically important connections with the cavernous sinus through the superior ophthalmic vein, and the pterygoid venous plexus through the inferior ophthalmic and deep facial veins (see Figs. 8.25 and 8.29A; Table 8.6). Because of these connections, an infection of the face may spread to the cavernous sinus and pterygoid venous plexus.

Blood from the medial angle of the eye, nose, and lips usually drains inferiorly through the facial vein, especially when a person is erect. Because the facial vein has no valves, blood may pass through it in the opposite direction. Consequently, venous blood from the face may enter the cavernous sinus. In individuals with thrombophlebitis of the facial vein—inflammation of the facial vein with secondary thrombus (clot) formation—pieces of an infected clot may extend into the intracranial venous system and produce thrombophlebitis of the cavernous sinus. Infection of the facial veins spreading to the dural venous sinuses may result from lacerations of the nose or be initiated by squeezing pustules (pimples) on the side of the nose and upper lip. Consequently, the triangular area from the upper lip to the bridge of the nose is considered the danger triangle of the face (Fig. B8.18).

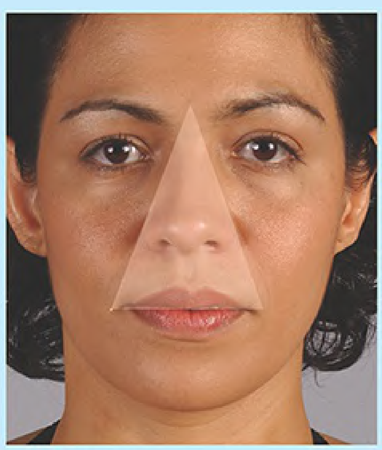


FIGURE B8.18. Danger triangle of face.

Blunt Trauma to Head

A substantial blow to the head can detach the periosteal layer of dura mater from the calvaria without fracturing the cranial bones. In the cranial base, the two dural layers are firmly attached and difficult to separate from the bones. Consequently, a fracture of the cranial base usually tears the dura and results in leakage of CSF. The innermost part of the dura, the dural border cell layer, is composed of flattened fibroblasts that are separated by large extracellular spaces. This layer constitutes a plane of structural weakness at the dura–arachnoid junction (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018).

Tentorial Herniation

The tentorial notch is the opening in the tentorium cerebelli for the brainstem, which is slightly larger than is necessary to accommodate the midbrain (Fig. B8.19). Hence, space-occupying lesions, such as tumors in the supratentorial compartment, produce increased intracranial pressure, and may cause part of the adjacent temporal lobe of the brain to herniate through the tentorial notch. During tentorial herniation, the temporal lobe may be lacerated by the tough tentorium cerebelli, and the oculomotor nerve (CN III) may be stretched, compressed, or both. Oculomotor lesions may produce paralysis of the extrinsic eye muscles supplied by CN III. Similarly, sometimes the base of the skull does not develop normally (Chiari malformation), and brain tissue is displaced downward into the spinal canal, resulting in pressure on these tissues.

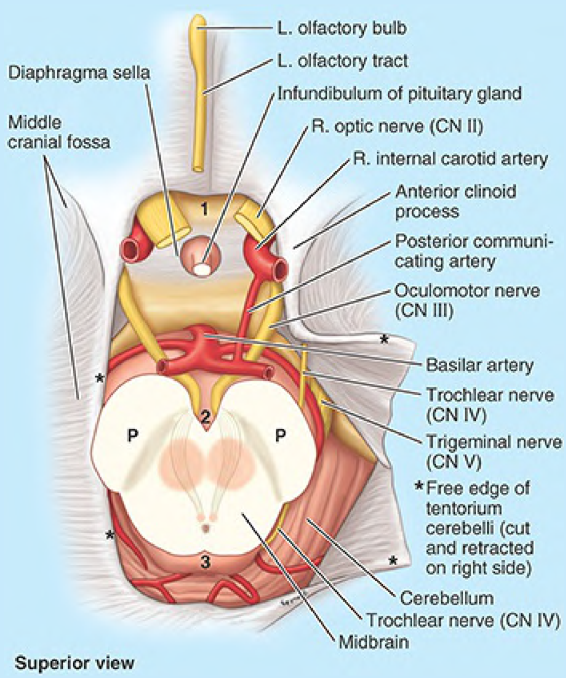


FIGURE B8.19. Structures and relationships in vicinity of tentorial notch. 1, chiasmatic cistern; 2, interpeduncular cistern; 3, genicular cistern; P, cerebral peduncle.

Bulging of Diaphragma Sellae

Pituitary tumors may extend superiorly through the aperture in the diaphragma sellae or cause it to bulge (Fig. B8.19). These tumors often expand the diaphragma sellae, producing disturbances in endocrine function early or late (i.e., before or after enlargement of the diaphragma sellae). Superior extension of a tumor may cause visual symptoms owing to pressure on the optic chiasm, the place where the optic nerve fibers cross (see Figs. 8.37B and 8.42).

Occlusion of Cerebral Veins and Dural Venous Sinuses

Occlusion of cerebral veins and dural venous sinuses may result from thrombi (clots), thrombophlebitis (venous inflammation), or tumors (e.g., meningiomas). The dural venous sinuses most frequently thrombosed are the transverse, cavernous, and superior sagittal sinuses (Frontera & Organek, 2022).

The facial veins make clinically important connections with the cavernous sinus through the superior ophthalmic veins (see Fig. 8.29A). Cavernous sinus thrombosis usually results from infections in the orbit, nasal sinuses, and superior part of the face (the danger triangle) (Fig. B8.18). In persons with thrombophlebitis of the facial vein, pieces of an infected thrombus may extend into the cavernous sinus, producing thrombophlebitis of the cavernous sinus. The infection usually involves only one sinus initially, but it may spread to the opposite side through the intercavernous sinuses. Thrombophlebitis of the cavernous sinus may affect the abducent nerve as it traverses the sinus (see Chapter 10, Summary of Cranial Nerves) and may also effect the nerves embedded within the lateral wall of the sinus (see Fig. 8.31C). Septic thrombosis of the cavernous sinus often results in the development of acute meningitis.

Metastasis of Tumor Cells to Dural Venous Sinuses

The basilar and occipital sinuses communicate through the foramen magnum with the internal vertebral venous plexuses (see Figs. 8.29A and 8.33). Because these venous channels are valveless, compression of the thorax, abdomen, or pelvis, as occurs during heavy coughing and straining, may force venous blood from these regions into the internal vertebral venous system and from it into the dural venous sinuses. As a result, pus in abscesses and tumor cells in these regions may spread to the vertebrae and brain.

Fractures of Cranial Base

In fractures of the cranial base, the internal carotid artery may be torn, producing an arteriovenous fistula within the cavernous sinus. Arterial blood rushes into the cavernous sinus, enlarging it and forcing retrograde blood flow into its venous

tributaries, especially the ophthalmic veins. As a result, the eyeball protrudes (exophthalmos) and the conjunctiva becomes engorged (chemosis). The protruding eyeball pulsates in synchrony with the radial pulse, a phenomenon known as pulsating exophthalmos. Because CN III, CN IV, CN V_1, CN V_2, and CN VI lie in or close to the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, these nerves may also be affected when the sinus is injured (see Figs. 8.31C and Fig. 10.3 in Chapter 10, Summary of Cranial Nerves).

Dural Origin of Headaches

The cranial dura mater is sensitive to pain, especially where it is related to the dural venous sinuses and meningeal arteries (see Figs. 8.31A and 8.34). Consequently, tension on arteries at the cranial base or veins near the vertex, where they pierce the dura, causes pain. Dura mater, large intracranial vessels, and the peripheral terminals of the trigeminal nerves that innervate these structures are considered key structures involved in primary headache (Lipton, 2022). Headaches that appear to be dural in origin include the headache occurring after a lumbar spinal puncture for removal of CSF (see Chapter 2, Back). When CSF is removed, the brain sags slightly, pulling on the dura; this may also cause a headache. For this reason, patients are asked to keep their heads down after a lumbar puncture to minimize the pull on the dura, reducing the chances of getting a headache.

Leptomeningitis

Leptomeningitis is an inflammation of the leptomeninges (arachnoid and pia) resulting from pathogenic microorganisms. The infection and inflammation are usually confined to the subarachnoid space and the arachnoid–pia (Roos, 2022). The bacteria may enter the subarachnoid space through the blood (septicemia, or “blood poisoning”) or spread from an infection of the heart, lungs, or other viscera. Microorganisms may also enter the subarachnoid space from a compound cranial fracture or a fracture of the nasal sinuses. Acute purulent meningitis can result from infection with almost any pathogenic bacteria (e.g., meningococcal meningitis).

Head Injuries and Intracranial Hemorrhage

Extradural (epidural) hemorrhage is arterial in origin. Blood from torn branches of a middle meningeal artery collects between the external periosteal layer of the dura and the calvaria. The extravasated blood strips the dura from the cranium. Usually this follows a hard blow to the head and forms an extradural (epidural) hematoma (Fig. B8.20A, B). Typically, a brief concussion (loss of consciousness) occurs, followed by a lucid interval of some hours. Later, drowsiness and coma (profound unconsciousness) occur. Compression of the brain occurs as the blood mass increases, necessitating evacuation of the blood and occlusion of the bleeding vessel(s).

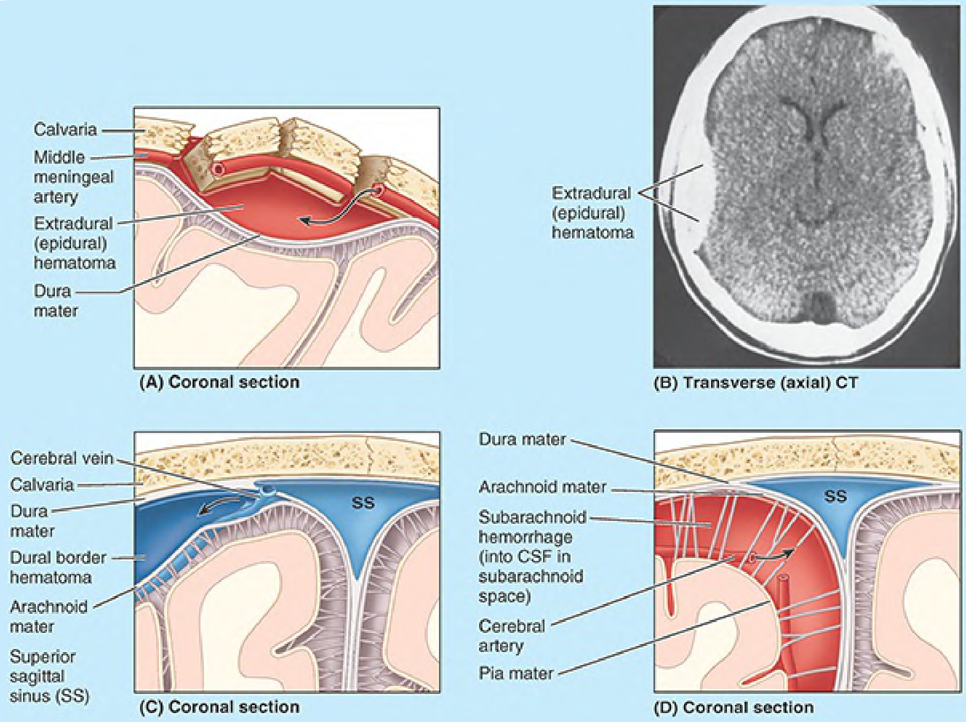


FIGURE B8.20. Intracranial hemorrhages. A and B. Extradural (epidural) hemorrhage. **C.** Dural border (subdural) hematoma. **D.** Subarachnoid hemorrhage.

A dural border hematoma is commonly called a subdural hematoma (Fig. B8.20B). However, this term is a misnomer because there is no actual "subdural space" at the dura–arachnoid junction—only a potential one. Hematomas at this junction are usually caused by extravasated blood that splits open the dural border cell layer (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018). The blood does not collect within a preexisting space but rather creates a space at the dura–arachnoid junction. Dural border hemorrhage usually follows a hard blow to the head that jerks the brain inside the cranium and injures it (e.g., hitting the dashboard or windshield in a motor vehicle accident). Sometimes the precipitating trauma may be trivial or forgotten. Dural border hemorrhage is typically venous in origin and commonly results from tearing a superior cerebral vein as it enters the superior sagittal sinus (see Fig. 8.29A, B) (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018).

Subarachnoid hemorrhage is an extravasation of blood, usually arterial, into the subarachnoid space (Fig. B8.20D). Most of these hemorrhages result from rupture of a saccular aneurysm (sac-like dilation on the side of an artery), such as an aneurysm of the internal carotid artery (see the Clinical Box "Strokes" in this chapter).

Some subarachnoid hemorrhages are associated with head trauma involving cranial fractures and cerebral lacerations. Bleeding into the subarachnoid space results in meningeal irritation, severe headache, stiff neck, and often loss of consciousness.

The Bottom Line: Cranial Meninges

The cranial meninges consist of three intracranial layers: a substantial, fibrous bilaminar outer layer—the dura—and two continuous, delicate, membranous inner layers—the arachnoid and pia.

Dura mater: The outer (periosteal) lamina of the dura is continuous with the periosteum on the external surface of the cranium and is intimately applied to the internal surface of the cranial cavity. ■ The inner (meningeal) lamina is a sustentacular (supporting) layer that more closely reflects the contours of the brain. ■ This inner layer separates from the outer layer in certain locations to form dural folds or reflections that penetrate the large fissures between parts of the brain, partially subdividing the cranial cavity into smaller compartments that prevent inertial brain movement. ■ In separating from the periosteal lamina, intralaminar spaces are created that accommodate the dural venous sinuses, which receive the venous drainage of the brain and mainly drain, in turn, to the internal jugular vein.

Leptomeninx: The arachnoid and pia are continuous parietal and visceral layers, respectively, of the leptomeninx that surround the CSF-filled subarachnoid space. ■ The arachnoid and pia are connected by fine trabeculae that traverse the subarachnoid space. ■ The subarachnoid space of the cranial cavity is continuous with that of the vertebral canal. ■ The arachnoid is normally applied to the internal surface of the dura by CSF pressure. ■ The pia intimately invests the neural tissue and its surface vasculature, coursing deeply along the vessels as they enter or exit the central nervous system.

Neurovasculature of meninges: The cranial meninges receive blood primarily from the middle meningeal branches of the maxillary arteries. ■ The dura receives sensory innervation from meningeal branches of all three divisions of the trigeminal nerve and fibers from the C2 spinal ganglion.

BRAIN

The brain is the body's controller and coordinator of almost all of its functions. It is the organ that raised mankind to the summit of the animal world. It is a delicate structure that is enclosed in a rigid cranium; however, it can be damaged by a blow to the head, compressed by a tumor, or deprived of oxygen by a leak or clot of blood in one of the cerebral arteries.

Because the brain is usually studied in detail in a separate neuroanatomy course, the brain is covered by only a superficial survey of its gross structure in the typical anatomy course, with attention primarily concerned with the relationship between the brain and its environment, that is, its meningeal coverings, the CSF-filled subarachnoid space, and internal features of its bony encasement (neurocranium).

Because of their role in the production of CSF (cerebrospinal fluid), the ventricles of the brain

and the CSF-producing choroid plexuses found there are also covered. Furthermore, 11 of 12 cranial nerves arise from the brain (see Chapter 10, Summary of Cranial Nerves).

Parts of Brain

The **brain** (contained by the neurocranium) is composed of the cerebrum, cerebellum, and brainstem (Fig. 8.36). When the calvaria and dura are removed, **gyri** (folds), **sulci** (grooves), and **fissures** (clefts) of the cerebral cortex are visible through the delicate arachnoid–pia layer. Whereas the gyri and sulci demonstrate much variation, the other features of the brain, including overall brain size, are remarkably consistent from individual to individual.

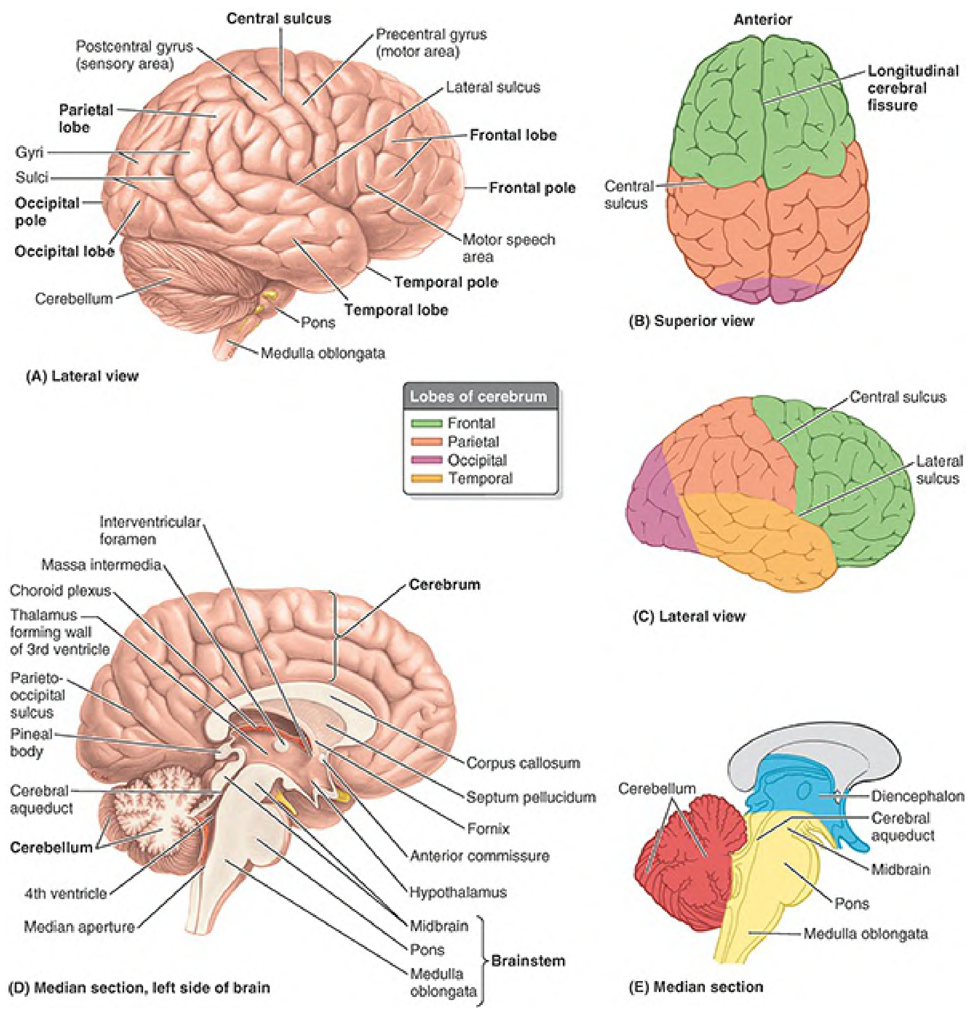


FIGURE 8.36. Structure of brain. A. Features and lateral surface of brain. **B and C.** Lobes of cerebrum. Distinct central and lateral sulci demarcate the frontal lobe and anterior boundaries of the parietal and temporal lobes of the cerebrum, the demarcation of the posterior boundaries of the latter and the occipital lobe is less distinct externally. **D.** Features of medial surface of brain. The medial surface of the cerebrum and deeper parts of the brain (diencephalon and brainstem) are shown after bisection of the brain. The parieto-occipital sulcus demarcating the parietal and occipital lobes is seen on the medial aspect of the cerebrum. **E.** Parts of brainstem.

- The **cerebrum** (L., brain) includes the cerebral hemispheres and basal ganglia. The **cerebral**

hemispheres, separated by the falx cerebri within the **longitudinal cerebral fissure**, are the dominant features of the brain (Fig. 8.36A–D). Each cerebral hemisphere is divided for descriptive purposes into four lobes, each of which is related to, but the boundaries of which do not correspond to, the overlying bones of the same name. From a superior view, the cerebrum is essentially divided into quarters by the median longitudinal cerebral fissure and the coronal **central sulcus** (Fig. 8.36B). The central sulcus separates the **frontal lobes** (anteriorly) from the **parietal lobes** (posteriorly). In a lateral view, these lobes lie superior to the transverse **lateral sulcus** and the temporal lobe inferior to it (Fig. 8.36A, C). The posteriorly placed **occipital lobes** are separated from the parietal and temporal lobes by the plane of the **parieto-occipital sulcus**, visible on the medial surface of the cerebrum in a hemisected brain (Fig. 8.36D). The anteriormost points of the anteriorly projecting frontal and temporal lobes are the **frontal** and **temporal poles**. The posteriormost point of the posteriorly projecting occipital lobe is the **occipital pole**. The hemispheres occupy the entire supratentorial cranial cavity (see Figs. 8.31A, B and 8.34). The frontal lobes occupy the anterior cranial fossae, the temporal lobes occupy the lateral parts of the middle cranial fossae, and the occipital lobes extend posteriorly over the tentorium cerebelli.

- The **diencephalon** is composed of the epithalamus, thalamus, and hypothalamus and forms the central core of the brain (Fig. 8.36E).
- The **midbrain**, the rostral part of the brainstem, lies at the junction of the middle and posterior cranial fossae. CN III and IV are associated with the midbrain.
- The **pons** is the part of the brainstem between the midbrain rostrally and the medulla oblongata caudally. The pons lies in the anterior part of the posterior cranial fossa. CN V is associated with the pons (Fig. 8.36A, D, E).
- The **medulla oblongata** (medulla) is the most caudal subdivision of the brainstem that is continuous with the spinal cord. The medulla lies in the posterior cranial fossa. CN IX, X, and XII are associated with the medulla, whereas CN VI–VIII are associated with the junction of the pons and medulla.
- The **cerebellum** is the large brain mass lying posterior to the pons and medulla and inferior to the posterior part of the cerebrum (Fig. 8.36A, D, E). It lies beneath the tentorium cerebelli in the posterior cranial fossa. It consists of two lateral hemispheres that are united by a narrow middle part, the **vermis**.

Ventricular System of Brain

The ventricular system of the brain consists of two lateral ventricles and the midline 3rd and 4th ventricles connected by the cerebral aqueduct (Figs. 8.37 and 8.38). CSF, largely secreted by the choroid plexuses of the ventricles, fills these brain cavities and the subarachnoid space of the brain and spinal cord.

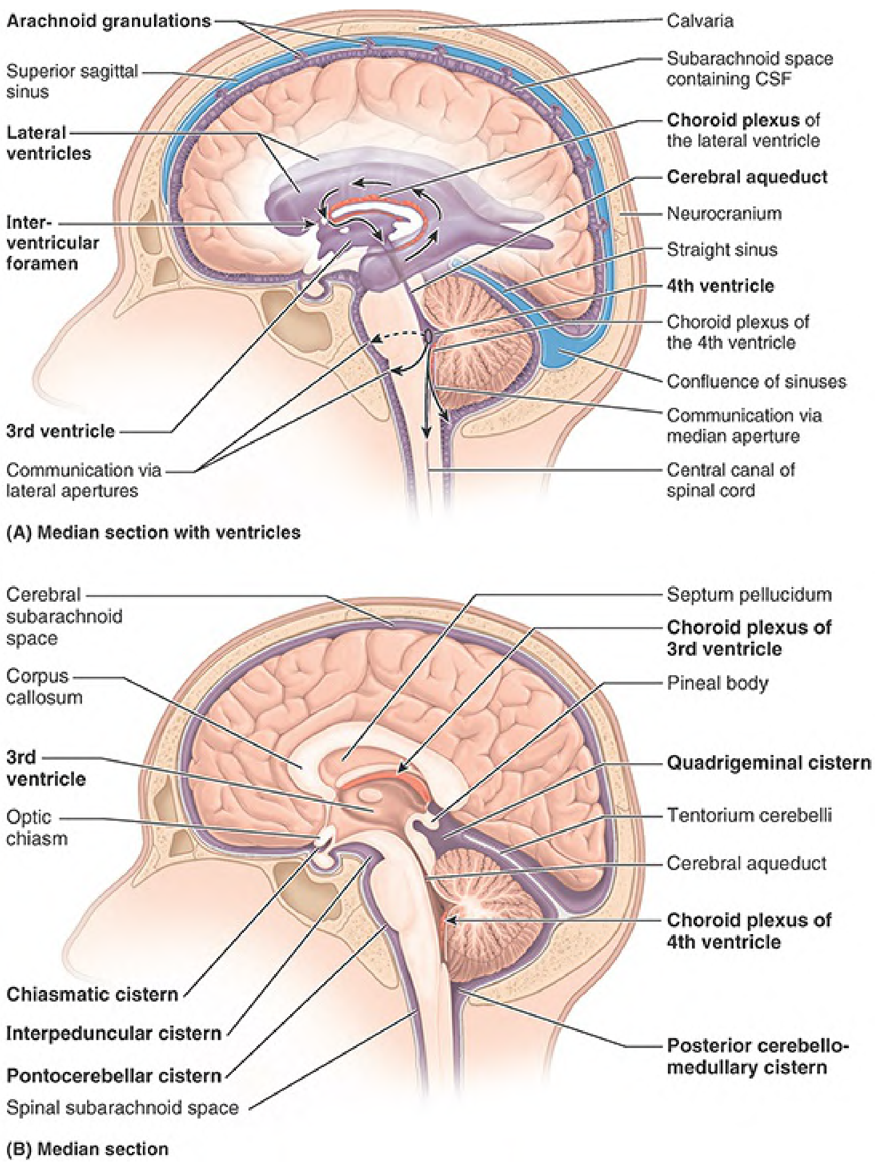


FIGURE 8.37. Ventricles, subarachnoid spaces, and cisterns. A. Ventricular system and circulation of the CSF. The production of CSF is mainly by the choroid plexuses of the lateral, 3rd, and 4th ventricles. The plexuses of the lateral ventricles are the largest and most important. **B.** Subarachnoid cisterns. These are expanded regions of the subarachnoid space that contain more substantial amounts of CSF.

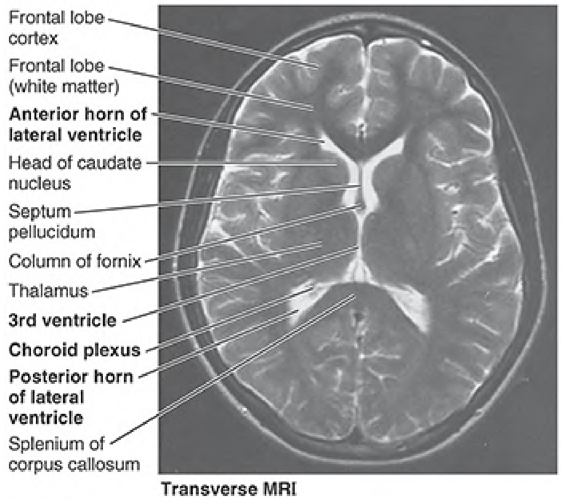


FIGURE 8.38. Features of cerebral hemisphere on transverse MRI. CSF surrounding the brain, extending into the sulci and fissures, and occupying the ventricles, appears bright white.

VENTRICLES OF BRAIN

The **lateral ventricles**, the 1st and 2nd ventricles, are the largest cavities of the ventricular system and occupy large areas of the cerebral hemispheres. Each lateral ventricle opens through an **interventricular foramen** into the **3rd ventricle**. The 3rd ventricle, a slit-like cavity between the right and the left halves of the diencephalon (Fig. 8.36E), is continuous postero-inferiorly with the **cerebral aqueduct**, a narrow channel in the midbrain connecting the 3rd and 4th ventricles (Figs. 8.36D and 8.37A, B).

The pyramid-shaped **4th ventricle** in the posterior part of the pons and medulla extends inferoposteriorly. Inferiorly, it tapers to a narrow channel that continues into the cervical region of the spinal cord as the central canal (Fig. 8.37A). CSF drains into the subarachnoid space from the 4th ventricle through a single **median aperture** and paired **lateral apertures**. These apertures are the only means by which CSF enters the subarachnoid space. If they are blocked, CSF accumulates and the ventricles distend, producing compression of the substance of the cerebral hemispheres.

SUBARACHNOID CISTERNS

Although it is not accurate to say that the brain “floats” in the CSF, the brain actually has minimal attachment to the neurocranium. At certain areas on the base of the brain, the arachnoid and pia are widely separated by subarachnoid cisterns (Fig. 8.37B), which contain CSF, and soft tissue structures that “anchor” the brain, such as the arachnoid trabeculae, vasculature, and, in some cases, cranial nerve roots. The cisterns are usually named according to the structures related to them.

Major intracranial subarachnoid cisterns include the following:

- **Cerebellomedullary cistern**: the largest of the subarachnoid cisterns, located between the cerebellum and the medulla; receives CSF from the apertures of the 4th ventricle. It is divided into the **posterior cerebellomedullary cistern** (cisterna magna) and the **lateral**

cerebellomedullary cistern.

- **Pontocerebellar cistern** (pontine cistern): an extensive space ventral to the pons, continuous inferiorly with the spinal subarachnoid space
- **Interpeduncular cistern** (basal cistern): located in the interpeduncular fossa between the cerebral peduncles of the midbrain (see Fig. B8.18)
- **Chiasmatic cistern** (cistern of optic chiasma): inferior and anterior to the optic chiasm, the point of crossing or decussation of optic nerve fibers
- **Quadrigeminal cistern** (cistern of great cerebral vein): located between the posterior part of the corpus callosum and the superior surface of the cerebellum; contains parts of the great cerebral vein (see Figs. 8.29 and 8.31A, B)
- **Cisterna ambiens** (ambient cistern—not illustrated): located on the lateral aspect of the midbrain and continuous posteriorly with the quadrigeminal cistern

SECRETION OF CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is secreted (at the rate of 400–500 mL/d) mainly by choroidal epithelial cells (modified ependymal cells) of the **choroid plexuses** in the lateral, 3rd, and 4th ventricles (Figs. 8.36D, 8.37, and 8.38). The choroid plexuses consist of fringes of vascular pia mater (tela choroidea) covered by cuboidal epithelial cells. They are invaginated into the roofs of the 3rd and 4th ventricles and on the floors of the bodies and inferior horns of the lateral ventricles.

CIRCULATION OF CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

CSF leaves the lateral ventricles through the interventricular foramina and enters the 3rd ventricle (Fig. 8.37A). From here, CSF passes through the cerebral aqueduct into the 4th ventricle. Some CSF leaves this ventricle through its median and lateral apertures and enters the subarachnoid space, which is continuous around the spinal cord and posterosuperiorly over the cerebellum. However, most CSF flows into the interpeduncular and quadrigeminal cisterns. CSF from the various subarachnoid cisterns flows superiorly through the sulci and fissures on the medial and superolateral surfaces of the cerebral hemispheres. CSF also passes into the extensions of the subarachnoid space around the cranial nerves, the most important of which are the subarachnoid space extensions surrounding the optic nerves (CN II).

ABSORPTION OF CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

The main site of CSF absorption into the venous system is through the **arachnoid granulations** (Figs. 8.35 and 8.37A), especially those that protrude into the superior sagittal sinus and its lateral lacunae (Fig. 8.37A; see Fig. 8.28D). The subarachnoid space containing CSF extends into the cores of the arachnoid granulations. CSF enters the venous system through two routes: (1) Most CSF enters the venous system by transport through the cells of the arachnoid granulations into the dural venous sinuses, and (2) some CSF moves between the cells making up the arachnoid granulations (Corbett & Haines, 2018).

FUNCTIONS OF CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

Along with the meninges and calvaria, CSF protects the brain by providing a cushion against blows to the head. The CSF in the subarachnoid space provides the buoyancy that prevents the weight of the brain from compressing the cranial nerve roots and blood vessels against the internal surface of the cranium. Because the brain is slightly heavier than the CSF, the gyri on the basal surface of the brain (see Fig. 8.42) are in contact with the floor of the cranial cavity when a person is standing erect. In many places at the base of the brain, only the cranial meninges intervene between the brain and cranial bones. In the erect position, the CSF is in the subarachnoid cisterns and sulci on the superior and lateral parts of the brain; therefore, CSF and dura normally separate the superior part of the brain from the calvaria (Fig. 8.37A).

Small, rapidly recurring changes take place in **intracranial pressure** owing to the beating heart; slow recurring changes result from unknown causes. Momentarily large changes in pressure occur during coughing and straining and during changes in position (erect vs. supine). Any change in the volume of the intracranial contents, for example, a brain tumor, an accumulation of ventricular fluid caused by blockage of the cerebral aqueduct (see Fig. B8.21B), or blood from a ruptured aneurysm (a pathologically bulging artery) (see Fig. B8.22) will be reflected by a change in intracranial pressure. This rule is called the **Monro-Kellie doctrine**, which states that the cranial cavity is a closed rigid box and that a change in the quantity of intracranial blood can occur only through the displacement or replacement of CSF.

Arterial Blood Supply to Brain

Although it accounts for only about 2.5% of body weight, the brain receives about one sixth of the cardiac output and one fifth of the oxygen consumed by the body at rest. The blood supply to the brain is derived from the internal carotid and vertebral arteries (Fig. 8.39), the terminal branches of which lie in the subarachnoid space. Venous drainage from the brain occurs via cerebral and cerebellar veins that drain to the adjacent dural venous sinuses (see Fig. 8.29A, B). See also “Venous Drainage of Brain” later in this chapter.

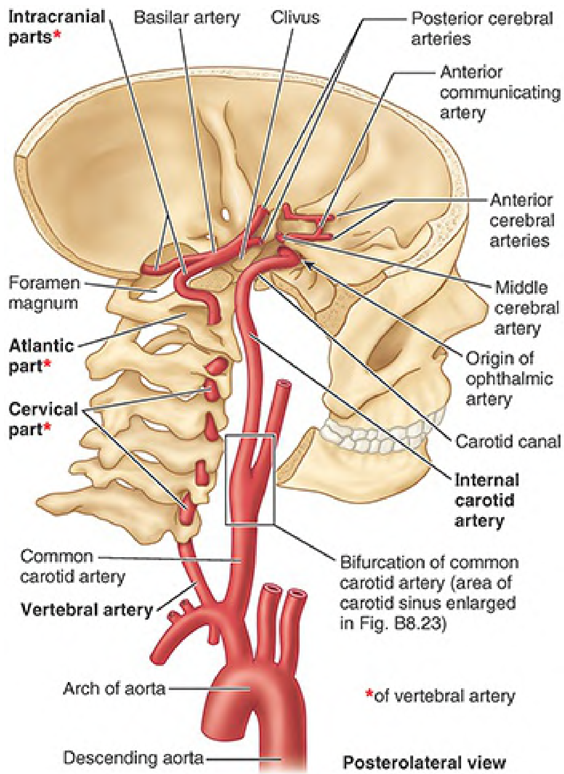


FIGURE 8.39. Arterial supply to brain. The bilaterally paired internal carotid and vertebral arteries deliver an abundant supply of oxygen-rich blood.

INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERIES

The **internal carotid arteries** arise in the neck from the common carotid arteries (Fig. 8.39). The cervical part of each artery ascends vertically through the neck, without branching, to the cranial base. Each internal carotid artery enters the cranial cavity through the **carotid canal** in the petrous part of the temporal bone. The intracranial course of the internal carotid artery is illustrated and described in Figure 8.40 and demonstrated radiographically in Figure 8.41. In addition to the carotid arteries, the carotid canals contain venous plexuses and carotid plexuses of sympathetic nerves (Fig. 8.40). The internal carotid arteries course anteriorly through the cavernous sinuses with the abducent nerves (CN VI) and in close proximity to the oculomotor (CN III) and trochlear (CN IV) nerves. The arteries run in the carotid groove located on the side of the body of the sphenoid (Fig. 8.40; see Fig. 8.31C). The terminal branches of the internal carotid arteries are the **anterior** and **middle cerebral arteries** (Figs. 8.41 and 8.42).

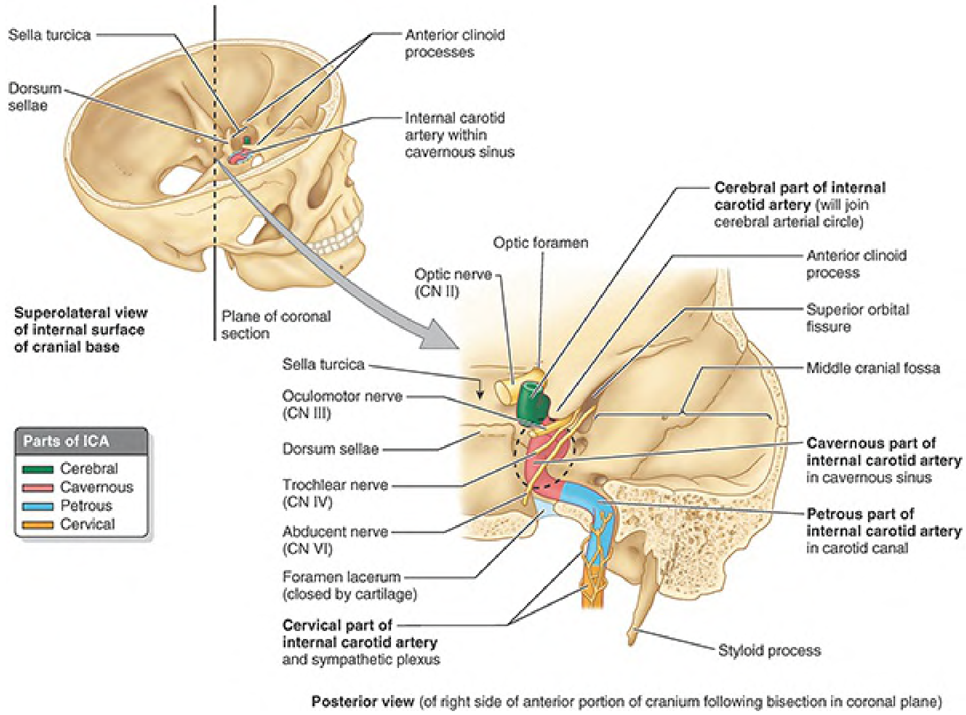


FIGURE 8.40. Course of internal carotid artery. The orientation drawing (left) indicates the plane of the coronal section that intersects the carotid canal (right). The cervical part of the internal carotid artery ascends vertically in the neck to the entrance of the carotid canal in the petrous temporal bone. The petrous part of the artery turns horizontally and medially in the carotid canal toward the apex of the petrous temporal bone. It emerges from the canal superior to the foramen lacerum, closed in life by cartilage, and enters the cranial cavity. The artery runs anteriorly across the cartilage; then the cavernous part of the artery runs along the carotid grooves on the lateral side of the body of the sphenoid, traversing the cavernous sinus. Inferior to the anterior clinoid process, the artery makes a 180° turn, its cerebral part heading posteriorly to join the cerebral arterial circle.

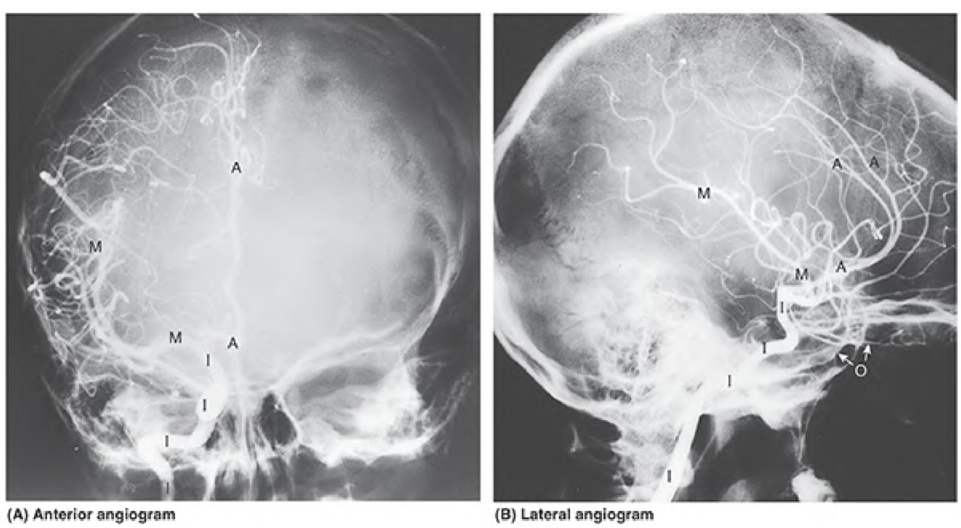


FIGURE 8.41. Carotid arteriograms. A and B. Radiopaque dye injected into the carotid arterial system demonstrates unilateral distribution to the brain from the internal carotid artery. A, anterior cerebral artery and its branches; I, the four parts of the internal carotid artery; M, middle cerebral artery and its branches; O, ophthalmic artery.

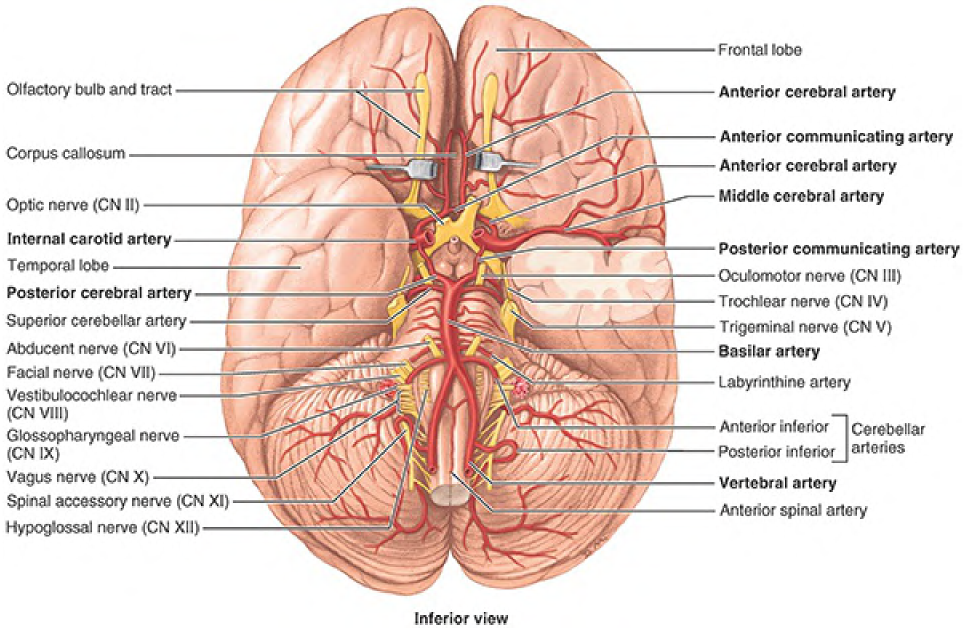


FIGURE 8.42. Base of brain with cerebral arterial circle. The internal carotid and basilar arteries converge, divide, and anastomose to form the cerebral arterial circle (of Willis). The left temporal pole is removed to show the middle cerebral artery in the lateral sulcus of the brain. The frontal lobes are separated to expose the anterior cerebral arteries.

Clinically, the internal carotid arteries and their branches are often referred to as the anterior circulation of the brain. The anterior cerebral arteries are connected by the **anterior communicating artery**. Near their termination, the internal carotid arteries are joined to the **posterior cerebral arteries** by the posterior communicating arteries, completing the cerebral arterial circle around the interpeduncular fossa, the deep depression on the inferior surface of the midbrain between the cerebral peduncles (Figs. 8.42 and 8.43).

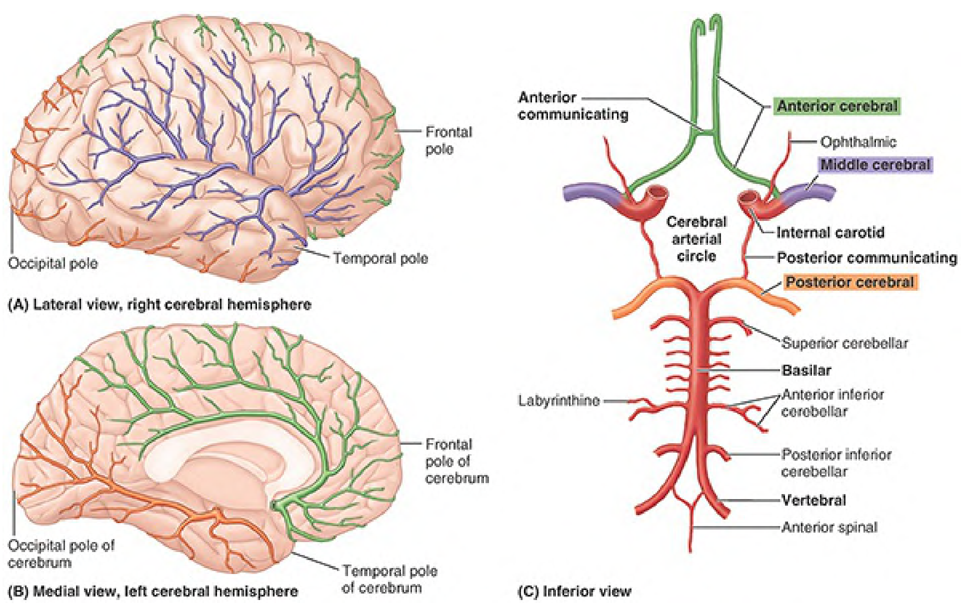


FIGURE 8.43. Arterial blood supply of cerebrum.

VERTEBRAL ARTERIES

The **vertebral arteries** begin in the root of the neck (the prevertebral parts of the vertebral arteries) as the first branches of the first part of the subclavian arteries (Fig. 8.39). The two vertebral arteries are usually unequal in size, the left being larger than the right. The **cervical parts of the vertebral arteries** ascend through the transverse foramina of the first six cervical vertebrae. The **atlantic parts of the vertebral arteries** (parts related to the atlas, vertebra C1) perforate the dura and arachnoid and pass through the foramen magnum. The **intracranial parts of the vertebral arteries** unite at the caudal border of the pons to form the basilar artery (Figs. 8.39, 8.42, and 8.43C). The vertebrobasilar arterial system and its branches are often referred to clinically as the posterior circulation of the brain.

The **basilar artery**, so-named because of its close relationship to the cranial base, ascends the clivus, the sloping surface from the dorsum sellae to the foramen magnum, through the pontocerebellar cistern to the superior border of the pons. It ends by dividing into the two **posterior cerebral arteries**.

CEREBRAL ARTERIES

In addition to supplying branches to deeper parts of the brain, the cortical branches of each cerebral artery supply a surface and a pole of the cerebrum (Figs. 8.41 and 8.43A, B; Table 8.7). The cortical branches of the

- **anterior cerebral artery** supply most of the medial and superior surfaces of the brain and the frontal pole
- **middle cerebral artery** supply the lateral surface of the brain and the temporal pole
- **posterior cerebral artery** supply the inferior surface of the brain and the occipital pole

TABLE 8.7. ARTERIAL BLOOD SUPPLY OF CEREBRAL HEMISPHERES

Artery	Origin	Distribution
Internal carotid	Common carotid artery at superior border of thyroid cartilage	Gives branches to walls of cavernous sinus, pituitary gland, and trigeminal ganglion; provides primary supply to brain
Anterior cerebral	Internal carotid artery	Cerebral hemispheres, except for occipital lobes
Anterior communicating	Anterior cerebral artery	Cerebral arterial circle (of Willis)
Middle cerebral	Continuation of internal carotid artery distal to anterior cerebral artery	Most of lateral surface of cerebral hemispheres
Vertebral	Subclavian artery	Cranial meninges and cerebellum
Basilar	Formed by union of vertebral arteries	Brainstem, cerebellum, and cerebrum
Posterior cerebral	Terminal branch of basilar artery	Inferior aspect of cerebral hemisphere and occipital lobe
Posterior communicating	Posterior cerebral artery	Optic tract, cerebral peduncle, internal capsule, and thalamus

CEREBRAL ARTERIAL CIRCLE

The **cerebral arterial circle** (of Willis) is a roughly pentagon-shaped circle of vessels on the ventral surface of the brain. It is an important anastomosis at the base of the brain between four arteries (two vertebral and two internal carotid arteries) that supply the brain (Figs. 8.42 and 8.43C; Table 8.7). The arterial circle is formed sequentially in an anterior to posterior direction by the following arteries:

- Anterior communicating artery
- Anterior cerebral arteries
- Internal carotid arteries
- Posterior communicating arteries
- Posterior cerebral arteries

The various components of the cerebral arterial circle give numerous small branches to the brain.

Venous Drainage of Brain

The thin-walled, valveless veins draining the brain pierce the arachnoid and meningeal layers of dura mater to end in the nearest dural venous sinuses (see Figs. 8.28A, 8.29, 8.30, 8.31, and 8.32), which ultimately drain for the most part into the IJVs. The **superior cerebral veins** on the superolateral surface of the brain drain into the superior sagittal sinus; **inferior** and **superficial middle cerebral veins** from the inferior, postero-inferior, and deep aspects of the cerebral hemispheres drain into the straight, transverse, and superior petrosal sinuses. The **great cerebral vein** (of Galen) is a single, midline vein formed inside the brain by the union of two internal cerebral veins. The great cerebral vein ends by merging with the inferior sagittal sinus to form the straight sinus (see Fig. 8.29A, B). The cerebellum is drained by **superior** and **inferior cerebellar veins**, draining the respective aspect of the cerebellum into the transverse and sigmoid sinuses (see Fig. 8.32).

CLINICAL BOX

BRAIN

Cerebral Injuries

Cerebral concussion is an abrupt, brief loss of consciousness immediately after a severe head injury. Consciousness may be lost for only 10 seconds, as occurs in most knockdowns during boxing. With a more severe injury, such as that resulting from an automobile accident, consciousness may be lost for hours and even days. If a

person recovers consciousness within 6 hours, the long-term outcome is excellent (Louis et al., 2022). If the coma lasts longer than 6 hours, brain tissue injury usually occurs.

Professional boxers are especially at risk for chronic traumatic encephalopathy, or “punchdrunk syndrome,” a brain injury characterized by weakness in the lower limbs, unsteady gait, slowness of muscular movements, tremors of the hands, hesitancy of speech, and slow cerebration (use of one’s brain). Brain injuries result from acceleration and deceleration of the head that shears or stretches axons (diffuse axonal injury). The sudden stopping of the moving head results in the brain hitting the suddenly stationary cranium. Sometimes concussion occurs without loss of consciousness. The absence of loss of consciousness does not mean that the concussion is any less serious. Over 90% of head injuries are referred to as minor traumatic brain injuries.

Cerebral contusion results from brain trauma in which the pia is stripped from the injured surface of the brain and may be torn, allowing blood to enter the subarachnoid space. The bruising results either from the sudden impact of the still-moving brain against the suddenly stationary cranium or from the suddenly moving cranium against the still-stationary brain. Cerebral contusion may result in an extended loss of consciousness, but if there is no diffuse axonal injury, brain swelling, or secondary hemorrhage, recovery from a contusion may be excellent (Louis et al., 2022).

Cerebral lacerations are often associated with depressed cranial fractures (see Fig. B8.4) or gunshot wounds. Lacerations result in rupture of blood vessels and bleeding into the brain and subarachnoid space, causing increased intracranial pressure and cerebral compression.

Cerebral compression may be produced by:

- intracranial collections of blood
- obstruction of CSF circulation or absorption
- intracranial tumors or abscesses
- brain swelling caused by brain edema, an increase in brain volume resulting from an increase in water and sodium content (Mayer, 2022)

Cisternal Puncture

CSF may be obtained from the posterior cerebellomedullary cistern through a cisternal puncture for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes. The cerebellomedullary cistern is the site of choice in infants and young children, whereas the lumbar cistern is used most frequently in adults (see Chapter 2, Back, Fig. B2.25). The needle is carefully inserted through the posterior atlanto-occipital membrane into the cerebellomedullary cistern. The subarachnoid space or the ventricular system may also be entered for measuring or monitoring CSF pressure, injecting antibiotics, or administering contrast media for medical imaging.

Hydrocephalus

Overproduction of CSF, obstruction of CSF flow, or interference with CSF absorption results in excess fluid in the cerebral ventricles and enlargement of the head, a condition called obstructive hydrocephalus (Fig. B8.21A). The excess CSF dilates the ventricles, thins the cerebral cortex, and separates the bones of the calvaria in infants. Although an obstruction can occur any place, the blockage usually occurs in the cerebral aqueduct (Fig. B8.21B) or an interventricular foramen. Aqueductal stenosis (narrow aqueduct) may be caused by a nearby tumor in the midbrain or by cellular debris following intraventricular hemorrhage or bacterial and fungal infections of the central nervous system (Corbett & Haines, 2018).

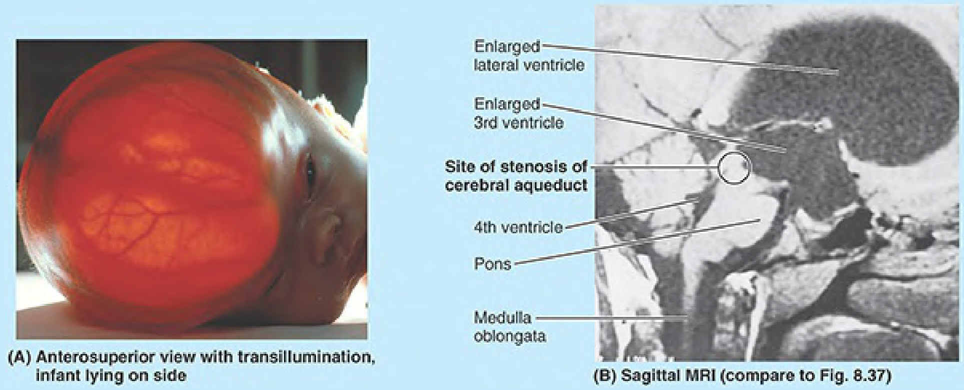


FIGURE B8.21. Obstruction of CSF flow. A. Hydrocephalus **B.** Aqueductal stenosis.

Blockage of CSF circulation results in dilation of the ventricles superior to the point of obstruction and increased pressure on the cerebral hemispheres. This condition squeezes the brain between the ventricular fluid and the calvarial bones. In infants, the internal pressure results in expansion of the brain and calvaria because the sutures and fontanelles are still open. It is possible to produce an artificial drainage system to bypass the blockage and allow CSF to escape, thereby lessening damage to the brain.

In communicating hydrocephalus, the flow of CSF through the ventricles and into the subarachnoid space is not impaired. However, movement of CSF from this space into the venous system is partly or completely blocked. The blockage may be caused by the congenital absence of arachnoid granulations, or the granulations may be blocked by red blood cells as the result of a subarachnoid hemorrhage (Corbett & Haines, 2018).

Leakage of Cerebrospinal Fluid

Fractures in the floor of the middle cranial fossa may result in CSF leakage from the external acoustic meatus (CSF otorrhea) if the meninges superior to the middle ear are torn and the tympanic membrane is ruptured. Fractures in the floor of the anterior cranial fossa may involve the cribriform plate of the ethmoid (see Fig. 8.12A), resulting in CSF leakage through the nose (CSF rhinorrhea). CSF can be distinguished from

mucus by testing its glucose level. The glucose level of the CSF reflects that of the blood. CSF otorrhea and rhinorrhea may be the primary indications of a cranial base fracture and increased risk of meningitis because an infection could spread to the meninges from the ear or nose (Louis et al., 2022).

Reduced Blood Supply to the Brainstem

The winding course of the vertebral arteries through the foramina transversarii of the transverse processes of the cervical vertebrae and through the suboccipital triangles becomes clinically significant when blood flow through these arteries is reduced, as occurs with arteriosclerosis (hardening of arteries). Under these conditions, prolonged turning of the head, as occurs when backing up a motor vehicle, may cause light-headedness, dizziness, and other symptoms from the interference with the blood supply to the brainstem.

Anastomoses of Cerebral Arteries and Cerebral Embolism

Branches of the three cerebral arteries anastomose with each other on the surface of the brain; however, if a cerebral artery is obstructed by a cerebral embolism (e.g., a blood clot), these microscopic anastomoses are not capable of providing enough blood for the area of cerebral cortex concerned. Consequently, cerebral ischemia and infarction occur and an area of necrosis (dead tissue) results. Large cerebral emboli occluding major cerebral vessels may cause severe neurologic problems and death.

Variations of Cerebral Arterial Circle

Variations in the size of the vessels forming the cerebral arterial circle are common. The posterior communicating arteries are absent in some individuals; in others, there may be two anterior communicating arteries. In approximately 1 in 3 persons, one posterior cerebral artery is a major branch of the internal carotid artery. One of the anterior cerebral arteries is often small in the proximal part of its course; the anterior communicating artery is larger than usual in these individuals. These variations may become clinically significant if emboli or arterial disease occur.

Strokes

A stroke is an acute disruption of the normal blood flow (hypoperfusion) of the brain that results in the death of brain cells producing brain malfunction. Strokes are the most common neurologic disorders affecting adults in the United States. Worldwide, stroke accounts for approximately 10% of all deaths (Elkind, 2022); they are more often disabling than fatal. The cardinal feature of a stroke is the sudden onset of neurological symptoms. There are two main types of stroke: ischemic, due to impaired

cerebral blood flow, and hemorrhagic, due to bleeding.

Ischemic strokes account for the great majority of strokes. In this type of stroke, focal neurological deficits develop due to occlusive atherosclerotic disease (see Clinical Box "Brain Infarction" below) or thromboembolism in a cerebral artery. A thrombus is a clot developing within a blood vessel, and an embolus is a clot or plug formed elsewhere that travels to and becomes lodged in a blood vessel.

The cerebral arterial circle is an important means of collateral circulation in the event of gradual obstruction of one of the major arteries forming the circle. Sudden occlusion, even if only partial, results in neurological deficits. In elderly persons, the anastomoses of the arterial circle are often inadequate when a large artery (e.g., the internal carotid) is occluded, even if the occlusion is gradual (in which case function is impaired at least to some degree).

Hemorrhagic stroke follows leakage or rupture of an intracerebral artery or a saccular aneurysm of a subarachnoid artery, a sac-like dilation on a weak part of the arterial wall (Fig. B8.22A). The most common type of saccular aneurysm is a berry aneurysm, occurring in the vessels of or near the cerebral arterial circle and the medium arteries at the base of the brain (Fig. B8.22). Aneurysms also occur at the bifurcation of the basilar artery into the posterior cerebral arteries.

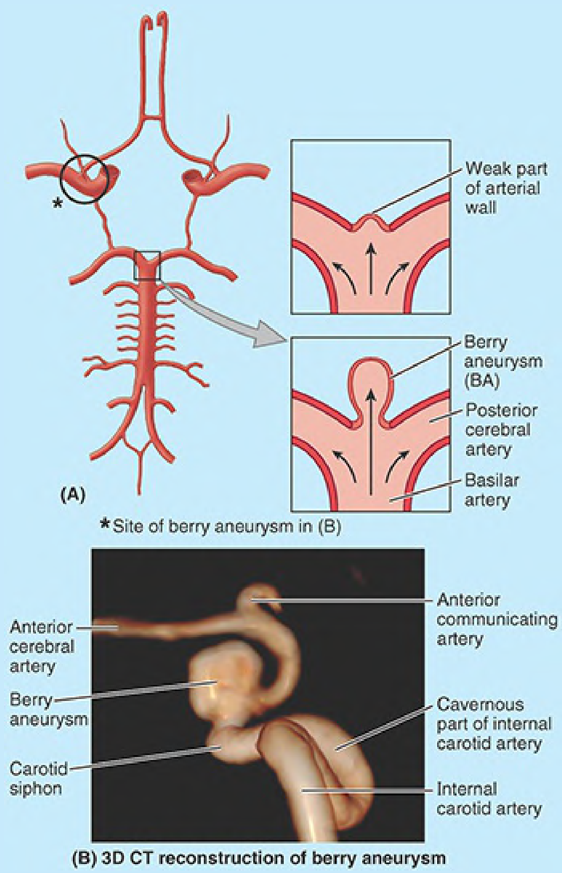


FIGURE B8.22. Berry aneurysm.

In time, especially in individuals with hypertension (high blood pressure), the weak part of the wall of the aneurysm expands and may rupture (Fig. B8.22), allowing blood to enter the subarachnoid space. Sudden rupture of an aneurysm usually produces a severe, almost unbearable headache and a stiff neck. These symptoms result from gross bleeding into the subarachnoid space.

Prevention of or recovery from stroke involves lifestyle changes, such as controlling blood pressure, smoking cessation, healthy dietary changes, control of weight and diabetes, exercise, and use of anticlotting drugs if indicated.

Brain Infarction

An atheromatous plaque at a bend of an artery (e.g., at the bifurcation of a common carotid artery) results in progressive narrowing (stenosis) of the artery, producing increasingly severe neurologic deficits (Fig. B8.23). An embolus may separate from the plaque and be carried in the blood until it lodges in an artery, usually an intracranial branch that is too small to allow its passage. This event usually results in acute cortical infarction, a sudden insufficiency of arterial blood to the brain (e.g., of the left parietal lobes). An interruption of blood supply for 30 seconds alters a person's brain metabolism. After 1–2 minutes, neural function may be lost; after 5 minutes, lack of oxygen (anoxia) can result in cerebral infarction. Quickly restoring oxygen to the blood supply may reverse the brain damage (Esenwa & Mayer, 2022).

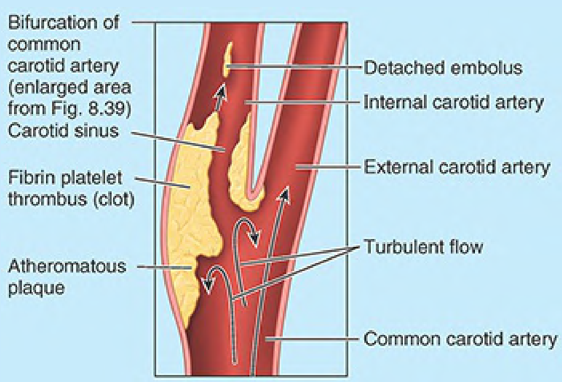


FIGURE B8.23. Atheromatous plaque.

Transient Ischemic Attacks

Transient ischemic attacks (TIAs) refer to temporary neurologic symptoms resulting from ischemia lasting <24 hours. Most TIAs last only a few minutes to an hour. With major carotid or vertebrobasilar stenosis (narrowing of the arterial lumen), the TIA tends to last longer, as a result of transient occlusion of distal intracranial arteries before spontaneous dissolution of the embolus. The symptoms of TIA may be ambiguous: staggering, dizziness, light-headedness, fainting, and paresthesias. Persons with TIAs are at increased risk for subsequent ischemic stroke and myocardial infarction (Omran &

Gutierrez, 2022).

The Bottom Line: Brain

Parts of brain: The two hemispheres of the cerebral cortex, separated by the falx cerebri, are the dominant features of the human brain. ■ Although the pattern of gyri and sulci are highly variable, other features of the brain, including overall brain size, are remarkably consistent from individual to individual. ■ Each cerebral hemisphere is divided for descriptive purposes into four lobes that are related to, but the boundaries of which do not correspond to, the overlying bones of the same name. ■ The diencephalon forms the central core of the brain, with the midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata making the brainstem; the medulla is continuous with the spinal cord. ■ The cerebellum is the subtentorial brain mass occupying the posterior cranial fossa.

Ventricles of brain: Each cerebral hemisphere includes a lateral ventricle in its core; otherwise, the ventricular system of the brain is an unpaired, median formation that communicates with the subarachnoid space surrounding the brain and spinal cord. ■ Choroid plexuses secrete CSF into the ventricles, which flows out of them into the subarachnoid space. ■ CSF is absorbed into the venous system, normally at the same rate at which it is produced, by the arachnoid granulations related to the superior sagittal sinus.

Arterial supply and venous drainage of brain: A continuous supply of oxygen and nutrients is essential for brain function. ■ The brain receives a dual blood supply from the cerebral branches of the bilaterally paired internal carotid and vertebral arteries. ■ Anastomoses between these arteries form the cerebral arterial circle. ■ Anastomoses also occur between the branches of the three cerebral arteries on the surface of the brain. ■ In adults, if one of the four arteries delivering blood to the brain is blocked, the remaining three are not usually capable of providing adequate collateral circulation; consequently, impaired cerebral blood flow (ischemia) and an ischemic stroke result. ■ Venous drainage from the brain occurs via the dural venous sinuses and internal jugular veins.

ORBITS, EYEBALL, AND ACCESSORY VISUAL STRUCTURES

The eye is the organ of vision and consists of the eyeball and the optic nerve. The orbits are bony formations that contain the eyeballs. Structures accessory to vision (L. adnexa oculi) lie anterior to the orbits to protect the eyeballs and posteriorly within the orbits to move, support, innervate,

and vascularize the eyeballs. The **orbital region** is the area of the face overlying the orbit and eyeball and includes the upper and lower eyelids and lacrimal apparatus (see Fig. 8.14).

Orbits

The **orbits** are bilateral bony cavities in the facial skeleton that resemble hollow, quadrangular pyramids with their bases directed anterolaterally and their apices, posteromedially (Fig. 8.44A). The medial walls of the two orbits, separated by the ethmoidal sinuses and the upper parts of the nasal cavity, are nearly parallel, whereas their lateral walls are approximately at a right (90°) angle.

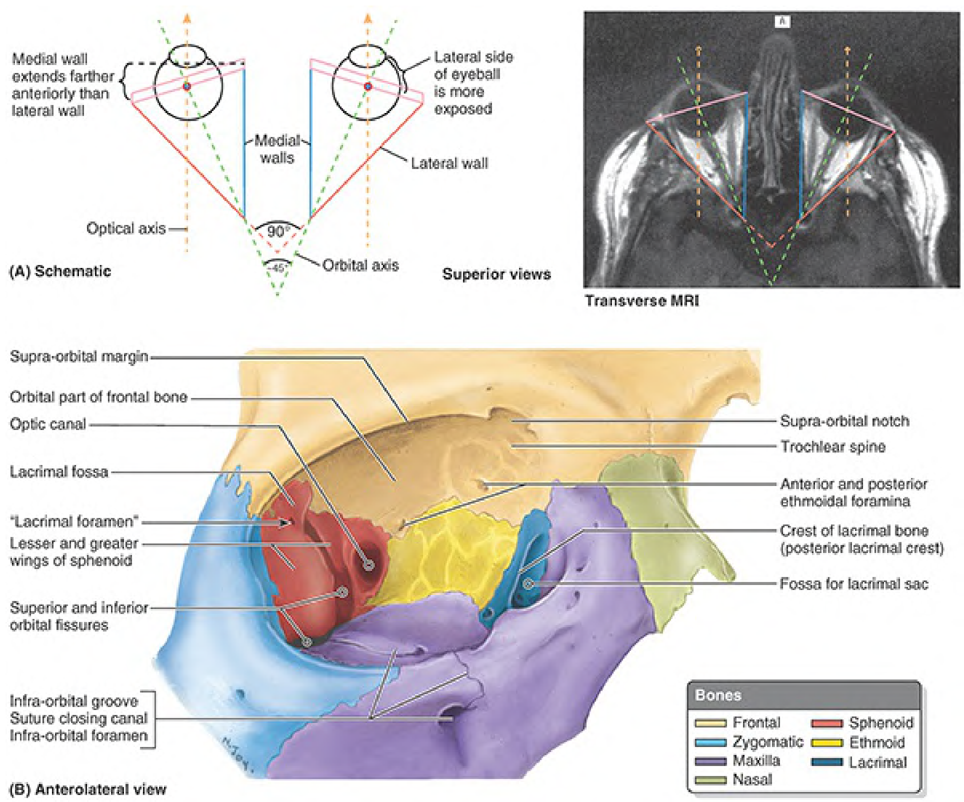


FIGURE 8.44. **Orbits and placement of eyeballs within them. A.** Optical axes (line of gaze) do not coincide with orbital axes. This is significant in understanding movements of extra-ocular muscles. The orbits are separated by ethmoidal cells and the upper nasal cavity and septum. **B.** Bony walls of orbits. This anterolateral view allows a view of the orbit walls and apex, which are not well seen in an anterior view since the apex and medial wall lie in a sagittal plane in the orbits.

Consequently, the axes of the orbits (orbital axes) diverge at approximately 45°. The **optical axes** (axes of gaze, the direction or line of sight) for the two eyeballs are parallel and, in the anatomical position, run directly anteriorly ("looking straight ahead"). This position of the eyeballs is referred to as the **primary position**. The orbits and orbital region anterior to them contain and protect the **eyeballs** and **accessory visual structures** (Fig. 8.45), which include the

- eyelids, which bound the orbits anteriorly, controlling exposure of the anterior eyeball

- extra-ocular muscles, which position the eyeballs and raise the superior eyelids
- nerves and vessels in transit to the eyeballs and muscles
- orbital fascia surrounding the eyeballs and muscles
- mucous membrane (conjunctiva) lining the eyelids and anterior aspect of the eyeballs, and most of the lacrimal apparatus, which lubricates it

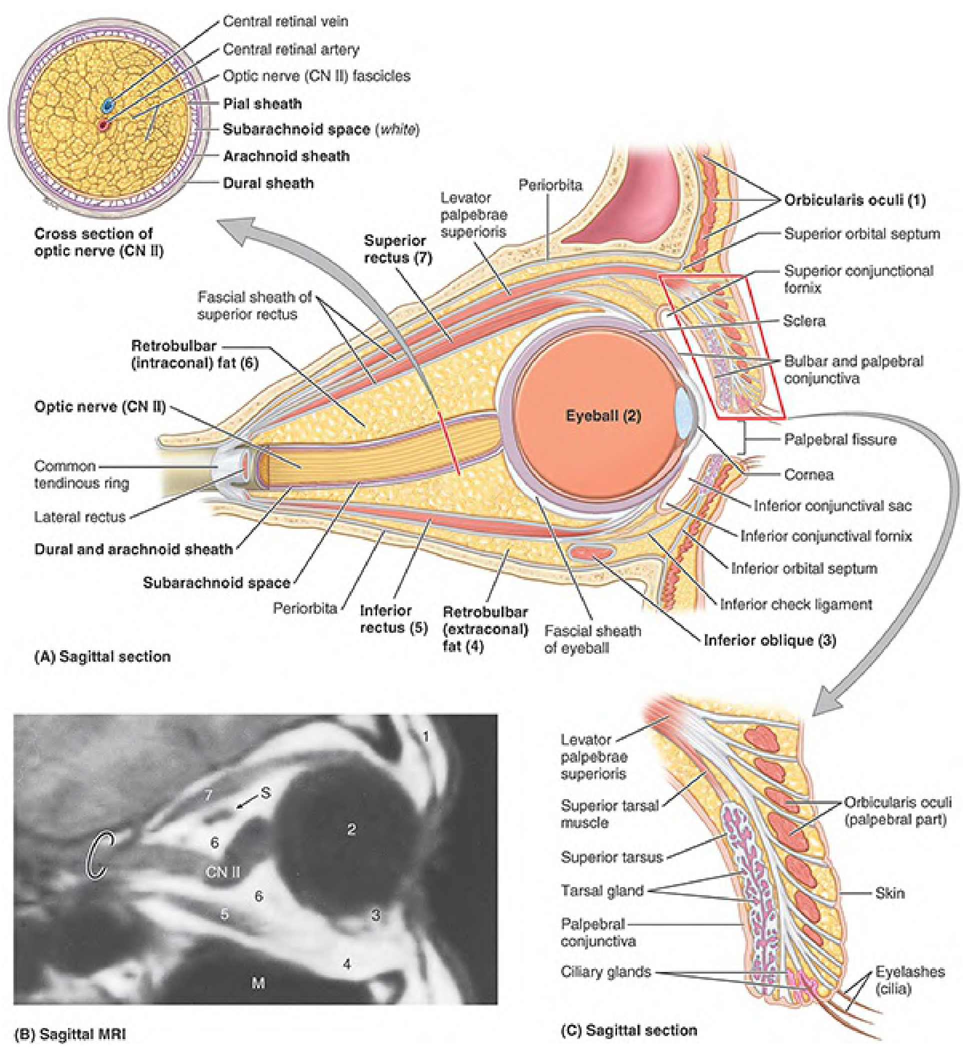


FIGURE 8.45. Orbit, eyeball, and eyelids. A. Overview. Inset. Cross-section of optic nerve (CN II). The subarachnoid space around the optic nerve is continuous with the space between the arachnoid and the pia covering the brain. The numbers refer to structures labeled in part **B. B.** MRI study providing a sagittal section similar to part **A**. M, maxillary sinus; S, superior ophthalmic vein; arc, optic canal. **C.** Detail of superior eyelid. The tarsus forms the skeleton of the eyelid and contains tarsal glands.

All space within the orbits not occupied by these structures is filled with orbital fat; thus, it forms a matrix in which the structures of the orbit are embedded.

The quadrangular pyramidal **orbit** has a base, four walls, and an apex (Fig. 8.44B):

- The **base of the orbit** is outlined by the **orbital margin**, which surrounds the **orbital opening**. The bone forming the orbital margin is reinforced to afford protection to the orbital contents and provides attachment for the orbital septum, a fibrous membrane that extends into

the eyelids.

- The **superior wall** (roof) is approximately horizontal and is formed mainly by the orbital part of the frontal bone, which separates the orbital cavity from the anterior cranial fossa. Near the apex of the orbit, the superior wall is formed by the lesser wing of the sphenoid. Anterolaterally, a shallow depression in the orbital part of the frontal bone, called the **fossa for lacrimal gland** (lacrimal fossa), accommodates the lacrimal gland.
- The **medial walls** of the contralateral orbits are essentially parallel and are formed primarily by the **orbital plate of ethmoid bone**, along with contributions from the frontal process of the maxilla, lacrimal, and sphenoid bones. Anteriorly, the medial wall is indented by the **lacrimal groove** and **fossa for lacrimal sac**; the trochlea (pulley) for the tendon of one of the extra-ocular muscles is located superiorly. Much of the bone forming the medial wall is paper thin. The ethmoid bone is highly pneumatized with ethmoidal cells (air sinuses), often visible through the bone of a dried cranium.
- The **inferior wall** (orbital floor) is formed mainly by the maxilla and partly by the zygomatic and palatine bones. The thin inferior wall is shared by the orbit and maxillary sinus. It slants inferiorly from the apex to the inferior orbital margin. The inferior wall is demarcated from the lateral wall of the orbit by the inferior orbital fissure, a gap between the orbital surfaces of the maxilla and the sphenoid.
- The **lateral wall** is formed by the **frontal process of the zygomatic bone** and the greater wing of the sphenoid. This is the strongest and thickest of the four walls, which is important because it is most exposed and vulnerable to direct trauma. Its posterior part separates the orbit from the temporal and middle cranial fossae. The lateral walls of the contralateral orbits are nearly perpendicular to each other.
- The **apex of the orbit** is at the **optic canal** in the lesser wing of the sphenoid just medial to the superior orbital fissure.

The widest part of the orbit corresponds to the equator of the eyeball (Fig. 8.45A), an imaginary line encircling the eyeball equidistant from its anterior and posterior poles. The bones forming the orbit are lined with **periorbita**, the periosteum of the orbit. The periorbita is continuous

- at the optic canal and superior orbital fissure with the periosteal layer of the dura mater
- over the orbital margins and through the inferior orbital fissure with the periosteum covering the external surface of the cranium (pericranium)
- with the orbital septa at the orbital margins
- with the fascial sheaths of the extra-ocular muscles
- with the orbital fascia that forms the fascial sheath of the eyeball

Anterior Accessory Visual Structures

The eyelids and lacrimal fluid, secreted by the lacrimal glands, protect the cornea and eyeballs from injury and irritation (e.g., from dust and small particles).

EYELIDS

The **eyelids** are moveable folds that cover the eyeball anteriorly when closed, thereby protecting it from injury and excessive light. They also keep the cornea moist by spreading the lacrimal fluid (Fig. 8.46A). The eyelids are covered externally by thin skin and internally by transparent mucous membrane, the **palpebral conjunctiva** (Figs. 8.45A, C and 8.46B). The palpebral conjunctiva is reflected onto the eyeball, where it is continuous with the bulbar conjunctiva. The **bulbar conjunctiva** is thin, transparent, and loosely attached to the anterior surface (sclera or "white") of the eyeball where it contains small, visible blood vessels. It is adherent to the periphery of the cornea (Figs. 8.46B and 8.47; see Fig. 8.50). The lines of reflection of the palpebral conjunctiva onto the eyeball form continuous recesses or "pockets," the **superior** and **inferior conjunctival fornices** (singular = fornix; Figs. 8.45A and 8.46).

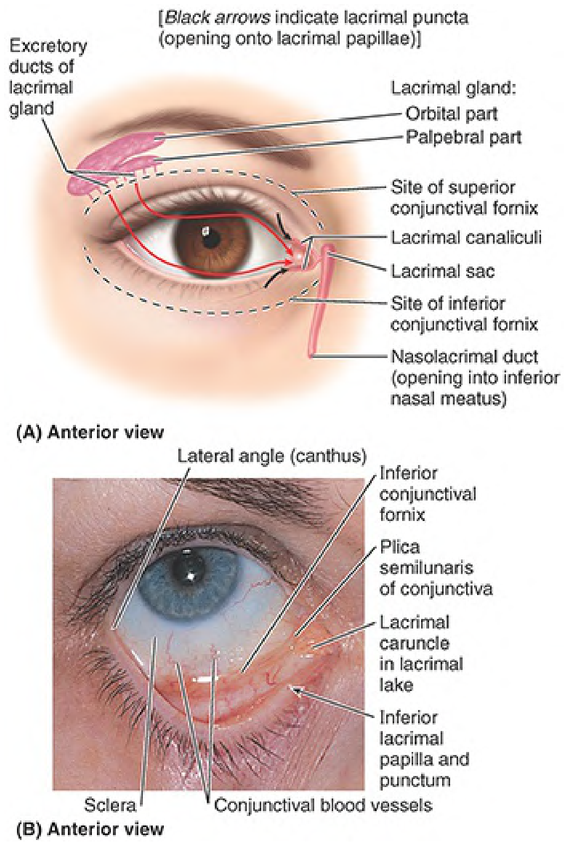


FIGURE 8.46. **Lacrimal apparatus and anterior eyeball. A.** Components of lacrimal apparatus. Tears flowing from the superolateral aspect of the conjunctival sac (dashed lines) to the nasal cavity are demonstrated. **B.** Surface anatomy. The fibrous outer coat of the eyeball includes the tough white sclera and the central transparent cornea, through which the pigmented iris with its aperture, the pupil, can be seen. The inferior eyelid has been everted to show the reflection of palpebral conjunctiva lining the inner surface of the eyelid to the bulbar conjunctiva covering the anterior surface of the eyeball. The semilunar fold (plica semilunaris) is a vertical fold of conjunctiva near the medial angle, at the lacrimal caruncle.

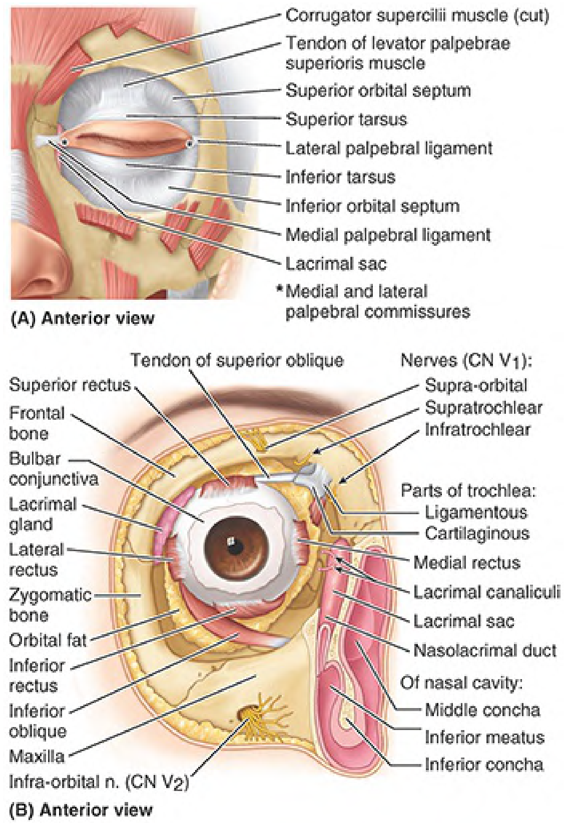


FIGURE 8.47. Skeleton of eyelids and anterior approach to orbit. A. Superior and inferior tarsi. Their ciliary margins are free; however, they are attached peripherally to the orbital septum (palpebral fascia in the eyelid). **B.** Dissection of orbit, eyelids, orbital septum, and levator palpebrae superioris. Some fat has been removed. Part of the lacrimal gland is seen between the bony orbital wall laterally and the eyeball and lateral rectus muscle medially. Structures receiving lacrimal drainage from the conjunctival sac are seen medially.

The **conjunctival sac** is the space bound by the palpebral and bulbar conjunctivae. It is a closed space when the eyelids are closed, but opens via an anterior aperture, the palpebral fissure (L. rima palpebrae, the gap between the eyelids), when the eye is open (eyelids are parted) (Fig. 8.45A). The conjunctival sac is a specialized form of mucosal "bursa" that enables the eyelids to move freely over the surface of the eyeball as they open and close.

The superior (upper) and inferior (lower) eyelids are strengthened by dense bands of connective tissue, the **superior** and **inferior tarsi** (singular = tarsus), which form the "skeleton" of the eyelids (Figs. 8.45C and 8.47A). Fibers of the palpebral portion of the orbicularis oculi (the sphincter of the palpebral fissure) are in the connective tissue superficial to the tarsi and deep to the skin of the eyelids (Fig. 8.45C). Embedded in the tarsi are **tarsal glands** that produce a lipid secretion that lubricates the edges of the eyelids and prevents them from sticking together when they close. The lipid secretion also forms a barrier that lacrimal fluid does not cross when produced in normal amounts. When production is excessive, it spills over the barrier onto the cheeks as tears.

The **eyelashes** (L. cilia) are in the margins of the eyelids. The large sebaceous glands associated with the eyelashes are **ciliary glands**. The junctions of the superior and inferior eyelids make up the **medial** and **lateral palpebral commissures**, defining the **medial** and

lateral angles of the eye (G. kanthos, corner of eye), or canthi (singular = canthus; Figs. 8.46B and 8.47A).

Between the nose and the medial angle of the eye is the **medial palpebral ligament**, which connects the tarsi to the medial margin of the orbit (Fig. 8.47A). The orbicularis oculi originates from and inserts onto this ligament. A similar **lateral palpebral ligament** attaches the tarsi to the lateral margin of the orbit, but it does not provide for direct muscle attachment.

The **orbital septum** is a fibrous membrane that spans from the tarsi to the margins of the orbit, where it becomes continuous with the periosteum (Figs. 8.45A and 8.47A). It keeps the orbital fat contained and, owing to its continuity with the periorbita, can limit the spread of infection to and from the orbit. The septum constitutes in large part the posterior fascia of the orbicularis oculi muscle.

LACRIMAL APPARATUS

The lacrimal apparatus (Figs. 8.46A and 8.47B) consists of the following:

- **Lacrimal gland**: secretes **lacrimal fluid**, a watery physiological saline containing the bacteriocidal enzyme lysozyme. The fluid moistens and lubricates the surfaces of the conjunctiva and cornea and provides some nutrients and dissolved oxygen to the cornea. When produced in excess, the overflowing fluid becomes tears.
- **Excretory ducts of lacrimal gland**: convey lacrimal fluid from the lacrimal glands to the conjunctival sac (Fig. 8.46A)
- **Lacrimal canaliculi** (L., small canals): commence at a **lacrimal punctum** (opening) on the **lacrimal papilla** near the medial angle of the eye and drain lacrimal fluid from the **lacrimal lake** (L. lacus lacrimalis, a triangular space at the medial angle of the eye where the tears collect) to the **lacrimal sac** (dilated superior part of the nasolacrimal duct) (Figs. 8.46A and 8.47B)
- **Nasolacrimal duct**: conveys the lacrimal fluid to the inferior nasal meatus (a cavity below the inferior nasal concha, the lowest of three downward-curving ridges on the lateral wall of the nasal cavity)

The lacrimal gland, almond shaped and approximately 2 cm long, lies in the fossa for the lacrimal gland in the superolateral part of each orbit (Figs. 8.44B, 8.46A, and 8.47B). The gland is divided into a superior **orbital** and **inferior palpebral parts** by the lateral expansion of the tendon of the levator palpebrae superioris (Fig. 8.46A). **Accessory lacrimal glands** may also be present, sometimes in the middle part of the eyelid, or along the superior or inferior fornices of the conjunctival sac. They are more numerous in the superior eyelid than in the inferior eyelid.

Production of lacrimal fluid is stimulated by parasympathetic impulses from CN VII. It is secreted through 8–12 excretory ducts, which open into the lateral part of the superior conjunctival fornix of the conjunctival sac. The fluid flows inferiorly within the sac under the influence of gravity. When the cornea becomes dry, the eye blinks. The eyelids come together in a lateral to medial sequence pushing a film of fluid medially over the cornea, somewhat like windshield wipers. In this way, lacrimal fluid, containing foreign material such as dust, is pushed

toward the medial angle of the eye, accumulating in the lacrimal lake. Capillary action drains fluid into the lacrimal canaliculi through the lacrimal puncta. Action of the orbicular oculi muscle, attached in part to the lacrimal sac, assists in pulling fluid into the sac (Figs. 8.46A, B and 8.47B) (Fernandez-Valencia & Gomez Pellico, 1990).

From this sac, the fluid drains to the inferior nasal meatus of the nasal cavity through the nasolacrimal duct. It then flows posteriorly across the floor of the nasal cavity to the nasopharynx and is eventually swallowed, disposing of the particles and irritants cleansed from the conjunctival sac.

The **nerve supply of the lacrimal gland** is both sympathetic and parasympathetic (Fig. 8.48). The presynaptic parasympathetic secretomotor fibers are conveyed from the facial nerve by the greater petrosal nerve and then by the nerve of the pterygoid canal to the pterygopalatine ganglion, where they synapse with the cell body of the postsynaptic fiber. Vasoconstrictive, postsynaptic sympathetic fibers, brought from the superior cervical ganglion by the internal carotid plexus and deep petrosal nerve, join the parasympathetic fibers to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal and traverse the pterygopalatine ganglion. The terminal communicating branch of the zygomatic nerve (from CN V_2) brings both types of fibers to the lacrimal branch of the ophthalmic nerve, the merger of branches occurring immediately before or just after entering the gland (see Chapter 10, Summary of Cranial Nerves).

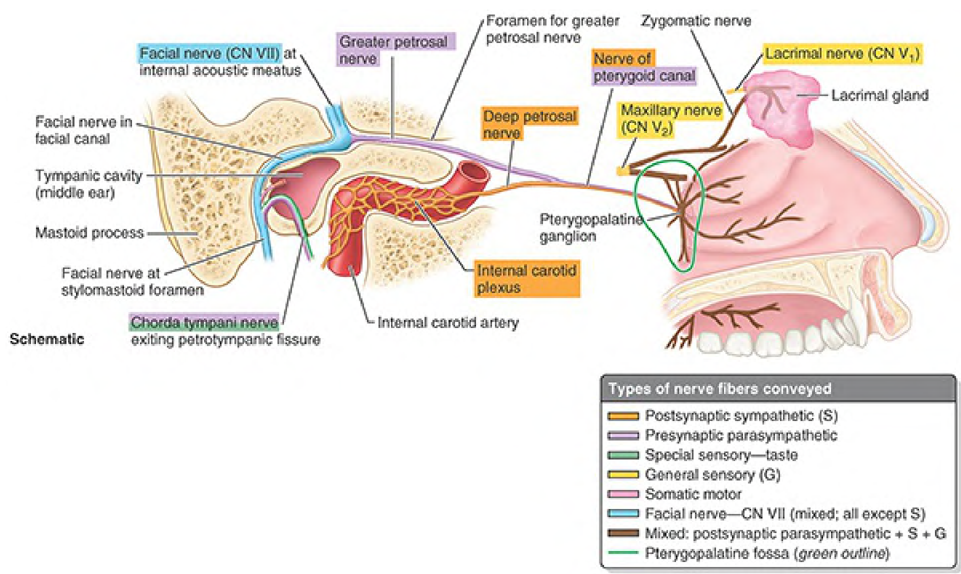


FIGURE 8.48. Innervation of lacrimal gland. The facial nerve (CN VII), greater petrosal nerve, and nerve of pterygoid canal deliver presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the pterygopalatine ganglion. The synapse between presynaptic and postsynaptic fibers occurs here. The maxillary, infra-orbital, zygomatic, and lacrimal nerves convey the postsynaptic fibers to the gland.

Eyeball

The eyeball contains the optical apparatus of the visual system (Fig. 8.45A). It occupies most of the anterior portion of the orbit, suspended by six extrinsic muscles that control its movement, and a fascial suspensory apparatus. It measures approximately 25 mm in diameter. All

anatomical structures within the eyeball have a circular or spherical arrangement. The eyeball proper has three layers; however, there is an additional connective tissue layer that surrounds the eyeball, supporting it within the orbit. The connective tissue layer is composed posteriorly of the **fascial sheath of the eyeball** (bulbar fascia or Tenon capsule), which forms the actual socket for the eyeball, and anteriorly of bulbar conjunctiva. The fascial sheath is the most substantial portion of the suspensory apparatus. A very loose connective tissue layer, the **episcleral space** (a potential space) lies between the fascial sheath and the outer layer of the eyeball, facilitating movements of the eyeball within the fascial sheath.

The three layers of the eyeball are as follows (Fig. 8.49):

1. Fibrous layer (outer coat or tunic), consisting of the sclera and cornea
2. Vascular layer (middle coat), consisting of the choroid, ciliary body, and iris
3. Inner layer (inner coat), consisting of the retina, which has both optic and nonvisual parts

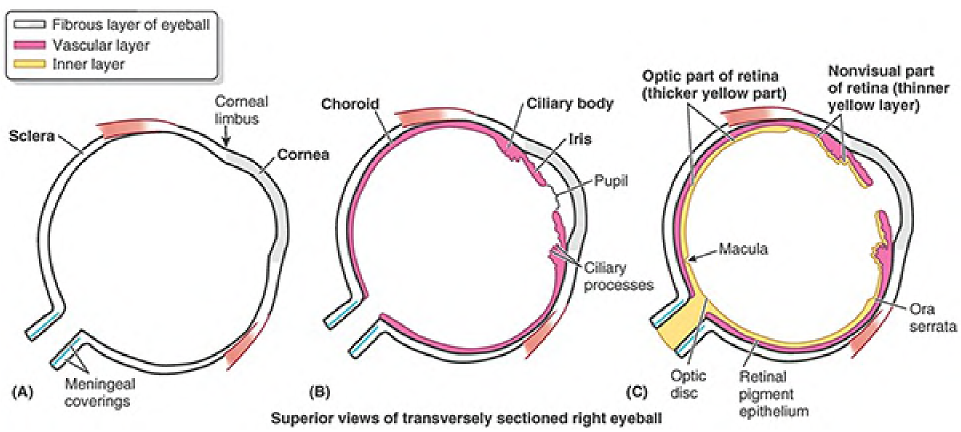


FIGURE 8.49. Layers of eyeball. The three layers are added sequentially. **A.** Outer fibrous layer. **B.** Middle vascular layer. **C.** Inner layer (retina).

FIBROUS LAYER OF EYEBALL

The **fibrous layer of the eyeball** is the external fibrous skeleton of the eyeball, providing shape and resistance. The sclera is the tough opaque part of the fibrous layer of the eyeball, covering the posterior five sixths of the eyeball (Figs. 8.49A and 8.50). It provides attachment for both the extrinsic (extra-ocular) and intrinsic muscles of the eye. The anterior part of the sclera is visible through the transparent bulbar conjunctiva as "the white of the eye" (Fig. 8.46B). The **cornea** is the transparent part of the fibrous layer covering the anterior one sixth of the eyeball (Figs. 8.49A and 8.50). The convexity of the cornea is greater than that of the sclera, and so it appears to protrude from the eyeball when viewed laterally.

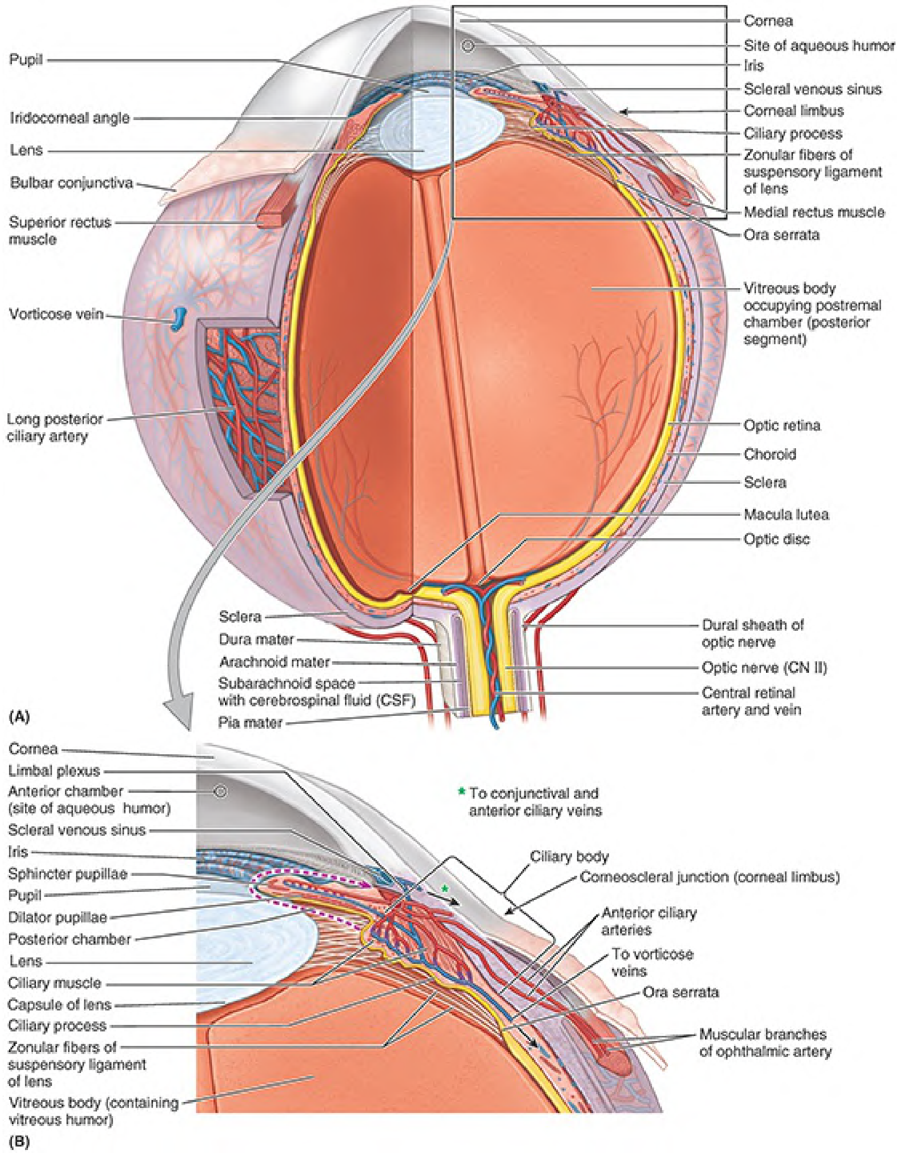


FIGURE 8.50. Eyeball with quarter section removed. A. Structure of eyeball. The inner aspect of the optic part of the retina is supplied by the central retinal artery, whereas the outer, light-sensitive aspect is nourished by the capillary lamina of the choroid (see Fig. 8.64B). The central retinal artery courses through the optic nerve and divides at the optic disc into superior and inferior branches. The branches of the central retinal artery are end arteries that do not anastomose with each other or any other vessel. **B.** Structures of ciliary region. The ciliary body is both muscular and vascular, as is the iris. The latter includes two muscles: the sphincter pupillae and dilator pupillae muscles. Venous blood from this region and the aqueous humor in the anterior chamber drain into the scleral venous sinus.

The two parts of the fibrous layer differ primarily in terms of the regularity of arrangement of the collagen fibers of which they are composed and the degree of hydration of each. While the sclera is relatively avascular, the cornea is completely avascular, receiving its nourishment from capillary beds around its periphery and fluids on its external and internal surfaces (lacrimal fluid and aqueous humor, respectively). Lacrimal fluid also provides oxygen absorbed from the air. Drying of the corneal surface may cause development of an ulcer (open sore).

The cornea is highly sensitive to touch; its innervation is provided by the ophthalmic nerve

(CN V_1). Even very small foreign bodies (e.g., dust particles) elicit blinking, flow of tears, and sometimes severe pain.

The **corneal limbus** is the angle formed by the intersecting curvatures of sclera and cornea at the **corneoscleral junction**. The junction is a 1-mm-wide, gray, translucent circle that includes numerous capillary loops involved in nourishing the avascular cornea.

VASCULAR LAYER OF EYEBALL

The middle **vascular layer of the eyeball** (also called the uvea or uveal tract) consists of the choroid, ciliary body, and iris (Fig. 8.49B). The **choroid** is a dark reddish brown layer between the sclera and retina. It forms the largest part of the vascular layer of the eyeball and lines most of the sclera (Fig. 8.50A). Within this pigmented and dense vascular bed, larger vessels are located externally (near the sclera). The finest vessels (the **capillary lamina of the choroid**, or choriocapillaris, an extensive capillary bed) are innermost, adjacent to the avascular light-sensitive layer of the retina, which it supplies with oxygen and nutrients. The choroid is engorged with blood in life (it has the highest perfusion rate per gram of tissue of all vascular beds of the body). Consequently, this layer is responsible for the "red eye" reflection that occurs in flash photography. The choroid attaches firmly to the pigment layer of the retina but can easily be stripped from the sclera. The choroid is continuous anteriorly with the ciliary body.

The **ciliary body** is a ring-like thickening of the vascular layer posterior to the corneoscleral junction that is muscular as well as vascular (Figs. 8.49B and 8.50). It connects the choroid with the circumference of the iris. The ciliary body provides attachment for the lens. The contraction and relaxation of the circularly arranged smooth muscle of the ciliary body controls the thickness, and therefore the focus, of the lens. Folds on the internal surface of the ciliary body, the **ciliary processes**, secrete aqueous humor. A clear watery fluid, aqueous humor fills the **anterior segment of the eyeball**, the interior of the eyeball anterior to the lens, suspensory ligament, and ciliary body (Fig. 8.50B).

The **iris**, which literally lies on the anterior surface of the lens, is a thin contractile diaphragm with a central aperture, the **pupil**, for transmitting light (Figs. 8.49B, 8.50, and 8.51A). When a person is awake, the size of the pupil varies continually to regulate the amount of light entering the eye (Fig. 8.51B). Two involuntary muscles control the size of the pupil: The parasympathetically stimulated, circularly arranged **sphincter pupillae** decreases its diameter (constrict or contracts the pupil, pupillary miosis), and the sympathetically stimulated, radially arranged **dilator pupillae** increases its diameter (dilates the pupil). The nature of the pupillary responses is paradoxical: Sympathetic responses usually occur immediately, yet it may take up to 20 minutes for the pupil to dilate in response to low lighting, as in a darkened theater. Parasympathetic responses are typically slower than sympathetic responses, yet parasympathetically stimulated papillary constriction is normally instantaneous. Abnormal sustained pupillary dilation (mydriasis) may occur in certain diseases or as a result of trauma or the use of certain drugs.

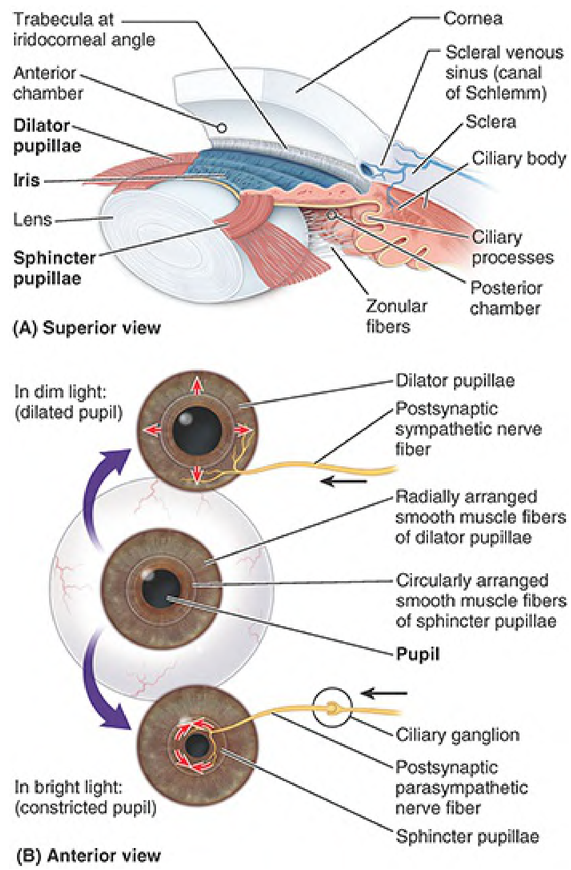


FIGURE 8.51. Structure and function of iris. A. Iris dissected in situ. The iris separates the anterior and posterior chambers of the anterior segment of the eyeball as it bounds the pupil. **B.** Dilation and constriction of pupil. In dim light, sympathetic fibers stimulate dilation of the pupil. In bright light, parasympathetic fibers stimulate constricting the pupil.

INNER LAYER OF EYEBALL

The inner layer of the eyeball is the **retina** (Figs. 8.49C and 8.50). It is the sensory neural layer of the eyeball. Grossly, the retina consists of two functional parts with distinct locations: an optic part and a nonvisual retina. The **optic part of the retina** is sensitive to visual light rays and has two layers: a neural layer and pigmented layer. The **neural layer** is light receptive. The **pigmented layer** consists of a single layer of cells that reinforces the light-absorbing property of the choroid in reducing the scattering of light in the eyeball. The **nonvisual retina** is an anterior continuation of the pigmented layer and a layer of supporting cells. The nonvisual retina extends over the ciliary body (**ciliary part of the retina**) and the posterior surface of the iris (**iridial part of the retina**), to the pupillary margin.

Clinically, the internal aspect of the posterior part of the eyeball, where light entering the eyeball is focused, is referred to as the **fundus of the eyeball** (ocular fundus). The retina of the fundus includes a distinctive circular area called the **optic disc** (optic papilla), where the sensory fibers and vessels conveyed by the optic nerve (CN II) enter the eyeball (Figs. 8.49C, 8.50A, and 8.52A, B). Because it contains no photoreceptors, the optic disc is insensitive to light. Consequently, this part of the retina is commonly called the blind spot.

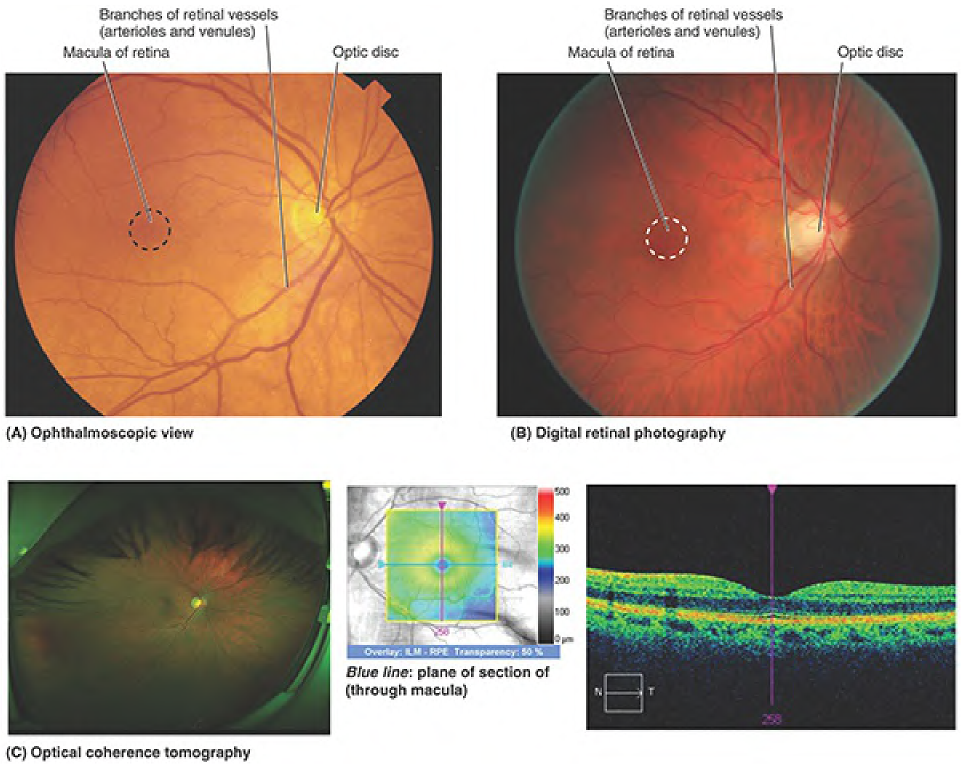


FIGURE 8.52. Fundus of right eyeball. A and B. Retinal venules (wider) and retinal arterioles (narrower) radiate from the center of the oval optic disc. The dark area lateral to the disc is the macula. Branches of retinal vessels extend toward this area, but do not reach its center, the fovea centralis, shown in part C. **C.** Optical coherence tomography measures macular thickness, especially important within the avascular foveola of the fovea centralis—the area of most acute vision. The technique produces the right sectional image of the macula.

Just lateral to the optic disc is the **macula of the retina** or macula lutea (L., yellow spot). The yellow color of the macula is apparent only when the retina is examined with red-free light. The macula is a small oval area of the retina with special photoreceptor cones that is specialized for acuity of vision. It is not normally observed with an ophthalmoscope (a device for viewing the interior of the eyeball through the pupil). At the center of the macula, a depression, the **fovea centralis** (L., central pit), is the area of most acute vision (Fig. 8.52C). The fovea is approximately 1.5 mm in diameter; its center, the **foveola**, does not have the capillary network visible elsewhere deep to the retina.

The optic part of the retina terminates anteriorly along the **ora serrata** (L., serrated edge), the irregular posterior border of the ciliary body (Figs. 8.49C and 8.50A). Except for the cones and rods of the neural layer, the retina is supplied by the central retinal artery, a branch of the ophthalmic artery. The cones and rods of the outer neural layer receive nutrients from the capillary lamina of the choroid, or choriocapillaris (discussed in "Vasculature of Orbit" in this chapter). It has the finest vessels of the inner surface of the choroid, against which the retina is pressed. A corresponding system of retinal veins unites to form the central retinal vein.

REFRACTIVE MEDIA AND COMPARTMENTS OF EYEBALL

On their way to the retina, light waves pass through the refractive media of the eyeball: cornea,

aqueous humor, lens, and vitreous humor (Fig. 8.50A). The cornea is the primary refractory medium of the eyeball, that is, it bends light to the greatest degree, focusing an inverted image on the light-sensitive retina of the fundus of the eyeball.

The **aqueous humor** ("aqueous") occupies the anterior segment of the eyeball (Figs. 8.50B and 8.51A). The anterior segment is subdivided by the iris and pupil. The **anterior chamber of the eye** is the space between the cornea anteriorly and the iris/pupil posteriorly. The **posterior chamber of the eye** is between the iris/pupil anteriorly and the lens and ciliary body posteriorly. Aqueous humor is produced in the posterior chamber by the ciliary processes of the ciliary body. This clear watery solution provides nutrients for the avascular cornea and lens. After passing through the pupil into the anterior chamber, the aqueous humor drains through a trabecular meshwork at the **iridocorneal angle** into the **scleral venous sinus** (L. sinus venosus sclerae, canal of Schlemm) (Fig. 8.51A). The humor is removed by the **limbal plexus**, a network of scleral veins close to the limbus, which drain in turn into both tributaries of the vorticose and anterior ciliary veins (Fig. 8.50B). Intra-ocular pressure (IOP) is a balance between production and outflow of aqueous humor.

The **lens** is posterior to the iris and anterior to the vitreous humor of the vitreous body (Figs. 8.50 and 8.51A). It is a transparent, biconvex structure enclosed in a capsule. The highly elastic **capsule of the lens** is anchored by **zonular fibers** (collectively constituting the **suspensory ligament of the lens**) to the encircling ciliary processes. Although most refraction is produced by the cornea, the convexity of the lens, particularly its anterior surface, constantly varies to fine-tune the focus of near or distant objects on the retina (Fig. 8.53). The isolated unattached lens assumes a nearly spherical shape. In other words, in the absence of external attachment and stretching, it becomes nearly round. The **ciliary muscle** of the ciliary body changes the shape of the lens. In the absence of nerve stimulation, the diameter of the relaxed muscular ring is larger. The lens suspended within the ring is under tension as its periphery is stretched, causing it to be thinner (less convex). The less convex lens brings more distant objects into focus (far vision). Parasympathetic stimulation via the oculomotor nerve (CN III) causes sphincter-like contraction of the ciliary muscle. The ring becomes smaller, and tension on the lens is reduced. The relaxed lens thickens (becomes more convex), bringing near objects into focus (near vision). The active process of changing the shape of the lens for near vision is called **accommodation**. The thickness of the lens increases with aging so that the ability to accommodate typically becomes restricted after age 40.

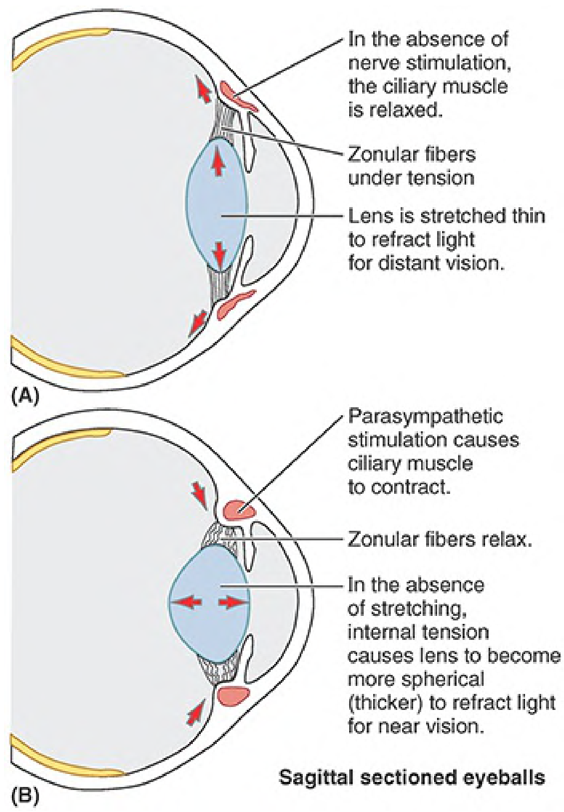


FIGURE 8.53. **Changing lens shape (accommodation). A.** Distant vision. **B.** Near vision.

The **vitreous humor** is a watery fluid enclosed in the meshes of the **vitreous body**, a transparent jelly-like substance in the posterior four fifths of the eyeball posterior to the lens (**posterior segment of the eyeball**, also called the postremal or vitreous chamber) (Fig. 8.50A). In addition to transmitting light, the vitreous humor holds the retina in place and supports the lens.

Extra-Ocular Muscles of Orbit

The **extra-ocular muscles of the orbit** are the levator palpebrae superioris, four recti (superior, inferior, medial, and lateral), and two obliques (superior and inferior). These seven muscles work together to elevate the superior eyelids and move the eyeballs on three axes (Fig. 8.54). They are illustrated in Figures 8.55, 8.56, and 8.57 (see Figs. 8.45 and 8.47). The attachments and nerve supply of the muscles are outlined in Table 8.8, and main actions of the orbital muscles, starting from the primary position of the eyeball (gaze directed anteriorly), are outlined in Table 8.8 and shown in Fig. 8.58. Additional details are provided in the following sections.

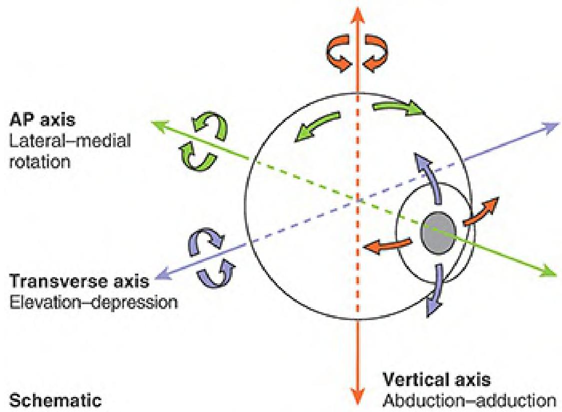


FIGURE 8.54. Extra-ocular muscles and their movements. Axes around which movements of eyeball occur.

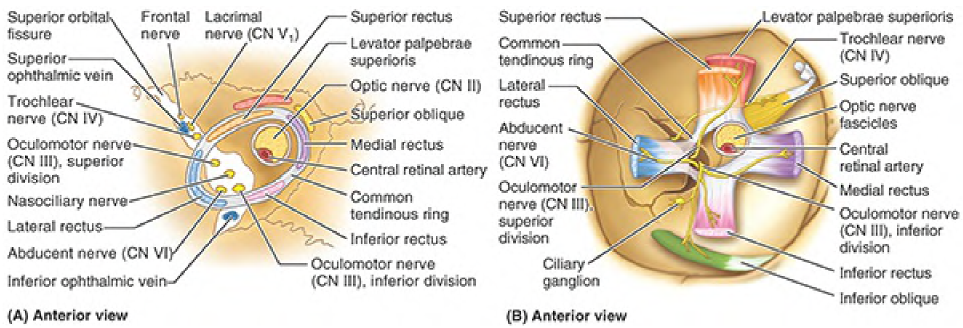


FIGURE 8.55. Relationship at apex of orbit. A. Common tendinous ring. The ring is formed by the origin of the four recti muscles and encircles the optic sheath of CN II, the superior and inferior divisions of CN III, the nasociliary nerve (CN V_1), and CN VI. The nerves supplying the extra-ocular muscles enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure: oculomotor (CN III), trochlear (CN IV), and abducent (CN VI). **B.** Muscles and motor nerves. The fat and fascia have also been removed.

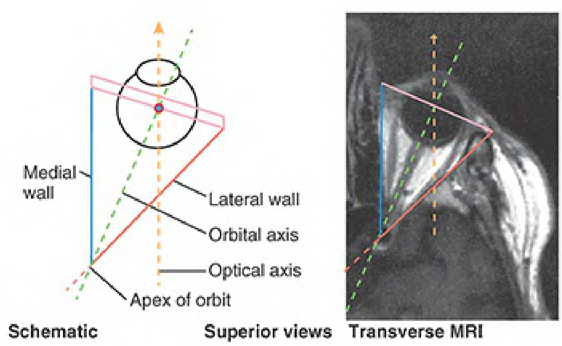


FIGURE 8.56. Orbital versus optical axis. Because the apex is located medial as well as posterior to the eyeball, the two axes do not coincide, resulting in secondary movements produced by the superior and inferior recti and oblique muscles.

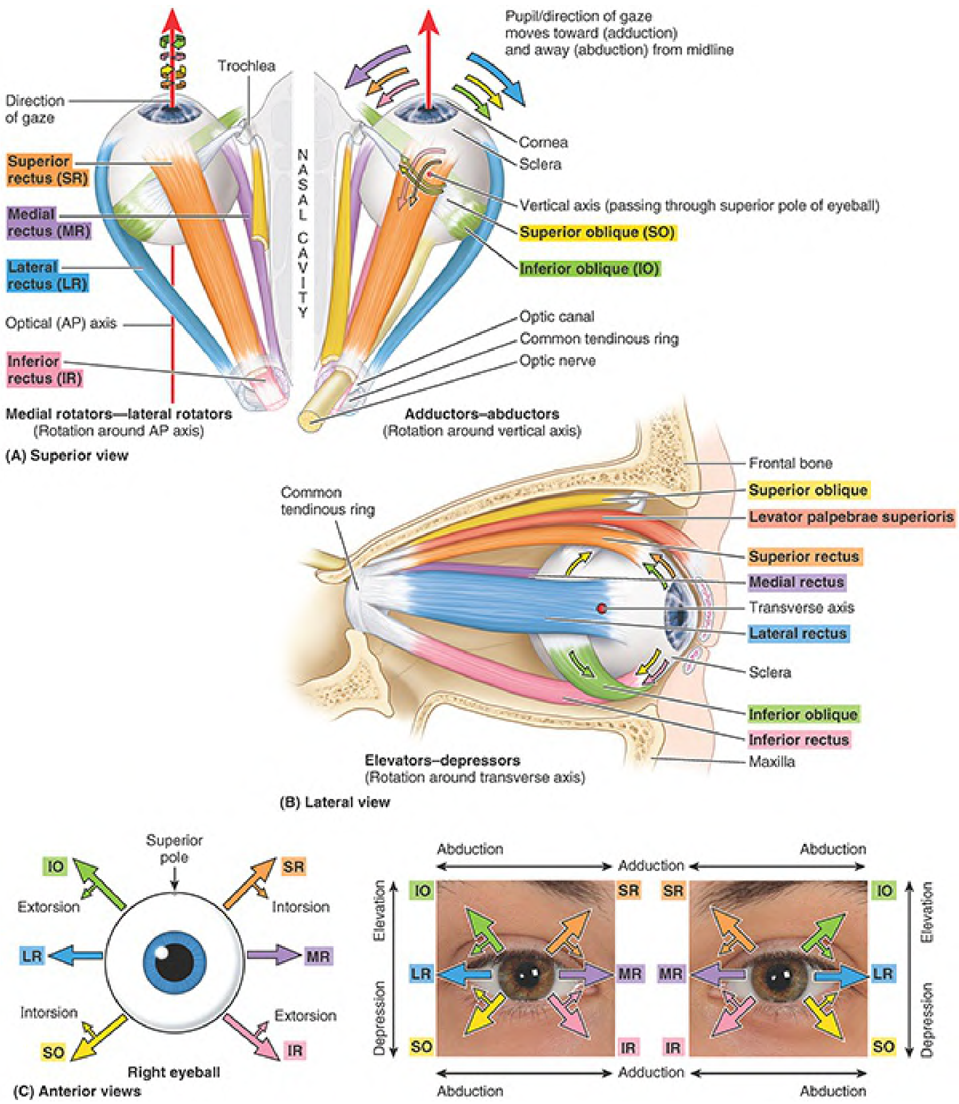


FIGURE 8.57. **Movements of eyeball and muscles that produce them. A.** Position of muscles in right and left orbits. Arrows at left, movements of the eyeball around the AP axis; arrows at right, movements of the eyeball around the vertical axis. To understand the actions produced by muscles starting from the primary position, it is necessary to observe the placement and line of pull of the muscle relative to the axes about which the movements occur. **B.** Position of muscles in right orbit. Arrows, movements of the eyeball around the transverse axis. **C.** Unilateral and bilateral demonstration of extra-ocular muscle actions, starting from the primary position. For movements in any of the six cardinal directions (large arrows), the indicated muscle is the prime mover. Movements in directions between large arrows require synergistic actions by the adjacent muscles. For example, direct elevation requires the synergistic actions of IO and SR; direct depression requires synergistic action of SO and IR. Small arrows, muscles producing rotational movements around the AP axis. Coordinated action of the contralateral yoke muscles is required to direct the gaze. For example, in directing the gaze to the right, the right LR and left MR are yoke muscles.

TABLE 8.8. EXTRA-OCULAR MUSCLES OF ORBIT

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Main Action[a]
Levator palpebrae superioris	Lesser wing of sphenoid bone, superior and anterior to optic canal	Superior tarsus and skin of superior eyelid	Oculomotor nerve (CN III); deep layer (superior tarsal muscle) is supplied by	Elevates superior eyelid

			sympathetic fibers.	
Superior oblique (SO)	Body of sphenoid bone	Its tendon passes through a fibrous ring or trochlea, changes its direction, and inserts into sclera deep to superior rectus muscle.	Trochlear nerve (CN IV)	Abducts, depresses, and medially rotates eyeball
Inferior oblique (IO)	Anterior part of floor of orbit	Sclera deep to lateral rectus muscle	Oculomotor nerve (CN III)	Abducts, elevates, and laterally rotates eyeball
Superior rectus (SR)	Common tendinous ring	Sclera just posterior to corneoscleral junction		Elevates, adducts, and rotates eyeball medially
Inferior rectus (IR)				Depresses, adducts, and rotates eyeball laterally
Medial rectus (MR)				Adducts eyeball
Lateral rectus (LR)			Abducent nerve (CN VI)	Abducts eyeball

[a]The actions described are for muscles acting alone, starting from the primary position (gaze directed anteriorly). In fact, muscles rarely act independently and almost always work together in synergistic and antagonistic groups. Clinical testing requires maneuvers to isolate muscle actions. Only the actions of the medial and lateral rectus are tested, starting from the primary position (Fig. 8.59E).

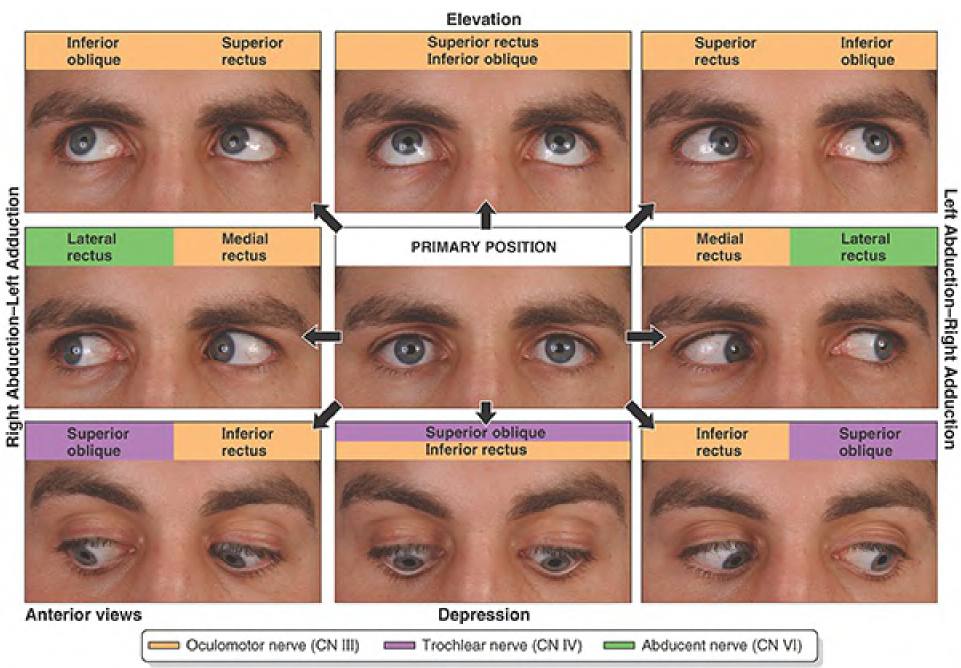


FIGURE 8.58. **Binocular movements and muscles producing them.** Anatomical movements, all starting from the primary position.

LEVATOR PALPEBRAE SUPERIORIS

The **levator palpebrae superioris** broadens into a wide bilaminar aponeurosis as it approaches

its distal attachments. The superficial lamina attaches to the skin of the superior eyelid, and the deep lamina to the superior tarsus (see Figs. 8.45 and 8.47A). This muscle is opposed most of the time by gravity and is the antagonist of the superior half of the orbicularis oculi, the sphincter of the palpebral fissure. The deep lamina of the distal (palpebral) part of the muscle includes smooth muscle fibers, the **superior tarsal muscle**, that produce additional widening of the palpebral fissure, especially during a sympathetic response (e.g., fright). However, they seem to function continuously (in the absence of a sympathetic response) because an interruption of the sympathetic supply produces a constant ptosis—drooping of the upper eyelid (see the Clinical Box "Horner Syndrome" in this chapter).

MOVEMENTS OF EYEBALL

Movements of the eyeball occur as rotations around three axes—vertical, transverse, and anteroposterior (Fig. 8.54)—and are described according to the direction of movement of the pupil from the primary position or of the superior pole of the eyeball from the neutral position. Rotation of the eyeball around the vertical axis moves the pupil medially (toward the midline, **adduction**) or laterally (away from the midline, **abduction**). Rotation around the transverse axis moves the pupil superiorly (**elevation**) or inferiorly (**depression**). Movements around the anteroposterior (AP) axis (corresponding to the axis of gaze in the primary position) move the superior pole of the eyeball medially (**medial rotation**, or intorsion) or laterally (**lateral rotation**, or extorsion) (Fig. 8.57C). These rotational movements accommodate changes in the tilt of the head. Absence of these movements resulting from nerve lesions contributes to double vision. Movements may occur around the three axes simultaneously, requiring three terms to describe the direction of movement from the primarily position (e.g., the pupil is elevated, adducted, and medially rotated).

RECTI AND OBLIQUE MUSCLES

The four **recti muscles** (L. rectos, straight) run anteriorly to the eyeball, arising from a fibrous cuff, the **common tendinous ring**, that surrounds the optic canal and from part of the superior orbital fissure at the apex of the orbit (Figs. 8.55, 8.56, and 8.57A, B). Structures that enter the orbit through the optic canal and the adjacent part of the fissure lie initially within the cone of recti. The four recti muscles are named for their individual positions relative to the eyeball. Because they mainly run anteriorly to attach to the superior, inferior, medial, and lateral aspects of the eyeball anterior to its equator, the primary actions of the four recti in producing elevation, depression, adduction, and abduction are relatively intuitive (Fig. 8.58; Table 8.8).

Several factors make the actions of the obliques and the secondary actions of the superior and inferior recti more challenging to understand. The apex of the orbit is medially placed relative to the orbit so that the axis of the orbit does not coincide with the optical axis (Fig. 8.56). Therefore, when the eye is in the primary position, the **superior rectus (SR)** and **inferior rectus (IR)** muscles also approach the eyeball from its medial side, their line of pull passing medial to the vertical axis (Fig. 8.57A right side). This gives both muscles a secondary action of adduction. The SR and IR also pass superior and inferior to the AP axis, respectively, giving the SR a

secondary action of medial rotation (intorsion—pulling the superior pole toward the nose), and the IR a secondary action of lateral rotation (extorsion—pulling the superior pole away from the nose) (8.57A left side, C).

If the gaze is first directed laterally (abducted by the **lateral rectus [LR]**) so that the line of gaze coincides with the plane of the IR and SR, the SR produces elevation only (and is solely responsible for the movement) (Figs. 8.59A and 8.60), and the IR produces depression only (and is likewise solely responsible) (Fig. 8.59B). During a physical examination, the physician directs the patient to follow his or her finger laterally (testing the LR and abducent nerve [CN VI]), then superiorly and inferiorly to isolate and test the function of the SR and IR and the integrity of the oculomotor nerve (CN III), which supplies both (Figs. 8.59E and 8.60).

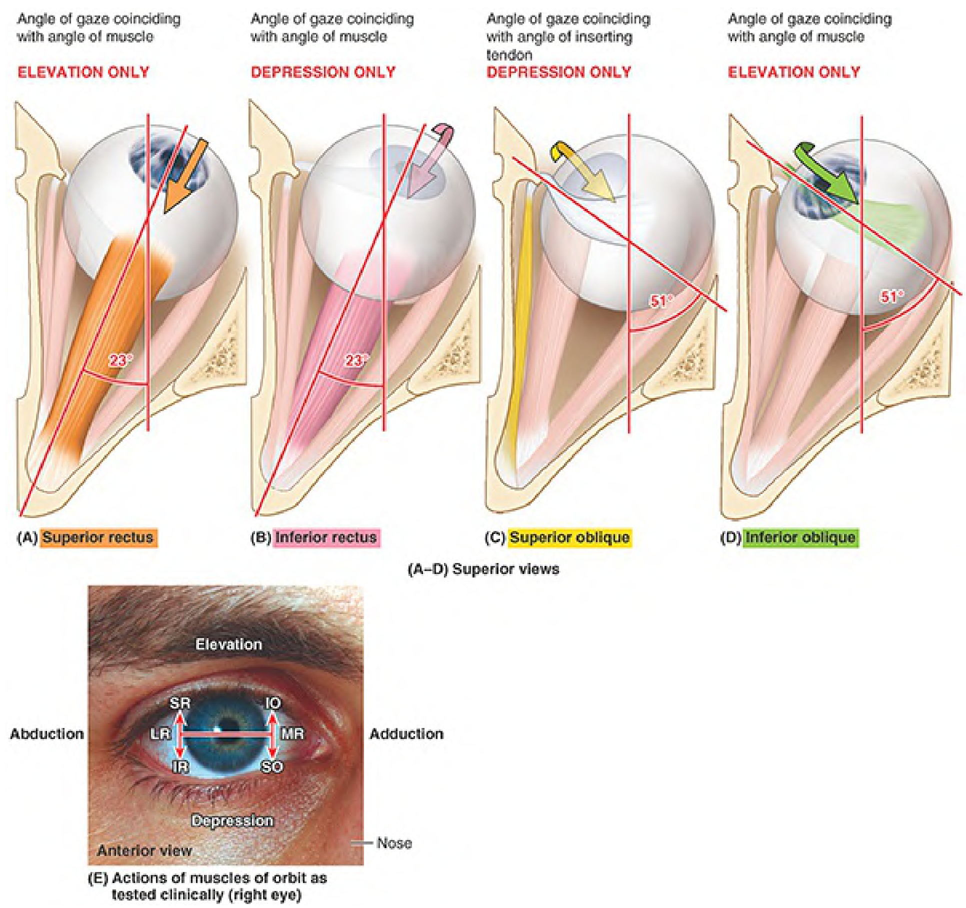


FIGURE 8.59. Clinical testing of extra-ocular muscles. Right eye is shown. **A and B.** When the eye is initially abducted by LR, only the rectus muscles can produce elevation and depression. **C and D.** When the eye is initially adducted by MR, only the oblique muscles can produce elevation and depression. **E.** Following movements of the examiner's finger, the pupil is moved in an extended H pattern to isolate and test individual extra-ocular muscles and the integrity of their nerves.

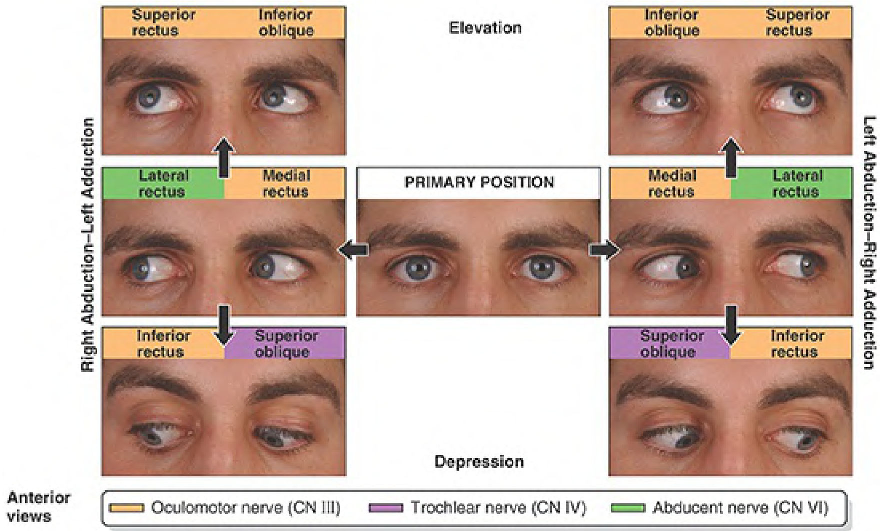


FIGURE 8.60. Two-movement sequences for clinical testing: elevation or depression following left or right gaze. Following movements of the examiner's finger, the pupil is moved in an extended H pattern to isolate and test individual extra-ocular muscles and the integrity of their nerves.

The **inferior oblique (IO)** is the only muscle to originate from the anterior part of the orbit (immediately lateral to the fossa for the lacrimal sac) (Fig. 8.55B; see Fig. 8.47B). The **superior oblique (SO)** originates from the apex region like the rectus muscles (but immediately superior to the common tendinous ring) (Fig. 8.55A). However, its tendon traverses the trochlea just inside the superomedial orbital rim, redirecting its line of pull (Figs. 8.55B and 8.57B, C). Therefore, the inserting tendons of the oblique muscles lie in the same oblique vertical plane. When the inserting tendons are viewed anteriorly (see Fig. 8.47B) or superiorly (Fig. 8.57A) with the eyeball in the primary position, it can be seen that the tendons of the oblique muscles pass mainly laterally to insert on the lateral half of the eyeball, posterior to its equator. Because they respectively pass inferior and superior to the AP axis as they pass laterally, the IO is the primary lateral rotator, and the SO is the primary medial rotator of the eye. However, in the primary position, the obliques also pass posteriorly across the transverse axis (Fig. 8.57B) and posterior to the vertical axis (Fig. 8.57C), giving the SO a secondary function as a depressor, the IO a secondary function as an elevator, and both muscles a secondary function as abductors (Fig. 8.57B, C).

If the gaze is first directed medially (adducted by the **medial rectus [MR]**) so that the line of gaze coincides with plane of the inserting tendons of the SO and IO, the SO produces depression only (and is solely responsible for the movement) (Fig. 8.59C), and the IO produces elevation only (and is likewise solely responsible) (Fig. 8.59D). During a physical examination, the physician directs the patient to follow his or her finger medially (testing the MR and oculomotor nerve) and then inferiorly and superiorly to isolate and test the functions of the SO and IO and the integrity of the trochlear nerve (CN IV), which supplies the SO, and of the inferior division of CN III, which supplies the IO (Figs. 8.59E and 8.60). In practice,

- The main action of the superior oblique is depression of the pupil in the adducted position (e.g., directing the gaze down the page when the gaze of both eyes is directed medially

[converged] for reading).
- The main action of the inferior oblique is elevation of the pupil in the adducted position (e.g., directing the gaze up the page during **convergence** for reading).

Although the actions produced by the extra-ocular muscles have been considered individually, all motions require the action of several muscles in the same eye, assisting each other as synergists or opposing each other as antagonists. Muscles that are synergistic for one action may be antagonistic for another. For example, no single muscle can act to elevate the pupil directly from the primary position (Fig. 8.57C). The two elevators (SR and IO) act as synergists to do so. However, these muscles are antagonistic as rotators and so neutralize each other so that no rotation occurs as they work together to elevate the pupil. Similarly, no single muscle can act to depress the pupil directly from the primary position. The two depressors, the SO and IR, both produce depression when acting alone and also produce opposing actions in terms of adduction–abduction and medial–lateral rotation. However, when the SO and IR act simultaneously, their synergistic actions depress the pupil because their antagonistic actions neutralize each other; therefore, pure depression results.

To direct the gaze, coordination of both eyes must be accomplished by the paired action of contralateral **yoke muscles** (functionally paired contralateral extra-ocular muscles) (Fig. 8.57C right side). For example, in directing the gaze to the right, the right lateral rectus and left medial rectus act as yoke muscles.

SUPPORTING APPARATUS OF EYEBALL

The fascial sheath of the eyeball envelops the eyeball, extending posteriorly from the conjunctival fornices to the optic nerve, forming the actual socket for the eyeball (Fig. 8.61C; see Fig. 8.45A). The cup-like fascial sheath is pierced by the tendons of the extra-ocular muscles and is reflected onto each of them as a tubular muscle sheath. The muscle sheaths of the levator and superior rectus muscles are fused (see Fig. 8.45A). Therefore, when the gaze is directed superiorly, the superior eyelid is further elevated out of the line of vision. Triangular expansions from the sheaths of the medial and lateral rectus muscles, called the **medial** and **lateral check ligaments**, are attached to the lacrimal and zygomatic bones, respectively (Fig. 8.61C). These ligaments limit abduction and adduction. A blending of the check ligaments with the fascia of the inferior rectus and inferior oblique muscles forms a hammock-like sling, the **suspensory ligament of the eyeball**. A similar **inferior check ligament** from the fascial sheath of the inferior rectus retracts the inferior eyelid when the gaze is directed downward (see Fig. 8.45A). Collectively, the check ligaments act with the oblique muscles and the retrobulbar fat to resist the posterior pull on the eyeball produced by the rectus muscles. In diseases or starvation that reduce the **retrobulbar fat**, the eyeball is retracted into the orbit (enophthalmos).

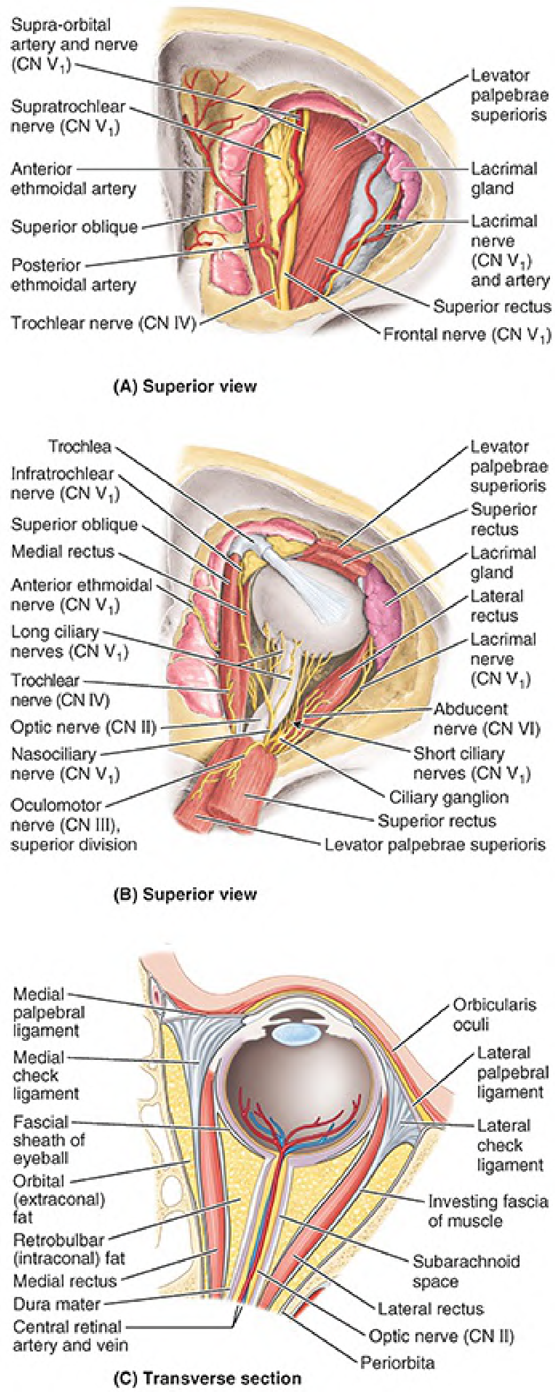


FIGURE 8.61. Dissection of right orbit. A. Superficial dissection of orbit. **B.** Deep dissection of orbit. **C.** Demonstration of fascial sheath of eyeball and check ligaments.

Nerves of Orbit

The large optic nerves convey purely sensory nerve fibers that transmit impulses generated by optical stimuli (see Figs. 8.45A and 8.50A). They are cranial nerves (CN II) by convention, but develop as paired anterior extensions of the forebrain, and therefore are central nervous system

(CNS) fiber tracts formed of second-order neurons. The optic nerves begin at the **lamina cribrosa of the sclera**, where the unmyelinated nerve fibers pierce the sclera and become myelinated, posterior to the optic disc. They exit the orbits via the optic canals. Throughout their course in the orbit, the optic nerves are surrounded by extensions of the cranial meninges and subarachnoid space, the latter occupied by a thin layer of CSF (Fig. 8.61C; see Figs. 8.45A and 8.50A). The intra-orbital extensions of the cranial dura and arachnoid constitute the **optic nerve sheath**, which becomes continuous anteriorly with the fascial sheath of the eyeball and the sclera. A layer of pia mater covers the surface of the optic nerve within the sheath.

In addition to the optic nerve (CN II), the nerves of the orbit include those that enter through the superior orbital fissure and supply the ocular muscles: **oculomotor** (CN III), **trochlear** (CN IV), and **abducent** (CN VI) nerves (Fig. 8.62; see Fig. 8.55). A memory device for the innervation of the extra-ocular muscles moving the eyeball is similar to a chemical formula: $LR_6SO_4AO_3$ (lateral rectus, CN **VI**; superior oblique, CN **IV**; all others, CN **III**). The trochlear and abducent nerves pass directly to the single muscle supplied by each nerve. The oculomotor nerve divides into a superior and an inferior division. The superior division supplies the superior rectus and levator palpebrae superioris. The inferior division supplies the medial and inferior rectus and inferior oblique muscles and carries presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the ciliary ganglion (Fig. 8.63). The movements stimulated by the oculomotor, trochlear, and abducent nerves, starting from the primary position in the right and left orbits, and produce binocular vision, demonstrated in Figures 8.57C and 8.58, and are summarized in Table 8.8.

The three terminal branches of the ophthalmic nerve, CN V_1 (the frontal, nasociliary, and lacrimal nerves—Fig. 8.61A), pass through the superior orbital fissure and supply structures related to the anterior orbit (e.g., lacrimal gland and eyelids), face, and scalp. The cutaneous branches of CN V_1 (lacrimal, frontal, and infratrochlear nerves) are described in “Cutaneous Nerves of Face and Scalp” in this chapter and in Table 8.4.

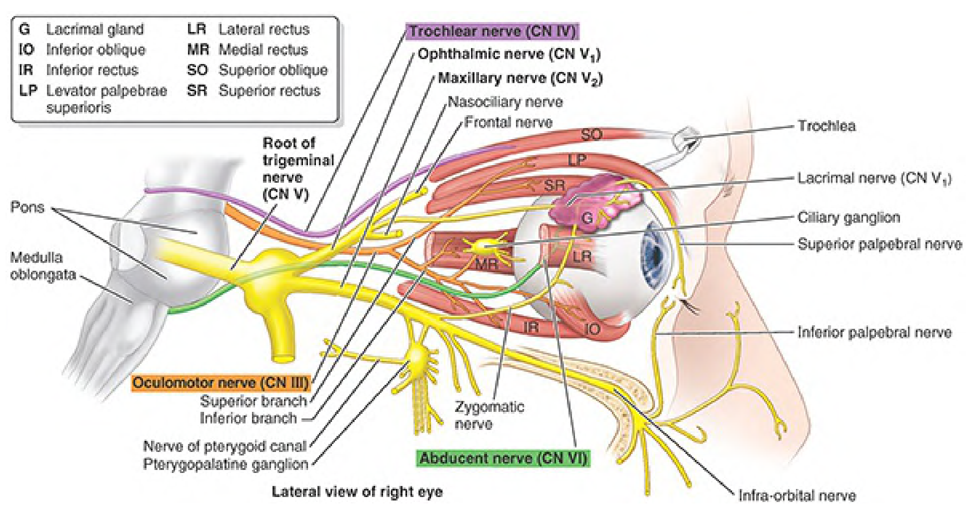


FIGURE 8.62. Nerves of orbit. Three cranial nerves (CN III, IV, and VI) supply the seven voluntary extra-ocular muscles. CN IV supplies the superior oblique, CN VI supplies the lateral rectus, and CN III supplies the remaining five muscles. The CN III also brings presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the ciliary ganglion. The trigeminal nerve (CN V) supplies sensory fibers to the orbit, orbital region, and eyeball.

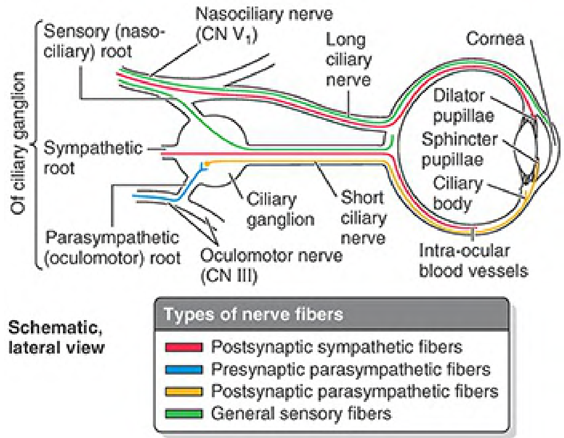


FIGURE 8.63. Distribution of nerve fibers to ciliary ganglion and eyeball. The ciliary ganglion receives three types of nerve fibers from three separate sources. All parasympathetic innervation but only some of the sensory and sympathetic innervation to the eyeball traverses the ganglion. Sympathetic and sensory fibers in the long ciliary nerve bypass the ganglion.

The **ciliary ganglion** is a small group of postsynaptic parasympathetic nerve cell bodies associated with CN V_1. It is located between the optic nerve and the lateral rectus toward the posterior limit of the orbit (Fig. 8.61B). The ciliary ganglion receives nerve fibers from three sources (Fig. 8.63):

1. Sensory fibers from CN V_1 via the **sensory** or **nasociliary root of the ciliary ganglion**
2. Presynaptic parasympathetic fibers from CN III via the **parasympathetic** or **oculomotor root of the ciliary ganglion**
3. Postsynaptic sympathetic fibers from the internal carotid plexus via the **sympathetic root of the ciliary ganglion**

The **short ciliary nerves** arise from the ciliary ganglion and are considered to be branches of CN V_1 (Figs. 8.61B and 8.63). They carry parasympathetic and sympathetic fibers to the ciliary body and iris. The short ciliary nerves consist of postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers originating in the ciliary ganglion, afferent fibers from the nasociliary nerve that pass through the ganglion, and postsynaptic sympathetic fibers that also pass through it. **Long ciliary nerves**, branches of the nasociliary nerve (CN V_1) that pass to the eyeball, bypassing the ciliary ganglion, convey postsynaptic sympathetic fibers to the dilator pupillae and afferent fibers from the iris and cornea.

The posterior and anterior ethmoidal nerves, branches of the nasociliary nerve arising in the orbit, exit via openings in the medial wall of the orbit to supply the mucous membrane of the sphenoidal and ethmoidal sinuses and the nasal cavities, as well as the dura of the anterior cranial fossa.

Vasculature of Orbit

ARTERIES OF ORBIT

The blood supply of the orbit is mainly from the **ophthalmic artery**, a branch of the internal carotid artery (Fig. 8.64A; Table 8.9); the **infra-orbital artery**, from the external carotid artery, also contributes blood to structures related to the orbital floor. The **central retinal artery**, a branch of the ophthalmic artery arising inferior to the optic nerve, pierces the sheath of the optic nerve and runs within the nerve to the eyeball, emerging at the optic disc. Its branches spread over the internal surface of the retina (Fig. 8.64B; see Fig. 8.52). The terminal branches are end arteries (arterioles), which provide the only blood supply to the internal aspect of the retina.

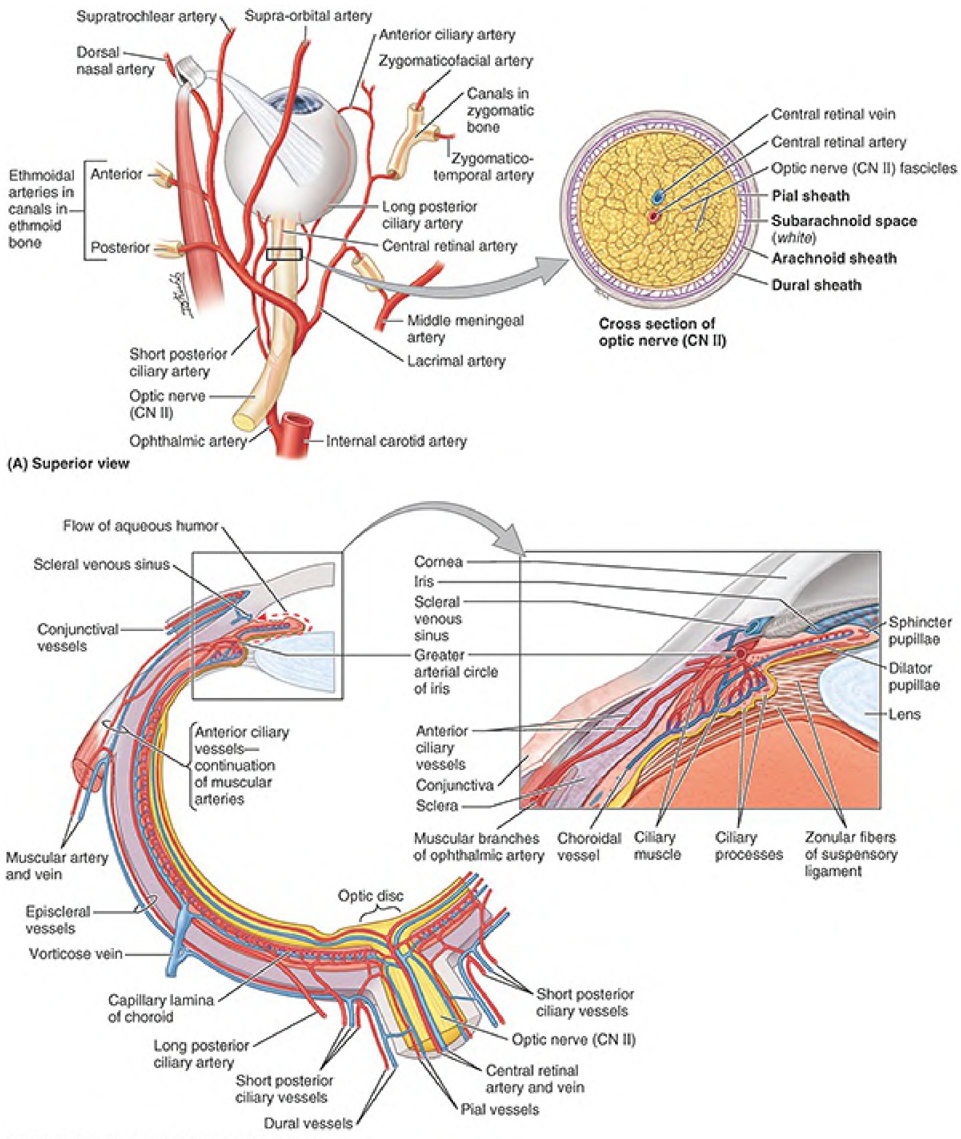


FIGURE 8.64. Arteries of orbit and arteries and veins of eyeball. A. Branches of ophthalmic artery. Inset, cross-section of optic nerve (CN II). **B.** Vessels of eyeball. The artery supplying the inner part of the retina (central retinal artery) and the choroid, which in turn nourishes the outer nonvascular layer of the retina, are shown. The choroid is arranged so that the supplying vessels and larger choroidal vessels are externally placed, and the smallest vessels (the capillary lamina) are most internal, adjacent to the nonvascular layer of the retina. The vorticose vein (one of four to five) drains venous blood from the choroid into the posterior ciliary and ophthalmic veins. The scleral venous sinus returns the aqueous humor, secreted into the anterior chamber by the ciliary processes, to the venous circulation.

TABLE 8.9. ARTERIES OF ORBIT

Artery	Origin	Course and Distribution
Ophthalmic	Internal carotid artery	Traverses optic foramen to reach orbital cavity
Central retinal artery	Ophthalmic artery	Pierces dural sheath of optic nerve and runs to eyeball; branches from center of optic disc; supplies optic retina (except cones and rods)
Supra-orbital		Passes superiorly and posteriorly from supra-orbital foramen to supply forehead and scalp
Supratrochlear		Passes from supra-orbital margin to forehead and scalp
Lacrimal		Passes along superior border of lateral rectus muscle to supply lacrimal gland, conjunctiva, and eyelids
Dorsal nasal		Courses along dorsal aspect of nose and supplies its surface
Short posterior ciliaries		Pierce sclera at periphery of optic nerve to supply choroid, which in turn supplies cones and rods of optic retina
Long posterior ciliaries		Pierce sclera to supply ciliary body and iris
Posterior ethmoidal		Passes through posterior ethmoidal foramen to posterior ethmoidal cells
Anterior ethmoidal		Passes through anterior ethmoidal foramen to anterior cranial fossa; supplies anterior and middle ethmoidal cells, frontal sinus, nasal cavity, and skin on dorsum of nose
Anterior ciliary	Muscular (rectus) branches of ophthalmic and infra-orbital arteries	Pierce sclera at attachments of rectus muscles and form networks in iris and ciliary body
Infra-orbital	Third part of maxillary artery	Passes along infra-orbital groove and foramen to face

The external aspect of the retina is also supplied by the capillary lamina of the choroid (choriocapillaris). Of the eight or so posterior ciliary arteries (also branches of the ophthalmic artery), six **short posterior ciliary arteries** directly supply the choroid, which nourishes the outer nonvascular layer of the retina. Two **long posterior ciliary arteries**, one on each side of the eyeball, pass between the sclera and the choroid to anastomose with the **anterior ciliary arteries** (continuations of the **muscular branches of the ophthalmic artery** to the rectus muscles) to supply the ciliary plexus.

VEINS OF ORBIT

Venous drainage of the orbit is through the **superior** and **inferior ophthalmic veins**, which pass through the superior orbital fissure and enter the cavernous sinus (Fig. 8.65). The **central retinal vein** (Fig. 8.64A inset, B) usually enters the cavernous sinus directly, but it may join one of the ophthalmic veins. The vortex, or **vorticose veins**, from the vascular layer of the eyeball drain into the inferior ophthalmic vein. The **scleral venous sinus** is a vascular structure encircling the anterior chamber of the eyeball through which the aqueous humor is returned to the blood circulation.

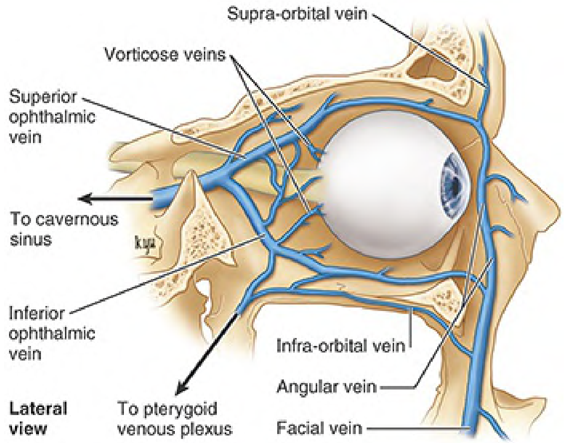


FIGURE 8.65. **Ophthalmic veins.** The superior ophthalmic vein empties into the cavernous sinus, and the inferior ophthalmic vein empties into the pterygoid venous plexus. They communicate with the facial and supra-orbital veins anteriorly and each other posteriorly. The superior ophthalmic vein accompanies the ophthalmic artery and its branches.

Surface Anatomy of Eye and Lacrimal Apparatus

For a description of the surface anatomy of the eyelids, see "Surface Anatomy of Face." The anterior part of the sclera (the "white" of the eye) is covered by the transparent bulbar conjunctiva, which contains minute but apparent conjunctival blood vessels (Fig. 8.66B). When irritated, the vessels may enlarge noticeably, and the bulbar conjunctiva may take on a distinctly pink appearance when inflamed ("red" eyes). The normal tough, opaque sclera often appears slightly blue in infants and children and commonly has a yellow hue in many older people.

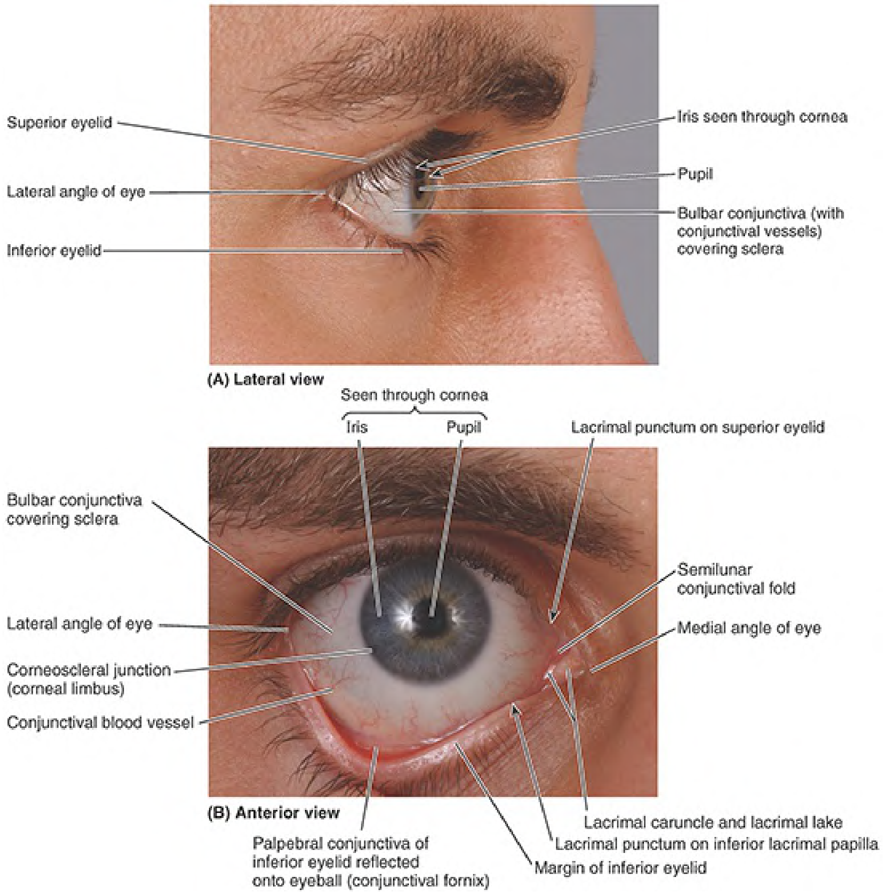


FIGURE 8.66. Surface anatomy of eye. A. Features. **B.** Lacrimal apparatus.

The anterior transparent part of the eye is the cornea, which is continuous with the sclera at its margins. In a lateral view (Fig. 8.66A), most of the visible part of the eyeball protrudes slightly through the palpebral fissure. It is apparent that the cornea has a greater curvature (convexity) than that of the rest of the eyeball (the part covered by sclera); thus, a shallow angle occurs at the corneoscleral junction, the corneal limbus (Fig. 8.66B). The prominence of the cornea also makes movements of the eyeball apparent when the eyelids are closed.

The dark circular opening through which light enters the eyeball, the pupil, is surrounded by the iris (plural = irides), a circular pigmented diaphragm. The relative size of the pupil and iris varies with the brightness of the entering light; however, the size of the contralateral pupils and irides should be uniform.

Normally, when the eyes are open and the gaze is directed anteriorly, the superior part of the cornea and iris are covered by the edge of the superior eyelid, and the inferior part of the cornea and iris are fully exposed above the inferior eyelid, usually exposing a narrow rim of sclera. Even slight variations in the position of the eyeballs are noticeable, causing a change in facial expression to a surprised look when the superior eyelid is elevated (as occurs in exophthalmos, or protrusion of the eyeballs, caused by hyperthyroidism) or a sleepy appearance (as occurs when the superior eyelid droops, ptosis, owing to an absence of sympathetic innervation in Horner

syndrome).

The bulbar conjunctiva is reflected from the sclera onto the deep surface of the eyelid. The palpebral conjunctiva is normally red and vascular. With experience, examination of the palpebral conjunctiva can provide some assessment of hemoglobin levels. It is commonly examined in cases of suspected anemia, a blood condition commonly manifested by pallor (paleness) of the mucous membranes. When the superior eyelid is everted ("flipped" so that the palpebral conjunctiva is superficial), the size and extent of the enclosed superior tarsus can be appreciated, and commonly, the tarsal glands can be distinguished through the palpebral conjunctiva as slightly yellow vertical stripes. Under close examination, the openings of these glands (approximately 20 per eyelid) can be seen on the margins of the eyelids, posterior to the two to three rows of emerging cilia or eyelashes. As the bulbar conjunctiva is continuous with the anterior epithelium of the cornea and the palpebral conjunctiva, it forms the conjunctival sac. The palpebral fissure is the "mouth," or anterior aperture, of the conjunctival sac.

In the medial angle of the eye, a reddish shallow reservoir of tears, the lacrimal lake, can be observed. Within the lake is the lacrimal caruncle, a small mound of moist modified skin. Lateral to the caruncle is a semilunar conjunctival fold, which slightly overlaps the eyeball. When the edges of the eyelids are everted, a small pit, the lacrimal punctum, is visible at its medial end on the summit of a small elevation, the lacrimal papilla.

CLINICAL BOX

ORBITS, EYEBALL, AND ACCESSORY VISUAL STRUCTURES

Fractures of Orbit

The orbital margin is strong to protect the orbital content. However, when the blows are powerful enough and the impact is directly on the bony rim, the resulting fractures usually occur at the three sutures between the bones forming the orbital margin. Because of the thinness of the medial and inferior walls of the orbit, a blow to the eye may fracture the orbital walls while the margin remains intact (Fig. B8.24). Indirect traumatic injury that displaces the orbital walls is called a blowout fracture of the orbit. Fractures of the medial wall may involve the ethmoidal and sphenoidal sinuses, whereas fractures of the inferior wall (orbital floor) may involve the maxillary sinus.

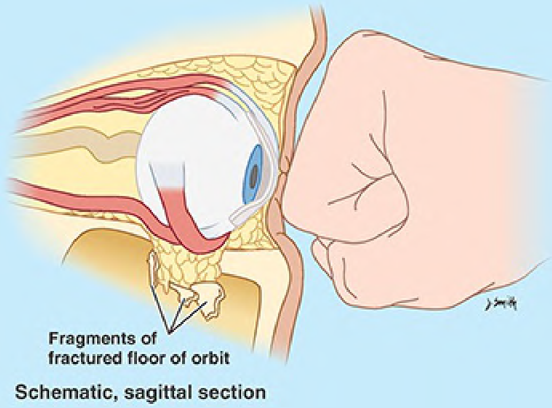


FIGURE B8.24. **Blowout fracture of orbit.**

Although the superior wall is stronger than the medial and inferior walls, it is thin enough to be translucent and may be readily penetrated. Thus, a sharp object may pass through it and enter the frontal lobe of the brain.[2]

Orbital fractures often result in intra-orbital bleeding, which exerts pressure on the eyeball, causing exophthalmos (protrusion of the eyeball). Any trauma to the eye may affect adjacent structures, for example, bleeding into the maxillary sinus, displacement of maxillary teeth, and fracture of nasal bones resulting in hemorrhage, airway obstruction, and infection that could spread to the cavernous sinus through the ophthalmic vein.

Orbital Tumors

Because of the closeness of the optic nerve to the sphenoidal and posterior ethmoidal sinuses, a malignant tumor in these sinuses may erode the thin bony walls of the orbit and compress the optic nerve and orbital contents. Tumors in the orbit produce exophthalmos (protrusion of the eyeball). The easiest entrance to the orbital cavity for a tumor in the middle cranial fossa is through the superior orbital fissure. Tumors in the temporal or infratemporal fossa gain access to this cavity through the inferior orbital fissure. Although the lateral wall of the orbit is nearly as long as the medial wall, because it extends laterally and anteriorly, it does not reach as far anteriorly as the medial wall does, which occupies essentially a sagittal plane (see Fig. 8.44A). Nearly 2.5 cm of the eyeball is exposed when the pupil is turned medially as far as possible. Therefore, the lateral side of the orbit affords a good approach for operations on the eyeball.

Injury to Nerves Supplying Eyelids

Because it supplies the levator palpebrae superioris, a lesion of the oculomotor nerve causes paralysis of the muscle, and the superior eyelid droops (ptosis). Damage to the facial nerve involves paralysis of the orbicularis oculi, preventing the eyelids from closing fully. Normal rapid protective blinking of the eye is also lost.

The loss of tonus of the muscle in the inferior eyelid causes the lid to fall away (evert) from the surface of the eyeball, leading to drying of the cornea. This leaves the eyeball unprotected from dust and small particles. Thus, irritation of the unprotected eyeball results in excessive but inefficient lacrimation (tear formation). Excessive lacrimal fluid also forms when the lacrimal drainage apparatus is obstructed, thereby preventing the fluid from reaching the inferior part of the eyeball. People often dab their eyes constantly to wipe the tears, resulting in further irritation.

Inflammation of Palpebral Glands

Any of the glands in the eyelid may become inflamed and swollen from infection or obstruction of their ducts. If the ducts of the ciliary glands are obstructed, a painful red suppurative (pus-producing) swelling, a sty (hordeolum), develops on the eyelid. Cysts of the sebaceous glands of the eyelid, called chalazia, may also form. Obstruction of a tarsal gland produces inflammation, a tarsal chalazion, that protrudes toward the eyeball and rubs against it as the eyelids blink.

Hyperemia of Conjunctiva

The conjunctiva is colorless, except when its vessels are dilated and congested (“bloodshot eyes”). Hyperemia of the conjunctiva is caused by local irritation (e.g., from dust, chlorine, or smoke). An inflamed conjunctiva, conjunctivitis (“pinkeye”), is a common contagious infection of the eye.

Subconjunctival Hemorrhages

Subconjunctival hemorrhages are common and are manifested by bright or dark red patches deep to and within the bulbar conjunctiva. The hemorrhages may result from injury or inflammation. A blow to the eye, excessively hard blowing of the nose, and paroxysms of coughing or violent sneezing can cause hemorrhages resulting from rupture of small subconjunctival capillaries.

Development of Retina

The retina and optic nerve develop from the **optic cup**, a cup-like outgrowth of the embryonic forebrain, the **optic vesicle** (Fig. B8.25A). As it evaginates from the forebrain (Fig. B8.25B), the optic vesicle carries the developing meninges with it. Hence, the optic nerve is invested with cranial meninges and an extension of the subarachnoid space (Fig. B8.25C). The central retinal artery and vein cross the subarachnoid space and run within the distal part of the optic nerve. The pigment cell layer of the retina develops from the outer layer of the optic cup, and the neural layer develops from the inner layer of the cup (Moore et al., 2020).

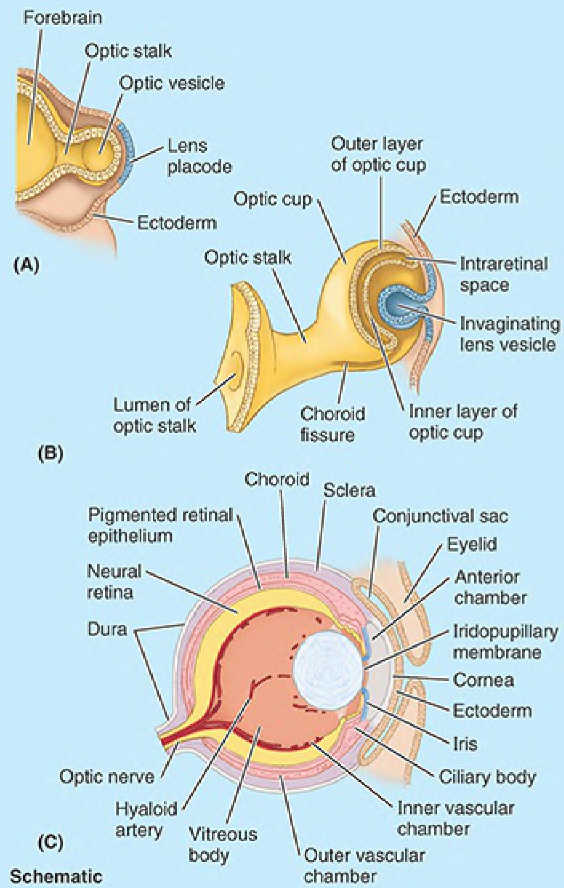
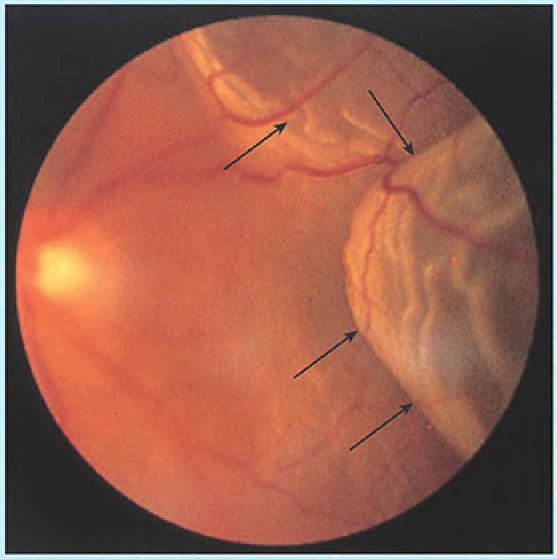


FIGURE B8.25. Development of retina.

Retinal Detachment

The layers of the developing retina are separated in the embryo by an intraretinal space (Fig. B8.25B). During the early fetal period, the layers fuse, obliterating this space. Although the pigment cell layer becomes firmly fixed to the choroid, its attachment to the neural layer is not firm. Consequently, detachment of the retina may follow a blow to the eye (Fig. B8.26). A detached retina usually results from seepage of fluid between the neural and pigment cell layers of the retina, perhaps days or even weeks after trauma to the eye. Persons with a retinal detachment may complain of flashes of light or specks floating in front of the eye.



Ophthalmoscopic view (*arrows*, wrinkles in detached retina)

FIGURE B8.26. Retinal detachment.

Pupillary Light Reflex

The pupillary light reflex is tested using a penlight during a neurological examination. This reflex, involving CN II (afferent limb) and CN III (efferent limb), is the rapid constriction of the pupil in response to light. When light enters one eye, both pupils constrict. The initial pathways are similar to those described for vision, but the pathways diverge in the midbrain. Motor impulses are transmitted to the sphincter pupillae muscles of each eye by parasympathetic fibers of the oculomotor nerve (CN III). Consequently, interruption of these fibers causes dilation of the pupil because of the unopposed action of the sympathetically innervated dilator pupillae muscle. The first sign of compression of the oculomotor nerve is ipsilateral slowness of the pupillary response to light.

Ophthalmoscopy

Physicians use an ophthalmoscope (funduscope) to view the fundus of the eyeball (see Fig. 8.52). The retinal arteries and veins radiate over the fundus from the optic disc. The pale, oval disc appears on the medial side with the retinal vessels radiating from its center. Pulsation of the retinal arteries is usually visible. Centrally, at the posterior pole of the eyeball, the macula appears darker than the reddish hue of surrounding areas of the retina because the black melanin pigment in the choroid and pigment cell layer is not screened by capillary blood.

Papilledema

An increase in CSF pressure slows venous return from the retina, causing edema of the retina (fluid accumulation). The edema is viewed during ophthalmoscopy as swelling of the optic disc, a condition called papilledema. Normally, the disc is flat and does not form a papilla. Papilledema results from increased intracranial pressure and increased CSF pressure in the extension of the subarachnoid space around the optic nerve (see Fig. 8.50A).

Presbyopia and Cataracts

As people age, their lenses become harder and more flattened. These changes gradually reduce the focusing power of the lenses, a condition known as presbyopia (G. presbyos, old). Some people also experience a loss of transparency (cloudiness) of the lens from areas of opaqueness (cataracts). Cataract extraction combined with an intra-ocular lens implant has become a common operation. An extracapsular cataract extraction involves removing the lens but leaving the capsule of the lens intact to receive a synthetic intra-ocular lens (Fig. B8.27A, B). Intracapsular lens extraction involves removing the lens and lens capsule and implanting a synthetic intra-ocular lens in the anterior chamber (Fig. B8.27C).

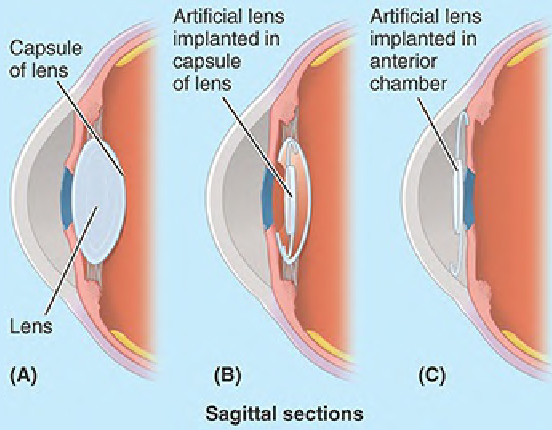


FIGURE B8.27. Synthetic lens implant.

Coloboma of Iris

The absence of a section of the iris (Fig. B8.28) may result from a birth defect, in which the choroid (retinal) fissure fails to close properly (Fig. B8.25B), from penetrating or nonpenetrating injuries to the eyeball, or a surgical iridectomy. When the iris is injured in such a manner, the iridial fissure does not heal.

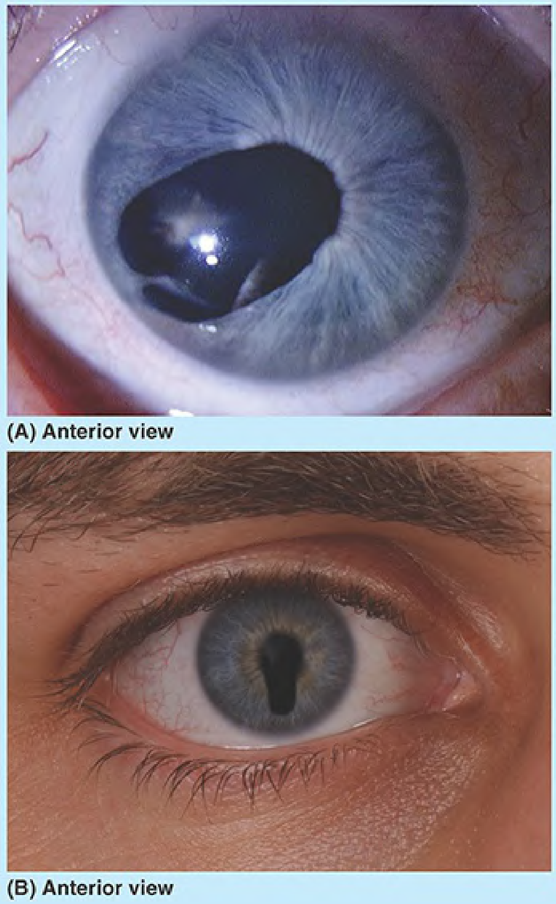


FIGURE B8.28. **Coloboma of iris.**

Glaucoma

Outflow of aqueous humor through the scleral venous sinus into the blood circulation must occur at the same rate at which the aqueous is produced. If the outflow decreases significantly because the outflow pathway is blocked (Fig. B8.29), pressure builds up in the anterior and posterior chambers of the eye, a condition called glaucoma. Blindness can result from compression of the inner layer of the eyeball (retina) and the retinal arteries if aqueous humor production is not reduced to maintain normal intra-ocular pressure.

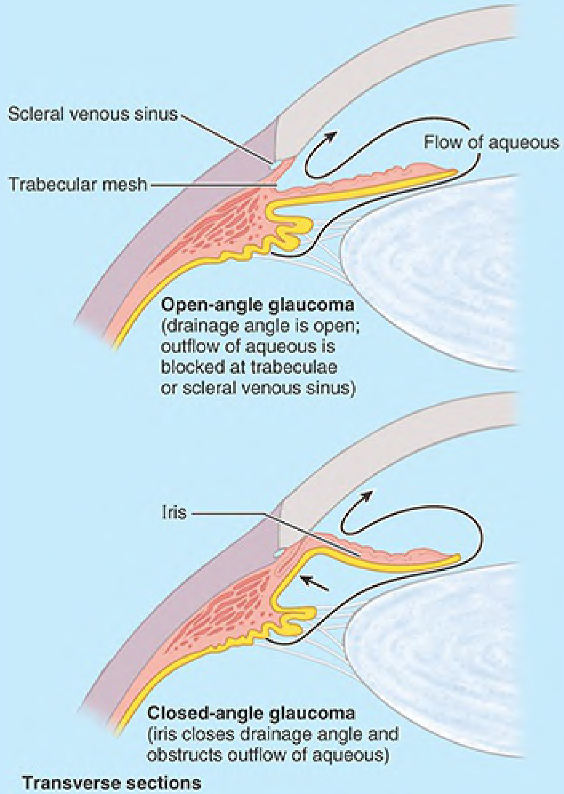


FIGURE B8.29. **Open- versus closed-angle glaucoma.**

Hemorrhage into Anterior Chamber

Hemorrhage within the anterior chamber of the eyeball (hyphema) usually results from blunt trauma to the eyeball (e.g., from a squash or racquet ball or a hockey stick) (Fig. B8.30). Initially, the anterior chamber is tinged red; however, blood soon accumulates in this chamber. The initial hemorrhage usually stops in a few days and recovery is usually good.

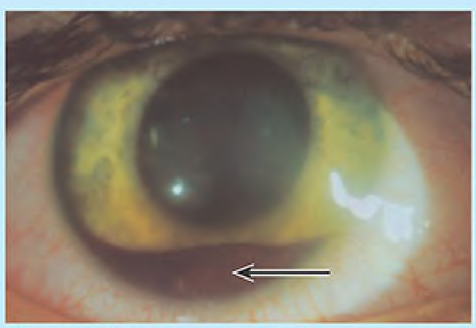


FIGURE B8.30. **Hyphema.** Arrow, location of hyphema.

Artificial Eye

The fascial sheath of the eyeball forms a socket for an artificial eye when the eyeball is removed (enucleated). After this operation, the eye muscles cannot retract too far because their fascial sheaths remain attached to the fascial sheath of the eyeball. Therefore, some coordinated movement of a properly fitted artificial eyeball is possible. Because the suspensory ligament supports the eyeball (see Figs. 8.45 and 8.61C), it is preserved when surgical removal of the bony floor of the orbit is performed (e.g., during the removal of a tumor).

Corneal Reflex

During a neurological examination, the examiner touches the cornea with a wisp of cotton (see Fig. B8.14B). A normal (positive) response is a blink. Absence of a blink suggests a lesion of CN V_1; a lesion of CN VII (the motor nerve to the orbicularis oculi) may also impair this reflex. The examiner must be certain to touch the cornea (not just the sclera) to evoke the reflex. The presence of a contact lens may hamper or abolish the ability to evoke this reflex.

Corneal Abrasions and Lacerations

Foreign objects such as sand or metal filings (particles) produce corneal abrasions that cause sudden, stabbing pain in the eyeball and tears. Opening and closing the eyelids is also painful. Corneal lacerations are caused by sharp objects, such as a tree branch, fingernails, or the corner of a page of a book.

Corneal Ulcers and Transplants

Damage to the sensory innervation of the cornea from CN V_1 leaves the cornea vulnerable to injury by foreign particles. People with corneal lesions (scarred or opaque corneas) may receive corneal transplants from donors or implants of nonreactive plastic material.

Horner Syndrome

Horner syndrome results from interruption of a cervical sympathetic trunk and is manifest by the absence of sympathetically stimulated functions on the ipsilateral side of the head. The syndrome includes the following signs: constriction of the pupil (miosis), drooping of the superior eyelid (ptosis), redness and increased temperature of the skin (vasodilation), and absence of sweating (anhydrosis). Constriction of the pupil occurs because the parasympathetically stimulated sphincter of the pupil is unopposed. The ptosis is a consequence of paralysis of the smooth muscle fibers interdigitated with the aponeurosis of the levator palpebrae superioris that collectively constitute the superior tarsal muscle, supplied by sympathetic fibers.

Paralysis of Extra-Ocular Muscles/Palsies of Orbital Nerves

One or more extra-ocular muscles may be paralyzed by disease in the brainstem or by a head injury, resulting in diplopia (double vision). Paralysis of a muscle is apparent by the limitation of movement of the eyeball in the field of action of the muscle and by the production of two images when one attempts to use the muscle.

OCULOMOTOR NERVE PALSY

Complete oculomotor nerve palsy affects most of the ocular muscles, the levator palpebrae superioris, and the sphincter pupillae. The superior eyelid droops and cannot be raised voluntarily because of the unopposed activity of the orbicularis oculi (supplied by the facial nerve) (Fig. B8.31A). The pupil is also fully dilated and nonreactive because of the unopposed dilator pupillae. The pupil is fully abducted and depressed ("down and out") because of the unopposed activity of the lateral rectus and superior oblique, respectively.

FIGURE B8.31. Orbital nerve palsies.

ABDUCENT NERVE PALSY

When the abducent nerve (CN VI) supplying only the lateral rectus is paralyzed, the individual cannot abduct the pupil on the affected side (abducent nerve palsy or paralysis). The pupil is fully adducted by the unopposed pull of the medial rectus (Fig. B8.31B).

Blockage of Central Retinal Artery

Because terminal branches of the central retinal artery are end arteries, obstruction of th by an embolus results in instant and total blindness. Blockage of the artery is usually unilateral and occurs in older people.

Blockage of Central Retinal Vein

Because the central retinal vein enters the cavernous sinus, thrombophlebitis of this sinus may result in the passage of a thrombus to the central retinal vein and produce blockage of the small retinal veins. Occlusion of a branch of the central retinal vein usually results in slow, painless loss of vision.

The Bottom Line: Orbits, Eyeball, and Accessory Visual Structures

Orbits: The orbits are pyramidal cavities, with bases directed anteriorly and apices posteriorly, that house the eyeballs and accessory visual structures. ■ The medial walls of the contralateral orbits are parallel, and the lateral walls are perpendicular to each other. ■ The margins and lateral walls of the orbits, being most vulnerable to direct trauma, are strong. ■ The superior wall (roof) and inferior wall (floor) are shared with the anterior cranial fossa and the maxillary sinus, respectively, and much of the paper-thin medial wall is common to the ethmoidal cells. ■ The medial wall and floor are thus vulnerable to the spread of disease processes from the paranasal sinuses and to blowout fractures when blunt force is applied to the orbital contents, suddenly increasing intra-orbital pressure. ■ The optic canal and superior orbital fissure at the apex of the orbit are the primary paths by which structures enter and exit the orbits.

Anterior accessory visual structures: The eyelids and lacrimal apparatus are protective devices for the eyeball. ■ The conjunctival sac is a special form of mucosal bursa, which enables the eyelids to move over the surface of the eyeball as they open and close, spreading the moistening and lubricating film of lacrimal fluid within the sac. ■ The fluid is secreted into the lateral superior fornix of the sac and is spread by gravity and blinking across the anterior eyeball, cleansing and providing the cornea with nutrients and oxygen as it is pushed toward the medial angle of the eye. ■ The fluid and contained irritants accumulate in the lacrimal lake. ■ They are drained from here by capillary action through superior and inferior lacrimal puncta into lacrimal canaliculi that pass to the lacrimal sac. ■ The sac drains via the nasolacrimal duct into the nasal cavity, where the fluid flows posteriorly and is eventually swallowed. ■ Although the conjunctival sac

opens anteriorly via the palpebral fissure, the watery lacrimal fluid will not cross the lipid barrier secreted by the tarsal glands onto the margins of the fissure, unless it is produced in excess, as when crying.

Eyeball: The eyeball contains the optical apparatus of the visual system. ■ It has a trilaminar construction, with (1) a supporting outer fibrous layer, consisting of the opaque sclera and transparent anterior cornea; (2) a middle vascular layer, consisting of the choroid (largely concerned with providing nourishment to the cones and rods of the retina), the ciliary body (producer of the aqueous humor and adjuster of the lens), and the iris (protector of the retina); and (3) an inner layer, consisting of optic and nonvisual parts of the retina. ■ The cornea is the major refractive component of the eyeball, with focusing adjustments made by the lens. ■ Parasympathetic stimulation of the ciliary body reduces tension on the lens, allowing it to thicken for near vision. ■ Relaxation of the ciliary body in the absence of stimulation stretches the lens, making it thinner for far vision. ■ Parasympathetic stimulation also constricts the sphincter of the iris, which closes the pupil in response to bright light. ■ Sympathetic stimulation of the dilator of the iris opens the pupil to admit more light. ■ The anterior segment of the eyeball is filled with aqueous humor, produced by the ciliary processes in the posterior chamber. ■ The aqueous humor passes through the pupil into the anterior chamber and is absorbed into the venous circulation at the scleral venous sinus. ■ The posterior segment or vitreous chamber is filled with vitreous humor, which maintains the shape of the eye, transmits light, and holds the retina in place against the choroid.

Extra-ocular muscles: There are seven extra-ocular muscles: four recti, two obliques, and a levator of the superior eyelid. ■ Six muscles originate from the apex of the orbit, and the four rectus muscles arise from a common tendinous ring. ■ Only the inferior oblique arises anteriorly in the orbit. The levator palpebrae superioris elevates the superior eyelid. ■ Associated smooth muscle (superior tarsal muscle) widens the palpebral fissure even more during sympathetic responses; ptosis results from the absence of sympathetic innervation to the head (Horner syndrome). ■ When the eyes are adducted (converged) as for close reading, the superior and inferior obliques produce depression and elevation, respectively, directing the gaze down or up the page. ■ Coordination of the contralateral extra-ocular muscles as yoke muscles is necessary to direct the gaze in a particular direction.

Nerves of orbit: All muscles of the orbit are supplied by CN III, except for the superior oblique and lateral rectus, which are supplied by CN IV and VI, respectively. ■ Memory device: $LR_6SO_4AO_3$.

Vasculature of orbit: Extra-ocular circulation is provided mainly by the ophthalmic (internal carotid) and infra-orbital (external carotid) arteries, the latter supplying structures

near the orbital floor. ■ Superior and inferior ophthalmic veins drain anteriorly to the facial vein, posteriorly to the cavernous sinus, and inferiorly to the pterygoid venous plexus. ■ Intra-ocular circulation is exclusively from the ophthalmic artery, with the central retinal artery supplying all of the retina except the layer of cones and rods, which is nourished by the capillary lamina of the choroid. ■ The ciliary–iridial structures receive blood from anterior ciliary arteries (from the rectus muscle branches of the ophthalmic artery) and two long posterior ciliary arteries. ■ Multiple short posterior ciliary arteries supply the choroid. ■ Superior and inferior vorticose veins drain the eyeballs to the respective ophthalmic veins.

PAROTID AND TEMPORAL REGIONS, INFRATEMPORAL FOSSA, AND TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT

Parotid Region

The **parotid region** is the posterolateral part of the facial region (see Fig. 8.23A), bounded by the

- zygomatic arch superiorly
- external ear and anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid posteriorly
- ramus of the mandible medially
- anterior border of the masseter muscle anteriorly
- angle and inferior border of the mandible inferiorly

The parotid region includes the parotid gland and duct, the parotid plexus of the facial nerve (CN VII), the retromandibular vein, the external carotid artery, and the masseter muscle.

PAROTID GLAND

The **parotid gland** is the largest of three paired salivary glands. From a functional viewpoint, it would seem logical to discuss all three glands simultaneously in association with the anatomy of the mouth. However, from an anatomical viewpoint, particularly in dissection courses, the parotid gland is usually examined with or immediately subsequent to the dissection of the face for complete exposure of the facial nerve. Although the parotid plexus of the facial nerve (CN VII) is embedded within the parotid gland, the branches extending from the gland to innervate the muscles of facial expression are encountered during the dissection of the face, and are discussed and illustrated previously in this chapter. Dissection of the parotid region must be completed before dissection of the infratemporal region and muscles of mastication or the carotid triangle of the neck. The submandibular gland is encountered primarily during dissection of the submandibular triangle of the neck, and the sublingual glands when dissecting the floor of the mouth.

The parotid gland is enclosed within a tough, unyielding, fascial capsule, the **parotid sheath** (capsule), derived from the investing layer of deep cervical fascia (Figs. 8.67; see Figs. 9.4 and 9.16). The parotid gland has an irregular shape because the area occupied by the gland, the **parotid bed**, is antero-inferior to the external acoustic meatus, where it is wedged between the ramus of the mandible and the mastoid process (Fig. 8.67; see Fig. 8.23A, D). Fatty tissue between the lobes of the gland confers the flexibility the gland must have to accommodate the motion of the mandible. The apex of the parotid gland is posterior to the angle of the mandible, and its base is related to the zygomatic arch. The subcutaneous lateral surface of the parotid gland is almost flat.

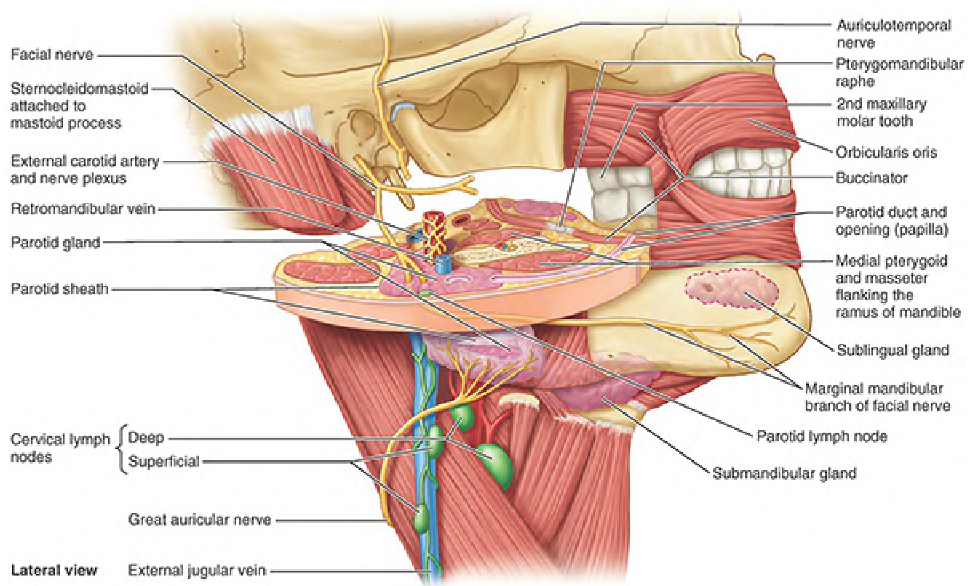


FIGURE 8.67. Relationships of parotid gland. A transverse slice through the bed of the parotid gland demonstrates the relationship of the gland to the surrounding structures. The gland passes deeply between the ramus of the mandible, flanked by the muscles of mastication anteriorly and the mastoid process and sternocleidomastoid muscle posteriorly. The dimensions of the parotid bed change with movements of the mandible. The external carotid artery and peri-arterial plexus, retromandibular vein, and parotid plexus of the facial nerve (CN VII) are embedded within the gland itself. The parotid duct turns medially at the anterior border of the masseter muscle and pierces the buccinator muscle.

The **parotid duct** passes horizontally from the anterior edge of the gland (Fig. 8.67). At the anterior border of the masseter, the duct turns medially, pierces the buccinator, and enters the oral cavity through a small orifice opposite the 2nd maxillary molar tooth. Embedded within the substance of the parotid gland, from superficial to deep, are the parotid plexus of the facial nerve (CN VII) and its branches (Fig. 8.67; see Fig. 8.23A, B, D), the retromandibular vein, and the external carotid artery. On the parotid sheath and within the gland are parotid lymph nodes.

INNERVATION OF PAROTID GLAND AND RELATED STRUCTURES

Although the parotid plexus of CN VII is embedded within it, CN VII does not provide innervation to the gland. The auriculotemporal nerve, a branch of CN V_3, is closely related to the parotid gland and passes superior to it with the superficial temporal vessels. The

auriculotemporal nerve and the **great auricular nerve**, a branch of the cervical plexus composed of fibers from C2 and C3 spinal nerves, innervates the parotid sheath (Fig. 8.67) as well as the overlying skin.

The parasympathetic component of the **glossopharyngeal nerve** (CN IX) supplies presynaptic secretory fibers to the **otic ganglion** (Fig. 8.68). The postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers are conveyed from the ganglion to the parotid gland by the auriculotemporal nerve. Stimulation of the parasympathetic fibers produces a thin, watery saliva. Sympathetic fibers are derived from the cervical ganglia through the **external carotid nerve plexus** on the external carotid artery (Fig. 8.67). The vasomotor activity of these fibers may reduce secretion from the gland. Sensory nerve fibers pass to the gland through the great auricular and auriculotemporal nerves.

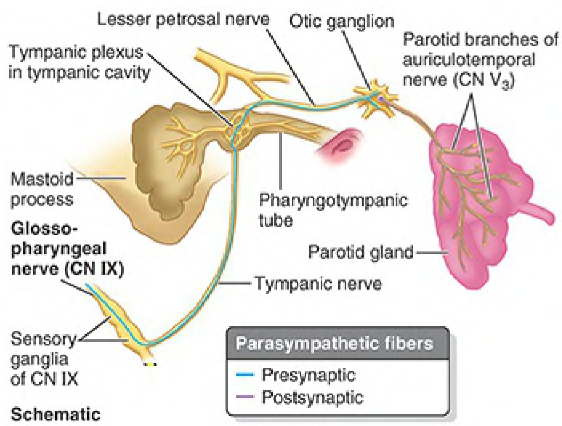


FIGURE 8.68. Innervation of parotid gland.

Temporal Region

The **temporal region** of the head includes the lateral area of the scalp and the deeper soft tissues overlying the temporal fossa of the cranium, superior to the zygomatic arch (Fig. 8.69A inset; see Fig. 8.14). The **temporal fossa**, occupied primarily by the upper portion of the temporalis muscle (Fig. 8.69A; see Fig. 8.1A), is bounded as follows:

- Posteriorly and superiorly by the temporal lines
- Anteriorly by the frontal and zygomatic bones
- Laterally by the zygomatic arch
- Inferiorly by the infratemporal crest (Fig. 8.69B)

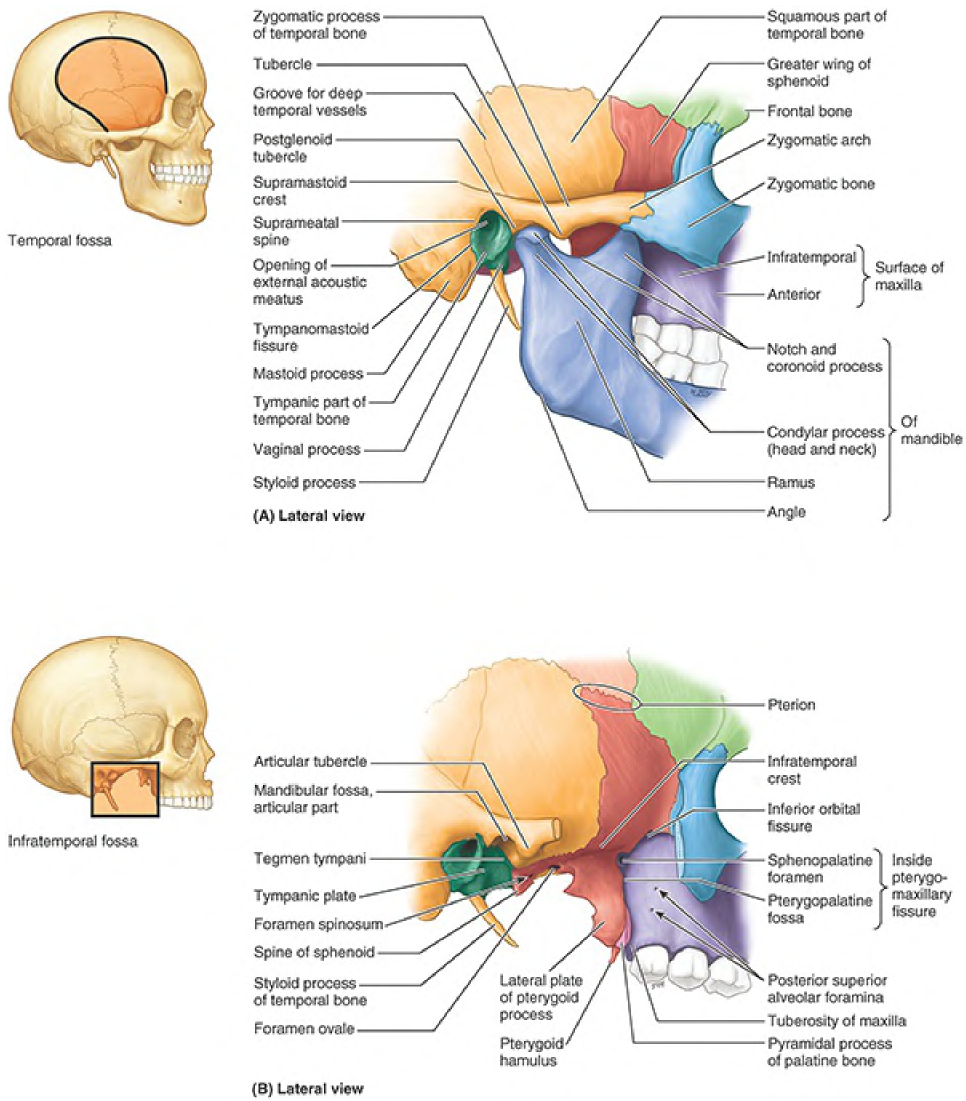


FIGURE 8.69. Bony boundaries of temporal and infratemporal fossae. A. Temporal fossa. The lateral wall of the infratemporal fossa is formed by the ramus of the mandible. The space is deep to the zygomatic arch and is traversed by the temporal muscle and the deep temporal nerves and vessels. Through this interval, the temporal fossa communicates inferiorly with the infratemporal fossa. **B.** Infratemporal fossa. The roof and three walls of the infratemporal fossa following removal of zygomatic arch and ramus of mandible. The fossa is an irregularly shaped space posterior to the maxilla (anterior wall). The roof of the fossa is formed by the infratemporal surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid. The medial wall is formed by the lateral pterygoid plate. The posterior wall is formed by the tympanic plate, styloid process, and mastoid process of the temporal bone. The infratemporal fossa communicates with the pterygopalatine fossa through the pterygomaxillary fissure.

The floor of the temporal fossa is formed by parts of the four bones that form the pterion: frontal, parietal, temporal, and greater wing of the sphenoid. The fan-shaped temporalis muscle arises from the bony floor and overlying **temporal fascia** (Fig. 8.70), which forms the roof of the temporal fossa. This tough fascia covers the temporalis, attaching superiorly to the superior temporal line. Inferiorly, the fascia splits into two layers, which attach to the lateral and medial surfaces of the zygomatic arch. The temporal fascia also tethers the zygomatic arch superiorly. The powerful masseter muscle is attached to the inferior border of the arch. When it contracts,

exerting a strong downward pull on the zygomatic arch, the temporal fascia provides resistance.

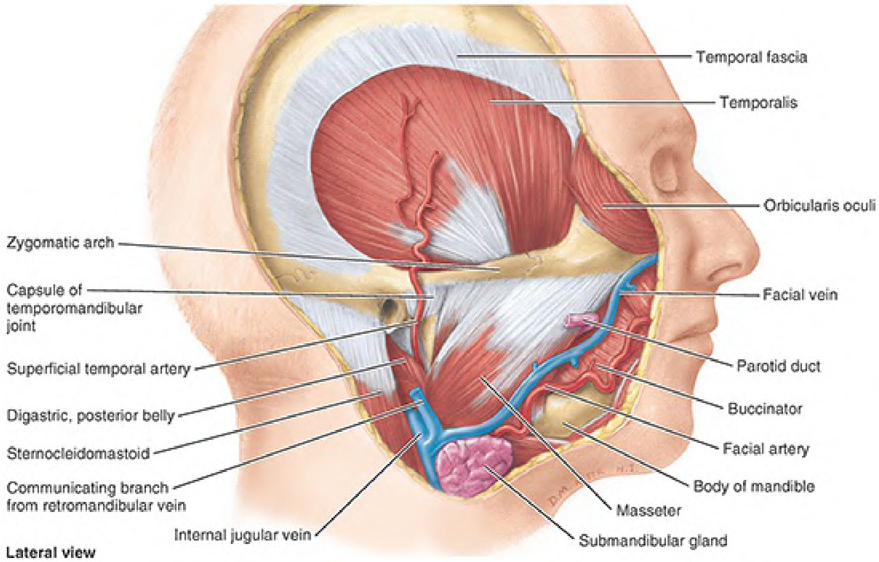


FIGURE 8.70. **Dissections of temporal and infratemporal regions.** In this superficial dissection of the great muscles on the side of the cranium, the parotid gland and most of the temporal fascia have been removed. The temporal and masseter muscles are both supplied by the trigeminal nerve (CN V) and both close the jaw. The facial artery passes deep to the submandibular gland, whereas the facial vein passes superficial to it.

Infratemporal Fossa

The **infratemporal fossa** is an irregularly shaped space deep and inferior to the zygomatic arch, deep to the ramus of the mandible, and posterior to the maxilla (Fig. 8.69A, B). It communicates with the temporal fossa through the interval between (deep to) the zygomatic arch and (superficial to) the cranial bones.

The boundaries of the infratemporal fossa are as follows (Fig. 8.69):

- Laterally: the ramus of the mandible
- Medially: the lateral pterygoid plate
- Anteriorly: the posterior aspect of the maxilla
- Posteriorly: the tympanic plate and the mastoid and styloid processes of the temporal bone
- Superiorly: the inferior (infratemporal) surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid
- Inferiorly: where the medial pterygoid muscle attaches to the mandible near its angle (see Fig. 8.74D)

The infratemporal fossa contains the (Figs. 8.70, 8.71, and 8.72)

- inferior part of the temporalis muscle
- lateral and medial pterygoid muscles
- maxillary artery
- pterygoid venous plexus
- mandibular, inferior alveolar, lingual, buccal, and chorda tympani nerves
- otic ganglion (see Fig. 8.77)

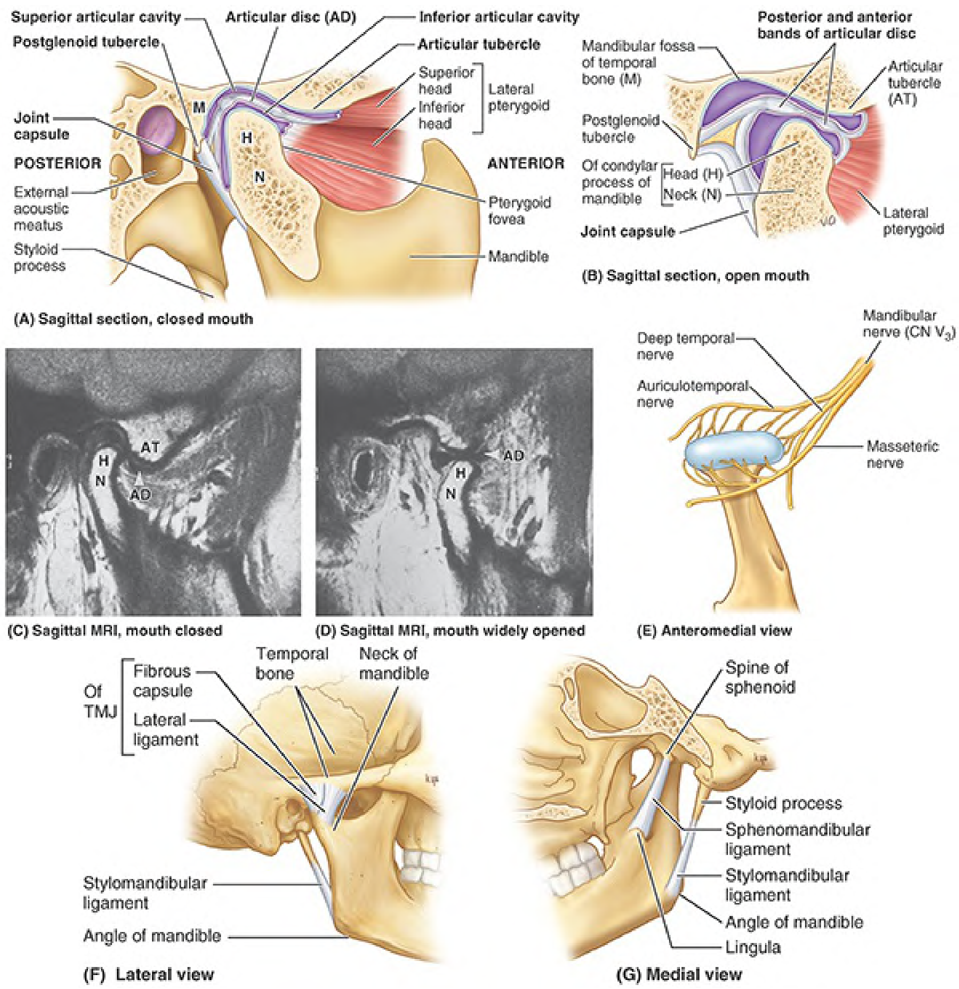


FIGURE 8.71. Temporomandibular joint (TMJ). A–D. Anatomical and CT images of TMJ in the closed- and open-mouth positions. **E.** Innervation of TMJ.

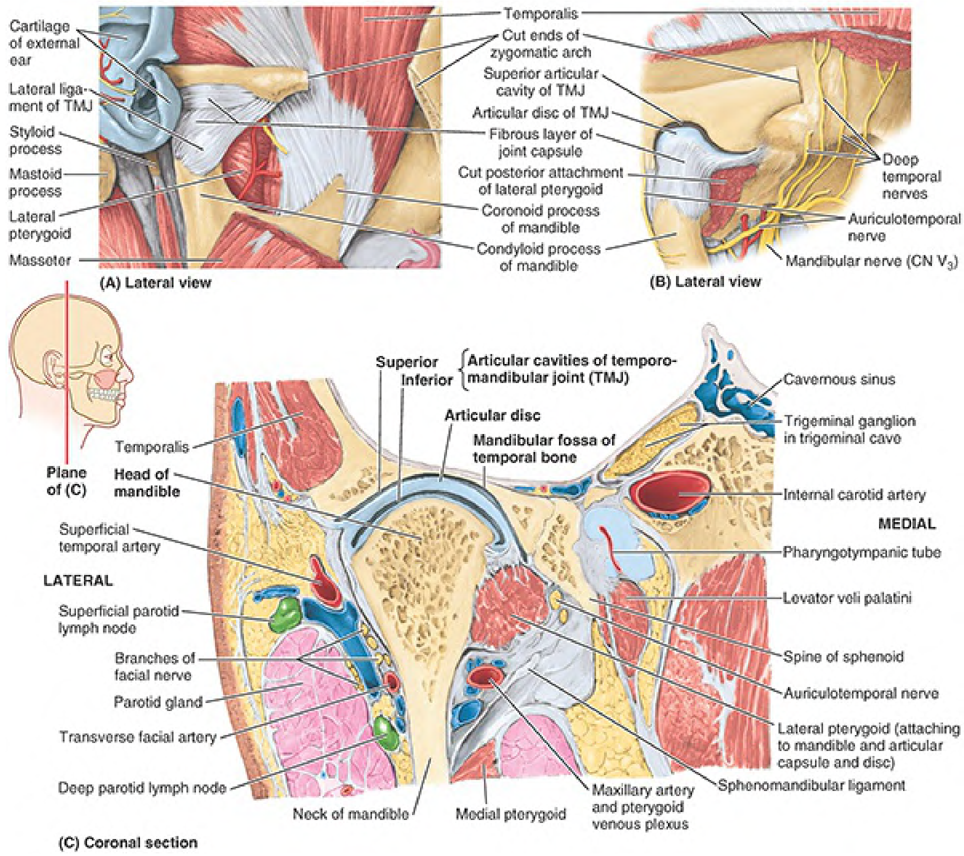


FIGURE 8.72. Dissections and coronal section of TMJ. A. Fibrous layer of joint capsule. The capsule is thickened to form the lateral ligament, which with the postglenoid tubercle prevents excessive posterior displacement of the head of the mandible. **B.** Articular disc. The upper portion of the fibrous capsule has been removed, demonstrating the superior compartment of the TMJ between the mandibular fossa and the articular disc. The auriculotemporal nerve provides articular branches to the joint. **C.** Coronal section of right TMJ. The articular disc divides the joint cavity into superior and inferior compartments.

The parotid and temporal regions and the infratemporal fossa collectively include the temporomandibular joint and the muscles of mastication that produce its movements.

TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT

The **temporomandibular joint (TMJ)** is a modified hinge type of synovial joint, permitting gliding (translation) and a small degree of rotation (pivoting) in addition to flexion (elevation) and extension (depression) movements typical for hinge joints. The bony articular surfaces involved are the mandibular fossa and articular tubercle of the temporal bone superiorly and the head of the mandible inferiorly (Fig. 8.71A–D; see Fig. 8.9B). The loose fibrous layer of the joint capsule attaches to the margins of the articular cartilage on the temporal bone and around the neck of the mandible (Figs. 8.71A, B and 8.72A, C). The two bony articular surfaces are completely separated by intervening fibrocartilage, the articular disc of the TMJ, attached at its periphery to the internal aspect of the fibrous capsule. This creates separate **superior** and **inferior articular cavities**, or compartments, lined by separate **superior** and **inferior synovial membranes** (Figs. 8.71A, B and 8.72B, C).

The gliding movements of protrusion and retrusion (translation) occur between the temporal bone and the articular disc (superior cavity) (Fig. 8.73). The hinge movements of depression and elevation and the rotational or pivoting movements occur in the inferior compartment. A thickened part of the joint capsule forms the intrinsic **lateral ligament of the TMJ** (Figs. 8.71F and 8.72A), which strengthens the joint laterally and, with the **postglenoid tubercle** (Fig. 8.71A), acts to prevent posterior dislocation of the joint.

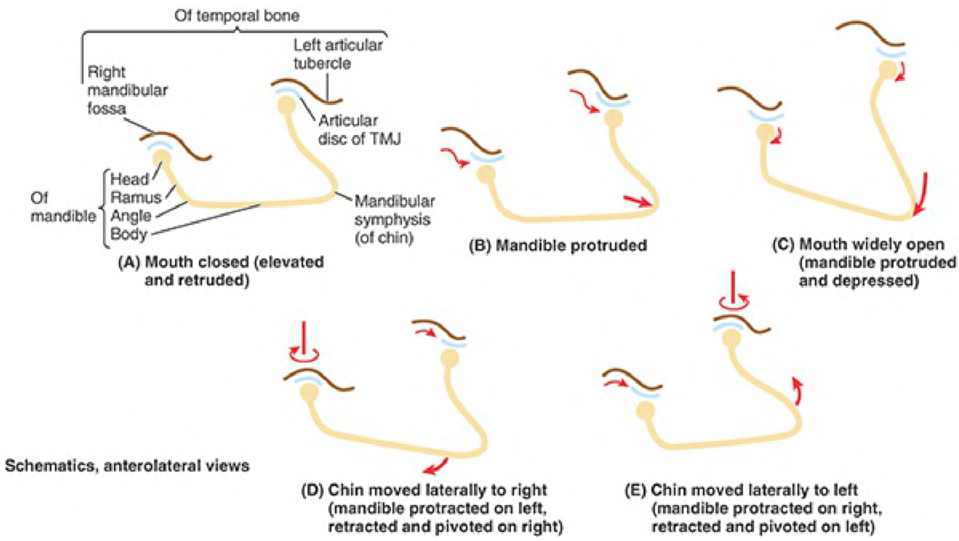


FIGURE 8.73. Movements of mandible consequent to movement at temporomandibular joints (TMJs).

Two extrinsic ligaments and the lateral ligament connect the mandible to the cranium. The **stylomandibular ligament**, which is actually a thickening of the fibrous capsule of the parotid gland, runs from the styloid process to the angle of the mandible (Fig. 8.71F, G). It does not contribute significantly to the strength of the joint. The **sphenomandibular ligament** runs from the spine of the sphenoid to the lingula of the mandible (Figs. 8.71G and 8.72C). It is the primary passive support of the mandible, although the tonus of the muscles of mastication usually bears the mandible's weight. However, the sphenomandibular ligaments serve as a "swinging hinge" for the mandible, serving both as a fulcrum and as a check ligament for the movements of the mandible at the TMJs.

The movements of the mandible at the TMJs are shown in Figure 8.73, and the muscles (or forces) producing the movements are summarized in Table 8.10. When the mouth is closed and at rest, the heads of the mandible are held in the retracted position in the mandibular fossae, and the chin is elevated by the tonus of the retractors and elevators of the mandible (Figs. 8.71A, C; 8.72B, C; and 8.73A). When sleeping in the supine or sitting position (head upright), as one enters a state of deep sleep, the tonic contraction relaxes and gravity causes depression of the mandible (the mouth falls open).

TABLE 8.10. MOVEMENTS OF TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT

Movements of Mandible	Muscle(s)
Elevation (close mouth)	Temporalis, masseter, and medial pterygoid

Depression (open mouth)	Lateral pterygoid, suprahyoid, and infrahyoid muscles[a]
Protrusion (protrude chin)	Lateral pterygoid, masseter, and medial pterygoid[b]
Retrusion (retrude chin)	Temporalis (posterior oblique and near horizontal fibers)
Lateral movements (grinding and chewing)	Temporalis of same side, pterygoids of opposite side, and masseter

[a]The prime mover is normally gravity; these muscles are mainly active against resistance.

[b]The lateral pterygoid is the prime mover here, with minor secondary roles played by the masseter and medial pterygoid.

To enable more than a small amount of depression of the mandible—that is, to open the mouth wider than just to separate the upper and lower teeth—the head of the mandible and articular disc must move anteriorly on the articular surface until the head lies inferior to the articular tubercle (a movement referred to as "translation" by dentists) (Fig. 8.73B). If this occurs without depression, the chin protrudes. Most often, the mandible is depressed (the mouth is opened) as the head of the mandible and articular disc glide toward the articular tubercle, with full depression possible only when the heads and discs are fully protracted (Figs. 8.71B, D and 8.73C). If protraction of head and disc occurs unilaterally, the contralateral head rotates (pivots) on the inferior surface of the articular disc in the retracted position, permitting simple side-to-side chewing or grinding movements over a small range (Fig. 8.73D, E). During protrusion and retrusion of the mandible, the head and articular disc slide anteriorly and posteriorly on the articular surface of the temporal bone, with both sides moving together (Fig. 8.73A, B).

MUSCLES OF MASTICATION

TMJ movements are produced chiefly by the **muscles of mastication**. These four muscles (**temporal**, **masseter**, and **medial** and **lateral pterygoid muscles**) develop from the mesoderm of the embryonic first pharyngeal arch. Consequently, they are all innervated by the nerve of that arch, the (motor root of the) mandibular nerve (CN V_3). The muscles of mastication are shown in isolation in Figure 8.74 and in situ in Figure 8.70 (see Fig. 8.76); their attachments, details concerning their innervation, and their main actions are described in Table 8.11. In addition to the movements listed, studies indicate that the superior head of the lateral pterygoid muscle is active during the retraction movement produced by the posterior fibers of the temporalis. Traction is applied to the articular disc so that it is not pushed posteriorly ahead of the retracting mandible.

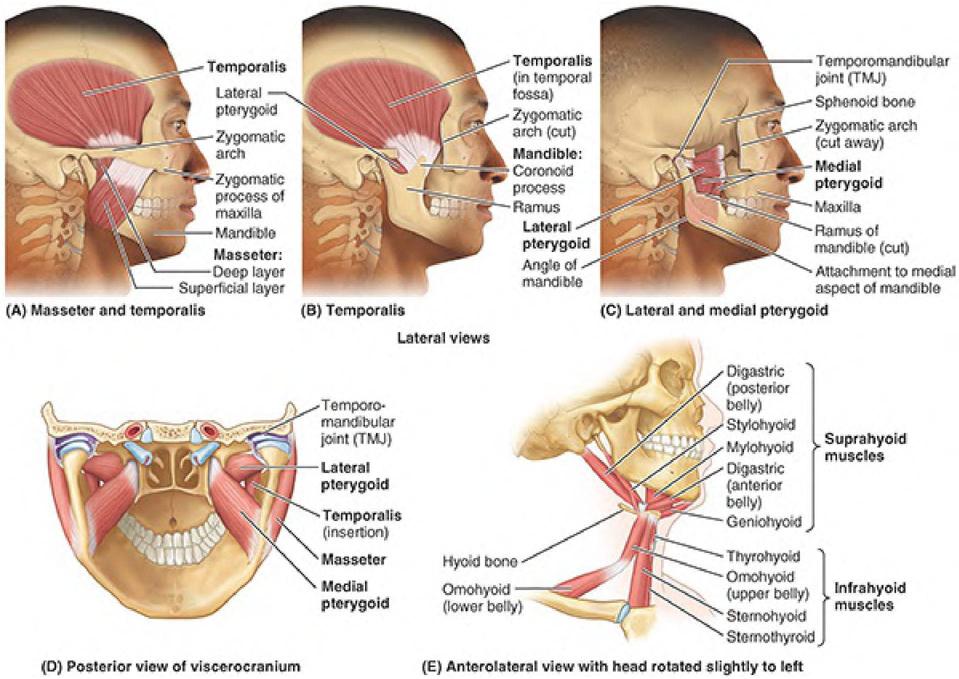


FIGURE 8.74. **Muscles acting on mandible to produce movements at temporomandibular joint.**

TABLE 8.11. MUSCLES ACTING ON MANDIBLE TO PRODUCE MOVEMENTS AT TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT

Muscle(s)	Origin	Insertion	Innervation		Action on Mandible
Muscles of mastication					
Temporalis	Triangular muscle with broad attachment to floor of temporal fossa and deep surface of temporal fascia	Narrow attachment to tip and medial surface of coronoid process and anterior border of ramus of mandible	Anterior trunk of mandibular nerve (CN V_3)	Via deep temporal branches	Elevates mandible, closing jaws; posterior, more horizontal fibers are 1° retractors of mandible.
Masseter	Quadrate muscle attaching to inferior border and medial surface of maxillary process of zygomatic bone and the zygomatic arch	Angle and lateral surface of ramus of mandible		Via masseteric nerve	Elevates mandible, closing jaws; superficial fibers make limited contribution to protrusion of mandible.
Lateral pterygoid	Triangular two-headed muscle from (1) infratemporal surface and crest of greater wing of sphenoid and (2) lateral surface of lateral pterygoid plate	Superior head attaches primarily to joint capsule and articular disc of TMJ; inferior head attaches primarily to pterygoid fovea on anteromedial		Via lateral pterygoid nerve	Acting bilaterally, protracts mandible and depresses chin; acting unilaterally, swings jaw toward contralateral side; alternate unilateral contraction produces larger lateral chewing movements.

		aspect of neck of condyloid process of mandible.			
Medial pterygoid	Quadrangular two-headed muscle from (1) medial surface of lateral pterygoid plate and pyramidal process of palatine bone and (2) tuberosity of maxilla	Medial surface of ramus of mandible, inferior to mandibular foramen; in essence, a "mirror image" of ipsilateral masseter, two muscles flanking ramus	Main trunk of mandibular nerve (CN V_3)	Via medial pterygoid nerve	Acts synergistically with masseter to elevate mandible; contributes to protrusion; alternate unilateral activity produces smaller grinding movements.
Suprahyoid muscles					
Digastric	Base of cranium	Hyoid bone	Facial and mandibular nerves		Depresses mandible against resistance when infrahyoid muscles fix or depress hyoid bone
Stylohyoid	Styloid process		Facial nerve (CN VII)		
Mylohyoid	Medial body of mandible		Mandibular nerve (CN V_3)		
Geniohyoid	Anterior body of mandible		Nerve to geniohyoid (C1–C2)		
Infrahyoid muscles					
Omohyoid	Scapula	Hyoid bone	Ansa cervicalis from cervical plexus (C1–C3)		Fixes or depresses hyoid bone
Sternohyoid	Manubrium of sternum				
Sternothyroid		Thyroid cartilage			
Thyrohyoid	Thyroid cartilage	Hyoid bone	C1 (via hypoglossal n.–CN XII)		
Muscle of facial expression					
Platysma	Inferior attachment: subcutaneous tissue of infraclavicular and supraclavicular regions	Superior attachment: base of mandible, skin of cheek and lower lip, angle of mouth (modiolus), and orbicularis oris	Cervical branch of facial nerve (CN VII)		Depresses mandible against resistance

Generally, depression of the mandible is produced by gravity. The suprahyoid and infrahyoid muscles are strap-like muscles on each side of the neck (Fig. 8.74E; Table 8.11). They are primarily used to raise and depress the hyoid bone and larynx, respectively—for example, during swallowing (see Chapter 9, Neck). Indirectly, they can also help depress the mandible, especially when opening the mouth suddenly, against resistance, or when inverted (e.g., standing on one's head). The platysma can be similarly used.

NEUROVASCULATURE OF INFRATEMPORAL FOSSA

The **maxillary artery** is the larger of the two terminal branches of the external carotid artery. It arises posterior to the neck of the mandible and is divided into three parts based on its relation to the lateral pterygoid muscle. The three parts of the maxillary artery and their branches are illustrated in isolation in Figure 8.75, and their courses and distributions are listed in Table 8.12. Relationships of the maxillary artery and many of its branches are shown in Figure 8.76.

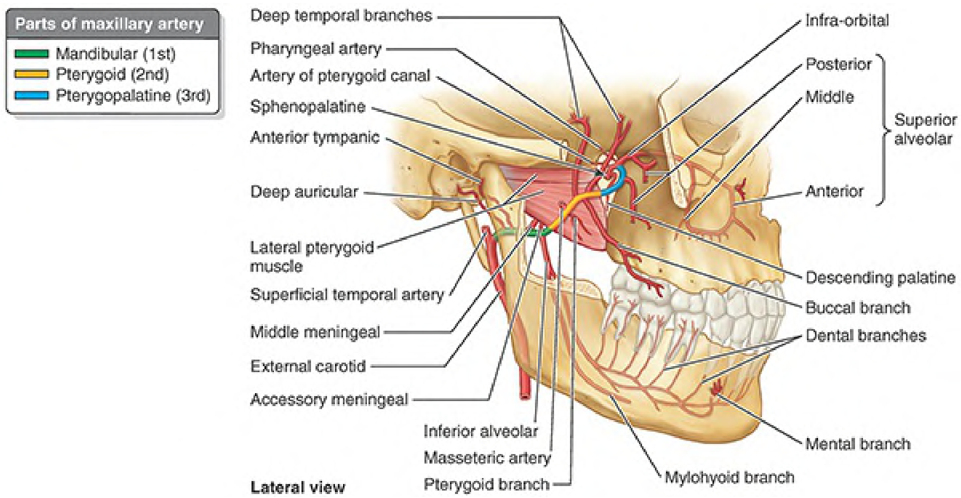


FIGURE 8.75. Parts and branches of maxillary artery.

TABLE 8.12. PARTS AND BRANCHES OF MAXILLARY ARTERY

Part	Course	Branches	Distribution
First (mandibular)	Proximal (posterior) to lateral pterygoid muscle; runs horizontally, deep (medial) to neck of condylar process of mandible and lateral to stylomandibular ligament	Deep auricular artery	Supplies external acoustic meatus, external tympanic membrane, and temporomandibular joint
		Anterior tympanic artery	Supplies internal aspect of tympanic membrane
		Middle meningeal artery	Enters cranial cavity via foramen spinosum to supply periosteum, bone, red bone marrow, dura mater of lateral wall and calvaria of neurocranium, trigeminal ganglion, facial nerve and geniculate ganglion, tympanic cavity, and tensor tympani muscle
		Accessory meningeal artery	Enters cranial cavity via foramen ovale; its distribution is mainly extracranial to muscles of infratemporal fossa, sphenoid bone, mandibular nerve, and otic ganglion.
		Inferior alveolar artery	Descends to enter mandibular canal of mandible via mandibular foramen; supplies mandible, mandibular teeth, chin, mylohyoid muscle
Second (pterygoid)	Adjacent (superficial or deep) to lateral pterygoid muscle;	Masseteric artery	Traverses mandibular notch, supplying temporomandibular joint and masseter muscle

	ascends obliquely anterosuperiorly, medial to temporalis muscle	Deep temporal arteries	Anterior and posterior arteries ascend between temporalis muscle and bone of temporal fossa, supplying mainly muscle.
		Pterygoid branches	Irregular in number and origin; supply pterygoid muscle
		Buccal artery	Runs antero-inferiorly with buccal nerve to supply buccal fat-pad, buccinator, and buccal oral mucosa
Third (pterygo–palatine)	Distal (anteromedial) to lateral pterygoid muscle; passes between heads of lateral pterygoid and through pterygomaxillary fissure into pterygopalatine fossa	Posterior superior alveolar artery	Descends on maxilla's infratemporal surface with branches traversing alveolar canals to supply maxillary molar and premolar teeth, adjacent gingiva, and mucous membrane of maxillary sinus
		Infra-orbital artery	Traverses inferior orbital fissure, infra-orbital groove, canal, and foramen; supplies inferior oblique and rectus muscles, lacrimal sac, maxillary canines and incisors teeth, mucous membrane of maxillary sinus, and skin of infra-orbital region of face
		Artery of pterygoid canal	Passes posteriorly through pterygoid canal; supplies mucosa of upper pharynx, pharyngotympanic tube, and tympanic cavity
		Pharyngeal branch	Passes through pharyngeal canal to supply mucosa of nasal roof, nasopharynx, sphenoidal air sinus, and pharyngotympanic tube
		Descending palatine artery	Descends through palatine canal, dividing into greater and lesser palatine arteries to mucosa and glands of hard and soft palate
		Sphenopalatine artery	Terminal branch of maxillary artery, traverses sphenopalatine foramen to supply walls and septum of nasal cavity; frontal, ethmoidal, sphenoid, and maxillary sinuses; and anteriormost palate

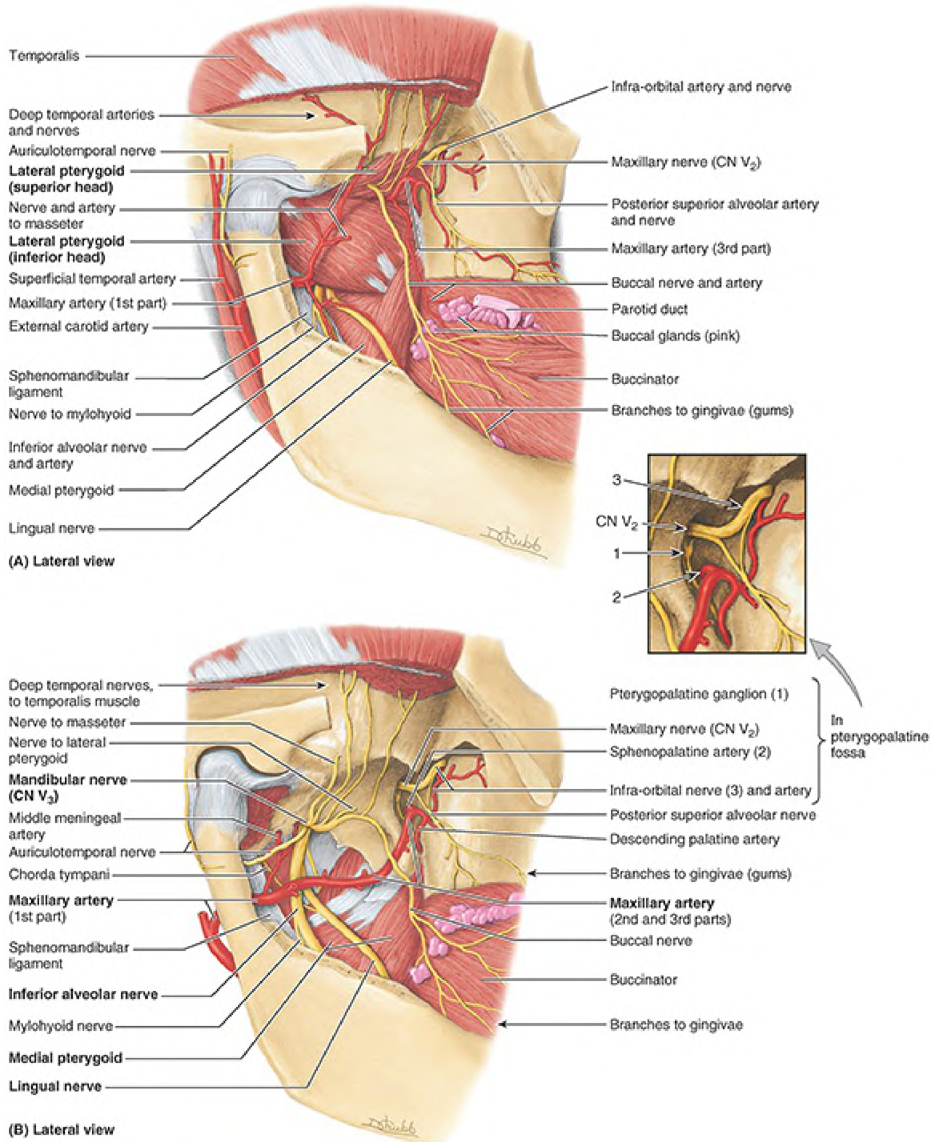


FIGURE 8.76. Dissections of infratemporal region. A. Superficial dissection. Most of the zygomatic arch and attached masseter, the coronoid process and adjacent parts of the ramus of the mandible, and the inferior half of the temporal muscle have been removed. The first part of the maxillary artery, the larger of the two end branches of the external carotid, runs anteriorly, deep to the neck of the mandible, and then passes deeply between the lateral and the medial pterygoid muscles. **B.** Deep dissection. More of the ramus of the mandible, the lateral pterygoid muscle, and most branches of the maxillary artery have been removed. Branches of the mandibular nerve (CN V3), including the auriculotemporal nerve, and the first part of the maxillary artery pass between the sphenomandibular ligament and the neck of the mandible.

The **pterygoid venous plexus** is located partly between the temporalis and pterygoid muscles (see Fig. 8.25). It is the venous equivalent of most of the maxillary artery, that is, most of the veins that accompany the branches of the maxillary artery drain into this plexus. The plexus anastomoses anteriorly with the facial vein via the deep facial vein and superiorly with the cavernous sinus via emissary veins. The extensive nature and volume of the pterygoid venous plexus is difficult to appreciate in the cadaver, in which it is usually drained of blood.

The **mandibular nerve** arises from the trigeminal ganglion in the middle cranial fossa. It

immediately receives the motor root of the trigeminal nerve and descends through the foramen ovale into the infratemporal fossa (Fig. 8.77). The branches of CN V_3 are the auriculotemporal, inferior alveolar, lingual, and buccal nerves. Branches of CN V_3 also supply the four muscles of mastication but not the buccinator, which is supplied by the facial nerve.

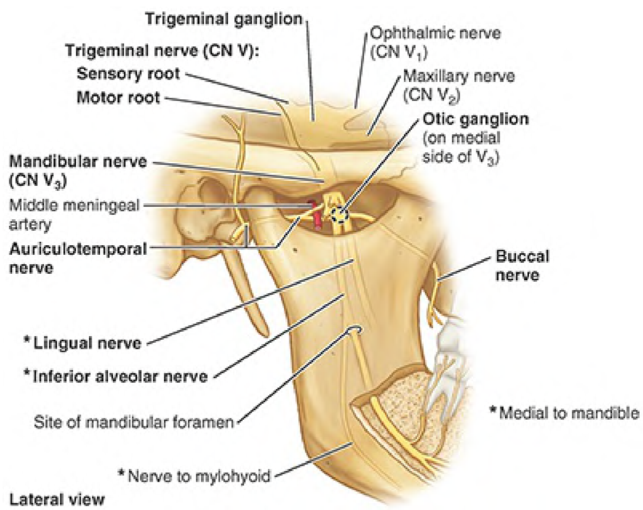


FIGURE 8.77. Nerves of infratemporal fossa.

The **auriculotemporal nerve** encircles the middle meningeal artery and divides into numerous branches, the largest of which passes posteriorly, medial to the neck of the mandible, and supplies sensory fibers to the auricle and temporal region. The auriculotemporal nerve also sends articular (sensory) fibers to the TMJ (Fig. 8.71E). It conveys postsynaptic parasympathetic secretomotor fibers from the otic ganglion to the parotid gland.

The **inferior alveolar nerve** enters the mandibular foramen and passes through the mandibular canal, forming the inferior dental plexus, which sends branches to all mandibular teeth on its side. Another branch of the dental plexus, the mental nerve, passes through the mental foramen and supplies the skin and mucous membrane of the lower lip, the skin of the chin, and the vestibular gingiva of the mandibular incisor teeth.

The **lingual nerve** lies anterior to the inferior alveolar nerve (Fig. 8.76). It is sensory to the anterior two thirds of the tongue, the floor of the mouth, and the lingual gingivae. It enters the mouth between the medial pterygoid muscle and the ramus of the mandible and passes anteriorly under cover of the oral mucosa, medial and inferior to the 3rd molar tooth. The **chorda tympani nerve**, a branch of CN VII carrying taste fibers from the anterior two thirds of the tongue, joins the lingual nerve in the infratemporal fossa (Fig. 8.76B). The chorda tympani also carries secretomotor fibers for the submandibular and sublingual salivary glands.

The **otic ganglion** (parasympathetic) is located in the infratemporal fossa, just inferior to the foramen ovale, medial to CN V_3 and posterior to the medial pterygoid muscle (Fig. 8.77). Presynaptic parasympathetic fibers, derived mainly from the glossopharyngeal nerve, synapse in the otic ganglion (see Fig. 8.68). Postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers, which are secretory to the parotid gland, pass from the otic ganglion to this gland through the auriculotemporal nerve.

CLINICAL BOX

PAROTID AND TEMPORAL REGIONS, INFRATEMPORAL FOSSA, AND TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT

Parotidectomy

Most tumors of the parotid glands are benign. However, most (80% of) salivary gland cancers begin in the parotid glands. Surgical excision of the parotid gland (parotidectomy) is often performed as part of the treatment. Because the parotid plexus of CN VII is embedded in the parotid gland, the plexus and its branches are in jeopardy during surgery (see Fig. 8.23A, B, D). An important step in parotidectomy is the identification, dissection, isolation, and preservation of the facial nerve. A superficial portion of the gland (often erroneously referred to as a "lobe") is removed, after which the parotid plexus, which occupies a distinct plane within the gland, can be retracted to enable dissection of the deep portion of the gland. The parotid gland makes a substantial contribution to the posterolateral contour of the face, the extent of its contribution being especially evident after it has been surgically removed. See the Clinical Box "Paralysis of Facial Muscles" in this chapter for a discussion of the functional consequences of injury to the facial nerve.

Infection of Parotid Gland

The parotid gland may become infected by infectious agents that pass through the bloodstream, as occurs in mumps, an acute communicable viral disease that primarily effects the parotid glands. Infection of the gland causes inflammation (parotiditis) and swelling of the gland, visible as marked distension of the cheek. Severe pain occurs because the parotid sheath resists swelling. Often, the pain is worse during chewing because the enlarged gland is wrapped around the posterior border of the ramus of the mandible and is compressed against the mastoid process of the temporal bone when the mouth is opened. The mumps virus may also cause inflammation of the parotid duct, producing redness of the parotid papilla, the small projection at the opening of the duct into the superior oral vestibule (see Fig. 8.67). Because the pain produced by mumps may be confused with a toothache, redness of the papilla is often an early sign that the disease involves the parotid gland and not a tooth.

Parotid gland disease often causes pain in the auricle and external acoustic meatus of the external ear, the temporal region, and TMJ because the auriculotemporal and great auricular nerves, from which the parotid gland and sheath receive sensory fibers, also supply sensory

fibers to the skin over the temporal fossa and auricle.

Abscess in Parotid Gland

A bacterial infection localized in the parotid gland usually produces an abscess (pus formation). The infection could result from extremely poor dental hygiene, or the infection could spread to the gland through the parotid ducts. Physicians and dentists must determine whether a swelling of the cheek results from infection of the parotid gland or from an abscess of dental origin.

Sialography of Parotid Duct

A radiopaque fluid can be injected into the duct system of the parotid gland through a cannula inserted through the orifice of the parotid duct in the mucous membrane of the cheek. This technique (sialography) is followed by radiography of the gland. Parotid sialograms (G. sialon, saliva + G. grapho, to write) demonstrate parts of the parotid duct system that may be displaced or dilated by disease.

Blockage of Parotid Duct

The parotid duct may be blocked by a calcified deposit, called a sialolith or calculus (L., pebble). The resulting pain in the parotid gland is made worse by eating. Sucking a lemon slice is painful because of the buildup of saliva in the proximal part of the blocked parotid duct.

Accessory Parotid Gland

Sometimes, an additional accessory parotid gland lies on the masseter muscle between the parotid duct and the zygomatic arch. Several ducts open from this accessory gland into the parotid duct.

Mandibular Nerve Block

To produce a mandibular nerve block, an anesthetic agent is injected near the mandibular nerve where it enters the infratemporal fossa (Fig. 8.69B). In the extra-oral approach, the needle passes through the mandibular notch of the ramus of the mandible into the infratemporal fossa. The injection usually anesthetizes the auriculotemporal, inferior alveolar, lingual, and buccal branches of CN V_3.

Inferior Alveolar Nerve Block

An inferior alveolar nerve block anesthetizes the inferior alveolar nerve, a branch of CN V_3.

The site of the anesthetic injection is around the mandibular foramen, the opening into the mandibular canal on the medial aspect of the ramus of the mandible (Fig. 8.77). This canal gives passage to the inferior alveolar nerve, artery, and vein. When this nerve block is successful, all mandibular teeth are anesthetized to the median plane. The skin and mucous membrane of the lower lip, the labial alveolar mucosa and gingivae, and the skin of the chin are also anesthetized because they are supplied by the mental nerve, a branch of the inferior alveolar nerve (see Fig. 8.81A). There are possible problems associated with an inferior alveolar nerve block, such as injection of the anesthetic into the parotid gland or the medial pterygoid muscle. This would affect ability to open the mouth (pterygoid trismus).

Dislocation of Temporomandibular Joint (TMJ)

Sometimes during yawning or taking a large bite, excessive contraction of the lateral pterygoids may cause the heads of the mandible to dislocate anteriorly (pass anterior to the articular tubercles) (Fig. B8.32). In this position, the mandible remains depressed and the person is unable to close his or her mouth. Most common, a sideways blow to the chin by a clenched hand (fist) when the mouth is open dislocates the TMJ on the side that received the blow. Dislocation of the TMJ may also accompany fractures of the mandible. Posterior dislocation is uncommon, being resisted by the presence of the postglenoid tubercle and the strong intrinsic lateral ligament. Usually in falls on or direct blows to the chin, the neck of the mandible fractures before dislocation occurs. Because of the close relationship of the facial and auriculotemporal nerves to the TMJ, care must be taken during surgical procedures to preserve both the branches of the facial nerve overlying it and the articular branches of the auriculotemporal nerve that enter the posterior part of the joint. Injury to articular branches of the auriculotemporal nerve supplying the TMJ, associated with traumatic dislocation and rupture of the articular capsule and lateral ligament, leads to laxity and instability of the TMJ.

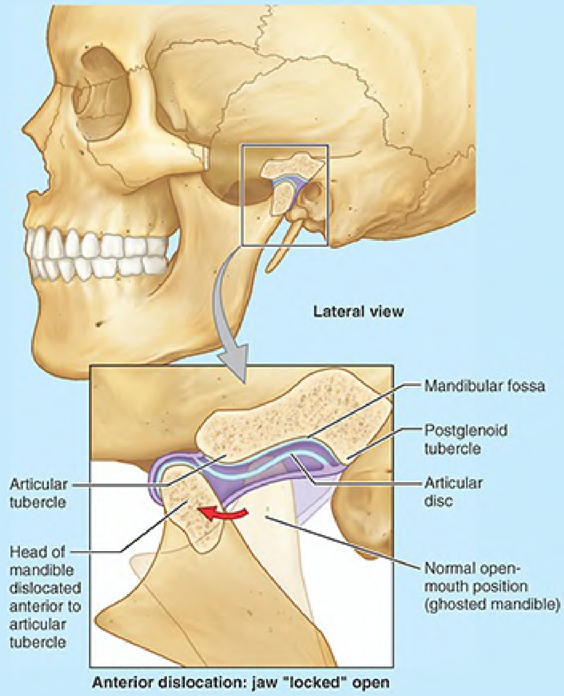


FIGURE B8.32. Dislocation of TMJ.

Arthritis of TMJ

The TMJ may become inflamed from degenerative arthritis, for example. Abnormal function of the TMJ may result in structural problems such as dental occlusion and joint clicking (crepitus). The clicking is thought to result from delayed anterior disc movements during mandibular depression and elevation.

The Bottom Line: Parotid and Temporal Regions, Infratemporal Fossa, and Temporomandibular Joint

Parotid region: The largest of the salivary glands, the parotid gland makes a substantial contribution to the contour of the face. ■ Occupying a complex space anterior to the auricle of the ear, the gland straddles most of the posterior aspect of the ramus of the mandible. ■ Fatty tissue in the gland gives it flexibility to accommodate the motions of the mandible. ■ The parotid duct passes anteriorly across the masseter, parallel and about a finger's breadth inferior to the zygomatic arch, and then turns medially to enter the superior oral vestibule opposite the 2nd maxillary molar. ■ Parotid fascia, continuous with the investing layer of deep cervical fascia, invests the gland as the parotid sheath. ■ The sheath is innervated by the great auricular nerve, but the gland receives parasympathetic

secretomotor innervation from the glossopharyngeal nerve via a complex route involving the otic ganglion. ■ Medial and anterior to the parotid gland, one of the muscles of mastication—the masseter—lies lateral to the ramus of the mandible, receiving its innervation via masseteric branches of the mandibular nerve and maxillary artery that traverse the mandibular notch.

Temporal and infratemporal fossa: The temporal fossa and its inferior continuation deep to the zygomatic arch and ramus of the mandible, the infratemporal fossa, are largely occupied by derivatives of the embryonic first pharyngeal arch: three of the four muscles of mastication (temporalis muscle and two pterygoid muscles) and the nerve that conveys motor fibers to them, the mandibular nerve (CN V_3).

TMJ and muscles of mastication: The TMJ is a hinge joint, modified by the presence of an articular disc that intervenes between the mandibular head and the articular surfaces of the temporal bone. ■ Gliding movements between the mandibular fossa and articular eminence occur in the upper compartment and are produced by the lateral pterygoid (protraction) and posterior fibers of the temporalis (retraction). ■ The mandible must be protracted for full opening of the mouth. ■ Hinge and pivoting movements occur in the lower compartment and are produced by gravity (depression) and three of the four muscles of mastication (elevation): masseter, medial pterygoid, and anterior portion of the temporalis.

Neurovasculature of infratemporal fossa: Also contained in the infratemporal fossa is the second part of the maxillary artery and its venous equivalent, the pterygoid venous plexus. ■ Adjacent cranial compartments communicate with the fossae, and neurovascular structures pass to and from the fossae via bony passages, including the (1) foramen ovale, through which the mandibular nerve enters from the middle cranial fossa; (2) foramen spinosum, through which the middle meningeal artery enters and the meningeal branch of CN V_3 returns to the middle cranial fossa; (3) pterygomaxillary fissure, through which the maxillary artery passes into the pterygopalatine fossa for further distribution; (4) inferior orbital fissure, through which the inferior ophthalmic veins drain to the pterygoid venous plexus; and (5) mandibular foramen, through which the inferior alveolar nerve passes to mandibular canal for distribution to the mandible and teeth.

ORAL REGION

The **oral region** includes the oral cavity, teeth, gingivae, tongue, palate, and the region of the palatine tonsils. The oral cavity is where food is ingested and prepared for digestion in the stomach and small intestine. Food is chewed by the teeth, and saliva from the salivary glands facilitates the formation of a manageable food bolus (L., lump). Deglutition (swallowing) is voluntarily initiated in the oral cavity. The voluntary phase of the process pushes the bolus from the oral cavity into the pharynx, the expanded part of the alimentary (digestive) system, where

the involuntary (automatic) phase of swallowing occurs.

Oral Cavity

The **oral cavity** (mouth) consists of two parts: the oral vestibule and the oral cavity proper (Fig. 8.78). It is in the oral cavity that food and drinks are tasted and where mastication (chewing) and lingual manipulation of food occur. The **oral vestibule** is the slit-like space between the teeth and gingivae (gums) and the lips and cheeks. The vestibule communicates with the exterior through the **oral fissure** (opening). The size of the fissure is controlled by the peri-oral muscles, such as the orbicularis oris (the sphincter of the oral fissure), buccinator, risorius, and depressors and elevators of the lips (dilators of the fissure).

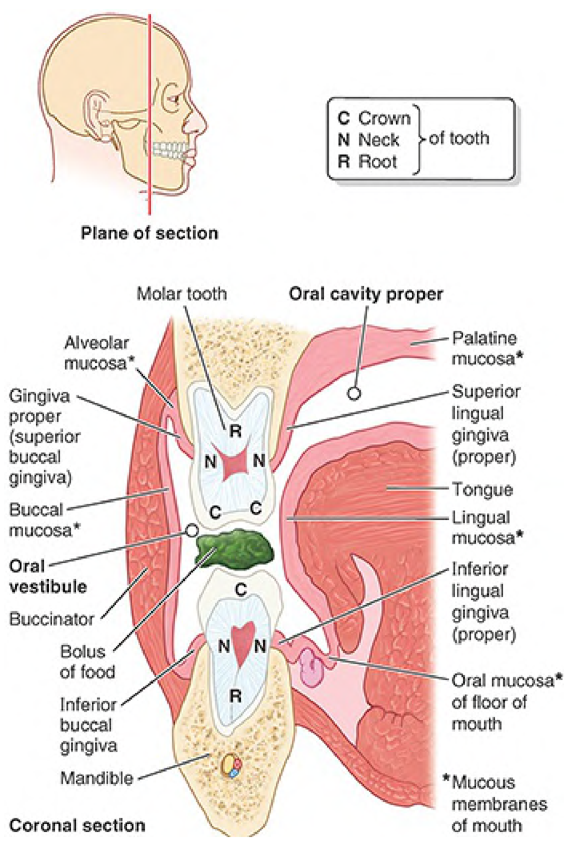


FIGURE 8.78. Coronal section of mouth region. The orientation drawing shows the plane of the section. During chewing, the tongue (centrally), buccinator (laterally), and orbicularis oris (anteriorly) work together to retain the bolus of food between the occlusive surfaces of the molar teeth.

The **oral cavity proper** is the space between the upper and the lower **dental arches** or arcades (maxillary and mandibular alveolar arches and the teeth they bear). The oral cavity is limited laterally and anteriorly by the dental arches. The roof of the oral cavity is formed by the palate. Posteriorly, the oral cavity communicates with the oropharynx (oral part of the pharynx). When the mouth is closed and at rest, the oral cavity is fully occupied by the tongue.

Lips, Cheeks, and Gingivae

LIPS AND CHEEKS

The **lips** are mobile, musculofibrous folds surrounding the mouth, extending from the nasolabial sulci and nares laterally, and superiorly to the mentolabial sulcus inferiorly (Fig. 8.79). They contain the orbicularis oris and superior and inferior labial muscles, vessels, and nerves (see Fig. 8.16). The lips are covered externally by skin and internally by mucous membrane. The lips function as the valves of the oral fissure, containing the sphincter (orbicularis oris) that controls entry and exit from the mouth and upper alimentary and respiratory tracts. The lips are used for grasping food, sucking liquids, keeping food out of the oral vestibule, forming speech, and osculation (kissing).

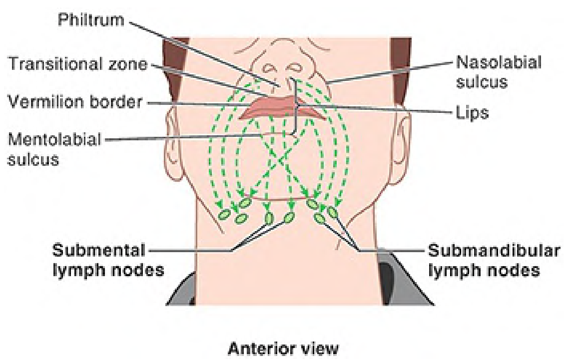


FIGURE 8.79. Lymphatic drainage of lips. Lymph from the upper lip and lateral parts of the lower lip drains to the submandibular nodes. Lymph from the middle part of the lower lip drains to the submental nodes.

The transitional zone of the lips (commonly considered by itself to be the lip), ranging from brown to red, continues into the oral cavity where it is continuous with the mucous membrane of the mouth (labial mucosa). This membrane covers the intra-oral, vestibular part of the lips (Fig. 8.80). The **labial frenula** (frena) are free-edged folds of mucous membrane in the midline, extending from the vestibular gingiva to the mucosa of the upper and lower lips. The frenula (frenum) extending to the upper lip is larger. Other smaller frenula sometimes appear laterally in the premolar vestibular regions.

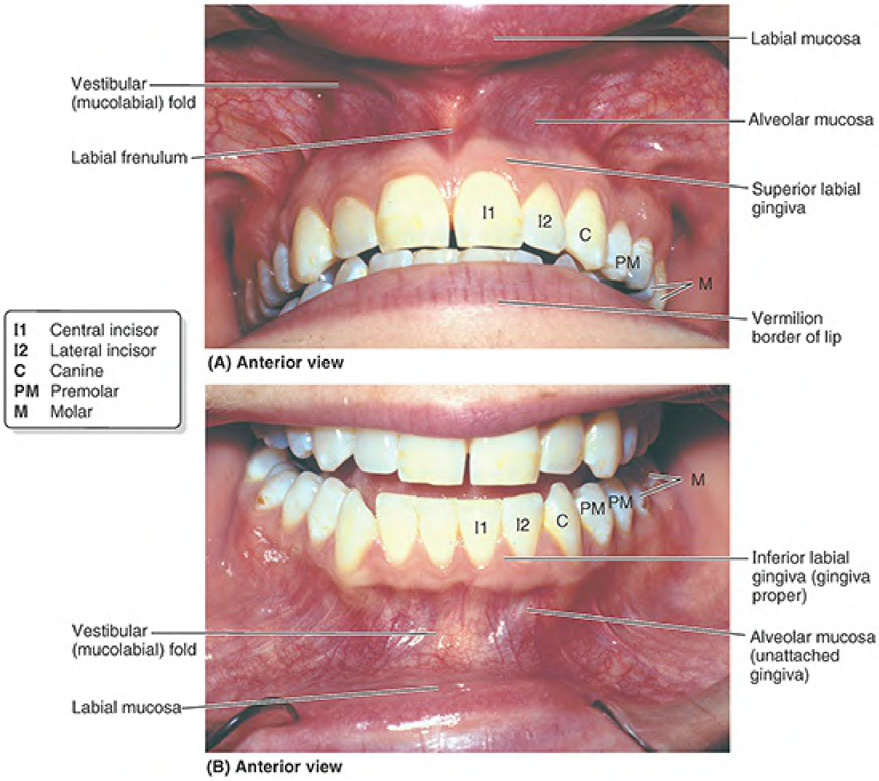


FIGURE 8.80. Oral vestibule and gingivae. A. Vestibule and gingivae of maxilla. **B.** Vestibule and gingivae of mandible. As the alveolar mucosa approaches the necks of the teeth, it changes in texture and color to become the gingiva proper.

The **superior** and **inferior labial arteries**, branches of the facial arteries, anastomose with each other in the lips to form an arterial ring (see Fig. 8.24; Table 8.5). The pulse of these arteries may be palpated by grasping the upper or lower lip lightly between the first two digits. The upper lip is supplied by superior labial branches of the facial and infra-orbital arteries. The lower lip is supplied by inferior labial branches of the facial and mental arteries.

The sensory innervation to the upper lip is supplied by the superior labial branches of the infra-orbital nerves (of CN V_2), and that to the lower lip is supplied by the inferior labial branches of the mental nerves (of CN V_3). Lymph from the upper lip and lateral parts of the lower lip passes primarily to the submandibular lymph nodes (Fig. 8.79), whereas lymph from the medial part of the lower lip passes initially to the submental lymph nodes.

The **cheeks** (L. buccae) have essentially the same structure as the lips with which they are continuous. The cheeks form the movable walls of the oral cavity. Anatomically, the external aspect of the cheeks constitutes the buccal region, bounded anteriorly by the oral and mental regions (lips and chin), superiorly by the zygomatic region, posteriorly by the parotid region, and inferiorly by the inferior border of the mandible (see Fig. 8.14). The prominence of the cheek occurs at the junction of the zygomatic and buccal regions. The zygomatic bone underlying the prominence and the zygomatic arch, which continues posteriorly, are commonly referred to as the "cheek bone" (see Fig. 8.3). Lay persons consider the zygomatic and parotid regions also to be part of the cheek.

The principal muscles of the cheeks are the buccinators (Fig. 8.78). Numerous small **buccal glands** lie between the mucous membrane and the buccinators (Fig. 8.76A). Superficial to the buccinators are encapsulated collections of fat. These buccal fat-pads are proportionately much larger in infants, presumably to reinforce the cheeks and keep them from collapsing during sucking. The cheeks are supplied by buccal branches of the maxillary artery and receive sensory innervated from buccal branches of the mandibular nerve. The facial nerve provides motor innervation to the buccinator.

GINGIVAE

The **gingivae** (gums) are composed of fibrous tissue covered with mucous membrane. The **gingiva proper** (attached gingiva) is firmly attached to the alveolar part of the mandible and alveolar process of the maxilla and the necks of the teeth (Figs. 8.78 and 8.80). The gingiva proper adjacent to the tongue is the superior and inferior lingual gingivae, and that adjacent to the lips and cheeks is the **maxillary** and **mandibular labial** or **buccal gingiva**, respectively. The gingiva proper is normally pink, stippled, and keratinized. The **alveolar mucosa** (unattached gingiva) is normally shiny red and nonkeratinizing. The nerves and vessels supplying the gingiva, underlying alveolar bone, and periodontium (which surrounds the root[s] of a tooth, anchoring it to the tooth socket), are presented in Figure 8.81A, C.

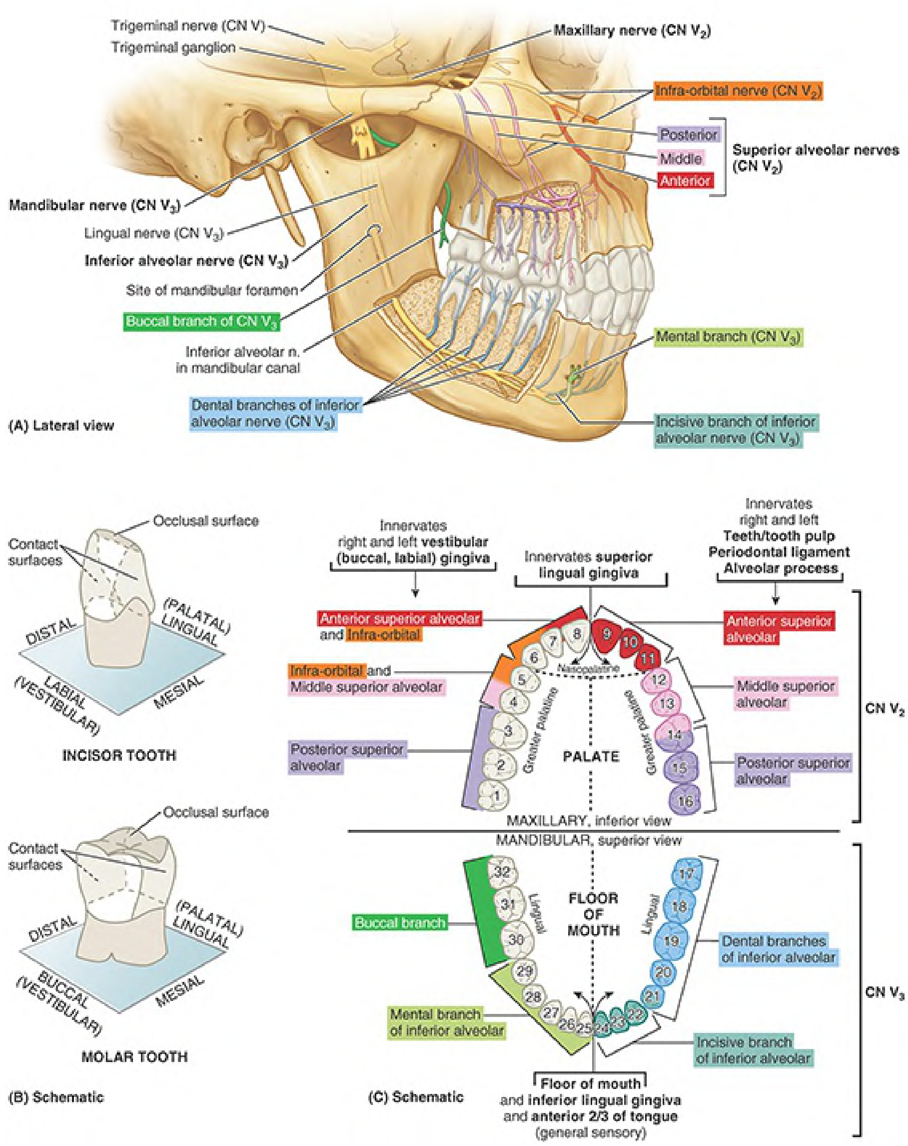


FIGURE 8.81. Innervation of teeth and gingiva. A. Superior and inferior alveolar nerves. **B.** Surfaces of an incisor and molar tooth. (Distal and mesial, as shown, apply to right mandibular or left maxillary teeth.) **C.** Innervation of the mouth and teeth.

Teeth

The chief functions of teeth are as follows:

- Incise (cut), reduce, and mix food material with saliva during mastication (chewing)
- Help sustain themselves in the tooth sockets by assisting the development and protection of the tissues that support them
- Participate in articulation (distinct connected speech)

The teeth are set in the tooth sockets and are used in mastication and in assisting in articulation. A tooth is identified and described as **deciduous** (primary) or **permanent** (secondary), the type of tooth, and its proximity to the midline or front of the mouth (e.g., medial

and lateral incisors; the 1st molar is anterior to the 2nd).

Children have 20 deciduous teeth; adults normally have 32 permanent teeth (Fig. 8.82A, C). The usual ages of the eruption (“cutting”) of these teeth are demonstrated in Figure 8.83 and listed in Tables 8.13A and B. Before eruption, the developing teeth reside in the alveolar arches as **tooth buds** (Fig. 8.82B).

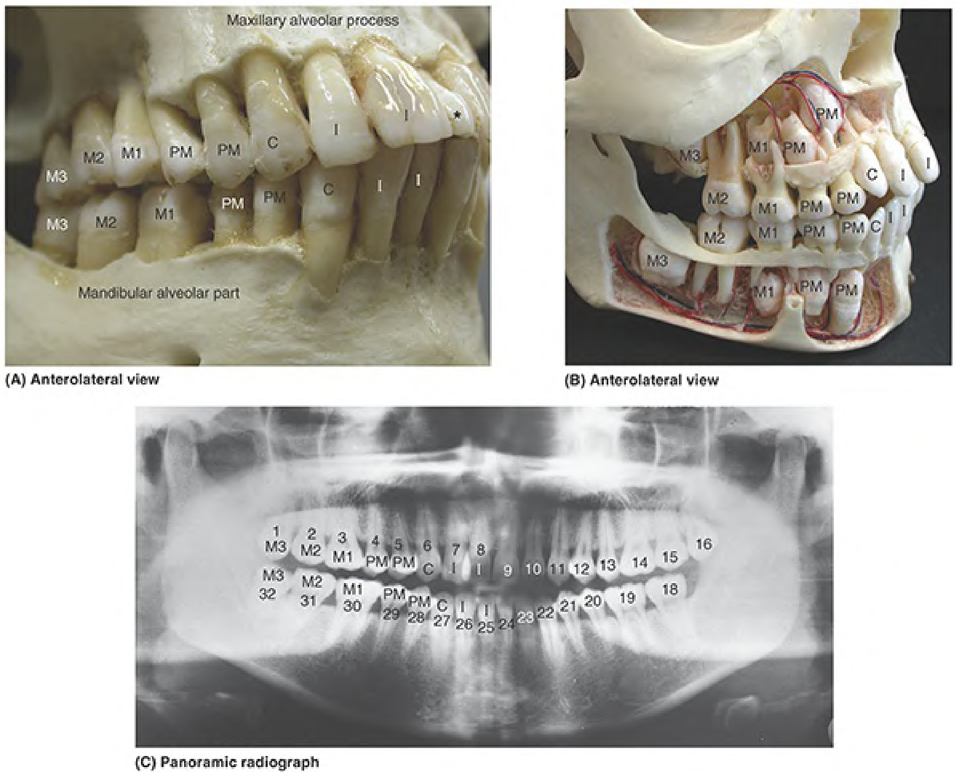


FIGURE 8.82. Secondary dentition. A. Teeth in occlusion. There is a supernumerary midline tooth (mesiodens) in this specimen (asterisk). **B.** Maxillary and mandibular jaws of a child acquiring secondary dentition. The alveolar process of the maxilla and alveolar part of the mandible are carved to reveal the roots of the teeth and tooth buds. **C.** Pantomographic radiograph of adult mandible and maxilla. The left lower 3rd molar is not present. I, incisor; C, canine; PM, premolar; M1, M2, and M3, 1st, 2nd, and 3rd molars.

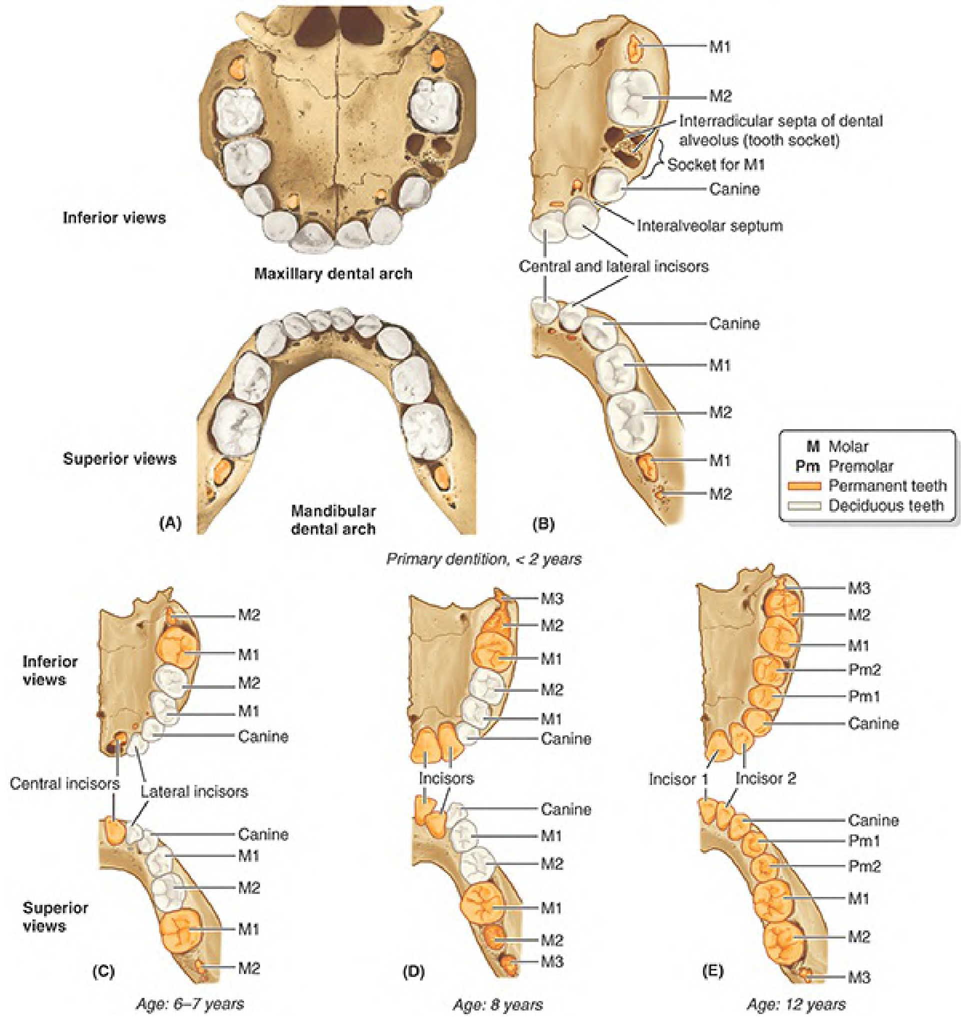


FIGURE 8.83. Primary dentition (deciduous teeth) and eruption of permanent teeth.

TABLE 8.13A. DECIDUOUS TEETH

Deciduous Teeth	Central Incisor	Lateral Incisor	Canine	1st Molar	2nd Molar
Eruption (months)[a]	6–8	8–10	16–20	12–16	20–24
Shedding (years)	6–7	7–8	10–12	9–11	10–12

[a]In some normal infants, the first teeth (medial incisors) may not erupt until 12–13 months of age.

TABLE 8.13B. PERMANENT TEETH

Permanent Teeth	Central Incisor	Lateral Incisor	Canine	1st Premolar	2nd Premolar	1st Molar	2nd Molar	3rd Molar
Eruption (years)	7–8	8–9	10–12	10–11	11–12	6–7	12	13–25

The types of teeth are identified by their characteristics: **incisors**, thin cutting edges; **canines**, single prominent cones; **premolars** (bicuspids), two cusps; and **molars**, three or more cusps (Fig. 8.82A, C). The **vestibular surface** (labial or buccal) of each tooth is directed outwardly,

and the **lingual surface** is directed inwardly (Fig. 8.81B). As used in clinical (dental) practice, the **mesial surface** of a tooth is directed toward the anterior median plane of the facial part of the cranium. The **distal surface** is directed away from this plane. Both mesial and distal surfaces are contact surfaces, that is, surfaces that contact adjacent teeth. The masticatory surface is the **occlusal surface**.

PARTS AND STRUCTURE OF TEETH

A tooth has a crown, neck, and root (Fig. 8.84). The **crown** projects from the gingiva. The **neck** is between the crown and root. The **root** is fixed in the tooth socket by the periodontium (connective tissue surrounding the roots). The number of roots varies. Most of the tooth is composed of **dentine** (L. dentinium), which is covered by **enamel** over the crown and cement (L. cementum) over the root. The **pulp cavity** contains connective tissue, blood vessels, and nerves. The **root canal** (pulp canal) transmits the nerves and vessels to and from the pulp cavity through the **apical foramen**.

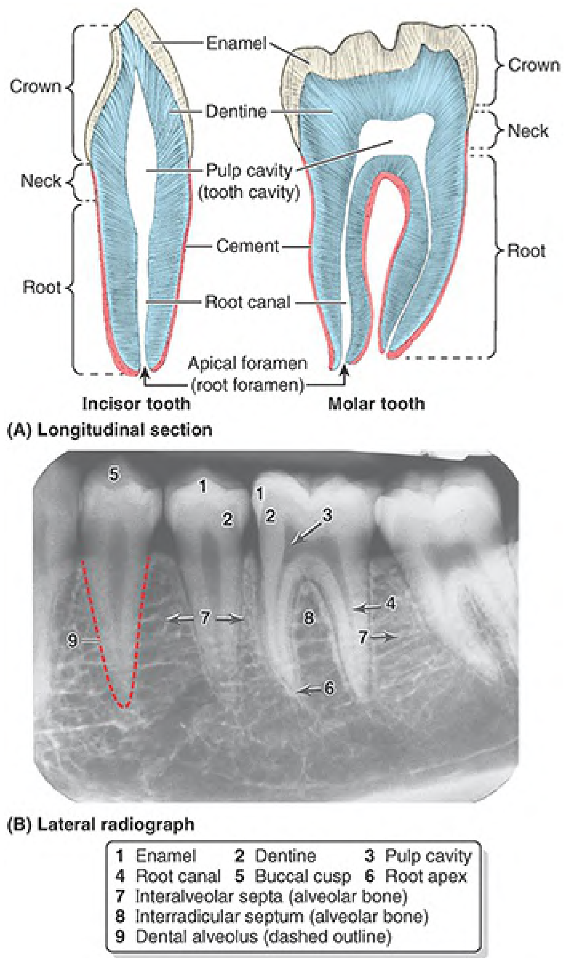


FIGURE 8.84. Sections of teeth. A. Incisor and molar tooth. In living people, the pulp cavity is a hollow space within the crown and neck of the tooth containing connective tissue, blood vessels, and nerves. The cavity narrows down to the root canal in a single-rooted tooth or to one canal per root of a multirooted tooth. The vessels and nerves enter or leave through the apical foramen. **B.** Bite-wing radiograph of maxillary premolar and molar teeth.

The **dental alveoli** (tooth sockets; Figs. 8.83B and 8.84B) are in the alveolar processes of the maxillae and the alveolar part of the mandible (Fig. 8.82A); they are the skeletal features that display the greatest change during a lifetime (Fig. 8.83B–E). Adjacent alveoli are separated by **interalveolar septa**. Within the alveolus, the roots of teeth with more than one root are separated by **interradicular septa** (Figs. 8.83B and 8.84B). The bone of the socket has a thin cortex separated from the adjacent labial and lingual cortices by a variable amount of trabeculated bone. The labial wall of the socket is particularly thin over the incisor teeth. The reverse is true for the molars, where the lingual wall is thinner. Therefore, the labial surface commonly is broken to extract incisors and the lingual surface is broken to extract molars.

The roots of the teeth are connected to the bone of the alveolus by a springy suspension forming a special type of fibrous joint called a **dento-alveolar syndesmosis** or **gomphosis**. The **periodontium** (periodontal membrane) is composed of collagenous fibers that extend between the cement of the root and the periosteum of the alveolus. It is abundantly supplied with tactile, pressoreceptive nerve endings, lymph capillaries, and glomerular blood vessels that act as hydraulic cushioning to curb axial masticatory pressure. Pressoreceptive nerve endings are capable of receiving changes in pressure as stimuli.

VASCULATURE OF TEETH

The **superior** and **inferior alveolar arteries**, branches of the maxillary artery, supply the maxillary and mandibular teeth, respectively (see Figs. 8.75 and 8.76A; Table 8.12). The **alveolar veins** have the same names and distribution accompany the arteries. **Lymphatic vessels** from the teeth and gingivae pass mainly to the submandibular lymph nodes (Fig. 8.79).

INNERVATION OF TEETH

The nerves supplying the teeth are illustrated in Figure 8.81A. The named branches of the superior (CN V_2) and inferior (CN V_3) alveolar nerves give rise to **dental plexuses** that supply the maxillary and mandibular teeth.

Palate

The **palate** forms the arched roof of the mouth and the floor of the nasal cavities (Fig. 8.85). It separates the oral cavity from the nasal cavities and the nasopharynx, the part of the pharynx superior to the soft palate. The superior (nasal) surface of the palate is covered with respiratory mucosa, and the inferior (oral) surface is covered with oral mucosa, densely packed with glands. The palate consists of two regions: the hard palate anteriorly and the soft palate posteriorly.

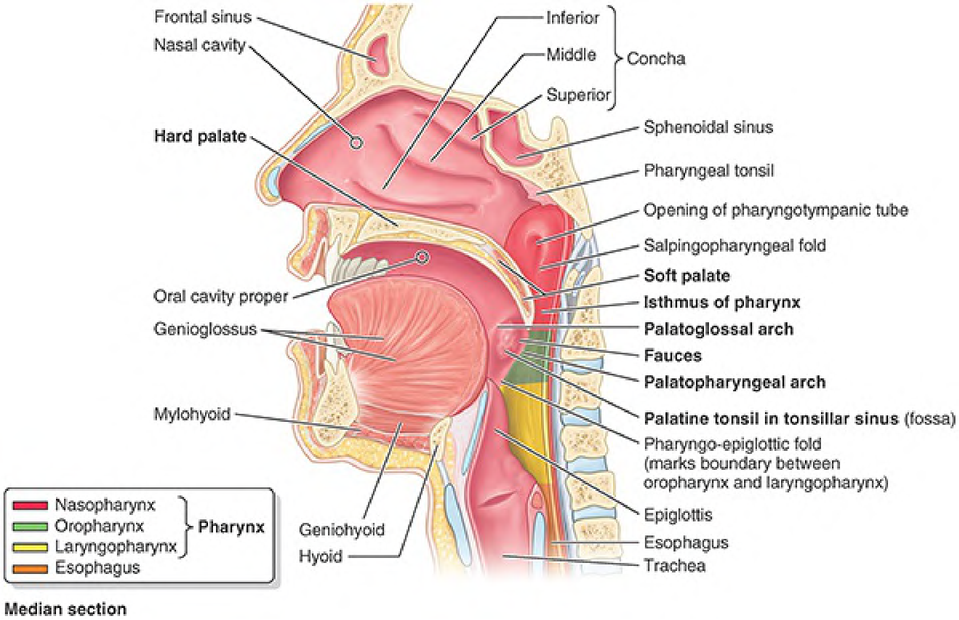


FIGURE 8.85. Parts of pharynx. The airway and food passageways cross in the pharynx. The soft palate acts as a valve, elevating to seal the pharyngeal isthmus connecting the nasal cavity and nasopharynx with the oral cavity and oropharynx.

HARD PALATE

The **hard palate** is vaulted (concave). This space is mostly filled by the tongue when it is at rest. The anterior two thirds of the palate have a bony skeleton formed by the palatine processes of the maxillae and the horizontal plates of the palatine bones (Fig. 8.86A). The **incisive fossa** is a depression in the midline of the bony palate posterior to the central incisor teeth into which the incisive canals open. The nasopalatine nerves pass from the nose through a variable number of incisive canals and foramina that open into the incisive fossa (see Fig. 8.89B).

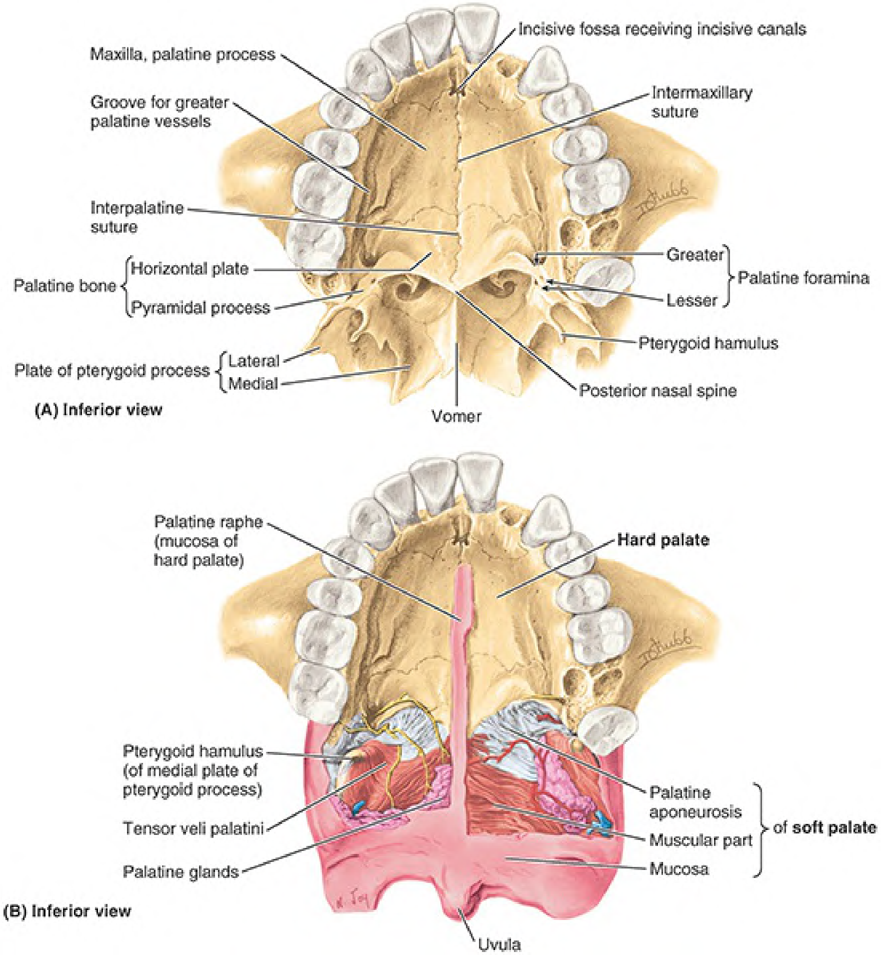


FIGURE 8.86. Hard palate and soft palate. A. Bones and features of hard palate. **B.** Soft palate. The mucosa has been removed on each side of the palatine raphe. The palatine aponeurosis is formed by the merging of the flattened tendons of the right and left tensor veli palatini muscles. Before they become flattened, each tendon uses the pterygoid hamulus as a trochlea or pulley, redirecting its line of pull approximately 90°.

Medial to the 3rd molar tooth, the greater palatine foramen pierces the lateral border of the bony palate (Fig. 8.86A). The greater palatine vessels and nerve emerge from this foramen and run anteriorly on the palate. The lesser palatine foramina posterior to the greater palatine foramen pierce the pyramidal process of the palatine bone. These foramina transmit the lesser palatine nerves and vessels to the soft palate and adjacent structures (see Fig. 8.89).

SOFT PALATE

The **soft palate** is the movable posterior third of the palate and is suspended from the posterior border of the hard palate (Figs. 8.85 and 8.86B). The soft palate has no bony skeleton; however, its anterior aponeurotic part is strengthened by the **palatine aponeurosis**, which attaches to the posterior edge of the hard palate. The aponeurosis is thick anteriorly and thin posteriorly, where it blends with a posterior muscular part of the soft palate. Postero-inferiorly, the soft palate has a curved free margin from which hangs a conical process, the **uvula**.

When swallowing, the soft palate is initially tensed to allow the tongue to press against it,

squeezing the bolus (masticated mass) of food to the back of the mouth. The soft palate is then elevated posteriorly and superiorly against the wall of the pharynx, thereby preventing passage of food into the nasal cavity.

Laterally, the soft palate is continuous with the wall of the pharynx and is joined to the tongue and pharynx by the **palatoglossal** and **palatopharyngeal arches**, respectively (Fig. 8.85). A few taste buds are located in the epithelium covering the oral surface of the soft palate, the posterior wall of the oropharynx, and the epiglottis.

The **fauces** (L., throat) is the space between the oral cavity and the pharynx. The fauces is bounded superiorly by the soft palate, inferiorly by the root of the tongue, and laterally by the **pillars of the fauces**, the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches. The **isthmus of the fauces** is the short, constricted space that establishes the connection between the oral cavity proper and oropharynx. The isthmus is bounded anteriorly by the palatoglossal folds and posteriorly by the palatopharyngeal folds. The **palatine tonsils**, often referred to as "the tonsils," are masses of lymphoid tissue, one on each side of the oropharynx. Each tonsil is in a **tonsillar sinus (fossa)**, bounded by the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches and the tongue.

SUPERFICIAL FEATURES OF PALATE

The mucosa of the hard palate is tightly bound to the underlying bone (Fig. 8.87A). Consequently, submucous injections here are extremely painful. The superior lingual gingiva, the part of the gingiva covering the lingual surface of the teeth and the alveolar process, is continuous with the mucosa of the palate. Therefore, injection of an anesthetic agent into the gingiva of a tooth anesthetizes the adjacent palatal mucosa.

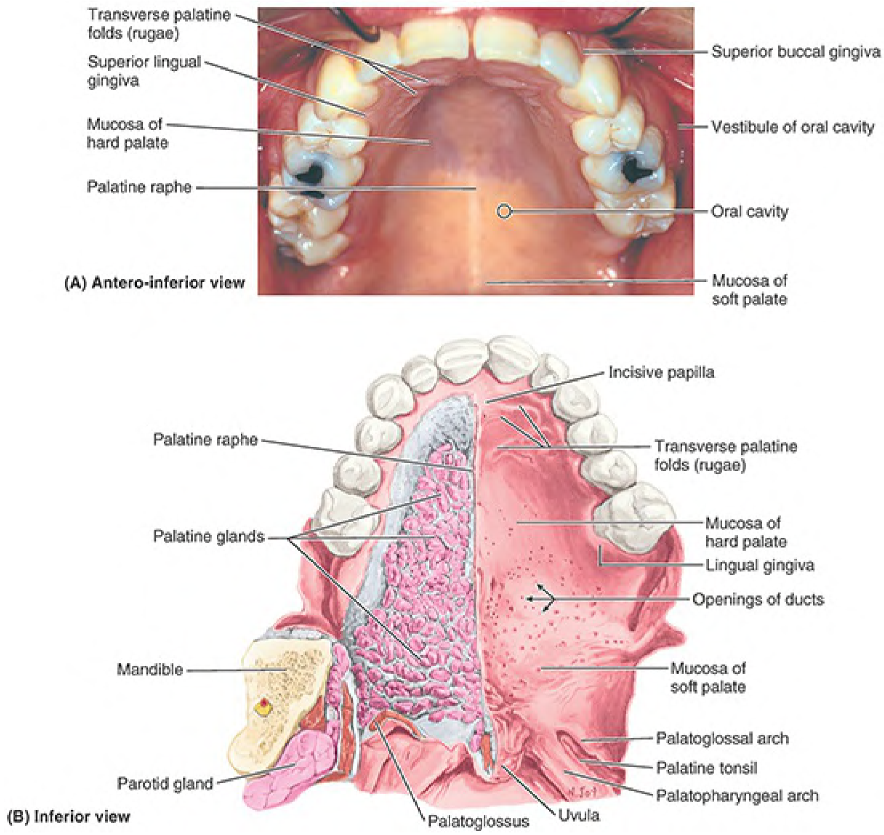


FIGURE 8.87. Maxillary teeth and palate. A. Surface anatomy. The maxillary teeth and the mucosa covering the hard palate in a living person are shown. **B.** Mucous membrane and glands of palate. The orifices of the ducts of the palatine glands give the mucous membrane an orange-skin appearance. The palatine glands form a thick layer in the soft palate and a thin one in the hard palate; they are absent in the region of the incisive fossa and the anterior part of the palatine raphe.

Deep to the mucosa of the palate are mucus-secreting **palatine glands** (Fig. 8.87B). The openings of the ducts of these glands give the palatine mucosa a pitted (orange-peel) appearance. In the midline, posterior to the maxillary incisor teeth, is the **incisive papilla**. This elevation of the mucosa lies directly anterior to the underlying incisive fossa (Fig. 8.86A).

Radiating laterally from the incisive papilla are several parallel **transverse palatine folds** or rugae (Fig. 8.87A, B). These folds assist with manipulation of food during mastication. Passing posteriorly in the midline of the palate from the incisive papilla is a narrow whitish streak, the **palatine raphe**. It may present as a ridge anteriorly and a groove posteriorly. The palatine raphe marks the site of fusion of the embryonic palatal processes (palatal shelves) (Moore et al., 2020). You can feel the transverse palatine folds and the palatine raphe with your tongue.

MUSCLES OF SOFT PALATE

The soft palate may be elevated so that it is in contact with the posterior wall of the pharynx. This closes the isthmus of the pharynx, requiring that one breathes through the mouth. The soft palate may also be drawn inferiorly so that it is in contact with the posterior part of the tongue. This closes the isthmus of the fauces so that expired air passes through the nose (even when the mouth is open) and prevents substances in the oral cavity from passing to the pharynx. Tensing

the soft palate pulls it tight at an intermediate level so that the tongue may push against it, compressing masticated food and propelling it into the pharynx for swallowing.

Two pairs of muscles of the soft palate arise from the base of the cranium and descend to the palate. The muscles of the soft palate are illustrated in Figure 8.86 and their attachments, nerve supply, and actions are described in Table 8.14. Note that the direction of pull of the belly of the tensor veli palatini is redirected approximately 90° because its tendon uses the pterygoid hamulus as a pulley or trochlea, allowing it to pull horizontally on the aponeurosis (Figs. 8.86B and 8.88).

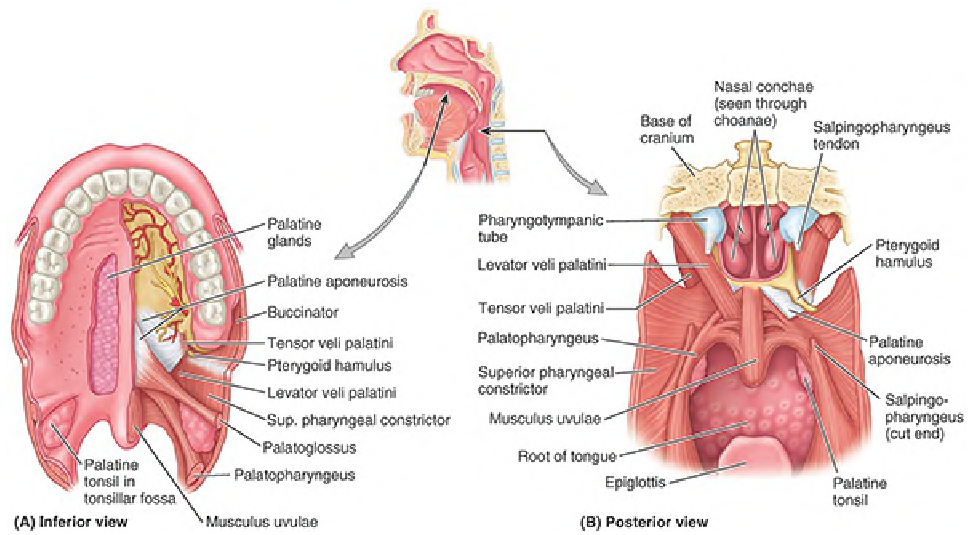


FIGURE 8.88. Muscles of soft palate.

TABLE 8.14. MUSCLES OF SOFT PALATE

Muscle	Superior Attachment	Inferior Attachment	Innervation	Main Action
Tensor veli palatini	Scaphoid fossa of medial pterygoid plate, spine of sphenoid bone, and cartilage of pharyngotympanic tube	Palatine aponeurosis	Medial pterygoid nerve (a branch of mandibular nerve, CN V_3) via otic ganglion	Tenses soft palate and opens mouth of pharyngotympanic tube during swallowing and yawning
Levator veli palatini	Cartilage of pharyngotympanic tube and petrous part of temporal bone		Pharyngeal branch of vagus nerve (CN X) via pharyngeal plexus	Elevates soft palate during swallowing and yawning
Palatoglossus	Palatine aponeurosis	Side of tongue		Elevates posterior part of tongue and draws soft palate onto tongue
Palatopharyngeus	Hard palate and palatine aponeurosis	Lateral wall of pharynx		Tenses soft palate and pulls walls of pharynx superiorly, anteriorly, and medially during swallowing
Musculus uvulae	Posterior nasal spine and	Mucosa of uvula		Shortens uvula and pulls

	palatine aponeurosis			it superiorly

VASCULATURE AND INNERVATION OF PALATE

The palate has a rich blood supply, chiefly from the **greater palatine artery** on each side, a branch of the descending palatine artery (Fig. 8.89). The greater palatine artery passes through the greater palatine foramen and runs anteromedially. The **lesser palatine artery**, a smaller branch of the descending palatine artery, enters the palate through the lesser palatine foramen and anastomoses with the **ascending palatine artery**, a branch of the facial artery (Fig. 8.89B). The **veins of the palate** are tributaries of the pterygoid venous plexus.

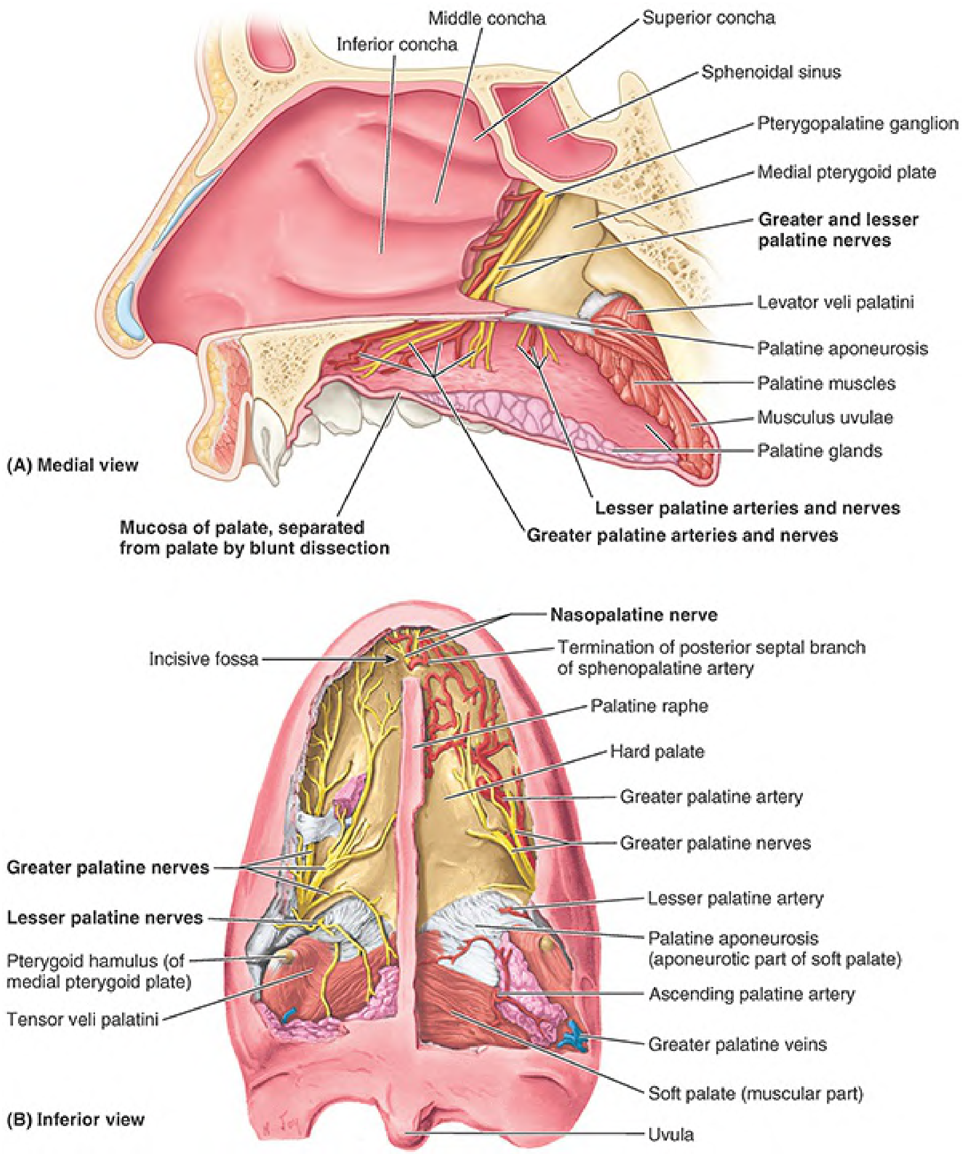


FIGURE 8.89. Nerves and vessels of palate. A. Posterior part of lateral wall of nasal cavity and palate. Note the mucous membrane of the palate, containing a layer of mucous glands, has been separated from the hard and soft regions of the palate by blunt dissection. The posterior ends of the middle and inferior nasal conchae are cut through; these and the mucoperiosteum are pulled off the side wall of the nose as far as the posterior border of the medial pterygoid plate. The perpendicular plate of the palatine bone is broken through to expose the palatine nerves and arteries descending from the

pterygopalatine fossa in the palatine canal. **B.** Nerves and vessels of edentulous palate. The mucosa has been removed on each side of the palatine raphe, demonstrating a branch of the greater palatine nerve on each side and the artery on the lateral side. There are four palatine arteries, two on the hard palate (greater palatine and the terminal branch of posterior nasal septal/sphenopalatine artery) and two on the soft palate (lesser palatine and ascending palatine).

The sensory nerves of the palate are branches of the maxillary nerve (CN V_2), which branch from the pterygopalatine ganglion (Fig. 8.89A). The **greater palatine nerve** supplies the gingivae, mucous membrane, and glands of most of the hard palate. The **nasopalatine nerve** supplies the mucous membrane of the anterior part of the hard palate (Fig. 8.89B). The **lesser palatine nerves** supply the soft palate. The palatine nerves accompany the arteries through the greater and lesser palatine foramina, respectively. Except for the tensor veli palatini supplied by CN V_3, all muscles of the soft palate are supplied through the pharyngeal plexus of nerves (see Chapter 9, Neck).

Tongue

The **tongue** (L. lingua; G. glossa) is a mobile muscular organ covered with mucous membrane. It can assume a variety of shapes and positions. It is partly in the oral cavity and partly in the oropharynx. The tongue's main functions are articulation (forming words during speaking) and squeezing food into the oropharynx as part of deglutition (swallowing). The tongue is also involved with mastication (chewing), taste, and oral cleansing.

PARTS AND SURFACES OF TONGUE

The tongue has a root, body, and apex (Fig. 8.90A). The **root of the tongue** is the attached posterior portion, extending between the mandible, hyoid, and the nearly vertical posterior surface of the tongue. The **body of the tongue** is the anterior, approximately two thirds of the tongue between root and apex. The **apex** (tip) of the tongue is the anterior end of the body, which rests against the incisor teeth. The body and apex of the tongue are extremely mobile.

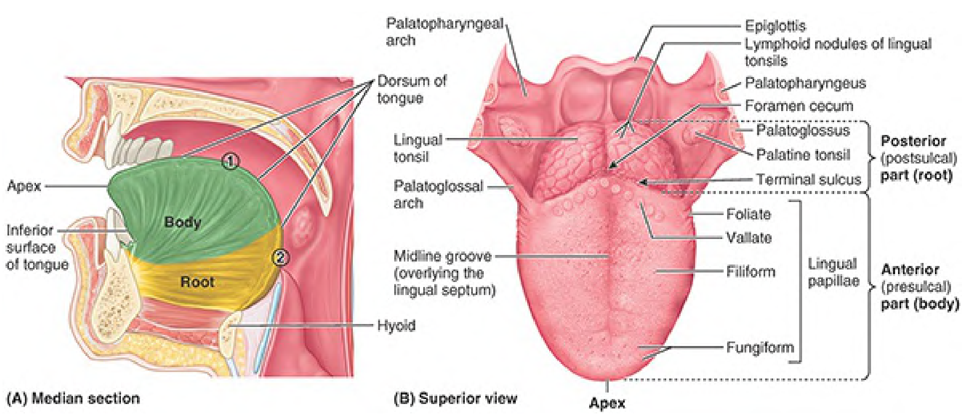


FIGURE 8.90. Parts and features of tongue. A. Parts of tongue. The anterior free part constituting the majority of the mass of the tongue is the body of the tongue. The superior surface of the body in the oral cavity (1) is the dorsum. The posterior attached portion with an oropharyngeal surface (2) is the root of the tongue. **B.** Features of dorsum of tongue. The anterior (two thirds) and posterior (third) parts of the dorsum of the tongue are separated by the terminal sulcus (groove) and foramen cecum. Brackets, indicate parts of the dorsum of the tongue and do not embrace specific labels.

The tongue features two surfaces. The more extensive, superior and posterior surface is the dorsum of the tongue (“top” of the tongue). The inferior surface of the tongue (commonly referred to as its “underside”) usually rests against the floor of the mouth. The margin of the tongue separating the two surfaces is related on each side to the lingual gingivae and lateral teeth (see Fig. 8.92C). The **dorsum of the tongue** is characterized by a V-shaped groove, the **terminal sulcus of the tongue**, the angle of which points posteriorly to the foramen cecum (Fig. 8.90B). This small pit, frequently absent, is the nonfunctional remnant of the proximal part of the embryonic thyroglossal duct from which the thyroid gland developed. The terminal sulcus divides the dorsum of the tongue transversely into a presulcal **anterior part** in the oral cavity proper and a postsulcal **posterior part** in the oropharynx.

A midline groove divides the anterior part of the tongue into right and left parts. The mucosa of the anterior part of the tongue is relatively thin and closely attached to the underlying muscle. It has a rough texture because of numerous small **lingual papillae**:

- **Vallate papillae**: large and flat topped, lie directly anterior to the terminal sulcus and are arranged in a V-shaped row. They are surrounded by deep circular trenches, the walls of which are studded with taste buds. The ducts of the serous glands of the tongue open into the trenches.
- **Foliate papillae**: small lateral folds of the lingual mucosa. They are poorly developed in humans.
- **Filiform papillae**: long and numerous, contain afferent nerve endings that are sensitive to touch. These scaly, conical projections are pinkish gray and are arranged in V-shaped rows that are parallel to the terminal sulcus, except at the apex, where they tend to be arranged transversely.
- **Fungiform papillae**: mushroom-shaped pink or red spots scattered among the filiform papillae but most numerous at the apex and margins of the tongue

The vallate, foliate, and most of the fungiform papillae contain taste receptors in the taste buds.

The mucosa of the posterior part of the tongue is thick and freely movable. It has no lingual papillae, but the underlying **lymphoid nodules** give this part of the tongue an irregular, cobblestone appearance. The lymphoid nodules are known collectively as the **lingual tonsil**. The pharyngeal part of the tongue constitutes the anterior wall of the oropharynx. It can be inspected only with a mirror or downward pressure on the tongue with a tongue depressor.

The **inferior surface of the tongue** is covered with a thin, transparent mucous membrane (Fig. 8.91). This surface is connected to the floor of the mouth by a midline fold called the **frenulum of the tongue**. The frenulum allows the anterior part of the tongue to move freely. On each side of the frenulum, a deep lingual vein is visible through the thin mucous membrane. A **sublingual caruncle** (papilla) is present on each side of the base of the frenulum of the tongue that includes the opening of the submandibular duct from the submandibular salivary gland.

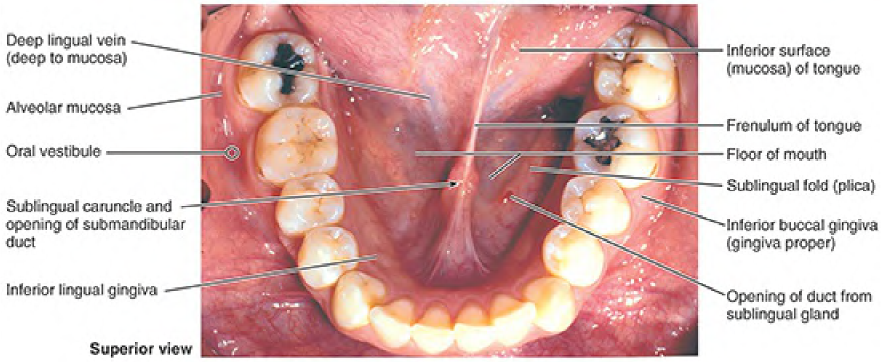


FIGURE 8.91. **Floor of mouth and oral vestibule.** The tongue is elevated and retracted superiorly.

MUSCLES OF TONGUE

The tongue is essentially a mass of muscles that is mostly covered by mucosa (mucous membrane) (Fig. 8.92; Table 8.15). As with the orbital muscles, it is traditional to provide descriptions of the actions of tongue muscles (1) ascribing a single action to a specific muscle or (2) implying that a particular movement is the consequence of a single muscle acting. This approach facilitates learning but greatly oversimplifies the actions of the tongue. The muscles of the tongue do not act in isolation, and some muscles perform multiple actions. Parts of a single muscle are capable of acting independently, producing different, even antagonistic actions. In general, extrinsic muscles alter the position of the tongue, and intrinsic muscles alter its shape. The four intrinsic and four extrinsic muscles in each half of the tongue are separated by a median fibrous **lingual septum** (Fig. 8.92C), which merges posteriorly with the lingual aponeurosis (a tough sheet of connective tissue, the lamina propria, deep to the dorsal mucous membrane of the tongue, into which lingual muscles insert) (Fig. 8.92B).

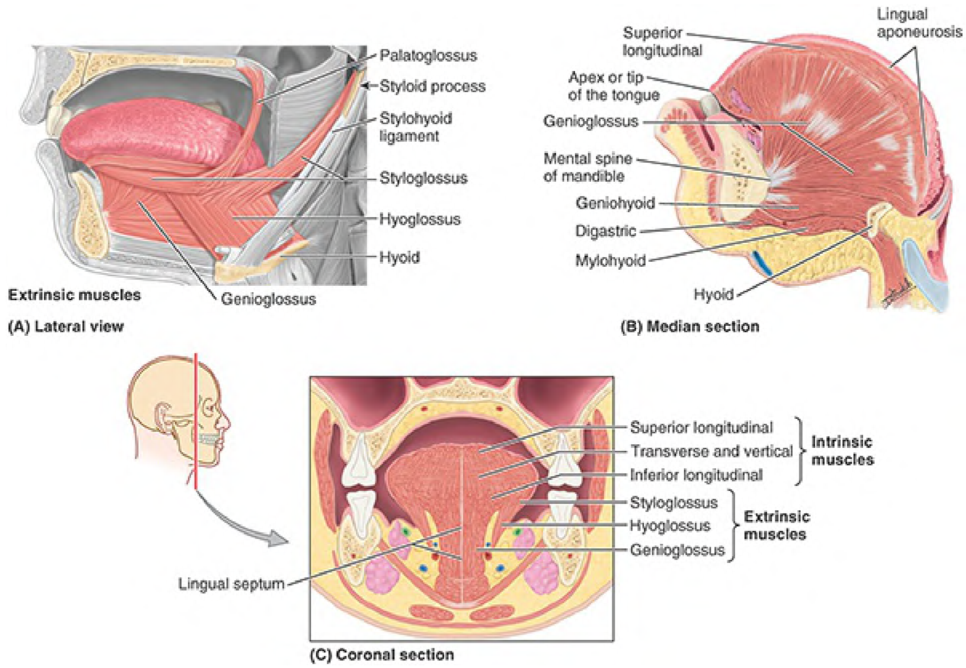


FIGURE 8.92. **Muscles of tongue.**

TABLE 8.15. MUSCLES OF TONGUE

Muscle	Shape and Position	Proximal Attachment	Distal Attachment	Main Action(s)
Extrinsic muscles of tongue[a]				
Genioglossus	Fan-shaped muscle; constitutes bulk of tongue	Via a short tendon from superior part of mental spine of mandible	Entire dorsum of tongue; inferiormost and posteriormost fibers attach to body of hyoid bone.	Bilateral activity depresses tongue, especially central part, creating a longitudinal furrow; posterior part pulls tongue anteriorly for protrusion; most anterior part retracts apex of protruded tongue; unilateral contraction deviates tongue to contralateral side.
Hyoglossus	Thin, quadrilateral muscle	Body and greater horn of hyoid bone	Inferior aspects of lateral part of tongue	Depresses tongue, especially pulling its sides inferiorly; helps shorten (retrude) tongue
Styloglossus	Small, short triangular muscle	Anterior border of distal styloid process; stylohyoid ligament	Sides of tongue posteriorly, interdigitating with hyoglossus	Retrudes tongue and curls (elevates) its sides, working with genioglossus to form a central trough during swallowing
Palatoglossus[b]	Narrow crescent-shaped palatine muscle; forms posterior column of isthmus of fauces	Palatine aponeurosis of soft palate	Enters posterolateral tongue transversely, blending with intrinsic transverse muscles	Capable of elevating posterior tongue or depressing soft palate; most commonly acts to constrict isthmus of fauces
Intrinsic muscles of tongue[a]				

Superior longitudinal	Thin layer deep to mucous membrane of dorsum	Submucosal fibrous layer and median fibrous septum	Margins of tongue and mucous membrane	Curls tongue longitudinally upward, elevating apex and sides of tongue; shortens (retrudes) tongue
Inferior longitudinal	Narrow band close to inferior surface	Root of tongue and body of hyoid bone	Apex of tongue	Curls tongue longitudinally downward, depressing apex; shortens (retrudes) tongue
Transverse	Deep to superior longitudinal muscle	Median fibrous septum	Fibrous tissue at lateral lingual margins	Narrows and elongates (protrudes) tongue[c]
Vertical	Fibers intersect transverse muscle	Submucosal fibrous layer of dorsum of tongue	Inferior surface of borders of tongue	Flattens and broadens tongue[c]

[a]Except for palatoglossus, the muscles of the tongue are innervated by the hypoglossal nerve (CN XII).

[b]A palatine muscle, the palatoglossus is innervated by the vagus nerve (CN X).

[c]Act simultaneously to protrude tongue.

Extrinsic Muscles of Tongue. The **extrinsic muscles of the tongue** (genioglossus, hyoglossus, styloglossus, and palatoglossus) originate outside the tongue and attach to it. They mainly move the tongue but they can alter its shape as well. They are illustrated in Figure 8.92, and their shape, position, attachments, and main actions are described in Table 8.15.

Intrinsic Muscles of Tongue. The superior and inferior longitudinal, transverse, and vertical muscles are confined to the tongue. They have their attachments entirely within the tongue and are not attached to bone. They are illustrated in Figure 8.92, and their shape, position, attachments, and main actions are described in Table 8.15. The **superior** and **inferior longitudinal muscles** act together to make the tongue short and thick and to retract the protruded tongue. The **transverse** and **vertical muscles** act simultaneously to make the tongue long and narrow, which may push the tongue against the incisor teeth or protrude the tongue from the open mouth (especially when acting with the posterior inferior part of the genioglossus).

INNERVATION OF TONGUE

All muscles of the tongue, except the palatoglossus, receive motor innervation from CN XII, the **hypoglossal nerve** (Fig. 8.93). Palatoglossus is a palatine muscle supplied by the pharyngeal plexus (see Fig. 9.47A in Chapter 9, Neck). For general sensation (touch and temperature), the mucosa of the anterior two thirds of the tongue is supplied by the lingual nerve, a branch of CN V_3 (Fig. 8.93; see Figs 8.97 and 8.98). For special sensation (taste), this part of the tongue, except for the vallate papillae, is supplied the chorda tympani nerve, a branch of CN VII. The chorda tympani joins the lingual nerve in the infratemporal fossa and runs anteriorly in its sheath. The mucosa of the posterior third of the tongue and the vallate papillae are supplied by the lingual branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) for both general and special sensation (Fig. 8.93). Twigs of the **internal laryngeal nerve**, a branch of the vagus nerve (CN X), supply mostly general but some special sensation to a small area of the tongue just anterior to the epiglottis. These mostly sensory nerves also carry **parasympathetic secretomotor fibers** to

serous glands in the tongue.

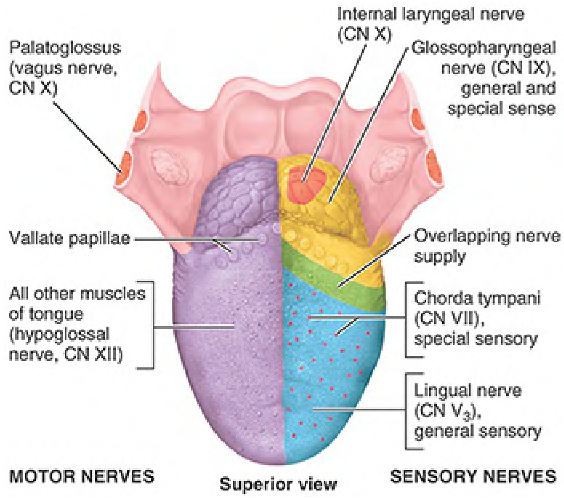


FIGURE 8.93. **Nerve supply of tongue.**

Traditionally, four basic taste sensations are described: sweet, salty, sour, and bitter. A fifth basic taste (umami—stimulated by monosodium glutamate) has more recently been identified. Certain areas of the tongue have been described as being most sensitive to the different tastes, but evidence indicates all areas are capable of detecting all tastes. Other "tastes" expressed by gourmets are influenced by olfactory sensation (smell and aroma).

VASCULATURE OF TONGUE

The arteries of the tongue are derived from the **lingual artery**, which arises from the external carotid artery (Fig. 8.94). On entering the tongue, the lingual artery passes deep to the hyoglossus muscle. The **dorsal lingual arteries** supply the root of the tongue; the **deep lingual arteries** supply the body of the tongue. The deep lingual arteries communicate with each other near the apex of the tongue. The dorsal lingual arteries are prevented from communicating by the lingual septum (Fig. 8.92C).

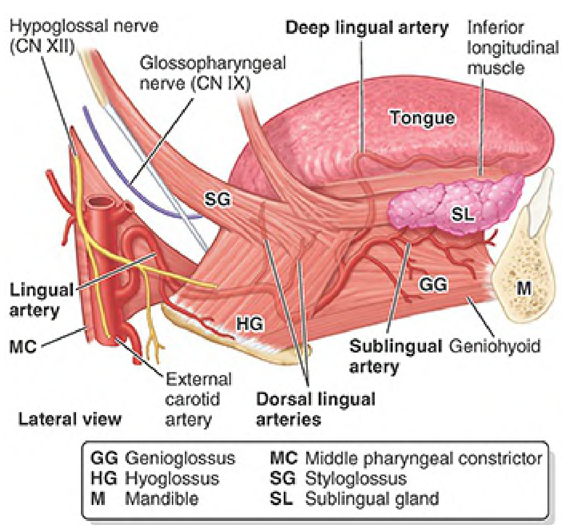


FIGURE 8.94. **Blood supply of tongue.** The main artery to the tongue is the lingual artery, a branch of the external carotid artery. The dorsal lingual arteries provide the blood supply to the root of the tongue and a branch to the palatine tonsil. The deep lingual arteries supply the body of the tongue. The sublingual arteries provide the blood supply to the floor of the mouth, including the sublingual glands.

The veins of the tongue are the **dorsal lingual veins**, which accompany the lingual artery. The **deep lingual veins**, which begin at the apex of the tongue, run posteriorly beside the lingual frenulum to join the **sublingual vein** (Fig. 8.95). The sublingual veins in elderly people are often varicose (enlarged and tortuous). Some or all of the veins may drain into the IJV, or they may do so indirectly, joining first to form a **lingual vein** that accompanies the initial part of the lingual artery.

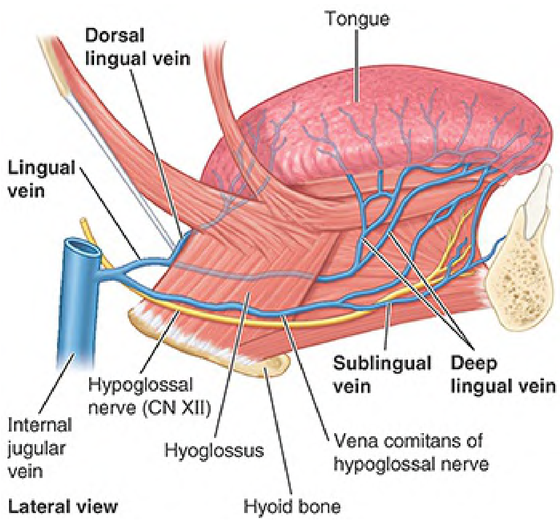


FIGURE 8.95. **Venous drainage of tongue.**

The **lymphatic drainage of the tongue** is exceptional. Most of the lymphatic drainage converges toward and follows the venous drainage; however, lymph from the tip of the tongue, frenulum, and central lower lip runs an independent course (Fig. 8.96). Lymph from different areas of the tongue drains via four routes:

1. Lymph from the root of the tongue drains bilaterally into the **superior deep cervical lymph nodes**.
2. Lymph from the medial part of the body drains bilaterally and directly to the **inferior deep cervical lymph nodes**.
3. Lymph from the right and left lateral parts of body drains to the submandibular **lymph nodes on the ipsilateral side**.
4. The apex and frenulum drain to the **submental lymph nodes**, the medial portion draining bilaterally.

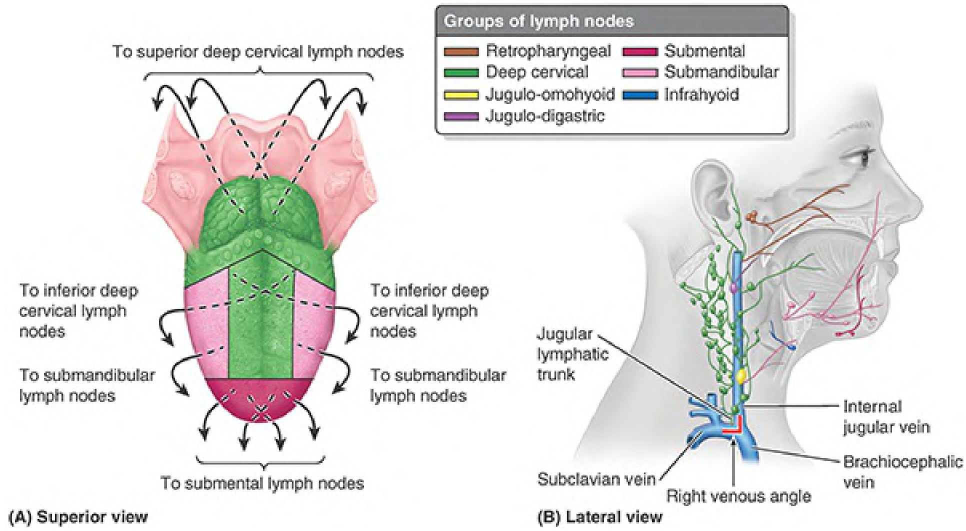


FIGURE 8.96. Lymphatic drainage of tongue. A. Dorsum of tongue. **B.** Overview. Lymph drains to the submental, submandibular, and superior and inferior deep cervical lymph nodes, including the jugulodigastric and jugulo-omohyoid nodes. Extensive communications occur across the midline of the tongue.

All lymph from the tongue ultimately drains to the deep cervical nodes and passes via the jugular venous trunks into the venous system at the right and left venous angles.

Salivary Glands

The **salivary glands** are the parotid, submandibular, and sublingual glands (Fig. 8.97). The clear, tasteless, odorless viscid fluid, **saliva**, secreted by these glands and the mucous glands of the oral cavity

- keeps the mucous membrane of the mouth moist
- lubricates the food during mastication
- begins the digestion of starches
- serves as an intrinsic "mouthwash"
- plays significant roles in the prevention of tooth decay and in the ability to taste

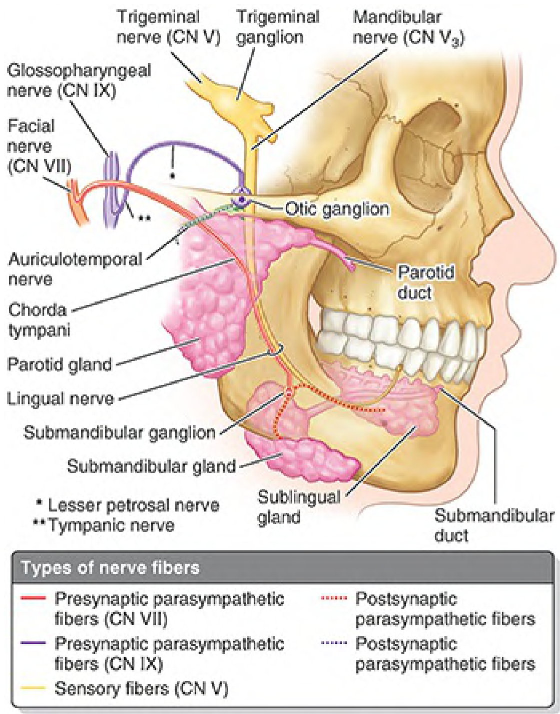


FIGURE 8.97. Innervation of salivary glands.

In addition to the main salivary glands, small **accessory salivary glands** are scattered over the palate, lips, cheeks, tonsils, and tongue. The parotid glands, the largest of the three paired salivary glands, were discussed earlier in this chapter. The parotid glands are located lateral and posterior to the rami of the mandible and masseter muscles, within unyielding fibrous sheaths. The parotid glands drain anteriorly via single ducts that enter the oral vestibule opposite the second maxillary molar teeth (see Fig. 8.67).

SUBMANDIBULAR GLANDS

The **submandibular glands** lie along the body of the mandible, partly superior and partly inferior to the posterior half of the mandible, and partly superficial and partly deep to the mylohyoid muscle (Fig. 8.98). The **submandibular duct**, approximately 5 cm long, arises from the portion of the gland that lies between the mylohyoid and hyoglossus muscles. Passing from lateral to medial, the lingual nerve loops under the duct that runs anteriorly, opening by one to three orifices on a small sublingual papilla beside the base of the frenulum of the tongue (Fig. 8.98B). The orifices of the submandibular ducts are visible, and saliva can often be seen trickling from them (or spraying from them during yawning). The **arterial supply of the submandibular glands** is from the **submental arteries** (Fig. 8.94). The **veins** accompany the arteries. The **lymphatic vessels** of the glands end in the deep cervical lymph nodes, particularly the jugulo-omohyoid node (Fig. 8.96B).

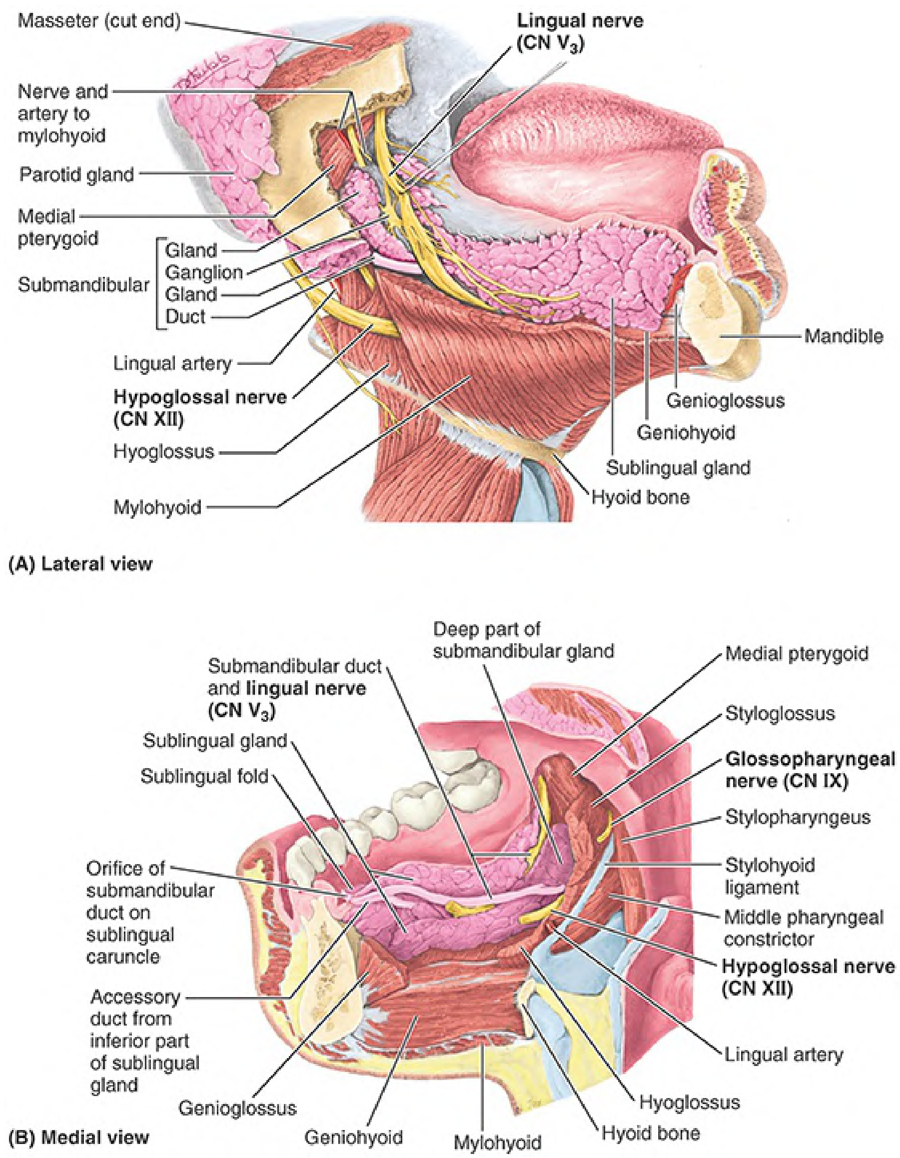


FIGURE 8.98. Salivary glands. A. Parotid, submandibular, and sublingual glands. The body and parts of the ramus of the mandible have been removed. The parotid gland contacts the deep part of the submandibular gland posteriorly. Fine ducts passing from the superior border of the sublingual gland open on the sublingual fold. **B.** Sublingual and submandibular glands and floor of mouth. The tongue has been excised. The orifice of the duct of the submandibular gland is visible at the anterior end of the sublingual fold. The submandibular duct adheres to the medial side of the sublingual gland. Here it is receiving, as it sometimes does, a large accessory duct from the inferior part of the sublingual gland. The sublingual carunculae are bilateral papillae flanking the frenulum of the tongue, each bearing the opening of the ipsilateral submandibular duct.

The submandibular glands are supplied by presynaptic parasympathetic secretomotor fibers conveyed from the facial nerve to the lingual nerve by the chorda tympani nerve, which synapse with postsynaptic neurons in the submandibular ganglion (Fig. 8.97). The latter fibers accompany arteries to reach the gland, along with vasoconstrictive postsynaptic sympathetic fibers from the superior cervical ganglion.

SUBLINGUAL GLANDS

The **sublingual glands** are the smallest and most deeply situated of the salivary glands (Fig. 8.98). Each almond-shaped gland lies in the floor of the mouth between the mandible and the genioglossus muscle. The glands from each side unite to form a horseshoe-shaped mass around the connective tissue core of the frenulum of the tongue. Numerous small **sublingual ducts** open into the floor of the mouth along the sublingual folds. The **arterial supply of the sublingual glands** is from the sublingual and submental arteries, branches of the lingual and facial arteries, respectively (Fig. 8.94). The **nerves of the glands** accompany those of the submandibular gland. Presynaptic parasympathetic secretomotor fibers are conveyed by the facial, chorda tympani, and lingual nerves to synapse in the submandibular ganglion (Fig. 8.97).

CLINICAL BOX

ORAL REGION

Cleft Lip

Cleft lip (harelip, a misnomer) is a birth defect (usually of the upper lip) that occurs in 1 of 1,000 births; 60–80% of affected infants are males. The clefts vary from a small notch in the transitional zone of the lip and vermilion border to a notch that extends through the lip into the nose (Fig. B8.33). In severe cases, the cleft extends deeper and is continuous with a cleft in the palate. Cleft lip may be unilateral or bilateral (Moore et al., 2020).

Anterior view

FIGURE B8.33. Unilateral cleft lip.

Cyanosis of Lips

The lips, like fingers, have an abundant, relatively superficial arterial blood flow. Because

of this, they can lose a disproportionate amount of body heat when exposed to a cold environment. Both lips are provided with sympathetically innervated arteriovenous anastomoses, capable of redirecting a considerable portion of the blood back to the body core, reducing heat loss while producing cyanosis of the lips and fingers. Cyanosis, a dark bluish or purplish coloration of the lips and mucous membranes, results from deficient oxygenation of capillary blood and is a sign of many pathologic conditions. The common blue discoloration of the lips owing to cold exposure does not indicate pathology. Instead, it results from the decreased blood flow in the capillary beds supplied by the superior and inferior labial arteries and the increased extraction of oxygen. Simple warming restores the normal coloring of the lips.

Large Labial Frenulum

An excessively large superior labial frenulum in children may cause a space between the central incisor teeth. Resection of the frenulum and the underlying connective tissue (frenulectomy) between the incisors allows approximation of the teeth, which may require an orthodontic appliance ("brace"). A large lower labial frenulum in adults may pull on the labial gingiva and contribute to gingival recession, which results in an abnormal exposure of the roots of the teeth.

Gingivitis

Improper oral hygiene results in food and bacterial deposits in tooth and gingival crevices that may cause inflammation of the gingivae (gingivitis). The gingivae swell and redden as a result. If untreated, the disease spreads to other supporting structures, including alveolar bone, producing periodontitis (inflammation and destruction of bone and periodontium). Dento-alveolar abscesses (collections of pus resulting from death of inflamed tissues) may drain to the oral cavity and lips.

Dental Caries, Pulpitis, and Tooth Abscesses

Acid, enzymes, or both produced by oral bacteria may break down (decay) the hard tissues of a tooth. This results in the formation of dental caries (cavities) (Fig. B8.34A–C). Neglected dental caries eventually invade and inflame tissues in the pulp cavity (Fig. B8.34B, C). Invasion of the pulp by a deep carious lesion results in infection and irritation of the tissues (pulpitis). Because the pulp cavity is a rigid space, the swollen tissues cause considerable pain (toothache). If untreated, the small vessels in the root canal may die from the pressure of the swollen tissue, and the infected material may pass through the apical canal and foramen into the periodontal tissues (Fig. B8.34C). An infective process develops and spreads through the root canal to the alveolar bone, producing an abscess (peri-apical disease). If untreated, loss of the tooth may occur with an abscess remaining (Fig. B8.34D). Treatment involves removal of the decayed tissue and

restoration of the anatomy of the tooth with prosthetic dental material (commonly referred to as a "filling") (Fig. B8.34E).

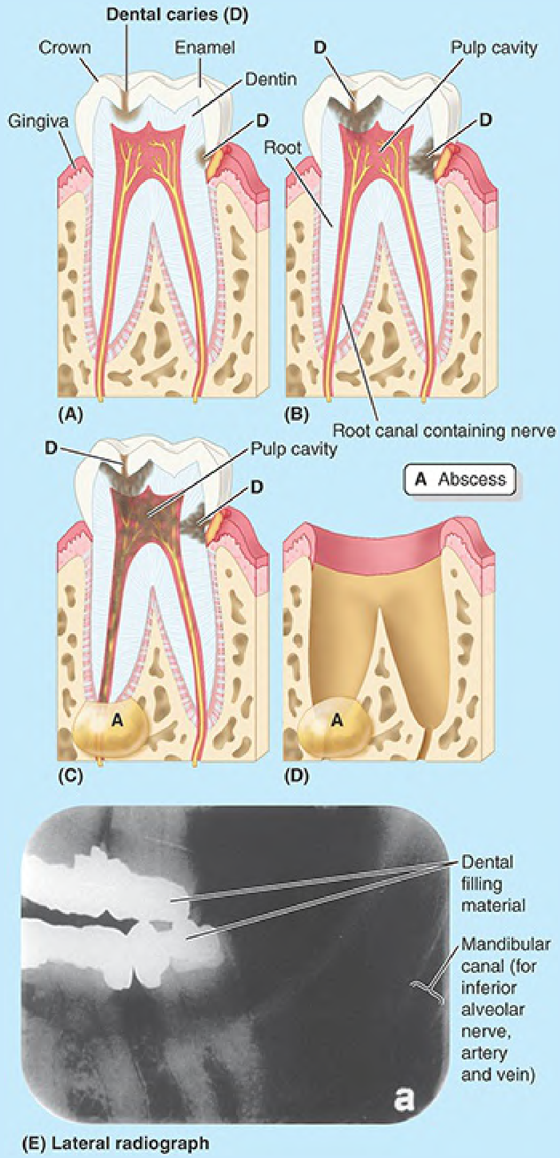


FIGURE B8.34. Dental caries and peri-apical disease.

Pus from an abscess of a maxillary molar tooth may extend into the nasal cavity or the maxillary sinus. The roots of the maxillary molar teeth are closely related to the floor of this sinus. As a consequence, infection of the pulp cavity may also cause sinusitis, or sinusitis may stimulate nerves entering the teeth and simulate a toothache. The roots of mandibular teeth are closely related to the mandibular canal (Fig. B8.34E), and abscess formation may compress the nerve causing pain that may be referred to (perceived as coming from) more anterior teeth.

Supernumerary Teeth (Hyperdontia)

Supernumerary teeth are teeth present in addition to the normal complement (number) of teeth. They may be single, multiple, unilateral or bilateral, erupted or unerupted, and in one or both maxillary and mandibular alveolar arches (Fig. B8.35). They may occur in both deciduous and permanent dentitions but more commonly occur in the latter. The presence of a single supernumerary (accessory) tooth is usually seen in the anterior maxilla. The most common supernumerary tooth is a mesiodens, which is a malformed, peg-like tooth that occurs between the maxillary central incisor teeth (Fig. B8.35A). A supernumerary tooth occurs in addition to the normal number but resembles the size, shape, or placement of normal teeth. An accessory tooth does not resemble the form or disposition of a normal tooth (Fig. B8.35B).

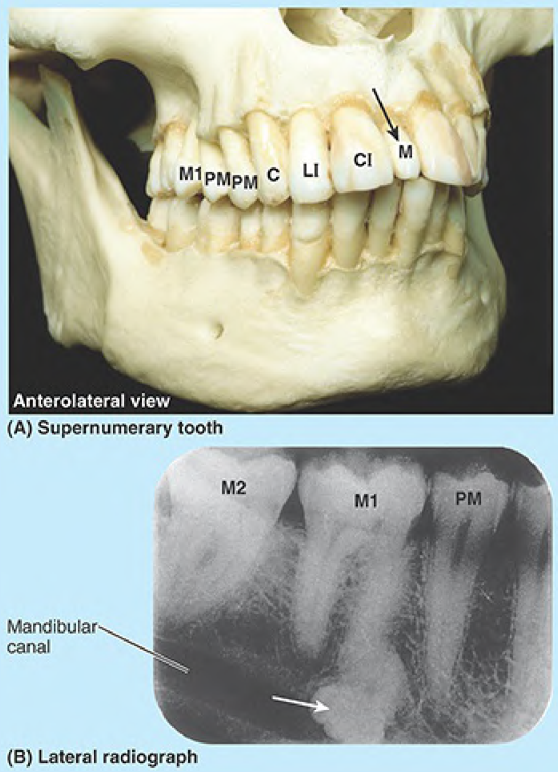


FIGURE B8.35. Supernumerary teeth. C, canine; CI, central incisor; LI, lateral incisor; M, mesiodens; M1, 1st molar; M2, 2nd molar; PM, premolar; arrow, supernumerary (accessory) tooth.

Multiple supernumerary teeth are rare in individuals with no other associated diseases or syndromes, such as cleft lip or cleft palate or cranial dysplasia (malformation). The supernumerary teeth can cause problems for the eruption and alignment of normal dentition and are usually surgically extracted.

Extraction of Teeth

Sometimes, it is not practical to restore a tooth because of extreme tooth destruction. The

only alternative is tooth extraction. A tooth may lose its blood supply as a result of trauma. The blow to the tooth disrupts the blood vessels entering and leaving the apical foramen. It is not always possible to save the tooth. Supernumerary teeth are also extracted.

The lingual nerve is closely related to the medial aspect of the 3rd molar tooth; therefore, caution is taken to avoid injuring this nerve during their extraction. Damage to this nerve results in altered sensation to the ipsilateral side of the tongue.

Unerupted 3rd molars are common dental problems. Because these teeth (colloquially called "wisdom teeth") are the last to erupt, usually when people are in their late teens or early 20s. Often, there is not enough room for these molars to erupt, and they become lodged (impacted) under or against the 2nd molar teeth (Fig. B8.36, insets). If impacted 3rd molars become painful, they are usually removed. When doing so, the surgeon takes care not to injure the alveolar nerves (see Figs. 8.81A and B8.34E).

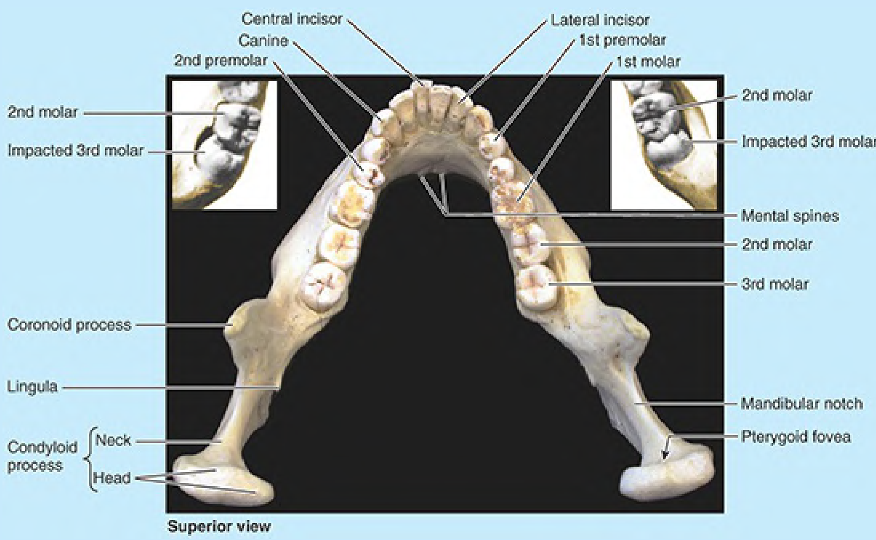


FIGURE B8.36. Normal adult mandible with full dentition. Insets, impacted 3rd molars.

Dental Implants

Following extraction of a tooth, or fracture of a tooth at its neck, a prosthetic crown may be placed on an abutment (metal peg) inserted into a metal socket surgically implanted into the alveolar bone (Fig. B8.37). A procedure to augment the alveolar bone with calf or cadaveric bone may be required before the socket can be implanted. A waiting period of several months may be necessary to allow bone growth around the implanted socket before the abutment and prosthetic crown are mounted.

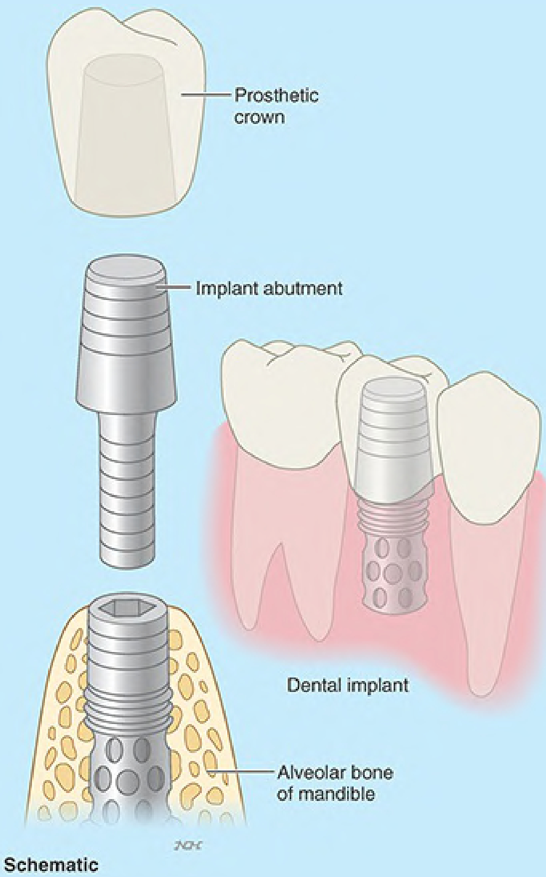


FIGURE B8.37. Dental implants.

Nasopalatine Block

The nasopalatine nerves can be anesthetized by injecting anesthetic into the incisive fossa in the hard palate. The needle is inserted immediately posterior to the incisive papilla. Both nerves are anesthetized by the same injection where they emerge through the incisive fossa (see Fig. 8.89B). The affected tissues are the palatal mucosa, the lingual gingivae and alveolar bone of the six anterior maxillary teeth, and the hard palate.

Greater Palatine Block

The greater palatine nerve can be anesthetized by injecting anesthetic into the greater palatine foramen. The nerve emerges between the 2nd and the 3rd molar teeth. This nerve block anesthetizes all the palatal mucosa and lingual gingivae posterior to the maxillary canine teeth and the underlying bone of the palate. Branches of the greater palatine arteries should be avoided. The anesthetic should be injected slowly to prevent stripping of the mucosa from the hard palate.

Cleft Palate

Cleft palate, with or without cleft lip, occurs in approximately 1 of 2,500 births and is more common in females than in males. The cleft may involve only the uvula, giving it a fishtail appearance, or it may extend through the soft and hard regions of the palate (Fig. B8.38). In severe cases associated with cleft lip, the cleft palate extends through the alveolar processes of the maxillae and the lips on both sides. The embryological basis of cleft palate is failure of mesenchymal masses in the lateral palatine processes to meet and fuse with each other, with the nasal septum, and/or with the posterior margin of the median palatine process (Moore et al., 2020).

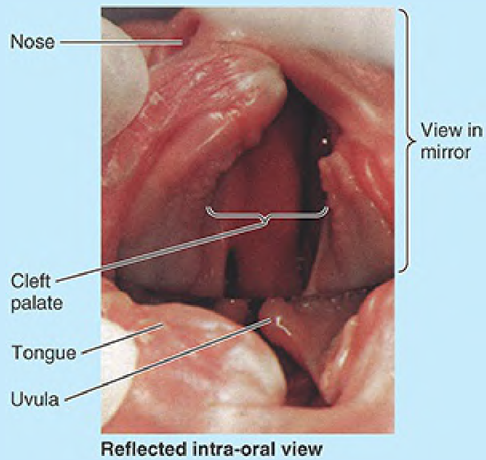


FIGURE B8.38. Bilateral cleft palate.

Gag Reflex

It is possible to touch the anterior part of the tongue without feeling discomfort. However, when the posterior part is touched, the individual gags. CN IX and CN X are responsible for the muscular contraction of each side of the pharynx. Glossopharyngeal branches provide the afferent limb of the gag reflex.

Paralysis of Genioglossus

When the genioglossus muscle is paralyzed, the tongue has a tendency to fall posteriorly, obstructing the airway and presenting the risk of suffocation. Total relaxation of the genioglossus muscles occurs during general anesthesia. Thus, an airway is inserted in an anesthetized person to prevent the tongue from relapsing.

Injury to Hypoglossal Nerve

Trauma, such as a fractured mandible, may injure the hypoglossal nerve (CN XII), resulting in paralysis and eventual atrophy of one side of the tongue. The tongue deviates to the paralyzed side during protrusion because of the action of the unaffected genioglossus muscle on the other side.

Sublingual Absorption of Drugs

For quick absorption of a drug, for example, when nitroglycerin is used as a vasodilator in persons with angina pectoris (chest pain due to cardiac ischemia), the pill or spray is put under the tongue where it dissolves and enters the deep lingual veins in <1 minute (Fig. B8.39; see Fig. 8.91).

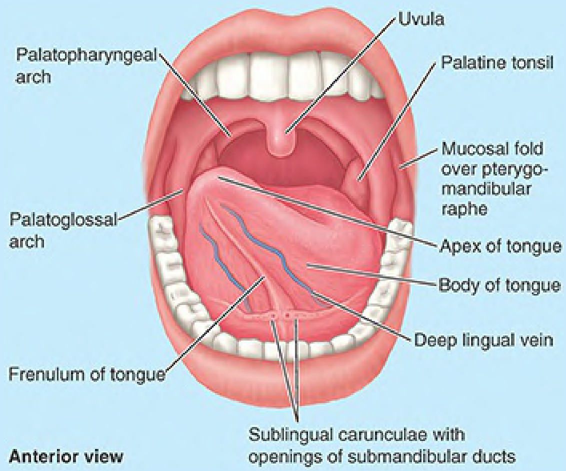


FIGURE B8.39. Floor of mouth and inferior surface of tongue.

Lingual Carcinoma

A lingual carcinoma in the posterior part of the tongue metastasizes to the superior deep cervical lymph nodes on both sides. However, a tumor in the anterior part usually does not metastasize to the inferior deep cervical lymph nodes until late in the disease. Because the nodes are closely related to the IJV, metastases from the tongue may be distributed through the submental and submandibular regions and along the IJVs in the neck (see Fig. 8.96).

Lingual Frenectomy

A frenulum (frenum) of the tongue extending farther anteriorly toward the apex (tongue-tie) interferes with tongue movements and may affect speech. In unusual cases, a frenectomy (cutting the frenulum) in infants may be necessary to free the tongue for normal movements and speech.

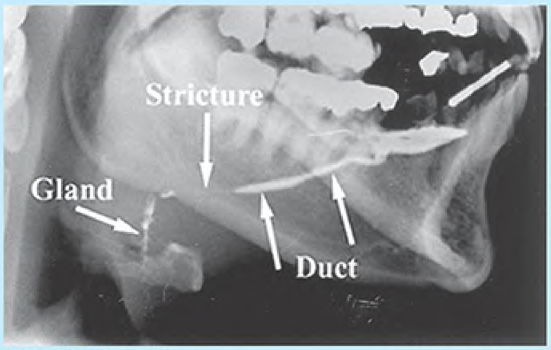
Excision of Submandibular Gland and Removal of a Calculus

Excision of a submandibular gland because of a calculus (stone) in the submandibular duct or a tumor in the gland is not uncommon. Skin incision is made at least 2.5 cm inferior to the angle of the mandible to avoid injury to the marginal

mandibular branch of the facial nerve (see Fig. 8.67). Caution must also be taken not to injure the lingual nerve when incising the duct. The submandibular duct passes directly superior to the nerve inferior to the neck of the 3rd molar tooth (see Fig. 8.98).

Sialography of Submandibular Ducts

The submandibular salivary glands may be examined radiographically after injection of a contrast medium into their ducts (Fig. B8.40). This special type of radiograph (sialogram) demonstrates the salivary ducts and some secretory units. Because of the small size of the ducts of the sublingual glands and their multiplicity, one cannot usually inject contrast medium into the ducts.



Lateral sialogram

FIGURE B8.40. **Sialogram of submandibular duct and gland.**

The Bottom Line: Oral Region

Oral cavity: The oral cavity (mouth) is the primary portal of the alimentary system, and a secondary portal for the respiratory system, especially important for speech in the latter case. ■ The oral cavity extends from the oral fissure to the oropharyngeal isthmus. ■ The oral cavity is divided by the upper and lower jaws and their dental arches into a superficial oral vestibule (between the lips and cheeks and the gingival and teeth) and a deeper oral cavity proper (internal to the jaws and dental arcades). ■ The oral cavity (and specifically the oral vestibule) is bounded by the lips and cheeks, which are flexible dynamic musculofibrous folds containing muscles, neurovasculature, and mucosal glands, covered superficially with skin and deeply with oral mucosa. ■ The cheeks also include buccal fat pads.

Teeth: The strong alveolar parts of the maxilla and mandible contain, in sequence, two sets of teeth (20 deciduous and 32 permanent teeth). ■ The crowns of the teeth project from the gingiva, and the roots are anchored in tooth sockets by periodontium. ■ The

maxilla, its teeth, gingivae, and adjacent vestibule are supplied by branches of the maxillary nerve (CN V_2), the alveolar arteries, and accompanying veins. ■ The same features of the mandible are supplied by the mandibular nerve (CN V_3) and inferior alveolar vessels.

Palate: The roof of the oral cavity proper is formed by the hard (anterior two thirds) and soft (posterior one third) palates, the latter being a controlled flap that allows or limits communication with the nasal cavity. ■ The mucosa of the hard palate includes abundant palatine glands. ■ Branches of the maxillary (greater and lesser palatine arteries) and facial (ascending palatine artery) arteries supply the palate; its venous blood drains to the pterygoid plexus. The palate receives sensory innervation from the maxillary nerve (CN V_2); the muscles of the soft palate receive motor innervation from the pharyngeal plexus (CN X) plus a branch from the mandibular nerve (CN V_3) for the tensor veli palatini.

Tongue: The tongue is a mass of striated muscle, innervated by CN XII and covered with a specialized mucosa textured with lingual papillae. ■ It occupies most of the oral cavity when the mouth is closed. ■ Its extrinsic muscles primarily control its placement, whereas its intrinsic muscles primarily control its shape, for manipulation of food during chewing, swallowing, and speech. ■ It is highly sensitive, with four cranial nerves contributing sensory fibers to it. ■ The terminal sulcus divides it into an anterior two thirds, receiving general sensation from the lingual nerve (CN V_3) and taste fibers from CN VII, and a posterior third receiving all sensory innervation from CN IX. ■ Adjacent to the epiglottis, CN X provides general and special sensory innervation.

Salivary glands: Salivary glands secrete saliva to initiate digestion by facilitating chewing and swallowing. ■ The parotid gland, the largest, receives parasympathetic innervation from CN IX via the otic ganglion. ■ The submandibular and sublingual glands receive parasympathetic innervation from CN VII by way of the chorda tympani nerve, lingual nerve, and submandibular ganglion. Their ducts open into the oral cavity under the tongue.

PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA

The **pterygopalatine fossa** is a small pyramidal space inferior to the apex of the orbit and medial to the infratemporal fossa (Fig. 8.99). It lies between the pterygoid process of the sphenoid posteriorly and the rounded posterior aspect of the maxilla anteriorly. The fragile perpendicular plate of the palatine bone forms its medial wall. The incomplete roof of the pterygopalatine fossa is formed by the medial continuation of the infratemporal surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid. The floor of the pterygopalatine fossa is formed by the pyramidal process of the palatine bone. Its superior larger end opens anterosuperiorly into the inferior orbital fissure. Its

inferior end narrows, continuing as the greater and lesser palatine canals. The pterygopalatine fossa communicates through many passageways, distributing and receiving nerves and vessels to and from most of the major compartments of the viscerocranium (Fig. 8.100A).

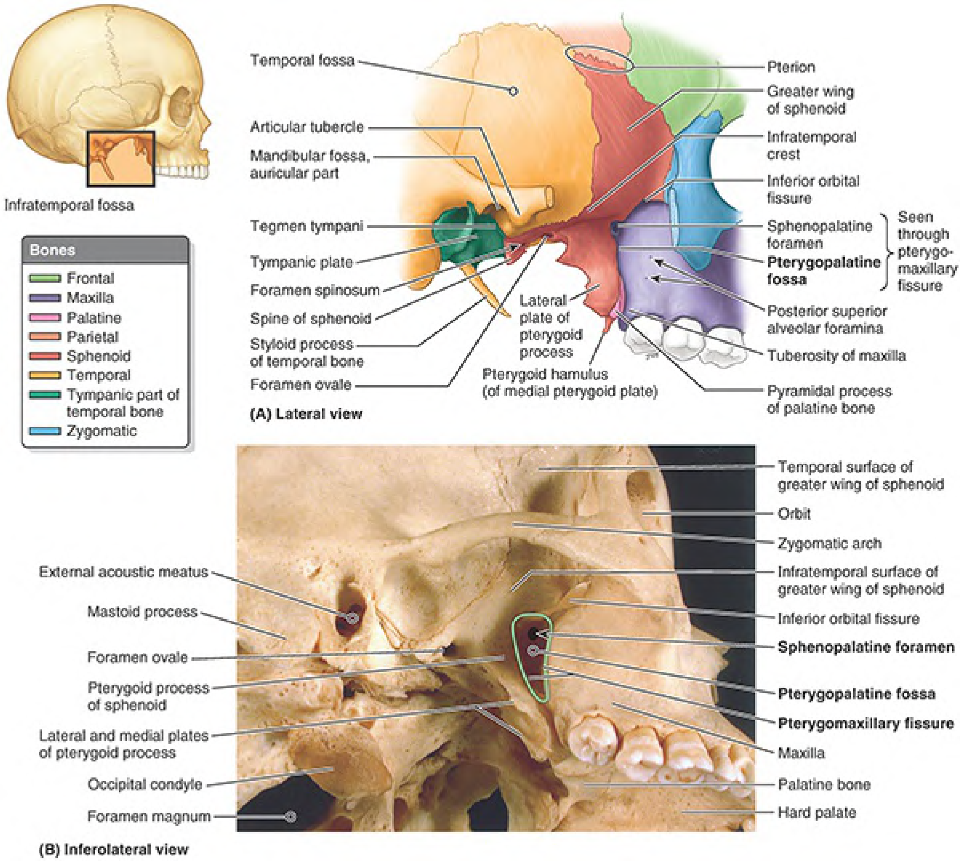


FIGURE 8.99. **Temporal, infratemporal, and pterygopalatine fossae. A.** Bones. The zygomatic arch has been removed. **B.** Pterygopalatine fossa. The pterygopalatine fossa is seen medial to the infratemporal fossa through the pterygomaxillary fissure, between the pterygoid process and the maxilla. The sphenopalatine foramen is an opening into the nasal cavity at the top of the palatine bone.

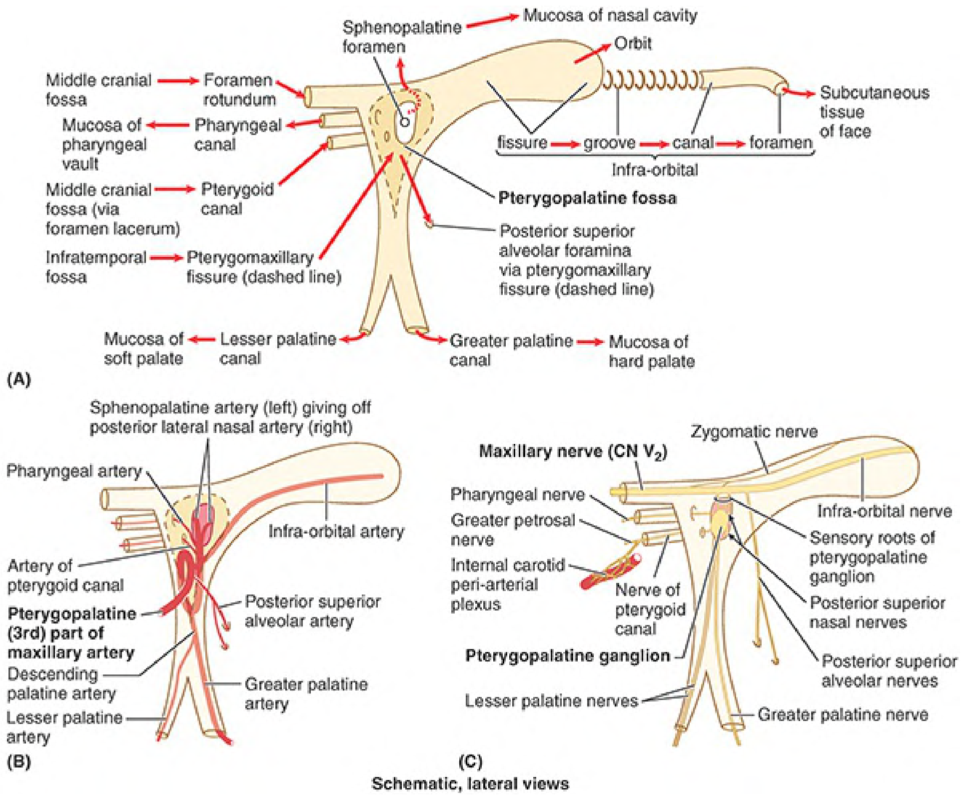


FIGURE 8.100. Pterygopalatine fossa—communications and contents. A. Communications of the pterygopalatine fossa and the passageways by which structures enter and exit fossae are shown. **B.** Distribution of branches of pterygopalatine part of maxillary artery. **C.** Branches of maxillary nerve and pterygopalatine ganglion entering and exiting the fossa.

The **contents of the pterygopalatine fossa** (Fig. 8.100B, C) are as follows:

- Terminal (pterygopalatine or third) part of the maxillary artery, and the initial parts of its branches, and accompanying veins (tributaries of the pterygoid venous plexus)
- Maxillary nerve (CN V_2), with which the pterygopalatine ganglion is associated. Branches arising from the ganglion within the fossa are considered to be branches of the maxillary nerve.
- Neurovascular sheaths of the vessels and nerves and a fatty matrix occupy all remaining space.

Pterygopalatine Part of Maxillary Artery

The maxillary artery, a terminal branch of the external carotid artery, passes anteriorly through the infratemporal fossa, as described previously. The **pterygopalatine part of the maxillary artery**, its third part (i.e., the part located anterior to the lateral pterygoid), passes medially through the pterygomaxillary fissure and enters the pterygopalatine fossa (Figs. 8.100B and 8.101A). The artery lies anterior to the pterygopalatine ganglion and gives rise to branches that accompany all nerves entering and exiting the fossa, sharing the same names with many (Table 8.12).

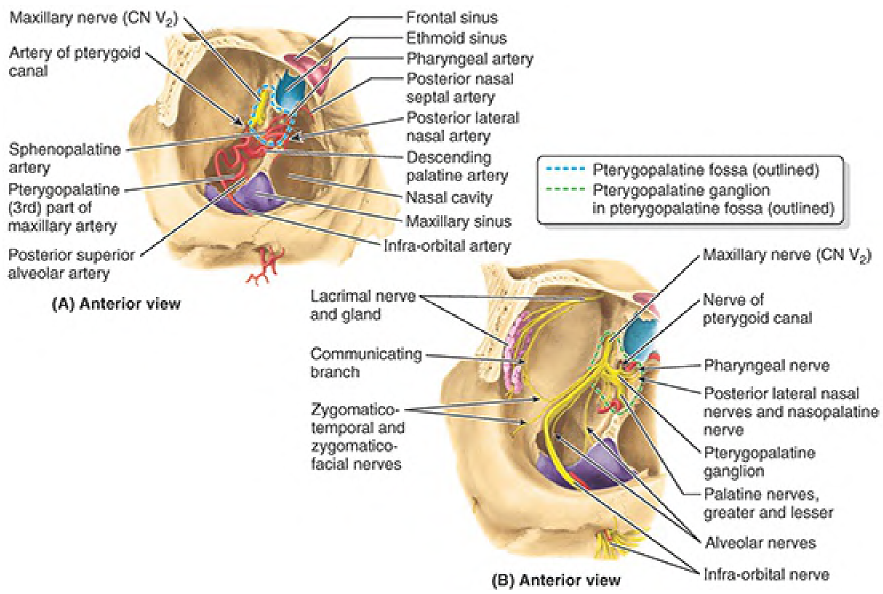


FIGURE 8.101. Orbital approach to contents of pterygopalatine fossa. A. The pterygopalatine (third) part of the maxillary artery lies anterior to the lateral pterygoid muscle (see Table 8.12). The branches of the third part arise just before and within the pterygopalatine fossa. **B.** The maxillary nerve (CN V_2) traverses the posterior wall of the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum, sending two nerves (roots) to the pterygopalatine ganglion within the fossa. The branches arising from the ganglion are considered to be branches of CN V_2.

Maxillary Nerve

The **maxillary nerve** runs anteriorly through the foramen rotundum, which enters posterior wall of the fossa (Figs. 8.100C, 8.101B, and 8.102C). Within the pterygopalatine fossa, the maxillary nerve gives off the zygomatic nerve, which in turn divides into zygomaticofacial and zygomaticotemporal nerves (Figs. 8.101B and 8.102A). These nerves emerge from the zygomatic bone through cranial foramina of the same name and supply general sensation to the lateral region of the cheek and temple. The **zygomaticotemporal nerve** also gives rise to a communicating branch, which conveys postsynaptic parasympathetic secretomotor fibers to the lacrimal gland by way of the heretofore purely sensory lacrimal nerve from CN V_1 (Fig. 8.102A, B).

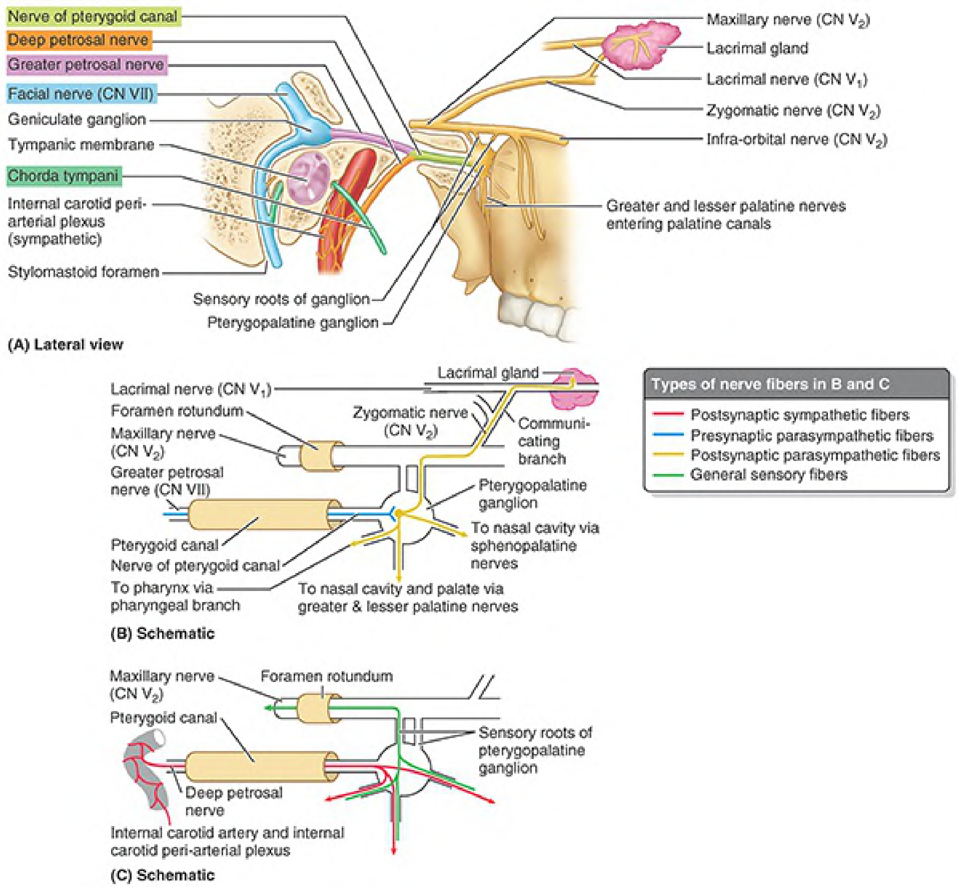


FIGURE 8.102. Nerves involved in conveying nerve fibers to and from pterygopalatine ganglion. A. Overview of regional nerves. **B.** Parasympathetic fibers. **C.** Sympathetic and general sensory fibers. The nerve of the pterygoid canal conveys presynaptic parasympathetic fibers from the facial nerve (via its branch, the greater petrosal nerve) to the ganglion, where they will synapse with postsynaptic fibers. The nerve of the pterygoid canal also brings postsynaptic sympathetic fibers to the ganglion from the internal carotid plexus (via the deep petrosal nerve). Sensory fibers pass from the ganglion via pterygopalatine branches of the maxillary nerve (CN V_2). Secretomotor postsynaptic parasympathetic and vasoconstrictive postsynaptic sympathetic fibers are distributed to the lacrimal, nasal, palatine, and pharyngeal glands. Similarly, sensory fibers are distributed to the mucosa of the nasal cavity, palate, and uppermost pharynx.

While in the pterygopalatine fossa, the maxillary nerve also gives off the two ganglionic branches to the pterygopalatine ganglion (sensory roots of the pterygopalatine ganglion) that suspend the parasympathetic **pterygopalatine ganglion** in the superior part of the pterygopalatine fossa (Figs. 8.100C and 8.102A). The pterygopalatine nerves convey general sensory fibers of the maxillary nerve, which pass through the pterygopalatine ganglion without synapsing to supply the nose, palate, and pharynx (Fig. 8.102C). The maxillary nerve leaves the pterygopalatine fossa through the inferior orbital fissure, after which it is known as the infra-orbital nerve (Figs. 8.100C and 8.101B).

The **parasympathetic fibers to the pterygopalatine ganglion** come from the facial nerve by way of its first branch, the greater petrosal nerve (Figs. 8.100C and 8.102A, B). This nerve joins the deep petrosal nerve as it passes through the foramen lacerum to form the **nerve of the pterygoid canal**, which passes anteriorly through this canal to the pterygopalatine fossa. The parasympathetic fibers of the greater petrosal nerve synapse in the pterygopalatine ganglion. The

deep petrosal nerve is a sympathetic nerve arising from the internal carotid peri-arterial plexus as the artery exits the carotid canal (Figs. 8.100C and 8.102A, C). It conveys postsynaptic fibers from nerve cell bodies in the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion to the pterygopalatine ganglion by joining the nerve of the pterygoid canal. The fibers do not synapse in the ganglion but pass directly through it into the branches (of CN V_2) arising from it (Fig. 8.102C). The postsynaptic sympathetic fibers pass to the palatine glands and the mucosal glands of the nasal cavity and superior pharynx.

CLINICAL BOX

PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA

Transantral Approach to Pterygopalatine Fossa

Surgical access to the deeply placed pterygopalatine fossa is gained through the maxillary sinus. After elevating the upper lip, the maxillary gingiva and anterior wall of the sinus are traversed to enter the sinus. The posterior wall is then chipped away as needed to open the anterior wall of the pterygopalatine fossa. In the case of chronic epistaxis (nosebleed), the third part of the maxillary artery may be ligated in the fossa to control the bleeding.

The Bottom Line: Pterygopalatine Fossa

The pterygopalatine fossa is a major distributing center for branches of the maxillary nerve and the pterygopalatine (third) part of the maxillary artery. ■ It is located between, and has communications with, the infratemporal fossa, nasal cavity, orbit, middle cranial fossa, pharyngeal vault, maxillary sinus, and oral cavity (palate). ■ The contents of the pterygopalatine fossa are the maxillary nerve (CN V_2), the parasympathetic pterygopalatine ganglion, the third part of the maxillary artery and accompanying veins, and a surrounding fatty matrix.

NOSE

The **nose** is the part of the respiratory tract superior to the hard palate and contains the peripheral organ of smell. It includes the external nose and nasal cavity, which is divided into right and left cavities by the nasal septum (Fig. 8.103A). The functions of the nose include olfaction

(smelling), respiration (breathing), filtration of dust, humidification of inspired air, and reception and elimination of secretions from the paranasal sinuses and nasolacrimal ducts.

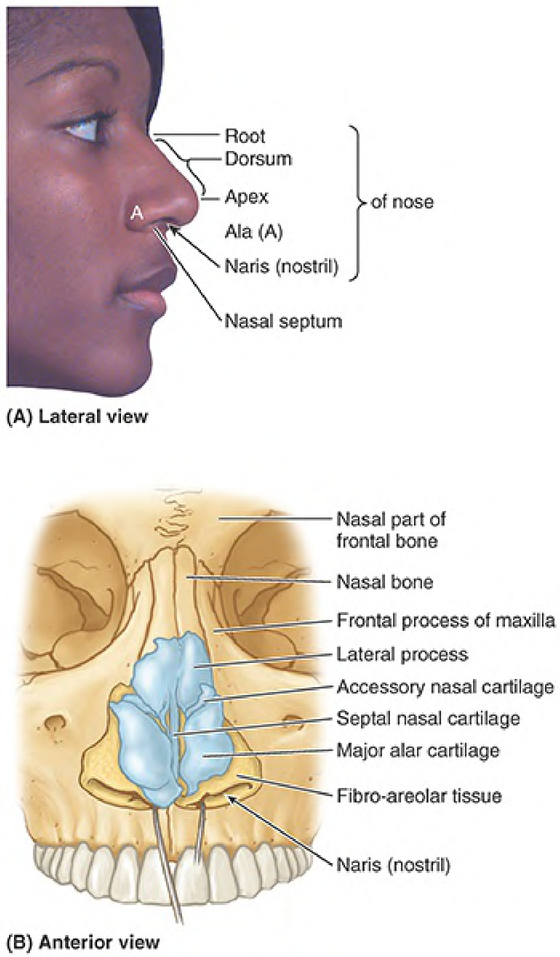


FIGURE 8.103. **External nose. A.** Surface anatomy of nose. The nose is attached to the forehead by the root of the nose. The rounded border between the apex and the root is the dorsum of the nose. **B.** Nasal cartilages. The septum is retracted inferiorly. The lateral nasal cartilages are fixed by sutures to the nasal bones and are continuous with the septal nasal cartilage.

External Nose

The **external nose** is the visible portion that projects from the face. Its skeleton is mainly cartilaginous (Fig. 8.103B). Noses vary considerably in size and shape, mainly because of differences in these cartilages. The **dorsum of the nose** extends from the **root of the nose** to the **apex** (tip) **of the nose**. The inferior surface of the nose is pierced by two piriform (L., pear-shaped) openings, the **nares** (nostrils, anterior nasal apertures), which are bound laterally by the **alae** (wings) **of the nose**. The superior bony part of the nose, including its root, is covered by thin skin.

The skin over the cartilages of the nose is covered with thicker skin, which contains many sebaceous glands. The skin extends into the **vestibule of the nose** (see Fig. 8.105A), where it has a variable number of stiff hairs (vibrissae). Because they are usually moist, these hairs filter dust

particles from air entering the nasal cavity. The junction of the skin and mucous membrane is beyond the hair-bearing area.

SKELETON OF EXTERNAL NOSE

The supporting skeleton of the nose is composed of bone and hyaline cartilage. The **bony part of the nose** (Figs. 8.103B and 8.104) consists of the nasal bones, frontal processes of the maxillae, the nasal part of the frontal bone and its nasal spine, and the bony parts of the nasal septum. The **cartilaginous part of the nose** consists of five main cartilages: two lateral cartilages, two alar cartilages, and one septal cartilage. The U-shaped **alar cartilages** are free and movable. They dilate or constrict the nares when the muscles acting on the nose contract.

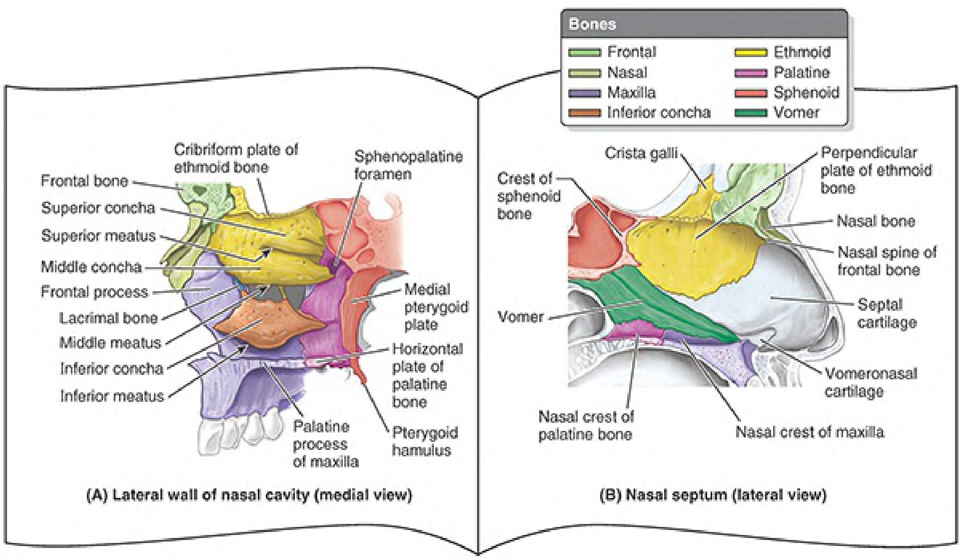


FIGURE 8.104. Lateral and medial (septal) walls of right side of nasal cavity. The walls are separated and shown as adjacent pages of a book. The medial view shows the right lateral wall of the nasal cavity, and the lateral view shows the nasal septum. The nasal septum has a hard (bony) part located deeply (posteriorly) where it is protected and a soft or mobile part located superficially (anteriorly) mostly in the more vulnerable external nose.

NASAL SEPTUM

The nasal septum divides the chamber of the nose into two nasal cavities. The septum has a bony part and a soft mobile cartilaginous part. The main components of the nasal septum are the **perpendicular plate of the ethmoid**, the vomer, and the septal cartilage. The thin perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone, forming the superior part of the nasal septum, descends from the cribriform plate and is continued superior to this plate as the crista galli. The **vomer**, a thin flat bone, forms the postero-inferior part of the nasal septum, with some contribution from the nasal crests of the maxillary and palatine bones. The **septal cartilage** has a tongue-and-groove articulation with the edges of the bony septum.

Nasal Cavities

The term nasal cavity refers either to the entire cavity or to the right or left half, depending on the

context. The nasal cavity is entered anteriorly through the nares (nostrils). It opens posteriorly into the nasopharynx through the choanae (see Fig. 8.9). Mucosa lines the nasal cavity, except for the nasal vestibule, which is lined with skin (Fig. 8.105A).

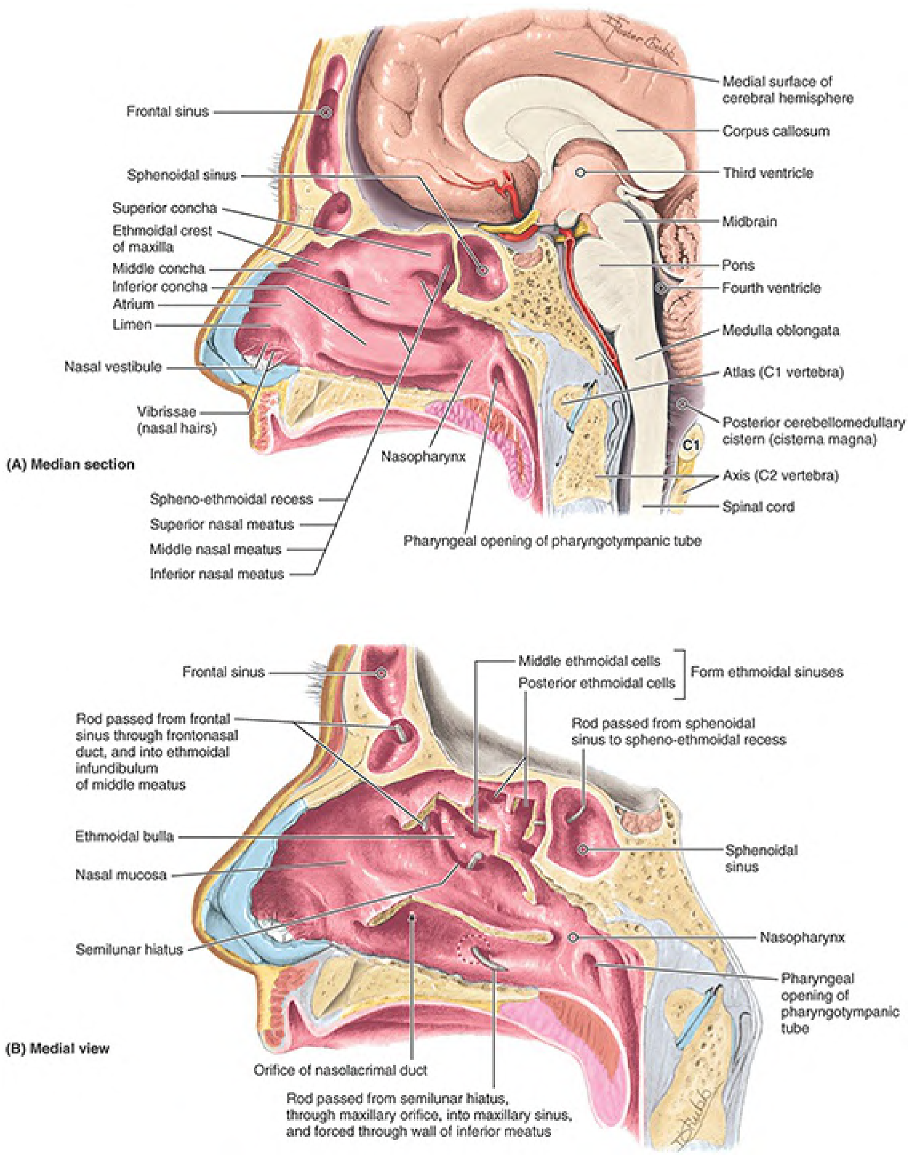


FIGURE 8.105. Lateral wall of nasal cavity of right half of head. A. Conchae. The inferior and middle conchae, curving medially and inferiorly from the lateral wall, divide the wall into three nearly equal parts and cover the inferior and middle meatus, respectively. The superior concha is small and anterior to the sphenoidal sinus, and the middle concha has an angled inferior border and ends inferior to the sphenoidal sinus. The inferior concha has a slightly curved inferior border and ends inferior to the middle concha approximately 1 cm anterior to the orifice of the pharyngotympanic tube. **B.** Communications through lateral nasal wall. Parts of the superior, middle, and inferior conchae are cut away. The sphenoidal sinus occupies the body of the sphenoid bone. Its orifice, superior to the middle of its anterior wall, opens into the spheno-ethmoidal recess. The orifices of posterior, middle, and anterior ethmoidal cells open into the superior meatus, middle meatus, and semilunar hiatus, respectively.

The **nasal mucosa** is firmly bound to the periosteum and perichondrium of the supporting bones and cartilages of the nose. The mucosa is continuous with the lining of all the chambers

with which the nasal cavities communicate: the nasopharynx posteriorly, the paranasal sinuses superiorly and laterally, and the lacrimal sac and conjunctiva superiorly. The inferior two thirds of the nasal mucosa is the respiratory area, and the superior one third is the olfactory area (see Fig. 8.108B). Air passing over the **respiratory area** is warmed and moistened before it passes through the rest of the upper respiratory tract to the lungs. The **olfactory area** contains the peripheral organ of smell; sniffing draws air to the area.

BOUNDARIES OF NASAL CAVITIES

The nasal cavities have a roof, floor, and medial and lateral walls:

- The roof of the nasal cavities is curved and narrow, except at its posterior end, where the hollow body of the sphenoid forms the roof. It is divided into three parts (frontonasal, ethmoidal, and sphenoidal) named from the bones forming each part (Fig. 8.104).
- The floor of the nasal cavities is wider than the roof and is formed by the palatine processes of the maxilla and the horizontal plates of the palatine bone.
- The medial wall of the nasal cavities is formed by the nasal septum.
- The lateral walls of the nasal cavities are irregular owing to three bony plates, the nasal conchae, which project inferiorly, somewhat like louvers (Figs. 8.104A and 8.105; see Fig. 8.110).

FEATURES OF NASAL CAVITIES

The **nasal conchae** (superior, middle, and inferior) curve inferomedially, hanging like louvers or short curtains from the lateral wall. The conchae (L., shells) or turbinates of many mammals (especially running mammals and those existing in extreme environments) are highly convoluted, scroll-like structures that offer a vast surface area for heat exchange. In both humans with simple plate-like nasal conchae and animals with complex turbinates, a recess or **nasal meatus** (singular and plural; passage(s) in the nasal cavity) underlies each of the bony formations. The nasal cavity is therefore divided into five passages: a posterosuperiorly placed spheno-ethmoidal recess, three laterally located nasal meatus (superior, middle, and inferior), and a medially placed common nasal meatus into which the four lateral passages open. The **inferior concha** is the longest and broadest of the conchae and is formed by an independent bone (of the same name, inferior concha) covered by a mucous membrane that contains large vascular spaces that can enlarge affecting the caliber of the nasal cavity. The **middle** and **superior conchae** are medial processes of the ethmoid bone. When infected or irritated, the mucosa covering the conchae may swell rapidly, blocking the nasal passage(s) on that side.

The **spheno-ethmoidal recess**, lying superoposterior to the superior concha, receives the opening of the sphenoidal sinus, an air-filled cavity in the body of the sphenoid. The **superior nasal meatus** is a narrow passage between the superior and the middle nasal conchae into which the posterior ethmoidal sinuses open by one or more orifices (Fig. 8.105A). The middle nasal meatus is longer and deeper than the superior one. The anterosuperior part of this passage leads into a funnel-shaped opening, the **ethmoidal infundibulum**, through which it communicates

with the frontal sinus (Fig. 8.106). The passage that leads inferiorly from each frontal sinus to the infundibulum is the frontonasal duct (Fig. 8.105B). The **semilunar hiatus** (L. hiatus semilunaris) is a semicircular groove into which the frontal sinus opens. The **ethmoidal bulla** (L., bubble), a rounded elevation located superior to the semilunar hiatus, is visible when the middle concha is removed. The bulla is formed by middle ethmoidal cells that form the ethmoidal sinuses.

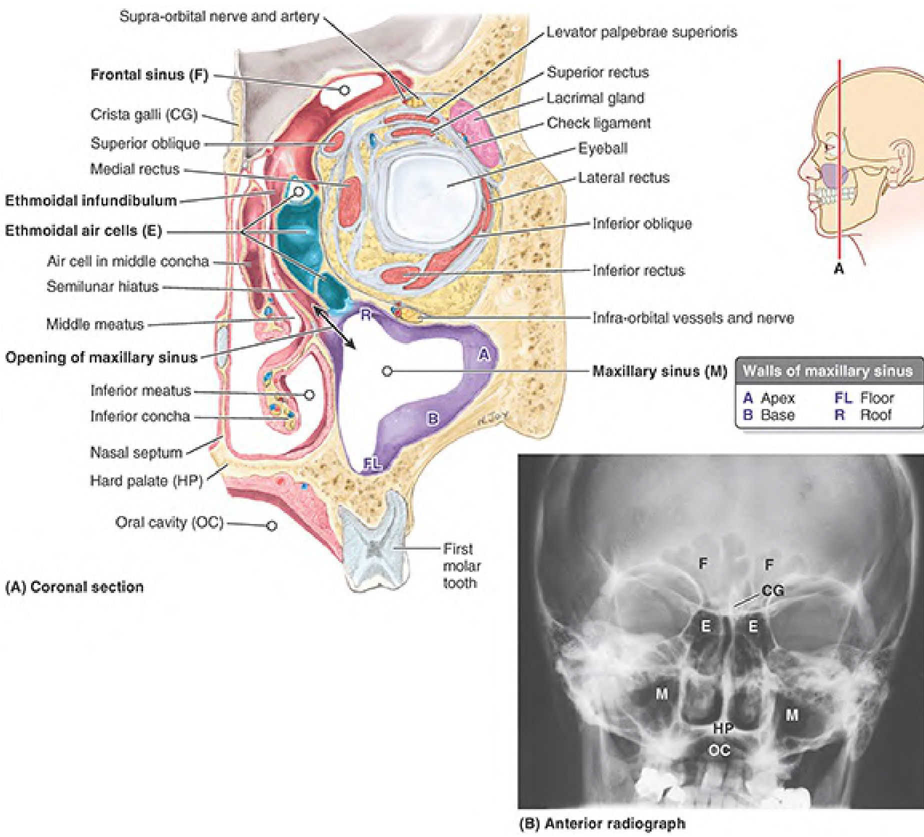


FIGURE 8.106. Nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses. A. Coronal section. The orientation drawing illustrates the plane of the section. Observe the relationship of the orbit, nasal cavity, and paranasal sinuses. The orbital contents, including the four recti and the fascia uniting them, form a circle (a cone when viewed in three dimensions) around the internal aspect of the posterior part (fundus) of the eyeball. **B.** Radiograph of cranium demonstrating nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses. Letters refer to structures labeled in part **A**.

The **inferior nasal meatus** is a horizontal passage inferolateral to the inferior nasal concha. The nasolacrimal duct, which drains tears from the lacrimal sac, opens into the anterior part of this meatus (see Fig. 8.46A). The **common nasal meatus** is the medial part of the nasal cavity between the conchae and the nasal septum, into which the lateral recesses and meatus open.

Vasculature and Innervation of Nose

The arterial supply of the medial and lateral walls of the nasal cavity (Fig. 8.107) is from five sources:

1. Anterior ethmoidal artery (from the ophthalmic artery)
2. Posterior ethmoidal artery (from the ophthalmic artery)

3. Sphenopalatine artery (from the maxillary artery)
4. Greater palatine artery (from the maxillary artery)
5. Septal branch of the superior labial artery (from the facial artery)

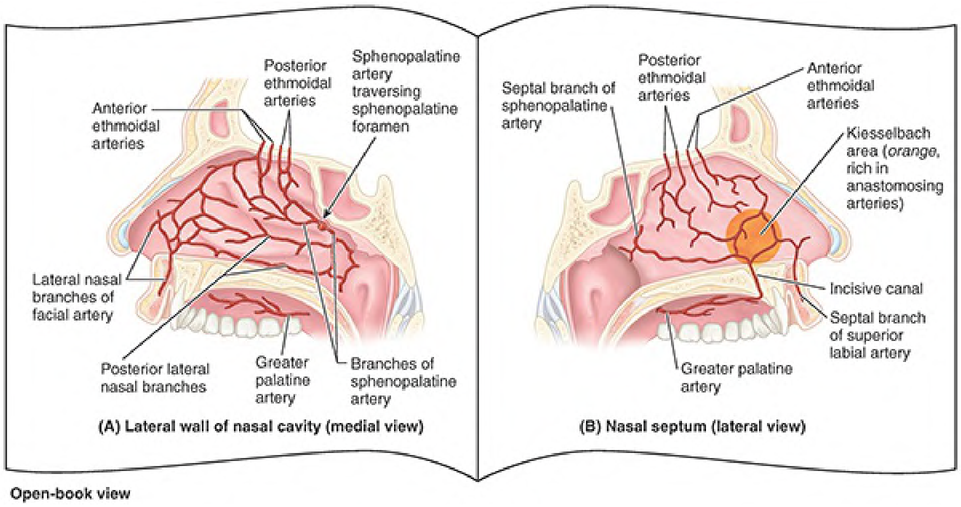


FIGURE 8.107. Arterial supply of nasal cavity. An open-book view of the lateral and medial walls of the right side of the nasal cavity is shown. The left "page" shows the lateral wall of the nasal cavity. The sphenopalatine artery (a branch of the maxillary artery) and the anterior ethmoidal artery (a branch of the ophthalmic artery) are the most important arteries to the nasal cavity. The right "page" shows the nasal septum. An anastomosis of four to five named arteries supplying the septum occurs in the antero-inferior portion of the nasal septum (Kiesselbach area, orange), an area commonly involved in chronic epistaxis (nosebleeds).

The first three arteries divide into lateral and medial (septal) branches. The greater palatine artery reaches the septum via the incisive canal through the anterior hard palate. The anterior part of the nasal septum is the site of an anastomotic arterial plexus involving all five arteries supplying the septum (Kiesselbach area). The external nose also receives blood from first and fifth arteries listed above, plus nasal branches of the infra-orbital artery and the lateral nasal branches of the facial artery.

A rich **submucosal venous plexus**, deep to the nasal mucosa, provides venous drainage of the nose via the sphenopalatine, facial, and ophthalmic veins. The plexus is an important part of the body's thermoregulatory system, exchanging heat and warming air before it enters the lungs. Venous blood from the external nose drains mostly into the facial vein via the angular and lateral nasal veins (see Fig. 8.25). However, recall that it lies within the "danger area" of the face because of communications with the cavernous (dural venous) sinus (see the Clinical Box "Thrombophlebitis of Facial Vein" in this chapter).

Regarding the nerve supply of the nose, the nasal mucosa can be divided into postero-inferior and anterosuperior portions by an oblique line passing approximately through the anterior nasal spine and the spheno-ethmoidal recess (Fig. 8.108). The nerve supply of the postero-inferior portion of the nasal mucosa is chiefly from the maxillary nerve, by way of the nasopalatine nerve to the nasal septum, and posterior superior lateral nasal and inferior lateral nasal branches of the greater palatine nerve to the lateral wall. The nerve supply of the anterosuperior portion is from the ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1) by way of the **anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal nerves**, branches

of the nasociliary nerve. Most of the external nose (dorsum and apex) is also supplied by CN V_1 (via the infratrochlear nerve and the external nasal branch of the anterior ethmoidal nerve). However, the alae of the nose are supplied by the nasal branches of the infra-orbital nerve (CN V_2). The **olfactory nerves**, concerned with smell, arise from cells in the **olfactory epithelium** in the superior part of the lateral and septal walls of the nasal cavity. The central processes of these cells (forming the olfactory nerve) pass through the cribriform plate and end in the **olfactory bulb**, the rostral expansion of the **olfactory tract** (Fig. 8.104A).

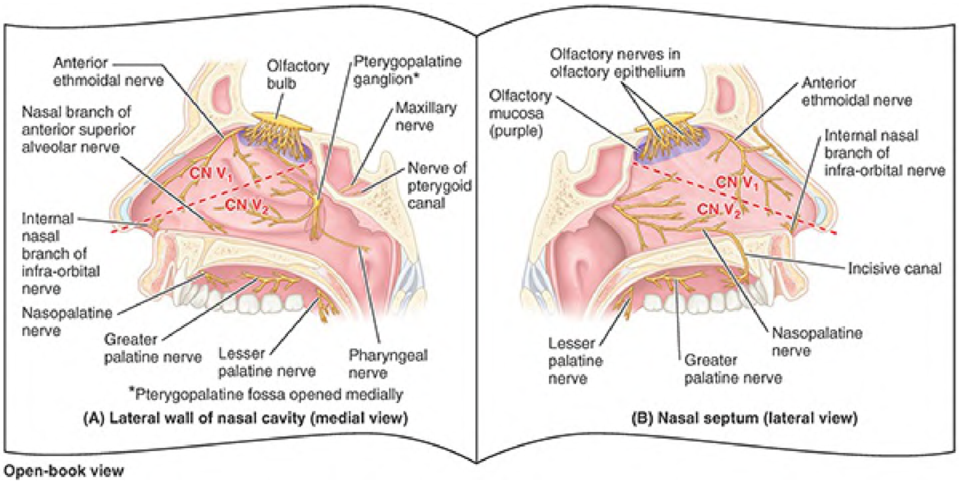


FIGURE 8.108. Innervation of nasal cavity. An open-book view of the lateral and medial (septal) walls of the right side of the nasal cavity is shown. A dashed line extrapolated approximately from the spheno-ethmoidal recess to the apex of the nose demarcates the territories of the ophthalmic (CN V_1) and maxillary (CN V_2) nerves for supplying general sensation to both the lateral wall and the nasal septum. The olfactory nerve (CN I) is distributed to the olfactory mucosa superior to the level of the superior concha on both the lateral wall and the nasal septum.

Paranasal Sinuses

The **paranasal sinuses** are air-filled extensions of the respiratory part of the nasal cavity into the following cranial bones: frontal, ethmoid, sphenoid, and maxilla. They are named according to the bones in which they are located. The sinuses continue to invade the surrounding bone, and marked extensions are common in the crania of older people.

FRONTAL SINUSES

The **right and left frontal sinuses** are between the outer and inner tables of the frontal bone, posterior to the superciliary arches and the root of the nose (Figs. 8.105, 8.106, and 8.109). Frontal sinuses are usually detectable in children by 7 years of age. The right and left sinuses each drain through a **frontonasal duct** into the ethmoidal infundibulum, which opens into the semilunar hiatus of the middle nasal meatus. The frontal sinuses are innervated by branches of the supra-orbital nerves (CN V_1).

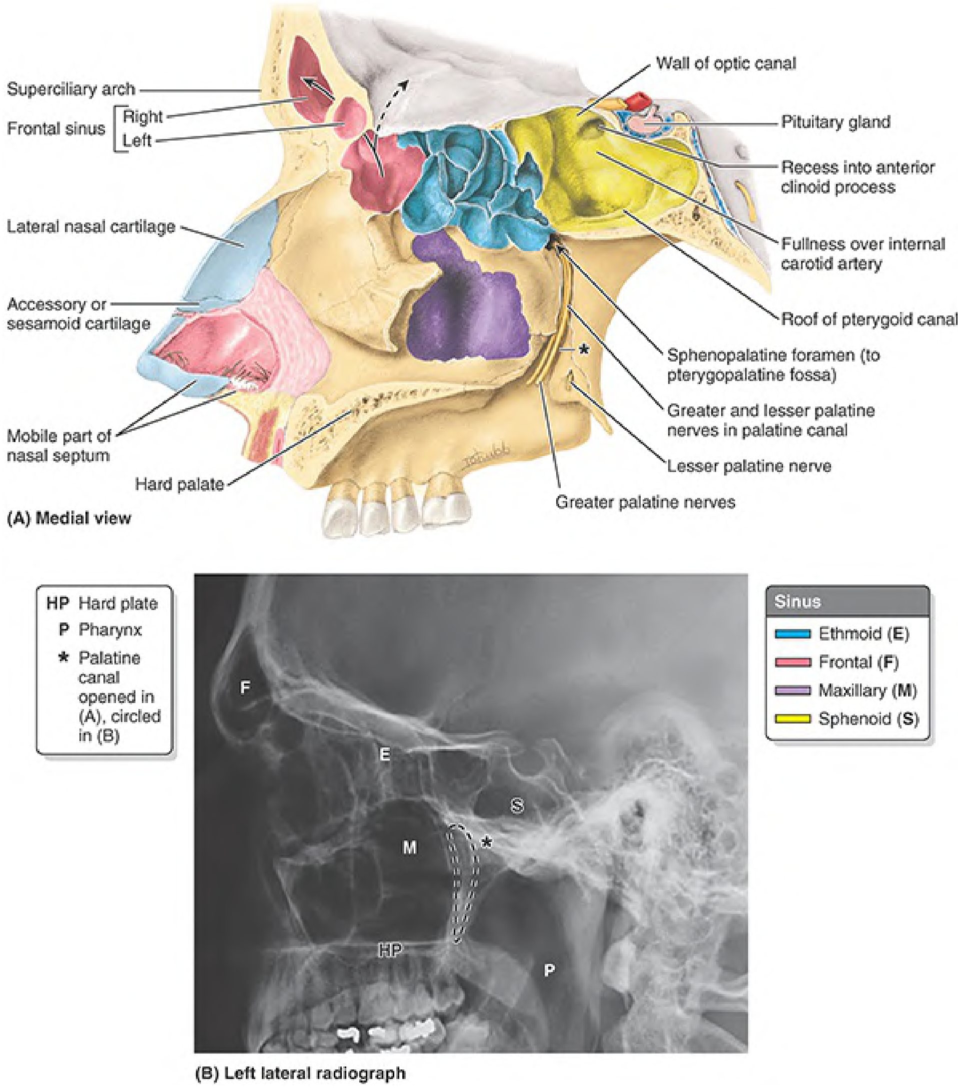


FIGURE 8.109. Paranasal sinuses I. A. Opened sinuses. The paranasal sinuses of the right side have been opened from a nasal approach and color coded. An anterior ethmoidal cell (pink) is invading the diploë of the frontal bone to become a frontal sinus. An offshoot (broken arrow) invades the orbital plate of the frontal bone. The sphenoidal sinus in this specimen is extensive, extending (1) posteriorly, inferior to the pituitary gland, to the clivus; (2) laterally, inferior to the optic nerve (CN II), into the anterior clinoid process; and (3) inferiorly to the pterygoid process but avoiding the pterygoid canal (which is seen rising as a ridge on the floor of the sinus). The maxillary sinus is pyramidal. **B.** Radiograph of cranium. Air densities (dark areas) associated with paranasal sinuses, nasal cavity, oral cavity, and pharynx are demonstrated. The letters are defined in part **A**.

The right and left frontal sinuses are rarely of equal size, and the septum between them is not usually situated entirely in the median plane. The frontal sinuses vary in size from approximately 5 mm to large spaces extending laterally into the greater wings of the sphenoid. Often, a frontal sinus has two parts: a vertical part in the squamous part of the frontal bone and a horizontal part in the orbital part of the frontal bone. One or both parts may be large or small. When the supra-orbital part is large, its roof forms the floor of the anterior cranial fossa and its floor forms the roof of the orbit.

ETHMOIDAL CELLS

The **ethmoidal cells** (sinuses) are small invaginations of the mucous membrane of the middle and superior nasal meatus into the ethmoid bone between the nasal cavity and the orbit (Figs. 8.106, 8.109, and 8.110). The ethmoidal cells usually are not visible in plain radiographs before 2 years of age; however, they are recognizable in CT scans. The **anterior ethmoidal cells** drain directly or indirectly into the middle nasal meatus through the ethmoidal infundibulum. The **middle ethmoidal cells** open directly into the middle meatus and are sometimes called "bullar cells" because they form the ethmoidal bulla, a swelling on the superior border of the semilunar hiatus (Fig. 8.105B). The **posterior ethmoidal cells** open directly into the superior meatus. The ethmoidal cells are supplied by the anterior and posterior ethmoidal branches of the nasociliary nerves (CN V_1) (Fig. 8.108; see Fig. 8.19).

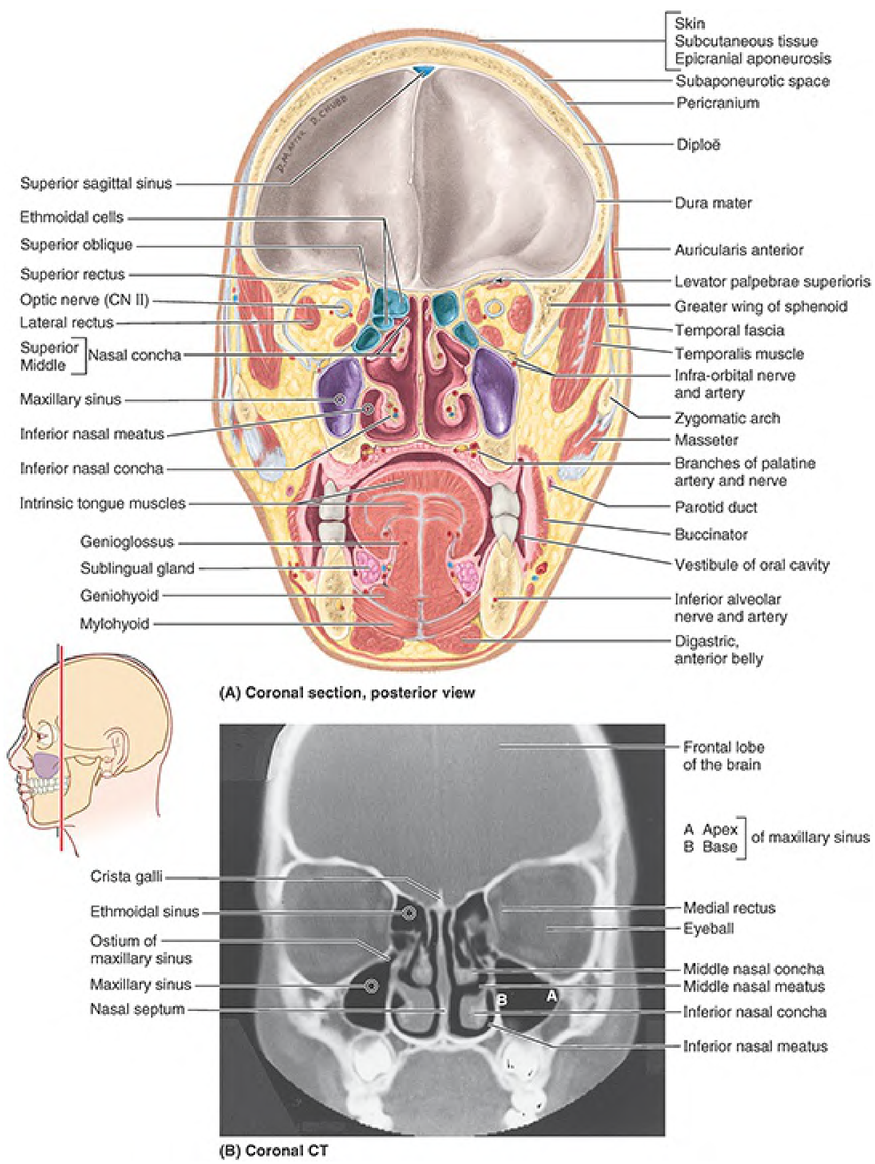


FIGURE 8.110. Paranasal sinuses II. The orientation drawing shows the plane of the section shown in both parts. **A.** Relationships of paranasal sinuses to orbit and nose. The ethmoid bone occupies a central position, with its horizontal

component forming the central part of the anterior cranial fossa superiorly, and the roof of the nasal cavity inferiorly. The ethmoidal cells give attachment to the superior and middle concha and form part of the medial wall of the orbit. The perpendicular plate of the ethmoid forms part of the nasal septum. The maxillary sinus forms the inferior part of the lateral wall of the nose and shares a common wall with the orbit. The middle concha shelters the semilunar hiatus into which the maxillary ostium opens. **B.** CT scan of air-filled paranasal cavities.

SPHENOIDAL SINUSES

The **sphenoidal sinuses** are located in the body of the sphenoid, but they may extend into the wings of this bone (Figs. 8.105 and 8.109). They are unevenly divided and separated by a bony septum. Because of this extensive pneumatization (formation of air cells), the body of the sphenoid is fragile. Only thin plates of bone separate the sinuses from several important structures: the optic nerves and optic chiasm, the pituitary gland, the internal carotid arteries, and the cavernous sinuses. The sphenoidal sinuses are derived from a posterior ethmoidal cell that begins to invade the sphenoid at approximately 2 years of age. In some people, several posterior ethmoidal cells invade the sphenoid, giving rise to multiple sphenoidal sinuses that open separately into the spheno-ethmoidal recess (Fig. 8.105A). The posterior ethmoidal arteries and the posterior ethmoidal nerves that accompany the arteries supply the sphenoidal sinuses (Fig. 8.107).

MAXILLARY SINUSES

The **maxillary sinuses** are the largest of the paranasal sinuses. They occupy the bodies of the maxillae and communicate with the middle nasal meatus (Figs. 8.106, 8.109, and 8.110).

- The **apex** of the maxillary sinus extends toward and often into the zygomatic bone.
- The **base** of the maxillary sinus forms the inferior part of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity.
- The **roof** of the maxillary sinus is formed by the floor of the orbit.
- The **floor** of the maxillary sinus is formed by the alveolar part of the maxilla. The roots of the maxillary teeth, particularly the first two molars, often produce conical elevations in the floor of the sinus.

Each maxillary sinus drains by one or more openings, the **maxillary ostium** (pl. ostia), into the middle nasal meatus of the nasal cavity by way of the semilunar hiatus.

The **arterial supply of the maxillary sinus** is mainly from superior alveolar branches of the **maxillary artery** (see Fig. 8.75; Table 8.12). However, branches of the descending and greater palatine arteries supply the floor of the sinus (Fig. 8.100B). **Innervation of the maxillary sinus** is from the anterior, middle, and posterior **superior alveolar nerves**, which are branches of the maxillary nerve (see Fig. 8.81A).

CLINICAL BOX

NOSE

Nasal Fractures

Because of the prominence of the nose, fractures of the nasal bones are common in automobile accidents and contact sports (unless face guards are worn). Fractures usually result in deformation of the nose, particularly when a lateral force is applied by someone's elbow, for example; epistaxis (nosebleed) usually occurs. In severe fractures, disruption of the bones and cartilages results in displacement of the nose. When the injury results from a direct blow, the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone may also be fractured.

Deviation of Nasal Septum

The nasal septum is usually deviated to one side or the other (Fig. B8.41). This could be the result of a birth injury, but more often, the deviation occurs during adolescence and adulthood from trauma (e.g., during a fist fight). Sometimes, the deviation is so severe that the nasal septum is in contact with the lateral wall of the nasal cavity and often obstructs breathing or exacerbates snoring. The deviation can be corrected surgically.

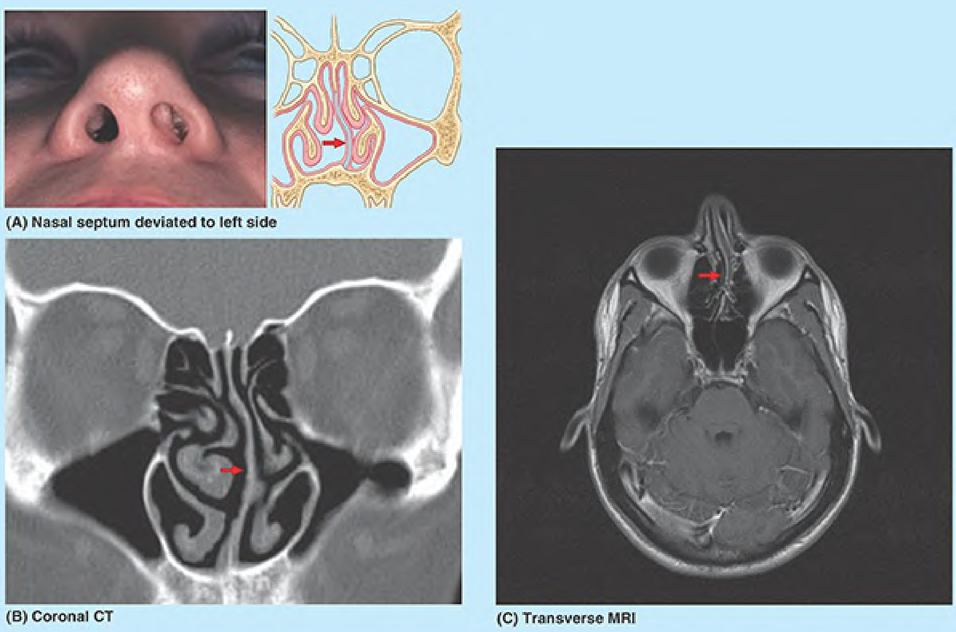


FIGURE B8.41. **Deviated nasal septum.**

Rhinitis

The nasal mucosa becomes swollen and inflamed (rhinitis) during severe upper respiratory infections and allergic reactions (e.g., hay fever). Swelling of the mucosa occurs readily because of its vascularity. Infections of the nasal cavities may spread to the

- anterior cranial fossa through the cribriform plate

- nasopharynx and retropharyngeal soft tissues
- middle ear through the pharyngotympanic tube (auditory tube), which connects the tympanic cavity and nasopharynx
- paranasal sinuses
- lacrimal apparatus and conjunctiva

Epistaxis

Epistaxis (nosebleed) is relatively common because of the rich blood supply to the nasal mucosa. In most cases, the cause of nosebleed is trauma and the bleeding is from an area in the anterior third of the nose (Kiesselbach area) (see Fig. 8.107B). Epistaxis is also associated with infections and hypertension. Spurting of blood from the nose results from rupture of arteries. Mild epistaxis may also result from nose picking, which tears veins in the vestibule of the nose.

Sinusitis

Because the paranasal sinuses are continuous with the nasal cavities through apertures that open into them, infection may spread from the nasal cavities, producing inflammation and swelling of the mucosa of the sinuses (sinusitis) and local pain. Sometimes, several sinuses are inflamed (pansinusitis), and the swelling of the mucosa may block one or more openings of the sinuses into the nasal cavities.

Infection of Ethmoidal Cells

If nasal drainage is blocked, infections of the ethmoidal cells may break through the fragile medial wall of the orbit. Severe infections from this source may cause blindness because some posterior ethmoidal cells lie close to the optic canal, which gives passage to the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery. Spread of infection from these cells could also affect the dural sheath of the optic nerve, causing optic neuritis.

Infection of Maxillary Sinuses

The maxillary sinuses are the most commonly infected, probably because their ostia (openings) are commonly small and are located high on their superomedial walls (see Fig. 8.110). When the mucous membrane of the sinus is congested, the maxillary ostia are often obstructed. Because of the high location of the ostia, when the head is erect, it is impossible for the sinuses to drain until they are full. Because the ostia of the right and left sinuses lie on the medial sides (i.e., are directed toward each other), when lying on one's side only the upper sinus (e.g., the right sinus if lying on the left side) drains. A cold or allergy involving both sinuses can result in nights of rolling from side to side in an attempt to keep the sinuses drained. A maxillary sinus can be cannulated and drained by

passing a cannula from the naris through the maxillary ostium into the sinus.

Relationship of Teeth to Maxillary Sinus

The close proximity of the three maxillary molar teeth to the floor of the maxillary sinus poses potentially serious problems. During removal of a maxillary molar tooth, a fracture of a root of the tooth may occur. If proper retrieval methods are not used, a piece of the root may be driven superiorly into the maxillary sinus creating a communication between the oral cavity and the sinus. This may result in a sinus infection. Because the superior alveolar nerves (branches of the maxillary nerve) supply both the maxillary teeth and the mucous membrane of the maxillary sinuses, inflammation of the mucosa of the sinus is frequently accompanied by a sensation of toothache in the molar teeth.

Transillumination of Sinuses

Transillumination of the maxillary sinuses is performed in a darkened room. A bright light is placed in the patient’s mouth on one side of the hard palate or firmly against the cheek (as in Fig. B8.42A). The light passes through the maxillary sinus and appears as a crescent-shaped, dull glow inferior to the orbit. If a sinus contains excess fluid, a mass, or a thickened mucosa, the glow is decreased. The frontal sinuses can also be transilluminated by directing the light superiorly under the medial aspect of the eyebrow, normally producing a glow superior to the orbit (Fig. B8.42B). Because of the great variation in the development of the sinuses, the pattern and extent of sinus illumination differs from person to person (Bickley, 2021).

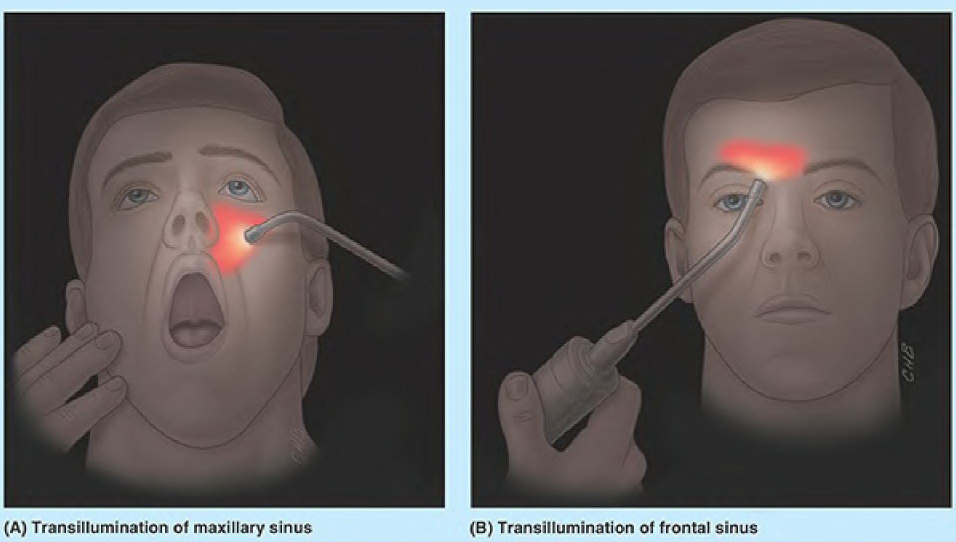


FIGURE B8.42. Transillumination of paranasal sinuses.

The Bottom Line: Nose

The nose is the ventilation system that traverses the head, enabling the flow of air between the external environment and the lower respiratory system (lungs). ■ As air is drawn in through the nose, its chemistry is sampled (smell and taste augmentation), and it is warmed, humidified, and filtered for the lungs. As it exits, heat and moisture are released with it. ■ The nose also provides a drainage route for mucus and lacrimal fluid.

Skeleton of nose: Opening anteriorly via the nares, the nasal cavity is subdivided by a median nasal septum. ■ The protruding external nose and anterior septum benefit from the flexibility provided by a cartilaginous skeleton, reducing the potential for nasal fractures. ■ Except for the septum and floor, the walls of the nasal cavity are highly pneumatized by the paranasal sinuses, and its lateral walls bear conchae.

Nasal cavities: Both the sinuses and conchae increase the secretory surface area for exchange of moisture and heat. ■ Essentially, all surfaces are covered with thick, vascular, secretory mucosa, the anterosuperior portion of which (including that of most of the paranasal sinuses) is supplied by the ophthalmic artery and nerve (CN V_1) and the postero-inferior portion (including that of the maxillary sinus) by the maxillary artery and nerve (CN V_2). ■ The mucosa of the roof and adjacent areas of walls and septum also receive special sensory innervation from the olfactory nerve (CN I). ■ Posteriorly, the nasal cavity is continuous with the nasopharynx via the choanae; the soft palate serves as a valve or gate controlling access to and from the nasal passageway. ■ The bone and mucosa of the lateral walls of this passageway are perforated by openings of the nasolacrimal ducts, the paranasal sinuses and the pharyngotympanic tube. ■ Only the bone is perforated by the pterygopalatine foramen, providing passage of neurovascular structures into the nasal mucosa.

Paranasal sinuses: The paranasal sinuses are named for the bones they occupy. ■ The maxillary sinus is the largest. ■ Most sinuses open into the middle nasal meatus, but the sphenoidal sinuses enter the spheno-ethmoidal recess.

EAR

The **ear**—the organ of hearing and equilibrium (balance)—is divided into the external, middle, and internal ear (Fig. 8.111). The external ear and middle ear are mainly concerned with the transfer of sound to the internal ear, which contains the organ for equilibrium as well as for hearing. The tympanic membrane separates the external ear from the middle ear. The pharyngotympanic tube joins the middle ear to the nasopharynx.

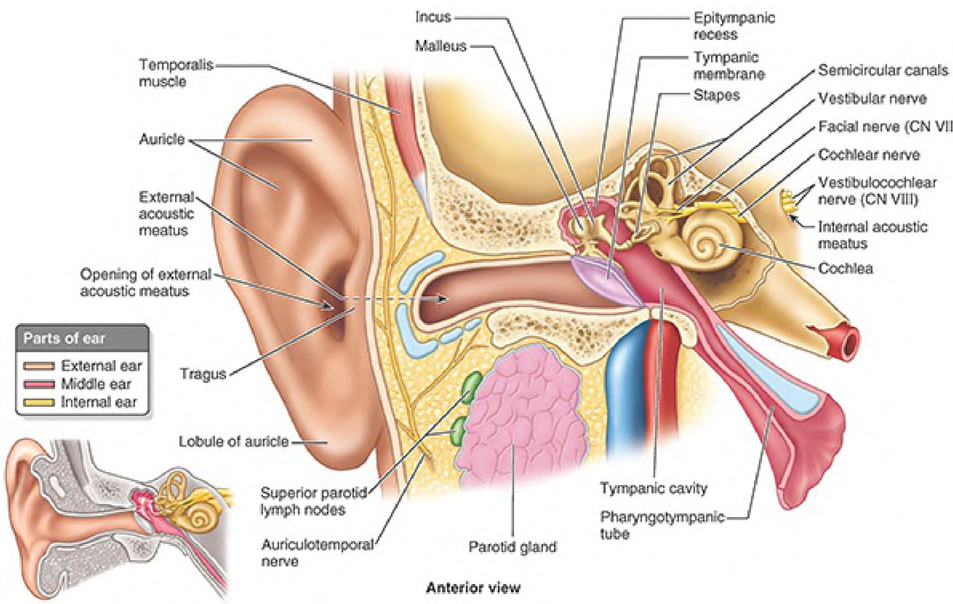


FIGURE 8.111. **Parts of ear.** A coronal section of the ear, with an accompanying orientation figure, demonstrates that the ear has three parts: external, middle, and internal. The external ear consists of the auricle and external acoustic meatus. The middle ear is an air space in which the auditory ossicles are located. The internal ear contains the membranous labyrinth; its chief divisions are the cochlear labyrinth and the vestibular labyrinth.

External Ear

The **external ear** is composed of the shell-like auricle (pinna), which collects sound, and the external acoustic meatus (ear canal), which conducts sound to the tympanic membrane.

AURICLE

The **auricle** (L. auris, ear) is composed of an irregularly shaped plate of elastic cartilage that is covered by thin skin (Fig. 8.112). The auricle has several depressions and elevations. The **concha of the auricle** is the deepest depression. The elevated margin of the auricle is the **helix**. The other depressions and elevations are identified in Figure 8.112. The noncartilaginous **lobule** (lobe) consists of fibrous tissue, fat, and blood vessels. It is easily pierced for taking small blood samples and inserting earrings. The **tragus** (G. tragos, goat; alluding to the hairs that tend to grow from this formation, like a goat's beard) is a tongue-like projection overlapping the opening of the external acoustic meatus. The **arterial supply** to the auricle is derived mainly from the posterior auricular and superficial temporal arteries (Fig. 8.113A).

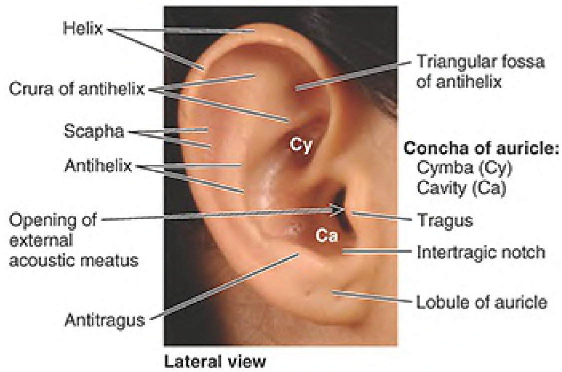


FIGURE 8.112. **External ear.** The parts of the auricle commonly used in clinical descriptions are labeled. The external ear includes the auricle and external acoustic meatus.

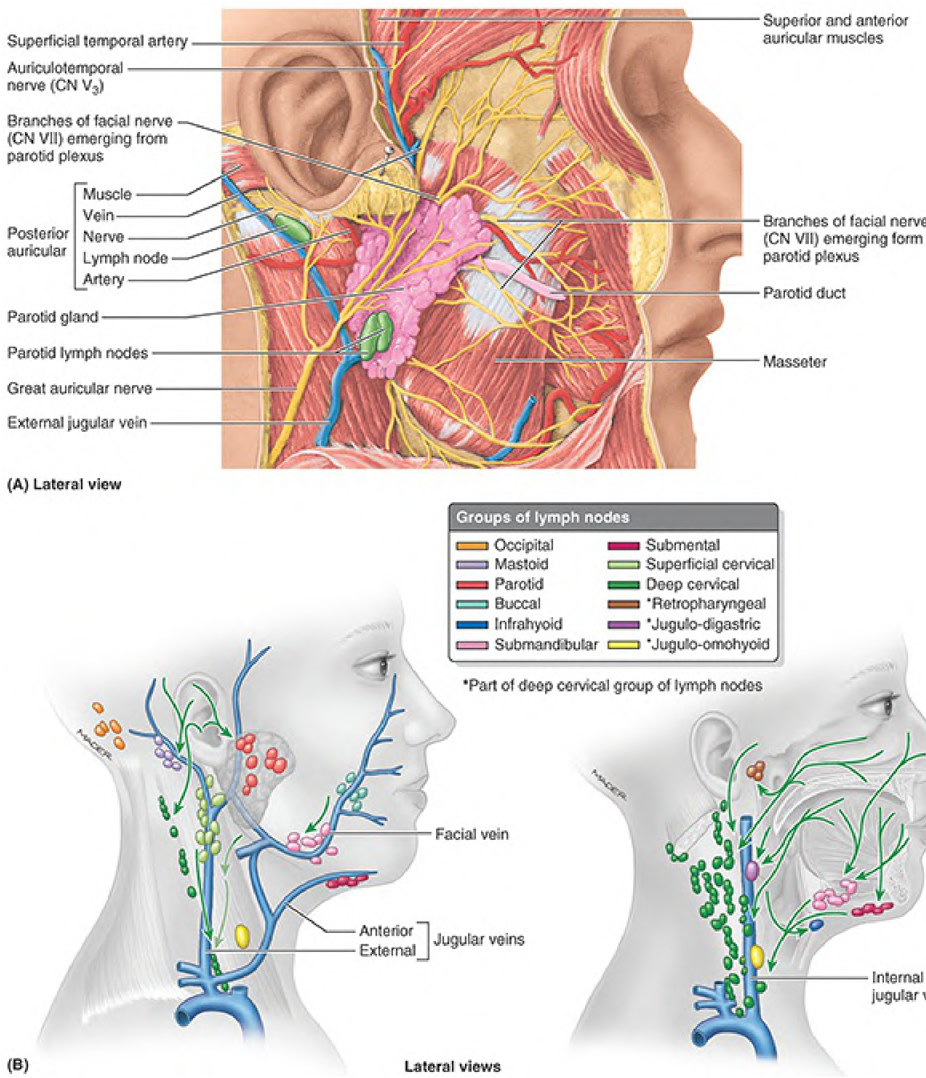


FIGURE 8.113. **Lymphatic drainage of face and head. A.** Dissection of face. The posterior auricular and superficial temporal arteries and veins and the great auricular and auriculotemporal nerves provide the circulation and innervation of the external ear. **B.** Lymphatic drainage. Lymph drains to the parotid lymph nodes and the mastoid and superficial cervical lymph nodes, all which drain to the deep cervical nodes.

The main **nerves to the skin of the auricle** are the great auricular and auriculotemporal nerves. The **great auricular nerve** supplies the cranial (medial) surface (commonly called the "back of the ear") and the posterior part (helix, antihelix, and lobule) of the lateral surface ("front of ear"). The auriculotemporal nerve, a branch of CN V_3, supplies the skin of the anterior aspect of the lateral surface of the auricle, including the rim of the concha, crus of the helix, and tragus (Figs. 8.111 and 8.113A). The skin of the concha is mostly innervated by the auricular branch of the vagus, with minor contribution by the facial nerve.

The **lymphatic drainage** of the auricle is as follows: The lateral surface of the superior half of the auricle drains to the superficial parotid lymph nodes (Fig. 8.113B); the cranial surface of the superior half of the auricle drains to the **mastoid lymph nodes** and deep cervical lymph nodes; and the remainder of the auricle, including the lobule, drains into the **superficial cervical lymph nodes**.

EXTERNAL ACOUSTIC MEATUS AND TYMPANIC MEMBRANE

The **external acoustic meatus** is an ear canal that leads inward through the tympanic part of the temporal bone from the auricle to the tympanic membrane, a distance of 2–3 cm in adults (Fig. 8.111). The lateral third of this slightly S-shaped canal is cartilaginous and is lined with skin that is continuous with the auricular skin. The medial two thirds of the meatus is bony and lined with thin skin that is continuous with the external layer of the tympanic membrane. The ceruminous and sebaceous glands in the subcutaneous tissue of the cartilaginous part of the meatus produce cerumen (earwax).

The **tympanic membrane**, approximately 1 cm in diameter, is a thin, oval semitransparent membrane at the medial end of the external acoustic meatus (Figs. 8.111 and 8.114). This membrane forms a partition between the external acoustic meatus and the tympanic cavity of the middle ear. The tympanic membrane is covered with thin skin externally and mucous membrane of the middle ear internally. Viewed through an otoscope, the tympanic membrane has a concavity toward the external acoustic meatus with a shallow, cone-like central depression, the peak of which is the **umbo** (Fig. 8.114A) (see the Clinical Box "Otoscopic Examination" in this chapter). The central axis of the tympanic membrane passes perpendicularly through the umbo like the handle of an umbrella, running anteriorly and inferiorly as it runs laterally. Thus, the tympanic membrane is oriented like a mini radar or satellite dish positioned to receive signals coming from the ground in front and to the side of the head.

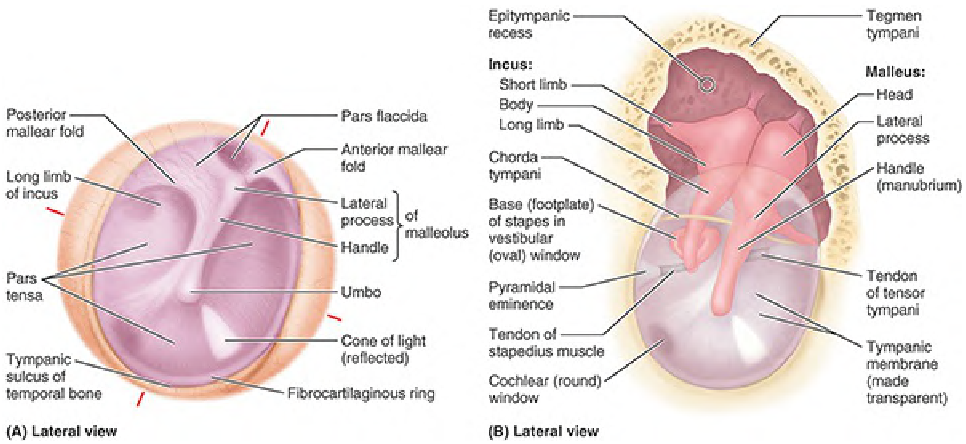


FIGURE 8.114. Tympanic membrane and lateral approach to tympanic cavity. A. Otoscopic view of right tympanic membrane. The cone of light is a reflection of the light of the otoscope. **B.** Ossicles of ear seen through tympanic membrane. The tympanic membrane has been rendered semitransparent, and the lateral wall of the epitympanic recess has been removed to demonstrate the ossicles of the middle ear in situ.

Superior to the lateral process of the malleus (one of the small ear bones, or auditory ossicles, of the middle ear), the membrane is thin and is called the pars **flaccida** (flaccid part). It lacks the radial and circular fibers present in the remainder of the membrane, called the **pars tensa** (tense part). The flaccid part forms the lateral wall of the superior recess of the tympanic cavity.

The tympanic membrane moves in response to air vibrations that pass to it through the external acoustic meatus. Movements of the membrane are transmitted by the auditory ossicles through the middle ear to the internal ear (Fig. 8.111).

The skin of the superior and anterior walls of the external acoustic meatus and the supero-anterior two thirds of the external surface of the tympanic membrane are supplied mainly by the auriculotemporal nerve (Fig. 8.113A), a branch of CN V_3. The skin of the posterior and inferior walls of the meatus and postero-inferior third of the external surface of the tympanic membrane are supplied by the auricular branch of the vagus (CN X). The internal surface of the tympanic membrane is supplied by the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX).

Middle Ear

The **tympanic cavity** or **cavity of the middle ear** is the narrow air-filled chamber in the petrous part of the temporal bone (Figs. 8.111 and 8.115). The cavity has two parts: the **tympanic cavity proper**, the space directly internal to the tympanic membrane, and the **epitympanic recess**, the space superior to the membrane. The tympanic cavity is connected anteromedially with the nasopharynx by the pharyngotympanic tube and posterosuperiorly with the mastoid cells through the mastoid antrum (Fig. 8.116). The tympanic cavity is lined with mucous membrane that is continuous with the lining of the pharyngotympanic tube, mastoid cells, and mastoid antrum.

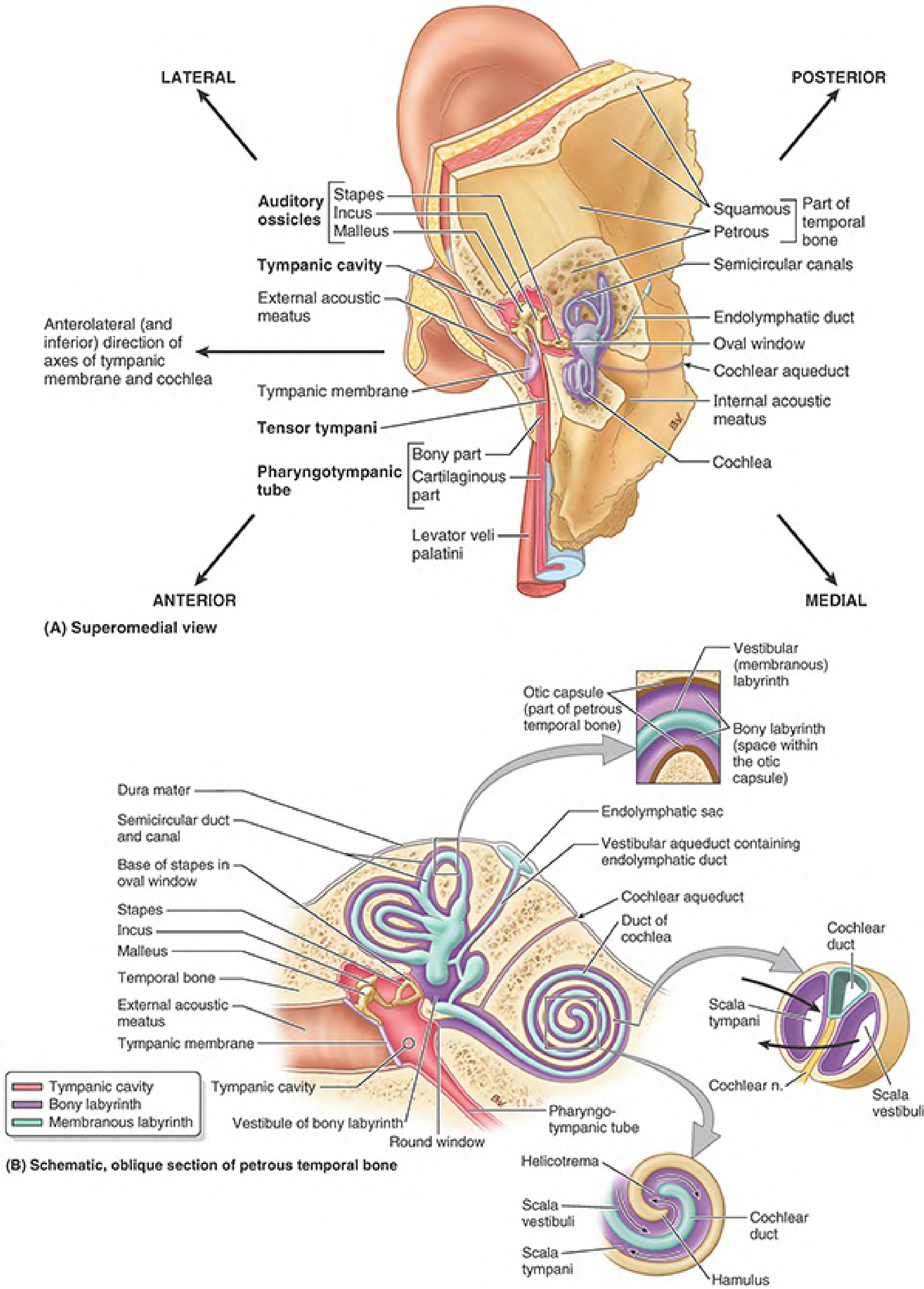


FIGURE 8.115. General scheme and orientation of components of ear. A. Overview. The external acoustic meatus runs lateral to medial. The axis of the tympanic membrane and the axis about which the cochlea winds runs inferiorly and anteriorly as it proceeds laterally. The long axes of the bony and membranous labyrinths and of the pharyngotympanic tube and parallel tensor tympani and levator palatini muscles lie perpendicular to those of the tympanic membrane and cochlea (i.e., they run inferiorly and anteriorly as they proceed medially). **B.** Middle and internal ear. The middle ear lies between the tympanic membrane and the internal ear. Three auditory ossicles stretch from the lateral to the medial wall of the tympanic cavity. The pharyngotympanic tube is a communication between the anterior wall of the tympanic cavity and the lateral wall of the nasopharynx. The internal ear is composed of a closed system of membranous tubes and bulbs, the membranous labyrinth, which is filled with a fluid called endolymph (blue) and bathed in surrounding fluid called perilymph (purple).

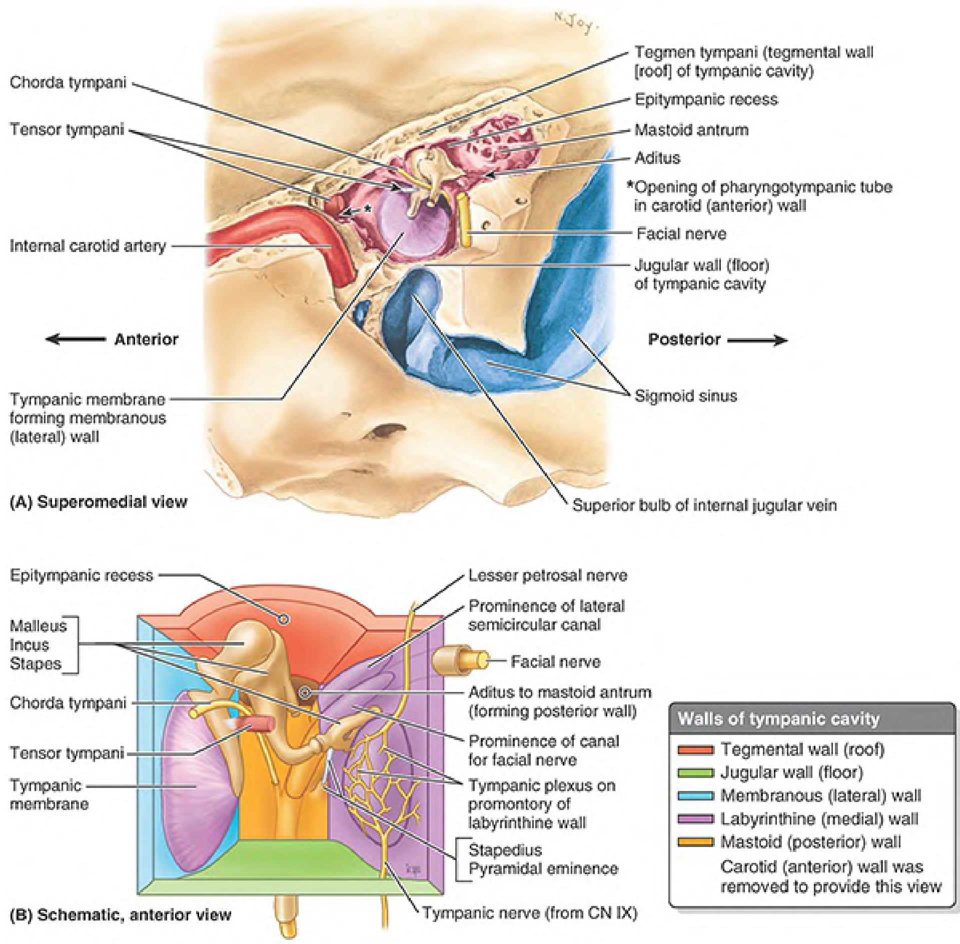


FIGURE 8.116. **Walls of tympanic cavity. A.** Dissection of medial aspect. The tegmen tympani, forming the roof of the tympanic cavity and the mastoid antrum, is fairly thick in this specimen; usually, it is extremely thin. The internal carotid artery is the main relation of the anterior wall, the internal jugular vein is the main relation of the floor, and the facial nerve (CN VII) is a main feature of the posterior wall. The chorda tympani passes between the malleus and the incus. **B.** Schematic. The carotid (anterior) wall of the tympanic cavity has been removed. The tympanic membrane forms most of the membranous (lateral) wall; superior to it is the epitympanic recess, in which are housed the larger parts of the malleus and incus. Branches of the tympanic plexus provide innervation to the mucosa of the middle ear and adjacent pharyngotympanic tube. However, one branch, the lesser petrosal nerve, is conveying presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the otic ganglion for secretomotor innervation of the parotid gland.

The contents of the middle ear include the following:

- Auditory ossicles (malleus, incus, and stapes)
- Stapedius and tensor tympani muscles
- Chorda tympani nerve, a branch of CN VII (Fig. 8.116)
- Tympanic plexus of nerves

WALLS OF TYMPANIC CAVITY

The middle ear is shaped like a red blood cell or a narrow box with concave sides (Fig. 8.116B). It has six walls:

1. The **tegmental wall (roof)** is formed by a thin plate of bone, the tegmen tympani, which

separates the tympanic cavity from the dura mater on the floor of the middle cranial fossa (Fig. 8.116A).
2. The **jugular wall (floor)** is formed by a layer of bone that separates the tympanic cavity from the superior bulb of the internal jugular vein (Fig. 8.116A, B).
3. The **membranous (lateral) wall** is formed almost entirely by the peaked convexity of the tympanic membrane; superiorly, it is formed by the lateral bony wall of the epitympanic recess. The handle of the malleus is attached to the tympanic membrane, and its head extends into the epitympanic recess.
4. The **labyrinthine (medial) wall** separates the tympanic cavity from the internal ear. It also features the promontory of the labyrinthine wall, formed by the initial part (basal turn) of the cochlea, and the oval and round windows, which, in a dry cranium, communicate with the internal ear.
5. The **mastoid (posterior) wall** features an opening in its superior part, the **aditus (L., access) to the mastoid antrum**, connecting the tympanic cavity to the mastoid cells. The canal for the facial nerve descends between the posterior wall and the antrum, medial to the aditus.
6. The anterior **carotid wall** separates the tympanic cavity from the carotid canal; superiorly, it has the **opening of the pharyngotympanic tube** and the **canal for the tensor tympani**.
7. The **mastoid antrum** is a cavity in the mastoid process of the temporal bone (Fig. 8.116A). The antrum (L. from G., cave), like the tympanic cavity, is separated from the middle cranial fossa by a thin plate of the temporal bone, called the **tegmen tympani**. This structure forms the tegmental wall (roof) for the ear cavities and is also part of the floor of the lateral part of the middle cranial fossa. The mastoid antrum is the common cavity into which the mastoid cells open. The antrum and mastoid cells are lined by mucous membrane that is continuous with the lining of the middle ear. Antero-inferiorly, the antrum is related to the canal for the facial nerve.

PHARYNGOTYMPANIC TUBE

The **pharyngotympanic tube (auditory tube)**, also commonly referred to as the "eustachian tube," connects the tympanic cavity to the nasopharynx (upper or nasal part of the pharynx), where it opens posterior to the inferior nasal meatus (Fig. 8.115). The posterolateral third of the tube is bony, and the remainder is cartilaginous. The pharyngotympanic tube is lined by mucous membrane that is continuous posteriorly with that of the tympanic cavity and anteriorly with that of the nasopharynx.

The function of the pharyngotympanic tube is to equalize pressure in the middle ear with the atmospheric pressure, thereby allowing free movement of the tympanic membrane. By allowing air to enter and leave the tympanic cavity, this tube balances the pressure on both sides of the membrane. Because the walls of the cartilaginous part of the tube are normally in apposition, the tube must be actively opened. It is opened by a combination of the expanding girth of the belly of the levator veli palatini, as it contracts longitudinally, pushing against one wall and the tensor veli palatini pulling on the other. Because these are muscles of the soft palate, equalizing pressure ("popping the eardrums") is commonly associated with activities such as yawning and

swallowing.

The arteries of the pharyngotympanic tube are derived from the ascending pharyngeal artery, a branch of the external carotid artery, and the middle meningeal artery and artery of the pterygoid canal, branches of the maxillary artery (Fig. 8.117; Table 8.12).

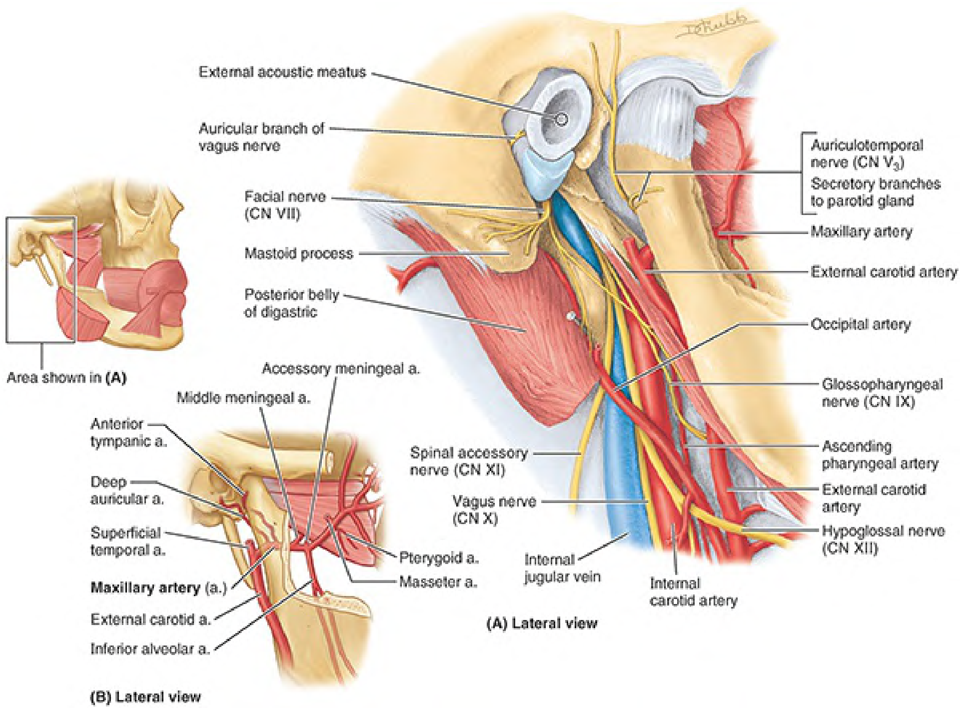


FIGURE 8.117. Neurovascular structures in vicinity of external and middle ear. A. Dissection of structures deep to parotid bed. The facial nerve (CN VII), the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, and the nerve to it are retracted. The deeply placed ascending pharyngeal artery is the only medial branch of the external carotid artery. It supplies the pharynx, palatine tonsil, pharyngotympanic tube, and the medial wall of the tympanic cavity before it terminates by sending meningeal branches to the cranial cavity. **B.** Maxillary artery and its branches. The branches of the first (mandibular) part supply the external acoustic meatus and tympanic membrane. The middle meningeal artery sends branches to the pharyngotympanic tube before entering the cranium through the foramen spinosum.

The veins of the pharyngotympanic tube drain into the pterygoid venous plexus. The **lymphatic drainage** of the tube is to the deep cervical lymph nodes (Fig. 8.113B).

The **nerves of the pharyngotympanic tube** arise from the tympanic plexus (Fig. 8.116B), which is formed by fibers of the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX). Anteriorly, the tube also receives fibers from the pterygopalatine ganglion (see Fig. 8.108A).

AUDITORY OSSICLES

The **auditory ossicles** form a mobile chain of small bones across the tympanic cavity from the tympanic membrane to the **oval window** (L. fenestra vestibuli), an oval opening on the labyrinthine wall of the tympanic cavity leading to the vestibule of the bony labyrinth (Figs. 8.115B and 8.118A). These ossicles are the first bones to be fully ossified during development and are essentially mature at birth. The bone from which they are formed is exceptionally dense (hard). The ossicles are covered with the mucous membrane lining the tympanic cavity; but

unlike other bones, they lack a surrounding layer of osteogenic periosteum.

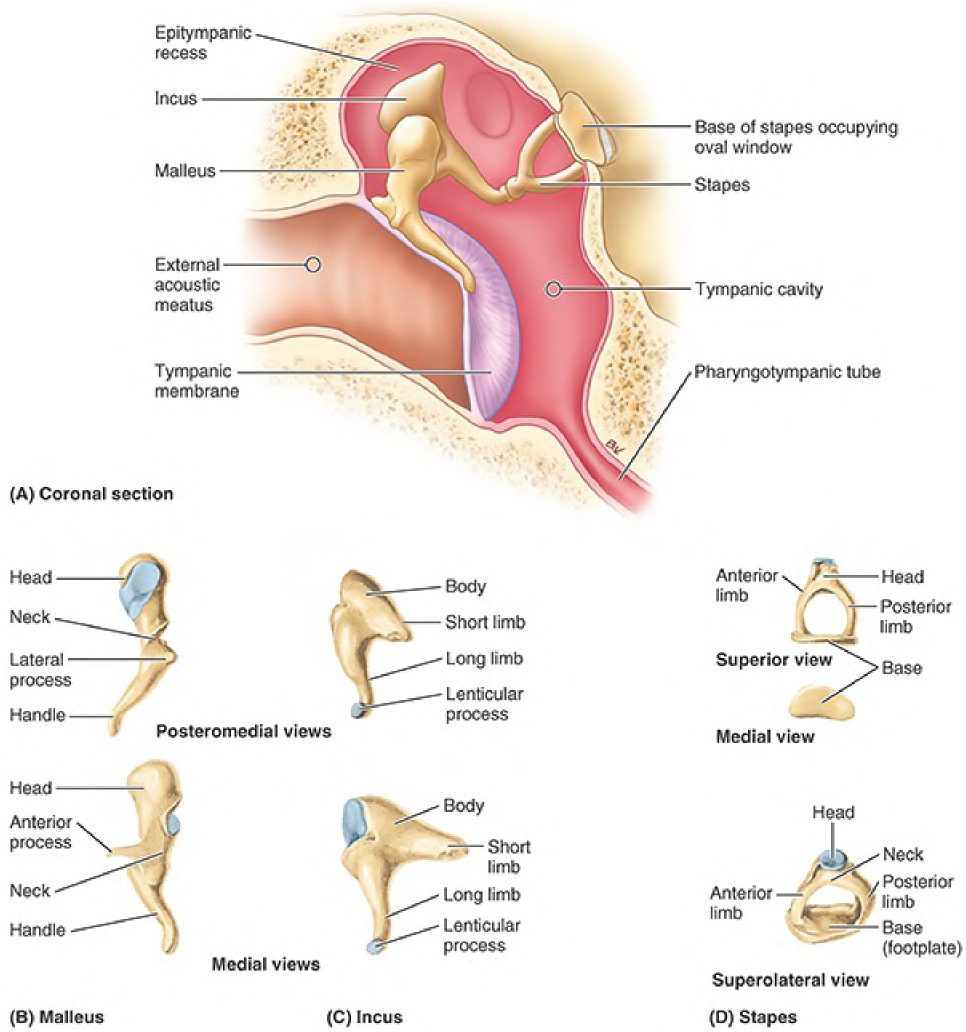


FIGURE 8.118. **Auditory ossicles. A.** Ossicles in situ. **B–D.** Isolated ossicles.

Malleus. The **malleus** (L., a hammer) attaches to the tympanic membrane. The rounded superior **head of the malleus** lies in the epitympanic recess (Fig. 8.118B). The **neck of the malleus** lies against the flaccid part of the tympanic membrane, and the **handle of the malleus** is embedded in the tympanic membrane, with its tip at the umbo; thus, the malleus moves with the membrane. The head of the malleus articulates with the incus; the tendon of the tensor tympani inserts into its handle near the neck. The chorda tympani crosses the medial surface of the neck of the malleus. The malleus functions as a lever, with the longer of its two processes and its handle attached to the tympanic membrane.

Incus. The **incus** (L., an anvil) is located between the malleus and the stapes and articulates with them. It has a **body** and two limbs. Its large body lies in the epitympanic recess (Fig. 8.118A), where it articulates with the head of the malleus (Fig. 8.118C). The **long limb** lies parallel to the handle of the malleus, and its interior end articulates with the stapes by way of the **lenticular process**, a medially directed projection. The **short limb** is connected by a ligament to

the posterior wall of the tympanic cavity.

Stapes. The **stapes** (L., stirrup) is the smallest ossicle. It has a head, two limbs, and a base (Fig. 8.118D). Its head, directed laterally, articulates with the incus (Fig. 8.118A). The **base** (footplate) of the stapes fits into the oval window on the medial wall of the tympanic cavity. The oval base is attached to the margins of the oval window by an anular ligament. The base of the stapes is considerably smaller than the tympanic membrane; as a result, the vibratory force of the stapes is increased approximately 10 times over that of the tympanic membrane. Consequently, the auditory ossicles increase the force but decrease the amplitude of the vibrations transmitted from the tympanic membrane through the ossicles to the internal ear (see Fig. 8.122).

Muscles Associated with Auditory Ossicles. Two muscles dampen or resist movements of the auditory ossicles; one also dampens movements (vibration) of the tympanic membrane. The **tensor tympani** is a short muscle that arises from the superior surface of the cartilaginous part of the pharyngotympanic tube, the greater wing of the sphenoid, and the petrous part of the temporal bone (Figs. 8.115A and 8.116). The muscle inserts into the handle of the malleus and pulls the handle medially, which tenses the tympanic membrane, reducing the amplitude of its oscillations. This action tends to prevent damage to the internal ear when one is exposed to loud sounds. The tensor tympani is supplied by the mandibular nerve (CN V_3).

The **stapedius** is a tiny muscle inside the **pyramidal eminence** (pyramid), a hollow, cone-shaped prominence on the posterior wall of the tympanic cavity (Figs. 8.114B and 8.116B). The tendon of the stapedius enters the tympanic cavity by emerging from a pinpoint foramen in the apex of the eminence and inserts on the neck of the stapes. The stapedius pulls the stapes posteriorly and tilts its base in the oval window, thereby tightening the anular ligament and reducing the oscillatory range. It also prevents excessive movement of the stapes. The nerve to the stapedius arises from the facial nerve (CN VII).

Internal Ear

The **internal ear** contains the **vestibulocochlear organ** concerned with the reception of sound and the maintenance of balance. Buried in the petrous part of the temporal bone (Figs. 8.115 and 8.119A), the internal ear consists of the sacs and ducts of the membranous labyrinth. The membranous labyrinth, containing endolymph, is suspended within the perilymph-filled bony labyrinth, either by delicate filaments similar to the filaments of arachnoid mater that traverse the subarachnoid space or by the substantial spiral ligament. It does not float. These fluids are involved in stimulating the end organs for balance and hearing, respectively.

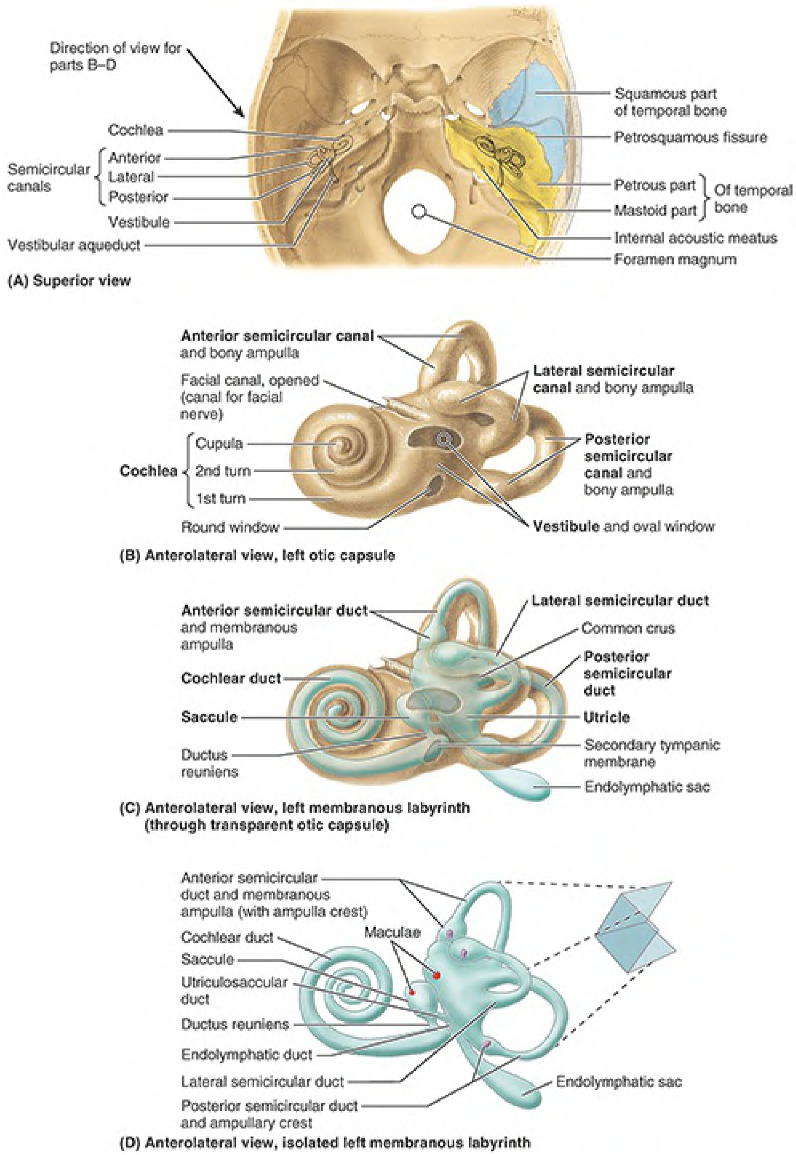


FIGURE 8.119. Bony and membranous labyrinths of internal ear. A. Interior of base of cranium showing the temporal bone and the location of the bony labyrinth. **B.** Otic capsule. The walls of the bony labyrinth have been carved out of the petrous temporal bone. **C.** Left membranous labyrinth through transparent disc capsule. **D.** Membranous labyrinth. Shown after removal from the bony labyrinth, which is a closed system of ducts and chambers filled with endolymph and bathed by perilymph. It has three parts: the cochlear duct, which occupies the cochlea; the saccule and utricle, which occupy the vestibule; and the three semicircular ducts, which occupy the semicircular canals. The utricle communicates with the saccule through the utriculosaccular duct. The lateral semicircular duct lies in the horizontal plane and is more horizontal than it appears in this drawing.

BONY LABYRINTH

The **bony labyrinth** is a series of cavities (cochlea, vestibule, and semicircular canals) contained within the **otic capsule** of the petrous part of the temporal bone (Figs. 8.115A and 8.119B). The otic capsule is made of bone that is denser than the remainder of the petrous temporal bone and can be isolated (carved) from it using a dental drill. The otic capsule is often erroneously illustrated and identified as being the bony labyrinth. However, the bony labyrinth is the fluid-

filled space, which is surrounded by the otic capsule. Thus, the bony labyrinth is most accurately represented by a cast of the otic capsule after removal of the surrounding bone.

Cochlea. The cochlea is the shell-shaped part of the bony labyrinth that contains the **cochlear duct** (Fig. 8.119C) and is the part of the internal ear concerned with hearing. The **spiral canal of the cochlea** begins at the vestibule and makes 2.5 turns around a bony core, the **modiolus** (Fig. 8.120), the cone-shaped core of spongy bone about which the spiral canal of the cochlea turns. The modiolus contains canals for blood vessels and for distribution of the branches of the cochlear nerve. The apex of the cone-shaped modiolus, like the axis of the tympanic membrane, is directed laterally, anteriorly, and inferiorly. The large basal turn of the cochlea produces the promontory of the labyrinthine wall of the tympanic cavity (Fig. 8.116B). At the basal turn, the bony labyrinth communicates with the subarachnoid space superior to the jugular foramen through the **cochlear aqueduct** (Fig. 8.115B). It also features the **round window** (L. fenestra cochleae), closed by the **secondary tympanic membrane** (Fig. 8.119B, C).

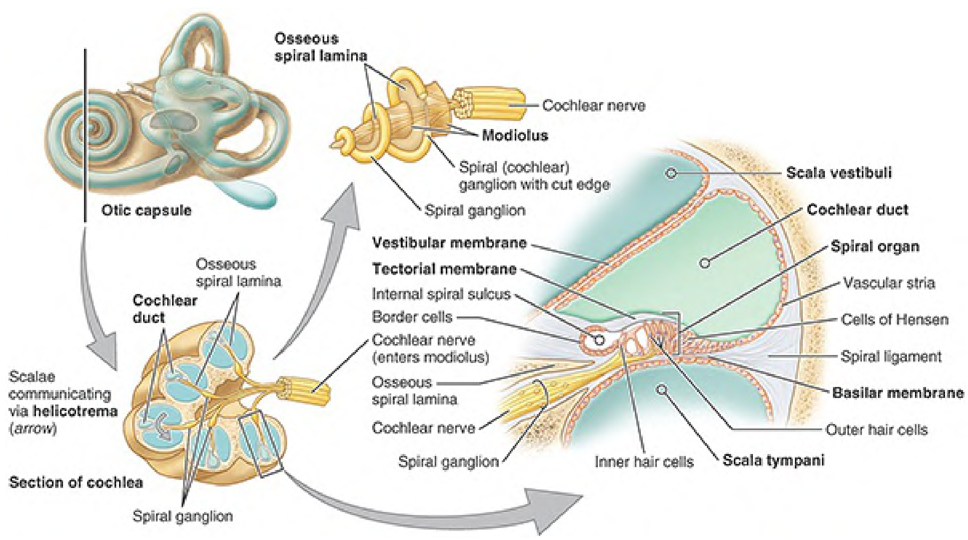


FIGURE 8.120. Structure of cochlea. The cochlea has been sectioned along the axis about which the cochlea winds (see orientation figure). An isolated, cone-like, bony core of the cochlea, the modiolus, is shown after the turns of the cochlea are removed, leaving only the spiral lamina winding around it like the thread of a screw. Details of the area enclosed in the rectangle are also shown.

Vestibule of Bony Labyrinth. The **vestibule of the bony labyrinth** is a small oval chamber (approximately 5 mm long) that contains the **utricle** and **saccule** (Fig. 8.119C) and parts of the balancing apparatus (vestibular labyrinth). The vestibule features the oval window on its lateral wall, occupied by the base of the stapes. The vestibule is continuous with the bony cochlea anteriorly, the semicircular canals posteriorly, and the posterior cranial fossa by the **vestibular aqueduct** (Fig. 8.115B). The aqueduct extends to the posterior surface of the petrous part of the temporal bone, where it opens posterolateral to the internal acoustic meatus (Fig. 8.119A). The vestibular aqueduct transmits the endolymphatic duct (Figs. 8.115B and 8.119D) and two small blood vessels.

Semicircular Canals. The **semicircular canals (anterior, posterior, and lateral)** communicate with the vestibule of the bony labyrinth (Fig. 8.119B). The canals lie

posterosuperior to the vestibule into which they open; they are set at right angles to each other. The canals occupy three planes in space. Each semicircular canal forms approximately two thirds of a circle and is approximately 1.5 mm in diameter, except at one end where there is a swelling, the **bony ampulla**. The canals have only five openings into the vestibule because the anterior and posterior canals have one limb common to both. Lodged within the canals are the semicircular ducts (Fig. 8.119C, D).

MEMBRANOUS LABYRINTH

The **membranous labyrinth** consists of a series of communicating sacs and ducts that are suspended in the bony labyrinth (Fig. 8.119C). The labyrinth contains **endolymph**, a watery fluid similar in composition to intracellular fluid, therefore differing in composition from the surrounding **perilymph** (which is like extracellular fluid) that fills the remainder of the bony labyrinth. The membranous labyrinth—composed of two functional divisions, (1) the vestibular labyrinth and (2) the cochlear labyrinth—consists of more parts than does the bony labyrinth:

1. **Vestibular labyrinth**, concerned with equilibrium, is composed of
   - the utricle and saccule, two small communicating sacs occupying the vestibule of the bony labyrinth
   - the utriculosaccular duct, connecting the utricle and saccule
   - three semicircular ducts, occupying the semicircular canals
   - the endolymphatic duct, ending at the endolymphatic sac
2. **Cochlear labyrinth**, concerned with hearing, is composed of the cochlear duct occupying the spiral canal of the cochlea.

The two divisions of the membranous labyrinth are connected via the **ductus reuniens**, extending between the saccule and the cochlear duct.

The **semicircular ducts** open into the utricle through five openings, reflective of the way the surrounding semicircular canals open into the vestibule. The utricle communicates with the saccule through the **utriculosaccular duct**, from which the endolymphatic duct arises (Fig. 8.119D).

The utricle and saccule have specialized areas of sensory epithelium called **maculae**. The **macula of the utricle** (L. macula utriculi) is in the floor of the utricle, parallel with the base of the cranium, whereas the **macula of the saccule** (L. macula sacculi) is vertically placed on the medial wall of the saccule. The maculae are sensitive to gravity and linear acceleration or deceleration. **Hair cells** (nonneuronal mechanoreceptors stimulated by the deflection of sensory hairs, or stereocilia) **in the maculae** are innervated by fibers of the vestibular division of the vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII), the **vestibular nerve**. The cell bodies of the primary sensory neurons are in the **vestibular ganglion** (Fig. 8.121) in the internal acoustic meatus.

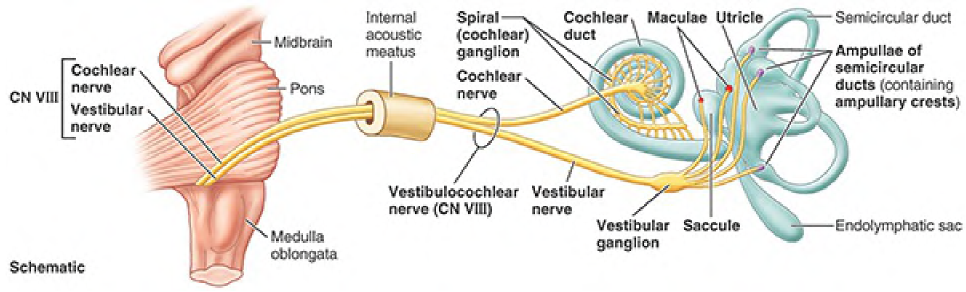


FIGURE 8.121. Vestibulocochlear nerve. CN VIII has two parts: the cochlear nerve (the nerve of hearing) and the vestibular nerve (the nerve of balance). The cell bodies of the sensory fibers that make up the two parts of this nerve constitute the spiral and vestibular ganglia.

The endolymphatic duct traverses the vestibular aqueduct (Fig. 8.115B) and emerges through the bone of the posterior cranial fossa, where it expands into a blind pouch, the **endolymphatic sac** (Figs. 8.115B, 8.119C, and 8.121). The endolymphatic sac is located between the two layers of dura mater on the posterior surface of the petrous part of the temporal bone. The sac is a storage reservoir for excess endolymph, formed by the blood capillaries in the membranous labyrinth.

The **spiral ligament**, a spiral thickening of the periosteal lining of the cochlear canal, secures the cochlear duct to the spiral canal of the cochlea (Fig. 8.120). The vestibular labyrinth is suspended by delicate filaments that traverse the perilymph.

Semicircular Ducts. Each semicircular duct has an **ampulla** at one end containing a sensory area, the **ampullary crest** (L. crista ampullari) (Fig. 8.121). The crests are sensors rotational acceleration or deceleration of the head, recording movements of the endolymph in the ampulla resulting from rotation of the head in the plane of the duct. The **hair cells of the crests**, like those of the maculae, stimulate primary sensory neurons of the vestibular nerve, whose cell bodies are also in the vestibular ganglion.

Cochlear Duct. The **cochlear duct** is a spiral tube, closed at one end and triangular in cross-section. The duct is firmly suspended across the cochlear canal between the spiral ligament on the external wall of the cochlear canal (Fig. 8.120) and the **osseous spiral lamina** of the modiolus. Spanning the spiral canal in this manner, the endolymph-filled cochlear duct divides the perilymph-filled spiral canal into two channels that are continuous at the apex of the cochlea at the **helicotrema**, a semilunar communication at the apex of the cochlea.

Waves of hydraulic pressure created in the perilymph of the vestibule by the vibrations of the base of the stapes ascend to the apex of the cochlea by one channel, the scala vestibuli (Fig. 8.122). The pressure waves then pass through the helicotrema and descend back to the basal turn of the cochlea by the other channel, the **scala tympani**. Here, the pressure waves again become vibrations, this time of the secondary tympanic membrane in the round window, and the energy initially received by the (primary) tympanic membrane is finally dissipated into the air of the tympanic cavity.

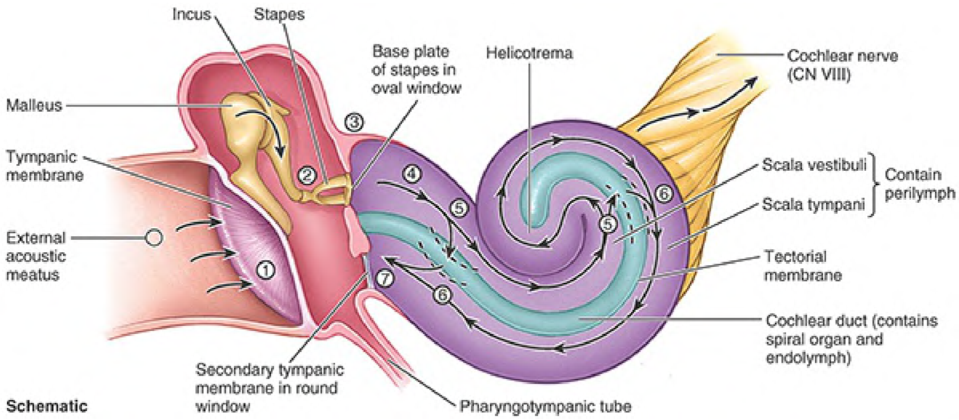


FIGURE 8.122. Sound transmission through ear. The cochlea is depicted schematically as if consisting of a single coil to demonstrate the transmission of sound stimuli through the ear. 1, Sound waves entering the external ear strike the tympanic membrane, causing it to vibrate. 2, Vibrations initiated at the tympanic membrane are transmitted through the ossicles of the middle ear and their articulations. 3, The base of the stapes vibrates with increased strength and decreased amplitude in the oval window. 4, Vibrations of the base of the stapes create pressure waves in the perilymph of the scala vestibuli. 5, Pressure waves in the scala vestibuli cause displacement of the basilar membrane of the cochlear duct. Short waves (high pitch) cause displacement near the oval window. Longer waves (low pitch) cause more distant displacement, nearer to the helicotrema at the apex of the cochlea. Movement of the basilar membrane bends the hair cells of the spiral organ. Neurotransmitter is released, stimulating action potentials conveyed by the cochlear nerve to the brain. 6, Vibrations are transferred across the cochlear duct to the perilymph of the scala tympani. 7, Pressure waves in the perilymph are dissipated (dampened) by the secondary tympanic membrane at the round window into the air of the tympanic cavity.

The roof of the cochlear duct is formed by the **vestibular membrane**. The floor of the duct is also formed by part of the duct, the **basilar membrane**, plus the outer edge of the osseous spiral lamina. The receptor of auditory stimuli is the **spiral organ** (of Corti), situated on the basilar membrane (Fig. 8.120). It is overlaid by the gelatinous **tectorial membrane**.

The spiral organ contains hair cells, the tips of which are embedded in the tectorial membrane. The organ is stimulated to respond by deformation of the cochlear duct induced by the hydraulic pressure waves in the perilymph, which ascend and descend in the surrounding scalae vestibuli and tympani. The hair cells of the spiral organ are innervated by the cochlear division of the vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII), the **cochlear nerve**. The cell bodies of the primary sensory neurons are in the spiral (cochlear) ganglion, located at the root of the spiral lamina of the cochlea.

INTERNAL ACOUSTIC MEATUS

The **internal acoustic meatus** is a narrow canal that runs laterally for approximately 1 cm within the petrous part of the temporal bone (Fig. 8.119A). The **internal acoustic meatus opening** is in the posteromedial part of this bone, in line with the external acoustic meatus. The internal acoustic meatus is closed laterally by a thin, perforated plate of bone that separates it from the internal ear. Through this plate pass the facial nerve (CN VII), the vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII) and its divisions, and blood vessels. The vestibulocochlear nerve divides near the lateral end of the internal acoustic meatus into two parts: a cochlear nerve and a vestibular nerve (Fig. 8.121).

CLINICAL BOX

EAR

External Ear Injury

Bleeding within the auricle resulting from trauma may produce an auricular hematoma. A localized collection of blood forms between the perichondrium and auricular cartilage, causing distortion of the contours of the auricle. As the hematoma enlarges, it compromises the blood supply to the cartilage. If untreated (e.g., by aspiration of blood), fibrosis (formation of fibrous tissue) develops in the overlying skin, forming a deformed auricle (e.g., the cauliflower or boxer's ear of some professional boxers and wrestlers).

Otoscopic Examination

Examination of the external acoustic meatus and tympanic membrane begins by straightening the meatus. In adults, the helix is grasped and pulled posterosuperiorly (up, out, and back). These movements reduce the curvature of the external acoustic meatus, facilitating insertion of the otoscope (Fig. B8.43A). The meatus is relatively short in infants; therefore, extra care must be exercised to prevent injury to the tympanic membrane. The meatus is straightened in infants by pulling the auricle inferoposteriorly (down and back). The examination also provides a clue to tenderness, which can indicate inflammation of the auricle and/or the meatus.

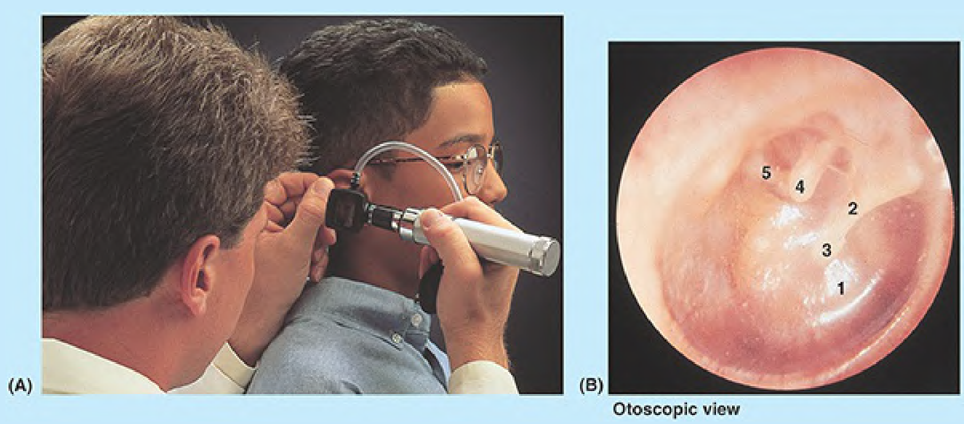


FIGURE B8.43. Otoscopic examination. A. Technique. **B.** Normal tympanic membrane. 1, cone of light; 2, handle of malleus; 3, umbo; 4, long limb of incus; 5, posterior limb of stapes.

The tympanic membrane is normally translucent and pearly gray (Fig. B8.43B). The handle of the malleus is usually visible near the center of the membrane (the umbo). From

the umbo at the inferior end of the handle, a bright cone of light is reflected from the otoscope’s illuminator. This light reflex is visible radiating antero-inferiorly in the healthy ear.

Acute Otitis Externa

Otitis externa is an inflammation of the external acoustic meatus. The infection often develops in swimmers who do not dry their meatus (ear canals) after swimming and/or use ear drops. The inflammation may also be the result of a bacterial infection of the skin lining the meatus. The affected individual complains of itching and pain in the external ear. Pulling the auricle or applying pressure on the tragus increases the pain.

Otitis Media

An earache and a bulging red tympanic membrane may indicate there is pus or fluid in the middle ear, which is a sign of otitis media (Fig. B8.44A). Infection of the middle ear is often secondary to upper respiratory infections. Inflammation and swelling of the mucous membrane lining the tympanic cavity may cause partial or complete blockage of the pharyngotympanic tube (see Fig. 8.111). The tympanic membrane becomes red and bulges, and the person may complain of “ear popping” or crackling. An amber-colored bloody fluid may be observed through the tympanic membrane. If untreated, otitis media may produce impaired hearing owing to scarring of the auditory ossicles, limiting their ability to move in response to sound.

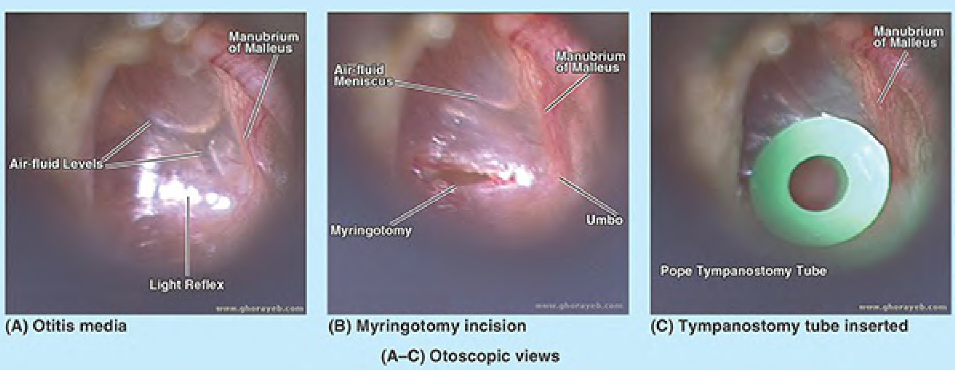


FIGURE B8.44. Otitis media and surgical treatment.

Perforation of Tympanic Membrane

Perforation of the tympanic membrane (“ruptured eardrum”) may result from otitis media and is one of several causes of middle ear deafness. Perforation may also result from foreign bodies in the external acoustic meatus, trauma, or excessive pressure (e.g., during scuba diving). Minor ruptures of the tympanic membrane often heal spontaneously. Large ruptures usually require surgical repair. Because the superior half of

the tympanic membrane is much more vascular than the inferior half, incisions to release pus from a middle ear abscess (myringotomy), for example, are made postero-inferiorly through the membrane (Fig. B8.44B). This incision also avoids injury to the chorda tympani nerve and auditory ossicles. In persons with chronic middle ear infections, myringotomy may be followed by insertion of tympanostomy or pressure-equalization (PE) tubes in the incision to enable drainage of effusion and ventilation of pressure (Fig. B8.44C).

Mastoiditis

Infections of the mastoid antrum and mastoid cells (mastoiditis) result from a middle ear infection that causes inflammation of the mastoid process (Fig. B8.45).

Infections may spread superiorly into the middle cranial fossa through the petrosquamous fissure in children and cause osteomyelitis (bone infection) of the tegmen tympani. Since the advent of antibiotics, mastoiditis is uncommon. During operations for mastoiditis, surgeons are conscious of the course of the facial nerve to avoid injuring it. One point of access to the tympanic cavity is through the mastoid antrum. In children, only a thin plate of bone must be removed from the lateral wall of the antrum to expose the tympanic cavity. In adults, bone must be penetrated for 15 mm or more. At present, most mastoidectomies are endaural (i.e., performed through the posterior wall of the external acoustic meatus).

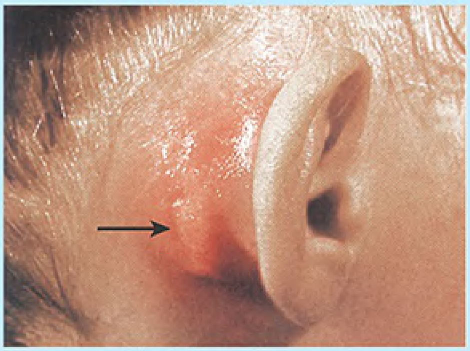


FIGURE B8.45. Mastoiditis (ruptured retro-auricular abscess).

Blockage of Pharyngotympanic Tube

The pharyngotympanic tube forms a route for an infection to pass from the nasopharynx to the tympanic cavity. This tube is easily blocked by swelling of its mucous membrane, even as a result of mild infections (e.g., a cold), because the walls of its cartilaginous part are normally already in apposition. When the pharyngotympanic tube is occluded, residual air in the tympanic cavity is usually absorbed into the mucosal blood vessels, resulting in lower pressure in the tympanic cavity, retraction of the tympanic membrane, and interference with its free movement. Finally, hearing is affected.

Paralysis of Stapedius

The tympanic muscles have a protective action in that they dampen large vibrations of the tympanic membrane resulting from loud noises. Paralysis of the stapedius (e.g., resulting from a lesion of the facial nerve) is associated with excessive acuteness of hearing, called hyperacusis or hyperacusia. This condition results from uninhibited movements of the stapes.

Motion Sickness

The maculae of the membranous labyrinth are primarily static organs, which have small dense particles (otoliths) embedded among hair cells. Under the influence of gravity, the otoliths cause bending of the hair cells, which stimulate the vestibular nerve, and provide awareness of the position of the head in space; the hairs also respond to quick tilting movements and to linear acceleration and deceleration. Motion sickness results from discordance between vestibular and visual stimulation.

Dizziness and Hearing Loss

Injuries of the peripheral auditory system cause three major symptoms: hearing loss (usually conductive hearing loss), vertigo (dizziness) when the injury involves the semicircular ducts, and tinnitus (buzzing or ringing) when the injury is localized in the cochlear duct. Tinnitus and hearing loss may result from lesions anywhere in the peripheral or central auditory pathways. The two types of hearing loss are as follows:

- Conductive hearing loss: resulting from anything in the external or middle ear that interferes with conduction of sound or movement of the oval or round windows. People with this type of hearing loss often speak with a soft voice because, to them, their own voices sound louder than background sounds. This type of hearing loss may be improved surgically or by use of a hearing aid device.
- Sensorineural hearing loss: resulting from defects in the pathway from the cochlea to the brain: defects of the cochlea, cochlear nerve, brainstem, or cortical connections. Cochlear implants are one approach employed to restore sound perception when the hair cells of the spiral organ have been damaged (Fig. B8.46). Sounds received by a small external microphone are transmitted to an implanted receiver that sends electrical impulses to the cochlea, stimulating the cochlear nerve. Hearing remains relatively crude, but it enables perception of rhythm and intensity of sounds.

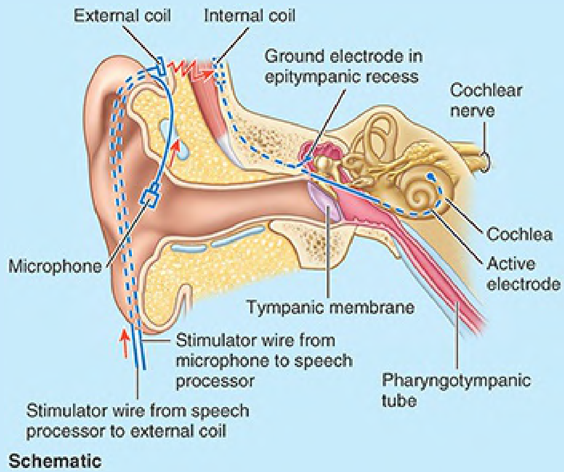


FIGURE B8.46. Cochlear implant.

Ménière Syndrome

Ménière syndrome is related to excess endolymph production or blockage of the endolymphatic duct (see Fig. 8.115B) and is characterized by recurrent attacks of tinnitus, hearing loss, and vertigo. These symptoms are accompanied by a sense of pressure in the ear, distortion of sounds, and sensitivity to noises (Storper, 2022). A characteristic sign is ballooning of the cochlear duct, utricle, and saccule caused by an increase in endolymphatic volume.

High-Tone Deafness

Persistent exposure to excessively loud sounds causes degenerative changes in the spiral organ, resulting in high-tone deafness. This type of hearing loss commonly occurs in workers who are exposed to loud noises and do not wear protective earmuffs (e.g., individuals working for long periods around jet engines).

Otic Barotrauma

Injury caused to the ear by an imbalance in pressure between ambient (surrounding) air and the air in the middle ear is called otic barotrauma. This type of injury usually occurs in fliers and divers.

The Bottom Line: Ear

The ear is divided into external, middle, and internal parts. ■ All three parts are concerned

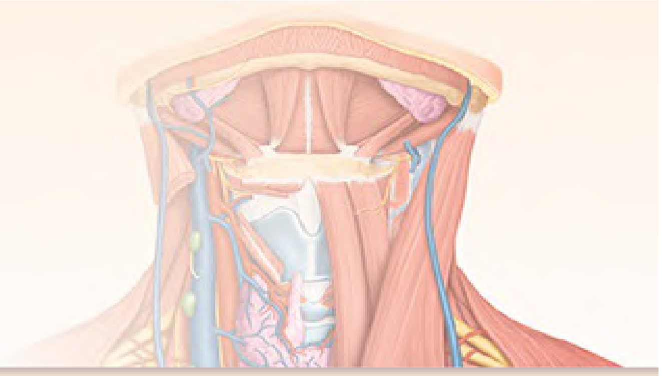
with the sense of hearing, but the internal ear also has a vestibular function. ■ The external ear is a funnel-like conduit for airborne sound waves to reach the middle ear. ■ The protruding auricle and lateral part of the external acoustic meatus have an elastic cartilage skeleton that allows flexibility. ■ The primary sensory innervation of the external ear is provided by CN V the great auricular nerve, with some CN VII and CN X contributions. ■ The tympanic membrane responds to airborne sound waves, converting them to vibrations transmitted by the solid medium of the ossicles of the middle ear. ■ Because its entire lateral wall is formed by a thin membrane, the middle ear (tympanic cavity) is a pressure-sensitive space, ventilated by means of the pharyngotympanic tube. ■ The mucosa lining both the cavity and tube is innervated by CN IX. ■ At the oval window, between the middle and internal ears, the solid medium vibrations of the ossicles are converted to fluid-borne sonar waves. ■ The internal ear consists of a delicate and complex membranous labyrinth filled with fluid that resembles intracellular fluid (endolymph), suspended within a bony cave otherwise occupied by extracellular fluid (perilymph). ■ Although much larger and slightly less complex, the architecture of the bony labyrinth is a reflection of that of the membranous labyrinth. ■ The posterior portion of the bony labyrinth takes the form of three semicircular canals and ducts; the ampulla of each of the ducts contains an ampullary crest that is sensitive to motion of the head. ■ The central bony vestibule contains a membranous utricle and saccule, each provided with a macula to monitor the position of the head relative to the line of gravitational pull. ■ The neuroepithelial crests and maculae are innervated by the vestibular portion of CN VIII. ■ The anterior portion of the internal ear contains a membranous cochlear duct, suspended between two limbs of continuous pathway for the sonar waves that are conducted by the perilymph; the duct and perilymphatic channels spiral through the 2.5 turns of the bony cochlea. ■ Deformation of the spiral organ within the cochlear duct by the sonar waves stimulates impulses conducted by the cochlear part of CN VIII for the sense of hearing.

---

[1] There is confusion about exactly what the term skull means. It may mean the cranium (which includes the mandible) or the part of the cranium excluding the mandible. There has also been confusion because some people have used the term cranium for only the neurocranium. The Federative International Committee on Anatomical Terminology (FICAT) has decided to follow the Latin term cranium for the skeleton of the head.

[2] This is the anatomical basis of the historical psychosurgery procedure, transorbital prefrontal lobotomy—an interesting but most unfortunate episode in the history of medicine preceding the development of tranquilizing drugs. See https://www.britannica.com/science/transorbital-lobotomy.

9



Neck

OVERVIEW

The **neck** is the transitional area between the base of the cranium superiorly and the clavicles inferiorly. The neck joins the head to the trunk and limbs, serving as a major conduit for structures passing between them. In addition, several important organs with unique functions are located here: the larynx and the thyroid and parathyroid glands, for example.

The neck is relatively slender to allow the flexibility necessary to position the head to maximize the efficiency of its sensory organs (mainly the eyeballs but also the ears, mouth, and nose). Thus, many important structures are crowded together in the neck, such as muscles, glands, arteries, veins, nerves, lymphatics, trachea, esophagus, and vertebrae. Consequently, the neck is a well-known region of vulnerability. Furthermore, several vital structures, including the trachea, esophagus, and thyroid gland, lack the bony protection afforded other parts of the systems to which these structures belong.

The main arterial blood flow to the head and neck (the carotid arteries) and the principal venous drainage (the jugular veins) lie anterolaterally in the neck (Fig. 9.1). Carotid/jugular blood vessels are the major structures commonly injured in penetrating wounds of the neck. The brachial plexuses of nerves originate in the neck and pass inferolaterally to enter the axillae and continue into and supply the upper limbs.

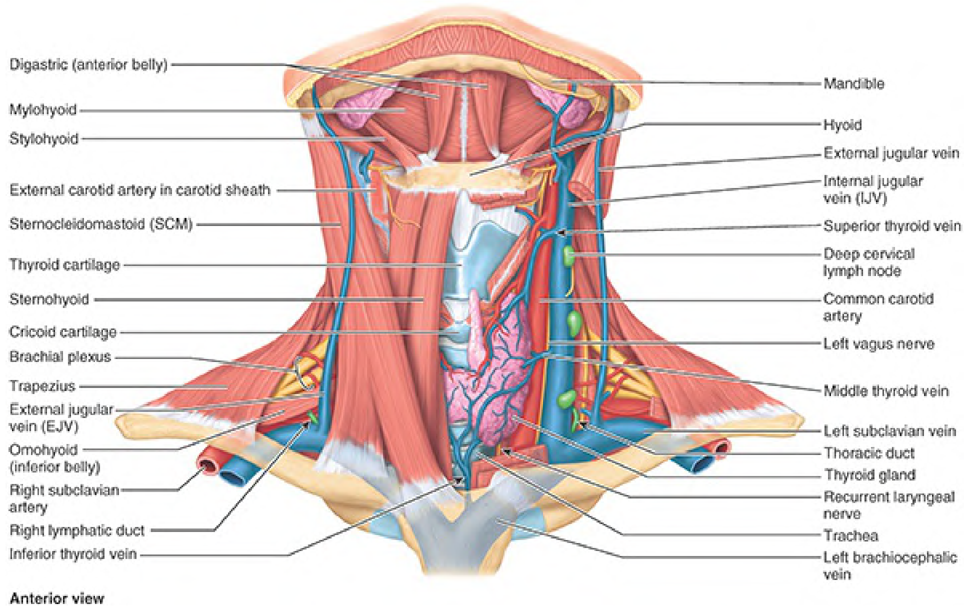


FIGURE 9.1. Dissection of anterior neck. The fascia has been removed and the muscles on the left side have been reflected to show the hyoid bone, thyroid gland, and structures related to the carotid sheath: carotid artery, internal jugular vein (IJV), vagus nerve (CN X), and deep cervical lymph nodes.

In the middle of the anterior aspect of the neck is the thyroid cartilage, the largest of the cartilages of the larynx, and the trachea. Lymph from structures in the head and neck drains into cervical lymph nodes.

BONES OF NECK

The skeleton of the neck is formed by the cervical vertebrae, hyoid bone, manubrium of the sternum, and clavicles (Figs. 9.2 and 9.3). These bones are parts of the axial skeleton except the clavicles, which are part of the appendicular skeleton.

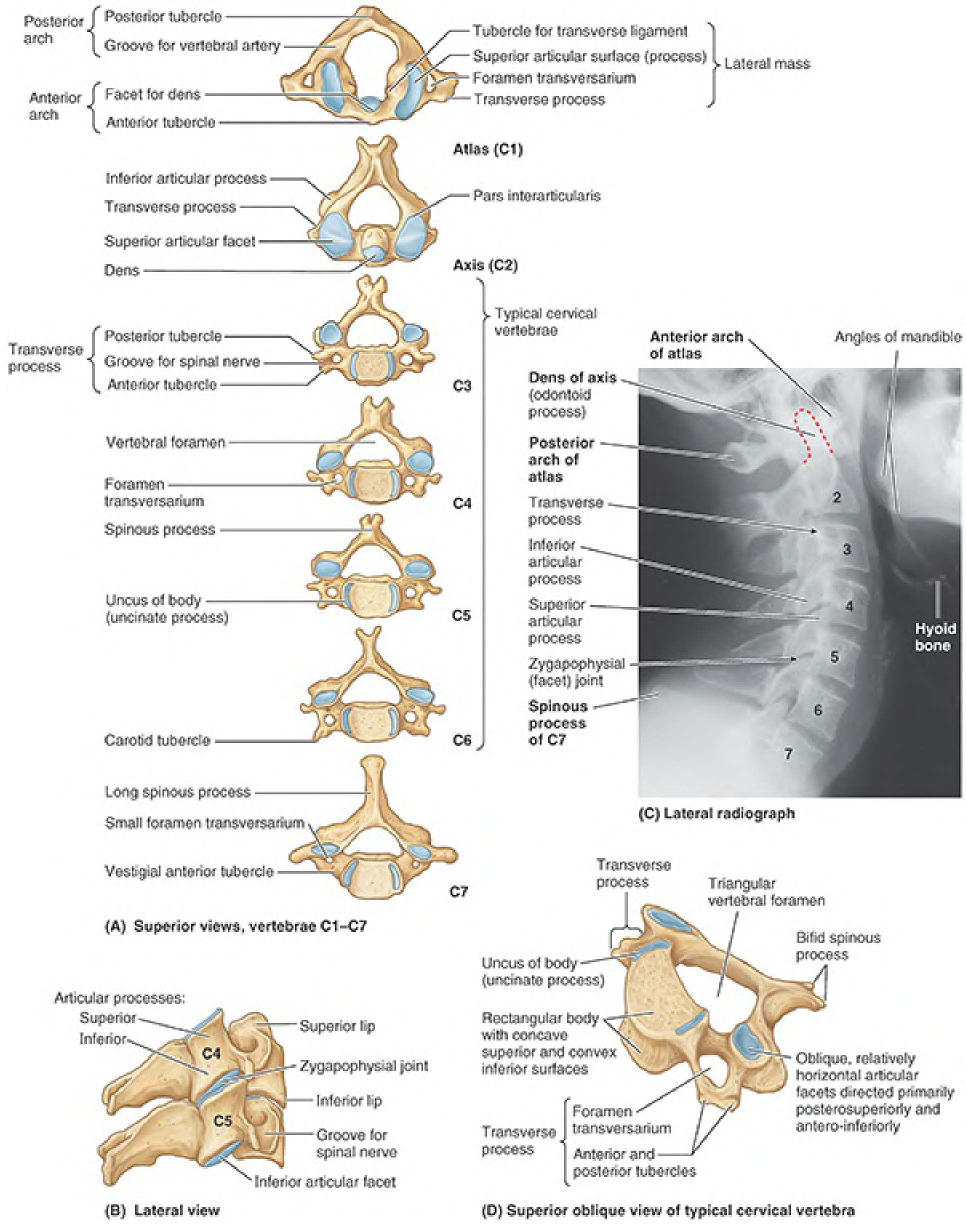


FIGURE 9.2. Cervical vertebrae. A. Typical and atypical. The 3rd–6th vertebrae are “typical” cervical vertebrae; the 1st, 2nd, and 7th are “atypical.” **B.** Articulated typical cervical vertebrae. **C.** Radiograph of cervical spine. **D.** Typical cervical vertebra. A typical vertebra has a rectangular body with articular unci (uncinate processes) on its lateral aspects, a triangular vertebral foramen, a bifid spinous process, and foramina transversaria.

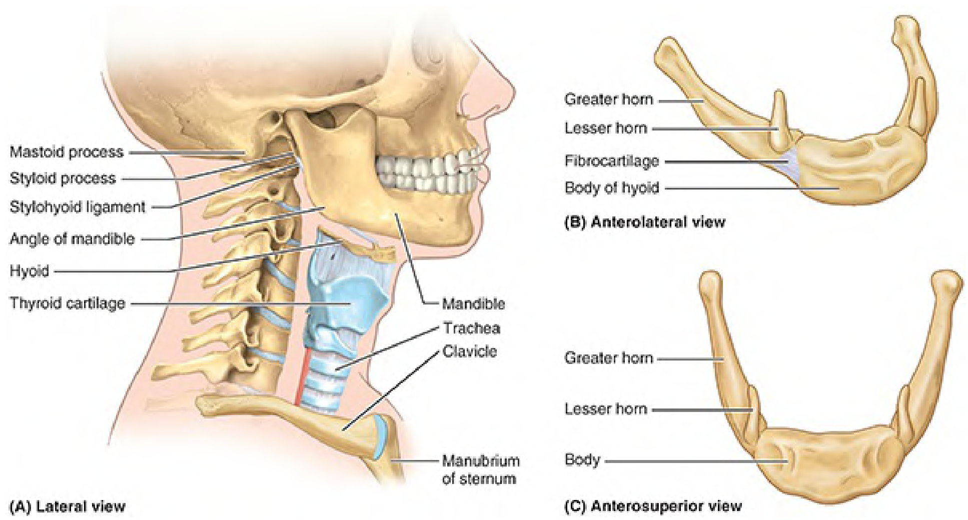


FIGURE 9.3. **Bones and cartilages of neck. A.** Overview. The bony and cartilaginous landmarks of the neck are the vertebrae, mastoid and styloid processes, angles of the mandible, hyoid bone, thyroid cartilage, clavicle, and manubrium of the sternum. **B and C.** Features of hyoid bone.

Cervical Vertebrae

Seven cervical vertebrae form the cervical region of the vertebral column, which encloses the spinal cord and meninges. The stacked, centrally placed vertebral bodies support the head, and the intervertebral (IV) articulations—especially the craniovertebral joints at its superior end—provide the flexibility necessary to allow positioning of the head.

The cervical vertebrae, cervical IV joints, and movement of the cervical region of the vertebral column are described with the back (see Chapter 2, Back). Therefore, only a brief review follows.

The four typical cervical vertebrae (3rd–6th) have the following characteristics (Fig. 9.2A, D):

- The vertebral body is small and longer from side to side than anteroposteriorly; the superior surface is concave, and the inferior surface is convex.
- The vertebral foramen is large and triangular.
- The transverse processes of all cervical vertebrae (typical or atypical) include **foramina transversaria** for the vertebral vessels (the vertebral veins and, except for vertebra C7, the vertebral arteries).
- The superior facets of the articular processes are directed superoposteriorly, and the inferior facets are directed inferoposteriorly.
- Their spinous processes are short and, in individuals of European heritage, bifid.

There are three atypical cervical vertebrae (C1, C2, and C7) (Fig. 9.2A):

1. The C1 vertebra or atlas: a ring-like, kidney-shaped bone lacking a spinous process or body and consisting of two lateral masses connected by anterior and posterior arches. Its concave superior articular facets receive the occipital condyles.
2. The C2 vertebra or axis: a peg-like dens (odontoid process) projects superiorly from its body
3. The vertebra prominens (C7): so named because of its long spinous process, which is not

bifid. Its transverse processes are large, but its foramina transversaria are small.

Hyoid Bone

The mobile **hyoid bone** (or simply, the **hyoid**) lies in the anterior part of the neck at the level of the C3–C4 vertebrae in the angle between the mandible and the thyroid cartilage (Fig. 9.3). The hyoid is suspended by muscles that connect it to the mandible, styloid processes, thyroid cartilage, manubrium of the sternum, and scapulae.

The hyoid is unique among bones for its isolation from the remainder of the skeleton. The U-shaped hyoid derives its name from the Greek word hyoeidçs, meaning "shaped like the letter upsilon," the 20th letter in the Greek alphabet. The hyoid does not articulate with any other bone. It is suspended from the styloid processes of the temporal bones by the stylohyoid ligaments (Fig. 9.3A) and is firmly bound to the thyroid cartilage. The hyoid consists of a body and greater and lesser horns (L. cornua). Functionally, the hyoid serves as an attachment for anterior neck muscles and a prop to keep the airway open.

The **body of the hyoid**, its middle part, faces anteriorly and is approximately 2.5 cm wide and 1 cm thick (Fig. 9.3B, C). Its anterior convex surface projects anterosuperiorly; its posterior concave surface projects postero-inferiorly. Each end of its body is united to a **greater horn** that projects posterosuperiorly and laterally from the body. In young people, the greater horns are united to the body by fibrocartilage. In older people, the horns are usually united by bone. Each **lesser horn** is a small bony projection from the superior part of the body of the hyoid near its union with the greater horn. It is connected to the body of the hyoid by fibrous tissue and sometimes to the greater horn by a synovial joint. The lesser horn projects superoposteriorly toward the styloid process; it may be partly or completely cartilaginous in some adults.

CLINICAL BOX

BONES OF NECK

Cervical Pain

Cervical pain (neck pain) has several causes, including inflamed lymph nodes, muscle strain, and protruding intervertebral (IV) discs. Enlarged cervical lymph nodes may indicate a malignant tumor of the scalp or soft tissues of the head and neck; however, the primary cancer may be in the thorax or abdomen (e.g., lung cancer or breast cancer) because the neck connects the head to the trunk (e.g., lung cancer may metastasize through the neck to the cranium). Most chronic cervical pain is caused by bony abnormalities (e.g., cervical osteoarthritis) or by trauma. Cervical pain is usually affected by movement of the head and neck, and it may be exaggerated during coughing or sneezing, for example.

Injuries of Cervical Vertebral Column

Fractures and dislocations of the cervical vertebra may injure the spinal cord and/or the vertebral arteries and sympathetic plexuses passing through the foramina transversaria. See the Clinical Boxes “Dislocation of Cervical Vertebrae,” “Fracture and Dislocation of Atlas,” and “Fracture and Dislocation of Axis” in Chapter 2, Back.

Fracture of Hyoid Bone

Fracture of the hyoid (or of the styloid processes of the temporal bone; see Chapter 8, Head) occurs in people who are manually strangled by compression of the throat. This results in depression of the body of the hyoid onto the thyroid cartilage. Inability to elevate the hyoid and move it anteriorly beneath the tongue makes swallowing and maintenance of the separation of the alimentary and respiratory tracts difficult and may result in aspiration pneumonia.

FASCIA OF NECK

Structures in the neck are surrounded by a layer of subcutaneous tissue (superficial fascia) and are compartmentalized by layers of deep cervical fascia. The fascial planes determine the direction an infection may spread in the neck.

Cervical Subcutaneous Tissue and Platysma

The **cervical subcutaneous tissue** (superficial cervical fascia) is a layer of fatty connective tissue that lies between the dermis of the skin and the investing layer of deep cervical fascia (Fig. 9.4A). The cervical subcutaneous tissue is usually thinner than in other regions, especially anteriorly. It contains cutaneous nerves, blood and lymphatic vessels, superficial lymph nodes, and variable amounts of fat. Anterolaterally, it contains the platysma (Fig. 9.4B).

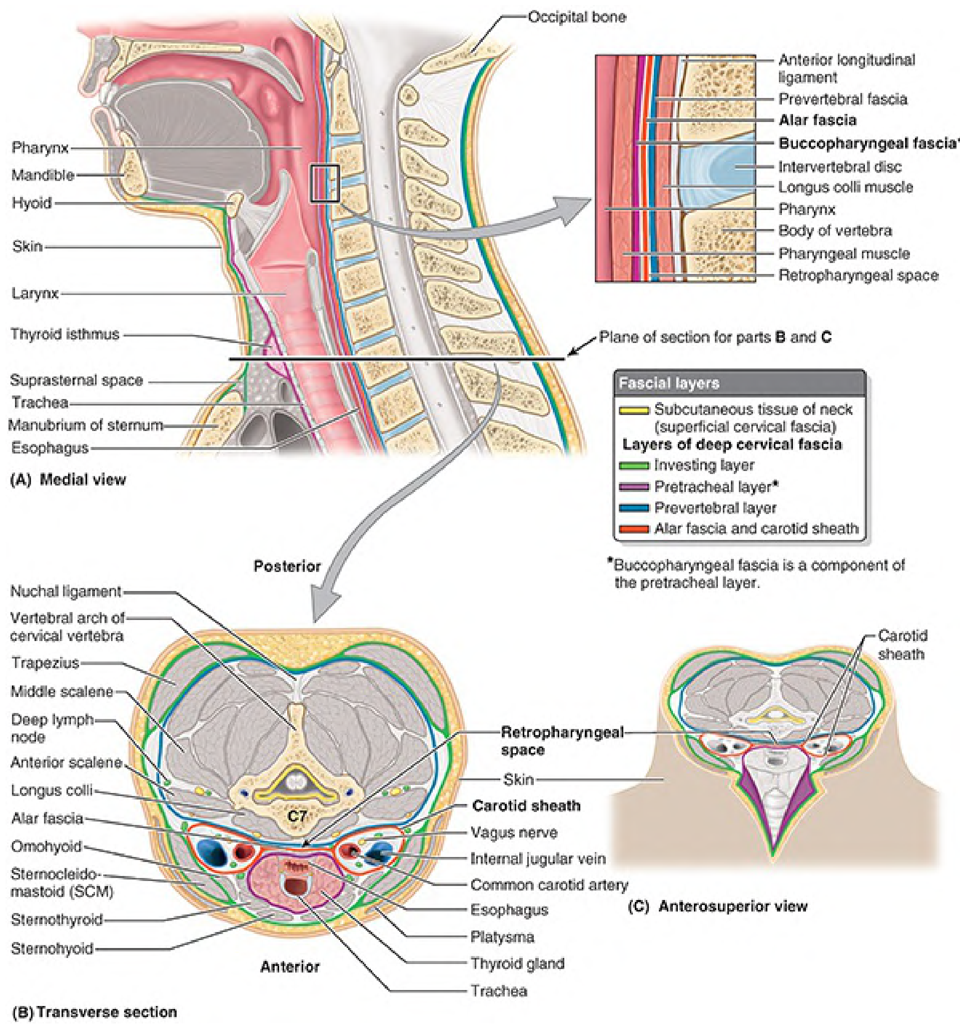


FIGURE 9.4. Sections of head and neck demonstrating cervical fascia. A. Cervical fascia of specimen sectioned in median plane. The inset illustrates the fascia in the retropharyngeal region. **B.** Transverse section through isthmus of thyroid gland (C7 vertebral level), as indicated in part **A**. The outermost layer of deep cervical fascia, the investing layer, splits to enclose the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid (SCM) at the four corners of the neck. The investing layer and its embedded muscles surround two main fascial columns. The pretracheal (visceral) layer encloses muscles and viscera in the anterior neck; the prevertebral (musculoskeletal) layer encircles the vertebral column and associated muscles. The carotid sheaths are neurovascular conduits related to both fascial columns. **C.** Fascial compartments of neck. An anterior midline approach to the thyroid gland is demonstrated. Although the larynx, trachea, and thyroid gland are nearly subcutaneous in the midline, two layers of deep cervical fascia (the investing and pretracheal layers) must be incised to reach them.

PLATYSMA

The **platysma** (G., flat plate) is a broad, thin sheet of muscle in the subcutaneous tissue of the neck (Figs. 9.4B and 9.5). Like other facial and scalp muscles, the platysma develops from a continuous sheet of musculature derived from mesenchyme in the 2nd pharyngeal arch of the embryo and is supplied by branches of the facial nerve, CN VII. The external jugular vein (EJV), descending from the angle of the mandible to the middle of the clavicle (see Fig. 9.1), and the main cutaneous nerves of the neck are deep to the platysma.

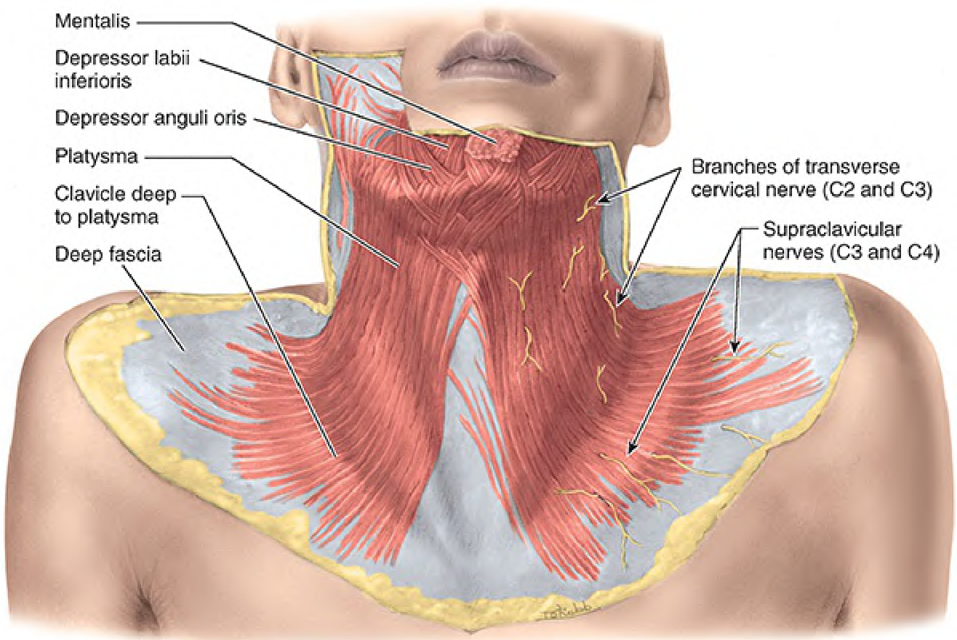


FIGURE 9.5. Platysma. The thin platysma muscle spreads subcutaneously like a sheet, passes over the clavicles, and is pierced by cutaneous nerves. Much variation occurs in the continuity and extent of this muscular sheet.

The platysma covers the anterolateral aspect of the neck. Its fibers arise in the deep fascia covering the superior parts of the deltoid and pectoralis major muscles and sweep superomedially over the clavicle to the inferior border of the mandible. The anterior borders of the two muscles decussate over the chin and blend with the facial muscles. Inferiorly, the fibers diverge, leaving a gap anterior to the larynx and trachea (Fig. 9.5). Much variation exists in terms of the continuity (completeness) of this muscular sheet, which often occurs as isolated slips. The platysma is supplied by the cervical branch of CN VII.

The Bottom Line: Bones of Neck

Cervical vertebrae: The neck is a movable "connecting stalk" with a segmented axial skeleton. ■ The stacked, centrally placed vertebral bodies support the head. ■ The IV articulations—especially the craniovertebral joints at its superior end—provide the flexibility necessary to allow positioning of the head to maximize the use of its sensory organs. ■ Multiple processes of the vertebrae provide both the attachments and the leverage necessary to move the head into and maintain those positions. ■ The foramina of the cervical vertebrae provide protective passage for the spinal cord and the vertebral arteries that nourish the bones and are a major component of the brain's blood supply. ■ The vertebrae provide little protection for other structures of the neck.

Hyoid bone: Unique in terms of its isolation from the rest of the skeleton, the U-shaped hyoid is suspended between the body of the mandible superiorly and the manubrium of the

sternum inferiorly. ■ The hyoid provides a movable base for the tongue and attachment for the middle part of the pharynx. ■ The hyoid also maintains the patency of the pharynx, required for swallowing and respiration.

Acting from its superior attachment to the mandible, the platysma tenses the skin, producing vertical skin ridges and releasing pressure on the superficial veins (see Table 9.2). Men commonly use actions of the platysma when shaving their necks and when easing tight collars. Acting from its inferior attachment, the platysma helps depress the mandible and draw the corners of the mouth inferiorly, as in a grimace. As a muscle of facial expression, the platysma serves to convey tension or stress.

Deep Cervical Fascia

The **deep cervical fascia** consists of three fascial layers (sheaths): investing, pretracheal, and prevertebral (Fig. 9.4A, B). These layers support the cervical viscera (e.g., thyroid gland), muscles, vessels, and deep lymph nodes. The deep cervical fascia also condenses around the common carotid arteries, internal jugular veins (IJVs), and vagus nerves to form the carotid sheath (Fig. 9.4B, C).

These three fascial layers form natural cleavage planes through which tissues may be separated during surgery, and they limit the spread of abscesses (collections of pus) resulting from infections. The deep cervical fascial layers also afford the slipperiness that allows structures in the neck to move and pass over one another without difficulty, for example, when swallowing and turning the head and neck.

INVESTING LAYER OF DEEP CERVICAL FASCIA

The **investing layer of deep cervical fascia**, the most superficial deep fascial layer, surrounds the entire neck deep to the skin and subcutaneous tissue. At the "four corners" of the neck, it splits into superficial and deep layers to enclose (invest) the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid (SCM) muscles (Fig. 9.4B, C). These muscles are derived from the same embryonic sheet of muscle and are innervated by the same nerve (CN XI). They have essentially continuous attachments to the cranial base superiorly and to the scapular spine, acromion, and clavicle inferiorly.

Superiorly, the investing layer of deep cervical fascia attaches to the

- superior nuchal lines of the occipital bone
- mastoid processes of the temporal bones
- zygomatic arches
- inferior border of the mandible
- hyoid bone
- spinous processes of the cervical vertebrae

Just inferior to its attachment to the mandible, the investing layer of deep fascia splits to enclose the submandibular gland; posterior to the mandible, it splits to form the fibrous capsule of the parotid gland. The stylomandibular ligament is a thickened modification of this fascial layer (see Fig. 8.71F, G).

Inferiorly, the investing layer of deep cervical fascia attaches to the manubrium of the sternum, clavicles, and acromions and spines of the scapulae. The investing layer of deep cervical fascia is continuous posteriorly with the periosteum covering the C7 spinous process and with the nuchal ligament (L. ligamentum nuchae), a triangular membrane that forms a median fibrous septum between the muscles of the two sides of the neck (Fig. 9.4B).

Inferiorly between the sternal heads of the SCMs and just superior to the manubrium, the investing layer of deep cervical fascia remains divided into two layers to enclose the SCM; one layer attaches to the anterior and the other to the posterior surface of the manubrium. A **suprasternal space** lies between these layers (Fig. 9.4A). It encloses the inferior ends of the anterior jugular veins, the jugular venous arch, fat, and a few deep lymph nodes.

PRETRACHEAL LAYER OF DEEP CERVICAL FASCIA

The thin **pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia** is limited to the anterior part of the neck (Fig. 9.4). It extends inferiorly from the hyoid into the thorax, where it blends with the fibrous pericardium covering the heart. The pretracheal layer of fascia includes a thin muscular part, which encloses the infrahyoid muscles, and a visceral part, which encloses the thyroid gland, trachea, and esophagus, and is continuous posteriorly and superiorly with the **buccopharyngeal fascia** of the pharynx. The pretracheal layer of deep fascia blends laterally with the carotid sheaths. Superior to the hyoid, a thickening of the pretracheal fascia forms a pulley or trochlea through which the intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle passes, suspending the hyoid. By wrapping around the lateral border of the intermediate tendon of the omohyoid, the pretracheal layer also tethers the two-bellied omohyoid muscle, redirecting the course of the muscle between the bellies.

PREVERTEBRAL LAYER OF DEEP CERVICAL FASCIA

The **prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia** forms a tubular sheath for the vertebral column and the muscles associated with it, such as the longus colli and longus capitis anteriorly, the scalenes laterally, and the deep cervical muscles posteriorly (Fig. 9.4A, B).

The prevertebral layer of deep fascia is fixed to the cranial base superiorly. Inferiorly, it blends with the endothoracic fascia peripherally and fuses with the anterior longitudinal ligament centrally at approximately the T3 vertebra (see Chapter 2, Back) (Fig. 9.4A). The prevertebral fascia extends laterally as the axillary sheath (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb), which surrounds the axillary vessels and brachial plexus. The cervical parts of the sympathetic trunks are embedded in the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia.

Carotid Sheath. The **carotid sheath** is a tubular fascial investment that extends from the cranial base to the root of the neck. This sheath blends anteriorly with the investing and pretracheal layers of fascia and posteriorly with the prevertebral layer of fascia (Figs. 9.4B, C

and 9.6). The carotid sheath contains the

- common and internal carotid arteries
- internal jugular vein
- vagus nerve (CN X)
- some deep cervical lymph nodes
- carotid sinus nerve
- sympathetic nerve fibers (carotid peri-arterial plexuses)

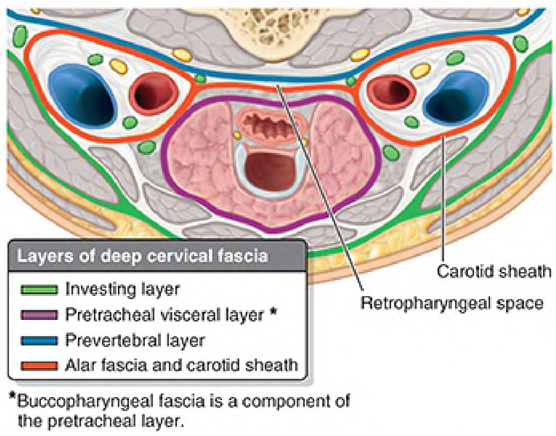


FIGURE 9.6. **Carotid sheath.**

The carotid sheath communicates with the mediastinum of the thorax inferiorly and extends to the cranial base (basiocciput) superiorly. These communications represent potential pathways for the spread of infection and extravasated blood.

Retropharyngeal Space. The **retropharyngeal space** is the largest and most important interfascial space in the neck (Fig. 9.6). It is a potential space that consists of loose connective tissue between the superior part of the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia and the buccopharyngeal fascia surrounding the pharynx superficially. Inferiorly, the buccopharyngeal fascia is continuous with the pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia.

The **alar fascia** forms a further subdivision of the retropharyngeal space. This thin layer is attached along the midline of the buccopharyngeal fascia from the cranium to the level of the C7 vertebra. From this attachment, it extends laterally and terminates in the carotid sheath. The retropharyngeal space permits movement of the pharynx, esophagus, larynx, and trachea relative to the vertebral column during swallowing. This space is closed superiorly by the cranial base and on each side by the carotid sheath. It opens inferiorly into the superior mediastinum (see Chapter 4, Thorax).

CLINICAL BOX

CERVICAL FASCIA

Paralysis of Platysma

Paralysis of the platysma, resulting from injury to the cervical branch of the facial nerve (see Fig. 8.16B), causes the skin to fall away from the neck in slack folds. Consequently, during surgical dissections of the neck, extra care is necessary to preserve the cervical branch of the facial nerve. When suturing wounds of the neck, surgeons carefully suture the skin and edges of the platysma. If this is not done, the skin wound will be distracted (pulled in different directions) by the contracting platysma muscle fibers, and a disfiguring scar may develop.

Spread of Infections in Neck

The investing layer of deep cervical fascia helps prevent the spread of abscesses (purulent infections) caused by tissue destruction. If an infection occurs between the investing layer of deep cervical fascia and the muscular part of the pretracheal fascia surrounding the infrahyoid muscles, the infection will usually not spread beyond the superior edge of the manubrium of the sternum. If, however, the infection occurs between the investing fascia and the visceral part of pretracheal fascia, it can spread into the thoracic cavity anterior to the pericardium.

Pus from an abscess posterior to the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia may extend laterally in the neck and form a swelling posterior to the SCM. The pus may perforate the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia and enter the retropharyngeal space, producing a bulge in the pharynx (retropharyngeal abscess). This abscess may cause difficulty in swallowing (dysphagia) and speaking (dysarthria).

Infections in the head may also spread inferiorly posterior to the esophagus and enter the posterior mediastinum, or it may spread anterior to the trachea and enter the anterior mediastinum. Infections in the retropharyngeal space may also extend inferiorly into the superior mediastinum. Similarly, air from a ruptured trachea, bronchus, or esophagus (pneumomediastinum) can pass superiorly in the neck.

The Bottom Line: Fascia of Neck

Cervical subcutaneous tissue and platysma: The subcutaneous tissue (superficial cervical fascia) is usually thinner in the neck than in other regions, especially anteriorly. ■ It contains the platysma, a muscle of facial expression.

Deep cervical fascia: Like deep fascia elsewhere, the function of the deep cervical fascia is (1) to provide containment of muscles and viscera in compartments with varying degrees of rigidity, (2) to provide the slipperiness that allows structures to slide over each other, and (3) to serve as a conduit for the passage of neurovascular structures. ■ Two

major fascial compartments of the neck are separated by the retropharyngeal space. ■ Anteriorly, the pretracheal fascia surrounds the cervical viscera and extrinsic musculature associated with it (suprahyoid and infrahyoid muscles). ■ Posteriorly, the prevertebral fascia surrounds the musculoskeletal elements of the neck associated with and including the cervical vertebrae. ■ These two fascial compartments are contained within the third and most superficial layer of deep cervical fascia, the investing layer, which includes the superficial muscles (trapezius and SCM). ■ The investing fascia attaches to the cranium superiorly and the pectoral girdle inferiorly. ■ Lying anterolateral at the common junctions of these three layers are the major neurovascular conduits, the carotid sheaths. ■ The superior and inferior boundaries and continuities of these fascial layers, compartments, and interfascial spaces establish pathways for the spread of infection, fluid, gas, or tumors.

SUPERFICIAL STRUCTURES OF NECK: CERVICAL REGIONS

To allow clear communication regarding the location of structures, injuries, or pathologies, the neck is divided into regions (Fig. 9.7; Table 9.1). Between the cranium (mandible anteriorly and occipital bone posteriorly) and clavicles, the neck is divided into four major regions based on the usually visible and/or palpable borders of the large and relatively superficial SCM and trapezius muscles, which are contained within the outermost (investing) layer of deep cervical fascia.

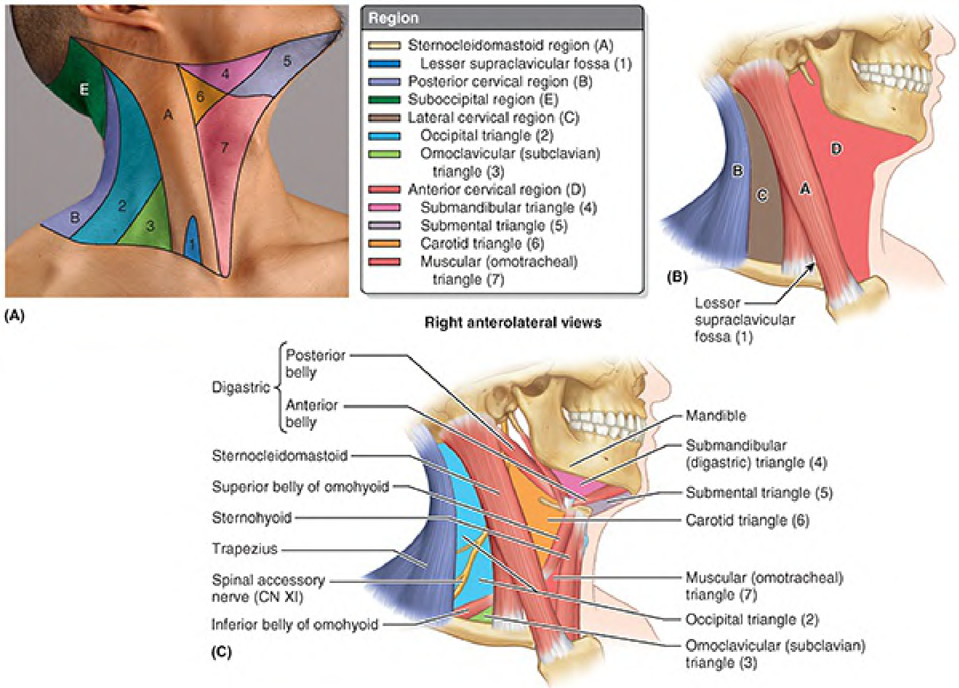


FIGURE 9.7. **Cervical regions and triangles.**

TABLE 9.1. CERVICAL REGIONS/TRIANGLES AND CONTENTS

Region[a]	Main Contents and Underlying Structures
Sternocleidomastoid region (A)	Sternocleidomastoid muscle; superior part of external jugular vein; greater auricular nerve; transverse cervical nerve
Lesser supraclavicular fossa (1)	Inferior part of internal jugular vein
Posterior cervical region (B)	Trapezius muscle; cutaneous branches of posterior rami of cervical spinal nerves; suboccipital region or triangle (E) lies deep to superior part of this region
Lateral cervical region (posterior triangle) (C)	
Occipital triangle (2)	Part of external jugular vein; posterior branches of cervical plexus of nerves; spinal accessory nerve (CN XI)[b]; cervicodorsal trunk; cervical lymph node
Omoclavicular (subclavian) triangle (3)	Subclavian artery (third part); trunks of brachial plexus; part of subclavian vein (sometimes); suprascapular artery; supraclavicular lymph nodes
Anterior cervical region (anterior triangle) (D)	
Submandibular (digastric) triangle (4)	Submandibular gland almost fills triangle; submandibular lymph nodes; hypoglossal nerve (CN XII); mylohyoid nerve; parts of facial artery and vein
Submental triangle (5)	Submental lymph nodes and small veins that unite to form anterior jugular vein
Carotid triangle (6)	Carotid sheath containing common carotid artery and its branches; internal jugular vein and its tributaries; vagus nerve; external carotid artery and some of its branches; hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) and superior root of ansa cervicalis; spinal accessory nerve (CN XI)[b]; thyroid gland, larynx, and pharynx; deep cervical lymph nodes; branches of cervical plexus

Muscular (omotracheal) triangle (7)	Sternothyroid and sternohyoid muscles; thyroid and parathyroid glands

[a]Letters and numbers in parentheses refer to Figure 9.7A, B.

[b]The spinal accessory nerve (CN XI) refers to the traditional "spinal root of CN XI." The traditional "cranial root" is now considered part of the vagus nerve (CN X) (Lachman et al., 2002).

Sternocleidomastoid Region

The **sternocleidomastoid (SCM) muscle** is a key muscular landmark in the neck, forming the **sternocleidomastoid region**. The SCM visibly divides each side of the neck into the anterior and lateral cervical regions (anterior and posterior triangles). The SCM is a broad, strap-like muscle that has two heads: The rounded tendon of the **sternal head** attaches to the manubrium, and the thick, fleshy **clavicular head** attaches to the superior surface of the medial third of the clavicle (Figs. 9.7 and 9.8; Table 9.2).

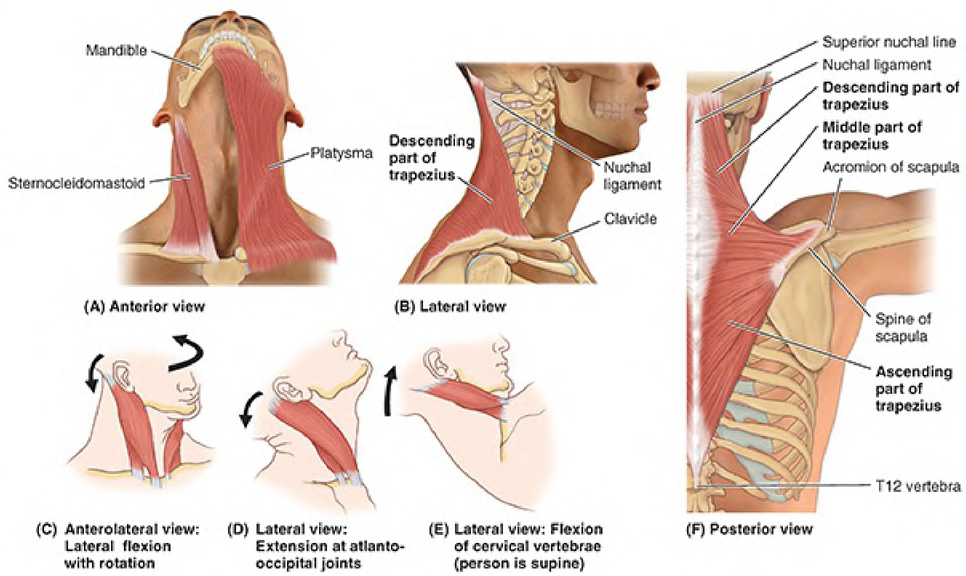


FIGURE 9.8. **Muscles of neck.**

TABLE 9.2. CUTANEOUS AND SUPERFICIAL MUSCLES OF NECK

Muscle	Superior/Medial Attachment	Inferior/Lateral Attachment	Innervation	Main Action(s)
Platysma	Inferior border of mandible, skin, and subcutaneous tissues of lower face	Fascia covering superior parts of pectoralis major and deltoid muscles	Cervical branch of facial nerve (CN VII)	Draws corners of mouth inferiorly and widens it as in expressions of sadness and fright; draws skin of neck superiorly when teeth are clenched
Sternocleidomastoid (SCM)	Lateral surface of mastoid process of temporal bone and lateral half of superior nuchal line	Sternal head: anterior surface of manubrium of sternum Clavicular head: superior surface of medial third of	Spinal accessory nerve (CN XI, motor); C3 and C4 nerves (pain and proprioception)	Unilateral contraction: tilts head to same side (i.e., laterally flexes neck) and rotates it so face is turned superiorly toward opposite side (Fig. 9.8C) Bilateral contraction: (1) extends neck at atlanto-occipital joints (Fig. 9.8D),

		clavicle		(2) flexes cervical vertebrae so that chin approaches manubrium (Fig. 9.8E), or (3) extends superior cervical vertebrae while flexing inferior vertebrae, so chin is thrust forward with head kept level With cervical vertebrae fixed, may elevate manubrium and medial ends of clavicles, assisting pump-handle action of deep respiration (see Chapter 4, Thorax)
Trapezius	Medial third of superior nuchal line, external occipital protuberance, nuchal ligament, spinous processes of C7–T12 vertebrae	Lateral third of clavicle, acromion, and spine of scapula	Spinal accessory nerve (CN XI; motor); C3 and C4 nerves (pain and proprioception)	Elevates, retracts, and rotates scapulae superiorly Descending (superior) fibers: elevate scapulae/shoulders; maintain level of shoulders against gravity or resistance Transverse (middle) fibers: retract scapulae Ascending (inferior) fibers: depress scapulae/shoulders Descending and ascending fibers together: rotate spinous process of scapulae superiorly With shoulders fixed, bilateral contraction extends neck; unilateral contraction produces lateral flexion to same side.

The two heads of the SCM are separated inferiorly by a space, visible superficially as a small triangular depression, the **lesser supraclavicular fossa** (Fig. 9.7B). The heads join superiorly as they pass obliquely upward toward the cranium. The superior attachment of the SCM is the mastoid process of the temporal bone and the superior nuchal line of the occipital bone. The investing layer of deep cervical fascia splits to form a sheath for the SCM (Fig. 9.4B).

The SCMs produce movement at the craniovertebral joints, the cervical intervertebral joints, or at both (Fig. 9.8; Table 9.2). The cranial attachments of the SCMs lie posterior to the axis of the atlanto-occipital (AO) joints. Starting from the anatomical position, with tonic contraction maintaining the position of the cervical vertebral column, bilateral contraction of the SCMs (especially their more posterior fibers) will cause extension of the head at the AO joints, elevating the chin (Fig. 9.8D).

Acting bilaterally, the SCMs can also flex the neck. They can do this in two different ways:

1. If initially the head is flexed anteriorly at the AO joints by the prevertebral muscles (and/or the suprahyoid and infrahyoid muscles) against resistance, the SCMs (especially the anterior fibers) flex the entire cervical vertebral column so that the chin approaches the manubrium (Fig. 9.8E). However, gravity is usually the prime mover for this movement when standing erect.
2. Acting antagonistically with the extensors of the neck (i.e., the deep cervical muscles), bilateral contraction of the SCMs can flex the lower neck while producing limited extension

at the AO joint and upper neck, protruding the chin while keeping the head level. Such flexion movements also occur when lifting the head off the ground while lying supine (with gravity providing the resistance in place of the deep cervical muscles).

It is probable that most of the time smaller synergistic muscles and/or eccentric contraction (controlled relaxation of the muscle, gradually yielding to gravity) are involved in initiating flexion or extension, with the SCMs providing the power and range of movement once initiated.

Acting unilaterally, the SCM laterally flexes the neck (bends the neck sideways) and rotates the head so the ear approaches the shoulder of the ipsilateral (same) side while elevating and rotating the chin toward the contralateral (opposite) side. If the head and neck are fixed, bilateral contraction of the SCMs elevates the clavicles and manubrium and thus the anterior ribs. In this way, the SCMs act as accessory muscles of respiration in assisting production of the pump-handle movement of the thoracic wall.

To test the SCM, the head is turned to the opposite side against resistance (hand against chin). If it is acting normally, the SCM can be seen and palpated.

Posterior Cervical Region

The region posterior to the anterior borders of (i.e., corresponding to the area of) the trapezius is the **posterior cervical region** (Fig. 9.7; Table 9.1). The suboccipital region is deep to the superior part of this region (Fig. 9.8). The **trapezius** is a large, flat triangular muscle that covers the posterolateral aspect of the neck and thorax (Fig. 9.8F). The trapezius is a

- superficial muscle of the back (see Chapter 2, Back)
- posterior axio-appendicular muscle that acts on the pectoral girdle (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb)
- cervical muscle that can produce movement of the cranium

The trapezius attaches the pectoral girdle to the cranium and the vertebral column and assists in suspending it. Its attachments, nerve supply, and main actions are described in Table 9.2. The skin of the posterior cervical region is innervated in a segmental pattern by the posterior rami of cervical spinal nerves that pierce, but do not innervate, the trapezius (see Fig. 2.33).

To test the trapezius, the shoulder is shrugged against resistance. If the muscle is acting normally, its superior border can be seen and palpated. If the trapezius is paralyzed, the shoulder droops; however, the combined actions of the levator scapulae and superior fibers of the serratus anterior help support the shoulder and may compensate for the paralysis to some degree (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb).

Lateral Cervical Region

The **lateral cervical region** (posterior triangle) is bounded (Figs. 9.7 and 9.9)

- anteriorly by the posterior border of the SCM
- posteriorly by the anterior border of the trapezius

- inferiorly by the middle third of the clavicle between the trapezius and the SCM
- by an apex, where the SCM and trapezius meet on the superior nuchal line of the occipital bone
- by a roof, formed by the investing layer of deep cervical fascia
- by a floor, formed by muscles covered by the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia

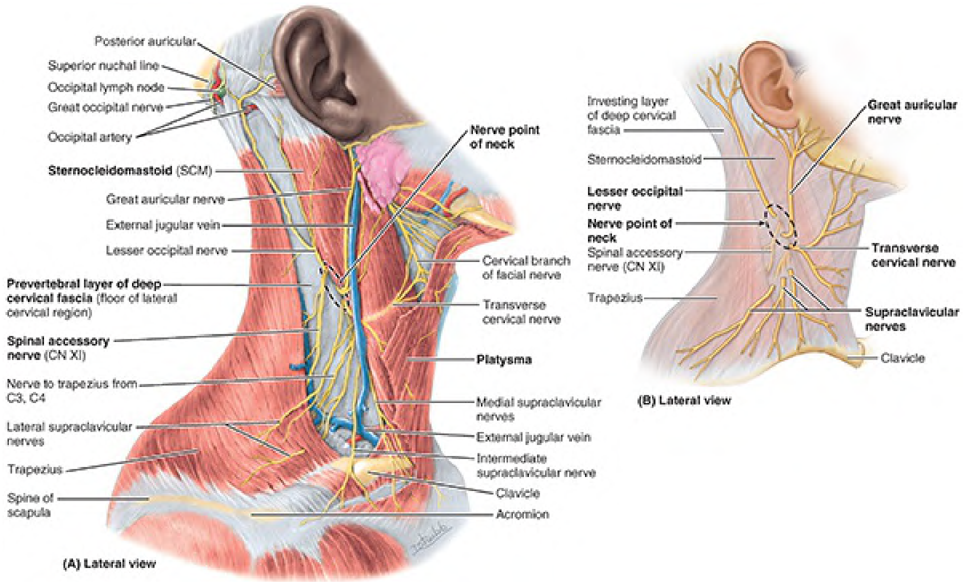


FIGURE 9.9. **Superficial dissection of lateral cervical region.** The subcutaneous tissue and the investing layer of deep fascia have been removed, sparing most of the platysma and the cutaneous nerves. Between the trapezius (in the posterior cervical region) and the SCM, the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia forms the floor of the lateral cervical region. The spinal accessory nerve (CN XI) is the only motor nerve superficial to this fascia.

The lateral cervical region wraps around the lateral surface of the neck like a spiral. The region is covered by skin and subcutaneous tissue containing the platysma.

MUSCLES IN LATERAL CERVICAL REGION

The floor of the lateral cervical region is usually formed by the prevertebral fascia overlying four muscles (Figs. 9.9 and 9.10): splenius capitis, levator scapulae, middle scalene (L. scalenus medius), and posterior scalene (L. scalenus posterior). Sometimes, the inferior part of the anterior scalene (L. scalenus anterior) appears in the inferomedial angle of the lateral cervical region, where it is usually hidden by the SCM. An occasional offshoot of the anterior scalene, the smallest scalene (L. scalenus minimus), passes posterior to the subclavian artery to attach to the 1st rib (Agur & Dalley, 2021).

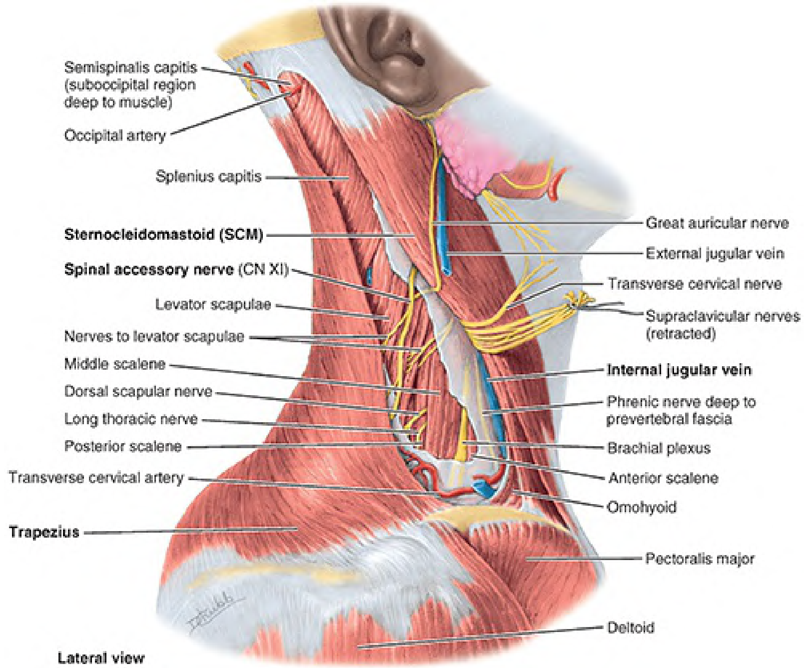


FIGURE 9.10. Deep dissection of lateral cervical region. The investing layer of the deep cervical fascia has been removed. Although the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI) is superficial to it, the brachial plexus and motor nerves of the cervical plexus run deep to the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia that covers the floor of the triangle.

For a more precise localization of structures, the lateral cervical region is divided into a large occipital triangle superiorly and a small omoclavicular triangle inferiorly by the inferior belly of the omohyoid (Fig. 9.7; Table 9.1).

- The **occipital triangle** is so called because the occipital artery appears in its apex (Figs. 9.9 and 9.10; see Fig. 9.13). The most important nerve crossing the occipital triangle is the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI).
- The **omoclavicular** (subclavian) **triangle** is indicated on the surface of the neck by the supraclavicular fossa. The inferior part of the EJV crosses this triangle superficially; the subclavian artery lies deep in it (Fig. 9.11; see Fig. 9.13). These vessels are separated by the investing layer of deep cervical fascia. Because the third part of the subclavian artery is located in this region, the omoclavicular triangle is often called the subclavian triangle (Fig. 9.7).

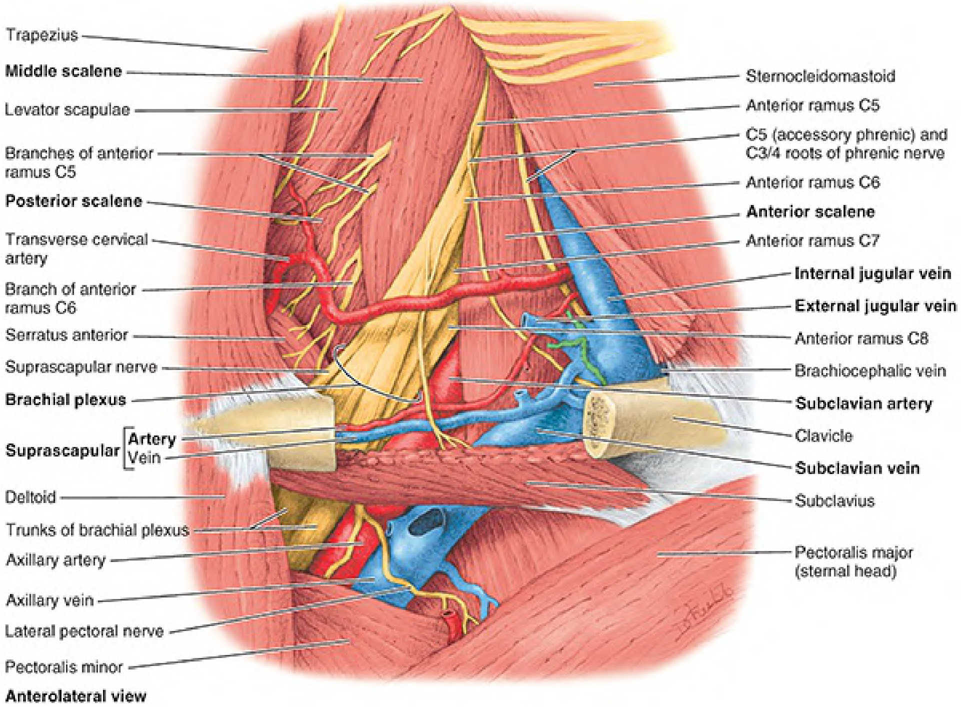


FIGURE 9.11. Deeper dissection of inferior part of lateral cervical region. All fascia, the omohyoid muscle, and the clavicular head of the pectoralis major have been removed to reveal the subclavian vein and third part of the subclavian artery. The internal jugular vein, deep to the SCM, is not in the lateral cervical region but is close to it. The brachial plexus of nerves and subclavian vessels pass to the upper limb, the name of the vessels changing to axillary inferior to the clavicle at the lateral border of the 1st rib.

ARTERIES IN LATERAL CERVICAL REGION

The arteries in the lateral cervical region include the lateral branches of the thyrocervical trunk, the third part of the subclavian artery, and part of the occipital artery (Figs. 9.10, 9.11, and 9.12). The thyrocervical trunk, a branch of the first part of the subclavian artery, most commonly gives rise directly or indirectly to suprascapular, dorsal scapular, and superficial cervical arteries. Terminal branches of the thyrocervical trunk are the ascending cervical and inferior thyroid arteries.

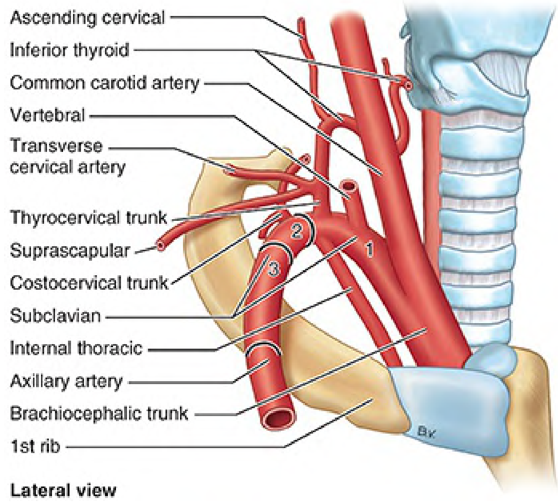


FIGURE 9.12. Subclavian artery: parts and branches. There are three parts of the subclavian artery: medial (1), posterior (2), and lateral (3) to the anterior scalene muscle. The cervicodorsal trunk (transverse cervical artery) and suprascapular artery occasionally arise directly (or via a common trunk) from the second or third parts of the subclavian artery instead of directly from the thyrocervical trunk via a common trunk, as shown here, or independently.

The **suprascapular artery** passes inferolaterally across the anterior scalene muscle and phrenic nerve (Fig. 9.11). It then crosses the third part of the subclavian artery and the cords of the brachial plexus to pass posterior to the clavicle to supply muscles on the posterior aspect of the scapula. Alternately, the suprascapular artery may arise directly from the third part of the subclavian artery.

The superficial cervical and the dorsal scapular arteries may arise directly from the thyrocervical trunk, or from the third part of the subclavian, or via a common trunk from either the trunk or subclavian artery. When they arise from a common trunk, it is called a **transverse cervical artery**. The superficial cervical and dorsal scapular arteries run superficially and laterally across the phrenic nerve and anterior scalene muscle, 2–3 cm superior to the clavicle. They then cross or pass through the trunks of the brachial plexus, supplying branches to their vasa nervorum (blood vessels of nerves). The **superficial cervical artery** passes deep (anterior) to the trapezius accompanying the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI). When the dorsal scapular arises from the subclavian artery, it passes laterally through the trunks of the brachial plexus, anterior to the middle scalene. Regardless of its origin, the **dorsal scapular artery** runs deep to the levator scapulae and rhomboid muscles, supplying both and participating in the arterial anastomoses around the scapula (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb). The occipital artery, a branch of the external carotid artery, enters the lateral cervical region at its apex and ascends over the head to supply the posterior half of the scalp (Fig. 9.10).

The **subclavian artery** supplies blood to the upper limb. The third part begins approximately a finger's breadth superior to the clavicle, opposite the lateral border of the anterior scalene muscle. It is hidden in the inferior part of the lateral cervical region, posterosuperior to the subclavian vein. The third part of the artery is the longest and most superficial part. It lies on the 1st rib, and its pulsations can be felt by applying deep pressure in the omoclavicular triangle. The artery is in contact with the 1st rib as it passes posterior to the anterior scalene muscle;

consequently, compression of the subclavian artery against this rib can control bleeding in the upper limb. The inferior trunk of the brachial plexus lies directly posterior to the third part of the artery. The branches that occasionally arise from the third part are aberrant forms of more typical patterns in which they arise directly or indirectly from the thyrocervical trunk.

VEINS IN LATERAL CERVICAL REGION

The **external jugular vein** (**EJV**) begins near the angle of the mandible (just inferior to the auricle) by the union of the posterior division of the retromandibular vein with the posterior auricular vein (Fig. 9.13). The EJV crosses the SCM obliquely, deep to the platysma, and enters the antero-inferior part of the lateral cervical region (Fig. 9.8). It then pierces the investing layer of deep cervical fascia, which forms the roof of this region, at the posterior border of the SCM. The EJV descends to the inferior part of the lateral cervical region and terminates in the subclavian vein (Figs. 9.11 and 9.13). It drains most of the scalp and side of the face.

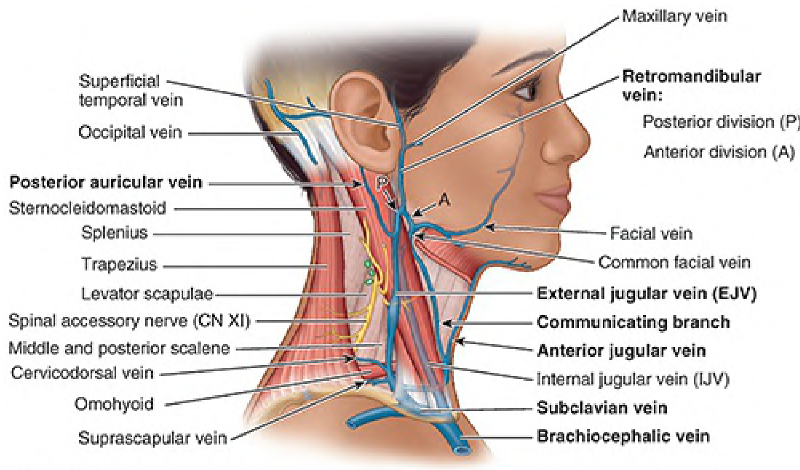


FIGURE 9.13. Superficial veins of neck. The superficial temporal and maxillary veins merge, forming the retromandibular vein, the posterior division of which unites with the posterior auricular vein to form the EJV. The facial vein receives the anterior division of the retromandibular vein before emptying into the internal jugular vein, deep to the SCM. The anterior jugular veins may lie superficial or deep to the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia.

The **subclavian vein**, the major venous channel draining the upper limb, curves through the inferior part of the lateral cervical region. It passes anterior to the anterior scalene muscle and phrenic nerve and unites at the medial border of the muscle with the IJV to form the **brachiocephalic vein**, posterior to the medial end of the clavicle. Just superior to the clavicle, the EJV receives the cervicodorsal, suprascapular, and anterior jugular veins.

NERVES OF LATERAL CERVICAL REGION

The **spinal accessory nerve** (**CN XI**) passes deep to the SCM, supplying it before entering the lateral cervical region at or inferior to the junction of the superior and middle thirds of the posterior border of the SCM (Figs. 9.9 and 9.10). The nerve passes postero-inferiorly, within or deep to the investing layer of deep cervical fascia, running on the levator scapulae from which it

is separated by the prevertebral layer of fascia. CN XI then disappears deep to the anterior border of the trapezius at the junction of its superior two thirds with its inferior one third.

The **roots of the brachial plexus** (anterior rami of C5–C8 and T1) appear between the anterior and the middle scalene muscles (Fig. 9.11). The five rami unite to form the three trunks of the brachial plexus, which descend inferolaterally through the lateral cervical region. The plexus then passes between the 1st rib, clavicle, and superior border of the scapula (the cervico-axillary canal) to enter the axilla, providing innervation for most of the upper limb (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb).

The **suprascapular nerve**, which arises from the superior trunk of the brachial plexus (not cervical plexus), runs laterally across the lateral cervical region to supply the supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles on the posterior aspect of the scapula. It also sends articular branches to the glenohumeral joint.

The anterior rami of C1–C4 make up the **roots of the cervical plexus** (Fig. 9.14). The **cervical plexus** consists of an irregular series of (primary) nerve loops and the branches that arise from the loops. Each participating ramus, except the first, divides into ascending and descending branches that unite with the branches of the adjacent spinal nerve to form the loops. The cervical plexus lies anteromedial to the levator scapulae and middle scalene muscles and deep to the SCM. The superficial branches of the plexus that initially pass posteriorly are cutaneous (sensory) branches (Fig. 9.14A, C, D). The deep branches passing anteromedially are motor branches, including the roots of the phrenic nerve (to the diaphragm) and the ansa cervicalis (Fig. 9.14A, B).

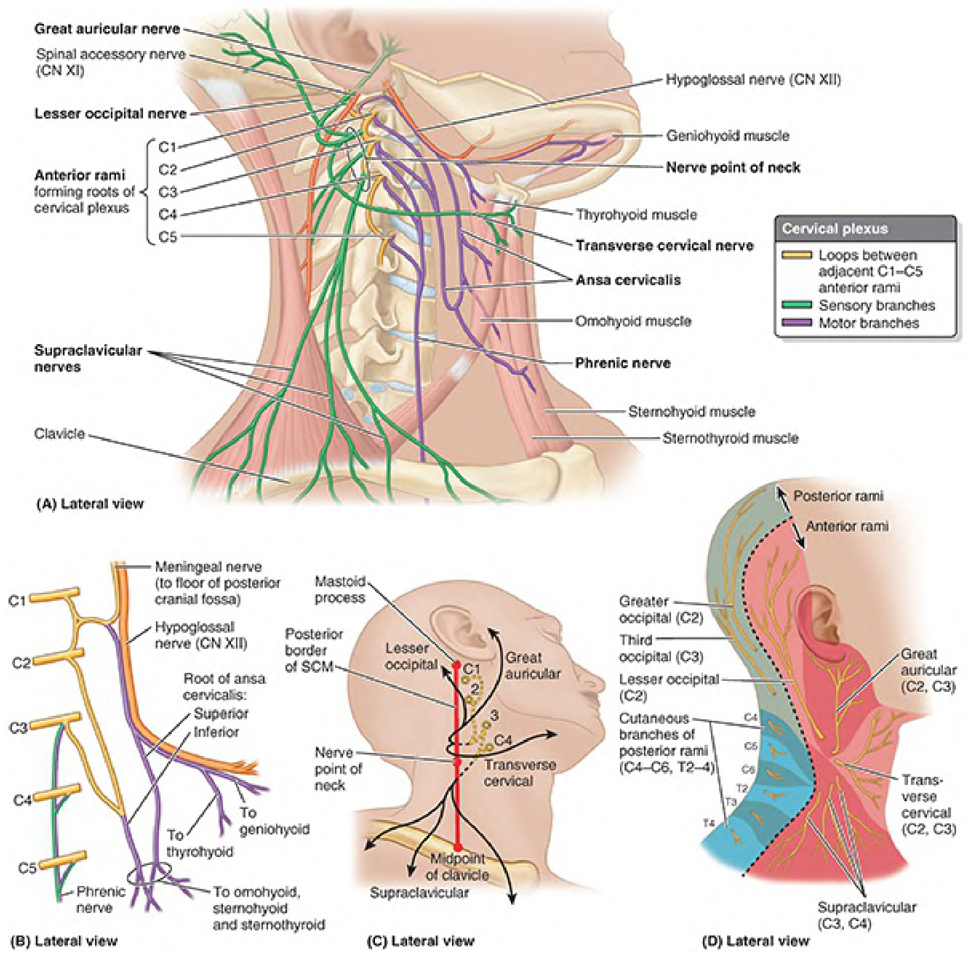
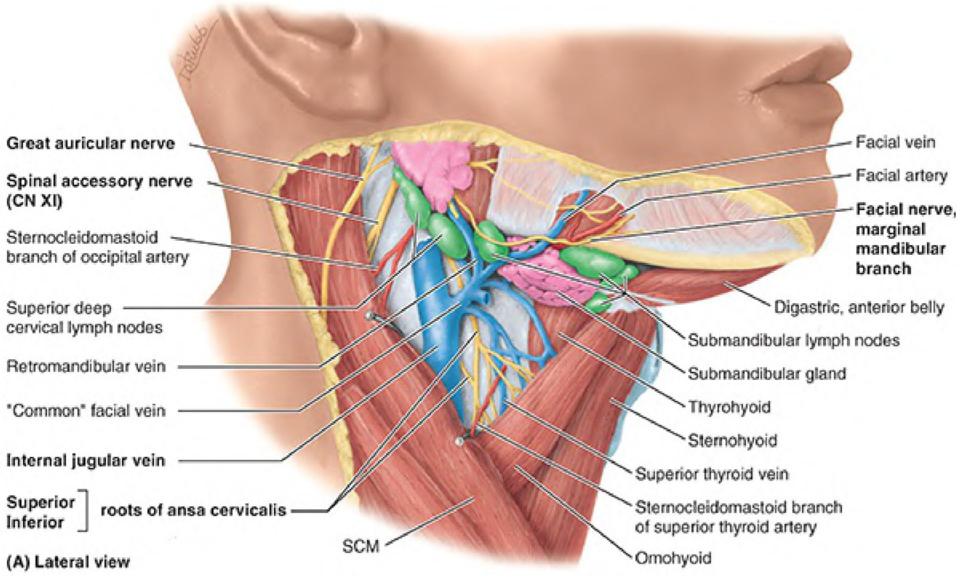


FIGURE 9.14. Cervical plexus of nerves. A. Overview. **B.** Motor nerves of cervical plexus. **C.** Sensory nerves of cervical plexus. **D.** Distribution of sensory nerves. The areas of skin innervated by the sensory (cutaneous) nerves of the cervical plexus (derived from anterior rami) and by the posterior rami of cervical spinal nerves are shown.

The **superior root of the ansa cervicalis**, conveying fibers from spinal nerves C1 and C2, briefly joins and then descends from the hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) as it traverses the lateral cervical region (Fig. 9.14A, B). The **inferior root of the ansa cervicalis** arises from a loop between spinal nerves C2 and C3. The superior and inferior roots of the ansa cervicalis unite, forming a secondary loop, the **ansa cervicalis**, consisting of fibers from the C1–C3 spinal nerves, which branch from the secondary loop to supply the infrahyoid muscles, including the omohyoid, sternothyroid, and sternohyoid (Figs. 9.14A, 9.15A, and 9.16). The fourth infrahyoid muscle, the thyrohyoid, receives C1 fibers, which descend independently from the hypoglossal nerve, distal to the superior root of the ansa cervicalis (**nerve to thyrohyoid**) (Figs. 9.14A, B and 9.15B).



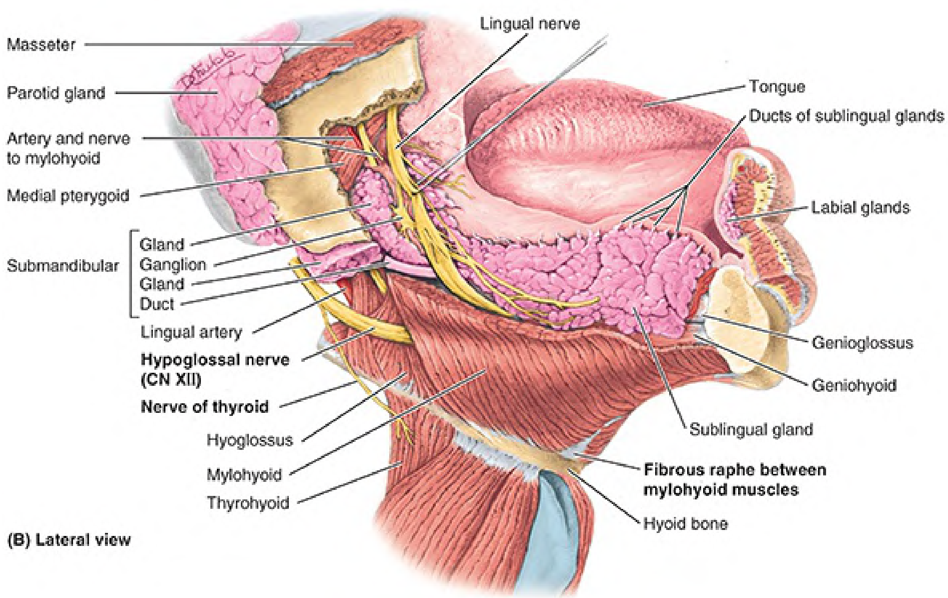


FIGURE 9.15. **Dissections of anterior cervical and suprahyoid regions. A.** Anterior cervical region. This superficial dissection of the neck displays the submandibular gland and lymph nodes. **B.** Suprahyoid region. The right half of the mandible and the superior part of the mylohyoid muscle have been removed. The cut surface of the mylohyoid becomes progressively thinner as it is traced anteriorly.

Cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus emerge around the middle of the posterior border of the SCM, often called the **nerve point of the neck** (Fig. 9.9), and supply the skin of the neck, superolateral thoracic wall, and scalp between the auricle and the external occipital protuberance (Fig. 9.14A, C, D). Close to their origin, the roots of the cervical plexus receive gray rami communicantes, most of which descend from the large superior cervical ganglion in the superior part of the neck.

Branches of cervical plexus arising from the nerve loop between the anterior rami of C2 and C3 are the

- **lesser occipital nerve** (C2): supplies the skin of the neck and scalp posterosuperior to the auricle
- **great auricular nerve** (C2 and C3): ascends vertically across the oblique SCM to the inferior pole of the parotid gland, where it divides to supply the skin over—and the sheath surrounding—the gland, the mastoid process, and both surfaces of the auricle and an area of skin extending from the angle of the mandible to the mastoid process
- **transverse cervical nerve** (C2 and C3): supplies the skin covering the anterior cervical region. It curves around the middle of the posterior border of the SCM inferior to the great auricular nerve and passes anteriorly and horizontally across it deep to the EJV and platysma, dividing into superior and inferior branches

The branches of the cervical plexus arising from the nerve loop formed between the anterior rami of C3–C4 are the

- **supraclavicular nerves** (C3 and C4): emerge as a common trunk under cover of the SCM, sending small branches to the skin of the neck that cross the clavicle and supply the skin over the shoulder

In addition to the ansa cervicalis and phrenic nerves arising from the loops of the plexus, **deep motor branches of the cervical plexus** include branches arising from the roots that supply the rhomboids (dorsal scapular nerve; C4 and C5), serratus anterior (long thoracic nerve; C5–C7), and nearby prevertebral muscles.

The **phrenic nerves** originate chiefly from the C4 nerve but receive contributions from the C3 and C5 nerves (Figs. 9.11 and 9.14A, B). The phrenic nerves contain motor, sensory, and sympathetic nerve fibers. These nerves provide the sole motor supply to the diaphragm as well as sensation to its central part. In the thorax, each phrenic nerve supplies the mediastinal pleura and pericardium (see Chapter 4, Thorax). Receiving variable communicating fibers in the neck from the cervical sympathetic ganglia or their branches, each phrenic nerve forms at the superior part of the lateral border of the anterior scalene muscle at the level of the superior border of the thyroid cartilage. The phrenic nerve, initially deep to the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia, descends obliquely with the IJV across the anterior scalene and then runs deep to the cervicodorsal trunk and suprascapular arteries.

On the left, the phrenic nerve crosses anterior to the first part of the subclavian artery; on the right, it lies on the anterior scalene muscle and crosses anterior to the second part of the subclavian artery. On both sides, the phrenic nerve runs posterior to the subclavian vein and anterior to the internal thoracic artery as it enters the thorax.

The contribution of the C5 nerve to the phrenic nerve may be derived from an **accessory phrenic nerve** (Fig. 9.11). Frequently, it is a branch of the nerve to the subclavius. If present, the accessory phrenic nerve lies lateral to the main nerve and descends posterior and sometimes anterior to the subclavian vein. The accessory phrenic nerve joins the phrenic nerve either in the root of the neck or in the thorax.

LYMPH NODES IN LATERAL CERVICAL REGION

Lymph from superficial tissues in the lateral cervical region enters the **superficial cervical lymph nodes** that lie along the EJV superficial to the SCM. Efferent vessels from these nodes drain into the **deep cervical lymph nodes**, which form a chain along the course of the IJV embedded in the fascia of the carotid sheath (Fig. 9.15A; see Fig. 9.4B).

Anterior Cervical Region

The **anterior cervical region** (anterior triangle) (see Table 9.1) has the following:

- An anterior boundary formed by the median line of the neck
- A posterior boundary formed by the anterior border of the SCM
- A superior boundary formed by the inferior border of the mandible
- An apex located at the jugular notch in the manubrium
- A roof formed by subcutaneous tissue containing the platysma
- A floor formed by the pharynx, larynx, and thyroid gland

For more precise localization of structures, the anterior cervical region is subdivided into four smaller triangles by the digastric and omohyoid muscles: the unpaired submental triangle and three small paired triangles—submandibular, carotid, and muscular.

The **submental triangle**, inferior to the chin, is a suprahyoid area bounded inferiorly by the body of the hyoid and laterally by the right and left anterior bellies of the digastric muscles. The floor of the submental triangle is formed by the two mylohyoid muscles, which meet in a median **fibrous raphe** (Fig. 9.15B). The apex of the submental triangle is at the mandibular symphysis, the site of union of the halves of the mandible during infancy. The base of the submental triangle is formed by the hyoid (Fig. 9.17). This triangle contains several small **submental lymph nodes** and small veins that unite to form the anterior jugular vein (Fig. 9.17).

The **submandibular triangle** is a glandular area between the inferior border of the mandible and the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastric muscle (see Figs. 9.7A, C and 9.12). The floor of the submandibular triangle is formed by the mylohyoid and hyoglossus muscles and the middle pharyngeal constrictor. The **submandibular gland** nearly fills this triangle (Fig. 9.15A). (Because of its functional association with the mouth as well as its anatomical association with the floor of the mouth, the gland is discussed in Chapter 8, Head.)

Submandibular lymph nodes lie on each side of the submandibular gland and along the inferior border of the mandible (Fig. 9.15A). The hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) provides motor innervation to the intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the tongue. It passes into the submandibular triangle, as does the nerve to the mylohyoid (a branch of CN V_3, which also supplies the anterior belly of the digastric), parts of the facial artery and vein, and the submental artery (a branch of the facial artery) (Figs. 9.15 and 9.16).

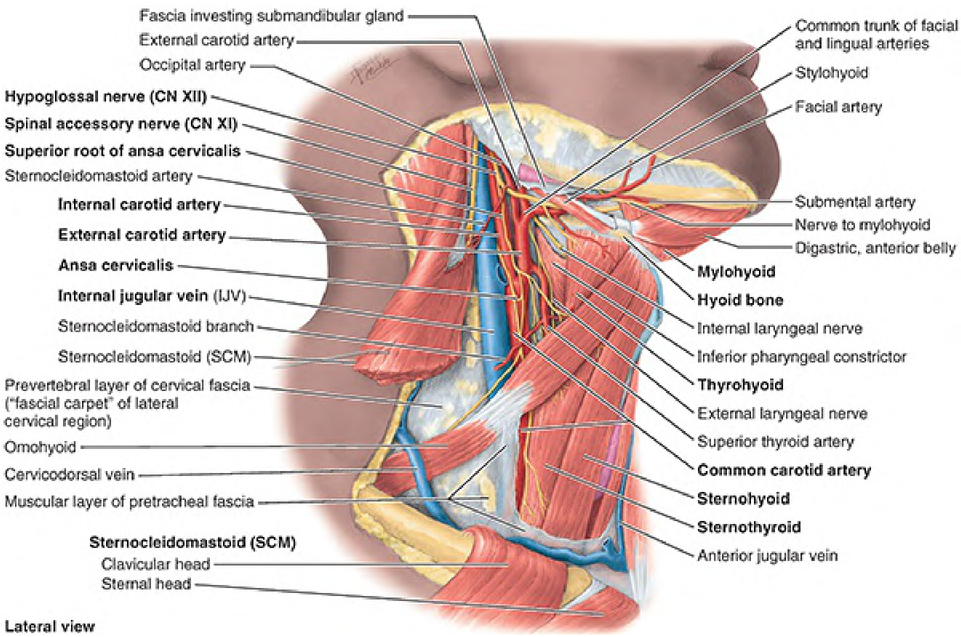


FIGURE 9.16. Deep dissection of anterior cervical region. The common facial vein and its tributaries have been removed, revealing arteries and nerves, including the ansa cervicalis and its branches to the infrahyoid muscles. The facial and lingual arteries in this person arise by a common trunk that passes deep to the stylohyoid and digastric muscles to enter the submandibular triangle.

The **carotid triangle** is a vascular area bounded by the superior belly of the omohyoid, the posterior belly of the digastric, and the anterior border of the SCM (Figs. 9.15A and 9.16; see Fig. 9.7). This triangle is important because the common carotid artery ascends into it. Its pulse can be auscultated or palpated by compressing it lightly against the transverse processes of the cervical vertebrae. At the level of the superior border of the thyroid cartilage, the common carotid artery divides into the internal and external carotid arteries (Figs. 9.16 and 9.18; see Fig. 9.20). Located within the carotid triangle are the following:

- **Carotid sinus**: a dilation of the proximal part of the internal carotid artery (Fig. 9.18), which may involve the common carotid artery. Innervated principally by the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) through the **carotid sinus nerve** as well as by the vagus nerve (CN X), it is a baroreceptor (pressoreceptor) that reacts to changes in arterial blood pressure.
- **Carotid body**: a small, reddish brown ovoid mass of tissue in life that lies in a septum on the medial (deep) side of the bifurcation of the common carotid artery in close relation to the carotid sinus. Supplied mainly by the carotid sinus nerve (CN IX) and by CN X, it is a chemoreceptor that monitors the level of oxygen in the blood. It is stimulated by low levels of oxygen and initiates a reflex that increases the rate and depth of respiration, cardiac rate, and blood pressure.

The neurovascular structures in the carotid triangle are surrounded by the carotid sheath: the carotid arteries medially, the IJV laterally, and the vagus nerve posteriorly (see Fig. 9.4B, C). Superiorly, the common carotid is replaced by the internal carotid artery. The ansa cervicalis usually lies on (or is embedded in) the anterolateral aspect of the sheath (Fig. 9.16). Many deep

cervical lymph nodes lie along the carotid sheath and the IJV.

The **muscular triangle** is bounded by the superior belly of the omohyoid muscle, the anterior border of the SCM, and the median plane of the neck (Fig. 9.17; see Fig. 9.7). This triangle contains the infrahyoid muscles and viscera (e.g., the thyroid and parathyroid glands).

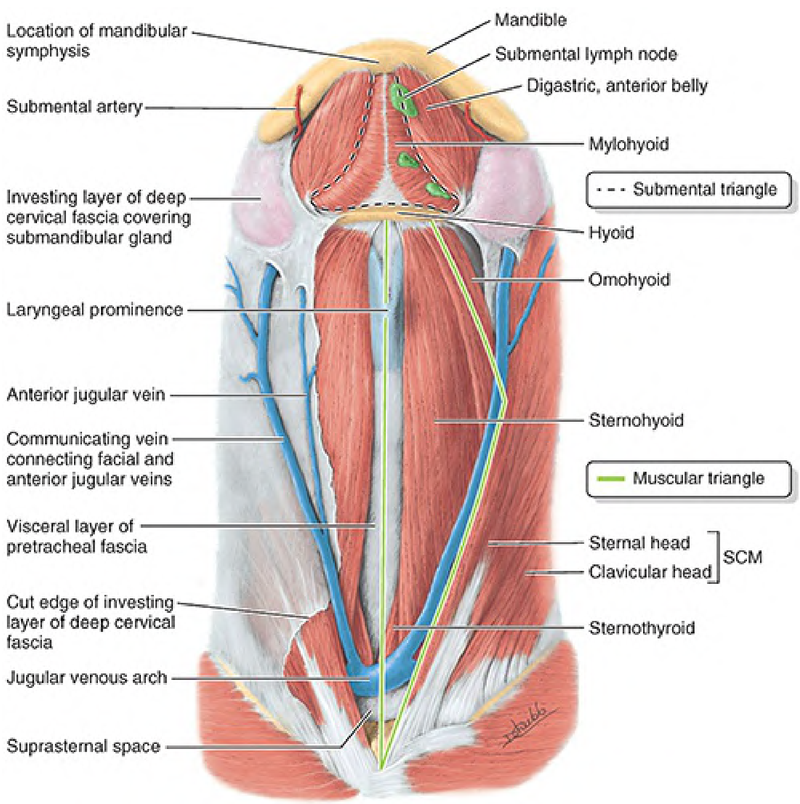


FIGURE 9.17. Superficial dissection of anterior cervical region. The submental triangle is bounded inferiorly by the body of the hyoid and laterally by the right and left anterior bellies of the digastric muscles. The floor of this triangle is formed by the two mylohyoid muscles and the raphe between them (not distinct here; see Fig. 9.15B). The muscular triangle is bounded by the superior belly of the omohyoid, the anterior border of the SCM and the midline.

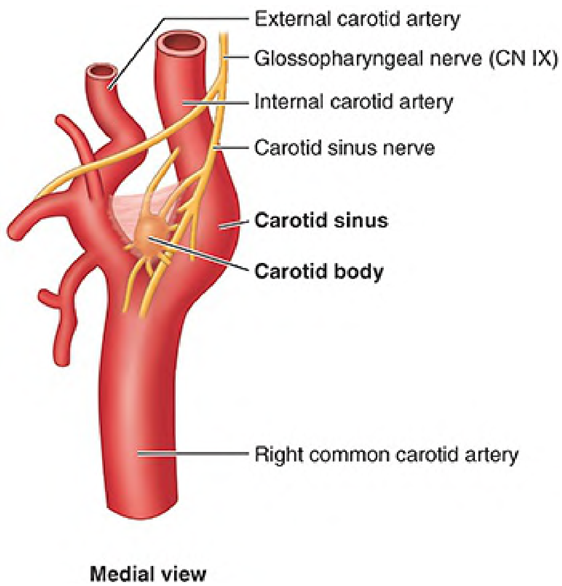


FIGURE 9.18. Carotid body and carotid sinus. This small epithelioid body lies within the bifurcation of the common carotid artery. The carotid sinus and the associated network of sensory fibers of the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) are also shown.

MUSCLES IN ANTERIOR CERVICAL REGION

In the anterolateral part of the neck, the hyoid provides attachments for the suprahyoid muscles superior to it and the infrahyoid muscles inferior to it. These **hyoid muscles** steady or move the hyoid and larynx (Figs. 9.16, 9.17, and 9.19). For descriptive purposes, they are divided into suprahyoid and infrahyoid muscles, the attachments, innervation, and main actions of which are presented in Table 9.3.

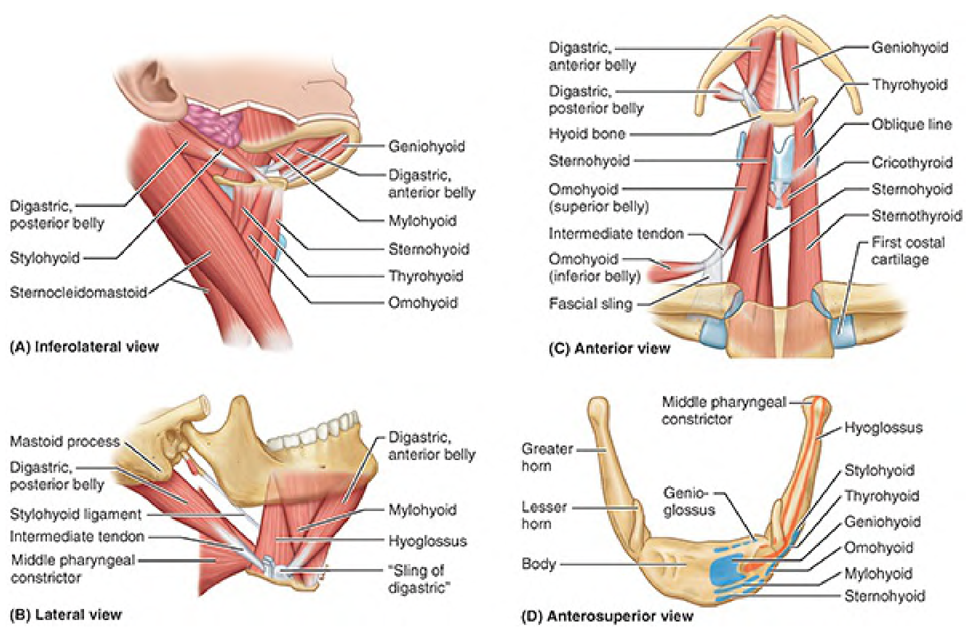


FIGURE 9.19. Muscles of anterior cervical region.

TABLE 9.3. MUSCLES OF ANTERIOR CERVICAL REGION (EXTRINSIC MUSCLES

OF LARYNX)

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Main Action(s)
Suprahyoid muscles				
Mylohyoid	Mylohyoid line of mandible	Mylohyoid raphe and body of hyoid	Nerve to mylohyoid, a branch of inferior alveolar nerve (from mandibular nerve, CN V_3)	Elevates hyoid, floor of mouth, and tongue during swallowing and speaking
Geniohyoid	Inferior mental spine of mandible	Body of hyoid	C1 via hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) and nerve to geniohyoid	Pulls hyoid anterosuperiorly; shortens floor of mouth; widens pharynx
Stylohyoid	Styloid process of temporal bone		Stylohyoid (preparotid) branch of facial nerve (CN VII)	Elevates and retracts hyoid, thus elongating floor of mouth
Digastric	Anterior belly: digastric fossa of mandible	Intermediate tendon to body and greater horn of hyoid	Nerve to mylohyoid, a branch of inferior alveolar nerve	Working with infrahyoid muscles, depresses mandible against resistance; elevates and steadies hyoid during swallowing and speaking
	Posterior belly: mastoid notch of temporal bone		Digastric (preparotid) branch of facial nerve (CN VII)	
Infrahyoid muscles				
Sternohyoid	Manubrium of sternum and medial end of clavicle	Body of hyoid	C1–C3 by a branch of ansa cervicalis	Depresses hyoid after elevation during swallowing
Omohyoid	Superior border of scapula near suprascapular notch	Inferior border of hyoid		Depresses, retracts, and steadies hyoid
Sternothyroid	Posterior surface of manubrium of sternum	Oblique line of thyroid cartilage	C2 and C3 by a branch of ansa cervicalis	Depresses hyoid and larynx
Thyrohyoid	Oblique line of thyroid cartilage	Inferior border of body and greater horn of hyoid	C1 via hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) and nerve to thyrohyoid	Depresses hyoid and elevates larynx

The **suprahyoid muscles** are superior to the hyoid and connect it to the cranium (Figs. 9.15A, 9.16, 9.17, and 9.19; Table 9.3). The suprahyoid group of muscles includes the mylohyoid, geniohyoid, stylohyoid, and digastric muscles. As a group, these muscles constitute the substance of the floor of the mouth, supporting the hyoid in providing a base from which the tongue functions and elevating the hyoid and larynx in relation to swallowing and tone production. Each **digastric muscle** has two bellies, joined by an **intermediate tendon** that descends toward the hyoid. A **fibrous sling** derived from the pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia allows the tendon to slide anteriorly and posteriorly as it connects this tendon to the body and greater horn

of the hyoid.

The difference in nerve supply between the anterior and the posterior bellies of the digastric muscles results from their different embryological origin from the 1st and 2nd pharyngeal arches, respectively. CN V supplies derivatives of the 1st arch, and CN VII supplies those of the 2nd arch.

The **infrahyoid muscles**, often called strap muscles because of their ribbon-like appearance, are inferior to the hyoid (Figs. 9.16 and 9.19; Table 9.3). These four muscles anchor the hyoid, sternum, clavicle, and scapula and depress the hyoid and larynx during swallowing and speaking. They also work with the suprahyoid muscles to steady the hyoid, providing a firm base for the tongue. The infrahyoid group of muscles are arranged in two planes: a superficial plane, made up of the sternohyoid and omohyoid, and a deep plane, composed of the sternothyroid and thyrohyoid.

Like the digastric, the omohyoid has two bellies (superior and inferior) united by an intermediate tendon. The fascial sling for the intermediate tendon connects to the clavicle.

The **sternothyroid** is wider than the **sternohyoid**, under which it lies. The sternothyroid covers the lateral lobe of the thyroid gland. Its attachment to the oblique line of the lamina of the thyroid cartilage immediately superior to the gland limits upward extension of an enlarged thyroid (see the Clinical Box "Enlargement of Thyroid Gland" later in this chapter). The **thyrohyoid** appears to be the continuation of the sternothyroid muscle, running superiorly from the oblique line of the thyroid cartilage to the hyoid.

ARTERIES IN ANTERIOR CERVICAL REGION

The anterior cervical region contains the **carotid system of arteries**, consisting of the common carotid artery and its terminal branches, the internal and external carotid arteries. It also contains the IJV, its tributaries, and the anterior jugular veins (Figs. 9.20 and 9.21). The common carotid artery and one of its terminal branches, the external carotid artery, are the main arterial vessels in the carotid triangle. Branches of the external carotid (e.g., the superior thyroid artery) also originate in the carotid triangle. Each common carotid artery ascends within the carotid sheath with the IJV and vagus nerve to the level of the superior border of the thyroid cartilage. Here, each common carotid artery terminates by dividing into the internal and external carotid arteries. The internal carotid artery has no branches in the neck; the external carotid has several.

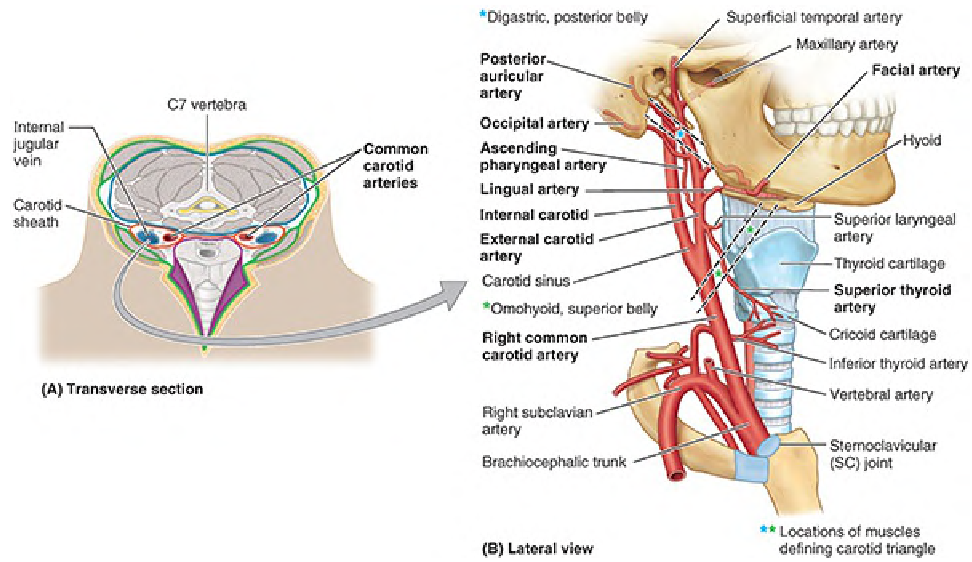


FIGURE 9.20. **Subclavian and carotid arteries and their branches. A.** Carotid sheaths. **B.** Overview. The muscles (posterior belly of the digastric and omohyoid muscles) indicate the superior and inferior boundaries of the carotid triangle.

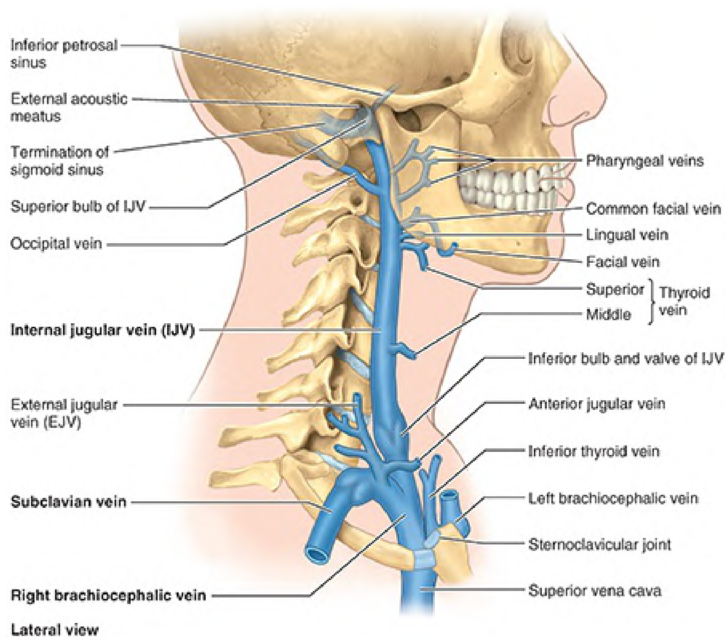


FIGURE 9.21. **Internal jugular vein.** The IJV is the main venous structure in the neck. It originates as a continuation of the S-shaped sigmoid (dural venous) sinus. As it descends in the neck, it is contained in the carotid sheath. It terminates at the T1 vertebral level, superior to the sternoclavicular joint, by uniting with the subclavian vein to form the brachiocephalic vein. A large valve near its termination prevents reflux of blood into the vein.

The **right common carotid artery** begins at the bifurcation of the brachiocephalic trunk. The right subclavian artery is the other branch of this trunk. From the arch of the aorta, the **left common carotid artery** ascends into the neck. Consequently, the left common carotid has a course of approximately 2 cm in the superior mediastinum before entering the neck.

The **internal carotid arteries** are direct continuations of the common carotids superior to the origin of the external carotid artery, at the level of the superior border of the thyroid cartilage.

The proximal part of each internal carotid artery is the site of the carotid sinus (Figs. 9.18 and 9.20). The carotid body is located in the cleft between the internal and the external carotid arteries. The internal carotid arteries enter the cranium through the carotid canals in the petrous parts of the temporal bones and become the main arteries of the brain and structures in the orbits (see Chapter 8, Head). No named branches arise from the internal carotid arteries in the neck.

The **external carotid arteries** supply most structures external to the cranium; the orbit and the part of the forehead and scalp supplied by the supra-orbital artery are the major exceptions. There is some deep distribution as well (e.g., via the middle meningeal artery). Each external carotid artery runs posterosuperiorly to the region between the neck of the mandible and the lobule of the auricle, where it is embedded in the parotid gland, and terminates by dividing into two branches, the maxillary artery and the superficial temporal artery (Fig. 9.20). Before these terminal branches, six arteries arise from the external carotid artery:

1. **Ascending pharyngeal artery**: arises as the first or second branch of the external carotid artery and is its only medial branch. It ascends on the pharynx deep (medial) to the internal carotid artery and sends branches to the pharynx, prevertebral muscles, middle ear, and cranial meninges.
2. **Occipital artery**: arises from the posterior aspect of the external carotid artery, superior to the origin of the facial artery. It passes posteriorly, immediately medial and parallel to the attachment of the posterior belly of the digastric muscle in the **occipital groove** in the temporal bone, and ends by dividing into numerous branches in the posterior part of the scalp. During its course, it passes superficial to the internal carotid artery and CN IX–XI.
3. **Posterior auricular artery**: a small posterior branch of the external carotid artery, which is usually the last preterminal branch. It ascends posteriorly between the external acoustic meatus and mastoid process to supply the adjacent muscles, parotid gland, facial nerve, and structures in the temporal bone, auricle, and scalp.
4. **Superior thyroid artery**: the most inferior of the three anterior branches of the external carotid artery, runs antero-inferiorly deep to the infrahyoid muscles to reach the thyroid gland. In addition to supplying this gland, it gives off branches to the infrahyoid muscles and SCM and gives rise to the superior laryngeal artery, supplying the larynx.
5. **Lingual artery**: arises from the anterior aspect of the external carotid artery, where it lies on the middle pharyngeal constrictor. It arches supero-anteriorly and passes deep to the hypoglossal nerve (CN XII), the stylohyoid muscle, and the posterior belly of the digastric muscle. It disappears deep to the hyoglossus muscle, giving branches to the posterior tongue. It then turns superiorly at the anterior border of this muscle, bifurcating into the deep lingual and sublingual arteries.
6. **Facial artery**: arises anteriorly from the external carotid artery, either in common with the lingual artery or immediately superior to it (Figs. 9.16 and 9.20). After giving rise to the ascending palatine artery and a tonsillar artery, the facial artery passes superiorly under cover of the digastric and stylohyoid muscles and the angle of the mandible. It loops anteriorly and enters a deep groove in and supplies the submandibular gland. It then gives rise to the submental artery to the floor of the mouth and hooks around the middle of the inferior border

of the mandible to enter the face.

Memory device for the six branches of the external carotid artery: 1, 2, and 3—one branch arises medially (ascending pharyngeal), two branches arise posteriorly (occipital and posterior auricular), and three branches arise anteriorly (superior thyroid, lingual, and facial).

VEINS IN ANTERIOR CERVICAL REGION

Most veins in the anterior cervical region are tributaries of the IJV, typically the largest vein in the neck (Figs. 9.16 and 9.21). The IJV drains blood from the brain, anterior face, cervical viscera, and deep muscles of the neck. It commences at the jugular foramen in the posterior cranial fossa as the direct continuation of the sigmoid sinus (see Chapter 8, Head).

From a dilation at its origin (the **superior bulb of the IJV**), the vein descends with the vagus nerve in the carotid sheath (Fig. 9.20A), accompanying the (ascending) internal carotid artery superior to the carotid bifurcation and the common carotid artery inferiorly (see Fig. 9.26). Within the carotid sheath, the vein lies lateral to the artery and the nerve lies posteriorly.

The cervical sympathetic trunk lies posterior to the carotid sheath. Although closely related, the trunk is not within the sheath; instead, it is embedded in the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia. The IJV leaves the anterior cervical region by passing deep to the SCM. The inferior end of the vein passes deep to the gap between the sternal and clavicular heads of this muscle. Posterior to the sternal end of the clavicle, the IJV merges with the subclavian vein to form the brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 9.21). The inferior end of the IJV dilates to form the **inferior bulb of the IJV**. This bulb has a bicuspid valve that permits blood to flow toward the heart while preventing backflow into the vein, as might occur if inverted (e.g., standing on one's head or when intrathoracic pressure is increased).

The tributaries of the IJV are the inferior petrosal sinus and the facial and lingual (often by a common trunk), pharyngeal, and superior and middle thyroid veins. The **occipital vein** usually drains into the suboccipital venous plexus, drained by the deep cervical vein and the vertebral vein, but it may drain into the IJV.

The **inferior petrosal sinus** leaves the cranium through the jugular foramen and enters the superior bulb of the IJV. The facial vein empties into the IJV opposite or just inferior to the level of the hyoid. The facial vein may receive the superior thyroid, lingual, or sublingual veins. The lingual veins form a single vein from the tongue, which empties into the IJV at the level of origin of the lingual artery. The pharyngeal veins arise from the venous plexus on the pharyngeal wall and empty into the IJV approximately at the level of the angle of the mandible. The superior and middle thyroid veins leave the thyroid gland and drain into the IJV.

NERVES IN ANTERIOR CERVICAL REGION

Several nerves, including branches of cranial nerves, are located in the anterior cervical region:

- **Transverse cervical nerve** (C2 and C3): supplies the skin covering the anterior cervical region. This nerve was discussed with the cervical plexus earlier in this chapter (see Figs. 9.9 and 9.14A, C, D).

- **Hypoglossal nerve** (CN XII): The motor nerve of the tongue enters the submandibular triangle deep to the posterior belly of the digastric muscle to supply the intrinsic and four of the five extrinsic muscles of the tongue (Figs. 9.14A, 9.16, and 9.22). The nerve passes between the external carotid and jugular vessels and gives off the superior root of the ansa cervicalis and then a branch to the geniohyoid muscle (Fig. 9.14). In both cases, the branch conveys only fibers from the C1 spinal nerve, which joined its proximal part; no hypoglossal fibers are conveyed in these branches (see Chapter 10, Summary of Cranial Nerves, for details).
- Branches of the **glossopharyngeal** (CN IX) and **vagus** (CN X) nerves: in the submandibular and carotid triangles (Figs. 9.18 and 9.22). CN IX is primarily related to the tongue and pharynx. In the neck, CN X gives rise to pharyngeal, laryngeal, and cardiac branches.

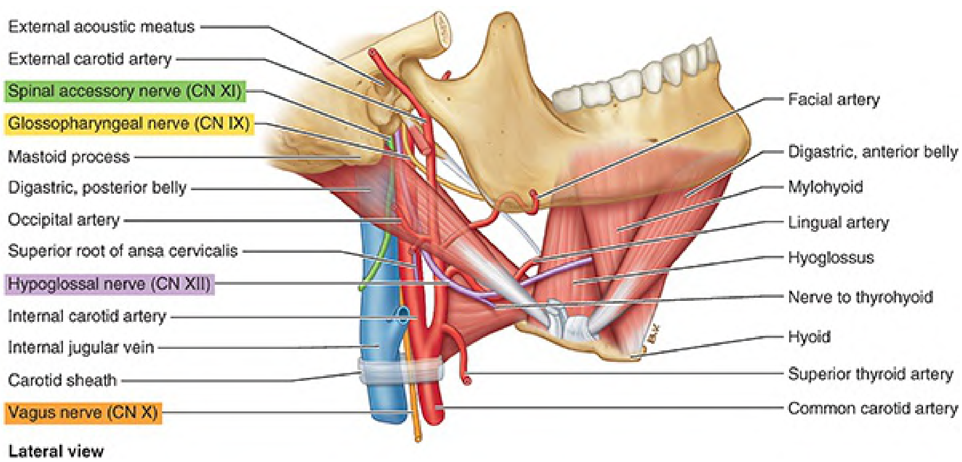


FIGURE 9.22. **Relationships of nerves and vessels to suprahyoid muscles of anterior cervical region.** The posterior belly of the digastric muscle, running from the mastoid process to the hyoid, holds a superficial and key position in the neck.

Surface Anatomy of Cervical Regions and Triangles of Neck

The skin of the neck is thin and pliable. The subcutaneous tissue contains the platysma, a thin sheet of striated muscle that ascends to the face (Fig. 9.23A; see Fig. 9.5). Its fibers can be observed, especially in thin people, by asking them to contract the platysma muscles (e.g., by pretending to ease a tight collar).

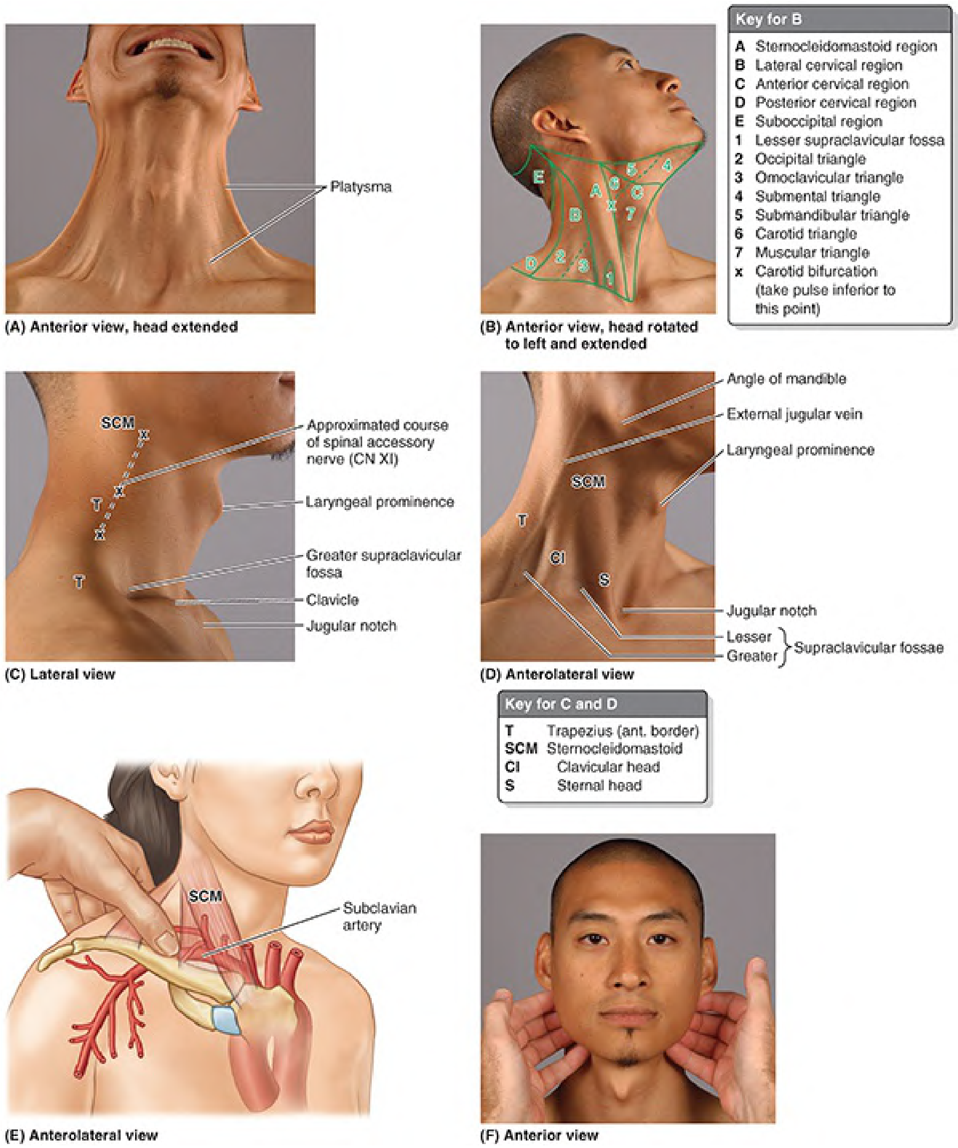


FIGURE 9.23. Surface anatomy of neck. A. Contraction of platysma. **B.** Regions (A–E) and triangles (2–7) of neck. **C.** Course of spinal accessory nerve (CN XI). **D.** Landmarks of anterolateral neck. **E.** Subclavian artery pulse. **F.** Palpation of submandibular lymph nodes.

The SCM is the key muscular landmark of the neck. It defines the sternocleidomastoid region and divides the neck into anterior and lateral cervical regions (Fig. 9.23B). This broad bulging muscle is easy to observe and palpate throughout its length as it passes superolaterally from the sternum and clavicle. Its superior attachment to the mastoid process is palpable posterior to the lobule of the auricle. The SCM can be made to stand out by asking the person to rotate the face toward the contralateral side and elevate the chin. In this contracted state, the anterior and posterior borders of the muscle are clearly defined.

The jugular notch of the manubrium forms the inferior boundary of the fossa between the sternal heads of the SCMs (Fig. 9.23C, D). The suprasternal space and jugular venous arch are located superior to this notch (Fig. 9.17; see Fig. 9.4A). The lesser supraclavicular fossa,

between the sternal and the clavicular heads of the SCM, overlies the inferior end of the IJV (Fig. 9.23B, D). It can be entered here by a needle or catheter (see the Clinical Box "Internal Jugular Vein Puncture" in this chapter).

The EJV runs vertically across the SCM toward the angle of the mandible (Fig. 9.23D). It may be prominent, especially if distended by asking the person to take a deep breath and hold it, expiring against resistance (Valsalva maneuver) or by using gentle pressure on the inferior part of the vein. These actions impede venous return to the right side of the heart. The EJV is less obvious in children and middle-aged women because their subcutaneous tissues tend to be thicker than those in men.

The great auricular nerve parallels the EJV, approximately a finger's breadth posterior to the vein. Deep to the superior half of the SCM is the cervical plexus, and deep to the inferior half of the SCM are the IJV, common carotid artery, and vagus nerve in the carotid sheath.

The trapezius, which defines the posterior cervical region, can be observed and palpated by asking the person to shrug the shoulders against resistance (Fig. 9.23B–D). Superiorly, inferior to its attachment to the external occipital protuberance, the muscle overlies the suboccipital region (see Fig. 2.42).

The inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle can just barely be seen and palpated as it passes superomedially across the inferior part of the lateral cervical region. Easiest to observe in thin people, the omohyoid muscle can often be seen contracting when they are speaking.

Just inferior to the inferior belly of the omohyoid is the greater supraclavicular fossa, the depression overlying the omoclavicular (subclavian) triangle (Fig. 9.23C, D). The third part of the subclavian artery passes through this triangle before coursing posterior to the clavicle and across the 1st rib. The greater supraclavicular fossa is clinically important because **subclavian arterial pulsations** can be palpated here in most people. The course of the subclavian artery in the neck is represented by a curved line from the sternoclavicular (SC) joint to the midpoint of the clavicle. To feel subclavian pulsations, press inferoposteriorly (down and back) immediately posterior to the junction of the medial and middle thirds of the clavicle (Fig. 9.23E). This is the pressure point for the subclavian artery; firmer pressure, compressing the artery against the 1st rib, can occlude the artery when hemorrhage is occurring distally in the upper limb.

The chief contents of the larger occipital triangle, superior to the omohyoid muscle, are the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI); cutaneous branches of cervical nerves C2, C3, and C4; and cervical lymph nodes. Because of the vulnerability and frequency of iatrogenic injury of the spinal accessory nerve, it is important to be able to estimate the location of CN XI in the lateral cervical region. Its course can be approximated by a line that intersects the junction of the superior and middle thirds of the posterior border of the SCM and the junction of the middle and lower thirds of the anterior border of the trapezius (Fig. 9.23C).

The cervical viscera and carotid arteries and their branches are approached surgically through the anterior cervical region, between the anterior border of the SCM and the midline (Fig. 9.23B). Of the four smaller triangles into which this region is subdivided, the submandibular and carotid triangles are especially important clinically.

The submandibular gland nearly fills the submandibular triangle. It is palpable as a soft mass

inferior to the body of the mandible, especially when the apex of the tongue is forced against the maxillary incisor teeth. The submandibular lymph nodes lie superficial to the gland (Fig. 9.15A). These nodes receive lymph from the face inferior to the eye and from the mouth. If enlarged, these nodes can be palpated by moving the fingertips from the angle of the mandible along its inferior border (Fig. 9.23D, F). If continued until the fingers meet under the chin, enlarged submental lymph nodes can be palpated in the submental triangle (Fig. 9.23B).

The carotid arterial system is located in the carotid triangle. This area is important for surgical approaches to the carotid sheath containing the common carotid artery, IJV, and vagus nerve (Figs. 9.16 and 9.22). The carotid triangle also contains the hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) and cervical sympathetic trunk. The carotid sheath can be marked out by a line joining the SC joint to a point midway between the mastoid process and the angle of the mandible. The **carotid pulse** can be palpated by placing the index and 3rd fingers on the thyroid cartilage and pointing them posterolaterally between the trachea and SCM. The pulse is palpable just medial to the SCM. The palpation is performed low in the neck to avoid pressure on the carotid sinus, which could cause a reflex drop in blood pressure and heart rate (Figs. 9.18 and 9.23B).

C L I N I C A L
B O X

SUPERFICIAL STRUCTURES OF NECK: CERVICAL REGIONS

Congenital Torticollis

Torticollis (L. tortus, twisted + L. collum, neck) is a contraction or shortening of the cervical muscles that produces twisting of the neck and slanting of the head. The most common type of torticollis (wry neck) results from a fibrous tissue tumor (L. fibromatosis colli) that develops in the SCM before or shortly after birth. The lesion, like a normal unilateral SCM contraction, causes the head to tilt toward, and the face to turn away from, the affected side (Fig. B9.1). When torticollis occurs prenatally, the abnormal position of the infant’s head usually necessitates a breech delivery.

FIGURE B9.1. Congenital torticollis.

Occasionally, the SCM is injured when an infant's head is pulled too much during a difficult birth, tearing its fibers (muscular torticollis) (Kliegman et al., 2020). A hematoma (localized mass of extravasated blood) occurs that may develop into a fibrotic mass that entraps a branch of the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI) and thus denervates part of the SCM. The stiffness and twisting of the neck results from fibrosis and shortening of the SCM. Surgical release of the SCM from its inferior attachments to the manubrium and clavicle inferior to the level of CN XI may be necessary to enable the person to hold and rotate the head normally.

Spasmodic Torticollis

Cervical dystonia (abnormal tonicity of the cervical muscles), commonly known as spasmodic torticollis, usually begins in adulthood. It may involve any bilateral combination of lateral neck muscles, especially the SCM and trapezius. Characteristics of this disorder are sustained turning, tilting, flexing, or extending of the neck. Shifting the head laterally or anteriorly can occur involuntarily (Jinnah, 2022). The shoulder is usually elevated and displaced anteriorly on the side to which the chin turns.

Subclavian Vein Puncture

The right or left subclavian vein is often the point of entry to the venous system for central line placement, such as a pulmonary artery catheter (PAC, also known as a Swan-Ganz or right heart catheter). Central lines are inserted to administer parenteral (venous nutritional) fluids and medications and to measure central venous pressure. In an infraclavicular subclavian vein approach, the administrator places the thumb of one hand on the middle part of the clavicle and the index finger on the jugular notch in

the manubrium (Fig. B9.2). The needle punctures the skin inferior to the thumb (middle of the clavicle) and is advanced medially toward the tip of the index finger (jugular notch) until the tip enters the right venous angle, posterior to the sternoclavicular joint. Here, the internal jugular and subclavian veins merge to form the brachiocephalic vein. If the needle is not inserted carefully, it may puncture the pleura and lung, resulting in pneumothorax. Furthermore, if the needle is inserted too far posteriorly, it may enter the subclavian artery. When the needle has been inserted correctly, a soft, flexible catheter is inserted into the subclavian vein, using the needle as a guide.

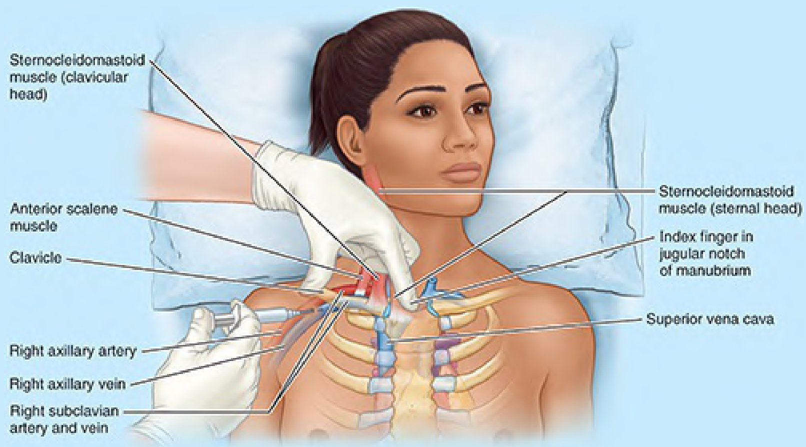


FIGURE B9.2. Subclavian vein puncture.

Right Cardiac Catheterization

For right cardiac catheterization (to take measurements of pressures in the right chambers of the heart), puncture of the IJV can be used to introduce a catheter through the right brachiocephalic vein into the superior vena cava (SVC) and the right side of the heart. Although the preferred route is through the IJV or subclavian vein, it may be necessary in some patients to use the EJV. This vein is not ideal for catheterization because its angle of junction with the subclavian vein makes passage of the catheter difficult.

Prominence of External Jugular Vein

The EJV may serve as an "internal barometer." When venous pressure is in the normal range, the EJV is usually visible above the clavicle for only a short distance. However, when venous pressure rises (e.g., as in heart failure), the vein is prominent throughout its course along the side of the neck. Consequently, routine observation of the EJVs during physical examinations may give diagnostic signs of heart failure, SVC obstruction, enlarged supraclavicular lymph nodes, or increased intrathoracic pressure.

Severance of External Jugular Vein

If the EJV is severed along the posterior border of the SCM, where it pierces the roof of the lateral cervical region (e.g., by a knife slash), its lumen is held open by the tough investing layer of deep cervical fascia, and the negative intrathoracic pressure air will suck air into the vein. This action produces a churning noise in the thorax and cyanosis (a bluish discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes resulting from an excessive concentration of reduced hemoglobin in the blood). A venous air embolism produced in this way will fill the right side of the heart with froth, which nearly stops blood flow through it, resulting in dyspnea (shortness of breath). The application of firm pressure to the severed jugular vein until it can be sutured will stop the bleeding and entry of air into the blood.

Lesions of Spinal Accessory Nerve (CN XI)

Lesions of the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI) are uncommon. This nerve may be damaged by the following:

- Penetrating trauma, such as a stab or bullet wound
- Surgical procedures in the lateral cervical region
- Tumors at the cranial base or cancerous cervical lymph nodes
- Fractures of the jugular foramen, where CN XI leaves the cranium

Although contraction of one SCM turns the head to one side, a unilateral lesion of CN XI usually does not produce an abnormal position of the head. However, people with CN XI damage usually have weakness in turning the head to the opposite side against resistance. Lesions of the CN XI produce weakness and atrophy of the trapezius, impairing neck movements.

Unilateral paralysis of the trapezius is evident by the patient's inability to elevate and retract the shoulder and by difficulty in elevating the upper limb superior to the horizontal level. The normal prominence in the neck produced by the trapezius is also reduced. Drooping of the shoulder is an obvious sign of CN XI injury. During extensive surgical dissections in the lateral cervical region—for example, during removal of cancerous lymph nodes—the surgeon isolates CN XI to preserve it, if possible. An awareness of the superficial location of this nerve during superficial procedures in the lateral cervical region is important because CN XI is the most commonly iatrogenic nerve injury (G. iatros, physician or surgeon).

Severance of Phrenic Nerve, Phrenic Nerve Block, and Phrenic Nerve Crush

Severance of a phrenic nerve results in paralysis of the corresponding half of the diaphragm (see the Clinical Box "Paralysis of Diaphragm" in Chapter 4, Thorax). A phrenic nerve block produces a short period of paralysis of the diaphragm on one

side (e.g., for a lung operation). The anesthetic is injected around the nerve where it lies on the anterior surface of the middle third of the anterior scalene muscle. A surgical phrenic nerve crush (e.g., compressing the nerve injuriously with forceps) produces a longer period of paralysis (sometimes for weeks after surgical repair of a diaphragmatic hernia). If an accessory phrenic nerve is present, it must also be crushed to produce complete paralysis of the hemidiaphragm.

Nerve Blocks in Lateral Cervical Region

For regional anesthesia before neck surgery, a cervical plexus block inhibits nerve impulse conduction. The anesthetic agent is injected at several points along the posterior border of the SCM, mainly at the junction of its superior and middle thirds, the nerve point of the neck (see Figs. 9.9 and 9.14A). Half of the diaphragm is usually paralyzed by a cervical plexus block due to the inclusion of the phrenic nerve in the block. Therefore, this procedure is not performed on persons with pulmonary or cardiac disease. For anesthesia of the upper limb, the anesthetic agent in a supraclavicular brachial plexus block is injected around the supraclavicular part of the brachial plexus. The main injection site is superior to the midpoint of the clavicle.

Injury to Suprascapular Nerve

The suprascapular nerve is vulnerable to injury in fractures of the middle third of the clavicle. Injury to the suprascapular nerve results in loss of lateral rotation of the humerus at the glenohumeral joint. Consequently, the relaxed limb rotates medially into the waiter's tip position (see Chapter 3, Upper Limb, Fig. B3.13B). The ability to initiate abduction of the limb is also affected.

Ligation of External Carotid Artery

Ligation of an external carotid artery is sometimes necessary to control bleeding from one of its relatively inaccessible branches. This procedure decreases blood flow through the artery and its branches but does not eliminate it. Blood flows in a retrograde (backward) direction into the artery from the external carotid artery on the other side through communications between its branches (e.g., those in the face and scalp) and across the midline. When the external carotid or subclavian arteries are ligated, the descending branch of the occipital artery provides the main collateral circulation, anastomosing with the vertebral and deep cervical arteries.

Surgical Dissection of Carotid Triangle

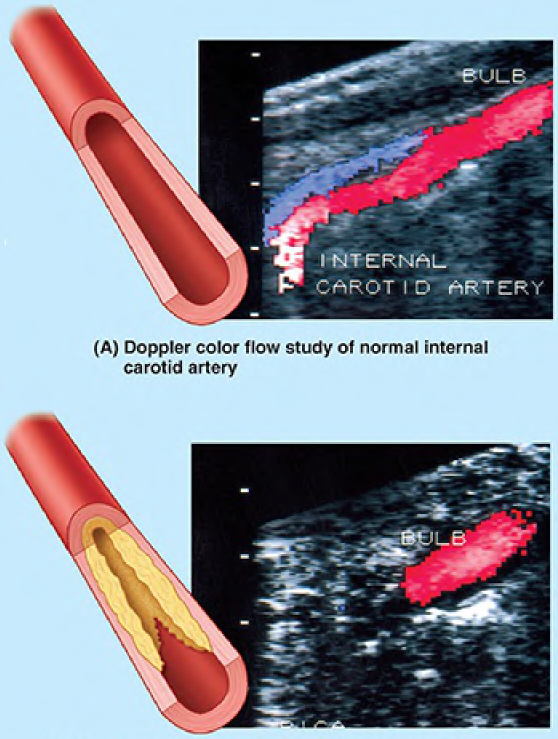
The carotid triangle provides an important surgical approach to the carotid system of arteries. It also provides access to the IJV, the vagus and hypoglossal nerves, and the

cervical sympathetic trunk. Damage or compression of the vagus and/or recurrent laryngeal nerves during surgical dissection of the carotid triangle may produce an alteration in the voice because these nerves supply laryngeal muscles.

Carotid Occlusion and Endarterectomy

Atherosclerotic thickening of the intima of the internal carotid artery may obstruct blood flow. Symptoms resulting from this obstruction depend on the degree of obstruction and the amount of collateral blood flow to the brain and structures in the orbit from other arteries. A partial occlusion of the internal carotid may cause a transient ischemic attack (TIA), a sudden focal loss of neurological function (e.g., dizziness and disorientation) that disappears within 24 hours. Arterial occlusion may also cause a minor stroke, a loss of neurological function such as weakness or sensory loss on one side of the body that exceeds 24 hours but disappears within 3 weeks.

Obstruction of blood flow can be observed in a Doppler color study (Fig. B9.3A). A Doppler is a diagnostic instrument that emits an ultrasonic beam and detects its reflection from moving fluid (blood) in a manner that distinguishes the fluid from the static surrounding tissue, providing information about its pressure, velocity, and turbulence. Carotid occlusion, causing stenosis (narrowing) in otherwise healthy persons (Fig. B9.3B), can be relieved by opening the artery at its origin and stripping off the atherosclerotic plaque with the intima. This procedure is called carotid endarterectomy. After the operation, drugs that inhibit clot formation are administered until the endothelium has regrown. Because of the relations of the internal carotid artery, there is risk of cranial nerve injury during the procedure involving one or more of the following nerves: CN IX, CN X (or its branch, the superior laryngeal nerve), CN XI, or CN XII (Fig. 9.22).



(A) Doppler color flow study of normal internal carotid artery

(B) Doppler color flow study of occluded carotid artery

FIGURE B9.3. Doppler study of carotid blood flow.

Carotid Pulse

The carotid pulse ("neck pulse") is easily felt by palpating the common carotid artery in the side of the neck, where it lies in a groove between the trachea and the infrahyoid muscles (see Fig. 9.16). It is usually easily palpated just deep to the anterior border of the SCM at the level of the superior border of the thyroid cartilage. It is routinely checked during cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). Absence of a carotid pulse indicates cardiac arrest.

Carotid Sinus Hypersensitivity

In people with carotid sinus hypersensitivity (exceptional responsiveness of the carotid sinuses in various types of vascular disease), external pressure on the carotid artery may cause slowing of the heart rate, a fall in blood pressure, and cardiac ischemia resulting in fainting (syncope). In all forms of syncope, symptoms result from a sudden and critical decrease in cerebral perfusion (Shih, 2022). Consequently, this method of checking the pulse is not recommended for people with cardiac or vascular disease. Alternate sites, such as the radial artery at the wrist, should be used to check pulse rate in people with carotid sinus hypersensitivity.

Role of Carotid Bodies

The carotid bodies are in an ideal position to monitor the oxygen content of blood before it reaches the brain (see Fig. 9.18). A decrease in partial pressure of oxygen (pO_2), as occurs at high altitudes or in pulmonary disease, activates the aortic and carotid chemoreceptors, increasing alveolar ventilation. The carotid bodies also respond to increased carbon dioxide (CO_2) tension or free hydrogen ions in the blood. The glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX, perhaps with involvement of the vagus nerve) conducts the information centrally, resulting in reflexive stimulation of the respiratory centers of the brain that increase the depth and rate of breathing. The pulse rate and blood pressure also increase. With increased ventilation and circulation, more oxygen is taken in and the concentration of CO_2 is reduced accordingly.

Internal Jugular Pulse

Although pulsations are most commonly associated with arteries, pulsations of the IJV can provide information about heart activity corresponding to electrocardiogram (ECG) recordings and right atrial pressure. The IJV pulse is not palpable in the same manner as arterial pulses; however, the vein's pulsations are transmitted through the surrounding tissue and may be observed beneath the SCM superior to the medial end of the clavicle.

Because there are no valves in the brachiocephalic vein or the superior vena cava, a wave of contraction passes up these vessels to the inferior bulb of the IJV. The pulsations are especially visible when the person's head is inferior to the lower limbs (Trendelenburg position). The internal jugular pulse increases considerably in conditions such as mitral valve disease (see Chapter 4, Thorax), which increases pressure in the pulmonary circulation and right side of the heart. The right IJV runs a straighter, more direct course to the right atrium than does the left; therefore, it is the one that is examined (Bickley, 2021).

Internal Jugular Vein Puncture

A needle and catheter may be inserted into the IJV for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes. The right IJV is preferable because it is usually larger and straighter. During this procedure, the clinician palpates the common carotid artery and inserts the needle into the IJV just lateral to it at a 30° angle, aiming at the apex of the triangle between the sternal and clavicular heads of the SCM, the lesser supraclavicular fossa (Fig. B9.4). The needle is then directed inferolaterally toward the ipsilateral nipple.

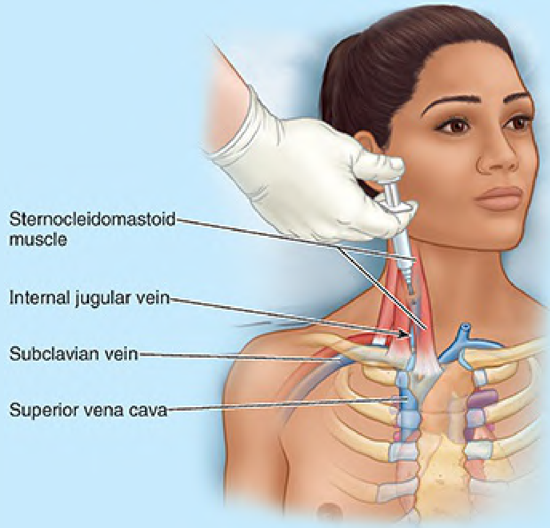


FIGURE B9.4. **Internal jugular vein puncture.**

The Bottom Line: Superficial Structures of Neck: Cervical Regions

Sternocleidomastoid (SCM) and trapezius: The SCM and trapezius muscles share their origins from a common embryologic source, innervation by the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI), enclosure by the investing layer of deep cervical fascia, a linear superior attachment to the cranial base, and an inferior attachment to the pectoral girdle. ■ Their superficial masses and palpable borders provide the basis for describing the regions of the neck. ■ The SCM produces multiple movements of the head and neck. ■ The trapezius causes multiple movements of the scapula, depending on whether the muscles act unilaterally or bilaterally, and independently or in conjunction with concentric or eccentric contraction of other muscles.

Lateral cervical region: The lateral cervical region is bounded by the SCM, trapezius, and middle third of the clavicle, with a muscular floor formed by the lateral deep cervical muscles. ■ It is subdivided by the diagonally placed inferior belly of the omohyoid. ■ Most apparent within the superior occipital triangle is the lower half of the external jugular vein. ■ Most important clinically is the superficially located spinal accessory nerve (CN XI). ■ In the inferior and much smaller omoclavicular triangle, the brachial plexus emerges between the middle and anterior scalene muscles, the latter of which is crossed anteriorly by the phrenic nerve. ■ Superior to the brachial plexus, and in the same plane, is the cervical plexus. ■ The cutaneous branches of this plexus emerge from the midpoint of the posterior border of the SCM and radiate toward the scalp, auricle, anterior neck, and

shoulder.

Anterior cervical region: The anterior cervical region is inferior to the body of the mandible, extending anteriorly from the SCM to the midline. ■ The bellies of the digastric, the anterior belly of the omohyoid, and the hyoid subdivide the region into smaller triangles. ■ The submental triangle is superficial to the floor of the mouth. ■ The submandibular triangle, superior to the digastric bellies, is occupied by the submandibular salivary gland and submandibular lymph nodes. ■ The facial artery, coursing within this triangle, is palpable as it emerges from it and crosses the body of the mandible. ■ The carotid triangle, between the posterior belly of the digastric, superior belly of the omohyoid, and SCM, includes much of the carotid sheath and related structures, including the bifurcation of the common carotid, the carotid sinus and body, and the initial branches of the external carotid artery. ■ The muscular triangle is formed and occupied by the infrahyoid muscles.

DEEP STRUCTURES OF NECK

The **deep structures of the neck** are the prevertebral muscles located posterior to the cervical viscera and anterolateral to the cervical vertebral column and the viscera extending through the superior thoracic aperture, into the root (most inferior part) of the neck.

Prevertebral Muscles

The anterior and lateral vertebral or **prevertebral muscles** are deep to prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia. The **anterior vertebral muscles**, consisting of the longus colli and capitis, rectus capitis anterior, and anterior scalene muscles (Figs. 9.24A and 9.25B), lie directly posterior to the retropharyngeal space (see Fig. 9.4A, B) and medial to the neurovascular plane of the cervical and brachial plexuses and subclavian artery. The **lateral vertebral muscles**, consisting of the rectus capitis lateralis, splenius capitis, levator scapulae, and middle and posterior scalene muscles, lie posterior to this neurovascular plane and (except for the highly placed rectus capitis lateralis) form the floor of the lateral cervical region. These muscles are illustrated in Figures 9.24 and 9.25; their attachments, innervation, and main actions are given in Table 9.4.

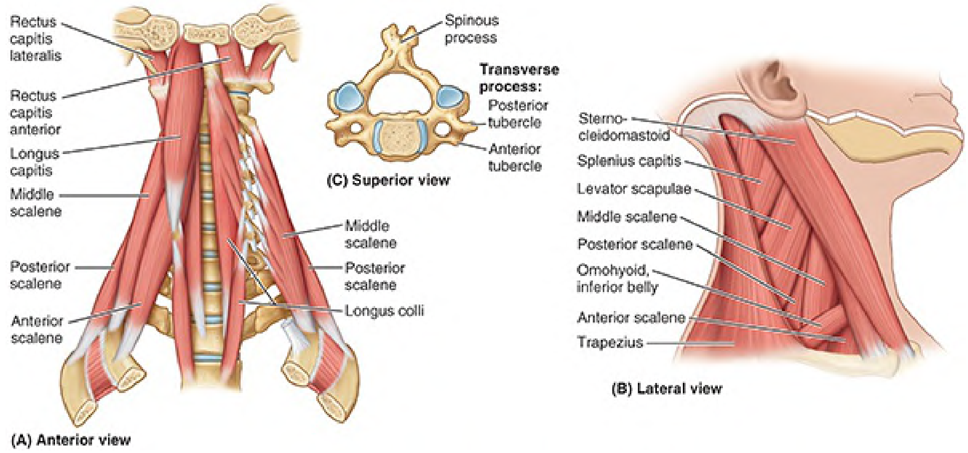
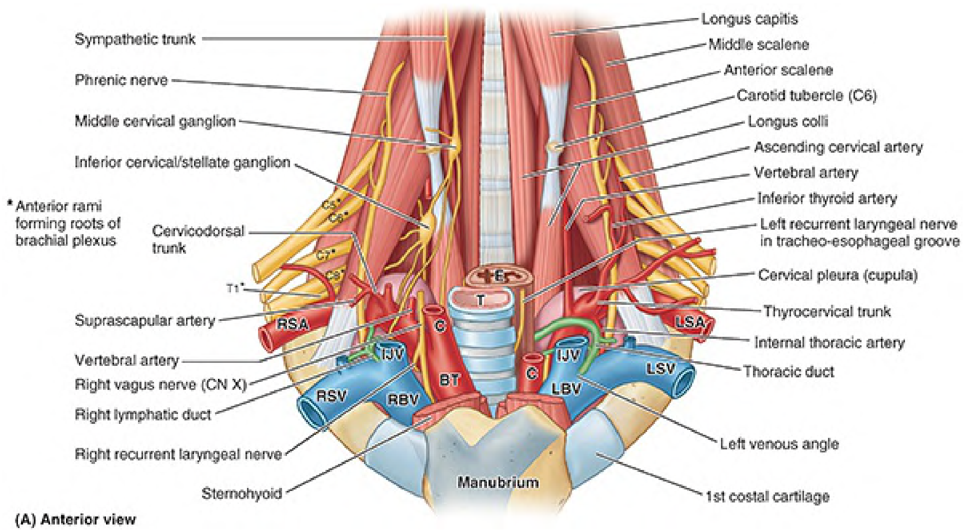


FIGURE 9.24. Prevertebral muscles.



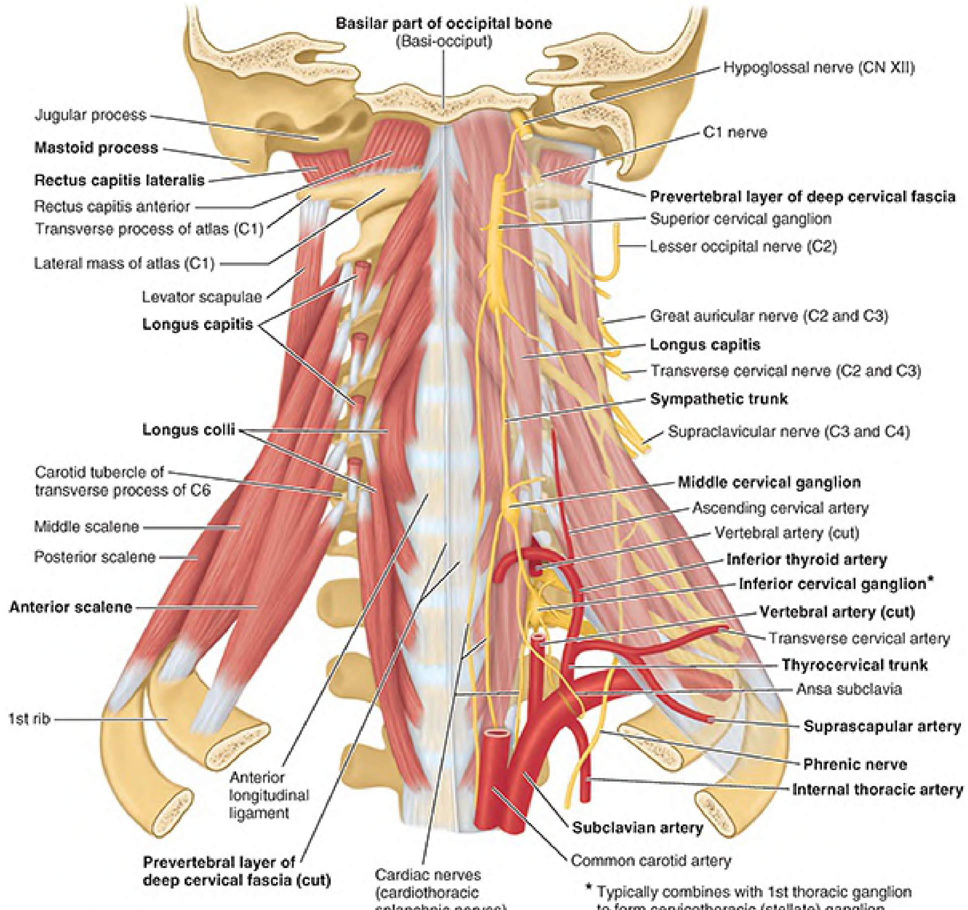


FIGURE 9.25. Root of neck and prevertebral region. A. Dissection of root of neck. The brachial plexus and the third part of the subclavian artery emerge between the anterior and the middle scalene muscles. The brachiocephalic veins, the first parts of the subclavian arteries, and the internal thoracic arteries arising from the subclavian arteries are closely related to the cervical pleura (cupula). The thoracic duct terminates in the root of the neck as it enters the left venous angle. BT, brachiocephalic trunk; C, common carotid; E, esophagus; IJV, internal jugular vein; LBV, left brachiocephalic vein; LSA, left subclavian artery; LSV, left subclavian vein; RBV, right brachiocephalic vein; RSA, right subclavian artery; RSV, right subclavian vein; T, trachea. **B.** Dissection of prevertebral region and root of neck. The prevertebral layer of the deep cervical fascia and the arteries and nerves have been removed from the right side; the longus capitis muscle has been excised on the right side. The cervical plexus of nerves, arising from the anterior rami of C1–C4; the brachial plexus of nerves, arising from the anterior rami of C5–C8 and T1; and branches of the subclavian artery are visible on the left side.

TABLE 9.4. PREVERTEBRAL MUSCLES

Muscle	Superior Attachment	Inferior Attachment	Innervation	Main Action(s)
Anterior vertebral muscles				
Longus colli	Anterior tubercle of C1 vertebra (atlas); bodies of C1–C3 and transverse processes of C3–C6 vertebrae	Bodies of C5–T3 vertebrae; transverse processes of C3–C5 vertebrae	Anterior rami of C2–C6 spinal nerves	Flexes neck with rotation (torsion) to opposite side if acting unilaterally[a]
Longus capitis	Basilar part of occipital bone	Anterior tubercles of C3–C6 transverse processes	Anterior rami of C1–C3 spinal nerves	Flex head[b]

Rectus capitis anterior	Base of cranium, just anterior to occipital condyle	Anterior surface of lateral mass of atlas (C1 vertebra)	Branches from loop between C1 and C2 spinal nerves	
Anterior scalene	Transverse processes of C3–C6 vertebrae	1st rib	Cervical spinal nerves C4–C6	Flexes neck laterally; elevates 1st rib during forced inspiration[a]
Lateral vertebral muscles				
Rectus capitis lateralis	Jugular process of occipital bone	Transverse process of atlas (C1 vertebra)	Branches from loop between C1 and C2 spinal nerves	Flexes head and helps stabilize it[b]
Splenius capitis	Lateral aspect of mastoid process and lateral third of superior nuchal line	Inferior half of nuchal ligament and spinous processes of superior six thoracic vertebrae	Posterior rami of middle cervical spinal nerves	Laterally flexes and rotates head and neck to same side; acting bilaterally, extends head and neck[c]
Levator scapulae	Posterior tubercles of transverse processes C2–C6 vertebrae	Superior part of medial border of scapula	Dorsal scapular nerve C5 and cervical spinal nerves C3 and C4	Downward rotation of scapula and tilts its glenoid cavity inferiorly by rotating scapula
Middle scalene	Posterior tubercles of transverse processes of C5–C7 vertebrae	Superior surface of 1st rib; posterior to groove for subclavian artery	Anterior rami of cervical spinal nerves	Flexes neck laterally; elevates 1st rib during forced inspiration[a]
Posterior scalene		External border of 2nd rib	Anterior rami of cervical spinal nerves C7 and C8	Flexes neck laterally; elevates 2nd rib during forced inspiration[a]

[a]Flexion of neck = anterior (or lateral) bending of cervical vertebrae C2–C7.

[b]Flexion of head = anterior (or lateral) bending of the head relative to the vertebral column at the atlanto-occipital joints.

[c]Rotation of the head occurs at the atlanto-axial joints.

Root of Neck

The **root of the neck** is the junctional area between the thorax and neck (Fig. 9.25A). It is located on the cervical side of the superior thoracic aperture, through which pass all structures going from the thorax to the head or upper limb and vice versa (Fig. 9.25A; see Fig. 4.7A, B). The inferior boundary of the root of the neck is the superior thoracic aperture formed laterally by the 1st pair of ribs and their costal cartilages, anteriorly by the manubrium of the sternum, and posteriorly by the body of T1 vertebra. The visceral structures in the root of the neck are described in “Viscera of Neck” in this chapter. Only the neurovascular elements of the root of the neck are described here.

ARTERIES IN ROOT OF NECK

The brachiocephalic trunk is covered anteriorly by the right sternohyoid and sternothyroid

muscles; it is the largest branch of the arch of the aorta (Figs. 9.25A and 9.26C). It arises in the midline from the beginning of the arch of the aorta, posterior to the manubrium. It passes superolaterally to the right where it divides into the right common carotid and right subclavian arteries posterior to the sternoclavicular (SC) joint. The brachiocephalic trunk usually has no preterminal branches.

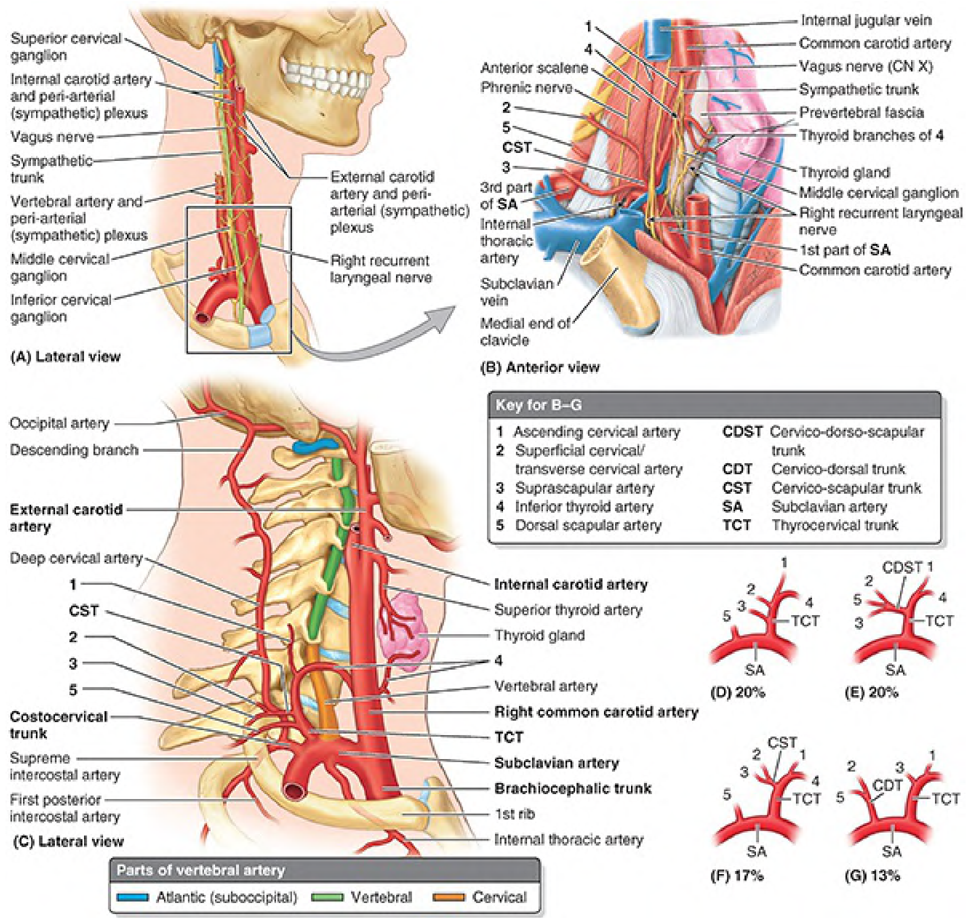


FIGURE 9.26. Nerves and arteries in neck. A. Cervical sympathetic trunk and ganglia and sympathetic peri-arterial plexuses surrounding them. **B.** Dissection of nerves and arteries. In this view of the root of the neck, the clavicle is removed, and sections are taken from the common carotid artery and IJV. The lobe of the thyroid gland is retracted to reveal the right recurrent laryngeal nerve and middle cervical (sympathetic) ganglion. **C.** Arteries of neck. The parts of the vertebral artery are color-coded, and the parts of the subclavian artery are numbered. **D–G.** Variation in branching pattern of thyrocervical trunk and aberrant origins of arteries from subclavian artery.

The **subclavian arteries** supply the upper limbs; they also send branches to the neck and brain (Figs. 9.25 and 9.26; see Fig. 9.20B). The **right subclavian artery** arises from the brachiocephalic trunk. The **left subclavian artery** arises from the arch of the aorta, about 1 cm distal to the left common carotid artery. The **left vagus nerve** runs parallel to the first part of the artery (Fig. 9.25A). Although the subclavian arteries of the two sides have different origins, their courses in the neck begin posterior to the respective SC joints as they ascend through the superior thoracic aperture and enter the root of the neck.

The subclavian arteries arch superolaterally, reaching an apex as they pass posterior to the

anterior scalene muscles. As they begin to descend, they lie posterior to the middle of the clavicles. As the subclavian arteries cross the outer margin of the first ribs, their name changes; they become the axillary arteries. Three parts of each subclavian artery are described relative to the anterior scalene: The first part is medial to the muscle, the second part is posterior to it, and the third part is lateral to it (Figs. 9.25 and 9.26B, C; see Fig. 9.12). The cervical pleurae, apices of the lung, and sympathetic trunks lie posterior to the first part of the arteries. The third part of the subclavian artery was discussed previously in this chapter.

The branches of the subclavian arteries are as follows:

- From 1st part: vertebral artery, internal thoracic artery, and thyrocervical trunk
- From 2nd part: costocervical trunk
- From 3rd part: aberrant suprascapular, dorsal scapular and superficial scapular arteries, or the latter two via a common trunk, an aberrant transverse cervical artery

The **cervical part of the vertebral artery** arises from the first part of the subclavian artery and ascends in the pyramidal space formed between the scalene and longus colli and capitis muscles (Fig. 9.25). At the apex of this space, the artery passes deeply to course through the foramina transversaria of vertebrae C1–C6 (Fig. 9.26C). This is the **vertebral part of the vertebral artery**. Occasionally, the vertebral artery may enter a foramen more superior than vertebra C6. In approximately 5% of people, the left vertebral artery arises from the arch of the aorta.

The **atlantic part of the vertebral artery** courses in a groove on the posterior arch of the atlas before it enters the cranial cavity through the foramen magnum. The **intracranial part of the vertebral artery** supplies branches to the medulla and spinal cord, parts of the cerebellum, and the dura of the posterior cranial fossa. At the inferior border of the pons of the brainstem, the vertebral arteries join to form the basilar artery, which participates in the formation of the cerebral arterial circle (see Chapter 8, Head).

The **internal thoracic artery** arises from the antero-inferior aspect of the subclavian artery and passes inferomedially into the thorax. The cervical part of the internal thoracic artery has no branches; its thoracic distribution is described in Chapter 4, Thorax (see Figs. 4.14 and 4.15A).

The **thyrocervical trunk** arises from the anterosuperior aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery, near the medial border of the anterior scalene muscle (Figs. 9.25 and 9.26). It exhibits many variations in its pattern of branching, which can result in the branches arising directly from it to have different names depending on the pattern (Fig. 9.26D–G). It has three to four branches, the largest and most important of which is the **inferior thyroid artery**, the primary visceral artery of the neck, supplying the larynx, trachea, esophagus, and thyroid and parathyroid glands, as well as adjacent muscles (Fig. 9.26B, C; see Fig. 9.27B). The other branches of the thyrocervical trunk are the suprascapular, dorsal scapular, superficial cervical, and ascending cervical arteries, discussed previously, with the lateral cervical region. The suprascapular, dorsal scapular, and superficial cervical arteries often arise from the thyrocervical trunk via common trunks, the name of which varies depending on its origin and branches (Weiglein et al., 1995) (Fig. 9.26D–G). The terminal branches of the thyrocervical trunk are the

inferior thyroid and ascending cervical arteries. The latter is a small artery that sends muscular branches to the lateral muscles of the upper neck and spinal branches into the intervertebral foramina.

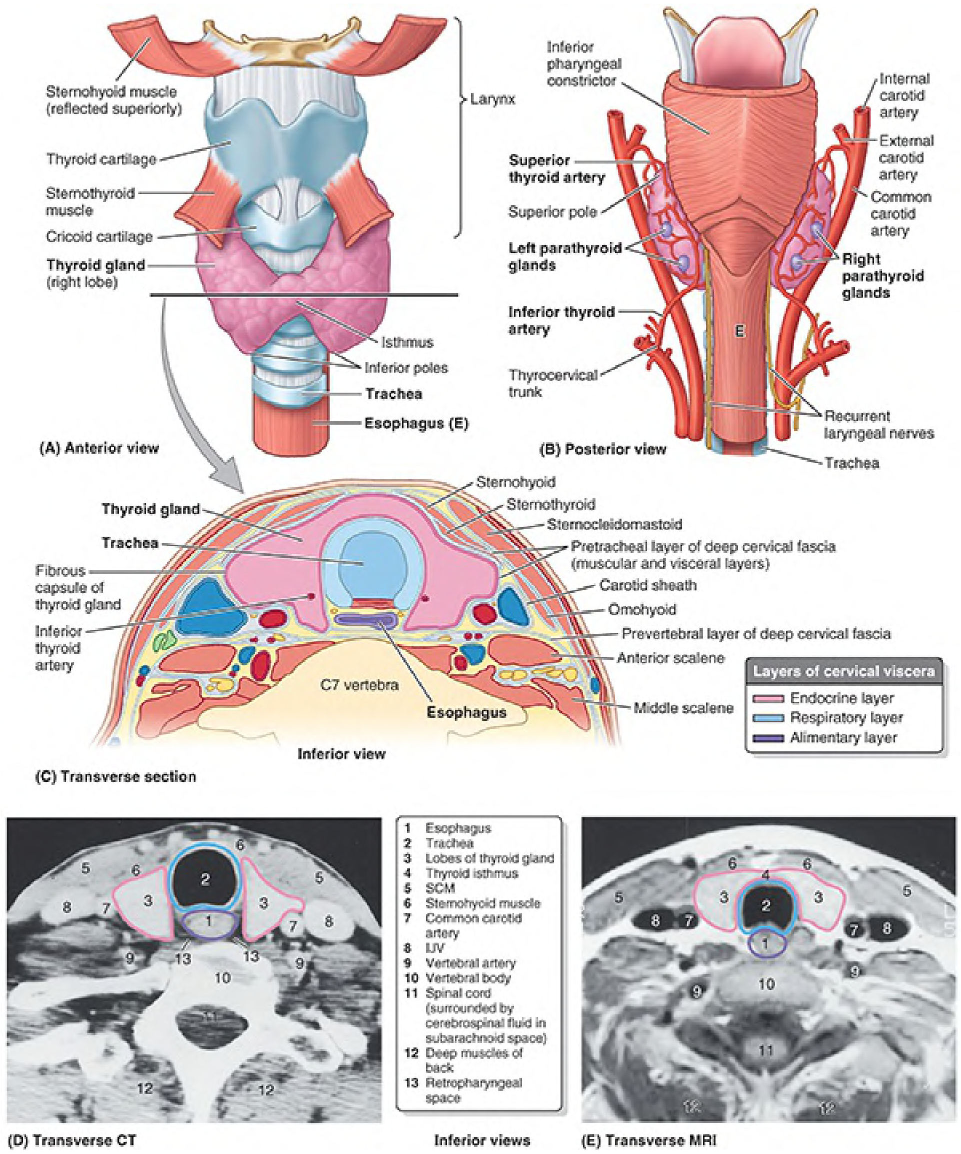


FIGURE 9.27. Relationships of thyroid gland. A. Lobes of thyroid gland. The sternothyroid muscles have been cut to expose the lobes of the normal thyroid gland. The isthmus lies anterior to the second and third tracheal rings. **B.** Parathyroid glands. They are usually embedded in the fibrous capsule on the posterior surface of the thyroid gland. **C.** Transverse section through thyroid isthmus. **D.** CT scan through lobes of thyroid gland. **E.** MRI through thyroid isthmus.

The **costocervical trunk** arises from the posterior aspect of the second part of the subclavian artery (posterior to the anterior scalene on the right side [see Fig. 9.12] and usually just medial to this muscle on the left side). The trunk passes posterosuperiorly and divides into the supreme intercostal and deep cervical arteries, which supply the first two intercostal spaces and the posterior deep cervical muscles, respectively.

VEINS IN ROOT OF NECK

Two large veins terminating in the root of the neck are the EJV, draining blood received mostly from the scalp and face, and the variable **anterior jugular vein** (**AJV**), usually the smallest of the jugular veins (see Figs. 9.16 and 9.21). The AJV typically arises near the hyoid from the confluence of superficial submandibular veins. The AJV descends either in the subcutaneous tissue or deep to the investing layer of deep cervical fascia between the anterior median line and the anterior border of the SCM. At the root of the neck, the AJV turns laterally, posterior to the SCM, and opens into the termination of the EJV or into the subclavian vein. Superior to the manubrium, the right and left AJVs commonly unite across the midline to form the **jugular venous arch** in the suprasternal space (see Fig. 9.17).

The **subclavian vein**, the continuation of the axillary vein, begins at the lateral border of the 1st rib and ends when it unites with the IJV (Fig. 9.25A). The subclavian vein passes over the 1st rib anterior to the scalene tubercle parallel to the subclavian artery, but it is separated from it by the anterior scalene muscle. It usually has only one named tributary, the EJV (Fig. 9.21).

The IJV ends posterior to the medial end of the clavicle by uniting with the subclavian vein to form the brachiocephalic vein. This union is commonly referred to as the **venous angle** and is the site where the thoracic duct (left side) and the right lymphatic trunk (right side) drain lymph collected throughout the body into the venous circulation (see Fig. 9.51). Throughout its course, the IJV is enclosed by the carotid sheath (Fig. 9.22).

NERVES IN ROOT OF NECK

There are three pairs of major nerves in the root of the neck: (1) vagus nerves, (2) phrenic nerves, and (3) sympathetic trunks.

Vagus Nerves (CN X). After its exit from the jugular foramen, each vagus nerve passes inferiorly in the neck within the posterior part of the carotid sheath in the angle between the IJV and common carotid artery (Figs. 9.22 and 9.26A, B). The **right vagus nerve** passes anterior to the first part of the subclavian artery and posterior to the brachiocephalic vein and SC joint to enter the thorax. The **left vagus nerve** descends between the left common carotid and left subclavian arteries and posterior to the SC joint to enter the thorax.

The **recurrent laryngeal nerves** arise from the vagus nerves; however, they loop around different structures and at different levels on the two sides. The **right recurrent laryngeal nerve** loops inferior to the right subclavian artery at approximately the T1–T2 vertebral level. The **left recurrent laryngeal nerve** loops inferior to the arch of the aorta at approximately the T4–T5 vertebral level (see Fig. 4.63). After looping, the recurrent laryngeal nerves ascend superiorly to the posteromedial aspect of the thyroid gland (Figs. 9.25, 9.26B, 9.27B, and 9.28), where they ascend in the tracheo-esophageal groove, supplying both trachea and esophagus and all the intrinsic muscles of the larynx except the cricothyroid. Since the left recurrent laryngeal nerve arises at a lower level, it supplies slightly more of the trachea and esophagus along its course to the larynx.

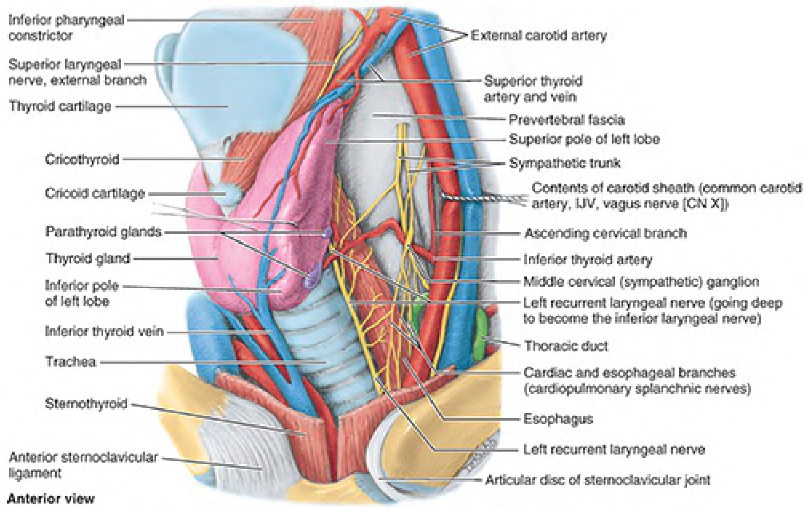


FIGURE 9.28. Dissection of left side of root of neck. The viscera (thyroid gland, trachea, and esophagus) are retracted to the right, and the contents of the left carotid sheath are retracted to the left. The middle thyroid vein, severed to allow such retraction, is not apparent. The left parathyroid glands on the posterior aspect of the left lobe of the thyroid gland are exposed. The recurrent laryngeal nerve ascends beside the trachea, in the angle between the trachea and the esophagus. The thoracic duct passes laterally, posterior to the contents of the carotid sheath as the thyrocervical trunk passes medially.

The **cardiac branches of CN X** originate in the neck (see Fig. 4.63) as well as in the thorax and convey presynaptic parasympathetic and visceral afferent fibers to the cardiac plexus of nerves (see Chapter 4, Thorax, and Fig. 4.68C).

Phrenic Nerves. The phrenic nerves are formed at the lateral borders of the anterior scalene muscles (Figs. 9.25A and 9.26B), mainly from the C4 nerve with contributions from C3 and C5. The phrenic nerves descend anterior to the anterior scalene muscles under cover of the IJVs and the SCMs. They pass under the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia and then exit from it to pass between the subclavian arteries and veins, and proceed to the thorax to supply the diaphragm. The phrenic nerves are important because, in addition to their sensory distribution, they provide the sole motor supply to their own half of the diaphragm (see Chapter 4, Thorax, for details).

Sympathetic Trunks. The **cervical portion of the sympathetic trunks** lie anterolateral to the vertebral column, extending superiorly to the level of the C1 vertebra or cranial base (Figs. 9.25B and 9.26). The sympathetic trunks receive no white rami communicantes in the neck (recall that white rami are only associated with spinal nerves T1–L2 or L3). The cervical portion of the trunks includes three **cervical sympathetic ganglia**: superior, middle, and inferior. These ganglia receive presynaptic fibers conveyed to the trunk by the superior thoracic spinal nerves and their associated white rami communicantes, which then ascend through the sympathetic trunk to the ganglia. After synapsing with the postsynaptic neuron in the cervical sympathetic ganglia, postsynaptic neurons send fibers to the following structures:

1. Cervical spinal nerves via gray rami communicantes
2. Thoracic viscera via cardiopulmonary splanchnic nerves
3. Head and viscera of the neck via cephalic arterial branches (rami)

The latter fibers accompany arteries as sympathetic periarterial nerve plexuses, especially the

vertebral and internal and external carotid arteries (Fig. 9.26).

In approximately 80% of people, the **inferior cervical ganglion** fuses with the first thoracic ganglion to form the large **cervicothoracic ganglion** (**stellate ganglion**). This star-shaped (L. stella, a star) ganglion lies anterior to the transverse process of the C7 vertebra, just superior to the neck of the 1st rib on each side and posterior to the origin of the vertebral artery (Fig. 9.25B). Some postsynaptic fibers from the ganglion pass via gray rami communicantes to the anterior rami of the C7 and C8 spinal nerves (roots of the brachial plexus), and others pass to the heart via the inferior cervical cardiac nerve (a cardiopulmonary splanchnic nerve), which passes along the trachea to the deep cardiac plexus. Other fibers pass via arterial branches to contribute to the sympathetic peri-arterial nerve plexus around the vertebral artery running into the cranial cavity (Fig. 9.26A).

The **middle cervical ganglion**, the smallest of the three ganglia, is occasionally absent. When present, it lies on the anterior aspect of the inferior thyroid artery at the level of the cricoid cartilage and the transverse process of C6 vertebra, just anterior to the vertebral artery (Figs. 9.26 and 9.28). Postsynaptic fibers pass from the ganglion via gray rami communicantes to the anterior rami of the C5 and C6 spinal nerves, via a middle cervical cardiac (cardiopulmonary splanchnic) nerve to the heart and via arterial branches to form the peri-arterial plexuses to the thyroid gland.

The **superior cervical ganglion** is at the level of the C1 and C2 vertebrae (Figs. 9.25B and 9.26A). Because of its large size, it forms a good landmark for locating the sympathetic trunk, but it may need to be distinguished from a large sensory (nodose) ganglion of the vagus (CN X) when present. Postsynaptic fibers pass from it by means of cephalic arterial branches to form the internal carotid sympathetic plexus and then enter the cranial cavity (Fig. 9.26). This ganglion also sends arterial branches to the external carotid artery and gray rami to the anterior rami of the superior four cervical spinal nerves. Other postsynaptic fibers pass from it to the cardiac plexus of nerves via a **superior cervical cardiac** (cardiopulmonary splanchnic) **nerve** (see Chapter 4, Thorax).

CLINICAL BOX

DEEP STRUCTURES OF NECK

Cervicothoracic Ganglion Block

Anesthetic injected around the large cervicothoracic ganglion blocks transmission of stimuli through the cervical and superior thoracic ganglia. This ganglion block may relieve vascular spasms involving the brain and upper limb. It is also useful when deciding if a surgical resection of the ganglion would be beneficial to a person with excess vasoconstriction in the ipsilateral limb or hyperhidrosis of the palm (Singh & Ramsaroop, 2007).

Lesion of Cervical Sympathetic Trunk

A lesion of a cervical sympathetic trunk in the neck results in a sympathetic disturbance called Horner syndrome, which is characterized by:

- Contraction of the pupil (miosis), resulting from paralysis of the dilator pupillae muscle (see Chapter 8, Head)
- Drooping of the superior eyelid (ptosis), resulting from paralysis of the smooth (tarsal) muscle intermingled with the striated muscle of the levator palpebrae superioris
- Sinking in of the eye (enophthalmos), possibly caused by paralysis of the rudimentary smooth (orbital) muscle in the floor of the orbit
- Vasodilation and absence of sweating on the face and neck (anhydrosis), caused by lack of a sympathetic (vasoconstrictive) nerve supply to the blood vessels and sweat glands

The Bottom Line: Deep Structures of Neck

Prevertebral muscles: The prevertebral muscles, deep to the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia, are divided into anterior and lateral vertebral muscles by the neurovascular plane of the cervical and brachial plexuses and subclavian artery. ■ The anterior vertebral muscles flex the head and neck; however, this movement is normally produced by gravity in conjunction with eccentric contraction of the extensors of the neck. ■ Thus, the anterior vertebral muscles are called into action mainly when this movement is performed against resistance, probably initiating the movement while the strength of the movement is produced by the SCM. ■ The lateral vertebral muscles laterally flex the neck, participate in rotation of the neck, and fix or elevate the superior ribs during forced inspiration.

Root of the neck: The branches of the arch of the aorta bifurcate and/or traverse the root of the neck, with the branches of the subclavian artery arising here also. ■ The internal jugular and subclavian veins converge at the root of the neck to form the brachiocephalic veins. ■ The major lymphatic trunks (right lymphatic duct and thoracic duct) enter the venous angles formed by the convergence of these veins. ■ The phrenic and vagus nerves enter the thorax by passing anterior to the subclavian arteries and posterior to the brachiocephalic veins. ■ The sympathetic trunks and recurrent laryngeal nerves traverse the root of the neck posterior to the arteries, as do the visceral structures (trachea and esophagus). ■ The cervical portion of the sympathetic trunks includes three cervical sympathetic ganglia (inferior, middle, and superior), in which presynaptic fibers from the superior thoracic spinal cord synapse with postsynaptic neurons. ■ These neurons send fibers to the cervical spinal nerves, via gray rami communicantes; to the head

and viscera of the neck, via cephalic arterial branches and periarterial plexuses; and to the thoracic viscera, via cardiac (cardiopulmonary splanchnic) nerves.

VISCERA OF NECK

The cervical viscera are disposed in three layers, named for their primary function (Fig. 9.27). Superficial to deep, they are as follows:

1. Endocrine layer: the thyroid and parathyroid glands
2. Respiratory layer: the larynx and trachea
3. Alimentary layer: the pharynx and esophagus

Endocrine Layer of Cervical Viscera

The viscera of the **endocrine layer** are part of the body's endocrine system of ductless, hormone-secreting glands. The thyroid gland is the body's largest endocrine gland. It produces thyroid hormone, which controls the rate of metabolism, and calcitonin, a hormone controlling calcium metabolism. The thyroid gland affects all areas of the body except itself and the spleen, testes, and uterus. The hormone produced by the parathyroid glands, parathormone (PTH), controls the metabolism of phosphorus and calcium in the blood. The parathyroid glands target the skeleton, kidneys, and intestine.

THYROID GLAND

The **thyroid gland** lies deep to the sternothyroid and sternohyoid muscles, located anteriorly in the neck at the level of the C5–T1 vertebrae (Fig. 9.27). It consists primarily of right and left **lobes**, anterolateral to the larynx and trachea. A relatively thin **isthmus** unites the lobes over the trachea, usually anterior to the second and third tracheal rings. The thyroid gland is surrounded by a thin **fibrous capsule**, which sends septa deeply into the gland. Dense connective tissue attaches the capsule to the cricoid cartilage and superior tracheal rings. External to the capsule is a loose sheath formed by the visceral portion of the pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia.

Arteries of Thyroid Gland. The highly vascular thyroid gland is supplied by the superior and inferior thyroid arteries (Figs. 9.27B and 9.28). These vessels lie between the fibrous capsule and the loose fascial sheath. Usually, the first branches of the external carotid arteries, the **superior thyroid arteries**, descend to the superior poles of the gland, pierce the pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia, and divide into anterior and posterior branches supplying mainly the anterosuperior aspect of the gland.

The **inferior thyroid arteries**, the largest branches of the thyrocervical trunks arising from the subclavian arteries, run superomedially posterior to the carotid sheaths to reach the posterior aspect of the thyroid gland. They divide into several branches that pierce the pretracheal layer of the deep cervical fascia and supply the postero-inferior aspect, including the **inferior poles of the gland**. The right and left superior and inferior thyroid arteries anastomose extensively within

the gland, ensuring its supply while providing potential collateral circulation between the subclavian and external carotid arteries.

In approximately 10% of people, a small, unpaired **thyroid ima artery** (L. arteria thyroidea ima) arises from the brachiocephalic trunk (see the Clinical Box "Thyroid Ima Artery" in this chapter); however, it may arise from the arch of the aorta or from the right common carotid, subclavian, or internal thoracic arteries. When present, this small artery ascends on the anterior surface of the trachea, supplying small branches to it. The artery then continues to the isthmus of the thyroid gland, where it divides and supplies it.

Veins of Thyroid Gland. Three pairs of thyroid veins usually form a **thyroid plexus of veins** on the anterior surface of the thyroid gland and anterior to the trachea (Figs. 9.28 and 9.29). The **superior thyroid veins** accompany the superior thyroid arteries; they drain the **superior poles** of the thyroid gland; the **middle thyroid veins** do not accompany but run essentially parallel courses with the inferior thyroid arteries; they drain the middle of the lobes. The usually independent **inferior thyroid veins** drain the inferior poles. The superior and middle thyroid veins drain into the IJVs; the inferior thyroid veins drain into the brachiocephalic veins posterior to the manubrium.

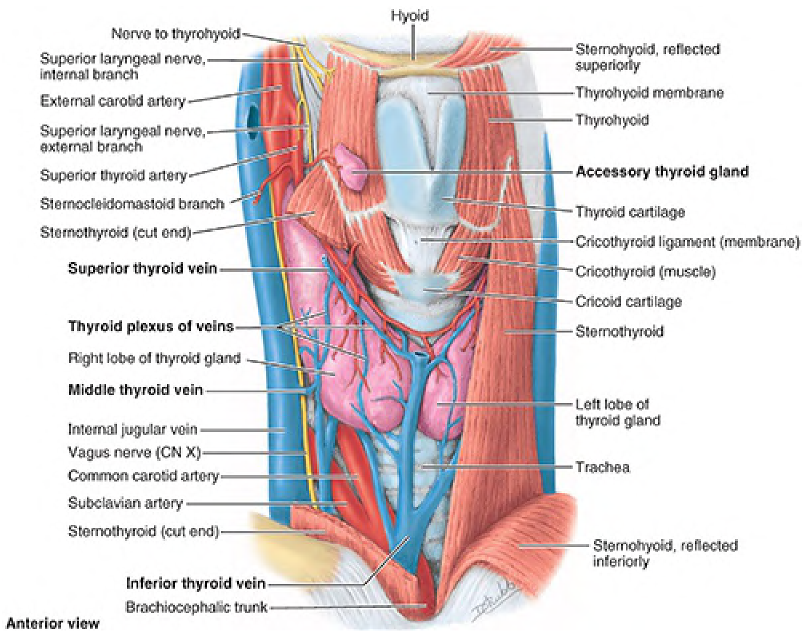


FIGURE 9.29. Thyroid gland. A dissection of the anterior aspect of the neck is shown. In this specimen, there is a small accessory thyroid gland on the right, lying on the thyrohyoid muscle, lateral to the thyroid cartilage. The superior thyroid artery is distributed primarily to the anterosuperior portion of the gland.

Lymphatic Drainage of Thyroid Gland. The lymphatic vessels of this gland run in the interlobular connective tissue, usually near the arteries; they communicate with a capsular network of lymphatic vessels. From here, the vessels pass initially to **prelaryngeal**, **pretracheal**, and **paratracheal lymph nodes**. The prelaryngeal nodes drain in turn to the superior deep cervical lymph nodes, and the pretracheal and paratracheal lymph nodes drain to the inferior deep cervical nodes (Fig. 9.30). Laterally, lymphatic vessels located along the superior thyroid

veins pass directly to the inferior deep cervical lymph nodes. Some lymphatic vessels may drain into the brachiocephalic lymph nodes or the thoracic duct (Fig. 9.28).

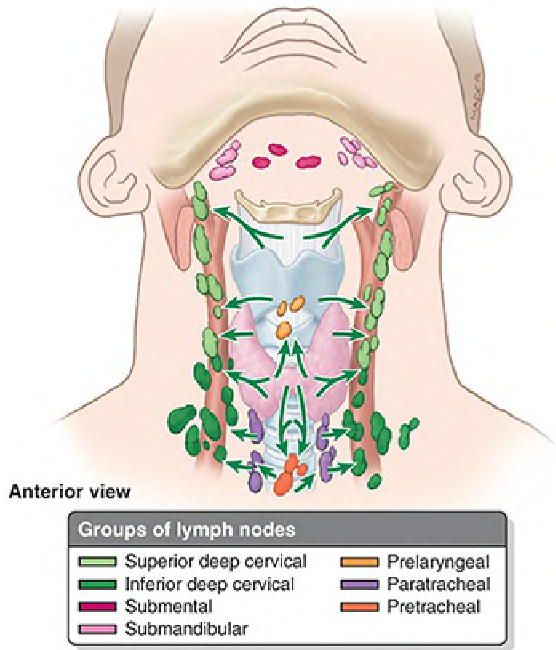


FIGURE 9.30. Lymphatic drainage of thyroid gland, larynx, and trachea. Arrows, direction of lymph flow.

Nerves of Thyroid Gland. The nerves of the thyroid gland are derived from the superior, middle, and inferior cervical (sympathetic) ganglia (Figs. 9.26 and 9.28). They reach the gland through the cardiac and superior and inferior thyroid peri-arterial plexuses that accompany the thyroid arteries. These fibers are vasomotor, not secretomotor. They cause constriction of blood vessels. Endocrine secretion from the thyroid gland is hormonally regulated by the pituitary gland.

PARATHYROID GLANDS

The small flattened, oval **parathyroid glands** usually lie external to the thyroid capsule on the medial half of the posterior surface of each lobe of the thyroid gland, inside its sheath (Figs. 9.27B, 9.28, and 9.31A). The **superior parathyroid glands** usually lie slightly more than 1 cm superior to the point of entry of the inferior thyroid arteries into the thyroid gland. The **inferior parathyroid glands** usually lie slightly more than 1 cm inferior to the arterial entry point (Skandalakis, 2021). Most people have four parathyroid glands. Approximately 5% of people have more; some have only two glands. The superior parathyroid glands, more constant in position than the inferior ones, are usually at the level of the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage. The inferior parathyroid glands are usually near the inferior poles of the thyroid gland, but they may lie in various positions (Fig. 9.31B). The inferior parathyroid glands may occur as far inferiorly in the mediastinum as the pericardium (Bobanga & McHenry, 2022).

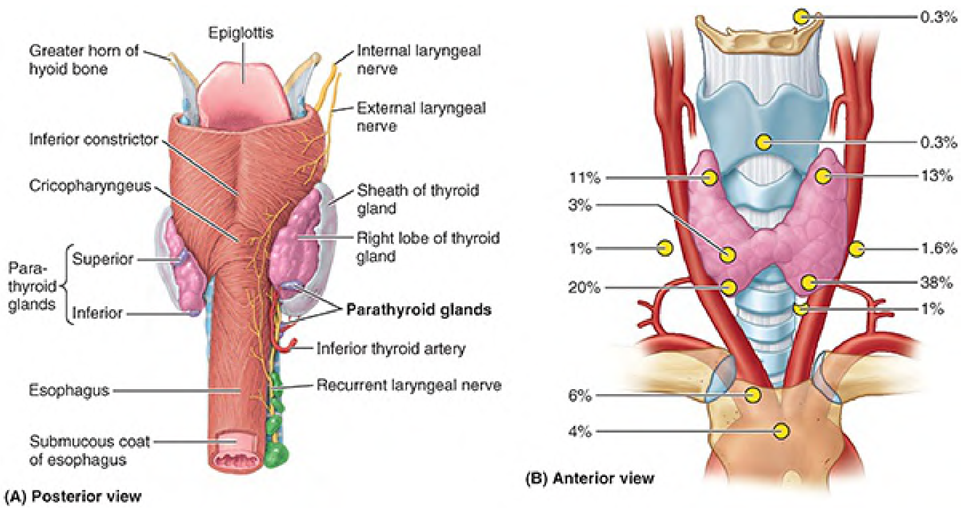


FIGURE 9.31. **Thyroid and parathyroid glands. A.** Dissection. The thyroid sheath has been dissected from the posterior surface of the thyroid gland to reveal the three embedded parathyroid glands. Both parathyroid glands on the right side are rather low, and the inferior gland is inferior to the thyroid gland. **B.** Sites and frequencies of aberrant parathyroid glandular tissue are shown.

Vessels of Parathyroid Glands. Because the inferior thyroid arteries provide the primary blood supply to the posterior aspect of the thyroid gland where the parathyroid glands are located, branches of these arteries usually supply these glands (Figs. 9.27B and 9.31A). However, they may also be supplied by branches from the superior thyroid arteries; thyroid ima artery; or laryngeal, tracheal, and esophageal arteries. **Parathyroid veins** drain into the thyroid plexus of veins of the thyroid gland and trachea (Fig. 9.29). Lymphatic vessels from the parathyroid glands drain with those from the thyroid gland into deep cervical lymph nodes and paratracheal lymph nodes (Fig. 9.30).

Nerves of Parathyroid Glands. The nerve supply of the parathyroid glands is abundant; it is derived from thyroid branches of the cervical (sympathetic) ganglia (Fig. 9.26). Like the nerves to the thyroid, they are vasomotor rather than secretomotor because these glands are hormonally regulated.

Respiratory Layer of Cervical Viscera

The viscera of the **respiratory layer**, the larynx and trachea, contribute to the respiratory functions of the body. The main functions of the cervical respiratory viscera are as follows:

- Routing air and food into the respiratory tract and esophagus, respectively
- Providing a patent airway and a means of sealing it off temporarily (a “valve”)
- Producing voice

LARYNX

The **larynx** is the complex organ of voice production (the “voice box”) composed of nine cartilages connected by membranes and ligaments and containing the vocal folds (“cords”). The larynx is located in the anterior neck at the level of the bodies of C3–C6 vertebrae (Fig. 9.32). It

connects the inferior part of the pharynx (oropharynx) with the trachea. Although most commonly known for its role as the phonating mechanism for voice production, its most vital function is to guard the air passages, especially during swallowing when it serves as the "sphincter" or "valve" of the lower respiratory tract, thus maintaining a patent airway.

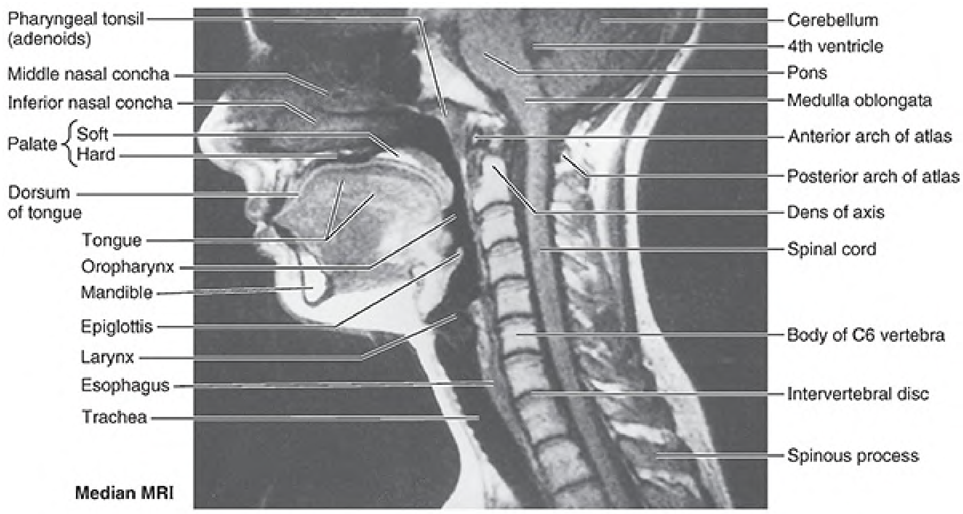


FIGURE 9.32. Median MRI of head and neck. Because the air and food passages share the oropharynx, separation of food and air must occur to continue into the trachea (anterior) and esophagus (posterior).

Laryngeal Skeleton. The laryngeal skeleton consists of nine cartilages: Three are single (thyroid, cricoid, and epiglottic), and three are paired (arytenoid, corniculate, and cuneiform) (Fig. 9.33A, B).

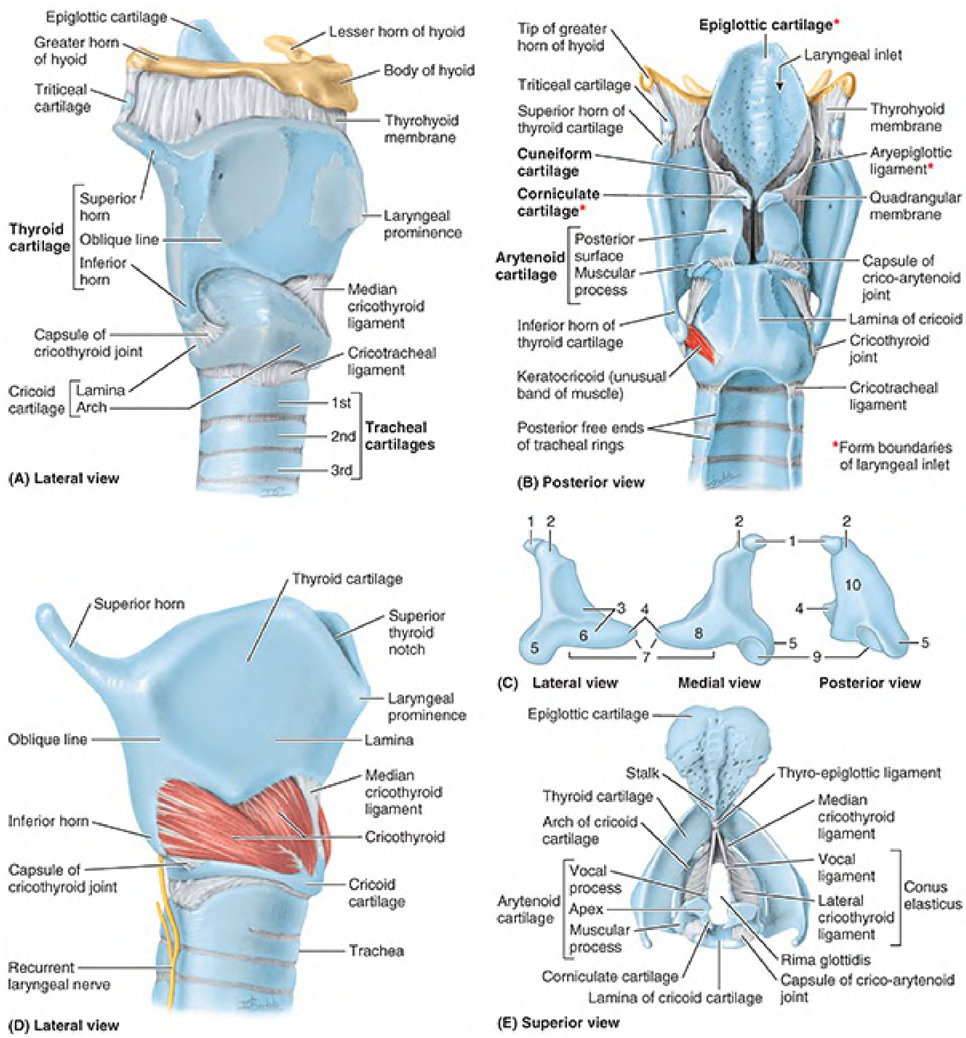


FIGURE 9.33. Skeleton of larynx. A. Lateral aspect of laryngeal cartilages and membranes. Although firmly connected to it, the hyoid is not part of the larynx. The larynx extends vertically from the tip of the heart-shaped epiglottis to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage. **B.** Posterior aspect of laryngeal cartilages and membranes. The thyroid cartilage shields the smaller cartilages of the larynx, and the hyoid shields the superior part of the epiglottic cartilage. **C.** Isolated arytenoid cartilage. 1, Corniculate cartilage; 2, apex of arytenoid cartilage; 3, anterolateral surface; 4, vocal process (projects anteriorly, provides attachment for vocal ligament); 5, muscular process (projects laterally, for attachment of posterior and lateral crico-arytenoid muscles); 6, oblong fovea (for attachment of thyro-arytenoid muscle); 7, base; 8, medial surface; 9, articular surface; 10, posterior surface. **D.** Thyroid and cricoid cartilages and cricothyroid muscle. This muscle produces movement at the cricothyroid joint, increasing tension of vocal ligaments and thus pitch of voice. **E.** Vocal ligament. The epiglottic cartilage is pitted for mucous glands, and its stalk is attached by the thyro-epiglottic ligament to the angle of the thyroid cartilage superior to the vocal ligaments. The vocal ligament, which forms the skeleton of the vocal fold, extends from the vocal process of the arytenoid cartilage to the "angle" of the thyroid cartilage, and there joins its fellow inferior to the thyro-epiglottic ligament.

The **thyroid cartilage** is the largest of the cartilages; its superior border lies opposite the C4 vertebra. The inferior two thirds of its two plate-like **laminae** fuse anteriorly in the median plane to form the **laryngeal prominence** (Fig. 9.33A, D). This projection ("Adam's apple") is well marked in men but seldom visible in women. Superior to this prominence, the laminae diverge to form a V-shaped **superior thyroid notch**. The less distinct **inferior thyroid notch** is a shallow indentation in the middle of the inferior border of the cartilage.

The posterior border of each lamina projects superiorly as the **superior horn** and inferiorly as the **inferior horn**. The superior border and superior horns attach to the hyoid by the **thyrohyoid membrane** (Fig. 9.33A, B). The thick median part of this membrane is the **median thyrohyoid ligament**; its lateral parts are the **lateral thyrohyoid ligaments**.

The inferior horns articulate with the lateral surfaces of the cricoid cartilage at the **cricothyroid joints** (Fig. 9.33B). The main movements at these joints are rotation and gliding of the thyroid cartilage, which result in changes in the length of the vocal folds. The **cricoid cartilage** is shaped like a signet ring with its band facing anteriorly. This ring-like opening of the cartilage fits an average finger. The posterior (signet) part of the cricoid is the **lamina**, and the anterior (band) part is the **arch** (Fig. 9.33A). Although much smaller than the thyroid cartilage, the cricoid cartilage is thicker and stronger and is the only complete ring of cartilage to encircle any part of the airway. It attaches to the inferior margin of the thyroid cartilage by the **median cricothyroid ligament** and to the first tracheal ring by the **cricotracheal ligament**. Where the larynx is closest to the skin and most accessible, the median cricothyroid ligament may be felt as a soft spot during palpation inferior to the thyroid cartilage.

The **arytenoid cartilages** are paired, three-sided pyramidal cartilages that articulate with the lateral parts of the superior border of the cricoid cartilage lamina (Fig. 9.33B). Each cartilage has an apex superiorly, a vocal process anteriorly, and a large muscular process that projects laterally from its base. The **apex** bears the corniculate cartilage and attaches to the aryepiglottic fold. The **vocal process** provides the posterior attachment for the vocal ligament, and the muscular process serves as a lever to which the posterior and lateral crico-arytenoid muscles are attached. The **crico-arytenoid joints**, located between the bases of the arytenoid cartilages and the superolateral surfaces of the lamina of the cricoid cartilage (Fig. 9.33B, E), permit the arytenoid cartilages to slide toward or away from one to another, to tilt anteriorly and posteriorly, and to rotate. These movements are important in approximating, tensing, and relaxing the vocal folds.

The elastic **vocal ligaments** extend from the junction of the laminae of the thyroid cartilage anteriorly to the vocal process of the arytenoid cartilage posteriorly (Fig. 9.33E). The vocal ligaments make up the submucosal skeleton of the vocal folds. These ligaments are the thickened, free superior border of the **conus elasticus** or **cricovocal membrane**. The parts of the membrane extending laterally between the vocal folds and the superior border of the cricoid are the **lateral cricothyroid ligaments**. The fibro-elastic conus elasticus blends anteriorly with the median cricothyroid ligament. The conus elasticus and overlying mucosa close the tracheal inlet except for the central **rima glottidis** (opening between the vocal folds).

The **epiglottic cartilage**, consisting of elastic cartilage, gives flexibility to the **epiglottis**, a heart-shaped cartilage covered with mucous membrane (Figs. 9.33B, E and 9.35). Situated posterior to the root of the tongue and the hyoid and anterior to the **laryngeal inlet**, the epiglottic cartilage forms the superior part of the anterior wall and the superior margin of the inlet. Its broad superior end is free. Its tapered inferior end, the **stalk of the epiglottis**, is attached to the angle formed by the thyroid laminae by the **thyro-epiglottic ligament** (Fig. 9.33E). The **hyo-epiglottic ligament** attaches the anterior surface of the epiglottic cartilage to the hyoid (Fig. 9.34). The **quadrangular membrane** (Figs. 9.33B and 9.35) is a thin, submucosal sheet of

connective tissue that extends between the lateral aspects of the arytenoid and epiglottic cartilages. Its free inferior margin constitutes the **vestibular ligament**, which is covered loosely by mucosa to form the **vestibular fold** (Fig. 9.35). This fold lies superior to the vocal fold and extends from the thyroid cartilage to the arytenoid cartilage. The free superior margin of the quadrangular membrane forms the **aryepiglottic ligament**, which is covered with mucosa to form the **aryepiglottic fold**. The **corniculate** and **cuneiform cartilages** appear as small nodules in the posterior part of the aryepiglottic folds. The corniculate cartilages attach to the apices of the arytenoid cartilages; the cuneiform cartilages do not directly attach to other cartilages. The quadrangular membrane and conus elasticus are the superior and inferior parts of the submucosal **fibro-elastic membrane of the larynx**.

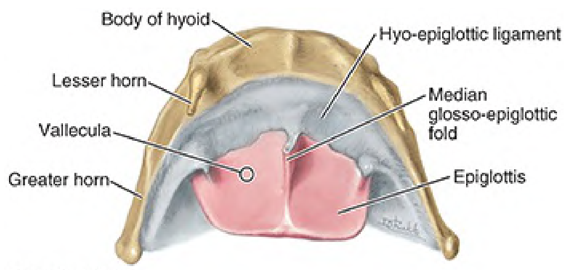


FIGURE 9.34. Epiglottis and hyo-epiglottic ligament. The epiglottis is a leaf-shaped plate of elastic fibrocartilage, which is covered with mucous membrane (pink) and is attached anteriorly to the hyoid by the hyo-epiglottic ligament (gray). The epiglottis serves as a diverter valve over the superior aperture of the larynx during swallowing.

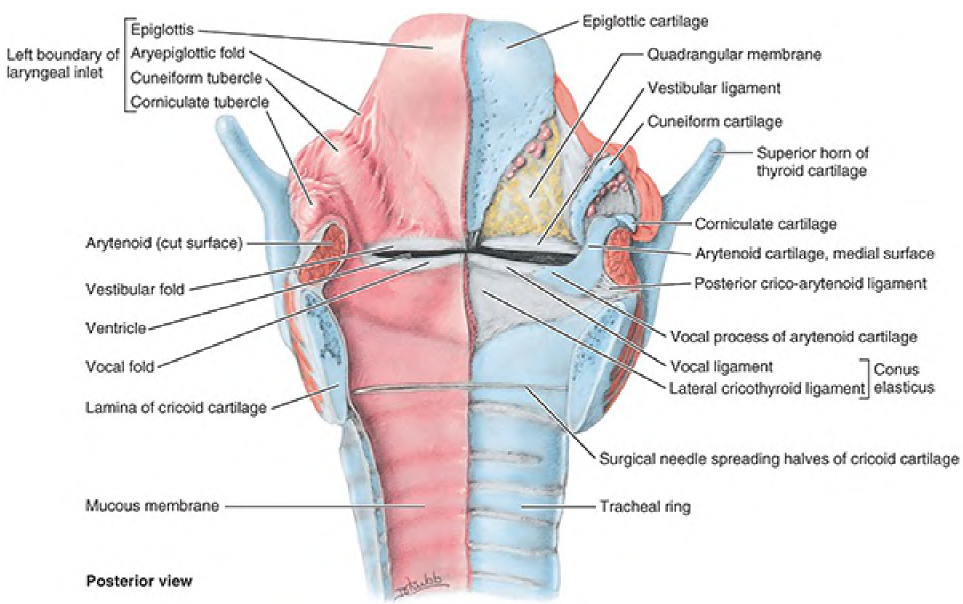


FIGURE 9.35. Interior of larynx. The posterior wall of the larynx is split in the median plane, and the two sides are spread apart and held in place by a surgical needle. On the left side, the mucous membrane is intact. On the right side, the mucous and submucous coats are peeled off, and the skeletal coat—consisting of cartilages, ligaments, and the fibro-elastic membrane—is uncovered.

Interior of Larynx. The **laryngeal cavity** extends from the laryngeal inlet, through which it communicates with the laryngopharynx, to the level of the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage.

Here, the laryngeal cavity is continuous with the cavity of the trachea (Figs. 9.35 and 9.36A, B). The laryngeal cavity includes the

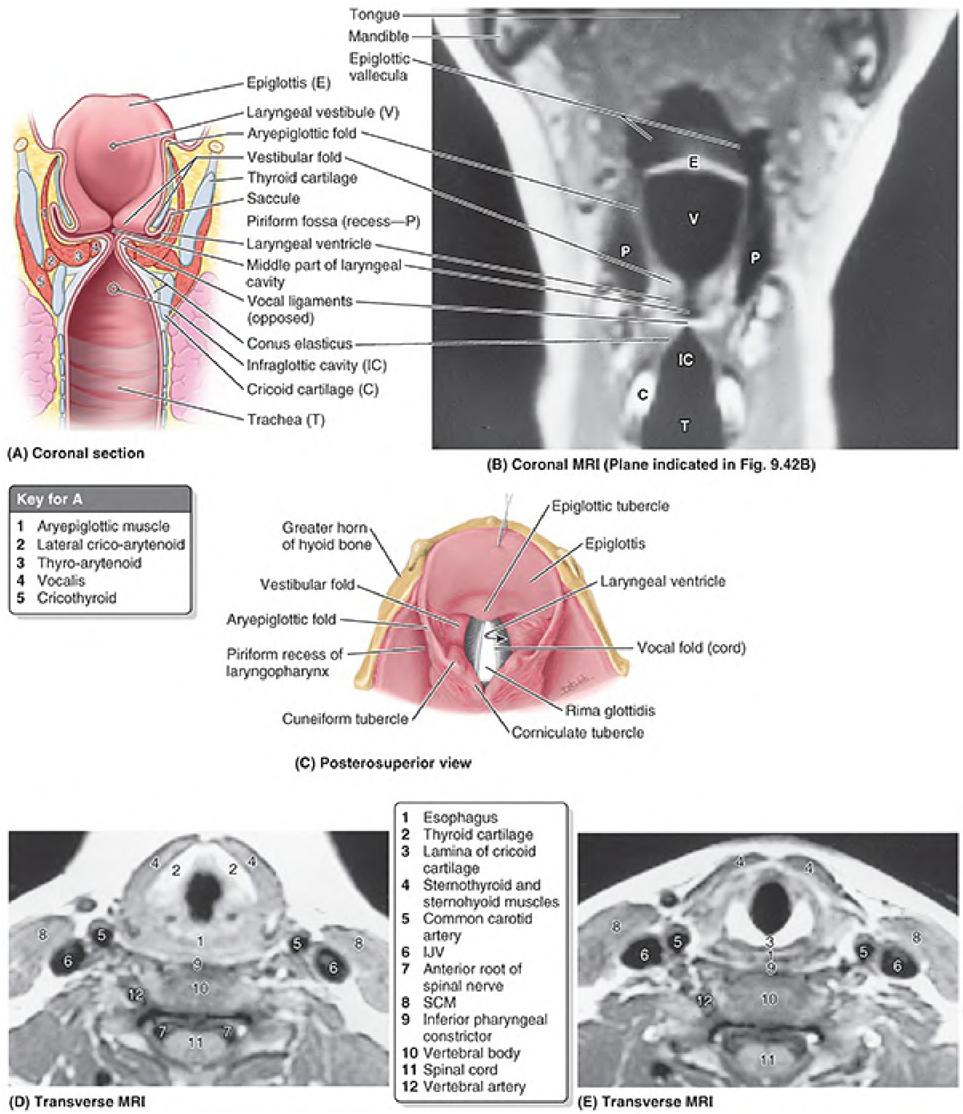


FIGURE 9.36. Folds and compartments of larynx. A. Schematic, coronal section. The compartments of the larynx are shown: the vestibule, middle compartment with left and right ventricles, and the infraglottic cavity. **B.** The epiglottic valleculae of the oropharynx, piriform fossae of the laryngopharynx, and vestibular and vocal folds of the larynx are demonstrated. **C.** Rima glottidis and laryngeal vestibule. The rima glottidis (the space between the vocal folds) is visible through the laryngeal inlet and vestibule. The laryngeal inlet is bounded (1) anteriorly by the free curved edge of the epiglottis; (2) posteriorly by the arytenoid cartilages, the corniculate cartilages that cap them, and the interarytenoid fold that unites them; and (3) on each side by the aryepiglottic fold that contains the superior end of the cuneiform cartilage. **D.** Transverse MRI superior to rima glottidis. **E.** Transverse MRI inferior to rima glottidis.

- **laryngeal vestibule**: between the laryngeal inlet and the vestibular folds
- **middle part of the laryngeal cavity**: the central cavity (airway) between the vestibular and vocal folds
- **laryngeal ventricle**: recesses extending laterally from the middle part of the laryngeal cavity between vestibular and vocal folds. The **laryngeal saccule** is a blind pocket opening into each

ventricle that is lined with mucosal glands.

- **infraglottic cavity**: the inferior cavity of the larynx between the vocal folds and the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage, where it is continuous with the lumen of the trachea

The **vocal folds** control sound production (Figs. 9.36 and 9.37). The apex of each wedge-shaped fold projects medially into the laryngeal cavity. Each vocal fold contains a

- vocal ligament, consisting of thickened elastic tissue that is the medial free edge of the conus elasticus (Figs. 9.33E, 9.35, and 9.36A)
- vocalis muscle, composed of exceptionally fine muscle fibers immediately lateral to and terminating at intervals relative to the length of the vocal ligaments (Fig. 9.36A)

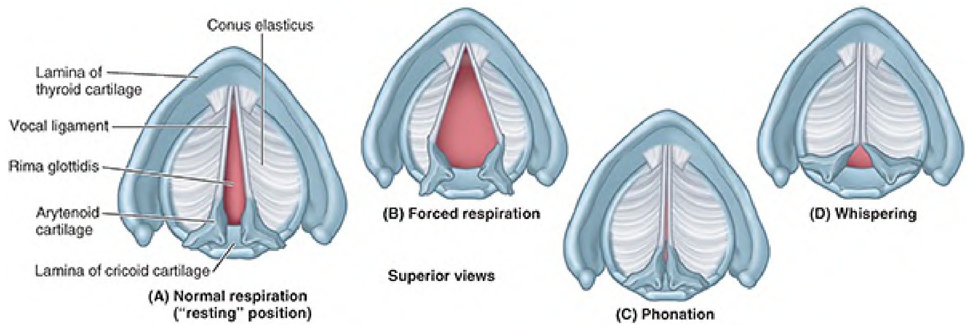


FIGURE 9.37. Variations in shape of rima glottidis. A. The shape of the rima glottidis, the aperture between the vocal folds, varies according to the position of the vocal folds. During normal respiration, the laryngeal muscles are relaxed and the rima glottidis assumes a narrow, slit-like position. **B.** During a deep inhalation, the vocal ligaments are abducted by contraction of the posterior crico-arytenoid muscles, opening the rima glottidis widely into an inverted kite shape. **C.** During phonation, the arytenoid muscles adduct the arytenoid cartilages at the same time that the lateral crico-arytenoid muscles moderately adduct. Air forced between the adducted vocal ligaments produces tone. Stronger contraction of the same muscles seals the rima glottidis (Valsalva maneuver). **D.** During whispering, the vocal ligaments are strongly adducted by the lateral crico-arytenoid muscles, but the relaxed arytenoid muscles allow air to pass between the arytenoid cartilages (intercartilaginous part of rima glottidis), which is modified into toneless speech. No tone is produced.

The vocal folds are the sharp-edged folds of mucous membrane overlying and incorporating the vocal ligaments and the thyro-arytenoid muscles. They are the source of the sounds (tone) that come from the larynx. These folds produce audible vibrations when their free margins are closely (but not tightly) apposed during phonation and air is forcibly expired intermittently (Fig. 9.37C). The vocal folds also serve as the main inspiratory sphincter of the larynx when they are tightly closed. Complete adduction of the folds forms an effective sphincter that prevents entry of air.

The **glottis** (the vocal apparatus of the larynx) makes up the vocal folds and processes, together with the **rima glottidis**, the aperture between the vocal folds (Fig. 9.36C). The shape of the rima (L., slit) varies according to the position of the vocal folds (Fig. 9.37). During ordinary breathing, the rima is narrow and wedge shaped; during forced respiration, it is wide and trapezoidal in shape. The rima glottidis is slit-like when the vocal folds are closely approximated during phonation. Variation in the tension and length of the vocal folds, in the width of the rima glottidis, and in the intensity of the expiratory effort produces changes in the pitch of the voice. The lower range of pitch of the voice of postpubertal males results from the greater length of the

vocal folds.

The vestibular folds, extending between the thyroid and the arytenoid cartilages (Figs. 9.35 and 9.36), play little or no part in voice production; they are protective in function. They consist of two thick folds of mucous membrane enclosing the vestibular ligaments. The space between these ligaments is the **rima vestibuli**. The lateral recesses between the vocal and the vestibular folds are the laryngeal ventricles.

Laryngeal Muscles. The laryngeal muscles are divided into extrinsic and intrinsic groups:

- **Extrinsic laryngeal muscles** move the larynx as a whole (see Fig. 9.19; see Table 9.3). The infrahyoid muscles are depressors of the hyoid and larynx, whereas the suprahyoid muscles (and the stylopharyngeus, a pharyngeal muscle discussed later in this chapter) are elevators of the hyoid and larynx.
- **Intrinsic laryngeal muscles** move the laryngeal components, altering the length and tension of the vocal folds and the size and shape of the rima glottidis (Fig. 9.37). All but one of the intrinsic muscles of the larynx are supplied by the recurrent laryngeal nerve (Fig. 9.38; see Figs. 9.40 and 9.41), a branch of CN X. The cricothyroid is supplied by the external laryngeal nerve, one of the two terminal branches of the superior laryngeal nerve.

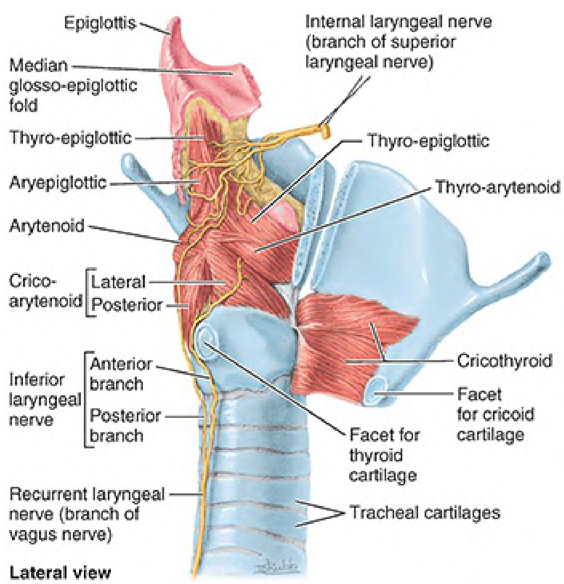


FIGURE 9.38. Muscles and nerves of larynx and cricothyroid joint. The thyroid cartilage is sawn through to the right of the median plane. The cricothyroid joint is disarticulated, and the right lamina of the thyroid cartilage is turned anteriorly (like opening a book), stripping the cricothyroid muscles off the arch of the cricoid cartilage.

The actions of the intrinsic laryngeal muscles are easiest to understand when they are considered as functional groups: adductors and abductors, sphincters, and tensors and relaxers. The intrinsic muscles are illustrated in situ in Figures 9.36A, 9.38, and 9.39; their attachments, innervation, and main actions are summarized in Table 9.5.

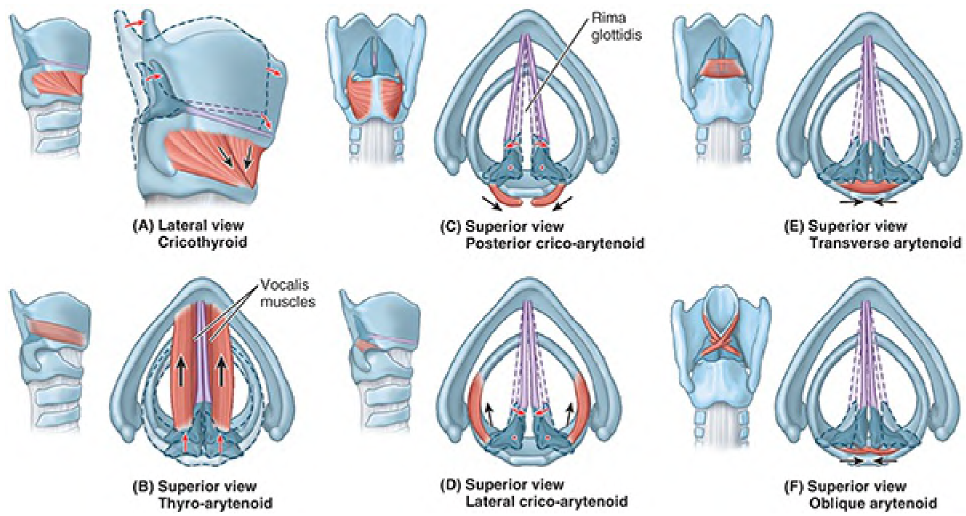


FIGURE 9.39. **Muscles of larynx.**

TABLE 9.5. MUSCLES OF LARYNX

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Main Action(s)
Cricothyroid	Anterolateral part of cricoid cartilage	Inferior margin and inferior horn of thyroid cartilage	External laryngeal nerve (from CN X)	Stretches and tenses vocal ligament
Thyro-arytenoid[a]	Lower half of posterior aspect of angle of thyroid laminae and cricothyroid ligament	Anterolateral arytenoid surface	Inferior laryngeal nerve (terminal part of recurrent laryngeal nerve, from CN X—see Fig. 9.38)	Relaxes vocal ligament
Posterior crico-arytenoid	Posterior surface of lamina of cricoid cartilage	Muscular process of arytenoid cartilage		Abducts vocal folds
Lateral crico-arytenoid	Arch of cricoid cartilage			Adducts vocal folds (interligamentous portion)
Transverse and oblique arytenoids[b]	One arytenoid cartilage	Contralateral arytenoid cartilage		Adduct arytenoid cartilages (adducting intercartilaginous portion of vocal folds, closing posterior rima glottidis)
Vocalis[c]	Lateral surface of vocal process of arytenoid cartilage	Ipsilateral vocal ligament		Relaxes posterior vocal ligament while maintaining (or increasing) tension of anterior part

[a]Superior fibers of the thyro-arytenoid muscles pass into the aryepiglottic fold, and some of them reach the epiglottic cartilage. These fibers constitute the thyro-epiglottic muscle, which widens the laryngeal inlet.

[b]Some fibers of the oblique arytenoid muscles continue as aryepiglottic muscles (Fig. 9.40).

[c]This slender muscle slip lies medial to and is composed of fibers finer than those of the thyro-arytenoid muscle.

- Adductors and abductors: These muscles move the vocal folds to open and close the rima

glottidis. The principal adductors are the **lateral crico-arytenoid muscles**, which pull the muscular processes anteriorly, rotating the arytenoid cartilages so that their vocal processes swing medially. When this action is combined with that of the **transverse** and **oblique arytenoid muscles**, which pull the arytenoid cartilages together, air pushed through the rima glottidis causes vibrations of the vocal ligaments (phonation). When the vocal ligaments are adducted, but the transverse arytenoid muscles do not act, the arytenoid cartilages remain apart and air may bypass the ligaments. This is the position of whispering when the breath is modified into voice in the absence of tone. The sole abductors are the **posterior crico-arytenoid muscles**, which pull the muscular processes posteriorly, rotating the vocal processes laterally and thus widening the rima glottidis.

- Sphincters: The combined actions of most of the muscles of the laryngeal inlet result in a sphincteric action that closes the laryngeal inlet as a protective mechanism during swallowing. Contraction of the lateral crico-arytenoids, transverse and oblique arytenoids, and aryepiglottic muscles brings the aryepiglottic folds together and pulls the arytenoid cartilages toward the epiglottis. This action occurs reflexively in response to the presence of liquid or particles approaching or within the laryngeal vestibule. It is perhaps our strongest reflex, diminishing only after loss of consciousness, as in drowning.
- Tensors: The principal tensors are the **cricothyroid muscles**, which tilt or pull the prominence or angle of the thyroid cartilage anteriorly and inferiorly toward the arch of the cricoid cartilage. This increases the distance between the thyroid prominence and the arytenoid cartilages. Because the anterior ends of the vocal ligaments attach to the posterior aspect of the prominence, the vocal ligaments elongate and tighten, raising the pitch of the voice.
- Relaxers: The principal muscles in this group are the **thyro-arytenoid muscles**, which pull the arytenoid cartilages anteriorly, toward the thyroid angle (prominence), thereby relaxing the vocal ligaments to lower the pitch of the voice.

The **vocalis muscles** lie medial to the thyro-arytenoid muscles and lateral to the vocal ligaments within the vocal folds. The vocalis muscles produce minute adjustments of the vocal ligaments, selectively tensing and relaxing the anterior and posterior parts, respectively, of the vocal folds during animated speech and singing.

Arteries of Larynx. The laryngeal arteries, branches of the superior and inferior thyroid arteries, supply the larynx (Fig. 9.40). The **superior laryngeal artery** accompanies the internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve through the thyrohyoid membrane and branches to supply the internal surface of the larynx. The **cricothyroid artery**, a small branch of the superior thyroid artery, supplies the cricothyroid muscle. The **inferior laryngeal artery**, a branch of the inferior thyroid artery, accompanies the inferior laryngeal nerve (terminal part of the recurrent laryngeal nerve) and supplies the mucous membrane and muscles in the inferior part of the larynx.

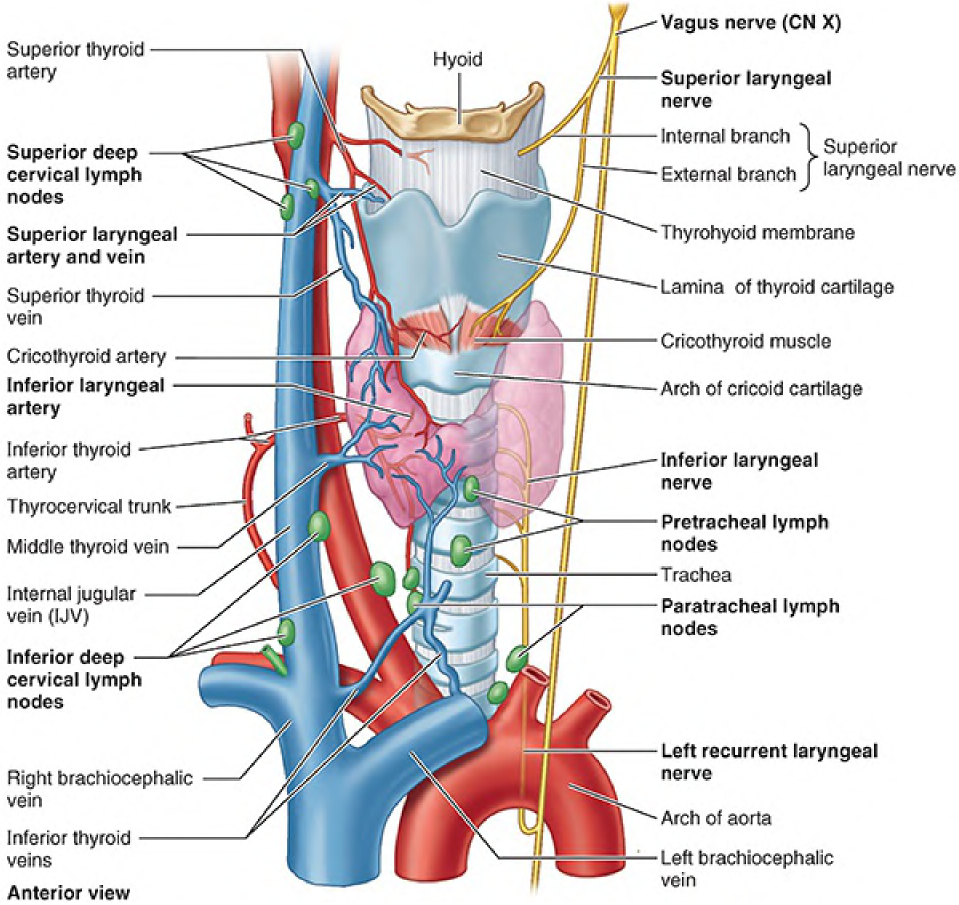


FIGURE 9.40. Vessels, nerves, and lymph nodes of larynx. The superior and inferior thyroid arteries give rise to the superior and inferior laryngeal arteries, respectively; they anastomose with each other. The laryngeal nerves are derived from the vagus (CN X) through the internal and external branches of the superior laryngeal nerve and the inferior laryngeal nerve from the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The left recurrent laryngeal nerve passes inferior to the arch of the aorta.

Veins of Larynx. The laryngeal veins accompany the laryngeal arteries. The **superior laryngeal vein** usually joins the superior thyroid vein and through it drains into the IJV (Fig. 9.40). The **inferior laryngeal vein** joins the inferior thyroid vein or the venous plexus of veins on the anterior aspect of the trachea, which empties into the left brachiocephalic vein.

Lymphatics of Larynx. The laryngeal lymphatic vessels superior to the vocal folds accompany the superior laryngeal artery through the thyrohyoid membrane and drain into the **superior deep cervical lymph nodes**. The lymphatic vessels inferior to the vocal folds drain into the pretracheal or paratracheal lymph nodes, which drain into the **inferior deep cervical lymph nodes** (Fig. 9.40).

Nerves of Larynx. The nerves of the larynx are the superior and inferior laryngeal branches of the vagus nerves (CN X). The **superior laryngeal nerve** arises from the **inferior vagal ganglion** at the superior end of the carotid triangle (Figs. 9.40 and 9.41). The nerve divides into two terminal branches within the carotid sheath: the internal laryngeal nerve (sensory and autonomic) and the external laryngeal nerve (motor).

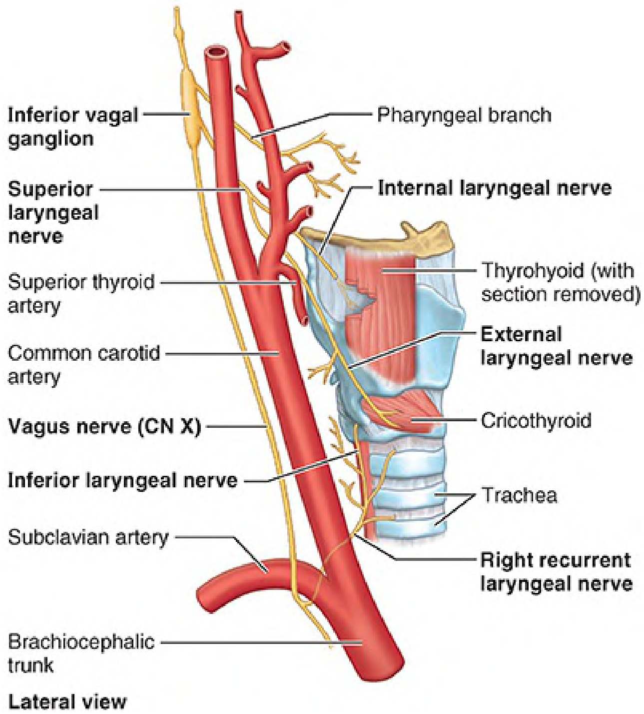


FIGURE 9.41. Laryngeal branches of right vagus nerve (CN X). The nerves of the larynx are the internal and external branches of the superior laryngeal nerve and the inferior laryngeal nerve from the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The right recurrent laryngeal nerve passes inferior to the right subclavian artery.

The **internal laryngeal nerve**, the larger of the terminal branches of the superior laryngeal nerve, pierces the thyrohyoid membrane with the superior laryngeal artery, supplying sensory fibers to the laryngeal mucous membrane of the laryngeal vestibule and middle laryngeal cavity, including the superior surface of the vocal folds. The **external laryngeal nerve**, the smaller terminal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve, descends posterior to the sternothyroid muscle in company with the superior thyroid artery. At first, the external laryngeal nerve lies on the inferior pharyngeal constrictor; it then pierces the muscle, contributing to its innervation (with the pharyngeal plexus), and continues to supply the cricothyroid muscle.

The **inferior laryngeal nerve**, the continuation of the recurrent laryngeal nerve (a branch of the vagus nerve), enters the larynx by passing deep to the inferior border of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor and medial to the lamina of the thyroid cartilage (Figs. 9.38, 9.40, and 9.41). It divides into anterior and posterior branches, which accompany the inferior laryngeal artery into the larynx. The anterior branch supplies the lateral crico-arytenoid, thyro-arytenoid, vocalis, aryepiglottic, and thyro-epiglottic muscles. The posterior branch supplies the posterior crico-arytenoid and transverse and oblique arytenoid muscles. Because it supplies all the intrinsic muscles except the cricothyroid, the inferior laryngeal nerve is the primary motor nerve of the larynx. However, it also provides sensory fibers to the mucosa of the infraglottic cavity.

TRACHEA

The **trachea**, extending from the larynx into the thorax, terminates inferiorly as it divides into right and left main bronchi. It transports air to and from the lungs, and its epithelium propels

debris-laden mucus toward the pharynx for expulsion from the mouth. The trachea is a fibrocartilaginous tube, supported by incomplete cartilaginous **tracheal cartilages** (rings), that occupies a median position in the neck (Fig. 9.38). The tracheal cartilages keep the trachea patent; they are deficient posteriorly where the trachea is adjacent to the esophagus. The posterior gaps in the tracheal rings are spanned by the involuntary **trachealis muscle**, smooth muscle connecting the ends of the rings (Fig. 9.42). Hence, the posterior wall of the trachea is flat.

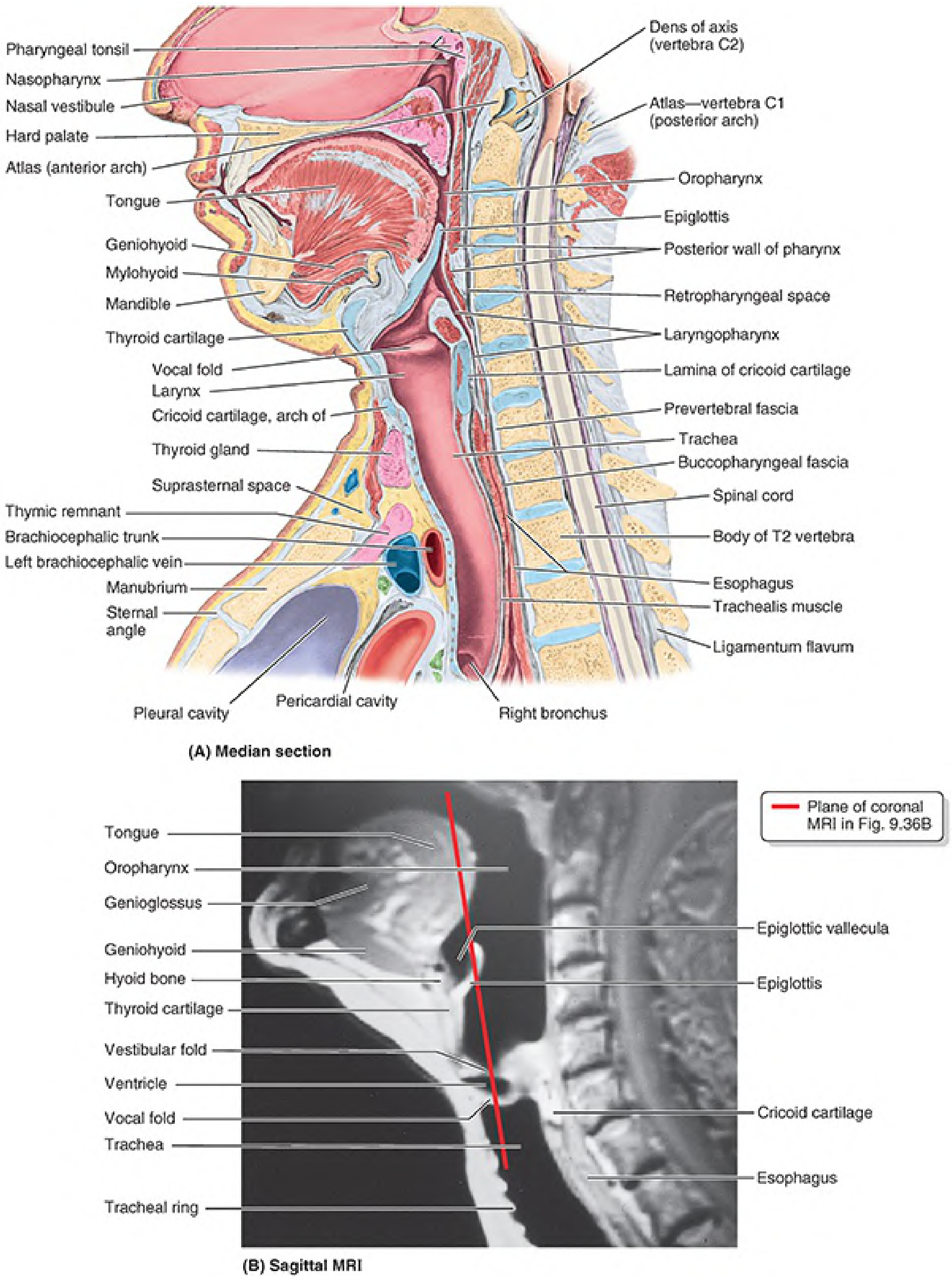


FIGURE 9.42. **Median section and adjacent sagittal section of head and neck. A.** Median section. The pharynx extends from the cranial base to the level of the cricoid cartilage (body of C6 vertebra or the C6–C7 IV disc, as shown here), where it is continuous with the esophagus. **B.** Sagittal section. The soft palate is elevated, closing off the

nasopharynx. The plane of section passes through the vestibular and vocal folds bounding the ventricle of the larynx.

In adults, the trachea is approximately 2.5 cm in diameter, whereas in infants, it has the diameter of a pencil. The trachea extends from the inferior end of the larynx at the level of the C6 vertebra. It ends at the level of the sternal angle or the T4–T5 IV disc, where it divides into the right and left main bronchi (see Chapter 4, Thorax).

Lateral to the trachea are the common carotid arteries and the lobes of the thyroid gland (Fig. 9.40). Inferior to the isthmus of the thyroid gland are the jugular venous arch and the inferior thyroid veins (see Figs. 9.17 and 9.29). The brachiocephalic trunk is related to the right side of the trachea in the root of the neck. Deviation of the trachea from the midline, apparent superficially or radiographically, often signals the presence of a pathological process. Tracheal trauma often affects the closely adherent esophagus.

Alimentary Layer of Cervical Viscera

In the alimentary layer, cervical viscera take part in the digestive functions of the body. Although the pharynx conducts air to the larynx, trachea, and lungs, the pharyngeal constrictors direct (and the epiglottis deflects) food to the esophagus. The esophagus, also involved in food propulsion, is the beginning of the alimentary canal (digestive tract).

PHARYNX

The **pharynx** is the superior expanded part of the alimentary system posterior to the nasal and oral cavities, extending inferiorly past the larynx (Figs. 9.42, 9.43, and 9.44A). The pharynx extends from the cranial base to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage anteriorly and the inferior border of the C6 vertebra posteriorly. The pharynx is widest (approximately 5 cm) opposite the hyoid and narrowest (approximately 1.5 cm) at its inferior end, where it is continuous with the esophagus. The flat posterior wall of the pharynx lies against the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia.

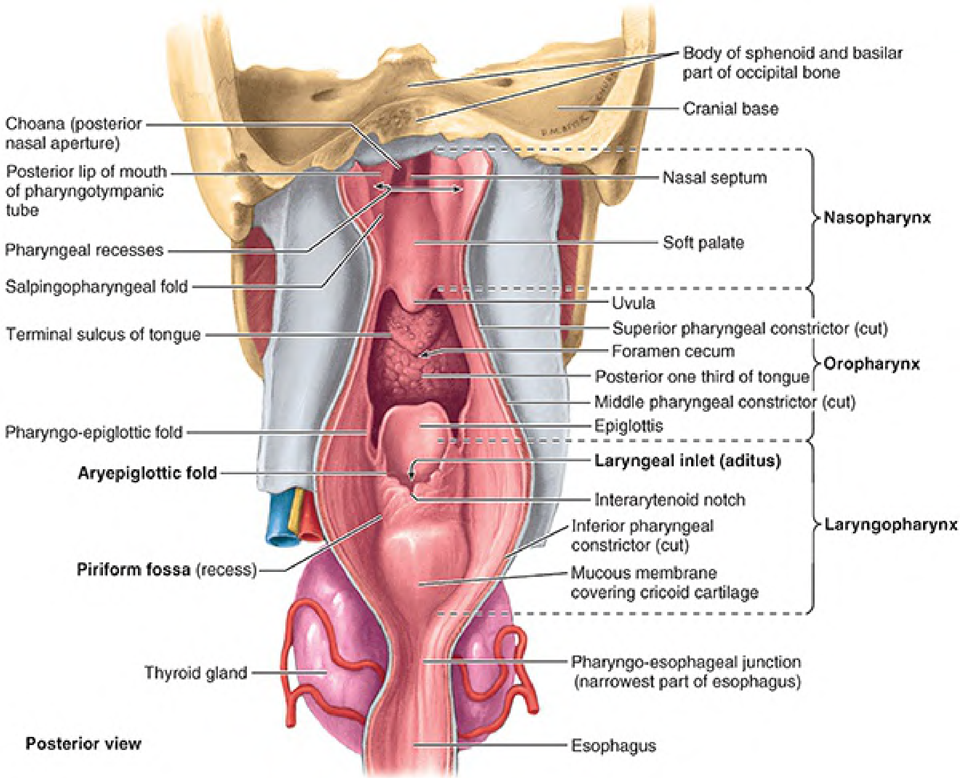


FIGURE 9.43. Anterior wall of pharynx. In this dissection, the posterior wall has been incised along the midline and spread apart. Openings in the anterior wall communicate with the nasal, oral, and laryngeal cavities. On each side of the laryngeal inlet, separated from it by the aryepiglottic fold, a piriform fossa (recess) is formed by the invagination of the larynx into the anterior wall of the laryngopharynx.

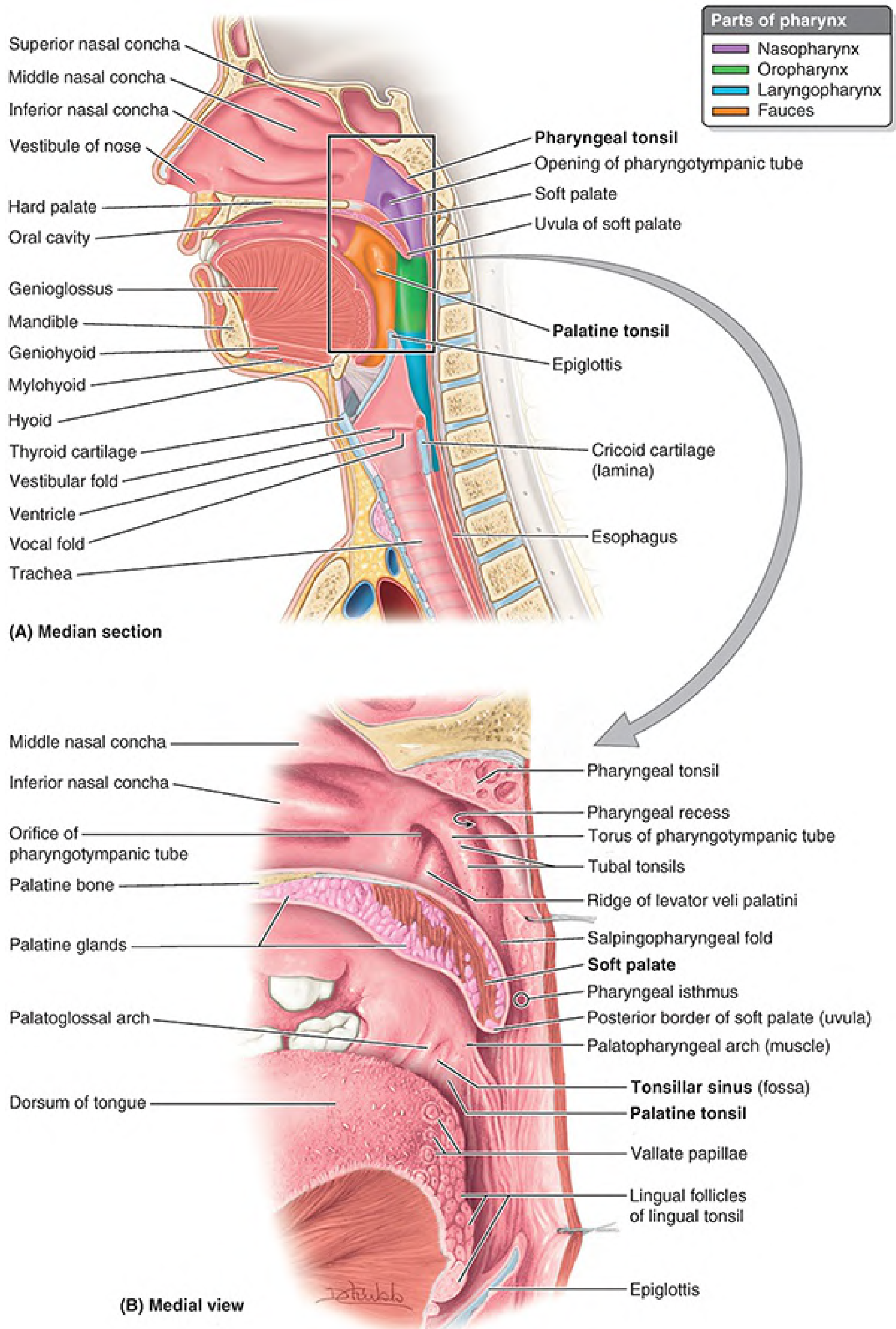


FIGURE 9.44. Internal aspect of lateral wall of pharynx. A. Schematic, median section of head and neck. The upper respiratory passages and alimentary canal in the right half of a bisected head and neck are shown. The rectangle indicates the location of the section shown in part **B**. **B.** Lateral walls of nasopharynx and oropharynx. The posterior border of the soft palate forms the anterior margin of the pharyngeal isthmus through which the two spaces communicate.

Interior of Pharynx. The pharynx is divided into three parts:

1. Nasopharynx: posterior to the nose and superior to the soft palate

2. Oropharynx: posterior to the mouth
3. Laryngopharynx: posterior to the larynx

The **nasopharynx** has a respiratory function; it is the posterior extension of the nasal cavities (Figs. 9.42, 9.43, and 9.44). The nose opens into the nasopharynx through two **choanae** (paired openings between the nasal cavity and the nasopharynx). The roof and posterior wall of the nasopharynx form a continuous surface that lies inferior to the body of the sphenoid bone and the basilar part of the occipital bone (Figs. 9.43 and 9.44A).

The abundant lymphoid tissue in the pharynx forms an incomplete tonsillar ring around the superior part of the pharynx (see Fig. 9.49). The lymphoid tissue is aggregated in certain regions to form masses called tonsils. The **pharyngeal tonsil** (commonly called the adenoid when enlarged) is in the mucous membrane of the roof and posterior wall of the nasopharynx (Figs. 9.42A and 9.44). Extending inferiorly from the medial end of the pharyngotympanic tube is a vertical fold of mucous membrane, the **salpingopharyngeal fold** (Figs. 9.43 and 9.44B). It covers the salpingopharyngeus muscle, which opens the pharyngeal orifice of the pharyngotympanic tube during swallowing. The collection of lymphoid tissue in the submucosa of the pharynx near the nasopharyngeal opening, or orifice of the pharyngotympanic tube, is the **tubal tonsils** (Fig. 9.44B). Posterior to the **torus of the pharyngotympanic tube** and the salpingopharyngeal fold is a slit-like lateral projection of the pharynx, the **pharyngeal recess**, which extends laterally and posteriorly.

The **oropharynx** has a digestive function. It is bounded by the soft palate superiorly, the base of the tongue inferiorly, and the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches laterally (Figs. 9.44 and 9.45A). It extends from the soft palate to the superior border of the epiglottis.

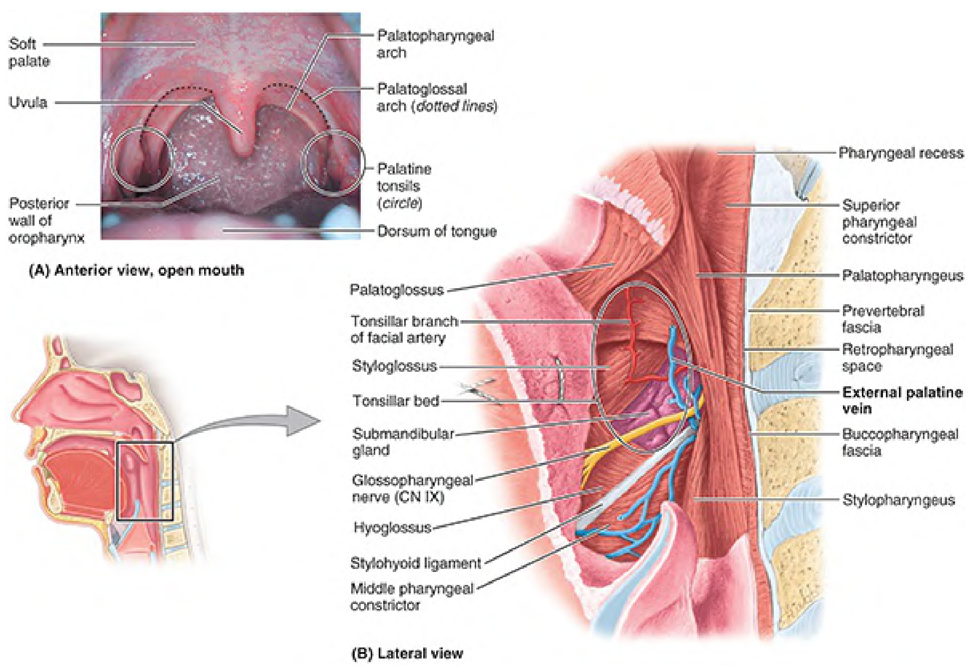


FIGURE 9.45. Oral cavity and tonsillar bed. A. Surface anatomy of oral cavity and palatine tonsils in a young child. The mouth is wide open and the tongue protruding as far as possible. The uvula is a muscular projection from the posterior edge of the soft palate. **B.** Deep dissection of tonsillar bed. The palatine tonsil has been removed. The tongue is pulled

anteriorly, and the inferior (lingual) attachment of the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle is cut away.

Deglutition (swallowing) is the complex process that transfers a food bolus from the mouth through the pharynx and esophagus into the stomach. Solid food is masticated (chewed) and mixed with saliva to form a soft bolus (mass) that is easier to swallow. Deglutition occurs in three stages:

- **Stage 1**: voluntary; the bolus is compressed against the palate and pushed from the mouth into the oropharynx, mainly by movements of the muscles of the tongue and soft palate (Fig. 9.46A, B).
- **Stage 2**: involuntary and rapid; the soft palate is elevated, sealing off the nasopharynx from the oropharynx and laryngopharynx (Fig. 9.46C). The pharynx widens and shortens to receive the bolus of food as the suprahyoid muscles and longitudinal pharyngeal muscles contract, elevating the larynx.
- **Stage 3**: involuntary; sequential contraction of all three pharyngeal constrictor muscles creates a peristaltic ridge that forces the food bolus inferiorly into the esophagus (Fig. 9.46B–D).

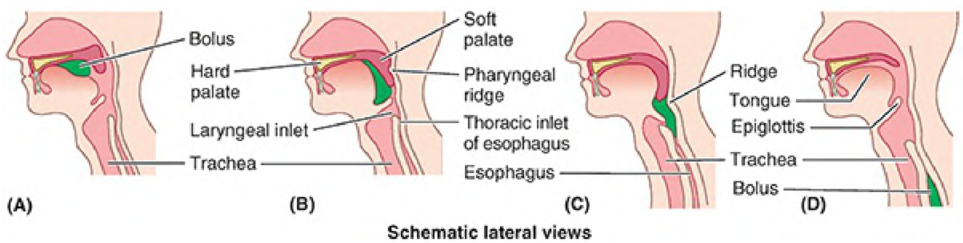


FIGURE 9.46. Deglutition (swallowing). A. The bolus of food is squeezed to the back of the mouth by pushing the tongue against the palate. **B.** The nasopharynx is sealed off and the larynx is elevated, enlarging the pharynx to receive food. **C.** The pharyngeal sphincters contract sequentially, creating a "peristaltic ridge," squeezing food into the esophagus. The epiglottis deflects the bolus from but does not close the inlet to the larynx and trachea. **D.** The bolus of food moves down the esophagus by peristaltic contractions.

The **palatine tonsils** are collections of lymphoid tissue on each side of the oropharynx in the interval between the palatine arches (Figs. 9.44 and 9.45A). The tonsil does not fill the **tonsillar sinus** (fossa) between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches in adults. The submucosal **tonsillar bed**, in which the palatine tonsil lies, is between these arches (Fig. 9.45B). The tonsillar bed is formed by the superior pharyngeal constrictor and the thin, fibrous sheet of **pharyngobasilar fascia** (Fig. 9.47A, B). This fascia blends with the periosteum of the cranial base and defines the limits of the pharyngeal wall in its superior part.

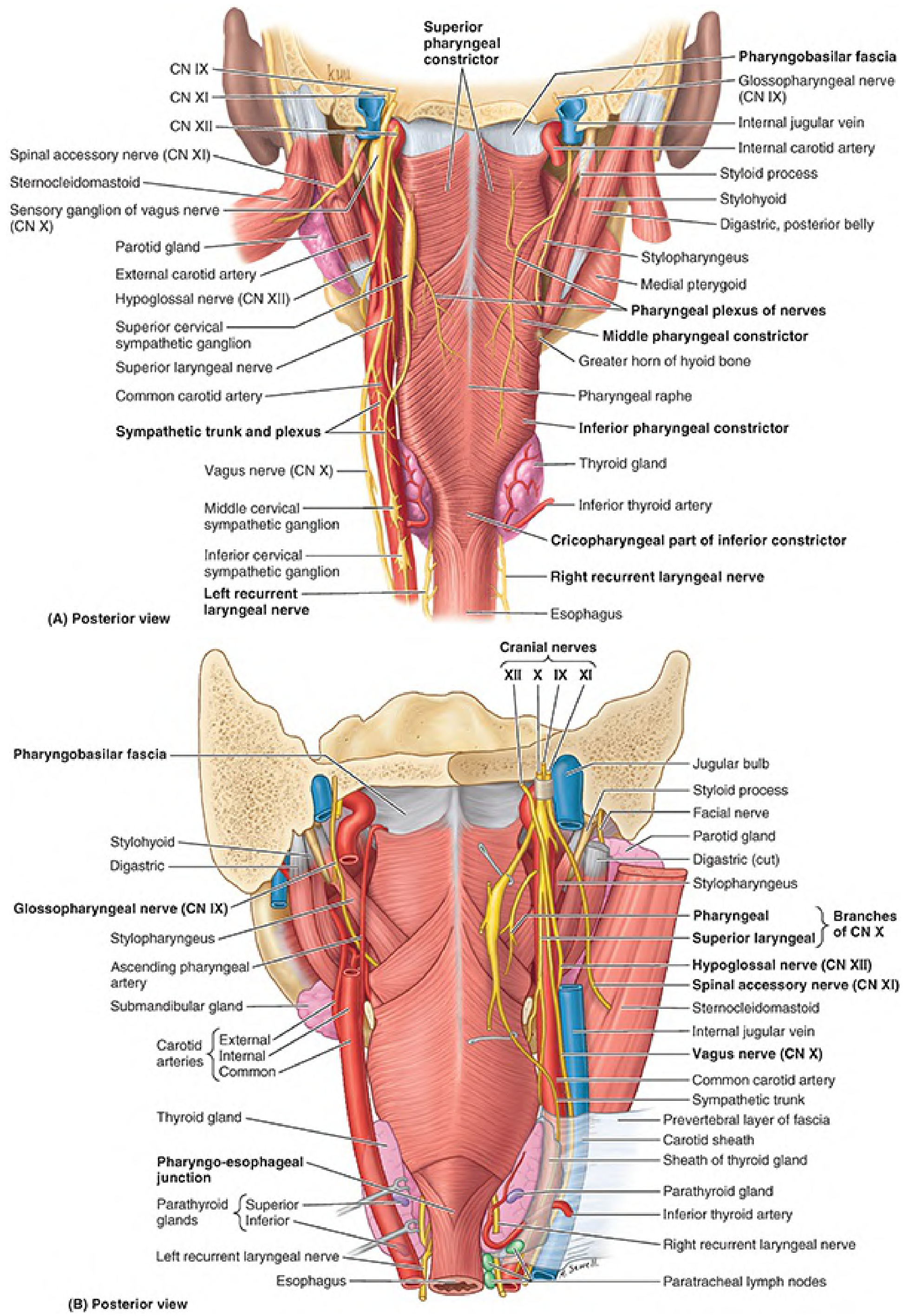


FIGURE 9.47. **Pharynx and cranial nerves. A.** Dissection of posterior aspect of pharynx and associated structures. The buccopharyngeal fascia has been removed. Of the three pharyngeal constrictor muscles, the inferior muscle overlaps the middle one and the middle one overlaps the superior one. All three muscles form a common median pharyngeal raphe posteriorly. **B.** Relationship of pharyngeal constrictors and neurovascular structures. The narrowest and least distensible part of the alimentary tract is the pharyngo-esophageal junction, where the laryngopharynx becomes the esophagus.

The **laryngopharynx** lies posterior to the larynx (Figs. 9.42A and 9.44A), extending from the superior border of the epiglottis and the pharyngo-epiglottic folds to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage, where it narrows and becomes continuous with the esophagus. Posteriorly, the

laryngopharynx is related to the bodies of the C4–C6 vertebrae. Its posterior and lateral walls are formed by the middle and inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscles (Fig. 9.47A, B). Internally, the wall is formed by the palatopharyngeus and stylopharyngeus muscles. The laryngopharynx communicates with the larynx through the **laryngeal inlet** on its anterior wall (see Fig. 9.43).

The **piriform fossa** (recess) is a small depression of the laryngopharyngeal cavity on either side of the laryngeal inlet. This mucosa-lined fossa is separated from the laryngeal inlet by the **aryepiglottic fold**. Laterally, the piriform fossa is bounded by the medial surfaces of the thyroid cartilage and the thyrohyoid membrane (see Fig. 9.40). Branches of the internal laryngeal and recurrent laryngeal nerves lie deep to the mucous membrane of the piriform fossa and are vulnerable to injury when a foreign body lodges in the fossa.

Pharyngeal Muscles. The wall of the pharynx is exceptional for the alimentary tract, having a muscular layer composed entirely of voluntary muscle, arranged with longitudinal muscles internal to a circular layer of muscles. Most of the alimentary tract is composed of smooth muscle, with a layer of longitudinal muscle external to a circular layer. The external circular layer of pharyngeal muscles consists of three **pharyngeal constrictors**: **superior**, **middle**, and **inferior** (Figs. 9.45B; 9.47A, B; and 9.48). The internal longitudinal muscles consist of the **palatopharyngeus**, **stylopharyngeus**, and **salpingopharyngeus**. These muscles elevate the larynx and shorten the pharynx during swallowing and speaking. The pharyngeal muscles are illustrated in Figure 9.48, and their attachments, nerve supply, and actions of the pharyngeal muscles are described in Table 9.6.

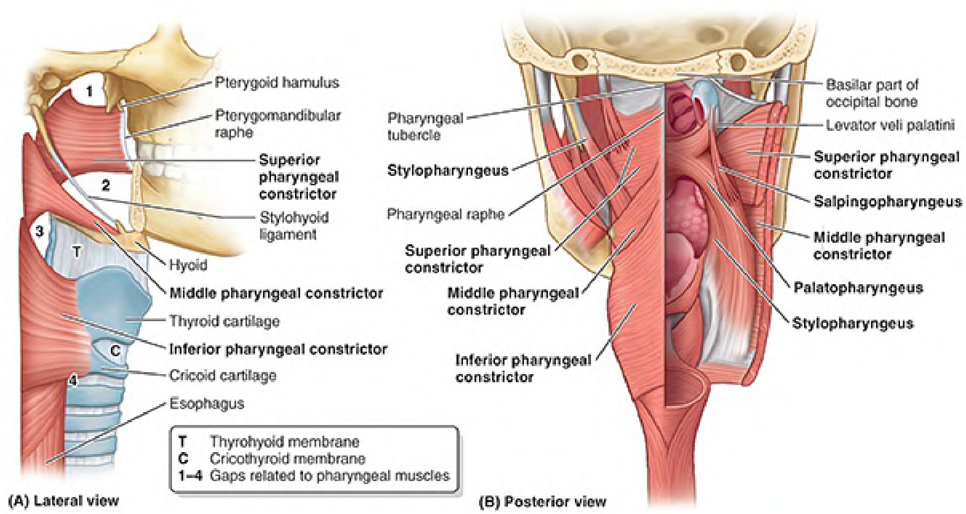


FIGURE 9.48. **Muscles of pharynx.**

TABLE 9.6. MUSCLES OF PHARYNX

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Main Action(s)
External layer				
Superior pharyngeal constrictor	Pterygoid hamulus, pterygomandibular raphe, posterior end of mylohyoid line of	Pharyngeal tubercle on basilar part of occipital bone	Pharyngeal branch of vagus (CN X) and pharyngeal plexus	Constrict walls of pharynx during swallowing

	mandible, and side of tongue			
Middle pharyngeal constrictor	Stylohyoid ligament and greater and lesser horns of hyoid	Pharyngeal raphe	Pharyngeal branch of vagus (CN X) and pharyngeal plexus, plus branches of external and recurrent laryngeal nerves of vagus	
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor	Oblique line of thyroid cartilage and side of cricoid cartilage	Cricopharyngeal part encircles pharyngo-esophageal junction without forming a raphe		
Internal layer				
Palatopharyngeus	Hard palate and palatine aponeurosis	Posterior border of lamina of thyroid cartilage and side of pharynx and esophagus	Pharyngeal branch of vagus (CN X) and pharyngeal plexus	Elevate (shorten and widen) pharynx and larynx during swallowing and speaking
Salpingopharyngeus	Cartilaginous part of pharyngotympanic tube	Blends with palatopharyngeus		
Stylopharyngeus	Styloid process of temporal bone	Posterior and superior borders of thyroid cartilage with palatopharyngeus	Glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX)	

The pharyngeal constrictors have a strong internal fascial lining, the pharyngobasilar fascia (Fig. 9.47B), and a thin external fascial lining, the buccopharyngeal fascia (see Fig. 9.42A). Inferiorly, the buccopharyngeal fascia blends with the pretracheal layer of the deep cervical fascia. The pharyngeal constrictors contract involuntarily so that contraction takes place sequentially from the superior to the inferior end of the pharynx, propelling food into the esophagus. All three pharyngeal constrictors are supplied by the pharyngeal plexus of nerves that is formed by pharyngeal branches of the vagus and glossopharyngeal nerves and by sympathetic branches from the superior cervical ganglion (see Fig. 9.47A; Table 9.6). The pharyngeal plexus lies on the lateral wall of the pharynx, mainly on the middle pharyngeal constrictor.

The overlapping of the pharyngeal constrictor muscles leaves four gaps in the musculature for structures to enter or leave the pharynx (Fig. 9.48A):

1. Superior to the superior pharyngeal constrictor, the levator veli palatini, pharyngotympanic tube, and ascending palatine artery pass through a gap between the superior pharyngeal constrictor and the cranium. It is here that the pharyngobasilar fascia blends with the buccopharyngeal fascia to form, with the mucous membrane, the thin wall of the pharyngeal recess (see Fig. 9.43).
2. A gap between the superior and middle pharyngeal constrictors forms a passageway that allows the stylopharyngeus, glossopharyngeal nerve, and stylohyoid ligament to pass to the internal aspect of the pharyngeal wall (Fig. 9.48).
3. A gap between the middle and inferior pharyngeal constrictors allows the internal laryngeal nerve and superior laryngeal artery and vein to pass to the larynx.
4. A gap inferior to the inferior pharyngeal constrictor allows the recurrent laryngeal nerve and

inferior laryngeal artery to pass superiorly into the larynx.

Vessels of Pharynx. A branch of the facial artery, the **tonsillar branch** (see Fig. 9.45B), passes through the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle and enters the inferior pole of the palatine tonsil. The tonsil also receives arterial twigs from the ascending palatine, lingual, descending palatine, and ascending pharyngeal arteries. The large **external palatine vein** (paratonsillar vein) descends from the soft palate and passes close to the lateral surface of the tonsil before it enters the pharyngeal venous plexus.

The **tonsillar lymphatic vessels** pass laterally and inferiorly to the lymph nodes near the angle of the mandible and the **jugulodigastric node**, referred to as the tonsillar node because of its frequent enlargement when the tonsil is inflamed (tonsillitis) (see Fig. 9.51). The palatine, lingual, and pharyngeal tonsils form the **pharyngeal lymphatic** (tonsillar) **ring**, an incomplete circular band of lymphoid tissue around the superior part of the pharynx (Fig. 9.49). The antero-inferior part of the ring is formed by the lingual tonsil in the posterior part of the tongue. Lateral parts of the ring are formed by the palatine and tubal tonsils, and posterior and superior parts are formed by the pharyngeal tonsil.

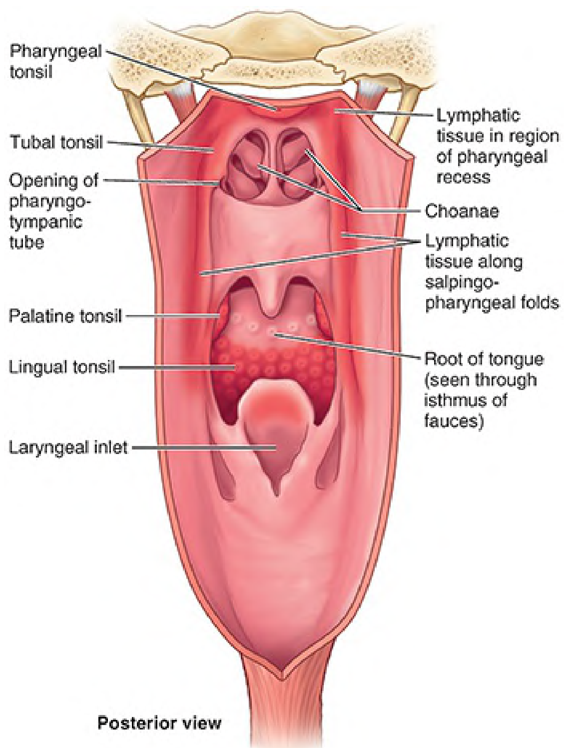


FIGURE 9.49. Lymphoid tissue of tongue and pharynx. The pharyngeal lymphatic (tonsillar) ring (pink) around the superior pharynx is formed of the pharyngeal, tubal, palatine, and lingual tonsils.

Pharyngeal Nerves. The nerve supply to the pharynx (motor and most of sensory) derives from the **pharyngeal plexus of nerves** (see Fig. 9.47A). Motor fibers in the plexus are derived from the vagus nerve (CN X) via its pharyngeal branch or branches. They supply all muscles of the pharynx and soft palate, except the stylopharyngeus (supplied by CN IX) and the tensor veli

palatini (supplied by CN V_3). The inferior pharyngeal constrictor also receives some motor fibers from the external and recurrent laryngeal branches of the vagus. Sensory fibers in the pharyngeal plexus are derived from the glossopharyngeal nerve. They are distributed to all three parts of the pharynx. In addition, the mucous membrane of the anterior and superior nasopharynx receives innervation from the maxillary nerve (CN V_2). The **tonsillar nerves** are derived from the tonsillar plexus of nerves formed by branches of the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves.

ESOPHAGUS

The esophagus is a muscular tube that connects the pharynx to the stomach. It begins in the neck where it is continuous with the laryngopharynx at the **pharyngo-esophageal junction** (see Figs. 9.43 and 9.47B). The esophagus consists of striated (voluntary) muscle in its upper third, smooth (involuntary) muscle in its lower third, and a mixture of striated and smooth muscle in between.

Its first part, the **cervical esophagus**, is part of the voluntary upper third. It begins immediately posterior to, and at the level of, the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage in the median plane. This is the level of the C6 vertebra.

Externally, the pharyngo-esophageal junction appears as a constriction produced by the **cricopharyngeal part of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle** (the superior esophageal sphincter) and is the narrowest part of the esophagus. The cervical esophagus inclines slightly to the left as it descends and enters the superior mediastinum via the superior thoracic aperture, where it becomes the thoracic esophagus.

When the esophagus is empty, it is a slit-like lumen. When a food bolus descends in it, the lumen expands, eliciting reflex peristalsis in the inferior two thirds of the esophagus. The cervical esophagus lies between the trachea and the cervical vertebral column (see Figs. 9.42 and 9.44A). It is attached to the trachea by loose connective tissue. The recurrent laryngeal nerves lie in or near the **tracheo-esophageal grooves** between the trachea and esophagus (see Fig. 9.47). On the right of the esophagus is the right lobe of the thyroid gland and the right carotid sheath and its contents.

The esophagus is in contact with the cervical pleura at the root of the neck. On the left is the left lobe of the thyroid gland and the left carotid sheath. The thoracic duct adheres to the left side of the esophagus and lies between the pleura and the esophagus. For details concerning the thoracic and abdominal regions of the esophagus, see Chapter 4, Thorax, and Chapter 5, Abdomen.

Vessels of Cervical Esophagus. The arteries to the cervical esophagus are branches of the inferior thyroid arteries. Each artery gives off ascending and descending branches that anastomose with each other and across the midline. Veins from the cervical esophagus are tributaries of the inferior thyroid veins. Lymphatic vessels of the cervical part of the esophagus drain into the paratracheal lymph nodes and inferior deep cervical lymph nodes (see Fig. 9.51).

Nerves of Cervical Esophagus. The nerve supply to the cervical esophagus is somatic motor and sensory to the upper half and parasympathetic (vagal), sympathetic, and visceral sensory to the lower half. The cervical esophagus receives somatic fibers via branches from the recurrent laryngeal nerves and vasomotor fibers from the cervical sympathetic trunks through the plexus

around the inferior thyroid artery (see Fig. 9.47).

Surface Anatomy of Endocrine and Respiratory Layers of Cervical Viscera

The neck of an infant is short; therefore, the cervical viscera are located more superiorly in infants than in adults. The cervical viscera do not reach their final levels until after the 7th year. The elongation of the neck is accompanied by growth changes in the skin. Consequently, a midline incision in the inferior neck of an infant results in a scar that will lie over the superior part of the sternum as a child.

The U-shaped hyoid bone lies in the anterior part of the neck in the deep angle between the mandible and the thyroid cartilage at the level of the C3 vertebra (see Fig. 9.50). Swallow, and the hyoid will move under your fingers when they are placed at the angle between the chin and anterior neck. The greater horn of one side of the hyoid is palpable only when the greater horn on the opposite side is steadied.

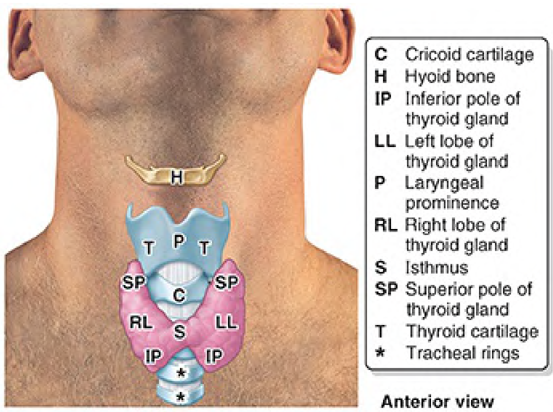


FIGURE 9.50. Surface projection of structures of endocrine and respiratory layers of neck.

The laryngeal prominence is produced by the meeting of the laminae of the thyroid cartilage at an acute angle in the anterior midline. This thyroid angle, most acute in postpubertal males, forms the laryngeal prominence ("Adam's apple"), which is palpable and frequently visible. During palpation of the prominence, it can be felt to recede on swallowing. The vocal folds are at the level of the middle of the laryngeal prominence.

The cricoid cartilage can be felt inferior to the laryngeal prominence at the level of the C6 vertebra. Extend your neck as far as possible and run your finger over the laryngeal prominence. As your finger passes inferiorly from the prominence, feel the cricothyroid ligament, the site for a needle cricothyrotomy or coniotomy (see the Clinical Box "Aspiration of Foreign Bodies and Heimlich Maneuver" in this chapter). After your finger passes over the arch of the cricoid cartilage, note that your fingertip sinks in because the arch of the cartilage projects farther anteriorly than the rings of the trachea. The cricoid cartilage, a key landmark in the neck, indicates the

- level of the C6 vertebra
- site where the carotid artery can be compressed against the transverse process of the C6 vertebra
- junction of the larynx and trachea
- joining of the pharynx and esophagus
- point where the recurrent laryngeal nerve enters the larynx
- site that is approximately 3 cm superior to the isthmus of the thyroid gland

The **first tracheal cartilage** is broader than the others and is palpable (see Fig. 9.33A). The second through fourth cartilages cannot be felt because the thyroid isthmus connecting the right and left lobes of the thyroid covers them.

The thyroid gland may be palpated by anterior or posterior approaches (i.e., standing in front of or behind the person). Place your fingertips anterior (for the isthmus) or immediately lateral (for the lobes) to the trachea and then direct the person to swallow (see Bickley, 2021, for details). Although both approaches to examining the thyroid are performed, the posterior approach usually allows better palpation, but the anterior approach allows observation. A perfectly normal thyroid gland may not be visible or distinctly palpable in some females, except during menstruation or pregnancy. The normal gland has the consistency of muscle tissue.

The isthmus of the thyroid gland lies immediately inferior to the cricoid cartilage; it extends approximately 1.25 cm on either side of the midline. It can usually be felt by placing the fingertips of one hand on the midline below the cricoid arch and then asking the person to swallow. The isthmus will be felt moving up and then down. The apex of each lobe of the thyroid gland extends superiorly to the middle of the lamina of the thyroid cartilage (Fig. 9.50).

The surface anatomy of the posterior aspect of the neck is described in Chapter 2, Back. Key points are the following:

- The spinous processes of the C6 and C7 vertebrae are palpable and visible, especially when the neck is flexed.
- The transverse processes of the C1, C6, and C7 vertebrae are palpable.
- The tubercles of the C1 vertebra can be palpated by deep pressure postero-inferior to the tips of the mastoid processes.

LYMPHATICS OF NECK

Most superficial tissues in the neck are drained by lymphatic vessels that enter the **superficial cervical lymph nodes**, which are located along the course of the EJV. Lymph from these nodes, like lymph from all of the head and neck, drains into **inferior deep cervical lymph nodes** (Figs. 9.51 and 9.52). The specific group of inferior deep cervical nodes involved here descends across the lateral cervical region with the spinal accessory nerve (CN XI).

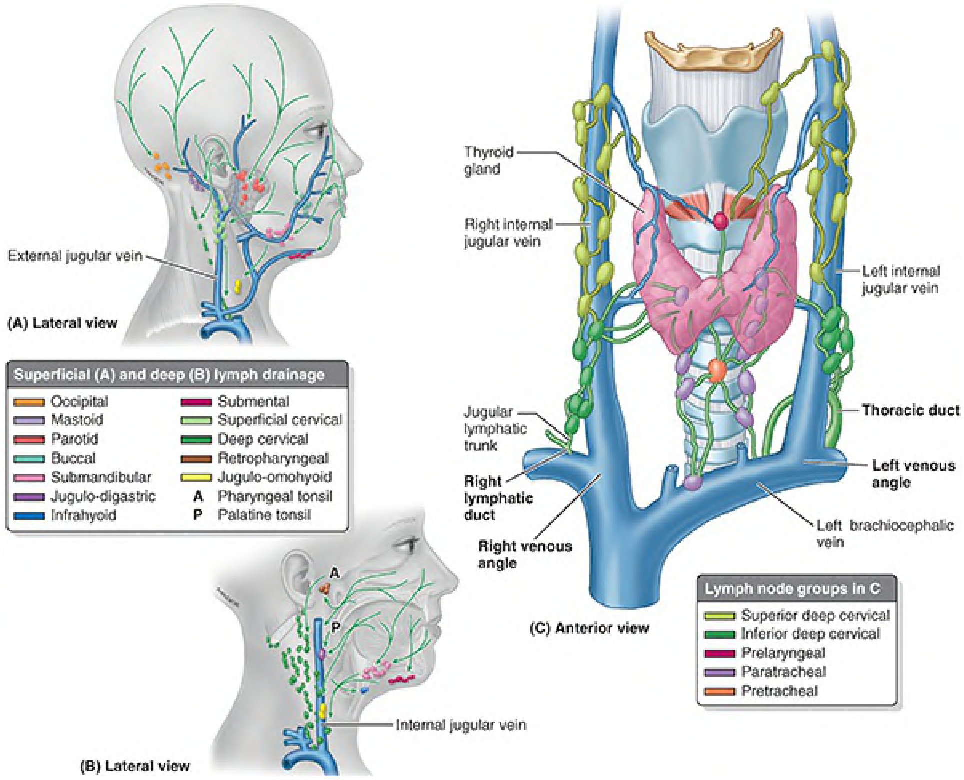


FIGURE 9.51. Lymphatic drainage of head and neck. A. Superficial lymphatic drainage. **B.** Deep lymphatic drainage. **C.** Lymph nodes, lymphatic trunks, and thoracic duct.

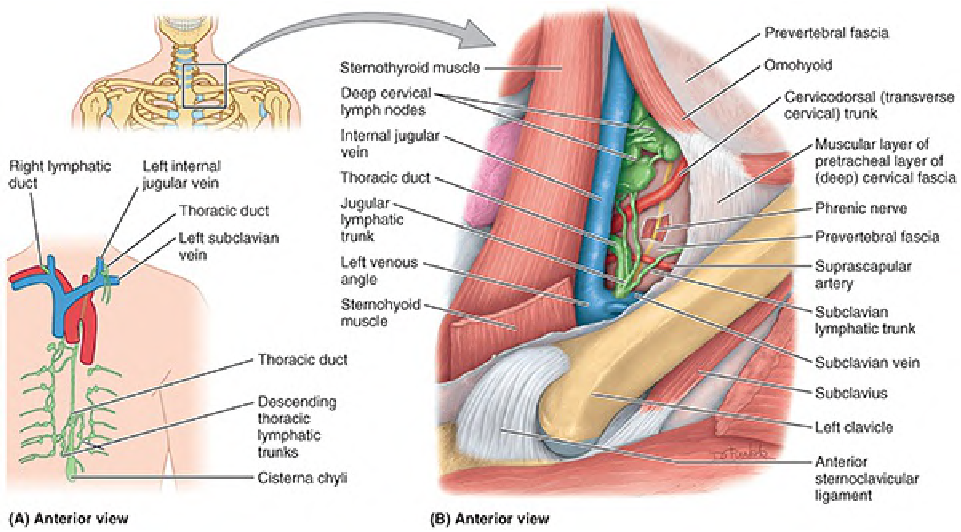


FIGURE 9.52. Lymphatic vessels in root of neck. A. Overview. The course of the thoracic duct and site of the termination of the thoracic and right lymphatic ducts are shown. **B.** The deep cervical lymph nodes and the termination of the thoracic duct at the junction of the subclavian and internal jugular veins (left venous angle) are shown. The cervicodorsal trunk is often called the transverse cervical artery.

Most lymph from the six to eight lymph nodes then drains into the supraclavicular group of nodes, which accompany the cervicodorsal trunk. The main group of deep cervical lymph nodes forms a chain along the IJV, mostly under cover of the SCM. Other deep cervical nodes include the prelaryngeal, pretracheal, paratracheal, and retropharyngeal nodes. Efferent lymphatic vessels

from the deep cervical nodes join to form the **jugular lymphatic trunks**, which usually join the thoracic duct on the left side and enter the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins (right venous angle) directly or via a short right lymphatic duct on the right.

The **thoracic duct** passes superiorly through the superior thoracic aperture along the left border of the esophagus. It arches laterally in the root of the neck, posterior to the carotid sheath and anterior to the sympathetic trunk and vertebral and subclavian arteries (Fig. 9.52B). The thoracic duct enters the left brachiocephalic vein at the junction of the subclavian and IJVs (left venous angle). When the right jugular, subclavian, and bronchomediastinal lymphatic trunks unite to form a right lymphatic duct, it enters the right venous angle as the thoracic duct does on the left (Fig. 9.52A). Often, however, these lymphatic trunks enter the venous system independently in the region of the right venous angle.

CLINICAL BOX

VISCERA AND LYMPHATICS OF NECK

Thyroid Ima Artery

In approximately 10% of people, a small, unpaired thyroid ima artery (L. arteria thyroidea ima) arises from the brachiocephalic trunk (Fig. B9.5); however, it may arise from the arch of the aorta or from the right common carotid, subclavian, or internal thoracic arteries. This small ima artery ascends on the anterior surface of the trachea to the isthmus of the thyroid gland, supplying branches to both structures. The possible presence of this artery must be considered when performing procedures in the midline of the neck inferior to the isthmus, because it is a potential source of bleeding (see the Clinical Box "Tracheostomy").

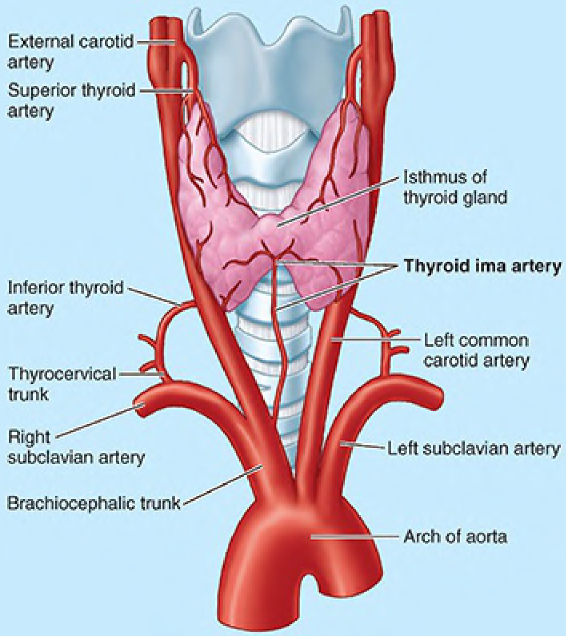


FIGURE B9.5. Thyroid ima artery.

Thyroglossal Duct Cysts

Development of the thyroid gland begins in the floor of the embryonic pharynx at the site indicated by a small pit, the foramen cecum, in the dorsum of the postnatal tongue (see Chapter 8, Head). Subsequently, the developing gland relocates from the tongue into the neck, passing anterior to the hyoid and thyroid cartilages to reach its final position anterolateral to the superior part of the trachea (Moore et al., 2020). During this relocation, the thyroid gland is attached to the foramen cecum by the **thyroglossal duct**. This duct normally disappears, but remnants of epithelium may remain and form a thyroglossal duct cyst at any point along the path of its descent (Fig. B9.6A). The cyst is usually in the neck, close or just inferior to the hyoid, and forms a swelling in the anterior part of the neck. Surgical excision of the cyst may be necessary. Most thyroglossal duct cysts are in the neck, close or just inferior to the body of the hyoid (Fig. B9.6B).

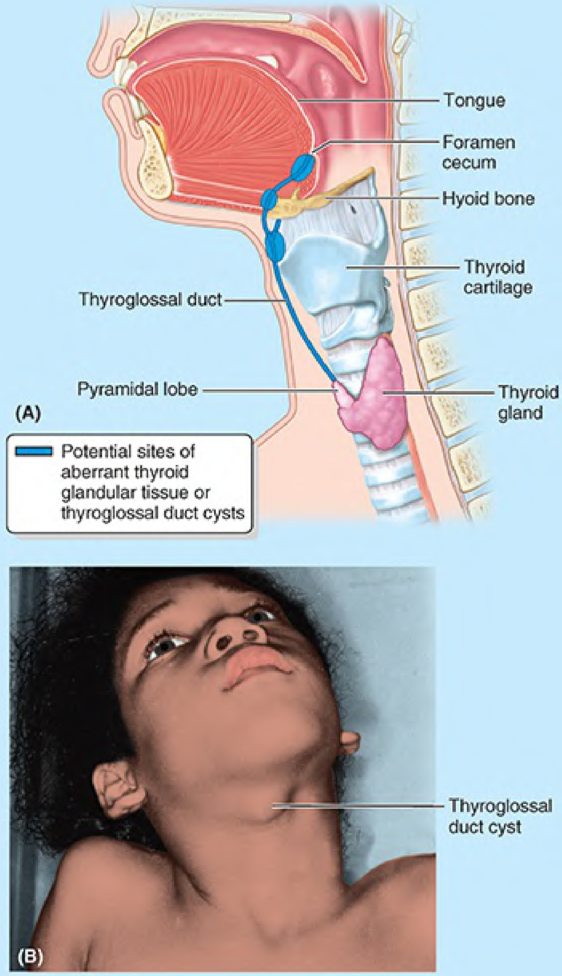


FIGURE B9.6. Thyroglossal duct vestiges. A. Location of vestigial thyroglossal duct and potential sites of cyst development. **B.** Child with thyroglossal duct cyst.

Aberrant Thyroid Gland

Aberrant thyroid glandular tissue may be found anywhere along the path of the embryonic thyroglossal duct. Although uncommon, the thyroglossal duct carrying thyroid-forming tissue at its distal end may fail to relocate to its definitive position in the neck. Aberrant thyroid tissue may be in the root of the tongue, just posterior to the foramen cecum, resulting in a **lingual thyroid gland**, or in the neck, at or just inferior to the hyoid (Fig. B9.7A). Cystic remnants of the thyroglossal duct may be differentiated from an undescended thyroid by radioisotope scanning (Fig. B9.7B). As a rule, an ectopic thyroid gland in the median plane of the neck is the only thyroid tissue present. Occasionally, thyroid glandular tissue is associated with a thyroglossal duct cyst. Therefore, it is important to differentiate between an ectopic thyroid gland and a thyroglossal duct cyst when excising a cyst. Failure to do so may result in a total thyroidectomy, leaving the person permanently dependent on thyroid medication (Leung et al., 1995).

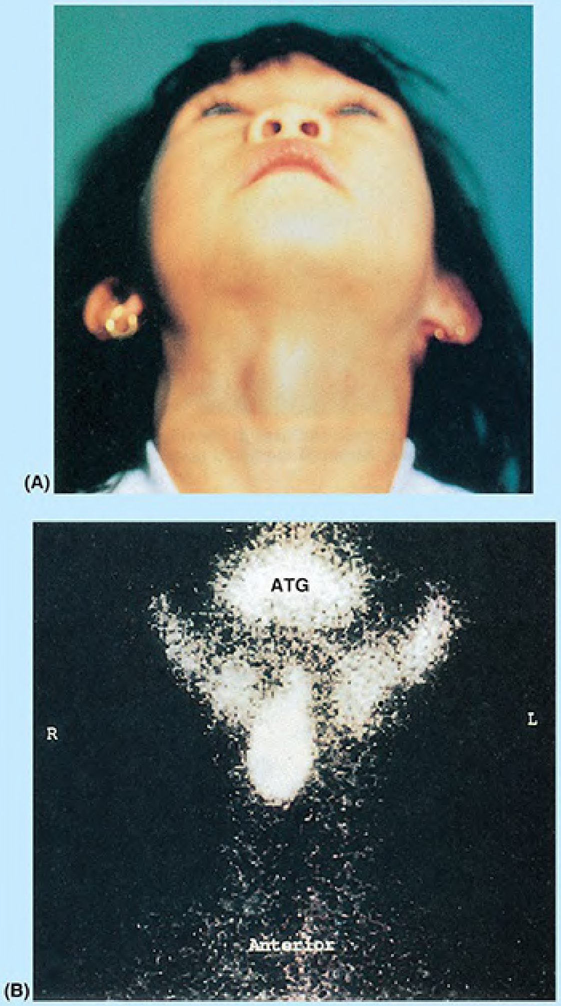


FIGURE B9.7. Aberrant thyroid glandular tissue. A. Aberrant tissue inferior to hyoid bone. **B.** Radioisotope scan demonstrating presence of aberrant thyroid glandular tissue (ATG). Glandular tissue in the typical position is present in irregularly shaped masses making up small tapering lobes and a large isthmus.

Accessory Thyroid Glandular Tissue

Portions of the thyroglossal duct may persist to form thyroid tissue. Accessory thyroid glandular tissue may appear anywhere along the embryonic course of the thyroglossal duct (e.g., in the thymus inferior to the thyroid gland or in the thorax). An accessory thyroid gland may develop in the neck lateral to the thyroid cartilage; it usually lies on the thyrohyoid muscle (see Fig. 9.29). Although the accessory gland may be functional, it is often of insufficient size to maintain normal function if the thyroid gland is removed.

Pyramidal Lobe of Thyroid Gland

Approximately 50% of thyroid glands have a pyramidal lobe. This lobe, which varies in size, extends superiorly from the isthmus of the thyroid gland, usually to

the left of the median plane; the isthmus may be incomplete or absent (Fig. B9.8). A band of connective tissue, often containing accessory thyroid tissue, may continue from the apex of the pyramidal lobe to the hyoid. This narrow lobe and connective tissue band develop from remnants of the epithelium and connective tissue of the thyroglossal duct.

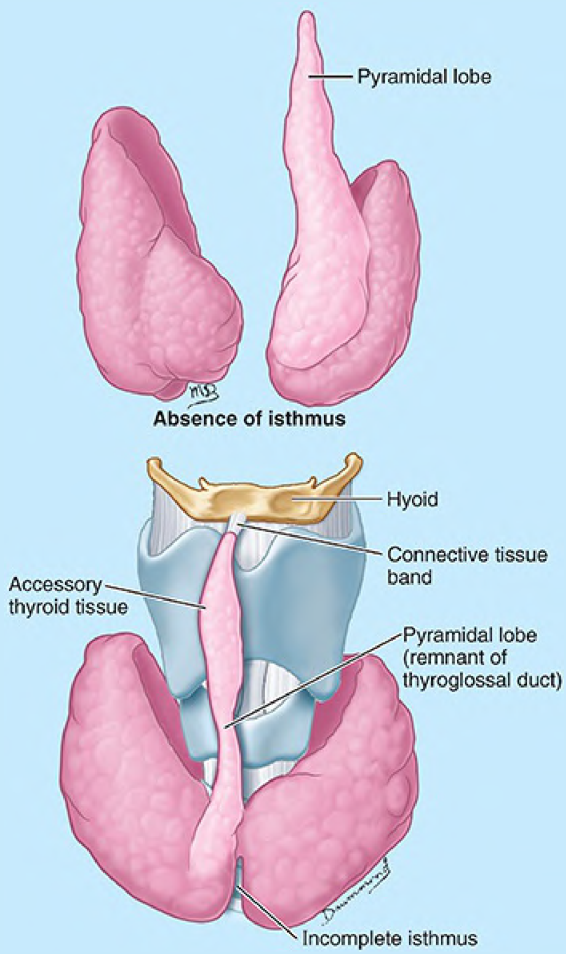
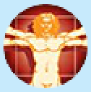


FIGURE B9.8. Pyramidal lobe of thyroid gland.

Enlargement of Thyroid Gland



A nonneoplastic, noninflammatory enlargement of the thyroid gland, other than the variable enlargement that may occur during menstruation and pregnancy, is called a goiter, which results from a lack of iodine. It is common in parts of the world where the soil and water are deficient in iodine. The enlarged gland causes a swelling in the neck that may compress the trachea, esophagus, and recurrent laryngeal nerves (Fig. B9.9). When the gland enlarges, it may do so anteriorly, posteriorly, inferiorly, or laterally. It cannot move superiorly because of the superior attachments of the overlying sternothyroid and sternohyoid muscles (see Table 9.3). Substernal extension of a goiter is also common.

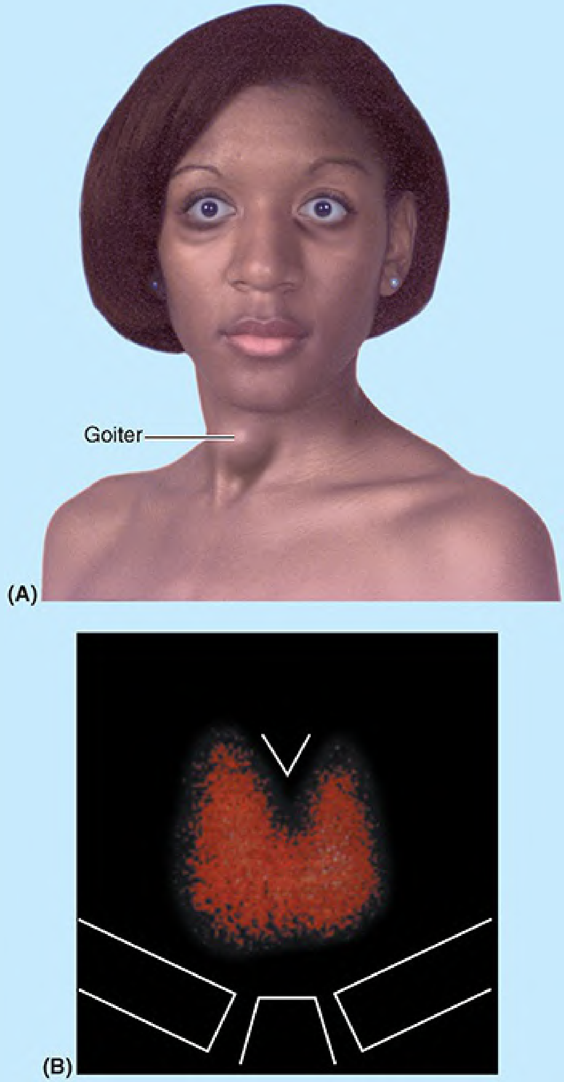


FIGURE B9.9. **Enlarged thyroid. A.** Individual with a goiter. **B.** Scintigram showing a diffuse, enlarged thyroid gland.

Thyroidectomy

Excision of a malignant tumor of the thyroid gland, or other surgical procedure, sometimes necessitates removal of part or all of the gland (hemithyroidectomy or thyroidectomy). In the surgical treatment of hyperthyroidism, the posterior part of each lobe of the enlarged thyroid is usually preserved, a procedure called near-total thyroidectomy, to protect the recurrent and superior laryngeal nerves and to spare the parathyroid glands. Postoperative hemorrhage after thyroid gland surgery may compress the trachea, making breathing difficult. The blood collects within the fibrous capsule of the gland.

Injury to Recurrent Laryngeal Nerves

The risk of injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerves is ever present during neck surgery. the inferior pole of the thyroid gland, the right recurrent laryngeal nerve is intimately related to the inferior thyroid artery and its branches (Fig. B9.10). This nerve may cross anterior or posterior to branches of the artery, or it may pass between them. Because of this close relationship, the inferior thyroid artery is ligated some distance lateral to the thyroid gland, where it is not close to the nerve. Although the danger of injuring the left recurrent laryngeal nerve during surgery is not as great, owing to its more vertical ascent from the superior mediastinum, the artery and nerve are also closely associated near the inferior pole of the thyroid gland (see Fig. 9.28). Hoarseness is the usual sign of unilateral recurrent nerve injury; however, temporary aphonia or disturbance of phonation (voice production) and laryngeal spasm may occur. These signs usually result from bruising the recurrent laryngeal nerves during surgery or from the pressure of accumulated blood and serous exudate after the operation.

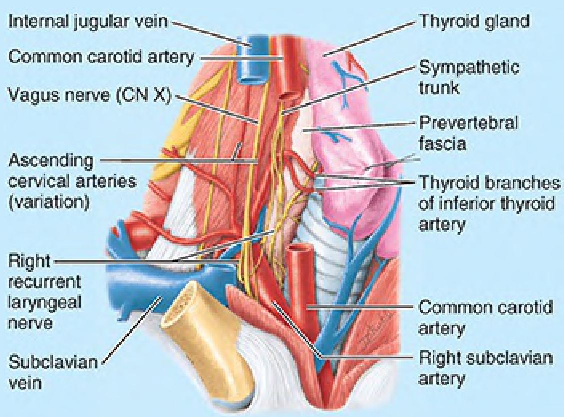


FIGURE B9.10. Anatomy of right recurrent laryngeal nerve relevant to nerve injury.

Inadvertent Removal of Parathyroid Glands

The variable position of the parathyroid glands, especially the inferior ones, puts them in danger of being damaged or removed during surgical procedures in the neck. The superior parathyroid glands may be as far superior as the thyroid cartilage, and the inferior glands may be as far inferior as the superior mediastinum (see Fig. 9.31B). The aberrant sites of these glands are of concern when searching for abnormal parathyroid glands, as may be necessary in treating parathyroid adenoma, an ordinarily benign tumor of epithelial tissue associated with hyperparathyroidism.

Atrophy or inadvertent surgical removal of all the parathyroid glands results in tetany, a severe neurologic syndrome characterized by muscle twitches and cramps. The generalized spasms are caused by decreased serum calcium levels. Because laryngeal and respiratory muscles are involved, failure to respond immediately with appropriate therapy can result in death. To safeguard these glands during thyroidectomy, surgeons may choose to preserve the posterior part of the lobes of the thyroid gland, or if a total thyroid lobectomy is indicated, take the extra care required to preserve the parathyroids and nerves.

In cases in which it is necessary to remove the whole thyroid gland (e.g., because of malignant disease), the parathyroid glands are carefully isolated with their blood vessels intact before removal of the thyroid gland. Parathyroid tissue may also be transplanted, usually to the arm, so it will not be damaged by subsequent surgery or radiation therapy.

Fractures of Laryngeal Skeleton

Laryngeal fractures may result from blows received in sports, such as kickboxing and hockey, or from compression by a shoulder strap during an automobile accident. Because of the frequency of this type of injury, most goalies in ice hockey and catchers in baseball have protective guards hanging from their masks that cover their larynges. Laryngeal fractures produce submucous hemorrhage and edema, respiratory obstruction, hoarseness, and sometimes a temporary inability to speak.

Laryngoscopy

Laryngoscopy is the procedure used to examine the interior of the larynx. The larynx may be examined visually by indirect laryngoscopy using a laryngeal mirror (Fig. B9.11A). The anterior part of the tongue is gently pulled from the oral cavity to minimize the extent to which the posterior part of the tongue covers the epiglottis and laryngeal inlet. Because the rima vestibuli is larger than the rima glottidis during normal respiration, the vestibular folds and vocal folds are visible during a laryngoscopic examination (Fig. B9.11B). The larynx can also be viewed by direct laryngoscopy, using a tubular endoscopic instrument, a laryngoscope. A laryngoscope is a tube or flexible fiber optic endoscope equipped with electrical lighting for examining or operating on the interior of the larynx through the mouth. The vestibular folds normally appear pink, whereas the vocal folds are usually pearly white.

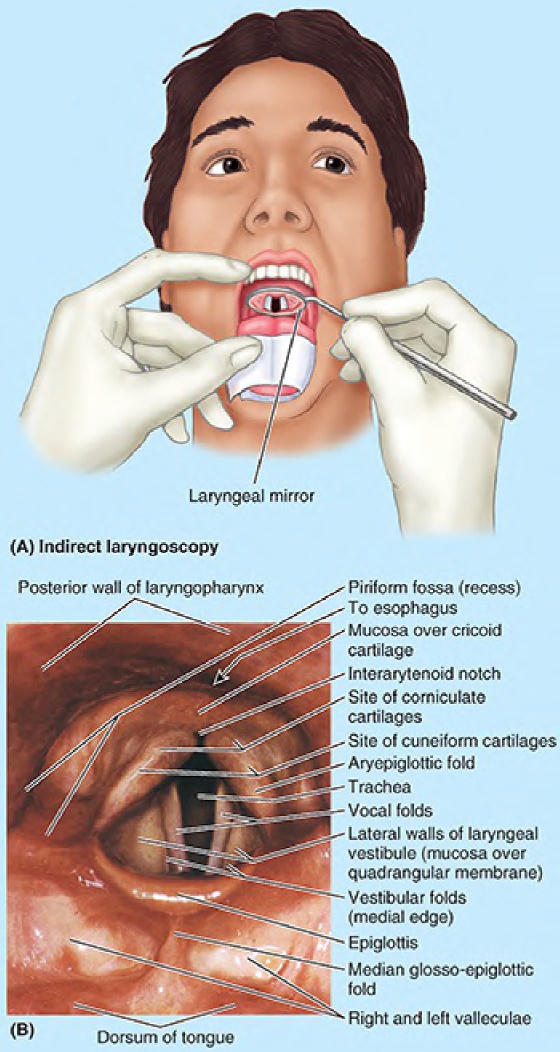


FIGURE B9.11. **Laryngoscopy.**

Valsalva Maneuver

The sphincteric actions of the vestibular and vocal folds are important during the Valsalva maneuver, any forced expiratory effort against a closed airway, such as a cough, sneeze, or strain during a bowel movement or weight lifting. The vestibular and vocal folds abduct widely as the lungs inflate during deep inspiration. In the Valsalva maneuver, both the vestibular and vocal folds are tightly adducted at the end of deep inspiration. The anterolateral abdominal muscles then contract strongly to increase the intrathoracic and intra-abdominal pressures. The relaxed diaphragm passively transmits the increased abdominopelvic pressure to the thoracic cavity. Because high intrathoracic pressure impedes venous return to the right atrium, the Valsalva maneuver is used to study cardiovascular effects of raised peripheral venous pressure and decreased cardiac filling and cardiac output.

Aspiration of Foreign Bodies and Heimlich Maneuver

A foreign object, such as a piece of steak, may accidentally aspirate (be inhaled into the airways) through the laryngeal inlet into the vestibule of the larynx, where it becomes trapped superior to the vestibular folds. When a foreign object enters the vestibule of the larynx, the laryngeal muscles go into spasm, tensing the vocal folds. The rima glottidis closes, and no air enters the trachea. The resulting blockage may completely seal off the larynx (laryngeal obstruction) and choke the person, leaving the individual speechless because the larynx is blocked. Asphyxiation occurs, and the person will die in approximately 5 minutes from lack of oxygen if the obstruction is not removed.

A person who is choking will cough in an attempt to dislodge the object. The vestibular folds are part of the protective mechanism that closes the larynx. The mucosa of the vestibule is sensitive to foreign objects such as food. When an object passes through the laryngeal inlet and contacts the vestibular epithelium, violent coughing occurs. Emergency therapy must be given to open the airway. The procedure used depends on the condition of the person, the facilities available, and the experience of the person giving first aid.

Because the lungs still contain air, sudden compression of the abdomen (Heimlich maneuver) causes the diaphragm to elevate and compress the lungs, expelling air from the trachea into the larynx. This maneuver usually dislodges the food or other material from the larynx. To perform the Heimlich maneuver, the person giving first aid uses subdiaphragmatic abdominal thrusts to expel the foreign object from the larynx. First, the closed fist, with the base of the palm facing inward, is placed on the victim’s abdomen between the umbilicus and the xiphoid process of the sternum (Fig. B9.12). The fist is grasped by the other hand and forcefully thrust inward and superiorly, forcing the diaphragm superiorly. This action forces air from the lungs and creates an artificial cough that usually expels the foreign object. Several abdominal thrusts may be necessary to remove the obstruction in the larynx.

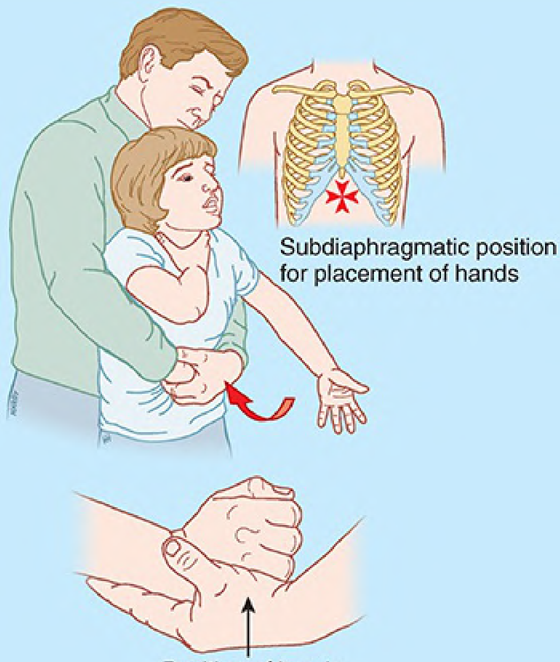


FIGURE B9.12. Heimlich maneuver.

Cricothyrotomy

In extreme emergency cases (e.g., severe airway obstruction, major facial or cervical trauma or angio-edema) where intubation isn't possible, experienced persons (e.g., physicians or EMT [Emergency Medical Technician] personnel) insert a large-bore needle through the cricothyroid membrane/ligament (see Fig. 9.29) (needle cricothyrotomy, or "coniotomy") to permit fast entry of air. Later, a surgical cricothyrotomy (inferior laryngotomy) may be performed, which involves an incision through the skin and cricothyroid membrane and insertion of a small tracheostomy tube into the trachea (Fig. B9.13). Cricothyrotomy is a more expedient procedure than tracheostomy and manipulation of the cervical spine usually unnecessary. If long-term intubation is anticipated, the cricothyrotomy may be replaced by a formal tracheostomy to avoid the complication of cricoid stenosis.

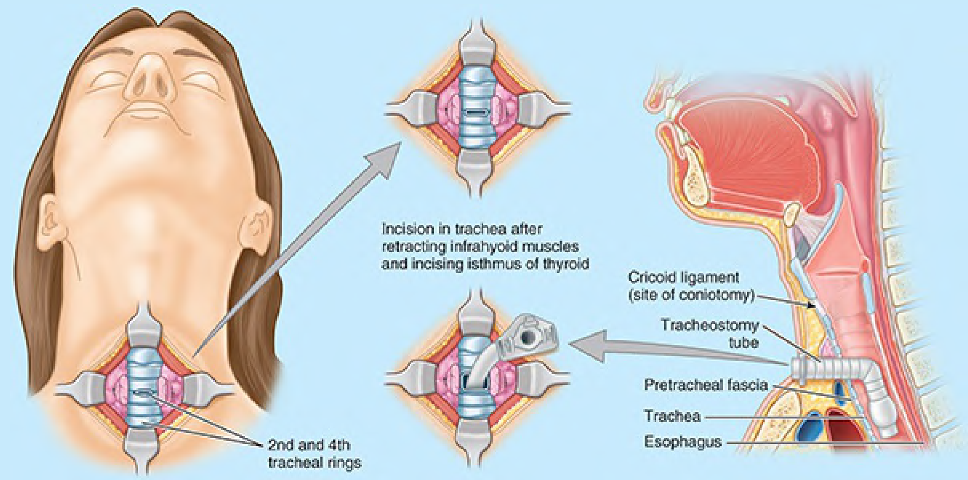


FIGURE B9.13. Tracheostomy.

Tracheostomy

A transverse incision through the skin of the neck and anterior wall of the trachea, tracheostomy, establishes an airway in patients with upper airway obstruction or respiratory failure (Fig. B9.13). The infrahyoid muscles are retracted laterally, and the isthmus of the thyroid gland is either divided or retracted superiorly. An opening is made in the trachea between the first and second tracheal rings or through the second through fourth rings. A tracheostomy tube is then inserted into the trachea and secured. To avoid complications during a tracheostomy, the following anatomical relationships are important:

- The inferior thyroid veins arise from a venous plexus on the thyroid gland and descend anterior to the trachea.
- A small thyroid ima artery is present in approximately 10% of people; it ascends from the brachiocephalic trunk or the arch of the aorta to the isthmus of the thyroid gland.
- The left brachiocephalic vein, jugular venous arch, and pleurae may be encountered, particularly in infants and children.
- The thymus covers the inferior part of the trachea in infants and children.
- The trachea is small, mobile, and soft in infants, making it easy to cut through its posterior wall and damage the esophagus.

Injury to Laryngeal Nerves

Because the inferior laryngeal nerve, the continuation of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, innervates the muscles moving the vocal fold, paralysis of the vocal fold results when injury to laryngeal nerves occurs. The voice is poor initially because the paralyzed vocal fold cannot adduct to meet the normal vocal fold. Within weeks, the contralateral fold crosses the midline when its muscles act to compensate. When bilateral

paralysis of the vocal folds occurs, the voice is almost absent because the vocal folds are motionless in a position that is slightly narrower than the usually neutral respiratory position. They cannot be adducted for phonation, nor can they be abducted for increased respiration, resulting in stridor (high-pitched, noisy respiration) often accompanied by anxiety similar to that accompanying an asthmatic episode.

In progressive lesions of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, abduction of the vocal ligaments is lost before adduction; conversely, during recovery, adduction returns before abduction. Hoarseness is the common symptom of serious disorders of the larynx, such as carcinoma of the vocal folds.

Paralysis of the superior laryngeal nerve causes anesthesia of the superior laryngeal mucosa. As a result, the protective mechanism designed to keep foreign bodies out of the larynx is inactive, and foreign bodies can easily enter the larynx. Injury to the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve results in a voice that is monotonous in character because the paralyzed cricothyroid muscle supplied by it is unable to vary the length and tension of the vocal fold (see Table 9.5). Such an injury may be unnoticed in individuals who do not usually employ a wide range of tone in their speech, but it may be critical to singers or public speakers.

To avoid injury to the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve (e.g., during thyroidectomy), the superior thyroid artery is ligated and sectioned more superior to the gland, where it is not as closely related to the nerve, or do the reverse, and ligate and divide the artery right on the gland to avoid the nerve. Because an enlarged thyroid gland (goiter) may itself cause impaired innervation of the larynx by compressing the laryngeal nerves, the vocal folds are examined by laryngoscopy before an operation in this area. In this way, damage to the larynx or its nerves resulting from a surgical mishap may be distinguished from a pre-existing injury resulting from nerve compression.

Superior Laryngeal Nerve Block

A superior laryngeal nerve block is often administered with endotracheal intubation in the conscious patient. This technique is used for perioral endoscopy, transesophageal echocardiography, and laryngeal and esophageal instrumentation. The needle is inserted midway between the thyroid cartilage and the hyoid, 1–5 cm anterior to the greater horn of the hyoid. The needle passes through the thyrohyoid membrane and the anesthetic agent bathes the internal laryngeal nerve, the larger terminal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve. Anesthesia of the laryngeal mucosa occurs superior to the vocal folds and includes the superior surface of these folds.

Cancer of Larynx

The incidence of cancer of the larynx is high in individuals who smoke cigarettes or chew tobacco. Most persons present with persistent hoarseness, often associated

with otalgia (earache) and dysphagia (difficulty in swallowing). Enlarged pretracheal or paratracheal lymph nodes may indicate the presence of laryngeal cancer. Laryngectomy (partial or complete removal of the larynx) may be performed in severe cases of cancer. Vocal rehabilitation can be accomplished by an electrolarynx, a tracheo-esophageal prosthesis, or esophageal speech (regurgitation of ingested air). If the cancer is detected at an early stage, less radical surgical procedures—often combined with radiation therapy—may be possible.

Age Changes in Larynx

The larynx grows steadily until approximately 3 years of age, after which little growth occurs until approximately 12 years of age. Before puberty, no major laryngeal sex differences exist. Owing to the presence of testosterone at puberty in males, the walls of the larynx strengthen, and the laryngeal cavity enlarges. There is only a slight increase in the size of the larynx of most girls. In boys, all of the laryngeal cartilages enlarge and the laryngeal prominence becomes conspicuous in most males. The anteroposterior diameter of the rima glottidis almost doubles its prepubescent measurement in males, the vocal folds lengthening and thickening proportionately and abruptly. This growth accounts for the voice changes that occur in males: The pitch typically becomes an octave lower.

The pitch of the voice of eunuchs, males whose testes have not developed (agonadal males) or have been surgically removed (e.g., cancerous testes), does not become lower without administration of male hormones. The thyroid, cricoid, and most of the arytenoid cartilages often ossify as age advances, commencing at approximately 25 years of age in the thyroid cartilage. By 65 years of age, the cartilages are frequently visible in radiographs.

Foreign Bodies in Laryngopharynx

When food passes through the laryngopharynx during swallowing, some of it enters the piriform fossae. Foreign bodies (e.g., a chicken bone or fishbone) entering the pharynx may lodge in this recess. If the object is sharp, it may pierce the mucous membrane and injure the internal laryngeal nerve.

The superior laryngeal nerve and its internal laryngeal branch are also vulnerable to injury during removal of the object if the instrument used to remove the foreign body accidentally pierces the mucous membrane. Injury to these nerves may result in anesthesia of the laryngeal mucous membrane as far inferiorly as the vocal folds. Young children swallow a variety of objects, most of which reach the stomach and pass through the alimentary tract without difficulty. In some cases, the foreign body stops at the inferior end of the laryngopharynx, its narrowest part. A medical image such as a radiograph or a CT scan will reveal the presence of a radiopaque foreign body. Foreign bodies in the pharynx are often removed under direct vision through a pharyngoscope.

Tonsillectomy

Tonsillectomy (removal of the tonsils) is performed by dissecting the palatine tonsil from the tonsillar bed or by a guillotine or snare operation. Each procedure involves removal of the tonsil and surrounding connective tissue (Fig. B9.14). Because of the rich blood supply of the tonsil, bleeding commonly arises from the large external palatine vein (Fig. 9.45B) or, less commonly, from the tonsillar artery or other arterial twigs. The glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) accompanies the tonsillar artery on the lateral wall of the pharynx. Because this wall is thin, the nerve is vulnerable to injury. The internal carotid artery is especially vulnerable when it is tortuous and lies directly lateral to the tonsil (see Fig. 9.47B).

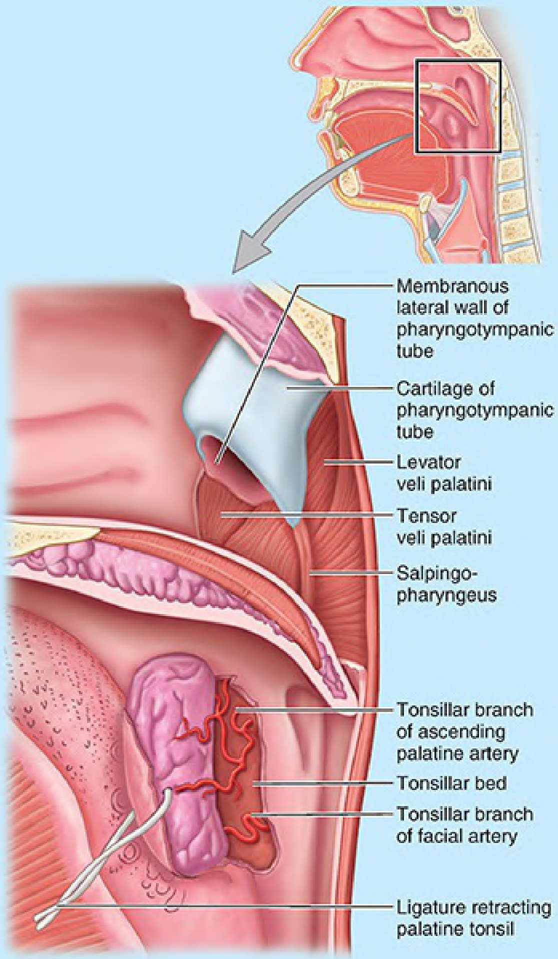


FIGURE B9.14. Tonsillectomy.

Adenoiditis

Inflammation of the pharyngeal tonsils (adenoids) (see Fig. 9.44) is called adenoiditis, which can obstruct the passage of air from the nasal cavities through the choanae into the nasopharynx, making mouth breathing necessary. Infection from

the enlarged pharyngeal tonsils may spread to the tubal tonsils, causing swelling and closure of the pharyngotympanic tubes. Impairment of hearing may result from nasal obstruction and blockage of the pharyngotympanic tubes. Infection spreading from the nasopharynx to the middle ear causes otitis media (middle ear infection), which may produce temporary or permanent hearing loss. Sometimes the palatine and pharyngeal tonsils are removed during the same operation (tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy [T&A]).

Branchial Fistula

A branchial fistula is an abnormal canal that opens internally into the tonsillar sinus (fossa) and externally on the side of the neck (Fig. B9.15A). Saliva may drip from the fistula, which may become infected. This uncommon cervical canal results from persistence of remnants of the 2nd pharyngeal pouch and 2nd pharyngeal groove (Moore et al., 2020). The fistula ascends from its cervical opening, usually along the anterior border of the SCM in the inferior third of the neck. It first passes through the subcutaneous tissue, platysma, and fascia of the neck to enter the carotid sheath. It then passes between the internal and the external carotid arteries on its way to its opening in the tonsillar sinus. Its course can be demonstrated by radiography (Fig. B9.15B).

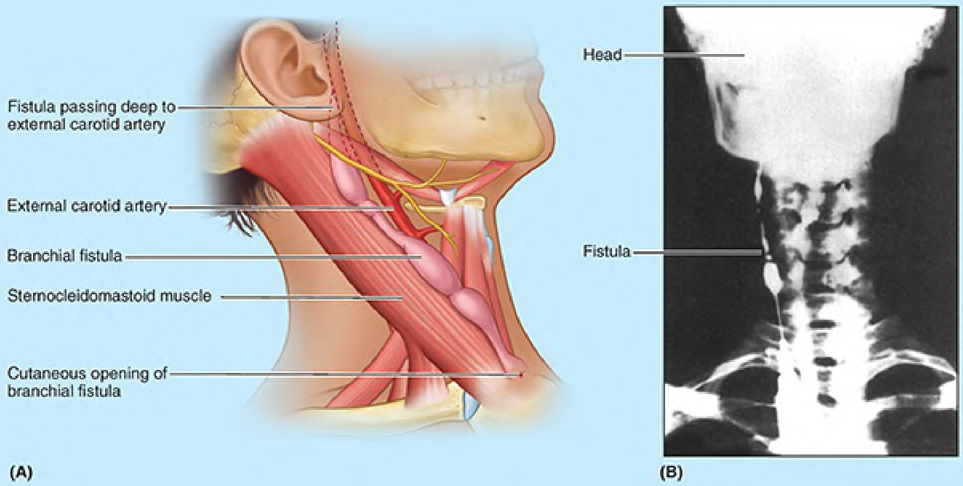


FIGURE B9.15. **Branchial fistula.**

Branchial Sinuses and Cysts

When the embryonic cervical sinus fails to disappear, it may retain its connection with the lateral surface of the neck by a branchial sinus, a narrow canal. The opening of the sinus may be anywhere along the anterior border of the SCM (Fig. B9.16). If a remnant of the cervical sinus is not connected with the surface, it may form a branchial cyst (lateral cervical cyst), usually located just inferior to the angle of the mandible. Although branchial cysts may be present in infants and children, they may not enlarge and become visible until early adulthood. The sinus and cyst are usually excised. The cyst

passes close to the hypoglossal, glossopharyngeal, and spinal accessory nerves (see Fig. 9.47A). Therefore, care must be taken to avoid damage to these nerves during removal of the cyst.

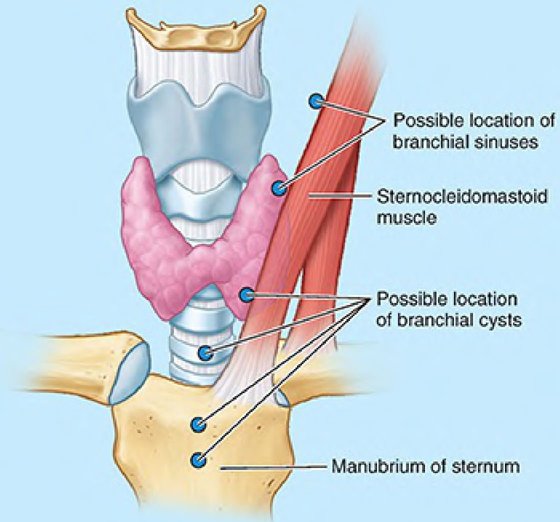


FIGURE B9.16. Branchial sinuses.

Esophageal Injuries

Esophageal injuries are the rarest kinds of penetrating neck trauma; however, they are life-threatening and cause the most complications after a surgical procedure or other treatment. Most esophageal injuries are iatrogenic (physician caused; 50–75%), occurring in conjunction with endoscopy, esophageal dilation, procedures involving strictures caused by radiation or tumor, and airway injuries. The latter occur because the airway lies anterior to the esophagus and provides some protection to it. Esophageal injuries are often occult (hidden), which makes the injury difficult to detect, especially if it is isolated. Unrecognized esophageal perforation is fatal in nearly all nonoperative cases (e.g., from vomiting—Boerhaave syndrome), in approximately 20% of iatrogenic occurrences, and in 7% of trauma perforations (Ezenkwele & Long, 2016).

Tracheo-Esophageal Fistula

The most common birth defect of the esophagus is tracheo-esophageal fistula (TEF). Usually, it is combined with some form of esophageal atresia. In the most common type of TEF (approximately 90% of cases), the superior part of the esophagus ends in a blind pouch and the inferior part communicates with the trachea (Fig. B9.17A). In these cases, the pouch fills with mucus, which the infant aspirates. In some cases, the superior esophagus communicates with the trachea and the inferior esophagus joins the stomach (Fig. B9.17C), but sometimes it does not, producing TEF with esophageal atresia (Fig. B9.17B). TEFs result from failures in partitioning of the esophagus and trachea (Moore et

al., 2020).

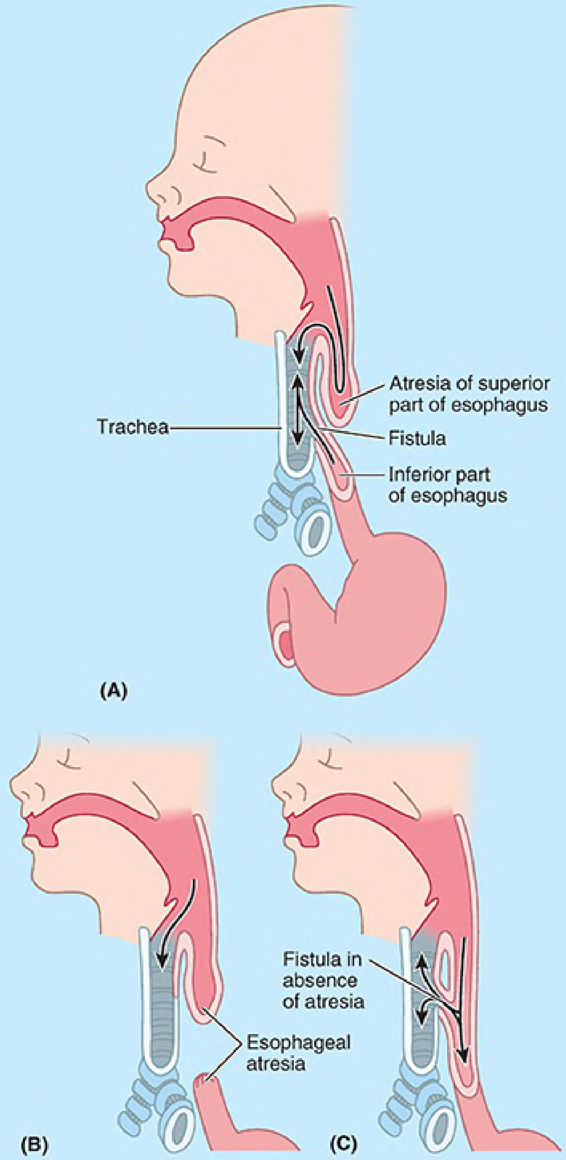


FIGURE B9.17. **Tracheo-esophageal fistulae (TEF).**

Esophageal Cancer

The most common presenting complaint of esophageal cancer is dysphagia (difficulty in swallowing), which is not usually recognized until the lumen is reduced by 30–50%. Esophagoscopy is a common diagnostic tool for observing these cancers. Painful swallowing in some patients suggests extension of the tumor to peri-esophageal tissues. Enlargement of the inferior deep cervical lymph nodes also suggests esophageal cancer. Compression of the recurrent laryngeal nerves by an esophageal tumor produces hoarseness.

Zones of Penetrating Neck Trauma

Three zones are common clinical guides to the seriousness of neck trauma (Fig. B9.18). The zones give physicians an understanding of the structures that are at risk with penetrating neck injuries:

- **Zone I**: includes the root of the neck and extends from the clavicles and the manubrium to the level of the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage. Structures at risk are the cervical pleurae, apices of lungs, thyroid and parathyroid glands, trachea, esophagus, common carotid arteries, jugular veins, and the cervical region of the vertebral column.
- **Zone II**: extends from the cricoid cartilage to the level of the angles of the mandible. Structures at risk are the superior poles of the thyroid gland, thyroid and cricoid cartilages, larynx, laryngopharynx, carotid arteries, jugular veins, esophagus, and cervical region of the vertebral column.
- **Zone III**: occurs at the angles of the mandibles superiorly. Structures at risk are the salivary glands, oral and nasal cavities, oropharynx, and nasopharynx.

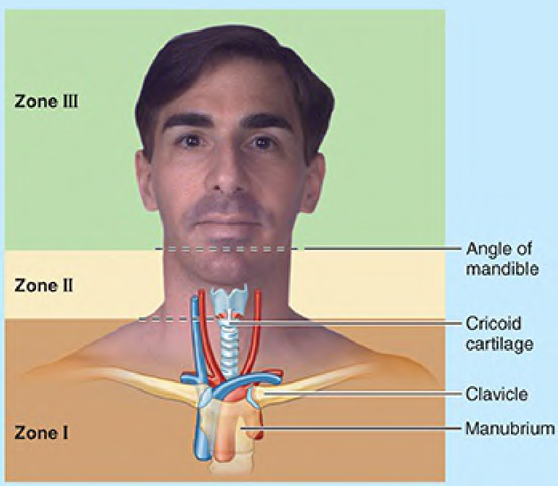


FIGURE B9.18. Zones of structural risk from penetrating neck trauma.

Injuries in zones I and III obstruct the airway and have the greatest risk for **morbidity** (complications following surgical procedures and other treatments) and **mortality** (a fatal outcome) because the injured structures are difficult to visualize and repair and the vascular damage is difficult to control. Injuries in zone II are most common; however, morbidity and mortality are lower because physicians can control vascular damage by direct pressure and surgeons can visualize and treat injured structures more easily than they can in the other zones.

Radical Neck Dissections

Radical neck dissections are performed when cancer invades the cervical lymphatics. During the procedure, the deep cervical lymph nodes and tissues around

them are removed as completely as possible. The major arteries, brachial plexus, CN X, and phrenic nerve are preserved; however, most cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus are removed. The aim of the dissection is to remove all tissue that bears lymph nodes in one piece. The deep cervical lymph nodes, particularly those located along the cervicodorsal trunk, may be involved in the spread of cancer from the thorax and abdomen. Because their enlargement may give the first clue to cancer in these regions, they are often referred to as the cervical sentinel lymph nodes.

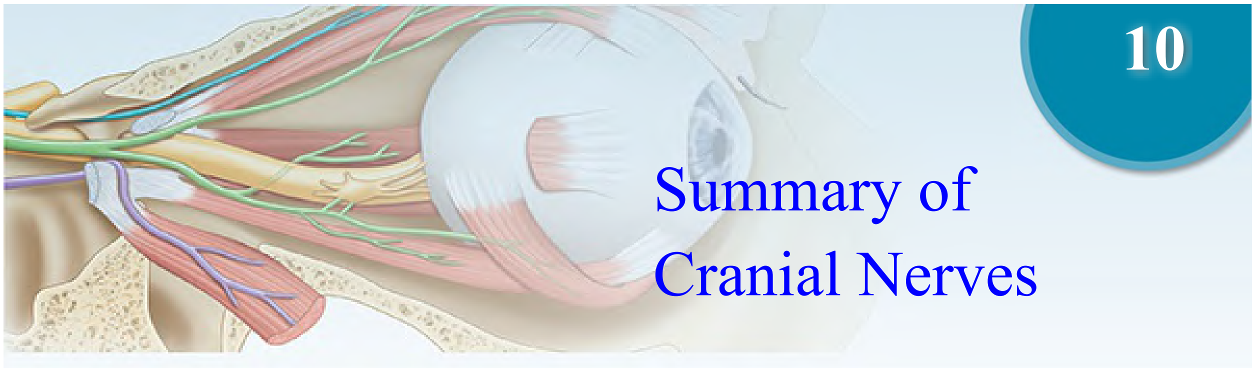
The Bottom Line: Viscera of Neck

Endocrine layer of cervical viscera: Despite different developmental origins, the endocrine thyroid and parathyroid glands are intimately related. ■ Typically, the thyroid gland is roughly H-shaped, with right and left lobes linked by a thin central isthmus. ■ The thyroid gland wraps around the anterior and lateral aspects of the trachea at the level of the second to fourth tracheal rings; the isthmus lies anterior to the second and third rings. ■ Typically, there are four parathyroid glands (two superior and two inferior) within the capsule of the thyroid gland or in the gland itself. ■ An abundant blood supply, essential to the endocrine function, is provided to the thyroid gland by a four-way anastomosis between the right and left superior and inferior thyroid arteries, with the latter usually providing branches to the parathyroid glands. ■ Superior thyroid veins accompany the arteries of the same name, draining the area they supply. ■ Unaccompanied middle and inferior thyroid veins drain the inferior part of the thyroid gland: The superior and middle thyroid veins drain to the IJV, whereas the usually singular inferior thyroid vein enters the left brachiocephalic vein. ■ Vasomotor nerves course along the arteries, but the glands are regulated hormonally rather than by secretomotor nerve fibers. ■ Lymphatic vessels pass directly to the deep cervical lymph nodes or via nodes associated with the larynx and trachea.

Respiratory layer of cervical viscera: The larynx is the superior end of the lower respiratory tract, modified to regulate entry into or close off the lower respiratory tract. ■ The larynx also modifies the exit of air from the tract to produce tone for vocalization. ■ With the diaphragm, it regulates intra-abdominal pressure through air retention and the force and suddenness by which air exits the tract (e.g., exhaling vs. coughing or sneezing). ■ The larynx consists of a cartilaginous articulating skeleton joined by ligaments, membranes, and muscles, lined with mucous membrane. ■ All the laryngeal muscles except one (posterior crico-arytenoid) participate in closure of the rima glottidis. ■ Active opening of the rima is required only during deep inspiration. ■ Otherwise, opening occurs

passively by the tidal flow of air, with the other muscles controlling the amount and nature of resistance provided at the rima glottidis to produce tone and control its pitch. ■ In addition to intrinsically produced movements between its components, extrinsic musculature (hyoid muscles) can move the entire larynx for swallowing and to modify pitch further. ■ The internal laryngeal nerve, a branch of the superior laryngeal nerve, is the sensory nerve of the larynx. ■ The recurrent laryngeal nerve (via its terminal branch, the inferior laryngeal nerve) is the motor nerve, which supplies all muscles of the larynx, with one exception. ■ The external laryngeal nerve, a smaller branch of the superior laryngeal nerve, supplies the cricothyroid muscle. ■ The trachea is the median fibrocartilaginous tube extending between the cricoid cartilage at the C6 vertebral level and its bifurcation into main bronchi at the T4–T5 IV disc level (level of sternal angle).

Alimentary layer of cervical viscera: Although generally considered part of the alimentary tract, the pharynx is shared with the respiratory system. ■ The superior, noncollapsible nasopharynx is exclusively respiratory, and the air and food pathways cross within the oropharynx and laryngopharynx. ■ The contractile pharynx is unique within the alimentary tract in being constructed of voluntary muscle with the circular layer (pharyngeal constrictors) external to longitudinal muscle, the stylopharyngeus, palatopharyngeus, and salpingopharyngeus. ■ The flat posterior wall of the pharynx, abutting the musculoskeletal neck at the retropharyngeal space, is without openings; however, its anterior wall includes openings to the nose, mouth, and larynx. These openings determine the three segments of the pharynx. ■ The soft palate serves as a flap valve regulating access to or from the nasopharynx and oropharynx, whereas the larynx is the "valve" ultimately separating food and air before they enter the esophagus and trachea, respectively. ■ The superior two openings of the pharynx, which connect to the external environment, are encircled by a ring of lymphoid (tonsillar) tissue. ■ Gaps in the submucosal lateral wall, between attachments of the pharyngeal constrictor muscles, permit the passage of slip-like longitudinal muscles and neurovascular elements. ■ Innervation of the pharynx is from the pharyngeal nerve plexus, with the vagus providing the motor fibers and the glossopharyngeal providing sensory fibers. ■ At the level of the cricoid cartilage (C6 vertebral level), a relatively abrupt change is made to the muscular pattern more typical of the alimentary tract. ■ The cricopharyngeal part of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor, the most inferior part of the external circular layer, forms the superior esophageal sphincter. ■ Immediately inferior, as the outer muscular layer becomes longitudinal, the esophagus begins. ■ Also at approximately this point, sensory and motor innervation is transferred to the recurrent laryngeal nerves. ■ The cervical esophagus is composed of voluntary muscle.



10

Summary of Cranial Nerves

The regional aspects of the cranial nerves are described in the preceding chapters, especially those for the head and neck. This chapter summarizes all of the cranial nerves, largely in figures and tables. Figures 10.2, 10.3, 10.4 and Tables 10.1 and 10.2 summarize specific cranial nerves. Figure 10.5 and Table 10.3 summarize the cranial parasympathetic ganglia, their location, sympathetic and parasympathetic roots, and main distribution.

OVERVIEW

Like spinal nerves, **cranial nerves** are bundles of sensory or motor fibers that innervate muscles or glands, carry impulses from sensory receptors, or have a combination of motor and sensory fibers. They are called cranial nerves because they emerge from the cranial cavity via foramina or fissures in the cranium (Fig. 10.1) and are covered by tubular sheaths derived from the cranial meninges. There are 12 pairs of cranial nerves, which are numbered I–XII, from rostral to caudal (Figs. 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, and 10.4). Their names reflect their general distribution or function.

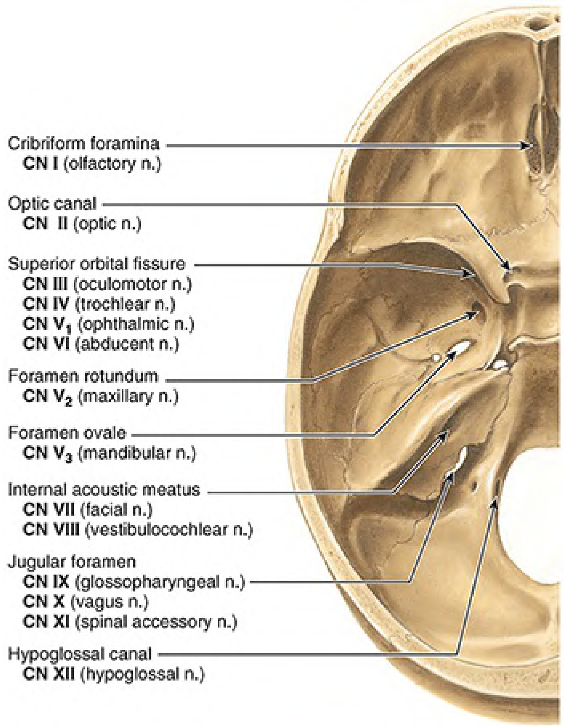


FIGURE 10.1. Internal cranial base and openings providing passage for cranial nerves.

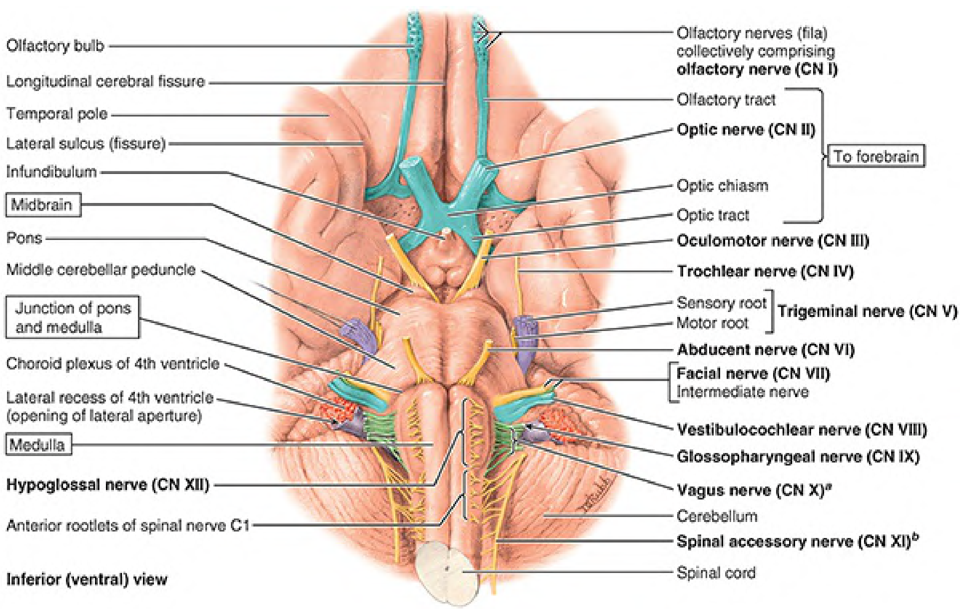


FIGURE 10.2. Superficial origins of cranial nerves from brain and spinal cord. Note CN IV arises from the posterior aspect of the midbrain. [a]The traditional “cranial root of the accessory nerve” is considered here as part of the vagus nerve. [b]The spinal accessory nerve as listed here refers to only the traditional “spinal root of the accessory nerve.”

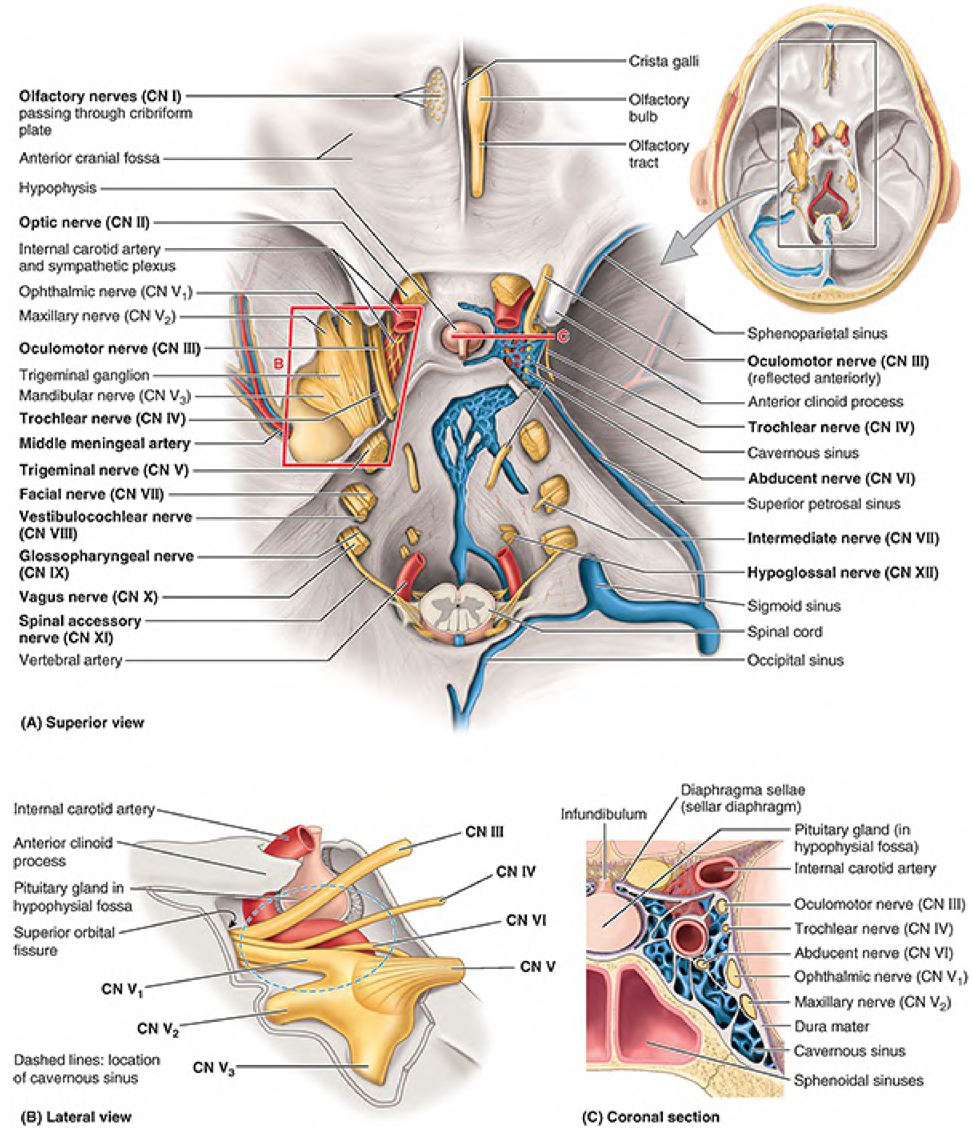


FIGURE 10.3. Cranial nerves in relation to internal aspect of cranial base and dural formations. A. Overview. The tentorium cerebelli has been removed, and the venous sinuses have been opened on the right side. The dural roof of the trigeminal cave has been removed on the left side, and CN V_1, CN III, and CN IV have been dissected from the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus. **B.** Structures related to cavernous sinus. Lateral view of area outlined in red in part **A**. Dura mater has been removed opening the trigeminal cave, cavernous sinus, and hypophysial fossa, demonstrating contained cranial nerves, internal carotid artery, and hypophysis. **C.** Coronal section of cavernous sinus at plane indicated by line C in part **A**.

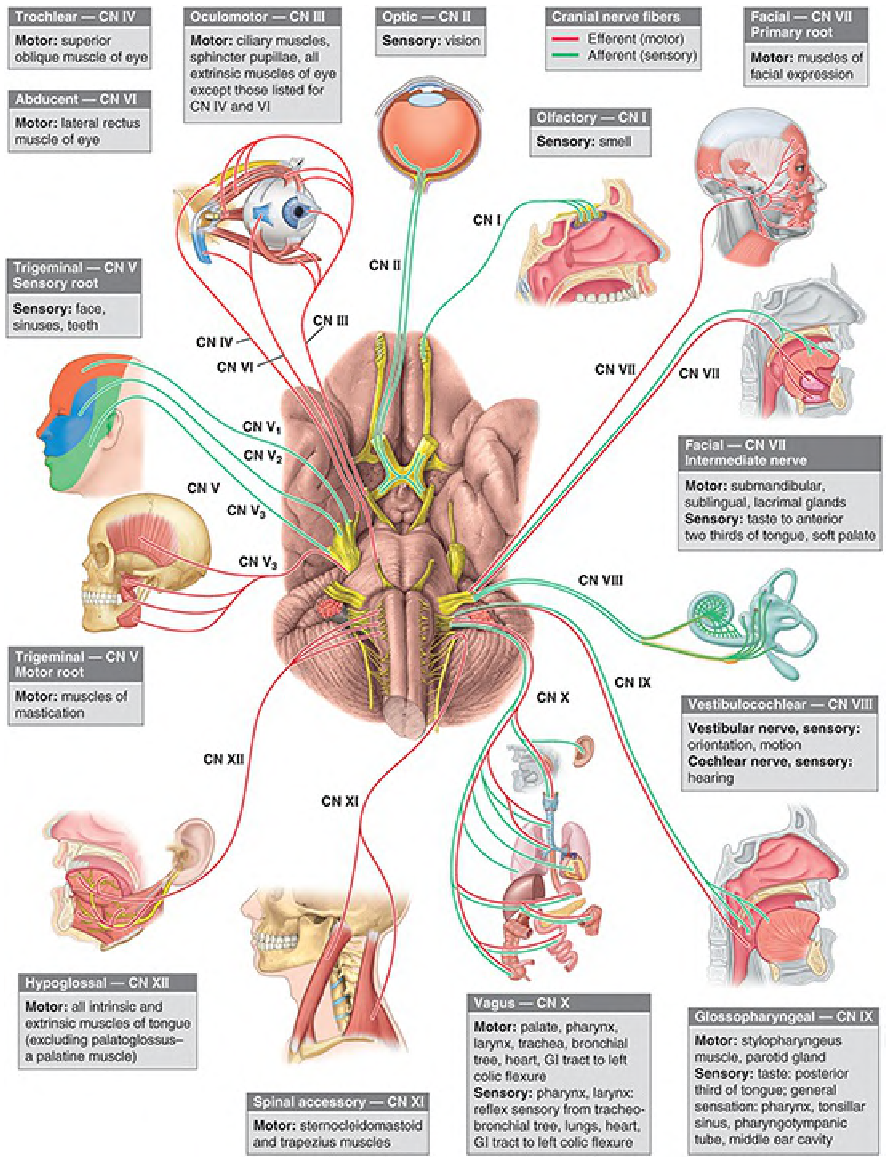


FIGURE 10.4. Summary of cranial nerves.

Cranial nerves carry one or more of the following five main functional components (Figs. 10.2 and 10.4; Tables 10.1 and 10.2).

- Motor (efferent) fibers
  1. Motor fibers to voluntary (striated) muscle. These are somatic motor (general somatic efferent) axons. On the basis of the embryologic/phylogenetic derivation of certain muscles of the head and neck,[1] some motor fibers conveyed by cranial nerves to striated muscle have traditionally been classified as “special visceral.” When appropriate, these fibers are designated somatic (branchial) motor, referring to the muscle tissue derived from the pharyngeal arches in the embryo (e.g., muscles of mastication).
  2. Motor fibers involved in innervating involuntary (smooth) muscles or glands. These are visceral motor (general visceral efferent) axons that constitute the cranial outflow of the

parasympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system (ANS). The presynaptic (preganglionic) fibers emerge from the brain and synapse outside the central nervous system (CNS) in parasympathetic ganglia (Fig. 10.5; Table 10.3). The postsynaptic (postganglionic) fibers continue to innervate smooth muscles and glands (e.g., the sphincter pupillae and lacrimal gland).

- Sensory (afferent) fibers
  3. Fibers transmitting general sensation (e.g., touch, pressure, heat, cold) from the skin and mucous membranes. These are somatic sensory (general somatic afferent) fibers, mainly carried not only by CN V but also by CN VII, CN IX, and CN X (Fig. 10.4; Tables 10.1 and 10.2).
  4. Fibers conveying sensation from the viscera. These fibers are visceral sensory (general visceral afferent) fibers conveying information from the carotid body and carotid sinus (see Fig. 9.18 in Chapter 9, Neck), pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, lungs, heart, and gastrointestinal tract.
  5. Fibers transmitting unique sensations. These include special sensory fibers conveying taste and smell (special visceral afferent fibers) and those serving the special senses of vision, hearing, and balance (special somatic afferent fibers).

TABLE 10.1. CRANIAL NERVES: ATTACHMENT TO CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM, GENERAL FUNCTIONS, AND DISTRIBUTION

Cranial Nerve		Part of Central Nervous System from Which Nerve(s) Enter(s) or Emerge(s)		General Functional Types of Fibers[a]		General Distribution
Number						
I	**Olfactory**	Forebrain (prosencephalon)	Cerebral hemispheres (telencephalon)	Special sensory		Olfactory mucosa of nose
II	**Optic**		Diencephalon	Special sensory		Retina of eye
III	**Oculomotor**	Midbrain (mesencephalon)		Motor[b]		Intra-ocular and four extra-ocular muscles
IV	**Trochlear**	Midbrain		Motor[b]		One extra-ocular muscle (superior oblique)
V	**Trigeminal**	Brainstem	Pons (metencephalon)	Mixed	Motor root	Derivatives of frontonasal process and 1st pharyngeal arch
					Sensory root	
VI	**Abducent (abducens)**		Junction between pons and medulla	Motor[b]		One extra-ocular muscle (lateral rectus)
VII	**Facial**			Mixed	Primary root	Derivatives of 2nd pharyngeal arch
					Intermediate root	
VIII	**Vestibulocochlear**			Special sensory[c]		Internal ear

IX	**Glossopharyngeal**		Medulla (myelencephalon)	Mixed	Derivatives of 3rd pharyngeal arch
X	**Vagus**				Derivatives of 4th pharyngeal arch
XI	**Spinal accessory**	Superior spinal cord		Motor[d]	Superficial layer of neck
XII	**Hypoglossal**	Brainstem	Medulla (myelencephalon)	Motor[e]	Muscles of tongue

[a]Note that the colors in this column match those of the nerves in Figure 10.2.

[b]The presence and function of proprioceptive afferent fibers to the extra-ocular muscles is controversial.

[c]The cochlear part of CN VIII, traditionally considered "purely sensory," actually conveys some efferent fibers that appear to modulate sensory sensitivity.

[d]Cranial nerve XI is purely motor as it leaves the CNS but gains pain and proprioceptive fibers from the cervical plexus in the lateral cervical region (posterior triangle) of the neck.

[e]Cranial nerve XII is purely motor as it leaves the CNS; pathways for proprioception associated with the tongue are unknown and may involve the lingual and glossopharyngeal nerves and cervical spinal nerves that communicate with CN XII.

TABLE 10.2. SUMMARY OF CRANIAL NERVES

Nerve	Components	Location of Nerve Cell Bodies (and Site of Synapse)	Cranial Exit	Function
Olfactory (CN I)	Special sensory (olfaction)	Olfactory epithelium (olfactory cells)	Foramina in cribriform plate of ethmoid bone	Smell from nasal mucosa of roof of each nasal cavity and superior sides of nasal septum and superior concha
Optic (CN II)	Special sensory (vision)	Retina (ganglion cells)	Optic canal	Vision from retina
Oculomotor (CN III)	Somatic motor	Midbrain (nucleus of oculomotor nerve)	Superior orbital fissure	Motor to superior rectus, inferior rectus, medial rectus, inferior oblique, and levator palpebrae superioris muscles; raises superior eyelid; rotates eyeball superiorly, inferiorly, and medially
	Visceral motor	Presynaptic: midbrain (Edinger-Westphal nucleus) Postsynaptic: ciliary ganglion		Parasympathetic innervation to sphincter pupillae and ciliary muscle; constricts pupil and accommodate lens of eye
Trochlear (CN IV)	Somatic motor	Midbrain (nucleus of trochlear nerve)		Motor to superior oblique to assist in turning eye inferolaterally (or inferiorly when adducted)
Trigeminal (CN V)				

Ophthalmic division (CN V_1)	Somatic (general) sensory	Trigeminal ganglion Synapse: sensory nucleus of trigeminal nerve		Sensation from cornea, skin of forehead, scalp, eyelids, nose, and mucosa of nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, and cranial dura
Maxillary division (CN V_2)			Foramen rotundum	Sensation from skin of face over maxilla including upper lip, maxillary teeth, mucosa of nose, maxillary sinuses, palate, and cranial dura
Mandibular division (CN V_3)			Foramen ovale	Sensation from the skin over mandible, including lower lip, side of head, mandibular teeth, temporomandibular joint, mucosa of mouth, anterior two thirds of tongue, and cranial dura
	Somatic (branchial) motor	Pons (motor nucleus of trigeminal nerve)		Motor to muscles of mastication, mylohyoid, anterior belly of digastric, tensor veli palatini, and tensor tympani
Abducent (CN VI)	Somatic motor	Pons (nucleus of abducent nerve)	Superior orbital fissure	Motor to lateral rectus to turn eye laterally
Facial (CN VII)	Somatic (branchial) motor	Pons (motor nucleus of facial nerve)	Internal acoustic meatus, facial canal, and stylomastoid foramen	Motor to muscles of facial expression and scalp; also supplies stapedius of middle ear, stylohyoid, and posterior belly of digastric
	Special sensory (taste)	Geniculate ganglion Synapse: nuclei of solitary tract		Taste from anterior two thirds of tongue and palate
	Somatic (general) sensory	Geniculate ganglion Synapse: sensory nucleus of trigeminal nerve		General sensation from skin of both aspects of auricle
	Visceral motor	Presynaptic: pons (superior salivatory nucleus) Postsynaptic: pterygopalatine ganglion and submandibular ganglion		Parasympathetic innervation to submandibular and sublingual salivary glands, lacrimal gland, and glands of nose and palate
Vestibulocochlear (CN VIII)				
Vestibular	Special	Vestibular ganglion	Internal	Vestibular sensation from

	sensory (balance)	Synapse: vestibular nuclei	acoustic meatus	semicircular ducts, utricle, and saccule related to position and movement of head
Cochlear	Special sensory (hearing)	Spiral ganglion Synapse: cochlear nuclei		Hearing from spiral organ
Glossopharyngeal (CN IX)	Somatic (branchial) motor	Medulla (nucleus ambiguus)	Jugular foramen	Motor to stylopharyngeus to assist with swallowing
	Visceral motor	Presynaptic: medulla (inferior salivatory nucleus) Postsynaptic: otic ganglion		Parasympathetic innervation to parotid gland
	Special sensory (taste)	Inferior sensory ganglion (nuclei of solitary tract)		Taste from posterior third of tongue and pharynx
	Somatic (general) sensory	Superior sensory ganglion (sensory nucleus of CN V)		Posterior third of tongue, soft palate, oro- and nasopharynx, and fauces
		Inferior sensory ganglion (sensory nucleus of CN V)		Tympanic cavity and membrane, pharyngotympanic tube, mastoid cells
	Visceral sensory	Inferior sensory ganglion (nuclei of solitary tract)		Carotid body (chemoreceptors) and sinus (baroreceptor)
Vagus (CN X)	Somatic (branchial) motor	Medulla (nucleus ambiguus)		Motor to constrictor muscles of pharynx, intrinsic muscles of larynx, muscles of palate (except tensor veli palatini), and striated muscle in superior two thirds of esophagus
	Visceral motor	Presynaptic: medulla Postsynaptic: intrinsic ganglia in, on, or near viscera		Parasympathetic innervation to smooth muscle of trachea, bronchi, digestive tract, and cardiac muscle
	Visceral sensory	Inferior ganglion Synapse: nuclei of solitary tract		Visceral sensation from base of tongue, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, heart, esophagus, stomach, and intestine
	Special sensory (taste)	Inferior ganglion Synapse: nuclei of solitary tract		Taste from epiglottis and palate
	Somatic (general) sensory	Superior ganglion Synapse: sensory nucleus of trigeminal nerve		Sensation from posterior auricle, tragus, and external acoustic meatus

Spinal accessory nerve (CN XI)	Somatic motor	Cervical spinal cord		Motor to sternocleidomastoid and trapezius
Hypoglossal (CN XII)	Somatic motor	Medulla	Hypoglossal canal	Motor to intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the tongue (except palatoglossus)

TABLE 10.3. CRANIAL PARASYMPATHETIC GANGLIA: LOCATION; SENSORY, PARASYMPATHETIC, AND SYMPATHETIC ROOTS; AND MAIN DISTRIBUTION

Ganglion	Location and Sensory Root	Parasympathetic Root	Sympathetic Root	Main Distribution
Ciliary	Between optic nerve and lateral rectus, tethered to nasociliary nerve (CN V) by sensory roots	Inferior branch of oculomotor nerve (CN III)	Branches from internal carotid plexus in cavernous sinus	Parasympathetic postsynaptic fibers from ciliary ganglion pass to ciliary muscle and sphincter pupillae of iris; sympathetic postsynaptic fibers from superior cervical ganglion pass to dilator pupillae and blood vessels of eye.
Pterygopalatine	In pterygopalatine fossa, where it is suspended by ganglionic branches of maxillary nerve (CN V_2) by sensory roots; just anterior to opening of pterygoid canal and inferior to CN V_2	Greater petrosal nerve from facial nerve (CN VII) via nerve of pterygoid canal	Deep petrosal nerve, a branch of internal carotid plexus that is a continuation of postsynaptic fibers of cervical sympathetic trunk; fibers from superior cervical ganglion pass through pterygopalatine ganglion and enter branches of CN V_2.	Parasympathetic postganglionic (secretomotor) fibers from pterygopalatine ganglion innervate lacrimal gland via zygomatic branch of CN V_2; sympathetic postsynaptic fibers from superior cervical ganglion accompany branches of pterygopalatine nerve that are distributed to blood vessels of nasal cavity, palate, and superior parts of pharynx.
Otic	On medial aspect of trunk of mandibular nerve (CN V_3), to which it tethered by a sensory root; between trunk and tensor veli palatini, and inferior to foramen ovale of sphenoid bone	Tympanic nerve from glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX); continues from tympanic plexus as lesser petrosal nerve	Fibers from superior cervical ganglion come from plexus on middle meningeal artery.	Parasympathetic postsynaptic fibers from otic ganglion are distributed to parotid gland via auriculotemporal nerve (branch of CN V_3); sympathetic postsynaptic fibers from superior cervical ganglion pass to parotid gland and supply its blood vessels.
Submandibular	Suspended from lingual nerve by two ganglionic branches or sensory roots; lies on surface of hyoglossus muscle inferior to submandibular duct	Parasympathetic fibers join facial nerve (CN VII) and leave it in its chorda tympani branch, which unites with lingual nerve.	Sympathetic fibers from superior cervical ganglion via plexus on facial artery	Parasympathetic postsynaptic (secretomotor) fibers from submandibular ganglion are distributed to sublingual and submandibular glands; sympathetic fibers from superior cervical ganglion supply sublingual and

				submandibular glands.

Some cranial nerves are purely sensory, others are considered purely motor, and several are mixed. CN III, CN IV, CN VI, CN XI, CN XII, and the motor root of CN V are considered to be "pure" motor nerves that appear to have evolved from primordial anterior roots. However, a small number of sensory fibers for proprioception (nonvisual perception of movement and position) are also present in these nerves, the cell bodies of which are probably located in the mesencephalic nucleus of CN V. The sensory root of CN V is purely a somatic (general) sensory nerve. Four cranial nerves (CN III, CN VII, CN IX, and CN X) contain presynaptic parasympathetic (visceral motor) axons as they emerge from the brainstem (Fig. 10.5; Table 10.3). CN V, CN VII, CN IX, and CN X are mixed nerves with both somatic (branchial) motor and somatic (general) sensory components. Each of these nerves supplies derivatives of a different pharyngeal arch (Fig. 10.4; Table 10.2).

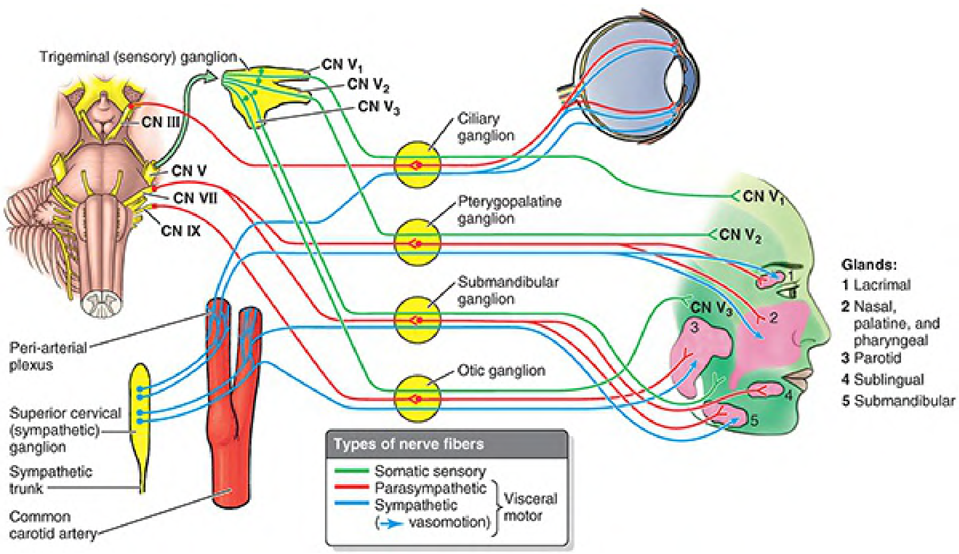


FIGURE 10.5. **Summary of cranial parasympathetic ganglia and related visceral motor and sensory fiber distribution.** CN III, VII, and IX are "parent nerves" bringing presynaptic parasympathetic fibers from the CNS. CN V conveys no ANS fibers from the CNS. However, the cranial parasympathetic ganglia are all associated with branches of CN V, and the postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers are distributed via branches of CN V.

The fibers of cranial nerves connect centrally to **cranial nerve nuclei**—groups of neurons in which sensory or afferent fibers terminate and from which motor or efferent fibers originate (Fig. 10.6). Except for CN I and CN II, which involve extensions of the forebrain, and CN XI with nuclei in the C1–C3 segment of the spinal cord, the nuclei of the cranial nerves are located in or adjacent to the brainstem. Nuclei of similar functional components (e.g., somatic or visceral motor, or somatic or visceral sensory) are generally aligned into functional columns in the brainstem.

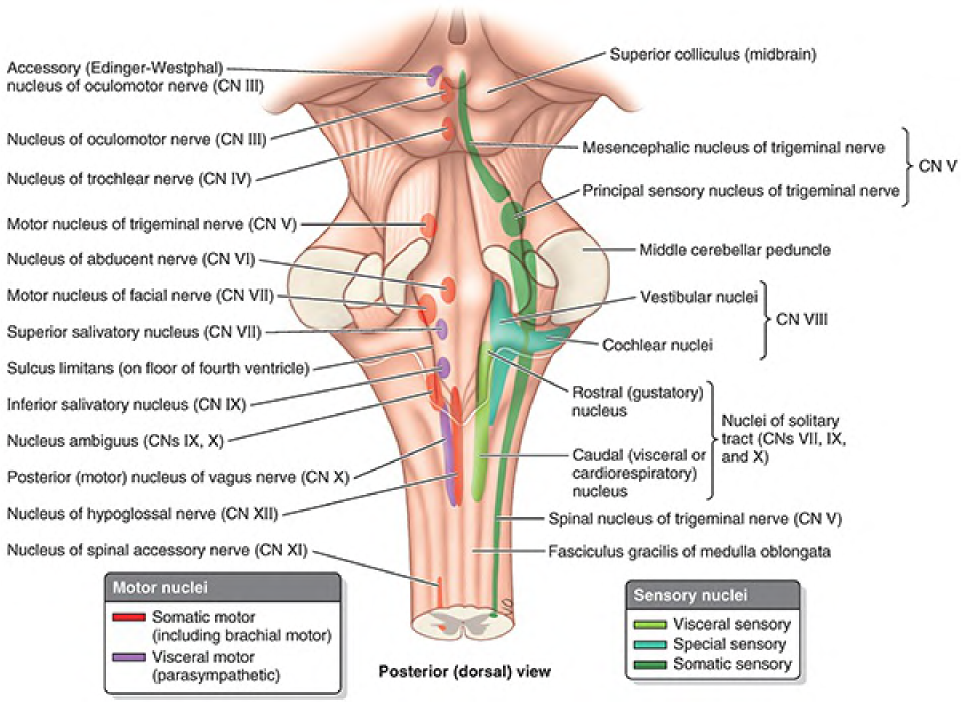


FIGURE 10.6. Cranial nerve nuclei. The motor nuclei are shown on the left side of the brainstem and the sensory nuclei on the right side. The sensory and motor nuclei are all bilaterally paired, that is, located on both the right and left sides of the brainstem.

OLFACTORY NERVE (CN I)

Functions: special sensory (special visceral afferent) for the special sense of smell. “Olfaction is the sensation of odors that results from the detection of odorous substances aerosolized in the environment” (Simpson, 2018).

The cell bodies of olfactory receptor neurons are located in the **olfactory organ** (the olfactory part of the nasal mucosa or olfactory area), which is located in the roof of the nasal cavity, and along the nasal septum and medial wall of the superior nasal concha (Fig. 10.7). **Olfactory receptor neurons** are both receptors and conductors. The apical surfaces of the neurons possess fine **olfactory cilia**, bathed by a film of watery mucus secreted by the **olfactory glands** of the epithelium. The olfactory cilia are stimulated by molecules of an odiferous gas dissolved in the fluid.

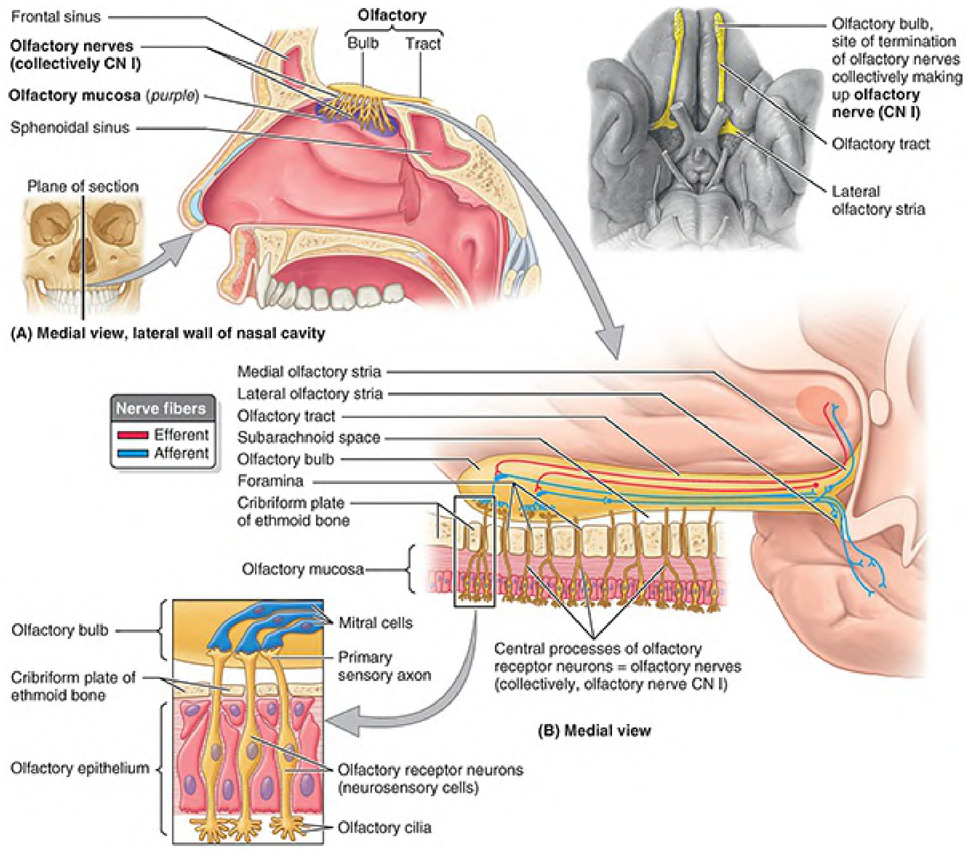


FIGURE 10.7. **Olfactory system. A.** Sagittal section through nasal cavity. Note the relationship of the olfactory mucosa to the olfactory bulb. **B.** Schematic, sagittal section through cribriform plate of ethmoid bone. The bodies of the olfactory receptor neurons are in the olfactory epithelium. These bundles of axons are collectively called the olfactory nerve (CN I).

The basal surfaces of the bipolar olfactory receptor neurons of the nasal cavity of one side give rise to central processes that are collected into approximately 20 **olfactory nerves** (L. fila olfactoria), constituting the right or left **olfactory nerve (CN I)**. They pass through tiny foramina in the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, surrounded by sleeves of dura mater and arachnoid mater, and enter the olfactory bulb in the anterior cranial fossa (Figs. 10.1, 10.2, and 10.3). The **olfactory bulb** lies in contact with the inferior or orbital surface of the frontal lobe of the cerebral hemisphere. The olfactory nerve fibers synapse with **mitral cells** in the olfactory bulb. The axons of these secondary neurons form the **olfactory tract**. The olfactory bulbs and tracts are anterior extensions of the forebrain.

Each olfactory tract divides into lateral and medial **olfactory striae** (distinct fiber bands). The lateral olfactory stria terminates in the piriform cortex of the anterior part of the temporal lobe, and the medial olfactory stria projects through the anterior commissure to contralateral olfactory structures. The olfactory nerves are the only cranial nerves to enter the cerebrum directly.

The Bottom Line: Olfactory Nerve

- The olfactory nerves (CN I) have sensory fibers concerned with the special sense of

smell. ■ The olfactory receptor neurons are in the olfactory epithelium (olfactory mucosa) in the roof of the nasal cavity. ■ The central processes of the olfactory receptor neurons ascend through foramina in the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone to reach the olfactory bulbs in the anterior cranial fossa. These nerves synapse on neurons in the bulbs, and the processes of these neurons follow the olfactory tracts to the primary and associated areas of the cerebral cortex.

OPTIC NERVE (CN II)

Functions: special sensory (special somatic afferent) for the special sense of vision.

Although officially nerves by convention, the **optic nerves** (CN II) develop in a completely different manner from the other cranial nerves. The structures involved in receiving and transmitting optical stimuli (the optical fibers and neural retina, together with the pigmented epithelium of the eyeball) develop as evaginations of the diencephalon. The optic nerves are paired, anterior extensions of the forebrain (diencephalon), and are therefore actually CNS fiber tracts formed by axons of **retinal ganglion cells** (Moore et al., 2020). In other words, they are third-order neurons, with their cell bodies located in the retina (Fig. 10.8B).

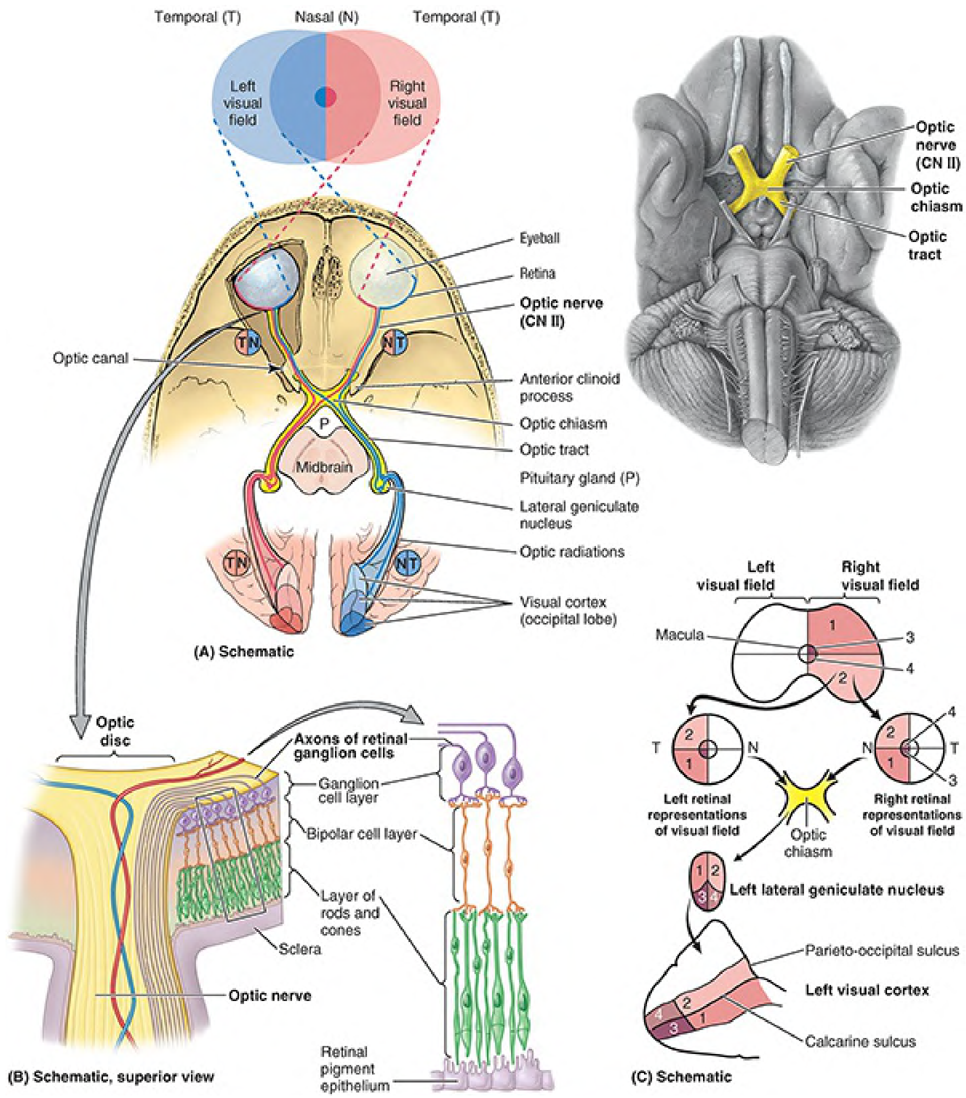


FIGURE 10.8. Visual system. A. Origin, course, and distribution of visual pathway. The axons of retinal ganglionic neurons convey visual information to the lateral geniculate body of the diencephalon (thalamus) through the optic nerve (CN II) and optic tract. Fibers from the lateral geniculate body project to the visual cortices of the occipital lobes. The axons of the ganglion cells of the nasal halves of the retinas cross in the optic chiasm; those from the temporal halves do not cross. **B.** Photoreceptor cells (rods and cones) in retina. The responses of the photoreceptors are transmitted by bipolar cells (neurons with two processes) to ganglion cells in the ganglion cell layer of the retina. The central processes of this third-order neuron are the fibers conducted by the optic nerves. **C.** Right visual field representation on retinae, left lateral geniculate nucleus, and left visual cortex.

The optic nerves are surrounded by extensions of the cranial meninges and subarachnoid space, which is filled with cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). The meninges extend all the way to the eyeball. The central artery and vein of the retina traverse the meningeal layers and course in the anterior part of the optic nerve. CN II begins where the unmyelinated axons of retinal ganglion cells pierce the sclera (the opaque part of the external fibrous coat of the eyeball) and become myelinated, deep to the optic disc.

The nerve passes posteromedially in the orbit, exiting through the optic canal to enter the middle cranial fossa, where it forms the **optic chiasm** (Figs. 10.2 and 10.8A). Here, fibers from

the nasal (medial) half of each retina decussate in the chiasm and join uncrossed fibers from the temporal (lateral) half of the retina to form the **optic tract**.

The partial crossing of optic nerve fibers in the chiasm is a requirement for binocular vision, allowing depth-of-field perception (three-dimensional vision). Therefore, fibers from the right halves of both retinas form the right optic tract. The decussation of nerve fibers in the chiasm results in the right optic tract conveying impulses from the left visual field and vice versa. The combined **visual field** is what is seen by a person who has both eyes wide open and who is looking straight ahead. Most fibers in the optic tracts terminate in the **lateral geniculate bodies** of the thalamus. From these nuclei, axons are relayed to the visual cortices of the occipital lobes of the brain.

The Bottom Line: Optic Nerve

■ The optic nerves (CN II) have sensory fibers concerned with the special sense of vision. ■ The optic nerve fibers arise from ganglion cells in the retina. ■ The nerve fibers exit the orbit via the optic canals; fibers from the nasal half of the retina cross to the contralateral side at the optic chiasm. ■ The nerve fibers then pass via the optic tracts to the geniculate bodies of the thalamus, where they synapse on neurons whose processes form the optic radiations to the primary visual cortex of the occipital lobe.

OCULOMOTOR NERVE (CN III)

Functions: somatic motor (general somatic efferent) and visceral motor (general visceral efferent–parasympathetic).

Nuclei: There are two oculomotor nuclei, each serving one of the functional components of this nerve. The somatic motor **nucleus of the oculomotor nerve** is in the midbrain (Fig. 10.6). The visceral motor (parasympathetic) **accessory (Edinger-Westphal) nucleus of the oculomotor nerve** lies dorsal to the rostral two thirds of the somatic motor nucleus (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018).

The oculomotor nerve (CN III) provides the following (Fig. 10.9):

- Motor innervation to the striated muscle of four of the six extra-ocular muscles (superior, medial, and inferior recti and inferior oblique) and superior eyelid (L. levator palpebrae superioris), hence the nerve’s name
- Parasympathetic innervation through the ciliary ganglion to the smooth muscle of the sphincter pupillae that causes constriction of the pupil and ciliary muscle, producing accommodation (allowing the lens to become more rounded) for near vision

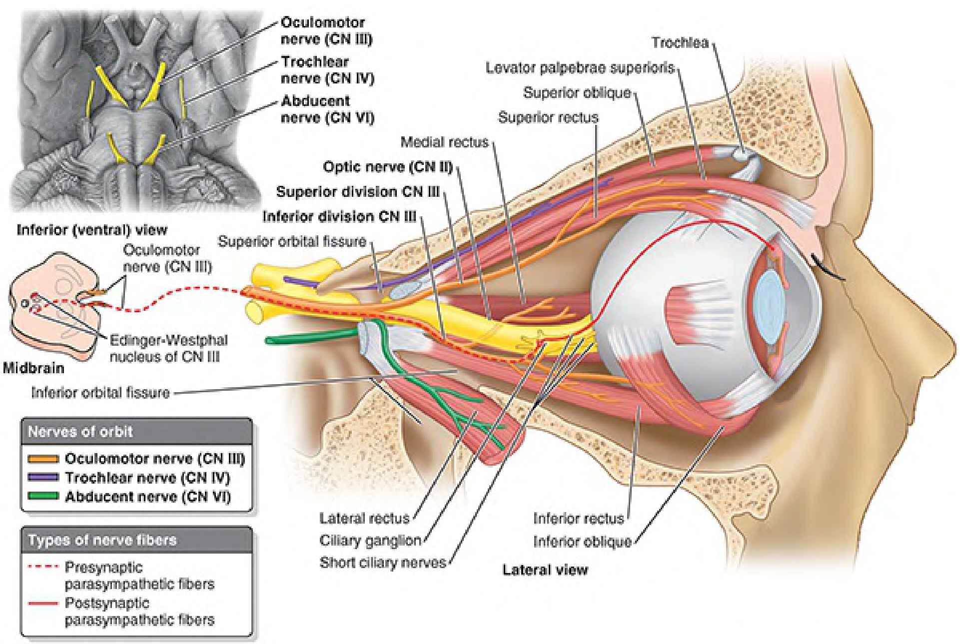


FIGURE 10.9. **Distribution of oculomotor (CN III), trochlear (CN IV), and abducent (CN VI) nerves.** CN IV supplies the superior oblique, CN VI supplies the lateral rectus, and CN III supplies five striated extra-ocular muscles (levator palpebrae superioris, superior rectus, medial rectus, inferior rectus, and inferior oblique) and two intra-ocular muscles (ciliary muscle and sphincter pupillae muscle—not shown; see Chapter 8, Head).

CN III is the chief motor nerve to the ocular and extra-ocular muscles. It emerges from the midbrain, pierces the dura mater lateral to the diaphragma sellae roofing over the hypophysis, and then runs through the roof and lateral wall of the cavernous sinus. CN III leaves the cranial cavity and enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure. Within this fissure, CN III divides into a **superior division** (which supplies the superior rectus and levator palpebrae superioris) and an **inferior division** (which supplies the inferior and medial rectus and inferior oblique). The inferior division also carries presynaptic parasympathetic (visceral efferent) fibers to the ciliary ganglion, where they synapse (see Fig. 10.5; Table 10.3). Postsynaptic fibers from this ganglion pass to the eyeball in the short ciliary nerves to innervate the ciliary body and sphincter pupillae (see Fig. 8.51 in Chapter 8, Head).

The Bottom Line: Oculomotor Nerve

■ The oculomotor nerves (CN III) send somatic motor fibers to all extra-ocular muscles, except the superior oblique and lateral rectus. ■ These nerves also send presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the ciliary ganglion for innervation of the ciliary body and sphincter pupillae. ■ These nerves originate from the upper brainstem (midbrain) and run in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus. ■ These nerves enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissures and divide into superior and inferior branches.

TROCHLEAR NERVE (CN IV)

Functions: somatic motor (general somatic efferent) to one extra-ocular muscle (superior oblique).

Nucleus: The **nucleus of the trochlear nerve** is located in the midbrain, immediately caudal to the oculomotor nucleus (Fig. 10.6).

The **trochlear nerve** (CN IV) is the smallest cranial nerve. It emerges from the posterior (dorsal) surface of the midbrain (the only cranial nerve to do so), passing anteriorly around the brainstem. It has the longest intracranial (subarachnoid) course of the cranial nerves. The trochlear nerve pierces the dura mater at the margin of the tentorium cerebelli and passes anteriorly in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus (Fig. 10.3A–C). CN IV then continues through the superior orbital fissure into the orbit, where it supplies the superior oblique—the only extra-ocular muscle that uses a pulley, or trochlea, to redirect its line of action (hence the nerve's name) (Fig. 10.9).

The Bottom Line: Trochlear Nerve

■ The trochlear nerves (CN IV) supply somatic motor fibers to the superior oblique muscles, which abduct, depress, and medially rotate the pupil. ■ The trochlear nerves emerge from the posterior aspect of the brainstem. ■ The nerves run a long intracranial course, passing around the brainstem to enter the dura mater in the free edge of the tentorium cerebelli close to the posterior clinoid process. ■ The nerves then run in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, entering the orbit via the superior orbital fissures.

TRIGEMINAL NERVE (CN V)

Functions: somatic (general) sensory and somatic (branchial) motor to derivatives of the 1st pharyngeal arch.

Nuclei: There are four trigeminal nuclei (Fig. 10.6)—one motor (**motor nucleus of trigeminal nerve**) and three sensory (**mesencephalic, principal sensory,** and **spinal nuclei of trigeminal nerve**).

The **trigeminal nerve** (CN V) is the largest cranial nerve (if the atypical optic nerve is excluded). It emerges from the lateral aspect of the pons of the brainstem by a large sensory root and a small motor root (Figs. 10.2, 10.3, and 10.4). The roots of CN V are comparable to the posterior and anterior roots of spinal nerves. CN V is the principal somatic (general) sensory nerve for the head (face, teeth, mouth, nasal cavity, and dura mater of the cranial cavity). The large **sensory root of CN V** is composed mainly of the central processes of the pseudounipolar neurons that make up the sensory **trigeminal ganglion** (Fig. 10.10). The ganglion is flattened

and crescent shaped (hence its unofficial name, semilunar ganglion) and is housed within a dural recess (**trigeminal cave**) lateral to the cavernous sinus.

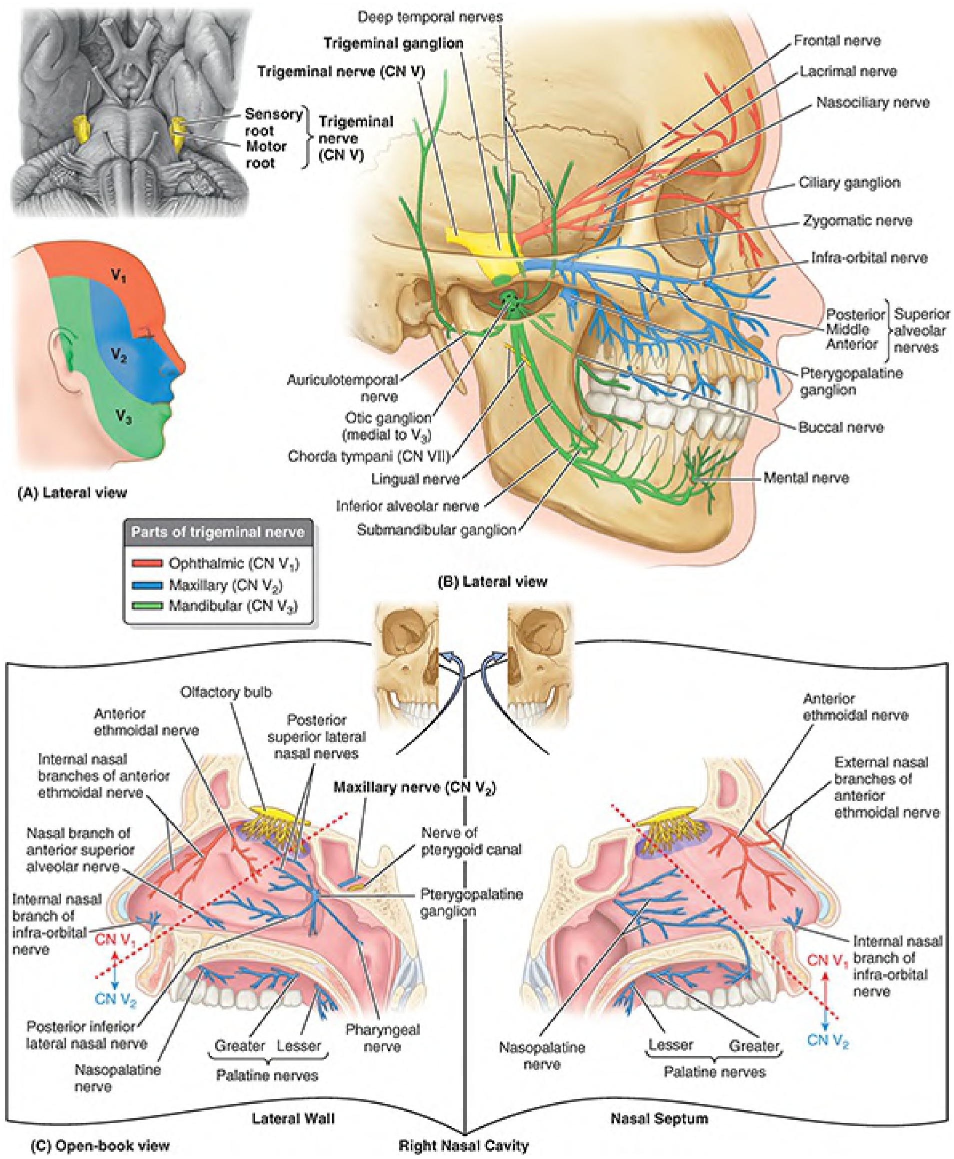


FIGURE 10.10. Distribution of trigeminal nerve (CN V). A. Cutaneous (sensory) zones innervated by three divisions of trigeminal nerve. **B.** Overview. Each cranial nerve division supplies skin and mucous membranes and sends a branch to the dura of the anterior and middle cranial fossae. Each division is associated with one or two parasympathetic ganglia and delivers the postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers from that ganglion: CN V_1 for the ciliary ganglion, CN V_2 for the pterygopalatine ganglion, and CN V_3 for the submandibular and otic ganglia. **C.** Open-book view of innervation of lateral wall and septum of nasal cavity and palate. CN V_1 supplies the anterosuperior portions of the cavity, and CN V_2, the postero-inferior portions and the palate.

The peripheral processes of the ganglionic neurons form three nerves or divisions: ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1), maxillary nerve (CN V_2), and sensory component of the mandibular nerve (CN V_3). Maps of the zones of cutaneous innervation by the three divisions resemble the dermatome maps for cutaneous innervation by spinal nerves (Fig. 10.10A). Unlike spinal nerve dermatomes,

however, there is little overlap in innervation by the divisions; lesions of a single nerve result in clearly demarcated areas of numbness.

The **motor root of CN V** passes adjacent to the trigeminal ganglion, bypassing the ganglion and merging with the mandibular division of CN V immediately distal to the ganglion. The motor fibers are distributed exclusively via the mandibular nerve (CN V_3), blending with its sensory fibers as the nerve traverses the foramen ovale to exit the cranium (Figs. 10.1, 10.3A–C, and 10.4). This is similar to the way that anterior roots of spinal nerves bypass the spinal sensory (dorsal root) ganglia, also merging with the sensory fibers of the nerves immediately distal to the ganglion, as the nerves traverse the intervertebral foramina, exiting the spine (see Fig. 1.41 in Chapter 1, Overview and Basic Concepts). Motor fibers of the mandibular nerve are distributed to the muscles of mastication, mylohyoid, anterior belly of the digastric, tensor veli palatini, and tensor tympani (see Fig. 8.76 in Chapter 8, Head), which are derived from the 1st pharyngeal arch.

Although CN V conveys no presynaptic parasympathetic fibers from the CNS, all four parasympathetic ganglia are associated with the divisions of CN V. Postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers from the ganglia join branches of CN V and are carried to their destinations along with the CN V sensory and motor fibers (Fig. 10.5; Table 10.3).

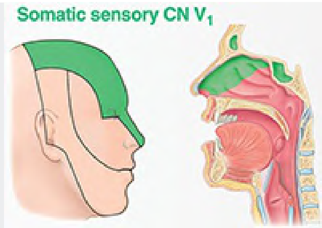
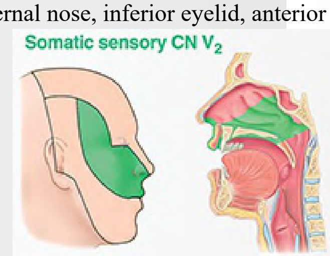
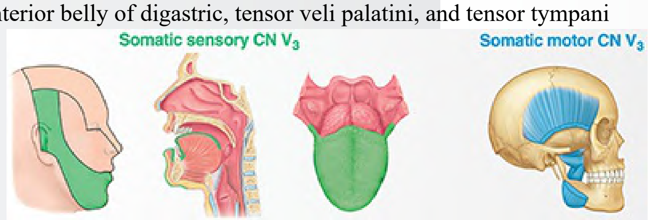
Ophthalmic Nerve (CN V_1)

In contrast to the other two CN V divisions, CN V_1 is not a branchial nerve (i.e., it does not supply pharyngeal arch derivatives). It serves structures derived from the paraxial mesoderm of the embryonic frontonasal process. The ophthalmic nerve's association with the other CN V divisions is a secondary occurrence. The somatic (general) sensory fibers of CN V_1 are distributed to skin and mucous membranes and conjunctiva of the front of the head and nose (Fig. 10.10).

Testing CN V_1: The integrity of this division is tested by checking the corneal reflex—touching the cornea, which is also supplied by CN V_1, with a wisp of cotton will evoke a reflexive blink if the nerve is functional (Table 10.4; see Fig. B8.14B).

TABLE 10.4. SUMMARY OF DIVISIONS OF TRIGEMINAL NERVE (CN V)

Divisions/Distributions	Branches
Ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1) Sensory only Passes through superior orbital fissure into orbit Supplies cornea; superior conjunctiva; mucosa of anterosuperior nasal cavity; frontal, ethmoidal, and sphenoidal sinuses; anterior and supratentorial dura mater; skin of dorsum of external nose; superior eyelid; forehead; and anterior scalp	Tentorial nerve (a meningeal branch) Lacrimal nerve Communicating branch from zygomatic nerve Frontal nerve Supra-orbital nerve Supratrochlear nerve Nasociliary nerve Sensory root of ciliary ganglion Short ciliary nerves Long ciliary nerves Anterior and posterior ethmoidal nerves

	Infratrochlear nerves
Maxillary nerve (CN V_2) Sensory only Passes through foramen rotundum to enter pterygopalatine fossa Supplies dura mater of anterior part of middle cranial fossa; conjunctiva of inferior eyelid; mucosa of postero-inferior nasal cavity, maxillary sinus, palate, and anterior part of superior oral vestibule; maxillary teeth; and skin of lateral external nose, inferior eyelid, anterior cheek, and upper lip 	Meningeal branch Zygomatic nerve Zygomaticofacial branch Zygomaticotemporal branch Communicating branch to lacrimal nerve Ganglionic branches to (sensory root of) pterygopalatine ganglion Posterior superior alveolar branches Infra-orbital nerve Anterior and middle superior alveolar branches Superior labial branches Inferior palpebral branches External nasal branches Greater palatine nerves Posterior inferior lateral nasal nerves Lesser palatine nerves Posterior superior lateral nasal branches Nasopalatine nerve Pharyngeal nerve
Mandibular nerve (CN V_3) Sensory and motor Passes through foramen ovale into infratemporal fossa Supplies sensory innervation to mucosa of anterior two thirds of tongue, floor of mouth, and posterior and anterior inferior oral vestibule; mandibular teeth; and skin of lower lip, buccal, parotid, and temporal regions of face; and external ear (auricle, upper external acoustic meatus, and tympanic membrane) Supplies motor innervation to four muscles of mastication, mylohyoid, anterior belly of digastric, tensor veli palatini, and tensor tympani 	Somatic (general) sensory branches Meningeal branch (nervus spinosum) Buccal nerve Auriculotemporal nerve Lingual nerve Inferior alveolar nerve Inferior dental plexus Mental nerve Somatic (branchial) motor branches Masseteric nerve Deep temporal nerves Nerves to medial and lateral pterygoid Nerve to mylohyoid (and anterior belly of digastric) Nerve to tensor veli palatini Nerve to tensor tympani

Maxillary Nerve (CN V_2)

CN V_2 innervates derivatives of the maxillary prominence of the 1st pharyngeal arch. Exiting the cranial cavity via the foramen rotundum, its somatic (general) sensory fibers are mainly distributed to skin and mucous membranes associated with the upper jaw (Fig. 10.10; Table 10.4). The pterygopalatine (parasympathetic) ganglion is associated with this division of CN V, involved in innervating the lacrimal gland and glands of the nose and palate (Fig. 10.5; Table

10.3).

Mandibular Nerve (CN V_3)

CN V_3 innervates derivatives of the mandibular prominence of the 1st pharyngeal arch. CN V_3 is the only division of CN V to convey somatic (branchial) motor fibers, distributed to the striated muscle derived from mandibular prominence mesoderm, primarily the muscles of mastication. Two parasympathetic ganglia, the otic and submandibular, are associated with this division of CN V; both are concerned with the innervation of salivary glands.

Tables 10.1, 10.2, and 10.3 provide a general summary of CN V. Table 10.4 summarizes the branches of the three divisions.

The Bottom Line: Trigeminal Nerve

■ CN V is the chief nerve for general sensory innervation of the head. ■ Via its three divisions, it provides sensory innervation to dura of the anterior and middle cranial fossae, skin of the face, teeth, gingiva, mucous membrane of the nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, and mouth. ■ The trigeminal nerve (CN V) supplies somatic motor fibers to the muscles of mastication, mylohyoid, anterior belly of the digastric, tensor tympani, and tensor veli palatini muscles. ■ It also distributes postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers of the head to their destinations. ■ CN V originates from the lateral surface of the pons by two roots: motor and sensory. ■ These roots cross the medial part of the crest of the petrous part of the temporal bone and enter the trigeminal cave of the dura mater lateral to the body of the sphenoid and cavernous sinus. ■ The sensory root leads to the trigeminal ganglion; the motor root runs parallel to the sensory root, bypasses the ganglion, and becomes part of the mandibular nerve (CN V_3).

ABDUCENT NERVE (CN VI)

Functions: somatic motor (general somatic efferent) to one extra-ocular muscle, the lateral rectus.

Nucleus: The **abducent nucleus** is in the pons near the median plane (Fig. 10.6).

The **abducent nerve** (CN VI) emerges from the brainstem between the pons and the medulla and traverses the pontine cistern of the subarachnoid space, the right and left nerves straddling the basilar artery (Fig. 10.3A and inset; see Fig. 8.42 in Chapter 8, Head). Each abducent nerve then pierces the dura mater to run the longest intradural course within the cranial cavity of all the cranial nerves—that is, its point of entry into the dura mater covering the clivus is the most distant from its exit from the cranium via the superior orbital fissure. During its intradural

course, it bends sharply over the crest of the petrous part of the temporal bone and then courses through the cavernous sinus, surrounded by the venous blood in the same manner as the internal carotid artery, which it parallels in the sinus (Fig. 10.3A–C). CN VI traverses the common tendinous ring (L. anulus tendineus communis) as it enters the orbit (see Fig. 8.55 in Chapter 8, Head), running on and penetrating the medial surface of the lateral rectus, which abducts the pupil (Fig. 10.9).

The Bottom Line: Abducent Nerve

■ The abducent nerves (CN VI) supply somatic motor fibers to the lateral rectus muscles of the eyeballs. ■ The nerves originate from the pons, pierce the dura mater on the clivus, traverse the cavernous sinuses and superior orbital fissures, and enter the orbits.

FACIAL NERVE (CN VII)

Functions: sensory—special sensory (taste) and somatic (general) sensory; motor—somatic (branchial) motor and visceral (parasympathetic) motor. It also carries proprioceptive fibers from the muscles it innervates, although the muscles of facial expression include relatively few muscle spindles (mechanoreceptors for muscle stretch), so proprioceptive sensory fibers are fewer than in other motor nerves (Haines & Mihailoff, 2018).

Nuclei: The **motor nucleus of the facial nerve** is a branchiomotor nucleus in the ventrolateral part of the pons of the brainstem (Fig. 10.6). The cell bodies of the primary sensory neurons are in the geniculate ganglion (Fig. 10.11). The central processes of those concerned with taste end in the nuclei of the solitary tract in the medulla. The processes of those concerned with general sensations (pain, touch, and thermal) from around the external ear end in the spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve (Fig. 10.5).

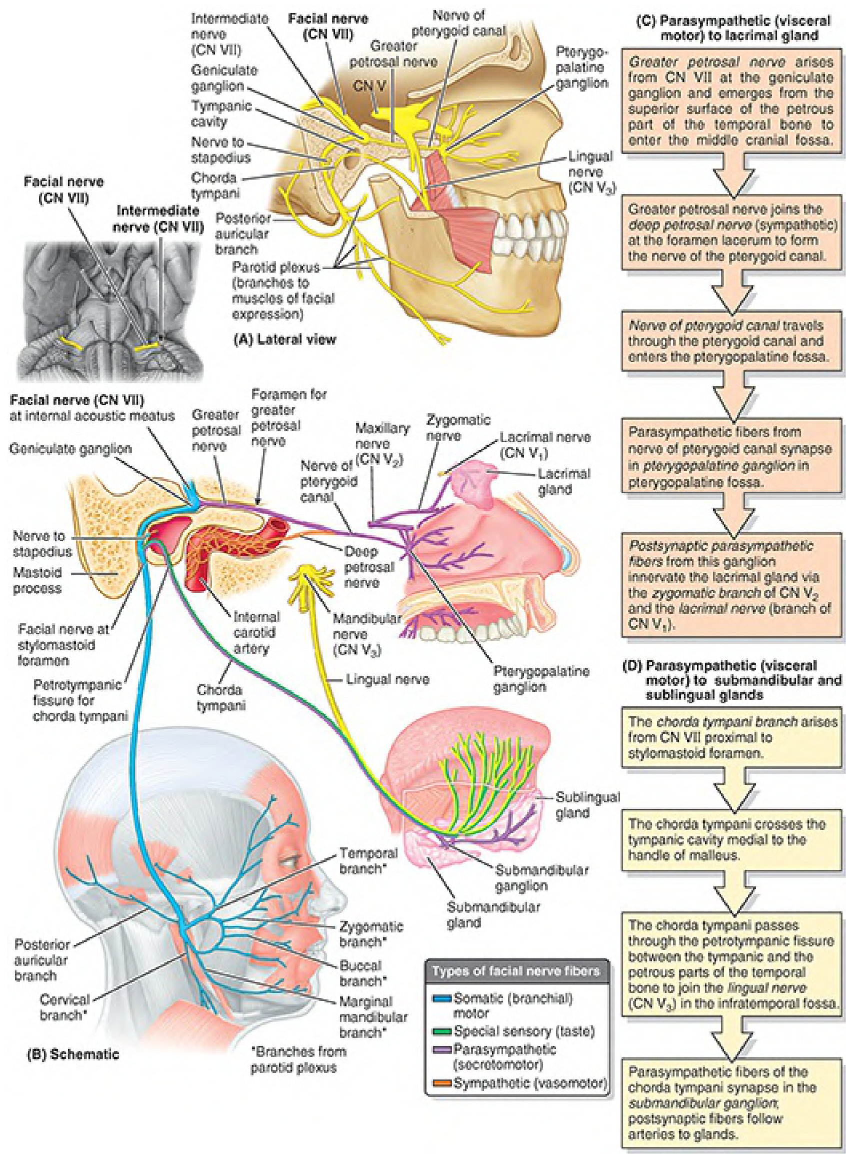


FIGURE 10.11. **Distribution of facial nerve (CN VII). A.** Intra-osseous course and branches of facial nerve. **B.** Distribution of facial nerve fibers. CN VII supplies (1) somatic (branchial) motor innervation to derivatives of the 2nd pharyngeal arch (muscles of facial expression, including the auricular and occipitofrontalis muscles plus the stapedius and posterior bellies of the digastric and stylohyoid), (2) special sensory (taste) and presynaptic parasympathetic (secretomotor) fibers to the anterior tongue and submandibular ganglion via the chorda tympani, and (3) presynaptic parasympathetic (secretomotor) fibers to the pterygopalatine ganglion via the greater petrosal nerve. **C.** Parasympathetic innervation of lacrimal gland. **D.** Parasympathetic innervation of submandibular and sublingual glands.

The **facial nerve** (CN VII) emerges from the junction of the pons and medulla as two divisions: the primary root and the intermediate nerve (Fig. 10.2; Table 10.1). The larger **primary root** (facial nerve proper) innervates the muscles of facial expression, and the smaller **intermediate nerve** (L. nervus intermedius) carries taste, presynaptic parasympathetic, and somatic sensory fibers. During its course, CN VII traverses the posterior cranial fossa, internal acoustic meatus, facial canal, stylomastoid foramen of the temporal bone, and parotid gland (Fig. 10.11A, B). After traversing the internal acoustic meatus, the nerve proceeds a short distance

anteriorly within the temporal bone and then turns abruptly posteriorly to course along the medial wall of the tympanic cavity. The sharp bend, the **geniculum of the facial nerve** (L. genu, knee), is the site of the **geniculate ganglion**, the sensory ganglion of CN VII. While traversing the temporal bone within the facial canal (Fig. 10.11A; see Fig. 8.116B in Chapter 8, Head), CN VII gives rise to the:

- Greater petrosal nerve
- Nerve to the stapedius
- Chorda tympani nerve

Then, after running the longest intra-osseous course of any cranial nerve, CN VII emerges from the cranium via the stylomastoid foramen (see Fig. 8.16B in Chapter 8, Head), gives off the posterior auricular branch, enters the parotid gland, and forms the parotid plexus, which gives rise to the following five terminal motor branches: temporal, zygomatic, buccal, marginal mandibular, and cervical (see Fig. 8.16 in Chapter 8, Head).

Somatic (Branchial) Motor

As the nerve of the embryonic 2nd pharyngeal arch, the facial nerve supplies striated muscles derived from its mesoderm, mainly the muscles of facial expression and auricular muscles. It also supplies the posterior belly of the digastric, stylohyoid, and stapedius muscles.

Visceral (Parasympathetic) Motor

The visceral (parasympathetic) motor distribution of the facial nerve is presented in Figure 10.11B–D. CN VII provides presynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the pterygopalatine ganglion for innervation of the lacrimal, nasal, palatine, and pharyngeal glands and to the submandibular ganglion for innervation of the sublingual and submandibular salivary glands. The pterygopalatine ganglion is associated with the maxillary nerve (CN V_2), which distributes its postsynaptic fibers, whereas the submandibular ganglion is associated with the mandibular nerve (CN V_3). The distribution of visceral motor and sensory fibers to or through the parasympathetic ganglia supplied by the facial nerve and certain other cranial nerves is summarized in Figure 10.5 and Table 10.3. Parasympathetic fibers synapse in these ganglia, whereas sympathetic and sensory fibers pass through them.

Somatic (General) Sensory

Some fibers from the geniculate ganglion accompany the auricular branch of the vagus nerve to supply small areas of skin on both aspects of the auricle, in the region of the concha and at the opening of the external acoustic meatus.

Special Sensory (Taste)

Peripheral fibers of sensory neurons of the geniculate ganglion are carried by the chorda tympani. They join the lingual nerve of CN V_3 in the infratemporal fossa to supply taste buds of the anterior two thirds of the tongue and soft palate (Fig. 10.11B). Central fibers of the neurons pass to the brainstem via the intermediate nerve.

The Bottom Line: Facial Nerve

■ The facial nerves (CN VII) supply motor fibers to the stapedius, posterior belly of the digastric, stylohyoid, facial, and scalp muscles. ■ They also supply presynaptic parasympathetic fibers via the intermediate nerve (smaller root of CN VII) destined for the pterygopalatine and submandibular ganglia via the greater petrosal nerve and chorda tympani, respectively. ■ CN VII is sensory to some skin of the external acoustic meatus and, via the intermediate nerve, is sensory to taste from the anterior two thirds of the tongue and the soft palate. ■ CN VII originates from the caudal border of the pons and runs through the internal acoustic meatus and facial canal in the petrous part of the temporal bone. ■ CN VII exits via the stylomastoid foramen; its main trunk forms the intraparotid nerve plexus.

VESTIBULOCOCHLEAR NERVE (CN VIII)

Functions: special sensory (special somatic afferent), that is, special sensations of hearing, equilibrium, and motion (acceleration/deceleration).

Nuclei: **Vestibular nuclei** are located at the junction of the pons and medulla of the brainstem in the lateral part of the floor of the 4th ventricle; the **cochlear nuclei**, anterior and posterior, are in the medulla (Fig. 10.6).

The **vestibulocochlear nerve** (CN VIII) emerges from the junction of the pons and medulla and enters the internal acoustic meatus (Figs. 10.2, 10.3A, 10.4, and 10.12). Here, it separates into the vestibular and cochlear nerves.

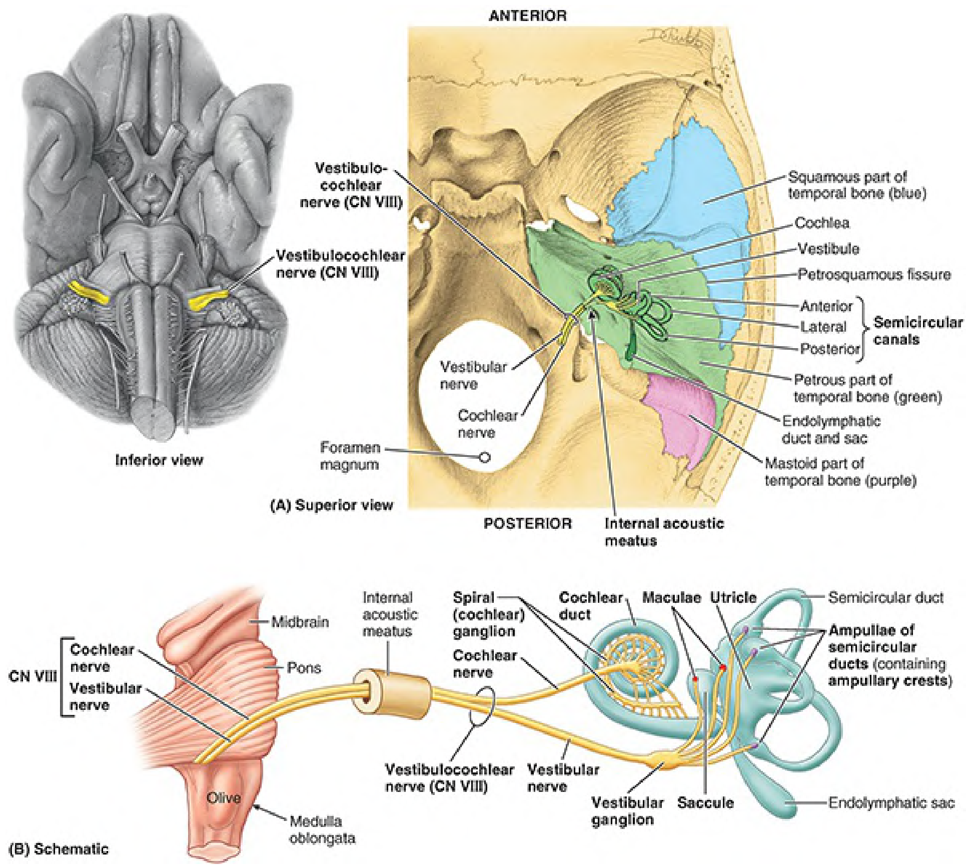


FIGURE 10.12. **Vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII). A.** Location of bony labyrinth of internal ear within temporal bone. **B.** Innervation of cochlea. The cochlear nerve of CN VIII provides innervation for the sense of hearing, and innervation of the vestibular apparatus is provided by the vestibular nerve of CN VIII, for equilibrium and motion.

- The **vestibular nerve** is composed of the central processes of bipolar neurons in the **vestibular ganglion**. The peripheral processes of the neurons extend to the maculae of the utricle and saccule (sensitive to linear acceleration and the pull of gravity relative to the position of the head) and to the cristae of the ampullae of the semicircular ducts (sensitive to rotational acceleration).
- The **cochlear nerve** is composed of the central processes of bipolar neurons in the **spiral ganglion**; the peripheral processes of the neurons extend to the spiral organ for the sense of hearing.

Within the internal acoustic meatus, the two divisions of CN VIII are accompanied by the primary root and intermediate nerve of CN VII and the labyrinthine artery (Fig. 10.3A; see Figs. 8.42 and 8.43 in Chapter 8, Head).

The Bottom Line: Vestibulocochlear Nerve

■ The vestibulocochlear nerves (CN VIII) carry fibers concerned with the special senses of hearing, equilibrium, and motion. ■ The nerves originate from the grooves between the

pons and medulla. ■ They run through the internal acoustic meatus and divide into the cochlear and vestibular nerves. ■ The cochlear nerve is sensory to the spiral organ (for the sense of hearing). ■ The vestibular nerve is sensory to the cristae of the ampullae of the semicircular ducts and the maculae of the saccule and utricle (for the sense of equilibration and motion).

GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL NERVE (CN IX)

Functions: sensory—somatic (general) sensory, special sensory (taste), and visceral sensory; motor—somatic (branchial) motor and visceral (parasympathetic) motor for derivatives of the 3rd pharyngeal arch.

Nuclei: Four nuclei in the medulla send or receive fibers via CN IX: two motor (nucleus ambiguus and **inferior salivary nucleus**) and two sensory (sensory nuclei of the trigeminal nerve [CN V] and nuclei of the solitary tract). Three of these nuclei (in italics) are shared with CN X (Fig. 10.6).

The **glossopharyngeal nerve** (CN IX) emerges from the lateral aspect of the medulla and passes anterolaterally to leave the cranium through the anterior aspect of the jugular foramen (Figs. 10.13 and 10.14). At this foramen are the sensory **superior** and **inferior ganglia of CN IX**, which contain the pseudounipolar cell bodies for the afferent components of the nerve. CN IX follows the stylopharyngeus, the only muscle the nerve supplies, and passes between the superior and middle pharyngeal constrictor muscles to reach the oropharynx and tongue. It contributes sensory fibers to the pharyngeal plexus of nerves. CN IX is afferent from the tongue and pharynx (hence its name) and efferent to the stylopharyngeus and parotid gland.

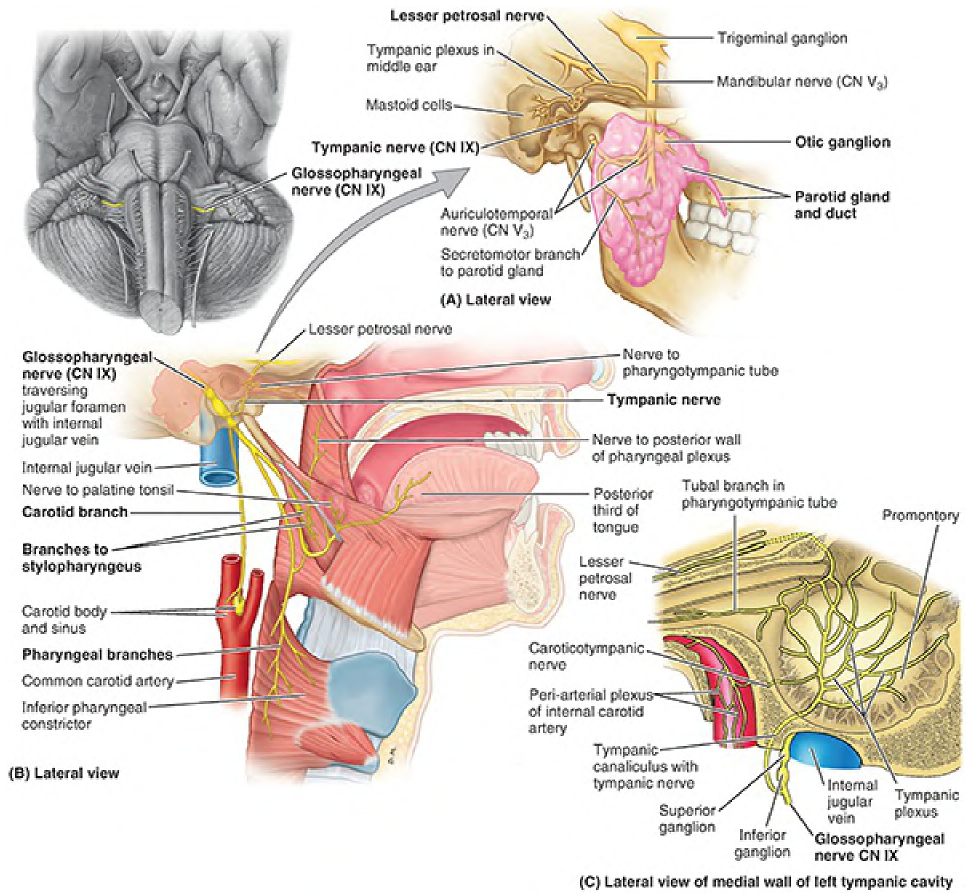


FIGURE 10.13. Distribution of glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX). A. Parasympathetic component of CN IX. The nerve supplies presynaptic secretory fibers to the otic ganglion; postsynaptic fibers pass to the parotid gland via the auriculotemporal nerve (CN V_3). **B.** Pharynx and parapharyngeal structures. CN IX is motor to one pharyngeal muscle, the stylopharyngeus. It also carries sensory fibers from the carotid body and carotid sinus, conveying information about blood pressure and gas levels as well as somatic (general) sensation from the internal ear, pharynx, and fauces and taste from the posterior tongue. **C.** Middle ear (tympanic cavity and pharyngotympanic tube) and otic ganglion.

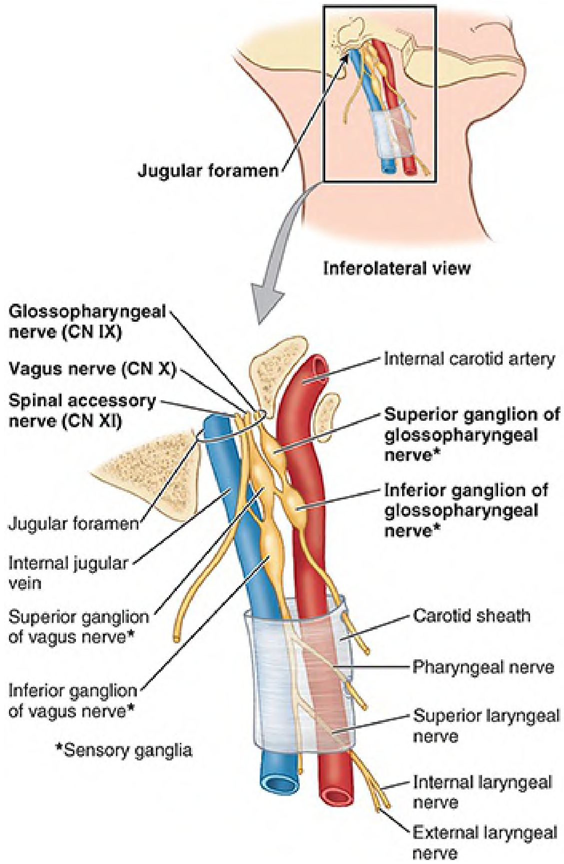


FIGURE 10.14. Relationship of structures traversing jugular foramen. CN IX, CN X, and CN XI are, in numerical order, anterior to the internal jugular vein as they traverse the foramen. They are immediately posterior to the internal carotid artery as they emerge from the foramen. The superior and inferior sensory ganglia of CN IX and CN X are thickenings of those nerves immediately inferior to their exit from the cranium.

Somatic (Branchial) Motor

Motor fibers pass to one muscle, the stylopharyngeus, derived from the 3rd pharyngeal arch.

Visceral (Parasympathetic) Motor

Following a circuitous route initially involving the tympanic nerve, presynaptic parasympathetic fibers are provided to the otic ganglion for innervation of the parotid gland (Fig. 10.15). The otic ganglion is associated with the mandibular nerve (CN V_3), branches of which convey the postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers to the parotid gland.

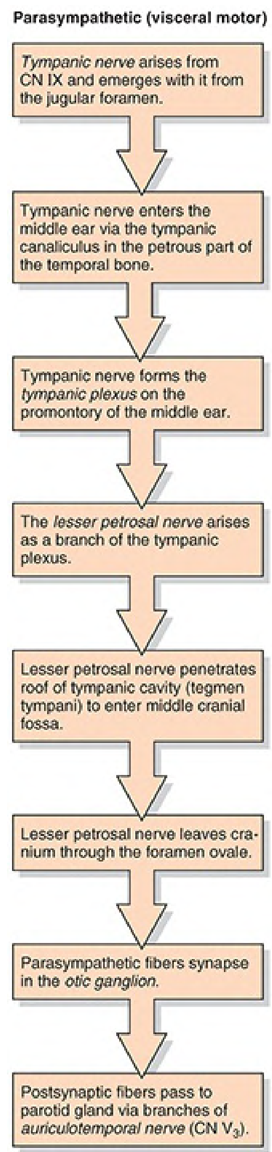


FIGURE 10.15. **Parasympathetic innervation by glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX).** CN IX sends presynaptic parasympathetic (secretomotor) fibers to the otic ganglion via a convoluted route; postsynaptic fibers pass from the ganglion to the parotid gland via the auriculotemporal nerve (Fig. 10.13B).

Somatic (General) Sensory

The general sensory branches of CN IX are as follows (Fig. 10.13):

- The tympanic nerve passes via the tympanic canaliculus between the carotid canal and jugular foramen to form the tympanic plexus within the tympanic cavity. The plexus provides sensory innervation for the mucosa of the tympanic cavity, antrum of mastoid air cells, and the posterolateral portion of the pharyngotympanic tube.
- The pharyngeal, tonsillar, and lingual nerves to the mucosa of the oropharynx and isthmus of the fauces (L., throat), including palatine tonsil, soft palate, and posterior third of the tongue. In addition to general sensation (touch, pain, temperature), tactile (actual or threatened)

stimuli determined to be unusual or unpleasant here may evoke the **gag reflex** or even vomiting. The gag reflex is absent in about 37% of normal individuals (Davies et al., 1995). CN IX provides the afferent (sensory) limb of the reflex, while the efferent (motor) limb is via the vagus nerve (CN X).

Special Sensory (Taste)

Taste fibers are conveyed from the posterior third of the tongue to the sensory inferior ganglia of CN IX (Fig. 10.14). Details of the distribution of CN IX are outlined in Figure 10.13.

Visceral Sensory

The carotid branch of CN IX supplies the carotid sinus, a baroreceptor (pressoreceptor) sensitive to changes in blood pressure, and the carotid body, a chemoreceptor sensitive to blood gas (oxygen and carbon dioxide levels).

The Bottom Line: Glossopharyngeal Nerve

■ The glossopharyngeal nerves (CN IX) send somatic motor fibers to the stylopharyngeus and visceral motor (presynaptic parasympathetic) fibers to the otic ganglion for innervation of the parotid gland. ■ They also send sensory fibers to the posterior third of the tongue (including taste), pharynx, tympanic cavity, pharyngotympanic tube, carotid body, and carotid sinus. ■ The nerves originate from the rostral end of the medulla and exit from the cranium via the jugular foramina. ■ They pass between the superior and the middle pharyngeal constrictors to the tonsillar sinus and enter the posterior third of the tongue.

VAGUS NERVE (CN X)

Functions: sensory—somatic (general) sensory, special sensory (taste), visceral sensory; motor—somatic (branchial) motor and visceral (parasympathetic) motor.

- Somatic (general) sensory from the inferior pharynx and larynx. The vagus provides the afferent (sensory) limb of the **cough reflex** stimulated by foreign irritants, preventing aspiration and infection.
- Visceral sensory from the thoracic and abdominal organs
- Taste and somatic (general) sensation from the root of the tongue and taste buds on the epiglottis. Branches of the internal laryngeal nerve (a branch of CN X) supply a small area, mostly somatic (general) sensory but also some special sensation (taste).

- Somatic (branchial) motor to the soft palate, pharynx, intrinsic laryngeal muscles (phonation), and a nominal extrinsic tongue muscle, the palatoglossus, which is actually a palatine muscle based on its derivation and innervation
- Proprioceptive to the muscles listed above
- Visceral (parasympathetic) motor to thoracic and abdominal viscera

Nuclei: sensory—sensory nucleus of the trigeminal nerve (somatic sensory) and nuclei of the solitary tract (taste and visceral sensory); motor—nucleus ambiguus (somatic [branchial] motor) and **dorsal vagal nucleus** (visceral [parasympathetic] motor) (Fig. 10.6).

The **vagus nerve** (CN X) has the longest course and most extensive distribution of all the cranial nerves, most of which is outside of (inferior to) the head. The term vagus is derived from the Latin word vagary, meaning "wandering." CN X was called that because of its wide distribution extending far from the head (Table 10.5). It arises by a series of rootlets from the lateral aspect of the medulla that merge and leave the cranium through the jugular foramen positioned between CN IX and CN XI (Figs. 10.14 and 10.16).

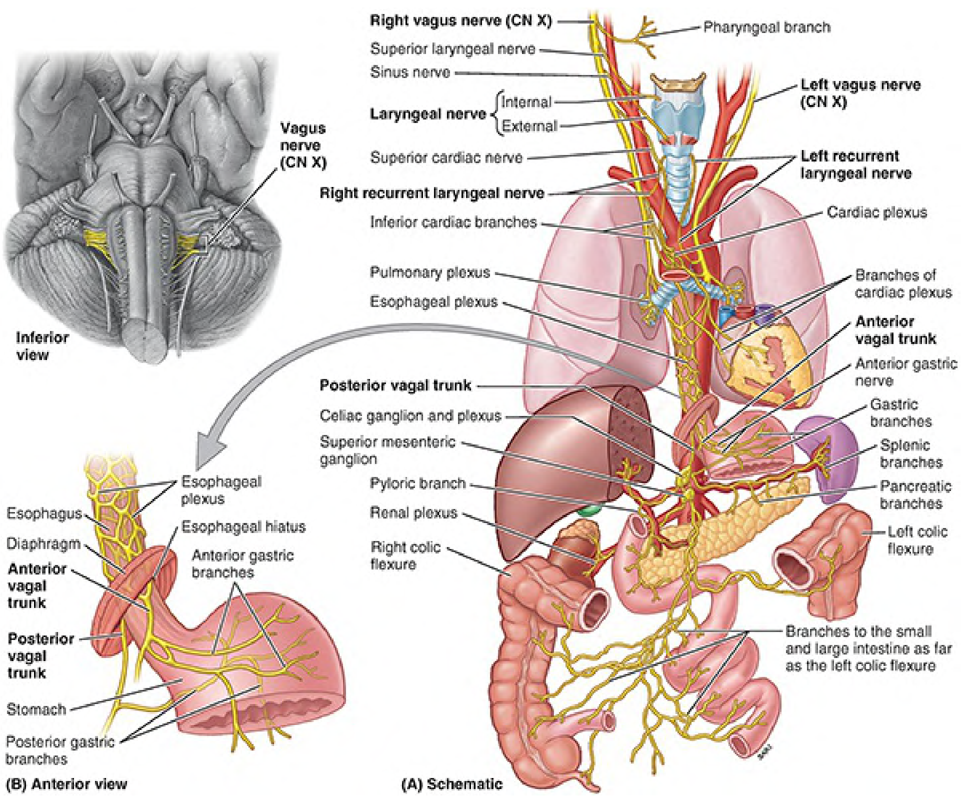


FIGURE 10.16. Distribution of vagus nerve (CN X). A. Overview. After supplying the palatine, pharyngeal, and laryngeal branches, CN X descends into the thorax. The recurrent laryngeal nerves ascend to the larynx, the left from a more inferior (thoracic) level. In the abdomen, the anterior and posterior vagal trunks demonstrate further asymmetry as they supply the terminal esophagus, stomach, and intestinal tract as far distally as the left colic flexure. **B.** Transition of lower esophageal plexus into anterior and posterior vagal trunks.

TABLE 10.5. SUMMARY OF VAGUS NERVE (CN X)

Divisions (Parts)	Branches

Cranial Vagi arise by a series of rootlets from medulla (includes traditional cranial root of CN XI).	Meningeal branch to dura mater (sensory; actually fibers of C2 spinal ganglion neurons that hitch a ride with vagus nerve) Auricular branch
Cervical Exit cranium/enter neck through jugular foramen; right and left vagus nerves enter carotid sheaths and continue to root of neck.	Pharyngeal branches to pharyngeal plexus (motor) Cervical cardiac branches (parasympathetic, visceral afferent) Superior laryngeal nerve (mixed) internal (sensory) and external (motor) branches Right recurrent laryngeal nerve (mixed)
Thoracic Vagi enter thorax through superior thoracic aperture; left vagus contributes to anterior esophageal plexus; right vagus to posterior plexus; form anterior and posterior vagal trunks	Left recurrent laryngeal nerve (mixed; all distal branches convey parasympathetic and visceral afferent fibers for reflex stimuli) Thoracic cardiac branches Pulmonary branches Esophageal plexus
Abdominal Anterior and posterior vagal trunks enter abdomen through esophageal hiatus in diaphragm; distribute asymmetrically	Esophageal branches Gastric branches Hepatic branches Celiac branches (from posterior vagal trunk) Pyloric branch (from anterior vagal trunk) Renal branches Intestinal branches (to left colic flexure)

What was formerly called the "cranial root of the accessory nerve" is actually a part of CN X (Fig. 10.17). CN X has a superior ganglion in the jugular foramen that is mainly concerned with the general sensory component of the nerve. Inferior to the foramen is an inferior ganglion (nodose ganglion) concerned with the visceral and special sensory components of the nerve (Fig. 10.14). In the region of the superior ganglion are connections to CN IX and the superior cervical (sympathetic) ganglion. CN X continues inferiorly in the carotid sheath to the root of the neck (see Chapter 9, Neck), supplying branches to the palate, pharynx, and larynx and cardiac branches to the cardiac and pulmonary plexuses (Fig. 10.16; Table 10.5).

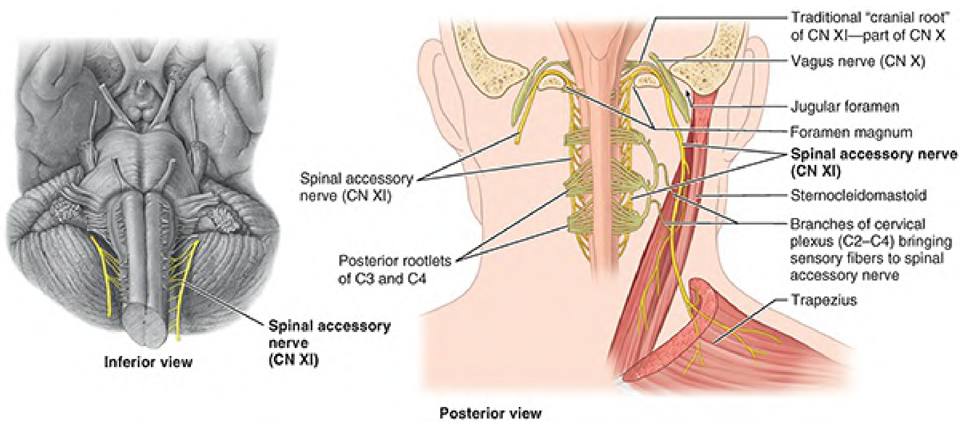


FIGURE 10.17. **Distribution of spinal accessory nerve (CN XI).**

The courses of the vagi (pl. of vagus) are asymmetrical in the thorax, a consequence of transitions of the great vessels and rotation of the midgut during development (see Chapter 4, Thorax, and Chapter 5, Abdomen). CN X supplies branches to mixed motor and sensory plexuses that serve the heart, bronchi, lungs, and esophagus. **Anterior** and **posterior vagal trunks** form as continuations of the esophageal plexus surrounding the esophagus, which is also

joined by branches of the sympathetic trunks. The trunks pass with the esophagus through the diaphragm into the abdomen, where the vagal trunks break up into branches that innervate the stomach and intestinal tract as far as the left colic flexure.

The Bottom Line: Vagus Nerve

■ The vagus nerves (CN X) supply motor fibers to the voluntary muscles of the larynx and superior esophagus. ■ They also send visceral motor (presynaptic parasympathetic) fibers to the involuntary muscles and glands of (1) the tracheobronchial tree and esophagus via the pulmonary and esophageal plexuses, (2) to the heart via the cardiac plexus, and (3) to the alimentary tract as far as the left colic flexure via the vagal trunks. ■ The vagus nerves also send sensory fibers to the pharynx, larynx, and reflex afferents from these same areas (1–3 above). ■ They originate via 8–10 rootlets from the lateral sides of the medulla of the brainstem. They enter the superior mediastinum posterior to the sternoclavicular joints and brachiocephalic veins. ■ The nerves give rise to right and left recurrent nerves and then form the esophageal plexus, reform as anterior and posterior vagal trunks, and continue into the abdomen.

SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE (CN XI)

Functions: somatic motor to the striated sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles.

Nuclei: The spinal accessory nerve arises from the **nucleus of the spinal accessory nerve**, a column of anterior horn motor neurons in the superior five or six cervical segments of the spinal cord (Fig. 10.6).

The traditional “cranial root” of CN XI is actually a part of CN X (Lachman et al., 2002). It may be united for a short distance with the **spinal accessory nerve** (CN XI) (Fig. 10.17). CN XI emerges as a series of rootlets from the first five or six cervical segments of the spinal cord. The spinal accessory nerve joins the CN X temporarily as they pass through the jugular foramen, separating again as they exit (Fig. 10.14). CN XI descends along the internal carotid artery, penetrates and innervates the sternocleidomastoid, and emerges from the muscle near the middle of its posterior border. Next, CN XI crosses the posterior cervical region and passes deep to the superior border of the trapezius to descend on its deep surface, providing multiple branches to the muscle. Branches of the cervical plexus conveying sensory fibers from spinal nerves C2–C4 join the spinal accessory nerve in the posterior cervical region, providing these muscles with pain and proprioceptive fibers.

The Bottom Line: Spinal Accessory Nerve

■ The spinal accessory nerves (CN XI) supply somatic motor fibers to the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles. ■ The nerves arise as rootlets from the sides of the spinal cord in the superior five or six cervical segments. ■ They ascend into the cranial cavity via the foramen magnum and exit through the jugular foramina, crossing the lateral cervical region, where pain and proprioceptive fibers from the cervical plexus join the nerves.

HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE (CN XII)

Functions: somatic motor to the intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the tongue (G. glossa)—styloglossus, hyoglossus, and genioglossus.

The **hypoglossal nerve (CN XII)** arises as a purely motor nerve by several rootlets from the medulla and leaves the cranium through the hypoglossal canal (Figs. 10.2 and 10.3). After exiting the cranial cavity, CN XII is joined by a branch or branches of the cervical plexus conveying general somatic motor fibers from C1 and C2 spinal nerves and somatic (general) sensory fibers from the spinal ganglion of C2 (Fig. 10.18). These spinal nerve fibers "hitch a ride" with CN XII to reach the hyoid muscles, with some of the sensory fibers passing retrograde along it to reach the dura mater of the posterior cranial fossa (see Fig. 8.34B in Chapter 8, Head). CN XII passes inferiorly medial to the angle of the mandible and then curves anteriorly to enter the tongue (Fig. 10.18).

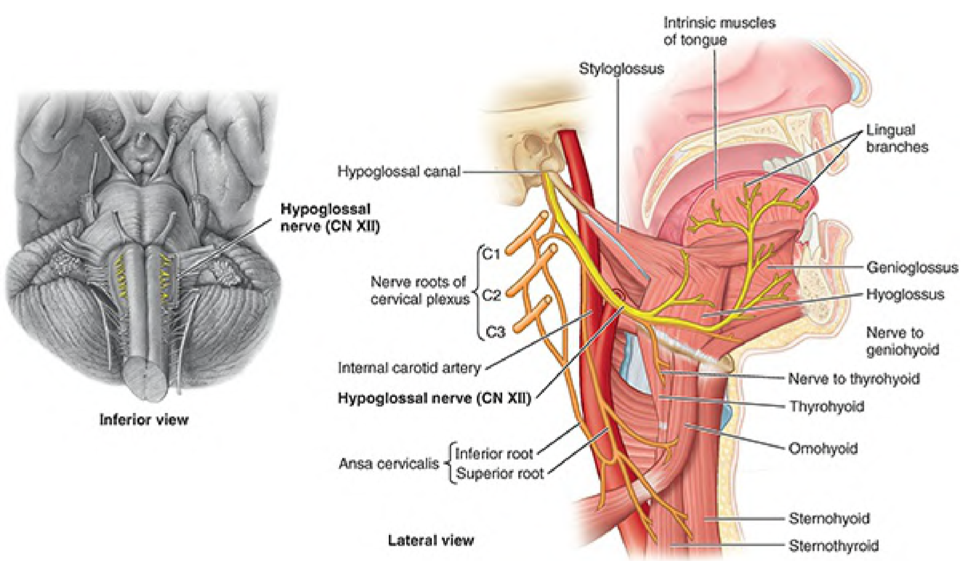


FIGURE 10.18. Distribution of hypoglossal nerve (CN XII). CN XII leaves the cranium through the hypoglossal canal and passes deep to the mandible to enter the tongue, where it supplies all intrinsic and extrinsic lingual muscles, except the palatoglossus. CN XII is joined immediately distal to the hypoglossal canal by a branch conveying fibers from the C1 and C2 loop of the cervical plexus. These fibers hitch a ride with CN XII, leaving it as the superior root of the ansa cervicalis and the nerve to the thyrohyoid muscle. Cervical spinal nerves, not CN XII, supply the infrahyoid muscles.

CN XII ends in many branches that supply all the extrinsic muscles of the tongue, except the palatoglossus (a palatine muscle). CN XII has the following branches:

- A **meningeal branch** returns to the cranium through the hypoglossal canal and innervates the dura mater on the floor and posterior wall of the posterior cranial fossa. The nerve fibers conveyed are from the sensory spinal ganglion of spinal nerve C2 and are not hypoglossal fibers.
- The **superior root of the ansa cervicalis** branches from CN XII to supply the infrahyoid muscles (sternohyoid, sternothyroid, and omohyoid). This branch conveys only fibers from the cervical plexus (the loop between the anterior rami of C1 and C2) that joined the nerve outside the cranial cavity, not hypoglossal fibers (Fig. 10.18). Some fibers continue past the origin of the superior root to reach the thyrohyoid muscle.
- Terminal **lingual branches** supply the styloglossus, hyoglossus, genioglossus, and intrinsic muscles of the tongue.

The Bottom Line: Hypoglossal Nerve

■ The hypoglossal nerves (CN XII) supply somatic motor fibers to the intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the tongue, except the palatoglossus (a palatine muscle). ■ They arise by several rootlets between the pyramids and the olives of the medulla. ■ They pass through the hypoglossal canals and run inferiorly and anteriorly, passing medial to the angles of the mandible and between the mylohyoid and the hyoglossus to reach the muscles of the tongue.

CLINICAL BOX

CRANIAL NERVES

Cranial Nerve Injuries

Table 10.6 summarizes some common cranial nerve injuries, indicating the type or site of lesions and abnormal findings that result. Injury to the cranial nerves is a frequent complication of a fracture in the base of the cranium. Furthermore, excessive movement of the brain within the cranium may tear or bruise cranial nerve fibers, especially those of CN I. Paralysis resulting from trauma may not be evident for several days. Further, cranial nerve injuries also commonly occur with traumatic injury to the brain, which can result in delayed diagnosis and intervention (Higgins et al., 2022). In addition,

cranial nerves may be injured when surgery is performed on adjacent structures.

TABLE 10.6. SUMMARY OF CRANIAL NERVE LESIONS

Nerve	Types(s) and/or Site(s) of Lesion	Abnormal Finding(s)
CN I	Fracture of cribriform plate	Anosmia (loss of smell); cerebrospinal fluid rhinorrhea
CN II	Direct trauma to orbit or eyeball; fracture involving optic canal	Loss of pupillary constriction
	Pressure on optic pathway; laceration or intracerebral clot in temporal, parietal, or occipital lobes of brain	Visual field defects. See Figure B10.1.
CN III	Pressure from herniating uncus on nerve; fracture involving cavernous sinus; aneurysms	Dilated pupil; ptosis; eye turns “down and out”; pupillary reflex on side of lesion will be lost. See Figure B8.31A in Chapter 8, Head.
CN IV	Stretching of nerve during its course around brainstem; fracture of orbit	Inability to look down when eye is adducted
CN V	Injury to terminal branches (particularly CN V_2) in roof of maxillary sinus; pathological processes affecting trigeminal ganglion	Loss of pain and touch sensations; paresthesia; masseter and temporalis muscles do not contract; deviation of mandible to side of lesion when mouth is opened
CN VI	Base of brain or fracture involving cavernous sinus or orbit	Eye fails to move laterally; diplopia on lateral gaze. See Figure B8.31B in Chapter 8, Head.
CN VII	Laceration or contusion in parotid region	Paralysis of facial muscles; eye remains open; angle of mouth droops; forehead does not wrinkle.
	Fracture of temporal bone	As above, plus associated involvement of cochlear nerve and chorda tympani; dry cornea; loss of taste on anterior two thirds of tongue
	Intracranial hematoma (“stroke”)	Forehead wrinkles because of bilateral innervation of frontalis muscle, otherwise paralysis of contralateral facial muscles
CN VIII	Tumor of nerve (acoustic neuroma)	Progressive unilateral hearing loss; tinnitus (noises in ear)
CN IX	Brainstem lesion or deep laceration of neck	Loss of taste on posterior third of tongue; loss of sensation on affected side of soft palate
CN X	Brainstem lesion or deep laceration of neck	Sagging of soft palate; deviation of uvula to normal side; hoarseness owing to paralysis of vocal fold
CN XI	Laceration of neck	Paralysis of sternocleidomastoid and descending fibers of trapezius; drooping of shoulder
CN XII	Neck laceration; fractures of cranial base	Protruded tongue deviates toward affected side; moderate dysarthria (disturbance of articulation). See Figure B10.2.

Because of their location within the confined cranial cavity, relatively fixed positions, and sometimes close relationships to bony or vascular formations, the intracranial portions of certain cranial nerves are also susceptible to compression owing to a tumor or aneurysm. In such cases, the onset of symptoms usually occurs gradually, and the effects depend on

the extent of the pressure exerted. Because of their close relationship to the cavernous sinus, CN III, CN IV, CN V_1, and especially CN VI are susceptible to compression or injury related to pathologies (infections, thrombophlebitis) affecting the sinus.

OLFACTORY NERVE (CN I)

Anosmia: Loss of Smell

The loss of smell (anosmia) is frequently associated with upper respiratory infections, sinus disease, and head trauma. Loss of olfactory fibers occurs with aging. Consequently, elderly people often have reduced acuity of the sensation of smell, resulting from progressive reduction in the number of olfactory receptor neurons in the olfactory epithelium. The chief complaint of most people with anosmia is the loss or alteration of taste; however, clinical studies reveal that in all but a few people, the dysfunction is in the olfactory system (Simpson, 2018). The reason is that most people confuse taste with flavor. Transitory olfactory impairment occurs as a result of viral or allergic rhinitis—inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane.

To test the sense of smell, the person is blindfolded and asked to identify common odors, such as freshly ground coffee placed near the external nares (nostrils). One naris is occluded, and the eyes are closed. Because anosmia is usually unilateral, each naris is tested separately. If the loss of smell is unilateral, the person may not be aware of it without clinical testing.

Injury to the nasal mucosa, olfactory nerve fibers, olfactory bulbs, or olfactory tracts may also impair smell. In severe head injuries, the olfactory bulbs may be torn away from the olfactory nerves, or some olfactory nerve fibers may be torn as they pass through a fractured cribriform plate. If all the nerve bundles on one side are torn, a complete loss of smell will occur on that side; consequently, anosmia may be a clue to a fracture of the cranial base and cerebrospinal fluid rhinorrhea (leakage of the fluid through the nose).

A tumor and/or abscess in the frontal lobe of the brain or a tumor of the meninges (meningioma) in the anterior cranial fossa may also cause anosmia by compressing the olfactory bulb and/or tract (D'Amico & Sisti, 2022).

Olfactory Hallucinations

Occasionally, olfactory hallucinations (false perceptions of smell) may accompany lesions in the temporal lobe of the cerebral hemisphere. A lesion that irritates the lateral olfactory area (deep to the uncus) may cause temporal lobe epilepsy or "uncinate fits," which are characterized by imaginary disagreeable odors and involuntary movements of the lips and tongue.

OPTIC NERVE (CN II)

Demyelinating Diseases and Optic Nerves

Because the optic nerves are actually CNS tracts, the myelin sheath that surrounds the sensory fibers from the point at which the fibers penetrate the sclera is formed by oligodendrocytes (glial cells) rather than by neurolemma (Schwann) cells, as in other cranial or spinal nerves of the peripheral nervous system (PNS). Consequently, the optic nerves are susceptible to the effects of demyelinating diseases of the CNS, such as multiple sclerosis (MS), which usually do not affect other nerves of the PNS.

Optic Neuritis

Optic neuritis refers to lesions of the optic nerve that cause diminution of visual acuity, with or without changes in peripheral fields of vision (Moss, 2022). Optic neuritis may be caused by inflammatory, degenerative, demyelinating, or toxic disorders. The optic disc appears pale and smaller than usual on ophthalmoscopic examination. Many toxic substances (e.g., methyl and ethyl alcohol, tobacco, lead, and mercury) may also injure the optic nerve.

Visual Field Defects

Visual field defects result from lesions that affect different parts of the visual pathway. The type of defect depends on where the pathway is interrupted (Fig. B10.1):

- Complete section of an optic nerve results in blindness in the temporal (T) and nasal (N) visual fields of the ipsilateral eye (depicted in black).
- Complete section of the optic chiasm reduces peripheral vision and results in bitemporal hemianopsia, the loss of vision of one half of the visual field of both eyes.
- Complete section of the right optic tract at the midline eliminates vision from the left temporal and right nasal visual fields. A lesion of the right or left optic tract causes a contralateral homonymous hemianopsia, indicating that visual loss is in similar fields. This defect is the most common form of visual field loss and is often observed in patients with strokes (Swartz, 2021).

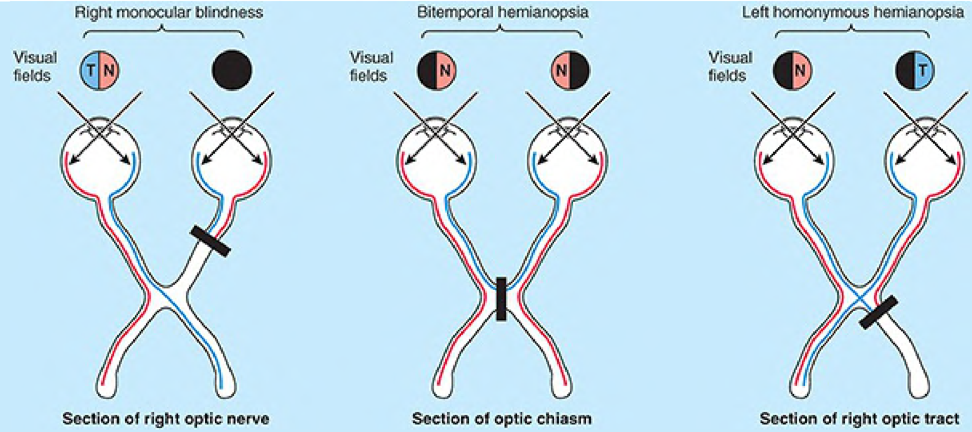


FIGURE B10.1. Visual field defects. T, temporal; N, nasal.

Defects of vision caused by compression of the optic pathway, as may result from tumors of the pituitary gland or berry aneurysms of the internal carotid arteries (see Chapter 8, Head), may produce only part of the visual losses described here. Patients may not be aware of changes in their visual fields until late in the course of disease because lesions affecting the visual pathway often develop insidiously.

OCULOMOTOR NERVE (CN III)

Injury to Oculomotor Nerve

A lesion of CN III results in ipsilateral oculomotor palsy, in which the eye is abducted and depressed, with the pupil dilated. This palsy is summarized in Table 10.6 and discussed and illustrated in the Clinical Box "Paralysis of Extra-Ocular Muscles/Palsies of Orbital Nerves" in Chapter 8, Head.

Compression of Oculomotor Nerve

Rapidly increasing intracranial pressure (e.g., resulting from an extradural hematoma) often compresses CN III against the crest of the petrous part of the temporal bone. Because autonomic fibers in CN III are superficial, they are affected first. As a result, the pupil dilates progressively on the injured side. Consequently, the first sign of CN III compression is ipsilateral slowness of the pupillary response to light.

Aneurysm of Posterior Cerebral or Superior Cerebellar Artery

An aneurysm of a posterior cerebral or superior cerebellar artery may also exert pressure on CN III as it passes between these vessels. The effects of this pressure depend on its severity. Because CN III lies in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, injuries or infections of the sinus may also affect this nerve.

TROCHLEAR NERVE (CN IV)

CN IV is rarely paralyzed alone. Lesions of the trochlear nerve or its nucleus cause paralysis of the superior oblique and impair the ability to turn the affected eyeball inferomedially. CN IV may be torn when there are severe head injuries because of its long intracranial course. The characteristic sign of trochlear nerve injury is diplopia (double vision) when looking down. Diplopia occurs because the superior oblique normally assists the inferior rectus in depressing the pupil (directing the gaze downward) and is the only muscle to do so when the pupil is first adducted. In addition, because the superior oblique is the primary muscle producing intorsion of the eyeball, the primary muscle producing extorsion (the inferior oblique) is unopposed when the superior oblique is paralyzed. Thus, the direction of gaze and rotation of the eyeball about its anteroposterior axis is different for the two eyes when an attempt is made to look downward and especially when looking downward and medially. The person can compensate for the diplopia by inclining the head anteriorly and laterally toward the side of the normal eye.

TRIGEMINAL NERVE (CN V)

Injury to Trigeminal Nerve

CN V may be injured by trauma, tumors, aneurysms, or meningeal infections (Cioroiu & Brannagan, 2022). It may be involved occasionally in poliomyelitis ("polio," a viral infantile disease) and generalized polyneuropathy, a disease affecting several peripheral nerves. The sensory and motor nuclei in the pons and medulla may be destroyed by intramedullary tumors or vascular lesions. An isolated lesion of the spinal trigeminal tract also may occur with multiple sclerosis (MS). Injury to CN V causes the following:

- Paralysis of the muscles of mastication with deviation of the mandible toward the side of the lesion (Table 10.6)
- Loss of the ability to appreciate soft tactile, thermal, or painful sensations in the face
- Loss of corneal reflex (blinking in response to the cornea being touched) and the sneezing reflex (stimulated by irritants to clear the respiratory tract)

Common causes of facial numbness are dental trauma, herpes zoster ophthalmicus (infection caused by a herpes virus), cranial trauma, head and neck tumors, intracranial tumors, and idiopathic trigeminal neuropathy (a nerve disease of unknown cause).

Trigeminal neuralgia (tic douloureux), the principal disease affecting the sensory root of CN V, produces excruciating, episodic pain that is usually restricted to the areas supplied by the maxillary and/or mandibular divisions of this nerve. (See the Clinical Box "Trigeminal Neuralgia" in Chapter 8, Head, for a detailed discussion.)

Dental Anesthesia

Anesthetic agents are commonly administered by injection to block pain during dental procedures. CN V is of great importance in the practice of dentistry because it is the sensory nerve of the head, serving the teeth and mucosa of the oral cavity. Because the superior alveolar nerves (branches of CN V_2) are not accessible, the maxillary teeth are locally anesthetized by injecting the agent into the tissues surrounding the roots of the teeth and allowing the solution to infiltrate the tissue to reach the terminal (dental) nerve branches that enter the roots. By contrast, the inferior alveolar nerve (CN V_3) is readily accessible and is probably anesthetized more frequently than any other nerve. This procedure is described in the Clinical Box “Inferior Alveolar Nerve Block” in Chapter 8, Head.

ABDUCENT NERVE (CN VI)

Because CN VI has a long intradural course, it is often stretched when intracranial pressure rises, partly because of the sharp bend it makes over the crest of the petrous part of the temporal bone after entering the dura mater. A space-occupying lesion, such as a brain tumor, may compress CN VI, causing paralysis of the lateral rectus. Complete paralysis of CN VI causes medial deviation of the affected eye, that is, it is adducted by the unopposed action of the medial rectus, leaving the person unable to abduct the eye lateral to the primary position (in which the pupil is directed anteriorly). Diplopia (double vision) is present in all ranges of movement of the eyeball, except on gazing to the side opposite the lesion. Paralysis of CN VI may also result from:

- An aneurysm of the cerebral arterial circle (at the base of the brain) (See the Clinical Box “Strokes” in Chapter 8, Head, for an illustrated discussion of berry aneurysm.)
- Pressure from an atherosclerotic (plaque-lined) internal carotid artery in the cavernous sinus, where CN VI is closely related to this artery. (See the Clinical Box “Brain Infarction” in Chapter 8, Head, for an illustration and explanation of atheromatous plaque.)
- Septic thrombosis of the cavernous sinus subsequent to infection in the nasal cavities and/or paranasal sinuses (See the Clinical Box “Thrombophlebitis of Facial Vein” in Chapter 8, Head.)

FACIAL NERVE (CN VII)

Among motor nerves, CN VII is the most frequently paralyzed of all the cranial nerves. Depending on the part of the nerve involved, injury to CN VII may cause paralysis of facial muscles without loss of taste on the anterior two thirds of the tongue or altered secretion of the lacrimal and salivary glands.

A lesion of CN VII near its origin or near the geniculate ganglion is accompanied by loss

of motor, gustatory (taste), and autonomic functions. The motor paralysis of facial muscles involves superior and inferior parts of the face on the ipsilateral side.

A central lesion of CN VII (lesion of the CNS) results in paralysis of muscles in the inferior face on the contralateral side. Consequently, forehead wrinkling is not visibly impaired because it is innervated bilaterally. Lesions between the geniculate ganglion and the origin of the chorda tympani produce the same effects as that resulting from injury near the ganglion, except that lacrimal secretion is not affected. Because it passes through the facial canal in the temporal bone, CN VII is vulnerable to compression when a viral infection produces inflammation (viral neuritis) and swelling of the nerve just before it emerges from the stylomastoid foramen.

Because the branches of CN VII are superficial, they are subject to injury from knife and gunshot wounds, cuts, and birth injury. Damage to CN VII is common with fracture of the temporal bone and is usually detectable immediately after the injury. CN VII may also be affected by tumors of the brain and cranium, aneurysms, meningeal infections, and herpes viruses. Although injuries to CN VII cause paralysis of facial muscles, sensory loss in the small area of skin on the posteromedial surface of the auricle of the ear and around the opening of the external acoustic meatus is rare. Similarly, hearing is not usually impaired, but the ear may become more sensitive to low tones when the stapedius (supplied by CN VII) is paralyzed; this muscle dampens vibration of the stapes (see Chapter 8, Head).

Bell palsy is a unilateral facial paralysis of sudden onset resulting from a lesion of CN VII. See the Clinical Box “Paralysis of Facial Muscles” in Chapter 8, Head, for an illustrated and detailed discussion of this syndrome.

VESTIBULOCOCHLEAR NERVE (CN VIII)

Injuries to Vestibulocochlear Nerve

Although the vestibular and cochlear nerves are essentially independent, peripheral lesions often produce concurrent clinical effects because of their close relationship. Hence, lesions of CN VIII may cause tinnitus (ringing or buzzing in ears), vertigo (dizziness, loss of balance), and impairment or loss of hearing. Central lesions may involve either the cochlear or vestibular divisions of CN VIII.

Deafness

There are two kinds of deafness (hearing loss): conductive deafness, involving the external or middle ear (e.g., otitis media, inflammation in the middle ear; see the Clinical Box “Otitis Media” in Chapter 8, Head, for an illustrated and detailed discussion), and sensorineural deafness (damage to the hair cells in the inner ear), which results from disease in the cochlea or in the pathway from the cochlea to the brain.

Acoustic Neuroma

An acoustic neuroma (neurofibroma) is a slow-growing benign tumor of the neurolemma (Schwann) cells. The tumor begins in the vestibular nerve while it is in the internal acoustic meatus. The early symptom of an acoustic neuroma is usually loss of hearing. Dysequilibrium (derangement of the sense of motion and balance) and tinnitus occur in approximately 70% of patients (D'Amico & Sisti, 2022).

Trauma and Vertigo

People with head trauma often experience headache, dizziness, vertigo, and other features of posttraumatic injury. Vertigo is a hallucination of movement involving the person or the environment (Roberts, 2022). It often involves a spinning sensation, but it may be felt as a swaying back and forth or falling. These symptoms, often accompanied by nausea and vomiting, are usually related to a peripheral vestibular nerve lesion.

GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL NERVE (CN IX)

Lesions of Glossopharyngeal Nerve

Isolated lesions of CN IX or its nuclei are uncommon and are not associated with perceptible disability (Higgins et al., 2022). Most commonly, trauma to the nerve is iatrogenic (physician-caused, e.g., inadvertent injury during a tonsillectomy). Taste is absent on the posterior third of the tongue, and the gag reflex is absent on the side of the lesion. Ipsilateral weakness may produce a noticeable change in swallowing.

Injuries of CN IX resulting from infection or tumors are usually accompanied by signs of involvement of adjacent nerves. Because CN IX, CN X, and CN XI pass through the jugular foramen, tumors in this region produce multiple cranial nerve palsies, called the jugular foramen (Vernet) syndrome, in which dysphagia (difficulty in swallowing) and dysarthria (motor difficulty in speaking) are more apparent. The soft palate and posterior wall of the pharynx deviate to the contralateral side of the injury when the gag reflex is initiated ("curtain sign") (Fig. B10.2). Pain in the distribution of CN IX may be associated with involvement of the nerve in a tumor in the neck.

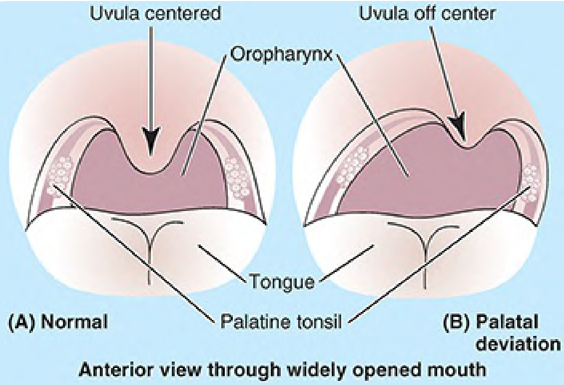


FIGURE B10.2. **Gag reflex. A.** Normal. **B.** Palatal deviation. Note that the palate and posterior wall of the pharynx deviate to the left side when the gag reflex is elicited. This “curtain sign” is due to a right CN IX/CN X lesion.

Glossopharyngeal Neuralgia

Glossopharyngeal neuralgia (glossopharyngeal tic) is uncommon, and its cause is unknown. The sudden intensification of pain is of a burning or stabbing nature. These paroxysms (spasms or sudden attacks) of pain are often initiated by swallowing, protruding the tongue, talking, or touching the palatine tonsil (Mathew & Bajwa, 2022). Pain paroxysms occur during eating when trigger areas are stimulated.

VAGUS NERVE (CN X)

Isolated lesions of CN X are uncommon. Injury to pharyngeal branches of CN X results in mild or severe dysphagia (difficulty in swallowing). Lesions of the superior laryngeal nerve produce anesthesia of the superior part of the larynx and paralysis of the cricothyroid muscle. (See the Clinical Box “Injury to Laryngeal Nerves” in Chapter 9, Neck.) The voice is weak and tires easily. Injury of a recurrent laryngeal nerve may be caused by aneurysms of the arch of the aorta and may occur during neck operations. Injury of the recurrent laryngeal nerve causes dysphonia (hoarseness or weakness of voice) because of paralysis of the vocal folds (cords). Paralysis of both recurrent laryngeal nerves causes aphonia (loss of voice) and inspiratory stridor (a harsh, high-pitched respiratory sound). Paralysis of recurrent laryngeal nerves usually results from cancer of the larynx and thyroid gland and/or from injury during surgery on the thyroid gland, neck, esophagus, heart, and lungs. Because of its longer course, lesions of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve are more common than those of the right. Proximal lesions of CN X also affect the pharyngeal and superior laryngeal nerves, causing difficulty in swallowing and speaking.

SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE (CN XI)

Because of its nearly subcutaneous passage through the lateral cervical region (posterior triangle of neck), iatrogenic (physician-caused) injury of

CN XI may occur during surgical procedures such as lymph node biopsy, cannulation of the internal jugular vein, and carotid endarterectomy (Higgins et al., 2022). Rare high lesions of CN XI result paralysis of the ipsilateral sternocleidomastoid, manifest as impairment of rotation to the affected side (Fig. B10.3A) and of the trapezius, manifest as unilateral inability to shrug the shoulder (Fig. B10.3B), or winging of the scapula at rest. In the more common lower lesion, only the trapezius is affected. (See the Clinical Box "Lesions of Spinal Accessory Nerve [CN XI]" in Chapter 9, Neck.)

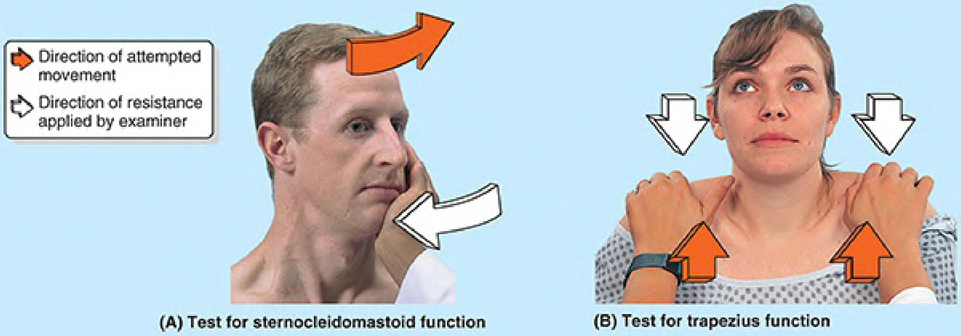


FIGURE B10.3. **Testing function of sternocleidomastoid and trapezius and spinal accessory nerve.**

HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE (CN XII)

Trauma to CN XII is also most often iatrogenic (e.g., injury during procedures including carotid endarterectomy, endotracheal intubation, or other airway device insertion and use). CN XII compression during head rotation results from a medially directed or elongated styloid process, sometimes associated with ossification of the stylohyoid ligament (Eagle syndrome). Injury to CN XII paralyzes the ipsilateral half of the tongue, resulting in dysarthria. After some time, the tongue atrophies, making it appear shrunken and wrinkled (Higgins et al., 2022). When the tongue is protruded, its apex deviates toward the paralyzed side because of the unmatched action by the genioglossus and intrinsic muscles on the paralyzed side of the tongue, which remains unextended (Fig. B10.4).

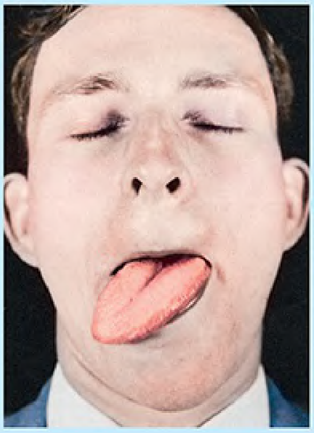


FIGURE B10.4. Hypoglossal nerve palsy.

---

[1]Historically, the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius have been classified as branchiomeric muscles. Students may see them classified as such in other references.

Index

Note: Page numbers in **boldface** indicate the primary entry for the term, which appears in boldface or as a heading on the page indicated and is followed by a definition or explanation; page numbers in italics denote figures; those followed by “t” denote tables.

A

D

E

K

L

O

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z